<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.2. Updating Data</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3. Deleting Data</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4. Returning Data from Modified Rows</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Queries</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1. Overview</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2. Table Expressions</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3. Select Lists</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4. Combining Queries (UNION, INTERSECT, EXCEPT)</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5. Sorting Rows (ORDER BY)</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6. LIMIT and OFFSET</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7. VALUES Lists</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8. WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions)</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Data Types</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1. Numeric Types</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2. Monetary Types</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3. Character Types</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4. Binary Data Types</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5. Date/Time Types</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6. Boolean Type</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.7. Enumerated Types</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.8. Geometric Types</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.9. Network Address Types</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.10. Bit String Types</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.11. Text Search Types</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.12. UUID Type</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.13. XML Type</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.14. JSON Types</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.15. Arrays</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.16. Composite Types</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.17. Range Types</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.18. Domain Types</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.19. Object Identifier Types</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.20. pg_lsn Type</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.21. Pseudo-Types</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Functions and Operators</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1. Logical Operators</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2. Comparison Functions and Operators</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3. Mathematical Functions and Operators</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4. String Functions and Operators</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5. Binary String Functions and Operators</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6. Bit String Functions and Operators</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.7. Pattern Matching</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8. Data Type Formatting Functions</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.9. Date/Time Functions and Operators</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.10. Enum Support Functions</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.11. Geometric Functions and Operators</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.12. Network Address Functions and Operators</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.13. Text Search Functions and Operators</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.14. UUID Functions</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.15. XML Functions</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.16. JSON Functions and Operators</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.17. Sequence Manipulation Functions</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.18. Conditional Expressions</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.19. Array Functions and Operators</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.20. Range/Multirange Functions and Operators</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.21. Aggregate Functions</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.22. Window Functions</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I. SQL Commands ................................................................. 1256
ABORT ............................................................... 1257
ALTER AGGREGATE ........................................... 1258
ALTER COLLATION ............................................. 1260
ALTER CONVERSION .......................................... 1262
ALTER DATABASE ................................................. 1263
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES ................................. 1265
ALTER DOMAIN .................................................... 1268
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER ....................................... 1271
ALTER EXTENSION .............................................. 1272
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .......................... 1275
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE ......................................... 1277
ALTER FUNCTION .................................................. 1282
ALTER GROUP ....................................................... 1285
ALTER INDEX ......................................................... 1287
ALTER LANGUAGE ............................................... 1290
ALTER LARGE OBJECT .......................................... 1291
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW .................................... 1292
ALTER OPERATOR ................................................ 1294
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS ....................................... 1296
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY ..................................... 1297
ALTER POLICY ....................................................... 1301
ALTER PROCEDURE ............................................... 1302
ALTER PROFILE .................................................... 1305
ALTER PUBLICATION ........................................... 1307
ALTER ROLE .......................................................... 1309
ALTER ROUTINE .................................................. 1313
ALTER RULE ........................................................ 1314
ALTER SCHEMA ..................................................... 1315
ALTER SEQUENCE ................................................ 1316
ALTER SERVER ..................................................... 1319
ALTER STATISTICS ................................................ 1320
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION .......................................... 1321
ALTER SYSTEM ...................................................... 1323
ALTER TABLE ........................................................ 1325
ALTER TABLESPACE ............................................. 1340
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .................. 1341
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY ........................ 1343
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER ................................ 1345
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE ............................. 1346
ALTER TRIGGER .................................................... 1347
ALTER TYPE .......................................................... 1348
ALTER USER .......................................................... 1352
ALTER USER MAPPING .......................................... 1353
ALTER VIEW .......................................................... 1354
ANALYZE .............................................................. 1356
BEGIN ................................................................. 1359
CALL ................................................................. 1361
CHECKPOINT ....................................................... 1362
CLOSE ................................................................. 1363
CLUSTER .............................................................. 1364
COMMENT ............................................................ 1366
COMMIT ............................................................... 1370
COMMIT PREPARED ............................................. 1371
COPY ................................................................. 1372
CREATE ACCESS METHOD ..................................... 1382
CREATE AGGREGATE ............................................. 1383
CREATE CAST ........................................................ 1390
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SQL Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CREATE COLLATION</td>
<td>1394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE CONVERSION</td>
<td>1396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE DATABASE</td>
<td>1398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE DOMAIN</td>
<td>1401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE EVENT TRIGGER</td>
<td>1404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE EXTENSION</td>
<td>1406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER</td>
<td>1408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE FOREIGN TABLE</td>
<td>1410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE FUNCTION</td>
<td>1414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE GROUP</td>
<td>1422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE INDEX</td>
<td>1423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE LANGUAGE</td>
<td>1431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW</td>
<td>1433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE OPERATOR</td>
<td>1435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE OPERATOR CLASS</td>
<td>1438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY</td>
<td>1441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE POLICY</td>
<td>1442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE PROCEDURE</td>
<td>1447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE PROFILE</td>
<td>1451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE PUBLICATION</td>
<td>1454</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE ROLE</td>
<td>1456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE RULE</td>
<td>1461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE SCHEMA</td>
<td>1464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE SEQUENCE</td>
<td>1466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE SERVER</td>
<td>1469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE STATISTICS</td>
<td>1471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE SUBSCRIPTION</td>
<td>1475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TABLE</td>
<td>1478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TABLE AS</td>
<td>1498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TABLESPACE</td>
<td>1501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION</td>
<td>1503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY</td>
<td>1504</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER</td>
<td>1506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE</td>
<td>1508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TRANSFORM</td>
<td>1509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TRIGGER</td>
<td>1511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TYPE</td>
<td>1518</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE USER</td>
<td>1527</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE USER MAPPING</td>
<td>1528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE VIEW</td>
<td>1529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEALLOCATE</td>
<td>1533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARE</td>
<td>1534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td>1537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISCARD</td>
<td>1540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO</td>
<td>1541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP ACCESS METHOD</td>
<td>1542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP AGGREGATE</td>
<td>1543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP CAST</td>
<td>1545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP COLLATION</td>
<td>1546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP CONVERSION</td>
<td>1547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP DATABASE</td>
<td>1548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP DOMAIN</td>
<td>1549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP EVENT TRIGGER</td>
<td>1550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP EXTENSION</td>
<td>1551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER</td>
<td>1552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP FOREIGN TABLE</td>
<td>1553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP FUNCTION</td>
<td>1554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP GROUP</td>
<td>1556</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DROP INDEX .......................................................... 1557
DROP LANGUAGE ...................................................... 1558
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW ....................................... 1559
DROP OPERATOR ....................................................... 1560
DROP OPERATOR CLASS ........................................... 1561
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY ........................................... 1562
DROP OWNED ........................................................ 1563
DROP POLICY ........................................................... 1564
DROP PROCEDURE ...................................................... 1565
DROP PROFILE .......................................................... 1567
DROP PUBLICATION .................................................. 1568
DROP ROLE ............................................................... 1569
DROP ROUTINE ........................................................ 1570
DROP RULE .............................................................. 1571
DROP SCHEMA ........................................................ 1572
DROP SEQUENCE ....................................................... 1573
DROP SERVER .......................................................... 1574
DROP STATISTICS ...................................................... 1575
DROP SUBSCRIPTION ............................................... 1576
DROP TABLE ............................................................. 1577
DROP TABLESPACE .................................................... 1578
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION ....................... 1579
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .............................. 1580
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER ..................................... 1581
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE ................................ 1582
DROP TRANSFORM .................................................... 1583
DROP TRIGGER ........................................................ 1584
DROP TYPE ............................................................. 1585
DROP USER .............................................................. 1586
DROP USER MAPPING ............................................... 1587
DROP VIEW ............................................................. 1588
END ........................................................................... 1589
EXECUTE ................................................................. 1590
EXPLAIN ................................................................. 1591
FETCH ......................................................................... 1596
GRANT ........................................................................ 1600
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA ....................................... 1605
INSERT ........................................................................ 1607
LISTEN ........................................................................ 1614
LOAD .......................................................................... 1616
LOCK .......................................................................... 1617
MOVE .......................................................................... 1620
NOTIFY ........................................................................ 1622
PREPARE ................................................................. 1624
PREPARE TRANSACTION ............................................ 1627
REASSIGN OWNED .................................................. 1629
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW .................................. 1630
REINDEX ................................................................. 1632
RELEASE SAVEPOINT .............................................. 1637
RESET ........................................................................ 1638
REVOKE ................................................................. 1639
ROLLBACK ............................................................... 1643
ROLLBACK PREPARED ............................................... 1644
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT ....................................... 1645
SAVEPOINT ............................................................ 1647
SECURITY LABEL ....................................................... 1649
SELECT ...................................................................... 1651
SELECT INTO .......................................................... 1671
VII. Internals ..................................................................................................................................... 1889

49. Overview of Postgres Pro Internals ...................................................................................... 1890

49.1. The Path of a Query ..................................................................................................... 1890

49.2. How Connections Are Established ............................................................................ 1890

49.3. The Parser Stage .......................................................................................................... 1891

49.4. The Postgres Pro Rule System ...................................................................................... 1892

49.5. Planner/Optimizer ........................................................................................................ 1892

49.6. Executor ....................................................................................................................... 1893

50. System Catalogs .................................................................................................................. 1895
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50.1. Overview</td>
<td>1895</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.2. pg_aggregate</td>
<td>1897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.3. pg_am</td>
<td>1898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.4. pg_amop</td>
<td>1898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.5. pg_amproc</td>
<td>1899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.6. pg_attrdef</td>
<td>1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.7. pg_attribute</td>
<td>1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.8. pg_authid</td>
<td>1902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.9. pg_auth_members</td>
<td>1904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.10. pg_cast</td>
<td>1904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.11. pg_class</td>
<td>1905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.12. pg_collation</td>
<td>1907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.13. pg_constraint</td>
<td>1908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.14. pg_conversion</td>
<td>1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.15. pg_database</td>
<td>1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.16. pg_db_role_setting</td>
<td>1911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.17. pg_default_acl</td>
<td>1912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.18. pg_depend</td>
<td>1912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.19. pg_description</td>
<td>1914</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.20. pg_enum</td>
<td>1915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.21. pg_event_trigger</td>
<td>1915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.22. pg_extension</td>
<td>1916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.23. pg_foreign_data_wrapper</td>
<td>1916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.24. pg_foreign_server</td>
<td>1917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.25. pg_foreign_table</td>
<td>1917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.26. pg_index</td>
<td>1918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.27. pg_inherits</td>
<td>1919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.28. pg_init_prv</td>
<td>1919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.29. pg_language</td>
<td>1920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.30. pg_largeobject</td>
<td>1921</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.31. pg_largeobject_metadata</td>
<td>1921</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.32. pg_namespace</td>
<td>1922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.33. pg_opclass</td>
<td>1922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.34. pg_operator</td>
<td>1923</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.35. pg_opfamily</td>
<td>1923</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.36. pg_partitioned_table</td>
<td>1924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.37. pg_policy</td>
<td>1925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.38. pg_proc</td>
<td>1925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.39. pg_profile</td>
<td>1928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.40. pg_publication</td>
<td>1928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.41. pg_publication_rel</td>
<td>1929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.42. pg_range</td>
<td>1929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.43. pg_replication_origin</td>
<td>1930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.44. pg_rewrite</td>
<td>1930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.45. pg_role_password</td>
<td>1931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.46. pg_seclabel</td>
<td>1931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.47. pg_sequence</td>
<td>1932</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.48. pg_shdepend</td>
<td>1932</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.49. pg_shdescription</td>
<td>1933</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.50. pg_shaclabel</td>
<td>1934</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.51. pg_statistic</td>
<td>1934</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.52. pg_statistic_ext</td>
<td>1935</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.53. pg_statistic_ext_data</td>
<td>1936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.54. pg_subscription</td>
<td>1937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.55. pg_subscription_rel</td>
<td>1937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.56. pg_tablespace</td>
<td>1938</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.57. pg_transform</td>
<td>1938</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.58. pg_trigger</td>
<td>1939</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.59. pg_ts_config</td>
<td>1940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.60. pg_ts_config_map</td>
<td>1941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.61. pg_ts_dict</td>
<td>1941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.62. pg_ts_parser</td>
<td>1941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.63. pg_ts_template</td>
<td>1942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.64. pg_type</td>
<td>1942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.65. pg_user_mapping</td>
<td>1946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.66. System Views</td>
<td>1946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.67. pg_available_extensions</td>
<td>1947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.68. pg_available_extension_versions</td>
<td>1947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.69. pg_backend_memory_contexts</td>
<td>1948</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.70. pg_config</td>
<td>1949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.71. pg_cursors</td>
<td>1949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.72. pg_file_settings</td>
<td>1950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.73. pg_group</td>
<td>1951</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.74. pg_hba_file_rules</td>
<td>1951</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.75. pg_indexs</td>
<td>1952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.76. pg_locks</td>
<td>1952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.77. pg_matviews</td>
<td>1954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.78. pg_policies</td>
<td>1955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.79. pg_prepared_statements</td>
<td>1955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.80. pg_prepared_xacts</td>
<td>1956</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.81. pg_publication_tables</td>
<td>1957</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.82. pg_replication_origin_status</td>
<td>1957</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.83. pg_replication_slots</td>
<td>1957</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.84. pg_roles</td>
<td>1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.85. pg_rules</td>
<td>1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.86. pg_seclabels</td>
<td>1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.87. pg_sequences</td>
<td>1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.88. pg_settings</td>
<td>1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.89. pg_shadow</td>
<td>1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.90. pg_shmem_allocations</td>
<td>1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.91. pg_stats_ext</td>
<td>1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.92. pg_stats_ext_exprs</td>
<td>1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.93. pg_stats_ext_exprs_map</td>
<td>1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.94. pg_tables</td>
<td>1968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.95. pg_timezone_abbrevs</td>
<td>1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.96. pg_timezone_names</td>
<td>1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.97. pg_user</td>
<td>1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.98. pg_user_mappings</td>
<td>1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.99. pg_views</td>
<td>1971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51. Frontend/Backend Protocol</td>
<td>1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.1. Overview</td>
<td>1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.2. Message Flow</td>
<td>1973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.3. SASL Authentication</td>
<td>1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.4. Streaming Replication Protocol</td>
<td>1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.5. Logical Streaming Replication Protocol</td>
<td>1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.6. Message Data Types</td>
<td>1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.7. Message Formats</td>
<td>1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.8. Error and Notice Message Fields</td>
<td>2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.9. Logical Replication Message Formats</td>
<td>2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.10. Summary of Changes since Protocol 2.0</td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. Writing a Procedural Language Handler</td>
<td>2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper</td>
<td>2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.1</td>
<td>Foreign Data Wrapper Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.2</td>
<td>Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.3</td>
<td>Foreign Data Wrapper Helper Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.4</td>
<td>Foreign Data Wrapper Query Planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.5</td>
<td>Row Locking in Foreign Data Wrappers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Writing a Table Sampling Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.1</td>
<td>Sampling Method Support Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>Writing a Custom Scan Provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.1</td>
<td>Creating Custom Scan Paths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.2</td>
<td>Creating Custom Scan Plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.3</td>
<td>Executing Custom Scans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Genetic Query Optimizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.1</td>
<td>Query Handling as a Complex Optimization Problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.2</td>
<td>Genetic Algorithms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.3</td>
<td>Genetic Query Optimization (GEQO) in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.4</td>
<td>Further Reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>Table Access Method Interface Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Index Access Method Interface Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.1</td>
<td>Basic API Structure for Indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.2</td>
<td>Index Access Method Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.3</td>
<td>Index Scanning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.4</td>
<td>Index Locking Considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.5</td>
<td>Index Uniqueness Checks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.6</td>
<td>Index Cost Estimation Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Generic WAL Records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>B-Tree Indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.2</td>
<td>Behavior of B-Tree Operator Classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.3</td>
<td>B-Tree Support Functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.4</td>
<td>Implementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>GiST Indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.2</td>
<td>Built-in Operator Classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.3</td>
<td>Extensibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.4</td>
<td>Implementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.5</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>SP-GiST Indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.2</td>
<td>Built-in Operator Classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.3</td>
<td>Extensibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.4</td>
<td>Implementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>GIN Indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.2</td>
<td>Built-in Operator Classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.3</td>
<td>Extensibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.4</td>
<td>Implementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.5</td>
<td>GIN Tips and Tricks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.6</td>
<td>Limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.7</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>BRIN Indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.2</td>
<td>Built-in Operator Classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.3</td>
<td>Extensibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>Hash Indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.2</td>
<td>Implementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>Database Physical Storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.1</td>
<td>Database File Layout</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
86. Backup Manifest Format ....................................................................................................... 2142
86.1. Backup Manifest Top-level Object ................................................................................ 2142
86.2. Backup Manifest File Object ........................................................................................ 2142
86.3. Backup Manifest WAL Range Object .......................................................................... 2143

VIII. Appendixes .................................................................................................................. 2144
A. Postgres Pro Error Codes .................................................................................................. 2145
B. Date/Time Support ............................................................................................................. 2154
B.1. Date/Time Input Interpretation ....................................................................................... 2154
B.2. Handling of Invalid or Ambiguous Timestamps .............................................................. 2155
B.3. Date/Time Key Words .................................................................................................... 2155
B.4. Date/Time Configuration Files ...................................................................................... 2156
B.5. POSIX Time Zone Specifications .................................................................................... 2158
B.6. History of Units .............................................................................................................. 2159
B.7. Julian Dates .................................................................................................................... 2160
C. SQL Key Words ................................................................................................................ 2162
D. SQL Conformance .............................................................................................................. 2187
D.1. Supported Features ........................................................................................................ 2188
D.2. Unsupported Features ..................................................................................................... 2198
D.3. XML Limits and Conformance to SQL/XML ................................................................. 2207
E. Release Notes .................................................................................................................... 2210
E.1. Postgres Pro Standard 14.1.1 ........................................................................................ 2210
E.2. Release 14.1 .................................................................................................................. 2212
E.3. Release 14 ...................................................................................................................... 2216
E.4. Prior Releases .................................................................................................................. 2238
F. Additional Supplied Modules ............................................................................................. 2239
F.1. adminpack ....................................................................................................................... 2239
F.2. amcheck .......................................................................................................................... 2240
F.3. auth_delay ....................................................................................................................... 2245
F.4. auto_explain .................................................................................................................... 2245
F.5. bloom ............................................................................................................................... 2248
F.6. btree_gin .......................................................................................................................... 2251
F.7. btree_gist ........................................................................................................................ 2251
F.8. citext ............................................................................................................................... 2252
F.9. cube ................................................................................................................................. 2254
F.10. dblink ............................................................................................................................. 2258
F.11. dict_int ............................................................................................................................ 2287
F.12. dict_xsyn ....................................................................................................................... 2287
F.13. dump_stat ...................................................................................................................... 2289
F.14. earthdistance ............................................................................................................... 2291
F.15. fastrun ............................................................................................................................ 2292
F.16. file_fdw ........................................................................................................................ 2293
F.17. fulleq .............................................................................................................................. 2295
F.18. fuzzystrmatch .............................................................................................................. 2296
F.19. hstore ............................................................................................................................. 2298
F.20. Hunspell Dictionaries Modules ..................................................................................... 2305
F.21. intagg ............................................................................................................................ 2306
F.22. intarray ........................................................................................................................ 2307
F.23. isn ................................................................................................................................. 2310
F.24. jsquery .......................................................................................................................... 2313

xix
| F.25. lo | 2318 |
| F.26. ltree | 2319 |
| F.27. mchar | 2325 |
| F.28. online_analyze | 2326 |
| F.29. old_snapshot | 2327 |
| F.30. pageinspect | 2327 |
| F.31. passwordcheck | 2335 |
| F.32. pg_buffercache | 2336 |
| F.33. pgcrypto | 2337 |
| F.34. pg_freespacemap | 2347 |
| F.35. pg_pathman | 2348 |
| F.36. pg_proaudit | 2367 |
| F.37. pgpro_pwr | 2377 |
| F.38. pg_prewarm | 2415 |
| F.39. pgpro_stats | 2416 |
| F.40. pg_query_state | 2428 |
| F.41. pgrowlocks | 2434 |
| F.42. pg_stat_statements | 2435 |
| F.43. pgstattuple | 2441 |
| F.44. pg_surgery | 2445 |
| F.45. pg_trgm | 2447 |
| F.46. pg_tsparser | 2451 |
| F.47. pg_variables | 2453 |
| F.48. pg_visibility | 2460 |
| F.49. plantuner | 2461 |
| F.50. postgres_fdw | 2462 |
| F.51. ptrack | 2470 |
| F.52. seg | 2472 |
| F.53. sepgsql | 2474 |
| F.54. shared_ispell | 2481 |
| F.55. spi | 2483 |
| F.56. sslinfo | 2484 |
| F.57. tablefunc | 2486 |
| F.58. tcn | 2494 |
| F.59. test_decoding | 2495 |
| F.60. tsm_system_rows | 2496 |
| F.61. tsm_system_time | 2497 |
| F.62. unaccent | 2497 |
| F.63. uuid-ossp | 2499 |
| F.64. xml2 | 2500 |
| G. Additional Supplied Programs | 2505 |
| G.1. Client Applications | 2505 |
| G.2. Server Applications | 2569 |
| H. External Projects | 2617 |
| H.1. Client Interfaces | 2617 |
| H.2. Administration Tools | 2617 |
| H.3. Procedural Languages | 2617 |
| H.4. Extensions | 2618 |
| I. Configuring Postgres Pro for 1C Solutions | 2619 |
| J. Postgres Pro Limits | 2620 |
| K. Demo Database “Airlines” | 2621 |
| K.1. Installation | 2621 |
| K.2. Schema Diagram | 2622 |
| K.3. Schema Description | 2622 |
| K.4. Schema Objects | 2623 |
| K.5. Usage | 2629 |
| L. Acronyms | 2637 |
| M. Glossary | 2642 |
Preface

This book is the official documentation of Postgres Pro Standard. It has been written by the Postgres Pro developers, PostgreSQL community, and other volunteers in parallel to the development of the PostgreSQL and Postgres Pro software. It describes all the functionality that the current version of Postgres Pro officially supports.

To make the large amount of information about Postgres Pro manageable, this book has been organized in several parts. Each part is targeted at a different class of users, or at users in different stages of their Postgres Pro experience:

- **Part I** is an informal introduction for new users.
- **Part II** documents the SQL query language environment, including data types and functions, as well as user-level performance tuning. Every Postgres Pro user should read this.
- **Part III** describes the installation and administration of the server. Everyone who runs a Postgres Pro server, be it for private use or for others, should read this part.
- **Part IV** describes the programming interfaces for Postgres Pro client programs.
- **Part V** contains information for advanced users about the extensibility capabilities of the server. Topics include user-defined data types and functions.
- **Part VI** contains reference information about SQL commands, client and server programs. This part supports the other parts with structured information sorted by command or program.
- **Part VII** contains assorted information that might be of use to Postgres Pro developers.

1. **What Is Postgres Pro Standard?**

Postgres Pro Standard is an object-relational database management system (ORDBMS), developed by Postgres Professional in the Postgres Pro fork of *PostgreSQL*, which is in turn based on *POSTGRES, Version 4.2*, developed at the University of California at Berkeley Computer Science Department. POSTGRES pioneered many concepts that only became available in some commercial database systems much later.

Both PostgreSQL and Postgres Pro Standard support a large part of the SQL standard and offer many modern features:

- complex queries
- foreign keys
- triggers
- updatable views
- transactional integrity
- multiversion concurrency control

Besides, PostgreSQL and Postgres Pro can be extended by the user in many ways, for example by adding new

- data types
- functions
- operators
- aggregate functions
- index methods
- procedural languages

2. **Difference between Postgres Pro Standard and PostgreSQL**

Postgres Pro provides the most actual PostgreSQL version with some additional patches applied and extensions added. It includes new features developed by Postgres Professional, as well as third-party
patches already accepted by the PostgreSQL community for the upcoming PostgreSQL versions. Postgres Pro Standard users thus have early access to important features and fixes.

**Note**

Postgres Pro Standard is provided under the following license: [https://postgrespro.com/products/postgrespro/eula](https://postgrespro.com/products/postgrespro/eula). Make sure to review the license terms before downloading Postgres Pro Standard.

Postgres Pro Standard provides the following enhancements over PostgreSQL:

- Improved deadlock detection mechanism that does not cause performance degradation.
- Better planning speed and accuracy for various query types.
- Reduced memory consumption in complex queries that involve multiple tables.
- Displaying planning time in the output of the `auto_explain` module.
- NUL byte replacement with the specified ASCII code while loading data using the `COPY FROM` command. (See `nul_byte_replacement_on_import` parameter description.)
- ICU collation support on all platforms to provide platform-independent sort for various locales. By default, the `icu` collation provider is used for all locales except `C` and `POSIX`. (See Section 22.2.2.)
- `PTRACK` implementation, which enables `pg_probackup` to track page changes on the fly when creating incremental backups.
- Support for reading `pg_control` of previous PostgreSQL/Postgres Pro major versions by `pgpro_controldata`.
- Cluster compatibility verification, which allows you to determine whether the current Postgres Pro version is compatible with the specified cluster and identify all parameters that can affect the compatibility without starting the cluster. (See `pgpro_controldata` and `--Z` option of `postgres`.)
- Changing the `restore_command` parameter without restarting the server.
- Improvements for command-line editing using WinEditLine in the Windows version of `psql`, including autocomplete support in `psql` console and changing the `psql` default encoding to UTF-8.
- Unified structure of binary installation packages across all Linux distributions, which facilitates migration between them and allows to install different PostgreSQL-based products side by side, without any conflicts. (See Chapter 16.)
- Advanced authentication policies that provide effective password management and access control. (See `CREATE PROFILE` and `ALTER ROLE`.)
- Built-in data security mechanisms that enable sanitizing an object by filling it with zeroes before deletion. Zeroing can be done before purging files in external memory and removing outdated row versions (page vacuum), freeing RAM, and deleting or overwriting WAL files. (Certified edition only.)

Postgres Pro Standard also includes the following additional modules:

- `dump_stat` module that allows to save and restore database statistics when dumping/restoring the database.
- `fasttrun` module that provides transaction-unsafe function to truncate temporary tables without growing `pg_class` size.
- `fulleq` module that provides additional equivalence operator for compatibility with Microsoft SQL Server.
- `hunspell-dict` module that provides dictionaries for several languages.
- `jsquery` module that provides a specific language for effective index-supported querying of JSONB data.
- `mamonsu` monitoring service, which is implemented as a Zabbix agent.
- `mchar` module that provides additional data type for compatibility with Microsoft SQL Server.
- `online_analyze` module that provides a set of changes to immediately update statistics after `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE` or `SELECT INTO` operations applied for affected tables.
- `pgbouncer` connection pooler.
- `pg_integrity_check` module that calculates checksums for controlled files. (Certified edition only.)
• **pg_pathman** module that provides optimized partitioning mechanism and functions to manage partitions. Starting from Postgres Pro 12, using pg_pathman is not recommended. Use vanilla declarative partitioning instead, as described in Section 5.11.

• **pg_proaudit** extension that enables detailed logging of various security events.

• **pg_probackup**, a backup and recovery manager.

• **pgpro_controldata**, an application to display control information of a PostgreSQL/Postgres Pro database cluster and compatibility information for a cluster and/or server.

• **pgpro_pwr** extension that enables you to generate workload reports, which help to discover most resource-intensive activities in your database.

• **pgpro_stats** extension that combines tracking execution statistics of SQL statements and calculating wait event statistics.

• **pg_query_state** module that enables you to get the current state of query execution for a backend.

• **pg_repack** utility for reorganizing tables.

• **pg_tsparser** module, which is an alternative text search parser.

• **pg_variables** module that provides functions for working with variables of various types.

• **plantuner** module that provides hints for the planner to disable or enable indexes for query execution.

• **shared_ispell** module that enables storing dictionaries in shared memory.

Postgres Pro Standard releases follow PostgreSQL releases, though sometimes occur more frequently. The Postgres Pro Standard versioning scheme is based on the PostgreSQL one and has an additional decimal place.

### 3. A Brief History of PostgreSQL

The object-relational database management system now known as PostgreSQL is derived from the POSTGRES package written at the University of California at Berkeley. With over two decades of development behind it, PostgreSQL is now the most advanced open-source database available anywhere.

#### 3.1. The Berkeley POSTGRES Project

The POSTGRES project, led by Professor Michael Stonebraker, was sponsored by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the Army Research Office (ARO), the National Science Foundation (NSF), and ESL, Inc. The implementation of POSTGRES began in 1986. The initial concepts for the system were presented in ston86, and the definition of the initial data model appeared in rowe87. The design of the rule system at that time was described in ston87a. The rationale and architecture of the storage manager were detailed in ston87b.

POSTGRES has undergone several major releases since then. The first “demoware” system became operational in 1987 and was shown at the 1988 ACM-SIGMOD Conference. Version 1, described in ston90a, was released to a few external users in June 1989. In response to a critique of the first rule system (ston89), the rule system was redesigned (ston90b), and Version 2 was released in June 1990 with the new rule system. Version 3 appeared in 1991 and added support for multiple storage managers, an improved query executor, and a rewritten rule system. For the most part, subsequent releases until Postgres95 (see below) focused on portability and reliability.

POSTGRES has been used to implement many different research and production applications. These include: a financial data analysis system, a jet engine performance monitoring package, an asteroid tracking database, a medical information database, and several geographic information systems. POSTGRES has also been used as an educational tool at several universities. Finally, Illustra Information Technologies (later merged into Informix, which is now owned by IBM) picked up the code and commercialized it. In late 1992, POSTGRES became the primary data manager for the Sequoia 2000 scientific computing project.

The size of the external user community nearly doubled during 1993. It became increasingly obvious that maintenance of the prototype code and support was taking up large amounts of time that should have been devoted to database research. In an effort to reduce this support burden, the Berkeley POSTGRES project officially ended with Version 4.2.
3.2. Postgres95

In 1994, Andrew Yu and Jolly Chen added an SQL language interpreter to POSTGRES. Under a new name, Postgres95 was subsequently released to the web to find its own way in the world as an open-source descendant of the original POSTGRES Berkeley code.

Postgres95 code was completely ANSI C and trimmed in size by 25%. Many internal changes improved performance and maintainability. Postgres95 release 1.0.x ran about 30–50% faster on the Wisconsin Benchmark compared to POSTGRES, Version 4.2. Apart from bug fixes, the following were the major enhancements:

- The query language PostQUEL was replaced with SQL (implemented in the server). (Interface library libpq was named after PostQUEL.) Subqueries were not supported until PostgreSQL (see below), but they could be imitated in Postgres95 with user-defined SQL functions. Aggregate functions were re-implemented. Support for the \texttt{GROUP BY} query clause was also added.

- A new program (psql) was provided for interactive SQL queries, which used GNU Readline. This largely superseded the old monitor program.

- A new front-end library, \texttt{libpgtcl}, supported Tcl-based clients. A sample shell, \texttt{pgtclsh}, provided new Tcl commands to interface Tcl programs with the Postgres95 server.

- The large-object interface was overhauled. The inversion large objects were the only mechanism for storing large objects. (The inversion file system was removed.)

- The instance-level rule system was removed. Rules were still available as rewrite rules.

- A short tutorial introducing regular SQL features as well as those of Postgres95 was distributed with the source code

- GNU make (instead of BSD make) was used for the build. Also, Postgres95 could be compiled with an unpatched GCC (data alignment of doubles was fixed).

3.3. PostgreSQL

By 1996, it became clear that the name “Postgres95” would not stand the test of time. We chose a new name, PostgreSQL, to reflect the relationship between the original POSTGRES and the more recent versions with SQL capability. At the same time, we set the version numbering to start at 6.0, putting the numbers back into the sequence originally begun by the Berkeley POSTGRES project.

Many people continue to refer to PostgreSQL as “Postgres” (now rarely in all capital letters) because of tradition or because it is easier to pronounce. This usage is widely accepted as a nickname or alias.

The emphasis during development of Postgres95 was on identifying and understanding existing problems in the server code. With PostgreSQL, the emphasis has shifted to augmenting features and capabilities, although work continues in all areas.

4. Conventions

The following conventions are used in the synopsis of a command: brackets ([ and ]) indicate optional parts. (In the synopsis of a Tcl command, question marks (?) are used instead, as is usual in Tcl.) Braces ({} and {}) and vertical lines (|) indicate that you must choose one alternative. Dots (…) mean that the preceding element can be repeated.

Where it enhances the clarity, SQL commands are preceded by the prompt =>, and shell commands are preceded by the prompt $. Normally, prompts are not shown, though.

An administrator is generally a person who is in charge of installing and running the server. A user could be anyone who is using, or wants to use, any part of the Postgres Pro system. These terms should not be interpreted too narrowly; this book does not have fixed presumptions about system administration procedures.
5. Bug Reporting Guidelines

When you find a bug in Postgres Pro we want to hear about it. Your bug reports play an important part in making Postgres Pro more reliable because even the utmost care cannot guarantee that every part of Postgres Pro will work on every platform under every circumstance.

The following suggestions are intended to assist you in forming bug reports that can be handled in an effective fashion. No one is required to follow them but doing so tends to be to everyone’s advantage.

5.1. Identifying Bugs

Before you report a bug, please read and re-read the documentation to verify that you can really do whatever it is you are trying. If it is not clear from the documentation whether you can do something or not, please report that too; it is a bug in the documentation. If it turns out that a program does something different from what the documentation says, that is a bug. That might include, but is not limited to, the following circumstances:

- A program terminates with a fatal signal or an operating system error message that would point to a problem in the program. (A counterexample might be a “disk full” message, since you have to fix that yourself.)
- A program produces the wrong output for any given input.
- A program refuses to accept valid input (as defined in the documentation).
- A program accepts invalid input without a notice or error message. But keep in mind that your idea of invalid input might be our idea of an extension or compatibility with traditional practice.
- Postgres Pro fails to install according to the instructions on supported platforms.

Here “program” refers to any executable, not only the backend process.

Being slow or resource-hogging is not necessarily a bug. Failing to comply to the SQL standard is not necessarily a bug either, unless compliance for the specific feature is explicitly claimed.

5.2. What to Report

When reporting a bug, make sure to state all the facts. Each bug report should contain the following items:

- The exact sequence of steps from program start-up necessary to reproduce the problem. This should be self-contained; it is not enough to send in a bare SELECT statement without the preceding CREATE TABLE and INSERT statements, if the output should depend on the data in the tables.

The best format for a test case for SQL-related problems is a file that can be run through the psql frontend that shows the problem. (Be sure to not have anything in your ~/.psqlrc start-up file.) An easy way to create this file is to use pg_dump to dump out the table declarations and data needed to set the scene, then add the problem query. You are encouraged to minimize the size of your example, but this is not absolutely necessary. If the bug is reproducible, we will find it either way.

If your application uses some other client interface, such as PHP, then please try to isolate the offending queries.

- The output you got. If there is an error message, show it. If the program terminates with an operating system error, say which. If nothing at all happens, say so. Even if the result of your test case is a program crash or otherwise obvious it might not happen on our platform. The easiest thing is to copy the output from the terminal, if possible.

Note

If you are reporting an error message, please obtain the most verbose form of the message. In psql, say \set VERBOSITY verbose beforehand. If you are extracting the message from the
server log, set the run-time parameter `log_error_verbosity` to `verbose` so that all details are logged.

**Note**

In case of fatal errors, the error message reported by the client might not contain all the information available. Please also look at the log output of the database server.

- The output you expect is very important to state. Please provide the expected output, if applicable.
- Any command line options and other start-up options, including any relevant environment variables or configuration files that you changed from the default.
- Anything you did at all differently from the installation instructions.
- The Postgres Pro version. You can run the command `SELECT pgpro_version();` to find out the version of the server you are connected to. Most executable programs also support a `--version` option; at least `postgres --version` and `psql --version` should work.
- Platform information. This includes the kernel name and version, C library, processor, memory information, and so on.

### 5.3. Where to Report Bugs

In general, send bug reports to our support email address at `<bugs@postgrespro.ru>`. You are requested to use a descriptive subject for your email message, perhaps parts of the error message.

Do not send bug reports specific to Postgres Pro to the PostgreSQL support email address, as Postgres Pro is not supported by the PostgreSQL community. But you can send reports to `<pgsql-bugs@lists.postgresql.org>` for any bugs related to PostgreSQL.

Even if your bug is not specific to Postgres Pro, do not send bug reports to any of the user mailing lists, such as `<pgsql-sql@lists.postgresql.org>` or `<pgsql-general@lists.postgresql.org>`. These mailing lists are for answering user questions, and their subscribers normally do not wish to receive bug reports. More importantly, they are unlikely to fix them.

Also, please do not send reports to the developers' mailing list `<pgsql-hackers@lists.postgresql.org>`. This list is for discussing the development of PostgreSQL, and it would be nice if the community could keep the bug reports separate. The community might choose to take up a discussion about your bug report on `pgsql-hackers`, if the PostgreSQL-related problem needs more review.
Part I. Tutorial

Welcome to the Postgres Pro Tutorial. The following few chapters are intended to give a simple introduction to Postgres Pro, relational database concepts, and the SQL language to those who are new to any one of these aspects. We only assume some general knowledge about how to use computers. No particular Unix or programming experience is required. This part is mainly intended to give you some hands-on experience with important aspects of the Postgres Pro system. It makes no attempt to be a complete or thorough treatment of the topics it covers.

After you have worked through this tutorial you might want to move on to reading Part II to gain a more formal knowledge of the SQL language, or Part IV for information about developing applications for Postgres Pro. When learning SQL, you can use the demo database described in Appendix K. Those who set up and manage their own server should also read Part III.
Chapter 1. Getting Started

1.1. Installation

Before you can use Postgres Pro you need to install it, of course. It is possible that Postgres Pro is already installed at your site, either because it was included in your operating system distribution or because the system administrator already installed it. If that is the case, you should obtain information from the operating system documentation or your system administrator about how to access Postgres Pro.

If you are installing Postgres Pro Standard yourself, then see instructions on installation (Chapter 16), and return to this guide when the installation is complete. Be sure to follow closely the section about setting up the appropriate environment variables.

If your site administrator has not set things up in the default way, you might have some more work to do. For example, if the database server machine is a remote machine, you will need to set the `PGHOST` environment variable to the name of the database server machine. The environment variable `PGPORT` might also have to be set. The bottom line is this: if you try to start an application program and it complains that it cannot connect to the database, you should consult your site administrator or, if that is you, the documentation to make sure that your environment is properly set up. If you did not understand the preceding paragraph then read the next section.

1.2. Architectural Fundamentals

Before we proceed, you should understand the basic Postgres Pro system architecture. Understanding how the parts of Postgres Pro interact will make this chapter somewhat clearer.

In database jargon, Postgres Pro uses a client/server model. A Postgres Pro session consists of the following cooperating processes (programs):

- A server process, which manages the database files, accepts connections to the database from client applications, and performs database actions on behalf of the clients. The database server program is called `postgres`.
- The user's client (frontend) application that wants to perform database operations. Client applications can be very diverse in nature: a client could be a text-oriented tool, a graphical application, a web server that accesses the database to display web pages, or a specialized database maintenance tool. Some client applications are supplied with the Postgres Pro distribution; most are developed by users.

As is typical of client/server applications, the client and the server can be on different hosts. In that case they communicate over a TCP/IP network connection. You should keep this in mind, because the files that can be accessed on a client machine might not be accessible (or might only be accessible using a different file name) on the database server machine.

The Postgres Pro server can handle multiple concurrent connections from clients. To achieve this it starts ("forks") a new process for each connection. From that point on, the client and the new server process communicate without intervention by the original `postgres` process. Thus, the supervisor server process is always running, waiting for client connections, whereas client and associated server processes come and go. (All of this is of course invisible to the user. We only mention it here for completeness.)

1.3. Creating a Database

The first test to see whether you can access the database server is to try to create a database. A running Postgres Pro server can manage many databases. Typically, a separate database is used for each project or for each user.

Possibly, your site administrator has already created a database for your use. In that case you can omit this step and skip ahead to the next section.

To create a new database, in this example named `mydb`, you use the following command:
Getting Started

```sh
$ createdb mydb
```

If this produces no response then this step was successful and you can skip over the remainder of this section.

If you see a message similar to:

```
createdb: command not found
```

then Postgres Pro was not installed properly. Either it was not installed at all or your shell's search path was not set to include it. Try calling the command with an absolute path instead:

```sh
$ /usr/local/pgsql/bin/createdb mydb
```

The path at your site might be different. Contact your site administrator or check the installation instructions to correct the situation.

Another response could be this:

```
createdb: error: connection to server on socket "/tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432" failed: No such file or directory
```

Is the server running locally and accepting connections on that socket?

This means that the server was not started, or it is not listening where `createdb` expects to contact it. Again, check the installation instructions or consult the administrator.

Another response could be this:

```
createdb: error: connection to server on socket "/tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432" failed: FATAL: role "joe" does not exist
```

where your own login name is mentioned. This will happen if the administrator has not created a Postgres Pro user account for you. (Postgres Pro user accounts are distinct from operating system user accounts.) If you are the administrator, see Chapter 20 for help creating accounts. You will need to become the operating system user under which Postgres Pro was installed (usually `postgres`) to create the first user account. It could also be that you were assigned a Postgres Pro user name that is different from your operating system user name; in that case you need to use the `-U` switch or set the `PGUSER` environment variable to specify your Postgres Pro user name.

If you have a user account but it does not have the privileges required to create a database, you will see the following:

```
createdb: error: database creation failed: ERROR: permission denied to create database
```

Not every user has authorization to create new databases. If Postgres Pro refuses to create databases for you then the site administrator needs to grant you permission to create databases. Consult your site administrator if this occurs. If you installed Postgres Pro yourself then you should log in for the purposes of this tutorial under the user account that you started the server as.

You can also create databases with other names. Postgres Pro allows you to create any number of databases at a given site. Database names must have an alphabetic first character and are limited to 63 bytes in length. A convenient choice is to create a database with the same name as your current user name. Many tools assume that database name as the default, so it can save you some typing. To create that database, simply type:

```sh
$ createdb
```

If you do not want to use your database anymore you can remove it. For example, if you are the owner (creator) of the database `mydb`, you can destroy it using the following command:

```sh
$ dropdb mydb
```

---

1 As an explanation for why this works: Postgres Pro user names are separate from operating system user accounts. When you connect to a database, you can choose what Postgres Pro user name to connect as; if you don't, it will default to the same name as your current operating system account. As it happens, there will always be a Postgres Pro user account that has the same name as the operating system user that started the server, and it also happens that that user always has permission to create databases. Instead of logging in as that user you can also specify the `-U` option everywhere to select a Postgres Pro user name to connect as.
(For this command, the database name does not default to the user account name. You always need to specify it.) This action physically removes all files associated with the database and cannot be undone, so this should only be done with a great deal of forethought.

More about `createdb` and `dropdb` can be found in `createdb` and `dropdb` respectively.

1.4. Accessing a Database

Once you have created a database, you can access it by:

- Running the Postgres Pro interactive terminal program, called `psql`, which allows you to interactively enter, edit, and execute SQL commands.
- Using an existing graphical frontend tool like pgAdmin or an office suite with ODBC or JDBC support to create and manipulate a database. These possibilities are not covered in this tutorial.
- Writing a custom application, using one of the several available language bindings. These possibilities are discussed further in Part IV.

You probably want to start up `psql` to try the examples in this tutorial. It can be activated for the `mydb` database by typing the command:

```
$ psql mydb
```

If you do not supply the database name then it will default to your user account name. You already discovered this scheme in the previous section using `createdb`.

In `psql`, you will be greeted with the following message:

```
psql (14.1.1)
Type "help" for help.

mydb=>
```

The last line could also be:

```
mydb=#
```

That would mean you are a database superuser, which is most likely the case if you installed the Postgres Pro instance yourself. Being a superuser means that you are not subject to access controls. For the purposes of this tutorial that is not important.

If you encounter problems starting `psql` then go back to the previous section. The diagnostics of `createdb` and `psql` are similar, and if the former worked the latter should work as well.

The last line printed out by `psql` is the prompt, and it indicates that `psql` is listening to you and that you can type SQL queries into a work space maintained by `psql`. Try out these commands:

```
mydb=> SELECT pgpro_version();
version
-------------------------
PostgresPro 14.1.1 on x86_64-pc-linux-gnu, compiled by gcc (Debian 4.9.2-10) 4.9.2, 64-bit
(1 row)
```

```
mydb=> SELECT current_date;
date
----------
2016-01-07
(1 row)
```

```
mydb=> SELECT 2 + 2;
?column?
----------
4
```
The psql program has a number of internal commands that are not SQL commands. They begin with the backslash character, "\". For example, you can get help on the syntax of various Postgres Pro SQL commands by typing:

mydb=> \h

To get out of psql, type:

mydb=> \q

and psql will quit and return you to your command shell. (For more internal commands, type \? at the psql prompt.) The full capabilities of psql are documented in psql. In this tutorial we will not use these features explicitly, but you can use them yourself when it is helpful.
Chapter 2. The SQL Language

2.1. Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of how to use SQL to perform simple operations. This tutorial is only intended to give you an introduction and is in no way a complete tutorial on SQL. Numerous books have been written on SQL, including melt93 and date97. You should be aware that some Postgres Pro language features are extensions to the standard.

In the examples that follow, we assume that you have created a database named mydb, as described in the previous chapter, and have been able to start psql.

2.2. Concepts

Postgres Pro is a relational database management system (RDBMS). That means it is a system for managing data stored in relations. Relation is essentially a mathematical term for table. The notion of storing data in tables is so commonplace today that it might seem inherently obvious, but there are a number of other ways of organizing databases. Files and directories on Unix-like operating systems form an example of a hierarchical database. A more modern development is the object-oriented database.

Each table is a named collection of rows. Each row of a given table has the same set of named columns, and each column is of a specific data type. Whereas columns have a fixed order in each row, it is important to remember that SQL does not guarantee the order of the rows within the table in any way (although they can be explicitly sorted for display).

Tables are grouped into databases, and a collection of databases managed by a single Postgres Pro server instance constitutes a database cluster.

2.3. Creating a New Table

You can create a new table by specifying the table name, along with all column names and their types:

```
CREATE TABLE weather (  
    city              varchar(80),  
    temp_lo           int,           -- low temperature  
    temp_hi           int,           -- high temperature  
    prcp              real,          -- precipitation  
    date              date           
);  
```

You can enter this into psql with the line breaks. psql will recognize that the command is not terminated until the semicolon.

White space (i.e., spaces, tabs, and newlines) can be used freely in SQL commands. That means you can type the command aligned differently than above, or even all on one line. Two dashes ("--") introduce comments. Whatever follows them is ignored up to the end of the line. SQL is case insensitive about key words and identifiers, except when identifiers are double-quoted to preserve the case (not done above).

`varchar(80)` specifies a data type that can store arbitrary character strings up to 80 characters in length. `int` is the normal integer type. `real` is a type for storing single precision floating-point numbers. `date` should be self-explanatory. (Yes, the column of type `date` is also named `date`. This might be convenient or confusing — you choose.)

Postgres Pro supports the standard SQL types `int`, `smallint`, `real`, `double precision`, `char(N)`, `varchar(N)`, `date`, `time`, `timestamp`, and `interval`, as well as other types of general utility and a rich set of geometric types. Postgres Pro can be customized with an arbitrary number of user-defined data types. Consequently, type names are not key words in the syntax, except where required to support special cases in the SQL standard.
The second example will store cities and their associated geographical location:

```sql
CREATE TABLE cities (
    name            varchar(80),
    location        point
);  
```

The `point` type is an example of a Postgres Pro-specific data type.

Finally, it should be mentioned that if you don't need a table any longer or want to recreate it differently you can remove it using the following command:

```sql
DROP TABLE tablename;  
```

### 2.4. Populating a Table With Rows

The `INSERT` statement is used to populate a table with rows:

```sql
INSERT INTO weather VALUES ('San Francisco', 46, 50, 0.25, '1994-11-27');  
```

Note that all data types use rather obvious input formats. Constants that are not simple numeric values usually must be surrounded by single quotes (`'`), as in the example. The `date` type is actually quite flexible in what it accepts, but for this tutorial we will stick to the unambiguous format shown here.

The `point` type requires a coordinate pair as input, as shown here:

```sql
INSERT INTO cities VALUES ('San Francisco', '(-194.0, 53.0)');  
```

The syntax used so far requires you to remember the order of the columns. An alternative syntax allows you to list the columns explicitly:

```sql
INSERT INTO weather (city, temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp, date)
    VALUES ('San Francisco', 43, 57, 0.0, '1994-11-29');  
```

You can list the columns in a different order if you wish or even omit some columns, e.g., if the precipitation is unknown:

```sql
INSERT INTO weather (date, city, temp_hi, temp_lo)
    VALUES ('1994-11-29', 'Hayward', 54, 37);  
```

Many developers consider explicitly listing the columns better style than relying on the order implicitly.

Please enter all the commands shown above so you have some data to work with in the following sections.

You could also have used `COPY` to load large amounts of data from flat-text files. This is usually faster because the `COPY` command is optimized for this application while allowing less flexibility than `INSERT`. An example would be:

```sql
COPY weather FROM '/home/user/weather.txt';  
```

where the file name for the source file must be available on the machine running the backend process, not the client, since the backend process reads the file directly. You can read more about the `COPY` command in `COPY`.

### 2.5. Querying a Table

To retrieve data from a table, the table is `queried`. An SQL `SELECT` statement is used to do this. The statement is divided into a select list (the part that lists the columns to be returned), a table list (the part that lists the tables from which to retrieve the data), and an optional qualification (the part that specifies any restrictions). For example, to retrieve all the rows of table `weather`, type:

```sql
SELECT * FROM weather;  
```

Here `*` is a shorthand for “all columns”. So the same result would be had with:

---

1 While `SELECT *` is useful for off-the-cuff queries, it is widely considered bad style in production code, since adding a column to the table would change the results.
The SQL Language

```
SELECT city, temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp, date FROM weather;
```

The output should be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>temp_lo</th>
<th>temp_hi</th>
<th>prcp</th>
<th>date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1994-11-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3 rows)

You can write expressions, not just simple column references, in the select list. For example, you can do:

```
SELECT city, (temp_hi+temp_lo)/2 AS temp_avg, date FROM weather;
```

This should give:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>temp_avg</th>
<th>date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>1994-11-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3 rows)

Notice how the AS clause is used to relabel the output column. (The AS clause is optional.)

A query can be “qualified” by adding a WHERE clause that specifies which rows are wanted. The WHERE clause contains a Boolean (truth value) expression, and only rows for which the Boolean expression is true are returned. The usual Boolean operators (AND, OR, and NOT) are allowed in the qualification. For example, the following retrieves the weather of San Francisco on rainy days:

```
SELECT * FROM weather
WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND prcp > 0.0;
```

Result:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>temp_lo</th>
<th>temp_hi</th>
<th>prcp</th>
<th>date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1994-11-27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

You can request that the results of a query be returned in sorted order:

```
SELECT * FROM weather
ORDER BY city;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>temp_lo</th>
<th>temp_hi</th>
<th>prcp</th>
<th>date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1994-11-27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this example, the sort order isn't fully specified, and so you might get the San Francisco rows in either order. But you'd always get the results shown above if you do:

```
SELECT * FROM weather
ORDER BY city, temp_lo;
```

You can request that duplicate rows be removed from the result of a query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT city
FROM weather;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8
Here again, the result row ordering might vary. You can ensure consistent results by using `DISTINCT` and `ORDER BY` together:

```sql
SELECT DISTINCT city
FROM weather
ORDER BY city;
```

### 2.6. Joins Between Tables

Thus far, our queries have only accessed one table at a time. Queries can access multiple tables at once, or access the same table in such a way that multiple rows of the table are being processed at the same time. Queries that access multiple tables (or multiple instances of the same table) at one time are called **join** queries. They combine rows from one table with rows from a second table, with an expression specifying which rows are to be paired. For example, to return all the weather records together with the location of the associated city, the database needs to compare the `city` column of each row of the `weather` table with the `name` column of all rows in the `cities` table, and select the pairs of rows where these values match. This would be accomplished by the following query:

```sql
SELECT * FROM weather JOIN cities ON city = name;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>temp_lo</th>
<th>temp_hi</th>
<th>prcp</th>
<th>date</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1994-11-27</td>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>(-194,53)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>(-194,53)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe two things about the result set:

- There is no result row for the city of Hayward. This is because there is no matching entry in the `cities` table for Hayward, so the join ignores the unmatched rows in the `weather` table. We will see shortly how this can be fixed.

- There are two columns containing the city name. This is correct because the lists of columns from the `weather` and `cities` tables are concatenated. In practice this is undesirable, though, so you will probably want to list the output columns explicitly rather than using `*`:

```sql
SELECT city, temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp, date, location
FROM weather JOIN cities ON city = name;
```

Since the columns all had different names, the parser automatically found which table they belong to. If there were duplicate column names in the two tables you'd need to **qualify** the column names to show which one you meant, as in:

```sql
SELECT weather.city, weather.temp_lo, weather.temp_hi,
       weather.prcp, weather.date, cities.location
FROM weather JOIN cities ON weather.city = cities.name;
```

It is widely considered good style to qualify all column names in a join query, so that the query won’t fail if a duplicate column name is later added to one of the tables.

Join queries of the kind seen thus far can also be written in this form:

```sql
SELECT *
FROM weather, cities
WHERE city = name;
```

This syntax pre-dates the `JOIN/ON` syntax, which was introduced in SQL-92. The tables are simply listed in the `FROM` clause, and the comparison expression is added to the `WHERE` clause. The results from this older...
implicit syntax and the newer explicit JOIN/ON syntax are identical. But for a reader of the query, the explicit syntax makes its meaning easier to understand: The join condition is introduced by its own keyword whereas previously the condition was mixed into the WHERE clause together with other conditions.

Now we will figure out how we can get the Hayward records back in. What we want the query to do is to scan the weather table and for each row to find the matching cities row(s). If no matching row is found we want some “empty values” to be substituted for the cities table’s columns. This kind of query is called an outer join. (The joins we have seen so far are inner joins.) The command looks like this:

```
SELECT * 
FROM weather LEFT OUTER JOIN cities ON weather.city = cities.name;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>temp_lo</th>
<th>temp_hi</th>
<th>prcp</th>
<th>date</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1994-11-27</td>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>(-194,53)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>(-194,53)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3 rows)

This query is called a left outer join because the table mentioned on the left of the join operator will have each of its rows in the output at least once, whereas the table on the right will only have those rows output that match some row of the left table. When outputting a left-table row for which there is no right-table match, empty (null) values are substituted for the right-table columns.

**Exercise:** There are also right outer joins and full outer joins. Try to find out what those do.

We can also join a table against itself. This is called a self join. As an example, suppose we wish to find all the weather records that are in the temperature range of other weather records. So we need to compare the temp_lo and temp_hi columns of each weather row to the temp_lo and temp_hi columns of all other weather rows. We can do this with the following query:

```
SELECT w1.city, w1.temp_lo AS low, w1.temp_hi AS high, 
      w2.city, w2.temp_lo AS low, w2.temp_hi AS high 
FROM weather w1 JOIN weather w2 
  ON w1.temp_lo < w2.temp_lo AND w1.temp_hi > w2.temp_hi;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>low</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>city</th>
<th>low</th>
<th>high</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2 rows)

Here we have relabeled the weather table as w1 and w2 to be able to distinguish the left and right side of the join. You can also use these kinds of aliases in other queries to save some typing, e.g.:

```
SELECT * 
FROM weather w JOIN cities c ON w.city = c.name;
```

You will encounter this style of abbreviating quite frequently.

### 2.7. Aggregate Functions

Like most other relational database products, Postgres Pro supports aggregate functions. An aggregate function computes a single result from multiple input rows. For example, there are aggregates to compute the count, sum, avg (average), max (maximum) and min (minimum) over a set of rows.

As an example, we can find the highest low-temperature reading anywhere with:

```
SELECT max(temp_lo) FROM weather;
```

```
max
46
```
If we wanted to know what city (or cities) that reading occurred in, we might try:

```sql
SELECT city FROM weather WHERE temp_lo = max(temp_lo);
```

but this will not work since the aggregate `max` cannot be used in the `WHERE` clause. (This restriction exists because the `WHERE` clause determines which rows will be included in the aggregate calculation; so obviously it has to be evaluated before aggregate functions are computed.) However, as is often the case the query can be restated to accomplish the desired result, here by using a subquery:

```sql
SELECT city FROM weather
    WHERE temp_lo = (SELECT max(temp_lo) FROM weather);
```

```
San Francisco
```

This is OK because the subquery is an independent computation that computes its own aggregate separately from what is happening in the outer query.

Aggregates are also very useful in combination with `GROUP BY` clauses. For example, we can get the maximum low temperature observed in each city with:

```sql
SELECT city, max(temp_lo)
FROM weather
GROUP BY city;
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

which gives us one output row per city. Each aggregate result is computed over the table rows matching that city. We can filter these grouped rows using `HAVING`:

```sql
SELECT city, max(temp_lo)
FROM weather
GROUP BY city
HAVING max(temp_lo) < 40;
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

which gives us the same results for only the cities that have all `temp_lo` values below 40. Finally, if we only care about cities whose names begin with “S”, we might do:

```sql
SELECT city, max(temp_lo)
FROM weather
WHERE city LIKE 'S%'
GROUP BY city
HAVING max(temp_lo) < 40;
```

The `LIKE` operator does pattern matching and is explained in Section 9.7.

It is important to understand the interaction between aggregates and SQL’s `WHERE` and `HAVING` clauses. The fundamental difference between `WHERE` and `HAVING` is this: `WHERE` selects input rows before groups and aggregates are computed (thus, it controls which rows go into the aggregate computation), whereas `HAVING` selects group rows after groups and aggregates are computed. Thus, the `WHERE` clause must not contain aggregate functions; it makes no sense to try to use an aggregate to determine which rows will
be inputs to the aggregates. On the other hand, the `HAVING` clause always contains aggregate functions. (Strictly speaking, you are allowed to write a `HAVING` clause that doesn't use aggregates, but it's seldom useful. The same condition could be used more efficiently at the `WHERE` stage.)

In the previous example, we can apply the city name restriction in `WHERE`, since it needs no aggregate. This is more efficient than adding the restriction to `HAVING`, because we avoid doing the grouping and aggregate calculations for all rows that fail the `WHERE` check.

### 2.8. Updates

You can update existing rows using the `UPDATE` command. Suppose you discover the temperature readings are all off by 2 degrees after November 28. You can correct the data as follows:

```
UPDATE weather
  SET temp_hi = temp_hi - 2, temp_lo = temp_lo - 2
WHERE date > '1994-11-28';
```

Look at the new state of the data:

```
SELECT * FROM weather;
```

```
+---------+-------+-------+-----+----------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>temp_lo</th>
<th>temp_hi</th>
<th>prcp</th>
<th>date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1994-11-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayward</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+---------+-------+-------+-----+----------+
```

(3 rows)

### 2.9. Deletions

Rows can be removed from a table using the `DELETE` command. Suppose you are no longer interested in the weather of Hayward. Then you can do the following to delete those rows from the table:

```
DELETE FROM weather WHERE city = 'Hayward';
```

All weather records belonging to Hayward are removed.

```
SELECT * FROM weather;
```

```
+---------+-------+-------+-----+----------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>temp_lo</th>
<th>temp_hi</th>
<th>prcp</th>
<th>date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1994-11-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1994-11-29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+---------+-------+-------+-----+----------+
```

(2 rows)

One should be wary of statements of the form

```
DELETE FROM tablename;
```

Without a qualification, `DELETE` will remove all rows from the given table, leaving it empty. The system will not request confirmation before doing this!
Chapter 3. Advanced Features

3.1. Introduction

In the previous chapter we have covered the basics of using SQL to store and access your data in Postgres Pro. We will now discuss some more advanced features of SQL that simplify management and prevent loss or corruption of your data. Finally, we will look at some Postgres Pro extensions.

This chapter will on occasion refer to examples found in Chapter 2 to change or improve them, so it will be useful to have read that chapter. Some examples from this chapter can also be found in advanced.sql in the tutorial directory. This file also contains some sample data to load, which is not repeated here. (Refer to Section 2.1 for how to use the file.)

3.2. Views

Refer back to the queries in Section 2.6. Suppose the combined listing of weather records and city location is of particular interest to your application, but you do not want to type the query each time you need it. You can create a view over the query, which gives a name to the query that you can refer to like an ordinary table:

```sql
CREATE VIEW myview AS
    SELECT name, temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp, date, location
    FROM weather, cities
    WHERE city = name;
```

```sql
SELECT * FROM myview;
```

Making liberal use of views is a key aspect of good SQL database design. Views allow you to encapsulate the details of the structure of your tables, which might change as your application evolves, behind consistent interfaces.

Views can be used in almost any place a real table can be used. Building views upon other views is not uncommon.

3.3. Foreign Keys

Recall the weather and cities tables from Chapter 2. Consider the following problem: You want to make sure that no one can insert rows in the weather table that do not have a matching entry in the cities table. This is called maintaining the referential integrity of your data. In simplistic database systems this would be implemented (if at all) by first looking at the cities table to check if a matching record exists, and then inserting or rejecting the new weather records. This approach has a number of problems and is very inconvenient, so Postgres Pro can do this for you.

The new declaration of the tables would look like this:

```sql
CREATE TABLE cities (  
    name    varchar(80) primary key,  
    location point
);

CREATE TABLE weather (  
    city      varchar(80) references cities(name),  
    temp_lo   int,  
    temp_hi   int,  
    prcp      real,  
    date      date
);
```

Now try inserting an invalid record:
Advanced Features

INSERT INTO weather VALUES ('Berkeley', 45, 53, 0.0, '1994-11-28');
ERROR: insert or update on table "weather" violates foreign key constraint "weather_city_fkey"
DETAIL: Key (city)=(Berkeley) is not present in table "cities".

The behavior of foreign keys can be finely tuned to your application. We will not go beyond this simple example in this tutorial, but just refer you to Chapter 5 for more information. Making correct use of foreign keys will definitely improve the quality of your database applications, so you are strongly encouraged to learn about them.

3.4. Transactions

Transactions are a fundamental concept of all database systems. The essential point of a transaction is that it bundles multiple steps into a single, all-or-nothing operation. The intermediate states between the steps are not visible to other concurrent transactions, and if some failure occurs that prevents the transaction from completing, then none of the steps affect the database at all.

For example, consider a bank database that contains balances for various customer accounts, as well as total deposit balances for branches. Suppose that we want to record a payment of $100.00 from Alice's account to Bob's account. Simplifying outrageously, the SQL commands for this might look like:

```
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Alice';
UPDATE branches SET balance = balance - 100.00
    WHERE name = (SELECT branch_name FROM accounts WHERE name = 'Alice');
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Bob';
UPDATE branches SET balance = balance + 100.00
    WHERE name = (SELECT branch_name FROM accounts WHERE name = 'Bob');
```

The details of these commands are not important here; the important point is that there are several separate updates involved to accomplish this rather simple operation. Our bank's officers will want to be assured that either all these updates happen, or none of them happen. It would certainly not do for a system failure to result in Bob receiving $100.00 that was not debited from Alice. Nor would Alice long remain a happy customer if she was debited without Bob being credited. We need a guarantee that if something goes wrong partway through the operation, none of the steps executed so far will take effect. Grouping the updates into a transaction gives us this guarantee. A transaction is said to be atomic: from the point of view of other transactions, it either happens completely or not at all.

We also want a guarantee that once a transaction is completed and acknowledged by the database system, it has indeed been permanently recorded and won't be lost even if a crash ensues shortly thereafter. For example, if we are recording a cash withdrawal by Bob, we do not want any chance that the debit to his account will disappear in a crash just after he walks out the bank door. A transactional database guarantees that all the updates made by a transaction are logged in permanent storage (i.e., on disk) before the transaction is reported complete.

Another important property of transactional databases is closely related to the notion of atomic updates: when multiple transactions are running concurrently, each one should not be able to see the incomplete changes made by others. For example, if one transaction is busy totalling all the branch balances, it would not do for it to include the debit from Alice's branch but not the credit to Bob's branch, nor vice versa. So transactions must be all-or-nothing not only in terms of their permanent effect on the database, but also in terms of their visibility as they happen. The updates made so far by an open transaction are invisible to other transactions until the transaction completes, whereupon all the updates become visible simultaneously.

In Postgres Pro, a transaction is set up by surrounding the SQL commands of the transaction with BEGIN and COMMIT commands. So our banking transaction would actually look like:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00
```
WHERE name = 'Alice';
-- etc etc
COMMIT;

If, partway through the transaction, we decide we do not want to commit (perhaps we just noticed that Alice’s balance went negative), we can issue the command ROLLBACK instead of COMMIT, and all our updates so far will be canceled.

Postgres Pro actually treats every SQL statement as being executed within a transaction. If you do not issue a BEGIN command, then each individual statement has an implicit BEGIN and (if successful) COMMIT wrapped around it. A group of statements surrounded by BEGIN and COMMIT is sometimes called a transaction block.

**Note**

Some client libraries issue BEGIN and COMMIT commands automatically, so that you might get the effect of transaction blocks without asking. Check the documentation for the interface you are using.

It's possible to control the statements in a transaction in a more granular fashion through the use of savepoints. Savepoints allow you to selectively discard parts of the transaction, while committing the rest. After defining a savepoint with SAVEPOINT, you can if needed roll back to the savepoint with ROLLBACK TO. All the transaction's database changes between defining the savepoint and rolling back to it are discarded, but changes earlier than the savepoint are kept.

After rolling back to a savepoint, it continues to be defined, so you can roll back to it several times. Conversely, if you are sure you won't need to roll back to a particular savepoint again, it can be released, so the system can free some resources. Keep in mind that either releasing or rolling back to a savepoint will automatically release all savepoints that were defined after it.

All this is happening within the transaction block, so none of it is visible to other database sessions. When and if you commit the transaction block, the committed actions become visible as a unit to other sessions, while the rolled-back actions never become visible at all.

Remembering the bank database, suppose we debit $100.00 from Alice’s account, and credit Bob’s account, only to find later that we should have credited Wally’s account. We could do it using savepoints like this:

BEGIN;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Alice';
SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Bob';
-- oops ... forget that and use Wally's account
ROLLBACK TO my_savepoint;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Wally';
COMMIT;

This example is, of course, oversimplified, but there’s a lot of control possible in a transaction block through the use of savepoints. Moreover, ROLLBACK TO is the only way to regain control of a transaction block that was put in aborted state by the system due to an error, short of rolling it back completely and starting again.

### 3.5. Window Functions

A window function performs a calculation across a set of table rows that are somehow related to the current row. This is comparable to the type of calculation that can be done with an aggregate function.
However, window functions do not cause rows to become grouped into a single output row like non-window aggregate calls would. Instead, the rows retain their separate identities. Behind the scenes, the window function is able to access more than just the current row of the query result.

Here is an example that shows how to compare each employee’s salary with the average salary in his or her department:

```sql
SELECT depname, empno, salary, avg(salary) OVER (PARTITION BY depname) FROM empsalary;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>depname</th>
<th>empno</th>
<th>salary</th>
<th>avg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5200</td>
<td>5020.0000000000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4200</td>
<td>5020.0000000000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>5020.0000000000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>5020.0000000000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5200</td>
<td>5020.0000000000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personnel</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3500</td>
<td>3700.0000000000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personnel</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3900</td>
<td>3700.0000000000000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4800</td>
<td>4866.6666666666666667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>4866.6666666666666667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4800</td>
<td>4866.6666666666666667</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(10 rows)

The first three output columns come directly from the table `empsalary`, and there is one output row for each row in the table. The fourth column represents an average taken across all the table rows that have the same `depname` value as the current row. (This actually is the same function as the non-window `avg` aggregate, but the `OVER` clause causes it to be treated as a window function and computed across the window frame.)

A window function call always contains an `OVER` clause directly following the window function’s name and argument(s). This is what syntactically distinguishes it from a normal function or non-window aggregate. The `OVER` clause determines exactly how the rows of the query are split up for processing by the window function. The `PARTITION BY` clause within `OVER` divides the rows into groups, or partitions, that share the same values of the `PARTITION BY` expression(s). For each row, the window function is computed across the rows that fall into the same partition as the current row.

You can also control the order in which rows are processed by window functions using `ORDER BY` within `OVER`. (The window `ORDER BY` does not even have to match the order in which the rows are output.) Here is an example:

```sql
SELECT depname, empno, salary,
    rank() OVER (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary DESC)
FROM empsalary;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>depname</th>
<th>empno</th>
<th>salary</th>
<th>rank</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5200</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5200</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4200</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personnel</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3900</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personnel</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3500</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4800</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4800</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(10 rows)

As shown here, the `rank` function produces a numerical rank for each distinct `ORDER BY` value in the current row’s partition, using the order defined by the `ORDER BY` clause. `rank` needs no explicit parameter, because its behavior is entirely determined by the `OVER` clause.
The rows considered by a window function are those of the “virtual table” produced by the query's FROM clause as filtered by its WHERE, GROUP BY, and HAVING clauses if any. For example, a row removed because it does not meet the WHERE condition is not seen by any window function. A query can contain multiple window functions that slice up the data in different ways using different OVER clauses, but they all act on the same collection of rows defined by this virtual table.

We already saw that ORDER BY can be omitted if the ordering of rows is not important. It is also possible to omit PARTITION BY, in which case there is a single partition containing all rows.

There is another important concept associated with window functions: for each row, there is a set of rows within its partition called its window frame. Some window functions act only on the rows of the window frame, rather than of the whole partition. By default, if ORDER BY is supplied then the frame consists of all rows from the start of the partition up through the current row, plus any following rows that are equal to the current row according to the ORDER BY clause. When ORDER BY is omitted the default frame consists of all rows in the partition.  

Here is an example using sum:

```
SELECT salary, sum(salary) OVER () FROM empsalary;
```

```
salary |  sum
--------+-------
 5200   | 47100
 5000   | 47100
 3500   | 47100
 4800   | 47100
 3900   | 47100
 4200   | 47100
 4500   | 47100
 4800   | 47100
 6000   | 47100
 5200   | 47100
(10 rows)
```

Above, since there is no ORDER BY in the OVER clause, the window frame is the same as the partition, which for lack of PARTITION BY is the whole table; in other words each sum is taken over the whole table and so we get the same result for each output row. But if we add an ORDER BY clause, we get very different results:

```
SELECT salary, sum(salary) OVER (ORDER BY salary) FROM empsalary;
```

```
salary |  sum
--------+-------
 3500   |  3500
 3900   |  7400
 4200   | 11600
 4500   | 16100
 4800   | 25700
 4800   | 25700
 5000   | 30700
 5200   | 41100
 5200   | 41100
 6000   | 47100
(10 rows)
```

Here the sum is taken from the first (lowest) salary up through the current one, including any duplicates of the current one (notice the results for the duplicated salaries).

Window functions are permitted only in the SELECT list and the ORDER BY clause of the query. They are forbidden elsewhere, such as in GROUP BY, HAVING and WHERE clauses. This is because they logically execute after the processing of those clauses. Also, window functions execute after non-window

---

1 There are options to define the window frame in other ways, but this tutorial does not cover them. See Section 4.2.8 for details.
aggregate functions. This means it is valid to include an aggregate function call in the arguments of a window function, but not vice versa.

If there is a need to filter or group rows after the window calculations are performed, you can use a sub-select. For example:

```
SELECT depname, empno, salary, enroll_date
FROM
  (SELECT depname, empno, salary, enroll_date,
    rank() OVER (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary DESC, empno) AS pos
     FROM empsalary
  ) AS ss
WHERE pos < 3;
```

The above query only shows the rows from the inner query having rank less than 3.

When a query involves multiple window functions, it is possible to write out each one with a separate `OVER` clause, but this is duplicative and error-prone if the same windowing behavior is wanted for several functions. Instead, each windowing behavior can be named in a `WINDOW` clause and then referenced in `OVER`. For example:

```
SELECT sum(salary) OVER w, avg(salary) OVER w
FROM empsalary
WINDOW w AS (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary DESC);
```

More details about window functions can be found in Section 4.2.8, Section 9.22, Section 7.2.5, and the SELECT reference page.

### 3.6. Inheritance

Inheritance is a concept from object-oriented databases. It opens up interesting new possibilities of database design.

Let's create two tables: A table `cities` and a table `capitals`. Naturally, capitals are also cities, so you want some way to show the capitals implicitly when you list all cities. If you're really clever you might invent some scheme like this:

```
CREATE TABLE capitals (  
    name       text,  
    population real,  
    elevation  int,    -- (in ft)  
    state      char(2)  
) ;

CREATE TABLE non_capitals (  
    name       text,  
    population real,  
    elevation  int     -- (in ft)  
) ;

CREATE VIEW cities AS  
  SELECT name, population, elevation FROM capitals  
  UNION  
  SELECT name, population, elevation FROM non_capitals;
```

This works OK as far as querying goes, but it gets ugly when you need to update several rows, for one thing.

A better solution is this:

```
CREATE TABLE cities (  
    name       text,  
    population real,  
    elevation  int,    -- (in ft)  
    state      char(2)  
) ;
```
population real,
elevation int     -- (in ft)
);

CREATE TABLE capitals (  
  state     char(2) UNIQUE NOT NULL
) INHERITS (cities);

In this case, a row of capitals inherits all columns (name, population, and elevation) from its parent, cities. The type of the column name is text, a native Postgres Pro type for variable length character strings. The capitals table has an additional column, state, which shows its state abbreviation. In Postgres Pro, a table can inherit from zero or more other tables.

For example, the following query finds the names of all cities, including state capitals, that are located at an elevation over 500 feet:

```
SELECT name, elevation  
FROM cities  
WHERE elevation > 500;
```

which returns:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>elevation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Las Vegas</td>
<td>2174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mariposa</td>
<td>1953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madison</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(3 rows)
```

On the other hand, the following query finds all the cities that are not state capitals and are situated at an elevation over 500 feet:

```
SELECT name, elevation  
FROM ONLY cities  
WHERE elevation > 500;
```

which returns:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>elevation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Las Vegas</td>
<td>2174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mariposa</td>
<td>1953</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(2 rows)
```

Here the ONLY before cities indicates that the query should be run over only the cities table, and not tables below cities in the inheritance hierarchy. Many of the commands that we have already discussed — SELECT, UPDATE, and DELETE — support this ONLY notation.

Note

Although inheritance is frequently useful, it has not been integrated with unique constraints or foreign keys, which limits its usefulness. See Section 5.10 for more detail.

3.7. Conclusion

Postgres Pro has many features not touched upon in this tutorial introduction, which has been oriented toward newer users of SQL. These features are discussed in more detail in the remainder of this book.

If you feel you need more introductory material, please visit the PostgreSQL web site for links to more resources.
Part II. The SQL Language

This part describes the use of the SQL language in Postgres Pro. We start with describing the general syntax of SQL, then explain how to create the structures to hold data, how to populate the database, and how to query it. The middle part lists the available data types and functions for use in SQL commands. The rest treats several aspects that are important for tuning a database for optimal performance.

The information in this part is arranged so that a novice user can follow it start to end to gain a full understanding of the topics without having to refer forward too many times. The chapters are intended to be self-contained, so that advanced users can read the chapters individually as they choose. The information in this part is presented in a narrative fashion in topical units. Readers looking for a complete description of a particular command should see Part VI.

Readers of this part should know how to connect to a Postgres Pro database and issue SQL commands. Readers that are unfamiliar with these issues are encouraged to read Part I first. SQL commands are typically entered using the Postgres Pro interactive terminal psql, but other programs that have similar functionality can be used as well.
Chapter 4. SQL Syntax

This chapter describes the syntax of SQL. It forms the foundation for understanding the following chapters which will go into detail about how SQL commands are applied to define and modify data.

We also advise users who are already familiar with SQL to read this chapter carefully because it contains several rules and concepts that are implemented inconsistently among SQL databases or that are specific to Postgres Pro.

4.1. Lexical Structure

SQL input consists of a sequence of commands. A command is composed of a sequence of tokens, terminated by a semicolon (";"). The end of the input stream also terminates a command. Which tokens are valid depends on the syntax of the particular command.

A token can be a key word, an identifier, a quoted identifier, a literal (or constant), or a special character symbol. Tokens are normally separated by whitespace (space, tab, newline), but need not be if there is no ambiguity (which is generally only the case if a special character is adjacent to some other token type).

For example, the following is (syntactically) valid SQL input:

```
SELECT * FROM MY_TABLE;
UPDATE MY_TABLE SET A = 5;
INSERT INTO MY_TABLE VALUES (3, 'hi there');
```

This is a sequence of three commands, one per line (although this is not required; more than one command can be on a line, and commands can usefully be split across lines).

Additionally, comments can occur in SQL input. They are not tokens, they are effectively equivalent to whitespace.

The SQL syntax is not very consistent regarding what tokens identify commands and which are operands or parameters. The first few tokens are generally the command name, so in the above example we would usually speak of a “SELECT”, an “UPDATE”, and an “INSERT” command. But for instance the UPDATE command always requires a SET token to appear in a certain position, and this particular variation of INSERT also requires a VALUES in order to be complete. The precise syntax rules for each command are described in Part VI.

4.1.1. Identifiers and Key Words

Tokens such as SELECT, UPDATE, or VALUES in the example above are examples of key words, that is, words that have a fixed meaning in the SQL language. The tokens MY_TABLE and A are examples of identifiers. They identify names of tables, columns, or other database objects, depending on the command they are used in. Therefore they are sometimes simply called “names”. Key words and identifiers have the same lexical structure, meaning that one cannot know whether a token is an identifier or a key word without knowing the language. A complete list of key words can be found in Appendix C.

SQL identifiers and key words must begin with a letter (a-z, but also letters with diacritical marks and non-Latin letters) or an underscore (_). Subsequent characters in an identifier or key word can be letters, underscores, digits (0-9), or dollar signs ($). Note that dollar signs are not allowed in identifiers according to the letter of the SQL standard, so their use might render applications less portable. The SQL standard will not define a key word that contains digits or starts or ends with an underscore, so identifiers of this form are safe against possible conflict with future extensions of the standard.

The system uses no more than NAMEDATALEN-1 bytes of an identifier; longer names can be written in commands, but they will be truncated. By default, NAMEDATALEN is 64 so the maximum identifier length is 63 bytes.

Key words and unquoted identifiers are case insensitive. Therefore:

```
UPDATE MY_TABLE SET A = 5;
```
can equivalently be written as:

```
UPDATE my_Table SET a = 5;
```

A convention often used is to write key words in upper case and names in lower case, e.g.:

```
UPDATE my_table SET a = 5;
```

There is a second kind of identifier: the delimited identifier or quoted identifier. It is formed by enclosing an arbitrary sequence of characters in double-quotes ("`). A delimited identifier is always an identifier, never a key word. So "select" could be used to refer to a column or table named "select", whereas an unquoted select would be taken as a key word and would therefore provoke a parse error when used where a table or column name is expected. The example can be written with quoted identifiers like this:

```
UPDATE "my_table" SET "a" = 5;
```

Quoted identifiers can contain any character, except the character with code zero. (To include a double quote, write two double quotes.) This allows constructing table or column names that would otherwise not be possible, such as ones containing spaces or ampersands. The length limitation still applies.

Quoting an identifier also makes it case-sensitive, whereas unquoted names are always folded to lower case. For example, the identifiers FOO, foo, and "foo" are considered the same by Postgres Pro, but "Foo" and "FOO" are different from these three and each other. (The folding of unquoted names to lower case in Postgres Pro is incompatible with the SQL standard, which says that unquoted names should be folded to upper case. Thus, foo should be equivalent to "FOO" not "foo" according to the standard. If you want to write portable applications you are advised to always quote a particular name or never quote it.)

A variant of quoted identifiers allows including escaped Unicode characters identified by their code points. This variant starts with Us (upper or lower case U followed by ampersand) immediately before the opening double quote, without any spaces in between, for example Us"foo". (Note that this creates an ambiguity with the operator &. Use spaces around the operator to avoid this problem.) Inside the quotes, Unicode characters can be specified in escaped form by writing a backslash followed by the four-digit hexadecimal code point number or alternatively a backslash followed by a plus sign followed by a six-digit hexadecimal code point number. For example, the identifier "data" could be written as Us\0061t\000061

The following less trivial example writes the Russian word “slon” (elephant) in Cyrillic letters:

```
Us\0441\043B\043E\043D
```

If a different escape character than backslash is desired, it can be specified using the UESCAPE clause after the string, for example:

```
Us\d!0061t!+000061" UESCAPE '!'
```

The escape character can be any single character other than a hexadecimal digit, the plus sign, a single quote, a double quote, or a whitespace character. Note that the escape character is written in single quotes, not double quotes, after UESCAPE.

To include the escape character in the identifier literally, write it twice.

Either the 4-digit or the 6-digit escape form can be used to specify UTF-16 surrogate pairs to compose characters with code points larger than U+FFFF, although the availability of the 6-digit form technically makes this unnecessary. (Surrogate pairs are not stored directly, but are combined into a single code point.)

If the server encoding is not UTF-8, the Unicode code point identified by one of these escape sequences is converted to the actual server encoding; an error is reported if that’s not possible.

### 4.1.2. Constants

There are three kinds of implicitly-typed constants in Postgres Pro: strings, bit strings, and numbers. Constants can also be specified with explicit types, which can enable more accurate representation and more efficient handling by the system. These alternatives are discussed in the following subsections.
4.1.2.1. String Constants

A string constant in SQL is an arbitrary sequence of characters bounded by single quotes (‘), for example 'This is a string'. To include a single-quote character within a string constant, write two adjacent single quotes, e.g., 'Dianne''s horse'. Note that this is not the same as a double-quote character (").

Two string constants that are only separated by whitespace with at least one newline are concatenated and effectively treated as if the string had been written as one constant. For example:

```
SELECT 'foo'
 'bar';
```

is equivalent to:

```
SELECT 'foobar';
```

but:

```
SELECT 'foo'      'bar';
```

is not valid syntax. (This slightly bizarre behavior is specified by SQL; Postgres Pro is following the standard.)

4.1.2.2. String Constants with C-Style Escapes

Postgres Pro also accepts “escape” string constants, which are an extension to the SQL standard. An escape string constant is specified by writing the letter E (upper or lower case) just before the opening single quote, e.g., E'foo'. (When continuing an escape string constant across lines, write E only before the first opening quote.) Within an escape string, a backslash character (\) begins a C-like backslash escape sequence, in which the combination of backslash and following character(s) represent a special byte value, as shown in Table 4.1.

**Table 4.1. Backslash Escape Sequences**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Backslash Escape Sequence</th>
<th>Interpretation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\b</td>
<td>backspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\f</td>
<td>form feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\n</td>
<td>newline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\r</td>
<td>carriage return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\t</td>
<td>tab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\o, \oo, \ooo (o = 0–7)</td>
<td>octal byte value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\xh, \xhh (h = 0–9, A–F)</td>
<td>hexadecimal byte value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\uxxxx, \Uxxxxxxxx (x = 0–9, A–F)</td>
<td>16 or 32-bit hexadecimal Unicode character value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Any other character following a backslash is taken literally. Thus, to include a backslash character, write two backslashes (\). Also, a single quote can be included in an escape string by writing \\, in addition to the normal way of ‘’.

It is your responsibility that the byte sequences you create, especially when using the octal or hexadecimal escapes, compose valid characters in the server character set encoding. A useful alternative is to use Unicode escapes or the alternative Unicode escape syntax, explained in Section 4.1.2.3; then the server will check that the character conversion is possible.

---

**Caution**

If the configuration parameter standard_conforming_strings is off, then Postgres Pro recognizes backslash escapes in both regular and escape string constants. However, as of PostgreSQL 9.1, the default is on, meaning that backslash escapes are recognized only in escape string constants. This
The character with the code zero cannot be in a string constant.

4.1.2.3. String Constants with Unicode Escapes

Postgres Pro also supports another type of escape syntax for strings that allows specifying arbitrary Unicode characters by code point. A Unicode escape string constant starts with $U\&$ (upper or lower case letter U followed by ampersand) immediately before the opening quote, without any spaces in between, for example $U\&'f\text{oo}'$. (Note that this creates an ambiguity with the operator $&$. Use spaces around the operator to avoid this problem.) Inside the quotes, Unicode characters can be specified in escaped form by writing a backslash followed by the four-digit hexadecimal code point number or alternatively a backslash followed by a plus sign followed by a six-digit hexadecimal code point number. For example, the string 'data' could be written as

$U\&'d\\0061t\+000061'$

The following less trivial example writes the Russian word “slon” (elephant) in Cyrillic letters:

$U\&'\0441\043B\043E\043D'$

If a different escape character than backslash is desired, it can be specified using the UESCAPE clause after the string, for example:

$U\&'d\0061t\+000061'$ UESCAPE '!' 

The escape character can be any single character other than a hexadecimal digit, the plus sign, a single quote, a double quote, or a whitespace character.

To include the escape character in the string literally, write it twice.

Either the 4-digit or the 6-digit escape form can be used to specify UTF-16 surrogate pairs to compose characters with code points larger than U+FFFF, although the availability of the 6-digit form technically makes this unnecessary. (Surrogate pairs are not stored directly, but are combined into a single code point.)

If the server encoding is not UTF-8, the Unicode code point identified by one of these escape sequences is converted to the actual server encoding; an error is reported if that's not possible.

Also, the Unicode escape syntax for string constants only works when the configuration parameter standard_conforming_strings is turned on. This is because otherwise this syntax could confuse clients that parse the SQL statements to the point that it could lead to SQL injections and similar security issues. If the parameter is set to off, this syntax will be rejected with an error message.

4.1.2.4. Dollar-Quoted String Constants

While the standard syntax for specifying string constants is usually convenient, it can be difficult to understand when the desired string contains many single quotes or backslashes, since each of those must be doubled. To allow more readable queries in such situations, Postgres Pro provides another way, called “dollar quoting”, to write string constants. A dollar-quoted string constant consists of a dollar sign ($\$), an optional “tag” of zero or more characters, another dollar sign, an arbitrary sequence of characters that makes up the string content, a dollar sign, the same tag that began this dollar quote, and a dollar sign. For example, here are two different ways to specify the string “Dianne's horse” using dollar quoting:

$$Dianne's~horse$$
Notice that inside the dollar-quoted string, single quotes can be used without needing to be escaped. Indeed, no characters inside a dollar-quoted string are ever escaped: the string content is always written literally. Backslashes are not special, and neither are dollar signs, unless they are part of a sequence matching the opening tag.

It is possible to nest dollar-quoted string constants by choosing different tags at each nesting level. This is most commonly used in writing function definitions. For example:

```sql
$function$
BEGIN
    RETURN ($1 - $q$[\t\r\n\v\\$q$];
END;
$function$
Here, the sequence $q$[\t\r\n\v\\$q$ represents a dollar-quoted literal string [\t\r\n\v\], which will be recognized when the function body is executed by Postgres Pro. But since the sequence does not match the outer dollar quoting delimiter $function$, it is just some more characters within the constant so far as the outer string is concerned.

The tag, if any, of a dollar-quoted string follows the same rules as an unquoted identifier, except that it cannot contain a dollar sign. Tags are case sensitive, so $tag$String content$tag$ is correct, but $TAG$String content$tag$ is not.

A dollar-quoted string that follows a keyword or identifier must be separated from it by whitespace; otherwise the dollar quoting delimiter would be taken as part of the preceding identifier.

Dollar quoting is not part of the SQL standard, but it is often a more convenient way to write complicated string literals than the standard-compliant single quote syntax. It is particularly useful when representing string constants inside other constants, as is often needed in procedural function definitions. With single-quote syntax, each backslash in the above example would have to be written as four backslashes, which would be reduced to two backslashes in parsing the original string constant, and then to one when the inner string constant is re-parsed during function execution.

### 4.1.2.5. Bit-String Constants

Bit-string constants look like regular string constants with a `B` (upper or lower case) immediately before the opening quote (no intervening whitespace), e.g., `B'1001'`. The only characters allowed within bit-string constants are `0` and `1`.

Alternatively, bit-string constants can be specified in hexadecimal notation, using a leading `X` (upper or lower case), e.g., `X'1FF'`. This notation is equivalent to a bit-string constant with four binary digits for each hexadecimal digit.

Both forms of bit-string constant can be continued across lines in the same way as regular string constants. Dollar quoting cannot be used in a bit-string constant.

### 4.1.2.6. Numeric Constants

Numeric constants are accepted in these general forms:

```sql
digits
digits.(digits)[e{+-}digits]
[digits].digits[e{+-}digits]
digitse{+-}digits
```

where `digits` is one or more decimal digits (0 through 9). At least one digit must be before or after the decimal point, if one is used. At least one digit must follow the exponent marker (e), if one is present. There cannot be any spaces or other characters embedded in the constant. Note that any leading plus or minus sign is not actually considered part of the constant; it is an operator applied to the constant.

These are some examples of valid numeric constants:
A numeric constant that contains neither a decimal point nor an exponent is initially presumed to be type \texttt{integer} if its value fits in type \texttt{integer} (32 bits); otherwise it is presumed to be type \texttt{bigint} if its value fits in type \texttt{bigint} (64 bits); otherwise it is taken to be type \texttt{numeric}. Constants that contain decimal points and/or exponents are always initially presumed to be type \texttt{numeric}.

The initially assigned data type of a numeric constant is just a starting point for the type resolution algorithms. In most cases the constant will be automatically coerced to the most appropriate type depending on context. When necessary, you can force a numeric value to be interpreted as a specific data type by casting it. For example, you can force a numeric value to be treated as type \texttt{real(float4)} by writing:

\begin{verbatim}
REAL '1.23' -- string style
1.23::REAL   -- Postgres Pro (historical) style
\end{verbatim}

These are actually just special cases of the general casting notations discussed next.

### 4.1.2.7. Constants of Other Types

A constant of an \textit{arbitrary} type can be entered using any one of the following notations:

\begin{verbatim}
type 'string'
'string'::type
CAST ( 'string' AS type )
\end{verbatim}

The string constant's text is passed to the input conversion routine for the type called \texttt{type}. The result is a constant of the indicated type. The explicit type cast can be omitted if there is no ambiguity as to the type the constant must be (for example, when it is assigned directly to a table column), in which case it is automatically coerced.

The string constant can be written using either regular SQL notation or dollar-quoting.

It is also possible to specify a type coercion using a function-like syntax:

\begin{verbatim}
typename ( 'string' )
\end{verbatim}

but not all type names can be used in this way; see Section 4.2.9 for details.

The ::, \texttt{CAST()}, and function-call syntaxes can also be used to specify run-time type conversions of arbitrary expressions, as discussed in Section 4.2.9. To avoid syntactic ambiguity, the \texttt{type 'string'} syntax can only be used to specify the type of a simple literal constant. Another restriction on the \texttt{type 'string'} syntax is that it does not work for array types; use :: or \texttt{CAST()} to specify the type of an array constant.

The \texttt{CAST()} syntax conforms to SQL. The \texttt{type 'string'} syntax is a generalization of the standard: SQL specifies this syntax only for a few data types, but Postgres Pro allows it for all types. The syntax with :: is historical Postgres Pro usage, as is the function-call syntax.

### 4.1.3. Operators

An operator name is a sequence of up to \texttt{NAMEDATALEN}-1 (63 by default) characters from the following list:

\begin{verbatim}
+ - * / < > = ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?
\end{verbatim}

There are a few restrictions on operator names, however:

- -- and /* cannot appear anywhere in an operator name, since they will be taken as the start of a comment.
• A multiple-character operator name cannot end in + or −, unless the name also contains at least one of these characters:

    ~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?

For example, @− is an allowed operator name, but *− is not. This restriction allows Postgres Pro to parse SQL-compliant queries without requiring spaces between tokens.

When working with non-SQL-standard operator names, you will usually need to separate adjacent operators with spaces to avoid ambiguity. For example, if you have defined a prefix operator named @, you cannot write X*@Y; you must write X* @Y to ensure that Postgres Pro reads it as two operator names not one.

4.1.4. Special Characters

Some characters that are not alphanumeric have a special meaning that is different from being an operator. Details on the usage can be found at the location where the respective syntax element is described. This section only exists to advise the existence and summarize the purposes of these characters.

• A dollar sign ($) followed by digits is used to represent a positional parameter in the body of a function definition or a prepared statement. In other contexts the dollar sign can be part of an identifier or a dollar-quoted string constant.

• Parentheses (()) have their usual meaning to group expressions and enforce precedence. In some cases parentheses are required as part of the fixed syntax of a particular SQL command.

• Brackets ([]) are used to select the elements of an array. See Section 8.15 for more information on arrays.

• Commas (,) are used in some syntactical constructs to separate the elements of a list.

• The semicolon (;) terminates an SQL command. It cannot appear anywhere within a command, except within a string constant or quoted identifier.

• The colon (:) is used to select “slices” from arrays. (See Section 8.15.) In certain SQL dialects (such as Embedded SQL), the colon is used to prefix variable names.

• The asterisk (*) is used in some contexts to denote all the fields of a table row or composite value. It also has a special meaning when used as the argument of an aggregate function, namely that the aggregate does not require any explicit parameter.

• The period (.) is used in numeric constants, and to separate schema, table, and column names.

4.1.5. Comments

A comment is a sequence of characters beginning with double dashes and extending to the end of the line, e.g.:

```sql
-- This is a standard SQL comment
```

Alternatively, C-style block comments can be used:

```sql
/* multiline comment
 * with nesting: /* nested block comment */
 */
```

where the comment begins with /* and extends to the matching occurrence of */. These block comments nest, as specified in the SQL standard but unlike C, so that one can comment out larger blocks of code that might contain existing block comments.

A comment is removed from the input stream before further syntax analysis and is effectively replaced by whitespace.

4.1.6. Operator Precedence
Table 4.2 shows the precedence and associativity of the operators in Postgres Pro. Most operators have the same precedence and are left-associative. The precedence and associativity of the operators is hard-wired into the parser. Add parentheses if you want an expression with multiple operators to be parsed in some other way than what the precedence rules imply.

### Table 4.2. Operator Precedence (highest to lowest)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator/Element</th>
<th>Associativity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>table/column name separator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>Postgres Pro-style typecast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ]</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>array element selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>unary plus, unary minus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>exponentiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*/%</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>multiplication, division, modulo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(any other operator)</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>all other native and user-defined operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BETWEEN IN LIKE ILIKE SIMILAR</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>range containment, set membership, string matching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; &gt; = &lt;= &gt;= &lt;&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>comparison operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS ISNULL NOTNULL</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS TRUE, IS FALSE, IS NULL, IS DISTINCT FROM, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>logical negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>logical conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>logical disjunction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the operator precedence rules also apply to user-defined operators that have the same names as the built-in operators mentioned above. For example, if you define a “+” operator for some custom data type it will have the same precedence as the built-in “+” operator, no matter what yours does.

When a schema-qualified operator name is used in the OPERATOR syntax, as for example in:

```
SELECT 3 OPERATOR(pg_catalog.+) 4;
```

the OPERATOR construct is taken to have the default precedence shown in Table 4.2 for “any other operator”. This is true no matter which specific operator appears inside OPERATOR().

### PostgreSQL Version Before 9.5

PostgreSQL versions before 9.5 used slightly different operator precedence rules. In particular, `<>=` and `<>` used to be treated as generic operators; `IS` tests used to have higher priority; and `NOT BETWEEN` and related constructs acted inconsistently, being taken in some cases as having the precedence of `NOT` rather than `BETWEEN`. These rules were changed for better compliance with the SQL standard and to reduce confusion from inconsistent treatment of logically equivalent constructs. In most cases, these changes will result in no behavioral change, or perhaps in “no such operator” failures which can be resolved by adding parentheses. However there are corner cases in which a query might change behavior without any parsing error being reported.

### 4.2. Value Expressions

Value expressions are used in a variety of contexts, such as in the target list of the `SELECT` command, as new column values in `INSERT` or `UPDATE`, or in search conditions in a number of commands. The
result of a value expression is sometimes called a scalar, to distinguish it from the result of a table expression (which is a table). Value expressions are therefore also called scalar expressions (or even simply expressions). The expression syntax allows the calculation of values from primitive parts using arithmetic, logical, set, and other operations.

A value expression is one of the following:
- A constant or literal value
- A column reference
- A positional parameter reference, in the body of a function definition or prepared statement
- A subscripted expression
- A field selection expression
- An operator invocation
- A function call
- An aggregate expression
- A window function call
- A type cast
- A collation expression
- A scalar subquery
- An array constructor
- A row constructor
- Another value expression in parentheses (used to group subexpressions and override precedence)

In addition to this list, there are a number of constructs that can be classified as an expression but do not follow any general syntax rules. These generally have the semantics of a function or operator and are explained in the appropriate location in Chapter 9. An example is the IS NULL clause.

We have already discussed constants in Section 4.1.2. The following sections discuss the remaining options.

### 4.2.1. Column References

A column can be referenced in the form:

```
correlation.columnname
```

`correlation` is the name of a table (possibly qualified with a schema name), or an alias for a table defined by means of a FROM clause. The correlation name and separating dot can be omitted if the column name is unique across all the tables being used in the current query. (See also Chapter 7.)

### 4.2.2. Positional Parameters

A positional parameter reference is used to indicate a value that is supplied externally to an SQL statement. Parameters are used in SQL function definitions and in prepared queries. Some client libraries also support specifying data values separately from the SQL command string, in which case parameters are used to refer to the out-of-line data values. The form of a parameter reference is:

```
$number
```

For example, consider the definition of a function, `dept`, as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION dept(text) RETURNS dept
    AS $$ SELECT * FROM dept WHERE name = $1 $$
    LANGUAGE SQL;
```

Here the `$1` references the value of the first function argument whenever the function is invoked.
4.2.3. Subscripts

If an expression yields a value of an array type, then a specific element of the array value can be extracted by writing

expression[subscript]

or multiple adjacent elements (an “array slice”) can be extracted by writing

expression[lower_subscript:upper_subscript]

(Here, the brackets [ ] are meant to appear literally.) Each subscript is itself an expression, which will be rounded to the nearest integer value.

In general the array expression must be parenthesized, but the parentheses can be omitted when the expression to be subscripted is just a column reference or positional parameter. Also, multiple subscripts can be concatenated when the original array is multidimensional. For example:

mytable.arraycolumn[4]
mytable.two_d_column[17][34]
$1[10:42]
(arrayfunction(a,b))[42]

The parentheses in the last example are required. See Section 8.15 for more about arrays.

4.2.4. Field Selection

If an expression yields a value of a composite type (row type), then a specific field of the row can be extracted by writing

expression.fieldname

In general the row expression must be parenthesized, but the parentheses can be omitted when the expression to be selected from is just a table reference or positional parameter. For example:

mytable.mycolumn
$1.somecolumn
(rowfunction(a,b)).col3

(Thus, a qualified column reference is actually just a special case of the field selection syntax.) An important special case is extracting a field from a table column that is of a composite type:

(compositecol).somefield
(mytable.compositecol).somefield

The parentheses are required here to show that compositecol is a column name not a table name, or that mytable is a table name not a schema name in the second case.

You can ask for all fields of a composite value by writing .*:

(compositecol).*

This notation behaves differently depending on context; see Section 8.16.5 for details.

4.2.5. Operator Invocations

There are two possible syntaxes for an operator invocation:

expression operator expression (binary infix operator)
operator expression (unary prefix operator)

where the operator token follows the syntax rules of Section 4.1.3, or is one of the key words AND, OR, and NOT, or is a qualified operator name in the form:

OPERATOR(schema.operatorsname)

Which particular operators exist and whether they are unary or binary depends on what operators have been defined by the system or the user. Chapter 9 describes the built-in operators.
4.2.6. Function Calls

The syntax for a function call is the name of a function (possibly qualified with a schema name), followed by its argument list enclosed in parentheses:

function_name ( [expression [ , expression ... ] ] )

For example, the following computes the square root of 2:

sqrt(2)

The list of built-in functions is in Chapter 9. Other functions can be added by the user.

When issuing queries in a database where some users mistrust other users, observe security precautions from Section 10.3 when writing function calls.

The arguments can optionally have names attached. See Section 4.3 for details.

Note

A function that takes a single argument of composite type can optionally be called using field-selection syntax, and conversely field selection can be written in functional style. That is, the notations col(table) and table.col are interchangeable. This behavior is not SQL-standard but is provided in Postgres Pro because it allows use of functions to emulate “computed fields”. For more information see Section 8.16.5.

4.2.7. Aggregate Expressions

An aggregate expression represents the application of an aggregate function across the rows selected by a query. An aggregate function reduces multiple inputs to a single output value, such as the sum or average of the inputs. The syntax of an aggregate expression is one of the following:

aggregate_name ( expression [ , ... ] [ order_by_clause ] ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]
aggregate_name ( ALL expression [ , ... ] [ order_by_clause ] ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]
aggregate_name ( DISTINCT expression [ , ... ] [ order_by_clause ] ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]
aggregate_name ( * ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]
aggregate_name ( [ expression [ , ... ] ] ) WITHIN GROUP ( order_by_clause ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]

where aggregate_name is a previously defined aggregate (possibly qualified with a schema name) and expression is any value expression that does not itself contain an aggregate expression or a window function call. The optional order_by_clause and filter_clause are described below.

The first form of aggregate expression invokes the aggregate once for each input row. The second form is the same as the first, since ALL is the default. The third form invokes the aggregate once for each distinct value of the expression (or distinct set of values, for multiple expressions) found in the input rows. The fourth form invokes the aggregate once for each input row; since no particular input value is specified, it is generally only useful for the count(*) aggregate function. The last form is used with ordered-set aggregate functions, which are described below.

Most aggregate functions ignore null inputs, so that rows in which one or more of the expression(s) yield null are discarded. This can be assumed to be true, unless otherwise specified, for all built-in aggregates.

For example, count(*) yields the total number of input rows; count(f1) yields the number of input rows in which f1 is non-null, since count ignores nulls; and count(distinct f1) yields the number of distinct non-null values of f1.
Ordinarily, the input rows are fed to the aggregate function in an unspecified order. In many cases this does not matter; for example, \( \text{min} \) produces the same result no matter what order it receives the inputs in. However, some aggregate functions (such as \( \text{array_agg} \) and \( \text{string_agg} \)) produce results that depend on the ordering of the input rows. When using such an aggregate, the optional \texttt{order_by_clause} can be used to specify the desired ordering. The \texttt{order_by_clause} has the same syntax as for a query-level \texttt{ORDER BY} clause, as described in Section 7.5, except that its expressions are always just expressions and cannot be output-column names or numbers. For example:

\[
\text{SELECT array_agg(a ORDER BY b DESC) FROM table;}
\]

When dealing with multiple-argument aggregate functions, note that the \texttt{ORDER BY} clause goes after all the aggregate arguments. For example, write this:

\[
\text{SELECT string_agg(a, ',') ORDER BY a) FROM table;}
\]

not this:

\[
\text{SELECT string_agg(a ORDER BY a, ',') FROM table; -- incorrect}
\]

The latter is syntactically valid, but it represents a call of a single-argument aggregate function with two \texttt{ORDER BY} keys (the second one being rather useless since it's a constant).

If \texttt{DISTINCT} is specified in addition to an \texttt{order_by_clause}, then all the \texttt{ORDER BY} expressions must match regular arguments of the aggregate; that is, you cannot sort on an expression that is not included in the \texttt{DISTINCT} list.

Placing \texttt{ORDER BY} within the aggregate's regular argument list, as described so far, is used when ordering the input rows for general-purpose and statistical aggregates, for which ordering is optional. There is a subclass of aggregate functions called \texttt{ordered-set aggregates} for which an \texttt{order_by_clause} is required, usually because the aggregate's computation is only sensible in terms of a specific ordering of its input rows. Typical examples of ordered-set aggregates include rank and percentile calculations. For an ordered-set aggregate, the \texttt{order_by_clause} is written inside \texttt{WITHIN GROUP (...)}, as shown in the final syntax alternative above. The expressions in the \texttt{order_by_clause} are evaluated once per input row just like regular aggregate arguments, sorted as per the \texttt{order_by_clause}'s requirements, and fed to the aggregate function as input arguments. (This is unlike the case for a non-\texttt{WITHIN GROUP} order_by_clause, which is not treated as argument(s) to the aggregate function.) The argument expressions preceding \texttt{WITHIN GROUP}, if any, are called \texttt{direct arguments} to distinguish them from the \texttt{aggregated arguments} listed in the \texttt{order_by_clause}. Unlike regular aggregate arguments, direct arguments are evaluated only once per aggregate call, not once per input row. This means that they can contain variables only if those variables are grouped by \texttt{GROUP BY}; this restriction is the same as if the direct arguments were not inside an aggregate expression at all. Direct arguments are typically used for things like percentile fractions, which only make sense as a single value per aggregation calculation. The direct argument list can be empty; in this case, write just () not (*). (Postgres Pro will actually accept either spelling, but only the first way conforms to the SQL standard.)

An example of an ordered-set aggregate call is:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SELECT percentile_cont(0.5) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY income) FROM households;} \\
\text{percentile_cont} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{------------------} \\
50489
\end{align*}
\]

which obtains the 50th percentile, or median, value of the \texttt{income} column from table \texttt{households}. Here, \(0.5\) is a direct argument; it would make no sense for the percentile fraction to be a value varying across rows.
If `FILTER` is specified, then only the input rows for which the `filter_clause` evaluates to true are fed to the aggregate function; other rows are discarded. For example:

```
SELECT
  count(*) AS unfiltered,
  count(*) FILTER (WHERE i < 5) AS filtered
FROM generate_series(1,10) AS s(i);
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>unfiltered</th>
<th>filtered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The predefined aggregate functions are described in Section 9.21. Other aggregate functions can be added by the user.

An aggregate expression can only appear in the result list or `HAVING` clause of a `SELECT` command. It is forbidden in other clauses, such as `WHERE`, because those clauses are logically evaluated before the results of aggregates are formed.

When an aggregate expression appears in a subquery (see Section 4.2.11 and Section 9.23), the aggregate is normally evaluated over the rows of the subquery. But an exception occurs if the aggregate’s arguments (and `filter_effects` if any) contain only outer-level variables: the aggregate then belongs to the nearest such outer level, and is evaluated over the rows of that query. The aggregate expression as a whole is then an outer reference for the subquery it appears in, and acts as a constant over any one evaluation of that subquery. The restriction about appearing only in the result list or `HAVING` clause applies with respect to the query level that the aggregate belongs to.

### 4.2.8. Window Function Calls

A *window function call* represents the application of an aggregate-like function over some portion of the rows selected by a query. Unlike non-window aggregate calls, this is not tied to grouping of the selected rows into a single output row — each row remains separate in the query output. However the window function has access to all the rows that would be part of the current row’s group according to the grouping specification (PARTITION BY list) of the window function call. The syntax of a window function call is one of the following:

```
function_name ([expression [, expression ... ]]) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]
OVER window_name
```

```
function_name ([expression [, expression ... ]]) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]
OVER ( window_definition )
```

```
function_name ( * ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ] OVER window_name
```

```
function_name ( * ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ] OVER ( window_definition )
```

where `window_definition` has the syntax

```
[ existing_window_name ]
[ PARTITION BY expression [, ... ] ]
[ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] [ , ... ] ]
[ frame_clause ]
```

The optional `frame_clause` can be one of

```
{ RANGE | ROWS | GROUPS } frame_start [ frame_exclusion ]
{ RANGE | ROWS | GROUPS } BETWEEN frame_start AND frame_end [ frame_exclusion ]
```

where `frame_start` and `frame_end` can be one of

UNBOUNDED PRECEDING
offset PRECEDING
CURRENT ROW
offset FOLLOWING
UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING

and frame_exclusion can be one of

EXCLUDE CURRENT ROW
EXCLUDE GROUP
EXCLUDE TIES
EXCLUDE NO OTHERS

Here, expression represents any value expression that does not itself contain window function calls.

window_name is a reference to a named window specification defined in the query’s WINDOW clause. Alternatively, a full window_definition can be given within parentheses, using the same syntax as for defining a named window in the WINDOW clause; see the SELECT reference page for details. It’s worth pointing out that OVER wname is not exactly equivalent to OVER (wname ...); the latter implies copying and modifying the window definition, and will be rejected if the referenced window specification includes a frame clause.

The PARTITION BY clause groups the rows of the query into partitions, which are processed separately by the window function. PARTITION BY works similarly to a query-level GROUP BY clause, except that its expressions are always just expressions and cannot be output-column names or numbers. Without PARTITION BY, all rows produced by the query are treated as a single partition. The ORDER BY clause determines the order in which the rows of a partition are processed by the window function. It works similarly to a query-level ORDER BY clause, but likewise cannot use output-column names or numbers. Without ORDER BY, rows are processed in an unspecified order.

The frame_clause specifies the set of rows constituting the window frame, which is a subset of the current partition, for those window functions that act on the frame instead of the whole partition. The set of rows in the frame can vary depending on which row is the current row. The frame can be specified in RANGE, ROWS or GROUPS mode; in each case, it runs from the frame_start to the frame_end. If frame_end is omitted, the end defaults to CURRENT ROW.

A frame_start of UNBOUNDED PRECEDING means that the frame starts with the first row of the partition, and similarly a frame_end of UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING means that the frame ends with the last row of the partition.

In RANGE or GROUPS mode, a frame_start of CURRENT ROW means the frame starts with the current row’s first peer row (a row that the window’s ORDER BY clause sorts as equivalent to the current row), while a frame_end of CURRENT ROW means the frame ends with the current row’s last peer row. In ROWS mode, CURRENT ROW simply means the current row.

In the offset PRECEDING and offset FOLLOWING frame options, the offset must be an expression not containing any variables, aggregate functions, or window functions. The meaning of the offset depends on the frame mode:

• In ROWS mode, the offset must yield a non-null, non-negative integer; and the option means that the frame starts or ends the specified number of rows before or after the current row.

• In GROUPS mode, the offset again must yield a non-null, non-negative integer; and the option means that the frame starts or ends the specified number of peer groups before or after the current row’s peer group, where a peer group is a set of rows that are equivalent in the ORDER BY ordering. (There must be an ORDER BY clause in the window definition to use GROUPS mode.)

• In RANGE mode, these options require that the ORDER BY clause specify exactly one column. The offset specifies the maximum difference between the value of that column in the current row and its value in preceding or following rows of the frame. The data type of the offset expression varies depending on the data type of the ordering column. For numeric ordering columns it is typically of the same type as the ordering column, but for datetime ordering columns it is an interval. For example, if the ordering column is of type date or timestamp, one could write RANGE BETWEEN '1 day' PRECEDING AND '10 days' FOLLOWING. The offset is still required to be non-null and non-negative, though the meaning of “non-negative” depends on its data type.
In any case, the distance to the end of the frame is limited by the distance to the end of the partition, so that for rows near the partition ends the frame might contain fewer rows than elsewhere.

Notice that in both ROWS and GROUPS mode, 0 PRECEDING and 0 FOLLOWING are equivalent to CURRENT ROW. This normally holds in RANGE mode as well, for an appropriate data-type-specific meaning of “zero”.

The frame_exclusion option allows rows around the current row to be excluded from the frame, even if they would be included according to the frame start and frame end options. EXCLUDE CURRENT ROW excludes the current row from the frame. EXCLUDE GROUP excludes the current row and its ordering peers from the frame. EXCLUDE TIES excludes any peers of the current row from the frame, but not the current row itself. EXCLUDE NO OTHERS simply specifies explicitly the default behavior of not excluding the current row or its peers.

The default framing option is RANGE UNBOUNDED PRECEDING, which is the same as RANGE BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND CURRENT ROW. With ORDER BY, this sets the frame to be all rows from the partition start up through the current row’s last ORDER BY peer. Without ORDER BY, this means all rows of the partition are included in the window frame, since all rows become peers of the current row.

Restrictions are that frame_start cannot be UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING, frame_end cannot be UNBOUNDED PRECEDING, and the frame_end choice cannot appear earlier in the above list of frame_start and frame_end options than the frame_start choice does — for example RANGE BETWEEN CURRENT ROW AND offset PRECEDING is not allowed. But, for example, ROWS BETWEEN 7 PRECEDING AND 8 PRECEDING is allowed, even though it would never select any rows.

If FILTER is specified, then only the input rows for which the filter_clause evaluates to true are fed to the window function; other rows are discarded. Only window functions that are aggregates accept a FILTER clause.

The built-in window functions are described in Table 9.62. Other window functions can be added by the user. Also, any built-in or user-defined general-purpose or statistical aggregate can be used as a window function. (Ordered-set and hypothetical-set aggregates cannot presently be used as window functions.)

The syntaxes using * are used for calling parameter-less aggregate functions as window functions, for example count(*) OVER (PARTITION BY x ORDER BY y). The asterisk (*) is customarily not used for window-specific functions. Window-specific functions do not allow DISTINCT or ORDER BY to be used within the function argument list.

Window function calls are permitted only in the SELECT list and the ORDER BY clause of the query.

More information about window functions can be found in Section 3.5, Section 9.22, and Section 7.2.5.

4.2.9. Type Casts

A type cast specifies a conversion from one data type to another. Postgres Pro accepts two equivalent syntaxes for type casts:

```
CAST ( expression AS type )
expression::type
```

The CAST syntax conforms to SQL; the syntax with :: is historical Postgres Pro usage.

When a cast is applied to a value expression of a known type, it represents a run-time type conversion. The cast will succeed only if a suitable type conversion operation has been defined. Notice that this is subtly different from the use of casts with constants, as shown in Section 4.1.2.7. A cast applied to an unadorned string literal represents the initial assignment of a type to a literal constant value, and so it will succeed for any type (if the contents of the string literal are acceptable input syntax for the data type).

An explicit type cast can usually be omitted if there is no ambiguity as to the type that a value expression must produce (for example, when it is assigned to a table column); the system will automatically apply
a type cast in such cases. However, automatic casting is only done for casts that are marked “OK to apply implicitly” in the system catalogs. Other casts must be invoked with explicit casting syntax. This restriction is intended to prevent surprising conversions from being applied silently.

It is also possible to specify a type cast using a function-like syntax:

```sql
typename ( expression )
```

However, this only works for types whose names are also valid as function names. For example, `double precision` cannot be used this way, but the equivalent `float8` can. Also, the names `interval`, `time`, and `timestamp` can only be used in this fashion if they are double-quoted, because of syntactic conflicts. Therefore, the use of the function-like cast syntax leads to inconsistencies and should probably be avoided.

The function-like syntax is in fact just a function call. When one of the two standard cast syntaxes is used to do a run-time conversion, it will internally invoke a registered function to perform the conversion. By convention, these conversion functions have the same name as their output type, and thus the “function-like syntax” is nothing more than a direct invocation of the underlying conversion function. Obviously, this is not something that a portable application should rely on. For further details see `CREATE CAST`.

### 4.2.10. Collation Expressions

The `COLLATE` clause overrides the collation of an expression. It is appended to the expression it applies to:

```sql
expr COLLATE collation
```

where `collation` is a possibly schema-qualified identifier. The `COLLATE` clause binds tighter than operators; parentheses can be used when necessary.

If no collation is explicitly specified, the database system either derives a collation from the columns involved in the expression, or it defaults to the default collation of the database if no column is involved in the expression.

The two common uses of the `COLLATE` clause are overriding the sort order in an `ORDER BY` clause, for example:

```sql
SELECT a, b, c FROM tbl WHERE ... ORDER BY a COLLATE "C";
```

and overriding the collation of a function or operator call that has locale-sensitive results, for example:

```sql
SELECT * FROM tbl WHERE a > 'foo' COLLATE "C";
```

Note that in the latter case the `COLLATE` clause is attached to an input argument of the operator we wish to affect. It doesn't matter which argument of the operator or function call the `COLLATE` clause is attached to, because the collation that is applied by the operator or function is derived by considering all arguments, and an explicit `COLLATE` clause will override the collations of all other arguments. (Attaching non-matching `COLLATE` clauses to more than one argument, however, is an error. For more details see Section 22.2.) Thus, this gives the same result as the previous example:

```sql
SELECT * FROM tbl WHERE a COLLATE "C" > 'foo';
```

But this is an error:

```sql
SELECT * FROM tbl WHERE (a > 'foo') COLLATE "C";
```

because it attempts to apply a collation to the result of the `>` operator, which is of the non-collatable data type `boolean`.

### 4.2.11. Scalar Subqueries
A scalar subquery is an ordinary SELECT query in parentheses that returns exactly one row with one column. (See Chapter 7 for information about writing queries.) The SELECT query is executed and the single returned value is used in the surrounding value expression. It is an error to use a query that returns more than one row or more than one column as a scalar subquery. (But if, during a particular execution, the subquery returns no rows, there is no error; the scalar result is taken to be null.) The subquery can refer to variables from the surrounding query, which will act as constants during any one evaluation of the subquery. See also Section 9.23 for other expressions involving subqueries.

For example, the following finds the largest city population in each state:

```
SELECT name, (SELECT max(pop) FROM cities WHERE cities.state = states.name)
FROM states;
```

### 4.2.12. Array Constructors

An array constructor is an expression that builds an array value using values for its member elements. A simple array constructor consists of the key word ARRAY, a left square bracket [], a list of expressions (separated by commas) for the array element values, and finally a right square bracket ]. For example:

```
SELECT ARRAY[1,2,3+4];
```

```
array
-------
{1,2,7}
(1 row)
```

By default, the array element type is the common type of the member expressions, determined using the same rules as for UNION or CASE constructs (see Section 10.5). You can override this by explicitly casting the array constructor to the desired type, for example:

```
SELECT ARRAY[1,2,22.7]::integer[];
```

```
array
-------
{1,2,23}
(1 row)
```

This has the same effect as casting each expression to the array element type individually. For more on casting, see Section 4.2.9.

Multidimensional array values can be built by nesting array constructors. In the inner constructors, the key word ARRAY can be omitted. For example, these produce the same result:

```
SELECT ARRAY[ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY[3,4]];  
```

```
array
---------------
{{1,2},{3,4}}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]];  
```

```
array
---------------
{{1,2},{3,4}}
(1 row)
```

Since multidimensional arrays must be rectangular, inner constructors at the same level must produce sub-arrays of identical dimensions. Any cast applied to the outer ARRAY constructor propagates automatically to all the inner constructors.

Multidimensional array constructor elements can be anything yielding an array of the proper kind, not only a sub-ARRAY construct. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE arr(f1 int[], f2 int[]);
```

```
INSERT INTO arr VALUES (ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]], ARRAY[[5,6],[7,8]]);
```
You can construct an empty array, but since it's impossible to have an array with no type, you must explicitly cast your empty array to the desired type. For example:

```sql
SELECT ARRAY[]::integer[];
```

```
array
-------
{}
(1 row)
```

It is also possible to construct an array from the results of a subquery. In this form, the array constructor is written with the key word `ARRAY` followed by a parenthesized (not bracketed) subquery. For example:

```sql
SELECT ARRAY(SELECT oid FROM pg_proc WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%');
```

```
array
------------------------------------------------------------------
(1 row)
```

```sql
SELECT ARRAY(SELECT ARRAY[i, i*2] FROM generate_series(1,5) AS a(i));
```

```
array
----------------------------------
{{1,2},{2,4},{3,6},{4,8},{5,10}}
(1 row)
```

The subquery must return a single column. If the subquery's output column is of a non-array type, the resulting one-dimensional array will have an element for each row in the subquery result, with an element type matching that of the subquery's output column. If the subquery's output column is of an array type, the result will be an array of the same type but one higher dimension; in this case all the subquery rows must yield arrays of identical dimensionality, else the result would not be rectangular.

The subscripts of an array value built with `ARRAY` always begin with one. For more information about arrays, see Section 8.15.

### 4.2.13. Row Constructors

A row constructor is an expression that builds a row value (also called a composite value) using values for its member fields. A row constructor consists of the key word `ROW`, a left parenthesis, zero or more expressions (separated by commas) for the row field values, and finally a right parenthesis. For example:

```sql
SELECT ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test');
```

The key word `ROW` is optional when there is more than one expression in the list.

A row constructor can include the syntax `rowvalue.*/`, which will be expanded to a list of the elements of the row value, just as occurs when the `.*` syntax is used at the top level of a `SELECT` list (see Section 8.16.5). For example, if table `t` has columns `f1` and `f2`, these are the same:

```sql
SELECT ROW(t.*, 42) FROM t;
SELECT ROW(t.f1, t.f2, 42) FROM t;
```

**Note**

Before PostgreSQL 8.2, the `.*` syntax was not expanded in row constructors, so that writing `ROW(t.*, 42)` created a two-field row whose first field was another row value. The new behavior
SQL Syntax

is usually more useful. If you need the old behavior of nested row values, write the inner row value without .*, for instance ROW(t, 42).

By default, the value created by a ROW expression is of an anonymous record type. If necessary, it can be cast to a named composite type — either the row type of a table, or a composite type created with CREATE TYPE AS. An explicit cast might be needed to avoid ambiguity. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE mytable(f1 int, f2 float, f3 text);

CREATE FUNCTION getf1(mytable) RETURNS int AS 'SELECT $1.f1' LANGUAGE SQL;
-- No cast needed since only one getf1() exists
SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test'));
getf1
-------
 1
(1 row)
```

```
CREATE TYPE myrowtype AS (f1 int, f2 text, f3 numeric);

CREATE FUNCTION getf1(myrowtype) RETURNS int AS 'SELECT $1.f1' LANGUAGE SQL;
-- Now we need a cast to indicate which function to call:
SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test'));
ERROR:  function getf1(record) is not unique
SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test')::mytable);
getf1
-------
 1
(1 row)
```

Row constructors can be used to build composite values to be stored in a composite-type table column, or to be passed to a function that accepts a composite parameter. Also, it is possible to compare two row values or test a row with IS NULL or IS NOT NULL, for example:

```
SELECT ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test') = ROW(1, 3, 'not the same');
SELECT ROW(table.*) IS NULL FROM table;  -- detect all-null rows
```

For more detail see Section 9.24. Row constructors can also be used in connection with subqueries, as discussed in Section 9.23.

### 4.2.14. Expression Evaluation Rules

The order of evaluation of subexpressions is not defined. In particular, the inputs of an operator or function are not necessarily evaluated left-to-right or in any other fixed order.

Furthermore, if the result of an expression can be determined by evaluating only some parts of it, then other subexpressions might not be evaluated at all. For instance, if one wrote:

```
SELECT true OR somefunc();
then somefunc() would (probably) not be called at all. The same would be the case if one wrote:
```
Note that this is not the same as the left-to-right “short-circuiting” of Boolean operators that is found in some programming languages.

As a consequence, it is unwise to use functions with side effects as part of complex expressions. It is particularly dangerous to rely on side effects or evaluation order in \texttt{WHERE} and \texttt{HAVING} clauses, since those clauses are extensively reprocessed as part of developing an execution plan. Boolean expressions (\texttt{AND}/\texttt{OR}/\texttt{NOT} combinations) in those clauses can be reorganized in any manner allowed by the laws of Boolean algebra.

When it is essential to force evaluation order, a \texttt{CASE} construct (see Section 9.18) can be used. For example, this is an untrustworthy way of trying to avoid division by zero in a \texttt{WHERE} clause:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT ... WHERE x > 0 AND y/x > 1.5;
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
But this is safe:
SELECT ... WHERE CASE WHEN x > 0 THEN y/x > 1.5 ELSE false END;
\end{verbatim}

A \texttt{CASE} construct used in this fashion will defeat optimization attempts, so it should only be done when necessary. (In this particular example, it would be better to sidestep the problem by writing $y > 1.5 \times x$ instead.)

\texttt{CASE} is not a cure-all for such issues, however. One limitation of the technique illustrated above is that it does not prevent early evaluation of constant subexpressions. As described in Section 36.7, functions and operators marked \texttt{IMMUTABLE} can be evaluated when the query is planned rather than when it is executed. Thus for example

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT CASE WHEN x > 0 THEN 1/0 END FROM tab;
\end{verbatim}

is likely to result in a division-by-zero failure due to the planner trying to simplify the constant subexpression, even if every row in the table has $x > 0$ so that the \texttt{ELSE} arm would never be entered at run time.

While that particular example might seem silly, related cases that don't obviously involve constants can occur in queries executed within functions, since the values of function arguments and local variables can be inserted into queries as constants for planning purposes. Within PL/pgSQL functions, for example, using an \texttt{IF-THEN-ELSE} statement to protect a risky computation is much safer than just nesting it in a \texttt{CASE} expression.

Another limitation of the same kind is that a \texttt{CASE} cannot prevent evaluation of an aggregate expression contained within it, because aggregate expressions are computed before other expressions in a \texttt{SELECT} list or \texttt{HAVING} clause are considered. For example, the following query can cause a division-by-zero error despite seemingly having protected against it:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT CASE WHEN min(employees) > 0
               THEN avg(expenses / employees)
     END
     FROM departments;
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{min()} and \texttt{avg()} aggregates are computed concurrently over all the input rows, so if any row has \texttt{employees} equal to zero, the division-by-zero error will occur before there is any opportunity to test the result of \texttt{min()}. Instead, use a \texttt{WHERE} or \texttt{FILTER} clause to prevent problematic input rows from reaching an aggregate function in the first place.

4.3. Calling Functions

Postgres Pro allows functions that have named parameters to be called using either \texttt{positional} or \texttt{named} notation. Named notation is especially useful for functions that have a large number of parameters, since it makes the associations between parameters and actual arguments more explicit and reliable. In positional notation, a function call is written with its argument values in the same order as they are defined in the function declaration. In named notation, the arguments are matched to the function
parameters by name and can be written in any order. For each notation, also consider the effect of function argument types, documented in Section 10.3.

In either notation, parameters that have default values given in the function declaration need not be written in the call at all. But this is particularly useful in named notation, since any combination of parameters can be omitted; while in positional notation parameters can only be omitted from right to left.

Postgres Pro also supports mixed notation, which combines positional and named notation. In this case, positional parameters are written first and named parameters appear after them.

The following examples will illustrate the usage of all three notations, using the following function definition:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION concat_lower_or_upper(a text, b text, uppercase boolean DEFAULT false)
RETURNS text
AS
$$
SELECT CASE
  WHEN $3 THEN UPPER($1 || ' ' || $2)
  ELSE LOWER($1 || ' ' || $2)
END;
$$
LANGUAGE SQL IMMUTABLE STRICT;
```

Function `concat_lower_or_upper` has two mandatory parameters, `a` and `b`. Additionally there is one optional parameter `uppercase` which defaults to `false`. The `a` and `b` inputs will be concatenated, and forced to either upper or lower case depending on the `uppercase` parameter. The remaining details of this function definition are not important here (see Chapter 36 for more information).

### 4.3.1. Using Positional Notation

Positional notation is the traditional mechanism for passing arguments to functions in Postgres Pro. An example is:

```sql
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper('Hello', 'World', true);
```

```sql
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>concat_lower_or_upper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HELLO WORLD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

All arguments are specified in order. The result is upper case since `uppercase` is specified as `true`. Another example is:

```sql
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper('Hello', 'World');
```

```sql
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>concat_lower_or_upper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hello world</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Here, the `uppercase` parameter is omitted, so it receives its default value of `false`, resulting in lower case output. In positional notation, arguments can be omitted from right to left so long as they have defaults.

### 4.3.2. Using Named Notation

In named notation, each argument's name is specified using `=>` to separate it from the argument expression. For example:

```sql
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper(a => 'Hello', b => 'World');
```

```sql
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>concat_lower_or_upper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hello world</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

41
Again, the argument `uppercase` was omitted so it is set to `false` implicitly. One advantage of using named notation is that the arguments may be specified in any order, for example:

```sql
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper(a => 'Hello', b => 'World', uppercase => true);
```

```
HELLO WORLD
(1 row)
```

```sql
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper(a => 'Hello', uppercase => true, b => 'World');
```

```
HELLO WORLD
(1 row)
```

An older syntax based on `":="` is supported for backward compatibility:

```sql
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper(a := 'Hello', uppercase := true, b := 'World');
```

```
HELLO WORLD
(1 row)
```

**4.3.3. Using Mixed Notation**

The mixed notation combines positional and named notation. However, as already mentioned, named arguments cannot precede positional arguments. For example:

```sql
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper('Hello', 'World', uppercase => true);
```

```
HELLO WORLD
(1 row)
```

In the above query, the arguments `a` and `b` are specified positionally, while `uppercase` is specified by name. In this example, that adds little except documentation. With a more complex function having numerous parameters that have default values, named or mixed notation can save a great deal of writing and reduce chances for error.

---

**Note**

Named and mixed call notations currently cannot be used when calling an aggregate function (but they do work when an aggregate function is used as a window function).
Chapter 5. Data Definition

This chapter covers how one creates the database structures that will hold one's data. In a relational database, the raw data is stored in tables, so the majority of this chapter is devoted to explaining how tables are created and modified and what features are available to control what data is stored in the tables. Subsequently, we discuss how tables can be organized into schemas, and how privileges can be assigned to tables. Finally, we will briefly look at other features that affect the data storage, such as inheritance, table partitioning, views, functions, and triggers.

5.1. Table Basics

A table in a relational database is much like a table on paper: It consists of rows and columns. The number and order of the columns is fixed, and each column has a name. The number of rows is variable — it reflects how much data is stored at a given moment. SQL does not make any guarantees about the order of the rows in a table. When a table is read, the rows will appear in an unspecified order, unless sorting is explicitly requested. This is covered in Chapter 7. Furthermore, SQL does not assign unique identifiers to rows, so it is possible to have several completely identical rows in a table. This is a consequence of the mathematical model that underlies SQL but is usually not desirable. Later in this chapter we will see how to deal with this issue.

Each column has a data type. The data type constrains the set of possible values that can be assigned to a column and assigns semantics to the data stored in the column so that it can be used for computations. For instance, a column declared to be of a numerical type will not accept arbitrary text strings, and the data stored in such a column can be used for mathematical computations. By contrast, a column declared to be of a character string type will accept almost any kind of data but it does not lend itself to mathematical calculations, although other operations such as string concatenation are available.

Postgres Pro includes a sizable set of built-in data types that fit many applications. Users can also define their own data types. Most built-in data types have obvious names and semantics, so we defer a detailed explanation to Chapter 8. Some of the frequently used data types are integer for whole numbers, numeric for possibly fractional numbers, text for character strings, date for dates, time for time-of-day values, and timestamp for values containing both date and time.

To create a table, you use the aptly named CREATE TABLE command. In this command you specify at least a name for the new table, the names of the columns and the data type of each column. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE my_first_table (  
    first_column text,  
    second_column integer
);
```

This creates a table named my_first_table with two columns. The first column is named first_column and has a data type of text; the second column has the name second_column and the type integer. The table and column names follow the identifier syntax explained in Section 4.1.1. The type names are usually also identifiers, but there are some exceptions. Note that the column list is comma-separated and surrounded by parentheses.

Of course, the previous example was heavily contrived. Normally, you would give names to your tables and columns that convey what kind of data they store. So let’s look at a more realistic example:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric
);
```

(The numeric type can store fractional components, as would be typical of monetary amounts.)
There is a limit on how many columns a table can contain. Depending on the column types, it is between 250 and 1600. However, defining a table with anywhere near this many columns is highly unusual and often a questionable design.

If you no longer need a table, you can remove it using the DROP TABLE command. For example:

```
DROP TABLE my_first_table;
DROP TABLE products;
```

Attempting to drop a table that does not exist is an error. Nevertheless, it is common in SQL script files to unconditionally try to drop each table before creating it, ignoring any error messages, so that the script works whether or not the table exists. (If you like, you can use the `DROP TABLE IF EXISTS` variant to avoid the error messages, but this is not standard SQL.)

If you need to modify a table that already exists, see Section 5.6 later in this chapter.

With the tools discussed so far you can create fully functional tables. The remainder of this chapter is concerned with adding features to the table definition to ensure data integrity, security, or convenience. If you are eager to fill your tables with data now you can skip ahead to Chapter 6 and read the rest of this chapter later.

### 5.2. Default Values

A column can be assigned a default value. When a new row is created and no values are specified for some of the columns, those columns will be filled with their respective default values. A data manipulation command can also request explicitly that a column be set to its default value, without having to know what that value is. (Details about data manipulation commands are in Chapter 6.)

If no default value is declared explicitly, the default value is the null value. This usually makes sense because a null value can be considered to represent unknown data.

In a table definition, default values are listed after the column data type. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric DEFAULT 9.99  
);  
```

The default value can be an expression, which will be evaluated whenever the default value is inserted (not when the table is created). A common example is for a timestamp column to have a default of `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`, so that it gets set to the time of row insertion. Another common example is generating a “serial number” for each row. In Postgres Pro this is typically done by something like:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer DEFAULT nextval('products_product_no_seq'),  
    ...  
);  
```

where the `nextval()` function supplies successive values from a sequence object (see Section 9.17). This arrangement is sufficiently common that there’s a special shorthand for it:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no SERIAL,  
    ...  
);  
```
The SERIAL shorthand is discussed further in Section 8.1.4.

5.3. Generated Columns

A generated column is a special column that is always computed from other columns. Thus, it is for columns what a view is for tables. There are two kinds of generated columns: stored and virtual. A stored generated column is computed when it is written (inserted or updated) and occupies storage as if it were a normal column. A virtual generated column occupies no storage and is computed when it is read. Thus, a virtual generated column is similar to a view and a stored generated column is similar to a materialized view (except that it is always updated automatically). Postgres Pro currently implements only stored generated columns.

To create a generated column, use the GENERATED ALWAYS AS clause in CREATE TABLE, for example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE people (  
  ...,  
  height_cm numeric,  
  height_in numeric GENERATED ALWAYS AS (height_cm / 2.54) STORED
);  
```

The keyword STORED must be specified to choose the stored kind of generated column. See CREATE TABLE for more details.

A generated column cannot be written to directly. In INSERT or UPDATE commands, a value cannot be specified for a generated column, but the keyword DEFAULT may be specified.

Consider the differences between a column with a default and a generated column. The column default is evaluated once when the row is first inserted if no other value was provided; a generated column is updated whenever the row changes and cannot be overridden. A column default may not refer to other columns of the table; a generation expression would normally do so. A column default can use volatile functions, for example random() or functions referring to the current time; this is not allowed for generated columns.

Several restrictions apply to the definition of generated columns and tables involving generated columns:

- The generation expression can only use immutable functions and cannot use subqueries or reference anything other than the current row in any way.
- A generation expression cannot reference another generated column.
- A generation expression cannot reference a system column, except tableoid.
- A generated column cannot have a column default or an identity definition.
- A generated column cannot be part of a partition key.
- Foreign tables can have generated columns. See CREATE FOREIGN TABLE for details.
- For inheritance:
  - If a parent column is a generated column, a child column must also be a generated column using the same expression. In the definition of the child column, leave off the GENERATED clause, as it will be copied from the parent.
  - In case of multiple inheritance, if one parent column is a generated column, then all parent columns must be generated columns and with the same expression.
  - If a parent column is not a generated column, a child column may be defined to be a generated column or not.

Additional considerations apply to the use of generated columns.
• Generated columns maintain access privileges separately from their underlying base columns. So, it is possible to arrange it so that a particular role can read from a generated column but not from the underlying base columns.

• Generated columns are, conceptually, updated after **BEFORE** triggers have run. Therefore, changes made to base columns in a **BEFORE** trigger will be reflected in generated columns. But conversely, it is not allowed to access generated columns in **BEFORE** triggers.

### 5.4. Constraints

Data types are a way to limit the kind of data that can be stored in a table. For many applications, however, the constraint they provide is too coarse. For example, a column containing a product price should probably only accept positive values. But there is no standard data type that accepts only positive numbers. Another issue is that you might want to constrain column data with respect to other columns or rows. For example, in a table containing product information, there should be only one row for each product number.

To that end, SQL allows you to define constraints on columns and tables. Constraints give you as much control over the data in your tables as you wish. If a user attempts to store data in a column that would violate a constraint, an error is raised. This applies even if the value came from the default value definition.

#### 5.4.1. Check Constraints

A check constraint is the most generic constraint type. It allows you to specify that the value in a certain column must satisfy a Boolean (truth-value) expression. For instance, to require positive product prices, you could use:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric CHECK (price > 0)
);
```

As you see, the constraint definition comes after the data type, just like default value definitions. Default values and constraints can be listed in any order. A check constraint consists of the key word **CHECK** followed by an expression in parentheses. The check constraint expression should involve the column thus constrained, otherwise the constraint would not make too much sense.

You can also give the constraint a separate name. This clarifies error messages and allows you to refer to the constraint when you need to change it. The syntax is:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric CONSTRAINT positive_price CHECK (price > 0)
);
```

So, to specify a named constraint, use the key word **CONSTRAINT** followed by an identifier followed by the constraint definition. (If you don't specify a constraint name in this way, the system chooses a name for you.)

A check constraint can also refer to several columns. Say you store a regular price and a discounted price, and you want to ensure that the discounted price is lower than the regular price:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric CHECK (price > 0),  
    discounted_price numeric CHECK (discounted_price > 0),  
    CHECK (price > discounted_price)
);
```
The first two constraints should look familiar. The third one uses a new syntax. It is not attached to a particular column, instead it appears as a separate item in the comma-separated column list. Column definitions and these constraint definitions can be listed in mixed order.

We say that the first two constraints are column constraints, whereas the third one is a table constraint because it is written separately from any one column definition. Column constraints can also be written as table constraints, while the reverse is not necessarily possible, since a column constraint is supposed to refer to only the column it is attached to. (Postgres Pro doesn't enforce that rule, but you should follow it if you want your table definitions to work with other database systems.) The above example could also be written as:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer,
    name text,
    price numeric,
    CHECK (price > 0),
    discounted_price numeric,
    CHECK (discounted_price > 0),
    CHECK (price > discounted_price)
);
```

or even:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer,
    name text,
    price numeric CHECK (price > 0),
    discounted_price numeric,
    CHECK (discounted_price > 0 AND price > discounted_price)
);
```

It's a matter of taste.

Names can be assigned to table constraints in the same way as column constraints:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer,
    name text,
    price numeric,
    CHECK (price > 0),
    discounted_price numeric,
    CHECK (discounted_price > 0),
    CONSTRAINT valid_discount CHECK (price > discounted_price)
);
```

It should be noted that a check constraint is satisfied if the check expression evaluates to true or the null value. Since most expressions will evaluate to the null value if any operand is null, they will not prevent null values in the constrained columns. To ensure that a column does not contain null values, the not-null constraint described in the next section can be used.

Note

Postgres Pro does not support CHECK constraints that reference table data other than the new or updated row being checked. While a CHECK constraint that violates this rule may appear to work in simple tests, it cannot guarantee that the database will not reach a state in which the constraint condition is false (due to subsequent changes of the other row(s) involved). This would cause a database dump and reload to fail. The reload could fail even when the complete database state is consistent with the constraint, due to rows not being loaded in an order that will satisfy the
constraint. If possible, use **UNIQUE**, **EXCLUDE**, or **FOREIGN KEY** constraints to express cross-row and cross-table restrictions.

If what you desire is a one-time check against other rows at row insertion, rather than a continuously-maintained consistency guarantee, a custom trigger can be used to implement that. (This approach avoids the dump/reload problem because pg_dump does not reinstall triggers until after reloading data, so that the check will not be enforced during a dump/reload.)

**Note**

Postgres Pro assumes that **CHECK** constraints' conditions are immutable, that is, they will always give the same result for the same input row. This assumption is what justifies examining **CHECK** constraints only when rows are inserted or updated, and not at other times. (The warning above about not referencing other table data is really a special case of this restriction.)

An example of a common way to break this assumption is to reference a user-defined function in a **CHECK** expression, and then change the behavior of that function. Postgres Pro does not disallow that, but it will not notice if there are rows in the table that now violate the **CHECK** constraint. That would cause a subsequent database dump and reload to fail. The recommended way to handle such a change is to drop the constraint (using **ALTER TABLE**), adjust the function definition, and re-add the constraint, thereby rechecking it against all table rows.

### 5.4.2. Not-Null Constraints

A not-null constraint simply specifies that a column must not assume the null value. A syntax example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer NOT NULL,
    name text NOT NULL,
    price numeric
);
```

A not-null constraint is always written as a column constraint. A not-null constraint is functionally equivalent to creating a check constraint **CHECK** *(column_name IS NOT NULL)*, but in Postgres Pro creating an explicit not-null constraint is more efficient. The drawback is that you cannot give explicit names to not-null constraints created this way.

Of course, a column can have more than one constraint. Just write the constraints one after another:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer NOT NULL,
    name text NOT NULL,
    price numeric NOT NULL CHECK (price > 0)
);
```

The order doesn’t matter. It does not necessarily determine in which order the constraints are checked.

The **NOT NULL** constraint has an inverse: the **NULL** constraint. This does not mean that the column must be null, which would surely be useless. Instead, this simply selects the default behavior that the column might be null. The **NULL** constraint is not present in the SQL standard and should not be used in portable applications. (It was only added to Postgres Pro to be compatible with some other database systems.) Some users, however, like it because it makes it easy to toggle the constraint in a script file. For example, you could start with:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer NULL,
    name text NULL,
    price numeric NULL
);
and then insert the **NOT** key word where desired.

**Tip**
In most database designs the majority of columns should be marked not null.

### 5.4.3. Unique Constraints

Unique constraints ensure that the data contained in a column, or a group of columns, is unique among all the rows in the table. The syntax is:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer **UNIQUE**,  
    name text,  
    price numeric
);
```

when written as a column constraint, and:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric,  
    **UNIQUE** (product_no)
);
```

when written as a table constraint.

To define a unique constraint for a group of columns, write it as a table constraint with the column names separated by commas:

```sql
CREATE TABLE example (  
    a integer,  
    b integer,  
    c integer,  
    **UNIQUE** (a, c)
);
```

This specifies that the combination of values in the indicated columns is unique across the whole table, though any one of the columns need not be (and ordinarily isn't) unique.

You can assign your own name for a unique constraint, in the usual way:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer **CONSTRAINT must_be_different** **UNIQUE**,  
    name text,  
    price numeric
);
```

Adding a unique constraint will automatically create a unique B-tree index on the column or group of columns listed in the constraint. A uniqueness restriction covering only some rows cannot be written as a unique constraint, but it is possible to enforce such a restriction by creating a unique **partial index**.

In general, a unique constraint is violated if there is more than one row in the table where the values of all of the columns included in the constraint are equal. However, two null values are never considered equal in this comparison. That means even in the presence of a unique constraint it is possible to store duplicate rows that contain a null value in at least one of the constrained columns. This behavior conforms to the SQL standard, but we have heard that other SQL databases might not follow this rule. So be careful when developing applications that are intended to be portable.
5.4.4. Primary Keys

A primary key constraint indicates that a column, or group of columns, can be used as a unique identifier for rows in the table. This requires that the values be both unique and not null. So, the following two table definitions accept the same data:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer UNIQUE NOT NULL,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);  
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);  
```

Primary keys can span more than one column; the syntax is similar to unique constraints:

```
CREATE TABLE example (  
    a integer,  
    b integer,  
    c integer,  
    PRIMARY KEY (a, c)  
);  
```

Adding a primary key will automatically create a unique B-tree index on the column or group of columns listed in the primary key, and will force the column(s) to be marked NOT NULL.

A table can have at most one primary key. (There can be any number of unique and not-null constraints, which are functionally almost the same thing, but only one can be identified as the primary key.) Relational database theory dictates that every table must have a primary key. This rule is not enforced by Postgres Pro, but it is usually best to follow it.

Primary keys are useful both for documentation purposes and for client applications. For example, a GUI application that allows modifying row values probably needs to know the primary key of a table to be able to identify rows uniquely. There are also various ways in which the database system makes use of a primary key if one has been declared; for example, the primary key defines the default target column(s) for foreign keys referencing its table.

5.4.5. Foreign Keys

A foreign key constraint specifies that the values in a column (or a group of columns) must match the values appearing in some row of another table. We say this maintains the referential integrity between two related tables.

Say you have the product table that we have used several times already:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);  
```

Let's also assume you have a table storing orders of those products. We want to ensure that the orders table only contains orders of products that actually exist. So we define a foreign key constraint in the orders table that references the products table:

```
CREATE TABLE orders (  
    order_id integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    product_no integer REFERENCES products (product_no),  
);  
```
Now it is impossible to create orders with non-NULL `product_no` entries that do not appear in the products table.

We say that in this situation the orders table is the *referencing* table and the products table is the *referenced* table. Similarly, there are referencing and referenced columns.

You can also shorten the above command to:

```
CREATE TABLE orders (
    order_id integer PRIMARY KEY,
    product_no integer REFERENCES products,
    quantity integer
);
```

because in absence of a column list the primary key of the referenced table is used as the referenced column(s).

You can assign your own name for a foreign key constraint, in the usual way.

A foreign key can also constrain and reference a group of columns. As usual, it then needs to be written in table constraint form. Here is a contrived syntax example:

```
CREATE TABLE t1 (
    a integer PRIMARY KEY,
    b integer,
    c integer,
    FOREIGN KEY (b, c) REFERENCES other_table (c1, c2)
);
```

Of course, the number and type of the constrained columns need to match the number and type of the referenced columns.

Sometimes it is useful for the “other table” of a foreign key constraint to be the same table; this is called a *self-referential* foreign key. For example, if you want rows of a table to represent nodes of a tree structure, you could write

```
CREATE TABLE tree (
    node_id integer PRIMARY KEY,
    parent_id integer REFERENCES tree,
    name text,
    ...
);
```

A top-level node would have NULL `parent_id`, while non-NULL `parent_id` entries would be constrained to reference valid rows of the table.

A table can have more than one foreign key constraint. This is used to implement many-to-many relationships between tables. Say you have tables about products and orders, but now you want to allow one order to contain possibly many products (which the structure above did not allow). You could use this table structure:

```
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer PRIMARY KEY,
    name text,
    price numeric
);

CREATE TABLE orders (
    order_id integer PRIMARY KEY,
    shipping_address text,
    ...
CREATE TABLE order_items (  product_no integer REFERENCES products,  order_id integer REFERENCES orders,  quantity integer,  PRIMARY KEY (product_no, order_id) );

Notice that the primary key overlaps with the foreign keys in the last table.

We know that the foreign keys disallow creation of orders that do not relate to any products. But what if a product is removed after an order is created that references it? SQL allows you to handle that as well. Intuitively, we have a few options:

- Disallow deleting a referenced product
- Delete the orders as well
- Something else?

To illustrate this, let's implement the following policy on the many-to-many relationship example above: when someone wants to remove a product that is still referenced by an order (via order_items), we disallow it. If someone removes an order, the order items are removed as well:

CREATE TABLE products (  product_no integer PRIMARY KEY,  name text,  price numeric );

CREATE TABLE orders (  order_id integer PRIMARY KEY,  shipping_address text,  ... );

CREATE TABLE order_items (  product_no integer REFERENCES products ON DELETE RESTRICT,  order_id integer REFERENCES orders ON DELETE CASCADE,  quantity integer,  PRIMARY KEY (product_no, order_id) );

Restricting and cascading deletes are the two most common options. RESTRICT prevents deletion of a referenced row. NO ACTION means that if any referencing rows still exist when the constraint is checked, an error is raised; this is the default behavior if you do not specify anything. (The essential difference between these two choices is that NO ACTION allows the check to be deferred until later in the transaction, whereas RESTRICT does not.) CASCADE specifies that when a referenced row is deleted, row(s) referencing it should be automatically deleted as well. There are two other options: SET NULL and SET DEFAULT. These cause the referencing column(s) in the referencing row(s) to be set to nulls or their default values, respectively, when the referenced row is deleted. Note that these do not excuse you from observing any constraints. For example, if an action specifies SET DEFAULT but the default value would not satisfy the foreign key constraint, the operation will fail.

Analogous to ON DELETE there is also ON UPDATE which is invoked when a referenced column is changed (updated). The possible actions are the same. In this case, CASCADE means that the updated values of the referenced column(s) should be copied into the referencing row(s).

Normally, a referencing row need not satisfy the foreign key constraint if any of its referencing columns are null. If MATCH FULL is added to the foreign key declaration, a referencing row escapes satisfying the
constraint only if all its referencing columns are null (so a mix of null and non-null values is guaranteed to fail a MATCH FULL constraint). If you don't want referencing rows to be able to avoid satisfying the foreign key constraint, declare the referencing column(s) as NOT NULL.

A foreign key must reference columns that either are a primary key or form a unique constraint. This means that the referenced columns always have an index (the one underlying the primary key or unique constraint); so checks on whether a referencing row has a match will be efficient. Since a DELETE of a row from the referenced table or an UPDATE of a referenced column will require a scan of the referencing table for rows matching the old value, it is often a good idea to index the referencing columns too. Because this is not always needed, and there are many choices available on how to index, declaration of a foreign key constraint does not automatically create an index on the referencing columns.

More information about updating and deleting data is in Chapter 6. Also see the description of foreign key constraint syntax in the reference documentation for CREATE TABLE.

### 5.4.6. Exclusion Constraints

Exclusion constraints ensure that if any two rows are compared on the specified columns or expressions using the specified operators, at least one of these operator comparisons will return false or null. The syntax is:

```sql
CREATE TABLE circles (
    c circle,
    EXCLUDE USING gist (c WITH &&)
);
```

See also CREATE TABLE ... CONSTRAINT ... EXCLUDE for details.

Adding an exclusion constraint will automatically create an index of the type specified in the constraint declaration.

### 5.5. System Columns

Every table has several system columns that are implicitly defined by the system. Therefore, these names cannot be used as names of user-defined columns. (Note that these restrictions are separate from whether the name is a key word or not; quoting a name will not allow you to escape these restrictions.) You do not really need to be concerned about these columns; just know they exist.

- **tableoid**
  The OID of the table containing this row. This column is particularly handy for queries that select from partitioned tables (see Section 5.11) or inheritance hierarchies (see Section 5.10), since without it, it's difficult to tell which individual table a row came from. The tableoid can be joined against the oid column of pg_class to obtain the table name.

- **xmin**
  The identity (transaction ID) of the inserting transaction for this row version. (A row version is an individual state of a row; each update of a row creates a new row version for the same logical row.)

- **cmin**
  The command identifier (starting at zero) within the inserting transaction.

- **xmax**
  The identity (transaction ID) of the deleting transaction, or zero for an undeleted row version. It is possible for this column to be nonzero in a visible row version. That usually indicates that the deleting transaction hasn't committed yet, or that an attempted deletion was rolled back.

- **cmax**
The command identifier within the deleting transaction, or zero.

ctid

The physical location of the row version within its table. Note that although the ctid can be used to locate the row version very quickly, a row's ctid will change if it is updated or moved by VACUUM FULL. Therefore ctid is useless as a long-term row identifier. A primary key should be used to identify logical rows.

Transaction identifiers are also 32-bit quantities. In a long-lived database it is possible for transaction IDs to wrap around. This is not a fatal problem given appropriate maintenance procedures; see Chapter 23 for details. It is unwise, however, to depend on the uniqueness of transaction IDs over the long term (more than one billion transactions).

Command identifiers are also 32-bit quantities. This creates a hard limit of $2^{32}$ (4 billion) SQL commands within a single transaction. In practice this limit is not a problem — note that the limit is on the number of SQL commands, not the number of rows processed. Also, only commands that actually modify the database contents will consume a command identifier.

5.6. Modifying Tables

When you create a table and you realize that you made a mistake, or the requirements of the application change, you can drop the table and create it again. But this is not a convenient option if the table is already filled with data, or if the table is referenced by other database objects (for instance a foreign key constraint). Therefore Postgres Pro provides a family of commands to make modifications to existing tables. Note that this is conceptually distinct from altering the data contained in the table: here we are interested in altering the definition, or structure, of the table.

You can:
- Add columns
- Remove columns
- Add constraints
- Remove constraints
- Change default values
- Change column data types
- Rename columns
- Rename tables

All these actions are performed using the ALTER TABLE command, whose reference page contains details beyond those given here.

5.6.1. Adding a Column

To add a column, use a command like:

```
ALTER TABLE products ADD COLUMN description text;
```

The new column is initially filled with whatever default value is given (null if you don't specify a DEFAULT clause).

**Tip**

From Postgres Pro 11, adding a column with a constant default value no longer means that each row of the table needs to be updated when the ALTER TABLE statement is executed. Instead, the default value will be returned the next time the row is accessed, and applied when the table is rewritten, making the ALTER TABLE very fast even on large tables.

However, if the default value is volatile (e.g., `clock_timestamp()`) each row will need to be updated with the value calculated at the time ALTER TABLE is executed. To avoid a potentially lengthy update operation, particularly if you intend to fill the column with mostly nondefault values anyway, it
may be preferable to add the column with no default, insert the correct values using \texttt{UPDATE}, and then add any desired default as described below.

You can also define constraints on the column at the same time, using the usual syntax:

\texttt{ALTER TABLE products ADD COLUMN description text CHECK (description <> '');}

In fact all the options that can be applied to a column description in \texttt{CREATE TABLE} can be used here. Keep in mind however that the default value must satisfy the given constraints, or the \texttt{ADD} will fail. Alternatively, you can add constraints later (see below) after you've filled in the new column correctly.

5.6.2. Removing a Column

To remove a column, use a command like:

\texttt{ALTER TABLE products DROP COLUMN description;}

Whatever data was in the column disappears. Table constraints involving the column are dropped, too. However, if the column is referenced by a foreign key constraint of another table, Postgres Pro will not silently drop that constraint. You can authorize dropping everything that depends on the column by adding \texttt{CASCADE}:

\texttt{ALTER TABLE products DROP COLUMN description CASCADE;}

See Section 5.14 for a description of the general mechanism behind this.

5.6.3. Adding a Constraint

To add a constraint, the table constraint syntax is used. For example:

\texttt{ALTER TABLE products ADD CHECK (name <> '');}
\texttt{ALTER TABLE products ADD CONSTRAINT some_name UNIQUE (product_no);}
\texttt{ALTER TABLE products ADD FOREIGN KEY (product_group_id) REFERENCES product_groups;}

To add a not-null constraint, which cannot be written as a table constraint, use this syntax:

\texttt{ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN product_no SET NOT NULL;}

The constraint will be checked immediately, so the table data must satisfy the constraint before it can be added.

5.6.4. Removing a Constraint

To remove a constraint you need to know its name. If you gave it a name then that's easy. Otherwise the system assigned a generated name, which you need to find out. The \texttt{psql} command \texttt{\textbackslash d tablename} can be helpful here; other interfaces might also provide a way to inspect table details. Then the command is:

\texttt{ALTER TABLE products DROP CONSTRAINT some_name;}

(If you are dealing with a generated constraint name like $2$, don't forget that you'll need to double-quote it to make it a valid identifier.)

As with dropping a column, you need to add \texttt{CASCADE} if you want to drop a constraint that something else depends on. An example is that a foreign key constraint depends on a unique or primary key constraint on the referenced column(s).

This works the same for all constraint types except not-null constraints. To drop a not null constraint use:

\texttt{ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN product_no DROP NOT NULL;}

(Recall that not-null constraints do not have names.)

5.6.5. Changing a Column's Default Value

To set a new default for a column, use a command like:

\texttt{ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN price SET DEFAULT 7.77;}

55
Note that this doesn’t affect any existing rows in the table, it just changes the default for future INSERT commands.

To remove any default value, use:

```sql
ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN price DROP DEFAULT;
```

This is effectively the same as setting the default to null. As a consequence, it is not an error to drop a default where one hadn’t been defined, because the default is implicitly the null value.

### 5.6.6. Changing a Column's Data Type

To convert a column to a different data type, use a command like:

```sql
ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN price TYPE numeric(10,2);
```

This will succeed only if each existing entry in the column can be converted to the new type by an implicit cast. If a more complex conversion is needed, you can add a `USING` clause that specifies how to compute the new values from the old.

Postgres Pro will attempt to convert the column’s default value (if any) to the new type, as well as any constraints that involve the column. But these conversions might fail, or might produce surprising results. It’s often best to drop any constraints on the column before altering its type, and then add back suitably modified constraints afterwards.

### 5.6.7. Renaming a Column

To rename a column:

```sql
ALTER TABLE products RENAME COLUMN product_no TO product_number;
```

### 5.6.8. Renaming a Table

To rename a table:

```sql
ALTER TABLE products RENAME TO items;
```

### 5.7. Privileges

When an object is created, it is assigned an owner. The owner is normally the role that executed the creation statement. For most kinds of objects, the initial state is that only the owner (or a superuser) can do anything with the object. To allow other roles to use it, privileges must be granted.

There are different kinds of privileges: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, TRIGGER, CREATE, CONNECT, TEMPORARY, EXECUTE, and USAGE. The privileges applicable to a particular object vary depending on the object’s type (table, function, etc). More detail about the meanings of these privileges appears below. The following sections and chapters will also show you how these privileges are used.

The right to modify or destroy an object is inherent in being the object's owner, and cannot be granted or revoked in itself. (However, like all privileges, that right can be inherited by members of the owning role; see Section 20.3.)

An object can be assigned to a new owner with an `ALTER` command of the appropriate kind for the object, for example

```sql
ALTER TABLE table_name OWNER TO new_owner;
```

Superusers can always do this; ordinary roles can only do it if they are both the current owner of the object (or a member of the owning role) and a member of the new owning role.

To assign privileges, the `GRANT` command is used. For example, if `joe` is an existing role, and `accounts` is an existing table, the privilege to update the table can be granted with:

```sql
GRANT UPDATE ON accounts TO joe;
```

Writing `ALL` in place of a specific privilege grants all privileges that are relevant for the object type.
The special “role” name **PUBLIC** can be used to grant a privilege to every role on the system. Also, “group” roles can be set up to help manage privileges when there are many users of a database — for details see Chapter 20.

To revoke a previously-granted privilege, use the fittingly named **REVOKE** command:

```
REVOKE ALL ON accounts FROM PUBLIC;
```

Ordinarily, only the object's owner (or a superuser) can grant or revoke privileges on an object. However, it is possible to grant a privilege “with grant option”, which gives the recipient the right to grant it in turn to others. If the grant option is subsequently revoked then all who received the privilege from that recipient (directly or through a chain of grants) will lose the privilege. For details see the **GRANT** and **REVOKE** reference pages.

An object’s owner can choose to revoke their own ordinary privileges, for example to make a table read-only for themselves as well as others. But owners are always treated as holding all grant options, so they can always re-grant their own privileges.

The available privileges are:

**SELECT**

- Allows `SELECT` from any column, or specific column(s), of a table, view, materialized view, or other table-like object. Also allows use of `COPY TO`. This privilege is also needed to reference existing column values in `UPDATE` or `DELETE`. For sequences, this privilege also allows use of the `currval` function. For large objects, this privilege allows the object to be read.

**INSERT**

- Allows `INSERT` of a new row into a table, view, etc. Can be granted on specific column(s), in which case only those columns may be assigned to in the `INSERT` command (other columns will therefore receive default values). Also allows use of `COPY FROM`.

**UPDATE**

- Allows `UPDATE` of any column, or specific column(s), of a table, view, etc. (In practice, any nontrivial `UPDATE` command will require `SELECT` privilege as well, since it must reference table columns to determine which rows to update, and/or to compute new values for columns.) `SELECT ... FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT ... FOR SHARE` also require this privilege on at least one column, in addition to the `SELECT` privilege. For sequences, this privilege allows use of the `nextval` and `setval` functions. For large objects, this privilege allows writing or truncating the object.

**DELETE**

- Allows `DELETE` of a row from a table, view, etc. (In practice, any nontrivial `DELETE` command will require `SELECT` privilege as well, since it must reference table columns to determine which rows to delete.)

**TRUNCATE**

- Allows `TRUNCATE` on a table.

**REFERENCES**

- Allows creation of a foreign key constraint referencing a table, or specific column(s) of a table.

**TRIGGER**

- Allows creation of a trigger on a table, view, etc.

**CREATE**

- For databases, allows new schemas and publications to be created within the database, and allows trusted extensions to be installed within the database.
For schemas, allows new objects to be created within the schema. To rename an existing object, you must own the object and have this privilege for the containing schema.

For tablespaces, allows tables, indexes, and temporary files to be created within the tablespace, and allows databases to be created that have the tablespace as their default tablespace.

Note that revoking this privilege will not alter the existence or location of existing objects.

CONNECT

Allows the grantee to connect to the database. This privilege is checked at connection startup (in addition to checking any restrictions imposed by `pg_hba.conf`).

TEMPORARY

Allows temporary tables to be created while using the database.

EXECUTE

Allows calling a function or procedure, including use of any operators that are implemented on top of the function. This is the only type of privilege that is applicable to functions and procedures.

USAGE

For procedural languages, allows use of the language for the creation of functions in that language. This is the only type of privilege that is applicable to procedural languages.

For schemas, allows access to objects contained in the schema (assuming that the objects' own privilege requirements are also met). Essentially this allows the grantee to "look up" objects within the schema. Without this permission, it is still possible to see the object names, e.g., by querying system catalogs. Also, after revoking this permission, existing sessions might have statements that have previously performed this lookup, so this is not a completely secure way to prevent object access.

For sequences, allows use of the `currval` and `nextval` functions.

For types and domains, allows use of the type or domain in the creation of tables, functions, and other schema objects. (Note that this privilege does not control all "usage" of the type, such as values of the type appearing in queries. It only prevents objects from being created that depend on the type. The main purpose of this privilege is controlling which users can create dependencies on a type, which could prevent the owner from changing the type later.)

For foreign-data wrappers, allows creation of new servers using the foreign-data wrapper.

For foreign servers, allows creation of foreign tables using the server. Grantees may also create, alter, or drop their own user mappings associated with that server.

The privileges required by other commands are listed on the reference page of the respective command.

Postgres Pro grants privileges on some types of objects to `PUBLIC` by default when the objects are created. No privileges are granted to `PUBLIC` by default on tables, table columns, sequences, foreign data wrappers, foreign servers, large objects, schemas, or tablespaces. For other types of objects, the default privileges granted to `PUBLIC` are as follows: `CONNECT` and `TEMPORARY` (create temporary tables) privileges for databases; `EXECUTE` privilege for functions and procedures; and `USAGE` privilege for languages and data types (including domains). The object owner can, of course, `REVOKE` both default and expressly granted privileges. (For maximum security, issue the `REVOKE` in the same transaction that creates the object; then there is no window in which another user can use the object.) Also, these default privilege settings can be overridden using the `ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES` command.

Table 5.1 shows the one-letter abbreviations that are used for these privilege types in `ACL` (Access Control List) values. You will see these letters in the output of the `psql` commands listed below, or when looking at ACL columns of system catalogs.
Table 5.1. ACL Privilege Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Applicable Object Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SELECT</td>
<td>r (&quot;read&quot;)</td>
<td>LARGE OBJECT, SEQUENCE, TABLE (and table-like objects), table column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSERT</td>
<td>a (&quot;append&quot;)</td>
<td>TABLE, table column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE</td>
<td>w (&quot;write&quot;)</td>
<td>LARGE OBJECT, SEQUENCE, TABLE, table column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUNCATE</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFERENCES</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>TABLE, table column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIGGER</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>DATABASE, SCHEMA, TABLESPACE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONNECT</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>DATABASE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEMPORARY</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>DATABASE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FUNCTION, PROCEDURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USAGE</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>DOMAIN, FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, FOREIGN SERVER, LANGUAGE, SCHEMA, SEQUENCE, TYPE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.2 summarizes the privileges available for each type of SQL object, using the abbreviations shown above. It also shows the `psql` command that can be used to examine privilege settings for each object type.

Table 5.2. Summary of Access Privileges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object Type</th>
<th>All Privileges</th>
<th>Default PUBLIC Privileges</th>
<th>psql Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DATABASE</td>
<td>Ctc</td>
<td>Tc</td>
<td>\l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>\dD+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTION or PROCEDURE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>\df+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>\desw+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOREIGN SERVER</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>\des+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LANGUAGE</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>\dL+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LARGE OBJECT</td>
<td>rw</td>
<td>none</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHEMA</td>
<td>UC</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>\dn+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEQUENCE</td>
<td>rwU</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>\dp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLE (and table-like objects)</td>
<td>arwdDxt</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>\dp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table column</td>
<td>arwx</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>\dp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLESPACE</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>\db+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TYPE</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>\dT+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The privileges that have been granted for a particular object are displayed as a list of `aclitem` entries, where each `aclitem` describes the permissions of one grantee that have been granted by a particular grantor. For example, `calvin=r*w/hobbes` specifies that the role `calvin` has the privilege `SELECT (r)` with grant option (\*) as well as the non-grantable privilege `UPDATE (w)`, both granted by the role `hobbes`. If `calvin` also has some privileges on the same object granted by a different grantor, those would appear as a separate `aclitem` entry. An empty grantee field in an `aclitem` stands for `PUBLIC`.

As an example, suppose that user `miriam` creates table `mytable` and does:
Data Definition

GRANT SELECT ON mytable TO PUBLIC;
GRANT SELECT, UPDATE, INSERT ON mytable TO admin;
GRANT SELECT (col1), UPDATE (col1) ON mytable TO miriam_rw;

Then psql's \dp command would show:

=> \dp mytable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schema</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Access privileges</th>
<th>Column privileges</th>
<th>Policies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>public</td>
<td>mytable</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>miriam=arwdDxt/miriam+</td>
<td>col1:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>=r/miriam</td>
<td>miriam_rw=rw/miriam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>admin=arw/miriam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

If the “Access privileges” column is empty for a given object, it means the object has default privileges (that is, its privileges entry in the relevant system catalog is null). Default privileges always include all privileges for the owner, and can include some privileges for PUBLIC depending on the object type, as explained above. The first GRANT or REVOKE on an object will instantiate the default privileges (producing, for example, miriam=arwdDxt/miriam) and then modify them per the specified request. Similarly, entries are shown in “Column privileges” only for columns with nondefault privileges. (Note: for this purpose, “default privileges” always means the built-in default privileges for the object's type. An object whose privileges have been affected by an ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES command will always be shown with an explicit privilege entry that includes the effects of the ALTER.)

Notice that the owner's implicit grant options are not marked in the access privileges display. A * will appear only when grant options have been explicitly granted to someone.

5.8. Row Security Policies

In addition to the SQL-standard privilege system available through GRANT, tables can have row security policies that restrict, on a per-user basis, which rows can be returned by normal queries or inserted, updated, or deleted by data modification commands. This feature is also known as Row-Level Security. By default, tables do not have any policies, so that if a user has access privileges to a table according to the SQL privilege system, all rows within it are equally available for querying or updating.

When row security is enabled on a table (with ALTER TABLE ... ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY), all normal access to the table for selecting rows or modifying rows must be allowed by a row security policy. (However, the table's owner is typically not subject to row security policies.) If no policy exists for the table, a default-deny policy is used, meaning that no rows are visible or can be modified. Operations that apply to the whole table, such as TRUNCATE and REFERENCES, are not subject to row security.

Row security policies can be specific to commands, or to roles, or to both. A policy can be specified to apply to ALL commands, or to SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. Multiple roles can be assigned to a given policy, and normal role membership and inheritance rules apply.

To specify which rows are visible or modifiable according to a policy, an expression is required that returns a Boolean result. This expression will be evaluated for each row prior to any conditions or functions coming from the user's query. (The only exceptions to this rule are leakproof functions, which are guaranteed to not leak information; the optimizer may choose to apply such functions ahead of the row-security check.) Rows for which the expression does not return true will not be processed. Separate expressions may be specified to provide independent control over the rows which are visible and the rows which are allowed to be modified. Policy expressions are run as part of the query and with the privileges of the user running the query, although security-definer functions can be used to access data not available to the calling user.

Superusers and roles with the BYPASSRLS attribute always bypass the row security system when accessing a table. Table owners normally bypass row security as well, though a table owner can choose to be subject to row security with ALTER TABLE ... FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY.

60
Enabling and disabling row security, as well as adding policies to a table, is always the privilege of the table owner only.

Policies are created using the CREATE POLICY command, altered using the ALTER POLICY command, and dropped using the DROP POLICY command. To enable and disable row security for a given table, use the ALTER TABLE command.

Each policy has a name and multiple policies can be defined for a table. As policies are table-specific, each policy for a table must have a unique name. Different tables may have policies with the same name.

When multiple policies apply to a given query, they are combined using either OR (for permissive policies, which are the default) or using AND (for restrictive policies). This is similar to the rule that a given role has the privileges of all roles that they are a member of. Permissive vs. restrictive policies are discussed further below.

As a simple example, here is how to create a policy on the account relation to allow only members of the managers role to access rows, and only rows of their accounts:

```sql
CREATE TABLE accounts (manager text, company text, contact_email text);
ALTER TABLE accounts ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY;
CREATE POLICY account_managers ON accounts TO managers
   USING (manager = current_user);
```

The policy above implicitly provides a WITH CHECK clause identical to its USING clause, so that the constraint applies both to rows selected by a command (so a manager cannot SELECT, UPDATE, or DELETE existing rows belonging to a different manager) and to rows modified by a command (so rows belonging to a different manager cannot be created via INSERT or UPDATE).

If no role is specified, or the special user name PUBLIC is used, then the policy applies to all users on the system. To allow all users to access only their own row in a users table, a simple policy can be used:

```sql
CREATE POLICY user_policy ON users
   USING (user_name = current_user);
```

This works similarly to the previous example.

To use a different policy for rows that are being added to the table compared to those rows that are visible, multiple policies can be combined. This pair of policies would allow all users to view all rows in the users table, but only modify their own:

```sql
CREATE POLICY user_sel_policy ON users
   FOR SELECT
   USING (true);
CREATE POLICY user_mod_policy ON users
   USING (user_name = current_user);
```

In a SELECT command, these two policies are combined using OR, with the net effect being that all rows can be selected. In other command types, only the second policy applies, so that the effects are the same as before.

Row security can also be disabled with the ALTER TABLE command. Disabling row security does not remove any policies that are defined on the table; they are simply ignored. Then all rows in the table are visible and modifiable, subject to the standard SQL privileges system.

Below is a larger example of how this feature can be used in production environments. The table passwd emulates a Unix password file:

```sql
-- Simple passwd-file based example
```
### Data Definition

```sql
CREATE TABLE passwd (
    user_name             text UNIQUE NOT NULL,
    pwhash                text,
    uid                   int  PRIMARY KEY,
    gid                   int  NOT NULL,
    real_name             text NOT NULL,
    home_phone            text,
    extra_info            text,
    home_dir              text NOT NULL,
    shell                 text NOT NULL
);

CREATE ROLE admin;  -- Administrator
CREATE ROLE bob;    -- Normal user
CREATE ROLE alice;  -- Normal user

-- Populate the table
INSERT INTO passwd VALUES ('admin','xxx',0,0,'Admin','111-222-3333',null,'/root','/bin/dash');
INSERT INTO passwd VALUES ('bob','xxx',1,1,'Bob','123-456-7890',null,'/home/bob','/bin/zsh');
INSERT INTO passwd VALUES ('alice','xxx',2,1,'Alice','098-765-4321',null,'/home/alice','/bin/zsh');

-- Be sure to enable row-level security on the table
ALTER TABLE passwd ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY;

-- Create policies
-- Administrator can see all rows and add any rows
CREATE POLICY admin_all ON passwd TO admin USING (true) WITH CHECK (true);
-- Normal users can view all rows
CREATE POLICY all_view ON passwd FOR SELECT USING (true);
-- Normal users can update their own records, but
-- limit which shells a normal user is allowed to set
CREATE POLICY user_mod ON passwd FOR UPDATE
    USING (current_user = user_name)
    WITH CHECK (current_user = user_name AND
                shell IN ('/bin/bash','/bin/sh','/bin/dash','/bin/zsh','/bin/tcsh'));

-- Allow admin all normal rights
GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON passwd TO admin;
-- Users only get select access on public columns
GRANT SELECT
    (user_name, uid, gid, real_name, home_phone, extra_info, home_dir, shell)
ON passwd TO public;
-- Allow users to update certain columns
GRANT UPDATE
    (pwhash, real_name, home_phone, extra_info, shell)
ON passwd TO public;

As with any security settings, it's important to test and ensure that the system is behaving as expected. Using the example above, this demonstrates that the permission system is working properly.

-- admin can view all rows and fields
postgres=> set role admin;
SET
postgres=> table passwd;
```

---

62
All of the policies constructed thus far have been permissive policies, meaning that when multiple policies are applied they are combined using the "OR" Boolean operator. While permissive policies can be constructed to only allow access to rows in the intended cases, it can be simpler to combine permissive policies with restrictive policies (which the records must pass and which are combined using the "AND" Boolean operator). Building on the example above, we add a restrictive policy to require the administrator to be connected over a local Unix socket to access the records of the \texttt{passwd} table:

\texttt{CREATE POLICY admin\_local\_only ON passwd AS RESTRICTIVE TO admin USING (pg\_catalog.inet\_client\_addr() IS NULL);}

We can then see that an administrator connecting over a network will not see any records, due to the restrictive policy:

\texttt{=> SELECT current\_user;}
\texttt{current\_user}
\texttt{admin}
Data Definition

(1 row)

=> select inet_client_addr();

inet_client_addr
------------------
127.0.0.1
(1 row)

=> TABLE passwd;

user_name | pwhash | uid | gid | real_name | home_phone | extra_info | home_dir |
shell
-----------+--------+-----+-----+-----------+------------+------------+----------
+-------
(0 rows)

=> UPDATE passwd set pwhash = NULL;
UPDATE 0

Referential integrity checks, such as unique or primary key constraints and foreign key references, always bypass row security to ensure that data integrity is maintained. Care must be taken when developing schemas and row level policies to avoid “covert channel” leaks of information through such referential integrity checks.

In some contexts it is important to be sure that row security is not being applied. For example, when taking a backup, it could be disastrous if row security silently caused some rows to be omitted from the backup. In such a situation, you can set the row_security configuration parameter to off. This does not in itself bypass row security; what it does is throw an error if any query's results would get filtered by a policy. The reason for the error can then be investigated and fixed.

In the examples above, the policy expressions consider only the current values in the row to be accessed or updated. This is the simplest and best-performing case; when possible, it's best to design row security applications to work this way. If it is necessary to consult other rows or other tables to make a policy decision, that can be accomplished using sub-SELECTs, or functions that contain SELECTs, in the policy expressions. Be aware however that such accesses can create race conditions that could allow information leakage if care is not taken. As an example, consider the following table design:

-- definition of privilege groups
CREATE TABLE groups (group_id int PRIMARY KEY,
    group_name text NOT NULL);

INSERT INTO groups VALUES
    (1, 'low'),
    (2, 'medium'),
    (5, 'high');

GRANT ALL ON groups TO alice; -- alice is the administrator
GRANT SELECT ON groups TO public;

-- definition of users' privilege levels
CREATE TABLE users (user_name text PRIMARY KEY,
    group_id int NOT NULL REFERENCES groups);

INSERT INTO users VALUES
    ('alice', 5),
    ('bob', 2),
    ('mallory', 2);

GRANT ALL ON users TO alice;
GRANT SELECT ON users TO public;
Data Definition

-- table holding the information to be protected
CREATE TABLE information (info text,
   group_id int NOT NULL REFERENCES groups);

INSERT INTO information VALUES
   ('barely secret', 1),
   ('slightly secret', 2),
   ('very secret', 5);

ALTER TABLE information ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY;

-- a row should be visible to/updatable by users whose security group_id is
-- greater than or equal to the row's group_id
CREATE POLICY fp_s ON information FOR SELECT
   USING (group_id <= (SELECT group_id FROM users WHERE user_name = current_user));
CREATE POLICY fp_u ON information FOR UPDATE
   USING (group_id <= (SELECT group_id FROM users WHERE user_name = current_user));

-- we rely only on RLS to protect the information table
GRANT ALL ON information TO public;

Now suppose that alice wishes to change the "slightly secret" information, but decides that mallory
should not be trusted with the new content of that row, so she does:

BEGIN;
UPDATE users SET group_id = 1 WHERE user_name = 'mallory';
UPDATE information SET info = 'secret from mallory' WHERE group_id = 2;
COMMIT;

That looks safe; there is no window wherein mallory should be able to see the "secret from mallory"
string. However, there is a race condition here. If mallory is concurrently doing, say,

SELECT * FROM information WHERE group_id = 2 FOR UPDATE;

and her transaction is in READ COMMITTED mode, it is possible for her to see "secret from mallory". That
happens if her transaction reaches the information row just after alice's does. It blocks waiting for
alice's transaction to commit, then fetches the updated row contents thanks to the FOR UPDATE clause.
However, it does not fetch an updated row for the implicit SELECT from users, because that sub-SELECT
did not have FOR UPDATE; instead the users row is read with the snapshot taken at the start of the query.
Therefore, the policy expression tests the old value of mallory's privilege level and allows her to see
the updated row.

There are several ways around this problem. One simple answer is to use SELECT ... FOR SHARE in
sub-SELECTs in row security policies. However, that requires granting UPDATE privilege on the referenced
table (here users) to the affected users, which might be undesirable. (But another row security policy
could be applied to prevent them from actually exercising that privilege; or the sub-SELECT could be
embedded into a security definer function.) Also, heavy concurrent use of row share locks on the
referenced table could pose a performance problem, especially if updates of it are frequent. Another
solution, practical if updates of the referenced table are infrequent, is to take an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock
on the referenced table when updating it, so that no concurrent transactions could be examining old
row values. Or one could just wait for all concurrent transactions to end after committing an update of
the referenced table and before making changes that rely on the new security situation.

For additional details see CREATE POLICY and ALTER TABLE.

5.9. Schemas

A Postgres Pro database cluster contains one or more named databases. Roles and a few other object
types are shared across the entire cluster. A client connection to the server can only access data in a
single database, the one specified in the connection request.
A database contains one or more named schemas, which in turn contain tables. Schemas also contain other kinds of named objects, including data types, functions, and operators. The same object name can be used in different schemas without conflict; for example, both \texttt{schema1} and \texttt{myschema} can contain tables named \texttt{mytable}. Unlike databases, schemas are not rigidly separated: a user can access objects in any of the schemas in the database they are connected to, if they have privileges to do so.

There are several reasons why one might want to use schemas:

- To allow many users to use one database without interfering with each other.
- To organize database objects into logical groups to make them more manageable.
- Third-party applications can be put into separate schemas so they do not collide with the names of other objects.

Schemas are analogous to directories at the operating system level, except that schemas cannot be nested.

### 5.9.1. Creating a Schema

To create a schema, use the \texttt{CREATE SCHEMA} command. Give the schema a name of your choice. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE SCHEMA myschema;
\end{verbatim}

To create or access objects in a schema, write a \textit{qualified name} consisting of the schema name and table name separated by a dot:

\begin{verbatim}
schema.table
\end{verbatim}

This works anywhere a table name is expected, including the table modification commands and the data access commands discussed in the following chapters. (For brevity we will speak of tables only, but the same ideas apply to other kinds of named objects, such as types and functions.)

Actually, the even more general syntax

\begin{verbatim}
database.schema.table
\end{verbatim}

can be used too, but at present this is just for pro forma compliance with the SQL standard. If you write a database name, it must be the same as the database you are connected to.

So to create a table in the new schema, use:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE TABLE myschema.mytable ( ...
);
\end{verbatim}

To drop a schema if it's empty (all objects in it have been dropped), use:

\begin{verbatim}
DROP SCHEMA myschema;
\end{verbatim}

To drop a schema including all contained objects, use:

\begin{verbatim}
DROP SCHEMA myschema CASCADE;
\end{verbatim}

See \textsection{5.14} for a description of the general mechanism behind this.
Often you will want to create a schema owned by someone else (since this is one of the ways to restrict
the activities of your users to well-defined namespaces). The syntax for that is:

```
CREATE SCHEMA schema_name AUTHORIZATION user_name;
```

You can even omit the schema name, in which case the schema name will be the same as the user name.
See Section 5.9.6 for how this can be useful.

Schema names beginning with `pg_` are reserved for system purposes and cannot be created by users.

### 5.9.2. The Public Schema

In the previous sections we created tables without specifying any schema names. By default such tables
(and other objects) are automatically put into a schema named “public”. Every new database contains
such a schema. Thus, the following are equivalent:

```
CREATE TABLE products ( ... );
```

and:

```
CREATE TABLE public.products ( ... );
```

### 5.9.3. The Schema Search Path

Qualified names are tedious to write, and it's often best not to wire a particular schema name into
applications anyway. Therefore tables are often referred to by unqualified names, which consist of just
the table name. The system determines which table is meant by following a search path, which is a list
of schemas to look in. The first matching table in the search path is taken to be the one wanted. If there
is no match in the search path, an error is reported, even if matching table names exist in other schemas
in the database.

The ability to create like-named objects in different schemas complicates writing a query that references
precisely the same objects every time. It also opens up the potential for users to change the behavior of
other users' queries, maliciously or accidentally. Due to the prevalence of unqualified names in queries
and their use in Postgres Pro internals, adding a schema to `search_path` effectively trusts all users
having `CREATE` privilege on that schema. When you run an ordinary query, a malicious user able to create
objects in a schema of your search path can take control and execute arbitrary SQL functions as though
you executed them.

The first schema named in the search path is called the current schema. Aside from being the first
schema searched, it is also the schema in which new tables will be created if the `CREATE TABLE`
command does not specify a schema name.

To show the current search path, use the following command:

```
SHOW search_path;
```

In the default setup this returns:

```
search_path
----------
"$user", public
```

The first element specifies that a schema with the same name as the current user is to be searched. If
no such schema exists, the entry is ignored. The second element refers to the public schema that we
have seen already.

The first schema in the search path that exists is the default location for creating new objects. That is
the reason that by default objects are created in the public schema. When objects are referenced in any
other context without schema qualification (table modification, data modification, or query commands)
the search path is traversed until a matching object is found. Therefore, in the default configuration,
any unqualified access again can only refer to the public schema.
To put our new schema in the path, we use:

```
SET search_path TO myschema,public;
```

(We omit the $user here because we have no immediate need for it.) And then we can access the table without schema qualification:

```
DROP TABLE mytable;
```

Also, since `myschema` is the first element in the path, new objects would by default be created in it.

We could also have written:

```
SET search_path TO myschema;
```

Then we no longer have access to the public schema without explicit qualification. There is nothing special about the public schema except that it exists by default. It can be dropped, too.

See also Section 9.26 for other ways to manipulate the schema search path.

The search path works in the same way for data type names, function names, and operator names as it does for table names. Data type and function names can be qualified in exactly the same way as table names. If you need to write a qualified operator name in an expression, there is a special provision: you must write

```
OPERATOR(schema.operator)
```

This is needed to avoid syntactic ambiguity. An example is:

```
SELECT 3 OPERATOR(pg_catalog.+ 4;
```

In practice one usually relies on the search path for operators, so as not to have to write anything so ugly as that.

### 5.9.4. Schemas and Privileges

By default, users cannot access any objects in schemas they do not own. To allow that, the owner of the schema must grant the `USAGE` privilege on the schema. To allow users to make use of the objects in the schema, additional privileges might need to be granted, as appropriate for the object.

A user can also be allowed to create objects in someone else's schema. To allow that, the `CREATE` privilege on the schema needs to be granted. Note that by default, everyone has `CREATE` and `USAGE` privileges on the schema `public`. This allows all users that are able to connect to a given database to create objects in its `public` schema. Some usage patterns call for revoking that privilege:

```
REVOKE CREATE ON SCHEMA public FROM PUBLIC;
```

(The first “public” is the schema, the second “public” means “every user”. In the first sense it is an identifier, in the second sense it is a key word, hence the different capitalization; recall the guidelines from Section 4.1.1.)

### 5.9.5. The System Catalog Schema

In addition to `public` and user-created schemas, each database contains a `pg_catalog` schema, which contains the system tables and all the built-in data types, functions, and operators. `pg_catalog` is always effectively part of the search path. If it is not named explicitly in the path then it is implicitly searched before searching the path's schemas. This ensures that built-in names will always be findable. However, you can explicitly place `pg_catalog` at the end of your search path if you prefer to have user-defined names override built-in names.

Since system table names begin with `pg_`, it is best to avoid such names to ensure that you won't suffer a conflict if some future version defines a system table named the same as your table. (With the default search path, an unqualified reference to your table name would then be resolved as the system table instead.) System tables will continue to follow the convention of having names beginning with `pg_`, so that they will not conflict with unqualified user-table names so long as users avoid the `pg_` prefix.
5.9.6. Usage Patterns

Schemas can be used to organize your data in many ways. A secure schema usage pattern prevents untrusted users from changing the behavior of other users' queries. When a database does not use a secure schema usage pattern, users wishing to securely query that database would take protective action at the beginning of each session. Specifically, they would begin each session by setting search_path to the empty string or otherwise removing non-superuser-writable schemas from search_path. There are a few usage patterns easily supported by the default configuration:

- **Constrain ordinary users to user-private schemas.** To implement this, issue `REVOKE CREATE ON SCHEMA public FROM PUBLIC`, and create a schema for each user with the same name as that user. Recall that the default search path starts with $user, which resolves to the user name. Therefore, if each user has a separate schema, they access their own schemas by default. After adopting this pattern in a database where untrusted users had already logged in, consider auditing the public schema for objects named like objects in schema `pg_catalog`. This pattern is a secure schema usage pattern unless an untrusted user is the database owner or holds the `CREATEROLE` privilege, in which case no secure schema usage pattern exists.

- **Remove the public schema from the default search path,** by modifying `postgresql.conf` or by issuing `ALTER ROLE ALL SET search_path = "$user"`. Everyone retains the ability to create objects in the public schema, but only qualified names will choose those objects. While qualified table references are fine, calls to functions in the public schema will be unsafe or unreliable. If you create functions or extensions in the public schema, use the first pattern instead. Otherwise, like the first pattern, this is secure unless an untrusted user is the database owner or holds the `CREATEROLE` privilege.

- **Keep the default.** All users access the public schema implicitly. This simulates the situation where schemas are not available at all, giving a smooth transition from the non-schema-aware world. However, this is never a secure pattern. It is acceptable only when the database has a single user or a few mutually-trusting users.

For any pattern, to install shared applications (tables to be used by everyone, additional functions provided by third parties, etc.), put them into separate schemas. Remember to grant appropriate privileges to allow the other users to access them. Users can then refer to these additional objects by qualifying the names with a schema name, or they can put the additional schemas into their search path, as they choose.

5.9.7. Portability

In the SQL standard, the notion of objects in the same schema being owned by different users does not exist. Moreover, some implementations do not allow you to create schemas that have a different name than their owner. In fact, the concepts of schema and user are nearly equivalent in a database system that implements only the basic schema support specified in the standard. Therefore, many users consider qualified names to really consist of `user_name.table_name`. This is how Postgres Pro will effectively behave if you create a per-user schema for every user.

Also, there is no concept of a public schema in the SQL standard. For maximum conformance to the standard, you should not use the public schema.

Of course, some SQL database systems might not implement schemas at all, or provide namespace support by allowing (possibly limited) cross-database access. If you need to work with those systems, then maximum portability would be achieved by not using schemas at all.

5.10. Inheritance

Postgres Pro implements table inheritance, which can be a useful tool for database designers. (SQL:1999 and later define a type inheritance feature, which differs in many respects from the features described here.)
Let's start with an example: suppose we are trying to build a data model for cities. Each state has many cities, but only one capital. We want to be able to quickly retrieve the capital city for any particular state. This can be done by creating two tables, one for state capitals and one for cities that are not capitals. However, what happens when we want to ask for data about a city, regardless of whether it is a capital or not? The inheritance feature can help to resolve this problem. We define the \textit{capitals} table so that it inherits from \textit{cities}:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE TABLE cities (  
  name text,  
  population float,  
  elevation int     -- in feet
);

CREATE TABLE capitals (  
  state char(2)  
) INHERITS (cities);
\end{verbatim}

In this case, the \textit{capitals} table \textit{inherits} all the columns of its parent table, \textit{cities}. State capitals also have an extra column, \textit{state}, that shows their state.

In Postgres Pro, a table can inherit from zero or more other tables, and a query can reference either all rows of a table or all rows of a table plus all of its descendant tables. The latter behavior is the default. For example, the following query finds the names of all cities, including state capitals, that are located at an elevation over 500 feet:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT name, elevation  
FROM cities  
WHERE elevation > 500;
\end{verbatim}

Given the sample data from the Postgres Pro tutorial (see Section 2.1), this returns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>elevation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Las Vegas</td>
<td>2174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mariposa</td>
<td>1953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madison</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On the other hand, the following query finds all the cities that are not state capitals and are situated at an elevation over 500 feet:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT name, elevation  
FROM ONLY cities  
WHERE elevation > 500;
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>elevation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Las Vegas</td>
<td>2174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mariposa</td>
<td>1953</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\end{verbatim}

Here the \textit{ONLY} keyword indicates that the query should apply only to \textit{cities}, and not any tables below \textit{cities} in the inheritance hierarchy. Many of the commands that we have already discussed — \textit{SELECT}, \textit{UPDATE} and \textit{DELETE} — support the \textit{ONLY} keyword.

You can also write the table name with a trailing \textit{*} to explicitly specify that descendant tables are included:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT name, elevation  
FROM cities*  
WHERE elevation > 500;
\end{verbatim}

Writing \textit{*} is not necessary, since this behavior is always the default. However, this syntax is still supported for compatibility with older releases where the default could be changed.
In some cases you might wish to know which table a particular row originated from. There is a system column called `tableoid` in each table which can tell you the originating table:

```
SELECT c.tableoid, c.name, c.elevation
FROM cities c
WHERE c.elevation > 500;
```

which returns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tableoid</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>elevation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>139793</td>
<td>Las Vegas</td>
<td>2174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139793</td>
<td>Mariposa</td>
<td>1953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139798</td>
<td>Madison</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(If you try to reproduce this example, you will probably get different numeric OIDs.) By doing a join with `pg_class` you can see the actual table names:

```
SELECT p.relname, c.name, c.elevation
FROM cities c, pg_class p
WHERE c.elevation > 500 AND c.tableoid = p.oid;
```

which returns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>relname</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>elevation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cities</td>
<td>Las Vegas</td>
<td>2174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cities</td>
<td>Mariposa</td>
<td>1953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitals</td>
<td>Madison</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another way to get the same effect is to use the `regclass` alias type, which will print the table OID symbolically:

```
SELECT c.tableoid::regclass, c.name, c.elevation
FROM cities c
WHERE c.elevation > 500;
```

Inheritance does not automatically propagate data from `INSERT` or `COPY` commands to other tables in the inheritance hierarchy. In our example, the following `INSERT` statement will fail:

```
INSERT INTO cities (name, population, elevation, state)
VALUES ('Albany', NULL, NULL, 'NY');
```

We might hope that the data would somehow be routed to the `capitals` table, but this does not happen: `INSERT` always inserts into exactly the table specified. In some cases it is possible to redirect the insertion using a rule (see Chapter 39). However that does not help for the above case because the `cities` table does not contain the column `state`, and so the command will be rejected before the rule can be applied.

All check constraints and not-null constraints on a parent table are automatically inherited by its children, unless explicitly specified otherwise with `NO INHERIT` clauses. Other types of constraints (unique, primary key, and foreign key constraints) are not inherited.

A table can inherit from more than one parent table, in which case it has the union of the columns defined by the parent tables. Any columns declared in the child table’s definition are added to these. If the same column name appears in multiple parent tables, or in both a parent table and the child’s definition, then these columns are “merged” so that there is only one such column in the child table. To be merged, columns must have the same data types, else an error is raised. Inheritable check constraints and not-null constraints are merged in a similar fashion. Thus, for example, a merged column will be marked not-null if any one of the column definitions it came from is marked not-null. Check constraints are merged if they have the same name, and the merge will fail if their conditions are different.

Table inheritance is typically established when the child table is created, using the `INHERITS` clause of the `CREATE TABLE` statement. Alternatively, a table which is already defined in a compatible way
can have a new parent relationship added, using the INHERIT variant of ALTER TABLE. To do this the new child table must already include columns with the same names and types as the columns of the parent. Similarly an inheritance link can be removed from a child using the NO INHERIT variant of ALTER TABLE. Dynamically adding and removing inheritance links like this can be useful when the inheritance relationship is being used for table partitioning (see Section 5.11).

One convenient way to create a compatible table that will later be made a new child is to use the LIKE clause in CREATE TABLE. This creates a new table with the same columns as the source table. If there are any CHECK constraints defined on the source table, the INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS option to LIKE should be specified, as the new child must have constraints matching the parent to be considered compatible.

A parent table cannot be dropped while any of its children remain. Neither can columns or check constraints of child tables be dropped or altered if they are inherited from any parent tables. If you wish to remove a table and all of its descendants, one easy way is to drop the parent table with the CASCADE option (see Section 5.14).

ALTER TABLE will propagate any changes in column data definitions and check constraints down the inheritance hierarchy. Again, dropping columns that are depended on by other tables is only possible when using the CASCADE option. ALTER TABLE follows the same rules for duplicate column merging and rejection that apply during CREATE TABLE.

Inherited queries perform access permission checks on the parent table only. Thus, for example, granting UPDATE permission on the cities table implies permission to update rows in the capitals table as well, when they are accessed through cities. This preserves the appearance that the data is (also) in the parent table. But the capitals table could not be updated directly without an additional grant. In a similar way, the parent table's row security policies (see Section 5.8) are applied to rows coming from child tables during an inherited query. A child table’s policies, if any, are applied only when it is the table explicitly named in the query; and in that case, any policies attached to its parent(s) are ignored.

Foreign tables (see Section 5.12) can also be part of inheritance hierarchies, either as parent or child tables, just as regular tables can be. If a foreign table is part of an inheritance hierarchy then any operations not supported by the foreign table are not supported on the whole hierarchy either.

5.10.1. Caveats

Note that not all SQL commands are able to work on inheritance hierarchies. Commands that are used for data querying, data modification, or schema modification (e.g., SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE, most variants of ALTER TABLE, but not INSERT or ALTER TABLE ... RENAME) typically default to including child tables and support the ONLY notation to exclude them. Commands that do database maintenance and tuning (e.g., REINDEX, VACUUM) typically only work on individual, physical tables and do not support recursing over inheritance hierarchies. The respective behavior of each individual command is documented in its reference page (SQL Commands).

A serious limitation of the inheritance feature is that indexes (including unique constraints) and foreign key constraints only apply to single tables, not to their inheritance children. This is true on both the referencing and referenced sides of a foreign key constraint. Thus, in the terms of the above example:

- If we declared cities.name to be UNIQUE or a PRIMARY KEY, this would not stop the capitals table from having rows with names duplicating rows in cities. And those duplicate rows would by default show up in queries from cities. In fact, by default capitals would have no unique constraint at all, and so could contain multiple rows with the same name. You could add a unique constraint to capitals, but this would not prevent duplication compared to cities.

- Similarly, if we were to specify that cities.name REFERENCES some other table, this constraint would not automatically propagate to capitals. In this case you could work around it by manually adding the same REFERENCES constraint to capitals.

- Specifying that another table's column REFERENCES cities(name) would allow the other table to contain city names, but not capital names. There is no good workaround for this case.
Some functionality not implemented for inheritance hierarchies is implemented for declarative partitioning. Considerable care is needed in deciding whether partitioning with legacy inheritance is useful for your application.

5.11. Table Partitioning

Postgres Pro supports basic table partitioning. This section describes why and how to implement partitioning as part of your database design.

5.11.1. Overview

Partitioning refers to splitting what is logically one large table into smaller physical pieces. Partitioning can provide several benefits:

• Query performance can be improved dramatically in certain situations, particularly when most of the heavily accessed rows of the table are in a single partition or a small number of partitions. Partitioning effectively substitutes for the upper tree levels of indexes, making it more likely that the heavily-used parts of the indexes fit in memory.

• When queries or updates access a large percentage of a single partition, performance can be improved by using a sequential scan of that partition instead of using an index, which would require random-access reads scattered across the whole table.

• Bulk loads and deletes can be accomplished by adding or removing partitions, if the usage pattern is accounted for in the partitioning design. Dropping an individual partition using DROP TABLE, or doing ALTER TABLE DETACH PARTITION, is far faster than a bulk operation. These commands also entirely avoid the VACUUM overhead caused by a bulk DELETE.

• Seldom-used data can be migrated to cheaper and slower storage media.

These benefits will normally be worthwhile only when a table would otherwise be very large. The exact point at which a table will benefit from partitioning depends on the application, although a rule of thumb is that the size of the table should exceed the physical memory of the database server.

Postgres Pro offers built-in support for the following forms of partitioning:

Range Partitioning

The table is partitioned into “ranges” defined by a key column or set of columns, with no overlap between the ranges of values assigned to different partitions. For example, one might partition by date ranges, or by ranges of identifiers for particular business objects. Each range's bounds are understood as being inclusive at the lower end and exclusive at the upper end. For example, if one partition's range is from \(1\) to \(10\), and the next one's range is from \(10\) to \(20\), then value \(10\) belongs to the second partition not the first.

List Partitioning

The table is partitioned by explicitly listing which key value(s) appear in each partition.

Hash Partitioning

The table is partitioned by specifying a modulus and a remainder for each partition. Each partition will hold the rows for which the hash value of the partition key divided by the specified modulus will produce the specified remainder.

If your application needs to use other forms of partitioning not listed above, alternative methods such as inheritance and UNION ALL views can be used instead. Such methods offer flexibility but do not have some of the performance benefits of built-in declarative partitioning.

5.11.2. Declarative Partitioning

Postgres Pro allows you to declare that a table is divided into partitions. The table that is divided is referred to as a partitioned table. The declaration includes the partitioning method as described above, plus a list of columns or expressions to be used as the partition key.
The partitioned table itself is a “virtual” table having no storage of its own. Instead, the storage belongs to partitions, which are otherwise-ordinary tables associated with the partitioned table. Each partition stores a subset of the data as defined by its partition bounds. All rows inserted into a partitioned table will be routed to the appropriate one of the partitions based on the values of the partition key column(s). Updating the partition key of a row will cause it to be moved into a different partition if it no longer satisfies the partition bounds of its original partition.

Partitions may themselves be defined as partitioned tables, resulting in sub-partitioning. Although all partitions must have the same columns as their partitioned parent, partitions may have their own indexes, constraints and default values, distinct from those of other partitions. See CREATE TABLE for more details on creating partitioned tables and partitions.

It is not possible to turn a regular table into a partitioned table or vice versa. However, it is possible to add an existing regular or partitioned table as a partition of a partitioned table, or remove a partition from a partitioned table turning it into a standalone table; this can simplify and speed up many maintenance processes. See ALTER TABLE to learn more about the ATTACH PARTITION and DETACH PARTITION sub-commands.

Partitions can also be foreign tables, although they have some limitations that normal tables do not; see CREATE FOREIGN TABLE for more information.

5.11.2.1. Example

Suppose we are constructing a database for a large ice cream company. The company measures peak temperatures every day as well as ice cream sales in each region. Conceptually, we want a table like:

```sql
CREATE TABLE measurement (
    city_id int not null,
    logdate date not null,
    peaktemp int,
    unitsales int
);
```

We know that most queries will access just the last week's, month's or quarter's data, since the main use of this table will be to prepare online reports for management. To reduce the amount of old data that needs to be stored, we decide to keep only the most recent 3 years worth of data. At the beginning of each month we will remove the oldest month's data. In this situation we can use partitioning to help us meet all of our different requirements for the measurements table.

To use declarative partitioning in this case, use the following steps:

1. Create the measurement table as a partitioned table by specifying the PARTITION BY clause, which includes the partitioning method (RANGE in this case) and the list of column(s) to use as the partition key.

```sql
CREATE TABLE measurement (
    city_id int not null,
    logdate date not null,
    peaktemp int,
    unitsales int
) PARTITION BY RANGE (logdate);
```

2. Create partitions. Each partition's definition must specify bounds that correspond to the partitioning method and partition key of the parent. Note that specifying bounds such that the new partition's values would overlap with those in one or more existing partitions will cause an error.

Partitions thus created are in every way normal Postgres Pro tables (or, possibly, foreign tables). It is possible to specify a tablespace and storage parameters for each partition separately.

For our example, each partition should hold one month's worth of data, to match the requirement of deleting one month's data at a time. So the commands might look like:

```sql
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m02 PARTITION OF measurement
```
FOR VALUES FROM ('2006-02-01') TO ('2006-03-01');

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m03 PARTITION OF measurement
FOR VALUES FROM ('2006-03-01') TO ('2006-04-01');

...  

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m02 PARTITION OF measurement
FOR VALUES FROM ('2006-02-01') TO ('2006-03-01')
PARTITION BY RANGE (peaktemp);

After creating partitions of measurement_y2006m02, any data inserted into measurement
that is mapped to measurement_y2006m02 (or data that is directly inserted into measurement_y2006m02,
which is allowed provided its partition constraint is satisfied) will be further redirected to one of its
partitions based on the peaktemp column. The partition key specified may overlap with the parent's
partition key, although care should be taken when specifying the bounds of a sub-partition such that
the set of data it accepts constitutes a subset of what the partition's own bounds allow; the system
does not try to check whether that's really the case.

Inserting data into the parent table that does not map to one of the existing partitions will cause an
error; an appropriate partition must be added manually.

It is not necessary to manually create table constraints describing the partition boundary conditions
for partitions. Such constraints will be created automatically.

3. Create an index on the key column(s), as well as any other indexes you might want, on the partitioned
table. (The key index is not strictly necessary, but in most scenarios it is helpful.) This automatically
creates a matching index on each partition, and any partitions you create or attach later will also have
such an index. An index or unique constraint declared on a partitioned table is “virtual” in the same
way that the partitioned table is: the actual data is in child indexes on the individual partition tables.

CREATE INDEX ON measurement (logdate);

4. Ensure that the enable_partition_pruning configuration parameter is not disabled in
postgresql.conf. If it is, queries will not be optimized as desired.

In the above example we would be creating a new partition each month, so it might be wise to write a
script that generates the required DDL automatically.

5.11.2.2. Partition Maintenance

Normally the set of partitions established when initially defining the table is not intended to remain
static. It is common to want to remove partitions holding old data and periodically add new partitions for
new data. One of the most important advantages of partitioning is precisely that it allows this otherwise
painful task to be executed nearly instantaneously by manipulating the partition structure, rather than
physically moving large amounts of data around.
The simplest option for removing old data is to drop the partition that is no longer necessary:

DROP TABLE measurement_y2006m02;

This can very quickly delete millions of records because it doesn't have to individually delete every record. Note however that the above command requires taking an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table.

Another option that is often preferable is to remove the partition from the partitioned table but retain access to it as a table in its own right. This has two forms:

ALTER TABLE measurement DETACH PARTITION measurement_y2006m02;
ALTER TABLE measurement DETACH PARTITION measurement_y2006m02 CONCURRENTLY;

These allow further operations to be performed on the data before it is dropped. For example, this is often a useful time to back up the data using `COPY`, `pg_dump`, or similar tools. It might also be a useful time to aggregate data into smaller formats, perform other data manipulations, or run reports. The first form of the command requires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table. Adding the `CONCURRENTLY` qualifier as in the second form allows the detach operation to require only `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table, but see `ALTER TABLE ... DETACH PARTITION` for details on the restrictions.

Similarly we can add a new partition to handle new data. We can create an empty partition in the partitioned table just as the original partitions were created above:

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m02 PARTITION OF measurement
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2008-02-01') TO ('2008-03-01')
    TABLESPACE fasttablespace;

As an alternative, it is sometimes more convenient to create the new table outside the partition structure, and make it a proper partition later. This allows new data to be loaded, checked, and transformed prior to it appearing in the partitioned table. The `CREATE TABLE ... LIKE` option is helpful to avoid tediously repeating the parent table's definition:

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m02
    (LIKE measurement INCLUDING DEFAULTS INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS)
    TABLESPACE fasttablespace;

ALTER TABLE measurement_y2008m02 ADD CONSTRAINT y2008m02
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2008-02-01' AND logdate < DATE '2008-03-01' );

\copy measurement_y2008m02 from 'measurement_y2008m02'
   -- possibly some other data preparation work

ALTER TABLE measurement ATTACH PARTITION measurement_y2008m02
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2008-02-01') TO ('2008-03-01');

The `ATTACH PARTITION` command requires taking a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock on the partitioned table.

Before running the `ATTACH PARTITION` command, it is recommended to create a `CHECK` constraint on the table to be attached that matches the expected partition constraint, as illustrated above. That way, the system will be able to skip the scan which is otherwise needed to validate the implicit partition constraint. Without the `CHECK` constraint, the table will be scanned to validate the partition constraint while holding an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on that partition. It is recommended to drop the now-redundant `CHECK` constraint after the `ATTACH PARTITION` is complete. If the table being attached is itself a partitioned table then each of its sub-partitions will be recursively locked and scanned until either a suitable `CHECK` constraint is encountered or the leaf partitions are reached.

Similarly, if the partitioned table has a `DEFAULT` partition, it is recommended to create a `CHECK` constraint which excludes the to-be-attached partition's constraint. If this is not done then the `DEFAULT` partition will be scanned to verify that it contains no records which should be located in the partition being attached.
This operation will be performed whilst holding an **ACCESS EXCLUSIVE** lock on the **DEFAULT** partition. If the **DEFAULT** partition is itself a partitioned table then each of its partitions will be recursively checked in the same way as the table being attached, as mentioned above.

As explained above, it is possible to create indexes on partitioned tables so that they are applied automatically to the entire hierarchy. This is very convenient, as not only will the existing partitions become indexed, but also any partitions that are created in the future will. One limitation is that it's not possible to use the **CONCURRENTLY** qualifier when creating such a partitioned index. To avoid long lock times, it is possible to use **CREATE INDEX ON ONLY** the partitioned table; such an index is marked invalid, and the partitions do not get the index applied automatically. The indexes on partitions can be created individually using **CONCURRENTLY**, and then **ATTACH PARTITION**. Once indexes for all partitions are attached to the parent index, the parent index is marked valid automatically. Example:

```sql
CREATE INDEX measurement_usls_idx ON ONLY measurement (unitsales);

CREATE INDEX measurement_usls_200602_idx
    ON measurement_y2006m02 (unitsales);

ALTER INDEX measurement_usls_idx
    ATTACH PARTITION measurement_usls_200602_idx;
```

This technique can be used with **UNIQUE** and **PRIMARY KEY** constraints too; the indexes are created implicitly when the constraint is created. Example:

```sql
ALTER TABLE ONLY measurement ADD UNIQUE (city_id, logdate);

ALTER TABLE measurement_y2006m02 ADD UNIQUE (city_id, logdate);

ALTER INDEX measurement_city_id_logdate_key
    ATTACH PARTITION measurement_y2006m02_city_id_logdate_key;
```

### 5.11.2.3. Limitations

The following limitations apply to partitioned tables:

- Unique constraints (and hence primary keys) on partitioned tables must include all the partition key columns. This limitation exists because the individual indexes making up the constraint can only directly enforce uniqueness within their own partitions; therefore, the partition structure itself must guarantee that there are not duplicates in different partitions.

- There is no way to create an exclusion constraint spanning the whole partitioned table. It is only possible to put such a constraint on each leaf partition individually. Again, this limitation stems from not being able to enforce cross-partition restrictions.

- **BEFORE ROW** triggers on **INSERT** cannot change which partition is the final destination for a new row.

- Mixing temporary and permanent relations in the same partition tree is not allowed. Hence, if the partitioned table is permanent, so must be its partitions and likewise if the partitioned table is temporary. When using temporary relations, all members of the partition tree have to be from the same session.

Individual partitions are linked to their partitioned table using inheritance behind-the-scenes. However, it is not possible to use all of the generic features of inheritance with declaratively partitioned tables or their partitions, as discussed below. Notably, a partition cannot have any parents other than the partitioned table it is a partition of, nor can a table inherit from both a partitioned table and a regular table. That means partitioned tables and their partitions never share an inheritance hierarchy with regular tables.

Since a partition hierarchy consisting of the partitioned table and its partitions is still an inheritance hierarchy, **tableoid** and all the normal rules of inheritance apply as described in Section 5.10, with a few exceptions:
• Partitions cannot have columns that are not present in the parent. It is not possible to specify columns when creating partitions with `CREATE TABLE`, nor is it possible to add columns to partitions after-the-fact using `ALTER TABLE`. Tables may be added as a partition with `ALTER TABLE ... ATTACH PARTITION` only if their columns exactly match the parent.

• Both `CHECK` and `NOT NULL` constraints of a partitioned table are always inherited by all its partitions. `CHECK` constraints that are marked `NO INHERIT` are not allowed to be created on partitioned tables. You cannot drop a `NOT NULL` constraint on a partition's column if the same constraint is present in the parent table.

• Using `ONLY` to add or drop a constraint on only the partitioned table is supported as long as there are no partitions. Once partitions exist, using `ONLY` will result in an error. Instead, constraints on the partitions themselves can be added and (if they are not present in the parent table) dropped.

• As a partitioned table does not have any data itself, attempts to use `TRUNCATE ONLY` on a partitioned table will always return an error.

5.11.3. Partitioning Using Inheritance

While the built-in declarative partitioning is suitable for most common use cases, there are some circumstances where a more flexible approach may be useful. Partitioning can be implemented using table inheritance, which allows for several features not supported by declarative partitioning, such as:

• For declarative partitioning, partitions must have exactly the same set of columns as the partitioned table, whereas with table inheritance, child tables may have extra columns not present in the parent.

• Table inheritance allows for multiple inheritance.

• Declarative partitioning only supports range, list and hash partitioning, whereas table inheritance allows data to be divided in a manner of the user's choosing. (Note, however, that if constraint exclusion is unable to prune child tables effectively, query performance might be poor.)

5.11.3.1. Example

This example builds a partitioning structure equivalent to the declarative partitioning example above. Use the following steps:

1. Create the “root” table, from which all of the “child” tables will inherit. This table will contain no data. Do not define any check constraints on this table, unless you intend them to be applied equally to all child tables. There is no point in defining any indexes or unique constraints on it, either. For our example, the root table is the `measurement` table as originally defined:

   ```sql
   CREATE TABLE measurement (  
     city_id         int not null,  
     logdate         date not null,  
     peaktemp        int,  
     unitsales       int  
   );
   ```

2. Create several “child” tables that each inherit from the root table. Normally, these tables will not add any columns to the set inherited from the root. Just as with declarative partitioning, these tables are in every way normal Postgres Pro tables (or foreign tables).

   ```sql
   CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m02 () INHERITS (measurement);  
   CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m03 () INHERITS (measurement);  
   ...  
   CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m11 () INHERITS (measurement);  
   CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m12 () INHERITS (measurement);  
   CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m01 () INHERITS (measurement);  
   ```

3. Add non-overlapping table constraints to the child tables to define the allowed key values in each.

   Typical examples would be:

   ```sql
   CHECK ( x = 1 )
   ```
CHECK ( county IN ( 'Oxfordshire', 'Buckinghamshire', 'Warwickshire' ))
CHECK ( outletID >= 100 AND outletID < 200 )

Ensure that the constraints guarantee that there is no overlap between the key values permitted in different child tables. A common mistake is to set up range constraints like:

CHECK ( outletID BETWEEN 100 AND 200 )
CHECK ( outletID BETWEEN 200 AND 300 )

This is wrong since it is not clear which child table the key value 200 belongs in. Instead, ranges should be defined in this style:

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m02 (  
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2006-02-01' AND logdate < DATE '2006-03-01' )  
) INHERITS (measurement);

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m03 (  
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2006-03-01' AND logdate < DATE '2006-04-01' )  
) INHERITS (measurement);

...  
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m11 (  
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2007-11-01' AND logdate < DATE '2007-12-01' )  
) INHERITS (measurement);

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m12 (  
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2007-12-01' AND logdate < DATE '2008-01-01' )  
) INHERITS (measurement);

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m01 (  
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2008-01-01' AND logdate < DATE '2008-02-01' )  
) INHERITS (measurement);

4. For each child table, create an index on the key column(s), as well as any other indexes you might want.

CREATE INDEX measurement_y2006m02_logdate ON measurement_y2006m02 (logdate);
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2006m03_logdate ON measurement_y2006m03 (logdate);
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2007m11_logdate ON measurement_y2007m11 (logdate);
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2007m12_logdate ON measurement_y2007m12 (logdate);
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2008m01_logdate ON measurement_y2008m01 (logdate);

5. We want our application to be able to say INSERT INTO measurement ... and have the data be redirected into the appropriate child table. We can arrange that by attaching a suitable trigger function to the root table. If data will be added only to the latest child, we can use a very simple trigger function:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION measurement_insert_trigger()  
RETURNS TRIGGER AS $$
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO measurement_y2008m01 VALUES (NEW.*);
    RETURN NULL;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

After creating the function, we create a trigger which calls the trigger function:

CREATE TRIGGER insert_measurement_trigger  
BEFORE INSERT ON measurement  
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION measurement_insert_trigger();

We must redefine the trigger function each month so that it always inserts into the current child table. The trigger definition does not need to be updated, however.
We might want to insert data and have the server automatically locate the child table into which the row should be added. We could do this with a more complex trigger function, for example:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION measurement_insert_trigger()
RETURNS TRIGGER AS $$
BEGIN
    IF ( NEW.logdate >= DATE '2006-02-01' AND
         NEW.logdate < DATE '2006-03-01' ) THEN
        INSERT INTO measurement_y2006m02 VALUES (NEW.*);
    ELSIF ( NEW.logdate >= DATE '2006-03-01' AND
            NEW.logdate < DATE '2006-04-01' ) THEN
        INSERT INTO measurement_y2006m03 VALUES (NEW.*);
    ... 
    ELSIF ( NEW.logdate >= DATE '2008-01-01' AND
            NEW.logdate < DATE '2008-02-01' ) THEN
        INSERT INTO measurement_y2008m01 VALUES (NEW.*);
    ELSE
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'Date out of range. Fix the measurement_insert_trigger()
    function!';
    END IF;
    RETURN NULL;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The trigger definition is the same as before. Note that each `IF` test must exactly match the `CHECK` constraint for its child table.

While this function is more complex than the single-month case, it doesn't need to be updated as often, since branches can be added in advance of being needed.

---

**Note**

In practice, it might be best to check the newest child first, if most inserts go into that child. For simplicity, we have shown the trigger's tests in the same order as in other parts of this example.

A different approach to redirecting inserts into the appropriate child table is to set up rules, instead of a trigger, on the root table. For example:

```sql
CREATE RULE measurement_insert_y2006m02 AS
ON INSERT TO measurement WHERE
    ( logdate >= DATE '2006-02-01' AND logdate < DATE '2006-03-01' )
DO INSTEAD
    INSERT INTO measurement_y2006m02 VALUES (NEW.*);
...
CREATE RULE measurement_insert_y2008m01 AS
ON INSERT TO measurement WHERE
    ( logdate >= DATE '2008-01-01' AND logdate < DATE '2008-02-01' )
DO INSTEAD
```
A rule has significantly more overhead than a trigger, but the overhead is paid once per query rather than once per row, so this method might be advantageous for bulk-insert situations. In most cases, however, the trigger method will offer better performance.

Be aware that \texttt{COPY} ignores rules. If you want to use \texttt{COPY} to insert data, you'll need to copy into the correct child table rather than directly into the root. \texttt{COPY} does fire triggers, so you can use it normally if you use the trigger approach.

Another disadvantage of the rule approach is that there is no simple way to force an error if the set of rules doesn't cover the insertion date; the data will silently go into the root table instead.

6. Ensure that the \texttt{constraint exclusion} configuration parameter is not disabled in \texttt{postgresql.conf}; otherwise child tables may be accessed unnecessarily.

As we can see, a complex table hierarchy could require a substantial amount of DDL. In the above example we would be creating a new child table each month, so it might be wise to write a script that generates the required DDL automatically.

\section*{Maintenance for Inheritance Partitioning}

To remove old data quickly, simply drop the child table that is no longer necessary:

\begin{verbatim}
DROP TABLE measurement_y2006m02;
\end{verbatim}

To remove the child table from the inheritance hierarchy table but retain access to it as a table in its own right:

\begin{verbatim}
ALTER TABLE measurement_y2006m02 NO INHERIT measurement;
\end{verbatim}

To add a new child table to handle new data, create an empty child table just as the original children were created above:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m02 (  
   CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2008-02-01' AND logdate < DATE '2008-03-01' )  
) INHERITS (measurement);
\end{verbatim}

Alternatively, one may want to create and populate the new child table before adding it to the table hierarchy. This could allow data to be loaded, checked, and transformed before being made visible to queries on the parent table.

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m02  
   (LIKE measurement INCLUDING DEFAULTS INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS);  
ALTER TABLE measurement_y2008m02 ADD CONSTRAINT y2008m02  
   CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2008-02-01' AND logdate < DATE '2008-03-01' );  
\copy measurement_y2008m02 from 'measurement_y2008m02'  
   -- possibly some other data preparation work  
ALTER TABLE measurement_y2008m02 INHERIT measurement;
\end{verbatim}

\section*{Caveats}

The following caveats apply to partitioning implemented using inheritance:

- There is no automatic way to verify that all of the \texttt{CHECK} constraints are mutually exclusive. It is safer to create code that generates child tables and creates and/or modifies associated objects than to write each by hand.

- Indexes and foreign key constraints apply to single tables and not to their inheritance children, hence they have some \texttt{caveats} to be aware of.

- The schemes shown here assume that the values of a row's key column(s) never change, or at least do not change enough to require it to move to another partition. An \texttt{UPDATE} that attempts to do that will fail because of the \texttt{CHECK} constraints. If you need to handle such cases, you can put
suitable update triggers on the child tables, but it makes management of the structure much more complicated.

- If you are using manual `VACUUM` or `ANALYZE` commands, don't forget that you need to run them on each child table individually. A command like:

  ```
  ANALYZE measurement;
  ```

  will only process the root table.

- `INSERT` statements with `ON CONFLICT` clauses are unlikely to work as expected, as the `ON CONFLICT` action is only taken in case of unique violations on the specified target relation, not its child relations.

- Triggers or rules will be needed to route rows to the desired child table, unless the application is explicitly aware of the partitioning scheme. Triggers may be complicated to write, and will be much slower than the tuple routing performed internally by declarative partitioning.

### 5.11.4. Partition Pruning

*Partition pruning* is a query optimization technique that improves performance for declaratively partitioned tables. As an example:

```sql
SET enable_partition_pruning = on;  -- the default
SELECT count(*) FROM measurement WHERE logdate >= '2008-01-01';
```

Without partition pruning, the above query would scan each of the partitions of the `measurement` table. With partition pruning enabled, the planner will examine the definition of each partition and prove that the partition need not be scanned because it could not contain any rows meeting the query's `WHERE` clause. When the planner can prove this, it excludes (prunes) the partition from the query plan.

By using the `EXPLAIN` command and the `enable_partition_pruning` configuration parameter, it's possible to show the difference between a plan for which partitions have been pruned and one for which they have not. A typical unoptimized plan for this type of table setup is:

```sql
SET enable_partition_pruning = off;
EXPLAIN SELECT count(*) FROM measurement WHERE logdate >= '2008-01-01';
```

```sql
QUERY PLAN
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Aggregate  (cost=188.76..188.77 rows=1 width=8)
   ->  Append  (cost=0.00..181.05 rows=3085 width=0)
      ->  Seq Scan on measurement_y2006m02  (cost=0.00..33.12 rows=617 width=0)  
          Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
      ->  Seq Scan on measurement_y2006m03  (cost=0.00..33.12 rows=617 width=0)  
          Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
      ...
      ->  Seq Scan on measurement_y2007m11  (cost=0.00..33.12 rows=617 width=0)  
          Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
      ->  Seq Scan on measurement_y2007m12  (cost=0.00..33.12 rows=617 width=0)  
          Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
      ->  Seq Scan on measurement_y2008m01  (cost=0.00..33.12 rows=617 width=0)  
          Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)

Some or all of the partitions might use index scans instead of full-table sequential scans, but the point here is that there is no need to scan the older partitions at all to answer this query. When we enable partition pruning, we get a significantly cheaper plan that will deliver the same answer:

```sql
SET enable_partition_pruning = on;
EXPLAIN SELECT count(*) FROM measurement WHERE logdate >= '2008-01-01';
```

```sql
QUERY PLAN
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Aggregate  (cost=37.75..37.76 rows=1 width=8)
   ->  Seq Scan on measurement_y2008m01  (cost=0.00..33.12 rows=617 width=0)
```

82
Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)

Note that partition pruning is driven only by the constraints defined implicitly by the partition keys, not by the presence of indexes. Therefore it isn't necessary to define indexes on the key columns. Whether an index needs to be created for a given partition depends on whether you expect that queries that scan the partition will generally scan a large part of the partition or just a small part. An index will be helpful in the latter case but not the former.

Partition pruning can be performed not only during the planning of a given query, but also during its execution. This is useful as it can allow more partitions to be pruned when clauses contain expressions whose values are not known at query planning time, for example, parameters defined in a `PREPARE` statement, using a value obtained from a subquery, or using a parameterized value on the inner side of a nested loop join. Partition pruning during execution can be performed at any of the following times:

- During initialization of the query plan. Partition pruning can be performed here for parameter values which are known during the initialization phase of execution. Partitions which are pruned during this stage will not show up in the query's `EXPLAIN` or `EXPLAIN ANALYZE`. It is possible to determine the number of partitions which were removed during this phase by observing the "Subplans Removed" property in the `EXPLAIN` output.

- During actual execution of the query plan. Partition pruning may also be performed here to remove partitions using values which are only known during actual query execution. This includes values from subqueries and values from execution-time parameters such as those from parameterized nested loop joins. Since the value of these parameters may change many times during the execution of the query, partition pruning is performed whenever one of the execution parameters being used by partition pruning changes. Determining if partitions were pruned during this phase requires careful inspection of the `loops` property in the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` output. Subplans corresponding to different partitions may have different values for it depending on how many times each of them was pruned during execution. Some may be shown as (never executed) if they were pruned every time.

Partition pruning can be disabled using the `enable_partition_pruning` setting.

### 5.11.5. Partitioning and Constraint Exclusion

*Constraint exclusion* is a query optimization technique similar to partition pruning. While it is primarily used for partitioning implemented using the legacy inheritance method, it can be used for other purposes, including with declarative partitioning.

Constraint exclusion works in a very similar way to partition pruning, except that it uses each table's `CHECK` constraints — which gives it its name — whereas partition pruning uses the table's partition bounds, which exist only in the case of declarative partitioning. Another difference is that constraint exclusion is only applied at plan time; there is no attempt to remove partitions at execution time.

The fact that constraint exclusion uses `CHECK` constraints, which makes it slow compared to partition pruning, can sometimes be used as an advantage: because constraints can be defined even on declaratively-partitioned tables, in addition to their internal partition bounds, constraint exclusion may be able to elide additional partitions from the query plan.

The default (and recommended) setting of `constraint_exclusion` is neither `on` nor `off`, but an intermediate setting called `partition`, which causes the technique to be applied only to queries that are likely to be working on inheritance partitioned tables. The `on` setting causes the planner to examine `CHECK` constraints in all queries, even simple ones that are unlikely to benefit.

The following caveats apply to constraint exclusion:

- Constraint exclusion is only applied during query planning, unlike partition pruning, which can also be applied during query execution.

- Constraint exclusion only works when the query's `WHERE` clause contains constants (or externally supplied parameters). For example, a comparison against a non-immutable function such as
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP cannot be optimized, since the planner cannot know which child table the function’s value might fall into at run time.

- Keep the partitioning constraints simple, else the planner may not be able to prove that child tables might not need to be visited. Use simple equality conditions for list partitioning, or simple range tests for range partitioning, as illustrated in the preceding examples. A good rule of thumb is that partitioning constraints should contain only comparisons of the partitioning column(s) to constants using B-tree-indexable operators, because only B-tree-indexable column(s) are allowed in the partition key.

- All constraints on all children of the parent table are examined during constraint exclusion, so large numbers of children are likely to increase query planning time considerably. So the legacy inheritance based partitioning will work well with up to perhaps a hundred child tables; don’t try to use many thousands of children.

### 5.11.6. Best Practices for Declarative Partitioning

The choice of how to partition a table should be made carefully, as the performance of query planning and execution can be negatively affected by poor design.

One of the most critical design decisions will be the column or columns by which you partition your data. Often the best choice will be to partition by the column or set of columns which most commonly appear in `WHERE` clauses of queries being executed on the partitioned table. `WHERE` clauses that are compatible with the partition bound constraints can be used to prune unneeded partitions. However, you may be forced into making other decisions by requirements for the `primary key` or a `unique` constraint. Removal of unwanted data is also a factor to consider when planning your partitioning strategy. An entire partition can be detached fairly quickly, so it may be beneficial to design the partition strategy in such a way that all data to be removed at once is located in a single partition.

Choosing the target number of partitions that the table should be divided into is also a critical decision to make. Not having enough partitions may mean that indexes remain too large and that data locality remains poor which could result in low cache hit ratios. However, dividing the table into too many partitions can also cause issues. Too many partitions can mean longer query planning times and higher memory consumption during both query planning and execution, as further described below. When choosing how to partition your table, it's also important to consider what changes may occur in the future. For example, if you choose to have one partition per customer and you currently have a small number of large customers, consider the implications if in several years you instead find yourself with a large number of small customers. In this case, it may be better to choose to partition by `HASH` and choose a reasonable number of partitions rather than trying to partition by `LIST` and hoping that the number of customers does not increase beyond what it is practical to partition the data by.

Sub-partitioning can be useful to further divide partitions that are expected to become larger than other partitions. Another option is to use range partitioning with multiple columns in the partition key. Either of these can easily lead to excessive numbers of partitions, so restraint is advisable.

It is important to consider the overhead of partitioning during query planning and execution. The query planner is generally able to handle partition hierarchies with up to a few thousand partitions fairly well, provided that typical queries allow the query planner to prune all but a small number of partitions. Planning times become longer and memory consumption becomes higher when more partitions remain after the planner performs partition pruning. Another reason to be concerned about having a large number of partitions is that the server’s memory consumption may grow significantly over time, especially if many sessions touch large numbers of partitions. That’s because each partition requires its metadata to be loaded into the local memory of each session that touches it.

With data warehouse type workloads, it can make sense to use a larger number of partitions than with an OLTP type workload. Generally, in data warehouses, query planning time is less of a concern as the majority of processing time is spent during query execution. With either of these two types of workload, it is important to make the right decisions early, as re-partitioning large quantities of data can be painfully slow. Simulations of the intended workload are often beneficial for optimizing the partitioning strategy. Never just assume that more partitions are better than fewer partitions, nor vice-versa.
5.12. Foreign Data

Postgres Pro implements portions of the SQL/MED specification, allowing you to access data that resides outside Postgres Pro using regular SQL queries. Such data is referred to as foreign data. (Note that this usage is not to be confused with foreign keys, which are a type of constraint within the database.)

Foreign data is accessed with help from a foreign data wrapper. A foreign data wrapper is a library that can communicate with an external data source, hiding the details of connecting to the data source and obtaining data from it. There are some foreign data wrappers available as contrib modules; see Appendix F. Other kinds of foreign data wrappers might be found as third party products. If none of the existing foreign data wrappers suit your needs, you can write your own; see Chapter 53.

To access foreign data, you need to create a foreign server object, which defines how to connect to a particular external data source according to the set of options used by its supporting foreign data wrapper. Then you need to create one or more foreign tables, which define the structure of the remote data. A foreign table can be used in queries just like a normal table, but a foreign table has no storage in the Postgres Pro server. Whenever it is used, Postgres Pro asks the foreign data wrapper to fetch data from the external source, or transmit data to the external source in the case of update commands.

Accessing remote data may require authenticating to the external data source. This information can be provided by a user mapping, which can provide additional data such as user names and passwords based on the current Postgres Pro role.

For additional information, see CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, CREATE SERVER, CREATE USER MAPPING, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE, and IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA.

5.13. Other Database Objects

Tables are the central objects in a relational database structure, because they hold your data. But they are not the only objects that exist in a database. Many other kinds of objects can be created to make the use and management of the data more efficient or convenient. They are not discussed in this chapter, but we give you a list here so that you are aware of what is possible:

- Views
- Functions, procedures, and operators
- Data types and domains
- Triggers and rewrite rules

Detailed information on these topics appears in Part V.

5.14. Dependency Tracking

When you create complex database structures involving many tables with foreign key constraints, views, triggers, functions, etc. you implicitly create a net of dependencies between the objects. For instance, a table with a foreign key constraint depends on the table it references.

To ensure the integrity of the entire database structure, Postgres Pro makes sure that you cannot drop objects that other objects still depend on. For example, attempting to drop the products table we considered in Section 5.4.5, with the orders table depending on it, would result in an error message like this:

```
DROP TABLE products;
```

```
ERROR:  cannot drop table products because other objects depend on it
DETAIL:  constraint orders_product_no_fkey on table orders depends on table products
HINT:  Use DROP ... CASCADE to drop the dependent objects too.
```

The error message contains a useful hint: if you do not want to bother deleting all the dependent objects individually, you can run:
Data Definition

DROP TABLE products CASCADE;

and all the dependent objects will be removed, as will any objects that depend on them, recursively. In 
this case, it doesn't remove the orders table, it only removes the foreign key constraint. It stops there 
because nothing depends on the foreign key constraint. (If you want to check what DROP ... CASCADE 
will do, run DROP without CASCADE and read the DETAIL output.)

Almost all DROP commands in Postgres Pro support specifying CASCADE. Of course, the nature of the 
possible dependencies varies with the type of the object. You can also write RESTRICT instead of CASCADE 
to get the default behavior, which is to prevent dropping objects that any other objects depend on.

Note

According to the SQL standard, specifying either RESTRICT or CASCADE is required in a DROP 
command. No database system actually enforces that rule, but whether the default behavior is 
RESTRICT or CASCADE varies across systems.

If a DROP command lists multiple objects, CASCADE is only required when there are dependencies outside 
the specified group. For example, when saying DROP TABLE tab1, tab2 the existence of a foreign key 
referring tab1 from tab2 would not mean that CASCADE is needed to succeed.

For user-defined functions, Postgres Pro tracks dependencies associated with a function's externally-
visible properties, such as its argument and result types, but not dependencies that could only be known 
by examining the function body. As an example, consider this situation:

CREATE TYPE rainbow AS ENUM ('red', 'orange', 'yellow',
    'green', 'blue', 'purple');

CREATE TABLE my_colors (color rainbow, note text);

CREATE FUNCTION get_color_note (rainbow) RETURNS text AS
    'SELECT note FROM my_colors WHERE color = $1'
    LANGUAGE SQL;

(See Section 36.5 for an explanation of SQL-language functions.) Postgres Pro will be aware that the 
get_color_note function depends on the rainbow type: dropping the type would force dropping the 
function, because its argument type would no longer be defined. But Postgres Pro will not consider 
get_color_note to depend on the my_colors table, and so will not drop the function if the table is 
dropped. While there are disadvantages to this approach, there are also benefits. The function is still 
valid in some sense if the table is missing, though executing it would cause an error; creating a new 
table of the same name would allow the function to work again.
Chapter 6. Data Manipulation

The previous chapter discussed how to create tables and other structures to hold your data. Now it is time to fill the tables with data. This chapter covers how to insert, update, and delete table data. The chapter after this will finally explain how to extract your long-lost data from the database.

6.1. Inserting Data

When a table is created, it contains no data. The first thing to do before a database can be of much use is to insert data. Data is inserted one row at a time. You can also insert more than one row in a single command, but it is not possible to insert something that is not a complete row. Even if you know only some column values, a complete row must be created.

To create a new row, use the INSERT command. The command requires the table name and column values. For example, consider the products table from Chapter 5:

```sql
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer,
    name text,
    price numeric
);
```

An example command to insert a row would be:

```sql
INSERT INTO products VALUES (1, 'Cheese', 9.99);
```

The data values are listed in the order in which the columns appear in the table, separated by commas. Usually, the data values will be literals (constants), but scalar expressions are also allowed.

The above syntax has the drawback that you need to know the order of the columns in the table. To avoid this you can also list the columns explicitly. For example, both of the following commands have the same effect as the one above:

```sql
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price) VALUES (1, 'Cheese', 9.99);
INSERT INTO products (name, price, product_no) VALUES ('Cheese', 9.99, 1);
```

Many users consider it good practice to always list the column names.

If you don't have values for all the columns, you can omit some of them. In that case, the columns will be filled with their default values. For example:

```sql
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name) VALUES (1, 'Cheese');
INSERT INTO products VALUES (1, 'Cheese');
```

The second form is a Postgres Pro extension. It fills the columns from the left with as many values as are given, and the rest will be defaulted.

For clarity, you can also request default values explicitly, for individual columns or for the entire row:

```sql
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price) VALUES (1, 'Cheese', DEFAULT);
INSERT INTO products DEFAULT VALUES;
```

You can insert multiple rows in a single command:

```sql
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price) VALUES
    (1, 'Cheese', 9.99),
    (2, 'Bread', 1.99),
    (3, 'Milk', 2.99);
```

It is also possible to insert the result of a query (which might be no rows, one row, or many rows):

```sql
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price)
SELECT product_no, name, price FROM new_products
WHERE release_date = 'today';
```
This provides the full power of the SQL query mechanism (Chapter 7) for computing the rows to be inserted.

Tip

When inserting a lot of data at the same time, consider using the COPY command. It is not as flexible as the INSERT command, but is more efficient. Refer to Section 14.4 for more information on improving bulk loading performance.

6.2. Updating Data

The modification of data that is already in the database is referred to as updating. You can update individual rows, all the rows in a table, or a subset of all rows. Each column can be updated separately; the other columns are not affected.

To update existing rows, use the UPDATE command. This requires three pieces of information:

1. The name of the table and column to update
2. The new value of the column
3. Which row(s) to update

Recall from Chapter 5 that SQL does not, in general, provide a unique identifier for rows. Therefore it is not always possible to directly specify which row to update. Instead, you specify which conditions a row must meet in order to be updated. Only if you have a primary key in the table (independent of whether you declared it or not) can you reliably address individual rows by choosing a condition that matches the primary key. Graphical database access tools rely on this fact to allow you to update rows individually.

For example, this command updates all products that have a price of 5 to have a price of 10:

```
UPDATE products SET price = 10 WHERE price = 5;
```

This might cause zero, one, or many rows to be updated. It is not an error to attempt an update that does not match any rows.

Let’s look at that command in detail. First is the key word `UPDATE` followed by the table name. As usual, the table name can be schema-qualified, otherwise it is looked up in the path. Next is the key word `SET` followed by the column name, an equal sign, and the new column value. The new column value can be any scalar expression, not just a constant. For example, if you want to raise the price of all products by 10% you could use:

```
UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.10;
```

As you see, the expression for the new value can refer to the existing value(s) in the row. We also left out the `WHERE` clause. If it is omitted, it means that all rows in the table are updated. If it is present, only those rows that match the `WHERE` condition are updated. Note that the equals sign in the `SET` clause is an assignment while the one in the `WHERE` clause is a comparison, but this does not create any ambiguity. Of course, the `WHERE` condition does not have to be an equality test. Many other operators are available (see Chapter 9). But the expression needs to evaluate to a Boolean result.

You can update more than one column in an `UPDATE` command by listing more than one assignment in the `SET` clause. For example:

```
UPDATE mytable SET a = 5, b = 3, c = 1 WHERE a > 0;
```

6.3. Deleting Data

So far we have explained how to add data to tables and how to change data. What remains is to discuss how to remove data that is no longer needed. Just as adding data is only possible in whole rows, you can only remove entire rows from a table. In the previous section we explained that SQL does not provide a way to directly address individual rows. Therefore, removing rows can only be done by specifying
conditions that the rows to be removed have to match. If you have a primary key in the table then you can specify the exact row. But you can also remove groups of rows matching a condition, or you can remove all rows in the table at once.

You use the **DELETE** command to remove rows; the syntax is very similar to the **UPDATE** command. For instance, to remove all rows from the products table that have a price of 10, use:

```sql
DELETE FROM products WHERE price = 10;
```

If you simply write:

```sql
DELETE FROM products;
```

then all rows in the table will be deleted! Caveat programmer.

## 6.4. Returning Data from Modified Rows

Sometimes it is useful to obtain data from modified rows while they are being manipulated. The **INSERT**, **UPDATE**, and **DELETE** commands all have an optional **RETURNING** clause that supports this. Use of **RETURNING** avoids performing an extra database query to collect the data, and is especially valuable when it would otherwise be difficult to identify the modified rows reliably.

The allowed contents of a **RETURNING** clause are the same as a **SELECT** command's output list (see Section 7.3). It can contain column names of the command's target table, or value expressions using those columns. A common shorthand is **RETURNING \*\**, which selects all columns of the target table in order.

In an **INSERT**, the data available to **RETURNING** is the row as it was inserted. This is not so useful in trivial inserts, since it would just repeat the data provided by the client. But it can be very handy when relying on computed default values. For example, when using a **serial** column to provide unique identifiers, **RETURNING** can return the ID assigned to a new row:

```sql
CREATE TABLE users (firstname text, lastname text, id serial primary key);

INSERT INTO users (firstname, lastname) VALUES ('Joe', 'Cool') RETURNING id;
```

The **RETURNING** clause is also very useful with **INSERT ... SELECT**.

In an **UPDATE**, the data available to **RETURNING** is the new content of the modified row. For example:

```sql
UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.10
WHERE price <= 99.99
RETURNING name, price AS new_price;
```

In a **DELETE**, the data available to **RETURNING** is the content of the deleted row. For example:

```sql
DELETE FROM products
WHERE obsoletion_date = 'today'
RETURNING *;
```

If there are triggers (Chapter 37) on the target table, the data available to **RETURNING** is the row as modified by the triggers. Thus, inspecting columns computed by triggers is another common use-case for **RETURNING**.
Chapter 7. Queries

The previous chapters explained how to create tables, how to fill them with data, and how to manipulate that data. Now we finally discuss how to retrieve the data from the database.

7.1. Overview

The process of retrieving or the command to retrieve data from a database is called a query. In SQL the \texttt{SELECT} command is used to specify queries. The general syntax of the \texttt{SELECT} command is

\[ \text{WITH with_queries} \] \texttt{SELECT select_list FROM table_expression [sort_specification]} \]

The following sections describe the details of the select list, the table expression, and the sort specification. \texttt{WITH} queries are treated last since they are an advanced feature.

A simple kind of query has the form:

\texttt{SELECT \ast FROM table1;}

Assuming that there is a table called \texttt{table1}, this command would retrieve all rows and all user-defined columns from \texttt{table1}. (The method of retrieval depends on the client application. For example, the psql program will display an ASCII-art table on the screen, while client libraries will offer functions to extract individual values from the query result.) The select list specification \texttt{\ast} means all columns that the table expression happens to provide. A select list can also select a subset of the available columns or make calculations using the columns. For example, if \texttt{table1} has columns named \texttt{a}, \texttt{b}, and \texttt{c} (and perhaps others) you can make the following query:

\texttt{SELECT a, b + c FROM table1;}

(assuming that \texttt{b} and \texttt{c} are of a numerical data type). See Section 7.3 for more details.

\texttt{FROM table1} is a simple kind of table expression: it reads just one table. In general, table expressions can be complex constructs of base tables, joins, and subqueries. But you can also omit the table expression entirely and use the \texttt{SELECT} command as a calculator:

\texttt{SELECT 3 * 4;}

This is more useful if the expressions in the select list return varying results. For example, you could call a function this way:

\texttt{SELECT random();}

7.2. Table Expressions

A \textit{table expression} computes a table. The table expression contains a \texttt{FROM} clause that is optionally followed by \texttt{WHERE}, \texttt{GROUP BY}, and \texttt{HAVING} clauses. Trivial table expressions simply refer to a table on disk, a so-called base table, but more complex expressions can be used to modify or combine base tables in various ways.

The optional \texttt{WHERE}, \texttt{GROUP BY}, and \texttt{HAVING} clauses in the table expression specify a pipeline of successive transformations performed on the table derived in the \texttt{FROM} clause. All these transformations produce a virtual table that provides the rows that are passed to the select list to compute the output rows of the query.

7.2.1. The \texttt{FROM} Clause

The \texttt{FROM} clause derives a table from one or more other tables given in a comma-separated table reference list.

\texttt{FROM table_reference [, table_reference [, ...]]}

A table reference can be a table name (possibly schema-qualified), or a derived table such as a subquery, a \texttt{JOIN} construct, or complex combinations of these. If more than one table reference is listed in the \texttt{FROM}
clause, the tables are cross-joined (that is, the Cartesian product of their rows is formed; see below). The result of the FROM list is an intermediate virtual table that can then be subject to transformations by the WHERE, GROUP BY, and HAVING clauses and is finally the result of the overall table expression.

When a table reference names a table that is the parent of a table inheritance hierarchy, the table reference produces rows of not only that table but all of its descendant tables, unless the key word ONLY precedes the table name. However, the reference produces only the columns that appear in the named table — any columns added in subtables are ignored.

Instead of writing ONLY before the table name, you can write * after the table name to explicitly specify that descendant tables are included. There is no real reason to use this syntax any more, because searching descendant tables is now always the default behavior. However, it is supported for compatibility with older releases.

### 7.2.1.1. Joined Tables

A joined table is a table derived from two other (real or derived) tables according to the rules of the particular join type. Inner, outer, and cross-joins are available. The general syntax of a joined table is

\[
T_1 \ join\_type \ T_2 \ [\ join\_condition \ ]
\]

Joins of all types can be chained together, or nested: either or both \( T_1 \) and \( T_2 \) can be joined tables. Parentheses can be used around JOIN clauses to control the join order. In the absence of parentheses, JOIN clauses nest left-to-right.

#### Join Types

**Cross join**

\[
T_1 \ CROSS JOIN \ T_2
\]

For every possible combination of rows from \( T_1 \) and \( T_2 \) (i.e., a Cartesian product), the joined table will contain a row consisting of all columns in \( T_1 \) followed by all columns in \( T_2 \). If the tables have \( N \) and \( M \) rows respectively, the joined table will have \( N \times M \) rows.

\[
\text{FROM} \ T_1 \ CROSS JOIN \ T_2 \ is \ equivalent \ to \ FROM \ T_1 \ INNER JOIN \ T_2 \ ON \ TRUE \ (see \ below) \ It \ is \ also \ equivalent \ to \ FROM \ T_1, \ T_2.
\]

**Qualified joins**

\[
T_1 \ {\ [\text{INNER}] \ | \ {\ LEFT \ | \ RIGHT \ | \ FULL \ } \ [\text{OUTER}] \ } \ JOIN \ T_2 \ ON \ boolean\_expression\]
\[
T_1 \ {\ [\text{INNER}] \ | \ {\ LEFT \ | \ RIGHT \ | \ FULL \ } \ [\text{OUTER}] \ } \ JOIN \ T_2 \ USING ( \ join\_column\_list \ )
\[
T_1 \ NATURAL {\ [\text{INNER}] \ | \ {\ LEFT \ | \ RIGHT \ | \ FULL \ } \ [\text{OUTER}] \ } \ JOIN \ T_2
\]

The words INNER and OUTER are optional in all forms. INNER is the default; LEFT, RIGHT, and FULL imply an outer join.

The join condition is specified in the ON or USING clause, or implicitly by the word NATURAL. The join condition determines which rows from the two source tables are considered to “match”, as explained in detail below.

The possible types of qualified join are:

---

*Note*

This latter equivalence does not hold exactly when more than two tables appear, because JOIN binds more tightly than comma. For example \( \text{FROM} \ T_1 \ CROSS JOIN \ T_2 \ INNER JOIN \ T_3 \ ON \ condition \) is not the same as \( \text{FROM} \ T_1, \ T_2 \ INNER JOIN \ T_3 \ ON \ condition \) because the condition can reference \( T_1 \) in the first case but not the second.
INNER JOIN

For each row R1 of T1, the joined table has a row for each row in T2 that satisfies the join condition with R1.

LEFT OUTER JOIN

First, an inner join is performed. Then, for each row in T1 that does not satisfy the join condition with any row in T2, a joined row is added with null values in columns of T2. Thus, the joined table always has at least one row for each row in T1.

RIGHT OUTER JOIN

First, an inner join is performed. Then, for each row in T2 that does not satisfy the join condition with any row in T1, a joined row is added with null values in columns of T1. This is the converse of a left join: the result table will always have a row for each row in T2.

FULL OUTER JOIN

First, an inner join is performed. Then, for each row in T1 that does not satisfy the join condition with any row in T2, a joined row is added with null values in columns of T2. Also, for each row of T2 that does not satisfy the join condition with any row in T1, a joined row with null values in the columns of T1 is added.

The ON clause is the most general kind of join condition: it takes a Boolean value expression of the same kind as is used in a WHERE clause. A pair of rows from T1 and T2 match if the ON expression evaluates to true.

The USING clause is a shorthand that allows you to take advantage of the specific situation where both sides of the join use the same name for the joining column(s). It takes a comma-separated list of the shared column names and forms a join condition that includes an equality comparison for each one. For example, joining T1 and T2 with USING (a, b) produces the join condition ON T1.a = T2.a AND T1.b = T2.b.

Furthermore, the output of JOIN USING suppresses redundant columns: there is no need to print both of the matched columns, since they must have equal values. While JOIN ON produces all columns from T1 followed by all columns from T2, JOIN USING produces one output column for each of the listed column pairs (in the listed order), followed by any remaining columns from T1, followed by any remaining columns from T2.

Finally, NATURAL is a shorthand form of USING: it forms a USING list consisting of all column names that appear in both input tables. As with USING, these columns appear only once in the output table. If there are no common column names, NATURAL JOIN behaves like JOIN ... ON TRUE, producing a cross-product join.

Note

USING is reasonably safe from column changes in the joined relations since only the listed columns are combined. NATURAL is considerably more risky since any schema changes to either relation that cause a new matching column name to be present will cause the join to combine that new column as well.

To put this together, assume we have tables t1:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>num</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

and t2:
then we get the following results for the various joins:

```sql
=> SELECT * FROM t1 CROSS JOIN t2;
num | name | num | value
-----+------+-----+-------
1   | a    |   1 | xxx
1   | a    |   3 | yyy
1   | a    |   5 | zzz
2   | b    |   1 | xxx
2   | b    |   3 | yyy
2   | b    |   5 | zzz
3   | c    |   1 | xxx
3   | c    |   3 | yyy
3   | c    |   5 | zzz
(9 rows)
```

```sql
=> SELECT * FROM t1 INNER JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num;
num | name | num | value
-----+------+-----+-------
1   | a    |   1 | xxx
3   | c    |   3 | yyy
(2 rows)
```

```sql
=> SELECT * FROM t1 INNER JOIN t2 USING (num);
num | name | value
-----+------+-------
1   | a    | xxx
3   | c    | yyy
(2 rows)
```

```sql
=> SELECT * FROM t1 NATURAL INNER JOIN t2;
num | name | value
-----+------+-------
1   | a    | xxx
3   | c    | yyy
(2 rows)
```

```sql
=> SELECT * FROM t1 LEFT JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num;
num | name | num | value
-----+------+-----+-------
1   | a    |   1 | xxx
2   | b    |     |
3   | c    |   3 | yyy
(3 rows)
```

```sql
=> SELECT * FROM t1 LEFT JOIN t2 USING (num);
num | name | value
-----+------+-------
1   | a    | xxx
2   | b    |     |
3   | c    | yyy
(3 rows)
```
=> SELECT * FROM t1 RIGHT JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num;
num | name | num | value
-----+------|-----+-------
 1   | a    | 1   | xxx
 3   | c    | 3   | yyy
   |      | 5   | zzz
(3 rows)

=> SELECT * FROM t1 FULL JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num;
num | name | num | value
-----+------|-----+-------
 1   | a    | 1   | xxx
 2   | b    |     |
 3   | c    | 3   | yyy
   |      | 5   | zzz
(4 rows)

The join condition specified with ON can also contain conditions that do not relate directly to the join. This can prove useful for some queries but needs to be thought out carefully. For example:

=> SELECT * FROM t1 LEFT JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num AND t2.value = 'xxx';
num | name | num | value
-----+------|-----+-------
 1   | a    | 1   | xxx
 2   | b    |     |
 3   | c    |     |
(3 rows)

Notice that placing the restriction in the WHERE clause produces a different result:

=> SELECT * FROM t1 LEFT JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num WHERE t2.value = 'xxx';
num | name | num | value
-----+------|-----+-------
 1   | a    | 1   | xxx
(1 row)

This is because a restriction placed in the ON clause is processed before the join, while a restriction placed in the WHERE clause is processed after the join. That does not matter with inner joins, but it matters a lot with outer joins.

7.2.1.2. Table and Column Aliases

A temporary name can be given to tables and complex table references to be used for references to the derived table in the rest of the query. This is called a table alias.

To create a table alias, write

```
FROM table_reference AS alias
```

or

```
FROM table_reference alias
```

The AS key word is optional noise. alias can be any identifier.

A typical application of table aliases is to assign short identifiers to long table names to keep the join clauses readable. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM some_very_long_table_name s JOIN another_fairly_long_name a ON s.id = a.num;
```

The alias becomes the new name of the table reference so far as the current query is concerned — it is not allowed to refer to the table by the original name elsewhere in the query. Thus, this is not valid:
SELECT * FROM my_table AS m WHERE my_table.a > 5; -- wrong

Table aliases are mainly for notational convenience, but it is necessary to use them when joining a table to itself, e.g.:

SELECT * FROM people AS mother JOIN people AS child ON mother.id = child.mother_id;

Additionally, an alias is required if the table reference is a subquery (see Section 7.2.1.3).

Parentheses are used to resolve ambiguities. In the following example, the first statement assigns the alias b to the second instance of my_table, but the second statement assigns the alias to the result of the join:

SELECT * FROM my_table AS a CROSS JOIN my_table AS b ... 
SELECT * FROM (my_table AS a CROSS JOIN my_table) AS b ... 

Another form of table aliasing gives temporary names to the columns of the table, as well as the table itself:

FROM table_reference [AS] alias ( column1 [, column2 [, ...]] )

If fewer column aliases are specified than the actual table has columns, the remaining columns are not renamed. This syntax is especially useful for self-joins or subqueries.

When an alias is applied to the output of a JOIN clause, the alias hides the original name(s) within the JOIN. For example:

SELECT a.* FROM my_table AS a JOIN your_table AS b ON ...  
is valid SQL, but:

SELECT a.* FROM (my_table AS a JOIN your_table AS b ON ...) AS c

is not valid; the table alias a is not visible outside the alias c.

7.2.1.3. Subqueries

Subqueries specifying a derived table must be enclosed in parentheses and must be assigned a table alias name (as in Section 7.2.1.2). For example:

FROM (SELECT * FROM table1) AS alias_name

This example is equivalent to FROM table1 AS alias_name. More interesting cases, which cannot be reduced to a plain join, arise when the subquery involves grouping or aggregation.

A subquery can also be a VALUES list:

FROM (VALUES ('anne', 'smith'), ('bob', 'jones'), ('joe', 'blow')) AS names(first, last)

Again, a table alias is required. Assigning alias names to the columns of the VALUES list is optional, but is good practice. For more information see Section 7.7.

7.2.1.4. Table Functions

Table functions are functions that produce a set of rows, made up of either base data types (scalar types) or composite data types (table rows). They are used like a table, view, or subquery in the FROM clause of a query. Columns returned by table functions can be included in SELECT, JOIN, or WHERE clauses in the same manner as columns of a table, view, or subquery.

Table functions may also be combined using the ROWS FROM syntax, with the results returned in parallel columns; the number of result rows in this case is that of the largest function result, with smaller results padded with null values to match.
If the `WITH ORDINALITY` clause is specified, an additional column of type `bigint` will be added to the function result columns. This column numbers the rows of the function result set, starting from 1. (This is a generalization of the SQL-standard syntax for `UNNEST ... WITH ORDINALITY`.) By default, the ordinal column is called `ordinality`, but a different column name can be assigned to it using an `AS` clause.

The special table function `UNNEST` may be called with any number of array parameters, and it returns a corresponding number of columns, as if `UNNEST` (Section 9.19) had been called on each parameter separately and combined using the `ROWS FROM` construct.

```sql
UNNEST( array_expression [, ... ] ) [WITH ORDINALITY] [[AS] table_alias [(column_alias [, ... ])]]
```

If no `table_alias` is specified, the function name is used as the table name; in the case of a `ROWS FROM()` construct, the first function's name is used.

If column aliases are not supplied, then for a function returning a base data type, the column name is also the same as the function name. For a function returning a composite type, the result columns get the names of the individual attributes of the type.

Some examples:

```sql
CREATE TABLE foo (fooid int, foosubid int, fooname text);

CREATE FUNCTION getfoo(int) RETURNS SETOF foo AS $$
SELECT * FROM foo WHERE fooid = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM getfoo(1) AS t1;

SELECT * FROM foo
WHERE foosubid IN (
    SELECT foosubid
    FROM getfoo(foo.fooid) z
    WHERE z.fooid = foo.fooid
);

CREATE VIEW vw_getfoo AS SELECT * FROM getfoo(1);

SELECT * FROM vw_getfoo;
```

In some cases it is useful to define table functions that can return different column sets depending on how they are invoked. To support this, the table function can be declared as returning the pseudo-type `record` with no `OUT` parameters. When such a function is used in a query, the expected row structure must be specified in the query itself, so that the system can know how to parse and plan the query. This syntax looks like:

```sql
function_call [AS] alias (column_definition [, ... ])
function_call AS [alias] (column_definition [, ... ])
ROWS FROM( ... function_call AS (column_definition [, ... ]) [, ... ] )
```

When not using the `ROWS FROM()` syntax, the `column_definition` list replaces the column alias list that could otherwise be attached to the `FROM` item; the names in the column definitions serve as column aliases. When using the `ROWS FROM()` syntax, a `column_definition` list can be attached to each member function separately; or if there is only one member function and no `WITH ORDINALITY` clause, a `column_definition` list can be written in place of a column alias list following `ROWS FROM()`.

Consider this example:

```sql
SELECT *
FROM dblink('dbname=mydb', 'SELECT pronoame, prosrc FROM pg_proc')
AS t1(pronoame name, prosrc text)
```
WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';

The dblink function (part of the dblink module) executes a remote query. It is declared to return record since it might be used for any kind of query. The actual column set must be specified in the calling query so that the parser knows, for example, what * should expand to.

This example uses ROWS FROM:

```sql
SELECT *
FROM ROWS FROM
{
    json_to_recordset('{{"a":40,"b":"foo"},{"a":"100","b":"bar"}}')
    AS (a INTEGER, b TEXT),
    generate_series(1, 3)
} AS x (p, q, s)
ORDER BY p;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>p</th>
<th>q</th>
<th>s</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>foo</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>bar</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It joins two functions into a single FROM target. json_to_recordset() is instructed to return two columns, the first integer and the second text. The result of generate_series() is used directly. The ORDER BY clause sorts the column values as integers.

### 7.2.1.5. LATERAL Subqueries

Subqueries appearing in FROM can be preceded by the key word LATERAL. This allows them to reference columns provided by preceding FROM items. (Without LATERAL, each subquery is evaluated independently and so cannot cross-reference any other FROM item.)

Table functions appearing in FROM can also be preceded by the key word LATERAL, but for functions the key word is optional; the function’s arguments can contain references to columns provided by preceding FROM items in any case.

A LATERAL item can appear at top level in the FROM list, or within a JOIN tree. In the latter case it can also refer to any items that are on the left-hand side of a JOIN that it is on the right-hand side of.

When a FROM item contains LATERAL cross-references, evaluation proceeds as follows: for each row of the FROM item providing the cross-referenced column(s), or set of rows of multiple FROM items providing the columns, the LATERAL item is evaluated using that row or row set’s values of the columns. The resulting row(s) are joined as usual with the rows they were computed from. This is repeated for each row or set of rows from the column source table(s).

A trivial example of LATERAL is

```sql
SELECT * FROM foo, LATERAL (SELECT * FROM bar WHERE bar.id = foo.bar_id) ss;
```

This is not especially useful since it has exactly the same result as the more conventional

```sql
SELECT * FROM foo, bar WHERE bar.id = foo.bar_id;
```

LATERAL is primarily useful when the cross-referenced column is necessary for computing the row(s) to be joined. A common application is providing an argument value for a set-returning function. For example, supposing that vertices(polygon) returns the set of vertices of a polygon, we could identify close-together vertices of polygons stored in a table with:

```sql
SELECT p1.id, p2.id, v1, v2
FROM polygons p1, polygons p2,
     LATERAL vertices(p1.poly) v1,
```
This query could also be written

```
SELECT p1.id, p2.id, v1, v2
FROM polygons p1 CROSS JOIN LATERAL vertices(p1.poly) v1,
    polygons p2 CROSS JOIN LATERAL vertices(p2.poly) v2
WHERE (v1 <-> v2) < 10 AND p1.id != p2.id;
```

or in several other equivalent formulations. (As already mentioned, the LATERAL key word is unnecessary in this example, but we use it for clarity.)

It is often particularly handy to LEFT JOIN to a LATERAL subquery, so that source rows will appear in the result even if the LATERAL subquery produces no rows for them. For example, if `get_product_names()` returns the names of products made by a manufacturer, but some manufacturers in our table currently produce no products, we could find out which ones those are like this:

```
SELECT m.name
FROM manufacturers m LEFT JOIN LATERAL get_product_names(m.id) pname ON true
WHERE pname IS NULL;
```

### 7.2.2. The WHERE Clause

The syntax of the WHERE clause is

```
WHERE search_condition
```

where `search_condition` is any value expression (see Section 4.2) that returns a value of type `boolean`.

After the processing of the FROM clause is done, each row of the derived virtual table is checked against the search condition. If the result of the condition is true, the row is kept in the output table, otherwise (i.e., if the result is false or null) it is discarded. The search condition typically references at least one column of the table generated in the FROM clause; this is not required, but otherwise the WHERE clause will be fairly useless.

---

**Note**

The join condition of an inner join can be written either in the WHERE clause or in the JOIN clause. For example, these table expressions are equivalent:

```
FROM a, b WHERE a.id = b.id AND b.val > 5
```

and:

```
FROM a INNER JOIN b ON (a.id = b.id) WHERE b.val > 5
```

or perhaps even:

```
FROM a NATURAL JOIN b WHERE b.val > 5
```

Which one of these you use is mainly a matter of style. The JOIN syntax in the FROM clause is probably not as portable to other SQL database management systems, even though it is in the SQL standard. For outer joins there is no choice: they must be done in the FROM clause. The ON or USING clause of an outer join is not equivalent to a WHERE condition, because it results in the addition of rows (for unmatched input rows) as well as the removal of rows in the final result.

---

Here are some examples of WHERE clauses:

```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 > 5
```

```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 IN (1, 2, 3)
```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 IN (SELECT c1 FROM t2)

SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 IN (SELECT c3 FROM t2 WHERE c2 = fdt.c1 + 10)

SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 BETWEEN (SELECT c3 FROM t2 WHERE c2 = fdt.c1 + 10) AND 100

SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE EXISTS (SELECT c1 FROM t2 WHERE c2 > fdt.c1)

fdt is the table derived in the FROM clause. Rows that do not meet the search condition of the WHERE clause are eliminated from fdt. Notice the use of scalar subqueries as value expressions. Just like any other query, the subqueries can employ complex table expressions. Notice also how fdt is referenced in the subqueries. Qualifying c1 as fdt.c1 is only necessary if c1 is also the name of a column in the derived input table of the subquery. But qualifying the column name adds clarity even when it is not needed. This example shows how the column naming scope of an outer query extends into its inner queries.

7.2.3. The GROUP BY and HAVING Clauses

After passing the WHERE filter, the derived input table might be subject to grouping, using the GROUP BY clause, and elimination of group rows using the HAVING clause.

```
SELECT select_list
FROM ...
[WHERE ...]
GROUP BY grouping_column_reference [, grouping_column_reference]...
```

The GROUP BY clause is used to group together those rows in a table that have the same values in all the columns listed. The order in which the columns are listed does not matter. The effect is to combine each set of rows having common values into one group row that represents all rows in the group. This is done to eliminate redundancy in the output and/or compute aggregates that apply to these groups. For instance:

```
=> SELECT * FROM test1;
  x  | y
---+---
  a | 3
  c | 2
  b | 5
  a | 1
(4 rows)
```

```
=> SELECT x FROM test1 GROUP BY x;
  x
---
  a
  b
  c
(3 rows)
```

In the second query, we could not have written SELECT * FROM test1 GROUP BY x, because there is no single value for the column y that could be associated with each group. The grouped-by columns can be referenced in the select list since they have a single value in each group.

In general, if a table is grouped, columns that are not listed in GROUP BY cannot be referenced except in aggregate expressions. An example with aggregate expressions is:

```
=> SELECT x, sum(y) FROM test1 GROUP BY x;
   x  | sum
-----+-----
  a  |  4
  b  |  5
  c  |  2
```
Here *sum* is an aggregate function that computes a single value over the entire group. More information about the available aggregate functions can be found in Section 9.21.

**Tip**

Grouping without aggregate expressions effectively calculates the set of distinct values in a column. This can also be achieved using the **DISTINCT** clause (see Section 7.3.3).

Here is another example: it calculates the total sales for each product (rather than the total sales of all products):

```sql
SELECT product_id, p.name, (sum(s.units) * p.price) AS sales
FROM products p LEFT JOIN sales s USING (product_id)
GROUP BY product_id, p.name, p.price;
```

In this example, the columns `product_id`, `p.name`, and `p.price` must be in the **GROUP BY** clause since they are referenced in the query select list (but see below). The column `s.units` does not have to be in the **GROUP BY** list since it is only used in an aggregate expression (`sum(...)`), which represents the sales of a product. For each product, the query returns a summary row about all sales of the product.

If the products table is set up so that, say, `product_id` is the primary key, then it would be enough to group by `product_id` in the above example, since name and price would be **functionally dependent** on the product ID, and so there would be no ambiguity about which name and price value to return for each product ID group.

In strict SQL, **GROUP BY** can only group by columns of the source table but Postgres Pro extends this to also allow **GROUP BY** to group by columns in the select list. Grouping by value expressions instead of simple column names is also allowed.

If a table has been grouped using **GROUP BY**, but only certain groups are of interest, the **HAVING** clause can be used, much like a **WHERE** clause, to eliminate groups from the result. The syntax is:

```sql
SELECT select_list FROM ... [WHERE ...] GROUP BY ... HAVING boolean_expression
```

Expressions in the **HAVING** clause can refer both to grouped expressions and to ungrouped expressions (which necessarily involve an aggregate function).

Example:

```sql
=> SELECT x, sum(y) FROM test1 GROUP BY x HAVING sum(y) > 3;
  x  | sum
  ----+-----
    a |  4
    b |  5
  (2 rows)

=> SELECT x, sum(y) FROM test1 GROUP BY x HAVING x < 'c';
  x  | sum
  ----+-----
    a |  4
    b |  5
  (2 rows)
```

Again, a more realistic example:

```sql
SELECT product_id, p.name, (sum(s.units) * (p.price - p.cost)) AS profit
FROM products p LEFT JOIN sales s USING (product_id)
WHERE s.date > CURRENT_DATE - INTERVAL '4 weeks'
```
GROUP BY product_id, p.name, p.price, p.cost
HAVING sum(p.price * s.units) > 5000;

In the example above, the WHERE clause is selecting rows by a column that is not grouped (the expression is only true for sales during the last four weeks), while the HAVING clause restricts the output to groups with total gross sales over 5000. Note that the aggregate expressions do not necessarily need to be the same in all parts of the query.

If a query contains aggregate function calls, but no GROUP BY clause, grouping still occurs: the result is a single group row (or perhaps no rows at all, if the single row is then eliminated by HAVING). The same is true if it contains a HAVING clause, even without any aggregate function calls or GROUP BY clause.

7.2.4. GROUPING SETS, CUBE, and ROLLUP

More complex grouping operations than those described above are possible using the concept of grouping sets. The data selected by the FROM and WHERE clauses is grouped separately by each specified grouping set, aggregates computed for each group just as for simple GROUP BY clauses, and then the results returned. For example:

=> SELECT * FROM items_sold;
brand   | size | sales
-------+------+-------
Foo     | L    |  10
Foo     | M    |  20
Bar     | M    |  15
Bar     | L    |  5
(4 rows)

=> SELECT brand, size, sum(sales) FROM items_sold GROUP BY GROUPING SETS ((brand), (size), ());
brand   | size | sum
-------+------+-----
Foo     |      |  30
Bar     |      |  20
| L    |  15
| M    |  35
|      |  50
(5 rows)

Each sublist of GROUPING SETS may specify zero or more columns or expressions and is interpreted the same way as though it were directly in the GROUP BY clause. An empty grouping set means that all rows are aggregated down to a single group (which is output even if no input rows were present), as described above for the case of aggregate functions with no GROUP BY clause.

References to the grouping columns or expressions are replaced by null values in result rows for grouping sets in which those columns do not appear. To distinguish which grouping a particular output row resulted from, see Table 9.61.

A shorthand notation is provided for specifying two common types of grouping set. A clause of the form

ROLLUP ( e1, e2, e3, ... )

represents the given list of expressions and all prefixes of the list including the empty list; thus it is equivalent to

GROUPING SETS (  ( e1, e2, e3, ... ),
                 ...
                 ( e1, e2 ),
                 ( e1 ),
                 ( ) )
A clause of the form

CUBE ( e1, e2, ... )

represents the given list and all of its possible subsets (i.e., the power set). Thus

CUBE ( a, b, c )

is equivalent to

GROUPING SETS (  
  ( a, b, c ),  
  ( a, b ),  
  ( a, c ),  
  ( a ),  
  ( b, c ),  
  ( b ),  
  ( c ),  
  ( )  
)

The individual elements of a CUBE or ROLLUP clause may be either individual expressions, or sublists of elements in parentheses. In the latter case, the sublists are treated as single units for the purposes of generating the individual grouping sets. For example:

CUBE ( (a, b), (c, d) )

is equivalent to

GROUPING SETS (  
  ( a, b, c, d ),  
  ( a, b ),  
  ( c, d ),  
  ( )  
)

and

ROLLUP ( a, (b, c), d )

is equivalent to

GROUPING SETS (  
  ( a, b, c, d ),  
  ( a, b, c ),  
  ( a ),  
  ( )  
)

The CUBE and ROLLUP constructs can be used either directly in the GROUP BY clause, or nested inside a GROUPING SETS clause. If one GROUPING SETS clause is nested inside another, the effect is the same as if all the elements of the inner clause had been written directly in the outer clause.

If multiple grouping items are specified in a single GROUP BY clause, then the final list of grouping sets is the cross product of the individual items. For example:

GROUP BY a, CUBE (b, c), GROUPING SETS ((d), (e))

is equivalent to

GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (
(a, b, c, d), (a, b, c, e),
(a, b, d),   (a, b, e),
(a, c, d),   (a, c, e),
(a, d),       (a, e)
)

When specifying multiple grouping items together, the final set of grouping sets might contain duplicates. For example:

GROUP BY ROLLUP (a, b), ROLLUP (a, c)

is equivalent to

GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (  
  (a, b, c),
  (a, b),
  (a, c),
  (a),
  (a, c),
  (a),
  ()
)

If these duplicates are undesirable, they can be removed using the \texttt{DISTINCT} clause directly on the GROUP BY. Therefore:

GROUP BY \texttt{DISTINCT} ROLLUP (a, b), ROLLUP (a, c)

is equivalent to

GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (  
  (a, b, c),
  (a, b),
  (a, c),
  (a),
  ()
)

This is not the same as using \texttt{SELECT DISTINCT} because the output rows may still contain duplicates. If any of the ungrouped columns contains NULL, it will be indistinguishable from the NULL used when that same column is grouped.

\begin{mdframed}
\textbf{Note}

The construct \((a, b)\) is normally recognized in expressions as a \texttt{row constructor}. Within the \texttt{GROUP BY} clause, this does not apply at the top levels of expressions, and \((a, b)\) is parsed as a list of expressions as described above. If for some reason you \textit{need} a row constructor in a grouping expression, use \texttt{ROW(a, b)}.

\end{mdframed}

\subsection*{7.2.5. Window Function Processing}

If the query contains any window functions (see Section 3.5, Section 9.22 and Section 4.2.8), these functions are evaluated after any grouping, aggregation, and \texttt{HAVING} filtering is performed. That is, if the query uses any aggregates, \texttt{GROUP BY}, or \texttt{HAVING}, then the rows seen by the window functions are the group rows instead of the original table rows from \texttt{FROM/WHERE}.

When multiple window functions are used, all the window functions having syntactically equivalent \texttt{PARTITION BY} and \texttt{ORDER BY} clauses in their window definitions are guaranteed to be evaluated in a single pass over the data. Therefore they will see the same sort ordering, even if the \texttt{ORDER BY} does not
uniquely determine an ordering. However, no guarantees are made about the evaluation of functions having different `PARTITION BY` or `ORDER BY` specifications. (In such cases a sort step is typically required between the passes of window function evaluations, and the sort is not guaranteed to preserve ordering of rows that its `ORDER BY` sees as equivalent.)

Currently, window functions always require presorted data, and so the query output will be ordered according to one or another of the window functions’ `PARTITION BY/ORDER BY` clauses. It is not recommended to rely on this, however. Use an explicit top-level `ORDER BY` clause if you want to be sure the results are sorted in a particular way.

### 7.3. Select Lists

As shown in the previous section, the table expression in the `SELECT` command constructs an intermediate virtual table by possibly combining tables, views, eliminating rows, grouping, etc. This table is finally passed on to processing by the `select list`. The select list determines which `columns` of the intermediate table are actually output.

#### 7.3.1. Select-List Items

The simplest kind of select list is `*` which emits all columns that the table expression produces. Otherwise, a select list is a comma-separated list of value expressions (as defined in [Section 4.2](#)). For instance, it could be a list of column names:

```
SELECT a, b, c FROM ...
```

The columns names `a`, `b`, and `c` are either the actual names of the columns of tables referenced in the `FROM` clause, or the aliases given to them as explained in [Section 7.2.1.2](#). The name space available in the select list is the same as in the `WHERE` clause, unless grouping is used, in which case it is the same as in the `HAVING` clause.

If more than one table has a column of the same name, the table name must also be given, as in:

```
SELECT tbl1.a, tbl2.a, tbl1.b FROM ...
```

When working with multiple tables, it can also be useful to ask for all the columns of a particular table:

```
SELECT tbl1.*, tbl2.a FROM ...
```

See [Section 8.16.5](#) for more about the `table_name.*` notation.

If an arbitrary value expression is used in the select list, it conceptually adds a new virtual column to the returned table. The value expression is evaluated once for each result row, with the row’s values substituted for any column references. But the expressions in the select list do not have to reference any columns in the table expression of the `FROM` clause; they can be constant arithmetic expressions, for instance.

#### 7.3.2. Column Labels

The entries in the select list can be assigned names for subsequent processing, such as for use in an `ORDER BY` clause or for display by the client application. For example:

```
SELECT a AS value, b + c AS sum FROM ...
```

If no output column name is specified using `AS`, the system assigns a default column name. For simple column references, this is the name of the referenced column. For function calls, this is the name of the function. For complex expressions, the system will generate a generic name.

The `AS` key word is usually optional, but in some cases where the desired column name matches a Postgres Pro key word, you must write `AS` or double-quote the column name in order to avoid ambiguity. ([Appendix C](#) shows which key words require `AS` to be used as a column label.) For example, `FROM` is one such key word, so this does not work:

```
SELECT a from, b + c AS sum FROM ...
```
but either of these do:

```
SELECT a AS from, b + c AS sum FROM ...
SELECT a "from", b + c AS sum FROM ...
```

For greatest safety against possible future key word additions, it is recommended that you always either write AS or double-quote the output column name.

### Note

The naming of output columns here is different from that done in the FROM clause (see Section 7.2.1.2). It is possible to rename the same column twice, but the name assigned in the select list is the one that will be passed on.

#### 7.3.3. DISTINCT

After the select list has been processed, the result table can optionally be subject to the elimination of duplicate rows. The DISTINCT key word is written directly after SELECT to specify this:

```
SELECT DISTINCT select_list ...
```

(Instead of DISTINCT the key word ALL can be used to specify the default behavior of retaining all rows.)

Obviously, two rows are considered distinct if they differ in at least one column value. Null values are considered equal in this comparison.

Alternatively, an arbitrary expression can determine what rows are to be considered distinct:

```
SELECT DISTINCT ON (expression [, expression ...]) select_list ...
```

Here `expression` is an arbitrary value expression that is evaluated for all rows. A set of rows for which all the expressions are equal are considered duplicates, and only the first row of the set is kept in the output. Note that the “first row” of a set is unpredictable unless the query is sorted on enough columns to guarantee a unique ordering of the rows arriving at the DISTINCT filter. (DISTINCT ON processing occurs after ORDER BY sorting.)

The DISTINCT ON clause is not part of the SQL standard and is sometimes considered bad style because of the potentially indeterminate nature of its results. With judicious use of GROUP BY and subqueries in FROM, this construct can be avoided, but it is often the most convenient alternative.

#### 7.4. Combining Queries (UNION, INTERSECT, EXCEPT)

The results of two queries can be combined using the set operations union, intersection, and difference. The syntax is

```
query1 UNION [ALL] query2
query1 INTERSECT [ALL] query2
query1 EXCEPT [ALL] query2
```

where `query1` and `query2` are queries that can use any of the features discussed up to this point.

UNION effectively appends the result of `query2` to the result of `query1` (although there is no guarantee that this is the order in which the rows are actually returned). Furthermore, it eliminates duplicate rows from its result, in the same way as DISTINCT, unless UNION ALL is used.

INTERSECT returns all rows that are both in the result of `query1` and in the result of `query2`. Duplicate rows are eliminated unless INTERSECT ALL is used.

EXCEPT returns all rows that are in the result of `query1` but not in the result of `query2`. (This is sometimes called the difference between two queries.) Again, duplicates are eliminated unless EXCEPT ALL is used.
In order to calculate the union, intersection, or difference of two queries, the two queries must be “union compatible”, which means that they return the same number of columns and the corresponding columns have compatible data types, as described in Section 10.5.

Set operations can be combined, for example

```
query1 UNION query2 EXCEPT query3
```

which is equivalent to

```
(query1 UNION query2) EXCEPT query3
```

As shown here, you can use parentheses to control the order of evaluation. Without parentheses, **UNION** and **EXCEPT** associate left-to-right, but **INTERSECT** binds more tightly than those two operators. Thus

```
query1 UNION query2 INTERSECT query3
```

means

```
query1 UNION (query2 INTERSECT query3)
```

You can also surround an individual **query** with parentheses. This is important if the **query** needs to use any of the clauses discussed in following sections, such as **LIMIT**. Without parentheses, you’ll get a syntax error, or else the clause will be understood as applying to the output of the set operation rather than one of its inputs. For example,

```
SELECT a FROM b UNION SELECT x FROM y LIMIT 10
```

is accepted, but it means

```
(SELECT a FROM b UNION SELECT x FROM y) LIMIT 10
```

not

```
SELECT a FROM b UNION (SELECT x FROM y LIMIT 10)
```

### 7.5. Sorting Rows (**ORDER BY**)

After a query has produced an output table (after the select list has been processed) it can optionally be sorted. If sorting is not chosen, the rows will be returned in an unspecified order. The actual order in that case will depend on the scan and join plan types and the order on disk, but it must not be relied on. A particular output ordering can only be guaranteed if the sort step is explicitly chosen.

The **ORDER BY** clause specifies the sort order:

```
SELECT select_list
    FROM table_expression
    ORDER BY sort_expression1 [ASC | DESC] [NULLS { FIRST | LAST }]
        [, sort_expression2 [ASC | DESC] [NULLS { FIRST | LAST }] ...]
```

The sort expression(s) can be any expression that would be valid in the query's select list. An example is:

```
SELECT a, b FROM table1 ORDER BY a + b, c;
```

When more than one expression is specified, the later values are used to sort rows that are equal according to the earlier values. Each expression can be followed by an optional **ASC** or **DESC** keyword to set the sort direction to ascending or descending. **ASC** order is the default. Ascending order puts smaller values first, where “smaller” is defined in terms of the < operator. Similarly, descending order is determined with the > operator. ¹

The **NULLS FIRST** and **NULLS LAST** options can be used to determine whether nulls appear before or after non-null values in the sort ordering. By default, null values sort as if larger than any non-null value; that is, **NULLS FIRST** is the default for **DESC** order, and **NULLS LAST** otherwise.

Note that the ordering options are considered independently for each sort column. For example **ORDER BY x, y DESC** means **ORDER BY x ASC, y DESC**, which is not the same as **ORDER BY x DESC, y DESC**.

¹ Actually, Postgres Pro uses the *default B-tree operator class* for the expression's data type to determine the sort ordering for **ASC** and **DESC**. Conventionally, data types will be set up so that the < and > operators correspond to this sort ordering, but a user-defined data type's designer could choose to do something different.
A sort_expression can also be the column label or number of an output column, as in:

```
SELECT a + b AS sum, c FROM table1 ORDER BY sum;
SELECT a, max(b) FROM table1 GROUP BY a ORDER BY 1;
```

both of which sort by the first output column. Note that an output column name has to stand alone, that is, it cannot be used in an expression — for example, this is not correct:

```
SELECT a + b AS sum, c FROM table1 ORDER BY sum + c;          -- wrong
```

This restriction is made to reduce ambiguity. There is still ambiguity if an ORDER BY item is a simple name that could match either an output column name or a column from the table expression. The output column is used in such cases. This would only cause confusion if you use AS to rename an output column to match some other table column's name.

ORDER BY can be applied to the result of a UNION, INTERSECT, or EXCEPT combination, but in this case it is only permitted to sort by output column names or numbers, not by expressions.

### 7.6. LIMIT and OFFSET

LIMIT and OFFSET allow you to retrieve just a portion of the rows that are generated by the rest of the query:

```
SELECT select_list
FROM table_expression
[ ORDER BY ... ]
[ LIMIT { number | ALL } ] [ OFFSET number ]
```

If a limit count is given, no more than that many rows will be returned (but possibly fewer, if the query itself yields fewer rows). LIMIT ALL is the same as omitting the LIMIT clause, as is LIMIT with a NULL argument.

OFFSET says to skip that many rows before beginning to return rows. OFFSET 0 is the same as omitting the OFFSET clause, as is OFFSET with a NULL argument.

If both OFFSET and LIMIT appear, then OFFSET rows are skipped before starting to count the LIMIT rows that are returned.

When using LIMIT, it is important to use an ORDER BY clause that constrains the result rows into a unique order. Otherwise you will get an unpredictable subset of the query's rows. You might be asking for the tenth through twentieth rows, but tenth through twentieth in what ordering? The ordering is unknown, unless you specified ORDER BY.

The query optimizer takes LIMIT into account when generating query plans, so you are very likely to get different plans (yielding different row orders) depending on what you give for LIMIT and OFFSET. Thus, using different LIMIT/OFFSET values to select different subsets of a query result will give inconsistent results unless you enforce a predictable result ordering with ORDER BY. This is not a bug; it is an inherent consequence of the fact that SQL does not promise to deliver the results of a query in any particular order unless ORDER BY is used to constrain the order.

The rows skipped by an OFFSET clause still have to be computed inside the server; therefore a large OFFSET might be inefficient.

### 7.7. VALUES Lists

VALUES provides a way to generate a “constant table” that can be used in a query without having to actually create and populate a table on-disk. The syntax is

```
VALUES ( expression [, ...] ) [, ...]
```

Each parenthesized list of expressions generates a row in the table. The lists must all have the same number of elements (i.e., the number of columns in the table), and corresponding entries in each list must
have compatible data types. The actual data type assigned to each column of the result is determined using the same rules as for \texttt{UNION} (see Section 10.5).

As an example:

\texttt{VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three');}

will return a table of two columns and three rows. It's effectively equivalent to:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT 1 AS column1, 'one' AS column2
UNION ALL
SELECT 2, 'two'
UNION ALL
SELECT 3, 'three';
\end{verbatim}

By default, Postgres Pro assigns the names \texttt{column1}, \texttt{column2}, etc. to the columns of a \texttt{VALUES} table. The column names are not specified by the SQL standard and different database systems do it differently, so it's usually better to override the default names with a table alias list, like this:

\begin{verbatim}
=> SELECT * FROM (VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three')) AS t (num,letter);
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
num | letter
-----+--------
1 | one
2 | two
3 | three
\end{verbatim}

(3 rows)

Syntactically, \texttt{VALUES} followed by expression lists is treated as equivalent to:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT select_list FROM table_expression
\end{verbatim}

and can appear anywhere a \texttt{SELECT} can. For example, you can use it as part of a \texttt{UNION}, or attach a \texttt{sort_specification} (\texttt{ORDER BY}, \texttt{LIMIT}, and/or \texttt{OFFSET}) to it. \texttt{VALUES} is most commonly used as the data source in an \texttt{INSERT} command, and next most commonly as a subquery.

For more information see \texttt{VALUES}.

### 7.8. WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions)

\texttt{WITH} provides a way to write auxiliary statements for use in a larger query. These statements, which are often referred to as Common Table Expressions or CTEs, can be thought of as defining temporary tables that exist just for one query. Each auxiliary statement in a \texttt{WITH} clause can be a \texttt{SELECT}, \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, or \texttt{DELETE}; and the \texttt{WITH} clause itself is attached to a primary statement that can also be a \texttt{SELECT}, \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, or \texttt{DELETE}.

#### 7.8.1. SELECT in WITH

The basic value of \texttt{SELECT} in \texttt{WITH} is to break down complicated queries into simpler parts. An example is:

\begin{verbatim}
WITH regional_sales AS (  
    SELECT region, SUM(amount) AS total_sales  
    FROM orders  
    GROUP BY region), top_regions AS (  
    SELECT region  
    FROM regional_sales  
    WHERE total_sales > (SELECT SUM(total_sales)/10 FROM regional_sales)
  )  
SELECT region,  
    product,  
    SUM(quantity) AS product_units,  
    SUM(amount) AS product_sales
\end{verbatim}
FROM orders
WHERE region IN (SELECT region FROM top_regions)
GROUP BY region, product;

which displays per-product sales totals in only the top sales regions. The WITH clause defines two auxiliary
statements named regional_sales and top_regions, where the output of regional_sales is used in
top_regions and the output of top_regions is used in the primary SELECT query. This example could have been written without WITH, but we’d have needed two levels of nested sub-SELECTs. It’s a bit easier
to follow this way.

### 7.8.2. Recursive Queries

The optional RECURSIVE modifier changes WITH from a mere syntactic convenience into a feature that
accomplishes things not otherwise possible in standard SQL. Using RECURSIVE, a WITH query can refer
to its own output. A very simple example is this query to sum the integers from 1 through 100:

```sql
WITH RECURSIVE t(n) AS (
    VALUES (1)
    UNION ALL
    SELECT n+1 FROM t WHERE n < 100
)
SELECT sum(n) FROM t;
```

The general form of a recursive WITH query is always a non-recursive term, then UNION (or UNION ALL),
then a recursive term, where only the recursive term can contain a reference to the query's own output.
Such a query is executed as follows:

**Recursive Query Evaluation**

1. Evaluate the non-recursive term. For UNION (but not UNION ALL), discard duplicate rows. Include all
   remaining rows in the result of the recursive query, and also place them in a temporary working table.
2. So long as the working table is not empty, repeat these steps:
   a. Evaluate the recursive term, substituting the current contents of the working table for the
      recursive self-reference. For UNION (but not UNION ALL), discard duplicate rows and rows that
duplicate any previous result row. Include all remaining rows in the result of the recursive query,
      and also place them in a temporary intermediate table.
   b. Replace the contents of the working table with the contents of the intermediate table, then empty
      the intermediate table.

**Note**

Strictly speaking, this process is iteration not recursion, but RECURSIVE is the terminology chosen
by the SQL standards committee.

In the example above, the working table has just a single row in each step, and it takes on the values
from 1 through 100 in successive steps. In the 100th step, there is no output because of the WHERE clause,
and so the query terminates.

Recursive queries are typically used to deal with hierarchical or tree-structured data. A useful example
is this query to find all the direct and indirect sub-parts of a product, given only a table that shows
immediate inclusions:

```sql
WITH RECURSIVE included_parts(sub_part, part, quantity) AS (
    SELECT sub_part, part, quantity FROM parts WHERE part = 'our_product'
    UNION ALL
    SELECT p.sub_part, p.part, p.quantity
    FROM included_parts pr, parts p
    WHERE p.part = pr.sub_part
)
```
7.8.2.1. Search Order

When computing a tree traversal using a recursive query, you might want to order the results in either depth-first or breadth-first order. This can be done by computing an ordering column alongside the other data columns and using that to sort the results at the end. Note that this does not actually control in which order the query evaluation visits the rows; that is as always in SQL implementation-dependent. This approach merely provides a convenient way to order the results afterwards.

To create a depth-first order, we compute for each result row an array of rows that we have visited so far. For example, consider the following query that searches a table tree using a link field:

```sql
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data, path) AS (  
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, ARRAY[t.id]  
    FROM tree t  
    UNION ALL  
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, path || t.id  
    FROM tree t, search_tree st  
    WHERE t.id = st.link  
  )  
SELECT * FROM search_tree  
ORDER BY path;
```

In the general case where more than one field needs to be used to identify a row, use an array of rows. For example, if we needed to track fields f1 and f2:

```sql
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data, path) AS (  
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, ARRAY[ROW(t.f1, t.f2)]  
    FROM tree t  
    UNION ALL  
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, path || ROW(t.f1, t.f2)  
    FROM tree t, search_tree st  
    WHERE t.id = st.link  
  )  
SELECT * FROM search_tree  
ORDER BY path;
```

**Tip**

Omit the `ROW()` syntax in the common case where only one field needs to be tracked. This allows a simple array rather than a composite-type array to be used, gaining efficiency.

To create a breadth-first order, you can add a column that tracks the depth of the search, for example:

```sql
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data, depth) AS (  
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, 0  
  )
```
FROM tree t
UNION ALL
SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, depth + 1
FROM tree t, search_tree st
WHERE t.id = st.link
)
SELECT * FROM search_tree ORDER BY depth;

To get a stable sort, add data columns as secondary sorting columns.

**Tip**

The recursive query evaluation algorithm produces its output in breadth-first search order. However, this is an implementation detail and it is perhaps unsound to rely on it. The order of the rows within each level is certainly undefined, so some explicit ordering might be desired in any case.

There is built-in syntax to compute a depth- or breadth-first sort column. For example:

```sql
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data) AS (
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
    FROM tree t
    UNION ALL
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
    FROM tree t, search_tree st
    WHERE t.id = st.link
) SEARCH DEPTH FIRST BY id SET ordercol
SELECT * FROM search_tree ORDER BY ordercol;

WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data) AS (
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
    FROM tree t
    UNION ALL
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
    FROM tree t, search_tree st
    WHERE t.id = st.link
) SEARCH BREADTH FIRST BY id SET ordercol
SELECT * FROM search_tree ORDER BY ordercol;
```

This syntax is internally expanded to something similar to the above hand-written forms. The `SEARCH` clause specifies whether depth- or breadth first search is wanted, the list of columns to track for sorting, and a column name that will contain the result data that can be used for sorting. That column will implicitly be added to the output rows of the CTE.

### 7.8.2.2. Cycle Detection

When working with recursive queries it is important to be sure that the recursive part of the query will eventually return no tuples, or else the query will loop indefinitely. Sometimes, using `UNION` instead of `UNION ALL` can accomplish this by discarding rows that duplicate previous output rows. However, often a cycle does not involve output rows that are completely duplicate: it may be necessary to check just one or a few fields to see if the same point has been reached before. The standard method for handling such situations is to compute an array of the already-visited values. For example, consider again the following query that searches a table `graph` using a `link` field:

```sql
WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth) AS (
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 0
    FROM graph g
    UNION ALL
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1
```
Queries

```
FROM graph g, search_graph sg
WHERE g.id = sg.link
)
SELECT * FROM search_graph;
```

This query will loop if the link relationships contain cycles. Because we require a “depth” output, just changing `UNION ALL` to `UNION` would not eliminate the looping. Instead we need to recognize whether we have reached the same row again while following a particular path of links. We add two columns `is_cycle` and `path` to the loop-prone query:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth, is_cycle, path) AS (
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 0,
    false,
    ARRAY[g.id]
    FROM graph g
    UNION ALL
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1,
    g.id = ANY(path),
    path || g.id
    FROM graph g, search_graph sg
    WHERE g.id = sg.link AND NOT is_cycle
)
SELECT * FROM search_graph;
```

Aside from preventing cycles, the array value is often useful in its own right as representing the “path” taken to reach any particular row.

In the general case where more than one field needs to be checked to recognize a cycle, use an array of rows. For example, if we needed to compare fields `f1` and `f2`:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth, is_cycle, path) AS (
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 0,
    false,
    ARRAY[ROW(g.f1, g.f2)]
    FROM graph g
    UNION ALL
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1,
    ROW(g.f1, g.f2) = ANY(path),
    path || ROW(g.f1, g.f2)
    FROM graph g, search_graph sg
    WHERE g.id = sg.link AND NOT is_cycle
)
SELECT * FROM search_graph;
```

Tip

Omit the `ROW()` syntax in the common case where only one field needs to be checked to recognize a cycle. This allows a simple array rather than a composite-type array to be used, gaining efficiency.

There is built-in syntax to simplify cycle detection. The above query can also be written like this:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth) AS (
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 1
    FROM graph g
    UNION ALL
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1
    FROM graph g, search_graph sg
    WHERE g.id = sg.link
)
CYCLE id SET is_cycle USING path
```
Queries

SELECT * FROM search_graph;

and it will be internally rewritten to the above form. The **CYCLE** clause specifies first the list of columns to track for cycle detection, then a column name that will show whether a cycle has been detected, and finally the name of another column that will track the path. The cycle and path columns will implicitly be added to the output rows of the CTE.

### Tip

The cycle path column is computed in the same way as the depth-first ordering column shown in the previous section. A query can have both a **SEARCH** and a **CYCLE** clause, but a depth-first search specification and a cycle detection specification would create redundant computations, so it's more efficient to just use the **CYCLE** clause and order by the path column. If breadth-first ordering is wanted, then specifying both **SEARCH** and **CYCLE** can be useful.

A helpful trick for testing queries when you are not certain if they might loop is to place a **LIMIT** in the parent query. For example, this query would loop forever without the **LIMIT**:

```
WITH RECURSIVE t(n) AS {
  SELECT 1
  UNION ALL
  SELECT n+1 FROM t
}
SELECT n FROM t LIMIT 100;
```

This works because Postgres Pro's implementation evaluates only as many rows of a **WITH** query as are actually fetched by the parent query. Using this trick in production is not recommended, because other systems might work differently. Also, it usually won't work if you make the outer query sort the recursive query's results or join them to some other table, because in such cases the outer query will usually try to fetch all of the **WITH** query's output anyway.

### 7.8.3. Common Table Expression Materialization

A useful property of **WITH** queries is that they are normally evaluated only once per execution of the parent query, even if they are referred to more than once by the parent query or sibling **WITH** queries. Thus, expensive calculations that are needed in multiple places can be placed within a **WITH** query to avoid redundant work. Another possible application is to prevent unwanted multiple evaluations of functions with side-effects. However, the other side of this coin is that the optimizer is not able to push restrictions from the parent query down into a multiply-referenced **WITH** query, since that might affect all uses of the **WITH** query's output when it should affect only one. The multiply-referenced **WITH** query will be evaluated as written, without suppression of rows that the parent query might discard afterwards. (But, as mentioned above, evaluation might stop early if the reference(s) to the query demand only a limited number of rows.)

However, if a **WITH** query is non-recursive and side-effect-free (that is, it is a **SELECT** containing no volatile functions) then it can be folded into the parent query, allowing joint optimization of the two query levels. By default, this happens if the parent query references the **WITH** query just once, but not if it references the **WITH** query more than once. You can override that decision by specifying **MATERIALIZED** to force separate calculation of the **WITH** query, or by specifying **NOT MATERIALIZED** to force it to be merged into the parent query. The latter choice risks duplicate computation of the **WITH** query, but it can still give a net savings if each usage of the **WITH** query needs only a small part of the **WITH** query's full output.

A simple example of these rules is

```
WITH w AS (  
  SELECT * FROM big_table
)
SELECT * FROM w WHERE key = 123;
```

This **WITH** query will be folded, producing the same execution plan as
SELECT * FROM big_table WHERE key = 123;

In particular, if there's an index on `key`, it will probably be used to fetch just the rows having `key = 123`. On the other hand, in

WITH w AS (  
  SELECT * FROM big_table
)
SELECT * FROM w AS w1 JOIN w AS w2 ON w1.key = w2.ref
WHERE w2.key = 123;

the `WITH` query will be materialized, producing a temporary copy of `big_table` that is then joined with itself — without benefit of any index. This query will be executed much more efficiently if written as

WITH w AS NOT MATERIALIZED (  
  SELECT * FROM big_table
)
SELECT * FROM w AS w1 JOIN w AS w2 ON w1.key = w2.ref
WHERE w2.key = 123;

so that the parent query's restrictions can be applied directly to scans of `big_table`.

An example where NOT MATERIALIZED could be undesirable is

WITH w AS (  
  SELECT key, very_expensive_function(val) as f FROM some_table
)
SELECT * FROM w AS w1 JOIN w AS w2 ON w1.f = w2.f;

Here, materialization of the `WITH` query ensures that `very_expensive_function` is evaluated only once per table row, not twice.

The examples above only show `WITH` being used with `SELECT`, but it can be attached in the same way to `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`. In each case it effectively provides temporary table(s) that can be referred to in the main command.

### 7.8.4. Data-Modifying Statements in `WITH`

You can use data-modifying statements (INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE) in `WITH`. This allows you to perform several different operations in the same query. An example is:

WITH moved_rows AS (  
  DELETE FROM products  
  WHERE  
    "date" >= '2010-10-01' AND  
    "date" < '2010-11-01'  
  RETURNING *
)
INSERT INTO products_log  
SELECT * FROM moved_rows;

This query effectively moves rows from `products` to `products_log`. The DELETE in `WITH` deletes the specified rows from `products`, returning their contents by means of its RETURNING clause; and then the primary query reads that output and inserts it into `products_log`.

A fine point of the above example is that the `WITH` clause is attached to the INSERT, not the sub-SELECT within the INSERT. This is necessary because data-modifying statements are only allowed in `WITH` clauses that are attached to the top-level statement. However, normal `WITH` visibility rules apply, so it is possible to refer to the `WITH` statement's output from the sub-SELECT.

Data-modifying statements in `WITH` usually have RETURNING clauses (see Section 6.4), as shown in the example above. It is the output of the RETURNING clause, not the target table of the data-modifying statement, that forms the temporary table that can be referred to by the rest of the query. If a data-
modifying statement in WITH lacks a RETURNING clause, then it forms no temporary table and cannot be referred to in the rest of the query. Such a statement will be executed nonetheless. A not-particularly-useful example is:

```sql
WITH t AS (
    DELETE FROM foo
)
DELETE FROM bar;
```

This example would remove all rows from tables foo and bar. The number of affected rows reported to the client would only include rows removed from bar.

Recursive self-references in data-modifying statements are not allowed. In some cases it is possible to work around this limitation by referring to the output of a recursive WITH, for example:

```sql
WITH RECURSIVE included_parts(sub_part, part) AS (
    SELECT sub_part, part FROM parts WHERE part = 'our_product'
    UNION ALL
    SELECT p.sub_part, p.part
    FROM included_parts pr, parts p
    WHERE p.part = pr.sub_part
)
DELETE FROM parts
WHERE part IN (SELECT part FROM included_parts);
```

This query would remove all direct and indirect subparts of a product.

Data-modifying statements in WITH are executed exactly once, and always to completion, independently of whether the primary query reads all (or indeed any) of their output. Notice that this is different from the rule for SELECT in WITH: as stated in the previous section, execution of a SELECT is carried only as far as the primary query demands its output.

The sub-statements in WITH are executed concurrently with each other and with the main query. Therefore, when using data-modifying statements in WITH, the order in which the specified updates actually happen is unpredictable. All the statements are executed with the same snapshot (see Chapter 13), so they cannot “see” one another's effects on the target tables. This alleviates the effects of the unpredictability of the actual order of row updates, and means that RETURNING data is the only way to communicate changes between different WITH sub-statements and the main query. An example of this is that in

```sql
WITH t AS (
    UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.05
    RETURNING *
)
SELECT * FROM products;
```

the outer SELECT would return the original prices before the action of the UPDATE, while in

```sql
WITH t AS (
    UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.05
    RETURNING *
)
SELECT * FROM t;
```

the outer SELECT would return the updated data.

Trying to update the same row twice in a single statement is not supported. Only one of the modifications takes place, but it is not easy (and sometimes not possible) to reliably predict which one. This also applies to deleting a row that was already updated in the same statement: only the update is performed. Therefore you should generally avoid trying to modify a single row twice in a single statement. In particular avoid writing WITH sub-statements that could affect the same rows changed by the main statement or a sibling sub-statement. The effects of such a statement will not be predictable.
At present, any table used as the target of a data-modifying statement in `WITH` must not have a conditional rule, nor an `ALSO` rule, nor an `INSTEAD` rule that expands to multiple statements.
Chapter 8. Data Types

Postgres Pro has a rich set of native data types available to users. Users can add new types to Postgres Pro using the `CREATE TYPE` command.

Table 8.1 shows all the built-in general-purpose data types. Most of the alternative names listed in the “Aliases” column are the names used internally by Postgres Pro for historical reasons. In addition, some internally used or deprecated types are available, but are not listed here.

### Table 8.1. Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Aliases</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>signed eight-byte integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigserial</td>
<td>serial8</td>
<td>autoincrementing eight-byte integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit [ ( n ) ]</td>
<td></td>
<td>fixed-length bit string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit varying [ ( n ) ]</td>
<td>varbit [ ( n ) ]</td>
<td>variable-length bit string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>bool</td>
<td>logical Boolean (true/false)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td></td>
<td>rectangular box on a plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytea</td>
<td></td>
<td>binary data (“byte array”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character [ ( n ) ]</td>
<td>char [ ( n ) ]</td>
<td>fixed-length character string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character varying [ ( n ) ]</td>
<td>varchar [ ( n ) ]</td>
<td>variable-length character string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cidr</td>
<td></td>
<td>IPv4 or IPv6 network address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td></td>
<td>circle on a plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td></td>
<td>calendar date (year, month, day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double precision</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>double precision floating-point number (8 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet</td>
<td></td>
<td>IPv4 or IPv6 host address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>int, int4</td>
<td>signed four-byte integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval [ fields ] [ ( p ) ]</td>
<td></td>
<td>time span</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json</td>
<td></td>
<td>textual JSON data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb</td>
<td></td>
<td>binary JSON data, decomposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td></td>
<td>infinite line on a plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lseg</td>
<td></td>
<td>line segment on a plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr</td>
<td></td>
<td>MAC (Media Access Control) address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr8</td>
<td></td>
<td>MAC (Media Access Control) address (EUI-64 format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td></td>
<td>currency amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric [ ( p, s ) ]</td>
<td>decimal [ ( p, s ) ]</td>
<td>exact numeric of selectable precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td></td>
<td>geometric path on a plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
<td></td>
<td>Postgres Pro Log Sequence Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_snapshot</td>
<td></td>
<td>user-level transaction ID snapshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td>geometric point on a plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polygon</td>
<td></td>
<td>closed geometric path on a plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>real</td>
<td>float4</td>
<td>single precision floating-point number (4 bytes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Aliases</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>smallint</td>
<td>int2</td>
<td>signed two-byte integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smallserial</td>
<td>serial2</td>
<td>autoincrementing two-byte integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serial</td>
<td>serial4</td>
<td>autoincrementing four-byte integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td></td>
<td>variable-length character string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td></td>
<td>time of day (no time zone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td></td>
<td>time of day, including time zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td></td>
<td>date and time (no time zone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td></td>
<td>date and time, including time zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsquery</td>
<td></td>
<td>text search query</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsvector</td>
<td></td>
<td>text search document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>txid_snapshot</td>
<td></td>
<td>user-level transaction ID snapshot (deprecated; see pg_snapshot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uuid</td>
<td></td>
<td>universally unique identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xml</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Compatibility

The following types (or spellings thereof) are specified by SQL: bigint, bit, bit varying, boolean, char, character varying, character, varchar, date, double precision, integer, interval, numeric, decimal, real, smallint, time (with or without time zone), timestamp (with or without time zone), xml.

Each data type has an external representation determined by its input and output functions. Many of the built-in types have obvious external formats. However, several types are either unique to Postgres Pro, such as geometric paths, or have several possible formats, such as the date and time types. Some of the input and output functions are not invertible, i.e., the result of an output function might lose accuracy when compared to the original input.

### 8.1. Numeric Types

Numeric types consist of two-, four-, and eight-byte integers, four- and eight-byte floating-point numbers, and selectable-precision decimals. Table 8.2 lists the available types.

#### Table 8.2. Numeric Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>smallint</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>small-range integer</td>
<td>-32768 to +32767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
<td>typical choice for integer</td>
<td>-2147483648 to +2147483647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
<td>large-range integer</td>
<td>-9223372036854775808 to +9223372036854775807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>variable</td>
<td>user-specified precision, exact</td>
<td>up to 131072 digits before the decimal point; up to 16383 digits after the decimal point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric</td>
<td>variable</td>
<td>user-specified precision, exact</td>
<td>up to 131072 digits before the decimal point; up to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>real</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
<td>variable-precision, inexact</td>
<td>16383 digits after the decimal point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double precision</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
<td>variable-precision, inexact</td>
<td>6 decimal digits precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smallserial</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>small autoincrementing integer</td>
<td>15 decimal digits precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serial</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
<td>autoincrementing integer</td>
<td>1 to 2147483647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigserial</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
<td>large autoincrementing integer</td>
<td>1 to 9223372036854775807</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The syntax of constants for the numeric types is described in Section 4.1.2. The numeric types have a full set of corresponding arithmetic operators and functions. Refer to Chapter 9 for more information. The following sections describe the types in detail.

#### 8.1.1. Integer Types

The types `smallint`, `integer`, and `bigint` store whole numbers, that is, numbers without fractional components, of various ranges. Attempts to store values outside of the allowed range will result in an error.

The type `integer` is the common choice, as it offers the best balance between range, storage size, and performance. The `smallint` type is generally only used if disk space is at a premium. The `bigint` type is designed to be used when the range of the `integer` type is insufficient.

SQL only specifies the integer types `integer` (or `int`), `smallint`, and `bigint`. The type names `int2`, `int4`, and `int8` are extensions, which are also used by some other SQL database systems.

#### 8.1.2. Arbitrary Precision Numbers

The type `numeric` can store numbers with a very large number of digits. It is especially recommended for storing monetary amounts and other quantities where exactness is required. Calculations with `numeric` values yield exact results where possible, e.g., addition, subtraction, multiplication. However, calculations on `numeric` values are very slow compared to the integer types, or to the floating-point types described in the next section.

We use the following terms below: The **precision** of a `numeric` is the total count of significant digits in the whole number; that is, the number of digits to both sides of the decimal point. The **scale** of a `numeric` is the count of decimal digits in the fractional part, to the right of the decimal point. So the number 23.5141 has a precision of 6 and a scale of 4. Integers can be considered to have a scale of zero.

Both the maximum precision and the maximum scale of a `numeric` column can be configured. To declare a column of type `numeric` use the syntax:

```sql
NUMERIC(precision, scale)
```

The precision must be positive, the scale zero or positive. Alternatively:

```sql
NUMERIC(precision)
```

selects a scale of 0. Specifying:

```sql
NUMERIC
```

without any precision or scale creates an “unconstrained numeric” column in which numeric values of any length can be stored, up to the implementation limits. A column of this kind will not coerce input values to any particular scale, whereas `numeric` columns with a declared scale will coerce input values to that scale. (The SQL standard requires a default scale of 0, i.e., coercion to integer precision. We find this a bit useless. If you're concerned about portability, always specify the precision and scale explicitly.)
Data Types

**Note**

The maximum precision that can be explicitly specified in a `NUMERIC` type declaration is 1000. An unconstrained `NUMERIC` column is subject to the limits described in Table 8.2.

If the scale of a value to be stored is greater than the declared scale of the column, the system will round the value to the specified number of fractional digits. Then, if the number of digits to the left of the decimal point exceeds the declared precision minus the declared scale, an error is raised.

Numeric values are physically stored without any extra leading or trailing zeroes. Thus, the declared precision and scale of a column are maximums, not fixed allocations. (In this sense the `numeric` type is more akin to `varchar(n)` than to `char(n)`.) The actual storage requirement is two bytes for each group of four decimal digits, plus three to eight bytes overhead.

In addition to ordinary numeric values, the `numeric` type has several special values:

- Infinity
- -Infinity
- NaN

These are adapted from the IEEE 754 standard, and represent “infinity”, “negative infinity”, and “not-a-number”, respectively. When writing these values as constants in an SQL command, you must put quotes around them, for example `UPDATE table SET x = '-Infinity'`. On input, these strings are recognized in a case-insensitive manner. The infinity values can alternatively be spelled `inf` and `-inf`.

The infinity values behave as per mathematical expectations. For example, `Infinity` plus any finite value equals `Infinity`, as does `Infinity` plus `Infinity`; but `Infinity` minus `Infinity` yields `NaN` (not a number), because it has no well-defined interpretation. Note that an infinity can only be stored in an unconstrained `numeric` column, because it notionally exceeds any finite precision limit.

The `NaN` (not a number) value is used to represent undefined calculational results. In general, any operation with a `NaN` input yields another `NaN`. The only exception is when the operation's other inputs are such that the same output would be obtained if the `NaN` were to be replaced by any finite or infinite numeric value; then, that output value is used for `NaN` too. (An example of this principle is that `NaN` raised to the zero power yields one.)

**Note**

In most implementations of the “not-a-number” concept, `NaN` is not considered equal to any other numeric value (including `NaN`). In order to allow numeric values to be sorted and used in tree-based indexes, Postgres Pro treats `NaN` values as equal, and greater than all non-`NaN` values.

The types `decimal` and `numeric` are equivalent. Both types are part of the SQL standard.

When rounding values, the `numeric` type rounds ties away from zero, while (on most machines) the `real` and `double precision` types round ties to the nearest even number. For example:

```sql
SELECT x,
    round(x::numeric) AS num_round,
    round(x::double precision) AS dbl_round
FROM generate_series(-3.5, 3.5, 1) as x;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x</th>
<th>num_round</th>
<th>dbl_round</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-3.5</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td>-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2.5</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1.5</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

120
8.1.3. Floating-Point Types

The data types real and double precision are inexact, variable-precision numeric types. On all currently supported platforms, these types are implementations of IEEE Standard 754 for Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic (single and double precision, respectively), to the extent that the underlying processor, operating system, and compiler support it.

Inexact means that some values cannot be converted exactly to the internal format and are stored as approximations, so that storing and retrieving a value might show slight discrepancies. Managing these errors and how they propagate through calculations is the subject of an entire branch of mathematics and computer science and will not be discussed here, except for the following points:

- If you require exact storage and calculations (such as for monetary amounts), use the numeric type instead.
- If you want to do complicated calculations with these types for anything important, especially if you rely on certain behavior in boundary cases (infinity, underflow), you should evaluate the implementation carefully.
- Comparing two floating-point values for equality might not always work as expected.

On all currently supported platforms, the real type has a range of around 1E-37 to 1E+37 with a precision of at least 6 decimal digits. The double precision type has a range of around 1E-307 to 1E+308 with a precision of at least 15 digits. Values that are too large or too small will cause an error. Rounding might take place if the precision of an input number is too high. Numbers too close to zero that are not representable as distinct from zero will cause an underflow error.

By default, floating point values are output in text form in their shortest precise decimal representation; the decimal value produced is closer to the true stored binary value than to any other value representable in the same binary precision. (However, the output value is currently never exactly midway between two representable values, in order to avoid a widespread bug where input routines do not properly respect the round-to-nearest-even rule.) This value will use at most 17 significant decimal digits for float8 values, and at most 9 digits for float4 values.

Note

This shortest-precise output format is much faster to generate than the historical rounded format.

For compatibility with output generated by older versions of Postgres Pro, and to allow the output precision to be reduced, the extra_float_digits parameter can be used to select rounded decimal output instead. Setting a value of 0 restores the previous default of rounding the value to 6 (for float4) or 15 (for float8) significant decimal digits. Setting a negative value reduces the number of digits further; for example -2 would round output to 4 or 13 digits respectively.

Any value of extra_float_digits greater than 0 selects the shortest-precise format.

Note

Applications that wanted precise values have historically had to set extra_float_digits to 3 to obtain them. For maximum compatibility between versions, they should continue to do so.
In addition to ordinary numeric values, the floating-point types have several special values:

- Infinity
- -Infinity
- NaN

These represent the IEEE 754 special values “infinity”, “negative infinity”, and “not-a-number”, respectively. When writing these values as constants in an SQL command, you must put quotes around them, for example `UPDATE table SET x = '-Infinity'`. On input, these strings are recognized in a case-insensitive manner. The infinity values can alternatively be spelled `inf` and `-inf`.

**Note**

IEEE 754 specifies that NaN should not compare equal to any other floating-point value (including NaN). In order to allow floating-point values to be sorted and used in tree-based indexes, Postgres Pro treats NaN values as equal, and greater than all non-NaN values.

Postgres Pro also supports the SQL-standard notations `float` and `float(p)` for specifying inexact numeric types. Here, `p` specifies the minimum acceptable precision in binary digits. Postgres Pro accepts `float(1)` to `float(24)` as selecting the real type, while `float(25)` to `float(53)` select double precision. Values of `p` outside the allowed range draw an error. `float` with no precision specified is taken to mean double precision.

## 8.1.4. Serial Types

**Note**

This section describes a Postgres Pro-specific way to create an autoincrementing column. Another way is to use the SQL-standard identity column feature, described at CREATE TABLE.

The data types `smallserial`, `serial` and `bigserial` are not true types, but merely a notational convenience for creating unique identifier columns (similar to the AUTO_INCREMENT property supported by some other databases). In the current implementation, specifying:

```
CREATE TABLE tablename (  
    colname SERIAL  
);
```

is equivalent to specifying:

```
CREATE SEQUENCE tablename_colname_seq AS integer;
CREATE TABLE tablename (  
    colname integer NOT NULL DEFAULT nextval('tablename_colname_seq')  
);
ALTER SEQUENCE tablename_colname_seq OWNED BY tablename.colname;
```

Thus, we have created an integer column and arranged for its default values to be assigned from a sequence generator. A NOT NULL constraint is applied to ensure that a null value cannot be inserted. (In most cases you would also want to attach a UNIQUE or PRIMARY KEY constraint to prevent duplicate values from being inserted by accident, but this is not automatic.) Lastly, the sequence is marked as “owned by” the column, so that it will be dropped if the column or table is dropped.

**Note**

Because `smallserial`, `serial` and `bigserial` are implemented using sequences, there may be "holes" or gaps in the sequence of values which appears in the column, even if no rows are ever deleted. A value allocated from the sequence is still "used up" even if a row containing that value
is never successfully inserted into the table column. This may happen, for example, if the inserting transaction rolls back. See \nextval\() in \Section \ref{sec:nextval} for details.

To insert the next value of the sequence into the \texttt{serial} column, specify that the \texttt{serial} column should be assigned its default value. This can be done either by excluding the column from the list of columns in the \texttt{INSERT} statement, or through the use of the \texttt{DEFAULT} key word.

The type names \texttt{serial} and \texttt{serial4} are equivalent: both create integer columns. The type names \texttt{bigserial} and \texttt{serial8} work the same way, except that they create a \texttt{bigint} column. \texttt{bigserial} should be used if you anticipate the use of more than \(2^{31}\) identifiers over the lifetime of the table. The type names \texttt{smallserial} and \texttt{serial2} also work the same way, except that they create a \texttt{smallint} column.

The sequence created for a \texttt{serial} column is automatically dropped when the owning column is dropped. You can drop the sequence without dropping the column, but this will force removal of the column default expression.

\section{Monetary Types}

The \texttt{money} type stores a currency amount with a fixed fractional precision; see \Table \ref{tab:monetary}. The fractional precision is determined by the database's \texttt{lc_monetary} setting. The range shown in the table assumes there are two fractional digits. Input is accepted in a variety of formats, including integer and floating-point literals, as well as typical currency formatting, such as '$1,000.00'. Output is generally in the latter form but depends on the locale.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\caption{Monetary Types}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|l|}
\hline
Name & Storage Size & Description & Range \\
\hline
\texttt{money} & 8 bytes & currency amount & \tt{-92233720368547758.08 to +92233720368547758.07} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

Since the output of this data type is locale-sensitive, it might not work to load \texttt{money} data into a database that has a different setting of \texttt{lc_monetary}. To avoid problems, before restoring a dump into a new database make sure \texttt{lc_monetary} has the same or equivalent value as in the database that was dumped.

Values of the \texttt{numeric}, \texttt{int}, and \texttt{bigint} data types can be cast to \texttt{money}. Conversion from the \texttt{real} and \texttt{double precision} data types can be done by casting to \texttt{numeric} first, for example:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT '12.34':float8::numeric::money;
\end{verbatim}

However, this is not recommended. Floating point numbers should not be used to handle money due to the potential for rounding errors.

A \texttt{money} value can be cast to \texttt{numeric} without loss of precision. Conversion to other types could potentially lose precision, and must also be done in two stages:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT '52093.89':money::numeric::float8;
\end{verbatim}

Division of a \texttt{money} value by an integer value is performed with truncation of the fractional part towards zero. To get a rounded result, divide by a floating-point value, or cast the \texttt{money} value to \texttt{numeric} before dividing and back to \texttt{money} afterwards. (The latter is preferable to avoid risking precision loss.) When a \texttt{money} value is divided by another \texttt{money} value, the result is \texttt{double precision} (i.e., a pure number, not \texttt{money}); the currency units cancel each other out in the division.

\section{Character Types}

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\caption{Character Types}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
Name & Description \\
\hline
\texttt{character varying( n)}, \texttt{varchar( n)} & variable-length with limit \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
Table 8.4 shows the general-purpose character types available in Postgres Pro.

SQL defines two primary character types: `character varying(n)` and `character(n)`, where `n` is a positive integer. Both of these types can store strings up to `n` characters (not bytes) in length. An attempt to store a longer string into a column of these types will result in an error, unless the excess characters are all spaces, in which case the string will be truncated to the maximum length. (This somewhat bizarre exception is required by the SQL standard.) If the string to be stored is shorter than the declared length, values of type `character` will be space-padded; values of type `character varying` will simply store the shorter string.

If one explicitly casts a value to `character varying(n)` or `character(n)`, then an over-length value will be truncated to `n` characters without raising an error. (This too is required by the SQL standard.)

The notations `varchar(n)` and `char(n)` are aliases for `character varying(n)` and `character(n)`, respectively. `character` without length specifier is equivalent to `character(1)`. If `character varying` is used without length specifier, the type accepts strings of any size. The latter is a Postgres Pro extension.

In addition, Postgres Pro provides the `text` type, which stores strings of any length. Although the type `text` is not in the SQL standard, several other SQL database management systems have it as well.

Values of type `character` are physically padded with spaces to the specified width `n`, and are stored and displayed that way. However, trailing spaces are treated as semantically insignificant and disregarded when comparing two values of type `character`. In collations where whitespace is significant, this behavior can produce unexpected results; for example `SELECT 'a '::CHAR(2) collate "C" < E'a \n'::CHAR(2)` returns true, even though C locale would consider a space to be greater than a newline.

Trailing spaces are removed when converting a `character` value to one of the other string types. Note that trailing spaces are semantically significant in `character varying` and `text` values, and when using pattern matching, that is `LIKE` and regular expressions.

The characters that can be stored in any of these data types are determined by the database character set, which is selected when the database is created. Regardless of the specific character set, the character with code zero (sometimes called NUL) cannot be stored. For more information refer to Section 22.3.

The storage requirement for a short string (up to 126 bytes) is 1 byte plus the actual string, which includes the space padding in the case of `character`. Longer strings have 4 bytes of overhead instead of 1. Long strings are compressed by the system automatically, so the physical requirement on disk might be less. Very long values are also stored in background tables so that they do not interfere with rapid access to shorter column values. In any case, the longest possible character string that can be stored is about 1 GB. (The maximum value that will be allowed for `n` in the data type declaration is less than that. It wouldn’t be useful to change this because with multibyte character encodings the number of characters and bytes can be quite different. If you desire to store long strings with no specific upper limit, use `text` or `character varying` without a length specifier, rather than making up an arbitrary length limit.)

**Tip**

There is no performance difference among these three types, apart from increased storage space when using the blank-padded type, and a few extra CPU cycles to check the length when storing into a length-constrained column. While `character(n)` has performance advantages in some other database systems, there is no such advantage in Postgres Pro; in fact `character(n)` is usually the slowest of the three because of its additional storage costs. In most situations `text` or `character varying` should be used instead.
Refer to Section 4.1.2.1 for information about the syntax of string literals, and to Chapter 9 for information about available operators and functions.

**Example 8.1. Using the Character Types**

CREATE TABLE test1 (a character(4));
INSERT INTO test1 VALUES ('ok');
SELECT a, char_length(a) FROM test1; --

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>char_length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ok</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CREATE TABLE test2 (b varchar(5));
INSERT INTO test2 VALUES ('ok');
INSERT INTO test2 VALUES ('good      ');
INSERT INTO test2 VALUES ('too long');
ERROR: value too long for type character varying(5)
INSERT INTO test2 VALUES ('too long'::varchar(5)); -- explicit truncation
SELECT b, char_length(b) FROM test2;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b</th>
<th>char_length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ok</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too l</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **char_length** function is discussed in Section 9.4.

There are two other fixed-length character types in Postgres Pro, shown in Table 8.5. The name type exists only for the storage of identifiers in the internal system catalogs and is not intended for use by the general user. Its length is currently defined as 64 bytes (63 usable characters plus terminator) but should be referenced using the constant NAMEDATALEN in C source code. The length is set at compile time (and is therefore adjustable for special uses); the default maximum length might change in a future release. The type "char" (note the quotes) is different from char(1) in that it only uses one byte of storage. It is internally used in the system catalogs as a simplistic enumeration type.

### Table 8.5. Special Character Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;char&quot;</td>
<td>1 byte</td>
<td>single-byte internal type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>64 bytes</td>
<td>internal type for object names</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.4. Binary Data Types

The bytea data type allows storage of binary strings; see Table 8.6.

### Table 8.6. Binary Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bytea</td>
<td>1 or 4 bytes plus the actual binary string</td>
<td>variable-length binary string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A binary string is a sequence of octets (or bytes). Binary strings are distinguished from character strings in two ways. First, binary strings specifically allow storing octets of value zero and other “non-printable” octets (usually, octets outside the decimal range 32 to 126). Character strings disallow zero octets, and also disallow any other octet values and sequences of octet values that are invalid according to the database’s selected character set encoding. Second, operations on binary strings process the actual
Data Types

bytes, whereas the processing of character strings depends on locale settings. In short, binary strings are appropriate for storing data that the programmer thinks of as “raw bytes”, whereas character strings are appropriate for storing text.

The bytea type supports two formats for input and output: “hex” format and PostgreSQL’s historical “escape” format. Both of these are always accepted on input. The output format depends on the configuration parameter bytea_output; the default is hex. (Note that the hex format was introduced in PostgreSQL 9.0; earlier versions and some tools don’t understand it.)

The SQL standard defines a different binary string type, called BLOB or BINARY LARGE OBJECT. The input format is different from bytea, but the provided functions and operators are mostly the same.

8.4.1. bytea Hex Format

The “hex” format encodes binary data as 2 hexadecimal digits per byte, most significant nibble first. The entire string is preceded by the sequence \x (to distinguish it from the escape format). In some contexts, the initial backslash may need to be escaped by doubling it (see Section 4.1.2.1). For input, the hexadecimal digits can be either upper or lower case, and whitespace is permitted between digit pairs (but not within a digit pair nor in the starting \x sequence). The hex format is compatible with a wide range of external applications and protocols, and it tends to be faster to convert than the escape format, so its use is preferred.

Example:

```
SELECT '\xDEADBEEF';
```

8.4.2. bytea Escape Format

The “escape” format is the traditional Postgres Pro format for the bytea type. It takes the approach of representing a binary string as a sequence of ASCII characters, while converting those bytes that cannot be represented as an ASCII character into special escape sequences. If, from the point of view of the application, representing bytes as characters makes sense, then this representation can be convenient. But in practice it is usually confusing because it fuzzes up the distinction between binary strings and character strings, and also the particular escape mechanism that was chosen is somewhat unwieldy. Therefore, this format should probably be avoided for most new applications.

When entering bytea values in escape format, octets of certain values must be escaped, while all octet values can be escaped. In general, to escape an octet, convert it into its three-digit octal value and precede it by a backslash. Backslash itself (octet decimal value 92) can alternatively be represented by double backslashes. Table 8.7 shows the characters that must be escaped, and gives the alternative escape sequences where applicable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decimal Octet Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Escaped Input Representation</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Hex Representation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>zero octet</td>
<td>‘\000’</td>
<td>‘\000’::bytea</td>
<td>\x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>single quote</td>
<td>‘’’’ or ‘\047’</td>
<td>‘’’’::bytea</td>
<td>\x27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>backslash</td>
<td>‘\’’ or ‘\134’</td>
<td>‘\’’::bytea</td>
<td>\x5c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 to 31 and 127 to 255</td>
<td>“non-printable” octets</td>
<td>‘\xxx’ (octal value)</td>
<td>‘\001’::bytea</td>
<td>\x01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The requirement to escape non-printable octets varies depending on locale settings. In some instances you can get away with leaving them unescaped.

The reason that single quotes must be doubled, as shown in Table 8.7, is that this is true for any string literal in an SQL command. The generic string-literal parser consumes the outermost single quotes and reduces any pair of single quotes to one data character. What the bytea input function sees is just
one single quote, which it treats as a plain data character. However, the bytea input function treats backslashes as special, and the other behaviors shown in Table 8.7 are implemented by that function.

In some contexts, backslashes must be doubled compared to what is shown above, because the generic string-literal parser will also reduce pairs of backslashes to one data character; see Section 4.1.2.1.

Bytea octets are output in hex format by default. If you change bytea_output to escape, “non-printable” octets are converted to their equivalent three-digit octal value and preceded by one backslash. Most “printable” octets are output by their standard representation in the client character set, e.g.:

```
SET bytea_output = 'escape';

SELECT 'abc \153\154\155 \052\251\124'::bytea;
   bytea
--------------
  abc klm *
```

The octet with decimal value 92 (backslash) is doubled in the output. Details are in Table 8.8.

### Table 8.8. bytea Output Escaped Octets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decimal Octet Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Escaped Output Representation</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Output Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>backslash</td>
<td>\</td>
<td>'\134'::bytea</td>
<td>\</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 to 31 and 127 to 255</td>
<td>“non-printable” octets</td>
<td>\xxx (octal value)</td>
<td>'\001'::bytea</td>
<td>\001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 to 126</td>
<td>“printable” octets</td>
<td>client character set representation</td>
<td>'\176'::bytea</td>
<td>~</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Depending on the front end to Postgres Pro you use, you might have additional work to do in terms of escaping and unescaping bytea strings. For example, you might also have to escape line feeds and carriage returns if your interface automatically translates these.

## 8.5. Date/Time Types

Postgres Pro supports the full set of SQL date and time types, shown in Table 8.9. The operations available on these data types are described in Section 9.9. Dates are counted according to the Gregorian calendar, even in years before that calendar was introduced (see Section B.6 for more information).

### Table 8.9. Date/Time Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Low Value</th>
<th>High Value</th>
<th>Resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
<td>both date and time (no time zone)</td>
<td>4713 BC</td>
<td>294276 AD</td>
<td>1 microsecond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ( p ) ]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ without time zone ]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp [ ( p ) ] with time zone</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
<td>both date and time, with time zone</td>
<td>4713 BC</td>
<td>294276 AD</td>
<td>1 microsecond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
<td>date (no time of day)</td>
<td>4713 BC</td>
<td>5874897 AD</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time [ ( p ) ]</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
<td>time of day (no date)</td>
<td>00:00:00</td>
<td>24:00:00</td>
<td>1 microsecond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ without time zone ]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time [ ( p ) ]</td>
<td>12 bytes</td>
<td>time of day (no date), with time zone</td>
<td>00:00:00+1559</td>
<td>24:00:00-1559</td>
<td>1 microsecond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with time zone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Low Value</th>
<th>High Value</th>
<th>Resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interval [</td>
<td>16 bytes</td>
<td>time interval</td>
<td>-1780000000 years</td>
<td>1780000000 years</td>
<td>1 microsecond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fields ] [ (p) ]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The SQL standard requires that writing just `timestamp` be equivalent to `timestamp without time zone`, and Postgres Pro honors that behavior. `timestamptz` is accepted as an abbreviation for `timestamp with time zone`; this is a Postgres Pro extension.

time, timestamp, and interval accept an optional precision value `p` which specifies the number of fractional digits retained in the seconds field. By default, there is no explicit bound on precision. The allowed range of `p` is from 0 to 6.

The `interval` type has an additional option, which is to restrict the set of stored fields by writing one of these phrases:

- YEAR
- MONTH
- DAY
- HOUR
- MINUTE
- SECOND
- YEAR TO MONTH
- DAY TO HOUR
- DAY TO MINUTE
- DAY TO SECOND
- HOUR TO MINUTE
- HOUR TO SECOND
- MINUTE TO SECOND

Note that if both `fields` and `p` are specified, the `fields` must include SECOND, since the precision applies only to the seconds.

The type `time with time zone` is defined by the SQL standard, but the definition exhibits properties which lead to questionable usefulness. In most cases, a combination of `date, time, timestamp without time zone, and timestamp with time zone` should provide a complete range of date/time functionality required by any application.

### 8.5.1. Date/Time Input

Date and time input is accepted in almost any reasonable format, including ISO 8601, SQL-compatible, traditional POSTGRES, and others. For some formats, ordering of day, month, and year in date input is ambiguous and there is support for specifying the expected ordering of these fields. Set the `DateStyle` parameter to `MDY` to select month-day-year interpretation, `DMY` to select day-month-year interpretation, or `YMD` to select year-month-day interpretation.

Postgres Pro is more flexible in handling date/time input than the SQL standard requires. See Appendix B for the exact parsing rules of date/time input and for the recognized text fields including months, days of the week, and time zones.

Remember that any date or time literal input needs to be enclosed in single quotes, like text strings. Refer to Section 4.1.2.7 for more information. SQL requires the following syntax

```
type [ (p) ] 'value'
```

where `p` is an optional precision specification giving the number of fractional digits in the seconds field. Precision can be specified for `time, timestamp, and interval` types, and can range from 0 to 6. If no
precision is specified in a constant specification, it defaults to the precision of the literal value (but not more than 6 digits).

### 8.5.1.1. Dates

Table 8.10 shows some possible inputs for the date type.

**Table 8.10. Date Input**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1999-01-08</td>
<td>ISO 8601; January 8 in any mode (recommended format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
<td>unambiguous in any datestyle input mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/8/1999</td>
<td>January 8 in MDY mode; August 1 in DMY mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/18/1999</td>
<td>January 18 in MDY mode; rejected in other modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01/02/03</td>
<td>January 2, 2003 in MDY mode; February 1, 2003 in DMY mode; February 3, 2001 in YMD mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1999-Jan-08</td>
<td>January 8 in any mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan-08-1999</td>
<td>January 8 in any mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08-Jan-1999</td>
<td>January 8 in any mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99-Jan-08</td>
<td>January 8 in YMD mode, else error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08-Jan-99</td>
<td>January 8, except error in YMD mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan-08-99</td>
<td>January 8, except error in YMD mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19990108</td>
<td>ISO 8601; January 8, 1999 in any mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>990108</td>
<td>ISO 8601; January 8, 1999 in any mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1999.008</td>
<td>year and day of year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J2451187</td>
<td>Julian date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January 8, 99 BC</td>
<td>year 99 BC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.5.1.2. Times

The time-of-day types are `time [ (p) ] without time zone` and `time [ (p) ] with time zone`. `time` alone is equivalent to `time` without time zone.

Valid input for these types consists of a time of day followed by an optional time zone. (See Table 8.11 and Table 8.12.) If a time zone is specified in the input for `time without time zone`, it is silently ignored. You can also specify a date but it will be ignored, except when you use a time zone name that involves a daylight-savings rule, such as America/New_York. In this case specifying the date is required in order to determine whether standard or daylight-savings time applies. The appropriate time zone offset is recorded in the `time with time zone` value.

**Table 8.11. Time Input**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>04:05:06.789</td>
<td>ISO 8601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04:05:06</td>
<td>ISO 8601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04:05</td>
<td>ISO 8601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040506</td>
<td>ISO 8601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04:05 AM</td>
<td>same as 04:05; AM does not affect value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04:05 PM</td>
<td>same as 16:05; input hour must be &lt;= 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04:05:06.789-8</td>
<td>ISO 8601, with time zone as UTC offset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>04:05:06-08:00</td>
<td>ISO 8601, with time zone as UTC offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04:05-08:00</td>
<td>ISO 8601, with time zone as UTC offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040506-08</td>
<td>ISO 8601, with time zone as UTC offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040506+0730</td>
<td>ISO 8601, with fractional-hour time zone as UTC offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040506+07:30:00</td>
<td>UTC offset specified to seconds (not allowed in ISO 8601)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04:05:06 PST</td>
<td>Time zone specified by abbreviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2003-04-12 04:05:06 America/New_York</td>
<td>Time zone specified by full name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 8.12. Time Zone Input

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>Abbreviation (for Pacific Standard Time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America/New_York</td>
<td>Full time zone name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST8PDT</td>
<td>POSIX-style time zone specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-8:00:00</td>
<td>UTC offset for PST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-8:00</td>
<td>UTC offset for PST (ISO 8601 extended format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-800</td>
<td>UTC offset for PST (ISO 8601 basic format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-8</td>
<td>UTC offset for PST (ISO 8601 basic format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zulu</td>
<td>Military abbreviation for UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>Short form of zulu (also in ISO 8601)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Refer to Section 8.5.3 for more information on how to specify time zones.

#### 8.5.1.3. Time Stamps

Valid input for the time stamp types consists of the concatenation of a date and a time, followed by an optional time zone, followed by an optional AD or BC. (Alternatively, AD/BC can appear before the time zone, but this is not the preferred ordering.) Thus:

```
1999-01-08 04:05:06
```

and:

```
1999-01-08 04:05:06 -8:00
```

are valid values, which follow the ISO 8601 standard. In addition, the common format:

```
January 8 04:05:06 1999 PST
```

is supported.

The SQL standard differentiates timestamp without time zone and timestamp with time zone literals by the presence of a “+” or “-” symbol and time zone offset after the time. Hence, according to the standard,

```
TIMESTAMP '2004-10-19 10:23:54'
```

is a timestamp without time zone, while

```
TIMESTAMP '2004-10-19 10:23:54+02'
```

is a timestamp with time zone. PostgreSQL never examines the content of a literal string before determining its type, and therefore will treat both of the above as timestamp without time zone. To ensure that a literal is treated as timestamp with time zone, give it the correct explicit type:

```
TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2004-10-19 10:23:54+02'
```
In a literal that has been determined to be timestamp without time zone, Postgres Pro will silently ignore any time zone indication. That is, the resulting value is derived from the date/time fields in the input value, and is not adjusted for time zone.

For timestamp with time zone, the internally stored value is always in UTC (Universal Coordinated Time, traditionally known as Greenwich Mean Time, GMT). An input value that has an explicit time zone specified is converted to UTC using the appropriate offset for that time zone. If no time zone is stated in the input string, then it is assumed to be in the time zone indicated by the system's TimeZone parameter, and is converted to UTC using the offset for the timezone zone.

When a timestamp with time zone value is output, it is always converted from UTC to the current timezone zone, and displayed as local time in that zone. To see the time in another time zone, either change timezone or use the AT TIME ZONE construct (see Section 9.9.4).

Conversions between timestamp without time zone and timestamp with time zone normally assume that the timestamp without time zone value should be taken or given as timezone local time. A different time zone can be specified for the conversion using AT TIME ZONE.

8.5.1.4. Special Values

Postgres Pro supports several special date/time input values for convenience, as shown in Table 8.13. The values infinity and -infinity are specially represented inside the system and will be displayed unchanged; but the others are simply notational shorthands that will be converted to ordinary date/time values when read. (In particular, now and related strings are converted to a specific time value as soon as they are read.) All of these values need to be enclosed in single quotes when used as constants in SQL commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input String</th>
<th>Valid Types</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>epoch</td>
<td>date, timestamp</td>
<td>1970-01-01 00:00:00+00 (Unix system time zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinity</td>
<td>date, timestamp</td>
<td>later than all other time stamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-infinity</td>
<td>date, timestamp</td>
<td>earlier than all other time stamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>date, time, timestamp</td>
<td>current transaction's start time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td>date, timestamp</td>
<td>midnight (00:00) today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>date, timestamp</td>
<td>midnight (00:00) tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>date, timestamp</td>
<td>midnight (00:00) yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allballs</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>00:00:00.00 UTC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following SQL-compatible functions can also be used to obtain the current time value for the corresponding data type: CURRENT_DATE, CURRENT_TIME, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP, LOCALTIME, LOCALTIMESTAMP. (See Section 9.9.5.) Note that these are SQL functions and are not recognized in data input strings.

Caution

While the input strings now, today, tomorrow, and yesterday are fine to use in interactive SQL commands, they can have surprising behavior when the command is saved to be executed later, for example in prepared statements, views, and function definitions. The string can be converted to a specific time value that continues to be used long after it becomes stale. Use one of the SQL functions instead in such contexts. For example, CURRENT_DATE + 1 is safer than 'tomorrow'::date.
8.5.2. Date/Time Output

The output format of the date/time types can be set to one of the four styles ISO 8601, SQL (Ingres), traditional POSTGRES (Unix date format), or German. The default is the ISO format. (The SQL standard requires the use of the ISO 8601 format. The name of the “SQL” output format is a historical accident.) Table 8.14 shows examples of each output style. The output of the date and time types is generally only the date or time part in accordance with the given examples. However, the POSTGRES style outputs date-only values in ISO format.

### Table 8.14. Date/Time Output Styles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Style Specification</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISO</td>
<td>ISO 8601, SQL standard</td>
<td>1997-12-17 07:37:16-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL</td>
<td>traditional style</td>
<td>12/17/1997 07:37:16.00 PST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postgres</td>
<td>original style</td>
<td>Wed Dec 17 07:37:16 1997 PST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>regional style</td>
<td>17.12.1997 07:37:16.00 PST</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

ISO 8601 specifies the use of uppercase letter T to separate the date and time. Postgres Pro accepts that format on input, but on output it uses a space rather than T, as shown above. This is for readability and for consistency with RFC 3339 as well as some other database systems.

In the SQL and POSTGRES styles, day appears before month if DMY field ordering has been specified, otherwise month appears before day. (See Section 8.5.1 for how this setting also affects interpretation of input values.) Table 8.15 shows examples.

### Table 8.15. Date Order Conventions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>datetyle Setting</th>
<th>Input Ordering</th>
<th>Example Output</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL, DMY</td>
<td>day/month/year</td>
<td>17/12/1997 15:37:16.00 CET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL, MDY</td>
<td>month/day/year</td>
<td>12/17/1997 07:37:16.00 PST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postgres, DMY</td>
<td>day/month/year</td>
<td>Wed 17 Dec 07:37:16 1997 PST</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the ISO style, the time zone is always shown as a signed numeric offset from UTC, with positive sign used for zones east of Greenwich. The offset will be shown as hh (hours only) if it is an integral number of hours, else as hhmm if it is an integral number of minutes, else as hh:mm:ss. (The third case is not possible with any modern time zone standard, but it can appear when working with timestamps that predate the adoption of standardized time zones.) In the other date styles, the time zone is shown as an alphabetic abbreviation if one is in common use in the current zone. Otherwise it appears as a signed numeric offset in ISO 8601 basic format (hh or hhmm).

The date/time style can be selected by the user using the SET datetyle command, the DateStyle parameter in the postgresql.conf configuration file, or the PGDATESTYLE environment variable on the server or client.

The formatting function to_char (see Section 9.8) is also available as a more flexible way to format date/time output.

8.5.3. Time Zones

Time zones, and time-zone conventions, are influenced by political decisions, not just earth geometry. Time zones around the world became somewhat standardized during the 1900s, but continue to be prone to arbitrary changes, particularly with respect to daylight-savings rules. Postgres Pro uses the widely-used IANA (Olson) time zone database for information about historical time zone rules. For times in the
future, the assumption is that the latest known rules for a given time zone will continue to be observed
indefinitely far into the future.

Postgres Pro endeavors to be compatible with the SQL standard definitions for typical usage. However,
the SQL standard has an odd mix of date and time types and capabilities. Two obvious problems are:

• Although the `date` type cannot have an associated time zone, the `time` type can. Time zones in the
  real world have little meaning unless associated with a date as well as a time, since the offset can
  vary through the year with daylight-saving time boundaries.

• The default time zone is specified as a constant numeric offset from UTC. It is therefore impossible
to adapt to daylight-saving time when doing date/time arithmetic across DST boundaries.

To address these difficulties, we recommend using date/time types that contain both date and time when
using time zones. We do not recommend using the type `time with time zone` (though it is supported by
Postgres Pro for legacy applications and for compliance with the SQL standard). Postgres Pro assumes
your local time zone for any type containing only date or time.

All timezone-aware dates and times are stored internally in UTC. They are converted to local time in the
zone specified by the `TimeZone` configuration parameter before being displayed to the client.

Postgres Pro allows you to specify time zones in three different forms:

• A full time zone name, for example `America/New_York`. The recognized time zone names are listed
  in the `pg_timezone_names` view (see Section 50.96). Postgres Pro uses the widely-used IANA time
  zone data for this purpose, so the same time zone names are also recognized by other software.

• A time zone abbreviation, for example `PST`. Such a specification merely defines a particular offset
  from UTC, in contrast to full time zone names which can imply a set of daylight savings transition
  rules as well. The recognized abbreviations are listed in the `pg_timezone_abbrevs` view (see
  Section 50.95). You cannot set the configuration parameters `TimeZone` or `log_timezone` to a time
  zone abbreviation, but you can use abbreviations in date/time input values and with the `AT TIME
  ZONE` operator.

• In addition to the timezone names and abbreviations, Postgres Pro will accept POSIX-style time
  zone specifications, as described in Section B.5. This option is not normally preferable to using a
  named time zone, but it may be necessary if no suitable IANA time zone entry is available.

In short, this is the difference between abbreviations and full names: abbreviations represent a specific
offset from UTC, whereas many of the full names imply a local daylight-savings time rule, and so have
two possible UTC offsets. As an example, 2014-06-04 12:00 America/New_York represents noon local
time in New York, which for this particular date was Eastern Daylight Time (UTC-4). So 2014-06-04
12:00 EDT specifies that same time instant. But 2014-06-04 12:00 EST specifies noon Eastern Standard
Time (UTC-5), regardless of whether daylight savings was nominally in effect on that date.

To complicate matters, some jurisdictions have used the same timezone abbreviation to mean different
UTC offsets at different times; for example, in Moscow `MSK` has meant UTC+3 in some years and UTC
+4 in others. Postgres Pro interprets such abbreviations according to whatever they meant (or had most
recently meant) on the specified date; but, as with the `EST` example above, this is not necessarily the
same as local civil time on that date.

In all cases, timezone names and abbreviations are recognized case-insensitively. (This is a change from
PostgreSQL versions prior to 8.2, which were case-sensitive in some contexts but not others.)

Neither timezone names nor abbreviations are hard-wired into the server; they are obtained from
configuration files stored under `.../share/timezone/` and `.../share/timezonesets/` of the installation
directory (see Section B.4).

The `TimeZone` configuration parameter can be set in the file `postgresql.conf`, or in any of the other
standard ways described in Chapter 18. There are also some special ways to set it:

• The SQL command `SET TIME ZONE` sets the time zone for the session. This is an alternative spelling
  of `SET TIMEZONE TO` with a more SQL-spec-compatible syntax.
• The `PGTZ` environment variable is used by libpq clients to send a `SET TIME ZONE` command to the server upon connection.

### 8.5.4. Interval Input

Interval values can be written using the following verbose syntax:

```
[@] quantity unit [quantity unit...] [direction]
```

where `quantity` is a number (possibly signed); `unit` is microsecond, millisecond, second, minute, hour, day, week, month, year, decade, century, millennium, or abbreviations or plurals of these units; `direction` can be `ago` or `empty`. The at sign (@) is optional noise. The amounts of the different units are implicitly added with appropriate sign accounting. `ago` negates all the fields. This syntax is also used for interval output, if `IntervalStyle` is set to `postgres_verbose`.

Quantities of days, hours, minutes, and seconds can be specified without explicit unit markings. For example, '1 12:59:10' is read the same as '1 day 12 hours 59 min 10 sec'. Also, a combination of years and months can be specified with a dash; for example '200-10' is read the same as '200 years 10 months'. (These shorter forms are in fact the only ones allowed by the SQL standard, and are used for output when `IntervalStyle` is set to `sql_standard`.)

Interval values can also be written as ISO 8601 time intervals, using either the “format with designators” of the standard's section 4.4.3.2 or the “alternative format” of section 4.4.3.3. The format with designators looks like this:

```
P quantity unit [ quantity unit ...] [ T [ quantity unit ...]]
```

The string must start with a `P`, and may include a `T` that introduces the time-of-day units. The available unit abbreviations are given in Table 8.16. Units may be omitted, and may be specified in any order, but units smaller than a day must appear after `T`. In particular, the meaning of `M` depends on whether it is before or after `T`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Months (in the date part)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Minutes (in the time part)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Seconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the alternative format:

```
P [ years-months-days ] [ T hours:minutes:seconds ]
```

the string must begin with `P`, and a `T` separates the date and time parts of the interval. The values are given as numbers similar to ISO 8601 dates.

When writing an interval constant with a `fields` specification, or when assigning a string to an interval column that was defined with a `fields` specification, the interpretation of unmarked quantities depends on the `fields`. For example `INTERVAL '1' YEAR` is read as 1 year, whereas `INTERVAL '1'` means 1 second. Also, field values “to the right” of the least significant field allowed by the `fields` specification are silently discarded. For example, writing `INTERVAL '1 day 2:03:04' HOUR TO MINUTE` results in dropping the seconds field, but not the day field.

According to the SQL standard all fields of an interval value must have the same sign, so a leading negative sign applies to all fields; for example the negative sign in the interval literal ‘-1 2:03:04’ applies to both the days and hour/minute/second parts. Postgres Pro allows the fields to have different
signs, and traditionally treats each field in the textual representation as independently signed, so that the hour/minute/second part is considered positive in this example. If IntervalStyle is set to sql_standard then a leading sign is considered to apply to all fields (but only if no additional signs appear). Otherwise the traditional Postgres Pro interpretation is used. To avoid ambiguity, it's recommended to attach an explicit sign to each field if any field is negative.

Field values can have fractional parts: for example, '1.5 weeks' or '01:02:03.45'. However, because interval internally stores only three integer units (months, days, microseconds), fractional units must be spilled to smaller units. Fractional parts of units greater than months are truncated to be an integer number of months, e.g. '1.5 years' becomes '1 year 6 mons'. Fractional parts of weeks and days are computed to be an integer number of days and microseconds, assuming 30 days per month and 24 hours per day, e.g., '1.75 months' becomes 1 mon 22 days 12:00:00. Only seconds will ever be shown as fractional on output.

Table 8.17 shows some examples of valid interval input.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>SQL standard format: 1 year 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 4:05:06</td>
<td>SQL standard format: 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 year 2 months 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds</td>
<td>Traditional Postgres format: 1 year 2 months 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1Y2M3DT4H5M6S</td>
<td>ISO 8601 “format with designators”: same meaning as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0001-02-03T04:05:06</td>
<td>ISO 8601 “alternative format”: same meaning as above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Internally interval values are stored as months, days, and microseconds. This is done because the number of days in a month varies, and a day can have 23 or 25 hours if a daylight savings time adjustment is involved. The months and days fields are integers while the microseconds field can store fractional seconds. Because intervals are usually created from constant strings or timestamp subtraction, this storage method works well in most cases, but can cause unexpected results:

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(hours from '80 minutes'::interval);
```
```
date_part
-----------
1
```

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(days from '80 hours'::interval);
```
```
date_part
-----------
0
```

Functions justify_days and justify_hours are available for adjusting days and hours that overflow their normal ranges.

8.5.5. Interval Output

The output format of the interval type can be set to one of the four styles sql_standard, postgres, postgres_verbose, or iso_8601, using the command SET intervalstyle. The default is the postgres format. Table 8.18 shows examples of each output style.

The sql_standard style produces output that conforms to the SQL standard’s specification for interval literal strings, if the interval value meets the standard’s restrictions (either year-month only or day-time only, with no mixing of positive and negative components). Otherwise the output looks like a standard year-month literal string followed by a day-time literal string, with explicit signs added to disambiguate mixed-sign intervals.
The output of the `postgres` style matches the output of PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the `DateStyle` parameter was set to ISO.

The output of the `postgres_verbose` style matches the output of PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the `DateStyle` parameter was set to non-ISO output.

The output of the `iso_8601` style matches the “format with designators” described in section 4.4.3.2 of the ISO 8601 standard.

### Table 8.18. Interval Output Style Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Style Specification</th>
<th>Year-Month Interval</th>
<th>Day-Time Interval</th>
<th>Mixed Interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>sql_standard</code></td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>3 4:05:06</td>
<td>-1-2 +3 -4:05:06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>postgres</code></td>
<td>1 year 2 mons</td>
<td>3 days 04:05:06</td>
<td>-1 year -2 mons +3 days -04:05:06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>postgres_verbose</code></td>
<td>@ 1 year 2 mons</td>
<td>@ 3 days 4 hours 5 mins 6 secs</td>
<td>@ 1 year 2 mons -3 days 4 hours 5 mins 6 secs ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>iso_8601</code></td>
<td>P1Y2M</td>
<td>P3DT4H5M6S</td>
<td>P-1Y-2M3DT-4H-5M-6S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.6. Boolean Type

Postgres Pro provides the standard SQL type `boolean`; see Table 8.19. The `boolean` type can have several states: “true”, “false”, and a third state, “unknown”, which is represented by the SQL null value.

### Table 8.19. Boolean Data Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>boolean</code></td>
<td>1 byte</td>
<td>state of true or false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Boolean constants can be represented in SQL queries by the SQL key words `TRUE`, `FALSE`, and `NULL`.

The `datatype` input function for type `boolean` accepts these string representations for the “true” state:

true
yes
on
1

and these representations for the “false” state:

false
no
off
0

Unique prefixes of these strings are also accepted, for example t or n. Leading or trailing whitespace is ignored, and case does not matter.

The `datatype` output function for type `boolean` always emits either t or f, as shown in Example 8.2.

#### Example 8.2. Using the `boolean` Type

```sql
CREATE TABLE test1 (a boolean, b text);
INSERT INTO test1 VALUES (TRUE, 'sic est');
INSERT INTO test1 VALUES (FALSE, 'non est');
SELECT * FROM test1;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>sic est</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The key words **TRUE** and **FALSE** are the preferred (SQL-compliant) method for writing Boolean constants in SQL queries. But you can also use the string representations by following the generic string-literal constant syntax described in Section 4.1.2.7, for example `'yes'::boolean`.

Note that the parser automatically understands that **TRUE** and **FALSE** are of type **boolean**, but this is not so for **NULL** because that can have any type. So in some contexts you might have to cast **NULL** to **boolean** explicitly, for example **NULL::boolean**. Conversely, the cast can be omitted from a string-literal Boolean value in contexts where the parser can deduce that the literal must be of type **boolean**.

### 8.7. Enumerated Types

Enumerated (enum) types are data types that comprise a static, ordered set of values. They are equivalent to the **enum** types supported in a number of programming languages. An example of an enum type might be the days of the week, or a set of status values for a piece of data.

#### 8.7.1. Declaration of Enumerated Types

Enum types are created using the **CREATE TYPE** command, for example:

```
CREATE TYPE mood AS ENUM ('sad', 'ok', 'happy');
```

Once created, the enum type can be used in table and function definitions much like any other type:

```
CREATE TABLE person (  
  name text,  
  current_mood mood  
);  
INSERT INTO person VALUES ('Moe', 'happy');  
SELECT * FROM person WHERE current_mood = 'happy';
```

#### 8.7.2. Ordering

The ordering of the values in an enum type is the order in which the values were listed when the type was created. All standard comparison operators and related aggregate functions are supported for enums. For example:

```
INSERT INTO person VALUES ('Larry', 'sad');  
INSERT INTO person VALUES ('Curly', 'ok');  
SELECT * FROM person WHERE current_mood > 'sad';
```

```
name | current_mood
-------+--------------
Moe   | happy
Curly | ok
(2 rows)
```

```
SELECT * FROM person WHERE current_mood > 'sad' ORDER BY current_mood;
```

```
name | current_mood
-------+--------------
Curly | ok
```
### 8.7.3. Type Safety

Each enumerated data type is separate and cannot be compared with other enumerated types. See this example:

```sql
CREATE TYPE happiness AS ENUM ('happy', 'very happy', 'ecstatic');
CREATE TABLE holidays (num_weeks integer, happiness happiness);
INSERT INTO holidays(num_weeks,happiness) VALUES (4, 'happy');
INSERT INTO holidays(num_weeks,happiness) VALUES (6, 'very happy');
INSERT INTO holidays(num_weeks,happiness) VALUES (8, 'ecstatic');
ERROR:  invalid input value for enum happiness: "sad"
SELECT person.name, holidays.num_weeks FROM person, holidays
WHERE person.current_mood = holidays.happiness;
ERROR:  operator does not exist: mood = happiness

If you really need to do something like that, you can either write a custom operator or add explicit casts to your query:

```sql
SELECT person.name, holidays.num_weeks, person.current_mood::text = holidays.happiness::text;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>num_weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moe</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

### 8.7.4. Implementation Details

Enum labels are case sensitive, so 'happy' is not the same as 'HAPPY'. White space in the labels is significant too.

Although enum types are primarily intended for static sets of values, there is support for adding new values to an existing enum type, and for renaming values (see `ALTER TYPE`). Existing values cannot be removed from an enum type, nor can the sort ordering of such values be changed, short of dropping and re-creating the enum type.

An enum value occupies four bytes on disk. The length of an enum value's textual label is limited by the `NAMEDATALEN` setting compiled into Postgres Pro; in standard builds this means at most 63 bytes.

The translations from internal enum values to textual labels are kept in the system catalog `pg_enum`. Querying this catalog directly can be useful.

### 8.8. Geometric Types

Geometric data types represent two-dimensional spatial objects. Table 8.20 shows the geometric types available in Postgres Pro.
### Table 8.20. Geometric Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Representation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
<td>16 bytes</td>
<td>Point on a plane</td>
<td>(x,y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td>32 bytes</td>
<td>Infinite line</td>
<td>{A,B,C}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lseg</td>
<td>32 bytes</td>
<td>Finite line segment</td>
<td>((x1,y1),(x2,y2))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>32 bytes</td>
<td>Rectangular box</td>
<td>((x1,y1),(x2,y2))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td>16+16n bytes</td>
<td>Closed path (similar to polygon)</td>
<td>(x1,y1,...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td>16+16n bytes</td>
<td>Open path</td>
<td>[(x1,y1),...]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polygon</td>
<td>40+16n bytes</td>
<td>Polygon (similar to closed path)</td>
<td>(x1,y1,..)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>24 bytes</td>
<td>Circle</td>
<td>&lt;(x,y),r&gt; (center point and radius)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A rich set of functions and operators is available to perform various geometric operations such as scaling, translation, rotation, and determining intersections. They are explained in Section 9.11.

### 8.8.1. Points

Points are the fundamental two-dimensional building block for geometric types. Values of type `point` are specified using either of the following syntaxes:

```
( x , y )
x , y
```

where `x` and `y` are the respective coordinates, as floating-point numbers.

Points are output using the first syntax.

### 8.8.2. Lines

Lines are represented by the linear equation \( Ax + By + C = 0 \), where \( A \) and \( B \) are not both zero. Values of type `line` are input and output in the following form:

```
{ A, B, C }
```

Alternatively, any of the following forms can be used for input:

```
[ ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) ]
( ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) )
( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 )
    x1 , y1 ,     x2 , y2
```

where \((x1,y1)\) and \((x2,y2)\) are two different points on the line.

### 8.8.3. Line Segments

Line segments are represented by pairs of points that are the endpoints of the segment. Values of type `lseg` are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

```
[ ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) ]
( ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) )
( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 )
    x1 , y1 ,     x2 , y2
```

where \((x1,y1)\) and \((x2,y2)\) are the end points of the line segment.

Line segments are output using the first syntax.

### 8.8.4. Boxes
8.8.5. Paths

Paths are represented by lists of connected points. Paths can be open, where the first and last points in the list are considered not connected, or closed, where the first and last points are considered connected.

Values of type path are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

\[
\begin{align*}
&[ ( x_1, y_1 ), \ldots, ( x_n, y_n ) ] \\
&( ( x_1, y_1 ), \ldots, ( x_n, y_n ) ) \\
&( x_1, y_1 ), \ldots, ( x_n, y_n ) \\
&x_1, y_1, \ldots, x_n, y_n
\end{align*}
\]

where the points are the end points of the line segments comprising the path. Square brackets \([\]) indicate an open path, while parentheses \((())\) indicate a closed path. When the outermost parentheses are omitted, as in the third through fifth syntaxes, a closed path is assumed.

Paths are output using the first or second syntax, as appropriate.

8.8.6. Polygons

Polygons are represented by lists of points (the vertexes of the polygon). Polygons are very similar to closed paths, but are stored differently and have their own set of support routines.

Values of type polygon are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

\[
\begin{align*}
&( ( x_1, y_1 ), \ldots, ( x_n, y_n ) ) \\
&( x_1, y_1 ), \ldots, ( x_n, y_n ) \\
&( x_1, y_1 ), \ldots, x_n, y_n \\
&x_1, y_1, \ldots, x_n, y_n
\end{align*}
\]

where the points are the end points of the line segments comprising the boundary of the polygon.

Polygons are output using the first syntax.

8.8.7. Circles

Circles are represented by a center point and radius. Values of type circle are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

\[
\begin{align*}
&< ( x, y ), r > \\
&( x, y ), r \\
&x, y, r \\
&x, y, r
\end{align*}
\]

where \((x,y)\) is the center point and \(r\) is the radius of the circle.

Circles are output using the first syntax.

8.9. Network Address Types
Postgres Pro offers data types to store IPv4, IPv6, and MAC addresses, as shown in Table 8.21. It is better to use these types instead of plain text types to store network addresses, because these types offer input error checking and specialized operators and functions (see Section 9.12).

### Table 8.21. Network Address Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Storage Size</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cidr</td>
<td>7 or 19 bytes</td>
<td>IPv4 and IPv6 networks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet</td>
<td>7 or 19 bytes</td>
<td>IPv4 and IPv6 hosts and networks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr</td>
<td>6 bytes</td>
<td>MAC addresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr8</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
<td>MAC addresses (EUI-64 format)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When sorting `inet` or `cidr` data types, IPv4 addresses will always sort before IPv6 addresses, including IPv4 addresses encapsulated or mapped to IPv6 addresses, such as `::10.2.3.4` or `::ffff:10.4.3.2`.

#### 8.9.1. `inet`

The `inet` type holds an IPv4 or IPv6 host address, and optionally its subnet, all in one field. The subnet is represented by the number of network address bits present in the host address (the “netmask”). If the netmask is 32 and the address is IPv4, then the value does not indicate a subnet, only a single host. In IPv6, the address length is 128 bits, so 128 bits specify a unique host address. Note that if you want to accept only networks, you should use the `cidr` type rather than `inet`.

The input format for this type is `address/y` where `address` is an IPv4 or IPv6 address and `y` is the number of bits in the netmask. If the `/y` portion is omitted, the netmask is taken to be 32 for IPv4 or 128 for IPv6, so the value represents just a single host. On display, the `/y` portion is suppressed if the netmask specifies a single host.

#### 8.9.2. `cidr`

The `cidr` type holds an IPv4 or IPv6 network specification. Input and output formats follow Classless Internet Domain Routing conventions. The format for specifying networks is `address/y` where `address` is the network's lowest address represented as an IPv4 or IPv6 address, and `y` is the number of bits in the netmask. If `y` is omitted, it is calculated using assumptions from the older classful network numbering system, except it will be at least large enough to include all of the octets written in the input. It is an error to specify a network address that has bits set to the right of the specified netmask.

Table 8.22 shows some examples.

### Table 8.22. `cidr` Type Input Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cidr Input</th>
<th>cidr Output</th>
<th><code>abbrev(cidr)</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>192.168.100.128/25</td>
<td>192.168.100.128/25</td>
<td>192.168.100.128/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.168/24</td>
<td>192.168.0.0/24</td>
<td>192.168.0/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.168/25</td>
<td>192.168.0.0/25</td>
<td>192.168.0/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.168.1</td>
<td>192.168.1.0/24</td>
<td>192.168.1/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.168</td>
<td>192.168.0.0/24</td>
<td>192.168.0/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.1</td>
<td>128.1.0.0/16</td>
<td>128.1/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>128.0.0.0/16</td>
<td>128.0/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.1.2</td>
<td>128.1.2.0/24</td>
<td>128.1.2/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1.2</td>
<td>10.1.2.0/24</td>
<td>10.1.2/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>10.1.0.0/16</td>
<td>10.1/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10.0.0.0/8</td>
<td>10/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1.2.3/32</td>
<td>10.1.2.3/32</td>
<td>10.1.2.3/32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cidr Input</th>
<th>cidr Output</th>
<th>abbrev( cidr)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2001:4f8:3:ba::/64</td>
<td>2001:4f8:3:ba::/64</td>
<td>2001:4f8:3:ba/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::ffff:1.2.3.0/120</td>
<td>::ffff:1.2.3.0/120</td>
<td>::ffff:1.2.3/120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::ffff:1.2.3.0/128</td>
<td>::ffff:1.2.3.0/128</td>
<td>::ffff:1.2.3/128</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.9.3. inet vs. cidr

The essential difference between inet and cidr data types is that inet accepts values with nonzero bits to the right of the netmask, whereas cidr does not. For example, 192.168.0.1/24 is valid for inet but not for cidr.

Tip

If you do not like the output format for inet or cidr values, try the functions host, text, and abbrev.

8.9.4. macaddr

The macaddr type stores MAC addresses, known for example from Ethernet card hardware addresses (although MAC addresses are used for other purposes as well). Input is accepted in the following formats:

'08:00:2b:01:02:03'
'08-00-2b-01-02-03'
'08002b:010203'
'08002b-010203'
'0800.2b01.0203'
'0800-2b01-0203'
'08002b010203'

These examples all specify the same address. Upper and lower case is accepted for the digits a through f. Output is always in the first of the forms shown.

IEEE Std 802-2001 specifies the second shown form (with hyphens) as the canonical form for MAC addresses, and specifies the first form (with colons) as the bit-reversed notation, so that 08-00-2b-01-02-03 = 01:00:4D:08:04:0C. This convention is widely ignored nowadays, and it is relevant only for obsolete network protocols (such as Token Ring). Postgres Pro makes no provisions for bit reversal, and all accepted formats use the canonical LSB order.

The remaining five input formats are not part of any standard.

8.9.5. macaddr8

The macaddr8 type stores MAC addresses in EUI-64 format, known for example from Ethernet card hardware addresses (although MAC addresses are used for other purposes as well). This type can accept both 6 and 8 byte length MAC addresses and stores them in 8 byte length format. MAC addresses given in 6 byte format will be stored in 8 byte length format with the 4th and 5th bytes set to FF and FE, respectively. Note that IPv6 uses a modified EUI-64 format where the 7th bit should be set to one after the conversion from EUI-48. The function macaddr8_set7bit is provided to make this change. Generally speaking, any input which is comprised of pairs of hex digits (on byte boundaries), optionally separated consistently by one of ':', '-', or '.', is accepted. The number of hex digits must be either 16 (8 bytes) or 12 (6 bytes). Leading and trailing whitespace is ignored. The following are examples of input formats that are accepted:

'08:00:2b:01:02:03:04:05'
These examples all specify the same address. Upper and lower case is accepted for the digits a through f. Output is always in the first of the forms shown.

The last six input formats shown above are not part of any standard.

To convert a traditional 48 bit MAC address in EUI-48 format to modified EUI-64 format to be included as the host portion of an IPv6 address, use `macaddr8_set7bit` as shown:

```
SELECT macaddr8_set7bit('08:00:2b:01:02:03');
```

```
  macaddr8_set7bit
-------------------------
  0a:00:2b:ff:fe:01:02:03
```

(1 row)

---

### 8.10. Bit String Types

Bit strings are strings of 1's and 0's. They can be used to store or visualize bit masks. There are two SQL bit types: `bit(n)` and `bit varying(n)`, where `n` is a positive integer.

- `bit` type data must match the length `n` exactly; it is an error to attempt to store shorter or longer bit strings. `bit varying` data is of variable length up to the maximum length `n`; longer strings will be rejected. Writing `bit` without a length is equivalent to `bit(1)`, while `bit varying` without a length specification means unlimited length.

**Note**

If one explicitly casts a bit-string value to `bit(n)`, it will be truncated or zero-padded on the right to be exactly `n` bits, without raising an error. Similarly, if one explicitly casts a bit-string value to `bit varying(n)`, it will be truncated on the right if it is more than `n` bits.

Refer to [Section 4.1.2.5](#) for information about the syntax of bit string constants. Bit-logical operators and string manipulation functions are available; see [Section 9.6](#).

**Example 8.3. Using the Bit String Types**

```
CREATE TABLE test (a BIT(3), b BIT VARYING(5));
INSERT INTO test VALUES (B'101', B'00');
INSERT INTO test VALUES (B'10', B'101');
```

```
ERROR:  bit string length 2 does not match type bit(3)
```

```
INSERT INTO test VALUES (B'10'::bit(3), B'101');
SELECT * FROM test;
```

```
a | b
---
101 | 00
100 | 101
```
A bit string value requires 1 byte for each group of 8 bits, plus 5 or 8 bytes overhead depending on the length of the string (but long values may be compressed or moved out-of-line, as explained in Section 8.3 for character strings).

### 8.11. Text Search Types

Postgres Pro provides two data types that are designed to support full text search, which is the activity of searching through a collection of natural-language documents to locate those that best match a query. The `tsvector` type represents a document in a form optimized for text search; the `tsquery` type similarly represents a text query. Chapter 12 provides a detailed explanation of this facility, and Section 9.13 summarizes the related functions and operators.

#### 8.11.1. tsvector

A `tsvector` value is a sorted list of distinct lexemes, which are words that have been normalized to merge different variants of the same word (see Chapter 12 for details). Sorting and duplicate-elimination are done automatically during input, as shown in this example:

```
SELECT 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat'::tsvector;
```

```
'\'a\' 'and' 'ate' 'cat' 'fat' 'mat' 'on' 'rat' 'sat'
```

To represent lexemes containing whitespace or punctuation, surround them with quotes:

```
SELECT $$the lexeme '    ' contains spaces$$::tsvector;
```

```
-------------------------------------------
'    ' 'contains' 'lexeme' 'spaces' 'the'
```

(We use dollar-quoted string literals in this example and the next one to avoid the confusion of having to double quote marks within the literals.) Embedded quotes and backslashes must be doubled:

```
SELECT $$the lexeme 'Joe''s' contains a quote$$::tsvector;
```

```
------------------------------------------------
'Joe''s' 'a' 'contains' 'lexeme' 'quote' 'the'
```

Optionally, integer positions can be attached to lexemes:

```
SELECT 'a:1 fat:2 cat:3 sat:4 on:5 a:6 mat:7 and:8 ate:9 a:10 fat:11 rat:12'::tsvector;
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
'a':1,6,10 'and':8 'ate':9 'cat':3 'fat':2,11 'mat':7 'on':5 'rat':12 'sat':4
```

A position normally indicates the source word's location in the document. Positional information can be used for proximity ranking. Position values can range from 1 to 16383; larger numbers are silently set to 16383. Duplicate positions for the same lexeme are discarded.

Lexemes that have positions can further be labeled with a weight, which can be A, B, C, or D. D is the default and hence is not shown on output:

```
SELECT 'a:1A fat:2B,4C cat:5D'::tsvector;
```

```
------------------------
'a':1A 'cat':5 'fat':2B,4C
```

Weights are typically used to reflect document structure, for example by marking title words differently from body words. Text search ranking functions can assign different priorities to the different weight markers.

It is important to understand that the `tsvector` type itself does not perform any word normalization; it assumes the words it is given are normalized appropriately for the application. For example,

```
SELECT 'The Fat Rats'::tsvector;
```
Data Types

---

For most English-text-searching applications the above words would be considered non-normalized, but `tsvector` doesn’t care. Raw document text should usually be passed through `to_tsvector` to normalize the words appropriately for searching:

```sql
SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'The Fat Rats');
```

Again, see Chapter 12 for more detail.

### 8.11.2. tsquery

A `tsquery` value stores lexemes that are to be searched for, and can combine them using the Boolean operators & (AND), | (OR), and ! (NOT), as well as the phrase search operator <-> (FOLLOWED BY). There is also a variant <N> of the FOLLOWED BY operator, where N is an integer constant that specifies the distance between the two lexemes being searched for. <-> is equivalent to <1>.

Parentheses can be used to enforce grouping of these operators. In the absence of parentheses, ! (NOT) binds most tightly, <-> (FOLLOWED BY) next most tightly, then & (AND), with | (OR) binding the least tightly.

Here are some examples:

```sql
SELECT 'fat & rat'::tsquery;
```

```sql
SELECT 'fat & (rat | cat)'::tsquery;
```

```sql
SELECT 'fat & rat & ! cat'::tsquery;
```

Optionally, lexemes in a `tsquery` can be labeled with one or more weight letters, which restricts them to match only `tsvector` lexemes with one of those weights:

```sql
SELECT 'fat:ab & cat'::tsquery;
```

Also, lexemes in a `tsquery` can be labeled with * to specify prefix matching:

```sql
SELECT 'super:*'::tsquery;
```

This query will match any word in a `tsvector` that begins with “super”.

Quoting rules for lexemes are the same as described previously for lexemes in `tsvector`; and, as with `tsvector`, any required normalization of words must be done before converting to the `tsquery` type. The `to_tsquery` function is convenient for performing such normalization:
SELECT to_tsquery('Fat:ab & Cats');

   to_tsquery
----------
fat':AB & 'cat'

Note that `to_tsquery` will process prefixes in the same way as other words, which means this comparison returns true:

SELECT to_tsvector( 'postgraduate' ) @@ to_tsquery( 'postgres:*' );

?column?
---------
t

because `postgres` gets stemmed to `postgr`:

SELECT to_tsvector( 'postgraduate' ), to_tsquery( 'postgres:*' );

   to_tsvector | to_tsquery
---------------+------------
postgradu':1 | 'postgr':*

which will match the stemmed form of `postgraduate`.

8.12. UUID Type

The data type `uuid` stores Universally Unique Identifiers (UUID) as defined by RFC 4122, ISO/IEC 9834-8:2005, and related standards. (Some systems refer to this data type as a globally unique identifier, or GUID, instead.) This identifier is a 128-bit quantity that is generated by an algorithm chosen to make it very unlikely that the same identifier will be generated by anyone else in the known universe using the same algorithm. Therefore, for distributed systems, these identifiers provide a better uniqueness guarantee than sequence generators, which are only unique within a single database.

A UUID is written as a sequence of lower-case hexadecimal digits, in several groups separated by hyphens, specifically a group of 8 digits followed by three groups of 4 digits followed by a group of 12 digits, for a total of 32 digits representing the 128 bits. An example of a UUID in this standard form is:

```
a0eebc99-9c0b-4ef8-bb6d-6bb9bd380a11
```

Postgres Pro also accepts the following alternative forms for input: use of upper-case digits, the standard format surrounded by braces, omitting some or all hyphens, adding a hyphen after any group of four digits. Examples are:

```
A0EEBC99-9C0B-4EF8-BB6D-6BB9BD380A11
{a0eebc99-9c0b-4ef8-bb6d-6bb9bd380a11}
a0eebc99c0b4ef8bb6d6bb9bd380a11
a0ee-bc99-9c0b-4ef8-bb6d-6bb9-bd38-0a11
{a0eebc99-9c0b4ef8-bb6d6bb9-bd380a11}
```

Output is always in the standard form.

See Section 9.14 for how to generate a UUID in PostgreSQL.

8.13. XML Type

The `xml` data type can be used to store XML data. Its advantage over storing XML data in a `text` field is that it checks the input values for well-formedness, and there are support functions to perform type-safe operations on it; see Section 9.15. Use of this data type requires the installation to have been built with `configure --with-libxml`.

The `xml` type can store well-formed “documents”, as defined by the XML standard, as well as “content” fragments, which are defined by reference to the more permissive “document node” of the XQuery and XPath data model. Roughly, this means that content fragments can have more than one top-level element or character node. The expression `xmlvalue IS DOCUMENT` can be used to evaluate whether a particular `xml` value is a full document or only a content fragment.
Limits and compatibility notes for the xml data type can be found in Section D.3.

8.13.1. Creating XML Values

To produce a value of type xml from character data, use the function xmlparse:

```sql
XMLPARSE ( { DOCUMENT | CONTENT } value)
```

**Examples:**

```sql
XMLPARSE (DOCUMENT '<?xml version="1.0"?><book><title>Manual</title><chapter>...</chapter></book>')</nXMLPARSE (CONTENT 'abc<foo>bar</foo><bar>foo</bar>')
```

While this is the only way to convert character strings into XML values according to the SQL standard, the Postgres Pro-specific syntaxes:

```sql
xml '<foo>bar</foo>'
'<foo>bar</foo>':::xml
```

can also be used.

The xml type does not validate input values against a document type declaration (DTD), even when the input value specifies a DTD. There is also currently no built-in support for validating against other XML schema languages such as XML Schema.

The inverse operation, producing a character string value from xml, uses the function xmlserialize:

```sql
XMLSERIALIZE ( { DOCUMENT | CONTENT } value AS type )
```

type can be character, character varying, or text (or an alias for one of those). Again, according to the SQL standard, this is the only way to convert between type xml and character types, but Postgres Pro also allows you to simply cast the value.

When a character string value is cast to or from type xml without going through XMLPARSE or XMLSERIALIZE, respectively, the choice of DOCUMENT versus CONTENT is determined by the “XML option” session configuration parameter, which can be set using the standard command:

```sql
SET XML OPTION ( DOCUMENT | CONTENT );
```

or the more Postgres Pro-like syntax

```sql
SET xmloption TO ( DOCUMENT | CONTENT );
```

The default is CONTENT, so all forms of XML data are allowed.

8.13.2. Encoding Handling

Care must be taken when dealing with multiple character encodings on the client, server, and in the XML data passed through them. When using the text mode to pass queries to the server and query results to the client (which is the normal mode), Postgres Pro converts all character data passed between the client and the server and vice versa to the character encoding of the respective end; see Section 22.3. This includes string representations of XML values, such as in the above examples. This would ordinarily mean that encoding declarations contained in XML data can become invalid as the character data is converted to other encodings while traveling between client and server, because the embedded encoding declaration is not changed. To cope with this behavior, encoding declarations contained in character strings presented for input to the xml type are ignored, and content is assumed to be in the current server encoding. Consequently, for correct processing, character strings of XML data must be sent from the client in the current client encoding. It is the responsibility of the client to either convert documents to the current client encoding before sending them to the server, or to adjust the client encoding appropriately. On output, values of type xml will not have an encoding declaration, and clients should assume all data is in the current client encoding.

When using binary mode to pass query parameters to the server and query results back to the client, no encoding conversion is performed, so the situation is different. In this case, an encoding declaration in
the XML data will be observed, and if it is absent, the data will be assumed to be in UTF-8 (as required by the XML standard; note that Postgres Pro does not support UTF-16). On output, data will have an encoding declaration specifying the client encoding, unless the client encoding is UTF-8, in which case it will be omitted.

Needless to say, processing XML data with Postgres Pro will be less error-prone and more efficient if the XML data encoding, client encoding, and server encoding are the same. Since XML data is internally processed in UTF-8, computations will be most efficient if the server encoding is also UTF-8.

Caution

Some XML-related functions may not work at all on non-ASCII data when the server encoding is not UTF-8. This is known to be an issue for `xmltable()` and `xpath()` in particular.

8.13.3. Accessing XML Values

The `xml` data type is unusual in that it does not provide any comparison operators. This is because there is no well-defined and universally useful comparison algorithm for XML data. One consequence of this is that you cannot retrieve rows by comparing an `xml` column against a search value. XML values should therefore typically be accompanied by a separate key field such as an ID. An alternative solution for comparing XML values is to convert them to character strings first, but note that character string comparison has little to do with a useful XML comparison method.

Since there are no comparison operators for the `xml` data type, it is not possible to create an index directly on a column of this type. If speedy searches in XML data are desired, possible workarounds include casting the expression to a character string type and indexing that, or indexing an XPath expression. Of course, the actual query would have to be adjusted to search by the indexed expression.

The text-search functionality in Postgres Pro can also be used to speed up full-document searches of XML data. The necessary preprocessing support is, however, not yet available in the Postgres Pro distribution.

8.14. JSON Types

JSON data types are for storing JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) data, as specified in RFC 7159. Such data can also be stored as `text`, but the JSON data types have the advantage of enforcing that each stored value is valid according to the JSON rules. There are also assorted JSON-specific functions and operators available for data stored in these data types; see Section 9.16.

Postgres Pro offers two types for storing JSON data: `json` and `jsonb`. To implement efficient query mechanisms for these data types, Postgres Pro also provides the `jsonpath` data type described in Section 8.14.7.

The `json` and `jsonb` data types accept almost identical sets of values as input. The major practical difference is one of efficiency. The `json` data type stores an exact copy of the input text, which processing functions must reparse on each execution; while `jsonb` data is stored in a decomposed binary format that makes it slightly slower to input due to added conversion overhead, but significantly faster to process, since no reparsing is needed. `jsonb` also supports indexing, which can be a significant advantage.

Because the `json` type stores an exact copy of the input text, it will preserve semantically-insignificant white space between tokens, as well as the order of keys within JSON objects. Also, if a JSON object within the value contains the same key more than once, all the key/value pairs are kept. (The processing functions consider the last value as the operative one.) By contrast, `jsonb` does not preserve white space, does not preserve the order of object keys, and does not keep duplicate object keys. If duplicate keys are specified in the input, only the last value is kept.

In general, most applications should prefer to store JSON data as `jsonb`, unless there are quite specialized needs, such as legacy assumptions about ordering of object keys.
RFC 7159 specifies that JSON strings should be encoded in UTF8. It is therefore not possible for the JSON types to conform rigidly to the JSON specification unless the database encoding is UTF8. Attempts to directly include characters that cannot be represented in the database encoding will fail; conversely, characters that can be represented in the database encoding but not in UTF8 will be allowed.

RFC 7159 permits JSON strings to contain Unicode escape sequences denoted by \uXXXX. In the input function for the json type, Unicode escapes are allowed regardless of the database encoding, and are checked only for syntactic correctness (that is, that four hex digits follow \u). However, the input function for jsonb is stricter: it disallows Unicode escapes for characters that cannot be represented in the database encoding. The json type also rejects \u0000 (because that cannot be represented in Postgres Pro’s text type), and it insists that any use of Unicode surrogate pairs to designate characters outside the Unicode Basic Multilingual Plane be correct. Valid Unicode escapes are converted to the equivalent single character for storage; this includes folding surrogate pairs into a single character.

Many of the JSON processing functions described in Section 9.16 will convert Unicode escapes to regular characters, and will therefore throw the same types of errors just described even if their input is of type json not jsonb. The fact that the json input function does not make these checks may be considered a historical artifact, although it does allow for simple storage (without processing) of JSON Unicode escapes in a database encoding that does not support the represented characters.

When converting textual JSON input into jsonb, the primitive types described by RFC 7159 are effectively mapped onto native Postgres Pro types, as shown in Table 8.23. Therefore, there are some minor additional constraints on what constitutes valid jsonb data that do not apply to the json type, nor to JSON in the abstract, corresponding to limits on what can be represented by the underlying data type. Notably, jsonb will reject numbers that are outside the range of the Postgres Pro numeric data type, while json will not. Such implementation-defined restrictions are permitted by RFC 7159. However, in practice such problems are far more likely to occur in other implementations, as it is common to represent JSON’s number primitive type as IEEE 754 double precision floating point (which RFC 7159 explicitly anticipates and allows for). When using JSON as an interchange format with such systems, the danger of losing numeric precision compared to data originally stored by Postgres Pro should be considered.

Conversely, as noted in the table there are some minor restrictions on the input format of JSON primitive types that do not apply to the corresponding Postgres Pro types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JSON primitive type</th>
<th>Postgres Pro type</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>\u0000 is disallowed, as are Unicode escapes representing characters not available in the database encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
<td>numeric</td>
<td>NaN and infinity values are disallowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>Only lowercase true and false spellings are accepted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>null</td>
<td>(none)</td>
<td>SQL NULL is a different concept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.14.1. JSON Input and Output Syntax

The input/output syntax for the JSON data types is as specified in RFC 7159.

The following are all valid json (or jsonb) expressions:

-- Simple scalar/primitive value
-- Primitive values can be numbers, quoted strings, true, false, or null
SELECT '5'::json;

-- Array of zero or more elements (elements need not be of same type)
SELECT '[1, 2, "foo", null]'::json;

-- Object containing pairs of keys and values
-- Note that object keys must always be quoted strings
SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active": false}'::json;

-- Arrays and objects can be nested arbitrarily
SELECT '{"foo": [true, "bar"], "tags": {"a": 1, "b": null}}'::json;

As previously stated, when a JSON value is input and then printed without any additional processing, json outputs the same text that was input, while jsonb does not preserve semantically-insignificant details such as whitespace. For example, note the differences here:

SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}'::json;
-------------------------------------------------
{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}
(1 row)

SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}'::jsonb;
--------------------------------------------------
{"bar": "baz", "active": false, "balance": 7.77}
(1 row)

One semantically-insignificant detail worth noting is that in jsonb, numbers will be printed according to the behavior of the underlying numeric type. In practice this means that numbers entered with E notation will be printed without it, for example:

SELECT '{"reading": 1.230e-5}'::json, '{"reading": 1.230e-5}'::jsonb;
json          |          jsonb
-----------------------+-------------------------
{"reading": 1.230e-5} | {"reading": 0.00001230}
(1 row)

However, jsonb will preserve trailing fractional zeroes, as seen in this example, even though those are semantically insignificant for purposes such as equality checks.

For the list of built-in functions and operators available for constructing and processing JSON values, see Section 9.16.

8.14.2. Designing JSON Documents

Representing data as JSON can be considerably more flexible than the traditional relational data model, which is compelling in environments where requirements are fluid. It is quite possible for both approaches to co-exist and complement each other within the same application. However, even for applications where maximal flexibility is desired, it is still recommended that JSON documents have a somewhat fixed structure. The structure is typically unenforced (though enforcing some business rules declaratively is possible), but having a predictable structure makes it easier to write queries that usefully summarize a set of “documents” (datums) in a table.

JSON data is subject to the same concurrency-control considerations as any other data type when stored in a table. Although storing large documents is practicable, keep in mind that any update acquires a row-level lock on the whole row. Consider limiting JSON documents to a manageable size in order to decrease lock contention among updating transactions. Ideally, JSON documents should each represent an atomic datum that business rules dictate cannot reasonably be further subdivided into smaller datums that could be modified independently.
8.14.3. jsonb Containment and Existence

Testing containment is an important capability of jsonb. There is no parallel set of facilities for the json type. Containment tests whether one jsonb document has contained within it another one. These examples return true except as noted:

-- Simple scalar/primitive values contain only the identical value:
SELECT "foo"::jsonb @> "foo"::jsonb;

-- The array on the right side is contained within the one on the left:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[1, 3]'::jsonb;

-- Order of array elements is not significant, so this is also true:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[3, 1]'::jsonb;

-- Duplicate array elements don't matter either:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[1, 2, 2]'::jsonb;

-- The object with a single pair on the right side is contained
-- within the object on the left side:
SELECT '{"product": "PostgreSQL", "version": 9.4, "jsonb": true}'::jsonb @> '{"version": 9.4}'::jsonb;

-- The array on the right side is not considered contained within the
-- array on the left, even though a similar array is nested within it:
SELECT '[1, 2, [1, 3]]'::jsonb @> '[1, 3]'::jsonb; -- yields false

-- But with a layer of nesting, it is contained:
SELECT '[1, 2, [1, 3]]'::jsonb @> '[[1, 3]]'::jsonb;

-- Similarly, containment is not reported here:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}'::jsonb @> '{"bar": "baz"}'::jsonb; -- yields false

-- A top-level key and an empty object is contained:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}'::jsonb @> '{"foo": {}}'::jsonb;

The general principle is that the contained object must match the containing object as to structure and data contents, possibly after discarding some non-matching array elements or object key/value pairs from the containing object. But remember that the order of array elements is not significant when doing a containment match, and duplicate array elements are effectively considered only once.

As a special exception to the general principle that the structures must match, an array may contain a primitive value:

-- This array contains the primitive string value:
SELECT '{"foo", "bar"}'::jsonb @> '"bar"'::jsonb;

-- This exception is not reciprocal -- non-containment is reported here:
SELECT '"bar"'::jsonb @> '{"bar"}'::jsonb; -- yields false

jsonb also has an existence operator, which is a variation on the theme of containment: it tests whether a string (given as a text value) appears as an object key or array element at the top level of the jsonb value. These examples return true except as noted:

-- String exists as array element:
SELECT '{"foo", "bar", "baz"]'::jsonb ? 'bar';

-- String exists as object key:
SELECT '{"foo": "bar"]'::jsonb ? 'foo';
-- Object values are not considered:
SELECT '{"foo": "bar"} '::jsonb ? 'bar'; -- yields false

-- As with containment, existence must match at the top level:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}} '::jsonb ? 'bar'; -- yields false

-- A string is considered to exist if it matches a primitive JSON string:
SELECT '"foo" '::jsonb ? 'foo';

JSON objects are better suited than arrays for testing containment or existence when there are many keys or elements involved, because unlike arrays they are internally optimized for searching, and do not need to be searched linearly.

Tip

Because JSON containment is nested, an appropriate query can skip explicit selection of sub-objects. As an example, suppose that we have a doc column containing objects at the top level, with most objects containing tags fields that contain arrays of sub-objects. This query finds entries in which sub-objects containing both "term": "paris" and "term": "food" appear, while ignoring any such keys outside the tags array:

SELECT doc->'site_name' FROM websites
   WHERE doc @> '{"tags":[{"term": "paris"}, {"term": "food"}]}';

One could accomplish the same thing with, say,

SELECT doc->'site_name' FROM websites
   WHERE doc->'tags' @> '{"term": "paris"}, {"term": "food"}';

but that approach is less flexible, and often less efficient as well.

On the other hand, the JSON existence operator is not nested: it will only look for the specified key or array element at top level of the JSON value.

The various containment and existence operators, along with all other JSON operators and functions are documented in Section 9.16.

8.14.4. jsonb Indexing

GIN indexes can be used to efficiently search for keys or key/value pairs occurring within a large number of jsonb documents (datums). Two GIN "operator classes" are provided, offering different performance and flexibility trade-offs.

The default GIN operator class for jsonb supports queries with top-level key-exists operators ?, ?& and ?| operators and path/value-exists operator @>. (For details of the semantics that these operators implement, see Table 9.45.) An example of creating an index with this operator class is:

CREATE INDEX idxgin ON api USING GIN (jdoc);

The non-default GIN operator class jsonb_path_ops supports indexing the @> operator only. An example of creating an index with this operator class is:

CREATE INDEX idxginp ON api USING GIN (jdoc jsonb_path_ops);

Consider the example of a table that stores JSON documents retrieved from a third-party web service, with a documented schema definition. A typical document is:

```json
{
    "guid": "9c36adc1-7fb5-4d5b-83b4-90356a46061a",
    "name": "Angela Barton",
    "is_active": true,
    "company": "Magnafone",
}```
Data Types

"address": "178 Howard Place, Gulf, Washington, 702",
"registered": "2009-11-07T08:53:22 +08:00",
"latitude": 19.793713,
"longitude": 86.513373,
"tags": [
  "enim",
  "aliquip",
  "qui"
]
}

We store these documents in a table named api, in a jsonb column named jdoc. If a GIN index is created on this column, queries like the following can make use of the index:

-- Find documents in which the key "company" has value "Magnafone"
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @> '{"company": "Magnafone"}';

However, the index could not be used for queries like the following, because though the operator ? is indexable, it is not applied directly to the indexed column jdoc:

-- Find documents in which the key "tags" contains key or array element "qui"
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc -> 'tags' ? 'qui';

Still, with appropriate use of expression indexes, the above query can use an index. If querying for particular items within the "tags" key is common, defining an index like this may be worthwhile:

CREATE INDEX idxgintags ON api USING GIN ((jdoc -> 'tags'));

Now, the WHERE clause jdoc -> 'tags' ? 'qui' will be recognized as an application of the indexable operator ? to the indexed expression jdoc -> 'tags'. (More information on expression indexes can be found in Section 11.7.)

Also, GIN index supports @@ and @? operators, which perform jsonpath matching.

SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @@ '$.tags[*] == "qui"';
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @? '$.tags[*] ? (@ == "qui")';

GIN index extracts statements of following form out of jsonpath: accessor_chain = const. Accessors chain may consist of .key, [*], and [index] accessors. jsonb_ops additionally supports .* and .** accessors.

Another approach to querying is to exploit containment, for example:

-- Find documents in which the key "tags" contains array element "qui"
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @> '{"tags": ["qui"]}';

A simple GIN index on the jdoc column can support this query. But note that such an index will store copies of every key and value in the jdoc column, whereas the expression index of the previous example stores only data found under the tags key. While the simple-index approach is far more flexible (since it supports queries about any key), targeted expression indexes are likely to be smaller and faster to search than a simple index.

Although the jsonb_path_ops operator class supports only queries with the @>, @@ and @? operators, it has notable performance advantages over the default operator class jsonb_ops. A jsonb_path_ops index is usually much smaller than a jsonb_ops index over the same data, and the specificity of searches is better, particularly when queries contain keys that appear frequently in the data. Therefore search operations typically perform better than with the default operator class.

The technical difference between a jsonb_ops and a jsonb_path_ops GIN index is that the former creates independent index items for each key and value in the data, while the latter creates index items only for each value in the data. 1 Basically, each jsonb_path_ops index item is a hash of the value and the key(s) leading to it; for example to index {"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}, a single index item would

1 For this purpose, the term “value” includes array elements, though JSON terminology sometimes considers array elements distinct from values within objects.
be created incorporating all three of foo, bar, and baz into the hash value. Thus a containment query looking for this structure would result in an extremely specific index search; but there is no way at all to find out whether foo appears as a key. On the other hand, a jsonb_ops index would create three index items representing foo, bar, and baz separately; then to do the containment query, it would look for rows containing all three of these items. While GIN indexes can perform such an AND search fairly efficiently, it will still be less specific and slower than the equivalent jsonb_path_ops search, especially if there are a very large number of rows containing any single one of the three index items.

A disadvantage of the jsonb_path_ops approach is that it produces no index entries for JSON structures not containing any values, such as {"a": {}}. If a search for documents containing such a structure is requested, it will require a full-index scan, which is quite slow. jsonb_path_ops is therefore ill-suited for applications that often perform such searches.

jsonb also supports btree and hash indexes. These are usually useful only if it’s important to check equality of complete JSON documents. The btree ordering for jsonb datums is seldom of great interest, but for completeness it is:

Object > Array > Boolean > Number > String > Null

Object with n pairs > object with n - 1 pairs

Array with n elements > array with n - 1 elements

Objects with equal numbers of pairs are compared in the order:

key-1, value-1, key-2 ...

Note that object keys are compared in their storage order; in particular, since shorter keys are stored before longer keys, this can lead to results that might be unintuitive, such as:

{ "aa": 1, "c": 1} > {"b": 1, "d": 1}

Similarly, arrays with equal numbers of elements are compared in the order:

element-1, element-2 ...

Primitive JSON values are compared using the same comparison rules as for the underlying Postgres Pro data type. Strings are compared using the default database collation.

8.14.5. jsonb Subscripting

The jsonb data type supports array-style subscripting expressions to extract and modify elements. Nested values can be indicated by chaining subscripting expressions, following the same rules as the path argument in the jsonb_set function. If a jsonb value is an array, numeric subscripts start at zero, and negative integers count backwards from the last element of the array. Slice expressions are not supported. The result of a subscripting expression is always of the jsonb data type.

UPDATE statements may use subscripting in the SET clause to modify jsonb values. Subscript paths must be traversable for all affected values insofar as they exist. For instance, the path val['a'][['b'][['c']] can be traversed all the way to c if every val, val['a'], and val['a'][['b'] is an object. If any val['a'] or val['a'][['b']] is not defined, it will be created as an empty object and filled as necessary. However, if any val itself or one of the intermediary values is defined as a non-object such as a string, number, or jsonb null, traversal cannot proceed so an error is raised and the transaction aborted.

An example of subscripting syntax:

-- Extract object value by key
SELECT ('{"a": 1}':::jsonb)['a'];

-- Extract nested object value by key path
SELECT ('{"a": {"b":{"c": 1}}}'::jsonb)['a'][['b'][['c']];
Data Types

-- Extract array element by index
SELECT ('[1, "2", null]::jsonb')[1];

-- Update object value by key. Note the quotes around '1': the assigned
-- value must be of the jsonb type as well
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field['key'] = '1';

-- This will raise an error if any record's jsonb_field['a']['b'] is something
-- other than an object. For example, the value ({"a": 1}) has a numeric value
-- of the key 'a'.
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field['a']['b']['c'] = '1';

-- Filter records using a WHERE clause with subscripting. Since the result of
-- subscripting is jsonb, the value we compare it against must also be jsonb.
-- The double quotes make "value" also a valid jsonb string.
SELECT * FROM table_name WHERE jsonb_field['key'] = '"value"';

jsonb assignment via subscripting handles a few edge cases differently from jsonb_set. When a source
jsonb value is NULL, assignment via subscripting will proceed as if it was an empty JSON value of the
type (object or array) implied by the subscript key:
-- Where jsonb_field was NULL, it is now {"a": 1}
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field['a'] = '1';

-- Where jsonb_field was NULL, it is now [1]
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field[0] = '1';

If an index is specified for an array containing too few elements, NULL elements will be appended until
the index is reachable and the value can be set.

-- Where jsonb_field was [], it is now [null, null, 2];
-- where jsonb_field was [0], it is now [0, null, 2]
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field[2] = '2';

A jsonb value will accept assignments to nonexistent subscript paths as long as the last existing element
to be traversed is an object or array, as implied by the corresponding subscript (the element indicated by
the last subscript in the path is not traversed and may be anything). Nested array and object structures
will be created, and in the former case null-padded, as specified by the subscript path until the assigned
value can be placed.

-- Where jsonb_field was {}, it is now {'a': [{'b': 1}]}
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field['a'][0]['b'] = '1';

-- Where jsonb_field was [], it is now [null, {'a': 1}]
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field[1]['a'] = '1';

8.14.6. Transforms

Additional extensions are available that implement transforms for the jsonb type for different procedural
languages.

The extensions for PL/Perl are called jsonb_plperl and jsonb_plperlu. If you use them, jsonb values
are mapped to Perl arrays, hashes, and scalars, as appropriate.

The extensions for PL/Python are called jsonb_plpythonu, jsonb_plpython2u, and jsonb_plpython3u
(see Section 44.1 for the PL/Python naming convention). If you use them, jsonb values are mapped to
Python dictionaries, lists, and scalars, as appropriate.

Of these extensions, jsonb_plperl is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers
who have CREATE privilege on the current database. The rest require superuser privilege to install.

8.14.7. jsonpath Type
The `jsonpath` type implements support for the SQL/JSON path language in Postgres Pro to efficiently query JSON data. It provides a binary representation of the parsed SQL/JSON path expression that specifies the items to be retrieved by the path engine from the JSON data for further processing with the SQL/JSON query functions.

The semantics of SQL/JSON path predicates and operators generally follow SQL. At the same time, to provide a natural way of working with JSON data, SQL/JSON path syntax uses some JavaScript conventions:

- Dot (.) is used for member access.
- Square brackets ([]) are used for array access.
- SQL/JSON arrays are 0-relative, unlike regular SQL arrays that start from 1.

An SQL/JSON path expression is typically written in an SQL query as an SQL character string literal, so it must be enclosed in single quotes, and any single quotes desired within the value must be doubled (see Section 4.1.2.1). Some forms of path expressions require string literals within them. These embedded string literals follow JavaScript/ECMAScript conventions: they must be surrounded by double quotes, and backslash escapes may be used within them to represent otherwise-hard-to-type characters. In particular, the way to write a double quote within an embedded string literal is `"`, and to write a backslash itself, you must write `\\`. Other special backslash sequences include those recognized in JSON strings: `\b`, `\f`, `\n`, `\r`, `\t`, `\v` for various ASCII control characters, and `\uNNNN` for a Unicode character identified by its 4-hex-digit code point. The backslash syntax also includes two cases not allowed by JSON: `\xNN` for a character code written with only two hex digits, and `\u{N...}` for a character code written with 1 to 6 hex digits.

A path expression consists of a sequence of path elements, which can be any of the following:

- Path literals of JSON primitive types: Unicode text, numeric, true, false, or null.
- Path variables listed in Table 8.24.
- Accessor operators listed in Table 8.25.
- `jsonpath` operators and methods listed in Section 9.16.2.2.
- Parentheses, which can be used to provide filter expressions or define the order of path evaluation.

For details on using `jsonpath` expressions with SQL/JSON query functions, see Section 9.16.2.

Table 8.24. `jsonpath` Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td>A variable representing the JSON value being queried (the context item).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$varname</td>
<td>A named variable. Its value can be set by the parameter <code>vars</code> of several JSON processing functions; see Table 9.47 for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@</td>
<td>A variable representing the result of path evaluation in filter expressions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8.25. `jsonpath` Accessors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accessor Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.key</td>
<td>Member accessor that returns an object member with the specified key. If the key name matches some named variable starting with $ or does not meet the JavaScript rules for an identifier, it must be enclosed in double quotes to make it a string literal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.&quot;$varname&quot;</td>
<td>Wildcard member accessor that returns the values of all members located at the top level of the current object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| .**               | Recursive wildcard member accessor that processes all levels of the JSON hierarchy of the current object and returns all the
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accessor Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>**{level}</code></td>
<td>Member values, regardless of their nesting level. This is a Postgres Pro extension of the SQL/JSON standard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>**{start_level to end_level}</code></td>
<td>Like <code>**</code>, but selects only the specified levels of the JSON hierarchy. Nesting levels are specified as integers. Level zero corresponds to the current object. To access the lowest nesting level, you can use the <code>last</code> keyword. This is a Postgres Pro extension of the SQL/JSON standard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[subscript, ...]</code></td>
<td>Array element accessor. <code>subscript</code> can be given in two forms: <code>index</code> or <code>start_index to end_index</code>. The first form returns a single array element by its index. The second form returns an array slice by the range of indexes, including the elements that correspond to the provided <code>start_index</code> and <code>end_index</code>. The specified <code>index</code> can be an integer, as well as an expression returning a single numeric value, which is automatically cast to integer. Index zero corresponds to the first array element. You can also use the <code>last</code> keyword to denote the last array element, which is useful for handling arrays of unknown length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[*]</code></td>
<td>Wildcard array element accessor that returns all array elements.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.15. Arrays

Postgres Pro allows columns of a table to be defined as variable-length multidimensional arrays. Arrays of any built-in or user-defined base type, enum type, composite type, range type, or domain can be created.

#### 8.15.1. Declaration of Array Types

To illustrate the use of array types, we create this table:

```sql
CREATE TABLE sal_emp (  
    name            text,  
    pay_by_quarter  integer[],  
    schedule        text[][]  
);  
```

As shown, an array data type is named by appending square brackets ([]) to the data type name of the array elements. The above command will create a table named `sal_emp` with a column of type `text` (name), a one-dimensional array of type `integer` (pay_by_quarter), which represents the employee's salary by quarter, and a two-dimensional array of `text` (schedule), which represents the employee's weekly schedule.

The syntax for `CREATE TABLE` allows the exact size of arrays to be specified, for example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE tictactoe (  
    squares   integer[3][3]  
);  
```

However, the current implementation ignores any supplied array size limits, i.e., the behavior is the same as for arrays of unspecified length.

The current implementation does not enforce the declared number of dimensions either. Arrays of a particular element type are all considered to be of the same type, regardless of size or number of dimensions. So, declaring the array size or number of dimensions in `CREATE TABLE` is simply documentation; it does not affect run-time behavior.

An alternative syntax, which conforms to the SQL standard by using the keyword `ARRAY`, can be used for one-dimensional arrays. `pay_by_quarter` could have been defined as:

```sql
pay_by_quarter  integer ARRAY[4],  
```
Or, if no array size is to be specified:

```sql
pay_by_quarter integer ARRAY,
```

As before, however, Postgres Pro does not enforce the size restriction in any case.

### 8.15.2. Array Value Input

To write an array value as a literal constant, enclose the element values within curly braces and separate them by commas. (If you know C, this is not unlike the C syntax for initializing structures.) You can put double quotes around any element value, and must do so if it contains commas or curly braces. (More details appear below.) Thus, the general format of an array constant is the following:

```sql
'{ val1 delim val2 delim ... }'
```

where `delim` is the delimiter character for the type, as recorded in its `pg_type` entry. Among the standard data types provided in the Postgres Pro distribution, all use a comma (,), except for type `box` which uses a semicolon (;). Each `val` is either a constant of the array element type, or a subarray. An example of an array constant is:

```sql
'{1,2,3},{4,5,6},{7,8,9}'
```

This constant is a two-dimensional, 3-by-3 array consisting of three subarrays of integers.

To set an element of an array constant to NULL, write `NULL` for the element value. (Any upper- or lowercase variant of `NULL` will do.) If you want an actual string value "NULL", you must put double quotes around it.

(These kinds of array constants are actually only a special case of the generic type constants discussed in Section 4.1.2.7. The constant is initially treated as a string and passed to the array input conversion routine. An explicit type specification might be necessary.)

Now we can show some `INSERT` statements:

```sql
INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Bill',
'{{"meeting", "lunch"}, {"training", "presentation"}}');
```

```sql
INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Carol',
'{{"breakfast", "consulting"}, {"meeting", "lunch"}}');
```

The result of the previous two inserts looks like this:

```sql
SELECT * FROM sal_emp;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>pay_by_quarter</th>
<th>schedule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill</td>
<td>{10000, 10000, 10000, 10000}</td>
<td>{{&quot;meeting&quot;, &quot;lunch&quot;}, {&quot;training&quot;, &quot;presentation&quot;}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carol</td>
<td>{20000, 25000, 25000, 25000}</td>
<td>{{&quot;breakfast&quot;, &quot;consulting&quot;}, {&quot;meeting&quot;, &quot;lunch&quot;}}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2 rows)

Multidimensional arrays must have matching extents for each dimension. A mismatch causes an error, for example:

```sql
INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Bill',
'{{"meeting", "lunch"}, {"meeting"}}');
```

**ERROR:** multidimensional arrays must have array expressions with matching dimensions

The `ARRAY` constructor syntax can also be used:

```sql
INSERT INTO sal_emp
```
VALUES ('Bill',
ARRAY[10000, 10000, 10000, 10000],
ARRAY[['meeting', 'lunch'], ['training', 'presentation']]);

INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Carol',
ARRAY[20000, 25000, 25000, 25000],
ARRAY[['breakfast', 'consulting'], ['meeting', 'lunch']]);

Notice that the array elements are ordinary SQL constants or expressions; for instance, string literals are single quoted, instead of double quoted as they would be in an array literal. The ARRAY constructor syntax is discussed in more detail in Section 4.2.12.

8.15.3. Accessing Arrays

Now, we can run some queries on the table. First, we show how to access a single element of an array. This query retrieves the names of the employees whose pay changed in the second quarter:

```sql
SELECT name FROM sal_emp WHERE pay_by_quarter[1] <> pay_by_quarter[2];
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

The array subscript numbers are written within square brackets. By default Postgres Pro uses a one-based numbering convention for arrays, that is, an array of \( n \) elements starts with array[1] and ends with array[\( n \)].

This query retrieves the third quarter pay of all employees:

```sql
SELECT pay_by_quarter[3] FROM sal_emp;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pay_by_quarter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2 rows)

We can also access arbitrary rectangular slices of an array, or subarrays. An array slice is denoted by writing lower-bound:upper-bound for one or more array dimensions. For example, this query retrieves the first item on Bill's schedule for the first two days of the week:

```sql
SELECT schedule[1:2][1:1] FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>schedule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{meeting},{training}}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

If any dimension is written as a slice, i.e., contains a colon, then all dimensions are treated as slices. Any dimension that has only a single number (no colon) is treated as being from 1 to the number specified. For example, [2] is treated as [1:2], as in this example:

```sql
SELECT schedule[1:2][2] FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>schedule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{meeting,lunch},{training,presentation}}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

To avoid confusion with the non-slice case, it's best to use slice syntax for all dimensions, e.g., [1:2] [1:1], not [2][1:1].
It is possible to omit the lower-bound and/or upper-bound of a slice specifier; the missing bound is replaced by the lower or upper limit of the array's subscripts. For example:

```sql
SELECT schedule[:2][2:] FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

```
schedule
--------
{{lunch},{presentation}}
(1 row)
```

```sql
SELECT schedule[:][1:1] FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

```
schedule
--------
{{meeting},{training}}
(1 row)
```

An array subscript expression will return null if either the array itself or any of the subscript expressions are null. Also, null is returned if a subscript is outside the array bounds (this case does not raise an error). For example, if `schedule` currently has the dimensions `[1:3][1:2]` then referencing `schedule[3][3]` yields NULL. Similarly, an array reference with the wrong number of subscripts yields a null rather than an error.

An array slice expression likewise yields null if the array itself or any of the subscript expressions are null. However, in other cases such as selecting an array slice that is completely outside the current array bounds, a slice expression yields an empty (zero-dimensional) array instead of null. (This does not match non-slice behavior and is done for historical reasons.) If the requested slice partially overlaps the array bounds, then it is silently reduced to just the overlapping region instead of returning null.

The current dimensions of any array value can be retrieved with the `array_dims` function:

```sql
SELECT array_dims(schedule) FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

```
array_dims
---------
[1:2][1:2]
(1 row)
```

`array_dims` produces a text result, which is convenient for people to read but perhaps inconvenient for programs. Dimensions can also be retrieved with `array_upper` and `array_lower`, which return the upper and lower bound of a specified array dimension, respectively:

```sql
SELECT array_upper(schedule, 1) FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

```
array_upper
----------
2
(1 row)
```

`array_length` will return the length of a specified array dimension:

```sql
SELECT array_length(schedule, 1) FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

```
array_length
-----------
2
(1 row)
```

`cardinality` returns the total number of elements in an array across all dimensions. It is effectively the number of rows a call to `unnest` would yield:

```sql
SELECT cardinality(schedule) FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Carol';
```
### 8.15.4. Modifying Arrays

An array value can be replaced completely:

```sql
UPDATE sal_emp SET pay_by_quarter = '{25000,25000,27000,27000}'
WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

or using the `ARRAY` expression syntax:

```sql
UPDATE sal_emp SET pay_by_quarter = ARRAY[25000,25000,27000,27000]
WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

An array can also be updated at a single element:

```sql
WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

or updated in a slice:

```sql
UPDATE sal_emp SET pay_by_quarter[1:2] = '{27000,27000}'
WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

The slice syntaxes with omitted `lower-bound` and/or `upper-bound` can be used too, but only when updating an array value that is not NULL or zero-dimensional (otherwise, there is no existing subscript limit to substitute).

A stored array value can be enlarged by assigning to elements not already present. Any positions between those previously present and the newly assigned elements will be filled with nulls. For example, if array `myarray` currently has 4 elements, it will have six elements after an update that assigns to `myarray[6]; myarray[5]` will contain null. Currently, enlargement in this fashion is only allowed for one-dimensional arrays, not multidimensional arrays.

Subscripted assignment allows creation of arrays that do not use one-based subscripts. For example one might assign to `myarray[-2:7]` to create an array with subscript values from -2 to 7.

New array values can also be constructed using the concatenation operator, `||`:

```sql
SELECT ARRAY[1,2] || ARRAY[3,4];
?column?
-----------
{1,2,3,4}
(1 row)
```

```sql
SELECT ARRAY[5,6] || ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]];  
?column?
-------------
{{5,6},{1,2},{3,4}}
(1 row)
```

The concatenation operator allows a single element to be pushed onto the beginning or end of a one-dimensional array. It also accepts two `N`-dimensional arrays, or an `N`-dimensional and an `N+1`-dimensional array.

When a single element is pushed onto either the beginning or end of a one-dimensional array, the result is an array with the same lower bound subscript as the array operand. For example:

```sql
SELECT array_dims(1 || '{0:1}={2,3}':int[]);
array_dims
```

161
SELECT array_dims(ARRAY[1,2] || 3);
array_dims
[1:3]
(1 row)

When two arrays with an equal number of dimensions are concatenated, the result retains the lower
bound subscript of the left-hand operand's outer dimension. The result is an array comprising every
element of the left-hand operand followed by every element of the right-hand operand. For example:

SELECT array_dims(ARRAY[1,2] || ARRAY[3,4,5]);
array_dims
[1:5]
(1 row)

SELECT array_dims(ARRAY([[1,2],[3,4]]) || ARRAY([[5,6],[7,8],[9,0]]));
array_dims
[1:5][1:2]
(1 row)

When an N-dimensional array is pushed onto the beginning or end of an N+1-dimensional array, the result
is analogous to the element-array case above. Each N-dimensional sub-array is essentially an element of
the N+1-dimensional array's outer dimension. For example:

SELECT array_dims(ARRAY[1,2] || ARRAY[[3,4],[5,6]]);
array_dims
[1:3][1:2]
(1 row)

An array can also be constructed by using the functions array_prepend, array_append, or array_cat. The first two only support one-dimensional arrays, but array_cat supports multidimensional arrays. Some examples:

SELECT array_prepend(1, ARRAY[2,3]);
array_prepend
{1,2,3}
(1 row)

SELECT array_append(ARRAY[1,2], 3);
array_append
{1,2,3}
(1 row)

SELECT array_cat(ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY[3,4]);
array_cat
{1,2,3,4}
(1 row)

SELECT array_cat(ARRAY([[1,2],[3,4]]), ARRAY[5,6]);
array_cat
{1,2,3,4,5,6}
(1 row)
In simple cases, the concatenation operator discussed above is preferred over direct use of these functions. However, because the concatenation operator is overloaded to serve all three cases, there are situations where use of one of the functions is helpful to avoid ambiguity. For example consider:

SELECT ARRAY[1, 2] || '{3, 4}';  -- the untyped literal is taken as an array

-----------

{1,2,3,4}

SELECT ARRAY[1, 2] || '7';                 -- so is this one
ERROR: malformed array literal: "7"

SELECT ARRAY[1, 2] || NULL;                -- so is an undecorated NULL

-----------

{1,2}

SELECT array_append(ARRAY[1, 2], NULL);    -- this might have been meant

array_append

-----------

{1,2,NULL}

In the examples above, the parser sees an integer array on one side of the concatenation operator, and a constant of undetermined type on the other. The heuristic it uses to resolve the constant’s type is to assume it’s of the same type as the operator’s other input — in this case, integer array. So the concatenation operator is presumed to represent array_cat, not array_append. When that’s the wrong choice, it could be fixed by casting the constant to the array’s element type; but explicit use of array_append might be a preferable solution.

### 8.15.5. Searching in Arrays

To search for a value in an array, each value must be checked. This can be done manually, if you know the size of the array. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM sal_emp WHERE pay_by_quarter[1] = 10000 OR
  pay_by_quarter[2] = 10000 OR
  pay_by_quarter[3] = 10000 OR
  pay_by_quarter[4] = 10000;
```

However, this quickly becomes tedious for large arrays, and is not helpful if the size of the array is unknown. An alternative method is described in Section 9.24. The above query could be replaced by:

```
SELECT * FROM sal_emp WHERE 10000 = ANY (pay_by_quarter);
```

In addition, you can find rows where the array has all values equal to 10000 with:

```
SELECT * FROM sal_emp WHERE 10000 = ALL (pay_by_quarter);
```

Alternatively, the `generate_subscripts` function can be used. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM
  (SELECT pay_by_quarter,
       generate_subscripts(pay_by_quarter, 1) AS s
```
FROM sal_emp) AS foo
WHERE pay_by_quarter[s] = 10000;

This function is described in Table 9.64.

You can also search an array using the `&&` operator, which checks whether the left operand overlaps with the right operand. For instance:

```sql
SELECT * FROM sal_emp WHERE pay_by_quarter && ARRAY[10000];
```

This and other array operators are further described in Section 9.19. It can be accelerated by an appropriate index, as described in Section 11.2.

You can also search for specific values in an array using the `array_position` and `array_positions` functions. The former returns the subscript of the first occurrence of a value in an array; the latter returns an array with the subscripts of all occurrences of the value in the array. For example:

```sql
SELECT array_position(ARRAY['sun','mon','tue','wed','thu','fri','sat'], 'mon');
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>array_position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1 row)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```sql
SELECT array_positions(ARRAY[1, 4, 3, 1, 3, 4, 2, 1], 1);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>array_positions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{1,4,8}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1 row)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tip

Arrays are not sets; searching for specific array elements can be a sign of database misdesign. Consider using a separate table with a row for each item that would be an array element. This will be easier to search, and is likely to scale better for a large number of elements.

8.15.6. Array Input and Output Syntax

The external text representation of an array value consists of items that are interpreted according to the I/O conversion rules for the array's element type, plus decoration that indicates the array structure. The decoration consists of curly braces (`{` and `}`) around the array value plus delimiter characters between adjacent items. The delimiter character is usually a comma (`,`) but can be something else: it is determined by the `typdelim` setting for the array's element type. Among the standard data types provided in the Postgres Pro distribution, all use a comma, except for type `box`, which uses a semicolon (`;`). In a multidimensional array, each dimension (row, plane, cube, etc.) gets its own level of curly braces, and delimiters must be written between adjacent curly-braced entities of the same level.

The array output routine will put double quotes around element values if they are empty strings, contain curly braces, delimiter characters, double quotes, backslashes, or white space, or match the word `NULL`. Double quotes and backslashes embedded in element values will be backslash-escaped. For numeric data types it is safe to assume that double quotes will never appear, but for textual data types one should be prepared to cope with either the presence or absence of quotes.

By default, the lower bound index value of an array's dimensions is set to one. To represent arrays with other lower bounds, the array subscript ranges can be specified explicitly before writing the array contents. This decoration consists of square brackets (`[]`) around each array dimension's lower and upper bounds, with a colon `:` delimiter character in between. The array dimension decoration is followed by an equal sign `=`. For example:

```sql
SELECT f1[1][-2][3] AS e1, f1[1][-1][5] AS e2
FROM (SELECT '{1:1}[-2:-1][3:5]={{1,2,3},{4,5,6}}'::int[] AS f1) AS ss;
```
The array output routine will include explicit dimensions in its result only when there are one or more lower bounds different from one.

The value written for an element is NULL (in any case variant), the element is taken to be NULL. The presence of any quotes or backslashes disables this and allows the literal string value “NULL” to be entered. Also, for backward compatibility with pre-8.2 versions of PostgreSQL, the array_nulls configuration parameter can be turned off to suppress recognition of NULL as a NULL.

As shown previously, when writing an array value you can use double quotes around any individual array element. You must do so if the element value would otherwise confuse the array-value parser. For example, elements containing curly braces, commas (or the data type's delimiter character), double quotes, backslashes, or leading or trailing whitespace must be double-quoted. Empty strings and strings matching the word NULL must be quoted, too. To put a double quote or backslash in a quoted array element value, precede it with a backslash. Alternatively, you can avoid quotes and use backslash-escaping to protect all data characters that would otherwise be taken as array syntax.

You can add whitespace before a left brace or after a right brace. You can also add whitespace before or after any individual item string. In all of these cases the whitespace will be ignored. However, whitespace within double-quoted elements, or surrounded on both sides by non-whitespace characters of an element, is not ignored.

**Tip**
The ARRAY constructor syntax (see Section 4.2.12) is often easier to work with than the array-literal syntax when writing array values in SQL commands. In ARRAY, individual element values are written the same way they would be written when not members of an array.

### 8.16. Composite Types

A composite type represents the structure of a row or record; it is essentially just a list of field names and their data types. Postgres Pro allows composite types to be used in many of the same ways that simple types can be used. For example, a column of a table can be declared to be of a composite type.

#### 8.16.1. Declaration of Composite Types

Here are two simple examples of defining composite types:

```
CREATE TYPE complex AS (  
  r  double precision,  
  i  double precision  
);
```

```
CREATE TYPE inventory_item AS (  
  name         text,  
  supplier_id  integer,  
  price        numeric  
);
```

The syntax is comparable to CREATE TABLE, except that only field names and types can be specified; no constraints (such as NOT NULL) can presently be included. Note that the AS keyword is essential; without it, the system will think a different kind of CREATE TYPE command is meant, and you will get odd syntax errors.
Having defined the types, we can use them to create tables:

```
CREATE TABLE on_hand (  
    item    inventory_item,
    count   integer
);
```

```
INSERT INTO on_hand VALUES (ROW('fuzzy dice', 42, 1.99), 1000);
```

or functions:

```
CREATE FUNCTION price_extension(inventory_item, integer) RETURNS numeric  
AS 'SELECT $1.price * $2' LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT price_extension(item, 10) FROM on_hand;
```

Whenever you create a table, a composite type is also automatically created, with the same name as the table, to represent the table’s row type. For example, had we said:

```
CREATE TABLE inventory_item (  
    name            text,
    supplier_id     integer REFERENCES suppliers,
    price           numeric CHECK (price > 0)
);
```

then the same `inventory_item` composite type shown above would come into being as a byproduct, and could be used just as above. Note however an important restriction of the current implementation: since no constraints are associated with a composite type, the constraints shown in the table definition do not apply to values of the composite type outside the table. (To work around this, create a domain over the composite type, and apply the desired constraints as CHECK constraints of the domain.)

### 8.16.2. Constructing Composite Values

To write a composite value as a literal constant, enclose the field values within parentheses and separate them by commas. You can put double quotes around any field value, and must do so if it contains commas or parentheses. (More details appear below.) Thus, the general format of a composite constant is the following:

```
'(val1, val2, ... )'
```

An example is:

```
('fuzzy dice",42,1.99')
```

which would be a valid value of the `inventory_item` type defined above. To make a field be NULL, write no characters at all in its position in the list. For example, this constant specifies a NULL third field:

```
'("fuzzy dice",42,)
```

If you want an empty string rather than NULL, write double quotes:

```
'("",42,)
```

Here the first field is a non-NULL empty string, the third is NULL.

(These constants are actually only a special case of the generic type constants discussed in Section 4.1.2.7. The constant is initially treated as a string and passed to the composite-type input conversion routine. An explicit type specification might be necessary to tell which type to convert the constant to.)

The `ROW` expression syntax can also be used to construct composite values. In most cases this is considerably simpler to use than the string-literal syntax since you don't have to worry about multiple layers of quoting. We already used this method above:

```
ROW('fuzzy dice', 42, 1.99)
ROW('', 42, NULL)
```
The ROW keyword is actually optional as long as you have more than one field in the expression, so these can be simplified to:

('fuzzy dice', 42, 1.99)
('', 42, NULL)

The ROW expression syntax is discussed in more detail in Section 4.2.13.

8.16.3. Accessing Composite Types

To access a field of a composite column, one writes a dot and the field name, much like selecting a field from a table name. In fact, it's so much like selecting from a table name that you often have to use parentheses to keep from confusing the parser. For example, you might try to select some subfields from our on_hand example table with something like:

SELECT item.name FROM on_hand WHERE item.price > 9.99;

This will not work since the name item is taken to be a table name, not a column name of on_hand, per SQL syntax rules. You must write it like this:

SELECT (item).name FROM on_hand WHERE (item).price > 9.99;

or if you need to use the table name as well (for instance in a multitable query), like this:

SELECT (on_hand.item).name FROM on_hand WHERE (on_hand.item).price > 9.99;

Now the parenthesized object is correctly interpreted as a reference to the item column, and then the subfield can be selected from it.

Similar syntactic issues apply whenever you select a field from a composite value. For instance, to select just one field from the result of a function that returns a composite value, you’d need to write something like:

SELECT (my_func(...)).field FROM ...

Without the extra parentheses, this will generate a syntax error.

The special field name * means “all fields”, as further explained in Section 8.16.5.

8.16.4. Modifying Composite Types

Here are some examples of the proper syntax for inserting and updating composite columns. First, inserting or updating a whole column:

INSERT INTO mytab (complex_col) VALUES((1.1,2.2));

UPDATE mytab SET complex_col = ROW(1.1,2.2) WHERE ...;

The first example omits ROW, the second uses it; we could have done it either way.

We can update an individual subfield of a composite column:

UPDATE mytab SET complex_col.r = (complex_col).r + 1 WHERE ...;

Notice here that we don't need to (and indeed cannot) put parentheses around the column name appearing just after SET, but we do need parentheses when referencing the same column in the expression to the right of the equal sign.

And we can specify subfields as targets for INSERT, too:

INSERT INTO mytab (complex_col.r, complex_col.i) VALUES(1.1, 2.2);

Had we not supplied values for all the subfields of the column, the remaining subfields would have been filled with null values.

8.16.5. Using Composite Types in Queries

There are various special syntax rules and behaviors associated with composite types in queries. These rules provide useful shortcuts, but can be confusing if you don't know the logic behind them.
In Postgres Pro, a reference to a table name (or alias) in a query is effectively a reference to the composite value of the table’s current row. For example, if we had a table `inventory_item` as shown above, we could write:

```sql
SELECT c FROM inventory_item c;
```

This query produces a single composite-valued column, so we might get output like:

```
c
------------------------
("fuzzy dice",42,1.99)
(1 row)
```

Note however that simple names are matched to column names before table names, so this example works only because there is no column named `c` in the query’s tables.

The ordinary qualified-column-name syntax `table_name.column_name` can be understood as applying field selection to the composite value of the table’s current row. (For efficiency reasons, it’s not actually implemented that way.)

When we write

```sql
SELECT c.* FROM inventory_item c;
```

then, according to the SQL standard, we should get the contents of the table expanded into separate columns:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>supplier_id</th>
<th>price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuzzy dice</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>1.99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

as if the query were

```sql
SELECT c.name, c.supplier_id, c.price FROM inventory_item c;
```

Postgres Pro will apply this expansion behavior to any composite-valued expression, although as shown above, you need to write parentheses around the value that `*` is applied to whenever it’s not a simple table name. For example, if `myfunc()` is a function returning a composite type with columns `a`, `b`, and `c`, then these two queries have the same result:

```sql
SELECT (myfunc(x)).* FROM some_table;
SELECT (myfunc(x)).a, (myfunc(x)).b, (myfunc(x)).c FROM some_table;
```

Postgres Pro handles column expansion by actually transforming the first form into the second. So, in this example, `myfunc()` would get invoked three times per row with either syntax. If it’s an expensive function you may wish to avoid that, which you can do with a query like:

```sql
SELECT m.* FROM some_table, LATERAL myfunc(x) AS m;
```

Placing the function in a `LATERAL` FROM item keeps it from being invoked more than once per row. `m.*` is still expanded into `m.a`, `m.b`, `m.c`, but now those variables are just references to the output of the `FROM` item. (The `LATERAL` keyword is optional here, but we show it to clarify that the function is getting `x` from `some_table`.)

The `composite_value.*` syntax results in column expansion of this kind when it appears at the top level of a `SELECT output list`, a `RETURNING list` in `INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE`, a `VALUES clause`, or a `row constructor`. In all other contexts (including when nested inside one of those constructs), attaching `.*` to a composite value does not change the value, since it means “all columns” and so the same composite value is produced again. For example, if `somefunc()` accepts a composite-valued argument, these queries are the same:

```sql
SELECT somefunc(c.*) FROM inventory_item c;
```
SELECT somefunc(c) FROM inventory_item c;

In both cases, the current row of inventory_item is passed to the function as a single composite-valued argument. Even though .* does nothing in such cases, using it is good style, since it makes clear that a composite value is intended. In particular, the parser will consider c in c.* to refer to a table name or alias, not to a column name, so that there is no ambiguity; whereas without .*, it is not clear whether c means a table name or a column name, and in fact the column-name interpretation will be preferred if there is a column named c.

Another example demonstrating these concepts is that all these queries mean the same thing:

```
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY c;
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY c.);
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY ROW(c.*);
```

All of these ORDER BY clauses specify the row's composite value, resulting in sorting the rows according to the rules described in Section 9.24.6. However, if inventory_item contained a column named c, the first case would be different from the others, as it would mean to sort by that column only. Given the column names previously shown, these queries are also equivalent to those above:

```
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY ROW(c.name, c.supplier_id, c.price);
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY (c.name, c.supplier_id, c.price);
```

(The last case uses a row constructor with the key word ROW omitted.)

Another special syntactical behavior associated with composite values is that we can use functional notation for extracting a field of a composite value. The simple way to explain this is that the notations field(table) and table.field are interchangeable. For example, these queries are equivalent:

```
SELECT c.name FROM inventory_item c WHERE c.price > 1000;
SELECT name(c) FROM inventory_item c WHERE price(c) > 1000;
```

Moreover, if we have a function that accepts a single argument of a composite type, we can call it with either notation. These queries are all equivalent:

```
SELECT somefunc(c) FROM inventory_item c;
SELECT somefunc(c.*) FROM inventory_item c;
SELECT c.somefunc FROM inventory_item c;
```

This equivalence between functional notation and field notation makes it possible to use functions on composite types to implement “computed fields”. An application using the last query above wouldn’t need to be directly aware that somefunc isn't a real column of the table.

**Tip**

Because of this behavior, it's unwise to give a function that takes a single composite-type argument the same name as any of the fields of that composite type. If there is ambiguity, the field-name interpretation will be chosen if field-name syntax is used, while the function will be chosen if function-call syntax is used. However, PostgreSQL versions before 11 always chose the field-name interpretation, unless the syntax of the call required it to be a function call. One way to force the function interpretation in older versions is to schema-qualify the function name, that is, write `schema.func(compositevalue)`.

### 8.16.6. Composite Type Input and Output Syntax

The external text representation of a composite value consists of items that are interpreted according to the I/O conversion rules for the individual field types, plus decoration that indicates the composite structure. The decoration consists of parentheses ( and ) around the whole value, plus commas (,) between adjacent items. Whitespace outside the parentheses is ignored, but within the parentheses it is considered part of the field value, and might or might not be significant depending on the input conversion rules for the field data type. For example, in:
the whitespace will be ignored if the field type is integer, but not if it is text.

As shown previously, when writing a composite value you can write double quotes around any individual field value. You must do so if the field value would otherwise confuse the composite-value parser. In particular, fields containing parentheses, commas, double quotes, or backslashes must be double-quoted. To put a double quote or backslash in a quoted composite field value, precede it with a backslash. (Also, a pair of double quotes within a double-quoted field value is taken to represent a double quote character, analogously to the rules for single quotes in SQL literal strings.) Alternatively, you can avoid quoting and use backslash-escaping to protect all data characters that would otherwise be taken as composite syntax.

A completely empty field value (no characters at all between the commas or parentheses) represents a NULL. To write a value that is an empty string rather than NULL, write "".

The composite output routine will put double quotes around field values if they are empty strings or contain parentheses, commas, double quotes, backslashes, or white space. (Doing so for white space is not essential, but aids legibility.) Double quotes and backslashes embedded in field values will be doubled.

### Note

Remember that what you write in an SQL command will first be interpreted as a string literal, and then as a composite. This doubles the number of backslashes you need (assuming escape string syntax is used). For example, to insert a text field containing a double quote and a backslash in a composite value, you'd need to write:

```sql
INSERT ... VALUES ('""\""');
```

The string-literal processor removes one level of backslashes, so that what arrives at the composite-value parser looks like "\"\". In turn, the string fed to the text data type's input routine becomes \". (If we were working with a data type whose input routine also treated backslashes specially, bytea for example, we might need as many as eight backslashes in the command to get one backslash into the stored composite field.) Dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) can be used to avoid the need to double backslashes.

### Tip

The `ROW` constructor syntax is usually easier to work with than the composite-literal syntax when writing composite values in SQL commands. In `ROW`, individual field values are written the same way they would be written when not members of a composite.

### 8.17. Range Types

Range types are data types representing a range of values of some element type (called the range's *subtype*). For instance, ranges of `timestamp` might be used to represent the ranges of time that a meeting room is reserved. In this case the data type is `tsrange` (short for “timestamp range”), and `timestamp` is the subtype. The subtype must have a total order so that it is well-defined whether element values are within, before, or after a range of values.

Range types are useful because they represent many element values in a single range value, and because concepts such as overlapping ranges can be expressed clearly. The use of time and date ranges for scheduling purposes is the clearest example; but price ranges, measurement ranges from an instrument, and so forth can also be useful.

Every range type has a corresponding multirange type. A multirange is an ordered list of non-contiguous, non-empty, non-null ranges. Most range operators also work on multiranges, and they have a few functions of their own.
8.17.1. Built-in Range and Multirange Types

Postgres Pro comes with the following built-in range types:

- int4range — Range of integer, int4multirange — corresponding Multirange
- int8range — Range of bigint, int8multirange — corresponding Multirange
- numrange — Range of numeric, nummultirange — corresponding Multirange
- tsrange — Range of timestamp without time zone, tsmultirange — corresponding Multirange
- tstzrange — Range of timestamp with time zone, tstzmultirange — corresponding Multirange
- daterange — Range of date, datemultirange — corresponding Multirange

In addition, you can define your own range types; see CREATE TYPE for more information.

8.17.2. Examples

```
CREATE TABLE reservation (room int, during tsrange);
INSERT INTO reservation VALUES
  (1108, '[2010-01-01 14:30, 2010-01-01 15:30]');

-- Containment
SELECT int4range(10, 20) @> 3;

-- Overlaps
SELECT numrange(11.1, 22.2) && numrange(20.0, 30.0);

-- Extract the upper bound
SELECT upper(int8range(15, 25));

-- Compute the intersection
SELECT int4range(10, 20) * int4range(15, 25);

-- Is the range empty?
SELECT isempty(numrange(1, 5));
```

See Table 9.53 and Table 9.55 for complete lists of operators and functions on range types.

8.17.3. Inclusive and Exclusive Bounds

Every non-empty range has two bounds, the lower bound and the upper bound. All points between these values are included in the range. An inclusive bound means that the boundary point itself is included in the range as well, while an exclusive bound means that the boundary point is not included in the range.

In the text form of a range, an inclusive lower bound is represented by "[" while an exclusive lower bound is represented by "(". Likewise, an inclusive upper bound is represented by "]", while an exclusive upper bound is represented by ")". (See Section 8.17.5 for more details.)

The functions lower_inc and upper_inc test the inclusivity of the lower and upper bounds of a range value, respectively.

8.17.4. Infinite (Unbounded) Ranges

The lower bound of a range can be omitted, meaning that all values less than the upper bound are included in the range, e.g., (,.3]. Likewise, if the upper bound of the range is omitted, then all values greater than the lower bound are included in the range. If both lower and upper bounds are omitted, all values of the element type are considered to be in the range. Specifying a missing bound as inclusive is automatically converted to exclusive, e.g., [,] is converted to (.). You can think of these missing values as +/-infinity, but they are special range type values and are considered to be beyond any range element type's +/-infinity values.
Element types that have the notion of “infinity” can use them as explicit bound values. For example, with timestamp ranges, \([\text{today}, \infty)\) excludes the special timestamp value \(\infty\), while \([\text{today}, \infty]\) include it, as does \([\text{today},)\) and \([\text{today},]\).

The functions \(\text{lower\_inf}\) and \(\text{upper\_inf}\) test for infinite lower and upper bounds of a range, respectively.

### 8.17.5. Range Input/Output

The input for a range value must follow one of the following patterns:

- \((\text{lower-bound}, \text{upper-bound})\)
- \((\text{lower-bound}, \text{upper-bound}]\)
- \([\text{lower-bound}, \text{upper-bound})\)
- \([\text{lower-bound}, \text{upper-bound}]\)
- empty

The parentheses or brackets indicate whether the lower and upper bounds are exclusive or inclusive, as described previously. Notice that the final pattern is \(\text{empty}\), which represents an empty range (a range that contains no points).

The \(\text{lower-bound}\) may be either a string that is valid input for the subtype, or empty to indicate no lower bound. Likewise, \(\text{upper-bound}\) may be either a string that is valid input for the subtype, or empty to indicate no upper bound.

Each bound value can be quoted using " (double quote) characters. This is necessary if the bound value contains parentheses, brackets, commas, double quotes, or backslashes, since these characters would otherwise be taken as part of the range syntax. To put a double quote or backslash in a quoted bound value, precede it with a backslash. (Also, a pair of double quotes within a double-quoted bound value is taken to represent a double quote character, analogously to the rules for single quotes in SQL literal strings.) Alternatively, you can avoid quoting and use backslash-escaping to protect all data characters that would otherwise be taken as range syntax. Also, to write a bound value that is an empty string, write "\"", since writing nothing means an infinite bound.

Whitespace is allowed before and after the range value, but any whitespace between the parentheses or brackets is taken as part of the lower or upper bound value. (Depending on the element type, it might or might not be significant.)

#### Note

These rules are very similar to those for writing field values in composite-type literals. See Section 8.16.6 for additional commentary.

**Examples:**

-- includes 3, does not include 7, and does include all points in between
SELECT '\(3,7\)\)::\text{int4range};

-- does not include either 3 or 7, but includes all points in between
SELECT '\(3,7\)\)::\text{int4range};

-- includes only the single point 4
SELECT '\(4,4\)\)::\text{int4range};

-- includes no points (and will be normalized to 'empty')
SELECT '\(4,4\)\)::\text{int4range};

The input for a multirange is curly brackets (\{\ and \}) containing zero or more valid ranges, separated by commas. Whitespace is permitted around the brackets and commas. This is intended to be reminiscent of array syntax, although multiranges are much simpler: they have just one dimension and there is no need to quote their contents. (The bounds of their ranges may be quoted as above however.)
Examples:

SELECT '{}'::int4multirange;
SELECT '{[3,7)}'::int4multirange;
SELECT '{[3,7), [8,9)}'::int4multirange;

8.17.6. Constructing Ranges and Multiranges

Each range type has a constructor function with the same name as the range type. Using the constructor function is frequently more convenient than writing a range literal constant, since it avoids the need for extra quoting of the bound values. The constructor function accepts two or three arguments. The two-argument form constructs a range in standard form (lower bound inclusive, upper bound exclusive), while the three-argument form constructs a range with bounds of the form specified by the third argument. The third argument must be one of the strings "()", "()", "[]", or "[]". For example:

-- The full form is: lower bound, upper bound, and text argument indicating
-- inclusivity/exclusivity of bounds.
SELECT numrange(1.0, 14.0, '(');

-- If the third argument is omitted, '()' is assumed.
SELECT numrange(1.0, 14.0);

-- Although '()' is specified here, on display the value will be converted to
-- canonical form, since int8range is a discrete range type (see below).
SELECT int8range(1, 14, '(');

-- Using NULL for either bound causes the range to be unbounded on that side.
SELECT numrange(NULL, 2.2);

Each range type also has a multirange constructor with the same name as the multirange type. The constructor function takes zero or more arguments which are all ranges of the appropriate type. For example:

SELECT nummultirange();
SELECT nummultirange(numrange(1.0, 14.0));
SELECT nummultirange(numrange(1.0, 14.0), numrange(20.0, 25.0));

8.17.7. Discrete Range Types

A discrete range is one whose element type has a well-defined “step”, such as integer or date. In these types two elements can be said to be adjacent, when there are no valid values between them. This contrasts with continuous ranges, where it’s always (or almost always) possible to identify other element values between two given values. For example, a range over the numeric type is continuous, as is a range over timestamp. (Even though timestamp has limited precision, and so could theoretically be treated as discrete, it’s better to consider it continuous since the step size is normally not of interest.)

Another way to think about a discrete range type is that there is a clear idea of a “next” or “previous” value for each element value. Knowing that, it is possible to convert between inclusive and exclusive representations of a range's bounds, by choosing the next or previous element value instead of the one originally given. For example, in an integer range type \([4, 8]\) and \((3, 9)\) denote the same set of values; but this would not be so for a range over numeric.

A discrete range type should have a canonicalization function that is aware of the desired step size for the element type. The canonicalization function is charged with converting equivalent values of the range type to have identical representations, in particular consistently inclusive or exclusive bounds. If a canonicalization function is not specified, then ranges with different formatting will always be treated as unequal, even though they might represent the same set of values in reality.

The built-in range types int4range, int8range, and daterange all use a canonical form that includes the lower bound and excludes the upper bound; that is, {}. User-defined range types can use other conventions, however.
8.17.8. Defining New Range Types

Users can define their own range types. The most common reason to do this is to use ranges over subtypes not provided among the built-in range types. For example, to define a new range type of subtype float8:

```
CREATE TYPE floatrange AS RANGE (
  subtype = float8,
  subtype_diff = float8mi
);
```

```
SELECT '[1.234, 5.678]'::floatrange;
```

Because float8 has no meaningful “step”, we do not define a canonicalization function in this example.

When you define your own range you automatically get a corresponding multirange type.

Defining your own range type also allows you to specify a different subtype B-tree operator class or collation to use, so as to change the sort ordering that determines which values fall into a given range.

If the subtype is considered to have discrete rather than continuous values, the `CREATE TYPE` command should specify a canonical function. The canonicalization function takes an input range value and must return an equivalent range value that may have different bounds and formatting. The canonical output for two ranges that represent the same set of values, for example the integer ranges [1, 7) and [1, 8), must be identical. It doesn't matter which representation you choose to be the canonical one, so long as two equivalent values with different formattings are always mapped to the same value with the same formatting. In addition to adjusting the inclusive/exclusive bounds format, a canonicalization function might round off boundary values, in case the desired step size is larger than what the subtype is capable of storing. For instance, a range type over `timestamp` could be defined to have a step size of an hour, in which case the canonicalization function would need to round off bounds that weren’t a multiple of an hour, or perhaps throw an error instead.

In addition, any range type that is meant to be used with GiST or SP-GiST indexes should define a subtype difference, or `subtype_diff`, function. (The index will still work without `subtype_diff`, but it is likely to be considerably less efficient than if a difference function is provided.) The subtype difference function takes two input values of the subtype, and returns their difference (i.e., \( x - y \)) represented as a float8 value. In our example above, the function `float8mi` that underlies the regular float8 minus operator can be used; but for any other subtype, some type conversion would be necessary. Some creative thought about how to represent differences as numbers might be needed, too. To the greatest extent possible, the `subtype_diff` function should agree with the sort ordering implied by the selected operator class and collation; that is, its result should be positive whenever its first argument is greater than its second according to the sort ordering.

A less-oversimplified example of a `subtype_diff` function is:

```
CREATE FUNCTION time_subtype_diff(x time, y time) RETURNS float8 AS
' SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM (x - y))' LANGUAGE sql STRICT IMMUTABLE;
```

```
CREATE TYPE timerange AS RANGE (
  subtype = time,
  subtype_diff = time_subtype_diff
);
```

```
SELECT '[11:10, 23:00]':timerange;
```

See `CREATE TYPE` for more information about creating range types.

8.17.9. Indexing

GiST and SP-GiST indexes can be created for table columns of range types. GiST indexes can be also created for table columns of multirange types. For instance, to create a GiST index:
CREATE INDEX reservation_idx ON reservation USING GIST (during);

A GiST or SP-GiST index on ranges can accelerate queries involving these range operators: =, &&, <@, @>, <<, >>, |-, <, and >. A GiST index on multiranges can accelerate queries involving the same set of multirange operators. A GiST index on ranges and GiST index on multiranges can also accelerate queries involving these cross-type range to multirange and multirange to range operators correspondingly: &&, <@, @>, <<, >>, |-, <, and >. See Table 9.53 for more information.

In addition, B-tree and hash indexes can be created for table columns of range types. For these index types, basically the only useful range operation is equality. There is a B-tree sort ordering defined for range values, with corresponding < and > operators, but the ordering is rather arbitrary and not usually useful in the real world. Range types' B-tree and hash support is primarily meant to allow sorting and hashing internally in queries, rather than creation of actual indexes.

8.17.10. Constraints on Ranges

While UNIQUE is a natural constraint for scalar values, it is usually unsuitable for range types. Instead, an exclusion constraint is often more appropriate (see CREATE TABLE ... CONSTRAINT ... EXCLUDE). Exclusion constraints allow the specification of constraints such as "non-overlapping" on a range type. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE reservation (  
during tsrange,
   EXCLUDE USING GIST (during WITH &&)
);
```

That constraint will prevent any overlapping values from existing in the table at the same time:

```
INSERT INTO reservation VALUES  
('[2010-01-01 11:30, 2010-01-01 15:00)');
```

```
INSERT INTO reservation VALUES  
('[2010-01-01 14:45, 2010-01-01 15:45)');
ERROR: conflicting key value violates exclusion constraint "reservation_during_excl"
DETAIL: Key (during)=('[2010-01-01 14:45:00","2010-01-01 15:45:00"]) conflicts
with existing key (during)=('[2010-01-01 11:30:00","2010-01-01 15:00:00"]).
```

You can use the `btree_gist` extension to define exclusion constraints on plain scalar data types, which can then be combined with range exclusions for maximum flexibility. For example, after `btree_gist` is installed, the following constraint will reject overlapping ranges only if the meeting room numbers are equal:

```
CREATE EXTENSION btree_gist;
CREATE TABLE room_reservation (  
   room text,
   during tsrange,
   EXCLUDE USING GIST (room WITH =, during WITH &&)
);
```

```
INSERT INTO room_reservation VALUES  
('123A', '[2010-01-01 14:00, 2010-01-01 15:00)');
```

```
INSERT INTO room_reservation VALUES  
('123A', '[2010-01-01 14:30, 2010-01-01 15:30)');
ERROR: conflicting key value violates exclusion constraint "room_reservation_room_during_excl"
DETAIL: Key (room, during)=('123A, ["2010-01-01 14:30:00","2010-01-01 15:30:00"]) conflicts
with existing key (room, during)=('123A, ["2010-01-01 14:00:00","2010-01-01 15:00:00"]).
```
8.18. Domain Types

A domain is a user-defined data type that is based on another underlying type. Optionally, it can have constraints that restrict its valid values to a subset of what the underlying type would allow. Otherwise it behaves like the underlying type — for example, any operator or function that can be applied to the underlying type will work on the domain type. The underlying type can be any built-in or user-defined base type, enum type, array type, composite type, range type, or another domain.

For example, we could create a domain over integers that accepts only positive integers:

```
CREATE DOMAIN posint AS integer CHECK (VALUE > 0);
CREATE TABLE mytable (id posint);
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(1);   -- works
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(-1);  -- fails
```

When an operator or function of the underlying type is applied to a domain value, the domain is automatically down-cast to the underlying type. Thus, for example, the result of `mytable.id - 1` is considered to be of type `integer` not `posint`. We could write `(mytable.id - 1)::posint` to cast the result back to `posint`, causing the domain's constraints to be rechecked. In this case, that would result in an error if the expression had been applied to an `id` value of 1. Assigning a value of the underlying type to a field or variable of the domain type is allowed without writing an explicit cast, but the domain's constraints will be checked.

For additional information see CREATE DOMAIN.

8.19. Object Identifier Types

Object identifiers (OIDs) are used internally by Postgres Pro as primary keys for various system tables. Type `oid` represents an object identifier. There are also several alias types for `oid`, each named `regsomething`. Table 8.26 shows an overview.

The `oid` type is currently implemented as an unsigned four-byte integer. Therefore, it is not large enough to provide database-wide uniqueness in large databases, or even in large individual tables.

The `oid` type itself has few operations beyond comparison. It can be cast to `integer`, however, and then manipulated using the standard integer operators. (Beware of possible signed-versus-unsigned confusion if you do this.)

The OID alias types have no operations of their own except for specialized input and output routines. These routines are able to accept and display symbolic names for system objects, rather than the raw numeric value that type `oid` would use. The alias types allow simplified lookup of OID values for objects. For example, to examine the `pg_attribute` rows related to a table `mytable`, one could write:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_attribute WHERE attrelid = 'mytable'::regclass;
```

rather than:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_attribute
  WHERE attrelid = (SELECT oid FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'mytable');
```

While that doesn't look all that bad by itself, it's still oversimplified. A far more complicated sub-select would be needed to select the right OID if there are multiple tables named `mytable` in different schemas. The `regclass` input converter handles the table lookup according to the schema path setting, and so it does the “right thing” automatically. Similarly, casting a table's OID to `regclass` is handy for symbolic display of a numeric OID.
### Table 8.26. Object Identifier Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>References</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>numeric object identifier</td>
<td>564182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regclass</td>
<td>pg_class</td>
<td>relation name</td>
<td>pg_type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regcollation</td>
<td>pg_collation</td>
<td>collation name</td>
<td>&quot;POSIX&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regconfig</td>
<td>pg_ts_config</td>
<td>text search configuration</td>
<td>english</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regdictionary</td>
<td>pg_ts_dict</td>
<td>text search dictionary</td>
<td>simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regnamespace</td>
<td>pg_namespace</td>
<td>namespace name</td>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regoperator</td>
<td>pg_operator</td>
<td>operator name</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regprocedure</td>
<td>pg_proc</td>
<td>function name</td>
<td>sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regrole</td>
<td>pg_authid</td>
<td>role name</td>
<td>smithee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regtype</td>
<td>pg_type</td>
<td>data type name</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All of the OID alias types for objects that are grouped by namespace accept schema-qualified names, and will display schema-qualified names on output if the object would not be found in the current search path without being qualified. For example, `myschema.mytable` is acceptable input for `regclass` (if there is such a table). That value might be output as `myschema.mytable`, or just `mytable`, depending on the current search path. The `regproc` and `regoperator` alias types will only accept input names that are unique (not overloaded), so they are of limited use; for most uses `regprocedure` or `regoperator` are more appropriate. For `regoperator`, unary operators are identified by writing `NONE` for the unused operand.

The input functions for these types allow whitespace between tokens, and will fold upper-case letters to lower case, except within double quotes; this is done to make the syntax rules similar to the way object names are written in SQL. Conversely, the output functions will use double quotes if needed to make the output be a valid SQL identifier. For example, the OID of a function named `Foo` (with upper case F) taking two integer arguments could be entered as `'"Foo"(int4,int4)'::regprocedure`. The output would look like "Foo"(integer, integer). Both the function name and the argument type names could be schema-qualified, too.

Many built-in PostgreSQL functions accept the OID of a table, or another kind of database object, and for convenience are declared as taking `regclass` (or the appropriate OID alias type). This means you do not have to look up the object’s OID by hand, but can just enter its name as a string literal. For example, the `nextval(regclass)` function takes a sequence relation’s OID, so you could call it like this:

```
nextval('foo')  // operates on sequence foo
nextval('FOO')  // same as above
nextval("Foo") // operates on sequence Foo
nextval('myschema.foo') // operates on myschema.foo
nextval("myschema.foo") // same as above
nextval('foo')   // searches search path for foo
```

### Note

When you write the argument of such a function as an unadorned literal string, it becomes a constant of type `regclass` (or the appropriate type). Since this is really just an OID, it will track the originally identified object despite later renaming, schema reassignment, etc. This “early binding” behavior is usually desirable for object references in column defaults and views. But sometimes...
you might want “late binding” where the object reference is resolved at run time. To get late-binding behavior, force the constant to be stored as a text constant instead of regclass:

```sql
nextval('foo':text)  -- foo is looked up at runtime
```

The to_regclass() function and its siblings can also be used to perform run-time lookups. See Table 9.70.

Another practical example of use of regclass is to look up the OID of a table listed in the information_schema views, which don’t supply such OIDs directly. One might for example wish to call the pg_relation_size() function, which requires the table OID. Taking the above rules into account, the correct way to do that is

```sql
SELECT table_schema, table_name,
       pg_relation_size((quote_ident(table_schema) || '.' || quote_ident(table_name))::regclass)
FROM information_schema.tables
WHERE ...
```

The quote_ident() function will take care of double-quoting the identifiers where needed. The seemingly easier

```sql
SELECT pg_relation_size(table_name)
FROM information_schema.tables
WHERE ...
```

is not recommended, because it will fail for tables that are outside your search path or have names that require quoting.

An additional property of most of the OID alias types is the creation of dependencies. If a constant of one of these types appears in a stored expression (such as a column default expression or view), it creates a dependency on the referenced object. For example, if a column has a default expression `nextval('my_seq':regclass)`, Postgres Pro understands that the default expression depends on the sequence `my_seq`, so the system will not let the sequence be dropped without first removing the default expression. The alternative of `nextval('my_seq':text)` does not create a dependency. (`regrole` is an exception to this property. Constants of this type are not allowed in stored expressions.)

Another identifier type used by the system is xid, or transaction (abbreviated xact) identifier. This is the data type of the system columns xmin and xmax. Transaction identifiers are 32-bit quantities. In some contexts, a 64-bit variant xid8 is used. Unlike xid values, xid8 values increase strictly monotonically and cannot be reused in the lifetime of a database cluster.

A third identifier type used by the system is cid, or command identifier. This is the data type of the system columns cmin and cmax. Command identifiers are also 32-bit quantities.

A final identifier type used by the system is tid, or tuple identifier (row identifier). This is the data type of the system column ctid. A tuple ID is a pair (block number, tuple index within block) that identifies the physical location of the row within its table.

(The system columns are further explained in Section 5.5.)

### 8.20. pg_lsn Type

The pg_lsn data type can be used to store LSN (Log Sequence Number) data which is a pointer to a location in the WAL. This type is a representation of XLogRecPtr and an internal system type of Postgres Pro.

Internally, an LSN is a 64-bit integer, representing a byte position in the write-ahead log stream. It is printed as two hexadecimal numbers of up to 8 digits each, separated by a slash; for example, 16/B374D848. The pg_lsn type supports the standard comparison operators, like = and >. Two LSNs
can be subtracted using the \(-\) operator; the result is the number of bytes separating those write-ahead log locations. Also the number of bytes can be added into and subtracted from LSN using the \(+\)(pg_lsn,numeric) and \(-\)(pg_lsn,numeric) operators, respectively. Note that the calculated LSN should be in the range of pg_lsn type, i.e., between 0/0 and FFFFFFFF/FFFFFFFF.

8.21. Pseudo-Types

The Postgres Pro type system contains a number of special-purpose entries that are collectively called pseudo-types. A pseudo-type cannot be used as a column data type, but it can be used to declare a function's argument or result type. Each of the available pseudo-types is useful in situations where a function's behavior does not correspond to simply taking or returning a value of a specific SQL data type. Table 8.27 lists the existing pseudo-types.

Table 8.27. Pseudo-Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>any</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any input data type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyelement</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any data type (see Section 36.2.5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyarray</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any array data type (see Section 36.2.5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anynonarray</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any non-array data type (see Section 36.2.5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyenum</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any enum data type (see Section 36.2.5 and Section 8.7).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any range data type (see Section 36.2.5 and Section 8.17).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anymultirange</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any multirange data type (see Section 36.2.5 and Section 8.17).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatible</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 36.2.5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblearray</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any array data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 36.2.5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblenonarray</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any non-array data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 36.2.5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblerange</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any range data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 36.2.5 and Section 8.17).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblemultirange</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any multirange data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 36.2.5 and Section 8.17).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cstring</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts or returns a null-terminated C string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts or returns a server-internal data type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>language_handler</td>
<td>A procedural language call handler is declared to return language_handler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fdw_handler</td>
<td>A foreign-data wrapper handler is declared to return fdw_handler.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions coded in C (whether built-in or dynamically loaded) can be declared to accept or return any of these pseudo-types. It is up to the function author to ensure that the function will behave safely when a pseudo-type is used as an argument type.

Functions coded in procedural languages can use pseudo-types only as allowed by their implementation languages. At present most procedural languages forbid use of a pseudo-type as an argument type, and allow only `void` and `record` as a result type (plus `trigger` or `event_trigger` when the function is used as a trigger or event trigger). Some also support polymorphic functions using the polymorphic pseudo-types, which are shown above and discussed in detail in Section 36.2.5.

The `internal` pseudo-type is used to declare functions that are meant only to be called internally by the database system, and not by direct invocation in an SQL query. If a function has at least one `internal`-type argument then it cannot be called from SQL. To preserve the type safety of this restriction it is important to follow this coding rule: do not create any function that is declared to return `internal` unless it has at least one `internal` argument.
Chapter 9. Functions and Operators

Postgres Pro provides a large number of functions and operators for the built-in data types. This chapter describes most of them, although additional special-purpose functions appear in relevant sections of the manual. Users can also define their own functions and operators, as described in Part V. The psql commands \df and \do can be used to list all available functions and operators, respectively.

The notation used throughout this chapter to describe the argument and result data types of a function or operator is like this:

\texttt{repeat ( text, integer ) → text}

which says that the function \texttt{repeat} takes one text and one integer argument and returns a result of type text. The right arrow is also used to indicate the result of an example, thus:

\texttt{repeat('Pg', 4) → PgPgPgPg}

If you are concerned about portability then note that most of the functions and operators described in this chapter, with the exception of the most trivial arithmetic and comparison operators and some explicitly marked functions, are not specified by the SQL standard. Some of this extended functionality is present in other SQL database management systems, and in many cases this functionality is compatible and consistent between the various implementations.

9.1. Logical Operators

The usual logical operators are available:

\begin{align*}
\text{boolean AND boolean} & \rightarrow \text{boolean} \\
\text{boolean OR boolean} & \rightarrow \text{boolean} \\
\text{NOT boolean} & \rightarrow \text{boolean}
\end{align*}

SQL uses a three-valued logic system with true, false, and null, which represents “unknown”. Observe the following truth tables:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>b</th>
<th>a AND b</th>
<th>a OR b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>NOT a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The operators AND and OR are commutative, that is, you can switch the left and right operands without affecting the result. (However, it is not guaranteed that the left operand is evaluated before the right operand. See Section 4.2.14 for more information about the order of evaluation of subexpressions.)

9.2. Comparison Functions and Operators

The usual comparison operators are available, as shown in Table 9.1.
### Functions and Operators

**Table 9.1. Comparison Operators**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype &lt; datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Less than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype &gt; datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Greater than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype &lt;= datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Less than or equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype &gt;= datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Greater than or equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype = datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype &lt;&gt; datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Not equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype != datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Not equal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

`<>` is the standard SQL notation for “not equal”. `!=` is an alias, which is converted to `<>` at a very early stage of parsing. Hence, it is not possible to implement `!=` and `<>` operators that do different things.

These comparison operators are available for all built-in data types that have a natural ordering, including numeric, string, and date/time types. In addition, arrays, composite types, and ranges can be compared if their component data types are comparable.

It is usually possible to compare values of related data types as well; for example `integer > bigint` will work. Some cases of this sort are implemented directly by “cross-type” comparison operators, but if no such operator is available, the parser will coerce the less-general type to the more-general type and apply the latter’s comparison operator.

As shown above, all comparison operators are binary operators that return values of type `boolean`. Thus, expressions like `1 < 2 < 3` are not valid (because there is no `<` operator to compare a Boolean value with 3). Use the `BETWEEN` predicates shown below to perform range tests.

There are also some comparison predicates, as shown in Table 9.2. These behave much like operators, but have special syntax mandated by the SQL standard.

**Table 9.2. Comparison Predicates**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predicate</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype BETWEEN datatype AND datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Between (inclusive of the range endpoints).</td>
<td>2 BETWEEN 1 AND 3 → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 BETWEEN 3 AND 1 → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype NOT BETWEEN datatype AND datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Not between (the negation of BETWEEN).</td>
<td>2 NOT BETWEEN 1 AND 3 → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype BETWEEN SYMMETRIC datatype AND datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Between, after sorting the two endpoint values.</td>
<td>2 BETWEEN SYMMETRIC 3 AND 1 → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datatype NOT BETWEEN SYMMETRIC datatype AND datatype</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Not between, after sorting the two endpoint values.</td>
<td>2 NOT BETWEEN SYMMETRIC 3 AND 1 → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicate</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>datatype IS DISTINCT FROM datatype</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Not equal, treating null as a comparable value.</td>
<td>1 IS DISTINCT FROM NULL → t <em>(rather than NULL)</em>&lt;br&gt;NULL IS DISTINCT FROM NULL → f <em>(rather than NULL)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>datatype IS NOT DISTINCT FROM datatype</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Equal, treating null as a comparable value.</td>
<td>1 IS NOT DISTINCT FROM NULL → f <em>(rather than NULL)</em>&lt;br&gt;NULL IS NOT DISTINCT FROM NULL → t <em>(rather than NULL)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>datatype IS NULL</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether value is null.</td>
<td>1.5 IS NULL → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>datatype IS NOT NULL</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether value is not null.</td>
<td>'null' IS NOT NULL → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>datatype ISNULL</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether value is null (nonstandard syntax).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>datatype NOTNULL</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether value is not null (nonstandard syntax).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boolean IS TRUE</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether boolean expression yields true.</td>
<td>true IS TRUE → t&lt;br&gt;NULL::boolean IS TRUE → f <em>(rather than NULL)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boolean IS NOT TRUE</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether boolean expression yields false or unknown.</td>
<td>true IS NOT TRUE → f&lt;br&gt;NULL::boolean IS NOT TRUE → t <em>(rather than NULL)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boolean IS FALSE</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether boolean expression yields false.</td>
<td>true IS FALSE → f&lt;br&gt;NULL::boolean IS FALSE → f <em>(rather than NULL)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boolean IS NOT FALSE</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether boolean expression yields true or unknown.</td>
<td>true IS NOT FALSE → t&lt;br&gt;NULL::boolean IS NOT FALSE → t <em>(rather than NULL)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boolean IS UNKNOWN</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether boolean expression yields unknown.</td>
<td>true IS UNKNOWN → f&lt;br&gt;NULL::boolean IS UNKNOWN → t <em>(rather than NULL)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boolean IS NOT UNKNOWN</strong> → boolean</td>
<td>Test whether boolean expression yields true or false.</td>
<td>true IS NOT UNKNOWN → t&lt;br&gt;NULL::boolean IS NOT UNKNOWN → f <em>(rather than NULL)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The BETWEEN predicate simplifies range tests:

\[ a \text{ BETWEEN } x \text{ AND } y \]

is equivalent to

\[ a \geq x \text{ AND } a \leq y \]

Notice that BETWEEN treats the endpoint values as included in the range. BETWEEN SYMMETRIC is like BETWEEN except there is no requirement that the argument to the left of AND be less than or equal to the argument on the right. If it is not, those two arguments are automatically swapped, so that a nonempty range is always implied.

The various variants of BETWEEN are implemented in terms of the ordinary comparison operators, and therefore will work for any data type(s) that can be compared.

**Note**

The use of AND in the BETWEEN syntax creates an ambiguity with the use of AND as a logical operator. To resolve this, only a limited set of expression types are allowed as the second argument of a BETWEEN clause. If you need to write a more complex sub-expression in BETWEEN, write parentheses around the sub-expression.

Ordinary comparison operators yield null (signifying “unknown”), not true or false, when either input is null. For example, \( 7 = \text{NULL} \) yields null, as does \( 7 \neq \text{NULL} \). When this behavior is not suitable, use the IS [ NOT ] DISTINCT FROM predicates:

\[ a \text{ IS DISTINCT FROM } b \]
\[ a \text{ IS NOT DISTINCT FROM } b \]

For non-null inputs, IS DISTINCT FROM is the same as the <> operator. However, if both inputs are null it returns false, and if only one input is null it returns true. Similarly, IS NOT DISTINCT FROM is identical to = for non-null inputs, but it returns true when both inputs are null, and false when only one input is null. Thus, these predicates effectively act as though null were a normal data value, rather than “unknown”.

To check whether a value is or is not null, use the predicates:

expression IS NULL
expression IS NOT NULL

or the equivalent, but nonstandard, predicates:

expression ISNULL
expression NOTNULL

Do not write expression = NULL because NULL is not “equal to” NULL. (The null value represents an unknown value, and it is not known whether two unknown values are equal.)

**Tip**

Some applications might expect that expression = NULL returns true if expression evaluates to the null value. It is highly recommended that these applications be modified to comply with the SQL standard. However, if that cannot be done the transform_null_equals configuration variable is available. If it is enabled, Postgres Pro will convert \( x = \text{NULL} \) clauses to \( x \text{ IS NULL} \).

If the expression is row-valued, then IS NULL is true when the row expression itself is null or when all the row's fields are null, while IS NOT NULL is true when the row expression itself is non-null and all the row's fields are non-null. Because of this behavior, IS NULL and IS NOT NULL do not always return inverse results for row-valued expressions; in particular, a row-valued expression that contains both null and non-null fields will return false for both tests. In some cases, it may be preferable to write row IS DISTINCT FROM NULL or row IS NOT DISTINCT FROM NULL, which will simply check whether the overall row value is null without any additional tests on the row fields.
Boolean values can also be tested using the predicates

\[ boolean\_expression \ \text{IS TRUE} \]
\[ boolean\_expression \ \text{IS NOT TRUE} \]
\[ boolean\_expression \ \text{IS FALSE} \]
\[ boolean\_expression \ \text{IS NOT FALSE} \]
\[ boolean\_expression \ \text{IS UNKNOWN} \]
\[ boolean\_expression \ \text{IS NOT UNKNOWN} \]

These will always return true or false, never a null value, even when the operand is null. A null input is treated as the logical value “unknown”. Notice that \text{IS UNKNOWN} and \text{IS NOT UNKNOWN} are effectively the same as \text{IS NULL} and \text{IS NOT NULL}, respectively, except that the input expression must be of Boolean type.

Some comparison-related functions are also available, as shown in Table 9.3.

### Table 9.3. Comparison-related Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>num_nonnulls (VARIADIC &quot;any&quot;) → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of non-null arguments.</td>
<td>num_nonnulls(1, NULL, 2) \rightarrow 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num_nulls (VARIADIC &quot;any&quot;) → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of null arguments.</td>
<td>num_nulls(1, NULL, 2) \rightarrow 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.3. Mathematical Functions and Operators

Mathematical operators are provided for many Postgres Pro types. For types without standard mathematical conventions (e.g., date/time types) we describe the actual behavior in subsequent sections.

Table 9.4 shows the mathematical operators that are available for the standard numeric types. Unless otherwise noted, operators shown as accepting \text{numeric\_type} are available for all the types \text{smallint}, \text{integer}, \text{bigint}, \text{numeric}, \text{real}, and \text{double precision}. Operators shown as accepting \text{integral\_type} are available for the types \text{smallint}, \text{integer}, and \text{bigint}. Except where noted, each form of an operator returns the same data type as its argument(s). Calls involving multiple argument data types, such as \text{integer} + \text{numeric}, are resolved by using the type appearing later in these lists.

### Table 9.4. Mathematical Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>numeric_type + numeric_type \rightarrow numeric_type</td>
<td>Addition</td>
<td>2 + 3 \rightarrow 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ numeric_type \rightarrow numeric_type</td>
<td>Unary plus (no operation)</td>
<td>+ 3.5 \rightarrow 3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_type - numeric_type \rightarrow numeric_type</td>
<td>Subtraction</td>
<td>2 - 3 \rightarrow -1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- numeric_type \rightarrow numeric_type</td>
<td>Negation</td>
<td>- (-4) \rightarrow 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>*</code></td>
<td>Multiplication</td>
<td><code>2 * 3 → 6</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/</code></td>
<td>Division (for integral types, division truncates the result towards zero)</td>
<td><code>5.0 / 2 → 2.5000000000000000</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>5 / 2 → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>(-5) / 2 → -2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%</code></td>
<td>Modulo (remainder); available for smallint, integer, bigint, and numeric</td>
<td><code>5 % 4 → 1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>^</code></td>
<td>Exponentiation</td>
<td><code>2 ^ 3 → 8</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>2 ^ 3 ^ 3 → 512</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>2 ^ (3 ^ 3) → 134217728</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`</td>
<td>/`</td>
<td>Square root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`</td>
<td></td>
<td>/`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>@</code></td>
<td>Absolute value</td>
<td><code>@ -5.0 → 5</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&amp;</code></td>
<td>Bitwise AND</td>
<td><code>91 &amp; 15 → 11</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`</td>
<td>`</td>
<td>Bitwise OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>#</code></td>
<td>Bitwise exclusive OR</td>
<td><code>17 # 5 → 20</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>~</code></td>
<td>Bitwise NOT</td>
<td><code>~1 → -2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;&lt;</code></td>
<td>Bitwise shift left</td>
<td><code>1 &lt;&lt; 4 → 16</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integral_type &gt;&gt; integer → integral_type</td>
<td>Bitwise shift right</td>
<td>8 &gt;&gt; 2 → 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.5 shows the available mathematical functions. Many of these functions are provided in multiple forms with different argument types. Except where noted, any given form of a function returns the same data type as its argument(s); cross-type cases are resolved in the same way as explained above for operators. The functions working with double precision data are mostly implemented on top of the host system’s C library; accuracy and behavior in boundary cases can therefore vary depending on the host system.

### Table 9.5. Mathematical Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abs(numeric_type) → numeric</td>
<td>Absolute value</td>
<td>abs(-17.4) → 17.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cbrt(double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Cube root</td>
<td>cbrt(64.0) → 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceil(numeric) → numeric</td>
<td>Nearest integer greater than or equal to argument</td>
<td>ceil(42.2) → 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceiling(numeric) → numeric</td>
<td>Nearest integer greater than or equal to argument (same as ceil)</td>
<td>ceiling(95.3) → 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>degrees(double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Converts radians to degrees</td>
<td>degrees(0.5) → 28.64788975654116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div(y numeric, x numeric) → numeric</td>
<td>Integer quotient of y/x (truncates towards zero)</td>
<td>div(9, 4) → 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp(numeric) → numeric</td>
<td>Exponential (e raised to the given power)</td>
<td>exp(1.0) → 2.7182818284590452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factorial(bigint) → numeric</td>
<td>Factorial</td>
<td>factorial(5) → 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor(numeric) → numeric</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor(double precision) → double precision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>floor()</code></td>
<td>Nearest integer less than or equal to argument</td>
<td><code>floor(42.8) → 42</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>floor(-42.8) → -43</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>gcd()</code></td>
<td>Greatest common divisor (the largest positive number that divides both inputs with no remainder); returns 0 if both inputs are zero; available for integer, bigint, and numeric</td>
<td><code>gcd(1071, 462) → 21</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lcm()</code></td>
<td>Least common multiple (the smallest strictly positive number that is an integral multiple of both inputs); returns 0 if either input is zero; available for integer, bigint, and numeric</td>
<td><code>lcm(1071, 462) → 23562</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ln()</code></td>
<td>Natural logarithm</td>
<td><code>ln(2.0) → 0.6931471805599453</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>log()</code></td>
<td>Base 10 logarithm</td>
<td><code>log(100) → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>log10()</code></td>
<td>Base 10 logarithm (same as log)</td>
<td><code>log10(100) → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mod()</code></td>
<td>Remainder of <code>y/x</code>; available for smallint, integer, bigint, and numeric</td>
<td><code>mod(9, 4) → 1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pi()</code></td>
<td>Approximate value of π</td>
<td><code>pi() → 3.141592653589793</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>power()</code></td>
<td><code>a</code> raised to the power of <code>b</code></td>
<td><code>power(9, 3) → 729</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>radians()</code></td>
<td>Converts degrees to radians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The table above lists some common mathematical functions and operators, along with their descriptions and example usages. The functions are available for different types of numeric values, with `numeric_type` indicating a type that includes integers, big integers, and floating point numbers.
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>radians(45.0)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$\rightarrow 0.7853981633974483$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round(numeric)</td>
<td>Rounds to nearest integer. For numeric, ties are broken by rounding away from zero. For double precision, the tie-breaking behavior is platform dependent, but “round to nearest even” is the most common rule.</td>
<td>$\rightarrow 42$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round(double precision)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$\rightarrow 42.4$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scale(numeric)</td>
<td>Scale of the argument (the number of decimal digits in the fractional part)</td>
<td>$\rightarrow 4$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign(numeric)</td>
<td>Sign of the argument (-1, 0, or +1)</td>
<td>$\rightarrow -1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sqrt(numeric)</td>
<td>Square root</td>
<td>$\rightarrow 1.4142135623730951$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim_scale(numeric)</td>
<td>Reduces the value’s scale (number of fractional decimal digits) by removing trailing zeroes</td>
<td>$\rightarrow 8.41$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trunc(numeric)</td>
<td>Truncates to integer (towards zero)</td>
<td>$\rightarrow 42$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trunc(double precision)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$\rightarrow -42$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width_bucket(operand numeric, low numeric, high numeric, count integer)</td>
<td>Returns the number of the bucket in which operand falls in a histogram having count equal-width buckets spanning the range low to high. Returns 0 or count+1 for an input outside that range.</td>
<td>$\rightarrow 3$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The thresholds array must be sorted, smallest first, or unexpected results will be obtained.
### Functions and Operators

#### Function
**Description**

- `width_bucket(now(), array['yesterday', 'today', 'tomorrow']::timestamptz[]) → 2`

### Table 9.6 shows functions for generating random numbers.

#### Table 9.6. Random Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>random()</code></td>
<td>→ double precision&lt;br&gt;Returns a random value in the range 0.0 &lt;= x &lt; 1.0</td>
<td><code>random() → 0.897124072839091</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>setseed(double precision)</code></td>
<td>→ void&lt;br&gt;Sets the seed for subsequent <code>random()</code> calls; argument must be between -1.0 and 1.0, inclusive</td>
<td><code>setseed(0.12345)</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `random()` function uses a simple linear congruential algorithm. It is fast but not suitable for cryptographic applications; see the `pgcrypto` module for a more secure alternative. If `setseed()` is called, the series of results of subsequent `random()` calls in the current session can be repeated by re-issuing `setseed()` with the same argument.

### Table 9.7 shows the available trigonometric functions. Each of these functions comes in two variants, one that measures angles in radians and one that measures angles in degrees.

#### Table 9.7. Trigonometric Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>acos(double precision)</code></td>
<td>→ double precision&lt;br&gt;Inverse cosine, result in radians</td>
<td><code>acos(1) → 0</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>acosd(double precision)</code></td>
<td>→ double precision&lt;br&gt;Inverse cosine, result in degrees</td>
<td><code>acosd(0.5) → 60</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>asin(double precision)</code></td>
<td>→ double precision&lt;br&gt;Inverse sine, result in radians</td>
<td><code>asin(1) → 1.5707963267948966</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>asind(double precision)</code></td>
<td>→ double precision&lt;br&gt;Inverse sine, result in degrees</td>
<td><code>asind(0.5) → 30</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>atan(double precision)</code></td>
<td>→ double precision&lt;br&gt;Inverse tangent, result in radians</td>
<td><code>atan(1) → 0.7853981633974483</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>atand(double precision)</code></td>
<td>→ double precision&lt;br&gt;Inverse tangent, result in degrees</td>
<td><code>atand(1) → 45</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>atan2( ( y ) double precision, ( x ) double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Inverse tangent of ( y/x ), result in radians</td>
<td>atan2(1, 0) → 1.5707963267948966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atan2d( ( y ) double precision, ( x ) double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Inverse tangent of ( y/x ), result in degrees</td>
<td>atan2d(1, 0) → 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cos( double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Cosine, argument in radians</td>
<td>cos(0) → 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cosd( double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Cosine, argument in degrees</td>
<td>cosd(60) → 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cot( double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Cotangent, argument in radians</td>
<td>cot(0.5) → 1.830487721712452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cotd( double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Cotangent, argument in degrees</td>
<td>cotd(45) → 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinh( double precision) → double precision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sinh</td>
<td>Hyperbolic sine</td>
<td>sinh(1) → 1.1752011936438014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cosh</td>
<td>Hyperbolic cosine</td>
<td>cosh(0) → 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanh</td>
<td>Hyperbolic tangent</td>
<td>tanh(1) → 0.7615941559557649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asinh</td>
<td>Inverse hyperbolic sine</td>
<td>asinh(1) → 0.881373587019543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acosh</td>
<td>Inverse hyperbolic cosine</td>
<td>acosh(1) → 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atanh</td>
<td>Inverse hyperbolic tangent</td>
<td>atanh(0.5) → 0.5493061443340548</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**9.4. String Functions and Operators**

This section describes functions and operators for examining and manipulating string values. Strings in this context include values of the types `character`, `character varying`, and `text`. Except where noted, these functions and operators are declared to accept and return type `text`. They will interchangeably accept `character varying` arguments. Values of type `character` will be converted to `text` before the function or operator is applied, resulting in stripping any trailing spaces in the `character` value.

SQL defines some string functions that use key words, rather than commas, to separate arguments. Details are in **Table 9.9**. Postgres Pro also provides versions of these functions that use the regular function invocation syntax (see **Table 9.10**).

**Note**

The string concatenation operator (`||`) will accept non-string input, so long as at least one input is of string type, as shown in **Table 9.9**. For other cases, inserting an explicit coercion to `text` can be used to have non-string input accepted.

**Table 9.9. SQL String Functions and Operators**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function/Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td></td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td></td>
<td>anynonarray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function/Operator</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Converts the non-string input to text, then concatenates the two strings.</strong></td>
<td>(The non-string input cannot be of an array type, because that would create ambiguity with the array `</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text IS [NOT] [form] NORMALIZED</code></td>
<td><code>→ boolean</code></td>
<td>Checks whether the string is in the specified Unicode normalization form. The optional <code>form</code> key word specifies the form: <code>NFC</code> (the default), <code>NFD</code>, <code>NFKC</code>, or <code>NFKD</code>. This expression can only be used when the server encoding is <code>UTF8</code>. Note that checking for normalization using this expression is often faster than normalizing possibly already normalized strings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_length (text)</code></td>
<td><code>→ integer</code></td>
<td>Returns number of bits in the string (8 times the <code>octet_length</code>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>char_length (text)</code></td>
<td><code>→ integer</code></td>
<td>Returns number of characters in the string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lower (text)</code></td>
<td><code>→ text</code></td>
<td>Converts the string to all lower case, according to the rules of the database's locale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>normalize (text [, form])</code></td>
<td><code>→ text</code></td>
<td>Converts the string to the specified Unicode normalization form. The optional <code>form</code> key word specifies the form: <code>NFC</code> (the default), <code>NFD</code>, <code>NFKC</code>, or <code>NFKD</code>. This function can only be used when the server encoding is <code>UTF8</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>octet_length (text)</code></td>
<td><code>→ integer</code></td>
<td>Returns number of bytes in the string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>octet_length (character)</code></td>
<td><code>→ integer</code></td>
<td>Returns number of bytes in the string. Since this version of the function accepts type <code>character</code> directly, it will not strip trailing spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>overlay (string text PLACING newsubstring text FROM start integer [ FOR count integer ] )</code></td>
<td><code>→ text</code></td>
<td>Replaces the substring of <code>string</code> that starts at the <code>start</code>'th character and extends for <code>count</code> characters with <code>newsubstring</code>. If <code>count</code> is omitted, it defaults to the length of <code>newsubstring</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>position (substring text IN string text)</code></td>
<td><code>→ integer</code></td>
<td>Returns first starting index of the specified <code>substring</code> within <code>string</code>, or zero if it's not present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>substring (string text [ FROM start integer ][ FOR count integer ])</code></td>
<td><code>→ text</code></td>
<td>Extracts the substring of <code>string</code> starting at the <code>start</code>'th character if that is specified, and stopping after <code>count</code> characters if that is specified. Provide at least one of <code>start</code> and <code>count</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function/Operator</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring('Thomas' from 2 for 3)</td>
<td>→ hom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring('Thomas' from 3)</td>
<td>→ omas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring('Thomas' for 2)</td>
<td>→ Th</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring(string text FROM pattern text )</td>
<td>→ text</td>
<td>Extracts the first substring matching POSIX regular expression; see Section 9.7.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring('Thomas' from '...$')</td>
<td>→ mas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring(string text SIMILAR pattern text ESCAPE escape text )</td>
<td>→ text</td>
<td>Extracts the first substring matching SQL regular expression; see Section 9.7.2. The first form has been specified since SQL:2003; the second form was only in SQL:1999 and should be considered obsolete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring('Thomas' similar '%#&quot;o_a#&quot;_' escape '#')</td>
<td>→ oma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim([ LEADING</td>
<td>TRAILING</td>
<td>BOTH ] [ characters text ] FROM string text )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim(both 'xyz' from 'yxTomxx')</td>
<td>→ Tom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim([ LEADING</td>
<td>TRAILING</td>
<td>BOTH ] FROM string text [, characters text ] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim(both from 'yxTomxx', 'xyz')</td>
<td>→ Tom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper(text)</td>
<td>→ text</td>
<td>Converts the string to all upper case, according to the rules of the database's locale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper('tom')</td>
<td>→ TOM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional string manipulation functions are available and are listed in Table 9.10. Some of them are used internally to implement the SQL-standard string functions listed in Table 9.9.

### Table 9.10. Other String Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ascii(text)</td>
<td>→ integer</td>
<td>Returns the numeric code of the first character of the argument. In UTF8 encoding, returns the Unicode code point of the character. In other multibyte encodings, the argument must be an ASCII character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascii('x')</td>
<td>→ 120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>btrim(string text [, characters text ])</td>
<td>→ text</td>
<td>Removes the longest string containing only characters in characters (a space by default) from the start and end of string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>btrim('xyxtrimyyx', 'xyz')</td>
<td>→ trim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chr(integer)</td>
<td>→ text</td>
<td>Returns the character with the given code. In UTF8 encoding the argument is treated as a Unicode code point. In other multibyte encodings the argument must designate an ASCII character: chr(0) is disallowed because text data types cannot store that character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chr(65)</td>
<td>→ A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concat(val1 &quot;any&quot; [, val2 &quot;any&quot; [, ...]])</td>
<td>→ text</td>
<td>Concatenates the text representations of all the arguments. NULL arguments are ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concat('abcde', 2, NULL, 22) → abcde222</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concat_ws (sep text, val1 &quot;any&quot; [ , val2 &quot;any&quot; [ , ... ] ] ) → text</td>
<td>Concatenates all but the first argument, with separators. The first argument is used as the separator string, and should not be NULL. Other NULL arguments are ignored.</td>
<td>concat_ws(, 'abcde', 2, NULL, 22) → abcde,2,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>format ( formatstr text [ , formatarg &quot;any&quot; [ , ... ] ] ) → text</td>
<td>Formats arguments according to a format string; see Section 9.4.1. This function is similar to the C function sprintf.</td>
<td>format('Hello %s, %1$s', 'World') → Hello World, World</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initcap ( text ) → text</td>
<td>Converts the first letter of each word to upper case and the rest to lower case. Words are sequences of alphanumeric characters separated by non-alphanumeric characters.</td>
<td>initcap('hi THOMAS') → Hi Thomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left (string text, n integer) → text</td>
<td>Returns first n characters in the string, or when n is negative, returns all but last</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length (text) → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of characters in the string.</td>
<td>length('jose') → 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpad (string text, length integer [, fill text ] ) → text</td>
<td>Extends the string to length length by prepending the characters fill (a space by default). If the string is already longer than length then it is truncated (on the right).</td>
<td>lpad('hi', 5, 'xy') → xyxhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltrim (string text [, characters text ] ) → text</td>
<td>Removes the longest string containing only characters in characters (a space by default) from the start of string.</td>
<td>ltrim('zzzytest', 'xyz') → test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>md5 (text) → text</td>
<td>Computes the MD5 hash of the argument, with the result written in hexadecimal.</td>
<td>md5('abc') → 900150983cd24fb0d6963f7d28e17f72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parse_ident (qualified_identifier text [, strict_mode boolean DEFAULT true ] ) → text[]</td>
<td>Splits qualified_identifier into an array of identifiers, removing any quoting of individual identifiers. By default, extra characters after the last identifier are considered an error; but if the second parameter is false, then such extra characters are ignored. (This behavior is useful for parsing names for objects like functions.) Note that this function does not truncate over-length identifiers. If you want truncation you can cast the result to name[].</td>
<td>parse_ident('&quot;SomeSchema&quot;.someTable') → {SomeSchema,sometable}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_client_encoding () → name</td>
<td>Returns current client encoding name.</td>
<td>pg_client_encoding() → UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quote_ident (text) → text</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quote_ident('Foo bar')</td>
<td>Returns the given string suitably quoted to be used as an identifier in an SQL statement string. Quotes are added only if necessary (i.e., if the string contains non-identifier characters or would be case-folded). Embedded quotes are properly doubled. See also Example 41.1.</td>
<td>→ &quot;Foo bar&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quote_literal(text)</td>
<td>Returns the given string suitably quoted to be used as a string literal in an SQL statement string. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled. Note that quote_literal returns null on null input; if the argument might be null, quote_nullable is often more suitable. See also Example 41.1.</td>
<td>→ &quot;O&quot;'Reilly&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quote_literal(anyelement)</td>
<td>Converts the given value to text and then quotes it as a literal. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled.</td>
<td>→ '42.5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quote_nullable(text)</td>
<td>Returns the given string suitably quoted to be used as a string literal in an SQL statement string; or, if the argument is null, returns NULL. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled. See also Example 41.1.</td>
<td>→ NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Converts the given value to text and then quotes it as a literal; or, if the argument is null, returns NULL. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled.</td>
<td>→ '42.5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regexp_match(string, pattern [, flags])</td>
<td>Returns captured substrings resulting from the first match of a POSIX regular expression to the string; see Section 9.7.3.</td>
<td>→ {bar, beque}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regexp_matches(string, pattern [, flags])</td>
<td>Returns captured substrings resulting from the first match of a POSIX regular expression to the string, or multiple matches if the g flag is used; see Section 9.7.3.</td>
<td>→</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Replaces substrings resulting from the first match of a POSIX regular expression, or multiple substring matches if the g flag is used; see Section 9.7.3.</td>
<td>→ ThM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regexp_split_to_array(string, pattern [, flags])</td>
<td>Splits string using a POSIX regular expression as the delimiter, producing an array of results; see Section 9.7.3.</td>
<td>→ {hello, world}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regexp_split_to_table(string, pattern [, flags])</td>
<td>Splits string using a POSIX regular expression as the delimiter, producing a set of results; see Section 9.7.3.</td>
<td>→</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>hello</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>world</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>repeat</code></td>
<td>Repeats string the specified number of times.</td>
<td><code>repeat('Pg', 4) → PgPgPgPg</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>replace</code></td>
<td>Replaces all occurrences in string of substring from with substring to.</td>
<td><code>replace('abcdefabcdef', 'cd', 'XX') → abXXefabXXef</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>reverse</code></td>
<td>Reverses the order of the characters in the string.</td>
<td><code>reverse('abcde') → edcba</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>right</code></td>
<td>Returns last n characters in the string, or when n is negative, returns all but first</td>
<td><code>right('abcde', 2) → de</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>rpad</code></td>
<td>Extends the string to length length by appending the characters fill (a space by default). If the string is already longer than length then it is truncated.</td>
<td><code>rpad('hi', 5, 'xy') → hixyx</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>rtrim</code></td>
<td>Removes the longest string containing only characters in characters (a space by default) from the end of string.</td>
<td><code>rtrim('testxxzx', 'xyz') → test</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>split_part</code></td>
<td>Splits string at occurrences of delimiter and returns the n'th field (counting from one), or when n is negative, returns the</td>
<td><code>split_part('abc~@~def~@~ghi', '~@~', 2) → def</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>strpos</code></td>
<td>Returns first starting index of the specified substring within string, or zero if it's not present. (Same as position( substring in string), but note the reversed argument order.)</td>
<td><code>strpos('high', 'ig') → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>substr</code></td>
<td>Extracts the substring of string starting at the start'th character, and extending for count characters if that is specified. (Same as substring( string from start for count).)</td>
<td><code>substr('alphabet', 3) → phabet</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>starts_with</code></td>
<td>Returns true if string starts with prefix.</td>
<td><code>starts_with('alphabet', 'alph') → t</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `string_to_array` | Splits the string at occurrences of delimiter and forms the resulting fields into a text array. If delimiter is NULL, each character in the string will become a separate element | `string_to_array(`}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>string_to_array</strong></td>
<td>Splits the string at occurrences of delimiter and returns the resulting fields as a set of text rows. If delimiter is NULL, each character in the string will become a separate row of the result. If delimiter is an empty string, then the string is treated as a single field. If null_string is supplied and is not NULL, fields matching that string are replaced by NULL.</td>
<td><code>string_to_array('xx~~yy~~zz', '~~', 'yy')</code> → <code>{xx,NULL,zz}</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **string_to_table** | Splits the string at occurrences of delimiter and returns the resulting fields as a set of text rows. If delimiter is NULL, each character in the string will become a separate row of the result. If delimiter is an empty string, then the string is treated as a single field. If null_string is supplied and is not NULL, fields matching that string are replaced by NULL. | `string_to_table('xx~^~yy~^~zz', '~^~', 'yy')` → `xx NULL zz` |

| **to_ascii** | Converts string to ASCII from another encoding, which may be identified by name or number. If encoding is omitted the database encoding is assumed (which in practice is the only useful case). The conversion consists primarily of dropping accents. Conversion is only supported from LATIN1, LATIN2, LATIN9, and WIN1250 encodings. (See the unaccent module for another, more flexible solution.) | `to_ascii('Karél')` → `Karel` |

| **to_hex** | Converts the number to its equivalent hexadecimal representation. | `to_hex(2147483647)` → `7fffffff` |

| **translate** | Replaces each character in string that matches a character in the from set with the corresponding character in the to set. If from is longer than to, occurrences of the extra characters in from are deleted. | `translate('12345', '143', 'ax')` → `a2x5` |

| **unistr** | Evaluate escaped Unicode characters in the argument. Unicode characters can be specified as \xxxx (4 hexadecimal digits), \+xxxxxx (6 hexadecimal digits), \uxxxx (4 hexadecimal digits), or \uxxxxxxxx (8 hexadecimal digits). To specify a backslash, write two backslashes. All other characters are taken literally. If the server encoding is not UTF-8, the Unicode code point identified by one of these escape sequences is converted to the actual server encoding; an error is reported if that's not possible. This function provides a (non-standard) alternative to string constants with Unicode escapes (see Section 4.1.2.3). | `unistr('d\0061t\+000061')` → `data` | `unistr('d\u0061t\U00000061')` → `data` |

The **concat**, **concat_ws** and **format** functions are variadic, so it is possible to pass the values to be concatenated or formatted as an array marked with the **VARIADIC** keyword (see Section 36.5.6). The array's elements are treated as if they were separate ordinary arguments to the function. If the variadic array argument is **NULL**, **concat** and **concat_ws** return **NULL**, but **format** treats a **NULL** as a zero-element array.
See also the aggregate function `string_agg` in Section 9.21, and the functions for converting between strings and the `bytea` type in Table 9.13.

### 9.4.1. format

The function `format` produces output formatted according to a format string, in a style similar to the C function `sprintf`.

```sql
format(formatstr text [, formatarg "any" [, ... ] ])
```

*formatstr* is a format string that specifies how the result should be formatted. Text in the format string is copied directly to the result, except where *format specifiers* are used. Format specifiers act as placeholders in the string, defining how subsequent function arguments should be formatted and inserted into the result. Each *formatarg* argument is converted to text according to the usual output rules for its data type, and then formatted and inserted into the result string according to the format specifier(s).

Format specifiers are introduced by a `%` character and have the form

```sql
%n$ [flags] [width] type
```

where the component fields are:

- **position** (optional)
  
  A string of the form `n$` where `n` is the index of the argument to print. Index 1 means the first argument after *formatstr*. If the *position* is omitted, the default is to use the next argument in sequence.

- **flags** (optional)
  
  Additional options controlling how the format specifier's output is formatted. Currently the only supported flag is a minus sign (`-`) which will cause the format specifier's output to be left-justified. This has no effect unless the *width* field is also specified.

- **width** (optional)
  
  Specifies the *minimum* number of characters to use to display the format specifier's output. The output is padded on the left or right (depending on the – flag) with spaces as needed to fill the width. A too-small width does not cause truncation of the output, but is simply ignored. The width may be specified using any of the following: a positive integer; an asterisk (`*`) to use the next function argument as the width; or a string of the form `*n$` to use the `n`th function argument as the width.

  If the width comes from a function argument, that argument is consumed before the argument that is used for the format specifier's value. If the width argument is negative, the result is left aligned (as if the – flag had been specified) within a field of length `abs(width)`.

- **type** (required)
  
  The type of format conversion to use to produce the format specifier's output. The following types are supported:
  
  - `s` formats the argument value as a simple string. A null value is treated as an empty string.
  - `I` treats the argument value as an SQL identifier, double-quoting it if necessary. It is an error for the value to be null (equivalent to `quote_ident`).
  - `L` quotes the argument value as an SQL literal. A null value is displayed as the string `NULL`, without quotes (equivalent to `quote_nullable`).

In addition to the format specifiers described above, the special sequence `%%` may be used to output a literal `%` character.

Here are some examples of the basic format conversions:

```sql
SELECT format('Hello %s', 'World');
Result: Hello World
```
Here are examples using width fields and the – flag:

SELECT format('|%10s|', 'foo');
Result: |       foo|

SELECT format('|%-10s|', 'foo');
Result: |foo       |

SELECT format('|%*s|', 10, 'foo');
Result: |       foo|

SELECT format('|%*s|', -10, 'foo');
Result: |foo       |

SELECT format('|%-*s|', 10, 'foo');
Result: |foo       |

SELECT format('|%-*s|', -10, 'foo');
Result: |foo       |

These examples show use of position fields:

SELECT format('Testing %3$s, %2$s, %1$s', 'one', 'two', 'three');
Result: Testing three, two, one

SELECT format('|%*2$s|', 'foo', 10, 'bar');
Result: |       bar|

SELECT format('|%1$*2$s|', 'foo', 10, 'bar');
Result: |       foo|

Unlike the standard C function sprintf, Postgres Pro's format function allows format specifiers with and without position fields to be mixed in the same format string. A format specifier without a position field always uses the next argument after the last argument consumed. In addition, the format function does not require all function arguments to be used in the format string. For example:

SELECT format('Testing %3$s, %2$s, %s', 'one', 'two', 'three');
Result: Testing three, two, three

The $% and $% format specifiers are particularly useful for safely constructing dynamic SQL statements. See Example 41.1.

9.5. Binary String Functions and Operators

This section describes functions and operators for examining and manipulating binary strings, that is values of type bytea. Many of these are equivalent, in purpose and syntax, to the text-string functions described in the previous section.

SQL defines some string functions that use key words, rather than commas, to separate arguments. Details are in Table 9.11. Postgres Pro also provides versions of these functions that use the regular function invocation syntax (see Table 9.12).
### Table 9.11. SQL Binary String Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function/Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`bytea</td>
<td></td>
<td>bytea`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_length(bytea)</code></td>
<td>Returns number of bits in the binary string (8 times the <code>octet_length</code>).</td>
<td><code>bit_length('\x1234567890'::bytea) → 24</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>octet_length(bytea)</code></td>
<td>Returns number of bytes in the binary string.</td>
<td><code>octet_length('\x1234567890'::bytea) → 3</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>overlay(bytes bytea PLACING newsubstring bytea FROM start integer [ FOR count integer ] )</code></td>
<td>Replaces the substring of <code>bytes</code> that starts at the <code>start</code>'th byte and extends for <code>count</code> bytes with <code>newsubstring</code>. If <code>count</code> is omitted, it defaults to the length of <code>newsubstring</code>.</td>
<td><code>overlay('\x1234567890'::bytea placing '\002\003'::bytea from 2 for 3) → \x12020390</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>position(substring bytea IN bytes bytea)</code></td>
<td>Returns first starting index of the specified <code>substring</code> within <code>bytes</code>, or zero if it's not present.</td>
<td><code>position('\x5678'::bytea in '\x1234567890'::bytea) → 3</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>substring(bytes bytea [ FROM start integer ] [ FOR count integer ] )</code></td>
<td>Extracts the substring of <code>bytes</code> starting at the <code>start</code>'th byte if that is specified, and stopping after <code>count</code> bytes if that is specified. Provide at least one of <code>start</code> and <code>count</code>.</td>
<td><code>substring('\x1234567890'::bytea from 3 for 2) → \x5678</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`trim([ LEADING</td>
<td>TRAILING</td>
<td>BOTH ] bytesremoved bytea FROM bytes bytea)`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`trim([ LEADING</td>
<td>TRAILING</td>
<td>BOTH ] [ FROM ] bytes bytea, bytesremoved bytea)`</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional binary string manipulation functions are available and are listed in Table 9.12. Some of them are used internally to implement the SQL-standard string functions listed in Table 9.11.

### Table 9.12. Other Binary String Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_count(bytes bytea)</code></td>
<td>Returns the number of bits set in the binary string (also known as “popcount”).</td>
<td><code>bit_count('\x1234567890'::bytea) → 15</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>btrim(bytes bytea, bytesremoved bytea)</code></td>
<td>Removes the longest string containing only bytes appearing in <code>bytesremoved</code> from the start and end of <code>bytes</code>.</td>
<td><code>btrim('\x1234567890'::bytea, '\x9012'::bytea) → \x345678</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_bit(bytes bytea, n bigint) → integer</td>
<td>Extracts n’th bit from binary string.</td>
<td>get_bit(’\x1234567890’::bytea, 30) → 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_byte(bytes bytea, n integer) → integer</td>
<td>Extracts n’th byte from binary string.</td>
<td>get_byte(’\x1234567890’::bytea, 4) → 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length(bytea) → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of bytes in the binary string.</td>
<td>length(’\x1234567890’::bytea) → 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length(bytes bytea, encoding name) → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of characters in the binary string, assuming that it is text in the given encoding.</td>
<td>length(’jose’::bytea, ’UTF8’) → 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltrim(bytes bytea, bytesremoved bytea) → bytea</td>
<td>Removes the longest string containing only bytes appearing in bytesremoved from the start of bytes.</td>
<td>ltrim(’\x1234567890’::bytea, ’\x9012’::bytea) → \x34567890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>md5(bytea) → text</td>
<td>Computes the MD5 hash of the binary string, with the result written in hexadecimal.</td>
<td>md5(’Th\000omas’::bytea) → 8ab2d3c9689aaf18b4958c334c82d8b1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rtrim(bytes bytea, bytesremoved bytea) → bytea</td>
<td>Removes the longest string containing only bytes appearing in bytesremoved from the end of bytes.</td>
<td>rtrim(’\x1234567890’::bytea, ’\x9012’::bytea) → \x12345678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_bit(bytes bytea, n bigint, newvalue integer) → bytea</td>
<td>Sets n’th bit in binary string to newvalue.</td>
<td>set_bit(’\x1234567890’::bytea, 30, 0) → \x1234563890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_byte(bytes bytea, n integer, newvalue integer) → bytea</td>
<td>Sets n’th byte in binary string to newvalue.</td>
<td>set_byte(’\x1234567890’::bytea, 4, 64) → \x1234567840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha224(bytea) → bytea</td>
<td>Computes the SHA-224 hash of the binary string.</td>
<td>sha224(’abc’::bytea) → \x23097d223405d8228642a477bda2 55b32aadbc4bda0b3f7e36c9da7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha256(bytea) → bytea</td>
<td>Computes the SHA-256 hash of the binary string.</td>
<td>sha256(’abc’::bytea) → \xba7816bf8f01cfe414140de5dae2223 832f3b1907581bc73b00361a396177a9cb410ff61f20015ad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha384(bytea) → bytea</td>
<td>Computes the SHA-384 hash of the binary string.</td>
<td>sha384(’abc’::bytea) → \xcdb00753f45a35e8bb5a03d699ac65007 272c32ab8ed1631a8b605a43ff5bed8086072ba1e7cc2358baeca134c825a7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha512(bytea) → bytea</td>
<td>Computes the SHA-512 hash of the binary string.</td>
<td>sha512(bytea) → bytea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Function Description Example(s)

**Computes the SHA-512 hash of the binary string.**

sha512('abc'::bytea) → \xddaf35a193617abacc417349ae204131
12e6fa4e8a97eaa20a9eeee6b55d39a2192992a274fc1a836ba3c23a3feebbd
454d4423643ce80e2a9ac94fa54ca49f

**Extracts the substring of bytes starting at the start'th byte, and extending for count bytes if that is specified. (Same as substring( bytes from start for count).)**

substr('\x1234567890'::bytea, 3, 2) → \x5678

Functions get_byte and set_byte number the first byte of a binary string as byte 0. Functions get_bit and set_bit number bits from the right within each byte; for example bit 0 is the least significant bit of the first byte, and bit 15 is the most significant bit of the second byte.

For historical reasons, the function md5 returns a hex-encoded value of type text whereas the SHA-2 functions return type bytea. Use the functions encode and decode to convert between the two. For example write encode(sha256('abc'), 'hex') to get a hex-encoded text representation, or decode(md5('abc'), 'hex') to get a bytea value.

Functions for converting strings between different character sets (encodings), and for representing arbitrary binary data in textual form, are shown in Table 9.13. For these functions, an argument or result of type text is expressed in the database's default encoding, while arguments or results of type bytea are in an encoding named by another argument.

**Table 9.13. Text/Binary String Conversion Functions**

Function Description Example(s)

**convert ( bytes bytea, src_encoding name, dest_encoding name )→bytea**

Converts a binary string representing text in encoding src_encoding to a binary string in encoding dest_encoding (see Section 22.3.4 for available conversions).

convert('text_in_utf8', 'UTF8', 'LATIN1') → \x746578745f696e5f75746638

**convert_from ( bytes bytea, src_encoding name )→text**

Converts a binary string representing text in encoding src_encoding to text in the database encoding (see Section 22.3.4 for available conversions).

convert_from('text_in_utf8', 'UTF8') → text_in_utf8

**convert_to ( string text, dest_encoding name )→bytea**

Converts a text string (in the database encoding) to a binary string encoded in encoding dest_encoding (see Section 22.3.4 for available conversions).

convert_to('some_text', 'UTF8') → \x736f6d655f74657874

**encode ( byte bytea, format text )→text**

Encodes binary data into a textual representation; supported format values are: base64, escape, hex.

encode('123\000\001', 'base64') → MTIzAAE=

**decode ( string text, format text )→bytea**

Decodes binary data from a textual representation; supported format values are the same as for encode.

decode('MTIzAAE=', 'base64') → \x3132330001

The encode and decode functions support the following textual formats:
Functions and Operators

base64

The base64 format is that of RFC 2045 Section 6.8. As per the RFC, encoded lines are broken at 76 characters. However instead of the MIME CRLF end-of-line marker, only a newline is used for end-of-line. The decode function ignores carriage-return, newline, space, and tab characters. Otherwise, an error is raised when decode is supplied invalid base64 data — including when trailing padding is incorrect.

escape

The escape format converts zero bytes and bytes with the high bit set into octal escape sequences (\nnn), and it doubles backslashes. Other byte values are represented literally. The decode function will raise an error if a backslash is not followed by either a second backslash or three octal digits; it accepts other byte values unchanged.

hex

The hex format represents each 4 bits of data as one hexadecimal digit, 0 through f, writing the higher-order digit of each byte first. The encode function outputs the a-f hex digits in lower case. Because the smallest unit of data is 8 bits, there are always an even number of characters returned by encode. The decode function accepts the a-f characters in either upper or lower case. An error is raised when decode is given invalid hex data — including when given an odd number of characters.

See also the aggregate function string_agg in Section 9.21 and the large object functions in Section 33.4.

9.6. Bit String Functions and Operators

This section describes functions and operators for examining and manipulating bit strings, that is values of the types bit and bit varying. (While only type bit is mentioned in these tables, values of type bit varying can be used interchangeably.) Bit strings support the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1, as well as the operators shown in Table 9.14.

Table 9.14. Bit String Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bit</td>
<td></td>
<td>bit → bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B'10001'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit &amp; bit → bit</td>
<td>Bitwise AND (inputs must be of equal length)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B'10001' &amp; B'01101' → 00001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bit → bit</td>
<td>Bitwise OR (inputs must be of equal length)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B'10001'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit # bit → bit</td>
<td>Bitwise exclusive OR (inputs must be of equal length)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B'10001' # B'01101' → 11100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ bit → bit</td>
<td>Bitwise NOT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>~ B'10001' → 01110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit &lt;&lt; integer → bit</td>
<td>Bitwise shift left (string length is preserved)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

#### Operator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B'10001' &lt;&lt; 3</td>
<td>01000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit &gt;&gt; integer → bit</td>
<td>Bitwise shift right (string length is preserved)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B'10001' &gt;&gt; 2</td>
<td>00100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some of the functions available for binary strings are also available for bit strings, as shown in Table 9.15.

#### Table 9.15. Bit String Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bit_count (bit) → bigint</td>
<td>Returns the number of bits set in the bit string (also known as “popcount”).</td>
<td>bit_count(B'10111') → 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit_length (bit) → integer</td>
<td>Returns number of bits in the bit string.</td>
<td>bit_length(B'10111') → 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length (bit) → integer</td>
<td>Returns number of bits in the bit string.</td>
<td>length(B'10111') → 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octet_length (bit) → integer</td>
<td>Returns number of bytes in the bit string.</td>
<td>octet_length(B'1011111011') → 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overlay (bits bit PLACING newsubstring bit FROM start integer [ FOR count integer ]) → bit</td>
<td>Replaces the substring of bits that starts at the start'th bit and extends for count bits with newsubstring. If count is omitted, it defaults to the length of newsubstring.</td>
<td>overlay(B'01010101010101010' placing B'11111' from 2 for 3) → 0111110101010101010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position (substring bit IN bits bit) → integer</td>
<td>Returns first starting index of the specified substring within bits, or zero if it's not present.</td>
<td>position(B'010' in B'000001101011') → 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring (bits bit [ FROM start integer ] [ FOR count integer ]) → bit</td>
<td>Extracts the substring of bits starting at the start'th bit if that is specified, and stopping after count bits if that is specified. Provide at least one of start and count.</td>
<td>substring(B'110010111111' from 3 for 2) → 00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_bit (bits bit, n integer) → integer</td>
<td>Extracts n'th bit from bit string; the first (leftmost) bit is bit 0.</td>
<td>get_bit(B'101010101010101010', 6) → 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_bit (bits bit, n integer, newvalue integer) → bit</td>
<td>Sets n'th bit in bit string to newvalue; the first (leftmost) bit is bit 0.</td>
<td>set_bit(B'101010101010101010', 6, 0) → 101010001010101010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, it is possible to cast integral values to and from type bit. Casting an integer to bit(n) copies the rightmost n bits. Casting an integer to a bit string width wider than the integer itself will sign-extend on the left. Some examples:
Functions and Operators

44::bit(10) 0000101100
44::bit(3) 100
cast(-44 as bit(12)) 11111010100
'1110'::bit(4)::integer 14

Note that casting to just “bit” means casting to bit(1), and so will deliver only the least significant bit of the integer.

9.7. Pattern Matching

There are three separate approaches to pattern matching provided by Postgres Pro: the traditional SQL LIKE operator, the more recent SIMILAR TO operator (added in SQL:1999), and POSIX-style regular expressions. Aside from the basic “does this string match this pattern?” operators, functions are available to extract or replace matching substrings and to split a string at matching locations.

Tip

If you have pattern matching needs that go beyond this, consider writing a user-defined function in Perl or Tcl.

Caution

While most regular-expression searches can be executed very quickly, regular expressions can be contrived that take arbitrary amounts of time and memory to process. Be wary of accepting regular-expression search patterns from hostile sources. If you must do so, it is advisable to impose a statement timeout.

Searches using SIMILAR TO patterns have the same security hazards, since SIMILAR TO provides many of the same capabilities as POSIX-style regular expressions.

LIKE searches, being much simpler than the other two options, are safer to use with possibly-hostile pattern sources.

The pattern matching operators of all three kinds do not support nondeterministic collations. If required, apply a different collation to the expression to work around this limitation.

9.7.1. LIKE

string LIKE pattern [ESCAPE escape-character]
string NOT LIKE pattern [ESCAPE escape-character]

The LIKE expression returns true if the string matches the supplied pattern. (As expected, the NOT LIKE expression returns false if LIKE returns true, and vice versa. An equivalent expression is NOT (string LIKE pattern).)

If pattern does not contain percent signs or underscores, then the pattern only represents the string itself; in that case LIKE acts like the equals operator. An underscore (_) in pattern stands for (matches) any single character; a percent sign (%) matches any sequence of zero or more characters.

Some examples:

'abc' LIKE 'abc' true
'abc' LIKE 'a%' true
'abc' LIKE '_b_' true
'abc' LIKE 'c' false

LIKE pattern matching always covers the entire string. Therefore, if it's desired to match a sequence anywhere within a string, the pattern must start and end with a percent sign.
To match a literal underscore or percent sign without matching other characters, the respective character in pattern must be preceded by the escape character. The default escape character is the backslash but a different one can be selected by using the escape clause. To match the escape character itself, write two escape characters.

```
Note
If you have standard_conforming_strings turned off, any backslashes you write in literal string constants will need to be doubled. See Section 4.1.2.1 for more information.
```

It's also possible to select no escape character by writing escape ''. This effectively disables the escape mechanism, which makes it impossible to turn off the special meaning of underscore and percent signs in the pattern.

According to the SQL standard, omitting escape means there is no escape character (rather than defaulting to a backslash), and a zero-length escape value is disallowed. PostgreSQL's behavior in this regard is therefore slightly nonstandard.

The key word ILIKE can be used instead of LIKE to make the match case-insensitive according to the active locale. This is not in the SQL standard but is a Postgres Pro extension.

The operator ~~ is equivalent to LIKE, and ~~~ corresponds to ILIKE. There are also !~~ and !~~* operators that represent NOT LIKE and NOT ILIKE, respectively. All of these operators are Postgres Pro-specific. You may see these operator names in EXPLAIN output and similar places, since the parser actually translates LIKE et al. to these operators.

The phrases LIKE, ILIKE, NOT LIKE, and NOT ILIKE are generally treated as operators in Postgres Pro syntax; for example they can be used in expression operator ANY (subquery) constructs, although an escape clause cannot be included there. In some obscure cases it may be necessary to use the underlying operator names instead.

Also see the prefix operator ^@ and corresponding starts_with function, which are useful in cases where simply matching the beginning of a string is needed.

### 9.7.2. SIMILAR TO Regular Expressions

```
string SIMILAR TO pattern [ESCAPE escape-character]
string NOT SIMILAR TO pattern [ESCAPE escape-character]
```

The SIMILAR TO operator returns true or false depending on whether its pattern matches the given string. It is similar to LIKE, except that it interprets the pattern using the SQL standard's definition of a regular expression. SQL regular expressions are a curious cross between LIKE notation and common (POSIX) regular expression notation.

Like LIKE, the SIMILAR TO operator succeeds only if its pattern matches the entire string; this is unlike common regular expression behavior where the pattern can match any part of the string. Also like LIKE, SIMILAR TO uses _ and % as wildcard characters denoting any single character and any string, respectively (these are comparable to . and .* in POSIX regular expressions).

In addition to these facilities borrowed from LIKE, SIMILAR TO supports these pattern-matching metacharacters borrowed from POSIX regular expressions:

- | denotes alternation (either of two alternatives).
- * denotes repetition of the previous item zero or more times.
- + denotes repetition of the previous item one or more times.
- ? denotes repetition of the previous item zero or one time.
- {m} denotes repetition of the previous item exactly m times.
• \{m,\} denotes repetition of the previous item \(m\) or more times.
• \{m, n\} denotes repetition of the previous item at least \(m\) and not more than \(n\) times.
• Parentheses () can be used to group items into a single logical item.
• A bracket expression \([\ldots]\) specifies a character class, just as in POSIX regular expressions.

Notice that the period (.) is not a metacharacter for SIMILAR TO.

As with LIKE, a backslash disables the special meaning of any of these metacharacters. A different escape character can be specified with ESCAPE, or the escape capability can be disabled by writing ESCAPE ' '.

According to the SQL standard, omitting ESCAPE means there is no escape character (rather than defaulting to a backslash), and a zero-length ESCAPE value is disallowed. PostgreSQL’s behavior in this regard is therefore slightly nonstandard.

Another nonstandard extension is that following the escape character with a letter or digit provides access to the escape sequences defined for POSIX regular expressions; see Table 9.20, Table 9.21, and Table 9.22 below.

Some examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'abc' SIMILAR TO 'abc'</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'abc' SIMILAR TO 'a'</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'abc' SIMILAR TO '%(b</td>
<td>d)%'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'abc' SIMILAR TO '(b</td>
<td>c)%'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'-abc-' SIMILAR TO '%\mabc\M%'</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'xabcy' SIMILAR TO '%\mabc\M%'</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The substring function with three parameters provides extraction of a substring that matches an SQL regular expression pattern. The function can be written according to standard SQL syntax:

\[
\text{substring(string similar pattern escape escape-character)}
\]

or using the now obsolete SQL:1999 syntax:

\[
\text{substring(string from pattern for escape-character)}
\]

or as a plain three-argument function:

\[
\text{substring(string, pattern, escape-character)}
\]

As with SIMILAR TO, the specified pattern must match the entire data string, or else the function fails and returns null. To indicate the part of the pattern for which the matching data sub-string is of interest, the pattern should contain two occurrences of the escape character followed by a double quote ("). The text matching the portion of the pattern between these separators is returned when the match is successful.

The escape-double-quote separators actually divide substring's pattern into three independent regular expressions; for example, a vertical bar (|) in any of the three sections affects only that section. Also, the first and third of these regular expressions are defined to match the smallest possible amount of text, not the largest, when there is any ambiguity about how much of the data string matches which pattern. (In POSIX parlance, the first and third regular expressions are forced to be non-greedy.)

As an extension to the SQL standard, Postgres Pro allows there to be just one escape-double-quote separator, in which case the third regular expression is taken as empty; or no separators, in which case the first and third regular expressions are taken as empty.

Some examples, with "" delimiting the return string:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>substring('foobar' similar '%&quot;o_b&quot;%' escape '&quot;')</td>
<td>oob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substring('foobar' similar '&quot;o_b&quot;%' escape '&quot;')</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.7.3. POSIX Regular Expressions

Table 9.16 lists the available operators for pattern matching using POSIX regular expressions.
Table 9.16. Regular Expression Match Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text ~ text → boolean</td>
<td>String matches regular expression, case sensitively</td>
<td>'thomas' ~ 't.*ma' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text ~* text → boolean</td>
<td>String matches regular expression, case insensitively</td>
<td>'thomas' ~* 'T.*ma' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text !~ text → boolean</td>
<td>String does not match regular expression, case sensitively</td>
<td>'thomas' !~ 't.*ma' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text !~* text → boolean</td>
<td>String does not match regular expression, case insensitively</td>
<td>'thomas' !~* 'T.*ma' → f</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

POSIX regular expressions provide a more powerful means for pattern matching than the LIKE and SIMILAR TO operators. Many Unix tools such as egrep, sed, or awk use a pattern matching language that is similar to the one described here.

A regular expression is a character sequence that is an abbreviated definition of a set of strings (a regular set). A string is said to match a regular expression if it is a member of the regular set described by the regular expression. As with LIKE, pattern characters match string characters exactly unless they are special characters in the regular expression language — but regular expressions use different special characters than LIKE does. Unlike LIKE patterns, a regular expression is allowed to match anywhere within a string, unless the regular expression is explicitly anchored to the beginning or end of the string.

Some examples:

- 'abcd' ~ 'bc'   → true
- 'abcd' ~ 'a.c'  → true — dot matches any character
- 'abcd' ~ 'a.*d' → true — * repeats the preceding pattern item
- 'abcd' ~ '(b|x)' → true — | means OR, parentheses group
- 'abcd' ~ '^a'   → true — ^ anchors to start of string
- 'abcd' ~ '^a'   → false — would match except for anchoring

The POSIX pattern language is described in much greater detail below.

The substring function with two parameters, substring(string from pattern), provides extraction of a substring that matches a POSIX regular expression pattern. It returns null if there is no match, otherwise the first portion of the text that matched the pattern. But if the pattern contains any parentheses, the portion of the text that matched the first parenthesized subexpression (the one whose left parenthesis comes first) is returned. You can put parentheses around the whole expression if you want to use parentheses within it without triggering this exception. If you need parentheses in the pattern before the subexpression you want to extract, see the non-capturing parentheses described below.

Some examples:

substring('foobar' from 'o.b')   → oob
substring('foobar' from 'o(.)b') → o

The regexp_replace function provides substitution of new text for substrings that match POSIX regular expression patterns. It has the syntax regexp_replace(source, pattern, replacement [, flags ]). The source string is returned unchanged if there is no match to the pattern. If there is a match, the source
Functions and Operators

string is returned with the replacement string substituted for the matching substring. The replacement string can contain \n, where n is 1 through 9, to indicate that the source substring matching the n'th parenthesized subexpression of the pattern should be inserted, and it can contain \s to indicate that the substring matching the entire pattern should be inserted. Write \ if you need to put a literal backslash in the replacement text. The flags parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. Flag i specifies case-insensitive matching, while flag g specifies replacement of each matching substring rather than only the first one. Supported flags (though not g) are described in Table 9.24.

Some examples:

```sql
regexp_replace('foobarbaz', 'b..', 'X')
fooXbaz
regexp_replace('foobarbaz', 'b..', 'X', 'g')
fooXX
regexp_replace('foobarbaz', 'b(..)', 'X\1Y', 'g')
fooXarYXazY
```

The `regexp_match` function returns a text array of captured substring(s) resulting from the first match of a POSIX regular expression pattern to a string. It has the syntax `regexp_match(string, pattern [, flags ])`. If there is no match, the result is NULL. If a match is found, and the pattern contains no parenthesized subexpressions, then the result is a single-element text array containing the substring matching the whole pattern. If a match is found, and the pattern contains parenthesized subexpressions, then the result is a text array whose n'th element is the substring matching the n'th parenthesized subexpression of the pattern (not counting “non-capturing” parentheses; see below for details). The flags parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. Supported flags are described in Table 9.24.

Some examples:

```sql
SELECT regexp_match('foobarbequebaz', 'bar.*que');
---- regexp_match
{barbeque}
(1 row)

SELECT regexp_match('foobarbequebaz', '(bar){beque}');
---- regexp_match
{bar, beque}
(1 row)
```

In the common case where you just want the whole matching substring or NULL for no match, write something like

```sql
SELECT (regexp_match('foobarbequebaz', 'bar.*que'))[1];
--- regexp_match
barbeque
(1 row)
```

The `regexp_matches` function returns a set of text arrays of captured substring(s) resulting from matching a POSIX regular expression pattern to a string. It has the same syntax as `regexp_match`. This function returns no rows if there is no match, one row if there is a match and the g flag is not given, or N rows if there are N matches and the g flag is given. Each returned row is a text array containing the whole matched substring or the substrings matching parenthesized subexpressions of the pattern, just as described above for `regexp_match`. `regexp_matches` accepts all the flags shown in Table 9.24, plus the g flag which commands it to return all matches, not just the first one.

Some examples:
functions and operators

SELECT regexp_matches('foo', 'not there');

regexp_matches
----------------
(0 rows)

SELECT regexp_matches('foobarbequebazilbarfbonk', '(b[^b]+)(b[^b]+)', 'g');

regexp_matches
----------------
{bar,beque}
{bazil,barf}
(2 rows)

Tip

In most cases regexp_matches() should be used with the g flag, since if you only want the first match, it's easier and more efficient to use regexp_match(). However, regexp_match() only exists in Postgres Pro version 10 and up. When working in older versions, a common trick is to place a regexp_matches() call in a sub-select, for example:

SELECT col1, (SELECT regexp_matches(col2, '(bar)(beque)')) FROM tab;

This produces a text array if there's a match, or NULL if not, the same as regexp_match() would do. Without the sub-select, this query would produce no output at all for table rows without a match, which is typically not the desired behavior.

The regexp_split_to_table function splits a string using a POSIX regular expression pattern as a delimiter. It has the syntax `regexp_split_to_table(string, pattern [, flags])`. If there is no match to the pattern, the function returns the string. If there is at least one match, for each match it returns the text from the end of the last match (or the beginning of the string) to the beginning of the match. When there are no more matches, it returns the text from the end of the last match to the end of the string. The flags parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. regexp_split_to_table supports the flags described in Table 9.24.

The `regexp_split_to_array` function behaves the same as `regexp_split_to_table`, except that `regexp_split_to_array` returns its result as an array of text. It has the syntax `regexp_split_to_array(string, pattern [, flags])`. The parameters are the same as for `regexp_split_to_table`.

Some examples:

SELECT foo FROM regexp_split_to_table('the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog', '\s+') AS foo;

foo
------
the
quick
brown
fox
jumps
over
the
lazy
dog
(9 rows)

SELECT regexp_split_to_array('the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog', '\s+');

regexp_split_to_array
----------------------
211

211
As the last example demonstrates, the regexp split functions ignore zero-length matches that occur at the start or end of the string or immediately after a previous match. This is contrary to the strict definition of regexp matching that is implemented by \texttt{regexp\_match} and \texttt{regexp\_matches}, but is usually the most convenient behavior in practice. Other software systems such as Perl use similar definitions.

### 9.7.3.1. Regular Expression Details

Postgres Pro's regular expressions are implemented using a software package written by Henry Spencer. Much of the description of regular expressions below is copied verbatim from his manual.

Regular expressions (REs), as defined in POSIX 1003.2, come in two forms: \textit{extended} REs or EREs (roughly those of \textit{egrep}), and \textit{basic} REs or BREs (roughly those of \textit{ed}). Postgres Pro supports both forms, and also implements some extensions that are not in the POSIX standard, but have become widely used due to their availability in programming languages such as Perl and Tcl. REs using these non-POSIX extensions are called \textit{advanced} REs or AREs in this documentation. AREs are almost an exact superset of EREs, but BREs have several notational incompatibilities (as well as being much more limited). We first describe the ARE andERE forms, noting features that apply only to AREs, and then describe how BREs differ.

---

**Note**

Postgres Pro always initially presumes that a regular expression follows the ARE rules. However, the more limited ERE or BRE rules can be chosen by prepending an \textit{embedded option} to the RE pattern, as described in Section 9.7.3.4. This can be useful for compatibility with applications that expect exactly the POSIX 1003.2 rules.

---

A regular expression is defined as one or more \textit{branches}, separated by |. It matches anything that matches one of the branches.

A branch is zero or more \textit{quantified atoms} or \textit{constraints}, concatenated. It matches a match for the first, followed by a match for the second, etc; an empty branch matches the empty string.

A quantified atom is an \textit{atom} possibly followed by a single \textit{quantifier}. Without a quantifier, it matches a match for the atom. With a quantifier, it can match some number of matches of the atom. An \textit{atom} can
be any of the possibilities shown in Table 9.17. The possible quantifiers and their meanings are shown in Table 9.18.

A constraint matches an empty string, but matches only when specific conditions are met. A constraint can be used where an atom could be used, except it cannot be followed by a quantifier. The simple constraints are shown in Table 9.19; some more constraints are described later.

**Table 9.17. Regular Expression Atoms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atom</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( re)</td>
<td>(where re is any regular expression) matches a match for re, with the match noted for possible reporting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(?: re)</td>
<td>as above, but the match is not noted for reporting (a “non-capturing” set of parentheses) (AREs only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>matches any single character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[chars]</td>
<td>a bracket expression, matching any one of the chars (see Section 9.7.3.2 for more detail)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\k</td>
<td>(where k is a non-alphanumeric character) matches that character taken as an ordinary character, e.g., \ matches a backslash character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\c</td>
<td>where c is alphanumeric (possibly followed by other characters) is an escape, see Section 9.7.3.3 (AREs only; in EREs and BREs, this matches c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ }</td>
<td>when followed by a character other than a digit, matches the left-brace character ; when followed by a digit, it is the beginning of a bound (see below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>where x is a single character with no other significance, matches that character</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An RE cannot end with a backslash (\).

**Note**

If you have standard_conforming_strings turned off, any backslashes you write in literal string constants will need to be doubled. See Section 4.1.2.1 for more information.

**Table 9.18. Regular Expression Quantifiers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantifier</th>
<th>Matches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>a sequence of 0 or more matches of the atom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>a sequence of 1 or more matches of the atom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>a sequence of 0 or 1 matches of the atom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{m}</td>
<td>a sequence of exactly m matches of the atom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{m, }</td>
<td>a sequence of m or more matches of the atom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{m, n}</td>
<td>a sequence of m through n (inclusive) matches of the atom; m cannot exceed n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*?</td>
<td>non-greedy version of *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+?</td>
<td>non-greedy version of +</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The forms using {...} are known as *bounds*. The numbers $m$ and $n$ within a bound are unsigned decimal integers with permissible values from 0 to 255 inclusive.

*Non-greedy* quantifiers (available in AREs only) match the same possibilities as their corresponding normal (greedy) counterparts, but prefer the smallest number rather than the largest number of matches. See Section 9.7.3.5 for more detail.

**Note**

A quantifier cannot immediately follow another quantifier, e.g., **** is invalid. A quantifier cannot begin an expression or subexpression or follow ^ or |.

### Table 9.19. Regular Expression Constraints

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constraint</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>^</td>
<td>matches at the beginning of the string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td>matches at the end of the string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(?! re)</td>
<td><em>negative lookahead</em> matches at any point where no substring matching <em>re</em> begins (AREs only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(?&lt;= re)</td>
<td><em>positive lookbehind</em> matches at any point where a substring matching <em>re</em> ends (AREs only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(?!= re)</td>
<td><em>negative lookbehind</em> matches at any point where no substring matching <em>re</em> ends (AREs only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lookahead and lookbehind constraints cannot contain *back references* (see Section 9.7.3.3), and all parentheses within them are considered non-capturing.

### 9.7.3.2. Bracket Expressions

A *bracket expression* is a list of characters enclosed in [ ]. It normally matches any single character from the list (but see below). If the list begins with ^, it matches any single character not from the rest of the list. If two characters in the list are separated by −, this is shorthand for the full range of characters between those two (inclusive) in the collating sequence, e.g., [0–9] in ASCII matches any decimal digit. It is illegal for two ranges to share an endpoint, e.g., a–c–e. Ranges are very collating-sequence-dependent, so portable programs should avoid relying on them.

To include a literal ] in the list, make it the first character (after ^, if that is used). To include a literal -, make it the first or last character, or the second endpoint of a range. To use a literal − as the first endpoint of a range, enclose it in [ . and .] to make it a collating element (see below). With the exception of these characters, some combinations using [ (see next paragraphs), and escapes (AREs only), all other special characters lose their special significance within a bracket expression. In particular, \ is not special when following ERE or BRE rules, though it is special (as introducing an escape) in AREs.

Within a bracket expression, a collating element (a character, a multiple-character sequence that collates as if it were a single character, or a collating-sequence name for either) enclosed in [ . and .] stands for the sequence of characters of that collating element. The sequence is treated as a single element of
the bracket expression's list. This allows a bracket expression containing a multiple-character collating
element to match more than one character, e.g., if the collating sequence includes a ch collating element,
then the RE \([\{.\}.ch.]\)*c matches the first five characters of chchcc.

**Note**

Postgres Pro currently does not support multi-character collating elements. This information
describes possible future behavior.

Within a bracket expression, a collating element enclosed in \([= and =]\) is an **equivalence class**, standing
for the sequences of characters of all collating elements equivalent to that one, including itself. (If there
are no other equivalent collating elements, the treatment is as if the enclosing delimiters were \( . \) and
\( . \).) For example, if \( a \) and \( ^ \) are the members of an equivalence class, then \( [[=o=]], [[=^=]], \) and \( [o^] \)
are all synonymous. An equivalence class cannot be an endpoint of a range.

Within a bracket expression, the name of a character class enclosed in \([: and :]\) stands for the list of all
characters belonging to that class. A character class cannot be used as an endpoint of a range. The POSIX
standard defines these character class names: **alnum** (letters and numeric digits), **alpha** (letters), **blank**
(space and tab), **cntrl** (control characters), **digit** (numeric digits), **graph** (printable characters except
space), **lower** (lower-case letters), **print** (printable characters including space), **punct** (punctuation),
**space** (any white space), **upper** (upper-case letters), and **xdigit** (hexadecimal digits). The behavior of
these standard character classes is generally consistent across platforms for characters in the 7-bit ASCII set. Whether a given non-ASCII character is considered to belong to one of these classes depends
on the **collation** that is used for the regular-expression function or operator (see Section 22.2), or by
default on the database's **LC_CTYPE** locale setting (see Section 22.1). The classification of non-ASCII
characters can vary across platforms even in similarly-named locales. (But the c locale never considers
any non-ASCII characters to belong to any of these classes.) In addition to these standard character
classes, Postgres Pro defines the **word** character class, which is the same as **alnum** plus the underscore
(\( _ \)) character, and the **ascii** character class, which contains exactly the 7-bit ASCII set.

There are two special cases of bracket expressions: the bracket expressions \([[:<:]\) and \([[:>:]]\) are
constraints, matching empty strings at the beginning and end of a word respectively. A word is defined
as a sequence of word characters that is neither preceded nor followed by word characters. A word
character is any character belonging to the **word** character class, that is, any letter, digit, or underscore.
This is an extension, compatible with but not specified by POSIX 1003.2, and should be used with caution
in software intended to be portable to other systems. The constraint escapes described below are usually
preferable; they are no more standard, but are easier to type.

### 9.7.3.3. Regular Expression Escapes

**Escapes** are special sequences beginning with \( \backslash \) followed by an alphanumeric character. Escapes come
in several varieties: character entry, class shorthands, constraint escapes, and back references. A \( \backslash \)
followed by an alphanumeric character but not constituting a valid escape is illegal in AREs. In EREs,
there are no escapes: outside a bracket expression, a \( \backslash \) followed by an alphanumeric character merely
stands for that character as an ordinary character, and inside a bracket expression, \( \backslash \) is an ordinary
character. (The latter is the one actual incompatibility between EREs and AREs.)

**Character-entry escapes** exist to make it easier to specify non-printing and other inconvenient characters
in REs. They are shown in Table 9.20.

**Class-shorthand escapes** provide shorthands for certain commonly-used character classes. They are
shown in Table 9.21.

A **constraint escape** is a constraint, matching the empty string if specific conditions are met, written as
an escape. They are shown in Table 9.22.

A **back reference** \( \( \backslash n \) \) matches the same string matched by the previous parenthesized subexpression
specified by the number \( n \) (see Table 9.23). For example, \( ([bc])\( \backslash 1 \) matches bb or cc but not bc or cb.
Functions and Operators

The subexpression must entirely precede the back reference in the RE. Subexpressions are numbered in the order of their leading parentheses. Non-capturing parentheses do not define subexpressions. The back reference considers only the string characters matched by the referenced subexpression, not any constraints contained in it. For example, (^\d)\1 will match 22.

Table 9.20. Regular Expression Character-Entry Escapes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Escape</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\a</td>
<td>alert (bell) character, as in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\b</td>
<td>backspace, as in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\B</td>
<td>synonym for backslash () to help reduce the need for backslash doubling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\cX</td>
<td>(where X is any character) the character whose low-order 5 bits are the same as those of X, and whose other bits are all zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\e</td>
<td>the character whose collating-sequence name is ESC, or failing that, the character with octal value 033</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\f</td>
<td>form feed, as in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\n</td>
<td>newline, as in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\r</td>
<td>carriage return, as in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\t</td>
<td>horizontal tab, as in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\uwxyz</td>
<td>(where wxyz is exactly four hexadecimal digits) the character whose hexadecimal value is 0xwxyz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Ustuvwxyz</td>
<td>(where stuvwxyz is exactly eight hexadecimal digits) the character whose hexadecimal value is 0xstuvwxyz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\v</td>
<td>vertical tab, as in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\xhhh</td>
<td>(where hhh is any sequence of hexadecimal digits) the character whose hexadecimal value is 0xhhh (a single character no matter how many hexadecimal digits are used)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\0</td>
<td>the character whose value is 0 (the null byte)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\xy</td>
<td>(where xy is exactly two octal digits, and is not a back reference) the character whose octal value is 0xy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\xyz</td>
<td>(where xyz is exactly three octal digits, and is not a back reference) the character whose octal value is 0xyz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hexadecimal digits are 0-9, a-f, and A-F. Octal digits are 0-7.

Numeric character-entry escapes specifying values outside the ASCII range (0-127) have meanings dependent on the database encoding. When the encoding is UTF-8, escape values are equivalent to Unicode code points, for example \u1234 means the character U+1234. For other multibyte encodings, character-entry escapes usually just specify the concatenation of the byte values for the character. If the escape value does not correspond to any legal character in the database encoding, no error will be raised, but it will never match any data.

The character-entry escapes are always taken as ordinary characters. For example, \135 is ] in ASCII, but \135 does not terminate a bracket expression.
### Table 9.21. Regular Expression Class-Shorthand Escapes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Escape</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\d</td>
<td>matches any digit, like <code>[:digit:]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\s</td>
<td>matches any whitespace character, like <code>[:space:]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\w</td>
<td>matches any word character, like <code>[:word:]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\D</td>
<td>matches any non-digit, like <code>[^:digit:]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\S</td>
<td>matches any non-whitespace character, like <code>[^:space:]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\W</td>
<td>matches any non-word character, like <code>[^:word:]</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The class-shorthand escapes also work within bracket expressions, although the definitions shown above are not quite syntactically valid in that context. For example, `[a-c\d]` is equivalent to `[a-c[:digit:]]`.

### Table 9.22. Regular Expression Constraint Escapes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Escape</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\A</td>
<td>matches only at the beginning of the string (see Section 9.7.3.5 for how this differs from <code>^</code>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\m</td>
<td>matches only at the beginning of a word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\M</td>
<td>matches only at the end of a word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\y</td>
<td>matches only at the beginning or end of a word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Y</td>
<td>matches only at a point that is not the beginning or end of a word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\Z</td>
<td>matches only at the end of the string (see Section 9.7.3.5 for how this differs from <code>$</code>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A word is defined as in the specification of `[:<:]` and `[:>:]` above. Constraint escapes are illegal within bracket expressions.

### Table 9.23. Regular Expression Back References

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Escape</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\m</td>
<td>(where ( m ) is a nonzero digit) a back reference to the ( m )th subexpression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\mnn</td>
<td>(where ( m ) is a nonzero digit, and ( nn ) is some more digits, and the decimal value ( mnn ) is not greater than the number of closing capturing parentheses seen so far) a back reference to the ( mnn )th subexpression</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Note

There is an inherent ambiguity between octal character-entry escapes and back references, which is resolved by the following heuristics, as hinted at above. A leading zero always indicates an octal escape. A single non-zero digit, not followed by another digit, is always taken as a back reference. A multi-digit sequence not starting with a zero is taken as a back reference if it comes after a suitable subexpression (i.e., the number is in the legal range for a back reference), and otherwise is taken as octal.
9.7.3.4. Regular Expression Metasyntax

In addition to the main syntax described above, there are some special forms and miscellaneous syntactic facilities available.

An RE can begin with one of two special director prefixes. If an RE begins with `***`, the rest of the RE is taken as an ARE. (This normally has no effect in Postgres Pro, since REs are assumed to be AREs; but it does have an effect if ERE or BRE mode had been specified by the flags parameter to a regex function.) If an RE begins with `***=`, the rest of the RE is taken to be a literal string, with all characters considered ordinary characters.

An ARE can begin with embedded options: a sequence (`(?xyz)`) (where `xyz` is one or more alphabetic characters) specifies options affecting the rest of the RE. These options override any previously determined options — in particular, they can override the case-sensitivity behavior implied by a regex operator, or the flags parameter to a regex function. The available option letters are shown in Table 9.24. Note that these same option letters are used in the flags parameters of regex functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>rest of RE is a BRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>case-sensitive matching (overrides operator type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>rest of RE is an ERE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>case-insensitive matching (see Section 9.7.3.5) (overrides operator type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>historical synonym for n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>newline-sensitive matching (see Section 9.7.3.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>partial newline-sensitive matching (see Section 9.7.3.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>rest of RE is a literal (“quoted”) string, all ordinary characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>non-newline-sensitive matching (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>tight syntax (default; see below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>inverse partial newline-sensitive (“weird”) matching (see Section 9.7.3.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>expanded syntax (see below)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Embedded options take effect at the ) terminating the sequence. They can appear only at the start of an ARE (after the `***`: director if any).

In addition to the usual (tight) RE syntax, in which all characters are significant, there is an expanded syntax, available by specifying the embedded x option. In the expanded syntax, white-space characters in the RE are ignored, as are all characters between a # and the following newline (or the end of the RE). This permits paragraphing and commenting a complex RE. There are three exceptions to that basic rule:

- a white-space character or # preceded by \ is retained
- white space or # within a bracket expression is retained
- white space and comments cannot appear within multi-character symbols, such as (?:

For this purpose, white-space characters are blank, tab, newline, and any character that belongs to the space character class.

Finally, in an ARE, outside bracket expressions, the sequence (`(?#ttt)`) (where ttt is any text not containing a ) is a comment, completely ignored. Again, this is not allowed between the characters of
multi-character symbols, like (?::). Such comments are more a historical artifact than a useful facility, and their use is deprecated; use the expanded syntax instead.

None of these metasyntax extensions is available if an initial **=* director has specified that the user’s input be treated as a literal string rather than as an RE.

### 9.7.3.5. Regular Expression Matching Rules

In the event that an RE could match more than one substring of a given string, the RE matches the one starting earliest in the string. If the RE could match more than one substring starting at that point, either the longest possible match or the shortest possible match will be taken, depending on whether the RE is **greedy** or **non-greedy**.

Whether an RE is greedy or not is determined by the following rules:

- Most atoms, and all constraints, have no greediness attribute (because they cannot match variable amounts of text anyway).
- Adding parentheses around an RE does not change its greediness.
- A quantified atom with a fixed-repetition quantifier {{m} or {m}?} has the same greediness (possibly none) as the atom itself.
- A quantified atom with other normal quantifiers (including {m, n} with m equal to n) is greedy (prefers longest match).
- A quantified atom with a non-greedy quantifier (including {m, n}? with m equal to n) is non-greedy (prefers shortest match).
- A branch — that is, an RE that has no top-level | operator — has the same greediness as the first quantified atom in it that has a greediness attribute.
- An RE consisting of two or more branches connected by the | operator is always greedy.

The above rules associate greediness attributes not only with individual quantified atoms, but with branches and entire REs that contain quantified atoms. What that means is that the matching is done in such a way that the branch, or whole RE, matches the longest or shortest possible substring **as a whole**. Once the length of the entire match is determined, the part of it that matches any particular subexpression is determined on the basis of the greediness attribute of that subexpression, with subexpressions starting earlier in the RE taking priority over ones starting later.

An example of what this means:

```sql
SELECT SUBSTRING('XY1234Z', 'Y*([0-9]{1,3})');
Result: 123
```

In the first case, the RE as a whole is greedy because Y* is greedy. It can match beginning at the Y, and it matches the longest possible string starting there, i.e., Y123. The output is the parenthesized part of that, or 123.

```sql
SELECT SUBSTRING('XY1234Z', 'Y*?([0-9]{1,3})');
Result: 1
```

In the second case, the RE as a whole is non-greedy because Y*? is non-greedy. It can match beginning at the Y, and it matches the shortest possible string starting there, i.e., Y1. The subexpression [0-9]{1,3} is greedy but it cannot change the decision as to the overall match length; so it is forced to match just 1.

In short, when an RE contains both greedy and non-greedy subexpressions, the total match length is either as long as possible or as short as possible, according to the attribute assigned to the whole RE. The attributes assigned to the subexpressions only affect how much of that match they are allowed to “eat” relative to each other.

The quantifiers {1,1} and {1,1}? can be used to force greediness or non-greediness, respectively, on a subexpression or a whole RE. This is useful when you need the whole RE to have a greediness attribute different from what's deduced from its elements. As an example, suppose that we are trying to separate
a string containing some digits into the digits and the parts before and after them. We might try to do that like this:

```
SELECT regexp_match('abc01234xyz', '(.*)(\d+)(.*)');
Result: {abc01234,0,xyz}
```

That didn't work: the first .* is greedy so it "eats" as much as it can, leaving the \d+ to match at the last possible place, the last digit. We might try to fix that by making it non-greedy:

```
SELECT regexp_match('abc01234xyz', '(.*?)(\d+)(.*)');
Result: {abc,0,""}
```

That didn't work either, because now the RE as a whole is non-greedy and so it ends the overall match as soon as possible. We can get what we want by forcing the RE as a whole to be greedy:

```
SELECT regexp_match('abc01234xyz', '(?:(.*?)(\d+)(.*)){1,1}');
Result: {abc,01234,xyz}
```

Controlling the RE's overall greediness separately from its components' greediness allows great flexibility in handling variable-length patterns.

When deciding what is a longer or shorter match, match lengths are measured in characters, not collating elements. An empty string is considered longer than no match at all. For example: bb* matches the three middle characters of abbbc; (week|wee)(night|knight) matches all ten characters of weeknights; when (.*)* is matched against abc the parenthesized subexpression matches all three characters; and when (a*)* is matched against bc both the whole RE and the parenthesized subexpression match an empty string.

If case-independent matching is specified, the effect is much as if all case distinctions had vanished from the alphabet. When an alphabetic that exists in multiple cases appears as an ordinary character outside a bracket expression, it is effectively transformed into a bracket expression containing both cases, e.g., x becomes [xX]. When it appears inside a bracket expression, all case counterparts of it are added to the bracket expression, e.g., [x] becomes [xX] and [^x] becomes [^xX].

If newline-sensitive matching is specified, the effect is much as if all case distinctions had vanished from the alphabet. When an alphabetic that exists in multiple cases appears as an ordinary character outside a bracket expression, it is effectively transformed into a bracket expression containing both cases, e.g., x becomes [xX]. When it appears inside a bracket expression, all case counterparts of it are added to the bracket expression, e.g., [x] becomes [xX] and [^x] becomes [^xX].

If partial newline-sensitive matching is specified, this affects . and bracket expressions as with newline-sensitive matching, but not ^ and $.

If inverse partial newline-sensitive matching is specified, this affects ^ and $ as with newline-sensitive matching, but not . and bracket expressions. This isn't very useful but is provided for symmetry.

### 9.7.3.6. Limits and Compatibility

No particular limit is imposed on the length of REs in this implementation. However, programs intended to be highly portable should not employ REs longer than 256 bytes, as a POSIX-compliant implementation can refuse to accept such REs.

The only feature of AREs that is actually incompatible with POSIX EREs is that \ does not lose its special significance inside bracket expressions. All other ARE features use syntax which is illegal or has undefined or unspecified effects in POSIX EREs; the *** syntax of directors likewise is outside the POSIX syntax for both BREs and EREs.

Many of the ARE extensions are borrowed from Perl, but some have been changed to clean them up, and a few Perl extensions are not present. Incompatibilities of note include \b, \B, the lack of special treatment for a trailing newline, the addition of complemented bracket expressions to the
things affected by newline-sensitive matching, the restrictions on parentheses and back references in lookahead/lookbehind constraints, and the longest/shortest-match (rather than first-match) matching semantics.

9.7.3.7. Basic Regular Expressions

BREs differ from EREs in several respects. In BREs, |, +, and ? are ordinary characters and there is no equivalent for their functionality. The delimiters for bounds are \{ and \}, with { and } by themselves ordinary characters. The parentheses for nested subexpressions are \( and \), with ( and ) by themselves ordinary characters. ^ is an ordinary character except at the beginning of the RE or the beginning of a parenthesized subexpression, $ is an ordinary character except at the end of the RE or the end of a parenthesized subexpression, and * is an ordinary character if it appears at the beginning of the RE or the beginning of a parenthesized subexpression (after a possible leading "). Finally, single-digit back references are available, and < and > are synonyms for [[<:]] and [[>:]] respectively; no other escapes are available in BREs.

9.7.3.8. Differences from XQuery (LIKE_REGEX)

Since SQL:2008, the SQL standard includes a LIKE_REGEX operator that performs pattern matching according to the XQuery regular expression standard. Postgres Pro does not yet implement this operator, but you can get very similar behavior using the regexp_match() function, since XQuery regular expressions are quite close to the ARE syntax described above.

Notable differences between the existing POSIX-based regular-expression feature and XQuery regular expressions include:

- XQuery character class subtraction is not supported. An example of this feature is the following to match only English consonants: [a-z-[aeiou]].
- XQuery character class shorthands \c, \C, \i, and \I are not supported.
- XQuery character class elements using \p{UnicodeProperty} or the inverse \P{UnicodeProperty} are not supported.
- POSIX interprets character classes such as \w (see Table 9.21) according to the prevailing locale (which you can control by attaching a COLLATE clause to the operator or function). XQuery specifies these classes by reference to Unicode character properties, so equivalent behavior is obtained only with a locale that follows the Unicode rules.
- The SQL standard (not XQuery itself) attempts to cater for more variants of "newline" than POSIX does. The newline-sensitive matching options described above consider only ASCII NL (\n) to be a newline, but SQL would have us treat CR (\r), CRLF (\r\n) (a Windows-style newline), and some Unicode-only characters like LINE SEPARATOR (U+2028) as newlines as well. Notably, . and \s should count \r\n as one character not two according to SQL.
- Of the character-entry escapes described in Table 9.20, XQuery supports only \n, \r, and \t.
- XQuery does not support the [\name:] syntax for character classes within bracket expressions.
- XQuery does not have lookahead or lookbehind constraints, nor any of the constraint escapes described in Table 9.22.
- The metasyntax forms described in Section 9.7.3.4 do not exist in XQuery.
- The regular expression flag letters defined by XQuery are related to but not the same as the option letters for POSIX (Table 9.24). While the i and q options behave the same, others do not:
  - XQuery’s s (allow dot to match newline) and m (allow ^ and $ to match at newlines) flags provide access to the same behaviors as POSIX’s n, p and v flags, but they do not match the behavior of POSIX’s s and m flags. Note in particular that dot-matches-newline is the default behavior in POSIX but not XQuery.
  - XQuery’s x (ignore whitespace in pattern) flag is noticeably different from POSIX’s expanded-mode flag. POSIX’s x flag also allows # to begin a comment in the pattern, and POSIX will not ignore a whitespace character after a backslash.
9.8. Data Type Formatting Functions

The Postgres Pro formatting functions provide a powerful set of tools for converting various data types (date/time, integer, floating point, numeric) to formatted strings and for converting from formatted strings to specific data types. Table 9.25 lists them. These functions all follow a common calling convention: the first argument is the value to be formatted and the second argument is a template that defines the output or input format.

Table 9.25. Formatting Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>to_char (timestamp, text) → text</code></td>
<td>Converts time stamp to string according to the given format.</td>
<td><code>to_char(timestamp '2002-04-20 17:31:12.66', 'HH12:MI:SS') → 05:31:12</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to_char (interval, text) → text</code></td>
<td>Converts interval to string according to the given format.</td>
<td><code>to_char(interval '15h 2m 12s', 'HH24:MI:SS') → 15:02:12</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to_char (numeric_type, text) → text</code></td>
<td>Converts number to string according to the given format; available for <code>integer</code>, <code>bigint</code>, <code>numeric</code>, <code>real</code>, <code>double precision</code>.</td>
<td><code>to_char(125, '999') → 125</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>to_char(125.8::real, '999D9') → 125.8</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>to_char(-125.8, '999D99S') → 125.80-</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to_date (text, text) → date</code></td>
<td>Converts string to date according to the given format.</td>
<td><code>to_date('05 Dec 2000', 'DD Mon YYYY') → 2000-12-05</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to_number (text, text) → numeric</code></td>
<td>Converts string to numeric according to the given format.</td>
<td><code>to_number('12,454.8-', '99G999D9S') → -12454.8</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to_timestamp (text, text) → timestamp with time zone</code></td>
<td>Converts string to time stamp according to the given format. (See also <code>to_timestamp(double precision)</code> in Table 9.32.)</td>
<td><code>to_timestamp('05 Dec 2000', 'DD Mon YYYY') → 2000-12-05 00:00:00-05</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tip**

`to_timestamp` and `to_date` exist to handle input formats that cannot be converted by simple casting. For most standard date/time formats, simply casting the source string to the required data type works, and is much easier. Similarly, `to_number` is unnecessary for standard numeric representations.

In a `to_char` output template string, there are certain patterns that are recognized and replaced with appropriately-formatted data based on the given value. Any text that is not a template pattern is simply copied verbatim. Similarly, in an input template string (for the other functions), template patterns identify the values to be supplied by the input data string. If there are characters in the template string that are not template patterns, the corresponding characters in the input data string are simply skipped over (whether or not they are equal to the template string characters).
Table 9.26 shows the template patterns available for formatting date and time values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HH</td>
<td>hour of day (01–12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH12</td>
<td>hour of day (01–12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH24</td>
<td>hour of day (00–23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>minute (00–59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>second (00–59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>millisecond (000–999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>microsecond (000000–999999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF1</td>
<td>tenth of second (0–9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF2</td>
<td>hundredth of second (00–99)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF3</td>
<td>millisecond (000–999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF4</td>
<td>tenth of a millisecond (0000–9999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF5</td>
<td>hundredth of a millisecond (000000–999999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF6</td>
<td>microsecond (000000–999999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSSS, SSSSSS</td>
<td>seconds past midnight (0–86399)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AM, am, PM or pm</td>
<td>meridiem indicator (without periods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.M., a.m., P.M. or p.m.</td>
<td>meridiem indicator (with periods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y, YYY</td>
<td>year (4 or more digits) with comma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YYYY</td>
<td>year (4 or more digits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YYY</td>
<td>last 3 digits of year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YY</td>
<td>last 2 digits of year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>last digit of year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IYYY</td>
<td>ISO 8601 week-numbering year (4 or more digits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IYY</td>
<td>last 3 digits of ISO 8601 week-numbering year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IY</td>
<td>last 2 digits of ISO 8601 week-numbering year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>last digit of ISO 8601 week-numbering year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC, bc, AD or ad</td>
<td>era indicator (without periods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.C., b.c., A.D. or a.d.</td>
<td>era indicator (with periods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONTH</td>
<td>full upper case month name (blank-padded to 9 chars)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Month</td>
<td>full capitalized month name (blank-padded to 9 chars)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>full lower case month name (blank-padded to 9 chars)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MON</td>
<td>abbreviated upper case month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mon</td>
<td>abbreviated capitalized month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon</td>
<td>abbreviated lower case month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM</td>
<td>month number (01–12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAY</td>
<td>full upper case day name (blank-padded to 9 chars)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day</td>
<td>full capitalized day name (blank-padded to 9 chars)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>full lower case day name (blank-padded to 9 chars)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DY</td>
<td>abbreviated upper case day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dy</td>
<td>abbreviated capitalized day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dy</td>
<td>abbreviated lower case day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDDD</td>
<td>day of year (001–366)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDDDD</td>
<td>day of ISO 8601 week-numbering year (001–371; day 1 of the year is Monday of the first ISO week)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD</td>
<td>day of month (01–31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>day of the week, Sunday (1) to Saturday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>ISO 8601 day of the week, Monday (1) to Sunday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>week of month (1-5) (the first week starts on the first day of the month)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WW</td>
<td>week number of year (1-53) (the first week starts on the first day of the year)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IW</td>
<td>week number of ISO 8601 week-numbering year (01–53; the first Thursday of the year is in week 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>century (2 digits) (the twenty-first century starts on 2001-01-01)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Julian Date (integer days since November 24, 4714 BC at local midnight; see Section B.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>quarter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RM</td>
<td>month in upper case Roman numerals (I-XII; I=January)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rm</td>
<td>month in lower case Roman numerals (i-xii; i=January)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TZ</td>
<td>upper case time-zone abbreviation (only supported in to_char)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tz</td>
<td>lower case time-zone abbreviation (only supported in to_char)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TZH</td>
<td>time-zone hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TZM</td>
<td>time-zone minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OF</td>
<td>time-zone offset from UTC (only supported in to_char)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifiers can be applied to any template pattern to alter its behavior. For example, FMMonth is the Month pattern with the FM modifier. Table 9.27 shows the modifier patterns for date/time formatting.
### Table 9.27. Template Pattern Modifiers for Date/Time Formatting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modifier</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FM</strong> prefix</td>
<td>fill mode (suppress leading zeroes and padding blanks)</td>
<td>FMMonth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TH</strong> suffix</td>
<td>upper case ordinal number suffix</td>
<td>DDTH, e.g., 12TH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>th</strong> suffix</td>
<td>lower case ordinal number suffix</td>
<td>DDth, e.g., 12th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FX</strong> prefix</td>
<td>fixed format global option (see usage notes)</td>
<td>FX Month DD Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TM</strong> prefix</td>
<td>translation mode (use localized day and month names based on lc_time)</td>
<td>TMMonth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SP</strong> suffix</td>
<td>spell mode (not implemented)</td>
<td>DDSP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage notes for date/time formatting:**

- **FM** suppresses leading zeroes and trailing blanks that would otherwise be added to make the output of a pattern be fixed-width. In Postgres Pro, **FM** modifies only the next specification, while in Oracle **FM** affects all subsequent specifications, and repeated **FM** modifiers toggle fill mode on and off.

- **TM** suppresses trailing blanks whether or not **FM** is specified.

- **to_timestamp** and **to_date** ignore letter case in the input; so for example **MON**, **Mon**, and **mon** all accept the same strings. When using the **TM** modifier, case-folding is done according to the rules of the function's input collation (see Section 22.2).

- **to_timestamp** and **to_date** skip multiple blank spaces at the beginning of the input string and around date and time values unless the **FX** option is used. For example, `to_timestamp(' 2000 JUN', 'YYYY MON') and to_timestamp('2000 - JUN', 'YYYY-MON')` work, but `to_timestamp('2000 JUN', 'FXYYYY MON')` returns an error because to_timestamp expects only a single space. **FX** must be specified as the first item in the template.

- A separator (a space or non-letter/non-digit character) in the template string of **to_timestamp** and **to_date** matches any single separator in the input string or is skipped, unless the **FX** option is used. For example, `to_timestamp('2000/JUN', 'YYYY///MON') and to_timestamp('2000/JUN', 'YYYY/MON')` work, but `to_timestamp('2000//JUN', 'YYYY/MON')` returns an error because the number of separators in the input string exceeds the number of separators in the template.

If **FX** is specified, a separator in the template string matches exactly one character in the input string. But note that the input string character is not required to be the same as the separator from the template string. For example, `to_timestamp('2000/JUN', 'FXYYYY MON')` works, but `to_timestamp('2000/JUN', 'FXYYYY  MON')` returns an error because the second space in the template string consumes the letter J from the input string.

- A **TZH** template pattern can match a signed number. Without the **FX** option, minus signs may be ambiguous, and could be interpreted as a separator. This ambiguity is resolved as follows: If the number of separators before **TZH** in the template string is less than the number of separators before the minus sign in the input string, the minus sign is interpreted as part of **TZH**. Otherwise, the minus sign is considered to be a separator between values. For example, `to_timestamp('2000-10', 'YYYY TZH') matches -10 to TZH, but to_timestamp('2000 -10', 'YYYY  TZH') matches 10 to TZH.

- Ordinary text is allowed in **to_char** templates and will be output literally. You can put a substring in double quotes to force it to be interpreted as literal text even if it contains template patterns. For example, in "'Hello Year 'YYYY", the YYYY will be replaced by the year data, but the single y in Year will not be. In **to_date**, **to_number**, and **to_timestamp**, literal text and double-quoted strings result in skipping the number of characters contained in the string; for example *"XX"* skips two input characters (whether or not they are **XX**).
Prior to Postgres Pro 12, it was possible to skip arbitrary text in the input string using non-letter or non-digit characters. For example, `to_timestamp('2000y6m1d', 'yyyy-MM-DD')` used to work. Now you can only use letter characters for this purpose. For example, `to_timestamp('2000y6m1d', 'yyyytMMtDDt')` and `to_timestamp('2000y6m1d', 'yyyy"y"MM"m"DD"d")` skip $y$, $m$, and $d$.

- If you want to have a double quote in the output you must precede it with a backslash, for example `'"YYYY Month"'`. Backslashes are not otherwise special outside of double-quoted strings. Within a double-quoted string, a backslash causes the next character to be taken literally, whatever it is (but this has no special effect unless the next character is a double quote or another backslash).

- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, if the year format specification is less than four digits, e.g., `YYY`, and the supplied year is less than four digits, the year will be adjusted to be nearest to the year 2020, e.g., 95 becomes 1995.

- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, negative years are treated as signifying BC. If you write both a negative year and an explicit BC field, you get AD again. An input of year zero is treated as 1 BC.

- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, if the `YYYY` conversion has a restriction when processing years with more than 4 digits. You must use some non-digit character or template after `YYYY`, otherwise the year is always interpreted as 4 digits. For example (with the year 20000): `to_date('200001131', 'YYYYMMDD')` will be interpreted as a 4-digit year; instead use a non-digit separator after the year, like `to_date('20000-1131', 'YYYY-MMDD')` or `to_date('20000Nov31', 'YYYYMonDD')`.

- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, the `CC` (century) field is accepted but ignored if there is a `YYY`, `YYYY` or `Y,YYY` field. If `CC` is used with `YY` or `Y` then the result is computed as that year in the specified century. If the century is specified but the year is not, the first year of the century is assumed.

- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, weekday names or numbers (`DAY`, `D`, and related field types) are accepted but are ignored for purposes of computing the result. The same is true for quarter (`Q`) fields.

- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, an ISO 8601 week-numbering date (as distinct from a Gregorian date) can be specified in one of two ways:
  - Year, week number, and weekday: for example `to_date('2006-42-4', 'IYYY-IW-ID')` returns the date 2006-10-19. If you omit the weekday it is assumed to be 1 (Monday).
  - Year and day of year: for example `to_date('2006-291', 'IYYY-IDDD')` also returns 2006-10-19.

Attempting to enter a date using a mixture of ISO 8601 week-numbering fields and Gregorian date fields is nonsensical, and will cause an error. In the context of an ISO 8601 week-numbering year, the concept of a “month” or “day of month” has no meaning. In the context of a Gregorian year, the ISO week has no meaning.

While `to_date` will reject a mixture of Gregorian and ISO week-numbering date fields, `to_char` will not, since output format specifications like `YYYY-MM-DD` (IYYY-IDDD) can be useful. But avoid writing something like `IYYY-MM-DD`; that would yield surprising results near the start of the year. (See Section 9.9.1 for more information.)

- In `to_timestamp`, millisecond (`MS`) or microsecond (`US`) fields are used as the seconds digits after the decimal point. For example `to_timestamp('12.3', 'SS.MS')` is not 3 milliseconds, but 300, because the conversion treats it as 12 + 0.3 seconds. So, for the format `SS.MS`, the input values...
12.3, 12.30, and 12.300 specify the same number of milliseconds. To get three milliseconds, one must write 12.003, which the conversion treats as 12 + 0.003 = 12.003 seconds.

Here is a more complex example: `to_timestamp('15:12:02.020.001230', 'HH24:MI:SS.MS.US')` is 15 hours, 12 minutes, and 2 seconds + 20 milliseconds + 1230 microseconds = 2.021230 seconds.

- `to_char(..., 'ID')`’s day of the week numbering matches the `extract(isodow from ...)` function, but `to_char(..., 'D')`’s does not match `extract(dow from ...)’s day numbering.
- `to_char(interval)` formats HH and HH12 as shown on a 12-hour clock, for example zero hours and 36 hours both output as 12, while HH24 outputs the full hour value, which can exceed 23 in an interval value.

Table 9.28 shows the template patterns available for formatting numeric values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>digit position (can be dropped if insignificant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>digit position (will not be dropped, even if insignificant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. (period)</td>
<td>decimal point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>, (comma)</td>
<td>group (thousands) separator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>negative value in angle brackets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>sign anchored to number (uses locale)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>currency symbol (uses locale)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>decimal point (uses locale)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>group separator (uses locale)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>minus sign in specified position (if number &lt; 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>plus sign in specified position (if number &gt; 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>plus/minus sign in specified position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RN</td>
<td>Roman numeral (input between 1 and 3999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH or th</td>
<td>ordinal number suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>shift specified number of digits (see notes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEEE</td>
<td>exponent for scientific notation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage notes for numeric formatting:
- 0 specifies a digit position that will always be printed, even if it contains a leading/trailing zero. 9 also specifies a digit position, but if it is a leading zero then it will be replaced by a space, while if it is a trailing zero and fill mode is specified then it will be deleted. (For `to_number()`, these two pattern characters are equivalent.)
- The pattern characters S, L, D, and G represent the sign, currency symbol, decimal point, and thousands separator characters defined by the current locale (see `lc_monetary` and `lc_numeric`). The pattern characters period and comma represent those exact characters, with the meanings of decimal point and thousands separator, regardless of locale.
- If no explicit provision is made for a sign in `to_char()`’s pattern, one column will be reserved for the sign, and it will be anchored to (appear just left of) the number. If S appears just left of some 9’s, it will likewise be anchored to the number.
- A sign formatted using SG, PL, or MI is not anchored to the number; for example, `to_char(-12, 'MI9999')` produces ‘- 12’ but `to_char(-12, 'S9999')` produces ’-12’. (The Oracle implementation does not allow the use of MI before 9, but rather requires that 9 precede MI.)
Functions and Operators

- TH does not convert values less than zero and does not convert fractional numbers.
- PL, SG, and TH are Postgres Pro extensions.
- In to_number, if non-data template patterns such as L or TH are used, the corresponding number of input characters are skipped, whether or not they match the template pattern, unless they are data characters (that is, digits, sign, decimal point, or comma). For example, TH would skip two non-data characters.
- V with to_char multiplies the input values by \(10^n\), where \(n\) is the number of digits following V. V with to_number divides in a similar manner. to_char and to_number do not support the use of V combined with a decimal point (e.g., 99.9999 is not allowed).
- EEEE (scientific notation) cannot be used in combination with any of the other formatting patterns or modifiers other than digit and decimal point patterns, and must be at the end of the format string (e.g., 9.999999 is a valid pattern).

Certain modifiers can be applied to any template pattern to alter its behavior. For example, FM99.99 is the 99.99 pattern with the FM modifier. Table 9.29 shows the modifier patterns for numeric formatting.

Table 9.29. Template Pattern Modifiers for Numeric Formatting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modifier</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FM prefix</td>
<td>fill mode (suppress trailing zeroes and padding blanks)</td>
<td>FM99.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH suffix</td>
<td>upper case ordinal number suffix</td>
<td>999TH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th suffix</td>
<td>lower case ordinal number suffix</td>
<td>999th</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.30 shows some examples of the use of the to_char function.

Table 9.30. to_char Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to_char(current_timestamp, 'Day, DD HH12:MI:SS')</td>
<td>'Tuesday, 06 05:39:18'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(current_timestamp, 'FMDay, FMDD HH12:MI:SS')</td>
<td>'Tuesday, 6 05:39:18'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(-0.1, '99.99')</td>
<td>'-.10'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(-0.1, 'FM9.99')</td>
<td>'-.1'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(-0.1, 'FM90.99')</td>
<td>'-0.1'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(0.1, '0.9')</td>
<td>'0.1'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(12, '9990999.9')</td>
<td>'0012.0'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(12, 'FM9990999.9')</td>
<td>'0012.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(485, '999')</td>
<td>'485'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(-485, '999')</td>
<td>'-485'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(485, '9 9 9')</td>
<td>'4 8 5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(1485, '9,999')</td>
<td>'1,485'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(1485, '9G999')</td>
<td>'1 485'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(148.5, '999.999')</td>
<td>'148.500'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(148.5, 'FM999.999')</td>
<td>'148.5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(148.5, 'FM999.990')</td>
<td>'148.500'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(148.5, '999D999')</td>
<td>'148,500'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_char(3148.5, '9G999D999')</td>
<td>'3 148,500'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 9.9. Date/Time Functions and Operators

Table 9.32 shows the available functions for date/time value processing, with details appearing in the following subsections. Table 9.31 illustrates the behaviors of the basic arithmetic operators (+, *, etc.). For formatting functions, refer to Section 9.8. You should be familiar with the background information on date/time data types from Section 8.5.

In addition, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for the date/time types. Dates and timestamps (with or without time zone) are all comparable, while times (with or without time zone) and intervals can only be compared to other values of the same data type. When comparing a timestamp without time zone to a timestamp with time zone, the former value is assumed to be given in the time zone specified by the TimeZone configuration parameter, and is rotated to UTC for comparison to the latter value (which is already in UTC internally). Similarly, a date value is assumed to represent midnight in the TimeZone zone when comparing it to a timestamp.

All the functions and operators described below that take time or timestamp inputs actually come in two variants: one that takes time with time zone or timestamp with time zone, and one that takes time without time zone or timestamp without time zone. For brevity, these variants are not shown separately. Also, the + and * operators come in commutative pairs (for example both date + integer and integer + date); we show only one of each such pair.

#### Table 9.31. Date/Time Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date + integer</td>
<td>date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date + interval → timestamp</td>
<td>Add an interval to a date</td>
<td>date '2001-09-28' + interval '1 hour' → 2001-09-28 01:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date + time → timestamp</td>
<td>Add a time-of-day to a date</td>
<td>date '2001-09-28' + time '03:00' → 2001-09-28 03:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval + interval → interval</td>
<td>Add intervals</td>
<td>interval '1 day' + interval '1 hour' → 1 day 01:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp + interval → timestamp</td>
<td>Add an interval to a timestamp</td>
<td>timestamp '2001-09-28 01:00' + interval '23 hours' → 2001-09-29 00:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time + interval → time</td>
<td>Add an interval to a time</td>
<td>time '01:00' + interval '3 hours' → 04:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- interval → interval</td>
<td>Negate an interval</td>
<td>- interval '23 hours' → -23:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date - date → integer</td>
<td>Subtract dates, producing the number of days elapsed</td>
<td>date '2001-10-01' - date '2001-09-28' → 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date - integer → date</td>
<td>Subtract a number of days from a date</td>
<td>date '2001-10-01' - 7 → 2001-09-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date - interval → timestamp</td>
<td>Subtract an interval from a date</td>
<td>date '2001-09-28' - interval '1 hour' → 2001-09-27 23:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time - time → interval</td>
<td>Subtract times</td>
<td>time '05:00' - time '03:00' → 02:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time - interval → time</td>
<td>Subtract an interval from a time</td>
<td>time '05:00' - interval '2 hours' → 03:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp - interval → timestamp</td>
<td>Subtract an interval from a timestamp</td>
<td>timestamp '2001-09-28 23:00' - interval '23 hours' → 2001-09-28 00:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval - interval → interval</td>
<td>Subtract intervals</td>
<td>interval '1 day' - interval '1 hour' → 1 day -01:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp - timestamp → interval</td>
<td></td>
<td>timestamp - timestamp → interval</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subtract timestamps (converting 24-hour intervals into days, similarly to <code>justify_hours()</code> )</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>timestamp '2001-09-29 03:00' - timestamp '2001-07-27 12:00'</code> → 63 days 15:00:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interval * double precision</code> → <code>interval</code></td>
<td>Multiply an interval by a scalar</td>
<td><code>interval '1 second' * 900</code> → <code>00:15:00</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>interval '1 day' * 21</code> → <code>21 days</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>interval '1 hour' * 3.5</code> → <code>03:30:00</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interval / double precision</code> → <code>interval</code></td>
<td>Divide an interval by a scalar</td>
<td><code>interval '1 hour' / 1.5</code> → <code>00:40:00</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table 9.32. Date/Time Functions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>age(timestamp, timestamp)</code> → <code>interval</code></td>
<td>Subtract arguments, producing a “symbolic” result that uses years and months, rather than just days&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><code>age(timestamp '2001-04-10', timestamp '1957-06-13')</code> → 43 years 9 mons 27 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>age(timestamp)</code> → <code>interval</code></td>
<td>Subtract argument from <code>current_date</code> (at midnight)&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><code>age(timestamp '1957-06-13')</code> → 62 years 6 mons 10 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>clock_timestamp()</code> → <code>timestamp with time zone</code></td>
<td>Current date and time (changes during statement execution); see Section 9.9.5&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><code>clock_timestamp()</code> → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>current_date</code> → <code>date</code></td>
<td>Current date; see Section 9.9.5&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><code>current_date</code> → 2019-12-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>current_time</code> → <code>time with time zone</code></td>
<td>Current time of day; see Section 9.9.5&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><code>current_time</code> → 14:39:53.662522-05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>current_time (integer)</code> → <code>time with time zone</code></td>
<td>Current time of day, with limited precision; see Section 9.9.5&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><code>current_time(2)</code> → 14:39:53.66-05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>current_timestamp</code> → <code>timestamp with time zone</code></td>
<td>Current date and time (start of current transaction); see Section 9.9.5&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><code>current_timestamp</code> → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>current_timestamp (integer)</code> → <code>timestamp with time zone</code></td>
<td>Current date and time (start of current transaction), with limited precision; see Section 9.9.5&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><code>current_timestamp(0)</code> → 2019-12-23 14:39:53-05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_bin(interval, timestamp, timestamp)</code> → <code>timestamp</code></td>
<td>Bin input into specified interval aligned with specified origin; see Section 9.9.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. `age()` is defined as a function that subtracts two `timestamp` values and returns an `interval` value. The result is a “symbolic” result that uses years and months, rather than just days.

2. `current_date` and `current_time` functions return the current date and time, respectively, which are subject to change during the execution of a statement. `clock_timestamp()` returns the current date and time along with a time zone indicator, which changes during the course of a statement execution. They are used to obtain the current date and time within a PostgreSQL session.
## Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>date_bin('15 minutes', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:05:00')</code></td>
<td>→ 2001-02-16 20:35:00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_part(text, timestamp)</code></td>
<td>→ double precision</td>
<td>Get timestamp subfield (equivalent to <code>extract</code>); see Section 9.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_part('hour', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40')</code></td>
<td>→ 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_part(text, interval)</code></td>
<td>→ double precision</td>
<td>Get interval subfield (equivalent to <code>extract</code>); see Section 9.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_part('month', interval '2 years 3 months')</code></td>
<td>→ 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_trunc(text, timestamp)</code></td>
<td>→ timestamp</td>
<td>Truncate to specified precision; see Section 9.9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_trunc('hour', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40')</code></td>
<td>→ 2001-02-16 20:00:00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_trunc(text, timestamp with time zone, text)</code></td>
<td>→ timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Truncate to specified precision in the specified time zone; see Section 9.9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_trunc('day', timestamptz '2001-02-16 20:38:40+00', 'Australia/Sydney')</code></td>
<td>→ 2001-02-16 13:00:00+00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_trunc(text, interval)</code></td>
<td>→ interval</td>
<td>Truncate to specified precision; see Section 9.9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>date_trunc('hour', interval '2 days 3 hours 40 minutes')</code></td>
<td>→ 2 days 03:00:00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>extract(field from timestamp)</code></td>
<td>→ numeric</td>
<td>Get timestamp subfield; see Section 9.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>extract(hour from timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40')</code></td>
<td>→ 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>extract(field from interval)</code></td>
<td>→ numeric</td>
<td>Get interval subfield; see Section 9.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>extract(month from interval '2 years 3 months')</code></td>
<td>→ 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isfinite(date)</code></td>
<td>→ boolean</td>
<td>Test for finite date (not +/-infinity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isfinite(date '2001-02-16')</code></td>
<td>→ true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isfinite(timestamp)</code></td>
<td>→ boolean</td>
<td>Test for finite timestamp (not +/-infinity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isfinite(timestamp 'infinity')</code></td>
<td>→ false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isfinite(interval)</code></td>
<td>→ boolean</td>
<td>Test for finite interval (currently always true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isfinite(interval '4 hours')</code></td>
<td>→ true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>justify_days(interval)</code></td>
<td>→ interval</td>
<td>Adjust interval so 30-day time periods are represented as months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>justify_days(interval '35 days')</code></td>
<td>→ 1 mon 5 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>justify_hours(interval)</code></td>
<td>→ interval</td>
<td>Adjust interval so 24-hour time periods are represented as days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>justify_hours(interval '27 hours')</code></td>
<td>→ 1 day 03:00:00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>justify_interval(interval)</code></td>
<td>→ interval</td>
<td>Adjust interval using <code>justify_days</code> and <code>justify_hours</code> , with additional sign adjustments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>justify_interval(interval '1 mon -1 hour')</code></td>
<td>→ 29 days 23:00:00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>localtime</strong> → <code>time</code></td>
<td>Current time of day; see Section 9.9.5</td>
<td><code>localtime() → 14:39:53.662522</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>localtime (integer) → time</strong></td>
<td>Current time of day, with limited precision; see Section 9.9.5</td>
<td><code>localtime(0) → 14:39:53</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>localtimestamp</strong> → <code>timestamp</code></td>
<td>Current date and time (start of current transaction); see Section 9.9.5</td>
<td><code>localtimestamp() → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>localtimestamp (integer) → timestamp</strong></td>
<td>Current date and time (start of current transaction), with limited precision; see Section 9.9.5</td>
<td><code>localtimestamp(2) → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.66</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>make_date (year int, month int, day int) → date</strong></td>
<td>Create date from year, month and day fields (negative years signify BC)</td>
<td><code>make_date(2013, 7, 15) → 2013-07-15</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>make_interval ([years int [, months int [, weeks int [, days int [, hours int [, mins int [, secs double precision ]]]]]]]]) → interval</strong></td>
<td>Create interval from years, months, weeks, days, hours, minutes and seconds fields, each of which can default to zero</td>
<td><code>make_interval(days =&gt; 10) → 10 days</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>make_time (hour int, min int, sec double precision) → time</strong></td>
<td>Create time from hour, minute and seconds fields</td>
<td><code>make_time(8, 15, 23.5) → 08:15:23.5</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>make_timestamp (year int, month int, day int, hour int, min int, sec double precision) → timestamp</strong></td>
<td>Create timestamp from year, month, day, hour, minute and seconds fields (negative years signify BC)</td>
<td><code>make_timestamp(2013, 7, 15, 8, 15, 23.5) → 2013-07-15 08:15:23.5</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>make_timestamp (year int, month int, day int, hour int, min int, sec double precision [, timezone text]) → timestamp with time zone</strong></td>
<td>Create timestamp with time zone from year, month, day, hour, minute and seconds fields (negative years signify BC). If <code>timezone</code> is not specified, the current time zone is used; the examples assume the session time zone is Europe/London</td>
<td><code>make_timestamp(2013, 7, 15, 8, 15, 23.5) → 2013-07-15 08:15:23.5+01</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>now () → timestamp with time zone</strong></td>
<td>Current date and time (start of current transaction); see Section 9.9.5</td>
<td><code>now() → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>statement_timestamp () → timestamp with time zone</strong></td>
<td>Current date and time (start of current statement); see Section 9.9.5</td>
<td><code>statement_timestamp() → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>timeofday () → text</strong></td>
<td>Current date and time (like <code>clock_timestamp</code>, but as a text string); see Section 9.9.5</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In addition to these functions, the SQL `OVERLAPS` operator is supported:

\[(\text{start1, end1}) \ \text{OVERLAPS} \ (\text{start2, end2})\]

\[(\text{start1, length1}) \ \text{OVERLAPS} \ (\text{start2, length2})\]

This expression yields true when two time periods (defined by their endpoints) overlap, false when they do not overlap. The endpoints can be specified as pairs of dates, times, or time stamps; or as a date, time, or time stamp followed by an interval. When a pair of values is provided, either the start or the end can be written first; (`OVERLAPS`) automatically takes the earlier value of the pair as the start. Each time period is considered to represent the half-open interval `start <= time < end`, unless `start` and `end` are equal in which case it represents that single time instant. This means for instance that two time periods with only an endpoint in common do not overlap.

When adding an interval value to (or subtracting an interval value from) a timestamp with time zone value, the days component advances or decrements the date of the timestamp with time zone by the indicated number of days, keeping the time of day the same. Across daylight saving time changes (when the session time zone is set to a time zone that recognizes DST), this means interval '1 day' does not necessarily equal interval '24 hours'. For example, with the session time zone set to America/Denver:

SELECT timestamp with time zone '2005-04-02 12:00:00-07' + interval '1 day';
Result: 2005-04-03 12:00:00-06

SELECT timestamp with time zone '2005-04-02 12:00:00-07' + interval '24 hours';
Result: 2005-04-03 13:00:00-06

This happens because an hour was skipped due to a change in daylight saving time at 2005-04-03 02:00:00 in time zone America/Denver.

Note there can be ambiguity in the `months` field returned by `age` because different months have different numbers of days. Postgres Pro's approach uses the month from the earlier of the two dates when calculating partial months. For example, `age('2004-06-01', '2004-04-30')` uses April to yield 1 mon 1 day, while using May would yield 1 mon 2 days because May has 31 days, while April has only 30.

Subtraction of dates and timestamps can also be complex. One conceptually simple way to perform subtraction is to convert each value to a number of seconds using `EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM ...)`, then subtract the results; this produces the number of `seconds` between the two values. This will adjust for

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>timeofday()</code></td>
<td>→ Mon Dec 23 14:39:53.662522 2019 EST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>transaction_timestamp()</code></td>
<td>→ 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to_timestamp(double precision)</code></td>
<td>→ timestamp with time zone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to_timestamp(1284352323)</code></td>
<td>→ 2010-09-13 04:32:03+00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the number of days in each month, timezone changes, and daylight saving time adjustments. Subtraction of date or timestamp values with the “-” operator returns the number of days (24-hours) and hours/minutes/seconds between the values, making the same adjustments. The \texttt{age} function returns years, months, days, and hours/minutes/seconds, performing field-by-field subtraction and then adjusting for negative field values. The following queries illustrate the differences in these approaches. The sample results were produced with \texttt{timezone = 'US/Eastern'}; there is a daylight saving time change between the two dates used:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM timestamptz '2013-07-01 12:00:00') - 
EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM timestamptz '2013-03-01 12:00:00');
Result: 10537200

SELECT (EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM timestamptz '2013-07-01 12:00:00') - 
EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM timestamptz '2013-03-01 12:00:00'))) 
/ 60 / 60 / 24;
Result: 121.958333333333

SELECT timestamptz '2013-07-01 12:00:00' - timestamptz '2013-03-01 12:00:00';
Result: 121 days 23:00:00

SELECT age(timestamptz '2013-07-01 12:00:00', timestamptz '2013-03-01 12:00:00');
Result: 4 mons
\end{verbatim}

9.9.1. \texttt{EXTRACT, date_part}

\texttt{EXTRACT(field FROM source)}

The \texttt{extract} function retrieves subfields such as year or hour from date/time values. \texttt{source} must be a value expression of type \texttt{timestamp}, \texttt{time}, or \texttt{interval}. (Expressions of type \texttt{date} are cast to \texttt{timestamp} and can therefore be used as well.) \texttt{field} is an identifier or string that selects what field to extract from the source value. The \texttt{extract} function returns values of type \texttt{numeric}. The following are valid field names:

- \texttt{century}
  - The century
    - SELECT \texttt{EXTRACT(CENTURY FROM TIMESTAMP '2000-12-16 12:21:13');}
      \texttt{Result: 20}
    - SELECT \texttt{EXTRACT(CENTURY FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');}
      \texttt{Result: 21}

    The first century starts at 0001-01-01 00:00:00 AD, although they did not know it at the time. This definition applies to all Gregorian calendar countries. There is no century number 0, you go from -1 century to 1 century. If you disagree with this, please write your complaint to: Pope, Cathedral Saint-Peter of Roma, Vatican.

- \texttt{day}
  - For \texttt{timestamp} values, the day (of the month) field (1-31); for \texttt{interval} values, the number of days
    - SELECT \texttt{EXTRACT(DAY FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');}
      \texttt{Result: 16}
    - SELECT \texttt{EXTRACT(DAY FROM INTERVAL '40 days 1 minute');}
      \texttt{Result: 40}

- \texttt{decade}
  - The year field divided by 10
    - SELECT \texttt{EXTRACT(DECADE FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');}
      \texttt{Result: 200}

- \texttt{dow}
  - The day of the week as Sunday (0) to Saturday (6)
SELECT EXTRACT(DOW FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 5

Note that extract's day of the week numbering differs from that of the to_char(..., 'D') function.

doy

The day of the year (1-365/366)

SELECT EXTRACT(DOY FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 47

epoch

For timestamp with time zone values, the number of seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC (negative for timestamps before that); for date and timestamp values, the nominal number of seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00, without regard to timezone or daylight-savings rules; for interval values, the total number of seconds in the interval

SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2001-02-16 20:38:40.12-08');
Result: 982384720.12

SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40.12');
Result: 982355920.12

SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM INTERVAL '5 days 3 hours');
Result: 442800

You can convert an epoch value back to a timestamp with time zone with to_timestamp:

SELECT to_timestamp(982384720.12);
Result: 2001-02-17 04:38:40.12+00

Beware that applying to_timestamp to an epoch extracted from a date or timestamp value could produce a misleading result: the result will effectively assume that the original value had been given in UTC, which might not be the case.

hour

The hour field (0-23)

SELECT EXTRACT(HOUR FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 20

isodow

The day of the week as Monday (1) to Sunday (7)

SELECT EXTRACT(ISODOW FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-18 20:38:40');
Result: 7

This is identical to dow except for Sunday. This matches the ISO 8601 day of the week numbering.

isoyear

The ISO 8601 week-numbering year that the date falls in (not applicable to intervals)

SELECT EXTRACT(ISOYEAR FROM DATE '2006-01-01');
Result: 2005
SELECT EXTRACT(ISOYEAR FROM DATE '2006-01-02');
Result: 2006

Each ISO 8601 week-numbering year begins with the Monday of the week containing the 4th of January, so in early January or late December the ISO year may be different from the Gregorian year. See the week field for more information.
This field is not available in PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.3.

### julian

The *Julian Date* corresponding to the date or timestamp (not applicable to intervals). Timestamps that are not local midnight result in a fractional value. See Section B.7 for more information.

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(JULIAN FROM DATE '2006-01-01');
Result: 2453737
```

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(JULIAN FROM TIMESTAMP '2006-01-01 12:00');
Result: 2453737.50000000000000000000
```

### microseconds

The seconds field, including fractional parts, multiplied by 1 000 000; note that this includes full seconds.

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(MICROSECONDS FROM TIME '17:12:28.5');
Result: 28500000
```

### millennium

The millennium

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(MILLENNIUM FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 3
```

Years in the 1900s are in the second millennium. The third millennium started January 1, 2001.

### milliseconds

The seconds field, including fractional parts, multiplied by 1000. Note that this includes full seconds.

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(MILLISECONDS FROM TIME '17:12:28.5');
Result: 28500
```

### minute

The minutes field (0–59)

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(MINUTE FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 38
```

### month

For *timestamp* values, the number of the month within the year (1–12); for *interval* values, the number of months, modulo 12 (0–11)

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(MONTH FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 2
```

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(MONTH FROM INTERVAL '2 years 3 months');
Result: 3
```

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(MONTH FROM INTERVAL '2 years 13 months');
Result: 1
```

### quarter

The quarter of the year (1–4) that the date is in

```sql
SELECT EXTRACT(QUARTER FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 1
```

### second

The seconds field, including any fractional seconds
SELECT EXTRACT(SECOND FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 40

SELECT EXTRACT(SECOND FROM TIME '17:12:28.5');
Result: 28.5

timezone

The time zone offset from UTC, measured in seconds. Positive values correspond to time zones east of UTC, negative values to zones west of UTC. (Technically, Postgres Pro does not use UTC because leap seconds are not handled.)

timezone_hour

The hour component of the time zone offset

timezone_minute

The minute component of the time zone offset

week

The number of the ISO 8601 week-numbering week of the year. By definition, ISO weeks start on Mondays and the first week of a year contains January 4 of that year. In other words, the first Thursday of a year is in week 1 of that year.

In the ISO week-numbering system, it is possible for early-January dates to be part of the 52nd or 53rd week of the previous year, and for late-December dates to be part of the first week of the next year. For example, 2005-01-01 is part of the 53rd week of year 2004, and 2006-01-01 is part of the 52nd week of year 2005, while 2012-12-31 is part of the first week of 2013. It's recommended to use the isoyear field together with week to get consistent results.

SELECT EXTRACT(WEEK FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 7

year

The year field. Keep in mind there is no 0 AD, so subtracting BC years from AD years should be done with care.

SELECT EXTRACT(YEAR FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 2001

Note

When the input value is +/-Infinity, extract returns +/-Infinity for monotonically-increasing fields (epoch, julian, year, isoyear, decade, century, and millennium). For other fields, NULL is returned. Postgres Pro versions before 9.6 returned zero for all cases of infinite input.

The extract function is primarily intended for computational processing. For formatting date/time values for display, see Section 9.8.

The date_part function is modeled on the traditional Ingres equivalent to the SQL-standard function extract:

date_part('field', source)

Note that here the field parameter needs to be a string value, not a name. The valid field names for date_part are the same as for extract. For historical reasons, the date_part function returns values of type double precision. This can result in a loss of precision in certain uses. Using extract is recommended instead.
9.9.2. date_trunc

The function `date_trunc` is conceptually similar to the `trunc` function for numbers.

`date_trunc(field, source [, time_zone ])`

`source` is a value expression of type `timestamp`, `timestamp with time zone`, or `interval`. (Values of type `date` and `time` are cast automatically to `timestamp` or `interval`, respectively.) `field` selects to which precision to truncate the input value. The return value is likewise of type `timestamp`, `timestamp with time zone`, or `interval`, and it has all fields that are less significant than the selected one set to zero (or one, for day and month).

Valid values for `field` are:

- microseconds
- milliseconds
- second
- minute
- hour
- day
- week
- month
- quarter
- year
- decade
- century
- millennium

When the input value is of type `timestamp with time zone`, the truncation is performed with respect to a particular time zone; for example, truncation to `day` produces a value that is midnight in that zone. By default, truncation is done with respect to the current `TimeZone` setting, but the optional `time_zone` argument can be provided to specify a different time zone. The time zone name can be specified in any of the ways described in Section 8.5.3.

A time zone cannot be specified when processing `timestamp without time zone` or `interval` inputs. These are always taken at face value.

Examples (assuming the local time zone is `America/New_York`):

- `SELECT date_trunc('hour', TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');`
  `Result: 2001-02-16 20:00:00`

- `SELECT date_trunc('year', TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');`
  `Result: 2001-01-01 00:00:00`

- `SELECT date_trunc('day', TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2001-02-16 20:38:40+00');`
  `Result: 2001-02-16 00:00:00-05`

- `SELECT date_trunc('day', TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2001-02-16 20:38:40+00', 'Australia/Sydney');`
  `Result: 2001-02-16 08:00:00-05`

- `SELECT date_trunc('hour', INTERVAL '4 hours 3 minutes');`

```sql
SELECT date_part('day', TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 16

SELECT date_part('hour', INTERVAL '4 hours 3 minutes');
Result: 4
```
### 9.9.3. date_bin

The function `date_bin` "bins" the input timestamp into the specified interval (the `stride`) aligned with a specified origin.

\[
date_bin(stride, source, origin)
\]

`source` is a value expression of type `timestamp` or `timestamp with time zone`. (Values of type `date` are cast automatically to `timestamp`.) `stride` is a value expression of type `interval`. The return value is likewise of type `timestamp` or `timestamp with time zone`, and it marks the beginning of the bin into which the `source` is placed.

**Examples:**

- `SELECT date_bin('15 minutes', TIMESTAMP '2020-02-11 15:44:17', TIMESTAMP '2001-01-01');`
  - **Result:** `2020-02-11 15:30:00`

- `SELECT date_bin('15 minutes', TIMESTAMP '2020-02-11 15:44:17', TIMESTAMP '2001-01-01 00:02:30');`
  - **Result:** `2020-02-11 15:32:30`

In the case of full units (1 minute, 1 hour, etc.), it gives the same result as the analogous `date_trunc` call, but the difference is that `date_bin` can truncate to an arbitrary interval.

The `stride` interval must be greater than zero and cannot contain units of month or larger.

### 9.9.4. AT TIME ZONE

The `AT TIME ZONE` operator converts time stamp without time zone to/from time stamp with time zone, and time with time zone values to different time zones. Table 9.33 shows its variants.

**Table 9.33. AT TIME ZONE Variants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timestamp without time zone <code>AT TIME ZONE zone</code> → timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Converts given time stamp without time zone to time stamp with time zone, assuming the given value is in the named time zone.</td>
<td>timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40' at time zone 'America/Denver' → 2001-02-16 03:38:40+00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| timestamp with time zone `AT TIME ZONE zone` → timestamp without time zone | Converts given time stamp with time zone to time stamp without time zone, as the time would appear in that zone. | timestamp with time zone '2001-02-16 20:38:40-05' at time zone 'America/Denver' → 2001-02-16 18:38:40 |

| time with time zone `AT TIME ZONE zone` → time with time zone | Converts given time with time zone to a new time zone. Since no date is supplied, this uses the currently active UTC offset for the named destination zone. | time with time zone '05:34:17-05' at time zone 'UTC' → 10:34:17+00 |

In these expressions, the desired time zone `zone` can be specified either as a text value (e.g., 'America/Los_Angeles') or as an interval (e.g., `INTERVAL '-08:00'`). In the text case, a time zone name can be specified in any of the ways described in Section 8.5.3. The interval case is only useful for zones that have fixed offsets from UTC, so it is not very common in practice.
Examples (assuming the current TimeZone setting is America/Los_Angeles):

SELECT TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40' AT TIME ZONE 'America/Denver';
Result: 2001-02-16 19:38:40-08

SELECT TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2001-02-16 20:38:40-05' AT TIME ZONE 'America/Denver';
Result: 2001-02-16 18:38:40

SELECT TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40' AT TIME ZONE 'Asia/Tokyo' AT TIME ZONE 'America/Chicago';
Result: 2001-02-16 05:38:40

The first example adds a time zone to a value that lacks it, and displays the value using the current TimeZone setting. The second example shifts the time stamp with time zone value to the specified time zone, and returns the value without a time zone. This allows storage and display of values different from the current TimeZone setting. The third example converts Tokyo time to Chicago time.

The function timezone(zone, timestamp) is equivalent to the SQL-conforming construct timestamp AT TIME ZONE zone.

9.9.5. Current Date/Time

Postgres Pro provides a number of functions that return values related to the current date and time. These SQL-standard functions all return values based on the start time of the current transaction:

CURRENT_DATE
CURRENT_TIME
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
CURRENT_TIME(precision)
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP(precision)
LOCALTIME
LOCTIMESTAMP
LOCTIME(precision)
LOCTIMESTAMP(precision)

CURRENT_TIME and CURRENT_TIMESTAMP deliver values with time zone; LOCALTIME and LOCTIMESTAMP deliver values without time zone.

CURRENT_TIME, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP, LOCALTIME, and LOCTIMESTAMP can optionally take a precision parameter, which causes the result to be rounded to that many fractional digits in the seconds field. Without a precision parameter, the result is given to the full available precision.

Some examples:

SELECT CURRENT_TIME;
Result: 14:39:53.662522-05

SELECT CURRENT_DATE;
Result: 2019-12-23

SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP;
Result: 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05

SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP(2);
Result: 2019-12-23 14:39:53.66-05

SELECT LOCTIMESTAMP;
Result: 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522

Since these functions return the start time of the current transaction, their values do not change during the transaction. This is considered a feature: the intent is to allow a single transaction to have a consistent
notion of the “current” time, so that multiple modifications within the same transaction bear the same time stamp.

**Note**
Other database systems might advance these values more frequently.

Postgres Pro also provides functions that return the start time of the current statement, as well as the actual current time at the instant the function is called. The complete list of non-SQL-standard time functions is:

- `transaction_timestamp()`
- `statement_timestamp()`
- `clock_timestamp()`
- `timeofday()`
- `now()`

`transaction_timestamp()` is equivalent to `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`, but is named to clearly reflect what it returns. `statement_timestamp()` returns the start time of the current statement (more specifically, the time of receipt of the latest command message from the client). `statement_timestamp()` and `transaction_timestamp()` return the same value during the first command of a transaction, but might differ during subsequent commands. `clock_timestamp()` returns the actual current time, and therefore its value changes even within a single SQL command. `timeofday()` is a historical Postgres Pro function. Like `clock_timestamp()`, it returns the actual current time, but as a formatted text string rather than a `timestamp` with time zone value. `now()` is a traditional Postgres Pro equivalent to `transaction_timestamp()`.

All the date/time data types also accept the special literal value `now` to specify the current date and time (again, interpreted as the transaction start time). Thus, the following three all return the same result:

```sql
SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP;
SELECT now();
SELECT TIMESTAMP 'now'; -- but see tip below
```

**Tip**
Do not use the third form when specifying a value to be evaluated later, for example in a `DEFAULT` clause for a table column. The system will convert `now` to a `timestamp` as soon as the constant is parsed, so that when the default value is needed, the time of the table creation would be used! The first two forms will not be evaluated until the default value is used, because they are function calls. Thus they will give the desired behavior of defaulting to the time of row insertion. (See also Section 8.5.1.4.)

### 9.9.6. Delaying Execution

The following functions are available to delay execution of the server process:

- `pg_sleep ( double precision )`
- `pg_sleep_for ( interval )`
- `pg_sleep_until ( timestamp with time zone )`

`pg_sleep` makes the current session's process sleep until the given number of seconds have elapsed. Fractional-second delays can be specified. `pg_sleep_for` is a convenience function to allow the sleep time to be specified as an `interval`. `pg_sleep_until` is a convenience function for when a specific wake-up time is desired. For example:

```sql
SELECT pg_sleep(1.5);
SELECT pg_sleep_for('5 minutes');
SELECT pg_sleep_until('tomorrow 03:00');
```
Note
The effective resolution of the sleep interval is platform-specific; 0.01 seconds is a common value. The sleep delay will be at least as long as specified. It might be longer depending on factors such as server load. In particular, `pg_sleep_until` is not guaranteed to wake up exactly at the specified time, but it will not wake up any earlier.

Warning
Make sure that your session does not hold more locks than necessary when calling `pg_sleep` or its variants. Otherwise other sessions might have to wait for your sleeping process, slowing down the entire system.

9.10. Enum Support Functions
For enum types (described in Section 8.7), there are several functions that allow cleaner programming without hard-coding particular values of an enum type. These are listed in Table 9.34. The examples assume an enum type created as:

```
CREATE TYPE rainbow AS ENUM ('red', 'orange', 'yellow', 'green', 'blue', 'purple');
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>enum_first()</code></td>
<td>Returns the first value of the input enum type.</td>
<td><code>enum_first(null::rainbow)</code> → <code>red</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enum_last()</code></td>
<td>Returns the last value of the input enum type.</td>
<td><code>enum_last(null::rainbow)</code> → <code>purple</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enum_range()</code></td>
<td>Returns all values of the input enum type in an ordered array.</td>
<td><code>enum_range(null::rainbow)</code> → <code>{red, orange, yellow, green, blue, purple}</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `enum_range()`| Returns the range between the two given enum values, as an ordered array. The values must be from the same enum type. If the first parameter is null, the result will start with the first value of the enum type. If the second parameter is null, the result will end with the last value of the enum type. | `enum_range('orange'::rainbow, 'green'::rainbow)` → `{orange, yellow, green}`  
|               |                                                  | `enum_range(NULL, 'green'::rainbow)` → `{red, orange, yellow, green}`       |
|               |                                                  | `enum_range('orange'::rainbow, NULL)` → `{orange, yellow, green, blue, purple}` |

Notice that except for the two-argument form of `enum_range`, these functions disregard the specific value passed to them; they care only about its declared data type. Either null or a specific value of the type can be passed, with the same result. It is more common to apply these functions to a table column or function argument than to a hardwired type name as used in the examples.

9.11. Geometric Functions and Operators
The geometric types `point`, `box`, `lseg`, `line`, `path`, `polygon`, and `circle` have a large set of native support functions and operators, shown in Table 9.35, Table 9.36, and Table 9.37.
### Table 9.35. Geometric Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geometric_type + point → geometric_type</td>
<td>Adds the coordinates of the second point to those of each point of the first argument, thus performing translation. Available for point, box, path, circle.</td>
<td>box '((1,1),(0,0))' + point '((2,0))' → (3,1),(2,0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path + path → path</td>
<td>Concatenates two open paths (returns NULL if either path is closed).</td>
<td>path '[(0,0),(1,1)]' + path '[(2,2),(3,3),(4,4)]' → [(0,0),(1,1),(2,2),(3,3),(4,4)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geometric_type - point → geometric_type</td>
<td>Subtracts the coordinates of the second point from those of each point of the first argument, thus performing translation. Available for point, box, path, circle.</td>
<td>box '((1,1),(0,0))' - point '((2,0))' → (-1,1),(-2,0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geometric_type * point → geometric_type</td>
<td>Multiplies each point of the first argument by the second point (treating a point as being a complex number represented by real and imaginary parts, and performing standard complex multiplication). If one interprets the second point as a vector, this is equivalent to scaling the object's size and distance from the origin by the length of the vector, and rotating it counterclockwise around the origin by the vector's angle from the x axis. Available for point, box, path, circle.</td>
<td>path '[(0,0),(1,0),(1,1)]' * point '((3.0,0))' → ((0,0),(3,0),(3,3)),(0.7071067811865476,-0.7071067811865476),(1.4142135623730951,0))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geometric_type / point → geometric_type</td>
<td>Divides each point of the first argument by the second point (treating a point as being a complex number represented by real and imaginary parts, and performing standard complex division). If one interprets the second point as a vector, this is equivalent to scaling the object's size and distance from the origin down by the length of the vector, and rotating it clockwise around the origin by the vector's angle from the x axis. Available for point, box, path, circle.</td>
<td>path '[(0,0),(1,0),(1,1)]' / point '((2.0,0))' → ((0,0),(0.5,0),(0.5,0.5)),(0.7071067811865476,-0.7071067811865476),(1.4142135623730951,0))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@-@ geometric_type → double precision</td>
<td>Computes the total length. Available for lseg, path.</td>
<td>@-@ path '[(0,0),(1,1),(1,1)]' → 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@@ geometric_type → point</td>
<td>Computes the center point. Available for box, lseg, path, polygon, circle.</td>
<td>@@ box '((2,2),(0,0))' → (1,1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># geometric_type → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of points. Available for path, polygon.</td>
<td># path '[(1,0),(0,1),(-1,0)]' → 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lseg [(0,0),(1,1)]</code> # <code>lseg [(1,0),(0,1)]</code></td>
<td>Computes the point of intersection, or NULL if there is none. Available for <code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>.</td>
<td><code>(0.5,0.5)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>box (2,2),(-1,-1)</code> # <code>box (1,1),(-2,-2)</code></td>
<td>Computes the intersection of two boxes, or NULL if there is none.</td>
<td><code>(1,1),(-1,-1)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point '(0,0)' # lseg '((2,0),(0,2)]'</code></td>
<td>Computes the closest point to the first object on the second object. Available for these pairs of types: (<code>point</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>line</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>line</code>, <code>lseg</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>circle '&lt;(0,0),1&gt;' &lt;-&gt; circle '&lt;(5,0),1&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Computes the distance between the objects. Available for all seven geometric types, for all combinations of <code>point</code> with another geometric type, and for these additional pairs of types: (<code>box</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>circle</code>) (and the commutator cases).</td>
<td><code>3</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point '(1,1)' &lt;@ circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Computes the closest point to the first object on the second object. Available for these pairs of types: (<code>point</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>path</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>polygon</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>circle</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>polygon</code>), (<code>circle</code>, <code>circle</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>box '(1,1),(0,0)' &amp;&lt; box '(2,2),(0,0)'</code></td>
<td>Does first object contain second? Available for these pairs of types: (<code>box</code>, <code>point</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>path</code>, <code>point</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>point</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>polygon</code>), (<code>circle</code>, <code>point</code>), (<code>circle</code>, <code>circle</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>circle '&lt;(0,0),1&gt;' &lt;&lt; circle '&lt;(5,0),1&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Computes the distance between the objects. Available for all seven geometric types, for all combinations of <code>point</code> with another geometric type, and for these additional pairs of types: (<code>box</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>circle</code>) (and the commutator cases).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point '(1,1)' @&gt; circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Does first object contain second? Available for these pairs of types: (<code>box</code>, <code>point</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>path</code>, <code>point</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>point</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>polygon</code>), (<code>circle</code>, <code>point</code>), (<code>circle</code>, <code>circle</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>circle '&lt;(0,0),1&gt;' &lt;&lt;- circle '&lt;(5,0),1&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Computes the distance between the objects. Available for all seven geometric types, for all combinations of <code>point</code> with another geometric type, and for these additional pairs of types: (<code>box</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>circle</code>) (and the commutator cases).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>box '(1,1),(-1,-1)' # </code>box '(1,1),(-2,-2)'`</td>
<td>Computes the intersection of two boxes, or NULL if there is none.</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point '(0,0)' # lseg '((2,0),(0,2)]'</code></td>
<td>Computes the closest point to the first object on the second object. Available for these pairs of types: (<code>point</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>line</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>line</code>, <code>lseg</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>circle '&lt;(0,0),1&gt;' &lt;-&gt; circle '&lt;(5,0),1&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Computes the distance between the objects. Available for all seven geometric types, for all combinations of <code>point</code> with another geometric type, and for these additional pairs of types: (<code>box</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>circle</code>) (and the commutator cases).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point '(1,1)' &lt;@ circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Computes the closest point to the first object on the second object. Available for these pairs of types: (<code>point</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>path</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>polygon</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>circle</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>polygon</code>), (<code>circle</code>, <code>circle</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>box '(1,1),(-1,-1)' # </code>box '(1,1),(-2,-2)'`</td>
<td>Computes the intersection of two boxes, or NULL if there is none.</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point '(0,0)' # lseg '((2,0),(0,2)]'</code></td>
<td>Computes the closest point to the first object on the second object. Available for these pairs of types: (<code>point</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>line</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>line</code>, <code>lseg</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>circle '&lt;(0,0),1&gt;' &lt;-&gt; circle '&lt;(5,0),1&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Computes the distance between the objects. Available for all seven geometric types, for all combinations of <code>point</code> with another geometric type, and for these additional pairs of types: (<code>box</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>circle</code>) (and the commutator cases).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point '(1,1)' &lt;@ circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;'</code></td>
<td>Computes the closest point to the first object on the second object. Available for these pairs of types: (<code>point</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>path</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>polygon</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>circle</code>), (<code>box</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>polygon</code>, <code>polygon</code>), (<code>circle</code>, <code>circle</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>box '(1,1),(-1,-1)' # </code>box '(1,1),(-2,-2)'`</td>
<td>Computes the intersection of two boxes, or NULL if there is none.</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point '(0,0)' # lseg '((2,0),(0,2)]'</code></td>
<td>Computes the closest point to the first object on the second object. Available for these pairs of types: (<code>point</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>point</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>lseg</code>), (<code>lseg</code>, <code>line</code>), (<code>line</code>, <code>box</code>), (<code>line</code>, <code>lseg</code>).</td>
<td><em>(Result not shown)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`geometric_type</td>
<td>&gt;&gt;</td>
<td>geometric_type` → boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`geometric_type &amp;&lt;</td>
<td>geometric_type` → boolean</td>
<td>Does first object not extend above second? Available for box, polygon, circle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`geometric_type</td>
<td>&amp;&gt;</td>
<td>geometric_type` → boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>box &lt;&lt; box</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Is first object below second (allows edges to touch)?</td>
<td>`box '((1,1),(0,0))' &lt;&lt; box '((2,2),(1,1))' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>box &gt;&gt; box</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Is first object above second (allows edges to touch)?</td>
<td>`box '((2,2),(1,1))' &gt;&gt; box '((1,1),(0,0))' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>geometric_type ?# geometric_type</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Do these objects intersect? Available for these pairs of types: (box, box), (lseg, box), (lseg, lseg), (lseg, line), (line, box), (line, line), (path, path).</td>
<td>`lseg '((-1,0),(1,0))' ?# box '(2,2),(-2,-2)' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>?- lseg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Is line horizontal?</td>
<td>`?- lseg '((-1,0),(1,0))' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>?- lseg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Are points horizontally aligned (that is, have same y coordinate)?</td>
<td>`point '(1,0)' ?- point '(0,0)' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`?</td>
<td>lseg` → boolean</td>
<td>Is line vertical?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`point ?</td>
<td>point` → boolean</td>
<td>Are points vertically aligned (that is, have same x coordinate)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`line ?</td>
<td></td>
<td>line` → boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`lseg ?</td>
<td></td>
<td>lseg` → boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>geometric_type ~= geometric_type</code> → boolean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

#### Operator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are these objects the same? Available for <strong>point</strong>, <strong>box</strong>, <strong>polygon</strong>, <strong>circle</strong>.</td>
<td><code>polygon '((0,0),(1,1))' ~= polygon '((1,1),(0,0))' → t</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*“Rotating” a box with these operators only moves its corner points; the box is still considered to have sides parallel to the axes. Hence the box’s size is not preserved, as a true rotation would do.*

#### Caution

Note that the “same as” operator, `~=` represents the usual notion of equality for the **point**, **box**, **polygon**, and **circle** types. Some of the geometric types also have an `=` operator, but `=` compares for equal **areas** only. The other scalar comparison operators (`<`, `<=` and so on), where available for these types, likewise compare areas.

#### Note

Before PostgreSQL 14, the point is strictly below/above comparison operators `point <<| point` and `point |>> point` were respectively called `<<` and `>>`. These names are still available, but are deprecated and will eventually be removed.

#### Table 9.36. Geometric Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>area(geometric_type) → double precision</code></td>
<td>Computes area. Available for <strong>box</strong>, <strong>path</strong>, <strong>circle</strong>. A path input must be closed, else NULL is returned. Also, if the path is self-intersecting, the result may be meaningless.</td>
<td><code>area(box '(2,2),(0,0)') → 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>center(geometric_type) → point</code></td>
<td>Computes center point. Available for <strong>box</strong>, <strong>circle</strong>.</td>
<td><code>center(box '(1,2),(0,0)') → (0.5,1)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>diagonal(box) → lseg</code></td>
<td>Extracts box’s diagonal as a line segment (same as <code>lseg(box)</code>).</td>
<td><code>diagonal(box '(1,2),(0,0)') → [(1,2),(0,0)]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>diameter(circle) → double precision</code></td>
<td>Computes diameter of circle.</td>
<td><code>diameter(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;') → 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>height(box) → double precision</code></td>
<td>Computes vertical size of box.</td>
<td><code>height(box '(1,2),(0,0)') → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isclosed(path) → boolean</code></td>
<td>Is path closed?</td>
<td><code>isclosed(path '(((0,0),(1,1),(2,0)))' → t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isopen(path) → boolean</code></td>
<td>Is path open?</td>
<td><code>isopen(path '[(0,0),(1,1),(2,0)]') → t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>length(geometric_type) → double precision</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computes the total length. Available for <code>lseg</code>, <code>path</code>.</td>
<td><code>length(path '((-1,0),(1,0))') → 4</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**npoints** (`geometric_type`) → integer

Returns the number of points. Available for `path`, `polygon`.

**npoints**(`path '[(0,0),(1,1),(2,0)]') → 3

**pclose** (`path`) → `path`

Converts path to closed form.

**pclose**(`path '[(0,0),(1,1),(2,0)]') → `((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))`

**popen** (`path`) → `path`

Converts path to open form.

**popen**(`path '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → `[(0,0),(1,1),(2,0)]`

**radius** (`circle`) → `double precision`

Computes radius of circle.

**radius**(`circle '<(0,0),2>'`) → 2

**slope** (`point`, `point`) → `double precision`

Computes slope of a line drawn through the two points.

**slope**(`point '(0,0)', point '(2,1)') → 0.5

**width** (`box`) → `double precision`

Computes horizontal size of box.

**width**(`box '(1,2),(0,0)') → 1

### Table 9.37. Geometric Type Conversion Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computes box inscribed within the circle.</td>
<td><code>box(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;' ) → (1.414213562373095,1.414213562373095),( -1.414213562373095,-1.414213562373095)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converts point to empty box.</td>
<td><code>box(point '(1,0)') → (1,0),(1,0)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converts any two corner points to box.</td>
<td><code>box(point '(0,1)', point '(1,0)') → (1,1),(0,0)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computes bounding box of polygon.</td>
<td><code>box (polygon '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → (2,1),(0,0)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computes bounding box of two boxes.</td>
<td><code>bound_box (box '((1,1),(0,0))', box ' (4,4),(3,3)') → (4,4),(0,0)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computes smallest circle enclosing box.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>circle(box '(1,1),(0,0)')</code></td>
<td>${\rightarrow}&lt;0.5,0.5&gt;,0.7071067811865476&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>circle(point, double precision) → circle</code></td>
<td>Constructs circle from center and radius.</td>
<td><code>circle(point '(0,0)', 2.0) →&lt;0,0,2&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>circle(polygon) → circle</code></td>
<td>Converts polygon to circle. The circle's center is the mean of the positions of the polygon's points, and the radius is the average distance of the polygon's points from that center.</td>
<td><code>circle(polygon '((0,0),(1,3),(2,0))') →&lt;1,1,1.6094757082487299&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>line(point, point) → line</code></td>
<td>Converts two points to the line through them.</td>
<td><code>line(point '(-1,0)', point '(1,0)') → {-1,0,0}</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lseg(box) → lseg</code></td>
<td>Extracts box's diagonal as a line segment.</td>
<td><code>lseg(box '(-1,0),(-1,0)') → [-1,0,-1,0]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lseg(point, point) → lseg</code></td>
<td>Constructs line segment from two endpoints.</td>
<td><code>lseg(point '(-1,0)', point '(1,0)') → [-1,0,1,0]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>path(polygon) → path</code></td>
<td>Converts polygon to a closed path with the same list of points.</td>
<td><code>path(polygon '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → ((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point(double precision, double precision) → point</code></td>
<td>Constructs point from its coordinates.</td>
<td><code>point(23.4, -44.5) → (23.4,-44.5)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point(box) → point</code></td>
<td>Computes center of box.</td>
<td><code>point(box '(1,0),(-1,0)') → (0,0)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point(circle) → point</code></td>
<td>Computes center of circle.</td>
<td><code>point(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;') → (0,0)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point(lseg) → point</code></td>
<td>Computes center of line segment.</td>
<td><code>point(lseg '(-1,0),(1,0)') → (0,0)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>point(polygon) → point</code></td>
<td>Computes center of polygon (the mean of the positions of the polygon's points).</td>
<td><code>point(polygon '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → (1,0.3333333333333333)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>polygon(box) → polygon</code></td>
<td>Converts box to a 4-point polygon.</td>
<td><code>polygon(box '(1,0),(0,0)') → ((0,0),(0,1),(1,1),(1,0))</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>polygon(circle) → polygon</code></td>
<td>Converts circle to a 12-point polygon.</td>
<td><code>polygon(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;') → ((-2,0),(-1.7320508075688774,0.9999999999999999),(-1.0000000000000002,1.7320508075688772),(</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>polygon(integer, circle) → polygon</td>
<td>Converts circle to an n-point polygon.</td>
<td>polygon(4, circle '&lt;(3,0),1&gt;') → ((2,0),(3,1),(4,1.2246063538223773e-16),(3,-1))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polygon(path) → polygon</td>
<td>Converts closed path to a polygon with the same list of points.</td>
<td>polygon(path '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → ((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is possible to access the two component numbers of a point as though the point were an array with indexes 0 and 1. For example, if \( t.p \) is a point column then `SELECT p[0] FROM t` retrieves the X coordinate and `UPDATE t SET p[1] = ...` changes the Y coordinate. In the same way, a value of type `box` or `lseg` can be treated as an array of two point values.

### 9.12. Network Address Functions and Operators

The IP network address types, `cidr` and `inet`, support the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 as well as the specialized operators and functions shown in Table 9.38 and Table 9.39.

Any `cidr` value can be cast to `inet` implicitly; therefore, the operators and functions shown below as operating on `inet` also work on `cidr` values. (Where there are separate functions for `inet` and `cidr`, it is because the behavior should be different for the two cases.) Also, it is permitted to cast an `inet` value to `cidr`. When this is done, any bits to the right of the netmask are silently zeroed to create a valid `cidr` value.

#### Table 9.38. IP Address Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{inet} \ll \text{inet} \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td>Is subnet strictly contained by subnet? This operator, and the next four, test for subnet inclusion. They consider only the network parts of the two addresses (ignoring any bits to the right of the netmasks) and determine whether one network is identical to or a subnet of the other.</td>
<td>( \text{inet '192.168.1.5'} \ll \text{inet '192.168.1/24'} \rightarrow \text{t} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{inet} \ll= \text{inet} \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td>Is subnet contained by or equal to subnet?</td>
<td>( \text{inet '192.168.1/24'} \ll= \text{inet '192.168.1/24'} \rightarrow \text{t} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{inet} \gg \text{inet} \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td>Does subnet strictly contain subnet?</td>
<td>( \text{inet '192.168.1/24'} \gg \text{inet '192.168.1.5'} \rightarrow \text{t} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{inet} \gg= \text{inet} \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

250
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>inet &gt;&gt;= inet</code></td>
<td>Does subnet contain or equal subnet?</td>
<td><code>inet '192.168.1/24' &gt;&gt;= inet '192.168.1/24' → t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>inet &amp;&amp; inet</code></td>
<td>Does either subnet contain or equal the other?</td>
<td><code>inet '192.168.1/24' &amp;&amp; inet '192.168.1.80/28' → t</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>inet '192.168.1/24' &amp;&amp; inet '192.168.2.0/28' → f</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>~ inet</code></td>
<td>Computes bitwise NOT.</td>
<td><code>~ inet '192.168.1.6' → 63.87.254.249</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>inet &amp; inet</code></td>
<td>Computes bitwise AND.</td>
<td><code>inet '192.168.1.6' &amp; inet '0.0.0.255' → 0.0.0.6</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`inet</td>
<td>inet`</td>
<td>Computes bitwise OR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>inet + bigint</code></td>
<td>Adds an offset to an address.</td>
<td><code>inet '192.168.1.6' + 25 → 192.168.1.31</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bigint + inet</code></td>
<td>Adds an offset to an address.</td>
<td><code>200 + inet '::ffff:fff0:1' → ::ffff:255.240.0.201</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>inet - bigint</code></td>
<td>Subtracts an offset from an address.</td>
<td><code>inet '192.168.1.43' - 36 → 192.168.1.7</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>inet - inet</code></td>
<td>Computes the difference of two addresses.</td>
<td><code>inet '192.168.1.43' - inet '192.168.1.19' → 24</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>inet '::1' - inet '::ffff:1' → -4294901760</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 9.39. IP Address Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>abbrev (inet)</code></td>
<td>Creates an abbreviated display format as text. (The result is the same as the <code>inet</code> output function produces; it is “abbreviated” only in comparison to the result of an explicit cast to <code>text</code>, which for historical reasons will never suppress the netmask part.)</td>
<td><code>abbrev(inet '10.1.0.0/32') → 10.1.0.0</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>abbrev (cidr)</code></td>
<td>Creates an abbreviated display format as text. (The abbreviation consists of dropping all-zero octets to the right of the netmask; more examples are in Table 8.22.)</td>
<td><code>abbrev(cidr '10.1.0.0/16') → 10.1/16</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>broadcast (inet)</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>broadcast(inet '192.168.1.5/24')</code></td>
<td>Computes the broadcast address for the address's network.</td>
<td><code>→ 192.168.1.255/24</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>family(inet) → integer</code></td>
<td>Returns the address's family: 4 for IPv4, 6 for IPv6.</td>
<td><code>→ 6</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>host(inet) → text</code></td>
<td>Returns the IP address as text, ignoring the netmask.</td>
<td><code>→ 192.168.1.0</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>hostmask(inet '192.168.23.20/30')</code></td>
<td>Computes the host mask for the address's network.</td>
<td><code>→ 0.0.0.3</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>inet_merge(inet '192.168.1.5/24', inet '192.168.2.5/24')</code></td>
<td>Computes the smallest network that includes both of the given networks.</td>
<td><code>→ 192.168.0.0/22</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>inet_same_family(inet '192.168.1.5/24', inet '::1')</code></td>
<td>Tests whether the addresses belong to the same IP family.</td>
<td><code>→ f</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>masklen(inet) → integer</code></td>
<td>Returns the netmask length in bits.</td>
<td><code>→ 24</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>netmask(inet '192.168.1.5/24')</code></td>
<td>Computes the network mask for the address's network.</td>
<td><code>→ 255.255.255.0</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>network(inet '192.168.1.5/24')</code></td>
<td>Returns the network part of the address, zeroing out whatever is to the right of the netmask. (This is equivalent to casting the value to <code>cidr</code>.)</td>
<td><code>→ 192.168.1.0/24</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>set_masklen(inet '192.168.1.5/24', 16)</code></td>
<td>Sets the netmask length for an <code>inet</code> value. The address part does not change.</td>
<td><code>→ 192.168.1.5/16</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>set_masklen(cidr '192.168.1.0/24', 16)</code></td>
<td>Sets the netmask length for a <code>cidr</code> value. Address bits to the right of the new netmask are set to zero.</td>
<td><code>→ 192.168.0.0/16</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text(inet '192.168.1.5')</code></td>
<td>Returns the unabbreviated IP address and netmask length as text. (This has the same result as an explicit cast to <code>text</code>.)</td>
<td><code>→ 192.168.1.5/32</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tip

The `abbrev`, `host`, and `text` functions are primarily intended to offer alternative display formats for IP addresses.
The MAC address types, `macaddr` and `macaddr8`, support the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 as well as the specialized functions shown in Table 9.40. In addition, they support the bitwise logical operators ~, & and | (NOT, AND and OR), just as shown above for IP addresses.

### Table 9.40. MAC Address Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>trunc(macaddr)</code> → <code>macaddr</code></td>
<td>Sets the last 3 bytes of the address to zero. The remaining prefix can be associated with a particular manufacturer (using data not included in PostgreSQL).</td>
<td><code>trunc(macaddr '12:34:56:78:90:ab')</code> → <code>12:34:56:00:00:00</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>trunc(macaddr8)</code> → <code>macaddr8</code></td>
<td>Sets the last 5 bytes of the address to zero. The remaining prefix can be associated with a particular manufacturer (using data not included in PostgreSQL).</td>
<td><code>trunc(macaddr8 '12:34:56:78:90:ab:cd:ef')</code> → <code>12:34:56:00:00:00:00:00</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>macaddr8_set7bit(macaddr8)</code> → <code>macaddr8</code></td>
<td>Sets the 7th bit of the address to one, creating what is known as modified EUI-64, for inclusion in an IPv6 address.</td>
<td><code>macaddr8_set7bit(macaddr8 '00:34:56:ab:cd:ef')</code> → <code>02:34:56:ff:fe:ab:cd:ef</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.13. Text Search Functions and Operators

Table 9.41, Table 9.42 and Table 9.43 summarize the functions and operators that are provided for full text searching. See Chapter 12 for a detailed explanation of Postgres Pro's text search facility.

### Table 9.41. Text Search Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>tsvector @@ tsquery</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Does <code>tsvector</code> match <code>tsquery</code>? (The arguments can be given in either order.)</td>
<td><code>to_tsvector('fat cats ate rats') @@ to_tsquery('cat &amp; rat')</code> → <code>t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tsquery @@ tsvector</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Does text string, after implicit invocation of <code>to_tsvector()</code>, match <code>tsquery</code>?</td>
<td><code>to_tsvector('fat cats ate rats') @@ to_tsquery('cat &amp; rat')</code> → <code>t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text @@ tsquery</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>This is a deprecated synonym for <code>@</code>.</td>
<td><code>to_tsvector('fat cats ate rats') @@ to_tsquery('cat &amp; rat')</code> → <code>t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`tsvector</td>
<td></td>
<td>tsquery<code>→</code>tsvector`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tsquery &amp;&amp; tsquery</code> → <code>tsquery</code></td>
<td>ANDs two <code>tsqueries</code> together, producing a query that matches documents that match both input queries.</td>
<td>`'fat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tsquery</td>
<td></td>
<td>tsquery → tsquery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!! tsquery → tsquery</td>
<td>Negates a tsquery, producing a query that matches documents that do not match the input query.</td>
<td>!! 'cat':tsquery → !'cat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsquery &lt;-&gt; tsquery</td>
<td>Constructs a phrase query, which matches if the two input queries match at successive lexemes.</td>
<td>to_tsquery('fat') &lt;-&gt; to_tsquery('rat') → 'fat' &lt;-&gt; 'rat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsquery @&gt; tsquery → boolean</td>
<td>Does first tsquery contain the second? (This considers only whether all the lexemes appearing in one query appear in the other, ignoring the combining operators.)</td>
<td>'cat':tsquery @&gt; 'cat &amp; rat':tsquery → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsquery &lt;@ tsquery → boolean</td>
<td>Is first tsquery contained in the second? (This considers only whether all the lexemes appearing in one query appear in the other, ignoring the combining operators.)</td>
<td>'cat':tsquery &lt;@ 'cat &amp; rat':tsquery → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>'cat':tsquery &lt;@ '!cat &amp; rat':tsquery → t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to these specialized operators, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for types tsvector and tsquery. These are not very useful for text searching but allow, for example, unique indexes to be built on columns of these types.

### Table 9.42. Text Search Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>array_to_tsvector</td>
<td>Converts an array of lexemes to a tsvector. The given strings are used as-is without further processing.</td>
<td>array_to_tsvector('{fat,cat,rat}'::text[]) → 'cat' 'fat' 'rat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_current_ts_config</td>
<td>Returns the OID of the current default text search configuration (as set by default_text_search_config).</td>
<td>get_current_ts_config() → english</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length</td>
<td>Returns the number of lexemes in the tsvector.</td>
<td>length('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A':tsvector) → 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numnode</td>
<td>Returns the number of lexemes plus operators in the tsquery.</td>
<td>numnode('fat &amp; rat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plainto_tsquery</td>
<td>([ config regconfig, ] query text )→ tsquery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plainto_tsquery</td>
<td>Converts text to a tsquery, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. Any punctuation in the string is ignored (it does not determine query operators). The resulting query matches documents containing all non-stopwords in the text.</td>
<td>plainto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat Rats') → 'fat' &amp; 'rat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phraseto_tsquery</td>
<td>Converts text to a tsquery, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. Any punctuation in the string is ignored (it does not determine query operators). The resulting query matches phrases containing all non-stopwords in the text.</td>
<td>phraseto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat Rats') → 'fat' &lt;-&gt; 'rat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phraseto_tsquery</td>
<td>Converts text to a tsquery, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. Quoted word sequences are converted to phrase tests. The word “or” is understood as producing an OR operator, and a dash produces a NOT operator; other punctuation is ignored. This approximates the behavior of some common web search tools.</td>
<td>phraseto_tsquery('english', '&quot;fat rat&quot; or cat dog') → 'fat' &lt;-&gt; 'rat'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| querytree                 | Produces a representation of the indexable portion of a tsquery. A result that is empty or just \
T indicates a non-indexable query. | querytree('foo & ! bar':tsquery) → 'foo' |
| setweight                 | Assigns the specified weight to each element of the vector.                  | setweight('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5B':tsvector, 'A') → 'cat':3A 'fat':2A,4A 'rat':5A |
| setweight                 | Assigns the specified weight to elements of the vector that are listed in lexemes. | setweight('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5,6B':tsvector, 'A', '{cat,rat}') → 'cat':3A 'fat':2,4 'rat':5A,6A |
| strip                     | Removes positions and weights from the tsvector.                            | strip('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A':tsvector) → 'cat' 'fat' 'rat' |
| to_tsquery                | Converts text to a tsquery, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. The words must be combined by valid tsquery operators. | to_tsquery('english', 'The & Fat & Rats') → 'fat' & 'rat' |
| to_tsvector               | Converts text to a tsvector, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. Position information is included in the result. | to_tsvector('english', 'The Fat Rats') → 'fat':2 'rat':3 |
| to_tsvector               | Converts each string value in the JSON document to a tsvector, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. The results are then concatenated in document order to produce the output. Position information is generated as though one | to_tsvector('english', 'The Fat Rats') → 'fat':2 'rat':3 |
Functions and Operators
Function
Description
Example(s)
stopword exists between each pair of string values. (Beware that “document order” of the
ﬁelds of a JSON object is implementation-dependent when the input is jsonb; observe the
diﬀerence in the examples.)
to_tsvector('english', '{"aa": "The Fat Rats", "b": "dog"}'::json)
→ 'dog':5
'fat':2 'rat':3
to_tsvector('english', '{"aa": "The Fat Rats", "b": "dog"}'::jsonb)
→
'dog':1 'fat':4 'rat':5
json_to_tsvector

( [ config regconfig, ] document json, filter jsonb ) → tsvector

jsonb_to_tsvector
( [ config regconfig, ] document jsonb, filter jsonb ) → tsvector
Selects each item in the JSON document that is requested by the filter and converts each
one to a tsvector, normalizing words according to the speciﬁed or default conﬁguration. The
results are then concatenated in document order to produce the output. Position information
is generated as though one stopword exists between each pair of selected items. (Beware that
“document order” of the ﬁelds of a JSON object is implementation-dependent when the input
is jsonb.) The filter must be a jsonb array containing zero or more of these keywords:
"string" (to include all string values), "numeric" (to include all numeric values), "boolean"
(to include all boolean values), "key" (to include all keys), or "all" (to include all the above).
As a special case, the filter can also be a simple JSON value that is one of these keywords.
json_to_tsvector('english', '{"a": "The Fat Rats", "b": 123}'::json,
'["string", "numeric"]') → '123':5 'fat':2 'rat':3
json_to_tsvector('english', '{"cat": "The Fat Rats", "dog": 123}'::json,
'"all"') → '123':9 'cat':1 'dog':7 'fat':4 'rat':5
ts_delete ( vector tsvector, lexeme text ) → tsvector
Removes any occurrence of the given lexeme from the vector.
ts_delete('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A'::tsvector, 'fat')
→ 'cat':3 'rat':5A
ts_delete ( vector tsvector, lexemes text[] ) → tsvector
Removes any occurrences of the lexemes in lexemes from the vector.
ts_delete('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A'::tsvector, ARRAY['fat','rat'])
ts_filter ( vector tsvector, weights "char"[] ) → tsvector
Selects only elements with the given weights from the vector.
ts_filter('fat:2,4 cat:3b,7c rat:5A'::tsvector, '{a,b}')
'rat':5A

→ 'cat':3

→ 'cat':3B

ts_headline ( [ config regconfig, ] document text, query tsquery [, options text ] ) → text
Displays, in an abbreviated form, the match(es) for the query in the document, which must be
raw text not a tsvector. Words in the document are normalized according to the speciﬁed
or default conﬁguration before matching to the query. Use of this function is discussed in
Section 12.3.4, which also describes the available options.
ts_headline('The fat cat ate the rat.', 'cat')
→ The fat <b>cat</b> ate the
rat.
ts_headline ( [ config regconfig, ] document json, query tsquery [, options text ] ) → text
ts_headline ( [ config regconfig, ] document jsonb, query tsquery [, options text ] ) → text
Displays, in an abbreviated form, match(es) for the query that occur in string values within
the JSON document. See Section 12.3.4 for more details.
ts_headline('{"cat":"raining cats and dogs"}'::jsonb, 'cat')
→ {"cat":
"raining <b>cats</b> and dogs"}

256


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ts_rank</code> (vector tsvector, query tsquery [, normalization integer]) → real</td>
<td>Computes a score showing how well the <em>vector</em> matches the <em>query</em>. See Section 12.3.3 for details.</td>
<td><code>ts_rank(to_tsvector('raining cats and dogs'), 'cat') → 0.06079271</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ts_rank_cd</code> (vector tsvector, query tsquery [, normalization integer]) → real</td>
<td>Computes a score showing how well the <em>vector</em> matches the <em>query</em>, using a cover density algorithm. See Section 12.3.3 for details.</td>
<td><code>ts_rank_cd(to_tsvector('raining cats and dogs'), 'cat') → 0.1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ts_rewrite</code> (query tsquery, target tsquery, substitute tsquery) → tsquery</td>
<td>Replaces occurrences of <em>target</em> with <em>substitute</em> within the <em>query</em>. See Section 12.4.2.1 for details.</td>
<td>`ts_rewrite('a &amp; b':tsquery, 'a':tsquery, 'foo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ts_rewrite</code> (query tsquery, select text) → tsquery</td>
<td>Replaces portions of the <em>query</em> according to target(s) and substitute(s) obtained by executing a SELECT command. See Section 12.4.2.1 for details.</td>
<td>`SELECT ts_rewrite('a &amp; b':tsquery, 'SELECT t,s FROM aliases') → 'b' &amp; ( 'foo'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tsquery_phrase</code> (query1 tsquery, query2 tsquery) → tsquery</td>
<td>Constructs a phrase query that searches for matches of <em>query1</em> and <em>query2</em> at successive lexemes (same as <code>&lt;-&gt;</code> operator).</td>
<td><code>tsquery_phrase(to_tsquery('fat'), to_tsquery('cat')) → 'fat' &lt;-&gt; 'cat'</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tsquery_phrase</code> (query1 tsquery, query2 tsquery, distance integer) → tsquery</td>
<td>Constructs a phrase query that searches for matches of <em>query1</em> and <em>query2</em> that occur exactly <em>distance</em> lexemes apart.</td>
<td><code>tsquery_phrase(to_tsquery('fat'), to_tsquery('cat'), 10) → 'fat' &lt;10&gt; 'cat'</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tsvector_to_array</code> (tsvector) → text[]</td>
<td>Converts a tsvector to an array of lexemes.</td>
<td><code>tsvector_to_array('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A':tsvector) → {cat,fat,rat}</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>unnest</code> (tsvector) → setof record (lexeme text, positions smallint[], weights text)</td>
<td>Expands a tsvector into a set of rows, one per lexeme.</td>
<td><code>select * from unnest('cat:3 fat:2,4 rat:5A':tsvector) →</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>lexeme</em></td>
<td><em>positions</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat</td>
<td>{3}</td>
<td>{D}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat</td>
<td>{2,4}</td>
<td>{D,D}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rat</td>
<td>{5}</td>
<td>{A}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

All the text search functions that accept an optional regconfig argument will use the configuration specified by `default_text_search_config` when that argument is omitted.
The functions in Table 9.43 are listed separately because they are not usually used in everyday text searching operations. They are primarily helpful for development and debugging of new text search configurations.

Table 9.43. Text Search Debugging Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ts_debug</td>
<td>Extracts and normalizes tokens from the document according to the specified or default text search configuration, and returns information about how each token was processed.</td>
<td>ts_debug('english', 'The Brightest supernovaes') → (asciiword,&quot;Word, all ASCII&quot;,The,{english_stem},english_stem,{}) ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts_lexize</td>
<td>Returns an array of replacement lexemes if the input token is known to the dictionary, or an empty array if the token is known to the dictionary but it is a stop word, or NULL if it is not a known word.</td>
<td>ts_lexize('english_stem', 'stars') → {star}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts_parse</td>
<td>Extracts tokens from the document using the named parser. See Section 12.8.2 for details.</td>
<td>ts_parse('default', 'foo - bar') → (1,foo) ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts_parse</td>
<td>Extracts tokens from the document using a parser specified by OID. See Section 12.8.2 for details.</td>
<td>ts_parse(3722, 'foo - bar') → (1,foo) ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts_token_type</td>
<td>Returns a table that describes each type of token the named parser can recognize. See Section 12.8.2 for details.</td>
<td>ts_token_type('default') → (1,asciword,&quot;Word, all ASCII&quot;) ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts_token_type</td>
<td>Returns a table that describes each type of token a parser specified by OID can recognize. See Section 12.8.2 for details.</td>
<td>ts_token_type(3722) → (1,asciword,&quot;Word, all ASCII&quot;) ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts_stat</td>
<td>Executes the sqlquery, which must return a single tsvector column, and returns statistics about each distinct lexeme contained in the data. See Section 12.4.4 for details.</td>
<td>ts_stat('SELECT vector FROM apod') → (foo,10,15) ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.14. UUID Functions

PostgreSQL includes one function to generate a UUID:

```sql
gen_random_uuid () → uuid
```

This function returns a version 4 (random) UUID. This is the most commonly used type of UUID and is appropriate for most applications.
The uuid-ossp module provides additional functions that implement other standard algorithms for generating UUIDs.

PostgreSQL also provides the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 for UUIDs.

9.15. XML Functions

The functions and function-like expressions described in this section operate on values of type xml. See Section 8.13 for information about the xml type. The function-like expressions xmlparse and xmlserialize for converting to and from type xml are documented there, not in this section.

Use of most of these functions requires Postgres Pro to have been built with configure --with-libxml.

9.15.1. Producing XML Content

A set of functions and function-like expressions is available for producing XML content from SQL data. As such, they are particularly suitable for formatting query results into XML documents for processing in client applications.

9.15.1.1. xmlcomment

xmlcomment ( text ) → xml

The function xmlcomment creates an XML value containing an XML comment with the specified text as content. The text cannot contain "--" or end with a "--", otherwise the resulting construct would not be a valid XML comment. If the argument is null, the result is null.

Example:

```sql
SELECT xmlcomment('hello');
```

xmlcomment
--------------
<!--hello-->

9.15.1.2. xmlconcat

xmlconcat ( xml [, ...] ) → xml

The function xmlconcat concatenates a list of individual XML values to create a single value containing an XML content fragment. Null values are omitted; the result is only null if there are no nonnull arguments.

Example:

```sql
SELECT xmlconcat('<abc/>', '<bar>foo</bar>');
```

xmlconcat
----------------------
<abc/><bar>foo</bar>

XML declarations, if present, are combined as follows. If all argument values have the same XML version declaration, that version is used in the result, else no version is used. If all argument values have the standalone declaration value “yes”, then that value is used in the result. If all argument values have a standalone declaration value and at least one is “no”, then that is used in the result. Else the result will have no standalone declaration. If the result is determined to require a standalone declaration but no version declaration, a version declaration with version 1.0 will be used because XML requires an XML declaration to contain a version declaration. Encoding declarations are ignored and removed in all cases.

Example:
9.15.1.3. \texttt{xmllement}

\texttt{xmllement} ( \texttt{NAME name}, \texttt{XMLATTRIBUTES} \{ \texttt{attvalue} \texttt{AS} \texttt{attname} \}, \ldots \} \rightarrow \texttt{xml}

The \texttt{xmllement} expression produces an XML element with the given name, attributes, and content. The \texttt{name} and \texttt{attname} items shown in the syntax are simple identifiers, not values. The \texttt{attvalue} and \texttt{content} items are expressions, which can yield any PostgreSQL data type. The argument(s) within \texttt{XMLATTRIBUTES} generate attributes of the XML element; the \texttt{content} value(s) are concatenated to form its content.

Examples:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT xmlement(name foo);
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
  xmlement
  ------------
  <foo/>
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT xmlement(name foo, xmlattributes('xyz' as bar));
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
  xmlement
  -------------
  <foo bar="xyz"/>
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT xmlement(name foo, xmlattributes(current_date as bar), 'cont', 'ent');
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
  xmlement
  -------------------------------------
  <foo bar="2007-01-26">content</foo>
\end{verbatim}

Element and attribute names that are not valid XML names are escaped by replacing the offending characters by the sequence \_\texttt{HHHH}, where \texttt{HHHH} is the character's Unicode codepoint in hexadecimal notation. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT xmlement(name "foo$bar", xmlattributes('xyz' as "a\&b"));
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
  xmlement
  -------------------
  <foo_x0024_bar a_x0026_b="xyz"/>
\end{verbatim}

An explicit attribute name need not be specified if the attribute value is a column reference, in which case the column's name will be used as the attribute name by default. In other cases, the attribute must be given an explicit name. So this example is valid:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE TABLE test (a xml, b xml);
SELECT xmlement(name test, xmlattributes(a, b)) FROM test;
\end{verbatim}

But these are not:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT xmlement(name test, xmlattributes('constant'), a, b) FROM test;
SELECT xmlement(name test, xmlattributes(func(a, b))) FROM test;
\end{verbatim}

Element content, if specified, will be formatted according to its data type. If the content is itself of type \texttt{xml}, complex XML documents can be constructed. For example:
SELECT xmlelement(name foo, xmlattributes('xyz' as bar),
    xmlelement(name abc),
    xmlcomment('test'),
    xmlelement(name xyz));

---

<foo bar="xyz"><abc/></foo><test/></foo>

Content of other types will be formatted into valid XML character data. This means in particular that the characters <, >, and & will be converted to entities. Binary data (data type bytea) will be represented in base64 or hex encoding, depending on the setting of the configuration parameter xmlbinary. The particular behavior for individual data types is expected to evolve in order to align the Postgres Pro mappings with those specified in SQL:2006 and later, as discussed in Section D.3.1.3.

9.15.1.4. xmlforest

xmlforest ( content [ AS name ] [, ... ] ) → xml

The xmlforest expression produces an XML forest (sequence) of elements using the given names and content. As for xmlelement, each name must be a simple identifier, while the content expressions can have any data type.

Examples:

SELECT xmlforest('abc' AS foo, 123 AS bar);

xmlforest
-------------------
<foo>abc</foo><bar>123</bar>

SELECT xmlforest(table_name, column_name)
FROM information_schema.columns
WHERE table_schema = 'pg_catalog';

xmlforest
-------------------
<table_name>pg_authid</table_name><column_name>rolname</column_name>
<table_name>pg_authid</table_name><column_name>rolsuper</column_name>
...

As seen in the second example, the element name can be omitted if the content value is a column reference, in which case the column name is used by default. Otherwise, a name must be specified.

Element names that are not valid XML names are escaped as shown for xmlelement above. Similarly, content data is escaped to make valid XML content, unless it is already of type xml.

Note that XML forests are not valid XML documents if they consist of more than one element, so it might be useful to wrap xmlforest expressions in xmlelement.

9.15.1.5. xmlpi

xmlpi ( NAME name [, content ] ) → xml

The xmlpi expression creates an XML processing instruction. As for xmlelement, the name must be a simple identifier, while the content expression can have any data type. The content, if present, must not contain the character sequence ?>.

Example:
9.15.1.6. xmlroot
xmlroot ( xml, VERSION {text|NO VALUE} [, STANDALONE {YES|NO|NO VALUE} ] ) → xml

The xmlroot expression alters the properties of the root node of an XML value. If a version is specified, it replaces the value in the root node's version declaration; if a standalone setting is specified, it replaces the value in the root node's standalone declaration.

SELECT xmlroot(xmlparse(document '<?xml version="1.1"?><content>abc</content>'), version '1.0', standalone yes);

xmlroot
----------------------------------------
<?xml version="1.0" standalone="yes"?><content>abc</content>

9.15.1.7. xmlagg
xmlagg ( xml ) → xml

The function xmlagg is, unlike the other functions described here, an aggregate function. It concatenates the input values to the aggregate function call, much like xmlconcat does, except that concatenation occurs across rows rather than across expressions in a single row. See Section 9.21 for additional information about aggregate functions.

Example:
CREATE TABLE test (y int, x xml);
INSERT INTO test VALUES (1, '<foo>abc</foo>');
INSERT INTO test VALUES (2, '<bar/>');
SELECT xmlagg(x) FROM test;
xmlagg
----------------------
<foo>abc</foo><bar/>

To determine the order of the concatenation, an ORDER BY clause may be added to the aggregate call as described in Section 4.2.7. For example:

SELECT xmlagg(x ORDER BY y DESC) FROM test;
xmlagg
----------------------
<bar/><foo>abc</foo>

The following non-standard approach used to be recommended in previous versions, and may still be useful in specific cases:

SELECT xmlagg(x) FROM (SELECT * FROM test ORDER BY y DESC) AS tab;
xmlagg
----------------------
<bar/><foo>abc</foo>

9.15.2. XML Predicates

The expressions described in this section check properties of xml values.
9.15.2.1. IS DOCUMENT

xml IS DOCUMENT → boolean

The expression IS DOCUMENT returns true if the argument XML value is a proper XML document, false if it is not (that is, it is a content fragment), or null if the argument is null. See Section 8.13 about the difference between documents and content fragments.

9.15.2.2. IS NOT DOCUMENT

xml IS NOT DOCUMENT → boolean

The expression IS NOT DOCUMENT returns false if the argument XML value is a proper XML document, true if it is not (that is, it is a content fragment), or null if the argument is null.

9.15.2.3. XMLEXISTS

XMLEXISTS ( text PASSING [BY {REF|VALUE}] xml [BY {REF|VALUE}] ) → boolean

The function xmlexists evaluates an XPath 1.0 expression (the first argument), with the passed XML value as its context item. The function returns false if the result of that evaluation yields an empty node-set, true if it yields any other value. The function returns null if any argument is null. A nonnull value passed as the context item must be an XML document, not a content fragment or any non-XML value.

Example:

```
SELECT xmlexists('//town[text() = ''Toronto'']' PASSING BY VALUE
  '<towns><town>Toronto</town><town>Ottawa</town></towns>');
```

xmlexists
-----------
  t
(1 row)

The BY REF and BY VALUE clauses are accepted in Postgres Pro, but are ignored, as discussed in Section D.3.2.

In the SQL standard, the xmlexists function evaluates an expression in the XML Query language, but Postgres Pro allows only an XPath 1.0 expression, as discussed in Section D.3.1.

9.15.2.4. xml_is_well_formed

xml_is_well_formed ( text ) → boolean
xml_is_well_formed_document ( text ) → boolean
xml_is_well_formed_content ( text ) → boolean

These functions check whether a text string represents well-formed XML, returning a Boolean result. xml_is_well_formed_document checks for a well-formed document, while xml_is_well_formed_content checks for well-formed content. xml_is_well_formed does the former if the xmloption configuration parameter is set to DOCUMENT, or the latter if it is set to CONTENT. This means that xml_is_well_formed is useful for seeing whether a simple cast to type xml will succeed, whereas the other two functions are useful for seeing whether the corresponding variants of XMLPARSE will succeed.

Examples:

```
SET xmloption TO DOCUMENT;
SELECT xml_is_well_formed('<>');
xml_is_well_formed
-------------
  f
```
Functions and Operators

{1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed('<abc/>');
 xml_is_well_formed
--------------------
t
(1 row)

SET xmloption TO CONTENT;
SELECT xml_is_well_formed('abc');
 xml_is_well_formed
--------------------
t
(1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed_document('<pg:foo xmlns:pg="http://postgresql.org/stuff">bar</pg:foo>');
 xml_is_well_formed_document
-----------------------------
t
(1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed_document('<pg:foo xmlns:pg="http://postgresql.org/stuff">bar</my:foo>');</n
 xml_is_well_formed_document
-----------------------------
f
(1 row)

The last example shows that the checks include whether namespaces are correctly matched.

9.15.3. Processing XML

To process values of data type xml, Postgres Pro offers the functions xpath and xpath_exists, which evaluate XPath 1.0 expressions, and the XMLTABLE table function.

9.15.3.1. xpath

$\text{xpath} \ (\text{xpath text, xml xml} \ [, \text{nsarray text[]} \ ] \ ) \rightarrow \text{xml[]}$

The function xpath evaluates the XPath 1.0 expression xpath (given as text) against the XML value xml. It returns an array of XML values corresponding to the node-set produced by the XPath expression. If the XPath expression returns a scalar value rather than a node-set, a single-element array is returned.

The second argument must be a well formed XML document. In particular, it must have a single root node element.

The optional third argument of the function is an array of namespace mappings. This array should be a two-dimensional text array with the length of the second axis being equal to 2 (i.e., it should be an array of arrays, each of which consists of exactly 2 elements). The first element of each array entry is the namespace name (alias), the second the namespace URI. It is not required that aliases provided in this array be the same as those being used in the XML document itself (in other words, both in the XML document and in the xpath function context, aliases are local).

Example:

 ARRAY[ARRAY['my', 'http://example.com']]);
Functions and Operators
xpath
-------{test}
(1 row)
To deal with default (anonymous) namespaces, do something like this:
SELECT xpath('//mydefns:b/text()', '<a xmlns="http://example.com"><b>test</b></a>',
ARRAY[ARRAY['mydefns', 'http://example.com']]);
xpath
-------{test}
(1 row)

9.15.3.2. xpath_exists
xpath_exists ( xpath text, xml xml [, nsarray text[] ] ) → boolean
The function xpath_exists is a specialized form of the xpath function. Instead of returning the individual
XML values that satisfy the XPath 1.0 expression, this function returns a Boolean indicating whether the
query was satisﬁed or not (speciﬁcally, whether it produced any value other than an empty node-set).
This function is equivalent to the XMLEXISTS predicate, except that it also oﬀers support for a namespace
mapping argument.
Example:
ARRAY[ARRAY['my', 'http://example.com']]);
xpath_exists
-------------t
(1 row)

9.15.3.3. xmltable
XMLTABLE (
[ XMLNAMESPACES ( namespace_uri AS namespace_name [, ...] ), ]
row_expression PASSING [BY {REF|VALUE}] document_expression [BY {REF|VALUE}]
COLUMNS name { type [PATH column_expression] [DEFAULT default_expression] [NOT NULL
| NULL]
| FOR ORDINALITY }
[, ...]
) → setof record
The xmltable expression produces a table based on an XML value, an XPath ﬁlter to extract rows, and
a set of column deﬁnitions. Although it syntactically resembles a function, it can only appear as a table
in a query's FROM clause.
The optional XMLNAMESPACES clause gives a comma-separated list of namespace deﬁnitions, where each
namespace_uri is a text expression and each namespace_name is a simple identiﬁer. It speciﬁes the XML
namespaces used in the document and their aliases. A default namespace speciﬁcation is not currently
supported.
The required row_expression argument is an XPath 1.0 expression (given as text) that is evaluated,
passing the XML value document_expression as its context item, to obtain a set of XML nodes.
These nodes are what xmltable transforms into output rows. No rows will be produced if the
document_expression is null, nor if the row_expression produces an empty node-set or any value other
than a node-set.
265


document_expression provides the context item for the row_expression. It must be a well-formed XML document; fragments/forests are not accepted. The BY REF and BY VALUE clauses are accepted but ignored, as discussed in Section D.3.2.

In the SQL standard, the xmltable function evaluates expressions in the XML Query language, but Postgres Pro allows only XPath 1.0 expressions, as discussed in Section D.3.1.

The required COLUMNS clause specifies the column(s) that will be produced in the output table. See the syntax summary above for the format. A name is required for each column, as is a data type (unless FOR ORDINALITY is specified, in which case type integer is implicit). The path, default and nullability clauses are optional.

A column marked FOR ORDINALITY will be populated with row numbers, starting with 1, in the order of nodes retrieved from the row_expression’s result node-set. At most one column may be marked FOR ORDINALITY.

**Note**

XPath 1.0 does not specify an order for nodes in a node-set, so code that relies on a particular order of the results will be implementation-dependent. Details can be found in Section D.3.1.2.

The column_expression for a column is an XPath 1.0 expression that is evaluated for each row, with the current node from the row_expression result as its context item, to find the value of the column. If no column_expression is given, then the column name is used as an implicit path.

If a column's XPath expression returns a non-XML value (which is limited to string, boolean, or double in XPath 1.0) and the column has a Postgres Pro type other than xml, the column will be set as if by assigning the value's string representation to the Postgres Pro type. (If the value is a boolean, its string representation is taken to be 1 or 0 if the output column's type category is numeric, otherwise true or false.)

If a column’s XPath expression returns a non-empty set of XML nodes and the column’s Postgres Pro type is xml, the column will be assigned the expression result exactly, if it is of document or content form.  

A non-XML result assigned to an xml output column produces content, a single text node with the string value of the result. An XML result assigned to a column of any other type may not have more than one node, or an error is raised. If there is exactly one node, the column will be set as if by assigning the node's string value (as defined for the XPath 1.0 string function) to the Postgres Pro type.

The string value of an XML element is the concatenation, in document order, of all text nodes contained in that element and its descendants. The string value of an element with no descendant text nodes is an empty string (not NULL). Any xsi:nil attributes are ignored. Note that the whitespace-only text() node between two non-text elements is preserved, and that leading whitespace on a text() node is not flattened. The XPath 1.0 string function may be consulted for the rules defining the string value of other XML node types and non-XML values.

The conversion rules presented here are not exactly those of the SQL standard, as discussed in Section D.3.1.3.

If the path expression returns an empty node-set (typically, when it does not match) for a given row, the column will be set to NULL, unless a default_expression is specified; then the value resulting from evaluating that expression is used.

A default_expression, rather than being evaluated immediately when xmltable is called, is evaluated each time a default is needed for the column. If the expression qualifies as stable or immutable, the

---

1 A result containing more than one element node at the top level, or non-whitespace text outside of an element, is an example of content form. An XPath result can be of neither form, for example if it returns an attribute node selected from the element that contains it. Such a result will be put into content form with each such disallowed node replaced by its string value, as defined for the XPath 1.0 string function.
Functions and Operators

repeat evaluation may be skipped. This means that you can usefully use volatile functions like nextval in default_expression.

Columns may be marked NOT NULL. If the column_expression for a NOT NULL column does not match anything and there is no DEFAULT or the default_expression also evaluates to null, an error is reported.

Examples:

```
CREATE TABLE xmldata AS SELECT xml $$
<ROWS>
    <ROW id="1">
        <COUNTRY_ID>AU</COUNTRY_ID>
        <COUNTRY_NAME>Australia</COUNTRY_NAME>
    </ROW>
    <ROW id="5">
        <COUNTRY_ID>JP</COUNTRY_ID>
        <COUNTRY_NAME>Japan</COUNTRY_NAME>
        <PREMIER_NAME>Shinzo Abe</PREMIER_NAME>
        <SIZE unit="sq_mi">145935</SIZE>
    </ROW>
    <ROW id="6">
        <COUNTRY_ID>SG</COUNTRY_ID>
        <COUNTRY_NAME>Singapore</COUNTRY_NAME>
        <SIZE unit="sq_km">697</SIZE>
    </ROW>
</ROWS>
$$ AS data;
```

```
SELECT xmltable.*
FROM xmldata,
XMLTABLE('//ROWS/ROW'
    PASSING data
    COLUMNS id int PATH '@id',
    ordinality FOR ORDINALITY,
    "COUNTRY_NAME" text,
    country_id text PATH 'COUNTRY_ID',
    size_sq_km float PATH 'SIZE[@unit = "sq_km"]',
    size_other text PATH
        'concat(SIZE[@unit="sq_km"], " ", SIZE[@unit="sq_km"]/@unit)',
    premier_name text PATH 'PREMIER_NAME' DEFAULT 'not specified');
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
<th>ordinality</th>
<th>COUNTRY_NAME</th>
<th>country_id</th>
<th>size_sq_km</th>
<th>size_other</th>
<th>premier_name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>AU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>not specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>JP</td>
<td></td>
<td>145935 sq_mi</td>
<td>Shinzo Abe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>697</td>
<td></td>
<td>not specified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following example shows concatenation of multiple text() nodes, usage of the column name as XPath filter, and the treatment of whitespace, XML comments and processing instructions:

```
CREATE TABLE xmlelements AS SELECT xml $$
<root>
    <element> Hello<!-- xyxxz -->2a2<?aaaaa?> <!--x--> bbb<x>xxx</x> CC </element>
$$ AS data;
```
$$ AS data;
SELECT xmltable.*
  FROM xmlelements, XMLTABLE('/root' PASSING data COLUMNS element text);

-------------------------
Hello2a2   bbbxxxCC

The following example illustrates how the XMLNAMESPACES clause can be used to specify a list of namespaces used in the XML document as well as in the XPath expressions:

WITH xmldata(data) AS (VALUES ('<example xmlns="http://example.com/myns" xmlns:B="http://example.com/b">
<item foo="1" B:bar="2"/>
<item foo="3" B:bar="4"/>
<item foo="4" B:bar="5"/>
</example>''::xml)
)
SELECT xmltable.*
  FROM XMLTABLE(XMLNAMESPACES('http://example.com/myns' AS x,
   'http://example.com/b' AS "B"),
   '/x:example/x:item'
  PASSING (SELECT data FROM xmldata)
COLUMNS foo int PATH '@foo',
   bar int PATH '@B:bar');

foo | bar
-----+-----
1 |   2
3 |   4
4 |   5
(3 rows)

9.15.4. Mapping Tables to XML

The following functions map the contents of relational tables to XML values. They can be thought of as XML export functionality:

\[\text{table_to_xml (table regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text) } \rightarrow \text{xml}\]

\[\text{query_to_xml (query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text) } \rightarrow \text{xml}\]

\[\text{cursor_to_xml (cursor refcursor, count integer, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text) } \rightarrow \text{xml}\]

\text{table_to_xml} \text{ maps the content of the named table, passed as parameter table. The regclass type accepts strings identifying tables using the usual notation, including optional schema qualification and double quotes (see Section 8.19 for details). query_to_xml} \text{ executes the query whose text is passed as parameter query and maps the result set. cursor_to_xml} \text{ fetches the indicated number of rows from the cursor specified by the parameter cursor. This variant is recommended if large tables have to be mapped, because the result value is built up in memory by each function.}

If \text{tableforest} \text{ is false, then the resulting XML document looks like this:

\text{<tablename>}
  \text{<row>}
    \text{<columnname1>data</columnname1>}
    \text{<columnname2>data</columnname2>}
  \text{</row>}
\text{</tablename>
If tableforest is true, the result is an XML content fragment that looks like this:

```xml
<tablename>
  <columnname1>data</columnname1>
  <columnname2>data</columnname2>
</tablename>
```

If no table name is available, that is, when mapping a query or a cursor, the string table is used in the first format, row in the second format.

The choice between these formats is up to the user. The first format is a proper XML document, which will be important in many applications. The second format tends to be more useful in the cursor_to_xml function if the result values are to be reassembled into one document later on. The functions for producing XML content discussed above, in particular xmlelement, can be used to alter the results to taste.

The data values are mapped in the same way as described for the function xmlelement above.

The parameter nulls determines whether null values should be included in the output. If true, null values in columns are represented as:

```xml
<columnname xsi:nil="true"/>
```

where xsi is the XML namespace prefix for XML Schema Instance. An appropriate namespace declaration will be added to the result value. If false, columns containing null values are simply omitted from the output.

The parameter targetns specifies the desired XML namespace of the result. If no particular namespace is wanted, an empty string should be passed.

The following functions return XML Schema documents describing the mappings performed by the corresponding functions above:

```c
table_to_xmlschema ( table regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
query_to_xmlschema ( query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
cursor_to_xmlschema ( cursor refcursor, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
```

It is essential that the same parameters are passed in order to obtain matching XML data mappings and XML Schema documents.

The following functions produce XML data mappings and the corresponding XML Schema in one document (or forest), linked together. They can be useful where self-contained and self-describing results are wanted:

```c
table_to_xml_and_xmlschema ( table regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
```

269
Functions and Operators

\[
\text{query\_to\_xml\_and\_xmlschema ( query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) \rightarrow xml}
\]

In addition, the following functions are available to produce analogous mappings of entire schemas or the entire current database:

\[
\text{schema\_to\_xml ( schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) \rightarrow xml}
\]

\[
\text{schema\_to\_xmlschema ( schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) \rightarrow xml}
\]

\[
\text{schema\_to\_xml\_and\_xmlschema ( schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) \rightarrow xml}
\]

\[
\text{database\_to\_xml ( nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) \rightarrow xml}
\]

\[
\text{database\_to\_xmlschema ( nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) \rightarrow xml}
\]

\[
\text{database\_to\_xml\_and\_xmlschema ( nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text ) \rightarrow xml}
\]

These functions ignore tables that are not readable by the current user. The database-wide functions additionally ignore schemas that the current user does not have USAGE (lookup) privilege for.

Note that these potentially produce a lot of data, which needs to be built up in memory. When requesting content mappings of large schemas or databases, it might be worthwhile to consider mapping the tables separately instead, possibly even through a cursor.

The result of a schema content mapping looks like this:

\[
<schemaname>
\text{table1-mapping}
\text{table2-mapping}
\ldots
</schemaname>
\]

where the format of a table mapping depends on the \textit{tableforest} parameter as explained above.

The result of a database content mapping looks like this:

\[
<dbname>
\text{<schema1name>}
\ldots
</schema1name>
\text{<schema2name>}
\ldots
</schema2name>
\ldots
</dbname>
\]

where the schema mapping is as above.
As an example of using the output produced by these functions, Example 9.1 shows an XSLT stylesheet that converts the output of `table_to_xml_and_xmlschema` to an HTML document containing a tabular rendition of the table data. In a similar manner, the results from these functions can be converted into other XML-based formats.

**Example 9.1. XSLT Stylesheet for Converting SQL/XML Output to HTML**

```xml
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
    <xsl:output method="xml"
        doctype-system="http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd"
        doctype-public="-//W3C/DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
        indent="yes"/>
    <xsl:template match="/">
        <xsl:variable name="schema" select="//xsd:schema"/>
        <xsl:variable name="tabletypename"
            select="$schema/xsd:element[@name=name(current())]/@type"/>
        <xsl:variable name="rowtypename"
            select="$schema/xsd:complexType[@name=$tabletypename]/xsd:sequence/xsd:element[@name='row']/@type"/>
        <html>
            <head>
                <title><xsl:value-of select="name(current())"/></title>
            </head>
            <body>
                <table>
                    <tr>
                        <xsl:for-each select="$schema/xsd:complexType[@name=$rowtypename]/xsd:sequence/xsd:element[@name]">
                            <th><xsl:value-of select="."/></th>
                        </xsl:for-each>
                    </tr>
                    <xsl:for-each select="row">
                        <tr>
                            <xsl:for-each select="*" select="."/>
                            <td><xsl:value-of select="."/></td>
                        </xsl:for-each>
                    </xsl:for-each>
                </table>
            </body>
        </html>
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

9.16. JSON Functions and Operators

This section describes:

- functions and operators for processing and creating JSON data
To learn more about the SQL/JSON standard, see sqltr-19075-6. For details on JSON types supported in Postgres Pro, see Section 8.14.

### 9.16.1. Processing and Creating JSON Data

Table 9.44 shows the operators that are available for use with JSON data types (see Section 8.14). In addition, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for jsonb, though not for json. The comparison operators follow the ordering rules for B-tree operations outlined in Section 8.14.4.

#### Table 9.44. json and jsonb Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| json -> integer → json | Extracts \( n \)’th element of JSON array (array elements are indexed from zero, but negative integers count from the end). | '[["a":"foo"],{"b":"bar"},{"c":"baz"}]'::json -> 2 \( \rightarrow \{"c":"baz"\} \)
| jsonb -> integer → jsonb | Extracts JSON object field with the given key. | '{"a": {"b":"foo"}}'::json -> 'a' \( \rightarrow \{"b":"foo"\} \)
| json -> text → json | Extracts JSON sub-object at the specified path, where path elements can be either field keys or array indexes. | '{"a": {"b": ["foo","bar"]}}'::json -> '{a,b,1}' \( \rightarrow \"bar"\) |
| jsonb -> text[] → jsonb | Extracts JSON sub-object at the specified path as text. | '{"a": {"b": ["foo","bar"]}}'::jsonb #> '{a,b,1}' \( \rightarrow \text{bar}\) |

### Note

The field/element/path extraction operators return NULL, rather than failing, if the JSON input does not have the right structure to match the request; for example if no such key or array element exists.
Some further operators exist only for `jsonb`, as shown in Table 9.45. Section 8.14.4 describes how these operators can be used to effectively search indexed `jsonb` data.

**Table 9.45. Additional `jsonb` Operators**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>jsonb @&gt; jsonb</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Does the first JSON value contain the second? (See Section 8.14.3 for details about containment.)</td>
<td><code>{&quot;a&quot;:1, &quot;b&quot;:2}</code>::jsonb @&gt; <code>{&quot;b&quot;:2}</code>::jsonb → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>jsonb &lt;@ jsonb</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Is the first JSON value contained in the second?</td>
<td><code>{&quot;b&quot;:2}</code>::jsonb &lt;@ <code>{&quot;a&quot;:1, &quot;b&quot;:2}</code>::jsonb → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>jsonb ? text</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Does the text string exist as a top-level key or array element within the JSON value?</td>
<td><code>{&quot;a&quot;:1, &quot;b&quot;:2}</code>::jsonb ? 'b' → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`jsonb ?</td>
<td>text[]<code>→</code>boolean`</td>
<td>Do any of the strings in the text array exist as top-level keys or array elements?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>jsonb ?&amp; text[]</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Do all of the strings in the text array exist as top-level keys or array elements?</td>
<td><code>[&quot;a&quot;, &quot;b&quot;, &quot;c&quot;]</code>::jsonb ?&amp; array['a', 'b'] → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`jsonb</td>
<td></td>
<td>jsonb<code>→</code>jsonb`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>jsonb - text</code> → <code>jsonb</code></td>
<td>Deletes a key (and its value) from a JSON object, or matching string value(s) from a JSON array.</td>
<td><code>{&quot;a&quot;: &quot;b&quot;, &quot;c&quot;: &quot;d&quot;}</code>::jsonb - 'a' → {&quot;c&quot;: &quot;d&quot;}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>jsonb - text[]</code> → <code>jsonb</code></td>
<td>Deletes all matching keys or array elements from the left operand.</td>
<td><code>{&quot;a&quot;: &quot;b&quot;, &quot;c&quot;: &quot;d&quot;}</code>::jsonb - <code>{a,c}</code>::text[] → {}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

273
### Functions and Operators

**Operator**

**Description**

Deleters the array element with specified index (negative integers count from the end).

*Throws an error if JSON value is not an array.*

\[
'\{a\}, \{b\}'::jsonb \rightarrow \{a\}
\]

**Example(s)**

\[
'\["a", \"b"\]::jsonb - 1 \rightarrow \{a\}
\]

---

**Operator**

**Description**

Deletes the field or array element at the specified path, where path elements can be either field keys or array indexes.

\[
'\{a\}, \{b\}'::jsonb \rightarrow \{a\}, \{\}
\]

**Example(s)**

\[
'\{a\}, \{b\}'::jsonb \rightarrow \{a\}, \{\}
\]

---

**Operator**

**Description**

Does JSON path return any item for the specified JSON value?

\[
'\{a\}:\{1,2,3,4,5\}'::jsonb \rightarrow \{\}
\]

**Example(s)**

\[
'\{a\}:\{1,2,3,4,5\}'::jsonb \rightarrow \{\}
\]

---

**Operator**

**Description**

Returns the result of a JSON path predicate check for the specified JSON value. Only the first item of the result is taken into account. If the result is not Boolean, then NULL is returned.

\[
'\{a\}:\{1,2,3,4,5\}'::jsonb \rightarrow \{\}
\]

**Example(s)**

\[
'\{a\}:\{1,2,3,4,5\}'::jsonb \rightarrow \{\}
\]

---

**Note**

The **jsonpath** operators `@?` and `@@` suppress the following errors: missing object field or array element, unexpected JSON item type, datetime and numeric errors. The **jsonpath**-related functions described below can also be told to suppress these types of errors. This behavior might be helpful when searching JSON document collections of varying structure.

---

**Table 9.46** shows the functions that are available for constructing **json** and **jsonb** values.

---

**Table 9.46. JSON Creation Functions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>to_json</code></td>
<td>(anyelement) → json</td>
<td><code>to_json('Fred said &quot;Hi.&quot;::text) → &quot;Fred said \&quot;Hi.\&quot;&quot;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to_jsonb</code></td>
<td>(anyelement) → jsonb</td>
<td><code>to_jsonb(row(42, 'Fred said &quot;Hi.&quot;::text)) → {f1: 42, &quot;f2&quot;: &quot;Fred said \&quot;Hi.\&quot;&quot;}</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>array_to_json</code></td>
<td>(anyarray [, boolean ]) → json</td>
<td><code>array_to_json('{{1,5},{99,100}}'::int[]) → [[1,5],[99,100]]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>row_to_json</code></td>
<td>(record [, boolean ]) → json</td>
<td><code>row_to_json()</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>row_to_json</strong></td>
<td>Converts an SQL composite value to a JSON object. The behavior is the same as <code>to_json</code> except that line feeds will be added between top-level elements if the optional boolean parameter is true.</td>
<td><code>row_to_json(row(1, 'foo'))</code> → {&quot;f1&quot;:1,&quot;f2&quot;:&quot;foo&quot;}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>json_build_array</strong></td>
<td>Builds a possibly-heterogeneously-typed JSON array out of a variadic argument list. Each argument is converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code>.</td>
<td><code>json_build_array(1, 2, 'foo', 4, 5)</code> → [1, 2, &quot;foo&quot;, 4, 5]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jsonb_build_array</strong></td>
<td>Builds a possibly-heterogeneously-typed JSON array out of a variadic argument list. Each argument is converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code>.</td>
<td><code>jsonb_build_array(1, 2, 'foo', 4, 5)</code> → {1, 2, &quot;foo&quot;, 4, 5}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>json_build_object</strong></td>
<td>Builds a JSON object out of a variadic argument list. By convention, the argument list consists of alternating keys and values. Key arguments are coerced to text; value arguments are converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code>.</td>
<td><code>json_build_object('foo', 1, 2, row(3,'bar'))</code> → {&quot;foo&quot; : 1, &quot;2&quot; : {&quot;f1&quot;:3,&quot;f2&quot;:&quot;bar&quot;}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>json_object</strong></td>
<td>Builds a JSON object out of a text array. The array must have either exactly one dimension with an even number of members, in which case they are taken as alternating key/value pairs, or two dimensions such that each inner array has exactly two elements, which are taken as a key/value pair. All values are converted to JSON strings.</td>
<td><code>json_object('{a,1,b, def, c, 3.5}')</code> → {&quot;a&quot; : &quot;1&quot;, &quot;b&quot; : &quot;def&quot;, &quot;c&quot; : &quot;3.5&quot;}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jsonb_object</strong></td>
<td>Builds a JSON object out of a text array. The array must have either exactly one dimension with an even number of members, in which case they are taken as alternating key/value pairs, or two dimensions such that each inner array has exactly two elements, which are taken as a key/value pair. All values are converted to JSON strings.</td>
<td><code>jsonb_object('{a,1,b, def, c, 3.5}')</code> → {&quot;a&quot; : &quot;1&quot;, &quot;b&quot; : &quot;def&quot;, &quot;c&quot; : &quot;3.5&quot;}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.47 shows the functions that are available for processing `json` and `jsonb` values.

#### Table 9.47. JSON Processing Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **json_array_elements** | Expands the top-level JSON array into a set of JSON values. | `select * from json_array_elements('[1,true,[2,false]]')` → value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Function</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_array_elements_text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_array_elements_text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_array_length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_array_length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_each_text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_each_text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_extract_path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_extract_path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_extract_path_text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_extract_path_text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_object_keys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_object_keys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| select * from json_object_keys('"f1":"abc","f2":{"f3":"a", "f4":"b"}') | →
| json_object_keys | ------------------ |
| f1 | f2 |

**json_populate_record** (base anyelement, from_json json) → anyelement

**jsonb_populate_record** (base anyelement, from_json jsonb) → anyelement

Expands the top-level JSON object to a row having the composite type of the base argument. The JSON object is scanned for fields whose names match column names of the output row type, and their values are inserted into those columns of the output. (Fields that do not correspond to any output column name are ignored.) In typical use, the value of base is just NULL, which means that any output columns that do not match any object field will be filled with nulls. However, if base isn't NULL then the values it contains will be used for unmatched columns.

To convert a JSON value to the SQL type of an output column, the following rules are applied in sequence:

- A JSON null value is converted to an SQL null in all cases.
- If the output column is of type json or jsonb, the JSON value is just reproduced exactly.
- If the output column is a composite (row) type, and the JSON value is a JSON object, the fields of the object are converted to columns of the output row type by recursive application of these rules.
- Likewise, if the output column is an array type and the JSON value is a JSON array, the elements of the JSON array are converted to elements of the output array by recursive application of these rules.
- Otherwise, if the JSON value is a string, the contents of the string are fed to the input conversion function for the column's data type.
- Otherwise, the ordinary text representation of the JSON value is fed to the input conversion function for the column's data type.

While the example below uses a constant JSON value, typical use would be to reference a json or jsonb column laterally from another table in the query's FROM clause. Writing json_populate_record in the FROM clause is good practice, since all of the extracted columns are available for use without duplicate function calls.

```sql
create type subrowtype as (d int, e text); create type myrowtype as (a int, b text[], c subrowtype);
select * from json_populate_record(null::myrowtype, '{"a": 1, "b": ["2", "a b"], "c": {"d": 4, "e": "a b c"}, "x": "foo"}')

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>b</th>
<th>c</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>{2,&quot;a b&quot;}</td>
<td>(4,&quot;a b c&quot;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**json_populate_recordset** (base anyelement, from_json json) → setof anyelement

**jsonb_populate_recordset** (base anyelement, from_json jsonb) → setof anyelement

Expands the top-level JSON array of objects to a set of rows having the composite type of the base argument. Each element of the JSON array is processed as described above for jsonb_populate_record.

```sql
create type twoints as (a int, b int);
select * from json_populate_recordset(null::twoints, '{"a":1,"b":2},
{"a":3,"b":4}}')

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators
Function
Description
Example(s)
1 | 2
3 | 4
json_to_record

( json ) → record

jsonb_to_record
( jsonb ) → record
Expands the top-level JSON object to a row having the composite type deﬁned by an AS
clause. (As with all functions returning record, the calling query must explicitly deﬁne the
structure of the record with an AS clause.) The output record is ﬁlled from ﬁelds of the JSON
object, in the same way as described above for json[b]_populate_record . Since there is
no input record value, unmatched columns are always ﬁlled with nulls.
create type myrowtype as (a int, b text);
select * from json_to_record('{"a":1,"b":[1,2,3],"c":[1,2,3],
"e":"bar","r": {"a": 123, "b": "a b c"}}') as x(a int, b text, c int[],
d text, r myrowtype) →
a |
b
|
c
| d |
r
---+---------+---------+---+--------------1 | [1,2,3] | {1,2,3} |
| (123,"a b c")
json_to_recordset

( json ) → setof record

jsonb_to_recordset
( jsonb ) → setof record
Expands the top-level JSON array of objects to a set of rows having the composite type
deﬁned by an AS clause. (As with all functions returning record, the calling query must
explicitly deﬁne the structure of the record with an AS clause.) Each element of the JSON
array is processed as described above for json[b]_populate_record .
select * from json_to_recordset('[{"a":1,"b":"foo"}, {"a":"2",
"c":"bar"}]') as x(a int, b text)
→
a | b
---+----1 | foo
2 |
jsonb_set ( target jsonb, path text[], new_value jsonb [, create_if_missing
boolean ] ) →
jsonb
Returns target with the item designated by path replaced by new_value , or with new_
value added if create_if_missing
is true (which is the default) and the item designated
by path does not exist. All earlier steps in the path must exist, or the target is returned
unchanged. As with the path oriented operators, negative integers that appear in the path
count from the end of JSON arrays. If the last path step is an array index that is out of range,
and create_if_missing
is true, the new value is added at the beginning of the array if the
index is negative, or at the end of the array if it is positive.
jsonb_set('[{"f1":1,"f2":null},2,null,3]', '{0,f1}', '[2,3,4]',
false) → [{"f1": [2, 3, 4], "f2": null}, 2, null, 3]
jsonb_set('[{"f1":1,"f2":null},2]', '{0,f3}', '[2,3,4]')
"f2": null, "f3": [2, 3, 4]}, 2]

→ [{"f1": 1,

jsonb_set_lax
( target jsonb, path text[], new_value jsonb [, create_if_missing
boolean
[, null_value_treatment
text ]] ) → jsonb
If new_value is not NULL, behaves identically to jsonb_set . Otherwise behaves according
to the value of null_value_treatment
which must be one of 'raise_exception' , 'use_
json_null' , 'delete_key' , or 'return_target' . The default is 'use_json_null' .
jsonb_set_lax('[{"f1":1,"f2":null},2,null,3]', '{0,f1}', null)
→
[{"f1":null,"f2":null},2,null,3]

278


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>json_set_lax</td>
<td>- Sets an element at a specific path. The &quot;return_target&quot; parameter is used to return the target.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_insert</td>
<td>- Inserts new_value at a specified path. The <em>insert_after</em> parameter determines whether to insert before or after the specified item.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_set_lax</td>
<td><em>Returns</em> target with new_value <strong>inserted</strong>. The item designated by the path is an array element, new_value will be inserted before that item if <em>insert_after</em> is false (which is the default), or after it if <em>insert_after</em> is true. If the item designated by the path is an object field, new_value will be inserted only if the object does not already contain that key. All earlier steps in the path must exist, or the target is returned unchanged. As with the path oriented operators, negative integers that appear in the path count from the end of JSON arrays. If the last path step is an array index that is out of range, the new value is added at the beginning of the array if the index is negative, or at the end of the array if it is positive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_insert</td>
<td>- Returns the target with new_value inserted. If the item designated by the path is an array element, new_value will be inserted before that item if insert_after is false (which is the default), or after it if insert_after is true. If the item designated by the path is an object field, new_value will be inserted only if the object does not already contain that key. All earlier steps in the path must exist, or the target is returned unchanged. As with the path oriented operators, negative integers that appear in the path count from the end of JSON arrays. If the last path step is an array index that is out of range, the new value is added at the beginning of the array if the index is negative, or at the end of the array if it is positive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_strip_nulls</td>
<td>- Returns target with all object fields that have null values from the given JSON value, recursively. Null values that are not object fields are untouched.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_strip_nulls</td>
<td>- Returns target with all object fields that have null values from the given JSON value, recursively. Null values that are not object fields are untouched.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_exists</td>
<td>- Returns the result of a JSON path predicate check for the specified JSON value. Only the first item of the result is taken into account. If the result is not Boolean, then NULL is returned. The optional <em>vars</em> and <em>silent</em> arguments act the same as for <em>jsonb_path_exists</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_match</td>
<td>- Returns all JSON items returned by the JSON path for the specified JSON value. The optional <em>vars</em> and <em>silent</em> arguments act the same as for <em>jsonb_path_exists</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query</td>
<td>- Returns all JSON items returned by the JSON path for the specified JSON value. The optional <em>vars</em> and <em>silent</em> arguments act the same as for <em>jsonb_path_exists</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_array</td>
<td>Returns all JSON items returned by the JSON path for the specified JSON value, as a JSON array. The optional vars and silent arguments act the same as for <code>jsonb_path_exists</code> .</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query_array('&quot;a&quot;:[1,2,3,4,5]','$.a[*] ? (@ &gt;= $min &amp; &amp; @ &lt;= $max)','{&quot;min&quot;:2,&quot;max&quot;:4}') → [2, 3, 4]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_first</td>
<td>Returns the first JSON item returned by the JSON path for the specified JSON value. Returns NULL if there are no results. The optional vars and silent arguments act the same as for <code>jsonb_path_exists</code> .</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query_first('&quot;a&quot;:[1,2,3,4,5]','$.a[*] ? (@ &gt;= $min &amp; &amp; @ &lt;= $max)','{&quot;min&quot;:2,&quot;max&quot;:4}') → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_exists_tz</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_exists_tz('&quot;2015-08-01 12:00:00 -05&quot;','${*] ? (@.datetime( ) &lt; &quot;2015-08-02&quot;.datetime())') → t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_match_tz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_tz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_array_tz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_first_tz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_pretty (jsonb)</td>
<td>Converts the given JSON value to pretty-printed, indented text.</td>
<td><code>jsonb_pretty('{&quot;f1&quot;:1,&quot;f2&quot;:null}, 2]') →</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_typeof (json)</td>
<td>Returns the type of the top-level JSON value as a text string. Possible types are object, array, string, number, boolean, and null. (The null result should not be confused with an SQL NULL; see the examples.)</td>
<td><code>json_typeof('-123.4') → number</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>json_typeof('null'::json)</td>
<td></td>
<td>→ null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_typeof(NULL::json) IS NULL</td>
<td></td>
<td>→ t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also Section 9.21 for the aggregate function `json_agg` which aggregates record values as JSON, the aggregate function `json_object_agg` which aggregates pairs of values into a JSON object, and their `jsonb` equivalents, `jsonb_agg` and `jsonb_object_agg`.

### 9.16.2. The SQL/JSON Path Language

SQL/JSON path expressions specify the items to be retrieved from the JSON data, similar to XPath expressions used for SQL access to XML. In Postgres Pro, path expressions are implemented as the `jsonpath` data type and can use any elements described in Section 8.14.7.

JSON query functions and operators pass the provided path expression to the path engine for evaluation. If the expression matches the queried JSON data, the corresponding JSON item, or set of items, is returned. Path expressions are written in the SQL/JSON path language and can include arithmetic expressions and functions.

A path expression consists of a sequence of elements allowed by the `jsonpath` data type. The path expression is normally evaluated from left to right, but you can use parentheses to change the order of operations. If the evaluation is successful, a sequence of JSON items is produced, and the evaluation result is returned to the JSON query function that completes the specified computation.

To refer to the JSON value being queried (the context item), use the `$` variable in the path expression. It can be followed by one or more accessor operators, which go down the JSON structure level by level to retrieve sub-items of the context item. Each operator that follows deals with the result of the previous evaluation step.

For example, suppose you have some JSON data from a GPS tracker that you would like to parse, such as:

```json
{
    "track": {
        "segments": [
            {
                "location": [47.763, 13.4034],
                "start time": "2018-10-14 10:05:14",
                "HR": 73
            },
            {
                "location": [47.706, 13.2635],
                "start time": "2018-10-14 10:39:21",
                "HR": 135
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

To retrieve the available track segments, you need to use the `.key` accessor operator to descend through surrounding JSON objects:

```
$.track.segments
```

To retrieve the contents of an array, you typically use the `[*]` operator. For example, the following path will return the location coordinates for all the available track segments:

```
$.track.segments[*].location
```
To return the coordinates of the first segment only, you can specify the corresponding subscript in the `[]` accessor operator. Recall that JSON array indexes are 0-relative:

\[$.track.segments[0].location\]

The result of each path evaluation step can be processed by one or more `jsonpath` operators and methods listed in Section 9.16.2.2. Each method name must be preceded by a dot. For example, you can get the size of an array:

\[$.track.segments.size()\]

More examples of using `jsonpath` operators and methods within path expressions appear below in Section 9.16.2.2.

When defining a path, you can also use one or more filter expressions that work similarly to the `WHERE` clause in SQL. A filter expression begins with a question mark and provides a condition in parentheses:

\?[ (condition)\]

Filter expressions must be written just after the path evaluation step to which they should apply. The result of that step is filtered to include only those items that satisfy the provided condition. SQL/JSON defines three-valued logic, so the condition can be `true`, `false`, or `unknown`. The `unknown` value plays the same role as SQL `NULL` and can be tested for with the `is unknown` predicate. Further path evaluation steps use only those items for which the filter expression returned `true`.

The functions and operators that can be used in filter expressions are listed in Table 9.49. Within a filter expression, the `@` variable denotes the value being filtered (i.e., one result of the preceding path step). You can write accessor operators after `@` to retrieve component items.

For example, suppose you would like to retrieve all heart rate values higher than 130. You can achieve this using the following expression:

\[$.track.segments[*].HR ? (@ > 130)\]

To get the start times of segments with such values, you have to filter out irrelevant segments before returning the start times, so the filter expression is applied to the previous step, and the path used in the condition is different:

\[$.track.segments[*] ? (@.HR > 130)."start time"\]

You can use several filter expressions in sequence, if required. For example, the following expression selects start times of all segments that contain locations with relevant coordinates and high heart rate values:

\[$.track.segments[*] ? (@.location[1] < 13.4) ? (@.HR > 130)."start time"\]

Using filter expressions at different nesting levels is also allowed. The following example first filters all segments by location, and then returns high heart rate values for these segments, if available:


You can also nest filter expressions within each other:

\[$.track ? (exists(@.segments[*] ? (@.HR > 130))).segments.size()\]

This expression returns the size of the track if it contains any segments with high heart rate values, or an empty sequence otherwise.

Postgres Pro’s implementation of the SQL/JSON path language has the following deviations from the SQL/JSON standard:
Functions and Operators

- A path expression can be a Boolean predicate, although the SQL/JSON standard allows predicates only in filters. This is necessary for implementation of the @@ operator. For example, the following jsonpath expression is valid in Postgres Pro:
  \$\.track.segments\[\*\].HR < 70
- There are minor differences in the interpretation of regular expression patterns used in like_regex filters, as described in Section 9.16.2.3.

9.16.2.1. Strict and Lax Modes

When you query JSON data, the path expression may not match the actual JSON data structure. An attempt to access a non-existent member of an object or element of an array results in a structural error. SQL/JSON path expressions have two modes of handling structural errors:

- lax (default) — the path engine implicitly adapts the queried data to the specified path. Any remaining structural errors are suppressed and converted to empty SQL/JSON sequences.
- strict — if a structural error occurs, an error is raised.

The lax mode facilitates matching of a JSON document structure and path expression if the JSON data does not conform to the expected schema. If an operand does not match the requirements of a particular operation, it can be automatically wrapped as an SQL/JSON array or unwrapped by converting its elements into an SQL/JSON sequence before performing this operation. Besides, comparison operators automatically unwrap their operands in the lax mode, so you can compare SQL/JSON arrays out-of-the-box. An array of size 1 is considered equal to its sole element. Automatic unwrapping is not performed only when:

- The path expression contains type() or size() methods that return the type and the number of elements in the array, respectively.
- The queried JSON data contain nested arrays. In this case, only the outermost array is unwrapped, while all the inner arrays remain unchanged. Thus, implicit unwrapping can only go one level down within each path evaluation step.

For example, when querying the GPS data listed above, you can abstract from the fact that it stores an array of segments when using the lax mode:

lax \$\.track.segments\.location

In the strict mode, the specified path must exactly match the structure of the queried JSON document to return an SQL/JSON item, so using this path expression will cause an error. To get the same result as in the lax mode, you have to explicitly unwrap the segments array:

strict \$\.track.segments\[\*\].\.location

The .** accessor can lead to surprising results when using the lax mode. For instance, the following query selects every HR value twice:

lax \$.**.HR

This happens because the .** accessor selects both the segments array and each of its elements, while the .HR accessor automatically unwraps arrays when using the lax mode. To avoid surprising results, we recommend using the .** accessor only in the strict mode. The following query selects each HR value just once:

strict \$.**.HR

9.16.2.2. SQL/JSON Path Operators and Methods

Table 9.48 shows the operators and methods available in jsonpath. Note that while the unary operators and methods can be applied to multiple values resulting from a preceding path step, the binary operators (addition etc.) can only be applied to single values.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator/Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>number + number → number</code></td>
<td>Addition</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('[2]', '$[0] + 3') → 5</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>+ number → number</code></td>
<td>Unary plus (no operation); unlike addition, this can iterate over multiple values</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query_array({&quot;x&quot;: [2,3,4]}, '+ $.x') → [2, 3, 4]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>number - number → number</code></td>
<td>Subtraction</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('[2]', '7 - $[0]') → 5</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>- number → number</code></td>
<td>Negation; unlike subtraction, this can iterate over multiple values</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query_array({&quot;x&quot;: [2,3,4]}, '- $.x') → [-2, -3, -4]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>number * number → number</code></td>
<td>Multiplication</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('[4]', '2 * $[0]') → 8</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>number / number → number</code></td>
<td>Division</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('[8.5]', '$[0] / 2') → 4.2500000000000000</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>number % number → number</code></td>
<td>Modulo (remainder)</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('[32]', '$[0] % 10') → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>value.type() → string</code></td>
<td>Type of the JSON item (see <code>json_typeof</code>)</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query_array([1, 2, {}], '$[*].type()') → [&quot;number&quot;, &quot;string&quot;, &quot;object&quot;]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>value.size() → number</code></td>
<td>Size of the JSON item (number of array elements, or 1 if not an array)</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('{&quot;m&quot;: [11, 15]}', '$.m.size()') → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>value.double() → number</code></td>
<td>Approximate floating-point number converted from a JSON number or string</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('{&quot;len&quot;: &quot;1.9&quot;}', '$.len.double() * 2') → 3.8</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>number.ceil() → number</code></td>
<td>Nearest integer greater than or equal to the given number</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('{&quot;h&quot;: 1.3}', '$.h.ceil()') → 2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>number.floor() → number</code></td>
<td>Nearest integer less than or equal to the given number</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('{&quot;h&quot;: 1.7}', '$.h.floor()') → 1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>number.abs() → number</code></td>
<td>Absolute value of the given number</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query('{&quot;z&quot;: -0.3}', '$.z.abs()') → 0.3</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>string.datetime() → datetime_type</code></td>
<td>(see note)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Operator/Method</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
<th><strong>Example(s)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Date/time value converted from a string | jsonb_path_query('
  
  ["2015-8-1", "2015-08-12"]', 
  '$_[*] ? (\@.datetime() < "2015-08-2".datetime())')  
  → "2015-8-1" | |
| string . datetime( template ) → datetype_type | (see note) | |
| Date/time value converted from a string using the specified to_timestamp template | jsonb_path_query_array('
  
  ["12:30", "18:40"]', 
  '$[*].datetime("HH24:MI")') 
  → ["12:30:00", "18:40:00"] | |
| object . keyvalue() → array | The object's key-value pairs, represented as an array of objects containing three fields: "key", "value", and "id"; "id" is a unique identifier of the object the key-value pair belongs to | jsonb_path_query_array(
  
  "{x": "20", "y": 32}
  
  , "$ . keyvalue()"
  
  ) → [{"id": 0, "key": "x", "value": "20"}, {"id": 0, "key": "y", "value": 32}] |

### Note

The result type of the \( \text{datetime()} \) and \( \text{datetime(template)} \) methods can be date, timetz, time, timestamptz, or timestamp. Both methods determine their result type dynamically.

The \( \text{datetime()} \) method sequentially tries to match its input string to the ISO formats for date, timetz, time, timestamptz, and timestamp. It stops on the first matching format and emits the corresponding data type.

The \( \text{datetime(template)} \) method determines the result type according to the fields used in the provided template string.

The \( \text{datetime()} \) and \( \text{datetime(template)} \) methods use the same parsing rules as the \( \text{to_timestamp} \) SQL function does (see Section 9.8), with three exceptions. First, these methods don't allow unmatched template patterns. Second, only the following separators are allowed in the template string: minus sign, period, solidus (slash), comma, apostrophe, semicolon, colon and space. Third, separators in the template string must exactly match the input string.

If different date/time types need to be compared, an implicit cast is applied. A date value can be cast to timestamp or timestamptz, timestamp can be cast to timestamptz, and time to timetz. However, all but the first of these conversions depend on the current TimeZone setting, and thus can only be performed within timezone-aware jsonpath functions.

**Table 9.49** shows the available filter expression elements.

### Table 9.49. jsonpath Filter Expression Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Predicate/Value</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
<th><strong>Example(s)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| value == value → boolean | Equality comparison (this, and the other comparison operators, work on all JSON scalar values) | jsonb_path_query_array(  
  
  ['1", "a", 1, 3']
  
  , '$_[*] ? (@ == 1)'
  
  ) → [1, 1]  
  
  jsonb_path_query_array(  
  
  ['1", "a", 1, 3']
  
  , '$_[*] ? (@ == "a")'
  
  ) → ["a"] |

<p>| value != value → boolean | |
| value &lt;&gt; value → boolean | Non-equality comparison |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predicate/Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, 2, 1, 3]', '$[*] ? (@ != 1)')</td>
<td>→ [2, 3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_array('[&quot;a&quot;, &quot;b&quot;, &quot;c&quot;],', '$[*] ? (@ &lt;&gt; &quot;b&quot;)')</td>
<td>→ [&quot;a&quot;, &quot;c&quot;]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, 2, 3]', '$[*] ? (@ &lt; 2)')</td>
<td>→ [1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_array('[&quot;a&quot;, &quot;b&quot;, &quot;c&quot;],', '$[*] ? (@ &lt;= &quot;b&quot;)')</td>
<td>→ [&quot;a&quot;, &quot;b&quot;]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, 2, 3]', '$[*] ? (@ &gt; 2)')</td>
<td>→ [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, 2, 3]', '$[*] ? (@ &gt;= 2)')</td>
<td>→ [2, 3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON constant true</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>jsonb_path_query('{&quot;name&quot;: &quot;John&quot;, &quot;parent&quot;: false}, {&quot;name&quot;: &quot;Chris&quot;, &quot;parent&quot;: true}'), '$_' ? ($parent == true)') → {&quot;name&quot;: &quot;Chris&quot;, &quot;parent&quot;: true}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON constant false</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>jsonb_path_query('{&quot;name&quot;: &quot;John&quot;, &quot;parent&quot;: false}, {&quot;name&quot;: &quot;Chris&quot;, &quot;parent&quot;: true}'), '$_' ? ($parent == false)') → {&quot;name&quot;: &quot;John&quot;, &quot;parent&quot;: false}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON constant null</td>
<td>(note that, unlike in SQL, comparison to null works normally)</td>
<td>jsonb_path_query('{&quot;name&quot;: &quot;Mary&quot;, &quot;job&quot;: null}, {&quot;name&quot;: &quot;Michael&quot;, &quot;job&quot;: &quot;driver&quot;}'), '$_' ? ($job == null) .name') → &quot;Mary&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean &amp;&amp; boolean</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>jsonb_path_query('[1, 3, 7]', '$_' ? (@ &gt; 1 &amp;&amp; @ &lt; 5)') → 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
<td>boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>! boolean</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>jsonb_path_query('[1, 3, 7]', '$_' ? (!(@ &lt; 5))') → 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean is unknown</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>Tests whether a Boolean condition is unknown. jsonb_path_query('[−1, 2, 7, &quot;foo&quot;], '$_' ? ((@ &gt; 0) is unknown)') → &quot;foo&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predicate/Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>string like_regex</strong></td>
<td>Tests whether the first operand matches the regular expression given by the second operand, optionally with modifications described by a string of flag characters (see Section 9.16.2.3).</td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query_array([&quot;abc&quot;, &quot;abd&quot;, &quot;aBdC&quot;, &quot;abdacb&quot;, &quot;babc&quot;], '[$[*] ? (@ like_regex &quot;^ab.*c&quot;)]') → [&quot;abc&quot;, &quot;abd&quot;]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>jsonb_path_query_array([&quot;abc&quot;, &quot;abd&quot;, &quot;aBdC&quot;, &quot;abdacb&quot;, &quot;babc&quot;], '[$[*] ? (@ like_regex &quot;^ab.*c&quot; flag &quot;i&quot;)]') → [&quot;abc&quot;, &quot;aBdC&quot;, &quot;abdacb&quot;]</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**string starts with**

Tests whether the second operand is an initial substring of the first operand.

- `jsonb_path_query(['John Smith', 'Mary Stone', 'Bob Johnson'], '$[*] ? (@ starts with "John")') → "John Smith"`

**exists**

Tests whether a path expression matches at least one SQL/JSON item. Returns unknown if the path expression would result in an error; the second example uses this to avoid a no-such-key error in strict mode.

- `jsonb_path_query('{{"x": [1, 2], "y": [2, 4]}', 'strict $.? ? (exists (@ ? (@[*] > 2])))') → [2, 4]`
- `jsonb_path_query_array('{{"value": 41}', 'strict $ ? (exists (@.name)) .name') → []`

#### 9.16.2.3. SQL/JSON Regular Expressions

SQL/JSON path expressions allow matching text to a regular expression with the `like_regex` filter. For example, the following SQL/JSON path query would case-insensitively match all strings in an array that start with an English vowel:

```
$[*] ? (@ like_regex "^[aeiou]" flag "i")
```

The optional `flag` string may include one or more of the characters:

- `i` for case-insensitive match,
- `m` to allow `^` and `$` to match at newlines,
- `s` to allow `.` to match a newline, and
- `q` to quote the whole pattern (reducing the behavior to a simple substring match).

The SQL/JSON standard borrows its definition for regular expressions from the `LIKE_REGEX` operator, which in turn uses the XQuery standard. PostgreSQL does not currently support the `LIKE_REGEX` operator. Therefore, the `like_regex` filter is implemented using the POSIX regular expression engine described in Section 9.7.3. This leads to various minor discrepancies from standard SQL/JSON behavior, which are cataloged in Section 9.7.3.8. Note, however, that the flag-letter incompatibilities described there do not apply to SQL/JSON, as it translates the XQuery flag letters to match what the POSIX engine expects.

Keep in mind that the pattern argument of `like_regex` is a JSON path string literal, written according to the rules given in Section 8.14.7. This means in particular that any backslashes you want to use in the regular expression must be doubled. For example, to match string values of the root document that contain only digits:

```
$.? ? (@ like_regex "^\\d+$")
```

### 9.17. Sequence Manipulation Functions

This section describes functions for operating on **sequence objects**, also called sequence generators or just sequences. Sequence objects are special single-row tables created with `CREATE SEQUENCE`. Sequence objects are commonly used to generate unique identifiers for rows of a table. The sequence functions, listed in Table 9.50, provide simple, multiuser-safe methods for obtaining successive sequence values from sequence objects.
Functions and Operators

### Table 9.50. Sequence Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>nextval</strong> (regclass) → bigint</td>
<td>Advances the sequence object to its next value and returns that value. This is done atomically: even if multiple sessions execute <code>nextval</code> concurrently, each will safely receive a distinct sequence value. If the sequence object has been created with default parameters, successive <code>nextval</code> calls will return successive values beginning with 1. Other behaviors can be obtained by using appropriate parameters in the <code>CREATE SEQUENCE</code> command. This function requires <code>USAGE</code> or <code>UPDATE</code> privilege on the sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>setval</strong> (regclass, bigint [, boolean ]) → bigint</td>
<td>Sets the sequence object’s current value, and optionally its <code>is-called</code> flag. The two-parameter form sets the sequence’s <code>last_value</code> field to the specified value and sets its <code>is-called</code> field to <code>true</code>, meaning that the next <code>nextval</code> will advance the sequence before returning a value. The value that will be reported by <code>currval</code> is also set to the specified value. In the three-parameter form, <code>is-called</code> can be set to either <code>true</code> or <code>false</code>. <code>true</code> has the same effect as the two-parameter form. If it is set to <code>false</code>, the next <code>nextval</code> will return exactly the specified value, and sequence advancement commences with the following <code>nextval</code>. Furthermore, the value reported by <code>currval</code> is not changed in this case. For example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SELECT setval('myseq', 42);</code></td>
<td>Next <code>nextval</code> will return 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SELECT setval('myseq', 42, true);</code></td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SELECT setval('myseq', 42, false);</code></td>
<td>Next <code>nextval</code> will return 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>currval</strong> (regclass) → bigint</td>
<td>Returns the value most recently obtained by <code>nextval</code> for this sequence in the current session. (An error is reported if <code>nextval</code> has never been called for this sequence in this session.) Because this is returning a session-local value, it gives a predictable answer whether or not other sessions have executed <code>nextval</code> since the current session did. This function requires <code>USAGE</code> or <code>SELECT</code> privilege on the sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lastval</strong> () → bigint</td>
<td>Returns the value most recently returned by <code>nextval</code> in the current session. This function is identical to <code>currval</code>, except that instead of taking the sequence name as an argument it refers to whichever sequence <code>nextval</code> was most recently applied to in the current session. It is an error to call <code>lastval</code> if <code>nextval</code> has not yet been called in the current session. This function requires <code>USAGE</code> or <code>SELECT</code> privilege on the last used sequence.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Caution

To avoid blocking concurrent transactions that obtain numbers from the same sequence, a `nextval` operation is never rolled back; that is, once a value has been fetched it is considered used and will not be returned again. This is true even if the surrounding transaction later aborts, or if the calling query ends up not using the value. For example an `INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT` clause will compute the to-be-inserted tuple, including doing any required `nextval` calls, before detecting any conflict that would cause it to follow the `ON CONFLICT` rule instead. Such cases will leave unused “holes” in the sequence of assigned values. Thus, Postgres Pro sequence objects cannot be used to obtain “gapless” sequences.

Likewise, any sequence state changes made by `setval` are not undone if the transaction rolls back.
The sequence to be operated on by a sequence function is specified by a regclass argument, which is simply the OID of the sequence in the pg_class system catalog. You do not have to look up the OID by hand, however, since the regclass data type's input converter will do the work for you. See Section 8.19 for details.

9.18. Conditional Expressions

This section describes the SQL-compliant conditional expressions available in Postgres Pro.

Tip

If your needs go beyond the capabilities of these conditional expressions, you might want to consider writing a server-side function in a more expressive programming language.

Note

Although COALESCE, GREATEST, and LEAST are syntactically similar to functions, they are not ordinary functions, and thus cannot be used with explicit VARIADIC array arguments.

9.18.1. CASE

The SQL CASE expression is a generic conditional expression, similar to if/else statements in other programming languages:

```
CASE WHEN condition THEN result
     [WHEN ...]
     [ELSE result]
END
```

CASE clauses can be used wherever an expression is valid. Each condition is an expression that returns a boolean result. If the condition's result is true, the value of the CASE expression is the result that follows the condition, and the remainder of the CASE expression is not processed. If the condition's result is not true, any subsequent WHEN clauses are examined in the same manner. If no WHEN condition yields true, the value of the CASE expression is the result of the ELSE clause. If the ELSE clause is omitted and no condition is true, the result is null.

An example:

```
SELECT * FROM test;
```

```
a ---
1
2
3
```

```
SELECT a,
     CASE WHEN a=1 THEN 'one'
          WHEN a=2 THEN 'two'
          ELSE 'other'
     END
FROM test;
```

```
a | case
---+------
1 | one
2 | two
```
The data types of all the result expressions must be convertible to a single output type. See Section 10.5 for more details.

There is a “simple” form of CASE expression that is a variant of the general form above:

```sql
CASE expression
  WHEN value THEN result
  [WHEN ...]
  [ELSE result]
END
```

The first expression is computed, then compared to each of the value expressions in the WHEN clauses until one is found that is equal to it. If no match is found, the result of the ELSE clause (or a null value) is returned. This is similar to the switch statement in C.

The example above can be written using the simple CASE syntax:

```sql
SELECT a,
  CASE a WHEN 1 THEN 'one'
          WHEN 2 THEN 'two'
          ELSE 'other'
  END
FROM test;
```

A CASE expression does not evaluate any subexpressions that are not needed to determine the result. For example, this is a possible way of avoiding a division-by-zero failure:

```sql
SELECT ... WHERE CASE WHEN x <> 0 THEN y/x > 1.5 ELSE false END;
```

### Note

As described in Section 4.2.14, there are various situations in which subexpressions of an expression are evaluated at different times, so that the principle that “CASE evaluates only necessary subexpressions” is not ironclad. For example a constant 1/0 subexpression will usually result in a division-by-zero failure at planning time, even if it's within a CASE arm that would never be entered at run time.

### 9.18.2. COALESCE

COALESCE(value [, ...])

The COALESCE function returns the first of its arguments that is not null. Null is returned only if all arguments are null. It is often used to substitute a default value for null values when data is retrieved for display, for example:

```sql
SELECT COALESCE(description, short_description, '(none)') ... 
```

This returns description if it is not null, otherwise short_description if it is not null, otherwise (none).

The arguments must all be convertible to a common data type, which will be the type of the result (see Section 10.5 for details).

Like a CASE expression, COALESCE only evaluates the arguments that are needed to determine the result; that is, arguments to the right of the first non-null argument are not evaluated. This SQL-standard function provides capabilities similar to NVL and IFNULL, which are used in some other database systems.
9.18.3. NULLIF

\[ \text{NULLIF}(\text{value1, value2}) \]

The `NULLIF` function returns a null value if `value1` equals `value2`; otherwise it returns `value1`. This can be used to perform the inverse operation of the `COALESCE` example given above:

```sql
SELECT NULLIF(value, '(none)') ...
```

In this example, if `value` is `(none)`, null is returned, otherwise the value of `value` is returned.

The two arguments must be of comparable types. To be specific, they are compared exactly as if you had written `value1 = value2`, so there must be a suitable `=` operator available.

The result has the same type as the first argument — but there is a subtlety. What is actually returned is the first argument of the implied `=` operator, and in some cases that will have been promoted to match the second argument's type. For example, `NULLIF(1, 2.2)` yields numeric, because there is no `integer = numeric` operator, only `numeric = numeric`.

9.18.4. GREATEST and LEAST

\[ \text{GREATEST}(\text{value }[, \ldots]) \]
\[ \text{LEAST}(\text{value }[, \ldots]) \]

The `GREATEST` and `LEAST` functions select the largest or smallest value from a list of any number of expressions. The expressions must all be convertible to a common data type, which will be the type of the result (see Section 10.5 for details). NULL values in the list are ignored. The result will be NULL only if all the expressions evaluate to NULL.

Note that `GREATEST` and `LEAST` are not in the SQL standard, but are a common extension. Some other databases make them return NULL if any argument is NULL, rather than only when all are NULL.

9.19. Array Functions and Operators

Table 9.51 shows the specialized operators available for array types. In addition to those, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for arrays. The comparison operators compare the array contents element-by-element, using the default B-tree comparison function for the element data type, and sort based on the first difference. In multidimensional arrays the elements are visited in row-major order (last subscript varies most rapidly). If the contents of two arrays are equal but the dimensionality is different, the first difference in the dimensionality information determines the sort order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anyarray @&gt; anyarray → boolean</td>
<td>Does the first array contain the second, that is, does each element appearing in the second array equal some element of the first array? (Duplicates are not treated specially, thus <code>ARRAY[1] and ARRAY[1,1]</code> are each considered to contain the other.)</td>
<td><code>ARRAY[1,4,3] @&gt; ARRAY[3,1,3] → t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyarray &lt;@ anyarray → boolean</td>
<td>Is the first array contained by the second?</td>
<td><code>ARRAY[2,2,7] &lt;@ ARRAY[1,7,4,2,6] → t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyarray &amp;&amp; anyarray → boolean</td>
<td>Do the arrays overlap, that is, have any elements in common?</td>
<td><code>ARRAY[1,4,3] &amp;&amp; ARRAY[2,1] → t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblearray</td>
<td></td>
<td>anycompatiblearray → anycompatiblearray</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concatenates the two arrays. Concatenating a null or empty array is a no-op; otherwise the arrays must have the same number of dimensions (as illustrated by the first example) or differ in number of dimensions by one (as illustrated by the second). If the arrays are not of identical element types, they will be coerced to a common type (see Section 10.5).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRAY[1,2,3]</td>
<td></td>
<td>ARRAY[4,5,6,7] → {1,2,3,4,5,6,7}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRAY[1,2,3]</td>
<td></td>
<td>ARRAY[[4,5,6],[7,8,9.9]] → {{1,2,3},{4,5,6},{7,8,9.9}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatible</td>
<td></td>
<td>anycompatiblearray → anycompatiblearray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concatenates an element onto the front of an array (which must be empty or one-dimensional).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>ARRAY[4,5,6] → {3,4,5,6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblearray</td>
<td></td>
<td>anycompatible → anycompatiblearray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concatenates an element onto the end of an array (which must be empty or one-dimensional).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRAY[4,5,6]</td>
<td></td>
<td>7 → {4,5,6,7}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Section 8.15 for more details about array operator behavior. See Section 11.2 for more details about which operators support indexed operations.

Table 9.52 shows the functions available for use with array types. See Section 8.15 for more information and examples of the use of these functions.

Table 9.52. Array Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>array_append (anycompatiblearray, anycompatible) → anycompatiblearray</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appends an element to the end of an array (same as the anycompatiblearray</td>
<td></td>
<td>anycompatible operator).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_append(ARRAY[1,2], 3) → {1,2,3}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_cat (anycompatiblearray, anycompatiblearray) → anycompatiblearray</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concatenates two arrays (same as the anycompatiblearray</td>
<td></td>
<td>anycompatiblearray operator).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_cat(ARRAY[1,2,3], ARRAY[4,5]) → {1,2,3,4,5}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_dims (anyarray) → text</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns a text representation of the array's dimensions.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_dims(ARRAY([[1,2,3], [4,5,6]]) → [1:2][1:3]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_fill (anynumber, integer[], integer[]) → anyarray</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns an array filled with copies of the given value, having dimensions of the lengths specified by the second argument. The optional third argument supplies lower-bound values for each dimension (which default to all 1).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_fill(11, ARRAY[2,3]) → {{11,11,11},{11,11,11}}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_fill(7, ARRAY[3], ARRAY[2]) → [2:4]=({7,7,7})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_length (anyarray, integer) → integer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the length of the requested array dimension.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_length(array[1,2,3], 1) → 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_lower (anyarray, integer) → integer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the lower bound of the requested array dimension.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_lower</td>
<td>Returns the first occurrence of the second argument in the array, or NULL if it's not present. If the third argument is given, the search begins at that subscript. The array must be one-dimensional. Comparisons are done using IS NOT DISTINCT FROM semantics, so it is possible to search for NULL.</td>
<td>array_lower('sun', 'mon', 'tue', 'wed', 'thu', 'fri', 'sat'), 'mon') (\rightarrow) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_upper</td>
<td>Returns the upper bound of the requested array dimension.</td>
<td>array_upper(ARRAY[1,8,3,7], 1) (\rightarrow) 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_positions</td>
<td>Returns an array of the subscripts of all occurrences of the second argument in the array given as first argument. The array must be one-dimensional. Comparisons are done using IS NOT DISTINCT FROM semantics, so it is possible to search for NULL. NULL is returned only if the array is NULL; if the value is not found in the array, an empty array is returned.</td>
<td>array_positions(ARRAY['A','A','B','A'], 'A') (\rightarrow) {1,2,4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_remove</td>
<td>Removes all elements equal to the given value from the array. The array must be one-dimensional. Comparisons are done using IS NOT DISTINCT FROM semantics, so it is possible to remove NULLS.</td>
<td>array_remove(ARRAY[1,2,3,2], 2) (\rightarrow) {1,3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_replace</td>
<td>Replaces each array element equal to the second argument with the third argument.</td>
<td>array_replace(ARRAY[1,2,5,4], 5, 3) (\rightarrow) {1,2,3,4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_to_string</td>
<td>Converts each array element to its text representation, and concatenates those separated by the delimiter string. If null_string is given and is not NULL, then NULL array entries are represented by that string; otherwise, they are omitted.</td>
<td>array_to_string(ARRAY[1, 2, 3, NULL, 5], ',', '<em>') (\rightarrow) 1,2,3,</em>,*,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_prepend</td>
<td>Prepends an element to the beginning of an array (same as the anycompatible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_positions</td>
<td>Returns an array of the subscripts of all occurrences of the second argument in the array given as first argument. The array must be one-dimensional. Comparisons are done using IS NOT DISTINCT FROM semantics, so it is possible to search for NULL. NULL is returned only if the array is NULL; if the value is not found in the array, an empty array is returned.</td>
<td>array_positions(ARRAY['A','A','B','A'], 'A') (\rightarrow) {1,2,4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim_array</td>
<td>Trims an array by removing the last (n) elements. If the array is multidimensional, only the first dimension is trimmed.</td>
<td>trim_array(ARRAY[1,2,3,4,5,6], 2) (\rightarrow) {1,2,3,4}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Function | Description | Example(s) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>array_lower</td>
<td>Returns the first occurrence of the second argument in the array, or NULL if it's not present. If the third argument is given, the search begins at that subscript. The array must be one-dimensional. Comparisons are done using IS NOT DISTINCT FROM semantics, so it is possible to search for NULL.</td>
<td>array_lower('sun', 'mon', 'tue', 'wed', 'thu', 'fri', 'sat'), 'mon') (\rightarrow) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>array_upper</td>
<td>Returns the upper bound of the requested array dimension.</td>
<td>array_upper(ARRAY[1,8,3,7], 1) (\rightarrow) 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardinality</td>
<td>Returns the total number of elements in the array, or 0 if the array is empty.</td>
<td>cardinality(ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]]) (\rightarrow) 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim_array</td>
<td>Trims an array by removing the last (n) elements. If the array is multidimensional, only the first dimension is trimmed.</td>
<td>trim_array(ARRAY[1,2,3,4,5,6], 2) (\rightarrow) {1,2,3,4}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **unnest** (anyarray) → setof anyelement | Expands an array into a set of rows. The array's elements are read out in storage order. | unnest (ARRAY[1,2]) → 1 2  
unnest (ARRAY[['foo','bar'],['baz','quux']]) → foo bar baz quux |

| unnest (anyarray, anyarray [,...]) → setof anyelement, anyelement [,...] | Expands multiple arrays (possibly of different data types) into a set of rows. If the arrays are not all the same length then the shorter ones are padded with NULLs. This form is only allowed in a query's FROM clause; see Section 7.2.1.4. | select * from unnest(ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY['foo','bar','baz']) as x(a,b) → a | b  
1 | foo  
2 | bar  
   | baz |

#### Note

There are two differences in the behavior of `string_to_array` from pre-9.1 versions of PostgreSQL. First, it will return an empty (zero-element) array rather than NULL when the input string is of zero length. Second, if the delimiter string is NULL, the function splits the input into individual characters, rather than returning NULL as before.

See also Section 9.21 about the aggregate function `array_agg` for use with arrays.

### 9.20. Range/Multirange Functions and Operators

See Section 8.17 for an overview of range types.

Table 9.53 shows the specialized operators available for range types. Table 9.54 shows the specialized operators available for multirange types. In addition to those, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for range and multirange types. The comparison operators order first by the range lower bounds, and only if those are equal do they compare the upper bounds. The multirange operators compare each range until one is unequal. This does not usually result in a useful overall ordering, but the operators are provided to allow unique indexes to be constructed on ranges.

#### Table 9.53. Range Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anyrange @&gt; anyrange → boolean</td>
<td>Does the first range contain the second?</td>
<td>int4range(2,4) @&gt; int4range(2,3) → t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

anyrange @> anyelement → boolean
### Operator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Is the first range contained by the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;</code></td>
<td>anyelement</td>
<td>Is the element contained in the range?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&amp;&amp;</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Do the ranges overlap, that is, have any elements in common?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;&lt;</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Is the first range strictly left of the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&gt;&gt;</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Is the first range strictly right of the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&amp;&lt;</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Does the first range not extend to the right of the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&amp;&gt;</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Does the first range not extend to the left of the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`-</td>
<td>`</td>
<td>anyrange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>+</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Computes the union of the ranges. The ranges must overlap or be adjacent, so that the union is a single range (but see range_merge()).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>*</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Computes the intersection of the ranges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-</code></td>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Computes the difference of the ranges. The second range must not be contained in the first in such a way that the difference would not be a single range.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 9.54. Multirange Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@&gt;</code></td>
<td>anymultirange</td>
<td>Does the first multirange contain the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>@&gt;</code></td>
<td>multirange @&gt; anyrange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange @&gt; anyrange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does the multirange contain the range?</td>
<td>'{[2,4)}'::int4multirange @&gt; int4range(2,3) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>@&gt;</code></td>
<td>multirange @&gt; anyelement → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange @&gt; anyelement @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does the multirange contain the element?</td>
<td>'{[2011-01-01,2011-03-01)}'::tsmultirange @&gt; '2011-01-10'::timestamp → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anyrange @&gt; anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anyrange @&gt; anymultirange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does the range contain the multirange?</td>
<td>'{[2,4)}'::int4range @&gt; '{[2,3)}'::int4multirange → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anyelement @&gt; anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;@</code> anyelement @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the first multirange contained by the second?</td>
<td>'{[2,4)}'::int4multirange <code>&lt;@</code> '{[1,7)}'::int4multirange → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;@</code> anyrange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;@</code> anyrange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the multirange contained by the range?</td>
<td>'{[2,4)}'::int4multirange <code>&lt;@</code> int4range(1,7) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;@</code> anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;@</code> anymultirange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the range contained by the multirange?</td>
<td>int4range(2,4) <code>&lt;@</code> '{[1,7)}'::int4multirange → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anyelement <code>&lt;@</code> anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anyelement <code>&lt;@</code> anymultirange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the element contained by the multirange?</td>
<td>42 <code>&lt;@</code> '{[1,7)}'::int4multirange → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&amp;&amp;</code> anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&amp;&amp;</code> anymultirange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do the multiranges overlap, that is, have any</td>
<td>'{[3,7)}'::int8multirange <code>&amp;&amp;</code> '{[4,12)}'::int8multirange → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>elements in common?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&amp;&amp;</code> anyrange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&amp;&amp;</code> anyrange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does the multirange overlap the range?</td>
<td>'{[3,7)}'::int8multirange <code>&amp;&amp;</code> int8range(4,12) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anyrange <code>&amp;&amp;</code> anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anyrange <code>&amp;&amp;</code> anymultirange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does the range overlap the multirange?</td>
<td>int8range(3,7) <code>&amp;&amp;</code> '{[4,12)}'::int8multirange → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;&lt;</code> anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;&lt;</code> anymultirange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the first multirange strictly left of the</td>
<td>'{[1,10)}'::int8multirange <code>&lt;&lt;</code> '{[100,110)}'::int8multirange → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>second?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;&lt;</code> anyrange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&lt;&lt;</code> anyrange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the multirange strictly left of the range?</td>
<td>'{[1,10)}'::int8multirange <code>&lt;&lt;</code> int8range(100,110) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anyrange <code>&lt;&lt;</code> anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anyrange <code>&lt;&lt;</code> anymultirange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the range strictly left of the multirange?</td>
<td>int8range(1,10) <code>&lt;&lt;</code> '{[100,110)}'::int8multirange → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;@</code></td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&gt;&gt;</code> anymultirange → boolean</td>
<td>anymultirange <code>&gt;&gt;</code> anymultirange @&gt; boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is the first multirange strictly right of the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>second?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>'{[50,60)}'::int8multirange &gt;&gt; '{[20,30)}':int8multirange</code> → t</td>
<td>Is the multirange strictly right of the range?</td>
<td><code>'{[50,60)}'::int8multirange &gt;&gt; int8range(20,30)</code> → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>anyrange &gt;&gt; anymultirange</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Is the range strictly right of the multirange?</td>
<td><code>int8range(50,60) &gt;&gt; '{[20,30)}':int8multirange</code> → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>anyrange &amp;&gt; anymultirange</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Does the range not extend to the left of the multirange?</td>
<td><code>int8range(7,20) &amp;&gt; '{[5,10)}':int8multirange</code> → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>anymultirange + anymultirange</code> → anymultirange</td>
<td>Computes the union of the multiranges. The multiranges need not overlap or be adjacent.</td>
<td>`{[5,10)}':nummultirange + '{[15,20)}':nummultirange → {[5,10), [15,20]}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>anymultirange * anymultirange</code> → anymultirange</td>
<td>Computes the intersection of the multiranges.</td>
<td>`{[5,15)}':int8multirange * '{[10,20)}':int8multirange → {[10,15]}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>anymultirange - anymultirange</code> → anymultirange</td>
<td>Computes the difference of the multiranges.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

297
The left-of/right-of/adjacent operators always return false when an empty range or multirange is involved; that is, an empty range is not considered to be either before or after any other range.

Elsewhere empty ranges and multiranges are treated as the additive identity: anything unioned with an empty value is itself. Anything minus an empty value is itself. An empty multirange has exactly the same points as an empty range. Every range contains the empty range. Every multirange contains as many empty ranges as you like.

The range union and difference operators will fail if the resulting range would need to contain two disjoint sub-ranges, as such a range cannot be represented. There are separate operators for union and difference that take multirange parameters and return a multirange, and they do not fail even if their arguments are disjoint. So if you need a union or difference operation for ranges that may be disjoint, you can avoid errors by first casting your ranges to multiranges.

Table 9.55 shows the functions available for use with range types. Table 9.56 shows the functions available for use with multirange types.

Table 9.55. Range Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lower</td>
<td>Extracts the lower bound of the range (NULL if the range is empty or the lower bound is infinite).</td>
<td>lower(numrange(1.1,2.2)) → 1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper</td>
<td>Extracts the upper bound of the range (NULL if the range is empty or the upper bound is infinite).</td>
<td>upper(numrange(1.1,2.2)) → 2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isempty</td>
<td>Is the range empty?</td>
<td>isempty(numrange(1.1,2.2)) → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lower_inc</td>
<td>Is the range’s lower bound inclusive?</td>
<td>lower_inc(numrange(1.1,2.2)) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper_inc</td>
<td>Is the range’s upper bound inclusive?</td>
<td>upper_inc(numrange(1.1,2.2)) → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lower_inf</td>
<td>Is the range’s lower bound infinite?</td>
<td>lower_inf('(',)::daterange) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper_inf</td>
<td>Is the range’s upper bound infinite?</td>
<td>upper_inf('(',)::daterange) → t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>range_merge (anyrange, anyrange) → anyrange</td>
<td>Computes the smallest range that includes both of the given ranges.</td>
<td>range_merge('[(1,2)]::int4range, '[(3,4)]::int4range) → [1,4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 9.56. Multirange Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lower (anymultirange) → anyelement</td>
<td>Extracts the lower bound of the multirange (NULL if the multirange is empty or the lower bound is infinite).</td>
<td>lower('[(1.1,2.2)]'::nummultirange) → 1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper (anymultirange) → anyelement</td>
<td>Extracts the upper bound of the multirange (NULL if the multirange is empty or the upper bound is infinite).</td>
<td>upper('[(1.1,2.2)]'::nummultirange) → 2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isempty (anymultirange) → boolean</td>
<td>Is the multirange empty?</td>
<td>isempty('[(1.1,2.2)]'::nummultirange) → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lower_inc (anymultirange) → boolean</td>
<td>Is the multirange's lower bound inclusive?</td>
<td>lower_inc('[(1.1,2.2)]'::nummultirange) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper_inc (anymultirange) → boolean</td>
<td>Is the multirange's upper bound inclusive?</td>
<td>upper_inc('[(1.1,2.2)]'::nummultirange) → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lower_inf (anymultirange) → boolean</td>
<td>Is the multirange's lower bound infinite?</td>
<td>lower_inf('((,))'::datemultirange) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper_inf (anymultirange) → boolean</td>
<td>Is the multirange's upper bound infinite?</td>
<td>upper_inf('((,))'::datemultirange) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range_merge (anymultirange) → anyrange</td>
<td>Computes the entire multirange.</td>
<td>range_merge('[(1,2), (3,4)]'::int4multirange) → [1,4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multirange (anyrange) → anymultirange</td>
<td>Returns a multirange containing just the given range.</td>
<td>multirange('[1,2]'::int4range) → {[1,2]}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unnest (anymultirange) → setof anyrange</td>
<td>Expands a multirange into a set of ranges. The ranges are read out in storage order (ascending).</td>
<td>unnest('[(1,2), (3,4)]'::int4multirange) → {[1,2), [3,4)}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `lower_inc`, `upper_inc`, `lower_inf`, and `upper_inf` functions all return false for an empty range or multirange.

## 9.21. Aggregate Functions

*Aggregate functions* compute a single result from a set of input values. The built-in general-purpose aggregate functions are listed in Table 9.57 while statistical aggregates are in Table 9.58. The built-in within-group ordered-set aggregate functions are listed in Table 9.59 while the built-in within-group hypothetical-set ones are in Table 9.60. Grouping operations, which are closely related to aggregate functions, are listed in Table 9.61. The special syntax considerations for aggregate functions are explained in Section 4.2.7. Consult Section 2.7 for additional introductory information.

Aggregate functions that support *Partial Mode* are eligible to participate in various optimizations, such as parallel aggregation.

### Table 9.57. General-Purpose Aggregate Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Partial Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>array_agg (anynonarray) → anyarray</code></td>
<td>Collects all the input values, including nulls, into an array.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>array_agg (anyarray) → anyarray</code></td>
<td>Concatenates all the input arrays into an array of one higher dimension. (The inputs must all have the same dimensionality, and cannot be empty or null.)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>avg (smallint) → numeric</code></td>
<td>Computes the average (arithmetic mean) of all the non-null input values.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>avg (integer) → numeric</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>avg (bigint) → numeric</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>avg (numeric) → numeric</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>avg (real) → double precision</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>avg (double precision) → double precision</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>avg (interval) → interval</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_and (smallint) → smallint</code></td>
<td>Computes the bitwise AND of all non-null input values.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_and (integer) → integer</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_and (bigint) → bigint</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_and (bit) → bit</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_or (smallint) → smallint</code></td>
<td>Computes the bitwise OR of all non-null input values.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_or (integer) → integer</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_or (bigint) → bigint</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_or (bit) → bit</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_xor (smallint) → smallint</code></td>
<td>Computes the bitwise exclusive OR of all non-null input values. Can be useful as a checksum for an unordered set of values.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_xor (integer) → integer</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_xor (bigint) → bigint</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bit_xor (bit) → bit</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bool_and (boolean) → boolean</code></td>
<td>Returns true if all non-null input values are true, otherwise false.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Partial Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bool_or</td>
<td>(boolean) → boolean</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count(*)</td>
<td>Computes the number of input rows.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count(&quot;any&quot;)</td>
<td>Computes the number of input rows in which the input value is not null.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every(boolean)</td>
<td>This is the SQL standard's equivalent to bool_and.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_agg</td>
<td>(anyelement) → json</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_agg</td>
<td>(anyelement) → jsonb</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>json_object_agg</td>
<td>(key &quot;any&quot;, value &quot;any&quot;) → json</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_object_agg</td>
<td>(key &quot;any&quot;, value &quot;any&quot;) → jsonb</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max</td>
<td>(see text) → same as input type</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min</td>
<td>(see text) → same as input type</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range_agg</td>
<td>(value anyrange) → anymultirange</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range_intersect_agg</td>
<td>(value anyrange) → anymultirange</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string_agg</td>
<td>(value text, delimiter text) → text</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>(smallint) → bigint</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum(integer)</td>
<td>(integer) → bigint</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum(bigint)</td>
<td>(bigint) → numeric</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum(numeric)</td>
<td>(numeric) → numeric</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum(real)</td>
<td>(real) → real</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum(double precision)</td>
<td>(double precision) → double precision</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum(interval)</td>
<td>(interval) → interval</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum(money)</td>
<td>(money) → money</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmlagg</td>
<td>(xml) → xml</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: For the 'sum' function, the type of the non-null input values determines the output type.*
It should be noted that except for `count`, these functions return a null value when no rows are selected. In particular, `sum` of no rows returns null, not zero as one might expect, and `array_agg` returns null rather than an empty array when there are no input rows. The `coalesce` function can be used to substitute zero or an empty array for null when necessary.

The aggregate functions `array_agg`, `json_agg`, `jsonb_agg`, `json_object_agg`, `jsonb_object_agg`, `string_agg`, and `xmlagg`, as well as similar user-defined aggregate functions, produce meaningfully different result values depending on the order of the input values. This ordering is unspecified by default, but can be controlled by writing an `ORDER BY` clause within the aggregate call, as shown in Section 4.2.7. Alternatively, supplying the input values from a sorted subquery will usually work. For example:

```sql
SELECT xmlagg(x) FROM (SELECT x FROM test ORDER BY y DESC) AS tab;
```

Beware that this approach can fail if the outer query level contains additional processing, such as a join, because that might cause the subquery's output to be reordered before the aggregate is computed.

**Note**

The boolean aggregates `bool_and` and `bool_or` correspond to the standard SQL aggregates `every` and `any` or `some`. PostgreSQL supports `every`, but not `any` or `some`, because there is an ambiguity built into the standard syntax:

```sql
SELECT b1 = ANY((SELECT b2 FROM t2 ...)) FROM t1 ...;
```

Here `ANY` can be considered either as introducing a subquery, or as being an aggregate function, if the subquery returns one row with a Boolean value. Thus the standard name cannot be given to these aggregates.

**Note**

Users accustomed to working with other SQL database management systems might be disappointed by the performance of the `count` aggregate when it is applied to the entire table. A query like:

```sql
SELECT count(*) FROM sometable;
```

will require effort proportional to the size of the table: Postgres Pro will need to scan either the entire table or the entirety of an index that includes all rows in the table.

Table 9.58 shows aggregate functions typically used in statistical analysis. (These are separated out merely to avoid cluttering the listing of more-commonly-used aggregates.) Functions shown as accepting `numeric_type` are available for all the types `smallint`, `integer`, `bigint`, `numeric`, `real`, and `double precision`. Where the description mentions `N`, it means the number of input rows for which all the input expressions are non-null. In all cases, null is returned if the computation is meaningless, for example when `N` is zero.

**Table 9.58. Aggregate Functions for Statistics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Partial Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>corr</code></td>
<td>Computes the correlation coefficient.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>covar_pop</code></td>
<td>Computes the population covariance.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>covar_samp</code></td>
<td>Computes the sample covariance.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>regr_avgx</code></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Partial Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regr_avgy</strong></td>
<td>Computes the average of the independent variable, ( \frac{\sum X}{N} ).</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regr_count</strong></td>
<td>Computes the number of rows in which both inputs are non-null.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regr_intercept</strong></td>
<td>Computes the y-intercept of the least-squares-fit linear equation determined by the ((X, Y)) pairs.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regr_r2</strong></td>
<td>Computes the square of the correlation coefficient.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regr_slope</strong></td>
<td>Computes the slope of the least-squares-fit linear equation determined by the ((X, Y)) pairs.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regr_sxx</strong></td>
<td>Computes the “sum of squares” of the independent variable, ( \sum X^2 - \frac{\sum X^2}{N} ).</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regr_sxy</strong></td>
<td>Computes the “sum of products” of independent times dependent variables, ( \sum XY - \frac{\sum X \cdot \sum Y}{N} ).</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regr_syy</strong></td>
<td>Computes the “sum of squares” of the dependent variable, ( \sum Y^2 - \frac{\sum Y^2}{N} ).</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>stddev</strong></td>
<td>Computes the population standard deviation of the input values.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>stddev_pop</strong></td>
<td>Computes the sample standard deviation of the input values.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>stddev_samp</strong></td>
<td>Computes the sample standard deviation of the input values.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>variance</strong></td>
<td>Computes the population variance of the input values (square of the population standard deviation).</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>var_pop</strong></td>
<td>Computes the sample variance of the input values (square of the sample standard deviation).</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.59 shows some aggregate functions that use the ordered-set aggregate syntax. These functions are sometimes referred to as “inverse distribution” functions. Their aggregated input is introduced by ORDER BY, and they may also take a direct argument that is not aggregated, but is computed only once. All
Functions and Operators

these functions ignore null values in their aggregated input. For those that take a `fraction` parameter, the fraction value must be between 0 and 1; an error is thrown if not. However, a null `fraction` value simply produces a null result.

Table 9.59. Ordered-Set Aggregate Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Partial Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>mode()</code> WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY anyelement) → anyelement</td>
<td>Computes the mode, the most frequent value of the aggregated argument (arbitrarily choosing the first one if there are multiple equally-frequent values). The aggregated argument must be of a sortable type.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>percentile_cont (fraction double precision) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY double precision) → double precision</code></td>
<td>Computes the continuous percentile, a value corresponding to the specified <code>fraction</code> within the ordered set of aggregated argument values. This will interpolate between adjacent input items if needed.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>percentile_cont (fractions double precision[]) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY double precision[]) → double precision[]</code></td>
<td>Computes multiple continuous percentiles. The result is an array of the same dimensions as the <code>fractions</code> parameter, with each non-null element replaced by the (possibly interpolated) value corresponding to that percentile.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>percentile_disc (fraction double precision) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY anyelement) → anyelement</code></td>
<td>Computes the discrete percentile, the first value within the ordered set of aggregated argument values whose position in the ordering equals or exceeds the specified <code>fraction</code>. The aggregated argument must be of a sortable type.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>percentile_disc (fractions double precision[]) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY anyelement) → anyarray</code></td>
<td>Computes multiple discrete percentiles. The result is an array of the same dimensions as the <code>fractions</code> parameter, with each non-null element replaced by the input value corresponding to that percentile. The aggregated argument must be of a sortable type.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each of the “hypothetical-set” aggregates listed in Table 9.60 is associated with a window function of the same name defined in Section 9.22. In each case, the aggregate’s result is the value that the associated window function would have returned for the “hypothetical” row constructed from `args`, if such a row had been added to the sorted group of rows represented by the `sorted_args`. For each of these functions, the list of direct arguments given in `args` must match the number and types of the aggregated arguments given in `sorted_args`. Unlike most built-in aggregates, these aggregates are not strict, that is they do not drop input rows containing nulls. Null values sort according to the rule specified in the `ORDER BY` clause.

Table 9.60. Hypothetical-Set Aggregate Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Partial Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>rank (args) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY sorted_args) → bigint</code></td>
<td>Computes the rank of the hypothetical row, with gaps; that is, the row number of the first row in its peer group.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Partial Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>dense_rank</strong> ((args)) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY sorted_args) (\rightarrow) bigint</td>
<td>Computes the rank of the hypothetical row, without gaps; this function effectively counts peer groups.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>percent_rank</strong> ((args)) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY sorted_args) (\rightarrow) double precision</td>
<td>Computes the relative rank of the hypothetical row, that is ((\text{rank} - 1) / (\text{total rows} - 1)). The value thus ranges from 0 to 1 inclusive.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cume_dist</strong> ((args)) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY sorted_args) (\rightarrow) double precision</td>
<td>Computes the cumulative distribution, that is ((\text{number of rows preceding or peers with hypothetical row}) / (\text{total rows})). The value thus ranges from (1/N) to 1.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 9.61. Grouping Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>GROUPING</strong> ((\text{group_by_expression(s)})) (\rightarrow) integer</td>
<td>Returns a bit mask indicating which \text{GROUP BY} expressions are not included in the current grouping set. Bits are assigned with the rightmost argument corresponding to the least-significant bit; each bit is 0 if the corresponding expression is included in the grouping criteria of the grouping set generating the current result row, and 1 if it is not included.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The grouping operations shown in Table 9.61 are used in conjunction with grouping sets (see Section 7.2.4) to distinguish result rows. The arguments to the **GROUPING** function are not actually evaluated, but they must exactly match expressions given in the \text{GROUP BY} clause of the associated query level. For example:

\[
\text{=> SELECT * FROM items_sold;}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>make</th>
<th>model</th>
<th>sales</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foo</td>
<td>GT</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foo</td>
<td>Tour</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar</td>
<td>City</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar</td>
<td>Sport</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(4\) rows

\[
\text{=> SELECT make, model, GROUPING(make,model), sum(sales) FROM items_sold GROUP BY ROLLUP(make,model);}\
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>make</th>
<th>model</th>
<th>grouping</th>
<th>sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foo</td>
<td>GT</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foo</td>
<td>Tour</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar</td>
<td>City</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar</td>
<td>Sport</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foo</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(7\) rows

Here, the grouping value 0 in the first four rows shows that those have been grouped normally, over both the grouping columns. The value 1 indicates that model was not grouped by in the next-to-last two rows, and the value 3 indicates that neither make nor model was grouped by in the last row (which therefore is an aggregate over all the input rows).

### 9.22. Window Functions

Window functions provide the ability to perform calculations across sets of rows that are related to the current query row. See Section 3.5 for an introduction to this feature, and Section 4.2.8 for syntax details.
The built-in window functions are listed in Table 9.62. Note that these functions must be invoked using window function syntax, i.e., an OVER clause is required.

In addition to these functions, any built-in or user-defined ordinary aggregate (i.e., not ordered-set or hypothetical-set aggregates) can be used as a window function; see Section 9.21 for a list of the built-in aggregates. Aggregate functions act as window functions only when an OVER clause follows the call; otherwise they act as plain aggregates and return a single row for the entire set.

Table 9.62. General-Purpose Window Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>row_number () (\rightarrow) bigint</td>
<td>Returns the number of the current row within its partition, counting from 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rank () (\rightarrow) bigint</td>
<td>Returns the rank of the current row, with gaps; that is, the row_number of the first row in its peer group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dense_rank () (\rightarrow) bigint</td>
<td>Returns the rank of the current row, without gaps; this function effectively counts peer groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percent_rank () (\rightarrow) double precision</td>
<td>Returns the relative rank of the current row, that is ((\text{rank} - 1) / (\text{total partition rows} - 1)). The value thus ranges from 0 to 1 inclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cume_dist () (\rightarrow) double precision</td>
<td>Returns the cumulative distribution, that is ((\text{number of partition rows preceding or peers with current row}) / (\text{total partition rows})). The value thus ranges from (1/N) to 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntile (num_buckets integer) (\rightarrow) integer</td>
<td>Returns an integer ranging from 1 to the argument value, dividing the partition as equally as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lag (value anycompatible [ , offset integer [ , default anycompatible ]] ) (\rightarrow) anycompatible</td>
<td>Returns value evaluated at the row that is offset rows before the current row within the partition; if there is no such row, instead returns default (which must be of a type compatible with value). Both offset and default are evaluated with respect to the current row. If omitted, offset defaults to 1 and default to NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead (value anycompatible [ , offset integer [ , default anycompatible ]] ) (\rightarrow) anycompatible</td>
<td>Returns value evaluated at the row that is offset rows after the current row within the partition; if there is no such row, instead returns default (which must be of a type compatible with value). Both offset and default are evaluated with respect to the current row. If omitted, offset defaults to 1 and default to NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first_value (value anyelement) (\rightarrow) anyelement</td>
<td>Returns value evaluated at the row that is the first row of the window frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_value (value anyelement) (\rightarrow) anyelement</td>
<td>Returns value evaluated at the row that is the last row of the window frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nth_value (value anyelement, n integer) (\rightarrow) anyelement</td>
<td>Returns value evaluated at the row that is the n'th row of the window frame (counting from 1); returns NULL if there is no such row.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All of the functions listed in Table 9.62 depend on the sort ordering specified by the ORDER BY clause of the associated window definition. Rows that are not distinct when considering only the ORDER BY columns are said to be peers. The four ranking functions (including cume_dist) are defined so that they give the same answer for all rows of a peer group.
Note that first_value, last_value, and nth_value consider only the rows within the “window frame”, which by default contains the rows from the start of the partition through the last peer of the current row. This is likely to give unhelpful results for last_value and sometimes also nth_value. You can redefine the frame by adding a suitable frame specification (RANGE, ROWS or GROUPS) to the OVER clause. See Section 4.2.8 for more information about frame specifications.

When an aggregate function is used as a window function, it aggregates over the rows within the current row's window frame. An aggregate used with ORDER BY and the default window frame definition produces a “running sum” type of behavior, which may or may not be what’s wanted. To obtain aggregation over the whole partition, omit ORDER BY or use ROWS BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING. Other frame specifications can be used to obtain other effects.

Note

The SQL standard defines a RESPECT NULLS or IGNORE NULLS option for lead, lag, first_value, last_value, and nth_value. This is not implemented in Postgres Pro: the behavior is always the same as the standard's default, namely RESPECT NULLS. Likewise, the standard's FROM FIRST or FROM LAST option for nth_value is not implemented: only the default FROM FIRST behavior is supported. (You can achieve the result of FROM LAST by reversing the ORDER BY ordering.)

9.23. Subquery Expressions

This section describes the SQL-compliant subquery expressions available in Postgres Pro. All of the expression forms documented in this section return Boolean (true/false) results.

9.23.1. EXISTS

EXISTS (subquery)

The argument of EXISTS is an arbitrary SELECT statement, or subquery. The subquery is evaluated to determine whether it returns any rows. If it returns at least one row, the result of EXISTS is “true”; if the subquery returns no rows, the result of EXISTS is “false”.

The subquery can refer to variables from the surrounding query, which will act as constants during any one evaluation of the subquery.

The subquery will generally only be executed long enough to determine whether at least one row is returned, not all the way to completion. It is unwise to write a subquery that has side effects (such as calling sequence functions); whether the side effects occur might be unpredictable.

Since the result depends only on whether any rows are returned, and not on the contents of those rows, the output list of the subquery is normally unimportant. A common coding convention is to write all EXISTS tests in the form EXISTS (SELECT 1 WHERE ...). There are exceptions to this rule however, such as subqueries that use INTERSECT.

This simple example is like an inner join on col2, but it produces at most one output row for each tab1 row, even if there are several matching tab2 rows:

```
SELECT col1
FROM tab1
WHERE EXISTS (SELECT 1 FROM tab2 WHERE col2 = tab1.col2);
```

9.23.2. IN

expression IN (subquery)

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result. The result of IN is “true” if any equal subquery row is found. The result is “false” if no equal row is found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows).
Note that if the left-hand expression yields null, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand row yields null, the result of the \texttt{IN} construct will be null, not false. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

As with \texttt{EXISTS}, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

\texttt{row_constructor IN (subquery)}

The left-hand side of this form of \texttt{IN} is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. The left-hand expressions are evaluated and compared row-wise to each row of the subquery result. The result of \texttt{IN} is “true” if any equal subquery row is found. The result is “false” if no equal row is found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows).

As usual, null values in the rows are combined per the normal rules of SQL Boolean expressions. Two rows are considered equal if all their corresponding members are non-null and equal; the rows are unequal if any corresponding members are non-null and unequal; otherwise the result of that row comparison is unknown (null). If all the per-row results are either unequal or null, with at least one null, then the result of \texttt{IN} is null.

\subsection{9.23.3. NOT IN}

\texttt{expression NOT IN (subquery)}

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result. The result of \texttt{NOT IN} is “true” if only unequal subquery rows are found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is “false” if any equal row is found.

Note that if the left-hand expression yields null, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand row yields null, the result of the \texttt{NOT IN} construct will be null, not true. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

As with \texttt{EXISTS}, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

\texttt{row_constructor NOT IN (subquery)}

The left-hand side of this form of \texttt{NOT IN} is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. The left-hand expressions are evaluated and compared row-wise to each row of the subquery result. The result of \texttt{NOT IN} is “true” if only unequal subquery rows are found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is “false” if any equal row is found.

As usual, null values in the rows are combined per the normal rules of SQL Boolean expressions. Two rows are considered equal if all their corresponding members are non-null and equal; the rows are unequal if any corresponding members are non-null and unequal; otherwise the result of that row comparison is unknown (null). If all the per-row results are either unequal or null, with at least one null, then the result of \texttt{NOT IN} is null.

\subsection{9.23.4. ANY/SOME}

\texttt{expression operator ANY (subquery)}
\texttt{expression operator SOME (subquery)}

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result using the given \texttt{operator}, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of \texttt{ANY} is “true” if any true result is obtained. The result is “false” if no true result is found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows).

SOME is a synonym for \texttt{ANY}. \texttt{IN} is equivalent to \texttt{= ANY}.

Note that if there are no successes and at least one right-hand row yields null for the operator's result, the result of the \texttt{ANY} construct will be null, not false. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.
As with EXISTs, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

```
row_constructor operator ANY (subquery)
row_constructor operator SOME (subquery)
```

The left-hand side of this form of ANY is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. The left-hand expressions are evaluated and compared row-wise to each row of the subquery result, using the given operator. The result of ANY is "true" if the comparison returns true for any subquery row. The result is "false" if the comparison returns false for every subquery row (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is NULL if no comparison with a subquery row returns true, and at least one comparison returns NULL.

See Section 9.24.5 for details about the meaning of a row constructor comparison.

9.23.5. ALL

```
expression operator ALL (subquery)
```

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result using the given operator, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of ALL is "true" if all rows yield true (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is "false" if any false result is found. The result is NULL if no comparison with a subquery row returns false, and at least one comparison returns NULL.

NOT IN is equivalent to <> ALL.

As with EXISTs, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

```
row_constructor operator ALL (subquery)
```

The left-hand side of this form of ALL is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. The left-hand expressions are evaluated and compared row-wise to each row of the subquery result, using the given operator. The result of ALL is "true" if the comparison returns true for all subquery rows (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is "false" if the comparison returns false for any subquery row. The result is NULL if no comparison with a subquery row returns false, and at least one comparison returns NULL.

See Section 9.24.5 for details about the meaning of a row constructor comparison.

9.23.6. Single-Row Comparison

```
row_constructor operator (subquery)
```

The left-hand side is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. Furthermore, the subquery cannot return more than one row. (If it returns zero rows, the result is taken to be null.) The left-hand side is evaluated and compared row-wise to the single subquery result row.

See Section 9.24.5 for details about the meaning of a row constructor comparison.

9.24. Row and Array Comparisons

This section describes several specialized constructs for making multiple comparisons between groups of values. These forms are syntactically related to the subquery forms of the previous section, but do not involve subqueries. The forms involving array subexpressions are Postgres Pro extensions; the rest are SQL-compliant. All of the expression forms documented in this section return Boolean (true/false) results.

9.24.1. IN

```
expression IN (value [, ...])
```


The right-hand side is a parenthesized list of scalar expressions. The result is “true” if the left-hand expression's result is equal to any of the right-hand expressions. This is a shorthand notation for

```
ext = value1
OR
expression = value2
OR
...
```

Note that if the left-hand expression yields null, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand expression yields null, the result of the `IN` construct will be null, not false. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

### 9.24.2. NOT IN

```
ext NOT IN (value [, ...])
```

The right-hand side is a parenthesized list of scalar expressions. The result is “true” if the left-hand expression's result is unequal to all of the right-hand expressions. This is a shorthand notation for

```
ext <> value1
AND
expression <> value2
AND
...
```

Note that if the left-hand expression yields null, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand expression yields null, the result of the `NOT IN` construct will be null, not true as one might naively expect. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

**Tip**

```
x NOT IN y is equivalent to NOT (x IN y) in all cases. However, null values are much more likely to trip up the novice when working with NOT IN than when working with IN. It is best to express your condition positively if possible.
```

### 9.24.3. ANY/SOME (array)

```
ext operator ANY (array expression)
ext operator SOME (array expression)
```

The right-hand side is a parenthesized expression, which must yield an array value. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each element of the array using the given `operator`, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of `ANY` is “true” if any true result is obtained. The result is “false” if no true result is found (including the case where the array has zero elements).

If the array expression yields a null array, the result of `ANY` will be null. If the left-hand expression yields null, the result of `ANY` is ordinarily null (though a non-strict comparison operator could possibly yield a different result). Also, if the right-hand array contains any null elements and no true comparison result is obtained, the result of `ANY` will be null, not false (again, assuming a strict comparison operator). This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

`SOME` is a synonym for `ANY`.

### 9.24.4. ALL (array)

```
ext operator ALL (array expression)
```

The right-hand side is a parenthesized expression, which must yield an array value. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each element of the array using the given `operator`, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of `ALL` is “true” if all comparisons yield true (including the case where the array has zero elements). The result is “false” if any false result is found.
If the array expression yields a null array, the result of \texttt{ALL} will be null. If the left-hand expression yields null, the result of \texttt{ALL} is ordinarily null (though a non-strict comparison operator could possibly yield a different result). Also, if the right-hand array contains any null elements and no false comparison result is obtained, the result of \texttt{ALL} will be null, not true (again, assuming a strict comparison operator). This is in accordance with SQL’s normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

### 9.24.5. Row Constructor Comparison

\texttt{row\_constructor \ operator \ row\_constructor}

Each side is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The two row values must have the same number of fields. Each side is evaluated and they are compared row-wise. Row constructor comparisons are allowed when the \texttt{operator} is \texttt{=}, \texttt{<>}, \texttt{<}, \texttt{<=}, \texttt{>} or \texttt{>=}. Every row element must be of a type which has a default B-tree operator class or the attempted comparison may generate an error.

\begin{Verbatim}
Note

Errors related to the number or types of elements might not occur if the comparison is resolved using earlier columns.
\end{Verbatim}

The \texttt{=} and \texttt{<>} cases work slightly differently from the others. Two rows are considered equal if all their corresponding members are non-null and equal; the rows are unequal if any corresponding members are non-null and unequal; otherwise the result of the row comparison is unknown (null).

For the \texttt{<}, \texttt{<=}, \texttt{>} and \texttt{>=} cases, the row elements are compared left-to-right, stopping as soon as an unequal or null pair of elements is found. If either of this pair of elements is null, the result of the row comparison is unknown (null); otherwise comparison of this pair of elements determines the result. For example, \texttt{ROW(1,2,NULL) < ROW(1,3,0)} yields true, not null, because the third pair of elements are not considered.

\begin{Verbatim}
Note

Prior to PostgreSQL 8.2, the \texttt{<}, \texttt{<=}, \texttt{>} and \texttt{>=} cases were not handled per SQL specification. A comparison like \texttt{ROW(a,b) < ROW(c,d)} was implemented as \texttt{a < c AND b < d} whereas the correct behavior is equivalent to \texttt{a < c OR (a = c AND b < d)}.
\end{Verbatim}

\texttt{row\_constructor IS DISTINCT FROM row\_constructor}

This construct is similar to a \texttt{<>} row comparison, but it does not yield null for null inputs. Instead, any null value is considered unequal to (distinct from) any non-null value, and any two nulls are considered equal (not distinct). Thus the result will either be true or false, never null.

\texttt{row\_constructor IS NOT DISTINCT FROM row\_constructor}

This construct is similar to a \texttt{=} row comparison, but it does not yield null for null inputs. Instead, any null value is considered unequal to (distinct from) any non-null value, and any two nulls are considered equal (not distinct). Thus the result will always be either true or false, never null.

### 9.24.6. Composite Type Comparison

\texttt{record \ operator \ record}

The SQL specification requires row-wise comparison to return NULL if the result depends on comparing two NULL values or a NULL and a non-NULL. Postgres Pro does this only when comparing the results of two row constructors (as in Section 9.24.5) or comparing a row constructor to the output of a subquery (as in Section 9.23). In other contexts where two composite-type values are compared, two NULL field values are considered equal, and a NULL is considered larger than a non-NULL. This is necessary in order to have consistent sorting and indexing behavior for composite types.

Each side is evaluated and they are compared row-wise. Composite type comparisons are allowed when the \texttt{operator} is \texttt{=}, \texttt{<>}, \texttt{<}, \texttt{<=}, \texttt{>} or \texttt{>=}, or has semantics similar to one of these. (To be specific, an operator can be a row comparison operator if it is a member of a B-tree operator class, or is the negator of the
= member of a B-tree operator class.) The default behavior of the above operators is the same as for IS [ NOT ] DISTINCT FROM for row constructors (see Section 9.24.5).

To support matching of rows which include elements without a default B-tree operator class, the following operators are defined for composite type comparison: *=, *<>*, *<*, *<=*, *>*, and *>=*. These operators compare the internal binary representation of the two rows. Two rows might have a different binary representation even though comparisons of the two rows with the equality operator is true. The ordering of rows under these comparison operators is deterministic but not otherwise meaningful. These operators are used internally for materialized views and might be useful for other specialized purposes such as replication and B-Tree deduplication (see Section 60.4.3). They are not intended to be generally useful for writing queries, though.

### 9.25. Set Returning Functions

This section describes functions that possibly return more than one row. The most widely used functions in this class are series generating functions, as detailed in Table 9.63 and Table 9.64. Other, more specialized set-returning functions are described elsewhere in this manual. See Section 7.2.1.4 for ways to combine multiple set-returning functions.

#### Table 9.63. Series Generating Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>generate_series</td>
<td>( start integer, stop integer [, step integer ] ) → setof integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate_series</td>
<td>( start bigint, stop bigint [, step bigint ] ) → setof bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate_series</td>
<td>( start numeric, stop numeric [, step numeric ] ) → setof numeric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate_series</td>
<td>( start timestamp, stop timestamp, step interval ) → setof timestamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate_series</td>
<td>( start timestamp with time zone, stop timestamp with time zone, step interval ) → setof timestamp with time zone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generates a series of values from start to stop, with a step size of step. Step defaults to 1.

When step is positive, zero rows are returned if start is greater than stop. Conversely, when step is negative, zero rows are returned if start is less than stop. Zero rows are also returned if any input is NULL. It is an error for step to be zero. Some examples follow:

```sql
SELECT * FROM generate_series(2, 4);
generate_series
--------------
 2
 3
 4
(3 rows)

SELECT * FROM generate_series(5, 1, -2);
generate_series
------------
 5
 3
 1
(3 rows)

SELECT * FROM generate_series(4, 3);
generate_series
----------
(0 rows)

SELECT generate_series(1.1, 4, 1.3);
```

312
generate_series
-------------
  1.1
  2.4
  3.7
(3 rows)

-- this example relies on the date-plus-integer operator:
SELECT current_date + s.a AS dates FROM generate_series(0,14,7) AS s(a);
dates
---------
 2004-02-05
 2004-02-12
 2004-02-19
(3 rows)

SELECT * FROM generate_series('2008-03-01 00:00'::timestamp,
                            '2008-03-04 12:00', '10 hours');

generate_series
---------------------
 2008-03-01 00:00:00
 2008-03-01 10:00:00
 2008-03-01 20:00:00
 2008-03-02 06:00:00
 2008-03-02 16:00:00
 2008-03-03 02:00:00
 2008-03-03 12:00:00
 2008-03-03 22:00:00
 2008-03-04 08:00:00
(9 rows)

Table 9.64. Subscript Generating Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>generate_subscripts</td>
<td>generates a series comprising the valid subscripts of the ( dim )'th dimension of the given array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate_subscripts</td>
<td>generates a series comprising the valid subscripts of the ( dim )'th dimension of the given array. When ( reverse ) is true, returns the series in reverse order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

generate_subscripts is a convenience function that generates the set of valid subscripts for the specified dimension of the given array. Zero rows are returned for arrays that do not have the requested dimension, or if any input is NULL. Some examples follow:

-- basic usage:
SELECT generate_subscripts('(NULL,1,NULL,2)::int[], 1) AS s;
s
---
 1
 2
 3
 4
(4 rows)

-- presenting an array, the subscript and the subscripted
-- value requires a subquery:
SELECT * FROM arrays;
Functions and Operators

-- a
-------------------
{-1,-2}
(100,200,300)
(2 rows)

SELECT a AS array, s AS subscript, a[s] AS value
FROM (SELECT generate_subscripts(a, 1) AS s, a FROM arrays) foo;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>array</th>
<th>subscript</th>
<th>value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{-1,-2}</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{-1,-2}</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{100,200,300}</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{100,200,300}</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{100,200,300}</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(5 rows)

-- unnest a 2D array:
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION unnest2(anyarray)
RETURNS SETOF anyelement AS $$
select $1[i][j]
from generate_subscripts($1,1) g1(i),
generate_subscripts($1,2) g2(j);
$$ LANGUAGE sql IMMUTABLE;
CREATE FUNCTION
SELECT * FROM unnest2(ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]]);

unnest2
-------
1
2
3
4
(4 rows)

When a function in the FROM clause is suffixed by WITH ORDINALITY, a bigint column is appended to the function's output column(s), which starts from 1 and increments by 1 for each row of the function's output. This is most useful in the case of set returning functions such as unnest().

-- set returning function WITH ORDINALITY:
SELECT * FROM pg ls_dir('.') WITH ORDINALITY AS t(ls,n);

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ls</th>
<th>n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_serial</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_twophase</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postmaster.opts</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_notify</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgresql.conf</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_tblspc</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logfile</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postmaster.pid</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ident.conf</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>global</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_xact</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_snapshots</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_multixact</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG_VERSION</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_wal</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.26. System Information Functions and Operators

Table 9.65 shows several functions that extract session and system information.

In addition to the functions listed in this section, there are a number of functions related to the statistics system that also provide system information. See Section 26.2.2 for more information.

Table 9.65. Session Information Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>current_catalog → name</td>
<td>Returns the name of the current database. (Databases are called “catalogs” in the SQL standard, so current_catalog is the standard’s spelling.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current_database () → name</td>
<td>Returns the name of the current database. (Databases are called “catalogs” in the SQL standard, so current_catalog is the standard’s spelling.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current_query () → text</td>
<td>Returns the text of the currently executing query, as submitted by the client (which might contain more than one statement).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current_role → name</td>
<td>This is equivalent to current_user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current_schema → name</td>
<td>Returns the name of the schema that is first in the search path (or a null value if the search path is empty). This is the schema that will be used for any tables or other named objects that are created without specifying a target schema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current_schemas (include_implicit boolean) → name[]</td>
<td>Returns an array of the names of all schemas presently in the effective search path, in their priority order. (Items in the current search_path setting that do not correspond to existing, searchable schemas are omitted.) If the Boolean argument is true, then implicitly-searched system schemas such as pg_catalog are included in the result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current_user → name</td>
<td>Returns the user name of the current execution context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_client_addr () → inet</td>
<td>Returns the IP address of the current client, or NULL if the current connection is via a Unix-domain socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_client_port () → integer</td>
<td>Returns the IP port number of the current client, or NULL if the current connection is via a Unix-domain socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_server_addr () → inet</td>
<td>Returns the IP address on which the server accepted the current connection, or NULL if the current connection is via a Unix-domain socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_server_port () → integer</td>
<td>Returns the IP port number on which the server accepted the current connection, or NULL if the current connection is via a Unix-domain socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_backend_pid () → integer</td>
<td>Returns the process ID of the server process attached to the current session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_blocking_pids (integer) → integer[]</td>
<td>Returns an array of the process ID(s) of the sessions that are blocking the server process with the specified process ID from acquiring a lock, or an empty array if there is no such server process or it is not blocked. One server process blocks another if it either holds a lock that conflicts with the blocked process's lock request (hard block), or is waiting for a lock that would conflict with the blocked process's lock request and is ahead of it in the wait queue (soft block). When using parallel queries the result always lists client-visible process IDs (that is, pg_backend_pid results) even if the actual lock is held or awaited by a child worker process. As a result of that, there may be duplicated PIDs in the result. Also note that when a prepared transaction holds a conflicting lock, it will be represented by a zero process ID. Frequent calls to this function could have some impact on database performance, because it needs exclusive access to the lock manager's shared state for a short time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_conf_load_time () → timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Returns the time when the server configuration files were last loaded. If the current session was alive at the time, this will be the time when the session itself re-read the configuration files (so the reading will vary a little in different sessions). Otherwise it is the time when the postmaster process re-read the configuration files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_current_logfile ([text]) → text</td>
<td>Returns the path name of the log file currently in use by the logging collector. The path includes the log_directory directory and the individual log file name. The result is NULL if the logging collector is disabled. When multiple log files exist, each in a different format, <code>pg_current_logfile</code> without an argument returns the path of the file having the first format found in the ordered list: stderr, csvlog. NULL is returned if no log file has any of these formats. To request information about a specific log file format, supply either csvlog or stderr as the value of the optional parameter. The result is NULL if the log format requested is not configured in log_destination. The result reflects the contents of the current_logfiles file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_my_temp_schema () → oid</td>
<td>Returns the OID of the current session's temporary schema, or zero if it has none (because it has not created any temporary tables).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_is_other_temp_schema (oid) → boolean</td>
<td>Returns true if the given OID is the OID of another session's temporary schema. (This can be useful, for example, to exclude other sessions' temporary tables from a catalog display.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_jit_available () → boolean</td>
<td>Returns true if a JIT compiler extension is available (see Chapter 30) and the jit configuration parameter is set to on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_listening_channels () → setof text</td>
<td>Returns the set of names of asynchronous notification channels that the current session is listening to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_notification_queue_usage () → double precision</td>
<td>Returns the fraction (0–1) of the asynchronous notification queue's maximum size that is currently occupied by notifications that are waiting to be processed. See LISTEN and NOTIFY for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_postmaster_start_time () → timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Returns the time when the server started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_safe_snapshot_blocking_pids (integer) → integer[]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Function</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_trigger_depth</strong> () → integer</td>
<td>Returns the current nesting level of Postgres Pro triggers (0 if not called, directly or indirectly, from inside a trigger).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>session_user</strong> → name</td>
<td>Returns the session user's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>user</strong> → name</td>
<td>This is equivalent to current_user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>version()</strong> → text</td>
<td>Returns a string describing the PostgreSQL server's version. You can also get this information from server_version, or for a machine-readable version use server_version_num. Software developers should use server_version_num (available since 8.2) or PQserverVersion instead of parsing the text version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pgpro_version</strong> () → text</td>
<td>Returns a string describing the Postgres Pro server's version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pgproedition()</strong> → text</td>
<td>Returns a string describing Postgres Pro edition i.e. standard or enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pgpro_build</strong> () → text</td>
<td>Returns the commit ID of Postgres Pro source files.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

current_catalog, current_role, current_schema, current_user, session_user, and user have special syntactic status in SQL: they must be called without trailing parentheses. In Postgres Pro, parentheses can optionally be used with current_schema, but not with the others.

The session_user is normally the user who initiated the current database connection; but superusers can change this setting with SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION. The current_user is the user identifier that is applicable for permission checking. Normally it is equal to the session user, but it can be changed with SET ROLE. It also changes during the execution of functions with the attribute SECURITY DEFINER. In Unix parlance, the session user is the “real user” and the current user is the “effective user”. current_role and user are synonyms for current_user. (The SQL standard draws a distinction between current_role and current_user, but Postgres Pro does not, since it unifies users and roles into a single kind of entity.)

Table 9.66 lists functions that allow querying object access privileges programmatically. (See Section 5.7 for more information about privileges.) In these functions, the user whose privileges are being inquired about can be specified by name or by OID (pg_authid.oid), or if the name is given as public then the privileges of the PUBLIC pseudo-role are checked. Also, the user argument can be omitted entirely, in which case the current_user is assumed. The object that is being inquired about can be specified either by name or by OID, too. When specifying by name, a schema name can be included if relevant. The access privilege of interest is specified by a text string, which must evaluate to one of the appropriate
Functions and Operators

privilege keywords for the object's type (e.g., SELECT). Optionally, **WITH GRANT OPTION** can be added to a privilege type to test whether the privilege is held with grant option. Also, multiple privilege types can be listed separated by commas, in which case the result will be true if any of the listed privileges is held. (Case of the privilege string is not significant, and extra whitespace is allowed between but not within privilege names.) Some examples:

SELECT has_table_privilege('myschema.mytable', 'select');
SELECT has_table_privilege('joe', 'mytable', 'INSERT, SELECT WITH GRANT OPTION');

### Table 9.66. Access Privilege Inquiry Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>has_any_column_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] table text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for any column of table? This succeeds either if the privilege is held for the whole table, or if there is a column-level grant of the privilege for at least one column. Allowable privilege types are SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and REFERENCES.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_column_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] table text or oid, column text or smallint, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for the specified table column? This succeeds either if the privilege is held for the whole table, or if there is a column-level grant of the privilege for the column. The column can be specified by name or by attribute number (pg_attribute .attnum). Allowable privilege types are SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and REFERENCES.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_database_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] database text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for database? Allowable privilege types are CREATE, CONNECT, TEMPORARY, and TEMP (which is equivalent to TEMPORARY).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_foreign_data_wrapper_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] fdw text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for foreign-data wrapper? The only allowable privilege type is USAGE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_function_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] function text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for function? The only allowable privilege type is EXECUTE. When specifying a function by name rather than by OID, the allowed input is the same as for the regprocedure data type (see Section 8.19). An example is: SELECT has_function_privilege('joeuser', 'myfunc(int, text)', 'execute');</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_language_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] language text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for language? The only allowable privilege type is USAGE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_schema_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] schema text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for schema? Allowable privilege types are CREATE and USAGE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_sequence_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] sequence text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for sequence? Allowable privilege types are USAGE, SELECT, and UPDATE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_server_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] server text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for foreign server? The only allowable privilege type is USAGE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has_table_privilege</td>
<td><code>( [ user name or oid, ] table text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for table? Allowable privilege types are SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, and TRIGGER.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>has_tablespace_privilege</code></td>
<td><strong>([user name or oid,] tablespace text or oid, privilege text) → boolean</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for tablespace? The only allowable privilege type is <strong>CREATE</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>has_type_privilege</code></td>
<td><strong>([user name or oid,] type text or oid, privilege text) → boolean</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for data type? The only allowable privilege type is <strong>USAGE</strong>. When</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>specifying a type by name rather than by OID, the allowed input is the same as for the regtype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>data type (see Section 8.19).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_has_role</code></td>
<td><strong>([user name or oid,] role text or oid, privilege text) → boolean</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does user have privilege for role? Allowable privilege types are <strong>MEMBER</strong> and <strong>USAGE</strong>. <strong>MEMBER</strong> denotes direct or indirect membership in the role (that is, the right to do SET ROLE), while <strong>USAGE</strong> denotes whether the privileges of the role are immediately available without doing SET ROLE. This function does not allow the special case of setting user to public, because the PUBLIC pseudo-role can never be a member of real roles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>row_security_active</code></td>
<td><strong>(table text or oid) → boolean</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is row-level security active for the specified table in the context of the current user and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>current environment?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.67 shows the operators available for the `aclitem` type, which is the catalog representation of access privileges. See Section 5.7 for information about how to read access privilege values.

#### Table 9.67. `aclitem` Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>aclitem = aclitem</code></td>
<td><strong>→ boolean</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are <code>aclitem</code>s equal? (Notice that type <code>aclitem</code> lacks the usual set of comparison operators; it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has only equality. In turn, <code>aclitem</code> arrays can only be compared for equality.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'calvin=r<em>w/hobbes'::aclitem = 'calvin=r</em>w*/hobbes'::aclitem → f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>aclitem[] @&gt; aclitem</code></td>
<td><strong>→ boolean</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does array contain the specified privileges? (This is true if there is an array entry that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>matches the <code>aclitem</code>s grantee and grantor, and has at least the specified set of privileges.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'{calvin=r<em>w/hobbes,hobbes=r</em>w*/postgres}'::aclitem[] @&gt; 'calvin=r*/hobbes'::aclitem → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>aclitem[] ~ aclitem</code></td>
<td><strong>→ boolean</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is a deprecated alias for <code>@&gt;</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'{calvin=r<em>w/hobbes,hobbes=r</em>w*/postgres}'::aclitem[] ~ 'calvin=r*/hobbes'::aclitem → t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.68 shows some additional functions to manage the `aclitem` type.

#### Table 9.68. `aclitem` Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>acldefault</code> ([type &quot;char&quot;, ownerId oid]) → aclitem[]</td>
<td>Constructs an <code>aclitem</code> array holding the default access privileges for an object of type <code>type</code> belonging to the role with OID <code>ownerId</code>. This represents the access privileges that will be assumed when an object's ACL entry is null. (The default access privileges are described in Section 5.7.) The <code>type</code> parameter must be one of 'c' for <code>COLUMN</code>, 'r' for <code>TABLE</code> and table-like objects, 's' for <code>SEQUENCE</code>, 'd' for <code>DATABASE</code>, 'f' for <code>FUNCTION</code> or <code>PROCEDURE</code>, 'l' for <code>LANGUAGE</code>, 'L'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators

### Function Description

For LARGE OBJECT, 'n' for SCHEMA, 't' for TABLESPACE, 'F' for FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, 'S' for FOREIGN SERVER, or 'T' for TYPE or DOMAIN.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aclexplode( aclitem[] ) → setof record ( grantor oid, grantee oid, privilege_type text, is_grantable boolean )</td>
<td>Returns the aclitem array as a set of rows. If the grantee is the pseudo-role PUBLIC, it is represented by zero in the grantee column. Each granted privilege is represented as SELECT, INSERT, etc. Note that each privilege is broken out as a separate row, so only one keyword appears in the privilege_type column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makeaclitem( grantee oid, grantor oid, privileges text, is_grantable boolean ) → aclitem</td>
<td>Constructs an aclitem with the given properties.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.69 shows functions that determine whether a certain object is visible in the current schema search path. For example, a table is said to be visible if its containing schema is in the search path and no table of the same name appears earlier in the search path. This is equivalent to the statement that the table can be referenced by name without explicit schema qualification. Thus, to list the names of all visible tables:

```sql
SELECT relname FROM pg_class WHERE pg_table_is_visible(oid);
```

For functions and operators, an object in the search path is said to be visible if there is no object of the same name and argument data type(s) earlier in the path. For operator classes and families, both the name and the associated index access method are considered.

### Table 9.69. Schema Visibility Inquiry Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_collation_is_visible ( collation oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is collation visible in search path?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_conversion_is_visible ( conversion oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is conversion visible in search path?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_function_is_visible ( function oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is function visible in search path? (This also works for procedures and aggregates.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_opclass_is_visible ( opclass oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is operator class visible in search path?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_operator_is_visible ( operator oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is operator visible in search path?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_opfamily_is_visible ( opclass oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is operator family visible in search path?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_statistics_obj_is_visible ( stat oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is statistics object visible in search path?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_table_is_visible ( table oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is table visible in search path? (This works for all types of relations, including views, materialized views, indexes, sequences and foreign tables.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_config_is_visible ( config oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is text search configuration visible in search path?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_dict_is_visible ( dict oid ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is text search dictionary visible in search path?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_parser_is_visible</td>
<td>(parser oid) → boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is text search parser visible in search path?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_template_is_visible</td>
<td>(template oid) → boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is text search template visible in search path?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_type_is_visible</td>
<td>(type oid) → boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is type (or domain) visible in search path?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All these functions require object OIDs to identify the object to be checked. If you want to test an object by name, it is convenient to use the OID alias types (regclass, regtype, regprocedure, regoperator, regconfig, or regdictionary), for example:

```
SELECT pg_type_is_visible('myschema.widget'::regtype);
```

Note that it would not make much sense to test a non-schema-qualified type name in this way — if the name can be recognized at all, it must be visible.

Table 9.70 lists functions that extract information from the system catalogs.

Table 9.70. System Catalog Information Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>format_type</td>
<td>(type oid, typemod integer) → text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the SQL name for a data type that is identified by its type OID and possibly a type modifier. Pass NULL for the type modifier if no specific modifier is known.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_catalog_foreign_keys</td>
<td>() → setof record (fktable regclass, fkcols text[], pktable regclass, pkcols text[], is_array boolean, is_opt boolean)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns a set of records describing the foreign key relationships that exist within the PostgreSQL system catalogs. The fktable column contains the name of the referencing catalog, and the fkcols column contains the name(s) of the referencing column(s). Similarly, the pktable column contains the name of the referenced catalog, and the pkcols column contains the name(s) of the referenced column(s). If is_array is true, the last referencing column is an array, each of whose elements should match some entry in the referenced catalog. If is_opt is true, the referencing column(s) are allowed to contain zeroes instead of a valid reference.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_constraintdef</td>
<td>(constraint oid [, pretty boolean ]) → text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconstructs the creating command for a constraint. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_expr</td>
<td>(expr pg_node_tree , relation oid [, pretty boolean ]) → text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decomposes the internal form of an expression stored in the system catalogs, such as the default value for a column. If the expression might contain Vars, specify the OID of the relation they refer to as the second parameter; if no Vars are expected, passing zero is sufficient.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_functiondef</td>
<td>(func oid) → text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconstructs the creating command for a function or procedure. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.) The result is a complete CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION or CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE statement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_function_arguments</td>
<td>(func oid) → text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconstructs the argument list of a function or procedure, in the form it would need to appear in within CREATE FUNCTION (including default values).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_function_identity_arguments</td>
<td>(func oid) → text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_function_result</td>
<td>Reconstructs the argument list necessary to identify a function or procedure, in the form it would need to appear in within commands such as <code>ALTER FUNCTION</code>. This form omits default values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_indexdef</td>
<td>Reconstructs the <code>RETURNS</code> clause of a function, in the form it would need to appear in within <code>CREATE FUNCTION</code>. Returns <code>NULL</code> for a procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_keywords</td>
<td>Reconstructs the creating command for an index. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.) If <code>column</code> is supplied and is not zero, only the definition of that column is reconstructed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_ruledef</td>
<td>Reconstructs the creating command for a rule. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_serial_sequence</td>
<td>Returns the name of the sequence associated with a column, or <code>NULL</code> if no sequence is associated with the column. If the column is an identity column, the associated sequence is the sequence internally created for that column. For columns created using one of the serial types (<code>serial</code>, <code>smallserial</code>, <code>bigserial</code>), it is the sequence created for that serial column definition. In the latter case, the association can be modified or removed with <code>ALTER SEQUENCE OWNED BY</code>. (This function probably should have been called <code>pg_get_owned_sequence</code>; its current name reflects the fact that it has historically been used with serial-type columns.) The first parameter is a table name with optional schema, and the second parameter is a column name. Because the first parameter potentially contains both schema and table names, it is parsed per usual SQL rules, meaning it is lower-cased by default. The second parameter, being just a column name, is treated literally and so has its case preserved. The result is suitably formatted for passing to the sequence functions (see Section 9.17). A typical use is in reading the current value of the sequence for an identity or serial column, for example: <code>SELECT currval(pg_get_serial_sequence('sometable', 'id'));</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_statisticsobjdef</td>
<td>Reconstructs the creating command for an extended statistics object. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_triggerdef</td>
<td>Reconstructs the creating command for a trigger. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_userbyid</td>
<td>Returns a role’s name given its OID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_viewdef</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

322
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_get_viewdef</strong>( <code>oid</code> integer, <code>wrap_column</code> integer ) → text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconstructs the underlying SELECT command for a view or materialized view. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.) In this form of the function, pretty-printing is always enabled, and long lines are wrapped to try to keep them shorter than the specified number of columns.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_get_viewdef</strong>( <code>view</code> <code>text</code> [, <code>pretty</code> boolean ] ) → text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconstructs the underlying SELECT command for a view or materialized view, working from a textual name for the view rather than its OID. (This is deprecated; use the OID variant instead.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_index_column_has_property</strong>( <code>index</code> <code>regclass</code>, <code>column</code> integer, <code>property</code> <code>text</code> ) → boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests whether an index column has the named property. Common index column properties are listed in Table 9.71. (Note that extension access methods can define additional property names for their indexes.) NULL is returned if the property name is not known or does not apply to the particular object, or if the OID or column number does not identify a valid object.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_index_has_property</strong>( <code>index</code> <code>regclass</code>, <code>property</code> <code>text</code> ) → boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests whether an index has the named property. Common index properties are listed in Table 9.72. (Note that extension access methods can define additional property names for their indexes.) NULL is returned if the property name is not known or does not apply to the particular object, or if the OID does not identify a valid object.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_indexam_has_property</strong>( <code>am</code> <code>oid</code>, <code>property</code> <code>text</code> ) → boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests whether an index access method has the named property. Access method properties are listed in Table 9.73. NULL is returned if the property name is not known or does not apply to the particular object, or if the OID does not identify a valid object.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_options_to_table</strong>( <code>options_array</code> <code>text</code>[] ) → setof record ( <code>option_name</code> <code>text</code>, <code>option_value</code> <code>text</code> )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the set of storage options represented by a value from <code>pg_class.reloptions</code> or <code>pg_attribute.attoptions</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_tablespace_databases</strong>( <code>tablespace</code> <code>oid</code> ) → setof <code>oid</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the set of OIDs of databases that have objects stored in the specified tablespace. If this function returns any rows, the tablespace is not empty and cannot be dropped. To identify the specific objects populating the tablespace, you will need to connect to the database(s) identified by <code>pg_tablespace_databases</code> and query their <code>pg_class</code> catalogs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_tablespace_location</strong>( <code>tablespace</code> <code>oid</code> ) → <code>text</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the file system path that this tablespace is located in.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_typeof</strong>( &quot;any&quot; ) → <code>regtype</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the OID of the data type of the value that is passed to it. This can be helpful for troubleshooting or dynamically constructing SQL queries. The function is declared as returning <code>regtype</code>, which is an OID alias type (see Section 8.19); this means that it is the same as an OID for comparison purposes but displays as a type name. For example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ```
SELECT pg_typeof(33);
pg_typeof
---------
integer
``` |
| ```
SELECT typlen FROM pg_type WHERE oid = pg_typeof(33);
``` |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Function</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>typlen</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>--------</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COLLATION FOR</strong> (&quot;any&quot;) → text</td>
<td>Returns the name of the collation of the value that is passed to it. The value is quoted and schema-qualified if necessary. If no collation was derived for the argument expression, then <strong>NULL</strong> is returned. If the argument is not of a collatable data type, then an error is raised. <strong>For example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT collation for (description) FROM pg_description LIMIT 1;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_collation_for</td>
<td>&quot;default&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SELECT collation for ('foo' COLLATE &quot;de_DE&quot;);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_collation_for</td>
<td>&quot;de_DE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to_regclass</strong> (text) → regclass</td>
<td>Translates a textual relation name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <strong>regclass</strong> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <strong>NULL</strong> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found. Also unlike the cast, this does not accept a numeric OID as input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to_regcollation</strong> (text) → regcollation</td>
<td>Translates a textual collation name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <strong>regcollation</strong> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <strong>NULL</strong> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found. Also unlike the cast, this does not accept a numeric OID as input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to_regnamespace</strong> (text) → regnamespace</td>
<td>Translates a textual schema name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <strong>regnamespace</strong> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <strong>NULL</strong> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found. Also unlike the cast, this does not accept a numeric OID as input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to_regoper</strong> (text) → regoper</td>
<td>Translates a textual operator name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <strong>regoper</strong> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <strong>NULL</strong> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found or is ambiguous. Also unlike the cast, this does not accept a numeric OID as input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to_regoperator</strong> (text) → regoperator</td>
<td>Translates a textual operator name (with parameter types) to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <strong>regoperator</strong> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <strong>NULL</strong> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found. Also unlike the cast, this does not accept a numeric OID as input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to_regproc</strong> (text) → regproc</td>
<td>Translates a textual function or procedure name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <strong>regproc</strong> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <strong>NULL</strong> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found or is ambiguous. Also unlike the cast, this does not accept a numeric OID as input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to_regprocedure</strong> (text) → regprocedure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to_regrole (text) → regrole</td>
<td>Translates a textual role name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type regrole (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return NULL rather than throwing an error if the name is not found. Also unlike the cast, this does not accept a numeric OID as input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to_regtype (text) → regtype</td>
<td>Translates a textual type name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type regtype (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return NULL rather than throwing an error if the name is not found. Also unlike the cast, this does not accept a numeric OID as input.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most of the functions that reconstruct (decompile) database objects have an optional pretty flag, which if true causes the result to be “pretty-printed”. Pretty-printing suppresses unnecessary parentheses and adds whitespace for legibility. The pretty-printed format is more readable, but the default format is more likely to be interpreted the same way by future versions of Postgres Pro; so avoid using pretty-printed output for dump purposes. Passing false for the pretty parameter yields the same result as omitting the parameter.

Table 9.71. Index Column Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asc</td>
<td>Does the column sort in ascending order on a forward scan?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desc</td>
<td>Does the column sort in descending order on a forward scan?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nulls_first</td>
<td>Does the column sort with nulls first on a forward scan?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nulls_last</td>
<td>Does the column sort with nulls last on a forward scan?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orderable</td>
<td>Does the column possess any defined sort ordering?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance_orderable</td>
<td>Can the column be scanned in order by a “distance” operator, for example ORDER BY col &lt;-&gt; constant?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>returnable</td>
<td>Can the column value be returned by an index-only scan?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search_array</td>
<td>Does the column natively support col = ANY(array) searches?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search_nulls</td>
<td>Does the column support IS NULL and IS NOT NULL searches?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.72. Index Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clusterable</td>
<td>Can the index be used in a CLUSTER command?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>index_scan</td>
<td>Does the index support plain (non-bitmap) scans?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitmap_scan</td>
<td>Does the index support bitmap scans?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>backward_scan</td>
<td>Can the scan direction be changed in mid-scan (to support <code>FETCH BACKWARD</code> on a cursor without needing materialization)?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 9.73. Index Access Method Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can_order</td>
<td>Does the access method support <code>ASC</code>, <code>DESC</code> and related keywords in <code>CREATE INDEX</code>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can_unique</td>
<td>Does the access method support unique indexes?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can_multi_col</td>
<td>Does the access method support indexes with multiple columns?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can_exclude</td>
<td>Does the access method support exclusion constraints?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can_include</td>
<td>Does the access method support the <code>INCLUDE</code> clause of <code>CREATE INDEX</code>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 9.74 lists functions related to database object identification and addressing.

#### Table 9.74. Object Information and Addressing Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_describe_object (classid oid, objid oid, objsubid integer) \rightarrow text</td>
<td>Returns a textual description of a database object identified by catalog OID, object OID, and sub-object ID (such as a column number within a table; the sub-object ID is zero when referring to a whole object). This description is intended to be human-readable, and might be translated, depending on server configuration. This is especially useful to determine the identity of an object referenced in the <code>pg_depend</code> catalog. This function returns <code>NULL</code> values for undefined objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_identify_object (classid oid, objid oid, objsubid integer) \rightarrow record (type text, schema text, name text, identity text)</td>
<td>Returns a row containing enough information to uniquely identify the database object specified by catalog OID, object OID and sub-object ID. This information is intended to be machine-readable, and is never translated. <code>type</code> identifies the type of database object; <code>schema</code> is the schema name that the object belongs in, or <code>NULL</code> for object types that do not belong to schemas; <code>name</code> is the name of the object, quoted if necessary, if the name (along with schema name, if pertinent) is sufficient to uniquely identify the object, otherwise <code>NULL</code>; <code>identity</code> is the complete object identity, with the precise format depending on object type, and each name within the format being schema-qualified and quoted as necessary. Undefined objects are identified with <code>NULL</code> values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_identify_object_as_address (classid oid, objid oid, objsubid integer) \rightarrow record (type text, object_names text[], object_args text[])</td>
<td>Returns a row containing enough information to uniquely identify the database object specified by catalog OID, object OID and sub-object ID. The returned information is independent of the current server; that is, it could be used to identify an identically named object in another server. <code>type</code> identifies the type of database object; <code>object_names</code> and <code>object_args</code> are text arrays that together form a reference to the object. These three values can be passed to <code>pg_get_object_address</code> to obtain the internal address of the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_get_object_address (type text, object_names text[], object_args text[]) \rightarrow record (classid oid, objid oid, objsubid integer)</td>
<td>Returns a row containing enough information to uniquely identify the database object specified by a type code and object name and argument arrays. The returned values are the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The functions shown in Table 9.75 extract comments previously stored with the COMMENT command. A null value is returned if no comment could be found for the specified parameters.

### Table 9.75. Comment Information Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>col_description (table oid, column integer) → text</code></td>
<td>Returns the comment for a table column, which is specified by the OID of its table and its column number. (obj_description cannot be used for table columns, since columns do not have OIDs of their own.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>obj_description (object oid, catalog name) → text</code></td>
<td>Returns the comment for a database object specified by its OID and the name of the containing system catalog. For example, <code>obj_description(123456, 'pg_class')</code> would retrieve the comment for the table with OID 123456.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>obj_description (object oid) → text</code></td>
<td>Returns the comment for a database object specified by its OID alone. This is deprecated since there is no guarantee that OIDs are unique across different system catalogs; therefore, the wrong comment might be returned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>shobj_description (object oid, catalog name) → text</code></td>
<td>Returns the comment for a shared database object specified by its OID and the name of the containing system catalog. This is just like obj_description except that it is used for retrieving comments on shared objects (that is, databases, roles, and tablespaces). Some system catalogs are global to all databases within each cluster, and the descriptions for objects in them are stored globally as well.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The functions shown in Table 9.76 provide server transaction information in an exportable form. The main use of these functions is to determine which transactions were committed between two snapshots.

### Table 9.76. Transaction ID and Snapshot Information Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_current_xact_id () → xid8</code></td>
<td>Returns the current transaction's ID. It will assign a new one if the current transaction does not have one already (because it has not performed any database updates).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_current_xact_id_if_assigned () → xid8</code></td>
<td>Returns the current transaction's ID, or NULL if no ID is assigned yet. (It's best to use this variant if the transaction might otherwise be read-only, to avoid unnecessary consumption of an XID.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_xact_status (xid8) → text</code></td>
<td>Reports the commit status of a recent transaction. The result is one of in progress, committed, or aborted, provided that the transaction is recent enough that the system retains the commit status of that transaction. If it is old enough that no references to the transaction survive in the system and the commit status information has been discarded, the result is NULL. Applications might use this function, for example, to determine whether their transaction committed or aborted after the application and database server become disconnected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Function Description

Disconnected while a COMMIT is in progress. Note that prepared transactions are reported as in progress; applications must check `pg_prepared_xacts` if they need to determine whether a transaction ID belongs to a prepared transaction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_current_snapshot</code> () → pg_snapshot</td>
<td>Returns a current snapshot, a data structure showing which transaction IDs are now in-progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_snapshot_xip</code> (pg_snapshot ) → setof xid8</td>
<td>Returns the set of in-progress transaction IDs contained in a snapshot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_snapshot_xmax</code> (pg_snapshot ) → xid8</td>
<td>Returns the xmax of a snapshot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_snapshot_xmin</code> (pg_snapshot ) → xid8</td>
<td>Returns the xmin of a snapshot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_visible_in_snapshot</code> (xid8, pg_snapshot ) → boolean</td>
<td>Is the given transaction ID visible according to this snapshot (that is, was it completed before the snapshot was taken)? Note that this function will not give the correct answer for a subtransaction ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The internal transaction ID type `xid` is 32 bits wide and wraps around every 4 billion transactions. However, the functions shown in Table 9.76 use a 64-bit type `xid8` that does not wrap around during the life of an installation, and can be converted to `xid` by casting if required. The data type `pg_snapshot` stores information about transaction ID visibility at a particular moment in time. Its components are described in Table 9.77. `pg_snapshot’s textual representation` is `xmin:ximax:xip_list`. For example, `10:20:10,14,15` means `xmin=10, xmax=20, xip_list=10, 14, 15`.

#### Table 9.77. Snapshot Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xmin</td>
<td>Lowest transaction ID that was still active. All transaction IDs less than xmin are either committed and visible, or rolled back and dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmax</td>
<td>One past the highest completed transaction ID. All transaction IDs greater than or equal to xmax had not yet completed as of the time of the snapshot, and thus are invisible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xip_list</td>
<td>Transactions in progress at the time of the snapshot. A transaction ID that is xmin &lt;= X &lt; xmax and not in this list was already completed at the time of the snapshot, and thus is either visible or dead according to its commit status. This list does not include the transaction IDs of subtransactions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In releases of PostgreSQL before 13 there was no `xid8` type, so variants of these functions were provided that used `bigint` to represent a 64-bit XID, with a correspondingly distinct snapshot data type `txid_snapshot`. These older functions have `txid` in their names. They are still supported for backward compatibility, but may be removed from a future release. See Table 9.78.

#### Table 9.78. Deprecated Transaction ID and Snapshot Information Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>txid_current</code> () → bigint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_current_xact_id()</code></td>
<td>See <code>pg_current_xact_id()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>txid_current_if_assigned</code></td>
<td>(→ bigint) See <code>pg_current_xact_id_if_assigned()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>txid_current_snapshot</code></td>
<td>(→ txid_snapshot) See <code>pg_current_snapshot()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>txid_snapshot_xip</code></td>
<td>(txid_snapshot)→ setof bigint See <code>pg_snapshot_xip()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>txid_snapshot_xmax</code></td>
<td>(txid_snapshot)→ bigint See <code>pg_snapshot_xmax()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>txid_snapshot_xmin</code></td>
<td>(txid_snapshot)→ bigint See <code>pg_snapshot_xmin()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>txid_visible_in_snapshot</code></td>
<td>(bigint, txid_snapshot)→ boolean See <code>pg_visible_in_snapshot()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>txid_status</code></td>
<td>(bigint)→ text See <code>pg_xact_status()</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The functions shown in Table 9.79 provide information about when past transactions were committed. They only provide useful data when the `track_commit_timestamp` configuration option is enabled, and only for transactions that were committed after it was enabled.

### Table 9.79. Committed Transaction Information Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_xact_commit_timestamp</code></td>
<td>(xid)→ timestamp with time zone Returns the commit timestamp of a transaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_xact_commit_timestamp_origin</code></td>
<td>(xid)→ record (timestamp, timestamp with time zone, roIdent oid) Returns the commit timestamp and replication origin of a transaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_last_committed_xact</code></td>
<td>()→ record (xid, timestamp, timestamp with time zone, roIdent oid) Returns the transaction ID, commit timestamp and replication origin of the latest committed transaction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The functions shown in Table 9.80 print information initialized during `initdb`, such as the catalog version. They also show information about write-ahead logging and checkpoint processing. This information is cluster-wide, not specific to any one database. These functions provide most of the same information, from the same source, as the `pg_controldata` application.

### Table 9.80. Control Data Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_control_checkpoint</code></td>
<td>()→ record Returns information about current checkpoint state, as shown in Table 9.81.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_control_system</code></td>
<td>()→ record Returns information about current control file state, as shown in Table 9.82.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_control_init</code></td>
<td>()→ record Returns information about cluster initialization state, as shown in Table 9.83.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_control_recovery</td>
<td>() → record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Returns information about recovery state, as shown in Table 9.84.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 9.81. pg_control_checkpoint Output Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Data Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>checkpoint_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redo_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redo_wal_file</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeline_id</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prev_timeline_id</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full_page_writes</td>
<td>boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next_xid</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next_oid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next_multixact_id</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next_multi_offset</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldest_xid</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldest_xid_dbid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldest_active_xid</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldest_multi_xid</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldest_multi_dbid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldest_commit_ts_xid</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newest_commit_ts_xid</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checkpoint_time</td>
<td>timestamp with time zone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 9.82. pg_control_system Output Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Data Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_control_version</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catalog_version_no</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system_identifier</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_control_last_modified</td>
<td>timestamp with time zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_control_edition</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 9.83. pg_control_init Output Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Data Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>max_data_alignment</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database_block_size</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blocks_per_segment</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_block_size</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytes_per_wal_segment</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_identifier_length</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_index_columns</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Data Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>max_toast_chunk_size</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large_object_chunk_size</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float8_pass_by_value</td>
<td>boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data_page_checksum_version</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>icu_version</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

`icu_version` is NULL if Postgres Pro is built without ICU.

Table 9.84. `pg_control_recovery` Output Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Data Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>min_recovery_end_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min_recovery_end_timeline</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backup_start_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backup_end_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_of_backup_record_required</td>
<td>boolean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.27. System Administration Functions

The functions described in this section are used to control and monitor a Postgres Pro installation.

#### 9.27.1. Configuration Settings Functions

Table 9.85 shows the functions available to query and alter run-time configuration parameters.

Table 9.85. Configuration Settings Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>current_setting (setting_name text [, missing_ok boolean]) → text</td>
<td>Returns the current value of the setting <code>setting_name</code>. If there is no such setting, <code>current_setting</code> throws an error unless <code>missing_ok</code> is supplied and is true (in which case NULL is returned). This function corresponds to the SQL command <code>SHOW</code>.</td>
<td><code>current_setting('datestyle') → ISO, MDY</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_config (setting_name text, new_value text, is_local boolean) → text</td>
<td>Sets the parameter <code>setting_name</code> to <code>new_value</code>, and returns that value. If <code>is_local</code> is true, the new value will only apply during the current transaction. If you want the new value to apply for the rest of the current session, use <code>false</code> instead. This function corresponds to the SQL command <code>SET</code>.</td>
<td><code>set_config('log_statement_stats', 'off', false) → off</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 9.27.2. Server Signaling Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.86 send control signals to other server processes. Use of these functions is restricted to superusers by default but access may be granted to others using `GRANT`, with noted exceptions.

Each of these functions returns `true` if the signal was successfully sent and `false` if sending the signal failed.
Table 9.86. Server Signaling Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_cancel_backend (pid integer) → boolean</td>
<td>Cancels the current query of the session whose backend process has the specified process ID. This is also allowed if the calling role is a member of the role whose backend is being canceled or the calling role has been granted pg_signal_backend, however only superusers can cancel superuser backends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_log_backend_memory_contexts (pid integer) → boolean</td>
<td>Requests to log the memory contexts of the backend with the specified process ID. These memory contexts will be logged at LOG message level. They will appear in the server log based on the log configuration set (See Section 18.8 for more information), but will not be sent to the client regardless of client_min_messages. Only superusers can request to log the memory contexts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_reload_conf () → boolean</td>
<td>Causes all processes of the PostgreSQL server to reload their configuration files. (This is initiated by sending a SIGHUP signal to the postmaster process, which in turn sends SIGHUP to each of its children.) You can use the pg_file_settings and pg_hba_file_rules views to check the configuration files for possible errors, before reloading.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_rotate_logfile () → boolean</td>
<td>Signals the log-file manager to switch to a new output file immediately. This works only when the built-in log collector is running, since otherwise there is no log-file manager subprocess.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_terminate_backend (pid integer, timeout bigint DEFAULT 0) → boolean</td>
<td>Terminates the session whose backend process has the specified process ID. This is also allowed if the calling role is a member of the role whose backend is being terminated or the calling role has been granted pg_signal_backend, however only superusers can terminate superuser backends. If timeout is not specified or zero, this function returns true whether the process actually terminates or not, indicating only that the sending of the signal was successful. If the timeout is specified (in milliseconds) and greater than zero, the function waits until the process is actually terminated or until the given time has passed. If the process is terminated, the function returns true. On timeout, a warning is emitted and false is returned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pg_cancel_backend and pg_terminate_backend send signals (SIGINT or SIGTERM respectively) to backend processes identified by process ID. The process ID of an active backend can be found from the pid column of the pg_stat_activity view, or by listing the postgres processes on the server (using ps on Unix or the Task Manager on Windows). The role of an active backend can be found from the usename column of the pg_stat_activity view.

pg_log_backend_memory_contexts can be used to log the memory contexts of a backend process. For example:

```
postgres=# SELECT pg_log_backend_memory_contexts(pg_backend_pid());
```

```
t
(1 row)
```

One message for each memory context will be logged. For example:

```
LOG: logging memory contexts of PID 10377
STATEMENT: SELECT pg_log_backend_memory_contexts(pg_backend_pid());
LOG: level: 0; TopMemoryContext: 80800 total in 6 blocks; 14432 free (5 chunks); 66368 used
LOG: level: 1; pgstat TabStatusArray lookup hash table: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 1408 free (0 chunks); 6784 used
```
Functions and Operators

LOG: level: 1; TopTransactionContext: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 7720 free (1 chunks); 472 used
LOG: level: 1; RowDescriptionContext: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 6880 free (0 chunks); 1312 used
LOG: level: 1; MessageContext: 16384 total in 2 blocks; 5152 free (0 chunks); 11232 used
LOG: level: 1; Operator class cache: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 512 free (0 chunks); 7680 used
LOG: level: 1; smgr relation table: 16384 total in 2 blocks; 4544 free (3 chunks); 11840 used
LOG: level: 1; TransactionAbortContext: 32768 total in 1 blocks; 32504 free (0 chunks); 264 used
...
LOG: level: 1; ErrorContext: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 7928 free (3 chunks); 264 used
LOG: Grand total: 1651920 bytes in 201 blocks; 622360 free (88 chunks); 1029560 used

If there are more than 100 child contexts under the same parent, the first 100 child contexts are logged, along with a summary of the remaining contexts. Note that frequent calls to this function could incur significant overhead, because it may generate a large number of log messages.

9.27.3. Backup Control Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.87 assist in making on-line backups. These functions cannot be executed during recovery (except non-exclusive pg_start_backup, non-exclusive pg_stop_backup, pg_is_in_backup, pg_backup_start_time and pg_wal_lsn_diff).

For details about proper usage of these functions, see Section 24.3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_create_restore_point</td>
<td>(name text) → pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creates a named marker record in the write-ahead log that can later be used as a recovery target, and returns the corresponding write-ahead log location. The given name can then be used with recovery_target_name to specify the point up to which recovery will proceed. Avoid creating multiple restore points with the same name, since recovery will stop at the first one whose name matches the recovery target. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_current_wal_flush_lsn</td>
<td>() → pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the current write-ahead log flush location (see notes below).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_current_wal_insert_lsn</td>
<td>() → pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the current write-ahead log insert location (see notes below).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_current_wal_lsn</td>
<td>() → pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns the current write-ahead log write location (see notes below).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_start_backup</td>
<td>(label text [, fast boolean [, exclusive boolean ]]) → pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Prepares the server to begin an on-line backup. The only required parameter is an arbitrary user-defined label for the backup. (Typically this would be the name under which the backup dump file will be stored.) If the optional second parameter is given as true, it specifies executing pg_start_backup as quickly as possible. This forces an immediate checkpoint which will cause a spike in I/O operations, slowing any concurrently executing queries. The optional third parameter specifies whether to perform an exclusive or non-exclusive backup (default is exclusive). When used in exclusive mode, this function writes a backup label file (backup_label) and, if there are any links in the pg_tblspc/ directory, a tablespace map file (tablespace_map) into the database cluster's data directory, then performs a checkpoint, and then returns the
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>backup's starting write-ahead log location.</td>
<td>(The user can ignore this result value, but it is provided in case it is useful.) When used in non-exclusive mode, the contents of these files are instead returned by the <code>pg_stop_backup</code> function, and should be copied to the backup area by the user. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stop_backup</code></td>
<td>(exclusive boolean [, wait_for_archive boolean ]) → setof record (lsn, labelfile text, spcmapfile text) Finishes performing an exclusive or non-exclusive on-line backup. The exclusive parameter must match the previous <code>pg_start_backup</code> call. In an exclusive backup, <code>pg_stop_backup</code> removes the backup label file and, if it exists, the tablespace map file created by <code>pg_start_backup</code>. In a non-exclusive backup, the desired contents of these files are returned as part of the result of the function, and should be written to files in the backup area (not in the data directory). There is an optional second parameter of type boolean. If false, the function will return immediately after the backup is completed, without waiting for WAL to be archived. This behavior is only useful with backup software that independently monitors WAL archiving. Otherwise, WAL required to make the backup consistent might be missing and make the backup useless. By default or when this parameter is true, <code>pg_stop_backup</code> will wait for WAL to be archived when archiving is enabled. (On a standby, this means that it will wait only when <code>archive_mode = always</code>. If write activity on the primary is low, it may be useful to run <code>pg_switch_wal</code> on the primary in order to trigger an immediate segment switch.) When executed on a primary, this function also creates a backup history file in the write-ahead log archive area. The history file includes the label given to <code>pg_start_backup</code>, the starting and ending write-ahead log locations for the backup, and the starting and ending times of the backup. After recording the ending location, the current write-ahead log insertion point is automatically advanced to the next write-ahead log file, so that the ending write-ahead log file can be archived immediately to complete the backup. The result of the function is a single record. The <code>lsn</code> column holds the backup's ending write-ahead log location (which again can be ignored). The second and third columns are NULL when ending an exclusive backup; after a non-exclusive backup they hold the desired contents of the label and tablespace map files. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stop_backup</code></td>
<td>() → <code>pg_lsn</code> Finishes performing an exclusive on-line backup. This simplified version is equivalent to <code>pg_stop_backup(true, true)</code>, except that it only returns the <code>pg_lsn</code> result. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_is_in_backup</code></td>
<td>() → boolean Returns true if an on-line exclusive backup is in progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_backup_start_time</code></td>
<td>() → <code>timestamp with time zone</code> Returns the start time of the current on-line exclusive backup if one is in progress, otherwise NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_switch_wal</code></td>
<td>() → <code>pg_lsn</code> Forces the server to switch to a new write-ahead log file, which allows the current file to be archived (assuming you are using continuous archiving). The result is the ending write-ahead log location plus 1 within the just-completed write-ahead log file. If there has been no write-ahead log activity since the last write-ahead log switch, <code>pg_switch_wal</code> does nothing and returns the start location of the write-ahead log file currently in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This function is restricted to</td>
<td>This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superusers by default, but other</td>
<td>granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>users can be granted EXECUTE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to run the function.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_walfile_name (lsn pg_lsn) →</td>
<td>Converts a write-ahead log location to the name of the WAL file holding that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_walfile_name_offset (lsn</td>
<td>Converts a write-ahead log location to a WAL file name and byte offset within</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_lsn) → record (file_name</td>
<td>that file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text, file_offset integer)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_wal_lsn_diff (lsn1 pg_lsn,</td>
<td>Calculates the difference in bytes (lsn1 - lsn2) between two write-ahead log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lsn2 pg_lsn) → numeric</td>
<td>locations. This can be used with pg_stat_replication or some of the functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shown in Table 9.87 to get the replication lag.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pg_current_wal_lsn displays the current write-ahead log write location in the same format used by the above functions. Similarly, pg_current_wal_insert_lsn displays the current write-ahead log insertion location and pg_current_wal_flush_lsn displays the current write-ahead log flush location. The insertion location is the “logical” end of the write-ahead log at any instant, while the write location is the end of what has actually been written out from the server’s internal buffers, and the flush location is the last location known to be written to durable storage. The write location is the end of what can be examined from outside the server, and is usually what you want if you are interested in archiving partially-complete write-ahead log files. The insertion and flush locations are made available primarily for server debugging purposes. These are all read-only operations and do not require superuser permissions.

You can use pg_walfile_name_offset to extract the corresponding write-ahead log file name and byte offset from a pg_lsn value. For example:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_walfile_name_offset(pg_stop_backup());
             file_name       | file_offset
-----------------+-----------------|
00000001000000000000000D |    4039624
(1 row)
```

Similarly, pg_walfile_name extracts just the write-ahead log file name. When the given write-ahead log location is exactly at a write-ahead log file boundary, both these functions return the name of the preceding write-ahead log file. This is usually the desired behavior for managing write-ahead log archiving behavior, since the preceding file is the last one that currently needs to be archived.

### 9.27.4. Recovery Control Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.88 provide information about the current status of a standby server. These functions may be executed both during recovery and in normal running.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_is_in_recovery () → boolean</td>
<td>Returns true if recovery is still in progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_last_wal_receive_lsn () → pg_lsn</td>
<td>Returns the last write-ahead log location that has been received and synced to disk by streaming replication. While streaming replication is in progress this will increase monotonically. If recovery has completed then this will remain static at the location of the last WAL record received and synced to disk during recovery. If streaming replication is disabled, or if it has not yet started, the function returns NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_last_wal_replay_lsn () → pg_lsn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Returns the last write-ahead log location that has been replayed during recovery. If recovery is still in progress this will increase monotonically. If recovery has completed then this will remain static at the location of the last WAL record applied during recovery. When the server has been started normally without recovery, the function returns NULL.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pg_last_xact_replay_timestamp () → timestamp with time zone

Returns the time stamp of the last transaction replayed during recovery. This is the time at which the commit or abort WAL record for that transaction was generated on the primary. If no transactions have been replayed during recovery, the function returns NULL. Otherwise, if recovery is still in progress this will increase monotonically. If recovery has completed then this will remain static at the time of the last transaction applied during recovery. When the server has been started normally without recovery, the function returns NULL.

The functions shown in Table 9.89 control the progress of recovery. These functions may be executed only during recovery.

Table 9.89. Recovery Control Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_is_wal_replay_paused () → boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns true if recovery pause is requested.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pg_get_wal_replay_pause_state () → text

Returns recovery pause state. The return values are not paused if pause is not requested, pause requested if pause is requested but recovery is not yet paused, and paused if the recovery is actually paused.

pg_promote (wait boolean DEFAULT true, wait_seconds integer DEFAULT 60) → boolean

Promotes a standby server to primary status. With wait set to true (the default), the function waits until promotion is completed or wait_seconds seconds have passed, and returns true if promotion is successful and false otherwise. If wait is set to false, the function returns true immediately after sending a SIGUSR1 signal to the postmaster to trigger promotion. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.

pg_wal_replay_pause () → void

Request to pause recovery. A request doesn't mean that recovery stops right away. If you want a guarantee that recovery is actually paused, you need to check for the recovery pause state returned by pg_get_wal_replay_pause_state(). Note that pg_is_wal_replay_paused() returns whether a request is made. While recovery is paused, no further database changes are applied. If hot standby is active, all new queries will see the same consistent snapshot of the database, and no further query conflicts will be generated until recovery is resumed. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.

pg_wal_replay_resume () → void

Restarts recovery if it was paused. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.

pg_wal_replay_pause and pg_wal_replay_resume cannot be executed while a promotion is ongoing. If a promotion is triggered while recovery is paused, the paused state ends and promotion continues.

If streaming replication is disabled, the paused state may continue indefinitely without a problem. If streaming replication is in progress then WAL records will continue to be received, which will eventually
fill available disk space, depending upon the duration of the pause, the rate of WAL generation and available disk space.

9.27.5. Snapshot Synchronization Functions

Postgres Pro allows database sessions to synchronize their snapshots. A snapshot determines which data is visible to the transaction that is using the snapshot. Synchronized snapshots are necessary when two or more sessions need to see identical content in the database. If two sessions just start their transactions independently, there is always a possibility that some third transaction commits between the executions of the two START TRANSACTION commands, so that one session sees the effects of that transaction and the other does not.

To solve this problem, Postgres Pro allows a transaction to export the snapshot it is using. As long as the exporting transaction remains open, other transactions can import its snapshot, and thereby be guaranteed that they see exactly the same view of the database that the first transaction sees. But note that any database changes made by any one of these transactions remain invisible to the other transactions, as is usual for changes made by uncommitted transactions. So the transactions are synchronized with respect to pre-existing data, but act normally for changes they make themselves.

Snapshots are exported with the pg_export_snapshot function, shown in Table 9.90, and imported with the SET TRANSACTION command.

Table 9.90. Snapshot Synchronization Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_export_snapshot () → text</td>
<td>Saves the transaction's current snapshot and returns a text string identifying the snapshot. This string must be passed (outside the database) to clients that want to import the snapshot. The snapshot is available for import only until the end of the transaction that exported it. A transaction can export more than one snapshot, if needed. Note that doing so is only useful in READ COMMITTED transactions, since in REPEATABLE READ and higher isolation levels, transactions use the same snapshot throughout their lifetime. Once a transaction has exported any snapshots, it cannot be prepared with PREPARE TRANSACTION.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.27.6. Replication Management Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.91 are for controlling and interacting with replication features. See Section 25.2.5, Section 25.2.6, and Chapter 48 for information about the underlying features. Use of functions for replication origin is only allowed to the superuser by default, but may be allowed to other users by using the GRANT command. Use of functions for replication slots is restricted to superusers and users having REPLICATION privilege.

Many of these functions have equivalent commands in the replication protocol; see Section 51.4.

The functions described in Section 9.27.3, Section 9.27.4, and Section 9.27.5 are also relevant for replication.

Table 9.91. Replication Management Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_create_physical_replication_slot (slot_name name [, immediately_reserve boolean, temporary boolean ]) → record (slot_name name, lsn pg_lsn)</td>
<td>Creates a new physical replication slot named slot_name. The optional second parameter, when true, specifies that the LSN for this replication slot be reserved immediately; otherwise the LSN is reserved on first connection from a streaming replication client. Streaming changes from a physical slot is only possible with the streaming-replication protocol — see Section 51.4. The optional third parameter, temporary, when set to true, specifies that the slot should not be permanently stored to disk and is only meant for use by the current</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_drop_replication_slot</code> (slot_name name) → void</td>
<td>Drops the physical or logical replication slot named <code>slot_name</code>. Same as replication protocol command <code>DROP_REPLICATION_SLOT</code>. For logical slots, this must be called while connected to the same database the slot was created on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_create_logical_replication_slot</code> (slot_name name, plugin name [temporary boolean, two_phase boolean]) → record (slot_name name, lsn pg_lsn)</td>
<td>Creates a new logical (decoding) replication slot named <code>slot_name</code> using the output plugin <code>plugin</code>. The optional third parameter, <code>temporary</code>, when set to true, specifies that the slot should not be permanently stored to disk and is only meant for use by the current session. Temporary slots are also released upon any error. The optional fourth parameter, <code>two_phase</code>, when set to true, specifies that the decoding of prepared transactions is enabled for this slot. A call to this function has the same effect as the replication protocol command <code>CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_copy_physical_replication_slot</code> (src_slot_name name, dst_slot_name name [temporary boolean]) → record (slot_name name, lsn pg_lsn)</td>
<td>Copies an existing physical replication slot named <code>src_slot_name</code> to a physical replication slot named <code>dst_slot_name</code>. The copied physical slot starts to reserve WAL from the same LSN as the source slot. <code>temporary</code> is optional. If <code>temporary</code> is omitted, the same value as the source slot is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_copy_logical_replication_slot</code> (src_slot_name name, dst_slot_name name [temporary boolean, plugin name]) → record (slot_name name, lsn pg_lsn)</td>
<td>Copies an existing logical replication slot named <code>src_slot_name</code> to a logical replication slot named <code>dst_slot_name</code>, optionally changing the output plugin and persistence. The copied logical slot starts from the same LSN as the source logical slot. Both <code>temporary</code> and <code>plugin</code> are optional; if they are omitted, the values of the source slot are used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_logical_slot_get_changes</code> (slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn, upto_nchanges integer, VARIADIC options text[]) → setof record (lsn pg_lsn, xid xid, data text)</td>
<td>Returns changes in the slot <code>slot_name</code>, starting from the point from which changes have been consumed last. If <code>upto_lsn</code> and <code>upto_nchanges</code> are NULL, logical decoding will continue until end of WAL. If <code>upto_lsn</code> is non-NULL, decoding will include only those transactions which commit prior to the specified LSN. If <code>upto_nchanges</code> is non-NULL, decoding will stop when the number of rows produced by decoding exceeds the specified value. Note, however, that the actual number of rows returned may be larger, since this limit is only checked after adding the rows produced when decoding each new transaction commit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_logical_slot.peek_changes</code> (slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn, upto_nchanges integer, VARIADIC options text[]) → setof record (lsn pg_lsn, xid xid, data bytea)</td>
<td>Behaves just like the <code>pg_logical_slot.get_changes()</code> function, except that changes are not consumed; that is, they will be returned again on future calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_logical_slot.get_binary_changes</code> (slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn, upto_nchanges integer, VARIADIC options text[]) → setof record (lsn pg_lsn, xid xid, data bytea)</td>
<td>Behaves just like the <code>pg_logical_slot.get_changes()</code> function, except that changes are returned as bytea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_logical_slot.peek_binary_changes</code> (slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn, upto_nchanges integer, VARIADIC options text[]) → setof record (lsn pg_lsn, xid xid, data bytea)</td>
<td>Behaves just like the <code>pg_logical_slot.peek_changes()</code> function, except that changes are returned as bytea.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Behaves just like the pg_logical_slot_peek_changes() function, except that changes are returned as bytea.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```sql
pg_replication_slot_advance ( slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn ) → record ( slot_name name, end_lsn pg_lsn )
```

Advances the current confirmed position of a replication slot named `slot_name`. The slot will not be moved backwards, and it will not be moved beyond the current insert location. Returns the name of the slot and the actual position that it was advanced to. The updated slot position information is written out at the next checkpoint if any advancing is done. So in the event of a crash, the slot may return to an earlier position.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_create ( node_name text ) → oid
```

Creates a replication origin with the given external name, and returns the internal ID assigned to it.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_drop ( node_name text ) → void
```

Deletes a previously-created replication origin, including any associated replay progress.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_oid ( node_name text ) → oid
```

Looks up a replication origin by name and returns the internal ID. If no such replication origin is found an error is thrown.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_session_setup ( node_name text ) → void
```

Marks the current session as replaying from the given origin, allowing replay progress to be tracked. Can only be used if no origin is currently selected. Use `pg_replication_origin_session_reset` to undo.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_session_reset () → void
```

Cancels the effects of `pg_replication_origin_session_setup()`.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_session_is_setup () → boolean
```

Returns true if a replication origin has been selected in the current session.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_session_progress ( flush boolean ) → pg_lsn
```

Returns the replay location for the replication origin selected in the current session. The parameter `flush` determines whether the corresponding local transaction will be guaranteed to have been flushed to disk or not.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_xact_setup ( origin_lsn pg_lsn, origin_timestamp timestamp with time zone ) → void
```

Marks the current transaction as replaying a transaction that has committed at the given LSN and timestamp. Can only be called when a replication origin has been selected using `pg_replication_origin_session_setup`.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_xact_reset () → void
```

Cancels the effects of `pg_replication_origin_xact_setup()`.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_advance ( node_name text, lsn pg_lsn ) → void
```

Sets replication progress for the given node to the given location. This is primarily useful for setting up the initial location, or setting a new location after configuration changes and similar. Be aware that careless use of this function can lead to inconsistently replicated data.

```sql
pg_replication_origin_progress ( node_name text, flush boolean ) → pg_lsn
```

Returns the replay location for the given replication origin. The parameter `flush` determines whether the corresponding local transaction will be guaranteed to have been flushed to disk or not.

```sql
pg_logical_emit_message ( transactional boolean, prefix text, content text ) → pg_lsn
```

```sql
pg_logical_emit_message ( transactional boolean, prefix text, content bytea ) → pg_lsn
```
### 9.27.7. Database Object Management Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.92 calculate the disk space usage of database objects, or assist in presentation or understanding of usage results. bigint results are measured in bytes. If an OID that does not represent an existing object is passed to one of these functions, NULL is returned.

**Table 9.92. Database Object Size Functions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_column_size</code></td>
<td>(&quot;any&quot;)\rightarrow integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_column_compression</code></td>
<td>(&quot;any&quot;)\rightarrow text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_database_size</code></td>
<td>(name)\rightarrow bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_database_size</code></td>
<td>(oid)\rightarrow bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_indexes_size</code></td>
<td>(regclass)\rightarrow bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_relation_size</code></td>
<td>(relation regclass[, fork text ] )\rightarrow bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_size_bytes</code></td>
<td>(text)\rightarrow bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_size_pretty</code></td>
<td>(bigint)\rightarrow text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_size_pretty</code></td>
<td>(numeric)\rightarrow text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_table_size</code></td>
<td>(regclass)\rightarrow bigint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Function Description**

- **Emits a logical decoding message.** This can be used to pass generic messages to logical decoding plugins through WAL. The `transactional` parameter specifies if the message should be part of the current transaction, or if it should be written immediately and decoded as soon as the logical decoder reads the record. The `prefix` parameter is a textual prefix that can be used by logical decoding plugins to easily recognize messages that are interesting for them. The `content` parameter is the content of the message, given either in text or binary form.
Functions and Operators

### Function Description

- **pg_tablespace_size (name)** → bigint
  - Computes the disk space used by the specified table, excluding indexes (but including its TOAST table if any, free space map, and visibility map).

- **pg_tablespace_size (oid)** → bigint
  - Computes the total disk space used in the tablespace with the specified name or OID. To use this function, you must have CREATE privilege on the specified tablespace or be a member of the pg_read_all_stats role, unless it is the default tablespace for the current database.

- **pg_total_relation_size (regclass)** → bigint
  - Computes the total disk space used by the specified table, including all indexes and TOAST data. The result is equivalent to `pg_table_size + pg_indexes_size`.

The functions above that operate on tables or indexes accept a *regclass* argument, which is simply the OID of the table or index in the *pg_class* system catalog. You do not have to look up the OID by hand, however, since the *regclass* data type's input converter will do the work for you. See Section 8.19 for details.

The functions shown in Table 9.93 assist in identifying the specific disk files associated with database objects.

### Table 9.93. Database Object Location Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_relation_filenode (relation regclass)</strong> → oid</td>
<td>Returns the “filenode” number currently assigned to the specified relation. The filenode is the base component of the file name(s) used for the relation (see Section 66.1 for more information). For most relations the result is the same as <em>pg_class</em>.relfilenode, but for certain system catalogs relfilenode is zero and this function must be used to get the correct value. The function returns NULL if passed a relation that does not have storage, such as a view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_relation_filepath (relation regclass)</strong> → text</td>
<td>Returns the entire file path name (relative to the database cluster's data directory, <em>PGDATA</em>) of the relation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_filenode_relation (tablespace oid, filenode oid)</strong> → regclass</td>
<td>Returns a relation's OID given the tablespace OID and filenode it is stored under. This is essentially the inverse mapping of <em>pg_relation_filepath</em>. For a relation in the database's default tablespace, the tablespace can be specified as zero. Returns NULL if no relation in the current database is associated with the given values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 9.94 lists functions used to manage collations.

### Table 9.94. Collation Management Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_collation_actual_version (oid)</strong> → text</td>
<td>Returns the actual version of the collation object as it is currently installed in the operating system. If this is different from the value in <em>pg_collation</em>.collversion, then objects depending on the collation might need to be rebuilt. See also <em>ALTER COLLATION</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_import_system_collations (schema regnamespace)</strong> → integer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Function**

**Description**

Adds collations to the system catalog `pg_collation` based on all the locales it finds in the operating system. This is what `initdb` uses; see Section 22.2.2 for more details. If additional locales are installed into the operating system later on, this function can be run again to add collations for the new locales. Locales that match existing entries in `pg_collation` will be skipped. (But collation objects based on locales that are no longer present in the operating system are not removed by this function.) The `schema` parameter would typically be `pg_catalog`, but that is not a requirement; the collations could be installed into some other schema as well. The function returns the number of new collation objects it created. Use of this function is restricted to superusers.

Table 9.95 lists functions that provide information about the structure of partitioned tables.

### Table 9.95. Partitioning Information Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_partition_tree</code> (regclass) → setof record</td>
<td>Lists the tables or indexes in the partition tree of the given partitioned table or partitioned index, with one row for each partition. Information provided includes the OID of the partition, the OID of its immediate parent, a boolean value telling if the partition is a leaf, and an integer telling its level in the hierarchy. The level value is 0 for the input table or index, 1 for its immediate child partitions, 2 for their partitions, and so on. Returns no rows if the relation does not exist or is not a partition or partitioned table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_partition_ancestors</code> (regclass) → setof regclass</td>
<td>Lists the ancestor relations of the given partition, including the relation itself. Returns no rows if the relation does not exist or is not a partition or partitioned table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_partition_root</code> (regclass) → regclass</td>
<td>Returns the top-most parent of the partition tree to which the given relation belongs. Returns NULL if the relation does not exist or is not a partition or partitioned table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, to check the total size of the data contained in a partitioned table `measurement`, one could use the following query:

```sql
SELECT pg_size_pretty(sum(pg_relation_size(relid))) AS total_size
FROM pg_partition_tree('measurement');
```

### 9.27.8. Index Maintenance Functions

Table 9.96 shows the functions available for index maintenance tasks. (Note that these maintenance tasks are normally done automatically by autovacuum; use of these functions is only required in special cases.) These functions cannot be executed during recovery. Use of these functions is restricted to superusers and the owner of the given index.

### Table 9.96. Index Maintenance Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>brin_summarize_new_values</code> (index regclass) → integer</td>
<td>Scans the specified BRIN index to find page ranges in the base table that are not currently summarized by the index; for any such range it creates a new summary index tuple by scanning those table pages. Returns the number of new page range summaries that were inserted into the index.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>brin_summarize_range</code> (index regclass, blockNumber bigint) → integer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>brin_desummarize_range</strong></td>
<td>(index regclass, blockNumber bigint) → void&lt;br&gt;Removes the BRIN index tuple that summarizes the page range covering the given table block, if there is one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gin_clean_pending_list</strong></td>
<td>(index regclass) → bigint&lt;br&gt;Cleans up the “pending” list of the specified GIN index by moving entries in it, in bulk, to the main GIN data structure. Returns the number of pages removed from the pending list. If the argument is a GIN index built with the fastupdate option disabled, no cleanup happens and the result is zero, because the index doesn’t have a pending list. See Section 63.4.1 and Section 63.5 for details about the pending list and fastupdate option.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.27.9. Generic File Access Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.97 provide native access to files on the machine hosting the server. Only files within the database cluster directory and the log_directory can be accessed, unless the user is a superuser or is granted the role pg_read_server_files. Use a relative path for files in the cluster directory, and a path matching the log_directory configuration setting for log files.

Note that granting users the EXECUTE privilege on pg_read_file(), or related functions, allows them the ability to read any file on the server that the database server process can read; these functions bypass all in-database privilege checks. This means that, for example, a user with such access is able to read the contents of the pg_authid table where authentication information is stored, as well as read any table data in the database. Therefore, granting access to these functions should be carefully considered.

Some of these functions take an optional missing_ok parameter, which specifies the behavior when the file or directory does not exist. If true, the function returns NULL or an empty result set, as appropriate. If false, an error is raised. The default is false.

#### Table 9.97. Generic File Access Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_ls_dir</strong></td>
<td>(dirname text [, missing_ok boolean, include_dot_dirs boolean ]) → setof text&lt;br&gt;Returns the names of all files (and directories and other special files) in the specified directory. The include_dot_dirs parameter indicates whether “.” and “..” are to be included in the result set; the default is to exclude them. Including them can be useful when missing_ok is true, to distinguish an empty directory from a non-existent directory. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_ls_logdir</strong></td>
<td>() → setof record (name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with timezone) &lt;br&gt;Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's log directory. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded. This function is restricted to superusers and members of the pg_monitor role by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_ls_waldir</strong></td>
<td>() → setof record (name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with timezone) &lt;br&gt;Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's write-ahead log (WAL) directory. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ls_archive_statusdir</td>
<td>Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's WAL archive status directory (pg_wal/archive_status). Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded. This function is restricted to superusers and members of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ls_tmpdir</td>
<td>Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the temporary file directory for the specified <code>tablespace</code>. If <code>tablespace</code> is not provided, the <code>pg_default</code> tablespace is examined. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded. This function is restricted to superusers and members of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_read_file</td>
<td>Returns all or part of a text file, starting at the given byte <code>offset</code>, returning at most <code>length</code> bytes (less if the end of file is reached first). If <code>offset</code> is negative, it is relative to the end of the file. If <code>offset</code> and <code>length</code> are omitted, the entire file is returned. The bytes read from the file are interpreted as a string in the database's encoding; an error is thrown if they are not valid in that encoding. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| pg_read_binary_file              | Returns all or part of a file. This function is identical to `pg_read_file` except that it can read arbitrary binary data, returning the result as `bytea` not `text`; accordingly, no encoding checks are performed. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function. The function can be used to read a text file in a specified encoding and convert to the database's encoding:  
  ```sql
  SELECT convert_from(pg_read_binary_file('file_in_utf8.txt'), 'UTF8');
  ```  |
| pg_stat_file                     | Returns a record containing the file's size, last access time stamp, last modification time stamp, last file status change time stamp (Unix platforms only), file creation time stamp (Windows only), and a flag indicating if it is a directory. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function. |

### 9.27.10. Advisory Lock Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.98 manage advisory locks. For details about proper use of these functions, see Section 13.3.5.

All these functions are intended to be used to lock application-defined resources, which can be identified either by a single 64-bit key value or two 32-bit key values (note that these two key spaces do not
If another session already holds a conflicting lock on the same resource identifier, the functions will either wait until the resource becomes available, or return a \texttt{false} result, as appropriate for the function. Locks can be either shared or exclusive: a shared lock does not conflict with other shared locks on the same resource, only with exclusive locks. Locks can be taken at session level (so that they are held until released or the session ends) or at transaction level (so that they are held until the current transaction ends; there is no provision for manual release). Multiple session-level lock requests stack, so that if the same resource identifier is locked three times there must then be three unlock requests to release the resource in advance of session end.

### Table 9.98. Advisory Lock Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_lock} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td>Obtains an exclusive session-level advisory lock, waiting if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_lock} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_lock_shared} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td>Obtains a shared session-level advisory lock, waiting if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_lock_shared} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_unlock} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td>Releases a previously-acquired exclusive session-level advisory lock. Returns \texttt{true} if the lock is successfully released. If the lock was not held, \texttt{false} is returned, and in addition, an SQL warning will be reported by the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_unlock} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_unlock_all} ( () \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td>Releases all session-level advisory locks held by the current session. (This function is implicitly invoked at session end, even if the client disconnects ungracefully.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_unlock_shared} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_unlock_shared} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_xact_lock} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td>Obtains an exclusive transaction-level advisory lock, waiting if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_xact_lock} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_xact_lock_shared} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td>Obtains a shared transaction-level advisory lock, waiting if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_advisory_xact_lock_shared} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{void} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_try_advisory_lock} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td>Obtains an exclusive session-level advisory lock if available. This will either obtain the lock immediately and return \texttt{true}, or return \texttt{false} without waiting if the lock cannot be acquired immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_try_advisory_lock} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_try_advisory_lock_shared} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td>Obtains a shared session-level advisory lock if available. This will either obtain the lock immediately and return \texttt{true}, or return \texttt{false} without waiting if the lock cannot be acquired immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_try_advisory_lock_shared} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_try_advisory_xact_lock} ( (\text{key bigint}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_try_advisory_xact_lock} ( (\text{key1 integer, key2 integer}) \rightarrow \text{boolean} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

345
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_try_advisory_xact_lock_shared</td>
<td>Obtains an exclusive transaction-level advisory lock if available. This will either obtain the lock immediately and return true, or return false without waiting if the lock cannot be acquired immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_try_advisory_xact_lock_shared</td>
<td>Obtains a shared transaction-level advisory lock if available. This will either obtain the lock immediately and return true, or return false without waiting if the lock cannot be acquired immediately.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.27.11. Debugging Functions

The function shown in Table 9.99 can assist you in low-level activities, such as debugging or exploring corrupted Postgres Pro databases.

**Table 9.99. Snapshot Synchronization Functions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Return Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_snapshot_any()</td>
<td>void</td>
<td>Sets the current transaction to ignore MVCC rules and see all versions of data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use `pg_snapshot_any` with care. Run it in a transaction with isolation level `REPEATABLE READ` or higher, otherwise the specific snapshot will be replaced by a new one by the next query. Only superusers can run this function.

**Note**

If you created the database cluster using the server version that did not provide this function, execute the command:

```
CREATE FUNCTION pg_snapshot_any() RETURNS void AS 'pg_snapshot_any' LANGUAGE internal;
```

### 9.28. Trigger Functions

While many uses of triggers involve user-written trigger functions, PostgreSQL provides a few built-in trigger functions that can be used directly in user-defined triggers. These are summarized in Table 9.100. (Additional built-in trigger functions exist, which implement foreign key constraints and deferred index constraints. Those are not documented here since users need not use them directly.)

For more information about creating triggers, see CREATE TRIGGER.

**Table 9.100. Built-In Trigger Functions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suppress_redundant_updates_trigger</td>
<td>Suppresses do-nothing update operations. See below for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsvector_update_trigger</td>
<td>Automatically updates a tsvector column from associated plain-text document column(s). The text search configuration to use is specified by name as a trigger argument. See Section 12.4.3 for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about creating triggers, see CREATE TRIGGER.
Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TRIGGER ... tsvector_update_trigger(tsvcol, 'pg_catalog.swedish', title, body)</td>
<td>Automatically updates a tsvector column from associated plain-text document column(s). The text search configuration to use is taken from a regconfig column of the table. See Section 12.4.3 for details.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `tsvector_update_trigger_column` function, when applied as a row-level BEFORE UPDATE trigger, will prevent any update that does not actually change the data in the row from taking place. This overrides the normal behavior which always performs a physical row update regardless of whether or not the data has changed. (This normal behavior makes updates run faster, since no checking is required, and is also useful in certain cases.)

Ideally, you should avoid running updates that don't actually change the data in the record. Redundant updates can cost considerable unnecessary time, especially if there are lots of indexes to alter, and space in dead rows that will eventually have to be vacuumed. However, detecting such situations in client code is not always easy, or even possible, and writing expressions to detect them can be error-prone. An alternative is to use `suppress_redundant_updates_trigger`, which will skip updates that don't change the data. You should use this with care, however. The trigger takes a small but non-trivial time for each record, so if most of the records affected by updates do actually change, use of this trigger will make updates run slower on average.

The `suppress_redundant_updates_trigger` function can be added to a table like this:

```
CREATE TRIGGER z_min_update
BEFORE UPDATE ON tablename
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION suppress_redundant_updates_trigger();
```

In most cases, you need to fire this trigger last for each row, so that it does not override other triggers that might wish to alter the row. Bearing in mind that triggers fire in name order, you would therefore choose a trigger name that comes after the name of any other trigger you might have on the table. (Hence the “z” prefix in the example.)

9.29. Event Trigger Functions

Postgres Pro provides these helper functions to retrieve information from event triggers.

For more information about event triggers, see Chapter 38.

9.29.1. Capturing Changes at Command End

`pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands` function returns a list of DDL commands executed by each user action, when invoked in a function attached to a `ddl_command_end` event trigger. If called in any other context, an error is raised. `pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands` returns one row for each base command executed; some commands that are a single SQL sentence may return more than one row. This function returns the following columns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>classid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of catalog the object belongs in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the object itself</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>objsubid</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Sub-object ID (e.g., attribute number for a column)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command_tag</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Command tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_type</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Type of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schema_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of the schema the object belongs in, if any; otherwise NULL. No quoting is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_identity</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Text rendering of the object identity, schema-qualified. Each identifier included in the identity is quoted if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in_extension</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>True if the command is part of an extension script</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>pg_ddl_command</td>
<td>A complete representation of the command, in internal format. This cannot be output directly, but it can be passed to other functions to obtain different pieces of information about the command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 9.29.2. Processing Objects Dropped by a DDL Command

`pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects () → setof record`

`pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects` returns a list of all objects dropped by the command in whose `sql_drop` event it is called. If called in any other context, an error is raised. This function returns the following columns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>classid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of catalog the object belonged in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the object itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objsubid</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Sub-object ID (e.g., attribute number for a column)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>original</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>True if this was one of the root object(s) of the deletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>normal</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>True if there was a normal dependency relationship in the dependency graph leading to this object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_temporary</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>True if this was a temporary object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_type</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Type of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schema_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of the schema the object belonged in, if any; otherwise NULL. No quoting is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of the object, if the combination of schema and name can be used as a unique identifier for the object;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions and Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object_identity</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Text rendering of the object identity, schema-qualified. Each identifier included in the identity is quoted if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address_names</td>
<td>text[]</td>
<td>An array that, together with object_type and address_args, can be used by the pg_get_object_address function to recreate the object address in a remote server containing an identically named object of the same kind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address_args</td>
<td>text[]</td>
<td>Complement for address_names.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects` function can be used in an event trigger like this:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION test_event_trigger_for_drops()
RETURNS event_trigger LANGUAGE plpgsql AS $$
DECLARE
  obj record;
BEGIN
  FOR obj IN SELECT * FROM pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects()
  LOOP
    RAISE NOTICE '% dropped object: % %.% %',
    tg_tag,
    obj.object_type,
    obj.schema_name,
    obj.object_name,
    obj.object_identity;
  END LOOP;
END;
$$;
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER test_event_trigger_for_drops
ON sql_drop
EXECUTE FUNCTION test_event_trigger_for_drops();
```

### 9.29.3. Handling a Table Rewrite Event

The functions shown in Table 9.101 provide information about a table for which a `table_rewrite` event has just been called. If called in any other context, an error is raised.

#### Table 9.101. Table Rewrite Information Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid() → oid</td>
<td>Returns the OID of the table about to be rewritten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_reason() → integer</td>
<td>Returns a code explaining the reason(s) for rewriting. The exact meaning of the codes is release dependent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These functions can be used in an event trigger like this:
CREATE FUNCTION test_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid()
RETURNS event_trigger
LANGUAGE plpgsql AS
$$
BEGIN
   RAISE NOTICE 'rewriting table % for reason %',
   pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid()::regclass,
   pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_reason();
END;
$$;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER test_table_rewrite_oid
ON table_rewrite
   EXECUTE FUNCTION test_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid();

9.30. Statistics Information Functions

Postgres Pro provides a function to inspect complex statistics defined using the CREATE STATISTICS command.

9.30.1. Inspecting MCV Lists

pg_mcv_list_items ( pg_mcv_list ) → setof record

pg_mcv_list_items returns a set of records describing all items stored in a multi-column MCV list. It returns the following columns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>index</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>index of the item in the MCV list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>values</td>
<td>text[]</td>
<td>values stored in the MCV item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nulls</td>
<td>boolean[]</td>
<td>flags identifying NULL values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frequency</td>
<td>double precision</td>
<td>frequency of this MCV item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base_frequency</td>
<td>double precision</td>
<td>base frequency of this MCV item</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The pg_mcv_list_items function can be used like this:

SELECT m.* FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid = stxoid),
   pg_mcv_list_items(stxdmcv) m WHERE stxname = 'stts';

Values of the pg_mcv_list type can be obtained only from the pg_statistic_ext_data.stxdmcv column.
Chapter 10. Type Conversion

SQL statements can, intentionally or not, require the mixing of different data types in the same expression. Postgres Pro has extensive facilities for evaluating mixed-type expressions.

In many cases a user does not need to understand the details of the type conversion mechanism. However, implicit conversions done by Postgres Pro can affect the results of a query. When necessary, these results can be tailored by using explicit type conversion.

This chapter introduces the Postgres Pro type conversion mechanisms and conventions. Refer to the relevant sections in Chapter 8 and Chapter 9 for more information on specific data types and allowed functions and operators.

10.1. Overview

SQL is a strongly typed language. That is, every data item has an associated data type which determines its behavior and allowed usage. Postgres Pro has an extensible type system that is more general and flexible than other SQL implementations. Hence, most type conversion behavior in Postgres Pro is governed by general rules rather than by ad hoc heuristics. This allows the use of mixed-type expressions even with user-defined types.

The Postgres Pro scanner/parser divides lexical elements into five fundamental categories: integers, non-integer numbers, strings, identifiers, and key words. Constants of most non-numeric types are first classified as strings. The SQL language definition allows specifying type names with strings, and this mechanism can be used in Postgres Pro to start the parser down the correct path. For example, the query:

```sql
SELECT text 'Origin' AS "label", point '(0,0)' AS "value";
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>label</th>
<th>value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Origin</td>
<td>(0,0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1 row)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

has two literal constants, of type `text` and `point`. If a type is not specified for a string literal, then the placeholder type `unknown` is assigned initially, to be resolved in later stages as described below.

There are four fundamental SQL constructs requiring distinct type conversion rules in the Postgres Pro parser:

Function calls

Much of the Postgres Pro type system is built around a rich set of functions. Functions can have one or more arguments. Since Postgres Pro permits function overloading, the function name alone does not uniquely identify the function to be called; the parser must select the right function based on the data types of the supplied arguments.

Operators

Postgres Pro allows expressions with prefix (one-argument) operators, as well as infix (two-argument) operators. Like functions, operators can be overloaded, so the same problem of selecting the right operator exists.

Value Storage

SQL `INSERT` and `UPDATE` statements place the results of expressions into a table. The expressions in the statement must be matched up with, and perhaps converted to, the types of the target columns.

`UNION`, `CASE`, and related constructs

Since all query results from a unionized `SELECT` statement must appear in a single set of columns, the types of the results of each `SELECT` clause must be matched up and converted to a uniform set. Similarly, the result expressions of a `CASE` construct must be converted to a common type so that the `CASE` expression as a whole has a known output type. Some other constructs, such as `ARRAY[]`
and the GREATEST and LEAST functions, likewise require determination of a common type for several subexpressions.

The system catalogs store information about which conversions, or casts, exist between which data types, and how to perform those conversions. Additional casts can be added by the user with the CREATE CAST command. (This is usually done in conjunction with defining new data types. The set of casts between built-in types has been carefully crafted and is best not altered.)

An additional heuristic provided by the parser allows improved determination of the proper casting behavior among groups of types that have implicit casts. Data types are divided into several basic type categories, including boolean, numeric, string, bitstring, datetime, timespan, geometric, network, and user-defined. (For a list see Table 50.65; but note it is also possible to create custom type categories.) Within each category there can be one or more preferred types, which are preferred when there is a choice of possible types. With careful selection of preferred types and available implicit casts, it is possible to ensure that ambiguous expressions (those with multiple candidate parsing solutions) can be resolved in a useful way.

All type conversion rules are designed with several principles in mind:

- Implicit conversions should never have surprising or unpredictable outcomes.
- There should be no extra overhead in the parser or executor if a query does not need implicit type conversion. That is, if a query is well-formed and the types already match, then the query should execute without spending extra time in the parser and without introducing unnecessary implicit conversion calls in the query.
- Additionally, if a query usually requires an implicit conversion for a function, and if then the user defines a new function with the correct argument types, the parser should use this new function and no longer do implicit conversion to use the old function.

### 10.2. Operators

The specific operator that is referenced by an operator expression is determined using the following procedure. Note that this procedure is indirectly affected by the precedence of the operators involved, since that will determine which sub-expressions are taken to be the inputs of which operators. See Section 4.1.6 for more information.

**Operator Type Resolution**

1. Select the operators to be considered from the pg_operator system catalog. If a non-schema-qualified operator name was used (the usual case), the operators considered are those with the matching name and argument count that are visible in the current search path (see Section 5.9.3). If a qualified operator name was given, only operators in the specified schema are considered.

   • (Optional) If the search path finds multiple operators with identical argument types, only the one appearing earliest in the path is considered. Operators with different argument types are considered on an equal footing regardless of search path position.

2. Check for an operator accepting exactly the input argument types. If one exists (there can be only one exact match in the set of operators considered), use it. Lack of an exact match creates a security hazard when calling, via qualified name ¹ (not typical), any operator found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects. In such situations, cast arguments to force an exact match.

   a. (Optional) If one argument of a binary operator invocation is of the unknown type, then assume it is the same type as the other argument for this check. Invocations involving two unknown inputs, or a prefix operator with an unknown input, will never find a match at this step.

   b. (Optional) If one argument of a binary operator invocation is of the unknown type and the other is of a domain type, next check to see if there is an operator accepting exactly the domain's base type on both sides; if so, use it.

¹ The hazard does not arise with a non-schema-qualified name, because a search path containing schemas that permit untrusted users to create objects is not a secure schema usage pattern.
3. Look for the best match.
   a. Discard candidate operators for which the input types do not match and cannot be converted (using an implicit conversion) to match. \textit{unknown} literals are assumed to be convertible to anything for this purpose. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
   b. If any input argument is of a domain type, treat it as being of the domain's base type for all subsequent steps. This ensures that domains act like their base types for purposes of ambiguous-operator resolution.
   c. Run through all candidates and keep those with the most exact matches on input types. Keep all candidates if none have exact matches. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
   d. Run through all candidates and keep those that accept preferred types (of the input data type's type category) at the most positions where type conversion will be required. Keep all candidates if none accept preferred types. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
   e. If any input arguments are \textit{unknown}, check the type categories accepted at those argument positions by the remaining candidates. At each position, select the \textit{string} category if any candidate accepts that category. (This bias towards string is appropriate since an unknown-type literal looks like a string.) Otherwise, if all the remaining candidates accept the same type category, select that category; otherwise fail because the correct choice cannot be deduced without more clues. Now discard candidates that do not accept the selected type category. Furthermore, if any candidate accepts a preferred type in that category, discard candidates that accept non-preferred types for that argument. Keep all candidates if none survive these tests. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
   f. If there are both \textit{unknown} and known-type arguments, and all the known-type arguments have the same type, assume that the \textit{unknown} arguments are also of that type, and check which candidates can accept that type at the \textit{unknown}-argument positions. If exactly one candidate passes this test, use it. Otherwise, fail.

Some examples follow.

\textbf{Example 10.1. Square Root Operator Type Resolution}

There is only one square root operator (prefix \texttt{\textbar/}) defined in the standard catalog, and it takes an argument of type \textit{double precision}. The scanner assigns an initial type of \textit{integer} to the argument in this query expression:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT \texttt{\textbar/} 40 AS "square root of 40";
  square root of 40
-------------------
   6.32455320336759
(1 row)
\end{verbatim}

So the parser does a type conversion on the operand and the query is equivalent to:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT \texttt{\textbar/} CAST(40 AS double precision) AS "square root of 40";
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Example 10.2. String Concatenation Operator Type Resolution}

A string-like syntax is used for working with string types and for working with complex extension types. Strings with unspecified type are matched with likely operator candidates.

An example with one unspecified argument:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT text 'abc' || 'def' AS "text and unknown";
  text and unknown
------------------
   abcdef
\end{verbatim}
In this case the parser looks to see if there is an operator taking text for both arguments. Since there is, it assumes that the second argument should be interpreted as type text.

Here is a concatenation of two values of unspecified types:

```sql
SELECT 'abc' || 'def' AS "unspecified";
```

```
unspecified
-------------
abcdef
```

(1 row)

In this case there is no initial hint for which type to use, since no types are specified in the query. So, the parser looks for all candidate operators and finds that there are candidates accepting both string-category and bit-string-category inputs. Since string category is preferred when available, that category is selected, and then the preferred type for strings, text, is used as the specific type to resolve the unknown-type literals as.

**Example 10.3. Absolute-Value and Negation Operator Type Resolution**

The Postgres Pro operator catalog has several entries for the prefix operator @, all of which implement absolute-value operations for various numeric data types. One of these entries is for type float8, which is the preferred type in the numeric category. Therefore, Postgres Pro will use that entry when faced with an unknown input:

```sql
SELECT @ '-4.5' AS "abs";
```

```
abs
-----
4.5
```

(1 row)

Here the system has implicitly resolved the unknown-type literal as type float8 before applying the chosen operator. We can verify that float8 and not some other type was used:

```sql
SELECT @ '-4.5e500' AS "abs";
```

```
ERROR:  "-4.5e500" is out of range for type double precision
```

On the other hand, the prefix operator ~ (bitwise negation) is defined only for integer data types, not for float8. So, if we try a similar case with ~, we get:

```sql
SELECT ~ '20' AS "negation";
```

```
ERROR:  operator is not unique: ~ "unknown"
HINT:  Could not choose a best candidate operator. You might need to add explicit type casts.
```

This happens because the system cannot decide which of the several possible ~ operators should be preferred. We can help it out with an explicit cast:

```sql
SELECT ~ CAST('20' AS int8) AS "negation";
```

```
negation
--------
-21
```

(1 row)

**Example 10.4. Array Inclusion Operator Type Resolution**

Here is another example of resolving an operator with one known and one unknown input:

```sql
SELECT array[1,2] <@ '{1,2,3}' as "is subset";
```
Type Conversion

The Postgres Pro operator catalog has several entries for the infix operator `<@`, but the only two that could possibly accept an integer array on the left-hand side are array inclusion (`anyarray `<@` anyarray`) and range inclusion (`anyelement `<@` anyrange`). Since none of these polymorphic pseudo-types (see Section 8.21) are considered preferred, the parser cannot resolve the ambiguity on that basis. However, Step 3.f tells it to assume that the unknown-type literal is of the same type as the other input, that is, integer array. Now only one of the two operators can match, so array inclusion is selected. (Had range inclusion been selected, we would have gotten an error, because the string does not have the right format to be a range literal.)

Example 10.5. Custom Operator on a Domain Type

Users sometimes try to declare operators applying just to a domain type. This is possible but is not nearly as useful as it might seem, because the operator resolution rules are designed to select operators applying to the domain’s base type. As an example consider

```
CREATE DOMAIN mytext AS text CHECK(...);
CREATE FUNCTION mytext_eq_text (mytext, text) RETURNS boolean AS ...
CREATE OPERATOR = (procedure=mytext_eq_text, leftarg=mytext, rightarg=text);
CREATE TABLE mytable (val mytext);
SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE val = 'foo';
```

This query will not use the custom operator. The parser will first see if there is a `mytext = mytext` operator (Step 2.a), which there is not; then it will consider the domain’s base type `text`, and see if there is a `text = text` operator (Step 2.b), which there is; so it resolves the unknown-type literal as `text` and uses the `text = text` operator. The only way to get the custom operator to be used is to explicitly cast the literal:

```
SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE val = text 'foo';
```

so that the `mytext = text` operator is found immediately according to the exact-match rule. If the best-match rules are reached, they actively discriminate against operators on domain types. If they did not, such an operator would create too many ambiguous-operator failures, because the casting rules always consider a domain as castable to or from its base type, and so the domain operator would be considered usable in all the same cases as a similarly-named operator on the base type.

10.3. Functions

The specific function that is referenced by a function call is determined using the following procedure.

Function Type Resolution

1. Select the functions to be considered from the `pg_proc` system catalog. If a non-schema-qualified function name was used, the functions considered are those with the matching name and argument count that are visible in the current search path (see Section 5.9.3). If a qualified function name was given, only functions in the specified schema are considered.

   a. (Optional) If the search path finds multiple functions of identical argument types, only the one appearing earliest in the path is considered. Functions of different argument types are considered on an equal footing regardless of search path position.

   b. (Optional) If a function is declared with a `VARIADIC` array parameter, and the call does not use the `VARIADIC` keyword, then the function is treated as if the array parameter were replaced by one or more occurrences of its element type, as needed to match the call. After such expansion the function might have effective argument types identical to some non-variadic function. In that case the function appearing earlier in the search path is used, or if the two functions are in the same schema, the non-variadic one is preferred.
This creates a security hazard when calling, via qualified name, a variadic function found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects. A malicious user can take control and execute arbitrary SQL functions as though you executed them. Substitute a call bearing the `VARIADIC` keyword, which bypasses this hazard. Calls populating `VARIADIC "any"` parameters often have no equivalent formulation containing the `VARIADIC` keyword. To issue those calls safely, the function's schema must permit only trusted users to create objects.

c. (Optional) Functions that have default values for parameters are considered to match any call that omits zero or more of the deflatable parameter positions. If more than one such function matches a call, the one appearing earliest in the search path is used. If there are two or more such functions in the same schema with identical parameter types in the non-defaulted positions (which is possible if they have different sets of deflatable parameters), the system will not be able to determine which to prefer, and so an “ambiguous function call” error will result if no better match to the call can be found.

This creates an availability hazard when calling, via qualified name, any function found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects. A malicious user can create a function with the name of an existing function, replicating that function's parameters and appending novel parameters having default values. This precludes new calls to the original function. To forestall this hazard, place functions in schemas that permit only trusted users to create objects.

2. Check for a function accepting exactly the input argument types. If one exists (there can be only one exact match in the set of functions considered), use it. Lack of an exact match creates a security hazard when calling, via qualified name, a function found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects. In such situations, cast arguments to force an exact match. (Cases involving unknown will never find a match at this step.)

3. If no exact match is found, see if the function call appears to be a special type conversion request. This happens if the function call has just one argument and the function name is the same as the (internal) name of some data type. Furthermore, the function argument must be either an unknown-type literal, or a type that is binary-coercible to the named data type, or a type that could be converted to the named data type by applying that type's I/O functions (that is, the conversion is either to or from one of the standard string types). When these conditions are met, the function call is treated as a form of CAST specification.

4. Look for the best match.
   a. Discard candidate functions for which the input types do not match and cannot be converted (using an implicit conversion) to match. unknown literals are assumed to be convertible to anything for this purpose. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
   b. If any input argument is of a domain type, treat it as being of the domain's base type for all subsequent steps. This ensures that domains act like their base types for purposes of ambiguous-function resolution.
   c. Run through all candidates and keep those with the most exact matches on input types. Keep all candidates if none have exact matches. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
   d. Run through all candidates and keep those that accept preferred types (of the input data type's type category) at the most positions where type conversion will be required. Keep all candidates if none accept preferred types. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
   e. If any input arguments are unknown, check the type categories accepted at those argument positions by the remaining candidates. At each position, select the string category if any candidate accepts that category. (This bias towards string is appropriate since an unknown-type literal looks like a string.) Otherwise, if all the remaining candidates accept the same type

\[\text{2 The hazard does not arise with a non-schema-qualified name, because a search path containing schemas that permit untrusted users to create objects is not a secure schema usage pattern.}\]

\[\text{3 The reason for this step is to support function-style cast specifications in cases where there is not an actual cast function. If there is a cast function, it is conventionally named after its output type, and so there is no need to have a special case. See CREATE CAST for additional commentary.}\]
category, select that category; otherwise fail because the correct choice cannot be deduced without more clues. Now discard candidates that do not accept the selected type category. Furthermore, if any candidate accepts a preferred type in that category, discard candidates that accept non-preferred types for that argument. Keep all candidates if none survive these tests. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.

f. If there are both unknown and known-type arguments, and all the known-type arguments have the same type, assume that the unknown arguments are also of that type, and check which candidates can accept that type at the unknown-argument positions. If exactly one candidate passes this test, use it. Otherwise, fail.

Note that the “best match” rules are identical for operator and function type resolution. Some examples follow.

Example 10.6. Rounding Function Argument Type Resolution

There is only one round function that takes two arguments; it takes a first argument of type numeric and a second argument of type integer. So the following query automatically converts the first argument of type integer to numeric:

```
SELECT round(4, 4);
```

```
round
--------
 4.0000
(1 row)
```

That query is actually transformed by the parser to:

```
SELECT round(CAST (4 AS numeric), 4);
```

Since numeric constants with decimal points are initially assigned the type numeric, the following query will require no type conversion and therefore might be slightly more efficient:

```
SELECT round(4.0, 4);
```

Example 10.7. Variadic Function Resolution

```
CREATE FUNCTION public.variadic_example(VARIADIC numeric[]) RETURNS int
   LANGUAGE sql AS 'SELECT 1';
CREATE FUNCTION

This function accepts, but does not require, the VARIADIC keyword. It tolerates both integer and numeric arguments:

```
SELECT public.variadic_example(0),
    public.variadic_example(0.0),
    public.variadic_example(VARIADIC array[0.0]);
```

```
variadic_example | variadic_example | variadic_example
------------------+------------------+------------------
        1 |                1 |                1
```

(1 row)

However, the first and second calls will prefer more-specific functions, if available:

```
CREATE FUNCTION public.variadic_example(numeric) RETURNS int
   LANGUAGE sql AS 'SELECT 2';
CREATE FUNCTION

CREATE FUNCTION public.variadic_example(int) RETURNS int
   LANGUAGE sql AS 'SELECT 3';
CREATE FUNCTION

SELECT public.variadic_example(0),
        357
public.variadic_example(0.0),
public.variadic_example(VARIADIC array[0.0]);


variadic_example | variadic_example | variadic_example
------------------+------------------+------------------
 3 |                2 |                1

(1 row)

Given the default configuration and only the first function existing, the first and second calls are insecure. Any user could intercept them by creating the second or third function. By matching the argument type exactly and using the VARIADIC keyword, the third call is secure.

**Example 10.8. Substring Function Type Resolution**

There are several `substr` functions, one of which takes types `text` and `integer`. If called with a string constant of unspecified type, the system chooses the candidate function that accepts an argument of the preferred category `string` (namely of type `text`).

```
SELECT substr('1234', 3);
```

```
  substr
--------
     34
(1 row)
```

If the string is declared to be of type `varchar`, as might be the case if it comes from a table, then the parser will try to convert it to become `text`:

```
SELECT substr(varchar '1234', 3);
```

```
  substr
--------
     34
(1 row)
```

This is transformed by the parser to effectively become:

```
SELECT substr(CAST (varchar '1234' AS text), 3);
```

```
Note

The parser learns from the `pg_cast` catalog that `text` and `varchar` are binary-compatible, meaning that one can be passed to a function that accepts the other without doing any physical conversion. Therefore, no type conversion call is really inserted in this case.

And, if the function is called with an argument of type `integer`, the parser will try to convert that to `text`:

```
SELECT substr(1234, 3);
```

**ERROR:**  function substr(integer, integer) does not exist

**HINT:**  No function matches the given name and argument types. You might need to add explicit type casts.

**This does not work because** `integer` **does not have an implicit cast to** `text`. **An explicit cast will work, however:**

```
SELECT substr(CAST (1234 AS text), 3);
```

```
  substr
--------
     34
(1 row)
10.4. Value Storage

Values to be inserted into a table are converted to the destination column’s data type according to the following steps.

Value Storage Type Conversion

1. Check for an exact match with the target.
2. Otherwise, try to convert the expression to the target type. This is possible if an assignment cast between the two types is registered in the pg_cast catalog (see CREATE CAST). Alternatively, if the expression is an unknown-type literal, the contents of the literal string will be fed to the input conversion routine for the target type.
3. Check to see if there is a sizing cast for the target type. A sizing cast is a cast from that type to itself. If one is found in the pg_cast catalog, apply it to the expression before storing into the destination column. The implementation function for such a cast always takes an extra parameter of type integer, which receives the destination column’s atttypmod value (typically its declared length, although the interpretation of atttypmod varies for different data types), and it may take a third boolean parameter that says whether the cast is explicit or implicit. The cast function is responsible for applying any length-dependent semantics such as size checking or truncation.

Example 10.9. character Storage Type Conversion

For a target column declared as character(20) the following statement shows that the stored value is sized correctly:

```
CREATE TABLE vv (v character(20));
INSERT INTO vv SELECT 'abc' || 'def';
SELECT v, octet_length(v) FROM vv;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>v</th>
<th>octet_length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abcdef</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

What has really happened here is that the two unknown literals are resolved to text by default, allowing the || operator to be resolved as text concatenation. Then the text result of the operator is converted to bpchar (“blank-padded char”, the internal name of the character data type) to match the target column type. (Since the conversion from text to bpchar is binary-coercible, this conversion does not insert any real function call.) Finally, the sizing function bpchar(bpchar, integer, boolean) is found in the system catalog and applied to the operator’s result and the stored column length. This type-specific function performs the required length check and addition of padding spaces.

10.5. UNION, CASE, and Related Constructs

SQL UNION constructs must match up possibly dissimilar types to become a single result set. The resolution algorithm is applied separately to each output column of a union query. The INTERSECT and EXCEPT constructs resolve dissimilar types in the same way as UNION. Some other constructs, including CASE, ARRAY, VALUES, and the GREATEST and LEAST functions, use the identical algorithm to match up their component expressions and select a result data type.

Type Resolution for UNION, CASE, and Related Constructs

1. If all inputs are of the same type, and it is not unknown, resolve as that type.
2. If any input is of a domain type, treat it as being of the domain’s base type for all subsequent steps.
3. If all inputs are of type unknown, resolve as type text (the preferred type of the string category). Otherwise, unknown inputs are ignored for the purposes of the remaining rules.

4 Somewhat like the treatment of domain inputs for operators and functions, this behavior allows a domain type to be preserved through a UNION or similar construct, so long as the user is careful to ensure that all inputs are implicitly or explicitly of that exact type. Otherwise the domain’s base type will be used.
4. If the non-unknown inputs are not all of the same type category, fail.

5. Select the first non-unknown input type as the candidate type, then consider each other non-unknown input type, left to right. If the candidate type can be implicitly converted to the other type, but not vice-versa, select the other type as the new candidate type. Then continue considering the remaining inputs. If, at any stage of this process, a preferred type is selected, stop considering additional inputs.

6. Convert all inputs to the final candidate type. Fail if there is not an implicit conversion from a given input type to the candidate type.

Some examples follow.

Example 10.10. Type Resolution with Underspecified Types in a Union

```
SELECT text 'a' AS "text" UNION SELECT 'b';
```

```
text
------
a  b
(2 rows)
```

Here, the unknown-type literal 'b' will be resolved to type text.

Example 10.11. Type Resolution in a Simple Union

```
SELECT 1.2 AS "numeric" UNION SELECT 1;
```

```
numeric
--------
   1
1.2
(2 rows)
```

The literal 1.2 is of type numeric, and the integer value 1 can be cast implicitly to numeric, so that type is used.

Example 10.12. Type Resolution in a Transposed Union

```
SELECT 1 AS "real" UNION SELECT CAST('2.2' AS REAL);
```

```
real
------
   1
   2.2
(2 rows)
```

Here, since type real cannot be implicitly cast to integer, but integer can be implicitly cast to real, the union result type is resolved as real.

Example 10.13. Type Resolution in a Nested Union

```
SELECT NULL UNION SELECT NULL UNION SELECT 1;
```

```
ERROR:  UNION types text and integer cannot be matched
```

This failure occurs because Postgres Pro treats multiple UNIONS as a nest of pairwise operations; that is, this input is the same as

```
(SELECT NULL UNION SELECT NULL) UNION SELECT 1;
```

The inner UNION is resolved as emitting type text, according to the rules given above. Then the outer UNION has inputs of types text and integer, leading to the observed error. The problem can be fixed by ensuring that the leftmost UNION has at least one input of the desired result type.

---

5 For historical reasons, CASE treats its ELSE clause (if any) as the “first” input, with the THEN clauses(s) considered after that. In all other cases, “left to right” means the order in which the expressions appear in the query text.
INTERSECT and EXCEPT operations are likewise resolved pairwise. However, the other constructs described in this section consider all of their inputs in one resolution step.

10.6. SELECT Output Columns

The rules given in the preceding sections will result in assignment of non-unknown data types to all expressions in an SQL query, except for unspecified-type literals that appear as simple output columns of a SELECT command. For example, in

SELECT 'Hello World';

there is nothing to identify what type the string literal should be taken as. In this situation Postgres Pro will fall back to resolving the literal’s type as text.

When the SELECT is one arm of a UNION (or INTERSECT or EXCEPT) construct, or when it appears within INSERT ... SELECT, this rule is not applied since rules given in preceding sections take precedence. The type of an unspecified-type literal can be taken from the other UNION arm in the first case, or from the destination column in the second case.

RETURNING lists are treated the same as SELECT output lists for this purpose.

**Note**

Prior to Postgres Pro 10, this rule did not exist, and unspecified-type literals in a SELECT output list were left as type unknown. That had assorted bad consequences, so it's been changed.
Chapter 11. Indexes

Indexes are a common way to enhance database performance. An index allows the database server to find and retrieve specific rows much faster than it could do without an index. But indexes also add overhead to the database system as a whole, so they should be used sensibly.

11.1. Introduction

Suppose we have a table similar to this:

```
CREATE TABLE test1 (  
id integer,  
  content varchar
);
```

and the application issues many queries of the form:

```
SELECT content FROM test1 WHERE id = constant;
```

With no advance preparation, the system would have to scan the entire `test1` table, row by row, to find all matching entries. If there are many rows in `test1` and only a few rows (perhaps zero or one) that would be returned by such a query, this is clearly an inefficient method. But if the system has been instructed to maintain an index on the `id` column, it can use a more efficient method for locating matching rows. For instance, it might only have to walk a few levels deep into a search tree.

A similar approach is used in most non-fiction books: terms and concepts that are frequently looked up by readers are collected in an alphabetic index at the end of the book. The interested reader can scan the index relatively quickly and flip to the appropriate page(s), rather than having to read the entire book to find the material of interest. Just as it is the task of the author to anticipate the items that readers are likely to look up, it is the task of the database programmer to foresee which indexes will be useful.

The following command can be used to create an index on the `id` column, as discussed:

```
CREATE INDEX test1_id_index ON test1 (id);
```

The name `test1_id_index` can be chosen freely, but you should pick something that enables you to remember later what the index was for:

To remove an index, use the `DROP INDEX` command. Indexes can be added to and removed from tables at any time.

Once an index is created, no further intervention is required: the system will update the index when the table is modified, and it will use the index in queries when it thinks doing so would be more efficient than a sequential table scan. But you might have to run the `ANALYZE` command regularly to update statistics to allow the query planner to make educated decisions. See Chapter 14 for information about how to find out whether an index is used and when and why the planner might choose not to use an index.

Indexes can also benefit `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands with search conditions. Indexes can moreover be used in join searches. Thus, an index defined on a column that is part of a join condition can also significantly speed up queries with joins.

Creating an index on a large table can take a long time. By default, Postgres Pro allows reads (SELECT statements) to occur on the table in parallel with index creation, but writes (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE) are blocked until the index build is finished. In production environments this is often unacceptable. It is possible to allow writes to occur in parallel with index creation, but there are several caveats to be aware of — for more information see Building Indexes Concurrently.

After an index is created, the system has to keep it synchronized with the table. This adds overhead to data manipulation operations. Therefore indexes that are seldom or never used in queries should be removed.
11.2. Index Types

Postgres Pro provides several index types: B-tree, Hash, GiST, SP-GiST, GIN and BRIN. Each index type uses a different algorithm that is best suited to different types of queries. By default, the `CREATE INDEX` command creates B-tree indexes, which fit the most common situations. The other index types are selected by writing the keyword `USING` followed by the index type name. For example, to create a Hash index:

```
CREATE INDEX name ON table USING HASH (column);
```

11.2.1. B-Tree

B-trees can handle equality and range queries on data that can be sorted into some ordering. In particular, the Postgres Pro query planner will consider using a B-tree index whenever an indexed column is involved in a comparison using one of these operators:

```
<  <=  =  >=  >
```

Constructs equivalent to combinations of these operators, such as `BETWEEN` and `IN`, can also be implemented with a B-tree index search. Also, an `IS NULL` or `IS NOT NULL` condition on an index column can be used with a B-tree index.

The optimizer can also use a B-tree index for queries involving the pattern matching operators `LIKE` and `~` if the pattern is a constant and is anchored to the beginning of the string — for example, `col LIKE 'foo%'` or `col ~ '^foo'`, but not `col LIKE '%bar'`. However, if your database does not use the C locale you will need to create the index with a special operator class to support indexing of pattern-matching queries; see Section 11.10 below. It is also possible to use B-tree indexes for `ILIKE` and `~*`, but only if the pattern starts with non-alphabetic characters, i.e., characters that are not affected by upper/lower case conversion.

B-tree indexes can also be used to retrieve data in sorted order. This is not always faster than a simple scan and sort, but it is often helpful.

11.2.2. Hash

Hash indexes store a 32-bit hash code derived from the value of the indexed column. Hence, such indexes can only handle simple equality comparisons. The query planner will consider using a hash index whenever an indexed column is involved in a comparison using the equal operator:

```
=
```

11.2.3. GiST

GiST indexes are not a single kind of index, but rather an infrastructure within which many different indexing strategies can be implemented. Accordingly, the particular operators with which a GiST index can be used vary depending on the indexing strategy (the `operator class`). As an example, the standard distribution of Postgres Pro includes GiST operator classes for several two-dimensional geometric data types, which support indexed queries using these operators:

```
<<  <=  >=  >>  <=|  >=|  |<<|  |<=|  |>=|  |>>|  <=@  >=@  =~  &&
```

(See Section 9.11 for the meaning of these operators.) The GiST operator classes included in the standard distribution are documented in Table 61.1. Many other GiST operator classes are available in the contrib collection or as separate projects. For more information see Chapter 61.

GiST indexes are also capable of optimizing “nearest-neighbor” searches, such as

```
SELECT * FROM places ORDER BY location <-> point '(101,456)' LIMIT 10;
```

which finds the ten places closest to a given target point. The ability to do this is again dependent on the particular operator class being used. In Table 61.1, operators that can be used in this way are listed in the column “Ordering Operators”.
11.2.4. SP-GiST

SP-GiST indexes, like GiST indexes, offer an infrastructure that supports various kinds of searches. SP-GiST permits implementation of a wide range of different non-balanced disk-based data structures, such as quadtrees, k-d trees, and radix trees (tries). As an example, the standard distribution of Postgres Pro includes SP-GiST operator classes for two-dimensional points, which support indexed queries using these operators:

\[<< \quad >> \quad ~= \quad <\theta \quad <\mid |>>\]

(See Section 9.11 for the meaning of these operators.) The SP-GiST operator classes included in the standard distribution are documented in Table 62.1. For more information see Chapter 62.

Like GiST, SP-GiST supports “nearest-neighbor” searches. For SP-GiST operator classes that support distance ordering, the corresponding operator is listed in the “Ordering Operators” column in Table 62.1.

11.2.5. GIN

GIN indexes are “inverted indexes” which are appropriate for data values that contain multiple component values, such as arrays. An inverted index contains a separate entry for each component value, and can efficiently handle queries that test for the presence of specific component values.

Like GiST and SP-GiST, GIN can support many different user-defined indexing strategies, and the particular operators with which a GIN index can be used vary depending on the indexing strategy. As an example, the standard distribution of Postgres Pro includes a GIN operator class for arrays, which supports indexed queries using these operators:

\[@ \quad @> \quad = \quad &&\]

(See Section 9.19 for the meaning of these operators.) The GIN operator classes included in the standard distribution are documented in Table 63.1. Many other GIN operator classes are available in the contrib collection or as separate projects. For more information see Chapter 63.

11.2.6. BRIN

BRIN indexes (a shorthand for Block Range INdexes) store summaries about the values stored in consecutive physical block ranges of a table. Thus, they are most effective for columns whose values are well-correlated with the physical order of the table rows. Like GiST, SP-GiST and GIN, BRIN can support many different indexing strategies, and the particular operators with which a BRIN index can be used vary depending on the indexing strategy. For data types that have a linear sort order, the indexed data corresponds to the minimum and maximum values of the values in the column for each block range. This supports indexed queries using these operators:

\[\quad <= \quad = \quad >= \quad >\]

The BRIN operator classes included in the standard distribution are documented in Table 64.1. For more information see Chapter 64.

11.3. Multicolumn Indexes

An index can be defined on more than one column of a table. For example, if you have a table of this form:

```sql
CREATE TABLE test2 (  
major int,  
minor int,  
name varchar
);
```

(say, you keep your /dev directory in a database...) and you frequently issue queries like:

```sql
SELECT name FROM test2 WHERE major = constant AND minor = constant;
```

then it might be appropriate to define an index on the columns `major` and `minor` together, e.g.:

```sql
CREATE INDEX test2_mm_idx ON test2 (major, minor);
```
Indexes

Currently, only the B-tree, GiST, GIN, and BRIN index types support multiple-key-column indexes. Whether there can be multiple key columns is independent of whether INCLUDE columns can be added to the index. Indexes can have up to 32 columns, including INCLUDE columns. (This limit can be altered when building Postgres Pro.)

A multicolumn B-tree index can be used with query conditions that involve any subset of the index's columns, but the index is most efficient when there are constraints on the leading (leftmost) columns. The exact rule is that equality constraints on leading columns, plus any inequality constraints on the first column that does not have an equality constraint, will be used to limit the portion of the index that is scanned. Constraints on columns to the right of these columns are checked in the index, so they save visits to the table proper, but they do not reduce the portion of the index that has to be scanned. For example, given an index on \((a, b, c)\) and a query condition \(a = 5 \text{ AND } b \geq 42 \text{ AND } c < 77\), the index would have to be scanned from the first entry with \(a = 5\) and \(b = 42\) up through the last entry with \(a = 5\). Index entries with \(c \geq 77\) would be skipped, but they'd still have to be scanned through. This index could in principle be used for queries that have constraints on \(b\) and/or \(c\) with no constraint on \(a\) — but the entire index would have to be scanned, so in most cases the planner would prefer a sequential table scan over using the index.

A multicolumn GiST index can be used with query conditions that involve any subset of the index's columns. Conditions on additional columns restrict the entries returned by the index, but the condition on the first column is the most important one for determining how much of the index needs to be scanned. A GiST index will be relatively ineffective if its first column has only a few distinct values, even if there are many distinct values in additional columns.

A multicolumn GIN index can be used with query conditions that involve any subset of the index's columns. Unlike B-tree or GiST, index search effectiveness is the same regardless of which index column(s) the query conditions use.

A multicolumn BRIN index can be used with query conditions that involve any subset of the index's columns. Like GIN and unlike B-tree or GiST, index search effectiveness is the same regardless of which index column(s) the query conditions use. The only reason to have multiple BRIN indexes instead of one multicolumn BRIN index on a single table is to have a different \(\text{pages_per_range}\) storage parameter.

Of course, each column must be used with operators appropriate to the index type; clauses that involve other operators will not be considered.

Multicolumn indexes should be used sparingly. In most situations, an index on a single column is sufficient and saves space and time. Indexes with more than three columns are unlikely to be helpful unless the usage of the table is extremely stylized. See also Section 11.5 and Section 11.9 for some discussion of the merits of different index configurations.

11.4. Indexes and ORDER BY

In addition to simply finding the rows to be returned by a query, an index may be able to deliver them in a specific sorted order. This allows a query's \(\text{ORDER BY}\) specification to be honored without a separate sorting step. Of the index types currently supported by Postgres Pro, only B-tree can produce sorted output — the other index types return matching rows in an unspecified, implementation-dependent order.

The planner will consider satisfying an \(\text{ORDER BY}\) specification either by scanning an available index that matches the specification, or by scanning the table in physical order and doing an explicit sort. For a query that requires scanning a large fraction of the table, an explicit sort is likely to be faster than using an index because it requires less disk I/O due to following a sequential access pattern. Indexes are more useful when only a few rows need be fetched. An important special case is \(\text{ORDER BY}\) in combination with \(\text{LIMIT } n:\) an explicit sort will have to process all the data to identify the first \(n\) rows, but if there is an index matching the \(\text{ORDER BY}\), the first \(n\) rows can be retrieved directly, without scanning the remainder at all.

By default, B-tree indexes store their entries in ascending order with nulls last (table TID is treated as a tiebreaker column among otherwise equal entries). This means that a forward scan of an index on column \(x\) produces output satisfying \(\text{ORDER BY } x\) (or more verbosely, \(\text{ORDER BY } x \text{ ASC NULLS LAST}\)). The
You can adjust the ordering of a B-tree index by including the options ASC, DESC, NULLS FIRST, and/or NULLS LAST when creating the index; for example:

```sql
CREATE INDEX test2_info_nulls_low ON test2 (info NULLS FIRST);
CREATE INDEX test3_desc_index ON test3 (id DESC NULLS LAST);
```

An index stored in ascending order with nulls first can satisfy either ORDER BY x ASC NULLS FIRST or ORDER BY x DESC NULLS LAST depending on which direction it is scanned in.

You might wonder why bother providing all four options, when two options together with the possibility of backward scan would cover all the variants of ORDER BY. In single-column indexes the options are indeed redundant, but in multicolunn indexes they can be useful. Consider a two-column index on (x, y): this can satisfy ORDER BY x, y if we scan forward, or ORDER BY x DESC, y DESC if we scan backward. But it might be that the application frequently needs to use ORDER BY x ASC, y DESC. There is no way to get that ordering from a plain index, but it is possible if the index is defined as (x ASC, y DESC) or (x DESC, y ASC).

Obviously, indexes with non-default sort orderings are a fairly specialized feature, but sometimes they can produce tremendous speedups for certain queries. Whether it's worth maintaining such an index depends on how often you use queries that require a special sort ordering.

### 11.5. Combining Multiple Indexes

A single index scan can only use query clauses that use the index's columns with operators of its operator class and are joined with AND. For example, given an index on (a, b) a query condition like WHERE a = 5 AND b = 6 could use the index, but a query like WHERE a = 5 OR b = 6 could not directly use the index.

Fortunately, Postgres Pro has the ability to combine multiple indexes (including multiple uses of the same index) to handle cases that cannot be implemented by single index scans. The system can form AND and OR conditions across several index scans. For example, a query like WHERE x = 42 OR x = 47 OR x = 53 OR x = 99 could be broken down into four separate scans of an index on x, each scan using one of the query clauses. The results of these scans are then ORed together to produce the result. Another example is that if we have separate indexes on x and y, one possible implementation of a query like WHERE x = 5 AND y = 6 is to use each index with the appropriate query clause and then AND together the index results to identify the result rows.

To combine multiple indexes, the system scans each needed index and prepares a bitmap in memory giving the locations of table rows that are reported as matching that index's conditions. The bitmaps are then ANDed and ORed together as needed by the query. Finally, the actual table rows are visited and returned. The table rows are visited in physical order, because that is how the bitmap is laid out; this means that any ordering of the original indexes is lost, and so a separate sort step will be needed if the query has an ORDER BY clause. For this reason, and because each additional index scan adds extra time, the planner will sometimes choose to use a simple index scan even though additional indexes are available that could have been used as well.

In all but the simplest applications, there are various combinations of indexes that might be useful, and the database developer must make trade-offs to decide which indexes to provide. Sometimes multicolunn indexes are best, but sometimes it's better to create separate indexes and rely on the index-combination feature. For example, if your workload includes a mix of queries that sometimes involve only column x, sometimes only column y, and sometimes both columns, you might choose to create two separate indexes on x and y, relying on index combination to process the queries that use both columns. You could also create a multicolunn index on (x, y). This index would typically be more efficient than index combination for queries involving both columns, but as discussed in Section 11.3, it would be almost useless for queries involving only y, so it should not be the only index. A combination of the multicolunn index and a separate index on y would serve reasonably well. For queries involving only x, the multicolunn index could be used, though it would be larger and hence slower than an index on x alone. The last alternative is to create all three indexes, but this is probably only reasonable if the
Indexes

table is searched much more often than it is updated and all three types of query are common. If one of the types of query is much less common than the others, you'd probably settle for creating just the two indexes that best match the common types.

11.6. Unique Indexes

Indexes can also be used to enforce uniqueness of a column's value, or the uniqueness of the combined values of more than one column.

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX name ON table (column [, ...]);
```

Currently, only B-tree indexes can be declared unique.

When an index is declared unique, multiple table rows with equal indexed values are not allowed. Null values are not considered equal. A multicolumn unique index will only reject cases where all indexed columns are equal in multiple rows.

Postgres Pro automatically creates a unique index when a unique constraint or primary key is defined for a table. The index covers the columns that make up the primary key or unique constraint (a multicolumn index, if appropriate), and is the mechanism that enforces the constraint.

**Note**

There's no need to manually create indexes on unique columns; doing so would just duplicate the automatically-created index.

11.7. Indexes on Expressions

An index column need not be just a column of the underlying table, but can be a function or scalar expression computed from one or more columns of the table. This feature is useful to obtain fast access to tables based on the results of computations.

For example, a common way to do case-insensitive comparisons is to use the `lower` function:

```
SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE lower(col1) = 'value';
```

This query can use an index if one has been defined on the result of the `lower(col1)` function:

```
CREATE INDEX test1_lower_col1_idx ON test1 (lower(col1));
```

If we were to declare this index `UNIQUE`, it would prevent creation of rows whose `col1` values differ only in case, as well as rows whose `col1` values are actually identical. Thus, indexes on expressions can be used to enforce constraints that are not definable as simple unique constraints.

As another example, if one often does queries like:

```
SELECT * FROM people WHERE (first_name || ' ' || last_name) = 'John Smith';
```

then it might be worth creating an index like this:

```
CREATE INDEX people_names ON people ((first_name || ' ' || last_name));
```

The syntax of the `CREATE INDEX` command normally requires writing parentheses around index expressions, as shown in the second example. The parentheses can be omitted when the expression is just a function call, as in the first example.

Index expressions are relatively expensive to maintain, because the derived expression(s) must be computed for each row upon insertion and whenever it is updated. However, the index expressions are not recomputed during an indexed search, since they are already stored in the index. In both examples above, the system sees the query as just `WHERE indexedcolumn = 'constant'` and so the speed of the search is equivalent to any other simple index query. Thus, indexes on expressions are useful when retrieval speed is more important than insertion and update speed.
Indexes

11.8. Partial Indexes

A partial index is an index built over a subset of a table; the subset is defined by a conditional expression (called the predicate of the partial index). The index contains entries only for those table rows that satisfy the predicate. Partial indexes are a specialized feature, but there are several situations in which they are useful.

One major reason for using a partial index is to avoid indexing common values. Since a query searching for a common value (one that accounts for more than a few percent of all the table rows) will not use the index anyway, there is no point in keeping those rows in the index at all. This reduces the size of the index, which will speed up those queries that do use the index. It will also speed up many table update operations because the index does not need to be updated in all cases. Example 11.1 shows a possible application of this idea.

Example 11.1. Setting up a Partial Index to Exclude Common Values

Suppose you are storing web server access logs in a database. Most accesses originate from the IP address range of your organization but some are from elsewhere (say, employees on dial-up connections). If your searches by IP are primarily for outside accesses, you probably do not need to index the IP range that corresponds to your organization's subnet.

Assume a table like this:

```
CREATE TABLE access_log (
    url varchar,
    client_ip inet,
    ...
);
```

To create a partial index that suits our example, use a command such as this:

```
CREATE INDEX access_log_client_ip_ix ON access_log (client_ip)
WHERE NOT (client_ip > inet '192.168.100.0' AND client_ip < inet '192.168.100.255');
```

A typical query that can use this index would be:

```
SELECT *
FROM access_log
WHERE url = '/index.html' AND client_ip = inet '212.78.10.32';
```

Here the query's IP address is covered by the partial index. The following query cannot use the partial index, as it uses an IP address that is excluded from the index:

```
SELECT *
FROM access_log
WHERE url = '/index.html' AND client_ip = inet '192.168.100.23';
```

Observe that this kind of partial index requires that the common values be predetermined, so such partial indexes are best used for data distributions that do not change. Such indexes can be recreated occasionally to adjust for new data distributions, but this adds maintenance effort.

Another possible use for a partial index is to exclude values from the index that the typical query workload is not interested in; this is shown in Example 11.2. This results in the same advantages as listed above, but it prevents the “uninteresting” values from being accessed via that index, even if an index scan might be profitable in that case. Obviously, setting up partial indexes for this kind of scenario will require a lot of care and experimentation.

Example 11.2. Setting up a Partial Index to Exclude Uninteresting Values

If you have a table that contains both billed and unbilled orders, where the unbilled orders take up a small fraction of the total table and yet those are the most-accessed rows, you can improve performance by creating an index on just the unbilled rows. The command to create the index would look like this:
Indexes

CREATE INDEX orders_unbilled_index ON orders (order_nr)
    WHERE billed is not true;

A possible query to use this index would be:

SELECT * FROM orders WHERE billed is not true AND order_nr < 10000;

However, the index can also be used in queries that do not involve order_nr at all, e.g.:

SELECT * FROM orders WHERE billed is not true AND amount > 5000.00;

This is not as efficient as a partial index on the amount column would be, since the system has to scan the entire index. Yet, if there are relatively few unbilled orders, using this partial index just to find the unbilled orders could be a win.

Note that this query cannot use this index:

SELECT * FROM orders WHERE order_nr = 3501;

The order 3501 might be among the billed or unbilled orders.

Example 11.2 also illustrates that the indexed column and the column used in the predicate do not need to match. Postgres Pro supports partial indexes with arbitrary predicates, so long as only columns of the table being indexed are involved. However, keep in mind that the predicate must match the conditions used in the queries that are supposed to benefit from the index. To be precise, a partial index can be used in a query only if the system can recognize that the WHERE condition of the query mathematically implies the predicate of the index. Postgres Pro does not have a sophisticated theorem prover that can recognize mathematically equivalent expressions that are written in different forms. (Not only is such a general theorem prover extremely difficult to create, it would probably be too slow to be of any real use.) The system can recognize simple inequality implications, for example “x < 1” implies “x < 2”; otherwise the predicate condition must exactly match part of the query's WHERE condition or the index will not be recognized as usable. Matching takes place at query planning time, not at run time. As a result, parameterized query clauses do not work with a partial index. For example a prepared query with a parameter might specify “x < ?” which will never imply “x < 2” for all possible values of the parameter.

A third possible use for partial indexes does not require the index to be used in queries at all. The idea here is to create a unique index over a subset of a table, as in Example 11.3. This enforces uniqueness among the rows that satisfy the index predicate, without constraining those that do not.

Example 11.3. Setting up a Partial Unique Index

Suppose that we have a table describing test outcomes. We wish to ensure that there is only one “successful” entry for a given subject and target combination, but there might be any number of “unsuccessful” entries. Here is one way to do it:

CREATE TABLE tests (  
    subject text,  
    target text,  
    success boolean,  
    ...
);

CREATE UNIQUE INDEX tests_success_constraint ON tests (subject, target)  
    WHERE success;

This is a particularly efficient approach when there are few successful tests and many unsuccessful ones. It is also possible to allow only one null in a column by creating a unique partial index with an IS NULL restriction.

Finally, a partial index can also be used to override the system's query plan choices. Also, data sets with peculiar distributions might cause the system to use an index when it really should not. In that case the index can be set up so that it is not available for the offending query. Normally, Postgres Pro makes reasonable choices about index usage (e.g., it avoids them when retrieving common values, so the earlier
Indexes

example really only saves index size, it is not required to avoid index usage), and grossly incorrect plan
choices are cause for a bug report.

Keep in mind that setting up a partial index indicates that you know at least as much as the query
planner knows, in particular you know when an index might be profitable. Forming this knowledge
requires experience and understanding of how indexes in Postgres Pro work. In most cases, the
advantage of a partial index over a regular index will be minimal. There are cases where they are quite
counterproductive, as in Example 11.4.

Example 11.4. Do Not Use Partial Indexes as a Substitute for Partitioning

You might be tempted to create a large set of non-overlapping partial indexes, for example

```sql
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_1 ON mytable (data) WHERE category = 1;
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_2 ON mytable (data) WHERE category = 2;
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_3 ON mytable (data) WHERE category = 3;
...,
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_N ON mytable (data) WHERE category = N;
```

This is a bad idea! Almost certainly, you'll be better off with a single non-partial index, declared like

```sql
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_data ON mytable (category, data);
```

(Put the category column first, for the reasons described in Section 11.3.) While a search in this larger
index might have to descend through a couple more tree levels than a search in a smaller index, that's
almost certainly going to be cheaper than the planner effort needed to select the appropriate one of the
partial indexes. The core of the problem is that the system does not understand the relationship among
the partial indexes, and will laboriously test each one to see if it’s applicable to the current query.

If your table is large enough that a single index really is a bad idea, you should look into using partitioning
instead (see Section 5.11). With that mechanism, the system does understand that the tables and indexes
are non-overlapping, so far better performance is possible.

More information about partial indexes can be found in ston89b,olson93, and seshadri95.

11.9. Index-Only Scans and Covering Indexes

All indexes in Postgres Pro are secondary indexes, meaning that each index is stored separately from
the table's main data area (which is called the table's heap in Postgres Pro terminology). This means
that in an ordinary index scan, each row retrieval requires fetching data from both the index and the
heap. Furthermore, while the index entries that match a given indexable WHERE condition are usually
close together in the index, the table rows they reference might be anywhere in the heap. The heap-
access portion of an index scan thus involves a lot of random access into the heap, which can be slow,
particularly on traditional rotating media. (As described in Section 11.5, bitmap scans try to alleviate
this cost by doing the heap accesses in sorted order, but that only goes so far.)

To solve this performance problem, Postgres Pro supports index-only scans, which can answer queries
from an index alone without any heap access. The basic idea is to return values directly out of each
index entry instead of consulting the associated heap entry. There are two fundamental restrictions on
when this method can be used:

1. The index type must support index-only scans. B-tree indexes always do. GiST and SP-GiST indexes
   support index-only scans for some operator classes but not others. Other index types have no support.
   The underlying requirement is that the index must physically store, or else be able to reconstruct,
   the original data value for each index entry. As a counterexample, GIN indexes cannot support index-
   only scans because each index entry typically holds only part of the original data value.

2. The query must reference only columns stored in the index. For example, given an index on columns
   x and y of a table that also has a column z, these queries could use index-only scans:

   ```sql
   SELECT x, y FROM tab WHERE x = 'key';
   SELECT x FROM tab WHERE x = 'key' AND y < 42;
   ```

   but these queries could not:
Indexes

SELECT x, z FROM tab WHERE x = 'key';
SELECT x FROM tab WHERE x = 'key' AND z < 42;

(Expression indexes and partial indexes complicate this rule, as discussed below.)

If these two fundamental requirements are met, then all the data values required by the query are available from the index, so an index-only scan is physically possible. But there is an additional requirement for any table scan in Postgres Pro: it must verify that each retrieved row be “visible” to the query’s MVCC snapshot, as discussed in Chapter 13. Visibility information is not stored in index entries, only in heap entries; so at first glance it would seem that every row retrieval would require a heap access anyway. And this is indeed the case, if the table row has been modified recently. However, for seldom-changing data there is a way around this problem. Postgres Pro tracks, for each page in a table’s heap, whether all rows stored in that page are old enough to be visible to all current and future transactions. This information is stored in a bit in the table’s visibility map. An index-only scan, after finding a candidate index entry, checks the visibility map bit for the corresponding heap page. If it’s set, the row is known visible and so the data can be returned with no further work. If it’s not set, the heap entry must be visited to find out whether it’s visible, so no performance advantage is gained over a standard index scan. Even in the successful case, this approach trades visibility map accesses for heap accesses; but since the visibility map is four orders of magnitude smaller than the heap it describes, far less physical I/O is needed to access it. In most situations the visibility map remains cached in memory all the time.

In short, while an index-only scan is possible given the two fundamental requirements, it will be a win only if a significant fraction of the table’s heap pages have their all-visible map bits set. But tables in which a large fraction of the rows are unchanging are common enough to make this type of scan very useful in practice.

To make effective use of the index-only scan feature, you might choose to create a covering index, which is an index specifically designed to include the columns needed by a particular type of query that you run frequently. Since queries typically need to retrieve more columns than just the ones they search on, Postgres Pro allows you to create an index in which some columns are just “payload” and are not part of the search key. This is done by adding an INCLUDE clause listing the extra columns. For example, if you commonly run queries like

```
SELECT y FROM tab WHERE x = 'key';
```

the traditional approach to speeding up such queries would be to create an index on x only. However, an index defined as

```
CREATE INDEX tab_x_y ON tab(x) INCLUDE (y);
```

could handle these queries as index-only scans, because y can be obtained from the index without visiting the heap.

Because column y is not part of the index’s search key, it does not have to be of a data type that the index can handle; it’s merely stored in the index and is not interpreted by the index machinery. Also, if the index is a unique index, that is

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX tab_x_y ON tab(x) INCLUDE (y);
```

the uniqueness condition applies to just column x, not to the combination of x and y. (An INCLUDE clause can also be written in UNIQUE and PRIMARY KEY constraints, providing alternative syntax for setting up an index like this.)

It’s wise to be conservative about adding non-key payload columns to an index, especially wide columns. If an index tuple exceeds the maximum size allowed for the index type, data insertion will fail. In any case, non-key columns duplicate data from the index’s table and bloat the size of the index, thus potentially slowing searches. And remember that there is little point in including payload columns in an index unless the table changes slowly enough that an index-only scan is likely to not need to access the heap. If the heap tuple must be visited anyway, it costs nothing more to get the column’s value from there. Other restrictions are that expressions are not currently supported as included columns, and that only B-tree, GiST and SP-GiST indexes currently support included columns.
Indexes

Before Postgres Pro had the INCLUDE feature, people sometimes made covering indexes by writing the payload columns as ordinary index columns, that is writing

```sql
CREATE INDEX tab_x_y ON tab(x, y);
```
even though they had no intention of ever using y as part of a WHERE clause. This works fine as long as the extra columns are trailing columns; making them be leading columns is unwise for the reasons explained in Section 11.3. However, this method doesn't support the case where you want the index to enforce uniqueness on the key column(s).

Suffix truncation always removes non-key columns from upper B-Tree levels. As payload columns, they are never used to guide index scans. The truncation process also removes one or more trailing key column(s) when the remaining prefix of key column(s) happens to be sufficient to describe tuples on the lowest B-Tree level. In practice, covering indexes without an INCLUDE clause often avoid storing columns that are effectively payload in the upper levels. However, explicitly defining payload columns as non-key columns reliably keeps the tuples in upper levels small.

In principle, index-only scans can be used with expression indexes. For example, given an index on f(x) where x is a table column, it should be possible to execute

```sql
SELECT f(x) FROM tab WHERE f(x) < 1;
```
as an index-only scan; and this is very attractive if f() is an expensive-to-compute function. However, Postgres Pro's planner is currently not very smart about such cases. It considers a query to be potentially executable by index-only scan only when all columns needed by the query are available from the index. In this example, x is not needed except in the context f(x), but the planner does not notice that and concludes that an index-only scan is not possible. If an index-only scan seems sufficiently worthwhile, this can be worked around by adding x as an included column, for example

```sql
CREATE INDEX tab_f_x ON tab (f(x)) INCLUDE (x);
```

An additional caveat, if the goal is to avoid recalculating f(x), is that the planner won't necessarily match uses of f(x) that aren't in indexable WHERE clauses to the index column. It will usually get this right in simple queries such as shown above, but not in queries that involve joins. These deficiencies may be remedied in future versions of Postgres Pro.

Partial indexes also have interesting interactions with index-only scans. Consider the partial index shown in Example 11.3:

```sql
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX tests_success_constraint ON tests (subject, target)
    WHERE success;
```

In principle, we could do an index-only scan on this index to satisfy a query like

```sql
SELECT target FROM tests WHERE subject = 'some-subject' AND success;
```

But there's a problem: the WHERE clause refers to success which is not available as a result column of the index. Nonetheless, an index-only scan is possible because the plan does not need to recheck that part of the WHERE clause at run time: all entries found in the index necessarily have success = true so this need not be explicitly checked in the plan. Postgres Pro versions 9.6 and later will recognize such cases and allow index-only scans to be generated, but older versions will not.

11.10. Operator Classes and Operator Families

An index definition can specify an operator class for each column of an index.

```sql
CREATE INDEX name ON table (column opclass [ ( opclass_options ) ] [ sort options ] [, ...]);
```

The operator class identifies the operators to be used by the index for that column. For example, a B-tree index on the type int4 would use the int4_ops class; this operator class includes comparison functions for values of type int4. In practice the default operator class for the column's data type is usually sufficient. The main reason for having operator classes is that for some data types, there could
Indexes

be more than one meaningful index behavior. For example, we might want to sort a complex-number data type either by absolute value or by real part. We could do this by defining two operator classes for the data type and then selecting the proper class when making an index. The operator class determines the basic sort ordering (which can then be modified by adding sort options \texttt{COLLABTE, ASC/DESC} and/or \texttt{NULLS FIRST/NULLS LAST}).

There are also some built-in operator classes besides the default ones:

- The operator classes \texttt{text_pattern_ops}, \texttt{varchar_pattern_ops}, and \texttt{bpchar_pattern_ops} support B-tree indexes on the types \texttt{text}, \texttt{varchar}, and \texttt{char} respectively. The difference from the default operator classes is that the values are compared strictly character by character rather than according to the locale-specific collation rules. This makes these operator classes suitable for use by queries involving pattern matching expressions (\texttt{LIKE} or POSIX regular expressions) when the database does not use the standard “C” locale. As an example, you might index a \texttt{varchar} column like this:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE INDEX test_index ON test_table (col varchar_pattern_ops);
\end{verbatim}

Note that you should also create an index with the default operator class if you want queries involving ordinary \texttt{<, <=, >, or >=} comparisons to use an index. Such queries cannot use the \texttt{xxx_pattern_ops} operator classes. (Ordinary equality comparisons can use these operator classes, however.) It is possible to create multiple indexes on the same column with different operator classes. If you do use the C locale, you do not need the \texttt{xxx_pattern_ops} operator classes, because an index with the default operator class is usable for pattern-matching queries in the C locale.

The following query shows all defined operator classes:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT am.amname AS index_method,
    opc.opcname AS opclass_name,
    opc.opctype::regtype AS indexed_type,
    opc.opcdefault AS is_default
FROM pg_am am, pg_opclass opc
WHERE opc.opcmethod = am.oid
ORDER BY index_method, opclass_name;
\end{verbatim}

An operator class is actually just a subset of a larger structure called an \textit{operator family}. In cases where several data types have similar behaviors, it is frequently useful to define cross-data-type operators and allow these to work with indexes. To do this, the operator classes for each of the types must be grouped into the same operator family. The cross-type operators are members of the family, but are not associated with any single class within the family.

This expanded version of the previous query shows the operator family each operator class belongs to:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT am.amname AS index_method,
    opc.opcname AS opclass_name,
    opf.opfname AS opfamily_name,
    opc.opctype::regtype AS indexed_type,
    opc.opcdefault AS is_default
FROM pg_am am, pg_opfamily opf, pg_opclass opc
WHERE opc.opcmethod = am.oid AND
    opc.opcfamily = opf.oid
ORDER BY index_method, opfamily_name, opfamily_operator;
\end{verbatim}

This query shows all defined operator families and all the operators included in each family:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT am.amname AS index_method,
    opf.opfname AS opfamily_name,
    amop.amopopr::regoperator AS opfamily_operator
FROM pg_am am, pg_opfamily opf, pg_amop amop
WHERE opf.opfmethod = am.oid AND
    amop.amopfamily = opf.oid
ORDER BY index_method, opfamily_name, opfamily_operator;
\end{verbatim}
11.11. Indexes and Collations

An index can support only one collation per index column. If multiple collations are of interest, multiple indexes may be needed.

Consider these statements:

```sql
CREATE TABLE test1c (
    id integer,
    content varchar COLLATE "x"
);

CREATE INDEX test1c_content_index ON test1c (content);
```

The index automatically uses the collation of the underlying column. So a query of the form

```sql
SELECT * FROM test1c WHERE content > constant;
```

could use the index, because the comparison will by default use the collation of the column. However, this index cannot accelerate queries that involve some other collation. So if queries of the form, say,

```sql
SELECT * FROM test1c WHERE content > constant COLLATE "y";
```

are also of interest, an additional index could be created that supports the "y" collation, like this:

```sql
CREATE INDEX test1c_content_y_index ON test1c (content COLLATE "y");
```

11.12. Examining Index Usage

Although indexes in Postgres Pro do not need maintenance or tuning, it is still important to check which indexes are actually used by the real-life query workload. Examining index usage for an individual query is done with the `EXPLAIN` command; its application for this purpose is illustrated in Section 14.1. It is also possible to gather overall statistics about index usage in a running server, as described in Section 26.2.

It is difficult to formulate a general procedure for determining which indexes to create. There are a number of typical cases that have been shown in the examples throughout the previous sections. A good deal of experimentation is often necessary. The rest of this section gives some tips for that:

- Always run `ANALYZE` first. This command collects statistics about the distribution of the values in the table. This information is required to estimate the number of rows returned by a query, which is needed by the planner to assign realistic costs to each possible query plan. In absence of any real statistics, some default values are assumed, which are almost certain to be inaccurate. Examining an application's index usage without having run `ANALYZE` is therefore a lost cause. See Section 23.1.3 and Section 23.1.6 for more information.

- Use real data for experimentation. Using test data for setting up indexes will tell you what indexes you need for the test data, but that is all.

It is especially fatal to use very small test data sets. While selecting 1000 out of 100000 rows could be a candidate for an index, selecting 1 out of 100 rows will hardly be, because the 100 rows probably fit within a single disk page, and there is no plan that can beat sequentially fetching 1 disk page.

Also be careful when making up test data, which is often unavoidable when the application is not yet in production. Values that are very similar, completely random, or inserted in sorted order will skew the statistics away from the distribution that real data would have.
Indexes

- When indexes are not used, it can be useful for testing to force their use. There are run-time parameters that can turn off various plan types (see Section 18.7.1). For instance, turning off sequential scans (enable_seqscan) and nested-loop joins (enable_nestloop), which are the most basic plans, will force the system to use a different plan. If the system still chooses a sequential scan or nested-loop join then there is probably a more fundamental reason why the index is not being used; for example, the query condition does not match the index. (What kind of query can use what kind of index is explained in the previous sections.)

- If forcing index usage does use the index, then there are two possibilities: Either the system is right and using the index is indeed not appropriate, or the cost estimates of the query plans are not reflecting reality. So you should time your query with and without indexes. The `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` command can be useful here.

- If it turns out that the cost estimates are wrong, there are, again, two possibilities. The total cost is computed from the per-row costs of each plan node times the selectivity estimate of the plan node. The costs estimated for the plan nodes can be adjusted via run-time parameters (described in Section 18.7.2). An inaccurate selectivity estimate is due to insufficient statistics. It might be possible to improve this by tuning the statistics-gathering parameters (see `ALTER TABLE`).

If you do not succeed in adjusting the costs to be more appropriate, then you might have to resort to forcing index usage explicitly. You might also want to contact the Postgres Pro developers to examine the issue.
Chapter 12. Full Text Search

12.1. Introduction

Full Text Searching (or just text search) provides the capability to identify natural-language documents that satisfy a query, and optionally to sort them by relevance to the query. The most common type of search is to find all documents containing given query terms and return them in order of their similarity to the query. Notions of query and similarity are very flexible and depend on the specific application. The simplest search considers query as a set of words and similarity as the frequency of query words in the document.

Textual search operators have existed in databases for years. Postgres Pro has ~, ~*, LIKE, and ILIKE operators for textual data types, but they lack many essential properties required by modern information systems:

• There is no linguistic support, even for English. Regular expressions are not sufficient because they cannot easily handle derived words, e.g., satisfies and satisfy. You might miss documents that contain satisfies, although you probably would like to find them when searching for satisfy. It is possible to use OR to search for multiple derived forms, but this is tedious and error-prone (some words can have several thousand derivatives).
• They provide no ordering (ranking) of search results, which makes them ineffective when thousands of matching documents are found.
• They tend to be slow because there is no index support, so they must process all documents for every search.

Full text indexing allows documents to be preprocessed and an index saved for later rapid searching. Preprocessing includes:

Parsing documents into tokens. It is useful to identify various classes of tokens, e.g., numbers, words, complex words, email addresses, so that they can be processed differently. In principle token classes depend on the specific application, but for most purposes it is adequate to use a predefined set of classes. Postgres Pro uses a parser to perform this step. A standard parser is provided, and custom parsers can be created for specific needs.

Converting tokens into lexemes. A lexeme is a string, just like a token, but it has been normalized so that different forms of the same word are made alike. For example, normalization almost always includes folding upper-case letters to lower-case, and often involves removal of suffixes (such as s or es in English). This allows searches to find variant forms of the same word, without tediously entering all the possible variants. Also, this step typically eliminates stop words, which are words that are so common that they are useless for searching. (In short, then, tokens are raw fragments of the document text, while lexemes are words that are believed useful for indexing and searching.) Postgres Pro uses dictionaries to perform this step. Various standard dictionaries are provided, and custom ones can be created for specific needs.

Storing preprocessed documents optimized for searching. For example, each document can be represented as a sorted array of normalized lexemes. Along with the lexemes it is often desirable to store positional information to use for proximity ranking, so that a document that contains a more “dense” region of query words is assigned a higher rank than one with scattered query words.

Dictionaries allow fine-grained control over how tokens are normalized. With appropriate dictionaries, you can:

• Define stop words that should not be indexed.
• Map synonyms to a single word using Ispell.
• Map phrases to a single word using a thesaurus.
• Map different variations of a word to a canonical form using an Ispell dictionary.
• Map different variations of a word to a canonical form using Snowball stemmer rules.

A data type tsvector is provided for storing preprocessed documents, along with a type tsquery for representing processed queries (Section 8.11). There are many functions and operators available
for these data types (Section 9.13), the most important of which is the match operator @@, which we introduce in Section 12.1.2. Full text searches can be accelerated using indexes (Section 12.9).

12.1.1. What Is a Document?

A document is the unit of searching in a full text search system; for example, a magazine article or email message. The text search engine must be able to parse documents and store associations of lexemes (key words) with their parent document. Later, these associations are used to search for documents that contain query words.

For searches within Postgres Pro, a document is normally a textual field within a row of a database table, or possibly a combination (concatenation) of such fields, perhaps stored in several tables or obtained dynamically. In other words, a document can be constructed from different parts for indexing and it might not be stored anywhere as a whole. For example:

```sql
SELECT title || ' ' || author || ' ' || abstract || ' ' || body AS document
FROM messages
WHERE mid = 12;

SELECT m.title || ' ' || m.author || ' ' || m.abstract || ' ' || d.body AS document
FROM messages m, docs d
WHERE m.mid = d.did AND m.mid = 12;
```

Note

Actually, in these example queries, coalesce should be used to prevent a single NULL attribute from causing a NULL result for the whole document.

Another possibility is to store the documents as simple text files in the file system. In this case, the database can be used to store the full text index and to execute searches, and some unique identifier can be used to retrieve the document from the file system. However, retrieving files from outside the database requires superuser permissions or special function support, so this is usually less convenient than keeping all the data inside Postgres Pro. Also, keeping everything inside the database allows easy access to document metadata to assist in indexing and display.

For text search purposes, each document must be reduced to the preprocessed `tsvector` format. Searching and ranking are performed entirely on the `tsvector` representation of a document — the original text need only be retrieved when the document has been selected for display to a user. We therefore often speak of the `tsvector` as being the document, but of course it is only a compact representation of the full document.

12.1.2. Basic Text Matching

Full text searching in Postgres Pro is based on the match operator @@, which returns true if a `tsvector` (document) matches a `tsquery` (query). It doesn't matter which data type is written first:

```sql
SELECT 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat':tsvector @@ 'cat & rat':tsquery;
?column?
----------
t

SELECT 'fat & cow':tsquery @@ 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat':tsvector;
?column?
----------
f
```

As the above example suggests, a `tsquery` is not just raw text, any more than a `tsvector` is. A `tsquery` contains search terms, which must be already-normalized lexemes, and may combine multiple terms using AND, OR, NOT, and FOLLOWED BY operators. (For syntax details see Section 8.11.2.) There are functions `to_tsquery`, `plainto_tsquery`, and `phraseto_tsquery` that are helpful in converting user-
written text into a proper tsquery, primarily by normalizing words appearing in the text. Similarly, to_tsvector is used to parse and normalize a document string. So in practice a text search match would look more like this:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('fat cats ate fat rats') @@ to_tsquery('fat & rat');
```

Observe that this match would not succeed if written as

```
SELECT 'fat cats ate fat rats'::tsvector @@ to_tsquery('fat & rat');
```

since here no normalization of the word rats will occur. The elements of a tsvector are lexemes, which are assumed already normalized, so rats does not match rat.

The @@ operator also supports text input, allowing explicit conversion of a text string to tsvector or tsquery to be skipped in simple cases. The variants available are:

```
tsvector @@ tsquery
tsquery @@ tsvector
text @@ tsquery
text @@ text
```

The first two of these we saw already. The form `text @@ tsquery` is equivalent to `to_tsvector(x) @@ y`. The form `text @@ text` is equivalent to `to_tsvector(x) @@ plainto_tsquery(y)`.

Within a tsquery, the & (AND) operator specifies that both its arguments must appear in the document to have a match. Similarly, the | (OR) operator specifies that at least one of its arguments must appear, while the ! (NOT) operator specifies that its argument must not appear in order to have a match. For example, the query `fat & ! rat` matches documents that contain fat but not rat.

Searching for phrases is possible with the help of the <-> (FOLLOWED BY) tsquery operator, which matches only if its arguments have matches that are adjacent and in the given order. For example:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('fatal error') @@ to_tsquery('fatal <-> error');
```

```
SELECT to_tsvector('error is not fatal') @@ to_tsquery('fatal <-> error');
```

There is a more general version of the FOLLOWED BY operator having the form `<N>`, where `N` is an integer standing for the difference between the positions of the matching lexemes. `<1>` is the same as <->, while `<2>` allows exactly one other lexeme to appear between the matches, and so on. The phraseto_tsquery function makes use of this operator to construct a tsquery that can match a multi-word phrase when some of the words are stop words. For example:

```
SELECT phraseto_tsquery('cats ate rats');
```

```
SELECT phraseto_tsquery('the cats ate the rats');
```
A special case that's sometimes useful is that \(<0>\) can be used to require that two patterns match the same word.

Parentheses can be used to control nesting of the tsquery operators. Without parentheses, | binds least tightly, then & then <->, and ! most tightly.

It's worth noticing that the AND/OR/NOT operators mean something subtly different when they are within the arguments of a FOLLOWED BY operator than when they are not, because within FOLLOWED BY the exact position of the match is significant. For example, normally !x matches only documents that do not contain x anywhere. But !x <-> y matches y if it is not immediately after an x; an occurrence of x elsewhere in the document does not prevent a match. Another example is that x & y normally only requires that x and y both appear somewhere in the document, but (x & y) <-> z requires x and y to match at the same place, immediately before a z. Thus this query behaves differently from x <-> z & y <-> z, which will match a document containing two separate sequences x z and y z. (This specific query is useless as written, since x and y could not match at the same place; but with more complex situations such as prefix-match patterns, a query of this form could be useful.)

12.1.3. Configurations

The above are all simple text search examples. As mentioned before, full text search functionality includes the ability to do many more things: skip indexing certain words (stop words), process synonyms, and use sophisticated parsing, e.g., parse based on more than just white space. This functionality is controlled by text search configurations. Postgres Pro comes with predefined configurations for many languages, and you can easily create your own configurations. (psql's \dF command shows all available configurations.)

During installation an appropriate configuration is selected and default_text_search_config is set accordingly in postgresql.conf. If you are using the same text search configuration for the entire cluster you can use the value in postgresql.conf. To use different configurations throughout the cluster but the same configuration within any one database, use ALTER DATABASE ... SET. Otherwise, you can set default_text_search_config in each session.

Each text search function that depends on a configuration has an optional regconfig argument, so that the configuration to use can be specified explicitly. default_text_search_config is used only when this argument is omitted.

To make it easier to build custom text search configurations, a configuration is built up from simpler database objects. Postgres Pro’s text search facility provides four types of configuration-related database objects:

- **Text search parsers** break documents into tokens and classify each token (for example, as words or numbers).
- **Text search dictionaries** convert tokens to normalized form and reject stop words.
- **Text search templates** provide the functions underlying dictionaries. (A dictionary simply specifies a template and a set of parameters for the template.)
- **Text search configurations** select a parser and a set of dictionaries to use to normalize the tokens produced by the parser.

Text search parsers and templates are built from low-level C functions; therefore it requires C programming ability to develop new ones, and superuser privileges to install one into a database. (There are examples of add-on parsers and templates in the contrib/ area of the Postgres Pro distribution.) Since dictionaries and configurations just parameterize and connect together some underlying parsers and templates, no special privilege is needed to create a new dictionary or configuration. Examples of creating custom dictionaries and configurations appear later in this chapter.

12.2. Tables and Indexes

The examples in the previous section illustrated full text matching using simple constant strings. This section shows how to search table data, optionally using indexes.
12.2.1. Searching a Table

It is possible to do a full text search without an index. A simple query to print the title of each row that contains the word friend in its body field is:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector('english', body) @@ to_tsquery('english', 'friend');
```

This will also find related words such as friends and friendly, since all these are reduced to the same normalized lexeme.

The query above specifies that the english configuration is to be used to parse and normalize the strings. Alternatively we could omit the configuration parameters:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector(body) @@ to_tsquery('friend');
```

This query will use the configuration set by default_text_search_config.

A more complex example is to select the ten most recent documents that contain create and table in the title or body:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector(title || ' ' || body) @@ to_tsquery('create & table')
ORDER BY last_mod_date DESC
LIMIT 10;
```

For clarity we omitted the coalesce function calls which would be needed to find rows that contain NULL in one of the two fields.

Although these queries will work without an index, most applications will find this approach too slow, except perhaps for occasional ad-hoc searches. Practical use of text searching usually requires creating an index.

12.2.2. Creating Indexes

We can create a GIN index (Section 12.9) to speed up text searches:

```
CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING GIN (to_tsvector('english', body));
```

Notice that the 2-argument version of to_tsvector is used. Only text search functions that specify a configuration name can be used in expression indexes (Section 11.7). This is because the index contents must be unaffected by default_text_search_config. If they were affected, the index contents might be inconsistent because different entries could contain tsvector that were created with different text search configurations, and there would be no way to guess which was which. It would be impossible to dump and restore such an index correctly.

Because the two-argument version of to_tsvector was used in the index above, only a query reference that uses the 2-argument version of to_tsvector with the same configuration name will use that index. That is, WHERE to_tsvector('english', body) @@ 'a & b' can use the index, but WHERE to_tsvector(body) @@ 'a & b' cannot. This ensures that an index will be used only with the same configuration used to create the index entries.

It is possible to set up more complex expression indexes wherein the configuration name is specified by another column, e.g.:

```
CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING GIN (to_tsvector(config_name, body));
```

where config_name is a column in the pgweb table. This allows mixed configurations in the same index while recording which configuration was used for each index entry. This would be useful, for example, if
the document collection contained documents in different languages. Again, queries that are meant to use the index must be phrased to match, e.g., WHERE to_tsvector(config_name, body) @@ 'a & b'.

Indexes can even concatenate columns:

CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING GIN (to_tsvector('english', title || ' ' || body));

Another approach is to create a separate tsvector column to hold the output of to_tsvector. To keep this column automatically up to date with its source data, use a stored generated column. This example is a concatenation of title and body, using coalesce to ensure that one field will still be indexed when the other is NULL:

ALTER TABLE pgweb
  ADD COLUMN searchable_index_col tsvector
    GENERATED ALWAYS AS (to_tsvector('english', coalesce(title, '') || ' ' || coalesce(body, ''))) STORED;

Then we create a GIN index to speed up the search:

CREATE INDEX textsearch_idx ON pgweb USING GIN (searchable_index_col);

Now we are ready to perform a fast full text search:

SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE searchable_index_col @@ to_tsquery('create & table')
ORDER BY last_mod_date DESC
LIMIT 10;

One advantage of the separate-column approach over an expression index is that it is not necessary to explicitly specify the text search configuration in queries in order to make use of the index. As shown in the example above, the query can depend on default_text_search_config. Another advantage is that searches will be faster, since it will not be necessary to redo the to_tsvector calls to verify index matches. (This is more important when using a GiST index than a GIN index; see Section 12.9.) The expression-index approach is simpler to set up, however, and it requires less disk space since the tsvector representation is not stored explicitly.

12.3. Controlling Text Search

To implement full text searching there must be a function to create a tsvector from a document and a tsquery from a user query. Also, we need to return results in a useful order, so we need a function that compares documents with respect to their relevance to the query. It's also important to be able to display the results nicely. Postgres Pro provides support for all of these functions.

12.3.1. Parsing Documents

Postgres Pro provides the function to_tsvector for converting a document to the tsvector data type.

to_tsvector([ config regconfig, ] document text) returns tsvector

to_tsvector parses a textual document into tokens, reduces the tokens to lexemes, and returns a tsvector which lists the lexemes together with their positions in the document. The document is processed according to the specified or default text search configuration. Here is a simple example:

SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'a fat cat sat on a mat - it ate a fat rats');
to_tsvector
-----------------------------
'ate':9 'cat':3 'fat':2,11 'mat':7 'rat':12 'sat':4

In the example above we see that the resulting tsvector does not contain the words a, on, or it, the word rats became rat, and the punctuation sign - was ignored.
The `to_tsvector` function internally calls a parser which breaks the document text into tokens and assigns a type to each token. For each token, a list of dictionaries (Section 12.6) is consulted, where the list can vary depending on the token type. The first dictionary that recognizes the token emits one or more normalized lexemes to represent the token. For example, `rats` became `rat` because one of the dictionaries recognized that the word `rats` is a plural form of `rat`. Some words are recognized as stop words (Section 12.6.1), which causes them to be ignored since they occur too frequently to be useful in searching. In our example these are `a`, `on`, and `it`. If no dictionary in the list recognizes the token then it is also ignored. In this example that happened to the punctuation sign – because there are in fact no dictionaries assigned for its token type (Space symbols), meaning space tokens will never be indexed. The choices of parser, dictionaries and which types of tokens to index are determined by the selected text search configuration (Section 12.7). It is possible to have many different configurations in the same database, and predefined configurations are available for various languages. In our example we used the default configuration `english` for the English language.

The function `setweight` can be used to label the entries of a `tsvector` with a given `weight`, where a weight is one of the letters `A`, `B`, `C`, or `D`. This is typically used to mark entries coming from different parts of a document, such as title versus body. Later, this information can be used for ranking of search results.

Because `to_tsvector(NULL)` will return `NULL`, it is recommended to use `coalesce` whenever a field might be null. Here is the recommended method for creating a `tsvector` from a structured document:

```sql
UPDATE tt SET ti =
  setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(title,''')), 'A') ||
  setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(keyword,''')), 'B') ||
  setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(abstract,''')), 'C') ||
  setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(body,''')), 'D');
```

Here we have used `setweight` to label the source of each lexeme in the finished `tsvector`, and then merged the labeled `tsvector` values using the `tsvector` concatenation operator `||`. (Section 12.4.1 gives details about these operations.)

### 12.3.2. Parsing Queries

Postgres Pro provides the functions `to_tsquery`, `plainto_tsquery`, `phraseto_tsquery` and `websearch_to_tsquery` for converting a query to the `tsquery` data type. `to_tsquery` offers access to more features than either `plainto_tsquery` or `phraseto_tsquery`, but it is less forgiving about its input. `websearch_to_tsquery` is a simplified version of `to_tsquery` with an alternative syntax, similar to the one used by web search engines.

```sql

to_query([ config regconfig, ] querytext text) returns tsquery
```

`to_tsquery` creates a `tsquery` value from `querytext`, which must consist of single tokens separated by the `tsquery` operators `&` (AND), `|` (OR), `!` (NOT), and `<->` (FOLLOWED BY), possibly grouped using parentheses. In other words, the input to `to_tsquery` must already follow the general rules for `tsquery` input, as described in Section 8.11.2. The difference is that while basic `tsquery` input takes the tokens at face value, `to_tsquery` normalizes each token into a lexeme using the specified or default configuration, and discards any tokens that are stop words according to the configuration. For example:

```sql
SELECT to_tsquery('english', 'The & Fat & Rats');

  to_tsquery
    'fat' & 'rat'
```

As in basic `tsquery` input, weight(s) can be attached to each lexeme to restrict it to match only `tsvector` lexemes of those weight(s). For example:

```sql
SELECT to_tsquery('english', 'Fat | Rats:AB');

  to_tsquery
    'fat' | 'rat':AB
```
Also, * can be attached to a lexeme to specify prefix matching:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('supern:*A & star:A*B');
```

```
to_tsquery('supern':*A & 'star':*AB
```

Such a lexeme will match any word in a tsvector that begins with the given string.

to_tsquery can also accept single-quoted phrases. This is primarily useful when the configuration includes a thesaurus dictionary that may trigger on such phrases. In the example below, a thesaurus contains the rule supernovae stars : sn:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('''supernovae stars'' & !crab');
```

```
to_tsquery('sn' & !'crab'
```

Without quotes, to_tsquery will generate a syntax error for tokens that are not separated by an AND, OR, or FOLLOWED BY operator.

plainto_tsquery([ config regconfig, ] querytext text) returns tsquery

plainto_tsquery transforms the unformatted text querytext to a tsquery value. The text is parsed and normalized much as for to_tsvector, then the & (AND) tsquery operator is inserted between surviving words.

Example:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat Rats');
```

```
plainto_tsquery('fat' & 'rat'
```

Note that plainto_tsquery will not recognize tsquery operators, weight labels, or prefix-match labels in its input:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat & Rats:C');
```

```
plainto_tsquery('fat' & 'rat' & 'c'
```

Here, all the input punctuation was discarded.

phraseto_tsquery([ config regconfig, ] querytext text) returns tsquery

phraseto_tsquery behaves much like plainto_tsquery, except that it inserts the <-> (FOLLOWED BY) operator between surviving words instead of the & (AND) operator. Also, stop words are not simply discarded, but are accounted for by inserting <N> operators rather than <-> operators. This function is useful when searching for exact lexeme sequences, since the FOLLOWED BY operators check lexeme order not just the presence of all the lexemes.

Example:

```
SELECT phraseto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat Rats');
```

```
phraseto_tsquery('fat' <-> 'rat'
```

Like plainto_tsquery, the phraseto_tsquery function will not recognize tsquery operators, weight labels, or prefix-match labels in its input:

```
SELECT phraseto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat & Rats:C');
```

```
phraseto_tsquery('fat' & 'rat' & 'c'
```
websearch_to_tsquery creates a tsquery value from querytext using an alternative syntax in which simple unformatted text is a valid query. Unlike plainto_tsquery and phraseto_tsquery, it also recognizes certain operators. Moreover, this function will never raise syntax errors, which makes it possible to use raw user-supplied input for search. The following syntax is supported:

- **unquoted text**: text not inside quote marks will be converted to terms separated by & operators, as if processed by plainto_tsquery.
- **"quoted text"**: text inside quote marks will be converted to terms separated by <-> operators, as if processed by phraseto_tsquery.
- **OR**: the word “or” will be converted to the | operator.
- **!**: a dash will be converted to the ! operator.

Other punctuation is ignored. So like plainto_tsquery and phraseto_tsquery, the websearch_to_tsquery function will not recognize tsquery operators, weight labels, or prefix-match labels in its input.

**Examples:**

```sql
SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', 'The fat rats');
websearch_to_tsquery
----------------------------------
'fat' & 'rat'
(1 row)

SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', '"supernovae stars" -crab');
websearch_to_tsquery
-----------------------------------
'supernova' <-> 'star' & !'crab'
(1 row)

SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', '"sad cat" or "fat rat"');
websearch_to_tsquery
-------------------------------------
'sad' <-> 'cat' | 'fat' <-> 'rat'
(1 row)

SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', 'signal -"segmentation fault"');
websearch_to_tsquery
--------------------------------------
'signal' & !{ 'segment' <-> 'fault' }
(1 row)

SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', """") ( dummy \ \ query <->');
websearch_to_tsquery
----------------------
'dummi' & 'queri'
(1 row)
```

### 12.3.3. Ranking Search Results

Ranking attempts to measure how relevant documents are to a particular query, so that when there are many matches the most relevant ones can be shown first. Postgres Pro provides two predefined ranking functions, which take into account lexical, proximity, and structural information; that is, they consider how often the query terms appear in the document, how close together the terms are in the document, and how important is the part of the document where they occur. However, the concept of relevancy is vague and very application-specific. Different applications might require additional information for ranking, e.g., document modification time. The built-in ranking functions are only examples. You can
write your own ranking functions and/or combine their results with additional factors to fit your specific needs.

The two ranking functions currently available are:

\[
\text{ts_rank}([\text{weights \ float4[]}], \text{vector tsvector}, \text{query tsquery}, [\text{normalization integer}]) \text{ returns float4}
\]

Ranks vectors based on the frequency of their matching lexemes.

\[
\text{ts_rank_cd}([\text{weights \ float4[]}], \text{vector tsvector}, \text{query tsquery}, [\text{normalization integer}]) \text{ returns float4}
\]

This function computes the cover density ranking for the given document vector and query, as described in Clarke, Cormack, and Tudhope's "Relevance Ranking for One to Three Term Queries" in the journal "Information Processing and Management", 1999. Cover density is similar to \text{ts_rank} ranking except that the proximity of matching lexemes to each other is taken into consideration.

This function requires lexeme positional information to perform its calculation. Therefore, it ignores any "stripped" lexemes in the \text{tsvector}. If there are no unstripped lexemes in the input, the result will be zero. (See Section 12.4.1 for more information about the \text{strip} function and positional information in \text{tsvector}s.)

For both these functions, the optional \text{weights} argument offers the ability to weigh word instances more or less heavily depending on how they are labeled. The weight arrays specify how heavily to weigh each category of word, in the order:

(D-weight, C-weight, B-weight, A-weight)

If no \text{weights} are provided, then these defaults are used:

(0.1, 0.2, 0.4, 1.0)

Typically weights are used to mark words from special areas of the document, like the title or an initial abstract, so they can be treated with more or less importance than words in the document body.

Since a longer document has a greater chance of containing a query term it is reasonable to take into account document size, e.g., a hundred-word document with five instances of a search word is probably more relevant than a thousand-word document with five instances. Both ranking functions take an integer \text{normalization} option that specifies whether and how a document's length should impact its rank. The integer option controls several behaviors, so it is a bit mask: you can specify one or more behaviors using | (for example, \texttt{2|4}).

- 0 (the default) ignores the document length
- 1 divides the rank by 1 + the logarithm of the document length
- 2 divides the rank by the document length
- 4 divides the rank by the mean harmonic distance between extents (this is implemented only by \text{ts_rank_cd})
- 8 divides the rank by the number of unique words in document
- 16 divides the rank by 1 + the logarithm of the number of unique words in document
- 32 divides the rank by itself + 1

If more than one flag bit is specified, the transformations are applied in the order listed.

It is important to note that the ranking functions do not use any global information, so it is impossible to produce a fair normalization to 1% or 100% as sometimes desired. Normalization option 32 (\text{rank}/(\text{rank} +1)) can be applied to scale all ranks into the range zero to one, but of course this is just a cosmetic change; it will not affect the ordering of the search results.

Here is an example that selects only the ten highest-ranked matches:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SELECT title, ts_rank_cd(textsearch, query) AS rank} \\
\text{FROM apod, to_tsquery('neutrino|(dark & matter)') query} \\
\text{WHERE query @@ textsearch} \\
\text{ORDER BY rank DESC}
\end{align*}
\]
**12.3.4. Highlighting Results**

To present search results it is ideal to show a part of each document and how it is related to the query. Usually, search engines show fragments of the document with marked search terms. Postgres Pro provides a function `ts_headline` that implements this functionality.

```sql
ts_headline([ config regconfig, ] document text, query tsquery [, options text ]) returns text
```

`ts_headline` accepts a document along with a query, and returns an excerpt from the document in which terms from the query are highlighted. The configuration to be used to parse the document can be specified by `config`; if `config` is omitted, the `default_text_search_config` configuration is used.

If an `options` string is specified it must consist of a comma-separated list of one or more `option=value` pairs. The available options are:

- **MaxWords, MinWords** (integers): these numbers determine the longest and shortest headlines to output. The default values are 35 and 15.
- **ShortWord** (integer): words of this length or less will be dropped at the start and end of a headline, unless they are query terms. The default value of three eliminates common English articles.
- **HighlightAll** (boolean): if `true` the whole document will be used as the headline, ignoring the preceding three parameters. The default is `false`. 

Ranking can be expensive since it requires consulting the `tsvector` of each matching document, which can be I/O bound and therefore slow. Unfortunately, it is almost impossible to avoid since practical queries often result in large numbers of matches.
• **MaxFragments (integer):** maximum number of text fragments to display. The default value of zero selects a non-fragment-based headline generation method. A value greater than zero selects fragment-based headline generation (see below).

• **StartSel, StopSel (strings):** the strings with which to delimit query words appearing in the document, to distinguish them from other excerpted words. The default values are "\(<b>\)" and "\(</b>\)", which can be suitable for HTML output.

• **FragmentDelimiter (string):** When more than one fragment is displayed, the fragments will be separated by this string. The default is "...".

These option names are recognized case-insensitively. You must double-quote string values if they contain spaces or commas.

In non-fragment-based headline generation, `ts_headline` locates matches for the given query and chooses a single one to display, preferring matches that have more query words within the allowed headline length. In fragment-based headline generation, `ts_headline` locates the query matches and splits each match into “fragments” of no more than `MaxWords` words each, preferring fragments with more query words, and when possible “stretching” fragments to include surrounding words. The fragment-based mode is thus more useful when the query matches span large sections of the document, or when it’s desirable to display multiple matches. In either mode, if no query matches can be identified, then a single fragment of the first `MinWords` words in the document will be displayed.

For example:

```sql
SELECT ts_headline('english',
    'The most common type of search
is to find all documents containing given query terms
and return them in order of their similarity to the
query.',
    to Tsquery('english', 'query & similarity'));
```

`ts_headline` uses the original document, not a `tsvector` summary, so it can be slow and should be used with care.

### 12.4. Additional Features

This section describes additional functions and operators that are useful in connection with text search.

#### 12.4.1. Manipulating Documents

Section 12.3.1 showed how raw textual documents can be converted into `tsvector` values. Postgres Pro also provides functions and operators that can be used to manipulate documents that are already in `tsvector` form.
tsvector || tsvector

The tsvector concatenation operator returns a vector which combines the lexemes and positional information of the two vectors given as arguments. Positions and weight labels are retained during the concatenation. Positions appearing in the right-hand vector are offset by the largest position mentioned in the left-hand vector, so that the result is nearly equivalent to the result of performing to_tsvector on the concatenation of the two original document strings. (The equivalence is not exact, because any stop-words removed from the end of the left-hand argument will not affect the result, whereas they would have affected the positions of the lexemes in the right-hand argument if textual concatenation were used.)

One advantage of using concatenation in the vector form, rather than concatenating text before applying to_tsvector, is that you can use different configurations to parse different sections of the document. Also, because the setweight function marks all lexemes of the given vector the same way, it is necessary to parse the text and do setweight before concatenating if you want to label different parts of the document with different weights.

setweight(vector tsvector, weight "char") returns tsvector

setweight returns a copy of the input vector in which every position has been labeled with the given weight, either A, B, C, or D. (D is the default for new vectors and as such is not displayed on output.) These labels are retained when vectors are concatenated, allowing words from different parts of a document to be weighted differently by ranking functions.

Note that weight labels apply to positions, not lexemes. If the input vector has been stripped of positions then setweight does nothing.

length(vector tsvector) returns integer

Returns the number of lexemes stored in the vector.

strip(vector tsvector) returns tsvector

Returns a vector that lists the same lexemes as the given vector, but lacks any position or weight information. The result is usually much smaller than an unstripped vector, but it is also less useful. Relevance ranking does not work as well on stripped vectors as unstripped ones. Also, the <-> (FOLLOWED BY) tsquery operator will never match stripped input, since it cannot determine the distance between lexeme occurrences.

A full list of tsvector-related functions is available in Table 9.42.

12.4.2. Manipulating Queries

Section 12.3.2 showed how raw textual queries can be converted into tsquery values. Postgres Pro also provides functions and operators that can be used to manipulate queries that are already in tsquery form.

tsquery && tsquery

Returns the AND-combination of the two given queries.

tsquery || tsquery

Returns the OR-combination of the two given queries.

!! tsquery

Returns the negation (NOT) of the given query.

tsquery <-> tsquery

Returns a query that searches for a match to the first given query immediately followed by a match to the second given query, using the <-> (FOLLOWED BY) tsquery operator. For example:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('fat') <-> to_tsquery('cat | rat');
```
 FULL TEXT SEARCH

?column?
---------------------------------
'fat' <-> ( 'cat' | 'rat' )

tquery_phrase(query1 tsquery, query2 tsquery [, distance integer ]) returns tsquery

Returns a query that searches for a match to the first given query followed by a match to the second
given query at a distance of exactly distance lexemes, using the <N> tsquery operator. For example:

SELECT tquery_phrase(to_tquery('fat'), to_tquery('cat'), 10);

numnode(query tsquery) returns integer

Returns the number of nodes (lexemes plus operators) in a tsquery. This function is useful to
determine if the query is meaningful (returns > 0), or contains only stop words (returns 0). Examples:

SELECT numnode(plainto_tquery('the any'));
NOTICE:  query contains only stopword(s) or doesn't contain lexeme(s), ignored
numnode
--------
0

SELECT numnode('foo & bar'::tsquery);
numnode
--------
3

querytree(query tsquery) returns text

Returns the portion of a tsquery that can be used for searching an index. This function is useful for
detecting unindexable queries, for example those containing only stop words or only negated terms.
For example:

SELECT querytree(to_tquery('defined'));
querytree
--------
'defin'

SELECT querytree(to_tquery('!defined'));
querytree
--------
T

12.4.2.1. Query Rewriting

The ts_rewrite family of functions search a given tsquery for occurrences of a target subquery, and
replace each occurrence with a substitute subquery. In essence this operation is a tsquery-specific
version of substring replacement. A target and substitute combination can be thought of as a query
rewrite rule. A collection of such rewrite rules can be a powerful search aid. For example, you can
expand the search using synonyms (e.g., new york, big apple, nyc, gotham) or narrow the search
to direct the user to some hot topic. There is some overlap in functionality between this feature and
thesaurus dictionaries (Section 12.6.4). However, you can modify a set of rewrite rules on-the-fly without
reindexing, whereas updating a thesaurus requires reindexing to be effective.

ts_rewrite (query tsquery, target tsquery, substitute tsquery) returns tsquery

This form of ts_rewrite simply applies a single rewrite rule: target is replaced by substitute
wherever it appears in query. For example:

SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b':tsquery, 'a':tsquery, 'c':tsquery);
ts_rewrite (query tsquery, select text) returns tsquery

This form of ts_rewrite accepts a starting query and an SQL select command, which is given as a text string. The select must yield two columns of tsquery type. For each row of the select result, occurrences of the first column value (the target) are replaced by the second column value (the substitute) within the current query value. For example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE aliases (t tsquery PRIMARY KEY, s tsquery);
INSERT INTO aliases VALUES('a', 'c');

SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery, 'SELECT t,s FROM aliases');
```

Note that when multiple rewrite rules are applied in this way, the order of application can be important; so in practice you will want the source query to ORDER BY some ordering key.

Let's consider a real-life astronomical example. We'll expand query supernovae using table-driven rewriting rules:

```sql
CREATE TABLE aliases (t tsquery primary key, s tsquery);
INSERT INTO aliases VALUES(to_tsquery('supernovae'), to_tsquery('supernovae|sn'));

SELECT ts_rewrite(to_tsquery('supernovae & crab'), 'SELECT * FROM aliases');
```

We can change the rewriting rules just by updating the table:

```sql
UPDATE aliases
SET s = to_tsquery('supernovae|sn & !nebulae')
WHERE t = to_tsquery('supernovae');

SELECT ts_rewrite(to_tsquery('supernovae & crab'), 'SELECT * FROM aliases');
```

Rewriting can be slow when there are many rewriting rules, since it checks every rule for a possible match. To filter out obvious non-candidate rules we can use the containment operators for the tsquery type. In the example below, we select only those rules which might match the original query:

```sql
SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery, 'SELECT t,s FROM aliases WHERE ''a & b''::tsquery @> t>');
```

12.4.3. Triggers for Automatic Updates

Note

The method described in this section has been obsoleted by the use of stored generated columns, as described in Section 12.2.2.
When using a separate column to store the tsvector representation of your documents, it is necessary to create a trigger to update the tsvector column when the document content columns change. Two built-in trigger functions are available for this, or you can write your own.

```
tsvector_update_trigger(tsvector_column_name, config_name, text_column_name [, ... ])
tsvector_update_trigger_column(tsvector_column_name, config_column_name, text_column_name [, ... ])
```

These trigger functions automatically compute a tsvector column from one or more textual columns, under the control of parameters specified in the CREATE TRIGGER command. An example of their use is:

```
CREATE TABLE messages (  
  title       text,  
  body        text,  
  tsv         tsvector  
);

CREATE TRIGGER tsvectorupdate BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE  
ON messages FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION  
tsvector_update_trigger(tsv, 'pg_catalog.english', title, body);

INSERT INTO messages VALUES('title here', 'the body text is here');

SELECT * FROM messages;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>title</th>
<th>body</th>
<th>tsv</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>title here</td>
<td>the body text is here</td>
<td>'bodi':4 'text':5 'titl':1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SELECT title, body FROM messages WHERE tsv @@ to_tsquery('title & body');

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>title</th>
<th>body</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>title here</td>
<td>the body text is here</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Having created this trigger, any change in title or body will automatically be reflected into tsv, without the application having to worry about it.

The first trigger argument must be the name of the tsvector column to be updated. The second argument specifies the text search configuration to be used for the conversion. For tsvector_update_trigger, the configuration name is simply given as the second trigger argument. It must be schema-qualified as shown above, so that the trigger behavior will not change with changes in search_path. For tsvector_update_trigger_column, the second trigger argument is the name of another table column, which must be of type regconfig. This allows a per-row selection of configuration to be made. The remaining argument(s) are the names of textual columns (of type text, varchar, or char). These will be included in the document in the order given. NULL values will be skipped (but the other columns will still be indexed).

A limitation of these built-in triggers is that they treat all the input columns alike. To process columns differently — for example, to weight title differently from body — it is necessary to write a custom trigger. Here is an example using PL/pgSQL as the trigger language:

```
CREATE FUNCTION messages_trigger() RETURNS trigger AS $$  
begin  
  new.tsv :=  
    setweight(to_tsvector('pg_catalog.english', coalesce(new.title,'')), 'A')  
  ||  
    setweight(to_tsvector('pg_catalog.english', coalesce(new.body,'')), 'D');  
  return new;  
end  
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER tsvectorupdate BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE
```
ON messages FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION messages_trigger();

Keep in mind that it is important to specify the configuration name explicitly when creating \texttt{tsvector} values inside triggers, so that the column's contents will not be affected by changes to \texttt{default_text_search_config}. Failure to do this is likely to lead to problems such as search results changing after a dump and reload.

\section*{12.4.4. Gathering Document Statistics}

The function \texttt{ts_stat} is useful for checking your configuration and for finding stop-word candidates.

\begin{verbatim}
ts_stat(sqlquery text, [ weights text, ]
        OUT word text, OUT ndoc integer,
        OUT nentry integer) returns setof record

sqlquery\texttt{ is a text value containing an SQL query which must return a single }\texttt{tsvector column. ts_stat executes the query and returns statistics about each distinct lexeme (word) contained in the tsvector data. The columns returned are}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{word text} — the value of a lexeme
  \item \texttt{ndoc integer} — number of documents (\texttt{tsvector}s) the word occurred in
  \item \texttt{nentry integer} — total number of occurrences of the word
\end{itemize}

If \texttt{weights} is supplied, only occurrences having one of those weights are counted.

For example, to find the ten most frequent words in a document collection:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT * FROM ts_stat('SELECT vector FROM apod')
ORDER BY nentry DESC, ndoc DESC, word
LIMIT 10;
\end{verbatim}

The same, but counting only word occurrences with weight \texttt{A} or \texttt{B}:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT * FROM ts_stat('SELECT vector FROM apod', 'ab')
ORDER BY nentry DESC, ndoc DESC, word
LIMIT 10;
\end{verbatim}

\section*{12.5. Parsers}

Text search parsers are responsible for splitting raw document text into \textit{tokens} and identifying each token's type, where the set of possible types is defined by the parser itself. Note that a parser does not modify the text at all — it simply identifies plausible word boundaries. Because of this limited scope, there is less need for application-specific custom parsers than there is for custom dictionaries. At present Postgres Pro provides just one built-in parser, which has been found to be useful for a wide range of applications.

The built-in parser is named \texttt{pg_catalog.default}. It recognizes 23 token types, shown in Table \ref{table:default-parsers}.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Alias} & \textbf{Description} & \textbf{Example} \\
\hline
asciiword & Word, all ASCII letters & elephant \\
word & Word, all letters & mañana \\
umword & Word, letters and digits & beta1 \\
asciihword & Hyphenated word, all ASCII & up-to-date \\
hword & Hyphenated word, all letters & lógico-matemática \\
umhword & Hyphenated word, letters and digits & postgresql-beta1 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Default Parser's Token Types}
\end{table}
## Full Text Search

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alias</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hword_asciipart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, all ASCII</td>
<td>postgresql in the context postgresql-beta1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword_part</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, all letters</td>
<td>lógico or matemática in the context lógico-matemática</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword_numpart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, letters and digits</td>
<td>beta1 in the context postgresql-beta1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email address</td>
<td><a href="mailto:foo@example.com">foo@example.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protocol</td>
<td>Protocol head</td>
<td>http://</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>URL</td>
<td>example.com/stuff/index.html</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>Host</td>
<td>example.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url_path</td>
<td>URL path</td>
<td>/stuff/index.html in the context of a URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file</td>
<td>File or path name</td>
<td>/usr/local/foo.txt, if not within a URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sfloat</td>
<td>Scientific notation</td>
<td>-1.234e56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>Decimal notation</td>
<td>-1.234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int</td>
<td>Signed integer</td>
<td>-1234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint</td>
<td>Unsigned integer</td>
<td>1234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>Version number</td>
<td>8.3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tag</td>
<td>XML tag</td>
<td>&lt;a href=&quot;dictionaries.html&quot;&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entity</td>
<td>XML entity</td>
<td>&amp;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td>(any whitespace or punctuation not otherwise recognized)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Note

The parser's notion of a “letter” is determined by the database’s locale setting, specifically `lc_ctype`. Words containing only the basic ASCII letters are reported as a separate token type, since it is sometimes useful to distinguish them. In most European languages, token types `word` and `asciword` should be treated alike.

`email` does not support all valid email characters as defined by [RFC 5322](https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5322). Specifically, the only non-alphanumeric characters supported for email user names are period, dash, and underscore.

It is possible for the parser to produce overlapping tokens from the same piece of text. As an example, a hyphenated word will be reported both as the entire word and as each component:

```sql
SELECT alias, description, token FROM ts_debug('foo-bar-beta1');
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alias</th>
<th>description</th>
<th>token</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>numhword</td>
<td>Hyphenated word, letters and digits</td>
<td>foo-bar-beta1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword_asciipart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, all ASCII</td>
<td>foo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword_asciipart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, all ASCII</td>
<td>bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword_numpart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, letters and digits</td>
<td>beta1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This behavior is desirable since it allows searches to work for both the whole compound word and for components. Here is another instructive example:

```sql
SELECT alias, description, token FROM ts_debug('http://example.com/stuff/index.html');
```
### 12.6. Dictionaries

Dictionaries are used to eliminate words that should not be considered in a search (*stop words*), and to normalize words so that different derived forms of the same word will match. A successfully normalized word is called a *lexeme*. Aside from improving search quality, normalization and removal of stop words reduce the size of the *tsvector* representation of a document, thereby improving performance. Normalization does not always have linguistic meaning and usually depends on application semantics.

Some examples of normalization:

- Linguistic — *Ispell* dictionaries try to reduce input words to a normalized form; stemmer dictionaries remove word endings
- URL locations can be canonicalized to make equivalent URLs match:
  - http://www.pgsql.ru/db/mw/index.html
  - http://www.pgsql.ru/db/mw/
  - http://www.pgsql.ru/db/../db/mw/index.html
- Color names can be replaced by their hexadecimal values, e.g., red, green, blue, magenta → FF0000, 00FF00, 0000FF, FF00FF
- If indexing numbers, we can remove some fractional digits to reduce the range of possible numbers, so for example 3.14159265359, 3.1415926, 3.14 will be the same after normalization if only two digits are kept after the decimal point.

A dictionary is a program that accepts a token as input and returns:

- an array of lexemes if the input token is known to the dictionary (notice that one token can produce more than one lexeme)
- a single lexeme with the `TSL_FILTER` flag set, to replace the original token with a new token to be passed to subsequent dictionaries (a dictionary that does this is called a *filtering dictionary*)
- an empty array if the dictionary knows the token, but it is a stop word
- `NULL` if the dictionary does not recognize the input token

Postgres Pro provides predefined dictionaries for many languages. There are also several predefined templates that can be used to create new dictionaries with custom parameters. Each predefined dictionary template is described below. If no existing template is suitable, it is possible to create new ones; see the *contrib/* area of the Postgres Pro distribution for examples.

A text search configuration binds a parser together with a set of dictionaries to process the parser's output tokens. For each token type that the parser can return, a separate list of dictionaries is specified by the configuration. When a token of that type is found by the parser, each dictionary in the list is consulted in turn, until some dictionary recognizes it as a known word. If it is identified as a stop word, or if no dictionary recognizes the token, it will be discarded and not indexed or searched for. Normally, the first dictionary that returns a non-`NULL` output determines the result, and any remaining dictionaries are not consulted; but a filtering dictionary can replace the given word with a modified word, which is then passed to subsequent dictionaries.

The general rule for configuring a list of dictionaries is to place first the most narrow, most specific dictionary, then the more general dictionaries, finishing with a very general dictionary, like a Snowball stemmer or `simple`, which recognizes everything. For example, for an astronomy-specific search (`astro_en` configuration) one could bind token type `asciword` (ASCII word) to a synonym dictionary of astronomical terms, a general English dictionary and a Snowball English stemmer:

```sql
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION astro_en
  ADD MAPPING FOR asciword WITH astrosyn, english_ispell, english_stem;
```
A filtering dictionary can be placed anywhere in the list, except at the end where it'd be useless. Filtering dictionaries are useful to partially normalize words to simplify the task of later dictionaries. For example, a filtering dictionary could be used to remove accents from accented letters, as is done by the unaccent module.

### 12.6.1. Stop Words

Stop words are words that are very common, appear in almost every document, and have no discrimination value. Therefore, they can be ignored in the context of full text searching. For example, every English text contains words like a and the, so it is useless to store them in an index. However, stop words do affect the positions in \texttt{tsvector}, which in turn affect ranking:

```sql
SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'in the list of stop words');
```

\texttt{to_tsvector}

```sql
'list':3 'stop':5 'word':6
```

The missing positions 1, 2, 4 are because of stop words. Ranks calculated for documents with and without stop words are quite different:

```sql
SELECT ts_rank_cd (to_tsvector('english', 'in the list of stop words'),
    to_tsquery('list & stop'));
```

\texttt{ts_rank_cd}

```sql
0.05
```

```sql
SELECT ts_rank_cd (to_tsvector('english', 'list stop words'), to_tsquery('list &
    stop'));
```

\texttt{ts_rank_cd}

```sql
0.1
```

It is up to the specific dictionary how it treats stop words. For example, ispell dictionaries first normalize words and then look at the list of stop words, while Snowball stemmers first check the list of stop words. The reason for the different behavior is an attempt to decrease noise.

### 12.6.2. Simple Dictionary

The simple dictionary template operates by converting the input token to lower case and checking it against a file of stop words. If it is found in the file then an empty array is returned, causing the token to be discarded. If not, the lower-cased form of the word is returned as the normalized lexeme. Alternatively, the dictionary can be configured to report non-stop-words as unrecognized, allowing them to be passed on to the next dictionary in the list.

Here is an example of a dictionary definition using the simple template:

```sql
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY public.simple_dict (
    TEMPLATE = pg_catalog.simple,
    STOPWORDS = english
);
```

Here, \texttt{english} is the base name of a file of stop words. The file's full name will be $\$\text{SHAREDIR/}
\text{tsearch_data/english.stop}$, where $\$\text{SHAREDIR}$ means the Postgres Pro installation's shared-data directory, often `/usr/local/share/postgresql` (use `pg_config --sharedir` to determine it if you're not sure). The file format is simply a list of words, one per line. Blank lines and trailing spaces are ignored, and upper case is folded to lower case, but no other processing is done on the file contents.

Now we can test our dictionary:

```sql
SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict', 'YeS');
```

\texttt{ts_lexize}

```sql
'395'
```
SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict', 'The');

We can also choose to return NULL, instead of the lower-cased word, if it is not found in the stop words file. This behavior is selected by setting the dictionary's Accept parameter to false. Continuing the example:

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY public.simple_dict ( Accept = false );

SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict', 'YeS');

With the default setting of Accept = true, it is only useful to place a simple dictionary at the end of a list of dictionaries, since it will never pass on any token to a following dictionary. Conversely, Accept = false is only useful when there is at least one following dictionary.

**Caution**

Most types of dictionaries rely on configuration files, such as files of stop words. These files must be stored in UTF-8 encoding. They will be translated to the actual database encoding, if that is different, when they are read into the server.

**Caution**

Normally, a database session will read a dictionary configuration file only once, when it is first used within the session. If you modify a configuration file and want to force existing sessions to pick up the new contents, issue an ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY command on the dictionary. This can be a “dummy” update that doesn't actually change any parameter values.

### 12.6.3. Synonym Dictionary

This dictionary template is used to create dictionaries that replace a word with a synonym. Phrases are not supported (use the thesaurus template (Section 12.6.4) for that). A synonym dictionary can be used to overcome linguistic problems, for example, to prevent an English stemmer dictionary from reducing the word “Paris” to “pari”. It is enough to have a Paris paris line in the synonym dictionary and put it before the english.stem dictionary. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english', 'Paris');

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_synonym (
    TEMPLATE = synonym,
    SYNONYMS = my_synonyms
);`
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english

ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword
WITH my_synonym, english_stem;

SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english', 'Paris');

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alias</th>
<th>description</th>
<th>token</th>
<th>dictionaries</th>
<th>dictionary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>Paris</td>
<td>{my_synonym,english_stem}</td>
<td>my_synonym</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The only parameter required by the **synonym** template is `SYNONYMS`, which is the base name of its configuration file — `my_synonyms` in the above example. The file's full name will be `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/my_synonyms.syn` (where `$SHAREDIR` means the Postgres Pro installation's shared-data directory). The file format is just one line per word to be substituted, with the word followed by its synonym, separated by white space. Blank lines and trailing spaces are ignored.

The **synonym** template also has an optional parameter `CaseSensitive`, which defaults to `false`. When `CaseSensitive` is `false`, words in the synonym file are folded to lower case, as are input tokens. When it is `true`, words and tokens are not folded to lower case, but are compared as-is.

An asterisk (*) can be placed at the end of a synonym in the configuration file. This indicates that the synonym is a prefix. The asterisk is ignored when the entry is used in `to_tsvector()`, but when it is used in `to_tsquery()`, the result will be a query item with the prefix match marker (see Section 12.3.2). For example, suppose we have these entries in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/synonym_sample.syn`:

```
postgres        pgsql
postgresql      pgsql
postgre pgsql
google googl
indices index*
```

Then we will get these results:

```
mydb=# CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY syn (template=synonym, synonyms='synonym_sample');
mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('syn', 'indices');
  ts_lexize
  -------
     {index}
  (1 row)

mydb=# CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION tst (copy=simple);
mydb=# ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION tst ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword WITH syn;
mydb=# SELECT to_tsvector('tst', 'indices');
  to_tsvector
  -------
     'index':1
  (1 row)

mydb=# SELECT to_tsquery('tst', 'indices');
  to_tsquery
  -------
     'index':*
  (1 row)

mydb=# SELECT 'indexes are very useful'::tsvector;
  tsvector
  ------------------
     'are' 'indexes' 'useful' 'very'
```

397
mydb=# SELECT 'indexes are very useful'::tsvector @@ to_tsquery('tst', 'indices');

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>?column?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

12.6.4. Thesaurus Dictionary

A thesaurus dictionary (sometimes abbreviated as TZ) is a collection of words that includes information about the relationships of words and phrases, i.e., broader terms (BT), narrower terms (NT), preferred terms, non-preferred terms, related terms, etc.

Basically a thesaurus dictionary replaces all non-preferred terms by one preferred term and, optionally, preserves the original terms for indexing as well. Postgres Pro's current implementation of the thesaurus dictionary is an extension of the synonym dictionary with added phrase support. A thesaurus dictionary requires a configuration file of the following format:

```
# this is a comment
sample word(s) : indexed word(s)
more sample word(s) : more indexed word(s)
...
```

where the colon (:) symbol acts as a delimiter between a phrase and its replacement.

A thesaurus dictionary uses a subdictionary (which is specified in the dictionary's configuration) to normalize the input text before checking for phrase matches. It is only possible to select one subdictionary. An error is reported if the subdictionary fails to recognize a word. In that case, you should remove the use of the word or teach the subdictionary about it. You can place an asterisk (*) at the beginning of an indexed word to skip applying the subdictionary to it, but all sample words must be known to the subdictionary.

The thesaurus dictionary chooses the longest match if there are multiple phrases matching the input, and ties are broken by using the last definition.

Specific stop words recognized by the subdictionary cannot be specified; instead use ? to mark the location where any stop word can appear. For example, assuming that a and the are stop words according to the subdictionary:

```
? one ? two : swsw
matches a one the two and the one a two; both would be replaced by swsw.
```

Since a thesaurus dictionary has the capability to recognize phrases it must remember its state and interact with the parser. A thesaurus dictionary uses these assignments to check if it should handle the next word or stop accumulation. The thesaurus dictionary must be configured carefully. For example, if the thesaurus dictionary is assigned to handle only the asciiword token, then a thesaurus dictionary definition like `one 7` will not work since token type `uint` is not assigned to the thesaurus dictionary.

Caution

Thesauruses are used during indexing so any change in the thesaurus dictionary's parameters requires reindexing. For most other dictionary types, small changes such as adding or removing stopwords does not force reindexing.

12.6.4.1. Thesaurus Configuration

To define a new thesaurus dictionary, use the thesaurus template. For example:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY thesaurus_simple (}
```
Here:

- thesaurus_simple is the new dictionary's name
- mythesaurus is the base name of the thesaurus configuration file. (Its full name will be $SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/mythesaurus.ths, where $SHAREDIR means the installation shared-data directory.)
- pg_catalog.english_stem is the subdictionary (here, a Snowball English stemmer) to use for thesaurus normalization. Notice that the subdictionary will have its own configuration (for example, stop words), which is not shown here.

Now it is possible to bind the thesaurus dictionary thesaurus_simple to the desired token types in a configuration, for example:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian
  ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart
    WITH thesaurus_simple;
```

### 12.6.4.2. Thesaurus Example

Consider a simple astronomical thesaurus thesaurus_astro, which contains some astronomical word combinations:

```
supernovae stars : sn
crab nebulae : crab
```

Below we create a dictionary and bind some token types to an astronomical thesaurus and English stemmer:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY thesaurus_astro (  
  TEMPLATE = thesaurus,
  DictFile = thesaurus_astro,
  Dictionary = english_stem
);  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian
  ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart
    WITH thesaurus_astro, english_stem;
```

Now we can see how it works. `ts_lexize` is not very useful for testing a thesaurus, because it treats its input as a single token. Instead we can use `plainto_tsquery` and `to_tsvector` which will break their input strings into multiple tokens:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('supernova star');
plainto_tsquery
---------
'sn'

SELECT to_tsvector('supernova star');
to_tsvector
---------
'sn':1
```

In principle, one can use `to_tsquery` if you quote the argument:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('''supernova star''');
to_tsquery
---------
'sn'
```

Notice that supernova star matches supernovae stars in thesaurus_astro because we specified the english_stem stemmer in the thesaurus definition. The stemmer removed the e and s.
To index the original phrase as well as the substitute, just include it in the right-hand part of the definition:

```
select plainto_tsquery('supernova star');
```

-----------------------------
'sn' & 'supernova' & 'star'

### 12.6.5. Ispell Dictionary

The Ispell dictionary template supports *morphological dictionaries*, which can normalize many different linguistic forms of a word into the same lexeme. For example, an English Ispell dictionary can match all declensions and conjugations of the search term `bank`, e.g., `banking`, `banked`, `banks`, `banks'`, and `bank's`.

The standard Postgres Pro distribution does not include any Ispell configuration files. Dictionaries for a large number of languages are available from Ispell. Also, some more modern dictionary file formats are supported — MySpell (OO < 2.0.1) and Hunspell (OO >= 2.0.2). A large list of dictionaries is available on the [OpenOffice Wiki](https://wiki.openoffice.org/wiki/Dictionary).

To create an Ispell dictionary perform these steps:

- download dictionary configuration files. OpenOffice extension files have the `.oxt` extension. It is necessary to extract `.aff` and `.dic` files, change extensions to `.affix` and `.dict`. For some dictionary files it is also needed to convert characters to the UTF-8 encoding with commands (for example, for a Norwegian language dictionary):

  ```
  iconv -f ISO_8859-1 -t UTF-8 -o nn_no.affix nn_NO.aff
  iconv -f ISO_8859-1 -t UTF-8 -o nn_no.dic nn_NO.dic
  ```

- copy files to the `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data` directory
- load files into Postgres Pro with the following command:

  ```
  CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_hunspell (
    TEMPLATE = ispell,
    DictFile = en_us,
    AffFile = en_us,
    Stopwords = english);
  ```

Here, DictFile, AffFile, and StopWords specify the base names of the dictionary, affixes, and stop-words files. The stop-words file has the same format explained above for the simple dictionary type. The format of the other files is not specified here but is available from the above-mentioned web sites.

Ispell dictionaries usually recognize a limited set of words, so they should be followed by another broader dictionary; for example, a Snowball dictionary, which recognizes everything.

The `.affix` file of Ispell has the following structure:

```
prefixes
flag *A:
  > RE      # As in enter > reenter
suffixes
flag T:
  E           >   ST      # As in late > latest
  [^AEIOU]Y   >   -Y,IEST  # As in dirty > dirtiest
  [AEIOU]Y    >   EST     # As in gray > grayest
  [^EY]       >   EST     # As in small > smallest
```

And the `.dict` file has the following structure:

```
lapse/ADGRS
lard/DGRS
```
Format of the `.dict` file is:

`basic_form/affix_class_name`

In the `.affix` file every affix flag is described in the following format:

`condition > [-stripping_letters,] adding_affix`

Here, `condition` has a format similar to the format of regular expressions. It can use groupings ` [... ]` and `[^... ]`. For example, `[^AI]ou` means that the last letter of the word is "y" and the penultimate letter is "a", "e", "i", "o" or "u". `[^EY]` means that the last letter is neither "e" nor "y".

Ispell dictionaries support splitting compound words; a useful feature. Notice that the affix file should specify a special flag using the `compoundwords controlled` statement that marks dictionary words that can participate in compound formation:

```
compoundwords controlled z
```

Here are some examples for the Norwegian language:

```
SELECT ts_lexize('norwegian_ispell', 'overbuljongterningpakkmesterassistent');
{over,buljong,terning,pakk,mester,assistent}
```

```
SELECT ts_lexize('norwegian_ispell', 'sjokoladefabrikk');
{sjokoladefabrikk,sjokolade,fabrikk}
```

MySpell format is a subset of Hunspell. The `.affix` file of Hunspell has the following structure:

```
PFX A Y 1
PFX A 0 re
SFX T N 4
SFX T 0 st
t SFX T y iest [^aeiou]y
SFX T 0 est [aeiou]y
SFX T 0 est [^ey]
```

The first line of an affix class is the header. Fields of an affix rules are listed after the header:

- parameter name (PFX or SFX)
- flag (name of the affix class)
- stripping characters from beginning (at prefix) or end (at suffix) of the word
- adding affix
- condition that has a format similar to the format of regular expressions.

The `.dict` file looks like the `.dict` file of Ispell:

```
larder/M
lardy/RT
large/RSPMYT
largehearted
```

### Note

MySpell does not support compound words. Hunspell has sophisticated support for compound words. At present, Postgres Pro implements only the basic compound word operations of Hunspell.

### 12.6.6. Snowball Dictionary

The Snowball dictionary template is based on a project by Martin Porter, inventor of the popular Porter's stemming algorithm for the English language. Snowball now provides stemming algorithms for many...
languages (see the Snowball site for more information). Each algorithm understands how to reduce common variant forms of words to a base, or stem, spelling within its language. A Snowball dictionary requires a language parameter to identify which stemmer to use, and optionally can specify a stopword file name that gives a list of words to eliminate. (Postgres Pro's standard stopword lists are also provided by the Snowball project.) For example, there is a built-in definition equivalent to

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_stem (
    TEMPLATE = snowball,
    Language = english,
    StopWords = english
);
```

The stopword file format is the same as already explained.

A Snowball dictionary recognizes everything, whether or not it is able to simplify the word, so it should be placed at the end of the dictionary list. It is useless to have it before any other dictionary because a token will never pass through it to the next dictionary.

### 12.7. Configuration Example

A text search configuration specifies all options necessary to transform a document into a `tsvector`: the parser to use to break text into tokens, and the dictionaries to use to transform each token into a lexeme. Every call of `to_tsvector` or `to_tsquery` needs a text search configuration to perform its processing. The configuration parameter `default_text_search_config` specifies the name of the default configuration, which is the one used by text search functions if an explicit configuration parameter is omitted. It can be set in `postgresql.conf`, or set for an individual session using the `SET` command.

Several predefined text search configurations are available, and you can create custom configurations easily. To facilitate management of text search objects, a set of SQL commands is available, and there are several `psql` commands that display information about text search objects (Section 12.10).

As an example we will create a configuration `pg`, starting by duplicating the built-in `english` configuration:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.pg ( COPY = pg_catalog.english );
```

We will use a Postgres Pro-specific synonym list and store it in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/pg_dict.syn`. The file contents look like:

```
postgres    pg
pgsql       pg
postgresql  pg
```

We define the synonym dictionary like this:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY pg_dict (  
    TEMPLATE = synonym,
    SYNONYMS = pg_dict
);
```

Next we register the Ispell dictionary `english_ispell`, which has its own configuration files:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_ispell (  
    TEMPLATE = ispell,
    DictFile = english,
    AffFile = english,
    StopWords = english
);
```

Now we can set up the mappings for words in configuration `pg`:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION pg
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciword, asciihword, hword_ascipart,
```
We choose not to index or search some token types that the built-in configuration does handle:

```sql
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION pg
   DROP MAPPING FOR email, url, url_path, sfloat, float;
```

Now we can test our configuration:

```sql
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('public.pg', 'Postgres Pro, the highly scalable, SQL compliant, open source object-relational
database management system, is now undergoing beta testing of the next
version of our software.');
```

The next step is to set the session to use the new configuration, which was created in the `public` schema:

```sql
=> \dF
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schema</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>public</td>
<td>pg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```sql
SET default_text_search_config = 'public.pg';
SET SHOW default_text_search_config;
```

12.8. Testing and Debugging Text Search

The behavior of a custom text search configuration can easily become confusing. The functions described in this section are useful for testing text search objects. You can test a complete configuration, or test parsers and dictionaries separately.

12.8.1. Configuration Testing

The function `ts_debug` allows easy testing of a text search configuration.

```sql
ts_debug([ config regconfig, ] document text,
   OUT alias text,
   OUT description text,
   OUT token text,
   OUT dictionaries regdictionary[],
   OUT dictionary regdictionary,
   OUT lexemes text[])
returns setof record
```

`ts_debug` displays information about every token of `document` as produced by the parser and processed by the configured dictionaries. It uses the configuration specified by `config`, or `default_text_search_config` if that argument is omitted.

`ts_debug` returns one row for each token identified in the text by the parser. The columns returned are:

- `alias text` — short name of the token type
- `description text` — description of the token type
- `token text` — text of the token
**Full Text Search**

- `dictionaries regdictionary[]` — the dictionaries selected by the configuration for this token type
- `dictionary regdictionary` — the dictionary that recognized the token, or `NULL` if none did
- `lexemes text[]` — the lexeme(s) produced by the dictionary that recognized the token, or `NULL` if none did; an empty array `({})` means it was recognized as a stop word

Here is a simple example:

```sql
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english', 'a fat cat sat on a mat - it ate a fat rats');
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alias</th>
<th>description</th>
<th>token</th>
<th>dictionaries</th>
<th>dictionary</th>
<th>lexemes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>fat</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{fat}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>cat</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{cat}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{sat}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>mat</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{mat}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{ate}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>fat</td>
<td>{english_stem}</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{fat}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a more extensive demonstration, we first create a `public.english` configuration and Ispell dictionary for the English language:

```sql
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.english ( COPY = pg_catalog.english );
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_ispell (  
    TEMPLATE = ispell,  
    DictFile = english,  
    AffFile = english,  
    StopWords = english
);
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.english
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword WITH english_ispell, english_stem;
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('public.english', 'The Brightest supernovaes');
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alias</th>
<th>description</th>
<th>token</th>
<th>dictionaries</th>
<th>dictionary</th>
<th>lexemes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>The</td>
<td>{english_ispell,english_stem}</td>
<td>english_ispell</td>
<td>{}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td>{}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

404
asciiword | Word, all ASCII | Brightest   | {english_ispell,english_stem} |
english_ispell | {bright}   
blank     | Space symbols   | {}             |
| asciiword | Word, all ASCII | supernovaes | {english_ispell,english_stem} |
english_stem   | {supernova}   

In this example, the word **Brightest** was recognized by the parser as an ASCII word (**asciiword**). For this token type the dictionary list is **english_ispell** and **english_stem**. The word was recognized by **english_ispell**, which reduced it to the noun **bright**. The word **supernovaes** is unknown to the **english_ispell** dictionary so it was passed to the next dictionary, and, fortunately, was recognized (in fact, **english_stem** is a Snowball dictionary which recognizes everything; that is why it was placed at the end of the dictionary list).

The word **The** was recognized by the **english_ispell** dictionary as a stop word (**Section 12.6.1**) and will not be indexed. The spaces are discarded too, since the configuration provides no dictionaries at all for them.

You can reduce the width of the output by explicitly specifying which columns you want to see:

```
SELECT alias, token, dictionary, lexemes
FROM ts_debug('public.english', 'The Brightest supernovaes');
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alias</th>
<th>token</th>
<th>dictionary</th>
<th>lexemes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>The</td>
<td>english_ispell</td>
<td>{}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Brightest</td>
<td>english_ispell</td>
<td>{bright}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blank</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>supernovaes</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>{supernova}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

### 12.8.2. Parser Testing

The following functions allow direct testing of a text search parser.

```
ts_parse(parser_name text, document text, 
            OUT tokid integer, OUT token text) returns setof record
```

```
ts_parse(parser_oid oid, document text, 
            OUT tokid integer, OUT token text) returns setof record
```

**ts_parse** parses the given **document** and returns a series of records, one for each token produced by parsing. Each record includes a **tokid** showing the assigned token type and a **token** which is the text of the token. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_parse('default', '123 - a number');
```

```
tokid | token
-------+--------
 22 | 123
 12 |
 12 | -
  1 | a
 12 |
  1 | number
```

```
ts_token_type(parser_name text, OUT tokid integer, 
               OUT alias text, OUT description text) returns setof record
```

```
ts_token_type(parser_oid oid, OUT tokid integer, 
               OUT alias text, OUT description text) returns setof record
```

**ts_token_type** returns a table which describes each type of token the specified parser can recognize. For each token type, the table gives the integer **tokid** that the parser uses to label a token of that type, the **alias** that names the token type in configuration commands, and a short **description**. For example:
SELECT * FROM ts_token_type('default');

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tokid</th>
<th>alias</th>
<th>description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>word</td>
<td>Word, all letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>numword</td>
<td>Word, letters and digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>url</td>
<td>URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>host</td>
<td>Host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>sfloat</td>
<td>Scientific notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>version</td>
<td>Version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>hword_numpart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, letters and digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>hword_part</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, all letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>hword_asciipart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, all ASCII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>blank</td>
<td>Space symbols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>XML tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>protocol</td>
<td>Protocol head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>numhword</td>
<td>Hyphenated word, letters and digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>asciihword</td>
<td>Hyphenated word, all ASCII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>hword</td>
<td>Hyphenated word, all letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>url_path</td>
<td>URL path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>file</td>
<td>File or path name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>float</td>
<td>Decimal notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>Signed integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>uint</td>
<td>Unsigned integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>entity</td>
<td>XML entity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 12.8.3. Dictionary Testing

The `ts_lexize` function facilitates dictionary testing.

\[
\text{ts_lexize(dict regdictionary, token text) returns text[]}\]

`ts_lexize` returns an array of lexemes if the input `token` is known to the dictionary, or an empty array if the token is known to the dictionary but it is a stop word, or `NULL` if it is an unknown word.

Examples:

```sql
SELECT ts_lexize('english_stem', 'stars');
```

```
{star}
```

```sql
SELECT ts_lexize('english_stem', 'a');
```

```
{}  
```

### Note

The `ts_lexize` function expects a single `token`, not text. Here is a case where this can be confusing:

```sql
SELECT ts_lexize('thesaurus_astro', 'supernovae stars') is null;
```

```
?column?
```

The thesaurus dictionary `thesaurus_astro` does know the phrase `supernovae stars`, but `ts_lexize` fails since it does not parse the input text but treats it as a single token. Use `plainto_tsquery` or `to_tsvector` to test thesaurus dictionaries, for example:
12.9. GIN and GiST Index Types

There are two kinds of indexes that can be used to speed up full text searches. Note that indexes are not mandatory for full text searching, but in cases where a column is searched on a regular basis, an index is usually desirable.

CREATE INDEX name ON table USING GIN (column);

Creates a GIN (Generalized Inverted Index)-based index. The column must be of tsvector type.

CREATE INDEX name ON table USING GIST (column [ { DEFAULT | tsvector_ops } (siglen = number) ]);

Creates a GiST (Generalized Search Tree)-based index. The column can be of tsvector or tsquery type. Optional integer parameter siglen determines signature length in bytes (see below for details).

GIN indexes are the preferred text search index type. As inverted indexes, they contain an index entry for each word (lexeme), with a compressed list of matching locations. Multi-word searches can find the first match, then use the index to remove rows that are lacking additional words. GIN indexes store only the words (lexemes) of tsvector values, and not their weight labels. Thus a table row recheck is needed when using a query that involves weights.

A GiST index is lossy, meaning that the index might produce false matches, and it is necessary to check the actual table row to eliminate such false matches. (Postgres Pro does this automatically when needed.) GiST indexes are lossy because each document is represented in the index by a fixed-length signature. The signature length in bytes is determined by the value of the optional integer parameter siglen. The default signature length (when siglen is not specified) is 124 bytes, the maximum signature length is 2024 bytes. The signature is generated by hashing each word into a single bit in an n-bit string, with all these bits OR-ed together to produce an n-bit document signature. When two words hash to the same bit position there will be a false match. If all words in the query have matches (real or false) then the table row must be retrieved to see if the match is correct. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

A GiST index can be covering, i.e., use the INCLUDE clause. Included columns can have data types without any GiST operator class. Included attributes will be stored uncompressed.

Lossiness causes performance degradation due to unnecessary fetches of table records that turn out to be false matches. Since random access to table records is slow, this limits the usefulness of GiST indexes. The likelihood of false matches depends on several factors, in particular the number of unique words, so using dictionaries to reduce this number is recommended.

Note that GIN index build time can often be improved by increasing maintenance_work_mem, while GiST index build time is not sensitive to that parameter.

Partitioning of big collections and the proper use of GIN and GiST indexes allows the implementation of very fast searches with online update. Partitioning can be done at the database level using table inheritance, or by distributing documents over servers and collecting external search results, e.g., via Foreign Data access. The latter is possible because ranking functions use only local information.

12.10. psql Support

Information about text search configuration objects can be obtained in psql using a set of commands:

\dF{d,p,t}[+][PATTERN]
An optional + produces more details.

The optional parameter PATTERN can be the name of a text search object, optionally schema-qualified. If PATTERN is omitted then information about all visible objects will be displayed. PATTERN can be a regular expression and can provide separate patterns for the schema and object names. The following examples illustrate this:

```sql
=> \dF *fulltext*
List of text search configurations
Schema | Name        | Description
--------+--------------+-------------
public | fulltext_cfg |

=> \dF *.fulltext*
List of text search configurations
Schema | Name        | Description
--------+--------------+-------------
fulltext | fulltext_cfg |
public | fulltext_cfg |
```

The available commands are:

```sql
\dF[+] [PATTERN]
List text search configurations (add + for more detail).

=> \dF russian
List of text search configurations
Schema | Name        | Description
--------+--------------+-------------
pg_catalog | russian | configuration for russian language

=> \dF+ russian
Text search configuration "pg_catalog.russian"
Parser: "pg_catalog.default"
Token | Dictionaries
-----------------+--------------
asciihword | english_stem
asciword    | english_stem
email       | simple
file        | simple
float       | simple
host        | simple
hword       | russian.stem
hword_asciipart | english_stem
hword_numpart | simple
hword_part  | russian.stem
int         | simple
numhword    | simple
numword     | simple
sfloat      | simple
uint        | simple
url         | simple
url_path    | simple
version     | simple
word        | russian.stem
```

```sql
\dFd[+] [PATTERN]
List text search dictionaries (add + for more detail).

=> \dFd
```
Full Text Search

List of text search dictionaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schema</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>arabic_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for arabic language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>armenian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for armenian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>basque_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for basque language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>catalan_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for catalan language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>danish_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for danish language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>dutch_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for dutch language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>english_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for english language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>finnish_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for finnish language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>french_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for french language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>german_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for german language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>greek_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for greek language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>hindi_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for hindi language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>hungarian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for hungarian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>indonesian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for indonesian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>irish_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for irish language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>italian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for italian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>lithuanian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for lithuanian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>nepali_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for nepali language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>norwegian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for norwegian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>portuguese_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for portuguese language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>romanian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for romanian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>russian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for russian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>serbian_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for serbian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>simple</td>
<td>simple dictionary: just lower case and check for stopwords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>spanish_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for spanish language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>swedish_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for swedish language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>tamil_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for tamil language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>turkish_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for turkish language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>yiddish_stem</td>
<td>snowball stemmer for yiddish language</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List text search parsers (add + for more detail).

=> \dFp

List of text search parsers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schema</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>default</td>
<td>default word parser</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

=> \dFp+

Text search parser "pg_catalog.default"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start parse</td>
<td>prsd_start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get next token</td>
<td>prsd_nexttoken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End parse</td>
<td>prsd_end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get headline</td>
<td>prsd_headline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get token types</td>
<td>prsd_lextype</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Token types for parser "pg_catalog.default"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Token name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asciihword</td>
<td>Hyphenated word, all ASCII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Full Text Search

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>blank</th>
<th>Space symbols</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entity</td>
<td>XML entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file</td>
<td>File or path name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>Decimal notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>Host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword</td>
<td>Hyphenated word, all letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword_asciipart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, all ASCII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword_numpart</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, letters and digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hword_part</td>
<td>Hyphenated word part, all letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int</td>
<td>Signed integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numhword</td>
<td>Hyphenated word, letters and digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numword</td>
<td>Word, letters and digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protocol</td>
<td>Protocol head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sfloat</td>
<td>Scientific notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tag</td>
<td>XML tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint</td>
<td>Unsigned integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url_path</td>
<td>URL path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>Version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word</td>
<td>Word, all letters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(23 rows)

\dFt[+] [PATTERN]

List text search templates (add + for more detail).

=> \dFt

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schema</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>ispell</td>
<td>ispell dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>simple</td>
<td>simple dictionary: just lower case and check for stopword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>snowball</td>
<td>snowball stemmer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>synonym</td>
<td>synonym dictionary: replace word by its synonym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>thesaurus</td>
<td>thesaurus dictionary: phrase by phrase substitution</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.11. Limitations

The current limitations of Postgres Pro's text search features are:

- The length of each lexeme must be less than 2 kilobytes
- The length of a tsvector (lexemes + positions) must be less than 1 megabyte
- The number of lexemes must be less than $2^{64}$
- Position values in tsvector must be greater than 0 and no more than 16,383
- The match distance in a $<N>$ (FOLLOWED BY) tsquery operator cannot be more than 16,384
- No more than 256 positions per lexeme
- The number of nodes (lexemes + operators) in a tsquery must be less than 32,768

For comparison, the PostgreSQL 8.1 documentation contained 10,441 unique words, a total of 335,420 words, and the most frequent word “postgresql” was mentioned 6,127 times in 655 documents.

Another example — the PostgreSQL mailing list archives contained 910,989 unique words with 57,491,343 lexemes in 461,020 messages.
Chapter 13. Concurrency Control

This chapter describes the behavior of the Postgres Pro database system when two or more sessions try to access the same data at the same time. The goals in that situation are to allow efficient access for all sessions while maintaining strict data integrity. Every developer of database applications should be familiar with the topics covered in this chapter.

13.1. Introduction

Postgres Pro provides a rich set of tools for developers to manage concurrent access to data. Internally, data consistency is maintained by using a multiversion model (Multiversion Concurrency Control, MVCC). This means that each SQL statement sees a snapshot of data (a database version) as it was some time ago, regardless of the current state of the underlying data. This prevents statements from viewing inconsistent data produced by concurrent transactions performing updates on the same data rows, providing transaction isolation for each database session. MVCC, by eschewing the locking methodologies of traditional database systems, minimizes lock contention in order to allow for reasonable performance in multiuser environments.

The main advantage of using the MVCC model of concurrency control rather than locking is that in MVCC locks acquired for querying (reading) data do not conflict with locks acquired for writing data, and so reading never blocks writing and writing never blocks reading. Postgres Pro maintains this guarantee even when providing the strictest level of transaction isolation through the use of an innovative Serializable Snapshot Isolation (SSI) level.

Table- and row-level locking facilities are also available in Postgres Pro for applications which don't generally need full transaction isolation and prefer to explicitly manage particular points of conflict. However, proper use of MVCC will generally provide better performance than locks. In addition, application-defined advisory locks provide a mechanism for acquiring locks that are not tied to a single transaction.

13.2. Transaction Isolation

The SQL standard defines four levels of transaction isolation. The most strict is Serializable, which is defined by the standard in a paragraph which says that any concurrent execution of a set of Serializable transactions is guaranteed to produce the same effect as running them one at a time in some order. The other three levels are defined in terms of phenomena, resulting from interaction between concurrent transactions, which must not occur at each level. The standard notes that due to the definition of Serializable, none of these phenomena are possible at that level. (This is hardly surprising -- if the effect of the transactions must be consistent with having been run one at a time, how could you see any phenomena caused by interactions?)

The phenomena which are prohibited at various levels are:

dirty read
A transaction reads data written by a concurrent uncommitted transaction.

nonrepetable read
A transaction re-reads data it has previously read and finds that data has been modified by another transaction (that committed since the initial read).

phantom read
A transaction re-executes a query returning a set of rows that satisfy a search condition and finds that the set of rows satisfying the condition has changed due to another recently-committed transaction.

serialization anomaly
The result of successfully committing a group of transactions is inconsistent with all possible orderings of running those transactions one at a time.
The SQL standard and Postgres Pro-implemented transaction isolation levels are described in Table 13.1.

### Table 13.1. Transaction Isolation Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isolation Level</th>
<th>Dirty Read</th>
<th>Nonrepeatable Read</th>
<th>Phantom Read</th>
<th>Serialization Anomaly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Read uncommitted</td>
<td>Allowed, but not in PG</td>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>Possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read committed</td>
<td>Not possible</td>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>Possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeatable read</td>
<td>Not possible</td>
<td>Not possible</td>
<td>Allowed, but not in PG</td>
<td>Possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serializable</td>
<td>Not possible</td>
<td>Not possible</td>
<td>Not possible</td>
<td>Not possible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Postgres Pro, you can request any of the four standard transaction isolation levels, but internally only three distinct isolation levels are implemented, i.e., Postgres Pro's Read Uncommitted mode behaves like Read Committed. This is because it is the only sensible way to map the standard isolation levels to Postgres Pro's multiversion concurrency control architecture.

The table also shows that Postgres Pro's Repeatable Read implementation does not allow phantom reads. Stricter behavior is permitted by the SQL standard: the four isolation levels only define which phenomena must not happen, not which phenomena must happen. The behavior of the available isolation levels is detailed in the following subsections.

To set the transaction isolation level of a transaction, use the command `SET TRANSACTION`.

---

**Important**

Some Postgres Pro data types and functions have special rules regarding transactional behavior. In particular, changes made to a sequence (and therefore the counter of a column declared using `serial`) are immediately visible to all other transactions and are not rolled back if the transaction that made the changes aborts. See Section 9.17 and Section 8.1.4.

---

### 13.2.1. Read Committed Isolation Level

Read Committed is the default isolation level in Postgres Pro. When a transaction uses this isolation level, a `SELECT` query (without a `FOR UPDATE/SHARE` clause) sees only data committed before the query began; it never sees either uncommitted data or changes committed during query execution by concurrent transactions. In effect, a `SELECT` query sees a snapshot of the database as of the instant the query begins to run. However, `SELECT` does see the effects of previous updates executed within its own transaction, even though they are not yet committed. Also note that two successive `SELECT` commands can see different data, even though they are within a single transaction, if other transactions commit changes after the first `SELECT` starts and before the second `SELECT` starts.

`UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands behave the same as `SELECT` in terms of searching for target rows: they will only find target rows that were committed as of the command start time. However, such a target row might have already been updated (or deleted or locked) by another concurrent transaction by the time it is found. In this case, the would-be updater will wait for the first updating transaction to commit or roll back (if it is still in progress). If the first updater rolls back, then its effects are negated and the second updater can proceed with updating the originally found row. If the first updater commits, the second updater will ignore the row if the first updater deleted it, otherwise it will attempt to apply its operation to the updated version of the row. The search condition of the command (the `WHERE` clause) is re-evaluated to see if the updated version of the row still matches the search condition. If so, the second updater proceeds with its operation using the updated version of the row. In the case of `SELECT FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT FOR SHARE`, this means it is the updated version of the row that is locked and returned to the client.
Concurrency Control

**INSERT** with an **ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE** clause behaves similarly. In Read Committed mode, each row proposed for insertion will either insert or update. Unless there are unrelated errors, one of those two outcomes is guaranteed. If a conflict originates in another transaction whose effects are not yet visible to the **INSERT**, the **UPDATE** clause will affect that row, even though possibly no version of that row is conventionally visible to the command.

**INSERT** with an **ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING** clause may have insertion not proceed for a row due to the outcome of another transaction whose effects are not visible to the **INSERT** snapshot. Again, this is only the case in Read Committed mode.

Because of the above rules, it is possible for an updating command to see an inconsistent snapshot: it can see the effects of concurrent updating commands on the same rows it is trying to update, but it does not see effects of those commands on other rows in the database. This behavior makes Read Committed mode unsuitable for commands that involve complex search conditions; however, it is just right for simpler cases. For example, consider updating bank balances with transactions like:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00 WHERE acctnum = 12345;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00 WHERE acctnum = 7534;
COMMIT;
```

If two such transactions concurrently try to change the balance of account 12345, we clearly want the second transaction to start with the updated version of the account's row. Because each command is affecting only a predetermined row, letting it see the updated version of the row does not create any troublesome inconsistency.

More complex usage can produce undesirable results in Read Committed mode. For example, consider a **DELETE** command operating on data that is being both added and removed from its restriction criteria by another command, e.g., assume **website** is a two-row table with website.hits equaling 9 and 10:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE website SET hits = hits + 1;
-- run from another session:  DELETE FROM website WHERE hits = 10;
COMMIT;
```

The **DELETE** will have no effect even though there is a **website.hits = 10** row before and after the **UPDATE**. This occurs because the pre-update row value 9 is skipped, and when the **UPDATE** completes and **DELETE** obtains a lock, the new row value is no longer 10 but 11, which no longer matches the criteria.

Because Read Committed mode starts each command with a new snapshot that includes all transactions committed up to that instant, subsequent commands in the same transaction will see the effects of the committed concurrent transaction in any case. The point at issue above is whether or not a single command sees an absolutely consistent view of the database.

The partial transaction isolation provided by Read Committed mode is adequate for many applications, and this mode is fast and simple to use; however, it is not sufficient for all cases. Applications that do complex queries and updates might require a more rigorously consistent view of the database than Read Committed mode provides.

### 13.2.2. Repeatable Read Isolation Level

The **Repeatable Read** isolation level only sees data committed before the transaction began; it never sees either uncommitted data or changes committed during transaction execution by concurrent transactions. (However, the query does see the effects of previous updates executed within its own transaction, even though they are not yet committed.) This is a stronger guarantee than is required by the SQL standard for this isolation level, and prevents all of the phenomena described in Table 13.1 except for serialization anomalies. As mentioned above, this is specifically allowed by the standard, which only describes the minimum protections each isolation level must provide.

This level is different from Read Committed in that a query in a repeatable read transaction sees a snapshot as of the start of the first non-transaction-control statement in the transaction, not as of the
Concurrency Control

start of the current statement within the transaction. Thus, successive **SELECT** commands within a *single* transaction see the same data, i.e., they do not see changes made by other transactions that committed after their own transaction started.

Applications using this level must be prepared to retry transactions due to serialization failures.

**UPDATE, DELETE, SELECT FOR UPDATE, and SELECT FOR SHARE** commands behave the same as **SELECT** in terms of searching for target rows: they will only find target rows that were committed as of the transaction start time. However, such a target row might have already been updated (or deleted or locked) by another concurrent transaction by the time it is found. In this case, the repeatable read transaction will wait for the first updating transaction to commit or roll back (if it is still in progress). If the first updater rolls back, then its effects are negated and the repeatable read transaction can proceed with updating the originally found row. But if the first updater commits (and actually updated or deleted the row, not just locked it) then the repeatable read transaction will be rolled back with the message

**ERROR: could not serialize access due to concurrent update**

because a repeatable read transaction cannot modify or lock rows changed by other transactions after the repeatable read transaction began.

When an application receives this error message, it should abort the current transaction and retry the whole transaction from the beginning. The second time through, the transaction will see the previously-committed change as part of its initial view of the database, so there is no logical conflict in using the new version of the row as the starting point for the new transaction's update.

Note that only updating transactions might need to be retried; read-only transactions will never have serialization conflicts.

The Repeatable Read mode provides a rigorous guarantee that each transaction sees a completely stable view of the database. However, this view will not necessarily always be consistent with some serial (one at a time) execution of concurrent transactions of the same level. For example, even a read-only transaction at this level may see a control record updated to show that a batch has been completed but *not* see one of the detail records which is logically part of the batch because it read an earlier revision of the control record. Attempts to enforce business rules by transactions running at this isolation level are not likely to work correctly without careful use of explicit locks to block conflicting transactions.

The Repeatable Read isolation level is implemented using a technique known in academic database literature and in some other database products as **Snapshot Isolation**. Differences in behavior and performance may be observed when compared with systems that use a traditional locking technique that reduces concurrency. Some other systems may even offer Repeatable Read and Snapshot Isolation as distinct isolation levels with different behavior. The permitted phenomena that distinguish the two techniques were not formalized by database researchers until after the SQL standard was developed, and are outside the scope of this manual. For a full treatment, please see [berenson95](#).

**Note**

Prior to PostgreSQL version 9.1, a request for the Serializable transaction isolation level provided exactly the same behavior described here. To retain the legacy Serializable behavior, Repeatable Read should now be requested.

### 13.2.3. Serializable Isolation Level

The **Serializable** isolation level provides the strictest transaction isolation. This level emulates serial transaction execution for all committed transactions; as if transactions had been executed one after another, serially, rather than concurrently. However, like the Repeatable Read level, applications using this level must be prepared to retry transactions due to serialization failures. In fact, this isolation level works exactly the same as Repeatable Read except that it monitors for conditions which could make execution of a concurrent set of serializable transactions behave in a manner inconsistent with
all possible serial (one at a time) executions of those transactions. This monitoring does not introduce any blocking beyond that present in repeatable read, but there is some overhead to the monitoring, and detection of the conditions which could cause a serialization anomaly will trigger a serialization failure.

As an example, consider a table `mytab`, initially containing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class</th>
<th>value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Suppose that serializable transaction A computes:

```sql
SELECT SUM(value) FROM mytab WHERE class = 1;
```

and then inserts the result (30) as the value in a new row with `class = 2`. Concurrently, serializable transaction B computes:

```sql
SELECT SUM(value) FROM mytab WHERE class = 2;
```

and obtains the result 300, which it inserts in a new row with `class = 1`. Then both transactions try to commit. If either transaction were running at the Repeatable Read isolation level, both would be allowed to commit; but since there is no serial order of execution consistent with the result, using Serializable transactions will allow one transaction to commit and will roll the other back with this message:

```
ERROR:  could not serialize access due to read/write dependencies among transactions
```

This is because if A had executed before B, B would have computed the sum 330, not 300, and similarly the other order would have resulted in a different sum computed by A.

When relying on Serializable transactions to prevent anomalies, it is important that any data read from a permanent user table not be considered valid until the transaction which read it has successfully committed. This is true even for read-only transactions, except that data read within a deferrable read-only transaction is known to be valid as soon as it is read, because such a transaction waits until it can acquire a snapshot guaranteed to be free from such problems before starting to read any data. In all other cases applications must not depend on results read during a transaction that later aborted; instead, they should retry the transaction until it succeeds.

To guarantee true serializability Postgres Pro uses predicate locking, which means that it keeps locks which allow it to determine when a write would have had an impact on the result of a previous read from a concurrent transaction, had it run first. In Postgres Pro these locks do not cause any blocking and therefore can not play any part in causing a deadlock. They are used to identify and flag dependencies among concurrent Serializable transactions which in certain combinations can lead to serialization anomalies. In contrast, a Read Committed or Repeatable Read transaction which wants to ensure data consistency may need to take out a lock on an entire table, which could block other users attempting to use that table, or it may use `SELECT FOR UPDATE` or `SELECT FOR SHARE` which not only can block other transactions but cause disk access.

Predicate locks in Postgres Pro, like in most other database systems, are based on data actually accessed by a transaction. These will show up in the `pg_locks` system view with a mode of `SIReadLock`. The particular locks acquired during execution of a query will depend on the plan used by the query, and multiple finer-grained locks (e.g., tuple locks) may be combined into fewer coarser-grained locks (e.g., page locks) during the course of the transaction to prevent exhaustion of the memory used to track the locks. A `READ ONLY` transaction may be able to release its SIRead locks before completion, if it detects that no conflicts can still occur which could lead to a serialization anomaly. In fact, `READ ONLY` transactions will often be able to establish that fact at startup and avoid taking any predicate locks. If you explicitly request a `SERIALIZABLE READ ONLY DEFERRABLE` transaction, it will block until it can establish this fact. (This is the only case where Serializable transactions block but Repeatable Read transactions don’t.) On the other hand, SIRead locks often need to be kept past transaction commit, until overlapping read write transactions complete.
Consistent use of Serializable transactions can simplify development. The guarantee that any set of successfully committed concurrent Serializable transactions will have the same effect as if they were run one at a time means that if you can demonstrate that a single transaction, as written, will do the right thing when run by itself, you can have confidence that it will do the right thing in any mix of Serializable transactions, even without any information about what those other transactions might do, or it will not successfully commit. It is important that an environment which uses this technique have a generalized way of handling serialization failures (which always return with an SQLSTATE value of '40001'), because it will be very hard to predict exactly which transactions might contribute to the read/write dependencies and need to be rolled back to prevent serialization anomalies. The monitoring of read/write dependencies has a cost, as does the restart of transactions which are terminated with a serialization failure, but balanced against the cost and blocking involved in use of explicit locks and SELECT FOR UPDATE or SELECT FOR SHARE, Serializable transactions are the best performance choice for some environments.

While Postgres Pro's Serializable transaction isolation level only allows concurrent transactions to commit if it can prove there is a serial order of execution that would produce the same effect, it doesn't always prevent errors from being raised that would not occur in true serial execution. In particular, it is possible to see unique constraint violations caused by conflicts with overlapping Serializable transactions even after explicitly checking that the key isn't present before attempting to insert it. This can be avoided by making sure that all Serializable transactions that insert potentially conflicting keys explicitly check if they can do so first. For example, imagine an application that asks the user for a new key and then checks that it doesn't exist already by trying to select it first, or generates a new key by selecting the maximum existing key and adding one. If some Serializable transactions insert new keys directly without following this protocol, unique constraints violations might be reported even in cases where they could not occur in a serial execution of the concurrent transactions.

For optimal performance when relying on Serializable transactions for concurrency control, these issues should be considered:

- Declare transactions as READ ONLY when possible.
- Control the number of active connections, using a connection pool if needed. This is always an important performance consideration, but it can be particularly important in a busy system using Serializable transactions.
- Don't put more into a single transaction than needed for integrity purposes.
- Don't leave connections dangling “idle in transaction” longer than necessary. The configuration parameter idle_in_transaction_session_timeout may be used to automatically disconnect lingering sessions.
- Eliminate explicit locks, SELECT FOR UPDATE, and SELECT FOR SHARE where no longer needed due to the protections automatically provided by Serializable transactions.
- When the system is forced to combine multiple page-level predicate locks into a single relation-level predicate lock because the predicate lock table is short of memory, an increase in the rate of serialization failures may occur. You can avoid this by increasing max_pred_locks_per_transaction, max_pred_locks_per_relation, and/or max_pred_locks_per_page.
- A sequential scan will always necessitate a relation-level predicate lock. This can result in an increased rate of serialization failures. It may be helpful to encourage the use of index scans by reducing random_page_cost and/or increasing cpu_tuple_cost. Be sure to weigh any decrease in transaction rollbacks and restarts against any overall change in query execution time.

The Serializable isolation level is implemented using a technique known in academic database literature as Serializable Snapshot Isolation, which builds on Snapshot Isolation by adding checks for serialization anomalies. Some differences in behavior and performance may be observed when compared with other systems that use a traditional locking technique. Please see ports12 for detailed information.

### 13.3. Explicit Locking

Postgres Pro provides various lock modes to control concurrent access to data in tables. These modes can be used for application-controlled locking in situations where MVCC does not give the desired behavior.
Also, most Postgres Pro commands automatically acquire locks of appropriate modes to ensure that referenced tables are not dropped or modified in incompatible ways while the command executes. (For example, `TRUNCATE` cannot safely be executed concurrently with other operations on the same table, so it obtains an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the table to enforce that.)

To examine a list of the currently outstanding locks in a database server, use the `pg_locks` system view. For more information on monitoring the status of the lock manager subsystem, refer to Chapter 26.

### 13.3.1. Table-Level Locks

The list below shows the available lock modes and the contexts in which they are used automatically by Postgres Pro. You can also acquire any of these locks explicitly with the command `LOCK`. Remember that all of these lock modes are table-level locks, even if the name contains the word “row”; the names of the lock modes are historical. To some extent the names reflect the typical usage of each lock mode — but the semantics are all the same. The only real difference between one lock mode and another is the set of lock modes with which each conflicts (see Table 13.2). Two transactions cannot hold locks of conflicting modes on the same table at the same time. (However, a transaction never conflicts with itself. For example, it might acquire `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock and later acquire `ACCESS SHARE` lock on the same table.) Non-conflicting lock modes can be held concurrently by many transactions. Notice in particular that some lock modes are self-conflicting (for example, an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock cannot be held by more than one transaction at a time) while others are not self-conflicting (for example, an `ACCESS SHARE` lock can be held by multiple transactions).

#### Table-Level Lock Modes

**ACCESS SHARE**

- **Conflicts with the `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock mode only.**

  The `SELECT` command acquires a lock of this mode on referenced tables. In general, any query that only *reads* a table and does not modify it will acquire this lock mode.

**ROW SHARE**

- **Conflicts with the `EXCLUSIVE` and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes.**

  The `SELECT FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands acquire a lock of this mode on the target table(s) (in addition to `ACCESS SHARE` locks on any other tables that are referenced but not selected FOR UPDATE/FOR SHARE).

**ROW EXCLUSIVE**

- **Conflicts with the `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes.**

  The commands `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `INSERT` acquire this lock mode on the target table (in addition to `ACCESS SHARE` locks on any other referenced tables). In general, this lock mode will be acquired by any command that *modifies data* in a table.

**SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE**

- **Conflicts with the `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes.** This mode protects a table against concurrent schema changes and VACUUM runs.

  Acquired by VACUUM (without FULL), ANALYZE, CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY, REINDEX CONCURRENTLY, CREATE STATISTICS, and certain `ALTER INDEX` and `ALTER TABLE` variants (for full details see the documentation of these commands).

**SHARE**

- **Conflicts with the `ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes.** This mode protects a table against concurrent data changes.
Concurrent Control

Acquired by CREATE INDEX (without CONCURRENTLY).

SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE

Conflicts with the ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW Exclusive, EXCLUSIVE, and ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock modes. This mode protects a table against concurrent data changes, and is self-exclusive so that only one session can hold it at a time.

Acquired by CREATE TRIGGER and some forms of ALTER TABLE.

EXCLUSIVE

Conflicts with the ROW SHARE, ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW Exclusive, EXCLUSIVE, and ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock modes. This mode allows only concurrent ACCESS SHARE locks, i.e., only reads from the table can proceed in parallel with a transaction holding this lock mode.

Acquired by REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW CONCURRENTLY.

ACCESS EXCLUSIVE

Conflicts with locks of ACCESS SHARE, ROW SHARE, ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW Exclusive, EXCLUSIVE, and ACCESS EXCLUSIVE mode. This mode guarantees that the holder is the only transaction accessing the table in any way.

Acquired by the DROP TABLE, TRUNCATE, REINDEX, CLUSTER, VACUUM FULL, and REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW (without CONCURRENTLY) commands. Many forms of ALTER INDEX and ALTER TABLE also acquire a lock at this level. This is also the default lock mode for LOCK TABLE statements that do not specify a mode explicitly.

Tip

Only an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock blocks a SELECT (without FOR UPDATE/SHARE) statement.

Besides, there are two additional lock modes designed to support 1C Enterprise. These modes do not conflict with any other lock modes described above. Their use is possible, but not encouraged, as advisory locks provide the same functionality.

APPLICATION SHARE

Conflicts with the APPLICATION EXCLUSIVE lock mode only.

APPLICATION EXCLUSIVE

Conflicts with the APPLICATION SHARE and APPLICATION EXCLUSIVE lock modes.

Once acquired, a lock is normally held until the end of the transaction. But if a lock is acquired after establishing a savepoint, the lock is released immediately if the savepoint is rolled back to. This is consistent with the principle that ROLLBACK cancels all effects of the commands since the savepoint. The same holds for locks acquired within a PL/pgSQL exception block: an error escape from the block releases locks acquired within it.

Table 13.2. Conflicting Lock Modes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requested Lock Mode</th>
<th>Existing Lock Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS SHARE</td>
<td>ROW SHARE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ACCESS SHARE | | | | | | | | X
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requested Lock Mode</th>
<th>ACCESS SHARE</th>
<th>ROW SHARE</th>
<th>ROW EXCL.</th>
<th>SHARE UPDATE EXCL.</th>
<th>SHARE ROW EXCL.</th>
<th>EXCL. ACCESS</th>
<th>APP. SHARE</th>
<th>APP. EXCL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ROW SHARE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROW EXCL.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHARE UPDATE EXCL.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHARE EXCL.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS EXCL.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APP. SHARE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APP. EXCL.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13.3.2. Row-Level Locks

In addition to table-level locks, there are row-level locks, which are listed as below with the contexts in which they are used automatically by Postgres Pro. See Table 13.3 for a complete table of row-level lock conflicts. Note that a transaction can hold conflicting locks on the same row, even in different subtransactions; but other than that, two transactions can never hold conflicting locks on the same row. Row-level locks do not affect data querying; they block only writers and lockers to the same row. Row-level locks are released at transaction end or during savepoint rollback, just like table-level locks.

#### Row-Level Lock Modes

**FOR UPDATE**

For update causes the rows retrieved by the SELECT statement to be locked as though for update. This prevents them from being locked, modified or deleted by other transactions until the current transaction ends. That is, other transactions that attempt UPDATE, DELETE, SELECT FOR UPDATE, SELECT FOR NO KEY UPDATE, SELECT FOR SHARE or SELECT FOR KEY SHARE of these rows will be blocked until the current transaction ends; conversely, SELECT FOR UPDATE will wait for a concurrent transaction that has run any of those commands on the same row, and will then lock and return the updated row (or no row, if the row was deleted). Within a REPEATABLE READ or SERIALIZABLE transaction, however, an error will be thrown if a row to be locked has changed since the transaction started. For further discussion see Section 13.4.

The FOR UPDATE lock mode is also acquired by any DELETE on a row, and also by an UPDATE that modifies the values of certain columns. Currently, the set of columns considered for the UPDATE case are those that have a unique index on them that can be used in a foreign key (so partial indexes and expressional indexes are not considered), but this may change in the future.

**FOR NO KEY UPDATE**

Behaves similarly to FOR UPDATE, except that the lock acquired is weaker: this lock will not block SELECT FOR KEY SHARE commands that attempt to acquire a lock on the same rows. This lock mode is also acquired by any UPDATE that does not acquire a FOR UPDATE lock.
CONCURRENCY CONTROL

FOR SHARE

Behaves similarly to FOR NO KEY UPDATE, except that it acquires a shared lock rather than exclusive lock on each retrieved row. A shared lock blocks other transactions from performing UPDATE, DELETE, SELECT FOR UPDATE or SELECT FOR NO KEY UPDATE on these rows, but it does not prevent them from performing SELECT FOR SHARE or SELECT FOR KEY SHARE.

FOR KEY SHARE

Behaves similarly to FOR SHARE, except that the lock is weaker: SELECT FOR UPDATE is blocked, but not SELECT FOR NO KEY UPDATE. A key-shared lock blocks other transactions from performing DELETE or any UPDATE that changes the key values, but not other UPDATE, and neither does it prevent SELECT FOR NO KEY UPDATE, SELECT FOR SHARE, or SELECT FOR KEY SHARE.

Postgres Pro doesn’t remember any information about modified rows in memory, so there is no limit on the number of rows locked at one time. However, locking a row might cause a disk write, e.g., SELECT FOR UPDATE modifies selected rows to mark them locked, and so will result in disk writes.

Table 13.3. Conflicting Row-Level Locks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requested Lock Mode</th>
<th>Current Lock Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FOR KEY SHARE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOR KEY SHARE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOR SHARE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOR NO KEY UPDATE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOR UPDATE</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.3.3. Page-Level Locks

In addition to table and row locks, page-level share/exclusive locks are used to control read/write access to table pages in the shared buffer pool. These locks are released immediately after a row is fetched or updated. Application developers normally need not be concerned with page-level locks, but they are mentioned here for completeness.

13.3.4. Deadlocks

The use of explicit locking can increase the likelihood of deadlocks, wherein two (or more) transactions each hold locks that the other wants. For example, if transaction 1 acquires an exclusive lock on table A and then tries to acquire an exclusive lock on table B, while transaction 2 has already exclusive-locked table B and now wants an exclusive lock on table A, then neither one can proceed. Postgres Pro automatically detects deadlock situations and resolves them by aborting one of the transactions involved, allowing the other(s) to complete. (Exactly which transaction will be aborted is difficult to predict and should not be relied upon.)

Note that deadlocks can also occur as the result of row-level locks (and thus, they can occur even if explicit locking is not used). Consider the case in which two concurrent transactions modify a table. The first transaction executes:

```sql
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00 WHERE acctnum = 11111;
```

This acquires a row-level lock on the row with the specified account number. Then, the second transaction executes:

```sql
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00 WHERE acctnum = 22222;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00 WHERE acctnum = 11111;
```

The first UPDATE statement successfully acquires a row-level lock on the specified row, so it succeeds in updating that row. However, the second UPDATE statement finds that the row it is attempting to update has already been locked, so it waits for the transaction that acquired the lock to complete. Transaction two is now waiting on transaction one to complete before it continues execution. Now, transaction one executes:
Concurrency Control

UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00 WHERE acctnum = 22222;

Transaction one attempts to acquire a row-level lock on the specified row, but it cannot: transaction two already holds such a lock. So it waits for transaction two to complete. Thus, transaction one is blocked on transaction two, and transaction two is blocked on transaction one: a deadlock condition. PostgreSQL will detect this situation and abort one of the transactions.

The best defense against deadlocks is generally to avoid them by being certain that all applications using a database acquire locks on multiple objects in a consistent order. In the example above, if both transactions had updated the rows in the same order, no deadlock would have occurred. One should also ensure that the first lock acquired on an object in a transaction is the most restrictive mode that will be needed for that object. If it is not feasible to verify this in advance, then deadlocks can be handled on-the-fly by retrying transactions that abort due to deadlocks.

So long as no deadlock situation is detected, a transaction seeking either a table-level or row-level lock will wait indefinitely for conflicting locks to be released. This means it is a bad idea for applications to hold transactions open for long periods of time (e.g., while waiting for user input).

13.3.5. Advisory Locks

PostgreSQL provides a means for creating locks that have application-defined meanings. These are called advisory locks, because the system does not enforce their use — it is up to the application to use them correctly. Advisory locks can be useful for locking strategies that are an awkward fit for the MVCC model. For example, a common use of advisory locks is to emulate pessimistic locking strategies typical of so-called “flat file” data management systems. While a flag stored in a table could be used for the same purpose, advisory locks are faster, avoid table bloat, and are automatically cleaned up by the server at the end of the session.

There are two ways to acquire an advisory lock in PostgreSQL: at session level or at transaction level. Once acquired at session level, an advisory lock is held until explicitly released or the session ends. Unlike standard lock requests, session-level advisory lock requests do not honor transaction semantics: a lock acquired during a transaction that is later rolled back will still be held following the rollback, and likewise an unlock is effective even if the calling transaction fails later. A lock can be acquired multiple times by its owning process; for each completed lock request there must be a corresponding unlock request before the lock is actually released. Transaction-level lock requests, on the other hand, behave more like regular lock requests: they are automatically released at the end of the transaction, and there is no explicit unlock operation. This behavior is often more convenient than the session-level behavior for short-term usage of an advisory lock. Session-level and transaction-level lock requests for the same advisory lock identifier will block each other in the expected way. If a session already holds a given advisory lock, additional requests by it will always succeed, even if other sessions are awaiting the lock; this statement is true regardless of whether the existing lock hold and new request are at session level or transaction level.

Like all locks in PostgreSQL, a complete list of advisory locks currently held by any session can be found in the pg_locks system view.

Both advisory locks and regular locks are stored in a shared memory pool whose size is defined by the configuration variables max_locks_per_transaction and max_connections. Care must be taken not to exhaust this memory or the server will be unable to grant any locks at all. This imposes an upper limit on the number of advisory locks grantable by the server, typically in the tens to hundreds of thousands depending on how the server is configured.

In certain cases using advisory locking methods, especially in queries involving explicit ordering and LIMIT clauses, care must be taken to control the locks acquired because of the order in which SQL expressions are evaluated. For example:

SELECT pg_advisory_lock(id) FROM foo WHERE id = 12345; -- ok
SELECT pg_advisory_lock(id) FROM foo WHERE id > 12345 LIMIT 100; -- danger!
SELECT pg_advisory_lock(q.id) FROM
Concurrent Control

13.4. Data Consistency Checks at the Application Level

It is very difficult to enforce business rules regarding data integrity using Read Committed transactions because the view of the data is shifting with each statement, and even a single statement may not restrict itself to the statement's snapshot if a write conflict occurs.

While a Repeatable Read transaction has a stable view of the data throughout its execution, there is a subtle issue with using MVCC snapshots for data consistency checks, involving something known as read/write conflicts. If one transaction writes data and a concurrent transaction attempts to read the same data (whether before or after the write), it cannot see the work of the other transaction. The reader then appears to have executed first regardless of which started first or which committed first. If that is as far as it goes, there is no problem, but if the reader also writes data which is read by a concurrent transaction there is now a transaction which appears to have run before either of the previously mentioned transactions. If the transaction which appears to have executed last actually commits first, it is very easy for a cycle to appear in a graph of the order of execution of the transactions. When such a cycle appears, integrity checks will not work correctly without some help.

As mentioned in Section 13.2.3, Serializable transactions are just Repeatable Read transactions which add nonblocking monitoring for dangerous patterns of read/write conflicts. When a pattern is detected which could cause a cycle in the apparent order of execution, one of the transactions involved is rolled back to break the cycle.

13.4.1. Enforcing Consistency with Serializable Transactions

If the Serializable transaction isolation level is used for all writes and for all reads which need a consistent view of the data, no other effort is required to ensure consistency. Software from other environments which is written to use serializable transactions to ensure consistency should “just work” in this regard in Postgres Pro.

When using this technique, it will avoid creating an unnecessary burden for application programmers if the application software goes through a framework which automatically retries transactions which are rolled back with a serialization failure. It may be a good idea to set default_transaction_isolation to serializable. It would also be wise to take some action to ensure that no other transaction isolation level is used, either inadvertently or to subvert integrity checks, through checks of the transaction isolation level in triggers.

See Section 13.2.3 for performance suggestions.

Warning

This level of integrity protection using Serializable transactions does not yet extend to hot standby mode (Section 25.4). Because of that, those using hot standby may want to use Repeatable Read and explicit locking on the primary.

13.4.2. Enforcing Consistency with Explicit Blocking Locks

When non-serializable writes are possible, to ensure the current validity of a row and protect it against concurrent updates one must use SELECT FOR UPDATE, SELECT FOR SHARE, or an appropriate LOCK TABLE statement. (SELECT FOR UPDATE and SELECT FOR SHARE lock just the returned rows against concurrent
updates, while \texttt{LOCK TABLE} locks the whole table.) This should be taken into account when porting applications to Postgres Pro from other environments.

Also of note to those converting from other environments is the fact that \texttt{SELECT FOR UPDATE} does not ensure that a concurrent transaction will not update or delete a selected row. To do that in Postgres Pro you must actually update the row, even if no values need to be changed. \texttt{SELECT FOR UPDATE} temporarily blocks other transactions from acquiring the same lock or executing an \texttt{UPDATE} or \texttt{DELETE} which would affect the locked row, but once the transaction holding this lock commits or rolls back, a blocked transaction will proceed with the conflicting operation unless an actual \texttt{UPDATE} of the row was performed while the lock was held.

Global validity checks require extra thought under non-serializable MVCC. For example, a banking application might wish to check that the sum of all credits in one table equals the sum of debits in another table, when both tables are being actively updated. Comparing the results of two successive \texttt{SELECT \text{sum}(...)\texttt{commands will not work reliably in Read Committed mode, since the second query will likely include the results of transactions not counted by the first. Doing the two sums in a single repeatable read transaction will give an accurate picture of only the effects of transactions that committed before the repeatable read transaction started — but one might legitimately wonder whether the answer is still relevant by the time it is delivered. If the repeatable read transaction itself applied some changes before trying to make the consistency check, the usefulness of the check becomes even more debatable, since now it includes some but not all post-transaction-start changes. In such cases a careful person might wish to lock all tables needed for the check, in order to get an indisputable picture of current reality. A \texttt{SHARE} mode (or higher) lock guarantees that there are no uncommitted changes in the locked table, other than those of the current transaction.

Note also that if one is relying on explicit locking to prevent concurrent changes, one should either use Read Committed mode, or in Repeatable Read mode be careful to obtain locks before performing queries. A lock obtained by a repeatable read transaction guarantees that no other transactions modifying the table are still running, but if the snapshot seen by the transaction predates obtaining the lock, it might predate some now-committed changes in the table. A repeatable read transaction's snapshot is actually frozen at the start of its first query or data-modification command (\texttt{SELECT}, \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, or \texttt{DELETE}), so it is possible to obtain locks explicitly before the snapshot is frozen.

### 13.5. Caveats

Some DDL commands, currently only \texttt{TRUNCATE} and the table-rewriting forms of \texttt{ALTER TABLE}, are not MVCC-safe. This means that after the truncation or rewrite commits, the table will appear empty to concurrent transactions, if they are using a snapshot taken before the DDL command committed. This will only be an issue for a transaction that did not access the table in question before the DDL command started — any transaction that has done so would hold at least an \texttt{ACCESS SHARE} table lock, which would block the DDL command until that transaction completes. So these commands will not cause any apparent inconsistency in the table contents for successive queries on the target table, but they could cause visible inconsistency between the contents of the target table and other tables in the database.

Support for the Serializable transaction isolation level has not yet been added to Hot Standby replication targets (described in Section 25.4). The strictest isolation level currently supported in hot standby mode is Repeatable Read. While performing all permanent database writes within Serializable transactions on the primary will ensure that all standbys will eventually reach a consistent state, a Repeatable Read transaction run on the standby can sometimes see a transient state that is inconsistent with any serial execution of the transactions on the primary.

Internal access to the system catalogs is not done using the isolation level of the current transaction. This means that newly created database objects such as tables are visible to concurrent Repeatable Read and Serializable transactions, even though the rows they contain are not. In contrast, queries that explicitly examine the system catalogs don't see rows representing concurrently created database objects, in the higher isolation levels.

### 13.6. Locking and Indexes
Though Postgres Pro provides nonblocking read/write access to table data, nonblocking read/write access is not currently offered for every index access method implemented in Postgres Pro. The various index types are handled as follows:

**B-tree, GiST and SP-GiST indexes**

Short-term share/exclusive page-level locks are used for read/write access. Locks are released immediately after each index row is fetched or inserted. These index types provide the highest concurrency without deadlock conditions.

**Hash indexes**

Share/exclusive hash-bucket-level locks are used for read/write access. Locks are released after the whole bucket is processed. Bucket-level locks provide better concurrency than index-level ones, but deadlock is possible since the locks are held longer than one index operation.

**GIN indexes**

Short-term share/exclusive page-level locks are used for read/write access. Locks are released immediately after each index row is fetched or inserted. But note that insertion of a GIN-indexed value usually produces several index key insertions per row, so GIN might do substantial work for a single value’s insertion.

Currently, B-tree indexes offer the best performance for concurrent applications; since they also have more features than hash indexes, they are the recommended index type for concurrent applications that need to index scalar data. When dealing with non-scalar data, B-trees are not useful, and GiST, SP-GiST or GIN indexes should be used instead.
Chapter 14. Performance Tips

Query performance can be affected by many things. Some of these can be controlled by the user, while others are fundamental to the underlying design of the system. This chapter provides some hints about understanding and tuning Postgres Pro performance.

14.1. Using EXPLAIN

Postgres Pro devises a query plan for each query it receives. Choosing the right plan to match the query structure and the properties of the data is absolutely critical for good performance, so the system includes a complex planner that tries to choose good plans. You can use the EXPLAIN command to see what query plan the planner creates for any query. Plan-reading is an art that requires some experience to master, but this section attempts to cover the basics.

Examples in this section are drawn from the regression test database after doing a VACUUM ANALYZE, using 9.3 development sources. You should be able to get similar results if you try the examples yourself, but your estimated costs and row counts might vary slightly because ANALYZE’s statistics are random samples rather than exact, and because costs are inherently somewhat platform-dependent.

The examples use EXPLAIN’s default “text” output format, which is compact and convenient for humans to read. If you want to feed EXPLAIN’s output to a program for further analysis, you should use one of its machine-readable output formats (XML, JSON, or YAML) instead.

14.1.1. EXPLAIN Basics

The structure of a query plan is a tree of plan nodes. Nodes at the bottom level of the tree are scan nodes: they return raw rows from a table. There are different types of scan nodes for different table access methods: sequential scans, index scans, and bitmap index scans. There are also non-table row sources, such as VALUES clauses and set-returning functions in FROM, which have their own scan node types. If the query requires joining, aggregation, sorting, or other operations on the raw rows, then there will be additional nodes above the scan nodes to perform these operations. Again, there is usually more than one possible way to do these operations, so different node types can appear here too. The output of EXPLAIN has one line for each node in the plan tree, showing the basic node type plus the cost estimates that the planner made for the execution of that plan node. Additional lines might appear, indented from the node’s summary line, to show additional properties of the node. The very first line (the summary line for the topmost node) has the estimated total execution cost for the plan; it is this number that the planner seeks to minimize.

Here is a trivial example, just to show what the output looks like:

EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1;

QUERY PLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..458.00 rows=10000 width=244)

Since this query has no WHERE clause, it must scan all the rows of the table, so the planner has chosen to use a simple sequential scan plan. The numbers that are quoted in parentheses are (left to right):

• Estimated start-up cost. This is the time expended before the output phase can begin, e.g., time to do the sorting in a sort node.

• Estimated total cost. This is stated on the assumption that the plan node is run to completion, i.e., all available rows are retrieved. In practice a node’s parent node might stop short of reading all available rows (see the LIMIT example below).

• Estimated number of rows output by this plan node. Again, the node is assumed to be run to completion.

• Estimated average width of rows output by this plan node (in bytes).
The costs are measured in arbitrary units determined by the planner's cost parameters (see Section 18.7.2). Traditional practice is to measure the costs in units of disk page fetches; that is, \texttt{seq\_page\_cost} is conventionally set to 1.0 and the other cost parameters are set relative to that. The examples in this section are run with the default cost parameters.

It’s important to understand that the cost of an upper-level node includes the cost of all its child nodes. It’s also important to realize that the cost only reflects things that the planner cares about. In particular, the cost does not consider the time spent transmitting result rows to the client, which could be an important factor in the real elapsed time; but the planner ignores it because it cannot change it by altering the plan. (Every correct plan will output the same row set, we trust.)

The \texttt{rows} value is a little tricky because it is not the number of rows processed or scanned by the plan node, but rather the number emitted by the node. This is often less than the number scanned, as a result of filtering by any \texttt{WHERE}-clause conditions that are being applied at the node. Ideally the top-level rows estimate will approximate the number of rows actually returned, updated, or deleted by the query.

Returning to our example:

\begin{verbatim}
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1;

QUERY PLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..458.00 rows=10000 width=244)

These numbers are derived very straightforwardly. If you do:

```sql
SELECT relpages, reltuples FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'tenk1';
```

you will find that \texttt{tenk1} has 358 disk pages and 10000 rows. The estimated cost is computed as \(\text{disk pages read} \times \text{seq\_page\_cost} + \text{rows scanned} \times \text{cpu\_tuple\_cost}\). By default, \texttt{seq\_page\_cost} is 1.0 and \texttt{cpu\_tuple\_cost} is 0.01, so the estimated cost is \((358 \times 1.0) + (10000 \times 0.01) = 458\).

Now let’s modify the query to add a \texttt{WHERE} condition:

\begin{verbatim}
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 7000;

QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..483.00 rows=7001 width=244)
Filter: (unique1 < 7000)

These numbers are derived very straightforwardly. If you do:

```sql
SELECT relpages, reltuples FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'tenk1';
```

you will find that \texttt{tenk1} has 358 disk pages and 10000 rows. The estimated cost is computed as \(\text{disk pages read} \times \text{seq\_page\_cost} + \text{rows scanned} \times \text{cpu\_tuple\_cost}\). By default, \texttt{seq\_page\_cost} is 1.0 and \texttt{cpu\_tuple\_cost} is 0.01, so the estimated cost is \((358 \times 1.0) + (10000 \times 0.01) = 458\).

Now, let’s make the condition more restrictive:

\begin{verbatim}
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100;

QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=5.07..229.20 rows=101 width=244)
   Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)
   ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04 rows=101 width=0)

Notice that the \texttt{EXPLAIN} output shows the \texttt{WHERE} clause being applied as a “filter” condition attached to the Seq Scan plan node. This means that the plan node checks the condition for each row it scans, and outputs only the ones that pass the condition. The estimate of output rows has been reduced because of the \texttt{WHERE} clause. However, the scan will still have to visit all 10000 rows, so the cost hasn’t decreased; in fact it has gone up a bit (by 10000 \times \text{cpu\_operator\_cost}, to be exact) to reflect the extra CPU time spent checking the \texttt{WHERE} condition.

The actual number of rows this query would select is 7000, but the \texttt{rows} estimate is only approximate. If you try to duplicate this experiment, you will probably get a slightly different estimate; moreover, it can change after each \texttt{ANALYZE} command, because the statistics produced by \texttt{ANALYZE} are taken from a randomized sample of the table.

Now, let’s make the condition more restrictive:

\begin{verbatim}
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100;

QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=5.07..229.20 rows=101 width=244)
   Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)
   ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04 rows=101 width=0)

426
Here the planner has decided to use a two-step plan: the child plan node visits an index to find the locations of rows matching the index condition, and then the upper plan node actually fetches those rows from the table itself. Fetching rows separately is much more expensive than reading them sequentially, but because not all the pages of the table have to be visited, this is still cheaper than a sequential scan. (The reason for using two plan levels is that the upper plan node sorts the row locations identified by the index into physical order before reading them, to minimize the cost of separate fetches. The “bitmap” mentioned in the node names is the mechanism that does the sorting.)

Now let's add another condition to the `WHERE` clause:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND stringu1 = 'xxx';
```

```
QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=5.04..229.43 rows=1 width=244)
  Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)
  Filter: (stringu1 = 'xxx'::name)
->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04 rows=101 width=0)
    Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
```

The added condition `stringu1 = 'xxx'` reduces the output row count estimate, but not the cost because we still have to visit the same set of rows. Notice that the `stringu1` clause cannot be applied as an index condition, since this index is only on the `unique1` column. Instead it is applied as a filter on the rows retrieved by the index. Thus the cost has actually gone up slightly to reflect this extra checking.

In some cases the planner will prefer a “simple” index scan plan:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 = 42;
```

```
QUERY PLAN
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
Index Scan using tenk1_unique1 on tenk1  (cost=0.29..8.30 rows=1 width=244)
  Index Cond: (unique1 = 42)
```

In this type of plan the table rows are fetched in index order, which makes them even more expensive to read, but there are so few that the extra cost of sorting the row locations is not worth it. You'll most often see this plan type for queries that fetch just a single row. It's also often used for queries that have an `ORDER BY` condition that matches the index order, because then no extra sorting step is needed to satisfy the `ORDER BY`. In this example, adding `ORDER BY unique1` would use the same plan because the index already implicitly provides the requested ordering.

The planner may implement an `ORDER BY` clause in several ways. The above example shows that such an ordering clause may be implemented implicitly. The planner may also add an explicit `sort` step:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 ORDER BY unique1;
```

```
QUERY PLAN
----------------------------------------------------------
Sort  (cost=1109.39..1134.39 rows=10000 width=244)
  Sort Key: unique1
->  Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..445.00 rows=10000 width=244)
```

If a part of the plan guarantees an ordering on a prefix of the required sort keys, then the planner may instead decide to use an `incremental sort` step:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 ORDER BY four, ten LIMIT 100;
```

```
QUERY PLAN
----------------------------------------------------------
Limit  (cost=521.06..538.05 rows=100 width=244)
->  Incremental Sort  (cost=521.06..2220.95 rows=10000 width=244)
    Sort Key: four, ten
```
Performance Tips

Presorted Key: four

->  Index Scan using index_tenk1_on_four on tenk1  (cost=0.29..1510.08 rows=10000 width=244)

Compared to regular sorts, sorting incrementally allows returning tuples before the entire result set has been sorted, which particularly enables optimizations with LIMIT queries. It may also reduce memory usage and the likelihood of spilling sorts to disk, but it comes at the cost of the increased overhead of splitting the result set into multiple sorting batches.

If there are separate indexes on several of the columns referenced in WHERE, the planner might choose to use an AND or OR combination of the indexes:

EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND unique2 > 9000;

QUERY PLAN

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=25.08..60.21 rows=10 width=244)
  Recheck Cond: ((unique1 < 100) AND (unique2 > 9000))
  ->  BitmapAnd  (cost=25.08..25.08 rows=10 width=0)
  428
  ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04 rows=101 width=0)
    Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
  428
  ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique2  (cost=0.00..19.78 rows=999 width=0)
    Index Cond: (unique2 > 9000)

But this requires visiting both indexes, so it's not necessarily a win compared to using just one index and treating the other condition as a filter. If you vary the ranges involved you'll see the plan change accordingly.

Here is an example showing the effects of LIMIT:

EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND unique2 > 9000 LIMIT 2;

QUERY PLAN

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Limit  (cost=0.29..14.48 rows=2 width=244)
  ->  Index Scan using tenk1_unique2 on tenk1  (cost=0.29..71.27 rows=10 width=244)
    Index Cond: (unique2 > 9000)
  Filter: (unique1 < 100)

This is the same query as above, but we added a LIMIT so that not all the rows need be retrieved, and the planner changed its mind about what to do. Notice that the total cost and row count of the Index Scan node are shown as if it were run to completion. However, the Limit node is expected to stop after retrieving only a fifth of those rows, so its total cost is only a fifth as much, and that's the actual estimated cost of the query. This plan is preferred over adding a Limit node to the previous plan because the Limit could not avoid paying the startup cost of the bitmap scan, so the total cost would be something over 25 units with that approach.

Let's try joining two tables, using the columns we have been discussing:

EXPLAIN SELECT *
FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 10 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;

QUERY PLAN

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Nested Loop  (cost=4.65..118.62 rows=10 width=488)
  ->  Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1  (cost=4.36..39.47 rows=10 width=244)
    Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 10)
      ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..4.36 rows=10 width=0)
        Index Cond: (unique1 < 10)
      ->  Index Scan using tenk2_unique2 on tenk2 t2  (cost=0.29..7.91 rows=1 width=244)
In this plan, we have a nested-loop join node with two table scans as inputs, or children. The indentation of the node summary lines reflects the plan tree structure. The join's first, or “outer”, child is a bitmap scan similar to those we saw before. Its cost and row count are the same as we'd get from

\[
\text{SELECT ... WHERE unique1 < 10}
\]

because we are applying the WHERE clause unique1 < 10 at that node. The t1.unique2 = t2.unique2 clause is not relevant yet, so it doesn’t affect the row count of the outer scan. The nested-loop join node will run its second, or “inner” child once for each row obtained from the outer child. Column values from the current outer row can be plugged into the inner scan; here, the t1.unique2 value from the outer row is available, so we get a plan and costs similar to what we saw above for a simple

\[
\text{SELECT ... WHERE t2.unique2 = constant}
\]

case. (The estimated cost is actually a bit lower than what was seen above, as a result of caching that's expected to occur during the repeated index scans on t2.) The costs of the loop node are then set on the basis of the cost of the outer scan, plus one repetition of the inner scan for each outer row (10 * 7.91, here), plus a little CPU time for join processing.

In this example the join's output row count is the same as the product of the two scans' row counts, but that's not true in all cases because there can be additional WHERE clauses that mention both tables and so can only be applied at the join point, not to either input scan. Here's an example:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT *
FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 10 AND t2.unique2 < 10 AND t1.hundred < t2.hundred;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
Nested Loop  (cost=4.65..49.46 rows=33 width=488)
  Join Filter: (t1.hundred < t2.hundred)
    ->  Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1  (cost=4.36..39.47 rows=10 width=244)
      Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 10)
        ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..4.36 rows=10 width=0)
    ->  Materialize  (cost=0.29..8.51 rows=10 width=244)
      Index Scan using tenk2_unique2 on tenk2 t2  (cost=0.29..8.46 rows=10 width=244)
  Index Cond: (unique1 < 10)

The condition t1.hundred < t2.hundred can't be tested in the tenk2_unique2 index, so it's applied at the join node. This reduces the estimated output row count of the join node, but does not change either input scan.

Notice that here the planner has chosen to “materialize” the inner relation of the join, by putting a Materialize plan node atop it. This means that the t2 index scan will be done just once, even though the nested-loop join node needs to read that data ten times, once for each row from the outer relation. The Materialize node saves the data in memory as it's read, and then returns the data from memory on each subsequent pass.

When dealing with outer joins, you might see join plan nodes with both “Join Filter” and plain “Filter” conditions attached. Join Filter conditions come from the outer join's ON clause, so a row that fails the Join Filter condition could still get emitted as a null-extended row. But a plain Filter condition is applied after the outer-join rules and so acts to remove rows unconditionally. In an inner join there is no semantic difference between these types of filters.

If we change the query's selectivity a bit, we might get a very different join plan:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT *
FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 100 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;
```

QUERY PLAN
Here, the planner has chosen to use a hash join, in which rows of one table are entered into an in-memory hash table, after which the other table is scanned and the hash table is probed for matches to each row. Again note how the indentation reflects the plan structure: the bitmap scan on \textit{tenk1} is the input to the Hash node, which constructs the hash table. That's then returned to the Hash Join node, which reads rows from its outer child plan and searches the hash table for each one.

Another possible type of join is a merge join, illustrated here:

\begin{verbatim}
EXPLAIN SELECT * 
FROM tenk1 t1, onek t2 
WHERE t1.unique1 < 100 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
SET enable_sort = off;
\end{verbatim}

One way to look at variant plans is to force the planner to disregard whatever strategy it thought was the cheapest, using the enable/disable flags described in Section 18.7.1. (This is a crude tool, but useful. See also Section 14.3.)
Performance Tips

Filter: \( (\text{unique1} < 100) \)
\[ \rightarrow \text{Index Scan using onek_unique2 on onek t2} \quad \text{(cost=0.28..224.79 rows=1000 width=244)} \]

which shows that the planner thinks that sorting \text{onek} by index-scanning is about 12% more expensive than sequential-scan-and-sort. Of course, the next question is whether it's right about that. We can investigate that using \text{EXPLAIN ANALYZE}, as discussed below.

14.1.2. \text{EXPLAIN ANALYZE}

It is possible to check the accuracy of the planner's estimates by using \text{EXPLAIN}'s \text{ANALYZE} option. With this option, \text{EXPLAIN} actually executes the query, and then displays the true row counts and true run time accumulated within each plan node, along with the same estimates that a plain \text{EXPLAIN} shows. For example, we might get a result like this:

\text{EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT *}
\text{FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2 WHERE t1.unique1 < 10 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;}

\text{QUERY PLAN}

---

\text{Nested Loop} \quad \text{(cost=4.65..118.62 rows=10 width=488) (actual time=0.128..0.377 rows=10 loops=1)}
\[ \rightarrow \text{Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1} \quad \text{(cost=4.36..39.47 rows=10 width=244) (actual time=0.057..0.121 rows=10 loops=1)} \]
\hspace{1em} \text{Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 10)}
\[ \rightarrow \text{Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1} \quad \text{(cost=0.00..4.36 rows=10 width=0) (actual time=0.024..0.024 rows=10 loops=1)} \]
\hspace{1em} \text{Index Cond: (unique1 < 10)}
\[ \rightarrow \text{Index Scan using tenk2_unique2 on tenk2 t2} \quad \text{(cost=0.29..7.91 rows=1 width=244) (actual time=0.021..0.022 rows=1 loops=10)} \]
\hspace{1em} \text{Index Cond: (unique2 = t1.unique2)}

\text{Planning time: 0.181 ms}
\text{Execution time: 0.501 ms}

Note that the “actual time” values are in milliseconds of real time, whereas the \text{cost} estimates are expressed in arbitrary units; so they are unlikely to match up. The thing that's usually most important to look for is whether the estimated row counts are reasonably close to reality. In this example the estimates were all dead-on, but that's quite unusual in practice.

In some query plans, it is possible for a subplan node to be executed more than once. For example, the inner index scan will be executed once per outer row in the above nested-loop plan. In such cases, the \text{loops} value reports the total number of executions of the node, and the actual time and rows values shown are averages per-execution. This is done to make the numbers comparable with the way that the cost estimates are shown. Multiply by the \text{loops} value to get the total time actually spent in the node. In the above example, we spent a total of 0.220 milliseconds executing the index scans on \text{tenk2}.

In some cases \text{EXPLAIN ANALYZE} shows additional execution statistics beyond the plan node execution times and row counts. For example, Sort and Hash nodes provide extra information:

\text{EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT *}
\text{FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2 WHERE t1.unique1 < 100 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2 ORDER BY t1.fivethous;}

\text{QUERY PLAN}

---

Sort \quad \text{(cost=717.34..717.59 rows=101 width=488) (actual time=7.761..7.774 rows=100 loops=1)}
\hspace{1em} \text{Sort Key: t1.fivethous}
Performance Tips

Sort Method: quicksort  Memory: 77kB
->  Hash Join  (cost=230.47..713.98 rows=101 width=488) (actual time=0.711..7.427 rows=100 loops=1)
   Hash Cond: (t2.unique2 = t1.unique2)
   ->  Seq Scan on tenk2 t2  (cost=0.00..445.00 rows=10000 width=244) (actual time=0.007..2.583 rows=100 loops=1)
   ->  Hash  (cost=229.20..229.20 rows=101 width=244) (actual time=0.659..0.659 rows=100 loops=1)
      Buckets: 1024  Batches: 1  Memory Usage: 28kB
         ->  Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1  (cost=5.07..229.20 rows=101 width=244) (actual time=0.080..0.526 rows=100 loops=1)
            Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)
            ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04 rows=101 width=0) (actual time=0.049..0.049 rows=100 loops=1)
               Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
Planning time: 0.194 ms
Execution time: 8.008 ms

The Sort node shows the sort method used (in particular, whether the sort was in-memory or on-disk) and the amount of memory or disk space needed. The Hash node shows the number of hash buckets and batches as well as the peak amount of memory used for the hash table. (If the number of batches exceeds one, there will also be disk space usage involved, but that is not shown.)

Another type of extra information is the number of rows removed by a filter condition:

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE ten < 7;

QUERY PLAN

-------------------------------------------------------------------
| Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..483.00 rows=7000 width=244) (actual time=0.016..5.107 rows=7000 loops=1) |
|   Filter: (ten < 7) |
|   Rows Removed by Filter: 3000 |
| Planning time: 0.083 ms |
| Execution time: 5.905 ms |

These counts can be particularly valuable for filter conditions applied at join nodes. The “Rows Removed” line only appears when at least one scanned row, or potential join pair in the case of a join node, is rejected by the filter condition.

A case similar to filter conditions occurs with “lossy” index scans. For example, consider this search for polygons containing a specific point:

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM polygon_tbl WHERE f1 @> polygon '(0.5,2.0)';

QUERY PLAN

-------------------------------------------------------------------
| Seq Scan on polygon_tbl  (cost=0.00..1.05 rows=1 width=32) (actual time=0.044..0.044 rows=0 loops=1) |
|   Filter: (f1 @> '((0.5,2))'::polygon) |
|   Rows Removed by Filter: 4 |
| Planning time: 0.040 ms |
| Execution time: 0.083 ms |

The planner thinks (quite correctly) that this sample table is too small to bother with an index scan, so we have a plain sequential scan in which all the rows got rejected by the filter condition. But if we force an index scan to be used, we see:

SET enable_seqscan TO off;
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM polygon_tbl WHERE f1 @> polygon '(0.5,2.0)';

-----

**QUERY PLAN**

Index Scan using gpolygonind on polygon_tbl  (cost=0.13..8.15 rows=1 width=32) (actual time=0.062..0.062 rows=0 loops=1)
  Index Cond: (f1 @> '((0.5,2))'::polygon)
Rows Removed by Index Recheck: 1
Planning time: 0.034 ms
Execution time: 0.144 ms

Here we can see that the index returned one candidate row, which was then rejected by a recheck of the index condition. This happens because a GiST index is “lossy” for polygon containment tests: it actually returns the rows with polygons that overlap the target, and then we have to do the exact containment test on those rows.

EXPLAIN has a **BUFFERS** option that can be used with ANALYZE to get even more run time statistics:

EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, BUFFERS) SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND unique2 > 9000;

-----

**QUERY PLAN**

Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=25.08..60.21 rows=10 width=244) (actual time=0.323..0.342 rows=10 loops=1)
  Recheck Cond: ((unique1 < 100) AND (unique2 > 9000))
  Buffers: shared hit=15
->  BitmapAnd  (cost=25.08..25.08 rows=10 width=0) (actual time=0.309..0.309 rows=0 loops=1)
    Buffers: shared hit=7
    ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04 rows=101 width=0)
        (actual time=0.043..0.043 rows=100 loops=1)
          Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
          Buffers: shared hit=2
    ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique2  (cost=0.00..19.78 rows=999 width=0)
        (actual time=0.227..0.227 rows=999 loops=1)
          Index Cond: (unique2 > 9000)
          Buffers: shared hit=5
Planning time: 0.088 ms
Execution time: 0.423 ms

The numbers provided by **BUFFERS** help to identify which parts of the query are the most I/O-intensive.

Keep in mind that because EXPLAIN ANALYZE actually runs the query, any side-effects will happen as usual, even though whatever results the query might output are discarded in favor of printing the EXPLAIN data. If you want to analyze a data-modifying query without changing your tables, you can roll the command back afterwards, for example:

BEGIN;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE UPDATE tenk1 SET hundred = hundred + 1 WHERE unique1 < 100;

-----

**QUERY PLAN**

Update on tenk1  (cost=5.08..230.08 rows=0 width=0) (actual time=3.791..3.792 rows=0 loops=1)
  ->  Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=5.08..230.08 rows=102 width=10) (actual time=0.069..0.513 rows=100 loops=1)
As seen in this example, when the query is an \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, or \texttt{DELETE} command, the actual work of applying the table changes is done by a top-level Insert, Update, or Delete plan node. The plan nodes underneath this node perform the work of locating the old rows and/or computing the new data. So above, we see the same sort of bitmap table scan we’ve seen already, and its output is fed to an Update node that stores the updated rows. It’s worth noting that although the data-modifying node can take a considerable amount of run time (here, it’s consuming the lion’s share of the time), the planner does not currently add anything to the cost estimates to account for that work. That’s because the work to be done is the same for every correct query plan, so it doesn’t affect planning decisions.

When an \texttt{UPDATE} or \texttt{DELETE} command affects an inheritance hierarchy, the output might look like this:

\begin{verbatim}
EXPLAIN UPDATE parent SET f2 = f2 + 1 WHERE f1 = 101;
QUERY PLAN

Update on parent  (cost=0.00..24.59 rows=0 width=0)
  Update on parent parent_1
  Update on child1 parent_2
  Update on child2 parent_3
  Update on child3 parent_4
  ->  Result  (cost=0.00..24.59 rows=4 width=14)
    ->  Append  (cost=0.00..24.54 rows=4 width=14)
      ->  Seq Scan on parent parent_1  (cost=0.00..0.00 rows=1 width=14)
        Filter: (f1 = 101)
      ->  Index Scan using child1_pkey on child1 parent_2  (cost=0.15..8.17 rows=1 width=14)
        Index Cond: (f1 = 101)
      ->  Index Scan using child2_pkey on child2 parent_3  (cost=0.15..8.17 rows=1 width=14)
        Index Cond: (f1 = 101)
      ->  Index Scan using child3_pkey on child3 parent_4  (cost=0.15..8.17 rows=1 width=14)
        Index Cond: (f1 = 101)

In this example the Update node needs to consider three child tables as well as the originally-mentioned parent table. So there are four input scanning subplans, one per table. For clarity, the Update node is annotated to show the specific target tables that will be updated, in the same order as the corresponding subplans.

The Planning time shown by \texttt{EXPLAIN ANALYZE} is the time it took to generate the query plan from the parsed query and optimize it. It does not include parsing or rewriting.

The Execution time shown by \texttt{EXPLAIN ANALYZE} includes executor start-up and shut-down time, as well as the time to run any triggers that are fired, but it does not include parsing, rewriting, or planning time. Time spent executing \texttt{BEFORE} triggers, if any, is included in the time for the related Insert, Update, or Delete node; but time spent executing \texttt{AFTER} triggers is not counted there because \texttt{AFTER} triggers are fired after completion of the whole plan. The total time spent in each trigger (either \texttt{BEFORE} or \texttt{AFTER}) is also shown separately. Note that deferred constraint triggers will not be executed until end of transaction and are thus not considered at all by \texttt{EXPLAIN ANALYZE}.
14.1.3. Caveats

There are two significant ways in which run times measured by `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` can deviate from normal execution of the same query. First, since no output rows are delivered to the client, network transmission costs and I/O conversion costs are not included. Second, the measurement overhead added by `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` can be significant, especially on machines with slow `gettimeofday()` operating-system calls. You can use the `pg_test_timing` tool to measure the overhead of timing on your system.

`EXPLAIN` results should not be extrapolated to situations much different from the one you are actually testing; for example, results on a toy-sized table cannot be assumed to apply to large tables. The planner’s cost estimates are not linear and so it might choose a different plan for a larger or smaller table. An extreme example is that on a table that only occupies one disk page, you’ll nearly always get a sequential scan plan whether indexes are available or not. The planner realizes that it's going to take one disk page read to process the table in any case, so there's no value in expending additional page reads to look at an index. (We saw this happening in the `polygon_tbl` example above.)

There are cases in which the actual and estimated values won't match up well, but nothing is really wrong. One such case occurs when plan node execution is stopped short by a `LIMIT` or similar effect. For example, in the `LIMIT` query we used before,

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND unique2 > 9000 LIMIT 2;
```

the estimated cost and row count for the Index Scan node are shown as though it were run to completion. But in reality the Limit node stopped requesting rows after it got two, so the actual row count is only 2 and the run time is less than the cost estimate would suggest. This is not an estimation error, only a discrepancy in the way the estimates and true values are displayed.

Merge joins also have measurement artifacts that can confuse the unwary. A merge join will stop reading one input if it's exhausted the other input and the next key value in the one input is greater than the last key value of the other input; in such a case there can be no more matches and so no need to scan the rest of the first input. This results in not reading all of one child, with results like those mentioned for `LIMIT`. Also, if the outer (first) child contains rows with duplicate key values, the inner (second) child is backed up and rescanned for the portion of its rows matching that key value. `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` counts these repeated emissions of the same inner rows as if they were real additional rows. When there are many outer duplicates, the reported actual row count for the inner child plan node can be significantly larger than the number of rows that are actually in the inner relation.

`BitmapAnd` and `BitmapOr` nodes always report their actual row counts as zero, due to implementation limitations.

Normally, `EXPLAIN` will display every plan node created by the planner. However, there are cases where the executor can determine that certain nodes need not be executed because they cannot produce any rows, based on parameter values that were not available at planning time. (Currently this can only happen for child nodes of an `Append` or `MergeAppend` node that is scanning a partitioned table.) When this happens, those plan nodes are omitted from the `EXPLAIN` output and a `Subplans Removed: N` annotation appears instead.

14.2. Statistics Used by the Planner
14.2.1. Single-Column Statistics

As we saw in the previous section, the query planner needs to estimate the number of rows retrieved by a query in order to make good choices of query plans. This section provides a quick look at the statistics that the system uses for these estimates.

One component of the statistics is the total number of entries in each table and index, as well as the number of disk blocks occupied by each table and index. This information is kept in the table `pg_class`, in the columns `reltuples` and `relpages`. We can look at it with queries similar to this one:

```sql
SELECT relname, relkind, reltuples, relpages
FROM pg_class
WHERE relname LIKE 'tenk1%';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>relname</th>
<th>relkind</th>
<th>reltuples</th>
<th>relpages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tenk1</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenk1_hundred</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenk1_thous_tenthous</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenk1_unique1</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenk1_unique2</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(5 rows)

Here we can see that `tenk1` contains 10000 rows, as do its indexes, but the indexes are (unsurprisingly) much smaller than the table.

For efficiency reasons, `reltuples` and `relpages` are not updated on-the-fly, and so they usually contain somewhat out-of-date values. They are updated by `VACUUM`, `ANALYZE`, and a few DDL commands such as `CREATE INDEX`. A `VACUUM` or `ANALYZE` operation that does not scan the entire table (which is commonly the case) will incrementally update the `reltuples` count on the basis of the part of the table it did scan, resulting in an approximate value. In any case, the planner will scale the values it finds in `pg_class` to match the current physical table size, thus obtaining a closer approximation.

Most queries retrieve only a fraction of the rows in a table, due to `WHERE` clauses that restrict the rows to be examined. The planner thus needs to make an estimate of the selectivity of `WHERE` clauses, that is, the fraction of rows that match each condition in the `WHERE` clause. The information used for this task is stored in the `pg_statistic` system catalog. Entries in `pg_statistic` are updated by the `ANALYZE` and `VACUUM ANALYZE` commands, and are always approximate even when freshly updated.

Rather than look at `pg_statistic` directly, it's better to look at its view `pg_stats` when examining the statistics manually. `pg_stats` is designed to be more easily readable. Furthermore, `pg_stats` is readable by all, whereas `pg_statistic` is only readable by a superuser. (This prevents unprivileged users from learning something about the contents of other people's tables from the statistics. The `pg_stats` view is restricted to show only rows about tables that the current user can read.) For example, we might do:

```sql
SELECT attname, inherited, n_distinct,
       array_to_string(most_common_vals, E'\n') as most_common_vals
FROM pg_stats
WHERE tablename = 'road';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attname</th>
<th>inherited</th>
<th>n_distinct</th>
<th>most_common_vals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>-0.363388</td>
<td>I- 580 Ramp+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I- 880 Ramp+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sp Railroad +</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I- 580 +</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I- 680 Ramp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>-0.284859</td>
<td>I- 880 Ramp+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I- 580 Ramp+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

436
Note that two rows are displayed for the same column, one corresponding to the complete inheritance hierarchy starting at the `road` table (inherited=t), and another one including only the `road` table itself (inherited=f).

The amount of information stored in `pg_statistic` by `ANALYZE`, in particular the maximum number of entries in the `most_common_vals` and `histogram_bounds` arrays for each column, can be set on a column-by-column basis using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` command, or globally by setting the `default_statistics_target` configuration variable. The default limit is presently 100 entries. Raising the limit might allow more accurate planner estimates to be made, particularly for columns with irregular data distributions, at the price of consuming more space in `pg_statistic` and slightly more time to compute the estimates. Conversely, a lower limit might be sufficient for columns with simple data distributions.

Further details about the planner's use of statistics can be found in Chapter 67.

14.2.2. Extended Statistics

It is common to see slow queries running bad execution plans because multiple columns used in the query clauses are correlated. The planner normally assumes that multiple conditions are independent of each other, an assumption that does not hold when column values are correlated. Regular statistics, because of their per-individual-column nature, cannot capture any knowledge about cross-column correlation. However, Postgres Pro has the ability to compute multivariate statistics, which can capture such information.

Because the number of possible column combinations is very large, it's impractical to compute multivariate statistics automatically. Instead, extended statistics objects, more often called just statistics objects, can be created to instruct the server to obtain statistics across interesting sets of columns.

Statistics objects are created using the `CREATE STATISTICS` command. Creation of such an object merely creates a catalog entry expressing interest in the statistics. Actual data collection is performed by `ANALYZE` (either a manual command, or background auto-analyze). The collected values can be examined in the `pg_statistic_ext_data` catalog.

`ANALYZE` computes extended statistics based on the same sample of table rows that it takes for computing regular single-column statistics. Since the sample size is increased by increasing the statistics target for the table or any of its columns (as described in the previous section), a larger statistics target will normally result in more accurate extended statistics, as well as more time spent calculating them.

The following subsections describe the kinds of extended statistics that are currently supported.

14.2.2.1. Functional Dependencies

The simplest kind of extended statistics tracks functional dependencies, a concept used in definitions of database normal forms. We say that column $b$ is functionally dependent on column $a$ if knowledge of the value of $a$ is sufficient to determine the value of $b$, that is there are no two rows having the same value of $a$ but different values of $b$. In a fully normalized database, functional dependencies should exist only on primary keys and superkeys. However, in practice many data sets are not fully normalized for various reasons; intentional denormalization for performance reasons is a common example. Even in a fully normalized database, there may be partial correlation between some columns, which can be expressed as partial functional dependency.

The existence of functional dependencies directly affects the accuracy of estimates in certain queries. If a query contains conditions on both the independent and the dependent column(s), the conditions on the dependent columns do not further reduce the result size; but without knowledge of the functional dependency, the query planner will assume that the conditions are independent, resulting in underestimating the result size.
To inform the planner about functional dependencies, ANALYZE can collect measurements of cross-column dependency. Assessing the degree of dependency between all sets of columns would be prohibitively expensive, so data collection is limited to those groups of columns appearing together in a statistics object defined with the dependencies option. It is advisable to create dependencies statistics only for column groups that are strongly correlated, to avoid unnecessary overhead in both ANALYZE and later query planning.

Here is an example of collecting functional-dependency statistics:

```
CREATE STATISTICS stts (dependencies) ON city, zip FROM zipcodes;
ANALYZE zipcodes;
```

```
SELECT stxname, stxkeys, stxddependencies
FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid = stxoid)
WHERE stxname = 'stts';
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stxname</th>
<th>stxkeys</th>
<th>stxddependencies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stts</td>
<td>1 5</td>
<td>{&quot;1 =&gt; 5&quot;: 1.000000, &quot;5 =&gt; 1&quot;: 0.423130}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Here it can be seen that column 1 (zip code) fully determines column 5 (city) so the coefficient is 1.0, while city only determines zip code about 42% of the time, meaning that there are many cities (58%) that are represented by more than a single ZIP code.

When computing the selectivity for a query involving functionally dependent columns, the planner adjusts the per-condition selectivity estimates using the dependency coefficients so as not to produce an underestimate.

14.2.2.1. Limitations of Functional Dependencies

Functional dependencies are currently only applied when considering simple equality conditions that compare columns to constant values, and IN clauses with constant values. They are not used to improve estimates for equality conditions comparing two columns or comparing a column to an expression, nor for range clauses, LIKE or any other type of condition.

When estimating with functional dependencies, the planner assumes that conditions on the involved columns are compatible and hence redundant. If they are incompatible, the correct estimate would be zero rows, but that possibility is not considered. For example, given a query like

```
SELECT * FROM zipcodes WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND zip = '94105';
```

the planner will disregard the `city` clause as not changing the selectivity, which is correct. However, it will make the same assumption about

```
SELECT * FROM zipcodes WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND zip = '90210';
```

even though there will really be zero rows satisfying this query. Functional dependency statistics do not provide enough information to conclude that, however.

In many practical situations, this assumption is usually satisfied; for example, there might be a GUI in the application that only allows selecting compatible city and ZIP code values to use in a query. But if that's not the case, functional dependencies may not be a viable option.

14.2.2.2. Multivariate N-Distinct Counts

Single-column statistics store the number of distinct values in each column. Estimates of the number of distinct values when combining more than one column (for example, for GROUP BY a, b) are frequently wrong when the planner only has single-column statistical data, causing it to select bad plans.

To improve such estimates, ANALYZE can collect n-distinct statistics for groups of columns. As before, it's impractical to do this for every possible column grouping, so data is collected only for those groups...
Performance Tips

of columns appearing together in a statistics object defined with the \texttt{ndistinct} option. Data will be collected for each possible combination of two or more columns from the set of listed columns.

Continuing the previous example, the n-distinct counts in a table of ZIP codes might look like the following:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE STATISTICS stts2 (ndistinct) ON city, state, zip FROM zipcodes;
ANALYZE zipcodes;
SELECT stxkeys AS k, stxdndistinct AS nd
    FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid = stxoid)
    WHERE stxname = 'stts2';
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
-\[ RECORD 1 \]--------------------------------------------------------
  k  | 1 2 5
  nd | {"1, 2": 33178, "1, 5": 33178, "2, 5": 27435, "1, 2, 5": 33178}
(1 row)
\end{verbatim}

This indicates that there are three combinations of columns that have 33178 distinct values: ZIP code and state; ZIP code and city; and ZIP code, city and state (the fact that they are all equal is expected given that ZIP code alone is unique in this table). On the other hand, the combination of city and state has only 27435 distinct values.

It's advisable to create \texttt{ndistinct} statistics objects only on combinations of columns that are actually used for grouping, and for which misestimation of the number of groups is resulting in bad plans. Otherwise, the \texttt{ANALYZE} cycles are just wasted.

\subsection{14.2.2.3. Multivariate MCV Lists}

Another type of statistics stored for each column are most-common value lists. This allows very accurate estimates for individual columns, but may result in significant misestimates for queries with conditions on multiple columns.

To improve such estimates, \texttt{ANALYZE} can collect MCV lists on combinations of columns. Similarly to functional dependencies and n-distinct coefficients, it's impractical to do this for every possible column grouping. Even more so in this case, as the MCV list (unlike functional dependencies and n-distinct coefficients) does store the common column values. So data is collected only for those groups of columns appearing together in a statistics object defined with the \texttt{mcv} option.

Continuing the previous example, the MCV list for a table of ZIP codes might look like the following (unlike for simpler types of statistics, a function is required for inspection of MCV contents):

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE STATISTICS stts3 (mcv) ON city, state FROM zipcodes;
ANALYZE zipcodes;
SELECT m.* FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid = stxoid),
    pg_mcv_list_items(stxdmcv) m WHERE stxname = 'stts3';
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
index | values         | nulls | frequency | base_frequency
-------+----------------+-------+-----------+----------------
 0     | {Washington, DC} | {f,f} | 0.003467  | 2.7e-05
 1     | {Apo, AE}       | {f,f} | 0.003067  | 1.9e-05
 2     | {Houston, TX}   | {f,f} | 0.002167  | 0.000133
 3     | {El Paso, TX}   | {f,f} | 0.002     | 0.000113
 4     | {New York, NY}  | {f,f} | 0.001967  | 0.000114
 5     | {Atlanta, GA}   | {f,f} | 0.001633  | 0.000114
 6     | {Sacramento, CA} | {f,f} | 0.001433  | 3.3e-05
 7     | {Miami, FL}     | {f,f} | 0.001433  | 7.8e-05
 8     | {Dallas, TX}    | {f,f} | 0.001367  | 5.1e-05
 9     | {Chicago, IL}   | {f,f} | 0.001367  | 8.8e-05
\end{verbatim}
Performance Tips

... (99 rows)

This indicates that the most common combination of city and state is Washington in DC, with actual frequency (in the sample) about 0.35%. The base frequency of the combination (as computed from the simple per-column frequencies) is only 0.0027%, resulting in two orders of magnitude under-estimates.

It's advisable to create MCV statistics objects only on combinations of columns that are actually used in conditions together, and for which misestimation of the number of groups is resulting in bad plans. Otherwise, the ANALYZE and planning cycles are just wasted.

14.3. Controlling the Planner with Explicit JOIN Clauses

It is possible to control the query planner to some extent by using the explicit JOIN syntax. To see why this matters, we first need some background.

In a simple join query, such as:

```
SELECT * FROM a, b, c WHERE a.id = b.id AND b.ref = c.id;
```

the planner is free to join the given tables in any order. For example, it could generate a query plan that joins A to B, using the WHERE condition `a.id = b.id`, and then joins C to this joined table, using the other WHERE condition. Or it could join B to C and then join A to that result. Or it could join A to C and then join them with B — but that would be inefficient, since the full Cartesian product of A and C would have to be formed, there being no applicable condition in the WHERE clause to allow optimization of the join. (All joins in the Postgres Pro executor happen between two input tables, so it’s necessary to build up the result in one or another of these fashions.) The important point is that these different join possibilities give semantically equivalent results but might have hugely different execution costs. Therefore, the planner will explore all of them to try to find the most efficient query plan.

When a query only involves two or three tables, there aren't many join orders to worry about. But the number of possible join orders grows exponentially as the number of tables expands. Beyond ten or so input tables it's no longer practical to do an exhaustive search of all the possibilities, and even for six or seven tables planning might take an annoyingly long time. When there are too many input tables, the Postgres Pro planner will switch from exhaustive search to a genetic probabilistic search through a limited number of possibilities. (The switch-over threshold is set by the geqo_threshold runtime parameter.) The genetic search takes less time, but it won't necessarily find the best possible plan.

When the query involves outer joins, the planner has less freedom than it does for plain (inner) joins. For example, consider:

```
SELECT * FROM a LEFT JOIN (b JOIN c ON (b.ref = c.id)) ON (a.id = b.id);
```

Although this query's restrictions are superficially similar to the previous example, the semantics are different because a row must be emitted for each row of A that has no matching row in the join of B and C. Therefore the planner has no choice of join order here: it must join B to C and then join A to that result. Accordingly, this query takes less time to plan than the previous query. In other cases, the planner might be able to determine that more than one join order is safe. For example, given:

```
SELECT * FROM a LEFT JOIN b ON (a.bid = b.id) LEFT JOIN c ON (a.cid = c.id);
```

it is valid to join A to either B or C first. Currently, only FULL JOIN completely constrains the join order. Most practical cases involving LEFT JOIN or RIGHT JOIN can be rearranged to some extent.

Explicit inner join syntax (INNER JOIN, CROSS JOIN, or unadorned JOIN) is semantically the same as listing the input relations in FROM, so it does not constrain the join order.

Even though most kinds of JOIN don’t completely constrain the join order, it is possible to instruct the Postgres Pro query planner to treat all JOIN clauses as constraining the join order anyway. For example, these three queries are logically equivalent:

```
SELECT * FROM a, b, c WHERE a.id = b.id AND b.ref = c.id;
SELECT * FROM a CROSS JOIN b CROSS JOIN c WHERE a.id = b.id AND b.ref = c.id;
SELECT * FROM a, b, c WHERE a.id = b.id AND b.ref = c.id;
```
SELECT * FROM a JOIN (b JOIN c ON (b.ref = c.id)) ON (a.id = b.id);

But if we tell the planner to honor the JOIN order, the second and third take less time to plan than the first. This effect is not worth worrying about for only three tables, but it can be a lifesaver with many tables.

To force the planner to follow the join order laid out by explicit JOINs, set the join_collapse_limit runtime parameter to 1. (Other possible values are discussed below.)

You do not need to constrain the join order completely in order to cut search time, because it’s OK to use JOIN operators within items of a plain FROM list. For example, consider:

SELECT * FROM a CROSS JOIN b, c, d, e WHERE ...;

With join_collapse_limit = 1, this forces the planner to join A to B before joining them to other tables, but doesn't constrain its choices otherwise. In this example, the number of possible join orders is reduced by a factor of 5.

Constraining the planner's search in this way is a useful technique both for reducing planning time and for directing the planner to a good query plan. If the planner chooses a bad join order by default, you can force it to choose a better order via JOIN syntax — assuming that you know of a better order, that is. Experimentation is recommended.

A closely related issue that affects planning time is collapsing of subqueries into their parent query. For example, consider:

SELECT * 
FROM x, y, 
     (SELECT * FROM a, b, c WHERE something) AS ss 
WHERE somethingelse;

This situation might arise from use of a view that contains a join; the view's SELECT rule will be inserted in place of the view reference, yielding a query much like the above. Normally, the planner will try to collapse the subquery into the parent, yielding:

SELECT * FROM x, y, a, b, c WHERE something AND somethingelse;

This usually results in a better plan than planning the subquery separately. (For example, the outer WHERE conditions might be such that joining X to A first eliminates many rows of A, thus avoiding the need to form the full logical output of the subquery.) But at the same time, we have increased the planning time; here, we have a five-way join problem replacing two separate three-way join problems. Because of the exponential growth of the number of possibilities, this makes a big difference. The planner tries to avoid getting stuck in huge join search problems by not collapsing a subquery if more than from_collapse_limit FROM items would result in the parent query. You can trade off planning time against quality of plan by adjusting this run-time parameter up or down.

from_collapse_limit and join_collapse_limit are similarly named because they do almost the same thing: one controls when the planner will “flatten out” subqueries, and the other controls when it will flatten out explicit joins. Typically you would either set join_collapse_limit equal to from_collapse_limit (so that explicit joins and subqueries act similarly) or set join_collapse_limit to 1 (if you want to control join order with explicit joins). But you might set them differently if you are trying to fine-tune the trade-off between planning time and run time.

14.4. Populating a Database

One might need to insert a large amount of data when first populating a database. This section contains some suggestions on how to make this process as efficient as possible.

14.4.1. Disable Autocommit

When using multiple INSERTs, turn off autocommit and just do one commit at the end. (In plain SQL, this means issuing BEGIN at the start and COMMIT at the end. Some client libraries might do this behind your back, in which case you need to make sure the library does it when you want it done.) If you allow each insertion to be committed separately, Postgres Pro is doing a lot of work for each row that is added. An
additional benefit of doing all insertions in one transaction is that if the insertion of one row were to fail then the insertion of all rows inserted up to that point would be rolled back, so you won't be stuck with partially loaded data.

14.4.2. Use COPY

Use COPY to load all the rows in one command, instead of using a series of INSERT commands. The COPY command is optimized for loading large numbers of rows; it is less flexible than INSERT, but incurs significantly less overhead for large data loads. Since COPY is a single command, there is no need to disable autocommit if you use this method to populate a table.

If you cannot use COPY, it might help to use PREPARE to create a prepared INSERT statement, and then use EXECUTE as many times as required. This avoids some of the overhead of repeatedly parsing and planning INSERT. Different interfaces provide this facility in different ways; look for “prepared statements” in the interface documentation.

Note that loading a large number of rows using COPY is almost always faster than using INSERT, even if PREPARE is used and multiple insertions are batched into a single transaction.

COPY is fastest when used within the same transaction as an earlier CREATE TABLE or TRUNCATE command. In such cases no WAL needs to be written, because in case of an error, the files containing the newly loaded data will be removed anyway. However, this consideration only applies when wal_level is minimal as all commands must write WAL otherwise.

14.4.3. Remove Indexes

If you are loading a freshly created table, the fastest method is to create the table, bulk load the table’s data using COPY, then create any indexes needed for the table. Creating an index on pre-existing data is quicker than updating it incrementally as each row is loaded.

If you are adding large amounts of data to an existing table, it might be a win to drop the indexes, load the table, and then recreate the indexes. Of course, the database performance for other users might suffer during the time the indexes are missing. One should also think twice before dropping a unique index, since the error checking afforded by the unique constraint will be lost while the index is missing.

14.4.4. Remove Foreign Key Constraints

Just as with indexes, a foreign key constraint can be checked “in bulk” more efficiently than row-by-row. So it might be useful to drop foreign key constraints, load data, and re-create the constraints. Again, there is a trade-off between data load speed and loss of error checking while the constraint is missing.

What’s more, when you load data into a table with existing foreign key constraints, each new row requires an entry in the server’s list of pending trigger events (since it is the firing of a trigger that checks the row’s foreign key constraint). Loading many millions of rows can cause the trigger event queue to overflow available memory, leading to intolerable swapping or even outright failure of the command. Therefore it may be necessary, not just desirable, to drop and re-apply foreign keys when loading large amounts of data. If temporarily removing the constraint isn’t acceptable, the only other recourse may be to split up the load operation into smaller transactions.

14.4.5. Increase maintenance_work_mem

Temporarily increasing the maintenance_work_mem configuration variable when loading large amounts of data can lead to improved performance. This will help to speed up CREATE INDEX commands and ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY commands. It won’t do much for COPY itself, so this advice is only useful when you are using one or both of the above techniques.

14.4.6. Increase max_wal_size

Temporarily increasing the max_wal_size configuration variable can also make large data loads faster. This is because loading a large amount of data into Postgres Pro will cause checkpoints to occur
more often than the normal checkpoint frequency (specified by the `checkpoint_timeout` configuration variable). Whenever a checkpoint occurs, all dirty pages must be flushed to disk. By increasing `max_wal_size` temporarily during bulk data loads, the number of checkpoints that are required can be reduced.

### 14.4.7. Disable WAL Archival and Streaming Replication

When loading large amounts of data into an installation that uses WAL archiving or streaming replication, it might be faster to take a new base backup after the load has completed than to process a large amount of incremental WAL data. To prevent incremental WAL logging while loading, disable archiving and streaming replication, by setting `wal_level` to `minimal`, `archive_mode` to `off`, and `max_wal_senders` to zero. But note that changing these settings requires a server restart, and makes any base backups taken before unavailable for archive recovery and standby server, which may lead to data loss.

Aside from avoiding the time for the archiver or WAL sender to process the WAL data, doing this will actually make certain commands faster, because they do not to write WAL at all if `wal_level` is `minimal` and the current subtransaction (or top-level transaction) created or truncated the table or index they change. (They can guarantee crash safety more cheaply by doing an `fsync` at the end than by writing WAL.)

### 14.4.8. Run `ANALYZE` Afterwards

Whenever you have significantly altered the distribution of data within a table, running `ANALYZE` is strongly recommended. This includes bulk loading large amounts of data into the table. Running `ANALYZE` (or `VACUUM ANALYZE`) ensures that the planner has up-to-date statistics about the table. With no statistics or obsolete statistics, the planner might make poor decisions during query planning, leading to poor performance on any tables with inaccurate or nonexistent statistics. Note that if the autovacuum daemon is enabled, it might run `ANALYZE` automatically; see Section 23.1.3 and Section 23.1.6 for more information.

### 14.4.9. Some Notes about `pg_dump`

Dump scripts generated by `pg_dump` automatically apply several, but not all, of the above guidelines. To reload a `pg_dump` dump as quickly as possible, you need to do a few extra things manually. (Note that these points apply while restoring a dump, not while creating it. The same points apply whether loading a text dump with `psql` or using `pg_restore` to load from a `pg_dump` archive file.)

By default, `pg_dump` uses `COPY`, and when it is generating a complete schema-and-data dump, it is careful to load data before creating indexes and foreign keys. So in this case several guidelines are handled automatically. What is left for you to do is to:

- Set appropriate (i.e., larger than normal) values for `maintenance_work_mem` and `max_wal_size`.
- If using WAL archiving or streaming replication, consider disabling them during the restore. To do that, set `archive_mode` to `off`, `wal_level` to `minimal`, and `max_wal_senders` to zero before loading the dump. Afterwards, set them back to the right values and take a fresh base backup.
- Experiment with the parallel dump and restore modes of both `pg_dump` and `pg_restore` and find the optimal number of concurrent jobs to use. Dumping and restoring in parallel by means of the `-j` option should give you a significantly higher performance over the serial mode.
- Consider whether the whole dump should be restored as a single transaction. To do that, pass the `-1` or `--single-transaction` command-line option to `psql` or `pg_restore`. When using this mode, even the smallest of errors will rollback the entire restore, possibly discarding many hours of processing. Depending on how interrelated the data is, that might seem preferable to manual cleanup, or not. `COPY` commands will run fastest if you use a single transaction and have WAL archiving turned off.
- If multiple CPUs are available in the database server, consider using `pg_restore`'s `--jobs` option. This allows concurrent data loading and index creation.
- Run `ANALYZE` afterwards.
Performance Tips

A data-only dump will still use COPY, but it does not drop or recreate indexes, and it does not normally touch foreign keys. So when loading a data-only dump, it is up to you to drop and recreate indexes and foreign keys if you wish to use those techniques. It's still useful to increase max_wal_size while loading the data, but don't bother increasing maintenance_work_mem; rather, you'd do that while manually recreating indexes and foreign keys afterwards. And don't forget to ANALYZE when you're done; see Section 23.1.3 and Section 23.1.6 for more information.

14.5. Non-Durable Settings

Durability is a database feature that guarantees the recording of committed transactions even if the server crashes or loses power. However, durability adds significant database overhead, so if your site does not require such a guarantee, Postgres Pro can be configured to run much faster. The following are configuration changes you can make to improve performance in such cases. Except as noted below, durability is still guaranteed in case of a crash of the database software; only an abrupt operating system crash creates a risk of data loss or corruption when these settings are used.

- Place the database cluster's data directory in a memory-backed file system (i.e., RAM disk). This eliminates all database disk I/O, but limits data storage to the amount of available memory (and perhaps swap).
- Turn off fsync; there is no need to flush data to disk.
- Turn off synchronous_commit; there might be no need to force WAL writes to disk on every commit. This setting does risk transaction loss (though not data corruption) in case of a crash of the database.
- Turn off full_page_writes; there is no need to guard against partial page writes.
- Increase max_wal_size and checkpoint_timeout; this reduces the frequency of checkpoints, but increases the storage requirements of /pg_wal.
- Create unlogged tables to avoid WAL writes, though it makes the tables non-crash-safe.

---

1 You can get the effect of disabling foreign keys by using the --disable-triggers option — but realize that that eliminates, rather than just postpones, foreign key validation, and so it is possible to insert bad data if you use it.
Chapter 15. Parallel Query

Postgres Pro can devise query plans that can leverage multiple CPUs in order to answer queries faster. This feature is known as parallel query. Many queries cannot benefit from parallel query, either due to limitations of the current implementation or because there is no imaginable query plan that is any faster than the serial query plan. However, for queries that can benefit, the speedup from parallel query is often very significant. Many queries can run more than twice as fast when using parallel query, and some queries can run four times faster or even more. Queries that touch a large amount of data but return only a few rows to the user will typically benefit most. This chapter explains some details of how parallel query works and in which situations it can be used so that users who wish to make use of it can understand what to expect.

15.1. How Parallel Query Works

When the optimizer determines that parallel query is the fastest execution strategy for a particular query, it will create a query plan that includes a Gather or Gather Merge node. Here is a simple example:

```sql
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE filler LIKE '%x%';
```

```
QUERY PLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Gather  (cost=1000.00..217018.43 rows=1 width=97)
Workers Planned: 2
  ->  Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts  (cost=0.00..216018.33 rows=1 width=97)
      Filter: (filler ~~ '%x%':text)
(4 rows)
```

In all cases, the Gather or Gather Merge node will have exactly one child plan, which is the portion of the plan that will be executed in parallel. If the Gather or Gather Merge node is at the very top of the plan tree, then the entire query will execute in parallel. If it is somewhere else in the plan tree, then only the portion of the plan below it will run in parallel. In the example above, the query accesses only one table, so there is only one plan node other than the Gather node itself; since that plan node is a child of the Gather node, it will run in parallel.

Using EXPLAIN, you can see the number of workers chosen by the planner. When the Gather node is reached during query execution, the process that is implementing the user’s session will request a number of background worker processes equal to the number of workers chosen by the planner. The number of background workers that the planner will consider using is limited to at most max_parallel_workers_per_gather. The total number of background workers that can exist at any one time is limited by both max_worker_processes and max_parallel_workers. Therefore, it is possible for a parallel query to run with fewer workers than planned, or even with no workers at all. The optimal plan may depend on the number of workers that are available, so this can result in poor query performance. If this occurrence is frequent, consider increasing max_worker_processes and max_parallel_workers so that more workers can be run simultaneously or alternatively reducing max_parallel_workers_per_gather so that the planner requests fewer workers.

Every background worker process that is successfully started for a given parallel query will execute the parallel portion of the plan. The leader will also execute that portion of the plan, but it has an additional responsibility: it must also read all of the tuples generated by the workers. When the parallel portion of the plan generates only a small number of tuples, the leader will often behave very much like an additional worker, speeding up query execution. Conversely, when the parallel portion of the plan generates a large number of tuples, the leader may be almost entirely occupied with reading the tuples generated by the workers and performing any further processing steps that are required by plan nodes above the level of the Gather node or Gather Merge node. In such cases, the leader will do very little of the work of executing the parallel portion of the plan.

When the node at the top of the parallel portion of the plan is Gather Merge rather than Gather, it indicates that each process executing the parallel portion of the plan is producing tuples in sorted order, and that the leader is performing an order-preserving merge. In contrast, Gather reads tuples from the workers in whatever order is convenient, destroying any sort order that may have existed.
15.2. When Can Parallel Query Be Used?

There are several settings that can cause the query planner not to generate a parallel query plan under any circumstances. In order for any parallel query plans whatsoever to be generated, the following settings must be configured as indicated.

- `max_parallel_workers_per_gather` must be set to a value that is greater than zero. This is a special case of the more general principle that no more workers should be used than the number configured via `max_parallel_workers_per_gather`.

In addition, the system must not be running in single-user mode. Since the entire database system is running in single process in this situation, no background workers will be available.

Even when it is in general possible for parallel query plans to be generated, the planner will not generate them for a given query if any of the following are true:

- The query writes any data or locks any database rows. If a query contains a data-modifying operation either at the top level or within a CTE, no parallel plans for that query will be generated. As an exception, the following commands, which create a new table and populate it, can use a parallel plan for the underlying `SELECT` part of the query:
  - `CREATE TABLE ... AS`
  - `SELECT INTO`
  - `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW`
  - `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW`

- The query might be suspended during execution. In any situation in which the system thinks that partial or incremental execution might occur, no parallel plan is generated. For example, a cursor created using `DECLARE CURSOR` will never use a parallel plan. Similarly, a PL/pgSQL loop of the form `FOR x IN query LOOP .. END LOOP` will never use a parallel plan, because the parallel query system is unable to verify that the code in the loop is safe to execute while parallel query is active.

- The query uses any function marked `PARALLEL UNSAFE`. Most system-defined functions are `PARALLEL SAFE`, but user-defined functions are marked `PARALLEL UNSAFE` by default. See the discussion of Section 15.4.

- The query is running inside of another query that is already parallel. For example, if a function called by a parallel query issues an SQL query itself, that query will never use a parallel plan. This is a limitation of the current implementation, but it may not be desirable to remove this limitation, since it could result in a single query using a very large number of processes.

Even when parallel query plan is generated for a particular query, there are several circumstances under which it will be impossible to execute that plan in parallel at execution time. If this occurs, the leader will execute the portion of the plan below the `Gather` node entirely by itself, almost as if the `Gather` node were not present. This will happen if any of the following conditions are met:

- No background workers can be obtained because of the limitation that the total number of background workers cannot exceed `max_worker_processes`.

- No background workers can be obtained because of the limitation that the total number of background workers launched for purposes of parallel query cannot exceed `max_parallel_workers`.

- The client sends an Execute message with a non-zero fetch count. See the discussion of the extended query protocol. Since `libpq` currently provides no way to send such a message, this can only occur when using a client that does not rely on `libpq`. If this is a frequent occurrence, it may be a good idea to set `max_parallel_workers_per_gather` to zero in sessions where it is likely, so as to avoid generating query plans that may be suboptimal when run serially.

15.3. Parallel Plans

Because each worker executes the parallel portion of the plan to completion, it is not possible to simply take an ordinary query plan and run it using multiple workers. Each worker would produce a full copy
Parallel Query

of the output result set, so the query would not run any faster than normal but would produce incorrect results. Instead, the parallel portion of the plan must be what is known internally to the query optimizer as a partial plan; that is, it must be constructed so that each process that executes the plan will generate only a subset of the output rows in such a way that each required output row is guaranteed to be generated by exactly one of the cooperating processes. Generally, this means that the scan on the driving table of the query must be a parallel-aware scan.

15.3.1. Parallel Scans

The following types of parallel-aware table scans are currently supported.

- In a parallel sequential scan, the table's blocks will be divided among the cooperating processes. Blocks are handed out one at a time, so that access to the table remains sequential.
- In a parallel bitmap heap scan, one process is chosen as the leader. That process performs a scan of one or more indexes and builds a bitmap indicating which table blocks need to be visited. These blocks are then divided among the cooperating processes as in a parallel sequential scan. In other words, the heap scan is performed in parallel, but the underlying index scan is not.
- In a parallel index scan or parallel index-only scan, the cooperating processes take turns reading data from the index. Currently, parallel index scans are supported only for btree indexes. Each process will claim a single index block and will scan and return all tuples referenced by that block; other processes can at the same time be returning tuples from a different index block. The results of a parallel btree scan are returned in sorted order within each worker process.

Other scan types, such as scans of non-btree indexes, may support parallel scans in the future.

15.3.2. Parallel Joins

Just as in a non-parallel plan, the driving table may be joined to one or more other tables using a nested loop, hash join, or merge join. The inner side of the join may be any kind of non-parallel plan that is otherwise supported by the planner provided that it is safe to run within a parallel worker. Depending on the join type, the inner side may also be a parallel plan.

- In a nested loop join, the inner side is always non-parallel. Although it is executed in full, this is efficient if the inner side is an index scan, because the outer tuples and thus the loops that look up values in the index are divided over the cooperating processes.
- In a merge join, the inner side is always a non-parallel plan and therefore executed in full. This may be inefficient, especially if a sort must be performed, because the work and resulting data are duplicated in every cooperating process.
- In a hash join (without the "parallel" prefix), the inner side is executed in full by every cooperating process to build identical copies of the hash table. This may be inefficient if the hash table is large or the plan is expensive. In a parallel hash join, the inner side is a parallel hash that divides the work of building a shared hash table over the cooperating processes.

15.3.3. Parallel Aggregation

Postgres Pro supports parallel aggregation by aggregating in two stages. First, each process participating in the parallel portion of the query performs an aggregation step, producing a partial result for each group of which that process is aware. This is reflected in the plan as a Partial Aggregate node. Second, the partial results are transferred to the leader via Gather or Gather Merge. Finally, the leader re-aggregates the results across all workers in order to produce the final result. This is reflected in the plan as a Finalize Aggregate node.

Because the Finalize Aggregate node runs on the leader process, queries that produce a relatively large number of groups in comparison to the number of input rows will appear less favorable to the query planner. For example, in the worst-case scenario the number of groups seen by the Finalize Aggregate node could be as many as the number of input rows that were seen by all worker processes in the Partial Aggregate stage. For such cases, there is clearly going to be no performance benefit to using parallel aggregation. The query planner takes this into account during the planning process and is unlikely to choose parallel aggregate in this scenario.
Parallel aggregation is not supported in all situations. Each aggregate must be safe for parallelism and must have a combine function. If the aggregate has a transition state of type internal, it must have serialization and deserialization functions. See CREATE AGGREGATE for more details. Parallel aggregation is not supported if any aggregate function call contains DISTINCT or ORDER BY clause and is also not supported for ordered set aggregates or when the query involves GROUPING SETS. It can only be used when all joins involved in the query are also part of the parallel portion of the plan.

15.3.4. Parallel Append

Whenever Postgres Pro needs to combine rows from multiple sources into a single result set, it uses an Append or MergeAppend plan node. This commonly happens when implementing UNION ALL or when scanning a partitioned table. Such nodes can be used in parallel plans just as they can in any other plan. However, in a parallel plan, the planner may instead use a Parallel Append node.

When an Append node is used in a parallel plan, each process will execute the child plans in the order in which they appear, so that all participating processes cooperate to execute the first child plan until it is complete and then move to the second plan at around the same time. When a Parallel Append is used instead, the executor will instead spread out the participating processes as evenly as possible across its child plans, so that multiple child plans are executed simultaneously. This avoids contention, and also avoids paying the startup cost of a child plan in those processes that never execute it.

Also, unlike a regular Append node, which can only have partial children when used within a parallel plan, a Parallel Append node can have both partial and non-partial child plans. Non-partial children will be scanned by only a single process, since scanning them more than once would produce duplicate results. Plans that involve appending multiple results sets can therefore achieve coarse-grained parallelism even when efficient partial plans are not available. For example, consider a query against a partitioned table that can only be implemented efficiently by using an index that does not support parallel scans. The planner might choose a Parallel Append of regular Index Scan plans; each individual index scan would have to be executed to completion by a single process, but different scans could be performed at the same time by different processes.

enable_parallel_append can be used to disable this feature.

15.3.5. Parallel Plan Tips

If a query that is expected to do so does not produce a parallel plan, you can try reducing parallel_setup_cost or parallel_tuple_cost. Of course, this plan may turn out to be slower than the serial plan that the planner preferred, but this will not always be the case. If you don't get a parallel plan even with very small values of these settings (e.g., after setting them both to zero), there may be some reason why the query planner is unable to generate a parallel plan for your query. See Section 15.2 and Section 15.4 for information on why this may be the case.

When executing a parallel plan, you can use EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, VERBOSEx) to display per-worker statistics for each plan node. This may be useful in determining whether the work is being evenly distributed between all plan nodes and more generally in understanding the performance characteristics of the plan.

15.4. Parallel Safety

The planner classifies operations involved in a query as either parallel safe, parallel restricted, or parallel unsafe. A parallel safe operation is one that does not conflict with the use of parallel query. A parallel restricted operation is one that cannot be performed in a parallel worker, but that can be performed in the leader while parallel query is in use. Therefore, parallel restricted operations can never occur below a Gather or Gather Merge node, but can occur elsewhere in a plan that contains such a node. A parallel unsafe operation is one that cannot be performed while parallel query is in use, not even in the leader. When a query contains anything that is parallel unsafe, parallel query is completely disabled for that query.

The following operations are always parallel restricted:
• Scans of common table expressions (CTEs).
• Scans of temporary tables.
• Scans of foreign tables, unless the foreign data wrapper has an IsForeignScanParallelSafe API that indicates otherwise.
• Plan nodes to which an InitPlan is attached.
• Plan nodes that reference a correlated SubPlan.

15.4.1. Parallel Labeling for Functions and Aggregates

The planner cannot automatically determine whether a user-defined function or aggregate is parallel safe, parallel restricted, or parallel unsafe, because this would require predicting every operation that the function could possibly perform. In general, this is equivalent to the Halting Problem and therefore impossible. Even for simple functions where it could conceivably be done, we do not try, since this would be expensive and error-prone. Instead, all user-defined functions are assumed to be parallel unsafe unless otherwise marked. When using CREATE FUNCTION or ALTER FUNCTION, markings can be set by specifying PARALLEL SAFE, PARALLEL RESTRICTED, or PARALLEL UNSAFE as appropriate. When using CREATE AGGREGATE, the PARALLEL option can be specified with SAFE, RESTRICTED, or UNSAFE as the corresponding value.

Functions and aggregates must be marked PARALLEL UNSAFE if they write to the database, access sequences, change the transaction state even temporarily (e.g., a PL/pgSQL function that establishes an EXCEPTION block to catch errors), or make persistent changes to settings. Similarly, functions must be marked PARALLEL RESTRICTED if they access temporary tables, client connection state, cursors, prepared statements, or miscellaneous backend-local state that the system cannot synchronize across workers. For example, setseed and random are parallel restricted for this last reason.

In general, if a function is labeled as being safe when it is restricted or unsafe, or if it is labeled as being restricted when it is in fact unsafe, it may throw errors or produce wrong answers when used in a parallel query. C-language functions could in theory exhibit totally undefined behavior if mislabeled, since there is no way for the system to protect itself against arbitrary C code, but in most likely cases the result will be no worse than for any other function. If in doubt, it is probably best to label functions as UNSAFE.

If a function executed within a parallel worker acquires locks that are not held by the leader, for example by querying a table not referenced in the query, those locks will be released at worker exit, not end of transaction. If you write a function that does this, and this behavior difference is important to you, mark such functions as PARALLEL RESTRICTED to ensure that they execute only in the leader.

Note that the query planner does not consider deferring the evaluation of parallel-restricted functions or aggregates involved in the query in order to obtain a superior plan. So, for example, if a WHERE clause applied to a particular table is parallel restricted, the query planner will not consider performing a scan of that table in the parallel portion of a plan. In some cases, it would be possible (and perhaps even efficient) to include the scan of that table in the parallel portion of the query and defer the evaluation of the WHERE clause so that it happens above the Gather node. However, the planner does not do this.
Part III. Server Administration

This part covers topics that are of interest to a Postgres Pro database administrator. This includes installation of the software, set up and configuration of the server, management of users and databases, and maintenance tasks. Anyone who runs a Postgres Pro server, even for personal use, but especially in production, should be familiar with the topics covered in this part.

The information in this part is arranged approximately in the order in which a new user should read it. But the chapters are self-contained and can be read individually as desired. The information in this part is presented in a narrative fashion in topical units. Readers looking for a complete description of a particular command should see Part VI.

The first few chapters are written so they can be understood without prerequisite knowledge, so new users who need to set up their own server can begin their exploration with this part. The rest of this part is about tuning and management; that material assumes that the reader is familiar with the general use of the Postgres Pro database system. Readers are encouraged to look at Part I and Part II for additional information.
Chapter 16. Binary Installation

16.1. Installing Postgres Pro Standard on Linux

For Linux-based operating systems, Postgres Pro Standard is shipped as binary packages. Each Postgres Pro binary distribution consists of several packages. The package structure differs from vanilla PostgreSQL and offers the following installation modes:

- **Quick installation and setup.** The `postgrespro-std-14` package installs and configures all the components required for a viable ready-to-use configuration of both server and client components. Choose this option if you are going to install a single Postgres Pro instance only, and you are not worried about possible conflicts with other PostgreSQL-based products.

```
Important

Installing the `postgrespro-std-14` package can delete existing installations of Postgres Pro and PostgreSQL-based products. Similarly, this Postgres Pro installation may be automatically removed if you later install another PostgreSQL-based product. Do not use this package for upgrades or migrations, or if you are going to maintain several installations on the same system.
```

- **Custom installation.** You can select any packages required for your purposes, including development packages. This option needs manual configuration, so a good grasp of Linux and understanding of PostgreSQL architecture are required. This is the only option to choose if you are going to use Postgres Pro in one of the following scenarios:
  - Install several Postgres Pro versions side by side, or together with other PostgreSQL-based products.
  - Perform an upgrade from a previous version, or migrate from a different PostgreSQL-based product.
  - Control Postgres Pro server execution using high availability software, such as pacemaker, instead of the standard system service management facility.

The minimum hardware required to install Postgres Pro, create a database cluster and start the database server are as follows:

- 1-GHz processor
- 1 GB of RAM
- 1 GB of disk space

Additional disk space is required for data or supporting components.

16.1.1. Supported Linux Distributions

Postgres Pro binary packages are available for the following Linux-based systems:

- ALT Linux 8/9/10, ALT Linux 8 SP, ALT Linux 8.2 SP
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 12/15
- OSnova 2.0
Binary Installation

**Note**

Postgres Pro binary packages rely on the tzdata library provided by the operating system, so you must ensure that the latest available version is installed. If tzdata is outdated, the time in your database may be incorrect.

### 16.1.2. Quick Installation and Setup

If you only need to install a single Postgres Pro instance and are not going to use any other PostgreSQL-based products on your system, you can use the quick installation mode. The typical process is as follows:

1. Add the package repository required for your operating system. You can find the exact repositories and commands for each supported Linux distribution on the [Download page](#) for the selected Postgres Pro version.

2. Install the `postgrespro-std-14` package. It will bring all the required components via dependencies, create the default database, start the database server, as well as enable server autostart at system boot and make all the provided programs available in PATH.

**Note**

By default, the database configuration is set for the Postgres Pro product being installed. If you need your database configured for a different product, choose custom installation and use the `tune` argument of the `pg-setup initdb` command.

Once the installation completes, you can launch `psql` on behalf of the `postgres` user and connect to the newly created database, which is located in the `/var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data` directory.

Since the default database is created using the `pg-setup` script, the path to its data directory is stored in the `/etc/default/postgrespro-std-14` file. All the subsequent `pg-setup` commands, as well as any commands that manage Postgres Pro service, affect this database only.

### 16.1.3. Custom Installation

Splitting the distribution into multiple packages enables customizing the installation for different purposes: database servers, client systems, or development workstations. Custom installations need to be configured manually, but give you more flexibility in using the product. You can install several Postgres Pro versions side by side, as well as together with other PostgreSQL-based products. In particular, this may be required when performing upgrades, or migrating from a different PostgreSQL-based product.

To perform a custom installation, complete the following steps:

1. Add the package repository required for your operating system. You can find the exact repositories and commands for each supported Linux distribution on the [Download page](#) for the selected Postgres Pro version.

2. **Choose Postgres Pro packages** required for your purposes and install them using the standard installation commands for your Linux distribution. The available packages are listed in Table 16.1.

   As a result, all files get installed into the `/opt/pgpro/std-14` directory.

3. Run `pg-wrapper` as root to make the installed client and server programs available via PATH and add SQL man pages to the man page configuration file. This utility is provided in the `postgrespro-std-14-client` package.

   `/opt/pgpro/std-14/bin/pg-wrapper links update`
For details on how to handle possible conflicts, see pg-wrapper description.

4. If you chose to install the postgrespro-std-14-server package, make sure to complete the following server setup:

a. Create the default database by running the helper script pg-setup as root with the initdb option:

```
/opt/pgpro/std-14/bin/pg-setup initdb [--tune=conf] [initdb_options]
```

where:

- the tune command-line argument sets the database configuration.
- initdb_options are regular initdb options.

**Note**

By default, pg-setup initializes the database cluster with checksums enabled. If this is not what you expect, specify the --no-data-checksums.

The pg-setup script performs database administration operations as user postgres. If you do not specify any initdb options, the default database is created in the /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data directory, using localization settings specified in the LANG environment variable for the current session. All the LC_* environment variables are ignored.

Since the default database is created using the pg-setup script, the path to its data directory is stored in the /etc/default/postgrespro-std-14 file. All the subsequent pg-setup commands, as well as any commands that manage Postgres Pro service, affect this database only.

b. Start the server by running pg-setup as root, as follows:

```
/opt/pgpro/std-14/bin/pg-setup service start
```

Like vanilla PostgreSQL, Postgres Pro server runs on behalf of the postgres user.

**Note**

By default, automatic server startup is disabled, so you can manually control the database recovery after a system reboot. Optionally, you can configure the Postgres Pro server to start automatically. For details, see Section 16.1.3.2.

### 16.1.3.1. Choosing the Packages to Install

The table below lists all the available Postgres Pro Standard packages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Package</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14</td>
<td>Top-level package that installs and configures Postgres Pro for server and client systems. Do not use this package for upgrades or migrations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Important**

Installing the postgrespro-std-14 package can delete existing installations of Postgres Pro and PostgreSQL-based products. Similarly, this Postgres Pro installation may...
### Binary Installation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Package</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-client</td>
<td>Standard client applications, such as psql or pg_dump.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-libs</td>
<td>Shared libraries required to deploy client applications, including libpq; runtime libraries for ECPG processor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-server</td>
<td>Postgres Pro server and PL/pgSQL server-side programming language.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-contrib</td>
<td>Additional extensions and programs deployable on database servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-devel</td>
<td>Header files and libraries for developing client applications and server extensions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On Debian-based systems, this package is called postgrespro-std-14-dev.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-plperl</td>
<td>Server-side programming language based on Perl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-plpython</td>
<td>Server-side programming language based on Python.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-plpython3</td>
<td>Server-side programming language based on Python 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This package is unavailable on MSVSphere 6.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-pltcl</td>
<td>Server-side programming language based on Tcl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-docs</td>
<td>Documentation (English).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-docs-ru</td>
<td>Documentation (Russian).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-test</td>
<td>Test scripts for the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This package is only available on RHEL-based and SUSE systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgrespro-std-14-jit</td>
<td>This package provides support for Just-in-Time (JIT) compilation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This package is only available for the supported Debian and Ubuntu systems, Astra Linux Smolensk 1.6/1.7, Astra Linux Orel 2.12, ALT Linux 8/9/10, CentOS 7/8, SLES 15, OSnova 2.0, and RHEL 7/8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To learn more about enabling and using JIT, see Chapter 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamonsu</td>
<td>A monitoring agent for collecting Postgres Pro and system metrics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg-portal-modify-std-14</td>
<td>An extension to modify Postgres Pro cursors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg-probackup-std-14</td>
<td>pg_probackup utility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgpro-controldata</td>
<td>pgpro_controldata application to display control information of a PostgreSQL/Postgres Pro database cluster and compatibility information for a cluster and/or server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
 Besides, there are separate packages providing several external modules that have been pre-built for compatibility with Postgres Pro Standard:

**Table 16.2. Third-party Packages Built for Postgres Pro Standard**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Package</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>orafce-std-14</td>
<td>This package implements in Postgres Pro some of the functions from the Oracle database that are missing (or behaving differently).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg-filedump-std-14</td>
<td>A utility to format Postgres Pro heap/index/control files into a human-readable form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg-repack-std-14</td>
<td>Postgres Pro extension and utility for reorganizing tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgbouncer</td>
<td>Connection pooler for Postgres Pro.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgpro-pgbadger</td>
<td>Postgres Pro log analyzer that provides detailed reports and graphs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pldebgger-std-14</td>
<td>A set of shared libraries that implement an API for debugging PL/pgSQL functions in Postgres Pro.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additionally, Postgres Pro provides separate packages with debug information for some operating systems:

- On Debian-based systems, see the postgespro-std-14-dbg package.
- On RHEL-based systems, see the postgrespro-std-14-debuginfo package.
- On ALT Linux, all packages containing binary files have the corresponding -debuginfo packages.

Server installations require at least the following packages:

- postgrespro-std-14-server
- postgrespro-std-14-client
- postgrespro-std-14-libs

To use additional Postgres Pro extensions, you must also install the postgrespro-std-14-contrib package. On Debian-based systems, postgrespro-std-14-server package depends on postgrespro-std-14-contrib package, so the latter must always be installed together with the server.

For client installations, it is usually enough to install the postgrespro-std-14-client and postgrespro-std-14-libs packages. If you use custom applications and do not need standard client utilities such as psql, you can install the postgrespro-std-14-libs package only.

Development workstations require at least the following packages:

- postgrespro-std-14-libs
- postgrespro-std-14-devel/postgresql-std-14-dev

You may also want to install and configure the server with a test database on development systems. For details on additional configuration that may be required, Section 16.1.4.

**16.1.3.2. Enabling Automatic Server Startup**

If you are running a custom installation, automatic server startup is disabled by default. Once the default database is created, you can configure the server to start automatically upon system boot using service
management solutions available in your operating system or third-party high-availability software. To facilitate this task, postgrespro-std-14-server package provides the pg-setup script, which is installed in the /opt/pgpro/std-14/bin directory.

To enable server autostart, run the pg-setup script with the following options:

```
pg-setup service enable
```

If required, you can disable server autostart using the same script:

```
pg-setup service disable
```

Alternatively, you can use system service management solutions directly by running the autostart scripts for SysV-style init.d and systemd provided in the postgrespro-std-14-server package. Depending on your Linux distribution, Postgres Pro supports different service management solutions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Linux Distribution</th>
<th>Provided Scripts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RHEL 7/8 and compatible distributions, SLES 12/15</td>
<td>systemd unit file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSVSphere 6.3</td>
<td>SysV-style init.d script</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debian, Ubuntu, ALT Linux 8</td>
<td>Both systemd unit file and SysV-style init.d script</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To use systemd for automatic server startup, run the following command:

```
systemctl enable postgrespro-std-14
```

To use SysV-style init.d script:

- On ALT Linux systems, run the following command:
  
  ```
systemctl enable postgrespro-std-14
  
  ```

- On Debian systems, use `update-rc.d`. See the corresponding man page for details.

### 16.1.4. Setting up Development Workstations

While installing postgrespro-std-14-libs and postgrespro-std-14-devel/postgrespro-std-14-dev packages may be enough, it is usually convenient to have the server set up on the development system. For quick setup, you can install postgrespro-std-14 package, which automatically configures the provided client and server programs and creates the default database. However, if you are going to use several PostgreSQL-based products simultaneously, follow the custom installation instructions in Section 16.1.3.

To compile programs with Postgres Pro libraries using the pg_config utility shipped with Postgres Pro, make sure it appears before the path to other pg_config versions, if any. Note that on RHEL-based systems pg_config is not added to `PATH` automatically. If you do not have any other pg_config versions on your system, you can use pg-wrapper provided in the postgrespro-std-14-client package to create a symbolic link to pg_config in the standard binary directory.

To compile programs using pkg-config command, add the `/opt/pgpro/std-14/lib/pkgconfig/` path to the `PKG_CONFIG_PATH` environment variable.

If you would like to compile Postgres Pro extensions that support JIT inlining, make sure to meet the following additional requirements:

- Install LLVM development package and Clang compiler. You must choose the packages of the same version that was used for the postgrespro-std-14-jit to be installed on the server. To determine the required version for the current Postgres Pro release, check the CLANG value in the `/opt/pgpro/std-14/lib/pgxs/src/Makefile.global` file.

- When running `make` or `make install` commands, specify the `with-llvm=yes` option to compile and install bitcode files for your extension. By default, bitcode compilation is disabled as it depends on Clang compiler availability.
16.1.4.1. Using Third-Party Programs with Postgres Pro

To use Postgres Pro server with a client program provided with a third-party product, you can install the version of PostgreSQL libraries that was used to compile this program. For example, if this program is provided with vanilla PostgreSQL, you may need to install the libpq or postgresql-libs packages available for your Linux distribution. In this case, the program may not be able to use some new features of Postgres Pro server, but it is probably not designed to use them anyway.

If you prefer to use Postgres Pro libraries with a third-party program, or would like to enable support for a new feature that does not require client application change, such as SCRAM authentication, you can recompile your program with Postgres Pro libraries.

Important

If the program is compiled with one version of libpq but used with another, its stable work cannot be guaranteed.

If you are creating .rpm or .deb packages for your program, it is recommended to do the following:

1. Add /opt/pgpro/std-14/bin to PATH inside your build scripts (.spec files or debian/rules).
2. Specify postgrespro-std-14-dev in the BuildDepends or BuildRequires tags for your program.

Thus, you can ensure that your package build process calls the right version of pg_config whenever the source package is rebuilt.

16.1.5. Configuring Multiple Postgres Pro Instances

To set up several Postgres Pro server instances with different data directories on Linux, do the following:

1. Install and configure Postgres Pro as explained in Section 16.1.2 or Section 16.1.3.
2. Once the first default database is created, run initdb specifying the path to a different data directory and any other parameters required to initialize another server instance.
3. Specify different ports for your server instances in the corresponding postgresql.conf files to avoid conflicts.
4. If required, configure automatic server startup, as follows:
   a. Create a copy of /etc/init.d/postgrespro-std-14 or /lib/systemd/system/postgrespro-std-14.service with a different name, specifying the path to the data directory.
   b. Enable automatic server startup using the provided autostart scripts for your system service management facility instead of pg-setup, as described in Section 16.1.3.2. Make sure to use the renamed copies of the scripts you created in step 1.

16.1.6. Antivirus Considerations

It is strongly recommended to avoid using antivirus software on systems where Postgres Pro is running because it may cause additional load on your environment and result in unexpected database behavior that would lead to performance and reliability issues. If you need to use antivirus software, make sure to exclude the following directories from virus scanning as they do not contain any executable files:

- PGDATA directory that stores main cluster data, usually located in /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data unless you specified another directory in initdb options
- Paths to created tablespaces

16.2. Installing Postgres Pro Standard on Windows

Postgres Pro offers the following installation modes for the supported Windows systems:

- GUI installation using an interactive wizard
Binary Installation

- **Command-line installation**

Additionally, you have to set up the environment for using PL/Perl and PL/Python, if these procedural languages are required for your purposes. For details, see Section 16.2.4.

To avoid confusion, note that there are the following different users on Windows systems:

- Postgres Pro installation is performed on behalf of an operating system user. All the database files belong to this user.
- You must connect to the database cluster on behalf of the user created at installation time to be able to work with the database. This is not an operating system user.
- By default, Postgres Pro service is started on behalf of NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService, which is a special Windows Service Account. You can specify another Windows user for starting Postgres Pro service in the corresponding text box of the installer, if required. The provided user must have the right to start Windows services.

The minimum hardware required to install Postgres Pro, create a database cluster and start the database server are as follows:

- 1-GHz processor
- 1 GB of RAM
- 1 GB of disk space

Additional disk space is required for data or supporting components.

### 16.2.1. Supported Windows Versions

Postgres Pro is available for the following 64-bit Windows versions:

- Windows 10 or higher
- Windows Server 2012 R2 or higher

### 16.2.2. GUI Installation

Postgres Pro provides an installer with an interactive wizard that configures and installs Postgres Pro core components, creates the default database, and enables server autostart. The following components have their own installers that should be run separately once the core components are installed:

- `pg_probackup`

To install Postgres Pro core components, run the provided installer as administrator and follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure to take into account the following installation specifics:

- You can install all the Postgres Pro core components, or customize the installation by excluding server or developer components. Client utilities are always installed.
- The selected data directory must be empty. Otherwise, Postgres Pro cannot create the default database. The default data directory is `C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\data`.
- If the Allow external connections check box is selected (default), the installer modifies `postgresql.conf` and `pg_hba.conf` files to allow external connections. Otherwise, Postgres Pro server is listening for connections from the localhost only. If you decide to enable external connections when the installation is complete, you have to modify the Windows Firewall configuration to allow Postgres Pro server to accept connections.
- Make sure to remember the username and password you set up when installing Postgres Pro as it will be required to connect to the Postgres Pro server when using password-based authentication methods.
- By default, Postgres Pro uses `icu` collations. If you are upgrading an installation with the default collation provided by `libc`, such as PostgreSQL, make sure to choose `libc` collation provider in the corresponding drop-down list of the installer.
Binary Installation

- Postgres Pro provides a pre-configured psql that you can launch from the Start menu, so you do not have to configure the standard environment variables. However, if you would like to work with Postgres Pro from the standard command prompt without specifying full paths to the binary files, select the Set up environment variables check box.

Once the installation completes, your Postgres Pro instance is ready to use, with server autostart enabled. If you need more than one Postgres Pro instance on the same system, you have to configure them manually. For details, see Section 16.2.5.

16.2.3. Command-Line Installation

To install Postgres Pro from the command line, run the downloaded installer file passing one or more options described in Section 16.2.3.1.

16.2.3.1. Command-Line Options

Installation directory path:

/D=\path

Silent install:

/S

INI file that provides the options to customize the server installation:

/init=ini_file_name

If you would like to customize the installation, you must create the INI file manually, as described in Section 16.2.3.2.

16.2.3.2. INI File Format

You can add the following installation options to the [options] section of the INI file:

- **InstallDir** — path where to install server. If you specified the /D option on the command line, it will be overwritten by the InstallDir value.
- **DataDir** — path where to create default database
- **Port** — TCP/IP port to listen. Default: 5432.
- **SuperUser** — name of the database user who will have admin rights in the database
- **Password** — password of the user
- **noExtConnections = 1** — do not allow external connections
- **Coding = UNICODE** — character encoding to use in the database
- **Locale** — locale to use in the database. There can be several different locales for each encoding
- **vcredist = no** — do not install Visual C redistributable libraries (use it only if these libraries are already installed on your system)
- **envvar = 1** — set up environment variables helpful for Postgres Pro: PGDATA, PGDATABASE, PGUSER, PGPORT, PGLOCALEDIR
- **needoptimization = 0** — disable automatic tuning of configuration parameters based on the available system resources.
- **datachecksums = 0** — disable data checksums for the cluster.
- **serviceaccount** — specify a Windows user for starting Postgres Pro service. The provided user must have the right to start Windows services. By default, Postgres Pro service is started on behalf of NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService, which is a special Windows Service Account.
- **servicepassword** — provide the password for the Windows user specified in the serviceaccount option.
- **serviceid** — change Postgres Pro service name.
- **islibc = 1** — use libc as the provider of the default collation.

16.2.4. Loading Procedural Languages

Postgres Pro distribution for Windows systems includes PL/Perl and PL/Python procedural languages.
16.2.4.1. Setting up the Environment for PL/Python

To configure the system for using PL/Python, complete the following steps:

1. Download and install the latest available version of Python 2.7 for Windows. Choose the 64-bit version as Postgres Pro server has 64-bit architecture type. You can find the installers at https://www.python.org/.

2. Create the PL/Python extension by running the following command in psql:

   ```sql
   CREATE EXTENSION plpythonu
   ```

   **Tip**

   In some cases, when you create a PL/Python function, the connection to the server is lost and the server log shows the following error message:

   ```text
   ImportError: module site not found
   ```

   To avoid this issue, try to specify the Python installation directory in the `PYTHONHOME` environment variable and restart the Postgres Pro service.

16.2.4.2. Setting up the Environment for PL/Perl

To configure the system for using PL/Perl, complete the following steps:


2. Make sure to select the Add Perl to the PATH environment variable option in the installation wizard.

3. Restart the Postgres Pro server.

4. Create the PL/Perl extension by running the following command in psql:

   ```sql
   CREATE EXTENSION plperlu
   ```

16.2.5. Configuring Multiple Postgres Pro Instances

To set up several Postgres Pro server instances with different data directories on Windows, do the following:

1. Install Postgres Pro as explained in Section 16.2.2 or Section 16.2.3. The installed binary files are shared by all Postgres Pro instances, so you need to complete this step only once.

2. Select an empty folder that your new Postgres Pro instance will use as the data directory. For example, `C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\data2`. Make sure to grant Full Control permissions for this folder to the current OS user that will own the database files and the user on behalf of which the server is running (NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService by default).

3. Run `initdb` specifying the path to the new data directory and any other parameters required to initialize another server instance. For example:

   ```cmd
   "C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\bin\initdb.exe" --encoding=UTF8 -U "postgres" -D "C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\data2"
   ```

   Alternatively, you can stop the running server and copy the contents of the existing data directory into the newly created folder. In this case, the new Postgres Pro instance inherits all the settings of the original instance, including authentication settings.

4. Modify `postgresql.conf` settings for the new Postgres Pro instance as required. Make sure to specify different ports for your server instances to avoid conflicts.

5. Open the command prompt as Administrator and register a new Postgres Pro service with a unique name, for example, `postgrespro-data2`:

   ```cmd
   "C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\bin\pg_ctl.exe" register -N "postgrespro-data2" -U "NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService" -D "C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\data2" -W
   ```
Binary Installation

Start the registered service:

```bash
sc start "postgrespro-data2"
```

Once the service is started, your Postgres Pro instance is ready to use. If you need any additional Postgres Pro extensions, make sure to enable them for the new instance as explained in Section 16.3.

16.2.6. Uninstalling Postgres Pro Standard

The procedure of uninstalling Postgres Pro Standard depends on the number of Postgres Pro instances set up on your system.

If you have a single Postgres Pro instance created at installation time, you only need to run the `C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\uninstall.exe` program. This program automatically stops the server and unregisters the service for this instance.

If you have created any additional Postgres Pro instances, you have to complete the following steps:

1. Stop the server for each instance:

   ```bash
   "C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\bin\pg_ctl.exe" stop -D "C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\data_dir" -m fast -w
   ```

2. Unregister the service for each instance:

   ```bash
   "C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\bin\pg_ctl.exe" unregister -N "postgrespro_service_name"
   ```

3. Run the `C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\uninstall.exe` to uninstall Postgres Pro binary files.

16.2.7. Antivirus Considerations

It is strongly recommended to avoid using antivirus software on systems where Postgres Pro is running because it may cause additional load on your environment and result in unexpected database behavior that would lead to performance and reliability issues. If you need to use antivirus software, make sure to exclude the following directories from virus scanning as they do not contain any executable files:

- PGDATA directory that stores main cluster data, usually located in `C:\Program Files\PostgresPro\14\data` unless you specified another directory in initdb options
- Paths to created tablespaces

16.3. Installing Additional Supplied Modules

Postgres Pro comes with a set of additional server extensions, or modules. On Linux, these extensions are provided in the `postgrespro-contrib` package. On Windows, these extensions are installed together with the server components.

Once you have the binary files installed, you have to enable additional extensions in the database in order to use them. In most cases, you only need to issue the `CREATE EXTENSION` command. However, some extensions also require shared libraries to be preloaded on server startup. If you want to use such extensions, you need to configure parameter

```bash
shared_preload_libraries = 'lib1, lib2, lib3'
```

in the `postgresql.conf` file of your Postgres Pro database instance and restart the server before executing the `CREATE EXTENSION` statement.

For the exact installation and configuration instructions for each particular extension, see the corresponding documentation under Appendix F.

To get the list of extensions available in your Postgres Pro installation, you can view the `pg_available_extensions` system catalog.
16.4. Migrating to Postgres Pro

Different major versions of Postgres Pro, as well as different PostgreSQL-based products based on the same major version, can have binary incompatible databases, so you cannot replace the server binary and continue running. To convert databases that used previous major versions, you must perform a dump/restore using `pg_dumpall` or use the `pg_upgrade` utility.

For upgrade instructions specific to a particular release, see the Release Notes for the corresponding Postgres Pro version.
Chapter 17. Server Setup and Operation

This chapter discusses how to set up and run the database server, and its interactions with the operating system.

The directions in this chapter assume that you are working with plain PostgreSQL without any additional infrastructure, for example a copy that you built from source according to the directions in the preceding chapters. If you are working with a pre-packaged or vendor-supplied version of PostgreSQL, it is likely that the packager has made special provisions for installing and starting the database server according to your system's conventions. Consult the package-level documentation for details.

17.1. The Postgres Pro User Account

As with any server daemon that is accessible to the outside world, it is advisable to run Postgres Pro under a separate user account. This user account should only own the data that is managed by the server, and should not be shared with other daemons. (For example, using the user nobody is a bad idea.) In particular, it is advisable that this user account not own the Postgres Pro executable files, to ensure that a compromised server process could not modify those executables.

Pre-packaged versions of PostgreSQL will typically create a suitable user account automatically during package installation.

To add a Unix user account to your system, look for a command useradd or adduser. The user name postgres is often used, and is assumed throughout this book, but you can use another name if you like.

17.2. Creating a Database Cluster

Before you can do anything, you must initialize a database storage area on disk. We call this a database cluster. (The SQL standard uses the term catalog cluster.) A database cluster is a collection of databases that is managed by a single instance of a running database server. After initialization, a database cluster will contain a database named postgres, which is meant as a default database for use by utilities, users and third party applications. The database server itself does not require the postgres database to exist, but many external utility programs assume it exists. Another database created within each cluster during initialization is called template1. As the name suggests, this will be used as a template for subsequently created databases; it should not be used for actual work. (See Chapter 21 for information about creating new databases within a cluster.)

In file system terms, a database cluster is a single directory under which all data will be stored. We call this the data directory or data area. It is completely up to you where you choose to store your data. There is no default, although locations such as /usr/local/pgsql/data or /var/lib/pgsql/data are popular. The data directory must be initialized before being used, using the program initdb which is installed with Postgres Pro.

If you are using a pre-packaged version of PostgreSQL, it may well have a specific convention for where to place the data directory, and it may also provide a script for creating the data directory. In that case you should use that script in preference to running initdb directly. Consult the package-level documentation for details.

To initialize a database cluster manually, run initdb and specify the desired file system location of the database cluster with the -D option, for example:

$ initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data

Note that you must execute this command while logged into the Postgres Pro user account, which is described in the previous section.

Tip

As an alternative to the -D option, you can set the environment variable PGDATA.
Alternatively, you can run initdb via the pg_ctl program like so:

```
$ pg_ctl -D /usr/local/pgsql/data initdb
```

This may be more intuitive if you are using pg_ctl for starting and stopping the server (see Section 17.3), so that pg_ctl would be the sole command you use for managing the database server instance.

initdb will attempt to create the directory you specify if it does not already exist. Of course, this will fail if initdb does not have permissions to write in the parent directory. It's generally recommendable that the Postgres Pro user own not just the data directory but its parent directory as well, so that this should not be a problem. If the desired parent directory doesn't exist either, you will need to create it first, using root privileges if the grandparent directory isn't writable. So the process might look like this:

```
root# mkdir /usr/local/pgsql
root# chown postgres /usr/local/pgsql
root# su postgres
postgres$ initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

initdb will refuse to run if the data directory exists and already contains files; this is to prevent accidentally overwriting an existing installation.

Because the data directory contains all the data stored in the database, it is essential that it be secured from unauthorized access. initdb therefore revokes access permissions from everyone but the Postgres Pro user, and optionally, group. Group access, when enabled, is read-only. This allows an unprivileged user in the same group as the cluster owner to take a backup of the cluster data or perform other operations that only require read access.

Note that enabling or disabling group access on an existing cluster requires the cluster to be shut down and the appropriate mode to be set on all directories and files before restarting Postgres Pro. Otherwise, a mix of modes might exist in the data directory. For clusters that allow access only by the owner, the appropriate modes are 0700 for directories and 0600 for files. For clusters that also allow reads by the group, the appropriate modes are 0750 for directories and 0640 for files.

However, while the directory contents are secure, the default client authentication setup allows any local user to connect to the database and even become the database superuser. If you do not trust other local users, we recommend you use one of initdb's -W, --pwprompt or --pwfile options to assign a password to the database superuser. Also, specify -A md5 or -A password so that the default trust authentication mode is not used; or modify the generated pg_hba.conf file after running initdb, but before you start the server for the first time. (Other reasonable approaches include using peer authentication or file system permissions to restrict connections. See Chapter 19 for more information.)

initdb also initializes the default locale for the database cluster. Normally, it will just take the locale settings in the environment and apply them to the initialized database. It is possible to specify a different locale for the database; more information about that can be found in Section 22.1. The default sort order used within the particular database cluster is set by initdb, and while you can create new databases using different sort order, the order used in the template databases that initdb creates cannot be changed without dropping and recreating them. There is also a performance impact for using locales other than C or POSIX. Therefore, it is important to make this choice correctly the first time.

initdb also sets the default character set encoding for the database cluster. Normally this should be chosen to match the locale setting. For details see Section 22.3.

Non-C and non-POSIX locales rely on the operating system's collation library for character set ordering. This controls the ordering of keys stored in indexes. For this reason, a cluster cannot switch to an incompatible collation library version, either through snapshot restore, binary streaming replication, a different operating system, or an operating system upgrade.

17.2.1. Use of Secondary File Systems

Many installations create their database clusters on file systems (volumes) other than the machine's "root" volume. If you choose to do this, it is not advisable to try to use the secondary volume's topmost
directory (mount point) as the data directory. Best practice is to create a directory within the mount-point directory that is owned by the Postgres Pro user, and then create the data directory within that. This avoids permissions problems, particularly for operations such as pg_upgrade, and it also ensures clean failures if the secondary volume is taken offline.

17.2.2. File Systems

Generally, any file system with POSIX semantics can be used for Postgres Pro. Users prefer different file systems for a variety of reasons, including vendor support, performance, and familiarity. Experience suggests that, all other things being equal, one should not expect major performance or behavior changes merely from switching file systems or making minor file system configuration changes.

17.2.2.1. NFS

It is possible to use an NFS file system for storing the Postgres Pro data directory. Postgres Pro does nothing special for NFS file systems, meaning it assumes NFS behaves exactly like locally-connected drives. Postgres Pro does not use any functionality that is known to have nonstandard behavior on NFS, such as file locking.

The only firm requirement for using NFS with Postgres Pro is that the file system is mounted using the hard option. With the hard option, processes can “hang” indefinitely if there are network problems, so this configuration will require a careful monitoring setup. The soft option will interrupt system calls in case of network problems, but Postgres Pro will not repeat system calls interrupted in this way, so any such interruption will result in an I/O error being reported.

It is not necessary to use the sync mount option. The behavior of the async option is sufficient, since Postgres Pro issues fsync calls at appropriate times to flush the write caches. (This is analogous to how it works on a local file system.) However, it is strongly recommended to use the sync export option on the NFS server on systems where it exists (mainly Linux). Otherwise, an fsync or equivalent on the NFS client is not actually guaranteed to reach permanent storage on the server, which could cause corruption similar to running with the parameter fsync off. The defaults of these mount and export options differ between vendors and versions, so it is recommended to check and perhaps specify them explicitly in any case to avoid any ambiguity.

In some cases, an external storage product can be accessed either via NFS or a lower-level protocol such as iSCSI. In the latter case, the storage appears as a block device and any available file system can be created on it. That approach might relieve the DBA from having to deal with some of the idiosyncrasies of NFS, but of course the complexity of managing remote storage then happens at other levels.

17.3. Starting the Database Server

Important

In binary installations on Linux systems, the default database is located in /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data, unless you specify a custom directory. See Section 16.1 for details.

Before anyone can access the database, you must start the database server. The database server program is called postgres.

If you are using a pre-packaged version of PostgreSQL, it almost certainly includes provisions for running the server as a background task according to the conventions of your operating system. Using the package’s infrastructure to start the server will be much less work than figuring out how to do this yourself. Consult the package-level documentation for details.

The bare-bones way to start the server manually is just to invoke postgres directly, specifying the location of the data directory with the -D option, for example:

$ postgres -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
which will leave the server running in the foreground. This must be done while logged into the Postgres Pro user account. Without `-D`, the server will try to use the data directory named by the environment variable `PGDATA`. If that variable is not provided either, it will fail.

Normally it is better to start `postgres` in the background. For this, use the usual Unix shell syntax:

```bash
$ postgres -D /usr/local/pgsql/data >logfile 2>&1 &
```

It is important to store the server's stdout and stderr output somewhere, as shown above. It will help for auditing purposes and to diagnose problems. (See Section 23.3 for a more thorough discussion of log file handling.)

The `postgres` program also takes a number of other command-line options. For more information, see the `postgres` reference page and Chapter 18 below.

This shell syntax can get tedious quickly. Therefore the wrapper program `pg_ctl` is provided to simplify some tasks. For example:

```bash
pg_ctl start -l logfile
```

will start the server in the background and put the output into the named log file. The `-D` option has the same meaning here as for `postgres`. `pg_ctl` is also capable of stopping the server.

Normally, you will want to start the database server when the computer boots. Autostart scripts are operating-system-specific. There are a few example scripts distributed with Postgres Pro in the `contrib/start-scripts` directory. Installing one will require root privileges.

Different systems have different conventions for starting up daemons at boot time. Many systems have a file `/etc/rc.local` or `/etc/rc.d/rc.local`. Others use `init.d` or `rc.d` directories. Whatever you do, the server must be run by the Postgres Pro user account and not by `root` or any other user. Therefore you probably should form your commands using `su postgres -c '...'. For example:

```bash
su postgres -c 'pg_ctl start -D /usr/local/pgsql/data -l serverlog'
```

Here are a few more operating-system-specific suggestions. (In each case be sure to use the proper installation directory and user name where we show generic values.)

- For FreeBSD, look at the file `contrib/start-scripts/freebsd` in the Postgres Pro source distribution.
- On OpenBSD, add the following lines to the file `/etc/rc.local`:

  ```bash
  if [ -x /usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl -a -x /usr/local/pgsql/bin/postgres ]; then
    su -l postgres -c '/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -s -l /var/postgresql/log -D /usr/local/pgsql/data'
    echo -n ' postgresql
  fi
  ```

- On Linux systems either add

  ```bash
  /usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -l logfile -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
  ```

  to `/etc/rc.d/rc.local` or `/etc/rc.local` or look at the file `contrib/start-scripts/linux` in the Postgres Pro source distribution.

When using systemd, you can use the following service unit file (e.g., at `/etc/systemd/system/postgresql.service`):

```ini
[Unit]
Description=Postgres Pro database server
Documentation=man:postgres(1)

[Service]
Type=notify
User=postgres
```
Server Setup and Operation

ExecStart=/usr/local/pgsql/bin/postgres -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
ExecReload=/bin/kill -HUP $MAINPID
KillMode=mixed
KillSignal=SIGINT
TimeoutSec=0

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target

Using Type=notify requires that the server binary was built with configure --with-systemd.

Consider carefully the timeout setting. systemd has a default timeout of 90 seconds as of this writing and will kill a process that does not notify readiness within that time. But a Postgres Pro server that might have to perform crash recovery at startup could take much longer to become ready. The suggested value of 0 disables the timeout logic.

- On NetBSD, use either the FreeBSD or Linux start scripts, depending on preference.
- On Solaris, create a file called /etc/init.d/postgresql that contains the following line:

  su - postgres -c "/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -l logfile -D /usr/local/pgsql/data"

  Then, create a symbolic link to it in /etc/rc3.d as S99postgresql.

While the server is running, its PID is stored in the file postmaster.pid in the data directory. This is used to prevent multiple server instances from running in the same data directory and can also be used for shutting down the server.

17.3.1. Server Start-up Failures

There are several common reasons the server might fail to start. Check the server’s log file, or start it by hand (without redirecting standard output or standard error) and see what error messages appear. Below we explain some of the most common error messages in more detail.

LOG: could not bind IPv4 address "127.0.0.1": Address already in use
HINT: Is another postmaster already running on port 5432? If not, wait a few seconds and retry.
FATAL: could not create any TCP/IP sockets

This usually means just what it suggests: you tried to start another server on the same port where one is already running. However, if the kernel error message is not Address already in use or some variant of that, there might be a different problem. For example, trying to start a server on a reserved port number might draw something like:

$ postgres -p 666
LOG: could not bind IPv4 address "127.0.0.1": Permission denied
HINT: Is another postmaster already running on port 666? If not, wait a few seconds and retry.
FATAL: could not create any TCP/IP sockets

A message like:

FATAL: could not create shared memory segment: Invalid argument
DETAIL: Failed system call was shmget(key=5440001, size=4011376640, 03600).

probably means your kernel's limit on the size of shared memory is smaller than the work area Postgres Pro is trying to create (4011376640 bytes in this example). This is only likely to happen if you have set shared_memory_type to sysv. In that case, you can try starting the server with a smaller-than-normal number of buffers (shared_buffers), or reconfigure your kernel to increase the allowed shared memory size. You might also see this message when trying to start multiple servers on the same machine, if their total space requested exceeds the kernel limit.

An error like:
Server Setup and Operation

FATAL: could not create semaphores: No space left on device
DETAIL: Failed system call was semget(5440126, 17, 03600).

does not mean you've run out of disk space. It means your kernel's limit on the number of System V semaphores is smaller than the number Postgres Pro wants to create. As above, you might be able to work around the problem by starting the server with a reduced number of allowed connections (max_connections), but you'll eventually want to increase the kernel limit.

Details about configuring System V IPC facilities are given in Section 17.4.1.

17.3.2. Client Connection Problems

Although the error conditions possible on the client side are quite varied and application-dependent, a few of them might be directly related to how the server was started. Conditions other than those shown below should be documented with the respective client application.

psql: error: connection to server at "server.joe.com" (123.123.123.123), port 5432 failed: Connection refused

Is the server running on that host and accepting TCP/IP connections?

This is the generic "I couldn't find a server to talk to" failure. It looks like the above when TCP/IP communication is attempted. A common mistake is to forget to configure the server to allow TCP/IP connections.

Alternatively, you might get this when attempting Unix-domain socket communication to a local server:

psql: error: connection to server on socket "/tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432" failed: No such file or directory

Is the server running locally and accepting connections on that socket?

If the server is indeed running, check that the client's idea of the socket path (here /tmp) agrees with the server's unix_socket_directories setting.

A connection failure message always shows the server address or socket path name, which is useful in verifying that the client is trying to connect to the right place. If there is in fact no server listening there, the kernel error message will typically be either Connection refused or No such file or directory, as illustrated. (It is important to realize that Connection refused in this context does not mean that the server got your connection request and rejected it. That case will produce a different message, as shown in Section 19.15.) Other error messages such as Connection timed out might indicate more fundamental problems, like lack of network connectivity, or a firewall blocking the connection.

17.4. Managing Kernel Resources

Postgres Pro can sometimes exhaust various operating system resource limits, especially when multiple copies of the server are running on the same system, or in very large installations. This section explains the kernel resources used by Postgres Pro and the steps you can take to resolve problems related to kernel resource consumption.

17.4.1. Shared Memory and Semaphores

Postgres Pro requires the operating system to provide inter-process communication (IPC) features, specifically shared memory and semaphores. Unix-derived systems typically provide "System V" IPC, "POSIX" IPC, or both. Windows has its own implementation of these features and is not discussed here.

By default, Postgres Pro allocates a very small amount of System V shared memory, as well as a much larger amount of anonymous mmap shared memory. Alternatively, a single large System V shared memory region can be used (see shared_memory_type). In addition a significant number of semaphores, which can be either System V or POSIX style, are created at server startup. Currently, POSIX semaphores are used on Linux and FreeBSD systems while other platforms use System V semaphores.

System V IPC features are typically constrained by system-wide allocation limits. When Postgres Pro exceeds one of these limits, the server will refuse to start and should leave an instructive error message.
Server Setup and Operation

describing the problem and what to do about it. (See also Section 17.3.1.) The relevant kernel parameters are named consistently across different systems; Table 17.1 gives an overview. The methods to set them, however, vary. Suggestions for some platforms are given below.

Table 17.1. System V IPC Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Values needed to run one Postgres Pro instance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHMMAX</td>
<td>Maximum size of shared memory segment (bytes)</td>
<td>at least 1kB, but the default is usually much higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHMMIN</td>
<td>Minimum size of shared memory segment (bytes)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHMALL</td>
<td>Total amount of shared memory available (bytes or pages)</td>
<td>same as SHMMAX if bytes, or ceil(SHMMAX/PAGE_SIZE) if pages, plus room for other applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHMSEG</td>
<td>Maximum number of shared memory segments per process</td>
<td>only 1 segment is needed, but the default is much higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHMMNI</td>
<td>Maximum number of shared memory segments system-wide</td>
<td>like SHMSEG plus room for other applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEMMNI</td>
<td>Maximum number of semaphore identifiers (i.e., sets)</td>
<td>at least ceil((max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + max_wal_senders + max_worker_processes + 5) / 16) plus room for other applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEMMNS</td>
<td>Maximum number of semaphores system-wide</td>
<td>ceil((max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + max_wal_senders + max_worker_processes + 5) / 16) * 17 plus room for other applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEMMSL</td>
<td>Maximum number of semaphores per set</td>
<td>at least 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEMMAP</td>
<td>Number of entries in semaphore map</td>
<td>see text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEMVMX</td>
<td>Maximum value of semaphore</td>
<td>at least 1000 (The default is often 32767; do not change unless necessary)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Postgres Pro requires a few bytes of System V shared memory (typically 48 bytes, on 64-bit platforms) for each copy of the server. On most modern operating systems, this amount can easily be allocated. However, if you are running many copies of the server or you explicitly configure the server to use large amounts of System V shared memory (see shared_memory_type and dynamic_shared_memory_type), it may be necessary to increase SHMALL, which is the total amount of System V shared memory system-wide. Note that SHMALL is measured in pages rather than bytes on many systems.

Less likely to cause problems is the minimum size for shared memory segments (SHMMIN), which should be at most approximately 32 bytes for Postgres Pro (it is usually just 1). The maximum number of segments system-wide (SHMMNI) or per-process (SHMSEG) are unlikely to cause a problem unless your system has them set to zero.

When using System V semaphores, Postgres Pro uses one semaphore per allowed connection (max_connections), allowed autovacuum worker process (autovacuum_max_workers) and allowed background process (max_worker_processes), in sets of 16. Each such set will also contain a 17th semaphore which contains a “magic number”, to detect collision with semaphore sets used by other applications. The maximum number of semaphores in the system is set by SEMMNS, which consequently must be at least as high as max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + max_wal_senders + max_worker_processes, plus max_worker_processes, plus one extra for each 16 allowed connections plus workers (see the formula in Table 17.1). The parameter SEMMNI determines the limit on the number of semaphore sets that can exist on the system at one time. Hence this parameter must be at least ceil((max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + max_wal_senders + max_worker_processes + 5) / 16). Lowering the
number of allowed connections is a temporary workaround for failures, which are usually confusingly worded “No space left on device”, from the function `semget`.

In some cases it might also be necessary to increase `SEMMAP` to be at least on the order of `SEMMNS`. If the system has this parameter (many do not), it defines the size of the semaphore resource map, in which each contiguous block of available semaphores needs an entry. When a semaphore set is freed it is either added to an existing entry that is adjacent to the freed block or it is registered under a new map entry. If the map is full, the freed semaphores get lost (until reboot). Fragmentation of the semaphore space could over time lead to fewer available semaphores than there should be.

Various other settings related to “semaphore undo”, such as `SEMNU` and `SEMUME`, do not affect Postgres Pro.

When using POSIX semaphores, the number of semaphores needed is the same as for System V, that is one semaphore per allowed connection (`max_connections`), allowed autovacuum worker process (`autovacuum_max_workers`) and allowed background process (`max_worker_processes`). On the platforms where this option is preferred, there is no specific kernel limit on the number of POSIX semaphores.

AIX

It should not be necessary to do any special configuration for such parameters as `SHMMAX`, as it appears this is configured to allow all memory to be used as shared memory. That is the sort of configuration commonly used for other databases such as DB/2.

It might, however, be necessary to modify the global `ulimit` information in `/etc/security/limits`, as the default hard limits for file sizes (`fsize`) and numbers of files (`nofiles`) might be too low.

FreeBSD

The default shared memory settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`. System V semaphores are not used on this platform.

The default IPC settings can be changed using the `sysctl` or `loader` interfaces. The following parameters can be set using `sysctl`:

```bash
# sysctl kern.ipc.shmall=32768
# sysctl kern.ipc.shmmax=134217728
```

To make these settings persist over reboots, modify `/etc/sysctl.conf`.

If you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`, you might also want to configure your kernel to lock System V shared memory into RAM and prevent it from being paged out to swap. This can be accomplished using the `sysctl` setting `kern.ipc.shm_use_phys`.

If running in a FreeBSD jail, you should set its `sysvshm` parameter to `new`, so that it has its own separate System V shared memory namespace. (Before FreeBSD 11.0, it was necessary to enable shared access to the host’s IPC namespace from jails, and take measures to avoid collisions.)

NetBSD

The default shared memory settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`. You will usually want to increase `kern.ipc.semmni` and `kern.ipc.semmns`, as NetBSD’s default settings for these are uncomfortably small.

IPC parameters can be adjusted using `sysctl`, for example:

```bash
# sysctl -w kern.ipc.semmni=100
```

To make these settings persist over reboots, modify `/etc/sysctl.conf`.

If you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`, you might also want to configure your kernel to lock System V shared memory into RAM and prevent it from being paged out to swap. This can be accomplished using the `sysctl` setting `kern.ipc.shm_use_phys`. 

470
OpenBSD

The default shared memory settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`. You will usually want to increase `kern.seminfo.semmni` and `kern.seminfo.semmns`, as OpenBSD’s default settings for these are uncomfortably small.

IPC parameters can be adjusted using `sysctl`, for example:

```
# sysctl kern.seminfo.semmni=100
```

To make these settings persist over reboots, modify `/etc/sysctl.conf`.

HP-UX

The default settings tend to suffice for normal installations.

IPC parameters can be set in the System Administration Manager (SAM) under Kernel Configuration → Configurable Parameters. Choose Create A New Kernel when you’re done.

Linux

The default shared memory settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`, and even then only on older kernel versions that shipped with low defaults. System V semaphores are not used on this platform.

The shared memory size settings can be changed via the `sysctl` interface. For example, to allow 16 GB:

```
$ sysctl -w kernel.shmmax=17179869184
$ sysctl -w kernel.shmall=4194304
```

To make these settings persist over reboots, see `/etc/sysctl.conf`.

macOS

The default shared memory and semaphore settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`.

The recommended method for configuring shared memory in macOS is to create a file named `/etc/sysctl.conf`, containing variable assignments such as:

```
kern.sysv.shmmax=4194304
kern.sysv.shmmin=1
kern.sysv.shmmni=32
kern.sysv.shmseg=8
kern.sysv.shmall=1024
```

Note that in some macOS versions, all five shared-memory parameters must be set in `/etc/sysctl.conf`, else the values will be ignored.

`SHMMAX` can only be set to a multiple of 4096.

`SHMALL` is measured in 4 kB pages on this platform.

It is possible to change all but `SHMMNI` on the fly, using `sysctl`. But it’s still best to set up your preferred values via `/etc/sysctl.conf`, so that the values will be kept across reboots.

Solaris illumos

The default shared memory and semaphore settings are usually good enough for most Postgres Pro applications. Solaris defaults to a `SHMMAX` of one-quarter of system RAM. To further adjust this setting, use a project setting associated with the `postgres` user. For example, run the following as `root`:

```
projadd -c "Postgres Pro DB User" -K "project.max-shm-memory=(privileged,8GB,deny)" -U postgres -G postgres user.postgres
```
This command adds the user.postgres project and sets the shared memory maximum for the postgres user to 8GB, and takes effect the next time that user logs in, or when you restart Postgres Pro (not reload). The above assumes that Postgres Pro is run by the postgres user in the postgres group. No server reboot is required.

Other recommended kernel setting changes for database servers which will have a large number of connections are:

- `project.max-shm-ids=(priv,32768,deny)`
- `project.max-sem-ids=(priv,4096,deny)`
- `project.max-msg-ids=(priv,4096,deny)`

Additionally, if you are running Postgres Pro inside a zone, you may need to raise the zone resource usage limits as well. See "Chapter2: Projects and Tasks" in the `System Administrator's Guide` for more information on `projects` and `prctl`.

### 17.4.2. systemd RemoveIPC

If systemd is in use, some care must be taken that IPC resources (including shared memory) are not prematurely removed by the operating system. This is especially of concern when installing Postgres Pro from source. Users of distribution packages of Postgres Pro are less likely to be affected, as the postgres user is then normally created as a system user.

The setting `RemoveIPC` in `logind.conf` controls whether IPC objects are removed when a user fully logs out. System users are exempt. This setting defaults to on in stock systemd, but some operating system distributions default it to off.

A typical observed effect when this setting is on is that shared memory objects used for parallel query execution are removed at apparently random times, leading to errors and warnings while attempting to open and remove them, like:

```
WARNING: could not remove shared memory segment "'/PostgreSQL.1450751626'": No such file or directory
```

Different types of IPC objects (shared memory vs. semaphores, System V vs. POSIX) are treated slightly differently by systemd, so one might observe that some IPC resources are not removed in the same way as others. But it is not advisable to rely on these subtle differences.

A “user logging out” might happen as part of a maintenance job or manually when an administrator logs in as the postgres user or something similar, so it is hard to prevent in general.

What is a “system user” is determined at systemd compile time from the `SYS_UID_MAX` setting in `/etc/login.defs`.

Packaging and deployment scripts should be careful to create the postgres user as a system user by using `useradd -r, adduser --system`, or equivalent.

Alternatively, if the user account was created incorrectly or cannot be changed, it is recommended to set `RemoveIPC=no` in `/etc/systemd/logind.conf` or another appropriate configuration file.

Caution

At least one of these two things has to be ensured, or the Postgres Pro server will be very unreliable.

### 17.4.3. Resource Limits

Unix-like operating systems enforce various kinds of resource limits that might interfere with the operation of your Postgres Pro server. Of particular importance are limits on the number of processes...
Server Setup and Operation

per user, the number of open files per process, and the amount of memory available to each process. Each of these have a “hard” and a “soft” limit. The soft limit is what actually counts but it can be changed by the user up to the hard limit. The hard limit can only be changed by the root user. The system call setrlimit is responsible for setting these parameters. The shell's built-in command ulimit (Bourne shells) or limit (csh) is used to control the resource limits from the command line. On BSD-derived systems the file /etc/login.conf controls the various resource limits set during login. See the operating system documentation for details. The relevant parameters are maxproc, openfiles, and datasize. For example:

```
default:\n...:
datasize-cur=256M:\n:maxproc-cur=256:\n:openfiles-cur=256:\n...
```

(-cur is the soft limit. Append -max to set the hard limit.)

Kernels can also have system-wide limits on some resources.

- On Linux /proc/sys/fs/file-max determines the maximum number of open files that the kernel will support. It can be changed by writing a different number into the file or by adding an assignment in /etc/sysctl.conf. The maximum limit of files per process is fixed at the time the kernel is compiled; see /usr/src/linux/Documentation/proc.txt for more information.

The Postgres Pro server uses one process per connection so you should provide for at least as many processes as allowed connections, in addition to what you need for the rest of your system. This is usually not a problem but if you run several processes on one machine things might get tight.

The factory default limit on open files is often set to “socially friendly” values that allow many users to coexist on a machine without using an inappropriate fraction of the system resources. If you run many servers on a machine this is perhaps what you want, but on dedicated servers you might want to raise this limit.

On the other side of the coin, some systems allow individual processes to open large numbers of files; if more than a few processes do so then the system-wide limit can easily be exceeded. If you find this happening, and you do not want to alter the system-wide limit, you can set Postgres Pro's max_files_per_process configuration parameter to limit the consumption of open files.

17.4.4. Linux Memory Overcommit

The default virtual memory behavior on Linux is not optimal for Postgres Pro. Because of the way that the kernel implements memory overcommit, the kernel might terminate the Postgres Pro postmaster (the supervisor server process) if the memory demands of either Postgres Pro or another process cause the system to run out of virtual memory.

If this happens, you will see a kernel message that looks like this (consult your system documentation and configuration on where to look for such a message):

```
Out of Memory: Killed process 12345 (postgres).
```

This indicates that the postgres process has been terminated due to memory pressure. Although existing database connections will continue to function normally, no new connections will be accepted. To recover, Postgres Pro will need to be restarted.

One way to avoid this problem is to run Postgres Pro on a machine where you can be sure that other processes will not run the machine out of memory. If memory is tight, increasing the swap space of the operating system can help avoid the problem, because the out-of-memory (OOM) killer is invoked only when physical memory and swap space are exhausted.

If Postgres Pro itself is the cause of the system running out of memory, you can avoid the problem by changing your configuration. In some cases, it may help to lower memory-related configuration
parameters, particularly shared_buffers, work_mem, and hash_mem_multiplier. In other cases, the problem may be caused by allowing too many connections to the database server itself. In many cases, it may be better to reduce max_connections and instead make use of external connection-pooling software.

It is possible to modify the kernel's behavior so that it will not “overcommit” memory. Although this setting will not prevent the OOM killer from being invoked altogether, it will lower the chances significantly and will therefore lead to more robust system behavior. This is done by selecting strict overcommit mode via sysctl:

sysctl -w vm.overcommit_memory=2

or placing an equivalent entry in /etc/sysctl.conf. You might also wish to modify the related setting vm.overcommit_ratio. For details see the kernel documentation file https://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/vm/overcommit-accounting.

Another approach, which can be used with or without altering vm.overcommit_memory, is to set the process-specific OOM score adjustment value for the postmaster process to -1000, thereby guaranteeing it will not be targeted by the OOM killer. The simplest way to do this is to execute

echo -1000 > /proc/self/oom_score_adj

in the postmaster's startup script just before invoking the postmaster. Note that this action must be done as root, or it will have no effect; so a root-owned startup script is the easiest place to do it. If you do this, you should also set these environment variables in the startup script before invoking the postmaster:

export PG_OOM_ADJUST_FILE=/proc/self/oom_score_adj
export PG_OOM_ADJUST_VALUE=0

These settings will cause postmaster child processes to run with the normal OOM score adjustment of zero, so that the OOM killer can still target them at need. You could use some other value for PG_OOM_ADJUST_VALUE if you want the child processes to run with some other OOM score adjustment. (PG_OOM_ADJUST_VALUE can also be omitted, in which case it defaults to zero.) If you do not set PG_OOM_ADJUST_FILE, the child processes will run with the same OOM score adjustment as the postmaster, which is unwise since the whole point is to ensure that the postmaster has a preferential setting.

17.4.5. Linux Huge Pages

Using huge pages reduces overhead when using large contiguous chunks of memory, as Postgres Pro does, particularly when using large values of shared_buffers. To use this feature in Postgres Pro you need a kernel with CONFIG_HUGETLBFS=y and CONFIG_HUGETLB_PAGE=y. You will also have to configure the operating system to provide enough huge pages of the desired size. To estimate the number of huge pages needed, start Postgres Pro without huge pages enabled and check the postmaster's anonymous shared memory segment size, as well as the system's default and supported huge page sizes, using the /proc and /sys file systems. This might look like:

$ head -1 $PGDATA/postmaster.pid
4170

$ pmap 4170 | awk '/rw-s/ && /zero/ {print $2}'
6490428K

$ grep ^Hugepagesize /proc/meminfo
Hugepagesize: 2048 kB

$ ls /sys/kernel/mm/hugepages
hugepages-1048576kB hugepages-2048kB

In this example the default is 2MB, but you can also explicitly request either 2MB or 1GB with huge page size. Assuming 2MB huge pages, 6490428 / 2048 gives approximately 3169.154, so in this example we need at least 3170 huge pages. A larger setting would be appropriate if other programs on the machine also need huge pages. We can set this with:

# sysctl -w vm.nr_hugepages=3170

Don't forget to add this setting to /etc/sysctl.conf so that it is reapplied after reboots. For non-default huge page sizes, we can instead use:
echo 3170 > /sys/kernel/mm/hugepages/hugepages-2048kB/nr_hugepages

It is also possible to provide these settings at boot time using kernel parameters such as hugepagesz=2M
hugepages=3170.

Sometimes the kernel is not able to allocate the desired number of huge pages immediately due to fragmentation, so it might be necessary to repeat the command or to reboot. (Immediately after a reboot, most of the machine's memory should be available to convert into huge pages.) To verify the huge page allocation situation for a given size, use:

$ cat /sys/kernel/mm/hugepages/hugepages-2048kB/nr_hugepages

It may also be necessary to give the database server's operating system user permission to use huge pages by setting `vm.hugetlb_shm_group` via `sysctl`, and/or give permission to lock memory with `ulimit -l`.

The default behavior for huge pages in Postgres Pro is to use them when possible, with the system's default huge page size, and to fall back to normal pages on failure. To enforce the use of huge pages, you can set `huge_pages` to `on` in `postgresql.conf`. Note that with this setting Postgres Pro will fail to start if not enough huge pages are available.


17.5. Shutting Down the Server

There are several ways to shut down the database server. Under the hood, they all reduce to sending a signal to the supervisor `postgres` process.

If you are using a pre-packaged version of PostgreSQL, and you used its provisions for starting the server, then you should also use its provisions for stopping the server. Consult the package-level documentation for details.

When managing the server directly, you can control the type of shutdown by sending different signals to the `postgres` process:

SIGTERM

This is the *Smart Shutdown* mode. After receiving SIGTERM, the server disallows new connections, but lets existing sessions end their work normally. It shuts down only after all of the sessions terminate. If the server is in online backup mode, it additionally waits until online backup mode is no longer active. While backup mode is active, new connections will still be allowed, but only to superusers (this exception allows a superuser to connect to terminate online backup mode). If the server is in recovery when a smart shutdown is requested, recovery and streaming replication will be stopped only after all regular sessions have terminated.

SIGINT

This is the *Fast Shutdown* mode. The server disallows new connections and sends all existing server processes SIGTERM, which will cause them to abort their current transactions and exit promptly. It then waits for all server processes to exit and finally shuts down. If the server is in online backup mode, backup mode will be terminated, rendering the backup useless.

SIGQUIT

This is the *Immediate Shutdown* mode. The server will send SIGQUIT to all child processes and wait for them to terminate. If any do not terminate within 5 seconds, they will be sent SIGKILL. The supervisor server process exits as soon as all child processes have exited, without doing normal database shutdown processing. This will lead to recovery (by replaying the WAL log) upon next start-up. This is recommended only in emergencies.

The `pg_ctl` program provides a convenient interface for sending these signals to shut down the server. Alternatively, you can send the signal directly using `kill` on non-Windows systems. The PID of the
The `postgres` process can be found using the `ps` program, or from the file `postmaster.pid` in the data directory. For example, to do a fast shutdown:

\[
\text{\$ kill -INT `head -1 /usr/local/pgsql/data/postmaster.pid`}
\]

**Important**

It is best not to use SIGKILL to shut down the server. Doing so will prevent the server from releasing shared memory and semaphores. Furthermore, SIGKILL kills the `postgres` process without letting it relay the signal to its subprocesses, so it might be necessary to kill the individual subprocesses by hand as well.

To terminate an individual session while allowing other sessions to continue, use `pg_terminate_backend()` (see Table 9.86) or send a SIGTERM signal to the child process associated with the session.

## 17.6. Upgrading a Postgres Pro Cluster

This section discusses how to upgrade your database data from one Postgres Pro release to a newer one.

Current Postgres Pro version numbers consist of a major and a minor version number. For example, in the version number 10.1, the 10 is the major version number and the 1 is the minor version number, meaning this would be the first minor release of the major release 10. For releases before Postgres Pro version 10.0, version numbers consist of three numbers, for example, 9.5.3. In those cases, the major version consists of the first two digit groups of the version number, e.g., 9.5, and the minor version is the third number, e.g., 3, meaning this would be the third minor release of the major release 9.5.

Minor releases never change the internal storage format and are always compatible with earlier and later minor releases of the same major version number. For example, version 10.1 is compatible with version 10.0 and version 10.6. Similarly, for example, 9.5.3 is compatible with 9.5.0, 9.5.1, and 9.5.6. To update between compatible versions, you simply replace the executables while the server is down and restart the server. The data directory remains unchanged — minor upgrades are that simple.

For **major** releases of Postgres Pro, the internal data storage format is subject to change, thus complicating upgrades. The traditional method for moving data to a new major version is to dump and reload the database, though this can be slow. A faster method is `pg_upgrade`. Replication methods are also available, as discussed below.

New major versions also typically introduce some user-visible incompatibilities, so application programming changes might be required. All user-visible changes are listed in the release notes (Appendix E); pay particular attention to the section labeled "Migration". Though you can upgrade from one major version to another without upgrading to intervening versions, you should read the major release notes of all intervening versions.

Cautious users will want to test their client applications on the new version before switching over fully; therefore, it's often a good idea to set up concurrent installations of old and new versions. When testing a Postgres Pro major upgrade, consider the following categories of possible changes:

**Administration**

The capabilities available for administrators to monitor and control the server often change and improve in each major release.

**SQL**

Typically this includes new SQL command capabilities and not changes in behavior, unless specifically mentioned in the release notes.

**Library API**

Typically libraries like `libpq` only add new functionality, again unless mentioned in the release notes.
System Catalogs
System catalog changes usually only affect database management tools.

Server C-language API
This involves changes in the backend function API, which is written in the C programming language. Such changes affect code that references backend functions deep inside the server.

17.6.1. Upgrading Data via pg_dumpall
One upgrade method is to dump data from one major version of Postgres Pro and reload it in another — to do this, you must use a logical backup tool like pg_dumpall; file system level backup methods will not work. (There are checks in place that prevent you from using a data directory with an incompatible version of Postgres Pro, so no great harm can be done by trying to start the wrong server version on a data directory.)

It is recommended that you use the pg_dump and pg_dumpall programs from the newer version of Postgres Pro, to take advantage of enhancements that might have been made in these programs. Current releases of the dump programs can read data from any server version back to 7.0.

These instructions assume that your existing installation is under the /usr/local/pgsql directory, and that the data area is in /usr/local/pgsql/data. Substitute your paths appropriately.

1. If making a backup, make sure that your database is not being updated. This does not affect the integrity of the backup, but the changed data would of course not be included. If necessary, edit the permissions in the file /usr/local/pgsql/data/pg_hba.conf (or equivalent) to disallow access from everyone except you. See Chapter 19 for additional information on access control.

   To back up your database installation, type:
   
   `pg_dumpall > outputfile`

   To make the backup, you can use the pg_dumpall command from the version you are currently running; see Section 24.1.2 for more details. For best results, however, try to use the pg_dumpall command from Postgres Pro Standard 14.1.1, since this version contains bug fixes and improvements over older versions. While this advice might seem idiosyncratic since you haven’t installed the new version yet, it is advisable to follow it if you plan to install the new version in parallel with the old version. In that case you can complete the installation normally and transfer the data later. This will also decrease the downtime.

2. Shut down the old server:
   
   `pg_ctl stop`

   On systems that have Postgres Pro started at boot time, there is probably a start-up file that will accomplish the same thing. For example, on a Red Hat Linux system one might find that this works:
   
   `/etc/rc.d/init.d/postgresql stop`

   See Chapter 17 for details about starting and stopping the server.

3. If restoring from backup, rename or delete the old installation directory if it is not version-specific. It is a good idea to rename the directory, rather than delete it, in case you have trouble and need to revert to it. Keep in mind the directory might consume significant disk space. To rename the directory, use a command like this:
   
   `mv /usr/local/pgsql /usr/local/pgsql.old`

   (Be sure to move the directory as a single unit so relative paths remain unchanged.)

4. Install the new version of Postgres Pro Standard.

5. Create a new database cluster if needed. Remember that you must execute these commands while logged in to the special database user account (which you already have if you are upgrading).

   `/usr/local/pgsql/bin/initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data`
6. Restore your previous `pg_hba.conf` and any PostgreSQL.conf modifications.

7. Start the database server, again using the special database user account:
   
   ```bash
   /usr/local/pgsql/bin/postgres -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
   ```

8. Finally, restore your data from backup with:
   
   ```bash
   /usr/local/pgsql/bin/psql -d postgres -f outputfile
   ```

   using the `new` `psql`.

   The least downtime can be achieved by installing the new server in a different directory and running both the old and the new servers in parallel, on different ports. Then you can use something like:

   ```bash
   pg_dumpall -p 5432 | psql -d postgres -p 5433
   ```

to transfer your data.

### 17.6.2. Upgrading Data via `pg_upgrade`

The `pg_upgrade` module allows an installation to be migrated in-place from one major Postgres Pro version to another. Upgrades can be performed in minutes, particularly with `--link` mode. It requires steps similar to `pg_dumpall` above, e.g., starting/stopping the server, running `initdb`. The `pg_upgrade` documentation outlines the necessary steps.

### 17.6.3. Upgrading Data via Replication

It is also possible to use logical replication methods to create a standby server with the updated version of Postgres Pro. This is possible because logical replication supports replication between different major versions of Postgres Pro. The standby can be on the same computer or a different computer. Once it has synced up with the primary server (running the older version of Postgres Pro), you can switch primaries and make the standby the primary and shut down the older database instance. Such a switch-over results in only several seconds of downtime for an upgrade.

This method of upgrading can be performed using the built-in logical replication facilities as well as using external logical replication systems such as pglogical, Slony, Londiste, and Bucardo.

### 17.7. Preventing Server Spoofing

While the server is running, it is not possible for a malicious user to take the place of the normal database server. However, when the server is down, it is possible for a local user to spoof the normal server by starting their own server. The spoof server could read passwords and queries sent by clients, but could not return any data because the `PGDATA` directory would still be secure because of directory permissions. Spoofing is possible because any user can start a database server; a client cannot identify an invalid server unless it is specially configured.

One way to prevent spoofing of local connections is to use a Unix domain socket directory (`unix_socket_directories`) that has write permission only for a trusted local user. This prevents a malicious user from creating their own socket file in that directory. If you are concerned that some applications might still reference `/tmp` for the socket file and hence be vulnerable to spoofing, during operating system startup create a symbolic link `/tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432` that points to the relocated socket file. You also might need to modify your `/tmp` cleanup script to prevent removal of the symbolic link.

Another option for local connections is for clients to use `requirepeer` to specify the required owner of the server process connected to the socket.

To prevent spoofing on TCP connections, either use SSL certificates and make sure that clients check the server's certificate, or use GSSAPI encryption (or both, if they're on separate connections).

To prevent spoofing with SSL, the server must be configured to accept only hostssl connections (Section 19.1) and have SSL key and certificate files (Section 17.9). The TCP client must connect using `sslmode=verify-ca` or `verify-full` and have the appropriate root certificate file installed (Section 32.19.1).
To prevent spoofing with GSSAPI, the server must be configured to accept only hostgssenc connections (Section 19.1) and use gss authentication with them. The TCP client must connect using gssencmode=require.

17.8. Encryption Options

Postgres Pro offers encryption at several levels, and provides flexibility in protecting data from disclosure due to database server theft, unscrupulous administrators, and insecure networks. Encryption might also be required to secure sensitive data such as medical records or financial transactions.

Password Encryption

Database user passwords are stored as hashes (determined by the setting password_encryption), so the administrator cannot determine the actual password assigned to the user. If SCRAM or MD5 encryption is used for client authentication, the unencrypted password is never even temporarily present on the server because the client encrypts it before being sent across the network. SCRAM is preferred, because it is an Internet standard and is more secure than the PostgreSQL-specific MD5 authentication protocol.

Encryption For Specific Columns

The pgcrypto module allows certain fields to be stored encrypted. This is useful if only some of the data is sensitive. The client supplies the decryption key and the data is decrypted on the server and then sent to the client.

The decrypted data and the decryption key are present on the server for a brief time while it is being decrypted and communicated between the client and server. This presents a brief moment where the data and keys can be intercepted by someone with complete access to the database server, such as the system administrator.

Data Partition Encryption

Storage encryption can be performed at the file system level or the block level. Linux file system encryption options include eCryptfs and EncFS, while FreeBSD uses PEFS. Block level or full disk encryption options include dm-crypt + LUKS on Linux and GEOM modules geli and gbde on FreeBSD. Many other operating systems support this functionality, including Windows.

This mechanism prevents unencrypted data from being read from the drives if the drives or the entire computer is stolen. This does not protect against attacks while the file system is mounted, because when mounted, the operating system provides an unencrypted view of the data. However, to mount the file system, you need some way for the encryption key to be passed to the operating system, and sometimes the key is stored somewhere on the host that mounts the disk.

Encrypting Data Across A Network

SSL connections encrypt all data sent across the network: the password, the queries, and the data returned. The pg_hba.conf file allows administrators to specify which hosts can use non-encrypted connections (host) and which require SSL-encrypted connections (hostssl). Also, clients can specify that they connect to servers only via SSL.

GSSAPI-encrypted connections encrypt all data sent across the network, including queries and data returned. (No password is sent across the network.) The pg_hba.conf file allows administrators to specify which hosts can use non-encrypted connections (host) and which require GSSAPI-encrypted connections (hostgssenc). Also, clients can specify that they connect to servers only on GSSAPI-encrypted connections (gssencmode=require).

Stunnel or SSH can also be used to encrypt transmissions.

SSL Host Authentication

It is possible for both the client and server to provide SSL certificates to each other. It takes some extra configuration on each side, but this provides stronger verification of identity than the mere
use of passwords. It prevents a computer from pretending to be the server just long enough to read
the password sent by the client. It also helps prevent “man in the middle” attacks where a computer
between the client and server pretends to be the server and reads and passes all data between the
client and server.

Client-Side Encryption

If the system administrator for the server's machine cannot be trusted, it is necessary for the client to
encrypt the data; this way, unencrypted data never appears on the database server. Data is encrypted
on the client before being sent to the server, and database results have to be decrypted on the client
before being used.

17.9. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL

Postgres Pro has native support for using SSL connections to encrypt client/server communications for
increased security.

17.9.1. Basic Setup

With SSL support compiled in, the Postgres Pro server can be started with SSL enabled by setting the
parameter ssl to on in postgresql.conf. The server will listen for both normal and SSL connections on
the same TCP port, and will negotiate with any connecting client on whether to use SSL. By default,
this is at the client's option; see Section 19.1 about how to set up the server to require use of SSL for
some or all connections.

To start in SSL mode, files containing the server certificate and private key must exist. By default, these
files are expected to be named server.crt and server.key, respectively, in the server's data directory,
but other names and locations can be specified using the configuration parameters ssl_cert_file and
ssl_key_file.

On Unix systems, the permissions on server.key must disallow any access to world or group; achieve
this by the command chmod 0600 server.key. Alternatively, the file can be owned by root and have
group read access (that is, 0640 permissions). That setup is intended for installations where certificate
and key files are managed by the operating system. The user under which the Postgres Pro server runs
should then be made a member of the group that has access to those certificate and key files.

If the data directory allows group read access then certificate files may need to be located outside of the
data directory in order to conform to the security requirements outlined above. Generally, group access
is enabled to allow an unprivileged user to backup the database, and in that case the backup software
will not be able to read the certificate files and will likely error.

If the private key is protected with a passphrase, the server will prompt for the passphrase and will
not start until it has been entered. Using a passphrase by default disables the ability to change the
server's SSL configuration without a server restart, but see ssl passphrase command supports reload.
Furthermore, passphrase-protected private keys cannot be used at all on Windows.

The first certificate in server.crt must be the server's certificate because it must match the server's
private key. The certificates of “intermediate” certificate authorities can also be appended to the file.
Doing this avoids the necessity of storing intermediate certificates on clients, assuming the root and
intermediate certificates were created with v3_ca extensions. (This sets the certificate's basic constraint
of CA to true.) This allows easier expiration of intermediate certificates.

It is not necessary to add the root certificate to server.crt. Instead, clients must have the root certificate
of the server's certificate chain.

17.9.2. OpenSSL Configuration

Postgres Pro reads the system-wide OpenSSL configuration file. By default, this file is named
openssl.cnf and is located in the directory reported by openssl version -d. This default can be
overridden by setting environment variable OPENSSL_CONF to the name of the desired configuration file.
OpenSSL supports a wide range of ciphers and authentication algorithms, of varying strength. While a list of ciphers can be specified in the OpenSSL configuration file, you can specify ciphers specifically for use by the database server by modifying `ssl_ciphers` in `postgresql.conf`.

**Note**

It is possible to have authentication without encryption overhead by using `NULL-SHA` or `NULL-MD5` ciphers. However, a man-in-the-middle could read and pass communications between client and server. Also, encryption overhead is minimal compared to the overhead of authentication. For these reasons NULL ciphers are not recommended.

### 17.9.3. Using Client Certificates

To require the client to supply a trusted certificate, place certificates of the root certificate authorities (CAs) you trust in a file in the data directory, set the parameter `ssl_ca_file` in `postgresql.conf` to the new file name, and add the authentication option `clientcert=verify-ca` or `clientcert=verify-full` to the appropriate `hostssl` line(s) in `pg_hba.conf`. A certificate will then be requested from the client during SSL connection startup. (See Section 32.19 for a description of how to set up certificates on the client.)

For a `hostssl` entry with `clientcert=verify-ca`, the server will verify that the client's certificate is signed by one of the trusted certificate authorities. If `clientcert=verify-full` is specified, the server will not only verify the certificate chain, but it will also check whether the username or its mapping matches the `cn` (Common Name) of the provided certificate. Note that certificate chain validation is always ensured when the `cert` authentication method is used (see Section 19.12).

Intermediate certificates that chain up to existing root certificates can also appear in the `ssl_ca_file` file if you wish to avoid storing them on clients (assuming the root and intermediate certificates were created with `v3_ca` extensions). Certificate Revocation List (CRL) entries are also checked if the parameter `ssl_crl_file` is set.

The `clientcert` authentication option is available for all authentication methods, but only in `pg_hba.conf` lines specified as `hostssl`. When `clientcert` is not specified, the server verifies the client certificate against its CA file only if a client certificate is presented and the CA is configured.

There are two approaches to enforce that users provide a certificate during login.

The first approach makes use of the `cert` authentication method for `hostssl` entries in `pg_hba.conf`, such that the certificate itself is used for authentication while also providing ssl connection security. See Section 19.12 for details. (It is not necessary to specify any `clientcert` options explicitly when using the `cert` authentication method.) In this case, the `cn` (Common Name) provided in the certificate is checked against the user name or an applicable mapping.

The second approach combines any authentication method for `hostssl` entries with the verification of client certificates by setting the `clientcert` authentication option to `verify-ca` or `verify-full`. The former option only enforces that the certificate is valid, while the latter also ensures that the `cn` (Common Name) in the certificate matches the user name or an applicable mapping.

### 17.9.4. SSL Server File Usage

Table 17.2 summarizes the files that are relevant to the SSL setup on the server. (The shown file names are default names. The locally configured names could be different.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ssl_cert_file</code> ($PGDATA/server.crt)</td>
<td>server certificate</td>
<td>sent to client to indicate server’s identity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The server reads these files at server start and whenever the server configuration is reloaded. On Windows systems, they are also re-read whenever a new backend process is spawned for a new client connection.

If an error in these files is detected at server start, the server will refuse to start. But if an error is detected during a configuration reload, the files are ignored and the old SSL configuration continues to be used. On Windows systems, if an error in these files is detected at backend start, that backend will be unable to establish an SSL connection. In all these cases, the error condition is reported in the server log.

### 17.9.5. Creating Certificates

To create a simple self-signed certificate for the server, valid for 365 days, use the following OpenSSL command, replacing `dbhost.yourdomain.com` with the server's host name:

```bash
openssl req -new -x509 -days 365 -nodes -text -out server.crt \
-keyout server.key -subj "/CN=dbhost.yourdomain.com"
```

Then do:

```bash
chmod og-rwx server.key
```

because the server will reject the file if its permissions are more liberal than this. For more details on how to create your server private key and certificate, refer to the OpenSSL documentation.

While a self-signed certificate can be used for testing, a certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) (usually an enterprise-wide root CA) should be used in production.

To create a server certificate whose identity can be validated by clients, first create a certificate signing request (CSR) and a public/private key file:

```bash
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out root.csr \
-keyout root.key -subj "/CN=root.yourdomain.com"
chmod og-rwx root.key
```

Then, sign the request with the key to create a root certificate authority (using the default OpenSSL configuration file location on Linux):

```bash
openssl x509 -req -in root.csr -text -days 3650 \
-extfile /etc/ssl/openssl.cnf -extensions v3_ca \
-signkey root.key -out root.crt
```

Finally, create a server certificate signed by the new root certificate authority:

```bash
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out server.csr \
-keyout server.key -subj "/CN=dbhost.yourdomain.com"
chmod og-rwx server.key
openssl x509 -req -in server.csr -text -days 365 \
-CA root.crt -CAkey root.key -CAcreateserial \ 
-out server.crt
```
server.crt and server.key should be stored on the server, and root.crt should be stored on the client so the client can verify that the server's leaf certificate was signed by its trusted root certificate. root.key should be stored offline for use in creating future certificates.

It is also possible to create a chain of trust that includes intermediate certificates:

```
# root
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out root.csr \ 
    -keyout root.key -subj "/CN=root.yourdomain.com"
chmod og-rwx root.key
openssl x509 -req -in root.csr -text -days 3650 \ 
    -extfile /etc/ssl/openssl.cnf -extensions v3_ca \ 
    -signkey root.key -out root.crt

# intermediate
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out intermediate.csr \ 
    -keyout intermediate.key -subj "/CN=intermediate.yourdomain.com"
chmod og-rwx intermediate.key
openssl x509 -req -in intermediate.csr -text -days 1825 \ 
    -extfile /etc/ssl/openssl.cnf -extensions v3_ca \ 
    -CA root.crt -CAkey root.key -CAcreateserial \ 
    -out intermediate.crt

# leaf
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out server.csr \ 
    -keyout server.key -subj "/CN=dbhost.yourdomain.com"
chmod og-rwx server.key
openssl x509 -req -in server.csr -text -days 365 \ 
    -CA intermediate.crt -CAkey intermediate.key -CAcreateserial \ 
    -out server.crt
```

server.crt and intermediate.crt should be concatenated into a certificate file bundle and stored on the server. server.key should also be stored on the server. root.crt should be stored on the client so the client can verify that the server's leaf certificate was signed by a chain of certificates linked to its trusted root certificate. root.key and intermediate.key should be stored offline for use in creating future certificates.

## 17.10. Secure TCP/IP Connections with GSSAPI Encryption

Postgres Pro also has native support for using GSSAPI to encrypt client/server communications for increased security. Support requires that a GSSAPI implementation (such as MIT Kerberos) is installed on both client and server systems, and that support in Postgres Pro is enabled at build time.

### 17.10.1. Basic Setup

The Postgres Pro server will listen for both normal and GSSAPI-encrypted connections on the same TCP port, and will negotiate with any connecting client whether to use GSSAPI for encryption (and for authentication). By default, this decision is up to the client (which means it can be downgraded by an attacker); see Section 19.1 about setting up the server to require the use of GSSAPI for some or all connections.

When using GSSAPI for encryption, it is common to use GSSAPI for authentication as well, since the underlying mechanism will determine both client and server identities (according to the GSSAPI implementation) in any case. But this is not required; another Postgres Pro authentication method can be chosen to perform additional verification.

Other than configuration of the negotiation behavior, GSSAPI encryption requires no setup beyond that which is necessary for GSSAPI authentication. (For more information on configuring that, see Section 19.6.)
17.11. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSH Tunnels

It is possible to use SSH to encrypt the network connection between clients and a Postgres Pro server. Done properly, this provides an adequately secure network connection, even for non-SSL-capable clients.

First make sure that an SSH server is running properly on the same machine as the Postgres Pro server and that you can log in using `ssh` as some user; you then can establish a secure tunnel to the remote server. A secure tunnel listens on a local port and forwards all traffic to a port on the remote machine. Traffic sent to the remote port can arrive on its `localhost` address, or different bind address if desired; it does not appear as coming from your local machine. This command creates a secure tunnel from the client machine to the remote machine `foo.com`:

```
ssh -L 63333:localhost:5432 joe@foo.com
```

The first number in the `-L` argument, 63333, is the local port number of the tunnel; it can be any unused port. (IANA reserves ports 49152 through 65535 for private use.) The name or IP address after this is the remote bind address you are connecting to, i.e., `localhost`, which is the default. The second number, 5432, is the remote end of the tunnel, e.g., the port number your database server is using. In order to connect to the database server using this tunnel, you connect to port 63333 on the local machine:

```
psql -h localhost -p 63333 postgres
```

To the database server it will then look as though you are user `joe` on host `foo.com` connecting to the `localhost` bind address, and it will use whatever authentication procedure was configured for connections by that user to that bind address. Note that the server will not think the connection is SSL-encrypted, since in fact it is not encrypted between the SSH server and the Postgres Pro server. This should not pose any extra security risk because they are on the same machine.

In order for the tunnel setup to succeed you must be allowed to connect via `ssh as joe@foo.com`, just as if you had attempted to use `ssh` to create a terminal session.

You could also have set up port forwarding as

```
ssh -L 63333:foo.com:5432 joe@foo.com
```

but then the database server will see the connection as coming in on its `foo.com` bind address, which is not opened by the default setting `listen_addresses = 'localhost'`. This is usually not what you want.

If you have to “hop” to the database server via some login host, one possible setup could look like this:

```
ssh -L 63333:db.foo.com:5432 joe@shell.foo.com
```

Note that this way the connection from `shell.foo.com` to `db.foo.com` will not be encrypted by the SSH tunnel. SSH offers quite a few configuration possibilities when the network is restricted in various ways. Please refer to the SSH documentation for details.

Tip

Several other applications exist that can provide secure tunnels using a procedure similar in concept to the one just described.

17.12. Registering Event Log on Windows

To register a Windows event log library with the operating system, issue this command:

```
regsvr32 psql_library_directory/pgevent.dll
```

This creates registry entries used by the event viewer, under the default event source named Postgres Pro.

To specify a different event source name (see `event_source`), use the `/n` and `/i` options:
regsvr32 /n /i:event_source_name pgsq1_library_directory/pgevent.dll

To unregister the event log library from the operating system, issue this command:
regsvr32 /u [/i:event_source_name] pgsq1_library_directory/pgevent.dll

Note
To enable event logging in the database server, modify log_destination to include eventlog in postgresql.conf.
Chapter 18. Server Configuration

There are many configuration parameters that affect the behavior of the database system. In the first section of this chapter we describe how to interact with configuration parameters. The subsequent sections discuss each parameter in detail.

18.1. Setting Parameters

18.1.1. Parameter Names and Values

All parameter names are case-insensitive. Every parameter takes a value of one of five types: boolean, string, integer, floating point, or enumerated (enum). The type determines the syntax for setting the parameter:

- **Boolean**: Values can be written as `on`, `off`, `true`, `false`, `yes`, `no`, `1`, `0` (all case-insensitive) or any unambiguous prefix of one of these.

- **String**: In general, enclose the value in single quotes, doubling any single quotes within the value. Quotes can usually be omitted if the value is a simple number or identifier, however. (Values that match an SQL keyword require quoting in some contexts.)

- **Numeric (integer and floating point)**: Numeric parameters can be specified in the customary integer and floating-point formats; fractional values are rounded to the nearest integer if the parameter is of integer type. Integer parameters additionally accept hexadecimal input (beginning with `0x`) and octal input (beginning with `0`), but these formats cannot have a fraction. Do not use thousands separators. Quotes are not required, except for hexadecimal input.

- **Numeric with Unit**: Some numeric parameters have an implicit unit, because they describe quantities of memory or time. The unit might be bytes, kilobytes, blocks (typically eight kilobytes), milliseconds, seconds, or minutes. An unadorned numeric value for one of these settings will use the setting’s default unit, which can be learned from `pg_settings.unit`. For convenience, settings can be given with a unit specified explicitly, for example `'120 ms'` for a time value, and they will be converted to whatever the parameter's actual unit is. Note that the value must be written as a string (with quotes) to use this feature. The unit name is case-sensitive, and there can be whitespace between the numeric value and the unit.

  - Valid memory units are `B` (bytes), `kB` (kilobytes), `MB` (megabytes), `GB` (gigabytes), and `TB` (terabytes). The multiplier for memory units is 1024, not 1000.

  - Valid time units are `us` (microseconds), `ms` (milliseconds), `s` (seconds), `min` (minutes), `h` (hours), and `d` (days).

  If a fractional value is specified with a unit, it will be rounded to a multiple of the next smaller unit if there is one. For example, `30.1 GB` will be converted to `30822 MB` not `32319628902 B`. If the parameter is of integer type, a final rounding to integer occurs after any unit conversion.

- **Enumerated**: Enumerated-type parameters are written in the same way as string parameters, but are restricted to have one of a limited set of values. The values allowable for such a parameter can be found from `pg_settings.enumvals`. Enum parameter values are case-insensitive.

18.1.2. Parameter Interaction via the Configuration File

The most fundamental way to set these parameters is to edit the file `postgresql.conf`, which is normally kept in the data directory. A default copy is installed when the database cluster directory is initialized. An example of what this file might look like is:

```sql
# This is a comment
log_connections = yes
log_destination = 'syslog'
search_path = '$user', public
shared_buffers = 128MB
```
One parameter is specified per line. The equal sign between name and value is optional. Whitespace is insignificant (except within a quoted parameter value) and blank lines are ignored. Hash marks (#) designate the remainder of the line as a comment. Parameter values that are not simple identifiers or numbers must be single-quoted. To embed a single quote in a parameter value, write either two quotes (preferred) or backslash-quote. If the file contains multiple entries for the same parameter, all but the last one are ignored.

Parameters set in this way provide default values for the cluster. The settings seen by active sessions will be these values unless they are overridden. The following sections describe ways in which the administrator or user can override these defaults.

The configuration file is reread whenever the main server process receives a SIGHUP signal; this signal is most easily sent by running `pg_ctl reload` from the command line or by calling the SQL function `pg_reload_conf()`. The main server process also propagates this signal to all currently running server processes, so that existing sessions also adopt the new values (this will happen after they complete any currently-executing client command). Alternatively, you can send the signal to a single server process directly. Some parameters can only be set at server start; any changes to their entries in the configuration file will be ignored until the server is restarted. Invalid parameter settings in the configuration file are likewise ignored (but logged) during SIGHUP processing.

In addition to `postgresql.conf`, a Postgres Pro data directory contains a file `postgresql.auto.conf`, which has the same format as `postgresql.conf` but is intended to be edited automatically, not manually. This file holds settings provided through the `ALTER SYSTEM` command. This file is read whenever `postgresql.conf` is, and its settings take effect in the same way. Settings in `postgresql.auto.conf` override those in `postgresql.conf`.

External tools may also modify `postgresql.auto.conf`. It is not recommended to do this while the server is running, since a concurrent `ALTER SYSTEM` command could overwrite such changes. Such tools might simply append new settings to the end, or they might choose to remove duplicate settings and/or comments (as `ALTER SYSTEM` will).

The system view `pg_file_settings` can be helpful for pre-testing changes to the configuration files, or for diagnosing problems if a SIGHUP signal did not have the desired effects.

### 18.1.3. Parameter Interaction via SQL

Postgres Pro provides three SQL commands to establish configuration defaults. The already-mentioned `ALTER SYSTEM` command provides an SQL-accessible means of changing global defaults; it is functionally equivalent to editing `postgresql.conf`. In addition, there are two commands that allow setting of defaults on a per-database or per-role basis:

- The `ALTER DATABASE` command allows global settings to be overridden on a per-database basis.
- The `ALTER ROLE` command allows both global and per-database settings to be overridden with user-specific values.

Values set with `ALTER DATABASE` and `ALTER ROLE` are applied only when starting a fresh database session. They override values obtained from the configuration files or server command line, and constitute defaults for the rest of the session. Note that some settings cannot be changed after server start, and so cannot be set with these commands (or the ones listed below).

Once a client is connected to the database, Postgres Pro provides two additional SQL commands (and equivalent functions) to interact with session-local configuration settings:

- The `SHOW` command allows inspection of the current value of any parameter. The corresponding SQL function is `current_setting(setting_name text)` (see Section 9.27.1).
- The `SET` command allows modification of the current value of those parameters that can be set locally to a session; it has no effect on other sessions. The corresponding SQL function is `set_config(setting_name, new_value, is_local)` (see Section 9.27.1).

In addition, the system view `pg_settings` can be used to view and change session-local values:
• Querying this view is similar to using SHOW ALL but provides more detail. It is also more flexible, since it's possible to specify filter conditions or join against other relations.

• Using UPDATE on this view, specifically updating the setting column, is the equivalent of issuing SET commands. For example, the equivalent of

   SET configuration_parameter TO DEFAULT;

is:

   UPDATE pg_settings SET setting = reset_val WHERE name = 'configuration_parameter';

### 18.1.4. Parameter Interaction via the Shell

In addition to setting global defaults or attaching overrides at the database or role level, you can pass settings to Postgres Pro via shell facilities. Both the server and libpq client library accept parameter values via the shell.

• During server startup, parameter settings can be passed to the `postgres` command via the `-c` command-line parameter. For example,

   postgres -c log_connections=yes -c log_destination=syslog

   Settings provided in this way override those set via postgresql.conf or ALTER SYSTEM, so they cannot be changed globally without restarting the server.

• When starting a client session via libpq, parameter settings can be specified using the `PGOPTIONS` environment variable. Settings established in this way constitute defaults for the life of the session, but do not affect other sessions. For historical reasons, the format of `PGOPTIONS` is similar to that used when launching the `postgres` command; specifically, the `-c` flag must be specified. For example,

   env PGOPTIONS="-c geqo=off -c statement_timeout=5min" psql

   Other clients and libraries might provide their own mechanisms, via the shell or otherwise, that allow the user to alter session settings without direct use of SQL commands.

### 18.1.5. Managing Configuration File Contents

Postgres Pro provides several features for breaking down complex `postgresql.conf` files into sub-files. These features are especially useful when managing multiple servers with related, but not identical, configurations.

In addition to individual parameter settings, the `postgresql.conf` file can contain `include` directives, which specify another file to read and process as if it were inserted into the configuration file at this point. This feature allows a configuration file to be divided into physically separate parts. Include directives simply look like:

   include 'filename'

If the file name is not an absolute path, it is taken as relative to the directory containing the referencing configuration file. Inclusions can be nested.

There is also an `include_if_exists` directive, which acts the same as the include directive, except when the referenced file does not exist or cannot be read. A regular include will consider this an error condition, but `include_if_exists` merely logs a message and continues processing the referencing configuration file.

The `postgresql.conf` file can also contain `include_dir` directives, which specify an entire directory of configuration files to include. These look like

   include_dir 'directory'

Non-absolute directory names are taken as relative to the directory containing the referencing configuration file. Within the specified directory, only non-directory files whose names end with the suffix `.conf` will be included. File names that start with the `.` character are also ignored, to prevent mistakes
since such files are hidden on some platforms. Multiple files within an include directory are processed in file name order (according to C locale rules, i.e., numbers before letters, and uppercase letters before lowercase ones).

Include files or directories can be used to logically separate portions of the database configuration, rather than having a single large `postgresql.conf` file. Consider a company that has two database servers, each with a different amount of memory. There are likely elements of the configuration both will share, for things such as logging. But memory-related parameters on the server will vary between the two. And there might be server specific customizations, too. One way to manage this situation is to break the custom configuration changes for your site into three files. You could add this to the end of your `postgresql.conf` file to include them:

```
include 'shared.conf'
include 'memory.conf'
include 'server.conf'
```

All systems would have the same `shared.conf`. Each server with a particular amount of memory could share the same `memory.conf`; you might have one for all servers with 8GB of RAM, another for those having 16GB. And finally `server.conf` could have truly server-specific configuration information in it.

Another possibility is to create a configuration file directory and put this information into files there. For example, a `conf.d` directory could be referenced at the end of `postgresql.conf`:

```
include_dir 'conf.d'
```

Then you could name the files in the `conf.d` directory like this:

```
00shared.conf
01memory.conf
02server.conf
```

This naming convention establishes a clear order in which these files will be loaded. This is important because only the last setting encountered for a particular parameter while the server is reading configuration files will be used. In this example, something set in `conf.d/02server.conf` would override a value set in `conf.d/01memory.conf`.

You might instead use this approach to naming the files descriptively:

```
00shared.conf
01memory-8GB.conf
02server-foo.conf
```

This sort of arrangement gives a unique name for each configuration file variation. This can help eliminate ambiguity when several servers have their configurations all stored in one place, such as in a version control repository. (Storing database configuration files under version control is another good practice to consider.)

### 18.2. File Locations

In addition to the `postgresql.conf` file already mentioned, Postgres Pro uses two other manually-edited configuration files, which control client authentication (their use is discussed in Chapter 19). By default, all three configuration files are stored in the database cluster's data directory. The parameters described in this section allow the configuration files to be placed elsewhere. (Doing so can ease administration. In particular it is often easier to ensure that the configuration files are properly backed-up when they are kept separate.)

Parameter: `data_directory`

Specifies the directory to use for data storage. This parameter can only be set at server start.

Parameter: `config_file`

Specifies the main server configuration file (customarily called `postgresql.conf`). This parameter can only be set on the `postgres` command line.
hba_file (string)

Specifies the configuration file for host-based authentication (customarily called pg_hba.conf). This parameter can only be set at server start.

ident_file (string)

Specifies the configuration file for user name mapping (customarily called pg_ident.conf). This parameter can only be set at server start. See also Section 19.2.

external_pid_file (string)

Specifies the name of an additional process-ID (PID) file that the server should create for use by server administration programs. This parameter can only be set at server start.

In a default installation, none of the above parameters are set explicitly. Instead, the data directory is specified by the -D command-line option or the PGDATA environment variable, and the configuration files are all found within the data directory.

If you wish to keep the configuration files elsewhere than the data directory, the postgres -D command-line option or PGDATA environment variable must point to the directory containing the configuration files, and the data_directory parameter must be set in postgresql.conf (or on the command line) to show where the data directory is actually located. Notice that data_directory overrides -D and PGDATA for the location of the data directory, but not for the location of the configuration files.

If you wish, you can specify the configuration file names and locations individually using the parameters config_file, hba_file and/or ident_file. config_file can only be specified on the postgres command line, but the others can be set within the main configuration file. If all three parameters plus data_directory are explicitly set, then it is not necessary to specify -D or PGDATA.

When setting any of these parameters, a relative path will be interpreted with respect to the directory in which postgres is started.

18.3. Connections and Authentication

18.3.1. Connection Settings

listen_addresses (string)

Specifies the TCP/IP address(es) on which the server is to listen for connections from client applications. The value takes the form of a comma-separated list of host names and/or numeric IP addresses. The special entry * corresponds to all available IP interfaces. The entry 0.0.0.0 allows listening for all IPv4 addresses and :: allows listening for all IPv6 addresses. If the list is empty, the server does not listen on any IP interface at all, in which case only Unix-domain sockets can be used to connect to it. The default value is localhost, which allows only local TCP/IP “loopback” connections to be made. While client authentication (Chapter 19) allows fine-grained control over who can access the server, listen_addresses controls which interfaces accept connection attempts, which can help prevent repeated malicious connection requests on insecure network interfaces. This parameter can only be set at server start.

port (integer)

The TCP port the server listens on; 5432 by default. Note that the same port number is used for all IP addresses the server listens on. This parameter can only be set at server start.

max_connections (integer)

Determines the maximum number of concurrent connections to the database server. The default is typically 100 connections, but might be less if your kernel settings will not support it (as determined during initdb). This parameter can only be set at server start.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.
superuser_reserved_connections (integer)

Determines the number of connection “slots” that are reserved for connections by Postgres Pro superusers. At most max_connections connections can ever be active simultaneously. Whenever the number of active concurrent connections is at least max_connections minus superuser_reserved_connections, new connections will be accepted only for superusers, and no new replication connections will be accepted.

The default value is three connections. The value must be less than max_connections. This parameter can only be set at server start.

unix_socket_directories (string)

Specifies the directory of the Unix-domain socket(s) on which the server is to listen for connections from client applications. Multiple sockets can be created by listing multiple directories separated by commas. Whitespace between entries is ignored; surround a directory name with double quotes if you need to include whitespace or commas in the name. An empty value specifies not listening on any Unix-domain sockets, in which case only TCP/IP sockets can be used to connect to the server.

A value that starts with @ specifies that a Unix-domain socket in the abstract namespace should be created (currently supported on Linux and Windows). In that case, this value does not specify a “directory” but a prefix from which the actual socket name is computed in the same manner as for the file-system namespace. While the abstract socket name prefix can be chosen freely, since it is not a file-system location, the convention is to nonetheless use file-system-like values such as @/tmp.

The default value is normally /tmp, but that can be changed at build time. On Windows, the default is empty, which means no Unix-domain socket is created by default. This parameter can only be set at server start.

In addition to the socket file itself, which is named .s.PGSQL.nnnn where nnnn is the server's port number, an ordinary file named .s.PGSQL.nnnn.lock will be created in each of the unix_socket_directories directories. Neither file should ever be removed manually. For sockets in the abstract namespace, no lock file is created.

unix_socket_group (string)

Sets the owning group of the Unix-domain socket(s). (The owning user of the sockets is always the user that starts the server.) In combination with the parameter unix_socket_permissions this can be used as an additional access control mechanism for Unix-domain connections. By default this is the empty string, which uses the default group of the server user. This parameter can only be set at server start.

This parameter is not supported on Windows. Any setting will be ignored. Also, sockets in the abstract namespace have no file owner, so this setting is also ignored in that case.

unix_socket_permissions (integer)

Sets the access permissions of the Unix-domain socket(s). Unix-domain sockets use the usual Unix file system permission set. The parameter value is expected to be a numeric mode specified in the format accepted by the chmod and umask system calls. (To use the customary octal format the number must start with a 0 (zero).)

The default permissions are 0777, meaning anyone can connect. Reasonable alternatives are 0770 (only user and group, see also unix_socket_group) and 0700 (only user). (Note that for a Unix-domain socket, only write permission matters, so there is no point in setting or revoking read or execute permissions.)

This access control mechanism is independent of the one described in Chapter 19.

This parameter can only be set at server start.
This parameter is irrelevant on systems, notably Solaris as of Solaris 10, that ignore socket permissions entirely. There, one can achieve a similar effect by pointing `unix_socket_directories` to a directory having search permission limited to the desired audience.

Sockets in the abstract namespace have no file permissions, so this setting is also ignored in that case.

**bonjour (boolean)**

Enables advertising the server's existence via Bonjour. The default is off. This parameter can only be set at server start.

**bonjour_name (string)**

Specifies the Bonjour service name. The computer name is used if this parameter is set to the empty string `' '` (which is the default). This parameter is ignored if the server was not compiled with Bonjour support. This parameter can only be set at server start.

**tcp_keepalives_idle (integer)**

Specifies the amount of time with no network activity after which the operating system should send a TCP keepalive message to the client. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. A value of 0 (the default) selects the operating system's default. This parameter is supported only on systems that support `TCP_KEEPIDLE` or an equivalent socket option, and on Windows; on other systems, it must be zero. In sessions connected via a Unix-domain socket, this parameter is ignored and always reads as zero.

**Note**

On Windows, setting a value of 0 will set this parameter to 2 hours, since Windows does not provide a way to read the system default value.

**tcp_keepalives_interval (integer)**

Specifies the amount of time after which a TCP keepalive message that has not been acknowledged by the client should be retransmitted. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. A value of 0 (the default) selects the operating system's default. This parameter is supported only on systems that support `TCP_KEEPINTVL` or an equivalent socket option, and on Windows; on other systems, it must be zero. In sessions connected via a Unix-domain socket, this parameter is ignored and always reads as zero.

**Note**

On Windows, setting a value of 0 will set this parameter to 1 second, since Windows does not provide a way to read the system default value.

**tcp_keepalives_count (integer)**

Specifies the number of TCP keepalive messages that can be lost before the server's connection to the client is considered dead. A value of 0 (the default) selects the operating system's default. This parameter is supported only on systems that support `TCP_KEEPCNT` or an equivalent socket option; on other systems, it must be zero. In sessions connected via a Unix-domain socket, this parameter is ignored and always reads as zero.

**Note**

This parameter is not supported on Windows, and must be zero.
Server Configuration

**tcp_user_timeout (integer)**

Specifies the amount of time that transmitted data may remain unacknowledged before the TCP connection is forcibly closed. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of 0 (the default) selects the operating system's default. This parameter is supported only on systems that support TCP_USER_TIMEOUT; on other systems, it must be zero. In sessions connected via a Unix-domain socket, this parameter is ignored and always reads as zero.

```
Note
This parameter is not supported on Windows, and must be zero.
```

**client_connection_check_interval (integer)**

Sets the time interval between optional checks that the client is still connected, while running queries. The check is performed by polling the socket, and allows long running queries to be aborted sooner if the kernel reports that the connection is closed.

This option is currently available only on systems that support the non-standard POLLRDHUP extension to the poll system call, including Linux.

If the value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 0, which disables connection checks. Without connection checks, the server will detect the loss of the connection only at the next interaction with the socket, when it waits for, receives or sends data.

For the kernel itself to detect lost TCP connections reliably and within a known timeframe in all scenarios including network failure, it may also be necessary to adjust the TCP keepalive settings of the operating system, or the tcp_keepalives_idle, tcp_keepalives_interval and tcp_keepalives_count settings of PostgreSQL.

### 18.3.2. Authentication

**authentication_timeout (integer)**

Maximum amount of time allowed to complete client authentication. If a would-be client has not completed the authentication protocol in this much time, the server closes the connection. This prevents hung clients from occupying a connection indefinitely. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The default is one minute (1m). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

**password_encryption (enum)**

When a password is specified in `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE`, this parameter determines the algorithm to use to encrypt the password. Possible values are `scram-sha-256`, which will encrypt the password with SCRAM-SHA-256, and `md5`, which stores the password as an MD5 hash. The default is `scram-sha-256`.

Note that older clients might lack support for the SCRAM authentication mechanism, and hence not work with passwords encrypted with SCRAM-SHA-256. See Section 19.5 for more details.

**krb_server_keyfile (string)**

Sets the location of the server's Kerberos key file. The default is `FILE:/usr/local/pgsql/etc/krb5.keytab` (where the directory part is whatever was specified as `sysconfdir` at build time; use `pg_config --sysconfdir` to determine that). If this parameter is set to an empty string, it is ignored and a system-dependent default is used. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. See Section 19.6 for more information.

**krb_caseins_users (boolean)**

Sets whether GSSAPI user names should be treated case-insensitively. The default is `off` (case sensitive). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.
Server Configuration

**db_user_namespace (boolean)**

This parameter enables per-database user names. It is off by default. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

If this is on, you should create users as `username@dbname`. When `username` is passed by a connecting client, `@` and the database name are appended to the user name and that database-specific user name is looked up by the server. Note that when you create users with names containing `@` within the SQL environment, you will need to quote the user name.

With this parameter enabled, you can still create ordinary global users. Simply append `@` when specifying the user name in the client, e.g., `joe@`. The `@` will be stripped off before the user name is looked up by the server.

`db_user_namespace` causes the client's and server's user name representation to differ. Authentication checks are always done with the server's user name so authentication methods must be configured for the server's user name, not the client's. Because `md5` uses the user name as salt on both the client and server, `md5` cannot be used with `db_user_namespace`.

**Note**

This feature is intended as a temporary measure until a complete solution is found. At that time, this option will be removed.

### 18.3.3. SSL

See Section 17.9 for more information about setting up SSL.

**ssl (boolean)**

Enables SSL connections. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `off`.

**ssl_ca_file (string)**

Specifies the name of the file containing the SSL server certificate authority (CA). Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is empty, meaning no CA file is loaded, and client certificate verification is not performed.

**ssl_cert_file (string)**

Specifies the name of the file containing the SSL server certificate. Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `server.crt`.

**ssl_crl_file (string)**

Specifies the name of the file containing the SSL server certificate revocation list (CRL). Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is empty, meaning no CRL file is loaded (unless `ssl_crl_dir` is set).

**ssl_crl_dir (string)**

Specifies the name of the directory containing the SSL server certificate revocation list (CRL). Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is empty, meaning no CRLs are used (unless `ssl_crl_file` is set).
The directory needs to be prepared with the OpenSSL command `openssl rehash` or `c_rehash`. See its documentation for details.

When using this setting, CRLs in the specified directory are loaded on-demand at connection time. New CRLs can be added to the directory and will be used immediately. This is unlike `ssl_crl_file`, which causes the CRL in the file to be loaded at server start time or when the configuration is reloaded. Both settings can be used together.

**ssl_key_file (string)**

Specifies the name of the file containing the SSL server private key. Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `server.key`.

**ssl_ciphers (string)**

Specifies a list of SSL cipher suites that are allowed to be used by SSL connections. See the ciphers manual page in the OpenSSL package for the syntax of this setting and a list of supported values. Only connections using TLS version 1.2 and lower are affected. There is currently no setting that controls the cipher choices used by TLS version 1.3 connections. The default value is `HIGH:MEDIUM:+3DES:!aNULL`. The default is usually a reasonable choice unless you have specific security requirements.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

Explanation of the default value:

- **HIGH**
  - Cipher suites that use ciphers from `HIGH` group (e.g., AES, Camellia, 3DES)

- **MEDIUM**
  - Cipher suites that use ciphers from `MEDIUM` group (e.g., RC4, SEED)

- **+3DES**
  - The OpenSSL default order for `HIGH` is problematic because it orders 3DES higher than AES128. This is wrong because 3DES offers less security than AES128, and it is also much slower. `+3DES` reorders it after all other `HIGH` and `MEDIUM` ciphers.

- **!aNULL**
  - Disables anonymous cipher suites that do no authentication. Such cipher suites are vulnerable to MITM attacks and therefore should not be used.

Available cipher suite details will vary across OpenSSL versions. Use the command `openssl ciphers -v 'HIGH:MEDIUM:+3DES:!aNULL'` to see actual details for the currently installed OpenSSL version. Note that this list is filtered at run time based on the server key type.

**ssl_prefer_server_ciphers (boolean)**

Specifies whether to use the server's SSL cipher preferences, rather than the client's. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `on`.

Older Postgres Pro versions do not have this setting and always use the client's preferences. This setting is mainly for backward compatibility with those versions. Using the server's preferences is usually better because it is more likely that the server is appropriately configured.

**ssl_ecdh_curve (string)**

Specifies the name of the curve to use in ECDH key exchange. It needs to be supported by all clients that connect. It does not need to be the same curve used by the server's Elliptic Curve key. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `prime256v1`. 

OpenSSL names for the most common curves are: \texttt{prime256v1} (NIST P-256), \texttt{secp384r1} (NIST P-384), \texttt{secp521r1} (NIST P-521). The full list of available curves can be shown with the command \texttt{openssl ecparam -list_curves}. Not all of them are usable in TLS though.

\texttt{ssl_min_protocol_version} (enum)

Sets the minimum SSL/TLS protocol version to use. Valid values are currently: TLSv1, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2, TLSv1.3. Older versions of the OpenSSL library do not support all values; an error will be raised if an unsupported setting is chosen. Protocol versions before TLS 1.0, namely SSL version 2 and 3, are always disabled.

The default is TLSv1.2, which satisfies industry best practices as of this writing.

This parameter can only be set in the \texttt{postgresql.conf} file or on the server command line.

\texttt{ssl_max_protocol_version} (enum)

Sets the maximum SSL/TLS protocol version to use. Valid values are as for \texttt{ssl_min_protocol_version}, with addition of an empty string, which allows any protocol version. The default is to allow any version. Setting the maximum protocol version is mainly useful for testing or if some component has issues working with a newer protocol.

This parameter can only be set in the \texttt{postgresql.conf} file or on the server command line.

\texttt{ssl_dh_params_file} (string)

Specifies the name of the file containing Diffie-Hellman parameters used for so-called ephemeral DH family of SSL ciphers. The default is empty, in which case compiled-in default DH parameters used. Using custom DH parameters reduces the exposure if an attacker manages to crack the well-known compiled-in DH parameters. You can create your own DH parameters file with the command \texttt{openssl dhparam -out dhparams.pem 2048}.

This parameter can only be set in the \texttt{postgresql.conf} file or on the server command line.

\texttt{ssl_passphrase_command} (string)

Sets an external command to be invoked when a passphrase for decrypting an SSL file such as a private key needs to be obtained. By default, this parameter is empty, which means the built-in prompting mechanism is used.

The command must print the passphrase to the standard output and exit with code 0. In the parameter value, \%p is replaced by a prompt string. (Write \%\% for a literal \%.) Note that the prompt string will probably contain whitespace, so be sure to quote adequately. A single newline is stripped from the end of the output if present.

The command does not actually have to prompt the user for a passphrase. It can read it from a file, obtain it from a keychain facility, or similar. It is up to the user to make sure the chosen mechanism is adequately secure.

This parameter can only be set in the \texttt{postgresql.conf} file or on the server command line.

\texttt{ssl_passphrase_command_supports_reload} (boolean)

This parameter determines whether the passphrase command set by \texttt{ssl_passphrase_command} will also be called during a configuration reload if a key file needs a passphrase. If this parameter is off (the default), then \texttt{ssl_passphrase_command} will be ignored during a reload and the SSL configuration will not be reloaded if a passphrase is needed. That setting is appropriate for a command that requires a TTY for prompting, which might not be available when the server is running. Setting this parameter to on might be appropriate if the passphrase is obtained from a file, for example.

This parameter can only be set in the \texttt{postgresql.conf} file or on the server command line.
18.4. Resource Consumption

18.4.1. Memory

`shared_buffers (integer)`

Sets the amount of memory the database server uses for shared memory buffers. The default is typically 128 megabytes (128MB), but might be less if your kernel settings will not support it (as determined during initdb). This setting must be at least 128 kilobytes. However, settings significantly higher than the minimum are usually needed for good performance. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is $\text{BLCKSZ}$ bytes, typically 8kB. (Non-default values of $\text{BLCKSZ}$ change the minimum value.) This parameter can only be set at server start.

If you have a dedicated database server with 1GB or more of RAM, a reasonable starting value for `shared_buffers` is 25% of the memory in your system. There are some workloads where even larger settings for `shared_buffers` are effective, but because Postgres Pro also relies on the operating system cache, it is unlikely that an allocation of more than 40% of RAM to `shared_buffers` will work better than a smaller amount. Larger settings for `shared_buffers` usually require a corresponding increase in `max_wal_size`, in order to spread out the process of writing large quantities of new or changed data over a longer period of time.

On systems with less than 1GB of RAM, a smaller percentage of RAM is appropriate, so as to leave adequate space for the operating system.

`huge_pages (enum)`

Controls whether huge pages are requested for the main shared memory area. Valid values are `try` (the default), `on`, and `off`. With `huge_pages` set to `try`, the server will try to request huge pages, but fall back to the default if that fails. With `on`, failure to request huge pages will prevent the server from starting up. With `off`, huge pages will not be requested.

At present, this setting is supported only on Linux and Windows. The setting is ignored on other systems when set to `try`. On Linux, it is only supported when `shared_memory_type` is set to `mmap` (the default).

The use of huge pages results in smaller page tables and less CPU time spent on memory management, increasing performance. For more details about using huge pages on Linux, see Section 17.4.5.

Huge pages are known as large pages on Windows. To use them, you need to assign the user right “Lock pages in memory” to the Windows user account that runs Postgres Pro. You can use Windows Group Policy tool (gpedit.msc) to assign the user right “Lock pages in memory”. To start the database server on the command prompt as a standalone process, not as a Windows service, the command prompt must be run as an administrator or User Access Control (UAC) must be disabled. When the UAC is enabled, the normal command prompt revokes the user right “Lock pages in memory” when started.

Note that this setting only affects the main shared memory area. Operating systems such as Linux, FreeBSD, and Illumos can also use huge pages (also known as “super” pages or “large” pages) automatically for normal memory allocation, without an explicit request from Postgres Pro. On Linux, this is called “transparent huge pages” (THP). That feature has been known to cause performance degradation with Postgres Pro for some users on some Linux versions, so its use is currently discouraged (unlike explicit use of `huge_pages`).

`huge_page_size (integer)`

Controls the size of huge pages, when they are enabled with `huge_pages`. The default is zero (0). When set to 0, the default huge page size on the system will be used. This parameter can only be set at server start.
Some commonly available page sizes on modern 64 bit server architectures include: 2MB and 1GB (Intel and AMD), 16MB and 16GB (IBM POWER), and 64kB, 2MB, 32MB and 1GB (ARM). For more information about usage and support, see Section 17.4.5.

Non-default settings are currently supported only on Linux.

temp_buffers (integer)

Sets the maximum amount of memory used for temporary buffers within each database session. These are session-local buffers used only for access to temporary tables. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is $BLCKSZ$ bytes, typically 8kB. The default is eight megabytes (8MB). (If $BLCKSZ$ is not 8kB, the default value scales proportionally to it.) This setting can be changed within individual sessions, but only before the first use of temporary tables within the session; subsequent attempts to change the value will have no effect on that session.

A session will allocate temporary buffers as needed up to the limit given by temp_buffers. The cost of setting a large value in sessions that do not actually need many temporary buffers is only a buffer descriptor, or about 64 bytes, per increment in temp_buffers. However if a buffer is actually used an additional 8192 bytes will be consumed for it (or in general, $BLCKSZ$ bytes).

max_prepared_transactions (integer)

Sets the maximum number of transactions that can be in the “prepared” state simultaneously (see PREPARE TRANSACTION). Setting this parameter to zero (which is the default) disables the prepared-transaction feature. This parameter can only be set at server start.

If you are not planning to use prepared transactions, this parameter should be set to zero to prevent accidental creation of prepared transactions. If you are using prepared transactions, you will probably want max_prepared_transactions to be at least as large as max_connections, so that every session can have a prepared transaction pending.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

work_mem (integer)

Sets the base maximum amount of memory to be used by a query operation (such as a sort or hash table) before writing to temporary disk files. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default value is four megabytes (4MB). Note that for a complex query, several sort or hash operations might be running in parallel; each operation will generally be allowed to use as much memory as this value specifies before it starts to write data into temporary files. Also, several running sessions could be doing such operations concurrently. Therefore, the total memory used could be many times the value of work_mem; it is necessary to keep this fact in mind when choosing the value. Sort operations are used for ORDER BY, DISTINCT, and merge joins. Hash tables are used in hash joins, hash-based aggregation, result cache nodes and hash-based processing of IN subqueries.

Hash-based operations are generally more sensitive to memory availability than equivalent sort-based operations. The memory available for hash tables is computed by multiplying work_mem by hash_mem_multiplier. This makes it possible for hash-based operations to use an amount of memory that exceeds the usual work_mem base amount.

hash_mem_multiplier (floating point)

Used to compute the maximum amount of memory that hash-based operations can use. The final limit is determined by multiplying work_mem by hash_mem_multiplier. The default value is 1.0, which makes hash-based operations subject to the same simple work_mem maximum as sort-based operations.

Consider increasing hash_mem_multiplier in environments where spilling by query operations is a regular occurrence, especially when simply increasing work_mem results in memory pressure (memory pressure typically takes the form of intermittent out of memory errors). A setting of 1.5 or
2.0 may be effective with mixed workloads. Higher settings in the range of 2.0 - 8.0 or more may be effective in environments where `work_mem` has already been increased to 40MB or more.

`maintenance_work_mem` (integer)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by maintenance operations, such as `VACUUM`, `CREATE INDEX`, and `ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY`. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. It defaults to 64 megabytes (64MB). Since only one of these operations can be executed at a time by a database session, and an installation normally doesn't have many of them running concurrently, it's safe to set this value significantly larger than `work_mem`. Larger settings might improve performance for vacuuming and for restoring database dumps.

Note that when autovacuum runs, up to `autovacuum_max_workers` times this memory may be allocated, so be careful not to set the default value too high. It may be useful to control for this by separately setting `autovacuum_work_mem`.

Note that for the collection of dead tuple identifiers, `VACUUM` is only able to utilize up to a maximum of 1GB of memory.

`autovacuum_work_mem` (integer)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by each autovacuum worker process. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. It defaults to -1, indicating that the value of `maintenance_work_mem` should be used instead. The setting has no effect on the behavior of `VACUUM` when run in other contexts. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

For the collection of dead tuple identifiers, autovacuum is only able to utilize up to a maximum of 1GB of memory, so setting `autovacuum_work_mem` to a value higher than that has no effect on the number of dead tuples that autovacuum can collect while scanning a table.

`logical_decoding_work_mem` (integer)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by logical decoding, before some of the decoded changes are written to local disk. This limits the amount of memory used by logical streaming replication connections. It defaults to 64 megabytes (64MB). Since each replication connection only uses a single buffer of this size, and an installation normally doesn't have many such connections concurrently (as limited by `max_wal_senders`), it's safe to set this value significantly higher than `work_mem`, reducing the amount of decoded changes written to disk.

`max_stack_depth` (integer)

Specifies the maximum safe depth of the server's execution stack. The ideal setting for this parameter is the actual stack size limit enforced by the kernel (as set by `ulimit -s` or local equivalent), less a safety margin of a megabyte or so. The safety margin is needed because the stack depth is not checked in every routine in the server, but only in key potentially-recursive routines. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default setting is two megabytes (2MB), which is conservatively small and unlikely to risk crashes. However, it might be too small to allow execution of complex functions. Only superusers can change this setting.

Setting `max_stack_depth` higher than the actual kernel limit will mean that a runaway recursive function can crash an individual backend process. On platforms where Postgres Pro can determine the kernel limit, the server will not allow this variable to be set to an unsafe value. However, not all platforms provide the information, so caution is recommended in selecting a value.

`shared_memory_type` (enum)

Specifies the shared memory implementation that the server should use for the main shared memory region that holds Postgres Pro's shared buffers and other shared data. Possible values are `mmap` (for anonymous shared memory allocated using `mmap`), `sysv` (for System V shared memory allocated via `shmget`) and `windows` (for Windows shared memory). Not all values are supported on all platforms;
the first supported option is the default for that platform. The use of the `sysv` option, which is not the default on any platform, is generally discouraged because it typically requires non-default kernel settings to allow for large allocations (see Section 17.4.1).

dynamic_shared_memory_type (enum)  
Specifies the dynamic shared memory implementation that the server should use. Possible values are `posix` (for POSIX shared memory allocated using `shm_open`), `sysv` (for System V shared memory allocated via `shmget`), `windows` (for Windows shared memory), and `mmap` (to simulate shared memory using memory-mapped files stored in the data directory). Not all values are supported on all platforms; the first supported option is the default for that platform. The use of the `mmap` option, which is not the default on any platform, is generally discouraged because the operating system may write modified pages back to disk repeatedly, increasing system I/O load; however, it may be useful for debugging, when the `pg_dynshmem` directory is stored on a RAM disk, or when other shared memory facilities are not available.

min_dynamic_shared_memory (integer)  
Specifies the amount of memory that should be allocated at server startup for use by parallel queries. When this memory region is insufficient or exhausted by concurrent queries, new parallel queries try to allocate extra shared memory temporarily from the operating system using the method configured with `dynamic_shared_memory_type`, which may be slower due to memory management overheads. Memory that is allocated at startup with `min_dynamic_shared_memory` is affected by the `huge_pages` setting on operating systems where that is supported, and may be more likely to benefit from larger pages on operating systems where that is managed automatically. The default value is 0 (none). This parameter can only be set at server start.

### 18.4.2. Disk

**temp_file_limit (integer)**  
Specifies the maximum amount of disk space that a process can use for temporary files, such as sort and hash temporary files, or the storage file for a held cursor. A transaction attempting to exceed this limit will be canceled. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. -1 (the default) means no limit. Only superusers can change this setting.

This setting constrains the total space used at any instant by all temporary files used by a given Postgres Pro process. It should be noted that disk space used for explicit temporary tables, as opposed to temporary files used behind-the-scenes in query execution, does not count against this limit.

### 18.4.3. Kernel Resource Usage

**max_files_per_process (integer)**  
Sets the maximum number of simultaneously open files allowed to each server subprocess. The default is one thousand files. If the kernel is enforcing a safe per-process limit, you don't need to worry about this setting. But on some platforms (notably, most BSD systems), the kernel will allow individual processes to open many more files than the system can actually support if many processes all try to open that many files. If you find yourself seeing “Too many open files” failures, try reducing this setting. This parameter can only be set at server start.

### 18.4.4. Cost-based Vacuum Delay

During the execution of VACUUM and ANALYZE commands, the system maintains an internal counter that keeps track of the estimated cost of the various I/O operations that are performed. When the accumulated cost reaches a limit (specified by `vacuum_cost_limit`), the process performing the operation will sleep for a short period of time, as specified by `vacuum_cost_delay`. Then it will reset the counter and continue execution.

The intent of this feature is to allow administrators to reduce the I/O impact of these commands on concurrent database activity. There are many situations where it is not important that maintenance
commands like VACUUM and ANALYZE finish quickly; however, it is usually very important that these commands do not significantly interfere with the ability of the system to perform other database operations. Cost-based vacuum delay provides a way for administrators to achieve this.

This feature is disabled by default for manually issued VACUUM commands. To enable it, set the vacuum_cost_delay variable to a nonzero value.

**vacuum_cost_delay** *(floating point)*

The amount of time that the process will sleep when the cost limit has been exceeded. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is zero, which disables the cost-based vacuum delay feature. Positive values enable cost-based vacuuming.

When using cost-based vacuuming, appropriate values for vacuum_cost_delay are usually quite small, perhaps less than 1 millisecond. While vacuum_cost_delay can be set to fractional-millisecond values, such delays may not be measured accurately on older platforms. On such platforms, increasing VACUUM’s throttled resource consumption above what you get at 1ms will require changing the other vacuum cost parameters. You should, nonetheless, keep vacuum_cost_delay as small as your platform will consistently measure; large delays are not helpful.

**vacuum_cost_page_hit** *(integer)*

The estimated cost for vacuuming a buffer found in the shared buffer cache. It represents the cost to lock the buffer pool, lookup the shared hash table and scan the content of the page. The default value is one.

**vacuum_cost_page_miss** *(integer)*

The estimated cost for vacuuming a buffer that has to be read from disk. This represents the effort to lock the buffer pool, lookup the shared hash table, read the desired block in from the disk and scan its content. The default value is 2.

**vacuum_cost_page_dirty** *(integer)*

The estimated cost charged when vacuum modifies a block that was previously clean. It represents the extra I/O required to flush the dirty block out to disk again. The default value is 20.

**vacuum_cost_limit** *(integer)*

The accumulated cost that will cause the vacuuming process to sleep. The default value is 200.

**Note**

There are certain operations that hold critical locks and should therefore complete as quickly as possible. Cost-based vacuum delays do not occur during such operations. Therefore it is possible that the cost accumulates far higher than the specified limit. To avoid uselessly long delays in such cases, the actual delay is calculated as vacuum_cost_delay * accumulated_balance / vacuum_cost_limit with a maximum of vacuum_cost_delay * 4.

### 18.4.5. Background Writer

There is a separate server process called the background writer, whose function is to issue writes of “dirty” (new or modified) shared buffers. When the number of clean shared buffers appears to be insufficient, the background writer writes some dirty buffers to the file system and marks them as clean. This reduces the likelihood that server processes handling user queries will be unable to find clean buffers and have to write dirty buffers themselves. However, the background writer does cause a net overall increase in I/O load, because while a repeatedly-dirtied page might otherwise be written only once per checkpoint interval, the background writer might write it several times as it is dirtied in the same interval. The parameters discussed in this subsection can be used to tune the behavior for local needs.
bgwriter_delay (integer)

Specifies the delay between activity rounds for the background writer. In each round the writer issues writes for some number of dirty buffers (controllable by the following parameters). It then sleeps for the length of bgwriter_delay, and repeats. When there are no dirty buffers in the buffer pool, though, it goes into a longer sleep regardless of bgwriter_delay. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 200 milliseconds (200ms). Note that on many systems, the effective resolution of sleep delays is 10 milliseconds; setting bgwriter_delay to a value that is not a multiple of 10 might have the same results as setting it to the next higher multiple of 10. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

bgwriter_lru_maxpages (integer)

In each round, no more than this many buffers will be written by the background writer. Setting this to zero disables background writing. (Note that checkpoints, which are managed by a separate, dedicated auxiliary process, are unaffected.) The default value is 100 buffers. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

bgwriter_lru_multiplier (floating point)

The number of dirty buffers written in each round is based on the number of new buffers that have been needed by server processes during recent rounds. The average recent need is multiplied by bgwriter_lru_multiplier to arrive at an estimate of the number of buffers that will be needed during the next round. Dirty buffers are written until there are that many clean, reusable buffers available. (However, no more than bgwriter_lru_maxpages buffers will be written per round.) Thus, a setting of 1.0 represents a “just in time” policy of writing exactly the number of buffers predicted to be needed. Larger values provide some cushion against spikes in demand, while smaller values intentionally leave writes to be done by server processes. The default is 2.0. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

bgwriter_flush_after (integer)

Whenever more than this amount of data has been written by the background writer, attempt to force the OS to issue these writes to the underlying storage. Doing so will limit the amount of dirty data in the kernel's page cache, reducing the likelihood of stalls when an fsync is issued at the end of a checkpoint, or when the OS writes data back in larger batches in the background. Often that will result in greatly reduced transaction latency, but there also are some cases, especially with workloads that are bigger than shared_buffers, but smaller than the OS's page cache, where performance might degrade. This setting may have no effect on some platforms. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is BLCKSZ bytes, typically 8kB. The valid range is between 0, which disables forced writeback, and 2MB. The default is 512kB on Linux, 0 elsewhere. (If BLCKSZ is not 8kB, the maximum value scales proportionally to it.) This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

Smaller values of bgwriter_lru_maxpages and bgwriter_lru_multiplier reduce the extra I/O load caused by the background writer, but make it more likely that server processes will have to issue writes for themselves, delaying interactive queries.

18.4.6. Asynchronous Behavior

backend_flush_after (integer)

Whenever more than this amount of data has been written by a single backend, attempt to force the OS to issue these writes to the underlying storage. Doing so will limit the amount of dirty data in the kernel's page cache, reducing the likelihood of stalls when an fsync is issued at the end of a checkpoint, or when the OS writes data back in larger batches in the background. Often that will result in greatly reduced transaction latency, but there also are some cases, especially with workloads that are bigger than shared_buffers, but smaller than the OS's page cache, where performance might degrade. This setting may have no effect on some platforms. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is BLCKSZ bytes, typically 8kB. The valid range is between 0, which disables forced writeback, and 2MB. The default is 0, i.e., no forced writeback. (If BLCKSZ is not 8kB, the maximum value scales proportionally to it.)
effective_io_concurrency (integer)

Sets the number of concurrent disk I/O operations that Postgres Pro expects can be executed simultaneously. Raising this value will increase the number of I/O operations that any individual Postgres Pro session attempts to initiate in parallel. The allowed range is 1 to 1000, or zero to disable issuance of asynchronous I/O requests. Currently, this setting only affects bitmap heap scans.

For magnetic drives, a good starting point for this setting is the number of separate drives comprising a RAID 0 stripe or RAID 1 mirror being used for the database. (For RAID 5 the parity drive should not be counted.) However, if the database is often busy with multiple queries issued in concurrent sessions, lower values may be sufficient to keep the disk array busy. A value higher than needed to keep the disks busy will only result in extra CPU overhead. SSDs and other memory-based storage can often process many concurrent requests, so the best value might be in the hundreds.

Asynchronous I/O depends on an effective posix_fadvise function, which some operating systems lack. If the function is not present then setting this parameter to anything but zero will result in an error. On some operating systems (e.g., Solaris), the function is present but does not actually do anything.

The default is 1 on supported systems, otherwise 0. This value can be overridden for tables in a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name (see ALTER TABLESPACE).

maintenance_io_concurrency (integer)

Similar to effective_io_concurrency, but used for maintenance work that is done on behalf of many client sessions.

The default is 10 on supported systems, otherwise 0. This value can be overridden for tables in a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name (see ALTER TABLESPACE).

max_worker_processes (integer)

Sets the maximum number of background processes that the system can support. This parameter can only be set at server start. The default is 8.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

When changing this value, consider also adjusting max_parallel_workers, max_parallel_maintenance_workers, and max_parallel_workers_per_gather.

max_parallel_workers_per_gather (integer)

Sets the maximum number of workers that can be started by a single Gather or Gather Merge node. Parallel workers are taken from the pool of processes established by max_worker_processes, limited by max_parallel_workers. Note that the requested number of workers may not actually be available at run time. If this occurs, the plan will run with fewer workers than expected, which may be inefficient. The default value is 2. Setting this value to 0 disables parallel query execution.

Note that parallel queries may consume very substantially more resources than non-parallel queries, because each worker process is a completely separate process which has roughly the same impact on the system as an additional user session. This should be taken into account when choosing a value for this setting, as well as when configuring other settings that control resource utilization, such as work_mem. Resource limits such as work_mem are applied individually to each worker, which means the total utilization may be much higher across all processes than it would normally be for any single process. For example, a parallel query using 4 workers may use up to 5 times as much CPU time, memory, I/O bandwidth, and so forth as a query which uses no workers at all.

For more information on parallel query, see Chapter 15.
max_parallel_maintenance_workers (integer)

Sets the maximum number of parallel workers that can be started by a single utility command. Currently, the parallel utility commands that support the use of parallel workers are `CREATE INDEX` only when building a B-tree index, and `VACUUM` without `FULL` option. Parallel workers are taken from the pool of processes established by `max_worker_processes`, limited by `max_parallel_workers`. Note that the requested number of workers may not actually be available at run time. If this occurs, the utility operation will run with fewer workers than expected. The default value is 2. Setting this value to 0 disables the use of parallel workers by utility commands.

Note that parallel utility commands should not consume substantially more memory than equivalent non-parallel operations. This strategy differs from that of parallel query, where resource limits generally apply per worker process. Parallel utility commands treat the resource limit `maintenance_work_mem` as a limit to be applied to the entire utility command, regardless of the number of parallel worker processes. However, parallel utility commands may still consume substantially more CPU resources and I/O bandwidth.

max_parallel_workers (integer)

Sets the maximum number of workers that the system can support for parallel operations. The default value is 8. When increasing or decreasing this value, consider also adjusting `max_parallel_maintenance_workers` and `max_parallel_workers_per_gather`. Also, note that a setting for this value which is higher than `max_worker_processes` will have no effect, since parallel workers are taken from the pool of worker processes established by that setting.

parallel_leader_participation (boolean)

Allows the leader process to execute the query plan under `Gather` and `Gather Merge` nodes instead of waiting for worker processes. The default is `on`. Setting this value to `off` reduces the likelihood that workers will become blocked because the leader is not reading tuples fast enough, but requires the leader process to wait for worker processes to start up before the first tuples can be produced. The degree to which the leader can help or hinder performance depends on the plan type, number of workers and query duration.

old_snapshot_threshold (integer)

Sets the minimum amount of time that a query snapshot can be used without risk of a “snapshot too old” error occurring when using the snapshot. Data that has been dead for longer than this threshold is allowed to be vacuumed away. This can help prevent bloat in the face of snapshots which remain in use for a long time. To prevent incorrect results due to cleanup of data which would otherwise be visible to the snapshot, an error is generated when the snapshot is older than this threshold and the snapshot is used to read a page which has been modified since the snapshot was built.

If this value is specified without units, it is taken as minutes. A value of `-1` (the default) disables this feature, effectively setting the snapshot age limit to infinity. This parameter can only be set at server start.

Useful values for production work probably range from a small number of hours to a few days. Small values (such as `0` or `1min`) are only allowed because they may sometimes be useful for testing. While a setting as high as `60d` is allowed, please note that in many workloads extreme bloat or transaction ID wraparound may occur in much shorter time frames.

When this feature is enabled, freed space at the end of a relation cannot be released to the operating system, since that could remove information needed to detect the “snapshot too old” condition. All space allocated to a relation remains associated with that relation for reuse only within that relation unless explicitly freed (for example, with `VACUUM FULL`).

This setting does not attempt to guarantee that an error will be generated under any particular circumstances. In fact, if the correct results can be generated from (for example) a cursor which has materialized a result set, no error will be generated even if the underlying rows in the referenced table have been vacuumed away. Some tables cannot safely be vacuumed early, and so will not be
affected by this setting, such as system catalogs. For such tables this setting will neither reduce bloat nor create a possibility of a “snapshot too old” error on scanning.

18.5. Write Ahead Log

For additional information on tuning these settings, see Section 28.5.

18.5.1. Settings

wal_level (enum)

wal_level determines how much information is written to the WAL. The default value is replica, which writes enough data to support WAL archiving and replication, including running read-only queries on a standby server. minimal removes all logging except the information required to recover from a crash or immediate shutdown. Finally, logical adds information necessary to support logical decoding. Each level includes the information logged at all lower levels. This parameter can only be set at server start.

In minimal level, no information is logged for permanent relations for the remainder of a transaction that creates or rewrites them. This can make operations much faster (see Section 14.4.7). Operations that initiate this optimization include:

ALTER ... SET TABLESPACE
CLUSTER
CREATE TABLE
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW
(without CONCURRENTLY)
REINDEX
TRUNCATE

But minimal WAL does not contain enough information to reconstruct the data from a base backup and the WAL logs, so replica or higher must be used to enable WAL archiving (archive_mode) and streaming replication. Note that changing wal_level to minimal makes any base backups taken before unavailable for archive recovery and standby server, which may lead to data loss.

In logical level, the same information is logged as with replica, plus information needed to allow extracting logical change sets from the WAL. Using a level of logical will increase the WAL volume, particularly if many tables are configured for REPLICA IDENTITY FULL and many UPDATE and DELETE statements are executed.

In releases prior to 9.6, this parameter also allowed the values archive and hot_standby. These are still accepted but mapped to replica.

fsync (boolean)

If this parameter is on, the Postgres Pro server will try to make sure that updates are physically written to disk, by issuing fsync() system calls or various equivalent methods (see wal_sync_method). This ensures that the database cluster can recover to a consistent state after an operating system or hardware crash.

While turning off fsync is often a performance benefit, this can result in unrecoverable data corruption in the event of a power failure or system crash. Thus it is only advisable to turn off fsync if you can easily recreate your entire database from external data.

Examples of safe circumstances for turning off fsync include the initial loading of a new database cluster from a backup file, using a database cluster for processing a batch of data after which the database will be thrown away and recreated, or for a read-only database clone which gets recreated frequently and is not used for failover. High quality hardware alone is not a sufficient justification for turning off fsync.

For reliable recovery when changing fsync off to on, it is necessary to force all modified buffers in the kernel to durable storage. This can be done while the cluster is shutdown or while fsync is on by running initdb --sync-only, running sync, unmounting the file system, or rebooting the server.
In many situations, turning off `synchronous_commit` for noncritical transactions can provide much of the potential performance benefit of turning off `fsync`, without the attendant risks of data corruption.

`fsync` can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. If you turn this parameter off, also consider turning off `full_page_writes`.

`synchronous_commit` (enum)

Specifies how much WAL processing must complete before the database server returns a “success” indication to the client. Valid values are `remote_apply`, `on` (the default), `remote_write`, `local`, and `off`.

If `synchronous_standby_names` is empty, the only meaningful settings are `on` and `off`; `remote_apply`, `remote_write` and `local` all provide the same local synchronization level as `on`. The local behavior of all non-off modes is to wait for local flush of WAL to disk. In `off` mode, there is no waiting, so there can be a delay between when success is reported to the client and when the transaction is later guaranteed to be safe against a server crash. (The maximum delay is three times `wal_writer_delay`.) Unlike `fsync`, setting this parameter to `off` does not create any risk of database inconsistency: an operating system or database crash might result in some recent allegedly-committed transactions being lost, but the database state will be just the same as if those transactions had been aborted cleanly. So, turning `synchronous_commit` off can be a useful alternative when performance is more important than exact certainty about the durability of a transaction. For more discussion see Section 28.4.

If `synchronous_standby_names` is non-empty, `synchronous_commit` also controls whether transaction commits will wait for their WAL records to be processed on the standby server(s).

When set to `remote_apply`, commits will wait until replies from the current synchronous standby(s) indicate they have received the commit record of the transaction and applied it, so that it has become visible to queries on the standby(s), and also written to durable storage on the standbys. This will cause much larger commit delays than previous settings since it waits for WAL replay. When set to `on`, commits wait until replies from the current synchronous standby(s) indicate they have received the commit record of the transaction and flushed it to durable storage. This ensures the transaction will not be lost unless both the primary and all synchronous standbys suffer corruption of their database storage. When set to `remote_write`, commits will wait until replies from the current synchronous standby(s) indicate they have received the commit record of the transaction and written it to their file systems. This setting ensures data preservation if a standby instance of Postgres Pro crashes, but not if the standby suffers an operating-system-level crash because the data has not necessarily reached durable storage on the standby. The setting `local` causes commits to wait for local flush to disk, but not for replication. This is usually not desirable when synchronous replication is in use, but is provided for completeness.

This parameter can be changed at any time; the behavior for any one transaction is determined by the setting in effect when it commits. It is therefore possible, and useful, to have some transactions commit synchronously and others asynchronously. For example, to make a single multistatement transaction commit asynchronously when the default is the opposite, issue `SET LOCAL synchronous_commit TO OFF` within the transaction.

Table 18.1 summarizes the capabilities of the `synchronous_commit` settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>synchronous_commit</code> setting</th>
<th>local durable commit</th>
<th>standby durable commit after PG crash</th>
<th>standby durable commit after OS crash</th>
<th>standby query consistency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>remote_apply</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remote_write</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Server Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>synchronous_commit setting</th>
<th>local durable commit</th>
<th>standby durable commit after PG crash</th>
<th>standby durable commit after OS crash</th>
<th>standby query consistency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**wal_sync_method (enum)**

Method used for forcing WAL updates out to disk. If fsync is off then this setting is irrelevant, since WAL file updates will not be forced out at all. Possible values are:

- open_datsasync (write WAL files with open( ) option O_DSYNC)
- fdatasync (call fdatasync( ) at each commit)
- fsync (call fsync( ) at each commit)
- fsync_writethrough (call fsync( ) at each commit, forcing write-through of any disk write cache)
- open_sync (write WAL files with open( ) option O_SYNC)

The open_* options also use O_DIRECT if available. Not all of these choices are available on all platforms. The default is the first method in the above list that is supported by the platform, except that fdatasync is the default on Linux and FreeBSD. The default is not necessarily ideal; it might be necessary to change this setting or other aspects of your system configuration in order to create a crash-safe configuration or achieve optimal performance. These aspects are discussed in Section 28.1. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

**full_page_writes (boolean)**

When this parameter is on, the Postgres Pro server writes the entire content of each disk page to WAL during the first modification of that page after a checkpoint. This is needed because a page write that is in process during an operating system crash might be only partially completed, leading to an on-disk page that contains a mix of old and new data. The row-level change data normally stored in WAL will not be enough to completely restore such a page during post-crash recovery. Storing the full page image guarantees that the page can be correctly restored, but at the price of increasing the amount of data that must be written to WAL. (Because WAL replay always starts from a checkpoint, it is sufficient to do this during the first change of each page after a checkpoint. Therefore, one way to reduce the cost of full-page writes is to increase the checkpoint interval parameters.)

Turning this parameter off speeds normal operation, but might lead to either unrecoverable data corruption, or silent data corruption, after a system failure. The risks are similar to turning off fsync, though smaller, and it should be turned off only based on the same circumstances recommended for that parameter.

Turning off this parameter does not affect use of WAL archiving for point-in-time recovery (PITR) (see Section 24.3).

This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line. The default is on.

**wal_log_hints (boolean)**

When this parameter is on, the Postgres Pro server writes the entire content of each disk page to WAL during the first modification of that page after a checkpoint, even for non-critical modifications of so-called hint bits.

If data checksums are enabled, hint bit updates are always WAL-logged and this setting is ignored. You can use this setting to test how much extra WAL-logging would occur if your database had data checksums enabled.
**Server Configuration**

This parameter can only be set at server start. The default value is off.

**wal_compression (boolean)**

When this parameter is on, the Postgres Pro server compresses full page images written to WAL when full page writes is on or during a base backup. A compressed page image will be decompressed during WAL replay. The default value is off. Only superusers can change this setting.

Turning this parameter on can reduce the WAL volume without increasing the risk of unrecoverable data corruption, but at the cost of some extra CPU spent on the compression during WAL logging and on the decompression during WAL replay.

**wal_init_zero (boolean)**

If set to on (the default), this option causes new WAL files to be filled with zeroes. On some file systems, this ensures that space is allocated before we need to write WAL records. However, Copy-On-Write (COW) file systems may not benefit from this technique, so the option is given to skip the unnecessary work. If set to off, only the final byte is written when the file is created so that it has the expected size.

**wal_recycle (boolean)**

If set to on (the default), this option causes WAL files to be recycled by renaming them, avoiding the need to create new ones. On COW file systems, it may be faster to create new ones, so the option is given to disable this behavior.

**wal_buffers (integer)**

The amount of shared memory used for WAL data that has not yet been written to disk. The default setting of -1 selects a size equal to 1/32nd (about 3%) of shared_buffers, but not less than 64kB nor more than the size of one WAL segment, typically 16MB. This value can be set manually if the automatic choice is too large or too small, but any positive value less than 32kB will be treated as 32kB. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as WAL blocks, that is XLOG_BLCKSZ bytes, typically 8kB. This parameter can only be set at server start.

The contents of the WAL buffers are written out to disk at every transaction commit, so extremely large values are unlikely to provide a significant benefit. However, setting this value to at least a few megabytes can improve write performance on a busy server where many clients are committing at once. The auto-tuning selected by the default setting of -1 should give reasonable results in most cases.

**wal_writer_delay (integer)**

Specifies how often the WAL writer flushes WAL, in time terms. After flushing WAL the writer sleeps for the length of time given by wal_writer_delay, unless woken up sooner by an asynchronously committing transaction. If the last flush happened less than wal_writer_delay ago and less than wal_writer_flush_after worth of WAL has been produced since, then WAL is only written to the operating system, not flushed to disk. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 200 milliseconds (200ms). Note that on many systems, the effective resolution of sleep delays is 10 milliseconds; setting wal_writer_delay to a value that is not a multiple of 10 might have the same results as setting it to the next higher multiple of 10. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

**wal_writer_flush_after (integer)**

Specifies how often the WAL writer flushes WAL, in volume terms. If the last flush happened less than wal_writer_delay ago and less than wal_writer_flush_after worth of WAL has been produced since, then WAL is only written to the operating system, not flushed to disk. If wal_writer_flush_after is set to 0 then WAL data is always flushed immediately. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as WAL blocks, that is XLOG_BLCKSZ bytes, typically 8kB. The default is 1MB. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.
Server Configuration

**wal_skip_threshold (integer)**

When `wal_level` is minimal and a transaction commits after creating or rewriting a permanent relation, this setting determines how to persist the new data. If the data is smaller than this setting, write it to the WAL log; otherwise, use an fsync of affected files. Depending on the properties of your storage, raising or lowering this value might help if such commits are slowing concurrent transactions. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default is two megabytes (2MB).

**commit_delay (integer)**

Setting `commit_delay` adds a time delay before a WAL flush is initiated. This can improve group commit throughput by allowing a larger number of transactions to commit via a single WAL flush, if system load is high enough that additional transactions become ready to commit within the given interval. However, it also increases latency by up to the `commit_delay` for each WAL flush. Because the delay is just wasted if no other transactions become ready to commit, a delay is only performed if at least `commit_siblings` other transactions are active when a flush is about to be initiated. Also, no delays are performed if `fsync` is disabled. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as microseconds. The default `commit_delay` is zero (no delay). Only superusers can change this setting.

In PostgreSQL releases prior to 9.3, `commit_delay` behaved differently and was much less effective: it affected only commits, rather than all WAL flushes, and waited for the entire configured delay even if the WAL flush was completed sooner. Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.3, the first process that becomes ready to flush waits for the configured interval, while subsequent processes wait only until the leader completes the flush operation.

**commit_siblings (integer)**

Minimum number of concurrent open transactions to require before performing the `commit_delay` delay. A larger value makes it more probable that at least one other transaction will become ready to commit during the delay interval. The default is five transactions.

### 18.5.2. Checkpoints

**checkpoint_timeout (integer)**

Maximum time between automatic WAL checkpoints. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The valid range is between 30 seconds and one day. The default is five minutes (5min). Increasing this parameter can increase the amount of time needed for crash recovery. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

**checkpoint_completion_target (floating point)**

Specifies the target of checkpoint completion, as a fraction of total time between checkpoints. The default is 0.9, which spreads the checkpoint across almost all of the available interval, providing fairly consistent I/O load while also leaving some time for checkpoint completion overhead. Reducing this parameter is not recommended because it causes the checkpoint to complete faster. This results in a higher rate of I/O during the checkpoint followed by a period of less I/O between the checkpoint completion and the next scheduled checkpoint. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

**checkpoint_flush_after (integer)**

Whenever more than this amount of data has been written while performing a checkpoint, attempt to force the OS to issue these writes to the underlying storage. Doing so will limit the amount of dirty data in the kernel's page cache, reducing the likelihood of stalls when an `fsync` is issued at the end of the checkpoint, or when the OS writes data back in larger batches in the background. Often that will result in greatly reduced transaction latency, but there also are some cases, especially with workloads that are bigger than `shared_buffers`, but smaller than the OS's page cache, where performance might degrade. This setting may have no effect on some platforms. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is `BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. The valid range is between 0, which disables forced writeback, and 2MB. The default is 256kB on Linux, 0 elsewhere. (If
BLCKSZ is not 8kB, the default and maximum values scale proportionally to it.) This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

### checkpoint_warning (integer)

Write a message to the server log if checkpoints caused by the filling of WAL segment files happen closer together than this amount of time (which suggests that `max_wal_size` ought to be raised). If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The default is 30 seconds (30s). Zero disables the warning. No warnings will be generated if `checkpoint_timeout` is less than `checkpoint_warning`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

### max_wal_size (integer)

Maximum size to let the WAL grow during automatic checkpoints. This is a soft limit; WAL size can exceed `max_wal_size` under special circumstances, such as heavy load, a failing `archive_command`, or a high `wal_keep_size` setting. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as megabytes. The default is 1 GB. Increasing this parameter can increase the amount of time needed for crash recovery. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

### min_wal_size (integer)

As long as WAL disk usage stays below this setting, old WAL files are always recycled for future use at a checkpoint, rather than removed. This can be used to ensure that enough WAL space is reserved to handle spikes in WAL usage, for example when running large batch jobs. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as megabytes. The default is 80 MB. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

### 18.5.3. Archiving

#### archive_mode (enum)

When `archive_mode` is enabled, completed WAL segments are sent to archive storage by setting `archive_command`. In addition to `off`, to disable, there are two modes: `on`, and `always`. During normal operation, there is no difference between the two modes, but when set to `always` the WAL archiver is enabled also during archive recovery or standby mode. In `always` mode, all files restored from the archive or streamed with streaming replication will be archived (again). See Section 25.2.9 for details.

`archive_mode` and `archive_command` are separate variables so that `archive_command` can be changed without leaving archiving mode. This parameter can only be set at server start. `archive_mode` cannot be enabled when `wal_level` is set to `minimal`.

#### archive_command (string)

The local shell command to execute to archive a completed WAL file segment. Any `%p` in the string is replaced by the path name of the file to archive, and any `%f` is replaced by only the file name. (The path name is relative to the working directory of the server, i.e., the cluster's data directory.) Use `%` to embed an actual `%` character in the command. It is important for the command to return a zero exit status only if it succeeds. For more information see Section 24.3.1.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. It is ignored unless `archive_mode` was enabled at server start. If `archive_command` is an empty string (the default) while `archive_mode` is enabled, WAL archiving is temporarily disabled, but the server continues to accumulate WAL segment files in the expectation that a command will soon be provided. Setting `archive_command` to a command that does nothing but return true, e.g., `/bin/true` (REM on Windows), effectively disables archiving, but also breaks the chain of WAL files needed for archive recovery, so it should only be used in unusual circumstances.

#### archive_timeout (integer)

The `archive_command` is only invoked for completed WAL segments. Hence, if your server generates little WAL traffic (or has slack periods where it does so), there could be a long delay between the
completion of a transaction and its safe recording in archive storage. To limit how old unarchived data can be, you can set `archive_timeout` to force the server to switch to a new WAL segment file periodically. When this parameter is greater than zero, the server will switch to a new segment file whenever this amount of time has elapsed since the last segment file switch, and there has been any database activity, including a single checkpoint (checkpoints are skipped if there is no database activity). Note that archived files that are closed early due to a forced switch are still the same length as completely full files. Therefore, it is unwise to use a very short `archive_timeout` — it will bloat your archive storage. `archive_timeout` settings of a minute or so are usually reasonable. You should consider using streaming replication, instead of archiving, if you want data to be copied off the primary server more quickly than that. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

### 18.5.4. Archive Recovery

This section describes the settings that apply only for the duration of the recovery. They must be reset for any subsequent recovery you wish to perform.

“Recovery” covers using the server as a standby or for executing a targeted recovery. Typically, standby mode would be used to provide high availability and/or read scalability, whereas a targeted recovery is used to recover from data loss.

To start the server in standby mode, create a file called `standby.signal` in the data directory. The server will enter recovery and will not stop recovery when the end of archived WAL is reached, but will keep trying to continue recovery by connecting to the sending server as specified by the `primary_conninfo` setting and/or by fetching new WAL segments using `restore_command`. For this mode, the parameters from this section and Section 18.6.3 are of interest. Parameters from Section 18.5.5 will also be applied but are typically not useful in this mode.

To start the server in targeted recovery mode, create a file called `recovery.signal` in the data directory. If both `standby.signal` and `recovery.signal` files are created, standby mode takes precedence. Targeted recovery mode ends when the archived WAL is fully replayed, or when `recovery_target` is reached. In this mode, the parameters from both this section and Section 18.5.5 will be used.

**restore_command** (string)

The local shell command to execute to retrieve an archived segment of the WAL file series. This parameter is required for archive recovery, but optional for streaming replication. Any `%f` in the string is replaced by the name of the file to retrieve from the archive, and any `%p` is replaced by the copy destination path name on the server. (The path name is relative to the current working directory, i.e., the cluster's data directory.) Any `%r` is replaced by the name of the file containing the last valid restart point. That is the earliest file that must be kept to allow a restore to be restartable, so this information can be used to truncate the archive to just the minimum required to support restarting from the current restore. `%r` is typically only used by warm-standby configurations (see Section 25.2). Write `%%` to embed an actual `%` character.

It is important for the command to return a zero exit status only if it succeeds. The command will be asked for file names that are not present in the archive; it must return nonzero when so asked.

Examples:

```
restore_command = 'cp /mnt/server/archivedir/%f "%p"'
restore_command = 'copy "C:\server\archivedir\%f" "%p"'  # Windows
```

An exception is that if the command was terminated by a signal (other than SIGTERM, which is used as part of a database server shutdown) or an error by the shell (such as command not found), then recovery will abort and the server will not start up.

**archive_cleanup_command** (string)

This optional parameter specifies a shell command that will be executed at every restartpoint. The purpose of `archive_cleanup_command` is to provide a mechanism for cleaning up old archived WAL files that are no longer needed by the standby server. Any `%r` is replaced by the name of the
file containing the last valid restart point. That is the earliest file that must be kept to allow a
restart to be restartable, and so all files earlier than %r may be safely removed. This information
can be used to truncate the archive to just the minimum required to support restart from the
current restore. The pg_archivecleanup module is often used in archive_cleanup_command for
single-standby configurations, for example:

archive_cleanup_command = 'pg_archivecleanup /mnt/server/archivedir %r'

Note however that if multiple standby servers are restoring from the same archive directory, you
will need to ensure that you do not delete WAL files until they are no longer needed by any of the
servers. archive_cleanup_command would typically be used in a warm-standby configuration (see
Section 25.2). Write %r to embed an actual % character in the command.

If the command returns a nonzero exit status then a warning log message will be written. An
exception is that if the command was terminated by a signal or an error by the shell (such as command
not found), a fatal error will be raised.

This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

recovery_end_command (string)

This parameter specifies a shell command that will be executed once only at the end of recovery.
This parameter is optional. The purpose of the recovery_end_command is to provide a mechanism for
cleanup following replication or recovery. Any %r is replaced by the name of the file containing the
last valid restart point, like in archive_cleanup_command.

If the command returns a nonzero exit status then a warning log message will be written and the
database will proceed to start up anyway. An exception is that if the command was terminated by
a signal or an error by the shell (such as command not found), the database will not proceed with
startup.

This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

18.5.5. Recovery Target

By default, recovery will recover to the end of the WAL log. The following parameters can be
used to specify an earlier stopping point. At most one of recovery_target, recovery_target_lsn,
recovery_target_name, recovery_target_time, or recovery_target_xid can be used; if more than
one of these is specified in the configuration file, an error will be raised. These parameters can only be
set at server start.

recovery_target = 'immediate'

This parameter specifies that recovery should end as soon as a consistent state is reached, i.e., as
early as possible. When restoring from an online backup, this means the point where taking the
backup ended.

Technically, this is a string parameter, but 'immediate' is currently the only allowed value.

recovery_target_name (string)

This parameter specifies the named restore point (created with pg_create_restore_point()) to
which recovery will proceed.

recovery_target_time (timestamp)

This parameter specifies the time stamp up to which recovery will proceed. The precise stopping
point is also influenced by recovery_target_inclusive.

The value of this parameter is a time stamp in the same format accepted by the timestamp
with time zone data type, except that you cannot use a time zone abbreviation (unless the
timezone_abbreviations variable has been set earlier in the configuration file). Preferred style is to
use a numeric offset from UTC, or you can write a full time zone name, e.g., Europe/Helsinki not
EEST.
recovery_target_xid (string)

This parameter specifies the transaction ID up to which recovery will proceed. Keep in mind that while transaction IDs are assigned sequentially at transaction start, transactions can complete in a different numeric order. The transactions that will be recovered are those that committed before (and optionally including) the specified one. The precise stopping point is also influenced by recovery_target_inclusive.

recovery_target_lsn (pg_lsn)

This parameter specifies the LSN of the write-ahead log location up to which recovery will proceed. The precise stopping point is also influenced by recovery_target_inclusive. This parameter is parsed using the system data type pg_lsn.

The following options further specify the recovery target, and affect what happens when the target is reached:

recovery_target_inclusive (boolean)

Specifies whether to stop just after the specified recovery target (on), or just before the recovery target (off). Applies when recovery_target_lsn, recovery_target_time, or recovery_target_xid is specified. This setting controls whether transactions having exactly the target WAL location (LSN), commit time, or transaction ID, respectively, will be included in the recovery. Default is on.

recovery_target_timeline (string)

Specifies recovering into a particular timeline. The value can be a numeric timeline ID or a special value. The value current recovers along the same timeline that was current when the base backup was taken. The value latest recovers to the latest timeline found in the archive, which is useful in a standby server. latest is the default.

You usually only need to set this parameter in complex re-recovery situations, where you need to return to a state that itself was reached after a point-in-time recovery. See Section 24.3.5 for discussion.

recovery_target_action (enum)

Specifies what action the server should take once the recovery target is reached. The default is pause, which means recovery will be paused. promote means the recovery process will finish and the server will start to accept connections. Finally shutdown will stop the server after reaching the recovery target.

The intended use of the pause setting is to allow queries to be executed against the database to check if this recovery target is the most desirable point for recovery. The paused state can be resumed by using pg_wal_replay_resume() (see Table 9.89), which then causes recovery to end. If this recovery target is not the desired stopping point, then shut down the server, change the recovery target settings to a later target and restart to continue recovery.

The shutdown setting is useful to have the instance ready at the exact replay point desired. The instance will still be able to replay more WAL records (and in fact will have to replay WAL records since the last checkpoint next time it is started).

Note that because recovery.signal will not be removed when recovery_target_action is set to shutdown, any subsequent start will end with immediate shutdown unless the configuration is changed or the recovery.signal file is removed manually.

This setting has no effect if no recovery target is set. If hot_standby is not enabled, a setting of pause will act the same as shutdown. If the recovery target is reached while a promotion is ongoing, a setting of pause will act the same as promote.

In any case, if a recovery target is configured but the archive recovery ends before the target is reached, the server will shut down with a fatal error.
18.6. Replication

These settings control the behavior of the built-in streaming replication feature (see Section 25.2.5). Servers will be either a primary or a standby server. Primaries can send data, while standbys are always receivers of replicated data. When cascading replication (see Section 25.2.7) is used, standby servers can also be senders, as well as receivers. Parameters are mainly for sending and standby servers, though some parameters have meaning only on the primary server. Settings may vary across the cluster without problems if that is required.

18.6.1. Sending Servers

These parameters can be set on any server that is to send replication data to one or more standby servers. The primary is always a sending server, so these parameters must always be set on the primary. The role and meaning of these parameters does not change after a standby becomes the primary.

max_wal_senders (integer)

Specifies the maximum number of concurrent connections from standby servers or streaming base backup clients (i.e., the maximum number of simultaneously running WAL sender processes). The default is 10. The value 0 means replication is disabled. Abrupt disconnection of a streaming client might leave an orphaned connection slot behind until a timeout is reached, so this parameter should be set slightly higher than the maximum number of expected clients so disconnected clients can immediately reconnect. This parameter can only be set at server start. Also, wal_level must be set to replica or higher to allow connections from standby servers.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

max_replication_slots (integer)

Specifies the maximum number of replication slots (see Section 25.2.6) that the server can support. The default is 10. This parameter can only be set at server start. Setting it to a lower value than the number of currently existing replication slots will prevent the server from starting. Also, wal_level must be set to replica or higher to allow replication slots to be used.

On the subscriber side, specifies how many replication origins (see Chapter 48) can be tracked simultaneously, effectively limiting how many logical replication subscriptions can be created on the server. Setting it to a lower value than the current number of tracked replication origins (reflected in pg_replication_origin_status, not pg_replication_origin) will prevent the server from starting.

wal_keep_size (integer)

Specifies the minimum size of past log file segments kept in the pg_wal directory, in case a standby server needs to fetch them for streaming replication. If a standby server connected to the sending server falls behind by more than wal_keep_size megabytes, the sending server might remove a WAL segment still needed by the standby, in which case the replication connection will be terminated. Downstream connections will also eventually fail as a result. (However, the standby server can recover by fetching the segment from archive, if WAL archiving is in use.)

This sets only the minimum size of segments retained in pg_wal; the system might need to retain more segments for WAL archival or to recover from a checkpoint. If wal_keep_size is zero (the default), the system doesn't keep any extra segments for standby purposes, so the number of old WAL segments available to standby servers is a function of the location of the previous checkpoint and status of WAL archiving. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as megabytes. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

max_slot_wal_keep_size (integer)

Specify the maximum size of WAL files that replication slots are allowed to retain in the pg_wal directory at checkpoint time. If max_slot_wal_keep_size is -1 (the default), replication slots may retain an unlimited amount of WAL files. Otherwise, if restart_lsn of a replication slot falls behind the
Server Configuration

Current LSN by more than the given size, the standby using the slot may no longer be able to continue replication due to removal of required WAL files. You can see the WAL availability of replication slots in `pg_replication_slots`.

`wal_sender_timeout` (integer)

Terminate replication connections that are inactive for longer than this amount of time. This is useful for the sending server to detect a standby crash or network outage. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 60 seconds. A value of zero disables the timeout mechanism.

With a cluster distributed across multiple geographic locations, using different values per location brings more flexibility in the cluster management. A smaller value is useful for faster failure detection with a standby having a low-latency network connection, and a larger value helps in judging better the health of a standby if located on a remote location, with a high-latency network connection.

`track_commit_timestamp` (boolean)

Record commit time of transactions. This parameter can only be set in `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default value is `off`.

18.6.2. Primary Server

These parameters can be set on the primary server that is to send replication data to one or more standby servers. Note that in addition to these parameters, `wal_level` must be set appropriately on the primary server, and optionally WAL archiving can be enabled as well (see Section 18.5.3). The values of these parameters on standby servers are irrelevant, although you may wish to set them there in preparation for the possibility of a standby becoming the primary.

`synchronous_standby_names` (string)

Specifies a list of standby servers that can support synchronous replication, as described in Section 25.2.8. There will be one or more active synchronous standbys; transactions waiting for commit will be allowed to proceed after these standby servers confirm receipt of their data. The synchronous standbys will be those whose names appear in this list, and that are both currently connected and streaming data in real-time (as shown by a state of `streaming` in the `pg_stat_replication` view). Specifying more than one synchronous standby can allow for very high availability and protection against data loss.

The name of a standby server for this purpose is the `application_name` setting of the standby, as set in the standby's connection information. In case of a physical replication standby, this should be set in the `primary_conninfo` setting; the default is the setting of `cluster_name` if set, else `walreceiver`. For logical replication, this can be set in the connection information of the subscription, and it defaults to the subscription name. For other replication stream consumers, consult their documentation.

This parameter specifies a list of standby servers using either of the following syntaxes:

```
[FIRST] num_sync ( standby_name [, ...] )
ANY num_sync ( standby_name [, ...] )
standby_name [, ...]
```

where `num_sync` is the number of synchronous standbys that transactions need to wait for replies from, and `standby_name` is the name of a standby server. `FIRST` and `ANY` specify the method to choose synchronous standbys from the listed servers.

The keyword `FIRST`, coupled with `num_sync`, specifies a priority-based synchronous replication and makes transaction commits wait until their WAL records are replicated to `num_sync` synchronous standbys chosen based on their priorities. For example, a setting of `FIRST 3 (s1, s2, s3, s4)` will cause each commit to wait for replies from three higher-priority standbys chosen from standby servers `s1`, `s2`, `s3` and `s4`. The standbys whose names appear earlier in the list are given higher priority and will be considered as synchronous. Other standby servers appearing later in this list represent potential synchronous standbys. If any of the current synchronous standbys disconnects for
whatever reason, it will be replaced immediately with the next-highest-priority standby. The keyword FIRST is optional.

The keyword ANY, coupled with num_sync, specifies a quorum-based synchronous replication and makes transaction commits wait until their WAL records are replicated to at least num_sync listed standbys. For example, a setting of ANY 3 (s1, s2, s3, s4) will cause each commit to proceed as soon as at least any three standbys of s1, s2, s3 and s4 reply.

FIRST and ANY are case-insensitive. If these keywords are used as the name of a standby server, its standby_name must be double-quoted.

The third syntax was used before Postgres Pro version 9.6 and is still supported. It's the same as the first syntax with FIRST and num_sync equal to 1. For example, FIRST 1 (s1, s2) and s1, s2 have the same meaning: either s1 or s2 is chosen as a synchronous standby.

The special entry * matches any standby name.

There is no mechanism to enforce uniqueness of standby names. In case of duplicates one of the matching standbys will be considered as higher priority, though exactly which one is indeterminate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Each standby_name should have the form of a valid SQL identifier, unless it is *. You can use double-quoting if necessary. But note that standby_names are compared to standby application names case-insensitively, whether double-quoted or not.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If no synchronous standby names are specified here, then synchronous replication is not enabled and transaction commits will not wait for replication. This is the default configuration. Even when synchronous replication is enabled, individual transactions can be configured not to wait for replication by setting the synchronous_commit parameter to local or off.

This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

vacuum_defer_cleanup_age (integer)

Specifies the number of transactions by which VACUUM and HOT updates will defer cleanup of dead row versions. The default is zero transactions, meaning that dead row versions can be removed as soon as possible, that is, as soon as they are no longer visible to any open transaction. You may wish to set this to a non-zero value on a primary server that is supporting hot standby servers, as described in Section 25.4. This allows more time for queries on the standby to complete without incurring conflicts due to early cleanup of rows. However, since the value is measured in terms of number of write transactions occurring on the primary server, it is difficult to predict just how much additional grace time will be made available to standby queries. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

You should also consider setting hot_standby_feedback on standby server(s) as an alternative to using this parameter.

This does not prevent cleanup of dead rows which have reached the age specified by old_snapshot_threshold.

18.6.3. Standby Servers

These settings control the behavior of a standby server that is to receive replication data. Their values on the primary server are irrelevant.

primary_conninfo (string)

Specifies a connection string to be used for the standby server to connect with a sending server. This string is in the format described in Section 32.1.1. If any option is unspecified in this string, then
Server Configuration

the corresponding environment variable (see Section 32.15) is checked. If the environment variable is not set either, then defaults are used.

The connection string should specify the host name (or address) of the sending server, as well as the port number if it is not the same as the standby server's default. Also specify a user name corresponding to a suitably-privileged role on the sending server (see Section 25.2.5.1). A password needs to be provided too, if the sender demands password authentication. It can be provided in the primary_conninfo string, or in a separate ~/.pgpass file on the standby server (use replication as the database name). Do not specify a database name in the primary_conninfo string.

This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line. If this parameter is changed while the WAL receiver process is running, that process is signaled to shut down and expected to restart with the new setting (except if primary_conninfo is an empty string). This setting has no effect if the server is not in standby mode.

primary_slot_name (string)

Optionally specifies an existing replication slot to be used when connecting to the sending server via streaming replication to control resource removal on the upstream node (see Section 25.2.6). This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line. If this parameter is changed while the WAL receiver process is running, that process is signaled to shut down and expected to restart with the new setting. This setting has no effect if primary_conninfo is not set or the server is not in standby mode.

promote_trigger_file (string)

Specifies a trigger file whose presence ends recovery in the standby. Even if this value is not set, you can still promote the standby using pg_ctl promote or calling pg_promote(). This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

hot_standby (boolean)

Specifies whether or not you can connect and run queries during recovery, as described in Section 25.4. The default value is on. This parameter can only be set at server start. It only has effect during archive recovery or in standby mode.

max_standby_archive_delay (integer)

When Hot Standby is active, this parameter determines how long the standby server should wait before canceling standby queries that conflict with about-to-be-applied WAL entries, as described in Section 25.4.2. max_standby_archive_delay applies when WAL data is being read from WAL archive (and is therefore not current). If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default is 30 seconds. A value of -1 allows the standby to wait forever for conflicting queries to complete. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

Note that max_standby_archive_delay is not the same as the maximum length of time a query can run before cancellation; rather it is the maximum total time allowed to apply any one WAL segment's data. Thus, if one query has resulted in significant delay earlier in the WAL segment, subsequent conflicting queries will have much less grace time.

max_standby_streaming_delay (integer)

When Hot Standby is active, this parameter determines how long the standby server should wait before canceling standby queries that conflict with about-to-be-applied WAL entries, as described in Section 25.4.2. max_standby_streaming_delay applies when WAL data is being received via streaming replication. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default is 30 seconds. A value of -1 allows the standby to wait forever for conflicting queries to complete. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

Note that max_standby_streaming_delay is not the same as the maximum length of time a query can run before cancellation; rather it is the maximum total time allowed to apply WAL data once it has been received from the primary server. Thus, if one query has resulted in significant delay,
subsequent conflicting queries will have much less grace time until the standby server has caught up again.

`wal_receiver_create_temp_slot` (boolean)

Specifies whether the WAL receiver process should create a temporary replication slot on the remote instance when no permanent replication slot to use has been configured (using `primary_slot_name`). The default is off. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. If this parameter is changed while the WAL receiver process is running, that process is signaled to shut down and expected to restart with the new setting.

`wal_receiver_status_interval` (integer)

Specifies the minimum frequency for the WAL receiver process on the standby to send information about replication progress to the primary or upstream standby, where it can be seen using the `pg_stat_replication` view. The standby will report the last write-ahead log location it has written, the last position it has flushed to disk, and the last position it has applied. This parameter's value is the maximum amount of time between reports. Updates are sent each time the write or flush positions change, or as often as specified by this parameter if set to a non-zero value. There are additional cases where updates are sent while ignoring this parameter; for example, when processing of the existing WAL completes or when `synchronous_commit` is set to `remote_apply`. Thus, the apply position may lag slightly behind the true position. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The default value is 10 seconds. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`hot_standby_feedback` (boolean)

Specifies whether or not a hot standby will send feedback to the primary or upstream standby about queries currently executing on the standby. This parameter can be used to eliminate query cancels caused by cleanup records, but can cause database bloat on the primary for some workloads. Feedback messages will not be sent more frequently than once per `wal_receiver_status_interval`. The default value is off. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

If cascaded replication is in use the feedback is passed upstream until it eventually reaches the primary. Standbys make no other use of feedback they receive other than to pass upstream.

This setting does not override the behavior of `old_snapshot_threshold` on the primary; a snapshot on the standby which exceeds the primary's age threshold can become invalid, resulting in cancellation of transactions on the standby. This is because `old_snapshot_threshold` is intended to provide an absolute limit on the time which dead rows can contribute to bloat, which would otherwise be violated because of the configuration of a standby.

`wal_receiver_timeout` (integer)

Terminate replication connections that are inactive for longer than this amount of time. This is useful for the receiving standby server to detect a primary node crash or network outage. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 60 seconds. A value of zero disables the timeout mechanism. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`wal_retrieve_retry_interval` (integer)

Specifies how long the standby server should wait when WAL data is not available from any sources (streaming replication, local `pg_wal` or WAL archive) before trying again to retrieve WAL data. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 5 seconds. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

This parameter is useful in configurations where a node in recovery needs to control the amount of time to wait for new WAL data to be available. For example, in archive recovery, it is possible to make the recovery more responsive in the detection of a new WAL log file by reducing the value of this parameter. On a system with low WAL activity, increasing it reduces the amount of requests
necessary to access WAL archives, something useful for example in cloud environments where the amount of times an infrastructure is accessed is taken into account.

recovery_min_apply_delay (integer)

By default, a standby server restores WAL records from the sending server as soon as possible. It may be useful to have a time-delayed copy of the data, offering opportunities to correct data loss errors. This parameter allows you to delay recovery by a specified amount of time. For example, if you set this parameter to 5min, the standby will replay each transaction commit only when the system time on the standby is at least five minutes past the commit time reported by the primary. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default is zero, adding no delay.

It is possible that the replication delay between servers exceeds the value of this parameter, in which case no delay is added. Note that the delay is calculated between the WAL time stamp as written on primary and the current time on the standby. Delays in transfer because of network lag or cascading replication configurations may reduce the actual wait time significantly. If the system clocks on primary and standby are not synchronized, this may lead to recovery applying records earlier than expected; but that is not a major issue because useful settings of this parameter are much larger than typical time deviations between servers.

The delay occurs only on WAL records for transaction commits. Other records are replayed as quickly as possible, which is not a problem because MVCC visibility rules ensure their effects are not visible until the corresponding commit record is applied.

The delay occurs once the database in recovery has reached a consistent state, until the standby is promoted or triggered. After that the standby will end recovery without further waiting.

This parameter is intended for use with streaming replication deployments; however, if the parameter is specified it will be honored in all cases except crash recovery. hot_standby_feedback will be delayed by use of this feature which could lead to bloat on the primary; use both together with care.

**Warning**

Synchronous replication is affected by this setting when synchronous_commit is set to remote_apply; every COMMIT will need to wait to be applied.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

### 18.6.4. Subscribers

These settings control the behavior of a logical replication subscriber. Their values on the publisher are irrelevant.

Note that wal_receiver_timeout, wal_receiver_status_interval and wal_retrieve_retry_interval configuration parameters affect the logical replication workers as well.

max_logical_replication_workers (int)

Specifies maximum number of logical replication workers. This includes both apply workers and table synchronization workers.

Logical replication workers are taken from the pool defined by max_worker_processes.

The default value is 4. This parameter can only be set at server start.

max_sync_workers_per_subscription (integer)

Maximum number of synchronization workers per subscription. This parameter controls the amount of parallelism of the initial data copy during the subscription initialization or when new tables are added.
Server Configuration

Currently, there can be only one synchronization worker per table. The synchronization workers are taken from the pool defined by `max_logical_replication_workers`.

The default value is 2. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

18.7. Query Planning

18.7.1. Planner Method Configuration

These configuration parameters provide a crude method of influencing the query plans chosen by the query optimizer. If the default plan chosen by the optimizer for a particular query is not optimal, a temporary solution is to use one of these configuration parameters to force the optimizer to choose a different plan. Better ways to improve the quality of the plans chosen by the optimizer include adjusting the planner cost constants (see Section 18.7.2), running `ANALYZE` manually, increasing the value of the `default_statistics_target` configuration parameter, and increasing the amount of statistics collected for specific columns using `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS`.

`enable_async_append (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of async-aware append plan types. The default is `on`.

`enable_bitmapscan (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of bitmap-scan plan types. The default is `on`.

`enable_gathermerge (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of gather merge plan types. The default is `on`.

`enable_hashagg (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of hashed aggregation plan types. The default is `on`.

`enable_hashjoin (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of hash-join plan types. The default is `on`.

`enable_incremental_sort (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of incremental sort steps. The default is `on`.

`enable_indexscan (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of index-scan plan types. The default is `on`.

`enable_indexonlyscan (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of index-only-scan plan types (see Section 11.9). The default is `on`.

`enable_material (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of materialization. It is impossible to suppress materialization entirely, but turning this variable off prevents the planner from inserting materialize nodes except in cases where it is required for correctness. The default is `on`.

`enable_memoize (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of memoize plans for caching results from parameterized scans inside nested-loop joins. This plan type allows scans to the underlying plans to be skipped when the results for the current parameters are already in the cache. Less commonly looked up results may be evicted from the cache when more space is required for new entries. The default is `on`.
enable_mergejoin (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of merge-join plan types. The default is on.

enable_nestloop (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of nested-loop join plans. It is impossible to suppress nested-loop joins entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on.

enable_parallel_append (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of parallel-aware append plan types. The default is on.

enable_parallel_hash (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of hash-join plan types with parallel hash. Has no effect if hash-join plans are not also enabled. The default is on.

enable_partition_pruning (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's ability to eliminate a partitioned table's partitions from query plans. This also controls the planner's ability to generate query plans which allow the query executor to remove (ignore) partitions during query execution. The default is on. See Section 5.11.4 for details.

enable_partitionwise_join (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of partitionwise join, which allows a join between partitioned tables to be performed by joining the matching partitions. Partitionwise join currently applies only when the join conditions include all the partition keys, which must be of the same data type and have one-to-one matching sets of child partitions. Because partitionwise join planning can use significantly more CPU time and memory during planning, the default is off.

enable_partitionwise_aggregate (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of partitionwise grouping or aggregation, which allows grouping or aggregation on a partitioned tables performed separately for each partition. If the GROUP BY clause does not include the partition keys, only partial aggregation can be performed on a per-partition basis, and finalization must be performed later. Because partitionwise grouping or aggregation can use significantly more CPU time and memory during planning, the default is off.

enable_self_join_removal (boolean)

Enables or disables removal of self joins from query plans. Removing self joins based on unique column can significantly speed up queries without affecting the results.

Default: on

enable_compound_index_stats (boolean)

Enables or disables use of compound indexes statistics for selectivity estimation.

Default: on

enable_seqscan (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of sequential scan plan types. It is impossible to suppress sequential scans entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on.

enable_sort (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of explicit sort steps. It is impossible to suppress explicit sorts entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on.
enable_tidscan (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of TID scan plan types. The default is on.

18.7.2. Planner Cost Constants

The cost variables described in this section are measured on an arbitrary scale. Only their relative values matter, hence scaling them all up or down by the same factor will result in no change in the planner's choices. By default, these cost variables are based on the cost of sequential page fetches; that is, seq_page_cost is conventionally set to 1.0 and the other cost variables are set with reference to that. But you can use a different scale if you prefer, such as actual execution times in milliseconds on a particular machine.

Note

Unfortunately, there is no well-defined method for determining ideal values for the cost variables. They are best treated as averages over the entire mix of queries that a particular installation will receive. This means that changing them on the basis of just a few experiments is very risky.

seq_page_cost (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of a disk page fetch that is part of a series of sequential fetches. The default is 1.0. This value can be overridden for tables and indexes in a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name (see ALTER TABLESPACE).

random_page_cost (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of a non-sequentially-fetched disk page. The default is 4.0. This value can be overridden for tables and indexes in a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name (see ALTER TABLESPACE).

Reducing this value relative to seq_page_cost will cause the system to prefer index scans; raising it will make index scans look relatively more expensive. You can raise or lower both values together to change the importance of disk I/O costs relative to CPU costs, which are described by the following parameters.

Random access to mechanical disk storage is normally much more expensive than four times sequential access. However, a lower default is used (4.0) because the majority of random accesses to disk, such as indexed reads, are assumed to be in cache. The default value can be thought of as modeling random access as 40 times slower than sequential, while expecting 90% of random reads to be cached.

If you believe a 90% cache rate is an incorrect assumption for your workload, you can increase random_page_cost to better reflect the true cost of random storage reads. Correspondingly, if your data is likely to be completely in cache, such as when the database is smaller than the total server memory, decreasing random_page_cost can be appropriate. Storage that has a low random read cost relative to sequential, e.g., solid-state drives, might also be better modeled with a lower value for random_page_cost, e.g., 1.1.

Tip

Although the system will let you set random_page_cost to less than seq_page_cost, it is not physically sensible to do so. However, setting them equal makes sense if the database is entirely cached in RAM, since in that case there is no penalty for touching pages out of sequence. Also, in a heavily-cached database you should lower both values relative to the CPU parameters, since the cost of fetching a page already in RAM is much smaller than it would normally be.

cpu_tuple_cost (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of processing each row during a query. The default is 0.01.
Server Configuration

cpu_index_tuple_cost (floating point)
Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of processing each index entry during an index scan. The
default is 0.005.

cpu_operator_cost (floating point)
Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of processing each operator or function executed during a
query. The default is 0.0025.

parallel_setup_cost (floating point)
Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of launching parallel worker processes. The default is 1000.

parallel_tuple_cost (floating point)
Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of transferring one tuple from a parallel worker process to
another process. The default is 0.1.

min_parallel_table_scan_size (integer)
Sets the minimum amount of table data that must be scanned in order for a parallel scan to be
considered. For a parallel sequential scan, the amount of table data scanned is always equal to the
size of the table, but when indexes are used the amount of table data scanned will normally be less.
If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is BLCKSZ bytes, typically 8kB. The
default is 8 megabytes (8MB).

min_parallel_index_scan_size (integer)
Sets the minimum amount of index data that must be scanned in order for a parallel scan to be
considered. Note that a parallel index scan typically won't touch the entire index; it is the number
of pages which the planner believes will actually be touched by the scan which is relevant. This
parameter is also used to decide whether a particular index can participate in a parallel vacuum. See
VACUUM. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is BLCKSZ bytes, typically
8kB. The default is 512 kilobytes (512kB).

effective_cache_size (integer)
Sets the planner's assumption about the effective size of the disk cache that is available to a single
query. This is factored into estimates of the cost of using an index; a higher value makes it more likely
index scans will be used, a lower value makes it more likely sequential scans will be used. When
setting this parameter you should consider both Postgres Pro's shared buffers and the portion of the
kernel's disk cache that will be used for Postgres Pro data files, though some data might exist in
both places. Also, take into account the expected number of concurrent queries on different tables,
since they will have to share the available space. This parameter has no effect on the size of shared
memory allocated by Postgres Pro, nor does it reserve kernel disk cache; it is used only for estimation
purposes. The system also does not assume data remains in the disk cache between queries. If this
value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is BLCKSZ bytes, typically 8kB. The default
is 4 gigabytes (4GB). (If BLCKSZ is not 8kB, the default value scales proportionally to it.)

jit_above_cost (floating point)
Sets the query cost above which JIT compilation is activated, if enabled (see Chapter 30). Performing
JIT costs planning time but can accelerate query execution. Setting this to -1 disables JIT compilation.
The default is 100000.

jit_inline_above_cost (floating point)
Sets the query cost above which JIT compilation attempts to inline functions and operators. Inlining
adds planning time, but can improve execution speed. It is not meaningful to set this to less than
jit_above_cost. Setting this to -1 disables inlining. The default is 500000.

jit_optimize_above_cost (floating point)
Sets the query cost above which JIT compilation applies expensive optimizations. Such optimization
adds planning time, but can improve execution speed. It is not meaningful to set this to less than
jit_above_cost, and it is unlikely to be beneficial to set it to more than jit_inline_above_cost. Setting this to -1 disables expensive optimizations. The default is 500000.

18.7.3. Genetic Query Optimizer

The genetic query optimizer (GEQO) is an algorithm that does query planning using heuristic searching. This reduces planning time for complex queries (those joining many relations), at the cost of producing plans that are sometimes inferior to those found by the normal exhaustive-search algorithm. For more information see Chapter 56.

geqo (boolean)

Enables or disables genetic query optimization. This is on by default. It is usually best not to turn it off in production; the geqo_threshold variable provides more granular control of GEQO.

geqo_threshold (integer)

Use genetic query optimization to plan queries with at least this many FROM items involved. (Note that a FULL OUTER JOIN construct counts as only one FROM item.) The default is 12. For simpler queries it is usually best to use the regular, exhaustive-search planner, but for queries with many tables the exhaustive search takes too long, often longer than the penalty of executing a suboptimal plan. Thus, a threshold on the size of the query is a convenient way to manage use of GEQO.

geqo_effort (integer)

Controls the trade-off between planning time and query plan quality in GEQO. This variable must be an integer in the range from 1 to 10. The default value is five. Larger values increase the time spent doing query planning, but also increase the likelihood that an efficient query plan will be chosen.

geqo_effort doesn't actually do anything directly; it is only used to compute the default values for the other variables that influence GEQO behavior (described below). If you prefer, you can set the other parameters by hand instead.

geqo_pool_size (integer)

Controls the pool size used by GEQO, that is the number of individuals in the genetic population. It must be at least two, and useful values are typically 100 to 1000. If it is set to zero (the default setting) then a suitable value is chosen based on geqo_effort and the number of tables in the query.

geqo_generations (integer)

Controls the number of generations used by GEQO, that is the number of iterations of the algorithm. It must be at least one, and useful values are in the same range as the pool size. If it is set to zero (the default setting) then a suitable value is chosen based on geqo_pool_size.

geqo_selection_bias (floating point)

Controls the selection bias used by GEQO. The selection bias is the selective pressure within the population. Values can be from 1.50 to 2.00; the latter is the default.

geqo_seed (floating point)

Controls the initial value of the random number generator used by GEQO to select random paths through the join order search space. The value can range from zero (the default) to one. Varying the value changes the set of join paths explored, and may result in a better or worsen best path being found.

18.7.4. Other Planner Options

default_statistics_target (integer)

Sets the default statistics target for table columns without a column-specific target set via ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS. Larger values increase the time needed to do ANALYZE, but might improve the quality of the planner's estimates. The default is 100. For more information on the use of statistics by the Postgres Pro query planner, refer to Section 14.2.
Server Configuration

constraint_exclusion (enum)

Controls the query planner's use of table constraints to optimize queries. The allowed values of constraint_exclusion are on (examine constraints for all tables), off (never examine constraints), and partition (examine constraints only for inheritance child tables and UNION ALL subqueries). partition is the default setting. It is often used with traditional inheritance trees to improve performance.

When this parameter allows it for a particular table, the planner compares query conditions with the table's CHECK constraints, and omits scanning tables for which the conditions contradict the constraints. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE parent(key integer, ...);
CREATE TABLE child1000(check (key between 1000 and 1999)) INHERITS(parent);
CREATE TABLE child2000(check (key between 2000 and 2999)) INHERITS(parent);
...
SELECT * FROM parent WHERE key = 2400;
```

With constraint exclusion enabled, this SELECT will not scan child1000 at all, improving performance.

Currently, constraint exclusion is enabled by default only for cases that are often used to implement table partitioning via inheritance trees. Turning it on for all tables imposes extra planning overhead that is quite noticeable on simple queries, and most often will yield no benefit for simple queries. If you have no tables that are partitioned using traditional inheritance, you might prefer to turn it off entirely. (Note that the equivalent feature for partitioned tables is controlled by a separate parameter, enable_partition_pruning.)

Refer to Section 5.11.5 for more information on using constraint exclusion to implement partitioning.

cursor_tuple_fraction (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the fraction of a cursor's rows that will be retrieved. The default is 0.1. Smaller values of this setting bias the planner towards using “fast start” plans for cursors, which will retrieve the first few rows quickly while perhaps taking a long time to fetch all rows. Larger values put more emphasis on the total estimated time. At the maximum setting of 1.0, cursors are planned exactly like regular queries, considering only the total estimated time and not how soon the first rows might be delivered.

from_collapse_limit (integer)

The planner will merge sub-queries into upper queries if the resulting FROM list would have no more than this many items. Smaller values reduce planning time but might yield inferior query plans. The default is eight. For more information see Section 14.3.

Setting this value to geqo_threshold or more may trigger use of the GEQO planner, resulting in non-optimal plans. See Section 18.7.3.

jit (boolean)

Determines whether JIT compilation may be used by Postgres Pro, if available (see Chapter 30). The default is on.

join_collapse_limit (integer)

The planner will rewrite explicit JOIN constructs (except FULL JOINs) into lists of FROM items whenever a list of no more than this many items would result. Smaller values reduce planning time but might yield inferior query plans.

By default, this variable is set the same as from_collapse_limit, which is appropriate for most uses. Setting it to 1 prevents any reordering of explicit joins. Thus, the explicit join order specified in the query will be the actual order in which the relations are joined. Because the query planner does not always choose the optimal join order, advanced users can elect to temporarily set this variable to 1, and then specify the join order they desire explicitly. For more information see Section 14.3.
Server Configuration

Setting this value to `geqo_threshold` or more may trigger use of the GEQO planner, resulting in non-optimal plans. See Section 18.7.3.

`plan_cache_mode` (enum)

Prepared statements (either explicitly prepared or implicitly generated, for example by PL/pgSQL) can be executed using custom or generic plans. Custom plans are made afresh for each execution using its specific set of parameter values, while generic plans do not rely on the parameter values and can be re-used across executions. Thus, use of a generic plan saves planning time, but if the ideal plan depends strongly on the parameter values then a generic plan may be inefficient. The choice between these options is normally made automatically, but it can be overridden with `plan_cache_mode`. The allowed values are `auto` (the default), `force_custom_plan` and `force_generic_plan`. This setting is considered when a cached plan is to be executed, not when it is prepared. For more information see PREPARE.

18.8. Error Reporting and Logging

18.8.1. Where to Log

`log_destination` (string)

Postgres Pro supports several methods for logging server messages, including stderr, csvlog and syslog. On Windows, eventlog is also supported. Set this parameter to a list of desired log destinations separated by commas. The default is to log to stderr only. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

If csvlog is included in `log_destination`, log entries are output in “comma separated value” (CSV) format, which is convenient for loading logs into programs. See Section 18.8.4 for details. `logging_collector` must be enabled to generate CSV-format log output.

When either stderr or csvlog are included, the file `current_logfiles` is created to record the location of the log file(s) currently in use by the logging collector and the associated logging destination. This provides a convenient way to find the logs currently in use by the instance. Here is an example of this file's content:

```
stderr log/postgresql.log
csvlog log/postgresql.csv
```

`current_logfiles` is recreated when a new log file is created as an effect of rotation, and when `log_destination` is reloaded. It is removed when neither stderr nor csvlog are included in `log_destination`, and when the logging collector is disabled.

Note

On most Unix systems, you will need to alter the configuration of your system's syslog daemon in order to make use of the syslog option for `log_destination`. Postgres Pro can log to syslog facilities `LOCAL0` through `LOCAL7` (see `syslog_facility`), but the default syslog configuration on most platforms will discard all such messages. You will need to add something like:

```
local0.*    /var/log/postgresql
```

to the syslog daemon's configuration file to make it work.

On Windows, when you use the `eventlog` option for `log_destination`, you should register an event source and its library with the operating system so that the Windows Event Viewer can display event log messages cleanly. See Section 17.12 for details.

`logging_collector` (boolean)

This parameter enables the `logging collector`, which is a background process that captures log messages sent to stderr and redirects them into log files. This approach is often more useful than
logging to syslog, since some types of messages might not appear in syslog output. (One common example is dynamic-linker failure messages; another is error messages produced by scripts such as archive_command.) This parameter can only be set at server start.

**Note**

It is possible to log to stderr without using the logging collector; the log messages will just go to wherever the server's stderr is directed. However, that method is only suitable for low log volumes, since it provides no convenient way to rotate log files. Also, on some platforms not using the logging collector can result in lost or garbled log output, because multiple processes writing concurrently to the same log file can overwrite each other's output.

**Note**

The logging collector is designed to never lose messages. This means that in case of extremely high load, server processes could be blocked while trying to send additional log messages when the collector has fallen behind. In contrast, syslog prefers to drop messages if it cannot write them, which means it may fail to log some messages in such cases but it will not block the rest of the system.

log_directory (string)

When logging_collector is enabled, this parameter determines the directory in which log files will be created. It can be specified as an absolute path, or relative to the cluster data directory. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line. The default is log.

log_filename (string)

When logging_collector is enabled, this parameter sets the file names of the created log files. The value is treated as a strftime pattern, so %-escapes can be used to specify time-varying file names. (Note that if there are any time-zone-dependent %-escapes, the computation is done in the zone specified by log_timezone.) The supported %-escapes are similar to those listed in the Open Group's strftime specification. Note that the system's strftime is not used directly, so platform-specific (nonstandard) extensions do not work. The default is postgresql-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log.

If you specify a file name without escapes, you should plan to use a log rotation utility to avoid eventually filling the entire disk. In releases prior to 8.4, if no % escapes were present, PostgreSQL would append the epoch of the new log file's creation time, but this is no longer the case.

If CSV-format output is enabled in log_destination, .csv will be appended to the timestamped log file name to create the file name for CSV-format output. (If log_filename ends in .log, the suffix is replaced instead.)

This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

log_file_mode (integer)

On Unix systems this parameter sets the permissions for log files when logging_collector is enabled. (On Microsoft Windows this parameter is ignored.) The parameter value is expected to be a numeric mode specified in the format accepted by the chmod and umask system calls. (To use the customary octal format the number must start with a 0 (zero).)

The default permissions are 0600, meaning only the server owner can read or write the log files. The other commonly useful setting is 0640, allowing members of the owner's group to read the files. Note however that to make use of such a setting, you'll need to alter log_directory to store the files.
somewhere outside the cluster data directory. In any case, it’s unwise to make the log files world-readable, since they might contain sensitive data.

This parameter can only be set in the *postgresql.conf* file or on the server command line.

**log_rotation_age** (integer)

When *logging_collector* is enabled, this parameter determines the maximum amount of time to use an individual log file, after which a new log file will be created. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as minutes. The default is 24 hours. Set to zero to disable time-based creation of new log files. This parameter can only be set in the *postgresql.conf* file or on the server command line.

**log_rotation_size** (integer)

When *logging_collector* is enabled, this parameter determines the maximum size of an individual log file. After this amount of data has been emitted into a log file, a new log file will be created. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default is 10 megabytes. Set to zero to disable size-based creation of new log files. This parameter can only be set in the *postgresql.conf* file or on the server command line.

**log_truncate_on_rotation** (boolean)

When *logging_collector* is enabled, this parameter will cause Postgres Pro to truncate (overwrite), rather than append to, any existing log file of the same name. However, truncation will occur only when a new file is being opened due to time-based rotation, not during server startup or size-based rotation. When off, pre-existing files will be appended to in all cases. For example, using this setting in combination with a *log_filename* like *postgresql-%H.log* would result in generating twenty-four hourly log files and then cyclically overwriting them. This parameter can only be set in the *postgresql.conf* file or on the server command line.

Example: To keep 7 days of logs, one log file per day named *server_log.Mon*, *server_log.Tue*, etc, and automatically overwrite last week’s log with this week’s log, set *log_filename* to *server_log.%a*, *log_truncate_on_rotation* to on, and *log_rotation_age* to 1440.

Example: To keep 24 hours of logs, one log file per hour, but also rotate sooner if the log file size exceeds 1GB, set *log_filename* to *server_log.%H%M*, *log_truncate_on_rotation* to on, *log_rotation_age* to 60, and *log_rotation_size* to 1000000. Including %M in *log_filename* allows any size-driven rotations that might occur to select a file name different from the hour’s initial file name.

**syslog_facility** (enum)

When logging to syslog is enabled, this parameter determines the syslog “facility” to be used. You can choose from LOCAL0, LOCAL1, LOCAL2, LOCAL3, LOCAL4, LOCAL5, LOCAL6, LOCAL7; the default is LOCAL0. See also the documentation of your system’s syslog daemon. This parameter can only be set in the *postgresql.conf* file or on the server command line.

**syslog_ident** (string)

When logging to syslog is enabled, this parameter determines the program name used to identify Postgres Pro messages in syslog logs. The default is *postgres*. This parameter can only be set in the *postgresql.conf* file or on the server command line.

**syslog_sequence_numbers** (boolean)

When logging to syslog and this is on (the default), then each message will be prefixed by an increasing sequence number (such as [2]). This circumvents the “--- last message repeated N times ---” suppression that many syslog implementations perform by default. In more modern syslog implementations, repeated message suppression can be configured (for example, $RepeatedMsgReduction in rsyslog), so this might not be necessary. Also, you could turn this off if you actually want to suppress repeated messages.
This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

**syslog_split_messages (boolean)**

When logging to syslog is enabled, this parameter determines how messages are delivered to syslog. When on (the default), messages are split by lines, and long lines are split so that they will fit into 1024 bytes, which is a typical size limit for traditional syslog implementations. When off, Postgres Pro server log messages are delivered to the syslog service as is, and it is up to the syslog service to cope with the potentially bulky messages.

If syslog is ultimately logging to a text file, then the effect will be the same either way, and it is best to leave the setting on, since most syslog implementations either cannot handle large messages or would need to be specially configured to handle them. But if syslog is ultimately writing into some other medium, it might be necessary or more useful to keep messages logically together.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

**event_source (string)**

When logging to event log is enabled, this parameter determines the program name used to identify Postgres Pro messages in the log. The default is `Postgres Pro`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

### 18.8.2. When to Log

**log_min_messages (enum)**

Controls which message levels are written to the server log. Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `LOG`, `FATAL`, and `PANIC`. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent to the log. The default is `WARNING`. Note that `LOG` has a different rank here than in `client_min_messages`. Only superusers can change this setting.

**log_min_error_statement (enum)**

Controls which SQL statements that cause an error condition are recorded in the server log. The current SQL statement is included in the log entry for any message of the specified severity or higher. Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `LOG`, `FATAL`, and `PANIC`. The default is `ERROR`, which means statements causing errors, log messages, fatal errors, or panics will be logged. To effectively turn off logging of failing statements, set this parameter to `PANIC`. Only superusers can change this setting.

**log_min_duration_statement (integer)**

Causes the duration of each completed statement to be logged if the statement ran for at least the specified amount of time. For example, if you set it to `250ms` then all SQL statements that run 250ms or longer will be logged. Enabling this parameter can be helpful in tracking down unoptimized queries in your applications. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. Setting this to zero prints all statement durations. `-1` (the default) disables logging statement durations. Only superusers can change this setting.

This overrides `log_min_duration_sample`, meaning that queries with duration exceeding this setting are not subject to sampling and are always logged.

For clients using extended query protocol, durations of the Parse, Bind, and Execute steps are logged independently.

**Note**

When using this option together with `log_statement`, the text of statements that are logged because of `log_statement` will not be repeated in the duration log message. If you are not using syslog, it is recommended that you log the PID or session ID using `log_line_prefix` so...
that you can link the statement message to the later duration message using the process ID or session ID.

log_min_duration_sample (integer)

Allows sampling the duration of completed statements that ran for at least the specified amount of time. This produces the same kind of log entries as log_min_duration_statement, but only for a subset of the executed statements, with sample rate controlled by log_statement_sample_rate. For example, if you set it to 100ms then all SQL statements that run 100ms or longer will be considered for sampling. Enabling this parameter can be helpful when the traffic is too high to log all queries. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. Setting this to zero samples all statement durations. -1 (the default) disables sampling statement durations. Only superusers can change this setting.

This setting has lower priority than log_min_duration_statement, meaning that statements with durations exceeding log_min_duration_statement are not subject to sampling and are always logged.

Other notes for log_min_duration_statement apply also to this setting.

log_statement_sample_rate (floating point)

Determines the fraction of statements with duration exceeding log_min_duration_sample that will be logged. Sampling is stochastic, for example 0.5 means there is statistically one chance in two that any given statement will be logged. The default is 1.0, meaning to log all sampled statements. Setting this to zero disables sampled statement-duration logging, the same as setting log_min_duration_sample to -1. Only superusers can change this setting.

log_transaction_sample_rate (floating point)

Sets the fraction of transactions whose statements are all logged, in addition to statements logged for other reasons. It applies to each new transaction regardless of its statements' durations. Sampling is stochastic, for example 0.1 means there is statistically one chance in ten that any given transaction will be logged. log_transaction_sample_rate can be helpful to construct a sample of transactions. The default is 0, meaning not to log statements from any additional transactions. Setting this to 1 logs all statements of all transactions. Only superusers can change this setting.

Note

Like all statement-logging options, this option can add significant overhead.

Table 18.2 explains the message severity levels used by Postgres Pro. If logging output is sent to syslog or Windows' eventlog, the severity levels are translated as shown in the table.

Table 18.2. Message Severity Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Usage</th>
<th>syslog</th>
<th>eventlog</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEBUG1 .. DEBUG5</td>
<td>Provides successively-more-detailed information for use by developers.</td>
<td>DEBUG</td>
<td>INFORMATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Provides information implicitly requested by the user, e.g., output from VACUUM VERBOSE.</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>INFORMATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTICE</td>
<td>Provides information that might be helpful to users, e.g., notice of truncation of long identifiers.</td>
<td>NOTICE</td>
<td>INFORMATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WARNING</td>
<td>Provides warnings of likely problems, e.g., COMMIT outside a transaction block.</td>
<td>NOTICE</td>
<td>WARNING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>Usage</td>
<td>syslog</td>
<td>eventlog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERROR</td>
<td>Reports an error that caused the current command to abort.</td>
<td>WARNING</td>
<td>ERROR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOG</td>
<td>Reports information of interest to administrators, e.g., checkpoint activity.</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>INFORMATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FATAL</td>
<td>Reports an error that caused the current session to abort.</td>
<td>ERR</td>
<td>ERROR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PANIC</td>
<td>Reports an error that caused all database sessions to abort.</td>
<td>CRIT</td>
<td>ERROR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 18.8.3. What to Log

**application_name** *(string)*

The `application_name` can be any string of less than `NAMEDATALEN` characters (64 characters in a standard build). It is typically set by an application upon connection to the server. The name will be displayed in the `pg_stat_activity` view and included in CSV log entries. It can also be included in regular log entries via the `log_line_prefix` parameter. Only printable ASCII characters may be used in the `application_name` value. Other characters will be replaced with question marks (`?`).

**debug_print_parse** *(boolean)*
**debug_print_rewritten** *(boolean)*
**debug_print_plan** *(boolean)*

These parameters enable various debugging output to be emitted. When set, they print the resulting parse tree, the query rewriter output, or the execution plan for each executed query. These messages are emitted at `LOG` message level, so by default they will appear in the server log but will not be sent to the client. You can change that by adjusting `client_min_messages` and/or `log_min_messages`. These parameters are off by default.

**debug_pretty_print** *(boolean)*

When set, `debug_pretty_print` indents the messages produced by `debug_print_parse`, `debug_print_rewritten`, or `debug_print_plan`. This results in more readable but much longer output than the “compact” format used when it is off. It is on by default.

**log_autovacuum_min_duration** *(integer)*

Causes each action executed by autovacuum to be logged if it ran for at least the specified amount of time. Setting this to zero logs all autovacuum actions. `-1` (the default) disables logging autovacuum actions. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. For example, if you set this to `250ms` then all automatic vacuums and analyzes that run `250ms` or longer will be logged. In addition, when this parameter is set to any value other than `-1`, a message will be logged if an autovacuum action is skipped due to a conflicting lock or a concurrently dropped relation. Enabling this parameter can be helpful in tracking autovacuum activity. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

**log_checkpoints** *(boolean)*

Causes checkpoints and restartpoints to be logged in the server log. Some statistics are included in the log messages, including the number of buffers written and the time spent writing them. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is off.

**log_connections** *(boolean)*

Causes each attempted connection to the server to be logged, as well as successful completion of both client authentication (if necessary) and authorization. Only superusers can change this parameter at session start, and it cannot be changed at all within a session. The default is off.
Some client programs, like psql, attempt to connect twice while determining if a password is required, so duplicate “connection received” messages do not necessarily indicate a problem.

**log_disconnections** (boolean)

Causes session terminations to be logged. The log output provides information similar to `log_connections`, plus the duration of the session. Only superusers can change this parameter at session start, and it cannot be changed at all within a session. The default is **off**.

**log_duration** (boolean)

Causes the duration of every completed statement to be logged. The default is **off**. Only superusers can change this setting.

For clients using extended query protocol, durations of the Parse, Bind, and Execute steps are logged independently.

**log_error_verbosity** (enum)

Controls the amount of detail written in the server log for each message that is logged. Valid values are **TERSE**, **DEFAULT**, and **VERBOSE**, each adding more fields to displayed messages. **TERSE** excludes the logging of **DETAIL**, **HINT**, **QUERY**, and **CONTEXT** error information. **VERBOSE** output includes the **SQLSTATE** error code (see also **Appendix A**) and the source code file name, function name, and line number that generated the error. Only superusers can change this setting.

**log_hostname** (boolean)

By default, connection log messages only show the IP address of the connecting host. Turning this parameter on causes logging of the host name as well. Note that depending on your host name resolution setup this might impose a non-negligible performance penalty. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

**log_line_prefix** (string)

This is a printf-style string that is output at the beginning of each log line. % characters begin “escape sequences” that are replaced with status information as outlined below. Unrecognized escapes are ignored. Other characters are copied straight to the log line. Some escapes are only recognized by session processes, and will be treated as empty by background processes such as the main server process. Status information may be aligned either left or right by specifying a numeric literal after the % and before the option. A negative value will cause the status information to be padded on the right with spaces to give it a minimum width, whereas a positive value will pad on the left. Padding can be useful to aid human readability in log files.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is ‘%m [%p] ‘ which logs a time stamp and the process ID.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Escape</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Session only</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%a</td>
<td>Application name</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escape</td>
<td>Effect</td>
<td>Session only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%u</td>
<td>User name</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%d</td>
<td>Database name</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%r</td>
<td>Remote host name or IP address, and remote port</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%h</td>
<td>Remote host name or IP address</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%b</td>
<td>Backend type</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%p</td>
<td>Process ID</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%P</td>
<td>Process ID of the parallel group leader, if this process is a parallel query worker</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%t</td>
<td>Time stamp without milliseconds</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%m</td>
<td>Time stamp with milliseconds</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%n</td>
<td>Time stamp with milliseconds (as a Unix epoch)</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%i</td>
<td>Command tag: type of session's current command</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%e</td>
<td>SQLSTATE error code</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%c</td>
<td>Session ID: see below</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%l</td>
<td>Number of the log line for each session or process, starting at 1</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%s</td>
<td>Process start time stamp</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%v</td>
<td>Virtual transaction ID (backendID/localXID)</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%x</td>
<td>Transaction ID (0 if none is assigned)</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%q</td>
<td>Produces no output, but tells non-session processes to stop at this point in the string; ignored by session processes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Q</td>
<td>Query identifier of the current query. Query identifiers are not computed by default, so this field will be zero unless compute_query_id parameter is enabled or a third-party module that computes query identifiers is configured.</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%%</td>
<td>Literal %</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The backend type corresponds to the column `backend_type` in the view `pg_stat_activity`, but additional types can appear in the log that don't show in that view.

The `%c` escape prints a quasi-unique session identifier, consisting of two 4-byte hexadecimal numbers (without leading zeros) separated by a dot. The numbers are the process start time and the process ID, so `%c` can also be used as a space saving way of printing those items. For example, to generate the session identifier from `pg_stat_activity`, use this query:

```sql
SELECT to_hex(trunc(EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM backend_start))::integer) || '.' ||
```
to_hex(pid)
FROM pg_stat_activity;

**Tip**
If you set a nonempty value for `log_line_prefix`, you should usually make its last character be a space, to provide visual separation from the rest of the log line. A punctuation character can be used too.

**Tip**
Syslog produces its own time stamp and process ID information, so you probably do not want to include those escapes if you are logging to syslog.

**Tip**
The `%q` escape is useful when including information that is only available in session (backend) context like user or database name. For example:

```
log_line_prefix = '%m [%p] %q%u@d/%a '
```

**Note**
The `%Q` escape always reports a zero identifier for lines output by `log_statement` because `log_statement` generates output before an identifier can be calculated, including invalid statements for which an identifier cannot be calculated.

`log_lock_waits (boolean)`
Controls whether a log message is produced when a session waits longer than `deadlock_timeout` to acquire a lock. This is useful in determining if lock waits are causing poor performance. The default is `off`. Only superusers can change this setting.

`log_recovery_conflict_waits (boolean)`
Controls whether a log message is produced when the startup process waits longer than `deadlock_timeout` for recovery conflicts. This is useful in determining if recovery conflicts prevent the recovery from applying WAL.

The default is `off`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`log_parameter_max_length (integer)`
If greater than zero, each bind parameter value logged with a non-error statement-logging message is trimmed to this many bytes. Zero disables logging of bind parameters for non-error statement logs. `-1` (the default) allows bind parameters to be logged in full. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as bytes. Only superusers can change this setting.

This setting only affects log messages printed as a result of `log_statement`, `log_duration`, and related settings. Non-zero values of this setting add some overhead, particularly if parameters are sent in binary form, since then conversion to text is required.
Server Configuration

log_parameter_max_length_on_error (integer)

If greater than zero, each bind parameter value reported in error messages is trimmed to this many bytes. Zero (the default) disables including bind parameters in error messages. -1 allows bind parameters to be printed in full. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as bytes.

Non-zero values of this setting add overhead, as PostgreSQL will need to store textual representations of parameter values in memory at the start of each statement, whether or not an error eventually occurs. The overhead is greater when bind parameters are sent in binary form than when they are sent as text, since the former case requires data conversion while the latter only requires copying the string.

log_statement (enum)

Controls which SQL statements are logged. Valid values are none (off), ddl, mod, and all (all statements). ddl logs all data definition statements, such as CREATE, ALTER, and DROP statements. mod logs all ddl statements, plus data-modifying statements such as INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, and COPY FROM, PREPARE, EXECUTE, and EXPLAIN ANALYZE statements are also logged if their contained command is of an appropriate type. For clients using extended query protocol, logging occurs when an Execute message is received, and values of the Bind parameters are included (with any embedded single-quote marks doubled).

The default is none. Only superusers can change this setting.

Note

Statements that contain simple syntax errors are not logged even by the log_statement = all setting, because the log message is emitted only after basic parsing has been done to determine the statement type. In the case of extended query protocol, this setting likewise does not log statements that fail before the Execute phase (i.e., during parse analysis or planning). Set log_min_error_statement to ERROR (or lower) to log such statements.

log_replication_commands (boolean)

Causes each replication command to be logged in the server log. See Section 51.4 for more information about replication command. The default value is off. Only superusers can change this setting.

log_temp_files (integer)

Controls logging of temporary file names and sizes. Temporary files can be created for sorts, hashes, and temporary query results. If enabled by this setting, a log entry is emitted for each temporary file when it is deleted. A value of zero logs all temporary file information, while positive values log only files whose size is greater than or equal to the specified amount of data. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default setting is -1, which disables such logging. Only superusers can change this setting.

log_timezone (string)

Sets the time zone used for timestamps written in the server log. Unlike TimeZone, this value is cluster-wide, so that all sessions will report timestamps consistently. The built-in default is GMT, but that is typically overridden in postgresql.conf; initdb will install a setting there corresponding to its system environment. See Section 8.5.3 for more information. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

18.8.4. Using CSV-Format Log Output

Including csvlog in the log_destination list provides a convenient way to import log files into a database table. This option emits log lines in comma-separated-values (CSV) format, with these columns:
time stamp with milliseconds, user name, database name, process ID, client host:port number, session ID, per-session line number, command tag, session start time, virtual transaction ID, regular transaction ID, error severity, SQLSTATE code, error message, error message detail, hint, internal query that led to the error (if any), character count of the error position therein, error context, user query that led to the error (if any and enabled by log_min_error_statement), character count of the error position therein, location of the error in the Postgres Pro source code (if log_error_verbosity is set to verbose), application name, backend type, process ID of parallel group leader, and query id. Here is a sample table definition for storing CSV-format log output:

```
CREATE TABLE postgres_log
(
    log_time timestamp(3) with time zone,
    user_name text,
    database_name text,
    process_id integer,
    connection_from text,
    session_id text,
    session_line_num bigint,
    command_tag text,
    session_start_time timestamp with time zone,
    virtual_transaction_id text,
    transaction_id bigint,
    error_severity text,
    sql_state_code text,
    message text,
    detail text,
    hint text,
    internal_query text,
    internal_query_pos integer,
    context text,
    query text,
    query_pos integer,
    location text,
    application_name text,
    backend_type text,
    leader_pid integer,
    query_id bigint,
    PRIMARY KEY (session_id, session_line_num)
);
```

to import a log file into this table, use the COPY FROM command:

```
COPY postgres_log FROM '/full/path/to/logfile.csv' WITH csv;
```

It is also possible to access the file as a foreign table, using the supplied file_fdw module.

There are a few things you need to do to simplify importing CSV log files:

1. Set log_filename and log_rotation_age to provide a consistent, predictable naming scheme for your log files. This lets you predict what the file name will be and know when an individual log file is complete and therefore ready to be imported.

2. Set log_rotation_size to 0 to disable size-based log rotation, as it makes the log file name difficult to predict.

3. Set log_truncate_on_rotation to on so that old log data isn't mixed with the new in the same file.

4. The table definition above includes a primary key specification. This is useful to protect against accidentally importing the same information twice. The COPY command commits all of the data it imports at one time, so any error will cause the entire import to fail. If you import a partial log file and later import the file again when it is complete, the primary key violation will cause the import
Server Configuration

to fail. Wait until the log is complete and closed before importing. This procedure will also protect against accidentally importing a partial line that hasn't been completely written, which would also cause COPY to fail.

18.8.5. Process Title

These settings control how process titles of server processes are modified. Process titles are typically viewed using programs like ps or, on Windows, Process Explorer. See Section 26.1 for details.

cluster_name (string)
Sets a name that identifies this database cluster (instance) for various purposes. The cluster name appears in the process title for all server processes in this cluster. Moreover, it is the default application name for a standby connection (see synchronous_standby_names.)

The name can be any string of less than NAMEDATALEN characters (64 characters in a standard build). Only printable ASCII characters may be used in the cluster_name value. Other characters will be replaced with question marks (?). No name is shown if this parameter is set to the empty string ‘’ (which is the default). This parameter can only be set at server start.

update_process_title (boolean)
Enables updating of the process title every time a new SQL command is received by the server. This setting defaults to on on most platforms, but it defaults to off on Windows due to that platform's larger overhead for updating the process title. Only superusers can change this setting.

18.9. Run-time Statistics

18.9.1. Query and Index Statistics Collector

These parameters control server-wide statistics collection features. When statistics collection is enabled, the data that is produced can be accessed via the pg_stat and pg_statio family of system views. Refer to Chapter 26 for more information.

track_activities (boolean)
Enables the collection of information on the currently executing command of each session, along with its identifier and the time when that command began execution. This parameter is on by default. Note that even when enabled, this information is not visible to all users, only to superusers and the user owning the session being reported on, so it should not represent a security risk. Only superusers can change this setting.

track_activity_query_size (integer)
Specifies the amount of memory reserved to store the text of the currently executing command for each active session, for the pg_stat_activity.query field. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as bytes. The default value is 1024 bytes. This parameter can only be set at server start.

track_counts (boolean)
Enables collection of statistics on database activity. This parameter is on by default, because the autovacuum daemon needs the collected information. Only superusers can change this setting.

track_io_timing (boolean)
Enables timing of database I/O calls. This parameter is off by default, as it will repeatedly query the operating system for the current time, which may cause significant overhead on some platforms. You can use the pg_test_timing tool to measure the overhead of timing on your system. I/O timing information is displayed in pg_stat_database, in the output of EXPLAIN when the BUFFERS option is used, by autovacuum for auto-vacuums and auto-analyzes, when log_autovacuum_min_duration is set and by pg_stat_statements. Only superusers can change this setting.
track_wal_io_timing (boolean)

Enables timing of WAL I/O calls. This parameter is off by default, as it will repeatedly query the operating system for the current time, which may cause significant overhead on some platforms. You can use the pg_test_timing tool to measure the overhead of timing on your system. I/O timing information is displayed in pg_stat_wal. Only superusers can change this setting.

track_functions (enum)

Enables tracking of function call counts and time used. Specify pl to track only procedural-language functions, all to also track SQL and C language functions. The default is none, which disables function statistics tracking. Only superusers can change this setting.

Note

SQL-language functions that are simple enough to be “inlined” into the calling query will not be tracked, regardless of this setting.

stats_temp_directory (string)

Sets the directory to store temporary statistics data in. This can be a path relative to the data directory or an absolute path. The default is pg_stat_tmp. Pointing this at a RAM-based file system will decrease physical I/O requirements and can lead to improved performance. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

18.9.2. Statistics Monitoring

compute_query_id (enum)

Enables in-core computation of a query identifier. Query identifiers can be displayed in the pg_stat_activity view, using EXPLAIN, or emitted in the log if configured via the log_line_prefix parameter. The pg_stat_statements extension also requires a query identifier to be computed. Note that an external module can alternatively be used if the in-core query identifier computation method is not acceptable. In this case, in-core computation must be always disabled. Valid values are off (always disabled), on (always enabled) and auto, which lets modules such as pg_stat_statements automatically enable it. The default is auto.

Note

To ensure that only one query identifier is calculated and displayed, extensions that calculate query identifiers should throw an error if a query identifier has already been computed.

log_statement_stats (boolean)
log_parser_stats (boolean)
log_planner_stats (boolean)
log_executor_stats (boolean)

For each query, output performance statistics of the respective module to the server log. This is a crude profiling instrument, similar to the Unix getrusage() operating system facility. log_statement_stats reports total statement statistics, while the others report per-module statistics. log_statement_stats cannot be enabled together with any of the per-module options. All of these options are disabled by default. Only superusers can change these settings.

18.10. Automatic Vacuuming

These settings control the behavior of the autovacuum feature. Refer to Section 23.1.6 for more information. Note that many of these settings can be overridden on a per-table basis; see Storage Parameters.
Server Configuration

autovacuum (boolean)
Controls whether the server should run the autovacuum launcher daemon. This is on by default; however, track_counts must also be enabled for autovacuum to work. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; however, autovacuuming can be disabled for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

Note that even when this parameter is disabled, the system will launch autovacuum processes if necessary to prevent transaction ID wraparound. See Section 23.1.5 for more information.

autovacuum_max_workers (integer)
Specifies the maximum number of autovacuum processes (other than the autovacuum launcher) that may be running at any one time. The default is three. This parameter can only be set at server start.

autovacuum_naptime (integer)
Specifies the minimum delay between autovacuum runs on any given database. In each round the daemon examines the database and issues VACUUM and ANALYZE commands as needed for tables in that database. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The default is one minute (1min). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

autovacuum_vacuum_threshold (integer)
Specifies the minimum number of updated or deleted tuples needed to trigger a VACUUM in any one table. The default is 50 tuples. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold (integer)
Specifies the number of inserted tuples needed to trigger a VACUUM in any one table. The default is 1000 tuples. If -1 is specified, autovacuum will not trigger a VACUUM operation on any tables based on the number of inserts. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

autovacuum_analyze_threshold (integer)
Specifies the minimum number of inserted, updated or deleted tuples needed to trigger an ANALYZE in any one table. The default is 50 tuples. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor (floating point)
Specifies a fraction of the table size to add to `autovacuum_vacuum_threshold` when deciding whether to trigger a VACUUM. The default is 0.2 (20% of table size). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor (floating point)
Specifies a fraction of the table size to add to `autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold` when deciding whether to trigger a VACUUM. The default is 0.2 (20% of table size). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor (floating point)
Specifies a fraction of the table size to add to `autovacuum_analyze_threshold` when deciding whether to trigger an ANALYZE. The default is 0.1 (10% of table size). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.
Server Configuration

autovacuum_freeze_max_age (integer)

Specifies the maximum age (in transactions) that a table's `pg_class.relrofrozenxid` field can attain before a VACUUM operation is forced to prevent transaction ID wraparound within the table. Note that the system will launch autovacuum processes to prevent wraparound even when autovacuum is otherwise disabled.

Vacuum also allows removal of old files from the `pg_xact` subdirectory, which is why the default is a relatively low 200 million transactions. This parameter can only be set at server start, but the setting can be reduced for individual tables by changing table storage parameters. For more information see Section 23.1.5.

autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age (integer)

Specifies the maximum age (in multixacts) that a table's `pg_class.relminmxid` field can attain before a VACUUM operation is forced to prevent multixact ID wraparound within the table. Note that the system will launch autovacuum processes to prevent wraparound even when autovacuum is otherwise disabled.

Vacuuming multixacts also allows removal of old files from the `pg_multixact/members` and `pg_multixact/offsets` subdirectories, which is why the default is a relatively low 400 million multixacts. This parameter can only be set at server start, but the setting can be reduced for individual tables by changing table storage parameters. For more information see Section 23.1.5.1.

autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay (floating point)

Specifies the cost delay value that will be used in automatic VACUUM operations. If -1 is specified, the regular vacuum_cost_delay value will be used. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 2 milliseconds. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit (integer)

Specifies the cost limit value that will be used in automatic VACUUM operations. If -1 is specified (which is the default), the regular vacuum_cost_limit value will be used. Note that the value is distributed proportionally among the running autovacuum workers, if there is more than one, so that the sum of the limits for each worker does not exceed the value of this variable. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

18.11. Client Connection Defaults

18.11.1. Statement Behavior

client_min_messages (enum)

Controls which message levels are sent to the client. Valid values are DEBUG5, DEBUG4, DEBUG3, DEBUG2, DEBUG1, LOG, NOTICE, WARNING, and ERROR. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent. The default is NOTICE. Note that LOG has a different rank here than in log_min_messages.

INFO level messages are always sent to the client.

search_path (string)

This variable specifies the order in which schemas are searched when an object (table, data type, function, etc.) is referenced by a simple name with no schema specified. When there are objects of identical names in different schemas, the one found first in the search path is used. An object that is not in any of the schemas in the search path can only be referenced by specifying its containing schema with a qualified (dotted) name.
Server Configuration

The value for `search_path` must be a comma-separated list of schema names. Any name that is not an existing schema, or is a schema for which the user does not have `USAGE` permission, is silently ignored.

If one of the list items is the special name `$user`, then the schema having the name returned by `CURRENT_USER` is substituted, if there is such a schema and the user has `USAGE` permission for it. (If not, `$user` is ignored.)

The system catalog schema, `pg_catalog`, is always searched, whether it is mentioned in the path or not. If it is mentioned in the path then it will be searched in the specified order. If `pg_catalog` is not in the path then it will be searched before searching any of the path items.

Likewise, the current session’s temporary-table schema, `pg_temp_nnn`, is always searched if it exists. It can be explicitly listed in the path by using the alias `pg_temp`. If it is not listed in the path then it is searched first (even before `pg_catalog`). However, the temporary schema is only searched for relation (table, view, sequence, etc) and data type names. It is never searched for function or operator names.

When objects are created without specifying a particular target schema, they will be placed in the first valid schema named in `search_path`. An error is reported if the search path is empty.

The default value for this parameter is "$user", `public`. This setting supports shared use of a database (where no users have private schemas, and all share use of `public`), private per-user schemas, and combinations of these. Other effects can be obtained by altering the default search path setting, either globally or per-user.

For more information on schema handling, see Section 5.9. In particular, the default configuration is suitable only when the database has a single user or a few mutually-trusting users.

The current effective value of the search path can be examined via the SQL function `current_schemas` (see Section 9.26). This is not quite the same as examining the value of `search_path`, since `current_schemas` shows how the items appearing in `search_path` were resolved.

`row_security` (boolean)

This variable controls whether to raise an error in lieu of applying a row security policy. When set to `on`, policies apply normally. When set to `off`, queries fail which would otherwise apply at least one policy. The default is `on`. Change to `off` where limited row visibility could cause incorrect results; for example, `pg_dump` makes that change by default. This variable has no effect on roles which bypass every row security policy, to wit, superusers and roles with the `BYPASSRLS` attribute.

For more information on row security policies, see CREATE POLICY.

`default_table_access_method` (string)

This parameter specifies the default table access method to use when creating tables or materialized views if the `CREATE` command does not explicitly specify an access method, or when `SELECT ... INTO` is used, which does not allow to specify a table access method. The default is `heap`.

`default_tablespace` (string)

This variable specifies the default tablespace in which to create objects (tables and indexes) when a `CREATE` command does not explicitly specify a tablespace.

The value is either the name of a tablespace, or an empty string to specify using the default tablespace of the current database. If the value does not match the name of any existing tablespace, Postgres Pro will automatically use the default tablespace of the current database. If a nondefault tablespace is specified, the user must have `CREATE` privilege for it, or creation attempts will fail.

This variable is not used for temporary tables; for them, `temp_tablespaces` is consulted instead.
This variable is also not used when creating databases. By default, a new database inherits its tablespace setting from the template database it is copied from.

If this parameter is set to a value other than the empty string when a partitioned table is created, the partitioned table’s tablespace will be set to that value, which will be used as the default tablespace for partitions created in the future, even if default_tablespace has changed since then.

For more information on tablespaces, see Section 21.6.

default_toast_compression (enum)
This variable sets the default TOAST compression method for values of compressible columns. (This can be overridden for individual columns by setting the COMPRESS column option in CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE.) The supported compression methods are pglz and (if PostgreSQL was compiled with --with-lz4) lz4. The default is pglz.

temp_tablespaces (string)
This variable specifies tablespaces in which to create temporary objects (temp tables and indexes on temp tables) when a CREATE command does not explicitly specify a tablespace. Temporary files for purposes such as sorting large data sets are also created in these tablespaces.

The value is a list of names of tablespaces. When there is more than one name in the list, Postgres Pro chooses a random member of the list each time a temporary object is to be created; except that within a transaction, successively created temporary objects are placed in successive tablespaces from the list. If the selected element of the list is an empty string, Postgres Pro will automatically use the default tablespace of the current database instead.

When temp_tablespaces is set interactively, specifying a nonexistent tablespace is an error, as is specifying a tablespace for which the user does not have CREATE privilege. However, when using a previously set value, nonexistent tablespaces are ignored, as are tablespaces for which the user lacks CREATE privilege. In particular, this rule applies when using a value set in postgresql.conf.

The default value is an empty string, which results in all temporary objects being created in the default tablespace of the current database.

See also default_tablespace.

check_function_bodies (boolean)
This parameter is normally on. When set to off, it disables validation of the routine body string during CREATE FUNCTION and CREATE PROCEDURE. Disabling validation avoids side effects of the validation process, in particular preventing false positives due to problems such as forward references. Set this parameter to off before loading functions on behalf of other users; pg_dump does so automatically.

default_transaction_isolation (enum)
Each SQL transaction has an isolation level, which can be either “read uncommitted”, “read committed”, “repeatable read”, or “serializable”. This parameter controls the default isolation level of each new transaction. The default is “read committed”.

Consult Chapter 13 and SET TRANSACTION for more information.

default_transaction_read_only (boolean)
A read-only SQL transaction cannot alter non-temporary tables. This parameter controls the default read-only status of each new transaction. The default is off (read/write).

Consult SET TRANSACTION for more information.

default_transaction_deferrable (boolean)
When running at the serializable isolation level, a deferrable read-only SQL transaction may be delayed before it is allowed to proceed. However, once it begins executing it does not incur any of
the overhead required to ensure serializability; so serialization code will have no reason to force it to abort because of concurrent updates, making this option suitable for long-running read-only transactions.

This parameter controls the default deferrable status of each new transaction. It currently has no effect on read-write transactions or those operating at isolation levels lower than serializable. The default is off.

Consult SET TRANSACTION for more information.

```
transaction_isolation (enum)
```

This parameter reflects the current transaction's isolation level. At the beginning of each transaction, it is set to the current value of default_transaction_isolation. Any subsequent attempt to change it is equivalent to a SET TRANSACTION command.

```
transaction_read_only (boolean)
```

This parameter reflects the current transaction's read-only status. At the beginning of each transaction, it is set to the current value of default_transaction_read_only. Any subsequent attempt to change it is equivalent to a SET TRANSACTION command.

```
transaction_deferrable (boolean)
```

This parameter reflects the current transaction's deferrability status. At the beginning of each transaction, it is set to the current value of default_transaction_deferrable. Any subsequent attempt to change it is equivalent to a SET TRANSACTION command.

```
session_replication_role (enum)
```

Controls firing of replication-related triggers and rules for the current session. Setting this variable requires superuser privilege and results in discarding any previously cached query plans. Possible values are origin (the default), replica and local.

The intended use of this setting is that logical replication systems set it to replica when they are applying replicated changes. The effect of that will be that triggers and rules (that have not been altered from their default configuration) will not fire on the replica. See the ALTER TABLE clauses ENABLE TRIGGER and ENABLE RULE for more information.

Postgres Pro treats the settings origin and local the same internally. Third-party replication systems may use these two values for their internal purposes, for example using local to designate a session whose changes should not be replicated.

Since foreign keys are implemented as triggers, setting this parameter to replica also disables all foreign key checks, which can leave data in an inconsistent state if improperly used.

```
statement_timeout (integer)
```

Abort any statement that takes more than the specified amount of time. If log_min_error_statement is set to ERROR or lower, the statement that timed out will also be logged. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the timeout.

The timeout is measured from the time a command arrives at the server until it is completed by the server. If multiple SQL statements appear in a single simple-Query message, the timeout is applied to each statement separately. (PostgreSQL versions before 13 usually treated the timeout as applying to the whole query string.) In extended query protocol, the timeout starts running when any query-related message (Parse, Bind, Execute, Describe) arrives, and it is canceled by completion of an Execute or Sync message.

Setting statement_timeout in postgresql.conf is not recommended because it would affect all sessions.
Server Configuration

lock_timeout (integer)

Abort any statement that waits longer than the specified amount of time while attempting to acquire a lock on a table, index, row, or other database object. The time limit applies separately to each lock acquisition attempt. The limit applies both to explicit locking requests (such as LOCK TABLE, or SELECT FOR UPDATE without NOWAIT) and to implicitly-acquired locks. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the timeout.

Unlike statement_timeout, this timeout can only occur while waiting for locks. Note that if statement_timeout is nonzero, it is rather pointless to set lock_timeout to the same or larger value, since the statement timeout would always trigger first. If log_min_error_statement is set to ERROR or lower, the statement that timed out will be logged.

Setting lock_timeout in postgresql.conf is not recommended because it would affect all sessions.

idle_in_transaction_session_timeout (integer)

Terminate any session that has been idle (that is, waiting for a client query) within an open transaction for longer than the specified amount of time. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the timeout.

This option can be used to ensure that idle sessions do not hold locks for an unreasonable amount of time. Even when no significant locks are held, an open transaction prevents vacuuming away recently-dead tuples that may be visible only to this transaction; so remaining idle for a long time can contribute to table bloat. See Section 23.1 for more details.

idle_session_timeout (integer)

Terminate any session that has been idle (that is, waiting for a client query), but not within an open transaction, for longer than the specified amount of time. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the timeout.

Unlike the case with an open transaction, an idle session without a transaction imposes no large costs on the server, so there is less need to enable this timeout than idle_in_transaction_session_timeout.

Be wary of enforcing this timeout on connections made through connection-pooling software or other middleware, as such a layer may not react well to unexpected connection closure. It may be helpful to enable this timeout only for interactive sessions, perhaps by applying it only to particular users.

vacuum_freeze_table_age (integer)

VACUUM performs an aggressive scan if the table's pg_class.relrofrozenxid field has reached the age specified by this setting. An aggressive scan differs from a regular VACUUM in that it visits every page that might contain unfrozen XIDs or MXIDs, not just those that might contain dead tuples. The default is 150 million transactions. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to two billion, VACUUM will silently limit the effective value to 95% of autovacuum_freeze_max_age, so that a periodic manual VACUUM has a chance to run before an anti-wraparound autovacuum is launched for the table. For more information see Section 23.1.5.

vacuum_freeze_min_age (integer)

Specifies the cutoff age (in transactions) that VACUUM should use to decide whether to freeze row versions while scanning a table. The default is 50 million transactions. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to one billion, VACUUM will silently limit the effective value to half the value of autovacuum_freeze_max_age, so that there is not an unreasonably short time between forced autovacuums. For more information see Section 23.1.5.

vacuum_failsafe_age (integer)

Specifies the maximum age (in transactions) that a table's pg_class.relrofrozenxid field can attain before VACUUM takes extraordinary measures to avoid system-wide transaction ID wraparound failure.
This is VACUUM's strategy of last resort. The failsafe typically triggers when an autovacuum to prevent transaction ID wraparound has already been running for some time, though it's possible for the failsafe to trigger during any VACUUM.

When the failsafe is triggered, any cost-based delay that is in effect will no longer be applied, and further non-essential maintenance tasks (such as index vacuuming) are bypassed.

The default is 1.6 billion transactions. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to 2.1 billion, VACUUM will silently adjust the effective value to no less than 105% of autovacuum_freeze_max_age.

vacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age (integer)

VACUUM performs an aggressive scan if the table's pg_class.relminmxid field has reached the age specified by this setting. An aggressive scan differs from a regular VACUUM in that it visits every page that might contain unfrozen XIDs or MXIDs, not just those that might contain dead tuples. The default is 150 million multixacts. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to two billion, VACUUM will silently limit the effective value to 95% of autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age, so that a periodic manual VACUUM has a chance to run before an anti-wraparound is launched for the table. For more information see Section 23.1.5.1.

vacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age (integer)

Specifies the cutoff age (in multixacts) that VACUUM should use to decide whether to replace multixact IDs with a newer transaction ID or multixact ID while scanning a table. The default is 5 million multixacts. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to one billion, VACUUM will silently limit the effective value to half the value of autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age, so that there is not an unreasonably short time between forced autovacuums. For more information see Section 23.1.5.1.

vacuum_multixact_failsafe_age (integer)

Specifies the maximum age (in multixacts) that a table's pg_class.relminmxid field can attain before VACUUM takes extraordinary measures to avoid system-wide multixact ID wraparound failure. This is VACUUM's strategy of last resort. The failsafe typically triggers when an autovacuum to prevent transaction ID wraparound has already been running for some time, though it's possible for the failsafe to trigger during any VACUUM.

When the failsafe is triggered, any cost-based delay that is in effect will no longer be applied, and further non-essential maintenance tasks (such as index vacuuming) are bypassed.

The default is 1.6 billion multixacts. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to 2.1 billion, VACUUM will silently adjust the effective value to no less than 105% of autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age.

bytea_output (enum)

Sets the output format for values of type bytea. Valid values are hex (the default) and escape (the traditional Postgres Pro format). See Section 8.4 for more information. The bytea type always accepts both formats on input, regardless of this setting.

xmlbinary (enum)

Sets how binary values are to be encoded in XML. This applies for example when bytea values are converted to XML by the functions xmlRootElement or xmlForest. Possible values are base64 and hex, which are both defined in the XML Schema standard. The default is base64. For further information about XML-related functions, see Section 9.15.

The actual choice here is mostly a matter of taste, constrained only by possible restrictions in client applications. Both methods support all possible values, although the hex encoding will be somewhat larger than the base64 encoding.
Server Configuration

xml_option (enum)

Sets whether DOCUMENT or CONTENT is implicit when converting between XML and character string values. See Section 8.13 for a description of this. Valid values are DOCUMENT and CONTENT. The default is CONTENT.

According to the SQL standard, the command to set this option is

```
SET XML OPTION { DOCUMENT | CONTENT };
```

This syntax is also available in PostgreSQL.

gin_pending_list_limit (integer)

Sets the maximum size of a GIN index's pending list, which is used when fastupdate is enabled. If the list grows larger than this maximum size, it is cleaned up by moving the entries in it to the index's main GIN data structure in bulk. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default is four megabytes (4MB). This setting can be overridden for individual GIN indexes by changing index storage parameters. See Section 63.4.1 and Section 63.5 for more information.

18.11.2. Locale and Formatting

**DateStyle (string)**

Sets the display format for date and time values, as well as the rules for interpreting ambiguous date input values. For historical reasons, this variable contains two independent components: the output format specification (ISO, Postgres, SQL, or German) and the input/output specification for year/month/day ordering (DMY, MDY, or YMD). These can be set separately or together. The keywords Euro and European are synonyms for DMY; the keywords US, NonEuro, and NonEuropean are synonyms for MDY. See Section 8.5 for more information. The built-in default is ISO, MDY, but initdb will initialize the configuration file with a setting that corresponds to the behavior of the chosen lc_time locale.

**IntervalStyle (enum)**

Sets the display format for interval values. The value sql_standard will produce output matching SQL standard interval literals. The value postgres (which is the default) will produce output matching PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the DateStyle parameter was set to ISO. The value postgres_verbose will produce output matching PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the DateStyle parameter was set to non-ISO output. The value iso_8601 will produce output matching the time interval “format with designators” defined in section 4.4.3.2 of ISO 8601.

The IntervalStyle parameter also affects the interpretation of ambiguous interval input. See Section 8.5.4 for more information.

**TimeZone (string)**

Sets the time zone for displaying and interpreting time stamps. The built-in default is GMT, but that is typically overridden in postgresql.conf; initdb will install a setting there corresponding to its system environment. See Section 8.5.3 for more information.

**timezone_abbreviations (string)**

Sets the collection of time zone abbreviations that will be accepted by the server for datetime input. The default is 'Default', which is a collection that works in most of the world; there are also 'Australia' and 'India', and other collections can be defined for a particular installation. See Section B.4 for more information.

**extra_float_digits (integer)**

This parameter adjusts the number of digits used for textual output of floating-point values, including float4, float8, and geometric data types.

If the value is 1 (the default) or above, float values are output in shortest-precise format; see Section 8.1.3. The actual number of digits generated depends only on the value being output, not
on the value of this parameter. At most 17 digits are required for \texttt{float8} values, and 9 for \texttt{float4} values. This format is both fast and precise, preserving the original binary float value exactly when correctly read. For historical compatibility, values up to 3 are permitted.

If the value is zero or negative, then the output is rounded to a given decimal precision. The precision used is the standard number of digits for the type (\texttt{FLT_DIG} or \texttt{DBL_DIG} as appropriate) reduced according to the value of this parameter. (For example, specifying -1 will cause \texttt{float4} values to be output rounded to 5 significant digits, and \texttt{float8} values rounded to 14 digits.) This format is slower and does not preserve all the bits of the binary float value, but may be more human-readable.

\begin{quote}
\textbf{Note}

The meaning of this parameter, and its default value, changed in Postgres Pro 12; see Section 8.1.3 for further discussion.
\end{quote}

\begin{description}
\item[\texttt{client_encoding} (string)]

Sets the client-side encoding (character set). The default is to use the database encoding. The character sets supported by the Postgres Pro server are described in Section 22.3.1.

\item[\texttt{lc_messages} (string)]

Sets the language in which messages are displayed. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 22.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

On some systems, this locale category does not exist. Setting this variable will still work, but there will be no effect. Also, there is a chance that no translated messages for the desired language exist. In that case you will continue to see the English messages.

Only superusers can change this setting, because it affects the messages sent to the server log as well as to the client, and an improper value might obscure the readability of the server logs.

\item[\texttt{lc_monetary} (string)]

Sets the locale to use for formatting monetary amounts, for example with the \texttt{to_char} family of functions. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 22.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

\item[\texttt{lc_numeric} (string)]

Sets the locale to use for formatting numbers, for example with the \texttt{to_char} family of functions. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 22.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

\item[\texttt{lc_time} (string)]

Sets the locale to use for formatting dates and times, for example with the \texttt{to_char} family of functions. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 22.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

\item[\texttt{default_text_search_config} (string)]

Selects the text search configuration that is used by those variants of the text search functions that do not have an explicit argument specifying the configuration. See Chapter 12 for further information. The built-in default is \texttt{pg_catalog.simple}, but \texttt{initdb} will initialize the configuration file with a setting that corresponds to the chosen \texttt{lc_ctype} locale, if a configuration matching that locale can be identified.
\end{description}
18.11.3. Shared Library Preloading

Several settings are available for preloading shared libraries into the server, in order to load additional functionality or achieve performance benefits. For example, a setting of "$libdir/mylib" would cause mylib.so (or on some platforms, mylib.sl) to be preloaded from the installation's standard library directory. The differences between the settings are when they take effect and what privileges are required to change them.

Postgres Pro procedural language libraries can be preloaded in this way, typically by using the syntax "$libdir/plXXX" where XXX is pgsql, perl, tcl, or python.

Only shared libraries specifically intended to be used with Postgres Pro can be loaded this way. Every Postgres Pro-supported library has a “magic block” that is checked to guarantee compatibility. For this reason, non-Postgres Pro libraries cannot be loaded in this way. You might be able to use operating-system facilities such as LD_PRELOAD for that.

In general, refer to the documentation of a specific module for the recommended way to load that module.

local_preload_libraries (string)

This variable specifies one or more shared libraries that are to be preloaded at connection start. It contains a comma-separated list of library names, where each name is interpreted as for the LOAD command. Whitespace between entries is ignored; surround a library name with double quotes if you need to include whitespace or commas in the name. The parameter value only takes effect at the start of the connection. Subsequent changes have no effect. If a specified library is not found, the connection attempt will fail.

This option can be set by any user. Because of that, the libraries that can be loaded are restricted to those appearing in the plugins subdirectory of the installation's standard library directory. (It is the database administrator's responsibility to ensure that only “safe” libraries are installed there.) Entries in local_preload_libraries can specify this directory explicitly, for example $libdir/plugins/mylib, or just specify the library name — mylib would have the same effect as $libdir/plugins/mylib.

The intent of this feature is to allow unprivileged users to load debugging or performance-measurement libraries into specific sessions without requiring an explicit LOAD command. To that end, it would be typical to set this parameter using the PGOPTIONS environment variable on the client or by using ALTER ROLE SET.

However, unless a module is specifically designed to be used in this way by non-superusers, this is usually not the right setting to use. Look at session_preload_libraries instead.

session_preload_libraries (string)

This variable specifies one or more shared libraries that are to be preloaded at connection start. It contains a comma-separated list of library names, where each name is interpreted as for the LOAD command. Whitespace between entries is ignored; surround a library name with double quotes if you need to include whitespace or commas in the name. The parameter value only takes effect at the start of the connection. Subsequent changes have no effect. If a specified library is not found, the connection attempt will fail. Only superusers can change this setting.

The intent of this feature is to allow debugging or performance-measurement libraries to be loaded into specific sessions without an explicit LOAD command being given. For example, auto_explain could be enabled for all sessions under a given user name by setting this parameter with ALTER ROLE SET. Also, this parameter can be changed without restarting the server (but changes only take effect when a new session is started), so it is easier to add new modules this way, even if they should apply to all sessions.

Unlike shared_preload_libraries, there is no large performance advantage to loading a library at session start rather than when it is first used. There is some advantage, however, when connection pooling is used.
shared_preload_libraries (string)

This variable specifies one or more shared libraries to be preloaded at server start. It contains a comma-separated list of library names, where each name is interpreted as for the LOAD command. Whitespace between entries is ignored; surround a library name with double quotes if you need to include whitespace or commas in the name. This parameter can only be set at server start. If a specified library is not found, the server will fail to start.

Some libraries need to perform certain operations that can only take place at postmaster start, such as allocating shared memory, reserving light-weight locks, or starting background workers. Those libraries must be loaded at server start through this parameter. See the documentation of each library for details.

Other libraries can also be preloaded. By preloading a shared library, the library startup time is avoided when the library is first used. However, the time to start each new server process might increase slightly, even if that process never uses the library. So this parameter is recommended only for libraries that will be used in most sessions. Also, changing this parameter requires a server restart, so this is not the right setting to use for short-term debugging tasks, say. Use session_preload_libraries for that instead.

Note

On Windows hosts, preloading a library at server start will not reduce the time required to start each new server process; each server process will re-load all preload libraries. However, shared_preload_libraries is still useful on Windows hosts for libraries that need to perform operations at postmaster start time.

jit_provider (string)

This variable is the name of the JIT provider library to be used (see Section 30.4.2). The default is llvmjit. This parameter can only be set at server start.

If set to a non-existent library, JIT will not be available, but no error will be raised. This allows JIT support to be installed separately from the main Postgres Pro package.

18.11.4. Other Defaults

dynamic_library_path (string)

If a dynamically loadable module needs to be opened and the file name specified in the CREATE FUNCTION or LOAD command does not have a directory component (i.e., the name does not contain a slash), the system will search this path for the required file.

The value for dynamic_library_path must be a list of absolute directory paths separated by colons (or semi-colons on Windows). If a list element starts with the special string $libdir, the compiled-in Postgres Pro package library directory is substituted for $libdir; this is where the modules provided by the standard Postgres Pro distribution are installed. (Use pg_config --pkglibdir to find out the name of this directory.) For example:

dynamic_library_path = '/usr/local/lib/postgresql:/home/my_project/lib:$libdir'
or, in a Windows environment:

dynamic_library_path = 'C:\tools\postgresql;H:\my_project\lib;$libdir'

The default value for this parameter is '$libdir'. If the value is set to an empty string, the automatic path search is turned off.

This parameter can be changed at run time by superusers, but a setting done that way will only persist until the end of the client connection, so this method should be reserved for development purposes. The recommended way to set this parameter is in the postgresql.conf configuration file.
Server Configuration

gin_fuzzy_search_limit (integer)

Soft upper limit of the size of the set returned by GIN index scans. For more information see Section 63.5.

18.12. Lock Management

deadlock_timeout (integer)

This is the amount of time to wait on a lock before checking to see if there is a deadlock condition. The check for deadlock is relatively expensive, so the server doesn't run it every time it waits for a lock. We optimistically assume that deadlocks are not common in production applications and just wait on the lock for a while before checking for a deadlock. Increasing this value reduces the amount of time wasted in needless deadlock checks, but slows down reporting of real deadlock errors. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default is one second (1s), which is probably about the smallest value you would want in practice. On a heavily loaded server you might want to raise it. Ideally the setting should exceed your typical transaction time, so as to improve the odds that a lock will be released before the waiter decides to check for deadlock. Only superusers can change this setting.

When log_lock_waits is set, this parameter also determines the amount of time to wait before a log message is issued about the lock wait. If you are trying to investigate locking delays you might want to set a shorter than normal deadlock_timeout.

max_locks_per_transaction (integer)

The shared lock table tracks locks on max_locks_per_transaction * (max_connections + max_prepared_transactions) objects (e.g., tables); hence, no more than this many distinct objects can be locked at any one time. This parameter controls the average number of object locks allocated for each transaction; individual transactions can lock more objects as long as the locks of all transactions fit in the lock table. This is not the number of rows that can be locked; that value is unlimited. The default, 64, has historically proven sufficient, but you might need to raise this value if you have queries that touch many different tables in a single transaction, e.g., query of a parent table with many children. This parameter can only be set at server start.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

max_pred_locks_per_transaction (integer)

The shared predicate lock table tracks locks on max_pred_locks_per_transaction * (max_connections + max_prepared_transactions) objects (e.g., tables); hence, no more than this many distinct objects can be locked at any one time. This parameter controls the average number of object locks allocated for each transaction; individual transactions can lock more objects as long as the locks of all transactions fit in the lock table. This is not the number of rows that can be locked; that value is unlimited. The default, 64, has generally been sufficient in testing, but you might need to raise this value if you have clients that touch many different tables in a single serializable transaction. This parameter can only be set at server start.

max_pred_locks_per_relation (integer)

This controls how many pages or tuples of a single relation can be predicate-locked before the lock is promoted to covering the whole relation. Values greater than or equal to zero mean an absolute limit, while negative values mean max_pred_locks_per_transaction divided by the absolute value of this setting. The default is -2, which keeps the behavior from previous versions of Postgres Pro. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

max_pred_locks_per_page (integer)

This controls how many rows on a single page can be predicate-locked before the lock is promoted to covering the whole page. The default is 2. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.
18.13. Version and Platform Compatibility

18.13.1. Previous Postgres Pro Versions

array_nulls (boolean)

This controls whether the array input parser recognizes unquoted NULL as specifying a null array element. By default, this is on, allowing array values containing null values to be entered. However, PostgreSQL versions before 8.2 did not support null values in arrays, and therefore would treat NULL as specifying a normal array element with the string value ‘NULL’. For backward compatibility with applications that require the old behavior, this variable can be turned off.

Note that it is possible to create array values containing null values even when this variable is off.

backslash_quote (enum)

This controls whether a quote mark can be represented by \ in a string literal. The preferred, SQL-standard way to represent a quote mark is by doubling it (\) but Postgres Pro has historically also accepted \\ . However, use of \\ creates security risks because in some client character set encodings, there are multibyte characters in which the last byte is numerically equivalent to ASCII \.. If client-side code does escaping incorrectly then an SQL-injection attack is possible. This risk can be prevented by making the server reject queries in which a quote mark appears to be escaped by a backslash. The allowed values of backslash_quote are on (allow \ always), off (reject always), and safe_encoding (allow only if client encoding does not allow ASCII \ within a multibyte character). safe_encoding is the default setting.

Note that in a standard-conforming string literal, \ just means \ anyway. This parameter only affects the handling of non-standard-conforming literals, including escape string syntax (E’...’).

escape_string_warning (boolean)

When on, a warning is issued if a backslash (\) appears in an ordinary string literal (’...’ syntax) and standard_conforming_strings is off. The default is on.

Applications that wish to use backslash as escape should be modified to use escape string syntax (E’...’), because the default behavior of ordinary strings is now to treat backslash as an ordinary character, per SQL standard. This variable can be enabled to help locate code that needs to be changed.

lo_compat_privileges (boolean)

In PostgreSQL releases prior to 9.0, large objects did not have access privileges and were, therefore, always readable and writable by all users. Setting this variable to on disables the new privilege checks, for compatibility with prior releases. The default is off. Only superusers can change this setting.

Setting this variable does not disable all security checks related to large objects — only those for which the default behavior has changed in PostgreSQL 9.0.

quote_all_identifiers (boolean)

When the database generates SQL, force all identifiers to be quoted, even if they are not (currently) keywords. This will affect the output of EXPLAIN as well as the results of functions like pg_get_viewdef. See also the --quote-all-identifiers option of pg_dump and pg_dumpall.

nul_byte_replacement_on_import (string)

Replace NUL bytes ‘\0’ with the specified decimal code of an ASCII character while loading data using the COPY FROM command. Such a replacement may be required when transferring data from another DBMS since Postgres Pro does not allow NUL bytes in data. The specified ASCII code must not coincide with the QUOTE and DELIMITER characters used by COPY FROM as it may cause unexpected results. The default value is ‘\0’, so no replacement occurs.
standard_conforming_strings (boolean)

This controls whether ordinary string literals ('...') treat backslashes literally, as specified in the SQL standard. Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.1, the default is on (prior releases defaulted to off). Applications can check this parameter to determine how string literals will be processed. The presence of this parameter can also be taken as an indication that the escape string syntax (E'...' is supported. Escape string syntax (Section 4.1.2.2) should be used if an application desires backslashes to be treated as escape characters.

synchronize_seqscans (boolean)

This allows sequential scans of large tables to synchronize with each other, so that concurrent scans read the same block at about the same time and hence share the I/O workload. When this is enabled, a scan might start in the middle of the table and then "wrap around" the end to cover all rows, so as to synchronize with the activity of scans already in progress. This can result in unpredictable changes in the row ordering returned by queries that have no ORDER BY clause. Setting this parameter to off ensures the pre-8.3 behavior in which a sequential scan always starts from the beginning of the table. The default is on.

18.13.2. Platform and Client Compatibility

transform_null_equals (boolean)

When on, expressions of the form expr = NULL (or NULL = expr) are treated as expr IS NULL, that is, they return true if expr evaluates to the null value, and false otherwise. The correct SQL-spec-compliant behavior of expr = NULL is to always return null (unknown). Therefore this parameter defaults to off.

However, filtered forms in Microsoft Access generate queries that appear to use expr = NULL to test for null values, so if you use that interface to access the database you might want to turn this option on. Since expressions of the form expr = NULL always return the null value (using the SQL standard interpretation), they are not very useful and do not appear often in normal applications so this option does little harm in practice. But new users are frequently confused about the semantics of expressions involving null values, so this option is off by default.

Note that this option only affects the exact form = NULL, not other comparison operators or other expressions that are computationally equivalent to some expression involving the equals operator (such as IN). Thus, this option is not a general fix for bad programming.

Refer to Section 9.2 for related information.

18.14. Memory Purge

Postgres Pro Standard provides memory purge configuration parameters that can automatically replace data with zero bytes before it is deleted. For details, see Section 31.1.

wipe_file_on_delete (boolean)

Replace a file with zero bytes before it is deleted.

Default: on

wipe_heaptuple_on_delete (boolean)

Replace a row version with zero bytes before it is deleted.

Default: on

wipe_memctx_on_free (boolean)

Clear random-access memory before it is freed. This parameter only controls the memory allocated as part of a particular context.
Server Configuration

Default: on
done

Default: on

18.15. Error Handling

exit_on_error (boolean)

If on, any error will terminate the current session. By default, this is set to off, so that only FATAL errors will terminate the session.

restart_after_crash (boolean)

When set to on, which is the default, Postgres Pro will automatically reinitialize after a backend crash. Leaving this value set to on is normally the best way to maximize the availability of the database. However, in some circumstances, such as when Postgres Pro is being invoked by clusterware, it may be useful to disable the restart so that the clusterware can gain control and take any actions it deems appropriate.

This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

data_sync_retry (boolean)

When set to off, which is the default, Postgres Pro will raise a PANIC-level error on failure to flush modified data files to the file system. This causes the database server to crash. This parameter can only be set at server start.

On some operating systems, the status of data in the kernel's page cache is unknown after a write-back failure. In some cases it might have been entirely forgotten, making it unsafe to retry; the second attempt may be reported as successful, when in fact the data has been lost. In these circumstances, the only way to avoid data loss is to recover from the WAL after any failure is reported, preferably after investigating the root cause of the failure and replacing any faulty hardware.

If set to on, Postgres Pro will instead report an error but continue to run so that the data flushing operation can be retried in a later checkpoint. Only set it to on after investigating the operating system's treatment of buffered data in case of write-back failure.

recovery_init_sync_method (enum)

When set to fsync, which is the default, PostgreSQL will recursively open and synchronize all files in the data directory before crash recovery begins. The search for files will follow symbolic links for the WAL directory and each configured tablespace (but not any other symbolic links). This is intended to make sure that all WAL and data files are durably stored on disk before replaying changes. This applies whenever starting a database cluster that did not shut down cleanly, including copies created with pg_basebackup.

On Linux, syncfs may be used instead, to ask the operating system to synchronize the whole file systems that contain the data directory, the WAL files and each tablespace (but not any other file systems that may be reachable through symbolic links). This may be a lot faster than the fsync setting, because it doesn't need to open each file one by one. On the other hand, it may be slower if a file system is shared by other applications that modify a lot of files, since those files will also be
written to disk. Furthermore, on versions of Linux before 5.8, I/O errors encountered while writing data to disk may not be reported to PostgreSQL, and relevant error messages may appear only in kernel logs.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 18.16. Preset Options

The following “parameters” are read-only. As such, they have been excluded from the sample `postgresql.conf` file. These options report various aspects of Postgres Pro behavior that might be of interest to certain applications, particularly administrative front-ends. Most of them are determined when Postgres Pro is compiled or when it is installed.

**block_size** *(integer)*

Reports the size of a disk block. It is determined by the value of `BLCKSZ` when building the server. The default value is 8192 bytes. The meaning of some configuration variables (such as `shared_buffers`) is influenced by `block_size`. See Section 18.4 for information.

**data_checksums** *(boolean)*

Reports whether data checksums are enabled for this cluster. See data checksums for more information.

**data_directory_mode** *(integer)*

On Unix systems this parameter reports the permissions the data directory (defined by `data_directory`) had at server startup. (On Microsoft Windows this parameter will always display 0700.) See group access for more information.

**debug_assertions** *(boolean)*

Reports whether Postgres Pro has been built with assertions enabled. That is the case if the macro `USE_ASSERT_CHECKING` is defined when Postgres Pro is built (accomplished e.g., by the configure option `--enable-cassert`). By default Postgres Pro is built without assertions.

**integer_datetimes** *(boolean)*

Reports whether Postgres Pro was built with support for 64-bit-integer dates and times. As of Postgres Pro 10, this is always on.

**in_hot_standby** *(boolean)*

Reports whether the server is currently in hot standby mode. When this is on, all transactions are forced to be read-only. Within a session, this can change only if the server is promoted to be primary. See Section 25.4 for more information.

**lc_collate** *(string)*

Reports the locale in which sorting of textual data is done. See Section 22.1 for more information. This value is determined when a database is created.

**lc_collate_canonical** *(string)*

Reports the canonical name of the collation order locale. Unlike `lc_collate`, `lc_collate_canonical` does not contain the modifier of the collation provider.

**lc_ctype** *(string)*

Reports the locale that determines character classifications. See Section 22.1 for more information. This value is determined when a database is created. Ordinarily this will be the same as `lc_collate`, but for special applications it might be set differently.
Server Configuration

max_function_args (integer)
Reports the maximum number of function arguments. It is determined by the value of \texttt{FUNC_MAX_ARGS} when building the server. The default value is 100 arguments.

max_identifier_length (integer)
Reports the maximum identifier length. It is determined as one less than the value of \texttt{NAMEDATALEN} when building the server. The default value of \texttt{NAMEDATALEN} is 64; therefore the default \texttt{max_identifier_length} is 63 bytes, which can be less than 63 characters when using multibyte encodings.

max_index_keys (integer)
Reports the maximum number of index keys. It is determined by the value of \texttt{INDEX_MAX_KEYS} when building the server. The default value is 32 keys.

segment_size (integer)
Reports the number of blocks (pages) that can be stored within a file segment. It is determined by the value of \texttt{RELSEG_SIZE} when building the server. The maximum size of a segment file in bytes is equal to segment_size multiplied by block_size; by default this is 1GB.

server_encoding (string)
Reports the database encoding (character set). It is determined when the database is created. Ordinarily, clients need only be concerned with the value of \texttt{client_encoding}.

server_version (string)
Reports the version number of the server. It is determined by the value of \texttt{PG_VERSION} when building the server.

server_version_num (integer)
Reports the version number of the server as an integer. It is determined by the value of \texttt{PG_VERSION_NUM} when building the server.

ssl_library (string)
Reports the name of the SSL library that this Postgres Pro server was built with (even if SSL is not currently configured or in use on this instance), for example OpenSSL, or an empty string if none.

wal_block_size (integer)
Reports the size of a WAL disk block. It is determined by the value of \texttt{XLOG_BLCKSZ} when building the server. The default value is 8192 bytes.

wal_segment_size (integer)
Reports the size of write ahead log segments. The default value is 16MB. See Section 28.5 for more information.

18.17. Customized Options

This feature was designed to allow parameters not normally known to Postgres Pro to be added by add-on modules (such as procedural languages). This allows extension modules to be configured in the standard ways.

Custom options have two-part names: an extension name, then a dot, then the parameter name proper, much like qualified names in SQL. An example is \texttt{plpgsql.variable_conflict}.

Because custom options may need to be set in processes that have not loaded the relevant extension module, Postgres Pro will accept a setting for any two-part parameter name. Such variables are treated as placeholders and have no function until the module that defines them is loaded. When an extension
module is loaded, it will add its variable definitions, convert any placeholder values according to those definitions, and issue warnings for any unrecognized placeholders that begin with its extension name.

18.18. Developer Options

The following parameters are intended for developer testing, and should never be used on a production database. However, some of them can be used to assist with the recovery of severely damaged databases. As such, they have been excluded from the sample postgresql.conf file. Note that many of these parameters require special source compilation flags to work at all.

allow_system_table_mods (boolean)

Allows modification of the structure of system tables as well as certain other risky actions on system tables. This is otherwise not allowed even for superusers. Ill-advised use of this setting can cause irretrievable data loss or seriously corrupt the database system. Only superusers can change this setting.

backtrace_functions (string)

This parameter contains a comma-separated list of C function names. If an error is raised and the name of the internal C function where the error happens matches a value in the list, then a backtrace is written to the server log together with the error message. This can be used to debug specific areas of the source code.

Backtrace support is not available on all platforms, and the quality of the backtraces depends on compilation options.

This parameter can only be set by superusers.

debug_discard_caches (integer)

When set to 1, each system catalog cache entry is invalidated at the first possible opportunity, whether or not anything that would render it invalid really occurred. Caching of system catalogs is effectively disabled as a result, so the server will run extremely slowly. Higher values run the cache invalidation recursively, which is even slower and only useful for testing the caching logic itself. The default value of 0 selects normal catalog caching behavior.

This parameter can be very helpful when trying to trigger hard-to-reproduce bugs involving concurrent catalog changes, but it is otherwise rarely needed.

This parameter is supported when DISCARD_CACHES_ENABLED was defined at compile time (which happens automatically when using the configure option --enable-cassert). In production builds, its value will always be 0 and attempts to set it to another value will raise an error.

force_parallel_mode (enum)

Allows the use of parallel queries for testing purposes even in cases where no performance benefit is expected. The allowed values of force_parallel_mode are off (use parallel mode only when it is expected to improve performance), on (force parallel query for all queries for which it is thought to be safe), and regress (like on, but with additional behavior changes as explained below).

More specifically, setting this value to on will add a Gather node to the top of any query plan for which this appears to be safe, so that the query runs inside of a parallel worker. Even when a parallel worker is not available or cannot be used, operations such as starting a subtransaction that would be prohibited in a parallel query context will be prohibited unless the planner believes that this will cause the query to fail. If failures or unexpected results occur when this option is set, some functions used by the query may need to be marked PARALLEL UNSAFE (or, possibly, PARALLEL RESTRICTED).

Setting this value to regress has all of the same effects as setting it to on plus some additional effects that are intended to facilitate automated regression testing. Normally, messages from a parallel worker include a context line indicating that, but a setting of regress suppresses this line so that the output is the same as in non-parallel execution. Also, the Gather nodes added to plans by this setting
are hidden in EXPLAIN output so that the output matches what would be obtained if this setting were turned off.

ignore_system_indexes (boolean)

Ignore system indexes when reading system tables (but still update the indexes when modifying the tables). This is useful when recovering from damaged system indexes. This parameter cannot be changed after session start.

post_auth_delay (integer)

The amount of time to delay when a new server process is started, after it conducts the authentication procedure. This is intended to give developers an opportunity to attach to the server process with a debugger. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the delay. This parameter cannot be changed after session start.

pre_auth_delay (integer)

The amount of time to delay just after a new server process is forked, before it conducts the authentication procedure. This is intended to give developers an opportunity to attach to the server process with a debugger to trace down misbehavior in authentication. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the delay. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

trace_notify (boolean)

Generates a great amount of debugging output for the LISTEN and NOTIFY commands. client min messages or log_min_messages must be DEBUG1 or lower to send this output to the client or server logs, respectively.

trace_recovery_messages (enum)

Enables logging of recovery-related debugging output that otherwise would not be logged. This parameter allows the user to override the normal setting of log_min_messages, but only for specific messages. This is intended for use in debugging Hot Standby. Valid values are DEBUG5, DEBUG4, DEBUG3, DEBUG2, DEBUG1, and LOG. The default, LOG, does not affect logging decisions at all. The other values cause recovery-related debug messages of that priority or higher to be logged as though they had LOG priority; for common settings of log_min_messages this results in unconditionally sending them to the server log. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

trace_sort (boolean)

If on, emit information about resource usage during sort operations. This parameter is only available if the TRACE_SORT macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled. (However, TRACE_SORT is currently defined by default.)

trace_locks (boolean)

If on, emit information about lock usage. Information dumped includes the type of lock operation, the type of lock and the unique identifier of the object being locked or unlocked. Also included are bit masks for the lock types already granted on this object as well as for the lock types awaited on this object. For each lock type a count of the number of granted locks and waiting locks is also dumped as well as the totals. An example of the log file output is shown here:

```
LOG:  LockAcquire: new: lock(0xb7acd844) id(24688,24696,0,0,0,1)
     grantMask(0) req(0,0,0,0,0,0)=0 grant (0,0,0,0,0,0)=0
     wait(0) type(AccessShareLock)
LOG:  GrantLock: lock(0xb7acd844) id(24688,24696,0,0,0,1)
     grantMask(2) req(1,0,0,0,0,0)=1 grant (1,0,0,0,0,0)=1
     wait(0) type(AccessShareLock)
LOG:  UnGrantLock: updated: lock(0xb7acd844) id(24688,24696,0,0,0,1)
     grantMask(0) req(0,0,0,0,0,0)=0 grant (0,0,0,0,0,0)=0
```
Server Configuration

wait(0) type(AccessShareLock)
LOG:  CleanUpLock: deleting: lock(0xb7acd844) id(24688,24696,0,0,0,1)
grantMask(0) req(0,0,0,0,0,0)=0 grant(0,0,0,0,0,0)=0
wait(0) type(INVALID)

This parameter is only available if the LOCK_DEBUG macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled.

trace_lwlocks (boolean)
If on, emit information about lightweight lock usage. Lightweight locks are intended primarily to provide mutual exclusion of access to shared-memory data structures.

This parameter is only available if the LOCK_DEBUG macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled.

trace_userlocks (boolean)
If on, emit information about user lock usage. Output is the same as for trace_locks, only for advisory locks.

This parameter is only available if the LOCK_DEBUG macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled.

trace_lock_oidmin (integer)
If set, do not trace locks for tables below this OID (used to avoid output on system tables).

This parameter is only available if the LOCK_DEBUG macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled.

trace_lock_table (integer)
Unconditionally trace locks on this table (OID).

This parameter is only available if the LOCK_DEBUG macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled.

debug_deadlocks (boolean)
If set, dumps information about all current locks when a deadlock timeout occurs.

This parameter is only available if the LOCK_DEBUG macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled.

log_btree_build_stats (boolean)
If set, logs system resource usage statistics (memory and CPU) on various B-tree operations.

This parameter is only available if the BTREE_BUILD_STATS macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled.

wal_consistency_checking (string)
This parameter is intended to be used to check for bugs in the WAL redo routines. When enabled, full-page images of any buffers modified in conjunction with the WAL record are added to the record. If the record is subsequently replayed, the system will first apply each record and then test whether the buffers modified by the record match the stored images. In certain cases (such as hint bits), minor variations are acceptable, and will be ignored. Any unexpected differences will result in a fatal error, terminating recovery.

The default value of this setting is the empty string, which disables the feature. It can be set to all to check all records, or to a comma-separated list of resource managers to check only records originating from those resource managers. Currently, the supported resource managers are heap,
heap2, btree, hash, gin, gist, sequence, spgist, brin, and generic. Only superusers can change this setting.

wal_debug (boolean)

If on, emit WAL-related debugging output. This parameter is only available if the WAL_DEBUG macro was defined when Postgres Pro was compiled.

ignore_checksum_failure (boolean)

Only has effect if data checksums are enabled.

Detection of a checksum failure during a read normally causes Postgres Pro to report an error, aborting the current transaction. Setting ignore_checksum_failure to on causes the system to ignore the failure (but still report a warning), and continue processing. This behavior may cause crashes, propagate or hide corruption, or other serious problems. However, it may allow you to get past the error and retrieve undamaged tuples that might still be present in the table if the block header is still sane. If the header is corrupt an error will be reported even if this option is enabled. The default setting is off, and it can only be changed by a superuser.

zero_damaged_pages (boolean)

Detection of a damaged page header normally causes Postgres Pro to report an error, aborting the current transaction. Setting zero_damaged_pages to on causes the system to instead report a warning, zero out the damaged page in memory, and continue processing. This behavior will destroy data, namely all the rows on the damaged page. However, it does allow you to get past the error and retrieve rows from any undamaged pages that might be present in the table. It is useful for recovering data if corruption has occurred due to a hardware or software error. You should generally not set this on until you have given up hope of recovering data from the damaged pages of a table. Zeroed-out pages are not forced to disk so it is recommended to recreate the table or the index before turning this parameter off again. The default setting is off, and it can only be changed by a superuser.

ignore_invalid_pages (boolean)

If set to off (the default), detection of WAL records having references to invalid pages during recovery causes PostgreSQL to raise a PANIC-level error, aborting the recovery. Setting ignore_invalid_pages to on causes the system to ignore invalid page references in WAL records (but still report a warning), and continue the recovery. This behavior may cause crashes, data loss, propagate or hide corruption, or other serious problems. However, it may allow you to get past the PANIC-level error, to finish the recovery, and to cause the server to start up. The parameter can only be set at server start. It only has effect during recovery or in standby mode.

jit_debugging_support (boolean)

If LLVM has the required functionality, register generated functions with GDB. This makes debugging easier. The default setting is off. This parameter can only be set at server start.

jit_dump_bitcode (boolean)

Writes the generated LLVM IR out to the file system, inside data directory. This is only useful for working on the internals of the JIT implementation. The default setting is off. This parameter can only be changed by a superuser.

jit_expressions (boolean)

Determines whether expressions are JIT compiled, when JIT compilation is activated (see Section 30.2). The default is on.

jit_profiling_support (boolean)

If LLVM has the required functionality, emit the data needed to allow perf to profile functions generated by JIT. This writes out files to ~/.debug/jit/; the user is responsible for performing cleanup when desired. The default setting is off. This parameter can only be set at server start.
Server Configuration

jit_tuple_deforming (boolean)

Determines whether tuple deforming is JIT compiled, when JIT compilation is activated (see Section 30.2). The default is on.

remove_temp_files_after_crash (boolean)

When set to on, which is the default, PostgreSQL will automatically remove temporary files after a backend crash. If disabled, the files will be retained and may be used for debugging, for example. Repeated crashes may however result in accumulation of useless files. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

18.19. Short Options

For convenience there are also single letter command-line option switches available for some parameters. They are described in Table 18.3. Some of these options exist for historical reasons, and their presence as a single-letter option does not necessarily indicate an endorsement to use the option heavily.

Table 18.3. Short Option Key

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short Option</th>
<th>Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-B x</td>
<td>shared_buffers = x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-d x</td>
<td>log_min_messages = DEBUG x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e</td>
<td>datestyle = euro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fb, -fh, -fi, -fn, -fo, -fs, -ft</td>
<td>enable_bitmapscan = off, enable_hashjoin = off, enable_indexscan = off, enable_mergejoin = off, enable_nestloop = off, enable_indexonlyscan = off, enable_seqscan = off, enable_tidscan = off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-F</td>
<td>fsync = off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-h x</td>
<td>listen_addresses = '*'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i</td>
<td>listen_addresses = '*'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-k x</td>
<td>unix_socket_directories = x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-l</td>
<td>ssl = on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-N x</td>
<td>max_connections = x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-O</td>
<td>allow_system_table_mods = on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-p x</td>
<td>port = x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-P</td>
<td>ignore_system_indexes = on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>log_statement_stats = on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-S x</td>
<td>work_mem = x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tpa, -tpl, -te</td>
<td>log_parser_stats = on, log_planner_stats = on, log_executor_stats = on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-W x</td>
<td>post_auth_delay = x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 19. Client Authentication

When a client application connects to the database server, it specifies which Postgres Pro database user name it wants to connect as, much the same way one logs into a Unix computer as a particular user. Within the SQL environment the active database user name determines access privileges to database objects — see Chapter 20 for more information. Therefore, it is essential to restrict which database users can connect.

Note

As explained in Chapter 20, Postgres Pro actually does privilege management in terms of “roles”. In this chapter, we consistently use database user to mean “role with the LOGIN privilege”.

Authentication is the process by which the database server establishes the identity of the client, and by extension determines whether the client application (or the user who runs the client application) is permitted to connect with the database user name that was requested.

Postgres Pro offers a number of different client authentication methods. The method used to authenticate a particular client connection can be selected on the basis of (client) host address, database, and user.

Postgres Pro database user names are logically separate from user names of the operating system in which the server runs. If all the users of a particular server also have accounts on the server’s machine, it makes sense to assign database user names that match their operating system user names. However, a server that accepts remote connections might have many database users who have no local operating system account, and in such cases there need be no connection between database user names and OS user names.

19.1. The pg_hba.conf File

Client authentication is controlled by a configuration file, which traditionally is named pg_hba.conf and is stored in the database cluster's data directory. (HBA stands for host-based authentication.) A default pg_hba.conf file is installed when the data directory is initialized by initdb. It is possible to place the authentication configuration file elsewhere, however; see the hba_file configuration parameter.

The general format of the pg_hba.conf file is a set of records, one per line. Blank lines are ignored, as is any text after the # comment character. A record can be continued onto the next line by ending the line with a backslash. (Backslashes are not special except at the end of a line.) A record is made up of a number of fields which are separated by spaces and/or tabs. Fields can contain white space if the field value is double-quoted. Quoting one of the keywords in a database, user, or address field (e.g., all or replication) makes the word lose its special meaning, and just match a database, user, or host with that name. Backslash line continuation applies even within quoted text or comments.

Each record specifies a connection type, a client IP address range (if relevant for the connection type), a database name, a user name, and the authentication method to be used for connections matching these parameters. The first record with a matching connection type, client address, requested database, and user name is used to perform authentication. There is no “fall-through” or “backup”: if one record is chosen and the authentication fails, subsequent records are not considered. If no record matches, access is denied.

A record can have several formats:

- local
- host
- hostssl
- hostnossl
- hostgssenc
- hostnogssenc
- host
- hostssl

561
The meaning of the fields is as follows:

**local**

This record matches connection attempts using Unix-domain sockets. Without a record of this type, Unix-domain socket connections are disallowed.

**host**

This record matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP. **host** records match SSL or non-SSL connection attempts as well as GSSAPI encrypted or non-GSSAPI encrypted connection attempts.

**Note**

Remote TCP/IP connections will not be possible unless the server is started with an appropriate value for the `listen_addresses` configuration parameter, since the default behavior is to listen for TCP/IP connections only on the local loopback address `localhost`.

**hostssl**

This record matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP, but only when the connection is made with SSL encryption.

To make use of this option the server must be built with SSL support. Furthermore, SSL must be enabled by setting the `ssl` configuration parameter (see Section 17.9 for more information). Otherwise, the **hostssl** record is ignored except for logging a warning that it cannot match any connections.

**hostnossl**

This record type has the opposite behavior of **hostssl**; it only matches connection attempts made over TCP/IP that do not use SSL.

**hostgssenc**

This record matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP, but only when the connection is made with GSSAPI encryption.

To make use of this option the server must be built with GSSAPI support. Otherwise, the **hostgssenc** record is ignored except for logging a warning that it cannot match any connections.

**hostnogssenc**

This record type has the opposite behavior of **hostgssenc**; it only matches connection attempts made over TCP/IP that do not use GSSAPI encryption.

**database**

Specifies which database name(s) this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all databases. The value `sameuser` specifies that the record matches if the requested database has the same name as the requested user. The value `samerole` specifies that the requested user must be a member of the role with the same name as the requested database. (`samegroup` is an obsolete but still accepted spelling of `samerole`.) Superusers are not considered to be members of a role for the purposes of `samerole` unless they are explicitly members of the role, directly or indirectly, and not just by virtue of being a superuser. The value `replication` specifies that the record matches if a physical replication connection is requested, however, it doesn’t match with logical replication connections. Note that physical replication connections do not specify any particular database whereas logical replication connections do specify it. Otherwise, this is the name of a specific Postgres Pro database. Multiple database names can be supplied by separating them with commas. A separate file containing database names can be specified by preceding the file name with `@`.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Database</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>IP-address</th>
<th>IP-mask</th>
<th>Auth Method</th>
<th>Auth Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host No SSL</td>
<td>database</td>
<td>user</td>
<td>IP-address</td>
<td>IP-mask</td>
<td>auth-method</td>
<td>[auth-options]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host GSS Enc</td>
<td>database</td>
<td>user</td>
<td>IP-address</td>
<td>IP-mask</td>
<td>auth-method</td>
<td>[auth-options]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host No GSS Enc</td>
<td>database</td>
<td>user</td>
<td>IP-address</td>
<td>IP-mask</td>
<td>auth-method</td>
<td>[auth-options]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Client Authentication

user

Specifies which database user name(s) this record matches. The value all specifies that it matches all users. Otherwise, this is either the name of a specific database user, or a group name preceded by +. (Recall that there is no real distinction between users and groups in Postgres Pro; a + mark really means “match any of the roles that are directly or indirectly members of this role”, while a name without a + mark matches only that specific role.) For this purpose, a superuser is only considered to be a member of a role if they are explicitly a member of the role, directly or indirectly, and not just by virtue of being a superuser. Multiple user names can be supplied by separating them with commas. A separate file containing user names can be specified by preceding the file name with @.

address

Specifies the client machine address(es) that this record matches. This field can contain either a host name, an IP address range, or one of the special key words mentioned below.

An IP address range is specified using standard numeric notation for the range's starting address, then a slash (/) and a CIDR mask length. The mask length indicates the number of high-order bits of the client IP address that must match. Bits to the right of this should be zero in the given IP address. There must not be any white space between the IP address, the /, and the CIDR mask length.

Typical examples of an IPv4 address range specified this way are 172.20.143.89/32 for a single host, or 172.20.143.0/24 for a small network, or 10.6.0.0/16 for a larger one. An IPv6 address range might look like ::1/128 for a single host (in this case the IPv6 loopback address) or fe80::7a31:c1ff:0000:0000/96 for a small network. 0.0.0.0/0 represents all IPv4 addresses, and ::/0 represents all IPv6 addresses. To specify a single host, use a mask length of 32 for IPv4 or 128 for IPv6. In a network address, do not omit trailing zeroes.

An entry given in IPv4 format will match only IPv4 connections, and an entry given in IPv6 format will match only IPv6 connections, even if the represented address is in the IPv4-in-IPv6 range. Note that entries in IPv6 format will be rejected if the system's C library does not have support for IPv6 addresses.

You can also write all to match any IP address, samehost to match any of the server's own IP addresses, or samenet to match any address in any subnet that the server is directly connected to.

If a host name is specified (anything that is not an IP address range or a special key word is treated as a host name), that name is compared with the result of a reverse name resolution of the client's IP address (e.g., reverse DNS lookup, if DNS is used). Host name comparisons are case insensitive. If there is a match, then a forward name resolution (e.g., forward DNS lookup) is performed on the host name to check whether any of the addresses it resolves to are equal to the client's IP address. If both directions match, then the entry is considered to match. (The host name that is used in pg_hba.conf should be the one that address-to-name resolution of the client's IP address returns, otherwise the line won't be matched. Some host name databases allow associating an IP address with multiple host names, but the operating system will only return one host name when asked to resolve an IP address.)

A host name specification that starts with a dot (.) matches a suffix of the actual host name. So .example.com would match foo.example.com (but not just example.com).

When host names are specified in pg_hba.conf, you should make sure that name resolution is reasonably fast. It can be of advantage to set up a local name resolution cache such as nscd. Also, you may wish to enable the configuration parameter log_hostname to see the client's host name instead of the IP address in the log.

These fields do not apply to local records.

Note

Users sometimes wonder why host names are handled in this seemingly complicated way, with two name resolutions including a reverse lookup of the client’s IP address. This complicates
use of the feature in case the client's reverse DNS entry is not set up or yields some undesirable host name. It is done primarily for efficiency: this way, a connection attempt requires at most two resolver lookups, one reverse and one forward. If there is a resolver problem with some address, it becomes only that client's problem. A hypothetical alternative implementation that only did forward lookups would have to resolve every host name mentioned in \texttt{pg\_hba.conf} during every connection attempt. That could be quite slow if many names are listed. And if there is a resolver problem with one of the host names, it becomes everyone's problem.

Also, a reverse lookup is necessary to implement the suffix matching feature, because the actual client host name needs to be known in order to match it against the pattern.

Note that this behavior is consistent with other popular implementations of host name-based access control, such as the Apache HTTP Server and TCP Wrappers.

\textbf{IP-address}
\textbf{IP-mask}

These two fields can be used as an alternative to the \textit{IP-address/mask-length} notation. Instead of specifying the mask length, the actual mask is specified in a separate column. For example, 255.0.0.0 represents an IPv4 CIDR mask length of 8, and 255.255.255.255 represents a CIDR mask length of 32.

These fields do not apply to local records.

\textbf{auth-method}

Specifies the authentication method to use when a connection matches this record. The possible choices are summarized here; details are in Section 19.3.

\textbf{trust}

Allow the connection unconditionally. This method allows anyone that can connect to the Postgres Pro database server to login as any Postgres Pro user they wish, without the need for a password or any other authentication. See Section 19.4 for details.

\textbf{reject}

Reject the connection unconditionally. This is useful for “filtering out” certain hosts from a group, for example a \texttt{reject} line could block a specific host from connecting, while a later line allows the remaining hosts in a specific network to connect.

\textbf{scram-sha-256}

Perform SCRAM-SHA-256 authentication to verify the user's password. See Section 19.5 for details.

\textbf{md5}

Perform SCRAM-SHA-256 or MD5 authentication to verify the user's password. See Section 19.5 for details.

\textbf{password}

Require the client to supply an unencrypted password for authentication. Since the password is sent in clear text over the network, this should not be used on untrusted networks. See Section 19.5 for details.

\textbf{gss}

Use GSSAPI to authenticate the user. This is only available for TCP/IP connections. See Section 19.6 for details. It can be used in conjunction with GSSAPI encryption.

\textbf{sspi}

Use SSPI to authenticate the user. This is only available on Windows. See Section 19.7 for details.
Client Authentication

ident
Obtain the operating system user name of the client by contacting the ident server on the client and check if it matches the requested database user name. Ident authentication can only be used on TCP/IP connections. When specified for local connections, peer authentication will be used instead. See Section 19.8 for details.

peer
Obtain the client’s operating system user name from the operating system and check if it matches the requested database user name. This is only available for local connections. See Section 19.9 for details.

ldap
Authenticate using an LDAP server. See Section 19.10 for details.

radius
Authenticate using a RADIUS server. See Section 19.11 for details.

cert
Authenticate using SSL client certificates. See Section 19.12 for details.

pam
Authenticate using the Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) service provided by the operating system. See Section 19.13 for details.

bsd
Authenticate using the BSD Authentication service provided by the operating system. See Section 19.14 for details.

auth-options
After the auth-method field, there can be field(s) of the form name=value that specify options for the authentication method. Details about which options are available for which authentication methods appear below.

In addition to the method-specific options listed below, there is a method-independent authentication option clientcert, which can be specified in any hostssl record. This option can be set to verify-ca or verify-full. Both options require the client to present a valid (trusted) SSL certificate, while verify-full additionally enforces that the cn (Common Name) in the certificate matches the username or an applicable mapping. This behavior is similar to the cert authentication method (see Section 19.12) but enables pairing the verification of client certificates with any authentication method that supports hostssl entries.

On any record using client certificate authentication (i.e. one using the cert authentication method or one using the clientcert option), you can specify which part of the client certificate credentials to match using the clientname option. This option can have one of two values. If you specify clientname=CN, which is the default, the username is matched against the certificate’s Common Name (CN). If instead you specify clientname=DN the username is matched against the entire Distinguished Name (DN) of the certificate. This option is probably best used in conjunction with a username map. The comparison is done with the DN in RFC 2253 format. To see the DN of a client certificate in this format, do

openssl x509 -in myclient.crt -noout --subject -nameopt RFC2253 | sed "s/ ^subject=//"

Care needs to be taken when using this option, especially when using regular expression matching against the DN.

Files included by @ constructs are read as lists of names, which can be separated by either whitespace or commas. Comments are introduced by #, just as in pg_hba.conf, and nested @ constructs are allowed.
Unless the file name following @ is an absolute path, it is taken to be relative to the directory containing the referencing file.

Since the pg_hba.conf records are examined sequentially for each connection attempt, the order of the records is significant. Typically, earlier records will have tight connection match parameters and weaker authentication methods, while later records will have looser match parameters and stronger authentication methods. For example, one might wish to use trust authentication for local TCP/IP connections but require a password for remote TCP/IP connections. In this case a record specifying trust authentication for connections from 127.0.0.1 would appear before a record specifying password authentication for a wider range of allowed client IP addresses.

The pg_hba.conf file is read on start-up and when the main server process receives a SIGHUP signal. If you edit the file on an active system, you will need to signal the postmaster (using pg_ctl reload, calling the SQL function pg_reload_conf(), or using kill -HUP) to make it re-read the file.

**Note**

The preceding statement is not true on Microsoft Windows: there, any changes in the pg_hba.conf file are immediately applied by subsequent new connections.

The system view pg_hba_file_rules can be helpful for pre-testing changes to the pg_hba.conf file, or for diagnosing problems if loading of the file did not have the desired effects. Rows in the view with non-null error fields indicate problems in the corresponding lines of the file.

**Tip**

To connect to a particular database, a user must not only pass the pg_hba.conf checks, but must have the CONNECT privilege for the database. If you wish to restrict which users can connect to which databases, it's usually easier to control this by granting/revoking CONNECT privilege than to put the rules in pg_hba.conf entries.

Some examples of pg_hba.conf entries are shown in Example 19.1. See the next section for details on the different authentication methods.

**Example 19.1. Example pg_hba.conf Entries**

```
# Allow any user on the local system to connect to any database with
# any database user name using Unix-domain sockets (the default for local
# connections).
#
# TYPE  DATABASE    USER    ADDRESS          METHOD
local  all         all     all              trust

# The same using local loopback TCP/IP connections.
#
# TYPE  DATABASE    USER    ADDRESS          METHOD
host   all         all     127.0.0.1/32     trust

# The same as the previous line, but using a separate netmask column
#
# TYPE  DATABASE    USER    IP-ADDRESS      IP-MASK            METHOD
host   all         all     127.0.0.1      255.255.255.255     trust

# The same over IPv6.
#
# TYPE  DATABASE    USER    ADDRESS          METHOD
host   all         all     ::1/128          trust
```
# The same using a host name (would typically cover both IPv4 and IPv6).
#
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DATABASE</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>METHOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>trust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Allow any user from any host with IP address 192.168.93.x to connect
# to database "postgres" as the same user name that ident reports for
# the connection (typically the operating system user name).
#
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DATABASE</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>METHOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>postgres</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>192.168.93.0/24</td>
<td>ident</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Allow any user from host 192.168.12.10 to connect to database
# "postgres" if the user's password is correctly supplied.
#
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DATABASE</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>METHOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>postgres</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>192.168.12.10/32</td>
<td>scram-sha-256</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Allow any user from hosts in the example.com domain to connect to
# any database if the user's password is correctly supplied.
#
# Require SCRAM authentication for most users, but make an exception
# for user 'mike', who uses an older client that doesn't support SCRAM
# authentication.
#
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DATABASE</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>METHOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>mike</td>
<td>example.com</td>
<td>md5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>example.com</td>
<td>scram-sha-256</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# In the absence of preceding "host" lines, these three lines will
# reject all connections from 192.168.54.1 (since that entry will be
# matched first), but allow GSSAPI-encrypted connections from anywhere else
# on the Internet. The zero mask causes no bits of the host IP address to
# be considered, so it matches any host. Unencrypted GSSAPI connections
# (which "fall through" to the third line since "hostgssenc" only matches
# encrypted GSSAPI connections) are allowed, but only from 192.168.12.10.
#
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DATABASE</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>METHOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>192.168.54.1/32</td>
<td>reject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostgssenc</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>0.0.0.0/0</td>
<td>gss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>192.168.12.10/32</td>
<td>gss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Allow users from 192.168.x.x hosts to connect to any database, if
# they pass the ident check. If, for example, ident says the user is
# "bryanh" and he requests to connect as Postgres Pro user "guest1", the
# connection is allowed if there is an entry in pg_ident.conf for map
# "omicron" that says "bryanh" is allowed to connect as "guest1".
#
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DATABASE</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>METHOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>192.168.0.0/16</td>
<td>ident map=omicron</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# If these are the only three lines for local connections, they will
# allow local users to connect only to their own databases (databases
# with the same name as their database user name) except for administrators
# and members of role "support", who can connect to all databases. The file
# $PGDATA/admins contains a list of names of administrators. Passwords
# are required in all cases.
#
### Client Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DATABASE</th>
<th>USER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>METHOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>sameuser</td>
<td>all</td>
<td></td>
<td>md5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>@admins</td>
<td></td>
<td>md5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>+support</td>
<td></td>
<td>md5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# The last two lines above can be combined into a single line:

| local | all             | @admins,+support |                     | md5    |

# The database column can also use lists and file names:

| local | db1,db2,@demodbs | all             |                     | md5    |

### 19.2. User Name Maps

When using an external authentication system such as Ident or GSSAPI, the name of the operating system user that initiated the connection might not be the same as the database user (role) that is to be used. In this case, a user name map can be applied to map the operating system user name to a database user. To use user name mapping, specify `map=map-name` in the options field in `pg_hba.conf`. This option is supported for all authentication methods that receive external user names. Since different mappings might be needed for different connections, the name of the map to be used is specified in the `map-name` parameter in `pg_hba.conf` to indicate which map to use for each individual connection.

User name maps are defined in the ident map file, which by default is named `pg_ident.conf` and is stored in the cluster’s data directory. (It is possible to place the map file elsewhere, however; see the `ident_file` configuration parameter.) The ident map file contains lines of the general form:

```
map-name  system-username  database-username
```

Comments, whitespace and line continuations are handled in the same way as in `pg_hba.conf`. The `map-name` is an arbitrary name that will be used to refer to this mapping in `pg_hba.conf`. The other two fields specify an operating system user name and a matching database user name. The same `map-name` can be used repeatedly to specify multiple user-mappings within a single map.

There is no restriction regarding how many database users a given operating system user can correspond to, nor vice versa. Thus, entries in a map should be thought of as meaning “this operating system user is allowed to connect as this database user”, rather than implying that they are equivalent. The connection will be allowed if there is any map entry that pairs the user name obtained from the external authentication system with the database user name that the user has requested to connect as.

If the `system-username` field starts with a slash (/), the remainder of the field is treated as a regular expression. (See Section 9.7.3.1 for details of Postgres Pro’s regular expression syntax.) The regular expression can include a single capture, or parenthesized subexpression, which can then be referenced in the `database-username` field as `\1` (backslash-one). This allows the mapping of multiple user names in a single line, which is particularly useful for simple syntax substitutions. For example, these entries

```
mymap  /^\.(.*)@mydomain\.com$/  \1
mymap  /^\.(.*)@otherdomain\.com$/  guest
```

will remove the domain part for users with system user names that end with `@mydomain.com`, and allow any user whose system name ends with `@otherdomain.com` to log in as `guest`.

#### Tip

Keep in mind that by default, a regular expression can match just part of a string. It’s usually wise to use `^` and `$`, as shown in the above example, to force the match to be to the entire system user name.

The `pg_ident.conf` file is read on start-up and when the main server process receives a SIGHUP signal. If you edit the file on an active system, you will need to signal the postmaster (using `pg_ctl reload`, calling the SQL function `pg_reload_conf()`, or using `kill -HUP`) to make it re-read the file.
Client Authentication

A `pg_ident.conf` file that could be used in conjunction with the `pg_hba.conf` file in Example 19.1 is shown in Example 19.2. In this example, anyone logged in to a machine on the 192.168 network that does not have the operating system user name `bryanh`, `ann`, or `robert` would not be granted access. Unix user `robert` would only be allowed access when he tries to connect as Postgres Pro user `bob`, not as `robert` or anyone else. `ann` would only be allowed to connect as `ann`. User `bryanh` would be allowed to connect as either `bryanh` or as `guest1`.

Example 19.2. An Example `pg_ident.conf` File

```
# MAPNAME       SYSTEM-USERNAME         PG-USERNAME
omicron         bryanh                  bryanh
omicron         ann                     ann
# bob has user name robert on these machines
omicron         robert                  bob
# bryanh can also connect as guest1
omicron         bryanh                  guest1
```

19.3. Authentication Methods

Postgres Pro provides various methods for authenticating users:

- **Trust authentication**, which simply trusts that users are who they say they are.
- **Password authentication**, which requires that users send a password.
- **GSSAPI authentication**, which relies on a GSSAPI-compatible security library. Typically this is used to access an authentication server such as a Kerberos or Microsoft Active Directory server.
- **SSPI authentication**, which uses a Windows-specific protocol similar to GSSAPI.
- **Ident authentication**, which relies on an “Identification Protocol” (RFC 1413) service on the client's machine. (On local Unix-socket connections, this is treated as peer authentication.)
- **Peer authentication**, which relies on operating system facilities to identify the process at the other end of a local connection. This is not supported for remote connections.
- **LDAP authentication**, which relies on an LDAP authentication server.
- **RADIUS authentication**, which relies on a RADIUS authentication server.
- **Certificate authentication**, which requires an SSL connection and authenticates users by checking the SSL certificate they send.
- **PAM authentication**, which relies on a PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) library.
- **BSD authentication**, which relies on the BSD Authentication framework (currently available only on OpenBSD).

Peer authentication is usually recommendable for local connections, though trust authentication might be sufficient in some circumstances. Password authentication is the easiest choice for remote connections. All the other options require some kind of external security infrastructure (usually an authentication server or a certificate authority for issuing SSL certificates), or are platform-specific.

The following sections describe each of these authentication methods in more detail.

19.4. Trust Authentication

When `trust` authentication is specified, Postgres Pro assumes that anyone who can connect to the server is authorized to access the database with whatever database user name they specify (even superuser names). Of course, restrictions made in the `database` and `user` columns still apply. This method should only be used when there is adequate operating-system-level protection on connections to the server.

`trust` authentication is appropriate and very convenient for local connections on a single-user workstation. It is usually *not* appropriate by itself on a multiuser machine. However, you might be able to use `trust` even on a multiuser machine, if you restrict access to the server's Unix-domain
Client Authentication

socket file using file-system permissions. To do this, set the `unix_socket_permissions` (and possibly `unix_socket_group`) configuration parameters as described in Section 18.3. Or you could set the `unix_socket_directories` configuration parameter to place the socket file in a suitably restricted directory.

Setting file-system permissions only helps for Unix-socket connections. Local TCP/IP connections are not restricted by file-system permissions. Therefore, if you want to use file-system permissions for local security, remove the host ... 127.0.0.1 ... line from `pg_hba.conf`, or change it to a non-trust authentication method.

trust authentication is only suitable for TCP/IP connections if you trust every user on every machine that is allowed to connect to the server by the `pg_hba.conf` lines that specify trust. It is seldom reasonable to use trust for any TCP/IP connections other than those from localhost (127.0.0.1).

19.5. Password Authentication

There are several password-based authentication methods. These methods operate similarly but differ in how the users' passwords are stored on the server and how the password provided by a client is sent across the connection.

scram-sha-256

The method `scram-sha-256` performs SCRAM-SHA-256 authentication, as described in RFC 7677. It is a challenge-response scheme that prevents password sniffing on untrusted connections and supports storing passwords on the server in a cryptographically hashed form that is thought to be secure.

This is the most secure of the currently provided methods, but it is not supported by older client libraries.

md5

The method `md5` uses a custom less secure challenge-response mechanism. It prevents password sniffing and avoids storing passwords on the server in plain text but provides no protection if an attacker manages to steal the password hash from the server. Also, the MD5 hash algorithm is nowadays no longer considered secure against determined attacks.

The `md5` method cannot be used with the `db_user_namespace` feature.

To ease transition from the `md5` method to the newer SCRAM method, if `md5` is specified as a method in `pg_hba.conf` but the user's password on the server is encrypted for SCRAM (see below), then SCRAM-based authentication will automatically be chosen instead.

password

The method `password` sends the password in clear-text and is therefore vulnerable to password “sniffing” attacks. It should always be avoided if possible. If the connection is protected by SSL encryption then `password` can be used safely, though. (Though SSL certificate authentication might be a better choice if one is depending on using SSL).

Postgres Pro database passwords are separate from operating system user passwords. The password for each database user is stored in the `pg_authid` system catalog. Passwords can be managed with the SQL commands `CREATE ROLE` and `ALTER ROLE`, e.g., `CREATE ROLE foo WITH LOGIN PASSWORD 'secret'`, or the `psql` command `\password`. If no password has been set up for a user, the stored password is null and password authentication will always fail for that user.

The availability of the different password-based authentication methods depends on how a user's password on the server is encrypted (or hashed, more accurately). This is controlled by the configuration parameter `password_encryption` at the time the password is set. If a password was encrypted using the `scram-sha-256` setting, then it can be used for the authentication methods `scram-sha-256` and `password` (but password transmission will be in plain text in the latter case). The authentication method
specification md5 will automatically switch to using the scram-sha-256 method in this case, as explained above, so it will also work. If a password was encrypted using the md5 setting, then it can be used only for the md5 and password authentication method specifications (again, with the password transmitted in plain text in the latter case). (Previous Postgres Pro releases supported storing the password on the server in plain text. This is no longer possible.) To check the currently stored password hashes, see the system catalog pg_authid.

To upgrade an existing installation from md5 to scram-sha-256, after having ensured that all client libraries in use are new enough to support SCRAM, set password_encryption = 'scram-sha-256' in postgresql.conf, make all users set new passwords, and change the authentication method specifications in pg_hba.conf to scram-sha-256.

19.6. GSSAPI Authentication

GSSAPI is an industry-standard protocol for secure authentication defined in RFC 2743. Postgres Pro supports GSSAPI for authentication, communications encryption, or both. GSSAPI provides automatic authentication (single sign-on) for systems that support it. The authentication itself is secure. If GSSAPI encryption or SSL encryption is used, the data sent along the database connection will be encrypted; otherwise, it will not.

GSSAPI support has to be enabled when Postgres Pro Standard is built.

When GSSAPI uses Kerberos, it uses a standard service principal (authentication identity) name in the format servicename/hostname@realm. The principal name used by a particular installation is not encoded in the Postgres Pro server in any way; rather it is specified in the keytab file that the server reads to determine its identity. If multiple principals are listed in the keytab file, the server will accept any one of them. The server's realm name is the preferred realm specified in the Kerberos configuration file(s) accessible to the server.

When connecting, the client must know the principal name of the server it intends to connect to. The servicename part of the principal is ordinarily postgres, but another value can be selected via libpq's krbsrvname connection parameter. The hostname part is the fully qualified host name that libpq is told to connect to. The realm name is the preferred realm specified in the Kerberos configuration file(s) accessible to the client.

The client will also have a principal name for its own identity (and it must have a valid ticket for this principal). To use GSSAPI for authentication, the client principal must be associated with a Postgres Pro database user name. The pg_ident.conf configuration file can be used to map principals to user names; for example, pgusername@realm could be mapped to just pgusername. Alternatively, you can use the full username@realm principal as the role name in Postgres Pro without any mapping.

Postgres Pro also supports mapping client principals to user names by just stripping the realm from the principal. This method is supported for backwards compatibility and is strongly discouraged as it is then impossible to distinguish different users with the same user name but coming from different realms. To enable this, set include_realm to 0. For simple single-realm installations, doing that combined with setting the krb_realm parameter (which checks that the principal's realm matches exactly what is in the krb_realm parameter) is still secure; but this is a less capable approach compared to specifying an explicit mapping in pg_ident.conf.

The location of the server's keytab file is specified by the krb_server_keyfile configuration parameter. For security reasons, it is recommended to use a separate keytab just for the Postgres Pro server rather than allowing the server to read the system keytab file. Make sure that your server keytab file is readable (and preferably only readable, not writable) by the Postgres Pro server account. (See also Section 17.1.)

The keytab file is generated using the Kerberos software; see the Kerberos documentation for details. The following example shows doing this using the kadmin tool of MIT-compatible Kerberos 5 implementations:

```sh
ekadmin% addprinc -randkey postgres/server.my.domain.org
kekadmin% ktadd -k krb5.keytab postgres/server.my.domain.org
```
Client Authentication

The following authentication options are supported for the GSSAPI authentication method:

**include_realm**

If set to 0, the realm name from the authenticated user principal is stripped off before being passed through the user name mapping (Section 19.2). This is discouraged and is primarily available for backwards compatibility, as it is not secure in multi-realm environments unless *krb_realm* is also used. It is recommended to leave *include_realm* set to the default (1) and to provide an explicit mapping in *pg_ident.conf* to convert principal names to Postgres Pro user names.

**map**

Allows mapping from client principals to database user names. See Section 19.2 for details. For a GSSAPI/Kerberos principal, such as `username@EXAMPLE.COM` (or, less commonly, `username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM`), the user name used for mapping is `username@EXAMPLE.COM` (or `username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM`, respectively), unless *include_realm* has been set to 0, in which case `username` (or `username/hostbased`) is what is seen as the system user name when mapping.

**krb_realm**

Sets the realm to match user principal names against. If this parameter is set, only users of that realm will be accepted. If it is not set, users of any realm can connect, subject to whatever user name mapping is done.

In addition to these settings, which can be different for different *pg_hba.conf* entries, there is the server-wide *krb_caseins_users* configuration parameter. If that is set to true, client principals are matched to user map entries case-insensitively. *krb_realm*, if set, is also matched case-insensitively.

### 19.7. SSPI Authentication

SSPI is a Windows technology for secure authentication with single sign-on. Postgres Pro will use SSPI in **negotiate** mode, which will use Kerberos when possible and automatically fall back to NTLM in other cases. SSPI authentication only works when both server and client are running Windows, or, on non-Windows platforms, when GSSAPI is available.

When using Kerberos authentication, SSPI works the same way GSSAPI does; see Section 19.6 for details.

The following configuration options are supported for SSPI:

**include_realm**

If set to 0, the realm name from the authenticated user principal is stripped off before being passed through the user name mapping (Section 19.2). This is discouraged and is primarily available for backwards compatibility, as it is not secure in multi-realm environments unless *krb_realm* is also used. It is recommended to leave *include_realm* set to the default (1) and to provide an explicit mapping in *pg_ident.conf* to convert principal names to Postgres Pro user names.

**compat_realm**

If set to 1, the domain's SAM-compatible name (also known as the NetBIOS name) is used for the *include_realm* option. This is the default. If set to 0, the true realm name from the Kerberos user principal name is used.

Do not disable this option unless your server runs under a domain account (this includes virtual service accounts on a domain member system) and all clients authenticating through SSPI are also using domain accounts, or authentication will fail.

**upn_username**

If this option is enabled along with *compat_realm*, the user name from the Kerberos UPN is used for authentication. If it is disabled (the default), the SAM-compatible user name is used. By default, these two names are identical for new user accounts.
Note that libpq uses the SAM-compatible name if no explicit user name is specified. If you use libpq or a driver based on it, you should leave this option disabled or explicitly specify user name in the connection string.

map

Allows for mapping between system and database user names. See Section 19.2 for details. For an SSPI/Kerberos principal, such as username@EXAMPLE.COM (or, less commonly, username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM), the user name used for mapping is username@EXAMPLE.COM (or username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM, respectively), unless include_realm has been set to 0, in which case username (or username/hostbased) is what is seen as the system user name when mapping.

krb_realm

Sets the realm to match user principal names against. If this parameter is set, only users of that realm will be accepted. If it is not set, users of any realm can connect, subject to whatever user name mapping is done.

19.8. Ident Authentication

The ident authentication method works by obtaining the client's operating system user name from an ident server and using it as the allowed database user name (with an optional user name mapping). This is only supported on TCP/IP connections.

Note

When ident is specified for a local (non-TCP/IP) connection, peer authentication (see Section 19.9) will be used instead.

The following configuration options are supported for ident:

map

Allows for mapping between system and database user names. See Section 19.2 for details.

The "Identification Protocol" is described in RFC 1413. Virtually every Unix-like operating system ships with an ident server that listens on TCP port 113 by default. The basic functionality of an ident server is to answer questions like “What user initiated the connection that goes out of your port $X$ and connects to my port $Y$?”. Since Postgres Pro knows both $X$ and $Y$ when a physical connection is established, it can interrogate the ident server on the host of the connecting client and can theoretically determine the operating system user for any given connection.

The drawback of this procedure is that it depends on the integrity of the client: if the client machine is untrusted or compromised, an attacker could run just about any program on port 113 and return any user name they choose. This authentication method is therefore only appropriate for closed networks where each client machine is under tight control and where the database and system administrators operate in close contact. In other words, you must trust the machine running the ident server. Heed the warning:

The Identification Protocol is not intended as an authorization or access control protocol.

—RFC 1413

Some ident servers have a nonstandard option that causes the returned user name to be encrypted, using a key that only the originating machine’s administrator knows. This option must not be used when using the ident server with Postgres Pro, since Postgres Pro does not have any way to decrypt the returned string to determine the actual user name.

19.9. Peer Authentication
Client Authentication

The peer authentication method works by obtaining the client's operating system user name from the
kernel and using it as the allowed database user name (with optional user name mapping). This method
is only supported on local connections.

The following configuration options are supported for peer:

map

Allows for mapping between system and database user names. See Section 19.2 for details.

Peer authentication is only available on operating systems providing the getpeereid() function, the
SO_PEERCRED socket parameter, or similar mechanisms. Currently that includes Linux, most flavors of
BSD including macOS, and Solaris.

19.10. LDAP Authentication

This authentication method operates similarly to password except that it uses LDAP as the password
verification method. LDAP is used only to validate the user name/password pairs. Therefore the user
must already exist in the database before LDAP can be used for authentication.

LDAP authentication can operate in two modes. In the first mode, which we will call the simple bind
mode, the server will bind to the distinguished name constructed as prefix username suffix. Typically,
the prefix parameter is used to specify cn=, or DOMAIN\ in an Active Directory environment. suffix is
used to specify the remaining part of the DN in a non-Active Directory environment.

In the second mode, which we will call the search+bind mode, the server first binds to the LDAP directory
with a fixed user name and password, specified with ldapbinddn and ldapbindpasswd, and performs a
search for the user trying to log in to the database. If no user and password is configured, an anonymous
bind will be attempted to the directory. The search will be performed over the subtree at ldapbasedn,
and will try to do an exact match of the attribute specified in ldapsearchattribute. Once the user has
been found in this search, the server disconnects and re-binds to the directory as this user, using the
password specified by the client, to verify that the login is correct. This mode is the same as that used by
LDAP authentication schemes in other software, such as Apache mod_authnz_ldap and pam_ldap. This
method allows for significantly more flexibility in where the user objects are located in the directory, but
will cause two separate connections to the LDAP server to be made.

The following configuration options are used in both modes:

ldapserver

Names or IP addresses of LDAP servers to connect to. Multiple servers may be specified, separated
by spaces.

ldapport

Port number on LDAP server to connect to. If no port is specified, the LDAP library's default port
setting will be used.

ldapscheme

Set to ldaps to use LDAPS. This is a non-standard way of using LDAP over SSL, supported by some
LDAP server implementations. See also the ldaptls option for an alternative.

ldapstarttls

Set to 1 to make the connection between Postgres Pro and the LDAP server use TLS encryption. This
uses the StartTLS operation per RFC 4513. See also the ldapscheme option for an alternative.

Note that using ldapscheme or ldapstarttls only encrypts the traffic between the Postgres Pro server and
the LDAP server. The connection between the Postgres Pro server and the Postgres Pro client will still
be unencrypted unless SSL is used there as well.

The following options are used in simple bind mode only:
Client Authentication

**ldapprefix**
String to prepend to the user name when forming the DN to bind as, when doing simple bind authentication.

**ldapsuffix**
String to append to the user name when forming the DN to bind as, when doing simple bind authentication.

The following options are used in search+bind mode only:

**ldapbasedn**
Root DN to begin the search for the user in, when doing search+bind authentication.

**ldapbinddn**
DN of user to bind to the directory with to perform the search when doing search+bind authentication.

**ldapbindpasswd**
Password for user to bind to the directory with to perform the search when doing search+bind authentication.

**ldapsearchattribute**
Attribute to match against the user name in the search when doing search+bind authentication. If no attribute is specified, the uid attribute will be used.

**ldapsearchfilter**
The search filter to use when doing search+bind authentication. Occurrences of $username will be replaced with the user name. This allows for more flexible search filters than ldapsearchattribute.

**ldapurl**
An RFC 4516 LDAP URL. This is an alternative way to write some of the other LDAP options in a more compact and standard form. The format is

```
ldap[s]://host[:port]/basedn[?[attribute][?[scope][?[filter]]]]
```

- `scope` must be one of `base`, `one`, `sub`, typically the last. (The default is `base`, which is normally not useful in this application.) `attribute` can nominate a single attribute, in which case it is used as a value for `ldapsearchattribute`. If `attribute` is empty then `filter` can be used as a value for `ldapsearchfilter`.

The URL scheme ldaps chooses the LDAPS method for making LDAP connections over SSL, equivalent to using `ldapscheme=ldaps`. To use encrypted LDAP connections using the StartTLS operation, use the normal URL scheme `ldap` and specify the `ldaptls` option in addition to `ldapurl`.

For non-anonymous binds, `ldapbinddn` and `ldapbindpasswd` must be specified as separate options.

LDAP URLs are currently only supported with OpenLDAP, not on Windows.

It is an error to mix configuration options for simple bind with options for search+bind.

When using search+bind mode, the search can be performed using a single attribute specified with `ldapsearchattribute`, or using a custom search filter specified with `ldapsearchfilter`. Specifying `ldapsearchattribute=foo` is equivalent to specifying `ldapsearchfilter=\"(foo=$username)\"`. If neither option is specified the default is `ldapsearchattribute=uid`.

If Postgres Pro was compiled with OpenLDAP as the LDAP client library, the `ldapspecifier` setting may be omitted. In that case, a list of host names and ports is looked up via RFC 2782 DNS SRV records. The name `_ldap._tcp.DOMAIN` is looked up, where `DOMAIN` is extracted from `ldapbasedn`.

575
Here is an example for a simple-bind LDAP configuration:

```plaintext
host ... ldap ldapserver=ldap.example.net ldapprefix="cn=" ldapsuffix=", dc=example, dc=net"
```

When a connection to the database server as database user `someuser` is requested, Postgres Pro will attempt to bind to the LDAP server using the DN `cn=someuser, dc=example, dc=net` and the password provided by the client. If that connection succeeds, the database access is granted.

Here is an example for a search+bind configuration:

```plaintext
host ... ldap ldapserver=ldap.example.net ldapbasedn="dc=example, dc=net"
ldapsearchattribute=uid
```

When a connection to the database server as database user `someuser` is requested, Postgres Pro will attempt to bind anonymously (since `ldapbinddn` was not specified) to the LDAP server, perform a search for `(uid=someuser)` under the specified base DN. If an entry is found, it will then attempt to bind using that found information and the password supplied by the client. If that second connection succeeds, the database access is granted.

Here is the same search+bind configuration written as a URL:

```plaintext
host ... ldap ldapurl="ldap://ldap.example.net/dc=example,dc=net?uid?sub"
```

Some other software that supports authentication against LDAP uses the same URL format, so it will be easier to share the configuration.

Here is an example for a search+bind configuration that uses `ldapsearchfilter` instead of `ldapsearchattribute` to allow authentication by user ID or email address:

```plaintext
host ... ldap ldapserver=ldap.example.net ldapbasedn="dc=example, dc=net"
ldapsearchfilter="(|(uid=$username)(mail=$username))"
```

Here is an example for a search+bind configuration that uses DNS SRV discovery to find the host name(s) and port(s) for the LDAP service for the domain name `example.net`:

```plaintext
host ... ldap ldapbasedn="dc=example,dc=net"
```

**Tip**

Since LDAP often uses commas and spaces to separate the different parts of a DN, it is often necessary to use double-quoted parameter values when configuring LDAP options, as shown in the examples.

### 19.11. RADIUS Authentication

This authentication method operates similarly to password except that it uses RADIUS as the password verification method. RADIUS is used only to validate the user name/password pairs. Therefore the user must already exist in the database before RADIUS can be used for authentication.

When using RADIUS authentication, an Access Request message will be sent to the configured RADIUS server. This request will be of type Authenticate Only, and include parameters for `user name`, `password` (encrypted) and `NAS Identifier`. The request will be encrypted using a secret shared with the server. The RADIUS server will respond to this request with either `Access Accept` or `Access Reject`. There is no support for RADIUS accounting.

Multiple RADIUS servers can be specified, in which case they will be tried sequentially. If a negative response is received from a server, the authentication will fail. If no response is received, the next server in the list will be tried. To specify multiple servers, separate the server names with commas and surround the list with double quotes. If multiple servers are specified, the other RADIUS options can also be given as comma-separated lists, to provide individual values for each server. They can also be specified as a single value, in which case that value will apply to all servers.
The following configuration options are supported for RADIUS:

**radiusservers**

The DNS names or IP addresses of the RADIUS servers to connect to. This parameter is required.

**radiussecrets**

The shared secrets used when talking securely to the RADIUS servers. This must have exactly the same value on the Postgres Pro and RADIUS servers. It is recommended that this be a string of at least 16 characters. This parameter is required.

**Note**

The encryption vector used will only be cryptographically strong if Postgres Pro is built with support for OpenSSL. In other cases, the transmission to the RADIUS server should only be considered obfuscated, not secured, and external security measures should be applied if necessary.

**radiusports**

The port numbers to connect to on the RADIUS servers. If no port is specified, the default RADIUS port (1812) will be used.

**radiusidentifiers**

The strings to be used as NAS Identifier in the RADIUS requests. This parameter can be used, for example, to identify which database cluster the user is attempting to connect to, which can be useful for policy matching on the RADIUS server. If no identifier is specified, the default `postgresql` will be used.

If it is necessary to have a comma or whitespace in a RADIUS parameter value, that can be done by putting double quotes around the value, but it is tedious because two layers of double-quoting are now required. An example of putting whitespace into RADIUS secret strings is:

```
host ... radius radiusservers="server1,server2" radiussecrets=""secret one",""secret two"
```

### 19.12. Certificate Authentication

This authentication method uses SSL client certificates to perform authentication. It is therefore only available for SSL connections. When using this authentication method, the server will require that the client provide a valid, trusted certificate. No password prompt will be sent to the client. The `cn` (Common Name) attribute of the certificate will be compared to the requested database user name, and if they match the login will be allowed. User name mapping can be used to allow `cn` to be different from the database user name.

The following configuration options are supported for SSL certificate authentication:

**map**

Allows for mapping between system and database user names. See Section 19.2 for details.

It is redundant to use the `clientcert` option with `cert` authentication because `cert` authentication is effectively `trust` authentication with `clientcert=verify-full`.

### 19.13. PAM Authentication

This authentication method operates similarly to `password` except that it uses PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) as the authentication mechanism. The default PAM service name is `postgresql`. PAM is used only to validate user name/password pairs and optionally the connected remote host name.
or IP address. Therefore the user must already exist in the database before PAM can be used for authentication. For more information about PAM, please read the Linux-PAM Page.

The following configuration options are supported for PAM:

```
pamservice
  PAM service name.
```

```
pam_use_hostname
  Determines whether the remote IP address or the host name is provided to PAM modules through the PAM_RHOST item. By default, the IP address is used. Set this option to 1 to use the resolved host name instead. Host name resolution can lead to login delays. (Most PAM configurations don't use this information, so it is only necessary to consider this setting if a PAM configuration was specifically created to make use of it.)
```

**Note**

If PAM is set up to read /etc/shadow, authentication will fail because the Postgres Pro server is started by a non-root user. However, this is not an issue when PAM is configured to use LDAP or other authentication methods.

### 19.14. BSD Authentication

This authentication method operates similarly to password except that it uses BSD Authentication to verify the password. BSD Authentication is used only to validate user name/password pairs. Therefore the user's role must already exist in the database before BSD Authentication can be used for authentication. The BSD Authentication framework is currently only available on OpenBSD.

BSD Authentication in Postgres Pro uses the auth-postgresql login type and authenticates with the postgresql login class if that's defined in login.conf. By default that login class does not exist, and Postgres Pro will use the default login class.

**Note**

To use BSD Authentication, the Postgres Pro user account (that is, the operating system user running the server) must first be added to the auth group. The auth group exists by default on OpenBSD systems.

### 19.15. Authentication Problems

Authentication failures and related problems generally manifest themselves through error messages like the following:

```
FATAL:  no pg_hba.conf entry for host "123.123.123.123", user "andym", database "testdb"
```

This is what you are most likely to get if you succeed in contacting the server, but it does not want to talk to you. As the message suggests, the server refused the connection request because it found no matching entry in its pg_hba.conf configuration file.

```
FATAL:  password authentication failed for user "andym"
```

Messages like this indicate that you contacted the server, and it is willing to talk to you, but not until you pass the authorization method specified in the pg_hba.conf file. Check the password you are providing, or check your Kerberos or ident software if the complaint mentions one of those authentication types.
FATAL: user "andym" does not exist
The indicated database user name was not found.

FATAL: database "testdb" does not exist
The database you are trying to connect to does not exist. Note that if you do not specify a database name, it defaults to the database user name, which might or might not be the right thing.

Tip
The server log might contain more information about an authentication failure than is reported to the client. If you are confused about the reason for a failure, check the server log.
Chapter 20. Database Roles

Postgres Pro manages database access permissions using the concept of roles. A role can be thought of as either a database user, or a group of database users, depending on how the role is set up. Roles can own database objects (for example, tables and functions) and can assign privileges on those objects to other roles to control who has access to which objects. Furthermore, it is possible to grant membership in a role to another role, thus allowing the member role to use privileges assigned to another role.

The concept of roles subsumes the concepts of “users” and “groups”. In PostgreSQL versions before 8.1, users and groups were distinct kinds of entities, but now there are only roles. Any role can act as a user, a group, or both.

This chapter describes how to create and manage roles. More information about the effects of role privileges on various database objects can be found in Section 5.7.

20.1. Database Roles

Database roles are conceptually completely separate from operating system users. In practice it might be convenient to maintain a correspondence, but this is not required. Database roles are global across a database cluster installation (and not per individual database). To create a role use the CREATE ROLE SQL command:

CREATE ROLE name;

name follows the rules for SQL identifiers: either unadorned without special characters, or double-quoted. (In practice, you will usually want to add additional options, such as LOGIN, to the command. More details appear below.) To remove an existing role, use the analogous DROP ROLE command:

DROP ROLE name;

For convenience, the programs createuser and dropuser are provided as wrappers around these SQL commands that can be called from the shell command line:

createuser name
dropuser name

To determine the set of existing roles, examine the pg_roles system catalog, for example

SELECT rolname FROM pg_roles;

The psql program's \du meta-command is also useful for listing the existing roles.

In order to bootstrap the database system, a freshly initialized system always contains one predefined role. This role is always a “superuser”, and by default (unless altered when running initdb) it will have the same name as the operating system user that initialized the database cluster. Customarily, this role will be named postgres. In order to create more roles you first have to connect as this initial role.

Every connection to the database server is made using the name of some particular role, and this role determines the initial access privileges for commands issued in that connection. The role name to use for a particular database connection is indicated by the client that is initiating the connection request in an application-specific fashion. For example, the psql program uses the -U command line option to indicate the role to connect as. Many applications assume the name of the current operating system user by default (including createuser and psql). Therefore it is often convenient to maintain a naming correspondence between roles and operating system users.

The set of database roles a given client connection can connect as is determined by the client authentication setup, as explained in Chapter 19. (Thus, a client is not limited to connect as the role matching its operating system user, just as a person’s login name need not match his or her real name.) Since the role identity determines the set of privileges available to a connected client, it is important to carefully configure privileges when setting up a multiuser environment.
20.2. Role Attributes

A database role can have a number of attributes that define its privileges and interact with the client authentication system.

**login privilege**

Only roles that have the `LOGIN` attribute can be used as the initial role name for a database connection. A role with the `LOGIN` attribute can be considered the same as a “database user”. To create a role with login privilege, use either:

```
CREATE ROLE name LOGIN;
CREATE USER name;
```

*CREATE USER is equivalent to CREATE ROLE except that CREATE USER includes LOGIN by default, while CREATE ROLE does not.*

**superuser status**

A database superuser bypasses all permission checks, except the right to log in. This is a dangerous privilege and should not be used carelessly; it is best to do most of your work as a role that is not a superuser. To create a new database superuser, use `CREATE ROLE name SUPERUSER`. You must do this as a role that is already a superuser.

**database creation**

A role must be explicitly given permission to create databases (except for superusers, since those bypass all permission checks). To create such a role, use `CREATE ROLE name CREATEDB`.

**role creation**

A role must be explicitly given permission to create more roles (except for superusers, since those bypass all permission checks). To create such a role, use `CREATE ROLE name CREATEROLE`. A role with `CREATEROLE` privilege can alter and drop other roles, too, as well as grant or revoke membership in them. However, to create, alter, drop, or change membership of a superuser role, superuser status is required; `CREATEROLE` is insufficient for that.

**initiating replication**

A role must explicitly be given permission to initiate streaming replication (except for superusers, since those bypass all permission checks). A role used for streaming replication must have `LOGIN` permission as well. To create such a role, use `CREATE ROLE name REPLICATION LOGIN`.

**password**

A password is only significant if the client authentication method requires the user to supply a password when connecting to the database. The `password` and `md5` authentication methods make use of passwords. Database passwords are separate from operating system passwords. Specify a password upon role creation with `CREATE ROLE name PASSWORD 'string'`.

A role’s attributes can be modified after creation with `ALTER ROLE`. See the reference pages for the `CREATE ROLE` and `ALTER ROLE` commands for details.

**Tip**

It is good practice to create a role that has the `CREATEDB` and `CREATEROLE` privileges, but is not a superuser, and then use this role for all routine management of databases and roles. This approach avoids the dangers of operating as a superuser for tasks that do not really require it.

A role can also have role-specific defaults for many of the run-time configuration settings described in Chapter 18. For example, if for some reason you want to disable index scans (hint: not a good idea) anytime you connect, you can use:

```
ALTER ROLE myname SET enable_indexscan TO off;
```
This will save the setting (but not set it immediately). In subsequent connections by this role it will appear as though \texttt{SET enable_indexscan TO off} had been executed just before the session started. You can still alter this setting during the session; it will only be the default. To remove a role-specific default setting, use \texttt{ALTER ROLE rolename RESET varname}. Note that role-specific defaults attached to roles without \texttt{LOGIN} privilege are fairly useless, since they will never be invoked.

20.3. Role Membership

It is frequently convenient to group users together to ease management of privileges: that way, privileges can be granted to, or revoked from, a group as a whole. In Postgres Pro this is done by creating a role that represents the group, and then granting \texttt{membership} in the group role to individual user roles.

To set up a group role, first create the role:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE ROLE name;
\end{verbatim}

Typically a role being used as a group would not have the \texttt{LOGIN} attribute, though you can set it if you wish.

Once the group role exists, you can add and remove members using the \texttt{GRANT} and \texttt{REVOKE} commands:

\begin{verbatim}
GRANT group_role TO role1, ...;
REVOKE group_role FROM role1, ...;
\end{verbatim}

You can grant membership to other group roles, too (since there isn't really any distinction between group roles and non-group roles). The database will not let you set up circular membership loops. Also, it is not permitted to grant membership in a role to \texttt{PUBLIC}.

The members of a group role can use the privileges of the role in two ways. First, every member of a group can explicitly do \texttt{SET ROLE} to temporarily “become” the group role. In this state, the database session has access to the privileges of the group role rather than the original login role, and any database objects created are considered owned by the group role not the login role. Second, member roles that have the \texttt{INHERIT} attribute automatically have use of the privileges of roles of which they are members, including any privileges inherited by those roles. As an example, suppose we have done:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE ROLE joe LOGIN INHERIT;
CREATE ROLE admin NOINHERIT;
CREATE ROLE wheel NOINHERIT;
GRANT admin TO joe;
GRANT wheel TO admin;
\end{verbatim}

Immediately after connecting as role \texttt{joe}, a database session will have use of privileges granted directly to \texttt{joe} plus any privileges granted to \texttt{admin}, because \texttt{joe} “inherits” \texttt{admin's} privileges. However, privileges granted to \texttt{wheel} are not available, because even though \texttt{joe} is indirectly a member of \texttt{wheel}, the membership is via \texttt{admin} which has the \texttt{NOINHERIT} attribute. After:

\begin{verbatim}
SET ROLE admin;
\end{verbatim}

the session would have use of only those privileges granted to \texttt{admin}, and not those granted to \texttt{joe}. After:

\begin{verbatim}
SET ROLE wheel;
\end{verbatim}

the session would have use of only those privileges granted to \texttt{wheel}, and not those granted to either \texttt{joe} or \texttt{admin}. The original privilege state can be restored with any of:

\begin{verbatim}
SET ROLE joe;
SET ROLE NONE;
RESET ROLE;
\end{verbatim}

Note

The \texttt{SET ROLE} command always allows selecting any role that the original login role is directly or indirectly a member of. Thus, in the above example, it is not necessary to become \texttt{admin} before becoming \texttt{wheel}.
Note

In the SQL standard, there is a clear distinction between users and roles, and users do not automatically inherit privileges while roles do. This behavior can be obtained in Postgres Pro by giving roles being used as SQL roles the `INHERIT` attribute, while giving roles being used as SQL users the `NOINHERIT` attribute. However, Postgres Pro defaults to giving all roles the `INHERIT` attribute, for backward compatibility with pre-8.1 releases in which users always had use of permissions granted to groups they were members of.

The role attributes `LOGIN`, `SUPERUSER`, `CREATEDB`, and `CREATEROLE` can be thought of as special privileges, but they are never inherited as ordinary privileges on database objects are. You must actually `SET ROLE` to a specific role having one of these attributes in order to make use of the attribute. Continuing the above example, we might choose to grant `CREATEDB` and `CREATEROLE` to the `admin` role. Then a session connecting as role `joe` would not have these privileges immediately, only after doing `SET ROLE admin`.

To destroy a group role, use `DROP ROLE`:

```
DROP ROLE name;
```

Any memberships in the group role are automatically revoked (but the member roles are not otherwise affected).

## 20.4. Dropping Roles

Because roles can own database objects and can hold privileges to access other objects, dropping a role is often not just a matter of a quick `DROP ROLE`. Any objects owned by the role must first be dropped or reassigned to other owners; and any permissions granted to the role must be revoked.

Ownership of objects can be transferred one at a time using `ALTER` commands, for example:

```
ALTER TABLE bobs_table OWNER TO alice;
```

Alternatively, the `REASSIGN OWNED` command can be used to reassign ownership of all objects owned by the role-to-be-dropped to a single other role. Because `REASSIGN OWNED` cannot access objects in other databases, it is necessary to run it in each database that contains objects owned by the role. (Note that the first such `REASSIGN OWNED` will change the ownership of any shared-across-databases objects, that is databases or tablespaces, that are owned by the role-to-be-dropped.)

Once any valuable objects have been transferred to new owners, any remaining objects owned by the role-to-be-dropped can be dropped with the `DROP OWNED` command. Again, this command cannot access objects in other databases, so it is necessary to run it in each database that contains objects owned by the role. Also, `DROP OWNED` will not drop entire databases or tablespaces, so it is necessary to do that manually if the role owns any databases or tablespaces that have not been transferred to new owners.

`DROP OWNED` also takes care of removing any privileges granted to the target role for objects that do not belong to it. Because `REASSIGN OWNED` does not touch such objects, it’s typically necessary to run both `REASSIGN OWNED` and `DROP OWNED` (in that order!) to fully remove the dependencies of a role to be dropped.

In short then, the most general recipe for removing a role that has been used to own objects is:

```
REASSIGN OWNED BY doomed_role TO successor_role;
DROP OWNED BY doomed_role;
-- repeat the above commands in each database of the cluster
DROP ROLE doomed_role;
```

When not all owned objects are to be transferred to the same successor owner, it’s best to handle the exceptions manually and then perform the above steps to mop up.

If `DROP ROLE` is attempted while dependent objects still remain, it will issue messages identifying which objects need to be reassigned or dropped.
20.5. Predefined Roles

Postgres Pro provides a set of predefined roles that provide access to certain, commonly needed, privileged capabilities and information. Administrators (including roles that have the CREATEROLE privilege) can GRANT these roles to users and/or other roles in their environment, providing those users with access to the specified capabilities and information.

The predefined roles are described in Table 20.1. Note that the specific permissions for each of the roles may change in the future as additional capabilities are added. Administrators should monitor the release notes for changes.

### Table 20.1. Predefined Roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Allowed Access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_read_all_data</td>
<td>Read all data (tables, views, sequences), as if having SELECT rights on those objects, and USAGE rights on all schemas, even without having it explicitly. This role does not have the role attribute BYPASSRLS set. If RLS is being used, an administrator may wish to set BYPASSRLS on roles which this role is GRANTed to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_write_all_data</td>
<td>Write all data (tables, views, sequences), as if having INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE rights on those objects, and USAGE rights on all schemas, even without having it explicitly. This role does not have the role attribute BYPASSRLS set. If RLS is being used, an administrator may wish to set BYPASSRLS on roles which this role is GRANTed to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_read_all_settings</td>
<td>Read all configuration variables, even those normally visible only to superusers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_read_all_stats</td>
<td>Read all pg_stat_* views and use various statistics related extensions, even those normally visible only to superusers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_scan_tables</td>
<td>Execute monitoring functions that may take ACCESS SHARE locks on tables, potentially for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_monitor</td>
<td>Read/execute various monitoring views and functions. This role is a member of pg_read_all_settings, pg_read_all_stats and pg_stat_scan_tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_database_owner</td>
<td>None. Membership consists, implicitly, of the current database owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_signal_backend</td>
<td>Signal another backend to cancel a query or terminate its session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_read_server_files</td>
<td>Allow reading files from any location the database can access on the server with COPY and other file-access functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_write_server_files</td>
<td>Allow writing to files in any location the database can access on the server with COPY and other file-access functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_execute_server_program</td>
<td>Allow executing programs on the database server as the user the database runs as with COPY and other functions which allow executing a server-side program.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The pg_monitor, pg_read_all_settings, pg_read_all_stats and pg_stat_scan_tables roles are intended to allow administrators to easily configure a role for the purpose of monitoring the database server. They grant a set of common privileges allowing the role to read various useful configuration settings, statistics and other system information normally restricted to superusers.

The pg_database_owner role has one implicit, situation-dependent member, namely the owner of the current database. The role conveys no rights at first. Like any role, it can own objects or receive grants of access privileges. Consequently, once pg_database_owner has rights within a template database, each owner of a database instantiated from that template will exercise those rights. pg_database_owner cannot be a member of any role, and it cannot have non-implicit members.
Database Roles

The `pg_signal_backend` role is intended to allow administrators to enable trusted, but non-superuser, roles to send signals to other backends. Currently this role enables sending of signals for canceling a query on another backend or terminating its session. A user granted this role cannot however send signals to a backend owned by a superuser. See Section 9.27.2.

The `pg_read_server_files`, `pg_write_server_files` and `pg_execute_server_program` roles are intended to allow administrators to have trusted, but non-superuser, roles which are able to access files and run programs on the database server as the user the database runs as. As these roles are able to access any file on the server file system, they bypass all database-level permission checks when accessing files directly and they could be used to gain superuser-level access, therefore great care should be taken when granting these roles to users.

Care should be taken when granting these roles to ensure they are only used where needed and with the understanding that these roles grant access to privileged information.

Administrators can grant access to these roles to users using the `GRANT` command, for example:

```
GRANT pg_signal_backend TO admin_user;
```

### 20.6. Function Security

Functions, triggers and row-level security policies allow users to insert code into the backend server that other users might execute unintentionally. Hence, these mechanisms permit users to “Trojan horse” others with relative ease. The strongest protection is tight control over who can define objects. Where that is infeasible, write queries referring only to objects having trusted owners. Remove from `search_path` the public schema and any other schemas that permit untrusted users to create objects.

Functions run inside the backend server process with the operating system permissions of the database server daemon. If the programming language used for the function allows unchecked memory accesses, it is possible to change the server's internal data structures. Hence, among many other things, such functions can circumvent any system access controls. Function languages that allow such access are considered “untrusted”, and Postgres Pro allows only superusers to create functions written in those languages.
Chapter 21. Managing Databases

Every instance of a running Postgres Pro server manages one or more databases. Databases are therefore the topmost hierarchical level for organizing SQL objects (“database objects”). This chapter describes the properties of databases, and how to create, manage, and destroy them.

21.1. Overview

A small number of objects, like role, database, and tablespace names, are defined at the cluster level and stored in the pg_global tablespace. Inside the cluster are multiple databases, which are isolated from each other but can access cluster-level objects. Inside each database are multiple schemas, which contain objects like tables and functions. So the full hierarchy is: cluster, database, schema, table (or some other kind of object, such as a function).

When connecting to the database server, a client must specify the database name in its connection request. It is not possible to access more than one database per connection. However, clients can open multiple connections to the same database, or different databases. Database-level security has two components: access control (see Section 19.1), managed at the connection level, and authorization control (see Section 5.7), managed via the grant system. Foreign data wrappers (see postgres_fdw) allow for objects within one database to act as proxies for objects in other database or clusters. The older dblink module (see dblink) provides a similar capability. By default, all users can connect to all databases using all connection methods.

If one Postgres Pro server cluster is planned to contain unrelated projects or users that should be, for the most part, unaware of each other; it is recommended to put them into separate databases and adjust authorizations and access controls accordingly. If the projects or users are interrelated, and thus should be able to use each other's resources, they should be put in the same database but probably into separate schemas; this provides a modular structure with namespace isolation and authorization control. More information about managing schemas is in Section 5.9.

While multiple databases can be created within a single cluster, it is advised to consider carefully whether the benefits outweigh the risks and limitations. In particular, the impact that having a shared WAL (see Chapter 28) has on backup and recovery options. While individual databases in the cluster are isolated when considered from the user's perspective, they are closely bound from the database administrator's point-of-view.

Databases are created with the CREATE DATABASE command (see Section 21.2) and destroyed with the DROP DATABASE command (see Section 21.5). To determine the set of existing databases, examine the pg_database system catalog, for example

SELECT datname FROM pg_database;

The psql program's \l meta-command and -l command-line option are also useful for listing the existing databases.

Note

The SQL standard calls databases “catalogs”, but there is no difference in practice.

21.2. Creating a Database

In order to create a database, the Postgres Pro server must be up and running (see Section 17.3).

Databases are created with the SQL command CREATE DATABASE:

CREATE DATABASE name;

where name follows the usual rules for SQL identifiers. The current role automatically becomes the owner of the new database. It is the privilege of the owner of a database to remove it later (which also removes all the objects in it, even if they have a different owner).
Managing Databases

The creation of databases is a restricted operation. See Section 20.2 for how to grant permission.

Since you need to be connected to the database server in order to execute the `CREATE DATABASE` command, the question remains how the first database at any given site can be created. The first database is always created by the `initdb` command when the data storage area is initialized. (See Section 17.2.) This database is called `postgres`. So to create the first “ordinary” database you can connect to `postgres`.

A second database, `template1`, is also created during database cluster initialization. Whenever a new database is created within the cluster, `template1` is essentially cloned. This means that any changes you make in `template1` are propagated to all subsequently created databases. Because of this, avoid creating objects in `template1` unless you want them propagated to every newly created database. More details appear in Section 21.3.

As a convenience, there is a program you can execute from the shell to create new databases, `createdb`.

```
createdb dbname
```

`createdb` does no magic. It connects to the `postgres` database and issues the `CREATE DATABASE` command, exactly as described above. The `createdb` reference page contains the invocation details. Note that `createdb` without any arguments will create a database with the current user name.

```
Chapter 19 contains information about how to restrict who can connect to a given database.
```

Sometimes you want to create a database for someone else, and have them become the owner of the new database, so they can configure and manage it themselves. To achieve that, use one of the following commands:

```
CREATE DATABASE dbname OWNER rolename;
```

from the SQL environment, or:

```
createdb -O rolename dbname
```

from the shell. Only the superuser is allowed to create a database for someone else (that is, for a role you are not a member of).

**21.3. Template Databases**

`CREATE DATABASE` actually works by copying an existing database. By default, it copies the standard system database named `template1`. Thus that database is the “template” from which new databases are made. If you add objects to `template1`, these objects will be copied into subsequently created user databases. This behavior allows site-local modifications to the standard set of objects in databases. For example, if you install the procedural language PL/Perl in `template1`, it will automatically be available in user databases without any extra action being taken when those databases are created.

There is a second standard system database named `template0`. This database contains the same data as the initial contents of `template1`, that is, only the standard objects predefined by your version of Postgres Pro. `template0` should never be changed after the database cluster has been initialized. By instructing `CREATE DATABASE` to copy `template0` instead of `template1`, you can create a “pristine” user database (one where no user-defined objects exist and where the system objects have not been altered) that contains none of the site-local additions in `template1`. This is particularly handy when restoring a `pg_dump` dump: the dump script should be restored in a pristine database to ensure that one recreates the correct contents of the dumped database, without conflicting with objects that might have been added to `template1` later on.

Another common reason for copying `template0` instead of `template1` is that new encoding and locale settings can be specified when copying `template0`, whereas a copy of `template1` must use the same
settings it does. This is because template1 might contain encoding-specific or locale-specific data, while template0 is known not to.

To create a database by copying template0, use:

```
CREATE DATABASE dbname TEMPLATE template0;
```

from the SQL environment, or:

```
createdb -T template0 dbname
```

from the shell.

It is possible to create additional template databases, and indeed one can copy any database in a cluster by specifying its name as the template for `CREATE DATABASE`. It is important to understand, however, that this is not (yet) intended as a general-purpose “COPY DATABASE” facility. The principal limitation is that no other sessions can be connected to the source database while it is being copied. `CREATE DATABASE` will fail if any other connection exists when it starts; during the copy operation, new connections to the source database are prevented.

Two useful flags exist in `pg_database` for each database: the columns `datistemplate` and `datallowconn`. `datistemplate` can be set to indicate that a database is intended as a template for `CREATE DATABASE`. If this flag is set, the database can be cloned by any user with `CREATEDB` privileges; if it is not set, only superusers and the owner of the database can clone it. If `datallowconn` is false, then no new connections to that database will be allowed (but existing sessions are not terminated simply by setting the flag false). The `template0` database is normally marked `datallowconn = false` to prevent its modification. Both `template0` and `template1` should always be marked with `datistemplate = true`.

```
template1 and template0 do not have any special status beyond the fact that the name template1 is the default source database name for `CREATE DATABASE`. For example, one could drop template1 and recreate it from template0 without any ill effects. This course of action might be advisable if one has carelessly added a bunch of junk in template1. (To delete template1, it must have `pg_database.datistemplate = false`.)

The postgres database is also created when a database cluster is initialized. This database is meant as a default database for users and applications to connect to. It is simply a copy of template1 and can be dropped and recreated if necessary.
```

**Note**

```
21.4. Database Configuration

Recall from Chapter 18 that the Postgres Pro server provides a large number of run-time configuration variables. You can set database-specific default values for many of these settings.

For example, if for some reason you want to disable the GEQO optimizer for a given database, you'd ordinarily have to either disable it for all databases or make sure that every connecting client is careful to issue `SET geqo TO off`. To make this setting the default within a particular database, you can execute the command:

```
ALTER DATABASE mydb SET geqo TO off;
```

This will save the setting (but not set it immediately). In subsequent connections to this database it will appear as though `SET geqo TO off` had been executed just before the session started. Note that users can still alter this setting during their sessions; it will only be the default. To undo any such setting, use `ALTER DATABASE dbname RESET varname`.

21.5. Destroying a Database

Databases are destroyed with the command `DROP DATABASE`:
DROP DATABASE name;

Only the owner of the database, or a superuser, can drop a database. Dropping a database removes all objects that were contained within the database. The destruction of a database cannot be undone.

You cannot execute the `DROP DATABASE` command while connected to the victim database. You can, however, be connected to any other database, including the `template1` database. `template1` would be the only option for dropping the last user database of a given cluster.

For convenience, there is also a shell program to drop databases, `dropdb`:

`dropdb dbname`

(Unlike `createdb`, it is not the default action to drop the database with the current user name.)

## 21.6. Tablespaces

Tablespaces in Postgres Pro allow database administrators to define locations in the file system where the files representing database objects can be stored. Once created, a tablespace can be referred to by name when creating database objects.

By using tablespaces, an administrator can control the disk layout of a Postgres Pro installation. This is useful in at least two ways. First, if the partition or volume on which the cluster was initialized runs out of space and cannot be extended, a tablespace can be created on a different partition and used until the system can be reconfigured.

Second, tablespaces allow an administrator to use knowledge of the usage pattern of database objects to optimize performance. For example, an index which is very heavily used can be placed on a very fast, highly available disk, such as an expensive solid state device. At the same time a table storing archived data which is rarely used or not performance critical could be stored on a less expensive, slower disk system.

### Warning

Even though located outside the main Postgres Pro data directory, tablespaces are an integral part of the database cluster and cannot be treated as an autonomous collection of data files. They are dependent on metadata contained in the main data directory, and therefore cannot be attached to a different database cluster or backed up individually. Similarly, if you lose a tablespace (file deletion, disk failure, etc), the database cluster might become unreadable or unable to start. Placing a tablespace on a temporary file system like a RAM disk risks the reliability of the entire cluster.

To define a tablespace, use the `CREATE TABLESPACE` command, for example::

`CREATE TABLESPACE fastspace LOCATION '/ssd1/postgresql/data';`

The location must be an existing, empty directory that is owned by the Postgres Pro operating system user. All objects subsequently created within the tablespace will be stored in files underneath this directory. The location must not be on removable or transient storage, as the cluster might fail to function if the tablespace is missing or lost.

### Note

There is usually not much point in making more than one tablespace per logical file system, since you cannot control the location of individual files within a logical file system. However, Postgres Pro does not enforce any such limitation, and indeed it is not directly aware of the file system boundaries on your system. It just stores files in the directories you tell it to use.

Creation of the tablespace itself must be done as a database superuser, but after that you can allow ordinary database users to use it. To do that, grant them the `CREATE` privilege on it.
Tables, indexes, and entire databases can be assigned to particular tablespaces. To do so, a user with the `CREATE` privilege on a given tablespace must pass the tablespace name as a parameter to the relevant command. For example, the following creates a table in the tablespace `space1`:

```
CREATE TABLE foo(i int) TABLESPACE space1;
```

Alternatively, use the `default_tablespace` parameter:

```
SET default_tablespace = space1;
CREATE TABLE foo(i int);
```

When `default_tablespace` is set to anything but an empty string, it supplies an implicit `TABLESPACE` clause for `CREATE TABLE` and `CREATE INDEX` commands that do not have an explicit one.

There is also a `temp_tablespaces` parameter, which determines the placement of temporary tables and indexes, as well as temporary files that are used for purposes such as sorting large data sets. This can be a list of tablespace names, rather than only one, so that the load associated with temporary objects can be spread over multiple tablespaces. A random member of the list is picked each time a temporary object is to be created.

The tablespace associated with a database is used to store the system catalogs of that database. Furthermore, it is the default tablespace used for tables, indexes, and temporary files created within the database, if no `TABLESPACE` clause is given and no other selection is specified by `default_tablespace` or `temp_tablespaces` (as appropriate). If a database is created without specifying a tablespace for it, it uses the same tablespace as the template database it is copied from.

Two tablespaces are automatically created when the database cluster is initialized. The `pg_global` tablespace is used for shared system catalogs. The `pg_default` tablespace is the default tablespace of the `template1` and `template0` databases (and, therefore, will be the default tablespace for other databases as well, unless overridden by a `TABLESPACE` clause in `CREATE DATABASE`).

Once created, a tablespace can be used from any database, provided the requesting user has sufficient privilege. This means that a tablespace cannot be dropped until all objects in all databases using the tablespace have been removed.

To remove an empty tablespace, use the `DROP TABLESPACE` command.

To determine the set of existing tablespaces, examine the `pg_tablespace` system catalog, for example:

```
SELECT spcname FROM pg_tablespace;
```

The `psql` program's `\db` meta-command is also useful for listing the existing tablespaces.

Postgres Pro makes use of symbolic links to simplify the implementation of tablespaces. This means that tablespaces can be used only on systems that support symbolic links.

The directory `$PGDATA/pg_tblspc` contains symbolic links that point to each of the non-built-in tablespaces defined in the cluster. Although not recommended, it is possible to adjust the tablespace layout by hand by redefining these links. Under no circumstances perform this operation while the server is running. Note that in PostgreSQL 9.1 and earlier you will also need to update the `pg_tablespace` catalog with the new locations. (If you do not, `pg_dump` will continue to output the old tablespace locations.)
Chapter 22. Localization

This chapter describes the available localization features from the point of view of the administrator. Postgres Pro supports two localization facilities:

- Using the locale features of the operating system to provide locale-specific collation order, number formatting, translated messages, and other aspects. This is covered in Section 22.1 and Section 22.2.
- Providing a number of different character sets to support storing text in all kinds of languages, and providing character set translation between client and server. This is covered in Section 22.3.

22.1. Locale Support

Locale support refers to an application respecting cultural preferences regarding alphabets, sorting, number formatting, etc. Postgres Pro uses the standard ISO C and POSIX locale facilities provided by the server operating system. For additional information refer to the documentation of your system.

22.1.1. Overview

Locale support is automatically initialized when a database cluster is created using initdb. initdb will initialize the database cluster with the locale setting of its execution environment by default, so if your system is already set to use the locale that you want in your database cluster then there is nothing else you need to do. If you want to use a different locale (or you are not sure which locale your system is set to), you can instruct initdb exactly which locale to use by specifying the --locale option. For example:

```
initdb --locale=ru_RU
```

This example for Unix systems sets the locale to Russian (ru) as spoken in Russia (RU). Other possibilities might include en_US (U.S. English) and fr_CA (French Canadian). If more than one character set can be used for a locale then the specifications can take the form language_territory.codeset. For example, fr_BE.UTF-8 represents the French language (fr) as spoken in Belgium (BE), with a UTF-8 character set encoding.

What locales are available on your system under what names depends on what was provided by the operating system vendor and what was installed. On most Unix systems, the command `locale -a` will provide a list of available locales. Windows uses more verbose locale names, such as German_Germany or Swedish_Sweden.1252, but the principles are the same.

Occasionally it is useful to mix rules from several locales, e.g., use English collation rules but Spanish messages. To support that, a set of locale subcategories exist that control only certain aspects of the localization rules:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LC_COLLATE</td>
<td>String sort order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC_CTYPE</td>
<td>Character classification (What is a letter? Its upper-case equivalent?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC_MESSAGES</td>
<td>Language of messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC_MONETARY</td>
<td>Formatting of currency amounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC_NUMERIC</td>
<td>Formatting of numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC_TIME</td>
<td>Formatting of dates and times</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The category names translate into names of initdb options to override the locale choice for a specific category. For instance, to set the locale to French Canadian, but use U.S. rules for formatting currency, use initdb --locale=fr_CA --lc-monetary=en_US.

If you want the system to behave as if it had no locale support, use the special locale name C, or equivalently POSIX.

Some locale categories must have their values fixed when the database is created. You can use different settings for different databases, but once a database is created, you cannot change them for that database anymore. LC_COLLATE and LC_CTYPE are these categories. They affect the sort order of indexes,
so they must be kept fixed, or indexes on text columns would become corrupt. (But you can alleviate this restriction using collations, as discussed in Section 22.2.) The default values for these categories are determined when initdb is run, and those values are used when new databases are created, unless specified otherwise in the CREATE DATABASE command.

The other locale categories can be changed whenever desired by setting the server configuration parameters that have the same name as the locale categories (see Section 18.11.2 for details). The values that are chosen by initdb are actually only written into the configuration file postgresql.conf to serve as defaults when the server is started. If you remove these assignments from postgresql.conf then the server will inherit the settings from its execution environment.

Note that the locale behavior of the server is determined by the environment variables seen by the server, not by the environment of any client. Therefore, be careful to configure the correct locale settings before starting the server. A consequence of this is that if client and server are set up in different locales, messages might appear in different languages depending on where they originated.

When we speak of inheriting the locale from the execution environment, this means the following on most operating systems: For a given locale category, say the collation, the following environment variables are consulted in this order until one is found to be set: LC_ALL, LC_COLLATE (or the variable corresponding to the respective category), LANG. If none of these environment variables are set then the locale defaults to C.

Some message localization libraries also look at the environment variable LANGUAGE which overrides all other locale settings for the purpose of setting the language of messages. If in doubt, please refer to the documentation of your operating system, in particular the documentation about gettext.

To enable messages to be translated to the user's preferred language, NLS must have been selected at build time (configure --enable-nls). All other locale support is built in automatically.

22.1.2. Behavior

The locale settings influence the following SQL features:

- Sort order in queries using ORDER BY or the standard comparison operators on textual data
- The upper, lower, and initcap functions
- Pattern matching operators (LIKE, SIMILAR TO, and POSIX-style regular expressions); locales affect both case insensitive matching and the classification of characters by character-class regular expressions
- The to_char family of functions
- The ability to use indexes with LIKE clauses

The drawback of using locales other than C or POSIX in Postgres Pro is its performance impact. It slows character handling and prevents ordinary indexes from being used by LIKE. For this reason use locales only if you actually need them.

As a workaround to allow Postgres Pro to use indexes with LIKE clauses under a non-C locale, several custom operator classes exist. These allow the creation of an index that performs a strict character-by-character comparison, ignoring locale comparison rules. Refer to Section 11.10 for more information. Another approach is to create indexes using the C collation, as discussed in Section 22.2.

22.1.3. Problems

If locale support doesn't work according to the explanation above, check that the locale support in your operating system is correctly configured. To check what locales are installed on your system, you can use the command locale -a if your operating system provides it.
Check that Postgres Pro is actually using the locale that you think it is. The `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings are determined when a database is created, and cannot be changed except by creating a new database. Other locale settings including `LC_MESSAGES` and `LC_MONETARY` are initially determined by the environment the server is started in, but can be changed on-the-fly. You can check the active locale settings using the `SHOW` command.

Client applications that handle server-side errors by parsing the text of the error message will obviously have problems when the server's messages are in a different language. Authors of such applications are advised to make use of the error code scheme instead.

### 22.2. Collation Support

The collation feature allows specifying the sort order and character classification behavior of data per-column, or even per-operation. This alleviates the restriction that the `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings of a database cannot be changed after its creation.

#### 22.2.1. Concepts

Conceptually, every expression of a collatable data type has a collation. (The built-in collatable data types are `text`, `varchar`, and `char`. User-defined base types can also be marked collatable, and of course a domain over a collatable data type is collatable.) If the expression is a column reference, the collation of the expression is the defined collation of the column. If the expression is a constant, the collation is the default collation of the data type of the constant. The collation of a more complex expression is derived from the collations of its inputs, as described below.

The collation of an expression can be the “default” collation, which means the locale settings defined for the database. It is also possible for an expression's collation to be indeterminate. In such cases, ordering operations and other operations that need to know the collation will fail.

When the database system has to perform an ordering or a character classification, it uses the collation of the input expression. This happens, for example, with `ORDER BY` clauses and function or operator calls such as `<`. The collation to apply for an `ORDER BY` clause is simply the collation of the sort key. The collation to apply for a function or operator call is derived from the arguments, as described below. In addition to comparison operators, collations are taken into account by functions that convert between lower and upper case letters, such as `lower`, `upper`, and `initcap`; by pattern matching operators; and by `to_char` and related functions.

For a function or operator call, the collation that is derived by examining the argument collations is used at run time for performing the specified operation. If the result of the function or operator call is of a collatable data type, the collation is also used at parse time as the defined collation of the function or operator expression, in case there is a surrounding expression that requires knowledge of its collation.

The **collation derivation** of an expression can be implicit or explicit. This distinction affects how collations are combined when multiple different collations appear in an expression. An explicit collation derivation occurs when a `COLLATE` clause is used; all other collation derivations are implicit. When multiple collations need to be combined, for example in a function call, the following rules are used:

1. If any input expression has an explicit collation derivation, then all explicitly derived collations among the input expressions must be the same, otherwise an error is raised. If any explicitly derived collation is present, that is the result of the collation combination.

2. Otherwise, all input expressions must have the same implicit collation derivation or the default collation. If any non-default collation is present, that is the result of the collation combination. Otherwise, the result is the default collation.

3. If there are conflicting non-default implicit collations among the input expressions, then the combination is deemed to have indeterminate collation. This is not an error condition unless the particular function being invoked requires knowledge of the collation it should apply. If it does, an error will be raised at run-time.

For example, consider this table definition:
CREATE TABLE test1 (  
a text COLLATE "ru_RU",
b text COLLATE "es_ES",
...
);

Then in
SELECT a < 'foo' FROM test1;
the < comparison is performed according to ru_RU rules, because the expression combines an implicitly derived collation with the default collation. But in
SELECT a < ('foo' COLLATE "fr_FR") FROM test1;
the comparison is performed using fr_FR rules, because the explicit collation derivation overrides the implicit one. Furthermore, given
SELECT a < b FROM test1;
the parser cannot determine which collation to apply, since the a and b columns have conflicting implicit collations. Since the < operator does need to know which collation to use, this will result in an error. The error can be resolved by attaching an explicit collation specifier to either input expression, thus:
SELECT a < b COLLATE "ru_RU" FROM test1;
or equivalently
SELECT a COLLATE "ru_RU" < b FROM test1;
On the other hand, the structurally similar case
SELECT a || b FROM test1;
does not result in an error, because the || operator does not care about collations: its result is the same regardless of the collation.

The collation assigned to a function or operator's combined input expressions is also considered to apply to the function or operator's result, if the function or operator delivers a result of a collatable data type. So, in
SELECT * FROM test1 ORDER BY a || 'foo';
the ordering will be done according to ru_RU rules. But this query:
SELECT * FROM test1 ORDER BY a || b;
results in an error, because even though the || operator doesn't need to know a collation, the ORDER BY clause does. As before, the conflict can be resolved with an explicit collation specifier:
SELECT * FROM test1 ORDER BY a || b COLLATE "fr_FR";

22.2.2. Managing Collations

A collation is an SQL schema object that maps an SQL name to locales provided by libraries installed in the operating system. A collation definition has a provider that specifies which library supplies the locale data. One standard provider name is libc, which uses the locales provided by the operating system C library. These are the locales that most tools provided by the operating system use. Another provider is icu, which uses the external ICU library. ICU locales can only be used if support for ICU was configured when Postgres Pro was built.

A collation object provided by libc maps to a combination of LC_COLLATE and LC_CTYPE settings, as accepted by the setlocale() system library call. (As the name would suggest, the main purpose of a collation is to set LC_COLLATE, which controls the sort order. But it is rarely necessary in practice to have an LC_CTYPE setting that is different from LC_COLLATE, so it is more convenient to collect these under one concept than to create another infrastructure for setting LC_CTYPE per expression.) Also, a libc collation is tied to a character set encoding (see Section 22.3). The same collation name may exist for different encodings.
Localization

A collation object provided by icu maps to a named collator provided by the ICU library. ICU does not support separate “collate” and “ctype” settings, so they are always the same. Also, ICU collations are independent of the encoding, so there is always only one ICU collation of a given name in a database.

You can specify the provider of the default collation with the --locale and --lc-collate options of the initdb or createdb commands, as follows:

```
--locale=locale[@provider]
--lc-collate=locale[@provider]
```

where provider can take the icu or libc value, and locale is specified in the libc format. You can only specify a single locale provider after the @ symbol. The --lc-collate option overrides the --locale setting, regardless of whether the collation provider is specified.

If you do not specify the provider, libc is used for C and POSIX locales. For other locales, the default provider is:

- icu at the cluster level
- Provider of the default collation from the template database at the database level

**Important**

You can only use the icu collation provider for locales that are supported by libc in your operating system and satisfy all restrictions applicable to icu.

Before starting the server, Postgres Pro checks that the cluster was initialized by a server compiled with the same version of ICU, even if icu is not used as the provider for the default collation. If the ICU library versions do not match, Postgres Pro emits the appropriate informational message.

Before connecting to a database with an icu default collation, Postgres Pro compares this collation version to the one provided by the ICU library. If the collation version changes, you may need to rebuild the objects that depend on a changed collation if you think this change may affect the sort order of your data. Postgres Pro displays a warning if collation versions do not match, or it is impossible to compare them because the cluster does not provide any information about the collation version for the default collation. To suppress these warnings, you can use the ALTER COLLATION "default" REFRESH VERSION command, as explained in ALTER COLLATION.

You can find the default collation and its provider in pg_database.datcollate:

```
locale@provider
```

### 22.2.2.1. Standard Collations

On all platforms, the collations named default, C, and POSIX are available. Additional collations may be available depending on operating system support. The default collation selects the LC_COLLATE and LC_CTYPE values specified at database creation time. The C and POSIX collations both specify “traditional C” behavior, in which only the ASCII letters “A” through “Z” are treated as letters, and sorting is done strictly by character code byte values.

Additionally, the SQL standard collation name ucs_basic is available for encoding UTF8. It is equivalent to C and sorts by Unicode code point.

### 22.2.2.2. Predefined Collations

If the operating system provides support for using multiple locales within a single program (newlocale and related functions), or if support for ICU is configured, then when a database cluster is initialized, initdb populates the system catalog pg_collation with collations based on all the locales it finds in the operating system at the time.

To inspect the currently available locales, use the query SELECT * FROM pg_collation, or the command \dOS+ in psql.
### 22.2.2.2.1. libc Collations

For example, the operating system might provide a locale named `ru_RU.utf8`. `initdb` would then create a collation named `ru_RU.utf8` for encoding UTF8 that has both `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` set to `ru_RU.utf8`. It will also create a collation with the `.utf8` tag stripped off the name. So you could also use the collation under the name `ru_RU`, which is less cumbersome to write and makes the name less encoding-dependent. Note that, nevertheless, the initial set of collation names is platform-dependent.

The default set of collations provided by `libc` map directly to the locales installed in the operating system, which can be listed using the command `locale -a`. In case a `libc` collation is needed that has different values for `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE`, or if new locales are installed in the operating system after the database system was initialized, then a new collation may be created using the `CREATE COLLATION` command. New operating system locales can also be imported en masse using the `pg_import_system_collations()` function.

Within any particular database, only collations that use that database's encoding are of interest. Other entries in `pg_collation` are ignored. Thus, a stripped collation name such as `ru_RU` can be considered unique within a given database even though it would not be unique globally. Use of the stripped collation names is recommended, since it will make one fewer thing you need to change if you decide to change to another database encoding. Note however that the default, `C`, and `POSIX` collations can be used regardless of the database encoding.

Postgres Pro considers distinct collation objects to be incompatible even when they have identical properties. Thus for example,

```
SELECT a COLLATE "C" < b COLLATE "POSIX" FROM test1;
```

will draw an error even though the `C` and `POSIX` collations have identical behaviors. Mixing stripped and non-stripped collation names is therefore not recommended.

### 22.2.2.2. ICU Collations

With ICU, it is not sensible to enumerate all possible locale names. ICU uses a particular naming system for locales, but there are many more ways to name a locale than there are actually distinct locales. `initdb` uses the ICU APIs to extract a set of distinct locales to populate the initial set of collations. Collations provided by ICU are created in the SQL environment with names in BCP 47 language tag format, with a “private use” extension `-x-icu` appended, to distinguish them from `libc` locales.

Here are some example collations that might be created:

- `ru-x-icu`
  - Russian collation, default variant
- `ru-UA-x-icu`
  - Russian collation for Ukraine, default variant

  (There is also, say, `ru-RU-x-icu`, but as of this writing, it is equivalent to `ru-x-icu`.)

- `und-x-icu` (for “undefined”)
  - ICU “root” collation. Use this to get a reasonable language-agnostic sort order.

Some (less frequently used) encodings are not supported by ICU. When the database encoding is one of these, ICU collation entries in `pg_collation` are ignored. Attempting to use one will draw an error along the lines of “collation "de-x-icu" for encoding "WIN874" does not exist”.

### 22.2.2.3. Creating New Collation Objects

If the standard and predefined collations are not sufficient, users can create their own collation objects using the SQL command `CREATE COLLATION`.

The standard and predefined collations are in the schema `pg_catalog`, like all predefined objects. User-defined collations should be created in user schemas. This also ensures that they are saved by `pg_dump`.
22.2.2.3.1. libc Collations

New libc collations can be created like this:

CREATE COLLATION russian (provider = libc, locale = 'ru_RU');

The exact values that are acceptable for the locale clause in this command depend on the operating system. On Unix-like systems, the command `locale -a` will show a list.

Since the predefined libc collations already include all collations defined in the operating system when the database instance is initialized, it is not often necessary to manually create new ones. Reasons might be if a different naming system is desired (in which case see also Section 22.2.2.3.3) or if the operating system has been upgraded to provide new locale definitions (in which case see also `pg_import_system_collations()`).

22.2.2.3.2. ICU Collations

ICU allows collations to be customized beyond the basic language+country set that is preloaded by `initdb`. Users are encouraged to define their own collation objects that make use of these facilities to suit the sorting behavior to their requirements. See https://unicode-org.github.io/icu/userguide/locale/ and https://unicode-org.github.io/icu/userguide/collation/api.html for information on ICU locale naming.

The set of acceptable names and attributes depends on the particular ICU version.

Here are some examples:

CREATE COLLATION "de-u-co-phonebk-x-icu" (provider = icu, locale = 'de-u-co-phonebk');
CREATE COLLATION "de-u-co-phonebk-x-icu" (provider = icu, locale = 'de@collation=phonebook');

German collation with phone book collation type

The first example selects the ICU locale using a “language tag” per BCP 47. The second example uses the traditional ICU-specific locale syntax. The first style is preferred going forward, but it is not supported by older ICU versions.

Note that you can name the collation objects in the SQL environment anything you want. In this example, we follow the naming style that the predefined collations use, which in turn also follow BCP 47, but that is not required for user-defined collations.

CREATE COLLATION "und-u-co-emoji-x-icu" (provider = icu, locale = 'und-u-co-emoji');
CREATE COLLATION "und-u-co-emoji-x-icu" (provider = icu, locale = '@collation=emoji');

Root collation with Emoji collation type, per Unicode Technical Standard #51

Observe how in the traditional ICU locale naming system, the root locale is selected by an empty string.

CREATE COLLATION latn_cyril (provider = icu, locale = 'ru-RU-kr-latn-cyril');
CREATE COLLATION latn_cyril (provider = icu, locale = 'ru@colReorder=latn-cyril');

Sort Latin letters before Cyrillic ones. (The default is Cyrillic before Latin.)

CREATE COLLATION upperfirst (provider = icu, locale = 'ru-RU-uf-upper');
CREATE COLLATION upperfirst (provider = icu, locale = 'ru@colCaseFirst=upper');

Sort upper-case letters before lower-case letters. (The default is lower-case letters first.)

CREATE COLLATION special (provider = icu, locale = 'ru-RU-u-kr-upper-latn-cyril');
CREATE COLLATION special (provider = icu, locale = 'ru@colCaseFirst=upper;colReorder=latn-cyril');

Combines both of the above options.

CREATE COLLATION numeric (provider = icu, locale = 'en-u-kn-true');
CREATE COLLATION numeric (provider = icu, locale = 'en@colNumeric=yes');

Numeric ordering, sorts sequences of digits by their numeric value, for example: A–21 < A–123 (also known as natural sort).
See *Unicode Technical Standard #35* and *BCP 47* for details. The list of possible collation types (co subtag) can be found in the *CLDR repository*.

Note that while this system allows creating collations that “ignore case” or “ignore accents” or similar (using the ks key), in order for such collations to act in a truly case- or accent-insensitive manner, they also need to be declared as not deterministic in *CREATE COLLATION*; see Section 22.2.2.4. Otherwise, any strings that compare equal according to the collation but are not byte-wise equal will be sorted according to their byte values.

**Note**

By design, ICU will accept almost any string as a locale name and match it to the closest locale it can provide, using the fallback procedure described in its documentation. Thus, there will be no direct feedback if a collation specification is composed using features that the given ICU installation does not actually support. It is therefore recommended to create application-level test cases to check that the collation definitions satisfy one's requirements.

### 22.2.2.3.3. Copying Collations

The command *CREATE COLLATION* can also be used to create a new collation from an existing collation, which can be useful to be able to use operating-system-independent collation names in applications, create compatibility names, or use an ICU-provided collation under a more readable name. For example:

```
CREATE COLLATION russian FROM "ru_RU";
CREATE COLLATION french FROM "fr-x-icu";
```

### 22.2.2.4. Nondeterministic Collations

A collation is either deterministic or nondeterministic. A deterministic collation uses deterministic comparisons, which means that it considers strings to be equal only if they consist of the same byte sequence. Nondeterministic comparison may determine strings to be equal even if they consist of different bytes. Typical situations include case-insensitive comparison, accent-insensitive comparison, as well as comparison of strings in different Unicode normal forms. It is up to the collation provider to actually implement such insensitive comparisons; the deterministic flag only determines whether ties are to be broken using bytewise comparison. See also *Unicode Technical Standard 10* for more information on the terminology.

To create a nondeterministic collation, specify the property deterministic = false to *CREATE COLLATION*, for example:

```
CREATE COLLATION ndcoll (provider = icu, locale = 'und', deterministic = false);
```

This example would use the standard Unicode collation in a nondeterministic way. In particular, this would allow strings in different normal forms to be compared correctly. More interesting examples make use of the ICU customization facilities explained above. For example:

```
CREATE COLLATION case_insensitive (provider = icu, locale = 'und-u-ks-level2',
  deterministic = false);
CREATE COLLATION ignore_accents (provider = icu, locale = 'und-u-ks-level1-kc-true',
  deterministic = false);
```

All standard and predefined collations are deterministic, all user-defined collations are deterministic by default. While nondeterministic collations give a more “correct” behavior, especially when considering the full power of Unicode and its many special cases, they also have some drawbacks. Foremost, their use leads to a performance penalty. Note, in particular, that B-tree cannot use deduplication with indexes that use a nondeterministic collation. Also, certain operations are not possible with nondeterministic collations, such as pattern matching operations. Therefore, they should be used only in cases where they are specifically wanted.
Tip
To deal with text in different Unicode normalization forms, it is also an option to use the functions/expressions `normalize` and `is_normalized` to preprocess or check the strings, instead of using nondeterministic collations. There are different trade-offs for each approach.

22.3. Character Set Support
The character set support in Postgres Pro allows you to store text in a variety of character sets (also called encodings), including single-byte character sets such as the ISO 8859 series and multiple-byte character sets such as EUC (Extended Unix Code), UTF-8, and Mule internal code. All supported character sets can be used transparently by clients, but a few are not supported for use within the server (that is, as a server-side encoding). The default character set is selected while initializing your Postgres Pro database cluster using `initdb`. It can be overridden when you create a database, so you can have multiple databases each with a different character set.

An important restriction, however, is that each database's character set must be compatible with the database's `LC_CTYPE` (character classification) and `LC_COLLATE` (string sort order) locale settings. For C or POSIX locale, any character set is allowed, but for other libc-provided locales there is only one character set that will work correctly. (On Windows, however, UTF-8 encoding can be used with any locale.) If you have ICU support configured, ICU-provided locales can be used with most but not all server-side encodings.

22.3.1. Supported Character Sets
Table 22.1 shows the character sets available for use in Postgres Pro.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Server?</th>
<th>ICU?</th>
<th>Bytes/Char</th>
<th>Aliases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIG5</td>
<td>Big Five</td>
<td>Traditional Chinese</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>WIN950, Windows950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_CN</td>
<td>Extended UNIX Code-CN</td>
<td>Simplified Chinese</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_JIS_2004</td>
<td>Extended UNIX Code-JP, JIS X 0213</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_KR</td>
<td>Extended UNIX Code-KR</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_TW</td>
<td>Extended UNIX Code-TW</td>
<td>Traditional Chinese, Taiwanese</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB18030</td>
<td>National Standard</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBK</td>
<td>Extended National Standard</td>
<td>Simplified Chinese</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>WIN936, Windows936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
<td>ISO 8859-5, ECMA 113</td>
<td>Latin/Cyrillic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO_8859_6</td>
<td>ISO 8859-6, ECMA 114</td>
<td>Latin/Arabic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Server?</td>
<td>ICU?</td>
<td>Bytes/Char</td>
<td>Aliases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO_8859_7</td>
<td>ISO 8859-7, ECMA 118</td>
<td>Latin/Greek</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO_8859_8</td>
<td>ISO 8859-8, ECMA 121</td>
<td>Latin/Hebrew</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOHAB</td>
<td>JOHAB</td>
<td>Korean (Hangul)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KOI8R</td>
<td>KOI8-R</td>
<td>Cyrillic (Russian)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>KOI8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KOI8U</td>
<td>KOI8-U</td>
<td>Cyrillic (Ukrainian)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN1</td>
<td>ISO 8859-1, ECMA 94</td>
<td>Western European</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO88591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN2</td>
<td>ISO 8859-2, ECMA 94</td>
<td>Central European</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO88592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN3</td>
<td>ISO 8859-3, ECMA 94</td>
<td>South European</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO88593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN4</td>
<td>ISO 8859-4, ECMA 94</td>
<td>North European</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO88594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN5</td>
<td>ISO 8859-9, ECMA 128</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO88599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN6</td>
<td>ISO 8859-10, ECMA 144</td>
<td>Nordic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO885910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN7</td>
<td>ISO 8859-13</td>
<td>Baltic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO885913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN8</td>
<td>ISO 8859-14</td>
<td>Celtic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO885914</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN9</td>
<td>ISO 8859-15</td>
<td>LATIN1 with Euro and accents</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO885915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN10</td>
<td>ISO 8859-16, ASRO SR 14111</td>
<td>Romanian</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO885916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>Mule internal code</td>
<td>Multilingual Emacs</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-4</td>
<td>Mskanji, Shift.JIS, WIN932, Windows932</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SJIS</td>
<td>Shift JIS</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT_JIS_2004</td>
<td>Shift JIS, JIS X 0213</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL_ASCII</td>
<td>unspecified (see text)</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UHC</td>
<td>Unified Hangul Code</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>WIN949, Windows949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>Unicode, 8-bit</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1-4</td>
<td>Unicode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN866</td>
<td>Windows CP866</td>
<td>Cyrillic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ALT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Localization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Server?</th>
<th>ICU?</th>
<th>Bytes/Char</th>
<th>Aliases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WIN874</td>
<td>Windows CP874</td>
<td>Thai</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1250</td>
<td>Windows CP1250</td>
<td>Central European</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1251</td>
<td>Windows CP1251</td>
<td>Cyrillic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>WIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1252</td>
<td>Windows CP1252</td>
<td>Western European</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1253</td>
<td>Windows CP1253</td>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1254</td>
<td>Windows CP1254</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1255</td>
<td>Windows CP1255</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1256</td>
<td>Windows CP1256</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1257</td>
<td>Windows CP1257</td>
<td>Baltic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1258</td>
<td>Windows CP1258</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ABC, TCVN, TCVN5712, VSCII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not all client APIs support all the listed character sets. For example, the Postgres Pro JDBC driver does not support MULE_INTERNAL, LATIN6, LATIN8, and LATIN10.

The SQL_ASCII setting behaves considerably differently from the other settings. When the server character set is SQL_ASCII, the server interprets byte values 0–127 according to the ASCII standard, while byte values 128–255 are taken as uninterpreted characters. No encoding conversion will be done when the setting is SQL_ASCII. Thus, this setting is not so much a declaration that a specific encoding is in use, as a declaration of ignorance about the encoding. In most cases, if you are working with any non-ASCII data, it is unwise to use the SQL_ASCII setting because Postgres Pro will be unable to help you by converting or validating non-ASCII characters.

#### 22.3.2. Setting the Character Set

`initdb` defines the default character set (encoding) for a Postgres Pro cluster. For example,

```bash
initdb -E EUC_JP
```

sets the default character set to EUC_JP (Extended Unix Code for Japanese). You can use `--encoding` instead of `-E` if you prefer longer option strings. If no `-E` or `--encoding` option is given, `initdb` attempts to determine the appropriate encoding to use based on the specified or default locale.

You can specify a non-default encoding at database creation time, provided that the encoding is compatible with the selected locale:

```bash
createdb -E EUC_KR -T template0 --lc-collate=ko_KR.euckr --lc-ctype=ko_KR.euckr korean
```

This will create a database named korean that uses the character set EUC_KR, and locale ko_KR. Another way to accomplish this is to use this SQL command:

```sql
CREATE DATABASE korean WITH ENCODING 'EUC_KR' LC_COLLATE='ko_KR.euckr' LC_CTYPE='ko_KR.euckr' TEMPLATE=template0;
```

Notice that the above commands specify copying the template0 database. When copying any other database, the encoding and locale settings cannot be changed from those of the source database, because that might result in corrupt data. For more information see Section 21.3.
The encoding for a database is stored in the system catalog `pg_database`. You can see it by using the `psql -l` option or the `\l` command.

```
$ psql -l
```

### List of databases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Owner</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Collation</th>
<th>Ctype</th>
<th>Access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clocaledb</td>
<td>hlinnaka</td>
<td>SQL_ASCII</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>englishdb</td>
<td>hlinnaka</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>en_GB.UTF8</td>
<td>en_GB.UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>japanese</td>
<td>hlinnaka</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>ja_JP.UTF8</td>
<td>ja_JP.UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>korean</td>
<td>hlinnaka</td>
<td>EUC_KR</td>
<td>ko_KR.euckr</td>
<td>ko_KR.euckr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postgres</td>
<td>hlinnaka</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>fi_FI.UTF8</td>
<td>fi_FI.UTF8</td>
<td>{=c/hlinnaka}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>template0</td>
<td>hlinnaka</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>fi_FI.UTF8</td>
<td>fi_FI.UTF8</td>
<td>{=c/hlinnaka}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>template1</td>
<td>hlinnaka</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>fi_FI.UTF8</td>
<td>fi_FI.UTF8</td>
<td>{=c/hlinnaka}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hlinnaka,hlinnaka=CTc/hlinnaka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>template0</td>
<td>hlinnaka</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>fi_FI.UTF8</td>
<td>fi_FI.UTF8</td>
<td>{=c/hlinnaka}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hlinnaka,hlinnaka=CTc/hlinnaka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(7 rows)

### Important

On most modern operating systems, Postgres Pro can determine which character set is implied by the `LC_CTYPE` setting, and it will enforce that only the matching database encoding is used. On older systems it is your responsibility to ensure that you use the encoding expected by the locale you have selected. A mistake in this area is likely to lead to strange behavior of locale-dependent operations such as sorting.

Postgres Pro will allow superusers to create databases with `SQL_ASCII` encoding even when `LC_CTYPE` is not `C` or `POSIX`. As noted above, `SQL_ASCII` does not enforce that the data stored in the database has any particular encoding, and so this choice poses risks of locale-dependent misbehavior. Using this combination of settings is deprecated and may someday be forbidden altogether.

### 22.3.3. Automatic Character Set Conversion Between Server and Client

Postgres Pro supports automatic character set conversion between server and client for many combinations of character sets ([Section 22.3.4](#) shows which ones).

To enable automatic character set conversion, you have to tell Postgres Pro the character set (encoding) you would like to use in the client. There are several ways to accomplish this:

- **Using the \encoding command in psql.** \encoding allows you to change client encoding on the fly. For example, to change the encoding to `SJIS`, type:
  
  \encoding SJIS

- **libpq ([Section 32.11](#))** has functions to control the client encoding.

- **Using SET client_encoding TO.** Setting the client encoding can be done with this SQL command:
  
  ```sql
  SET CLIENT_ENCODING TO 'value';
  ```
  
  Also you can use the standard SQL syntax `SET NAMES` for this purpose:
  
  ```sql
  SET NAMES 'value';
  ```
  
  To query the current client encoding:
  
  ```sql
  SHOW client_encoding;
  ```
  
  To return to the default encoding:
RESET client_encoding;

- **Using `PGCLIENTENCODING`**. If the environment variable `PGCLIENTENCODING` is defined in the client's environment, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to the server is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)

- **Using the configuration variable `client_encoding`**. If the `client_encoding` variable is set, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to the server is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)

If the conversion of a particular character is not possible — suppose you chose `EUC_JP` for the server and `LATIN1` for the client, and some Japanese characters are returned that do not have a representation in `LATIN1` — an error is reported.

If the client character set is defined as `SQL_ASCII`, encoding conversion is disabled, regardless of the server's character set. (However, if the server's character set is not `SQL_ASCII`, the server will still check that incoming data is valid for that encoding; so the net effect is as though the client character set were the same as the server's.) Just as for the server, use of `SQL_ASCII` is unwise unless you are working with all-ASCII data.

### 22.3.4. Available Character Set Conversions

PostgreSQL allows conversion between any two character sets for which a conversion function is listed in the `pg_conversion` system catalog. PostgreSQL comes with some predefined conversions, as summarized in Table 22.2 and shown in more detail in Table 22.3. You can create a new conversion using the SQL command `CREATE CONVERSION`. (To be used for automatic client/server conversions, a conversion must be marked as “default” for its character set pair.)

**Table 22.2. Built-in Client/Server Character Set Conversions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server Character Set</th>
<th>Available Client Character Sets</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIG5</td>
<td><strong>not supported as a server encoding</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_CN</td>
<td>EUC_CN, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_JP</td>
<td>EUC_JP, MULE_INTERNAL, SJIS, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_JIS_2004</td>
<td>EUC_JIS_2004, SHIFT_JIS_2004, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_KR</td>
<td>EUC_KR, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUC_TW</td>
<td>EUC_TW, BIG5, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB18030</td>
<td><strong>not supported as a server encoding</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBK</td>
<td><strong>not supported as a server encoding</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5, KOI8R, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866, WIN1251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO_8859_6</td>
<td>ISO_8859_6, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO_8859_7</td>
<td>ISO_8859_7, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO_8859_8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_8, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOHAB</td>
<td><strong>not supported as a server encoding</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KOI8R</td>
<td>KOI8R, ISO_8859_5, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866, WIN1251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KOI8U</td>
<td>KOI8U, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN1</td>
<td>LATIN1, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN2</td>
<td>LATIN2, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN1250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN3</td>
<td>LATIN3, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN4</td>
<td>LATIN4, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN5</td>
<td>LATIN5, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN6</td>
<td>LATIN6, UTF8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Localization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server Character Set</th>
<th>Available Client Character Sets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LATIN7</td>
<td>LATIN7, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN8</td>
<td>LATIN8, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN9</td>
<td>LATIN9, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN10</td>
<td>LATIN10, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>MULE INTERNAL, BIG5, EUC_CN, EUC_JP, EUC_KR, EUC_TW, ISO_8859_5, KOI8R, LATIN1 to LATIN4, SJIS, WIN866, WIN1250, WIN1251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SJIS</td>
<td>not supported as a server encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT_JIS_2004</td>
<td>not supported as a server encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL.ASCII</td>
<td>any (no conversion will be performed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UHC</td>
<td>not supported as a server encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>all supported encodings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN866</td>
<td>WIN866, ISO_8859_5, KOI8R, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN1251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN874</td>
<td>WIN874, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1250</td>
<td>WIN1250, LATIN2, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1251</td>
<td>WIN1251, ISO_8859_5, KOI8R, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1252</td>
<td>WIN1252, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1253</td>
<td>WIN1253, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1254</td>
<td>WIN1254, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1255</td>
<td>WIN1255, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1256</td>
<td>WIN1256, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1257</td>
<td>WIN1257, UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN1258</td>
<td>WIN1258, UTF8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 22.3. All Built-in Character Set Conversions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion Name</th>
<th>Source Encoding</th>
<th>Destination Encoding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big5_to_euc_tw</td>
<td>BIG5</td>
<td>EUC_TW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big5_to_mic</td>
<td>BIG5</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big5_to_utf8</td>
<td>BIG5</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_cn_to_mic</td>
<td>EUC_CN</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_cn_to_utf8</td>
<td>EUC_CN</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_jp_to_mic</td>
<td>EUC_JP</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_jp_to_sjis</td>
<td>EUC_JP</td>
<td>SJIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_jp_to_utf8</td>
<td>EUC_JP</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_kr_to_mic</td>
<td>EUC_KR</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_kr_to_utf8</td>
<td>EUC_KR</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_tw_to_big5</td>
<td>EUC_TW</td>
<td>BIG5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_tw_to_mic</td>
<td>EUC_TW</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_tw_to_utf8</td>
<td>EUC_TW</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gb18030_to_utf8</td>
<td>GB18030</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbk_to_utf8</td>
<td>GBK</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_10_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN6</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Name</td>
<td>Source Encoding</td>
<td>Destination Encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_13_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN7</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_14_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN8</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_15_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN9</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_16_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN10</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_1_to_mic</td>
<td>LATIN1</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_1_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN1</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_2_to_mic</td>
<td>LATIN2</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_2_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN2</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_3_to_windows_1250</td>
<td>LATIN2</td>
<td>WIN1250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_3_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN3</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_4_to_mic</td>
<td>LATIN4</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_4_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN4</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_5_to_koi8_r</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_5_to_mic</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_5_to_utf8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_5_to_windows_1251</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_5_to_windows_866</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_6_to_utf8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_6</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_7_to_utf8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_7</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_8_to_utf8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_8</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso_8859_9_to_utf8</td>
<td>LATIN5</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>johab_to_utf8</td>
<td>JOHAB</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koi8_r_to_iso_8859_5</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koi8_r_to_mic</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koi8_r_to_utf8</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koi8_r_to_windows_1251</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koi8_r_to_windows_866</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koi8_u_to_utf8</td>
<td>KOI8U</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_big5</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>BIG5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_euc_cn</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>EUC_CN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_euc_jp</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>EUC_JP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_euc_kr</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>EUC_KR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_euc_tw</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>EUC_TW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_iso_8859_1</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>LATIN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_iso_8859_2</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>LATIN2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_iso_8859_3</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>LATIN3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_iso_8859_4</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>LATIN4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_iso_8859_5</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_koi8_r</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Name</td>
<td>Source Encoding</td>
<td>Destination Encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_sjis</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>SJIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_windows_1250</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>WIN1250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_windows_1251</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mic_to_windows_866</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sjis_to_euc_jp</td>
<td>SJIS</td>
<td>EUC_JP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sjis_to_mic</td>
<td>SJIS</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sjis_to_utf8</td>
<td>SJIS</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1258_to_utf8</td>
<td>WIN1258</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uhc_to_utf8</td>
<td>UHC</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_big5</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>BIG5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_euc_cn</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>EUC_CN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_euc_jp</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>EUC_JP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_euc_kr</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>EUC_KR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_euc_tw</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>EUC_TW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_gb18030</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>GB18030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_gbk</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>GBK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_1</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_10</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_13</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_14</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_15</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_16</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_2</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_3</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_4</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_5</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_6</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_7</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_8</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>ISO_8859_8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_iso_8859_9</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>LATIN5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_johab</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>JOHAB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_koi8_r</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_koi8_u</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>KOI8U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_sjis</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>SJIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1258</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_uhc</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>UHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1250</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1251</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1252</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1253</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Name</td>
<td>Source Encoding</td>
<td>Destination Encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1254</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1255</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1256</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_1257</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN1257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_866</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_windows_874</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>WIN874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1250_to_iso_8859_2</td>
<td>WIN1250</td>
<td>LATIN2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1250_to_mic</td>
<td>WIN1250</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1250_to_utf8</td>
<td>WIN1250</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1251_to_iso_8859_5</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1251_to_koi8_r</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1251_to_mic</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1251_to_utf8</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1251_to_windows_866</td>
<td>WIN1251</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1252_to_utf8</td>
<td>WIN1252</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_1256_to_utf8</td>
<td>WIN1256</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_866_to_iso_8859_5</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
<td>ISO_8859_5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_866_to_koi8_r</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
<td>KOI8R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_866_to_mic</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
<td>MULE_INTERNAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_866_to_utf8</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_866_to_windows_1251</td>
<td>WIN866</td>
<td>WIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows_874_to_utf8</td>
<td>WIN874</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euc_jis_2004_to_utf8</td>
<td>EUC_JIS_2004</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_euc_jis_2004</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>EUC_JIS_2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shift_jis_2004_to_utf8</td>
<td>SHIFT_JIS_2004</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf8_to_shift_jis_2004</td>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>SHIFT_JIS_2004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a The conversion names follow a standard naming scheme: The official name of the source encoding with all non-alphanumeric characters replaced by underscores, followed by _to_ followed by the similarly processed destination encoding name. Therefore, these names sometimes deviate from the customary encoding names shown in Table 22.1.

### 22.3.5. Further Reading

These are good sources to start learning about various kinds of encoding systems.

**CJKV Information Processing: Chinese, Japanese, Korean & Vietnamese Computing**

Contains detailed explanations of EUC_JP, EUC_CN, EUC_KR, EUC_TW.

[https://www.unicode.org/](https://www.unicode.org/)

The web site of the Unicode Consortium.

**RFC 3629**

UTF-8 (8-bit UCS/Unicode Transformation Format) is defined here.
Chapter 23. Routine Database Maintenance Tasks

Postgres Pro, like any database software, requires that certain tasks be performed regularly to achieve optimum performance. The tasks discussed here are required, but they are repetitive in nature and can easily be automated using standard tools such as cron scripts or Windows’ Task Scheduler. It is the database administrator’s responsibility to set up appropriate scripts, and to check that they execute successfully.

One obvious maintenance task is the creation of backup copies of the data on a regular schedule. Without a recent backup, you have no chance of recovery after a catastrophe (disk failure, fire, mistakenly dropping a critical table, etc.). The backup and recovery mechanisms available in Postgres Pro are discussed at length in Chapter 24.

The other main category of maintenance task is periodic “vacuuming” of the database. This activity is discussed in Section 23.1. Closely related to this is updating the statistics that will be used by the query planner, as discussed in Section 23.1.3.

Another task that might need periodic attention is log file management. This is discussed in Section 23.3. check_postgres is available for monitoring database health and reporting unusual conditions. check_postgres integrates with Nagios and MRTG, but can be run standalone too.

Postgres Pro is low-maintenance compared to some other database management systems. Nonetheless, appropriate attention to these tasks will go far towards ensuring a pleasant and productive experience with the system.

23.1. Routine Vacuuming

Postgres Pro databases require periodic maintenance known as vacuuming. For many installations, it is sufficient to let vacuuming be performed by the autovacuum daemon, which is described in Section 23.1.6. You might need to adjust the autovacuuming parameters described there to obtain best results for your situation. Some database administrators will want to supplement or replace the daemon’s activities with manually-managed VACUUM commands, which typically are executed according to a schedule by cron or Task Scheduler scripts. To set up manually-managed vacuuming properly, it is essential to understand the issues discussed in the next few subsections. Administrators who rely on autovacuuming may still wish to skim this material to help them understand and adjust autovacuuming.

23.1.1. Vacuuming Basics

Postgres Pro’s VACUUM command has to process each table on a regular basis for several reasons:

1. To recover or reuse disk space occupied by updated or deleted rows.
2. To update data statistics used by the Postgres Pro query planner.
3. To update the visibility map, which speeds up index-only scans.
4. To protect against loss of very old data due to transaction ID wraparound or multixact ID wraparound.

Each of these reasons dictates performing VACUUM operations of varying frequency and scope, as explained in the following subsections.

There are two variants of VACUUM: standard VACUUM and VACUUM FULL. VACUUM FULL can reclaim more disk space but runs much more slowly. Also, the standard form of VACUUM can run in parallel with production database operations. (Commands such as SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE will continue to function normally, though you will not be able to modify the definition of a table with commands such as ALTER TABLE while it is being vacuumed.) VACUUM FULL requires an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the table it is
Routine Database
Maintenance Tasks

working on, and therefore cannot be done in parallel with other use of the table. Generally, therefore, administrators should strive to use standard VACUUM and avoid VACUUM FULL.

VACUUM creates a substantial amount of I/O traffic, which can cause poor performance for other active sessions. There are configuration parameters that can be adjusted to reduce the performance impact of background vacuuming — see Section 18.4.4.

23.1.2. Recovering Disk Space

In Postgres Pro, an UPDATE or DELETE of a row does not immediately remove the old version of the row. This approach is necessary to gain the benefits of multiversion concurrency control (MVCC, see Chapter 13): the row version must not be deleted while it is still potentially visible to other transactions. But eventually, an outdated or deleted row version is no longer of interest to any transaction. The space it occupies must then be reclaimed for reuse by new rows, to avoid unbounded growth of disk space requirements. This is done by running VACUUM.

The standard form of VACUUM removes dead row versions in tables and indexes and marks the space available for future reuse. However, it will not return the space to the operating system, except in the special case where one or more pages at the end of a table become entirely free and an exclusive table lock can be easily obtained. In contrast, VACUUM FULL actively compacts tables by writing a complete new version of the table file with no dead space. This minimizes the size of the table, but can take a long time. It also requires extra disk space for the new copy of the table, until the operation completes.

The usual goal of routine vacuuming is to do standard VACUUMs often enough to avoid needing VACUUM FULL. The autovacuum daemon attempts to work this way, and in fact will never issue VACUUM FULL. In this approach, the idea is not to keep tables at their minimum size, but to maintain steady-state usage of disk space: each table occupies space equivalent to its minimum size plus however much space gets used up between vacuum runs. Although VACUUM FULL can be used to shrink a table back to its minimum size and return the disk space to the operating system, there is not much point in this if the table will just grow again in the future. Thus, moderately-frequent standard VACUUM runs are a better approach than infrequent VACUUM FULL runs for maintaining heavily-updated tables.

Some administrators prefer to schedule vacuuming themselves, for example doing all the work at night when load is low. The difficulty with doing vacuuming according to a fixed schedule is that if a table has an unexpected spike in update activity, it may get bloated to the point that VACUUM FULL is really necessary to reclaim space. Using the autovacuum daemon alleviates this problem, since the daemon schedules vacuuming dynamically in response to update activity. It is unwise to disable the daemon completely unless you have an extremely predictable workload. One possible compromise is to set the daemon's parameters so that it will only react to unusually heavy update activity, thus keeping things from getting out of hand, while scheduled VACUUMs are expected to do the bulk of the work when the load is typical.

For those not using autovacuum, a typical approach is to schedule a database-wide VACUUM once a day during a low-usage period, supplemented by more frequent vacuuming of heavily-updated tables as necessary. (Some installations with extremely high update rates vacuum their busiest tables as often as once every few minutes.) If you have multiple databases in a cluster, don't forget to VACUUM each one; the program vacuumdb might be helpful.

Tip

Plain VACUUM may not be satisfactory when a table contains large numbers of dead row versions as a result of massive update or delete activity. If you have such a table and you need to reclaim the excess disk space it occupies, you will need to use VACUUM FULL, or alternatively CLUSTER or one of the table-rewriting variants of ALTER TABLE. These commands rewrite an entire new copy of the table and build new indexes for it. All these options require an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock. Note that they also temporarily use extra disk space approximately equal to the size of the table, since the old copies of the table and indexes can't be released until the new ones are complete.
Routine Database
Maintenance Tasks

Tip
If you have a table whose entire contents are deleted on a periodic basis, consider doing it with \texttt{TRUNCATE} rather than using \texttt{DELETE} followed by \texttt{VACUUM}. \texttt{TRUNCATE} removes the entire content of the table immediately, without requiring a subsequent \texttt{VACUUM} or \texttt{VACUUM FULL} to reclaim the now-unused disk space. The disadvantage is that strict MVCC semantics are violated.

23.1.3. Updating Planner Statistics

The Postgres Pro query planner relies on statistical information about the contents of tables in order to generate good plans for queries. These statistics are gathered by the \texttt{ANALYZE} command, which can be invoked by itself or as an optional step in \texttt{VACUUM}. It is important to have reasonably accurate statistics, otherwise poor choices of plans might degrade database performance.

The autovacuum daemon, if enabled, will automatically issue \texttt{ANALYZE} commands whenever the content of a table has changed sufficiently. However, administrators might prefer to rely on manually-scheduled \texttt{ANALYZE} operations, particularly if it is known that update activity on a table will not affect the statistics of “interesting” columns. The daemon schedules \texttt{ANALYZE} strictly as a function of the number of rows inserted or updated; it has no knowledge of whether that will lead to meaningful statistical changes.

As with vacuuming for space recovery, frequent updates of statistics are more useful for heavily-updated tables than for seldom-updated ones. But even for a heavily-updated table, there might be no need for statistics updates if the statistical distribution of the data is not changing much. A simple rule of thumb is to think about how much the minimum and maximum values of the columns in the table change. For example, a \texttt{timestamp} column that contains the time of row update will have a constantly-increasing maximum value as rows are added and updated; such a column will probably need more frequent statistics updates than, say, a column containing URLs for pages accessed on a website. The URL column might receive changes just as often, but the statistical distribution of its values probably changes relatively slowly.

It is possible to run \texttt{ANALYZE} on specific tables and even just specific columns of a table, so the flexibility exists to update some statistics more frequently than others if your application requires it. In practice, however, it is usually best to just analyze the entire database, because it is a fast operation. \texttt{ANALYZE} uses a statistically random sampling of the rows of a table rather than reading every single row.

Tip
Although per-column tweaking of \texttt{ANALYZE} frequency might not be very productive, you might find it worthwhile to do per-column adjustment of the level of detail of the statistics collected by \texttt{ANALYZE}. Columns that are heavily used in \texttt{WHERE} clauses and have highly irregular data distributions might require a finer-grain data histogram than other columns. See \texttt{ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS}, or change the database-wide default using the \texttt{default_statistics_target} configuration parameter.

Also, by default there is limited information available about the selectivity of functions. However, if you create a statistics object or an expression index that uses a function call, useful statistics will be gathered about the function, which can greatly improve query plans that use the expression index.

Tip
The autovacuum daemon does not issue \texttt{ANALYZE} commands for foreign tables, since it has no means of determining how often that might be useful. If your queries require statistics on foreign
Routine Database
Maintenance Tasks

23.1.4. Updating the Visibility Map

Vacuum maintains a visibility map for each table to keep track of which pages contain only tuples that are known to be visible to all active transactions (and all future transactions, until the page is again modified). This has two purposes. First, vacuum itself can skip such pages on the next run, since there is nothing to clean up.

Second, it allows Postgres Pro to answer some queries using only the index, without reference to the underlying table. Since Postgres Pro indexes don't contain tuple visibility information, a normal index scan fetches the heap tuple for each matching index entry, to check whether it should be seen by the current transaction. An index-only scan, on the other hand, checks the visibility map first. If it's known that all tuples on the page are visible, the heap fetch can be skipped. This is most useful on large data sets where the visibility map can prevent disk accesses. The visibility map is vastly smaller than the heap, so it can easily be cached even when the heap is very large.

23.1.5. Preventing Transaction ID Wraparound Failures

Postgres Pro's MVCC transaction semantics depend on being able to compare transaction ID (XID) numbers: a row version with an insertion XID greater than the current transaction's XID is “in the future” and should not be visible to the current transaction. But since transaction IDs have limited size (32 bits) a cluster that runs for a long time (more than 4 billion transactions) would suffer transaction ID wraparound: the XID counter wraps around to zero, and all of a sudden transactions that were in the past appear to be in the future — which means their output become invisible. In short, catastrophic data loss. (Actually the data is still there, but that’s cold comfort if you cannot get at it.) To avoid this, it is necessary to vacuum every table in every database at least once every two billion transactions.

The reason that periodic vacuuming solves the problem is that VACUUM will mark rows as frozen, indicating that they were inserted by a transaction that committed sufficiently far in the past that the effects of the inserting transaction are certain to be visible to all current and future transactions. Normal XIDs are compared using modulo-2^32 arithmetic. This means that for every normal XID, there are two billion XIDs that are “older” and two billion that are “newer”; another way to say it is that the normal XID space is circular with no endpoint. Therefore, once a row version has been created with a particular normal XID, the row version will appear to be “in the past” for the next two billion transactions, no matter which normal XID we are talking about. If the row version still exists after more than two billion transactions, it will suddenly appear to be in the future. To prevent this, Postgres Pro reserves a special XID, FrozenTransactionId, which does not follow the normal XID comparison rules and is always considered older than every normal XID. Frozen row versions are treated as if the inserting XID were FrozenTransactionId, so that they will appear to be “in the past” to all normal transactions regardless of wraparound issues, and so such row versions will be valid until deleted, no matter how long that is.

Note

In PostgreSQL versions before 9.4, freezing was implemented by actually replacing a row's insertion XID with FrozenTransactionId, which was visible in the row's xmin system column. Newer versions just set a flag bit, preserving the row's original xmin for possible forensic use. However, rows with xmin equal to FrozenTransactionId (2) may still be found in databases pg_upgrade'd from pre-9.4 versions.

Also, system catalogs may contain rows with xmin equal to BootstrapTransactionId (1), indicating that they were inserted during the first phase of initdb. Like FrozenTransactionId, this special XID is treated as older than every normal XID.

vacuum_freeze_min_age controls how old an XID value has to be before rows bearing that XID will be frozen. Increasing this setting may avoid unnecessary work if the rows that would otherwise be frozen...
will soon be modified again, but decreasing this setting increases the number of transactions that can elapse before the table must be vacuumed again.

VACUUM uses the visibility map to determine which pages of a table must be scanned. Normally, it will skip pages that don't have any dead row versions even if those pages might still have row versions with old XID values. Therefore, normal VACUUM won't always freeze every old row version in the table. Periodically, VACUUM will perform an aggressive vacuum, skipping only those pages which contain neither dead rows nor any unfrozen XID or MXID values. vacuum_freeze_table_age controls when VACUUM does that: all-visible but not all-frozen pages are scanned if the number of transactions that have passed since the last such scan is greater than vacuum_freeze_table_age minus vacuum_freeze_min_age. Setting vacuum_freeze_table_age to 0 forces VACUUM to use this more aggressive strategy for all scans.

The maximum time that a table can go unvacuumed is two billion transactions minus the vacuum_freeze_min_age value at the time of the last aggressive vacuum. If it were to go unvacuumed for longer than that, data loss could result. To ensure that this does not happen, autovacuum is invoked on any table that might contain unfrozen rows with XIDs older than the age specified by the configuration parameter autovacuum_freeze_max_age. (This will happen even if autovacuum is disabled.)

This implies that if a table is not otherwise vacuumed, autovacuum will be invoked on it approximately once every autovacuum_freeze_max_age minus vacuum_freeze_min_age transactions. For tables that are regularly vacuumed for space reclamation purposes, this is of little importance. However, for static tables (including tables that receive inserts, but no updates or deletes), there is no need to vacuum for space reclamation, so it can be useful to try to maximize the interval between forced autovacuums on very large static tables. Obviously one can do this either by increasing autovacuum_freeze_max_age or decreasing vacuum_freeze_min_age.

The effective maximum for vacuum_freeze_table_age is 0.95 * autovacuum_freeze_max_age; a setting higher than that will be capped to the maximum. A value higher than autovacuum_freeze_max_age wouldn't make sense because an anti-wraparound autovacuum would be triggered at that point anyway, and the 0.95 multiplier leaves some breathing room to run a manual VACUUM before that happens. As a rule of thumb, vacuum_freeze_table_age should be set to a value somewhat below autovacuum_freeze_max_age, leaving enough gap so that a regularly scheduled VACUUM or an autovacuum triggered by normal delete and update activity is run in that window. Setting it too close could lead to anti-wraparound autovacuums, even though the table was recently vacuumed to reclaim space, whereas lower values lead to more frequent aggressive vacuuming.

The sole disadvantage of increasing autovacuum_freeze_max_age (and vacuum_freeze_table_age along with it) is that the pg_xact and pg_commit_ts subdirectories of the database cluster will take more space, because it must store the commit status and (if track_commit_timestamp is enabled) timestamp of all transactions back to the autovacuum_freeze_max_age horizon. The commit status uses two bits per transaction, so if autovacuum_freeze_max_age is set to its maximum allowed value of two billion, pg_xact can be expected to grow to about half a gigabyte and pg_commit_ts to about 20GB. If this is trivial compared to your total database size, setting autovacuum_freeze_max_age to its maximum allowed value is recommended. Otherwise, set it depending on what you are willing to allow for pg_xact and pg_commit_ts storage. (The default, 200 million transactions, translates to about 50MB of pg_xact storage and about 2GB of pg_commit_ts storage.)

One disadvantage of decreasing vacuum_freeze_min_age is that it might cause VACUUM to do useless work: freezing a row version is a waste of time if the row is modified soon thereafter (causing it to acquire a new XID). So the setting should be large enough that rows are not frozen until they are unlikely to change any more.

To track the age of the oldest unfrozen XIDs in a database, VACUUM stores XID statistics in the system tables pg_class and pg_database. In particular, the relfrozenxid column of a table's pg_class row contains the freeze cutoff XID that was used by the last aggressive VACUUM for that table. All rows inserted by transactions with XIDs older than this cutoff XID are guaranteed to have been frozen. Similarly, the datfrozenxid column of a database's pg_database row is a lower bound on the unfrozen XIDs appearing in that database — it is just the minimum of the per-table relfrozenxid values within the database. A convenient way to examine this information is to execute queries such as:
Routine Database Maintenance Tasks

```sql
SELECT c.oid::regclass as table_name,
       greatest(age(c.relfrozenxid),age(t.relfrozenxid)) as age
FROM pg_class c
LEFT JOIN pg_class t ON c.reltoastrelid = t.oid
WHERE c.relkind IN ('r', 'm');

SELECT datname, age(datfrozenxid) FROM pg_database;
```

The `age` column measures the number of transactions from the cutoff XID to the current transaction's XID.

VACUUM normally only scans pages that have been modified since the last vacuum, but `relfrozenxid` can only be advanced when every page of the table that might contain unfrozen XIDs is scanned. This happens when `relfrozenxid` is more than `vacuum_freeze_table_age` transactions old, when VACUUM's FREEZE option is used, or when all pages that are not already all-frozen happen to require vacuuming to remove dead row versions. When VACUUM scans every page in the table that is not already all-frozen, it should set `age(relfrozenxid)` to a value just a little more than the `vacuum_freeze_min_age` setting that was used (more by the number of transactions started since the VACUUM started). If no `relfrozenxid`-advancing VACUUM is issued on the table until `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` is reached, an autovacuum will soon be forced for the table.

If for some reason autovacuum fails to clear old XIDs from a table, the system will begin to emit warning messages like this when the database's oldest XIDs reach forty million transactions from the wraparound point:

```
WARNING:  database "mydb" must be vacuumed within 39985967 transactions
HINT:  To avoid a database shutdown, execute a database-wide VACUUM in that database.
```

(A manual VACUUM should fix the problem, as suggested by the hint; but note that the VACUUM must be performed by a superuser, else it will fail to process system catalogs and thus not be able to advance the database's `datfrozenxid`.) If these warnings are ignored, the system will shut down and refuse to start any new transactions once there are fewer than three million transactions left until wraparound:

```
ERROR:  database is not accepting commands to avoid wraparound data loss in database "mydb"
HINT:  Stop the postmaster and vacuum that database in single-user mode.
```

The three-million-transaction safety margin exists to let the administrator recover without data loss, by manually executing the required VACUUM commands. However, since the system will not execute commands once it has gone into the safety shutdown mode, the only way to do this is to stop the server and start the server in single-user mode to execute VACUUM. The shutdown mode is not enforced in single-user mode. See the postgres reference page for details about using single-user mode.

### 23.1.5.1. Multixacts and Wraparound

**Multixact IDs** are used to support row locking by multiple transactions. Since there is only limited space in a tuple header to store lock information, that information is encoded as a “multiple transaction ID”, or multixact ID for short, whenever there is more than one transaction concurrently locking a row. Information about which transaction IDs are included in any particular multixact ID is stored separately in the `pg_multixact` subdirectory, and only the multixact ID appears in the `xmax` field in the tuple header. Like transaction IDs, multixact IDs are implemented as a 32-bit counter and corresponding storage, all of which requires careful aging management, storage cleanup, and wraparound handling. There is a separate storage area which holds the list of members in each multixact, which also uses a 32-bit counter and which must also be managed.

Whenever VACUUM scans any part of a table, it will replace any multixact ID it encounters which is older than `vacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age` by a different value, which can be the zero value, a single transaction ID, or a newer multixact ID. For each table, `pg_class.relminmxid` stores the oldest possible multixact ID still appearing in any tuple of that table. If this value is older than `vacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age`, an aggressive vacuum is forced. As discussed in the previous section, an aggressive vacuum means that only those pages which are known to be all-frozen will be skipped. `mxid_age()` can be used on `pg_class.relminmxid` to find its age.
Aggressive VACUUM scans, regardless of what causes them, enable advancing the value for that table. Eventually, as all tables in all databases are scanned and their oldest multixact values are advanced, on-disk storage for older multixacts can be removed.

As a safety device, an aggressive vacuum scan will occur for any table whose multixact-age (see Section 23.1.5.1) is greater than autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age. Also, if the storage occupied by multixacts members exceeds 2GB, aggressive vacuum scans will occur more often for all tables, starting with those that have the oldest multixact-age. Both of these kinds of aggressive scans will occur even if autovacuum is nominally disabled.

23.1.6. The Autovacuum Daemon

Postgres Pro has an optional but highly recommended feature called autovacuum, whose purpose is to automate the execution of VACUUM and ANALYZE commands. When enabled, autovacuum checks for tables that have had a large number of inserted, updated or deleted tuples. These checks use the statistics collection facility; therefore, autovacuum cannot be used unless track_counts is set to true. In the default configuration, autovacuuming is enabled and the related configuration parameters are appropriately set.

The “autovacuum daemon” actually consists of multiple processes. There is a persistent daemon process, called the autovacuum launcher, which is in charge of starting autovacuum worker processes for all databases. The launcher will distribute the work across time, attempting to start one worker within each database every autovacuum_naptime seconds. (Therefore, if the installation has N databases, a new worker will be launched every autovacuum_naptime/N seconds.) A maximum of autovacuum_max_workers worker processes are allowed to run at the same time. If there are more than autovacuum_max_workers databases to be processed, the next database will be processed as soon as the first worker finishes. Each worker process will check each table within its database and execute VACUUM and/or ANALYZE as needed. log_autovacuum_min_duration can be set to monitor autovacuum workers' activity.

If several large tables all become eligible for vacuuming in a short amount of time, all autovacuum workers might become occupied with vacuuming those tables for a long period. This would result in other tables and databases not being vacuumed until a worker becomes available. There is no limit on how many workers might be in a single database, but workers do try to avoid repeating work that has already been done by other workers. Note that the number of running workers does not count towards max_connections or superuser_reserved_connections limits.

Tables whose relfrozenxid value is more than autovacuum_freeze_max_age transactions old are always vacuumed (this also applies to those tables whose freeze max age has been modified via storage parameters; see below). Otherwise, if the number of tuples obsoleted since the last VACUUM exceeds the “vacuum threshold”, the table is vacuumed. The vacuum threshold is defined as:

\[
\text{vacuum threshold} = \text{vacuum base threshold} + \text{vacuum scale factor} \times \text{number of tuples}
\]

where the vacuum base threshold is autovacuum_vacuum_threshold, the vacuum scale factor is autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor, and the number of tuples is \( \text{pg_class}.\text{reltuples} \).

The table is also vacuumed if the number of tuples inserted since the last vacuum has exceeded the defined insert threshold, which is defined as:

\[
\text{vacuum insert threshold} = \text{vacuum base insert threshold} + \text{vacuum insert scale factor} \times \text{number of tuples}
\]

where the vacuum insert base threshold is autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold, and vacuum insert scale factor is autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor. Such vacuums may allow portions of the table to be marked as all visible and also allow tuples to be frozen, which can reduce the work required in subsequent vacuums. For tables which receive INSERT operations but no or almost no UPDATE/DELETE operations, it may be beneficial to lower the table's autovacuum_freeze_min_age as this may allow tuples to be frozen by earlier vacuums. The number of obsolete tuples and the number of inserted tuples are obtained from the statistics collector; it is a semi-accurate count updated by each UPDATE, DELETE and INSERT operation. (It is only semi-accurate because some information might be lost under heavy load.)
If the `relfrozenxid` value of the table is more than `vacuum_freeze_table_age` transactions old, an aggressive vacuum is performed to freeze old tuples and advance `relfrozenxid`; otherwise, only pages that have been modified since the last vacuum are scanned.

For analyze, a similar condition is used: the threshold, defined as:

\[
analyze \text{ threshold} = \text{analyze base threshold} + \text{analyze scale factor} \times \text{number of tuples}
\]

is compared to the total number of tuples inserted, updated, or deleted since the last `ANALYZE`.

Temporary tables cannot be accessed by autovacuum. Therefore, appropriate vacuum and analyze operations should be performed via session SQL commands.

The default thresholds and scale factors are taken from `postgresql.conf`, but it is possible to override them (and many other autovacuum control parameters) on a per-table basis; see `Storage Parameters` for more information. If a setting has been changed via a table’s storage parameters, that value is used when processing that table; otherwise the global settings are used. See Section 18.10 for more details on the global settings.

When multiple workers are running, the autovacuum cost delay parameters (see Section 18.4.4) are “balanced” among all the running workers, so that the total I/O impact on the system is the same regardless of the number of workers actually running. However, any workers processing tables whose `per-table autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay` or `autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit` storage parameters have been set are not considered in the balancing algorithm.

Autovacuum workers generally don’t block other commands. If a process attempts to acquire a lock that conflicts with the `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock held by autovacuum, lock acquisition will interrupt the autovacuum. For conflicting lock modes, see Table 13.2. However, if the autovacuum is running to prevent transaction ID wraparound (i.e., the autovacuum query name in the `pg_stat_activity` view ends with `(to prevent wraparound)`), the autovacuum is not automatically interrupted.

### Warning

Regularly running commands that acquire locks conflicting with a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock (e.g., `ANALYZE`) can effectively prevent autovacuums from ever completing.

#### 23.2. Routine Reindexing

In some situations it is worthwhile to rebuild indexes periodically with the `REINDEX` command or a series of individual rebuilding steps.

B-tree index pages that have become completely empty are reclaimed for re-use. However, there is still a possibility of inefficient use of space: if all but a few index keys on a page have been deleted, the page remains allocated. Therefore, a usage pattern in which most, but not all, keys in each range are eventually deleted will see poor use of space. For such usage patterns, periodic reindexing is recommended.

The potential for bloat in non-B-tree indexes has not been well researched. It is a good idea to periodically monitor the index’s physical size when using any non-B-tree index type.

Also, for B-tree indexes, a freshly-constructed index is slightly faster to access than one that has been updated many times because logically adjacent pages are usually also physically adjacent in a newly built index. (This consideration does not apply to non-B-tree indexes.) It might be worthwhile to reindex periodically just to improve access speed.

`REINDEX` can be used safely and easily in all cases. This command requires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock by default, hence it is often preferable to execute it with its `CONCURRENTLY` option, which requires only a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock.
23.3. Log File Maintenance

It is a good idea to save the database server’s log output somewhere, rather than just discarding it via /dev/null. The log output is invaluable when diagnosing problems. However, the log output tends to be voluminous (especially at higher debug levels) so you won’t want to save it indefinitely. You need to rotate the log files so that new log files are started and old ones removed after a reasonable period of time.

If you simply direct the stderr of postgres into a file, you will have log output, but the only way to truncate the log file is to stop and restart the server. This might be acceptable if you are using Postgres Pro in a development environment, but few production servers would find this behavior acceptable.

A better approach is to send the server’s stderr output to some type of log rotation program. There is a built-in log rotation facility, which you can use by setting the configuration parameter `logging_collector` to `true` in `postgresql.conf`. The control parameters for this program are described in Section 18.8.1. You can also use this approach to capture the log data in machine readable CSV (comma-separated values) format.

Alternatively, you might prefer to use an external log rotation program if you have one that you are already using with other server software. For example, the rotatelogs tool included in the Apache distribution can be used with Postgres Pro. One way to do this is to pipe the server’s stderr output to the desired program. If you start the server with `pg_ctl`, then stderr is already redirected to stdout, so you just need a pipe command, for example:

```
pg_ctl start | rotatelogs /var/log/pgsql_log 86400
```

You can combine these approaches by setting up logrotate to collect log files produced by Postgres Pro built-in logging collector. In this case, the logging collector defines the names and location of the log files, while logrotate periodically archives these files. When initiating log rotation, logrotate must ensure that the application sends further output to the new file. This is commonly done with a postrotate script that sends a `SIGHUP` signal to the application, which then reopens the log file. In Postgres Pro, you can run `pg_ctl` with the `logrotate` option instead. When the server receives this command, the server either switches to a new log file or reopens the existing file, depending on the logging configuration (see Section 18.8.1).

```
Note

When using static log file names, the server might fail to reopen the log file if the max open file limit is reached or a file table overflow occurs. In this case, log messages are sent to the old log file until a successful log rotation. If logrotate is configured to compress the log file and delete it, the server may lose the messages logged in this time frame. To avoid this issue, you can configure the logging collector to dynamically assign log file names and use a prerotate script to ignore open log files.
```

Another production-grade approach to managing log output is to send it to syslog and let syslog deal with file rotation. To do this, set the configuration parameter `log_destination` to `syslog` (to log to syslog only) in `postgresql.conf`. Then you can send a `SIGHUP` signal to the syslog daemon whenever you want to force it to start writing a new log file. If you want to automate log rotation, the logrotate program can be configured to work with log files from syslog.

On many systems, however, syslog is not very reliable, particularly with large log messages; it might truncate or drop messages just when you need them the most. Also, on Linux, syslog will flush each message to disk, yielding poor performance. (You can use a “–” at the start of the file name in the syslog configuration file to disable syncing.)

Note that all the solutions described above take care of starting new log files at configurable intervals, but they do not handle deletion of old, no-longer-useful log files. You will probably want to set up a batch job to periodically delete old log files. Another possibility is to configure the rotation program so that old log files are overwritten cyclically.
**pgBadger** is an external project that does sophisticated log file analysis. **check_postgres** provides Nagios alerts when important messages appear in the log files, as well as detection of many other extraordinary conditions.
Chapter 24. Backup and Restore

As with everything that contains valuable data, Postgres Pro databases should be backed up regularly. While the procedure is essentially simple, it is important to have a clear understanding of the underlying techniques and assumptions.

There are three fundamentally different approaches to backing up Postgres Pro data:

- SQL dump
- File system level backup
- Continuous archiving

Each has its own strengths and weaknesses; each is discussed in turn in the following sections.

24.1. SQL Dump

The idea behind this dump method is to generate a file with SQL commands that, when fed back to the server, will recreate the database in the same state as it was at the time of the dump. Postgres Pro provides the utility program pg_dump for this purpose. The basic usage of this command is:

```
pg_dump dbname > dumpfile
```

As you see, pg_dump writes its result to the standard output. We will see below how this can be useful.

While the above command creates a text file, pg_dump can create files in other formats that allow for parallelism and more fine-grained control of object restoration.

pg_dump is a regular Postgres Pro client application (albeit a particularly clever one). This means that you can perform this backup procedure from any remote host that has access to the database. But remember that pg_dump does not operate with special permissions. In particular, it must have read access to all tables that you want to back up, so in order to back up the entire database you almost always have to run it as a database superuser. (If you do not have sufficient privileges to back up the entire database, you can still back up portions of the database to which you do have access using options such as `-n schema` or `-t table`.)

To specify which database server pg_dump should contact, use the command line options `-h host` and `-p port`. The default host is the local host or whatever your `PGHOST` environment variable specifies. Similarly, the default port is indicated by the `PGPORT` environment variable or, failing that, by the compiled-in default. (Conveniently, the server will normally have the same compiled-in default.)

Like any other Postgres Pro client application, pg_dump will by default connect with the database user name that is equal to the current operating system user name. To override this, either specify the `-U` option or set the environment variable `PGUSER`. Remember that pg_dump connections are subject to the normal client authentication mechanisms (which are described in Chapter 19).

An important advantage of pg_dump over the other backup methods described later is that pg_dump's output can generally be re-loaded into newer versions of Postgres Pro, whereas file-level backups and continuous archiving are both extremely server-version-specific. pg_dump is also the only method that will work when transferring a database to a different machine architecture, such as going from a 32-bit to a 64-bit server.

Dumps created by pg_dump are internally consistent, meaning, the dump represents a snapshot of the database at the time pg_dump began running. pg_dump does not block other operations on the database while it is working. (Exceptions are those operations that need to operate with an exclusive lock, such as most forms of `ALTER TABLE`.)

24.1.1. Restoring the Dump

Text files created by pg_dump are intended to be read in by the psql program. The general command form to restore a dump is
psql dbname < dumpfile

where *dumpfile* is the file output by the pg_dump command. The database *dbname* will not be created by this command, so you must create it yourself from template0 before executing psql (e.g., with `createdb -T template0 dbname`). psql supports options similar to pg_dump for specifying the database server to connect to and the user name to use. See the psql reference page for more information. Non-text file dumps are restored using the pg_restore utility.

Before restoring an SQL dump, all the users who own objects or were granted permissions on objects in the dumped database must already exist. If they do not, the restore will fail to recreate the objects with the original ownership and/or permissions. (Sometimes this is what you want, but usually it is not.)

By default, the psql script will continue to execute after an SQL error is encountered. You might wish to run psql with the `ON_ERROR_STOP` variable set to alter that behavior and have psql exit with an exit status of 3 if an SQL error occurs:

```
psql --set ON_ERROR_STOP=on dbname < dumpfile
```

Either way, you will only have a partially restored database. Alternatively, you can specify that the whole dump should be restored as a single transaction, so the restore is either fully completed or fully rolled back. This mode can be specified by passing the `-1` or `--single-transaction` command-line options to psql. When using this mode, be aware that even a minor error can rollback a restore that has already run for many hours. However, that might still be preferable to manually cleaning up a complex database after a partially restored dump.

The ability of pg_dump and psql to write to or read from pipes makes it possible to dump a database directly from one server to another, for example:

```
pg_dump -h host1 dbname | psql -h host2 dbname
```

---

**Important**

The dumps produced by pg_dump are relative to template0. This means that any languages, procedures, etc. added via `template1` will also be dumped by pg_dump. As a result, when restoring, if you are using a customized `template1`, you must create the empty database from `template0`, as in the example above.

After restoring a backup, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` on each database so the query optimizer has useful statistics; see Section 23.1.3 and Section 23.1.6 for more information. For more advice on how to load large amounts of data into Postgres Pro efficiently, refer to Section 14.4.

---

### 24.1.2. Using pg_dumpall

pg_dump dumps only a single database at a time, and it does not dump information about roles or tablespaces (because those are cluster-wide rather than per-database). To support convenient dumping of the entire contents of a database cluster, the `pg_dumpall` program is provided. `pg_dumpall` backs up each database in a given cluster, and also preserves cluster-wide data such as role and tablespace definitions. The basic usage of this command is:

```
pg_dumpall > dumpfile
```

The resulting dump can be restored with psql:

```
psql -f dumpfile postgres
```

(Actually, you can specify any existing database name to start from, but if you are loading into an empty cluster then `postgres` should usually be used.) It is always necessary to have database superuser access when restoring a `pg_dumpall` dump, as that is required to restore the role and tablespace information. If you use tablespaces, make sure that the tablespace paths in the dump are appropriate for the new installation.
pg_dumpall works by emitting commands to re-create roles, tablespaces, and empty databases, then
invoking pg_dump for each database. This means that while each database will be internally consistent,
the snapshots of different databases are not synchronized.

Cluster-wide data can be dumped alone using the pg_dumpall --globals-only option. This is necessary
to fully backup the cluster if running the pg_dump command on individual databases.

24.1.3. Handling Large Databases

Some operating systems have maximum file size limits that cause problems when creating large pg_dump
output files. Fortunately, pg_dump can write to the standard output, so you can use standard Unix tools
to work around this potential problem. There are several possible methods:

Use compressed dumps. You can use your favorite compression program, for example gzip:

```bash
pg_dump dbname | gzip > filename.gz
```

Reload with:
```
gunzip -c filename.gz | psql dbname
```
or:
```
cat filename.gz | gunzip | psql dbname
```

Use split. The split command allows you to split the output into smaller files that are acceptable
in size to the underlying file system. For example, to make 2 gigabyte chunks:

```bash
pg_dump dbname | split -b 2G - filename
```

Reload with:
```
cat filename* | psql dbname
```

If using GNU split, it is possible to use it and gzip together:
```
pg_dump dbname | split -b 2G --filter='gzip > $FILE.gz'
```

It can be restored using zcat.

Use pg_dump’s custom dump format. If Postgres Pro was built on a system with the zlib
compression library installed, the custom dump format will compress data as it writes it to the output
file. This will produce dump file sizes similar to using gzip, but it has the added advantage that tables
can be restored selectively. The following command dumps a database using the custom dump format:

```bash
pg_dump -Fc dbname > filename
```

A custom-format dump is not a script for psql, but instead must be restored with pg_restore, for example:
```
pg_restore -d dbname filename
```

See the pg_dump and pg_restore reference pages for details.

For very large databases, you might need to combine split with one of the other two approaches.

Use pg_dump’s parallel dump feature. To speed up the dump of a large database, you can use
pg_dump’s parallel mode. This will dump multiple tables at the same time. You can control the degree of
parallelism with the -j parameter. Parallel dumps are only supported for the "directory" archive format.
```
pg_dump -j num -F d -f out.dir dbname
```

You can use pg_restore -j to restore a dump in parallel. This will work for any archive of either the
"custom" or the "directory" archive mode, whether or not it has been created with pg_dump -j.

24.2. File System Level Backup

An alternative backup strategy is to directly copy the files that Postgres Pro uses to store the data in the
database; Section 17.2 explains where these files are located. You can use whatever method you prefer
for doing file system backups; for example:
Backup and Restore

```
tar -cf backup.tar /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

There are two restrictions, however, which make this method impractical, or at least inferior to the pg_dump method:

1. The database server *must* be shut down in order to get a usable backup. Half-way measures such as disallowing all connections will *not* work (in part because tar and similar tools do not take an atomic snapshot of the state of the file system, but also because of internal buffering within the server). Information about stopping the server can be found in Section 17.5. Needless to say, you also need to shut down the server before restoring the data.

2. If you have dug into the details of the file system layout of the database, you might be tempted to try to back up or restore only certain individual tables or databases from their respective files or directories. This will *not* work because the information contained in these files is not usable without the commit log files, pg_xact/*, which contain the commit status of all transactions. A table file is only usable with this information. Of course it is also impossible to restore only a table and the associated pg_xact data because that would render all other tables in the database cluster useless. So file system backups only work for complete backup and restoration of an entire database cluster.

An alternative file-system backup approach is to make a “consistent snapshot” of the data directory, if the file system supports that functionality (and you are willing to trust that it is implemented correctly). The typical procedure is to make a “frozen snapshot” of the volume containing the database, then copy the whole data directory (not just parts, see above) from the snapshot to a backup device, then release the frozen snapshot. This will work even while the database server is running. However, a backup created in this way saves the database files in a state as if the database server was not properly shut down; therefore, when you start the database server on the backed-up data, it will think the previous server instance crashed and will replay the WAL log. This is not a problem; just be aware of it (and be sure to include the WAL files in your backup). You can perform a `CHECKPOINT` before taking the snapshot to reduce recovery time.

If your database is spread across multiple file systems, there might not be any way to obtain exactly-simultaneous frozen snapshots of all the volumes. For example, if your data files and WAL log are on different disks, or if tablespaces are on different file systems, it might not be possible to use snapshot backup because the snapshots *must* be simultaneous. Read your file system documentation very carefully before trusting the consistent-snapshot technique in such situations.

If simultaneous snapshots are not possible, one option is to shut down the database server long enough to establish all the frozen snapshots. Another option is to perform a continuous archiving base backup (Section 24.3.2) because such backups are immune to file system changes during the backup. This requires enabling continuous archiving just during the backup process; restore is done using continuous archive recovery (Section 24.3.4).

Another option is to use rsync to perform a file system backup. This is done by first running rsync while the database server is running, then shutting down the database server long enough to do an rsync --checksum. (--checksum is necessary because rsync only has file modification-time granularity of one second.) The second rsync will be quicker than the first, because it has relatively little data to transfer, and the end result will be consistent because the server was down. This method allows a file system backup to be performed with minimal downtime.

Note that a file system backup will typically be larger than an SQL dump. (pg_dump does not need to dump the contents of indexes for example, just the commands to recreate them.) However, taking a file system backup might be faster.

### 24.3. Continuous Archiving and Point-in-Time Recovery (PITR)

At all times, Postgres Pro maintains a write ahead log (WAL) in the pg_wal/ subdirectory of the cluster's data directory. The log records every change made to the database’s data files. This log exists primarily for crash-safety purposes: if the system crashes, the database can be restored to consistency.
by “replaying” the log entries made since the last checkpoint. However, the existence of the log makes it possible to use a third strategy for backing up databases: we can combine a file-system-level backup with backup of the WAL files. If recovery is needed, we restore the file system backup and then replay from the backed-up WAL files to bring the system to a current state. This approach is more complex to administer than either of the previous approaches, but it has some significant benefits:

- We do not need a perfectly consistent file system backup as the starting point. Any internal inconsistency in the backup will be corrected by log replay (this is not significantly different from what happens during crash recovery). So we do not need a file system snapshot capability, just tar or a similar archiving tool.

- Since we can combine an indefinitely long sequence of WAL files for replay, continuous backup can be achieved simply by continuing to archive the WAL files. This is particularly valuable for large databases, where it might not be convenient to take a full backup frequently.

- It is not necessary to replay the WAL entries all the way to the end. We could stop the replay at any point and have a consistent snapshot of the database as it was at that time. Thus, this technique supports point-in-time recovery: it is possible to restore the database to its state at any time since your base backup was taken.

- If we continuously feed the series of WAL files to another machine that has been loaded with the same base backup file, we have a warm standby system: at any point we can bring up the second machine and it will have a nearly-current copy of the database.

Note

pg_dump and pg_dumpall do not produce file-system-level backups and cannot be used as part of a continuous-archiving solution. Such dumps are logical and do not contain enough information to be used by WAL replay.

As with the plain file-system-backup technique, this method can only support restoration of an entire database cluster, not a subset. Also, it requires a lot of archival storage: the base backup might be bulky, and a busy system will generate many megabytes of WAL traffic that have to be archived. Still, it is the preferred backup technique in many situations where high reliability is needed.

To recover successfully using continuous archiving (also called “online backup” by many database vendors), you need a continuous sequence of archived WAL files that extends back at least as far as the start time of your backup. So to get started, you should set up and test your procedure for archiving WAL files before you take your first base backup. Accordingly, we first discuss the mechanics of archiving WAL files.

### 24.3.1. Setting Up WAL Archiving

In an abstract sense, a running Postgres Pro system produces an indefinitely long sequence of WAL records. The system physically divides this sequence into WAL segment files, which are normally 16MB apiece (although the segment size can be altered during initdb). The segment files are given numeric names that reflect their position in the abstract WAL sequence. When not using WAL archiving, the system normally creates just a few segment files and then “recycles” them by renaming no-longer-needed segment files to higher segment numbers. It’s assumed that segment files whose contents precede the last checkpoint are no longer of interest and can be recycled.

When archiving WAL data, we need to capture the contents of each segment file once it is filled, and save that data somewhere before the segment file is recycled for reuse. Depending on the application and the available hardware, there could be many different ways of “saving the data somewhere”: we could copy the segment files to an NFS-mounted directory on another machine, write them onto a tape drive (ensuring that you have a way of identifying the original name of each file), or batch them together and burn them onto CDs, or something else entirely. To provide the database administrator with flexibility, Postgres Pro tries not to make any assumptions about how the archiving will be done. Instead, Postgres Pro lets the administrator specify a shell command to be executed to copy a completed segment file to
Backup and Restore

wherever it needs to go. The command could be as simple as a `cp`, or it could invoke a complex shell script — it's all up to you.

To enable WAL archiving, set the `wal_level` configuration parameter to `replica` or higher, `archive_mode` to `on`, and specify the shell command to use in the `archive_command` configuration parameter. In practice these settings will always be placed in the `postgresql.conf` file. In `archive_command`, `%p` is replaced by the path name of the file to archive, while `%f` is replaced by only the file name. (The path name is relative to the current working directory, i.e., the cluster's data directory.) Use `%%` if you need to embed an actual `%` character in the command. The simplest useful command is something like:

```plaintext
archive_command = 'test ! -f /mnt/server/archivedir/%f && cp %p /mnt/server/archivedir/%f'  # Unix
archive_command = 'copy "%p" "C:\\server\\archivedir\\%f"'  # Windows
```

which will copy archivable WAL segments to the directory `/mnt/server/archivedir`. (This is an example, not a recommendation, and might not work on all platforms.) After the `%p` and `%f` parameters have been replaced, the actual command executed might look like this:

```plaintext
test ! -f /mnt/server/archivedir/00000001000000A900000065 & & cp pg_wal/00000001000000A900000065 /mnt/server/archivedir/00000001000000A900000065
```

A similar command will be generated for each new file to be archived.

The archive command will be executed under the ownership of the same user that the Postgres Pro server is running as. Since the series of WAL files being archived contains effectively everything in your database, you will want to be sure that the archived data is protected from prying eyes; for example, archive into a directory that does not have group or world read access.

It is important that the archive command return zero exit status if and only if it succeeds. Upon getting a zero result, Postgres Pro will assume that the file has been successfully archived, and will remove or recycle it. However, a nonzero status tells Postgres Pro that the file was not archived; it will try again periodically until it succeeds.

When the archive command is terminated by a signal (other than SIGTERM that is used as part of a server shutdown) or an error by the shell with an exit status greater than 125 (such as command not found), the archiver process aborts and gets restarted by the postmaster. In such cases, the failure is not reported in `pg_stat_archiver`.

The archive command should generally be designed to refuse to overwrite any pre-existing archive file. This is an important safety feature to preserve the integrity of your archive in case of administrator error (such as sending the output of two different servers to the same archive directory).

It is advisable to test your proposed archive command to ensure that it indeed does not overwrite an existing file, and that it returns nonzero status in this case. The example command above for Unix ensures this by including a separate `test` step. On some Unix platforms, `cp` has switches such as `-i` that can be used to do the same thing less verbosely, but you should not rely on these without verifying that the right exit status is returned. (In particular, GNU `cp` will return status zero when `-i` is used and the target file already exists, which is not the desired behavior.)

While designing your archiving setup, consider what will happen if the archive command fails repeatedly because some aspect requires operator intervention or the archive runs out of space. For example, this could occur if you write to tape without an autochanger; when the tape fills, nothing further can be archived until the tape is swapped. You should ensure that any error condition or request to a human operator is reported appropriately so that the situation can be resolved reasonably quickly. The `pg_wal` directory will continue to fill with WAL segment files until the situation is resolved. (If the file system containing `pg_wal` fills up, Postgres Pro will do a PANIC shutdown. No committed transactions will be lost, but the database will remain offline until you free some space.)

The speed of the archiving command is unimportant as long as it can keep up with the average rate at which your server generates WAL data. Normal operation continues even if the archiving process fails.
a little behind. If archiving falls significantly behind, this will increase the amount of data that would be lost in the event of a disaster. It will also mean that the pg_wal/ directory will contain large numbers of not-yet-archived segment files, which could eventually exceed available disk space. You are advised to monitor the archiving process to ensure that it is working as you intend.

In writing your archive command, you should assume that the file names to be archived can be up to 64 characters long and can contain any combination of ASCII letters, digits, and dots. It is not necessary to preserve the original relative path (\%p) but it is necessary to preserve the file name (\%f).

Note that although WAL archiving will allow you to restore any modifications made to the data in your Postgres Pro database, it will not restore changes made to configuration files (that is, postgresql.conf, pg_hba.conf and pg_ident.conf), since those are edited manually rather than through SQL operations. You might wish to keep the configuration files in a location that will be backed up by your regular file system backup procedures. See Section 18.2 for how to relocate the configuration files.

The archive command is only invoked on completed WAL segments. Hence, if your server generates only little WAL traffic (or has slack periods where it does so), there could be a long delay between the completion of a transaction and its safe recording in archive storage. To put a limit on how old unarchived data can be, you can set archive_timeout to force the server to switch to a new WAL segment file at least that often. Note that archived files that are archived early due to a forced switch are still the same length as completely full files. It is therefore unwise to set a very short archive_timeout — it will bloat your archive storage. archive_timeout settings of a minute or so are usually reasonable.

Also, you can force a segment switch manually with pg_switch_wal if you want to ensure that a just-finished transaction is archived as soon as possible. Other utility functions related to WAL management are listed in Table 9.87.

When wal_level is minimal some SQL commands are optimized to avoid WAL logging, as described in Section 14.4.7. If archiving or streaming replication were turned on during execution of one of these statements, WAL would not contain enough information for archive recovery. (Crash recovery is unaffected.) For this reason, wal_level can only be changed at server start. However, archive_command can be changed with a configuration file reload. If you wish to temporarily stop archiving, one way to do it is to set archive_timeout to a value that would force the server to switch to a new WAL segment file at least that often. This will cause WAL files to accumulate in pg_wal/ until a working archive_command is re-established.

### 24.3.2. Making a Base Backup

The easiest way to perform a base backup is to use the pg_basebackup tool. It can create a base backup either as regular files or as a tar archive. If more flexibility than pg_basebackup can provide is required, you can also make a base backup using the low level API (see Section 24.3.3).

It is not necessary to be concerned about the amount of time it takes to make a base backup. However, if you normally run the server with full_page_writes disabled, you might notice a drop in performance while the backup runs since full_page_writes is effectively forced on during backup mode.

To make use of the backup, you will need to keep all the WAL segment files generated during and after the file system backup. To aid you in doing this, the backup process generates a backup history file that is immediately stored into the WAL archive area. This file is named after the first WAL segment file that you need for the file system backup. For example, if the starting WAL file is 0000000100001234000055CD the backup history file will be named something like 0000000100001234000055CD.007C9330.backup. (The second part of the file name stands for an exact position within the WAL file, and can ordinarily be ignored.) Once you have safely archived the file system backup and the WAL segment files used during the backup (as specified in the backup history file), all archived WAL segments with names numerically less are no longer needed to recover the file system backup and can be deleted. However, you should consider keeping several backup sets to be absolutely certain that you can recover your data.

The backup history file is just a small text file. It contains the label string you gave to pg_basebackup, as well as the starting and ending times and WAL segments of the backup. If you used the label to identify the associated dump file, then the archived history file is enough to tell you which dump file to restore.
Since you have to keep around all the archived WAL files back to your last base backup, the interval between base backups should usually be chosen based on how much storage you want to expend on archived WAL files. You should also consider how long you are prepared to spend recovering, if recovery should be necessary — the system will have to replay all those WAL segments, and that could take awhile if it has been a long time since the last base backup.

### 24.3.3. Making a Base Backup Using the Low Level API

The procedure for making a base backup using the low level APIs contains a few more steps than the `pg_basebackup` method, but is relatively simple. It is very important that these steps are executed in sequence, and that the success of a step is verified before proceeding to the next step.

Low level base backups can be made in a non-exclusive or an exclusive way. The non-exclusive method is recommended and the exclusive one is deprecated and will eventually be removed.

#### 24.3.3.1. Making a Non-Exclusive Low-Level Backup

A non-exclusive low level backup is one that allows other concurrent backups to be running (both those started using the same backup API and those started using `pg_basebackup`).

1. Ensure that WAL archiving is enabled and working.
2. Connect to the server (it does not matter which database) as a user with rights to run `pg_start_backup` (superuser, or a user who has been granted EXECUTE on the function) and issue the command:

   ```sql
   SELECT pg_start_backup('label', false, false);
   ```

   where `label` is any string you want to use to uniquely identify this backup operation. The connection calling `pg_start_backup` must be maintained until the end of the backup, or the backup will be automatically aborted.

   By default, `pg_start_backup` can take a long time to finish. This is because it performs a checkpoint, and the I/O required for the checkpoint will be spread out over a significant period of time, by default half your inter-checkpoint interval (see the configuration parameter `checkpoint_completion_target`). This is usually what you want, because it minimizes the impact on query processing. If you want to start the backup as soon as possible, change the second parameter to `true`, which will issue an immediate checkpoint using as much I/O as available.

   The third parameter being `false` tells `pg_start_backup` to initiate a non-exclusive base backup.

3. Perform the backup, using any convenient file-system-backup tool such as tar or cpio (not `pg_dump` or `pg_dumpall`). It is neither necessary nor desirable to stop normal operation of the database while you do this. See Section 24.3.3.3 for things to consider during this backup.

4. In the same connection as before, issue the command:

   ```sql
   SELECT * FROM pg_stop_backup(false, true);
   ```

   This terminates backup mode. On a primary, it also performs an automatic switch to the next WAL segment. On a standby, it is not possible to automatically switch WAL segments, so you may wish to run `pg_switch_wal` on the primary to perform a manual switch. The reason for the switch is to arrange for the last WAL segment file written during the backup interval to be ready to archive.

   The `pg_stop_backup` will return one row with three values. The second of these fields should be written to a file named `backup_label` in the root directory of the backup. The third field should be written to a file named `tablespace_map` unless the field is empty. These files are vital to the backup working and must be written byte for byte without modification, which may require opening the file in binary mode.

5. Once the WAL segment files active during the backup are archived, you are done. The file identified by `pg_stop_backup`'s first return value is the last segment that is required to form a complete set of backup files. On a primary, if `archive_mode` is enabled and the `wait_for_archive` parameter is `true`, `pg_stop_backup` does not return until the last segment has been archived. On a standby,
Backup and Restore

archive_mode must be always in order for pg_stop_backup to wait. Archiving of these files happens automatically since you have already configured archive_command. In most cases this happens quickly, but you are advised to monitor your archive system to ensure there are no delays. If the archive process has fallen behind because of failures of the archive command, it will keep retrying until the archive succeeds and the backup is complete. If you wish to place a time limit on the execution of pg_stop_backup, set an appropriate statement_timeout value, but make note that if pg_stop_backup terminates because of this your backup may not be valid.

If the backup process monitors and ensures that all WAL segment files required for the backup are successfully archived then the wait_for_archive parameter (which defaults to true) can be set to false to have pg_stop_backup return as soon as the stop backup record is written to the WAL. By default, pg_stop_backup will wait until all WAL has been archived, which can take some time. This option must be used with caution: if WAL archiving is not monitored correctly then the backup might not include all of the WAL files and will therefore be incomplete and not able to be restored.

### 24.3.3.2. Making an Exclusive Low-Level Backup

**Note**

The exclusive backup method is deprecated and should be avoided. Prior to PostgreSQL 9.6, this was the only low-level method available, but it is now recommended that all users upgrade their scripts to use non-exclusive backups.

The process for an exclusive backup is mostly the same as for a non-exclusive one, but it differs in a few key steps. This type of backup can only be taken on a primary and does not allow concurrent backups. Moreover, because it creates a backup label file, as described below, it can block automatic restart of the primary server after a crash. On the other hand, the erroneous removal of this file from a backup or standby is a common mistake, which can result in serious data corruption. If it is necessary to use this method, the following steps may be used.

1. Ensure that WAL archiving is enabled and working.
2. Connect to the server (it does not matter which database) as a user with rights to run pg_start_backup (superuser, or a user who has been granted EXECUTE on the function) and issue the command:

   ```
   SELECT pg_start_backup('label');
   ```

   where label is any string you want to use to uniquely identify this backup operation. pg_start_backup creates a backup label file, called backup_label, in the cluster directory with information about your backup, including the start time and label string. The function also creates a tablescape map file, called tablescape_map, in the cluster directory with information about tablescape symbolic links in pg_tblspc/ if one or more such link is present. Both files are critical to the integrity of the backup, should you need to restore from it.

   By default, pg_start_backup can take a long time to finish. This is because it performs a checkpoint, and the I/O required for the checkpoint will be spread out over a significant period of time, by default half your inter-checkpoint interval (see the configuration parameter checkpoint_completion_target). This is usually what you want, because it minimizes the impact on query processing. If you want to start the backup as soon as possible, use:

   ```
   SELECT pg_start_backup('label', true);
   ```

   This forces the checkpoint to be done as quickly as possible.

3. Perform the backup, using any convenient file-system-backup tool such as tar or cpio (not pg_dump or pg_dumpall). It is neither necessary nor desirable to stop normal operation of the database while you do this. See Section 24.3.3.3 for things to consider during this backup.

   As noted above, if the server crashes during the backup it may not be possible to restart until the backup_label file has been manually deleted from the PGDATA directory. Note that it is very important
to never remove the `backup_label` file when restoring a backup, because this will result in corruption. Confusion about when it is appropriate to remove this file is a common cause of data corruption when using this method; be very certain that you remove the file only on an existing primary and never when building a standby or restoring a backup, even if you are building a standby that will subsequently be promoted to a new primary.

4. Again connect to the database as a user with rights to run `pg_stop_backup` (superuser, or a user who has been granted EXECUTE on the function), and issue the command:

```sql
SELECT pg_stop_backup();
```

This function terminates backup mode and performs an automatic switch to the next WAL segment. The reason for the switch is to arrange for the last WAL segment written during the backup interval to be ready to archive.

5. Once the WAL segment files active during the backup are archived, you are done. The file identified by `pg_stop_backup`'s result is the last segment that is required to form a complete set of backup files. If `archive_mode` is enabled, `pg_stop_backup` does not return until the last segment has been archived. Archiving of these files happens automatically since you have already configured `archive_command`. In most cases this happens quickly, but you are advised to monitor your archive system to ensure there are no delays. If the archive process has fallen behind because of failures of the archive command, it will keep retrying until the archive succeeds and the backup is complete.

When using exclusive backup mode, it is absolutely imperative to ensure that `pg_stop_backup` completes successfully at the end of the backup. Even if the backup itself fails, for example due to lack of disk space, failure to call `pg_stop_backup` will leave the server in backup mode indefinitely, causing future backups to fail and increasing the risk of a restart failure during the time that `backup_label` exists.

### 24.3.3.3. Backing Up the Data Directory

Some file system backup tools emit warnings or errors if the files they are trying to copy change while the copy proceeds. When taking a base backup of an active database, this situation is normal and not an error. However, you need to ensure that you can distinguish complaints of this sort from real errors. For example, some versions of rsync return a separate exit code for “vanished source files”, and you can write a driver script to accept this exit code as a non-error case. Also, some versions of GNU tar return an error code indistinguishable from a fatal error if a file was truncated while tar was copying it. Fortunately, GNU tar versions 1.16 and later exit with 1 if a file was changed during the backup, and 2 for other errors. With GNU tar version 1.23 and later, you can use the warning options `--warning=no-file-changed` and `--warning=no-file-removed` to hide the related warning messages.

Be certain that your backup includes all of the files under the database cluster directory (e.g., `/usr/local/pgsql/data`). If you are using tablespaces that do not reside underneath this directory, be careful to include them as well (and be sure that your backup archives symbolic links as links, otherwise the restore will corrupt your tablespaces).

You should, however, omit from the backup the files within the cluster's `pg_wal/` subdirectory. This slight adjustment is worthwhile because it reduces the risk of mistakes when restoring. This is easy to arrange if `pg_wal/` is a symbolic link pointing to someplace outside the cluster directory, which is a common setup anyway for performance reasons. You might also want to exclude `postmaster.pid` and `postmaster.opts`, which record information about the running postmaster, not about the postmaster which will eventually use this backup. (These files can confuse `pg_ctl`.)

It is often a good idea to also omit from the backup the files within the cluster's `pg_replslot/` directory, so that replication slots that exist on the primary do not become part of the backup. Otherwise, the subsequent use of the backup to create a standby may result in indefinite retention of WAL files on the standby, and possibly bloat on the primary if hot standby feedback is enabled, because the clients that are using those replication slots will still be connecting to and updating the slots on the primary, not the standby. Even if the backup is only intended for use in creating a new primary, copying the replication slots isn't expected to be particularly useful, since the contents of those slots will likely be badly out of date by the time the new primary comes on line.
The contents of the directories `pg_dynshmem/`, `pg_notify/`, `pg_serial/`, `pg_snapshots/`, `pg_stat_tmp/`, and `pg_subtrans/` (but not the directories themselves) can be omitted from the backup as they will be initialized on postmaster startup. If `stats_temp_directory` is set and is under the data directory then the contents of that directory can also be omitted.

Any file or directory beginning with `pgsql_tmp` can be omitted from the backup. These files are removed on postmaster start and the directories will be recreated as needed.

`pg_internal.init` files can be omitted from the backup whenever a file of that name is found. These files contain relation cache data that is always rebuilt when recovering.

The backup label file includes the label string you gave to `pg_start_backup`, as well as the time at which `pg_start_backup` was run, and the name of the starting WAL file. In case of confusion it is therefore possible to look inside a backup file and determine exactly which backup session the dump file came from. The tablespace map file includes the symbolic link names as they exist in the directory `pg_tblspc/` and the full path of each symbolic link. These files are not merely for your information; their presence and contents are critical to the proper operation of the system's recovery process.

It is also possible to make a backup while the server is stopped. In this case, you obviously cannot use `pg_start_backup` or `pg_stop_backup`, and you will therefore be left to your own devices to keep track of which backup is which and how far back the associated WAL files go. It is generally better to follow the continuous archiving procedure above.

### 24.3.4. Recovering Using a Continuous Archive Backup

Okay, the worst has happened and you need to recover from your backup. Here is the procedure:

1. Stop the server, if it's running.
2. If you have the space to do so, copy the whole cluster data directory and any tablespaces to a temporary location in case you need them later. Note that this precaution will require that you have enough free space on your system to hold two copies of your existing database. If you do not have enough space, you should at least save the contents of the cluster's `pg_wal` subdirectory, as it might contain logs which were not archived before the system went down.
3. Remove all existing files and subdirectories under the cluster data directory and under the root directories of any tablespaces you are using.
4. Restore the database files from your file system backup. Be sure that they are restored with the right ownership (the database system user, not `root`) and with the right permissions. If you are using tablespaces, you should verify that the symbolic links in `pg_tblspc/` were correctly restored.
5. Remove any files present in `pg_wal/`; these came from the file system backup and are therefore probably obsolete rather than current. If you didn't archive `pg_wal/` at all, then recreate it with proper permissions, being careful to ensure that you re-establish it as a symbolic link if you had it set up that way before.
6. If you have unarchived WAL segment files that you saved in step 2, copy them into `pg_wal/`. (It is best to copy them, not move them, so you still have the unmodified files if a problem occurs and you have to start over.)
7. Set recovery configuration settings in `postgresql.conf` (see Section 18.5.4) and create a file `recovery.signal` in the cluster data directory. You might also want to temporarily modify `pg_hba.conf` to prevent ordinary users from connecting until you are sure the recovery was successful.
8. Start the server. The server will go into recovery mode and proceed to read through the archived WAL files it needs. Should the recovery be terminated because of an external error, the server can simply be restarted and it will continue recovery. Upon completion of the recovery process, the server will remove `recovery.signal` (to prevent accidentally re-entering recovery mode later) and then commence normal database operations.
9. Inspect the contents of the database to ensure you have recovered to the desired state. If not, return to step 1. If all is well, allow your users to connect by restoring `pg_hba.conf` to normal.

628
The key part of all this is to set up a recovery configuration that describes how you want to recover and how far the recovery should run. The one thing that you absolutely must specify is the `restore_command`, which tells Postgres Pro how to retrieve archived WAL file segments. Like the `archive_command`, this is a shell command string. It can contain `%f`, which is replaced by the name of the desired log file, and `%p`, which is replaced by the path name to copy the log file to. (The path name is relative to the current working directory, i.e., the cluster’s data directory.) Write `%%` if you need to embed an actual `%` character in the command. The simplest useful command is something like:

```
restore_command = 'cp /mnt/server/archivedir/%f %p'
```

which will copy previously archived WAL segments from the directory `/mnt/server/archivedir`. Of course, you can use something much more complicated, perhaps even a shell script that requests the operator to mount an appropriate tape.

It is important that the command return nonzero exit status on failure. The command will be called requesting files that are not present in the archive; it must return nonzero when so asked. This is not an error condition. An exception is that if the command was terminated by a signal (other than SIGTERM, which is used as part of a database server shutdown) or an error by the shell (such as command not found), then recovery will abort and the server will not start up.

Not all of the requested files will be WAL segment files; you should also expect requests for files with a suffix of `.history`. Also be aware that the base name of the `%p` path will be different from `%f`; do not expect them to be interchangeable.

WAL segments that cannot be found in the archive will be sought in `pg_wal/`; this allows use of recent un-archived segments. However, segments that are available from the archive will be used in preference to files in `pg_wal/`.

Normally, recovery will proceed through all available WAL segments, thereby restoring the database to the current point in time (or as close as possible given the available WAL segments). Therefore, a normal recovery will end with a “file not found” message, the exact text of the error message depending upon your choice of `restore_command`. You may also see an error message at the start of recovery for a file named something like `00000001.history`. This is also normal and does not indicate a problem in simple recovery situations; see Section 24.3.5 for discussion.

If you want to recover to some previous point in time (say, right before the junior DBA dropped your main transaction table), just specify the required stopping point. You can specify the stop point, known as the “recovery target”, either by date/time, named restore point or by completion of a specific transaction ID. As of this writing only the date/time and named restore point options are very usable, since there are no tools to help you identify with any accuracy which transaction ID to use.

```
Note

The stop point must be after the ending time of the base backup, i.e., the end time of `pg_stop_backup`. You cannot use a base backup to recover to a time when that backup was in progress. (To recover to such a time, you must go back to your previous base backup and roll forward from there.)
```

If recovery finds corrupted WAL data, recovery will halt at that point and the server will not start. In such a case the recovery process could be re-run from the beginning, specifying a “recovery target” before the point of corruption so that recovery can complete normally. If recovery fails for an external reason, such as a system crash or if the WAL archive has become inaccessible, then the recovery can simply be restarted and it will restart almost from where it failed. Recovery restart works much like checkpointing in normal operation: the server periodically forces all its state to disk, and then updates the `pg_control` file to indicate that the already-processed WAL data need not be scanned again.

**24.3.5. Timelines**
The ability to restore the database to a previous point in time creates some complexities that are akin to science-fiction stories about time travel and parallel universes. For example, in the original history of the database, suppose you dropped a critical table at 5:15PM on Tuesday evening, but didn't realize your mistake until Wednesday noon. Unfazed, you get out your backup, restore to the point-in-time 5:14PM Tuesday evening, and are up and running. In this history of the database universe, you never dropped the table. But suppose you later realize this wasn't such a great idea, and would like to return to sometime Wednesday morning in the original history. You won't be able to if, while your database was up-and-running, it overwrote some of the WAL segment files that led up to the time you now wish you could get back to. Thus, to avoid this, you need to distinguish the series of WAL records generated after you've done a point-in-time recovery from those that were generated in the original database history.

To deal with this problem, Postgres Pro has a notion of timelines. Whenever an archive recovery completes, a new timeline is created to identify the series of WAL records generated after that recovery. The timeline ID number is part of WAL segment file names so a new timeline does not overwrite the WAL data generated by previous timelines. It is in fact possible to archive many different timelines. While that might seem like a useless feature, it's often a lifesaver. Consider the situation where you aren't quite sure what point-in-time to recover to, and so have to do several point-in-time recoveries by trial and error until you find the best place to branch off from the old history. Without timelines this process would soon generate an unmanageable mess. With timelines, you can recover to any prior state, including states in timeline branches that you abandoned earlier.

Every time a new timeline is created, Postgres Pro creates a “timeline history” file that shows which timeline it branched off from and when. These history files are necessary to allow the system to pick the right WAL segment files when recovering from an archive that contains multiple timelines. Therefore, they are archived into the WAL archive area just like WAL segment files. The history files are just small text files, so it's cheap and appropriate to keep them around indefinitely (unlike the segment files which are large). You can, if you like, add comments to a history file to record your own notes about how and why this particular timeline was created. Such comments will be especially valuable when you have a thicket of different timelines as a result of experimentation.

The default behavior of recovery is to recover to the latest timeline found in the archive. If you wish to recover to the timeline that was current when the base backup was taken or into a specific child timeline (that is, you want to return to some state that was itself generated after a recovery attempt), you need to specify current or the target timeline ID in recovery_target_timeline. You cannot recover into timelines that branched off earlier than the base backup.

### 24.3.6. Tips and Examples

Some tips for configuring continuous archiving are given here.

#### 24.3.6.1. Standalone Hot Backups

It is possible to use Postgres Pro's backup facilities to produce standalone hot backups. These are backups that cannot be used for point-in-time recovery, yet are typically much faster to backup and restore than pg_dump dumps. (They are also much larger than pg_dump dumps, so in some cases the speed advantage might be negated.)

As with base backups, the easiest way to produce a standalone hot backup is to use the `pg_basebackup` tool. If you include the `-X` parameter when calling it, all the write-ahead log required to use the backup will be included in the backup automatically, and no special action is required to restore the backup.

If more flexibility in copying the backup files is needed, a lower level process can be used for standalone hot backups as well. To prepare for low level standalone hot backups, make sure `wal_level` is set to `replica` or higher, `archive_mode` to on, and set up an `archive_command` that performs archiving only when a switch file exists. For example:

```
archive_command = 'test ! -f /var/lib/pgsql/backup_in_progress || (test ! -f /var/lib/pgsql/archive/%f && cp %p /var/lib/pgsql/archive/%f)'
```

This command will perform archiving when `/var/lib/pgsql/backup_in_progress` exists, and otherwise silently return zero exit status (allowing Postgres Pro to recycle the unwanted WAL file).
With this preparation, a backup can be taken using a script like the following:

```bash
touch /var/lib/pgsql/backup_in_progress
psql -c "select pg_start_backup('hot_backup');"
tar -cf /var/lib/pgsql/backup.tar /var/lib/pgsql/data/
psql -c "select pg_stop_backup();"
rm /var/lib/pgsql/backup_in_progress
tar -rf /var/lib/pgsql/backup.tar /var/lib/pgsql/archive/
```

The switch file `/var/lib/pgsql/backup_in_progress` is created first, enabling archiving of completed WAL files to occur. After the backup the switch file is removed. Archived WAL files are then added to the backup so that both base backup and all required WAL files are part of the same tar file. Please remember to add error handling to your backup scripts.

### 24.3.6.2. Compressed Archive Logs

If archive storage size is a concern, you can use gzip to compress the archive files:

```bash
archive_command = 'gzip < %p > /mnt/server/archivedir/%f.gz'
```

You will then need to use gunzip during recovery:

```bash
restore_command = 'gunzip < /mnt/server/archivedir/%f.gz > %p'
```

### 24.3.6.3. `archive_command` Scripts

Many people choose to use scripts to define their `archive_command`, so that their `postgresql.conf` entry looks very simple:

```bash
archive_command = 'local_backup_script.sh "%p" "%f"'
```

Using a separate script file is advisable any time you want to use more than a single command in the archiving process. This allows all complexity to be managed within the script, which can be written in a popular scripting language such as bash or perl.

Examples of requirements that might be solved within a script include:

- Copying data to secure off-site data storage
- Batching WAL files so that they are transferred every three hours, rather than one at a time
- Interfacing with other backup and recovery software
- Interfacing with monitoring software to report errors

#### Tip

When using an `archive_command` script, it's desirable to enable `logging_collector`. Any messages written to stderr from the script will then appear in the database server log, allowing complex configurations to be diagnosed easily if they fail.

### 24.3.7. Caveats

At this writing, there are several limitations of the continuous archiving technique. These will probably be fixed in future releases:

- If a `CREATE DATABASE` command is executed while a base backup is being taken, and then the template database that the `CREATE DATABASE` copied is modified while the base backup is still in progress, it is possible that recovery will cause those modifications to be propagated into the created database as well. This is of course undesirable. To avoid this risk, it is best not to modify any template databases while taking a base backup.
- `CREATE TABLESPACE` commands are WAL-logged with the literal absolute path, and will therefore be replayed as tablespace creations with the same absolute path. This might be undesirable if the log
is being replayed on a different machine. It can be dangerous even if the log is being replayed on the same machine, but into a new data directory: the replay will still overwrite the contents of the original tablespace. To avoid potential gotchas of this sort, the best practice is to take a new base backup after creating or dropping tablespaces.

It should also be noted that the default WAL format is fairly bulky since it includes many disk page snapshots. These page snapshots are designed to support crash recovery, since we might need to fix partially-written disk pages. Depending on your system hardware and software, the risk of partial writes might be small enough to ignore, in which case you can significantly reduce the total volume of archived logs by turning off page snapshots using the `full_page_writes` parameter. (Read the notes and warnings in Chapter 28 before you do so.) Turning off page snapshots does not prevent use of the logs for PITR operations. An area for future development is to compress archived WAL data by removing unnecessary page copies even when `full_page_writes` is on. In the meantime, administrators might wish to reduce the number of page snapshots included in WAL by increasing the checkpoint interval parameters as much as feasible.
Chapter 25. High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication

Database servers can work together to allow a second server to take over quickly if the primary server fails (high availability), or to allow several computers to serve the same data (load balancing). Ideally, database servers could work together seamlessly. Web servers serving static web pages can be combined quite easily by merely load-balancing web requests to multiple machines. In fact, read-only database servers can be combined relatively easily too. Unfortunately, most database servers have a read/write mix of requests, and read/write servers are much harder to combine. This is because though read-only data needs to be placed on each server only once, a write to any server has to be propagated to all servers so that future read requests to those servers return consistent results.

This synchronization problem is the fundamental difficulty for servers working together. Because there is no single solution that eliminates the impact of the sync problem for all use cases, there are multiple solutions. Each solution addresses this problem in a different way, and minimizes its impact for a specific workload.

Some solutions deal with synchronization by allowing only one server to modify the data. Servers that can modify data are called read/write, master or primary servers. Servers that track changes in the primary are called standby or secondary servers. A standby server that cannot be connected to until it is promoted to a primary server is called a warm standby server, and one that can accept connections and serves read-only queries is called a hot standby server.

Some solutions are synchronous, meaning that a data-modifying transaction is not considered committed until all servers have committed the transaction. This guarantees that a failover will not lose any data and that all load-balanced servers will return consistent results no matter which server is queried. In contrast, asynchronous solutions allow some delay between the time of a commit and its propagation to the other servers, opening the possibility that some transactions might be lost in the switch to a backup server, and that load balanced servers might return slightly stale results. Asynchronous communication is used when synchronous would be too slow.

Solutions can also be categorized by their granularity. Some solutions can deal only with an entire database server, while others allow control at the per-table or per-database level.

Performance must be considered in any choice. There is usually a trade-off between functionality and performance. For example, a fully synchronous solution over a slow network might cut performance by more than half, while an asynchronous one might have a minimal performance impact.

The remainder of this section outlines various failover, replication, and load balancing solutions.

25.1. Comparison of Different Solutions

Shared Disk Failover

Shared disk failover avoids synchronization overhead by having only one copy of the database. It uses a single disk array that is shared by multiple servers. If the main database server fails, the standby server is able to mount and start the database as though it were recovering from a database crash. This allows rapid failover with no data loss.

Shared hardware functionality is common in network storage devices. Using a network file system is also possible, though care must be taken that the file system has full POSIX behavior (see Section 17.2.2.1). One significant limitation of this method is that if the shared disk array fails or becomes corrupt, the primary and standby servers are both nonfunctional. Another issue is that the standby server should never access the shared storage while the primary server is running.

File System (Block Device) Replication

A modified version of shared hardware functionality is file system replication, where all changes to a file system are mirrored to a file system residing on another computer. The only restriction is that
the mirroring must be done in a way that ensures the standby server has a consistent copy of the file system — specifically, writes to the standby must be done in the same order as those on the primary. DRBD is a popular file system replication solution for Linux.

Write-Ahead Log Shipping

Warm and hot standby servers can be kept current by reading a stream of write-ahead log (WAL) records. If the main server fails, the standby contains almost all of the data of the main server, and can be quickly made the new primary database server. This can be synchronous or asynchronous and can only be done for the entire database server.

A standby server can be implemented using file-based log shipping (Section 25.2) or streaming replication (see Section 25.2.5), or a combination of both. For information on hot standby, see Section 25.4.

Logical Replication

Logical replication allows a database server to send a stream of data modifications to another server. Postgres Pro logical replication constructs a stream of logical data modifications from the WAL. Logical replication allows replication of data changes on a per-table basis. In addition, a server that is publishing its own changes can also subscribe to changes from another server, allowing data to flow in multiple directions. For more information on logical replication, see Chapter 29. Through the logical decoding interface (Chapter 47), third-party extensions can also provide similar functionality.

Trigger-Based Primary-Standby Replication

A trigger-based replication setup typically funnels data modification queries to a designated primary server. Operating on a per-table basis, the primary server sends data changes (typically) asynchronously to the standby servers. Standby servers can answer queries while the primary is running, and may allow some local data changes or write activity. This form of replication is often used for offloading large analytical or data warehouse queries.

Slony-I is an example of this type of replication, with per-table granularity, and support for multiple standby servers. Because it updates the standby server asynchronously (in batches), there is possible data loss during fail over.

SQL-Based Replication Middleware

With SQL-based replication middleware, a program intercepts every SQL query and sends it to one or all servers. Each server operates independently. Read-write queries must be sent to all servers, so that every server receives any changes. But read-only queries can be sent to just one server, allowing the read workload to be distributed among them.

If queries are simply broadcast unmodified, functions like random(), CURRENT_TIMESTAMP, and sequences can have different values on different servers. This is because each server operates independently, and because SQL queries are broadcast rather than actual data changes. If this is unacceptable, either the middleware or the application must determine such values from a single source and then use those values in write queries. Care must also be taken that all transactions either commit or abort on all servers, perhaps using two-phase commit (PREPARE TRANSACTION and COMMIT PREPARED). Pgpool-II and Continuent Tungsten are examples of this type of replication.

Asynchronous Multimaster Replication

For servers that are not regularly connected or have slow communication links, like laptops or remote servers, keeping data consistent among servers is a challenge. Using asynchronous multimaster replication, each server works independently, and periodically communicates with the other servers to identify conflicting transactions. The conflicts can be resolved by users or conflict resolution rules. Bucardo is an example of this type of replication.

Synchronous Multimaster Replication

In synchronous multimaster replication, each server can accept write requests, and modified data is transmitted from the original server to every other server before each transaction commits. Heavy write activity can cause excessive locking and commit delays, leading to poor performance.
Read requests can be sent to any server. Some implementations use shared disk to reduce the communication overhead. Synchronous multimaster replication is best for mostly read workloads, though its big advantage is that any server can accept write requests — there is no need to partition workloads between primary and standby servers, and because the data changes are sent from one server to another, there is no problem with non-deterministic functions like `random()`.

Postgres Pro Enterprise provides multimaster extension that implements this type of replication. Using multimaster, you can configure a synchronous shared-nothing cluster that provides Online Transaction Processing (OLTP) scalability for read transactions, as well as ensures high availability with automatic disaster recovery.

Table 25.1 summarizes the capabilities of the various solutions listed above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Popular examples</td>
<td>NAS</td>
<td>DRBD</td>
<td>built-in streaming repl.</td>
<td>built-in logical repl., pglogical</td>
<td>Londiste, Slony</td>
<td>pgpool-II</td>
<td>Bucardo multimaster extension of Postgres Pro Enterprise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comm. method</td>
<td>shared disk</td>
<td>disk blocks</td>
<td>WAL</td>
<td>logical decoding</td>
<td>table rows</td>
<td>SQL</td>
<td>table rows</td>
<td>table rows and row locks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No special hardware required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allows multiple primary servers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No overhead on primary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No waiting for multiple servers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary failure will never lose data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replicas accept read-only queries</td>
<td></td>
<td>with hot standby</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-table granularity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No conflict resolution necessary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication

There are a few solutions that do not fit into the above categories:

**Data Partitioning**

Data partitioning splits tables into data sets. Each set can be modified by only one server. For example, data can be partitioned by offices, e.g., London and Paris, with a server in each office. If queries combining London and Paris data are necessary, an application can query both servers, or primary/standby replication can be used to keep a read-only copy of the other office's data on each server.

**Multiple-Server Parallel Query Execution**

Many of the above solutions allow multiple servers to handle multiple queries, but none allow a single query to use multiple servers to complete faster. This solution allows multiple servers to work concurrently on a single query. It is usually accomplished by splitting the data among servers and having each server execute its part of the query and return results to a central server where they are combined and returned to the user. This can be implemented using the PL/Proxy tool set.

25.2. Log-Shipping Standby Servers

Continuous archiving can be used to create a high availability (HA) cluster configuration with one or more standby servers ready to take over operations if the primary server fails. This capability is widely referred to as warm standby or log shipping.

The primary and standby server work together to provide this capability, though the servers are only loosely coupled. The primary server operates in continuous archiving mode, while each standby server operates in continuous recovery mode, reading the WAL files from the primary. No changes to the database tables are required to enable this capability, so it offers low administration overhead compared to some other replication solutions. This configuration also has relatively low performance impact on the primary server.

Directly moving WAL records from one database server to another is typically described as log shipping. Postgres Pro implements file-based log shipping by transferring WAL records one file (WAL segment) at a time. WAL files (16MB) can be shipped easily and cheaply over any distance, whether it be to an adjacent system, another system at the same site, or another system on the far side of the globe. The bandwidth required for this technique varies according to the transaction rate of the primary server. Record-based log shipping is more granular and streams WAL changes incrementally over a network connection (see Section 25.2.5).

It should be noted that log shipping is asynchronous, i.e., the WAL records are shipped after transaction commit. As a result, there is a window for data loss should the primary server suffer a catastrophic failure; transactions not yet shipped will be lost. The size of the data loss window in file-based log shipping can be limited by use of the archive_timeout parameter, which can be set as low as a few seconds. However such a low setting will substantially increase the bandwidth required for file shipping. Streaming replication (see Section 25.2.5) allows a much smaller window of data loss.

Recovery performance is sufficiently good that the standby will typically be only moments away from full availability once it has been activated. As a result, this is called a warm standby configuration which offers high availability. Restoring a server from an archived base backup and rollforward will take considerably longer, so that technique only offers a solution for disaster recovery, not high availability. A standby server can also be used for read-only queries, in which case it is called a Hot Standby server. See Section 25.4 for more information.

25.2.1. Planning

It is usually wise to create the primary and standby servers so that they are as similar as possible, at least from the perspective of the database server. In particular, the path names associated with tablespaces will be passed across unmodified, so both primary and standby servers must have the same mount paths for tablespaces if that feature is used. Keep in mind that if CREATE TABLESPACE is executed on the
primary, any new mount point needed for it must be created on the primary and all standby servers before the command is executed. Hardware need not be exactly the same, but experience shows that maintaining two identical systems is easier than maintaining two dissimilar ones over the lifetime of the application and system. In any case the hardware architecture must be the same — shipping from, say, a 32-bit to a 64-bit system will not work.

In general, log shipping between servers running different major Postgres Pro release levels is not possible. It is the policy of the Postgres Pro Global Development Group not to make changes to disk formats during minor release upgrades, so it is likely that running different minor release levels on primary and standby servers will work successfully. However, no formal support for that is offered and you are advised to keep primary and standby servers at the same release level as much as possible. When updating to a new minor release, the safest policy is to update the standby servers first — a new minor release is more likely to be able to read WAL files from a previous minor release than vice versa.

25.2.2. Standby Server Operation

A server enters standby mode if a standby.signal file exists in the data directory when the server is started.

In standby mode, the server continuously applies WAL received from the primary server. The standby server can read WAL from a WAL archive (see restore_command) or directly from the primary over a TCP connection (streaming replication). The standby server will also attempt to restore any WAL found in the standby cluster's pg_wal directory. That typically happens after a server restart, when the standby replays again WAL that was streamed from the primary before the restart, but you can also manually copy files to pg_wal at any time to have them replayed.

At startup, the standby begins by restoring all WAL available in the archive location, calling restore_command. Once it reaches the end of WAL available there and restore_command fails, it tries to restore any WAL available in the pg_wal directory. If that fails, and streaming replication has been configured, the standby tries to connect to the primary server and start streaming WAL from the last valid record found in archive or pg_wal. If that fails or streaming replication is not configured, or if the connection is later disconnected, the standby goes back to step 1 and tries to restore the file from the archive again. This loop of retries from the archive, pg_wal, and via streaming replication goes on until the server is stopped or failover is triggered by a trigger file.

Standby mode is exited and the server switches to normal operation when pg_ctl promote is run, pg_promote() is called, or a trigger file is found (promote_trigger_file). Before failover, any WAL immediately available in the archive or in pg_wal will be restored, but no attempt is made to connect to the primary.

25.2.3. Preparing the Primary for Standby Servers

Set up continuous archiving on the primary to an archive directory accessible from the standby, as described in Section 24.3. The archive location should be accessible from the standby even when the primary is down, i.e., it should reside on the standby server itself or another trusted server, not on the primary server.

If you want to use streaming replication, set up authentication on the primary server to allow replication connections from the standby server(s); that is, create a role and provide a suitable entry or entries in pg_hba.conf with the database field set to replication. Also ensure max_wal_senders is set to a sufficiently large value in the configuration file of the primary server. If replication slots will be used, ensure that max_replication_slots is set sufficiently high as well.

Take a base backup as described in Section 24.3.2 to bootstrap the standby server.

25.2.4. Setting Up a Standby Server

To set up the standby server, restore the base backup taken from primary server (see Section 24.3.4). Create a file standby.signal in the standby's cluster data directory. Set restore_command to a simple
command to copy files from the WAL archive. If you plan to have multiple standby servers for high availability purposes, make sure that recovery_target_timeline is set to latest (the default), to make the standby server follow the timeline change that occurs at failover to another standby.

Note

restore_command should return immediately if the file does not exist; the server will retry the command again if necessary.

If you want to use streaming replication, fill in primary_conninfo with a libpq connection string, including the host name (or IP address) and any additional details needed to connect to the primary server. If the primary needs a password for authentication, the password needs to be specified in primary_conninfo as well.

If you're setting up the standby server for high availability purposes, set up WAL archiving, connections and authentication like the primary server, because the standby server will work as a primary server after failover.

If you're using a WAL archive, its size can be minimized using the archive_cleanup_command parameter to remove files that are no longer required by the standby server. The pg_archivecleanup utility is designed specifically to be used with archive_cleanup_command in typical single-standby configurations, see pg_archivecleanup. Note however, that if you're using the archive for backup purposes, you need to retain files needed to recover from at least the latest base backup, even if they're no longer needed by the standby.

A simple example of configuration is:

```
primary_conninfo = 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo password=foopass options=''-c wal_sender_timeout=5000''
restore_command = 'cp /path/to/archive/%f %p'
archive_cleanup_command = 'pg_archivecleanup /path/to/archive %r'
```

You can have any number of standby servers, but if you use streaming replication, make sure you set max_wal_senders high enough in the primary to allow them to be connected simultaneously.

### 25.2.5. Streaming Replication

Streaming replication allows a standby server to stay more up-to-date than is possible with file-based log shipping. The standby connects to the primary, which streams WAL records to the standby as they're generated, without waiting for the WAL file to be filled.

Streaming replication is asynchronous by default (see Section 25.2.8), in which case there is a small delay between committing a transaction in the primary and the changes becoming visible in the standby. This delay is however much smaller than with file-based log shipping, typically under one second assuming the standby is powerful enough to keep up with the load. With streaming replication, archive_timeout is not required to reduce the data loss window.

If you use streaming replication without file-based continuous archiving, the server might recycle old WAL segments before the standby has received them. If this occurs, the standby will need to be reinitialized from a new base backup. You can avoid this by setting wal_keep_size to a value large enough to ensure that WAL segments are not recycled too early, or by configuring a replication slot for the standby. If you set up a WAL archive that's accessible from the standby, these solutions are not required, since the standby can always use the archive to catch up provided it retains enough segments.

To use streaming replication, set up a file-based log-shipping standby server as described in Section 25.2. The step that turns a file-based log-shipping standby into streaming replication standby is setting the primary_conninfo setting to point to the primary server. Set listen_addresses and authentication options (see pg_hba.conf) on the primary so that the standby server can connect to the replication pseudo-database on the primary server (see Section 25.2.5.1).
On systems that support the keepalive socket option, setting `tcp_keepalives_idle, tcp_keepalives_interval` and `tcp_keepalives_count` helps the primary promptly notice a broken connection.

Set the maximum number of concurrent connections from the standby servers (see `max_wal_senders` for details).

When the standby is started and `primary_conninfo` is set correctly, the standby will connect to the primary after replaying all WAL files available in the archive. If the connection is established successfully, you will see a `walreceiver` in the standby, and a corresponding `walsender` process in the primary.

### 25.2.5.1. Authentication

It is very important that the access privileges for replication be set up so that only trusted users can read the WAL stream, because it is easy to extract privileged information from it. Standby servers must authenticate to the primary as an account that has the `REPLICATION` privilege or a superuser. It is recommended to create a dedicated user account with `REPLICATION` and `LOGIN` privileges for replication. While `REPLICATION` privilege gives very high permissions, it does not allow the user to modify any data on the primary system, which the `SUPERUSER` privilege does.

Client authentication for replication is controlled by a `pg_hba.conf` record specifying replication in the `database` field. For example, if the standby is running on host IP 192.168.1.100 and the account name for replication is `foo`, the administrator can add the following line to the `pg_hba.conf` file on the primary:

```
# Allow the user "foo" from host 192.168.1.100 to connect to the primary
# as a replication standby if the user's password is correctly supplied.
#
# TYPE  DATABASE        USER            ADDRESS                 METHOD
host    replication     foo             192.168.1.100/32        md5
```

The host name and port number of the primary, connection user name, and password are specified in the `primary_conninfo`. The password can also be set in the `~/.pgpass` file on the standby (specify replication in the `database` field). For example, if the primary is running on host IP 192.168.1.50, port 5432, the account name for replication is `foo`, and the password is `foopass`, the administrator can add the following line to the `postgresql.conf` file on the standby:

```
# The standby connects to the primary that is running on host 192.168.1.50
# and port 5432 as the user "foo" whose password is "foopass".
primary_conninfo = 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo password=foopass'
```

### 25.2.5.2. Monitoring

An important health indicator of streaming replication is the amount of WAL records generated in the primary, but not yet applied in the standby. You can calculate this lag by comparing the current WAL write location on the primary with the last WAL location received by the standby. These locations can be retrieved using `pg_current_wal_lsn` on the primary and `pg_last_wal_receive_lsn` on the standby, respectively (see Table 9.87 and Table 9.88 for details). The last WAL receive location in the standby is also displayed in the process status of the WAL receiver process, displayed using the `ps` command (see Section 26.1 for details).

You can retrieve a list of WAL sender processes via the `pg_stat_replication` view. Large differences between `pg_current_wal_lsn` and the view's `sent_lsn` field might indicate that the primary server is under heavy load, while differences between `sent_lsn` and `pg_last_wal_receive_lsn` on the standby might indicate network delay, or that the standby is under heavy load.

On a hot standby, the status of the WAL receiver process can be retrieved via the `pg_stat_wal_receiver` view. A large difference between `pg_last_wal_replay_lsn` and the view's `flushed_lsn` indicates that WAL is being received faster than it can be replayed.

### 25.2.6. Replication Slots
Replication slots provide an automated way to ensure that the primary does not remove WAL segments until they have been received by all standbys, and that the primary does not remove rows which could cause a recovery conflict even when the standby is disconnected.

In lieu of using replication slots, it is possible to prevent the removal of old WAL segments using `wal_keep_size`, or by storing the segments in an archive using `archive_command`. However, these methods often result in retaining more WAL segments than required, whereas replication slots retain only the number of segments known to be needed. On the other hand, replication slots can retain so many WAL segments that they fill up the space allocated for `pg_wal`; `max_slot_wal_keep_size` limits the size of WAL files retained by replication slots.

Similarly, `hot_standby_feedback` and `vacuum_defer_cleanup_age` provide protection against relevant rows being removed by vacuum, but the former provides no protection during any time period when the standby is not connected, and the latter often needs to be set to a high value to provide adequate protection. Replication slots overcome these disadvantages.

### 25.2.6.1. Querying and Manipulating Replication Slots

Each replication slot has a name, which can contain lower-case letters, numbers, and the underscore character.

Existing replication slots and their state can be seen in the `pg_replication_slots` view.

Slots can be created and dropped either via the streaming replication protocol (see Section 51.4) or via SQL functions (see Section 9.27.6).

#### 25.2.6.2. Configuration Example

You can create a replication slot like this:

```sql
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_create_physical_replication_slot('node_a_slot');
   slot_name | lsn
  -----------+-----
    node_a_slot |
```

```sql
postgres=# SELECT slot_name, slot_type, active FROM pg_replication_slots;
   slot_name | slot_type | active
  -----------+-----------+--------
    node_a_slot | physical | f
(1 row)
```

To configure the standby to use this slot, `primary_slot_name` should be configured on the standby. Here is a simple example:

```sql
primary_conninfo = 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo password=foopass'
primary_slot_name = 'node_a_slot'
```

### 25.2.7. Cascading Replication

The cascading replication feature allows a standby server to accept replication connections and stream WAL records to other standbys, acting as a relay. This can be used to reduce the number of direct connections to the primary and also to minimize inter-site bandwidth overheads.

A standby acting as both a receiver and a sender is known as a cascading standby. Standbys that are more directly connected to the primary are known as upstream servers, while those standby servers further away are downstream servers. Cascading replication does not place limits on the number or arrangement of downstream servers, though each standby connects to only one upstream server which eventually links to a single primary server.

A cascading standby sends not only WAL records received from the primary but also those restored from the archive. So even if the replication connection in some upstream connection is terminated, streaming replication continues downstream for as long as new WAL records are available.
Cascading replication is currently asynchronous. Synchronous replication (see Section 25.2.8) settings have no effect on cascading replication at present.

Hot Standby feedback propagates upstream, whatever the cascaded arrangement.

If an upstream standby server is promoted to become the new primary, downstream servers will continue to stream from the new primary if `recovery_target_timeline` is set to 'latest' (the default).

To use cascading replication, set up the cascading standby so that it can accept replication connections (that is, set `max_wal_senders` and `hot_standby`, and configure host-based authentication). You will also need to set `primary_conninfo` in the downstream standby to point to the cascading standby.

### 25.2.8. Synchronous Replication

Postgres Pro streaming replication is asynchronous by default. If the primary server crashes then some transactions that were committed may not have been replicated to the standby server, causing data loss. The amount of data loss is proportional to the replication delay at the time of failover.

Synchronous replication offers the ability to confirm that all changes made by a transaction have been transferred to one or more synchronous standby servers. This extends that standard level of durability offered by a transaction commit. This level of protection is referred to as 2-safe replication in computer science theory, and group-1-safe (group-safe and 1-safe) when `synchronous_commit` is set to `remote_write`.

When requesting synchronous replication, each commit of a write transaction will wait until confirmation is received that the commit has been written to the write-ahead log on disk of both the primary and standby server. The only possibility that data can be lost is if both the primary and the standby suffer crashes at the same time. This can provide a much higher level of durability, though only if the sysadmin is cautious about the placement and management of the two servers. Waiting for confirmation increases the user's confidence that the changes will not be lost in the event of server crashes but it also necessarily increases the response time for the requesting transaction. The minimum wait time is the round-trip time between primary to standby.

Read-only transactions and transaction rollbacks need not wait for replies from standby servers. Subtransaction commits do not wait for responses from standby servers, only top-level commits. Long running actions such as data loading or index building do not wait until the very final commit message. All two-phase commit actions require commit waits, including both prepare and commit.

A synchronous standby can be a physical replication standby or a logical replication subscriber. It can also be any other physical or logical WAL replication stream consumer that knows how to send the appropriate feedback messages. Besides the built-in physical and logical replication systems, this includes special programs such as `pg_receivewal` and `pg_recvlogical` as well as some third-party replication systems and custom programs. Check the respective documentation for details on synchronous replication support.

### 25.2.8.1. Basic Configuration

Once streaming replication has been configured, configuring synchronous replication requires only one additional configuration step: `synchronous_standby_names` must be set to a non-empty value. `synchronous_commit` must also be set to `on`, but since this is the default value, typically no change is required. (See Section 18.5.1 and Section 18.6.2.) This configuration will cause each commit to wait for confirmation that the standby has written the commit record to durable storage. `synchronous_commit` can be set by individual users, so it can be configured in the configuration file, for particular users or databases, or dynamically by applications, in order to control the durability guarantee on a per-transaction basis.

After a commit record has been written to disk on the primary, the WAL record is then sent to the standby. The standby sends reply messages each time a new batch of WAL data is written to disk, unless `wal_receiver_status_interval` is set to zero on the standby. In the case that `synchronous_commit` is set to `remote_apply`, the standby sends reply messages when the commit record is replayed, making
the transaction visible. If the standby is chosen as a synchronous standby, according to the setting of `synchronous_standby_names` on the primary, the reply messages from that standby will be considered along with those from other synchronous standbys to decide when to release transactions waiting for confirmation that the commit record has been received. These parameters allow the administrator to specify which standby servers should be synchronous standbys. Note that the configuration of synchronous replication is mainly on the primary. Named standbys must be directly connected to the primary; the primary knows nothing about downstream standby servers using cascaded replication.

Setting `synchronous_commit` to `remote_write` will cause each commit to wait for confirmation that the standby has received the commit record and written it out to its own operating system, but not for the data to be flushed to disk on the standby. This setting provides a weaker guarantee of durability than does: the standby could lose the data in the event of an operating system crash, though not a Postgres Pro crash. However, it's a useful setting in practice because it can decrease the response time for the transaction. Data loss could only occur if both the primary and the standby crash and the database of the primary gets corrupted at the same time.

Setting `synchronous_commit` to `remote_apply` will cause each commit to wait until the current synchronous standbys report that they have replayed the transaction, making it visible to user queries. In simple cases, this allows for load balancing with causal consistency.

Users will stop waiting if a fast shutdown is requested. However, as when using asynchronous replication, the server will not fully shutdown until all outstanding WAL records are transferred to the currently connected standby servers.

### 25.2.8.2. Multiple Synchronous Standbys

Synchronous replication supports one or more synchronous standby servers; transactions will wait until all the standby servers which are considered as synchronous confirm receipt of their data. The number of synchronous standbys that transactions must wait for replies from is specified in `synchronous_standby_names`. This parameter also specifies a list of standby names and the method (`FIRST` and `ANY`) to choose synchronous standbys from the listed ones.

The method `FIRST` specifies a priority-based synchronous replication and makes transaction commits wait until their WAL records are replicated to the requested number of synchronous standbys chosen based on their priorities. The standbys whose names appear earlier in the list are given higher priority and will be considered as synchronous. Other standby servers appearing later in this list represent potential synchronous standbys. If any of the current synchronous standbys disconnects for whatever reason, it will be replaced immediately with the next-highest-priority standby.

An example of `synchronous_standby_names` for a priority-based multiple synchronous standbys is:

```plaintext
synchronous_standby_names = 'FIRST 2 (s1, s2, s3)'
```

In this example, if four standby servers `s1`, `s2`, `s3` and `s4` are running, the two standbys `s1` and `s2` will be chosen as synchronous standbys because their names appear early in the list of standby names. `s3` is a potential synchronous standby and will take over the role of synchronous standby when either of `s1` or `s2` fails. `s4` is an asynchronous standby since its name is not in the list.

The method `ANY` specifies a quorum-based synchronous replication and makes transaction commits wait until their WAL records are replicated to at least the requested number of synchronous standbys in the list.

An example of `synchronous_standby_names` for a quorum-based multiple synchronous standbys is:

```plaintext
synchronous_standby_names = 'ANY 2 (s1, s2, s3)'
```

In this example, if four standby servers `s1`, `s2`, `s3` and `s4` are running, transaction commits will wait for replies from at least any two standbys of `s1`, `s2` and `s3`. `s4` is an asynchronous standby since its name is not in the list.

The synchronous states of standby servers can be viewed using the `pg_stat_replication` view.
25.2.8.3. Planning for Performance

Synchronous replication usually requires carefully planned and placed standby servers to ensure applications perform acceptably. Waiting doesn't utilize system resources, but transaction locks continue to be held until the transfer is confirmed. As a result, incautious use of synchronous replication will reduce performance for database applications because of increased response times and higher contention.

Postgres Pro allows the application developer to specify the durability level required via replication. This can be specified for the system overall, though it can also be specified for specific users or connections, or even individual transactions.

For example, an application workload might consist of: 10% of changes are important customer details, while 90% of changes are less important data that the business can more easily survive if it is lost, such as chat messages between users.

With synchronous replication options specified at the application level (on the primary) we can offer synchronous replication for the most important changes, without slowing down the bulk of the total workload. Application level options are an important and practical tool for allowing the benefits of synchronous replication for high performance applications.

You should consider that the network bandwidth must be higher than the rate of generation of WAL data.

25.2.8.4. Planning for High Availability

`synchronous_standby_names` specifies the number and names of synchronous standbys that transaction commits made when `synchronous_commit` is set to `on`, `remote_apply` or `remote_write` will wait for responses from. Such transaction commits may never be completed if any one of synchronous standbys should crash.

The best solution for high availability is to ensure you keep as many synchronous standbys as requested. This can be achieved by naming multiple potential synchronous standbys using `synchronous_standby_names`.

In a priority-based synchronous replication, the standbys whose names appear earlier in the list will be used as synchronous standbys. Standbys listed after these will take over the role of synchronous standby if one of current ones should fail.

In a quorum-based synchronous replication, all the standbys appearing in the list will be used as candidates for synchronous standbys. Even if one of them should fail, the other standbys will keep performing the role of candidates of synchronous standby.

When a standby first attaches to the primary, it will not yet be properly synchronized. This is described as `catchup` mode. Once the lag between standby and primary reaches zero for the first time we move to `real-time streaming` state. The catch-up duration may be long immediately after the standby has been created. If the standby is shut down, then the catch-up period will increase according to the length of time the standby has been down. The standby is only able to become a synchronous standby once it has reached `streaming` state. This state can be viewed using the `pg_stat_replication` view.

If primary restarts while commits are waiting for acknowledgment, those waiting transactions will be marked fully committed once the primary database recovers. There is no way to be certain that all standbys have received all outstanding WAL data at time of the crash of the primary. Some transactions may not show as committed on the standby, even though they show as committed on the primary. The guarantee we offer is that the application will not receive explicit acknowledgment of the successful commit of a transaction until the WAL data is known to be safely received by all the synchronous standbys.

If you really cannot keep as many synchronous standbys as requested then you should decrease the number of synchronous standbys that transaction commits must wait for responses from in `synchronous_standby_names` (or disable it) and reload the configuration file on the primary server.
If the primary is isolated from remaining standby servers you should fail over to the best candidate of those other remaining standby servers.

If you need to re-create a standby server while transactions are waiting, make sure that the commands `pg_start_backup()` and `pg_stop_backup()` are run in a session with `synchronous_commit = off`, otherwise those requests will wait forever for the standby to appear.

### 25.2.9. Continuous Archiving in Standby

When continuous WAL archiving is used in a standby, there are two different scenarios: the WAL archive can be shared between the primary and the standby, or the standby can have its own WAL archive. When the standby has its own WAL archive, set `archive_mode` to `always`, and the standby will call the archive command for every WAL segment it receives, whether it’s by restoring from the archive or by streaming replication. The shared archive can be handled similarly, but the `archive_command` must test if the file being archived exists already, and if the existing file has identical contents. This requires more care in the `archive_command`, as it must be careful to not overwrite an existing file with different contents, but return success if the exactly same file is archived twice. And all that must be done free of race conditions, if two servers attempt to archive the same file at the same time.

If `archive_mode` is set to `on`, the archiver is not enabled during recovery or standby mode. If the standby server is promoted, it will start archiving after the promotion, but will not archive any WAL or timeline history files that it did not generate itself. To get a complete series of WAL files in the archive, you must ensure that all WAL is archived, before it reaches the standby. This is inherently true with file-based log shipping, as the standby can only restore files that are found in the archive, but not if streaming replication is enabled. When a server is not in recovery mode, there is no difference between `on` and `always` modes.

### 25.3. Failover

If the primary server fails then the standby server should begin failover procedures.

If the standby server fails then no failover need take place. If the standby server can be restarted, even some time later, then the recovery process can also be restarted immediately, taking advantage of restartable recovery. If the standby server cannot be restarted, then a full new standby server instance should be created.

If the primary server fails and the standby server becomes the new primary, and then the old primary restarts, you must have a mechanism for informing the old primary that it is no longer the primary. This is sometimes known as STONITH (Shoot The Other Node In The Head), which is necessary to avoid situations where both systems think they are the primary, which will lead to confusion and ultimately data loss.

Many failover systems use just two systems, the primary and the standby, connected by some kind of heartbeat mechanism to continually verify the connectivity between the two and the viability of the primary. It is also possible to use a third system (called a witness server) to prevent some cases of inappropriate failover, but the additional complexity might not be worthwhile unless it is set up with sufficient care and rigorous testing.

Postgres Pro does not provide the system software required to identify a failure on the primary and notify the standby database server. Many such tools exist and are well integrated with the operating system facilities required for successful failover, such as IP address migration.

Once failover to the standby occurs, there is only a single server in operation. This is known as a degenerate state. The former standby is now the primary, but the former primary is down and might stay down. To return to normal operation, a standby server must be recreated, either on the former primary system when it comes up, or on a third, possibly new, system. The `pg_rewind` utility can be used to speed up this process on large clusters. Once complete, the primary and standby can be considered to have switched roles. Some people choose to use a third server to provide backup for the new primary until the new standby server is recreated, though clearly this complicates the system configuration and operational processes.
So, switching from primary to standby server can be fast but requires some time to re-prepare the failover cluster. Regular switching from primary to standby is useful, since it allows regular downtime on each system for maintenance. This also serves as a test of the failover mechanism to ensure that it will really work when you need it. Written administration procedures are advised.

To trigger failover of a log-shipping standby server, run `pg_ctl promote`, call `pg_promote()`, or create a trigger file with the file name and path specified by the `promote_trigger_file`. If you're planning to use `pg_ctl promote` or to call `pg_promote()` to fail over, `promote_trigger_file` is not required. If you're setting up the reporting servers that are only used to offload read-only queries from the primary, not for high availability purposes, you don't need to promote it.

## 25.4. Hot Standby

Hot Standby is the term used to describe the ability to connect to the server and run read-only queries while the server is in archive recovery or standby mode. This is useful both for replication purposes and for restoring a backup to a desired state with great precision. The term Hot Standby also refers to the ability of the server to move from recovery through to normal operation while users continue running queries and/or keep their connections open.

Running queries in hot standby mode is similar to normal query operation, though there are several usage and administrative differences explained below.

### 25.4.1. User's Overview

When the `hot_standby` parameter is set to true on a standby server, it will begin accepting connections once the recovery has brought the system to a consistent state. All such connections are strictly read-only; not even temporary tables may be written.

The data on the standby takes some time to arrive from the primary server so there will be a measurable delay between primary and standby. Running the same query nearly simultaneously on both primary and standby might therefore return differing results. We say that data on the standby is *eventually consistent* with the primary. Once the commit record for a transaction is replayed on the standby, the changes made by that transaction will be visible to any new snapshots taken on the standby. Snapshots may be taken at the start of each query or at the start of each transaction, depending on the current transaction isolation level. For more details, see Section 13.2.

Transactions started during hot standby may issue the following commands:

- **Query access**: `SELECT, COPY TO`
- **Cursor commands**: `DECLARE, FETCH, CLOSE`
- **Settings**: `SHOW, SET, RESET`
- **Transaction management commands**:
  - `BEGIN, END, ABORT, START TRANSACTION`
  - `SAVEPOINT, RELEASE, ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT`
  - `EXCEPTION blocks and other internal subtransactions`
  - `LOCK TABLE, though only when explicitly in one of these modes: ACCESS SHARE, ROW SHARE or ROW EXCLUSIVE.`
- **Plans and resources**: `PREPARE, EXECUTE, DEALLOCATE, DISCARD`
- **Plugins and extensions**: `LOAD`
- **UNLISTEN**

Transactions started during hot standby will never be assigned a transaction ID and cannot write to the system write-ahead log. Therefore, the following actions will produce error messages:

- **Data Manipulation Language (DML)**: `INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, COPY FROM, TRUNCATE`. Note that there are no allowed actions that result in a trigger being executed during recovery. This restriction
applies even to temporary tables, because table rows cannot be read or written without assigning a transaction ID, which is currently not possible in a Hot Standby environment.

- Data Definition Language (DDL): CREATE, DROP, ALTER, COMMENT. This restriction applies even to temporary tables, because carrying out these operations would require updating the system catalog tables.

- SELECT ... FOR SHARE | UPDATE, because row locks cannot be taken without updating the underlying data files.

- Rules on SELECT statements that generate DML commands.

- LOCK that explicitly requests a mode higher than ROW EXCLUSIVE MODE.

- LOCK in short default form, since it requests ACCESS EXCLUSIVE MODE.

- Transaction management commands that explicitly set non-read-only state:
  - BEGIN READ WRITE, START TRANSACTION READ WRITE
  - SET TRANSACTION READ WRITE, SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS AS TRANSACTION READ WRITE
  - SET transaction_read_only = off

- Two-phase commit commands: PREPARE TRANSACTION, COMMIT PREPARED, ROLLBACK PREPARED because even read-only transactions need to write WAL in the prepare phase (the first phase of two phase commit).

- Sequence updates: nextval(), setval()

- LISTEN, NOTIFY

In normal operation, “read-only” transactions are allowed to use LISTEN and NOTIFY, so Hot Standby sessions operate under slightly tighter restrictions than ordinary read-only sessions. It is possible that some of these restrictions might be loosened in a future release.

During hot standby, the parameter transaction_read_only is always true and may not be changed. But as long as no attempt is made to modify the database, connections during hot standby will act much like any other database connection. If failover or switchover occurs, the database will switch to normal processing mode. Sessions will remain connected while the server changes mode. Once hot standby finishes, it will be possible to initiate read-write transactions (even from a session begun during hot standby).

Users can determine whether hot standby is currently active for their session by issuing SHOW in_hot_standby. (In server versions before 14, the in_hot_standby parameter did not exist; a workable substitute method for older servers is SHOW transaction_read_only.) In addition, a set of functions (Table 9.88) allow users to access information about the standby server. These allow you to write programs that are aware of the current state of the database. These can be used to monitor the progress of recovery, or to allow you to write complex programs that restore the database to particular states.

### 25.4.2. Handling Query Conflicts

The primary and standby servers are in many ways loosely connected. Actions on the primary will have an effect on the standby. As a result, there is potential for negative interactions or conflicts between them. The easiest conflict to understand is performance: if a huge data load is taking place on the primary then this will generate a similar stream of WAL records on the standby, so standby queries may contend for system resources, such as I/O.

There are also additional types of conflict that can occur with Hot Standby. These conflicts are hard conflicts in the sense that queries might need to be canceled and, in some cases, sessions disconnected to resolve them. The user is provided with several ways to handle these conflicts. Conflict cases include:

- Access Exclusive locks taken on the primary server, including both explicit LOCK commands and various DDL actions, conflict with table accesses in standby queries.

- Dropping a tablespace on the primary conflicts with standby queries using that tablespace for temporary work files.
High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication

- Dropping a database on the primary conflicts with sessions connected to that database on the standby.
- Application of a vacuum cleanup record from WAL conflicts with standby transactions whose snapshots can still “see” any of the rows to be removed.
- Application of a vacuum cleanup record from WAL conflicts with queries accessing the target page on the standby, whether or not the data to be removed is visible.

On the primary server, these cases simply result in waiting; and the user might choose to cancel either of the conflicting actions. However, on the standby there is no choice: the WAL-logged action already occurred on the primary so the standby must not fail to apply it. Furthermore, allowing WAL application to wait indefinitely may be very undesirable, because the standby’s state will become increasingly far behind the primary’s. Therefore, a mechanism is provided to forcibly cancel standby queries that conflict with to-be-applied WAL records.

An example of the problem situation is an administrator on the primary server running `DROP TABLE` on a table that is currently being queried on the standby server. Clearly the standby query cannot continue if the `DROP TABLE` is applied on the standby. If this situation occurred on the primary, the `DROP TABLE` would wait until the other query had finished. But when `DROP TABLE` is run on the primary, the primary doesn’t have information about what queries are running on the standby, so it will not wait for any such standby queries. The WAL change records come through to the standby while the standby query is still running, causing a conflict. The standby server must either delay application of the WAL records (and everything after them, too) or else cancel the conflicting query so that the `DROP TABLE` can be applied.

When a conflicting query is short, it’s typically desirable to allow it to complete by delaying WAL application for a little bit; but a long delay in WAL application is usually not desirable. So the cancel mechanism has parameters, `max_standby_archive_delay` and `max_standby_streaming_delay`, that define the maximum allowed delay in WAL application. Conflicting queries will be canceled once it has taken longer than the relevant delay setting to apply any newly-received WAL data. There are two parameters so that different delay values can be specified for the case of reading WAL data from an archive (i.e., initial recovery from a base backup or “catching up” a standby server that has fallen far behind) versus reading WAL data via streaming replication.

In a standby server that exists primarily for high availability, it’s best to set the delay parameters relatively short, so that the server cannot fall far behind the primary due to delays caused by standby queries. However, if the standby server is meant for executing long-running queries, then a high or even infinite delay value may be preferable. Keep in mind however that a long-running query could cause other sessions on the standby server to not see recent changes on the primary, if it delays application of WAL records.

Once the delay specified by `max_standby_archive_delay` or `max_standby_streaming_delay` has been exceeded, conflicting queries will be canceled. This usually results just in a cancellation error, although in the case of replaying a `DROP DATABASE` the entire conflicting session will be terminated. Also, if the conflict is over a lock held by an idle transaction, the conflicting session is terminated (this behavior might change in the future).

Canceled queries may be retried immediately (after beginning a new transaction, of course). Since query cancellation depends on the nature of the WAL records being replayed, a query that was canceled may well succeed if it is executed again.

Keep in mind that the delay parameters are compared to the elapsed time since the WAL data was received by the standby server. Thus, the grace period allowed to any one query on the standby is never more than the delay parameter, and could be considerably less if the standby has already fallen behind as a result of waiting for previous queries to complete, or as a result of being unable to keep up with a heavy update load.

The most common reason for conflict between standby queries and WAL replay is “early cleanup”. Normally, Postgres Pro allows cleanup of old row versions when there are no transactions that need to see them to ensure correct visibility of data according to MVCC rules. However, this rule can only
be applied for transactions executing on the primary. So it is possible that cleanup on the primary will remove row versions that are still visible to a transaction on the standby.

Experienced users should note that both row version cleanup and row version freezing will potentially conflict with standby queries. Running a manual VACUUM FREEZE is likely to cause conflicts even on tables with no updated or deleted rows.

Users should be clear that tables that are regularly and heavily updated on the primary server will quickly cause cancellation of longer running queries on the standby. In such cases the setting of a finite value for max_standby_archive_delay or max_standby_streaming_delay can be considered similar to setting statement_timeout.

Remedial possibilities exist if the number of standby-query cancellations is found to be unacceptable. The first option is to set the parameter hot_standby_feedback, which prevents VACUUM from removing recently-dead rows and so cleanup conflicts do not occur. If you do this, you should note that this will delay cleanup of dead rows on the primary, which may result in undesirable table bloat. However, the cleanup situation will be no worse than if the standby queries were running directly on the primary server, and you are still getting the benefit of off-loading execution onto the standby. If standby servers connect and disconnect frequently, you might want to make adjustments to handle the period when hot_standby_feedback feedback is not being provided. For example, consider increasing max_standby_archive_delay so that queries are not rapidly canceled by conflicts in WAL archive files during disconnected periods. You should also consider increasing max_standby_streaming_delay to avoid rapid cancellations by newly-arrived streaming WAL entries after reconnection.

Another option is to increase vacuum_defer_cleanup_age on the primary server, so that dead rows will not be cleaned up as quickly as they normally would be. This will allow more time for queries to execute before they are canceled on the standby, without having to set a high max_standby_streaming_delay. However it is difficult to guarantee any specific execution-time window with this approach, since vacuum_defer_cleanup_age is measured in transactions executed on the primary server.

The number of query cancels and the reason for them can be viewed using the pg_stat_database_conflicts system view on the standby server. The pg_stat_database system view also contains summary information.

Users can control whether a log message is produced when WAL replay is waiting longer than deadlock_timeout for conflicts. This is controlled by the log_recovery_conflict_waits parameter.

### 25.4.3. Administrator's Overview

If hot_standby is on in postgresql.conf (the default value) and there is a standby.signal file present, the server will run in Hot Standby mode. However, it may take some time for Hot Standby connections to be allowed, because the server will not accept connections until it has completed sufficient recovery to provide a consistent state against which queries can run. During this period, clients that attempt to connect will be refused with an error message. To confirm the server has come up, either loop trying to connect from the application, or look for these messages in the server logs:

```
LOG:  entering standby mode

... then some time later ...

LOG:  consistent recovery state reached
LOG:  database system is ready to accept read-only connections
```

Consistency information is recorded once per checkpoint on the primary. It is not possible to enable hot standby when reading WAL written during a period when wal_level was not set to replica or logical on the primary. Reaching a consistent state can also be delayed in the presence of both of these conditions:

- A write transaction has more than 64 subtransactions
- Very long-lived write transactions
If you are running file-based log shipping ("warm standby"), you might need to wait until the next WAL file arrives, which could be as long as the `archive_timeout` setting on the primary.

The settings of some parameters determine the size of shared memory for tracking transaction IDs, locks, and prepared transactions. These shared memory structures must be no smaller on a standby than on the primary in order to ensure that the standby does not run out of shared memory during recovery. For example, if the primary had used a prepared transaction but the standby had not allocated any shared memory for tracking prepared transactions, then recovery could not continue until the standby’s configuration is changed. The parameters affected are:

- `max_connections`
- `max_prepared_transactions`
- `max_locks_per_transaction`
- `max_wal_senders`
- `max_worker_processes`

The easiest way to ensure this does not become a problem is to have these parameters set on the standbys to values equal to or greater than on the primary. Therefore, if you want to increase these values, you should do so on all standby servers first, before applying the changes to the primary server. Conversely, if you want to decrease these values, you should do so on the primary server first, before applying the changes to all standby servers. Keep in mind that when a standby is promoted, it becomes the new reference for the required parameter settings for the standbys that follow it. Therefore, to avoid this becoming a problem during a switchover or failover, it is recommended to keep these settings the same on all standby servers.

The WAL tracks changes to these parameters on the primary. If a hot standby processes WAL that indicates that the current value on the primary is higher than its own value, it will log a warning and pause recovery, for example:

```
WARNING: hot standby is not possible because of insufficient parameter settings
DETAIL: max_connections = 80 is a lower setting than on the primary server, where its value was 100.
LOG: recovery has paused
DETAIL: If recovery is unpaused, the server will shut down.
HINT: You can then restart the server after making the necessary configuration changes.
```

At that point, the settings on the standby need to be updated and the instance restarted before recovery can continue. If the standby is not a hot standby, then when it encounters the incompatible parameter change, it will shut down immediately without pausing, since there is then no value in keeping it up.

It is important that the administrator select appropriate settings for `max_standby_archive_delay` and `max_standby_streaming_delay`. The best choices vary depending on business priorities. For example if the server is primarily tasked as a High Availability server, then you will want low delay settings, perhaps even zero, though that is a very aggressive setting. If the standby server is tasked as an additional server for decision support queries then it might be acceptable to set the maximum delay values to many hours, or even -1 which means wait forever for queries to complete.

Transaction status "hint bits" written on the primary are not WAL-logged, so data on the standby will likely re-write the hints again on the standby. Thus, the standby server will still perform disk writes even though all users are read-only; no changes occur to the data values themselves. Users will still write large sort temporary files and re-generate relcache info files, so no part of the database is truly read-only during hot standby mode. Note also that writes to remote databases using dblink module, and other operations outside the database using PL functions will still be possible, even though the transaction is read-only locally.

The following types of administration commands are not accepted during recovery mode:

- Data Definition Language (DDL): e.g., `CREATE INDEX`
- Privilege and Ownership: `GRANT, REVOKE, REASSIGN`
• Maintenance commands: ANALYZE, VACUUM, CLUSTER, REINDEX

Again, note that some of these commands are actually allowed during "read only" mode transactions on the primary.

As a result, you cannot create additional indexes that exist solely on the standby, nor statistics that exist solely on the standby. If these administration commands are needed, they should be executed on the primary, and eventually those changes will propagate to the standby.

pg_cancel_backend() and pg_terminate_backend() will work on user backends, but not the Startup process, which performs recovery. pg_stat_activity does not show recovering transactions as active. As a result, pg_prepared_xacts is always empty during recovery. If you wish to resolve in-doubt prepared transactions, view pg_prepared_xacts on the primary and issue commands to resolve transactions there or resolve them after the end of recovery.

pg_locks will show locks held by backends, as normal. pg_locks also shows a virtual transaction managed by the Startup process that owns all AccessExclusiveLocks held by transactions being replayed by recovery. Note that the Startup process does not acquire locks to make database changes, and thus locks other than AccessExclusiveLocks do not show in pg_locks for the Startup process; they are just presumed to exist.

The Nagios plugin check_pgsq1 will work, because the simple information it checks for exists. The check_postgres monitoring script will also work, though some reported values could give different or confusing results. For example, last vacuum time will not be maintained, since no vacuum occurs on the standby. Vacuums running on the primary do still send their changes to the standby.

WAL file control commands will not work during recovery, e.g., pg_start_backup, pg_switch_wal etc.

Dynamically loadable modules work, including pg_stat_statements.

Advisory locks work normally in recovery, including deadlock detection. Note that advisory locks are never WAL logged, so it is impossible for an advisory lock on either the primary or the standby to conflict with WAL replay. Nor is it possible to acquire an advisory lock on the primary and have it initiate a similar advisory lock on the standby. Advisory locks relate only to the server on which they are acquired.

Trigger-based replication systems such as Slony, Londiste and Bucardo won't run on the standby at all, though they will run happily on the primary server as long as the changes are not sent to standby servers to be applied. WAL replay is not trigger-based so you cannot relay from the standby to any system that requires additional database writes or relies on the use of triggers.

New OIDs cannot be assigned, though some UUID generators may still work as long as they do not rely on writing new status to the database.

Currently, temporary table creation is not allowed during read-only transactions, so in some cases existing scripts will not run correctly. This restriction might be relaxed in a later release. This is both an SQL Standard compliance issue and a technical issue.

DROP TABLESPACE can only succeed if the tablespace is empty. Some standby users may be actively using the tablespace via their temp_tablespaces parameter. If there are temporary files in the tablespace, all active queries are canceled to ensure that temporary files are removed, so the tablespace can be removed and WAL replay can continue.

Running DROP DATABASE or ALTER DATABASE ... SET TABLESPACE on the primary will generate a WAL entry that will cause all users connected to that database on the standby to be forcibly disconnected. This action occurs immediately, whatever the setting of max_standby_streaming_delay. Note that ALTER DATABASE ... RENAME does not disconnect users, which in most cases will go unnoticed, though might in some cases cause a program confusion if it depends in some way upon database name.

In normal (non-recovery) mode, if you issue DROP USER or DROP ROLE for a role with login capability while that user is still connected then nothing happens to the connected user — they remain connected. The
user cannot reconnect however. This behavior applies in recovery also, so a \texttt{DROP USER} on the primary
does not disconnect that user on the standby.

The statistics collector is active during recovery. All scans, reads, blocks, index usage, etc., will be
recorded normally on the standby. Replayed actions will not duplicate their effects on primary, so
replaying an insert will not increment the Inserts column of \texttt{pg_stat_user_tables}. The stats file is deleted
at the start of recovery, so stats from primary and standby will differ; this is considered a feature, not
a bug.

Autovacuum is not active during recovery. It will start normally at the end of recovery.

The checkpointer process and the background writer process are active during recovery. The
checkpointer process will perform restartpoints (similar to checkpoints on the primary) and the
background writer process will perform normal block cleaning activities. This can include updates of the
hint bit information stored on the standby server. The \texttt{CHECKPOINT} command is accepted during recovery,
though it performs a restartpoint rather than a new checkpoint.

### 25.4.4. Hot Standby Parameter Reference

Various parameters have been mentioned above in Section 25.4.2 and Section 25.4.3.

On the primary, parameters \texttt{wal_level} and \texttt{vacuum_defer_cleanup_age} can be used. \texttt{max_standby_archive_delay}
and \texttt{max_standby_streaming_delay} have no effect if set on the primary.

On the standby, parameters \texttt{hot_standby}, \texttt{max_standby_archive_delay} and \texttt{max_standby_streaming_delay}
can be used. \texttt{vacuum_defer_cleanup_age} has no effect as long as the
server remains in standby mode, though it will become relevant if the standby becomes primary.

### 25.4.5. Caveats

There are several limitations of Hot Standby. These can and probably will be fixed in future releases:

- Full knowledge of running transactions is required before snapshots can be taken. Transactions
  that use large numbers of subtransactions (currently greater than 64) will delay the start of read-
  only connections until the completion of the longest running write transaction. If this situation
  occurs, explanatory messages will be sent to the server log.

- Valid starting points for standby queries are generated at each checkpoint on the primary. If the
  standby is shut down while the primary is in a shutdown state, it might not be possible to re-enter
  Hot Standby until the primary is started up, so that it generates further starting points in the
  WAL logs. This situation isn't a problem in the most common situations where it might happen.
  Generally, if the primary is shut down and not available anymore, that's likely due to a serious
  failure that requires the standby being converted to operate as the new primary anyway. And in
  situations where the primary is being intentionally taken down, coordinating to make sure the
  standby becomes the new primary smoothly is also standard procedure.

- At the end of recovery, \texttt{AccessExclusiveLocks} held by prepared transactions will require twice the
  normal number of lock table entries. If you plan on running either a large number of concurrent
  prepared transactions that normally take \texttt{AccessExclusiveLocks}, or you plan on having one large
  transaction that takes many \texttt{AccessExclusiveLocks}, you are advised to select a larger value of
  \texttt{max_locks_per_transaction}, perhaps as much as twice the value of the parameter on the primary
  server. You need not consider this at all if your setting of \texttt{max_prepared_transactions} is 0.

- The Serializable transaction isolation level is not yet available in hot standby. (See Section 13.2.3
  and Section 13.4.1 for details.) An attempt to set a transaction to the serializable isolation level in
  hot standby mode will generate an error.
Chapter 26. Monitoring Database Activity

A database administrator frequently wonders, “What is the system doing right now?” This chapter discusses how to find that out.

Several tools are available for monitoring database activity and analyzing performance. Most of this chapter is devoted to describing Postgres Pro's statistics collector, but one should not neglect regular Unix monitoring programs such as `ps`, `top`, `iostat`, and `vmstat`. Also, once one has identified a poorly-performing query, further investigation might be needed using Postgres Pro's `EXPLAIN` command. Section 14.1 discusses `EXPLAIN` and other methods for understanding the behavior of an individual query.

26.1. Standard Unix Tools

On most Unix platforms, Postgres Pro modifies its command title as reported by `ps`, so that individual server processes can readily be identified. A sample display is

```
$ ps auxww | grep ^postgres
postgres  15551  0.0  0.1  57536  7132 pts/0    S    18:02   0:00 postgres -i
postgres  15554  0.0  0.0  57536  1184 ?        Ss   18:02   0:00 postgres: background
writer
postgres  15555  0.0  0.0  57536   916 ?        Ss   18:02   0:00 postgres: checkpointer
postgres  15556  0.0  0.0  57536   916 ?        Ss   18:02   0:00 postgres: walwriter
postgres  15557  0.0  0.0  58504  2244 ?        Ss   18:02   0:00 postgres: autovacuum launcher
postgres  15558  0.0  0.0  17512  1068 ?        Ss   18:02   0:00 postgres: stats collector
postgres  15582  0.0  0.0  58772  3080 ?        Ss   18:04   0:00 postgres: joe runbug 127.0.0.1 idle
postgres  15606  0.0  0.0  58772  3052 ?        Ss   18:07   0:00 postgres: tgl regression [local] SELECT waiting
postgres  15610  0.0  0.0  58772  3056 ?        Ss   18:07   0:00 postgres: tgl regression [local] idle in transaction

(The appropriate invocation of `ps` varies across different platforms, as do the details of what is shown. This example is from a recent Linux system.) The first process listed here is the primary server process. The command arguments shown for it are the same ones used when it was launched. The next five processes are background worker processes automatically launched by the primary process. (The “stats collector” process will not be present if you have set the system not to start the statistics collector; likewise the “autovacuum launcher” process can be disabled.) Each of the remaining processes is a server process handling one client connection. Each such process sets its command line display in the form

```
postgres: user database host activity
```

The user, database, and (client) host items remain the same for the life of the client connection, but the activity indicator changes. The activity can be `idle` (i.e., waiting for a client command), `idle in transaction` (waiting for client inside a `BEGIN` block), or a command type name such as `SELECT`. Also, `waiting` is appended if the server process is presently waiting on a lock held by another session. In the above example we can infer that process 15606 is waiting for process 15610 to complete its transaction and thereby release some lock. (Process 15610 must be the blocker, because there is no other active session. In more complicated cases it would be necessary to look into the `pg_locks` system view to determine who is blocking whom.)

If `cluster_name` has been configured the cluster name will also be shown in `ps` output:

```
$ psql -c 'SHOW cluster_name'
cluster_name
-----------
server1
```

652
Monitoring Database Activity

If you have turned off update_process_title then the activity indicator is not updated; the process title is set only once when a new process is launched. On some platforms this saves a measurable amount of per-command overhead; on others it's insignificant.

Tip

Solaris requires special handling. You must use /usr/ucb/ps, rather than /bin/ps. You also must use two w flags, not just one. In addition, your original invocation of the postgres command must have a shorter ps status display than that provided by each server process. If you fail to do all three things, the ps output for each server process will be the original postgres command line.

26.2. The Statistics Collector

Postgres Pro's statistics collector is a subsystem that supports collection and reporting of information about server activity. Presently, the collector can count accesses to tables and indexes in both disk-block and individual-row terms. It also tracks the total number of rows in each table, and information about vacuum and analyze actions for each table. It can also count calls to user-defined functions and the total time spent in each one.

Postgres Pro also supports reporting dynamic information about exactly what is going on in the system right now, such as the exact command currently being executed by other server processes, and which other connections exist in the system. This facility is independent of the collector process.

26.2.1. Statistics Collection Configuration

Since collection of statistics adds some overhead to query execution, the system can be configured to collect or not collect information. This is controlled by configuration parameters that are normally set in postgresql.conf. (See Chapter 18 for details about setting configuration parameters.)

The parameter track_activities enables monitoring of the current command being executed by any server process.

The parameter track_counts controls whether statistics are collected about table and index accesses.

The parameter track_functions enables tracking of usage of user-defined functions.

The parameter track_io_timing enables monitoring of block read and write times.

The parameter track_wal_io_timing enables monitoring of WAL write times.

Normally these parameters are set in postgresql.conf so that they apply to all server processes, but it is possible to turn them on or off in individual sessions using the SET command. (To prevent ordinary users from hiding their activity from the administrator, only superusers are allowed to change these parameters with SET.)

The statistics collector transmits the collected information to other Postgres Pro processes through temporary files. These files are stored in the directory named by the stats_temp_directory parameter, pg_stat_tmp by default. For better performance, stats_temp_directory can be pointed at a RAM-based file system, decreasing physical I/O requirements. When the server shuts down cleanly, a permanent copy of the statistics data is stored in the pg_stat subdirectory, so that statistics can be retained across server restarts. When recovery is performed at server start (e.g., after immediate shutdown, server crash, and point-in-time recovery), all statistics counters are reset.
26.2.2. Viewing Statistics

Several predefined views, listed in Table 26.1, are available to show the current state of the system. There are also several other views, listed in Table 26.2, available to show the results of statistics collection. Alternatively, one can build custom views using the underlying statistics functions, as discussed in Section 26.2.22.

When using the statistics to monitor collected data, it is important to realize that the information does not update instantaneously. Each individual server process transmits new statistical counts to the collector just before going idle; so a query or transaction still in progress does not affect the displayed totals. Also, the collector itself emits a new report at most once per \texttt{PGSTAT\_STAT\_INTERVAL} milliseconds (500 ms unless altered while building the server). So the displayed information lags behind actual activity. However, current-query information collected by \texttt{track\_activities} is always up-to-date.

Another important point is that when a server process is asked to display any of these statistics, it first fetches the most recent report emitted by the collector process and then continues to use this snapshot for all statistical views and functions until the end of its current transaction. So the statistics will show static information as long as you continue the current transaction. Similarly, information about the current queries of all sessions is collected when any such information is first requested within a transaction, and the same information will be displayed throughout the transaction. This is a feature, not a bug, because it allows you to perform several queries on the statistics and correlate the results without worrying that the numbers are changing underneath you. But if you want to see new results with each query, be sure to do the queries outside any transaction block. Alternatively, you can invoke \texttt{pg\_stat\_clear\_snapshot()}, which will discard the current transaction's statistics snapshot (if any). The next use of statistical information will cause a new snapshot to be fetched.

A transaction can also see its own statistics (as yet untransmitted to the collector) in the views \texttt{pg\_stat\_xact\_all\_tables}, \texttt{pg\_stat\_xact\_sys\_tables}, \texttt{pg\_stat\_xact\_user\_tables}, and \texttt{pg\_stat\_xact\_user\_functions}. These numbers do not act as stated above; instead they update continuously throughout the transaction.

Some of the information in the dynamic statistics views shown in Table 26.1 is security restricted. Ordinary users can only see all the information about their own sessions (sessions belonging to a role that they are a member of). In rows about other sessions, many columns will be null. Note, however, that the existence of a session and its general properties such as its sessions user and database are visible to all users. Superusers and members of the built-in role \texttt{pg\_read\_all\_stats} (see also Section 20.5) can see all the information about all sessions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>View Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_stat_activity}</td>
<td>One row per server process, showing information related to the current activity of that process, such as state and current query. See \texttt{pg_stat_activity} for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_stat_replication}</td>
<td>One row per WAL sender process, showing statistics about replication to that sender’s connected standby server. See \texttt{pg_stat_replication} for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_stat_wal_receiver}</td>
<td>Only one row, showing statistics about the WAL receiver from that receiver’s connected server. See \texttt{pg_stat_wal_receiver} for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_stat_subscription}</td>
<td>At least one row per subscription, showing information about the subscription workers. See \texttt{pg_stat_subscription} for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{pg_stat_ssl}</td>
<td>One row per connection (regular and replication), showing information about SSL used on this connection. See \texttt{pg_stat_ssl} for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring Database Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>View Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_gssapi</td>
<td>One row per connection (regular and replication), showing information about GSSAPI authentication and encryption used on this connection. See <code>pg_stat_gssapi</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_progress_analyze</td>
<td>One row for each backend (including autovacuum worker processes) running ANALYZE, showing current progress. See Section 26.4.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_progress_create_index</td>
<td>One row for each backend running CREATE INDEX or REINDEX, showing current progress. See Section 26.4.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_progress_vacuum</td>
<td>One row for each backend (including autovacuum worker processes) running VACUUM, showing current progress. See Section 26.4.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_progress_cluster</td>
<td>One row for each backend running CLUSTER or VACUUM FULL, showing current progress. See Section 26.4.4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_progress_basebackup</td>
<td>One row for each WAL sender process streaming a base backup, showing current progress. See Section 26.4.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_progress_copy</td>
<td>One row for each backend running COPY, showing current progress. See Section 26.4.6.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 26.2. Collected Statistics Views

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>View Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_archiver</td>
<td>One row only, showing statistics about the WAL archiver process's activity. See <code>pg_stat_archiver</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_bgwriter</td>
<td>One row only, showing statistics about the background writer process's activity. See <code>pg_stat_bgwriter</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_wal</td>
<td>One row only, showing statistics about WAL activity. See <code>pg_stat_wal</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_database</td>
<td>One row per database, showing database-wide statistics. See <code>pg_stat_database</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_database_conflicts</td>
<td>One row per database, showing database-wide statistics about query cancels due to conflict with recovery on standby servers. See <code>pg_stat_database_conflicts</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_all_tables</td>
<td>One row for each table in the current database, showing statistics about accesses to that specific table. See <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_sys_tables</td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code>, except that only system tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_user_tables</td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code>, except that only user tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_xact_all_tables</td>
<td>Similar to <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code>, but counts actions taken so far within the current transaction (which are not yet included in <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> and related views). The columns for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_xact_sys_tables</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_stat_xact_all_tables</code>, except that only system tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_xact_user_tables</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_stat_xact_all_tables</code>, except that only user tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code></td>
<td>One row for each index in the current database, showing statistics about accesses to that specific index. See <code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_sys_indexes</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code>, except that only indexes on system tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_user_indexes</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code>, except that only indexes on user tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_all_tables</code></td>
<td>One row for each table in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific table. See <code>pg_statio_all_tables</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_sys_tables</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_statio_all_tables</code>, except that only system tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_user_tables</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_statio_all_tables</code>, except that only user tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code></td>
<td>One row for each index in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific index. See <code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_sys_indexes</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code>, except that only indexes on system tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_user_indexes</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code>, except that only indexes on user tables are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code></td>
<td>One row for each sequence in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific sequence. See <code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_sys_sequences</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code>, except that only system sequences are shown. (Presently, no system sequences are defined, so this view is always empty.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_statio_user_sequences</code></td>
<td>Same as <code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code>, except that only user sequences are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_user_functions</code></td>
<td>One row for each tracked function, showing statistics about executions of that function. See <code>pg_stat_user_functions</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_xact_user_functions</code></td>
<td>Similar to <code>pg_stat_user_functions</code>, but counts only calls during the current transaction (which are not yet included in <code>pg_stat_user_functions</code>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_slru</code></td>
<td>One row per SLRU, showing statistics of operations. See <code>pg_stat_slru</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_replication_slots</code></td>
<td>One row per replication slot, showing statistics about the replication slot’s usage. See <code>pg_stat_replication_slots</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The per-index statistics are particularly useful to determine which indexes are being used and how effective they are.

The `pg_statio_views` are primarily useful to determine the effectiveness of the buffer cache. When the number of actual disk reads is much smaller than the number of buffer hits, then the cache is satisfying most read requests without invoking a kernel call. However, these statistics do not give the entire story: due to the way in which Postgres Pro handles disk I/O, data that is not in the Postgres Pro buffer cache might still reside in the kernel's I/O cache, and might therefore still be fetched without requiring a physical read. Users interested in obtaining more detailed information on Postgres Pro I/O behavior are advised to use the Postgres Pro statistics collector in combination with operating system utilities that allow insight into the kernel's handling of I/O.

26.2.3. `pg_stat_activity`

The `pg_stat_activity` view will have one row per server process, showing information related to the current activity of that process.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>datid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the database this backend is connected to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datname</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the database this backend is connected to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pid</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Process ID of this backend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leader_pid</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Process ID of the parallel group leader, if this process is a parallel query worker. NULL if this process is a parallel group leader or does not participate in parallel query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usesysid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the user logged into this backend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usename</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the user logged into this backend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of the application that is connected to this backend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client_addr</td>
<td>inet</td>
<td>IP address of the client connected to this backend. If this field is null, it indicates either that the client is connected via a Unix socket on the server machine or that this is an internal process such as autovacuum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client_hostname</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Host name of the connected client, as reported by a reverse DNS lookup of client_addr. This field will only be non-null for IP connections, and only when log_hostname is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client_port</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>TCP port number that the client is using for communication with this backend, or -1 if a Unix socket is used. If this field is null, it indicates that this is an internal server process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backend_start</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>Time when this process was started. For client backends, this is the time the client connected to the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xact_start</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>Time when this process' current transaction was started, or null if no transaction is active. If the current query is the first of its transaction, this column is equal to the query_start column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query_start</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state_change</td>
<td>Time when the state was last changed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait_event_type</td>
<td>The type of event for which the backend is waiting, if any; otherwise NULL. See Table 26.4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait_event</td>
<td>Wait event name if backend is currently waiting, otherwise NULL. See Table 26.5 through Table 26.13.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state</td>
<td>Current overall state of this backend. Possible values are:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• active: The backend is executing a query.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• idle: The backend is waiting for a new client command.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• idle in transaction: The backend is in a transaction, but is not currently executing a query.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• idle in transaction (aborted): This state is similar to idle in transaction, except one of the statements in the transaction caused an error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• fastpath function call: The backend is executing a fast-path function.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• disabled: This state is reported if track_activities is disabled in this backend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backend_xid</td>
<td>Top-level transaction identifier of this backend, if any.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backend_xmin</td>
<td>The current backend's xmin horizon.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query_id</td>
<td>Identifier of this backend's most recent query. If state is active this field shows the identifier of the currently executing query. In all other states, it shows the identifier of last query that was executed. Query identifiers are not computed by default so this field will be null unless compute_query_id parameter is enabled or a third-party module that computes query identifiers is configured.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query_text</td>
<td>Text of this backend's most recent query. If state is active this field shows the currently executing query. In all other states, it shows the last query that was executed. By default the query text is truncated at 1024 bytes; this value can be changed via the parameter track_activity_query_size.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backend_type</td>
<td>Type of current backend. Possible types are autovacuum launcher, autovacuum worker, logical replication launcher, logical replication worker, parallel worker, background writer, client backend, checkpoints, archiver, startup, walreceiver, walsender and walwriter. In addition, background workers registered by extensions may have additional types.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The wait_event and state columns are independent. If a backend is in the active state, it may or may not be waiting on some event. If the state is active and wait_event is non-null, it means that a query is being executed, but is being blocked somewhere in the system.
Table 26.4. Wait Event Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wait Event Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activity</td>
<td>The server process is idle. This event type indicates a process waiting for activity in its main processing loop. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 26.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufferPin</td>
<td>The server process is waiting for exclusive access to a data buffer. Buffer pin waits can be protracted if another process holds an open cursor that last read data from the buffer in question. See Table 26.6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client</td>
<td>The server process is waiting for activity on a socket connected to a user application. Thus, the server expects something to happen that is independent of its internal processes. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 26.7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension</td>
<td>The server process is waiting for some condition defined by an extension module. See Table 26.8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO</td>
<td>The server process is waiting for an I/O operation to complete. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 26.9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPC</td>
<td>The server process is waiting for some interaction with another server process. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 26.10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock</td>
<td>The server process is waiting for a heavyweight lock. Heavyweight locks, also known as lock manager locks or simply locks, primarily protect SQL-visible objects such as tables. However, they are also used to ensure mutual exclusion for certain internal operations such as relation extension. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the type of lock awaited; see Table 26.11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LWLock</td>
<td>The server process is waiting for a lightweight lock. Most such locks protect a particular data structure in shared memory. <code>wait_event</code> will contain a name identifying the purpose of the lightweight lock. (Some locks have specific names; others are part of a group of locks each with a similar purpose.) See Table 26.12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeout</td>
<td>The server process is waiting for a timeout to expire. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 26.13.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 26.5. Wait Events of Type Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ArchiverMain</td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of archiver process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoVacuumMain</td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of autovacuum launcher process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BgWriterHibernate</td>
<td>Waiting in background writer process, hibernating.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Monitoring Database Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Wait Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BgWriterMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of background writer process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CheckpointerMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of checkpoint process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalApplyMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of logical replication apply process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalLauncherMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of logical replication launcher process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PgStatMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of statistics collector process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RecoveryWalStream</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of startup process for WAL to arrive, during streaming recovery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SysLoggerMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of syslogger process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WalReceiverMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of WAL receiver process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WalSenderMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of WAL sender process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WalWriterMain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waiting in main loop of WAL writer process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 26.6. Wait Events of Type BufferPin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wait Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BufferPin</td>
<td>Waiting to acquire an exclusive pin on a buffer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 26.7. Wait Events of Type Client

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wait Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClientRead</td>
<td>Waiting to read data from the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientWrite</td>
<td>Waiting to write data to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSSOpenServer</td>
<td>Waiting to read data from the client while establishing a GSSAPI session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LibPQWalReceiverConnect</td>
<td>Waiting in WAL receiver to establish connection to remote server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LibPQWalReceiverReceive</td>
<td>Waiting in WAL receiver to receive data from remote server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSLOpenServer</td>
<td>Waiting for SSL while attempting connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WalSenderWaitForWAL</td>
<td>Waiting for WAL to be flushed in WAL sender process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WalSenderWriteData</td>
<td>Waiting for any activity when processing replies from WAL receiver in WAL sender process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 26.8. Wait Events of Type Extension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wait Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extension</td>
<td>Waiting in an extension.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 26.9. Wait Events of Type IO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wait Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BaseBackupRead</td>
<td>Waiting for base backup to read from a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufFileRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read from a buffered file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufFileWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to a buffered file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufFileTruncate</td>
<td>Waiting for a buffered file to be truncated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IO Wait Event</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ControlFileRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read from the pg_control file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ControlFileSync</td>
<td>Waiting for the pg_control file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ControlFileSyncUpdate</td>
<td>Waiting for an update to the pg_control file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ControlFileWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to the pg_control file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ControlFileWriteUpdate</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to update the pg_control file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CopyFileRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read during a file copy operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CopyFileWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write during a file copy operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSMFillZeroWrite</td>
<td>Waiting to fill a dynamic shared memory backing file with zeroes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFileExtend</td>
<td>Waiting for a relation data file to be extended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFileFlush</td>
<td>Waiting for a relation data file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFileImmediateSync</td>
<td>Waiting for an immediate synchronization of a relation data file to durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFilePrefetch</td>
<td>Waiting for an asynchronous prefetch from a relation data file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFileRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read from a relation data file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFileSync</td>
<td>Waiting for changes to a relation data file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFileTruncate</td>
<td>Waiting for a relation data file to be truncated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFileWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to a relation data file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockFileAddToDataDirRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read while adding a line to the data directory lock file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockFileAddToDataDirSync</td>
<td>Waiting for data to reach durable storage while adding a line to the data directory lock file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockFileAddToDataDirWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write while adding a line to the data directory lock file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockFileCreateRead</td>
<td>Waiting to read while creating the data directory lock file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockFileCreateSync</td>
<td>Waiting for data to reach durable storage while creating the data directory lock file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockFileCreateWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write while creating the data directory lock file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockFileReCheckDataDirRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read during recheck of the data directory lock file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalRewriteCheckpointSync</td>
<td>Waiting for logical rewrite mappings to reach durable storage during a checkpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalRewriteMappingSync</td>
<td>Waiting for mapping data to reach durable storage during a logical rewrite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalRewriteMappingWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write of mapping data during a logical rewrite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalRewriteSync</td>
<td>Waiting for logical rewrite mappings to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IO Wait Event

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LogicalRewriteTruncate</td>
<td>Waiting for truncate of mapping data during a logical rewrite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalRewriteWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write of logical rewrite mappings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RelationMapRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read of the relation map file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RelationMapSync</td>
<td>Waiting for the relation map file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RelationMapWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to the relation map file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReorderBufferRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read during reorder buffer management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReorderBufferWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write during reorder buffer management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReorderLogicalMappingRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read of a logical mapping during reorder buffer management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationSlotRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read from a replication slot control file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationSlotRestoreSync</td>
<td>Waiting for a replication slot control file to reach durable storage while restoring it to memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationSlotSync</td>
<td>Waiting for a replication slot control file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationSlotWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to a replication slot control file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLRUFFlushSync</td>
<td>Waiting for SLRU data to reach durable storage during a checkpoint or database shutdown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLRUSync</td>
<td>Waiting for a read of an SLRU page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLRUWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write of an SLRU page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnapbuildRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read of a serialized historical catalog snapshot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnapbuildSync</td>
<td>Waiting for a serialized historical catalog snapshot to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnapbuildWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write of a serialized historical catalog snapshot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimelineHistoryFileSync</td>
<td>Waiting for a timeline history file received via streaming replication to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimelineHistoryFileWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write of a timeline history file received via streaming replication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimelineHistoryRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read of a timeline history file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimelineHistorySync</td>
<td>Waiting for a newly created timeline history file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimelineHistoryWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write of a newly created timeline history file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TwophaseFileRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read of a two phase state file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TwophaseFileSync</td>
<td>Waiting for a two phase state file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TwophaseFileWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write of a two phase state file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring Database Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>IO Wait Event</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WALBootstrapSync</td>
<td>Waiting for WAL to reach durable storage during bootstrapping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALBootstrapWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write of a WAL page during bootstrapping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALCopyRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read when creating a new WAL segment by copying an existing one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALCopySync</td>
<td>Waiting for a new WAL segment created by copying an existing one to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALCopyWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write when creating a new WAL segment by copying an existing one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALInitSync</td>
<td>Waiting for a newly initialized WAL file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALInitWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write while initializing a new WAL file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read from a WAL file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALSenderTimelineHistoryRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read from a timeline history file during a walsender timeline command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALSync</td>
<td>Waiting for a WAL file to reach durable storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALSyncMethodAssign</td>
<td>Waiting for data to reach durable storage while assigning a new WAL sync method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to a WAL file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalChangesRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read from a logical changes file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalChangesWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to a logical changes file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalSubxactRead</td>
<td>Waiting for a read from a logical subxact file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalSubxactWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for a write to a logical subxact file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Table 26.10. Wait Events of Type IPC</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>IPC Wait Event</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AppendReady</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BackendTermination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BackupWaitWalArchive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BgWorkerShutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BgWorkerStartup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BtreePage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufferIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CheckpointDone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CheckpointStart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecuteGather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashBatchAllocate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPC Wait Event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashBatchElect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashBatchLoad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashBuildAllocate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashBuildElect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashBuildHashInner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashBuildHashOuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashGrowBatchesAllocate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashGrowBatchesDecide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashGrowBatchesElect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashGrowBatchesFinish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashGrowBatchesRepartition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashGrow_bucketsAllocate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashGrow_bucketsElect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HashGrow_bucketsReinsert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalSyncData</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalSyncStateChange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageQueue_internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageQueuePutMessage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageQueueReceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageQueueSend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelBitmapScan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelCreateIndexScan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelFinish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProcArrayGroupUpdate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IPC Wait Event

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Wait Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for a barrier event to be processed by all backends.</td>
<td>ProcSignalBarrier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for standby promotion.</td>
<td>Promote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for recovery conflict resolution for a vacuum cleanup.</td>
<td>RecoveryConflictSnapshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for recovery conflict resolution for dropping a tablespace.</td>
<td>RecoveryConflictTablespace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for recovery to be resumed.</td>
<td>RecoveryPause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for a replication origin to become inactive so it can be dropped.</td>
<td>ReplicationOriginDrop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for a replication slot to become inactive so it can be dropped.</td>
<td>ReplicationSlotDrop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to obtain a valid snapshot for a READ ONLY DEFERRABLE transaction.</td>
<td>SafeSnapshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for confirmation from a remote server during synchronous replication.</td>
<td>SyncRep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for the WAL receiver to exit.</td>
<td>WalReceiverExit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for startup process to send initial data for streaming replication.</td>
<td>WalReceiverWaitStart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for the group leader to update transaction status at end of a parallel operation.</td>
<td>XactGroupUpdate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 26.11. Wait Events of Type Lock

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Wait Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to acquire an advisory user lock.</td>
<td>advisory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to extend a relation.</td>
<td>extend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to update pg_database .datfrozenxid and pg_database .datminmxid.</td>
<td>frozenid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to acquire a lock on a non-relation database object.</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to acquire a lock on a page of a relation.</td>
<td>page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to acquire a lock on a relation.</td>
<td>relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to acquire a speculative insertion lock.</td>
<td>spectoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting for a transaction to finish.</td>
<td>transactionid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to acquire a lock on a tuple.</td>
<td>tuple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to acquire a user lock.</td>
<td>userlock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to acquire a virtual transaction ID lock.</td>
<td>virtualxid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 26.12. Wait Events of Type LWLock

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Wait Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to manage an extension's space allocation in shared memory.</td>
<td>AddinShmemInit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to update the postgresql.auto.conf file.</td>
<td>AutoFile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting to read or update the current state of autovacuum workers.</td>
<td>Autovacuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LWLock Wait Event</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutovacuumSchedule</td>
<td>Waiting to ensure that a table selected for autovacuum still needs vacuuming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BackgroundWorker</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update background worker state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BtreeVacuum</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update vacuum-related information for a B-tree index.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufferContent</td>
<td>Waiting to access a data page in memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufferMapping</td>
<td>Waiting to associate a data block with a buffer in the buffer pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CheckpointerComm</td>
<td>Waiting to manage fsync requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CommitTs</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update the last value set for a transaction commit timestamp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CommitTsBuffer</td>
<td>Waiting for I/O on a commit timestamp SLRU buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CommitTsSLRU</td>
<td>Waiting to access the commit timestamp SLRU cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ControlFile</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update the <code>pg_control</code> file or create a new WAL file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DynamicSharedMemoryControl</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update dynamic shared memory allocation information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockFastPath</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update a process' fast-path lock information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LockManager</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update information about &quot;heavyweight&quot; locks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogicalRepWorker</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update the state of logical replication workers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiXactGen</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update shared multixact state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiXactMemberBuffer</td>
<td>Waiting for I/O on a multixact member SLRU buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiXactMemberSLRU</td>
<td>Waiting to access the multixact member SLRU cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiXactOffsetBuffer</td>
<td>Waiting for I/O on a multixact offset SLRU buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiXactOffsetSLRU</td>
<td>Waiting to access the multixact offset SLRU cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiXactTruncation</td>
<td>Waiting to read or truncate multixact information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NotifyBuffer</td>
<td>Waiting for I/O on a NOTIFY message SLRU buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NotifyQueue</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update NOTIFY messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NotifyQueueTail</td>
<td>Waiting to update limit on NOTIFY message storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NotifySLRU</td>
<td>Waiting to access the NOTIFY message SLRU cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OidGen</td>
<td>Waiting to allocate a new OID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OldSnapshotTimeMap</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update old snapshot control information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelAppend</td>
<td>Waiting to choose the next subplan during Parallel Append plan execution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LWLock Wait Event</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelHashJoin</td>
<td>Waiting to synchronize workers during Parallel Hash Join plan execution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelQueryDSA</td>
<td>Waiting for parallel query dynamic shared memory allocation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerSessionDSA</td>
<td>Waiting for parallel query dynamic shared memory allocation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerSessionRecordType</td>
<td>Waiting to access a parallel query's information about composite types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerSessionRecordTypmod</td>
<td>Waiting to access a parallel query's information about type modifiers that identify anonymous record types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PerXactPredicateList</td>
<td>Waiting to access the list of predicate locks held by the current serializable transaction during a parallel query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PredicateLockManager</td>
<td>Waiting to access predicate lock information used by serializable transactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProcArray</td>
<td>Waiting to access the shared per-process data structures (typically, to get a snapshot or report a session's transaction ID).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RelationMapping</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update a <code>pg_filenode.map</code> file (used to track the filenode assignments of certain system catalogs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RelCacheInit</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update a <code>pg_internal.init</code> relation cache initialization file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationOrigin</td>
<td>Waiting to create, drop or use a replication origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationOriginState</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update the progress of one replication origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationSlotAllocation</td>
<td>Waiting to allocate or free a replication slot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationSlotControl</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update replication slot state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReplicationSlotIO</td>
<td>Waiting for I/O on a replication slot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerialBuffer</td>
<td>Waiting for I/O on a serializable transaction conflict SLRU buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerializableFinishedList</td>
<td>Waiting to access the list of finished serializable transactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerializablePredicateList</td>
<td>Waiting to access the list of predicate locks held by serializable transactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerializableXactHash</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update information about serializable transactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerialSLRU</td>
<td>Waiting to access the serializable transaction conflict SLRU cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SharedTidBitmap</td>
<td>Waiting to access a shared TID bitmap during a parallel bitmap index scan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SharedTupleStore</td>
<td>Waiting to access a shared tuple store during parallel query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShmemIndex</td>
<td>Waiting to find or allocate space in shared memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LWLock Wait Event</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SInvalRead</td>
<td>Waiting to retrieve messages from the shared catalog invalidation queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SInvalWrite</td>
<td>Waiting to add a message to the shared catalog invalidation queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SubtransBuffer</td>
<td>Waiting for I/O on a sub-transaction SLRU buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SubtransSLRU</td>
<td>Waiting to access the sub-transaction SLRU cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SyncRep</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update information about the state of synchronous replication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SyncScan</td>
<td>Waiting to select the starting location of a synchronized table scan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TablespaceCreate</td>
<td>Waiting to create or drop a tablespace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TwoPhaseState</td>
<td>Waiting to read or update the state of prepared transactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALBufMapping</td>
<td>Waiting to replace a page in WAL buffers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALInsert</td>
<td>Waiting to insert WAL data into a memory buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WALWrite</td>
<td>Waiting for WAL buffers to be written to disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WrapLimitsVacuum</td>
<td>Waiting to update limits on transaction id and multixact consumption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XactBuffer</td>
<td>Waiting for I/O on a transaction status SLRU buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XactSLRU</td>
<td>Waiting to access the transaction status SLRU cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XactTruncation</td>
<td>Waiting to execute <code>pg_xact_status</code> or update the oldest transaction ID available to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XidGen</td>
<td>Waiting to allocate a new transaction ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Extensions can add LWLock types to the list shown in Table 26.12. In some cases, the name assigned by an extension will not be available in all server processes; so an LWLock wait event might be reported as just “extension” rather than the extension-assigned name.

### Table 26.13. Wait Events of Type Timeout

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timeout Wait Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BaseBackupThrottle</td>
<td>Waiting during base backup when throttling activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PgSleep</td>
<td>Waiting due to a call to <code>pg_sleep</code> or a sibling function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RecoveryApplyDelay</td>
<td>Waiting to apply WAL during recovery because of a delay setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RecoveryRetrieveRetryInterval</td>
<td>Waiting during recovery when WAL data is not available from any source (pg_wal, archive or stream).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VacuumDelay</td>
<td>Waiting in a cost-based vacuum delay point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Here is an example of how wait events can be viewed:

```
SELECT pid, wait_event_type, wait_event FROM pg_stat_activity WHERE wait_event IS NOT NULL;
```

```
pid | wait_event_type | wait_event
---------+-----------------+------------
2540 | Lock            | relation
6644 | LWLock          | ProcArray
```

(2 rows)

### 26.2.4. `pg_stat_replication` View

The `pg_stat_replication` view will contain one row per WAL sender process, showing statistics about replication to that sender's connected standby server. Only directly connected standbys are listed; no information is available about downstream standby servers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Process ID of a WAL sender process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usesysid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the user logged into this WAL sender process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usename</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the user logged into this WAL sender process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of the application that is connected to this WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client_addr</td>
<td>inet</td>
<td>IP address of the client connected to this WAL sender. If this field is null, it indicates that the client is connected via a Unix socket on the server machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client_hostname</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Host name of the connected client, as reported by a reverse DNS lookup of <code>client_addr</code>. This field will only be non-null for IP connections, and only when <code>log_hostname</code> is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client_port</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>TCP port number that the client is using for communication with this WAL sender, or -1 if a Unix socket is used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backend_start</td>
<td>timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Time when this process was started, i.e., when the client connected to this WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
<td>Last write-ahead log location sent on this connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 26.14. `pg_stat_replication` View

- `state` text
  - This standby's `xmin` horizon reported by `hot_standby_feedback`.
  - Current WAL sender state. Possible values are:
    - `startup`: This WAL sender is starting up.
    - `catchup`: This WAL sender's connected standby is catching up with the primary.
    - `streaming`: This WAL sender is streaming changes after its connected standby server has caught up with the primary.
    - `backup`: This WAL sender is sending a backup.
    - `stopping`: This WAL sender is stopping.
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last write-ahead log location written to disk by this standby server</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>flush_lsn</th>
<th>pg_lsn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last write-ahead log location flushed to disk by this standby server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>replay_lsn</th>
<th>pg_lsn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last write-ahead log location replayed into the database on this standby server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>write_lag</th>
<th>interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time elapsed between flushing recent WAL locally and receiving notification that this standby server has written it (but not yet flushed or applied it). This can be used to gauge the delay that <code>synchronous_commit level remote_write</code> incurred while committing if this server was configured as a synchronous standby.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>flush_lag</th>
<th>interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time elapsed between flushing recent WAL locally and receiving notification that this standby server has written and flushed it (but not yet applied it). This can be used to gauge the delay that <code>synchronous_commit level on</code> incurred while committing if this server was configured as a synchronous standby.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>replay_lag</th>
<th>interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time elapsed between flushing recent WAL locally and receiving notification that this standby server has written, flushed and applied it. This can be used to gauge the delay that <code>synchronous_commit level remote_apply</code> incurred while committing if this server was configured as a synchronous standby.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sync_priority</th>
<th>integer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Priority of this standby server for being chosen as the synchronous standby in a priority-based synchronous replication. This has no effect in a quorum-based synchronous replication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sync_state</th>
<th>text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synchronous state of this standby server. Possible values are:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• async: This standby server is asynchronous.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• potential: This standby server is now asynchronous, but can potentially become synchronous if one of current synchronous ones fails.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• sync: This standby server is synchronous.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• quorum: This standby server is considered as a candidate for quorum standbys.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>reply_time</th>
<th>timestamp with time zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Send time of last reply message received from standby server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The lag times reported in the `pg_stat_replication` view are measurements of the time taken for recent WAL to be written, flushed, and replayed, and for the sender to know about it. These times represent the commit delay that was (or would have been) introduced by each synchronous commit level, if the remote server was configured as a synchronous standby. For an asynchronous standby, the `replay_lag` column approximates the delay before recent transactions became visible to queries. If the standby server has entirely caught up with the sending server and there is no more WAL activity, the most recently measured lag times will continue to be displayed for a short time and then show NULL.

Lag times work automatically for physical replication. Logical decoding plugins may optionally emit tracking messages; if they do not, the tracking mechanism will simply display NULL lag.

**Note**

The reported lag times are not predictions of how long it will take for the standby to catch up with the sending server assuming the current rate of replay. Such a system would show similar times while new WAL is being generated, but would differ when the sender becomes idle. In particular,
when the standby has caught up completely, pg_stat_replication shows the time taken to write, flush and replay the most recent reported WAL location rather than zero as some users might expect. This is consistent with the goal of measuring synchronous commit and transaction visibility delays for recent write transactions. To reduce confusion for users expecting a different model of lag, the lag columns revert to NULL after a short time on a fully replayed idle system. Monitoring systems should choose whether to represent this as missing data, zero or continue to display the last known value.

26.2.5. pg_stat_replication_slots

The pg_stat_replication_slots view will contain one row per logical replication slot, showing statistics about its usage.

Table 26.15. pg_stat_replication_slots View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>slot_name</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill_txns</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill_count</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill_bytes</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stream_txns</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stream_count</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stream_bytes</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_txns</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_bytes</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stats_reset</td>
<td>timestamp with time zone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time at which these statistics were last reset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 26.2.6. `pg_stat_wal_receiver`

The `pg_stat_wal_receiver` view will contain only one row, showing statistics about the WAL receiver from that receiver's connected server.

### Table 26.16. `pg_stat_wal_receiver` View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Process ID of the WAL receiver process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Activity status of the WAL receiver process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive_start_lsn</td>
<td><code>pg_lsn</code></td>
<td>First write-ahead log location used when WAL receiver is started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive_start_tli</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>First timeline number used when WAL receiver is started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>written_lsn</td>
<td><code>pg_lsn</code></td>
<td>Last write-ahead log location already received and written to disk, but not flushed. This should not be used for data integrity checks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flushed_lsn</td>
<td><code>pg_lsn</code></td>
<td>Last write-ahead log location already received and flushed to disk, the initial value of this field being the first log location used when WAL receiver is started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>received_tli</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Timeline number of last write-ahead log location received and flushed to disk, the initial value of this field being the timeline number of the first log location used when WAL receiver is started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_msg_send_time</td>
<td><code>timestamp with time zone</code></td>
<td>Send time of last message received from origin WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_msg_receipt_time</td>
<td><code>timestamp with time zone</code></td>
<td>Receipt time of last message received from origin WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latest_end_lsn</td>
<td><code>pg_lsn</code></td>
<td>Last write-ahead log location reported to origin WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latest_end_time</td>
<td><code>timestamp with time zone</code></td>
<td>Time of last write-ahead log location reported to origin WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slot_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Replication slot name used by this WAL receiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sender_host</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Host of the Postgres Pro instance this WAL receiver is connected to. This can be a host name, an IP address, or a directory path if the connection is via Unix socket. (The path case can be distinguished because it will always be an absolute path, beginning with <code>/</code>.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sender_port</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Port number of the Postgres Pro instance this WAL receiver is connected to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conninfo</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Connection string used by this WAL receiver, with security-sensitive fields obfuscated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 26.2.7. `pg_stat_subscription`
The `pg_stat_subscription` view will contain one row per subscription for main worker (with null PID if the worker is not running), and additional rows for workers handling the initial data copy of the subscribed tables.

**Table 26.17. pg_stat_subscription View**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>subid oid</td>
<td>OID of the subscription</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subname name</td>
<td>Name of the subscription</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pid integer</td>
<td>Process ID of the subscription worker process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relid oid</td>
<td>OID of the relation that the worker is synchronizing; null for the main apply worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>received_lsn pg_lsn</td>
<td>Last write-ahead log location received, the initial value of this field being 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_msg_send_time timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Send time of last message received from origin WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_msg_receipt_time timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Receipt time of last message received from origin WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latest_end_lsn pg_lsn</td>
<td>Last write-ahead log location reported to origin WAL sender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latest_end_time timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Time of last write-ahead log location reported to origin WAL sender</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**26.2.8. pg_stat_ssl**

The `pg_stat_ssl` view will contain one row per backend or WAL sender process, showing statistics about SSL usage on this connection. It can be joined to `pg_stat_activity` or `pg_stat_replication` on the pid column to get more details about the connection.

**Table 26.18. pg_stat_ssl View**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid integer</td>
<td>Process ID of a backend or WAL sender process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssl boolean</td>
<td>True if SSL is used on this connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>version text</td>
<td>Version of SSL in use, or NULL if SSL is not in use on this connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cipher text</td>
<td>Name of SSL cipher in use, or NULL if SSL is not in use on this connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bits integer</td>
<td>Number of bits in the encryption algorithm used, or NULL if SSL is not used on this connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client_dn text</td>
<td>Distinguished Name (DN) field from the client certificate used, or NULL if no client certificate was supplied or if SSL is not in use on this connection. This field is truncated if the DN field is longer than NAMEDATALEN (64 characters in a standard build).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client_serial numeric</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring Database Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serial number of the client certificate, or NULL if no client certificate was supplied or if SSL is not in use on this connection. The combination of certificate serial number and certificate issuer uniquely identifies a certificate (unless the issuer erroneously reuses serial numbers).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>issuer_dn text</td>
<td>DN of the issuer of the client certificate, or NULL if no client certificate was supplied or if SSL is not in use on this connection. This field is truncated like client_dn.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.2.9. pg_stat_gssapi

The pg_stat_gssapi view will contain one row per backend, showing information about GSSAPI usage on this connection. It can be joined to pg_stat_activity or pg_stat_replication on the pid column to get more details about the connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid integer</td>
<td>Process ID of a backend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gss_authenticated boolean</td>
<td>True if GSSAPI authentication was used for this connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principal text</td>
<td>Principal used to authenticate this connection, or NULL if GSSAPI was not used to authenticate this connection. This field is truncated if the principal is longer than NAMEDATALEN (64 characters in a standard build).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encrypted boolean</td>
<td>True if GSSAPI encryption is in use on this connection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.2.10. pg_stat_archiver

The pg_stat_archiver view will always have a single row, containing data about the archiver process of the cluster.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>archived_count bigint</td>
<td>Number of WAL files that have been successfully archived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_archived_wal text</td>
<td>Name of the last WAL file successfully archived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_archived_time timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Time of the last successful archive operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>failed_count bigint</td>
<td>Number of failed attempts for archiving WAL files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_failed_wal text</td>
<td>Name of the WAL file of the last failed archival operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_failed_time timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Time of the last failed archival operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stats_reset timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Time at which these statistics were last reset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26.2.11. pg_stat_bgwriter

The pg_stat_bgwriter view will always have a single row, containing global data for the cluster.

Table 26.21. pg_stat_bgwriter View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>checkpoints_timed</td>
<td>bigint Number of scheduled checkpoints that have been performed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checkpoints_req</td>
<td>bigint Number of requested checkpoints that have been performed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checkpoint_write_time</td>
<td>double precision Total amount of time that has been spent in the portion of checkpoint processing where files are written to disk, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checkpoint_sync_time</td>
<td>double precision Total amount of time that has been spent in the portion of checkpoint processing where files are synchronized to disk, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffers_checkpoint</td>
<td>bigint Number of buffers written during checkpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffers_clean</td>
<td>bigint Number of buffers written by the background writer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxwritten_clean</td>
<td>bigint Number of times the background writer stopped a cleaning scan because it had written too many buffers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffers_backend</td>
<td>bigint Number of buffers written directly by a backend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffers_backend_fsync</td>
<td>bigint Number of times a backend had to execute its own fsync call (normally the background writer handles those even when the backend does its own write)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffers_alloc</td>
<td>bigint Number of buffers allocated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stats_reset</td>
<td>timestamp with time zone Time at which these statistics were last reset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.2.12. pg_stat_wal

The pg_stat_wal view will always have a single row, containing data about WAL activity of the cluster.

Table 26.22. pg_stat_wal View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wal_records</td>
<td>bigint Total number of WAL records generated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_fpi</td>
<td>bigint Total number of WAL full page images generated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_bytes</td>
<td>numeric Total amount of WAL generated in bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_buffers_full</td>
<td>bigint Number of times WAL data was written to disk because WAL buffers became full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_write</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring Database Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>datid oid</td>
<td>OID of this database, or 0 for objects belonging to a shared relation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datname name</td>
<td>Name of this database, or NULL for shared objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numbackends integer</td>
<td>Number of backends currently connected to this database, or NULL for shared objects. This is the only column in this view that returns a value reflecting current state; all other columns return the accumulated values since the last reset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xact_commit bigint</td>
<td>Number of transactions in this database that have been committed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xact_rollback bigint</td>
<td>Number of transactions in this database that have been rolled back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_read bigint</td>
<td>Number of disk blocks read in this database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_hit bigint</td>
<td>Number of times disk blocks were found already in the buffer cache, so that a read was not necessary (this only includes hits in the Postgres Pro buffer cache, not the operating system's file system cache)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tup_returned bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows returned by queries in this database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tup_fetched bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows fetched by queries in this database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tup_inserted bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows fetched by queries in this database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 26.2.13. pg_stat_database

The `pg_stat_database` view will contain one row for each database in the cluster, plus one for shared objects, showing database-wide statistics.

#### Table 26.23. `pg_stat_database` View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>datid oid</td>
<td>OID of this database, or 0 for objects belonging to a shared relation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datname name</td>
<td>Name of this database, or NULL for shared objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numbackends integer</td>
<td>Number of backends currently connected to this database, or NULL for shared objects. This is the only column in this view that returns a value reflecting current state; all other columns return the accumulated values since the last reset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xact_commit bigint</td>
<td>Number of transactions in this database that have been committed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xact_rollback bigint</td>
<td>Number of transactions in this database that have been rolled back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_read bigint</td>
<td>Number of disk blocks read in this database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_hit bigint</td>
<td>Number of times disk blocks were found already in the buffer cache, so that a read was not necessary (this only includes hits in the Postgres Pro buffer cache, not the operating system's file system cache)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tup_returned bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows returned by queries in this database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tup_fetched bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows fetched by queries in this database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tup_inserted bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows fetched by queries in this database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tup_updated bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows inserted by queries in this database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tup_deleted bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows updated by queries in this database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conflicts bigint</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted by queries in this database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temp_files bigint</td>
<td>Number of queries canceled due to conflicts with recovery in this database. (Conflicts occur only on standby servers; see <code>pg_stat_database_conflicts</code> for details.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temp_bytes bigint</td>
<td>Number of temporary files created by queries in this database. All temporary files are counted, regardless of why the temporary file was created (e.g., sorting or hashing), and regardless of the log_temp_files setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deadlocks bigint</td>
<td>Total amount of data written to temporary files by queries in this database. All temporary files are counted, regardless of why the temporary file was created, and regardless of the log_temp_files setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checksum_failures bigint</td>
<td>Number of data page checksum failures detected in this database (or on a shared object), or NULL if data checksums are not enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checksum_last_failure timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Time at which the last data page checksum failure was detected in this database (or on a shared object), or NULL if data checksums are not enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blk_read_time double precision</td>
<td>Time spent reading data file blocks by backends in this database, in milliseconds (if track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blk_write_time double precision</td>
<td>Time spent writing data file blocks by backends in this database, in milliseconds (if track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session_time double precision</td>
<td>Time spent by database sessions in this database, in milliseconds (note that statistics are only updated when the state of a session changes, so if sessions have been idle for a long time, this idle time won't be included)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>active_time double precision</td>
<td>Time spent executing SQL statements in this database, in milliseconds (this corresponds to the states <code>active</code> and <code>fastpath</code> function call in <code>pg_stat_activity</code> )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idle_in_transaction_time double precision</td>
<td>Time spent idling while in a transaction in this database, in milliseconds (this corresponds to the states <code>idle in transaction</code> and <code>idle in transaction (aborted)</code> in <code>pg_stat_activity</code> )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sessions bigint</td>
<td>Total number of sessions established to this database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sessions_abandoned bigint</td>
<td>Number of database sessions to this database that were terminated because connection to the client was lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sessions_fatal bigint</td>
<td>Number of database sessions to this database that were terminated by fatal errors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring Database Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sessions_killed</td>
<td>bigint Number of database sessions that were terminated by operator intervention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stats_reset</td>
<td>timestamp with time zone Time at which these statistics were last reset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 26.2.14. pg_stat_database_conflicts

The `pg_stat_database_conflicts` view will contain one row per database, showing database-wide statistics about query cancels occurring due to conflicts with recovery on standby servers. This view will only contain information on standby servers, since conflicts do not occur on primary servers.

**Table 26.24. pg_stat_database_conflicts View**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>datid</td>
<td>oid OID of a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datname</td>
<td>name Name of this database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confl_tablespace</td>
<td>bigint Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to dropped tablespaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confl_lock</td>
<td>bigint Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to lock timeouts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confl_snapshot</td>
<td>bigint Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to old snapshots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confl_bufferpin</td>
<td>bigint Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to pinned buffers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confl_deadlock</td>
<td>bigint Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to deadlocks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 26.2.15. pg_stat_all_tables

The `pg_stat_all_tables` view will contain one row for each table in the current database (including TOAST tables), showing statistics about accesses to that specific table. The `pg_stat_user_tables` and `pg_stat_sys_tables` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system tables respectively.

**Table 26.25. pg_stat_all_tables View**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relid</td>
<td>oid OID of a table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schemaname</td>
<td>name Name of the schema that this table is in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relname</td>
<td>name Name of this table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seq_scan</td>
<td>bigint Number of sequential scans initiated on this table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seq_tup_read</td>
<td>bigint Number of live rows fetched by sequential scans</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of index scans initiated on this table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of live rows fetched by index scans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of rows inserted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of rows updated (includes HOT updated rows)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of rows deleted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of rows HOT updated (i.e., with no separate index update required)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated number of live rows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated number of dead rows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated number of rows modified since this table was last analyzed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated number of rows inserted since this table was last vacuumed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last time at which this table was manually vacuumed (not counting VACUUM FULL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last time at which this table was vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last time at which this table was manually analyzed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last time at which this table was analyzed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of times this table has been manually vacuumed (not counting VACUUM FULL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of times this table has been vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of times this table has been manually analyzed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of times this table has been analyzed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 26.2.16. **pg_stat_all_indexes**

The *pg_stat_all_indexes* view will contain one row for each index in the current database, showing statistics about accesses to that specific index. The *pg_stat_user_indexes* and *pg_stat_sys_indexes* views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system indexes respectively.

### Table 26.26. **pg_stat_all_indexes** View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OID of the table for this index</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Indexes can be used by simple index scans, “bitmap” index scans, and the optimizer. In a bitmap scan the output of several indexes can be combined via AND or OR rules, so it is difficult to associate individual heap row fetches with specific indexes when a bitmap scan is used. Therefore, a bitmap scan increments the `pg_stat_all_indexes.idx_tup_read` count(s) for the index(es) it uses, and it increments the `pg_stat_all_tables.idx_tup_fetch` count for the table, but it does not affect `pg_stat_all_indexes.idx_tup_fetch`. The optimizer also accesses indexes to check for supplied constants whose values are outside the recorded range of the optimizer statistics because the optimizer statistics might be stale.

### Note

The `idx_tup_read` and `idx_tup_fetch` counts can be different even without any use of bitmap scans, because `idx_tup_read` counts index entries retrieved from the index while `idx_tup_fetch` counts live rows fetched from the table. The latter will be less if any dead or not-yet-committed rows are fetched using the index, or if any heap fetches are avoided by means of an index-only scan.

### 26.2.17. pg_statio_all_tables

The `pg_statio_all_tables` view will contain one row for each table in the current database (including TOAST tables), showing statistics about I/O on that specific table. The `pg_statio_user_tables` and `pg_statio_sys_tables` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system tables respectively.

#### Table 26.27. pg_statio_all_tables View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relid oid</td>
<td>OID of a table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schemaname name</td>
<td>Name of the schema that this table is in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relname name</td>
<td>Name of this table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heap_blks_read bigint</td>
<td>Number of disk blocks read from this table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 26.2.18. pg_statio_all_indexes

The `pg_statio_all_indexes` view will contain one row for each index in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific index. The `pg_statio_user_indexes` and `pg_statio_sys_indexes` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system indexes respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relid oid</td>
<td>OID of the table for this index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indexrelid oid</td>
<td>OID of this index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schemaname name</td>
<td>Name of the schema this index is in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relname name</td>
<td>Name of the table for this index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indexrelname name</td>
<td>Name of this index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idx_blks_read bigint</td>
<td>Number of disk blocks read from this index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idx_blks_hit bigint</td>
<td>Number of buffer hits in this index</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 26.2.19. pg_statio_all_sequences

The `pg_statio_all_sequences` view will contain one row for each sequence in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific sequence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relid oid</td>
<td>OID of a sequence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring Database Activity

#### Table 26.30. `pg_stat_user_functions` View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname</td>
<td>Name of the schema this sequence is in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relname</td>
<td>Name of this sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_read</td>
<td>Number of disk blocks read from this sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_hit</td>
<td>Number of buffer hits in this sequence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 26.2.20. `pg_stat_user_functions`

The `pg_stat_user_functions` view will contain one row for each tracked function, showing statistics about executions of that function. The `track_functions` parameter controls exactly which functions are tracked.

#### Table 26.31. `pg_stat_slru` View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the SLRU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_zeroed</td>
<td>Number of blocks zeroed during initializations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_hit</td>
<td>Number of times disk blocks were found already in the SLRU, so that a read was not necessary (this only includes hits in the SLRU, not the operating system’s file system cache)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blks_read</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Column Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of disk blocks read for this SLRU</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of disk blocks written for this SLRU</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of blocks checked for existence for this SLRU</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of flushes of dirty data for this SLRU</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of truncates for this SLRU</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time at which these statistics were last reset</td>
<td>timestamp with time zone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 26.2.22. Statistics Functions

Other ways of looking at the statistics can be set up by writing queries that use the same underlying statistics access functions used by the standard views shown above. For details such as the functions' names, consult the definitions of the standard views. (For example, in psql you could issue `\d+ pg_stat_activity`. The access functions for per-database statistics take a database OID as an argument to identify which database to report on. The per-table and per-index functions take a table or index OID. The functions for per-function statistics take a function OID. Note that only tables, indexes, and functions in the current database can be seen with these functions.

Additional functions related to statistics collection are listed in [Table 26.32](#).

### Table 26.32. Additional Statistics Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_backend_pid</code> () → integer</td>
<td>Returns the process ID of the server process attached to the current session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_get_activity</code> (integer) → setof record</td>
<td>Returns a record of information about the backend with the specified process ID, or one record for each active backend in the system if <code>NULL</code> is specified. The fields returned are a subset of those in the <code>pg_stat_activity</code> view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_get_snapshot_timestamp</code> () → timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Returns the timestamp of the current statistics snapshot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_clear_snapshot</code> () → void</td>
<td>Discards the current statistics snapshot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_reset</code> () → void</td>
<td>Resets all statistics counters for the current database to zero. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_reset_shared</code> (text) → void</td>
<td>Resets some cluster-wide statistics counters to zero, depending on the argument. The argument can be <code>bgwriter</code> to reset all the counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_bgwriter</code> view, <code>archiver</code> to reset all the counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_archiver</code> view or <code>wal</code> to reset all the counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_wal</code> view. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_stat_reset_single_table_counters</code> (oid) → void</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring Database Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_stat_reset_single_function_counters</strong></td>
<td>Resets statistics for a single function in the current database to zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(oid)→void</strong></td>
<td>This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>granted EXECUTE to run the function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **pg_stat_reset_slru**                        | Resets statistics to zero for a single SLRU cache, or for all SLRUs in the  |
| **(text)→void**                              | cluster. If the argument is NULL, all counters shown in the pg_stat_slru    |
|                                               | view for all SLRU caches are reset. The argument can be one of CommitTs,    |
|                                               | MultiXactMember, MultiXactOffset, Notify, Serial, Subtrans, or Xact to     |
|                                               | reset the counters for only that entry. If the argument is other (or indeed,|
|                                               | any unrecognized name), then the counters for all other SLRU caches, such  |
|                                               | as extension-defined caches, are reset. This function is restricted to      |
|                                               | superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the   |
|                                               | function.                                                                  |

| **pg_stat_reset_replication_slot**            | Resets statistics of the replication slot defined by the argument. If the   |
| **(text)→void**                              | argument is NULL, resets statistics for all the replication slots. This     |
|                                               | function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be    |
|                                               | granted EXECUTE to run the function.                                      |

pg_stat_get_activity, the underlying function of the pg_stat_activity view, returns a set of records containing all the available information about each backend process. Sometimes it may be more convenient to obtain just a subset of this information. In such cases, an older set of per-backend statistics access functions can be used; these are shown in Table 26.33. These access functions use a backend ID number, which ranges from one to the number of currently active backends. The function pg_stat_get_backend_idset provides a convenient way to generate one row for each active backend for invoking these functions. For example, to show the PIDs and current queries of all backends:

```
SELECT pg_stat_get_backend_pid(s.backendid) AS pid,
       pg_stat_get_backend_activity(s.backendid) AS query
FROM (SELECT pg_stat_get_backend_idset() AS backendid) AS s;
```

Table 26.33. Per-Backend Statistics Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pg_stat_get_backend_idset</strong></td>
<td><strong>()→setof integer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Returns the set of currently active backend ID numbers (from 1 to the number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of active backends).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **pg_stat_get_backend_activity**              | **(integer)→text**                                                         |
|                                               | Returns the text of this backend’s most recent query.                       |

| **pg_stat_get_backend_activity_start**        | **(integer)→timestamp with time zone**                                     |
|                                               | Returns the time when the backend’s most recent query was started.           |

| **pg_stat_get_backend_client_addr**           | **(integer)→inet**                                                         |
|                                               | Returns the IP address of the client connected to this backend.             |

| **pg_stat_get_backend_client_port**           | **(integer)→integer**                                                      |
|                                               | Returns the TCP port number that the client is using for communication.     |

| **pg_stat_get_backend_dbid**                  | **(integer)→oid**                                                          |
|                                               | Returns the OID of the database this backend is connected to.               |
26.3. Viewing Locks

Another useful tool for monitoring database activity is the `pg_locks` system table. It allows the database administrator to view information about the outstanding locks in the lock manager. For example, this capability can be used to:

- View all the locks currently outstanding, all the locks on relations in a particular database, all the locks on a particular relation, or all the locks held by a particular Postgres Pro session.
- Determine the relation in the current database with the most ungranted locks (which might be a source of contention among database clients).
- Determine the effect of lock contention on overall database performance, as well as the extent to which contention varies with overall database traffic.

Details of the `pg_locks` view appear in Section 50.76. For more information on locking and managing concurrency with Postgres Pro, refer to Chapter 13.

26.4. Progress Reporting

Postgres Pro has the ability to report the progress of certain commands during command execution. Currently, the only commands which support progress reporting are `ANALYZE`, `CLUSTER`, `CREATE INDEX`, `VACUUM`, `COPY`, and `BASE_BACKUP` (i.e., replication command that `pg_basebackup` issues to take a base backup). This may be expanded in the future.

26.4.1. ANALYZE Progress Reporting

Whenever `ANALYZE` is running, the `pg_stat_progress_analyze` view will contain a row for each backend that is currently running that command. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it.

**Table 26.34. pg_stat_progress_analyze View**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pid</code> integer</td>
<td>Process ID of backend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datid</code> oid</td>
<td>OID of the database to which this backend is connected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>datname name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database to which this backend is connected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| relid oid | OID of the table being analyzed. |

| phase text | Current processing phase. See Table 26.35. |

| sample_blks_total bigint | Total number of heap blocks that will be sampled. |
| sample_blks_scanned bigint | Number of heap blocks scanned. |

| ext_stats_total bigint | Number of extended statistics. |
| ext_stats_computed bigint | Number of extended statistics computed. This counter only advances when the phase is computing extended statistics. |

| child_tables_total bigint | Number of child tables. |
| child_tables_done bigint | Number of child tables scanned. This counter only advances when the phase is acquiring inherited sample rows. |

| current_child_table_relid oid | OID of the child table currently being scanned. This field is only valid when the phase is acquiring inherited sample rows. |

#### Table 26.35. ANALYZE phases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>initialising</td>
<td>The command is preparing to begin scanning the heap. This phase is expected to be very brief.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acquiring sample rows</td>
<td>The command is currently scanning the table given by relid to obtain sample rows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acquiring inherited sample rows</td>
<td>The command is currently scanning child tables to obtain sample rows. Columns child_tables_total , child_tables_done , and current_child_table_relid contain the progress information for this phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computing statistics</td>
<td>The command is computing statistics from the sample rows obtained during the table scan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computing extended statistics</td>
<td>The command is computing extended statistics from the sample rows obtained during the table scan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finalising analyze</td>
<td>The command is updating pg_class . When this phase is completed, ANALYZE will end.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Note

Note that when ANALYZE is run on a partitioned table, all of its partitions are also recursively analyzed. In that case, ANALYZE progress is reported first for the parent table, whereby its inheritance statistics are collected, followed by that for each partition.
26.4.2. CREATE INDEX Progress Reporting

Whenever `CREATE INDEX` or `REINDEX` is running, the `pg_stat_progress_create_index` view will contain one row for each backend that is currently creating indexes. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it.

### Table 26.36. pg_stat_progress_create_index View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Process ID of backend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the database to which this backend is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datname</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the database to which this backend is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the table on which the index is being created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>index_relid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the index being created or reindexed. During a non-concurrent <code>CREATE INDEX</code>, this is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>The command that is running: <code>CREATE INDEX</code>, <code>CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY</code>, <code>REINDEX</code>, or <code>REINDEX CONCURRENTLY</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phase</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Current processing phase of index creation. See Table 26.37.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lockers_total</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total number of lockers to wait for, when applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lockers_done</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of lockers already waited for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current_locker_pid</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Process ID of the locker currently being waited for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blocks_total</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total number of blocks to be processed in the current phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blocks_done</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of blocks already processed in the current phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuples_total</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total number of tuples to be processed in the current phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuples_done</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of tuples already processed in the current phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partitions_total</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>When creating an index on a partitioned table, this column is set to the total number of partitions on which the index is to be created. This field is 0 during a <code>REINDEX</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partitions_done</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>When creating an index on a partitioned table, this column is set to the number of partitions on which the index has been created. This field is 0 during a <code>REINDEX</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 26.37. CREATE INDEX Phases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>initializing</td>
<td><code>CREATE INDEX</code> or <code>REINDEX</code> is preparing to create the index. This phase is expected to be very brief.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Phase Description

**waiting for writers before build**
CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY or REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions with write locks that can potentially see the table to finish. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns `lockers_total`, `lockers_done` and `current_locker_pid` contain the progress information for this phase.

**building index**
The index is being built by the access method-specific code. In this phase, access methods that support progress reporting fill in their own progress data, and the subphase is indicated in this column. Typically, `blocks_total` and `blocks_done` will contain progress data, as well as potentially `tuples_total` and `tuples_done`.

**waiting for writers before validation**
CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY or REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions with write locks that can potentially write into the table to finish. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns `lockers_total`, `lockers_done` and `current_locker_pid` contain the progress information for this phase.

**index validation: scanning index**
CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY is scanning the index searching for tuples that need to be validated. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns `blocks_total` (set to the total size of the index) and `blocks_done` contain the progress information for this phase.

**index validation: sorting tuples**
CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY is sorting the output of the index scanning phase.

**index validation: scanning table**
CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY is scanning the table to validate the index tuples collected in the previous two phases. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns `blocks_total` (set to the total size of the table) and `blocks_done` contain the progress information for this phase.

**waiting for old snapshots**
CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY or REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions that can potentially see the table to release their snapshots. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns `lockers_total`, `lockers_done` and `current_locker_pid` contain the progress information for this phase.

**waiting for readers before marking dead**
REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions with read locks on the table to finish, before marking the old index dead. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns `lockers_total`, `lockers_done` and `current_locker_pid` contain the progress information for this phase.

**waiting for readers before dropping**
REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions with read locks on the table to finish, before dropping the old index. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns `lockers_total`, `lockers_done` and `current_locker_pid` contain the progress information for this phase.

---

### 26.4.3. VACUUM Progress Reporting

Whenever VACUUM is running, the `pg_stat_progress_vacuum` view will contain one row for each backend (including autovacuum worker processes) that is currently vacuuming. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it. Progress for VACUUM FULL commands is reported via `pg_stat_progress_cluster` because both VACUUM FULL and CLUSTER rewrite the table, while regular VACUUM only modifies it in place. See Section 26.4.4.
### Table 26.38. pg_stat_progress_vacuum View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phase</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heap_blks_total</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heap_blks_scanned</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heap_blks_vacuumed</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>index_vacuum_count</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_dead_tuples</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num_dead_tuples</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **pid**: Process ID of backend.
- **datid oid**: OID of the database to which this backend is connected.
- **datname name**: Name of the database to which this backend is connected.
- **relid oid**: OID of the table being vacuumed.
- **phase text**: Current processing phase of vacuum. See Table 26.39.
- **heap_blks_total bigint**: Total number of heap blocks in the table. This number is reported as of the beginning of the scan; blocks added later will not be (and need not be) visited by this VACUUM.
- **heap_blks_scanned bigint**: Number of heap blocks scanned. Because the visibility map is used to optimize scans, some blocks will be skipped without inspection; skipped blocks are included in this total, so that this number will eventually become equal to heap_blks_total when the vacuum is complete. This counter only advances when the phase is scanning heap.
- **heap_blks_vacuumed bigint**: Number of heap blocks vacuumed. Unless the table has no indexes, this counter only advances when the phase is vacuuming heap. Blocks that contain no dead tuples are skipped, so the counter may sometimes skip forward in large increments.
- **index_vacuum_count bigint**: Number of completed index vacuum cycles.
- **max_dead_tuples bigint**: Number of dead tuples that we can store before needing to perform an index vacuum cycle, based on maintenance_work_mem.
- **num_dead_tuples bigint**: Number of dead tuples collected since the last index vacuum cycle.

### Table 26.39. VACUUM Phases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>initializing</td>
<td>VACUUM is preparing to begin scanning the heap. This phase is expected to be very brief.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scanning heap</td>
<td>VACUUM is currently scanning the heap. It will prune and defragment each page if required, and possibly perform freezing activity. The heap_blks_scanned column can be used to monitor the progress of the scan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacuuming indexes</td>
<td>VACUUM is currently vacuuming the indexes. If a table has any indexes, this will happen at least once per vacuum, after the heap has been completely scanned. It may happen multiple times per vacuum if maintenance_work_mem (or, in the case of autovacuum, autovacuum_work_mem if set) is insufficient to store the number of dead tuples found.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacuuming heap</td>
<td>VACUUM is currently vacuuming the heap. Vacuuming the heap is distinct from scanning the heap, and occurs after each instance of vacuuming indexes. If heap_blks_scanned is less than heap_</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 26.4.4. CLUSTER Progress Reporting

Whenever `CLUSTER` or `VACUUM FULL` is running, the `pg_stat_progress_cluster` view will contain a row for each backend that is currently running either command. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 26.40. <code>pg_stat_progress_cluster</code> View</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid</td>
<td>integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phase</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cluster_index_relid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heap_tuples_scanned</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heap_tuples_written</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heap_blks_total</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heap_blks_scanned</td>
<td>bigint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring Database Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>index_rebuild_count bigint</td>
<td>Number of indexes rebuilt. This counter only advances when the phase is rebuilding index.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 26.41. CLUSTER and VACUUM FULL Phases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>initializing</td>
<td>The command is preparing to begin scanning the heap. This phase is expected to be very brief.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seq scanning heap</td>
<td>The command is currently scanning the table using a sequential scan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>index scanning heap CLUSTER</td>
<td>is currently scanning the table using an index scan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorting tuples</td>
<td>CLUSTER is currently sorting tuples.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing new heap CLUSTER</td>
<td>is currently writing the new heap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swapping relation files</td>
<td>The command is currently swapping newly-built files into place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rebuilding index</td>
<td>The command is currently rebuilding an index.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>performing final cleanup</td>
<td>The command is performing final cleanup. When this phase is completed, CLUSTER or VACUUM FULL will end.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.4.5. Base Backup Progress Reporting

Whenever an application like pg_basebackup is taking a base backup, the pg_stat_progress_basebackup view will contain a row for each WAL sender process that is currently running the BASE_BACKUP replication command and streaming the backup. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it.

Table 26.42. pg_stat_progress_basebackup View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid integer</td>
<td>Process ID of a WAL sender process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phase text</td>
<td>Current processing phase. See Table 26.43.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backup_total bigint</td>
<td>Total amount of data that will be streamed. This is estimated and reported as of the beginning of streaming database files phase. Note that this is only an approximation since the database may change during streaming database files phase and WAL log may be included in the backup later. This is always the same value as backup_streamed once the amount of data streamed exceeds the estimated total size. If the estimation is disabled in pg_basebackup (i.e., --no-estimate-size option is specified), this is NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backup_streamed bigint</td>
<td>Amount of data streamed. This counter only advances when the phase is streaming database files or transferring wal files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablespaces_total bigint</td>
<td>Total number of tablespaces that will be streamed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablespaces_streamed bigint</td>
<td>Number of tablespaces streamed. This counter only advances when the phase is streaming database files.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring Database Activity

#### Table 26.43. Base backup phases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>initializing</td>
<td>The WAL sender process is preparing to begin the backup. This phase is expected to be very brief.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waiting for checkpoint to finish</td>
<td>The WAL sender process is currently performing <code>pg_start_backup</code> to prepare to take a base backup, and waiting for the start-of-backup checkpoint to finish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estimating backup size</td>
<td>The WAL sender process is currently estimating the total amount of database files that will be streamed as a base backup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>streaming database files</td>
<td>The WAL sender process is currently streaming database files as a base backup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waiting for wal archiving to finish</td>
<td>The WAL sender process is currently performing <code>pg_stop_backup</code> to finish the backup, and waiting for all the WAL files required for the base backup to be successfully archived. If either <code>--wal-method=none</code> or <code>--wal-method=stream</code> is specified in <code>pg_basebackup</code>, the backup will end when this phase is completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transferring wal files</td>
<td>The WAL sender process is currently transferring all WAL logs generated during the backup. This phase occurs after waiting for wal archiving to finish phase if <code>--wal-method=fetch</code> is specified in <code>pg_basebackup</code>. The backup will end when this phase is completed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 26.4.6. COPY Progress Reporting

Whenever `COPY` is running, the `pg_stat_progress_copy` view will contain one row for each backend that is currently running a `COPY` command. The table below describes the information that will be reported and provides information about how to interpret it.

#### Table 26.44. pg_stat_progress_copy View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Process ID of backend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the database to which this backend is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datname</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the database to which this backend is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the table on which the <code>COPY</code> command is executed. It is set to 0 if copying from a <code>SELECT</code> query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>The command that is running: <code>COPY FROM</code>, or <code>COPY TO</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>The io type that the data is read from or written to: <code>FILE</code>, <code>PROGRAM</code>, <code>PIPE</code> (for <code>COPY FROM STDIN</code> and <code>COPY TO STDOUT</code>), <code>OR CALLBACK</code> (used for example during the initial table synchronization in logical replication).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytes_processed</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of bytes already processed by <code>COPY</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytes_total</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Size of source file for <code>COPY FROM</code> command in bytes. It is set to 0 if not available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuples_processed</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

692
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>tuples_excluded</strong> bigint</td>
<td>Number of tuples not processed because they were excluded by the <strong>WHERE</strong> clause of the <strong>COPY</strong> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 27. Monitoring Disk Usage

This chapter discusses how to monitor the disk usage of a Postgres Pro database system.

27.1. Determining Disk Usage

Each table has a primary heap disk file where most of the data is stored. If the table has any columns with potentially-wide values, there also might be a TOAST file associated with the table, which is used to store values too wide to fit comfortably in the main table (see Section 66.2). There will be one valid index on the TOAST table, if present. There also might be indexes associated with the base table. Each table and index is stored in a separate disk file — possibly more than one file, if the file would exceed one gigabyte. Naming conventions for these files are described in Section 66.1.

You can monitor disk space in three ways: using the SQL functions listed in Table 9.92, using the oid2name module, or using manual inspection of the system catalogs. The SQL functions are the easiest to use and are generally recommended. The remainder of this section shows how to do it by inspection of the system catalogs.

Using psql on a recently vacuumed or analyzed database, you can issue queries to see the disk usage of any table:

```
SELECT pg_relation_filepath(oid), relpages FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'customer';
```

```
pg_relation_filepath | relpages
----------------------+----------
base/16384/16806     |       60
(1 row)
```

Each page is typically 8 kilobytes. (Remember, relpages is only updated by VACUUM, ANALYZE, and a few DDL commands such as CREATE_INDEX.) The file path name is of interest if you want to examine the table's disk file directly.

To show the space used by TOAST tables, use a query like the following:

```
SELECT relname, relpages
FROM pg_class,
 (SELECT reltoastrelid
  FROM pg_class
  WHERE relname = 'customer') AS ss
WHERE oid = ss.reltoastrelid OR
  oid = (SELECT indexrelid
         FROM pg_index
         WHERE indrelid = ss.reltoastrelid)
ORDER BY relname;
```

```
relname        | relpages
----------------------+----------
pg_toast_16806       |        0
pg_toast_16806_index |        1
```

You can easily display index sizes, too:

```
SELECT c2.relname, c2.relpages
FROM pg_class c, pg_class c2, pg_index i
WHERE c.relname = 'customer' AND
  c.oid = i.indrelid AND
  c2.oid = i.indexrelid
ORDER BY c2.relname;
```

```
relname      | relpages
-------------|----------
pg_toast_16806 | 0
pg_toast_16806_index | 1
```
It is easy to find your largest tables and indexes using this information:

```sql
SELECT relname, relpages
FROM pg_class
ORDER BY relpages DESC;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>relname</th>
<th>relpages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bigtable</td>
<td>3290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer</td>
<td>3144</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 27.2. Disk Full Failure

The most important disk monitoring task of a database administrator is to make sure the disk doesn’t become full. A filled data disk will not result in data corruption, but it might prevent useful activity from occurring. If the disk holding the WAL files grows full, database server panic and consequent shutdown might occur.

If you cannot free up additional space on the disk by deleting other things, you can move some of the database files to other file systems by making use of tablespaces. See Section 21.6 for more information about that.

**Tip**

Some file systems perform badly when they are almost full, so do not wait until the disk is completely full to take action.

If your system supports per-user disk quotas, then the database will naturally be subject to whatever quota is placed on the user the server runs as. Exceeding the quota will have the same bad effects as running out of disk space entirely.
Chapter 28. Reliability and the Write-Ahead Log

This chapter explains how the Write-Ahead Log is used to obtain efficient, reliable operation.

28.1. Reliability

Reliability is an important property of any serious database system, and Postgres Pro does everything possible to guarantee reliable operation. One aspect of reliable operation is that all data recorded by a committed transaction should be stored in a nonvolatile area that is safe from power loss, operating system failure, and hardware failure (except failure of the nonvolatile area itself, of course). Successfully writing the data to the computer's permanent storage (disk drive or equivalent) ordinarily meets this requirement. In fact, even if a computer is fatally damaged, if the disk drives survive they can be moved to another computer with similar hardware and all committed transactions will remain intact.

While forcing data to the disk platters periodically might seem like a simple operation, it is not. Because disk drives are dramatically slower than main memory and CPUs, several layers of caching exist between the computer's main memory and the disk platters. First, there is the operating system's buffer cache, which caches frequently requested disk blocks and combines disk writes. Fortunately, all operating systems give applications a way to force writes from the buffer cache to disk, and Postgres Pro uses those features. (See the wal_sync_method parameter to adjust how this is done.)

Next, there might be a cache in the disk drive controller; this is particularly common on RAID controller cards. Some of these caches are write-through, meaning writes are sent to the drive as soon as they arrive. Others are write-back, meaning data is sent to the drive at some later time. Such caches can be a reliability hazard because the memory in the disk controller cache is volatile, and will lose its contents in a power failure. Better controller cards have battery-backup units (BBUs), meaning the card has a battery that maintains power to the cache in case of system power loss. After power is restored the data will be written to the disk drives.

And finally, most disk drives have caches. Some are write-through while some are write-back, and the same concerns about data loss exist for write-back drive caches as for disk controller caches. Consumer-grade IDE and SATA drives are particularly likely to have write-back caches that will not survive a power failure. Many solid-state drives (SSD) also have volatile write-back caches.

These caches can typically be disabled; however, the method for doing this varies by operating system and drive type:

- On Linux, IDE and SATA drives can be queried using hdparm -I; write caching is enabled if there is a * next to Write cache. hdparm -W 0 can be used to turn off write caching. SCSI drives can be queried using sdparm. Use sdparm --get=WCE to check whether the write cache is enabled and sdparm --clear=WCE to disable it.

- On FreeBSD, IDE drives can be queried using atacontrol and write caching turned off using hw.ata.wc=0 in /boot/loader.conf; SCSI drives can be queried using camcontrol identify, and the write cache both queried and changed using sdparm when available.

- On Solaris, the disk write cache is controlled by format -e. (The Solaris ZFS file system is safe with disk write-cache enabled because it issues its own disk cache flush commands.)

- On Windows, if wal_sync_method is open_dataasync (the default), write caching can be disabled by unchecking My Computer\Open\disk drive\Properties\Hardware\Properties\Policies\Enable write caching on the disk. Alternatively, set wal_sync_method to fsync or fsync_writethrough, which prevent writing caching.

- On macOS, write caching can be prevented by setting wal_sync_method to fsync_writethrough.

Recent SATA drives (those following ATAPI-6 or later) offer a drive cache flush command (FLUSH CACHE EXT), while SCSI drives have long supported a similar command SYNCHRONIZE CACHE. These
Reliability and the Write-Ahead Log

Commands are not directly accessible to Postgres Pro, but some file systems (e.g., ZFS, ext4) can use them to flush data to the platters on write-back-enabled drives. Unfortunately, such file systems behave suboptimally when combined with battery-backup unit (BBU) disk controllers. In such setups, the synchronize command forces all data from the controller cache to the disks, eliminating much of the benefit of the BBU. You can run the `pg_test_fsync` program to see if you are affected. If you are affected, the performance benefits of the BBU can be regained by turning off write barriers in the file system or reconfiguring the disk controller, if that is an option. If write barriers are turned off, make sure the battery remains functional; a faulty battery can potentially lead to data loss. Hopefully file system and disk controller designers will eventually address this suboptimal behavior.

When the operating system sends a write request to the storage hardware, there is little it can do to make sure the data has arrived at a truly non-volatile storage area. Rather, it is the administrator's responsibility to make certain that all storage components ensure integrity for both data and file-system metadata. Avoid disk controllers that have non-battery-backed write caches. At the drive level, disable write-back caching if the drive cannot guarantee the data will be written before shutdown. If you use SSDs, be aware that many of these do not honor cache flush commands by default. You can test for reliable I/O subsystem behavior using `diskchecker.pl`.

Another risk of data loss is posed by the disk platter write operations themselves. Disk platters are divided into sectors, commonly 512 bytes each. Every physical read or write operation processes a whole sector. When a write request arrives at the drive, it might be for some multiple of 512 bytes (Postgres Pro typically writes 8192 bytes, or 16 sectors, at a time), and the process of writing could fail due to power loss at any time, meaning some of the 512-byte sectors were written while others were not. To guard against such failures, Postgres Pro periodically writes full page images to permanent WAL storage before modifying the actual page on disk. By doing this, during crash recovery Postgres Pro can restore partially-written pages from WAL. If you have file-system software that prevents partial page writes (e.g., ZFS), you can turn off this page imaging by turning off the `full_page_writes` parameter. Battery-Backed Unit (BBU) disk controllers do not prevent partial page writes unless they guarantee that data is written to the BBU as full (8kB) pages.

Postgres Pro also protects against some kinds of data corruption on storage devices that may occur because of hardware errors or media failure over time, such as reading/writing garbage data.

- Each individual record in a WAL file is protected by a CRC-32 (32-bit) check that allows us to tell if record contents are correct. The CRC value is set when we write each WAL record and checked during crash recovery, archive recovery and replication.
- Data pages are not currently checksummed by default, though full page images recorded in WAL records will be protected; see `initdb` for details about enabling data checksums.
- Internal data structures such as `pg_xact`, `pg_subtrans`, `pg_multixact`, `pg_serial`, `pg_notify`, `pg_stat`, `pg_snapshots` are not directly checksummed, nor are pages protected by full page writes. However, where such data structures are persistent, WAL records are written that allow recent changes to be accurately rebuilt at crash recovery and those WAL records are protected as discussed above.
- Individual state files in `pg_twophase` are protected by CRC-32.
- Temporary data files used in larger SQL queries for sorts, materializations and intermediate results are not currently checksummed, nor will WAL records be written for changes to those files.

Postgres Pro does not protect against correctable memory errors and it is assumed you will operate using RAM that uses industry standard Error Correcting Codes (ECC) or better protection.

### 28.2. Data Checksums

By default, data pages are not protected by checksums, but this can optionally be enabled for a cluster. When enabled, each data page includes a checksum that is updated when the page is written and verified each time the page is read. Only data pages are protected by checksums; internal data structures and temporary files are not.
Checksums are normally enabled when the cluster is initialized using `initdb`. They can also be enabled or disabled at a later time as an offline operation. Data checksums are enabled or disabled at the full cluster level, and cannot be specified individually for databases or tables.

The current state of checksums in the cluster can be verified by viewing the value of the read-only configuration variable `data_checksums` by issuing the command `SHOW data_checksums`.

When attempting to recover from page corruptions, it may be necessary to bypass the checksum protection. To do this, temporarily set the configuration parameter `ignore_checksum_failure`.

### 28.2.1. Off-line Enabling of Checksums

The `pg_checksums` application can be used to enable or disable data checksums, as well as verify checksums, on an offline cluster.

### 28.3. Write-Ahead Logging (WAL)

*Write-Ahead Logging* (WAL) is a standard method for ensuring data integrity. A detailed description can be found in most (if not all) books about transaction processing. Briefly, WAL's central concept is that changes to data files (where tables and indexes reside) must be written only after those changes have been logged, that is, after log records describing the changes have been flushed to permanent storage. If we follow this procedure, we do not need to flush data pages to disk on every transaction commit, because we know that in the event of a crash we will be able to recover the database using the log: any changes that have not been applied to the data pages can be redone from the log records. (This is roll-forward recovery, also known as REDO.)

#### Tip

Because WAL restores database file contents after a crash, journaled file systems are not necessary for reliable storage of the data files or WAL files. In fact, journaling overhead can reduce performance, especially if journaling causes file system `data` to be flushed to disk. Fortunately, data flushing during journaling can often be disabled with a file system mount option, e.g., `data=writeback` on a Linux ext3 file system. Journaled file systems do improve boot speed after a crash.

Using WAL results in a significantly reduced number of disk writes, because only the log file needs to be flushed to disk to guarantee that a transaction is committed, rather than every data file changed by the transaction. The log file is written sequentially, and so the cost of syncing the log is much less than the cost of flushing the data pages. This is especially true for servers handling many small transactions touching different parts of the data store. Furthermore, when the server is processing many small concurrent transactions, one `fsync` of the log file may suffice to commit many transactions.

WAL also makes it possible to support on-line backup and point-in-time recovery, as described in Section 24.3. By archiving the WAL data we can support reverting to any time instant covered by the available WAL data: we simply install a prior physical backup of the database, and replay the WAL log just as far as the desired time. What's more, the physical backup doesn't have to be an instantaneous snapshot of the database state — if it is made over some period of time, then replaying the WAL log for that period will fix any internal inconsistencies.

### 28.4. Asynchronous Commit

*Asynchronous commit* is an option that allows transactions to complete more quickly, at the cost that the most recent transactions may be lost if the database should crash. In many applications this is an acceptable trade-off.

As described in the previous section, transaction commit is normally *synchronous*: the server waits for the transaction's WAL records to be flushed to permanent storage before returning a success indication to the client. The client is therefore guaranteed that a transaction reported to be committed will be
preserved, even in the event of a server crash immediately after. However, for short transactions this delay is a major component of the total transaction time. Selecting asynchronous commit mode means that the server returns success as soon as the transaction is logically completed, before the WAL records it generated have actually made their way to disk. This can provide a significant boost in throughput for small transactions.

Asynchronous commit introduces the risk of data loss. There is a short time window between the report of transaction completion to the client and the time that the transaction is truly committed (that is, it is guaranteed not to be lost if the server crashes). Thus asynchronous commit should not be used if the client will take external actions relying on the assumption that the transaction will be remembered. As an example, a bank would certainly not use asynchronous commit for a transaction recording an ATM's dispensing of cash. But in many scenarios, such as event logging, there is no need for a strong guarantee of this kind.

The risk that is taken by using asynchronous commit is of data loss, not data corruption. If the database should crash, it will recover by replaying WAL up to the last record that was flushed. The database will therefore be restored to a self-consistent state, but any transactions that were not yet flushed to disk will not be reflected in that state. The net effect is therefore loss of the last few transactions. Because the transactions are replayed in commit order, no inconsistency can be introduced — for example, if transaction B made changes relying on the effects of a previous transaction A, it is not possible for A's effects to be lost while B's effects are preserved.

The user can select the commit mode of each transaction, so that it is possible to have both synchronous and asynchronous commit transactions running concurrently. This allows flexible trade-offs between performance and certainty of transaction durability. The commit mode is controlled by the user-settable parameter synchronous_commit, which can be changed in any of the ways that a configuration parameter can be set. The mode used for any one transaction depends on the value of synchronous_commit when transaction commit begins.

Certain utility commands, for instance DROP TABLE, are forced to commit synchronously regardless of the setting of synchronous_commit. This is to ensure consistency between the server's file system and the logical state of the database. The commands supporting two-phase commit, such as PREPARE TRANSACTION, are also always synchronous.

If the database crashes during the risk window between an asynchronous commit and the writing of the transaction's WAL records, then changes made during that transaction will be lost. The duration of the risk window is limited because a background process (the "WAL writer") flushes unwritten WAL records to disk every wal_writer_delay milliseconds. The actual maximum duration of the risk window is three times wal_writer_delay because the WAL writer is designed to favor writing whole pages at a time during busy periods.

Caution

An immediate-mode shutdown is equivalent to a server crash, and will therefore cause loss of any unflushed asynchronous commits.

Asynchronous commit provides behavior different from setting fsync = off. fsync is a server-wide setting that will alter the behavior of all transactions. It disables all logic within Postgres Pro that attempts to synchronize writes to different portions of the database, and therefore a system crash (that is, a hardware or operating system crash, not a failure of Postgres Pro itself) could result in arbitrarily bad corruption of the database state. In many scenarios, asynchronous commit provides most of the performance improvement that could be obtained by turning off fsync, but without the risk of data corruption.

commit_delay also sounds very similar to asynchronous commit, but it is actually a synchronous commit method (in fact, commit_delay is ignored during an asynchronous commit). commit_delay causes a delay just before a transaction flushes WAL to disk, in the hope that a single flush executed by one such transaction can also serve other transactions committing at about the same time. The setting can be
thought of as a way of increasing the time window in which transactions can join a group about to participate in a single flush, to amortize the cost of the flush among multiple transactions.

28.5. WAL Configuration

There are several WAL-related configuration parameters that affect database performance. This section explains their use. Consult Chapter 18 for general information about setting server configuration parameters.

Checkpoints are points in the sequence of transactions at which it is guaranteed that the heap and index data files have been updated with all information written before that checkpoint. At checkpoint time, all dirty data pages are flushed to disk and a special checkpoint record is written to the log file. (The change records were previously flushed to the WAL files.) In the event of a crash, the crash recovery procedure looks at the latest checkpoint record to determine the point in the log (known as the redo record) from which it should start the REDO operation. Any changes made to data files before that point are guaranteed to be already on disk. Hence, after a checkpoint, log segments preceding the one containing the redo record are no longer needed and can be recycled or removed. (When WAL archiving is being done, the log segments must be archived before being recycled or removed.)

The checkpoint requirement of flushing all dirty data pages to disk can cause a significant I/O load. For this reason, checkpoint activity is throttled so that I/O begins at checkpoint start and completes before the next checkpoint is due to start; this minimizes performance degradation during checkpoints.

The server's checkpointer process automatically performs a checkpoint every so often. A checkpoint is begun every \texttt{checkpoint\_timeout} seconds, or if \texttt{max\_wal\_size} is about to be exceeded, whichever comes first. The default settings are 5 minutes and 1 GB, respectively. If no WAL has been written since the previous checkpoint, new checkpoints will be skipped even if \texttt{checkpoint\_timeout} has passed. (If WAL archiving is being used and you want to put a lower limit on how often files are archived in order to bound potential data loss, you should adjust the \texttt{archive\_timeout} parameter rather than the checkpoint parameters.) It is also possible to force a checkpoint by using the SQL command \texttt{CHECKPOINT}.

Reducing \texttt{checkpoint\_timeout} and/or \texttt{max\_wal\_size} causes checkpoints to occur more often. This allows faster after-crash recovery, since less work will need to be redone. However, one must balance this against the increased cost of flushing dirty data pages more often. If \texttt{full\_page\_writes} is set (as is the default), there is another factor to consider. To ensure data page consistency, the first modification of a data page after each checkpoint results in logging the entire page content. In that case, a smaller checkpoint interval increases the volume of output to the WAL log, partially negating the goal of using a smaller interval, and in any case causing more disk I/O.

Checkpoints are fairly expensive, first because they require writing out all currently dirty buffers, and second because they result in extra subsequent WAL traffic as discussed above. It is therefore wise to set the checkpointing parameters high enough so that checkpoints don't happen too often. As a simple sanity check on your checkpointing parameters, you can set the \texttt{checkpoint\_warning} parameter. If checkpoints happen closer together than \texttt{checkpoint\_warning} seconds, a message will be output to the server log recommending increasing \texttt{max\_wal\_size}. Occasional appearance of such a message is not cause for alarm, but if it appears often then the checkpoint control parameters should be increased. Bulk operations such as large \texttt{COPY} transfers might cause a number of such warnings to appear if you have not set \texttt{max\_wal\_size} high enough.

To avoid flooding the I/O system with a burst of page writes, writing dirty buffers during a checkpoint is spread over a period of time. That period is controlled by \texttt{checkpoint\_completion\_target}, which is given as a fraction of the checkpoint interval (configured by using \texttt{checkpoint\_timeout}). The I/O rate is adjusted so that the checkpoint finishes when the given fraction of \texttt{checkpoint\_timeout} seconds have elapsed, or before \texttt{max\_wal\_size} is exceeded, whichever is sooner. With the default value of 0.9, Postgres Pro can be expected to complete each checkpoint a bit before the next scheduled checkpoint (at around 90% of the last checkpoint's duration). This spreads out the I/O as much as possible so that the checkpoint I/O load is consistent throughout the checkpoint interval. The disadvantage of this is that prolonging checkpoints affects recovery time, because more WAL segments will need to be kept around for possible use in recovery. A user concerned about the amount of time required to recover
might wish to reduce `checkpoint_timeout` so that checkpoints occur more frequently but still spread the I/O across the checkpoint interval. Alternatively, `checkpoint_completion_target` could be reduced, but this would result in times of more intense I/O (during the checkpoint) and times of less I/O (after the checkpoint completed but before the next scheduled checkpoint) and therefore is not recommended. Although `checkpoint_completion_target` could be set as high as 1.0, it is typically recommended to set it to no higher than 0.9 (the default) since checkpoints include some other activities besides writing dirty buffers. A setting of 1.0 is quite likely to result in checkpoints not being completed on time, which would result in performance loss due to unexpected variation in the number of WAL segments needed.

On Linux and POSIX platforms `checkpoint_flush_after` allows to force the OS that pages written by the checkpoint should be flushed to disk after a configurable number of bytes. Otherwise, these pages may be kept in the OS’s page cache, inducing a stall when `fsync` is issued at the end of a checkpoint. This setting will often help to reduce transaction latency, but it also can have an adverse effect on performance; particularly for workloads that are bigger than `shared_buffers`, but smaller than the OS’s page cache.

The number of WAL segment files in `pg_wal` directory depends on `min_wal_size`, `max_wal_size` and the amount of WAL generated in previous checkpoint cycles. When old log segment files are no longer needed, they are removed or recycled (that is, renamed to become future segments in the numbered sequence). If, due to a short-term peak of log output rate, `max_wal_size` is exceeded, the unneeded segment files will be removed until the system gets back under this limit. Below that limit, the system recycles enough WAL files to cover the estimated need until the next checkpoint, and removes the rest. The estimate is based on a moving average of the number of WAL files used in previous checkpoint cycles. The moving average is increased immediately if the actual usage exceeds the estimate, so it accommodates peak usage rather than average usage to some extent. `min_wal_size` puts a minimum on the amount of WAL files recycled for future usage; that much WAL is always recycled for future use, even if the system is idle and the WAL usage estimate suggests that little WAL is needed.

Independently of `max_wal_size`, the most recent `wal_keep_size` megabytes of WAL files plus one additional WAL file are kept at all times. Also, if WAL archiving is used, old segments cannot be removed or recycled until they are archived. If WAL archiving cannot keep up with the pace that WAL is generated, or if `archive_command` fails repeatedly, old WAL files will accumulate in `pg_wal` until the situation is resolved. A slow or failed standby server that uses a replication slot will have the same effect (see Section 25.2.6).

In archive recovery or standby mode, the server periodically performs `restartpoints`, which are similar to checkpoints in normal operation: the server forces all its state to disk, updates the `pg_control` file to indicate that the already-processed WAL data need not be scanned again, and then recycles any old log segment files in the `pg_wal` directory. Restartpoints can’t be performed more frequently than checkpoints on the primary because restartpoints can only be performed at checkpoint records. A restartpoint is triggered when a checkpoint record is reached if at least `checkpoint_timeout` seconds have passed since the last restartpoint, or if WAL size is about to exceed `max_wal_size`. However, because of limitations on when a restartpoint can be performed, `max_wal_size` is often exceeded during recovery, by up to one checkpoint cycle’s worth of WAL. (`max_wal_size` is never a hard limit anyway, so you should always leave plenty of headroom to avoid running out of disk space.)

There are two commonly used internal WAL functions: `XLogInsertRecord` and `XLogFlush`. `XLogInsertRecord` is used to place a new record into the WAL buffers in shared memory. If there is no space for the new record, `XLogInsertRecord` will have to write (move to kernel cache) a few filled WAL buffers. This is undesirable because `XLogInsertRecord` is used on every database low level modification (for example, row insertion) at a time when an exclusive lock is held on affected data pages, so the operation needs to be as fast as possible. What is worse, writing WAL buffers might also force the creation of a new log segment, which takes even more time. Normally, WAL buffers should be written and flushed by an `XLogFlush` request, which is made, for the most part, at transaction commit time to ensure that transaction records are flushed to permanent storage. On systems with high log output, `XLogFlush` requests might not occur often enough to prevent `XLogInsertRecord` from having to do writes. On such systems one should increase the number of WAL buffers by modifying the `wal_buffers` parameter. When `full_page_writes` is set and the system is very busy, setting `wal_buffers` higher will help smooth response times during the period immediately following each checkpoint.
The `commit_delay` parameter defines for how many microseconds a group commit leader process will sleep after acquiring a lock within `XLogFlush`, while group commit followers queue up behind the leader. This delay allows other server processes to add their commit records to the WAL buffers so that all of them will be flushed by the leader's eventual sync operation. No sleep will occur if `fsync` is not enabled, or if fewer than `commit_siblings` other sessions are currently in active transactions; this avoids sleeping when it's unlikely that any other session will commit soon. Note that on some platforms, the resolution of a sleep request is ten milliseconds, so that any nonzero `commit_delay` setting between 1 and 10000 microseconds would have the same effect. Note also that on some platforms, sleep operations may take slightly longer than requested by the parameter.

Since the purpose of `commit_delay` is to allow the cost of each flush operation to be amortized across concurrently committing transactions (potentially at the expense of transaction latency), it is necessary to quantify that cost before the setting can be chosen intelligently. The higher that cost is, the more effective `commit_delay` is expected to be in increasing transaction throughput, up to a point. The `pg_test_fsync` program can be used to measure the average time in microseconds that a single WAL flush operation takes. A value of half of the average time the program reports it takes to flush after a single 8kB write operation is often the most effective setting for `commit_delay`, so this value is recommended as the starting point to use when optimizing for a particular workload. While tuning `commit_delay` is particularly useful when the WAL log is stored on high-latency rotating disks, benefits can be significant even on storage media with very fast sync times, such as solid-state drives or RAID arrays with a battery-backed write cache; but this should definitely be tested against a representative workload. Higher values of `commit_siblings` should be used in such cases, whereas smaller `commit_siblings` values are often helpful on higher latency media. Note that it is quite possible that a setting of `commit_delay` that is too high can increase transaction latency by so much that total transaction throughput suffers.

When `commit_delay` is set to zero (the default), it is still possible for a form of group commit to occur; but each group will consist only of sessions that reach the point where they need to flush their commit records during the window in which the previous flush operation (if any) is occurring. At higher client counts a “gangway effect” tends to occur; so that the effects of group commit become significant even when `commit_delay` is zero, and thus explicitly setting `commit_delay` tends to help less. Setting `commit_delay` can only help when (1) there are some concurrently committing transactions, and (2) throughput is limited to some degree by commit rate; but with high rotational latency this setting can be effective in increasing transaction throughput with as few as two clients (that is, a single committing client with one sibling transaction).

The `wal sync method` parameter determines how Postgres Pro will ask the kernel to force WAL updates out to disk. All the options should be the same in terms of reliability, with the exception of `fsync writethrough`, which can sometimes force a flush of the disk cache even when other options do not do so. However, it's quite platform-specific which one will be the fastest. You can test the speeds of different options using the `pg_test_fsync` program. Note that this parameter is irrelevant if `fsync` has been turned off.

Enabling the `wal debug` configuration parameter (provided that Postgres Pro has been compiled with support for it) will result in each `XLogInsertRecord` and `XLogFlush` WAL call being logged to the server log. This option might be replaced by a more general mechanism in the future.

There are two internal functions to write WAL data to disk: `XLogWrite` and `issue_xlog_fsync`. When `track wal io timing` is enabled, the total amounts of time `XLogWrite` writes and `issue_xlog_fsync` syncs WAL data to disk are counted as `wal_write_time` and `wal_sync_time` in `pg_stat_wal`, respectively. `XLogWrite` is normally called by `XLogInsertRecord` (when there is no space for the new record in WAL buffers), `XLogFlush` and the WAL writer, to write WAL buffers to disk and call `issue_xlog_fsync`. `issue_xlog_fsync` is normally called by `XLogWrite` to sync WAL files to disk. If `wal_sync_method` is either `open_datasync` or `open_sync`, a write operation in `XLogWrite` guarantees to sync written WAL data to disk and `issue_xlog_fsync` does nothing. If `wal_sync_method` is either `fdatasync`, `fsync`, or `fsync writethrough`, the write operation moves WAL buffers to kernel cache and `issue_xlog_fsync` syncs them to disk. Regardless of the setting of `track wal io timing`, the number of times `XLogWrite` writes and `issue_xlog_fsync` syncs WAL data to disk are also counted as `wal_write` and `wal_sync` in `pg_stat_wal`, respectively.
28.6. WAL Internals

WAL is automatically enabled; no action is required from the administrator except ensuring that the disk-space requirements for the WAL logs are met, and that any necessary tuning is done (see Section 28.5).

WAL records are appended to the WAL logs as each new record is written. The insert position is described by a Log Sequence Number (LSN) that is a byte offset into the logs, increasing monotonically with each new record. LSN values are returned as the datatype `pg_lsn`. Values can be compared to calculate the volume of WAL data that separates them, so they are used to measure the progress of replication and recovery.

WAL logs are stored in the directory `pg_wal` under the data directory, as a set of segment files, normally each 16 MB in size (but the size can be changed by altering the `--wal-segsize` initdb option). Each segment is divided into pages, normally 8 kB each. The log record content is dependent on the type of event that is being logged. Segment files are given ever-increasing numbers as names, starting at `000000010000000000000001`. The numbers do not wrap, but it will take a very, very long time to exhaust the available stock of numbers.

It is advantageous if the log is located on a different disk from the main database files. This can be achieved by moving the `pg_wal` directory to another location (while the server is shut down, of course) and creating a symbolic link from the original location in the main data directory to the new location.

The aim of WAL is to ensure that the log is written before database records are altered, but this can be subverted by disk drives that falsely report a successful write to the kernel, when in fact they have only cached the data and not yet stored it on the disk. A power failure in such a situation might lead to irrecoverable data corruption. Administrators should try to ensure that disks holding Postgres Pro's WAL log files do not make such false reports. (See Section 28.1.)

After a checkpoint has been made and the log flushed, the checkpoint's position is saved in the file `pg_control`. Therefore, at the start of recovery, the server first reads `pg_control` and then the checkpoint record; then it performs the REDO operation by scanning forward from the log location indicated in the checkpoint record. Because the entire content of data pages is saved in the log on the first page modification after a checkpoint (assuming `full_page_writes` is not disabled), all pages changed since the checkpoint will be restored to a consistent state.

To deal with the case where `pg_control` is corrupt, we should support the possibility of scanning existing log segments in reverse order — newest to oldest — in order to find the latest checkpoint. This has not been implemented yet. `pg_control` is small enough (less than one disk page) that it is not subject to partial-write problems, and as of this writing there have been no reports of database failures due solely to the inability to read `pg_control` itself. So while it is theoretically a weak spot, `pg_control` does not seem to be a problem in practice.
Chapter 29. Logical Replication

Logical replication is a method of replicating data objects and their changes, based upon their replication identity (usually a primary key). We use the term logical in contrast to physical replication, which uses exact block addresses and byte-by-byte replication. Postgres Pro supports both mechanisms concurrently, see Chapter 25. Logical replication allows fine-grained control over both data replication and security.

Logical replication uses a publish and subscribe model with one or more subscribers subscribing to one or more publications on a publisher node. Subscribers pull data from the publications they subscribe to and may subsequently re-publish data to allow cascading replication or more complex configurations.

Logical replication of a table typically starts with taking a snapshot of the data on the publisher database and copying that to the subscriber. Once that is done, the changes on the publisher are sent to the subscriber as they occur in real-time. The subscriber applies the data in the same order as the publisher so that transactional consistency is guaranteed for publications within a single subscription. This method of data replication is sometimes referred to as transactional replication.

The typical use-cases for logical replication are:

- Sending incremental changes in a single database or a subset of a database to subscribers as they occur.
- Firing triggers for individual changes as they arrive on the subscriber.
- Consolidating multiple databases into a single one (for example for analytical purposes).
- Replicating between different major versions of Postgres Pro.
- Replicating between Postgres Pro instances on different platforms (for example Linux to Windows)
- Giving access to replicated data to different groups of users.
- Sharing a subset of the database between multiple databases.

The subscriber database behaves in the same way as any other Postgres Pro instance and can be used as a publisher for other databases by defining its own publications. When the subscriber is treated as read-only by application, there will be no conflicts from a single subscription. On the other hand, if there are other writes done either by an application or by other subscribers to the same set of tables, conflicts can arise.

29.1. Publication

A publication can be defined on any physical replication primary. The node where a publication is defined is referred to as publisher. A publication is a set of changes generated from a table or a group of tables, and might also be described as a change set or replication set. Each publication exists in only one database.

Publications are different from schemas and do not affect how the table is accessed. Each table can be added to multiple publications if needed. Publications may currently only contain tables. Objects must be added explicitly, except when a publication is created for ALL TABLES.

Publications can choose to limit the changes they produce to any combination of INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and TRUNCATE, similar to how triggers are fired by particular event types. By default, all operation types are replicated.

A published table must have a “replica identity” configured in order to be able to replicate UPDATE and DELETE operations, so that appropriate rows to update or delete can be identified on the subscriber side. By default, this is the primary key, if there is one. Another unique index (with certain additional requirements) can also be set to be the replica identity. If the table does not have any suitable key, then it can be set to replica identity “full”, which means the entire row becomes the key. This, however, is
Logical Replication

very inefficient and should only be used as a fallback if no other solution is possible. If a replica identity other than “full” is set on the publisher side, a replica identity comprising the same or fewer columns must also be set on the subscriber side. See REPLICA_IDENTITY for details on how to set the replica identity. If a table without a replica identity is added to a publication that replicates UPDATE or DELETE operations then subsequent UPDATE or DELETE operations will cause an error on the publisher. INSERT operations can proceed regardless of any replica identity.

Every publication can have multiple subscribers.

A publication is created using the CREATE PUBLICATION command and may later be altered or dropped using corresponding commands.

The individual tables can be added and removed dynamically using ALTER PUBLICATION. Both the ADD TABLE and DROP TABLE operations are transactional; so the table will start or stop replicating at the correct snapshot once the transaction has committed.

29.2. Subscription

A subscription is the downstream side of logical replication. The node where a subscription is defined is referred to as the subscriber. A subscription defines the connection to another database and set of publications (one or more) to which it wants to subscribe.

The subscriber database behaves in the same way as any other Postgres Pro instance and can be used as a publisher for other databases by defining its own publications.

A subscriber node may have multiple subscriptions if desired. It is possible to define multiple subscriptions between a single publisher-subscriber pair, in which case care must be taken to ensure that the subscribed publication objects don’t overlap.

Each subscription will receive changes via one replication slot (see Section 25.2.6). Additional replication slots may be required for the initial data synchronization of pre-existing table data and those will be dropped at the end of data synchronization.

A logical replication subscription can be a standby for synchronous replication (see Section 25.2.8). The standby name is by default the subscription name. An alternative name can be specified as application_name in the connection information of the subscription.

Subscriptions are dumped by pg_dump if the current user is a superuser. Otherwise a warning is written and subscriptions are skipped, because non-superusers cannot read all subscription information from the pg_subscription catalog.

The subscription is added using CREATE SUBSCRIPTION and can be stopped/resumed at any time using the ALTER SUBSCRIPTION command and removed using DROP SUBSCRIPTION.

When a subscription is dropped and recreated, the synchronization information is lost. This means that the data has to be resynchronized afterwards.

The schema definitions are not replicated, and the published tables must exist on the subscriber. Only regular tables may be the target of replication. For example, you can’t replicate to a view.

The tables are matched between the publisher and the subscriber using the fully qualified table name. Replication to differently-named tables on the subscriber is not supported.

Columns of a table are also matched by name. The order of columns in the subscriber table does not need to match that of the publisher. The data types of the columns do not need to match, as long as the text representation of the data can be converted to the target type. For example, you can replicate from a column of type integer to a column of type bigint. The target table can also have additional columns not provided by the published table. Any such columns will be filled with the default value as specified in the definition of the target table.
29.2.1. Replication Slot Management

As mentioned earlier, each (active) subscription receives changes from a replication slot on the remote (publishing) side.

Additional table synchronization slots are normally transient, created internally to perform initial table synchronization and dropped automatically when they are no longer needed. These table synchronization slots have generated names: “pg_%u_sync_%u_%llu” (parameters: Subscription oid, Table relid, system identifier sysid)

Normally, the remote replication slot is created automatically when the subscription is created using CREATE SUBSCRIPTION and it is dropped automatically when the subscription is dropped using DROP SUBSCRIPTION. In some situations, however, it can be useful or necessary to manipulate the subscription and the underlying replication slot separately. Here are some scenarios:

• When creating a subscription, the replication slot already exists. In that case, the subscription can be created using the create_slot = false option to associate with the existing slot.
• When creating a subscription, the remote host is not reachable or in an unclear state. In that case, the subscription can be created using the connect = false option. The remote host will then not be contacted at all. This is what pg_dump uses. The remote replication slot will then have to be created manually before the subscription can be activated.
• When dropping a subscription, the replication slot should be kept. This could be useful when the subscriber database is being moved to a different host and will be activated from there. In that case, disassociate the slot from the subscription using ALTER SUBSCRIPTION before attempting to drop the subscription.
• When dropping a subscription, the remote host is not reachable. In that case, disassociate the slot from the subscription using ALTER SUBSCRIPTION before attempting to drop the subscription. If the remote database instance no longer exists, no further action is then necessary. If, however, the remote database instance is just unreachable, the replication slot (and any still remaining table synchronization slots) should then be dropped manually; otherwise it/they would continue to reserve WAL and might eventually cause the disk to fill up. Such cases should be carefully investigated.

29.3. Conflicts

Logical replication behaves similarly to normal DML operations in that the data will be updated even if it was changed locally on the subscriber node. If incoming data violates any constraints the replication will stop. This is referred to as a conflict. When replicating UPDATE or DELETE operations, missing data will not produce a conflict and such operations will simply be skipped.

A conflict will produce an error and will stop the replication; it must be resolved manually by the user. Details about the conflict can be found in the subscriber's server log.

The resolution can be done either by changing data on the subscriber so that it does not conflict with the incoming change or by skipping the transaction that conflicts with the existing data. The transaction can be skipped by calling the pg_replication_origin_advance() function with a node_name corresponding to the subscription name, and a position. The current position of origins can be seen in the pg_replication_origin_status system view.

29.4. Restrictions

Logical replication currently has the following restrictions or missing functionality. These might be addressed in future releases.

• The database schema and DDL commands are not replicated. The initial schema can be copied by hand using pg_dump --schema-only. Subsequent schema changes would need to be kept in sync manually. (Note, however, that there is no need for the schemas to be absolutely the same on both
Logical replication is robust when schema definitions change in a live database: When the schema is changed on the publisher and replicated data starts arriving at the subscriber but does not fit into the table schema, replication will error until the schema is updated. In many cases, intermittent errors can be avoided by applying additive schema changes to the subscriber first.

- Sequence data is not replicated. The data in serial or identity columns backed by sequences will of course be replicated as part of the table, but the sequence itself would still show the start value on the subscriber. If the subscriber is used as a read-only database, then this should typically not be a problem. If, however, some kind of switchover or failover to the subscriber database is intended, then the sequences would need to be updated to the latest values, either by copying the current data from the publisher (perhaps using `pg_dump`) or by determining a sufficiently high value from the tables themselves.

- Replication of `TRUNCATE` commands is supported, but some care must be taken when truncating groups of tables connected by foreign keys. When replicating a truncate action, the subscriber will truncate the same group of tables that was truncated on the publisher, either explicitly specified or implicitly collected via `CASCADE`, minus tables that are not part of the subscription. This will work correctly if all affected tables are part of the same subscription. But if some tables to be truncated on the subscriber have foreign-key links to tables that are not part of the same (or any) subscription, then the application of the truncate action on the subscriber will fail.

- Large objects (see Chapter 33) are not replicated. There is no workaround for that, other than storing data in normal tables.

- Replication is only supported by tables, including partitioned tables. Attempts to replicate other types of relations, such as views, materialized views, or foreign tables, will result in an error.

- When replicating between partitioned tables, the actual replication originates, by default, from the leaf partitions on the publisher, so partitions on the publisher must also exist on the subscriber as valid target tables. (They could either be leaf partitions themselves, or they could be further subpartitioned, or they could even be independent tables.) Publications can also specify that changes are to be replicated using the identity and schema of the partitioned root table instead of that of the individual leaf partitions in which the changes actually originate (see `CREATE PUBLICATION`).

### 29.5. Architecture

Logical replication starts by copying a snapshot of the data on the publisher database. Once that is done, changes on the publisher are sent to the subscriber as they occur in real time. The subscriber applies data in the order in which commits were made on the publisher so that transactional consistency is guaranteed for the publications within any single subscription.

Logical replication is built with an architecture similar to physical streaming replication (see Section 25.2.5). It is implemented by “walsender” and “apply” processes. The walsender process starts logical decoding (described in Chapter 47) of the WAL and loads the standard logical decoding plugin (`pgoutput`). The plugin transforms the changes read from WAL to the logical replication protocol (see Section 51.5) and filters the data according to the publication specification. The data is then continuously transferred using the streaming replication protocol to the apply worker, which maps the data to local tables and applies the individual changes as they are received, in correct transactional order.

The apply process on the subscriber database always runs with `session_replication_role` set to `replica`, which produces the usual effects on triggers and constraints.

The logical replication apply process currently only fires row triggers, not statement triggers. The initial table synchronization, however, is implemented like a `COPY` command and thus fires both row and statement triggers for `INSERT`.

### 29.5.1. Initial Snapshot

The initial data in existing subscribed tables are snapshotted and copied in a parallel instance of a special kind of apply process. This process will create its own replication slot and copy the existing data. As
soon as the copy is finished the table contents will become visible to other backends. Once existing data is copied, the worker enters synchronization mode, which ensures that the table is brought up to a synchronized state with the main apply process by streaming any changes that happened during the initial data copy using standard logical replication. During this synchronization phase, the changes are applied and committed in the same order as they happened on the publisher. Once synchronization is done, control of the replication of the table is given back to the main apply process where replication continues as normal.

### 29.6. Monitoring

Because logical replication is based on a similar architecture as physical streaming replication, the monitoring on a publication node is similar to monitoring of a physical replication primary (see Section 25.2.5.2).

The monitoring information about subscription is visible in `pg_stat_subscription`. This view contains one row for every subscription worker. A subscription can have zero or more active subscription workers depending on its state.

Normally, there is a single apply process running for an enabled subscription. A disabled subscription or a crashed subscription will have zero rows in this view. If the initial data synchronization of any table is in progress, there will be additional workers for the tables being synchronized.

### 29.7. Security

A user able to modify the schema of subscriber-side tables can execute arbitrary code as a superuser. Limit ownership and TRIGGER privilege on such tables to roles that superusers trust. Moreover, if untrusted users can create tables, use only publications that list tables explicitly. That is to say, create a subscription FOR ALL TABLES only when superusers trust every user permitted to create a non-temp table on the publisher or the subscriber.

The role used for the replication connection must have the REPLICATION attribute (or be a superuser). If the role lacks SUPERUSER and BYPASSRLS, publisher row security policies can execute. If the role does not trust all table owners, include `options=-crow_security=off` in the connection string; if a table owner then adds a row security policy, that setting will cause replication to halt rather than execute the policy. Access for the role must be configured in `pg_hba.conf` and it must have the LOGIN attribute.

In order to be able to copy the initial table data, the role used for the replication connection must have the SELECT privilege on a published table (or be a superuser).

To create a publication, the user must have the CREATE privilege in the database.

To add tables to a publication, the user must have ownership rights on the table. To create a publication that publishes all tables automatically, the user must be a superuser.

To create a subscription, the user must be a superuser.

The subscription apply process will run in the local database with the privileges of a superuser.

Privileges are only checked once at the start of a replication connection. They are not re-checked as each change record is read from the publisher, nor are they re-checked for each change when applied.

### 29.8. Configuration Settings

Logical replication requires several configuration options to be set.

On the publisher side, `wal_level` must be set to `logical`, and `max_replication_slots` must be set to at least the number of subscriptions expected to connect, plus some reserve for table synchronization. And `max_wal_senders` should be set to at least the same as `max_replication_slots` plus the number of physical replicas that are connected at the same time.
max_replication_slots must also be set on the subscriber. It should be set to at least the number of subscriptions that will be added to the subscriber, plus some reserve for table synchronization. max_logical_replication_workers must be set to at least the number of subscriptions, again plus some reserve for the table synchronization. Additionally the max_worker_processes may need to be adjusted to accommodate for replication workers, at least \((\text{max_logical_replication_workers} + 1)\). Note that some extensions and parallel queries also take worker slots from max_worker_processes.

### 29.9. Quick Setup

First set the configuration options in `postgresql.conf`:

```sql
wal_level = logical
```

The other required settings have default values that are sufficient for a basic setup.

`pg_hba.conf` needs to be adjusted to allow replication (the values here depend on your actual network configuration and user you want to use for connecting):

```sql
host     all     repuser     0.0.0.0/0     md5
```

Then on the publisher database:

```sql
CREATE PUBLICATION mypub FOR TABLE users, departments;
```

And on the subscriber database:

```sql
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION mysub CONNECTION 'dbname=foo host=bar user=repuser' PUBLICATION mypub;
```

The above will start the replication process, which synchronizes the initial table contents of the tables `users` and `departments` and then starts replicating incremental changes to those tables.
Chapter 30. Just-in-Time Compilation (JIT)

This chapter explains what just-in-time compilation is, and how it can be configured in Postgres Pro.

30.1. What Is JIT compilation?

Just-in-Time (JIT) compilation is the process of turning some form of interpreted program evaluation into a native program, and doing so at run time. For example, instead of using general-purpose code that can evaluate arbitrary SQL expressions to evaluate a particular SQL predicate like \texttt{WHERE a.col = 3}, it is possible to generate a function that is specific to that expression and can be natively executed by the CPU, yielding a speedup.

Postgres Pro has built-in support to perform JIT compilation using \texttt{LLVM} when Postgres Pro is built with \texttt{--with-llvm}.

30.1.1. JIT Accelerated Operations

Currently Postgres Pro's JIT implementation has support for accelerating expression evaluation and tuple deforming. Several other operations could be accelerated in the future.

Expression evaluation is used to evaluate \texttt{WHERE} clauses, target lists, aggregates and projections. It can be accelerated by generating code specific to each case.

Tuple deforming is the process of transforming an on-disk tuple (see Section 66.6.1) into its in-memory representation. It can be accelerated by creating a function specific to the table layout and the number of columns to be extracted.

30.1.2. Inlining

Postgres Pro is very extensible and allows new data types, functions, operators and other database objects to be defined; see Chapter 36. In fact the built-in objects are implemented using nearly the same mechanisms. This extensibility implies some overhead, for example due to function calls (see Section 36.3). To reduce that overhead, JIT compilation can inline the bodies of small functions into the expressions using them. That allows a significant percentage of the overhead to be optimized away.

30.1.3. Optimization

LLVM has support for optimizing generated code. Some of the optimizations are cheap enough to be performed whenever JIT is used, while others are only beneficial for longer-running queries. See https://llvm.org/docs/Passes.html#transform-passes for more details about optimizations.

30.2. When to JIT?

JIT compilation is beneficial primarily for long-running CPU-bound queries. Frequently these will be analytical queries. For short queries the added overhead of performing JIT compilation will often be higher than the time it can save.

To determine whether JIT compilation should be used, the total estimated cost of a query (see Chapter 67 and Section 18.7.2) is used. The estimated cost of the query will be compared with the setting of \texttt{jit_above_cost}. If the cost is higher, JIT compilation will be performed. Two further decisions are then needed. Firstly, if the estimated cost is more than the setting of \texttt{jit_inline_above_cost}, short functions and operators used in the query will be inlined. Secondly, if the estimated cost is more than the setting of \texttt{jit_optimize_above_cost}, expensive optimizations are applied to improve the generated code. Each of these options increases the JIT compilation overhead, but can reduce query execution time considerably.

These cost-based decisions will be made at plan time, not execution time. This means that when prepared statements are in use, and a generic plan is used (see \texttt{PREPARE}), the values of the configuration parameters in effect at prepare time control the decisions, not the settings at execution time.
Just-in-Time Compilation (JIT)

Note

If jit is set to off, or if no JIT implementation is available (for example because the server was compiled without --with-llvm), JIT will not be performed, even if it would be beneficial based on the above criteria. Setting jit to off has effects at both plan and execution time.

EXPLAIN can be used to see whether JIT is used or not. As an example, here is a query that is not using JIT:

```sql
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT SUM(relpages) FROM pg_class;
```

Given the cost of the plan, it is entirely reasonable that no JIT was used; the cost of JIT would have been bigger than the potential savings. Adjusting the cost limits will lead to JIT use:

```sql
=# SET jit_above_cost = 10;
SET
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT SUM(relpages) FROM pg_class;
```

As visible here, JIT was used, but inlining and expensive optimization were not. If jit_inline_above_cost or jit_optimize_above_cost were also lowered, that would change.

30.3. Configuration

The configuration variable jit determines whether JIT compilation is enabled or disabled. If it is enabled, the configuration variables jit_above_cost, jit_inline_above_cost, and jit_optimize_above_cost determine whether JIT compilation is performed for a query, and how much effort is spent doing so.

jit_provider determines which JIT implementation is used. It is rarely required to be changed. See Section 30.4.2.

For development and debugging purposes a few additional configuration parameters exist, as described in Section 18.18.
30.4. Extensibility

30.4.1. Inlining Support for Extensions

If you would like to build Postgres Pro extensions that support JIT inlining, make sure to set up your development environment as explained in Section 16.1.4.

Postgres Pro's JIT implementation can inline the bodies of functions of types \texttt{c} and \texttt{internal}, as well as operators based on such functions. To do so for functions in extensions, the definitions of those functions need to be made available. When using \texttt{PGXS} to build an extension against a server that has been compiled with LLVM JIT support, the relevant files will be built and installed automatically.

The relevant files have to be installed into $\texttt{pkglibdir/bitcode/$extension/}$ and a summary of them into $\texttt{pkglibdir/bitcode/$extension.index.bc}$, where $\texttt{pkglibdir}$ is the directory returned by $\texttt{pg_config --p沽libdir}$ and $\texttt{$extension}$ is the base name of the extension's shared library.

Note

For functions built into Postgres Pro itself, the bitcode is installed into $\texttt{pkglibdir/bitcode/postgres}$. 

30.4.2. Pluggable JIT Providers

Postgres Pro provides a JIT implementation based on LLVM. The interface to the JIT provider is pluggable and the provider can be changed without recompiling (although currently, the build process only provides inlining support data for LLVM). The active provider is chosen via the setting \texttt{jit_provider}.

30.4.2.1. JIT Provider Interface

A JIT provider is loaded by dynamically loading the named shared library. The normal library search path is used to locate the library. To provide the required JIT provider callbacks and to indicate that the library is actually a JIT provider, it needs to provide a C function named \texttt{_PG_jit_provider_init}. This function is passed a struct that needs to be filled with the callback function pointers for individual actions:

```c
struct JitProviderCallbacks
{
    JitProviderResetAfterErrorCB reset_after_error;
    JitProviderReleaseContextCB release_context;
    JitProviderCompileExprCB compile_expr;
};
```

```c
extern void _PG_jit_provider_init(JitProviderCallbacks *cb);
```
Chapter 31. Enhanced Security

This chapter describes enhanced security mechanisms available in the certified edition of Postgres Pro Standard.

31.1. Memory Purge

Using memory purge configuration parameters, Postgres Pro Standard can automatically replace data with zero bytes before it is deleted. This section describes how different types of data are handled. By default, all the memory purge parameters are switched on.

31.1.1. Deleting Files from External Memory

When you run some SQL commands that delete files, the corresponding disk space is returned to the operating system. Such commands include:

- Commands that delete database objects:
  - DROP TABLE
  - DROP TEMPORARY TABLE
  - DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW
  - DROP INDEX
  - TRUNCATE
  - DROP DATABASE
  - DROP SCHEMA
- Commands that re-create objects:
  - VACUUM FULL
  - REINDEX
  - ALTER TABLE ADD COLUMN (with the default value)
  - ALTER TABLE ALTER COLUMN TYPE

If the wipe_file_on_delete configuration parameter is switched on, the files to be deleted are first filled with zero bytes.

Note

The ALTER TABLE DROP COLUMN command does not re-create the file. All the data contained in the deleted column remains inside the pages, although you cannot access this data using SQL commands. To physically remove this data from the file, run VACUUM FULL after deleting the column.

31.1.2. Page Cleanup

In accordance with the Multiversion Concurrency Control (MVCC) model, when rows are deleted (with the DELETE command) the data stored in these rows is marked as deleted, but is not physically removed. In the case of row updates (with the UPDATE command), the old version of the row is deleted, and then a new version is inserted, so the previous value is not removed from the page either.

To ensure that MVCC mechanism is working correctly, Postgres Pro keeps the deleted data in the page while the saved version of the row can be accessed by at least one active snapshot. If the row is referenced from indexes, index pages also keep references to the row versions that are deleted but not yet freed. When the row version is not referenced from any snapshot anymore, this version can be deleted with the VACUUM process. At the same time, all references to this row version are deleted from indexes. However, deleting does not mean physical removal: in normal operation, the corresponding space in the page is marked as free and can be used to store another row.
To prevent access to the deleted row versions, make sure that the `wipe_heap_tuple_on_delete` parameter is switched on in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file. In this case, the VACUUM process not only marks the page spaces as free, but also fills them with zero bytes.

### 31.1.3. Clearing Random-Access Memory

While the server is running, random-access memory (RAM) is constantly allocated and released. Postgres Pro uses its own context-based system of memory allocation, in which memory is always allocated in one of the nested contexts. Deleting a context frees all the memory allocated in this context and the corresponding nested contexts. This approach helps to avoid memory leaks. Nevertheless, memory allocation and release are ultimately performed by the operating system. In normal operation, the released part of RAM is returned to the operating system and can be allocated to another process.

To remove all the data from the released part of RAM, make sure that the following parameters are switched on in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file:

- `wipe_memctx_on_free` — this parameter fills the released memory with zero bytes if the released memory belongs to a context.
- `wipe_mem_on_free` — this parameter fills the released memory with zero bytes if the released memory does not belong to any context. Although Postgres Pro always allocates memory within a particular context, you can still use this parameter to be on the safe side.

### 31.1.4. Cleaning up WAL Files

Write-Ahead Log (WAL) is a standard method for ensuring data integrity, which enables database backups, point-in-time recovery, and data replication between servers. WAL’s central concept is that changes to data files (where tables and indexes reside) must be written only after those changes have been logged, that is, after log records describing the changes have been flushed to permanent storage. Thus, WAL can contain sensitive data that must be secured.

Postgres Pro server always stores a certain number of WAL segments in the `$PGDATA/pg_wal` directory. The minimum amount of WAL segments to store is defined by the `min_wal_size` parameter. In case of heavy load, the size of WAL segments can increase up to the `max_wal_size` value, or even exceed this value a little. As long as WAL disk usage stays above the `min_wal_size` threshold, old WAL segment files are deleted when they are released. Otherwise, WAL segments get overwritten.

To prevent unauthorized access to the released WAL segments, make sure that the `wipe_xlog_on_free` parameter is switched on in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file. In this case, the WAL segment will be filled with zero bytes before it is deleted or overwritten.

For details on WAL configuration and usage, see Chapter 28.

### 31.2. Integrity Checks

#### 31.2.1. Overview

Postgres Pro Standard includes the `pg_integrity_check` utility that provides the following features for integrity checks:

- On-demand checksum calculation and validation
- Built-in checksum validation at the server startup

`pg_integrity_check` can control read-only files, additional files, and system catalog tables.

#### 31.2.1.1. Read-Only Files

Controlled read-only files include executable files, libraries, and other files that must never be modified. Checksums for read-only files are managed by the `/opt/pgpro/std-14/share/security/system.conf` configuration file.
The system.conf file is included into the Postgres Pro Standard distribution. Each Postgres Pro Standard instance has a single system.conf file. Each line in system.conf corresponds to a single controlled object and includes two fields: the checksum, consisting of 40 hexadecimal digits, and a relative path to the controlled object. These fields are separated by three symbols: space, dash, space. Checksums are calculated and written into this file at the time of Postgres Pro Standard installation. They control both contents and attributes of read-only files. For example, if access rights to the file have been modified, the checksum will change.

31.2.1.2. Additional Files

Additional files are controlled files that can be modified by a database administrator. Checksums for additional files are managed by configuration files stored in the share/security directory. Each cluster must have a separate configuration file for additional files. The naming convention is as follows: the path to the data directory of the cluster (PGDATA), with forward slashes replaced by underscores, followed by the .user.conf postfix. For example, for a cluster with /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data data directory, the configuration file is called _var_lib_pgpro_std-14_data.user.conf.

Each line in the configuration file corresponds to a single controlled object and includes two fields: the checksum, consisting of 40 hexadecimal digits, and a relative path to the controlled object. The fields are separated by three symbols: space, dash, space.

Checksums control both contents and attributes of additional files. For example, if access rights to the file have been modified, the checksum will change.

To set up checksum validation for additional files, database administrator needs to do the following:

1. Create a configuration file for each cluster, following the naming convention specified above.
2. In the created configuration file, specify all the additional files to be controlled. As a checksum, any 40 hexadecimal digits can be entered, for example, zeros.
3. Run the following command to recalculate the checksums, specifying the path to the data directory of your cluster:

   \[ \text{pg_integrity_check} -u -o -D /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data \]

   Alternatively, administrator can run the above command to generate a sample configuration file, and then edit this file as needed.

31.2.1.3. System Catalog Tables

System catalog tables represent a controlled data selection related to Postgres Pro Standard instance. Checksums for system catalog tables are managed by the /opt/pgpro/std-14/share/security/catalog.conf configuration file. You can setup integrity checks of system catalog tables for a single database only.

Each line in the configuration file corresponds to a single controlled object and includes two fields: the checksum, consisting of 40 hexadecimal digits, and a relative path to the controlled object. The fields are separated by three symbols: space, dash, space.

To set up checksum validation for data selection, database administrator needs to do the following:

1. Create a configuration file for the selected database.
2. In the created configuration file, specify SQL queries that return the controlled data. As a checksum, any 40 hexadecimal digits can be entered, for example, zeros.
3. Run the following command to recalculate checksums, specifying connection parameters for your database:

   \[ \text{pg_integrity_check} -c -o -d postgres -h localhost -p 5432 -U postgres \]
Alternatively, administrator can run the above command to generate a sample configuration file, and then edit this file as needed.

31.2.2. Checking Integrity at Server Startup

Checksums for read-only files are always validated at the Postgres Pro Standard server startup. If the server start is blocked because of a checksum mismatch, administrator must troubleshoot and resolve the issue to restart the server.

System catalog tables and additional files are not validated at the server startup. You can validate them by running `pg_integrity_check` manually once the server is started.

31.2.3. Scheduling Integrity Checks

If you are using a Linux-based system, you can schedule recurrent integrity checks using the `cron` daemon. To schedule integrity checks, modify the `/etc/crontab` file by adding the lines that define the frequency of `pg_integrity_check` utility launches. The `/etc/crontab` is a system file that contains all instructions for the `cron` daemon. To get a detailed description of the `crontab` file format for your Linux-based operating system, run the command:

```bash
man 5 crontab
```

**Examples**

The following example illustrates integrity checks on a Rosa SX operating system:

```bash
# Data directory of the cluster
PGDATA = /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data
# pg_integrity_check log file
LOG = /opt/pgpro/std-14/share/security/log
# Validate read-only files every day at 00:05
5 0 * * * root /opt/pgpro/std-14/bin/pg_integrity_check -s >> $LOG
# Run integrity checks at 14:15 on the first day of the month
15 14 1 * * root /opt/pgpro/std-14/bin/pg_integrity_check -s >> $LOG
# Run integrity checks at 22.00 on weekdays
0 22 * * 1-5 root /opt/pgpro/std-14/bin/pg_integrity_check -s >> $LOG
# Run integrity checks at 00:23, 2:23, 4:23 ..., every day
23 0-23/2 * * * root /opt/pgpro/std-14/bin/pg_integrity_check -s >> $LOG
# Run integrity checks at 4:05 each Sunday
5 4 * * sun root /opt/pgpro/std-14/bin/pg_integrity_check -s >> $LOG
```
Part IV. Client Interfaces

This part describes the client programming interfaces distributed with Postgres Pro. Each of these chapters can be read independently. Note that there are many other programming interfaces for client programs that are distributed separately and contain their own documentation (Appendix H lists some of the more popular ones). Readers of this part should be familiar with using SQL commands to manipulate and query the database (see Part II) and of course with the programming language that the interface uses.
Chapter 32. libpq — C Library

libpq is the C application programmer’s interface to Postgres Pro. libpq is a set of library functions that allow client programs to pass queries to the Postgres Pro backend server and to receive the results of these queries.

libpq is also the underlying engine for several other Postgres Pro application interfaces, including those written for C++, Perl, Python, Tcl and ECPG. So some aspects of libpq’s behavior will be important to you if you use one of those packages. In particular, Section 32.15, Section 32.16 and Section 32.19 describe behavior that is visible to the user of any application that uses libpq.

Some short programs are included at the end of this chapter (Section 32.22) to show how to write programs that use libpq.

Client programs that use libpq must include the header file libpq-fe.h and must link with the libpq library.

32.1. Database Connection Control Functions

The following functions deal with making a connection to a Postgres Pro backend server. An application program can have several backend connections open at one time. (One reason to do that is to access more than one database.) Each connection is represented by a PGconn object, which is obtained from the function PQconnectdb, PQconnectdbParams, or PQsetdbLogin. Note that these functions will always return a non-null object pointer, unless perhaps there is too little memory even to allocate the PGconn object. The PQstatus function should be called to check the return value for a successful connection before queries are sent via the connection object.

Warning
If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin each session by removing publicly-writable schemas from search_path. One can set parameter key word options to value -csearch_path=. Alternately, one can issue PQexec(conn, "SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false)") after connecting. This consideration is not specific to libpq; it applies to every interface for executing arbitrary SQL commands.

Warning
On Unix, forking a process with open libpq connections can lead to unpredictable results because the parent and child processes share the same sockets and operating system resources. For this reason, such usage is not recommended, though doing an exec from the child process to load a new executable is safe.

PQconnectdbParams

Makes a new connection to the database server.

PGconn *PQconnectdbParams(const char * const *keywords, const char * const *values, int expand_dbname);

This function opens a new database connection using the parameters taken from two NULL-terminated arrays. The first, keywords, is defined as an array of strings, each one being a key word. The second, values, gives the value for each key word. Unlike PQsetdbLogin below, the parameter set can be extended without changing the function signature, so use of this function (or its nonblocking analogs PQconnectStartParams and PQconnectPoll) is preferred for new application programming.
The currently recognized parameter key words are listed in Section 32.1.2.

The passed arrays can be empty to use all default parameters, or can contain one or more parameter settings. They must be matched in length. Processing will stop at the first NULL entry in the keywords array. Also, if the values entry associated with a non-NULL keywords entry is NULL or an empty string, that entry is ignored and processing continues with the next pair of array entries.

When expand_dbname is non-zero, the value for the first dbname key word is checked to see if it is a connection string. If so, it is “expanded” into the individual connection parameters extracted from the string. The value is considered to be a connection string, rather than just a database name, if it contains an equal sign (=) or it begins with a URI scheme designator. (More details on connection string formats appear in Section 32.1.1.) Only the first occurrence of dbname is treated in this way; any subsequent dbname parameter is processed as a plain database name.

In general the parameter arrays are processed from start to end. If any key word is repeated, the last value (that is not NULL or empty) is used. This rule applies in particular when a key word found in a connection string conflicts with one appearing in the keywords array. Thus, the programmer may determine whether array entries can override or be overridden by values taken from a connection string. Array entries appearing before an expanded dbname entry can be overridden by fields of the connection string, and in turn those fields are overridden by array entries appearing after dbname (but, again, only if those entries supply non-empty values).

After processing all the array entries and any expanded connection string, any connection parameters that remain unset are filled with default values. If an unset parameter's corresponding environment variable (see Section 32.15) is set, its value is used. If the environment variable is not set either, then the parameter's built-in default value is used.

PQconnectdb

Makes a new connection to the database server.

PGconn *PQconnectdb(const char *conninfo);

This function opens a new database connection using the parameters taken from the string conninfo. The passed string can be empty to use all default parameters, or it can contain one or more parameter settings separated by whitespace, or it can contain a URI. See Section 32.1.1 for details.

PQsetdbLogin

Makes a new connection to the database server.

PGconn *PQsetdbLogin(const char *pghost,
  const char *pgport,
  const char *pgoptions,
  const char *pgtty,
  const char *dbName,
  const char *login,
  const char *pwd);

This is the predecessor of PQconnectdb with a fixed set of parameters. It has the same functionality except that the missing parameters will always take on default values. Write NULL or an empty string for any one of the fixed parameters that is to be defaulted.

If the dbName contains an = sign or has a valid connection URI prefix, it is taken as a conninfo string in exactly the same way as if it had been passed to PQconnectdb, and the remaining parameters are then applied as specified for PQconnectdbParams.

pgtty is no longer used and any value passed will be ignored.

PQsetdb

Makes a new connection to the database server.
libpq — C Library

PGconn *PQsetdb(char *pghost,
    char *pgport,
    char *pgoptions,
    char *pgtty,
    char *dbName);

This is a macro that calls PQsetdbLogin with null pointers for the login and pwd parameters. It is provided for backward compatibility with very old programs.

PQconnectStartParams
PQconnectStart
PQconnectPoll

Make a connection to the database server in a nonblocking manner.

PGconn *PQconnectStartParams(const char * const *keywords,
    const char * const *values,
    int expand_dbname);

PGconn *PQconnectStart(const char *conninfo);

PostgresPollingStatusType PQconnectPoll(PGconn *conn);

These three functions are used to open a connection to a database server such that your application’s thread of execution is not blocked on remote I/O whilst doing so. The point of this approach is that the waits for I/O to complete can occur in the application’s main loop, rather than down inside PQconnectdbParams or PQconnectdb, and so the application can manage this operation in parallel with other activities.

With PQconnectStartParams, the database connection is made using the parameters taken from the keywords and values arrays, and controlled by expanddbname, as described above for PQconnectdbParams.

With PQconnectStart, the database connection is made using the parameters taken from the string conninfo as described above for PQconnectdb.

Neither PQconnectStartParams nor PQconnectStart nor PQconnectPoll will block, so long as a number of restrictions are met:

- The hostaddr parameter must be used appropriately to prevent DNS queries from being made. See the documentation of this parameter in Section 32.1.2 for details.

- If you call PQtrace, ensure that the stream object into which you trace will not block.

- You must ensure that the socket is in the appropriate state before calling PQconnectPoll, as described below.

To begin a nonblocking connection request, call PQconnectStart or PQconnectStartParams. If the result is null, then libpq has been unable to allocate a new PGconn structure. Otherwise, a valid PGconn pointer is returned (though not yet representing a valid connection to the database). Next call PQstatus(conn). If the result is CONNECTION_BAD, the connection attempt has already failed, typically because of invalid connection parameters.

If PQconnectStart or PQconnectStartParams succeeds, the next stage is to poll libpq so that it can proceed with the connection sequence. Use PQsocket(conn) to obtain the descriptor of the socket underlying the database connection. (Caution: do not assume that the socket remains the same across PQconnectPoll calls.) Loop thus: If PQconnectPoll(conn) last returned PGRES_POLLING_READING, wait until the socket is ready to read (as indicated by select(), poll(), or similar system function). Then call PQconnectPoll(conn) again. Conversely, if PQconnectPoll(conn) last returned PGRES_POLLING_WRITING, wait until the socket is ready to write, then call PQconnectPoll(conn)
again. On the first iteration, i.e., if you have yet to call PQconnectPoll, behave as if it last returned PGRES_POLLING_WRITING. Continue this loop until PQconnectPoll(conn) returns PGRES_POLLING_FAILED, indicating the connection procedure has failed, or PGRES_POLLING_OK, indicating the connection has been successfully made.

At any time during connection, the status of the connection can be checked by calling PQstatus. If this call returns CONNECTION_BAD, then the connection procedure has failed; if the call returns CONNECTION_OK, then the connection is ready. Both of these states are equally detectable from the return value of PQconnectPoll, described above. Other states might also occur during (and only during) an asynchronous connection procedure. These indicate the current stage of the connection procedure and might be useful to provide feedback to the user for example. These statuses are:

- **CONNECTION_STARTED**
  Waiting for connection to be made.

- **CONNECTION_MADE**
  Connection OK; waiting to send.

- **CONNECTION_AWAITING_RESPONSE**
  Waiting for a response from the server.

- **CONNECTION_AUTH_OK**
  Received authentication; waiting for backend start-up to finish.

- **CONNECTION_SSL_STARTUP**
  Negotiating SSL encryption.

- **CONNECTION_SETENV**
  Negotiating environment-driven parameter settings.

- **CONNECTION_CHECK_WRITABLE**
  Checking if connection is able to handle write transactions.

- **CONNECTION_CONSUME**
  Consuming any remaining response messages on connection.

Note that, although these constants will remain (in order to maintain compatibility), an application should never rely upon these occurring in a particular order, or at all, or on the status always being one of these documented values. An application might do something like this:

```c
switch(PQstatus(conn))
{
    case CONNECTION_STARTED:
        feedback = "Connecting...";
        break;

    case CONNECTION_MADE:
        feedback = "Connected to server...";
        break;

    .
    .
    .

    default:
        feedback = "Connecting...";
}
```
The `connect_timeout` connection parameter is ignored when using `PQconnectPoll`; it is the application's responsibility to decide whether an excessive amount of time has elapsed. Otherwise, `PQconnectStart` followed by a `PQconnectPoll` loop is equivalent to `PQconnectdb`.

Note that when `PQconnectStart` or `PQconnectStartParams` returns a non-null pointer, you must call `PQfinish` when you are finished with it, in order to dispose of the structure and any associated memory blocks. This must be done even if the connection attempt fails or is abandoned.

**PQconndefaults**

Returns the default connection options.

```c
PQconninfoOption *PQconndefaults(void);
```

```c
typedef struct
{
    char    *keyword;   /* The keyword of the option */
    char    *envvar;    /* Fallback environment variable name */
    char    *compiled;  /* Fallback compiled in default value */
    char    *val;       /* Option's current value, or NULL */
    char    *label;     /* Label for field in connect dialog */
    char    *dispchar;  /* Indicates how to display this field
                        in a connect dialog. Values are:
                        ""    Display entered value as is
                        "*"   Password field - hide value
                        "D"   Debug option - don't show by default */
    int     dispsize;   /* Field size in characters for dialog */
} PQconninfoOption;
```

Returns a connection options array. This can be used to determine all possible `PQconnectdb` options and their current default values. The return value points to an array of `PQconninfoOption` structures, which ends with an entry having a null `keyword` pointer. The null pointer is returned if memory could not be allocated. Note that the current default values (`val` fields) will depend on environment variables and other context. A missing or invalid service file will be silently ignored. Callers must treat the connection options data as read-only.

After processing the options array, free it by passing it to `PQconninfoFree`. If this is not done, a small amount of memory is leaked for each call to `PQconndefaults`.

**PQconninfo**

Returns the connection options used by a live connection.

```c
PQconninfoOption *PQconninfo(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns a connection options array. This can be used to determine all possible `PQconnectdb` options and the values that were used to connect to the server. The return value points to an array of `PQconninfoOption` structures, which ends with an entry having a null `keyword` pointer. All notes above for `PQconndefaults` also apply to the result of `PQconninfo`.

**PQconninfoParse**

Returns parsed connection options from the provided connection string.

```c
PQconninfoOption *PQconninfoParse(const char *conninfo, char **errmsg);
```

 Parses a connection string and returns the resulting options as an array; or returns NULL if there is a problem with the connection string. This function can be used to extract the `PQconnectdb` options in the provided connection string. The return value points to an array of `PQconninfoOption` structures, which ends with an entry having a null `keyword` pointer. All legal options will be present in the result array, but the `PQconninfoOption` for any option not present in the connection string will have `val` set to NULL; default values are not inserted.
If `errmsg` is not NULL, then `*errmsg` is set to NULL on success, else to a malloc'd error string explaining the problem. (It is also possible for `*errmsg` to be set to NULL and the function to return NULL; this indicates an out-of-memory condition.)

After processing the options array, free it by passing it to `PQconninfoFree`. If this is not done, some memory is leaked for each call to `PQconninfoParse`. Conversely, if an error occurs and `errmsg` is not NULL, be sure to free the error string using `PQfreemem`.

PQfinish

Closes the connection to the server. Also frees memory used by the PGconn object.

```c
void PQfinish(PGconn *conn);
```

Note that even if the server connection attempt fails (as indicated by `PQstatus`), the application should call `PQfinish` to free the memory used by the PGconn object. The PGconn pointer must not be used again after `PQfinish` has been called.

PQreset

Resets the communication channel to the server.

```c
void PQreset(PGconn *conn);
```

This function will close the connection to the server and attempt to establish a new connection, using all the same parameters previously used. This might be useful for error recovery if a working connection is lost.

PQresetStart

PQresetPoll

Reset the communication channel to the server, in a nonblocking manner:

```c
int PQresetStart(PGconn *conn);

PostgresPollingStatusType PQresetPoll(PGconn *conn);
```

These functions will close the connection to the server and attempt to establish a new connection, using all the same parameters previously used. This can be useful for error recovery if a working connection is lost. They differ from `PQreset` (above) in that they act in a nonblocking manner. These functions suffer from the same restrictions as `PQconnectStartParams`, `PQconnectStart` and `PQconnectPoll`.

To initiate a connection reset, call `PQresetStart`. If it returns 0, the reset has failed. If it returns 1, poll the reset using `PQresetPoll` in exactly the same way as you would create the connection using `PQconnectPoll`.

PQpingParams

`PQpingParams` reports the status of the server. It accepts connection parameters identical to those of `PQconnectdbParams`, described above. It is not necessary to supply correct user name, password, or database name values to obtain the server status; however, if incorrect values are provided, the server will log a failed connection attempt.

```c
PGPing PQpingParams(const char * const *keywords,
                    const char * const *values,
                    int expand_dbname);
```

The function returns one of the following values:

- `PQPING_OK` The server is running and appears to be accepting connections.
PQPING_REJECT

The server is running but is in a state that disallows connections (startup, shutdown, or crash recovery).

PQPING_NO_RESPONSE

The server could not be contacted. This might indicate that the server is not running, or that there is something wrong with the given connection parameters (for example, wrong port number), or that there is a network connectivity problem (for example, a firewall blocking the connection request).

PQPING_NO_ATTEMPT

No attempt was made to contact the server, because the supplied parameters were obviously incorrect or there was some client-side problem (for example, out of memory).

PQping

PQping reports the status of the server. It accepts connection parameters identical to those of PQconnectdb, described above. It is not necessary to supply correct user name, password, or database name values to obtain the server status; however, if incorrect values are provided, the server will log a failed connection attempt.

PQping(PQping(const char *conninfo);

The return values are the same as for PQpingParams.

PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL

PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL lets an application override libpq's default handling of encrypted client certificate key files using sslpassword or interactive prompting.

void PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL(PQsslKeyPassHook_OpenSSL_type hook);

The application passes a pointer to a callback function with signature:

int callback_fn(char *buf, int size, PGconn *conn);

which libpq will then call instead of its default PQdefaultSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL handler. The callback should determine the password for the key and copy it to result-buffer buf of size size. The string in buf must be null-terminated. The callback must return the length of the password stored in buf excluding the null terminator. On failure, the callback should set buf[0] = '\0' and return 0. See PQdefaultSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL in libpq's source code for an example.

If the user specified an explicit key location, its path will be in conn->sslkey when the callback is invoked. This will be empty if the default key path is being used. For keys that are engine specifiers, it is up to engine implementations whether they use the OpenSSL password callback or define their own handling.

The app callback may choose to delegate unhandled cases to PQdefaultSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL, or call it first and try something else if it returns 0, or completely override it.

The callback must not escape normal flow control with exceptions, longjmp(...), etc. It must return normally.

PQgetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL

PQgetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL returns the current client certificate key password hook, or NULL if none has been set.

PQsslKeyPassHook_OpenSSL_type PQgetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL(void);

32.1.1. Connection Strings
Several libpq functions parse a user-specified string to obtain connection parameters. There are two accepted formats for these strings: plain keyword/value strings and URIs. URIs generally follow RFC 3986, except that multi-host connection strings are allowed as further described below.

### 32.1.1.1. Keyword/Value Connection Strings

In the keyword/value format, each parameter setting is in the form `keyword = value`, with space(s) between settings. Spaces around a setting's equal sign are optional. To write an empty value, or a value containing spaces, surround it with single quotes, for example `keyword = 'a value'`. Single quotes and backslashes within a value must be escaped with a backslash, i.e., `\'` and `\`.  

Example:

```
host=localhost port=5432 dbname=mydb connect_timeout=10
```

The recognized parameter key words are listed in Section 32.1.2.

### 32.1.1.2. Connection URIs

The general form for a connection URI is:

```
postgresql://[userspec@[hostspec] [/dbname][?paramspec]
```

where `userspec` is:

```
user[:password]
```

and `hostspec` is:

```
[host[:port][,...]
```

and `paramspec` is:

```
name=value[&...]
```

The URI scheme designator can be either `postgresql://` or `postgres://`. Each of the remaining URI parts is optional. The following examples illustrate valid URI syntax:

```
postgresql://
postgresql://localhost
postgresql://localhost:5433
postgresql://localhost/mydb
postgresql://user@localhost
postgresql://user:secret@localhost
postgresql://other@localhost/otherdb?connect_timeout=10&application_name=myapp
postgresql://host1:123,host2:456/somedb?target_session_attrs=any&application_name=myapp
```

Values that would normally appear in the hierarchical part of the URI can alternatively be given as named parameters. For example:

```
postgresql:///mydb?host=localhost&port=5433
```

All named parameters must match key words listed in Section 32.1.2, except that for compatibility with JDBC connection URIs, instances of `ssl=true` are translated into `sslmode=require`.

The connection URI needs to be encoded with percent-encoding if it includes symbols with special meaning in any of its parts. Here is an example where the equal sign (=) is replaced with `%3D` and the space character with `%20`:

```
postgresql://user@localhost:5433/mydb?options=-c%20synchronous_commit%3Doff
```

The host part may be either a host name or an IP address. To specify an IPv6 address, enclose it in square brackets:
The host part is interpreted as described for the parameter host. In particular, a Unix-domain socket connection is chosen if the host part is either empty or looks like an absolute path name, otherwise a TCP/IP connection is initiated. Note, however, that the slash is a reserved character in the hierarchical part of the URI. So, to specify a non-standard Unix-domain socket directory, either omit the host part of the URI and specify the host as a named parameter, or percent-encode the path in the host part of the URI:

```
postgresql:///dbname?host=/var/lib/postgresql
postgresql://%2Fvar%2Flib%2Fpostgresql/dbname
```

It is possible to specify multiple host components, each with an optional port component, in a single URI. A URI of the form `postgresql://host1:port1,host2:port2,host3:port3/` is equivalent to a connection string of the form `host=host1,host2,host3 port=port1,port2,port3`. As further described below, each host will be tried in turn until a connection is successfully established.

### 32.1.1.3. Specifying Multiple Hosts

It is possible to specify multiple hosts to connect to, so that they are tried in the given order. In the Keyword/Value format, the `host`, `hostaddr`, and `port` options accept comma-separated lists of values. The same number of elements must be given in each option that is specified, such that e.g., the first `hostaddr` corresponds to the first host name, the second `hostaddr` corresponds to the second host name, and so forth. As an exception, if only one `port` is specified, it applies to all the hosts.

In the connection URI format, you can list multiple `host:port` pairs separated by commas in the `host` component of the URI.

In either format, a single host name can translate to multiple network addresses. A common example of this is a host that has both an IPv4 and an IPv6 address.

When multiple hosts are specified, or when a single host name is translated to multiple addresses, all the hosts and addresses will be tried in order, until one succeeds. If none of the hosts can be reached, the connection fails. If a connection is established successfully, but authentication fails, the remaining hosts in the list are not tried.

If a password file is used, you can have different passwords for different hosts. All the other connection options are the same for every host in the list; it is not possible to e.g., specify different usernames for different hosts.

### 32.1.2. Parameter Key Words

The currently recognized parameter key words are:

**host**

Name of host to connect to. If a host name looks like an absolute path name, it specifies Unix-domain communication rather than TCP/IP communication; the value is the name of the directory in which the socket file is stored. (On Unix, an absolute path name begins with a slash. On Windows, paths starting with drive letters are also recognized.) If the host name starts with `@`, it is taken as a Unix-domain socket in the abstract namespace (currently supported on Linux and Windows). The default behavior when host is not specified, or is empty, is to connect to a Unix-domain socket in `/tmp` (or whatever socket directory was specified when Postgres Pro was built). On Windows and on machines without Unix-domain sockets, the default is to connect to `localhost`.

A comma-separated list of host names is also accepted, in which case each host name in the list is tried in order; an empty item in the list selects the default behavior as explained above. See Section 32.1.1.3 for details.

**hostaddr**

Numeric IP address of host to connect to. This should be in the standard IPv4 address format, e.g., `172.28.40.9`. If your machine supports IPv6, you can also use those addresses. TCP/IP
communication is always used when a nonempty string is specified for this parameter. If this
parameter is not specified, the value of host will be looked up to find the corresponding IP address
—or, if host specifies an IP address, that value will be used directly.

Using hostaddr allows the application to avoid a host name look-up, which might be important
in applications with time constraints. However, a host name is required for GSSAPI or SSPI
authentication methods, as well as for verify-full SSL certificate verification. The following rules
are used:

- If host is specified without hostaddr, a host name lookup occurs. (When using PQconnectPoll,
  the lookup occurs when PQconnectPoll first considers this host name, and it may cause
  PQconnectPoll to block for a significant amount of time.)
- If hostaddr is specified without host, the value for hostaddr gives the server network address.
  The connection attempt will fail if the authentication method requires a host name.
- If both host and hostaddr are specified, the value for hostaddr gives the server network
  address. The value for host is ignored unless the authentication method requires it, in which
case it will be used as the host name.

Note that authentication is likely to fail if host is not the name of the server at network address
hostaddr. Also, when both host and hostaddr are specified, host is used to identify the connection
in a password file (see Section 32.16).

A comma-separated list of hostaddr values is also accepted, in which case each host in the list is
tried in order. An empty item in the list causes the corresponding host name to be used, or the default
host name if that is empty as well. See Section 32.1.1.3 for details.

Without either a host name or host address, libpq will connect using a local Unix-domain socket; or
on Windows and on machines without Unix-domain sockets, it will attempt to connect to localhost.

**port**

Port number to connect to at the server host, or socket file name extension for Unix-domain
connections. If multiple hosts were given in the host or hostaddr parameters, this parameter may
specify a comma-separated list of ports of the same length as the host list, or it may specify a single
port number to be used for all hosts. An empty string, or an empty item in a comma-separated list,
specifies the default port number established when Postgres Pro was built.

**dbname**

The database name. Defaults to be the same as the user name. In certain contexts, the value is
checked for extended formats; see Section 32.1.1 for more details on those.

**user**

Postgres Pro user name to connect as. Defaults to be the same as the operating system name of the
user running the application.

**password**

Password to be used if the server demands password authentication.

**passfile**

Specifies the name of the file used to store passwords (see Section 32.16). Defaults to ~/.pgpass, or
%APPDATA%\postgresql\pgpass.conf on Microsoft Windows. (No error is reported if this file does
not exist.)

**channel_binding**

This option controls the client’s use of channel binding. A setting of require means that the
connection must employ channel binding, prefer means that the client will choose channel binding
if available, and disable prevents the use of channel binding. The default is prefer if PostgreSQL
is compiled with SSL support; otherwise the default is disable.
Channel binding is a method for the server to authenticate itself to the client. It is only supported over SSL connections with PostgreSQL 11 or later servers using the SCRAM authentication method.

**connect_timeout**

Maximum time to wait while connecting, in seconds (write as a decimal integer, e.g., 10). Zero, negative, or not specified means wait indefinitely. The minimum allowed timeout is 2 seconds, therefore a value of 1 is interpreted as 2. This timeout applies separately to each host name or IP address. For example, if you specify two hosts and connect_timeout is 5, each host will time out if no connection is made within 5 seconds, so the total time spent waiting for a connection might be up to 10 seconds.

**client_encoding**

This sets the client_encoding configuration parameter for this connection. In addition to the values accepted by the corresponding server option, you can use auto to determine the right encoding from the current locale in the client (LC_CTYPE environment variable on Unix systems).

**options**

Specifies command-line options to send to the server at connection start. For example, setting this to `-c geqo=off` sets the session's value of the geqo parameter to off. Spaces within this string are considered to separate command-line arguments, unless escaped with a backslash (`\`); write `\ ` to represent a literal backslash. For a detailed discussion of the available options, consult Chapter 18.

**application_name**

Specifies a value for the application_name configuration parameter.

**fallback_application_name**

Specifies a fallback value for the application_name configuration parameter. This value will be used if no value has been given for application_name via a connection parameter or the PGAPPNAME environment variable. Specifying a fallback name is useful in generic utility programs that wish to set a default application name but allow it to be overridden by the user.

**keepalives**

Controls whether client-side TCP keepalives are used. The default value is 1, meaning on, but you can change this to 0, meaning off, if keepalives are not wanted. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket.

**keepalives_idle**

Controls the number of seconds of inactivity after which TCP should send a keepalive message to the server. A value of zero uses the system default. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket, or if keepalives are disabled. It is only supported on systems where TCP_KEEPCNT or an equivalent socket option is available; on other systems, it has no effect.

**keepalives_interval**

Controls the number of seconds after which a TCP keepalive message that is not acknowledged by the server should be retransmitted. A value of zero uses the system default. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket, or if keepalives are disabled. It is only supported on systems where TCP_KEEPIDLE or an equivalent socket option is available, and on Windows; on other systems, it has no effect.

**keepalives_count**

Controls the number of TCP keepalives that can be lost before the client's connection to the server is considered dead. A value of zero uses the system default. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket, or if keepalives are disabled. It is only supported on systems where TCP_KEEPCNT or an equivalent socket option is available; on other systems, it has no effect.
**tcp_user_timeout**

Controls the number of milliseconds that transmitted data may remain unacknowledged before a connection is forcibly closed. A value of zero uses the system default. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket. It is only supported on systems where TCP_USER_TIMEOUT is available; on other systems, it has no effect.

**tty**

Ignored (formerly, this specified where to send server debug output).

**replication**

This option determines whether the connection should use the replication protocol instead of the normal protocol. This is what Postgres Pro replication connections as well as tools such as pg_basebackup use internally, but it can also be used by third-party applications. For a description of the replication protocol, consult Section 51.4.

The following values, which are case-insensitive, are supported:

- true, on, yes, 1
  
  The connection goes into physical replication mode.

- database
  
  The connection goes into logical replication mode, connecting to the database specified in the `dbname` parameter.

- false, off, no, 0
  
  The connection is a regular one, which is the default behavior.

In physical or logical replication mode, only the simple query protocol can be used.

**gssencmode**

This option determines whether or with what priority a secure GSS TCP/IP connection will be negotiated with the server. There are three modes:

- disable
  
  only try a non-GSSAPI-encrypted connection

- prefer (default)
  
  if there are GSSAPI credentials present (i.e., in a credentials cache), first try a GSSAPI-encrypted connection; if that fails or there are no credentials, try a non-GSSAPI-encrypted connection. This is the default when Postgres Pro has been compiled with GSSAPI support.

- require
  
  only try a GSSAPI-encrypted connection

**gssencmode** is ignored for Unix domain socket communication. If Postgres Pro is compiled without GSSAPI support, using the `require` option will cause an error, while `prefer` will be accepted but `libpq` will not actually attempt a GSSAPI-encrypted connection.

**sslmode**

This option determines whether or with what priority a secure SSL TCP/IP connection will be negotiated with the server. There are six modes:

- disable
  
  only try a non-SSL connection
allow
first try a non-SSL connection; if that fails, try an SSL connection

prefer (default)
first try an SSL connection; if that fails, try a non-SSL connection

require
only try an SSL connection. If a root CA file is present, verify the certificate in the same way as if verify-ca was specified

verify-ca
only try an SSL connection, and verify that the server certificate is issued by a trusted certificate authority (CA)

verify-full
only try an SSL connection, verify that the server certificate is issued by a trusted CA and that the requested server host name matches that in the certificate

See Section 32.19 for a detailed description of how these options work.

sslmode is ignored for Unix domain socket communication. If Postgres Pro is compiled without SSL support, using options require, verify-ca, or verify-full will cause an error, while options allow and prefer will be accepted but libpq will not actually attempt an SSL connection.

Note that if GSSAPI encryption is possible, that will be used in preference to SSL encryption, regardless of the value of sslmode. To force use of SSL encryption in an environment that has working GSSAPI infrastructure (such as a Kerberos server), also set gssencmode to disable.

requiressl
This option is deprecated in favor of the sslmode setting.

If set to 1, an SSL connection to the server is required (this is equivalent to sslmode require). libpq will then refuse to connect if the server does not accept an SSL connection. If set to 0 (default), libpq will negotiate the connection type with the server (equivalent to sslmode prefer). This option is only available if Postgres Pro is compiled with SSL support.

sslcompression
If set to 1, data sent over SSL connections will be compressed. If set to 0, compression will be disabled. The default is 0. This parameter is ignored if a connection without SSL is made.

SSL compression is nowadays considered insecure and its use is no longer recommended. OpenSSL 1.1.0 disables compression by default, and many operating system distributions disable it in prior versions as well, so setting this parameter to on will not have any effect if the server does not accept compression. PostgreSQL 14 disables compression completely in the backend.

If security is not a primary concern, compression can improve throughput if the network is the bottleneck. Disabling compression can improve response time and throughput if CPU performance is the limiting factor.

sslcert
This parameter specifies the file name of the client SSL certificate, replacing the default ~/.postgresql/postgresql.crt. This parameter is ignored if an SSL connection is not made.

sslkey
This parameter specifies the location for the secret key used for the client certificate. It can either specify a file name that will be used instead of the default ~/.postgresql/postgresql.key, or it
can specify a key obtained from an external “engine” (engines are OpenSSL loadable modules). An external engine specification should consist of a colon-separated engine name and an engine-specific key identifier. This parameter is ignored if an SSL connection is not made.

sslpassword

This parameter specifies the password for the secret key specified in sslkey, allowing client certificate private keys to be stored in encrypted form on disk even when interactive passphrase input is not practical.

Specifying this parameter with any non-empty value suppresses the Enter PEM pass phrase: prompt that OpenSSL will emit by default when an encrypted client certificate key is provided to libpq.

If the key is not encrypted this parameter is ignored. The parameter has no effect on keys specified by OpenSSL engines unless the engine uses the OpenSSL password callback mechanism for prompts.

There is no environment variable equivalent to this option, and no facility for looking it up in .pgpass. It can be used in a service file connection definition. Users with more sophisticated uses should consider using OpenSSL engines and tools like PKCS#11 or USB crypto offload devices.

sslrootcert

This parameter specifies the name of a file containing SSL certificate authority (CA) certificate(s). If the file exists, the server's certificate will be verified to be signed by one of these authorities. The default is ~/.postgresql/root.crt.

sslcrl

This parameter specifies the file name of the SSL certificate revocation list (CRL). Certificates listed in this file, if it exists, will be rejected while attempting to authenticate the server's certificate. If neither sslcrl nor sslcrldir is set, this setting is taken as ~/.postgresql/root.crl.

sslcrldir

This parameter specifies the directory name of the SSL certificate revocation list (CRL). Certificates listed in the files in this directory, if it exists, will be rejected while attempting to authenticate the server's certificate.

The directory needs to be prepared with the OpenSSL command openssl rehash or c_rehash. See its documentation for details.

Both sslcrl and sslcrldir can be specified together.

sslsni

If set to 1 (default), libpq sets the TLS extension “Server Name Indication” (SNI) on SSL-enabled connections. By setting this parameter to 0, this is turned off.

The Server Name Indication can be used by SSL-aware proxies to route connections without having to decrypt the SSL stream. (Note that this requires a proxy that is aware of the PostgreSQL protocol handshake, not just any SSL proxy.) However, SNI makes the destination host name appear in cleartext in the network traffic, so it might be undesirable in some cases.

requirepeer

This parameter specifies the operating-system user name of the server, for example requirepeer=postgres. When making a Unix-domain socket connection, if this parameter is set, the client checks at the beginning of the connection that the server process is running under the specified user name; if it is not, the connection is aborted with an error. This parameter can be used to provide server authentication similar to that available with SSL certificates on TCP/IP connections. (Note that if the Unix-domain socket is in /tmp or another publicly writable location, any user could start a server listening there. Use this parameter to ensure that you are connected to a server run by a
trusted user.) This option is only supported on platforms for which the peer authentication method is implemented; see Section 19.9.

ssl_min_protocol_version

This parameter specifies the minimum SSL/TLS protocol version to allow for the connection. Valid values are TLSv1, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2 and TLSv1.3. The supported protocols depend on the version of OpenSSL used, older versions not supporting the most modern protocol versions. If not specified, the default is TLSv1.2, which satisfies industry best practices as of this writing.

ssl_max_protocol_version

This parameter specifies the maximum SSL/TLS protocol version to allow for the connection. Valid values are TLSv1, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2 and TLSv1.3. The supported protocols depend on the version of OpenSSL used, older versions not supporting the most modern protocol versions. If not set, this parameter is ignored and the connection will use the maximum bound defined by the backend, if set. Setting the maximum protocol version is mainly useful for testing or if some component has issues working with a newer protocol.

krbsrvname

Kerberos service name to use when authenticating with GSSAPI. This must match the service name specified in the server configuration for Kerberos authentication to succeed. (See also Section 19.6.) The default value is normally postgres, but that can be changed when building PostgreSQL via the --with-krb-srvname option of configure. In most environments, this parameter never needs to be changed. Some Kerberos implementations might require a different service name, such as Microsoft Active Directory which requires the service name to be in upper case (POSTGRES).

gsslib

GSS library to use for GSSAPI authentication. Currently this is disregarded except on Windows builds that include both GSSAPI and SSPI support. In that case, set this to gssapi to cause libpq to use the GSSAPI library for authentication instead of the default SSPI.

service

Service name to use for additional parameters. It specifies a service name in pg_service.conf that holds additional connection parameters. This allows applications to specify only a service name so connection parameters can be centrally maintained. See Section 32.17.

target_session_attrs

This option determines whether the session must have certain properties to be acceptable. It's typically used in combination with multiple host names to select the first acceptable alternative among several hosts. There are six modes:

any (default)

any successful connection is acceptable

read-write

session must accept read-write transactions by default (that is, the server must not be in hot standby mode and the default_transaction_read_only parameter must be off)

read-only

session must not accept read-write transactions by default (the converse)

primary

server must not be in hot standby mode

standby

server must be in hot standby mode
prefer-standby
first try to find a standby server, but if none of the listed hosts is a standby server, try again in any mode

32.2. Connection Status Functions

These functions can be used to interrogate the status of an existing database connection object.

Tip

libpq application programmers should be careful to maintain the PGconn abstraction. Use the accessor functions described below to get at the contents of PGconn. Reference to internal PGconn fields using libpq-int.h is not recommended because they are subject to change in the future.

The following functions return parameter values established at connection. These values are fixed for the life of the connection. If a multi-host connection string is used, the values of PQhost, PQport, and PQpass can change if a new connection is established using the same PGconn object. Other values are fixed for the lifetime of the PGconn object.

PQdb
Returns the database name of the connection.

char *PQdb(const PGconn *conn);

PQuser
Returns the user name of the connection.

char *PQuser(const PGconn *conn);

PQpass
Returns the password of the connection.

char *PQpass(const PGconn *conn);

PQpass will return either the password specified in the connection parameters, or if there was none and the password was obtained from the password file, it will return that. In the latter case, if multiple hosts were specified in the connection parameters, it is not possible to rely on the result of PQpass until the connection is established. The status of the connection can be checked using the function PQstatus.

PQhost

Returns the server host name of the active connection. This can be a host name, an IP address, or a directory path if the connection is via Unix socket. (The path case can be distinguished because it will always be an absolute path, beginning with /.)

char *PQhost(const PGconn *conn);

If the connection parameters specified both host and hostaddr, then PQhost will return the host information. If only hostaddr was specified, then that is returned. If multiple hosts were specified in the connection parameters, PQhost returns the host actually connected to.

PQhost returns NULL if the conn argument is NULL. Otherwise, if there is an error producing the host information (perhaps if the connection has not been fully established or there was an error), it returns an empty string.

If multiple hosts were specified in the connection parameters, it is not possible to rely on the result of PQhost until the connection is established. The status of the connection can be checked using the function PQstatus.
libpq — C Library

PQhostaddr

Returns the server IP address of the active connection. This can be the address that a host name resolved to, or an IP address provided through the hostaddr parameter.

char *PQhostaddr(const PGconn *conn);

PQhostaddr returns NULL if the conn argument is NULL. Otherwise, if there is an error producing the host information (perhaps if the connection has not been fully established or there was an error), it returns an empty string.

PQport

Returns the port of the active connection.

char *PQport(const PGconn *conn);

If multiple ports were specified in the connection parameters, PQport returns the port actually connected to.

PQport returns NULL if the conn argument is NULL. Otherwise, if there is an error producing the port information (perhaps if the connection has not been fully established or there was an error), it returns an empty string.

If multiple ports were specified in the connection parameters, it is not possible to rely on the result of PQport until the connection is established. The status of the connection can be checked using the function PQstatus.

PQtty

This function no longer does anything, but it remains for backwards compatibility. The function always return an empty string, or NULL if the conn argument is NULL.

char *PQtty(const PGconn *conn);

PQoptions

Returns the command-line options passed in the connection request.

char *PQoptions(const PGconn *conn);

The following functions return status data that can change as operations are executed on the PGconn object.

PQstatus

Returns the status of the connection.

ConnStatusType PQstatus(const PGconn *conn);

The status can be one of a number of values. However, only two of these are seen outside of an asynchronous connection procedure: CONNECTION_OK and CONNECTION_BAD. A good connection to the database has the status CONNECTION_OK. A failed connection attempt is signaled by status CONNECTION_BAD. Ordinarily, an OK status will remain so until PQfinish, but a communications failure might result in the status changing to CONNECTION_BAD prematurely. In that case the application could try to recover by calling PQreset.

See the entry for PQconnectStartParams, PQconnectStart and PQconnectPoll with regards to other status codes that might be returned.

PQtransactionStatus

Returns the current in-transaction status of the server.

PGTransactionStatusType PQtransactionStatus(const PGconn *conn);
The status can be PQTRANS_IDLE (currently idle), PQTRANS_ACTIVE (a command is in progress), PQTRANS_INTRANS (idle, in a valid transaction block), or PQTRANS_INERROR (idle, in a failed transaction block). PQTRANS_UNKNOWN is reported if the connection is bad. PQTRANS_ACTIVE is reported only when a query has been sent to the server and not yet completed.

PQparameterStatus

Looks up a current parameter setting of the server.

const char *PQparameterStatus(const PGconn *conn, const char *paramName);

Certain parameter values are reported by the server automatically at connection startup or whenever their values change. PQparameterStatus can be used to interrogate these settings. It returns the current value of a parameter if known, or NULL if the parameter is not known.

Parameters reported as of the current release include server_version, server_encoding, client_encoding, application_name, default_transaction_read_only, in_hot_standby, is_superuser, session_authorization, DateStyle, IntervalStyle, TimeZone, integer_datetimes, and standard_conforming_strings. (server_encoding, TimeZone, and integer_datetimes were not reported by releases before 8.0; standard_conforming_strings was not reported by releases before 8.1; IntervalStyle was not reported by releases before 8.4; application_name was not reported by releases before 9.0; default_transaction_read_only and in_hot_standby were not reported by releases before 14.) Note that server_version, server_encoding and integer_datetimes cannot change after startup.

If no value for standard_conforming_strings is reported, applications can assume it is off, that is, backslashes are treated as escapes in string literals. Also, the presence of this parameter can be taken as an indication that the escape string syntax (E'...'') is accepted.

Although the returned pointer is declared const, it in fact points to mutable storage associated with the PGconn structure. It is unwise to assume the pointer will remain valid across queries.

PQprotocolVersion

Interrogates the frontend/backend protocol being used.

int PQprotocolVersion(const PGconn *conn);

Applications might wish to use this function to determine whether certain features are supported. Currently, the possible values are 3 (3.0 protocol), or zero (connection bad). The protocol version will not change after connection startup is complete, but it could theoretically change during a connection reset. The 3.0 protocol is supported by PostgreSQL server versions 7.4 and above.

PQserverVersion

Returns an integer representing the server version.

int PQserverVersion(const PGconn *conn);

Applications might use this function to determine the version of the database server they are connected to. The result is formed by multiplying the server's major version number by 10000 and adding the minor version number. For example, version 10.1 will be returned as 100001, and version 11.0 will be returned as 110000. Zero is returned if the connection is bad.

Prior to major version 10, Postgres Pro used three-part version numbers in which the first two parts together represented the major version. For those versions, PQserverVersion uses two digits for each part; for example version 9.1.5 will be returned as 90105, and version 9.2.0 will be returned as 90200.

Therefore, for purposes of determining feature compatibility, applications should divide the result of PQserverVersion by 100 not 10000 to determine a logical major version number. In all release series, only the last two digits differ between minor releases (bug-fix releases).
libpq — C Library

PQerrorMessage

Returns the error message most recently generated by an operation on the connection.

```c
char *PQerrorMessage(const PGconn *conn);
```

Nearly all libpq functions will set a message for `PQerrorMessage` if they fail. Note that by libpq convention, a nonempty `PQerrorMessage` result can consist of multiple lines, and will include a trailing newline. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated `PGconn` handle is passed to `PQfinish`. The result string should not be expected to remain the same across operations on the `PGconn` structure.

PQsocket

Obtains the file descriptor number of the connection socket to the server. A valid descriptor will be greater than or equal to 0; a result of -1 indicates that no server connection is currently open. (This will not change during normal operation, but could change during connection setup or reset.)

```c
int PQsocket(const PGconn *conn);
```

PQbackendPID

Returns the process ID (PID) of the backend process handling this connection.

```c
int PQbackendPID(const PGconn *conn);
```

The backend PID is useful for debugging purposes and for comparison to NOTIFY messages (which include the PID of the notifying backend process). Note that the PID belongs to a process executing on the database server host, not the local host!

PQconnectionNeedsPassword

Returns true (1) if the connection authentication method required a password, but none was available. Returns false (0) if not.

```c
int PQconnectionNeedsPassword(const PGconn *conn);
```

This function can be applied after a failed connection attempt to decide whether to prompt the user for a password.

PQconnectionUsedPassword

Returns true (1) if the connection authentication method used a password. Returns false (0) if not.

```c
int PQconnectionUsedPassword(const PGconn *conn);
```

This function can be applied after either a failed or successful connection attempt to detect whether the server demanded a password.

The following functions return information related to SSL. This information usually doesn't change after a connection is established.

PQsslInUse

Returns true (1) if the connection uses SSL, false (0) if not.

```c
int PQsslInUse(const PGconn *conn);
```

PQsslAttribute

Returns SSL-related information about the connection.

```c
const char *PQsslAttribute(const PGconn *conn, const char *attribute_name);
```

The list of available attributes varies depending on the SSL library being used, and the type of connection. If an attribute is not available, returns NULL.

The following attributes are commonly available:
**PQsslAttributeNames**

Return an array of SSL attribute names available. The array is terminated by a NULL pointer.

```c
const char * const * PQsslAttributeNames(const PGconn *conn);
```

**PQsslStruct**

Return a pointer to an SSL-implementation-specific object describing the connection.

```c
void *PQsslStruct(const PGconn *conn, const char *struct_name);
```

The struct(s) available depend on the SSL implementation in use. For OpenSSL, there is one struct, available under the name "OpenSSL", and it returns a pointer to the OpenSSL SSL struct. To use this function, code along the following lines could be used:

```c
#include <libpq-fe.h>
#include <openssl/ssl.h>
...
SSL *ssl;

dbconn = PQconnectdb(...);
...
ssl = PQsslStruct(dbconn, "OpenSSL");
if (ssl)
{ /* use OpenSSL functions to access ssl */
}
```

This structure can be used to verify encryption levels, check server certificates, and more. Refer to the OpenSSL documentation for information about this structure.

**PQgetssl**

Returns the SSL structure used in the connection, or null if SSL is not in use.

```c
void *PQgetssl(const PGconn *conn);
```

This function is equivalent to `PQsslStruct(conn, "OpenSSL")`. It should not be used in new applications, because the returned struct is specific to OpenSSL and will not be available if another

---

**library**

Name of the SSL implementation in use. (Currently, only "OpenSSL" is implemented)

**protocol**

SSL/TLS version in use. Common values are "TLSv1", "TLSv1.1" and "TLSv1.2", but an implementation may return other strings if some other protocol is used.

**key_bits**

Number of key bits used by the encryption algorithm.

**cipher**

A short name of the ciphersuite used, e.g., "DHE-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA". The names are specific to each SSL implementation.

**compression**

If SSL compression is in use, returns the name of the compression algorithm, or "on" if compression is used but the algorithm is not known. If compression is not in use, returns "off".
SSL implementation is used. To check if a connection uses SSL, call `PQsslInUse` instead, and for more details about the connection, use `PQsslAttribute`.

### 32.3. Command Execution Functions

Once a connection to a database server has been successfully established, the functions described here are used to perform SQL queries and commands.

#### 32.3.1. Main Functions

**PQexec**

Submits a command to the server and waits for the result.

```c
PGresult *PQexec(PGconn *conn, const char *command);
```

Returns a `PGresult` pointer or possibly a null pointer. A non-null pointer will generally be returned except in out-of-memory conditions or serious errors such as inability to send the command to the server. The `PQresultStatus` function should be called to check the return value for any errors (including the value of a null pointer, in which case it will return `PGRES_FATAL_ERROR`). Use `PQerrorMessage` to get more information about such errors.

The command string can include multiple SQL commands (separated by semicolons). Multiple queries sent in a single `PQexec` call are processed in a single transaction, unless there are explicit `BEGIN`/`COMMIT` commands included in the query string to divide it into multiple transactions. (See Section 51.2.2.1 for more details about how the server handles multi-query strings.) Note however that the returned `PGresult` structure describes only the result of the last command executed from the string. Should one of the commands fail, processing of the string stops with it and the returned `PGresult` describes the error condition.

**PQexecParams**

Submits a command to the server and waits for the result, with the ability to pass parameters separately from the SQL command text.

```c
PGresult *PQexecParams(PGconn *conn, const char *command,
   const Oid *paramTypes,
   const char *const *paramValues,
   const int *paramLengths,
   const int *paramFormats,
   int resultFormat);
```

`PQexecParams` is like `PQexec`, but offers additional functionality: parameter values can be specified separately from the command string proper, and query results can be requested in either text or binary format.

The function arguments are:

- **conn**
  
  The connection object to send the command through.

- **command**
  
  The SQL command string to be executed. If parameters are used, they are referred to in the command string as $1, $2, etc.

- **nParams**
  
  The number of parameters supplied; it is the length of the arrays `paramTypes[]`, `paramValues[]`, `paramLengths[]`, and `paramFormats[]`. (The array pointers can be `NULL` when `nParams` is zero.)
The primary advantage of `PQexecParams` over `PQexec` is that parameter values can be separated from the command string, thus avoiding the need for tedious and error-prone quoting and escaping.

Unlike `PQexec`, `PQexecParams` allows at most one SQL command in the given string. (There can be semicolons in it, but not more than one nonempty command.) This is a limitation of the underlying protocol, but has some usefulness as an extra defense against SQL-injection attacks.

### Tip

Specifying parameter types via OIDs is tedious, particularly if you prefer not to hard-wire particular OID values into your program. However, you can avoid doing so even in cases where the server by itself cannot determine the type of the parameter, or chooses a different type than you want. In the SQL command text, attach an explicit cast to the parameter symbol to show what data type you will send. For example:

```sql
SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE x = $1::bigint;
```

This forces parameter $1 to be treated as bigint, whereas by default it would be assigned the same type as $x. Forcing the parameter type decision, either this way or by specifying a numeric type OID, is strongly recommended when sending parameter values in binary format, because binary format has less redundancy than text format and so there is less chance that the server will detect a type mismatch mistake for you.
libpq — C Library

```
const char *query,
int nParams,
const Oid *paramTypes);
```

PQprepare creates a prepared statement for later execution with PQexecPrepared. This feature allows commands to be executed repeatedly without being parsed and planned each time; see PREPARE for details.

The function creates a prepared statement named `stmtName` from the `query` string, which must contain a single SQL command. `stmtName` can be "" to create an unnamed statement, in which case any pre-existing unnamed statement is automatically replaced; otherwise it is an error if the statement name is already defined in the current session. If any parameters are used, they are referred to in the query as \$1, \$2, etc. `nParams` is the number of parameters for which types are pre-specified in the array `paramTypes[]`. (The array pointer can be NULL when `nParams` is zero.) `paramTypes[]` specifies, by OID, the data types to be assigned to the parameter symbols. If `paramTypes` is NULL, or any particular element in the array is zero, the server assigns a data type to the parameter symbol in the same way it would do for an untyped literal string. Also, the query can use parameter symbols with numbers higher than `nParams`; data types will be inferred for these symbols as well. (See PQdescribePrepared for a means to find out what data types were inferred.)

As with PQexec, the result is normally a PGresult object whose contents indicate server-side success or failure. A null result indicates out-of-memory or inability to send the command at all. Use PQerrorMessage to get more information about such errors.

Prepared statements for use with PQexecPrepared can also be created by executing SQL PREPARE statements. Also, although there is no libpq function for deleting a prepared statement, the SQL DEALLOCATE statement can be used for that purpose.

PQexecPrepared

```
PGresult *PQexecPrepared(PGconn *conn,
    const char *stmtName,
    int nParams,
    const char * const *paramValues,
    const int *paramLengths,
    const int *paramFormats,
    int resultFormat);
```

PQexecPrepared is like PQexecParams, but the command to be executed is specified by naming a previously-prepared statement, instead of giving a query string. This feature allows commands that will be used repeatedly to be parsed and planned just once, rather than each time they are executed. The statement must have been prepared previously in the current session.

The parameters are identical to PQexecParams, except that the name of a prepared statement is given instead of a query string, and the `paramTypes[]` parameter is not present (it is not needed since the prepared statement’s parameter types were determined when it was created).

PQdescribePrepared

```
PGresult *PQdescribePrepared(PGconn *conn, const char *stmtName);
```

PQdescribePrepared allows an application to obtain information about a previously prepared statement.

`stmtName` can be "" or NULL to reference the unnamed statement, otherwise it must be the name of an existing prepared statement. On success, a PGresult with status PGRES_COMMAND_OK is returned.
The functions `PQnparams` and `PQparamtype` can be applied to this `PGresult` to obtain information about the parameters of the prepared statement, and the functions `PQnfields`, `PQfname`, `PQftype`, etc provide information about the result columns (if any) of the statement.

`PQdescribePortal`

Submits a request to obtain information about the specified portal, and waits for completion.

```c
PGresult *PQdescribePortal(PGconn *conn, const char *portalName);
```

`PQdescribePortal` allows an application to obtain information about a previously created portal. (libpq does not provide any direct access to portals, but you can use this function to inspect the properties of a cursor created with a `DECLARE CURSOR` SQL command.)

`portalName` can be "" or NULL to reference the unnamed portal, otherwise it must be the name of an existing portal. On success, a `PGresult` with status `PGRES_COMMAND_OK` is returned. The functions `PQnfields`, `PQfname`, `PQftype`, etc can be applied to the `PGresult` to obtain information about the result columns (if any) of the portal.

The `PGresult` structure encapsulates the result returned by the server. libpq application programmers should be careful to maintain the `PGresult` abstraction. Use the accessor functions below to get at the contents of `PGresult`. Avoid directly referencing the fields of the `PGresult` structure because they are subject to change in the future.

`PQresultStatus`

Returns the result status of the command.

```c
ExecStatusType PQresultStatus(const PGresult *res);
```

`PQresultStatus` can return one of the following values:

- `PGRES_EMPTY_QUERY`: The string sent to the server was empty.
- `PGRES_COMMAND_OK`: Successful completion of a command returning no data.
- `PGRES_TUPLES_OK`: Successful completion of a command returning data (such as a `SELECT` or `SHOW`).
- `PGRES_COPY_OUT`: Copy Out (from server) data transfer started.
- `PGRES_COPY_IN`: Copy In (to server) data transfer started.
- `PGRES_BAD_RESPONSE`: The server's response was not understood.
- `PGRES_NONFATAL_ERROR`: A nonfatal error (a notice or warning) occurred.
- `PGRES_FATAL_ERROR`: A fatal error occurred.
- `PGRES_COPY_BOTH`: Copy In/Out (to and from server) data transfer started. This feature is currently used only for streaming replication, so this status should not occur in ordinary applications.
PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE

The PGresult contains a single result tuple from the current command. This status occurs only when single-row mode has been selected for the query (see Section 32.6).

PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC

The PGresult represents a synchronization point in pipeline mode, requested by PQpipelineSync. This status occurs only when pipeline mode has been selected.

PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED

The PGresult represents a pipeline that has received an error from the server. PQgetResult must be called repeatedly, and each time it will return this status code until the end of the current pipeline, at which point it will return PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC and normal processing can resume.

If the result status is PGRES_TUPLES_OK or PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE, then the functions described below can be used to retrieve the rows returned by the query. Note that a select command that happens to retrieve zero rows still shows PGRES_TUPLES_OK. PGRES_COMMAND_OK is for commands that can never return rows (INSERT or UPDATE without a RETURNING clause, etc.). A response of PGRES_EMPTY_QUERY might indicate a bug in the client software.

A result of status PGRES_NONFATAL_ERROR will never be returned directly by PQexec or other query execution functions; results of this kind are instead passed to the notice processor (see Section 32.13).

PQresStatus

Conversion of the enumerated type returned by PQresultStatus into a string constant describing the status code. The caller should not free the result.

cchar *PQresStatus(ExecStatusType status);

PQresultErrorMessage

Returns the error message associated with the command, or an empty string if there was no error.

cchar *PQresultErrorMessage(const PGresult *res);

If there was an error, the returned string will include a trailing newline. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated PGresult handle is passed to PQclear.

Immediately following a PQexec or PQgetResult call, PQerrorMessage (on the connection) will return the same string as PQresultErrorMessage (on the result). However, a PGresult will retain its error message until destroyed, whereas the connection's error message will change when subsequent operations are done. Use PQresultErrorMessage when you want to know the status associated with a particular PGresult; use PQerrorMessage when you want to know the status from the latest operation on the connection.

PQresultVerboseErrorMessage

Returns a reformatted version of the error message associated with a PGresult object.

cchar *PQresultVerboseErrorMessage(const PGresult *res,
                           PGVerbosity verbosity,
                           PGContextVisibility show_context);

In some situations a client might wish to obtain a more detailed version of a previously-reported error. PQresultVerboseErrorMessage addresses this need by computing the message that would have been produced by PQresultErrorMessage if the specified verbosity settings had been in effect for the connection when the given PGresult was generated. If the PGresult is not an error result, "PGresult is not an error result" is reported instead. The returned string includes a trailing newline.

Unlike most other functions for extracting data from a PGresult, the result of this function is a freshly allocated string. The caller must free it using PQfreemem() when the string is no longer needed.
A NULL return is possible if there is insufficient memory.

`PQresultErrorField`

Returns an individual field of an error report.

```c
char *PQresultErrorField(const PGresult *res, int fieldcode);
```

`fieldcode` is an error field identifier; see the symbols listed below. NULL is returned if the `PGresult` is not an error or warning result, or does not include the specified field. Field values will normally not include a trailing newline. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated `PGresult` handle is passed to `PQclear`.

The following field codes are available:

**PG_DIAG_SEVERITY**

The severity; the field contents are `ERROR`, `FATAL`, or `PANIC` (in an error message), or `WARNING`, `NOTICE`, `DEBUG`, `INFO`, or `LOG` (in a notice message), or a localized translation of one of these. Always present.

**PG_DIAG_SEVERITY_NONLOCALIZED**

The severity; the field contents are `ERROR`, `FATAL`, or `PANIC` (in an error message), or `WARNING`, `NOTICE`, `DEBUG`, `INFO`, or `LOG` (in a notice message). This is identical to the `PG_DIAG_SEVERITY` field except that the contents are never localized. This is present only in reports generated by Postgres Pro versions 9.6 and later.

**PG_DIAG_SQLSTATE**

The SQLSTATE code for the error. The SQLSTATE code identifies the type of error that has occurred; it can be used by front-end applications to perform specific operations (such as error handling) in response to a particular database error. For a list of the possible SQLSTATE codes, see Appendix A. This field is not localizable, and is always present.

**PG_DIAG_MESSAGE_PRIMARY**

The primary human-readable error message (typically one line). Always present.

**PG_DIAG_MESSAGE_DETAIL**

Detail: an optional secondary error message carrying more detail about the problem. Might run to multiple lines.

**PG_DIAG_MESSAGE_HINT**

Hint: an optional suggestion what to do about the problem. This is intended to differ from detail in that it offers advice (potentially inappropriate) rather than hard facts. Might run to multiple lines.

**PG_DIAG_STATEMENT_POSITION**

A string containing a decimal integer indicating an error cursor position as an index into the original statement string. The first character has index 1, and positions are measured in characters not bytes.

**PG_DIAG_INTERNAL_POSITION**

This is defined the same as the `PG_DIAG_STATEMENT_POSITION` field, but it is used when the cursor position refers to an internally generated command rather than the one submitted by the client. The `PG_DIAG_INTERNAL_QUERY` field will always appear when this field appears.

**PG_DIAG_INTERNAL_QUERY**

The text of a failed internally-generated command. This could be, for example, an SQL query issued by a PL/pgSQL function.
**Note**

The fields for schema name, table name, column name, data type name, and constraint name are supplied only for a limited number of error types; see Appendix A. Do not assume that the presence of any of these fields guarantees the presence of another field. Core error sources observe the interrelationships noted above, but user-defined functions may use these fields in other ways. In the same vein, do not assume that these fields denote contemporary objects in the current database.

The client is responsible for formatting displayed information to meet its needs; in particular it should break long lines as needed. Newline characters appearing in the error message fields should be treated as paragraph breaks, not line breaks.

Errors generated internally by libpq will have severity and primary message, but typically no other fields.

Note that error fields are only available from PGresult objects, not PGconn objects; there is no PQerrorField function.
PQclear

Frees the storage associated with a PGresult. Every command result should be freed via PQclear when it is no longer needed.

void PQclear(PGresult *res);

You can keep a PGresult object around for as long as you need it; it does not go away when you issue a new command, nor even if you close the connection. To get rid of it, you must call PQclear. Failure to do this will result in memory leaks in your application.

32.3.2. Retrieving Query Result Information

These functions are used to extract information from a PGresult object that represents a successful query result (that is, one that has status PGRES_TUPLES_OK or PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE). They can also be used to extract information from a successful Describe operation: a Describe's result has all the same column information that actual execution of the query would provide, but it has zero rows. For objects with other status values, these functions will act as though the result has zero rows and zero columns.

PQntuples

Returns the number of rows (tuples) in the query result. (Note that PGresult objects are limited to no more than INT_MAX rows, so an int result is sufficient.)

int PQntuples(const PGresult *res);

PQnfields

Returns the number of columns (fields) in each row of the query result.

int PQnfields(const PGresult *res);

PQfname

Returns the column name associated with the given column number. Column numbers start at 0. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated PGresult handle is passed to PQclear.

char *PQfname(const PGresult *res,
              int column_number);

NULL is returned if the column number is out of range.

PQfnumber

Returns the column number associated with the given column name.

int PQfnumber(const PGresult *res,
              const char *column_name);

-1 is returned if the given name does not match any column.

The given name is treated like an identifier in an SQL command, that is, it is downcased unless double-quoted. For example, given a query result generated from the SQL command:

SELECT 1 AS FOO, 2 AS "BAR";

we would have the results:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PQfname(res, 0)</td>
<td>foo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PQfname(res, 1)</td>
<td>BAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PQfnumber(res, &quot;FOO&quot;)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PQfnumber(res, &quot;foo&quot;)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PQfnumber(res, &quot;BAR&quot;)</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PQfnumber(res, &quot;&quot;BAR&quot;&quot;)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PQftable

Returns the OID of the table from which the given column was fetched. Column numbers start at 0.

```
Oid PQftable(const PGresult *res,
    int column_number);
```

InvalidOid is returned if the column number is out of range, or if the specified column is not a simple reference to a table column. You can query the system table pg_class to determine exactly which table is referenced.

The type Oid and the constant InvalidOid will be defined when you include the libpq header file. They will both be some integer type.

PQftablecol

Returns the column number (within its table) of the column making up the specified query result column. Query-result column numbers start at 0, but table columns have nonzero numbers.

```
int PQftablecol(const PGresult *res,
    int column_number);
```

Zero is returned if the column number is out of range, or if the specified column is not a simple reference to a table column.

PQfformat

Returns the format code indicating the format of the given column. Column numbers start at 0.

```
int PQfformat(const PGresult *res,
    int column_number);
```

Format code zero indicates textual data representation, while format code one indicates binary representation. (Other codes are reserved for future definition.)

PQftype

Returns the data type associated with the given column number. The integer returned is the internal OID number of the type. Column numbers start at 0.

```
Oid PQftype(const PGresult *res,
    int column_number);
```

You can query the system table pg_type to obtain the names and properties of the various data types.

PQfmod

Returns the type modifier of the column associated with the given column number. Column numbers start at 0.

```
int PQfmod(const PGresult *res,
    int column_number);
```

The interpretation of modifier values is type-specific; they typically indicate precision or size limits. The value -1 is used to indicate “no information available”. Most data types do not use modifiers, in which case the value is always -1.

PQfsize

Returns the size in bytes of the column associated with the given column number. Column numbers start at 0.

```
int PQfsize(const PGresult *res,
    int column_number);
```
**PQfsize** returns the space allocated for this column in a database row, in other words the size of the server’s internal representation of the data type. (Accordingly, it is not really very useful to clients.) A negative value indicates the data type is variable-length.

**PQbinaryTuples**

Returns 1 if the *PGresult* contains binary data and 0 if it contains text data.

```c
int PQbinaryTuples(const PGresult *res);
```

This function is deprecated (except for its use in connection with COPY), because it is possible for a single *PGresult* to contain text data in some columns and binary data in others. **PQfformat** is preferred. **PQbinaryTuples** returns 1 only if all columns of the result are binary (format 1).

**PQgetvalue**

Returns a single field value of one row of a *PGresult*. Row and column numbers start at 0. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated *PGresult* handle is passed to **PQclear**.

```c
char *PQgetvalue(const PGresult *res,
                   int row_number,
                   int column_number);
```

For data in text format, the value returned by **PQgetvalue** is a null-terminated character string representation of the field value. For data in binary format, the value is in the binary representation determined by the data type’s *typsend* and *typreceive* functions. (The value is actually followed by a zero byte in this case too, but that is not ordinarily useful, since the value is likely to contain embedded nulls.)

An empty string is returned if the field value is null. See **PQgetisnull** to distinguish null values from empty-string values.

The pointer returned by **PQgetvalue** points to storage that is part of the *PGresult* structure. One should not modify the data it points to, and one must explicitly copy the data into other storage if it is to be used past the lifetime of the *PGresult* structure itself.

**PQgetisnull**

Tests a field for a null value. Row and column numbers start at 0.

```c
int PQgetisnull(const PGresult *res,
                 int row_number,
                 int column_number);
```

This function returns 1 if the field is null and 0 if it contains a non-null value. (Note that **PQgetvalue** will return an empty string, not a null pointer, for a null field.)

**PQgetlength**

Returns the actual length of a field value in bytes. Row and column numbers start at 0.

```c
int PQgetlength(const PGresult *res,
                 int row_number,
                 int column_number);
```

This is the actual data length for the particular data value, that is, the size of the object pointed to by **PQgetvalue**. For text data format this is the same as *strlen()* . For binary format this is essential information. Note that one should not rely on **PQfsize** to obtain the actual data length.

**PQnparams**

Returns the number of parameters of a prepared statement.
int PQnparams(const PGresult *res);

This function is only useful when inspecting the result of PQdescribePrepared. For other types of queries it will return zero.

PQparamtype

Returns the data type of the indicated statement parameter. Parameter numbers start at 0.

Oid PQparamtype(const PGresult *res, int param_number);

This function is only useful when inspecting the result of PQdescribePrepared. For other types of queries it will return zero.

PQprint

Prints out all the rows and, optionally, the column names to the specified output stream.

void PQprint(FILE *fout, /* output stream */
    const PGresult *res,
    const PQprintOpt *po);

typedef struct
{
    pqbool header;          /* print output field headings and row count */
    pqbool align;           /* fill align the fields */
    pqbool standard;        /* old brain dead format */
    pqbool html3;           /* output HTML tables */
    pqbool expanded;        /* expand tables */
    pqbool pager;           /* use pager for output if needed */
    char  *fieldSep;        /* field separator */
    char  *tableOpt;        /* attributes for HTML table element */
    char  *caption;         /* HTML table caption */
    char **fieldName;       /* null-terminated array of replacement field names */
} PQprintOpt;

This function was formerly used by psql to print query results, but this is no longer the case. Note that it assumes all the data is in text format.

32.3.3. Retrieving Other Result Information

These functions are used to extract other information from PGresult objects.

PQcmdStatus

Returns the command status tag from the SQL command that generated the PGresult.

char *PQcmdStatus(PGresult *res);

Commonly this is just the name of the command, but it might include additional data such as the number of rows processed. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated PGresult handle is passed to PQclear.

PQcmdTuples

Returns the number of rows affected by the SQL command.

char *PQcmdTuples(PGresult *res);

This function returns a string containing the number of rows affected by the SQL statement that generated the PGresult. This function can only be used following the execution of a SELECT, CREATE TABLE AS, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, MOVE, FETCH, or COPY statement, or an EXECUTE of a prepared query that contains an INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement. If the command that generated the PGresult was anything else, PQcmdTuples returns an empty string. The caller should not free the return value directly. It will be freed when the associated PGresult handle is passed to PQclear.
PQoidValue
Returns the OID of the inserted row, if the SQL command was an **INSERT** that inserted exactly one row into a table that has OIDs, or a **EXECUTE** of a prepared query containing a suitable **INSERT** statement. Otherwise, this function returns **InvalidOid**. This function will also return **InvalidOid** if the table affected by the **INSERT** statement does not contain OIDs.

```c
Oid PQoidValue(const PGresult *res);
```

PQoidStatus
This function is deprecated in favor of **PQoidValue** and is not thread-safe. It returns a string with the OID of the inserted row, while **PQoidValue** returns the OID value.

```c
char *PQoidStatus(const PGresult *res);
```

### 32.3.4. Escaping Strings for Inclusion in SQL Commands

**PQescapeLiteral**

```c
char *PQescapeLiteral(PGconn *conn, const char *str, size_t length);
```

**PQescapeLiteral** escapes a string for use within an SQL command. This is useful when inserting data values as literal constants in SQL commands. Certain characters (such as quotes and backslashes) must be escaped to prevent them from being interpreted specially by the SQL parser. **PQescapeLiteral** performs this operation.

**PQescapeLiteral** returns an escaped version of the `str` parameter in memory allocated with `malloc()`. This memory should be freed using `PQfreemem()` when the result is no longer needed. A terminating zero byte is not required, and should not be counted in `length`. (If a terminating zero byte is found before `length` bytes are processed, **PQescapeLiteral** stops at the zero; the behavior is thus rather like `strncpy`.) The return string has all special characters replaced so that they can be properly processed by the Postgres Pro string literal parser. A terminating zero byte is also added. The single quotes that must surround Postgres Pro string literals are included in the result string.

On error, **PQescapeLiteral** returns NULL and a suitable message is stored in the `conn` object.

**Tip**

It is especially important to do proper escaping when handling strings that were received from an untrustworthy source. Otherwise there is a security risk: you are vulnerable to “SQL injection” attacks wherein unwanted SQL commands are fed to your database.

Note that it is neither necessary nor correct to do escaping when a data value is passed as a separate parameter in **PQexecParams** or its sibling routines.

**PQescapeIdentifier**

```c
char *PQescapeIdentifier(PGconn *conn, const char *str, size_t length);
```

**PQescapeIdentifier** escapes a string for use as an SQL identifier, such as a table, column, or function name. This is useful when a user-supplied identifier might contain special characters that would otherwise not be interpreted as part of the identifier by the SQL parser, or when the identifier might contain upper case characters whose case should be preserved.

**PQescapeIdentifier** returns a version of the `str` parameter escaped as an SQL identifier in memory allocated with `malloc()`. This memory must be freed using `PQfreemem()` when the result is no longer needed. A terminating zero byte is not required, and should not be counted in `length`. (If a terminating zero byte is found before `length` bytes are processed, **PQescapeIdentifier** stops at the zero; the behavior is thus rather like `strncpy`.) The return string has all special characters replaced so that it will be properly processed as an SQL identifier. A terminating zero byte is also added. The return string will also be surrounded by double quotes.
On error, PQescapeIdentifier returns NULL and a suitable message is stored in the conn object.

**Tip**

As with string literals, to prevent SQL injection attacks, SQL identifiers must be escaped when they are received from an untrustworthy source.

PQescapeStringConn

```
size_t PQescapeStringConn(PGconn *conn,
                           char *to, const char *from, size_t length,
                           int *error);
```

PQescapeStringConn escapes string literals, much like PQescapeLiteral. Unlike PQescapeLiteral, the caller is responsible for providing an appropriately sized buffer. Furthermore, PQescapeStringConn does not generate the single quotes that must surround Postgres Pro string literals; they should be provided in the SQL command that the result is inserted into. The parameter from points to the first character of the string that is to be escaped, and the length parameter gives the number of bytes in this string. A terminating zero byte is not required, and should not be counted in length. (If a terminating zero byte is found before length bytes are processed, PQescapeStringConn stops at the zero; the behavior is thus rather like strncpy.) to shall point to a buffer that is able to hold at least one more byte than twice the value of length, otherwise the behavior is undefined. Behavior is likewise undefined if the to and from strings overlap.

If the error parameter is not NULL, then *error is set to zero on success, nonzero on error. Presently the only possible error conditions involve invalid multibyte encoding in the source string. The output string is still generated on error, but it can be expected that the server will reject it as malformed. On error, a suitable message is stored in the conn object, whether or not error is NULL.

PQescapeStringConn returns the number of bytes written to to, not including the terminating zero byte.

PQescapeString

```
size_t PQescapeString (char *to, const char *from, size_t length);
```

PQescapeString is an older, deprecated version of PQescapeStringConn.

The only difference from PQescapeStringConn is that PQescapeString does not take PGconn or error parameters. Because of this, it cannot adjust its behavior depending on the connection properties (such as character encoding) and therefore it might give the wrong results. Also, it has no way to report error conditions.

PQescapeString can be used safely in client programs that work with only one Postgres Pro connection at a time (in this case it can find out what it needs to know “behind the scenes”). In other contexts it is a security hazard and should be avoided in favor of PQescapeStringConn.

PQescapeByteaConn

Escapes binary data for use within an SQL command with the type bytea. As with PQescapeStringConn, this is only used when inserting data directly into an SQL command string.

```
unsigned char *PQescapeByteaConn(PGconn *conn,
                                 const unsigned char *from,
                                 size_t from_length,
                                 size_t *to_length);
```

Certain byte values must be escaped when used as part of a bytea literal in an SQL statement. PQescapeByteaConn escapes bytes using either hex encoding or backslash escaping. See Section 8.4 for more information.
The `from` parameter points to the first byte of the string that is to be escaped, and the `from_length` parameter gives the number of bytes in this binary string. (A terminating zero byte is neither necessary nor counted.) The `to_length` parameter points to a variable that will hold the resultant escaped string length. This result string length includes the terminating zero byte of the result.

`PQescapeByteaConn` returns an escaped version of the `from` parameter binary string in memory allocated with `malloc()`. This memory should be freed using `PQfreemem()` when the result is no longer needed. The return string has all special characters replaced so that they can be properly processed by the Postgres Pro string literal parser, and the `bytea` input function. A terminating zero byte is also added. The single quotes that must surround Postgres Pro string literals are not part of the result string.

On error, a null pointer is returned, and a suitable error message is stored in the `conn` object. Currently, the only possible error is insufficient memory for the result string.

`PQescapeBytea` is an older, deprecated version of `PQescapeByteaConn`.

```c
unsigned char *PQescapeBytea(const unsigned char *from, size_t from_length, size_t *to_length);
```

The only difference from `PQescapeByteaConn` is that `PQescapeBytea` does not take a `PGconn` parameter. Because of this, `PQescapeBytea` can only be used safely in client programs that use a single Postgres Pro connection at a time (in this case it can find out what it needs to know “behind the scenes”). It might give the wrong results if used in programs that use multiple database connections (use `PQescapeByteaConn` in such cases).

`PQunescapeBytea` Converts a string representation of binary data into binary data — the reverse of `PQescapeBytea`. This is needed when retrieving `bytea` data in text format, but not when retrieving it in binary format.

```c
unsigned char *PQunescapeBytea(const unsigned char *from, size_t *to_length);
```

The `from` parameter points to a string such as might be returned by `PQgetValue` when applied to a `bytea` column. `PQunescapeBytea` converts this string representation into its binary representation. It returns a pointer to a buffer allocated with `malloc()`, or NULL on error, and puts the size of the buffer in `to_length`. The result must be freed using `PQfreemem` when it is no longer needed.

This conversion is not exactly the inverse of `PQescapeBytea`, because the string is not expected to be “escaped” when received from `PQgetValue`. In particular this means there is no need for string quoting considerations, and so no need for a `PGconn` parameter.

### 32.4. Asynchronous Command Processing

The `PQexec` function is adequate for submitting commands in normal, synchronous applications. It has a few deficiencies, however, that can be of importance to some users:

- `PQexec` waits for the command to be completed. The application might have other work to do (such as maintaining a user interface), in which case it won't want to block waiting for the response.
- Since the execution of the client application is suspended while it waits for the result, it is hard for the application to decide that it would like to try to cancel the ongoing command. (It can be done from a signal handler, but not otherwise.)
- `PQexec` can return only one `PGresult` structure. If the submitted command string contains multiple SQL commands, all but the last `PGresult` are discarded by `PQexec`.
- `PQexec` always collects the command's entire result, buffering it in a single `PGresult`. While this simplifies error-handling logic for the application, it can be impractical for results containing many rows.
Applications that do not like these limitations can instead use the underlying functions that `PQexec` is built from: `PQsendQuery` and `PQgetResult`. There are also `PQsendQueryParams`, `PQsendPrepare`, `PQsendQueryPrepared`, `PQsendDescribePrepared`, and `PQsendDescribePortal`, which can be used with `PQgetResult` to duplicate the functionality of `PQexecParams`, `PQprepare`, `PQexecPrepared`, `PQdescribePrepared`, and `PQdescribePortal` respectively.

**PQsendQuery**

Submits a command to the server without waiting for the result(s). 1 is returned if the command was successfully dispatched and 0 if not (in which case, use `PQerrorMessage` to get more information about the failure).

```c
int PQsendQuery(PGconn *conn, const char *command);
```

After successfully calling `PQsendQuery`, call `PQgetResult` one or more times to obtain the results. `PQsendQuery` cannot be called again (on the same connection) until `PQgetResult` has returned a null pointer, indicating that the command is done.

In pipeline mode, command strings containing more than one SQL command are disallowed.

**PQsendQueryParams**

Submits a command and separate parameters to the server without waiting for the result(s).

```c
int PQsendQueryParams(PGconn *conn,
                      const char *command,
                      int nParams,
                      const Oid *paramTypes,
                      const char * const *paramValues,
                      const int *paramLengths,
                      const int *paramFormats,
                      int resultFormat);
```

This is equivalent to `PQsendQuery` except that query parameters can be specified separately from the query string. The function's parameters are handled identically to `PQexecParams`. Like `PQexecParams`, it allows only one command in the query string.

**PQsendPrepare**

Sends a request to create a prepared statement with the given parameters, without waiting for completion.

```c
int PQsendPrepare(PGconn *conn,
                   const char *stmtName,
                   const char *query,
                   int nParams,
                   const Oid *paramTypes);
```

This is an asynchronous version of `PQprepare`: it returns 1 if it was able to dispatch the request, and 0 if not. After a successful call, call `PQgetResult` to determine whether the server successfully created the prepared statement. The function's parameters are handled identically to `PQprepare`.

**PQsendQueryPrepared**

Sends a request to execute a prepared statement with given parameters, without waiting for the result(s).

```c
int PQsendQueryPrepared(PGconn *conn,
                        const char *stmtName,
                        int nParams,
                        const char * const *paramValues,
                        const int *paramLengths,
                        const int *paramFormats,
                        int resultFormat);
```
This is similar to `PQsendQueryParams`, but the command to be executed is specified by naming a previously-prepared statement, instead of giving a query string. The function's parameters are handled identically to `PQexecPrepared`.

**PQsendDescribePrepared**

Submits a request to obtain information about the specified prepared statement, without waiting for completion.

```c
int PQsendDescribePrepared(PGconn *conn, const char *stmtName);
```

This is an asynchronous version of `PQdescribePrepared`: it returns 1 if it was able to dispatch the request, and 0 if not. After a successful call, call `PQgetResult` to obtain the results. The function's parameters are handled identically to `PQdescribePrepared`.

**PQsendDescribePortal**

Submits a request to obtain information about the specified portal, without waiting for completion.

```c
int PQsendDescribePortal(PGconn *conn, const char *portalName);
```

This is an asynchronous version of `PQdescribePortal`: it returns 1 if it was able to dispatch the request, and 0 if not. After a successful call, call `PQgetResult` to obtain the results. The function's parameters are handled identically to `PQdescribePortal`.

**PQgetResult**

Waits for the next result from a prior `PQsendQuery`, `PQsendQueryParams`, `PQsendPrepare`, `PQsendQueryPrepared`, `PQsendDescribePrepared`, `PQsendDescribePortal`, or `PQpipelineSync` call, and returns it. A null pointer is returned when the command is complete and there will be no more results.

```c
PGresult *PQgetResult(PGconn *conn);
```

`PQgetResult` must be called repeatedly until it returns a null pointer, indicating that the command is done. (If called when no command is active, `PQgetResult` will just return a null pointer at once.) Each non-null result from `PQgetResult` should be processed using the same `PGresult` accessor functions previously described. Don't forget to free each result object with `PQclear` when done with it. Note that `PQgetResult` will block only if a command is active and the necessary response data has not yet been read by `PQconsumeInput`.

In pipeline mode, `PQgetResult` will return normally unless an error occurs; for any subsequent query sent after the one that caused the error until (and excluding) the next synchronization point, a special result of type `PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED` will be returned, and a null pointer will be returned after it. When the pipeline synchronization point is reached, a result of type `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC` will be returned. The result of the next query after the synchronization point follows immediately (that is, no null pointer is returned after the synchronization point.)

---

**Note**

Even when `PQresultStatus` indicates a fatal error, `PQgetResult` should be called until it returns a null pointer, to allow libpq to process the error information completely.

---

Using `PQsendQuery` and `PQgetResult` solves one of `PQexec`'s problems: If a command string contains multiple SQL commands, the results of those commands can be obtained individually. (This allows a simple form of overlapped processing, by the way: the client can be handling the results of one command while the server is still working on later queries in the same command string.)

Another frequently-desired feature that can be obtained with `PQsendQuery` and `PQgetResult` is retrieving large query results a row at a time. This is discussed in Section 32.6.
By itself, calling `PQgetResult` will still cause the client to block until the server completes the next SQL command. This can be avoided by proper use of two more functions:

`PQconsumeInput`

If input is available from the server, consume it.

```c
int PQconsumeInput(PGconn *conn);
```

`PQconsumeInput` normally returns 1 indicating “no error”, but returns 0 if there was some kind of trouble (in which case `PQerrorMessage` can be consulted). Note that the result does not say whether any input data was actually collected. After calling `PQconsumeInput`, the application can check `PQisBusy` and/or `PQnotifies` to see if their state has changed.

`PQconsumeInput` can be called even if the application is not prepared to deal with a result or notification just yet. The function will read available data and save it in a buffer, thereby causing a `select()` read-ready indication to go away. The application can thus use `PQconsumeInput` to clear the `select()` condition immediately, and then examine the results at leisure.

`PQisBusy`

Returns 1 if a command is busy, that is, `PQgetResult` would block waiting for input. A 0 return indicates that `PQgetResult` can be called with assurance of not blocking.

```c
int PQisBusy(PGconn *conn);
```

`PQisBusy` will not itself attempt to read data from the server; therefore `PQconsumeInput` must be invoked first, or the busy state will never end.

A typical application using these functions will have a main loop that uses `select()` or `poll()` to wait for all the conditions that it must respond to. One of the conditions will be input available from the server, which in terms of `select()` means readable data on the file descriptor identified by `PQsocket`. When the main loop detects input ready, it should call `PQconsumeInput` to read the input. It can then call `PQisBusy`, followed by `PQgetResult` if `PQisBusy` returns false (0). It can also call `PQnotifies` to detect NOTIFY messages (see Section 32.9).

A client that uses `PQsendQuery/PQgetResult` can also attempt to cancel a command that is still being processed by the server; see Section 32.7. But regardless of the return value of `PQcancel`, the application must continue with the normal result-reading sequence using `PQgetResult`. A successful cancellation will simply cause the command to terminate sooner than it would have otherwise.

By using the functions described above, it is possible to avoid blocking while waiting for input from the database server. However, it is still possible that the application will block waiting to send output to the server. This is relatively uncommon but can happen if very long SQL commands or data values are sent. (It is much more probable if the application sends data via `COPY IN`, however.) To prevent this possibility and achieve completely nonblocking database operation, the following additional functions can be used.

`PQsetnonblocking`

Sets the nonblocking status of the connection.

```c
int PQsetnonblocking(PGconn *conn, int arg);
```

Sets the state of the connection to nonblocking if `arg` is 1, or blocking if `arg` is 0. Returns 0 if OK, -1 if error.

In the nonblocking state, calls to `PQsendQuery, PQputline, PQputnbytes, PQputCopyData`, and `PQendcopy` will not block but instead return an error if they need to be called again.

Note that `PQexec` does not honor nonblocking mode; if it is called, it will act in blocking fashion anyway.

`PQisnonblocking`

Returns the blocking status of the database connection.
int PQisnonblocking(const PGconn *conn);

Returns 1 if the connection is set to nonblocking mode and 0 if blocking.

PQflush
Attempts to flush any queued output data to the server. Returns 0 if successful (or if the send queue is empty), -1 if it failed for some reason, or 1 if it was unable to send all the data in the send queue yet (this case can only occur if the connection is nonblocking).

int PQflush(PGconn *conn);

After sending any command or data on a nonblocking connection, call PQflush. If it returns 1, wait for the socket to become read- or write-ready. If it becomes write-ready, call PQflush again. If it becomes read-ready, call PQconsumeInput, then call PQflush again. Repeat until PQflush returns 0. (It is necessary to check for read-ready and drain the input with PQconsumeInput, because the server can block trying to send us data, e.g., NOTICE messages, and won't read our data until we read its.) Once PQflush returns 0, wait for the socket to be read-ready and then read the response as described above.

32.5. Pipeline Mode

libpq pipeline mode allows applications to send a query without having to read the result of the previously sent query. Taking advantage of the pipeline mode, a client will wait less for the server, since multiple queries/results can be sent/received in a single network transaction.

While pipeline mode provides a significant performance boost, writing clients using the pipeline mode is more complex because it involves managing a queue of pending queries and finding which result corresponds to which query in the queue.

Pipeline mode also generally consumes more memory on both the client and server, though careful and aggressive management of the send/receive queue can mitigate this. This applies whether or not the connection is in blocking or non-blocking mode.

While the pipeline API was introduced in PostgreSQL 14, it is a client-side feature which doesn't require special server support and works on any server that supports the v3 extended query protocol.

32.5.1. Using Pipeline Mode

To issue pipelines, the application must switch the connection into pipeline mode, which is done with PQenterPipelineMode. PQpipelineStatus can be used to test whether pipeline mode is active. In pipeline mode, only asynchronous operations are permitted, command strings containing multiple SQL commands are disallowed, and so is COPY. Using synchronous command execution functions such as PQfn, PQexec, PQexecParams, PQprepare, PQexecPrepared, PQdescribePrepared, PQdescribePortal, is an error condition. Once all dispatched commands have had their results processed, and the end pipeline result has been consumed, the application may return to non-pipelined mode with PQexitPipelineMode.

### Note
It is best to use pipeline mode with libpq in non-blocking mode. If used in blocking mode it is possible for a client/server deadlock to occur. ¹

32.5.1.1. Issuing Queries

After entering pipeline mode, the application dispatches requests using PQsendQuery, PQsendQueryParams, or its prepared-query sibling PQsendQueryPrepared. These requests are queued on the client-side until flushed to the server; this occurs when PQpipelineSync is used to establish

¹ The client will block trying to send queries to the server, but the server will block trying to send results to the client from queries it has already processed. This only occurs when the client sends enough queries to fill both its output buffer and the server’s receive buffer before it switches to processing input from the server, but it’s hard to predict exactly when that will happen.
a synchronization point in the pipeline, or when PQflush is called. The functions PQsendPrepare, 
PQsendDescribePrepared, and PQsendDescribePortal also work in pipeline mode. Result processing 
is described below.

The server executes statements, and returns results, in the order the client sends them. The server will 
begin executing the commands in the pipeline immediately, not waiting for the end of the pipeline. Note 
that results are buffered on the server side; the server flushes that buffer when a synchronization point is 
established with PQpipelineSync, or when PQsendFlushRequest is called. If any statement encounters 
an error, the server aborts the current transaction and does not execute any subsequent command in 
the queue until the next synchronization point; a PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED result is produced for each 
such command. (This remains true even if the commands in the pipeline would rollback the transaction.) 
Query processing resumes after the synchronization point.

It's fine for one operation to depend on the results of a prior one; for example, one query may define 
a table that the next query in the same pipeline uses. Similarly, an application may create a named 
prepared statement and execute it with later statements in the same pipeline.

### 32.5.1.2. Processing Results

To process the result of one query in a pipeline, the application calls PQgetResult repeatedly and handles 
each result until PQgetResult returns null. The result from the next query in the pipeline may then be 
retrieved using PQgetResult again and the cycle repeated. The application handles individual statement 
results as normal. When the results of all the queries in the pipeline have been returned, PQgetResult 
returns a result containing the status value PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC

The client may choose to defer result processing until the complete pipeline has been sent, or interleave 
that with sending further queries in the pipeline; see Section 32.5.1.4.

To enter single-row mode, call PQsetSingleRowMode before retrieving results with PQgetResult. This 
mode selection is effective only for the query currently being processed. For more information on the 
use of PQsetSingleRowMode, refer to Section 32.6.

PQgetResult behaves the same as for normal asynchronous processing except that it may contain 
the new PGresult types PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC and PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED. PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC 
is reported exactly once for each PQpipelineSync at the corresponding point in the pipeline. 
PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED is emitted in place of a normal query result for the first error and all 
subsequent results until the next PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC; see Section 32.5.1.3.

PQisBusy, PQconsumeInput, etc operate as normal when processing pipeline results. In particular, a call 
to PQisBusy in the middle of a pipeline returns 0 if the results for all the queries issued so far have 
been consumed.

libpq does not provide any information to the application about the query currently being processed 
(except that PQgetResult returns null to indicate that we start returning the results of next query). 
The application must keep track of the order in which it sent queries, to associate them with their 
corresponding results. Applications will typically use a state machine or a FIFO queue for this.

### 32.5.1.3. Error Handling

From the client’s perspective, after PQresultStatus returns PGRES_FATAL_ERROR, the pipeline is flagged 
as aborted. PQresultStatus will report a PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED result for each remaining queued 
operation in an aborted pipeline. The result for PQpipelineSync is reported as PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC 
to signal the end of the aborted pipeline and resumption of normal result processing.

The client must process results with PQgetResult during error recovery.

If the pipeline used an implicit transaction, then operations that have already executed are rolled back 
and operations that were queued to follow the failed operation are skipped entirely. The same behavior 
holds if the pipeline starts and commits a single explicit transaction (i.e. the first statement is BEGIN 
and the last is COMMIT) except that the session remains in an aborted transaction state at the end of the
pipeline. If a pipeline contains *multiple explicit transactions*, all transactions that committed prior to the error remain committed, the currently in-progress transaction is aborted, and all subsequent operations are skipped completely, including subsequent transactions. If a pipeline synchronization point occurs with an explicit transaction block in aborted state, the next pipeline will become aborted immediately unless the next command puts the transaction in normal mode with `ROLLBACK`.

**Note**

The client must not assume that work is committed when it *sends* a `COMMIT` — only when the corresponding result is received to confirm the commit is complete. Because errors arrive asynchronously, the application needs to be able to restart from the last *received* committed change and resend work done after that point if something goes wrong.

### 32.5.1.4. Interleaving Result Processing and Query Dispatch

To avoid deadlocks on large pipelines the client should be structured around a non-blocking event loop using operating system facilities such as `select`, `poll`, `WaitForMultipleObjectEx`, etc.

The client application should generally maintain a queue of work remaining to be dispatched and a queue of work that has been dispatched but not yet had its results processed. When the socket is writable it should dispatch more work. When the socket is readable it should read results and process them, matching them up to the next entry in its corresponding results queue. Based on available memory, results from the socket should be read frequently: there’s no need to wait until the pipeline end to read the results. Pipelines should be scoped to logical units of work, usually (but not necessarily) one transaction per pipeline. There’s no need to exit pipeline mode and re-enter it between pipelines, or to wait for one pipeline to finish before sending the next.

An example using `select()` and a simple state machine to track sent and received work is in `src/test/modules/libpq_pipeline/libpq_pipeline.c` in the PostgreSQL source distribution.

### 32.5.2. Functions Associated with Pipeline Mode

**PQpipelineStatus**

Returns the current pipeline mode status of the libpq connection.

```c
PGpipelineStatus PQpipelineStatus(const PGconn *conn);
```

**PQpipelineStatus** can return one of the following values:

- **PQ_PIPELINE_ON**
  
  The libpq connection is in pipeline mode.

- **PQ_PIPELINE_OFF**
  
  The libpq connection is *not* in pipeline mode.

- **PQ_PIPELINE_ABORTED**
  
  The libpq connection is in pipeline mode and an error occurred while processing the current pipeline. The aborted flag is cleared when `PQgetResult` returns a result of type `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC`.

**PQenterPipelineMode**

Causes a connection to enter pipeline mode if it is currently idle or already in pipeline mode.

```c
int PQenterPipelineMode(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 for success. Returns 0 and has no effect if the connection is not currently idle, i.e., it has a result ready, or it is waiting for more input from the server, etc. This function does not actually send anything to the server, it just changes the libpq connection state.
PQexitPipelineMode

Causes a connection to exit pipeline mode if it is currently in pipeline mode with an empty queue and no pending results.

```c
int PQexitPipelineMode(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 for success. Returns 1 and takes no action if not in pipeline mode. If the current statement isn't finished processing, or PQgetResult has not been called to collect results from all previously sent query, returns 0 (in which case, use PQerrorMessage to get more information about the failure).

PQpipelineSync

Marks a synchronization point in a pipeline by sending a sync message and flushing the send buffer. This serves as the delimiter of an implicit transaction and an error recovery point; see Section 32.5.1.3.

```c
int PQpipelineSync(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 for success. Returns 0 if the connection is not in pipeline mode or sending a sync message failed.

PQsendFlushRequest

Sends a request for the server to flush its output buffer.

```c
int PQsendFlushRequest(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 for success. Returns 0 on any failure.

The server flushes its output buffer automatically as a result of PQpipelineSync being called, or on any request when not in pipeline mode; this function is useful to cause the server to flush its output buffer in pipeline mode without establishing a synchronization point. Note that the request is not itself flushed to the server automatically; use PQflush if necessary.

### 32.5.3. When to Use Pipeline Mode

Much like asynchronous query mode, there is no meaningful performance overhead when using pipeline mode. It increases client application complexity, and extra caution is required to prevent client/server deadlocks, but pipeline mode can offer considerable performance improvements, in exchange for increased memory usage from leaving state around longer.

Pipeline mode is most useful when the server is distant, i.e., network latency (“ping time”) is high, and also when many small operations are being performed in rapid succession. There is usually less benefit in using pipelined commands when each query takes many multiples of the client/server round-trip time to execute. A 100-statement operation run on a server 300 ms round-trip-time away would take 30 seconds in network latency alone without pipelining; with pipelining it may spend as little as 0.3 s waiting for results from the server.

Use pipelined commands when your application does lots of small `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations that can't easily be transformed into operations on sets, or into a `COPY` operation.

Pipeline mode is not useful when information from one operation is required by the client to produce the next operation. In such cases, the client would have to introduce a synchronization point and wait for a full client/server round-trip to get the results it needs. However, it's often possible to adjust the client design to exchange the required information server-side. Read-modify-write cycles are especially good candidates; for example:

```sql
BEGIN;
SELECT x FROM mytable WHERE id = 42 FOR UPDATE;
-- result: x=2
-- client adds 1 to x:
UPDATE mytable SET x = 3 WHERE id = 42;
COMMIT;
```
could be much more efficiently done with:

```
UPDATE mytable SET x = x + 1 WHERE id = 42;
```

Pipelining is less useful, and more complex, when a single pipeline contains multiple transactions (see Section 32.5.1.3).

## 32.6. Retrieving Query Results Row-by-Row

Ordinarily, libpq collects an SQL command’s entire result and returns it to the application as a single `PGresult`. This can be unworkable for commands that return a large number of rows. For such cases, applications can use `PQsendQuery` and `PQgetResult` in single-row mode. In this mode, the result row(s) are returned to the application one at a time, as they are received from the server.

To enter single-row mode, call `PQsetSingleRowMode` immediately after a successful call of `PQsendQuery` (or a sibling function). This mode selection is effective only for the currently executing query. Then call `PQgetResult` repeatedly, until it returns null, as documented in Section 32.4. If the query returns any rows, they are returned as individual `PGresult` objects, which look like normal query results except for having status code `PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE` instead of `PGRES_TUPLES_OK`. After the last row, or immediately if the query returns zero rows, a zero-row object with status `PGRES_TUPLES_OK` is returned; this is the signal that no more rows will arrive. (But note that it is still necessary to continue calling `PQgetResult` until it returns null.) All of these `PGresult` objects will contain the same row description data (column names, types, etc) that an ordinary `PGresult` object for the query would have. Each object should be freed with `PQclear` as usual.

When using pipeline mode, single-row mode needs to be activated for each query in the pipeline before retrieving results for that query with `PQgetResult`. See Section 32.5 for more information.

```
PQsetSingleRowMode
    Select single-row mode for the currently-executing query.
    int PQsetSingleRowMode(PGconn *conn);
```

This function can only be called immediately after `PQsendQuery` or one of its sibling functions, before any other operation on the connection such as `PQconsumeInput` or `PQgetResult`. If called at the correct time, the function activates single-row mode for the current query and returns 1. Otherwise the mode stays unchanged and the function returns 0. In any case, the mode reverts to normal after completion of the current query.

### Caution

While processing a query, the server may return some rows and then encounter an error, causing the query to be aborted. Ordinarily, libpq discards any such rows and reports only the error. But in single-row mode, those rows will have already been returned to the application. Hence, the application will see some `PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE` `PGresult` objects followed by a `PGRES_FATAL_ERROR` object. For proper transactional behavior, the application must be designed to discard or undo whatever has been done with the previously-processed rows, if the query ultimately fails.

## 32.7. Canceling Queries in Progress

A client application can request cancellation of a command that is still being processed by the server, using the functions described in this section.

```
PQgetCancel
    Creates a data structure containing the information needed to cancel a command issued through a particular database connection.
    PGcancel *PQgetCancel(PGconn *conn);
```
PQgetCancel creates a PGcancel object given a PGconn connection object. It will return NULL if the given conn is NULL or an invalid connection. The PGcancel object is an opaque structure that is not meant to be accessed directly by the application; it can only be passed to PQcancel or PQfreeCancel.

PQfreeCancel

Frees a data structure created by PQgetCancel.

void PQfreeCancel(PGcancel *cancel);

PQfreeCancel frees a data object previously created by PQgetCancel.

PQcancel

Requests that the server abandon processing of the current command.

int PQcancel(PGcancel *cancel, char *errbuf, int errbufsize);

The return value is 1 if the cancel request was successfully dispatched and 0 if not. If not, errbuf is filled with an explanatory error message. errbuf must be a char array of size errbufsize (the recommended size is 256 bytes).

Successful dispatch is no guarantee that the request will have any effect, however. If the cancellation is effective, the current command will terminate early and return an error result. If the cancellation fails (say, because the server was already done processing the command), then there will be no visible result at all.

PQcancel can safely be invoked from a signal handler, if the errbuf is a local variable in the signal handler. The PGcancel object is read-only as far as PQcancel is concerned, so it can also be invoked from a thread that is separate from the one manipulating the PGconn object.

PQrequestCancel

PQrequestCancel is a deprecated variant of PQcancel.

int PQrequestCancel(PGconn *conn);

Requests that the server abandon processing of the current command. It operates directly on the PGconn object, and in case of failure stores the error message in the PGconn object (whence it can be retrieved by PQerrorMessage). Although the functionality is the same, this approach creates hazards for multiple-thread programs and signal handlers, since it is possible that overwriting the PGconn’s error message will mess up the operation currently in progress on the connection.

32.8. The Fast-Path Interface

Postgres Pro provides a fast-path interface to send simple function calls to the server.

Tip

This interface is somewhat obsolete, as one can achieve similar performance and greater functionality by setting up a prepared statement to define the function call. Then, executing the statement with binary transmission of parameters and results substitutes for a fast-path function call.

The function PQfn requests execution of a server function via the fast-path interface:

PGresult *PQfn(PGconn *conn,
              int fnid,
              int *result_buf,
              int *result_len,
              int result_is_int,
              const PQArgBlock *args,
              int nargs);
typedef struct
{
    int len;
    int isint;
    union
    {
        int *ptr;
        int integer;
    } u;
} PQArgBlock;

The fnid argument is the OID of the function to be executed. args and nargs define the parameters to be passed to the function; they must match the declared function argument list. When the isint field of a parameter structure is true, the u.integer value is sent to the server as an integer of the indicated length (this must be 2 or 4 bytes); proper byte-swapping occurs. When isint is false, the indicated number of bytes at *u.ptr are sent with no processing; the data must be in the format expected by the server for binary transmission of the function's argument data type. (The declaration of u.ptr as being of type int * is historical; it would be better to consider it void *) result_buf points to the buffer in which to place the function's return value. The caller must have allocated sufficient space to store the return value. (There is no check!) The actual result length in bytes will be returned in the integer pointed to by result_len. If a 2- or 4-byte integer result is expected, set result_is_int to 1, otherwise set it to 0. Setting result_is_int to 1 causes libpq to byte-swap the value if necessary, so that it is delivered as a proper int value for the client machine; note that a 4-byte integer is delivered into *result_buf for either allowed result size. When result_is_int is 0, the binary-format byte string sent by the server is returned unmodified. (In this case it's better to consider result_buf as being of type void *)

PQfn always returns a valid PGresult pointer, with status PGRES_COMMAND_OK for success or PGRES_FATAL_ERROR if some problem was encountered. The result status should be checked before the result is used. The caller is responsible for freeing the PGresult with PQclear when it is no longer needed.

To pass a NULL argument to the function, set the len field of that parameter structure to -1; the isint and u fields are then irrelevant.

If the function returns NULL, *result_len is set to -1, and *result_buf is not modified.

Note that it is not possible to handle set-valued results when using this interface. Also, the function must be a plain function, not an aggregate, window function, or procedure.

### 32.9. Asynchronous Notification

Postgres Pro offers asynchronous notification via the LISTEN and NOTIFY commands. A client session registers its interest in a particular notification channel with the LISTEN command (and can stop listening with the UNLISTEN command). All sessions listening on a particular channel will be notified asynchronously when a NOTIFY command with that channel name is executed by any session. A “payload” string can be passed to communicate additional data to the listeners.

libpq applications submit LISTEN, UNLISTEN, and NOTIFY commands as ordinary SQL commands. The arrival of NOTIFY messages can subsequently be detected by calling PQnotifies.

The function PQnotifies returns the next notification from a list of unhandled notification messages received from the server. It returns a null pointer if there are no pending notifications. Once a notification is returned from PQnotifies, it is considered handled and will be removed from the list of notifications.

```c
PGnotify *PQnotifies(PGconn *conn);
```

typedef struct pgNotify
{
char *relname;        /* notification channel name */
int  be_pid;          /* process ID of notifying server process */
char *extra;          /* notification payload string */

After processing a PGnotify object returned by PQnotifies, be sure to free it with PQfreemem. It is sufficient to free the PGnotify pointer; the relname and extra fields do not represent separate allocations. (The names of these fields are historical; in particular, channel names need not have anything to do with relation names.)

Example 32.2 gives a sample program that illustrates the use of asynchronous notification.

PQnotifies does not actually read data from the server; it just returns messages previously absorbed by another libpq function. In ancient releases of libpq, the only way to ensure timely receipt of NOTIFY messages was to constantly submit commands, even empty ones, and then check PQnotifies after each PQexec. While this still works, it is deprecated as a waste of processing power.

A better way to check for NOTIFY messages when you have no useful commands to execute is to call PQconsumeInput, then check PQnotifies. You can use select() to wait for data to arrive from the server, thereby using no CPU power unless there is something to do. (See PQsocket to obtain the file descriptor number to use with select().) Note that this will work OK whether you submit commands with PQsendQuery/PQgetResult or simply use PQexec. You should, however, remember to check PQnotifies after each PQgetResult or PQexec, to see if any notifications came in during the processing of the command.

32.10. Functions Associated with the COPY Command

The COPY command in Postgres Pro has options to read from or write to the network connection used by libpq. The functions described in this section allow applications to take advantage of this capability by supplying or consuming copied data.

The overall process is that the application first issues the SQL COPY command via PQexec or one of the equivalent functions. The response to this (if there is no error in the command) will be a PGresult object bearing a status code of PGRES_COPY_OUT or PGRES_COPY_IN (depending on the specified copy direction). The application should then use the functions of this section to receive or transmit data rows. When the data transfer is complete, another PGresult object is returned to indicate success or failure of the transfer. Its status will be PGRES_COMMAND_OK for success or PGRES_FATAL_ERROR if some problem was encountered. At this point further SQL commands can be issued via PQexec. (It is not possible to execute other SQL commands using the same connection while the COPY operation is in progress.)

If a COPY command is issued via PQexec in a string that could contain additional commands, the application must continue fetching results via PQgetResult after completing the COPY sequence. Only when PQgetResult returns NULL is it certain that the PQexec command string is done and it is safe to issue more commands.

The functions of this section should be executed only after obtaining a result status of PGRES_COPY_OUT or PGRES_COPY_IN from PQexec or PQgetResult.

A PGresult object bearing one of these status values carries some additional data about the COPY operation that is starting. This additional data is available using functions that are also used in connection with query results:

PQnfields
    Returns the number of columns (fields) to be copied.

PQbinaryTuples
    0 indicates the overall copy format is textual (rows separated by newlines, columns separated by separator characters, etc). 1 indicates the overall copy format is binary. See COPY for more information.
PQfformat

Returns the format code (0 for text, 1 for binary) associated with each column of the copy operation. The per-column format codes will always be zero when the overall copy format is textual, but the binary format can support both text and binary columns. (However, as of the current implementation of COPY, only binary columns appear in a binary copy; so the per-column formats always match the overall format at present.)

### 32.10.1. Functions for Sending COPY Data

These functions are used to send data during COPY FROM STDIN. They will fail if called when the connection is not in COPY_IN state.

**PQputCopyData**

Sends data to the server during COPY_IN state.

```c
int PQputCopyData(PGconn *conn, 
                  const char *buffer, 
                  int nbytes);
```

Transmits the COPY data in the specified buffer, of length nbytes, to the server. The result is 1 if the data was queued, zero if it was not queued because of full buffers (this will only happen in nonblocking mode), or -1 if an error occurred. (Use PQerrorMessage to retrieve details if the return value is -1. If the value is zero, wait for write-ready and try again.)

The application can divide the COPY data stream into buffer loads of any convenient size. Buffer-load boundaries have no semantic significance when sending. The contents of the data stream must match the data format expected by the COPY command; see COPY for details.

**PQputCopyEnd**

Sends end-of-data indication to the server during COPY_IN state.

```c
int PQputCopyEnd(PGconn *conn, 
                 const char *errormsg);
```

Ends the COPY_IN operation successfully if errormsg is NULL. If errormsg is not NULL then the COPY is forced to fail, with the string pointed to by errormsg used as the error message. (One should not assume that this exact error message will come back from the server, however, as the server might have already failed the COPY for its own reasons.)

The result is 1 if the termination message was sent; or in nonblocking mode, this may only indicate that the termination message was successfully queued. (In nonblocking mode, to be certain that the data has been sent, you should next wait for write-ready and call PQflush, repeating until it returns zero.) Zero indicates that the function could not queue the termination message because of full buffers; this will only happen in nonblocking mode. (In this case, wait for write-ready and try the PQputCopyEnd call again.) If a hard error occurs, -1 is returned; you can use PQerrorMessage to retrieve details.

After successfully calling PQputCopyEnd, call PQgetResult to obtain the final result status of the COPY command. One can wait for this result to be available in the usual way. Then return to normal operation.

### 32.10.2. Functions for Receiving COPY Data

These functions are used to receive data during COPY TO STDOUT. They will fail if called when the connection is not in COPY_OUT state.

**PQgetCopyData**

Receives data from the server during COPY_OUT state.
Attempts to obtain another row of data from the server during a COPY. Data is always returned one data row at a time; if only a partial row is available, it is not returned. Successful return of a data row involves allocating a chunk of memory to hold the data. The buffer parameter must be non-NULL. *buffer is set to point to the allocated memory, or to NULL in cases where no buffer is returned. A non-NULL result buffer should be freed using PQfreemem when no longer needed.

When a row is successfully returned, the return value is the number of data bytes in the row (this will always be greater than zero). The returned string is always null-terminated, though this is probably only useful for textual COPY. A result of zero indicates that the COPY is still in progress, but no row is yet available (this is only possible when async is true). A result of -1 indicates that the COPY is done. A result of -2 indicates that an error occurred (consult PQerrorMessage for the reason).

When async is true (not zero), PQgetCopyData will not block waiting for input; it will return zero if the COPY is still in progress but no complete row is available. (In this case wait for read-ready and then call PQconsumeInput before calling PQgetCopyData again.) When async is false (zero), PQgetCopyData will block until data is available or the operation completes.

After PQgetCopyData returns -1, call PQgetResult to obtain the final result status of the COPY command. One can wait for this result to be available in the usual way. Then return to normal operation.

### 32.10.3. Obsolete Functions for COPY

These functions represent older methods of handling COPY. Although they still work, they are deprecated due to poor error handling, inconvenient methods of detecting end-of-data, and lack of support for binary or nonblocking transfers.

**PQgetline**

Reads a newline-terminated line of characters (transmitted by the server) into a buffer string of size length.

```c
int PQgetline(PGconn *conn,
             char *buffer,
             int length);
```

This function copies up to length-1 characters into the buffer and converts the terminating newline into a zero byte. PQgetline returns EOF at the end of input, 0 if the entire line has been read, and 1 if the buffer is full but the terminating newline has not yet been read.

Note that the application must check to see if a new line consists of the two characters \\., which indicates that the server has finished sending the results of the COPY command. If the application might receive lines that are more than length-1 characters long, care is needed to be sure it recognizes the \\ line correctly (and does not, for example, mistake the end of a long data line for a terminator line).

**PQgetlineAsync**

Reads a row of COPY data (transmitted by the server) into a buffer without blocking.

```c
int PQgetlineAsync(PGconn *conn,
                   char *buffer,
                   int bufsize);
```

This function is similar to PQgetline, but it can be used by applications that must read COPY data asynchronously, that is, without blocking. Having issued the COPY command and gotten a PGRES_COPY_OUT response, the application should call PQconsumeInput and PQgetlineAsync until the end-of-data signal is detected.
Unlike `PQgetline`, this function takes responsibility for detecting end-of-data.

On each call, `PQgetlineAsync` will return data if a complete data row is available in libpq's input buffer. Otherwise, no data is returned until the rest of the row arrives. The function returns -1 if the end-of-copy-data marker has been recognized, or 0 if no data is available, or a positive number giving the number of bytes of data returned. If -1 is returned, the caller must next call `PQendcopy`, and then return to normal processing.

The data returned will not extend beyond a data-row boundary. If possible a whole row will be returned at one time. But if the buffer offered by the caller is too small to hold a row sent by the server, then a partial data row will be returned. With textual data this can be detected by testing whether the last returned byte is \n or not. (In a binary `COPY`, actual parsing of the `COPY` data format will be needed to make the equivalent determination.) The returned string is not null-terminated. (If you want to add a terminating null, be sure to pass a `bufsize` one smaller than the room actually available.)

`PQputline`

Sends a null-terminated string to the server. Returns 0 if OK and `EOF` if unable to send the string.

```
int PQputline(PGconn *conn,
              const char *string);
```

The `COPY` data stream sent by a series of calls to `PQputline` has the same format as that returned by `PQgetlineAsync`, except that applications are not obliged to send exactly one data row per `PQputline` call; it is okay to send a partial line or multiple lines per call.

### Note
Before Postgres Pro protocol 3.0, it was necessary for the application to explicitly send the two characters `.\n` as a final line to indicate to the server that it had finished sending `COPY` data. While this still works, it is deprecated and the special meaning of `.\n` can be expected to be removed in a future release. It is sufficient to call `PQendcopy` after having sent the actual data.

`PQputnbytes`

Sends a non-null-terminated string to the server. Returns 0 if OK and `EOF` if unable to send the string.

```
int PQputnbytes(PGconn *conn,
                const char *buffer,
                int nbytes);
```

This is exactly like `PQputline`, except that the data buffer need not be null-terminated since the number of bytes to send is specified directly. Use this procedure when sending binary data.

`PQendcopy`

Synchronizes with the server.

```
int PQendcopy(PGconn *conn);
```

This function waits until the server has finished the copying. It should either be issued when the last string has been sent to the server using `PQputline` or when the last string has been received from the server using `PQgetline`. It must be issued or the server will get “out of sync” with the client. Upon return from this function, the server is ready to receive the next SQL command. The return value is 0 on successful completion, nonzero otherwise. (Use `PQerrorMessage` to retrieve details if the return value is nonzero.)

When using `PQgetResult`, the application should respond to a `PGRES_COPY_OUT` result by executing `PQgetline` repeatedly, followed by `PQendcopy` after the terminator line is seen. It should then return to the `PQgetResult` loop until `PQgetResult` returns a null pointer. Similarly a `PGRES_COPY_IN` result...
is processed by a series of PQputline calls followed by PQendcopy, then return to the PQgetResult loop. This arrangement will ensure that a COPY command embedded in a series of SQL commands will be executed correctly.

Older applications are likely to submit a COPY via PQexec and assume that the transaction is done after PQendcopy. This will work correctly only if the COPY is the only SQL command in the command string.

32.11. Control Functions

These functions control miscellaneous details of libpq’s behavior.

PQclientEncoding

Returns the client encoding.

```c
int PQclientEncoding(const PGconn * conn);
```

Note that it returns the encoding ID, not a symbolic string such as EUC_JP. If unsuccessful, it returns -1. To convert an encoding ID to an encoding name, you can use:

```c
char *pg_encoding_to_char(int encoding_id);
```

PQsetClientEncoding

Sets the client encoding.

```c
int PQsetClientEncoding(PGconn * conn, const char * encoding);
```

`conn` is a connection to the server, and `encoding` is the encoding you want to use. If the function successfully sets the encoding, it returns 0, otherwise -1. The current encoding for this connection can be determined by using PQclientEncoding.

PQsetErrorVerbosity

Determines the verbosity of messages returned by PQerrorMessage and PQresultErrorMessage.

```c
typedef enum
{
    PQERRORS_TERSE,
    PQERRORS_DEFAULT,
    PQERRORS_VERBOSE,
    PQERRORS_SQLSTATE
} PGVerbosity;
```

```c
PGVerbosity PQsetErrorVerbosity(PGconn * conn, PGVerbosity verbosity);
```

`PQsetErrorVerbosity` sets the verbosity mode, returning the connection’s previous setting. In TERSE mode, returned messages include severity, primary text, and position only; this will normally fit on a single line. The DEFAULT mode produces messages that include the above plus any detail, hint, or context fields (these might span multiple lines). The VERBOSE mode includes all available fields. The SQLSTATE mode includes only the error severity and the SQLSTATE error code, if one is available (if not, the output is like TERSE mode).

Changing the verbosity setting does not affect the messages available from already-existing PGresult objects, only subsequently-created ones. (But see PQresultVerboseErrorMessage if you want to print a previous error with a different verbosity.)

PQsetErrorContextVisibility

Determines the handling of CONTEXT fields in messages returned by PQerrorMessage and PQresultErrorMessage.

```c
typedef enum
{
```
PQSHOW_CONTEXT_NEVER,
PQSHOW_CONTEXT_ERRORS,
PQSHOW_CONTEXT_ALWAYS
) PGContextVisibility;

PGContextVisibility PQsetErrorContextVisibility(PGconn *conn, PGContextVisibility
show_context);
PQsetErrorContextVisibility sets the context display mode, returning the connection’s previous
setting. This mode controls whether the CONTEXT field is included in messages. The NEVER mode
never includes CONTEXT, while ALWAYS always includes it if available. In ERRORS mode (the default),
CONTEXT fields are included only in error messages, not in notices and warnings. (However, if the
verbosity setting is TERSE or SQLSTATE, CONTEXT fields are omitted regardless of the context display
mode.)

Changing this mode does not affect the messages available from already-existing PGresult objects,
only subsequently-created ones. (But see PQresultVerboseErrorMessage if you want to print a
previous error with a different display mode.)

PQtrace
Enables tracing of the client/server communication to a debugging file stream.

void PQtrace(PGconn *conn, FILE *stream);

Each line consists of: an optional timestamp, a direction indicator (F for messages from client to
server or B for messages from server to client), message length, message type, and message contents.
Non-message contents fields (timestamp, direction, length and message type) are separated by a
tab. Message contents are separated by a space. Protocol strings are enclosed in double quotes,
while strings used as data values are enclosed in single quotes. Non-printable chars are printed as
hexadecimal escapes. Further message-type-specific detail can be found in Section 51.7.

Note
On Windows, if the libpq library and an application are compiled with different flags, this
function call will crash the application because the internal representation of the FILE pointers
differ. Specifically, multithreaded/single-threaded, release/debug, and static/dynamic flags
should be the same for the library and all applications using that library.

PQsetTraceFlags
Controls the tracing behavior of client/server communication.

void PQsetTraceFlags(PGconn *conn, int flags);

flags contains flag bits describing the operating mode of tracing. If flags contains
PQTRACE_SUPPRESS_TIMESTAMPS, then the timestamp is not included when printing each message. If
flags contains PQTRACE_REGRESS_MODE, then some fields are redacted when printing each message,
such as object OIDs, to make the output more convenient to use in testing frameworks. This function
must be called after calling PQtrace.

PQuntrace
Disables tracing started by PQtrace.

void PQuntrace(PGconn *conn);

32.12. Miscellaneous Functions
As always, there are some functions that just don’t fit anywhere.
libpq — C Library

PQfreemem

Frees memory allocated by libpq.

```c
void PQfreemem(void *ptr);
```

Frees memory allocated by libpq, particularly `PQescapeByteaConn`, `PQescapeBytea`, `PQunescapeBytea`, and `PQnotifies`. It is particularly important that this function, rather than `free()`, be used on Microsoft Windows. This is because allocating memory in a DLL and releasing it in the application works only if multithreaded/single-threaded, release/debug, and static/dynamic flags are the same for the DLL and the application. On non-Microsoft Windows platforms, this function is the same as the standard library function `free()`.

PQconninfoFree

Frees the data structures allocated by `PQconndefaults` or `PQconninfoParse`.

```c
void PQconninfoFree(PQconninfoOption *connOptions);
```

A simple `PQfreemem` will not do for this, since the array contains references to subsidiary strings.

PQencryptPasswordConn

Prepares the encrypted form of a Postgres Pro password.

```c
char *PQencryptPasswordConn(PGconn *conn, const char *passwd, const char *user,
  const char *algorithm);
```

This function is intended to be used by client applications that wish to send commands like `ALTER USER joe PASSWORD 'pwd'`. It is good practice not to send the original cleartext password in such a command, because it might be exposed in command logs, activity displays, and so on. Instead, use this function to convert the password to encrypted form before it is sent.

The `passwd` and `user` arguments are the cleartext password, and the SQL name of the user it is for. `algorithm` specifies the encryption algorithm to use to encrypt the password. Currently supported algorithms are `md5` and `scram-sha-256` (on and off are also accepted as aliases for `md5`, for compatibility with older server versions). Note that support for `scram-sha-256` was introduced in Postgres Pro version 10, and will not work correctly with older server versions. If `algorithm` is `NULL`, this function will query the server for the current value of the `password_encryption` setting. That can block, and will fail if the current transaction is aborted, or if the connection is busy executing another query. If you wish to use the default algorithm for the server but want to avoid blocking, query `password_encryption` yourself before calling `PQencryptPasswordConn`, and pass that value as the `algorithm`.

The return value is a string allocated by `malloc`. The caller can assume the string doesn't contain any special characters that would require escaping. Use `PQfreemem` to free the result when done with it. On error, returns `NULL`, and a suitable message is stored in the connection object.

PQencryptPassword

Prepares the md5-encrypted form of a Postgres Pro password.

```c
char *PQencryptPassword(const char *passwd, const char *user);
```

`PQencryptPassword` is an older, deprecated version of `PQencryptPasswordConn`. The difference is that `PQencryptPassword` does not require a connection object, and `md5` is always used as the encryption algorithm.

PQmakeEmptyPGresult

Constructs an empty `PGresult` object with the given status.

```c
PGresult *PQmakeEmptyPGresult(PGconn *conn, ExecStatusType status);
```

This is libpq's internal function to allocate and initialize an empty `PGresult` object. This function returns `NULL` if memory could not be allocated. It is exported because some applications find it useful.
to generate result objects (particularly objects with error status) themselves. If conn is not null and status indicates an error, the current error message of the specified connection is copied into the PGresult. Also, if conn is not null, any event procedures registered in the connection are copied into the PGresult. (They do not get PGEVT_RESULTCREATE calls, but see PQfireResultCreateEvents.) Note that PQclear should eventually be called on the object, just as with a PGresult returned by libpq itself.

PQfireResultCreateEvents

Fires a PGEVT_RESULTCREATE event (see Section 32.14) for each event procedure registered in the PGresult object. Returns non-zero for success, zero if any event procedure fails.

int PQfireResultCreateEvents(PGconn *conn, PGresult *res);

The conn argument is passed through to event procedures but not used directly. It can be NULL if the event procedures won't use it.

Event procedures that have already received a PGEVT_RESULTCREATE or PGEVT_RESULTCOPY event for this object are not fired again.

The main reason that this function is separate from PQmakeEmptyPGresult is that it is often appropriate to create a PGresult and fill it with data before invoking the event procedures.

PQcopyResult

 Makes a copy of a PGresult object. The copy is not linked to the source result in any way and PQclear must be called when the copy is no longer needed. If the function fails, NULL is returned.

PGresult *PQcopyResult(const PGresult *src, int flags);

This is not intended to make an exact copy. The returned result is always put into PGRES_TUPLES_OK status, and does not copy any error message in the source. (It does copy the command status string, however.) The flags argument determines what else is copied. It is a bitwise OR of several flags. PG_COPYRES_ATTRS specifies copying the source result’s attributes (column definitions). PG_COPYRES_TUPLES specifies copying the source result’s tuples. (This implies copying the attributes, too.) PG_COPYRES_NOTICEHOOKS specifies copying the source result's notify hooks. PG_COPYRES_EVENTS specifies copying the source result's events. (But any instance data associated with the source is not copied.)

PQsetResultAttrs

Sets the attributes of a PGresult object.

int PQsetResultAttrs(PGresult *res, int numAttributes, PGresAttDesc *attDescs);

The provided attDescs are copied into the result. If the attDescs pointer is NULL or numAttributes is less than one, the request is ignored and the function succeeds. If res already contains attributes, the function will fail. If the function fails, the return value is zero. If the function succeeds, the return value is non-zero.

PQsetValue

Sets a tuple field value of a PGresult object.

int PQsetValue(PGresult *res, int tup_num, int field_num, char *value, int len);

The function will automatically grow the result’s internal tuples array as needed. However, the tup_num argument must be less than or equal to PQntuples, meaning this function can only grow the tuples array one tuple at a time. But any field of any existing tuple can be modified in any order. If a value at field_num already exists, it will be overwritten. If len is -1 or value is NULL, the field value will be set to an SQL null value. The value is copied into the result's private storage, thus is no longer needed after the function returns. If the function fails, the return value is zero. If the function succeeds, the return value is non-zero.
PQresultAlloc

Allocate subsidiary storage for a PGresult object.

void *PQresultAlloc(PGresult *res, size_t nBytes);

Any memory allocated with this function will be freed when res is cleared. If the function fails, the return value is NULL. The result is guaranteed to be adequately aligned for any type of data, just as for malloc.

PQresultMemorySize

Retrieves the number of bytes allocated for a PGresult object.

size_t PQresultMemorySize(const PGresult *res);

This value is the sum of all malloc requests associated with the PGresult object, that is, all the space that will be freed by PQclear. This information can be useful for managing memory consumption.

PQlibVersion

Return the version of libpq that is being used.

int PQlibVersion(void);

The result of this function can be used to determine, at run time, whether specific functionality is available in the currently loaded version of libpq. The function can be used, for example, to determine which connection options are available in PQconnectdb.

The result is formed by multiplying the library's major version number by 10000 and adding the minor version number. For example, version 10.1 will be returned as 100001, and version 11.0 will be returned as 110000.

Prior to major version 10, Postgres Pro used three-part version numbers in which the first two parts together represented the major version. For those versions, PQlibVersion uses two digits for each part; for example version 9.1.5 will be returned as 90105, and version 9.2.0 will be returned as 90200.

Therefore, for purposes of determining feature compatibility, applications should divide the result of PQlibVersion by 100 not 10000 to determine a logical major version number. In all release series, only the last two digits differ between minor releases (bug-fix releases).

Note

This function appeared in PostgreSQL version 9.1, so it cannot be used to detect required functionality in earlier versions, since calling it will create a link dependency on version 9.1 or later.

32.13. Notice Processing

Notice and warning messages generated by the server are not returned by the query execution functions, since they do not imply failure of the query. Instead they are passed to a notice handling function, and execution continues normally after the handler returns. The default notice handling function prints the message on stderr, but the application can override this behavior by supplying its own handling function.

For historical reasons, there are two levels of notice handling, called the notice receiver and notice processor. The default behavior is for the notice receiver to format the notice and pass a string to the notice processor for printing. However, an application that chooses to provide its own notice receiver will typically ignore the notice processor layer and just do all the work in the notice receiver.
The function `PQsetNoticeReceiver` sets or examines the current notice receiver for a connection object. Similarly, `PQsetNoticeProcessor` sets or examines the current notice processor:

```c
typedef void (*PQnoticeReceiver) (void *arg, const PGresult *res);

PQnoticeReceiver
PQsetNoticeReceiver(PGconn *conn,
                    PQnoticeReceiver proc,
                    void *arg);

typedef void (*PQnoticeProcessor) (void *arg, const char *message);

PQnoticeProcessor
PQsetNoticeProcessor(PGconn *conn,
                     PQnoticeProcessor proc,
                     void *arg);
```

Each of these functions returns the previous notice receiver or processor function pointer, and sets the new value. If you supply a null function pointer, no action is taken, but the current pointer is returned.

When a notice or warning message is received from the server, or generated internally by libpq, the notice receiver function is called. It is passed the message in the form of a `PGRES_NONFATAL_ERROR` `PGresult`. (This allows the receiver to extract individual fields using `PQresultErrorField`, or obtain a complete preformatted message using `PQresultErrorMessage` or `PQresultVerboseErrorMessage`.) The same void pointer passed to `PQsetNoticeReceiver` is also passed. (This pointer can be used to access application-specific state if needed.)

The default notice receiver simply extracts the message (using `PQresultErrorMessage`) and passes it to the notice processor.

The notice processor is responsible for handling a notice or warning message given in text form. It is passed the string text of the message (including a trailing newline), plus a void pointer that is the same one passed to `PQsetNoticeProcessor`. (This pointer can be used to access application-specific state if needed.)

The default notice processor is simply:

```c
static void
defaultNoticeProcessor(void *arg, const char *message)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s", message);
}
```

Once you have set a notice receiver or processor, you should expect that that function could be called as long as either the `PGconn` object or `PGresult` objects made from it exist. At creation of a `PGresult`, the `PGconn`'s current notice handling pointers are copied into the `PGresult` for possible use by functions like `PQgetvalue`.

### 32.14. Event System

libpq's event system is designed to notify registered event handlers about interesting libpq events, such as the creation or destruction of `PGconn` and `PGresult` objects. A principal use case is that this allows applications to associate their own data with a `PGconn` or `PGresult` and ensure that that data is freed at an appropriate time.

Each registered event handler is associated with two pieces of data, known to libpq only as opaque `void *` pointers. There is a pass-through pointer that is provided by the application when the event handler is registered with a `PGconn`. The pass-through pointer never changes for the life of the `PGconn` and all `PGresult`s generated from it, so if used, it must point to long-lived data. In addition there is an instance data pointer, which starts out `NULL` in every `PGconn` and `PGresult`. This
pointer can be manipulated using the `PQinstanceData`, `PQsetInstanceData`, `PQresultInstanceData` and `PQsetResultInstanceData` functions. Note that unlike the pass-through pointer, instance data of a `PGconn` is not automatically inherited by `PGresult`s created from it. libpq does not know what pass-through and instance data pointers point to (if anything) and will never attempt to free them — that is the responsibility of the event handler.

### 32.14.1. Event Types

The enum `PGEventId` names the types of events handled by the event system. All its values have names beginning with `PGEVT`. For each event type, there is a corresponding event info structure that carries the parameters passed to the event handlers. The event types are:

**PGEVT_REGISTER**

The register event occurs when `PQregisterEventProc` is called. It is the ideal time to initialize any `instanceData` an event procedure may need. Only one register event will be fired per event handler per connection. If the event procedure fails, the registration is aborted.

```c
typedef struct {
    PGconn *conn;
} PGEventRegister;
```

When a `PGEVT_REGISTER` event is received, the `evtInfo` pointer should be cast to a `PGEventRegister *`. This structure contains a `PGconn` that should be in the `CONNECTION_OK` status; guaranteed if one calls `PQregisterEventProc` right after obtaining a good `PGconn`. When returning a failure code, all cleanup must be performed as no `PGEVT_CONNDESTROY` event will be sent.

**PGEVT_CONNRESET**

The connection reset event is fired on completion of `PQreset` or `PQresetPoll`. In both cases, the event is only fired if the reset was successful. If the event procedure fails, the entire connection reset will fail; the `PGconn` is put into `CONNECTION_BAD` status and `PQresetPoll` will return `PGRES_POLLING_FAILED`.

```c
typedef struct {
    PGconn *conn;
} PGEventConnReset;
```

When a `PGEVT_CONNRESET` event is received, the `evtInfo` pointer should be cast to a `PGEventConnReset *`. Although the contained `PGconn` was just reset, all event data remains unchanged. This event should be used to reset/reload/requery any associated `instanceData`. Note that even if the event procedure fails to process `PGEVT_CONNRESET`, it will still receive a `PGEVT_CONNDESTROY` event when the connection is closed.

**PGEVT_CONNDESTROY**

The connection destroy event is fired in response to `PQfinish`. It is the event procedure's responsibility to properly clean up its event data as libpq has no ability to manage this memory. Failure to clean up will lead to memory leaks.

```c
typedef struct {
    PGconn *conn;
} PGEventConnDestroy;
```

When a `PGEVT_CONNDESTROY` event is received, the `evtInfo` pointer should be cast to a `PGEventConnDestroy *`. This event is fired prior to `PQfinish` performing any other cleanup. The return value of the event procedure is ignored since there is no way of indicating a failure from `PQfinish`. Also, an event procedure failure should not abort the process of cleaning up unwanted memory.
PGEVT_RESULTCREATE

The result creation event is fired in response to any query execution function that generates a result, including PQgetResult. This event will only be fired after the result has been created successfully.

typedef struct
{
    PGconn *conn;
    PGresult *result;
} PGEventResultCreate;

When a PGEVT_RESULTCREATE event is received, the evtInfo pointer should be cast to a PGEventResultCreate *. The conn is the connection used to generate the result. This is the ideal place to initialize any instanceData that needs to be associated with the result. If the event procedure fails, the result will be cleared and the failure will be propagated. The event procedure must not try to PQclear the result object for itself. When returning a failure code, all cleanup must be performed as no PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY event will be sent.

PGEVT_RESULTCOPY

The result copy event is fired in response to PQcopyResult. This event will only be fired after the copy is complete. Only event procedures that have successfully handled the PGEVT_RESULTCREATE or PGEVT_RESULTCOPY event for the source result will receive PGEVT_RESULTCOPY events.

typedef struct
{
    const PGresult *src;
    PGresult *dest;
} PGEventResultCopy;

When a PGEVT_RESULTCOPY event is received, the evtInfo pointer should be cast to a PGEventResultCopy *. The src result is what was copied while the dest result is the copy destination. This event can be used to provide a deep copy of instanceData, since PQcopyResult cannot do that. If the event procedure fails, the entire copy operation will fail and the dest result will be cleared. When returning a failure code, all cleanup must be performed as no PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY event will be sent for the destination result.

PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY

The result destroy event is fired in response to a PQclear. It is the event procedure's responsibility to properly clean up its event data as libpq has no ability to manage this memory. Failure to clean up will lead to memory leaks.

typedef struct
{
    PGresult *result;
} PGEventResultDestroy;

When a PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY event is received, the evtInfo pointer should be cast to a PGEventResultDestroy *. This event is fired prior to PQclear performing any other cleanup. The return value of the event procedure is ignored since there is no way of indicating a failure from PQclear. Also, an event procedure failure should not abort the process of cleaning up unwanted memory.

32.14.2. Event Callback Procedure

PGEventProc

PGEventProc is a typedef for a pointer to an event procedure, that is, the user callback function that receives events from libpq. The signature of an event procedure must be

int eventproc(PGEventId evtId, void *evtInfo, void *passThrough)

The evtId parameter indicates which PGEVT event occurred. The evtInfo pointer must be cast to the appropriate structure type to obtain further information about the event. The passThrough
parameter is the pointer provided to `PQregisterEventProc` when the event procedure was registered. The function should return a non-zero value if it succeeds and zero if it fails.

A particular event procedure can be registered only once in any `PGconn`. This is because the address of the procedure is used as a lookup key to identify the associated instance data.

```
Caution
On Windows, functions can have two different addresses: one visible from outside a DLL and another visible from inside the DLL. One should be careful that only one of these addresses is used with libpq's event-procedure functions, else confusion will result. The simplest rule for writing code that will work is to ensure that event procedures are declared static. If the procedure's address must be available outside its own source file, expose a separate function to return the address.
```

### 32.14.3. Event Support Functions

#### PQregisterEventProc

Registers an event callback procedure with libpq.

```
int PQregisterEventProc(PGconn *conn, PGEventProc proc,
                        const char *name, void *passThrough);
```

An event procedure must be registered once on each `PGconn` you want to receive events about. There is no limit, other than memory, on the number of event procedures that can be registered with a connection. The function returns a non-zero value if it succeeds and zero if it fails.

The `proc` argument will be called when a libpq event is fired. Its memory address is also used to lookup `instanceData`. The `name` argument is used to refer to the event procedure in error messages. This value cannot be `NULL` or a zero-length string. The name string is copied into the `PGconn`, so what is passed need not be long-lived. The `passThrough` pointer is passed to the `proc` whenever an event occurs. This argument can be `NULL`.

#### PQsetInstanceData

Sets the connection `conn`'s `instanceData` for procedure `proc` to `data`. This returns non-zero for success and zero for failure. (Failure is only possible if `proc` has not been properly registered in `conn`.)

```
int PQsetInstanceData(PGconn *conn, PGEventProc proc, void *data);
```

#### PQinstanceData

Returns the connection `conn`'s `instanceData` associated with procedure `proc`, or `NULL` if there is none.

```
void *PQinstanceData(const PGconn *conn, PGEventProc proc);
```

#### PQresultSetInstanceData

Sets the result’s `instanceData` for `proc` to `data`. This returns non-zero for success and zero for failure. (Failure is only possible if `proc` has not been properly registered in the result.)

```
int PQresultSetInstanceData(PGresult *res, PGEventProc proc, void *data);
```

Beware that any storage represented by `data` will not be accounted for by `PQresultMemorySize`, unless it is allocated using `PQresultAlloc`. (Doing so is recommendable because it eliminates the need to free such storage explicitly when the result is destroyed.)

#### PQresultInstanceData

Returns the result’s `instanceData` associated with `proc`, or `NULL` if there is none.

```
void *PQresultInstanceData(const PGresult *res, PGEventProc proc);
```

774
32.14.4. Event Example

Here is a skeleton example of managing private data associated with libpq connections and results.

```c
/* required header for libpq events (note: includes libpq-fe.h) */
#include <libpq-events.h>

/* The instanceData */
typedef struct
{
    int n;
    char *str;
} mydata;

/* PGEventProc */
static int myEventProc(PGEventId evtId, void *evtInfo, void *passThrough);

int
main(void)
{
    mydata *data;
    PGresult *res;
    PGconn *conn =
        PQconnectdb("dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=");

    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
    {
        /* PQerrorMessage's result includes a trailing newline */
        fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQfinish(conn);
        return 1;
    }

    /* called once on any connection that should receive events.
     * Sends a PGEVT_REGISTER to myEventProc.
     */
    if (!PQregisterEventProc(conn, myEventProc, "mydata_proc", NULL))
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "Cannot register PGEventProc
"
    }

    /* conn instanceData is available */
    data = PQinstanceData(conn, myEventProc);

    /* Sends a PGEVT_RESULTCREATE to myEventProc */
    res = PQexec(conn, "SELECT 1 + 1");

    /* result instanceData is available */
    data = PQresultInstanceData(res, myEventProc);

    /* If PG_COPYRES_EVENTS is used, sends a PGEVT_RESULTCOPY to myEventProc */
    res_copy = PQcopyResult(res, PG_COPYRES_TUPLES | PG_COPYRES_EVENTS);

    /* result instanceData is available if PG_COPYRES_EVENTS was
     * used during the PQcopyResult call.
```
data = PQresultInstanceData(res_copy, myEventProc);

/* Both clears send a PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY to myEventProc */
PQclear(res);
PQclear(res_copy);

/* Sends a PGEVT_CONNDESTROY to myEventProc */
PQfinish(conn);

return 0;
}

static int myEventProc(PGEventId evtId, void *evtInfo, void *passThrough)
{
    switch (evtId)
    {
    case PGEVT_REGISTER:
    {
        PGEventRegister *e = (PGEventRegister *)evtInfo;
        mydata *data = get_mydata(e->conn);

        /* associate app specific data with connection */
PQsetInstanceData(e->conn, myEventProc, data);
        break;
    }
    case PGEVT_CONNRESET:
    {
        PGEventConnReset *e = (PGEventConnReset *)evtInfo;
        mydata *data = PQinstanceData(e->conn, myEventProc);

        if (data)
            memset(data, 0, sizeof(mydata));
        break;
    }
    case PGEVT_CONNDESTROY:
    {
        PGEventConnDestroy *e = (PGEventConnDestroy *)evtInfo;
        mydata *data = PQinstanceData(e->conn, myEventProc);

        /* free instance data because the conn is being destroyed */
        if (data)
            free_mydata(data);
        break;
    }
    case PGEVT_RESULTCREATE:
    {
        PGEventResultCreate *e = (PGEventResultCreate *)evtInfo;
        mydata *conn_data = PQinstanceData(e->conn, myEventProc);
        mydata *res_data = dup_mydata(conn_data);

        /* associate app specific data with result (copy it from conn) */
PQsetResultInstanceData(e->result, myEventProc, res_data);
        break;
    }
}
case PGEVT_RESULTCOPY:
{
    PGEventResultCopy *e = (PGEventResultCopy *)evtInfo;
    mydata *src_data = PQresultInstanceData(e->src, myEventProc);
    mydata *dest_data = dup_mydata(src_data);

    /* associate app specific data with result (copy it from a result) */
    PQsetResultInstanceData(e->dest, myEventProc, dest_data);
    break;
}

case PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY:
{
    PGEventResultDestroy *e = (PGEventResultDestroy *)evtInfo;
    mydata *data = PQresultInstanceData(e->result, myEventProc);

    /* free instance data because the result is being destroyed */
    if (data)
        free_mydata(data);
    break;
}

/* unknown event ID, just return true. */
default:
    break;
}

return true; /* event processing succeeded */

32.15. Environment Variables

The following environment variables can be used to select default connection parameter values, which
will be used by PQconnectdb, PQsetdbLogin and PQsetdb if no value is directly specified by the
calling code. These are useful to avoid hard-coding database connection information into simple client
applications, for example.

- **PGHOST** behaves the same as the host connection parameter.
- **PGHOSTADDR** behaves the same as the hostaddr connection parameter. This can be set instead of or
  in addition to **PGHOST** to avoid DNS lookup overhead.
- **PGPORT** behaves the same as the port connection parameter.
- **PGDATABASE** behaves the same as the dbname connection parameter.
- **PGUSER** behaves the same as the user connection parameter.
- **PGPASSWORD** behaves the same as the password connection parameter. Use of this environment
  variable is not recommended for security reasons, as some operating systems allow non-root
  users to see process environment variables via ps; instead consider using a password file (see
  Section 32.16).
- **PGPASSFILE** behaves the same as the passfile connection parameter.
- **PGCHANNELBINDING** behaves the same as the channel_binding connection parameter.
- **PGSERVICE** behaves the same as the service connection parameter.
- **PGSERVICEFILE** specifies the name of the per-user connection service file. If not set, it defaults to
  ~/.pg_service.conf (see Section 32.17).
• `PGOPTIONS` behaves the same as the `options` connection parameter.

• `PGAPPNAME` behaves the same as the `application_name` connection parameter.

• `PGSSLMODE` behaves the same as the `sslmode` connection parameter.

• `PGREQUIRESSL` behaves the same as the `requiressl` connection parameter. This environment variable is deprecated in favor of the `PGSSLMODE` variable; setting both variables suppresses the effect of this one.

• `PGSSLCOMPRESS` behaves the same as the `sslcompression` connection parameter.

• `PGSSLCERT` behaves the same as the `sslcert` connection parameter.

• `PGSSLKEY` behaves the same as the `sslkey` connection parameter.

• `PGSSLROOTCERT` behaves the same as the `sslrootcert` connection parameter.

• `PGSSLRL` behaves the same as the `sslrl` connection parameter.

• `PGSSLCRDLDIR` behaves the same as the `sslcrldir` connection parameter.

• `PGSSSLNT` behaves the same as the `sslsni` connection parameter.

• `PGREQUIREPEER` behaves the same as the `requirepeers` connection parameter.

• `PGSSLMINPROTOCOLVERSION` behaves the same as the `ssl_min_protocol_version` connection parameter.

• `PGSSLMAXPROTOCOLVERSION` behaves the same as the `ssl_max_protocol_version` connection parameter.

• `PGSSENCMODE` behaves the same as the `gssencmode` connection parameter.

• `PGKRBSRVNAME` behaves the same as the `krbsrvname` connection parameter.

• `PGGSSLIB` behaves the same as the `gsslib` connection parameter.

• `PGCONNECT_TIMEOUT` behaves the same as the `connect_timeout` connection parameter.

• `PGCLIENTENCODING` behaves the same as the `client_encoding` connection parameter.

• `PGTARGETSESSIONATTRS` behaves the same as the `target_session_attrs` connection parameter.

The following environment variables can be used to specify default behavior for each Postgres Pro session. (See also the `ALTER ROLE` and `ALTER DATABASE` commands for ways to set default behavior on a per-user or per-database basis.)

• `PGDATESTYLE` sets the default style of date/time representation. (Equivalent to `SET datestyle TO ...`)

• `PGTZ` sets the default time zone. (Equivalent to `SET timezone TO ...`)

• `PGGEQO` sets the default mode for the genetic query optimizer. (Equivalent to `SET geqo TO ...`)

Refer to the SQL command `SET` for information on correct values for these environment variables.

The following environment variables determine internal behavior of libpq; they override compiled-in defaults.

• `PGSYSCONFDIR` sets the directory containing the `pg_service.conf` file and in a future version possibly other system-wide configuration files.

• `PGLOCALEDIR` sets the directory containing the `locale` files for message localization.

### 32.16. The Password File

The file `.pgpass` in a user’s home directory can contain passwords to be used if the connection requires a password (and no password has been specified otherwise). On Microsoft Windows the file is named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\pgpass.conf` (where `%APPDATA%` refers to the Application Data subdirectory in the user's profile). Alternatively, a password file can be specified using the connection parameter `passfile` or the environment variable `PGPASSFILE`. 

778
This file should contain lines of the following format:

```
hostname:port:database:username:password
```

(You can add a reminder comment to the file by copying the line above and preceding it with `#`.) Each of the first four fields can be a literal value, or `*`, which matches anything. The password field from the first line that matches the current connection parameters will be used. (Therefore, put more-specific entries first when you are using wildcards.) If an entry needs to contain `:` or `\`, escape this character with `\`. The host name field is matched to the `host` connection parameter if that is specified, otherwise to the `hostaddr` parameter if that is specified; if neither are given then the host name `localhost` is searched for. The host name `localhost` is also searched for when the connection is a Unix-domain socket connection and the `host` parameter matches `libpq`'s default socket directory path. In a standby server, a database field of `replication` matches streaming replication connections made to the primary server. The database field is of limited usefulness otherwise, because users have the same password for all databases in the same cluster.

On Unix systems, the permissions on a password file must disallow any access to `world` or `group`; achieve this by a command such as `chmod 0600 ~/.pgpass`. If the permissions are less strict than this, the file will be ignored. On Microsoft Windows, it is assumed that the file is stored in a directory that is secure, so no special permissions check is made.

### 32.17. The Connection Service File

The connection service file allows `libpq` connection parameters to be associated with a single service name. That service name can then be specified in a `libpq` connection string, and the associated settings will be used. This allows connection parameters to be modified without requiring a recompile of the `libpq`-using application. The service name can also be specified using the `PGSERVICE` environment variable.

Service names can be defined in either a per-user service file or a system-wide file. If the same service name exists in both the user and the system file, the user file takes precedence. By default, the per-user service file is located at `~/.pg_service.conf`; this can be overridden by setting the environment variable `PGSERVICEFILE`. The system-wide file is named `pg_service.conf`. By default it is sought in the `etc` directory of the PostgreSQL installation (use `pg_config --sysconfdir` to identify this directory precisely). Another directory, but not a different file name, can be specified by setting the environment variable `PGSYSCONFDIR`.

Either service file uses an “INI file” format where the section name is the service name and the parameters are connection parameters; see Section 32.1.2 for a list. For example:

```
# comment
[mydb]
host=somehost
port=5433
user=admin
```

An example file is provided in the PostgreSQL installation at `share/pg_service.conf.sample`.

Connection parameters obtained from a service file are combined with parameters obtained from other sources. A service file setting overrides the corresponding environment variable, and in turn can be overridden by a value given directly in the connection string. For example, using the above service file, a connection string `service=mydb port=5434` will use `host` `somehost`, `port` `5434`, `user` `admin`, and other parameters as set by environment variables or built-in defaults.

### 32.18. LDAP Lookup of Connection Parameters

If `libpq` has been compiled with LDAP support (option `--with-ldap` for `configure`) it is possible to retrieve connection options like `host` or `dbname` via LDAP from a central server. The advantage is that if the connection parameters for a database change, the connection information doesn't have to be updated on all client machines.
LDAP connection parameter lookup uses the connection service file pg_service.conf (see Section 32.17). A line in a pg_service.conf stanza that starts with ldap:// will be recognized as an LDAP URL and an LDAP query will be performed. The result must be a list of keyword = value pairs which will be used to set connection options. The URL must conform to RFC 1959 and be of the form

ldap://[hostname[:port]]/search_base?attribute?search_scope?filter

where hostname defaults to localhost and port defaults to 389.

Processing of pg_service.conf is terminated after a successful LDAP lookup, but is continued if the LDAP server cannot be contacted. This is to provide a fallback with further LDAP URL lines that point to different LDAP servers, classical keyword = value pairs, or default connection options. If you would rather get an error message in this case, add a syntactically incorrect line after the LDAP URL.

A sample LDAP entry that has been created with the LDIF file

version:1
dn:cn=mydatabase,dc=mycompany,dc=com
changetype:add
objectclass:top
objectclass:device
cn:mydatabase
description:host=dbserver.mycompany.com
description:port=5439
description:dbname=mydb
description:user=mydb_user
description:sslmode=require

might be queried with the following LDAP URL:

ldap://ldap.mycompany.com/dc=mycompany,dc=com?description?one?(cn=mydatabase)

You can also mix regular service file entries with LDAP lookups. A complete example for a stanza in pg_service.conf would be:

# only host and port are stored in LDAP, specify dbname and user explicitly
[customerdb]
dbname=customer
user=appuser
ldap://ldap.acme.com/cn=dbserver,cn=hosts?pgconnectinfo?base?(objectclass=*)

32.19. SSL Support

Postgres Pro has native support for using SSL connections to encrypt client/server communications for increased security. See Section 17.9 for details about the server-side SSL functionality.

libpq reads the system-wide OpenSSL configuration file. By default, this file is named openssl.cnf and is located in the directory reported by openssl version -d. This default can be overridden by setting environment variable OPENSSL_CONF to the name of the desired configuration file.

32.19.1. Client Verification of Server Certificates

By default, Postgres Pro will not perform any verification of the server certificate. This means that it is possible to spoof the server identity (for example by modifying a DNS record or by taking over the server IP address) without the client knowing. In order to prevent spoofing, the client must be able to verify the server's identity via a chain of trust. A chain of trust is established by placing a root (self-signed) certificate authority (CA) certificate on one computer and a leaf certificate signed by the root certificate on another computer. It is also possible to use an “intermediate” certificate which is signed by the root certificate and signs leaf certificates.

To allow the client to verify the identity of the server, place a root certificate on the client and a leaf certificate signed by the root certificate on the server. To allow the server to verify the identity of the
client, place a root certificate on the server and a leaf certificate signed by the root certificate on the client. One or more intermediate certificates (usually stored with the leaf certificate) can also be used to link the leaf certificate to the root certificate.

Once a chain of trust has been established, there are two ways for the client to validate the leaf certificate sent by the server. If the parameter `sslmode` is set to `verify-ca`, libpq will verify that the server is trustworthy by checking the certificate chain up to the root certificate stored on the client. If `sslmode` is set to `verify-full`, libpq will also verify that the server host name matches the name stored in the server certificate. The SSL connection will fail if the server certificate cannot be verified. `verify-full` is recommended in most security-sensitive environments.

In `verify-full` mode, the host name is matched against the certificate's Subject Alternative Name attribute(s), or against the Common Name attribute if no Subject Alternative Name of type `dNSName` is present. If the certificate's name attribute starts with an asterisk (`*`), the asterisk will be treated as a wildcard, which will match all characters except a dot (`.`). This means the certificate will not match subdomains. If the connection is made using an IP address instead of a host name, the IP address will be matched (without doing any DNS lookups).

To allow server certificate verification, one or more root certificates must be placed in the file `~/.postgresql/root.crt` in the user's home directory. (On Microsoft Windows the file is named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\root.crt`.) Intermediate certificates should also be added to the file if they are needed to link the certificate chain sent by the server to the root certificates stored on the client.

Certificate Revocation List (CRL) entries are also checked if the file `~/.postgresql/root.crl` exists (`%APPDATA%\postgresql\root.crt` on Microsoft Windows).

The location of the root certificate file and the CRL can be changed by setting the connection parameters `sslrootcert` and `sslcrl` or the environment variables `PGSSLROOTCERT` and `PGSSLCRL`.

**Note**

For backwards compatibility with earlier versions of Postgres Pro, if a root CA file exists, the behavior of `sslmode=require` will be the same as that of `verify-ca`, meaning the server certificate is validated against the CA. Relying on this behavior is discouraged, and applications that need certificate validation should always use `verify-ca` or `verify-full`.

### 32.19.2. Client Certificates

If the server attempts to verify the identity of the client by requesting the client's leaf certificate, libpq will send the certificates stored in file `~/.postgresql/postgresql.crt` in the user's home directory. The certificates must chain to the root certificate trusted by the server. A matching private key file `~/.postgresql/postgresql.key` must also be present. The private key file must not allow any access to world or group; achieve this by the command `chmod 0600 ~/.postgresql/postgresql.key`. On Microsoft Windows these files are named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\postgresql.crt` and `%APPDATA%\postgresql\postgresql.key`, and there is no special permissions check since the directory is presumed secure. The location of the certificate and key files can be overridden by the connection parameters `sslcert` and `sslkey` or the environment variables `PGSSLCERT` and `PGSSLKEY`.

The first certificate in `postgresql.crt` must be the client's certificate because it must match the client's private key. “Intermediate” certificates can be optionally appended to the file — doing so avoids requiring storage of intermediate certificates on the server (`ssl_ca_file`).

The certificate and key may be in PEM or ASN.1 DER format.

The key may be stored in cleartext or encrypted with a passphrase using any algorithm supported by OpenSSL, like AES-128. If the key is stored encrypted, then the passphrase may be provided in the `sslpassword` connection option. If an encrypted key is supplied and the `sslpassword` option
is absent or blank, a password will be prompted for interactively by OpenSSL with a **Enter PEM pass phrase:** prompt if a TTY is available. Applications can override the client certificate prompt and the handling of the `sslpassword` parameter by supplying their own key password callback; see `PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL`.

For instructions on creating certificates, see Section 17.9.5.

### 32.19.3. Protection Provided in Different Modes

The different values for the `sslmode` parameter provide different levels of protection. SSL can provide protection against three types of attacks:

**Eavesdropping**

If a third party can examine the network traffic between the client and the server, it can read both connection information (including the user name and password) and the data that is passed. SSL uses encryption to prevent this.

**Man-in-the-middle (MITM)**

If a third party can modify the data while passing between the client and server, it can pretend to be the server and therefore see and modify data *even if it is encrypted*. The third party can then forward the connection information and data to the original server, making it impossible to detect this attack. Common vectors to do this include DNS poisoning and address hijacking, whereby the client is directed to a different server than intended. There are also several other attack methods that can accomplish this. SSL uses certificate verification to prevent this, by authenticating the server to the client.

**Impersonation**

If a third party can pretend to be an authorized client, it can simply access data it should not have access to. Typically this can happen through insecure password management. SSL uses client certificates to prevent this, by making sure that only holders of valid certificates can access the server.

For a connection to be known SSL-secured, SSL usage must be configured on *both the client and the server* before the connection is made. If it is only configured on the server, the client may end up sending sensitive information (e.g., passwords) before it knows that the server requires high security. In libpq, secure connections can be ensured by setting the `sslmode` parameter to `verify-full` or `verify-ca`, and providing the system with a root certificate to verify against. This is analogous to using an `https` URL for encrypted web browsing.

Once the server has been authenticated, the client can pass sensitive data. This means that up until this point, the client does not need to know if certificates will be used for authentication, making it safe to specify that only in the server configuration.

All SSL options carry overhead in the form of encryption and key-exchange, so there is a trade-off that has to be made between performance and security. Table 32.1 illustrates the risks the different `sslmode` values protect against, and what statement they make about security and overhead.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>sslmode</code></th>
<th>Eavesdropping protection</th>
<th>MITM protection</th>
<th>Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>disable</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>I don't care about security, and I don’t want to pay the overhead of encryption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allow</td>
<td>Maybe</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>I don’t care about security, but I will pay the overhead of encryption if the server insists on it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>Maybe</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>I don’t care about encryption, but I wish to pay the overhead of encryption if the server supports it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The difference between `verify-ca` and `verify-full` depends on the policy of the root CA. If a public CA is used, `verify-ca` allows connections to a server that somebody else may have registered with the CA. In this case, `verify-full` should always be used. If a local CA is used, or even a self-signed certificate, using `verify-ca` often provides enough protection.

The default value for `sslmode` is `prefer`. As is shown in the table, this makes no sense from a security point of view, and it only promises performance overhead if possible. It is only provided as the default for backward compatibility, and is not recommended in secure deployments.

### 32.19.4. SSL Client File Usage

Table 32.2 summarizes the files that are relevant to the SSL setup on the client.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>~/.postgresql/postgresql.crt</code></td>
<td>client certificate</td>
<td>sent to server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>~/.postgresql/postgresql.key</code></td>
<td>client private key</td>
<td>proves client certificate sent by owner; does not indicate certificate owner is trustworthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>~/.postgresql/root.crt</code></td>
<td>trusted certificate authorities</td>
<td>checks that server certificate is signed by a trusted certificate authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>~/.postgresql/root.crl</code></td>
<td>certificates revoked by certificate authorities</td>
<td>server certificate must not be on this list</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 32.19.5. SSL Library Initialization

If your application initializes `libssl` and/or `libcrypto` libraries and libpq is built with SSL support, you should call `PQinitOpenSSL` to tell libpq that the `libssl` and/or `libcrypto` libraries have been initialized by your application, so that libpq will not also initialize those libraries.

```c
void PQinitOpenSSL(int do_ssl, int do_crypto);
```

When `do_ssl` is non-zero, libpq will initialize the OpenSSL library before first opening a database connection. When `do_crypto` is non-zero, the `libcrypto` library will be initialized. By default (if `PQinitOpenSSL` is not called), both libraries are initialized. When SSL support is not compiled in, this function is present but does nothing.
If your application uses and initializes either OpenSSL or its underlying libcrypto library, you must call this function with zeroes for the appropriate parameter(s) before first opening a database connection. Also be sure that you have done that initialization before opening a database connection.

PQinitSSL

Allows applications to select which security libraries to initialize.

```c
void PQinitSSL(int do_ssl);
```

This function is equivalent to PQinitOpenSSL(do_ssl, do_ssl). It is sufficient for applications that initialize both or neither of OpenSSL and libcrypto.

PQinitSSL has been present since PostgreSQL 8.0, while PQinitOpenSSL was added in PostgreSQL 8.4, so PQinitSSL might be preferable for applications that need to work with older versions of libpq.

### 32.20. Behavior in Threaded Programs

libpq is reentrant and thread-safe by default. You might need to use special compiler command-line options when you compile your application code. Refer to your system's documentation for information about how to build thread-enabled applications. This function allows the querying of libpq's thread-safe status:

PQisthreadsafefile

Returns the thread safety status of the libpq library.

```c
int PQisthreadsafefile();
```

Returns 1 if the libpq is thread-safe and 0 if it is not.

One thread restriction is that no two threads attempt to manipulate the same PGconn object at the same time. In particular, you cannot issue concurrent commands from different threads through the same connection object. (If you need to run concurrent commands, use multiple connections.)

PGresult objects are normally read-only after creation, and so can be passed around freely between threads. However, if you use any of the PGresult-modifying functions described in Section 32.12 or Section 32.14, it’s up to you to avoid concurrent operations on the same PGresult, too.

The deprecated functions PQrequestCancel and PQoidStatus are not thread-safe and should not be used in multithread programs. PQrequestCancel can be replaced by PQcancel. PQoidStatus can be replaced by PQoidValue.

If you are using Kerberos inside your application (in addition to inside libpq), you will need to do locking around Kerberos calls because Kerberos functions are not thread-safe. See function PQregisterThreadLock in the libpq source code for a way to do cooperative locking between libpq and your application.

### 32.21. Building libpq Programs

To build (i.e., compile and link) a program using libpq you need to do all of the following things:

- Include the `libpq-fe.h` header file:

  ```c
  #include <libpq-fe.h>
  ```

If you failed to do that then you will normally get error messages from your compiler similar to:

```c
foo.c: In function `main':
foo.c:34: `PGconn' undeclared (first use in this function)
foo.c:35: `PGresult' undeclared (first use in this function)
foo.c:54: `CONNECTION_BAD' undeclared (first use in this function)
foo.c:68: `PGRES_COMMAND_OK' undeclared (first use in this function)
```
foo.c:95: `PGRES_TUPLES_OK' undeclared (first use in this function)

- Point your compiler to the directory where the Postgres Pro header files were installed, by supplying the `\-I\directory' option to your compiler. (In some cases the compiler will look into the directory in question by default, so you can omit this option.) For instance, your compile command line could look like:

```
cc -c -I/usr/local/pgsql/include testprog.c
```

If you are using makefiles then add the option to the `CPPFLAGS' variable:

```
CPPFLAGS += -I/usr/local/pgsql/include
```

If there is any chance that your program might be compiled by other users then you should not hardcode the directory location like that. Instead, you can run the utility `pg_config' to find out where the header files are on the local system:

```
$ pg_config --includedir
/usr/local/include
```

If you have `pkg-config' installed, you can run instead:

```
$ pkg-config --cflags libpq
-I/usr/local/pgsql/include
```

Note that this will already include the `-I' in front of the path.

Failure to specify the correct option to the compiler will result in an error message such as:

```
testlibpq.c:8:22: libpq-fe.h: No such file or directory
```

- When linking the final program, specify the option `-lpq' so that the libpq library gets pulled in, as well as the option `-L\directory' to point the compiler to the directory where the libpq library resides. (Again, the compiler will search some directories by default.) For maximum portability, put the `-L' option before the `-lpq' option. For example:

```
cc -o testprog testprog1.o testprog2.o -L/usr/local/pgsql/lib -lpq
```

You can find out the library directory using `pg_config' as well:

```
$ pg_config --libdir
/usr/local/pgsql/lib
```

Or again use `pkg-config':

```
$ pkg-config --libs libpq
-L/usr/local/pgsql/lib -lpq
```

Note again that this prints the full options, not only the path.

Error messages that point to problems in this area could look like the following:

```
testlibpq.o: In function `main':
testlibpq.o(.text+0x60): undefined reference to `PQsetdbLogin'
testlibpq.o(.text+0x71): undefined reference to `PQstatus'
testlibpq.o(.text+0xa4): undefined reference to `PQerrorMessage'
```

This means you forgot `-lpq'.

```
/usr/bin/ld: cannot find `-lpq'
```

This means you forgot the `-L' option or did not specify the right directory.

### 32.22. Example Programs

These examples and others can be found in the directory `src/test/examples' in the source code distribution.
Example 32.1. libpq Example Program 1

/*
 * src/test/examples/testlibpq.c
 *
 * testlibpq.c
 *
 * Test the C version of libpq, the PostgreSQL frontend library.
 */
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include "libpq-fe.h"

static void
exit_nicely(PGconn *conn)
{
    PQfinish(conn);
    exit(1);
}

int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    const char *conninfo;
    PGconn     *conn;
    PGresult   *res;
    int         nFields;
    int         i,
                j;

    /*
     * If the user supplies a parameter on the command line, use it as the
     * conninfo string; otherwise default to setting dbname=postgres and using
     * environment variables or defaults for all other connection parameters.
     */
    if (argc > 1)
        conninfo = argv[1];
    else
        conninfo = "dbname = postgres";

    /* Make a connection to the database */
    conn = PQconnectdb(conninfo);

    /* Check to see that the backend connection was successfully made */
    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    /* Set always-secure search path, so malicious users can't take control. */
    res = PQexec(conn,
                  "SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false)");
    if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "SET failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    }
}
libpq — C Library

PQclear(res);
exit_nicely(conn);
}
/*
 * Should PQclear PGresult whenever it is no longer needed to avoid memory
 * leaks
 */
PQclear(res);
/*
 * Our test case here involves using a cursor, for which we must be inside
 * a transaction block. We could do the whole thing with a single
 * PQexec() of "select * from pg_database", but that's too trivial to make
 * a good example.
 */
/* Start a transaction block */
res = PQexec(conn, "BEGIN");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "BEGIN command failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}
PQclear(res);
/*
 * Fetch rows from pg_database, the system catalog of databases
 */
res = PQexec(conn, "DECLARE myportal CURSOR FOR select * from pg_database");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "DECLARE CURSOR failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}
PQclear(res);
res = PQexec(conn, "FETCH ALL in myportal");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "FETCH ALL failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}
/* first, print out the attribute names */
nFields = PQnfields(res);
for (i = 0; i < nFields; i++)
    printf("%-15s", PQfname(res, i));
printf("\n\n");
/* next, print out the rows */
for (i = 0; i < PQntuples(res); i++)
{
    for (j = 0; j < nFields; j++)
        printf("%-15s", PQgetvalue(res, i, j));
}
Example 32.2. libpq Example Program 2

/*
 * src/test/examples/testlibpq2.c
 *
 * testlibpq2.c
 *      Test of the asynchronous notification interface
 *
 * Start this program, then from psql in another window do
 *   NOTIFY TBL2;
 * Repeat four times to get this program to exit.
 *
 * Or, if you want to get fancy, try this:
 * populate a database with the following commands
 * (provided in src/test/examples/testlibpq2.sql):
 *
 *   CREATE SCHEMA TESTLIBPQ2;
 *   SET search_path = TESTLIBPQ2;
 *   CREATE TABLE TBL1 {i int4};
 *   CREATE TABLE TBL2 {i int4};
 *   CREATE RULE r1 AS ON INSERT TO TBL1 DO
 *     (INSERT INTO TBL2 VALUES (new.i); NOTIFY TBL2);
 *
 * Start this program, then from psql do this four times:
 *
 *   INSERT INTO TESTLIBPQ2.TBL1 VALUES (10);
 */

#ifndef WIN32
#include <windows.h>
#endif
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <errno.h>
#include <sys/time.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
static void
exit_nicely(PGconn *conn)
{
    PQfinish(conn);
    exit(1);
}

int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    const char *conninfo;
    PGconn     *conn;
    PGresult   *res;
    PGnotify   *notify;
    int         nnotifies;

    /*
     * If the user supplies a parameter on the command line, use it as the
     * conninfo string; otherwise default to setting dbname=postgres and using
     * environment variables or defaults for all other connection parameters.
     */
    if (argc > 1)
        conninfo = argv[1];
    else
        conninfo = "dbname = postgres";

    /* Make a connection to the database */
    conn = PQconnectdb(conninfo);

    /* Check to see that the backend connection was successfully made */
    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    /* Set always-secure search path, so malicious users can't take control. */
    res = PQexec(conn,
                 "SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false)");
    if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "SET failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQclear(res);
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    /* Should PQclear PGresult whenever it is no longer needed to avoid memory
     * leaks
     */
    PQclear(res);
/ * Issue LISTEN command to enable notifications from the rule's NOTIFY. *
res = PQexec(conn, "LISTEN TBL2");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "LISTEN command failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}
PQclear(res);
/* Quit after four notifies are received. */
nnotifies = 0;
while (nnotifies < 4)
{
    /*
    * Sleep until something happens on the connection. We use select(2)
    * to wait for input, but you could also use poll() or similar
    * facilities.
    */
    int sock;
    fd_set input_mask;
    sock = PQsocket(conn);
    if (sock < 0)
        break;            /* shouldn't happen */
    FD_ZERO(&input_mask);
    FD_SET(sock, &input_mask);
    if (select(sock + 1, &input_mask, NULL, NULL, NULL) < 0)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "select() failed: %s\n", strerror(errno));
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }
    /* Now check for input */
PQconsumeInput(conn);
    while ((notify = PQnotifies(conn)) != NULL)
    {
        fprintf(stderr,
            "ASYNC NOTIFY of '%s' received from backend PID %d\n",
            notify->relname, notify->be_pid);
        PQfreemem(notify);
        nnotifies++;
        PQconsumeInput(conn);
    }
    fprintf(stderr, "Done.\n");
    /* close the connection to the database and cleanup */
PQfinish(conn);
    return 0;
}
Example 32.3. libpq Example Program 3

/*
 * src/test/examples/testlibpq3.c
 *
 * testlibpq3.c
 *      Test out-of-line parameters and binary I/O.
 *
 * Before running this, populate a database with the following commands
 * (provided in src/test/examples/testlibpq3.sql):
 *
 * CREATE SCHEMA testlibpq3;
 * SET search_path = testlibpq3;
 * SET standard_conforming_strings = ON;
 * CREATE TABLE test1 (i int4, t text, b bytea);
 * INSERT INTO test1 values (1, 'joe''s place', '\000\001\002\003\004');
 * INSERT INTO test1 values (2, 'ho there', '\004\003\002\001\000');
 *
 * The expected output is:
 *
 * tuple 0: got
 *  i = (4 bytes) 1
 *  t = (11 bytes) 'joe's place'
 *  b = (5 bytes) \000\001\002\003\004
 *
 * tuple 0: got
 *  i = (4 bytes) 2
 *  t = (8 bytes) 'ho there'
 *  b = (5 bytes) \004\003\002\001\000
 */

#ifndef WIN32
#include <windows.h>
#endif

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
#include "libpq-fe.h"
/* for ntohl/htonl */
#include <netinet/in.h>
#include <arpa/inet.h>

static void
exit_nicely(PGconn *conn)
{
    PQfinish(conn);
    exit(1);
}

/*
* This function prints a query result that is a binary-format fetch from
* a table defined as in the comment above. We split it out because the
* main() function uses it twice.
* /
static void
show_binary_results(PGresult *res)
{
    int         i,
                j;
    int         i_fnum,
                t_fnum,
                b_fnum;

    /* Use PQfnumber to avoid assumptions about field order in result */
    i_fnum = PQfnumber(res, "i");
    t_fnum = PQfnumber(res, "t");
    b_fnum = PQfnumber(res, "b");

    for (i = 0; i < PQntuples(res); i++)
    {
        char       *iptr;
        char       *tptr;
        char       *bptr;
        int         blen;
        int         ival;

        /* Get the field values (we ignore possibility they are null!) */
        iptr = PQgetvalue(res, i, i_fnum);
        tptr = PQgetvalue(res, i, t_fnum);
        bptr = PQgetvalue(res, i, b_fnum);

        /* The binary representation of INT4 is in network byte order, which
         * we'd better coerce to the local byte order.
         */
        ival = ntohl(*((uint32_t *) iptr));

        /* The binary representation of TEXT is, well, text, and since libpq
         * was nice enough to append a zero byte to it, it'll work just fine
         * as a C string.
         * The binary representation of BYTEA is a bunch of bytes, which could
         * include embedded nulls so we have to pay attention to field length.
         */
        blen = PQgetlength(res, i, b_fnum);

        printf("tuple %d: got\n", i);
        printf(" i = (%d bytes) %d\n",
                PQgetlength(res, i, i_fnum), ival);
        printf(" t = (%d bytes) '%s'\n",
                PQgetlength(res, i, t_fnum), tptr);
        printf(" b = (%d bytes) \", blen);
        for (j = 0; j < blen; j++)
            printf("\%03o", bptr[j]);
        printf("\n\n");
    }
}
int main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    const char *conninfo;
    PGconn *conn;
    PGresult *res;
    const char *paramValues[1];
    int paramLengths[1];
    int paramFormats[1];
    uint32_t binaryIntVal;

    /* If the user supplies a parameter on the command line, use it as the
     * conninfo string; otherwise default to setting dbname=postgres and using
     * environment variables or defaults for all other connection parameters.
     */
    if (argc > 1)
        conninfo = argv[1];
    else
        conninfo = "dbname = postgres";

    /* Make a connection to the database */
    conn = PQconnectdb(conninfo);

    /* Check to see that the backend connection was successfully made */
    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    /* Set always-secure search path, so malicious users can't take control. */
    res = PQexec(conn, "SET search_path = testlibpq3");
    if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "SET failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQclear(res);
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }
    PQclear(res);

    /* The point of this program is to illustrate use of PQexecParams() with
     * out-of-line parameters, as well as binary transmission of data.
     * This first example transmits the parameters as text, but receives the
     * results in binary format. By using out-of-line parameters we can avoid
     * a lot of tedious mucking about with quoting and escaping, even though
     * the data is text. Notice how we don't have to do anything special with
     * the quote mark in the parameter value.
     */

    /* Here is our out-of-line parameter value */
    paramValues[0] = "joe's place";

    res = PQexecParams(conn,
                       "SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE t = $1",
                       1, paramLengths, paramFormats, paramValues, NULL, 0,
                       1, 0, NULL);

    /* Now we receive the results in binary format */
    if (PQresultStatus(res) == PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
    {
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "SELECT failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}

show_binary_results(res);

PQclear(res);

/*
 * In this second example we transmit an integer parameter in binary form,
 * and again retrieve the results in binary form.
 * Although we tell PQexecParams we are letting the backend deduce
 * parameter type, we really force the decision by casting the parameter
 * symbol in the query text.  This is a good safety measure when sending
 * binary parameters.
 */

/* Convert integer value "2" to network byte order */
binaryIntVal = htonl((uint32_t) 2);

/* Set up parameter arrays for PQexecParams */
paramValues[0] = (char *) &binaryIntVal;
paramLengths[0] = sizeof(binaryIntVal);
paramFormats[0] = 1;        /* binary */

res = PQexecParams(conn,
    "SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE i = $1::int4",
    1,       /* one param */
    NULL,    /* let the backend deduce param type */
    paramValues,
    NULL,    /* don't need param lengths since text */
    NULL,    /* default to all text params */
    1);      /* ask for binary results */

if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "SELECT failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}

show_binary_results(res);

PQclear(res);

/* close the connection to the database and cleanup */
PQfinish(conn);
return 0;
}
Chapter 33. Large Objects

Postgres Pro has a large object facility, which provides stream-style access to user data that is stored in a special large-object structure. Streaming access is useful when working with data values that are too large to manipulate conveniently as a whole.

This chapter describes the implementation and the programming and query language interfaces to Postgres Pro large object data. We use the libpq C library for the examples in this chapter, but most programming interfaces native to Postgres Pro support equivalent functionality. Other interfaces might use the large object interface internally to provide generic support for large values. This is not described here.

33.1. Introduction

All large objects are stored in a single system table named pg_largeobject. Each large object also has an entry in the system table pg_largeobject_metadata. Large objects can be created, modified, and deleted using a read/write API that is similar to standard operations on files.

Postgres Pro also supports a storage system called “TOAST”, which automatically stores values larger than a single database page into a secondary storage area per table. This makes the large object facility partially obsolete. One remaining advantage of the large object facility is that it allows values up to 4 TB in size, whereas TOASTed fields can be at most 1 GB. Also, reading and updating portions of a large object can be done efficiently, while most operations on a TOASTed field will read or write the whole value as a unit.

33.2. Implementation Features

The large object implementation breaks large objects up into “chunks” and stores the chunks in rows in the database. A B-tree index guarantees fast searches for the correct chunk number when doing random access reads and writes.

The chunks stored for a large object do not have to be contiguous. For example, if an application opens a new large object, seeks to offset 1000000, and writes a few bytes there, this does not result in allocation of 1000000 bytes worth of storage; only of chunks covering the range of data bytes actually written. A read operation will, however, read out zeroes for any unallocated locations preceding the last existing chunk. This corresponds to the common behavior of “sparsely allocated” files in Unix file systems.

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, large objects have an owner and a set of access permissions, which can be managed using GRANT and REVOKE. SELECT privileges are required to read a large object, and UPDATE privileges are required to write or truncate it. Only the large object's owner (or a database superuser) can delete, comment on, or change the owner of a large object. To adjust this behavior for compatibility with prior releases, see the lo_compat_privileges run-time parameter.

33.3. Client Interfaces

This section describes the facilities that Postgres Pro's libpq client interface library provides for accessing large objects. The Postgres Pro large object interface is modeled after the Unix file-system interface, with analogues of open, read, write, lseek, etc.

All large object manipulation using these functions must take place within an SQL transaction block, since large object file descriptors are only valid for the duration of a transaction.

If an error occurs while executing any one of these functions, the function will return an otherwise-impossible value, typically 0 or -1. A message describing the error is stored in the connection object and can be retrieved with PQerrorMessage.

Client applications that use these functions should include the header file libpq/libpq-fs.h and link with the libpq library.

Client applications cannot use these functions while a libpq connection is in pipeline mode.
Large Objects

33.3.1. Creating a Large Object

The function

```c
Oid lo_creat(PGconn *conn, int mode);
```

creates a new large object. The return value is the OID that was assigned to the new large object, or InvalidOid (zero) on failure. mode is unused and ignored as of PostgreSQL 8.1; however, for backward compatibility with earlier releases it is best to set it to INV_READ, INV_WRITE, or INV_READ | INV_WRITE. (These symbolic constants are defined in the header file libpq/libpq-fs.h.)

An example:

```c
inv_oid = lo_creat(conn, INV_READ|INV_WRITE);
```

The function

```c
Oid lo_create(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId);
```

also creates a new large object. The OID to be assigned can be specified by lobjId; if so, failure occurs if that OID is already in use for some large object. If lobjId is InvalidOid (zero) then lo_create assigns an unused OID (this is the same behavior as lo_creat). The return value is the OID that was assigned to the new large object, or InvalidOid (zero) on failure.

lo_create is new as of PostgreSQL 8.1; if this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return InvalidOid.

An example:

```c
inv_oid = lo_create(conn, desired_oid);
```

33.3.2. Importing a Large Object

To import an operating system file as a large object, call

```c
Oid lo_import(PGconn *conn, const char *filename);
```

filename specifies the operating system name of the file to be imported as a large object. The return value is the OID that was assigned to the new large object, or InvalidOid (zero) on failure. Note that the file is read by the client interface library, not by the server; so it must exist in the client file system and be readable by the client application.

The function

```c
Oid lo_import_with_oid(PGconn *conn, const char *filename, Oid lobjId);
```

also imports a new large object. The OID to be assigned can be specified by lobjId; if so, failure occurs if that OID is already in use for some large object. If lobjId is InvalidOid (zero) then lo_import_with_oid assigns an unused OID (this is the same behavior as lo_import). The return value is the OID that was assigned to the new large object, or InvalidOid (zero) on failure.

lo_import_with_oid is new as of PostgreSQL 8.4 and uses lo_create internally which is new in 8.1; if this function is run against 8.0 or before, it will fail and return InvalidOid.

33.3.3. Exporting a Large Object

To export a large object into an operating system file, call

```c
int lo_export(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, const char *filename);
```

The lobjId argument specifies the OID of the large object to export and the filename argument specifies the operating system name of the file. Note that the file is written by the client interface library, not by the server. Returns 1 on success, -1 on failure.

33.3.4. Opening an Existing Large Object

To open an existing large object for reading or writing, call

```c
int lo_open(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, int mode);
```
The `lobjId` argument specifies the OID of the large object to open. The `mode` bits control whether the object is opened for reading (INV_READ), writing (INV_WRITE), or both. (These symbolic constants are defined in the header file `libpq/libpq-fs.h`.) `lo_open` returns a (non-negative) large object descriptor for later use in `lo_read`, `lo_write`, `lo_lseek`, `lo_lseek64`, `lo_tell`, `lo_tell64`, `lo_truncate`, `lo_truncate64`, and `lo_close`. The descriptor is only valid for the duration of the current transaction. On failure, -1 is returned.

The server currently does not distinguish between modes `INV_WRITE` and `INV_READ | INV_WRITE`: you are allowed to read from the descriptor in either case. However there is a significant difference between these modes and `INV_READ` alone: with `INV_READ` you cannot write on the descriptor, and the data read from it will reflect the contents of the large object at the time of the transaction snapshot that was active when `lo_open` was executed, regardless of later writes by this or other transactions. Reading from a descriptor opened with `INV_WRITE` returns data that reflects all writes of other committed transactions as well as writes of the current transaction. This is similar to the behavior of `REPEATABLE READ` versus `READ COMMITTED` transaction modes for ordinary SQL `SELECT` commands.

`lo_open` will fail if `SELECT` privilege is not available for the large object, or if `INV_WRITE` is specified and `UPDATE` privilege is not available. (Prior to PostgreSQL 11, these privilege checks were instead performed at the first actual read or write call using the descriptor.) These privilege checks can be disabled with the `lo_compat_privileges` run-time parameter.

An example:

```c
inv_fd = lo_open(conn, inv_oid, INV_READ | INV_WRITE);
```

### 33.3.5. Writing Data to a Large Object

The function

```c
int lo_write(PGconn *conn, int fd, const char *buf, size_t len);
```

writes `len` bytes from `buf` (which must be of size `len`) to large object descriptor `fd`. The `fd` argument must have been returned by a previous `lo_open`. The number of bytes actually written is returned (in the current implementation, this will always equal `len` unless there is an error). In the event of an error, the return value is -1.

Although the `len` parameter is declared as `size_t`, this function will reject length values larger than `INT_MAX`. In practice, it's best to transfer data in chunks of at most a few megabytes anyway.

### 33.3.6. Reading Data from a Large Object

The function

```c
int lo_read(PGconn *conn, int fd, char *buf, size_t len);
```

reads up to `len` bytes from large object descriptor `fd` into `buf` (which must be of size `len`). The `fd` argument must have been returned by a previous `lo_open`. The number of bytes actually read is returned; this will be less than `len` if the end of the large object is reached first. In the event of an error, the return value is -1.

Although the `len` parameter is declared as `size_t`, this function will reject length values larger than `INT_MAX`. In practice, it's best to transfer data in chunks of at most a few megabytes anyway.

### 33.3.7. Seeking in a Large Object

To change the current read or write location associated with a large object descriptor, call

```c
int lo_lseek(PGconn *conn, int fd, int offset, int whence);
```

This function moves the current location pointer for the large object descriptor identified by `fd` to the new location specified by `offset`. The valid values for `whence` are `SEEK_SET` (seek from object start), `SEEK_CUR` (seek from current position), and `SEEK_END` (seek from object end). The return value is the new location pointer, or -1 on error.

When dealing with large objects that might exceed 2GB in size, instead use
Large Objects

pg_int64 lo_lseek64(PGconn *conn, int fd, pg_int64 offset, int whence);

This function has the same behavior as lo_lseek, but it can accept an offset larger than 2GB and/or deliver a result larger than 2GB. Note that lo_lseek will fail if the new location pointer would be greater than 2GB.

lo_lseek64 is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3. If this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return -1.

33.3.8. Obtaining the Seek Position of a Large Object

To obtain the current read or write location of a large object descriptor, call
int lo_tell(PGconn *conn, int fd);
If there is an error, the return value is -1.

When dealing with large objects that might exceed 2GB in size, instead use
pg_int64 lo_tell64(PGconn *conn, int fd);
This function has the same behavior as lo_tell, but it can deliver a result larger than 2GB. Note that lo_tell will fail if the current read/write location is greater than 2GB.

lo_tell64 is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3. If this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return -1.

33.3.9. Truncating a Large Object

To truncate a large object to a given length, call
int lo_truncate(PGconn *conn, int fd, size_t len);
This function truncates the large object descriptor fd to length len. The fd argument must have been returned by a previous lo_open. If len is greater than the large object's current length, the large object is extended to the specified length with null bytes ("\0". On success, lo_truncate returns zero. On error, the return value is -1.

The read/write location associated with the descriptor fd is not changed.

Although the len parameter is declared as size_t, lo_truncate will reject length values larger than INT_MAX.

When dealing with large objects that might exceed 2GB in size, instead use
int lo_truncate64(PGconn *conn, int fd, pg_int64 len);
This function has the same behavior as lo_truncate, but it can accept a len value exceeding 2GB.

lo_truncate is new as of PostgreSQL 8.3; if this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return -1.

lo_truncate64 is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3; if this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return -1.

33.3.10. Closing a Large Object Descriptor

A large object descriptor can be closed by calling
int lo_close(PGconn *conn, int fd);
where fd is a large object descriptor returned by lo_open. On success, lo_close returns zero. On error, the return value is -1.

Any large object descriptors that remain open at the end of a transaction will be closed automatically.

33.3.11. Removing a Large Object

To remove a large object from the database, call
int lo_unlink(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId);

The \texttt{lobjId} argument specifies the OID of the large object to remove. Returns 1 if successful, -1 on failure.

### 33.4. Server-Side Functions

Server-side functions tailored for manipulating large objects from SQL are listed in Table 33.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{lo_from_bytea}</td>
<td>Creates a large object and stores \texttt{data} in it. If \texttt{loid} is zero then the system will choose a free OID, otherwise that OID is used (with an error if some large object already has that OID). On success, the large object's OID is returned.</td>
<td>\texttt{lo_from_bytea(0, '\xff\xff\xff\xff\xff\xff')} \rightarrow 24528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{lo_put}</td>
<td>Writes \texttt{data} starting at the given offset within the large object; the large object is enlarged if necessary.</td>
<td>\texttt{lo_put(24528, 1, '\xaaff')}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{lo_get}</td>
<td>Extracts the large object's contents, or a substring thereof.</td>
<td>\texttt{lo_get(24528, 0, 3)} \rightarrow '\xaaff'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are additional server-side functions corresponding to each of the client-side functions described earlier; indeed, for the most part the client-side functions are simply interfaces to the equivalent server-side functions. The ones just as convenient to call via SQL commands are \texttt{lo_creat}, \texttt{lo_create}, \texttt{lo_unlink}, \texttt{lo_import}, and \texttt{lo_export}. Here are examples of their use:

```sql
CREATE TABLE image (  
    name            text,  
    raster          oid  
) ;
SELECT lo_creat(-1);     -- returns OID of new, empty large object
SELECT lo_create(43213); -- attempts to create large object with OID 43213
SELECT lo_unlink(173454); -- deletes large object with OID 173454

INSERT INTO image (name, raster)  
    VALUES ('beautiful image', lo_import('/etc/motd'));

INSERT INTO image (name, raster)  
    VALUES ('beautiful image', lo_import('/etc/motd', 68583));

SELECT lo_export(image.raster, '/tmp/motd') FROM image  
    WHERE name = 'beautiful image';
```

The server-side \texttt{lo_import} and \texttt{lo_export} functions behave considerably differently from their client-side analogs. These two functions read and write files in the server's file system, using the permissions of the database's owning user. Therefore, by default their use is restricted to superusers. In contrast, the client-side import and export functions read and write files in the client's file system, using the permissions of the client program. The client-side functions do not require any database privileges, except the privilege to read or write the large object in question.
It is possible to GRANT use of the server-side lo_import and lo_export functions to non-superusers, but careful consideration of the security implications is required. A malicious user of such privileges could easily parlay them into becoming superuser (for example by rewriting server configuration files), or could attack the rest of the server's file system without bothering to obtain database superuser privileges as such. Access to roles having such privilege must therefore be guarded just as carefully as access to superuser roles. Nonetheless, if use of server-side lo_import or lo_export is needed for some routine task, it's safer to use a role with such privileges than one with full superuser privileges, as that helps to reduce the risk of damage from accidental errors.

The functionality of lo_read and lo_write is also available via server-side calls, but the names of the server-side functions differ from the client side interfaces in that they do not contain underscores. You must call these functions as loread and lowrite.

33.5. Example Program

Example 33.1 is a sample program which shows how the large object interface in libpq can be used. Parts of the program are commented out for the reader's benefit.

Example 33.1. Large Objects with libpq Example Program

```c
/*-----------------------------------------------------------------
* testlo.c
*    test using large objects with libpq
*
* Portions Copyright (c) 1996-2021, PostgreSQL Global Development Group
* Portions Copyright (c) 1994, Regents of the University of California
* Portions Copyright (c) 2020-2021, Postgres Professional
*
*
* IDENTIFICATION
*    src/test/examples/testlo.c
* */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/stat.h>
#include <fcntl.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include "libpq-fe.h"
#include "libpq/libpq-fs.h"

#define BUFSIZE 1024

/*
 * importFile -
 *    import file "in_filename" into database as large object "lobjOid"
 *
*/

static Oid
importFile(PGconn *conn, char *filename)
```
Large Objects

Oid lobjId;
int lobj_fd;
char buf[BUFSIZE];
int nbytes,
    tmp;
int fd;

/*
 * open the file to be read in
 */
fd = open(filename, O_RDONLY, 0666);
if (fd < 0)
{
    /* error */
    fprintf(stderr, "cannot open unix file\"%s\"\n", filename);
}

/*
 * create the large object
 */
lobjId = lo_creat(conn, INV_READ | INV_WRITE);
if (lobjId == 0)
    fprintf(stderr, "cannot create large object");

lobj_fd = lo_open(conn, lobjId, INV_WRITE);

/*
 * read in from the Unix file and write to the inversion file
 */
while ((nbytes = read(fd, buf, BUFSIZE)) > 0)
{
    tmp = lo_write(conn, lobj_fd, buf, nbytes);
    if (tmp < nbytes)
        fprintf(stderr, "error while reading \"%s\", filename);
}

close(fd);
lo_close(conn, lobj_fd);

return lobjId;
}

static void
pickout(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, int start, int len)
{
    int lobj_fd;
    char *buf;
    int nbytes;
    int nread;

    lobj_fd = lo_open(conn, lobjId, INV_READ);
    if (lobj_fd < 0)
        fprintf(stderr, "cannot open large object \%u", lobjId);

    lo_lseek(conn, lobj_fd, start, SEEK_SET);
    buf = malloc(len + 1);

    nread = 0;
    while (len - nread > 0)
{ 
    nbytes = lo_read(conn, lobj_fd, buf, len - nread);
    buf[nbytes] = '\0';
    fprintf(stderr, ">>> %s", buf);
    nread += nbytes;
    if (nbytes <= 0)
        break; /* no more data? */
}
free(buf);
fprintf(stderr, "\n");
lo_close(conn, lobj_fd);
}

static void
overwrite(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, int start, int len)
{
    int         lobj_fd;
    char       *buf;
    int         nbytes;
    int         nwritten;
    int         i;

    lobj_fd = lo_open(conn, lobjId, INV_WRITE);
    if (lobj_fd < 0)
        fprintf(stderr, "cannot open large object %u", lobjId);

    lo_lseek(conn, lobj_fd, start, SEEK_SET);
    buf = malloc(len + 1);

    for (i = 0; i < len; i++)
        buf[i] = 'X';
    buf[i] = '\0';

    nwritten = 0;
    while (len - nwritten > 0)
    {
        nbytes = lo_write(conn, lobj_fd, buf + nwritten, len - nwritten);
        nwritten += nbytes;
        if (nbytes <= 0)
        {
            fprintf(stderr, "\nWRITE FAILED!\n");
            break;
        }
    }
free(buf);
fprintf(stderr, "\n");
lo_close(conn, lobj_fd);
}

/ *
* exportFile -
* export large object "lobjOid" to file "out_filename"
* *
*/
exportFile(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, char *filename)
int            lobj_fd;
char            buf[BUFSIZE];
int            nbytes,
               tmp;
int            fd;

/*
 * open the large object
 */
lobj_fd = lo_open(conn, lobjId, INV_READ);
if (lobj_fd < 0)
    fprintf(stderr, "cannot open large object %u", lobjId);

/*
 * open the file to be written to
 */
fd = open(filename, O_CREAT | O_WRONLY | O_TRUNC, 0666);
if (fd < 0)
    {                           /* error */
        fprintf(stderr, "cannot open unix file" "%s"",
                    filename);
    }

/*
 * read in from the inversion file and write to the Unix file
 */
while ((nbytes = lo_read(conn, lobj_fd, buf, BUFSIZE)) > 0)
    {
        tmp = write(fd, buf, nbytes);
        if (tmp < nbytes)
            {  
                fprintf(stderr, "error while writing "%s",
                            filename);
            }
    }

lo_close(conn, lobj_fd);
close(fd);

static void
exit_nicely(PGconn *conn)
{
    PQfinish(conn);
    exit(1);
}

int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    char            *in_filename,
                    *out_filename;
    char            *database;
    Oid             lobjOid;
    PGconn          *conn;
    PGresult        *res;

    if (argc != 4)
{  
    fprintf(stderr, "Usage: %s database_name in_filename out_filename\n", argv[0]);  
    exit(1);  
}

database = argv[1];  
in_filename = argv[2];  
out_filename = argv[3];  

/*  
 * set up the connection  
*/  
conn = PQsetdb(NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL, database);

/* check to see that the backend connection was successfully made */  
if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)  
{  
    fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));  
    exit_nicely(conn);  
}

/* Set always-secure search path, so malicious users can't take control. */  
res = PQexec(conn,  
    "SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false)");  
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)  
{  
    fprintf(stderr, "SET failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));  
    PQclear(res);  
    exit_nicely(conn);  
}

PQclear(res);

res = PQexec(conn, "begin");  
PQclear(res);

printf("importing file "%s" ...\n", in_filename);

/* lobjOid = importFile(conn, in_filename); */  
lobjOid = lo_import(conn, in_filename);

if (lobjOid == 0)  
{  
    fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", PQerrorMessage(conn));  
    else  
    {  
        printf("as large object %u.\n", lobjOid);

        printf("picking out bytes 1000-2000 of the large object\n");  
        pickout(conn, lobjOid, 1000, 1000);

        printf("overwriting bytes 1000-2000 of the large object with X's\n");  
        overwrite(conn, lobjOid, 1000, 1000);

        printf("exporting large object to file "%s" ...\n", out_filename);

        /* if (lo_export(conn, lobjOid, out_filename) < 0) */  
        fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", PQerrorMessage(conn));  
    }

res = PQexec(conn, "end");  
PQclear(res);
PQfinish(conn);
return 0;
}
Chapter 34. ECPG — Embedded SQL in C

This chapter describes the embedded SQL package for Postgres Pro. It was written by Linus Tolke (<linus@epact.se>) and Michael Meskes (<meskes@postgresql.org>). Originally it was written to work with C. It also works with C++, but it does not recognize all C++ constructs yet.

This documentation is quite incomplete. But since this interface is standardized, additional information can be found in many resources about SQL.

34.1. The Concept

An embedded SQL program consists of code written in an ordinary programming language, in this case C, mixed with SQL commands in specially marked sections. To build the program, the source code (*.pgc) is first passed through the embedded SQL preprocessor, which converts it to an ordinary C program (*.c), and afterwards it can be processed by a C compiler. (For details about the compiling and linking see Section 34.10.) Converted ECPG applications call functions in the libpq library through the embedded SQL library (ecpglib), and communicate with the Postgres Pro server using the normal frontend-backend protocol.

Embedded SQL has advantages over other methods for handling SQL commands from C code. First, it takes care of the tedious passing of information to and from variables in your C program. Second, the SQL code in the program is checked at build time for syntactical correctness. Third, embedded SQL in C is specified in the SQL standard and supported by many other SQL database systems. The Postgres Pro implementation is designed to match this standard as much as possible, and it is usually possible to port embedded SQL programs written for other SQL databases to Postgres Pro with relative ease.

As already stated, programs written for the embedded SQL interface are normal C programs with special code inserted to perform database-related actions. This special code always has the form:

EXEC SQL ...;

These statements syntactically take the place of a C statement. Depending on the particular statement, they can appear at the global level or within a function.

Embedded SQL statements follow the case-sensitivity rules of normal SQL code, and not those of C. Also they allow nested C-style comments as per the SQL standard. The C part of the program, however, follows the C standard of not accepting nested comments. Embedded SQL statements likewise use SQL rules, not C rules, for parsing quoted strings and identifiers. (See Section 4.1.2.1 and Section 4.1.1 respectively. Note that ECPG assumes that standard_conforming_strings is on.) Of course, the C part of the program follows C quoting rules.

The following sections explain all the embedded SQL statements.

34.2. Managing Database Connections

This section describes how to open, close, and switch database connections.

34.2.1. Connecting to the Database Server

One connects to a database using the following statement:

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO target [AS connection-name] [USER user-name];

The target can be specified in the following ways:

- dbname[@hostname][:port]
- tcp:postgresql://hostname[:port] [/dbname]?options]
- unix:postgresql://localhost[:port] [/dbname]?options]
- an SQL string literal containing one of the above forms
- a reference to a character variable containing one of the above forms (see examples)
The connection target `DEFAULT` initiates a connection to the default database under the default user name. No separate user name or connection name can be specified in that case.

If you specify the connection target directly (that is, not as a string literal or variable reference), then the components of the target are passed through normal SQL parsing; this means that, for example, the `hostname` must look like one or more SQL identifiers separated by dots, and those identifiers will be case-folded unless double-quoted. Values of any `options` must be SQL identifiers, integers, or variable references. Of course, you can put nearly anything into an SQL identifier by double-quoting it. In practice, it is probably less error-prone to use a (single-quoted) string literal or a variable reference than to write the connection target directly.

There are also different ways to specify the user name:

- `username`
- `username/password`
- `username IDENTIFIED BY password`
- `username USING password`

As above, the parameters `username` and `password` can be an SQL identifier, an SQL string literal, or a reference to a character variable.

If the connection target includes any `options`, those consist of `keyword=value` specifications separated by ampersands (`&`). The allowed key words are the same ones recognized by libpq (see Section 32.1.2). Spaces are ignored before any `keyword` or `value`, though not within or after one. Note that there is no way to write `&` within a `value`.

Notice that when specifying a socket connection (with the `unix:` prefix), the host name must be exactly `localhost`. To select a non-default socket directory, write the directory’s pathname as the value of a host `option` in the `options` part of the target.

The `connection-name` is used to handle multiple connections in one program. It can be omitted if a program uses only one connection. The most recently opened connection becomes the current connection, which is used by default when an SQL statement is to be executed (see later in this chapter).

Here are some examples of `CONNECT` statements:

```sql
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO mydb@sql.mydomain.com;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://sql.mydomain.com/mydb AS myconnection USER john;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
const char *target = "mydb@sql.mydomain.com";
const char *user = "john";
const char *passwd = "secret";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
... EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :target USER :user USING :passwd;
/* or EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :target USER :user/:passwd; */
```

The last example makes use of the feature referred to above as character variable references. You will see in later sections how C variables can be used in SQL statements when you prefix them with a colon.

Be advised that the format of the connection target is not specified in the SQL standard. So if you want to develop portable applications, you might want to use something based on the last example above to encapsulate the connection target string somewhere.

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin each session by removing publicly-writable schemas from `search_path`. For example, add `options=-c`
search_path=to options, or issue \texttt{EXEC SQL SELECT pg\_catalog.set\_config('search\_path', '', false); after connecting. This consideration is not specific to ECPG; it applies to every interface for executing arbitrary SQL commands.

### 34.2.2. Choosing a Connection

SQL statements in embedded SQL programs are by default executed on the current connection, that is, the most recently opened one. If an application needs to manage multiple connections, then there are three ways to handle this.

The first option is to explicitly choose a connection for each SQL statement, for example:

\[
\text{EXEC SQL AT connection-name SELECT ...;}
\]

This option is particularly suitable if the application needs to use several connections in mixed order.

If your application uses multiple threads of execution, they cannot share a connection concurrently. You must either explicitly control access to the connection (using mutexes) or use a connection for each thread.

The second option is to execute a statement to switch the current connection. That statement is:

\[
\text{EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION connection-name;}
\]

This option is particularly convenient if many statements are to be executed on the same connection.

Here is an example program managing multiple database connections:

```c
#include <stdio.h>

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char dbname[1024];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

int main()
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb1 AS con1 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg\_catalog.set\_config('search\_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb2 AS con2 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg\_catalog.set\_config('search\_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb3 AS con3 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg\_catalog.set\_config('search\_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    /* This query would be executed in the last opened database "testdb3". */
    EXEC SQL SELECT current\_database() INTO :dbname;
    printf("current=%s (should be testdb3)\n", dbname);

    /* Using "AT" to run a query in "testdb2" */
    EXEC SQL AT con2 SELECT current\_database() INTO :dbname;
    printf("current=%s (should be testdb2)\n", dbname);

    /* Switch the current connection to "testdb1". */
    EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION con1;

    EXEC SQL SELECT current\_database() INTO :dbname;
    printf("current=%s (should be testdb1)\n", dbname);

    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
    return 0;
}
```
This example would produce this output:

```
current=testdb3 (should be testdb3)
current=testdb2 (should be testdb2)
current=testdb1 (should be testdb1)
```

The third option is to declare an SQL identifier linked to the connection, for example:

```
EXEC SQL AT connection-name DECLARE statement-name STATEMENT;
EXEC SQL PREPARE statement-name FROM :dyn-string;
```

Once you link an SQL identifier to a connection, you execute dynamic SQL without an AT clause. Note that this option behaves like preprocessor directives, therefore the link is enabled only in the file.

Here is an example program using this option:

```c
#include <stdio.h>

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char dbname[128];
char *dyn_sql = "SELECT current_database()";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

int main(){
  EXEC SQL CONNECT TO postgres AS con1;
  EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con2;
  EXEC SQL AT con1 DECLARE stmt STATEMENT;
  EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt FROM :dyn_sql;
  EXEC SQL EXECUTE stmt INTO :dbname;
  printf("%s\n", dbname);

  EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
  return 0;
}
```

This example would produce this output, even if the default connection is testdb:

```
postgres
```

### 34.2.3. Closing a Connection

To close a connection, use the following statement:

```
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT [connection];
```

The `connection` can be specified in the following ways:

- `connection-name`
- `DEFAULT`
- `CURRENT`
- `ALL`

If no connection name is specified, the current connection is closed.

It is good style that an application always explicitly disconnect from every connection it opened.

### 34.3. Running SQL Commands

Any SQL command can be run from within an embedded SQL application. Below are some examples of how to do that.

#### 34.3.1. Executing SQL Statements

Creating a table:
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE foo (number integer, ascii char(16));
EXEC SQL CREATE UNIQUE INDEX num1 ON foo(number);
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

Inserting rows:
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO foo (number, ascii) VALUES (9999, 'doodad');
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

Deleting rows:
EXEC SQL DELETE FROM foo WHERE number = 9999;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

Updates:
EXEC SQL UPDATE foo
    SET ascii = 'foobar'
    WHERE number = 9999;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

SELECT statements that return a single result row can also be executed using EXEC SQL directly. To handle result sets with multiple rows, an application has to use a cursor; see Section 34.3.2 below. (As a special case, an application can fetch multiple rows at once into an array host variable; see Section 34.4.4.3.1.)

Single-row select:
EXEC SQL SELECT foo INTO :FooBar FROM table1 WHERE ascii = 'doodad';

Also, a configuration parameter can be retrieved with the SHOW command:
EXEC SQL SHOW search_path INTO :var;

The tokens of the form :something are host variables, that is, they refer to variables in the C program. They are explained in Section 34.4.

34.3.2. Using Cursors
To retrieve a result set holding multiple rows, an application has to declare a cursor and fetch each row from the cursor. The steps to use a cursor are the following: declare a cursor, open it, fetch a row from the cursor, repeat, and finally close it.

Select using cursors:
EXEC SQL DECLARE foo_bar CURSOR FOR
    SELECT number, ascii FROM foo
    ORDER BY ascii;
EXEC SQL OPEN foo_bar;
EXEC SQL FETCH foo_bar INTO :FooBar, DooDad;
...
EXEC SQL CLOSE foo_bar;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

For more details about declaring a cursor, see DECLARE; for more details about fetching rows from a cursor, see FETCH.

Note
The ECPG DECLARE command does not actually cause a statement to be sent to the Postgres Pro backend. The cursor is opened in the backend (using the backend’s DECLARE command) at the point when the OPEN command is executed.
34.3.3. Managing Transactions

In the default mode, statements are committed only when EXEC SQL COMMIT is issued. The embedded SQL interface also supports autocommit of transactions (similar to psql’s default behavior) via the -t command-line option to ecpg (see ecpg) or via the EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO ON statement. In autocommit mode, each command is automatically committed unless it is inside an explicit transaction block. This mode can be explicitly turned off using EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO OFF.

The following transaction management commands are available:

```c
EXEC SQL COMMIT
    Commit an in-progress transaction.

EXEC SQL ROLLBACK
    Roll back an in-progress transaction.

EXEC SQL PREPARE TRANSACTION transaction_id
    Prepare the current transaction for two-phase commit.

EXEC SQL COMMIT PREPARED transaction_id
    Commit a transaction that is in prepared state.

EXEC SQL ROLLBACK PREPARED transaction_id
    Roll back a transaction that is in prepared state.

EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO ON
    Enable autocommit mode.

EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO OFF
    Disable autocommit mode. This is the default.
```

34.3.4. Prepared Statements

When the values to be passed to an SQL statement are not known at compile time, or the same statement is going to be used many times, then prepared statements can be useful.

The statement is prepared using the command PREPARE. For the values that are not known yet, use the placeholder “?”:

```c
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM "SELECT oid, datname FROM pg_database WHERE oid = ?";
```

If a statement returns a single row, the application can call EXECUTE after PREPARE to execute the statement, supplying the actual values for the placeholders with a USING clause:

```c
EXEC SQL EXECUTE stmt1 INTO :dboid, :dbname USING 1;
```

If a statement returns multiple rows, the application can use a cursor declared based on the prepared statement. To bind input parameters, the cursor must be opened with a USING clause:

```c
EXEC SQL DECLARE foo_bar CURSOR FOR stmt1;
/* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop */
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;
EXEC SQL OPEN foo_bar USING 100;
... while (1)
{
```
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM foo_bar INTO :dboid, :dbname;
...
EXEC SQL CLOSE foo_bar;

When you don't need the prepared statement anymore, you should deallocate it:
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE PREPARE name;

For more details about PREPARE, see PREPARE. Also see Section 34.5 for more details about using placeholders and input parameters.

### 34.4. Using Host Variables

In Section 34.3 you saw how you can execute SQL statements from an embedded SQL program. Some of those statements only used fixed values and did not provide a way to insert user-supplied values into statements or have the program process the values returned by the query. Those kinds of statements are not really useful in real applications. This section explains in detail how you can pass data between your C program and the embedded SQL statements using a simple mechanism called host variables. In an embedded SQL program we consider the SQL statements to be guests in the C program code which is the host language. Therefore the variables of the C program are called host variables.

Another way to exchange values between Postgres Pro backends and ECPG applications is the use of SQL descriptors, described in Section 34.7.

#### 34.4.1. Overview

Passing data between the C program and the SQL statements is particularly simple in embedded SQL. Instead of having the program paste the data into the statement, which entails various complications, such as properly quoting the value, you can simply write the name of a C variable into the SQL statement, prefixed by a colon. For example:

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sometable VALUES (:v1, 'foo', :v2);

This statement refers to two C variables named v1 and v2 and also uses a regular SQL string literal, to illustrate that you are not restricted to use one kind of data or the other.

This style of inserting C variables in SQL statements works anywhere a value expression is expected in an SQL statement.

#### 34.4.2. Declare Sections

To pass data from the program to the database, for example as parameters in a query, or to pass data from the database back to the program, the C variables that are intended to contain this data need to be declared in specially marked sections, so the embedded SQL preprocessor is made aware of them.

This section starts with:

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;

and ends with:

EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

Between those lines, there must be normal C variable declarations, such as:

```c
int   x = 4;
char  foo[16], bar[16];
```

As you can see, you can optionally assign an initial value to the variable. The variable's scope is determined by the location of its declaring section within the program. You can also declare variables with the following syntax which implicitly creates a declare section:

EXEC SQL int i = 4;

You can have as many declare sections in a program as you like.
The declarations are also echoed to the output file as normal C variables, so there's no need to declare them again. Variables that are not intended to be used in SQL commands can be declared normally outside these special sections.

The definition of a structure or union also must be listed inside a DECLARE section. Otherwise the preprocessor cannot handle these types since it does not know the definition.

### 34.4.3. Retrieving Query Results

Now you should be able to pass data generated by your program into an SQL command. But how do you retrieve the results of a query? For that purpose, embedded SQL provides special variants of the usual commands `SELECT` and `FETCH`. These commands have a special INTO clause that specifies which host variables the retrieved values are to be stored in. `SELECT` is used for a query that returns only single row, and `FETCH` is used for a query that returns multiple rows, using a cursor.

Here is an example:

```c
/*
 * assume this table:
 * CREATE TABLE test1 (a int, b varchar(50));
*/

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int v1;
    VARCHAR v2;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...

EXEC SQL SELECT a, b INTO :v1, :v2 FROM test;

So the INTO clause appears between the select list and the FROM clause. The number of elements in the select list and the list after INTO (also called the target list) must be equal.

Here is an example using the command `FETCH`:

```c
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int v1;
    VARCHAR v2;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...

EXEC SQL DECLARE foo CURSOR FOR SELECT a, b FROM test;
...

do
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM foo INTO :v1, :v2;
    ...
} while (...);

Here the INTO clause appears after all the normal clauses.

### 34.4.4. Type Mapping

When ECPG applications exchange values between the Postgres Pro server and the C application, such as when retrieving query results from the server or executing SQL statements with input parameters, the values need to be converted between Postgres Pro data types and host language variable types (C
In this respect, there are two kinds of data types: Some simple Postgres Pro data types, such as `integer` and `text`, can be read and written by the application directly. Other Postgres Pro data types, such as `timestamp` and `numeric` can only be accessed through special library functions; see Section 34.4.4.2.

Table 34.1 shows which Postgres Pro data types correspond to which C data types. When you wish to send or receive a value of a given Postgres Pro data type, you should declare a C variable of the corresponding C data type in the declare section.

### Table 34.1. Mapping Between Postgres Pro Data Types and C Variable Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Postgres Pro data type</th>
<th>Host variable type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>smallint</td>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>long long int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>decimal(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric</td>
<td>numeric(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>real</td>
<td>float</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double precision</td>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smallserial</td>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serial</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigserial</td>
<td>long long int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>unsigned int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character( n), varchar( n), text</td>
<td>char[n+1], VARCHAR[n+1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>char[NAMEDATALEN]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>timestamp(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval</td>
<td>interval(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>date(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>bool(^b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytea</td>
<td>char *, bytea[n]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)This type can only be accessed through special library functions; see Section 34.4.4.2.

\(^b\)declared in `ecpglib.h` if not native

### 34.4.4.1. Handling Character Strings

To handle SQL character string data types, such as `varchar` and `text`, there are two possible ways to declare the host variables.

**One way is using** `char[]`, **an array of** `char`, **which is the most common way to handle character data in C.**

```sql
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char str[50];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

Note that you have to take care of the length yourself. If you use this host variable as the target variable of a query which returns a string with more than 49 characters, a buffer overflow occurs.

**The other way is using the** `VARCHAR` **type, which is a special type provided by ECPG. The definition on an array of type `VARCHAR` is converted into a named `struct` for every variable. A declaration like:**

```sql
VARCHAR var[180];
```

is converted into:
struct varchar_var { int len; char arr[180]; } var;

The member arr hosts the string including a terminating zero byte. Thus, to store a string in a VARCHAR host variable, the host variable has to be declared with the length including the zero byte terminator. The member len holds the length of the string stored in the arr without the terminating zero byte. When a host variable is used as input for a query, if strlen(arr) and len are different, the shorter one is used.

VARCHAR can be written in upper or lower case, but not in mixed case.

char and VARCHAR host variables can also hold values of other SQL types, which will be stored in their string forms.

### 34.4.4.2. Accessing Special Data Types

ECPG contains some special types that help you to interact easily with some special data types from the Postgres Pro server. In particular, it has implemented support for the numeric, decimal, date, timestamp, and interval types. These data types cannot usefully be mapped to primitive host variable types (such as int, long long int, or char[]), because they have a complex internal structure. Applications deal with these types by declaring host variables in special types and accessing them using functions in the pgtypes library. The pgtypes library, described in detail in Section 34.6 contains basic functions to deal with those types, such that you do not need to send a query to the SQL server just for adding an interval to a time stamp for example.

The follow subsections describe these special data types. For more details about pgtypes library functions, see Section 34.6.

#### 34.4.4.2.1. timestamp, date

Here is a pattern for handling timestamp variables in the ECPG host application.

First, the program has to include the header file for the timestamp type:

```c
#include <pgtypes_timestamp.h>
```

Next, declare a host variable as type timestamp in the declare section:

```sql
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
timestamp ts;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

And after reading a value into the host variable, process it using pgtypes library functions. In following example, the timestamp value is converted into text (ASCII) form with the PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc() function:

```sql
EXEC SQL SELECT now()::timestamp INTO :ts;
printf("ts = %s\n", PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc(ts));
```

This example will show some result like following:

```
xs = 2010-06-27 18:03:56.949343
```

In addition, the DATE type can be handled in the same way. The program has to include pgtypes_date.h, declare a host variable as the date type and convert a DATE value into a text form using PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc() function. For more details about the pgtypes library functions, see Section 34.6.

#### 34.4.4.2.2. interval

The handling of the interval type is also similar to the timestamp and date types. It is required, however, to allocate memory for an interval type value explicitly. In other words, the memory space for the variable has to be allocated in the heap memory, not in the stack memory.

Here is an example program:

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
```
```c
#include <pgtypes_interval.h>

int main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    interval *in;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    in = PGTYPESinterval_new();
    EXEC SQL SELECT '1 min'::interval INTO :in;
    printf("interval = %s\n", PGTYPESinterval_to_asc(in));
    PGTYPESinterval_free(in);

    EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
    return 0;
}
```

### 34.4.4.2.3. numeric, decimal

The handling of the `numeric` and `decimal` types is similar to the `interval` type: It requires defining a pointer, allocating some memory space on the heap, and accessing the variable using the pgtypes library functions. For more details about the pgtypes library functions, see Section 34.6.

No functions are provided specifically for the `decimal` type. An application has to convert it to a `numeric` variable using a pgtypes library function to do further processing.

Here is an example program handling `numeric` and `decimal` type variables.

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <pgtypes_numeric.h>

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;

int main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    numeric *num;
    numeric *num2;
    decimal *dec;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    num = PGTYPESnumeric_new();
    dec = PGTYPESdecimal_new();

    EXEC SQL SELECT 12.345::numeric(4,2), 23.456::decimal(4,2) INTO :num, :dec;
    printf("numeric = %s\n", PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc(num, 0));
    printf("numeric = %s\n", PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc(num, 1));
    printf("numeric = %s\n", PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc(num, 2));
```
/* Convert decimal to numeric to show a decimal value. */
num2 = PG_TYPES_numeric_new();
PG_TYPES_numeric_from_decimal(dec, num2);

printf("decimal = %s\n", PG_TYPES_numeric_to_asc(num2, 0));
printf("decimal = %s\n", PG_TYPES_numeric_to_asc(num2, 1));
printf("decimal = %s\n", PG_TYPES_numeric_to_asc(num2, 2));

PG_TYPES_numeric_free(num2);
PG_TYPES_decimal_free(dec);
PG_TYPES_numeric_free(num);

EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
return 0;
}

### 34.4.4.3. Host Variables with Nonprimitive Types

As a host variable you can also use arrays, typedefs, structs, and pointers.

#### 34.4.4.3.1. Arrays

There are two use cases for arrays as host variables. The first is a way to store some text string in `char[]` or `VARCHAR[]`, as explained in Section 34.4.4.1. The second use case is to retrieve multiple rows from a query result without using a cursor. Without an array, to process a query result consisting of multiple rows, it is required to use a cursor and the `FETCH` command. But with array host variables, multiple rows can be received at once. The length of the array has to be defined to be able to accommodate all rows, otherwise a buffer overflow will likely occur.

Following example scans the `pg_database` system table and shows all OIDs and names of the available databases:

```c
int main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int dbid[8];
    char dbname[8][16];
    int i;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    memset(dbname, 0, sizeof(char)* 16 * 8);
    memset(dbid, 0, sizeof(int) * 8);
```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb;
EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

/* Retrieve multiple rows into arrays at once. */
EXEC SQL SELECT oid, datname INTO :dbid, :dbname FROM pg_database;
for (i = 0; i < 8; i++)
    printf("oid=%d, dbname=%s\n", dbid[i], dbname[i]);
EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
return 0;
}

This example shows following result. (The exact values depend on local circumstances.)

oid=1, dbname=template1
oid=11510, dbname=template0
oid=11511, dbname=postgres
oid=313780, dbname=testdb
oid=0, dbname=
oid=0, dbname=
oid=0, dbname=

34.4.4.3.2. Structures

A structure whose member names match the column names of a query result, can be used to retrieve multiple columns at once. The structure enables handling multiple column values in a single host variable.

The following example retrieves OIDs, names, and sizes of the available databases from the `pg_database` system table and using the `pg_database_size()` function. In this example, a structure variable `dbinfo_t` with members whose names match each column in the `SELECT` result is used to retrieve one result row without putting multiple host variables in the `FETCH` statement.

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    typedef struct
    {
        int oid;
        char datname[65];
        long long int size;
    } dbinfo_t;

dbinfo_t dbval;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

memset(&dbval, 0, sizeof(dbinfo_t));
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT oid, datname, pg_database_size(oid) AS size
FROM pg_database;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;

/* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop */
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    /* Fetch multiple columns into one structure. */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :dbval;
}
/* Print members of the structure. */
printf("oid=%d, datname=%s, size=%lld\n", dbval.oid, dbval.datname,
        dbval.size);
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;

This example shows following result. (The exact values depend on local circumstances.)
oid=1, datname=template1, size=4324580
oid=11510, datname=template0, size=4243460
oid=11511, datname=postgres, size=4324580
oid=313780, datname=testdb, size=8183012

Structure host variables “absorb” as many columns as the structure as fields. Additional columns can be
assigned to other host variables. For example, the above program could also be restructured like this, with the size variable outside the structure:

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
typedef struct
{
    int oid;
    char datname[65];
} dbinfo_t;

dbinfo_t dbval;
long long int size;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

memset(&dbval, 0, sizeof(dbinfo_t));

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT oid, datname, pg_database_size(oid) AS size
FROM pg_database;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;

/* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop */
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    /* Fetch multiple columns into one structure. */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :dbval, :size;

    /* Print members of the structure. */
    printf("oid=%d, datname=%s, size=%lld\n", dbval.oid, dbval.datname, size);
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;

34.4.4.3.3. Typedefs

Use the typedef keyword to map new types to already existing types.
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
typedef char mychartype[40];
typedef long serial_t;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

Note that you could also use:
EXEC SQL TYPE serial_t IS long;
This declaration does not need to be part of a declare section.

### 34.4.4.3.4. Pointers

You can declare pointers to the most common types. Note however that you cannot use pointers as target variables of queries without auto-allocation. See Section 34.7 for more information on auto-allocation.

```sql
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
   int   *intp;
   char **charp;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

### 34.4.5. Handling Nonprimitive SQL Data Types

This section contains information on how to handle nonscalar and user-defined SQL-level data types in ECPG applications. Note that this is distinct from the handling of host variables of nonprimitive types, described in the previous section.

#### 34.4.5.1. Arrays

Multi-dimensional SQL-level arrays are not directly supported in ECPG. One-dimensional SQL-level arrays can be mapped into C array host variables and vice-versa. However, when creating a statement ecpg does not know the types of the columns, so that it cannot check if a C array is input into a corresponding SQL-level array. When processing the output of an SQL statement, ecpg has the necessary information and thus checks if both are arrays.

If a query accesses elements of an array separately, then this avoids the use of arrays in ECPG. Then, a host variable with a type that can be mapped to the element type should be used. For example, if a column type is array of integer, a host variable of type `int` can be used. Also if the element type is `varchar` or `text`, a host variable of type `char[]` or `VARCHAR[]` can be used.

Here is an example. Assume the following table:

```sql
CREATE TABLE t3 (
   ii integer[
);
```

testdb=> SELECT * FROM t3;
   ii
-------------
   {1,2,3,4,5}
(1 row)

The following example program retrieves the 4th element of the array and stores it into a host variable of type `int`:

```sql
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
   int ii;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii[4] FROM t3;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;
while (1)
{
   EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :ii ;
   printf("ii=%d\n", ii);
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;
```
This example shows the following result:

\[
ii=4
\]

To map multiple array elements to the multiple elements in an array type host variables each element of array column and each element of the host variable array have to be managed separately, for example:

```c
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int ii_a[8];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii[1], ii[2], ii[3], ii[4] FROM t3;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :ii_a[0], :ii_a[1], :ii_a[2], :ii_a[3];
    ...
}
```

Note again that

```c
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int ii_a[8];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii FROM t3;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    /* WRONG */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :ii_a;
    ...
}
```

would not work correctly in this case, because you cannot map an array type column to an array host variable directly.

Another workaround is to store arrays in their external string representation in host variables of type `char[]` or `VARCHAR[]`. For more details about this representation, see Section 8.15.2. Note that this means that the array cannot be accessed naturally as an array in the host program (without further processing that parses the text representation).

### 34.4.5.2. Composite Types

Composite types are not directly supported in ECPG, but an easy workaround is possible. The available workarounds are similar to the ones described for arrays above: Either access each attribute separately or use the external string representation.

For the following examples, assume the following type and table:

```sql
CREATE TYPE comp_t AS (intval integer, textval varchar(32));
CREATE TABLE t4 (compval comp_t);
INSERT INTO t4 VALUES ( (256, 'Postgres Pro') );
```

The most obvious solution is to access each attribute separately. The following program retrieves data from the example table by selecting each attribute of the type `comp_t` separately:
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int intval;
varchar textval[33];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

/* Put each element of the composite type column in the SELECT list. */
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT (compval).intval, (compval).textval FROM t4;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1) {
    /* Fetch each element of the composite type column into host variables. */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :intval, :textval;
    printf("intval=%d, textval=%s
", intval, textval.arr);
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;

To enhance this example, the host variables to store values in the FETCH command can be gathered into one structure. For more details about the host variable in the structure form, see Section 34.4.4.3.2.

To switch to the structure, the example can be modified as below. The two host variables, intval and textval, become members of the comp_t structure, and the structure is specified on the FETCH command.

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
typedef struct {
    int intval;
    varchar textval[33];
} comp_t;

comp_t compval;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

/* Put each element of the composite type column in the SELECT list. */
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT (compval).intval, (compval).textval FROM t4;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1) {
    /* Put all values in the SELECT list into one structure. */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :compval;
    printf("intval=%d, textval=%s
", compval.intval, compval.textval.arr);
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;

Although a structure is used in the FETCH command, the attribute names in the SELECT clause are specified one by one. This can be enhanced by using a * to ask for all attributes of the composite type value.

...
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    /* Put all values in the SELECT list into one structure. */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :compval;

    printf("intval=%d, textval=%s\n", compval.intval, compval.textval.arr);
}

This way, composite types can be mapped into structures almost seamlessly, even though ECPG does not understand the composite type itself.

Finally, it is also possible to store composite type values in their external string representation in host variables of type char[] or VARCHAR[]. But that way, it is not easily possible to access the fields of the value from the host program.

34.4.5.3. User-Defined Base Types

New user-defined base types are not directly supported by ECPG. You can use the external string representation and host variables of type char[] or VARCHAR[], and this solution is indeed appropriate and sufficient for many types.

Here is an example using the data type complex from the example in Section 36.13. The external string representation of that type is (%f,%f), which is defined in the functions complex_in() and complex_out() functions in Section 36.13. The following example inserts the complex type values (1,1) and (3,3) into the columns a and b, and select them from the table after that.

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    varchar a[64];
    varchar b[64];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES ('(1,1)', '(3,3)');

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT a, b FROM test_complex;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :a, :b;
    printf("a=%s, b=%s\n", a.arr, b.arr);
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;

This example shows following result:

a=(1,1), b=(3,3)

Another workaround is avoiding the direct use of the user-defined types in ECPG and instead create a function or cast that converts between the user-defined type and a primitive type that ECPG can handle. Note, however, that type casts, especially implicit ones, should be introduced into the type system very carefully.

For example,

CREATE FUNCTION create_complex(r double, i double) RETURNS complex
    LANGUAGE SQL
IMMUTABLE
AS $$ SELECT $1 * complex '(1,0)' + $2 * complex '(0,1)' $$;

After this definition, the following

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
double a, b, c, d;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

a = 1;
b = 2;
c = 3;
d = 4;

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES (create_complex(:a, :b),
 create_complex(:c, :d));

has the same effect as

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES ('(1,2)', '(3,4)');

34.4.6. Indicators

The examples above do not handle null values. In fact, the retrieval examples will raise an error if they
fetch a null value from the database. To be able to pass null values to the database or retrieve null values
from the database, you need to append a second host variable specification to each host variable that
contains data. This second host variable is called the indicator and contains a flag that tells whether
the datum is null, in which case the value of the real host variable is ignored. Here is an example that
handles the retrieval of null values correctly:

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
VARCHAR val;
int val_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION:

... 

EXEC SQL SELECT b INTO :val :val_ind FROM test1;

The indicator variable val_ind will be zero if the value was not null, and it will be negative if the value
was null.

The indicator has another function: if the indicator value is positive, it means that the value is not null,
but it was truncated when it was stored in the host variable.

If the argument \texttt{-r no_indicator} is passed to the preprocessor \texttt{ecpg}, it works in “no-indicator” mode.
In no-indicator mode, if no indicator variable is specified, null values are signaled (on input and output)
for character string types as empty string and for integer types as the lowest possible value for type
(for example, \texttt{INT_MIN} for \texttt{int}).

34.5. Dynamic SQL

In many cases, the particular SQL statements that an application has to execute are known at the time
the application is written. In some cases, however, the SQL statements are composed at run time or
provided by an external source. In these cases you cannot embed the SQL statements directly into the
C source code, but there is a facility that allows you to call arbitrary SQL statements that you provide
in a string variable.

34.5.1. Executing Statements without a Result Set

The simplest way to execute an arbitrary SQL statement is to use the command \texttt{EXECUTE IMMEDIATE}.
For example:
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
const char *stmt = "CREATE TABLE test1 (...);
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :stmt;
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE can be used for SQL statements that do not return a result set (e.g., DDL, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE). You cannot execute statements that retrieve data (e.g., SELECT) this way. The next section describes how to do that.

34.5.2. Executing a Statement with Input Parameters
A more powerful way to execute arbitrary SQL statements is to prepare them once and execute the prepared statement as often as you like. It is also possible to prepare a generalized version of a statement and then execute specific versions of it by substituting parameters. When preparing the statement, write question marks where you want to substitute parameters later. For example:

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
const char *stmt = "INSERT INTO test1 VALUES(?, ?);";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL PREPARE mystmt FROM :stmt;
...
EXEC SQL EXECUTE mystmt USING 42, 'foobar';

When you don't need the prepared statement anymore, you should deallocate it:
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE PREPARE name;

34.5.3. Executing a Statement with a Result Set
To execute an SQL statement with a single result row, EXECUTE can be used. To save the result, add an INTO clause.

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
const char *stmt = "SELECT a, b, c FROM test1 WHERE a > ?";
int v1, v2;
VARCHAR v3[50];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL PREPARE mystmt FROM :stmt;
...
EXEC SQL EXECUTE mystmt INTO :v1, :v2, :v3 USING 37;

An EXECUTE command can have an INTO clause, a USING clause, both, or neither.

If a query is expected to return more than one result row, a cursor should be used, as in the following example. (See Section 34.3.2 for more details about the cursor.)

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char dbname[128];
char datname[128];
char *stmt = "SELECT u.usename as dbname, d.datname "
   " FROM pg_database d, pg_user u "
   " WHERE d.datdba = u.usesysid";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser;
EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :stmt;
EXEC SQL DECLARE cursor1 CURSOR FOR stmt1;
EXEC SQL OPEN cursor1;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1) {
    EXEC SQL FETCH cursor1 INTO :dbname,:datname;
    printf("dbname=%s, datname=%s\n", dbname, datname);
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE cursor1;

EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;

34.6. pgtypes Library

The pgtypes library maps Postgres Pro database types to C equivalents that can be used in C programs. It also offers functions to do basic calculations with those types within C, i.e., without the help of the Postgres Pro server. See the following example:

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    date date1;
    timestamp ts1, tsout;
    interval iv1;
    char *out;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

PGTYPESdate_today(&date1);
EXEC SQL SELECT started, duration INTO :ts1, :iv1 FROM datetbl WHERE d=:date1;
PGTYPEStimestamp_add_interval(&ts1, &iv1, &tsout);
out = PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc(&tsout);
printf("Started + duration: %s\n", out);
PGTYPESchar_free(out);

34.6.1. Character Strings

Some functions such as PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc return a pointer to a freshly allocated character string. These results should be freed with PGTYPESchar_free instead of free. (This is important only on Windows, where memory allocation and release sometimes need to be done by the same library.)

34.6.2. The numeric Type

The numeric type offers to do calculations with arbitrary precision. See Section 8.1 for the equivalent type in the Postgres Pro server. Because of the arbitrary precision this variable needs to be able to expand and shrink dynamically. That's why you can only create numeric variables on the heap, by means of the PGTYPESnumeric_new and PGTYPESnumeric_free functions. The decimal type, which is similar but limited in precision, can be created on the stack as well as on the heap.

The following functions can be used to work with the numeric type:

PGTYPESnumeric_new

    Request a pointer to a newly allocated numeric variable.
    
    numeric *PGTYPESnumeric_new(void);

PGTYPESnumeric_free

    Free a numeric type, release all of its memory.
void PGTYPESnumeric_free(numeric *var);

PGTYPESnumeric_from_asc
Parse a numeric type from its string notation.
numeric *PGTYPESnumeric_from_asc(char *str, char **endptr);
Valid formats are for example: -2, .794, +3.44, 592.49E07 or -32.84e-4. If the value could be parsed successfully, a valid pointer is returned, else the NULL pointer. At the moment ECPG always parses the complete string and so it currently does not support to store the address of the first invalid character in *endptr. You can safely set endptr to NULL.

PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc
Returns a pointer to a string allocated by malloc that contains the string representation of the numeric type num.
char *PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc(numeric *num, int dscale);
The numeric value will be printed with dscale decimal digits, with rounding applied if necessary. The result must be freed with PGTYPESchar_free().

PGTYPESnumeric_add
Add two numeric variables into a third one.
int PGTYPESnumeric_add(numeric *var1, numeric *var2, numeric *result);
The function adds the variables var1 and var2 into the result variable result. The function returns 0 on success and -1 in case of error.

PGTYPESnumeric_sub
Subtract two numeric variables and return the result in a third one.
int PGTYPESnumeric_sub(numeric *var1, numeric *var2, numeric *result);
The function subtracts the variable var2 from the variable var1. The result of the operation is stored in the variable result. The function returns 0 on success and -1 in case of error.

PGTYPESnumeric_mul
Multiply two numeric variables and return the result in a third one.
int PGTYPESnumeric_mul(numeric *var1, numeric *var2, numeric *result);
The function multiplies the variables var1 and var2. The result of the operation is stored in the variable result. The function returns 0 on success and -1 in case of error.

PGTYPESnumeric_div
Divide two numeric variables and return the result in a third one.
int PGTYPESnumeric_div(numeric *var1, numeric *var2, numeric *result);
The function divides the variables var1 by var2. The result of the operation is stored in the variable result. The function returns 0 on success and -1 in case of error.

PGTYPESnumeric_cmp
Compare two numeric variables.
int PGTYPESnumeric_cmp(numeric *var1, numeric *var2)
This function compares two numeric variables. In case of error, INT_MAX is returned. On success, the function returns one of three possible results:
• 1, if var1 is bigger than var2
• -1, if var1 is smaller than var2
• 0, if var1 and var2 are equal
PGTYPESnumeric_from_int
Convert an int variable to a numeric variable.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_from_int(signed int int_val, numeric *var);
```
This function accepts a variable of type signed int and stores it in the numeric variable var. Upon success, 0 is returned and -1 in case of a failure.

PGTYPESnumeric_from_long
Convert a long int variable to a numeric variable.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_from_long(signed long int long_val, numeric *var);
```
This function accepts a variable of type signed long int and stores it in the numeric variable var. Upon success, 0 is returned and -1 in case of a failure.

PGTYPESnumeric_copy
Copy over one numeric variable into another one.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_copy(numeric *src, numeric *dst);
```
This function copies over the value of the variable that src points to into the variable that dst points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs.

PGTYPESnumeric_from_double
Convert a variable of type double to a numeric.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_from_double(double d, numeric *dst);
```
This function accepts a variable of type double and stores the result in the variable that dst points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs.

PGTYPESnumeric_to_double
Convert a variable of type numeric to double.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_to_double(numeric *nv, double *dp);
```
The function converts the numeric value from the variable that nv points to into the double variable that dp points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs, including overflow. On overflow, the global variable errno will be set to PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW additionally.

PGTYPESnumeric_to_int
Convert a variable of type numeric to int.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_to_int(numeric *nv, int *ip);
```
The function converts the numeric value from the variable that nv points to into the integer variable that ip points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs, including overflow. On overflow, the global variable errno will be set to PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW additionally.

PGTYPESnumeric_to_long
Convert a variable of type numeric to long.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_to_long(numeric *nv, long *lp);
```
The function converts the numeric value from the variable that nv points to into the long integer variable that lp points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs, including overflow. On overflow, the global variable errno will be set to PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW additionally.

PGTYPESnumeric_to_decimal
Convert a variable of type numeric to decimal.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_to_decimal(numeric *src, decimal *dst);
```
The function converts the numeric value from the variable that `src` points to into the decimal variable that `dst` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs, including overflow. On overflow, the global variable `errno` will be set to `PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW` additionally.

```c
int PGTYPESnumeric_from_decimal(decimal *src, numeric *dst);
```

The function converts the decimal value from the variable that `src` points to into the numeric variable that `dst` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs. Since the decimal type is implemented as a limited version of the numeric type, overflow cannot occur with this conversion.

### 34.6.3. The date Type

The date type in C enables your programs to deal with data of the SQL type date. See Section 8.5 for the equivalent type in the Postgres Pro server.

The following functions can be used to work with the date type:

**PGTYPESdate_from_timestamp**

Extract the date part from a timestamp.

```c
date PGTYPESdate_from_timestamp(timestamp dt);
```

The function receives a timestamp as its only argument and returns the extracted date part from this timestamp.

**PGTYPESdate_from_asc**

Parse a date from its textual representation.

```c
date PGTYPESdate_from_asc(char *str, char **endptr);
```

The function receives a C char* string `str` and a pointer to a C char* string `endptr`. At the moment ECPG always parses the complete string and so it currently does not support to store the address of the first invalid character in `*endptr`. You can safely set `endptr` to NULL.

Note that the function always assumes MDY-formatted dates and there is currently no variable to change that within ECPG.

Table 34.2 shows the allowed input formats.

**Table 34.2. Valid Input Formats for PGTYPESdate_from_asc**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1999-01-08</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/8/1999</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/18/1999</td>
<td>January 18, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01/02/03</td>
<td>February 1, 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1999-Jan-08</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan-08-1999</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08-Jan-1999</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99-Jan-08</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08-Jan-99</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08-Jan-06</td>
<td>January 8, 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan-08-99</td>
<td>January 8, 1999</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ECPG — Embedded SQL in C

**Input** | **Result**
---|---
19990108 | ISO 8601; January 8, 1999
990108 | ISO 8601; January 8, 1999
1999.008 | year and day of year
J2451187 | Julian day
January 8, 99 BC | year 99 before the Common Era

**PGTYPESdate_to_asc**

Return the textual representation of a date variable.

```c
char *PGTYPESdate_to_asc(date dDate);
```

The function receives the date `dDate` as its only parameter. It will output the date in the form `1999-01-18`, i.e., in the `YYYY-MM-DD` format. The result must be freed with `PGTYPESchar_free()`.

**PGTYPESdate_julmdy**

Extract the values for the day, the month and the year from a variable of type date.

```c
void PGTYPESdate_julmdy(date d, int *mdy);
```

The function receives the date `d` and a pointer to an array of 3 integer values `mdy`. The variable name indicates the sequential order: `mdy[0]` will be set to contain the number of the month, `mdy[1]` will be set to the value of the day and `mdy[2]` will contain the year.

**PGTYPESdate_mdyjul**

Create a date value from an array of 3 integers that specify the day, the month and the year of the date.

```c
void PGTYPESdate_mdyjul(int *mdy, date *jdate);
```

The function receives the array of the 3 integers `mdy` as its first argument and as its second argument a pointer to a variable of type date that should hold the result of the operation.

**PGTYPESdate_dayofweek**

Return a number representing the day of the week for a date value.

```c
int PGTYPESdate_dayofweek(date d);
```

The function receives the date variable `d` as its only argument and returns an integer that indicates the day of the week for this date.

- 0 - Sunday
- 1 - Monday
- 2 - Tuesday
- 3 - Wednesday
- 4 - Thursday
- 5 - Friday
- 6 - Saturday

**PGTYPESdate_today**

Get the current date.

```c
void PGTYPESdate_today(date *d);
```

The function receives a pointer to a date variable (`d`) that it sets to the current date.

**PGTYPESdate_fmt_asc**

Convert a variable of type date to its textual representation using a format mask.
int PGTYPESdate_fmt_asc(date dDate, char *fmtstring, char *outbuf);

The function receives the date to convert (dDate), the format mask (fmtstring) and the string that will hold the textual representation of the date (outbuf).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if an error occurred.

The following literals are the field specifiers you can use:

- dd - The number of the day of the month.
- mm - The number of the month of the year.
- yy - The number of the year as a two digit number.
- yyyy - The number of the year as a four digit number.
- ddd - The name of the day (abbreviated).
- mmm - The name of the month (abbreviated).

All other characters are copied 1:1 to the output string.

Table 34.3 indicates a few possible formats. This will give you an idea of how to use this function. All output lines are based on the same date: November 23, 1959.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mm/dd/yyyy</td>
<td>12/23/1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dd/mm/yyyy</td>
<td>23/12/1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yyy/mm/dd</td>
<td>59/11/23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yy/mm/dd</td>
<td>59/11/23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yy mm dd</td>
<td>59 11 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yyyy.mm.dd</td>
<td>59.11.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.mm.yyyy.dd</td>
<td>.11.1959.23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmm dd yyyy</td>
<td>Nov. 23, 1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmm-dd yyyy</td>
<td>Nov 23 1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yyyy dd mm</td>
<td>1959 23 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddd, mmm dd, yyyy</td>
<td>Mon, Nov. 23, 1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ddd) mmm dd, yyyy</td>
<td>(Mon) Nov. 23, 1959</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc

Use a format mask to convert a C char* string to a value of type date.

int PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc(date *d, char *fmt, char *str);

The function receives a pointer to the date value that should hold the result of the operation (d), the format mask to use for parsing the date (fmt) and the C char* string containing the textual representation of the date (str). The textual representation is expected to match the format mask. However you do not need to have a 1:1 mapping of the string to the format mask. The function only analyzes the sequential order and looks for the literals yy or yyyy that indicate the position of the year, mm to indicate the position of the month and dd to indicate the position of the day.

Table 34.4 indicates a few possible formats. This will give you an idea of how to use this function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>String</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dd/mm/yyyy</td>
<td>21-2-54</td>
<td>1954-02-21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
34.6.4. The timestamp Type

The timestamp type in C enables your programs to deal with data of the SQL type timestamp. See Section 8.5 for the equivalent type in the Postgres Pro server.

The following functions can be used to work with the timestamp type:

`PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc`

Parse a timestamp from its textual representation into a timestamp variable.

```c
timestamp PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc(char *str, char **endptr);
```

The function receives the string to parse (`str`) and a pointer to a C char* (`endptr`). At the moment ECPG always parses the complete string and so it currently does not support to store the address of the first invalid character in `*endptr`. You can safely set `endptr` to NULL.

The function returns the parsed timestamp on success. On error, `PGTYPESInvalidTimestamp` is returned and `errno` is set to `PGTYPES_TS_BAD_TIMESTAMP`. See `PGTYPESInvalidTimestamp` for important notes on this value.

In general, the input string can contain any combination of an allowed date specification, a whitespace character and an allowed time specification. Note that time zones are not supported by ECPG. It can parse them but does not apply any calculation as the Postgres Pro server does for example. Timezone specifiers are silently discarded.

Table 34.5 contains a few examples for input strings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>String</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ddmmyy</code></td>
<td>2-12-54</td>
<td>1954-12-02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ddmmyy</code></td>
<td>20111954</td>
<td>1954-11-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ddmmyy</code></td>
<td>130464</td>
<td>1964-04-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mmm.dd.yyyy</code></td>
<td>MAR-12-1967</td>
<td>1967-03-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>yy/mm/dd</code></td>
<td>1954, February 3rd</td>
<td>1954-02-03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mmm.dd.yyyy</code></td>
<td>041269</td>
<td>1969-04-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>yy/mm/dd</code></td>
<td>In the year 2525, in the month of July, mankind will be alive on the 28th day</td>
<td>2525-07-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>dd-mm-yy</code></td>
<td>I said on the 28th of July in the year 2525</td>
<td>2525-07-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mmm.dd.yyyy</code></td>
<td>9/14/58</td>
<td>1958-09-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>yy/mm/dd</code></td>
<td>47/03/29</td>
<td>1947-03-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mmm.dd.yyyy</code></td>
<td>Oct 28 1975</td>
<td>1975-10-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mmddyy</code></td>
<td>Nov 14th, 1985</td>
<td>1985-11-14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

833
PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc

Converts a date to a C char* string.

```c
char *PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc(timestamp tstamp);
```

The function receives the timestamp `tstamp` as its only argument and returns an allocated string that contains the textual representation of the timestamp. The result must be freed with `PGTYPESchar_free()`.

PGTYPEStimestamp_current

Retrieve the current timestamp.

```c
void PGTYPEStimestamp_current(timestamp *ts);
```

The function retrieves the current timestamp and saves it into the timestamp variable that `ts` points to.

PGTYPEStimestamp_fmt_asc

Convert a timestamp variable to a C char* using a format mask.

```c
int PGTYPEStimestamp_fmt_asc(timestamp *ts, char *output, int str_len, char *fmtstr);
```

The function receives a pointer to the timestamp to convert as its first argument (`ts`), a pointer to the output buffer (`output`), the maximal length that has been allocated for the output buffer (`str_len`) and the format mask to use for the conversion (`fmtstr`).

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

You can use the following format specifiers for the format mask. The format specifiers are the same ones that are used in the `strftime` function in libc. Any non-format specifier will be copied into the output buffer.

- `%A` - is replaced by national representation of the full weekday name.
- `%a` - is replaced by national representation of the abbreviated weekday name.
- `%B` - is replaced by national representation of the full month name.
- `%b` - is replaced by national representation of the abbreviated month name.
- `%C` - is replaced by (year / 100) as decimal number; single digits are preceded by a zero.
- `%c` - is replaced by national representation of time and date.
- `%D` - is equivalent to `%m/%d/%y`.
- `%d` - is replaced by the day of the month as a decimal number (01–31).
- `%e` - is replaced by the day of month as a decimal number (1–31); single digits are preceded by a blank.
- `%F` - is equivalent to `%Y-%m-%d`.
- `%G` - is replaced by a year as a decimal number with century. This year is the one that contains the greater part of the week (Monday as the first day of the week).
- `%g` - is replaced by the same year as in `%G`, but as a decimal number without century (00–99).
- `%H` - is replaced by the hour (24-hour clock) as a decimal number (00–23).
- `%h` - the same as `%b`.

Additionally `%OB` implemented to represent alternative months names (used standalone, without day mentioned).
• `%I` - is replaced by the hour (12-hour clock) as a decimal number (01-12).
• `%j` - is replaced by the day of the year as a decimal number (001-366).
• `%k` - is replaced by the hour (24-hour clock) as a decimal number (0-23); single digits are preceded by a blank.
• `%l` - is replaced by the hour (12-hour clock) as a decimal number (1-12); single digits are preceded by a blank.
• `%M` - is replaced by the minute as a decimal number (00–59).
• `%m` - is replaced by the month as a decimal number (01–12).
• `%n` - is replaced by a newline.
• `%O` - the same as `%E*`.
• `%p` - is replaced by national representation of either “ante meridiem” or “post meridiem” as appropriate.
• `%R` - is equivalent to `%H:%M`.
• `%r` - is equivalent to `%I:%M:%S %p`.
• `%S` - is replaced by the second as a decimal number (00–60).
• `%s` - is replaced by the number of seconds since the Epoch, UTC.
• `%T` - is equivalent to `%H:%M:%S`.
• `%t` - is replaced by a tab.
• `%U` - is replaced by the week number of the year (Sunday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (00–53).
• `%u` - is replaced by the weekday (Monday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (1-7).
• `%V` - is replaced by the week number of the year (Monday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (01–53). If the week containing January 1 has four or more days in the new year, then it is week 1; otherwise it is the last week of the previous year, and the next week is week 1.
• `%v` - is equivalent to `%e-%b-%Y`.
• `%W` - is replaced by the week number of the year (Monday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (00–53).
• `%w` - is replaced by the weekday (Sunday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (0–6).
• `%X` - is replaced by national representation of the time.
• `%x` - is replaced by national representation of the date.
• `%Y` - is replaced by the year with century as a decimal number.
• `%y` - is replaced by the year without century as a decimal number (00–99).
• `%Z` - is replaced by the time zone name.
• `%z` - is replaced by the time zone offset from UTC; a leading plus sign stands for east of UTC, a minus sign for west of UTC, hours and minutes follow with two digits each and no delimiter between them (common form for RFC 822 date headers).
• `%+` - is replaced by national representation of the date and time.
• `%-*` - GNU libc extension. Do not do any padding when performing numerical outputs.
• `$-_*$` - GNU libc extension. Explicitly specify space for padding.
• `%0*` - GNU libc extension. Explicitly specify zero for padding.
• `%*` - is replaced by `%.`.
PGTYPEStimestamp_sub

Subtract one timestamp from another one and save the result in a variable of type interval.

```c
int PGTYPEStimestamp_sub(timestamp *ts1, timestamp *ts2, interval *iv);
```

The function will subtract the timestamp variable that `ts2` points to from the timestamp variable that `ts1` points to and will store the result in the interval variable that `iv` points to.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

PGTYPEStimestamp_defmt_asc

Parse a timestamp value from its textual representation using a formatting mask.

```c
int PGTYPEStimestamp_defmt_asc(char *str, char *fmt, timestamp *d);
```

The function receives the textual representation of a timestamp in the variable `str` as well as the formatting mask to use in the variable `fmt`. The result will be stored in the variable that `d` points to.

If the formatting mask `fmt` is NULL, the function will fall back to the default formatting mask which is `%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S`.

This is the reverse function to `PGTYPEStimestamp_fmt_asc`. See the documentation there in order to find out about the possible formatting mask entries.

PGTYPEStimestamp_add_interval

Add an interval variable to a timestamp variable.

```c
int PGTYPEStimestamp_add_interval(timestamp *tin, interval *span, timestamp *tout);
```

The function receives a pointer to a timestamp variable `tin` and a pointer to an interval variable `span`. It adds the interval to the timestamp and saves the resulting timestamp in the variable that `tou` points to.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

PGTYPEStimestamp_sub_interval

Subtract an interval variable from a timestamp variable.

```c
int PGTYPEStimestamp_sub_interval(timestamp *tin, interval *span, timestamp *tout);
```

The function subtracts the interval variable that `span` points to from the timestamp variable that `tin` points to and saves the result into the variable that `tou` points to.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

### 34.6.5. The interval Type

The interval type in C enables your programs to deal with data of the SQL type interval. See Section 8.5 for the equivalent type in the Postgres Pro server.

The following functions can be used to work with the interval type:

**PGTYPESinterval_new**

Return a pointer to a newly allocated interval variable.

```c
interval *PGTYPESinterval_new(void);
```

**PGTYPESinterval_free**

Release the memory of a previously allocated interval variable.

```c
void PGTYPESinterval_free(interval *intvl);
```

**PGTYPESinterval_from_asc**

Parse an interval from its textual representation.
interval *PGTYPESinterval_from_asc(char *str, char **endptr);

The function parses the input string str and returns a pointer to an allocated interval variable. At the moment ECPG always parses the complete string and so it currently does not support to store the address of the first invalid character in *endptr. You can safely set endptr to NULL.

PGTYPESinterval_to_asc

Convert a variable of type interval to its textual representation.

char *PGTYPESinterval_to_asc(interval *span);

The function converts the interval variable that span points to into a C char*. The output looks like this example: @ 1 day 12 hours 59 mins 10 secs. The result must be freed with PGTYPESchar_free().

PGTYPESinterval_copy

Copy a variable of type interval.

int PGTYPESinterval_copy(interval *intvlsrc, interval *intvldest);

The function copies the interval variable that intvlsrc points to into the variable that intvldest points to. Note that you need to allocate the memory for the destination variable before.

34.6.6. The decimal Type

The decimal type is similar to the numeric type. However it is limited to a maximum precision of 30 significant digits. In contrast to the numeric type which can be created on the heap only, the decimal type can be created either on the stack or on the heap (by means of the functions PGTYPESdecimal_new and PGTYPESdecimal_free). There are a lot of other functions that deal with the decimal type in the Informix compatibility mode described in Section 34.15.

The following functions can be used to work with the decimal type and are not only contained in the libcompat library.

PGTYPESdecimal_new

Request a pointer to a newly allocated decimal variable.

decimal *PGTYPESdecimal_new(void);

PGTYPESdecimal_free

Free a decimal type, release all of its memory.

void PGTYPESdecimal_free(decimal *var);

34.6.7. errno Values of pgtypeslib

PGTYPES_NUM_BAD_NUMERIC

An argument should contain a numeric variable (or point to a numeric variable) but in fact its in-memory representation was invalid.

PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW

An overflow occurred. Since the numeric type can deal with almost arbitary precision, converting a numeric variable into other types might cause overflow.

PGTYPES_NUM_UNDERFLOW

An underflow occurred. Since the numeric type can deal with almost arbitary precision, converting a numeric variable into other types might cause underflow.

PGTYPES_NUM_DIVIDE_ZERO

A division by zero has been attempted.
34.6.8. Special Constants of pgtypeslib

**PGTYPESInvalidTimestamp**

A value of type timestamp representing an invalid time stamp. This is returned by the function `PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc` on parse error. Note that due to the internal representation of the timestamp data type, `PGTYPESInvalidTimestamp` is also a valid timestamp at the same time. It is set to 1899-12-31 23:59:59. In order to detect errors, make sure that your application does not only test for `PGTYPESInvalidTimestamp` but also for `errno != 0` after each call to `PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc`.

34.7. Using Descriptor Areas

An SQL descriptor area is a more sophisticated method for processing the result of a `SELECT`, `FETCH` or a `DESCRIBE` statement. An SQL descriptor area groups the data of one row of data together with metadata items into one data structure. The metadata is particularly useful when executing dynamic SQL statements, where the nature of the result columns might not be known ahead of time. Postgres Pro provides two ways to use Descriptor Areas: the named SQL Descriptor Areas and the C-structure SQLDAs.

34.7.1. Named SQL Descriptor Areas

A named SQL descriptor area consists of a header, which contains information concerning the entire descriptor, and one or more item descriptor areas, which basically each describe one column in the result row.

Before you can use an SQL descriptor area, you need to allocate one:

```sql
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR identifier;
```
The identifier serves as the “variable name” of the descriptor area. When you don’t need the descriptor anymore, you should deallocate it:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR identifier;
```

To use a descriptor area, specify it as the storage target in an INTO clause, instead of listing host variables:

```
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM mycursor INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
```

If the result set is empty, the Descriptor Area will still contain the metadata from the query, i.e., the field names.

For not yet executed prepared queries, the `DESCRIBE` statement can be used to get the metadata of the result set:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char *sql_stmt = "SELECT * FROM table1";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :sql_stmt;
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE stmt1 INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
```

Before PostgreSQL 9.0, the `SQL` keyword was optional, so using DESCRIPTOR and SQL DESCRIPTOR produced named SQL Descriptor Areas. Now it is mandatory, omitting the `SQL` keyword produces SQLDA Descriptor Areas, see Section 34.7.2.

In `DESCRIBE` and `FETCH` statements, the INTO and USING keywords can be used to similarly: they produce the result set and the metadata in a Descriptor Area.

Now how do you get the data out of the descriptor area? You can think of the descriptor area as a structure with named fields. To retrieve the value of a field from the header and store it into a host variable, use the following command:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR name :hostvar = field;
```

Currently, there is only one header field defined: `COUNT`, which tells how many item descriptor areas exist (that is, how many columns are contained in the result). The host variable needs to be of an integer type.

To get a field from the item descriptor area, use the following command:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR name VALUE num :hostvar = field;
```

`num` can be a literal integer or a host variable containing an integer. Possible fields are:

- **CARDINALITY** (integer)
  - number of rows in the result set

- **DATA**
  - actual data item (therefore, the data type of this field depends on the query)

- **DATETIME_INTERVAL_CODE** (integer)
  - When `TYPE` is 9, `DATETIME_INTERVAL_CODE` will have a value of 1 for `DATE`, 2 for `TIME`, 3 for `TIMESTAMP`, 4 for `TIME WITH TIME ZONE`, or 5 for `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE`.

- **DATETIME_INTERVAL_PRECISION** (integer)
  - not implemented

- **INDICATOR** (integer)
  - the indicator (indicating a null value or a value truncation)

- **KEY_MEMBER** (integer)
  - not implemented
LENGTH (integer)
   length of the datum in characters

NAME (string)
   name of the column

NULLABLE (integer)
   not implemented

OCTET_LENGTH (integer)
   length of the character representation of the datum in bytes

PRECISION (integer)
   precision (for type numeric)

RETURNED_LENGTH (integer)
   length of the datum in characters

RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH (integer)
   length of the character representation of the datum in bytes

SCALE (integer)
   scale (for type numeric)

TYPE (integer)
   numeric code of the data type of the column

In EXECUTE, DECLARE and OPEN statements, the effect of the INTO and USING keywords are different. A Descriptor Area can also be manually built to provide the input parameters for a query or a cursor and USING SQL DESCRIPTOR name is the way to pass the input parameters into a parameterized query. The statement to build a named SQL Descriptor Area is below:

EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR name VALUE num field = :hostvar;

Postgres Pro supports retrieving more that one record in one FETCH statement and storing the data in host variables in this case assumes that the variable is an array. E.g.:

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int id[5];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL FETCH 5 FROM mycursor INTO DESCRIPTOR mysqlda;

EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR mysqlda VALUE 1 :id = DATA;

### 34.7.2. SQLDA Descriptor Areas

An SQLDA Descriptor Area is a C language structure which can be also used to get the result set and the metadata of a query. One structure stores one record from the result set.

EXEC SQL include sqlda.h;
sqlda_t *mysqlda;

EXEC SQL FETCH 3 FROM mycursor INTO DESCRIPTOR mysqlda;

Note that the SQL keyword is omitted. The paragraphs about the use cases of the INTO and USING keywords in Section 34.7.1 also apply here with an addition. In a DESCRIBE statement the DESCRIPTOR keyword can be completely omitted if the INTO keyword is used:
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE prepared_statement INTO mysqlda;

The general flow of a program that uses SQLDA is:
1. Prepare a query, and declare a cursor for it.
2. Declare an SQLDA for the result rows.
3. Declare an SQLDA for the input parameters, and initialize them (memory allocation, parameter settings).
4. Open a cursor with the input SQLDA.
5. Fetch rows from the cursor, and store them into an output SQLDA.
6. Read values from the output SQLDA into the host variables (with conversion if necessary).
7. Close the cursor.
8. Free the memory area allocated for the input SQLDA.

34.7.2.1. SQLDA Data Structure

SQLDA uses three data structure types: sqlda_t, sqlvar_t, and struct sqlname.

Tip

Postgres Pro’s SQLDA has a similar data structure to the one in IBM DB2 Universal Database, so some technical information on DB2’s SQLDA could help understanding Postgres Pro’s one better.

34.7.2.1.1. sqlda_t Structure

The structure type sqlda_t is the type of the actual SQLDA. It holds one record. And two or more sqlda_t structures can be connected in a linked list with the pointer in the desc_next field, thus representing an ordered collection of rows. So, when two or more rows are fetched, the application can read them by following the desc_next pointer in each sqlda_t node.

The definition of sqlda_t is:

```c
struct sqlda_struct {
    char sqldaid[8];
    long sqldabc;
    short sqln;
    short sqld;
    struct sqlda_struct *desc_next;
    struct sqlvar_struct sqlvar[1];
};

typedef struct sqlda_struct sqlda_t;
```

The meaning of the fields is:

sqldaid

It contains the literal string "SQLDA ".

sqldabc

It contains the size of the allocated space in bytes.

sqln

It contains the number of input parameters for a parameterized query in case it’s passed into OPEN, DECLARE or EXECUTE statements using the USING keyword. In case it’s used as output of SELECT, EXECUTE or FETCH statements, its value is the same as sqld statement.
sqlld

It contains the number of fields in a result set.

desc_next

If the query returns more than one record, multiple linked SQLDA structures are returned, and desc_next holds a pointer to the next entry in the list.

sqlvar

This is the array of the columns in the result set.

### 34.7.2.1.2. sqlvar_t Structure

The structure type sqlvar_t holds a column value and metadata such as type and length. The definition of the type is:

```c
struct sqlvar_struct
{
    short       sqltype;
    short       sqllen;
    char        *sqldata;
    short        *sqlind;
    struct sqlname sqlname;
};

typedef struct sqlvar_struct sqlvar_t;
```

The meaning of the fields is:

sqltype

Contains the type identifier of the field. For values, see `enum ECPGttype in ecpgtype.h`.

sqllen

Contains the binary length of the field. e.g., 4 bytes for ECPGt_int.

sqldata

Points to the data. The format of the data is described in Section 34.4.4.

sqlind

Points to the null indicator. 0 means not null, -1 means null.

sqlname

The name of the field.

### 34.7.2.1.3. struct sqlname Structure

A struct sqlname structure holds a column name. It is used as a member of the sqlvar_t structure. The definition of the structure is:

```c
#define NAMEDATALEN 64

struct sqlname
{
    short       length;
    char        data[NAMEDATALEN];
};
```

The meaning of the fields is:

length

Contains the length of the field name.
data
Contains the actual field name.

### 34.7.2.2. Retrieving a Result Set Using an SQLDA

The general steps to retrieve a query result set through an SQLDA are:

1. Declare an sqlda_t structure to receive the result set.
2. Execute FETCH/EXECUTE/DESCRIBE commands to process a query specifying the declared SQLDA.
3. Check the number of records in the result set by looking at sqln, a member of the sqlda_t structure.
4. Get the values of each column from sqlvar[0], sqlvar[1], etc., members of the sqlda_t structure.
5. Go to next row (sqlda_t structure) by following the desc_next pointer, a member of the sqlda_t structure.
6. Repeat above as you need.

Here is an example retrieving a result set through an SQLDA.

First, declare a sqlda_t structure to receive the result set.
```c
sqlda_t *sqlda1;
```

Next, specify the SQLDA in a command. This is a FETCH command example.
```sql
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur1 INTO DESCRIPTOR sqlda1;
```

Run a loop following the linked list to retrieve the rows.
```c
sqlda_t *cur_sqlda;
for (cur_sqlda = sqlda1;
    cur_sqlda != NULL;
    cur_sqlda = cur_sqlda->desc_next)
{
    ...
}
```

Inside the loop, run another loop to retrieve each column data (sqlvar_t structure) of the row.
```c
for (i = 0; i < cur_sqlda->sqld; i++)
{
    sqlvar_t v = cur_sqlda->sqlvar[i];
    char *sqldata = v.sqldata;
    short sqllen = v.sqllen;
    ...
}
```

To get a column value, check the sqltype value, a member of the sqlvar_t structure. Then, switch to an appropriate way, depending on the column type, to copy data from the sqlvar field to a host variable.
```c
char var_buf[1024];
switch (v.sqltype)
{
    case ECPGt_char:
        memset(&var_buf, 0, sizeof(var_buf));
        memcpy(&var_buf, sqldata, (sizeof(var_buf) <= sqllen ? sizeof(var_buf) - 1 : sqllen));
        break;
    case ECPGt_int: /* integer */
memcpy(&intval, sqldata, sqllen);
sprintf(var_buf, sizeof(var_buf), "%d", intval);
break;
}

34.7.2.3. Passing Query Parameters Using an SQLDA

The general steps to use an SQLDA to pass input parameters to a prepared query are:

1. Create a prepared query (prepared statement)
2. Declare an sqlda_t structure as an input SQLDA.
3. Allocate memory area (as sqlda_t structure) for the input SQLDA.
4. Set (copy) input values in the allocated memory.
5. Open a cursor with specifying the input SQLDA.

Here is an example.

First, create a prepared statement.
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char query[1024] = "SELECT d.oid, * FROM pg_database d, pg_stat_database s WHERE d.oid = s.datid AND (d.datname = ? OR d.oid = ?)";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :query;

Next, allocate memory for an SQLDA, and set the number of input parameters in sqln, a member variable of the sqlda_t structure. When two or more input parameters are required for the prepared query, the application has to allocate additional memory space which is calculated by (nr. of params - 1) * sizeof(sqlvar_t). The example shown here allocates memory space for two input parameters.

sqlda_t *sqlda2;
sqlda2 = (sqlda_t *) malloc(sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
memset(sqlda2, 0, sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
sqlda2->sqln = 2; /* number of input variables */

After memory allocation, store the parameter values into the sqlvar[] array. (This is same array used for retrieving column values when the SQLDA is receiving a result set.) In this example, the input parameters are "postgres", having a string type, and 1, having an integer type.

sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqltype = ECPGt_char;
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqldata = "postgres";
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqllen = 8;
int intval = 1;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqltype = ECPGt_int;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqldata = (char *) &intval;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqllen = sizeof(intval);

By opening a cursor and specifying the SQLDA that was set up beforehand, the input parameters are passed to the prepared statement.
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1 USING DESCRIPTOR sqlda2;

Finally, after using input SQLDAs, the allocated memory space must be freed explicitly, unlike SQLDAs used for receiving query results.
34.7.2.4. A Sample Application Using SQLDA

Here is an example program, which describes how to fetch access statistics of the databases, specified by the input parameters, from the system catalogs.

This application joins two system tables, pg_database and pg_stat_database on the database OID, and also fetches and shows the database statistics which are retrieved by two input parameters (a database *postgres*, and OID 1).

First, declare an SQLDA for input and an SQLDA for output.

```c
EXEC SQL include sqlda.h;

sqlda_t *sqlda1; /* an output descriptor */
sqlda_t *sqlda2; /* an input descriptor */
```

Next, connect to the database, prepare a statement, and declare a cursor for the prepared statement.

```c
int main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char query[1024] = "SELECT d.oid,* FROM pg_database d, pg_stat_database s WHERE d.oid=s.datid AND ( d.datname=? OR d.oid=? )";
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :query;
    EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR stmt1;
```

Next, put some values in the input SQLDA for the input parameters. Allocate memory for the input SQLDA, and set the number of input parameters to `sqln`. Store type, value, and value length into `sqltype`, `sqldata`, and `sqllen` in the `sqlvar` structure.

```c
/* Create SQLDA structure for input parameters. */
sqlda2 = (sqlda_t *) malloc(sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
memset(sqlda2, 0, sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
sqlda2->sqln = 2; /* number of input variables */

sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqltype = ECPGt_char;
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqldata = "postgres";
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqllen = 8;

intval = 1;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqltype = ECPGt_int;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqldata = (char *)&intval;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqllen = sizeof(intval);
```

After setting up the input SQLDA, open a cursor with the input SQLDA.

```c
/* Open a cursor with input parameters. */
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1 USING DESCRIPTOR sqlda2;
```

Fetch rows into the output SQLDA from the opened cursor. (Generally, you have to call *FETCH* repeatedly in the loop, to fetch all rows in the result set.)

```c
while (1)
{
    sqlda_t *cur_sqlda;
```
/* Assign descriptor to the cursor */
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur1 INTO DESCRIPTOR sqlda1;

Next, retrieve the fetched records from the SQLDA, by following the linked list of the sqlda_t structure.

for (cur_sqlda = sqlda1 ;
     cur_sqlda != NULL ;
     cur_sqlda = cur_sqlda->desc_next)
{
  ...

Read each columns in the first record. The number of columns is stored in sqld, the actual data of the first column is stored in sqlvar[0], both members of the sqlda_t structure.

  /* Print every column in a row. */
  for (i = 0; i < sqlda1->sqld; i++)
  {
    sqlvar_t v = sqlda1->sqlvar[i];
    char *sqldata = v.sqldata;
    short sqllen  = v.sqlllen;

    strncpy(name_buf, v.sqlname.data, v.sqlname.length);
    name_buf[v.sqlname.length] = '\0';

    switch (v.sqltype) {
      int intval;
      double doubleval;
      unsigned long long int longlongval;

      case ECPGt_char:
        memset(&var_buf, 0, sizeof(var_buf));
        memcpy(&var_buf, sqldata, (sizeof(var_buf) <= sqllen ?
            sizeof(var_buf)-1 : sqllen));
        break;

      case ECPGt_int: /* integer */
        memcpy(&intval, sqldata, sqllen);
        snprintf(var_buf, sizeof(var_buf), "%d", intval);
        break;

        ...

      default:
        ...
    }
    printf("%s = %s (type: %d)\n", name_buf, var_buf, v.sqltype);
  }

Close the cursor after processing all of records, and disconnect from the database.

  EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;
  EXEC SQL COMMIT;
  EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;

The whole program is shown in Example 34.1.
Example 34.1. Example SQLDA Program

```c
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <unistd.h>
EXEC SQL include sqlda.h;

sqlda_t *sqlda1; /* descriptor for output */
sqlda_t *sqlda2; /* descriptor for input */
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;

int main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char query[1024] = "SELECT d.oid,* FROM pg_database d, pg_stat_database s WHERE d.oid=s.datid AND ( d.datname=? OR d.oid=?)";
    int intval;
    unsigned long long int longlongval;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO uptimedb AS con1 USER uptime;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :query;
    EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR stmt1;

    /* Create an SQLDA structure for an input parameter */
    sqlda2 = (sqlda_t *)malloc(sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
    memset(sqlda2, 0, sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
    sqlda2->sqln = 2; /* a number of input variables */

    sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqltype = ECPGt_char;
    sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqldata = "postgres";
    sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqllen  = 8;

    intval = 1;
    sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqltype = ECPGt_int;
    sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqldata = (char *) &intval;
    sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqllen  = sizeof(intval);

    /* Open a cursor with input parameters */
    EXEC SQL OPEN cur1 USING DESCRIPTOR sqlda2;

    while (1)
    {
        sqlda_t *cur_sqlda;

        /* Assign descriptor to the cursor */
        EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur1 INTO DESCRIPTOR sqlda1;

        for (cur_sqlda = sqlda1 ;
```
cur_sqlda != NULL ;
cur_sqlda = cur_sqlda->desc_next)
{
  int i;
  char name_buf[1024];
  char var_buf[1024];

  /* Print every column in a row. */
  for (i=0 ; i<cur_sqlda->sqld ; i++)
  {
    sqlvar_t v = cur_sqlda->sqlvar[i];
    char *sqldata = v.sqldata;
    short sqllen  = v.sqllen;

    strncpy(name_buf, v.sqlname.data, v.sqlname.length);
    name_buf[v.sqlname.length] = '\0';

    switch (v.sqltype)
    {
    case ECPGt_char:
      memset(&var_buf, 0, sizeof(var_buf));
      memcpy(&var_buf, sqldata, (sizeof(var_buf)<=sqllen ?
      sizeof(var_buf)-1 : sqllen) );
      break;

    case ECPGt_int: /* integer */
      memcpy(&intval, sqldata, sqllen);
      snprintf(var_buf, sizeof(var_buf), "%d", intval);
      break;

    case ECPGt_long_long: /* bigint */
      memcpy(&longlongval, sqldata, sqllen);
      snprintf(var_buf, sizeof(var_buf), "%lld", longlongval);
      break;

    default:
    {
      int i;
      memset(var_buf, 0, sizeof(var_buf));
      for (i = 0; i < sqllen; i++)
      {
        char tmpbuf[16];
        snprintf(tmpbuf, sizeof(tmpbuf), "%02x ", (unsigned char)
        sqldata[i]);
        strncat(var_buf, tmpbuf, sizeof(var_buf));
      }
      break;
    }
    
    printf("%s = %s (type: %d)\n", name_buf, var_buf, v.sqltype);
  }

  printf("\n");
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;

    return 0;
}

The output of this example should look something like the following (some numbers will vary).

oid = 1 (type: 1)
datname = template1 (type: 1)
datdba = 10 (type: 1)
encoding = 0 (type: 5)
datistemplate = t (type: 1)
datallowconn = t (type: 1)
datconnlimit = -1 (type: 5)
datlastsysoid = 11510 (type: 1)
datfrozenxid = 379 (type: 1)
dattablespace = 1663 (type: 1)
datconfig = (type: 1)
datacl = {=c/uptime, uptime=C TC/uptime} (type: 1)
datid = 1 (type: 1)
datname = template1 (type: 1)
numbackends = 0 (type: 5)
xact_commit = 113606 (type: 9)
xact_rollback = 0 (type: 9)
blks_read = 130 (type: 9)
blks_hit = 7341714 (type: 9)
tup_returned = 38262679 (type: 9)
tup_fetched = 1836281 (type: 9)
tup_inserted = 0 (type: 9)
tup_updated = 0 (type: 9)
tup_deleted = 0 (type: 9)

oid = 11511 (type: 1)
datname = postgres (type: 1)
datdba = 10 (type: 1)
encoding = 0 (type: 5)
datistemplate = f (type: 1)
datallowconn = t (type: 1)
datconnlimit = -1 (type: 5)
datlastsysoid = 11510 (type: 1)
datfrozenxid = 379 (type: 1)
dattablespace = 1663 (type: 1)
datconfig = (type: 1)
datacl = (type: 1)
datid = 11511 (type: 1)
datname = postgres (type: 1)
numbackends = 0 (type: 5)
xact_commit = 221069 (type: 9)
xact_rollback = 18 (type: 9)
blks_read = 1176 (type: 9)
blks_hit = 13943750 (type: 9)
tup_returned = 77410091 (type: 9)
tup_fetched = 3253694 (type: 9)
tup_inserted = 0 (type: 9)
tup_updated = 0 (type: 9)
tup_deleted = 0 (type: 9)
34.8. Error Handling

This section describes how you can handle exceptional conditions and warnings in an embedded SQL program. There are two nonexclusive facilities for this:

- Callbacks can be configured to handle warning and error conditions using the `WHENEVER` command.
- Detailed information about the error or warning can be obtained from the `sqlca` variable.

34.8.1. Setting Callbacks

One simple method to catch errors and warnings is to set a specific action to be executed whenever a particular condition occurs. In general:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER condition action;
```

`condition` can be one of the following:

**SQLERROR**

The specified action is called whenever an error occurs during the execution of an SQL statement.

**SQLWARNING**

The specified action is called whenever a warning occurs during the execution of an SQL statement.

**NOT FOUND**

The specified action is called whenever an SQL statement retrieves or affects zero rows. (This condition is not an error, but you might be interested in handling it specially.)

`action` can be one of the following:

**CONTINUE**

This effectively means that the condition is ignored. This is the default.

**GOTO label**

Jump to the specified label (using a C `goto` statement).

**SQLPRINT**

Print a message to standard error. This is useful for simple programs or during prototyping. The details of the message cannot be configured.

**STOP**

Call `exit(1)`, which will terminate the program.

**DO BREAK**

Execute the C statement `break`. This should only be used in loops or `switch` statements.

**DO CONTINUE**

Execute the C statement `continue`. This should only be used in loops statements. If executed, will cause the flow of control to return to the top of the loop.

**CALL name (args)**

Call the specified C functions with the specified arguments. (This use is different from the meaning of `CALL` and `DO` in the normal Postgres Pro grammar.)
The SQL standard only provides for the actions **CONTINUE** and **GOTO** (and **GO TO**).

Here is an example that you might want to use in a simple program. It prints a simple message when a warning occurs and aborts the program when an error happens:

```sql
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;
```

The statement `EXEC SQL WHENEVER` is a directive of the SQL preprocessor, not a C statement. The error or warning actions that it sets apply to all embedded SQL statements that appear below the point where the handler is set, unless a different action was set for the same condition between the first `EXEC SQL WHENEVER` and the SQL statement causing the condition, regardless of the flow of control in the C program. So neither of the two following C program excerpts will have the desired effect:

```c
/*
 * WRONG
 */
int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    ...
    if (verbose) {
        EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;
    }
    ...
    EXEC SQL SELECT ...;
    ...
}
/*
 * WRONG
 */
int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    ...
    set_error_handler();
    ...
    EXEC SQL SELECT ...;
    ...
}
```

static void set_error_handler(void)
{
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;
}

### 34.8.2. sqlca

For more powerful error handling, the embedded SQL interface provides a global variable with the name `sqlca` (SQL communication area) that has the following structure:

```c
struct
{
    char sqlcaid[8];
    long sqlabc;
    long sqlcode;
    struct
    {
        int sqlerrml;
        char sqlerrmc[SQLERRMC_LEN];
    } sqlerrm;
    char sqlerrp[8];
}
```
long sqlerrd[6];
char sqlwarn[8];
char sqlstate[5];
} sqlca;

(In a multithreaded program, every thread automatically gets its own copy of sqlca. This works similarly to the handling of the standard C global variable errno.)

sqlca covers both warnings and errors. If multiple warnings or errors occur during the execution of a statement, then sqlca will only contain information about the last one.

If no error occurred in the last SQL statement, sqlca.sqlcode will be 0 and sqlca.sqlstate will be "00000". If a warning or error occurred, then sqlca.sqlcode will be negative and sqlca.sqlstate will be different from "00000". A positive sqlca.sqlcode indicates a harmless condition, such as that the last query returned zero rows. sqlcode and sqlstate are two different error code schemes; details appear below.

If the last SQL statement was successful, then sqlca.sqlerrd[1] contains the OID of the processed row, if applicable, and sqlca.sqlerrd[2] contains the number of processed or returned rows, if applicable to the command.

In case of an error or warning, sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc will contain a string that describes the error. The field sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrml contains the length of the error message that is stored in sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc (the result of strlen(), not really interesting for a C programmer). Note that some messages are too long to fit in the fixed-size sqlerrmc array; they will be truncated.

In case of a warning, sqlca.sqlwarn[2] is set to W. (In all other cases, it is set to something different from W.) If sqlca.sqlwarn[1] is set to W, then a value was truncated when it was stored in a host variable. sqlca.sqlwarn[0] is set to W if any of the other elements are set to indicate a warning.

The fields sqlcaid, sqlabc, sqlerrp, and the remaining elements of sqlerrd and sqlwarn currently contain no useful information.

The structure sqlca is not defined in the SQL standard, but is implemented in several other SQL database systems. The definitions are similar at the core, but if you want to write portable applications, then you should investigate the different implementations carefully.

Here is one example that combines the use of WHENEVER and sqlca, printing out the contents of sqlca when an error occurs. This is perhaps useful for debugging or prototyping applications, before installing a more “user-friendly” error handler.

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CALL print_sqlca();

void print_sqlca()
{
  fprintf(stderr, "==== sqlca ====
");
  fprintf(stderr, "sqlcode: %ld\n", sqlca.sqlcode);
  fprintf(stderr, "sqlerrm.sqlerrml: %d\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrml);
  fprintf(stderr, "sqlerrm.sqlerrmc: %s\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);
  fprintf(stderr, "sqlerrd: %ld %ld %ld %ld %ld %ld\n", sqlca.sqlerrd[0], sqlca.sqlerrd[1], sqlca.sqlerrd[2], sqlca.sqlerrd[3], sqlca.sqlerrd[4], sqlca.sqlerrd[5]);
  fprintf(stderr, "sqlwarn: %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d\n", sqlca.sqlwarn[0], sqlca.sqlwarn[1], sqlca.sqlwarn[2], sqlca.sqlwarn[3], sqlca.sqlwarn[4], sqlca.sqlwarn[5], sqlca.sqlwarn[6], sqlca.sqlwarn[7]);
}

852
The fields `sqlca.sqlstate` and `sqlca.sqlcode` are two different schemes that provide error codes. Both are derived from the SQL standard, but `SQLCODE` has been marked deprecated in the SQL-92 edition of the standard and has been dropped in later editions. Therefore, new applications are strongly encouraged to use `SQLSTATE`.

`SQLSTATE` is a five-character array. The five characters contain digits or upper-case letters that represent codes of various error and warning conditions. `SQLSTATE` has a hierarchical scheme: the first two characters indicate the general class of the condition, the last three characters indicate a subclass of the general condition. A successful state is indicated by the code `00000`. The `SQLSTATE` codes are for the most part defined in the SQL standard. The Postgres Pro server natively supports `SQLSTATE` error codes; therefore a high degree of consistency can be achieved by using this error code scheme throughout all applications. For further information see Appendix A.

`SQLCODE`, the deprecated error code scheme, is a simple integer. A value of 0 indicates success, a positive value indicates success with additional information, a negative value indicates an error. The SQL standard only defines the positive value +100, which indicates that the last command returned or affected zero rows, and no specific negative values. Therefore, this scheme can only achieve poor portability and does not have a hierarchical code assignment. Historically, the embedded SQL processor for Postgres Pro has assigned some specific `SQLCODE` values for its use, which are listed below with their numeric value and their symbolic name. Remember that these are not portable to other SQL implementations. To simplify the porting of applications to the `SQLSTATE` scheme, the corresponding `SQLSTATE` is also listed. There is, however, no one-to-one or one-to-many mapping between the two schemes (indeed it is many-to-many), so you should consult the global `SQLSTATE` listing in Appendix A in each case.

These are the assigned `SQLCODE` values:

0 (ECPG_NO_ERROR)
   Indicates no error. (SQLSTATE 00000)

100 (ECPG_NOT_FOUND)
   This is a harmless condition indicating that the last command retrieved or processed zero rows, or that you are at the end of the cursor. (SQLSTATE 02000)

When processing a cursor in a loop, you could use this code as a way to detect when to abort the loop, like this:

```c
while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH ... ;
    if (sqlca.sqlcode == ECPG_NOT_FOUND)
        break;
}
```
But WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK effectively does this internally, so there is usually no advantage in writing this out explicitly.

-12 (ECPG_OUT_OF_MEMORY)
Indicates that your virtual memory is exhausted. The numeric value is defined as -ENOMEM. (SQLSTATE YE001)

-200 (ECPG_UNSUPPORTED)
Indicates the preprocessor has generated something that the library does not know about. Perhaps you are running incompatible versions of the preprocessor and the library. (SQLSTATE YE002)

-201 (ECPG_TOO_MANY_ARGUMENTS)
This means that the command specified more host variables than the command expected. (SQLSTATE 07001 or 07002)

-202 (ECPG_TOO_FEW_ARGUMENTS)
This means that the command specified fewer host variables than the command expected. (SQLSTATE 07001 or 07002)

-203 (ECPG_TOO_MANY_MATCHES)
This means a query has returned multiple rows but the statement was only prepared to store one result row (for example, because the specified variables are not arrays). (SQLSTATE 21000)

-204 (ECPG_INT_FORMAT)
The host variable is of type int and the datum in the database is of a different type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as an int. The library uses strtol() for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-205 (ECPG_UINT_FORMAT)
The host variable is of type unsigned int and the datum in the database is of a different type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as an unsigned int. The library uses strtoul() for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-206 (ECPG_FLOAT_FORMAT)
The host variable is of type float and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a float. The library uses strtod() for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-207 (ECPG_NUMERIC_FORMAT)
The host variable is of type numeric and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a numeric value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-208 (ECPG_INTERVAL_FORMAT)
The host variable is of type interval and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as an interval value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-209 (ECPG_DATE_FORMAT)
The host variable is of type date and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a date value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-210 (ECPG_TIMESTAMP_FORMAT)
The host variable is of type timestamp and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a timestamp value. (SQLSTATE 42804)
-211 (ECPG_CONVERT_BOOL)
  This means the host variable is of type bool and the datum in the database is neither 't' nor 'f'.
  (SQLSTATE 42804)

-212 (ECPG_EMPTY)
  The statement sent to the Postgres Pro server was empty. (This cannot normally happen in an
  embedded SQL program, so it might point to an internal error.) (SQLSTATE YE002)

-213 (ECPG_MISSING_INDICATOR)
  A null value was returned and no null indicator variable was supplied. (SQLSTATE 22002)

-214 (ECPG_NO_ARRAY)
  An ordinary variable was used in a place that requires an array. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-215 (ECPG_DATA_NOT_ARRAY)
  The database returned an ordinary variable in a place that requires array value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-216 (ECPG_ARRAY_INSERT)
  The value could not be inserted into the array. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-220 (ECPG_NO_CONN)
  The program tried to access a connection that does not exist. (SQLSTATE 08003)

-221 (ECPG_NOT_CONN)
  The program tried to access a connection that does exist but is not open. (This is an internal error.)
  (SQLSTATE YE002)

-230 (ECPG_INVALID_STMT)
  The statement you are trying to use has not been prepared. (SQLSTATE 26000)

-239 (ECPG_INFORMIX_DUPLICATE_KEY)
  Duplicate key error, violation of unique constraint (Informix compatibility mode). (SQLSTATE 23505)

-240 (ECPG_UNKNOWN_DESCRIPTOR)
  The descriptor specified was not found. The statement you are trying to use has not been prepared.
  (SQLSTATE 33000)

-241 (ECPG_INVALID_DESCRIPTOR_INDEX)
  The descriptor index specified was out of range. (SQLSTATE 07009)

-242 (ECPG_UNKNOWN_DESCRIPTOR_ITEM)
  An invalid descriptor item was requested. (This is an internal error.) (SQLSTATE YE002)

-243 (ECPG_VAR_NOT_NUMERIC)
  During the execution of a dynamic statement, the database returned a numeric value and the host
  variable was not numeric. (SQLSTATE 07006)

-244 (ECPG_VAR_NOT_CHAR)
  During the execution of a dynamic statement, the database returned a non-numeric value and the
  host variable was numeric. (SQLSTATE 07006)

-284 (ECPG_INFORMIX_SUBSELECT_NOT_ONE)
  A result of the subquery is not single row (Informix compatibility mode). (SQLSTATE 21000)
-400 (ECPG_PGSQl)
   Some error caused by the Postgres Pro server. The message contains the error message from the
   Postgres Pro server.

-401 (ECPG_TRANS)
   The Postgres Pro server signaled that we cannot start, commit, or rollback the transaction.
   (SQLSTATE 08007)

-402 (ECPG_CONNECT)
   The connection attempt to the database did not succeed. (SQLSTATE 08001)

-403 (ECPG_DUPLICATE_KEY)
   Duplicate key error, violation of unique constraint. (SQLSTATE 23505)

-404 (ECPG_SUBSELECT_NOT_ONE)
   A result for the subquery is not single row. (SQLSTATE 21000)

-602 (ECPG_WARNING_UNKNOWN_PORTAL)
   An invalid cursor name was specified. (SQLSTATE 34000)

-603 (ECPG_WARNING_IN_TRANSACTION)
   Transaction is in progress. (SQLSTATE 25001)

-604 (ECPG_WARNING_NO_TRANSACTION)
   There is no active (in-progress) transaction. (SQLSTATE 25P01)

-605 (ECPG_WARNING_PORTAL_EXISTS)
   An existing cursor name was specified. (SQLSTATE 42P03)

34.9. Preprocessor Directives

Several preprocessor directives are available that modify how the ecpg preprocessor parses and
processes a file.

34.9.1. Including Files

To include an external file into your embedded SQL program, use:

```sql
EXEC SQL INCLUDE filename;
EXEC SQL INCLUDE <filename>;
EXEC SQL INCLUDE "filename";
```

The embedded SQL preprocessor will look for a file named `filename.h`, preprocess it, and include it in
the resulting C output. Thus, embedded SQL statements in the included file are handled correctly.

The ecpg preprocessor will search a file at several directories in following order:

- current directory
- /usr/local/include
- Postgres Pro include directory, defined at build time (e.g., /usr/local/pgsql/include)
- /usr/include

But when `EXEC SQL INCLUDE "filename"` is used, only the current directory is searched.
In each directory, the preprocessor will first look for the file name as given, and if not found will append .h to the file name and try again (unless the specified file name already has that suffix).

Note that EXEC SQL INCLUDE is not the same as:
#include <filename.h>
because this file would not be subject to SQL command preprocessing. Naturally, you can continue to use the C #include directive to include other header files.

Note

The include file name is case-sensitive, even though the rest of the EXEC SQL INCLUDE command follows the normal SQL case-sensitivity rules.

34.9.2. The define and undef Directives

Similar to the directive #define that is known from C, embedded SQL has a similar concept:

EXEC SQL DEFINE name;
EXEC SQL DEFINE name value;

So you can define a name:
EXEC SQL DEFINE HAVE_FEATURE;

And you can also define constants:
EXEC SQL DEFINE MYNUMBER 12;
EXEC SQL DEFINE MYSTRING 'abc';

Use undef to remove a previous definition:
EXEC SQL UNDEF MYNUMBER;

Of course you can continue to use the C versions #define and #undef in your embedded SQL program. The difference is where your defined values get evaluated. If you use EXEC SQL DEFINE then the ecpg preprocessor evaluates the defines and substitutes the values. For example if you write:
EXEC SQL DEFINE MYNUMBER 12;
...
EXEC SQL UPDATE Tbl SET col = MYNUMBER;

then ecpg will already do the substitution and your C compiler will never see any name or identifier MYNUMBER. Note that you cannot use #define for a constant that you are going to use in an embedded SQL query because in this case the embedded SQL precompiler is not able to see this declaration.

34.9.3. ifdef, ifndef, elif, else, and endif Directives

You can use the following directives to compile code sections conditionally:
EXEC SQL ifdef name;

Checks a name and processes subsequent lines if name has been defined via EXEC SQL define name.

EXEC SQL ifndef name;

Checks a name and processes subsequent lines if name has not been defined via EXEC SQL define name.

EXEC SQL elif name;

 Begins an optional alternative section after an EXEC SQL ifdef name or EXEC SQL ifndef name directive. Any number of elif sections can appear. Lines following an elif will be processed if
EXEC SQL else;

Begins an optional, final alternative section after an EXEC SQL ifdef name or EXEC SQL ifndef name directive. Subsequent lines will be processed if no previous section of the same ifdef/ifndef...endif construct has been processed.

EXEC SQL endif;

Ends an ifdef/ifndef...endif construct. Subsequent lines are processed normally.

ifdef/ifndef...endif constructs can be nested, up to 127 levels deep.

This example will compile exactly one of the three SET TIMEZONE commands:

EXEC SQL ifdef TZVAR;
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO TZVAR;
EXEC SQL elif TZNAME;
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO TZNAME;
EXEC SQL else;
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO 'GMT';
EXEC SQL endif;

34.10. Processing Embedded SQL Programs

Now that you have an idea how to form embedded SQL C programs, you probably want to know how to compile them. Before compiling you run the file through the embedded SQL C preprocessor, which converts the SQL statements you used to special function calls. After compiling, you must link with a special library that contains the needed functions. These functions fetch information from the arguments, perform the SQL command using the libpq interface, and put the result in the arguments specified for output.

The preprocessor program is called ecpg and is included in a normal Postgres Pro installation. Embedded SQL programs are typically named with an extension .pcg. If you have a program file called prog1.pgc, you can preprocess it by simply calling:

ecpg prog1.pgc

This will create a file called prog1.c. If your input files do not follow the suggested naming pattern, you can specify the output file explicitly using the -o option.

The preprocessed file can be compiled normally, for example:

c -c prog1.c

The generated C source files include header files from the Postgres Pro installation, so if you installed Postgres Pro in a location that is not searched by default, you have to add an option such as -I/usr/local/pgsql/include to the compilation command line.

To link an embedded SQL program, you need to include the libecpg library, like so:

c -o myprog prog1.o prog2.o ... -lecpg

Again, you might have to add an option like -L/usr/local/pgsql/lib to that command line.

You can use pg_config or pkg-config with package name libecpg to get the paths for your installation.

If you manage the build process of a larger project using make, it might be convenient to include the following implicit rule to your makefiles:

ECPG = ecpg
The complete syntax of the `ecpg` command is detailed in `ecpg`.

The `ecpg` library is thread-safe by default. However, you might need to use some threading command-line options to compile your client code.

### 34.11. Library Functions

The `libecpg` library primarily contains “hidden” functions that are used to implement the functionality expressed by the embedded SQL commands. But there are some functions that can usefully be called directly. Note that this makes your code unportable.

- `ECPGdebug(int on, FILE *stream)` turns on debug logging if called with the first argument non-zero. Debug logging is done on `stream`. The log contains all SQL statements with all the input variables inserted, and the results from the Postgres Pro server. This can be very useful when searching for errors in your SQL statements.

  **Note**
  
  On Windows, if the `ecpg` libraries and an application are compiled with different flags, this function call will crash the application because the internal representation of the `FILE` pointers differ. Specifically, multithreaded/single-threaded, release/debug, and static/dynamic flags should be the same for the library and all applications using that library.

- `ECPGget_PGconn(const char *connection_name)` returns the library database connection handle identified by the given name. If `connection_name` is set to `NULL`, the current connection handle is returned. If no connection handle can be identified, the function returns `NULL`. The returned connection handle can be used to call any other functions from `libpq`, if necessary.

  **Note**
  
  It is a bad idea to manipulate database connection handles made from `ecpg` directly with `libpq` routines.

- `ECPGtransactionStatus(const char *connection_name)` returns the current transaction status of the given connection identified by `connection_name`. See Section 32.2 and `libpq`'s `PQtransactionStatus` for details about the returned status codes.

- `ECPGstatus(int lineno, const char* connection_name)` returns true if you are connected to a database and false if not. `connection_name` can be `NULL` if a single connection is being used.

### 34.12. Large Objects

Large objects are not directly supported by ECPG, but ECPG application can manipulate large objects through the `libpq` large object functions, obtaining the necessary `PGconn` object by calling the `ECPGget_PGconn()` function. (However, use of the `ECPGget_PGconn()` function and touching `PGconn` objects directly should be done very carefully and ideally not mixed with other ECPG database access calls.)

For more details about the `ECPGget_PGconn()`, see Section 34.11. For information about the large object function interface, see Chapter 33.

Large object functions have to be called in a transaction block, so when autocommit is off, `BEGIN` commands have to be issued explicitly.
Example 34.2 shows an example program that illustrates how to create, write, and read a large object in an ECPG application.

Example 34.2. ECPG Program Accessing Large Objects

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <libpq-fe.h>
#include <libpq/libpq-fs.h>

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;

int main(void)
{
    PGconn *conn;
    Oid loid;
    int fd;
    char buf[256];
    int buflen = 256;
    char buf2[256];
    int rc;

    memset(buf, 1, buflen);

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    conn = ECPGget_PGconn("con1");
    printf("conn = %p\n", conn);

    /* create */
    loid = lo_create(conn, 0);
    if (loid < 0)
        printf("lo_create() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    printf("loid = %d\n", loid);

    /* write test */
    fd = lo_open(conn, loid, INV_READ|INV_WRITE);
    if (fd &lt; 0)
        printf("lo_open() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    printf("fd = %d\n", fd);
    rc = lo_write(conn, fd, buf, buflen);
    if (rc &lt; 0)
        printf("lo_write() failed\n");
    rc = lo_close(conn, fd);
    if (rc &lt; 0)
        printf("lo_close() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));

    /* read test */
    fd = lo_open(conn, loid, INV_READ);
    if (fd &lt; 0)
        printf("lo_open() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    printf("fd = %d\n", fd);
```
rc = lo_read(conn, fd, buf2, buflen);
if (rc &lt; 0)
  printf("lo_read() failed\n");
rc = lo_close(conn, fd);
if (rc &lt; 0)
  printf("lo_close() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
/* check */
rc = memcmp(buf, buf2, buflen);
printf("memcmp() = %d", rc);
/* cleanup */
rc = lo_unlink(conn, loid);
if (rc &lt; 0)
  printf("lo_unlink() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
return 0;
}

34.13. C++ Applications

ECPG has some limited support for C++ applications. This section describes some caveats.

The ecpg preprocessor takes an input file written in C (or something like C) and embedded SQL commands, converts the embedded SQL commands into C language chunks, and finally generates a .c file. The header file declarations of the library functions used by the C language chunks that ecpg generates are wrapped in extern "C" { ... } blocks when used under C++, so they should work seamlessly in C++.

In general, however, the ecpg preprocessor only understands C; it does not handle the special syntax and reserved words of the C++ language. So, some embedded SQL code written in C++ application code that uses complicated features specific to C++ might fail to be preprocessed correctly or might not work as expected.

A safe way to use the embedded SQL code in a C++ application is hiding the ECPG calls in a C module, which the C++ application code calls into to access the database, and linking that together with the rest of the C++ code. See Section 34.13.2 about that.

34.13.1. Scope for Host Variables

The ecpg preprocessor understands the scope of variables in C. In the C language, this is rather simple because the scopes of variables is based on their code blocks. In C++, however, the class member variables are referenced in a different code block from the declared position, so the ecpg preprocessor will not understand the scope of the class member variables.

For example, in the following case, the ecpg preprocessor cannot find any declaration for the variable dbname in the test method, so an error will occur:

class TestCpp
{
  EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
  char dbname[1024];
  EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

  public:
TestCpp();
void test();
~TestCpp();

TestCpp::TestCpp()
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb1;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
}

void Test::test()
{
    EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :dbname;
    printf("current_database = %s\n", dbname);
}

TestCpp::~TestCpp()
{
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
}

This code will result in an error like this:

epg test_cpp.pgc
test_cpp.pgc:28: ERROR: variable "dbname" is not declared

To avoid this scope issue, the test method could be modified to use a local variable as intermediate storage. But this approach is only a poor workaround, because it uglifies the code and reduces performance.

void TestCpp::test()
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char tmp[1024];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :tmp;
    strlcpy(dbname, tmp, sizeof(tmp));

    printf("current_database = %s\n", dbname);
}

34.13.2. C++ Application Development with External C Module

If you understand these technical limitations of the epg preprocessor in C++, you might come to the conclusion that linking C objects and C++ objects at the link stage to enable C++ applications to use ECPG features could be better than writing some embedded SQL commands in C++ code directly. This section describes a way to separate some embedded SQL commands from C++ application code with a simple example. In this example, the application is implemented in C++, while C and ECPG is used to connect to the Postgres Pro server.

Three kinds of files have to be created: a C file (*.pgc), a header file, and a C++ file:

test_mod.pgc

A sub-routine module to execute SQL commands embedded in C. It is going to be converted into test_mod.c by the preprocessor.

#include "test_mod.h"
#include <stdio.h>
void 
db_connect()
{
  EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb1;
  EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false);
  EXEC SQL COMMIT;
}
void 
db_test()
{
  EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
  char dbname[1024];
  EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

  EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :dbname;
  printf("current_database = %s\n", dbname);
}
void 
db_disconnect()
{
  EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
}

test_mod.h
A header file with declarations of the functions in the C module (test_mod.pgc). It is included by 
test_cpp.cpp. This file has to have an extern "C" block around the declarations, because it will 
be linked from the C++ module.
#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C" {
#endif
void db_connect();
void db_test();
void db_disconnect();
#ifdef __cplusplus
}
#endif
test_cpp.cpp
The main code for the application, including the main routine, and in this example a C++ class.
#include "test_mod.h"
class TestCpp
{
  public:
    TestCpp();
    void test();
    ~TestCpp();
};
TestCpp::TestCpp()
{
  db_connect();
To build the application, proceed as follows. Convert `test_mod.pgc` into `test_mod.c` by running `ecpg`, and generate `test_mod.o` by compiling `test_mod.c` with the C compiler:

```bash
ecpg -o test_mod.c test_mod.pgc
cc -c test_mod.c -o test_mod.o
```

Next, generate `test_cpp.o` by compiling `test_cpp.cpp` with the C++ compiler:

```bash
c++ -c test_cpp.cpp -o test_cpp.o
```

Finally, link these object files, `test_cpp.o` and `test_mod.o`, into one executable, using the C++ compiler driver:

```bash
c++ test_cpp.o test_mod.o -lepg -o test_cpp
```

### 34.14. Embedded SQL Commands

This section describes all SQL commands that are specific to embedded SQL. Also refer to the SQL commands listed in SQL Commands, which can also be used in embedded SQL, unless stated otherwise.
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR — allocate an SQL descriptor area

Synopsis

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR name

Description

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR allocates a new named SQL descriptor area, which can be used to exchange data between the Postgres Pro server and the host program.

Descriptor areas should be freed after use using the DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR command.

Parameters

name

A name of SQL descriptor, case sensitive. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

Examples

EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc;

Compatibility

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, GET DESCRIPTOR, SET DESCRIPTOR
CONNECT

CONNECT — establish a database connection

Synopsis

CONNECT TO connection_target [ AS connection_name ] [ USER connection_user ]
CONNECT TO DEFAULT
CONNECT connection_user
DATABASE connection_target

Description

The CONNECT command establishes a connection between the client and the Postgres Pro server.

Parameters

connection_target

- connection_target specifies the target server of the connection on one of several forms.
  - [ database_name ][@host ][:port ]
    - Connect over TCP/IP
  - unix:postgresql://host[:port]/[ database_name ][?connection_option]
    - Connect over Unix-domain sockets
  - tcp:postgresql://host[:port]/[ database_name ][?connection_option]
    - Connect over TCP/IP

- SQL string constant containing a value in one of the above forms

- host variable
  - host variable of type char[] or VARCHAR[] containing a value in one of the above forms

connection_name

- An optional identifier for the connection, so that it can be referred to in other commands. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

connection_user

- The user name for the database connection.

  - This parameter can also specify user name and password, using one the forms user_name/password, user_name IDENTIFIED BY password, or user_name USING password.
  - User name and password can be SQL identifiers, string constants, or host variables.

DEFAULT

- Use all default connection parameters, as defined by libpq.

Examples

Here a several variants for specifying connection parameters:

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "connectdb" AS main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "connectdb" AS second;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "unix:postgresql://200.46.204.71/connectdb" AS main USER
  connectuser;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb" AS main USER connectuser;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO 'connectdb' AS main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO 'unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb' AS main USER :user;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :db AS :id;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :db USER connectuser USING :pw;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO @localhost AS main USER connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO AS main USER connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS :id;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS main USER connectuser/connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb@localhost AS main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost/ USER connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost/AS main USER connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER connectuser IDENTIFIED BY
  connectpw;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost:20/connectdb USER connectuser IDENTIFIED
  BY connectpw;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/ AS main USER connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb AS main USER connectuser;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER connectuser IDENTIFIED
  BY "connectpw";
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER connectuser USING
  "connectpw";
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb?connect_timeout=14 USER
  connectuser;

Here is an example program that illustrates the use of host variables to specify connection parameters:

```c
int
main(void)
{
  EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char *dbname = "testdb"; /* database name */
    char *user   = "testuser"; /* connection user name */
    char *connection = "tcp:postgresql://localhost:5432/testdb";
    /* connection string */
    char ver[256]; /* buffer to store the version string */
  EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

  ECPGdebug(1, stderr);

  EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :dbname USER :user;
  EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
  EXEC SQL SELECT pgpro_version() INTO :ver;
  EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;

  printf("version: %s\n", ver);

  EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :connection USER :user;
  EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
  EXEC SQL SELECT pgpro_version() INTO :ver;
  EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;

  printf("version: %s\n", ver);

  return 0;
}
```
Compatibility

CONNECT is specified in the SQL standard, but the format of the connection parameters is implementation-specific.

See Also

DISCONNECT, SET CONNECTION
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR — deallocate an SQL descriptor area

Synopsis
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR name

Description
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR deallocates a named SQL descriptor area.

Parameters
name
The name of the descriptor which is going to be deallocated. It is case sensitive. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

Examples
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc;

Compatibility
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, GET DESCRIPTOR, SET DESCRIPTOR
DECLARE

DECLARE — define a cursor

Synopsis

DECLARE cursor_name [ BINARY ] [ ASENSITIVE | INSENSITIVE ] [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] CURSOR
[ { WITH | WITHOUT } HOLD ] FOR prepared_name
DECLARE cursor_name [ BINARY ] [ ASENSITIVE | INSENSITIVE ] [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] CURSOR
[ { WITH | WITHOUT } HOLD ] FOR query

Description

DECLARE declares a cursor for iterating over the result set of a prepared statement. This command has slightly different semantics from the direct SQL command DECLARE: Whereas the latter executes a query and prepares the result set for retrieval, this embedded SQL command merely declares a name as a “loop variable” for iterating over the result set of a query; the actual execution happens when the cursor is opened with the OPEN command.

Parameters

cursor_name
A cursor name, case sensitive. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

prepared_name
The name of a prepared query, either as an SQL identifier or a host variable.

query
A SELECT or VALUES command which will provide the rows to be returned by the cursor.

For the meaning of the cursor options, see DECLARE.

Examples

Examples declaring a cursor for a query:
EXEC SQL DECLARE C CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM My_Table;
EXEC SQL DECLARE C CURSOR FOR SELECT Item1 FROM T;
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT pgpro_version();

An example declaring a cursor for a prepared statement:
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 AS SELECT pgpro_version();
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR stmt1;

Compatibility

DECLARE is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also
OPEN, CLOSE, DECLARE
DECLARE STATEMENT

DECLARE STATEMENT — declare SQL statement identifier

Synopsis

EXEC SQL [ AT connection_name ] DECLARE statement_name STATEMENT

Description

DECLARE STATEMENT declares an SQL statement identifier. SQL statement identifier can be associated with the connection. When the identifier is used by dynamic SQL statements, the statements are executed using the associated connection. The namespace of the declaration is the precompile unit, and multiple declarations to the same SQL statement identifier are not allowed. Note that if the precompiler runs in Informix compatibility mode and some SQL statement is declared, "database" can not be used as a cursor name.

Parameters

connection_name

A database connection name established by the CONNECT command.

AT clause can be omitted, but such statement has no meaning.

statement_name

The name of an SQL statement identifier, either as an SQL identifier or a host variable.

Notes

This association is valid only if the declaration is physically placed on top of a dynamic statement.

Examples

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO postgres AS con1;
EXEC SQL AT con1 DECLARE sql_stmt STATEMENT;
EXEC SQL DECLARE cursor_name CURSOR FOR sql_stmt;
EXEC SQL PREPARE sql_stmt FROM :dyn_string;
EXEC SQL OPEN cursor_name;
EXEC SQL FETCH cursor_name INTO :column1;
EXEC SQL CLOSE cursor_name;

Compatibility

DECLARE STATEMENT is an extension of the SQL standard, but can be used in famous DBMSs.

See Also

CONNECT, DECLARE, OPEN
DESCRIBE

DESCRIBE — obtain information about a prepared statement or result set

Synopsis

DESCRIBE [ OUTPUT ] prepared_name USING [ SQL ] DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name
DESCRIBE [ OUTPUT ] prepared_name INTO [ SQL ] DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name
DESCRIBE [ OUTPUT ] prepared_name INTO sqlda_name

Description

DESCRIBE retrieves metadata information about the result columns contained in a prepared statement, without actually fetching a row.

Parameters

preparing_name

The name of a prepared statement. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

descriptor_name

A descriptor name. It is case sensitive. It can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

sqlda_name

The name of an SQLDA variable.

Examples

EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :sql_stmt;
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE stmt1 INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR mydesc VALUE 1 :charvar = NAME;
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc;

Compatibility

DESCRIBE is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, GET DESCRIPTOR
**DISCONNECT**

DISCONNECT — terminate a database connection

**Synopsis**

DISCONNECT connection_name  
DISCONNECT [ CURRENT ]  
DISCONNECT DEFAULT  
DISCONNECT ALL

**Description**

DISCONNECT closes a connection (or all connections) to the database.

**Parameters**

connection_name  
A database connection name established by the CONNECT command.

CURRENT  
Close the “current” connection, which is either the most recently opened connection, or the connection set by the SET CONNECTION command. This is also the default if no argument is given to the DISCONNECT command.

DEFAULT  
Close the default connection.

ALL  
Close all open connections.

**Examples**

```c
int main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS DEFAULT USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con2 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con3 USER testuser;

    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT CURRENT; /* close con3 */
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT DEFAULT; /* close DEFAULT */
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL; /* close con2 and con1 */
    return 0;
}
```

**Compatibility**

DISCONNECT is specified in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

CONNECT, SET CONNECTION
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE — dynamically prepare and execute a statement

Synopsis

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE string

Description

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE immediately prepares and executes a dynamically specified SQL statement, without retrieving result rows.

Parameters

string

A literal string or a host variable containing the SQL statement to be executed.

Notes

In typical usage, the string is a host variable reference to a string containing a dynamically-constructed SQL statement. The case of a literal string is not very useful; you might as well just write the SQL statement directly, without the extra typing of EXECUTE IMMEDIATE.

If you do use a literal string, keep in mind that any double quotes you might wish to include in the SQL statement must be written as octal escapes (\042) not the usual C idiom \". This is because the string is inside an EXEC SQL section, so the ECPG lexer parses it according to SQL rules not C rules. Any embedded backslashes will later be handled according to C rules; but \" causes an immediate syntax error because it is seen as ending the literal.

Examples

Here is an example that executes an INSERT statement using EXECUTE IMMEDIATE and a host variable named command:

```c
sprintf(command, "INSERT INTO test (name, amount, letter) VALUES ('db: 'r1''', 1, 'f')");
EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :command;
```

Compatibility

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE is specified in the SQL standard.
GET DESCRIPTOR

GET DESCRIPTOR — get information from an SQL descriptor area

Synopsis

GET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name :cvariable = descriptor_header_item [, ... ]
GET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name VALUE column_number :cvariable = descriptor_item

[, ... ]

Description

GET DESCRIPTOR retrieves information about a query result set from an SQL descriptor area and stores it into host variables. A descriptor area is typically populated using FETCH or SELECT before using this command to transfer the information into host language variables.

This command has two forms: The first form retrieves descriptor "header" items, which apply to the result set in its entirety. One example is the row count. The second form, which requires the column number as additional parameter, retrieves information about a particular column. Examples are the column name and the actual column value.

Parameters

descriptor_name

A descriptor name.

descriptor_header_item

A token identifying which header information item to retrieve. Only COUNT, to get the number of columns in the result set, is currently supported.

column_number

The number of the column about which information is to be retrieved. The count starts at 1.

descriptor_item

A token identifying which item of information about a column to retrieve. See Section 34.7.1 for a list of supported items.

cvariable

A host variable that will receive the data retrieved from the descriptor area.

Examples

An example to retrieve the number of columns in a result set:

EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d :d_count = COUNT;

An example to retrieve a data length in the first column:

EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :d_returned_octet_length = RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH;

An example to retrieve the data body of the second column as a string:

EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 2 :d_data = DATA;

Here is an example for a whole procedure of executing SELECT current_database(); and showing the number of columns, the column data length, and the column data:

int
main(void)
{

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
  int  d_count;
  char d_data[1024];
  int  d_returned_octet_length;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser;
EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d;

  /* Declare, open a cursor, and assign a descriptor to the cursor */
  EXEC SQL DECLARE cur CURSOR FOR SELECT current_database();
  EXEC SQL OPEN cur;
  EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR d;

  /* Get a number of total columns */
  EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d :d_count = COUNT;
  printf("d_count = %d\n", d_count);

  /* Get length of a returned column */
  EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :d_returned_octet_length = RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH;
  printf("d_returned_octet_length = %d\n", d_returned_octet_length);

  /* Fetch the returned column as a string */
  EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :d_data = DATA;
  printf("d_data = %s\n", d_data);

  /* Closing */
  EXEC SQL CLOSE cur;
  EXEC SQL COMMIT;

EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;

  return 0;
}

When the example is executed, the result will look like this:

d_count = 1
d_returned_octet_length = 6
d_data = testdb

Compatibility

GET DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, SET DESCRIPTOR
OPEN

OPEN — open a dynamic cursor

Synopsis

OPEN cursor_name
OPEN cursor_name USING value [, ... ]
OPEN cursor_name USING SQL DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name

Description

OPEN opens a cursor and optionally binds actual values to the placeholders in the cursor’s declaration. The cursor must previously have been declared with the DECLARE command. The execution of OPEN causes the query to start executing on the server.

Parameters

cursor_name

The name of the cursor to be opened. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

value

A value to be bound to a placeholder in the cursor. This can be an SQL constant, a host variable, or a host variable with indicator.

descriptor_name

The name of a descriptor containing values to be bound to the placeholders in the cursor. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

Examples

EXEC SQL OPEN a;
EXEC SQL OPEN d USING 1, 'test';
EXEC SQL OPEN c1 USING SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
EXEC SQL OPEN :curname1;

Compatibility

OPEN is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also

DECLARE, CLOSE
PREPARE

PREPARE — prepare a statement for execution

Synopsis

PREPARE prepared_name FROM string

Description

PREPARE prepares a statement dynamically specified as a string for execution. This is different from the direct SQL statement PREPARE, which can also be used in embedded programs. The EXECUTE command is used to execute either kind of prepared statement.

Parameters

prepared_name

An identifier for the prepared query.

string

A literal string or a host variable containing a preparable SQL statement, one of SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. Use question marks (?) for parameter values to be supplied at execution.

Notes

In typical usage, the string is a host variable reference to a string containing a dynamically-constructed SQL statement. The case of a literal string is not very useful; you might as well just write a direct SQL PREPARE statement.

If you do use a literal string, keep in mind that any double quotes you might wish to include in the SQL statement must be written as octal escapes (\042) not the usual C idiom \". This is because the string is inside an EXEC SQL section, so the ECPG lexer parses it according to SQL rules not C rules. Any embedded backslashes will later be handled according to C rules; but \" causes an immediate syntax error because it is seen as ending the literal.

Examples

char *stmt = "SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE a = ? AND b = ?";

EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR outdesc;
EXEC SQL PREPARE foo FROM :stmt;

EXEC SQL EXECUTE foo USING SQL DESCRIPTOR indesc INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR outdesc;

Compatibility

PREPARE is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also

EXECUTE
SET AUTOCOMMIT

SET AUTOCOMMIT — set the autocommit behavior of the current session

Synopsis

```
SET AUTOCOMMIT { = | TO } { ON | OFF }
```

Description

SET AUTOCOMMIT sets the autocommit behavior of the current database session. By default, embedded SQL programs are not in autocommit mode, so COMMIT needs to be issued explicitly when desired. This command can change the session to autocommit mode, where each individual statement is committed implicitly.

Compatibility

SET AUTOCOMMIT is an extension of Postgres Pro ECPG.
SET CONNECTION

SET CONNECTION — select a database connection

Synopsis

SET CONNECTION [ TO | = ] connection_name

Description

SET CONNECTION sets the “current” database connection, which is the one that all commands use unless overridden.

Parameters

connection_name

A database connection name established by the CONNECT command.

DEFAULT

Set the connection to the default connection.

Examples

EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION TO con2;
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION = con1;

Compatibility

SET CONNECTION is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also

CONNECT, DISCONNECT
SET DESCRIPTOR

SET DESCRIPTOR — set information in an SQL descriptor area

Synopsis

SET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name descriptor_header_item = value [, ... ]
SET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name VALUE number descriptor_item = value [, ...]

Description

SET DESCRIPTOR populates an SQL descriptor area with values. The descriptor area is then typically used to bind parameters in a prepared query execution.

This command has two forms: The first form applies to the descriptor “header”, which is independent of a particular datum. The second form assigns values to particular datums, identified by number.

Parameters

descriptor_name

A descriptor name.

descriptor_header_item

A token identifying which header information item to set. Only COUNT, to set the number of descriptor items, is currently supported.

number

The number of the descriptor item to set. The count starts at 1.

descriptor_item

A token identifying which item of information to set in the descriptor. See Section 34.7.1 for a list of supported items.

value

A value to store into the descriptor item. This can be an SQL constant or a host variable.

Examples

EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc COUNT = 1;
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 1 DATA = 2;
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 1 DATA = :val1;
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 2 INDICATOR = :val1, DATA = 'some string';
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 2 INDICATOR = :val2null, DATA = :val2;

Compatibility

SET DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, GET DESCRIPTOR
TYPE

TYPE — define a new data type

Synopsis

TYPE type_name IS ctype

Description

The TYPE command defines a new C type. It is equivalent to putting a typedef into a declare section.

This command is only recognized when ecpg is run with the -c option.

Parameters

type_name

The name for the new type. It must be a valid C type name.

ctype

A C type specification.

Examples

EXEC SQL TYPE customer IS
struct
{
   varchar name[50];
   int     phone;
};
EXEC SQL TYPE cust_ind IS
struct ind
{
   short   name_ind;
   short   phone_ind;
};
EXEC SQL TYPE c IS char reference;
EXEC SQL TYPE ind IS union { int integer; short smallint; };
EXEC SQL TYPE intarray IS int[AMOUNT];
EXEC SQL TYPE str IS varchar[BUFFERSIZ];
EXEC SQL TYPE string IS char[11];

Here is an example program that uses EXEC SQL TYPE:

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR SQLPRINT;
EXEC SQL TYPE tt IS
struct
{
   varchar v[256];
   int     i;
};
EXEC SQL TYPE tt_ind IS
struct ind {
   short   v_ind;
   short   i_ind;
};
int main(void)
{
  EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
  tt t;
  tt_ind t_ind;
  EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

  EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1;
  EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

  EXEC SQL SELECT current_database(), 256 INTO :t:t_ind LIMIT 1;

  printf("t.v = %s\n", t.v.arr);
  printf("t.i = %d\n", t.i);

  printf("t_ind.v_ind = %d\n", t_ind.v_ind);
  printf("t_ind.i_ind = %d\n", t_ind.i_ind);

  EXEC SQL DISCONNECT con1;

  return 0;
}

The output from this program looks like this:

  t.v = testdb
  t.i = 256
  t_ind.v_ind = 0
  t_ind.i_ind = 0

Compatibility

The TYPE command is a Postgres Pro extension.
VAR

VAR — define a variable

Synopsis

VAR varname IS ctype

Description

The VAR command assigns a new C data type to a host variable. The host variable must be previously declared in a declare section.

Parameters

varname

A C variable name.

cType

A C type specification.

Examples

Exec sql begin declare section;
short a;
exec sql end declare section;
EXEC SQL VAR a IS int;

Compatibility

The VAR command is a Postgres Pro extension.
WHENEVER

WHENEVER — specify the action to be taken when an SQL statement causes a specific class condition to be raised

Synopsis

WHENEVER { NOT FOUND | SQLERROR | SQLWARNING } action

Description

Define a behavior which is called on the special cases (Rows not found, SQL warnings or errors) in the result of SQL execution.

Parameters

See Section 34.8.1 for a description of the parameters.

Examples

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND CONTINUE;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO CONTINUE;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING DO warn();
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CALL print2();
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error("select");
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO sqlnotice(NULL, NONO);
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO sqlprint();
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR GOTO error_label;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;

A typical application is the use of WHENEVER NOT FOUND BREAK to handle looping through result sets:

```c
int main(void) {
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d;
    EXEC SQL DECLARE cur CURSOR FOR SELECT current_database(), 'hoge', 256;
    EXEC SQL OPEN cur;

    /* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop */
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

    while (1) {
        EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR d;
        ...  
    }

    EXEC SQL CLOSE cur;
    EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d;
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;

    return 0;
}
```
Compatibility

WHENEVER is specified in the SQL standard, but most of the actions are Postgres Pro extensions.

34.15. Informix Compatibility Mode

ecpg can be run in a so-called Informix compatibility mode. If this mode is active, it tries to behave as if it were the Informix precompiler for Informix E/SQL. Generally spoken this will allow you to use the dollar sign instead of the EXEC SQL primitive to introduce embedded SQL commands:

```
$j = 3;
$CONNECT TO :dbname;
$CREATE TABLE test(i INT PRIMARY KEY, j INT);
$INSERT INTO test(i, j) VALUES (7, $j);
$COMMIT;
```

Note

There must not be any white space between the $ and a following preprocessor directive, that is, include, define, ifdef, etc. Otherwise, the preprocessor will parse the token as a host variable.

There are two compatibility modes: INFORMIX, INFORMIX_SE

When linking programs that use this compatibility mode, remember to link against libcompat that is shipped with ECPG.

Besides the previously explained syntactic sugar, the Informix compatibility mode ports some functions for input, output and transformation of data as well as embedded SQL statements known from E/SQL to ECPG.

Informix compatibility mode is closely connected to the pgtypeslib library of ECPG. pgtypeslib maps SQL data types to data types within the C host program and most of the additional functions of the Informix compatibility mode allow you to operate on those C host program types. Note however that the extent of the compatibility is limited. It does not try to copy Informix behavior; it allows you to do more or less the same operations and gives you functions that have the same name and the same basic behavior but it is no drop-in replacement if you are using Informix at the moment. Moreover, some of the data types are different. For example, Postgres Pro's datetime and interval types do not know about ranges like for example YEAR TO MINUTE so you won't find support in ECPG for that either.

34.15.1. Additional Types

The Informix-special "string" pseudo-type for storing right-trimmed character string data is now supported in Informix-mode without using typedef. In fact, in Informix-mode, ECPG refuses to process source files that contain typedef sometype string;

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
string userid; /* this variable will contain trimmed data */
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
EXEC SQL FETCH MYCUR INTO :userid;
```

34.15.2. Additional/Missing Embedded SQL Statements

CLOSE DATABASE

This statement closes the current connection. In fact, this is a synonym for ECPG's DISCONNECT CURRENT:

```
$CLOSE DATABASE; /* close the current connection */
EXEC SQL CLOSE DATABASE;
```
Due to the differences how ECPG works compared to Informix's ESQL/C (i.e., which steps are purely grammar transformations and which steps rely on the underlying run-time library) there is no `FREE cursor_name` statement in ECPG. This is because in ECPG, `DECLARE CURSOR` doesn't translate to a function call into the run-time library that uses the cursor name. This means that there's no run-time bookkeeping of SQL cursors in the ECPG run-time library, only in the Postgres Pro server.

`FREE statement_name` is a synonym for `DEALLOCATE PREPARE statement_name`.

### 34.15.3. Informix-compatible SQLDA Descriptor Areas

Informix-compatible mode supports a different structure than the one described in Section 34.7.2. See below:

```c
struct sqlvar_compat
{
  short   sqltype;
  int     sqllen;
  char   *sqldata;
  short   *sqlind;
  char   *sqlname;
  char   *sqlformat;
  short   sqltype;
  short   sqllen;
  char   *sqlname;
  char   *sqlplaceholder;
  int     sqlxid;
  char   *sqltypename;
  short   sqltypelen;
  short   sqlownerlen;
  short   sqlsourcetype;
  char   *sqlownername;
  int     sqlsourceid;
  char   *sqlilongdata;
  int     sqlflags;
  void   *sqlreserved;
};

struct sqlda_compat
{
  short  sqld;
  struct sqlvar_compat *sqlvar;
  char   desc_name[19];
  short  desc_occ;
  struct sqlda_compat *desc_next;
  void   *reserved;
};

typedef struct sqlvar_compat    sqlvar_t;
typedef struct sqlda_compat     sqlda_t;
```

The global properties are:

- `sqld`
  - The number of fields in the `SQLDA` descriptor.

- `sqlvar`
  - Pointer to the per-field properties.
desc_name
Unused, filled with zero-bytes.

desc_occ
Size of the allocated structure.

desc_next
Pointer to the next SQLDA structure if the result set contains more than one record.

reserved
Unused pointer, contains NULL. Kept for Informix-compatibility.

The per-field properties are below, they are stored in the sqlvar array:

sqltype
Type of the field. Constants are in sqltypes.h

sqllen
Length of the field data.

sqldata
Pointer to the field data. The pointer is of char * type, the data pointed by it is in a binary format.
Example:

```c
int intval;

switch (sqldata->sqlvar[i].sqltype)
{
    case SQLINTEGER:
        intval = *(int *)sqldata->sqlvar[i].sqldata;
        break;
    ...
}
```

sqlind
Pointer to the NULL indicator. If returned by DESCRIBE or FETCH then it's always a valid pointer. If used as input for EXECUTE ... USING sqlda; then NULL-pointer value means that the value for this field is non-NULL. Otherwise a valid pointer and sqlitype has to be properly set. Example:

```c
if (*(int2 *)sqldata->sqlvar[i].sqlind != 0)
    printf("value is NULL\n");
```

sqlname
Name of the field. 0-terminated string.

sqlformat
Reserved in Informix, value of PQfformat for the field.

sqlitype
Type of the NULL indicator data. It's always SQLSMINT when returning data from the server. When the SQLDA is used for a parameterized query, the data is treated according to the set type.

sqlilen
Length of the NULL indicator data.
sqlxid

Extended type of the field, result of PQftype.

sqltypename
sqltypelen
sqlownerlen
sqlsourcetype
sqlownername
sqlsourceid
sqlflags
sqlreserved

Unused.

sqlilongdata

It equals to sqldata if sqllen is larger than 32kB.

Example:
EXEC SQL INCLUDE sqlda.h;

    sqlda_t  *sqlda; /* This doesn't need to be under embedded DECLARE SECTION */

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char *prep_stmt = "select * from table1";
    int i;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

...

EXEC SQL PREPARE mystmt FROM :prep_stmt;
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE mystmt INTO sqlda;

printf("# of fields: %d\n", sqlda->sqld);
for (i = 0; i < sqlda->sqld; i++)
    printf("field %d: "$s\"\n", sqlda->sqlvar[i]->sqlname);

EXEC SQL DECLARE mycursor CURSOR FOR mystmt;
EXEC SQL OPEN mycursor;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO out;

while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH mycursor USING sqlda;
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE mycursor;

free(sqlda); /* The main structure is all to be free(),
    * sqlda and sqlda->sqlvar is in one allocated area */

34.15.4. Additional Functions

decadd

Add two decimal type values.

    int decadd(decimal *arg1, decimal *arg2, decimal *sum);
The function receives a pointer to the first operand of type decimal (arg1), a pointer to the second operand of type decimal (arg2) and a pointer to a value of type decimal that will contain the sum (sum). On success, the function returns 0. ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW is returned in case of overflow and ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW in case of underflow. -1 is returned for other failures and errno is set to the respective errno number of the pgtypeslib.

deccmp

Compare two variables of type decimal.

```c
int deccmp(decimal *arg1, decimal *arg2);
```

The function receives a pointer to the first decimal value (arg1), a pointer to the second decimal value (arg2) and returns an integer value that indicates which is the bigger value.

- 1, if the value that arg1 points to is bigger than the value that arg2 points to
- -1, if the value that arg1 points to is smaller than the value that arg2 points to
- 0, if the value that arg1 points to and the value that arg2 points to are equal

deccopy

Copy a decimal value.

```c
void deccopy(decimal *src, decimal *target);
```

The function receives a pointer to the decimal value that should be copied as the first argument (src) and a pointer to the target structure of type decimal (target) as the second argument.

deccvasc

Convert a value from its ASCII representation into a decimal type.

```c
int deccvasc(char *cp, int len, decimal *np);
```

The function receives a pointer to string that contains the string representation of the number to be converted (cp) as well as its length (len). np is a pointer to the decimal value that saves the result of the operation.

Valid formats are for example: -2, .794, +3.44, 592.49E07 or -32.84e-4.

The function returns 0 on success. If overflow or underflow occurred, ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW or ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW is returned. If the ASCII representation could not be parsed, ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_NUMERIC is returned or ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_EXPONENT if this problem occurred while parsing the exponent.

deccvdbl

Convert a value of type double to a value of type decimal.

```c
int deccvdbl(double dbl, decimal *np);
```

The function receives the variable of type double that should be converted as its first argument (dbl). As the second argument (np), the function receives a pointer to the decimal variable that should hold the result of the operation.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value if the conversion failed.

deccvint

Convert a value of type int to a value of type decimal.

```c
int deccvint(int in, decimal *np);
```

The function receives the variable of type int that should be converted as its first argument (in). As the second argument (np), the function receives a pointer to the decimal variable that should hold the result of the operation.
The function returns 0 on success and a negative value if the conversion failed.

deccvlong

Convert a value of type long to a value of type decimal.

int deccvlong(long lng, decimal *np);

The function receives the variable of type long that should be converted as its first argument (lng). As the second argument (np), the function receives a pointer to the decimal variable that should hold the result of the operation.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value if the conversion failed.

decdiv

Divide two variables of type decimal.

int decdiv(decimal *n1, decimal *n2, decimal *result);

The function receives pointers to the variables that are the first (n1) and the second (n2) operands and calculates \( \frac{n1}{n2} \). result is a pointer to the variable that should hold the result of the operation.

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the division fails. If overflow or underflow occurred, the function returns ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW or ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW respectively. If an attempt to divide by zero is observed, the function returns ECPG_INFORMIX_DIVIDE_ZERO.

decmul

Multiply two decimal values.

int decmul(decimal *n1, decimal *n2, decimal *result);

The function receives pointers to the variables that are the first (n1) and the second (n2) operands and calculates \( n1 \times n2 \). result is a pointer to the variable that should hold the result of the operation.

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the multiplication fails. If overflow or underflow occurred, the function returns ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW or ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW respectively.

decsub

Subtract one decimal value from another.

int decsub(decimal *n1, decimal *n2, decimal *result);

The function receives pointers to the variables that are the first (n1) and the second (n2) operands and calculates \( n1 - n2 \). result is a pointer to the variable that should hold the result of the operation.

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the subtraction fails. If overflow or underflow occurred, the function returns ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW or ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW respectively.

dectoasc

Convert a variable of type decimal to its ASCII representation in a C char* string.

int dectoasc(decimal *np, char *cp, int len, int right)

The function receives a pointer to a variable of type decimal (np) that it converts to its textual representation. cp is the buffer that should hold the result of the operation. The parameter right specifies, how many digits right of the decimal point should be included in the output. The result will be rounded to this number of decimal digits. Setting right to -1 indicates that all available decimal digits should be included in the output. If the length of the output buffer, which is indicated by len is not sufficient to hold the textual representation including the trailing zero byte, only a single * character is stored in the result and -1 is returned.
The function returns either -1 if the buffer \( cp \) was too small or `ECPG_INFORMIX_OUT_OF_MEMORY` if memory was exhausted.

**dectodbld**

Convert a variable of type decimal to a double.

```c
int dectodbld(decimal *np, double *dblp);
```

The function receives a pointer to the decimal value to convert (\( np \)) and a pointer to the double variable that should hold the result of the operation (\( dblp \)).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the conversion failed.

**dectoint**

Convert a variable to type decimal to an integer.

```c
int dectoint(decimal *np, int *ip);
```

The function receives a pointer to the decimal value to convert (\( np \)) and a pointer to the integer variable that should hold the result of the operation (\( ip \)).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the conversion failed. If an overflow occurred, `ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW` is returned.

Note that the ECPG implementation differs from the Informix implementation. Informix limits an integer to the range from -32767 to 32767, while the limits in the ECPG implementation depend on the architecture (\( INT_MIN \ldots INT_MAX \)).

**dectolong**

Convert a variable to type decimal to a long integer.

```c
int dectolong(decimal *np, long *lngp);
```

The function receives a pointer to the decimal value to convert (\( np \)) and a pointer to the long variable that should hold the result of the operation (\( lngp \)).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the conversion failed. If an overflow occurred, `ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW` is returned.

Note that the ECPG implementation differs from the Informix implementation. Informix limits a long integer to the range from -2,147,483,647 to 2,147,483,647, while the limits in the ECPG implementation depend on the architecture (\( -LONG_MAX \ldots LONG_MAX \)).

**rdatestr**

Converts a date to a C char* string.

```c
int rdatestr(date d, char *str);
```

The function receives two arguments, the first one is the date to convert (\( d \)) and the second one is a pointer to the target string. The output format is always \( yyyy-mm-dd \), so you need to allocate at least 11 bytes (including the zero-byte terminator) for the string.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value in case of error.

Note that ECPG's implementation differs from the Informix implementation. In Informix the format can be influenced by setting environment variables. In ECPG however, you cannot change the output format.

**rstrdate**

Parse the textual representation of a date.

```c
int rstrdate(char *str, date *d);
```
The function receives the textual representation of the date to convert (str) and a pointer to a variable of type date (d). This function does not allow you to specify a format mask. It uses the default format mask of Informix which is **mm/dd/yyyy**. Internally, this function is implemented by means of **rdefmtdate**. Therefore, **rstrdate** is not faster and if you have the choice you should opt for **rdefmtdate** which allows you to specify the format mask explicitly.

The function returns the same values as **rdefmtdate**.

**rtoday**

Get the current date.

```c
void rtoday(date *d);
```

The function receives a pointer to a date variable (d) that it sets to the current date.

Internally this function uses the **PGTYPESdate_today** function.

**rjulmdy**

Extract the values for the day, the month and the year from a variable of type date.

```c
int rjulmdy(date d, short mdy[3]);
```

The function receives the date d and a pointer to an array of 3 short integer values mdy. The variable name indicates the sequential order: mdy[0] will be set to contain the number of the month, mdy[1] will be set to the value of the day and mdy[2] will contain the year.

The function always returns 0 at the moment.

Internally the function uses the **PGTYPESdate_julmdy** function.

**rdefmtdate**

Use a format mask to convert a character string to a value of type date.

```c
int rdefmtdate(date *d, char *fmt, char *str);
```

The function receives a pointer to the date value that should hold the result of the operation (d), the format mask to use for parsing the date (fmt) and the C char* string containing the textual representation of the date (str). The textual representation is expected to match the format mask. However you do not need to have a 1:1 mapping of the string to the format mask. The function only analyzes the sequential order and looks for the literals **yy** or **yyyy** that indicate the position of the year, **mm** to indicate the position of the month and **dd** to indicate the position of the day.

The function returns the following values:

- 0 - The function terminated successfully.
- ECPG_INFORMIX_ENOSHORTDATE - The date does not contain delimiters between day, month and year. In this case the input string must be exactly 6 or 8 bytes long but isn't.
- ECPG_INFORMIX_ENOTDMY - The format string did not correctly indicate the sequential order of year, month and day.
- ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_DAY - The input string does not contain a valid day.
- ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_MONTH - The input string does not contain a valid month.
- ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_YEAR - The input string does not contain a valid year.

Internally this function is implemented to use the **PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc** function. See the reference there for a table of example input.

**rfmtdate**

Convert a variable of type date to its textual representation using a format mask.
int rfmtdate(date d, char *fmt, char *str);
The function receives the date to convert (d), the format mask (fmt) and the string that will hold the textual representation of the date (str).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if an error occurred.

Internally this function uses the PGTYPESdate_fmt_asc function, see the reference there for examples.

rmdyjul
Create a date value from an array of 3 short integers that specify the day, the month and the year of the date.

int rmdyjul(short mdy[3], date *d);
The function receives the array of the 3 short integers (mdy) and a pointer to a variable of type date that should hold the result of the operation.

Currently the function returns always 0.

Internally the function is implemented to use the function PGTYPESdate_mdyjul.

rdayofweek
Return a number representing the day of the week for a date value.

int rdayofweek(date d);
The function receives the date variable d as its only argument and returns an integer that indicates the day of the week for this date.

• 0 - Sunday
• 1 - Monday
• 2 - Tuesday
• 3 - Wednesday
• 4 - Thursday
• 5 - Friday
• 6 - Saturday

Internally the function is implemented to use the function PGTYPESdate_dayofweek.

dtcurrent
Retrieve the current timestamp.

void dtcurrent(timestamp *ts);
The function retrieves the current timestamp and saves it into the timestamp variable that ts points to.

dtcvasc
Parses a timestamp from its textual representation into a timestamp variable.

int dtcvasc(char *str, timestamp *ts);
The function receives the string to parse (str) and a pointer to the timestamp variable that should hold the result of the operation (ts).

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value in case of error.

Internally this function uses the PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc function. See the reference there for a table with example inputs.
dtcvfmtasc

Parses a timestamp from its textual representation using a format mask into a timestamp variable.

dtcvfmtasc(char *inbuf, char *fmtstr, timestamp *dtvalue)

The function receives the string to parse (inbuf), the format mask to use (fmtstr) and a pointer to the timestamp variable that should hold the result of the operation (dtvalue).

This function is implemented by means of the `PGTYPEStimestamp_defmt_asc` function. See the documentation there for a list of format specifiers that can be used.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value in case of error.

dtsub

Subtract one timestamp from another and return a variable of type interval.

int dtsub(timestamp *ts1, timestamp *ts2, interval *iv);

The function will subtract the timestamp variable that ts2 points to from the timestamp variable that ts1 points to and will store the result in the interval variable that iv points to.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

dttoasc

Convert a timestamp variable to a C char* string.

int dttoasc(timestamp *ts, char *output);

The function receives a pointer to the timestamp variable to convert (ts) and the string that should hold the result of the operation (output). It converts ts to its textual representation according to the SQL standard, which is be YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

dttofmtasc

Convert a timestamp variable to a C char* using a format mask.

int dttofmtasc(timestamp *ts, char *output, int str_len, char *fmtstr);

The function receives a pointer to the timestamp to convert as its first argument (ts), a pointer to the output buffer (output), the maximal length that has been allocated for the output buffer (str_len) and the format mask to use for the conversion (fmtstr).

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

Internally, this function uses the `PGTYPEStimestamp_fmt_asc` function. See the reference there for information on what format mask specifiers can be used.

intoasc

Convert an interval variable to a C char* string.

int intoasc(interval *i, char *str);

The function receives a pointer to the interval variable to convert (i) and the string that should hold the result of the operation (str). It converts i to its textual representation according to the SQL standard, which is be YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

rfmtlong

Convert a long integer value to its textual representation using a format mask.
int rfmtlong(long lng_val, char *fmt, char *outbuf);
The function receives the long value lng_val, the format mask fmt and a pointer to the output buffer outbuf. It converts the long value according to the format mask to its textual representation.

The format mask can be composed of the following format specifying characters:
• * (asterisk) - if this position would be blank otherwise, fill it with an asterisk.
• & (ampersand) - if this position would be blank otherwise, fill it with a zero.
• # - turn leading zeroes into blanks.
• < - left-justify the number in the string.
• , (comma) - group numbers of four or more digits into groups of three digits separated by a comma.
• . (period) - this character separates the whole-number part of the number from the fractional part.
• - (minus) - the minus sign appears if the number is a negative value.
• + (plus) - the plus sign appears if the number is a positive value.
• ( - this replaces the minus sign in front of the negative number. The minus sign will not appear.
• ) - this character replaces the minus and is printed behind the negative value.
• $ - the currency symbol.

rupshift
Convert a string to upper case.
void rupshift(char *str);
The function receives a pointer to the string and transforms every lower case character to upper case.

byleng
Return the number of characters in a string without counting trailing blanks.
int byleng(char *str, int len);
The function expects a fixed-length string as its first argument (str) and its length as its second argument (len). It returns the number of significant characters, that is the length of the string without trailing blanks.

ldchar
Copy a fixed-length string into a null-terminated string.
void ldchar(char *src, int len, char *dest);
The function receives the fixed-length string to copy (src), its length (len) and a pointer to the destination memory (dest). Note that you need to reserve at least len+1 bytes for the string that dest points to. The function copies at most len bytes to the new location (less if the source string has trailing blanks) and adds the null-terminator.

rgetmsg
int rgetmsg(int msgnum, char *s, int maxsize);
This function exists but is not implemented at the moment!

rtypalign
int rtypalign(int offset, int type);
This function exists but is not implemented at the moment!
rtypmsize
int rtypmsize(int type, int len);
This function exists but is not implemented at the moment!

rtypwidth
int rtypwidth(int sqltype, int sqllen);
This function exists but is not implemented at the moment!

rsetnull
Set a variable to NULL.
int rsetnull(int t, char *ptr);
The function receives an integer that indicates the type of the variable and a pointer to the variable itself that is cast to a C char* pointer.
The following types exist:
• CCHARTYPE - For a variable of type char or char*
• CSHORTTYPE - For a variable of type short int
• CINTTYPE - For a variable of type int
• CBOOLTYPE - For a variable of type boolean
• CFLOATTYPE - For a variable of type float
• CLONGTYPE - For a variable of type long
• CDUBLETYPE - For a variable of type double
• CDECIMALTYPE - For a variable of type decimal
• CDATETYPE - For a variable of type date
• CDTIMETYPE - For a variable of type timestamp
Here is an example of a call to this function:
$char c[] = "abc       ";
$short s = 17;
$int i = -74874;
rsetnull(CCHARTYPE, (char *) c);
rsetnull(CSHORTTYPE, (char *) &s);
rsetnull(CINTTYPE, (char *) &i);

risnull
Test if a variable is NULL.
int risnull(int t, char *ptr);
The function receives the type of the variable to test (t) as well a pointer to this variable (ptr). Note that the latter needs to be cast to a char*. See the function rsetnull for a list of possible variable types.
Here is an example of how to use this function:
$char c[] = "abc       ";
$short s = 17;
$int i = -74874;
risnull(CCHARTYPE, (char *) c);
risnull(CSHORTTYPE, (char *) &s);
risnull(CINTTYPE, (char *) &i);

34.15.5. Additional Constants

Note that all constants here describe errors and all of them are defined to represent negative values. In the descriptions of the different constants you can also find the value that the constants represent in the current implementation. However you should not rely on this number. You can however rely on the fact all of them are defined to represent negative values.

ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW

Functions return this value if an overflow occurred in a calculation. Internally it is defined as -1200 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW

Functions return this value if an underflow occurred in a calculation. Internally it is defined as -1201 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_DIVIDE_ZERO

Functions return this value if an attempt to divide by zero is observed. Internally it is defined as -1202 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_YEAR

Functions return this value if a bad value for a year was found while parsing a date. Internally it is defined as -1204 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_MONTH

Functions return this value if a bad value for a month was found while parsing a date. Internally it is defined as -1205 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_DAY

Functions return this value if a bad value for a day was found while parsing a date. Internally it is defined as -1206 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_ENOSHORTDATE

Functions return this value if a parsing routine needs a short date representation but did not get the date string in the right length. Internally it is defined as -1209 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_DATE_CONVERT

Functions return this value if an error occurred during date formatting. Internally it is defined as -1210 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_OUT_OF_MEMORY

Functions return this value if memory was exhausted during their operation. Internally it is defined as -1211 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_ENOTDMY

Functions return this value if a parsing routine was supposed to get a format mask (like mmddyy) but not all fields were listed correctly. Internally it is defined as -1212 (the Informix definition).

ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_NUMERIC

Functions return this value either if a parsing routine cannot parse the textual representation for a numeric value because it contains errors or if a routine cannot complete a calculation involving
numeric variables because at least one of the numeric variables is invalid. Internally it is defined as -1213 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_EXPONENT**

Functions return this value if a parsing routine cannot parse an exponent. Internally it is defined as -1216 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_DATE**

Functions return this value if a parsing routine cannot parse a date. Internally it is defined as -1218 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG_INFORMIX_EXTRA_CHARS**

Functions return this value if a parsing routine is passed extra characters it cannot parse. Internally it is defined as -1264 (the Informix definition).

### 34.16. Internals

This section explains how ECPG works internally. This information can occasionally be useful to help users understand how to use ECPG.

The first four lines written by `ecpg` to the output are fixed lines. Two are comments and two are include lines necessary to interface to the library. Then the preprocessor reads through the file and writes output. Normally it just echoes everything to the output.

When it sees an `EXEC SQL` statement, it intervenes and changes it. The command starts with `EXEC SQL` and ends with `;`. Everything in between is treated as an SQL statement and parsed for variable substitution.

Variable substitution occurs when a symbol starts with a colon (":`). The variable with that name is looked up among the variables that were previously declared within a `EXEC SQL DECLARE` section.

The most important function in the library is `ECPGdo`, which takes care of executing most commands. It takes a variable number of arguments. This can easily add up to 50 or so arguments, and we hope this will not be a problem on any platform.

The arguments are:

A line number

This is the line number of the original line; used in error messages only.

A string

This is the SQL command that is to be issued. It is modified by the input variables, i.e., the variables that where not known at compile time but are to be entered in the command. Where the variables should go the string contains `?`.

Input variables

Every input variable causes ten arguments to be created. (See below.)

**ECPGt_EOIT**

An `enum` telling that there are no more input variables.

Output variables

Every output variable causes ten arguments to be created. (See below.) These variables are filled by the function.

**ECPGt_EORT**

An `enum` telling that there are no more variables.
For every variable that is part of the SQL command, the function gets ten arguments:
1. The type as a special symbol.
2. A pointer to the value or a pointer to the pointer.
3. The size of the variable if it is a \texttt{char} or \texttt{varchar}.
4. The number of elements in the array (for array fetches).
5. The offset to the next element in the array (for array fetches).
6. The type of the indicator variable as a special symbol.
7. A pointer to the indicator variable.
8. 0
9. The number of elements in the indicator array (for array fetches).
10. The offset to the next element in the indicator array (for array fetches).

Note that not all SQL commands are treated in this way. For instance, an open cursor statement like:
EXEC SQL OPEN \texttt{cursor};

is not copied to the output. Instead, the cursor's \texttt{DECLARE} command is used at the position of the \texttt{OPEN} command because it indeed opens the cursor.

Here is a complete example describing the output of the preprocessor of a file \texttt{foo.pgc} (details might change with each particular version of the preprocessor):
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int index;
int result;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL SELECT res INTO :result FROM mytable WHERE index = :index;

is translated into:
/* Processed by ecpg (2.6.0) */
/* These two include files are added by the preprocessor */
#include <ecpgtype.h>;
#include <ecpglib.h>;

/* exec sql begin declare section */
#line 1 "foo.pgc"
int index;
int result;
/* exec sql end declare section */
...
ECPGdo(__LINE__, NULL, "SELECT res FROM mytable WHERE index = ?   ",
   ECPGt_int,&(index),1L,1L,sizeof(int),
   ECPGt_NO_INDICATOR, NULL , 0L, 0L, 0L, ECPGt_EOIT,
   ECPGt_int,&(result),1L,1L,sizeof(int),
   ECPGt_NO_INDICATOR, NULL , 0L, 0L, 0L, ECPGt_EORT);
#line 147 "foo.pgc"

(The indentation here is added for readability and not something the preprocessor does.)
Chapter 35. The Information Schema

The information schema consists of a set of views that contain information about the objects defined in the current database. The information schema is defined in the SQL standard and can therefore be expected to be portable and remain stable — unlike the system catalogs, which are specific to Postgres Pro and are modeled after implementation concerns. The information schema views do not, however, contain information about Postgres Pro-specific features; to inquire about those you need to query the system catalogs or other Postgres Pro-specific views.

Note

When querying the database for constraint information, it is possible for a standard-compliant query that expects to return one row to return several. This is because the SQL standard requires constraint names to be unique within a schema, but Postgres Pro does not enforce this restriction. Postgres Pro automatically-generated constraint names avoid duplicates in the same schema, but users can specify such duplicate names.

This problem can appear when querying information schema views such as check_constraint_routine_usage, check_constraints, domain_constraints, and referential_constraints. Some other views have similar issues but contain the table name to help distinguish duplicate rows, e.g., constraint_column_usage, constraint_table_usage, table_constraints.

35.1. The Schema

The information schema itself is a schema named information_schema. This schema automatically exists in all databases. The owner of this schema is the initial database user in the cluster, and that user naturally has all the privileges on this schema, including the ability to drop it (but the space savings achieved by that are minuscule).

By default, the information schema is not in the schema search path, so you need to access all objects in it through qualified names. Since the names of some of the objects in the information schema are generic names that might occur in user applications, you should be careful if you want to put the information schema in the path.

35.2. Data Types

The columns of the information schema views use special data types that are defined in the information schema. These are defined as simple domains over ordinary built-in types. You should not use these types for work outside the information schema, but your applications must be prepared for them if they select from the information schema.

These types are:

- **cardinal_number**
  
  A nonnegative integer.

- **character_data**
  
  A character string (without specific maximum length).

- **sql_identifier**
  
  A character string. This type is used for SQL identifiers, the type character_data is used for any other kind of text data.

- **time_stamp**
  
  A domain over the type timestamp with time zone
The Information Schema

yes_or_no

A character string domain that contains either YES or NO. This is used to represent Boolean (true/false) data in the information schema. (The information schema was invented before the type boolean was added to the SQL standard, so this convention is necessary to keep the information schema backward compatible.)

Every column in the information schema has one of these five types.

**35.3. information_schema_catalog_name**

*information_schema_catalog_name* is a table that always contains one row and one column containing the name of the current database (current catalog, in SQL terminology).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 35.1. information_schema_catalog_name Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catalog_name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**35.4. administrable_role_authorizations**

The view *administrable_role_authorizations* identifies all roles that the current user has the admin option for.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 35.2. administrable_role_authorizations Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>role_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**35.5. applicable_roles**

The view *applicable_roles* identifies all roles whose privileges the current user can use. This means there is some chain of role grants from the current user to the role in question. The current user itself is also an applicable role. The set of applicable roles is generally used for permission checking.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 35.3. applicable_roles Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>role_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 35.6. attributes

The view attributes contains information about the attributes of composite data types defined in the database. (Note that the view does not give information about table columns, which are sometimes called attributes in Postgres Pro contexts.) Only those attributes are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner of or having some privilege on the type).

#### Table 35.4. attributes Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>udt_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the data type (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinal_position cardinal_number</td>
<td>Ordinal position of the attribute within the data type (count starts at 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute_default character_data</td>
<td>Default expression of the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_nullable yes_or_no</td>
<td>YES if the attribute is possibly nullable, NO if it is known not nullable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data_type character_data</td>
<td>Data type of the attribute, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view element_types), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in attribute_udt_name and associated columns).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_maximum_length cardinal_number</td>
<td>If data_type identifies a character or bit string type, the declared maximum length; null for all other data types or if no maximum length was declared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_octet_length cardinal_number</td>
<td>If data_type identifies a character type, the maximum possible length in octets (bytes) of a datum; null for all other data types. The maximum octet length depends on the declared character maximum length (see above) and the server encoding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the collation of the attribute (always the current database), null if default or the data type of the attribute is not collatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the collation of the attribute, null if default or the data type of the attribute is not collatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the collation of the attribute, null if default or the data type of the attribute is not collatable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>numeric_precision</strong> cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If <code>data_type</code> identifies a numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) precision of the type for this attribute. The precision indicates the number of significant digits. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column <code>numeric_precision_radix</code>. For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **numeric_precision_radix** cardinal_number |
| If `data_type` identifies a numeric type, this column indicates in which base the values in the columns `numeric_precision` and `numeric_scale` are expressed. The value is either 2 or 10. For all other data types, this column is null. |

| **numeric_scale** cardinal_number |
| If `data_type` identifies an exact numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) scale of the type for this attribute. The scale indicates the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column `numeric_precision_radix`. For all other data types, this column is null. |

| **datetime_precision** cardinal_number |
| If `data_type` identifies a date, time, timestamp, or interval type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) fractional seconds precision of the type for this attribute, that is, the number of decimal digits maintained following the decimal point in the seconds value. For all other data types, this column is null. |

| **interval_type** character_data |
| If `data_type` identifies an interval type, this column contains the specification which fields the intervals include for this attribute, e.g., YEAR TO MONTH, DAY TO SECOND, etc. If no field restrictions were specified (that is, the interval accepts all fields), and for all other data types, this field is null. |

| **interval_precision** cardinal_number |
| Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro (see `datetime_precision` for the fractional seconds precision of interval type attributes) |

| **attribute_udt_catalog** sql_identifier |
| Name of the database that the attribute data type is defined in (always the current database) |

| **attribute_udt_schema** sql_identifier |
| Name of the schema that the attribute data type is defined in |

| **attribute_udt_name** sql_identifier |
| Name of the attribute data type |

| **scope_catalog** sql_identifier |
| Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro |

| **scope_schema** sql_identifier |
| Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro |

| **scope_name** sql_identifier |
| Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro |

| **maximum_cardinality** cardinal_number |
| Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in Postgres Pro |

| **dtd_identifier** sql_identifier |
| An identifier of the data type descriptor of the column, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the table. This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.) |

| **is_derived_reference_attribute** yes_or_no |
| Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro |
See also under Section 35.17, a similarly structured view, for further information on some of the columns.

35.7. character_sets

The view character_sets identifies the character sets available in the current database. Since Postgres Pro does not support multiple character sets within one database, this view only shows one, which is the database encoding.

Take note of how the following terms are used in the SQL standard:

- character repertoire
  - An abstract collection of characters, for example UNICODE, UCS, or LATIN1. Not exposed as an SQL object, but visible in this view.

- character encoding form
  - An encoding of some character repertoire. Most older character repertoires only use one encoding form, and so there are no separate names for them (e.g., LATIN1 is an encoding form applicable to the LATIN1 repertoire). But for example Unicode has the encoding forms UTF8, UTF16, etc. (not all supported by Postgres Pro). Encoding forms are not exposed as an SQL object, but are visible in this view.

- character set
  - A named SQL object that identifies a character repertoire, a character encoding, and a default collation. A predefined character set would typically have the same name as an encoding form, but users could define other names. For example, the character set UTF8 would typically identify the character repertoire UCS, encoding form UTF8, and some default collation.

You can think of an “encoding” in Postgres Pro either as a character set or a character encoding form. They will have the same name, and there can only be one in one database.

**Table 35.5. character_sets Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>character_set_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_reertoire</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form_of_use</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default_collate_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default_collate_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default_collate_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
35.8. check_constraint_routine_usage

The view check_constraint_routine_usage identifies routines (functions and procedures) that are used by a check constraint. Only those routines are shown that are owned by a currently enabled role.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>constraint_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_name</td>
<td>Name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.9. check_constraints

The view check_constraints contains all check constraints, either defined on a table or on a domain, that are owned by a currently enabled role. (The owner of the table or domain is the owner of the constraint.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>constraint_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_name</td>
<td>Name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check_clause</td>
<td>The check expression of the check constraint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.10. collations

The view collations contains the collations available in the current database.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>collation_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the collation (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the collation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 35.11. `collation_character_set_applicability`  

The view `collation_character_set_applicability` identifies which character set the available collations are applicable to. In Postgres Pro, there is only one character set per database (see explanation in Section 35.7), so this view does not provide much useful information.

#### Table 35.9. `collation_character_set_applicability` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>collation_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the collation (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>collation_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema containing the collation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>collation_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the default collation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>character_set_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Character sets are currently not implemented as schema objects, so this column is null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>character_set_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Character sets are currently not implemented as schema objects, so this column is null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>character_set_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the character set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.12. `column_column_usage`  

The view `column_column_usage` identifies all generated columns that depend on another base column in the same table. Only tables owned by a currently enabled role are included.

#### Table 35.10. `column_column_usage` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>table_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema containing the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>column_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the base column that a generated column depends on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>dependent_column</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the generated column</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.13. `column_domain_usage`  

The view `column_domain_usage` identifies all columns (of a table or a view) that make use of some domain defined in the current database and owned by a currently enabled role.
Table 35.11. column_domain_usage Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domain_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the domain (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the column</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.14. column_options

The view column_options contains all the options defined for foreign table columns in the current database. Only those foreign table columns are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

Table 35.12. column_options Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the foreign table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the foreign table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the foreign table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of an option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option_value character_data</td>
<td>Value of the option</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.15. column_privileges

The view column_privileges identifies all privileges granted on columns to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. There is one row for each combination of column, grantor, and grantee.

If a privilege has been granted on an entire table, it will show up in this view as a grant for each column, but only for the privilege types where column granularity is possible: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, REFERENCES.
Table 35.13. column_privileges Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the table that contains the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type character_data</td>
<td>Type of the privilege: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or REFERENCES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable yes_or_no</td>
<td>YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.16. column_udt_usage

The view column_udt_usage identifies all columns that use data types owned by a currently enabled role. Note that in Postgres Pro, built-in data types behave like user-defined types, so they are included here as well. See also Section 35.17 for details.

Table 35.14. column_udt_usage Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>udt_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable) is defined in (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable) is defined in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the column</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The view columns contains information about all table columns (or view columns) in the database. System columns (ctid, etc.) are not included. Only those columns are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

Table 35.15. columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinal_position cardinal_number</td>
<td>Ordinal position of the column within the table (count starts at 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_default character_data</td>
<td>Default expression of the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_nullable yes_or_no</td>
<td>YES if the column is possibly nullable, NO if it is known not nullable. A not-null constraint is one way a column can be known not nullable, but there can be others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data_type character_data</td>
<td>Data type of the column, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view element_types ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in udt_name and associated columns). If the column is based on a domain, this column refers to the type underlying the domain (and the domain is identified in domain_name and associated columns).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_maximum_length cardinal_number</td>
<td>If data_type identifies a character or bit string type, the declared maximum length; null for all other data types or if no maximum length was declared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_octet_length cardinal_number</td>
<td>If data_type identifies a character type, the maximum possible length in octets (bytes) of a datum; null for all other data types. The maximum octet length depends on the declared character maximum length (see above) and the server encoding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision cardinal_number</td>
<td>If data_type identifies a numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) precision of the type for this column. The precision indicates the number of significant digits. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column numeric_precision_radix . For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number</td>
<td>If data_type identifies a numeric type, this column indicates in which base the values in the columns numeric_precision and numeric_scale are expressed. The value is either 2 or 10. For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_scale cardinal_number</td>
<td>If data_type identifies an exact numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) scale of the type for this column. The scale indicates the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision_radix</td>
<td>as specified in the column numeric_precision_radix. For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datetime_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number If data_type identifies a date, time, timestamp, or interval type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) fractional seconds precision of the type for this column, that is, the number of decimal digits maintained following the decimal point in the seconds value. For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_type</td>
<td>character_data If data_type identifies an interval type, this column contains the specification which fields the intervals include for this column, e.g., YEAR TO MONTH, DAY TO SECOND, etc. If no field restrictions were specified (that is, the interval accepts all fields), and for all other data types, this field is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro (see datetime_precision for the fractional seconds precision of interval type columns)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the collation of the column (always the current database), null if default or the data type of the column is not collatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema containing the collation of the column, null if default or the data type of the column is not collatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the collation of the column, null if default or the data type of the column is not collatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier If the column has a domain type, the name of the database that the domain is defined in (always the current database), else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier If the column has a domain type, the name of the schema that the domain is defined in, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier If the column has a domain type, the name of the domain, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable) is defined in (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable) is defined in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximum_cardinality cardinal_number</td>
<td>Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtd_identifier sql_identifier</td>
<td>An identifier of the data type descriptor of the column, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the table. This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_self_referencing yes_or_no</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_identity yes_or_no</td>
<td>If the column is an identity column, then YES, else NO.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity_generation character_data</td>
<td>If the column is an identity column, then ALWAYS or BY DEFAULT, reflecting the definition of the column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity_start character_data</td>
<td>If the column is an identity column, then the start value of the internal sequence, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity_increment character_data</td>
<td>If the column is an identity column, then the increment of the internal sequence, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity_maximum character_data</td>
<td>If the column is an identity column, then the maximum value of the internal sequence, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity_minimum character_data</td>
<td>If the column is an identity column, then the minimum value of the internal sequence, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identity_cycle yes_or_no</td>
<td>If the column is an identity column, then YES if the internal sequence cycles or NO if it does not; otherwise null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_generated character_data</td>
<td>If the column is a generated column, then ALWAYS, else NEVER.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generation_expression character_data</td>
<td>If the column is a generated column, then the generation expression, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_updatable yes_or_no</td>
<td>YES if the column is updatable, NO if not (Columns in base tables are always updatable, columns in views not necessarily)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since data types can be defined in a variety of ways in SQL, and Postgres Pro contains additional ways to define data types, their representation in the information schema can be somewhat difficult. The column data_type is supposed to identify the underlying built-in type of the column. In Postgres Pro, this means that the type is defined in the system catalog schema pg_catalog. This column might be useful if the application can handle the well-known built-in types specially (for example, format the numeric types differently or use the data in the precision columns). The columns udt_name, udt_schema, and udt_catalog always identify the underlying data type of the column, even if the column is based on a domain. (Since Postgres Pro treats built-in types like user-defined types, built-in types appear here as well. This is an extension of the SQL standard.) These columns should be used if an application wants to process data differently according to the type, because in that case it wouldn't matter if the column is
really based on a domain. If the column is based on a domain, the identity of the domain is stored in the
columns domain_name, domain_schema, and domain_catalog. If you want to pair up columns with their
associated data types and treat domains as separate types, you could write `coalesce(domain_name, udt_name)`, etc.

35.18. constraint_column_usage

The view `constraint_column_usage` identifies all columns in the current database that are used by some
constraint. Only those columns are shown that are contained in a table owned by a currently enabled
role. For a check constraint, this view identifies the columns that are used in the check expression. For a
foreign key constraint, this view identifies the columns that the foreign key references. For a unique
or primary key constraint, this view identifies the constrained columns.

Table 35.16. constraint_column_usage Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column that is used by some constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column that is used by some constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>Name of the table that contains the column that is used by some constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_name</td>
<td>Name of the column that is used by some constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_name</td>
<td>Name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.19. constraint_table_usage

The view `constraint_table_usage` identifies all tables in the current database that are used by some
constraint and are owned by a currently enabled role. (This is different from the view
table_constraints, which identifies all table constraints along with the table they are defined on.) For a
foreign key constraint, this view identifies the table that the foreign key references. For a unique or
primary key constraint, this view simply identifies the table the constraint belongs to. Check constraints
and not-null constraints are not included in this view.

Table 35.17. constraint_table_usage Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table that is used by some constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table that is used by some constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>Name of the table that is used by some constraint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>constraint_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_name</td>
<td>Name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.20. data_type_privileges

The view `data_type_privileges` identifies all data type descriptors that the current user has access to, by way of being the owner of the described object or having some privilege for it. A data type descriptor is generated whenever a data type is used in the definition of a table column, a domain, or a function (as parameter or return type) and stores some information about how the data type is used in that instance (for example, the declared maximum length, if applicable). Each data type descriptor is assigned an arbitrary identifier that is unique among the data type descriptor identifiers assigned for one object (table, domain, function). This view is probably not useful for applications, but it is used to define some other views in the information schema.

**Table 35.18. data_type_privileges Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the described object (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the described object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_name</td>
<td>Name of the described object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_type</td>
<td>The type of the described object: one of <code>TABLE</code> (the data type descriptor pertains to a column of that table), <code>DOMAIN</code> (the data type descriptors pertains to that domain), <code>ROUTINE</code> (the data type descriptor pertains to a parameter or the return data type of that function).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtd_identifier</td>
<td>The identifier of the data type descriptor, which is unique among the data type descriptors for that same object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.21. domain_constraints

The view `domain_constraints` contains all constraints belonging to domains defined in the current database. Only those domains are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 35.19. domain_constraints Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>constraint_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_name</td>
<td>Name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 35.22. domain_udt_usage

The view `domain_udt_usage` identifies all domains that are based on data types owned by a currently enabled role. Note that in Postgres Pro, built-in data types behave like user-defined types, so they are included here as well.

#### Table 35.20. domain_udt_usage Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>udt_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database that the domain data type is defined in (always the current database)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>udt_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema that the domain data type is defined in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>udt_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the domain data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>domain_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database that contains the domain (always the current database)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>domain_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>domain_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.23. domains

The view `domains` contains all domains defined in the current database. Only those domains are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

#### Table 35.21. domains Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>domain_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database that contains the domain (always the current database)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>domain_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>domain_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>data_type</code></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character Type</td>
<td>Data type of the domain, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view element_types ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in udt_name and associated columns).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_maximum_length cardinal_number</td>
<td>If the domain has a character or bit string type, the declared maximum length; null for all other data types or if no maximum length was declared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_octet_length cardinal_number</td>
<td>If the domain has a character type, the maximum possible length in octets (bytes) of a datum; null for all other data types. The maximum octet length depends on the declared character maximum length (see above) and the server encoding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the collation of the domain (always the current database), null if default or the data type of the domain is not collatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the collation of the domain, null if default or the data type of the domain is not collatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the collation of the domain, null if default or the data type of the domain is not collatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision cardinal_number</td>
<td>If the domain has a numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) precision of the type for this domain. The precision indicates the number of significant digits. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column numeric_precision_radix. For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number</td>
<td>If the domain has a numeric type, this column indicates in which base the values in the columns numeric_precision and numeric_scale are expressed. The value is either 2 or 10. For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_scale cardinal_number</td>
<td>If the domain has an exact numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) scale of the type for this domain. The scale indicates the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column numeric_precision_radix. For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datetime_precision cardinal_number</td>
<td>If data_type identifies a date, time, timestamp, or interval type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) fractional seconds precision of the type for this domain, that is, the number of decimal digits maintained following the decimal point in the seconds value. For all other data types, this column is null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_type character_data</td>
<td>If data_type identifies an interval type, this column contains the specification which fields the intervals include for this domain, e.g., YEAR TO MONTH, DAY TO SECOND, etc. If no field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>restrictions were specified (that is, the interval accepts all fields), and for all other data types, this field is null.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro (see datetime_precision for the fractional seconds precision of interval type domains)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain_default</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default expression of the domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database that the domain data type is defined in (always the current database)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema that the domain data type is defined in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the domain data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximum_cardinality</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtd_identifier</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An identifier of the data type descriptor of the domain, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the domain (which is trivial, because a domain only contains one data type descriptor). This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.24. element_types

The view `element_types` contains the data type descriptors of the elements of arrays. When a table column, composite-type attribute, domain, function parameter, or function return value is defined to be of an array type, the respective information schema view only contains `ARRAY` in the column `data_type`. To obtain information on the element type of the array, you can join the respective view with this view. For example, to show the columns of a table with data types and array element types, if applicable, you could do:

```sql
SELECT c.column_name, c.data_type, e.data_type AS element_type
FROM information_schema.columns c LEFT JOIN information_schema.element_types e
  ON ((c.table_catalog, c.table_schema, c.table_name, 'TABLE', c.dtd_identifier) = (e.object_catalog, e.object_schema, e.object_name, e.object_type, e.collection_type_identifier))
WHERE c.table_schema = '...' AND c.table_name = '...'
ORDER BY c.ordinal_position;
```

This view only includes objects that the current user has access to, by way of being the owner or having some privilege.

Table 35.22. element_types Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>object_schema</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the object that uses the array being described</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>object_name</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the object that uses the array being described</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>object_type</strong></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The type of the object that uses the array being described: one of TABLE (the array is used by a column of that table), USER-DEFINED TYPE (the array is used by an attribute of that composite type), DOMAIN (the array is used by that domain), ROUTINE (the array is used by a parameter or the return data type of that function)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>collection_type_identifier</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The identifier of the data type descriptor of the array being described. Use this to join with the dtd_identifier columns of other information schema views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>data_type</strong></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data type of the array elements, if it is a built-in type, else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in udt_name and associated columns)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>character_maximum_length</strong></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>character_octet_length</strong></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>character_set_catalog</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>character_set_schema</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>character_set_name</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>collation_catalog</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database containing the collation of the element type (always the current database), null if default or the data type of the element is not collatable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>collation_schema</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema containing the collation of the element type, null if default or the data type of the element is not collatable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>collation_name</strong></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the collation of the element type, null if default or the data type of the element is not collatable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>numeric_precision</strong></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>numeric_precision_radix</strong></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>numeric_scale</strong></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>datetime_precision</strong></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>interval_type</strong></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>interval_precision</strong></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 35.25. enabled_roles

The view `enabled_roles` identifies the currently “enabled roles”. The enabled roles are recursively defined as the current user together with all roles that have been granted to the enabled roles with automatic inheritance. In other words, these are all roles that the current user has direct or indirect, automatically inheriting membership in.

For permission checking, the set of “applicable roles” is applied, which can be broader than the set of enabled roles. So generally, it is better to use the view `applicable_roles` instead of this one; See Section 35.5 for details on `applicable_roles` view.

### Table 35.23. enabled_roles Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>role_name</td>
<td>Name of a role</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 35.26. foreign_data_wrapper_options

The view `foreign_data_wrapper_options` contains all the options defined for foreign-data wrappers in the current database. Only those foreign-data wrappers are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

### Table 35.24. foreign_data_wrapper_options Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foreign_data_wrapper_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that the foreign-data wrapper is defined in (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 35.27. foreign_data_wrappers

The view `foreign_data_wrappers` contains all foreign-data wrappers defined in the current database. Only those foreign-data wrappers are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 35.25. foreign_data_wrappers Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foreign_data_wrapper_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the foreign-data wrapper (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_data_wrapper_name</td>
<td>Name of the foreign-data wrapper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorization_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the owner of the foreign server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>library_name</td>
<td>File name of the library that implementing this foreign-data wrapper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_data_wrapper_language</td>
<td>Language used to implement this foreign-data wrapper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.28. foreign_server_options

The view `foreign_server_options` contains all the options defined for foreign servers in the current database. Only those foreign servers are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 35.26. foreign_server_options Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foreign_server_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that the foreign server is defined in (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_server_name</td>
<td>Name of the foreign server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option_name</td>
<td>Name of an option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option_value</td>
<td>Value of the option</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.29. foreign_servers

The view `foreign_servers` contains all foreign servers defined in the current database. Only those foreign servers are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).
The Information Schema

Table 35.27. foreign_servers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foreign_server_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that the foreign server is defined in (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_server_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the foreign server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_data_wrapper_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the foreign-data wrapper used by the foreign server (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_data_wrapper_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the foreign-data wrapper used by the foreign server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_server_type</td>
<td>character_data Foreign server type information, if specified upon creation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_server_version</td>
<td>character_data Foreign server version information, if specified upon creation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorization_identifier</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the owner of the foreign server</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.30. foreign_table_options

The view foreign_table_options contains all the options defined for foreign tables in the current database. Only those foreign tables are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

Table 35.28. foreign_table_options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foreign_table_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the foreign table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_table_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the foreign table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_table_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the foreign table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of an option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option_value</td>
<td>character_data Value of the option</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.31. foreign_tables

The view foreign_tables contains all foreign tables defined in the current database. Only those foreign tables are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

Table 35.29. foreign_tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foreign_table_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that the foreign table is defined in (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_table_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the foreign table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 35.32. key_column_usage

The view `key_column_usage` identifies all columns in the current database that are restricted by some unique, primary key, or foreign key constraint. Check constraints are not included in this view. Only those columns are shown that the current user has access to, by way of being the owner or having some privilege.

#### Table 35.30. key_column_usage Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>constraint_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>constraint_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>constraint_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column that is restricted by this constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column that is restricted by this constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the table that contains the column that is restricted by this constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>column_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the column that is restricted by this constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ordinal_position</code></td>
<td>cardinal_number Ordinal position of the column within the constraint key (count starts at 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>position_in_unique_constraint</code></td>
<td>cardinal_number For a foreign-key constraint, ordinal position of the referenced column within its unique constraint (count starts at 1); otherwise null</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.33. parameters

The view `parameters` contains information about the parameters (arguments) of all functions in the current database. Only those functions are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

#### Table 35.31. parameters Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>specific_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinal_position</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ordinal position of the parameter in the argument list of the function (count starts at 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parameter_mode</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IN for input parameter, OUT for output parameter, and INOUT for input/output parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_result</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as_locator</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parameter_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the parameter, or null if the parameter has no name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data_type</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Data type of the parameter, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view element_types ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in udt_name and associated columns).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_maximum_length</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_octet_length</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision_radix</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_scale</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datetime_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_type</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Information Schema

#### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database that the data type of the parameter is defined in (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema that the data type of the parameter is defined in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the data type of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An identifier of the data type descriptor of the parameter, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the function. This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The default expression of the parameter, or null if none or if the function is not owned by a currently enabled role.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### referential_constraints

The view `referential_constraints` contains all referential (foreign key) constraints in the current database. Only those constraints are shown for which the current user has write access to the referencing table (by way of being the owner or having some privilege other than `SELECT`).

### Table 35.32. referential_constraints Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database containing the constraint (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema containing the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database that contains the unique or primary key constraint that the foreign key constraint references (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the unique or primary key constraint that the foreign key constraint references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the unique or primary key constraint that the foreign key constraint references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Match option of the foreign key constraint: FULL, PARTIAL, or NONE.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>update_rule</td>
<td>Update rule of the foreign key constraint: CASCADE, SET NULL, SET DEFAULT,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RESTRICT, or NO ACTION.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delete_rule</td>
<td>Delete rule of the foreign key constraint: CASCADE, SET NULL, SET DEFAULT,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RESTRICT, or NO ACTION.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.35. **role_column_grants**

The view `role_column_grants` identifies all privileges granted on columns where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under `column_privileges`. The only effective difference between this view and `column_privileges` is that this view omits columns that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to `PUBLIC`.

**Table 35.33. role_column_grants Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor</td>
<td>Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee</td>
<td>Name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>Name of the table that contains the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_name</td>
<td>Name of the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type</td>
<td>Type of the privilege: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or REFERENCES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable</td>
<td>YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.36. **role_routine_grants**

The view `role_routine_grants` identifies all privileges granted on functions where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under `routine_privileges`. The only effective difference between this view and `routine_privileges` is that this view omits functions that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to `PUBLIC`.

**Table 35.34. role_routine_grants Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor</td>
<td>Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee</td>
<td>Name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the catalog that contains the function that contains the column</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_name</td>
<td>Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type</td>
<td>The only privilege type for functions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor</td>
<td>Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee</td>
<td>Name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>Name of the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type</td>
<td>Type of the privilege: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, or TRIGGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable</td>
<td>YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with_hierarchy</td>
<td>In the SQL standard, WITH HIERARCHY OPTION is a separate (sub-)privilege allowing certain operations on table inheritance hierarchies. In Postgres Pro, this is included in the SELECT privilege, so this column shows YES if the privilege is SELECT, else NO.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.37. role_table_grants

The view `role_table_grants` identifies all privileges granted on tables or views where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under `table_privileges`. The only effective difference between this view and `table_privileges` is that this view omits tables that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to PUBLIC.

Table 35.35. role_table_grants Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type character_data</td>
<td>Type of the privilege: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, or TRIGGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable yes_or_no</td>
<td>YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with_hierarchy yes_or_no</td>
<td>In the SQL standard, WITH HIERARCHY OPTION is a separate (sub-)privilege allowing certain operations on table inheritance hierarchies. In Postgres Pro, this is included in the SELECT privilege, so this column shows YES if the privilege is SELECT, else NO.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.38. role_udt_grants

The view `role_udt_grants` is intended to identify USAGE privileges granted on user-defined types where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under
udt_privileges. The only effective difference between this view and udt_privileges is that this view omits objects that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to PUBLIC. Since data types do not have real privileges in Postgres Pro, but only an implicit grant to PUBLIC, this view is empty.

Table 35.36. role_udt_grants Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor sql_identifier</td>
<td>The name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee sql_identifier</td>
<td>The name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the type (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type character_data</td>
<td>Always TYPE USAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable yes_or_no</td>
<td>YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.39. role_usage_grants

The view role_usage_grants identifies USAGE privileges granted on various kinds of objects where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under usage_privileges. The only effective difference between this view and usage_privileges is that this view omits objects that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to PUBLIC.

Table 35.37. role_usage_grants Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor sql_identifier</td>
<td>The name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee sql_identifier</td>
<td>The name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the object (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the object, if applicable, else an empty string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_type character_data</td>
<td>COLLATION or DOMAIN or FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER or FOREIGN SERVER or SEQUENCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type character_data</td>
<td>Always USAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable yes_or_no</td>
<td>YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
35.40. routine_column_usage

The view routine_column_usage is meant to identify all columns that are used by a function or procedure. This information is currently not tracked by PostgreSQL.

**Table 35.38. routine_column_usage Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the table that is used by the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the table that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the table that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the column that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.41. routine_privileges

The view routine_privileges identifies all privileges granted on functions to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. There is one row for each combination of function, grantor, and grantee.

**Table 35.39. routine_privileges Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>routine_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type</td>
<td>character_data Always EXECUTE (the only privilege type for functions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable</td>
<td>yes_or_no YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.42. routine_routine_usage

The view `routine_routine_usage` is meant to identify all functions or procedures that are used by another (or the same) function or procedure, either in the body or in parameter default expressions. Currently, only functions used in parameter default expressions are tracked. An entry is included here only if the used function is owned by a currently enabled role. (There is no such restriction on the using function.)

Note that the entries for both functions in the view refer to the “specific” name of the routine, even though the column names are used in a way that is inconsistent with other information schema views about routines. This is per SQL standard, although it is arguably a misdesign. See Section 35.45 for more information about specific names.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database containing the using function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema containing the using function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier The “specific name” of the using function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the function that is used by the first function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the function that is used by the first function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier The “specific name” of the function that is used by the first function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.43. routine_sequence_usage

The view `routine_sequence_usage` is meant to identify all sequences that are used by a function or procedure, either in the body or in parameter default expressions. Currently, only sequences used in parameter default expressions are tracked. A sequence is only included if that sequence is owned by a currently enabled role.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_name</td>
<td>Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schema_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the sequence that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequence_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the sequence that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequence_name</td>
<td>Name of the sequence that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.44. routine_table_usage

The view `routine_table_usage` is meant to identify all tables that are used by a function or procedure. This information is currently not tracked by PostgreSQL.

#### Table 35.42. routine_table_usage Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_name</td>
<td>Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>Name of the table that is used by the function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Information Schema

35.45. routines

The view routines contains all functions and procedures in the current database. Only those functions and procedures are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

Table 35.43. routines Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>The “specific name” of the function. This is a name that uniquely identifies the function in the schema, even if the real name of the function is overloaded. The format of the specific name is not defined, it should only be used to compare it to other instances of specific routine names.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_type character_data</td>
<td>FUNCTION for a function, PROCEDURE for a procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>module_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>module_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>module_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udt_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data_type character_data</td>
<td>Return data type of the function, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view element_types ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in type_udt_name and associated columns). Null for a procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_maximum_length cardinal_number</td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_octet_length cardinal_number</td>
<td>Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_set_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collation_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision_radix</td>
<td>cardinal_number&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_scale</td>
<td>cardinal_number&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datetime_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_type</td>
<td>character_data&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number&lt;br&gt;Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type_udt_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Name of the database that the return data type of the function is defined in (always the current database). Null for a procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type_udt_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Name of the schema that the return data type of the function is defined in. Null for a procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type_udt_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Name of the return data type of the function. Null for a procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximum_cardinality</td>
<td>cardinal_number&lt;br&gt;Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dtd_identifier</td>
<td>sql_identifier&lt;br&gt;An identifier of the data type descriptor of the return data type of this function, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the function. This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_body</td>
<td>character_data&lt;br&gt;If the function is an SQL function, then SQL, else EXTERNAL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routine_definition</td>
<td>character_data&lt;br&gt;The source text of the function (null if the function is not owned by a currently enabled role). (According to the SQL standard, this column is only applicable if routine_body is SQL, but...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in Postgres Pro it will contain whatever source text was specified when the function was created.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>external_name</th>
<th>character_data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If this function is a C function, then the external name (link symbol) of the function; else null. (This works out to be the same value that is shown in routine_definition.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>external_language</th>
<th>character_data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The language the function is written in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>parameter_style</th>
<th>character_data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Always GENERAL (The SQL standard defines other parameter styles, which are not available in Postgres Pro.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is_deterministic</th>
<th>yes_or_no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the function is declared immutable (called deterministic in the SQL standard), then YES, else NO. (You cannot query the other volatility levels available in Postgres Pro through the information schema.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sql_data_access</th>
<th>character_data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Always MODIFIES, meaning that the function possibly modifies SQL data. This information is not useful for Postgres Pro.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is_null_call</th>
<th>yes_or_no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the function automatically returns null if any of its arguments are null, then YES, else NO. Null for a procedure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sql_path</th>
<th>character_data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>schema_level_routine</th>
<th>yes_or_no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Always YES (The opposite would be a method of a user-defined type, which is a feature not available in Postgres Pro.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>max_dynamic_result_sets</th>
<th>cardinal_number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is_user_defined_cast</th>
<th>yes_or_no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is_implicitly_invocable</th>
<th>yes_or_no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>security_type</th>
<th>character_data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the function runs with the privileges of the current user, then INVOKER, if the function runs with the privileges of the user who defined it, then DEFINER.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to_sql_specific_catalog</th>
<th>sql_identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to_sql_specific_schema</th>
<th>sql_identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to_sql_specific_name</th>
<th>sql_identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>as_locator</th>
<th>yes_or_no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>created</th>
<th>time_stamp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>last_altered</th>
<th>time_stamp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>new_savepoint_level</th>
<th>yes_or_no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_udt_dependent</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currently always NO. The alternative YES applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_from_data_type</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_as_locator</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_char_max_length</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_char_octet_length</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_char_set_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_char_set_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_char_set_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_collation_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_collation_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_collation_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_numeric_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_numeric_precision_radix</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_numeric_scale</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_datetime_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_interval_type</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_interval_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_type_udt_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_type_udt_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_type_udt_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_scope_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_scope_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_scope_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

934
The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_maximum_cardinality</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_cast_dtd_identifier</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro

35.46. schemata

The view `schemata` contains all schemas in the current database that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

Table 35.44. schemata Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>catalog_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the database that the schema is contained in (always the current database)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schema_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the schema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schema_owner</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the owner of the schema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default_character_set_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the database that contains the sequence (always the current database)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default_character_set_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the schema that contains the sequence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default_character_set_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the sequence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sql_path</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.47. sequences

The view `sequences` contains all sequences defined in the current database. Only those sequences are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

Table 35.45. sequences Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sequence_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the database that contains the sequence (always the current database)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequence_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the schema that contains the sequence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequence_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name of the sequence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data_type</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data type of the sequence.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this column contains the (declared or implicit) precision of the sequence data type (see above). The precision indicates the number of significant digits. It can be expressed in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Column Type</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>numeric_precision_radix</strong></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This column indicates in which base the values in the columns <code>numeric_precision</code> and <code>numeric_scale</code> are expressed. The value is either 2 or 10.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **numeric_scale** | cardinal_number |
| This column contains the (declared or implicit) scale of the sequence data type (see above). The scale indicates the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column `numeric_precision_radix`. |

| **start_value** | character_data |
| The start value of the sequence |

| **minimum_value** | character_data |
| The minimum value of the sequence |

| **maximum_value** | character_data |
| The maximum value of the sequence |

| **increment** | character_data |
| The increment of the sequence |

| **cycle_option** | yes_or_no |
| YES if the sequence cycles, else NO |

Note that in accordance with the SQL standard, the start, minimum, maximum, and increment values are returned as character strings.

### 35.48. sql_features

The table `sql_features` contains information about which formal features defined in the SQL standard are supported by Postgres Pro. This is the same information that is presented in Appendix D. There you can also find some additional background information.

**Table 35.46. sql_features Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Column Type</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>feature_id</strong></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier string of the feature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **feature_name** | character_data |
| Descriptive name of the feature |

| **sub_feature_id** | character_data |
| Identifier string of the subfeature, or a zero-length string if not a subfeature |

| **sub_feature_name** | character_data |
| Descriptive name of the subfeature, or a zero-length string if not a subfeature |

| **is_supported** | yes_or_no |
| YES if the feature is fully supported by the current version of Postgres Pro, NO if not |

| **is_verified_by** | character_data |
| Always null, since the Postgres Pro development group does not perform formal testing of feature conformance |

| **comments** | character_data |
| Possibly a comment about the supported status of the feature |
35.49. sql_implementaion_info

The table sql_implementaion_info contains information about various aspects that are left implementation-defined by the SQL standard. This information is primarily intended for use in the context of the ODBC interface; users of other interfaces will probably find this information to be of little use. For this reason, the individual implementation information items are not described here; you will find them in the description of the ODBC interface.

**Table 35.47. sql_implementaion_info Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>implementation_info_id character_data</td>
<td>Identifier string of the implementation information item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implementation_info_name character_data</td>
<td>Descriptive name of the implementation information item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer_value cardinal_number character_value</td>
<td>Value of the implementation information item, or null if the value is contained in the column character_value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character_value character_data character_value</td>
<td>Value of the implementation information item, or null if the value is contained in the column integer_value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comments character_data</td>
<td>Possibly a comment pertaining to the implementation information item</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.50. sql_parts

The table sql_parts contains information about which of the several parts of the SQL standard are supported by Postgres Pro.

**Table 35.48. sql_parts Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feature_id character_data</td>
<td>An identifier string containing the number of the part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feature_name character_data</td>
<td>Descriptive name of the part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_supported yes_or_no</td>
<td>YES if the part is fully supported by the current version of Postgres Pro, NO if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_verified_by character_data</td>
<td>Always null, since the Postgres Pro development group does not perform formal testing of feature conformance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comments character_data</td>
<td>Possibly a comment about the supported status of the part</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.51. sql_sizing

The table sql_sizing contains information about various size limits and maximum values in Postgres Pro. This information is primarily intended for use in the context of the ODBC interface; users of other interfaces will probably find this information to be of little use. For this reason, the individual sizing items are not described here; you will find them in the description of the ODBC interface.
**Table 35.49. sql_sizing Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sizing_id</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sizing_name</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supported_value</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comments</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**35.52. table_constraints**

The view `table_constraints` contains all constraints belonging to tables that the current user owns or has some privilege other than `SELECT` on.

**Table 35.50. table_constraints Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>constraint_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint_type</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_deferrable</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initially_deferred</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enforced</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**35.53. table_privileges**

The view `table_privileges` identifies all privileges granted on tables or views to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. There is one row for each combination of table, grantor, and grantee.

**Table 35.51. table_privileges Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantee</td>
<td>Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>Name of the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type</td>
<td>Type of the privilege: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, or TRIGGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable</td>
<td>YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with_hierarchy</td>
<td>In the SQL standard, WITH HIERARCHY OPTION is a separate (sub-)privilege allowing certain operations on table inheritance hierarchies. In Postgres Pro, this is included in the SELECT privilege, so this column shows YES if the privilege is SELECT, else NO.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.54. tables

The view `tables` contains all tables and views defined in the current database. Only those tables and views are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 35.52. tables Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>Name of the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_type</td>
<td>Type of the table: BASE TABLE for a persistent base table (the normal table type), VIEW for a view, FOREIGN for a foreign table, or LOCAL TEMPORARY for a temporary table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>self_referencing_column_name</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reference_generation</td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_defined_type_catalog</td>
<td>If the table is a typed table, the name of the database that contains the underlying data type (always the current database), else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_defined_type_schema</td>
<td>If the table is a typed table, the name of the schema that contains the underlying data type, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_defined_type_name</td>
<td>If the table is a typed table, the name of the underlying data type, else null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_insertable_into</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

939
### The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is_typed</td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>YES if the table is a typed table, NO if not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>commit_action</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not yet implemented</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.55. transforms

The view `transforms` contains information about the transforms defined in the current database. More precisely, it contains a row for each function contained in a transform (the “from SQL” or “to SQL” function).

**Table 35.53. transforms Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>udt_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the type the transform is for (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>udt_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the type the transform is for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>udt_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the type the transform is for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The SQL standard allows defining transforms in “groups”, and selecting a group at run time. Postgres Pro does not support this. Instead, transforms are specific to a language. As a compromise, this field contains the language the transform is for.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>transform_type</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FROM SQL or TO SQL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.56. triggered_update_columns

For triggers in the current database that specify a column list (like `UPDATE OF column1, column2`), the view `triggered_update_columns` identifies these columns. Triggers that do not specify a column list are not included in this view. Only those columns are shown that the current user owns or has some privilege other than `SELECT` on.

**Table 35.54. triggered_update_columns Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trigger_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the trigger (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trigger_schema</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the trigger</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trigger_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the trigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event_object_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table that the trigger is defined on (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event_object_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table that the trigger is defined on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event_object_table sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the table that the trigger is defined on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event_object_column sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the column that the trigger is defined on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.57. triggers

The view `triggers` contains all triggers defined in the current database on tables and views that the current user owns or has some privilege other than `SELECT` on.

Table 35.55. `triggers` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trigger_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the trigger (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trigger_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the trigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trigger_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the trigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event_manipulation character_data</td>
<td>Event that fires the trigger (INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event_object_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table that the trigger is defined on (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event_object_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table that the trigger is defined on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event_object_table sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the table that the trigger is defined on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_order cardinal_number</td>
<td>Firing order among triggers on the same table having the same event_manipulation, action_timing, and action_orientation. In Postgres Pro, triggers are fired in name order, so this column reflects that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_condition character_data</td>
<td>WHEN condition of the trigger, null if none (also null if the table is not owned by a currently enabled role)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_statement character_data</td>
<td>Statement that is executed by the trigger (currently always EXECUTE FUNCTION function(...))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_orientation character_data</td>
<td>Identifies whether the trigger fires once for each processed row or once for each statement (ROW or STATEMENT)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>action_timing</td>
<td>Character data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time at which the trigger fires ([BEFORE, AFTER, or INSTEAD OF])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_reference_old_table</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the “old” transition table, or null if none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_reference_new_table</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the “new” transition table, or null if none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_reference_old_row</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action_reference_new_row</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>created time_stamp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Triggers in Postgres Pro have two incompatibilities with the SQL standard that affect the representation in the information schema. First, trigger names are local to each table in Postgres Pro, rather than being independent schema objects. Therefore there can be duplicate trigger names defined in one schema, so long as they belong to different tables. (trigger_catalog and trigger_schema are really the values pertaining to the table that the trigger is defined on.) Second, triggers can be defined to fire on multiple events in Postgres Pro (e.g., ON INSERT OR UPDATE), whereas the SQL standard only allows one. If a trigger is defined to fire on multiple events, it is represented as multiple rows in the information schema, one for each type of event. As a consequence of these two issues, the primary key of the view triggers is really (trigger_catalog, trigger_schema, event_object_table, trigger_name, event_manipulation) instead of (trigger_catalog, trigger_schema, trigger_name), which is what the SQL standard specifies. Nonetheless, if you define your triggers in a manner that conforms with the SQL standard (trigger names unique in the schema and only one event type per trigger), this will not affect you.

#### Note

Prior to PostgreSQL 9.1, this view’s columns action_timing, action_reference_old_table, action_reference_new_table, action_reference_old_row, and action_reference_new_row were named condition_timing, condition_reference_old_table, condition_reference_new_table, condition_reference_old_row, and condition_reference_new_row respectively. That was how they were named in the SQL:1999 standard. The new naming conforms to SQL:2003 and later.

### 35.58. udt_privileges

The view udt_privileges identifies USAGE privileges granted on user-defined types to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. There is one row for each combination of type, grantor, and grantee. This view shows only composite types (see under Section 35.60 for why); see Section 35.59 for domain privileges.

#### Table 35.56. udt_privileges Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Information Schema

### 35.59. usage_privileges

The view `usage_privileges` identifies `USAGE` privileges granted on various kinds of objects to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. In Postgres Pro, this currently applies to collations, domains, foreign-data wrappers, foreign servers, and sequences. There is one row for each combination of object, grantor, and grantee.

Since collations do not have real privileges in Postgres Pro, this view shows implicit non-grantable `USAGE` privileges granted by the owner to `PUBLIC` for all collations. The other object types, however, show real privileges.

In Postgres Pro, sequences also support `SELECT` and `UPDATE` privileges in addition to the `USAGE` privilege. These are nonstandard and therefore not visible in the information schema.

#### Table 35.57. usage_privileges Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grantor</td>
<td>Name of the role that granted the privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantee</td>
<td>Name of the role that the privilege was granted to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_catalog</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the object (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_schema</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the object, if applicable, else an empty string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_name</td>
<td>Name of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_type</td>
<td><code>COLLATION</code> or <code>DOMAIN</code> or <code>FOREIGN DATA.WRAPPER</code> or <code>FOREIGN SERVER</code> or <code>SEQUENCE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privilege_type</td>
<td>Always <code>USAGE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_grantable</td>
<td>YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.60. user_defined_types

The view `user_defined_types` currently contains all composite types defined in the current database. Only those types are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).
SQL knows about two kinds of user-defined types: structured types (also known as composite types in Postgres Pro) and distinct types (not implemented in Postgres Pro). To be future-proof, use the column `user_defined_type_category` to differentiate between these. Other user-defined types such as base types and enums, which are Postgres Pro extensions, are not shown here. For domains, see Section 35.23 instead.

**Table 35.58. user_defined_types Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>user_defined_type_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the type (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>user_defined_type_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>user_defined_type_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>user_defined_type_category</code></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Currently always STRUCTURED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>is_instantiable</code></td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>is_final</code></td>
<td>yes_or_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ordering_form</code></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ordering_category</code></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ordering_routine_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ordering_routine_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ordering_routine_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>reference_type</code></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>data_type</code></td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>character_maximum_length</code></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>character_octet_length</code></td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>character_set_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>character_set_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>character_set_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>collation_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>collation_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>collation_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_precision_radix</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_scale</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datetime_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_type</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_precision</td>
<td>cardinal_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>source_dtd_identifier</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref_dtd_identifier</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies to a feature not available in Postgres Pro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.61. user_mapping_options

The view `user_mapping_options` contains all the options defined for user mappings in the current database. Only those user mappings are shown where the current user has access to the corresponding foreign server (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 35.59. user_mapping_options Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authorization_identifier</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the user being mapped, or PUBLIC if the mapping is public</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_server_catalog</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the database that the foreign server used by this mapping is defined in (always the current database)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign_server_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of the foreign server used by this mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option_name</td>
<td>sql_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of an option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option_value</td>
<td>character_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value of the option. This column will show as null unless the current user is the user being mapped, or the mapping is for PUBLIC and the current user is the server owner, or the current user is a superuser. The intent is to protect password information stored as user mapping option.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 35.62. user_mappings

The view `user_mappings` contains all user mappings defined in the current database. Only those user mappings are shown where the current user has access to the corresponding foreign server (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).
### 35.60. `user_mappings` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>authorization_identifier</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the user being mapped, or PUBLIC if the mapping is public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>foreign_server_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that the foreign server used by this mapping is defined in (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>foreign_server_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the foreign server used by this mapping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.63. `view_column_usage`

The view `view_column_usage` identifies all columns that are used in the query expression of a view (the `SELECT` statement that defines the view). A column is only included if the table that contains the column is owned by a currently enabled role.

**Note**

Columns of system tables are not included. This should be fixed sometime.

### 35.61. `view_column_usage` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>view_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the view (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>view_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>view_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column that is used by the view (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_schema</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column that is used by the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the table that contains the column that is used by the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>column_name</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the column that is used by the view</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.64. `view_routine_usage`

The view `view_routine_usage` identifies all routines (functions and procedures) that are used in the query expression of a view (the `SELECT` statement that defines the view). A routine is only included if that routine is owned by a currently enabled role.

### 35.62. `view_routine_usage` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>table_catalog</code></td>
<td>sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column that is used by the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema containing the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>The “specific name” of the function. See Section 35.45 for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.65. `view_table_usage`

The view `view_table_usage` identifies all tables that are used in the query expression of a view (the `SELECT` statement that defines the view). A table is only included if that table is owned by a currently enabled role.

**Note**

System tables are not included. This should be fixed sometime.

### Table 35.63. `view_table_usage` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>view_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the view (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the table that is used by the view (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_schema sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the schema that contains the table that is used by the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name sql_identifier</td>
<td>Name of the table that is used by the view</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 35.66. `views`

The view `views` contains all views defined in the current database. Only those views are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

### Table 35.64. `views` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_catalog sql_identifier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Information Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_schema</td>
<td>Name of the database that contains the view (always the current database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name</td>
<td>Name of the view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view_definition</td>
<td>Query expression defining the view (null if the view is not owned by a currently enabled role)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check_option</td>
<td>CASCADED or LOCAL if the view has a CHECK OPTION defined on it, NONE if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_updatable</td>
<td>YES if the view is updatable (allows UPDATE and DELETE), NO if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_insertable_into</td>
<td>YES if the view is insertable into (allows INSERT), NO if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_trigger_updatable</td>
<td>YES if the view has an INSTEAD OF UPDATE trigger defined on it, NO if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_trigger_deletable</td>
<td>YES if the view has an INSTEAD OF DELETE trigger defined on it, NO if not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_trigger_insertable_into</td>
<td>YES if the view has an INSTEAD OF INSERT trigger defined on it, NO if not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Part V. Server Programming

This part is about extending the server functionality with user-defined functions, data types, triggers, etc. These are advanced topics which should probably be approached only after all the other user documentation about Postgres Pro has been understood. Later chapters in this part describe the server-side programming languages available in the Postgres Pro distribution as well as general issues concerning server-side programming languages. It is essential to read at least the earlier sections of Chapter 36 (covering functions) before diving into the material about server-side programming languages.
Chapter 36. Extending SQL

In the sections that follow, we will discuss how you can extend the Postgres Pro SQL query language by adding:

- functions (starting in Section 36.3)
- aggregates (starting in Section 36.12)
- data types (starting in Section 36.13)
- operators (starting in Section 36.14)
- operator classes for indexes (starting in Section 36.16)
- packages of related objects (starting in Section 36.17)

36.1. How Extensibility Works

Postgres Pro is extensible because its operation is catalog-driven. If you are familiar with standard relational database systems, you know that they store information about databases, tables, columns, etc., in what are commonly known as system catalogs. (Some systems call this the data dictionary.) The catalogs appear to the user as tables like any other, but the DBMS stores its internal bookkeeping in them. One key difference between Postgres Pro and standard relational database systems is that Postgres Pro stores much more information in its catalogs: not only information about tables and columns, but also information about data types, functions, access methods, and so on. These tables can be modified by the user, and since Postgres Pro bases its operation on these tables, this means that Postgres Pro can be extended by users. By comparison, conventional database systems can only be extended by changing hardcoded procedures in the source code or by loading modules specially written by the DBMS vendor.

The Postgres Pro server can moreover incorporate user-written code into itself through dynamic loading. That is, the user can specify an object code file (e.g., a shared library) that implements a new type or function, and Postgres Pro will load it as required. Code written in SQL is even more trivial to add to the server. This ability to modify its operation “on the fly” makes Postgres Pro uniquely suited for rapid prototyping of new applications and storage structures.

36.2. The Postgres Pro Type System

Postgres Pro data types can be divided into base types, container types, domains, and pseudo-types.

36.2.1. Base Types

Base types are those, like integer, that are implemented below the level of the SQL language (typically in a low-level language such as C). They generally correspond to what are often known as abstract data types. Postgres Pro can only operate on such types through functions provided by the user and only understands the behavior of such types to the extent that the user describes them. The built-in base types are described in Chapter 8.

Enumerated (enum) types can be considered as a subcategory of base types. The main difference is that they can be created using just SQL commands, without any low-level programming. Refer to Section 8.7 for more information.

36.2.2. Container Types

Postgres Pro has three kinds of “container” types, which are types that contain multiple values of other types. These are arrays, composites, and ranges.

Arrays can hold multiple values that are all of the same type. An array type is automatically created for each base type, composite type, range type, and domain type. But there are no arrays of arrays. So far as the type system is concerned, multi-dimensional arrays are the same as one-dimensional arrays. Refer to Section 8.15 for more information.

Composite types, or row types, are created whenever the user creates a table. It is also possible to use CREATE TYPE to define a “stand-alone” composite type with no associated table. A composite type is simply a list of types with associated field names. A value of a composite type is a row or record of field values. Refer to Section 8.16 for more information.
A range type can hold two values of the same type, which are the lower and upper bounds of the range. Range types are user-created, although a few built-in ones exist. Refer to Section 8.17 for more information.

### 36.2.3. Domains

A domain is based on a particular underlying type and for many purposes is interchangeable with its underlying type. However, a domain can have constraints that restrict its valid values to a subset of what the underlying type would allow. Domains are created using the SQL command `CREATE DOMAIN`. Refer to Section 8.18 for more information.

### 36.2.4. Pseudo-Types

There are a few “pseudo-types” for special purposes. Pseudo-types cannot appear as columns of tables or components of container types, but they can be used to declare the argument and result types of functions. This provides a mechanism within the type system to identify special classes of functions. Table 8.27 lists the existing pseudo-types.

### 36.2.5. Polymorphic Types

Some pseudo-types of special interest are the polymorphic types, which are used to declare polymorphic functions. This powerful feature allows a single function definition to operate on many different data types, with the specific data type(s) being determined by the data types actually passed to it in a particular call. The polymorphic types are shown in Table 36.1. Some examples of their use appear in Section 36.5.11.

#### Table 36.1. Polymorphic Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anyelement</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyarray</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any array data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anynonarray</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any non-array data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyenum</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any enum data type (see Section 8.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyrange</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any range data type (see Section 8.17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anymultirange</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any multirange data type (see Section 8.17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatible</td>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblarray</td>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any array data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblenonarray</td>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any non-array data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anycompatiblerange</td>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Indicates that a function accepts any range data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Polymorphic arguments and results are tied to each other and are resolved to specific data types when a query calling a polymorphic function is parsed. When there is more than one polymorphic argument, the actual data types of the input values must match up as described below. If the function’s result type is polymorphic, or it has output parameters of polymorphic types, the types of those results are deduced from the actual types of the polymorphic inputs as described below.

For the “simple” family of polymorphic types, the matching and deduction rules work like this:

Each position (either argument or return value) declared as anyelement is allowed to have any specific actual data type, but in any given call they must all be the same actual type. Each position declared as anyarray can have any array data type, but similarly they must all be the same type. And similarly, positions declared as anyrange must all be the same range type. Likewise for anymultirange.

Furthermore, if there are positions declared anyarray and others declared anyelement, the actual array type in the anyarray positions must be an array whose elements are the same type appearing in the anyelement positions. anynonarray is treated exactly the same as anyelement, but adds the additional constraint that the actual type must not be an array type. anyenum is treated exactly the same as anyelement, but adds the additional constraint that the actual type must be an enum type.

Similarly, if there are positions declared anyrange and others declared anyelement or anyarray, the actual range type in the anyrange positions must be a range whose subtype is the same type appearing in the anyelement positions and the same as the element type of the anyarray positions. If there are positions declared anymultirange, their actual multirange type must contain ranges matching parameters declared anyrange and base elements matching parameters declared anyelement and anyarray.

Thus, when more than one argument position is declared with a polymorphic type, the net effect is that only certain combinations of actual argument types are allowed. For example, a function declared as equal(anyelement, anyelement) will take any two input values, so long as they are of the same data type.

When the return value of a function is declared as a polymorphic type, there must be at least one argument position that is also polymorphic, and the actual data type(s) supplied for the polymorphic arguments determine the actual result type for that call. For example, if there were not already an array subscripting mechanism, one could define a function that implements subscripting as subscript(anyarray, integer) returns anyelement. This declaration constrains the actual first argument to be an array type, and allows the parser to infer the correct result type from the actual first argument’s type. Another example is that a function declared as f(anyarray) returns anyenum will only accept arrays of enum types.

In most cases, the parser can infer the actual data type for a polymorphic result type from arguments that are of a different polymorphic type in the same family; for example anyarray can be deduced from anyelement or vice versa. An exception is that a polymorphic result of type anyrange requires an argument of type anyrange; it cannot be deduced from anyarray or anyelement arguments. This is because there could be multiple range types with the same subtype.

Note that anynonarray and anyenum do not represent separate type variables; they are the same type as anyelement, just with an additional constraint. For example, declaring a function as f(anyelement, anyenum) is equivalent to declaring it as f(anyenum, anyenum): both actual arguments have to be the same enum type.
For the "common" family of polymorphic types, the matching and deduction rules work approximately the same as for the "simple" family, with one major difference: the actual types of the arguments need not be identical, so long as they can be implicitly cast to a single common type. The common type is selected following the same rules as for `UNION` and related constructs (see Section 10.5). Selection of the common type considers the actual types of `anycompatible` and `anycompatiblenonarray` inputs, the array element types of `anycompatiblearray` inputs, the range subtypes of `anycompatiblerange` inputs, and the multirange subtypes of `anycompatiblemultirange` inputs. If `anycompatiblenonarray` is present then the common type is required to be a non-array type. Once a common type is identified, arguments in `anycompatible` and `anycompatiblenonarray` positions are automatically cast to that type, and arguments in `anycompatiblearray` positions are automatically cast to the array type for that type.

Since there is no way to select a range type knowing only its subtype, use of `anycompatiblerange` and/or `anycompatiblerange` requires that all arguments declared with that type have the same actual range and/or multirange type, and that that type's subtype agree with the selected common type, so that no casting of the range values is required. As with `anynone` and `anymultirange`, use of `anycompatiblerange` and `anymultirange` as a function result type requires that there be an `anycompatiblerange` or `anymultirange` argument.

Notice that there is no `anymultirenum` type. Such a type would not be very useful, since there normally are not any implicit casts to enum types, meaning that there would be no way to resolve a common type for dissimilar enum inputs.

The "simple" and "common" polymorphic families represent two independent sets of type variables. Consider for example

```
CREATE FUNCTION myfunc(a anyelement, b anyelement,
               c anycompatible, d anycompatible)
RETURNS anycompatible AS ...
```

In an actual call of this function, the first two inputs must have exactly the same type. The last two inputs must be promotable to a common type, but this type need not have anything to do with the type of the first two inputs. The result will have the common type of the last two inputs.

A variadic function (one taking a variable number of arguments, as in Section 36.5.6) can be polymorphic: this is accomplished by declaring its last parameter as `VARIADIC anyarray` or `VARIADIC anycompatiblearray`. For purposes of argument matching and determining the actual result type, such a function behaves the same as if you had written the appropriate number of `anynonarray` or `anycompatiblenonarray` parameters.

### 36.3. User-Defined Functions

Postgres Pro provides four kinds of functions:

- query language functions (functions written in SQL) (Section 36.5)
- procedural language functions (functions written in, for example, PL/pgSQL or PL/Tcl) (Section 36.8)
- internal functions (Section 36.9)
- C-language functions (Section 36.10)

Every kind of function can take base types, composite types, or combinations of these as arguments (parameters). In addition, every kind of function can return a base type or a composite type. Functions can also be defined to return sets of base or composite values.

Many kinds of functions can take or return certain pseudo-types (such as polymorphic types), but the available facilities vary. Consult the description of each kind of function for more details.

It's easiest to define SQL functions, so we'll start by discussing those. Most of the concepts presented for SQL functions will carry over to the other types of functions.

Throughout this chapter, it can be useful to look at the reference page of the `CREATE FUNCTION` command to understand the examples better.
36.4. User-Defined Procedures

A procedure is a database object similar to a function. The key differences are:

• Procedures are defined with the `CREATE PROCEDURE` command, not `CREATE FUNCTION`.

• Procedures do not return a function value; hence `CREATE PROCEDURE` lacks a `RETURNS` clause. However, procedures can instead return data to their callers via output parameters.

• While a function is called as part of a query or DML command, a procedure is called in isolation using the `CALL` command.

• A procedure can commit or roll back transactions during its execution (then automatically beginning a new transaction), so long as the invoking `CALL` command is not part of an explicit transaction block. A function cannot do that.

• Certain function attributes, such as strictness, don’t apply to procedures. Those attributes control how the function is used in a query, which isn’t relevant to procedures.

The explanations in the following sections about how to define user-defined functions apply to procedures as well, except for the points made above.

Collectively, functions and procedures are also known as routines. There are commands such as `ALTER ROUTINE` and `DROP ROUTINE` that can operate on functions and procedures without having to know which kind it is. Note, however, that there is no `CREATE ROUTINE` command.

36.5. Query Language (SQL) Functions

SQL functions execute an arbitrary list of SQL statements, returning the result of the last query in the list. In the simple (non-set) case, the first row of the last query's result will be returned. (Bear in mind that “the first row” of a multirow result is not well-defined unless you use `ORDER BY`.) If the last query happens to return no rows at all, the null value will be returned.

Alternatively, an SQL function can be declared to return a set (that is, multiple rows) by specifying the function’s return type as `SETOF sometype`, or equivalently by declaring it as `RETURNS TABLE(columns)`. In this case all rows of the last query's result are returned. Further details appear below.

The body of an SQL function must be a list of SQL statements separated by semicolons. A semicolon after the last statement is optional. Unless the function is declared to return `void`, the last statement must be a `SELECT`, or an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` that has a `RETURNING` clause.

Any collection of commands in the SQL language can be packaged together and defined as a function. Besides `SELECT` queries, the commands can include data modification queries (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`), as well as other SQL commands. (You cannot use transaction control commands, e.g., `COMMIT`, `SAVEPOINT`, and some utility commands, e.g., `VACUUM`, in SQL functions.) However, the final command must be a `SELECT` or have a `RETURNING` clause that returns whatever is specified as the function’s return type. Alternatively, if you want to define an SQL function that performs actions but has no useful value to return, you can define it as returning `void`. For example, this function removes rows with negative salaries from the `emp` table:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION clean_emp() RETURNS void AS ' 
    DELETE FROM emp 
    WHERE salary < 0; 
' LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT clean_emp();

clean_emp
-----------
(1 row)
```

You can also write this as a procedure, thus avoiding the issue of the return type. For example:
CREATE PROCEDURE clean_emp() AS 'CREATE PROCEDURE clean_emp() AS '
DELETE FROM emp
    WHERE salary < 0;
' LANGUAGE SQL;
CALL clean_emp();

In simple cases like this, the difference between a function returning void and a procedure is mostly stylistic. However, procedures offer additional functionality such as transaction control that is not available in functions. Also, procedures are SQL standard whereas returning void is a PostgreSQL extension.

Note

The entire body of an SQL function is parsed before any of it is executed. While an SQL function can contain commands that alter the system catalogs (e.g., CREATE TABLE), the effects of such commands will not be visible during parse analysis of later commands in the function. Thus, for example, CREATE TABLE foo (...); INSERT INTO foo VALUES(...); will not work as desired if packaged up into a single SQL function, since foo won't exist yet when the INSERT command is parsed. It's recommended to use PL/pgSQL instead of an SQL function in this type of situation.

The syntax of the CREATE FUNCTION command requires the function body to be written as a string constant. It is usually most convenient to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) for the string constant. If you choose to use regular single-quoted string constant syntax, you must double single quote marks (') and backslashes (\) (assuming escape string syntax) in the body of the function (see Section 4.1.2.1).

36.5.1. Arguments for SQL Functions

Arguments of an SQL function can be referenced in the function body using either names or numbers. Examples of both methods appear below.

To use a name, declare the function argument as having a name, and then just write that name in the function body. If the argument name is the same as any column name in the current SQL command within the function, the column name will take precedence. To override this, qualify the argument name with the name of the function itself, that is function_name.argument_name. (If this would conflict with a qualified column name, again the column name wins. You can avoid the ambiguity by choosing a different alias for the table within the SQL command.)

In the older numeric approach, arguments are referenced using the syntax $n: $1 refers to the first input argument, $2 to the second, and so on. This will work whether or not the particular argument was declared with a name.

If an argument is of a composite type, then the dot notation, e.g., argname.fieldname or $1.fieldname, can be used to access attributes of the argument. Again, you might need to qualify the argument’s name with the function name to make the form with an argument name unambiguous.

SQL function arguments can only be used as data values, not as identifiers. Thus for example this is reasonable:

\[ \text{INSERT INTO mytable VALUES ($1);} \]

but this will not work:

\[ \text{INSERT INTO $1 VALUES (42);} \]

Note

The ability to use names to reference SQL function arguments was added in PostgreSQL 9.2. Functions to be used in older servers must use the $n notation.
36.5.2. SQL Functions on Base Types

The simplest possible SQL function has no arguments and simply returns a base type, such as integer:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION one() RETURNS integer AS $$
    SELECT 1 AS result;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

-- Alternative syntax for string literal:
```sql
CREATE FUNCTION one() RETURNS integer AS '
    SELECT 1 AS result;
' LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```sql
SELECT one();
```

```sql
one
-----
1
```

Notice that we defined a column alias within the function body for the result of the function (with the name result), but this column alias is not visible outside the function. Hence, the result is labeled one instead of result.

It is almost as easy to define SQL functions that take base types as arguments:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION add_em(x integer, y integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    SELECT x + y;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```sql
SELECT add_em(1, 2) AS answer;
```

```sql
answer
--------
3
```

Alternatively, we could dispense with names for the arguments and use numbers:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION add_em(integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    SELECT $1 + $2;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```sql
SELECT add_em(1, 2) AS answer;
```

```sql
answer
--------
3
```

Here is a more useful function, which might be used to debit a bank account:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION tf1 (accountno integer, debit numeric) RETURNS numeric AS $$
    UPDATE bank
    SET balance = balance - debit
    WHERE accountno = tf1.accountno;
    $$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

A user could execute this function to debit account 17 by $100.00 as follows:

```sql
SELECT tf1(17, 100.0);
```

In this example, we chose the name accountno for the first argument, but this is the same as the name of a column in the bank table. Within the UPDATE command, accountno refers to the column bank.accountno,
so `tf1.accountno` must be used to refer to the argument. We could of course avoid this by using a different name for the argument.

In practice one would probably like a more useful result from the function than a constant 1, so a more likely definition is:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION tf1 (accountno integer, debit numeric) RETURNS numeric AS $$
UPDATE bank
  SET balance = balance - debit
WHERE accountno = tf1.accountno;
SELECT balance FROM bank WHERE accountno = tf1.accountno;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

which adjusts the balance and returns the new balance. The same thing could be done in one command using `RETURNING`:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION tf1 (accountno integer, debit numeric) RETURNS numeric AS $$
UPDATE bank
  SET balance = balance - debit
WHERE accountno = tf1.accountno
RETURNING balance;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

If the final `SELECT` or `RETURNING` clause in a SQL function does not return exactly the function’s declared result type, PostgreSQL will automatically cast the value to the required type, if that is possible with an implicit or assignment cast. Otherwise, you must write an explicit cast. For example, suppose we wanted the previous `add_em` function to return type `float8` instead. It’s sufficient to write

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION add_em(integer, integer) RETURNS float8 AS $$
SELECT $1 + $2;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

since the integer sum can be implicitly cast to `float8`. (See Chapter 10 or `CREATE CAST` for more about casts.)

### 36.5.3. SQL Functions on Composite Types

When writing functions with arguments of composite types, we must not only specify which argument we want but also the desired attribute (field) of that argument. For example, suppose that `emp` is a table containing employee data, and therefore also the name of the composite type of each row of the table. Here is a function `double_salary` that computes what someone’s salary would be if it were doubled:

```sql
CREATE TABLE emp (
    name        text,
    salary      numeric,
    age         integer,
    cubicle     point
);

INSERT INTO emp VALUES ('Bill', 4200, 45, '(2,1)');

CREATE FUNCTION double_salary(emp) RETURNS numeric AS $$
SELECT $1.salary * 2 AS salary;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT name, double_salary(emp.*) AS dream
FROM emp
WHERE emp.cubicle ~= point '(2,1)';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>dream</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill</td>
<td>8400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notice the use of the syntax `@1.salary` to select one field of the argument row value. Also notice how the calling `SELECT` command uses `table_name.*` to select the entire current row of a table as a composite value. The table row can alternatively be referenced using just the table name, like this:

```
SELECT name, double_salary(emp) AS dream
FROM emp
WHERE emp.cubicle ~= point '(2,1)';
```

but this usage is deprecated since it’s easy to get confused. (See Section 8.16.5 for details about these two notations for the composite value of a table row.)

Sometimes it is handy to construct a composite argument value on-the-fly. This can be done with the `ROW` construct. For example, we could adjust the data being passed to the function:

```
SELECT name, double_salary(ROW(name, salary*1.1, age, cubicle)) AS dream
FROM emp;
```

It is also possible to build a function that returns a composite type. This is an example of a function that returns a single `emp` row:

```
CREATE FUNCTION new_emp() RETURNS emp AS $$
SELECT text 'None' AS name,
    1000.0 AS salary,
    25 AS age,
    point '(2,2)' AS cubicle;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

In this example we have specified each of the attributes with a constant value, but any computation could have been substituted for these constants.

Note two important things about defining the function:

- The select list order in the query must be exactly the same as that in which the columns appear in the composite type. (Naming the columns, as we did above, is irrelevant to the system.)
- We must ensure each expression's type can be cast to that of the corresponding column of the composite type. Otherwise we'll get errors like this:

```
ERROR:  return type mismatch in function declared to return emp
DETAIL:  Final statement returns text instead of point at column 4.
```

As with the base-type case, the system will not insert explicit casts automatically, only implicit or assignment casts.

A different way to define the same function is:

```
CREATE FUNCTION new_emp() RETURNS emp AS $$
    SELECT ROW('None', 1000.0, 25, '(2,2)')::emp;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

Here we wrote a `SELECT` that returns just a single column of the correct composite type. This isn't really better in this situation, but it is a handy alternative in some cases — for example, if we need to compute the result by calling another function that returns the desired composite value. Another example is that if we are trying to write a function that returns a domain over composite, rather than a plain composite type, it is always necessary to write it as returning a single column, since there is no way to cause a coercion of the whole row result.

We could call this function directly either by using it in a value expression:

```
SELECT new_emp();
```

```
new_emp
---------
(None,1000.0,25,"(2,2)")
```
or by calling it as a table function:

```sql
SELECT * FROM new_emp();
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>salary</th>
<th>age</th>
<th>cubicle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>1000.0</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>(2,2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The second way is described more fully in Section 36.5.8.

When you use a function that returns a composite type, you might want only one field (attribute) from its result. You can do that with syntax like this:

```sql
SELECT (new_emp()).name;
```

```
name
------
None
```

The extra parentheses are needed to keep the parser from getting confused. If you try to do it without them, you get something like this:

```sql
SELECT new_emp().name;
```

```
ERROR:  syntax error at or near "."
LINE 1: SELECT new_emp().name;
```

Another option is to use functional notation for extracting an attribute:

```sql
SELECT name(new_emp());
```

```
name  
------
None
```

As explained in Section 8.16.5, the field notation and functional notation are equivalent.

Another way to use a function returning a composite type is to pass the result to another function that accepts the correct row type as input:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION getname(emp) RETURNS text AS $$
    SELECT $1.name;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```sql
SELECT getname(new_emp());
```

```
getname  
---------
None
```

(1 row)

### 36.5.4. SQL Functions with Output Parameters

An alternative way of describing a function’s results is to define it with output parameters, as in this example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION add_em (IN x int, IN y int, OUT sum int) AS 'SELECT x + y'
    LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```sql
SELECT add_em(3,7);
```

```
add_em  
--------
10
```

(1 row)
This is not essentially different from the version of add_em shown in Section 36.5.2. The real value of output parameters is that they provide a convenient way of defining functions that return several columns. For example,

```
CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product (x int, y int, OUT sum int, OUT product int)
AS 'SELECT x + y, x * y'
LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT * FROM sum_n_product(11,42);
```

```
+----+--------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>product</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1 row)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

What has essentially happened here is that we have created an anonymous composite type for the result of the function. The above example has the same end result as

```
CREATE TYPE sum_prod AS (sum int, product int);
CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product (int, int) RETURNS sum_prod
AS 'SELECT $1 + $2, $1 * $2'
LANGUAGE SQL;
```

but not having to bother with the separate composite type definition is often handy. Notice that the names attached to the output parameters are not just decoration, but determine the column names of the anonymous composite type. (If you omit a name for an output parameter, the system will choose a name on its own.)

Notice that output parameters are not included in the calling argument list when invoking such a function from SQL. This is because Postgres Pro considers only the input parameters to define the function's calling signature. That means also that only the input parameters matter when referencing the function for purposes such as dropping it. We could drop the above function with either of

```
DROP FUNCTION sum_n_product (x int, y int, OUT sum int, OUT product int);
DROP FUNCTION sum_n_product (int, int);
```

Parameters can be marked as IN (the default), OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. An INOUT parameter serves as both an input parameter (part of the calling argument list) and an output parameter (part of the result record type). VARIADIC parameters are input parameters, but are treated specially as described below.

### 36.5.5. SQL Procedures with Output Parameters

Output parameters are also supported in procedures, but they work a bit differently from functions. In CALL commands, output parameters must be included in the argument list. For example, the bank account debiting routine from earlier could be written like this:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE tp1 (accountno integer, debit numeric, OUT new_balance numeric) AS $$
  UPDATE bank
  SET balance = balance - debit
  WHERE accountno = tp1.accountno
  RETURNING balance;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

To call this procedure, an argument matching the OUT parameter must be included. It's customary to write NULL:

```
CALL tp1(17, 100.0, NULL);
```

If you write something else, it must be an expression that is implicitly coercible to the declared type of the parameter, just as for input parameters. Note however that such an expression will not be evaluated.

When calling a procedure from PL/pgSQL, instead of writing NULL you must write a variable that will receive the procedure's output. See Section 41.6.3 for details.

### 36.5.6. SQL Functions with Variable Numbers of Arguments
SQL functions can be declared to accept variable numbers of arguments, so long as all the “optional” arguments are of the same data type. The optional arguments will be passed to the function as an array. The function is declared by marking the last parameter as VARIADIC; this parameter must be declared as being of an array type. For example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION mleast(VARIADIC arr numeric[]) RETURNS numeric AS $$
  SELECT min($1[i]) FROM generate_subscripts($1, 1) g(i);
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```sql
SELECT mleast(10, -1, 5, 4.4);
```

```
mleast
--------
-1
(1 row)
```

Effectively, all the actual arguments at or beyond the VARIADIC position are gathered up into a one-dimensional array, as if you had written

```
SELECT mleast(ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);    -- doesn't work
```

You can't actually write that, though — or at least, it will not match this function definition. A parameter marked VARIADIC matches one or more occurrences of its element type, not of its own type.

Sometimes it is useful to be able to pass an already-constructed array to a variadic function; this is particularly handy when one variadic function wants to pass on its array parameter to another one. Also, this is the only secure way to call a variadic function found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects; see Section 10.3. You can do this by specifying VARIADIC in the call:

```sql
SELECT mleast(VARIADIC ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);
```

This prevents expansion of the function's variadic parameter into its element type, thereby allowing the array argument value to match normally. VARIADIC can only be attached to the last actual argument of a function call.

Specifying VARIADIC in the call is also the only way to pass an empty array to a variadic function, for example:

```sql
SELECT mleast(VARIADIC ARRAY[]::numeric[]);
```

Simply writing `SELECT mleast()` does not work because a variadic parameter must match at least one actual argument. (You could define a second function also named mleast, with no parameters, if you wanted to allow such calls.)

The array element parameters generated from a variadic parameter are treated as not having any names of their own. This means it is not possible to call a variadic function using named arguments (Section 4.3), except when you specify VARIADIC. For example, this will work:

```sql
SELECT mleast(VARIADIC arr => ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);
```

but not these:

```sql
SELECT mleast(arr => 10);
SELECT mleast(arr => ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);
```

### 36.5.7. SQL Functions with Default Values for Arguments

Functions can be declared with default values for some or all input arguments. The default values are inserted whenever the function is called with insufficiently many actual arguments. Since arguments can only be omitted from the end of the actual argument list, all parameters after a parameter with a default value have to have default values as well. (Although the use of named argument notation could allow this restriction to be relaxed, it’s still enforced so that positional argument notation works sensibly.) Whether or not you use it, this capability creates a need for precautions when calling functions in databases where some users mistrust other users; see Section 10.3.

For example:
CREATE FUNCTION foo(a int, b int DEFAULT 2, c int DEFAULT 3)
RETURNS int
LANGUAGE SQL
AS $$
    SELECT $1 + $2 + $3;
$$;

SELECT foo(10, 20, 30);
foo
-----
  60
(1 row)

SELECT foo(10, 20);
foo
-----
  33
(1 row)

SELECT foo(10);
foo
-----
  15
(1 row)

SELECT foo();  -- fails since there is no default for the first argument
ERROR: function foo() does not exist

The = sign can also be used in place of the key word DEFAULT.

36.5.8. SQL Functions as Table Sources

All SQL functions can be used in the FROM clause of a query, but it is particularly useful for functions returning composite types. If the function is defined to return a base type, the table function produces a one-column table. If the function is defined to return a composite type, the table function produces a column for each attribute of the composite type.

Here is an example:

CREATE TABLE foo (fooid int, foosubid int, fooname text);
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (1, 1, 'Joe');
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (1, 2, 'Ed');
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (2, 1, 'Mary');

CREATE FUNCTION getfoo(int) RETURNS foo AS $$
    SELECT * FROM foo WHERE fooid = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT *, upper(fooname) FROM getfoo(1) AS t1;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fooid</th>
<th>foosubid</th>
<th>fooname</th>
<th>upper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Joe</td>
<td>JOE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(1 row)

As the example shows, we can work with the columns of the function's result just the same as if they were columns of a regular table.

Note that we only got one row out of the function. This is because we did not use SETOF. That is described in the next section.
36.5.9. SQL Functions Returning Sets

When an SQL function is declared as returning `SETOF sometype`, the function's final query is executed to completion, and each row it outputs is returned as an element of the result set.

This feature is normally used when calling the function in the `FROM` clause. In this case each row returned by the function becomes a row of the table seen by the query. For example, assume that table `foo` has the same contents as above, and we say:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION getfoo(int) RETURNS SETOF foo AS $$
    SELECT * FROM foo WHERE fooid = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```sql
SELECT * FROM getfoo(1) AS t1;
```

Then we would get:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fooid</th>
<th>foosubid</th>
<th>fooname</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Joe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is also possible to return multiple rows with the columns defined by output parameters, like this:

```sql
CREATE TABLE tab (y int, z int);
INSERT INTO tab VALUES (1, 2), (3, 4), (5, 6), (7, 8);
CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product_with_tab (x int, OUT sum int, OUT product int)
RETURNS SETOF record
AS $$
    SELECT $1 + tab.y, $1 * tab.y FROM tab;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```sql
SELECT * FROM sum_n_product_with_tab(10);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>product</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The key point here is that you must write `RETURNS SETOF record` to indicate that the function returns multiple rows instead of just one. If there is only one output parameter, write that parameter's type instead of `record`.

It is frequently useful to construct a query's result by invoking a set-returning function multiple times, with the parameters for each invocation coming from successive rows of a table or subquery. The preferred way to do this is to use the `LATERAL` key word, which is described in Section 7.2.1.5. Here is an example using a set-returning function to enumerate elements of a tree structure:

```sql
SELECT * FROM nodes;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>parent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Top</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child1</td>
<td>Top</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child2</td>
<td>Top</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child3</td>
<td>Top</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SubChild1</td>
<td>Child1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SubChild2</td>
<td>Child1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6 rows)
Extending SQL

CREATE FUNCTION listchildren(text) RETURNS SETOF text AS $$
SELECT name FROM nodes WHERE parent = $1
$$ LANGUAGE SQL STABLE;

SELECT * FROM listchildren('Top');
listchildren
----------
Child1
Child2
Child3
(3 rows)

SELECT name, child FROM nodes, LATERAL listchildren(name) AS child;
  name |   child
  ------+-----------
  Top   | Child1
  Top   | Child2
  Top   | Child3
  Child1 | SubChild1
  Child1 | SubChild2
(5 rows)

This example does not do anything that we couldn't have done with a simple join, but in more complex calculations the option to put some of the work into a function can be quite convenient.

Functions returning sets can also be called in the select list of a query. For each row that the query generates by itself, the set-returning function is invoked, and an output row is generated for each element of the function's result set. The previous example could also be done with queries like these:

SELECT listchildren('Top');
listchildren
----------
Child1
Child2
Child3
(3 rows)

SELECT name, listchildren(name) FROM nodes;
  name | listchildren
  ------+--------------
  Top   | Child1
  Top   | Child2
  Top   | Child3
  Child1 | SubChild1
  Child1 | SubChild2
(5 rows)

In the last SELECT, notice that no output row appears for Child2, Child3, etc. This happens because listchildren returns an empty set for those arguments, so no result rows are generated. This is the same behavior as we got from an inner join to the function result when using the LATERAL syntax.

Postgres Pro's behavior for a set-returning function in a query's select list is almost exactly the same as if the set-returning function had been written in a LATERAL FROM-clause item instead. For example,

SELECT x, generate_series(1,5) AS g FROM tab;

is almost equivalent to

SELECT x, g FROM tab, LATERAL generate_series(1,5) AS g;

It would be exactly the same, except that in this specific example, the planner could choose to put g on the outside of the nested-loop join, since g has no actual lateral dependency on tab. That would result
in a different output row order. Set-returning functions in the select list are always evaluated as though they are on the inside of a nested-loop join with the rest of the FROM clause, so that the function(s) are run to completion before the next row from the FROM clause is considered.

If there is more than one set-returning function in the query's select list, the behavior is similar to what you get from putting the functions into a single LATERAL ROWS FROM( ) item. For each row from the underlying query, there is an output row using the first result from each function, then an output row using the second result, and so on. If some of the set-returning functions produce fewer outputs than others, null values are substituted for the missing data, so that the total number of rows emitted for one underlying row is the same as for the set-returning function that produced the most outputs. Thus the set-returning functions run "in lockstep" until they are all exhausted, and then execution continues with the next underlying row.

Set-returning functions can be nested in a select list, although that is not allowed in FROM-clause items. In such cases, each level of nesting is treated separately, as though it were a separate LATERAL ROWS FROM( ) item. For example, in

```
SELECT srf1(srf2(x), srf3(y)), srf4(srf5(z)) FROM tab;
```

the set-returning functions srf2, srf3, and srf5 would be run in lockstep for each row of tab, and then srf1 and srf4 would be applied in lockstep to each row produced by the lower functions.

Set-returning functions cannot be used within conditional-evaluation constructs, such as CASE or COALESCE. For example, consider

```
SELECT x, CASE WHEN x > 0 THEN generate_series(1, 5) ELSE 0 END FROM tab;
```

It might seem that this should produce five repetitions of input rows that have $x > 0$, and a single repetition of those that do not; but actually, because `generate_series(1, 5)` would be run in an implicit LATERAL FROM item before the CASE expression is ever evaluated, it would produce five repetitions of every input row. To reduce confusion, such cases produce a parse-time error instead.

**Note**

If a function's last command is INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE with RETURNING, that command will always be executed to completion, even if the function is not declared with SETOF or the calling query does not fetch all the result rows. Any extra rows produced by the RETURNING clause are silently dropped, but the commanded table modifications still happen (and are all completed before returning from the function).

**Note**

Before Postgres Pro 10, putting more than one set-returning function in the same select list did not behave very sensibly unless they always produced equal numbers of rows. Otherwise, what you got was a number of output rows equal to the least common multiple of the numbers of rows produced by the set-returning functions. Also, nested set-returning functions did not work as described above; instead, a set-returning function could have at most one set-returning argument, and each nest of set-returning functions was run independently. Also, conditional execution (set-returning functions inside CASE etc) was previously allowed, complicating things even more. Use of the LATERAL syntax is recommended when writing queries that need to work in older Postgres Pro versions, because that will give consistent results across different versions. If you have a query that is relying on conditional execution of a set-returning function, you may be able to fix it by moving the conditional test into a custom set-returning function. For example,

```
SELECT x, CASE WHEN y > 0 THEN generate_series(1, z) ELSE 5 END FROM tab;
```

could become

```
CREATE FUNCTION case_generate_series(cond bool, start int, fin int, els int)
  RETURNS SETOF int AS $$
BEGIN
```

Extending SQL

IF cond THEN
  RETURN QUERY SELECT generate_series(start, fin);
ELSE
  RETURN QUERY SELECT els;
END IF;
END$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT x, case_generate_series(y > 0, 1, z, 5) FROM tab;

This formulation will work the same in all versions of Postgres Pro.

36.5.10. SQL Functions Returning TABLE

There is another way to declare a function as returning a set, which is to use the syntax RETURNS TABLE(columns). This is equivalent to using one or more OUT parameters plus marking the function as returning SETOF record (or SETOF a single output parameter's type, as appropriate). This notation is specified in recent versions of the SQL standard, and thus may be more portable than using SETOF.

For example, the preceding sum-and-product example could also be done this way:

CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product_with_tab (x int)
RETURNS TABLE(sum int, product int) AS $$
SELECT $1 + tab.y, $1 * tab.y FROM tab;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

It is not allowed to use explicit OUT or INOUT parameters with the RETURNS TABLE notation — you must put all the output columns in the TABLE list.

36.5.11. Polymorphic SQL Functions

SQL functions can be declared to accept and return the polymorphic types described in Section 36.2.5. Here is a polymorphic function make_array that builds up an array from two arbitrary data type elements:

CREATE FUNCTION make_array(anyelement, anyelement) RETURNS anyarray AS $$
SELECT ARRAY[$1, $2];
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT make_array(1, 2) AS intarray, make_array('a'::text, 'b') AS textarray;

intarray | textarray
----------+-----------
{1,2}    | {a,b}
(1 row)

Notice the use of the typecast 'a'::text to specify that the argument is of type text. This is required if the argument is just a string literal, since otherwise it would be treated as type unknown, and array of unknown is not a valid type. Without the typecast, you will get errors like this:

ERROR:  could not determine polymorphic type because input has type unknown

With make_array declared as above, you must provide two arguments that are of exactly the same data type; the system will not attempt to resolve any type differences. Thus for example this does not work:

SELECT make_array(1, 2.5) AS numericarray;

ERROR:  function make_array(integer, numeric) does not exist

An alternative approach is to use the "common" family of polymorphic types, which allows the system to try to identify a suitable common type:

CREATE FUNCTION make_array2(anycompatible, anycompatible) RETURNS anycompatiblearray AS $$
SELECT ARRAY[$1, $2];
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
SELECT make_array2(1, 2.5) AS numericarray;
  numericarray
--------------
  {1,2.5}
(1 row)

Because the rules for common type resolution default to choosing type text when all inputs are of unknown types, this also works:

SELECT make_array2('a', 'b') AS textarray;
  textarray
-----------
  {a,b}
(1 row)

It is permitted to have polymorphic arguments with a fixed return type, but the converse is not. For example:

CREATE FUNCTION is_greater(anyelement, anyelement) RETURNS boolean AS $$
  SELECT $1 > $2;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT is_greater(1, 2);
  is_greater
------------
    f
(1 row)

CREATE FUNCTION invalid_func() RETURNS anyelement AS $$
  SELECT 1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
ERROR:  cannot determine result data type
DETAIL:  A result of type anyelement requires at least one input of type anyelement, anyarray, anynonarray, anyenum, or anyrange.

Polymorphism can be used with functions that have output arguments. For example:

CREATE FUNCTION dup (f1 anyelement, OUT f2 anyelement, OUT f3 anyarray)
AS 'select $1, array[$1,$1]' LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(22);
  f2 |   f3
----+---------
  22 | {22,22}
(1 row)

Polymorphism can also be used with variadic functions. For example:

CREATE FUNCTION anyleast (VARIADIC anyarray) RETURNS anyelement AS $$
  SELECT min($1[i]) FROM generate_subscripts($1, 1) g(i);
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT anyleast(10, -1, 5, 4);
  anyleast
----------
   -1
(1 row)

SELECT anyleast('abc':'text', 'def');
  anyleast
----------
  abc
CREATE FUNCTION concat_values(text, VARIADIC anyarray) RETURNS text AS $$
    SELECT array_to_string($2, $1);
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT concat_values('|', 1, 4, 2);


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### 36.5.12. SQL Functions with Collations

When an SQL function has one or more parameters of collatable data types, a collation is identified for each function call depending on the collations assigned to the actual arguments, as described in Section 22.2. If a collation is successfully identified (i.e., there are no conflicts of implicit collations among the arguments) then all the collatable parameters are treated as having that collation implicitly. This will affect the behavior of collation-sensitive operations within the function. For example, using the `anyleast` function described above, the result of

```
SELECT anyleast('abc'::text, 'ABC');
```

will depend on the database's default collation. In C locale the result will be ABC, but in many other locales it will be abc. The collation to use can be forced by adding a `COLLATE` clause to any of the arguments, for example

```
SELECT anyleast('abc'::text, 'ABC' COLLATE "C");
```

Alternatively, if you wish a function to operate with a particular collation regardless of what it is called with, insert `COLLATE` clauses as needed in the function definition. This version of `anyleast` would always use `en_US` locale to compare strings:

```
CREATE FUNCTION anyleast (VARIADIC anyarray) RETURNS anyelement AS $$
    SELECT min($1[i] COLLATE "en_US") FROM generate_subscripts($1, 1) g(i);
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

But note that this will throw an error if applied to a non-collatable data type.

If no common collation can be identified among the actual arguments, then an SQL function treats its parameters as having their data types' default collation (which is usually the database's default collation, but could be different for parameters of domain types).

The behavior of collatable parameters can be thought of as a limited form of polymorphism, applicable only to textual data types.

### 36.6. Function Overloading

More than one function can be defined with the same SQL name, so long as the arguments they take are different. In other words, function names can be overloaded. Whether or not you use it, this capability entails security precautions when calling functions in databases where some users mistrust other users; see Section 10.3. When a query is executed, the server will determine which function to call from the data types and the number of the provided arguments. Overloading can also be used to simulate functions with a variable number of arguments, up to a finite maximum number.

When creating a family of overloaded functions, one should be careful not to create ambiguities. For instance, given the functions:

```
CREATE FUNCTION test(int, real) RETURNS ...
CREATE FUNCTION test(smallint, double precision) RETURNS ...
```

it is not immediately clear which function would be called with some trivial input like `test(1, 1.5)`. The currently implemented resolution rules are described in Chapter 10, but it is unwise to design a system that subtly relies on this behavior.
A function that takes a single argument of a composite type should generally not have the same name as any attribute (field) of that type. Recall that `attribute(table)` is considered equivalent to `table.attribute`. In the case that there is an ambiguity between a function on a composite type and an attribute of the composite type, the attribute will always be used. It is possible to override that choice by schema-qualifying the function name (that is, `schema.func(table)`) but it’s better to avoid the problem by not choosing conflicting names.

Another possible conflict is between variadic and non-variadic functions. For instance, it is possible to create both `foo(numeric)` and `foo(VARIADIC numeric[])`. In this case it is unclear which one should be matched to a call providing a single numeric argument, such as `foo(10.1)`. The rule is that the function appearing earlier in the search path is used, or if the two functions are in the same schema, the non-variadic one is preferred.

When overloading C-language functions, there is an additional constraint: The C name of each function in the family of overloaded functions must be different from the C names of all other functions, either internal or dynamically loaded. If this rule is violated, the behavior is not portable. You might get a runtime linker error, or one of the functions will get called (usually the internal one). The alternative form of the `AS` clause for the SQL `CREATE FUNCTION` command decouples the SQL function name from the function name in the C source code. For instance:

```
CREATE FUNCTION test(int) RETURNS int
    AS 'filename', 'test_1arg'
    LANGUAGE C;
CREATE FUNCTION test(int, int) RETURNS int
    AS 'filename', 'test_2arg'
    LANGUAGE C;
```

The names of the C functions here reflect one of many possible conventions.

### 36.7. Function Volatility Categories

Every function has a **volatility** classification, with the possibilities being **VOLATILE**, **STABLE**, or **IMMUTABLE**. **VOLATILE** is the default if the `CREATE FUNCTION` command does not specify a category. The volatility category is a promise to the optimizer about the behavior of the function:

- **A VOLATILE** function can do anything, including modifying the database. It can return different results on successive calls with the same arguments. The optimizer makes no assumptions about the behavior of such functions. A query using a volatile function will re-evaluate the function at every row where its value is needed.

- **A STABLE** function cannot modify the database and is guaranteed to return the same results given the same arguments for all rows within a single statement. This category allows the optimizer to optimize multiple calls of the function to a single call. In particular, it is safe to use an expression containing such a function in an index scan condition. (Since an index scan will evaluate the comparison value only once, not once at each row, it is not valid to use a **VOLATILE** function in an index scan condition.)

- **An IMMUTABLE** function cannot modify the database and is guaranteed to return the same results given the same arguments forever. This category allows the optimizer to pre-evaluate the function when a query calls it with constant arguments. For example, a query like `SELECT ... WHERE x = 2 + 2` can be simplified on sight to `SELECT ... WHERE x = 4`, because the function underlying the integer addition operator is marked **IMMUTABLE**.

For best optimization results, you should label your functions with the strictest volatility category that is valid for them.

Any function with side-effects must be labeled **VOLATILE**, so that calls to it cannot be optimized away. Even a function with no side-effects needs to be labeled **VOLATILE** if its value can change within a single query; some examples are `random()`, `currval()`, `timeofday()`.

Another important example is that the **current_timestamp** family of functions qualify as **STABLE**, since their values do not change within a transaction.
There is relatively little difference between `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` categories when considering simple interactive queries that are planned and immediately executed: it doesn't matter a lot whether a function is executed once during planning or once during query execution startup. But there is a big difference if the plan is saved and reused later. Labeling a function `IMMUTABLE` when it really isn't might allow it to be prematurely folded to a constant during planning, resulting in a stale value being re-used during subsequent uses of the plan. This is a hazard when using prepared statements or when using function languages that cache plans (such as PL/pgSQL).

For functions written in SQL or in any of the standard procedural languages, there is a second important property determined by the volatility category, namely the visibility of any data changes that have been made by the SQL command that is calling the function. A `VOLATILE` function will see such changes, a `STABLE` or `IMMUTABLE` function will not. This behavior is implemented using the snapshotting behavior of MVCC (see Chapter 13): `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` functions use a snapshot established as of the start of the calling query, whereas `VOLATILE` functions obtain a fresh snapshot at the start of each query they execute.

**Note**

Functions written in C can manage snapshots however they want, but it's usually a good idea to make C functions work this way too.

Because of this snapshotting behavior, a function containing only `SELECT` commands can safely be marked `STABLE`, even if it selects from tables that might be undergoing modifications by concurrent queries. Postgres Pro will execute all commands of a `STABLE` function using the snapshot established for the calling query, and so it will see a fixed view of the database throughout that query.

The same snapshotting behavior is used for `SELECT` commands within `IMMUTABLE` functions. It is generally unwise to select from database tables within an `IMMUTABLE` function at all, since the immutability will be broken if the table contents ever change. However, Postgres Pro does not enforce that you do not do that.

A common error is to label a function `IMMUTABLE` when its results depend on a configuration parameter. For example, a function that manipulates timestamps might well have results that depend on the `TimeZone` setting. For safety, such functions should be labeled `STABLE` instead.

**Note**

Postgres Pro requires that `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` functions contain no SQL commands other than `SELECT` to prevent data modification. (This is not a completely bulletproof test, since such functions could still call `VOLATILE` functions that modify the database. If you do that, you will find that the `STABLE` or `IMMUTABLE` function does not notice the database changes applied by the called function, since they are hidden from its snapshot.)

### 36.8. Procedural Language Functions

Postgres Pro allows user-defined functions to be written in other languages besides SQL and C. These other languages are generically called *procedural languages* (PLs). Procedural languages aren't built into the Postgres Pro server; they are offered by loadable modules. See Chapter 40 and following chapters for more information.

### 36.9. Internal Functions

Internal functions are functions written in C that have been statically linked into the Postgres Pro server. The “body” of the function definition specifies the C-language name of the function, which need not be the same as the name being declared for SQL use. (For reasons of backward compatibility, an empty body is accepted as meaning that the C-language function name is the same as the SQL name.)
Normally, all internal functions present in the server are declared during the initialization of the database cluster (see Section 17.2), but a user could use create function to create additional alias names for an internal function. Internal functions are declared in create function with language name internal. For instance, to create an alias for the sqrt function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION square_root(double precision) RETURNS double precision
  AS 'dsqrt'
  LANGUAGE internal
  STRICT;
```

(Most internal functions expect to be declared “strict”.)

### Note

Not all “predefined” functions are “internal” in the above sense. Some predefined functions are written in SQL.

### 36.10. C-Language Functions

User-defined functions can be written in C (or a language that can be made compatible with C, such as C++). Such functions are compiled into dynamically loadable objects (also called shared libraries) and are loaded by the server on demand. The dynamic loading feature is what distinguishes “C language” functions from “internal” functions — the actual coding conventions are essentially the same for both. (Hence, the standard internal function library is a rich source of coding examples for user-defined C functions.)

Currently only one calling convention is used for C functions (“version 1”). Support for that calling convention is indicated by writing a `PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1()` macro call for the function, as illustrated below.

#### 36.10.1. Dynamic Loading

The first time a user-defined function in a particular loadable object file is called in a session, the dynamic loader loads that object file into memory so that the function can be called. The `CREATE FUNCTION` for a user-defined C function must therefore specify two pieces of information for the function: the name of the loadable object file, and the C name (link symbol) of the specific function to call within that object file. If the C name is not explicitly specified then it is assumed to be the same as the SQL function name.

The following algorithm is used to locate the shared object file based on the name given in the `CREATE FUNCTION` command:

1. If the name is an absolute path, the given file is loaded.
2. If the name starts with the string `$libdir`, that part is replaced by the Postgres Pro package library directory name, which is determined at build time.
3. If the name does not contain a directory part, the file is searched for in the path specified by the configuration variable `dynamic_library_path`.
4. Otherwise (the file was not found in the path, or it contains a non-absolute directory part), the dynamic loader will try to take the name as given, which will most likely fail. (It is unreliable to depend on the current working directory.)

If this sequence does not work, the platform-specific shared library file name extension (often `.so`) is appended to the given name and this sequence is tried again. If that fails as well, the load will fail.

It is recommended to locate shared libraries either relative to `$libdir` or through the dynamic library path. This simplifies version upgrades if the new installation is at a different location. The actual directory that `$libdir` stands for can be found out with the command `pg_config --pkglibdir`. 

971
The user ID the Postgres Pro server runs as must be able to traverse the path to the file you intend to load. Making the file or a higher-level directory not readable and/or not executable by the postgres user is a common mistake.

In any case, the file name that is given in the CREATE FUNCTION command is recorded literally in the system catalogs, so if the file needs to be loaded again the same procedure is applied.

**Note**

Postgres Pro will not compile a C function automatically. The object file must be compiled before it is referenced in a CREATE FUNCTION command. See Section 36.10.5 for additional information.

To ensure that a dynamically loaded object file is not loaded into an incompatible server, Postgres Pro checks that the file contains a “magic block” with the appropriate contents. This allows the server to detect obvious incompatibilities, such as code compiled for a different major version of Postgres Pro. To include a magic block, write this in one (and only one) of the module source files, after having included the header `fmgr.h`:

```c
PG_MODULE_MAGIC;
```

After it is used for the first time, a dynamically loaded object file is retained in memory. Future calls in the same session to the function(s) in that file will only incur the small overhead of a symbol table lookup. If you need to force a reload of an object file, for example after recompiling it, begin a fresh session.

Optionally, a dynamically loaded file can contain initialization and finalization functions. If the file includes a function named `_PG_init`, that function will be called immediately after loading the file. The function receives no parameters and should return void. If the file includes a function named `_PG_fini`, that function will be called immediately before unloading the file. Likewise, the function receives no parameters and should return void. Note that `_PG_fini` will only be called during an unload of the file, not during process termination. (Presently, unloads are disabled and will never occur, but this may change in the future.)

### 36.10.2. Base Types in C-Language Functions

To know how to write C-language functions, you need to know how Postgres Pro internally represents base data types and how they can be passed to and from functions. Internally, Postgres Pro regards a base type as a “blob of memory”. The user-defined functions that you define over a type in turn define the way that Postgres Pro can operate on it. That is, Postgres Pro will only store and retrieve the data from disk and use your user-defined functions to input, process, and output the data.

Base types can have one of three internal formats:

- pass by value, fixed-length
- pass by reference, fixed-length
- pass by reference, variable-length

By-value types can only be 1, 2, or 4 bytes in length (also 8 bytes, if `sizeof(Datum)` is 8 on your machine). You should be careful to define your types such that they will be the same size (in bytes) on all architectures. For example, the `long` type is dangerous because it is 4 bytes on some machines and 8 bytes on others, whereas `int` type is 4 bytes on most Unix machines. A reasonable implementation of the `int4` type on Unix machines might be:

```c
/* 4-byte integer, passed by value */
typedef int int4;
```

(The actual Postgres Pro C code calls this type `int32`, because it is a convention in C that `intXX` means `XX` bits. Note therefore also that the C type `int8` is 1 byte in size. The SQL type `int8` is called `int64` in C. See also Table 36.2.)
On the other hand, fixed-length types of any size can be passed by-reference. For example, here is a sample implementation of a Postgres Pro type:

```c
/* 16-byte structure, passed by reference */
typedef struct {  
  double x, y;  
} Point;
```

Only pointers to such types can be used when passing them in and out of Postgres Pro functions. To return a value of such a type, allocate the right amount of memory with `palloc`, fill in the allocated memory, and return a pointer to it. (Also, if you just want to return the same value as one of your input arguments that's of the same data type, you can skip the extra `palloc` and just return the pointer to the input value.)

Finally, all variable-length types must also be passed by reference. All variable-length types must begin with an opaque length field of exactly 4 bytes, which will be set by `SET_VARSIZE`; never set this field directly! All data to be stored within that type must be located in the memory immediately following that length field. The length field contains the total length of the structure, that is, it includes the size of the length field itself.

Another important point is to avoid leaving any uninitialized bits within data type values; for example, take care to zero out any alignment padding bytes that might be present in structs. Without this, logically-equivalent constants of your data type might be seen as unequal by the planner, leading to inefficient (though not incorrect) plans.

### Warning

*Never* modify the contents of a pass-by-reference input value. If you do so you are likely to corrupt on-disk data, since the pointer you are given might point directly into a disk buffer. The sole exception to this rule is explained in Section 36.12.

As an example, we can define the type `text` as follows:

```c
typedef struct {  
  int32 length;  
  char data[FLEXIBLE_ARRAY_MEMBER];  
} text;
```

The `[FLEXIBLE_ARRAY_MEMBER]` notation means that the actual length of the data part is not specified by this declaration.

When manipulating variable-length types, we must be careful to allocate the correct amount of memory and set the length field correctly. For example, if we wanted to store 40 bytes in a `text` structure, we might use a code fragment like this:

```c
#include "postgres.h"
...
char buffer[40]; /* our source data */
...
text *destination = (text *) palloc(VARHDRSZ + 40);
SET_VARSIZE(destination, VARHDRSZ + 40);
memcpy(destination->data, buffer, 40);
...
```

`VARHDRSZ` is the same as `sizeof(int32)`, but it's considered good style to use the macro `VARHDRSZ` to refer to the size of the overhead for a variable-length type. Also, the length field must be set using the `SET_VARSIZE` macro, not by simple assignment.
Table 36.2 specifies which C type corresponds to which SQL type when writing a C-language function that uses a built-in type of Postgres Pro. The "Defined In" column gives the header file that needs to be included to get the type definition. (The actual definition might be in a different file that is included by the listed file. It is recommended that users stick to the defined interface.) Note that you should always include postgres.h first in any source file, because it declares a number of things that you will need anyway.

### Table 36.2. Equivalent C Types for Built-in SQL Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SQL Type</th>
<th>C Type</th>
<th>Defined In</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>bool</td>
<td>postgres.h (maybe compiler built-in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>BOX*</td>
<td>utils/geo_decls.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytea</td>
<td>bytea*</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;char&quot;</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>(compiler built-in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character</td>
<td>BpChar*</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cid</td>
<td>CommandId</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>DateADT</td>
<td>utils/date.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smallint (int2)</td>
<td>int16</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int2vector</td>
<td>int2vector*</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer (int4)</td>
<td>int32</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>real (float4)</td>
<td>float4*</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double precision (float8)</td>
<td>float8*</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval</td>
<td>Interval*</td>
<td>datatype/timestamp.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lseg</td>
<td>LSEG*</td>
<td>utils/geo_decls.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>Oid</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oidvector</td>
<td>oidvector*</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td>PATH*</td>
<td>utils/geo_decls.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
<td>POINT*</td>
<td>utils/geo_decls.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>text*</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tid</td>
<td>ItemPtr</td>
<td>storage/itemptr.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>TimeADT</td>
<td>utils/date.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time with time zone</td>
<td>TimeTzADT</td>
<td>utils/date.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>Timestamp</td>
<td>datatype/timestamp.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>varchar</td>
<td>VarChar*</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xid</td>
<td>TransactionId</td>
<td>postgres.h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now that we've gone over all of the possible structures for base types, we can show some examples of real functions.

### 36.10.3. Version 1 Calling Conventions

The version-1 calling convention relies on macros to suppress most of the complexity of passing arguments and results. The C declaration of a version-1 function is always:

`Datum funcname(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)`
In addition, the macro call:

```c
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(funcname);
```

must appear in the same source file. (Conventionally, it's written just before the function itself.) This macro call is not needed for internal-language functions, since Postgres Pro assumes that all internal functions use the version-1 convention. It is, however, required for dynamically-loaded functions.

In a version-1 function, each actual argument is fetched using a `PG_GETARG_xxx()` macro that corresponds to the argument's data type. (In non-strict functions there needs to be a previous check about argument null-ness using `PG_ARGISNULL();` see below.) The result is returned using a `PG_RETURN_xxx()` macro for the return type. `PG_GETARG_xxx()` takes as its argument the number of the function argument to fetch, where the count starts at 0. `PG_RETURN_xxx()` takes as its argument the actual value to return.

Here are some examples using the version-1 calling convention:

```c
#include "postgres.h"
#include <string.h>
#include "fmgr.h"
#include "utils/geo_decls.h"

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

/* by value */
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(add_one);

Datum
add_one(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    int32   arg = PG_GETARG_INT32(0);
    PG_RETURN_INT32(arg + 1);
}

/* by reference, fixed length */
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(add_one_float8);

Datum
add_one_float8(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    /* The macros for FLOAT8 hide its pass-by-reference nature. */
    float8   arg = PG_GETARG_FLOAT8(0);
    PG_RETURN_FLOAT8(arg + 1.0);
}

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(makepoint);

Datum
makepoint(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    /* Here, the pass-by-reference nature of Point is not hidden. */
    Point    *pointx = PG_GETARG_POINT_P(0);
    Point    *pointy = PG_GETARG_POINT_P(1);
    Point    *new_point = (Point *) palloc(sizeof(Point));
```
Supposing that the above code has been prepared in file \texttt{funcs.c} and compiled into a shared object, we could define the functions to Postgres Pro with commands like this:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE FUNCTION add_one(integer) RETURNS integer
  AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'add_one'
  LANGUAGE C STRICT;
\end{verbatim}
-- note overloading of SQL function name "add_one"
CREATE FUNCTION add_one(double precision) RETURNS double precision
    AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'add_one_float8'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION makepoint(point, point) RETURNS point
    AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'makepoint'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION copytext(text) RETURNS text
    AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'copytext'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION concat_text(text, text) RETURNS text
    AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'concat_text'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;

Here, DIRECTORY stands for the directory of the shared library file (for instance the Postgres Pro tutorial directory, which contains the code for the examples used in this section). (Better style would be to use just 'funcs' in the AS clause, after having added DIRECTORY to the search path. In any case, we can omit the system-specific extension for a shared library, commonly .so.)

Notice that we have specified the functions as "strict", meaning that the system should automatically assume a null result if any input value is null. By doing this, we avoid having to check for null inputs in the function code. Without this, we'd have to check for null values explicitly, using PG_ARGISNULL().

The macro PG_ARGISNULL(n) allows a function to test whether each input is null. (Of course, doing this is only necessary in functions not declared "strict".) As with the PG_GETARG_xxx() macros, the input arguments are counted beginning at zero. Note that one should refrain from executing PG_GETARG_xxx() until one has verified that the argument isn't null. To return a null result, execute PG_RETURN_NULL(); this works in both strict and nonstrict functions.

At first glance, the version-1 coding conventions might appear to be just pointless obscurantism, compared to using plain C calling conventions. They do however allow us to deal with NULLable arguments/return values, and “toasted” (compressed or out-of-line) values.

Other options provided by the version-1 interface are two variants of the PG_GETARG_xxx() macros. The first of these, PG_GETARG_xxx_COPY(), guarantees to return a copy of the specified argument that is safe for writing into. (The normal macros will sometimes return a pointer to a value that is physically stored in a table, which must not be written to. Using the PG_GETARG_xxx_COPY() macros guarantees a writable result.) The second variant consists of the PG_GETARG_xxx_SLICE() macros which take three arguments. The first is the number of the function argument (as above). The second and third are the offset and length of the segment to be returned. Offsets are counted from zero, and a negative length requests that the remainder of the value be returned. These macros provide more efficient access to parts of large values in the case where they have storage type “external”. (The storage type of a column can be specified using ALTER TABLE tablename ALTER COLUMN colname SET STORAGE storagetype. storagetype is one of plain, external, extended, or main.)

Finally, the version-1 function call conventions make it possible to return set results (Section 36.10.8) and implement trigger functions (Chapter 37) and procedural-language call handlers (Chapter 52).

36.10.4. Writing Code

Before we turn to the more advanced topics, we should discuss some coding rules for Postgres Pro C-language functions. While it might be possible to load functions written in languages other than C into Postgres Pro, this is usually difficult (when it is possible at all) because other languages, such as C++, FORTRAN, or Pascal often do not follow the same calling convention as C. That is, other languages do not pass argument and return values between functions in the same way. For this reason, we will assume that your C-language functions are actually written in C.
The basic rules for writing and building C functions are as follows:

- Use `pg_config --includedir-server` to find out where the Postgres Pro server header files are installed on your system (or the system that your users will be running on).

- Compiling and linking your code so that it can be dynamically loaded into Postgres Pro always requires special flags. See Section 36.10.5 for a detailed explanation of how to do it for your particular operating system.

- Remember to define a “magic block” for your shared library, as described in Section 36.10.1.

- When allocating memory, use the Postgres Pro functions `palloc` and `pfree` instead of the corresponding C library functions `malloc` and `free`. The memory allocated by `palloc` will be freed automatically at the end of each transaction, preventing memory leaks.

- Always zero the bytes of your structures using `memset` (or allocate them with `palloc0` in the first place). Even if you assign to each field of your structure, there might be alignment padding (holes in the structure) that contain garbage values. Without this, it's difficult to support hash indexes or hash joins, as you must pick out only the significant bits of your data structure to compute a hash. The planner also sometimes relies on comparing constants via bitwise equality, so you can get undesirable planning results if logically-equivalent values aren't bitwise equal.

- Most of the internal Postgres Pro types are declared in `postgres.h`, while the function manager interfaces (`PG_FUNCTION_ARGS`, etc.) are in `fmgr.h`, so you will need to include at least these two files. For portability reasons it's best to include `postgres.h first, before any other system or user header files. Including `postgres.h` will also include `elog.h` and `palloc.h` for you.

- Symbol names defined within object files must not conflict with each other or with symbols defined in the Postgres Pro server executable. You will have to rename your functions or variables if you get error messages to this effect.

### 36.10.5. Compiling and Linking Dynamically-Loaded Functions

Before you are able to use your Postgres Pro extension functions written in C, they must be compiled and linked in a special way to produce a file that can be dynamically loaded by the server. To be precise, a shared library needs to be created.

For information beyond what is contained in this section you should read the documentation of your operating system, in particular the manual pages for the C compiler, `cc`, and the link editor, `ld`. In addition, the Postgres Pro source code contains several working examples in the `contrib` directory. If you rely on these examples you will make your modules dependent on the availability of the Postgres Pro source code, however.

Creating shared libraries is generally analogous to linking executables: first the source files are compiled into object files, then the object files are linked together. The object files need to be created as position-independent code (PIC), which conceptually means that they can be placed at an arbitrary location in memory when they are loaded by the executable. (Object files intended for executables are usually not compiled that way.) The command to link a shared library contains special flags to distinguish it from linking an executable (at least in theory — on some systems the practice is much uglier).

In the following examples we assume that your source code is in a file `foo.c` and we will create a shared library `foo.so`. The intermediate object file will be called `foo.o` unless otherwise noted. A shared library can contain more than one object file, but we only use one here.

#### FreeBSD

The compiler flag to create PIC is `-fpIC`. To create shared libraries the compiler flag is `-shared`.

```bash
gcc -fpIC -c foo.c
```

```bash
gcc -shared -o foo.so foo.o
```

This is applicable as of version 3.0 of FreeBSD.
HP-UX

The compiler flag of the system compiler to create PIC is +z. When using GCC it’s -fPIC. The linker flag for shared libraries is -b. So:

cc +z -c foo.c
or:
gcc -fPIC -c foo.c
and then:
ld -b -o foo.sl foo.o

HP-UX uses the extension .sl for shared libraries, unlike most other systems.

Linux

The compiler flag to create PIC is -fPIC. The compiler flag to create a shared library is -shared. A complete example looks like this:

cc -fPIC -c foo.c
cc -shared -o foo.so foo.o

macOS

Here is an example. It assumes the developer tools are installed.

cc -c foo.c
cc -bundle -flat_namespace -undefined suppress -o foo.so foo.o

NetBSD

The compiler flag to create PIC is -fPIC. For ELF systems, the compiler with the flag -shared is used to link shared libraries. On the older non-ELF systems, ld -Bshareable is used.

gcc -fPIC -c foo.c
gcc -shared -o foo.so foo.o

OpenBSD

The compiler flag to create PIC is -KPIC with the Sun compiler and -fPIC with GCC. To link shared libraries, the compiler option is -G with either compiler or alternatively -shared with GCC.

cc -KPIC -c foo.c
cc -G -o foo.so foo.o
or
gcc -fPIC -c foo.c
gcc -G -o foo.so foo.o

Tip

If this is too complicated for you, you should consider using GNU Libtool, which hides the platform differences behind a uniform interface.
Extending SQL

The resulting shared library file can then be loaded into Postgres Pro. When specifying the file name to the `CREATE FUNCTION` command, one must give it the name of the shared library file, not the intermediate object file. Note that the system's standard shared-library extension (usually `.so` or `.sl`) can be omitted from the `CREATE FUNCTION` command, and normally should be omitted for best portability.

Refer back to Section 36.10.1 about where the server expects to find the shared library files.

### 36.10.6. Composite-Type Arguments

Composite types do not have a fixed layout like C structures. Instances of a composite type can contain null fields. In addition, composite types that are part of an inheritance hierarchy can have different fields than other members of the same inheritance hierarchy. Therefore, Postgres Pro provides a function interface for accessing fields of composite types from C.

Suppose we want to write a function to answer the query:

```sql
SELECT name, c_overpaid(emp, 1500) AS overpaid
FROM emp
WHERE name = 'Bill' OR name = 'Sam';
```

Using the version-1 calling conventions, we can define `c_overpaid` as:

```c
#include "postgres.h"
#include "executor/executor.h"  /* for GetAttributeByName() */

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(c_overpaid);

Datum c_overpaid(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    HeapTupleHeader  t = PG_GETARG_HEAPTUPLEHEADER(0);
    int32            limit = PG_GETARG_INT32(1);
    bool isnull;
    Datum salary;

    salary = GetAttributeByName(t, "salary", &isnull);
    if (isnull)
        PG_RETURN_BOOL(false);
    /* Alternatively, we might prefer to do PG_RETURN_NULL() for null salary. */

    PG_RETURN_BOOL(DatumGetInt32(salary) > limit);
}
```

`GetAttributeByName` is the Postgres Pro system function that returns attributes out of the specified row. It has three arguments: the argument of type `HeapTupleHeader` passed into the function, the name of the desired attribute, and a return parameter that tells whether the attribute is null. `GetAttributeByName` returns a `Datum` value that you can convert to the proper data type by using the appropriate `DatumGetXXX()` macro. Note that the return value is meaningless if the null flag is set; always check the null flag before trying to do anything with the result.

There is also `GetAttributeByNum`, which selects the target attribute by column number instead of name.

The following command declares the function `c_overpaid` in SQL:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION c_overpaid(emp, integer) RETURNS boolean
    AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'c_overpaid'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

Notice we have used `STRICT` so that we did not have to check whether the input arguments were NULL.
36.10.7. Returning Rows (Composite Types)

To return a row or composite-type value from a C-language function, you can use a special API that provides macros and functions to hide most of the complexity of building composite data types. To use this API, the source file must include:

```c
#include "funcapi.h"
```

There are two ways you can build a composite data value (henceforth a “tuple”): you can build it from an array of Datum values, or from an array of C strings that can be passed to the input conversion functions of the tuple's column data types. In either case, you first need to obtain or construct a `TupleDesc` descriptor for the tuple structure. When working with Datums, you pass the `TupleDesc` to `BlessTupleDesc`, and then call `heap_form_tuple` for each row. When working with C strings, you pass the `TupleDesc` to `TupleDescGetAttInMetadata`, and then call `BuildTupleFromCStrings` for each row. In the case of a function returning a set of tuples, the setup steps can all be done once during the first call of the function.

Several helper functions are available for setting up the needed `TupleDesc`. The recommended way to do this in most functions returning composite values is to call:

```c
TypeFuncClass get_call_result_type(FunctionCallInfo fcinfo,
                                   Oid *resultTypeId,
                                   TupleDesc *resultTupleDesc)
```

passing the same `fcinfo` struct passed to the calling function itself. (This of course requires that you use the version-1 calling conventions.) `resultTypeId` can be specified as `NULL` or as the address of a local variable to receive the function's result type OID. `resultTupleDesc` should be the address of a local `TupleDesc` variable. Check that the result is `TYPEFUNC_COMPOSITE`; if so, `resultTupleDesc` has been filled with the needed `TupleDesc`. (If it is not, you can report an error along the lines of “function returning record called in context that cannot accept type record”.)

### Tip

`get_call_result_type` can resolve the actual type of a polymorphic function result; so it is useful in functions that return scalar polymorphic results, not only functions that return composites. The `resultTypeId` output is primarily useful for functions returning polymorphic scalars.

### Note

`get_call_result_type` has a sibling `get_expr_result_type`, which can be used to resolve the expected output type for a function call represented by an expression tree. This can be used when trying to determine the result type from outside the function itself. There is also `get_func_result_type`, which can be used when only the function's OID is available. However these functions are not able to deal with functions declared to return `record`, and `get_call_result_type` cannot resolve polymorphic types, so you should preferentially use `get_call_result_type`.

Older, now-deprecated functions for obtaining `TupleDesc` are:

```c
TupleDesc RelationNameGetTupleDesc(const char *relname)
```

to get a `TupleDesc` for the row type of a named relation, and:

```c
TupleDesc TypeGetTupleDesc(Oid typeoid, List *colaliases)
```

to get a `TupleDesc` based on a type OID. This can be used to get a `TupleDesc` for a base or composite type. It will not work for a function that returns `record`, however, and it cannot resolve polymorphic types.

Once you have a `TupleDesc`, call:
Extending SQL

BlessTupleDesc(TupleDesc tupdesc)
if you plan to work with Datums, or:

TupleDescGetAttInMetadata(TupleDesc tupdesc)
if you plan to work with C strings. If you are writing a function returning set, you can save the results of
these functions in the FuncCallContext structure — use the tuple_desc or attinmeta field respectively.

When working with Datums, use:

heap_form_tuple(TupleDesc tupdesc, Datum *values, bool *isnull)
to build a HeapTuple given user data in Datum form.

When working with C strings, use:

BuildTupleFromCStrings(AttInMetadata *attinmeta, char **values)
to build a HeapTuple given user data in C string form. values is an array of C strings, one for each
attribute of the return row. Each C string should be in the form expected by the input function of the
attribute data type. In order to return a null value for one of the attributes, the corresponding pointer in
the values array should be set to NULL. This function will need to be called again for each row you return.

Once you have built a tuple to return from your function, it must be converted into a Datum. Use:

HeapTupleGetDatum(HeapTuple tuple)
to convert a HeapTuple into a valid Datum. This Datum can be returned directly if you intend to return
just a single row, or it can be used as the current return value in a set-returning function.

An example appears in the next section.

36.10.8. Returning Sets

C-language functions have two options for returning sets (multiple rows). In one method, called
ValuePerCall mode, a set-returning function is called repeatedly (passing the same arguments each time)
and it returns one new row on each call, until it has no more rows to return and signals that by returning
NULL. The set-returning function (SRF) must therefore save enough state across calls to remember
what it was doing and return the correct next item on each call. In the other method, called Materialize
mode, an SRF fills and returns a tuplestore object containing its entire result; then only one call occurs
for the whole result, and no inter-call state is needed.

When using ValuePerCall mode, it is important to remember that the query is not guaranteed to be
run to completion; that is, due to options such as LIMIT, the executor might stop making calls to the
set-returning function before all rows have been fetched. This means it is not safe to perform cleanup
activities in the last call, because that might not ever happen. It’s recommended to use Materialize mode
for functions that need access to external resources, such as file descriptors.

The remainder of this section documents a set of helper macros that are commonly used (though not
required to be used) for SRFs using ValuePerCall mode.

To use the ValuePerCall support macros described here, include funcapi.h. These macros work with a
structure FuncCallContext that contains the state that needs to be saved across calls. Within the calling
SRF, fcinfo->flinfo->fn_extra is used to hold a pointer to FuncCallContext across calls. The macros
automatically fill that field on first use, and expect to find the same pointer there on subsequent uses.

typedef struct FuncCallContext
{
    /*
    * Number of times we've been called before
    *
    * call_cntr is initialized to 0 for you by SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT(), and
    * incremented for you every time SRF_RETURN_NEXT() is called.
    */
func call context;

/*
 * OPTIONAL maximum number of calls
 * max_calls is here for convenience only and setting it is optional.
 * If not set, you must provide alternative means to know when the
 * function is done.
 */
uint64 max_calls;

/*
 * OPTIONAL pointer to miscellaneous user-provided context information
 * user_fctx is for use as a pointer to your own data to retain
 * arbitrary context information between calls of your function.
 */
void **user_fctx;

/*
 * OPTIONAL pointer to struct containing attribute type input metadata
 * attinmeta is for use when returning tuples (i.e., composite data types)
 * and is not used when returning base data types. It is only needed
 * if you intend to use BuildTupleFromCStrings() to create the return
 * tuple.
 */
AttInMetadata **attinmeta;

/*
 * memory context used for structures that must live for multiple calls
 * multi_call_memory_ctx is set by SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT() for you, and used
 * by SRF_RETURN_DONE() for cleanup. It is the most appropriate memory
 * context for any memory that is to be reused across multiple calls
 * of the SRF.
 */
MemoryContext **multi_call_memory_ctx;

/*
 * OPTIONAL pointer to struct containing tuple description
 * tuple_desc is for use when returning tuples (i.e., composite data types)
 * and is only needed if you are going to build the tuples with
 * heap_form_tuple() rather than with BuildTupleFromCStrings(). Note that
 * the TupleDesc pointer stored here should usually have been run through
 * BlessTupleDesc() first.
 */
TupleDesc **tuple_desc;

} FuncCallContext;

The macros to be used by an SRF using this infrastructure are:

SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL()

Use this to determine if your function is being called for the first or a subsequent time. On the first
call (only), call:

SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT()
to initialize the FuncCallContext. On every function call, including the first, call:

SRF_PERCALL_SETUP()

to set up for using the FuncCallContext.

If your function has data to return in the current call, use:

SRF_RETURN_NEXT(funcctx, result)

to return it to the caller. (result must be of type Datum, either a single value or a tuple prepared as described above.) Finally, when your function is finished returning data, use:

SRF_RETURN_DONE(funcctx)

to clean up and end the SRF.

The memory context that is current when the SRF is called is a transient context that will be cleared between calls. This means that you do not need to call pfree on everything you allocated using palloc; it will go away anyway. However, if you want to allocate any data structures to live across calls, you need to put them somewhere else. The memory context referenced by multi_call_memory_ctx is a suitable location for any data that needs to survive until the SRF is finished running. In most cases, this means that you should switch into multi_call_memory_ctx while doing the first-call setup. Use funcctx->user_fctx to hold a pointer to any such cross-call data structures. (Data you allocate in multi_call_memory_ctx will go away automatically when the query ends, so it is not necessary to free that data manually, either.)

Warning

While the actual arguments to the function remain unchanged between calls, if you detoast the argument values (which is normally done transparently by the PG_GETARG_XXX macro) in the transient context then the detoasted copies will be freed on each cycle. Accordingly, if you keep references to such values in your user_fctx, you must either copy them into the multi_call_memory_ctx after detoasting, or ensure that you detoast the values only in that context.

A complete pseudo-code example looks like the following:

Datum

my_set_returning_function(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    FuncCallContext  *funcctx;
    Datum             result;
    further declarations as needed

    if (SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL())
    {
        MemoryContext oldcontext;

        funcctx = SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT();
        oldcontext = MemoryContextSwitchTo(funcctx->multi_call_memory_ctx);
        /* One-time setup code appears here: */
        user code
        if returning composite
            build TupleDesc, and perhaps AttInMetadata
        endif returning composite
        user code
        MemoryContextSwitchTo(oldcontext);
    }
/* Each-time setup code appears here: */
user code
funcctx = SRF_PERCALL_SETUP();
user code

/* this is just one way we might test whether we are done: */
if (funcctx->call_cntr < funcctx->max_calls)
{
    /* Here we want to return another item: */
    user code
    obtain result Datum
    SRF_RETURN_NEXT(funcctx, result);
}
else
{
    /* Here we are done returning items, so just report that fact. */
    /* (Resist the temptation to put cleanup code here.) */
    SRF_RETURN_DONE(funcctx);
}

A complete example of a simple SRF returning a composite type looks like:

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(retcomposite);

Datum
retcomposite(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    FuncCallContext *funcctx;
    int call_cntr;
    int max_calls;
    TupleDesc tupdesc;
    AttInMetadata *attinmeta;

    /* stuff done only on the first call of the function */
    if (SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL())
    {
        MemoryContext oldcontext;

        /* create a function context for cross-call persistence */
        funcctx = SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT();

        /* switch to memory context appropriate for multiple function calls */
        oldcontext = MemoryContextSwitchTo(funcctx->multi_call_memory_ctx);

        /* total number of tuples to be returned */
        funcctx->max_calls = PG_GETARG_UINT32(0);

        /* Build a tuple descriptor for our result type */
        if (get_call_result_type(fcinfo, NULL, &tupdesc) != TYPEFUNC_COMPOSITE)
            ereport(ERROR,
                {errcode(ERRCODE_FEATURE_NOT_SUPPORTED),
                errmsg("function returning record called in context "
                    "that cannot accept type record")});

        /* generate attribute metadata needed later to produce tuples from raw */
        /* C strings */
    }
attinmeta = TupleDescGetAttInMetadata(tupdesc);
funcctx->attinmeta = attinmeta;
MemoryContextSwitchTo(oldcontext);
}

*>* stuff done on every call of the function */
funcctx = SRF_PERCALL_SETUP();
call_cntr = funcctx->call_cntr;
max_calls = funcctx->max_calls;
attinmeta = funcctx->attinmeta;

if (call_cntr < max_calls)    /* do when there is more left to send */
{
    char       **values;
    HeapTuple    tuple;
    Datum        result;

    /*
     * Prepare a values array for building the returned tuple.
     * This should be an array of C strings which will
     * be processed later by the type input functions.
     */
    values = (char **) palloc(3 * sizeof(char *));
    values[0] = (char *) palloc(16 * sizeof(char));
    values[1] = (char *) palloc(16 * sizeof(char));
    values[2] = (char *) palloc(16 * sizeof(char));

    snprintf(values[0], 16, "%d", 1 * PG_GETARG_INT32(1));
    snprintf(values[1], 16, "%d", 2 * PG_GETARG_INT32(1));
    snprintf(values[2], 16, "%d", 3 * PG_GETARG_INT32(1));

    /* build a tuple */
    tuple = BuildTupleFromCStrings(attinmeta, values);

    /* make the tuple into a datum */
    result = HeapTupleGetDatum(tuple);

    /* clean up (this is not really necessary) */
    pfree(values[0]);
    pfree(values[1]);
    pfree(values[2]);
    pfree(values);

    SRF_RETURN_NEXT(funcctx, result);
} else    /* do when there is no more left */
{
    SRF_RETURN_DONE(funcctx);
}

One way to declare this function in SQL is:

CREATE TYPE __retcomposite AS (f1 integer, f2 integer, f3 integer);
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION retcomposite(integer, integer) 
    RETURNS SETOF __retcomposite 
    AS 'filename', 'retcomposite' 
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

A different way is to use OUT parameters:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION retcomposite(IN integer, IN integer, 
    OUT f1 integer, OUT f2 integer, OUT f3 integer) 
    RETURNS SETOF record 
    AS 'filename', 'retcomposite' 
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

Notice that in this method the output type of the function is formally an anonymous record type.

### 36.10.9. Polymorphic Arguments and Return Types

C-language functions can be declared to accept and return the polymorphic types described in Section 36.2.5. When a function's arguments or return types are defined as polymorphic types, the function author cannot know in advance what data type it will be called with, or need to return. There are two routines provided in fmgr.h to allow a version-1 C function to discover the actual data types of its arguments and the type it is expected to return. The routines are called get_fn_expr_rettype(FmgrInfo *flinfo) and get_fn_expr_argtype(FmgrInfo *flinfo, int argnum). They return the result or argument type OID, or InvalidOid if the information is not available. The structure flinfo is normally accessed as fcinfo->flinfo. The parameter argnum is zero based.

get_call_result_type can also be used as an alternative to get_fn_expr_rettype. There is also get_fn_expr_variadic, which can be used to find out whether variadic arguments have been merged into an array. This is primarily useful for VARIADIC "any" functions, since such merging will always have occurred for variadic functions taking ordinary array types.

For example, suppose we want to write a function to accept a single element of any type, and return a one-dimensional array of that type:

```c
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(make_array);
Datum make_array(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    ArrayType  *result;
    Oid         element_type = get_fn_expr_argtype(fcinfo->flinfo, 0);
    Datum       element;
    bool        isnull;
    int16       typlen;
    bool        typbyval;
    char        typalign;
    int         ndims;
    int         dims[MAXDIM];
    int         lbs[MAXDIM];

    if (!OidIsValid(element_type))
        elog(ERROR, "could not determine data type of input");

    /* get the provided element, being careful in case it's NULL */
    isnull = PG_ARGISNULL(0);
    if (isnull)
        element = (Datum) 0;
    else
        element = PG_GETARG_DATUM(0);

    /* we have one dimension */
    ndims = 1;
```
Extending SQL

```c
/* and one element */
dims[0] = 1;
/* and lower bound is 1 */
lbs[0] = 1;
/* get required info about the element type */
get_typelenbyvalalign(element_type, &typlen, &typbyval, &typalign);
/* now build the array */
result = construct_md_array(&element, &isnull, ndims, dims, lbs,
                          element_type, typlen, typbyval, typalign);
PG_RETURN_ARRAYTYPE_P(result);
}

The following command declares the function `make_array` in SQL:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION make_array(anyelement) RETURNS anyarray
  AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'make_array'
  LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE;
```

There is a variant of polymorphism that is only available to C-language functions: they can be declared
to take parameters of type "any". (Note that this type name must be double-quoted, since it's also
an SQL reserved word.) This works like `anyelement` except that it does not constrain different "any"
arguments to be the same type, nor do they help determine the function's result type. A C-language
function can also declare its final parameter to be VARIADIC "any". This will match one or more actual
arguments of any type (not necessarily the same type). These arguments will not be gathered into an
array as happens with normal variadic functions; they will just be passed to the function separately. The
PG_NARGS() macro and the methods described above must be used to determine the number of actual
arguments and their types when using this feature. Also, users of such a function might wish to use the
VARIADIC keyword in their function call, with the expectation that the function would treat the array
elements as separate arguments. The function itself must implement that behavior if wanted, after using
get_fn_expr_variadic to detect that the actual argument was marked with VARIADIC.

### 36.10.10. Shared Memory and LWLocks

Add-ins can reserve LWLocks and an allocation of shared memory on server startup. The add-in's shared
library must be preloaded by specifying it in `shared_preload_libraries`. Shared memory is reserved by
calling:

```c
void RequestAddinShmemSpace(int size)
from your _PG_init function.
```

LWLocks are reserved by calling:

```c
void RequestNamedLWLockTranche(const char *tranche_name, int num_lwlocks)
from _PG_init. This will ensure that an array of num_lwlocks LWLocks is available under the name
tranche_name. Use GetNamedLWLockTranche to get a pointer to this array.
```

To avoid possible race-conditions, each backend should use the LWLock `AddinShmemInitLock` when
connecting to and initializing its allocation of shared memory, as shown here:

```c
static mystruct *ptr = NULL;
if (!ptr)
{
    bool    found;
    LWLockAcquire(AddinShmemInitLock, LW_EXCLUSIVE);
    LWLockRelease(AddinShmemInitLock);
}
```
ptr = ShmemInitStruct("my struct name", size, &found);
if (!found)
{
    initialize contents of shmem area;
    acquire any requested LWLocks using:
    ptr->locks = GetNamedLWLockTranche("my tranche name");
}
LWLockRelease(AddinShmemInitLock);

36.10.11. Using C++ for Extensibility

Although the Postgres Pro backend is written in C, it is possible to write extensions in C++ if these guidelines are followed:

- All functions accessed by the backend must present a C interface to the backend; these C functions can then call C++ functions. For example, extern C linkage is required for backend-accessed functions. This is also necessary for any functions that are passed as pointers between the backend and C++ code.

- Free memory using the appropriate deallocation method. For example, most backend memory is allocated using `palloc()`, so use `pfree()` to free it. Using C++ `delete` in such cases will fail.

- Prevent exceptions from propagating into the C code (use a catch-all block at the top level of all extern C functions). This is necessary even if the C++ code does not explicitly throw any exceptions, because events like out-of-memory can still throw exceptions. Any exceptions must be caught and appropriate errors passed back to the C interface. If possible, compile C++ with `-fno-exceptions` to eliminate exceptions entirely; in such cases, you must check for failures in your C++ code, e.g., check for NULL returned by `new()`.

- If calling backend functions from C++ code, be sure that the C++ call stack contains only plain old data structures (POD). This is necessary because backend errors generate a distant `longjmp()` that does not properly unroll a C++ call stack with non-POD objects.

In summary, it is best to place C++ code behind a wall of extern C functions that interface to the backend, and avoid exception, memory, and call stack leakage.

36.11. Function Optimization Information

By default, a function is just a “black box” that the database system knows very little about the behavior of. However, that means that queries using the function may be executed much less efficiently than they could be. It is possible to supply additional knowledge that helps the planner optimize function calls.

Some basic facts can be supplied by declarative annotations provided in the `CREATE FUNCTION` command. Most important of these is the function's `volatility category` (IMMUTABLE, STABLE, or VOLATILE); one should always be careful to specify this correctly when defining a function. The parallel safety property (PARALLEL UNSAFE, PARALLEL RESTRICTED, or PARALLEL SAFE) must also be specified if you hope to use the function in parallelized queries. It can also be useful to specify the function's estimated execution cost, and/or the number of rows a set-returning function is estimated to return. However, the declarative way of specifying those two facts only allows specifying a constant value, which is often inadequate.

It is also possible to attach a planner support function to an SQL-callable function (called its `target function`), and thereby provide knowledge about the target function that is too complex to be represented declaratively. Planner support functions have to be written in C (although their target functions might not be), so this is an advanced feature that relatively few people will use.

A planner support function must have the SQL signature

```
supportfn(internal) returns internal
```

It is attached to its target function by specifying the `SUPPORT` clause when creating the target function.
Here we provide an overview of what planner support functions can do. The set of possible requests to a support function is extensible, so more things might be possible in future versions.

Some function calls can be simplified during planning based on properties specific to the function. For example, \( \text{int4mul}(n, 1) \) could be simplified to just \( n \). This type of transformation can be performed by a planner support function, by having it implement the SupportRequestSimplify request type. The support function will be called for each instance of its target function found in a query parse tree. If it finds that the particular call can be simplified into some other form, it can build and return a parse tree representing that expression. This will automatically work for operators based on the function, too — in the example just given, \( n \times 1 \) would also be simplified to \( n \). (But note that this is just an example; this particular optimization is not actually performed by standard Postgres Pro.) We make no guarantee that Postgres Pro will never call the target function in cases that the support function could simplify. Ensure rigorous equivalence between the simplified expression and an actual execution of the target function.

For target functions that return boolean, it is often useful to estimate the fraction of rows that will be selected by a WHERE clause using that function. This can be done by a support function that implements the SupportRequestSelectivity request type.

If the target function’s run time is highly dependent on its inputs, it may be useful to provide a non-constant cost estimate for it. This can be done by a support function that implements the SupportRequestCost request type.

For target functions that return sets, it is often useful to provide a non-constant estimate for the number of rows that will be returned. This can be done by a support function that implements the SupportRequestRows request type.

For target functions that return boolean, it may be possible to convert a function call appearing in WHERE into an indexable operator clause or clauses. The converted clauses might be exactly equivalent to the function’s condition, or they could be somewhat weaker (that is, they might accept some values that the function condition does not). In the latter case the index condition is said to be lossy; it can still be used to scan an index, but the function call will have to be executed for each row returned by the index to see if it really passes the WHERE condition or not. To create such conditions, the support function must implement the SupportRequestIndexCondition request type.

### 36.12. User-Defined Aggregates

Aggregate functions in Postgres Pro are defined in terms of state values and state transition functions. That is, an aggregate operates using a state value that is updated as each successive input row is processed. To define a new aggregate function, one selects a data type for the state value, an initial value for the state, and a state transition function. The state transition function takes the previous state value and the aggregate’s input value(s) for the current row, and returns a new state value. A final function can also be specified, in case the desired result of the aggregate is different from the data that needs to be kept in the running state value. The final function takes the ending state value and returns whatever is wanted as the aggregate result. In principle, the transition and final functions are just ordinary functions that could also be used outside the context of the aggregate. (In practice, it’s often helpful for performance reasons to create specialized transition functions that can only work when called as part of an aggregate.)

Thus, in addition to the argument and result data types seen by a user of the aggregate, there is an internal state-value data type that might be different from both the argument and result types.

If we define an aggregate that does not use a final function, we have an aggregate that computes a running function of the column values from each row. \text{sum} is an example of this kind of aggregate. \text{sum} starts at zero and always adds the current row’s value to its running total. For example, if we want to make a \text{sum} aggregate to work on a data type for complex numbers, we only need the addition function for that data type. The aggregate definition would be:

```sql
CREATE AGGREGATE sum (complex) 
```
Extending SQL

```sql
sfunc = complex_add,
stype = complex,
initcond = '(0,0)'
);
```

which we might use like this:

```sql
SELECT sum(a) FROM test_complex;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(34, 53.9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Notice that we are relying on function overloading: there is more than one aggregate named `sum`, but Postgres Pro can figure out which kind of sum applies to a column of type `complex`.)

The above definition of `sum` will return zero (the initial state value) if there are no nonnull input values.

Perhaps we want to return null in that case instead — the SQL standard expects `sum` to behave that way.

We can do this simply by omitting the `initcond` phrase, so that the initial state value is null. Ordinarily this would mean that the `sfunc` would need to check for a null state-value input. But for `sum` and some other simple aggregates like `max` and `min`, it is sufficient to insert the first nonnull input value into the state variable and then start applying the transition function at the second nonnull input value. Postgres Pro will do that automatically if the initial state value is null and the transition function is marked “strict” (i.e., not to be called for null inputs).

Another bit of default behavior for a “strict” transition function is that the previous state value is retained unchanged whenever a null input value is encountered. Thus, null values are ignored. If you need some other behavior for null inputs, do not declare your transition function as strict; instead code it to test for null inputs and do whatever is needed.

`avg` (average) is a more complex example of an aggregate. It requires two pieces of running state: the sum of the inputs and the count of the number of inputs. The final result is obtained by dividing these quantities. Average is typically implemented by using an array as the state value. For example, the built-in implementation of `avg(float8)` looks like:

```sql
CREATE AGGREGATE avg (float8)
(
    sfunc = float8_accum,
    stype = float8[],
    finalfunc = float8_avg,
    initcond = '{0,0,0}'
);
```

**Note**

`float8_accum` requires a three-element array, not just two elements, because it accumulates the sum of squares as well as the sum and count of the inputs. This is so that it can be used for some other aggregates as well as `avg`.

Aggregate function calls in SQL allow `DISTINCT` and `ORDER BY` options that control which rows are fed to the aggregate's transition function and in what order. These options are implemented behind the scenes and are not the concern of the aggregate's support functions.

For further details see the `CREATE AGGREGATE` command.

### 36.12.1. Moving-Aggregate Mode

Aggregate functions can optionally support *moving-aggregate mode*, which allows substantially faster execution of aggregate functions within windows with moving frame starting points. (See Section 3.5
and Section 4.2.8 for information about use of aggregate functions as window functions.) The basic idea is that in addition to a normal "forward" transition function, the aggregate provides an inverse transition function, which allows rows to be removed from the aggregate's running state value when they exit the window frame. For example a sum aggregate, which uses addition as the forward transition function, would use subtraction as the inverse transition function. Without an inverse transition function, the window function mechanism must recalculate the aggregate from scratch each time the frame starting point moves, resulting in run time proportional to the number of input rows times the average frame length. With an inverse transition function, the run time is only proportional to the number of input rows.

The inverse transition function is passed the current state value and the aggregate input value(s) for the earliest row included in the current state. It must reconstruct what the state value would have been if the given input row had never been aggregated, but only the rows following it. This sometimes requires that the forward transition function keep more state than is needed for plain aggregation mode. Therefore, the moving-aggregate mode uses a completely separate implementation from the plain mode: it has its own state data type, its own forward transition function, and its own final function if needed. These can be the same as the plain mode's data type and functions, if there is no need for extra state.

As an example, we could extend the sum aggregate given above to support moving-aggregate mode like this:

```sql
CREATE AGGREGATE sum (complex)
(
    sfunc = complex_add,
    stype = complex,
    initcond = '(0,0)',
    msfunc = complex_add,
    minvfunc = complex_sub,
    mstype = complex,
    minitcond = '(0,0)'
);
```

The parameters whose names begin with `m` define the moving-aggregate implementation. Except for the inverse transition function `minvfunc`, they correspond to the plain-aggregate parameters without `m`.

The forward transition function for moving-aggregate mode is not allowed to return null as the new state value. If the inverse transition function returns null, this is taken as an indication that the inverse function cannot reverse the state calculation for this particular input, and so the aggregate calculation will be redone from scratch for the current frame starting position. This convention allows moving-aggregate mode to be used in situations where there are some infrequent cases that are impractical to reverse out of the running state value. The inverse transition function can “punt” on these cases, and yet still come out ahead so long as it can work for most cases. As an example, an aggregate working with floating-point numbers might choose to punt when a NaN (not a number) input has to be removed from the running state value.

When writing moving-aggregate support functions, it is important to be sure that the inverse transition function can reconstruct the correct state value exactly. Otherwise there might be user-visible differences in results depending on whether the moving-aggregate mode is used. An example of an aggregate for which adding an inverse transition function seems easy at first, yet where this requirement cannot be met is sum over float4 or float8 inputs. A naive declaration of `sum(float8)` could be

```sql
CREATE AGGREGATE unsafe_sum (float8)
(
    stype = float8,
    sfunc = float8pl,
    mstype = float8,
    msfunc = float8pl,
    minvfunc = float8mi
);
```

This aggregate, however, can give wildly different results than it would have without the inverse transition function. For example, consider
SELECT unsafe_sum(x) OVER (ORDER BY n ROWS BETWEEN CURRENT ROW AND 1 FOLLOWING) 
FROM (VALUES (1, 1.0e20::float8),
(2, 1.0::float8)) AS v (n,x);

This query returns 0 as its second result, rather than the expected answer of 1. The cause is the limited precision of floating-point values: adding 1 to 1e20 results in 1e20 again, and so subtracting 1e20 from that yields 0, not 1. Note that this is a limitation of floating-point arithmetic in general, not a limitation of Postgres Pro.

36.12.2. Polymorphic and Variadic Aggregates

Aggregate functions can use polymorphic state transition functions or final functions, so that the same functions can be used to implement multiple aggregates. See Section 36.2.5 for an explanation of polymorphic functions. Going a step further, the aggregate function itself can be specified with polymorphic input type(s) and state type, allowing a single aggregate definition to serve for multiple input data types. Here is an example of a polymorphic aggregate:

CREATE AGGREGATE array_accum (anycompatible)
  (
    sfunc = array_append,
    stype = anycompatiblearray,
    initcond = '{}'
  );

Here, the actual state type for any given aggregate call is the array type having the actual input type as elements. The behavior of the aggregate is to concatenate all the inputs into an array of that type. (Note: the built-in aggregate array_agg provides similar functionality, with better performance than this definition would have.)

Here's the output using two different actual data types as arguments:

SELECT attrelid::regclass, array_accum(attname) 
FROM pg_attribute 
  WHERE attnum > 0 AND attrelid = 'pg_tablespace'::regclass 
  GROUP BY attrelid;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attrelid</th>
<th>array_accum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_tablespace</td>
<td>{spcname,spcowner,spcacl,spcoptions}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

SELECT attrelid::regclass, array_accum(atttypid::regtype) 
FROM pg_attribute 
  WHERE attnum > 0 AND attrelid = 'pg_tablespace'::regclass 
  GROUP BY attrelid;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attrelid</th>
<th>array_accum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_tablespace</td>
<td>{name,oid,aclitem[],text[]}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

Ordinarily, an aggregate function with a polymorphic result type has a polymorphic state type, as in the above example. This is necessary because otherwise the final function cannot be declared sensibly: it would need to have a polymorphic result type but no polymorphic argument type, which CREATE FUNCTION will reject on the grounds that the result type cannot be deduced from a call. But sometimes it is inconvenient to use a polymorphic state type. The most common case is where the aggregate support functions are to be written in C and the state type should be declared as internal because there is no SQL-level equivalent for it. To address this case, it is possible to declare the final function as taking extra “dummy” arguments that match the input arguments of the aggregate. Such dummy arguments
are always passed as null values since no specific value is available when the final function is called. Their only use is to allow a polymorphic final function's result type to be connected to the aggregate's input type(s). For example, the definition of the built-in aggregate array_agg is equivalent to

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION array_agg_transfn(internal, anynonarray) 
  RETURNS internal ...;
CREATE FUNCTION array_agg_finalfn(internal, anynonarray) 
  RETURNS anyarray ...;
CREATE AGGREGATE array_agg (anynonarray) 
  ( 
    sfunc = array_agg_transfn, 
    stype = internal, 
    finalfunc = array_agg_finalfn, 
    finalfunc_extra 
  );
```

Here, the `finalfunc_extra` option specifies that the final function receives, in addition to the state value, extra dummy argument(s) corresponding to the aggregate's input argument(s). The extra `anynonarray` argument allows the declaration of `array_agg_finalfn` to be valid.

An aggregate function can be made to accept a varying number of arguments by declaring its last argument as a `VARIADIC` array, in much the same fashion as for regular functions; see Section 36.5.6. The aggregate's transition function(s) must have the same array type as their last argument. The transition function(s) typically would also be marked `VARIADIC`, but this is not strictly required.

```
Note

Variadic aggregates are easily misused in connection with the `ORDER BY` option (see Section 4.2.7), since the parser cannot tell whether the wrong number of actual arguments have been given in such a combination. Keep in mind that everything to the right of `ORDER BY` is a sort key, not an argument to the aggregate. For example, in

```sql
SELECT myaggregate(a ORDER BY a, b, c) FROM ...
```

the parser will see this as a single aggregate function argument and three sort keys. However, the user might have intended

```sql
SELECT myaggregate(a, b, c ORDER BY a) FROM ...
```

If `myaggregate` is variadic, both these calls could be perfectly valid.

For the same reason, it's wise to think twice before creating aggregate functions with the same names and different numbers of regular arguments.
```

36.12.3. Ordered-Set Aggregates

The aggregates we have been describing so far are “normal” aggregates. Postgres Pro also supports `ordered-set aggregates`, which differ from normal aggregates in two key ways. First, in addition to ordinary aggregated arguments that are evaluated once per input row, an ordered-set aggregate can have “direct” arguments that are evaluated only once per aggregation operation. Second, the syntax for the ordinary aggregated arguments specifies a sort ordering for them explicitly. An ordered-set aggregate is usually used to implement a computation that depends on a specific row ordering, for instance rank or percentile, so that the sort ordering is a required aspect of any call. For example, the built-in definition of `percentile_disc` is equivalent to:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION ordered_set_transition(internal, anyelement) 
  RETURNS internal ...;
CREATE FUNCTION percentile_disc_final(internal, float8, anyelement) 
  ...
```

994
RETURNS anyelement ...;

CREATE AGGREGATE percentile_disc (float8 ORDER BY anyelement)
(
    sfunc = ordered_set_transition,
    stype = internal,
    finalfunc = percentile_disc_final,
    finalfunc_extra
);

This aggregate takes a float8 direct argument (the percentile fraction) and an aggregated input that can be of any sortable data type. It could be used to obtain a median household income like this:

```
SELECT percentile_disc(0.5) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY income) FROM households;
```

Here, 0.5 is a direct argument; it would make no sense for the percentile fraction to be a value varying across rows.

Unlike the case for normal aggregates, the sorting of input rows for an ordered-set aggregate is not done behind the scenes, but is the responsibility of the aggregate's support functions. The typical implementation approach is to keep a reference to a "tuplesort" object in the aggregate's state value, feed the incoming rows into that object, and then complete the sorting and read out the data in the final function. This design allows the final function to perform special operations such as injecting additional "hypothetical" rows into the data to be sorted. While normal aggregates can often be implemented with support functions written in PL/pgSQL or another PL language, ordered-set aggregates generally have to be written in C, since their state values aren't definable as any SQL data type. (In the above example, notice that the state value is declared as type internal — this is typical.) Also, because the final function performs the sort, it is not possible to continue adding input rows by executing the transition function again later. This means the final function is not READ_ONLY; it must be declared in CREATE AGGREGATE as READ_WRITE, or as SHAREABLE if it's possible for additional final-function calls to make use of the already-sorted state.

The state transition function for an ordered-set aggregate receives the current state value plus the aggregated input values for each row, and returns the updated state value. This is the same definition as for normal aggregates, but note that the direct arguments (if any) are not provided. The final function receives the last state value, the values of the direct arguments if any, and (if finalfunc_extra is specified) null values corresponding to the aggregated input(s). As with normal aggregates, finalfunc_extra is only really useful if the aggregate is polymorphic; then the extra dummy argument(s) are needed to connect the final function's result type to the aggregate's input type(s).

Currently, ordered-set aggregates cannot be used as window functions, and therefore there is no need for them to support moving-aggregate mode.

### 36.12.4. Partial Aggregation

Optionally, an aggregate function can support partial aggregation. The idea of partial aggregation is to run the aggregate's state transition function over different subsets of the input data independently, and then to combine the state values resulting from those subsets to produce the same state value that would have resulted from scanning all the input in a single operation. This mode can be used for parallel aggregation by having different worker processes scan different portions of a table. Each worker produces a partial state value, and at the end those state values are combined to produce a final state value. (In the future this mode might also be used for purposes such as combining aggregations over local and remote tables; but that is not implemented yet.)

To support partial aggregation, the aggregate definition must provide a combine function, which takes two values of the aggregate's state type (representing the results of aggregating over two subsets of the input rows) and produces a new value of the state type, representing what the state would have been
Extending SQL

after aggregating over the combination of those sets of rows. It is unspecified what the relative order of the input rows from the two sets would have been. This means that it's usually impossible to define a useful combine function for aggregates that are sensitive to input row order.

As simple examples, MAX and MIN aggregates can be made to support partial aggregation by specifying the combine function as the same greater-of-two or lesser-of-two comparison function that is used as their transition function. SUM aggregates just need an addition function as combine function. (Again, this is the same as their transition function, unless the state value is wider than the input data type.)

The combine function is treated much like a transition function that happens to take a value of the state type, not of the underlying input type, as its second argument. In particular, the rules for dealing with null values and strict functions are similar. Also, if the aggregate definition specifies a non-null initcond, keep in mind that that will be used not only as the initial state for each partial aggregation run, but also as the initial state for the combine function, which will be called to combine each partial result into that state.

If the aggregate's state type is declared as internal, it is the combine function's responsibility that its result is allocated in the correct memory context for aggregate state values. This means in particular that when the first input is NULL it's invalid to simply return the second input, as that value will be in the wrong context and will not have sufficient lifespan.

When the aggregate's state type is declared as internal, it is usually also appropriate for the aggregate definition to provide a serialization function and a deserialization function, which allow such a state value to be copied from one process to another. Without these functions, parallel aggregation cannot be performed, and future applications such as local/remote aggregation will probably not work either.

A serialization function must take a single argument of type internal and return a result of type bytea, which represents the state value packaged up into a flat blob of bytes. Conversely, a deserialization function reverses that conversion. It must take two arguments of types bytea and internal, and return a result of type internal. (The second argument is unused and is always zero, but it is required for type-safety reasons.) The result of the deserialization function should simply be allocated in the current memory context, as unlike the combine function's result, it is not long-lived.

Worth noting also is that for an aggregate to be executed in parallel, the aggregate itself must be marked PARALLEL SAFE. The parallel-safety markings on its support functions are not consulted.

36.12.5. Support Functions for Aggregates

A function written in C can detect that it is being called as an aggregate support function by calling AggCheckCallContext, for example:

```c
if (AggCheckCallContext(fcinfo, NULL))
```

One reason for checking this is that when it is true, the first input must be a temporary state value and can therefore safely be modified in-place rather than allocating a new copy. See int8inc() for an example. (While aggregate transition functions are always allowed to modify the transition value in-place, aggregate final functions are generally discouraged from doing so; if they do so, the behavior must be declared when creating the aggregate. See CREATE AGGREGATE for more detail.)

The second argument of AggCheckCallContext can be used to retrieve the memory context in which aggregate state values are being kept. This is useful for transition functions that wish to use “expanded” objects (see Section 36.13.1) as their state values. On first call, the transition function should return an expanded object whose memory context is a child of the aggregate state context, and then keep returning the same expanded object on subsequent calls. See array_append() for an example. (array_append() is not the transition function of any built-in aggregate, but it is written to behave efficiently when used as transition function of a custom aggregate.)

Another support routine available to aggregate functions written in C is AggGetAggref, which returns the Aggref parse node that defines the aggregate call. This is mainly useful for ordered-set aggregates,
which can inspect the substructure of the Aggref node to find out what sort ordering they are supposed to implement. Examples can be found in orderedsetaggs.c in the Postgres Pro source code.

### 36.13. User-Defined Types

As described in Section 36.2, Postgres Pro can be extended to support new data types. This section describes how to define new base types, which are data types defined below the level of the SQL language. Creating a new base type requires implementing functions to operate on the type in a low-level language, usually C.

A user-defined type must always have input and output functions. These functions determine how the type appears in strings (for input by the user and output to the user) and how the type is organized in memory. The input function takes a null-terminated character string as its argument and returns the internal (in memory) representation of the type. The output function takes the internal representation of the type as argument and returns a null-terminated character string. If we want to do anything more with the type than merely store it, we must provide additional functions to implement whatever operations we’d like to have for the type.

Suppose we want to define a type `complex` that represents complex numbers. A natural way to represent a complex number in memory would be the following C structure:

```c
typedef struct Complex {
    double x;
    double y;
} Complex;
```

We will need to make this a pass-by-reference type, since it's too large to fit into a single `Datum` value.

As the external string representation of the type, we choose a string of the form `(x,y)`.

The input and output functions are usually not hard to write, especially the output function. But when defining the external string representation of the type, remember that you must eventually write a complete and robust parser for that representation as your input function. For instance:

```c
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_in);

Datum complex_in(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    char *str = PG_GETARG_CSTRING(0);
    double x,
            y;
    Complex *result;

    if (sscanf(str, " ( %lf , %lf )", &x, &y) != 2)
        ereport(ERROR,
                (errcode(ERRCODE_INVALID_TEXT_REPRESENTATION),
                errmsg("invalid input syntax for type %s: "%s",
                        "complex", str));

    result = (Complex *) palloc(sizeof(Complex));
    result->x = x;
    result->y = y;
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(result);
}
```

The output function can simply be:

```c
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_out);
```
Extending SQL

Datum
complex_out(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    Complex *complex = (Complex *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    char *result;

    result = psprintf("(%g,%g)", complex->x, complex->y);
    PG_RETURN_CSTRING(result);
}

You should be careful to make the input and output functions inverses of each other. If you do not, you will have severe problems when you need to dump your data into a file and then read it back in. This is a particularly common problem when floating-point numbers are involved.

Optionally, a user-defined type can provide binary input and output routines. Binary I/O is normally faster but less portable than textual I/O. As with textual I/O, it is up to you to define exactly what the external binary representation is. Most of the built-in data types try to provide a machine-independent binary representation. For complex, we will piggy-back on the binary I/O converters for type float8:

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_recv);

Datum
complex_recv(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    StringInfo buf = (StringInfo) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    Complex *result;

    result = (Complex *) palloc(sizeof(Complex));
    result->x = pq_getmsgfloat8(buf);
    result->y = pq_getmsgfloat8(buf);
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(result);
}

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_send);

Datum
complex_send(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    Complex *complex = (Complex *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    StringInfoData buf;

    pq_begintypsend(&buf);
    pq_sendfloat8(&buf, complex->x);
    pq_sendfloat8(&buf, complex->y);
    PG_RETURN_BYTEA_P(pq_endtypsend(&buf));
}

Once we have written the I/O functions and compiled them into a shared library, we can define the complex type in SQL. First we declare it as a shell type:

CREATE TYPE complex;

This serves as a placeholder that allows us to reference the type while defining its I/O functions. Now we can define the I/O functions:

CREATE FUNCTION complex_in(cstring)
    RETURNS complex
Finally, we can provide the full definition of the data type:

```sql
CREATE TYPE complex (
    internallength = 16,
    input = complex_in,
    output = complex_out,
    receive = complex_recv,
    send = complex_send,
    alignment = double
);
```

When you define a new base type, Postgres Pro automatically provides support for arrays of that type. The array type typically has the same name as the base type with the underscore character (\_) prepended.

Once the data type exists, we can declare additional functions to provide useful operations on the data type. Operators can then be defined atop the functions, and if needed, operator classes can be created to support indexing of the data type. These additional layers are discussed in following sections.

If the internal representation of the data type is variable-length, the internal representation must follow the standard layout for variable-length data: the first four bytes must be a `char[4]` field which is never accessed directly (customarily named `vl_len`). You must use the `SET_VARSIZE()` macro to store the total size of the datum (including the length field itself) in this field and `VARSIZE()` to retrieve it. (These macros exist because the length field may be encoded depending on platform.)

For further details see the description of the `CREATE TYPE` command.

### 36.13.1. TOAST Considerations

If the values of your data type vary in size (in internal form), it's usually desirable to make the data type TOAST-able (see Section 66.2). You should do this even if the values are always too small to be compressed or stored externally, because TOAST can save space on small data too, by reducing header overhead.

To support TOAST storage, the C functions operating on the data type must always be careful to unpack any toasted values they are handed by using `PG_DETOAST_DATUM`. (This detail is customarily hidden by defining type-specific `GETARG_DATATYPE_P` macros.) Then, when running the `CREATE TYPE` command, specify the internal length as `variable` and select some appropriate storage option other than `plain`.

If data alignment is unimportant (either just for a specific function or because the data type specifies byte alignment anyway) then it's possible to avoid some of the overhead of `PG_DETOAST_DATUM`. You can use `PG_DETOAST_DATUM_PPACKED` instead (customarily hidden by defining a `GETARG_DATATYPE_PP` macro) and
Extending SQL

using the macros VARSIZE_ANY_EXHDR and VARDATA_ANY to access a potentially-packed datum. Again, the data returned by these macros is not aligned even if the data type definition specifies an alignment. If the alignment is important you must go through the regular PG_DETOAST_DATUM interface.

Another feature that’s enabled by TOAST support is the possibility of having an expanded in-memory data representation that is more convenient to work with than the format that is stored on disk. The regular or “flat” varlena storage format is ultimately just a blob of bytes; it cannot for example contain pointers, since it may get copied to other locations in memory. For complex data types, the flat format may be quite expensive to work with, so Postgres Pro provides a way to “expand” the flat format into a representation that is more suited to computation, and then pass that format in-memory between functions of the data type.

To use expanded storage, a data type must define an expanded format that follows the rules given in src/include/utils/expandeddatum.h, and provide functions to “expand” a flat varlena value into expanded format and “flatten” the expanded format back to the regular varlena representation. Then ensure that all C functions for the data type can accept either representation, possibly by converting one into the other immediately upon receipt. This does not require fixing all existing functions for the data type at once, because the standard PG_DETOAST_DATUM macro is defined to convert expanded inputs into regular flat format. Therefore, existing functions that work with the flat varlena format will continue to work, though slightly inefficiently, with expanded inputs; they need not be converted until and unless better performance is important.

C functions that know how to work with an expanded representation typically fall into two categories: those that can only handle expanded format, and those that can handle either expanded or flat varlena inputs. The former are easier to write but may be less efficient overall, because converting a flat input to expanded format for use by a single function may cost more than is saved by operating on the expanded format. When only expanded format need be handled, conversion of flat inputs to expanded form can be hidden inside an argument-fetching macro, so that the function appears no more complex than one working with traditional varlena input. To handle both types of input, write an argument-fetching function that will detoast external, short-header, and compressed varlena inputs, but not expanded inputs. Such a function can be defined as returning a pointer to a union of the flat varlena format and the expanded format. Callers can use the VARATT_IS_EXPANDED_HEADER() macro to determine which format they received.

The TOAST infrastructure not only allows regular varlena values to be distinguished from expanded values, but also distinguishes “read-write” and “read-only” pointers to expanded values. C functions that only need to examine an expanded value, or will only change it in safe and non-semantically-visible ways, need not care which type of pointer they receive. C functions that produce a modified version of an input value are allowed to modify an expanded input value in-place if they receive a read-write pointer, but must not modify the input if they receive a read-only pointer; in that case they have to copy the value first, producing a new value to modify. A C function that has constructed a new expanded value should always return a read-write pointer to it. Also, a C function that is modifying a read-write expanded value in-place should take care to leave the value in a sane state if it fails partway through.

36.14. User-Defined Operators

Every operator is “syntactic sugar” for a call to an underlying function that does the real work; so you must first create the underlying function before you can create the operator. However, an operator is not
merely syntactic sugar, because it carries additional information that helps the query planner optimize queries that use the operator. The next section will be devoted to explaining that additional information.

Postgres Pro supports prefix and infix operators. Operators can be overloaded; that is, the same operator name can be used for different operators that have different numbers and types of operands. When a query is executed, the system determines the operator to call from the number and types of the provided operands.

Here is an example of creating an operator for adding two complex numbers. We assume we’ve already created the definition of type complex (see Section 36.13). First we need a function that does the work, then we can define the operator:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION complex_add(complex, complex)
RETURNS complex
AS 'filename', 'complex_add'
LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

CREATE OPERATOR + (  
  leftarg = complex,  
  rightarg = complex,  
  function = complex_add,  
  commutator = +
);
```

Now we could execute a query like this:

```sql
SELECT (a + b) AS c FROM test_complex;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>c</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(5.2,6.05)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(133.42,144.95)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We’ve shown how to create a binary operator here. To create a prefix operator, just omit the `leftarg`.

The `function` clause and the argument clauses are the only required items in `CREATE OPERATOR`. The `commutator` clause shown in the example is an optional hint to the query optimizer. Further details about `commutator` and other optimizer hints appear in the next section.

### 36.15. Operator Optimization Information

A Postgres Pro operator definition can include several optional clauses that tell the system useful things about how the operator behaves. These clauses should be provided whenever appropriate, because they can make for considerable speedups in execution of queries that use the operator. But if you provide them, you must be sure that they are right! Incorrect use of an optimization clause can result in slow queries, subtly wrong output, or other Bad Things. You can always leave out an optimization clause if you are not sure about it; the only consequence is that queries might run slower than they need to.

Additional optimization clauses might be added in future versions of Postgres Pro. The ones described here are all the ones that release 14.1.1 understands.

It is also possible to attach a planner support function to the function that underlies an operator, providing another way of telling the system about the behavior of the operator. See Section 36.11 for more information.

#### 36.15.1. COMMUTATOR

The `COMMUTATOR` clause, if provided, names an operator that is the commutator of the operator being defined. We say that operator A is the commutator of operator B if (x A y) equals (y B x) for all possible input values x, y. Notice that B is also the commutator of A. For example, operators < and > for a particular
Extending SQL

data type are usually each others' commutators, and operator + is usually commutative with itself. But operator – is usually not commutative with anything.

The left operand type of a commutable operator is the same as the right operand type of its commutator, and vice versa. So the name of the commutator operator is all that Postgres Pro needs to be given to look up the commutator, and that's all that needs to be provided in the COMMUTATOR clause.

It's critical to provide commutator information for operators that will be used in indexes and join clauses, because this allows the query optimizer to “flip around” such a clause to the forms needed for different plan types. For example, consider a query with a WHERE clause like `tab1.x = tab2.y`, where `tab1.x` and `tab2.y` are of a user-defined type, and suppose that `tab2.y` is indexed. The optimizer cannot generate an index scan unless it can determine how to flip the clause around to `tab2.y = tab1.x`, because the index-scan machinery expects to see the indexed column on the left of the operator it is given. Postgres Pro will not simply assume that this is a valid transformation — the creator of the = operator must specify that it is valid, by marking the operator with commutator information.

When you are defining a self-commutative operator, you just do it. When you are defining a pair of commutative operators, things are a little trickier: how can the first one to be defined refer to the other one, which you haven't defined yet? There are two solutions to this problem:

- One way is to omit the COMMUTATOR clause in the first operator that you define, and then provide one in the second operator's definition. Since Postgres Pro knows that commutative operators come in pairs, when it sees the second definition it will automatically go back and fill in the missing COMMUTATOR clause in the first definition.
- The other, more straightforward way is just to include COMMUTATOR clauses in both definitions. When Postgres Pro processes the first definition and realizes that COMMUTATOR refers to a nonexistent operator, the system will make a dummy entry for that operator in the system catalog. This dummy entry will have valid data only for the operator name, left and right operand types, and result type, since that's all that Postgres Pro can deduce at this point. The first operator's catalog entry will link to this dummy entry. Later, when you define the second operator, the system updates the dummy entry with the additional information from the second definition. If you try to use the dummy operator before it's been filled in, you'll just get an error message.

36.15.2. NEGATOR

The NEGATOR clause, if provided, names an operator that is the negator of the operator being defined. We say that operator A is the negator of operator B if both return Boolean results and (x A y) equals NOT (x B y) for all possible inputs x, y. Notice that B is also the negator of A. For example, < and >= are a negator pair for most data types. An operator can never validly be its own negator.

Unlike commutators, a pair of unary operators could validly be marked as each other's negators; that would mean (A x) equals NOT (B x) for all x.

An operator's negator must have the same left and/or right operand types as the operator to be defined, so just as with COMMUTATOR, only the operator name need be given in the NEGATOR clause.

Providing a negator is very helpful to the query optimizer since it allows expressions like NOT (x = y) to be simplified into x <> y. This comes up more often than you might think, because NOT operations can be inserted as a consequence of other rearrangements.

Pairs of negator operators can be defined using the same methods explained above for commutator pairs.

36.15.3. RESTRICT

The RESTRICT clause, if provided, names a restriction selectivity estimation function for the operator. (Note that this is a function name, not an operator name.) RESTRICT clauses only make sense for binary operators that return boolean. The idea behind a restriction selectivity estimator is to guess what fraction of the rows in a table will satisfy a WHERE-clause condition of the form:

column OP constant
for the current operator and a particular constant value. This assists the optimizer by giving it some
idea of how many rows will be eliminated by WHERE clauses that have this form. (What happens if the
constant is on the left, you might be wondering? Well, that's one of the things that COMMUTATOR is for...)

Writing new restriction selectivity estimation functions is far beyond the scope of this chapter, but
fortunately you can usually just use one of the system's standard estimators for many of your own
operators. These are the standard restriction estimators:

```
eqsel for =
neqsel for <>
scalarltssel for <
scalarslesel for <=
scalargtssel for >
scalargesel for >=
```

You can frequently get away with using either eqsel or neqsel for operators that have very high or very
low selectivity, even if they aren't really equality or inequality. For example, the approximate-equality
geometric operators use eqsel on the assumption that they'll usually only match a small fraction of the
entries in a table.

You can use scalarltssel, scalarslesel, scalargtssel and scalargesel for comparisons on data types
that have some sensible means of being converted into numeric scalars for range comparisons.

Another useful built-in selectivity estimation function is matchingsel, which will work for almost any
binary operator, if standard MCV and/or histogram statistics are collected for the input data type(s).
Its default estimate is set to twice the default estimate used in eqsel, making it most suitable for
comparison operators that are somewhat less strict than equality. (Or you could call the underlying
generic_restriction_selectivity function, providing a different default estimate.)

### 36.15.4. JOIN

The JOIN clause, if provided, names a join selectivity estimation function for the operator. (Note that
this is a function name, not an operator name.) JOIN clauses only make sense for binary operators that
return boolean. The idea behind a join selectivity estimator is to guess what fraction of the rows in a
pair of tables will satisfy a WHERE-clause condition of the form:

```
table1.column1 OP table2.column2
```

for the current operator. As with the RESTRICT clause, this helps the optimizer very substantially by
letting it figure out which of several possible join sequences is likely to take the least work.

As before, this chapter will make no attempt to explain how to write a join selectivity estimator function,
but will just suggest that you use one of the standard estimators if one is applicable:

```
eqjoinsel for =
neqjoinsel for <>
scalarltjoinsel for <
scalarlejoinsel for <=
scalargtjoinsel for >
scalargejoinsel for >=
matchingjoinsel for generic matching operators
areajoinsel for 2D area-based comparisons
positionjoinsel for 2D position-based comparisons
contjoinsel for 2D containment-based comparisons
```

### 36.15.5. HASHES

The HASHES clause, if present, tells the system that it is permissible to use the hash join method for a
join based on this operator. HASHES only makes sense for a binary operator that returns boolean, and in
practice the operator must represent equality for some data type or pair of data types.
The assumption underlying hash join is that the join operator can only return true for pairs of left and right values that hash to the same hash code. If two values get put in different hash buckets, the join will never compare them at all, implicitly assuming that the result of the join operator must be false. So it never makes sense to specify `HASHES` for operators that do not represent some form of equality. In most cases it is only practical to support hashing for operators that take the same data type on both sides. However, sometimes it is possible to design compatible hash functions for two or more data types; that is, functions that will generate the same hash codes for “equal” values, even though the values have different representations. For example, it's fairly simple to arrange this property when hashing integers of different widths.

To be marked `HASHES`, the join operator must appear in a hash index operator family. This is not enforced when you create the operator, since of course the referencing operator family couldn't exist yet. But attempts to use the operator in hash joins will fail at run time if no such operator family exists. The system needs the operator family to find the data-type-specific hash function(s) for the operator's input data type(s). Of course, you must also create suitable hash functions before you can create the operator family.

Care should be exercised when preparing a hash function, because there are machine-dependent ways in which it might fail to do the right thing. For example, if your data type is a structure in which there might be uninteresting pad bits, you cannot simply pass the whole structure to `hash_any`. (Unless you write your other operators and functions to ensure that the unused bits are always zero, which is the recommended strategy.) Another example is that on machines that meet the IEEE floating-point standard, negative zero and positive zero are different values (different bit patterns) but they are defined to compare equal. If a float value might contain negative zero then extra steps are needed to ensure it generates the same hash value as positive zero.

A hash-joinable operator must have a commutator (itself if the two operand data types are the same, or a related equality operator if they are different) that appears in the same operator family. If this is not the case, planner errors might occur when the operator is used. Also, it is a good idea (but not strictly required) for a hash operator family that supports multiple data types to provide equality operators for every combination of the data types; this allows better optimization.

**Note**

The function underlying a hash-joinable operator must be marked immutable or stable. If it is volatile, the system will never attempt to use the operator for a hash join.

**Note**

If a hash-joinable operator has an underlying function that is marked strict, the function must also be complete: that is, it should return true or false, never null, for any two nonnull inputs. If this rule is not followed, hash-optimization of `IN` operations might generate wrong results. (Specifically, `IN` might return false where the correct answer according to the standard would be null; or it might yield an error complaining that it wasn't prepared for a null result.)

### 36.15.6. MERGES

The `MERGES` clause, if present, tells the system that it is permissible to use the merge-join method for a join based on this operator. `MERGES` only makes sense for a binary operator that returns `boolean`, and in practice the operator must represent equality for some data type or pair of data types.

Merge join is based on the idea of sorting the left- and right-hand tables into order and then scanning them in parallel. So, both data types must be capable of being fully ordered, and the join operator must be one that can only succeed for pairs of values that fall at the “same place” in the sort order. In practice this means that the join operator must behave like equality. But it is possible to merge-join two distinct
data types so long as they are logically compatible. For example, the smallint-versus-integer equality operator is merge-joinable. We only need sorting operators that will bring both data types into a logically compatible sequence.

To be marked MERGES, the join operator must appear as an equality member of a btree index operator family. This is not enforced when you create the operator, since of course the referencing operator family couldn’t exist yet. But the operator will not actually be used for merge joins unless a matching operator family can be found. The MERGES flag thus acts as a hint to the planner that it’s worth looking for a matching operator family.

A merge-joinable operator must have a commutator (itself if the two operand data types are the same, or a related equality operator if they are different) that appears in the same operator family. If this is not the case, planner errors might occur when the operator is used. Also, it is a good idea (but not strictly required) for a btree operator family that supports multiple data types to provide equality operators for every combination of the data types; this allows better optimization.

Note
The function underlying a merge-joinable operator must be marked immutable or stable. If it is volatile, the system will never attempt to use the operator for a merge join.

36.16. Interfacing Extensions to Indexes

The procedures described thus far let you define new types, new functions, and new operators. However, we cannot yet define an index on a column of a new data type. To do this, we must define an operator class for the new data type. Later in this section, we will illustrate this concept in an example: a new operator class for the B-tree index method that stores and sorts complex numbers in ascending absolute value order.

Operator classes can be grouped into operator families to show the relationships between semantically compatible classes. When only a single data type is involved, an operator class is sufficient, so we’ll focus on that case first and then return to operator families.

36.16.1. Index Methods and Operator Classes

The pg_am table contains one row for every index method (internally known as access method). Support for regular access to tables is built into Postgres Pro, but all index methods are described in pg_am. It is possible to add a new index access method by writing the necessary code and then creating an entry in pg_am — but that is beyond the scope of this chapter (see Chapter 58).

The routines for an index method do not directly know anything about the data types that the index method will operate on. Instead, an operator class identifies the set of operations that the index method needs to use to work with a particular data type. Operator classes are so called because one thing they specify is the set of WHERE-clause operators that can be used with an index (i.e., can be converted into an index-scan qualification). An operator class can also specify some support function that are needed by the internal operations of the index method, but do not directly correspond to any WHERE-clause operator that can be used with the index.

It is possible to define multiple operator classes for the same data type and index method. By doing this, multiple sets of indexing semantics can be defined for a single data type. For example, a B-tree index requires a sort ordering to be defined for each data type it works on. It might be useful for a complex-number data type to have one B-tree operator class that sorts the data by complex absolute value, another that sorts by real part, and so on. Typically, one of the operator classes will be deemed most commonly useful and will be marked as the default operator class for that data type and index method.

The same operator class name can be used for several different index methods (for example, both B-tree and hash index methods have operator classes named int4_ops), but each such class is an independent entity and must be defined separately.
36.16.2. Index Method Strategies

The operators associated with an operator class are identified by “strategy numbers”, which serve to identify the semantics of each operator within the context of its operator class. For example, B-trees impose a strict ordering on keys, lesser to greater, and so operators like “less than” and “greater than or equal to” are interesting with respect to a B-tree. Because Postgres Pro allows the user to define operators, Postgres Pro cannot look at the name of an operator (e.g., < or >=) and tell what kind of comparison it is. Instead, the index method defines a set of “strategies”, which can be thought of as generalized operators. Each operator class specifies which actual operator corresponds to each strategy for a particular data type and interpretation of the index semantics.

The B-tree index method defines five strategies, shown in Table 36.3.

Table 36.3. B-Tree Strategies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Strategy Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>less than</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than or equal</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equal</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greater than or equal</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greater than</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hash indexes support only equality comparisons, and so they use only one strategy, shown in Table 36.4.

Table 36.4. Hash Strategies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Strategy Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>equal</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GiST indexes are more flexible: they do not have a fixed set of strategies at all. Instead, the “consistency” support routine of each particular GiST operator class interprets the strategy numbers however it likes. As an example, several of the built-in GiST index operator classes index two-dimensional geometric objects, providing the “R-tree” strategies shown in Table 36.5. Four of these are true two-dimensional tests (overlaps, same, contains, contained by); four of them consider only the X direction; and the other four provide the same tests in the Y direction.

Table 36.5. GiST Two-Dimensional “R-tree” Strategies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Strategy Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strictly left of</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does not extend to right of</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overlaps</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does not extend to left of</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strictly right of</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>same</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contains</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contained by</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does not extend above</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strictly below</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strictly above</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does not extend below</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SP-GiST indexes are similar to GiST indexes in flexibility: they don't have a fixed set of strategies. Instead the support routines of each operator class interpret the strategy numbers according to the operator class's definition. As an example, the strategy numbers used by the built-in operator classes for points are shown in Table 36.6.

Table 36.6. SP-GiST Point Strategies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Strategy Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strictly left of</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strictly right of</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>same</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contained by</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strictly below</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strictly above</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GIN indexes are similar to GiST and SP-GiST indexes, in that they don't have a fixed set of strategies either. Instead the support routines of each operator class interpret the strategy numbers according to the operator class's definition. As an example, the strategy numbers used by the built-in operator class for arrays are shown in Table 36.7.

Table 36.7. GIN Array Strategies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Strategy Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>overlap</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contains</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is contained by</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equal</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BRIN indexes are similar to GiST, SP-GiST and GIN indexes in that they don't have a fixed set of strategies either. Instead the support routines of each operator class interpret the strategy numbers according to the operator class's definition. As an example, the strategy numbers used by the built-in Minmax operator classes are shown in Table 36.8.

Table 36.8. BRIN Minmax Strategies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Strategy Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>less than</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than or equal</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equal</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greater than or equal</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greater than</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that all the operators listed above return Boolean values. In practice, all operators defined as index method search operators must return type boolean, since they must appear at the top level of a WHERE clause to be used with an index. (Some index access methods also support ordering operators, which typically don't return Boolean values; that feature is discussed in Section 36.16.7.)

36.16.3. Index Method Support Routines

Strategies aren't usually enough information for the system to figure out how to use an index. In practice, the index methods require additional support routines in order to work. For example, the B-tree index method must be able to compare two keys and determine whether one is greater than, equal to, or less
than the other. Similarly, the hash index method must be able to compute hash codes for key values. These operations do not correspond to operators used in qualifications in SQL commands; they are administrative routines used by the index methods, internally.

Just as with strategies, the operator class identifies which specific functions should play each of these roles for a given data type and semantic interpretation. The index method defines the set of functions it needs, and the operator class identifies the correct functions to use by assigning them to the “support function numbers” specified by the index method.

Additionally, some opclasses allow users to specify parameters which control their behavior. Each builtin index access method has an optional \texttt{options} support function, which defines a set of opclass-specific parameters.

B-trees require a comparison support function, and allow four additional support functions to be supplied at the operator class author's option, as shown in Table 36.9. The requirements for these support functions are explained further in Section 60.3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Support Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compare two keys and return an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether the first key is less than, equal to, or greater than the second</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return the addresses of C-callable sort support function(s) (optional)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compare a test value to a base value plus/minus an offset, and return true or false according to the comparison result (optional)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determine if it is safe for indexes that use the operator class to apply the btree deduplication optimization (optional)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hash indexes require one support function, and allow two additional ones to be supplied at the operator class author's option, as shown in Table 36.10.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Support Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compute the 32-bit hash value for a key</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compute the 64-bit hash value for a key given a 64-bit salt; if the salt is 0, the low 32 bits of the result must match the value that would have been computed by function 1 (optional)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GiST indexes have eleven support functions, six of which are optional, as shown in Table 36.11. (For more information see Chapter 61.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Support Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consistent</td>
<td>determine whether key satisfies the query qualifier</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>union</td>
<td>compute union of a set of keys</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compress</td>
<td>compute a compressed representation of a key or value to be indexed (optional)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 36.12. SP-GiST Support Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Support Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decompress</td>
<td>compute a decompressed representation of a compressed key (optional)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penalty</td>
<td>compute penalty for inserting new key into subtree with given subtree's key</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picksplit</td>
<td>determine which entries of a page are to be moved to the new page and compute the union keys for resulting pages</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>same</td>
<td>compare two keys and return true if they are equal</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance</td>
<td>determine distance from key to query value (optional)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fetch</td>
<td>compute original representation of a compressed key for index-only scans (optional)</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>options</td>
<td>define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sortsupport</td>
<td>provide a sort comparator to be used in fast index builds (optional)</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SP-GiST indexes have six support functions, one of which is optional, as shown in Table 36.12. (For more information see Chapter 62.)

### Table 36.13. GIN Support Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Support Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>compare</td>
<td>compare two keys and return an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether the first key is less than, equal to, or greater than the second</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extractValue</td>
<td>extract keys from a value to be indexed</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extractQuery</td>
<td>extract keys from a query condition</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GIN indexes have seven support functions, four of which are optional, as shown in Table 36.13. (For more information see Chapter 63.)
BRIN indexes have five basic support functions, one of which is optional, as shown in Table 36.14. Some versions of the basic functions require additional support functions to be provided. (For more information see Section 64.3.)

### Table 36.14. BRIN Support Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Support Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consistent</td>
<td>determine whether value matches query condition (Boolean variant)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comparePartial</td>
<td>compare partial key from query and key from index, and return an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether GIN should ignore this index entry, treat the entry as a match, or stop the index scan (optional)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triConsistent</td>
<td>determine whether value matches query condition (ternary variant)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>options</td>
<td>define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unlike search operators, support functions return whichever data type the particular index method expects; for example in the case of the comparison function for B-trees, a signed integer. The number and types of the arguments to each support function are likewise dependent on the index method. For B-tree and hash the comparison and hashing support functions take the same input data types as do the operators included in the operator class, but this is not the case for most GiST, SP-GiST, GIN, and BRIN support functions.

#### 36.16.4. An Example

Now that we have seen the ideas, here is the promised example of creating a new operator class. The operator class encapsulates operators that sort complex numbers in absolute value order, so we choose the name `complex_abs_ops`. First, we need a set of operators. The procedure for defining operators was discussed in Section 36.14. For an operator class on B-trees, the operators we require are:

- absolute-value less-than (strategy 1)
- absolute-value less-than-or-equal (strategy 2)
- absolute-value equal (strategy 3)
- absolute-value greater-than-or-equal (strategy 4)
- absolute-value greater-than (strategy 5)

The least error-prone way to define a related set of comparison operators is to write the B-tree comparison support function first, and then write the other functions as one-line wrappers around the
support function. This reduces the odds of getting inconsistent results for corner cases. Following this
approach, we first write:

```c
#define Mag(c)  ((c)->x*(c)->x + (c)->y*(c)->y)

static int
complex_abs_cmp_internal(Complex *a, Complex *b)
{
    double      amag = Mag(a),
                bmag = Mag(b);

    if (amag < bmag)
        return -1;
    if (amag > bmag)
        return 1;
    return 0;
}

Now the less-than function looks like:

```c
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_abs_lt);
```

```c
Datum
complex_abs_lt(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    Complex    *a = (Complex *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    Complex    *b = (Complex *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(1);

    PG_RETURN_BOOL(complex_abs_cmp_internal(a, b) < 0);
}
```

The other four functions differ only in how they compare the internal function’s result to zero.

Next we declare the functions and the operators based on the functions to SQL:

```c
CREATE FUNCTION complex_abs_lt(complex, complex) RETURNS bool
    AS 'filename', 'complex_abs_lt'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

CREATE OPERATOR < (
    leftarg = complex, rightarg = complex, procedure = complex_abs_lt,
    commutator = >, negator = >=,
    restrict = scalarltsel, join = scalartltsel
);
```

It is important to specify the correct commutator and negator operators, as well as suitable restriction
and join selectivity functions, otherwise the optimizer will be unable to make effective use of the index.

Other things worth noting are happening here:

- There can only be one operator named, say, = and taking type complex for both operands. In this
case we don’t have any other operator = for complex, but if we were building a practical data
type we’d probably want = to be the ordinary equality operation for complex numbers (and not
the equality of the absolute values). In that case, we’d need to use some other operator name for
complex_abs_eq.

- Although Postgres Pro can cope with functions having the same SQL name as long as they have
different argument data types, C can only cope with one global function having a given name. So
we shouldn’t name the C function something simple like abs_eq. Usually it’s a good practice to
include the data type name in the C function name, so as not to conflict with functions for other
data types.

• We could have made the SQL name of the function abs_eq, relying on Postgres Pro to distinguish
it by argument data types from any other SQL function of the same name. To keep the example
simple, we make the function have the same names at the C level and SQL level.

The next step is the registration of the support routine required by B-trees. The example C code that
implements this is in the same file that contains the operator functions. This is how we declare the
function:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION complex_abs_cmp(complex, complex)
    RETURNS integer
    AS 'filename'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;
```

Now that we have the required operators and support routine, we can finally create the operator class:

```sql
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS complex_abs_ops
    DEFAULT FOR TYPE complex USING btree AS
    OPERATOR 1       < ,
    OPERATOR 2       <= ,
    OPERATOR 3       = ,
    OPERATOR 4       >= ,
    OPERATOR 5       > ,
    FUNCTION 1       complex_abs_cmp(complex, complex);
```

And we're done! It should now be possible to create and use B-tree indexes on complex columns.

We could have written the operator entries more verbosely, as in:

```sql
  OPERATOR 1       < (complex, complex) ,
```

but there is no need to do so when the operators take the same data type we are defining the operator
class for.

The above example assumes that you want to make this new operator class the default B-tree operator
class for the complex data type. If you don't, just leave out the word DEFAULT.

### 36.16.5. Operator Classes and Operator Families

So far we have implicitly assumed that an operator class deals with only one data type. While there
certainly can be only one data type in a particular index column, it is often useful to index operations that
calculate values based on one data type compared to a value of a different data type. Also, if there is use for a cross-data-type
operator in connection with an operator class, it is often the case that the other data type has a related
operator class of its own. It is helpful to make the connections between related classes explicit, because
this can aid the planner in optimizing SQL queries (particularly for B-tree operator classes, since the
planner contains a great deal of knowledge about how to work with them).

To handle these needs, Postgres Pro uses the concept of an operator family. An operator family contains
one or more operator classes, and can also contain indexable operators and corresponding support
functions that belong to the family as a whole but not to any single class within the family. We say that
such operators and functions are “loose” within the family, as opposed to being bound into a specific
class. Typically each operator class contains single-data-type operators while cross-data-type operators
are loose in the family.

All the operators and functions in an operator family must have compatible semantics, where the
compatibility requirements are set by the index method. You might therefore worry why bother to
single out particular subsets of the family as operator classes; and indeed for many purposes the class
divisions are irrelevant and the family is the only interesting grouping. The reason for defining operator
classes is that they specify how much of the family is needed to support any particular index. If there is an index using an operator class, then that operator class cannot be dropped without dropping the index — but other parts of the operator family, namely other operator classes and loose operators, could be dropped. Thus, an operator class should be specified to contain the minimum set of operators and functions that are reasonably needed to work with an index on a specific data type, and then related but non-essential operators can be added as loose members of the operator family.

As an example, Postgres Pro has a built-in B-tree operator family `integer_ops`, which includes operator classes `int8_ops`, `int4_ops`, and `int2_ops` for indexes on `bigint (int8)`, `integer (int4)`, and `smallint (int2)` columns respectively. The family also contains cross-data-type comparison operators allowing any two of these types to be compared, so that an index on one of these types can be searched using a comparison value of another type. The family could be duplicated by these definitions:

```sql
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree;

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS int8_ops
DEFAULT FOR TYPE int8 USING btree FAMILY integer_ops AS
-- standard int8 comparisons
  OPERATOR 1 < ,
  OPERATOR 2 <= ,
  OPERATOR 3 = ,
  OPERATOR 4 >= ,
  OPERATOR 5 > ,
FUNCTION 1 btint8cmp(int8, int8) ,
FUNCTION 2 btint8sortsupport(internal) ,
FUNCTION 3 in_range(int8, int8, int8, boolean, boolean) ,
FUNCTION 4 btequalimage(oid) ;

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS int4_ops
DEFAULT FOR TYPE int4 USING btree FAMILY integer_ops AS
-- standard int4 comparisons
  OPERATOR 1 < ,
  OPERATOR 2 <= ,
  OPERATOR 3 = ,
  OPERATOR 4 >= ,
  OPERATOR 5 > ,
FUNCTION 1 btint4cmp(int4, int4) ,
FUNCTION 2 btint4sortsupport(internal) ,
FUNCTION 3 in_range(int4, int4, int4, boolean, boolean) ,
FUNCTION 4 btequalimage(oid) ;

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS int2_ops
DEFAULT FOR TYPE int2 USING btree FAMILY integer_ops AS
-- standard int2 comparisons
  OPERATOR 1 < ,
  OPERATOR 2 <= ,
  OPERATOR 3 = ,
  OPERATOR 4 >= ,
  OPERATOR 5 > ,
FUNCTION 1 btint2cmp(int2, int2) ,
FUNCTION 2 btint2sortsupport(internal) ,
FUNCTION 3 in_range(int2, int2, int2, boolean, boolean) ,
FUNCTION 4 btequalimage(oid) ;

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree ADD
-- cross-type comparisons int8 vs int2
  OPERATOR 1 < (int8, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 2 <= (int8, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 3 = (int8, int2) ,
```
Extending SQL

OPERATOR 4 \geq (\text{int8}, \text{int2}) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (\text{int8}, \text{int2}) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint82cmp(\text{int8}, \text{int2}) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int8 vs int4
OPERATOR 1 < (\text{int8}, \text{int4}) ,
OPERATOR 2 \leq (\text{int8}, \text{int4}) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (\text{int8}, \text{int4}) ,
OPERATOR 4 \geq (\text{int8}, \text{int4}) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (\text{int8}, \text{int4}) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint84cmp(\text{int8}, \text{int4}) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int4 vs int2
OPERATOR 1 < (\text{int4}, \text{int2}) ,
OPERATOR 2 \leq (\text{int4}, \text{int2}) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (\text{int4}, \text{int2}) ,
OPERATOR 4 \geq (\text{int4}, \text{int2}) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (\text{int4}, \text{int2}) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint42cmp(\text{int4}, \text{int2}) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int4 vs int8
OPERATOR 1 < (\text{int4}, \text{int8}) ,
OPERATOR 2 \leq (\text{int4}, \text{int8}) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (\text{int4}, \text{int8}) ,
OPERATOR 4 \geq (\text{int4}, \text{int8}) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (\text{int4}, \text{int8}) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint48cmp(\text{int4}, \text{int8}) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int2 vs int8
OPERATOR 1 < (\text{int2}, \text{int8}) ,
OPERATOR 2 \leq (\text{int2}, \text{int8}) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (\text{int2}, \text{int8}) ,
OPERATOR 4 \geq (\text{int2}, \text{int8}) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (\text{int2}, \text{int8}) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint28cmp(\text{int2}, \text{int8}) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int2 vs int4
OPERATOR 1 < (\text{int2}, \text{int4}) ,
OPERATOR 2 \leq (\text{int2}, \text{int4}) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (\text{int2}, \text{int4}) ,
OPERATOR 4 \geq (\text{int2}, \text{int4}) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (\text{int2}, \text{int4}) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint24cmp(\text{int2}, \text{int4}) ,

-- cross-type in\_range functions
FUNCTION 3 in\_range(\text{int4}, \text{int4}, \text{int8}, \text{boolean}, \text{boolean}) ,
FUNCTION 3 in\_range(\text{int4}, \text{int4}, \text{int2}, \text{boolean}, \text{boolean}) ,
FUNCTION 3 in\_range(\text{int2}, \text{int2}, \text{int8}, \text{boolean}, \text{boolean}) ,
FUNCTION 3 in\_range(\text{int2}, \text{int2}, \text{int4}, \text{boolean}, \text{boolean}) ;

Notice that this definition “overloads” the operator strategy and support function numbers: each number occurs multiple times within the family. This is allowed so long as each instance of a particular number has distinct input data types. The instances that have both input types equal to an operator class's input type are the primary operators and support functions for that operator class, and in most cases should be declared as part of the operator class rather than as loose members of the family.

In a B-tree operator family, all the operators in the family must sort compatibly, as is specified in detail in Section 60.2. For each operator in the family there must be a support function having the same two
input data types as the operator. It is recommended that a family be complete, i.e., for each combination of data types, all operators are included. Each operator class should include just the non-cross-type operators and support function for its data type.

To build a multiple-data-type hash operator family, compatible hash support functions must be created for each data type supported by the family. Here compatibility means that the functions are guaranteed to return the same hash code for any two values that are considered equal by the family's equality operators, even when the values are of different types. This is usually difficult to accomplish when the types have different physical representations, but it can be done in some cases. Furthermore, casting a value from one data type represented in the operator family to another data type also represented in the operator family via an implicit or binary coercion cast must not change the computed hash value. Notice that there is only one support function per data type, not one per equality operator. It is recommended that a family be complete, i.e., provide an equality operator for each combination of data types. Each operator class should include just the non-cross-type equality operator and the support function for its data type.

GiST, SP-GiST, and GIN indexes do not have any explicit notion of cross-data-type operations. The set of operators supported is just whatever the primary support functions for a given operator class can handle.

In BRIN, the requirements depends on the framework that provides the operator classes. For operator classes based on \texttt{minmax}, the behavior required is the same as for B-tree operator families: all the operators in the family must sort compatibly, and casts must not change the associated sort ordering.

Prior to PostgreSQL 8.3, there was no concept of operator families, and so any cross-data-type operators intended to be used with an index had to be bound directly into the index's operator class. While this approach still works, it is deprecated because it makes an index's dependencies too broad, and because the planner can handle cross-data-type comparisons more effectively when both data types have operators in the same operator family.

**Note**

Prior to PostgreSQL 8.3, there was no concept of operator families, and so any cross-data-type operators intended to be used with an index had to be bound directly into the index's operator class. While this approach still works, it is deprecated because it makes an index's dependencies too broad, and because the planner can handle cross-data-type comparisons more effectively when both data types have operators in the same operator family.

### 36.16.6. System Dependencies on Operator Classes

Postgres Pro uses operator classes to infer the properties of operators in more ways than just whether they can be used with indexes. Therefore, you might want to create operator classes even if you have no intention of indexing any columns of your data type.

In particular, there are SQL features such as \texttt{ORDER BY} and \texttt{DISTINCT} that require comparison and sorting of values. To implement these features on a user-defined data type, Postgres Pro looks for the default B-tree operator class for the data type. The "equals" member of this operator class defines the system's notion of equality of values for \texttt{GROUP BY} and \texttt{DISTINCT}, and the sort ordering imposed by the operator class defines the default \texttt{ORDER BY} ordering.

If there is no default B-tree operator class for a data type, the system will look for a default hash operator class. But since that kind of operator class only provides equality, it is only able to support grouping not sorting.

When there is no default operator class for a data type, you will get errors like "could not identify an ordering operator" if you try to use these SQL features with the data type.

**Note**

In PostgreSQL versions before 7.4, sorting and grouping operations would implicitly use operators named \texttt{=}, \texttt{<}, and \texttt{>}. The new behavior of relying on default operator classes avoids having to make any assumption about the behavior of operators with particular names.
Sorting by a non-default B-tree operator class is possible by specifying the class’s less-than operator in a `USING` option, for example:

```
SELECT * FROM mytable ORDER BY somecol USING ~<~;
```

Alternatively, specifying the class's greater-than operator in `USING` selects a descending-order sort.

Comparison of arrays of a user-defined type also relies on the semantics defined by the type’s default B-tree operator class. If there is no default B-tree operator class, but there is a default hash operator class, then array equality is supported, but not ordering comparisons.

Another SQL feature that requires even more data-type-specific knowledge is the `RANGE offset PRECEDING/FOLLOWING` framing option for window functions (see Section 4.2.8). For a query such as:

```
SELECT sum(x) OVER (ORDER BY x RANGE BETWEEN 5 PRECEDING AND 10 FOLLOWING)
FROM mytable;
```

it is not sufficient to know how to order by `x`; the database must also understand how to “subtract 5” or “add 10” to the current row's value of `x` to identify the bounds of the current window frame. Comparing the resulting bounds to other rows' values of `x` is possible using the comparison operators provided by the B-tree operator class that defines the `ORDER BY` ordering — but addition and subtraction operators are not part of the operator class, so which ones should be used? Hard-wiring that choice would be undesirable, because different sort orders (different B-tree operator classes) might need different behavior. Therefore, a B-tree operator class can specify an `in_range` support function that encapsulates the addition and subtraction behaviors that make sense for its sort order. It can even provide more than one `in_range` support function, in case there is more than one data type that makes sense to use as the offset in `RANGE` clauses. If the B-tree operator class associated with the window's `ORDER BY` clause does not have a matching `in_range` support function, the `RANGE offset PRECEDING/FOLLOWING` option is not supported.

Another important point is that an equality operator that appears in a hash operator family is a candidate for hash joins, hash aggregation, and related optimizations. The hash operator family is essential here since it identifies the hash function(s) to use.

### 36.16.7. Ordering Operators

Some index access methods (currently, only GiST and SP-GiST) support the concept of ordering operators. What we have been discussing so far are search operators. A search operator is one for which the index can be searched to find all rows satisfying `WHERE indexed_column operator constant`. Note that nothing is promised about the order in which the matching rows will be returned. In contrast, an ordering operator does not restrict the set of rows that can be returned, but instead determines their order. An ordering operator is one for which the index can be scanned to return rows in the order represented by `ORDER BY indexed_column operator constant`. The reason for defining ordering operators that way is that it supports nearest-neighbor searches, if the operator is one that measures distance. For example, a query like:

```
SELECT * FROM places ORDER BY location <-> point '(101,456)' LIMIT 10;
```

finds the ten places closest to a given target point. A GiST index on the location column can do this efficiently because `<>` is an ordering operator.

While search operators have to return Boolean results, ordering operators usually return some other type, such as float or numeric for distances. This type is normally not the same as the data type being indexed. To avoid hard-wiring assumptions about the behavior of different data types, the definition of an ordering operator is required to name a B-tree operator family that specifies the sort ordering of the result data type. As was stated in the previous section, B-tree operator families define Postgres Pro's notion of ordering, so this is a natural representation. Since the point `<>` operator returns `float8`, it could be specified in an operator class creation command like this:

```
OPERATOR 15   <-> (point, point) FOR ORDER BY float_ops
```
Extending SQL

where float_ops is the built-in operator family that includes operations on float8. This declaration states that the index is able to return rows in order of increasing values of the <-> operator.

36.16.8. Special Features of Operator Classes

There are two special features of operator classes that we have not discussed yet, mainly because they are not useful with the most commonly used index methods.

Normally, declaring an operator as a member of an operator class (or family) means that the index method can retrieve exactly the set of rows that satisfy a WHERE condition using the operator. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM table WHERE integer_column < 4;
```

can be satisfied exactly by a B-tree index on the integer column. But there are cases where an index is useful as an inexact guide to the matching rows. For example, if a GiST index stores only bounding boxes for geometric objects, then it cannot exactly satisfy a WHERE condition that tests overlap between nonrectangular objects such as polygons. Yet we could use the index to find objects whose bounding box overlaps the bounding box of the target object, and then do the exact overlap test only on the objects found by the index. If this scenario applies, the index is said to be “lossy” for the operator. Lossy index searches are implemented by having the index method return a recheck flag when a row might or might not really satisfy the query condition. The core system will then test the original query condition on the retrieved row to see whether it should be returned as a valid match. This approach works if the index is guaranteed to return all the required rows, plus perhaps some additional rows, which can be eliminated by performing the original operator invocation. The index methods that support lossy searches (currently, GiST, SP-GiST and GIN) allow the support functions of individual operator classes to set the recheck flag, and so this is essentially an operator-class feature.

Consider again the situation where we are storing in the index only the bounding box of a complex object such as a polygon. In this case there's not much value in storing the whole polygon in the index entry — we might as well store just a simpler object of type box. This situation is expressed by the STORAGE option in CREATE OPERATOR CLASS: we'd write something like:

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS polygon_ops
  DEFAULT FOR TYPE polygon USING gist AS
  ...
  STORAGE box;
```

At present, only the GiST, SP-GiST, GIN and BRIN index methods support a STORAGE type that's different from the column data type. The GiST compress and decompress support routines must deal with data-type conversion when STORAGE is used. SP-GiST likewise requires a compress support function to convert to the storage type, when that is different; if an SP-GiST opclass also supports retrieving data, the reverse conversion must be handled by the consistent function. In GIN, the STORAGE type identifies the type of the “key” values, which normally is different from the type of the indexed column — for example, an operator class for integer-array columns might have keys that are just integers. The GIN extractValue and extractQuery support routines are responsible for extracting keys from indexed values. BRIN is similar to GIN: the STORAGE type identifies the type of the stored summary values, and operator classes' support procedures are responsible for interpreting the summary values correctly.

36.17. Packaging Related Objects into an Extension

A useful extension to Postgres Pro typically includes multiple SQL objects; for example, a new data type will require new functions, new operators, and probably new index operator classes. It is helpful to collect all these objects into a single package to simplify database management. Postgres Pro calls such a package an extension. To define an extension, you need at least a script file that contains the SQL commands to create the extension's objects, and a control file that specifies a few basic properties of the extension itself. If the extension includes C code, there will typically also be a shared library file into which the C code has been built. Once you have these files, a simple CREATE EXTENSION command loads the objects into your database.

The main advantage of using an extension, rather than just running the SQL script to load a bunch of “loose” objects into your database, is that Postgres Pro will then understand that the objects of the
Extending SQL

extension go together. You can drop all the objects with a single `DROP EXTENSION` command (no need to maintain a separate “uninstall” script). Even more useful, pg_dump knows that it should not dump the individual member objects of the extension — it will just include a `CREATE EXTENSION` command in dumps, instead. This vastly simplifies migration to a new version of the extension that might contain more or different objects than the old version. Note however that you must have the extension's control, script, and other files available when loading such a dump into a new database.

Postgres Pro will not let you drop an individual object contained in an extension, except by dropping the whole extension. Also, while you can change the definition of an extension member object (for example, via `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` for a function), bear in mind that the modified definition will not be dumped by pg_dump. Such a change is usually only sensible if you concurrently make the same change in the extension's script file. (But there are special provisions for tables containing configuration data; see Section 36.17.3.) In production situations, it's generally better to create an extension update script to perform changes to extension member objects.

The extension script may set privileges on objects that are part of the extension, using `GRANT` and `REVOKE` statements. The final set of privileges for each object (if any are set) will be stored in the `pg_init_privs` system catalog. When pg_dump is used, the `CREATE EXTENSION` command will be included in the dump, followed by the set of `GRANT` and `REVOKE` statements necessary to set the privileges on the objects to what they were at the time the dump was taken.

Postgres Pro does not currently support extension scripts issuing `CREATE POLICY` or `SECURITY LABEL` statements. These are expected to be set after the extension has been created. All RLS policies and security labels on extension objects will be included in dumps created by pg_dump.

The extension mechanism also has provisions for packaging modification scripts that adjust the definitions of the SQL objects contained in an extension. For example, if version 1.1 of an extension adds one function and changes the body of another function compared to 1.0, the extension author can provide an `update script` that makes just those two changes. The `ALTER EXTENSION UPDATE` command can then be used to apply these changes and track which version of the extension is actually installed in a given database.

The kinds of SQL objects that can be members of an extension are shown in the description of `ALTER EXTENSION`. Notably, objects that are database-cluster-wide, such as databases, roles, and tablespaces, cannot be extension members since an extension is only known within one database. (Although an extension script is not prohibited from creating such objects, if it does so they will not be tracked as part of the extension.) Also notice that while a table can be a member of an extension, its subsidiary objects such as indexes are not directly considered members of the extension. Another important point is that schemas can belong to extensions, but not vice versa: an extension as such has an unqualified name and does not exist “within” any schema. The extension's member objects, however, will belong to schemas whenever appropriate for their object types. It may or may not be appropriate for an extension to own the schema(s) its member objects are within.

If an extension's script creates any temporary objects (such as temp tables), those objects are treated as extension members for the remainder of the current session, but are automatically dropped at session end, as any temporary object would be. This is an exception to the rule that extension member objects cannot be dropped without dropping the whole extension.

### 36.17.1. Extension Files

The `CREATE EXTENSION` command relies on a control file for each extension, which must be named the same as the extension with a suffix of `.control`, and must be placed in the installation's `SHAREDIR/extension` directory. There must also be at least one SQL script file, which follows the naming pattern `extension--version.sql` (for example, `foo--1.0.sql` for version 1.0 of extension `foo`). By default, the script file(s) are also placed in the `SHAREDIR/extension` directory; but the control file can specify a different directory for the script file(s).

The file format for an extension control file is the same as for the `postgresql.conf` file, namely a list of `parameter_name = value` assignments, one per line. Blank lines and comments introduced by `#` are allowed. Be sure to quote any value that is not a single word or number.
Extending SQL

A control file can set the following parameters:

`directory (string)`

The directory containing the extension's SQL script file(s). Unless an absolute path is given, the name is relative to the installation's `SHAREDIR` directory. The default behavior is equivalent to specifying `directory = 'extension'`.

`default_version (string)`

The default version of the extension (the one that will be installed if no version is specified in `CREATE EXTENSION`). Although this can be omitted, that will result in `CREATE EXTENSION` failing if no `VERSION` option appears, so you generally don’t want to do that.

`comment (string)`

A comment (any string) about the extension. The comment is applied when initially creating an extension, but not during extension updates (since that might override user-added comments). Alternatively, the extension's comment can be set by writing a `COMMENT` command in the script file.

`encoding (string)`

The character set encoding used by the script file(s). This should be specified if the script files contain any non-ASCII characters. Otherwise the files will be assumed to be in the database encoding.

`module_pathname (string)`

The value of this parameter will be substituted for each occurrence of `MODULE_PATHNAME` in the script file(s). If it is not set, no substitution is made. Typically, this is set to `$libdir/shared_library_name` and then `MODULE_PATHNAME` is used in `CREATE FUNCTION` commands for C-language functions, so that the script files do not need to hard-wire the name of the shared library.

`requires (string)`

A list of names of extensions that this extension depends on, for example `requires = 'foo, bar'`. Those extensions must be installed before this one can be installed.

`superuser (boolean)`

If this parameter is `true` (which is the default), only superusers can create the extension or update it to a new version (but see also `trusted`, below). If it is set to `false`, just the privileges required to execute the commands in the installation or update script are required. This should normally be set to `true` if any of the script commands require superuser privileges. (Such commands would fail anyway, but it's more user-friendly to give the error up front.)

`trusted (boolean)`

This parameter, if set to `true` (which is not the default), allows some non-superusers to install an extension that has `superuser` set to `true`. Specifically, installation will be permitted for anyone who has `CREATE` privilege on the current database. When the user executing `CREATE EXTENSION` is not a superuser but is allowed to install by virtue of this parameter, then the installation or update script is run as the bootstrap superuser, not as the calling user. This parameter is irrelevant if `superuser` is `false`. Generally, this should not be set true for extensions that could allow access to otherwise-superuser-only abilities, such as file system access. Also, marking an extension `trusted` requires significant extra effort to write the extension's installation and update script(s) securely; see Section 36.17.6.

`relocatable (boolean)`

An extension is `relocatable` if it is possible to move its contained objects into a different schema after initial creation of the extension. The default is `false`, i.e., the extension is not relocatable. See Section 36.17.2 for more information.
This parameter can only be set for non-relocatable extensions. It forces the extension to be loaded into exactly the named schema and not any other. The `schema` parameter is consulted only when initially creating an extension, not during extension updates. See Section 36.17.2 for more information.

In addition to the primary control file `extension.control`, an extension can have secondary control files named in the style `extension--version.control`. If supplied, these must be located in the script file directory. Secondary control files follow the same format as the primary control file. Any parameters set in a secondary control file override the primary control file when installing or updating to that version of the extension. However, the parameters `directory` and `default_version` cannot be set in a secondary control file.

An extension’s SQL script files can contain any SQL commands, except for transaction control commands (`BEGIN`, `COMMIT`, etc) and commands that cannot be executed inside a transaction block (such as `VACUUM`). This is because the script files are implicitly executed within a transaction block.

An extension’s SQL script files can also contain lines beginning with `
`, which will be ignored (treated as comments) by the extension mechanism. This provision is commonly used to throw an error if the script file is fed to `psql` rather than being loaded via `CREATE EXTENSION` (see example script in Section 36.17.7). Without that, users might accidentally load the extension’s contents as “loose” objects rather than as an extension, a state of affairs that’s a bit tedious to recover from.

If the extension script contains the string `@extowner@`, that string is replaced with the (suitably quoted) name of the user calling `CREATE EXTENSION` or `ALTER EXTENSION`. Typically this feature is used by extensions that are marked trusted to assign ownership of selected objects to the calling user rather than the bootstrap superuser. (One should be careful about doing so, however. For example, assigning ownership of a C-language function to a non-superuser would create a privilege escalation path for that user.)

While the script files can contain any characters allowed by the specified encoding, control files should contain only plain ASCII, because there is no way for Postgres Pro to know what encoding a control file is in. In practice this is only an issue if you want to use non-ASCII characters in the extension’s comment. Recommended practice in that case is to not use the control file `comment` parameter, but instead use `COMMENT ON EXTENSION` within a script file to set the comment.

### 36.17.2. Extension Relocatability

Users often wish to load the objects contained in an extension into a different schema than the extension’s author had in mind. There are three supported levels of relocatability:

- **A fully relocatable extension** can be moved into another schema at any time, even after it’s been loaded into a database. This is done with the `ALTER EXTENSION SET SCHEMA` command, which automatically renames all the member objects into the new schema. Normally, this is only possible if the extension contains no internal assumptions about what schema any of its objects are in. Also, the extension’s objects must all be in one schema to begin with (ignoring objects that do not belong to any schema, such as procedural languages). Mark a fully relocatable extension by setting `relocatable = true` in its control file.

- **An extension might be relocatable during installation but not afterwards.** This is typically the case if the extension’s script file needs to reference the target schema explicitly, for example in setting `search_path` properties for SQL functions. For such an extension, set `relocatable = false` in its control file, and use `@extschema@` to refer to the target schema in the script file. All occurrences of this string will be replaced by the actual target schema’s name before the script is executed. The user can set the target schema using the `SCHEMA` option of `CREATE EXTENSION`.

- **If the extension does not support relocation at all,** set `relocatable = false` in its control file, and also set `schema` to the name of the intended target schema. This will prevent use of the `SCHEMA` option of `CREATE EXTENSION`, unless it specifies the same schema named in the control file. This choice is typically necessary if the extension contains internal assumptions about schema names that can’t be replaced by uses of `@extschema@`. The `@extschema@` substitution mechanism is
available in this case too, although it is of limited use since the schema name is determined by the control file.

In all cases, the script file will be executed with search_path initially set to point to the target schema; that is, CREATE EXTENSION does the equivalent of this:

```sql
SET LOCAL search_path TO @extschema@, pg_temp;
```

This allows the objects created by the script file to go into the target schema. The script file can change search_path if it wishes, but that is generally undesirable. search_path is restored to its previous setting upon completion of CREATE EXTENSION.

The target schema is determined by the schema parameter in the control file if that is given, otherwise by the SCHEMA option of CREATE EXTENSION if that is given, otherwise the current default object creation schema (the first one in the caller's search_path). When the control file schema parameter is used, the target schema will be created if it doesn't already exist, but in the other two cases it must already exist.

If any prerequisite extensions are listed in requires in the control file, their target schemas are added to the initial setting of search_path, following the new extension's target schema. This allows their objects to be visible to the new extension's script file.

For security, pg_temp is automatically appended to the end of search_path in all cases.

Although a non-relocatable extension can contain objects spread across multiple schemas, it is usually desirable to place all the objects meant for external use into a single schema, which is considered the extension's target schema. Such an arrangement works conveniently with the default setting of search_path during creation of dependent extensions.

### 36.17.3. Extension Configuration Tables

Some extensions include configuration tables, which contain data that might be added or changed by the user after installation of the extension. Ordinarily, if a table is part of an extension, neither the table's definition nor its content will be dumped by pg_dump. But that behavior is undesirable for a configuration table; any data changes made by the user need to be included in dumps, or the extension will behave differently after a dump and reload.

To solve this problem, an extension's script file can mark a table or a sequence it has created as a configuration relation, which will cause pg_dump to include the table's or the sequence's contents (not its definition) in dumps. To do that, call the function `pg_extension_config_dump(regclass, text)` after creating the table or the sequence, for example

```sql
CREATE TABLE my_config (key text, value text);
CREATE SEQUENCE my_config_seq;

SELECT pg_catalog.pg_extension_config_dump('my_config', '');
SELECT pg_catalog.pg_extension_config_dump('my_config_seq', '');
```

Any number of tables or sequences can be marked this way. Sequences associated with serial or bigserial columns can be marked as well.

When the second argument of `pg_extension_config_dump` is an empty string, the entire contents of the table are dumped by pg_dump. This is usually only correct if the table is initially empty as created by the extension script. If there is a mixture of initial data and user-provided data in the table, the second argument of `pg_extension_config_dump` provides a WHERE condition that selects the data to be dumped. For example, you might do

```sql
CREATE TABLE my_config (key text, value text, standard_entry boolean);

SELECT pg_catalog.pg_extension_config_dump('my_config', 'WHERE NOT standard_entry');
```

and then make sure that standard_entry is true only in the rows created by the extension's script.

For sequences, the second argument of `pg_extension_config_dump` has no effect.
More complicated situations, such as initially-provided rows that might be modified by users, can be handled by creating triggers on the configuration table to ensure that modified rows are marked correctly.

You can alter the filter condition associated with a configuration table by calling `pg_extension_config_dump` again. (This would typically be useful in an extension update script.) The only way to mark a table as no longer a configuration table is to dissociate it from the extension with `ALTER EXTENSION ... DROP TABLE`.

Note that foreign key relationships between these tables will dictate the order in which the tables are dumped out by `pg_dump`. Specifically, `pg_dump` will attempt to dump the referenced-by table before the referencing table. As the foreign key relationships are set up at `CREATE EXTENSION` time (prior to data being loaded into the tables) circular dependencies are not supported. When circular dependencies exist, the data will still be dumped out but the dump will not be able to be restored directly and user intervention will be required.

Sequences associated with `serial` or `bigserial` columns need to be directly marked to dump their state. Marking their parent relation is not enough for this purpose.

### 36.17.4. Extension Updates

One advantage of the extension mechanism is that it provides convenient ways to manage updates to the SQL commands that define an extension's objects. This is done by associating a version name or number with each released version of the extension's installation script. In addition, if you want users to be able to update their databases dynamically from one version to the next, you should provide *update scripts* that make the necessary changes to go from one version to the next. Update scripts have names following the pattern `extension--old_version--target_version.sql` (for example, `foo--1.0--1.1.sql` contains the commands to modify version 1.0 of extension `foo` into version 1.1).

Given that a suitable update script is available, the command `ALTER EXTENSION UPDATE` will update an installed extension to the specified new version. The update script is run in the same environment that `CREATE EXTENSION` provides for installation scripts: in particular, `search_path` is set up in the same way, and any new objects created by the script are automatically added to the extension. Also, if the script chooses to drop extension member objects, they are automatically dissociated from the extension.

If an extension has secondary control files, the control parameters that are used for an update script are those associated with the script's target (new) version.

`ALTER EXTENSION` is able to execute sequences of update script files to achieve a requested update. For example, if only `foo--1.0--1.1.sql` and `foo--1.1--2.0.sql` are available, `ALTER EXTENSION` will apply them in sequence if an update to version 2.0 is requested when 1.0 is currently installed.

Postgres Pro doesn't assume anything about the properties of version names: for example, it does not know whether 1.1 follows 1.0. It just matches up the available version names and follows the path that requires applying the fewest update scripts. (A version name can actually be any string that doesn't contain `--` or leading or trailing `-`.)

Sometimes it is useful to provide “downgrade” scripts, for example `foo--1.1--1.0.sql` to allow reverting the changes associated with version 1.1. If you do that, be careful of the possibility that a downgrade script might unexpectedly get applied because it yields a shorter path. The risky case is where there is a “fast path” update script that jumps ahead several versions as well as a downgrade script to the fast path’s start point. It might take fewer steps to apply the downgrade and then the fast path than to move ahead one version at a time. If the downgrade script drops any irreplaceable objects, this will yield undesirable results.

To check for unexpected update paths, use this command:

```sql
SELECT * FROM pg_extension_update_paths('extension_name');
```

This shows each pair of distinct known version names for the specified extension, together with the update path sequence that would be taken to get from the source version to the target version, or `NULL` if the path is not present.
if there is no available update path. The path is shown in textual form with `--` separators. You can use `regexp_split_to_array(path, '--')` if you prefer an array format.

### 36.17.5. Installing Extensions Using Update Scripts

An extension that has been around for awhile will probably exist in several versions, for which the author will need to write update scripts. For example, if you have released a `foo` extension in versions 1.0, 1.1, and 1.2, there should be update scripts `foo--1.0--1.1.sql` and `foo--1.1--1.2.sql`. Before Postgres Pro 10, it was necessary to also create new script files `foo--1.1.sql` and `foo--1.2.sql` that directly build the newer extension versions, or else the newer versions could not be installed directly, only by installing 1.0 and then updating. That was tedious and duplicative, but now it's unnecessary, because `CREATE EXTENSION` can follow update chains automatically. For example, if only the script files `foo--1.0.sql`, `foo--1.0--1.1.sql`, and `foo--1.1--1.2.sql` are available then a request to install version 1.2 is honored by running those three scripts in sequence. The processing is the same as if you'd first installed 1.0 and then updated to 1.2. (As with `ALTER EXTENSION UPDATE`, if multiple pathways are available then the shortest is preferred.) Arranging an extension's script files in this style can reduce the amount of maintenance effort needed to produce small updates.

If you use secondary (version-specific) control files with an extension maintained in this style, keep in mind that each version needs a control file even if it has no stand-alone installation script, as that control file will determine how the implicit update to that version is performed. For example, if `foo--1.0.control` specifies `requires = 'bar'` but `foo`'s other control files do not, the extension's dependency on `bar` will be dropped when updating from 1.0 to another version.

### 36.17.6. Security Considerations for Extensions

Widely-distributed extensions should assume little about the database they occupy. Therefore, it's appropriate to write functions provided by an extension in a secure style that cannot be compromised by search-path-based attacks.

An extension that has the `superuser` property set to true must also consider security hazards for the actions taken within its installation and update scripts. It is not terribly difficult for a malicious user to create trojan-horse objects that will compromise later execution of a carelessly-written extension script, allowing that user to acquire superuser privileges.

If an extension is marked `trusted`, then its installation schema can be selected by the installing user, who might intentionally use an insecure schema in hopes of gaining superuser privileges. Therefore, a trusted extension is extremely exposed from a security standpoint, and all its script commands must be carefully examined to ensure that no compromise is possible.

Advice about writing functions securely is provided in Section 36.17.6.1 below, and advice about writing installation scripts securely is provided in Section 36.17.6.2.

### 36.17.6.1. Security Considerations for Extension Functions

SQL-language and PL-language functions provided by extensions are at risk of search-path-based attacks when they are executed, since parsing of these functions occurs at execution time not creation time.

The `CREATE FUNCTION` reference page contains advice about writing `SECURITY DEFINER` functions safely. It's good practice to apply those techniques for any function provided by an extension, since the function might be called by a high-privilege user.

If you cannot set the `search_path` to contain only secure schemas, assume that each unqualified name could resolve to an object that a malicious user has defined. Beware of constructs that depend on `search_path` implicitly; for example, `IN` and `CASE expression WHEN` always select an operator using the `search_path`. In their place, use `OPERATOR(schema.=`) `ANY` and `CASE WHEN expression`.

A general-purpose extension usually should not assume that it's been installed into a secure schema, which means that even schema-qualified references to its own objects are not entirely risk-free.
For example, if the extension has defined a function `myschema.myfunc(bigint)` then a call such as `myschema.myfunc(42)` could be captured by a hostile function `myschema.myfunc(integer)`. Be careful that the data types of function and operator parameters exactly match the declared argument types, using explicit casts where necessary.

### 36.17.6.2. Security Considerations for Extension Scripts

An extension installation or update script should be written to guard against search-path-based attacks occurring when the script executes. If an object reference in the script can be made to resolve to some other object than the script author intended, then a compromise might occur immediately, or later when the mis-defined extension object is used.

DDL commands such as `CREATE FUNCTION` and `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` are generally secure, but beware of any command having a general-purpose expression as a component. For example, `CREATE VIEW` needs to be vetted, as does a `DEFAULT` expression in `CREATE FUNCTION`.

Sometimes an extension script might need to execute general-purpose SQL, for example to make catalog adjustments that aren't possible via DDL. Be careful to execute such commands with a secure `search_path`; do not trust the path provided by `CREATE/ALTER EXTENSION` to be secure. Best practice is to temporarily set `search_path` to `'pg_catalog, pg_temp'` and insert references to the extension's installation schema explicitly where needed. (This practice might also be helpful for creating views.)

Cross-extension references are extremely difficult to make fully secure, partially because of uncertainty about which schema the other extension is in. The hazards are reduced if both extensions are installed in the same schema, because then a hostile object cannot be placed ahead of the referenced extension in the installation-time `search_path`. However, no mechanism currently exists to require that. For now, best practice is to not mark an extension trusted if it depends on another one, unless that other one is always installed in `pg_catalog`.

Do not use `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION`, except in an update script that must change the definition of a function that is known to be an extension member already. (Likewise for other `OR REPLACE` options.) Using `OR REPLACE` unnecessarily not only has a risk of accidentally overwriting someone else's function, but it creates a security hazard since the overwritten function would still be owned by its original owner, who could modify it.

### 36.17.7. Extension Example

Here is a complete example of an SQL-only extension, a two-element composite type that can store any type of value in its slots, which are named “k” and “v”. Non-text values are automatically coerced to text for storage.

The script file `pair--1.0.sql` looks like this:

```sql
-- complain if script is sourced in psql, rather than via CREATE EXTENSION
\echo Use "CREATE EXTENSION pair" to load this file. \quit
CREATE TYPE pair AS ( k text, v text );

CREATE FUNCTION pair(text, text)
RETURNS pair LANGUAGE SQL AS 'SELECT ROW($1, $2)::@extschema@.pair;';

CREATE OPERATOR ~> (LEFTARG = text, RIGHTARG = text, FUNCTION = pair);

-- "SET search_path" is easy to get right, but qualified names perform better.
CREATE FUNCTION lower(pair)
RETURNS pair LANGUAGE SQL
AS 'SELECT ROW(lower($1.k), lower($1.v))::@extschema@.pair;'
SET search_path = pg_temp;
```

1024
CREATE FUNCTION pair_concat(pair, pair)
RETURNS pair LANGUAGE SQL
AS 'SELECT ROW($1.k OPERATOR(pg_catalog.||) $2.k,
$1.v OPERATOR(pg_catalog.||) $2.v)::@extschema@.pair;';

The control file pair.control looks like this:

# pair extension
comment = 'A key/value pair data type'
default_version = '1.0'
# cannot be relocatable because of use of @extschema@
relocatable = false

While you hardly need a makefile to install these two files into the correct directory, you could use a Makefile containing this:

EXTENSION = pair
DATA = pair--1.0.sql
PG_CONFIG = pg_config
PGXS := $(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --pgxs)
include $(PGXS)

This makefile relies on PGXS, which is described in Section 36.18. The command make install will install the control and script files into the correct directory as reported by pg_config.

Once the files are installed, use the CREATE EXTENSION command to load the objects into any particular database.

36.18. Extension Building Infrastructure

If you are thinking about distributing your Postgres Pro extension modules, setting up a portable build system for them can be fairly difficult. Therefore the Postgres Pro installation provides a build infrastructure for extensions, called PGXS, so that simple extension modules can be built simply against an already installed server. PGXS is mainly intended for extensions that include C code, although it can be used for pure-SQL extensions too. Note that PGXS is not intended to be a universal build system framework that can be used to build any software interfacing to Postgres Pro; it simply automates common build rules for simple server extension modules. For more complicated packages, you might need to write your own build system.

To use the PGXS infrastructure for your extension, you must write a simple makefile. In the makefile, you need to set some variables and include the global PGXS makefile. Here is an example that builds an extension module named isbn_isbn, consisting of a shared library containing some C code, an extension control file, an SQL script, an include file (only needed if other modules might need to access the extension functions without going via SQL), and a documentation text file:

MODULES = isbn_isbn
EXTENSION = isbn_isbn
DATA = isbn_isbn--1.0.sql
DOCS = README.isbn_isbn
HEADERS_isbn_isbn = isbn_isbn.h

PG_CONFIG = pg_config
PGXS := $(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --pgxs)
include $(PGXS)

The last three lines should always be the same. Earlier in the file, you assign variables or add custom make rules.

Set one of these three variables to specify what is built:
Extending SQL

MODULES

list of shared-library objects to be built from source files with same stem (do not include library suffixes in this list)

MODULE_big

a shared library to build from multiple source files (list object files in OBJJS)

PROGRAM

an executable program to build (list object files in OBJJS)

The following variables can also be set:

EXTENSION

extension name(s); for each name you must provide an extension.control file, which will be installed into prefix/share/extension

MODULEDIR

subdirectory of prefix/share into which DATA and DOCS files should be installed (if not set, default is extension if EXTENSION is set, or contrib if not)

DATA

random files to install into prefix/share/$MODULEDIR

DATA_built

random files to install into prefix/share/$MODULEDIR, which need to be built first

DATA_TSEARCH

random files to install under prefix/share/tsearch_data

DOCS

random files to install under prefix/doc/$MODULEDIR

HEADERS

HEADERS_built

Files to (optionally build and) install under prefix/include/server/$MODULEDIR/$MODULE_big.

Unlike DATA_built, files in HEADERS_built are not removed by the clean target; if you want them removed, also add them to EXTRA_CLEAN or add your own rules to do it.

HEADERS_$MODULE

HEADERS_built_$MODULE

Files to install (after building if specified) under prefix/include/server/$MODULEDIR/$MODULE, where $MODULE must be a module name used in MODULES or MODULE_big.

Unlike DATA_built, files in HEADERS_built_$MODULE are not removed by the clean target; if you want them removed, also add them to EXTRA_CLEAN or add your own rules to do it.

It is legal to use both variables for the same module, or any combination, unless you have two module names in the MODULES list that differ only by the presence of a prefix built_, which would cause ambiguity. In that (hopefully unlikely) case, you should use only the HEADERS_built_$MODULE variables.

SCRIPTS

script files (not binaries) to install into prefix/bin
SCRIPTS_built
  script files (not binaries) to install into prefix/bin, which need to be built first

REGRESS
  list of regression test cases (without suffix), see below

REGRESS_OPTS
  additional switches to pass to pg_regress

ISOLATION
  list of isolation test cases, see below for more details

ISOLATION_OPTS
  additional switches to pass to pg_isolation_regress

TAP_TESTS
  switch defining if TAP tests need to be run, see below

NO_INSTALL
  don't define an install target, useful for test modules that don't need their build products to be installed

NO_INSTALLCHECK
  don't define an installcheck target, useful e.g., if tests require special configuration, or don't use pg_regress

EXTRA_CLEAN
  extra files to remove in make clean

PG_CPPFLAGS
  will be prepended to CPPFLAGS

PG_CFLAGS
  will be appended to CFLAGS

PG_CXXFLAGS
  will be appended to CXXFLAGS

PG_LDFLAGS
  will be prepended to LDFLAGS

PG_LIBS
  will be added to PROGRAM link line

SHLIB_LINK
  will be added to MODULE_big link line

PG_CONFIG
  path to pg_config program for the Postgres Pro installation to build against (typically just pg_config to use the first one in your PATH)

Put this makefile as Makefile in the directory which holds your extension. Then you can do make to compile, and then make install to install your module. By default, the extension is compiled and
Extending SQL

installed for the Postgres Pro installation that corresponds to the first pg_config program found in your PATH. You can use a different installation by setting PG_CONFIG to point to its pg_config program, either within the makefile or on the make command line.

You can also run make in a directory outside the source tree of your extension, if you want to keep the build directory separate. This procedure is also called a VPATH build. Here's how:

```bash
mkdir build_dir
cd build_dir
make -f /path/to/extension/source/tree/Makefile
make -f /path/to/extension/source/tree/Makefile install
```

Alternatively, you can set up a directory for a VPATH build in a similar way to how it is done for the core code. One way to do this is using the core script config/prep_buildtree. Once this has been done you can build by setting the make variable VPATH like this:

```bash
make VPATH=/path/to/extension/source/tree
make VPATH=/path/to/extension/source/tree install
```

This procedure can work with a greater variety of directory layouts.

The scripts listed in the REGRESS variable are used for regression testing of your module, which can be invoked by make installcheck after doing make install. For this to work you must have a running Postgres Pro server. The script files listed in REGRESS must appear in a subdirectory named sql/ in your extension's directory. These files must have extension .sql, which must not be included in the REGRESS list in the makefile. For each test there should also be a file containing the expected output in a subdirectory named expected/, with the same stem and extension .out. make installcheck executes each test script with psql, and compares the resulting output to the matching expected file. Any differences will be written to the file regression.diffs in diff -c format. Note that trying to run a test that is missing its expected file will be reported as “trouble”, so make sure you have all expected files.

The scripts listed in the ISOLATION variable are used for tests stressing behavior of concurrent session with your module, which can be invoked by make installcheck after doing make install. For this to work you must have a running Postgres Pro server. The script files listed in ISOLATION must appear in a subdirectory named specs/ in your extension's directory. These files must have extension .spec, which must not be included in the ISOLATION list in the makefile. For each test there should also be a file containing the expected output in a subdirectory named expected/, with the same stem and extension .out. make installcheck executes each test script, and compares the resulting output to the matching expected file. Any differences will be written to the file output_iso/regression.diffs in diff -c format. Note that trying to run a test that is missing its expected file will be reported as “trouble”, so make sure you have all expected files.

TAP_TESTS enables the use of TAP tests. Data from each run is present in a subdirectory named tmp_check/.

Tip

The easiest way to create the expected files is to create empty files, then do a test run (which will of course report differences). Inspect the actual result files found in the results/ directory (for tests in REGRESS), or output_iso/results/ directory (for tests in ISOLATION), then copy them to expected/ if they match what you expect from the test.
Chapter 37. Triggers

This chapter provides general information about writing trigger functions. Trigger functions can be written in most of the available procedural languages, including PL/pgSQL (Chapter 41), PL/Tcl (Chapter 42), PL/Perl (Chapter 43), and PL/Python (Chapter 44). After reading this chapter, you should consult the chapter for your favorite procedural language to find out the language-specific details of writing a trigger in it.

It is also possible to write a trigger function in C, although most people find it easier to use one of the procedural languages. It is not currently possible to write a trigger function in the plain SQL function language.

37.1. Overview of Trigger Behavior

A trigger is a specification that the database should automatically execute a particular function whenever a certain type of operation is performed. Triggers can be attached to tables (partitioned or not), views, and foreign tables.

On tables and foreign tables, triggers can be defined to execute either before or after any INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE operation, either once per modified row, or once per SQL statement. UPDATE triggers can moreover be set to fire only if certain columns are mentioned in the SET clause of the UPDATE statement. Triggers can also fire for TRUNCATE statements. If a trigger event occurs, the trigger's function is called at the appropriate time to handle the event.

On views, triggers can be defined to execute instead of INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE operations. Such INSTEAD OF triggers are fired once for each row that needs to be modified in the view. It is the responsibility of the trigger's function to perform the necessary modifications to the view's underlying base table(s) and, where appropriate, return the modified row as it will appear in the view. Triggers on views can also be defined to execute once per SQL statement, before or after INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE operations. However, such triggers are fired only if there is also an INSTEAD OF trigger on the view. Otherwise, any statement targeting the view must be rewritten into a statement affecting its underlying base table(s), and then the triggers that will be fired are the ones attached to the base table(s).

The trigger function must be defined before the trigger itself can be created. The trigger function must be declared as a function taking no arguments and returning type trigger. (The trigger function receives its input through a specially-passed TriggerData structure, not in the form of ordinary function arguments.)

Once a suitable trigger function has been created, the trigger is established with CREATE TRIGGER. The same trigger function can be used for multiple triggers.

Postgres Pro offers both per-row triggers and per-statement triggers. With a per-row trigger, the trigger function is invoked once for each row that is affected by the statement that fired the trigger. In contrast, a per-statement trigger is invoked only once when an appropriate statement is executed, regardless of the number of rows affected by that statement. In particular, a statement that affects zero rows will still result in the execution of any applicable per-statement triggers. These two types of triggers are sometimes called row-level triggers and statement-level triggers, respectively. Triggers on TRUNCATE may only be defined at statement level, not per-row.

Triggers are also classified according to whether they fire before, after, or instead of the operation. These are referred to as BEFORE triggers, AFTER triggers, and INSTEAD OF triggers respectively. Statement-level BEFORE triggers naturally fire before the statement starts to do anything, while statement-level AFTER triggers fire at the very end of the statement. These types of triggers may be defined on tables, views, or foreign tables. Row-level BEFORE triggers fire immediately before a particular row is operated on, while row-level AFTER triggers fire at the end of the statement (but before any statement-level AFTER triggers). These types of triggers may only be defined on tables and foreign tables, not views. INSTEAD OF triggers may only be defined on views, and only at row level; they fire immediately as each row in the view is identified as needing to be operated on.
The execution of an **AFTER** trigger can be deferred to the end of the transaction, rather than the end of the statement, if it was defined as a **constraint trigger**. In all cases, a trigger is executed as part of the same transaction as the statement that triggered it, so if either the statement or the trigger causes an error, the effects of both will be rolled back.

A statement that targets a parent table in an inheritance or partitioning hierarchy does not cause the statement-level triggers of affected child tables to be fired; only the parent table’s statement-level triggers are fired. However, row-level triggers of any affected child tables will be fired.

If an **INSERT** contains an **ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE** clause, it is possible that the effects of row-level **BEFORE** triggers and row-level **BEFORE UPDATE** triggers can both be applied in a way that is apparent from the final state of the updated row, if an **EXCLUDED** column is referenced. There need not be an **EXCLUDED** column reference for both sets of row-level **BEFORE** triggers to execute, though. The possibility of surprising outcomes should be considered when there are both **BEFORE INSERT** and **BEFORE UPDATE** row-level triggers that change a row being inserted/updated (this can be problematic even if the modifications are more or less equivalent, if they’re not also idempotent). Note that statement-level **UPDATE** triggers are executed when **ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE** is specified, regardless of whether or not any rows were affected by the **UPDATE** (and regardless of whether the alternative **UPDATE** path was ever taken). An **INSERT** with an **ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE** clause will execute statement-level **BEFORE INSERT** triggers first, then statement-level **BEFORE UPDATE** triggers, followed by statement-level **AFTER UPDATE** triggers and finally statement-level **AFTER INSERT** triggers.

If an **UPDATE** on a partitioned table causes a row to move to another partition, it will be performed as a **DELETE** from the original partition followed by an **INSERT** into the new partition. In this case, all row-level **BEFORE INSERT** triggers and all row-level **BEFORE DELETE** triggers are fired on the original partition. Then all row-level **BEFORE INSERT** triggers are fired on the destination partition. The possibility of surprising outcomes should be considered when all these triggers affect the row being moved. As far as **AFTER** row triggers are concerned, **AFTER DELETE** and **AFTER INSERT** triggers are applied; but **AFTER UPDATE** triggers are not applied because the **UPDATE** has been converted to a **DELETE** and an **INSERT**. As far as statement-level triggers are concerned, none of the **DELETE** or **INSERT** triggers are fired, even if row movement occurs; only the **UPDATE** triggers defined on the target table used in the **UPDATE** statement will be fired.

Trigger functions invoked by per-statement triggers should always return **NULL**. Trigger functions invoked by per-row triggers can return a table row (a value of type **HeapTuple**) to the calling executor, if they choose. A row-level trigger fired before an operation has the following choices:

- It can return **NULL** to skip the operation for the current row. This instructs the executor to not perform the row-level operation that invoked the trigger (the insertion, modification, or deletion of a particular table row).
- For row-level **INSERT** and **UPDATE** triggers only, the returned row becomes the row that will be inserted or will replace the row being updated. This allows the trigger function to modify the row being inserted or updated.

A row-level **BEFORE** trigger that does not intend to cause either of these behaviors must be careful to return as its result the same row that was passed in (that is, the **NEW** row for **INSERT** and **UPDATE** triggers, the **OLD** row for **DELETE** triggers).

A row-level **INSTEAD OF** trigger should either return **NULL** to indicate that it did not modify any data from the view’s underlying base tables, or it should return the view row that was passed in (the **NEW** row for **INSERT** and **UPDATE** operations, or the **OLD** row for **DELETE** operations). A nonnull return value is used to signal that the trigger performed the necessary data modifications in the view. This will cause the count of the number of rows affected by the command to be incremented. For **INSERT** and **UPDATE** operations only, the trigger may modify the **NEW** row before returning it. This will change the data returned by **INSERT RETURNING** or **UPDATE RETURNING**, and is useful when the view will not show exactly the same data that was provided.

The return value is ignored for row-level triggers fired after an operation, and so they can return **NULL**.

Some considerations apply for generated columns. Stored generated columns are computed after **BEFORE** triggers and before **AFTER** triggers. Therefore, the generated value can be inspected in **AFTER** triggers. In
Triggers

**BEFORE** triggers, the **OLD** row contains the old generated value, as one would expect, but the **NEW** row does not yet contain the new generated value and should not be accessed. In the C language interface, the content of the column is undefined at this point; a higher-level programming language should prevent access to a stored generated column in the **NEW** row in a **BEFORE** trigger. Changes to the value of a generated column in a **BEFORE** trigger are ignored and will be overwritten.

If more than one trigger is defined for the same event on the same relation, the triggers will be fired in alphabetical order by trigger name. In the case of **BEFORE** and **INSTEAD OF** triggers, the possibly-modified row returned by each trigger becomes the input to the next trigger. If any **BEFORE** or **INSTEAD OF** trigger returns **NULL**, the operation is abandoned for that row and subsequent triggers are not fired (for that row).

A trigger definition can also specify a Boolean **WHEN** condition, which will be tested to see whether the trigger should be fired. In row-level triggers the **WHEN** condition can examine the old and/or new values of columns of the row. (Statement-level triggers can also have **WHEN** conditions, although the feature is not so useful for them.) In a **BEFORE** trigger, the **WHEN** condition is evaluated just before the function is or would be executed, so using **WHEN** is not materially different from testing the same condition at the beginning of the trigger function. However, in an **AFTER** trigger, the **WHEN** condition is evaluated just after the row update occurs, and it determines whether an event is queued to fire the trigger at the end of statement. So when an **AFTER** trigger's **WHEN** condition does not return true, it is not necessary to queue an event nor to re-fetch the row at end of statement. This can result in significant speedups in statements that modify many rows, if the trigger only needs to be fired for a few of the rows. **INSTEAD OF** triggers do not support **WHEN** conditions.

Typically, row-level **BEFORE** triggers are used for checking or modifying the data that will be inserted or updated. For example, a **BEFORE** trigger might be used to insert the current time into a **timestamp** column, or to check that two elements of the row are consistent. Row-level **AFTER** triggers are most sensibly used to propagate the updates to other tables, or make consistency checks against other tables. The reason for this division of labor is that an **AFTER** trigger can be certain it is seeing the final value of the row, while a **BEFORE** trigger cannot; there might be other **BEFORE** triggers firing after it. If you have no specific reason to make a trigger **BEFORE** or **AFTER**, the **BEFORE** case is more efficient, since the information about the operation doesn't have to be saved until end of statement.

If a trigger function executes SQL commands then these commands might fire triggers again. This is known as cascading triggers. There is no direct limitation on the number of cascade levels. It is possible for cascades to cause a recursive invocation of the same trigger; for example, an **INSERT** trigger might execute a command that inserts an additional row into the same table, causing the **INSERT** trigger to be fired again. It is the trigger programmer's responsibility to avoid infinite recursion in such scenarios.

When a trigger is being defined, arguments can be specified for it. The purpose of including arguments in the trigger definition is to allow different triggers with similar requirements to call the same function. As an example, there could be a generalized trigger function that takes as its arguments two column names and puts the current user in one and the current time stamp in the other. Properly written, this trigger function would be independent of the specific table it is triggering on. So the same function could be used for **INSERT** events on any table with suitable columns, to automatically track creation of records in a transaction table for example. It could also be used to track last-update events if defined as an **UPDATE** trigger.

Each programming language that supports triggers has its own method for making the trigger input data available to the trigger function. This input data includes the type of trigger event (e.g., **INSERT** or **UPDATE**) as well as any arguments that were listed in **CREATE TRIGGER**. For a row-level trigger, the input data also includes the **NEW** row for **INSERT** and **UPDATE** triggers, and/or the **OLD** row for **UPDATE** and **DELETE** triggers.

By default, statement-level triggers do not have any way to examine the individual row(s) modified by the statement. But an **AFTER STATEMENT** trigger can request that **transition tables** be created to make the sets of affected rows available to the trigger. **AFTER ROW** triggers can also request transition tables, so that they can see the total changes in the table as well as the change in the individual row they are currently...
being fired for. The method for examining the transition tables again depends on the programming language that is being used, but the typical approach is to make the transition tables act like read-only temporary tables that can be accessed by SQL commands issued within the trigger function.

### 37.2. Visibility of Data Changes

If you execute SQL commands in your trigger function, and these commands access the table that the trigger is for, then you need to be aware of the data visibility rules, because they determine whether these SQL commands will see the data change that the trigger is fired for. Briefly:

- **Statement-level triggers** follow simple visibility rules: none of the changes made by a statement are visible to statement-level **BEFORE** triggers, whereas all modifications are visible to statement-level **AFTER** triggers.

- The data change (insertion, update, or deletion) causing the trigger to fire is naturally not visible to SQL commands executed in a row-level **BEFORE** trigger, because it hasn't happened yet.

- However, SQL commands executed in a row-level **BEFORE** trigger will see the effects of data changes for rows previously processed in the same outer command. This requires caution, since the ordering of these change events is not in general predictable; an SQL command that affects multiple rows can visit the rows in any order.

- Similarly, a row-level **INSTEAD OF** trigger will see the effects of data changes made by previous firings of **INSTEAD OF** triggers in the same outer command.

- When a row-level **AFTER** trigger is fired, all data changes made by the outer command are already complete, and are visible to the invoked trigger function.

If your trigger function is written in any of the standard procedural languages, then the above statements apply only if the function is declared **VOLATILE**. Functions that are declared **STABLE** or **IMMUTABLE** will not see changes made by the calling command in any case.

Further information about data visibility rules can be found in Section 45.5. The example in Section 37.4 contains a demonstration of these rules.

### 37.3. Writing Trigger Functions in C

This section describes the low-level details of the interface to a trigger function. This information is only needed when writing trigger functions in C. If you are using a higher-level language then these details are handled for you. In most cases you should consider using a procedural language before writing your triggers in C. The documentation of each procedural language explains how to write a trigger in that language.

Trigger functions must use the “version 1” function manager interface.

When a function is called by the trigger manager, it is not passed any normal arguments, but it is passed a “context” pointer pointing to a **TriggerData** structure. C functions can check whether they were called from the trigger manager or not by executing the macro:

```c
CALLED_AS_TRIGGER(fcinfo)
```

which expands to:

```c
((fcinfo)->context != NULL && IsA((fcinfo)->context, TriggerData))
```

If this returns true, then it is safe to cast `fcinfo->context` to type `TriggerData *` and make use of the pointed-to **TriggerData** structure. The function must not alter the **TriggerData** structure or any of the data it points to.

**struct TriggerData is defined in** `commands/trigger.h`:

```c
typedef struct TriggerData
```
Triggers

{
    NodeTag          type;
    TriggerEvent     tg_event;
    Relation         tg_relation;
    HeapTuple        tg_trigtuple;
    HeapTuple        tg_newtuple;
    Trigger         *tg_trigger;
    TupleTableSlot  *tg_trigslot;
    TupleTableSlot  *tg_newslot;
    Tuplestorestate *tg_oldtable;
    Tuplestorestate *tg_newtable;
    const Bitmapset *tg_updatedcols;
} TriggerData;

where the members are defined as follows:

type

    Always t_TriggerData.

tg_event

Describes the event for which the function is called. You can use the following macros to examine tg_event:

    TRIGGER_FIRED_BEFORE(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger fired before the operation.

    TRIGGER_FIRED_AFTER(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger fired after the operation.

    TRIGGER_FIRED_INSTEAD(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger fired instead of the operation.

    TRIGGER_FIRED_FOR_ROW(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger fired for a row-level event.

    TRIGGER_FIRED_FOR_STATEMENT(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger fired for a statement-level event.

    TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_INSERT(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger was fired by an INSERT command.

    TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_UPDATE(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger was fired by an UPDATE command.

    TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_DELETE(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger was fired by a DELETE command.

    TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_TRUNCATE(tg_event)

        Returns true if the trigger was fired by a TRUNCATE command.

tg_relation

A pointer to a structure describing the relation that the trigger fired for. Look at utils/rel.h for details about this structure. The most interesting things are tg_relation->rd_att (descriptor of
the relation tuples) and tg_relation->rd_rel->relname (relation name; the type is not char* but NameData; use SPI_getrelname(tg_relation) to get a char* if you need a copy of the name).

**tg_trigtuple**

A pointer to the row for which the trigger was fired. This is the row being inserted, updated, or deleted. If this trigger was fired for an INSERT or DELETE then this is what you should return from the function if you don't want to replace the row with a different one (in the case of INSERT) or skip the operation. For triggers on foreign tables, values of system columns herein are unspecified.

**tg_newtuple**

A pointer to the new version of the row, if the trigger was fired for an UPDATE, and NULL if it is for an INSERT or a DELETE. This is what you have to return from the function if the event is an UPDATE and you don't want to replace this row by a different one or skip the operation. For triggers on foreign tables, values of system columns herein are unspecified.

**tg_trigger**

A pointer to a structure of type Trigger, defined in utils/reltrigger.h:

```c
typedef struct Trigger {
    Oid         tgoid;
    char       *tgname;
    Oid         tgfoid;
    int16       tgtype;
    char        tgenabled;
    bool       tgisinternal;
    Oid         tgconstrrelid;
    Oid         tgconstrindid;
    Oid         tgconstraint;
    bool        tgdeferrable;
    bool       tginitdeferred;
    int16       tgnargs;
    int16       tgnattr;
    int16      *tgattr;
    char      **tgargs;
    char       *tgqual;
    char       *tgoldtable;
    char       *tgnewtable;
} Trigger;
```

where tgname is the trigger's name, tgnargs is the number of arguments in tgargs, and tgargs is an array of pointers to the arguments specified in the CREATE TRIGGER statement. The other members are for internal use only.

**tg_trigslot**

The slot containing tg_trigtuple, or a NULL pointer if there is no such tuple.

**tg_newslot**

The slot containing tg_newtuple, or a NULL pointer if there is no such tuple.

**tg_oldtable**

A pointer to a structure of type Tuplestorestate containing zero or more rows in the format specified by tg_relation, or a NULL pointer if there is no OLD TABLE transition relation.

**tg_newtable**

A pointer to a structure of type Tuplestorestate containing zero or more rows in the format specified by tg_relation, or a NULL pointer if there is no NEW TABLE transition relation.
tg_updatedcols

For UPDATE triggers, a bitmap set indicating the columns that were updated by the triggering command. Generic trigger functions can use this to optimize actions by not having to deal with columns that were not changed.

As an example, to determine whether a column with attribute number attnum (1-based) is a member of this bitmap set, call bms_is_member(attnum - FirstLowInvalidHeapAttributeNumber, trigdata->tg_updatedcols).

For triggers other than UPDATE triggers, this will be NULL.

To allow queries issued through SPI to reference transition tables, see SPI_register_trigger_data.

A trigger function must return either a HeapTuple pointer or a NULL pointer (not an SQL null value, that is, do not setisNull true). Be careful to return either tg_trigtuple or tg_newtuple, as appropriate, if you don't want to modify the row being operated on.

37.4. A Complete Trigger Example

Here is a very simple example of a trigger function written in C. (Examples of triggers written in procedural languages can be found in the documentation of the procedural languages.)

The function trigf reports the number of rows in the table ttest and skips the actual operation if the command attempts to insert a null value into the column x. (So the trigger acts as a not-null constraint but doesn't abort the transaction.)

First, the table definition:

```
CREATE TABLE ttest (
    x integer
);
```

This is the source code of the trigger function:

```
#include "postgres.h"
#include "fmgr.h"
#include "executor/spi.h"       /* this is what you need to work with SPI */
#include "commands/trigger.h"   /* ... triggers ... */
#include "utils/rel.h"          /* ... and relations */

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(trigf);

Datum
trigf(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    TriggerData *trigdata = (TriggerData *) fcinfo->context;
    TupleDesc   tupdesc;
    HeapTuple   rettuple;
    char        *when;
    bool        checknull = false;
    bool        isnull;
    int         ret, i;

    /* make sure it's called as a trigger at all */
    if (!CALLED_AS_TRIGGER(fcinfo))
        elog(ERROR, "trigf: not called by trigger manager");
```
Triggers

/* tuple to return to executor */
if (TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_UPDATE(trigdata->tg_event))
    rettuple = trigdata->tg_newtuple;
else
    rettuple = trigdata->tg_trigtuple;

/* check for null values */
if (!TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_DELETE(trigdata->tg_event)
    && TRIGGER_FIRED_BEFORE(trigdata->tg_event))
    checknull = true;

if (TRIGGER_FIRED_BEFORE(trigdata->tg_event))
    when = "before";
else
    when = "after ";

  tupdesc = trigdata->tg_relation->rd_att;

/* connect to SPI manager */
if ((ret = SPI_connect()) < 0)
    elog(ERROR, "trigf (fired %s): SPI_connect returned %d", when, ret);

/* get number of rows in table */
ret = SPI_exec("SELECT count(*) FROM ttest", 0);

if (ret < 0)
    elog(ERROR, "trigf (fired %s): SPI_exec returned %d", when, ret);

/* count(*) returns int8, so be careful to convert */
i = DatumGetInt64(SPI_getbinval(SPI_tuptable->vals[0],
    SPI_tuptable->tupdesc,
    1,
    &isnull));

  elog (INFO, "trigf (fired %s): there are %d rows in ttest", when, i);

SPI_finish();

if (checknull)
{
    SPI_getbinval(rettuple, tupdesc, 1, &isnull);
    if (isnull)
        rettuple = NULL;
}

return PointerGetDatum(rettuple);

After you have compiled the source code (see Section 36.10.5), declare the function and the triggers:

CREATE FUNCTION trigf() RETURNS trigger
AS 'filename'
LANGUAGE C;

CREATE TRIGGER tbefore BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON ttest
    FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION trigf();

CREATE TRIGGER tafter AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON ttest
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION trigf();

Now you can test the operation of the trigger:

=> INSERT INTO ttest VALUES (NULL);
INFO: trigf (fired before): there are 0 rows in ttest
INSERT 0 0

-- Insertion skipped and AFTER trigger is not fired

=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
(0 rows)

=> INSERT INTO ttest VALUES (1);
INFO: trigf (fired before): there are 0 rows in ttest
INFO: trigf (fired after ): there are 1 rows in ttest

  remember what we said about visibility.

INSERT 167793 1
vac=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
 1
(1 row)

=> INSERT INTO ttest SELECT x * 2 FROM ttest;
INFO: trigf (fired before): there are 1 rows in ttest
INFO: trigf (fired after ): there are 2 rows in ttest

  remember what we said about visibility.

INSERT 167794 1
=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
 1
 2
(2 rows)

=> UPDATE ttest SET x = NULL WHERE x = 2;
INFO: trigf (fired before): there are 2 rows in ttest
UPDATE 0

=> UPDATE ttest SET x = 4 WHERE x = 2;
INFO: trigf (fired before): there are 2 rows in ttest
INFO: trigf (fired after ): there are 2 rows in ttest
UPDATE 1
vac=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
 1
 4
(2 rows)

=> DELETE FROM ttest;
INFO: trigf (fired before): there are 2 rows in ttest
INFO: trigf (fired before): there are 1 rows in ttest
INFO: trigf (fired after ): there are 0 rows in ttest
INFO: trigf (fired after ): there are 0 rows in ttest
Triggers

^^^^^^
remember what we said about visibility.

DELETE 2
=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
   x
---
(0 rows)
Chapter 38. Event Triggers

To supplement the trigger mechanism discussed in Chapter 37, Postgres Pro also provides event triggers. Unlike regular triggers, which are attached to a single table and capture only DML events, event triggers are global to a particular database and are capable of capturing DDL events.

Like regular triggers, event triggers can be written in any procedural language that includes event trigger support, or in C, but not in plain SQL.

38.1. Overview of Event Trigger Behavior

An event trigger fires whenever the event with which it is associated occurs in the database in which it is defined. Currently, the only supported events are `ddl_command_start`, `ddl_command_end`, `table_rewrite` and `sql_drop`. Support for additional events may be added in future releases.

The `ddl_command_start` event occurs just before the execution of a `CREATE`, `ALTER`, `DROP`, `SECURITY LABEL`, `COMMENT`, `GRANT` or `REVOKE` command. No check whether the affected object exists or doesn't exist is performed before the event trigger fires. As an exception, however, this event does not occur for DDL commands targeting shared objects — databases, roles, and tablespaces — or for commands targeting event triggers themselves. The event trigger mechanism does not support these object types. `ddl_command_start` also occurs just before the execution of a `SELECT INTO` command, since this is equivalent to `CREATE TABLE AS`.

The `ddl_command_end` event occurs just after the execution of this same set of commands. To obtain more details on the DDL operations that took place, use the set-returning function `pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands()` from the `ddl_command_end` event trigger code (see Section 9.29). Note that the trigger fires after the actions have taken place (but before the transaction commits), and thus the system catalogs can be read as already changed.

The `sql_drop` event occurs just before the `ddl_command_end` event trigger for any operation that drops database objects. To list the objects that have been dropped, use the set-returning function `pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects()` from the `sql_drop` event trigger code (see Section 9.29). Note that the trigger is executed after the objects have been deleted from the system catalogs, so it's not possible to look them up anymore.

The `table_rewrite` event occurs just before a table is rewritten by some actions of the commands `ALTER TABLE` and `ALTER TYPE`. While other control statements are available to rewrite a table, like `CLUSTER` and `VACUUM`, the `table_rewrite` event is not triggered by them.

Event triggers (like other functions) cannot be executed in an aborted transaction. Thus, if a DDL command fails with an error, any associated `ddl_command_end` triggers will not be executed. Conversely, if a `ddl_command_start` trigger fails with an error, no further event triggers will fire, and no attempt will be made to execute the command itself. Similarly, if a `ddl_command_end` trigger fails with an error, the effects of the DDL statement will be rolled back, just as they would be in any other case where the containing transaction aborts.

For a complete list of commands supported by the event trigger mechanism, see Section 38.2.

Event triggers are created using the command `CREATE EVENT TRIGGER`. In order to create an event trigger, you must first create a function with the special return type `event_trigger`. This function need not (and may not) return a value; the return type serves merely as a signal that the function is to be invoked as an event trigger.

If more than one event trigger is defined for a particular event, they will fire in alphabetical order by trigger name.

A trigger definition can also specify a `WHEN` condition so that, for example, a `ddl_command_start` trigger can be fired only for particular commands which the user wishes to intercept. A common use of such triggers is to restrict the range of DDL operations which users may perform.
38.2. Event Trigger Firing Matrix

Table 38.1 lists all commands for which event triggers are supported.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Tag</th>
<th>ddl_command_start</th>
<th>ddl_command_end</th>
<th>sql_drop</th>
<th>table_rewrite</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALTER AGGREGATE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER COLLATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER CONVERSION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER DOMAIN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER EXTENSION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER FOREIGN TABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER FUNCTION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER LANGUAGE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER LARGE OBJECT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER OPERATOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER OPERATOR CLASS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER POLICY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER PROCEDURE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER PUBLICATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER SCHEMA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER SEQUENCE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER SERVER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER STATISTICS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER SUBSCRIPTION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER TABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER TRIGGER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER TYPE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER USER MAPPING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER VIEW</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Event Triggers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Tag</th>
<th>ddl_command_start</th>
<th>ddl_command_end</th>
<th>sql_drop</th>
<th>table_rewrite</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMMENT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Only for local objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE ACCESS METHOD</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE AGGREGATE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE CAST</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE COLLATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE CONVERSION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE DOMAIN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE EXTENSION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE FOREIGN TABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE FUNCTION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE INDEX</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE LANGUAGE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE OPERATOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE OPERATOR CLASS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE POLICY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE PROCEDURE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE PUBLICATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE RULE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE SCHEMA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE SEQUENCE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE SERVER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE STATISTICS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE SUBSCRIPTION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TABLE AS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TRIGGER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TYPE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Tag</td>
<td>ddl_command_start</td>
<td>ddl_command_end</td>
<td>sql_drop</td>
<td>table_rewrite</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE USER MAPPING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE VIEW</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP ACCESS METHOD</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP AGGREGATE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP CAST</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP COLLATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP CONVERSION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP DOMAIN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP EXTENSION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP FOREIGN TABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP FUNCTION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP INDEX</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP LANGUAGE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP OPERATOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP OPERATOR CLASS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP OPERATOR FAMILY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP OWNED</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP POLICY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP PROCEDURE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP PUBLICATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP RULE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP SCHEMA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP SEQUENCE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP SERVER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP STATISTICS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP SUBSCRIPTION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP TABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP TRIGGER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP TYPE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Event Triggers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Tag</th>
<th>ddl_command_start</th>
<th>ddl_command_end</th>
<th>sql_drop</th>
<th>table_rewrite</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DROP USER MAPPING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP VIEW</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRANT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>- Only for local objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVOKE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>- Only for local objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECURITY LABEL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>- Only for local objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT INTO</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

38.3. Writing Event Trigger Functions in C

This section describes the low-level details of the interface to an event trigger function. This information is only needed when writing event trigger functions in C. If you are using a higher-level language then these details are handled for you. In most cases you should consider using a procedural language before writing your event triggers in C. The documentation of each procedural language explains how to write an event trigger in that language.

Event trigger functions must use the “version 1” function manager interface.

When a function is called by the event trigger manager, it is not passed any normal arguments, but it is passed a “context” pointer pointing to an EventTriggerData structure. C functions can check whether they were called from the event trigger manager or not by executing the macro:

```
CALLED_AS_EVENT_TRIGGER(fcinfo)
```

which expands to:

```
((fcinfo)->context != NULL && IsA((fcinfo)->context, EventTriggerData))
```

If this returns true, then it is safe to cast fcinfo->context to type EventTriggerData * and make use of the pointed-to EventTriggerData structure. The function must not alter the EventTriggerData structure or any of the data it points to.

struct EventTriggerData is defined in commands/event_trigger.h:

typedef struct EventTriggerData
{
    NodeTag type;
    const char *event; /* event name */
    Node *parsetree; /* parse tree */
    CommandTag tag; /* command tag */
} EventTriggerData;

where the members are defined as follows:

type
    Always T_EventTriggerData.

event
    Describes the event for which the function is called, one of "ddl_command_start", "ddl_command_end", "sql_drop", "table_rewrite". See Section 38.1 for the meaning of these events.
Event Triggers

**parsetree**

A pointer to the parse tree of the command. Check the Postgres Pro source code for details. The parse tree structure is subject to change without notice.

**tag**

The command tag associated with the event for which the event trigger is run, for example "CREATE FUNCTION".

An event trigger function must return a NULL pointer (not an SQL null value, that is, do not set *isNull* true).

### 38.4. A Complete Event Trigger Example

Here is a very simple example of an event trigger function written in C. (Examples of triggers written in procedural languages can be found in the documentation of the procedural languages.)

The function `noddl` raises an exception each time it is called. The event trigger definition associated the function with the `ddl_command_start` event. The effect is that all DDL commands (with the exceptions mentioned in Section 38.1) are prevented from running.

This is the source code of the trigger function:

```c
#include "postgres.h"
#include "commands/event_trigger.h"

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(noddl);

Datum
noddl(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    EventTriggerData *trigdata;

    if (!CALLED_AS_EVENT_TRIGGER(fcinfo)) /* internal error */
        elog(ERROR, "not fired by event trigger manager");

    trigdata = (EventTriggerData *) fcinfo->context;

    ereport(ERROR,
        (errcode(ERRCODE_INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE),
            errmsg("command "%s" denied", trigdata->tag)));

    PG_RETURN_NULL();
}
```

After you have compiled the source code (see Section 36.10.5), declare the function and the triggers:

```
CREATE FUNCTION noddl() RETURNS event_trigger
    AS 'noddl' LANGUAGE C;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER noddl ON ddl_command_start
    EXECUTE FUNCTION noddl();
```

Now you can test the operation of the trigger:

```
=# \
y
        List of event triggers
```
Event Triggers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Owner</th>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Tags</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>noddl</td>
<td>ddl_command_start</td>
<td>dim</td>
<td>enabled</td>
<td>noddl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

```sql
=# CREATE TABLE foo(id serial);
ERROR:  command "CREATE TABLE" denied
```

In this situation, in order to be able to run some DDL commands when you need to do so, you have to either drop the event trigger or disable it. It can be convenient to disable the trigger for only the duration of a transaction:

```sql
BEGIN;
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER noddl DISABLE;
CREATE TABLE foo (id serial);
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER noddl ENABLE;
COMMIT;
```

(Recall that DDL commands on event triggers themselves are not affected by event triggers.)

### 38.5. A Table Rewrite Event Trigger Example

Thanks to the `table_rewrite` event, it is possible to implement a table rewriting policy only allowing the rewrite in maintenance windows.

Here’s an example implementing such a policy.

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION no_rewrite()
RETURNS event_trigger
LANGUAGE plpgsql AS
$$
---
--- Implement local Table Rewriting policy:
--- public.foo is not allowed rewriting, ever
--- other tables are only allowed rewriting between 1am and 6am
--- unless they have more than 100 blocks
---
DECLARE
  table_oid oid := pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid();
  current_hour integer := extract('hour' from current_time);
  pages integer;
  max_pages integer := 100;
BEGIN
  IF pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid() = 'public.foo'::regclass THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'you''re not allowed to rewrite the table %',
      table_oid::regclass;
  END IF;

  SELECT INTO pages relpages FROM pg_class WHERE oid = table_oid;
  IF pages > max_pages THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'rewrites only allowed for table with less than % pages',
      max_pages;
  END IF;

  IF current_hour NOT BETWEEN 1 AND 6 THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'rewrites only allowed between 1am and 6am';
  END IF;
$$
```

1045
END;
$$;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER no_rewrite_allowed
    ON table_rewrite
    EXECUTE FUNCTION no_rewrite();
Chapter 39. The Rule System

This chapter discusses the rule system in Postgres Pro. Production rule systems are conceptually simple, but there are many subtle points involved in actually using them.

Some other database systems define active database rules, which are usually stored procedures and triggers. In Postgres Pro, these can be implemented using functions and triggers as well.

The rule system (more precisely speaking, the query rewrite rule system) is totally different from stored procedures and triggers. It modifies queries to take rules into consideration, and then passes the modified query to the query planner for planning and execution. It is very powerful, and can be used for many things such as query language procedures, views, and versions. The theoretical foundations and the power of this rule system are also discussed in ston90b and ong90.

39.1. The Query Tree

To understand how the rule system works it is necessary to know when it is invoked and what its input and results are.

The rule system is located between the parser and the planner. It takes the output of the parser, one query tree, and the user-defined rewrite rules, which are also query trees with some extra information, and creates zero or more query trees as result. So its input and output are always things the parser itself could have produced and thus, anything it sees is basically representable as an SQL statement.

Now what is a query tree? It is an internal representation of an SQL statement where the single parts that it is built from are stored separately. These query trees can be shown in the server log if you set the configuration parameters debug_print_parse, debug_print_rewritten, or debug_print_plan. The rule actions are also stored as query trees, in the system catalog pg_rewrite. They are not formatted like the log output, but they contain exactly the same information.

Reading a raw query tree requires some experience. But since SQL representations of query trees are sufficient to understand the rule system, this chapter will not teach how to read them.

When reading the SQL representations of the query trees in this chapter it is necessary to be able to identify the parts the statement is broken into when it is in the query tree structure. The parts of a query tree are

the command type

This is a simple value telling which command (SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE) produced the query tree.

the range table

The range table is a list of relations that are used in the query. In a SELECT statement these are the relations given after the FROM key word.

Every range table entry identifies a table or view and tells by which name it is called in the other parts of the query. In the query tree, the range table entries are referenced by number rather than by name, so here it doesn't matter if there are duplicate names as it would in an SQL statement. This can happen after the range tables of rules have been merged in. The examples in this chapter will not have this situation.

the result relation

This is an index into the range table that identifies the relation where the results of the query go.

SELECT queries don't have a result relation. (The special case of SELECT INTO is mostly identical to CREATE TABLE followed by INSERT ... SELECT, and is not discussed separately here.)

For INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE commands, the result relation is the table (or view!) where the changes are to take effect.
The Rule System

the target list

The target list is a list of expressions that define the result of the query. In the case of a SELECT, these expressions are the ones that build the final output of the query. They correspond to the expressions between the key words SELECT and FROM. (* is just an abbreviation for all the column names of a relation. It is expanded by the parser into the individual columns, so the rule system never sees it.)

DELETE commands don't need a normal target list because they don't produce any result. Instead, the planner adds a special CTID entry to the empty target list, to allow the executor to find the row to be deleted. (CTID is added when the result relation is an ordinary table. If it is a view, a whole-row variable is added instead, by the rule system, as described in Section 39.2.4.)

For INSERT commands, the target list describes the new rows that should go into the result relation. It consists of the expressions in the VALUES clause or the ones from the SELECT clause in INSERT ... SELECT. The first step of the rewrite process adds target list entries for any columns that were not assigned to by the original command but have defaults. Any remaining columns (with neither a given value nor a default) will be filled in by the planner with a constant null expression.

For UPDATE commands, the target list describes the new rows that should replace the old ones. In the rule system, it contains just the expressions from the SET column = expression part of the command. The planner will handle missing columns by inserting expressions that copy the values from the old row into the new one. Just as for DELETE, a CTID or whole-row variable is added so that the executor can identify the old row to be updated.

Every entry in the target list contains an expression that can be a constant value, a variable pointing to a column of one of the relations in the range table, a parameter, or an expression tree made of function calls, constants, variables, operators, etc.

the qualification

The query's qualification is an expression much like one of those contained in the target list entries. The result value of this expression is a Boolean that tells whether the operation (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or SELECT) for the final result row should be executed or not. It corresponds to the WHERE clause of an SQL statement.

the join tree

The query's join tree shows the structure of the FROM clause. For a simple query like SELECT ... FROM a, b, c, the join tree is just a list of the FROM items, because we are allowed to join them in any order. But when JOIN expressions, particularly outer joins, are used, we have to join in the order shown by the joins. In that case, the join tree shows the structure of the JOIN expressions. The restrictions associated with particular JOIN clauses (from ON or USING expressions) are stored as qualification expressions attached to those join-tree nodes. It turns out to be convenient to store the top-level WHERE expression as a qualification attached to the top-level join-tree item, too. So really the join tree represents both the FROM and WHERE clauses of a SELECT.

the others

The other parts of the query tree like the ORDER BY clause aren't of interest here. The rule system substitutes some entries there while applying rules, but that doesn't have much to do with the fundamentals of the rule system.

39.2. Views and the Rule System

Views in Postgres Pro are implemented using the rule system. In fact, there is essentially no difference between:

CREATE VIEW myview AS SELECT * FROM mytab;

compared against the two commands:

CREATE TABLE myview (same column list as mytab);
The Rule System

CREATE RULE "_RETURN" AS ON SELECT TO myview DO INSTEAD
   SELECT * FROM mytab;

because this is exactly what the CREATE VIEW command does internally. This has some side effects. One
of them is that the information about a view in the Postgres Pro system catalogs is exactly the same as
it is for a table. So for the parser, there is absolutely no difference between a table and a view. They
are the same thing: relations.

39.2.1. How SELECT Rules Work

Rules ON SELECT are applied to all queries as the last step, even if the command given is an INSERT,
UPDATE or DELETE. And they have different semantics from rules on the other command types in that
they modify the query tree in place instead of creating a new one. So SELECT rules are described first.

Currently, there can be only one action in an ON SELECT rule, and it must be an unconditional SELECT
action that is INSTEAD. This restriction was required to make rules safe enough to open them for ordinary
users, and it restricts ON SELECT rules to act like views.

The examples for this chapter are two join views that do some calculations and some more views using
them in turn. One of the two first views is customized later by adding rules for INSERT, UPDATE, and
DELETE operations so that the final result will be a view that behaves like a real table with some magic
functionality. This is not such a simple example to start from and this makes things harder to get into.
But it’s better to have one example that covers all the points discussed step by step rather than having
many different ones that might mix up in mind.

The real tables we need in the first two rule system descriptions are these:

```sql
CREATE TABLE shoe_data (
    shoename   text,          -- primary key
    sh_avail   integer,       -- available number of pairs
    slcolor    text,          -- preferred shoelace color
    slminlen   real,          -- minimum shoelace length
    slmaxlen   real,          -- maximum shoelace length
    slunit     text           -- length unit
);
CREATE TABLE shoelace_data (
    sl_name    text,          -- primary key
    sl_avail   integer,       -- available number of pairs
    sl_color   text,          -- shoelace color
    sl_len     real,          -- shoelace length
    sl_unit    text           -- length unit
);
CREATE TABLE unit (
    un_name    text,          -- primary key
    un_fact    real           -- factor to transform to cm
);
```

As you can see, they represent shoe-store data.

The views are created as:

```sql
CREATE VIEW shoe AS
    SELECT sh.shoename,
           sh.sh_avail,
           sh.slcolor,
           sh.slminlen,
           sh.slminlen * un.un_fact AS slminlen_cm,
           sh.slmaxlen,
```
The Rule System

```
sh.slmaxlen * un.un_fact AS slmaxlen_cm,
sh.slunit
FROM shoe_data sh, unit un
WHERE sh.slunit = un.un_name;

CREATE VIEW shoelace AS
SELECT s.sl_name,
    s.sl_avail,
    s.sl_color,
    s.sl_len,
    s.sl_unit,
    s.sl_len * u.un_fact AS sl_len_cm
FROM shoelace_data s, unit u
WHERE s.sl_unit = u.un_name;

CREATE VIEW shoe_ready AS
SELECT rsh.shoename,
    rsh.sh_avail,
    rsl.sl_name,
    rsl.sl_avail,
    least(rsh.sh_avail, rsl.sl_avail) AS total_avail
FROM shoe rsh, shoelace rsl
WHERE rsl.sl_color = rsh.slcolor
    AND rsl.sl_len_cm >= rsh.slminlen_cm
    AND rsl.sl_len_cm <= rsh.slmaxlen_cm;
```

The CREATE VIEW command for the shoelace view (which is the simplest one we have) will create a relation shoelace and an entry in pg_rewrite that tells that there is a rewrite rule that must be applied whenever the relation shoelace is referenced in a query's range table. The rule has no rule qualification (discussed later, with the non-SELECT rules, since SELECT rules currently cannot have them) and it is INSTEAD. Note that rule qualifications are not the same as query qualifications. The action of our rule has a query qualification. The action of the rule is one query tree that is a copy of the SELECT statement in the view creation command.

Note

The two extra range table entries for NEW and OLD that you can see in the pg_rewrite entry aren't of interest for SELECT rules.

Now we populate unit, shoe_data and shoelace_data and run a simple query on a view:

```
INSERT INTO unit VALUES ('cm', 1.0);
INSERT INTO unit VALUES ('m', 100.0);
INSERT INTO unit VALUES ('inch', 2.54);

INSERT INTO shoe_data VALUES ('sh1', 2, 'black', 70.0, 90.0, 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoe_data VALUES ('sh2', 0, 'black', 30.0, 40.0, 'inch');
INSERT INTO shoe_data VALUES ('sh3', 4, 'brown', 50.0, 65.0, 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoe_data VALUES ('sh4', 3, 'brown', 40.0, 50.0, 'inch');

INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl1', 5, 'black', 80.0, 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl2', 6, 'black', 100.0, 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl3', 0, 'black', 35.0, 'inch');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl4', 8, 'black', 40.0, 'inch');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl5', 4, 'brown', 1.0, 'm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl6', 0, 'brown', 0.9, 'm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl7', 7, 'brown', 60, 'cm');
```
The Rule System

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl8', 1, 'brown', 40 , 'inch');

SELECT * FROM shoelace;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sl_name</th>
<th>sl_avail</th>
<th>sl_color</th>
<th>sl_len</th>
<th>sl_unit</th>
<th>sl_len_cm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s11</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s12</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s17</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s13</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>88.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s14</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>101.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s18</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>101.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(8 rows)

This is the simplest `SELECT` you can do on our views, so we take this opportunity to explain the basics of view rules. The `SELECT * FROM shoelace` was interpreted by the parser and produced the query tree:

```
SELECT shoelace.sl_name, shoelace.sl_avail,
      shoelace.sl_color, shoelace.sl_len,
      shoelace.sl_unit, shoelace.sl_len_cm
FROM shoelace shoelace;
```

and this is given to the rule system. The rule system walks through the range table and checks if there are rules for any relation. When processing the range table entry for `shoelace` (the only one up to now) it finds the `RETURN` rule with the query tree:

```
SELECT s.sl_name, s.sl_avail,
      s.sl_color, s.sl_len, s.sl_unit,
      s.sl_len * u.un_fact AS sl_len_cm
FROM shoelace old, shoelace new,
     shoelace_data s, unit u
WHERE s.sl_unit = u.un_name;
```

To expand the view, the rewriter simply creates a subquery range-table entry containing the rule's action query tree, and substitutes this range table entry for the original one that referenced the view. The resulting rewritten query tree is almost the same as if you had typed:

```
SELECT shoelace.sl_name, shoelace.sl_avail,
      shoelace.sl_color, shoelace.sl_len,
      shoelace.sl_unit, shoelace.sl_len_cm
FROM (SELECT s.sl_name,
          s.sl_avail,
          s.sl_color,
          s.sl_len,
          s.sl_unit,
          s.sl_len * u.un_fact AS sl_len_cm
       FROM shoelace_data s, unit u
       WHERE s.sl_unit = u.un_name) shoelace;
```

There is one difference however: the subquery's range table has two extra entries `shoelace old` and `shoelace new`. These entries don't participate directly in the query, since they aren't referenced by the subquery's join tree or target list. The rewriter uses them to store the access privilege check information that was originally present in the range-table entry that referenced the view. In this way, the executor will still check that the user has proper privileges to access the view, even though there's no direct use of the view in the rewritten query.

That was the first rule applied. The rule system will continue checking the remaining range-table entries in the top query (in this example there are no more), and it will recursively check the range-table entries in the added subquery to see if any of them reference views. (But it won’t expand old or new — otherwise
we’d have infinite recursion!) In this example, there are no rewrite rules for shoelace_data or unit, so rewriting is complete and the above is the final result given to the planner.

Now we want to write a query that finds out for which shoes currently in the store we have the matching shoelaces (color and length) and where the total number of exactly matching pairs is greater than or equal to two.

SELECT * FROM shoe_ready WHERE total_avail >= 2;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>shoename</th>
<th>sh_avail</th>
<th>sl_name</th>
<th>sl_avail</th>
<th>total_avail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sh1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>sl1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>sl7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The output of the parser this time is the query tree:

SELECT shoe_ready.shoename, shoe_ready.sh_avail,
       shoe_ready.sl_name, shoe_ready.sl_avail,
       shoe_ready.total_avail
FROM shoe_ready shoe_ready
WHERE shoe_ready.total_avail >= 2;

The first rule applied will be the one for the shoe_ready view and it results in the query tree:

SELECT shoe_ready.shoename, shoe_ready.sh_avail,
       shoe_ready.sl_name, shoe_ready.sl_avail,
       shoe_ready.total_avail
FROM (SELECT rsh.shoename,
        rsh.sh_avail,
        rsl.sl_name,
        rsl.sl_avail,
        least(rsh.sh_avail, rsl.sl_avail) AS total_avail
FROM shoe rsh, shoelace rsl
WHERE rsl.sl_color = rsh.slcolor
    AND rsl.sl_len_cm >= rsh.slminlen_cm
    AND rsl.sl_len_cm <= rsh.slmaxlen_cm) shoe_ready
WHERE shoe_ready.total_avail >= 2;

Similarly, the rules for shoe and shoelace are substituted into the range table of the subquery, leading to a three-level final query tree:

SELECT shoe_ready.shoename, shoe_ready.sh_avail,
       shoe_ready.sl_name, shoe_ready.sl_avail,
       shoe_ready.total_avail
FROM (SELECT rsh.shoename,
        rsh.sh_avail,
        rsl.sl_name,
        rsl.sl_avail,
        least(rsh.sh_avail, rsl.sl_avail) AS total_avail
FROM (SELECT sh.shoename,
         sh.sh_avail,
         sh.slcolor,
         sh.slminlen,
         sh.slminlen * un.un_fact AS slminlen_cm,
         sh.slmaxlen,
         sh.slmaxlen * un.un_fact AS slmaxlen_cm,
         sh.slunit
FROM shoe_data sh, unit un
WHERE sh.slunit = un.un_name) rsh,
       (SELECT s.slunit = un.un_name) rsh,
       (SELECT s.slname,
The Rule System

```
s.sl_avail,
s.sl_color,
s.sl_len,
s.sl_unit,
s.sl_len * u.un_fact AS sl_len_cm
FROM shoelace_data s, unit u
WHERE s.sl_unit = u.un_name) rsl
WHERE rsl.sl_color = rsh.slcolor
AND rsl.sl_len_cm >= rsh.slminlen_cm
AND rsl.sl_len_cm <= rsh.slmaxlen_cm) shoe_ready
WHERE shoe_ready.total_avail > 2;
```

This might look inefficient, but the planner will collapse this into a single-level query tree by “pulling up” the subqueries, and then it will plan the joins just as if we’d written them out manually. So collapsing the query tree is an optimization that the rewrite system doesn’t have to concern itself with.

### 39.2.2. View Rules in Non-SELECT Statements

Two details of the query tree aren’t touched in the description of view rules above. These are the command type and the result relation. In fact, the command type is not needed by view rules, but the result relation may affect the way in which the query rewriter works, because special care needs to be taken if the result relation is a view.

There are only a few differences between a query tree for a `SELECT` and one for any other command. Obviously, they have a different command type and for a command other than a `SELECT`, the result relation points to the range-table entry where the result should go. Everything else is absolutely the same. So having two tables `t1` and `t2` with columns `a` and `b`, the query trees for the two statements:

```
SELECT t2.b FROM t1, t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
UPDATE t1 SET b = t2.b FROM t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```

are nearly identical. In particular:

- The range tables contain entries for the tables `t1` and `t2`.
- The target lists contain one variable that points to column `b` of the range table entry for table `t2`.
- The qualification expressions compare the columns `a` of both range-table entries for equality.
- The join trees show a simple join between `t1` and `t2`.

The consequence is, that both query trees result in similar execution plans: They are both joins over the two tables. For the `UPDATE` the missing columns from `t1` are added to the target list by the planner and the final query tree will read as:

```
UPDATE t1 SET a = t1.a, b = t2.b FROM t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```

and thus the executor run over the join will produce exactly the same result set as:

```
SELECT t1.a, t2.b FROM t1, t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```

But there is a little problem in `UPDATE`: the part of the executor plan that does the join does not care what the results from the join are meant for. It just produces a result set of rows. The fact that one is a `SELECT` command and the other is an `UPDATE` is handled higher up in the executor, where it knows that this is an `UPDATE`, and it knows that this result should go into table `t1`. But which of the rows that are there has to be replaced by the new row?

To resolve this problem, another entry is added to the target list in `UPDATE` (and also in `DELETE`) statements: the current tuple ID (CTID). This is a system column containing the file block number and position in the block for the row. Knowing the table, the CTID can be used to retrieve the original row of `t1` to be updated. After adding the CTID to the target list, the query actually looks like:

```
SELECT t1.a, t2.b, t1.ctid FROM t1, t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```
Now another detail of Postgres Pro enters the stage. Old table rows aren’t overwritten, and this is why ROLLBACK is fast. In an UPDATE, the new result row is inserted into the table (after stripping the CTID) and in the row header of the old row, which the CTID pointed to, the \texttt{cmax} and \texttt{xmax} entries are set to the current command counter and current transaction ID. Thus the old row is hidden, and after the transaction commits the vacuum cleaner can eventually remove the dead row.

Knowing all that, we can simply apply view rules in absolutely the same way to any command. There is no difference.

### 39.2.3. The Power of Views in Postgres Pro

The above demonstrates how the rule system incorporates view definitions into the original query tree. In the second example, a simple \texttt{SELECT} from one view created a final query tree that is a join of 4 tables (\texttt{unit} was used twice with different names).

The benefit of implementing views with the rule system is that the planner has all the information about which tables have to be scanned plus the relationships between these tables plus the restrictive qualifications from the views plus the qualifications from the original query in one single query tree. And this is still the situation when the original query is already a join over views. The planner has to decide which is the best path to execute the query, and the more information the planner has, the better this decision can be. And the rule system as implemented in Postgres Pro ensures that this is all information available about the query up to that point.

### 39.2.4. Updating a View

What happens if a view is named as the target relation for an \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, or \texttt{DELETE}? Doing the substitutions described above would give a query tree in which the result relation points at a subquery range-table entry, which will not work. There are several ways in which Postgres Pro can support the appearance of updating a view, however. In order of user-experienced complexity those are: automatically substitute in the underlying table for the view, execute a user-defined trigger, or rewrite the query per a user-defined rule. These options are discussed below.

If the subquery selects from a single base relation and is simple enough, the rewriter can automatically replace the subquery with the underlying base relation so that the \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, or \texttt{DELETE} is applied to the base relation in the appropriate way. Views that are “simple enough” for this are called \textit{automatically updatable}. For detailed information on the kinds of view that can be automatically updated, see \texttt{CREATE VIEW}.

Alternatively, the operation may be handled by a user-provided \texttt{INSTEAD OF} trigger on the view (see \texttt{CREATE TRIGGER}). Rewriting works slightly differently in this case. For \texttt{INSERT}, the rewriter does nothing at all with the view, leaving it as the result relation for the query. For \texttt{UPDATE} and \texttt{DELETE}, it’s still necessary to expand the view query to produce the “old” rows that the command will attempt to update or delete. So the view is expanded as normal, but another unexpanded range-table entry is added to the query to represent the view in its capacity as the result relation.

The problem that now arises is how to identify the rows to be updated in the view. Recall that when the result relation is a table, a special CTID entry is added to the target list to identify the physical locations of the rows to be updated. This does not work if the result relation is a view, because a view does not have any CTID, since its rows do not have actual physical locations. Instead, for an \texttt{UPDATE} or \texttt{DELETE} operation, a special \texttt{wholerow} entry is added to the target list, which expands to include all columns from the view. The executor uses this value to supply the “old” row to the \texttt{INSTEAD OF} trigger. It is up to the trigger to work out what to update based on the old and new row values.

Another possibility is for the user to define \texttt{INSTEAD} rules that specify substitute actions for \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, and \texttt{DELETE} commands on a view. These rules will rewrite the command, typically into a command that updates one or more tables, rather than views. That is the topic of Section 39.4.

Note that rules are evaluated first, rewriting the original query before it is planned and executed. Therefore, if a view has \texttt{INSTEAD OF} triggers as well as rules on \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, or \texttt{DELETE}, then the rules will be evaluated first, and depending on the result, the triggers may not be used at all.
Automatic rewriting of an INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE query on a simple view is always tried last. Therefore, if a view has rules or triggers, they will override the default behavior of automatically updatable views.

If there are no INSTEAD rules or INSTEAD OF triggers for the view, and the rewriter cannot automatically rewrite the query as an update on the underlying base relation, an error will be thrown because the executor cannot update a view as such.

### 39.3. Materialized Views

Materialized views in Postgres Pro use the rule system like views do, but persist the results in a table-like form. The main differences between:

```sql
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW mymatview AS SELECT * FROM mytab;
```

and:

```sql
CREATE TABLE mymatview AS SELECT * FROM mytab;
```

are that the materialized view cannot subsequently be directly updated and that the query used to create the materialized view is stored in exactly the same way that a view's query is stored, so that fresh data can be generated for the materialized view with:

```sql
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW mymatview;
```

The information about a materialized view in the Postgres Pro system catalogs is exactly the same as it is for a table or view. So for the parser, a materialized view is a relation, just like a table or a view. When a materialized view is referenced in a query, the data is returned directly from the materialized view, like from a table; the rule is only used for populating the materialized view.

While access to the data stored in a materialized view is often much faster than accessing the underlying tables directly or through a view, the data is not always current; yet sometimes current data is not needed. Consider a table which records sales:

```sql
CREATE TABLE invoice (  
    invoice_no    integer        PRIMARY KEY,  
    seller_no     integer,       -- ID of salesperson  
    invoice_date  date,          -- date of sale  
    invoice_amt   numeric(13,2)  -- amount of sale
);
```

If people want to be able to quickly graph historical sales data, they might want to summarize, and they may not care about the incomplete data for the current date:

```sql
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW sales_summary AS  
SELECT  
    seller_no,  
    invoice_date,  
    sum(invoice_amt)::numeric(13,2) as sales_amt  
FROM invoice  
WHERE invoice_date < CURRENT_DATE  
GROUP BY  
    seller_no,  
    invoice_date  
ORDER BY  
    seller_no,  
    invoice_date;
```

```sql
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX sales_summary_seller  
ON sales_summary (seller_no, invoice_date);
```

This materialized view might be useful for displaying a graph in the dashboard created for salespeople. A job could be scheduled to update the statistics each night using this SQL statement:

```sql
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW sales_summary;
```
Another use for a materialized view is to allow faster access to data brought across from a remote system through a foreign data wrapper. A simple example using `file_fdw` is below, with timings, but since this is using cache on the local system the performance difference compared to access to a remote system would usually be greater than shown here. Notice we are also exploiting the ability to put an index on the materialized view, whereas `file_fdw` does not support indexes; this advantage might not apply for other sorts of foreign data access.

**Setup:**

```
CREATE EXTENSION file_fdw;
CREATE SERVER local_file FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file_fdw;
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE words (word text NOT NULL)
    SERVER local_file
    OPTIONS (filename '/usr/share/dict/words');
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW wrd AS SELECT * FROM words;
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX wrd_word ON wrd (word);
CREATE EXTENSION pg_trgm;
CREATE INDEX wrd_trgm ON wrd USING gist (word gist_trgm_ops);
VACUUM ANALYZE wrd;
```

Now let's spell-check a word. Using `file_fdw` directly:

```
SELECT count(*) FROM words WHERE word = 'caterpiler';
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

(1 row)

With `EXPLAIN ANALYZE`, we see:

```
Aggregate (cost=21763.99..21764.00 rows=1 width=0) (actual time=188.180..188.181 rows=1 loops=1)
   ->  Foreign Scan on words (cost=0.00..21761.41 rows=1032 width=0) (actual time=188.177..188.177 rows=0 loops=1)
       Filter: (word = 'caterpiler'::text)
       Rows Removed by Filter: 479829
       Foreign File: /usr/share/dict/words
       Foreign File Size: 4953699
Planning time: 0.118 ms
Execution time: 188.273 ms
```

If the materialized view is used instead, the query is much faster:

```
Aggregate (cost=4.44..4.45 rows=1 width=0) (actual time=0.042..0.042 rows=1 loops=1)
   ->  Index Only Scan using wrd_word on wrd (cost=0.42..4.44 rows=1 width=0) (actual time=0.039..0.039 rows=0 loops=1)
       Index Cond: (word = 'caterpillar'::text)
       Heap Fetches: 0
Planning time: 0.164 ms
Execution time: 0.117 ms
```

Either way, the word is spelled wrong, so let's look for what we might have wanted. Again using `file_fdw` and `pg_trgm`:

```
SELECT word FROM words ORDER BY word <-> 'caterpiler' LIMIT 10;
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caterpillar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caterpillar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caterpillars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

1056
39.4. Rules on INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE

Rules that are defined on INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE are significantly different from the view rules described in the previous section. First, their CREATE RULE command allows more:

- They are allowed to have no action.
- They can have multiple actions.
- They can be INSTEAD or ALSO (the default).
- The pseudorelations NEW and OLD become useful.
- They can have rule qualifications.

Second, they don’t modify the query tree in place. Instead they create zero or more new query trees and can throw away the original one.

Caution

In many cases, tasks that could be performed by rules on INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE are better done with triggers. Triggers are notationally a bit more complicated, but their semantics are much simpler to understand. Rules tend to have surprising results when the original query contains volatile functions: volatile functions may get executed more times than expected in the process of carrying out the rules.

Also, there are some cases that are not supported by these types of rules at all, notably including WITH clauses in the original query and multiple-assignment sub-selects in the SET list of UPDATE.
queries. This is because copying these constructs into a rule query would result in multiple evaluations of the sub-query, contrary to the express intent of the query's author.

### 39.4.1. How Update Rules Work

Keep the syntax:

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] RULE name AS ON event
    TO table [ WHERE condition ]
    DO [ ALSO | INSTEAD ] { NOTHING | command | ( command ; command ... ) }
```

in mind. In the following, *update rules* means rules that are defined on INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE.

Update rules get applied by the rule system when the result relation and the command type of a query tree are equal to the object and event given in the CREATE RULE command. For update rules, the rule system creates a list of query trees. Initially the query-tree list is empty. There can be zero (NOTHING key word), one, or multiple actions. To simplify, we will look at a rule with one action. This rule can have a qualification or not and it can be INSTEAD or ALSO (the default).

What is a rule qualification? It is a restriction that tells when the actions of the rule should be done and when not. This qualification can only reference the pseudorelations `NEW` and/or `OLD`, which basically represent the relation that was given as object (but with a special meaning).

So we have three cases that produce the following query trees for a one-action rule.

No qualification, with either **ALSO** or **INSTEAD**

the query tree from the rule action with the original query tree's qualification added

Qualification given and **ALSO**

the query tree from the rule action with the rule qualification and the original query tree's qualification added

Qualification given and **INSTEAD**

the query tree from the rule action with the rule qualification and the original query tree's qualification; and the original query tree with the negated rule qualification added

Finally, if the rule is **ALSO**, the unchanged original query tree is added to the list. Since only qualified **INSTEAD** rules already add the original query tree, we end up with either one or two output query trees for a rule with one action.

For **ON INSERT** rules, the original query (if not suppressed by **INSTEAD**) is done before any actions added by rules. This allows the actions to see the inserted row(s). But for **ON UPDATE** and **ON DELETE** rules, the original query is done after the actions added by rules. This ensures that the actions can see the to-be-updated or to-be-deleted rows; otherwise, the actions might do nothing because they find no rows matching their qualifications.

The query trees generated from rule actions are thrown into the rewrite system again, and maybe more rules get applied resulting in additional or fewer query trees. So a rule's actions must have either a different command type or a different result relation than the rule itself is on, otherwise this recursive process will end up in an infinite loop. (Recursive expansion of a rule will be detected and reported as an error.)

The query trees found in the actions of the `pg_rewrite` system catalog are only templates. Since they can reference the range-table entries for `NEW` and `OLD`, some substitutions have to be made before they can be used. For any reference to `NEW`, the target list of the original query is searched for a corresponding entry. If found, that entry's expression replaces the reference. Otherwise, `NEW` means the same as `OLD` (for an **UPDATE**) or is replaced by a null value (for an **INSERT**). Any reference to `OLD` is replaced by a reference to the range-table entry that is the result relation.
After the system is done applying update rules, it applies view rules to the produced query tree(s). Views cannot insert new update actions so there is no need to apply update rules to the output of view rewriting.

39.4.1.1. A First Rule Step by Step

Say we want to trace changes to the `sl_avail` column in the `shoelace_data` relation. So we set up a log table and a rule that conditionally writes a log entry when an `UPDATE` is performed on `shoelace_data`.

```sql
CREATE TABLE shoelace_log (
    sl_name    text,          -- shoelace changed
    sl_avail   integer,       -- new available value
    log_who    text,          -- who did it
    log_when   timestamp      -- when
);

CREATE RULE log_shoelace AS ON UPDATE TO shoelace_data
    WHERE NEW.sl_avail <> OLD.sl_avail
    DO INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
        NEW.sl_name,
        NEW.sl_avail,
        current_user,
        current_timestamp
    );
```

Now someone does:

```sql
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_avail = 6 WHERE sl_name = 'sl7';
```

and we look at the log table:

```sql
SELECT * FROM shoelace_log;
```

```
sl_name | sl_avail | log_who | log_when
---------+----------+---------+----------------------------------
sl7     |        6 | Al      | Tue Oct 20 16:14:45 1998 MET DST
(1 row)
```

That's what we expected. What happened in the background is the following. The parser created the query tree:

```sql
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_avail = 6
    FROM shoelace_data shoelace_data
    WHERE shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';
```

There is a rule `log_shoelace` that is ON UPDATE with the rule qualification expression:

```sql
NEW.sl_avail <> OLD.sl_avail
```

and the action:

```sql
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (new.sl_name, new.sl_avail, current_user, current_timestamp)
    FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old;
```

(This looks a little strange since you cannot normally write `INSERT ... VALUES ... FROM`. The `FROM` clause here is just to indicate that there are range-table entries in the query tree for `new` and `old`. These are needed so that they can be referenced by variables in the `INSERT` command's query tree.)

The rule is a qualified `ALSO` rule, so the rule system has to return two query trees: the modified rule action and the original query tree. In step 1, the range table of the original query is incorporated into the rule's action query tree. This results in:

```sql
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
new.sl_name, new.sl_avail,
current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
shoelace_data shoelace_data;

In step 2, the rule qualification is added to it, so the result set is restricted to rows where sl_avail changes:

INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES ( 
    new.sl_name, new.sl_avail,
current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE new.sl_avail <> old.sl_avail;

(This looks even stranger, since INSERT ... VALUES doesn't have a WHERE clause either, but the planner and executor will have no difficulty with it. They need to support this same functionality anyway for INSERT ... SELECT.)

In step 3, the original query tree's qualification is added, restricting the result set further to only the rows that would have been touched by the original query:

INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES ( 
    new.sl_name, new.sl_avail,
current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE new.sl_avail <> old.sl_avail
    AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';

Step 4 replaces references to NEW by the target list entries from the original query tree or by the matching variable references from the result relation:

INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES ( 
    shoelace_data.sl_name, 6,
current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE 6 <> old.sl_avail
    AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';

Step 5 changes OLD references into result relation references:

INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES ( 
    shoelace_data.sl_name, 6,
current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE 6 <> shoelace_data.sl_avail
    AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';

That's it. Since the rule is ALSO, we also output the original query tree. In short, the output from the rule system is a list of two query trees that correspond to these statements:

INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES ( 
    shoelace_data.sl_name, 6,
current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data
WHERE 6 <> shoelace_data.sl_avail
    AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';

UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_avail = 6
WHERE sl_name = 'sl7';

These are executed in this order, and that is exactly what the rule was meant to do.

The substitutions and the added qualifications ensure that, if the original query would be, say:

```
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_color = 'green'
WHERE sl_name = 'sl7';
```

no log entry would get written. In that case, the original query tree does not contain a target list entry for `sl_avail`, so `NEW.sl_avail` will get replaced by `shoelace_data.sl_avail`. Thus, the extra command generated by the rule is:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
    shoelace_data.sl_name, shoelace_data.sl_avail,
    current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data
WHERE shoelace_data.sl_avail <> shoelace_data.sl_avail
    AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';
```

and that qualification will never be true.

It will also work if the original query modifies multiple rows. So if someone issued the command:

```
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_avail = 0
WHERE sl_color = 'black';
```

four rows in fact get updated (sl1, sl2, sl3, and sl4). But sl3 already has `sl_avail = 0`. In this case, the original query trees qualification is different and that results in the extra query tree:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log
SELECT shoelace_data.sl_name, 0,
    current_user, current_timestamp
FROM shoelace_data
WHERE 0 <> shoelace_data.sl_avail
    AND shoelace_data.sl_color = 'black';
```

being generated by the rule. This query tree will surely insert three new log entries. And that’s absolutely correct.

Here we can see why it is important that the original query tree is executed last. If the `UPDATE` had been executed first, all the rows would have already been set to zero, so the logging `INSERT` would not find any row where `0 <> shoelace_data.sl_avail`.

### 39.4.2. Cooperation with Views

A simple way to protect view relations from the mentioned possibility that someone can try to run `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` on them is to let those query trees get thrown away. So we could create the rules:

```
CREATE RULE shoe_ins_protect AS ON INSERT TO shoe
    DO INSTEAD NOTHING;
CREATE RULE shoe_upd_protect AS ON UPDATE TO shoe
    DO INSTEAD NOTHING;
CREATE RULE shoe_del_protect AS ON DELETE TO shoe
    DO INSTEAD NOTHING;
```

If someone now tries to do any of these operations on the view relation shoe, the rule system will apply these rules. Since the rules have no actions and are `INSTEAD`, the resulting list of query trees will be empty and the whole query will become nothing because there is nothing left to be optimized or executed after the rule system is done with it.

A more sophisticated way to use the rule system is to create rules that rewrite the query tree into one that does the right operation on the real tables. To do that on the `shoelace` view, we create the following rules:
CREATE RULE shoelace_ins AS ON INSERT TO shoelace
  DO INSTEAD
  INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES (
    NEW.sl_name,
    NEW.sl_avail,
    NEW.sl_color,
    NEW.sl_len,
    NEW.sl_unit
  );

CREATE RULE shoelace_upd AS ON UPDATE TO shoelace
  DO INSTEAD
  UPDATE shoelace_data
  SET sl_name = NEW.sl_name,
      sl_avail = NEW.sl_avail,
      sl_color = NEW.sl_color,
      sl_len = NEW.sl_len,
      sl_unit = NEW.sl_unit
  WHERE sl_name = OLD.sl_name;

CREATE RULE shoelace_del AS ON DELETE TO shoelace
  DO INSTEAD
  DELETE FROM shoelace_data
  WHERE sl_name = OLD.sl_name;

If you want to support \texttt{RETURNING} queries on the view, you need to make the rules include \texttt{RETURNING} clauses that compute the view rows. This is usually pretty trivial for views on a single table, but it’s a bit tedious for join views such as \textit{shoelace}. An example for the insert case is:

CREATE RULE shoelace_ins AS ON INSERT TO shoelace
  DO INSTEAD
  INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES (
    NEW.sl_name,
    NEW.sl_avail,
    NEW.sl_color,
    NEW.sl_len,
    NEW.sl_unit
  )
  RETURNING
    shoelace_data.*,
    (SELECT shoelace_data.sl_len * u.un_fact
    FROM unit u WHERE shoelace_data.sl_unit = u.un_name);

Note that this one rule supports both \texttt{INSERT} and \texttt{INSERT \texttt{RETURNING}} queries on the view — the \texttt{RETURNING} clause is simply ignored for \texttt{INSERT}.

Now assume that once in a while, a pack of shoelaces arrives at the shop and a big parts list along with it. But you don’t want to manually update the \textit{shoelace} view every time. Instead we set up two little tables: one where you can insert the items from the part list, and one with a special trick. The creation commands for these are:

CREATE TABLE shoelace_arrive (   
  arr_name     text,
  arr_quant    integer
);

CREATE TABLE shoelace_ok (   
  ok_name     text,
  ok_quant    integer
);
CREATE RULE shoelace_ok_ins AS ON INSERT TO shoelace_ok
  DO INSTEAD
  UPDATE shoelace
    SET sl_avail = sl_avail + NEW.ok_quant
  WHERE sl_name = NEW.ok_name;

Now you can fill the table shoelace_arrive with the data from the parts list:

```
SELECT * FROM shoelace_arrive;
```

```
arr_name | arr_quant
----------+-----------
sl3      |        10
sl6      |        20
sl8      |        20
```

(3 rows)

Take a quick look at the current data:

```
SELECT * FROM shoelace;
```

```
sl_name  | sl_avail | sl_color | sl_len | sl_unit | sl_len_cm
----------+----------+----------+--------+---------+-----------
sl1      |        5 | black    |     80 | cm      |        80
sl2      |        6 | black    |    100 | cm      |       100
sl7      |        6 | brown    |     60 | cm      |        60
sl4      |        8 | black    |     40 | inch    |     101.6
sl3      |       10 | black    |     35 | inch    |      88.9
sl8      |       21 | brown    |     40 | inch    |     101.6
sl5      |        4 | brown    |      1 | m       |       100
sl6      |       20 | brown    |    0.9 | m       |        90
```

(8 rows)

Now move the arrived shoelaces in:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_ok SELECT * FROM shoelace_arrive;
```

and check the results:

```
SELECT * FROM shoelace ORDER BY sl_name;
```

```
sl_name  | sl_avail | sl_color | sl_len | sl_unit | sl_len_cm
----------+----------+----------+--------+---------+-----------
sl1      |        5 | black    |     80 | cm      |        80
sl2      |        6 | black    |    100 | cm      |       100
sl7      |        6 | brown    |     60 | cm      |        60
sl4      |        8 | black    |     40 | inch    |     101.6
sl3      |       10 | black    |     35 | inch    |      88.9
sl8      |       21 | brown    |     40 | inch    |     101.6
sl5      |        4 | brown    |      1 | m       |       100
sl6      |       20 | brown    |    0.9 | m       |        90
```

(8 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM shoelace_log;
```

```
sl_name | sl_avail | log_who| log_when
---------+----------+--------+----------------------------------
sl7     |        6 | Al     | Tue Oct 20 19:14:45 1998 MET DST
sl3     |       10 | Al     | Tue Oct 20 19:25:16 1998 MET DST
sl6     |       20 | Al     | Tue Oct 20 19:25:16 1998 MET DST
sl8     |       21 | Al     | Tue Oct 20 19:25:16 1998 MET DST
```

1063
The Rule System

(4 rows)

It's a long way from the one `INSERT ... SELECT` to these results. And the description of the query-tree transformation will be the last in this chapter. First, there is the parser's output:

```sql
INSERT INTO shoelace_ok
SELECT shoelace_arrive.arr_name, shoelace_arrive.arr_quant
FROM shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok;
```

Now the first rule `shoelace_ok_ins` is applied and turns this into:

```sql
UPDATE shoelace
SET sl_avail = shoelace.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant
FROM shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok,
shoelace_ok old, shoelace_ok new,
shoelace
WHERE shoelace.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name;
```

and throws away the original `INSERT` on `shoelace_ok`. This rewritten query is passed to the rule system again, and the second applied rule `shoelace_upd` produces:

```sql
UPDATE shoelace_data
SET sl_name = s.sl_name,
    sl_avail = s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant,
    sl_color = s.sl_color,
    sl_len = s.sl_len,
    sl_unit = s.sl_unit
FROM shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok,
shoelace ok old, shoelace ok new,
shoelace, shoelace old,
shoelace new, shoelace_data
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name
AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name;
```

Again it's an `INSTEAD` rule and the previous query tree is trashed. Note that this query still uses the view `shoelace`. But the rule system isn't finished with this step, so it continues and applies the `_RETURN` rule on it, and we get:

```sql
UPDATE shoelace_data
SET sl_name = s.sl_name,
    sl_avail = s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant,
    sl_color = s.sl_color,
    sl_len = s.sl_len,
    sl_unit = s.sl_unit
FROM shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok,
shoelace ok old, shoelace ok new,
shoelace, shoelace old,
shoelace new, shoelace_data
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name
AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name;
```

Finally, the rule `log_shoelace` gets applied, producing the extra query tree:

```sql
INSERT INTO shoelace_log
SELECT s.sl_name,
    s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant,
    current_user,
    current_timestamp
FROM shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok,
shoelace ok old, shoelace ok new,
shoelace, shoelace old,
```
The Rule System

```
shoelace new, shoelace_data shoelace_data,
shoelace old, shoelace new,
shoelace_data s, unit u,
shoelace_data old, shoelace_data new
shoe lace_log shoelace_log
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name
AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name
AND (s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant) <> s.sl_avail;
```

After that the rule system runs out of rules and returns the generated query trees.

So we end up with two final query trees that are equivalent to the SQL statements:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log
SELECT s.sl_name,
    s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant,
    current_user,
    current_timestamp
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive, shoelace_data shoelace_data,
    shoelace_data s
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name
AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name
AND s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant <> s.sl_avail;
```

```
UPDATE shoelace_data
SET sl_avail = shoelace_data.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive, shoelace_data shoelace_data,
    shoelace_data s
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.sl_name
AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name;
```

The result is that data coming from one relation inserted into another, changed into updates on a third, changed into updating a fourth plus logging that final update in a fifth gets reduced into two queries.

There is a little detail that's a bit ugly. Looking at the two queries, it turns out that the `shoelace_data` relation appears twice in the range table where it could definitely be reduced to one. The planner does not handle it and so the execution plan for the rule systems output of the `INSERT` will be

Nested Loop
   -> Merge Join
      -> Seq Scan
         -> Sort
            -> Seq Scan on s
      -> Seq Scan
         -> Sort
            -> Seq Scan on shoelace_arrive
   -> Seq Scan on shoelace_data

while omitting the extra range table entry would result in a

Merge Join
   -> Seq Scan
      -> Sort
         -> Seq Scan on s
   -> Seq Scan
      -> Sort
         -> Seq Scan on shoelace_arrive

which produces exactly the same entries in the log table. Thus, the rule system caused one extra scan on the table `shoelace_data` that is absolutely not necessary. And the same redundant scan is done once more in the `UPDATE`. But it was a really hard job to make that all possible at all.
Now we make a final demonstration of the Postgres Pro rule system and its power. Say you add some shoelaces with extraordinary colors to your database:

```sql
INSERT INTO shoelace VALUES ('sl9', 0, 'pink', 35.0, 'inch', 0.0);
INSERT INTO shoelace VALUES ('sl10', 1000, 'magenta', 40.0, 'inch', 0.0);
```

We would like to make a view to check which `shoe lace` entries do not fit any shoe in color. The view for this is:

```sql
CREATE VIEW shoelace_mismatch AS
    SELECT * FROM shoelace WHERE NOT EXISTS
        (SELECT shoename FROM shoe WHERE slcolor = sl_color);
```

Its output is:

```sql
SELECT * FROM shoelace_mismatch;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sl_name</th>
<th>sl_avail</th>
<th>sl_color</th>
<th>sl_len</th>
<th>sl_unit</th>
<th>sl_len_cm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sl9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>pink</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>88.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl10</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>magenta</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>101.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now we want to set it up so that mismatching shoelaces that are not in stock are deleted from the database. To make it a little harder for Postgres Pro, we don’t delete it directly. Instead we create one more view:

```sql
CREATE VIEW shoelace_can_delete AS
    SELECT * FROM shoelace_mismatch WHERE sl_avail = 0;
```

and do it this way:

```sql
DELETE FROM shoelace WHERE EXISTS
   (SELECT * FROM shoelace_can_delete
        WHERE sl_name = shoelace.sl_name);
```

The results are:

```sql
SELECT * FROM shoelace;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sl_name</th>
<th>sl_avail</th>
<th>sl_color</th>
<th>sl_len</th>
<th>sl_unit</th>
<th>sl_len_cm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sl1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>101.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>88.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl5</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>101.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl10</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>magenta</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>101.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl16</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A `DELETE` on a view, with a subquery qualification that in total uses 4 nesting/joined views, where one of them itself has a subquery qualification containing a view and where calculated view columns are used, gets rewritten into one single query tree that deletes the requested data from a real table.

There are probably only a few situations out in the real world where such a construct is necessary. But it makes you feel comfortable that it works.

### 39.5. Rules and Privileges

Due to rewriting of queries by the Postgres Pro rule system, other tables/views than those used in the original query get accessed. When update rules are used, this can include write access to tables.
Rewrite rules don’t have a separate owner. The owner of a relation (table or view) is automatically the owner of the rewrite rules that are defined for it. The Postgres Pro rule system changes the behavior of the default access control system. Relations that are used due to rules get checked against the privileges of the rule owner, not the user invoking the rule. This means that users only need the required privileges for the tables/views that are explicitly named in their queries.

For example: A user has a list of phone numbers where some of them are private, the others are of interest for the assistant of the office. The user can construct the following:

```sql
CREATE TABLE phone_data (person text, phone text, private boolean);
CREATE VIEW phone_number AS
    SELECT person, CASE WHEN NOT private THEN phone END AS phone
    FROM phone_data;
GRANT SELECT ON phone_number TO assistant;
```

Nobody except that user (and the database superusers) can access the `phone_data` table. But because of the GRANT, the assistant can run a SELECT on the `phone_number` view. The rule system will rewrite the SELECT from `phone_number` into a SELECT from `phone_data`. Since the user is the owner of `phone_number` and therefore the owner of the rule, the read access to `phone_data` is now checked against the user's privileges and the query is permitted. The check for accessing `phone_number` is also performed, but this is done against the invoking user, so nobody but the user and the assistant can use it.

The privileges are checked rule by rule. So the assistant is for now the only one who can see the public phone numbers. But the assistant can set up another view and grant access to that to the public. Then, anyone can see the `phone_data` table through the assistant's view. What the assistant cannot do is to create a view that directly accesses `phone_data`. (Actually the assistant can, but it will not work since every access will be denied during the permission checks.) And as soon as the user notices that the assistant opened their `phone_number` view, the user can revoke the assistant's access. Immediately, any access to the assistant's view would fail.

One might think that this rule-by-rule checking is a security hole, but in fact it isn’t. But if it did not work this way, the assistant could set up a table with the same columns as `phone_number` and copy the data to there once per day. Then it's the assistant's own data and the assistant can grant access to everyone they want. A GRANT command means, “I trust you”. If someone you trust does the thing above, it's time to think it over and then use `REVOKE`.

Note that while views can be used to hide the contents of certain columns using the technique shown above, they cannot be used to reliably conceal the data in unseen rows unless the security_barrier flag has been set. For example, the following view is insecure:

```sql
CREATE VIEW phone_number AS
    SELECT person, phone FROM phone_data WHERE phone NOT LIKE '412%';
```

This view might seem secure, since the rule system will rewrite any SELECT from `phone_number` into a SELECT from `phone_data` and add the qualification that only entries where `phone` does not begin with 412 are wanted. But if the user can create their own functions, it is not difficult to convince the planner to execute the user-defined function prior to the NOT LIKE expression. For example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION tricky(text, text) RETURNS bool AS $$
BEGIN
    RAISE NOTICE '% => %', $1, $2;
    RETURN true;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql COST 0.0000000000000000000001;

SELECT * FROM phone_number WHERE tricky(person, phone);
```

Every person and phone number in the `phone_data` table will be printed as a NOTICE, because the planner will choose to execute the inexpensive `tricky` function before the more expensive NOT LIKE. Even if the user is prevented from defining new functions, built-in functions can be used in similar attacks. (For example, most casting functions include their input values in the error messages they produce.)
Similar considerations apply to update rules. In the examples of the previous section, the owner of the tables in the example database could grant the privileges SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE on the shoelace view to someone else, but only SELECT on shoelace_log. The rule action to write log entries will still be executed successfully, and that other user could see the log entries. But they could not create fake entries, nor could they manipulate or remove existing ones. In this case, there is no possibility of subverting the rules by convincing the planner to alter the order of operations, because the only rule which references shoelace_log is an unqualified INSERT. This might not be true in more complex scenarios.

When it is necessary for a view to provide row-level security, the security_barrier attribute should be applied to the view. This prevents maliciously-chosen functions and operators from being passed values from rows until after the view has done its work. For example, if the view shown above had been created like this, it would be secure:

```sql
CREATE VIEW phone_number WITH (security_barrier) AS
  SELECT person, phone FROM phone_data WHERE phone NOT LIKE '412%';
```

Views created with the security_barrier may perform far worse than views created without this option. In general, there is no way to avoid this: the fastest possible plan must be rejected if it may compromise security. For this reason, this option is not enabled by default.

The query planner has more flexibility when dealing with functions that have no side effects. Such functions are referred to as LEAKPROOF, and include many simple, commonly used operators, such as many equality operators. The query planner can safely allow such functions to be evaluated at any point in the query execution process, since invoking them on rows invisible to the user will not leak any information about the unseen rows. Further, functions which do not take arguments or which are not passed any arguments from the security barrier view do not have to be marked as LEAKPROOF to be pushed down, as they never receive data from the view. In contrast, a function that might throw an error depending on the values received as arguments (such as one that throws an error in the event of overflow or division by zero) is not leak-proof, and could provide significant information about the unseen rows if applied before the security view’s row filters.

It is important to understand that even a view created with the security_barrier option is intended to be secure only in the limited sense that the contents of the invisible tuples will not be passed to possibly-insecure functions. The user may well have other means of making inferences about the unseen data; for example, they can see the query plan using EXPLAIN, or measure the run time of queries against the view. A malicious attacker might be able to infer something about the amount of unseen data, or even gain some information about the data distribution or most common values (since these things may affect the run time of the plan; or even, since they are also reflected in the optimizer statistics, the choice of plan). If these types of "covert channel" attacks are of concern, it is probably unwise to grant any access to the data at all.

### 39.6. Rules and Command Status

The Postgres Pro server returns a command status string, such as INSERT 149592 1, for each command it receives. This is simple enough when there are no rules involved, but what happens when the query is rewritten by rules?

Rules affect the command status as follows:

- If there is no unconditional INSTEAD rule for the query, then the originally given query will be executed, and its command status will be returned as usual. (But note that if there were any conditional INSTEAD rules, the negation of their qualifications will have been added to the original query. This might reduce the number of rows it processes, and if so the reported status will be affected.)

- If there is any unconditional INSTEAD rule for the query, then the original query will not be executed at all. In this case, the server will return the command status for the last query that was inserted by an INSTEAD rule (conditional or unconditional) and is of the same command type (INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE) as the original query. If no query meeting those requirements is added by any rule, then
the returned command status shows the original query type and zeroes for the row-count and OID fields.

The programmer can ensure that any desired `INSTEAD` rule is the one that sets the command status in the second case, by giving it the alphabetically last rule name among the active rules, so that it gets applied last.

### 39.7. Rules Versus Triggers

Many things that can be done using triggers can also be implemented using the Postgres Pro rule system. One of the things that cannot be implemented by rules are some kinds of constraints, especially foreign keys. It is possible to place a qualified rule that rewrites a command to `NOTHING` if the value of a column does not appear in another table. But then the data is silently thrown away and that's not a good idea. If checks for valid values are required, and in the case of an invalid value an error message should be generated, it must be done by a trigger.

In this chapter, we focused on using rules to update views. All of the update rule examples in this chapter can also be implemented using `INSTEAD OF` triggers on the views. Writing such triggers is often easier than writing rules, particularly if complex logic is required to perform the update.

For the things that can be implemented by both, which is best depends on the usage of the database. A trigger is fired once for each affected row. A rule modifies the query or generates an additional query. So if many rows are affected in one statement, a rule issuing one extra command is likely to be faster than a trigger that is called for every single row and must re-determine what to do many times. However, the trigger approach is conceptually far simpler than the rule approach, and is easier for novices to get right.

Here we show an example of how the choice of rules versus triggers plays out in one situation. There are two tables:

```sql
CREATE TABLE computer (    
    hostname text,    -- indexed
    manufacturer text -- indexed
);    

CREATE TABLE software (    
    software text, -- indexed
    hostname text -- indexed
);    
```

Both tables have many thousands of rows and the indexes on `hostname` are unique. The rule or trigger should implement a constraint that deletes rows from `software` that reference a deleted computer. The trigger would use this command:

```sql
DELETE FROM software WHERE hostname = $1;
```

Since the trigger is called for each individual row deleted from `computer`, it can prepare and save the plan for this command and pass the `hostname` value in the parameter. The rule would be written as:

```sql
CREATE RULE computer_del AS ON DELETE TO computer
  DO DELETE FROM software WHERE hostname = OLD.hostname;
```

Now we look at different types of deletes. In the case of a:

```sql
DELETE FROM computer WHERE hostname = 'mypc.local.net';
```

the table `computer` is scanned by index (fast), and the command issued by the trigger would also use an index scan (also fast). The extra command from the rule would be:

```sql
DELETE FROM software WHERE computer.hostname = 'mypc.local.net'    
  AND software.hostname = computer.hostname;
```

Since there are appropriate indexes set up, the planner will create a plan of Nestloop.
The Rule System

So there would be not that much difference in speed between the trigger and the rule implementation.

With the next delete we want to get rid of all the 2000 computers where the `hostname` starts with `old`. There are two possible commands to do that. One is:

```
DELETE FROM computer WHERE hostname >= 'old'
AND hostname < 'ole'
```

The command added by the rule will be:

```
DELETE FROM software WHERE computer.hostname >= 'old' AND computer.hostname < 'ole'
AND software.hostname = computer.hostname;
```

with the plan

```
Hash Join
  --> Seq Scan on software
  --> Hash
    --> Index Scan using comp_hostidx on computer
```

The other possible command is:

```
DELETE FROM computer WHERE hostname ~ '^old';
```

which results in the following executing plan for the command added by the rule:

```
Nestloop
  --> Index Scan using comp_hostidx on computer
  --> Index Scan using soft_hostidx on software
```

This shows, that the planner does not realize that the qualification for `hostname` in `computer` could also be used for an index scan on `software` when there are multiple qualification expressions combined with `AND`, which is what it does in the regular-expression version of the command. The trigger will get invoked once for each of the 2000 old computers that have to be deleted, and that will result in one index scan over `computer` and 2000 index scans over `software`. The rule implementation will do it with two commands that use indexes. And it depends on the overall size of the table `software` whether the rule will still be faster in the sequential scan situation. 2000 command executions from the trigger over the SPI manager take some time, even if all the index blocks will soon be in the cache.

The last command we look at is:

```
DELETE FROM computer WHERE manufacturer = 'bim';
```

Again this could result in many rows to be deleted from `computer`. So the trigger will again run many commands through the executor. The command generated by the rule will be:

```
DELETE FROM software WHERE computer.manufacturer = 'bim'
AND software.hostname = computer.hostname;
```

The plan for that command will again be the nested loop over two index scans, only using a different index on `computer`:

```
Nestloop
  --> Index Scan using comp_manufidx on computer
  --> Index Scan using soft_hostidx on software
```

In any of these cases, the extra commands from the rule system will be more or less independent from the number of affected rows in a command.

The summary is, rules will only be significantly slower than triggers if their actions result in large and badly qualified joins, a situation where the planner fails.
Chapter 40. Procedural Languages

Postgres Pro allows user-defined functions to be written in other languages besides SQL and C. These other languages are generically called *procedural languages* (PLs). For a function written in a procedural language, the database server has no built-in knowledge about how to interpret the function’s source text. Instead, the task is passed to a special handler that knows the details of the language. The handler could either do all the work of parsing, syntax analysis, execution, etc. itself, or it could serve as “glue” between Postgres Pro and an existing implementation of a programming language. The handler itself is a C language function compiled into a shared object and loaded on demand, just like any other C function.

There are currently four procedural languages available in the standard Postgres Pro distribution: PL/pgSQL (Chapter 41), PL/Tcl (Chapter 42), PL/Perl (Chapter 43), and PL/Python (Chapter 44). There are additional procedural languages available that are not included in the core distribution. Appendix H has information about finding them. In addition other languages can be defined by users; the basics of developing a new procedural language are covered in Chapter 52.

40.1. Installing Procedural Languages

A procedural language must be “installed” into each database where it is to be used. But procedural languages installed in the database *template1* are automatically available in all subsequently created databases, since their entries in *template1* will be copied by CREATE DATABASE. So the database administrator can decide which languages are available in which databases and can make some languages available by default if desired.

For the languages supplied with the standard distribution, it is only necessary to execute CREATE EXTENSION *language_name* to install the language into the current database. The manual procedure described below is only recommended for installing languages that have not been packaged as extensions.

**Manual Procedural Language Installation**

A procedural language is installed in a database in five steps, which must be carried out by a database superuser. In most cases the required SQL commands should be packaged as the installation script of an “extension”, so that CREATE EXTENSION can be used to execute them.

1. The shared object for the language handler must be compiled and installed into an appropriate library directory. This works in the same way as building and installing modules with regular user-defined C functions does; see Section 36.10.5. Often, the language handler will depend on an external library that provides the actual programming language engine; if so, that must be installed as well.

2. The handler must be declared with the command

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION handler_function_name()
 RETURNS language_handler
 AS 'path-to-shared-object'
 LANGUAGE C;
```

The special return type of *language_handler* tells the database system that this function does not return one of the defined SQL data types and is not directly usable in SQL statements.

3. (Optional) Optionally, the language handler can provide an “inline” handler function that executes anonymous code blocks (DO commands) written in this language. If an inline handler function is provided by the language, declare it with a command like

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION inline_function_name(internal)
 RETURNS void
 AS 'path-to-shared-object'
 LANGUAGE C;
```

4. (Optional) Optionally, the language handler can provide a “validator” function that checks a function definition for correctness without actually executing it. The validator function is called by CREATE EXTENSION.
Procedural Languages

FUNCTION if it exists. If a validator function is provided by the language, declare it with a command like

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION validator_function_name(oid)
    RETURNS void
    AS 'path-to-shared-object'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

5. Finally, the PL must be declared with the command

```sql
CREATE [TRUSTED] LANGUAGE language_name
    HANDLER handler_function_name
    [INLINE inline_function_name]
    [VALIDATOR validator_function_name];
```

The optional key word TRUSTED specifies that the language does not grant access to data that the user would not otherwise have. Trusted languages are designed for ordinary database users (those without superuser privilege) and allows them to safely create functions and procedures. Since PL functions are executed inside the database server, the TRUSTED flag should only be given for languages that do not allow access to database server internals or the file system. The languages PL/pgSQL, PL/Tcl, and PL/Perl are considered trusted; the languages PL/TclU, PL/PerlU, and PL/PythonU are designed to provide unlimited functionality and should not be marked trusted.

Example 40.1 shows how the manual installation procedure would work with the language PL/Perl.

**Example 40.1. Manual Installation of PL/Perl**

The following command tells the database server where to find the shared object for the PL/Perl language's call handler function:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION plperl_call_handler() RETURNS language_handler AS
    '$libdir/plperl' LANGUAGE C;
```

PL/Perl has an inline handler function and a validator function, so we declare those too:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION plperl_inline_handler(internal) RETURNS void AS
    '$libdir/plperl' LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION plperl_validator(oid) RETURNS void AS
    '$libdir/plperl' LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The command:

```sql
CREATE TRUSTED LANGUAGE plperl
    HANDLER plperl_call_handler
    INLINE plperl_inline_handler
    VALIDATOR plperl_validator;
```
then defines that the previously declared functions should be invoked for functions and procedures where the language attribute is `plperl`.

In a default Postgres Pro installation, the handler for the PL/pgSQL language is built and installed into the “library” directory; furthermore, the PL/pgSQL language itself is installed in all databases. If Tcl support is configured in, the handlers for PL/Tcl and PL/TclU are built and installed in the library directory, but the language itself is not installed in any database by default. Likewise, the PL/Perl and PL/PerlU handlers are built and installed if Perl support is configured, and the PL/PythonU handler is installed if Python support is configured, but these languages are not installed by default.
Chapter 41. PL/pgSQL — SQL Procedural Language

41.1. Overview

PL/pgSQL is a loadable procedural language for the Postgres Pro database system. The design goals of PL/pgSQL were to create a loadable procedural language that

• can be used to create functions, procedures, and triggers,
• adds control structures to the SQL language,
• can perform complex computations,
• inherits all user-defined types, functions, procedures, and operators,
• can be defined to be trusted by the server,
• is easy to use.

Functions created with PL/pgSQL can be used anywhere that built-in functions could be used. For example, it is possible to create complex conditional computation functions and later use them to define operators or use them in index expressions.

In PostgreSQL 9.0 and later, PL/pgSQL is installed by default. However it is still a loadable module, so especially security-conscious administrators could choose to remove it.

41.1.1. Advantages of Using PL/pgSQL

SQL is the language Postgres Pro and most other relational databases use as query language. It’s portable and easy to learn. But every SQL statement must be executed individually by the database server.

That means that your client application must send each query to the database server, wait for it to be processed, receive and process the results, do some computation, then send further queries to the server. All this incurs interprocess communication and will also incur network overhead if your client is on a different machine than the database server.

With PL/pgSQL you can group a block of computation and a series of queries inside the database server, thus having the power of a procedural language and the ease of use of SQL, but with considerable savings of client/server communication overhead.

• Extra round trips between client and server are eliminated
• Intermediate results that the client does not need do not have to be marshaled or transferred between server and client
• Multiple rounds of query parsing can be avoided

This can result in a considerable performance increase as compared to an application that does not use stored functions.

Also, with PL/pgSQL you can use all the data types, operators and functions of SQL.

41.1.2. Supported Argument and Result Data Types

Functions written in PL/pgSQL can accept as arguments any scalar or array data type supported by the server, and they can return a result of any of these types. They can also accept or return any composite type (row type) specified by name. It is also possible to declare a PL/pgSQL function as accepting record,
which means that any composite type will do as input, or as returning record, which means that the result is a row type whose columns are determined by specification in the calling query, as discussed in Section 7.2.1.4.

PL/pgSQL functions can be declared to accept a variable number of arguments by using the VARIADIC marker. This works exactly the same way as for SQL functions, as discussed in Section 36.5.6.

PL/pgSQL functions can also be declared to accept and return the polymorphic types described in Section 36.2.5, thus allowing the actual data types handled by the function to vary from call to call. Examples appear in Section 41.3.1.

PL/pgSQL functions can also be declared to return a “set” (or table) of any data type that can be returned as a single instance. Such a function generates its output by executing RETURN NEXT for each desired element of the result set, or by using RETURN QUERY to output the result of evaluating a query.

Finally, a PL/pgSQL function can be declared to return void if it has no useful return value. (Alternatively, it could be written as a procedure in that case.)

PL/pgSQL functions can also be declared with output parameters in place of an explicit specification of the return type. This does not add any fundamental capability to the language, but it is often convenient, especially for returning multiple values. The RETURNS TABLE notation can also be used in place of RETURNS SETOF.

Specific examples appear in Section 41.3.1 and Section 41.6.1.

### 41.2. Structure of PL/pgSQL

Functions written in PL/pgSQL are defined to the server by executing CREATE FUNCTION commands. Such a command would normally look like, say,

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION somefunc(integer, text) RETURNS integer
AS 'function body text'
LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The function body is simply a string literal so far as CREATE FUNCTION is concerned. It is often helpful to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) to write the function body, rather than the normal single quote syntax. Without dollar quoting, any single quotes or backslashes in the function body must be escaped by doubling them. Almost all the examples in this chapter use dollar-quoted literals for their function bodies.

PL/pgSQL is a block-structured language. The complete text of a function body must be a block. A block is defined as:

```sql
[ <<label>> ]
[ DECLARE
  declarations ]
BEGIN
  statements
END [ label ];
```

Each declaration and each statement within a block is terminated by a semicolon. A block that appears within another block must have a semicolon after END, as shown above; however the final END that concludes a function body does not require a semicolon.

**Tip**

A common mistake is to write a semicolon immediately after BEGIN. This is incorrect and will result in a syntax error.
A label is only needed if you want to identify the block for use in an EXIT statement, or to qualify the names of the variables declared in the block. If a label is given after END, it must match the label at the block's beginning.

All key words are case-insensitive. Identifiers are implicitly converted to lower case unless double-quoted, just as they are in ordinary SQL commands.

Comments work the same way in PL/pgSQL code as in ordinary SQL. A double dash (--) starts a comment that extends to the end of the line. A /* starts a block comment that extends to the matching occurrence of */. Block comments nest.

Any statement in the statement section of a block can be a subblock. Subblocks can be used for logical grouping or to localize variables to a small group of statements. Variables declared in a subblock mask any similarly-named variables of outer blocks for the duration of the subblock; but you can access the outer variables anyway if you qualify their names with their block's label. For example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION somefunc() RETURNS integer AS $$
<< outerblock >>
DECLARE
    quantity integer := 30;
BEGIN
    RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity;  -- Prints 30
    quantity := 50;
    -- Create a subblock
    --
    DECLARE
        quantity integer := 80;
    BEGIN
        RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity;  -- Prints 80
        RAISE NOTICE 'Outer quantity here is %', outerblock.quantity;  -- Prints 50
    END;
    RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity;  -- Prints 50
RETURN quantity;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

```
Note

There is actually a hidden “outer block” surrounding the body of any PL/pgSQL function. This block provides the declarations of the function's parameters (if any), as well as some special variables such as FOUND (see Section 41.5.5). The outer block is labeled with the function's name, meaning that parameters and special variables can be qualified with the function's name.
```

It is important not to confuse the use of BEGIN/END for grouping statements in PL/pgSQL with the similarly-named SQL commands for transaction control. PL/pgSQL's BEGIN/END are only for grouping; they do not start or end a transaction. See Section 41.8 for information on managing transactions in PL/pgSQL. Also, a block containing an EXCEPTION clause effectively forms a subtransaction that can be rolled back without affecting the outer transaction. For more about that see Section 41.6.8.

### 41.3. Declarations

All variables used in a block must be declared in the declarations section of the block. (The only exceptions are that the loop variable of a FOR loop iterating over a range of integer values is automatically declared as an integer variable, and likewise the loop variable of a FOR loop iterating over a cursor's result is automatically declared as a record variable.)
PL/pgSQL variables can have any SQL data type, such as `integer`, `varchar`, and `char`.

Here are some examples of variable declarations:

```sql
user_id integer;
quantity numeric(5);
url varchar;
myrow tablename%ROWTYPE;
myfield tablename.columnname%TYPE;
aro RECORD;
```

The general syntax of a variable declaration is:

```sql
name [ CONSTANT ] type [ COLLATE collation_name ] [ NOT NULL ] [ ( DEFAULT | := | = ) expression ];
```

The `DEFAULT` clause, if given, specifies the initial value assigned to the variable when the block is entered. If the `DEFAULT` clause is not given then the variable is initialized to the SQL null value. The `CONSTANT` option prevents the variable from being assigned to after initialization, so that its value will remain constant for the duration of the block. The `COLLATE` option specifies a collation to use for the variable (see Section 41.3.6). If `NOT NULL` is specified, an assignment of a null value results in a run-time error. All variables declared as `NOT NULL` must have a nonnull default value specified. Equal `=` can be used instead of PL/SQL-compliant `:=`.

A variable's default value is evaluated and assigned to the variable each time the block is entered (not just once per function call). So, for example, assigning `now()` to a variable of type `timestamp` causes the variable to have the time of the current function call, not the time when the function was precompiled.

Examples:

```sql
quantity integer DEFAULT 32;
url varchar := 'http://mysite.com';
user_id CONSTANT integer := 10;
```

### 41.3.1. Declaring Function Parameters

Parameters passed to functions are named with the identifiers `$1$, `$2$, etc. Optionally, aliases can be declared for `$n` parameter names for increased readability. Either the alias or the numeric identifier can then be used to refer to the parameter value.

There are two ways to create an alias. The preferred way is to give a name to the parameter in the `CREATE FUNCTION` command, for example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION sales_tax(subtotal real) RETURNS real AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN subtotal * 0.06;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The other way is to explicitly declare an alias, using the declaration syntax

```sql
name ALIAS FOR $n;
```

The same example in this style looks like:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION sales_tax(real) RETURNS real AS $$
DECLARE
    subtotal ALIAS FOR $1;
BEGIN
    RETURN subtotal * 0.06;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```
These two examples are not perfectly equivalent. In the first case, subtotal could be referenced as sales_tax.subtotal, but in the second case it could not. (Had we attached a label to the inner block, subtotal could be qualified with that label, instead.)

Some more examples:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION instr(varchar, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
    v_string ALIAS FOR $1;
    index ALIAS FOR $2;
BEGIN
    -- some computations using v_string and index here
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE FUNCTION concat_selected_fields(in_t sometablename) RETURNS text AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN in_t.f1 || in_t.f3 || in_t.f5 || in_t.f7;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

When a PL/pgSQL function is declared with output parameters, the output parameters are given names and optional aliases in just the same way as the normal input parameters. An output parameter is effectively a variable that starts out NULL; it should be assigned to during the execution of the function. The final value of the parameter is what is returned. For instance, the sales-tax example could also be done this way:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION sales_tax(subtotal real, OUT tax real) AS $$
BEGIN
    tax := subtotal * 0.06;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Notice that we omitted RETURNS real — we could have included it, but it would be redundant.

To call a function with OUT parameters, omit the output parameter(s) in the function call:

```sql
SELECT sales_tax(100.00);
```

Output parameters are most useful when returning multiple values. A trivial example is:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product(x int, y int, OUT sum int, OUT prod int) AS $$
BEGIN
    sum := x + y;
    prod := x * y;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

```sql
SELECT * FROM sum_n_product(2, 4);
  sum | prod
-------+------
   6 |   8
```

As discussed in Section 36.5.4, this effectively creates an anonymous record type for the function's results. If a RETURNS clause is given, it must say RETURNS record.

This also works with procedures, for example:
CREATE PROCEDURE sum_n_product(x int, y int, OUT sum int, OUT prod int) AS $$
BEGIN
  sum := x + y;
  prod := x * y;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

In a call to a procedure, all the parameters must be specified. For output parameters, NULL may be specified when calling the procedure from plain SQL:

```sql
CALL sum_n_product(2, 4, NULL, NULL);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>prod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However, when calling a procedure from PL/pgSQL, you should instead write a variable for any output parameter; the variable will receive the result of the call. See Section 41.6.3 for details.

Another way to declare a PL/pgSQL function is with RETURNS TABLE, for example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION extended_sales(p_itemno int)
RETURNS TABLE(quantity int, total numeric) AS $$
BEGIN
  RETURN QUERY SELECT s.quantity, s.quantity * s.price FROM sales AS s
  WHERE s.itemno = p_itemno;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

This is exactly equivalent to declaring one or more OUT parameters and specifying RETURNS SETOF sometype.

When the return type of a PL/pgSQL function is declared as a polymorphic type (see Section 36.2.5), a special parameter $0 is created. Its data type is the actual return type of the function, as deduced from the actual input types. This allows the function to access its actual return type as shown in Section 41.3.3. $0 is initialized to null and can be modified by the function, so it can be used to hold the return value if desired, though that is not required. $0 can also be given an alias. For example, this function works on any data type that has a + operator:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION add_three_values(v1 anyelement, v2 anyelement, v3 anyelement)
RETURNS anyelement AS $$
DECLARE
  result ALIAS FOR $0;
BEGIN
  result := v1 + v2 + v3;
  RETURN result;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The same effect can be obtained by declaring one or more output parameters as polymorphic types. In this case the special $0 parameter is not used; the output parameters themselves serve the same purpose. For example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION add_three_values(v1 anyelement, v2 anyelement, v3 anyelement,
  OUT sum anyelement)
AS $$
BEGIN
  sum := v1 + v2 + v3;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

In practice it might be more useful to declare a polymorphic function using the anycompatible family of types, so that automatic promotion of the input arguments to a common type will occur. For example:
CREATE FUNCTION add_three_values(v1 anycompatible, v2 anycompatible, v3 anycompatible) 
RETURNS anycompatible AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN v1 + v2 + v3;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

With this example, a call such as
SELECT add_three_values(1, 2, 4.7);

will work, automatically promoting the integer inputs to numeric. The function using anyelement would require you to cast the three inputs to the same type manually.

### 41.3.2. ALIAS

cdbname ALIAS FOR oldname;

The ALIAS syntax is more general than is suggested in the previous section: you can declare an alias for any variable, not just function parameters. The main practical use for this is to assign a different name for variables with predetermined names, such as NEW or OLD within a trigger function.

Examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{DECLARE} & \\
& \quad \text{prior ALIAS FOR old; } \\
& \quad \text{updated ALIAS FOR new; }
\end{align*}
\]

Since ALIAS creates two different ways to name the same object, unrestricted use can be confusing. It's best to use it only for the purpose of overriding predetermined names.

### 41.3.3. Copying Types

\[
\text{variable}\%\text{TYPE}
\]

\%TYPE provides the data type of a variable or table column. You can use this to declare variables that will hold database values. For example, let's say you have a column named user_id in your users table. To declare a variable with the same data type as users.user_id you write:

```
user_id users.user_id\%\text{TYPE};
```

By using \%TYPE you don't need to know the data type of the structure you are referencing, and most importantly, if the data type of the referenced item changes in the future (for instance: you change the type of user_id from integer to real), you might not need to change your function definition.

\%TYPE is particularly valuable in polymorphic functions, since the data types needed for internal variables can change from one call to the next. Appropriate variables can be created by applying \%TYPE to the function's arguments or result placeholders.

### 41.3.4. Row Types

\[
\text{name table_name}\%\text{ROWTYPE}; \\
\text{name composite_type_name};
\]

A variable of a composite type is called a row variable (or row-type variable). Such a variable can hold a whole row of a \text{SELECT} or \text{FOR} query result, so long as that query's column set matches the declared type of the variable. The individual fields of the row value are accessed using the usual dot notation, for example rowvar.field.

A row variable can be declared to have the same type as the rows of an existing table or view, by using the table_name\%ROWTYPE notation; or it can be declared by giving a composite type's name. (Since every table has an associated composite type of the same name, it actually does not matter in Postgres Pro whether you write \%ROWTYPE or not. But the form with \%ROWTYPE is more portable.)
Parameters to a function can be composite types (complete table rows). In that case, the corresponding identifier $n will be a row variable, and fields can be selected from it, for example $1.user_id.

Here is an example of using composite types. `table1` and `table2` are existing tables having at least the mentioned fields:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION merge_fields(t_row table1) RETURNS text AS $$
DECLARE
  t2_row table2%ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
  SELECT * INTO t2_row FROM table2 WHERE ... ;
  RETURN t_row.f1 || t2_row.f3 || t_row.f5 || t2_row.f7;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
SELECT merge_fields(t.*) FROM table1 t WHERE ... ;
```

### 41.3.5. Record Types

`name RECORD;`  

Record variables are similar to row-type variables, but they have no predefined structure. They take on the actual row structure of the row they are assigned during a `SELECT` or `FOR` command. The substructure of a record variable can change each time it is assigned to. A consequence of this is that until a record variable is first assigned to, it has no substructure, and any attempt to access a field in it will draw a run-time error.

Note that `RECORD` is not a true data type, only a placeholder. One should also realize that when a PL/pgSQL function is declared to return type `record`, this is not quite the same concept as a record variable, even though such a function might use a record variable to hold its result. In both cases the actual row structure is unknown when the function is written, but for a function returning `record` the actual structure is determined when the calling query is parsed, whereas a record variable can change its row structure on-the-fly.

### 41.3.6. Collation of PL/pgSQL Variables

When a PL/pgSQL function has one or more parameters of collatable data types, a collation is identified for each function call depending on the collations assigned to the actual arguments, as described in Section 22.2. If a collation is successfully identified (i.e., there are no conflicts of implicit collations among the arguments) then all the collatable parameters are treated as having that collation implicitly. This will affect the behavior of collation-sensitive operations within the function. For example, consider

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION less_than(a text, b text) RETURNS boolean AS $$
BEGIN
  RETURN a < b;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
SELECT less_than(text_field_1, text_field_2) FROM table1;
SELECT less_than(text_field_1, text_field_2 COLLATE "C") FROM table1;
```

The first use of `less_than` will use the common collation of `text_field_1` and `text_field_2` for the comparison, while the second use will use `C` collation.

Furthermore, the identified collation is also assumed as the collation of any local variables that are of collatable types. Thus this function would not work any differently if it were written as

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION less_than(a text, b text) RETURNS boolean AS $$
DECLARE
  local_a text := a;
  local_b text := b;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
SELECT less_than(text_field_1, text_field_2 COLLATE "C") FROM table1;
```

The first two lines are responsible for the collation's usage, and the third line is where the error is generated.
BEGIN
  RETURN local_a < local_b;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

If there are no parameters of collatable data types, or no common collation can be identified for them, then parameters and local variables use the default collation of their data type (which is usually the database's default collation, but could be different for variables of domain types).

A local variable of a collatable data type can have a different collation associated with it by including the COLLATE option in its declaration, for example

DECLARE
  local_a text COLLATE "en_US";

This option overrides the collation that would otherwise be given to the variable according to the rules above.

Also, of course explicit COLLATE clauses can be written inside a function if it is desired to force a particular collation to be used in a particular operation. For example,

CREATE FUNCTION less_than_c(a text, b text) RETURNS boolean AS $$
BEGIN
  RETURN a < b COLLATE "C";
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

This overrides the collations associated with the table columns, parameters, or local variables used in the expression, just as would happen in a plain SQL command.

41.4. Expressions

All expressions used in PL/pgSQL statements are processed using the server's main SQL executor. For example, when you write a PL/pgSQL statement like

IF expression THEN ...

PL/pgSQL will evaluate the expression by feeding a query like

SELECT expression

to the main SQL engine. While forming the SELECT command, any occurrences of PL/pgSQL variable names are replaced by query parameters, as discussed in detail in Section 41.11.1. This allows the query plan for the SELECT to be prepared just once and then reused for subsequent evaluations with different values of the variables. Thus, what really happens on first use of an expression is essentially a PREPARE command. For example, if we have declared two integer variables x and y, and we write

IF x < y THEN ...

what happens behind the scenes is equivalent to

PREPARE statement_name(integer, integer) AS SELECT $1 < $2;

and then this prepared statement is EXECUTED for each execution of the IF statement, with the current values of the PL/pgSQL variables supplied as parameter values. Normally these details are not important to a PL/pgSQL user, but they are useful to know when trying to diagnose a problem. More information appears in Section 41.11.2.

Since an expression is converted to a SELECT command, it can contain the same clauses that an ordinary SELECT would, except that it cannot include a top-level UNION, INTERSECT, or EXCEPT clause. Thus for example one could test whether a table is non-empty with

IF count(*) > 0 FROM my_table THEN ...
since the expression between IF and THEN is parsed as though it were SELECT count(*) > 0 FROM my_table. The SELECT must produce a single column, and not more than one row. (If it produces no rows, the result is taken as NULL.)

41.5. Basic Statements

In this section and the following ones, we describe all the statement types that are explicitly understood by PL/pgSQL. Anything not recognized as one of these statement types is presumed to be an SQL command and is sent to the main database engine to execute, as described in Section 41.5.2.

41.5.1. Assignment

An assignment of a value to a PL/pgSQL variable is written as:

```plaintext
variable { := | = } expression;
```

As explained previously, the expression in such a statement is evaluated by means of an SQL SELECT command sent to the main database engine. The expression must yield a single value (possibly a row value, if the variable is a row or record variable). The target variable can be a simple variable (optionally qualified with a block name), a field of a row or record target, or an element or slice of an array target. Equal (=) can be used instead of PL/SQL-compliant :=.

If the expression's result data type doesn't match the variable's data type, the value will be coerced as though by an assignment cast (see Section 10.4). If no assignment cast is known for the pair of data types involved, the PL/pgSQL interpreter will attempt to convert the result value textually, that is by applying the result type's output function followed by the variable type's input function. Note that this could result in run-time errors generated by the input function, if the string form of the result value is not acceptable to the input function.

Examples:

```plaintext
tax := subtotal * 0.06;
my_record.user_id := 20;
my_array[j] := 20;
my_array[1:3] := array[1,2,3];
complex_array[n].realpart = 12.3;
```

41.5.2. Executing SQL Commands

In general, any SQL command that does not return rows can be executed within a PL/pgSQL function just by writing the command. For example, you could create and fill a table by writing

```sql
CREATE TABLE mytable (id int primary key, data text);
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES (1,'one'), (2,'two');
```

If the command does return rows (for example SELECT, or INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE with RETURNING), there are two ways to proceed. When the command will return at most one row, or you only care about the first row of output, write the command as usual but add an INTO clause to capture the output, as described in Section 41.5.3. To process all of the output rows, write the command as the data source for a FOR loop, as described in Section 41.6.6.

Usually it is not sufficient just to execute statically-defined SQL commands. Typically you'll want a command to use varying data values, or even to vary in more fundamental ways such as by using different table names at different times. Again, there are two ways to proceed depending on the situation.

PL/pgSQL variable values can be automatically inserted into optimizable SQL commands, which are SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and certain utility commands that incorporate one of these, such as EXPLAIN and CREATE TABLE ... AS SELECT. In these commands, any PL/pgSQL variable name appearing in the command text is replaced by a query parameter, and then the current value of the variable is provided as the parameter value at run time. This is exactly like the processing described earlier for expressions; for details see Section 41.11.1.
When executing an optimizable SQL command in this way, PL/pgSQL may cache and re-use the execution plan for the command, as discussed in Section 41.11.2.

Non-optimizable SQL commands (also called utility commands) are not capable of accepting query parameters. So automatic substitution of PL/pgSQL variables does not work in such commands. To include non-constant text in a utility command executed from PL/pgSQL, you must build the utility command as a string and then EXECUTE it, as discussed in Section 41.5.4.

EXECUTE must also be used if you want to modify the command in some other way than supplying a data value, for example by changing a table name.

Sometimes it is useful to evaluate an expression or SELECT query but discard the result, for example when calling a function that has side-effects but no useful result value. To do this in PL/pgSQL, use the PERFORM statement:

PERFORM query;

This executes query and discards the result. Write the query the same way you would write an SQL SELECT command, but replace the initial keyword SELECT with PERFORM. For WITH queries, use PERFORM and then place the query in parentheses. (In this case, the query can only return one row.) PL/pgSQL variables will be substituted into the query just as described above, and the plan is cached in the same way. Also, the special variable FOUND is set to true if the query produced at least one row, or false if it produced no rows (see Section 41.5.5).

Note

One might expect that writing SELECT directly would accomplish this result, but at present the only accepted way to do it is PERFORM. An SQL command that can return rows, such as SELECT, will be rejected as an error unless it has an INTO clause as discussed in the next section.

An example:

PERFORM create_mv('cs_session_page_requests_mv', my_query);

41.5.3. Executing a Command with a Single-Row Result

The result of an SQL command yielding a single row (possibly of multiple columns) can be assigned to a record variable, row-type variable, or list of scalar variables. This is done by writing the base SQL command and adding an INTO clause. For example,

SELECT select_expressions INTO [STRICT] target FROM ...;
INSERT ... RETURNING expressions INTO [STRICT] target;
UPDATE ... RETURNING expressions INTO [STRICT] target;
DELETE ... RETURNING expressions INTO [STRICT] target;

where target can be a record variable, a row variable, or a comma-separated list of simple variables and record/row fields. PL/pgSQL variables will be substituted into the rest of the command (that is, everything but the INTO clause) just as described above, and the plan is cached in the same way. This works for SELECT, INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE with RETURNING, and certain utility commands that return row sets, such as EXPLAIN. Except for the INTO clause, the SQL command is the same as it would be written outside PL/pgSQL.

Tip

Note that this interpretation of SELECT with INTO is quite different from Postgres Pro’s regular SELECT INTO command, wherein the INTO target is a newly created table. If you want to create a table from a SELECT result inside a PL/pgSQL function, use the syntax CREATE TABLE ... AS SELECT.
If a row variable or a variable list is used as target, the command’s result columns must exactly match
the structure of the target as to number and data types, or else a run-time error occurs. When a record
variable is the target, it automatically configures itself to the row type of the command’s result columns.

The \textit{into} clause can appear almost anywhere in the SQL command. Customarily it is written either just
before or just after the list of \texttt{select\_expressions} in a \texttt{SELECT} command, or at the end of the command
for other command types. It is recommended that you follow this convention in case the PL/pgSQL parser
becomes stricter in future versions.

If \texttt{STRICT} is not specified in the \textit{into} clause, then \texttt{target} will be set to the first row returned by the
command, or to nulls if the command returned no rows. (Note that “the first row” is not well-defined
unless you’ve used \texttt{ORDER BY}.) Any result rows after the first row are discarded. You can check the special
\texttt{FOUND} variable (see Section~\ref{sec:plpgsql-found}) to determine whether a row was returned:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT * INTO myrec FROM emp WHERE empname = myname;
IF NOT FOUND THEN
  RAISE EXCEPTION 'employee % not found', myname;
END IF;
\end{verbatim}

If the \texttt{STRICT} option is specified, the command must return exactly one row or a run-time error will
be reported, either \texttt{NO\_DATA\_FOUND} (no rows) or \texttt{TOO\_MANY\_ROWS} (more than one row). You can use an
exception block if you wish to catch the error, for example:

\begin{verbatim}
BEGIN
  SELECT * INTO STRICT myrec FROM emp WHERE empname = myname;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'employee % not found', myname;
  WHEN TOO_MANY_ROWS THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'employee % not unique', myname;
END;
\end{verbatim}

Successful execution of a command with \texttt{STRICT} always sets \texttt{FOUND} to true.

For \texttt{INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE} with \texttt{RETURNING}, PL/pgSQL reports an error for more than one returned row,
even when \texttt{STRICT} is not specified. This is because there is no option such as \texttt{ORDER BY} with which to
determine which affected row should be returned.

If \texttt{print\_strict\_params} is enabled for the function, then when an error is thrown because the
requirements of \texttt{STRICT} are not met, the \texttt{DETAIL} part of the error message will include information
about the parameters passed to the command. You can change the \texttt{print\_strict\_params} setting for all
functions by setting \texttt{plpgsql.print\_strict\_params}, though only subsequent function compilations will
be affected. You can also enable it on a per-function basis by using a compiler option, for example:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE FUNCTION get_userid(username text) RETURNS int
AS $$
# print_strict_params on
DECLARE
userid int;
BEGIN
  SELECT users.userid INTO STRICT userid
  FROM users WHERE users.username = get_userid.username;
  RETURN userid;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
\end{verbatim}

On failure, this function might produce an error message such as

\begin{verbatim}
ERROR:  query returned no rows
DETAIL:  parameters: $1 = 'nosuchuser'
CONTEXT:  PL/pgSQL function get_userid(text) line 6 at SQL statement
\end{verbatim}
41.5.4. Executing Dynamic Commands

Oftentimes you will want to generate dynamic commands inside your PL/pgSQL functions, that is, commands that will involve different tables or different data types each time they are executed. PL/pgSQL's normal attempts to cache plans for commands (as discussed in Section 41.11.2) will not work in such scenarios. To handle this sort of problem, the `EXECUTE` statement is provided:

```
EXECUTE command-string [ INTO [STRICT] target ] [ USING expression [, ... ] ];
```

where `command-string` is an expression yielding a string (of type `text`) containing the command to be executed. The optional `target` is a record variable, a row variable, or a comma-separated list of simple variables and record/row fields, into which the results of the command will be stored. The optional `USING` expressions supply values to be inserted into the command.

No substitution of PL/pgSQL variables is done on the computed command string. Any required variable values must be inserted in the command string as it is constructed; or you can use parameters as described below.

Also, there is no plan caching for commands executed via `EXECUTE`. Instead, the command is always planned each time the statement is run. Thus the command string can be dynamically created within the function to perform actions on different tables and columns.

The `INTO` clause specifies where the results of an SQL command returning rows should be assigned. If a row variable or variable list is provided, it must exactly match the structure of the command’s results; if a record variable is provided, it will configure itself to match the result structure automatically. If multiple rows are returned, only the first will be assigned to the `INTO` variable(s). If no rows are returned, `NULL` is assigned to the `INTO` variable(s). If no `INTO` clause is specified, the command results are discarded.

If the `STRICT` option is given, an error is reported unless the command produces exactly one row.

The command string can use parameter values, which are referenced in the command as `$1`, `$2`, etc. These symbols refer to values supplied in the `USING` clause. This method is often preferable to inserting data values into the command string as text: it avoids run-time overhead of converting the values to text and back, and it is much less prone to SQL-injection attacks since there is no need for quoting or escaping. An example is:

```
EXECUTE 'SELECT count(*) FROM mytable WHERE inserted_by = $1 AND inserted <= $2'
INTO c
USING checked_user, checked_date;
```

Note that parameter symbols can only be used for data values — if you want to use dynamically determined table or column names, you must insert them into the command string textually. For example, if the preceding query needed to be done against a dynamically selected table, you could do this:

```
EXECUTE 'SELECT count(*) FROM '
  || quote_ident(tabname)
  || ' WHERE inserted_by = $1 AND inserted <= $2'
INTO c
USING checked_user, checked_date;
```

A cleaner approach is to use `format()`’s `%I` specification to insert table or column names with automatic quoting:

```
EXECUTE format('SELECT count(*) FROM %I ' 
  'WHERE inserted_by = $1 AND inserted <= $2', tabname)
INTO c
```
USING checked_user, checked_date;

(This example relies on the SQL rule that string literals separated by a newline are implicitly concatenated.)

Another restriction on parameter symbols is that they only work in optimizable SQL commands (SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and certain commands containing one of these). In other statement types (generically called utility statements), you must insert values textually even if they are just data values.

An `EXECUTE` with a simple constant command string and some `USING` parameters, as in the first example above, is functionally equivalent to just writing the command directly in PL/pgSQL and allowing replacement of PL/pgSQL variables to happen automatically. The important difference is that `EXECUTE` will re-plan the command on each execution, generating a plan that is specific to the current parameter values; whereas PL/pgSQL may otherwise create a generic plan and cache it for re-use. In situations where the best plan depends strongly on the parameter values, it can be helpful to use `EXECUTE` to positively ensure that a generic plan is not selected.

`SELECT INTO` is not currently supported within `EXECUTE`; instead, execute a plain `SELECT` command and specify `INTO` as part of the `EXECUTE` itself.

### Note

The PL/pgSQL `EXECUTE` statement is not related to the `EXECUTE` SQL statement supported by the Postgres Pro server. The server’s `EXECUTE` statement cannot be used directly within PL/pgSQL functions (and is not needed).

**Example 41.1. Quoting Values in Dynamic Queries**

When working with dynamic commands you will often have to handle escaping of single quotes. The recommended method for quoting fixed text in your function body is dollar quoting. (If you have legacy code that does not use dollar quoting, please refer to the overview in Section 41.12.1, which can save you some effort when translating said code to a more reasonable scheme.)

Dynamic values require careful handling since they might contain quote characters. An example using `format()` (this assumes that you are dollar quoting the function body so quote marks need not be doubled):

```sql
EXECUTE format('UPDATE tbl SET %I = $1 ' 'WHERE key = $2', colname) USING newvalue, keyvalue;
```

It is also possible to call the quoting functions directly:

```sql
EXECUTE 'UPDATE tbl SET ' 'WHERE key = '
  || quote_ident(colname) || ' = ' || quote_literal(newvalue) || quote_literal(keyvalue);
```

This example demonstrates the use of the `quote_ident` and `quote_literal` functions (see Section 9.4). For safety, expressions containing column or table identifiers should be passed through `quote_ident` before insertion in a dynamic query. Expressions containing values that should be literal strings in the constructed command should be passed through `quote_literal`. These functions take the appropriate steps to return the input text enclosed in double or single quotes respectively, with any embedded special characters properly escaped.

Because `quote_literal` is labeled `STRICT`, it will always return null when called with a null argument. In the above example, if `newvalue` or `keyvalue` were null, the entire dynamic query string would become...
null, leading to an error from EXECUTE. You can avoid this problem by using the `quote_nullable` function, which works the same as `quote_literal` except that when called with a null argument it returns the string `NULL`. For example,

```sql
EXECUTE 'UPDATE tbl SET ' || quote_ident(colname) || ' = ' || quote_nullable(newvalue) || ' WHERE key = ' || quote_nullable(keyvalue);
```

If you are dealing with values that might be null, you should usually use `quote_nullable` in place of `quote_literal`.

As always, care must be taken to ensure that null values in a query do not deliver unintended results. For example the `WHERE` clause

```
WHERE key = ' || quote_nullable(keyvalue)
```

will never succeed if `keyvalue` is null, because the result of using the equality operator `=` with a null operand is always null. If you wish null to work like an ordinary key value, you would need to rewrite the above as

```
WHERE key IS NOT DISTINCT FROM ' || quote_nullable(keyvalue)
```

(At present, `IS NOT DISTINCT FROM` is handled much less efficiently than `=`, so don’t do this unless you must. See Section 9.2 for more information on nulls and `IS DISTINCT`.)

Note that dollar quoting is only useful for quoting fixed text. It would be a very bad idea to try to write this example as:

```sql
EXECUTE 'UPDATE tbl SET ' || quote_ident(colname) || ' = $$' || newvalue || '$$ WHERE key = ' || quote_literal(keyvalue);
```

because it would break if the contents of `newvalue` happened to contain `$`. The same objection would apply to any other dollar-quotting delimiter you might pick. So, to safely quote text that is not known in advance, you must use `quote_literal`, `quote_nullable`, or `quote_ident`, as appropriate.

Dynamic SQL statements can also be safely constructed using the `format` function (see Section 9.4.1). For example:

```sql
EXECUTE format('UPDATE tbl SET %I = %L ' || quote_ident(colname) || ' = $$' || newvalue || '$$ WHERE key = ' || quote_nullable(keyvalue);
```

%I is equivalent to `quote_ident`, and %L is equivalent to `quote_nullable`. The `format` function can be used in conjunction with the `USING` clause:

```sql
EXECUTE format('UPDATE tbl SET %I = $1 WHERE key = $2', colname) USING newvalue, keyvalue;
```

This form is better because the variables are handled in their native data type format, rather than unconditionally converting them to text and quoting them via %L. It is also more efficient.

A much larger example of a dynamic command and `EXECUTE` can be seen in Example 41.10, which builds and executes a `CREATE FUNCTION` command to define a new function.

### 41.5.5. Obtaining the Result Status

There are several ways to determine the effect of a command. The first method is to use the `GET DIAGNOSTICS` command, which has the form:
GET [ CURRENT ] DIAGNOSTICS variable { = | := } item [ , ... ];

This command allows retrieval of system status indicators. CURRENT is a noise word (but see also GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS in Section 41.6.8.1). Each item is a key word identifying a status value to be assigned to the specified variable (which should be of the right data type to receive it). The currently available status items are shown in Table 41.1. Colon-equal (:=) can be used instead of the SQL-standard = token. An example:

GET DIAGNOSTICS integer_var = ROW_COUNT;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ROW_COUNT</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>the number of rows processed by the most recent SQL command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG_CONTEXT</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>line(s) of text describing the current call stack (see Section 41.6.9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The second method to determine the effects of a command is to check the special variable named FOUND, which is of type boolean. FOUND starts out false within each PL/pgSQL function call. It is set by each of the following types of statements:

- A SELECT INTO statement sets FOUND true if a row is assigned, false if no row is returned.
- A PERFORM statement sets FOUND true if it produces (and discards) one or more rows, false if no row is produced.
- UPDATE, INSERT, and DELETE statements set FOUND true if at least one row is affected, false if no row is affected.
- A FETCH statement sets FOUND true if it returns a row, false if no row is returned.
- A MOVE statement sets FOUND true if it successfully repositions the cursor, false otherwise.
- A FOR or FOREACH statement sets FOUND true if it iterates one or more times, else false. FOUND is set this way when the loop exits; inside the execution of the loop, FOUND is not modified by the loop statement, although it might be changed by the execution of other statements within the loop body.
- RETURN QUERY and RETURN QUERY EXECUTE statements set FOUND true if the query returns at least one row, false if no row is returned.

Other PL/pgSQL statements do not change the state of FOUND. Note in particular that EXECUTE changes the output of GET DIAGNOSTICS, but does not change FOUND.

FOUND is a local variable within each PL/pgSQL function; any changes to it affect only the current function.

41.5.6. Doing Nothing At All

Sometimes a placeholder statement that does nothing is useful. For example, it can indicate that one arm of an if/then/else chain is deliberately empty. For this purpose, use the NULL statement:

NULL;

For example, the following two fragments of code are equivalent:

BEGIN
  y := x / 0;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN division_by_zero THEN
    NULL;  -- ignore the error
END;
BEGIN
PL/pgSQL — SQL
Procedural Language

```sql
y := x / 0;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN division_by_zero THEN -- ignore the error
END;
```

Which is preferable is a matter of taste.

**Note**
In Oracle's PL/SQL, empty statement lists are not allowed, and so NULL statements are required for situations such as this. PL/pgSQL allows you to just write nothing, instead.

### 41.6. Control Structures

Control structures are probably the most useful (and important) part of PL/pgSQL. With PL/pgSQL's control structures, you can manipulate Postgres Pro data in a very flexible and powerful way.

#### 41.6.1. Returning from a Function

There are two commands available that allow you to return data from a function: `RETURN` and `RETURN NEXT`.

##### 41.6.1.1. `RETURN`

```sql
RETURN expression;
```

RETURN with an expression terminates the function and returns the value of `expression` to the caller. This form is used for PL/pgSQL functions that do not return a set.

In a function that returns a scalar type, the expression's result will automatically be cast into the function's return type as described for assignments. But to return a composite (row) value, you must write an expression delivering exactly the requested column set. This may require use of explicit casting.

If you declared the function with output parameters, write just `RETURN` with no expression. The current values of the output parameter variables will be returned.

If you declared the function to return `void`, a `RETURN` statement can be used to exit the function early; but do not write an expression following `RETURN`.

The return value of a function cannot be left undefined. If control reaches the end of the top-level block of the function without hitting a `RETURN` statement, a run-time error will occur. This restriction does not apply to functions with output parameters and functions returning `void`, however. In those cases a `RETURN` statement is automatically executed if the top-level block finishes.

Some examples:

-- functions returning a scalar type
RETURN 1 + 2;
RETURN scalar_var;

-- functions returning a composite type
RETURN composite_type_var;
RETURN (1, 2, 'three'::text); -- must cast columns to correct types
```

##### 41.6.1.2. `RETURN NEXT` and `RETURN QUERY`

```sql
RETURN NEXT expression;
RETURN QUERY query;
RETURN QUERY EXECUTE command-string [ USING expression [, ... ] ];
```
When a PL/pgSQL function is declared to return \texttt{SETOF sometype}, the procedure to follow is slightly different. In that case, the individual items to return are specified by a sequence of \texttt{RETURN NEXT} or \texttt{RETURN QUERY} commands, and then a final \texttt{RETURN} command with no argument is used to indicate that the function has finished executing. \texttt{RETURN NEXT} can be used with both scalar and composite data types; with a composite result type, an entire “table” of results will be returned. \texttt{RETURN QUERY} appends the results of executing a query to the function’s result set. \texttt{RETURN NEXT} and \texttt{RETURN QUERY} can be freely intermixed in a single set-returning function, in which case their results will be concatenated.

\texttt{RETURN NEXT} and \texttt{RETURN QUERY} do not actually return from the function — they simply append zero or more rows to the function’s result set. Execution then continues with the next statement in the PL/pgSQL function. As successive \texttt{RETURN NEXT} or \texttt{RETURN QUERY} commands are executed, the result set is built up. A final \texttt{RETURN}, which should have no argument, causes control to exit the function (or you can just let control reach the end of the function).

\texttt{RETURN QUERY} has a variant \texttt{RETURN QUERY EXECUTE}, which specifies the query to be executed dynamically. Parameter expressions can be inserted into the computed query string via \texttt{USING}, in just the same way as in the \texttt{EXECUTE} command.

If you declared the function with output parameters, write just \texttt{RETURN NEXT} with no expression. On each execution, the current values of the output parameter variable(s) will be saved for eventual return as a row of the result. Note that you must declare the function as returning \texttt{SETOF record} when there are multiple output parameters, or \texttt{SETOF sometype} when there is just one output parameter of type \texttt{sometype}, in order to create a set-returning function with output parameters.

Here is an example of a function using \texttt{RETURN NEXT}:

```sql
CREATE TABLE foo (fooid INT, foosubid INT, fooname TEXT);
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (1, 2, 'three');
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (4, 5, 'six');

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_all_foo() RETURNS SETOF foo AS $BODY$
DECLARE
    r foo%rowtype;
BEGIN
    FOR r IN
        SELECT * FROM foo WHERE fooid > 0
    LOOP
        -- can do some processing here
        RETURN NEXT r; -- return current row of SELECT
    END LOOP;
    RETURN;
END;
$BODY$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT * FROM get_all_foo();
```

Here is an example of a function using \texttt{RETURN QUERY}:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION get_available_flightid(date) RETURNS SETOF integer AS $BODY$
BEGIN
    RETURN QUERY SELECT flightid
    FROM flight
    WHERE flightdate >= $1
    AND flightdate < ($1 + 1);
END;
$BODY$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT * FROM get_available_flightid(date);
```

-- Since execution is not finished, we can check whether rows were returned
PL/pgSQL — SQL
Procedural Language

-- and raise exception if not.
IF NOT FOUND THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'No flight at %.', $1;
END IF;

RETURN;
END;
$BODY$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

-- Returns available flights or raises exception if there are no
-- available flights.
SELECT * FROM get_available_flightid(CURRENT_DATE);

Note
The current implementation of RETURN NEXT and RETURN QUERY stores the entire result set before
returning from the function, as discussed above. That means that if a PL/pgSQL function produces
a very large result set, performance might be poor: data will be written to disk to avoid memory
exhaustion, but the function itself will not return until the entire result set has been generated. A
future version of PL/pgSQL might allow users to define set-returning functions that do not have
this limitation. Currently, the point at which data begins being written to disk is controlled by
the work_mem configuration variable. Administrators who have sufficient memory to store larger
result sets in memory should consider increasing this parameter.

41.6.2. Returning from a Procedure
A procedure does not have a return value. A procedure can therefore end without a RETURN statement.
If you wish to use a RETURN statement to exit the code early, write just RETURN with no expression.

If the procedure has output parameters, the final values of the output parameter variables will be
returned to the caller.

41.6.3. Calling a Procedure
A PL/pgSQL function, procedure, or DO block can call a procedure using CALL. Output parameters are
handled differently from the way that CALL works in plain SQL. Each OUT or INOUT parameter of the
procedure must correspond to a variable in the CALL statement, and whatever the procedure returns is
assigned back to that variable after it returns. For example:

CREATE PROCEDURE triple(INOUT x int)
LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
BEGIN
    x := x * 3;
END;
$$;
DO $$
DECLARE myvar int := 5;
BEGIN
    CALL triple(myvar);
    RAISE NOTICE 'myvar = %', myvar; -- prints 15
END;
$$;

The variable corresponding to an output parameter can be a simple variable or a field of a composite-
type variable. Currently, it cannot be an element of an array.
41.6.4. Conditionals

IF and CASE statements let you execute alternative commands based on certain conditions. PL/pgSQL has three forms of IF:

- IF ... THEN ... END IF
- IF ... THEN ... ELSE ... END IF
- IF ... THEN ... ELSIF ... THEN ... ELSE ... END IF

and two forms of CASE:

- CASE ... WHEN ... THEN ... ELSE ... END CASE
- CASE WHEN ... THEN ... ELSE ... END CASE

41.6.4.1. IF-THEN

IF boolean-expression THEN
    statements
END IF;

IF-THEN statements are the simplest form of IF. The statements between THEN and END IF will be executed if the condition is true. Otherwise, they are skipped.

Example:

IF v_user_id <> 0 THEN
    UPDATE users SET email = v_email WHERE user_id = v_user_id;
END IF;

41.6.4.2. IF-THEN-ELSE

IF boolean-expression THEN
    statements
ELSE
    statements
END IF;

IF-THEN-ELSE statements add to IF-THEN by letting you specify an alternative set of statements that should be executed if the condition is not true. (Note this includes the case where the condition evaluates to NULL.)

Examples:

IF parentid IS NULL OR parentid = '' THEN
    RETURN fullname;
ELSE
    RETURN hp_true_filename(parentid) || '/' || fullname;
END IF;

IF v_count > 0 THEN
    INSERT INTO users_count (count) VALUES (v_count);
    RETURN 't';
ELSE
    RETURN 'f';
END IF;

41.6.4.3. IF-THEN-ELSIF

IF boolean-expression THEN
    statements
Sometimes there are more than just two alternatives. IF-THEN-ELSIF provides a convenient method of checking several alternatives in turn. The IF conditions are tested successively until the first one that is true is found. Then the associated statement(s) are executed, after which control passes to the next statement after END IF. (Any subsequent IF conditions are not tested.) If none of the IF conditions is true, then the ELSE block (if any) is executed.

Here is an example:

```sql
IF number = 0 THEN
  result := 'zero';
ELSIF number > 0 THEN
  result := 'positive';
ELSIF number < 0 THEN
  result := 'negative';
ELSE
  -- hmm, the only other possibility is that number is null
  result := 'NULL';
END IF;
```

The key word ELSIF can also be spelled ELSEIF.

An alternative way of accomplishing the same task is to nest IF-THEN-ELSE statements, as in the following example:

```sql
IF demo_row.sex = 'm' THEN
  pretty_sex := 'man';
ELSE
  IF demo_row.sex = 'f' THEN
    pretty_sex := 'woman';
  END IF;
END IF;
```

However, this method requires writing a matching END IF for each IF, so it is much more cumbersome than using ELSIF when there are many alternatives.

### 41.6.4.4. Simple CASE

```sql
CASE search-expression
    WHEN expression [, expression [ ... ]] THEN
      statements
    [ WHEN expression [, expression [ ... ]] THEN
      statements
    ... ]
    [ ELSE
      statements ]
END CASE;
```

The simple form of CASE provides conditional execution based on equality of operands. The search-expression is evaluated (once) and successively compared to each expression in the WHEN clauses. If
a match is found, then the corresponding statements are executed, and then control passes to the next statement after END CASE. (Subsequent WHEN expressions are not evaluated.) If no match is found, the ELSE statements are executed; but if ELSE is not present, then a CASE_NOT_FOUND exception is raised.

Here is a simple example:

CASE x
  WHEN 1, 2 THEN
    msg := 'one or two';
  ELSE
    msg := 'other value than one or two';
END CASE;

41.6.4.5. Searched CASE

CASE
  WHEN boolean-expression THEN
    statements
  [ WHEN boolean-expression THEN
    statements
  ... ]
  [ ELSE
    statements ]
END CASE;

The searched form of CASE provides conditional execution based on truth of Boolean expressions. Each WHEN clause's boolean-expression is evaluated in turn, until one is found that yields true. Then the corresponding statements are executed, and then control passes to the next statement after END CASE. (Subsequent WHEN expressions are not evaluated.) If no true result is found, the ELSE statements are executed; but if ELSE is not present, then a CASE_NOT_FOUND exception is raised.

Here is an example:

CASE
  WHEN x BETWEEN 0 AND 10 THEN
    msg := 'value is between zero and ten';
  WHEN x BETWEEN 11 AND 20 THEN
    msg := 'value is between eleven and twenty';
END CASE;

This form of CASE is entirely equivalent to IF-THEN-ELSIF, except for the rule that reaching an omitted ELSE clause results in an error rather than doing nothing.

41.6.5. Simple Loops

With the LOOP, EXIT, CONTINUE, WHILE, FOR, and FOREACH statements, you can arrange for your PL/pgSQL function to repeat a series of commands.

41.6.5.1. LOOP

[ <<label>> ]
LOOP
  statements
END LOOP [ label ];

LOOP defines an unconditional loop that is repeated indefinitely until terminated by an EXIT or RETURN statement. The optional label can be used by EXIT and CONTINUE statements within nested loops to specify which loop those statements refer to.

41.6.5.2. EXIT
EXIT [ label ] [ WHEN boolean-expression ];

If no label is given, the innermost loop is terminated and the statement following END LOOP is executed next. If label is given, it must be the label of the current or some outer level of nested loop or block. Then the named loop or block is terminated and control continues with the statement after the loop’s/ block’s corresponding END.

If WHEN is specified, the loop exit occurs only if boolean-expression is true. Otherwise, control passes to the statement after EXIT.

EXIT can be used with all types of loops; it is not limited to use with unconditional loops.

When used with a BEGIN block, EXIT passes control to the next statement after the end of the block. Note that a label must be used for this purpose; an unlabeled EXIT is never considered to match a BEGIN block. (This is a change from pre-8.4 releases of PostgreSQL, which would allow an unlabeled EXIT to match a BEGIN block.)

Examples:

```sql
LOOP
  -- some computations
  IF count > 0 THEN
    EXIT; -- exit loop
  END IF;
END LOOP;

LOOP
  -- some computations
  EXIT WHEN count > 0; -- same result as previous example
END LOOP;

<<ablock>>
BEGIN
  -- some computations
  IF stocks > 100000 THEN
    EXIT ablock; -- causes exit from the BEGIN block
  END IF;
  -- computations here will be skipped when stocks > 100000
END;
```

41.6.5.3. CONTINUE

CONTINUE [ label ] [ WHEN boolean-expression ];

If no label is given, the next iteration of the innermost loop is begun. That is, all statements remaining in the loop body are skipped, and control returns to the loop control expression (if any) to determine whether another loop iteration is needed. If label is present, it specifies the label of the loop whose execution will be continued.

If WHEN is specified, the next iteration of the loop is begun only if boolean-expression is true. Otherwise, control passes to the statement after CONTINUE.

CONTINUE can be used with all types of loops; it is not limited to use with unconditional loops.

Examples:

```sql
LOOP
  -- some computations
  EXIT WHEN count > 100;
  CONTINUE WHEN count < 50;
```
-- some computations for count IN [50 .. 100]
END LOOP;

41.6.5.4. WHILE

[ <<=label>> ]
WHILE boolean-expression LOOP
  statements
END LOOP [ label ];

The WHILE statement repeats a sequence of statements so long as the boolean-expression evaluates to true. The expression is checked just before each entry to the loop body.

For example:

WHILE amount_owed > 0 AND gift_certificate_balance > 0 LOOP
  -- some computations here
END LOOP;

WHILE NOT done LOOP
  -- some computations here
END LOOP;

41.6.5.5. FOR (Integer Variant)

[ <<=label>> ]
FOR name IN [ REVERSE ] expression .. expression [ BY expression ] LOOP
  statements
END LOOP [ label ];

This form of FOR creates a loop that iterates over a range of integer values. The variable name is automatically defined as type integer and exists only inside the loop (any existing definition of the variable name is ignored within the loop). The two expressions giving the lower and upper bound of the range are evaluated once when entering the loop. If the BY clause isn't specified the iteration step is 1, otherwise it's the value specified in the BY clause, which again is evaluated once on loop entry. If REVERSE is specified then the step value is subtracted, rather than added, after each iteration.

Some examples of integer FOR loops:

FOR i IN 1..10 LOOP
  -- i will take on the values 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10 within the loop
END LOOP;

FOR i IN REVERSE 10..1 LOOP
  -- i will take on the values 10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1 within the loop
END LOOP;

FOR i IN REVERSE 10..1 BY 2 LOOP
  -- i will take on the values 10,8,6,4,2 within the loop
END LOOP;

If the lower bound is greater than the upper bound (or less than, in the REVERSE case), the loop body is not executed at all. No error is raised.

If a label is attached to the FOR loop then the integer loop variable can be referenced with a qualified name, using that label.

41.6.6. Looping through Query Results

Using a different type of FOR loop, you can iterate through the results of a query and manipulate that data accordingly. The syntax is:
The `target` is a record variable, row variable, or comma-separated list of scalar variables. The `target` is successively assigned each row resulting from the `query` and the loop body is executed for each row. Here is an example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION refresh_mviews() RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
  mviews RECORD;
BEGIN
  RAISE NOTICE 'Refreshing all materialized views...';
  FOR mviews IN
    SELECT n.nspname AS mv_schema,
        c.relname AS mv_name,
        pg_catalog.pg_get_userbyid(c.relowner) AS owner
    FROM pg_catalog.pg_class c
    LEFT JOIN pg_catalog.pg_namespace n ON (n.oid = c.relnamespace)
    WHERE c.relkind = 'm'
    ORDER BY 1
  LOOP
    -- Now "mviews" has one record with information about the materialized view
    RAISE NOTICE 'Refreshing materialized view %.% (owner: %)...',
        quote_ident(mviews.mv_schema),
        quote_ident(mviews.mv_name),
        quote_ident(mviews.owner);
    EXECUTE format('REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW %I.%I', mviews.mv_schema,
        mviews.mv_name);
  END LOOP;
  RAISE NOTICE 'Done refreshing materialized views.';
  RETURN 1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

If the loop is terminated by an `EXIT` statement, the last assigned row value is still accessible after the loop.

The `query` used in this type of `FOR` statement can be any SQL command that returns rows to the caller: `SELECT` is the most common case, but you can also use `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` with a `RETURNING` clause. Some utility commands such as `EXPLAIN` will work too.

PL/pgSQL variables are replaced by query parameters, and the query plan is cached for possible re-use, as discussed in detail in Section 41.11.1 and Section 41.11.2.

The `FOR-IN-EXECUTE` statement is another way to iterate over rows:

```sql
FOR target IN EXECUTE text_expression [ USING expression [, ... ] ] LOOP
  statements
END LOOP [ label ];
```

This is like the previous form, except that the source query is specified as a string expression, which is evaluated and replanned on each entry to the `FOR` loop. This allows the programmer to choose the speed of a preplanned query or the flexibility of a dynamic query, just as with a plain `EXECUTE` statement. As with `EXECUTE`, parameter values can be inserted into the dynamic command via `USING`.
Another way to specify the query whose results should be iterated through is to declare it as a cursor. This is described in Section 41.7.4.

### 41.6.7. Looping through Arrays

The `FOREACH` loop is much like a `FOR` loop, but instead of iterating through the rows returned by an SQL query, it iterates through the elements of an array value. (In general, `FOREACH` is meant for looping through components of a composite-valued expression; variants for looping through composites besides arrays may be added in future.) The `FOREACH` statement to loop over an array is:

```sql
[ <<label>> ]
FOREACH target [ SLICE number ] IN ARRAY expression LOOP
  statements
END LOOP [ label ];
```

Without `SLICE`, or if `SLICE 0` is specified, the loop iterates through individual elements of the array produced by evaluating the `expression`. The `target` variable is assigned each element value in sequence, and the loop body is executed for each element. Here is an example of looping through the elements of an integer array:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION sum(int[]) RETURNS int8 AS $$
DECLARE
  s int8 := 0;
  x int;
BEGIN
  FOREACH x IN ARRAY $1
  LOOP
    s := s + x;
  END LOOP;
  RETURN s;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The elements are visited in storage order, regardless of the number of array dimensions. Although the `target` is usually just a single variable, it can be a list of variables when looping through an array of composite values (records). In that case, for each array element, the variables are assigned from successive columns of the composite value.

With a positive `SLICE` value, `FOREACH` iterates through slices of the array rather than single elements. The `SLICE` value must be an integer constant not larger than the number of dimensions of the array. The `target` variable must be an array, and it receives successive slices of the array value, where each slice is of the number of dimensions specified by `SLICE`. Here is an example of iterating through one-dimensional slices:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION scan_rows(int[]) RETURNS void AS $$
DECLARE
  x int[];
BEGIN
  FOREACH x SLICE 1 IN ARRAY $1
  LOOP
    RAISE NOTICE 'row = %', x;
  END LOOP;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

```sql
SELECT scan_rows(ARRAY[[1,2,3],[4,5,6],[7,8,9],[10,11,12]]);
```

```
NOTICE:  row = {1,2,3}
NOTICE:  row = {4,5,6}
NOTICE:  row = {7,8,9}
```
41.6.8. Trapping Errors

By default, any error occurring in a PL/pgSQL function aborts execution of the function and the surrounding transaction. You can trap errors and recover from them by using a BEGIN block with an EXCEPTION clause. The syntax is an extension of the normal syntax for a BEGIN block:

```
[ <<label>> ]
[ DECLARE declarations ]
BEGIN
  statements
EXCEPTION
  WHEN condition [ OR condition ... ] THEN
    handler_statements
  [ WHEN condition [ OR condition ... ] THEN
    handler_statements
    ... ]
END;
```

If no error occurs, this form of block simply executes all the statements, and then control passes to the next statement after END. But if an error occurs within the statements, further processing of the statements is abandoned, and control passes to the EXCEPTION list. The list is searched for the first condition matching the error that occurred. If a match is found, the corresponding handler_statements are executed, and then control passes to the next statement after END. If no match is found, the error propagates out as though the EXCEPTION clause were not there at all: the error can be caught by an enclosing block with EXCEPTION, or if there is none it aborts processing of the function.

The condition names can be any of those shown in Appendix A. A category name matches any error within its category. The special condition name OTHERS matches every error type except QUERY_CANCELED and ASSERT_FAILURE. (It is possible, but often unwise, to trap those two error types by name.) Condition names are not case-sensitive. Also, an error condition can be specified by SQLSTATE code; for example these are equivalent:

```
WHEN division_by_zero THEN ...
WHEN SQLSTATE '22012' THEN ...
```

If a new error occurs within the selected handler_statements, it cannot be caught by this EXCEPTION clause, but is propagated out. A surrounding EXCEPTION clause could catch it.

When an error is caught by an EXCEPTION clause, the local variables of the PL/pgSQL function remain as they were when the error occurred, but all changes to persistent database state within the block are rolled back. As an example, consider this fragment:

```
INSERT INTO mytab(firstname, lastname) VALUES('Tom', 'Jones');
BEGIN
  UPDATE mytab SET firstname = 'Joe' WHERE lastname = 'Jones';
  x := x + 1;
  y := x / 0;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN division_by_zero THEN
    RAISE NOTICE 'caught division_by_zero';
    RETURN x;
END;
```

When control reaches the assignment to y, it will fail with a division_by_zero error. This will be caught by the EXCEPTION clause. The value returned in the RETURN statement will be the incremented value of x, but the effects of the UPDATE command will have been rolled back. The INSERT command preceding the block is not rolled back, however, so the end result is that the database contains Tom Jones not Joe Jones.
A block containing an `EXCEPTION` clause is significantly more expensive to enter and exit than a block without one. Therefore, don't use `EXCEPTION` without need.

**Example 41.2. Exceptions with UPDATE/INSERT**

This example uses exception handling to perform either `UPDATE` or `INSERT`, as appropriate. It is recommended that applications use `INSERT` with `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` rather than actually using this pattern. This example serves primarily to illustrate use of PL/pgSQL control flow structures:

```sql
CREATE TABLE db (a INT PRIMARY KEY, b TEXT);
CREATE FUNCTION merge_db(key INT, data TEXT) RETURNS VOID AS $$
BEGIN
  LOOP
    -- first try to update the key
    UPDATE db SET b = data WHERE a = key;
    IF found THEN
      RETURN;
    END IF;
    -- not there, so try to insert the key
    -- if someone else inserts the same key concurrently,
    -- we could get a unique-key failure
    BEGIN
      INSERT INTO db(a,b) VALUES (key, data);
      RETURN;
    EXCEPTION
      WHEN unique_violation THEN
        -- Do nothing, and loop to try the UPDATE again.
    END;
  END LOOP;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT merge_db(1, 'david');
SELECT merge_db(1, 'dennis');
```

This coding assumes the `unique_violation` error is caused by the `INSERT`, and not by, say, an `INSERT` in a trigger function on the table. It might also misbehave if there is more than one unique index on the table, since it will retry the operation regardless of which index caused the error. More safety could be had by using the features discussed next to check that the trapped error was the one expected.

### 41.6.8.1. Obtaining Information about an Error

Exception handlers frequently need to identify the specific error that occurred. There are two ways to get information about the current exception in PL/pgSQL: special variables and the `GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS` command.

Within an exception handler, the special variable `SQLSTATE` contains the error code that corresponds to the exception that was raised (refer to Table A.1 for a list of possible error codes). The special variable `SQLERRM` contains the error message associated with the exception. These variables are undefined outside exception handlers.

Within an exception handler, one may also retrieve information about the current exception by using the `GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS` command, which has the form:
GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS variable { = | := } item [ , ... ];

Each item is a key word identifying a status value to be assigned to the specified variable (which should be of the right data type to receive it). The currently available status items are shown in Table 41.2.

### Table 41.2. Error Diagnostics Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RETURNED_SQLSTATE</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the SQLSTATE error code of the exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN_NAME</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the name of the column related to exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSTRAINT_NAME</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the name of the constraint related to exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG_DATATYPE_NAME</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the name of the data type related to exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESSAGE_TEXT</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the text of the exception's primary message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLE_NAME</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the name of the table related to exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHEMA_NAME</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the name of the schema related to exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG_EXCEPTION_DETAIL</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the text of the exception's detail message, if any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG_EXCEPTION_HINT</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>the text of the exception's hint message, if any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG_EXCEPTION_CONTEXT</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>line(s) of text describing the call stack at the time of the exception</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the exception did not set a value for an item, an empty string will be returned.

Here is an example:

```sql
DECLARE
  text_var1 text;
  text_var2 text;
  text_var3 text;
BEGIN
  -- some processing which might cause an exception
...
EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
  GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS text_var1 = MESSAGE_TEXT,
                           text_var2 = PG_EXCEPTION_DETAIL,
                           text_var3 = PG_EXCEPTION_HINT;
END;
```

### 41.6.9. Obtaining Execution Location Information

The GET DIAGNOSTICS command, previously described in Section 41.5.5, retrieves information about current execution state (whereas the GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS command discussed above reports information about the execution state as of a previous error). Its PG_CONTEXT status item is useful for identifying the current execution location. PG_CONTEXT returns a text string with line(s) of text describing the call stack. The first line refers to the current function and currently executing GET DIAGNOSTICS command. The second and any subsequent lines refer to calling functions further up the call stack. For example:
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION outer_func() RETURNS integer AS $$
BEGIN
RETURN inner_func();
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION inner_func() RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
stack text;
BEGIN
GET DIAGNOSTICS stack = PG_CONTEXT;
RAISE NOTICE E'--- Call Stack ---
%', stack;
RETURN 1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT outer_func();

NOTICE:  --- Call Stack ---
PL/pgSQL function inner_func() line 5 at GET DIAGNOSTICS
PL/pgSQL function outer_func() line 3 at RETURN
CONTEXT:  PL/pgSQL function outer_func() line 3 at RETURN
outer_func
------------
1
(1 row)

GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS ... PG_EXCEPTION_CONTEXT returns the same sort of stack trace, but
describing the location at which an error was detected, rather than the current location.

41.7. Cursors

Rather than executing a whole query at once, it is possible to set up a cursor that encapsulates the query,
and then read the query result a few rows at a time. One reason for doing this is to avoid memory overrun
when the result contains a large number of rows. (However, PL/pgSQL users do not normally need to
worry about that, since FOR loops automatically use a cursor internally to avoid memory problems.) A
more interesting usage is to return a reference to a cursor that a function has created, allowing the
caller to read the rows. This provides an efficient way to return large row sets from functions.

41.7.1. Declaring Cursor Variables

All access to cursors in PL/pgSQL goes through cursor variables, which are always of the special data
type refcursor. One way to create a cursor variable is just to declare it as a variable of type refcursor.
Another way is to use the cursor declaration syntax, which in general is:

```
name [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] CURSOR [ ( arguments ) ] FOR query;
```

(FOR can be replaced by IS for Oracle compatibility.) If SCROLL is specified, the cursor will be capable of
scrolling backward; if NO SCROLL is specified, backward fetches will be rejected; if neither specification
appears, it is query-dependent whether backward fetches will be allowed. arguments, if specified, is a
comma-separated list of pairs name datatype that define names to be replaced by parameter values in
the given query. The actual values to substitute for these names will be specified later, when the cursor
is opened.

Some examples:

```
DECLARE
curs1 refcursor;
curs2 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM tenk1;
```
curs3 CURSOR (key integer) FOR SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 = key;

All three of these variables have the data type refcursor, but the first can be used with any query, while the second has a fully specified query already bound to it, and the last has a parameterized query bound to it. (key will be replaced by an integer parameter value when the cursor is opened.) The variable curs1 is said to be unbound since it is not bound to any particular query.

The SCROLL option cannot be used when the cursor’s query uses FOR UPDATE/SHARE. Also, it is best to use NO SCROLL with a query that involves volatile functions. The implementation of SCROLL assumes that re-reading the query’s output will give consistent results, which a volatile function might not do.

### 41.7.2. Opening Cursors

Before a cursor can be used to retrieve rows, it must be opened. (This is the equivalent action to the SQL command DECLARE CURSOR.) PL/pgSQL has three forms of the OPEN statement, two of which use unbound cursor variables while the third uses a bound cursor variable.

#### Note

Bound cursor variables can also be used without explicitly opening the cursor, via the FOR statement described in Section 41.7.4.

#### 41.7.2.1. OPEN FOR query

OPEN unbound_cursorvar [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] FOR query;

The cursor variable is opened and given the specified query to execute. The cursor cannot be open already, and it must have been declared as an unbound cursor variable (that is, as a simple refcursor variable). The query must be a SELECT, or something else that returns rows (such as EXPLAIN). The query is treated in the same way as other SQL commands in PL/pgSQL: PL/pgSQL variable names are substituted, and the query plan is cached for possible reuse. When a PL/pgSQL variable is substituted into the cursor query, the value that is substituted is the one it has at the time of the OPEN; subsequent changes to the variable will not affect the cursor’s behavior. The SCROLL and NO SCROLL options have the same meanings as for a bound cursor.

An example:

OPEN curs1 FOR SELECT * FROM foo WHERE key = mykey;

#### 41.7.2.2. OPEN FOR EXECUTE

OPEN unbound_cursorvar [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] FOR EXECUTE query_string

[ USING expression [, ... ] ];

The cursor variable is opened and given the specified query to execute. The cursor cannot be open already, and it must have been declared as an unbound cursor variable (that is, as a simple refcursor variable). The query is specified as a string expression, in the same way as in the EXECUTE command. As usual, this gives flexibility so the query plan can vary from one run to the next (see Section 41.11.2), and it also means that variable substitution is not done on the command string. As with EXECUTE, parameter values can be inserted into the dynamic command via format() and USING. The SCROLL and NO SCROLL options have the same meanings as for a bound cursor.

An example:

OPEN curs1 FOR EXECUTE format('SELECT * FROM %I WHERE col1 = $1', tabname) USING keyvalue;

In this example, the table name is inserted into the query via format(). The comparison value for col1 is inserted via a USING parameter, so it needs no quoting.
41.7.2.3. Opening a Bound Cursor

```plpgsql
OPEN bound_cursorvar [ ( [ argument_name := ] argument_value [, ...] ) ];
```

This form of `OPEN` is used to open a cursor variable whose query was bound to it when it was declared. The cursor cannot be open already. A list of actual argument value expressions must appear if and only if the cursor was declared to take arguments. These values will be substituted in the query.

The query plan for a bound cursor is always considered cacheable; there is no equivalent of `EXECUTE` in this case. Notice that `SCROLL` and `NO SCROLL` cannot be specified in `OPEN`, as the cursor's scrolling behavior was already determined.

Argument values can be passed using either positional or named notation. In positional notation, all arguments are specified in order. In named notation, each argument's name is specified using `:=` to separate it from the argument expression. Similar to calling functions, described in Section 4.3, it is also allowed to mix positional and named notation.

Examples (these use the cursor declaration examples above):

```plpgsql
OPEN curs2;
OPEN curs3(42);
OPEN curs3(key := 42);
```

Because variable substitution is done on a bound cursor's query, there are really two ways to pass values into the cursor: either with an explicit argument to `OPEN`, or implicitly by referencing a PL/pgSQL variable in the query. However, only variables declared before the bound cursor was declared will be substituted into it. In either case the value to be passed is determined at the time of the `OPEN`. For example, another way to get the same effect as the `curs3` example above is

```plpgsql
DECLARE
  key integer;
  curs4 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 = key;
BEGIN
  key := 42;
  OPEN curs4;
```

41.7.3. Using Cursors

Once a cursor has been opened, it can be manipulated with the statements described here.

These manipulations need not occur in the same function that opened the cursor to begin with. You can return a `refcursor` value out of a function and let the caller operate on the cursor. (Internally, a `refcursor` value is simply the string name of a so-called portal containing the active query for the cursor. This name can be passed around, assigned to other `refcursor` variables, and so on, without disturbing the portal.)

All portals are implicitly closed at transaction end. Therefore a `refcursor` value is usable to reference an open cursor only until the end of the transaction.

41.7.3.1. FETCH

```plpgsql
FETCH [ { direction { FROM | IN } } ] cursor INTO target;
```

`FETCH` retrieves the next row from the cursor into a target, which might be a row variable, a record variable, or a comma-separated list of simple variables, just like `SELECT INTO`. If there is no next row, the target is set to NULL(s). As with `SELECT INTO`, the special variable `FOUND` can be checked to see whether a row was obtained or not.

The `direction` clause can be any of the variants allowed in the SQL `FETCH` command except the ones that can fetch more than one row; namely, it can be `NEXT`, `PRIOR`, `FIRST`, `LAST`, `ABSOLUTE count`, `RELATIVE count`, `FORWARD`, or `BACKWARD`. Omitting `direction` is the same as specifying `NEXT`. In the forms using
a count, the count can be any integer-valued expression (unlike the SQL FETCH command, which only allows an integer constant). direction values that require moving backward are likely to fail unless the cursor was declared or opened with the SCROLL option.

cursor must be the name of a refcursor variable that references an open cursor portal.

Examples:

    FETCH curs1 INTO rowvar;
    FETCH curs2 INTO foo, bar, baz;
    FETCH LAST FROM curs3 INTO x, y;
    FETCH RELATIVE -2 FROM curs4 INTO x;

41.7.3.2. MOVE

MOVE [ direction { FROM | IN } ] cursor;

MOVE repositions a cursor without retrieving any data. MOVE works exactly like the FETCH command, except it only repositions the cursor and does not return the row moved to. As with SELECT INTO, the special variable FOUND can be checked to see whether there was a next row to move to.

Examples:

    MOVE curs1;
    MOVE LAST FROM curs3;
    MOVE RELATIVE -2 FROM curs4;
    MOVE FORWARD 2 FROM curs4;

41.7.3.3. UPDATE/DELETE WHERE CURRENT OF

UPDATE table SET ... WHERE CURRENT OF cursor;
DELETE FROM table WHERE CURRENT OF cursor;

When a cursor is positioned on a table row, that row can be updated or deleted using the cursor to identify the row. There are restrictions on what the cursor's query can be (in particular, no grouping) and it's best to use FOR UPDATE in the cursor. For more information see the DECLARE reference page.

An example:

    UPDATE foo SET dataval = myval WHERE CURRENT OF curs1;

41.7.3.4. CLOSE

CLOSE cursor;

CLOSE closes the portal underlying an open cursor. This can be used to release resources earlier than end of transaction, or to free up the cursor variable to be opened again.

An example:

    CLOSE curs1;

41.7.3.5. Returning Cursors

PL/pgSQL functions can return cursors to the caller. This is useful to return multiple rows or columns, especially with very large result sets. To do this, the function opens the cursor and returns the cursor name to the caller (or simply opens the cursor using a portal name specified by or otherwise known to the caller). The caller can then fetch rows from the cursor. The cursor can be closed by the caller, or it will be closed automatically when the transaction closes.

The portal name used for a cursor can be specified by the programmer or automatically generated. To specify a portal name, simply assign a string to the refcursor variable before opening it. The string
value of the refcursor variable will be used by OPEN as the name of the underlying portal. However, if the refcursor variable is null, OPEN automatically generates a name that does not conflict with any existing portal, and assigns it to the refcursor variable.

Note

A bound cursor variable is initialized to the string value representing its name, so that the portal name is the same as the cursor variable name, unless the programmer overrides it by assignment before opening the cursor. But an unbound cursor variable defaults to the null value initially, so it will receive an automatically-generated unique name, unless overridden.

The following example shows one way a cursor name can be supplied by the caller:

```sql
CREATE TABLE test (col text);
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('123');

CREATE FUNCTION reffunc(refcursor) RETURNS refcursor AS '
BEGIN
  OPEN $1 FOR SELECT col FROM test;
  RETURN $1;
END;
' LANGUAGE plpgsql;
BEGIN;
SELECT reffunc('funccursor');
FETCH ALL IN funccursor;
COMMIT;
```

The following example uses automatic cursor name generation:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION reffunc2() RETURNS refcursor AS '
DECLARE
  ref refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN ref FOR SELECT col FROM test;
  RETURN ref;
END;
' LANGUAGE plpgsql;
-- need to be in a transaction to use cursors.
BEGIN;
SELECT reffunc2();

reffunc2
---------------------
<unnamed cursor 1>
(1 row)
FETCH ALL IN "<unnamed cursor 1>";
COMMIT;
```

The following example shows one way to return multiple cursors from a single function:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION myfunc(refcursor, refcursor) RETURNS SETOF refcursor AS $$
BEGIN
  OPEN $1 FOR SELECT * FROM table_1;
  RETURN NEXT $1;
  OPEN $2 FOR SELECT * FROM table_2;
$$
```
RETURN NEXT $2;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

-- need to be in a transaction to use cursors.
BEGIN;

SELECT * FROM myfunc('a', 'b');

FETCH ALL FROM a;
FETCH ALL FROM b;
COMMIT;

41.7.4. Looping through a Cursor's Result

There is a variant of the FOR statement that allows iterating through the rows returned by a cursor. The syntax is:

```
[ <<label>> ]
FOR recordvar IN bound_cursorvar [ ( [ argument_name := ] argument_value [, ...] ) ]
LOOP
  statements
END LOOP [ label ];
```

The cursor variable must have been bound to some query when it was declared, and it cannot be open already. The FOR statement automatically opens the cursor, and it closes the cursor again when the loop exits. A list of actual argument value expressions must appear if and only if the cursor was declared to take arguments. These values will be substituted in the query, in just the same way as during an OPEN (see Section 41.7.2.3).

The variable recordvar is automatically defined as type record and exists only inside the loop (any existing definition of the variable name is ignored within the loop). Each row returned by the cursor is successively assigned to this record variable and the loop body is executed.

41.8. Transaction Management

In procedures invoked by the CALL command as well as in anonymous code blocks (DO command), it is possible to end transactions using the commands COMMIT and ROLLBACK. A new transaction is started automatically after a transaction is ended using these commands, so there is no separate START TRANSACTION command. (Note that BEGIN and END have different meanings in PL/pgSQL.)

Here is a simple example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test1()
LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
BEGIN
  FOR i IN 0..9 LOOP
    INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES (i);
    IF i % 2 = 0 THEN
      COMMIT;
    ELSE
      ROLLBACK;
    END IF;
  END LOOP;
END;
$$;

CALL transaction_test1();
```
A new transaction starts out with default transaction characteristics such as transaction isolation level. In cases where transactions are committed in a loop, it might be desirable to start new transactions automatically with the same characteristics as the previous one. The commands COMMIT AND CHAIN and ROLLBACK AND CHAIN accomplish this.

Transaction control is only possible in CALL or DO invocations from the top level or nested CALL or DO invocations without any other intervening command. For example, if the call stack is CALL proc1() → CALL proc2() → CALL proc3(), then the second and third procedures can perform transaction control actions. But if the call stack is CALL proc1() → SELECT func2() → CALL proc3(), then the last procedure cannot do transaction control, because of the SELECT in between.

Special considerations apply to cursor loops. Consider this example:

```sql
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test2()
LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
DECLARE
  r RECORD;
BEGIN
  FOR r IN SELECT * FROM test2 ORDER BY x LOOP
    INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES (r.x);
    COMMIT;
  END LOOP;
END;
$$;
CALL transaction_test2();
```

Normally, cursors are automatically closed at transaction commit. However, a cursor created as part of a loop like this is automatically converted to a holdable cursor by the first COMMIT or ROLLBACK. That means that the cursor is fully evaluated at the first COMMIT or ROLLBACK rather than row by row. The cursor is still removed automatically after the loop, so this is mostly invisible to the user.

Transaction commands are not allowed in cursor loops driven by commands that are not read-only (for example UPDATE ... RETURNING).

A transaction cannot be ended inside a block with exception handlers.

### 41.9. Errors and Messages

#### 41.9.1. Reporting Errors and Messages

Use the RAISE statement to report messages and raise errors.

- RAISE [ level ] 'format' [, expression [, ... ]] [ USING option = expression [, ... ] ];
- RAISE [ level ] condition_name [ USING option = expression [, ... ] ];
- RAISE [ level ] SQLSTATE 'sqlstate' [ USING option = expression [, ... ] ];
- RAISE [ level ] USING option = expression [, ... ];

The level option specifies the error severity. Allowed levels are DEBUG, LOG, INFO, NOTICE, WARNING, and EXCEPTION, with EXCEPTION being the default. EXCEPTION raises an error (which normally aborts the current transaction); the other levels only generate messages of different priority levels. Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the log_min_messages and client_min_messages configuration variables. See Chapter 18 for more information.

After level if any, you can write a format (which must be a simple string literal, not an expression). The format string specifies the error message text to be reported. The format string can be followed by
optional argument expressions to be inserted into the message. Inside the format string, % is replaced by
the string representation of the next optional argument's value. Write %% to emit a literal %.
The number of arguments must match the number of % placeholders in the format string, or an error is raised during
the compilation of the function.

In this example, the value of v_job_id will replace the % in the string:

RAISE NOTICE 'Calling cs_create_job(%)', v_job_id;

You can attach additional information to the error report by writing USING followed by option =
expression items. Each expression can be any string-valued expression. The allowed option key words are:

MESSAGE

Sets the error message text. This option can't be used in the form of RAISE that includes a format
string before USING.

DETAIL

Supplies an error detail message.

HINT

Supplies a hint message.

ERRCODE

Specifies the error code (SQLSTATE) to report, either by condition name, as shown in Appendix A,
or directly as a five-character SQLSTATE code.

COLUMN
CONSTRAINT
DATATYPE
TABLE
SCHEMA

Supplies the name of a related object.

This example will abort the transaction with the given error message and hint:

RAISE EXCEPTION 'Nonexistent ID --> %', user_id
   USING HINT = 'Please check your user ID';

These two examples show equivalent ways of setting the SQLSTATE:

RAISE 'Duplicate user ID: %', user_id USING ERRCODE = 'unique_violation';
RAISE 'Duplicate user ID: %', user_id USING ERRCODE = '23505';

There is a second RAISE syntax in which the main argument is the condition name or SQLSTATE to be
reported, for example:

RAISE division_by_zero;
RAISE SQLSTATE '22012';

In this syntax, USING can be used to supply a custom error message, detail, or hint. Another way to do
the earlier example is

RAISE unique_violation USING MESSAGE = 'Duplicate user ID: ' || user_id;

Still another variant is to write RAISE USING or RAISE level USING and put everything else into the
USING list.
The last variant of \texttt{RAISE} has no parameters at all. This form can only be used inside a \texttt{BEGIN} block's \texttt{EXCEPTION} clause; it causes the error currently being handled to be re-thrown.

\begin{quote}
\textbf{Note}

Before PostgreSQL 9.1, \texttt{RAISE} without parameters was interpreted as re-throwing the error from the block containing the active exception handler. Thus an \texttt{EXCEPTION} clause nested within that handler could not catch it, even if the \texttt{RAISE} was within the nested \texttt{EXCEPTION} clause's block. This was deemed surprising as well as being incompatible with Oracle's PL/SQL.
\end{quote}

If no condition name nor SQLSTATE is specified in a \texttt{RAISE EXCEPTION} command, the default is to use \texttt{ERRCODE_RAISE_EXCEPTION (P0001)}. If no message text is specified, the default is to use the condition name or SQLSTATE as message text.

\begin{quote}
\textbf{Note}

When specifying an error code by SQLSTATE code, you are not limited to the predefined error codes, but can select any error code consisting of five digits and/or upper-case ASCII letters, other than 00000. It is recommended that you avoid throwing error codes that end in three zeroes, because these are category codes and can only be trapped by trapping the whole category.
\end{quote}

### 41.9.2. Checking Assertions

The \texttt{ASSERT} statement is a convenient shorthand for inserting debugging checks into PL/pgSQL functions.

\begin{verbatim}
ASSERT condition [ , message ];
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{condition} is a Boolean expression that is expected to always evaluate to true; if it does, the \texttt{ASSERT} statement does nothing further. If the result is false or null, then an \texttt{ASSERT_FAILURE} exception is raised. (If an error occurs while evaluating the \texttt{condition}, it is reported as a normal error.)

If the optional \texttt{message} is provided, it is an expression whose result (if not null) replaces the default error message text “assertion failed”, should the \texttt{condition} fail. The \texttt{message} expression is not evaluated in the normal case where the assertion succeeds.

Testing of assertions can be enabled or disabled via the configuration parameter \texttt{plpgsql.check_asserts}, which takes a Boolean value; the default is \texttt{on}. If this parameter is \texttt{off} then \texttt{ASSERT} statements do nothing.

Note that \texttt{ASSERT} is meant for detecting program bugs, not for reporting ordinary error conditions. Use the \texttt{RAISE} statement, described above, for that.

### 41.10. Trigger Functions

PL/pgSQL can be used to define trigger functions on data changes or database events. A trigger function is created with the \texttt{CREATE FUNCTION} command, declaring it as a function with no arguments and a return type of \texttt{trigger} (for data change triggers) or \texttt{event_trigger} (for database event triggers). Special local variables named \texttt{TG_something} are automatically defined to describe the condition that triggered the call.

#### 41.10.1. Triggers on Data Changes

A \texttt{data change trigger} is declared as a function with no arguments and a return type of \texttt{trigger}. Note that the function must be declared with no arguments even if it expects to receive some arguments specified in \texttt{CREATE TRIGGER} — such arguments are passed via \texttt{TG_ARGV}, as described below.
When a PL/pgSQL function is called as a trigger, several special variables are created automatically in the top-level block. They are:

NEW

Data type RECORD; variable holding the new database row for INSERT/UPDATE operations in row-level triggers. This variable is null in statement-level triggers and for DELETE operations.

OLD

Data type RECORD; variable holding the old database row for UPDATE/DELETE operations in row-level triggers. This variable is null in statement-level triggers and for INSERT operations.

TG_NAME

Data type name; variable that contains the name of the trigger actually fired.

TG_WHEN

Data type text; a string of BEFORE, AFTER, or INSTEAD OF, depending on the trigger's definition.

TG_LEVEL

Data type text; a string of either ROW or STATEMENT depending on the trigger's definition.

TG_OP

Data type text; a string of INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or TRUNCATE telling for which operation the trigger was fired.

TG_RELID

Data type oid; the object ID of the table that caused the trigger invocation.

TG_RELNAME

Data type name; the name of the table that caused the trigger invocation. This is now deprecated, and could disappear in a future release. Use TG_TABLE_NAME instead.

TG_TABLE_NAME

Data type name; the name of the table that caused the trigger invocation.

TG_TABLE_SCHEMA

Data type name; the name of the schema of the table that caused the trigger invocation.

TG_NARGS

Data type integer; the number of arguments given to the trigger function in the CREATE TRIGGER statement.

TG_ARGV[]

Data type array of text; the arguments from the CREATE TRIGGER statement. The index counts from 0. Invalid indexes (less than 0 or greater than or equal to tg_nargs) result in a null value.

A trigger function must return either NULL or a record/row value having exactly the structure of the table the trigger was fired for.

Row-level triggers fired BEFORE can return null to signal the trigger manager to skip the rest of the operation for this row (i.e., subsequent triggers are not fired, and the INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE does not occur for this row). If a nonnull value is returned then the operation proceeds with that row value. Returning a row value different from the original value of NEW alters the row that will be inserted or
updated. Thus, if the trigger function wants the triggering action to succeed normally without altering the row value, \texttt{NEW} (or a value equal thereto) has to be returned. To alter the row to be stored, it is possible to replace single values directly in \texttt{NEW} and return the modified \texttt{NEW}, or to build a complete new record/row to return. In the case of a before-trigger on \texttt{DELETE}, the returned value has no direct effect, but it has to be nonnull to allow the trigger action to proceed. Note that \texttt{NEW} is null in \texttt{DELETE} triggers, so returning that is usually not sensible. The usual idiom in \texttt{DELETE} triggers is to return \texttt{OLD}.

\textbf{INSTEAD OF} triggers (which are always row-level triggers, and may only be used on views) can return null to signal that they did not perform any updates, and that the rest of the operation for this row should be skipped (i.e., subsequent triggers are not fired, and the row is not counted in the rows-affected status for the surrounding \texttt{INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE}). Otherwise a nonnull value should be returned, to signal that the trigger performed the requested operation. For \texttt{INSERT} and \texttt{UPDATE} operations, the return value should be \texttt{NEW}, which the trigger function may modify to support \texttt{INSERT RETURNING} and \texttt{UPDATE RETURNING} (this will also affect the row value passed to any subsequent triggers, or passed to a special \texttt{EXCLUDED} alias reference within an \texttt{INSERT} statement with an \texttt{ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE} clause). For \texttt{DELETE} operations, the return value should be \texttt{OLD}.

The return value of a row-level trigger fired \texttt{AFTER} or a statement-level trigger fired \texttt{BEFORE} or \texttt{AFTER} is always ignored; it might as well be null. However, any of these types of triggers might still abort the entire operation by raising an error.

\textbf{Example 41.3} shows an example of a trigger function in PL/pgSQL.

\textbf{Example 41.3. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function}

This example trigger ensures that any time a row is inserted or updated in the table, the current user name and time are stamped into the row. And it checks that an employee's name is given and that the salary is a positive value.

```sql
CREATE TABLE emp (  
  empname text,  
  salary integer,  
  last_date timestamp,  
  last_user text  
);

CREATE FUNCTION emp_stamp() RETURNS trigger AS $emp_stamp$
BEGIN  
  -- Check that empname and salary are given  
  IF NEW.empname IS NULL THEN  
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'empname cannot be null';  
  END IF;  
  IF NEW.salary IS NULL THEN  
    RAISE EXCEPTION '% cannot have null salary', NEW.empname;  
  END IF;

  -- Who works for us when they must pay for it?  
  IF NEW.salary < 0 THEN  
    RAISE EXCEPTION '% cannot have a negative salary', NEW.empname;  
  END IF;

  -- Remember who changed the payroll when  
  NEW.last_date := current_timestamp;  
  NEW.last_user := current_user;  
  RETURN NEW;
END;
$emp_stamp$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER emp_stamp BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE ON emp
```

1112
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION emp_stamp();

Another way to log changes to a table involves creating a new table that holds a row for each insert, update, or delete that occurs. This approach can be thought of as auditing changes to a table. Example 41.4 shows an example of an audit trigger function in PL/pgSQL.

**Example 41.4. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function for Auditing**

This example trigger ensures that any insert, update or delete of a row in the `emp` table is recorded (i.e., audited) in the `emp_audit` table. The current time and user name are stamped into the row, together with the type of operation performed on it.

```sql
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empname           text NOT NULL,
    salary            integer
);
CREATE TABLE emp_audit(
    operation         char(1)   NOT NULL,
    stamp             timestamp NOT NULL,
    userid            text      NOT NULL,
    empname           text      NOT NULL,
    salary integer
);
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION process_emp_audit() RETURNS TRIGGER AS $emp_audit$
BEGIN
    -- Create a row in emp_audit to reflect the operation performed on emp,
    -- making use of the special variable TG_OP to work out the operation.
    IF (TG_OP = 'DELETE') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit SELECT 'D', now(), user, OLD.*;
    ELSIF (TG_OP = 'UPDATE') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit SELECT 'U', now(), user, NEW.*;
    ELSIF (TG_OP = 'INSERT') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit SELECT 'I', now(), user, NEW.*;
    END IF;
    RETURN NULL; -- result is ignored since this is an AFTER trigger
END;
$emp_audit$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit
AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION process_emp_audit();

A variation of the previous example uses a view joining the main table to the audit table, to show when each entry was last modified. This approach still records the full audit trail of changes to the table, but also presents a simplified view of the audit trail, showing just the last modified timestamp derived from the audit trail for each entry. Example 41.5 shows an example of an audit trigger on a view in PL/pgSQL.

**Example 41.5. A PL/pgSQL View Trigger Function for Auditing**

This example uses a trigger on the view to make it updatable, and ensure that any insert, update or delete of a row in the view is recorded (i.e., audited) in the `emp_audit` table. The current time and user name are recorded, together with the type of operation performed, and the view displays the last modified time of each row.

```sql
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empname           text PRIMARY KEY,
    empname           text NOT NULL,
    salary            integer
);
```
salary    integer
);

CREATE TABLE emp_audit(
    operation   char(1)   NOT NULL,
    userid      text      NOT NULL,
    empname     text      NOT NULL,
    salary      integer,
    stamp       timestamp NOT NULL
);

CREATE VIEW emp_view AS
SELECT e.empname,
    e.salary,
    max(ea.stamp) AS last_updated
FROM emp e
LEFT JOIN emp_audit ea ON ea.empname = e.empname
GROUP BY 1, 2;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION update_emp_view() RETURNS TRIGGER AS $$
BEGIN
--
-- Perform the required operation on emp, and create a row in emp_audit
-- to reflect the change made to emp.
--
IF (TG_OP = 'DELETE') THEN
    DELETE FROM emp WHERE empname = OLD.empname;
    IF NOT FOUND THEN RETURN NULL; END IF;

    OLD.last_updated = now();
    INSERT INTO emp_audit VALUES('D', user, OLD.*);
    RETURN OLD;
ELSIF (TG_OP = 'UPDATE') THEN
    UPDATE emp SET salary = NEW.salary WHERE empname = OLD.empname;
    IF NOT FOUND THEN RETURN NULL; END IF;

    NEW.last_updated = now();
    INSERT INTO emp_audit VALUES('U', user, NEW.*);
    RETURN NEW;
ELSIF (TG_OP = 'INSERT') THEN
    INSERT INTO emp VALUES(NEW.empname, NEW.salary);
    NEW.last_updated = now();
    INSERT INTO emp_audit VALUES('I', user, NEW.*);
    RETURN NEW;
END IF;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit
INSTEAD OF INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp_view
    FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION update_emp_view();

One use of triggers is to maintain a summary table of another table. The resulting summary can be used in place of the original table for certain queries — often with vastly reduced run times. This technique is commonly used in Data Warehousing, where the tables of measured or observed data (called fact tables) might be extremely large. Example 41.6 shows an example of a trigger function in PL/pgSQL that maintains a summary table for a fact table in a data warehouse.
Example 41.6. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function for Maintaining a Summary Table

The schema detailed here is partly based on the Grocery Store example from The Data Warehouse Toolkit by Ralph Kimball.

-- Main tables - time dimension and sales fact.
--
CREATE TABLE time_dimension (  
    time_key                    integer NOT NULL,  
    day_of_week                 integer NOT NULL,  
    day_of_month                integer NOT NULL,  
    month                       integer NOT NULL,  
    quarter                     integer NOT NULL,  
    year                        integer NOT NULL  
);  
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX time_dimension_key ON time_dimension(time_key);

CREATE TABLE sales_fact (  
    time_key                    integer NOT NULL,  
    product_key                 integer NOT NULL,  
    store_key                   integer NOT NULL,  
    amount_sold                 numeric(12,2) NOT NULL,  
    units_sold                  integer NOT NULL,  
    amount_cost                 numeric(12,2) NOT NULL  
);  
CREATE INDEX sales_fact_time ON sales_fact(time_key);

-- Summary table - sales by time.
--
CREATE TABLE sales_summary_bytime (  
    time_key                    integer NOT NULL,  
    amount_sold                 numeric(15,2) NOT NULL,  
    units_sold                  numeric(12) NOT NULL,  
    amount_cost                 numeric(15,2) NOT NULL  
);  
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX sales_summary_bytime_key ON sales_summary_bytime(time_key);

-- Function and trigger to amend summarized column(s) on UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE.
--
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION maint_sales_summary_bytime() RETURNS TRIGGER  
AS $maint_sales_summary_bytime$  
DECLARE  
    delta_time_key          integer;  
    delta_amount_sold       numeric(15,2);  
    delta_units_sold        numeric(12);  
    delta_amount_cost       numeric(15,2);  
BEGIN  

    -- Work out the increment/decrement amount(s).  
    IF (TG_OP = 'DELETE') THEN  
        delta_time_key = OLD.time_key;  
        delta_amount_sold = -1 * OLD.amount_sold;  
        delta_units_sold = -1 * OLD.units_sold;  
        delta_amount_cost = -1 * OLD.amount_cost;  
    END IF;
ELSIF (TG_OP = 'UPDATE') THEN

    -- forbid updates that change the time_key -
    -- (probably not too onerous, as DELETE + INSERT is how most
    -- changes will be made).
    IF ( OLD.time_key != NEW.time_key) THEN
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'Update of time_key : % -> % not allowed',
                     OLD.time_key, NEW.time_key;
    END IF;

delta_time_key = OLD.time_key;
delta_amount_sold = NEW.amount_sold - OLD.amount_sold;
delta_units_sold = NEW.units_sold - OLD.units_sold;
delta_amount_cost = NEW.amount_cost - OLD.amount_cost;

ELSIF (TG_OP = 'INSERT') THEN

    delta_time_key = NEW.time_key;
delta_amount_sold = NEW.amount_sold;
delta_units_sold = NEW.units_sold;
delta_amount_cost = NEW.amount_cost;

END IF;

-- Insert or update the summary row with the new values.
<<insert_update>>
LOOP
    UPDATE sales_summary_bytime
    SET amount_sold = amount_sold + delta_amount_sold,
        units_sold = units_sold + delta_units_sold,
        amount_cost = amount_cost + delta_amount_cost
    WHERE time_key = delta_time_key;
    EXIT insert_update WHEN found;

    BEGIN
        INSERT INTO sales_summary_bytime (  
            time_key,
            amount_sold,
            units_sold,
            amount_cost)
        VALUES (  
            delta_time_key,
            delta_amount_sold,
            delta_units_sold,
            delta_amount_cost  
        );
        EXIT insert_update;
    EXCEPTION
        WHEN UNIQUE_VIOLATION THEN
            -- do nothing
        END;
    END LOOP insert_update;

RETURN NULL;
CREATE TRIGGER maint_sales_summary_bytime
AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON sales_fact
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION maint_sales_summary_bytime();

INSERT INTO sales_fact VALUES(1,1,1,10,3,15);
INSERT INTO sales_fact VALUES(1,2,1,20,5,35);
INSERT INTO sales_fact VALUES(2,2,1,40,15,135);
INSERT INTO sales_fact VALUES(2,3,1,10,1,13);
SELECT * FROM sales_summary_bytime;
DELETE FROM sales_fact WHERE product_key = 1;
SELECT * FROM sales_summary_bytime;
UPDATE sales_fact SET units_sold = units_sold * 2;
SELECT * FROM sales_summary_bytime;

AFTER triggers can also make use of transition tables to inspect the entire set of rows changed by the triggering statement. The CREATE TRIGGER command assigns names to one or both transition tables, and then the function can refer to those names as though they were read-only temporary tables. Example 41.7 shows an example.

Example 41.7. Auditing with Transition Tables

This example produces the same results as Example 41.4, but instead of using a trigger that fires for every row, it uses a trigger that fires once per statement, after collecting the relevant information in a transition table. This can be significantly faster than the row-trigger approach when the invoking statement has modified many rows. Notice that we must make a separate trigger declaration for each kind of event, since the REFERENCING clauses must be different for each case. But this does not stop us from using a single trigger function if we choose. (In practice, it might be better to use three separate functions and avoid the run-time tests on TG_OP.)

CREATE TABLE emp (
  empname           text NOT NULL,
  salary            integer
);

CREATE TABLE emp_audit(
  operation         char(1)   NOT NULL,
  stamp             timestamp NOT NULL,
  userid            text      NOT NULL,
  empname           text      NOT NULL,
  salary integer
);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION process_emp_audit() RETURNS TRIGGER AS $emp_audit$
BEGIN
  -- Create rows in emp_audit to reflect the operations performed on emp,
  -- making use of the special variable TG_OP to work out the operation.
  --
  IF (TG_OP = 'DELETE') THEN
    INSERT INTO emp_audit
    SELECT 'D', now(), user, o.* FROM old_table o;
  ELSIF (TG_OP = 'UPDATE') THEN
    INSERT INTO emp_audit
    SELECT 'U', now(), user, n.* FROM new_table n;
  ELSIF (TG_OP = 'INSERT') THEN

INSERT INTO emp_audit
    SELECT 'I', now(), user, n.* FROM new_table n;
END IF;
RETURN NULL; -- result is ignored since this is an AFTER trigger
END;
$emp_audit$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit_ins
    AFTER INSERT ON emp
    REFERENCING NEW TABLE AS new_table
    FOR EACH STATEMENT EXECUTE FUNCTION process_emp_audit();
CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit_upd
    AFTER UPDATE ON emp
    REFERENCING OLD TABLE AS old_table NEW TABLE AS new_table
    FOR EACH STATEMENT EXECUTE FUNCTION process_emp_audit();
CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit_del
    AFTER DELETE ON emp
    REFERENCING OLD TABLE AS old_table
    FOR EACH STATEMENT EXECUTE FUNCTION process_emp_audit();

41.10.2. Triggers on Events

PL/pgSQL can be used to define event triggers. Postgres Pro requires that a function that is to be called as an event trigger must be declared as a function with no arguments and a return type of event_trigger.

When a PL/pgSQL function is called as an event trigger, several special variables are created automatically in the top-level block. They are:

- **TG_EVENT**
  Data type text; a string representing the event the trigger is fired for.

- **TG_TAG**
  Data type text; variable that contains the command tag for which the trigger is fired.

Example 41.8 shows an example of an event trigger function in PL/pgSQL.

Example 41.8. A PL/pgSQL Event Trigger Function

This example trigger simply raises a NOTICE message each time a supported command is executed.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION snitch() RETURNS event_trigger AS $$
BEGIN
    RAISE NOTICE 'snitch: % %', tg_event, tg_tag;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER snitch ON ddl_command_start EXECUTE FUNCTION snitch();
```

41.11. PL/pgSQL under the Hood

This section discusses some implementation details that are frequently important for PL/pgSQL users to know.

41.11.1. Variable Substitution

SQL statements and expressions within a PL/pgSQL function can refer to variables and parameters of the function. Behind the scenes, PL/pgSQL substitutes query parameters for such references. Query parameters will only be substituted in places where they are syntactically permissible. As an extreme case, consider this example of poor programming style:

```
INSERT INTO foo (foo) VALUES (foo(foo));
```
The first occurrence of `foo` must syntactically be a table name, so it will not be substituted, even if the function has a variable named `foo`. The second occurrence must be the name of a column of that table, so it will not be substituted either. Likewise the third occurrence must be a function name, so it also will not be substituted for. Only the last occurrence is a candidate to be a reference to a variable of the PL/pgSQL function.

Another way to understand this is that variable substitution can only insert data values into an SQL command; it cannot dynamically change which database objects are referenced by the command. (If you want to do that, you must build a command string dynamically, as explained in Section 41.5.4.)

Since the names of variables are syntactically no different from the names of table columns, there can be ambiguity in statements that also refer to tables: is a given name meant to refer to a table column, or a variable? Let’s change the previous example to

```sql
INSERT INTO dest (col) SELECT foo + bar FROM src;
```

Here, `dest` and `src` must be table names, and `col` must be a column of `dest`, but `foo` and `bar` might reasonably be either variables of the function or columns of `src`.

By default, PL/pgSQL will report an error if a name in an SQL statement could refer to either a variable or a table column. You can fix such a problem by renaming the variable or column, or by qualifying the ambiguous reference, or by telling PL/pgSQL which interpretation to prefer.

The simplest solution is to rename the variable or column. A common coding rule is to use a different naming convention for PL/pgSQL variables than you use for column names. For example, if you consistently name function variables `v_something` while none of your column names start with `v_`, no conflicts will occur.

Alternatively you can qualify ambiguous references to make them clear. In the above example, `src.foo` would be an unambiguous reference to the table column. To create an unambiguous reference to a variable, declare it in a labeled block and use the block's label (see Section 41.2). For example,

```sql
<<block>>
DECLARE
    foo int;
BEGIN
    foo := ...
    INSERT INTO dest (col) SELECT block.foo + bar FROM src;
<</block>>
```

Here `block.foo` means the variable even if there is a column `foo` in `src`. Function parameters, as well as special variables such as `FOUND`, can be qualified by the function's name, because they are implicitly declared in an outer block labeled with the function's name.

Sometimes it is impractical to fix all the ambiguous references in a large body of PL/pgSQL code. In such cases you can specify that PL/pgSQL should resolve ambiguous references as the variable (which is compatible with PL/pgSQL's behavior before PostgreSQL 9.0), or as the table column (which is compatible with some other systems such as Oracle).

To change this behavior on a system-wide basis, set the configuration parameter `plpgsql.variable_conflict` to one of `error`, `use_variable`, or `use_column` (where `error` is the factory default). This parameter affects subsequent compilations of statements in PL/pgSQL functions, but not statements already compiled in the current session. Because changing this setting can cause unexpected changes in the behavior of PL/pgSQL functions, it can only be changed by a superuser.

You can also set the behavior on a function-by-function basis, by inserting one of these special commands at the start of the function text:

```sql
#variable_conflict error
#variable_conflict use_variable
#variable_conflict use_column
```

These commands affect only the function they are written in, and override the setting of `plpgsql.variable_conflict`. An example is
CREATE FUNCTION stamp_user(id int, comment text) RETURNS void AS $$
#variable_conflict use_variable
DECLARE
  curtime timestamp := now();
BEGIN
  UPDATE users SET last_modified = curtime, comment = comment
  WHERE users.id = id;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

In the UPDATE command, curtime, comment, and id will refer to the function's variable and parameters whether or not users has columns of those names. Notice that we had to qualify the reference to users.id in the WHERE clause to make it refer to the table column. But we did not have to qualify the reference to comment as a target in the UPDATE list, because syntactically that must be a column of users. We could write the same function without depending on the variable_conflict setting in this way:

CREATE FUNCTION stamp_user(id int, comment text) RETURNS void AS $$
<<fn>>
DECLARE
  curtime timestamp := now();
BEGIN
  UPDATE users SET last_modified = fn.curtime, comment = stamp_user.comment
  WHERE users.id = stamp_user.id;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

Variable substitution does not happen in a command string given to EXECUTE or one of its variants. If you need to insert a varying value into such a command, do so as part of constructing the string value, or use USING, as illustrated in Section 41.5.4.

Variable substitution currently works only in SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and commands containing one of these (such as EXPLAIN and CREATE TABLE ... AS SELECT), because the main SQL engine allows query parameters only in these commands. To use a non-constant name or value in other statement types (generically called utility statements), you must construct the utility statement as a string and EXECUTE it.

41.11.2. Plan Caching

The PL/pgSQL interpreter parses the function's source text and produces an internal binary instruction tree the first time the function is called (within each session). The instruction tree fully translates the PL/pgSQL statement structure, but individual SQL expressions and SQL commands used in the function are not translated immediately.

As each expression and SQL command is first executed in the function, the PL/pgSQL interpreter parses and analyzes the command to create a prepared statement, using the SPI manager's SPI_prepare function. Subsequent visits to that expression or command reuse the prepared statement. Thus, a function with conditional code paths that are seldom visited will never incur the overhead of analyzing those commands that are never executed within the current session. A disadvantage is that errors in a specific expression or command cannot be detected until that part of the function is reached in execution. (Trivial syntax errors will be detected during the initial parsing pass, but anything deeper will not be detected until execution.)

PL/pgSQL (or more precisely, the SPI manager) can furthermore attempt to cache the execution plan associated with any particular prepared statement. If a cached plan is not used, then a fresh execution plan is generated on each visit to the statement, and the current parameter values (that is, PL/pgSQL variable values) can be used to optimize the selected plan. If the statement has no parameters, or is executed many times, the SPI manager will consider creating a generic plan that is not dependent on specific parameter values, and caching that for re-use. Typically this will happen only if the execution plan is not very sensitive to the values of the PL/pgSQL variables referenced in it. If it is, generating a plan each time is a net win. See PREPARE for more information about the behavior of prepared statements.
Because PL/pgSQL saves prepared statements and sometimes execution plans in this way, SQL commands that appear directly in a PL/pgSQL function must refer to the same tables and columns on every execution; that is, you cannot use a parameter as the name of a table or column in an SQL command. To get around this restriction, you can construct dynamic commands using the PL/pgSQL EXECUTE statement — at the price of performing new parse analysis and constructing a new execution plan on every execution.

The mutable nature of record variables presents another problem in this connection. When fields of a record variable are used in expressions or statements, the data types of the fields must not change from one call of the function to the next, since each expression will be analyzed using the data type that is present when the expression is first reached. EXECUTE can be used to get around this problem when necessary.

If the same function is used as a trigger for more than one table, PL/pgSQL prepares and caches statements independently for each such table — that is, there is a cache for each trigger function and table combination, not just for each function. This alleviates some of the problems with varying data types; for instance, a trigger function will be able to work successfully with a column named `key` even if it happens to have different types in different tables.

Likewise, functions having polymorphic argument types have a separate statement cache for each combination of actual argument types they have been invoked for, so that data type differences do not cause unexpected failures.

Statement caching can sometimes have surprising effects on the interpretation of time-sensitive values. For example there is a difference between what these two functions do:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION logfunc1(logtxt text) RETURNS void AS $$
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO logtable VALUES (logtxt, 'now');
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

and:

CREATE FUNCTION logfunc2(logtxt text) RETURNS void AS $$
DECLARE
    curtime timestamp;
BEGIN
    curtime := 'now';
    INSERT INTO logtable VALUES (logtxt, curtime);
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

In the case of `logfunc1`, the Postgres Pro main parser knows when analyzing the `INSERT` that the string 'now' should be interpreted as `timestamp`, because the target column of `logtable` is of that type. Thus, 'now' will be converted to a `timestamp` constant when the `INSERT` is analyzed, and then used in all invocations of `logfunc1` during the lifetime of the session. Needless to say, this isn't what the programmer wanted. A better idea is to use the `now()` or `current_timestamp` function.

In the case of `logfunc2`, the Postgres Pro main parser does not know what type 'now' should become and therefore it returns a data value of type `text` containing the string `now`. During the ensuing assignment to the local variable `curtime`, the PL/pgSQL interpreter casts this string to the `timestamp` type by calling the `textout` and `timestamp_in` functions for the conversion. So, the computed time stamp is updated on each execution as the programmer expects. Even though this happens to work as expected, it's not terribly efficient, so use of the `now()` function would still be a better idea.

### 41.12. Tips for Developing in PL/pgSQL

One good way to develop in PL/pgSQL is to use the text editor of your choice to create your functions, and in another window, use `psql` to load and test those functions. If you are doing it this way, it is a good
idea to write the function using `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION`. That way you can just reload the file to update the function definition. For example:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION testfunc(integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
....
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

While running `psql`, you can load or reload such a function definition file with:

```
\i filename.sql
```

and then immediately issue SQL commands to test the function.

Another good way to develop in PL/pgSQL is with a GUI database access tool that facilitates development in a procedural language. One example of such a tool is pgAdmin, although others exist. These tools often provide convenient features such as escaping single quotes and making it easier to recreate and debug functions.

### 41.12.1. Handling of Quotation Marks

The code of a PL/pgSQL function is specified in `CREATE FUNCTION` as a string literal. If you write the string literal in the ordinary way with surrounding single quotes, then any single quotes inside the function body must be doubled; likewise any backslashes must be doubled (assuming escape string syntax is used). Doubling quotes is at best tedious, and in more complicated cases the code can become downright incomprehensible, because you can easily find yourself needing half a dozen or more adjacent quote marks. It’s recommended that you instead write the function body as a “dollar-quoted” string literal (see Section 4.1.2.4). In the dollar-quoting approach, you never double any quote marks, but instead take care to choose a different dollar-quoting delimiter for each level of nesting you need. For example, you might write the `CREATE FUNCTION` command as:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION testfunc(integer) RETURNS integer AS $PROC$
....
$PROC$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Within this, you might use quote marks for simple literal strings in SQL commands and `$$` to delimit fragments of SQL commands that you are assembling as strings. If you need to quote text that includes `$$`, you could use `$Q$`, and so on.

The following chart shows what you have to do when writing quote marks without dollar quoting. It might be useful when translating pre-dollar quoting code into something more comprehensible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quotation Marks</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 quotation mark</td>
<td>To begin and end the function body, for example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 quotation marks</td>
<td>For string literals inside the function body, for example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 quotation marks</td>
<td>When you need a single quotation mark in a string constant inside the function body, for example:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The value actually appended to `a_output` would be: AND name LIKE 'foobar' AND xyz.

In the dollar-quoting approach, you’d write:

```sql
a_output := a_output || $$ AND name LIKE 'foobar' AND xyz$$
```

being careful that any dollar-quote delimiters around this are not just $$.

6 quotation marks

When a single quotation mark in a string inside the function body is adjacent to the end of that string constant, for example:

```sql
a_output := a_output || '' AND name LIKE ''''foobar''''''
```

The value appended to `a_output` would then be: AND name LIKE 'foobar'.

In the dollar-quoting approach, this becomes:

```sql
a_output := a_output || $$ AND name LIKE 'foobar'$$
```

10 quotation marks

When you want two single quotation marks in a string constant (which accounts for 8 quotation marks) and this is adjacent to the end of that string constant (2 more). You will probably only need that if you are writing a function that generates other functions, as in Example 41.10. For example:

```sql
a_output := a_output || '' if v_'' ||
 referrer_keys.kind || '' like ''''''''
 || referrer_keys.key_string || ''''''''
 then return '''''''' || referrer_keys.referrer_type
 || ''''''''; end if;'';
```

The value of `a_output` would then be:

```sql
if v_... like ''...'' then return ''...''; end if;
```

In the dollar-quoting approach, this becomes:

```sql
a_output := a_output || $$ if v_$$ || referrer_keys.kind || $$ like '$$
 || referrer_keys.key_string || $$'
 then return $$ $$ || referrer_keys.referrer_type
 || $$'; end if;$$;
```

where we assume we only need to put single quote marks into `a_output`, because it will be re-quoted before use.

### 41.12.2. Additional Compile-Time and Run-Time Checks

To aid the user in finding instances of simple but common problems before they cause harm, PL/pgSQL provides additional checks. When enabled, depending on the configuration, they can be used to emit either a WARNING or an ERROR during the compilation of a function. A function which has received a WARNING can be executed without producing further messages, so you are advised to test in a separate development environment.

Setting `plpgsql.extra_warnings`, or `plpgsql.extra_errors`, as appropriate, to "all" is encouraged in development and/or testing environments.

These additional checks are enabled through the configuration variables `plpgsql.extra_warnings` for warnings and `plpgsql.extra_errors` for errors. Both can be set either to a comma-separated list of checks, "none" or "all". The default is "none". Currently the list of available checks includes:

- **shadowed_variables**
  Checks if a declaration shadows a previously defined variable.

- **strict_multi_assignment**
  Some PL/PgSQL commands allow assigning values to more than one variable at a time, such as `SELECT INTO`. Typically, the number of target variables and the number of source variables should
match, though PL/pgSQL will use NULL for missing values and extra variables are ignored. Enabling this check will cause PL/pgSQL to throw a WARNING or ERROR whenever the number of target variables and the number of source variables are different.

too_many_rows

Enabling this check will cause PL/pgSQL to check if a given query returns more than one row when an INTO clause is used. As an INTO statement will only ever use one row, having a query return multiple rows is generally either inefficient and/or nondeterministic and therefore is likely an error.

The following example shows the effect of `plpgsql.extra_warnings` set to `shadowed_variables`:

```
SET plpgsql.extra_warnings TO 'shadowed_variables';

CREATE FUNCTION foo(f1 int) RETURNS int AS $$
DECLARE
f1 int;
BEGIN
RETURN f1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
WARNING: variable "f1" shadows a previously defined variable
LINE 3: f1 int;
^ 
CREATE FUNCTION
```

The below example shows the effects of setting `plpgsql.extra_warnings` to `strict_multi_assignment`:

```
SET plpgsql.extra_warnings TO 'strict_multi_assignment';

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION public.foo()
RETURNS void
LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
DECLARE
x int;
y int;
BEGIN
SELECT 1 INTO x, y;
SELECT 1, 2 INTO x, y;
SELECT 1, 2, 3 INTO x, y;
END;
$$;
SELECT foo();
WARNING: number of source and target fields in assignment does not match
DETAIL: strict_multi_assignment check of extra_warnings is active.
HINT: Make sure the query returns the exact list of columns.
WARNING: number of source and target fields in assignment does not match
DETAIL: strict_multi_assignment check of extra_warnings is active.
HINT: Make sure the query returns the exact list of columns.

foo
-----
(1 row)
```

**41.13. Porting from Oracle PL/SQL**

This section explains differences between Postgres Pro's PL/pgSQL language and Oracle's PL/SQL language, to help developers who port applications from Oracle® to Postgres Pro.
PL/pgSQL is similar to PL/SQL in many aspects. It is a block-structured, imperative language, and all variables have to be declared. Assignments, loops, and conditionals are similar. The main differences you should keep in mind when porting from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL are:

- If a name used in an SQL command could be either a column name of a table used in the command or a reference to a variable of the function, PL/SQL treats it as a column name. By default, PL/pgSQL will throw an error complaining that the name is ambiguous. You can specify `plpgsql.variable_conflict = use_column` to change this behavior to match PL/SQL, as explained in Section 41.11.1. It's often best to avoid such ambiguities in the first place, but if you have to port a large amount of code that depends on this behavior, setting `variable_conflict` may be the best solution.

- In Postgres Pro the function body must be written as a string literal. Therefore you need to use dollar quoting or escape single quotes in the function body. (See Section 41.12.1.)

- Data type names often need translation. For example, in Oracle string values are commonly declared as being of type `varchar2`, which is a non-SQL-standard type. In Postgres Pro, use type `varchar` or `text` instead. Similarly, replace type `number` with `numeric`, or use some other numeric data type if there's a more appropriate one.

- Instead of packages, use schemas to organize your functions into groups.

- Since there are no packages, there are no package-level variables either. This is somewhat annoying. You can keep per-session state in temporary tables instead.

- Integer `FOR` loops with `REVERSE` work differently: PL/SQL counts down from the second number to the first, while PL/pgSQL counts down from the first number to the second, requiring the loop bounds to be swapped when porting. This incompatibility is unfortunate but is unlikely to be changed. (See Section 41.6.5.5.)

- `FOR` loops over queries (other than cursors) also work differently: the target variable(s) must have been declared, whereas PL/SQL always declares them implicitly. An advantage of this is that the variable values are still accessible after the loop exits.

- There are various notational differences for the use of cursor variables.

### 41.13.1. Porting Examples

**Example 41.9** shows how to port a simple function from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL.

**Example 41.9. Porting a Simple Function from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL**

Here is an Oracle PL/SQL function:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_fmt_browser_version(v_name varchar2,
v_version varchar2)
RETURN varchar2 IS
BEGIN
  IF v_version IS NULL THEN
    RETURN v_name;
  END IF;
  RETURN v_name || '/' || v_version;
END;
/
show errors;
```

Let's go through this function and see the differences compared to PL/pgSQL:

- The type name `varchar2` has to be changed to `varchar` or `text`. In the examples in this section, we'll use `varchar`, but `text` is often a better choice if you do not need specific string length limits.

- The `RETURN` keyword in the function prototype (not the function body) becomes `RETURNS` in Postgres Pro. Also, `IS` becomes `AS`, and you need to add a `LANGUAGE` clause because PL/pgSQL is not the only possible function language.
In Postgres Pro, the function body is considered to be a string literal, so you need to use quote marks or dollar quotes around it. This substitutes for the terminating / in the Oracle approach.

The show errors command does not exist in Postgres Pro, and is not needed since errors are reported automatically.

This is how this function would look when ported to Postgres Pro:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_fmt_browser_version(v_name varchar,
    v_version varchar)
RETURNS varchar AS $$
BEGIN
    IF v_version IS NULL THEN
        RETURN v_name;
    END IF;
    RETURN v_name || '/' || v_version;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Example 41.10 shows how to port a function that creates another function and how to handle the ensuing quoting problems.

**Example 41.10. Porting a Function that Creates Another Function from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL**

The following procedure grabs rows from a SELECT statement and builds a large function with the results in IF statements, for the sake of efficiency.

This is the Oracle version:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_update_referrer_type_proc IS
    CURSOR referrer_keys IS
        SELECT * FROM cs_referrer_keys
        ORDER BY try_order;
    func_cmd VARCHAR(4000);
BEGIN
    func_cmd := 'CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_find_referrer_type(v_host IN VARCHAR2,
        v_domain IN VARCHAR2, v_url IN VARCHAR2) RETURN VARCHAR2 IS BEGIN';
    FOR referrer_key IN referrer_keys LOOP
        func_cmd := func_cmd || ' IF v_' || referrer_key.kind
            || ' LIKE ''' || referrer_key.key_string
            || '' THEN RETURN ''' || referrer_key.referrer_type
            || ''; END IF;'';
    END LOOP;
    func_cmd := func_cmd || ' RETURN NULL; END;';
    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE func_cmd;
END;
/
show errors;
```

Here is how this function would end up in Postgres Pro:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_update_referrer_type_proc() AS $func$
DECLARE
    referrer_keys CURSOR IS
        SELECT * FROM cs_referrer_keys
        ORDER BY try_order;
    func_body text;
    func_cmd text;
BEGIN

    func_body := 'CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_find_referrer_type(v_host IN VARCHAR2,
        v_domain IN VARCHAR2, v_url IN VARCHAR2) RETURN VARCHAR2 IS BEGIN';
    FOR referrer_key IN referrer_keys LOOP
        func_body := func_body || ' IF v_' || referrer_key.kind
            || ' LIKE ''' || referrer_key.key_string
            || '' THEN RETURN ''' || referrer_key.referrer_type
            || ''; END IF;'';
    END LOOP;
    func_body := func_body || ' RETURN NULL; END;';
END;
/
show errors;
```

1126
BEGIN
    func_body := 'BEGIN';

    FOR referrer_key IN referrer_keys LOOP
        func_body := func_body ||
            ' IF v_' || referrer_key.kind
            || ' LIKE ' || quote_literal(referrer_key.key_string)
            || ' THEN RETURN ' || quote_literal(referrer_key.referrer_type)
            || '; END IF;' ;
    END LOOP;

    func_body := func_body || ' RETURN NULL; END;';

    func_cmd :=
        'CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_find_referrer_type(v_host varchar,
            v_domain varchar,
            v_url varchar)
        RETURNS varchar AS '|| quote_literal(func_body)
        || ' LANGUAGE plpgsql;' ;

    EXECUTE func_cmd;
END;

$func$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

Notice how the body of the function is built separately and passed through quote_literal to double any quote marks in it. This technique is needed because we cannot safely use dollar quoting for defining the new function: we do not know for sure what strings will be interpolated from the referrer_key.key_string field. (We are assuming here that referrer_key.kind can be trusted to always be host, domain, or url, but referrer_key.key_string might be anything, in particular it might contain dollar signs.) This function is actually an improvement on the Oracle original, because it will not generate broken code when referrer_key.key_string or referrer_key.referrer_type contain quote marks.

Example 41.11 shows how to port a function with OUT parameters and string manipulation. Postgres Pro does not have a built-in instr function, but you can create one using a combination of other functions. In Section 41.13.3 there is a PL/pgSQL implementation of instr that you can use to make your porting easier.

Example 41.11. Porting a Procedure With String Manipulation and OUT Parameters from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL

The following Oracle PL/SQL procedure is used to parse a URL and return several elements (host, path, and query).

This is the Oracle version:

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_parse_url(
    v_url IN VARCHAR2,
    v_host OUT VARCHAR2,  -- This will be passed back
    v_path OUT VARCHAR2,  -- This one too
    v_query OUT VARCHAR2) -- And this one
IS
    a_pos1 INTEGER;
    a_pos2 INTEGER;
BEGIN
    v_host := NULL;
    v_path := NULL;
    v_query := NULL;
    a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '/');
IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
    RETURN;
END IF;
a_pos2 := instr(v_url, '/', a_pos1 + 2);
IF a_pos2 = 0 THEN
    v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2);
    v_path := '/';
    RETURN;
END IF;
v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2, a_pos2 - a_pos1 - 2);
a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '?', a_pos2 + 1);
IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
    v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2);
    RETURN;
END IF;
v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2, a_pos1 - a_pos2);
v_query := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 1);
END;
/
show errors;

Here is a possible translation into PL/pgSQL:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_parse_url(
    v_url IN VARCHAR,
    v_host OUT VARCHAR,  -- This will be passed back
    v_path OUT VARCHAR,  -- This one too
    v_query OUT VARCHAR) -- And this one
AS $$
DECLARE
    a_pos1 INTEGER;
    a_pos2 INTEGER;
BEGIN
    v_host := NULL;
    v_path := NULL;
    v_query := NULL;
a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '/');
    IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
        RETURN;
    END IF;
a_pos2 := instr(v_url, '/', a_pos1 + 2);
    IF a_pos2 = 0 THEN
        v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2);
        v_path := '/';
        RETURN;
    END IF;
v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2, a_pos2 - a_pos1 - 2);
a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '?', a_pos2 + 1);
    IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
        v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2);
        RETURN;
    END IF;
v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2, a_pos2 - a_pos1 - 2);
a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '?', a_pos2 + 1);
    IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
        v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2);
        RETURN;
    END IF;
v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2, a_pos1 - a_pos2);
v_query := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 1);
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

This function could be used like this:
SELECT * FROM cs_parse_url('http://foobar.com/query.cgi?baz');

Example 41.12 shows how to port a procedure that uses numerous features that are specific to Oracle.

Example 41.12. Porting a Procedure from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL

The Oracle version:
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_create_job(v_job_id IN INTEGER) IS
    a_running_job_count INTEGER;
BEGIN
    LOCK TABLE cs_jobs IN EXCLUSIVE MODE;
    SELECT count(*) INTO a_running_job_count FROM cs_jobs WHERE end_stamp IS NULL;
    IF a_running_job_count > 0 THEN
        COMMIT; -- free lock
        raise_application_error(-20000,
            'Unable to create a new job: a job is currently running.');
    END IF;
    DELETE FROM cs_active_job;
    INSERT INTO cs_active_job(job_id) VALUES (v_job_id);
    BEGIN
        INSERT INTO cs_jobs (job_id, start_stamp) VALUES (v_job_id, now());
    EXCEPTION
        WHEN dup_val_on_index THEN NULL; -- don't worry if it already exists
    END;
    COMMIT;
END;
/

This is how we could port this procedure to PL/pgSQL:
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_create_job(v_job_id integer) AS $$
DECLARE
    a_running_job_count integer;
BEGIN
    LOCK TABLE cs_jobs IN EXCLUSIVE MODE;
    SELECT count(*) INTO a_running_job_count FROM cs_jobs WHERE end_stamp IS NULL;
    IF a_running_job_count > 0 THEN
        COMMIT; -- free lock
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'Unable to create a new job: a job is currently running'; -- 1
    END IF;
    DELETE FROM cs_active_job;
    INSERT INTO cs_active_job(job_id) VALUES (v_job_id);
    BEGIN
        INSERT INTO cs_jobs (job_id, start_stamp) VALUES (v_job_id, now());
    EXCEPTION
        WHEN dup_val_on_index THEN NULL; -- don't worry if it already exists
    END;
    COMMIT;
END;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN unique_violation THEN -- 2
      -- don't worry if it already exists
END;
COMMIT;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

1 The syntax of RAISE is considerably different from Oracle's statement, although the basic case RAISE exception_name works similarly.

2 The exception names supported by PL/pgSQL are different from Oracle's. The set of built-in exception names is much larger (see Appendix A). There is not currently a way to declare user-defined exception names, although you can throw user-chosen SQLSTATE values instead.

41.13.2. Other Things to Watch For

This section explains a few other things to watch for when porting Oracle PL/SQL functions to Postgres Pro.

41.13.2.1. Implicit Rollback after Exceptions

In PL/pgSQL, when an exception is caught by an EXCEPTION clause, all database changes since the block's BEGIN are automatically rolled back. That is, the behavior is equivalent to what you'd get in Oracle with:

BEGIN
    SAVEPOINT si;
    ... code here ...
EXCEPTION
    WHEN ... THEN
        ROLLBACK TO si;
        ... code here ...
    WHEN ... THEN
        ROLLBACK TO si;
        ... code here ...
END;

If you are translating an Oracle procedure that uses SAVEPOINT and ROLLBACK TO in this style, your task is easy: just omit the SAVEPOINT and ROLLBACK TO. If you have a procedure that uses SAVEPOINT and ROLLBACK TO in a different way then some actual thought will be required.

41.13.2.2. EXECUTE

The PL/pgSQL version of EXECUTE works similarly to the PL/SQL version, but you have to remember to use quote_literal and quote_ident as described in Section 41.5.4. Constructs of the type EXECUTE 'SELECT * FROM $1'; will not work reliably unless you use these functions.

41.13.2.3. Optimizing PL/pgSQL Functions

Postgres Pro gives you two function creation modifiers to optimize execution: “volatility” (whether the function always returns the same result when given the same arguments) and “strictness” (whether the function returns null if any argument is null). Consult the CREATE FUNCTION reference page for details.

When making use of these optimization attributes, your CREATE FUNCTION statement might look something like this:

CREATE FUNCTION foo(...) RETURNS integer AS $$
...$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

41.13.3. Appendix

This section contains the code for a set of Oracle-compatible instr functions that you can use to simplify your porting efforts.
-- instr functions that mimic Oracle's counterpart
-- Syntax: instr(string1, string2 [, n [, m]])
-- where [] denotes optional parameters.
--
-- Search string1, beginning at the nth character, for the mth occurrence
-- of string2. If n is negative, search backwards, starting at the abs(n)'th
-- character from the end of string1.
-- If n is not passed, assume 1 (search starts at first character).
-- If m is not passed, assume 1 (find first occurrence).
-- Returns starting index of string2 in string1, or 0 if string2 is not found.
--
CREATE FUNCTION instr(varchar, varchar) RETURNS integer AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN instr($1, $2, 1);
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE FUNCTION instr(string varchar, string_to_search_for varchar,
    beg_index integer)
RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
    pos integer NOT NULL DEFAULT 0;
    temp_str varchar;
    beg integer;
    length integer;
    ss_length integer;
BEGIN
    IF beg_index > 0 THEN
        temp_str := substring(string FROM beg_index);
        pos := position(string_to_search_for IN temp_str);
        IF pos = 0 THEN
            RETURN 0;
        ELSE
            RETURN pos + beg_index - 1;
        END IF;
    ELSIF beg_index < 0 THEN
        ss_length := char_length(string_to_search_for);
        length := char_length(string);
        beg := length + 1 + beg_index;
        WHILE beg > 0 LOOP
            temp_str := substring(string FROM beg FOR ss_length);
            IF string_to_search_for = temp_str THEN
                RETURN beg;
            END IF;
            beg := beg - 1;
        END LOOP;
        RETURN 0;
    ELSE
        RETURN 0;
    END IF;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
CREATE FUNCTION instr(string varchar, string_to_search_for varchar, 
  beg_index integer, occur_index integer) 
RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE 
pos integer NOT NULL DEFAULT 0;
  occur_number integer NOT NULL DEFAULT 0;
  temp_str varchar;
  beg integer;
  i integer;
  length integer;
  ss_length integer;
BEGIN
  IF occur_index <= 0 THEN 
    RAISE 'argument '"%"' is out of range', occur_index 
    USING ERRCODE = '22003';
  END IF;

  IF beg_index > 0 THEN 
    beg := beg_index - 1;
    FOR i IN 1..occur_index LOOP 
      temp_str := substring(string FROM beg + 1);
      pos := position(string_to_search_for IN temp_str);
      IF pos = 0 THEN 
        RETURN 0;
      END IF;
      beg := beg + pos;
    END LOOP;
  
  RETURN beg;
ELSIF beg_index < 0 THEN 
  ss_length := char_length(string_to_search_for);
  length := char_length(string);
  beg := length + 1 + beg_index;

  WHILE beg > 0 LOOP 
    temp_str := substring(string FROM beg FOR ss_length);
    IF string_to_search_for = temp_str THEN 
      occur_number := occur_number + 1;
      IF occur_number = occur_index THEN 
        RETURN beg;
      END IF;
    END IF;
  END LOOP;
  beg := beg - 1;
  RETURN 0;
END IF;
ELSE 
  RETURN 0;
END IF;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;
Chapter 42. PL/Tcl — Tcl Procedural Language

PL/Tcl is a loadable procedural language for the Postgres Pro database system that enables the Tcl language to be used to write Postgres Pro functions and procedures.

42.1. Overview

PL/Tcl offers most of the capabilities a function writer has in the C language, with a few restrictions, and with the addition of the powerful string processing libraries that are available for Tcl.

One compelling good restriction is that everything is executed from within the safety of the context of a Tcl interpreter. In addition to the limited command set of safe Tcl, only a few commands are available to access the database via SPI and to raise messages via :elog(). PL/Tcl provides no way to access internals of the database server or to gain OS-level access under the permissions of the Postgres Pro server process, as a C function can do. Thus, unprivileged database users can be trusted to use this language; it does not give them unlimited authority.

The other notable implementation restriction is that Tcl functions cannot be used to create input/output functions for new data types.

Sometimes it is desirable to write Tcl functions that are not restricted to safe Tcl. For example, one might want a Tcl function that sends email. To handle these cases, there is a variant of PL/Tcl called PL/TclU (for untrusted Tcl). This is exactly the same language except that a full Tcl interpreter is used. If PL/TclU is used, it must be installed as an untrusted procedural language so that only database superusers can create functions in it. The writer of a PL/TclU function must take care that the function cannot be used to do anything unwanted, since it will be able to do anything that could be done by a user logged in as the database administrator.

The shared object code for the PL/Tcl and PL/TclU call handlers is automatically built and installed in the Postgres Pro library directory if Tcl support is specified in the configuration step of the installation procedure. To install PL/Tcl and/or PL/TclU in a particular database, use the CREATE EXTENSION command, for example CREATE EXTENSION pltcl or CREATE EXTENSION pltclu.

42.2. PL/Tcl Functions and Arguments

To create a function in the PL/Tcl language, use the standard CREATE FUNCTION syntax:

```
CREATE FUNCTION funcname (argument-types) RETURNS return-type AS $$
    # PL/Tcl function body
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

PL/TclU is the same, except that the language has to be specified as pltclu.

The body of the function is simply a piece of Tcl script. When the function is called, the argument values are passed to the Tcl script as variables named $1 ... $n. The result is returned from the Tcl code in the usual way, with a return statement. In a procedure, the return value from the Tcl code is ignored.

For example, a function returning the greater of two integer values could be defined as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION tcl_max(integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    if {$1 > $2} {return $1}
    return $2
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl STRICT;
```

Note the clause STRICT, which saves us from having to think about null input values: if a null value is passed, the function will not be called at all, but will just return a null result automatically.

In a nonstrict function, if the actual value of an argument is null, the corresponding $n variable will be set to an empty string. To detect whether a particular argument is null, use the function argisnull.
For example, suppose that we wanted \texttt{tcl\_max} with one null and one nonnull argument to return the nonnull argument, rather than null:

```
CREATE FUNCTION tcl_max(integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
if {\[argisnull 1\]} {
    if {\[argisnull 2\]} { return_null }
    return $2
}
if {\[argisnull 2\]} { return $1 }
if {$1 > $2} {return $1}
return $2
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

As shown above, to return a null value from a PL/Tcl function, execute \texttt{return\_null}. This can be done whether the function is strict or not.

Composite-type arguments are passed to the function as Tcl arrays. The element names of the array are the attribute names of the composite type. If an attribute in the passed row has the null value, it will not appear in the array. Here is an example:

```
CREATE TABLE employee (  
    name text,  
    salary integer,  
    age integer  
);

CREATE FUNCTION overpaid(employee) RETURNS boolean AS $$
if {200000.0 < $1(salary)} {
    return "t"
}
if {$1(age) < 30 && 100000.0 < $1(salary)} {
    return "t"
}
return "f"
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

PL/Tcl functions can return composite-type results, too. To do this, the Tcl code must return a list of column name/value pairs matching the expected result type. Any column names omitted from the list are returned as nulls, and an error is raised if there are unexpected column names. Here is an example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION square_cube(in int, out squared int, out cubed int) AS $$
return [list squared [expr {$1 * $1}] cubed [expr {$1 * $1 * $1}]]
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

Output arguments of procedures are returned in the same way, for example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE tcl_triple(INOUT a integer, INOUT b integer) AS $$
return [list a [expr {$1 * 3}] b [expr {$2 * 3}]]
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
CALL tcl_triple(5, 10);
```

**Tip**

The result list can be made from an array representation of the desired tuple with the \texttt{array get} Tcl command. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION raise_pay(employee, delta int) RETURNS employee AS $$
set 1(salary) [expr {$1(salary) + $2}]
return [array get 1]
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```
PL/Tcl — Tcl Procedural Language

 PL/Tcl functions can return sets. To do this, the Tcl code should call \texttt{return\_next} once per row to be returned, passing either the appropriate value when returning a scalar type, or a list of column name/value pairs when returning a composite type. Here is an example returning a scalar type:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE FUNCTION sequence(int, int) RETURNS SETOF int AS $$
for {set i $1} {$i < $2} {incr i} {
    return\_next $i
}
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
\end{verbatim}

and here is one returning a composite type:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE FUNCTION table_of_squares(int, int) RETURNS TABLE (x int, x2 int) AS $$
for {set i $1} {$i < $2} {incr i} {
    return\_next [list x $i x2 [expr {$i * $i}]]
}
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
\end{verbatim}

42.3. Data Values in PL/Tcl

The argument values supplied to a PL/Tcl function's code are simply the input arguments converted to text form (just as if they had been displayed by a \texttt{SELECT} statement). Conversely, the \texttt{return} and \texttt{return\_next} commands will accept any string that is acceptable input format for the function's declared result type, or for the specified column of a composite result type.

42.4. Global Data in PL/Tcl

Sometimes it is useful to have some global data that is held between two calls to a function or is shared between different functions. This is easily done in PL/Tcl, but there are some restrictions that must be understood.

For security reasons, PL/Tcl executes functions called by any one SQL role in a separate Tcl interpreter for that role. This prevents accidental or malicious interference by one user with the behavior of another user's PL/Tcl functions. Each such interpreter will have its own values for any “global” Tcl variables. Thus, two PL/Tcl functions will share the same global variables if and only if they are executed by the same SQL role. In an application wherein a single session executes code under multiple SQL roles (via \texttt{SECURITY DEFINER} functions, use of \texttt{SET ROLE}, etc) you may need to take explicit steps to ensure that PL/Tcl functions can share data. To do that, make sure that functions that should communicate are owned by the same user, and mark them \texttt{SECURITY DEFINER}. You must of course take care that such functions can't be used to do anything unintended.

All PL/TclU functions used in a session execute in the same Tcl interpreter, which of course is distinct from the interpreter(s) used for PL/Tcl functions. So global data is automatically shared between PL/TclU functions. This is not considered a security risk because all PL/TclU functions execute at the same trust level, namely that of a database superuser.

To help protect PL/Tcl functions from unintentionally interfering with each other, a global array is made available to each function via the \texttt{upvar} command. The global name of this variable is the function's internal name, and the local name is \texttt{GD}. It is recommended that \texttt{GD} be used for persistent private data of a function. Use regular Tcl global variables only for values that you specifically intend to be shared among multiple functions. (Note that the \texttt{GD} arrays are only global within a particular interpreter, so they do not bypass the security restrictions mentioned above.)

An example of using \texttt{GD} appears in the \texttt{spi_execp} example below.

42.5. Database Access from PL/Tcl

The following commands are available to access the database from the body of a PL/Tcl function:
spi_exec ?-count n? ?-array name? command ?loop-body?

Executes an SQL command given as a string. An error in the command causes an error to be raised. Otherwise, the return value of spi_exec is the number of rows processed (selected, inserted, updated, or deleted) by the command, or zero if the command is a utility statement. In addition, if the command is a SELECT statement, the values of the selected columns are placed in Tcl variables as described below.

The optional -count value tells spi_exec the maximum number of rows to process in the command. The effect of this is comparable to setting up a query as a cursor and then saying FETCH n.

If the command is a SELECT statement, the values of the result columns are placed into Tcl variables named after the columns. If the -array option is given, the column values are instead stored into elements of the named associative array, with the column names used as array indexes. In addition, the current row number within the result (counting from zero) is stored into the array element named ".tupno", unless that name is in use as a column name in the result.

If the command is a SELECT statement and no loop-body script is given, then only the first row of results are stored into Tcl variables or array elements; remaining rows, if any, are ignored. No storing occurs if the query returns no rows. (This case can be detected by checking the result of spi_exec.) For example:

```
spi_exec "SELECT count(*) AS cnt FROM pg_proc"
```

will set the Tcl variable $cnt to the number of rows in the pg_proc system catalog.

If the optional loop-body argument is given, it is a piece of Tcl script that is executed once for each row in the query result. (loop-body is ignored if the given command is not a SELECT.) The values of the current row's columns are stored into Tcl variables or array elements before each iteration. For example:

```
spi_exec -array C "SELECT * FROM pg_class" {
    elog DEBUG "have table $C(relname)"
}
```

will print a log message for every row of pg_class. This feature works similarly to other Tcl looping constructs; in particular continue and break work in the usual way inside the loop body.

If a column of a query result is null, the target variable for it is "unset" rather than being set.

spi_prepare query typelist

Prepares and saves a query plan for later execution. The saved plan will be retained for the life of the current session.

The query can use parameters, that is, placeholders for values to be supplied whenever the plan is actually executed. In the query string, refer to parameters by the symbols $1 ... $n. If the query uses parameters, the names of the parameter types must be given as a Tcl list. (Write an empty list for typelist if no parameters are used.)

The return value from spi_prepare is a query ID to be used in subsequent calls to spi_execp. See spi_execp for an example.


Executes a query previously prepared with spi_prepare. queryid is the ID returned by spi_prepare. If the query references parameters, a value-list must be supplied. This is a Tcl list of actual values for the parameters. The list must be the same length as the parameter type list previously given to spi_prepare. Omit value-list if the query has no parameters.

The optional value for -nulls is a string of spaces and 'n' characters telling spi_execp which of the parameters are null values. If given, it must have exactly the same length as the value-list. If it is not given, all the parameter values are nonnull.
Except for the way in which the query and its parameters are specified, `spi_execp` works just like `spi_exec`. The `-count`, `-array`, and `loop-body` options are the same, and so is the result value.

Here's an example of a PL/Tcl function using a prepared plan:

```tcl
CREATE FUNCTION t1_count(integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
if {!info exists GD(plan)} {
    # prepare the saved plan on the first call
    set GD(plan) [ spi_prepare "SELECT count(*) AS cnt FROM t1 WHERE num >= \$1 AND num <= \$2" [ list int4 int4 ] ]
}
spi_execp -count 1 $GD(plan) [ list $1 $2 ]
return $cnt
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

We need backslashes inside the query string given to `spi_prepare` to ensure that the `$n` markers will be passed through to `spi_prepare` as-is, and not replaced by Tcl variable substitution.

**subtransaction command**

The Tcl script contained in `command` is executed within an SQL subtransaction. If the script returns an error, that entire subtransaction is rolled back before returning the error out to the surrounding Tcl code. See Section 42.9 for more details and an example.

**quote string**

Doubles all occurrences of single quote and backslash characters in the given string. This can be used to safely quote strings that are to be inserted into SQL commands given to `spi_exec` or `spi_prepare`. For example, think about an SQL command string like:

```
"SELECT '"val' AS ret"
```

where the Tcl variable `val` actually contains `doesn't`. This would result in the final command string:

```
SELECT 'doesn't' AS ret
```

which would cause a parse error during `spi_exec` or `spi_prepare`. To work properly, the submitted command should contain:

```
SELECT '"doesn''t' AS ret
```

which can be formed in PL/Tcl using:

```
"SELECT '"[ quote $val ]' AS ret"
```

One advantage of `spi_execp` is that you don't have to quote parameter values like this, since the parameters are never parsed as part of an SQL command string.

**elog level msg**

Emits a log or error message. Possible levels are `DEBUG`, `LOG`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, and `FATAL`. `ERROR` raises an error condition; if this is not trapped by the surrounding Tcl code, the error propagates out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. This is effectively the same as the Tcl `error` command. `FATAL` aborts the transaction and causes the current session to shut down. (There is probably no good reason to use this error level in PL/Tcl functions, but it's provided for completeness.) The other levels only generate messages of different priority levels. Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the `log_min_messages` and `client_min_messages` configuration variables. See Chapter 18 and Section 42.8 for more information.

### 42.6. Trigger Functions in PL/Tcl

Trigger functions can be written in PL/Tcl. Postgres Pro requires that a function that is to be called as a trigger must be declared as a function with no arguments and a return type of `trigger`.  

1137
The information from the trigger manager is passed to the function body in the following variables:

$TG_name
   The name of the trigger from the CREATE TRIGGER statement.

$TG_relid
   The object ID of the table that caused the trigger function to be invoked.

$TG_table_name
   The name of the table that caused the trigger function to be invoked.

$TG_table_schema
   The schema of the table that caused the trigger function to be invoked.

$TG_relatts
   A Tcl list of the table column names, prefixed with an empty list element. So looking up a column name in the list with Tcl's lsearch command returns the element's number starting with 1 for the first column, the same way the columns are customarily numbered in Postgres Pro. (Empty list elements also appear in the positions of columns that have been dropped, so that the attribute numbering is correct for columns to their right.)

$TG_when
   The string BEFORE, AFTER, or INSTEAD OF, depending on the type of trigger event.

$TG_level
   The string ROW or STATEMENT depending on the type of trigger event.

$TG_op
   The string INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or TRUNCATE depending on the type of trigger event.

$NEW
   An associative array containing the values of the new table row for INSERT or UPDATE actions, or empty for DELETE. The array is indexed by column name. Columns that are null will not appear in the array. This is not set for statement-level triggers.

$OLD
   An associative array containing the values of the old table row for UPDATE or DELETE actions, or empty for INSERT. The array is indexed by column name. Columns that are null will not appear in the array. This is not set for statement-level triggers.

$args
   A Tcl list of the arguments to the function as given in the CREATE TRIGGER statement. These arguments are also accessible as $1 ... $n in the function body.

The return value from a trigger function can be one of the strings OK or SKIP, or a list of column name/value pairs. If the return value is OK, the operation (INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE) that fired the trigger will proceed normally. SKIP tells the trigger manager to silently suppress the operation for this row. If a list is returned, it tells PL/Tcl to return a modified row to the trigger manager; the contents of the modified row are specified by the column names and values in the list. Any columns not mentioned in the list are set to null. Returning a modified row is only meaningful for row-level BEFORE INSERT or UPDATE triggers, for which the modified row will be inserted instead of the one given in $NEW; or for row-level INSTEAD OF INSERT or UPDATE triggers where the returned row is used as the source data for INSERT RETURNING or UPDATE RETURNING clauses. In row-level BEFORE DELETE or INSTEAD OF DELETE triggers, returning
a modified row has the same effect as returning \texttt{OK}, that is the operation proceeds. The trigger return value is ignored for all other types of triggers.

**Tip**

The result list can be made from an array representation of the modified tuple with the \texttt{array get} \texttt{Tcl} command.

Here's a little example trigger function that forces an integer value in a table to keep track of the number of updates that are performed on the row. For new rows inserted, the value is initialized to 0 and then incremented on every update operation.

```
CREATE FUNCTION trigfunc_modcount() RETURNS trigger AS $$
    switch $TG_op {
        INSERT {
            set NEW($1) 0
        }
        UPDATE {
            set NEW($1) $OLD($1)
            incr NEW($1)
        }
        default {
            return OK
        }
    }
    return [array get NEW]
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

```
CREATE TABLE mytab (num integer, description text, modcnt integer);
CREATE TRIGGER trig_mytab_modcount BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE ON mytab
    FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION trigfunc_modcount('modcnt');
```

Notice that the trigger function itself does not know the column name; that's supplied from the trigger arguments. This lets the trigger function be reused with different tables.

### 42.7. Event Trigger Functions in PL/Tcl

Event trigger functions can be written in PL/Tcl. Postgres Pro requires that a function that is to be called as an event trigger must be declared as a function with no arguments and a return type of \texttt{event\_trigger}.

The information from the trigger manager is passed to the function body in the following variables:

\$TG\_event

The name of the event the trigger is fired for.

\$TG\_tag

The command tag for which the trigger is fired.

The return value of the trigger function is ignored.

Here's a little example event trigger function that simply raises a \texttt{NOTICE} message each time a supported command is executed:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION tclsnitch() RETURNS event_trigger AS $$
    elog NOTICE "tclsnitch: $TG_event $TG_tag"
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER tcl_a_snitch ON ddl_command_start EXECUTE FUNCTION tclsnitch();

42.8. Error Handling in PL/Tcl

Tcl code within or called from a PL/Tcl function can raise an error, either by executing some invalid operation or by generating an error using the Tcl error command or PL/Tcl's elog command. Such errors can be caught within Tcl using the Tcl catch command. If an error is not caught but is allowed to propagate out to the top level of execution of the PL/Tcl function, it is reported as an SQL error in the function's calling query.

Conversely, SQL errors that occur within PL/Tcl's spi_exec, spi_prepare, and spi_execp commands are reported as Tcl errors, so they are catchable by Tcl's catch command. (Each of these PL/Tcl commands runs its SQL operation in a subtransaction, which is rolled back on error, so that any partially-completed operation is automatically cleaned up.) Again, if an error propagates out to the top level without being caught, it turns back into an SQL error.

Tcl provides an errorCode variable that can represent additional information about an error in a form that is easy for Tcl programs to interpret. The contents are in Tcl list format, and the first word identifies the subsystem or library reporting the error; beyond that the contents are left to the individual subsystem or library. For database errors reported by PL/Tcl commands, the first word is POSTGRES, the second word is the Postgres Pro version number, and additional words are field name/value pairs providing detailed information about the error. Fields SQLSTATE, condition, and message are always supplied (the first two represent the error code and condition name as shown in Appendix A). Fields that may be present include detail, hint, context, schema, table, column, datatype, constraint, statement, cursor_position, filename, lineno, and funcname.

A convenient way to work with PL/Tcl's errorCode information is to load it into an array, so that the field names become array subscripts. Code for doing that might look like

```tcl
if {{catch { spi_exec $sql_command }}}} {
    if {([lindex ::errorCode 0] == "POSTGRES") {
        array set errorArray ::errorCode
        if {errorArray(condition) == "undefined_table"} {
            # deal with missing table
        } else {
            # deal with some other type of SQL error
        }
    }
}
```

(The double colons explicitly specify that errorCode is a global variable.)

42.9. Explicit Subtransactions in PL/Tcl

Recovering from errors caused by database access as described in Section 42.8 can lead to an undesirable situation where some operations succeed before one of them fails, and after recovering from that error the data is left in an inconsistent state. PL/Tcl offers a solution to this problem in the form of explicit subtransactions.

Consider a function that implements a transfer between two accounts:

```tcl
CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds() RETURNS void AS $$
    if {[catch {
        spi_exec "UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100 WHERE account_name = 'joe'"
        spi_exec "UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100 WHERE account_name = 'mary'"
    } errormsg] {
        set result [format "error transferring funds: %s" $errormsg]
    }
$$
```

1140
PL/Tcl — Tcl Procedural Language

} else {
    set result "funds transferred successfully"
}
spi_exec "INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ('[quote $result]')"
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;

If the second UPDATE statement results in an exception being raised, this function will log the failure, but the result of the first UPDATE will nevertheless be committed. In other words, the funds will be withdrawn from Joe's account, but will not be transferred to Mary's account. This happens because each spi_exec is a separate subtransaction, and only one of those subtransactions got rolled back.

To handle such cases, you can wrap multiple database operations in an explicit subtransaction, which will succeed or roll back as a whole. PL/Tcl provides a subtransaction command to manage this. We can rewrite our function as:

CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds2() RETURNS void AS $$
    if [catch {
        subtransaction {
            spi_exec "UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100 WHERE account_name = 'joe'"
            spi_exec "UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100 WHERE account_name = 'mary'"
        } errormsg] {
            set result [format "error transferring funds: %s" $errormsg]
        } else {
            set result "funds transferred successfully"
        }
    }
    spi_exec "INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ('[quote $result]')"
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;

Note that use of catch is still required for this purpose. Otherwise the error would propagate to the top level of the function, preventing the desired insertion into the operations table. The subtransaction command does not trap errors, it only assures that all database operations executed inside its scope will be rolled back together when an error is reported.

A rollback of an explicit subtransaction occurs on any error reported by the contained Tcl code, not only errors originating from database access. Thus a regular Tcl exception raised inside a subtransaction command will also cause the subtransaction to be rolled back. However, non-error exits out of the contained Tcl code (for instance, due to return) do not cause a rollback.

42.10. Transaction Management

In a procedure called from the top level or an anonymous code block (DO command) called from the top level it is possible to control transactions. To commit the current transaction, call the commit command. To roll back the current transaction, call the rollback command. (Note that it is not possible to run the SQL commands COMMIT or ROLLBACK via spi_exec or similar. It has to be done using these functions.) After a transaction is ended, a new transaction is automatically started, so there is no separate command for that.

Here is an example:

CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test1()
LANGUAGE pltcl
AS $$
for {set i 0} {$i < 10} {incr i} {
    spi_exec "INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES ($i)"
    if {$i % 2 == 0} {
        commit
    } else {
        rollback
    }
}$$
rollback
}
}
$$;

CALL transaction_test1();

Transactions cannot be ended when an explicit subtransaction is active.

### 42.11. PL/Tcl Configuration

This section lists configuration parameters that affect PL/Tcl.

```plausible
pltcl.start_proc(string)
```

This parameter, if set to a nonempty string, specifies the name (possibly schema-qualified) of a parameterless PL/Tcl function that is to be executed whenever a new Tcl interpreter is created for PL/Tcl. Such a function can perform per-session initialization, such as loading additional Tcl code. A new Tcl interpreter is created when a PL/Tcl function is first executed in a database session, or when an additional interpreter has to be created because a PL/Tcl function is called by a new SQL role.

The referenced function must be written in the `pltcl` language, and must not be marked `SECURITY DEFINER`. (These restrictions ensure that it runs in the interpreter it’s supposed to initialize.) The current user must have permission to call it, too.

If the function fails with an error it will abort the function call that caused the new interpreter to be created and propagate out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. Any actions already done within Tcl won't be undone; however, that interpreter won't be used again. If the language is used again the initialization will be attempted again within a fresh Tcl interpreter.

Only superusers can change this setting. Although this setting can be changed within a session, such changes will not affect Tcl interpreters that have already been created.

```plausible
pltclu.start_proc(string)
```

This parameter is exactly like `pltcl.start_proc`, except that it applies to PL/TclU. The referenced function must be written in the `pltclu` language.

### 42.12. Tcl Procedure Names

In Postgres Pro, the same function name can be used for different function definitions as long as the number of arguments or their types differ. Tcl, however, requires all procedure names to be distinct. PL/Tcl deals with this by making the internal Tcl procedure names contain the object ID of the function from the system table `pg_proc` as part of their name. Thus, Postgres Pro functions with the same name and different argument types will be different Tcl procedures, too. This is not normally a concern for a PL/Tcl programmer, but it might be visible when debugging.
Chapter 43. PL/Perl — Perl Procedural Language

PL/Perl is a loadable procedural language that enables you to write Postgres Pro functions and procedures in the Perl programming language.

The main advantage to using PL/Perl is that this allows use, within stored functions and procedures, of the manyfold “string munging” operators and functions available for Perl. Parsing complex strings might be easier using Perl than it is with the string functions and control structures provided in PL/pgSQL.

To install PL/Perl in a particular database, use `CREATE EXTENSION plperl`.

Tip
If a language is installed into `template1`, all subsequently created databases will have the language installed automatically.

Note
Users of source packages must specially enable the build of PL/Perl during the installation process. Users of binary packages might find PL/Perl in a separate subpackage.

43.1. PL/Perl Functions and Arguments

To create a function in the PL/Perl language, use the standard `CREATE FUNCTION` syntax:

```plaintext
CREATE FUNCTION funcname (argument-types)
RETURNS return-type
-- function attributes can go here
AS $$
  # PL/Perl function body goes here
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

The body of the function is ordinary Perl code. In fact, the PL/Perl glue code wraps it inside a Perl subroutine. A PL/Perl function is called in a scalar context, so it can't return a list. You can return non-scalar values (arrays, records, and sets) by returning a reference, as discussed below.

In a PL/Perl procedure, any return value from the Perl code is ignored.

PL/Perl also supports anonymous code blocks called with the `DO` statement:

```plaintext
DO $$
  # PL/Perl code
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

An anonymous code block receives no arguments, and whatever value it might return is discarded. Otherwise it behaves just like a function.

Note
The use of named nested subroutines is dangerous in Perl, especially if they refer to lexical variables in the enclosing scope. Because a PL/Perl function is wrapped in a subroutine, any named subroutine you place inside one will be nested. In general, it is far safer to create anonymous subroutines which you call via a coderef. For more information, see the entries for `Variable "%s"`
The syntax of the CREATE FUNCTION command requires the function body to be written as a string constant. It is usually most convenient to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) for the string constant. If you choose to use escape string syntax E'''', you must double any single quote marks (‘’) and backslashes (\) used in the body of the function (see Section 4.1.2.1).

Arguments and results are handled as in any other Perl subroutine: arguments are passed in @_, and a result value is returned with return or as the last expression evaluated in the function.

For example, a function returning the greater of two integer values could be defined as:

```perl
CREATE FUNCTION perl_max (integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    if ($_[0] > $_[1]) { return $_[0]; }
    return $_[1];
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

Arguments will be converted from the database’s encoding to UTF-8 for use inside PL/Perl, and then converted from UTF-8 back to the database encoding upon return.

If an SQL null value is passed to a function, the argument value will appear as “undefined” in Perl. The above function definition will not behave very nicely with null inputs (in fact, it will act as though they are zeroes). We could add STRICT to the function definition to make Postgres Pro do something more reasonable: if a null value is passed, the function will not be called at all, but will just return a null result automatically. Alternatively, we could check for undefined inputs in the function body. For example, suppose that we wanted `perl_max` with one null and one nonnull argument to return the nonnull argument, rather than a null value:

```perl
CREATE FUNCTION perl_max (integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    my ($x, $y) = @_;  
    if (not defined $x) {  
        return undef if not defined $y;  
        return $y;  
    }  
    return $x if not defined $y;  
    return $x if $x > $y;  
    return $y;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

As shown above, to return an SQL null value from a PL/Perl function, return an undefined value. This can be done whether the function is strict or not.

Anything in a function argument that is not a reference is a string, which is in the standard Postgres Pro external text representation for the relevant data type. In the case of ordinary numeric or text types, Perl will just do the right thing and the programmer will normally not have to worry about it. However, in other cases the argument will need to be converted into a form that is more usable in Perl. For example, the `decode_bytea` function can be used to convert an argument of type `bytea` into unescaped binary.

Similarly, values passed back to Postgres Pro must be in the external text representation format. For example, the `encode_bytea` function can be used to escape binary data for a return value of type `bytea`.

One case that is particularly important is boolean values. As just stated, the default behavior for `bool` values is that they are passed to Perl as text, thus either ‘t’ or ‘f’. This is problematic, since Perl will not treat ‘f’ as false! It is possible to improve matters by using a “transform” (see CREATE TRANSFORM). Suitable transforms are provided by the `bool_plperl` extension. To use it, install the extension.
CREATE EXTENSION bool_plperl; -- or bool_plperlu for PL/PerlU

Then use the TRANSFORM function attribute for a PL/Perl function that takes or returns bool, for example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION perl_and(bool, bool) RETURNS bool TRANSFORM FOR TYPE bool AS $$
  my ($a, $b) = @_; 
  return $a && $b;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

When this transform is applied, bool arguments will be seen by Perl as being 1 or empty, thus properly true or false. If the function result is type bool, it will be true or false according to whether Perl would evaluate the returned value as true. Similar transformations are also performed for boolean query arguments and results of SPI queries performed inside the function (Section 43.3.1).

Perl can return PostgreSQL arrays as references to Perl arrays. Here is an example:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE function returns_array()
RETURNS text[][] AS $$
  return [["a"b','c,d"],["e\f'','g"]]; 
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

```sql
select returns_array();
```

Perl passes PostgreSQL arrays as a blessed PostgreSQL::InServer::ARRAY object. This object may be treated as an array reference or a string, allowing for backward compatibility with Perl code written for PostgreSQL versions below 9.1 to run. For example:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION concat_array_elements(text[]) RETURNS TEXT AS $$
  my $arg = shift;
  my $result = "";
  return undef if (!defined $arg);

  # as an array reference
  for (@$arg) {
    $result .= $_;
  }

  # also works as a string
  $result .= $arg;

  return $result;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

```sql
SELECT concat_array_elements(ARRAY["PL","/","Perl"]);
```

**Note**

Multidimensional arrays are represented as references to lower-dimensional arrays of references in a way common to every Perl programmer.

Composite-type arguments are passed to the function as references to hashes. The keys of the hash are the attribute names of the composite type. Here is an example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE employee (  
  name text,
  basesalary integer,
  bonus integer
```
CREATE FUNCTION empcomp(employee) RETURNS integer AS $$
    my ($emp) = @_;  
    return $emp->{basesalary} + $emp->{bonus};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT name, empcomp(employee.*) FROM employee;

A PL/Perl function can return a composite-type result using the same approach: return a reference to a hash that has the required attributes. For example:

CREATE TYPE testrowperl AS (f1 integer, f2 text, f3 text);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_row() RETURNS testrowperl AS $$
    return {f2 => 'hello', f1 => 1, f3 => 'world'};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_row();

Any columns in the declared result data type that are not present in the hash will be returned as null values.

Similarly, output arguments of procedures can be returned as a hash reference:

CREATE PROCEDURE perl_triple(INOUT a integer, INOUT b integer) AS $$
    my ($a, $b) = @_;  
    return {a => $a * 3, b => $b * 3};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CALL perl_triple(5, 10);

PL/Perl functions can also return sets of either scalar or composite types. Usually you'll want to return rows one at a time, both to speed up startup time and to keep from queuing up the entire result set in memory. You can do this with return_next as illustrated below. Note that after the last return_next, you must put either return or (better) return undef.

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_set_int(int) RETURNS SETOF INTEGER AS $$
    foreach (0..$_[0]) {
        return_next($_);
    }
    return undef;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_set_int(5);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_set() RETURNS SETOF testrowperl AS $$
    return_next({ f1 => 1, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'World' });
    return_next({ f1 => 2, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'PostgreSQL' });
    return_next({ f1 => 3, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'PL/Perl' });
    return undef;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_set();

For small result sets, you can return a reference to an array that contains either scalars, references to arrays, or references to hashes for simple types, array types, and composite types, respectively. Here are some simple examples of returning the entire result set as an array reference:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_set_int(int) RETURNS SETOF INTEGER AS $$
    return [0..$_[0]];
$$
\$\$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_set_int(5);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_set() RETURNS SETOF testrowperl AS $$
return [
    { f1 => 1, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'World' },
    { f1 => 2, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'PostgreSQL' },
    { f1 => 3, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'PL/Perl' }
];
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_set();

If you wish to use the \texttt{strict} pragma with your code you have a few options. For temporary global use you can \texttt{SET plperl.use_strict} to true. This will affect subsequent compilations of PL/Perl functions, but not functions already compiled in the current session. For permanent global use you can set \texttt{plperl.use_strict} to true in the \texttt{postgresql.conf} file.

For permanent use in specific functions you can simply put:

\begin{verbatim}
use strict;
\end{verbatim}

at the top of the function body.

The \texttt{feature} pragma is also available to use if your Perl is version 5.10.0 or higher.

\section*{43.2. Data Values in PL/Perl}

The argument values supplied to a PL/Perl function's code are simply the input arguments converted to text form (just as if they had been displayed by a \texttt{SELECT} statement). Conversely, the \texttt{return} and \texttt{return_next} commands will accept any string that is acceptable input format for the function's declared return type.

If this behavior is inconvenient for a particular case, it can be improved by using a transform, as already illustrated for \texttt{bool} values. Several examples of transform modules are included in the PostgreSQL distribution.

\section*{43.3. Built-in Functions}

\subsection*{43.3.1. Database Access from PL/Perl}

Access to the database itself from your Perl function can be done via the following functions:

\begin{verbatim}
spi_exec_query(query [, max-rows])
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{spi_exec_query} executes an SQL command and returns the entire row set as a reference to an array of hash references. \textit{You should only use this command when you know that the result set will be relatively small.} Here is an example of a query (\texttt{SELECT} command) with the optional maximum number of rows:

\begin{verbatim}
$rv = spi_exec_query('SELECT * FROM my_table', 5);
\end{verbatim}

This returns up to 5 rows from the table \texttt{my_table}. If \texttt{my_table} has a column \texttt{my_column}, you can get that value from row \texttt{$i} of the result like this:

\begin{verbatim}
$foo = $rv->{rows}[$i]->{my_column};
\end{verbatim}

The total number of rows returned from a \texttt{SELECT} query can be accessed like this:

\begin{verbatim}
$nrows = $rv->{processed}
\end{verbatim}
Here is an example using a different command type:

```perl
$query = "INSERT INTO my_table VALUES (1, 'test');";
$rv = spi_exec_query($query);

You can then access the command status (e.g., SPI_OK_INSERT) like this:

```perl
$res = $rv->{status};
```

To get the number of rows affected, do:

```perl
$nrows = $rv->{processed};
```

Here is a complete example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE test (
    i int,
    v varchar
);

INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (1, 'first line');
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (2, 'second line');
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (3, 'third line');
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (4, 'immortal');

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION test_munge() RETURNS SETOF test AS $$
    my $rv = spi_exec_query('select i, v from test;');
    my $status = $rv->{status};
    my $nrows = $rv->{processed};
    foreach my $rn (0 .. $nrows - 1) {
        my $row = $rv->{rows}[$rn];
        $row->{i} += 200 if defined($row->{i});
        $row->{v} =~ tr/A-Za-z/a-zA-Z/ if (defined($row->{v}));
        return_next($row);
    }
    return undef;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM test_munge();
```

`spi_query` and `spi_fetchrow` work together as a pair for row sets which might be large, or for cases where you wish to return rows as they arrive. `spi_fetchrow` works only with `spi_query`. The following example illustrates how you use them together:

```sql
CREATE TYPE foo_type AS (the_num INTEGER, the_text TEXT);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION lotsa_md5 (INTEGER) RETURNS SETOF foo_type AS $$
    use Digest::MD5 qw(md5_hex);
    my $file = '/usr/share/dict/words';
    my $t = localtime;
    elog(NOTICE, "opening file $file at $t ");
    open my $fh, '<', $file # ooh, it's a file access!
    or elog(ERROR, "cannot open $file for reading: $! ");
    my @words = <$fh>
    chomp(@words);
```
my $row;
my $sth = spi_query("SELECT * FROM generate_series(1,$_[0]) AS b(a)");
while (defined ($row = spi_fetchrow($sth))) {
  return_next({
    the_num => $row->{a},
    the_text => md5_hex($words[rand @words])
  });
}
return;

SELECT * from lotsa_md5(500);

Normally, \texttt{spi_fetchrow} should be repeated until it returns \texttt{undef}, indicating that there are no more rows to read. The cursor returned by \texttt{spi_query} is automatically freed when \texttt{spi_fetchrow} returns \texttt{undef}. If you do not wish to read all the rows, instead call \texttt{spi_cursor_close} to free the cursor. Failure to do so will result in memory leaks.

\begin{verbatim}
spi_prepare(command, argument types)
spi_query_prepared(plan, arguments)
spi_exec_prepared(plan [, attributes], arguments)
spi_freeplan(plan)
\end{verbatim}

spi_prepare, \texttt{spi_query_prepared}, \texttt{spi_exec_prepared}, and \texttt{spi_freeplan} implement the same functionality but for prepared queries. \texttt{spi_prepare} accepts a query string with numbered argument placeholders ($1, $2, etc) and a string list of argument types:

\begin{verbatim}
$plan = spi_prepare('SELECT * FROM test WHERE id > $1 AND name = $2',
                   'INTEGER', 'TEXT');
\end{verbatim}

Once a query plan is prepared by a call to \texttt{spi_prepare}, the plan can be used instead of the string query, either in \texttt{spi_exec_prepared}, where the result is the same as returned by \texttt{spi_exec_query}, or in \texttt{spi_query_prepared} which returns a cursor exactly as \texttt{spi_query} does, which can be later passed to \texttt{spi_fetchrow}. The optional second parameter to \texttt{spi_exec_prepared} is a hash reference of attributes; the only attribute currently supported is \texttt{limit}, which sets the maximum number of rows returned by a query.

The advantage of prepared queries is that it is possible to use one prepared plan for more than one query execution. After the plan is not needed anymore, it can be freed with \texttt{spi_freeplan}:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION init() RETURNS VOID AS $$
  $_SHARED{my_plan} = spi_prepare('SELECT (now() + $1)::date AS now',
                                  'INTERVAL');
$$ LANGUAGE plperlu;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION add_time( INTERVAL ) RETURNS TEXT AS $$
  return spi_exec_prepared(
    $_SHARED{my_plan},
    $[0]
  )->(rows)->[0]->(now);
$$ LANGUAGE plperlu;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION done() RETURNS VOID AS $$
  spi_freeplan( $_SHARED{my_plan});
  undef $_SHARED{my_plan};
$$ LANGUAGE plperlu;

SELECT init();
SELECT add_time('1 day'), add_time('2 days'), add_time('3 days');
SELECT done();
\end{verbatim}
Note that the parameter subscript in `spi_prepare` is defined via $1, $2, $3, etc, so avoid declaring query strings in double quotes that might easily lead to hard-to-catch bugs.

Another example illustrates usage of an optional parameter in `spi_exec_prepared`:

```sql
CREATE TABLE hosts AS SELECT id, ('192.168.1.'||id)::inet AS address
    FROM generate_series(1,3) AS id;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION init_hosts_query() RETURNS VOID AS $$
    $_SHARED{plan} = spi_prepare('SELECT * FROM hosts
    WHERE address << $1', 'inet');
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION query_hosts(inet) RETURNS SETOF hosts AS $$
    return spi_exec_prepared($_SHARED{plan}, {limit => 2}, $_[0])->{rows};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION release_hosts_query() RETURNS VOID AS $$
    spi_freeplan($_SHARED{plan});
    undef $_SHARED{plan};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT init_hosts_query();
SELECT query_hosts('192.168.1.0/30');
SELECT release_hosts_query();
```

Commit or roll back the current transaction. This can only be called in a procedure or anonymous code block (DO command) called from the top level. (Note that it is not possible to run the SQL commands COMMIT or ROLLBACK via `spi_exec_query` or similar. It has to be done using these functions.) After a transaction is ended, a new transaction is automatically started, so there is no separate function for that.

Here is an example:

```sql
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test1()
LANGUAGE plperl
AS $$
    foreach my $i (0..9) {
        spi_exec_query("INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES ($i)"));
        if ($i % 2 == 0) {
            spi_commit();
        } else {
```
PL/Perl — Perl Procedural Language

```perl
spi_rollback();
}
}
$$;
CALL transaction_test1();
```

### 43.3.2. Utility Functions in PL/Perl

**elog(level, msg)**

Emit a log or error message. Possible levels are `DEBUG, LOG, INFO, NOTICE, WARNING, and ERROR`. `ERROR` raises an error condition; if this is not trapped by the surrounding Perl code, the error propagates out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. This is effectively the same as the Perl `die` command. The other levels only generate messages of different priority levels. Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the `log_min_messages` and `client_min_messages` configuration variables. See Chapter 18 for more information.

**quote_literal(string)**

Return the given string suitably quoted to be used as a string literal in an SQL statement string. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled. Note that `quote_literal` returns `undef` on `undef` input; if the argument might be `undef`, `quote_nullable` is often more suitable.

**quote_nullable(string)**

Return the given string suitably quoted to be used as a string literal in an SQL statement string; or, if the argument is `undef`, return the unquoted string "NULL". Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled.

**quote_ident(string)**

Return the given string suitably quoted to be used as an identifier in an SQL statement string. Quotes are added only if necessary (i.e., if the string contains non-identifier characters or would be case-folded). Embedded quotes are properly doubled.

**decode_bytea(string)**

Return the unescaped binary data represented by the contents of the given string, which should be `bytea` encoded.

**encode_bytea(string)**

Return the `bytea` encoded form of the binary data contents of the given string.

**encode_array_literal(array)**

Returns the contents of the referenced array as a string in array literal format (see Section 8.15.2). Returns the argument value unaltered if it's not a reference to an array. The delimiter used between elements of the array literal defaults to ", " if a delimiter is not specified or is `undef`.

**encode_typed_literal(value, typename)**

Converts a Perl variable to the value of the data type passed as a second argument and returns a string representation of this value. Correctly handles nested arrays and values of composite types.

**encode_array_constructor(array)**

Returns the contents of the referenced array as a string in array constructor format (see Section 4.2.12). Individual values are quoted using `quote_nullable`. Returns the argument value, quoted using `quote_nullable`, if it's not a reference to an array.
looks_like_number(string)

Returns a true value if the content of the given string looks like a number, according to Perl, returns false otherwise. Returns undef if the argument is undef. Leading and trailing space is ignored. Inf and Infinity are regarded as numbers.

is_array_ref(argument)

Returns a true value if the given argument may be treated as an array reference, that is, if ref of the argument is ARRAY or PostgreSQL::InServer::ARRAY. Returns false otherwise.

### 43.4. Global Values in PL/Perl

You can use the global hash `%_SHARED` to store data, including code references, between function calls for the lifetime of the current session.

Here is a simple example for shared data:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION set_var(name text, val text) RETURNS text AS $$
if ($_SHARED{$_[0]} = $_[1]) {
    return 'ok';
} else {
    return "cannot set shared variable $_[0] to $_[1]";
}
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_var(name text) RETURNS text AS $$
return $_SHARED{$_[0]};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT set_var('sample', 'Hello, PL/Perl! How''s tricks?');
SELECT get_var('sample');
```

Here is a slightly more complicated example using a code reference:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION myfuncs() RETURNS void AS $$
$_SHARED{myquote} = sub {
    my $arg = shift;
    $arg =~ s/\('[Thank you for your email! How can I assist you today?]'/\$1/g;
    return "\$arg";
};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT myfuncs(); /* initializes the function */

/* Set up a function that uses the quote function */

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION use_quote(TEXT) RETURNS text AS $$
my $text_to_quote = shift;
my $qfunc = $_SHARED{myquote};
return &$qfunc($text_to_quote);
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

(You could have replaced the above with the one-liner return $_SHARED{myquote}->($_[0]); at the expense of readability.)
```

For security reasons, PL/Perl executes functions called by any one SQL role in a separate Perl interpreter for that role. This prevents accidental or malicious interference by one user with the behavior of another user's PL/Perl functions. Each such interpreter has its own value of the `%_SHARED` variable and other global state. Thus, two PL/Perl functions will share the same value of `%_SHARED` if and only if they are executed by the same SQL role. In an application wherein a single session executes code under multiple SQL roles (via `SECURITY DEFINER` functions, use of `SET ROLE`, etc) you may need to take explicit steps
to ensure that PL/Perl functions can share data via \%_SHARED. To do that, make sure that functions that should communicate are owned by the same user, and mark them \texttt{SECURITY DEFINER}. You must of course take care that such functions can’t be used to do anything unintended.

### 43.5. Trusted and Untrusted PL/Perl

Normally, PL/Perl is installed as a “trusted” programming language named \texttt{plperl}. In this setup, certain Perl operations are disabled to preserve security. In general, the operations that are restricted are those that interact with the environment. This includes file handle operations, \texttt{require}, and \texttt{use} (for external modules). There is no way to access internals of the database server process or to gain OS-level access with the permissions of the server process, as a C function can do. Thus, any unprivileged database user can be permitted to use this language.

Here is an example of a function that will not work because file system operations are not allowed for security reasons:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION badfunc() RETURNS integer AS $$
my $tmpfile = "/tmp/badfile";
open my $fh, '> ', $tmpfile
    or elog(ERROR, qq{could not open the file "$tmpfile": $!});
print $fh "Testing writing to a file
";
close $fh or elog(ERROR, qq{could not close the file "$tmpfile": $!});
return 1;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

The creation of this function will fail as its use of a forbidden operation will be caught by the validator.

Sometimes it is desirable to write Perl functions that are not restricted. For example, one might want a Perl function that sends mail. To handle these cases, PL/Perl can also be installed as an “untrusted” language (usually called PL/PerlU). In this case the full Perl language is available. When installing the language, the language name \texttt{plperlu} will select the untrusted PL/Perl variant.

The writer of a PL/PerlU function must take care that the function cannot be used to do anything unwanted, since it will be able to do anything that could be done by a user logged in as the database administrator. Note that the database system allows only database superusers to create functions in untrusted languages.

If the above function was created by a superuser using the language \texttt{plperlu}, execution would succeed.

In the same way, anonymous code blocks written in Perl can use restricted operations if the language is specified as \texttt{plperlu} rather than \texttt{plperl}, but the caller must be a superuser.

#### Note

While PL/Perl functions run in a separate Perl interpreter for each SQL role, all PL/PerlU functions executed in a given session run in a single Perl interpreter (which is not any of the ones used for PL/Perl functions). This allows PL/PerlU functions to share data freely, but no communication can occur between PL/Perl and PL/PerlU functions.

#### Note

Perl cannot support multiple interpreters within one process unless it was built with the appropriate flags, namely either \texttt{usemultiplicity} or \texttt{useithreads}. (\texttt{usemultiplicity} is preferred unless you actually need to use threads. For more details, see the \texttt{perlembed} man page.) If PL/Perl is used with a copy of Perl that was not built this way, then it is only possible to have one Perl interpreter per session, and so any one session can only execute either PL/PerlU functions, or PL/Perl functions that are all called by the same SQL role.
43.6. PL/Perl Triggers

PL/Perl can be used to write trigger functions. In a trigger function, the hash reference \$_TD contains information about the current trigger event. \$_TD is a global variable, which gets a separate local value for each invocation of the trigger. The fields of the \$_TD hash reference are:

\$_TD->{new}{foo}
   NEW value of column foo
\$_TD->{old}{foo}
   OLD value of column foo
\$_TD->{name}
   Name of the trigger being called
\$_TD->{event}
   Trigger event: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, or UNKNOWN
\$_TD->{when}
   When the trigger was called: BEFORE, AFTER, INSTEAD OF, or UNKNOWN
\$_TD->{level}
   The trigger level: ROW, STATEMENT, or UNKNOWN
\$_TD->{relid}
   OID of the table on which the trigger fired
\$_TD->{table_name}
   Name of the table on which the trigger fired
\$_TD->{relname}
   Name of the table on which the trigger fired. This has been deprecated, and could be removed in a future release. Please use \$_TD->{table_name} instead.
\$_TD->{table_schema}
   Name of the schema in which the table on which the trigger fired, is
\$_TD->{argc}
   Number of arguments of the trigger function
0{\$_TD->{args}}
   Arguments of the trigger function. Does not exist if \$_TD->{argc} is 0.

Row-level triggers can return one of the following:

return;
   Execute the operation
"SKIP"
   Don't execute the operation
"MODIFY"
   Indicates that the NEW row was modified by the trigger function

Here is an example of a trigger function, illustrating some of the above:
CREATE TABLE test (
    i int,
    v varchar
);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION valid_id() RETURNS trigger AS $$
if @{$TD}{new}{i} >= 100 || @{$TD}{new}{i} <= 0) {
    return "SKIP";    # skip INSERT/UPDATE command
} elsif @{$TD}{new}{v} ne "immortal" {
    @{$TD}{new}{v} .= "(modified by trigger)";
    return "MODIFY";  # modify row and execute INSERT/UPDATE command
} else {
    return;           # execute INSERT/UPDATE command
}$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE TRIGGER test_valid_id_trig
BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE ON test
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION valid_id();

### 43.7. PL/Perl Event Triggers

PL/Perl can be used to write event trigger functions. In an event trigger function, the hash reference $_TD contains information about the current trigger event. $_TD is a global variable, which gets a separate local value for each invocation of the trigger. The fields of the $_TD hash reference are:

$_TD->{event}
   The name of the event the trigger is fired for.

$_TD->{tag}
   The command tag for which the trigger is fired.

The return value of the trigger function is ignored.

Here is an example of an event trigger function, illustrating some of the above:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perlsnitch() RETURNS event_trigger AS $$
elog(NOTICE, "perlsnitch: " . @{$TD}{event} . " . @{$TD}{tag}" . " ");$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER perl_a_snitch
ON ddl_command_start
EXECUTE FUNCTION perlsnitch();

### 43.8. PL/Perl Under the Hood

#### 43.8.1. Configuration

This section lists configuration parameters that affect PL/Perl.

plperl.on_init (string)

Specifies Perl code to be executed when a Perl interpreter is first initialized, before it is specialized for use by plperl or plperlu. The SPI functions are not available when this code is executed. If the code fails with an error it will abort the initialization of the interpreter and propagate out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted.

The Perl code is limited to a single string. Longer code can be placed into a module and loaded by the on_init string. Examples:
Any modules loaded by `plperl.on_init`, either directly or indirectly, will be available for use by `plperl`. This may create a security risk. To see what modules have been loaded you can use:

```sql
DO 'elog(WARNING, join ", ", sort keys $INC)' LANGUAGE plperl;
```

Initialization will happen in the postmaster if the `plperl` library is included in `shared_preload_libraries`, in which case extra consideration should be given to the risk of destabilizing the postmaster. The principal reason for making use of this feature is that Perl modules loaded by `plperl.on_init` need be loaded only at postmaster start, and will be instantly available without loading overhead in individual database sessions. However, keep in mind that the overhead is avoided only for the first Perl interpreter used by a database session — either PL/PerlU, or PL/Perl for the first SQL role that calls a PL/Perl function. Any additional Perl interpreters created in a database session will have to execute `plperl.on_init` afresh. Also, on Windows there will be no savings whatsoever from preloading, since the Perl interpreter created in the postmaster process does not propagate to child processes.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

```
plperl.on_plperl_init (string)
plperl.on_plperlu_init (string)
```

These parameters specify Perl code to be executed when a Perl interpreter is specialized for `plperl` or `plperlu` respectively. This will happen when a PL/Perl or PL/Perlu function is first executed in a database session, or when an additional interpreter has to be created because the other language is called or a PL/Perl function is called by a new SQL role. This follows any initialization done by `plperl.on_init`. The SPI functions are not available when this code is executed. The Perl code in `plperl.on_plperl_init` is executed after “locking down” the interpreter, and thus it can only perform trusted operations.

If the code fails with an error it will abort the initialization and propagate out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. Any actions already done within Perl won’t be undone; however, that interpreter won’t be used again. If the language is used again the initialization will be attempted again within a fresh Perl interpreter.

Only superusers can change these settings. Although these settings can be changed within a session, such changes will not affect Perl interpreters that have already been used to execute functions.

```
plperl.use_strict (boolean)
```

When set true subsequent compilations of PL/Perl functions will have the `strict` pragma enabled. This parameter does not affect functions already compiled in the current session.

### 43.8.2. Limitations and Missing Features

The following features are currently missing from PL/Perl, but they would make welcome contributions.

- PL/Perl functions cannot call each other directly.
- SPI is not yet fully implemented.
- If you are fetching very large data sets using `spi_exec_query`, you should be aware that these will all go into memory. You can avoid this by using `spi_query/spi_fetchrow` as illustrated earlier.

A similar problem occurs if a set-returning function passes a large set of rows back to PostgreSQL via `return`. You can avoid this problem too by instead using `return_next` for each row returned, as shown previously.

- When a session ends normally, not due to a fatal error, any `END` blocks that have been defined are executed. Currently no other actions are performed. Specifically, file handles are not automatically flushed and objects are not automatically destroyed.
Chapter 44. PL/Python — Python Procedural Language

The PL/Python procedural language allows Postgres Pro functions and procedures to be written in the Python language.

To install PL/Python in a particular database, use `CREATE EXTENSION plpythonu` (but see also Section 44.1).

Tip

If a language is installed into `template1`, all subsequently created databases will have the language installed automatically.

PL/Python is only available as an “untrusted” language, meaning it does not offer any way of restricting what users can do in it and is therefore named `plpythonu`. A trusted variant `plpython` might become available in the future if a secure execution mechanism is developed in Python. The writer of a function in untrusted PL/Python must take care that the function cannot be used to do anything unwanted, since it will be able to do anything that could be done by a user logged in as the database administrator. Only superusers can create functions in untrusted languages such as `plpythonu`.

Note

Users of source packages must specially enable the build of PL/Python during the installation process. (Refer to the installation instructions for more information.) Users of binary packages might find PL/Python in a separate subpackage.

44.1. Python 2 vs. Python 3

PL/Python supports both the Python 2 and Python 3 language variants. (The Postgres Pro installation instructions might contain more precise information about the exact supported minor versions of Python.) Because the Python 2 and Python 3 language variants are incompatible in some important aspects, the following naming and transitioning scheme is used by PL/Python to avoid mixing them:

- The PostgreSQL language named `plpython2u` implements PL/Python based on the Python 2 language variant.
- The PostgreSQL language named `plpython3u` implements PL/Python based on the Python 3 language variant.
- The language named `plpythonu` implements PL/Python based on the default Python language variant, which is currently Python 2. (This default is independent of what any local Python installations might consider to be their “default”, for example, what `/usr/bin/python` might be.) The default will probably be changed to Python 3 in a distant future release of Postgres Pro, depending on the progress of the migration to Python 3 in the Python community.

This scheme is analogous to the recommendations in PEP 394 regarding the naming and transitioning of the `python` command.

It depends on the build configuration or the installed packages whether PL/Python for Python 2 or Python 3 or both are available.
This results in the following usage and migration strategy:

- **Existing users and users who are currently not interested in Python 3** use the language name `plpythonu` and don’t have to change anything for the foreseeable future. It is recommended to gradually “future-proof” the code via migration to Python 2.6/2.7 to simplify the eventual migration to Python 3.

  In practice, many PL/Python functions will migrate to Python 3 with few or no changes.

- **Users who know that they have heavily Python 2 dependent code and don’t plan to ever change it** can make use of the `plpython2u` language name. This will continue to work into the very distant future, until Python 2 support might be completely dropped by Postgres Pro.

- **Users who want to dive into Python 3** can use the `plpython3u` language name, which will keep working forever by today's standards. In the distant future, when Python 3 might become the default, they might like to remove the “3” for aesthetic reasons.

- **Daredevils**, who want to build a Python-3-only operating system environment, can change the contents of `plpythonu`'s extension control and script files to make `plpythonu` be equivalent to `plpython3u`, keeping in mind that this would make their installation incompatible with most of the rest of the world.

See also the document *What’s New In Python 3.0* for more information about porting to Python 3.

It is not allowed to use PL/Python based on Python 2 and PL/Python based on Python 3 in the same session, because the symbols in the dynamic modules would clash, which could result in crashes of the Postgres Pro server process. There is a check that prevents mixing Python major versions in a session, which will abort the session if a mismatch is detected. It is possible, however, to use both PL/Python variants in the same database, from separate sessions.

### 44.2. PL/Python Functions

Functions in PL/Python are declared via the standard `CREATE FUNCTION` syntax:

```
CREATE FUNCTION funcname (argument-list)
RETURNS return-type
AS $$
# PL/Python function body
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

The body of a function is simply a Python script. When the function is called, its arguments are passed as elements of the list `args`; named arguments are also passed as ordinary variables to the Python script. Use of named arguments is usually more readable. The result is returned from the Python code in the usual way, with `return` or `yield` (in case of a result-set statement). If you do not provide a return value, Python returns the default `None`. PL/Python translates Python's `None` into the SQL null value. In a procedure, the result from the Python code must be `None` (typically achieved by ending the procedure without a `return` statement or by using a `return` statement without argument); otherwise, an error will be raised.

For example, a function to return the greater of two integers can be defined as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION pymax (a integer, b integer)
RETURNS integer
AS $$
  if a > b:
  ```
return a
return b
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

The Python code that is given as the body of the function definition is transformed into a Python function. For example, the above results in:

def __plpython_procedure_pymax_23456():
    if a > b:
        return a
    return b

assuming that 23456 is the OID assigned to the function by Postgres Pro.

The arguments are set as global variables. Because of the scoping rules of Python, this has the subtle consequence that an argument variable cannot be reassigned inside the function to the value of an expression that involves the variable name itself, unless the variable is redeclared as global in the block. For example, the following won't work:

CREATE FUNCTION pystrip(x text)
RETURNS text
AS $$
x = x.strip()  # error
return x
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

because assigning to x makes x a local variable for the entire block, and so the x on the right-hand side of the assignment refers to a not-yet-assigned local variable x, not the PL/Python function parameter. Using the global statement, this can be made to work:

CREATE FUNCTION pystrip(x text)
RETURNS text
AS $$
global x
x = x.strip()  # ok now
return x
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

But it is advisable not to rely on this implementation detail of PL/Python. It is better to treat the function parameters as read-only.

44.3. Data Values

Generally speaking, the aim of PL/Python is to provide a “natural” mapping between the PostgreSQL and the Python worlds. This informs the data mapping rules described below.

44.3.1. Data Type Mapping

When a PL/Python function is called, its arguments are converted from their PostgreSQL data type to a corresponding Python type:

- PostgreSQL boolean is converted to Python bool.
- PostgreSQL smallint and int are converted to Python int. PostgreSQL bigint and oid are converted to long in Python 2 and to int in Python 3.
- PostgreSQL real and double are converted to Python float.
- PostgreSQL numeric is converted to Python Decimal. This type is imported from the cdecimal package if that is available. Otherwise, decimal.Decimal from the standard library will be used. cdecimal is significantly faster than decimal. In Python 3.3 and up, however, cdecimal has been integrated into the standard library under the name decimal, so there is no longer any difference.
- PostgreSQL bytea is converted to Python str in Python 2 and to bytes in Python 3. In Python 2, the string should be treated as a byte sequence without any character encoding.
• All other data types, including the PostgreSQL character string types, are converted to a Python `str`. In Python 2, this string will be in the Postgres Pro server encoding; in Python 3, it will be a Unicode string like all strings.

• For nonscalar data types, see below.

When a PL/Python function returns, its return value is converted to the function’s declared PostgreSQL return data type as follows:

• When the PostgreSQL return type is `boolean`, the return value will be evaluated for truth according to the Python rules. That is, 0 and empty string are false, but notably ‘f’ is true.

• When the PostgreSQL return type is `bytea`, the return value will be converted to a string (Python 2) or bytes (Python 3) using the respective Python built-ins, with the result being converted to `bytea`.

• For all other PostgreSQL return types, the return value is converted to a string using the Python built-in `str`, and the result is passed to the input function of the PostgreSQL data type. (If the Python value is a `float`, it is converted using the `repr` built-in instead of `str`, to avoid loss of precision.)

Strings in Python 2 are required to be in the Postgres Pro server encoding when they are passed to Postgres Pro. Strings that are not valid in the current server encoding will raise an error, but not all encoding mismatches can be detected, so garbage data can still result when this is not done correctly. Unicode strings are converted to the correct encoding automatically, so it can be safer and more convenient to use those. In Python 3, all strings are Unicode strings.

• For nonscalar data types, see below.

Note that logical mismatches between the declared PostgreSQL return type and the Python data type of the actual return object are not flagged; the value will be converted in any case.

### 44.3.2. Null, None

If an SQL null value is passed to a function, the argument value will appear as `None` in Python. For example, the function definition of `pymax` shown in Section 44.2 will return the wrong answer for null inputs. We could add `STRICT` to the function definition to make Postgres Pro do something more reasonable: if a null value is passed, the function will not be called at all, but will just return a null result automatically. Alternatively, we could check for null inputs in the function body:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION pymax (a integer, b integer)
RETURNS integer
AS $$
if (a is None) or (b is None):
    return None
if a > b:
    return a
return b
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

As shown above, to return an SQL null value from a PL/Python function, return the value `None`. This can be done whether the function is strict or not.

### 44.3.3. Arrays, Lists

SQL array values are passed into PL/Python as a Python list. To return an SQL array value out of a PL/Python function, return a Python list:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION return_arr()
RETURNS int[]
AS $$
return [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```
Multidimensional arrays are passed into PL/Python as nested Python lists. A 2-dimensional array is a list of lists, for example. When returning a multi-dimensional SQL array out of a PL/Python function, the inner lists at each level must all be of the same size. For example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION test_type_conversion_array_int4(x int4[]) RETURNS int4[] AS $$
plpy.info(x, type(x))
return x
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

SELECT * FROM test_type_conversion_array_int4(ARRAY[[1,2,3], [4,5,6]]);
INFO:  ([[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]], <type 'list'>)
```

Other Python sequences, like tuples, are also accepted for backwards-compatibility with PostgreSQL versions 9.6 and below, when multi-dimensional arrays were not supported. However, they are always treated as one-dimensional arrays, because they are ambiguous with composite types. For the same reason, when a composite type is used in a multi-dimensional array, it must be represented by a tuple, rather than a list.

Note that in Python, strings are sequences, which can have undesirable effects that might be familiar to Python programmers:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION return_str_arr()
RETURNS varchar[]
AS $$
return "hello"
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

SELECT return_str_arr();
```

### 44.3.4. Composite Types

Composite-type arguments are passed to the function as Python mappings. The element names of the mapping are the attribute names of the composite type. If an attribute in the passed row has the null value, it has the value `None` in the mapping. Here is an example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE employee ( 
    name text, 
    salary integer, 
    age integer 
);

CREATE FUNCTION overpaid (e employee) 
    RETURNS boolean
AS $$
    if e["salary"] > 200000: 
        return True 
    if (e["age"] < 30) and (e["salary"] > 100000):
```
There are multiple ways to return row or composite types from a Python function. The following examples assume we have:

```
CREATE TYPE named_value AS (  
    name   text,
    value  integer
);
```

A composite result can be returned as a:

- **Sequence type** (a tuple or list, but not a set because it is not indexable)

  Returned sequence objects must have the same number of items as the composite result type has fields. The item with index 0 is assigned to the first field of the composite type, 1 to the second and so on. For example:

  ```
  CREATE FUNCTION make_pair (name text, value integer)  
  RETURNS named_value  
  AS $$  
  return ( name, value )  
  # or alternatively, as tuple: return [ name, value ]  
  $$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
  ```

  To return an SQL null for any column, insert `None` at the corresponding position.

  When an array of composite types is returned, it cannot be returned as a list, because it is ambiguous whether the Python list represents a composite type, or another array dimension.

- **Mapping (dictionary)**

  The value for each result type column is retrieved from the mapping with the column name as key. Example:

  ```
  CREATE FUNCTION make_pair (name text, value integer)  
  RETURNS named_value  
  AS $$  
  return { "name": name, "value": value }  
  $$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
  ```

  Any extra dictionary key/value pairs are ignored. Missing keys are treated as errors. To return an SQL null value for any column, insert `None` with the corresponding column name as the key.

- **Object** (any object providing method `__getattr__`)

  This works the same as a mapping. Example:

  ```
  CREATE FUNCTION make_pair (name text, value integer)  
  RETURNS named_value  
  AS $$  
  class named_value:  
    def __init__ (self, n, v):  
      self.name = n  
      self.value = v  
    return named_value(name, value)
  # or simply  
  class nv: pass  
  nv.name = name  
  nv.value = value  
  return nv
  ```
$$ \text{LANGUAGE plpythonu;}$$

**Functions with \texttt{OUT} parameters are also supported. For example:**

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION multiout_simple(OUT i integer, OUT j integer) AS $$
return (1, 2)
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

```sql
SELECT * FROM multiout_simple();
```

**Output parameters of procedures are passed back the same way. For example:**

```sql
CREATE PROCEDURE python_triple(INOUT a integer, INOUT b integer) AS $$
return (a * 3, b * 3)
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

```sql
CALL python_triple(5, 10);
```

### 44.3.5. Set-Returning Functions

A PL/Python function can also return sets of scalar or composite types. There are several ways to achieve this because the returned object is internally turned into an iterator. The following examples assume we have composite type:

```sql
CREATE TYPE greeting AS (  
 how text,  
 who text
);
```

**A set result can be returned from a:**

- **Sequence type (tuple, list, set)**

  ```sql
  CREATE FUNCTION greet (how text)  
  RETURNS SETOF greeting  
  AS $$
  # return tuple containing lists as composite types  
  # all other combinations work also  
  return ( [ how, "World" ], [ how, "PostgreSQL" ], [ how, "PL/Python" ] )
  $$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
  ```

- **Iterator (any object providing \texttt{__iter__} and \texttt{next} methods)**

  ```sql
  CREATE FUNCTION greet (how text)  
  RETURNS SETOF greeting  
  AS $$
  class producer:  
  def __init__ (self, how, who):
  self.how = how  
  self.who = who  
  self.ndx = -1

  def __iter__ (self):
  return self

  def next (self):
  self.ndx += 1
  if self.ndx == len(self.who):
  raise StopIteration
  return ( self.how, self.who[self.ndx] )

  return producer(how, [ "World", "PostgreSQL", "PL/Python" ])
  $$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
  ```
Generator (yield)

CREATE FUNCTION greet (how text)
    RETURNS SETOF greeting
AS $$
    for who in [ "World", "PostgreSQL", "PL/Python" ]:
        yield ( how, who )
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

Set-returning functions with OUT parameters (using RETURNS SETOF record) are also supported. For example:

CREATE FUNCTION multiout_simple_setof(n integer, OUT integer, OUT integer) RETURNS SETOF record AS $$
    return [(1, 2)] * n
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

SELECT * FROM multiout_simple_setof(3);

44.4. Sharing Data

The global dictionary SD is available to store private data between repeated calls to the same function. The global dictionary GD is public data, that is available to all Python functions within a session; use with care.

Each function gets its own execution environment in the Python interpreter, so that global data and function arguments from myfunc are not available to myfunc2. The exception is the data in the GD dictionary, as mentioned above.

44.5. Anonymous Code Blocks

PL/Python also supports anonymous code blocks called with the DO statement:

DO $$
    # PL/Python code
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

An anonymous code block receives no arguments, and whatever value it might return is discarded. Otherwise it behaves just like a function.

44.6. Trigger Functions

When a function is used as a trigger, the dictionary TD contains trigger-related values:

TD["event"]
contains the event as a string: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or TRUNCATE.

TD["when"]
contains one of BEFORE, AFTER, or INSTEAD OF.

TD["level"]
contains ROW or STATEMENT.

TD["new"]
TD["old"]
For a row-level trigger, one or both of these fields contain the respective trigger rows, depending on the trigger event.

TD["name"]
contains the trigger name.
TD["table_name"]
contains the name of the table on which the trigger occurred.

TD["table_schema"]
contains the schema of the table on which the trigger occurred.

TD["relid"]
contains the OID of the table on which the trigger occurred.

TD["args"]
If the CREATE TRIGGER command included arguments, they are available in TD["args"][0] to TD["args"][n-1].

If TD["when"] is BEFORE or INSTEAD OF and TD["level"] is ROW, you can return None or "OK" from the Python function to indicate the row is unmodified, "SKIP" to abort the event, or if TD["event"] is INSERT or UPDATE you can return "MODIFY" to indicate you've modified the new row. Otherwise the return value is ignored.

44.7. Database Access

The PL/Python language module automatically imports a Python module called plpy. The functions and constants in this module are available to you in the Python code as plpy.foo.

44.7.1. Database Access Functions

The plpy module provides several functions to execute database commands:

plpy.execute(query [, max-rows])

Calling plpy.execute with a query string and an optional row limit argument causes that query to be run and the result to be returned in a result object.

The result object emulates a list or dictionary object. The result object can be accessed by row number and column name. For example:

rv = plpy.execute("SELECT * FROM my_table", 5)

returns up to 5 rows from my_table. If my_table has a column my_column, it would be accessed as:

foo = rv[i]["my_column"]

The number of rows returned can be obtained using the built-in len function.

The result object has these additional methods:

nrows()
Returns the number of rows processed by the command. Note that this is not necessarily the same as the number of rows returned. For example, an UPDATE command will set this value but won't return any rows (unless RETURNING is used).

status()

The SPI_execute() return value.

colnames()
coltypes()
coltypmods()

Return a list of column names, list of column type OIDs, and list of type-specific type modifiers for the columns, respectively.
These methods raise an exception when called on a result object from a command that did not produce a result set, e.g., `UPDATE` without `RETURNING`, or `DROP TABLE`. But it is OK to use these methods on a result set containing zero rows.

___str__(___)

The standard `__str__` method is defined so that it is possible for example to debug query execution results using `plpy.debug(rv)`.

The result object can be modified.

Note that calling `plpy.execute` will cause the entire result set to be read into memory. Only use that function when you are sure that the result set will be relatively small. If you don't want to risk excessive memory usage when fetching large results, use `plpy.cursor` rather than `plpy.execute`.

`plpy.prepare(query [, argtypes])`
`plpy.execute(plan [, arguments [, max-rows]])`

`plpy.prepare` prepares the execution plan for a query. It is called with a query string and a list of parameter types, if you have parameter references in the query. For example:

```python
plan = plpy.prepare("SELECT last_name FROM my_users WHERE first_name = $1", ["text"])
```

text is the type of the variable you will be passing for $1. The second argument is optional if you don't want to pass any parameters to the query.

After preparing a statement, you use a variant of the function `plpy.execute` to run it:

```python
rv = plpy.execute(plan, ["name"], 5)
```

Pass the plan as the first argument (instead of the query string), and a list of values to substitute into the query as the second argument. The second argument is optional if the query does not expect any parameters. The third argument is the optional row limit as before.

Alternatively, you can call the `execute` method on the plan object:

```python
rv = plan.execute( ["name"], 5)
```

Query parameters and result row fields are converted between PostgreSQL and Python data types as described in Section 44.3.

When you prepare a plan using the PL/Python module it is automatically saved. Read the SPI documentation (Chapter 45) for a description of what this means. In order to make effective use of this across function calls one needs to use one of the persistent storage dictionaries `SD` or `GD` (see Section 44.4). For example:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION usesavedplan() RETURNS trigger AS $$
if "plan" in SD:
    plan = SD["plan"]
else:
    plan = plpy.prepare("SELECT 1")
SD["plan"] = plan
# rest of function
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

`plpy.cursor(query)`
`plpy.cursor(plan [, arguments])`

The `plpy.cursor` function accepts the same arguments as `plpy.execute` (except for the row limit) and returns a cursor object, which allows you to process large result sets in smaller chunks. As with `plpy.execute`, either a query string or a plan object along with a list of arguments can be used, or the `cursor` function can be called as a method of the plan object.
The cursor object provides a `fetch` method that accepts an integer parameter and returns a result object. Each time you call `fetch`, the returned object will contain the next batch of rows, never larger than the parameter value. Once all rows are exhausted, `fetch` starts returning an empty result object. Cursor objects also provide an *iterator interface*, yielding one row at a time until all rows are exhausted. Data fetched that way is not returned as result objects, but rather as dictionaries, each dictionary corresponding to a single result row.

An example of two ways of processing data from a large table is:

```plpython
CREATE FUNCTION count_odd_iterator() RETURNS integer AS $$
odd = 0
for row in plpy.cursor("select num from largetable"):  
    if row['num'] % 2:
        odd += 1
return odd
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

CREATE FUNCTION count_odd_fetch(batch_size integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
odd = 0
cursor = plpy.cursor("select num from largetable")
while True:
    rows = cursor.fetch(batch_size)
    if not rows:
        break
    for row in rows:
        if row['num'] % 2:
            odd += 1
return odd
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

CREATE FUNCTION count_odd_prepared() RETURNS integer AS $$
odd = 0
plan = plpy.prepare("select num from largetable where num % $1 <> 0", ["integer"])  
rows = list(plpy.cursor(plan, [2]))  # or: = list(plan.cursor([2]))
return len(rows)
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

Cursors are automatically disposed of. But if you want to explicitly release all resources held by a cursor, use the `close` method. Once closed, a cursor cannot be fetched from anymore.

**Tip**

Do not confuse objects created by `plpy.cursor` with DB-API cursors as defined by the *Python Database API specification*. They don’t have anything in common except for the name.

### 44.7.2. Trapping Errors

Functions accessing the database might encounter errors, which will cause them to abort and raise an exception. Both `plpy.execute` and `plpy.prepare` can raise an instance of a subclass of `plpy.SPIError`, which by default will terminate the function. This error can be handled just like any other Python exception, by using the `try/except` construct. For example:

```plpython
CREATE FUNCTION try_adding_joe() RETURNS text AS $$
try:
    plpy.execute("INSERT INTO users(username) VALUES ('joe')")
except plpy.SPIError:
```

1167
return "something went wrong"
else:
    return "Joe added"

$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

The actual class of the exception being raised corresponds to the specific condition that caused the error. Refer to Table A.1 for a list of possible conditions. The module plpy.spiexceptions defines an exception class for each Postgres Pro condition, deriving their names from the condition name. For instance, division_by_zero becomes DivisionByZero, unique_violation becomes UniqueViolation, fdw_error becomes FdwError, and so on. Each of these exception classes inherits from SPIError. This separation makes it easier to handle specific errors, for instance:

CREATE FUNCTION insert_fraction(numerator int, denominator int) RETURNS text AS $$
from plpy import spiexceptions
try:
    plan = plpy.prepare("INSERT INTO fractions (frac) VALUES ($1 / $2)", ["int", "int"])
    plpy.execute(plan, [numerator, denominator])
except spiexceptions.DivisionByZero:
    return "denominator cannot equal zero"
except spiexceptions.UniqueViolation:
    return "already have that fraction"
except plpy.SPIError as e:
    return "other error, SQLSTATE %s" % e.sqlstate
else:
    return "fraction inserted"
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

Note that because all exceptions from the plpy.spiexceptions module inherit from SPIError, an except clause handling it will catch any database access error.

As an alternative way of handling different error conditions, you can catch the SPIError exception and determine the specific error condition inside the except block by looking at the sqlstate attribute of the exception object. This attribute is a string value containing the “SQLSTATE” error code. This approach provides approximately the same functionality.

### 44.8. Explicit Subtransactions

Recovering from errors caused by database access as described in Section 44.7.2 can lead to an undesirable situation where some operations succeed before one of them fails, and after recovering from that error the data is left in an inconsistent state. PL/Python offers a solution to this problem in the form of explicit subtransactions.

#### 44.8.1. Subtransaction Context Managers

Consider a function that implements a transfer between two accounts:

CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds() RETURNS void AS $$
try:
    plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100 WHERE account_name = 'joe'")
    plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100 WHERE account_name = 'mary'")
except plpy.SPIError as e:
    result = "error transferring funds: %s" % e.args
else:
    result = "funds transferred correctly"
plan = plpy.prepare("INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ($1)", ["text"])
plpy.execute(plan, [result])
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
If the second UPDATE statement results in an exception being raised, this function will report the error, but the result of the first UPDATE will nevertheless be committed. In other words, the funds will be withdrawn from Joe’s account, but will not be transferred to Mary’s account.

To avoid such issues, you can wrap your plpy.execute calls in an explicit subtransaction. The plpy module provides a helper object to manage explicit subtransactions that gets created with the plpy.subtransaction() function. Objects created by this function implement the context manager interface. Using explicit subtransactions we can rewrite our function as:

```plpython
CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds2() RETURNS void AS $$
  try:
    with plpy.subtransaction():
      plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100 WHERE account_name = 'joe'")
      plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100 WHERE account_name = 'mary'")
  except plpy.SPIError as e:
    result = "error transferring funds: %s" % e.args
  else:
    result = "funds transferred correctly"
  plan = plpy.prepare("INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ($1)", ["text"])
  plpy.execute(plan, [result])
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

Note that the use of try/catch is still required. Otherwise the exception would propagate to the top of the Python stack and would cause the whole function to abort with a Postgres Pro error, so that the operations table would not have any row inserted into it. The subtransaction context manager does not trap errors, it only assures that all database operations executed inside its scope will be atomically committed or rolled back. A rollback of the subtransaction block occurs on any kind of exception exit, not only ones caused by errors originating from database access. A regular Python exception raised inside an explicit subtransaction block would also cause the subtransaction to be rolled back.

### 44.8.2. Older Python Versions

Context managers syntax using the with keyword is available by default in Python 2.6. For compatibility with older Python versions, you can call the subtransaction manager’s __enter__ and __exit__ functions using the enter and exit convenience aliases. The example function that transfers funds could be written as:

```plpython
CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds_old() RETURNS void AS $$
  try:
    subxact = plpy.subtransaction()
    subxact.enter()
    try:
      plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100 WHERE account_name = 'joe'")
      plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100 WHERE account_name = 'mary'")
    except :
      import sys
      subxact.exit(*sys.exc_info())
      raise
    else:
      subxact.exit(None, None, None)
  except plpy.SPIError as e:
    result = "error transferring funds: %s" % e.args
  else:
    result = "funds transferred correctly"
  plan = plpy.prepare("INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ($1)", ["text"])
$$
```

1169
44.9. Transaction Management

In a procedure called from the top level or an anonymous code block (DO command) called from the top level it is possible to control transactions. To commit the current transaction, call `plpy.commit()`. To roll back the current transaction, call `plpy.rollback()`.

(Note that it is not possible to run the SQL commands COMMIT or ROLLBACK via `plpy.execute` or similar. It has to be done using these functions.) After a transaction is ended, a new transaction is automatically started, so there is no separate function for that.

Here is an example:

```sql
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test1()
LANGUAGE plpythonu
AS $$
for i in range(0, 10):
    plpy.execute("INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES (%d)" % i)
    if i % 2 == 0:
        plpy.commit()
    else:
        plpy.rollback()
$$;

CALL transaction_test1();
```

Transactions cannot be ended when an explicit subtransaction is active.

44.10. Utility Functions

The `plpy` module also provides the functions

- `plpy.debug(msg, **kwargs)`
- `plpy.log(msg, **kwargs)`
- `plpy.info(msg, **kwargs)`
- `plpy.notice(msg, **kwargs)`
- `plpy.warning(msg, **kwargs)`
- `plpy.error(msg, **kwargs)`
- `plpy.fatal(msg, **kwargs)`

`plpy.error` and `plpy.fatal` actually raise a Python exception which, if uncaught, propagates out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. `raise plpy.Error(msg)` and `raise plpy.Fatal(msg)` are equivalent to calling `plpy.error(msg)` and `plpy.fatal(msg)`, respectively but the `raise` form does not allow passing keyword arguments. The other functions only generate messages of different priority levels. Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the `log_min_messages` and `client_min_messages` configuration variables. See Chapter 18 for more information.

The `msg` argument is given as a positional argument. For backward compatibility, more than one positional argument can be given. In that case, the string representation of the tuple of positional arguments becomes the message reported to the client.

The following keyword-only arguments are accepted:

- `detail`
- `hint`
- `sqlstate`
- `schema_name`
- `table_name`
The string representation of the objects passed as keyword-only arguments is used to enrich the messages reported to the client. For example:

```plpythonu
CREATE FUNCTION raise_custom_exception() RETURNS void AS $$
plpy.error("custom exception message",
          detail="some info about exception",
          hint="hint for users")
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

```sql
=# SELECT raise_custom_exception();
ERROR:  plpy.Error: custom exception message
DETAIL:  some info about exception
HINT:  hint for users
CONTEXT:  Traceback (most recent call last):
  PL/Python function "raise_custom_exception", line 4, in <module>
          hint="hint for users")
PL/Python function "raise_custom_exception"
```

Another set of utility functions are `plpy.quote_literal(string)`, `plpy.quote_nullable(string)`, and `plpy.quote_ident(string)`. They are equivalent to the built-in quoting functions described in Section 9.4. They are useful when constructing ad-hoc queries. A PL/Python equivalent of dynamic SQL from Example 41.1 would be:

```plpythonu
plpy.execute("UPDATE tbl SET %s = %s WHERE key = %s" %
              (plpy.quote_ident(colname),
               plpy.quote_nullable(newvalue),
               plpy.quote_literal(keyvalue)))
```

## 44.11. Environment Variables

Some of the environment variables that are accepted by the Python interpreter can also be used to affect PL/Python behavior. They would need to be set in the environment of the main Postgres Pro server process, for example in a start script. The available environment variables depend on the version of Python; see the Python documentation for details. At the time of this writing, the following environment variables have an affect on PL/Python, assuming an adequate Python version:

- PYTHONHOME
- PYTHONPATH
- PYTHON2K
- PYTHONOPTIMIZE
- PYTHONDEBUG
- PYTHONVERBOSE
- PYTHONCASEOK
- PYTHONDONTWRITEBYTECODE
- PYTHONIOENCODING
- PYTHONUSERBASE
- PYTHONHASHSEED

(It appears to be a Python implementation detail beyond the control of PL/Python that some of the environment variables listed on the python man page are only effective in a command-line interpreter and not an embedded Python interpreter.)
Chapter 45. Server Programming Interface

The Server Programming Interface (SPI) gives writers of user-defined C functions the ability to run SQL commands inside their functions or procedures. SPI is a set of interface functions to simplify access to the parser, planner, and executor. SPI also does some memory management.

Note

The available procedural languages provide various means to execute SQL commands from functions. Most of these facilities are based on SPI, so this documentation might be of use for users of those languages as well.

Note that if a command invoked via SPI fails, then control will not be returned to your C function. Rather, the transaction or subtransaction in which your C function executes will be rolled back. (This might seem surprising given that the SPI functions mostly have documented error-return conventions. Those conventions only apply for errors detected within the SPI functions themselves, however.) It is possible to recover control after an error by establishing your own subtransaction surrounding SPI calls that might fail.

SPI functions return a nonnegative result on success (either via a returned integer value or in the global variable SPI_result, as described below). On error, a negative result or NULL will be returned.

Source code files that use SPI must include the header file executor/spi.h.

45.1. Interface Functions
**SPI_connect**

SPI_connect, SPI_connect_ext — connect a C function to the SPI manager

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_connect(void)
int SPI_connect_ext(int options)
```

**Description**

SPI_connect opens a connection from a C function invocation to the SPI manager. You must call this function if you want to execute commands through SPI. Some utility SPI functions can be called from unconnected C functions.

SPI_connect_ext does the same but has an argument that allows passing option flags. Currently, the following option values are available:

- **SPI_OPT_NONATOMIC**
  
  Sets the SPI connection to be nonatomic, which means that transaction control calls `SPI_commit`, `SPI_rollback`, and `SPI_start_transaction` are allowed. Otherwise, calling these functions will result in an immediate error.

`SPI_connect()` is equivalent to `SPI_connect_ext(0)`.

**Return Value**

- **SPI_OK_CONNECT**
  
  on success

- **SPI_ERROR_CONNECT**
  
  on error
**SPI_finish**

SPI_finish — disconnect a C function from the SPI manager

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_finish(void)
```

**Description**

SPI_finish closes an existing connection to the SPI manager. You must call this function after completing the SPI operations needed during your C function’s current invocation. You do not need to worry about making this happen, however, if you abort the transaction via `elog(ERROR)`. In that case SPI will clean itself up automatically.

**Return Value**

- `SPI_OK_FINISH` if properly disconnected
- `SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED` if called from an unconnected C function
SPI_execute

SPI_execute — execute a command

Synopsis

int SPI_execute(const char * command, bool read_only, long count)

Description

SPI_execute executes the specified SQL command for count rows. If read_only is true, the command must be read-only, and execution overhead is somewhat reduced.

This function can only be called from a connected C function.

If count is zero then the command is executed for all rows that it applies to. If count is greater than zero, then no more than count rows will be retrieved; execution stops when the count is reached, much like adding a LIMIT clause to the query. For example,

SPI_execute("SELECT * FROM foo", true, 5);

will retrieve at most 5 rows from the table. Note that such a limit is only effective when the command actually returns rows. For example,

SPI_execute("INSERT INTO foo SELECT * FROM bar", false, 5);

inserts all rows from bar, ignoring the count parameter. However, with

SPI_execute("INSERT INTO foo SELECT * FROM bar RETURNING *", false, 5);

at most 5 rows would be inserted, since execution would stop after the fifth RETURNING result row is retrieved.

You can pass multiple commands in one string; SPI_execute returns the result for the command executed last. The count limit applies to each command separately (even though only the last result will actually be returned). The limit is not applied to any hidden commands generated by rules.

When read_only is false, SPI_execute increments the command counter and computes a new snapshot before executing each command in the string. The snapshot does not actually change if the current transaction isolation level is SERIALIZABLE or REPEATABLE READ, but in READ COMMITTED mode the snapshot update allows each command to see the results of newly committed transactions from other sessions. This is essential for consistent behavior when the commands are modifying the database.

When read_only is true, SPI_execute does not update either the snapshot or the command counter, and it allows only plain SELECT commands to appear in the command string. The commands are executed using the snapshot previously established for the surrounding query. This execution mode is somewhat faster than the read/write mode due to eliminating per-command overhead. It also allows genuinely stable functions to be built: since successive executions will all use the same snapshot, there will be no change in the results.

It is generally unwise to mix read-only and read-write commands within a single function using SPI; that could result in very confusing behavior, since the read-only queries would not see the results of any database updates done by the read-write queries.

The actual number of rows for which the (last) command was executed is returned in the global variable SPI_processed. If the return value of the function is SPI_OK_SELECT, SPI_OK_INSERT_RETURNING, SPI_OK_DELETE_RETURNING, or SPI_OK_UPDATE_RETURNING, then you can use the global pointer SPITupleTable *SPI_tuptable to access the result rows. Some utility commands (such as EXPLAIN) also return row sets, and SPI_tuptable will contain the result in these cases too. Some utility commands (COPY, CREATE TABLE AS) don't return a row set, so SPI_tuptable is NULL, but they still return the number of rows processed in SPI_processed.
The structure `SPITupleTable` is defined thus:

```c
typedef struct SPITupleTable {
    /* Public members */
    TupleDesc tupdesc;        /* tuple descriptor */
    HeapTuple *vals;           /* array of tuples */
    uint64 numvals;        /* number of valid tuples */

    /* Private members, not intended for external callers */
    uint64 alloced;        /* allocated length of vals array */
    MemoryContext tuptabcxt;    /* memory context of result table */
    slist_node next;           /* link for internal bookkeeping */
    SubTransactionId subid;     /* subxact in which tuptable was created */
} SPITupleTable;
```

The fields `tupdesc`, `vals`, and `numvals` can be used by SPI callers; the remaining fields are internal. `vals` is an array of pointers to rows. The number of rows is given by `numvals` (for somewhat historical reasons, this count is also returned in `SPI_processed`). `tupdesc` is a row descriptor which you can pass to SPI functions dealing with rows.

`SPI_finish` frees all `SPITupleTable`s allocated during the current C function. You can free a particular result table earlier, if you are done with it, by calling `SPI_freetuptable`.

**Arguments**

- `const char * command`
  
  string containing command to execute

- `bool read_only`
  
  true for read-only execution

- `long count`
  
  maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

**Return Value**

If the execution of the command was successful then one of the following (nonnegative) values will be returned:

- `SPI_OK_SELECT` if a `SELECT` (but not `SELECT INTO`) was executed

- `SPI_OK_SELINTO` if a `SELECT INTO` was executed

- `SPI_OK_INSERT` if an `INSERT` was executed

- `SPI_OK_DELETE` if a `DELETE` was executed

- `SPI_OK_UPDATE` if an `UPDATE` was executed

- `SPI_OK_INSERT_RETURNING` if an `INSERT RETURNING` was executed
SPI_OK_DELETE_RETURNING
   if a DELETE RETURNING was executed

SPI_OK_UPDATE_RETURNING
   if an UPDATE RETURNING was executed

SPI_OK_UTILITY
   if a utility command (e.g., CREATE TABLE) was executed

SPI_OK_REWRITTEN
   if the command was rewritten into another kind of command (e.g., UPDATE became an INSERT) by a rule.

On error, one of the following negative values is returned:

SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT
   if command is NULL or count is less than 0

SPI_ERROR_COPY
   if COPY TO stdout or COPY FROM stdin was attempted

SPI_ERROR_TRANSACTION
   if a transaction manipulation command was attempted (BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK, SAVEPOINT, PREPARE TRANSACTION, COMMIT PREPARED, ROLLBACK PREPARED, or any variant thereof)

SPI_ERROR_OPUNKNOWN
   if the command type is unknown (shouldn't happen)

SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED
   if called from an unconnected C function

Notes
All SPI query-execution functions set both SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable (just the pointer, not the contents of the structure). Save these two global variables into local C function variables if you need to access the result table of SPI_execute or another query-execution function across later calls.
**SPI_exec**

SPI_exec — execute a read/write command

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_exec(const char * command, long count)
```

**Description**

SPI_exec is the same as SPI_execute, with the latter's read_only parameter always taken as false.

**Arguments**

- `const char * command`
  - string containing command to execute

- `long count`
  - maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

**Return Value**

See SPI_execute.
SPI_execute_extended

SPI_execute_extended — execute a command with out-of-line parameters

Synopsis

```c
int SPI_execute_extended(const char *command,
                         const SPIExecuteOptions *options)
```

Description

*SPI_execute_extended* executes a command that might include references to externally supplied parameters. The command text refers to a parameter as $n$, and the *options->params* object (if supplied) provides values and type information for each such symbol. Various execution options can be specified in the *options* struct, too.

The *options->params* object should normally mark each parameter with the PARAM_FLAG_CONST flag, since a one-shot plan is always used for the query.

If *options->dest* is not NULL, then result tuples are passed to that object as they are generated by the executor, instead of being accumulated in SPI_tuptable. Using a caller-supplied DestReceiver object is particularly helpful for queries that might generate many tuples, since the data can be processed on-the-fly instead of being accumulated in memory.

Arguments

- `const char * command`
  - command string
- `const SPIExecuteOptions * options`
  - struct containing optional arguments

Callers should always zero out the entire *options* struct, then fill whichever fields they want to set. This ensures forward compatibility of code, since any fields that are added to the struct in future will be defined to behave backwards-compatibly if they are zero. The currently available *options* fields are:

- `ParamListInfo params`
  - data structure containing query parameter types and values; NULL if none
- `bool read_only`
  - true for read-only execution
- `bool allow_nonatomic`
  - true allows non-atomic execution of CALL and DO statements
- `bool must_return_tuples`
  - if true, raise error if the query is not of a kind that returns tuples (this does not forbid the case where it happens to return zero tuples)
- `uint64 tcount`
  - maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit
- `DestReceiver * dest`
  - DestReceiver object that will receive any tuples emitted by the query; if NULL, result tuples are accumulated into a SPI_tuptable structure, as in SPI_execute
ResourceOwner owner

This field is present for consistency with SPI_execute_plan_extended, but it is ignored, since the plan used by SPI_execute_extended is never saved.

Return Value

The return value is the same as for SPI_execute.

When options->dest is NULL, SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable are set as in SPI_execute. When options->dest is not NULL, SPI_processed is set to zero and SPI_tuptable is set to NULL. If a tuple count is required, the caller's DestReceiver object must calculate it.
**SPI_execute_with_args**

SPI_execute_with_args — execute a command with out-of-line parameters

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_execute_with_args(const char *command,
    int nargs, Oid *argtypes,
    Datum *values, const char *nulls,
    bool read_only, long count)
```

**Description**

SPI_execute_with_args executes a command that might include references to externally supplied parameters. The command text refers to a parameter as $n$, and the call specifies data types and values for each such symbol. read_only and count have the same interpretation as in SPI_execute.

The main advantage of this routine compared to SPI_execute is that data values can be inserted into the command without tedious quoting/escaping, and thus with much less risk of SQL-injection attacks.

Similar results can be achieved with SPI_prepare followed by SPI_execute_plan; however, when using this function the query plan is always customized to the specific parameter values provided. For one-time query execution, this function should be preferred. If the same command is to be executed with many different parameters, either method might be faster, depending on the cost of re-planning versus the benefit of custom plans.

**Arguments**

- **const char * command**
  - command string

- **int nargs**
  - number of input parameters ($1, $2, etc.)

- **Oid * argtypes**
  - an array of length nargs, containing the OIDs of the data types of the parameters

- **Datum * values**
  - an array of length nargs, containing the actual parameter values

- **const char * nulls**
  - an array of length nargs, describing which parameters are null

  If nulls is NULL then SPI_execute_with_args assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the nulls array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding values entry doesn't matter.) Note that nulls is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

- **bool read_only**
  - true for read-only execution

- **long count**
  - maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit
Return Value

The return value is the same as for SPI_execute.

SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable are set as in SPI_execute if successful.
**SPI_prepare**

SPI_prepare — prepare a statement, without executing it yet

**Synopsis**

SPIPlanPtr SPI_prepare(const char * command, int nargs, Oid * argtypes)

**Description**

SPI_prepare creates and returns a prepared statement for the specified command, but doesn't execute the command. The prepared statement can later be executed repeatedly using SPI_execute_plan.

When the same or a similar command is to be executed repeatedly, it is generally advantageous to perform parse analysis only once, and might furthermore be advantageous to re-use an execution plan for the command. SPI_prepare converts a command string into a prepared statement that encapsulates the results of parse analysis. The prepared statement also provides a place for caching an execution plan if it is found that generating a custom plan for each execution is not helpful.

A prepared command can be generalized by writing parameters ($1, $2, etc.) in place of what would be constants in a normal command. The actual values of the parameters are then specified when SPI_execute_plan is called. This allows the prepared command to be used over a wider range of situations than would be possible without parameters.

The statement returned by SPI_prepare can be used only in the current invocation of the C function, since SPI_finish frees memory allocated for such a statement. But the statement can be saved for longer using the functions SPI_keepplan or SPI_saveplan.

**Arguments**

const char * command  
command string

int nargs  
number of input parameters ($1, $2, etc.)

Oid * argtypes  
pointer to an array containing the OIDs of the data types of the parameters

**Return Value**

SPI_prepare returns a non-null pointer to an SPIPlan, which is an opaque struct representing a prepared statement. On error, NULL will be returned, and SPI_result will be set to one of the same error codes used by SPI_execute, except that it is set to SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT if command is NULL, or if nargs is less than 0, or if nargs is greater than 0 and argtypes is NULL.

**Notes**

If no parameters are defined, a generic plan will be created at the first use of SPI_execute_plan, and used for all subsequent executions as well. If there are parameters, the first few uses of SPI_execute_plan will generate custom plans that are specific to the supplied parameter values. After enough uses of the same prepared statement, SPI_execute_plan will build a generic plan, and if that is not too much more expensive than the custom plans, it will start using the generic plan instead of re-planning each time. If this default behavior is unsuitable, you can alter it by passing the CURSOR_OPT_GENERIC_PLAN or CURSOR_OPT_CUSTOM_PLAN flag to SPI_prepare_cursor, to force use of generic or custom plans respectively.

Although the main point of a prepared statement is to avoid repeated parse analysis and planning of the statement, Postgres Pro will force re-analysis and re-planning of the statement before using it whenever
database objects used in the statement have undergone definitional (DDL) changes since the previous use of the prepared statement. Also, if the value of search_path changes from one use to the next, the statement will be re-parsed using the new search_path. (This latter behavior is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3.) See PREPARE for more information about the behavior of prepared statements.

This function should only be called from a connected C function.

SPIPlanPtr is declared as a pointer to an opaque struct type in spi.h. It is unwise to try to access its contents directly, as that makes your code much more likely to break in future revisions of Postgres Pro.

The name SPIPlanPtr is somewhat historical, since the data structure no longer necessarily contains an execution plan.
**SPI_prepare_cursor**

SPI_prepare_cursor — prepare a statement, without executing it yet

**Synopsis**

SPIPlanPtr SPI_prepare_cursor(const char * command, int nargs, Oid * argtypes, int cursorOptions)

**Description**

SPI_prepare_cursor is identical to SPI_prepare, except that it also allows specification of the planner’s “cursor options” parameter. This is a bit mask having the values shown in nodes/parsenodes.h for the options field of DeclareCursorStmt. SPI_prepare always takes the cursor options as zero.

This function is now deprecated in favor of SPI_prepare_extended.

**Arguments**

const char * command

command string

int nargs

number of input parameters ($1, $2, etc.)

Oid * argtypes

pointer to an array containing the OIDs of the data types of the parameters

int cursorOptions

integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

**Return Value**

SPI_prepare_cursor has the same return conventions as SPI_prepare.

**Notes**

Useful bits to set in cursorOptions include CURSOR_OPT_SCROLL, CURSOR_OPT_NO_SCROLL, CURSOR_OPT_FAST_PLAN, CURSOR_OPT_GENERIC_PLAN, and CURSOR_OPT_CUSTOM_PLAN. Note in particular that CURSOR_OPT_HOLD is ignored.
**SPI_prepare_extended**

SPI_prepare_extended — prepare a statement, without executing it yet

**Synopsis**

SPIPlanPtr SPI_prepare_extended(const char *command, const SPIPrepareOptions *options)

**Description**

SPI_prepare_extended creates and returns a prepared statement for the specified command, but doesn't execute the command. This function is equivalent to SPI_prepare, with the addition that the caller can specify options to control the parsing of external parameter references, as well as other facets of query parsing and planning.

**Arguments**

- const char *command
  - command string
- const SPIPrepareOptions *options
  - struct containing optional arguments

Callers should always zero out the entire options struct, then fill whichever fields they want to set. This ensures forward compatibility of code, since any fields that are added to the struct in future will be defined to behave backwards-compatibly if they are zero. The currently available options fields are:

- **ParserSetupHook parserSetup**
  - Parser hook setup function
- **void *parserSetupArg**
  - pass-through argument for parserSetup
- **RawParseMode parseMode**
  - mode for raw parsing; RAW_PARSE_DEFAULT (zero) produces default behavior
- **int cursorOptions**
  - integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

**Return Value**

SPI_prepare_extended has the same return conventions as SPI_prepare.
SPI_prepare_params

SPI_prepare_params — prepare a statement, without executing it yet

Synopsis

SPIPlanPtr SPI_prepare_params(const char * command,
    ParserSetupHook parserSetup,
    void * parserSetupArg,
    int cursorOptions)

Description

SPI_prepare_params creates and returns a prepared statement for the specified command, but doesn't execute the command. This function is equivalent to SPI_prepare_cursor, with the addition that the caller can specify parser hook functions to control the parsing of external parameter references.

This function is now deprecated in favor of SPI_prepare_extended.

Arguments

const char * command
    command string

ParserSetupHook parserSetup
    Parser hook setup function

void * parserSetupArg
    pass-through argument for parserSetup

int cursorOptions
    integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

Return Value

SPI_prepare_params has the same return conventions as SPI_prepare.
SPI_getargcount — return the number of arguments needed by a statement prepared by SPI_prepare

Synopsis

    int SPI_getargcount(SPIPlanPtr plan)

Description

SPI_getargcount returns the number of arguments needed to execute a statement prepared by SPI_prepare.

Arguments

SPIPlanPtr plan
    prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)

Return Value

The count of expected arguments for the plan. If the plan is NULL or invalid, SPI_result is set to SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT and -1 is returned.
**SPI_getargtypeid**

SPI_getargtypeid — return the data type OID for an argument of a statement prepared by SPI_prepare

**Synopsis**

Oid SPI_getargtypeid(SPIPlanPtr plan, int argIndex)

**Description**

SPI_getargtypeid returns the OID representing the type for the argIndex'th argument of a statement prepared by SPI_prepare. First argument is at index zero.

**Arguments**

SPIPlanPtr plan

prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)

int argIndex

zero based index of the argument

**Return Value**

The type OID of the argument at the given index. If the plan is NULL or invalid, or argIndex is less than 0 or not less than the number of arguments declared for the plan, SPI_result is set to SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT and InvalidOid is returned.
SPI_is_cursor_plan

SPI_is_cursor_plan — return true if a statement prepared by SPI_prepare can be used with SPI_cursor_open

Synopsis

bool SPI_is_cursor_plan(SPIPlanPtr plan)

Description

SPI_is_cursor_plan returns true if a statement prepared by SPI_prepare can be passed as an argument to SPI_cursor_open, or false if that is not the case. The criteria are that the plan represents one single command and that this command returns tuples to the caller; for example, SELECT is allowed unless it contains an INTO clause, and UPDATE is allowed only if it contains a RETURNING clause.

Arguments

SPIPlanPtr plan
    prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)

Return Value

ture or false to indicate if the plan can produce a cursor or not, with SPI_result set to zero. If it is not possible to determine the answer (for example, if the plan is NULL or invalid, or if called when not connected to SPI), then SPI_result is set to a suitable error code and false is returned.
**SPI_execute_plan**

SPI_execute_plan — execute a statement prepared by SPI_prepare

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_execute_plan(SPIPlanPtr plan, Datum * values, const char * nulls,
                     bool read_only, long count)
```

**Description**

SPI_execute_plan executes a statement prepared by SPI_prepare or one of its siblings. read_only and count have the same interpretation as in SPI_execute.

**Arguments**

- **SPIPlanPtr plan**
  - prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)
- **Datum * values**
  - An array of actual parameter values. Must have same length as the statement’s number of arguments.
- **const char * nulls**
  - An array describing which parameters are null. Must have same length as the statement’s number of arguments.
  
  If nulls is NULL then SPI_execute_plan assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the nulls array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding values entry doesn’t matter.) Note that nulls is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

- **bool read_only**
  - true for read-only execution
- **long count**
  - maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

**Return Value**

The return value is the same as for SPI_execute, with the following additional possible error (negative) results:

- **SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT**
  - if plan is NULL or invalid, or count is less than 0
- **SPI_ERROR_PARAM**
  - if values is NULL and plan was prepared with some parameters

SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable are set as in SPI_execute if successful.
**SPI_execute_plan_extended**

SPI_execute_plan_extended — execute a statement prepared by SPI_prepare

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_execute_plan_extended(SPIPlanPtr plan,
                              const SPIExecuteOptions * options)
```

**Description**

SPI_execute_plan_extended executes a statement prepared by SPI_prepare or one of its siblings. This function is equivalent to SPI_execute_plan, except that information about the parameter values to be passed to the query is presented differently, and additional execution-controlling options can be passed.

Query parameter values are represented by a ParamListInfo struct, which is convenient for passing down values that are already available in that format. Dynamic parameter sets can also be used, via hook functions specified in ParamListInfo.

Also, instead of always accumulating the result tuples into a SPI_tuptable structure, tuples can be passed to a caller-supplied DestReceiver object as they are generated by the executor. This is particularly helpful for queries that might generate many tuples, since the data can be processed on-the-fly instead of being accumulated in memory.

**Arguments**

**SPIPlanPtr plan**

prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)

**const SPIExecuteOptions * options**

struct containing optional arguments

Callers should always zero out the entire options struct, then fill whichever fields they want to set. This ensures forward compatibility of code, since any fields that are added to the struct in future will be defined to behave backwards-compatibly if they are zero. The currently available options fields are:

**ParamListInfo params**

data structure containing query parameter types and values; NULL if none

**bool read_only**

true for read-only execution

**bool allow_nonatomic**

true allows non-atomic execution of CALL and DO statements

**bool must_return_tuples**

if true, raise error if the query is not of a kind that returns tuples (this does not forbid the case where it happens to return zero tuples)

**uint64 tcount**

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

**DestReceiver * dest**

DestReceiver object that will receive any tuples emitted by the query; if NULL, result tuples are accumulated into a SPI_tuptable structure, as in SPI_execute_plan
ResourceOwner owner

The resource owner that will hold a reference count on the plan while it is executed. If NULL, CurrentResourceOwner is used. Ignored for non-saved plans, as SPI does not acquire reference counts on those.

Return Value

The return value is the same as for SPI_execute_plan.

When \textit{options->dest} is NULL, SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable are set as in SPI_execute_plan. When \textit{options->dest} is not NULL, SPI_processed is set to zero and SPI_tuptable is set to NULL. If a tuple count is required, the caller's DestReceiver object must calculate it.
**SPI_execute_plan_with_paramlist**

SPI_execute_plan_with_paramlist — execute a statement prepared by SPI_prepare

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_execute_plan_with_paramlist(SPIPlanPtr plan,
ParamListInfo params,
bool read_only,
long count)
```

**Description**

SPI_execute_plan_with_paramlist executes a statement prepared by SPI_prepare. This function is equivalent to SPI_execute_plan except that information about the parameter values to be passed to the query is presented differently. The ParamListInfo representation can be convenient for passing down values that are already available in that format. It also supports use of dynamic parameter sets via hook functions specified in ParamListInfo.

This function is now deprecated in favor of SPI_execute_plan_extended.

**Arguments**

- **SPIPlanPtr plan**
  - prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)

- **ParamListInfo params**
  - data structure containing parameter types and values; NULL if none

- **bool read_only**
  - true for read-only execution

- **long count**
  - maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

**Return Value**

The return value is the same as for SPI_execute_plan.

SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable are set as in SPI_execute_plan if successful.
SPI_execp

SPI_execp — execute a statement in read/write mode

Synopsis

    int SPI_execp(SPIPlanPtr plan, Datum * values, const char * nulls, long count)

Description

    SPI_execp is the same as SPI_execute_plan, with the latter's read_only parameter always taken as false.

Arguments

    SPIPlanPtr plan
        prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)
    Datum * values
        An array of actual parameter values. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.
    const char * nulls
        An array describing which parameters are null. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

        If nulls is NULL then SPI_execp assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the nulls array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding values entry doesn't matter.) Note that nulls is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.
    long count
        maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

Return Value

    See SPI_execute_plan.

    SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable are set as in SPI_execute if successful.
SPI_cursor_open

SPI_cursor_open — set up a cursor using a statement created with SPI_prepare

Synopsis

Portal SPI_cursor_open(const char * name, SPIPlanPtr plan,
    Datum * values, const char * nulls,
    bool read_only)

Description

SPI_cursor_open sets up a cursor (internally, a portal) that will execute a statement prepared by SPI_prepare. The parameters have the same meanings as the corresponding parameters to SPI_execute_plan.

Using a cursor instead of executing the statement directly has two benefits. First, the result rows can be retrieved a few at a time, avoiding memory overrun for queries that return many rows. Second, a portal can outlive the current C function (it can, in fact, live to the end of the current transaction). Returning the portal name to the C function's caller provides a way of returning a row set as result.

The passed-in parameter data will be copied into the cursor's portal, so it can be freed while the cursor still exists.

Arguments

cost char * name
    name for portal, or NULL to let the system select a name

SPIPlanPtr plan
    prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)

Datum * values
    An array of actual parameter values. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

cost char * nulls
    An array describing which parameters are null. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

If nulls is NULL then SPI_cursor_open assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the nulls array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding values entry doesn't matter.) Note that nulls is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

bool read_only
    true for read-only execution

Return Value

Pointer to portal containing the cursor. Note there is no error return convention; any error will be reported via elog.
**SPI_cursor_open_with_args**

SPI_cursor_open_with_args — set up a cursor using a query and parameters

**Synopsis**

```
Portal SPI_cursor_open_with_args(const char *name, 
const char *command, 
int nargs, Oid *argtypes, 
Datum *values, const char *nulls, 
bool read_only, int cursorOptions)
```

**Description**

SPI_cursor_open_with_args sets up a cursor (internally, a portal) that will execute the specified query. Most of the parameters have the same meanings as the corresponding parameters to SPI_prepare_cursor and SPI_cursor_open.

For one-time query execution, this function should be preferred over SPI_prepare_cursor followed by SPI_cursor_open. If the same command is to be executed with many different parameters, either method might be faster, depending on the cost of re-planning versus the benefit of custom plans.

The passed-in parameter data will be copied into the cursor's portal, so it can be freed while the cursor still exists.

This function is now deprecated in favor of SPI_cursor_parse_open, which provides equivalent functionality using a more modern API for handling query parameters.

**Arguments**

- `const char * name`
  name for portal, or NULL to let the system select a name

- `const char * command`
  command string

- `int nargs`
  number of input parameters ($1, $2, etc.)

- `Oid * argtypes`
  an array of length nargs, containing the OIDs of the data types of the parameters

- `Datum * values`
  an array of length nargs, containing the actual parameter values

- `const char * nulls`
  an array of length nargs, describing which parameters are null

  If nulls is NULL then SPI_cursor_open_with_args assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the nulls array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding values entry doesn't matter.) Note that nulls is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

- `bool read_only`
  true for read-only execution
int cursorOptions

    integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

Return Value

Pointer to portal containing the cursor. Note there is no error return convention; any error will be reported via elog.
SPI_cursor_open_with_paramlist

SPI_cursor_open_with_paramlist — set up a cursor using parameters

Synopsis

Portal SPI_cursor_open_with_paramlist(const char *name,
                                      SPIPlanPtr plan,
                                      ParamListInfo params,
                                      bool read_only)

Description

SPI_cursor_open_with_paramlist sets up a cursor (internally, a portal) that will execute a statement prepared by SPI_prepare. This function is equivalent to SPI_cursor_open except that information about the parameter values to be passed to the query is presented differently. The ParamListInfo representation can be convenient for passing down values that are already available in that format. It also supports use of dynamic parameter sets via hook functions specified in ParamListInfo.

The passed-in parameter data will be copied into the cursor's portal, so it can be freed while the cursor still exists.

Arguments

const char * name

name for portal, or NULL to let the system select a name

SPIPlanPtr plan

prepared statement (returned by SPI_prepare)

ParamListInfo params

data structure containing parameter types and values; NULL if none

bool read_only

true for read-only execution

Return Value

Pointer to portal containing the cursor. Note there is no error return convention; any error will be reported via elog.
SPI_cursor_parse_open

SPI_cursor_parse_open — set up a cursor using a query string and parameters

Synopsis

Portal SPI_cursor_parse_open(const char *name,
                           const char *command,
                           const SPIParseOpenOptions *options)

Description

SPI_cursor_parse_open sets up a cursor (internally, a portal) that will execute the specified query string. This is comparable to SPI_prepare_cursor followed by SPI_cursor_open_with_paramlist, except that parameter references within the query string are handled entirely by supplying a ParamListInfo object.

For one-time query execution, this function should be preferred over SPI_prepare_cursor followed by SPI_cursor_open_with_paramlist. If the same command is to be executed with many different parameters, either method might be faster, depending on the cost of re-planning versus the benefit of custom plans.

The options->params object should normally mark each parameter with the PARAM_FLAG_CONST flag, since a one-shot plan is always used for the query.

The passed-in parameter data will be copied into the cursor's portal, so it can be freed while the cursor still exists.

Arguments

const char * name
	name for portal, or NULL to let the system select a name

const char * command

command string

const SPIParseOpenOptions * options

struct containing optional arguments

Callers should always zero out the entire options struct, then fill whichever fields they want to set. This ensures forward compatibility of code, since any fields that are added to the struct in future will be defined to behave backwards-compatibly if they are zero. The currently available options fields are:

ParamListInfo params

data structure containing query parameter types and values; NULL if none

int cursorOptions

integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

bool read_only

true for read-only execution

Return Value

Pointer to portal containing the cursor. Note there is no error return convention; any error will be reported via elog.
SPI_cursor_find

SPI_cursor_find — find an existing cursor by name

Synopsis

Portal SPI_cursor_find(const char * name)

Description

SPI_cursor_find finds an existing portal by name. This is primarily useful to resolve a cursor name returned as text by some other function.

Arguments

const char * name

name of the portal

Return Value

pointer to the portal with the specified name, or NULL if none was found
SPI_cursor_fetch

SPI_cursor_fetch — fetch some rows from a cursor

Synopsis

void SPI_cursor_fetch(Portal portal, bool forward, long count)

Description

SPI_cursor_fetch fetches some rows from a cursor. This is equivalent to a subset of the SQL command FETCH (see SPI_scroll_cursor_fetch for more functionality).

Arguments

Portal portal

    portal containing the cursor

bool forward

    true for fetch forward, false for fetch backward

long count

    maximum number of rows to fetch

Return Value

SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable are set as in SPI_execute if successful.

Notes

Fetching backward may fail if the cursor's plan was not created with the CURSOR_OPT_SCROLL option.
SPI_cursor_move

SPI_cursor_move — move a cursor

Synopsis

void SPI_cursor_move(Portal portal, bool forward, long count)

Description

SPI_cursor_move skips over some number of rows in a cursor. This is equivalent to a subset of the SQL command MOVE (see SPI_scroll_cursor_move for more functionality).

Arguments

Portal portal
  portal containing the cursor

bool forward
  true for move forward, false for move backward

long count
  maximum number of rows to move

Notes

Moving backward may fail if the cursor's plan was not created with the CURSOR_OPT_SCROLL option.
**SPI_scroll_cursor_fetch**

SPI_scroll_cursor_fetch — fetch some rows from a cursor

**Synopsis**

```c
void SPI_scroll_cursor_fetch(Portal portal, FetchDirection direction, long count)
```

**Description**

SPI_scroll_cursor_fetch fetches some rows from a cursor. This is equivalent to the SQL command FETCH.

**Arguments**

- `Portal portal` — portal containing the cursor
- `FetchDirection direction` — one of FETCH_FORWARD, FETCH_BACKWARD, FETCH_ABSOLUTE or FETCH_RELATIVE
- `long count` — number of rows to fetch for FETCH_FORWARD or FETCH_BACKWARD; absolute row number to fetch for FETCH_ABSOLUTE; or relative row number to fetch for FETCH_RELATIVE

**Return Value**

SPI_processed and SPI_tuptable are set as in SPI_execute if successful.

**Notes**

See the SQL FETCH command for details of the interpretation of the direction and count parameters. Direction values other than FETCH_FORWARD may fail if the cursor's plan was not created with the CURSOR_OPT_SCROLL option.
**SPI_scroll_cursor_move**

SPI_scroll_cursor_move — move a cursor

**Synopsis**

```c
void SPI_scroll_cursor_move(Portal portal, FetchDirection direction, long count)
```

**Description**

SPI_scroll_cursor_move skips over some number of rows in a cursor. This is equivalent to the SQL command MOVE.

**Arguments**

- **Portal portal**
  - portal containing the cursor
- **FetchDirection direction**
  - one of FETCH_FORWARD, FETCH_BACKWARD, FETCH_ABSOLUTE or FETCH_RELATIVE
- **long count**
  - number of rows to move for FETCH_FORWARD or FETCH_BACKWARD; absolute row number to move to for FETCH_ABSOLUTE; or relative row number to move to for FETCH_RELATIVE

**Return Value**

SPI_processed is set as in SPI_execute if successful. SPI_tuptable is set to NULL, since no rows are returned by this function.

**Notes**

See the SQL FETCH command for details of the interpretation of the direction and count parameters. Direction values other than FETCH_FORWARD may fail if the cursor's plan was not created with the CURSOR_OPT_SCROLL option.
**SPI_cursor_close**

SPI_cursor_close — close a cursor

**Synopsis**

```c
void SPI_cursor_close(Portal portal)
```

**Description**

SPI_cursor_close closes a previously created cursor and releases its portal storage. All open cursors are closed automatically at the end of a transaction. SPI_cursor_close need only be invoked if it is desirable to release resources sooner.

**Arguments**

- **Portal portal**
  
  portal containing the cursor
### SPI_keepplan

SPI_keepplan — save a prepared statement

#### Synopsis

```c
int SPI_keepplan(SPIPlanPtr plan)
```

#### Description

SPI_keepplan saves a passed statement (prepared by SPI_prepare) so that it will not be freed by SPI_finish nor by the transaction manager. This gives you the ability to reuse prepared statements in the subsequent invocations of your C function in the current session.

#### Arguments

- **SPIPlanPtr plan**
  
  the prepared statement to be saved

#### Return Value

- 0 on success; SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT if `plan` is NULL or invalid

#### Notes

The passed-in statement is relocated to permanent storage by means of pointer adjustment (no data copying is required). If you later wish to delete it, use SPI_freeplan on it.
SPI_saveplan — save a prepared statement

Synopsis

SPIPlanPtr SPI_saveplan(SPIPlanPtr plan)

Description

SPI_saveplan copies a passed statement (prepared by SPI_prepare) into memory that will not be freed by SPI_finish nor by the transaction manager, and returns a pointer to the copied statement. This gives you the ability to reuse prepared statements in the subsequent invocations of your C function in the current session.

Arguments

SPIPlanPtr plan

the prepared statement to be saved

Return Value

Pointer to the copied statement; or NULL if unsuccessful. On error, SPI_result is set thus:

SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT

if plan is NULL or invalid

SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED

if called from an unconnected C function

Notes

The originally passed-in statement is not freed, so you might wish to do SPI_freeplan on it to avoid leaking memory until SPI_finish.

In most cases, SPI_keepplan is preferred to this function, since it accomplishes largely the same result without needing to physically copy the prepared statement's data structures.
**SPI_register_relation**

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_register_relation(EphemeralNamedRelation enr)
```

**Description**

`SPI_register_relation` makes an ephemeral named relation, with associated information, available to queries planned and executed through the current SPI connection.

**Arguments**

- `EphemeralNamedRelation enr`
  
  the ephemeral named relation registry entry

**Return Value**

- If the execution of the command was successful then the following (nonnegative) value will be returned:
  
  `SPI_OK_REL_REGISTER`

  if the relation has been successfully registered by name

- On error, one of the following negative values is returned:
  
  `SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT`

  if `enr` is NULL or its `name` field is NULL

  `SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED`

  if called from an unconnected C function

  `SPI_ERROR_REL_DUPLICATE`

  if the name specified in the `name` field of `enr` is already registered for this connection
**SPI_unregister_relation**

SPI_unregister_relation — remove an ephemeral named relation from the registry

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_unregister_relation(const char * name)
```

**Description**

SPI_unregister_relation removes an ephemeral named relation from the registry for the current connection.

**Arguments**

- `const char * name`
  - the relation registry entry name

**Return Value**

If the execution of the command was successful then the following (nonnegative) value will be returned:

- `SPI_OK_REL_UNREGISTER`
  - if the tuplestore has been successfully removed from the registry

On error, one of the following negative values is returned:

- `SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT`
  - if `name` is NULL

- `SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED`
  - if called from an unconnected C function

- `SPI_ERROR_REL_NOT_FOUND`
  - if `name` is not found in the registry for the current connection
SPI_register_trigger_data

SPI_register_trigger_data — make ephemeral trigger data available in SPI queries

Synopsis

int SPI_register_trigger_data(TriggerData *tdata)

Description

SPI_register_trigger_data makes any ephemeral relations captured by a trigger available to queries planned and executed through the current SPI connection. Currently, this means the transition tables captured by an AFTER trigger defined with a REFERENCING OLD/NEW TABLE AS ... clause. This function should be called by a PL trigger handler function after connecting.

Arguments

TriggerData *tdata

the TriggerData object passed to a trigger handler function as fcinfo->context

Return Value

If the execution of the command was successful then the following (nonnegative) value will be returned:

SPI_OK_TD_REGISTER

if the captured trigger data (if any) has been successfully registered

On error, one of the following negative values is returned:

SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT

if tdata is NULL

SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED

if called from an unconnected C function

SPI_ERROR_REL_DUPLICATE

if the name of any trigger data transient relation is already registered for this connection

45.2. Interface Support Functions

The functions described here provide an interface for extracting information from result sets returned by SPI_execute and other SPI functions.

All functions described in this section can be used by both connected and unconnected C functions.
**SPI_fname**

SPI_fname — determine the column name for the specified column number

**Synopsis**

```
char * SPI_fname(TupleDesc rowdesc, int colnumber)
```

**Description**

SPI_fname returns a copy of the column name of the specified column. (You can use pfree to release the copy of the name when you don't need it anymore.)

**Arguments**

- **TupleDesc rowdesc**
  - input row description
- **int colnumber**
  - column number (count starts at 1)

**Return Value**

The column name; NULL if colnumber is out of range. SPI_result set to SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE on error.
SPI_fnumber

SPI_fnumber — determine the column number for the specified column name

Synopsis

int SPI_fnumber(TupleDesc rowdesc, const char * colname)

Description

SPI_fnumber returns the column number for the column with the specified name.

If colname refers to a system column (e.g., ctid) then the appropriate negative column number will be returned. The caller should be careful to test the return value for exact equality to SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE to detect an error; testing the result for less than or equal to 0 is not correct unless system columns should be rejected.

Arguments

TupleDesc rowdesc
    input row description

const char * colname
    column name

Return Value

Column number (count starts at 1 for user-defined columns), or SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE if the named column was not found.
**SPI_getvalue**

SPI_getvalue — return the string value of the specified column

**Synopsis**

```c
char * SPI_getvalue(HeapTuple row, TupleDesc rowdesc, int colnumber)
```

**Description**

SPI_getvalue returns the string representation of the value of the specified column.

The result is returned in memory allocated using `palloc`. (You can use `pfree` to release the memory when you don't need it anymore.)

**Arguments**

- **HeapTuple row**
  - input row to be examined

- **TupleDesc rowdesc**
  - input row description

- **int colnumber**
  - column number (count starts at 1)

**Return Value**

Column value, or NULL if the column is null, `colnumber` is out of range (SPI_result is set to SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE), or no output function is available (SPI_result is set to SPI_ERROR_NOOUTFUNC).
**SPI_getbinval**  
SPI_getbinval — return the binary value of the specified column

**Synopsis**

Datum SPI_getbinval(HeapTuple row, TupleDesc rowdesc, int colnumber,
bool * isnull)

**Description**

SPI_getbinval returns the value of the specified column in the internal form (as type Datum).

This function does not allocate new space for the datum. In the case of a pass-by-reference data type, the return value will be a pointer into the passed row.

**Arguments**

HeapTuple row
  input row to be examined

TupleDesc rowdesc
  input row description

int colnumber
  column number (count starts at 1)

bool * isnull
  flag for a null value in the column

**Return Value**

The binary value of the column is returned. The variable pointed to by isnull is set to true if the column is null, else to false.

SPI_result is set to SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE on error.
**SPI_gettype**

SPI_gettype — return the data type name of the specified column

**Synopsis**

`char * SPI_gettype(TupleDesc rowdesc, int colnumber)`

**Description**

`SPI_gettype` returns a copy of the data type name of the specified column. (You can use `pfree` to release the copy of the name when you don't need it anymore.)

**Arguments**

- `TupleDesc rowdesc`
  - input row description
- `int colnumber`
  - column number (count starts at 1)

**Return Value**

The data type name of the specified column, or `NULL` on error. `SPI_result` is set to `SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE` on error.
**SPI_gettypeid**

SPI_gettypeid — return the data type OID of the specified column

**Synopsis**

Oid SPI_gettypeid(TupleDesc rowdesc, int colnumber)

**Description**

SPI_gettypeid returns the OID of the data type of the specified column.

**Arguments**

TupleDesc rowdesc
   input row description

int colnumber
   column number (count starts at 1)

**Return Value**

The OID of the data type of the specified column or InvalidOid on error. On error, SPI_result is set to SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE.
**SPI_getrelname**

SPI_getrelname — return the name of the specified relation

**Synopsis**

```c
char * SPI_getrelname(Relation rel)
```

**Description**

SPI_getrelname returns a copy of the name of the specified relation. (You can use `pfree` to release the copy of the name when you don’t need it anymore.)

**Arguments**

- `Relation rel`
  - input relation

**Return Value**

The name of the specified relation.
**SPI_getnspname**

SPI_getnspname — return the namespace of the specified relation

**Synopsis**

`char * SPI_getnspname(Relation rel)`

**Description**

SPI_getnspname returns a copy of the name of the namespace that the specified Relation belongs to. This is equivalent to the relation's schema. You should *pfree* the return value of this function when you are finished with it.

**Arguments**

Relation *rel*

input relation

**Return Value**

The name of the specified relation's namespace.
**SPI_result_code_string**

SPI_result_code_string — return error code as string

**Synopsis**

```c
const char * SPI_result_code_string(int code);
```

**Description**

SPI_result_code_string returns a string representation of the result code returned by various SPI functions or stored in SPI_result.

**Arguments**

- `int code`
  - result code

**Return Value**

A string representation of the result code.

### 45.3. Memory Management

Postgres Pro allocates memory within *memory contexts*, which provide a convenient method of managing allocations made in many different places that need to live for differing amounts of time. Destroying a context releases all the memory that was allocated in it. Thus, it is not necessary to keep track of individual objects to avoid memory leaks; instead only a relatively small number of contexts have to be managed. `palloc` and related functions allocate memory from the “current” context.

`SPI_connect` creates a new memory context and makes it current. `SPI_finish` restores the previous current memory context and destroys the context created by `SPI_connect`. These actions ensure that transient memory allocations made inside your C function are reclaimed at C function exit, avoiding memory leakage.

However, if your C function needs to return an object in allocated memory (such as a value of a pass-by-reference data type), you cannot allocate that memory using `palloc`, at least not while you are connected to SPI. If you try, the object will be deallocated by `SPI_finish`, and your C function will not work reliably. To solve this problem, use `SPI_palloc` to allocate memory for your return object. `SPI_palloc` allocates memory in the “upper executor context”, that is, the memory context that was current when `SPI_connect` was called, which is precisely the right context for a value returned from your C function. Several of the other utility functions described in this section also return objects created in the upper executor context.

When `SPI_connect` is called, the private context of the C function, which is created by `SPI_connect`, is made the current context. All allocations made by `palloc`, `repalloc`, or SPI utility functions (except as described in this section) are made in this context. When a C function disconnects from the SPI manager (via `SPI_finish`) the current context is restored to the upper executor context, and all allocations made in the C function memory context are freed and cannot be used any more.
**SPI_palloc**

SPI_palloc — allocate memory in the upper executor context

**Synopsis**

```c
void * SPI_palloc(Size size)
```

**Description**

SPI_palloc allocates memory in the upper executor context.

This function can only be used while connected to SPI. Otherwise, it throws an error.

**Arguments**

- **Size size**
  
size in bytes of storage to allocate

**Return Value**

pointer to new storage space of the specified size
SPI_realloc

SPI_realloc — reallocate memory in the upper executor context

Synopsis

void * SPI_realloc(void * pointer, Size size)

Description

SPI_realloc changes the size of a memory segment previously allocated using SPI_palloc.

This function is no longer different from plain repalloc. It’s kept just for backward compatibility of existing code.

Arguments

void * pointer

pointer to existing storage to change

Size size

size in bytes of storage to allocate

Return Value

pointer to new storage space of specified size with the contents copied from the existing area
SPI_pfree

SPI_pfree — free memory in the upper executor context

Synopsis

void SPI_pfree(void * pointer)

Description

SPI_pfree frees memory previously allocated using SPI_palloc or SPI_repalloc.

This function is no longer different from plain pfree. It's kept just for backward compatibility of existing code.

Arguments

void * pointer

pointer to existing storage to free
### SPI_copytuple

**SPI_copytuple** — make a copy of a row in the upper executor context

#### Synopsis

```
HeapTuple SPI_copytuple(HeapTuple row)
```

#### Description

`SPI_copytuple` makes a copy of a row in the upper executor context. This is normally used to return a modified row from a trigger. In a function declared to return a composite type, use `SPI_returntuple` instead.

This function can only be used while connected to SPI. Otherwise, it returns NULL and sets `SPI_result` to `SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED`.

#### Arguments

- `HeapTuple row`
  - row to be copied

#### Return Value

- the copied row, or NULL on error (see `SPI_result` for an error indication)
**SPI_returntuple**

SPI_returntuple — prepare to return a tuple as a Datum

**Synopsis**

```
HeapTupleHeader SPI_returntuple(HeapTuple row, TupleDesc rowdesc)
```

**Description**

SPI_returntuple makes a copy of a row in the upper executor context, returning it in the form of a row type Datum. The returned pointer need only be converted to Datum via PointerGetDatum before returning.

This function can only be used while connected to SPI. Otherwise, it returns NULL and sets SPI_result to SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED.

Note that this should be used for functions that are declared to return composite types. It is not used for triggers; use SPI_copytuple for returning a modified row in a trigger.

**Arguments**

- `HeapTuple row`
  - row to be copied
- `TupleDesc rowdesc`
  - descriptor for row (pass the same descriptor each time for most effective caching)

**Return Value**

```
HeapTupleHeader pointing to copied row, or NULL on error (see SPI_result for an error indication)
```
SPI_modifytuple

SPI_modifytuple — create a row by replacing selected fields of a given row

Synopsis

HeapTuple SPI_modifytuple(Relation rel, HeapTuple row, int ncols,
                        int * colnum, Datum * values, const char * nulls)

Description

SPI_modifytuple creates a new row by substituting new values for selected columns, copying the original row’s columns at other positions. The input row is not modified. The new row is returned in the upper executor context.

This function can only be used while connected to SPI. Otherwise, it returns NULL and sets SPI_result to SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED.

Arguments

Relation rel

Used only as the source of the row descriptor for the row. (Passing a relation rather than a row descriptor is a misfeature.)

HeapTuple row

row to be modified

int ncols

number of columns to be changed

int * colnum

an array of length ncols, containing the numbers of the columns that are to be changed (column numbers start at 1)

Datum * values

an array of length ncols, containing the new values for the specified columns

const char * nulls

an array of length ncols, describing which new values are null

If nulls is NULL then SPI_modifytuple assumes that no new values are null. Otherwise, each entry of the nulls array should be ' ' if the corresponding new value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding new value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding values entry doesn’t matter.) Note that nulls is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

Return Value

new row with modifications, allocated in the upper executor context, or NULL on error (see SPI_result for an error indication)

On error, SPI_result is set as follows:

SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT

if rel is NULL, or if row is NULL, or if ncols is less than or equal to 0, or if colnum is NULL, or if values is NULL.
SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE

if colnum contains an invalid column number (less than or equal to 0 or greater than the number of columns in row)

SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED

if SPI is not active
**SPI_freetuple**

SPI_freetuple — free a row allocated in the upper executor context

**Synopsis**

```c
void SPI_freetuple(HeapTuple row)
```

**Description**

SPI_freetuple frees a row previously allocated in the upper executor context.

This function is no longer different from plain `heap_freetuple`. It's kept just for backward compatibility of existing code.

**Arguments**

- `HeapTuple row`
  - row to free
SPI_freetuptable

SPI_freetuptable — free a row set created by SPI_execute or a similar function

Synopsis

```c
void SPI_freetuptable(SPITupleTable * tuptable)
```

Description

SPI_freetuptable frees a row set created by a prior SPI command execution function, such as SPI_execute. Therefore, this function is often called with the global variable SPI_tuptable as argument.

This function is useful if an SPI-using C function needs to execute multiple commands and does not want to keep the results of earlier commands around until it ends. Note that any unfreed row sets will be freed anyway at SPI_finish. Also, if a subtransaction is started and then aborted within execution of an SPI-using C function, SPI automatically frees any row sets created while the subtransaction was running.

Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.3, SPI_freetuptable contains guard logic to protect against duplicate deletion requests for the same row set. In previous releases, duplicate deletions would lead to crashes.

Arguments

```c
SPITupleTable * tuptable
```

- pointer to row set to free, or NULL to do nothing
**SPI_freeplan**

SPI_freeplan — free a previously saved prepared statement

**Synopsis**

```c
int SPI_freeplan(SPIPlanPtr plan)
```

**Description**

SPI_freeplan releases a prepared statement previously returned by SPI_prepare or saved by SPI_keepplan or SPI_saveplan.

**Arguments**

- `SPIPlanPtr plan`
  
  pointer to statement to free

**Return Value**

- 0 on success; SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT if `plan` is NULL or invalid

**45.4. Transaction Management**

It is not possible to run transaction control commands such as COMMIT and ROLLBACK through SPI functions such as SPI_execute. There are, however, separate interface functions that allow transaction control through SPI.

It is not generally safe and sensible to start and end transactions in arbitrary user-defined SQL-callable functions without taking into account the context in which they are called. For example, a transaction boundary in the middle of a function that is part of a complex SQL expression that is part of some SQL command will probably result in obscure internal errors or crashes. The interface functions presented here are primarily intended to be used by procedural language implementations to support transaction management in SQL-level procedures that are invoked by the CALL command, taking the context of the CALL invocation into account. SPI-using procedures implemented in C can implement the same logic, but the details of that are beyond the scope of this documentation.
SPI_commit

SPI_commit, SPI_commit_and_chain — commit the current transaction

Synopsis

void SPI_commit(void)
void SPI_commit_and_chain(void)

Description

SPI_commit commits the current transaction. It is approximately equivalent to running the SQL command COMMIT. After a transaction is committed, a new transaction has to be started using SPI_start_transaction before further database actions can be executed.

SPI_commit_and_chain is the same, but a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics as the just finished one, like with the SQL command COMMIT AND CHAIN.

These functions can only be executed if the SPI connection has been set as nonatomic in the call to SPI_connect_ext.
SPI_rollback

SPI_rollback, SPI_rollback_and_chain — abort the current transaction

Synopsis

void SPI_rollback(void)
void SPI_rollback_and_chain(void)

Description

SPI_rollback rolls back the current transaction. It is approximately equivalent to running the SQL command ROLLBACK. After a transaction is rolled back, a new transaction has to be started using SPI_start_transaction before further database actions can be executed.

SPI_rollback_and_chain is the same, but a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics as the just finished one, like with the SQL command ROLLBACK AND CHAIN.

These functions can only be executed if the SPI connection has been set as nonatomic in the call to SPI_connect_ext.
**SPI_start_transaction**

SPI_start_transaction — start a new transaction

**Synopsis**

```c
void SPI_start_transaction(void)
```

**Description**

`SPI_start_transaction` starts a new transaction. It can only be called after `SPI_commit` or `SPI_rollback`, as there is no transaction active at that point. Normally, when an SPI-using procedure is called, there is already a transaction active, so attempting to start another one before closing out the current one will result in an error.

This function can only be executed if the SPI connection has been set as nonatomic in the call to `SPI_connect_ext`.

**45.5. Visibility of Data Changes**

The following rules govern the visibility of data changes in functions that use SPI (or any other C function):

- During the execution of an SQL command, any data changes made by the command are invisible to the command itself. For example, in:
  
  ```sql
  INSERT INTO a SELECT * FROM a;
  
  the inserted rows are invisible to the SELECT part.
  ```

- Changes made by a command C are visible to all commands that are started after C, no matter whether they are started inside C (during the execution of C) or after C is done.

- Commands executed via SPI inside a function called by an SQL command (either an ordinary function or a trigger) follow one or the other of the above rules depending on the read/write flag passed to SPI. Commands executed in read-only mode follow the first rule: they cannot see changes of the calling command. Commands executed in read-write mode follow the second rule: they can see all changes made so far.

- All standard procedural languages set the SPI read-write mode depending on the volatility attribute of the function. Commands of `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` functions are done in read-only mode, while commands of `VOLATILE` functions are done in read-write mode. While authors of C functions are able to violate this convention, it’s unlikely to be a good idea to do so.

The next section contains an example that illustrates the application of these rules.

**45.6. Examples**

This section contains a very simple example of SPI usage. The C function `execq` takes an SQL command as its first argument and a row count as its second, executes the command using `SPI_exec` and returns the number of rows that were processed by the command. You can find more complex examples for SPI in the `spi` module.

```c
#include "postgres.h"

#include "executor/spi.h"
#include "utils/builtins.h"

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(execq);

Datum
```
Server Programming Interface

execq(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    char *command;
    int cnt;
    int ret;
    uint64 proc;

    /* Convert given text object to a C string */
    command = text_to_cstring(PG_GETARG_TEXT_PP(0));
    cnt = PG_GETARG_INT32(1);

    SPI_connect();

    ret = SPI_exec(command, cnt);

    proc = SPI_processed;

    /*
    * If some rows were fetched, print them via elog(INFO).
    */
    if (ret > 0 && SPI_tuptable != NULL)
    {
        SPITupleTable *tuptable = SPI_tuptable;
        TupleDesc tupdesc = tuptable->tupdesc;
        char buf[8192];
        uint64 j;

        for (j = 0; j < tuptable->numvals; j++)
        {
            HeapTuple tuple = tuptable->vals[j];
            int i;

            for (i = 1, buf[0] = 0; i <= tupdesc->natts; i++)
                snprintf(buf + strlen(buf), sizeof(buf) - strlen(buf), " %s%s",
                            SPI_getvalue(tuple, tupdesc, i),
                            (i == tupdesc->natts) ? " " : " |");
            elog(INFO, "EXECQ: %s", buf);
        }
    }

    SPI_finish();
pfree(command);

    PG_RETURN_INT64(proc);
}

This is how you declare the function after having compiled it into a shared library (details are in Section 36.10.5):

CREATE FUNCTION execq(text, integer) RETURNS int8
    AS 'filename'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;

Here is a sample session:

=> SELECT execq('CREATE TABLE a (x integer)', 0);
execq
-------
  0
(1 row)
=> INSERT INTO a VALUES (execq('INSERT INTO a VALUES (0)', 0));
INSERT 0 1
=> SELECT execq('SELECT * FROM a', 0);
INFO: EXECQ: 0 -- inserted by execq
INFO: EXECQ: 1 -- returned by execq and inserted by upper INSERT

execq
-------
 2
(1 row)

=> SELECT execq('INSERT INTO a SELECT x + 2 FROM a', 1);
execq
-------
 1
(1 row)

=> SELECT execq('SELECT * FROM a', 10);
INFO: EXECQ: 0
INFO: EXECQ: 1
INFO: EXECQ: 2 -- 0 + 2, only one row inserted - as specified
execq
-------
 3 -- 10 is the max value only, 3 is the real number of rows
(1 row)

=> DELETE FROM a;
DELETE 3
=> INSERT INTO a VALUES (execq('SELECT * FROM a', 0) + 1);
INSERT 0 1
=> SELECT * FROM a;
x---
 1 -- no rows in a (0) + 1
(1 row)

=> INSERT INTO a VALUES (execq('SELECT * FROM a', 0) + 1);
INFO: EXECQ: 1
INSERT 0 1
=> SELECT * FROM a;
x---
 1
 2 -- there was one row in a + 1
(2 rows)

-- This demonstrates the data changes visibility rule:

=> INSERT INTO a SELECT execq('SELECT * FROM a', 0) * x FROM a;
INFO: EXECQ: 1
INFO: EXECQ: 2
INFO: EXECQ: 1
INFO: EXECQ: 2
INFO: EXECQ: 2
INSERT 0 2
=> SELECT * FROM a;
Server Programming Interface

\begin{verbatim}
  x
  ---
   1
   2
   2                  -- 2 rows * 1 (x in first row)
   6                  -- 3 rows (2 + 1 just inserted) * 2 (x in second row)
(4 rows)               ^^^^^^  
                      rows visible to execq() in different invocations
\end{verbatim}
Chapter 46. Background Worker Processes

Postgres Pro can be extended to run user-supplied code in separate processes. Such processes are started, stopped and monitored by `postgres`, which permits them to have a lifetime closely linked to the server's status. These processes have the option to attach to Postgres Pro's shared memory area and to connect to databases internally; they can also run multiple transactions serially, just like a regular client-connected server process. Also, by linking to libpq they can connect to the server and behave like a regular client application.

**Warning**

There are considerable robustness and security risks in using background worker processes because, being written in the C language, they have unrestricted access to data. Administrators wishing to enable modules that include background worker processes should exercise extreme caution. Only carefully audited modules should be permitted to run background worker processes.

Background workers can be initialized at the time that Postgres Pro is started by including the module name in `shared_preload_libraries`. A module wishing to run a background worker can register it by calling `RegisterBackgroundWorker(BackgroundWorker *worker)` from its `_PG_init()` function. Background workers can also be started after the system is up and running by calling `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker(BackgroundWorker *worker, BackgroundWorkerHandle **handle)`. Unlike `RegisterBackgroundWorker`, which can only be called from within the postmaster process, `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker` must be called from a regular backend or another background worker.

The structure `BackgroundWorker` is defined thus:

```c
typedef void (*bgworker_main_type)(Datum main_arg);

typedef struct BackgroundWorker
{
    char        bgw_name[BGW_MAXLEN];
    char        bgw_type[BGW_MAXLEN];
    int         bgw_flags;
    BgWorkerStartTime bgw_start_time;
    int         bgw_restart_time;       /* in seconds, or BGW_NEVER_RESTART */
    char        bgw_library_name[BGW_MAXLEN];
    char        bgw_function_name[BGW_MAXLEN];
    Datum       bgw_main_arg;
    char        bgw_extra[BGW_EXTRALEN];
    int         bgw_notify_pid;
} BackgroundWorker;
```

`bgw_name` and `bgw_type` are strings to be used in log messages, process listings and similar contexts. `bgw_type` should be the same for all background workers of the same type, so that it is possible to group such workers in a process listing, for example. `bgw_name` on the other hand can contain additional information about the specific process. (Typically, the string for `bgw_name` will contain the type somehow, but that is not strictly required.)

`bgw_flags` is a bitwise-or’d bit mask indicating the capabilities that the module wants. Possible values are:

- `BGWORKER_SHMEM_ACCESS` Requests shared memory access. Workers without shared memory access cannot access any of Postgres Pro's shared data structures, such as heavyweight or lightweight locks, shared buffers, or any custom data structures which the worker itself may wish to create and use.
BGWORKER_BACKEND_DATABASE_CONNECTION

Requests the ability to establish a database connection through which it can later run transactions and queries. A background worker using BGWORKER_BACKEND_DATABASE_CONNECTION to connect to a database must also attach shared memory using BGWORKER_SHMEM_ACCESS, or worker start-up will fail.

bgw_start_time is the server state during which postgres should start the process; it can be one of BgWorkerStart_PostmasterStart (start as soon as postgres itself has finished its own initialization; processes requesting this are not eligible for database connections), BgWorkerStart_ConsistentState (start as soon as a consistent state has been reached in a hot standby, allowing processes to connect to databases and run read-only queries), and BgWorkerStart_RecoveryFinished (start as soon as the system has entered normal read-write state). Note the last two values are equivalent in a server that's not a hot standby. Note that this setting only indicates when the processes are to be started; they do not stop when a different state is reached.

bgw_restart_time is the interval, in seconds, that postgres should wait before restarting the process in the event that it crashes. It can be any positive value, or BGW_NEVER_RESTART, indicating not to restart the process in case of a crash.

bgw_library_name is the name of a library in which the initial entry point for the background worker should be sought. The named library will be dynamically loaded by the worker process and bgw_function_name will be used to identify the function to be called. If loading a function from the core code, this must be set to "postgres".

bgw_function_name is the name of a function in a dynamically loaded library which should be used as the initial entry point for a new background worker.

bgw_main_arg is the Datum argument to the background worker main function. This main function should take a single argument of type Datum and return void. bgw_main_arg will be passed as the argument. In addition, the global variable MyBgworkerEntry points to a copy of the BackgroundWorker structure passed at registration time; the worker may find it helpful to examine this structure.

On Windows (and anywhere else where EXEC_BACKEND is defined) or in dynamic background workers it is not safe to pass a Datum by reference, only by value. If an argument is required, it is safest to pass an int32 or other small value and use that as an index into an array allocated in shared memory. If a value like a cstring or text is passed then the pointer won't be valid from the new background worker process.

bgw_extra can contain extra data to be passed to the background worker. Unlike bgw_main_arg, this data is not passed as an argument to the worker's main function, but it can be accessed via MyBgworkerEntry, as discussed above.

bgw_notify_pid is the PID of a Postgres Pro backend process to which the postmaster should send SIGUSR1 when the process is started or exits. It should be 0 for workers registered at postmaster startup time, or when the backend registering the worker does not wish to wait for the worker to start up. Otherwise, it should be initialized to MyProcPid.

Once running, the process can connect to a database by calling BackgroundWorkerInitializeConnection(char *dbname, char *username, uint32 flags) or BackgroundWorkerInitializeConnectionByOid(Oid dboid, Oid useroid, uint32 flags). This allows the process to run transactions and queries using the SPI interface. If dbname is NULL or dboid is InvalidOid, the session is not connected to any particular database, but shared catalogs can be accessed. If username is NULL or useroid is InvalidOid, the process will run as the superuser created during initdb. If BGWORKER_BYPASS_ALLOWCONN is specified as flags it is possible to bypass the restriction to connect to databases not allowing user connections. A background worker can only call one of these two functions, and only once. It is not possible to switch databases.

Signals are initially blocked when control reaches the background worker's main function, and must be unblocked by it; this is to allow the process to customize its signal handlers, if necessary. Signals can
be unblocked in the new process by calling `BackgroundWorker UnblockSignals` and blocked by calling `BackgroundWorkerBlockSignals`.

If `bgw_restart_time` for a background worker is configured as `BGW_NEVER_RESTART`, or if it exits with an exit code of 0 or is terminated by `TerminateBackgroundWorker`, it will be automatically unregistered by the postmaster on exit. Otherwise, it will be restarted after the time period configured via `bgw_restart_time`, or immediately if the postmaster reinitializes the cluster due to a backend failure. Backends which need to suspend execution only temporarily should use an interruptible sleep rather than exiting; this can be achieved by calling `WaitLatch()`. Make sure the `WL_POSTMASTER_DEATH` flag is set when calling that function, and verify the return code for a prompt exit in the emergency case that `postgres` itself has terminated.

When a background worker is registered using the `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker` function, it is possible for the backend performing the registration to obtain information regarding the status of the worker. Backends wishing to do this should pass the address of a `BackgroundWorkerHandle *` as the second argument to `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker`. If the worker is successfully registered, this pointer will be initialized with an opaque handle that can subsequently be passed to `GetBackgroundWorkerPid(BackgroundWorkerHandle *, pid_t *)` or `TerminateBackgroundWorker(BackgroundWorkerHandle *)`. `GetBackgroundWorkerPid` can be used to poll the status of the worker: a return value of `BGWH_NOT_YET_STARTED` indicates that the worker has not yet been started by the postmaster; `BGWH_STOPPED` indicates that it has been started but is no longer running; and `BGWH_STARTED` indicates that it is currently running. In this last case, the PID will also be returned via the second argument. `TerminateBackgroundWorker` causes the postmaster to send `SIGTERM` to the worker if it is running, and to unregister it as soon as it is not.

In some cases, a process which registers a background worker may wish to wait for the worker to start up. This can be accomplished by initializing `bgw_notify_pid` to `MyProcPid` and then passing the `BackgroundWorkerHandle *` obtained at registration time to `WaitForBackgroundWorkerStartup(BackgroundWorkerHandle *handle, pid_t *)` function. This function will block until the postmaster has attempted to start the background worker, or until the postmaster dies. If the background worker is running, the return value will be `BGWH_STARTED`, and the PID will be written to the provided address. Otherwise, the return value will be `BGWH_STOPPED` or `BGWH_POSTMASTER_DIED`.

A process can also wait for a background worker to shut down, by using the `WaitForBackgroundWorkerShutdown(BackgroundWorkerHandle *handle)` function and passing the `BackgroundWorkerHandle *` obtained at registration. This function will block until the background worker exits, or postmaster dies. When the background worker exits, the return value is `BGWH_STOPPED`, if postmaster dies it will return `BGWH_POSTMASTER_DIED`.

Background workers can send asynchronous notification messages, either by using the `NOTIFY` command via SPI, or directly via `Async_Notify()`. Such notifications will be sent at transaction commit. Background workers should not register to receive asynchronous notifications with the `LISTEN` command, as there is no infrastructure for a worker to consume such notifications.

The maximum number of registered background workers is limited by `max_worker_processes`. 
Chapter 47. Logical Decoding

Postgres Pro provides infrastructure to stream the modifications performed via SQL to external consumers. This functionality can be used for a variety of purposes, including replication solutions and auditing.

Changes are sent out in streams identified by logical replication slots.

The format in which those changes are streamed is determined by the output plugin used. An example plugin is provided in the Postgres Pro distribution. Additional plugins can be written to extend the choice of available formats without modifying any core code. Every output plugin has access to each individual new row produced by `INSERT` and the new row version created by `UPDATE`. Availability of old row versions for `UPDATE` and `DELETE` depends on the configured replica identity (see `REPLICA IDENTITY`).

Changes can be consumed either using the streaming replication protocol (see Section 51.4 and Section 47.3), or by calling functions via SQL (see Section 47.4). It is also possible to write additional methods of consuming the output of a replication slot without modifying core code (see Section 47.7).

47.1. Logical Decoding Examples

The following example demonstrates controlling logical decoding using the SQL interface.

Before you can use logical decoding, you must set `wal_level` to `logical` and `max_replication_slots` to at least 1. Then, you should connect to the target database (in the example below, `postgres`) as a superuser.

```sql
postgres=# -- Create a slot named 'regression_slot' using the output plugin 'test_decoding'
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_create_logical_replication_slot('regression_slot', 'test_decoding', false, true);

  slot_name    |    lsn
-----------------+-----------
    regression_slot | 0/16B1970

(1 row)

postgres=# SELECT slot_name, plugin, slot_type, database, active, restart_lsn,
          confirmed_flush_lsn FROM pg_replication_slots;

  slot_name    |    plugin     | slot_type | database | active | restart_lsn |
-----------------+---------------+-----------+----------+--------+-------------
    regression_slot | test_decoding | logical   | postgres | f      | 0/16A4408   |
                      |              |           |          |        | 0/16A4440   |

(1 row)

postgres=# -- There are no changes to see yet
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);

  lsn    | xid  |     data
-------+-------+--------------

(0 rows)

postgres=# CREATE TABLE data(id serial primary key, data text);
CREATE TABLE

postgres=# -- DDL isn't replicated, so all you'll see is the transaction
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);

  lsn       |  xid  |     data
-----------+-------+--------------
  0/BA2DA58 |  10297 | BEGIN 10297
  0/BA5A5A0 |  10297 | COMMIT 10297
```

1240
Logical Decoding

postgres=# -- Once changes are read, they're consumed and not emitted
postgres=# -- in a subsequent call:
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);

lsn | xid | data
-----+-----+------

(0 rows)

postgres=# BEGIN;
postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('1');
postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('2');
postgres=# COMMIT;

postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);

lsn | xid | data
-----+-----+-------------------------
0/BA5A688 | 10298 | BEGIN 10298
0/BA5A6F0 | 10298 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:1 data[text]:'1'
0/BA5A7F8 | 10298 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:2 data[text]:'2'
0/BA5A8A8 | 10298 | COMMIT 10298

(4 rows)

postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('3');

postgres=# -- You can also peek ahead in the change stream without consuming changes
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_peek_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);

lsn | xid | data
-----+-----+-------------------------
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | BEGIN 10299
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:3 data[text]:'3'
0/BA5A990 | 10299 | COMMIT 10299

(3 rows)

postgres=# -- The next call to pg_logical_slot_peek_changes() returns the same changes again
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_peek_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);

lsn | xid | data
-----+-----+-------------------------
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | BEGIN 10299
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:3 data[text]:'3'
0/BA5A990 | 10299 | COMMIT 10299

(3 rows)

postgres=# -- options can be passed to output plugin, to influence the formatting
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_peek_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL, 'include-timestamp', 'on');

lsn | xid | data
-----+-----+-------------------------
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | BEGIN 10299
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:3 data[text]:'3'
0/BA5A990 | 10299 | COMMIT 10299 (at 2017-05-10 12:07:21.272494-04)

(3 rows)

postgres=# -- Remember to destroy a slot you no longer need to stop it consuming
postgres=# -- server resources:
postgres=# SELECT pg_drop_replication_slot('regression_slot');
The following example shows how logical decoding is controlled over the streaming replication protocol, using the program `pg_recvlogical` included in the Postgres Pro distribution. This requires that client authentication is set up to allow replication connections (see Section 25.2.5.1) and that `max_wal_senders` is set sufficiently high to allow an additional connection.

```
$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --create-slot
$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --start -f -
$ psql -d postgres -c "INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('4');"
$ fg
BEGIN 693
table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:4 data[text]:'4'
COMMIT 693
$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --drop-slot
```

The following example shows SQL interface that can be used to decode prepared transactions. Before you use two-phase commit commands, you must set `max_prepared_transactions` to at least 1. You must also have set the two-phase parameter as 'true' while creating the slot using `pg_create_logical_replication_slot`. Note that we will stream the entire transaction after the commit if it is not already decoded.

```
postgres=# BEGIN;
postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('5');
postgres=# PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test_prepared1';

postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
      lsn     |   xid    |                          data
-----------------+----------|----------------------------------
0/1689DC0        | 529      | BEGIN 529
0/1689DC0        | 529      | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:3 data[text]:'5'
0/1689FC0        | 529      | PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test_prepared1', txid 529
(3 rows)

postgres=# COMMIT PREPARED 'test_prepared1';
postgres=# select * from pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
      lsn     |   xid    |                          data
-----------------+----------|----------------------------------
0/168A060        | 529      | COMMIT PREPARED 'test_prepared1', txid 529
(4 row)

postgres=#-- you can also rollback a prepared transaction
postgres=# BEGIN;
postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('6');
postgres=# PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test_prepared2';
postgres=# select * from pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
      lsn     |   xid    |                          data
-----------------+----------|----------------------------------
0/168A180        | 530      | BEGIN 530
0/168A1E8        | 530      | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:4 data[text]:'6'
0/168A430        | 530      | PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test_prepared2', txid 530
(3 rows)

postgres=# ROLLBACK PREPARED 'test_prepared2';
postgres=# select * from pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
```
47.2. Logical Decoding Concepts

47.2.1. Logical Decoding

Logical decoding is the process of extracting all persistent changes to a database’s tables into a coherent, easy to understand format which can be interpreted without detailed knowledge of the database’s internal state.

In Postgres Pro, logical decoding is implemented by decoding the contents of the write-ahead log, which describe changes on a storage level, into an application-specific form such as a stream of tuples or SQL statements.

47.2.2. Replication Slots

In the context of logical replication, a slot represents a stream of changes that can be replayed to a client in the order they were made on the origin server. Each slot streams a sequence of changes from a single database.

Note

Postgres Pro also has streaming replication slots (see Section 25.2.5), but they are used somewhat differently there.

A replication slot has an identifier that is unique across all databases in a Postgres Pro cluster. Slots persist independently of the connection using them and are crash-safe.

A logical slot will emit each change just once in normal operation. The current position of each slot is persisted only at checkpoint, so in the case of a crash the slot may return to an earlier LSN, which will then cause recent changes to be sent again when the server restarts. Logical decoding clients are responsible for avoiding ill effects from handling the same message more than once. Clients may wish to record the last LSN they saw when decoding and skip over any repeated data or (when using the replication protocol) request that decoding start from that LSN rather than letting the server determine the start point. The Replication Progress Tracking feature is designed for this purpose, refer to replication origins.

Multiple independent slots may exist for a single database. Each slot has its own state, allowing different consumers to receive changes from different points in the database change stream. For most applications, a separate slot will be required for each consumer.

A logical replication slot knows nothing about the state of the receiver(s). It’s even possible to have multiple different receivers using the same slot at different times; they’ll just get the changes following on from when the last receiver stopped consuming them. Only one receiver may consume changes from a slot at any given time.

Caution

Replication slots persist across crashes and know nothing about the state of their consumer(s). They will prevent removal of required resources even when there is no connection using them. This consumes storage because neither required WAL nor required rows from the system catalogs can be removed by VACUUM as long as they are required by a replication slot. In extreme cases this could cause the database to shut down to prevent transaction ID wraparound (see Section 23.1.5). So if a slot is no longer required it should be dropped.
47.2.3. Output Plugins

Output plugins transform the data from the write-ahead log's internal representation into the format the consumer of a replication slot desires.

47.2.4. Exported Snapshots

When a new replication slot is created using the streaming replication interface (see CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT), a snapshot is exported (see Section 9.27.5), which will show exactly the state of the database after which all changes will be included in the change stream. This can be used to create a new replica by using SET TRANSACTION .SNAPSHOT to read the state of the database at the moment the slot was created. This transaction can then be used to dump the database's state at that point in time, which afterwards can be updated using the slot's contents without losing any changes.

Creation of a snapshot is not always possible. In particular, it will fail when connected to a hot standby. Applications that do not require snapshot export may suppress it with the NOEXPORT_SNAPSHOT option.

47.3. Streaming Replication Protocol Interface

The commands

- CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name LOGICAL output_plugin
- DROP_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name [ WAIT ]
- START_REPLICATION SLOT slot_name LOGICAL ...

are used to create, drop, and stream changes from a replication slot, respectively. These commands are only available over a replication connection; they cannot be used via SQL. See Section 51.4 for details on these commands.

The command pg_recvlogical can be used to control logical decoding over a streaming replication connection. (It uses these commands internally.)

47.4. Logical Decoding SQL Interface

See Section 9.27.6 for detailed documentation on the SQL-level API for interacting with logical decoding.

Synchronous replication (see Section 25.2.8) is only supported on replication slots used over the streaming replication interface. The function interface and additional, non-core interfaces do not support synchronous replication.

47.5. System Catalogs Related to Logical Decoding

The pg_replication_slots view and the pg_stat_replication view provide information about the current state of replication slots and streaming replication connections respectively. These views apply to both physical and logical replication. The pg_stat_replication_slots view provides statistics information about the logical replication slots.

47.6. Logical Decoding Output Plugins

An example output plugin can be found in the contrib/test_decoding subdirectory of the Postgres Pro source tree.

47.6.1. Initialization Function

An output plugin is loaded by dynamically loading a shared library with the output plugin's name as the library base name. The normal library search path is used to locate the library. To provide the required output plugin callbacks and to indicate that the library is actually an output plugin it needs to provide a function named _PG_output_plugin_init. This function is passed a struct that needs to be filled with the callback function pointers for individual actions.
typedef struct OutputPluginCallbacks
{
    LogicalDecodeStartupCB startup_cb;
    LogicalDecodeBeginCB begin_cb;
    LogicalDecodeChangeCB change_cb;
    LogicalDecodeTruncateCB truncate_cb;
    LogicalDecodeCommitCB commit_cb;
    LogicalDecodeMessageCB message_cb;
    LogicalDecodeFilterByOriginCB filter_by_origin_cb;
    LogicalDecodeShutdownCB shutdown_cb;
    LogicalDecodeFilterPrepareCB filter_prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodeBeginPrepareCB begin_prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodePrepareCB prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodeCommitPrepareCB commit_prepared_cb;
    LogicalDecodeRollbackPrepareCB rollback_prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamStartCB stream_start_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamStopCB stream_stop_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamAbortCB stream_abort_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamPrepareCB stream_prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamCommitCB stream_commit_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamMessageCB stream_message_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamTruncateCB stream_truncate_cb;
} OutputPluginCallbacks;

typedef void (*LogicalOutputPluginInit) (struct OutputPluginCallbacks *cb);

The begin_cb, change_cb and commit_cb callbacks are required, while startup_cb, filter_by_origin_cb, truncate_cb, and shutdown_cb are optional. If truncate_cb is not set but a TRUNCATE is to be decoded, the action will be ignored.

An output plugin may also define functions to support streaming of large, in-progress transactions. The stream_start_cb, stream_stop_cb, stream_abort_cb, stream_commit_cb, stream_change_cb, and stream_prepare_cb are required, while stream_message_cb and stream_truncate_cb are optional.

An output plugin may also define functions to support two-phase commits, which allows actions to be decoded on the PREPARE TRANSACTION. The begin_prepare_cb, prepare_cb, stream_prepare_cb, commit_prepared_cb and rollback_prepared_cb callbacks are required, while filter_prepare_cb is optional.

47.6.2. Capabilities

To decode, format and output changes, output plugins can use most of the backend’s normal infrastructure, including calling output functions. Read only access to relations is permitted as long as only relations are accessed that either have been created by initdb in the pg_catalog schema, or have been marked as user provided catalog tables using

ALTER TABLE user_catalog_table SET (user_catalog_table = true);
CREATE TABLE another_catalog_table(data text) WITH (user_catalog_table = true);

Note that access to user catalog tables or regular system catalog tables in the output plugins has to be done via the systable_* scan APIs only. Access via the heap_* scan APIs will error out. Additionally, any actions leading to transaction ID assignment are prohibited. That, among others, includes writing to tables, performing DDL changes, and calling pg_current_xact_id().

47.6.3. Output Modes

Output plugin callbacks can pass data to the consumer in nearly arbitrary formats. For some use cases, like viewing the changes via SQL, returning data in a data type that can contain arbitrary data (e.g., bytea) is cumbersome. If the output plugin only outputs textual data in the server’s encoding, it can
declare that by setting `OutputPluginOptions.output_type` to `OUTPUT_PLUGIN_TEXTUAL_OUTPUT` instead of `OUTPUT_PLUGIN_BINARY_OUTPUT` in the startup callback. In that case, all the data has to be in the server's encoding so that a text datum can contain it. This is checked in assertion-enabled builds.

### 47.6.4. Output Plugin Callbacks

An output plugin gets notified about changes that are happening via various callbacks it needs to provide.

Concurrent transactions are decoded in commit order, and only changes belonging to a specific transaction are decoded between the `begin` and `commit` callbacks. Transactions that were rolled back explicitly or implicitly never get decoded. Successful savepoints are folded into the transaction containing them in the order they were executed within that transaction. A transaction that is prepared for a two-phase commit using `PREPARE TRANSACTION` will also be decoded if the output plugin callbacks needed for decoding them are provided. It is possible that the current prepared transaction which is being decoded is aborted concurrently via a `ROLLBACK PREPARED` command. In that case, the logical decoding of this transaction will be aborted too. All the changes of such a transaction are skipped once the abort is detected and the `prepare_cb` callback is invoked. Thus even in case of a concurrent abort, enough information is provided to the output plugin for it to properly deal with `ROLLBACK PREPARED` once that is decoded.

---

**Note**

Only transactions that have already safely been flushed to disk will be decoded. That can lead to a `COMMIT` not immediately being decoded in a directly following `pg_logical_slot_get_changes()` when `synchronous_commit` is set to `off`.

---

### 47.6.4.1. Startup Callback

The optional `startup_cb` callback is called whenever a replication slot is created or asked to stream changes, independent of the number of changes that are ready to be put out.

```c
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStartupCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                          OutputPluginOptions *options,
                                          bool is_init);
```

The `is_init` parameter will be true when the replication slot is being created and false otherwise. `options` points to a struct of options that output plugins can set:

```c
typedef struct OutputPluginOptions
{
   OutputPluginOutputType output_type;
   bool receive_rewrites;
} OutputPluginOptions;
```

`output_type` has to either be set to `OUTPUT_PLUGIN_TEXTUAL_OUTPUT` or `OUTPUT_PLUGIN_BINARY_OUTPUT`. See also Section 47.6.3. If `receive_rewrites` is true, the output plugin will also be called for changes made by heap rewrites during certain DDL operations. These are of interest to plugins that handle DDL replication, but they require special handling.

The startup callback should validate the options present in `ctx->output_plugin_options`. If the output plugin needs to have a state, it can use `ctx->output_plugin_private` to store it.

### 47.6.4.2. Shutdown Callback

The optional `shutdown_cb` callback is called whenever a formerly active replication slot is not used anymore and can be used to deallocate resources private to the output plugin. The slot isn't necessarily being dropped, streaming is just being stopped.

```c
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeShutdownCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx);
```
47.6.4.3. Transaction Begin Callback
The required `begin_cb` callback is called whenever a start of a committed transaction has been decoded. Aborted transactions and their contents never get decoded.

```c
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeBeginCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                      ReorderBufferTXN *txn);
```

The `txn` parameter contains meta information about the transaction, like the time stamp at which it has been committed and its XID.

47.6.4.4. Transaction End Callback
The required `commit_cb` callback is called whenever a transaction commit has been decoded. The `change_cb` callbacks for all modified rows will have been called before this, if there have been any modified rows.

```c
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeCommitCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                        ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                        XLogRecPtr commit_lsn);
```

47.6.4.5. Change Callback
The required `change_cb` callback is called for every individual row modification inside a transaction, may it be an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`. Even if the original command modified several rows at once the callback will be called individually for each row. The `change_cb` callback may access system or user catalog tables to aid in the process of outputting the row modification details. In case of decoding a prepared (but yet uncommitted) transaction or decoding of an uncommitted transaction, this change callback might also error out due to simultaneous rollback of this very same transaction. In that case, the logical decoding of this aborted transaction is stopped gracefully.

```c
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeChangeCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                        ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                        Relation relation,
                                        ReorderBufferChange *change);
```

The `ctx` and `txn` parameters have the same contents as for the `begin_cb` and `commit_cb` callbacks, but additionally the relation descriptor `relation` points to the relation the row belongs to and a struct `change` describing the row modification are passed in.

**Note**
Only changes in user defined tables that are not unlogged (see `UNLOGGED`) and not temporary (see `TEMPORARY` or `TEMP`) can be extracted using logical decoding.

47.6.4.6. Truncate Callback
The `truncate_cb` callback is called for a `TRUNCATE` command.

```c
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeTruncateCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                          ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                          int nrelations,
                                          Relation relations[],
                                          ReorderBufferChange *change);
```

The parameters are analogous to the `change_cb` callback. However, because `TRUNCATE` actions on tables connected by foreign keys need to be executed together, this callback receives an array of relations instead of just a single one. See the description of the `TRUNCATE` statement for details.

47.6.4.7. Origin Filter Callback
The optional `filter_by_origin_cb` callback is called to determine whether data that has been replayed from `origin_id` is of interest to the output plugin.
typedef bool (*LogicalDecodeFilterByOriginCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, RepOriginId origin_id);

The `ctx` parameter has the same contents as for the other callbacks. No information but the origin is available. To signal that changes originating on the passed in node are irrelevant, return true, causing them to be filtered away; false otherwise. The other callbacks will not be called for transactions and changes that have been filtered away.

This is useful when implementing cascading or multidirectional replication solutions. Filtering by the origin allows to prevent replicating the same changes back and forth in such setups. While transactions and changes also carry information about the origin, filtering via this callback is noticeably more efficient.

### 47.6.4.8. Generic Message Callback

The optional `message_cb` callback is called whenever a logical decoding message has been decoded.

```c
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeMessageCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, ReorderBufferTXN *txn, XLogRecPtr message_lsn, bool transactional, const char *prefix, Size message_size, const char *message);
```

The `txn` parameter contains meta information about the transaction, like the time stamp at which it has been committed and its XID. Note however that it can be NULL when the message is non-transactional and the XID was not assigned yet in the transaction which logged the message. The `lsn` has WAL location of the message. The `transactional` says if the message was sent as transactional or not. Similar to the change callback, in case of decoding a prepared (but yet uncommitted) transaction or decoding of an uncommitted transaction, this message callback might also error out due to simultaneous rollback of this very same transaction. In that case, the logical decoding of this aborted transaction is stopped gracefully.

The `prefix` is arbitrary null-terminated prefix which can be used for identifying interesting messages for the current plugin. And finally the `message` parameter holds the actual message of `message_size` size.

Extra care should be taken to ensure that the prefix the output plugin considers interesting is unique. Using name of the extension or the output plugin itself is often a good choice.

### 47.6.4.9. Prepare Filter Callback

The optional `filter_prepare_cb` callback is called to determine whether data that is part of the current two-phase commit transaction should be considered for decoding at this prepare stage or later as a regular one-phase transaction at `COMMIT PREPARED` time. To signal that decoding should be skipped, return `true`; `false` otherwise. When the callback is not defined, `false` is assumed (i.e. no filtering, all transactions using two-phase commit are decoded in two phases as well).

```c
typedef bool (*LogicalDecodeFilterPrepareCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, TransactionId xid, const char *gid);
```

The `ctx` parameter has the same contents as for the other callbacks. The parameters `xid` and `gid` provide two different ways to identify the transaction. The `xid` is the transaction's identifier, while the `gid` is the group identifier. The `gist` of the transaction is used in the `COMMIT PREPARED` or `ROLLBACK PREPARED` commands to specify which transaction should be processed.

The callback may be invoked multiple times per transaction to decode and must provide the same static answer for a given pair of `xid` and `gid` every time it is called.

### 47.6.4.10. Transaction Begin Prepare Callback

The required `begin_prepare_cb` callback is called whenever the start of a prepared transaction has been decoded. The `gid` field, which is part of the `txn` parameter, can be used in this callback to check if the plugin has already received this `PREPARE` in which case it can either error out or skip the remaining changes of the transaction.
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeBeginPrepareCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, ReorderBufferTXN *txn);

47.6.4.11. Transaction Prepare Callback

The required prepare_cb callback is called whenever a transaction which is prepared for two-phase commit has been decoded. The change_cb callback for all modified rows will have been called before this, if there have been any modified rows. The gid field, which is part of the txn parameter, can be used in this callback.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodePrepareCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, ReorderBufferTXN *txn, XLogRecPtr prepare_lsn);

47.6.4.12. Transaction Commit Prepared Callback

The required commit_prepared_cb callback is called whenever a transaction COMMIT PREPARED has been decoded. The gid field, which is part of the txn parameter, can be used in this callback.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeCommitPreparedCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, ReorderBufferTXN *txn, XLogRecPtr commit_lsn);

47.6.4.13. Transaction Rollback Prepared Callback

The required rollback_prepared_cb callback is called whenever a transaction ROLLBACK PREPARED has been decoded. The gid field, which is part of the txn parameter, can be used in this callback. The parameters prepare_end_lsn and prepare_time can be used to check if the plugin has received this PREPARE TRANSACTION in which case it can apply the rollback, otherwise, it can skip the rollback operation. The gid alone is not sufficient because the downstream node can have a prepared transaction with same identifier.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeRollbackPreparedCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, ReorderBufferTXN *txn, XLogRecPtr prepare_end_lsn, TimestampTz prepare_time);

47.6.4.14. Stream Start Callback

The stream_start_cb callback is called when opening a block of streamed changes from an in-progress transaction.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamStartCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, ReorderBufferTXN *txn);

47.6.4.15. Stream Stop Callback

The stream_stop_cb callback is called when closing a block of streamed changes from an in-progress transaction.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamStopCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, ReorderBufferTXN *txn);

47.6.4.16. Stream Abort Callback

The stream_abort_cb callback is called to abort a previously streamed transaction.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamAbortCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, ReorderBufferTXN *txn, XLogRecPtr abort_lsn);

47.6.4.17. Stream Prepare Callback

The stream_prepare_cb callback is called to prepare a previously streamed transaction as part of a two-phase commit.
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamPrepareCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, 
    ReorderBufferTXN *txn, 
    XLogRecPtr prepare_lsn);

47.6.4.18. Stream Commit Callback

The stream_commit_cb callback is called to commit a previously streamed transaction.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamCommitCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, 
    ReorderBufferTXN *txn, 
    XLogRecPtr commit_lsn);

47.6.4.19. Stream Change Callback

The stream_change_cb callback is called when sending a change in a block of streamed changes (demarcated by stream_start_cb and stream_stop_cb calls). The actual changes are not displayed as the transaction can abort at a later point in time and we don't decode changes for aborted transactions.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamChangeCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, 
    ReorderBufferTXN *txn, 
    Relation relation, 
    ReorderBufferChange *change);

47.6.4.20. Stream Message Callback

The stream_message_cb callback is called when sending a generic message in a block of streamed changes (demarcated by stream_start_cb and stream_stop_cb calls). The message contents for transactional messages are not displayed as the transaction can abort at a later point in time and we don't decode changes for aborted transactions.

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamMessageCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, 
    ReorderBufferTXN *txn, 
    XLogRecPtr message_lsn, 
    bool transactional, 
    const char *prefix, 
    Size message_size, 
    const char *message);

47.6.4.21. Stream Truncate Callback

The stream_truncate_cb callback is called for a TRUNCATE command in a block of streamed changes (demarcated by stream_start_cb and stream_stop_cb calls).

typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamTruncateCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx, 
    ReorderBufferTXN *txn, 
    int nrelations, 
    Relation relations[], 
    ReorderBufferChange *change);

The parameters are analogous to the stream_change_cb callback. However, because TRUNCATE actions on tables connected by foreign keys need to be executed together, this callback receives an array of relations instead of just a single one. See the description of the TRUNCATE statement for details.

47.6.5. Functions for Producing Output

To actually produce output, output plugins can write data to the StringInfo output buffer in ctx->out when inside the begin_cb, commit_cb, or change_cb callbacks. Before writing to the output buffer, OutputPluginPrepareWrite(ctx, last_write) has to be called, and after finishing writing to the buffer, OutputPluginWrite(ctx, last_write) has to be called to perform the write. The last_write indicates whether a particular write was the callback's last write.

The following example shows how to output data to the consumer of an output plugin:
Logical Decoding

OutputPluginPrepareWrite(ctx, true);
appendStringInfo(ctx->out, "BEGIN %u", txn->xid);
OutputPluginWrite(ctx, true);

47.7. Logical Decoding Output Writers

It is possible to add more output methods for logical decoding. Essentially, three functions need to be provided: one to read WAL, one to prepare writing output, and one to write the output (see Section 47.6.5).

47.8. Synchronous Replication Support for Logical Decoding

47.8.1. Overview

Logical decoding can be used to build synchronous replication solutions with the same user interface as synchronous replication for streaming replication. To do this, the streaming replication interface (see Section 47.3) must be used to stream out data. Clients have to send Standby status update (F) (see Section 51.4) messages, just like streaming replication clients do.

Note

A synchronous replica receiving changes via logical decoding will work in the scope of a single database. Since, in contrast to that, synchronous_standby_names currently is server wide, this means this technique will not work properly if more than one database is actively used.

47.8.2. Caveats

In synchronous replication setup, a deadlock can happen, if the transaction has locked [user] catalog tables exclusively. See Section 47.6.2 for information on user catalog tables. This is because logical decoding of transactions can lock catalog tables to access them. To avoid this users must refrain from taking an exclusive lock on [user] catalog tables. This can happen in the following ways:

- Issuing an explicit LOCK on pg_class in a transaction.
- Perform CLUSTER on pg_class in a transaction.
- PREPARE TRANSACTION after LOCK command on pg_class and allow logical decoding of two-phase transactions.
- PREPARE TRANSACTION after CLUSTER command on pg_trigger and allow logical decoding of two-phase transactions. This will lead to deadlock only when published table have a trigger.
- Executing TRUNCATE on [user] catalog table in a transaction.

Note that these commands that can cause deadlock apply to not only explicitly indicated system catalog tables above but also to any other [user] catalog table.

47.9. Streaming of Large Transactions for Logical Decoding

The basic output plugin callbacks (e.g., begin_cb, change_cb, commit_cb and message_cb) are only invoked when the transaction actually commits. The changes are still decoded from the transaction log, but are only passed to the output plugin at commit (and discarded if the transaction aborts).

This means that while the decoding happens incrementally, and may spill to disk to keep memory usage under control, all the decoded changes have to be transmitted when the transaction finally commits (or
Logical Decoding

more precisely, when the commit is decoded from the transaction log). Depending on the size of the transaction and network bandwidth, the transfer time may significantly increase the apply lag.

To reduce the apply lag caused by large transactions, an output plugin may provide additional callback to support incremental streaming of in-progress transactions. There are multiple required streaming callbacks (stream_start_cb, stream_stop_cb, stream_abort_cb, stream_commit_cb and stream_change_cb) and two optional callbacks (stream_message_cb and stream_truncate_cb).

When streaming an in-progress transaction, the changes (and messages) are streamed in blocks demarcated by stream_start_cb and stream_stop_cb callbacks. Once all the decoded changes are transmitted, the transaction can be committed using the the stream_commit_cb callback (or possibly aborted using the stream_abort_cb callback). If two-phase commits are supported, the transaction can be prepared using the stream_prepare_cb callback, COMMIT PREPARED using the commit_prepared_cb callback or aborted using the rollback_prepared_cb.

One example sequence of streaming callback calls for one transaction may look like this:

```c
stream_start_cb(...);  <-- start of first block of changes
    stream_change_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
    stream_message_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
    ...
    stream_change_cb(...);
stream_stop_cb(...);    <-- end of first block of changes

stream_start_cb(...);  <-- start of second block of changes
    stream_change_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
    ...
    stream_message_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
stream_stop_cb(...);    <-- end of second block of changes

stream_commit_cb(...);  <-- commit of the streamed transaction
```

The actual sequence of callback calls may be more complicated, of course. There may be blocks for multiple streamed transactions, some of the transactions may get aborted, etc.

Similar to spill-to-disk behavior, streaming is triggered when the total amount of changes decoded from the WAL (for all in-progress transactions) exceeds the limit defined by logical_decoding_work_mem setting. At that point, the largest top-level transaction (measured by the amount of memory currently used for decoded changes) is selected and streamed. However, in some cases we still have to spill to disk even if streaming is enabled because we exceed the memory threshold but still have not decoded the complete tuple e.g., only decoded toast table insert but not the main table insert.

Even when streaming large transactions, the changes are still applied in commit order, preserving the same guarantees as the non-streaming mode.

47.10. Two-phase Commit Support for Logical Decoding

With the basic output plugin callbacks (eg., begin_cb, change_cb, commit_cb and message_cb) two-phase commit commands like PREPARE TRANSACTION, COMMIT PREPARED and ROLLBACK PREPARED are not decoded. While the PREPARE TRANSACTION is ignored, COMMIT PREPARED is decoded as a COMMIT and ROLLBACK PREPARED is decoded as a ROLLBACK.

To support the streaming of two-phase commands, an output plugin needs to provide additional callbacks. There are multiple two-phase commit callbacks that are required, (begin_prepare_cb,
prepare_cb, commit_prepared_cb, rollback_prepared_cb and stream_prepare_cb) and an optional callback (filter_prepare_cb).

If the output plugin callbacks for decoding two-phase commit commands are provided, then on PREPARE TRANSACTION, the changes of that transaction are decoded, passed to the output plugin, and the prepare_cb callback is invoked. This differs from the basic decoding setup where changes are only passed to the output plugin when a transaction is committed. The start of a prepared transaction is indicated by the begin_prepare_cb callback.

When a prepared transaction is rolled back using the ROLLBACK PREPARED, then the rollback_prepared_cb callback is invoked and when the prepared transaction is committed using COMMIT PREPARED, then the commit_prepared_cb callback is invoked.

Optionally the output plugin can define filtering rules via filter_prepare_cb to decode only specific transaction in two phases. This can be achieved by pattern matching on the gid or via lookups using the xid.

The users that want to decode prepared transactions need to be careful about below mentioned points:

- If the prepared transaction has locked [user] catalog tables exclusively then decoding prepare can block till the main transaction is committed.
- The logical replication solution that builds distributed two phase commit using this feature can deadlock if the prepared transaction has locked [user] catalog tables exclusively. To avoid this users must refrain from having locks on catalog tables (e.g. explicit LOCK command) in such transactions. See Section 47.8.2 for the details.
Chapter 48. Replication Progress Tracking

Replication origins are intended to make it easier to implement logical replication solutions on top of logical decoding. They provide a solution to two common problems:

- How to safely keep track of replication progress
- How to change replication behavior based on the origin of a row; for example, to prevent loops in bi-directional replication setups

Replication origins have just two properties, a name and an OID. The name, which is what should be used to refer to the origin across systems, is free-form text. It should be used in a way that makes conflicts between replication origins created by different replication solutions unlikely; e.g., by prefixing the replication solution's name to it. The OID is used only to avoid having to store the long version in situations where space efficiency is important. It should never be shared across systems.

Replication origins can be created using the function `pg_replication_origin_create()`, dropped using `pg_replication_origin_drop()`; and seen in the `pg_replication_origin` system catalog.

One nontrivial part of building a replication solution is to keep track of replay progress in a safe manner. When the applying process, or the whole cluster, dies, it needs to be possible to find out up to where data has successfully been replicated. Naive solutions to this, such as updating a row in a table for every replayed transaction, have problems like run-time overhead and database bloat.

Using the replication origin infrastructure a session can be marked as replaying from a remote node (using the `pg_replication_origin_session_setup()` function). Additionally the LSN and commit time stamp of every source transaction can be configured on a per transaction basis using `pg_replication_origin_xact_setup()`. If that's done replication progress will persist in a crash safe manner. Replay progress for all replication origins can be seen in the `pg_replication_origin_status` view. An individual origin's progress, e.g., when resuming replication, can be acquired using `pg_replication_origin_progress()` for any origin or `pg_replication_origin_session_progress()` for the origin configured in the current session.

In replication topologies more complex than replication from exactly one system to one other system, another problem can be that it is hard to avoid replicating replayed rows again. That can lead both to cycles in the replication and inefficiencies. Replication origins provide an optional mechanism to recognize and prevent that. When configured using the functions referenced in the previous paragraph, every change and transaction passed to output plugin callbacks (see Section 47.6) generated by the session is tagged with the replication origin of the generating session. This allows treating them differently in the output plugin, e.g., ignoring all but locally-originating rows. Additionally the `filter_by_origin_cb` callback can be used to filter the logical decoding change stream based on the source. While less flexible, filtering via that callback is considerably more efficient than doing it in the output plugin.
Part VI. Reference

The entries in this Reference are meant to provide in reasonable length an authoritative, complete, and formal summary about their respective subjects. More information about the use of Postgres Pro, in narrative, tutorial, or example form, can be found in other parts of this book. See the cross-references listed on each reference page.

The reference entries are also available as traditional “man” pages.
SQL Commands

This part contains reference information for the SQL commands supported by Postgres Pro. By “SQL” the language in general is meant; information about the standards conformance and compatibility of each command can be found on the respective reference page.
ABORT

ABORT — abort the current transaction

Synopsis

ABORT [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ AND [ NO ] CHAIN ]

Description

ABORT rolls back the current transaction and causes all the updates made by the transaction to be discarded. This command is identical in behavior to the standard SQL command ROLLBACK, and is present only for historical reasons.

Parameters

WORK
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

AND CHAIN

If AND CHAIN is specified, a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION) as the just finished one. Otherwise, no new transaction is started.

Notes

Use COMMIT to successfully terminate a transaction.

Issuing ABORT outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

Examples

To abort all changes:

ABORT;

Compatibility

This command is a Postgres Pro extension present for historical reasons. ROLLBACK is the equivalent standard SQL command.

See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK
ALTER AGGREGATE

ALTER AGGREGATE — change the definition of an aggregate function

Synopsis

```
ALTER AGGREGATE name ( aggregate_signature ) RENAME TO new_name
ALTER AGGREGATE name ( aggregate_signature )
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER AGGREGATE name ( aggregate_signature ) SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

where `aggregate_signature` is:

```
* |
[ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] |
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ]
```

Description

ALTER AGGREGATE changes the definition of an aggregate function.

You must own the aggregate function to use ALTER AGGREGATE. To change the schema of an aggregate function, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the aggregate function's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the aggregate function. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any aggregate function anyway.)

Parameters

- `name`
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing aggregate function.

- `argmode`
  The mode of an argument: IN or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN.

- `argname`
  The name of an argument. Note that ALTER AGGREGATE does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the aggregate function's identity.

- `argtype`
  An input data type on which the aggregate function operates. To reference a zero-argument aggregate function, write `*` in place of the list of argument specifications. To reference an ordered-set aggregate function, write ORDER BY between the direct and aggregated argument specifications.

- `new_name`
  The new name of the aggregate function.

- `new_owner`
  The new owner of the aggregate function.

- `new_schema`
  The new schema for the aggregate function.
Notes

The recommended syntax for referencing an ordered-set aggregate is to write ORDER BY between the direct and aggregated argument specifications, in the same style as in CREATE AGGREGATE. However, it will also work to omit ORDER BY and just run the direct and aggregated argument specifications into a single list. In this abbreviated form, if VARIADIC "any" was used in both the direct and aggregated argument lists, write VARIADIC "any" only once.

Examples

To rename the aggregate function myavg for type integer to my_average:
ALTER AGGREGATE myavg(integer) RENAME TO my_average;

To change the owner of the aggregate function myavg for type integer to joe:
ALTER AGGREGATE myavg(integer) OWNER TO joe;

To move the ordered-set aggregate mypercentile with direct argument of type float8 and aggregated argument of type integer into schema myschema:
ALTER AGGREGATE mypercentile(float8 ORDER BY integer) SET SCHEMA myschema;

This will work too:
ALTER AGGREGATE mypercentile(float8, integer) SET SCHEMA myschema;

Compatibility

There is no ALTER AGGREGATE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE AGGREGATE, DROP AGGREGATE
ALTER COLLATION

ALTER COLLATION — change the definition of a collation

Synopsis

ALTER COLLATION name REFRESH VERSION

ALTER COLLATION name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER COLLATION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER COLLATION name SET SCHEMA new_schema

Description

ALTER COLLATION changes the definition of a collation.

You must own the collation to use ALTER COLLATION. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the collation's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the collation. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any collation anyway.)

Parameters

name
    The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing collation.

new_name
    The new name of the collation.

new_owner
    The new owner of the collation.

new_schema
    The new schema for the collation.

REFRESH VERSION
    Update the collation's version. See Notes below.

Notes

When using collations provided by the ICU library, the ICU-specific version of the collator is recorded in the system catalog when the collation object is created. When the collation is used, the current version is checked against the recorded version, and a warning is issued when there is a mismatch, for example:

WARNING:  collation "xx-x-icu" has version mismatch
DETAIL:  The collation in the database was created using version 1.2.3.4, but the operating system provides version 2.3.4.5.
HINT:  Rebuild all objects affected by this collation and run ALTER COLLATION pg_catalog."xx-x-icu" REFRESH VERSION, or build Postgres Pro with the right library version.

A change in collation definitions can lead to corrupt indexes and other problems because the database system relies on stored objects having a certain sort order. Generally, this should be avoided, but it can happen in legitimate circumstances, such as when using pg_upgrade to upgrade to server binaries.
linked with a newer version of ICU. When this happens, all objects depending on the collation should be rebuilt, for example, using \texttt{REINDEX}. When that is done, the collation version can be refreshed using the command \texttt{ALTER COLLATION ... REFRESH VERSION}. This will update the system catalog to record the current collator version and will make the warning go away. Note that this does not actually check whether all affected objects have been rebuilt correctly.

When using collations provided by \texttt{libc}, version information is recorded on systems using the GNU C library (most Linux systems), FreeBSD and Windows.

\begin{quote}
\textbf{Note}

When using the GNU C library for collations, the C library's version is used as a proxy for the collation version. Many Linux distributions change collation definitions only when upgrading the C library, but this approach is imperfect as maintainers are free to back-port newer collation definitions to older C library releases.

When using Windows for collations, version information is only available for collations defined with BCP 47 language tags such as \texttt{en-US}.

\end{quote}

Currently, there is no version tracking for the database default collation.

The following query can be used to identify all collations in the current database that need to be refreshed and the objects that depend on them:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT pg_describe_object(refclassid, refobjid, refobjsubid) AS "Collation",
  pg_describe_object(classid, objid, objsubid) AS "Object"
FROM pg_depend d JOIN pg_collation c
  ON refclassid = 'pg_collation'::regclass AND refobjid = c.oid
WHERE c.collversion <> pg_collation_actual_version(c.oid)
ORDER BY 1, 2;
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Examples}

To rename the collation \texttt{ru_RU} to \texttt{russian}:

\begin{verbatim}
ALTER COLLATION "ru_RU" RENAME TO russian;
\end{verbatim}

To change the owner of the collation \texttt{en_US} to \texttt{joe}:

\begin{verbatim}
ALTER COLLATION "en_US" OWNER TO joe;
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Compatibility}

There is no \texttt{ALTER COLLATION} statement in the SQL standard.

\textbf{See Also}

\texttt{CREATE COLLATION, DROP COLLATION}
ALTER CONVERSION

ALTER CONVERSION — change the definition of a conversion

Synopsis

ALTER CONVERSION name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER CONVERSION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER CONVERSION name SET SCHEMA new_schema

Description

ALTER CONVERSION changes the definition of a conversion.

You must own the conversion to use ALTER CONVERSION. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the conversion's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the conversion. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any conversion anyway.)

Parameters

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing conversion.

new_name

The new name of the conversion.

new_owner

The new owner of the conversion.

new_schema

The new schema for the conversion.

Examples

To rename the conversion iso_8859_1_to_utf8 to latin1_to_unicode:
ALTER CONVERSION iso_8859_1_to_utf8 RENAME TO latin1_to_unicode;

To change the owner of the conversion iso_8859_1_to_utf8 to joe:
ALTER CONVERSION iso_8859_1_to_utf8 OWNER TO joe;

Compatibility

There is no ALTER CONVERSION statement in the SQL standard.

See Also
CREATE CONVERSION, DROP CONVERSION
ALTER DATABASE
ALTER DATABASE — change a database

Synopsis
ALTER DATABASE name [ [ WITH ] option [ ... ] ]

where option can be:

   ALLOW_CONNECTIONS allowconn
   CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
   IS_TEMPLATE istemplate

ALTER DATABASE name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER DATABASE name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER DATABASE name SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace
ALTER DATABASE name SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
ALTER DATABASE name SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
ALTER DATABASE name RESET configuration_parameter
ALTER DATABASE name RESET ALL

Description
ALTER DATABASE changes the attributes of a database.

The first form changes certain per-database settings. (See below for details.) Only the database owner or a superuser can change these settings.

The second form changes the name of the database. Only the database owner or a superuser can rename a database; non-superuser owners must also have the CREATEDB privilege. The current database cannot be renamed. (Connect to a different database if you need to do that.)

The third form changes the owner of the database. To alter the owner, you must own the database and also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and you must have the CREATEDB privilege. (Note that superusers have all these privileges automatically.)

The fourth form changes the default tablespace of the database. Only the database owner or a superuser can do this; you must also have create privilege for the new tablespace. This command physically moves any tables or indexes in the database's old default tablespace to the new tablespace. The new default tablespace must be empty for this database, and no one can be connected to the database. Tables and indexes in non-default tablespaces are unaffected.

The remaining forms change the session default for a run-time configuration variable for a Postgres Pro database. Whenever a new session is subsequently started in that database, the specified value becomes the session default value. The database-specific default overrides whatever setting is present in postgresql.conf or has been received from the postgres command line. Only the database owner or a superuser can change the session defaults for a database. Certain variables cannot be set this way, or can only be set by a superuser.

Parameters

name

The name of the database whose attributes are to be altered.
ALTER DATABASE

allowconn
   If false then no one can connect to this database.

conllimit
   How many concurrent connections can be made to this database. -1 means no limit.

istemplate
   If true, then this database can be cloned by any user with CREATEDB privileges; if false, then only superusers or the owner of the database can clone it.

new_name
   The new name of the database.

new_owner
   The new owner of the database.

new_tablespace
   The new default tablespace of the database.
   This form of the command cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

configuration_parameter
value
   Set this database's session default for the specified configuration parameter to the given value. If value is DEFAULT or, equivalently, RESET is used, the database-specific setting is removed, so the system-wide default setting will be inherited in new sessions. Use RESET ALL to clear all database-specific settings. SET FROM CURRENT saves the session's current value of the parameter as the database-specific value.

   See SET and Chapter 18 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

Notes
   It is also possible to tie a session default to a specific role rather than to a database; see ALTER ROLE. Role-specific settings override database-specific ones if there is a conflict.

Examples
   To disable index scans by default in the database test:
   ALTER DATABASE test SET enable_indexscan TO off;

Compatibility
   The ALTER DATABASE statement is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also
   CREATE DATABASE, DROP DATABASE, SET, CREATE TABLESPACE
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES

ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES — define default access privileges

Synopsis

ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES
  [ FOR { ROLE | USER } target_role [, ... ] ]
  [ IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ... ] ]
  abbreviated_grant_or_revoke

where abbreviated_grant_or_revoke is one of:

GRANT [ { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES | TRIGGER } [, ... ] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON TABLES
TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ... ] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT [ { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE } [, ... ] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON SEQUENCES
TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ... ] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT [ EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON { FUNCTIONS | ROUTINES }
TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ... ] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT [ USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON TYPES
TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ... ] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT [ USAGE | CREATE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON SCHEMAS
TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ... ] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
  [ { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES | TRIGGER } [, ... ] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON TABLES
FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ... ]
  [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
  [ { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE } [, ... ] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON SEQUENCES
FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ... ]
  [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
  [ EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON { FUNCTIONS | ROUTINES }
FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ... ]
  [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
  [ USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }

ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES

ON TYPES
FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
{ USAGE | CREATE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON SCHEMAS
FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES allows you to set the privileges that will be applied to objects created in the future. (It does not affect privileges assigned to already-existing objects.) Currently, only the privileges for schemas, tables (including views and foreign tables), sequences, functions, and types (including domains) can be altered. For this command, functions include aggregates and procedures. The words FUNCTIONS and ROUTINES are equivalent in this command. (ROUTINES is preferred going forward as the standard term for functions and procedures taken together. In earlier Postgres Pro releases, only the word FUNCTIONS was allowed. It is not possible to set default privileges for functions and procedures separately.)

You can change default privileges only for objects that will be created by yourself or by roles that you are a member of. The privileges can be set globally (i.e., for all objects created in the current database), or just for objects created in specified schemas.

As explained in Section 5.7, the default privileges for any object type normally grant all grantable permissions to the object owner, and may grant some privileges to PUBLIC as well. However, this behavior can be changed by altering the global default privileges with ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES.

Default privileges that are specified per-schema are added to whatever the global default privileges are for the particular object type. This means you cannot revoke privileges per-schema if they are granted globally (either by default, or according to a previous ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES command that did not specify a schema). Per-schema REVOKE is only useful to reverse the effects of a previous per-schema GRANT.

Parameters

target_role

The name of an existing role of which the current role is a member. If FOR ROLE is omitted, the current role is assumed.

schema_name

The name of an existing schema. If specified, the default privileges are altered for objects later created in that schema. If IN SCHEMA is omitted, the global default privileges are altered. IN SCHEMA is not allowed when setting privileges for schemas, since schemas can’t be nested.

role_name

The name of an existing role to grant or revoke privileges for. This parameter, and all the other parameters in abbreviated_grant_or_revoke, act as described under GRANT or REVOKE, except that one is setting permissions for a whole class of objects rather than specific named objects.

Notes

Use psql’s \ddp command to obtain information about existing assignments of default privileges. The meaning of the privilege display is the same as explained for \dp in Section 5.7.

If you wish to drop a role for which the default privileges have been altered, it is necessary to reverse the changes in its default privileges or use DROP OWNED BY to get rid of the default privileges entry for the role.
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES

Examples

Grant SELECT privilege to everyone for all tables (and views) you subsequently create in schema `myschema`, and allow role `webuser` to INSERT into them too:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema GRANT SELECT ON TABLES TO PUBLIC;
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema GRANT INSERT ON TABLES TO webuser;
```

Undo the above, so that subsequently-created tables won't have any more permissions than normal:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema REVOKE SELECT ON TABLES FROM PUBLIC;
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema REVOKE INSERT ON TABLES FROM webuser;
```

Remove the public EXECUTE permission that is normally granted on functions, for all functions subsequently created by role `admin`:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES FOR ROLE admin REVOKE EXECUTE ON FUNCTIONS FROM PUBLIC;
```

Note however that you cannot accomplish that effect with a command limited to a single schema. This command has no effect, unless it is undoing a matching `GRANT`:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA public REVOKE EXECUTE ON FUNCTIONS FROM PUBLIC;
```

That's because per-schema default privileges can only add privileges to the global setting, not remove privileges granted by it.

Compatibility

There is no `ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES` statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

`GRANT`, `REVOKE`
ALTER DOMAIN

ALTER DOMAIN — change the definition of a domain

Synopsis

ALTER DOMAIN name
   { SET DEFAULT expression | DROP DEFAULT }
ALTER DOMAIN name
   { SET | DROP } NOT NULL
ALTER DOMAIN name
   ADD domain_constraint [ NOT VALID ]
ALTER DOMAIN name
   DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ] constraint_name [ RESTRICT | CASCADE ]
ALTER DOMAIN name
   RENAME CONSTRAINT constraint_name TO new_constraint_name
ALTER DOMAIN name
   VALIDATE CONSTRAINT constraint_name
ALTER DOMAIN name
   OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER DOMAIN name
   RENAME TO new_name
ALTER DOMAIN name
   SET SCHEMA new_schema

Description

ALTER DOMAIN changes the definition of an existing domain. There are several sub-forms:

SET/DROP DEFAULT

These forms set or remove the default value for a domain. Note that defaults only apply to subsequent INSERT commands; they do not affect rows already in a table using the domain.

SET/DROP NOT NULL

These forms change whether a domain is marked to allow NULL values or to reject NULL values. You can only SET NOT NULL when the columns using the domain contain no null values.

ADD domain_constraint [ NOT VALID ]

This form adds a new constraint to a domain using the same syntax as CREATE DOMAIN. When a new constraint is added to a domain, all columns using that domain will be checked against the newly added constraint. These checks can be suppressed by adding the new constraint using the NOT VALID option; the constraint can later be made valid using ALTER DOMAIN ... VALIDATE CONSTRAINT. Newly inserted or updated rows are always checked against all constraints, even those marked NOT VALID. NOT VALID is only accepted for CHECK constraints.

DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ]

This form drops constraints on a domain. If IF EXISTS is specified and the constraint does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

RENAME CONSTRAINT

This form changes the name of a constraint on a domain.

VALIDATE CONSTRAINT

This form validates a constraint previously added as NOT VALID, that is, it verifies that all values in table columns of the domain type satisfy the specified constraint.
ALTER DOMAIN

OWNER

This form changes the owner of the domain to the specified user.

RENAME

This form changes the name of the domain.

SET SCHEMA

This form changes the schema of the domain. Any constraints associated with the domain are moved into the new schema as well.

You must own the domain to use ALTER DOMAIN. To change the schema of a domain, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the domain's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the domain. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any domain anyway.)

Parameters

name

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing domain to alter.

domain_constraint

New domain constraint for the domain.

constraint_name

Name of an existing constraint to drop or rename.

NOT VALID

Do not verify existing stored data for constraint validity.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the constraint, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default behavior.

new_name

The new name for the domain.

new_constraint_name

The new name for the constraint.

new_owner

The user name of the new owner of the domain.

new_schema

The new schema for the domain.

Notes

Although ALTER DOMAIN ADD CONSTRAINT attempts to verify that existing stored data satisfies the new constraint, this check is not bulletproof, because the command cannot “see” table rows that are newly inserted or updated and not yet committed. If there is a hazard that concurrent operations might
insert bad data, the way to proceed is to add the constraint using the **NOT VALID** option, commit that command, wait until all transactions started before that commit have finished, and then issue `ALTER DOMAIN VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` to search for data violating the constraint. This method is reliable because once the constraint is committed, all new transactions are guaranteed to enforce it against new values of the domain type.

Currently, `ALTER DOMAIN ADD CONSTRAINT`, `ALTER DOMAIN VALIDATE CONSTRAINT`, and `ALTER DOMAIN SET NOT NULL` will fail if the named domain or any derived domain is used within a container-type column (a composite, array, or range column) in any table in the database. They should eventually be improved to be able to verify the new constraint for such nested values.

### Examples

To add a **NOT NULL** constraint to a domain:

```sql
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode SET NOT NULL;
```

To remove a **NOT NULL** constraint from a domain:

```sql
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode DROP NOT NULL;
```

To add a check constraint to a domain:

```sql
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK (char_length(VALUE) = 5);
```

To remove a check constraint from a domain:

```sql
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;
```

To rename a check constraint on a domain:

```sql
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode RENAME CONSTRAINT zipchk TO zip_check;
```

To move the domain into a different schema:

```sql
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode SET SCHEMA customers;
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER DOMAIN` conforms to the SQL standard, except for the **OWNER**, **RENAME**, **SET SCHEMA**, and **VALIDATE CONSTRAINT** variants, which are Postgres Pro extensions. The **NOT VALID** clause of the **ADD CONSTRAINT** variant is also a Postgres Pro extension.

### See Also

- `CREATE DOMAIN`
- `DROP DOMAIN`
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER

ALTER EVENT TRIGGER — change the definition of an event trigger

Synopsis

ALTER EVENT TRIGGER name DISABLE
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER name ENABLE [ REPLICA | ALWAYS ]
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER name RENAME TO new_name

Description

ALTER EVENT TRIGGER changes properties of an existing event trigger.

You must be superuser to alter an event trigger.

Parameters

name

The name of an existing trigger to alter.

new_owner

The user name of the new owner of the event trigger.

new_name

The new name of the event trigger.

DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICA | ALWAYS ] TRIGGER

These forms configure the firing of event triggers. A disabled trigger is still known to the system, but is not executed when its triggering event occurs. See also session_replication_role.

Compatibility

There is no ALTER EVENT TRIGGER statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER, DROP EVENT TRIGGER
ALTER EXTENSION

ALTER EXTENSION — change the definition of an extension

Synopsis

ALTER EXTENSION name UPDATE [ TO new_version ]
ALTER EXTENSION name SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER EXTENSION name ADD member_object
ALTER EXTENSION name DROP member_object

where member_object is:

ACCESS METHOD object_name |
AGGREGATE aggregate_name ( aggregate_signature ) |
CAST (source_type AS target_type) |
COLLATION object_name |
CONVERSION object_name |
DOMAIN object_name |
EVENT TRIGGER object_name |
FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER object_name |
FOREIGN TABLE object_name |
FUNCTION function_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ] |
MATERIALIZED VIEW object_name |
OPERATOR operator_name (left_type, right_type) |
OPERATOR CLASS object_name USING index_method |
OPERATOR FAMILY object_name USING index_method |
[ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE object_name |
PROCEDURE procedure_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ] |
ROUTINE routine_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ] |
SCHEMA object_name |
SEQUENCE object_name |
SERVER object_name |
TABLE object_name |
TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION object_name |
TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY object_name |
TEXT SEARCH PARSER object_name |
TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE object_name |
TRANSFORM FOR type_name LANGUAGE lang_name |
TYPE object_name |
VIEW object_name |

and aggregate_signature is:

* |
[ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] |
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype |
[ , ... ]

Description

ALTER EXTENSION changes the definition of an installed extension. There are several subforms:

UPDATE

This form updates the extension to a newer version. The extension must supply a suitable update script (or series of scripts) that can modify the currently-installed version into the requested version.
**ALTER EXTENSION**

**SET SCHEMA**

This form moves the extension's objects into another schema. The extension has to be *relocatable* for this command to succeed.

**ADD member_object**

This form adds an existing object to the extension. This is mainly useful in extension update scripts. The object will subsequently be treated as a member of the extension; notably, it can only be dropped by dropping the extension.

**DROP member_object**

This form removes a member object from the extension. This is mainly useful in extension update scripts. The object is not dropped, only disassociated from the extension.

See Section 36.17 for more information about these operations.

You must own the extension to use `ALTER EXTENSION`. The **ADD/DROP** forms require ownership of the added/dropped object as well.

**Parameters**

**name**

The name of an installed extension.

**new_version**

The desired new version of the extension. This can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. If not specified, `ALTER EXTENSION UPDATE` attempts to update to whatever is shown as the default version in the extension's control file.

**new_schema**

The new schema for the extension.

**object_name aggregate_name function_name operator_name procedure_name routine_name**

The name of an object to be added to or removed from the extension. Names of tables, aggregates, domains, foreign tables, functions, operators, operator classes, operator families, procedures, routines, sequences, text search objects, types, and views can be schema-qualified.

**source_type**

The name of the source data type of the cast.

**target_type**

The name of the target data type of the cast.

**argmode**

The mode of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument: **IN**, **OUT**, **INOUT**, or **VARIADIC**. If omitted, the default is **IN**. Note that `ALTER EXTENSION` does not actually pay any attention to **OUT** arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the **IN**, **INOUT**, and **VARIADIC** arguments.
ALTER EXTENSION

argname
The name of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument. Note that ALTER EXTENSION does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function’s identity.

argtype
The data type of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument.

left_type
right_type
The data type(s) of the operator's arguments (optionally schema-qualified). Write NONE for the missing argument of a prefix operator.

PROCEDURAL
This is a noise word.

type_name
The name of the data type of the transform.

lang_name
The name of the language of the transform.

Examples
To update the hstore extension to version 2.0:
ALTER EXTENSION hstore UPDATE TO '2.0';

To change the schema of the hstore extension to utils:
ALTER EXTENSION hstore SET SCHEMA utils;

To add an existing function to the hstore extension:
ALTER EXTENSION hstore ADD FUNCTION populate_record(anyelement, hstore);

Compatibility
ALTER EXTENSION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also
CREATE EXTENSION, DROP EXTENSION
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER — change the definition of a foreign-data wrapper

Synopsis

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER name
   [ HANDLER handler_function | NO HANDLER ]
   [ VALIDATOR validator_function | NO VALIDATOR ]
   [ OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ["value"] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER name RENAME TO new_name

Description

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER changes the definition of a foreign-data wrapper. The first form of the command changes the support functions or the generic options of the foreign-data wrapper (at least one clause is required). The second form changes the owner of the foreign-data wrapper.

Only superusers can alter foreign-data wrappers. Additionally, only superusers can own foreign-data wrappers.

Parameters

name
   The name of an existing foreign-data wrapper.

HANDLER handler_function
   Specifies a new handler function for the foreign-data wrapper.

NO HANDLER
   This is used to specify that the foreign-data wrapper should no longer have a handler function.

   Note that foreign tables that use a foreign-data wrapper with no handler cannot be accessed.

VALIDATOR validator_function
   Specifies a new validator function for the foreign-data wrapper.

   Note that it is possible that pre-existing options of the foreign-data wrapper, or of dependent servers, user mappings, or foreign tables, are invalid according to the new validator. Postgres Pro does not check for this. It is up to the user to make sure that these options are correct before using the modified foreign-data wrapper. However, any options specified in this ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER command will be checked using the new validator.

NO VALIDATOR
   This is used to specify that the foreign-data wrapper should no longer have a validator function.

OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ["value"] [, ... ] )
   Change options for the foreign-data wrapper. ADD, SET, and DROP specify the action to be performed. ADD is assumed if no operation is explicitly specified. Option names must be unique; names and values are also validated using the foreign data wrapper's validator function, if any.

new_owner
   The user name of the new owner of the foreign-data wrapper.
new_name

The new name for the foreign-data wrapper.

Examples

Change a foreign-data wrapper dbi, add option foo, drop bar:
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi OPTIONS (ADD foo '1', DROP 'bar');

Change the foreign-data wrapper dbi validator to bob.myvalidator:
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi VALIDATOR bob.myvalidator;

Compatibility

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), except that the HANDLER, VALIDATOR, OWNER TO, and RENAME clauses are extensions.

See Also

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE — change the definition of a foreign table

Synopsis

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]
  action [, ... ]
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]
  RENAME [ COLUMN ] column_name TO new_column_name
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name
  RENAME TO new_name
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name
  SET SCHEMA new_schema

where action is one of:

  ADD [ COLUMN ] column_name data_type [ COLLATE collation ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
  DROP [ COLUMN ] [ IF EXISTS ] column_name [ RESTRICT | CASCADE ]
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name [ SET DATA ] TYPE data_type [ COLLATE collation ]
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET DEFAULT expression
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP DEFAULT
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name ( SET | DROP ) NOT NULL
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STATISTICS integer
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET ( attribute_option = value [, ... ] )
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name RESET ( attribute_option [, ... ] )
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL | EXTENDED | MAIN }
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option [ 'value' ] [, ... ])
ADD table_constraint [ NOT VALID ]
VALIDATE CONSTRAINT constraint_name
DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ] constraint_name [ RESTRICT | CASCADE ]
DISABLE TRIGGER [ trigger_name | ALL | USER ]
ENABLE TRIGGER [ trigger_name | ALL | USER ]
ENABLE REPLICA TRIGGER trigger_name
ENABLE ALWAYS TRIGGER trigger_name
SET WITHOUT OIDS
INHERIT parent_table
NO INHERIT parent_table
OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option [ 'value' ] [, ... ])

Description

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE changes the definition of an existing foreign table. There are several subforms:

ADD COLUMN

This form adds a new column to the foreign table, using the same syntax as CREATE FOREIGN TABLE. Unlike the case when adding a column to a regular table, nothing happens to the underlying storage: this action simply declares that some new column is now accessible through the foreign table.

DROP COLUMN [ IF EXISTS ]

This form drops a column from a foreign table. You will need to say CASCADE if anything outside the table depends on the column; for example, views. If IF EXISTS is specified and the column does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.
SET DATA TYPE

This form changes the type of a column of a foreign table. Again, this has no effect on any underlying storage: this action simply changes the type that Postgres Pro believes the column to have.

SET/DROP DEFAULT

These forms set or remove the default value for a column. Default values only apply in subsequent INSERT or UPDATE commands; they do not cause rows already in the table to change.

SET/DROP NOT NULL

Mark a column as allowing, or not allowing, null values.

SET STATISTICS

This form sets the per-column statistics-gathering target for subsequent ANALYZE operations. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.

SET ( attribute_option = value [, ... ] )
RESET ( attribute_option [, ... ] )

This form sets or resets per-attribute options. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.

SET STORAGE

This form sets the storage mode for a column. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details. Note that the storage mode has no effect unless the table's foreign-data wrapper chooses to pay attention to it.

ADD table_constraint [ NOT VALID ]

This form adds a new constraint to a foreign table, using the same syntax as CREATE FOREIGN TABLE. Currently only CHECK constraints are supported.

Unlike the case when adding a constraint to a regular table, nothing is done to verify the constraint is correct; rather, this action simply declares that some new condition should be assumed to hold for all rows in the foreign table. (See the discussion in CREATE FOREIGN TABLE.) If the constraint is marked NOT VALID, then it isn't assumed to hold, but is only recorded for possible future use.

VALIDATE CONSTRAINT

This form marks as valid a constraint that was previously marked as NOT VALID. No action is taken to verify the constraint, but future queries will assume that it holds.

DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ]

This form drops the specified constraint on a foreign table. If IF EXISTS is specified and the constraint does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICA | ALWAYS ] TRIGGER

These forms configure the firing of trigger(s) belonging to the foreign table. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.

SET WITHOUT OIDS

Backward compatibility syntax for removing the oid system column. As oid system columns cannot be added anymore, this never has an effect.

INHERIT parent_table

This form adds the target foreign table as a new child of the specified parent table. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE

NO INHERIT parent_table

This form removes the target foreign table from the list of children of the specified parent table.

OWNER

This form changes the owner of the foreign table to the specified user.

OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )

Change options for the foreign table or one of its columns. ADD, SET, and DROP specify the action to be performed. ADD is assumed if no operation is explicitly specified. Duplicate option names are not allowed (although it's OK for a table option and a column option to have the same name). Option names and values are also validated using the foreign data wrapper library.

RENAME

The RENAME forms change the name of a foreign table or the name of an individual column in a foreign table.

SET SCHEMA

This form moves the foreign table into another schema.

All the actions except RENAME and SET SCHEMA can be combined into a list of multiple alterations to apply in parallel. For example, it is possible to add several columns and/or alter the type of several columns in a single command.

If the command is written as ALTER FOREIGN TABLE IF EXISTS ... and the foreign table does not exist, no error is thrown. A notice is issued in this case.

You must own the table to use ALTER FOREIGN TABLE. To change the schema of a foreign table, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the table's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the table. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any table anyway.) To add a column or alter a column type, you must also have USAGE privilege on the data type.

Parameters

name

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing foreign table to alter. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is altered. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are altered. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

column_name

Name of a new or existing column.

new_column_name

New name for an existing column.

new_name

New name for the table.

data_type

Data type of the new column, or new data type for an existing column.

table_constraint

New table constraint for the foreign table.
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE

_constraint_name
Name of an existing constraint to drop.

CASCADE
Automatically drop objects that depend on the dropped column or constraint (for example, views
referencing the column), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT
Refuse to drop the column or constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default
behavior.

_trigger_name
Name of a single trigger to disable or enable.

ALL
Disable or enable all triggers belonging to the foreign table. (This requires superuser privilege if
any of the triggers are internally generated triggers. The core system does not add such triggers to
foreign tables, but add-on code could do so.)

USER
Disable or enable all triggers belonging to the foreign table except for internally generated triggers.

_parent_table
A parent table to associate or de-associate with this foreign table.

_new_owner
The user name of the new owner of the table.

_new_schema
The name of the schema to which the table will be moved.

Notes
The key word COLUMN is noise and can be omitted.

Consistency with the foreign server is not checked when a column is added or removed with ADD COLUMN
or DROP COLUMN, a NOT NULL or CHECK constraint is added, or a column type is changed with SET DATA
TYPE. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the table definition matches the remote side.

Refer to CREATE FOREIGN TABLE for a further description of valid parameters.

Examples
To mark a column as not-null:
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE distributors ALTER COLUMN street SET NOT NULL;

To change options of a foreign table:
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE myschema.distributors OPTIONS (ADD opt1 'value', SET opt2 'value2',
DROP opt3 'value3');

Compatibility
The forms ADD, DROP, and SET DATA TYPE conform with the SQL standard. The other forms are Postgres
Pro extensions of the SQL standard. Also, the ability to specify more than one manipulation in a single
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE command is an extension.
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE DROP COLUMN can be used to drop the only column of a foreign table, leaving a zero-column table. This is an extension of SQL, which disallows zero-column foreign tables.

See Also
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE, DROP FOREIGN TABLE
**ALTER FUNCTION**

**ALTER FUNCTION** — change the definition of a function

**Synopsis**

```
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
  action [ ... ] [ RESTRICT ]
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
  RENAME TO new_name
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
  OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ) ]
  SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ) ]
  [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
```

where action is one of:

- CALLED ON NULL INPUT
- RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
- STRICT
- IMMUTABLE
- STABLE
- VOLATILE
- [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
- [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER
- [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
- PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
- COST execution_cost
- ROWS result_rows
- SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
- SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
- RESET configuration_parameter
- RESET ALL

**Description**

**ALTER FUNCTION** changes the definition of a function.

You must own the function to use **ALTER FUNCTION**. To change a function's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the function's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the function. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any function anyway.)

**Parameters**

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing function. If no argument list is specified, the name must be unique in its schema.

**argmode**

The mode of an argument: **IN**, **OUT**, **INOUT**, or **VARIADIC**. If omitted, the default is **IN**. Note that **ALTER FUNCTION** does not actually pay any attention to **OUT** arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the **IN**, **INOUT**, and **VARIADIC** arguments.

**argname**

The name of an argument. Note that **ALTER FUNCTION** does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.
ALTER FUNCTION

argtype
   The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any.

new_name
   The new name of the function.

new_owner
   The new owner of the function. Note that if the function is marked SECURITY DEFINER, it will subsequently execute as the new owner.

new_schema
   The new schema for the function.

DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
NO DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
   This form marks the function as dependent on the extension, or no longer dependent on that extension if NO is specified. A function that's marked as dependent on an extension is automatically dropped when the extension is dropped.

CALLED ON NULL INPUT
RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
STRICT
   CALLED ON NULL INPUT changes the function so that it will be invoked when some or all of its arguments are null. RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT or STRICT changes the function so that it is not invoked if any of its arguments are null; instead, a null result is assumed automatically. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

IMMUTABLE
STABLE
VOLATILE
   Change the volatility of the function to the specified setting. See CREATE FUNCTION for details.

[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER
[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
   Change whether the function is a security definer or not. The key word EXTERNAL is ignored for SQL conformance. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information about this capability.

PARALLEL
   Change whether the function is deemed safe for parallelism. See CREATE FUNCTION for details.

LEAKPROOF
   Change whether the function is considered leakproof or not. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information about this capability.

COST execution_cost
   Change the estimated execution cost of the function. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

ROWS result_rows
   Change the estimated number of rows returned by a set-returning function. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

SUPPORT support_function
   Set or change the planner support function to use for this function. See Section 36.11 for details. You must be superuser to use this option.
This option cannot be used to remove the support function altogether, since it must name a new
support function. Use CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION if you need to do that.

(configuration_parameter)

value

Add or change the assignment to be made to a configuration parameter when the function is called.
If value is DEFAULT or, equivalently, RESET is used, the function-local setting is removed, so that the
function executes with the value present in its environment. Use RESET ALL to clear all function-local
settings. SET FROM CURRENT saves the value of the parameter that is current when ALTER FUNCTION
is executed as the value to be applied when the function is entered.

See SET and Chapter 18 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

RESTRICT

Ignored for conformance with the SQL standard.

Examples

To rename the function sqrt for type integer to square_root:
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) RENAME TO square_root;

To change the owner of the function sqrt for type integer to joe:
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) OWNER TO joe;

To change the schema of the function sqrt for type integer to maths:
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) SET SCHEMA maths;

To mark the function sqrt for type integer as being dependent on the extension mathlib:
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) DEPENDS ON EXTENSION mathlib;

To adjust the search path that is automatically set for a function:
ALTER FUNCTION check_password(text) SET search_path = admin, pg_temp;

To disable automatic setting of search_path for a function:
ALTER FUNCTION check_password(text) RESET search_path;

The function will now execute with whatever search path is used by its caller.

Compatibility

This statement is partially compatible with the ALTER FUNCTION statement in the SQL standard. The
standard allows more properties of a function to be modified, but does not provide the ability to rename
a function, make a function a security definer, attach configuration parameter values to a function, or
change the owner, schema, or volatility of a function. The standard also requires the RESTRICT key word,
which is optional in Postgres Pro.

See Also

CREATE FUNCTION, DROP FUNCTION, ALTER PROCEDURE, ALTER ROUTINE
ALTER GROUP

ALTER GROUP — change role name or membership

Synopsis

ALTER GROUP  role_specification  ADD USER  user_name  [,  ...  ]
ALTER GROUP  role_specification  DROP USER  user_name  [,  ...  ]

where  role_specification  can be:

    role_name  
    |  CURRENT_ROLE  
    |  CURRENT_USER  
    |  SESSION_USER

ALTER GROUP  group_name  RENAME TO  new_name

Description

ALTER GROUP changes the attributes of a user group. This is an obsolete command, though still accepted for backwards compatibility, because groups (and users too) have been superseded by the more general concept of roles.

The first two variants add users to a group or remove them from a group. (Any role can play the part of either a “user” or a “group” for this purpose.) These variants are effectively equivalent to granting or revoking membership in the role named as the “group”; so the preferred way to do this is to use GRANT or REVOKE.

The third variant changes the name of the group. This is exactly equivalent to renaming the role with ALTER ROLE.

Parameters

group_name
    The name of the group (role) to modify.

user_name
    Users (roles) that are to be added to or removed from the group. The users must already exist; ALTER GROUP does not create or drop users.

new_name
    The new name of the group.

Examples

Add users to a group:

ALTER GROUP  staff  ADD USER  karl,  john;

Remove a user from a group:

ALTER GROUP  workers  DROP USER  beth;

Compatibility

There is no ALTER GROUP statement in the SQL standard.
ALTER GROUP

See Also
GRANT, REVOKE, ALTER ROLE
ALTER INDEX

ALTER INDEX — change the definition of an index

Synopsis

ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name SET TABLESPACE tablespace_name
ALTER INDEX name ATTACH PARTITION index_name
ALTER INDEX name [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name SET ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name RESET ( storage_parameter [, ... ] )
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_number

SET STATISTICS integer
ALTER INDEX ALL IN TABLESPACE name [ OWNED BY role_name [, ... ] ]

SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace [ NOWAIT ]

Description

ALTER INDEX changes the definition of an existing index. There are several subforms described below. Note that the lock level required may differ for each subform. An ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock is held unless explicitly noted. When multiple subcommands are listed, the lock held will be the strictest one required from any subcommand.

RENAME

The RENAME form changes the name of the index. If the index is associated with a table constraint (either UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, or EXCLUDE), the constraint is renamed as well. There is no effect on the stored data.

Renaming an index acquires a SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock.

SET TABLESPACE

This form changes the index's tablespace to the specified tablespace and moves the data file(s) associated with the index to the new tablespace. To change the tablespace of an index, you must own the index and have CREATE privilege on the new tablespace. All indexes in the current database in a tablescape can be moved by using the ALL IN TABLESPACE form, which will lock all indexes to be moved and then move each one. This form also supports OWNED BY, which will only move indexes owned by the roles specified. If the NOWAIT option is specified then the command will fail if it is unable to acquire all of the locks required immediately. Note that system catalogs will not be moved by this command, use ALTER DATABASE or explicit ALTER INDEX invocations instead if desired. See also CREATE TABLESPACE.

ATTACH PARTITION

Causes the named index to become attached to the altered index. The named index must be on a partition of the table containing the index being altered, and have an equivalent definition. An attached index cannot be dropped by itself, and will automatically be dropped if its parent index is dropped.

DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
NO DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name

This form marks the index as dependent on the extension, or no longer dependent on that extension if NO is specified. An index that's marked as dependent on an extension is automatically dropped when the extension is dropped.

SET ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )

This form changes one or more index-method-specific storage parameters for the index. See CREATE INDEX for details on the available parameters. Note that the index contents will not be modified.
immediately by this command; depending on the parameter you might need to rebuild the index with \texttt{REINDEX} to get the desired effects.

\texttt{RESET ( storage\_parameter [, ... ] )}

This form resets one or more index-method-specific storage parameters to their defaults. As with \texttt{SET}, a \texttt{REINDEX} might be needed to update the index entirely.

\texttt{ALTER [ COLUMN ] column\_number \texttt{SET STATISTICS integer}}

This form sets the per-column statistics-gathering target for subsequent \texttt{ANALYZE} operations, though can be used only on index columns that are defined as an expression. Since expressions lack a unique name, we refer to them using the ordinal number of the index column. The target can be set in the range 0 to 10000; alternatively, set it to -1 to revert to using the system default statistics target (\texttt{default\_statistics\_target}). For more information on the use of statistics by the Postgres Pro query planner, refer to \texttt{Section 14.2}.

\textbf{Parameters}

\texttt{IF EXISTS}

Do not throw an error if the index does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

\textit{column\_number}

The ordinal number refers to the ordinal (left-to-right) position of the index column.

\textit{name}

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing index to alter.

\textit{new\_name}

The new name for the index.

\textit{tablespace\_name}

The tablespace to which the index will be moved.

\textit{extension\_name}

The name of the extension that the index is to depend on.

\textit{storage\_parameter}

The name of an index-method-specific storage parameter.

\textit{value}

The new value for an index-method-specific storage parameter. This might be a number or a word depending on the parameter.

\textbf{Notes}

These operations are also possible using \texttt{ALTER TABLE}. \texttt{ALTER INDEX} is in fact just an alias for the forms of \texttt{ALTER TABLE} that apply to indexes.

There was formerly an \texttt{ALTER INDEX} \texttt{OWNER} variant, but this is now ignored (with a warning). An index cannot have an owner different from its table's owner. Changing the table's owner automatically changes the index as well.

Changing any part of a system catalog index is not permitted.

\textbf{Examples}

To rename an existing index:
ALTER INDEX distributors RENAME TO suppliers;

To move an index to a different tablespace:
ALTER INDEX distributors SET TABLESPACE fasttablespace;

To change an index's fill factor (assuming that the index method supports it):
ALTER INDEX distributors SET (fillfactor = 75);
REINDEX INDEX distributors;

Set the statistics-gathering target for an expression index:
CREATE INDEX coord_idx ON measured (x, y, (z + t));
ALTER INDEX coord_idx ALTER COLUMN 3 SET STATISTICS 1000;

Compatibility
ALTER INDEX is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also
CREATE INDEX, REINDEX
ALTER LANGUAGE

ALTER LANGUAGE — change the definition of a procedural language

Synopsis

ALTER [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }

Description

ALTER LANGUAGE changes the definition of a procedural language. The only functionality is to rename the language or assign a new owner. You must be superuser or owner of the language to use ALTER LANGUAGE.

Parameters

name
Name of a language

new_name
The new name of the language

new_owner
The new owner of the language

Compatibility

There is no ALTER LANGUAGE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE LANGUAGE, DROP LANGUAGE
ALTER LARGE OBJECT

ALTER LARGE OBJECT — change the definition of a large object

Synopsis

ALTER LARGE OBJECT  large_object_oid  OWNER TO {  new_owner  |  CURRENT_ROLE  |  CURRENT_USER  
|  SESSION_USER  }

Description

ALTER LARGE OBJECT changes the definition of a large object.

You must own the large object to use ALTER LARGE OBJECT. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role. (However, a superuser can alter any large object anyway.) Currently, the only functionality is to assign a new owner, so both restrictions always apply.

Parameters

large_object_oid

OID of the large object to be altered

ew_owner

The new owner of the large object

Compatibility

There is no ALTER LARGE OBJECT statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

Chapter 33
**ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW**

**ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW** — change the definition of a materialized view

**Synopsis**

```
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    action [, ... ]

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW name
    [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    RENAME [ COLUMN ] column_name TO new_column_name

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    RENAME TO new_name

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    SET SCHEMA new_schema

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace [ NOWAIT ]
```

where action is one of:

```
ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STATISTICS integer

ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET [ attribute_option = value [, ... ] ]

ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name RESET [ attribute_option [, ... ] ]

ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL | EXTENDED | MAIN }

ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET COMPRESSION compression_method

CLUSTER ON index_name

SET WITHOUT CLUSTER

SET [ storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ]

RESET [ storage_parameter [, ... ] ]

OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
```

**Description**

**ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW** changes various auxiliary properties of an existing materialized view.

You must own the materialized view to use **ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW**. To change a materialized view's schema, you must also have **CREATE** privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have **CREATE** privilege on the materialized view's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the materialized view. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any view anyway.)

The statement subforms and actions available for **ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW** are a subset of those available for **ALTER TABLE**, and have the same meaning when used for materialized views. See the descriptions for **ALTER TABLE** for details.

**Parameters**

- **name**
  
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing materialized view.

- **column_name**
  
  Name of a new or existing column.
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW

extension_name

The name of the extension that the materialized view is to depend on (or no longer dependent on, if NO is specified). A materialized view that's marked as dependent on an extension is automatically dropped when the extension is dropped.

new_column_name

New name for an existing column.

new_owner

The user name of the new owner of the materialized view.

new_name

The new name for the materialized view.

new_schema

The new schema for the materialized view.

Examples

To rename the materialized view foo to bar:

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW foo RENAME TO bar;

Compatibility

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW, REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW
ALTER OPERATOR

ALTER OPERATOR — change the definition of an operator

Synopsis

ALTER OPERATOR name ( { left_type | NONE } , right_type )
   OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }

ALTER OPERATOR name ( { left_type | NONE } , right_type )
   SET SCHEMA new_schema

ALTER OPERATOR name ( { left_type | NONE } , right_type )
   SET ( {  RESTRICT = { res_proc | NONE }
             | JOIN = { join_proc | NONE }
            } , ... )

Description

ALTER OPERATOR changes the definition of an operator.

You must own the operator to use ALTER OPERATOR. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the operator's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the operator. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any operator anyway.)

Parameters

name
   The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator.

left_type
   The data type of the operator's left operand; write NONE if the operator has no left operand.

right_type
   The data type of the operator's right operand.

new_owner
   The new owner of the operator.

new_schema
   The new schema for the operator.

res_proc
   The restriction selectivity estimator function for this operator; write NONE to remove existing selectivity estimator.

join_proc
   The join selectivity estimator function for this operator; write NONE to remove existing selectivity estimator.

Examples

Change the owner of a custom operator a @@ b for type text:
ALTER OPERATOR @@ (text, text) OWNER TO joe;

Change the restriction and join selectivity estimator functions of a custom operator \texttt{a \&\& b} for type \texttt{int[]}:

\begin{verbatim}
ALTER OPERATOR \&\& (_int4, _int4) SET (RESTRICT = _int_contsel, JOIN = _int_contjoinsel);
\end{verbatim}

**Compatibility**

There is no \texttt{ALTER OPERATOR} statement in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

\texttt{CREATE OPERATOR, DROP OPERATOR}
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS — change the definition of an operator class

Synopsis

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS name USING index_method
  RENAME TO new_name

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS name USING index_method
  OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS name USING index_method
  SET SCHEMA new_schema

Description

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS changes the definition of an operator class.

You must own the operator class to use ALTER OPERATOR CLASS. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the operator class’s schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn’t do anything you couldn’t do by dropping and recreating the operator class. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any operator class anyway.)

Parameters

name
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator class.

index_method
  The name of the index method this operator class is for.

new_name
  The new name of the operator class.

new_owner
  The new owner of the operator class.

new_schema
  The new schema for the operator class.

Compatibility

There is no ALTER OPERATOR CLASS statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS, ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY
**ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY**

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY — change the definition of an operator family

**Synopsis**

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method ADD
{ OPERATOR strategy_number operator_name ( op_type, op_type )
  [ FOR SEARCH | FOR ORDER BY sort_family_name ]
  | FUNCTION support_number [ ( op_type [, op_type ] ) ]
  function_name [ ( argument_type [, ... ] ) ]
} [, ... ]

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method DROP
{ OPERATOR strategy_number ( op_type, op_type )
 | FUNCTION support_number ( op_type, op_type )
} [, ... ]

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method
  RENAME TO new_name

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method
  OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method
  SET SCHEMA new_schema

**Description**

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY changes the definition of an operator family. You can add operators and support functions to the family, remove them from the family, or change the family's name or owner.

When operators and support functions are added to a family with **ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY**, they are not part of any specific operator class within the family, but are just “loose” within the family. This indicates that these operators and functions are compatible with the family's semantics, but are not required for correct functioning of any specific index. (Operators and functions that are so required should be declared as part of an operator class, instead; see CREATE OPERATOR CLASS.) Postgres Pro will allow loose members of a family to be dropped from the family at any time, but members of an operator class cannot be dropped without dropping the whole class and any indexes that depend on it. Typically, single-data-type operators and functions are part of operator classes because they are needed to support an index on that specific data type, while cross-data-type operators and functions are made loose members of the family.

You must be a superuser to use **ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY**. (This restriction is made because an erroneous operator family definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

**ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY** does not presently check whether the operator family definition includes all the operators and functions required by the index method, nor whether the operators and functions form a self-consistent set. It is the user's responsibility to define a valid operator family.

Refer to Section 36.16 for further information.

**Parameters**

- **name**

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator family.
**index_method**

The name of the index method this operator family is for.

**strategy_number**

The index method's strategy number for an operator associated with the operator family.

**operator_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an operator associated with the operator family.

**op_type**

In an `OPERATOR` clause, the operand data type(s) of the operator, or `NONE` to signify a prefix operator. Unlike the comparable syntax in `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS`, the operand data types must always be specified.

In an `ADD FUNCTION` clause, the operand data type(s) the function is intended to support, if different from the input data type(s) of the function. For B-tree comparison functions and hash functions it is not necessary to specify `op_type` since the function's input data type(s) are always the correct ones to use. For B-tree sort support functions, B-Tree equal image functions, and all functions in GiST, SP-GiST and GIN operator classes, it is necessary to specify the operand data type(s) the function is to be used with.

In a `DROP FUNCTION` clause, the operand data type(s) the function is intended to support must be specified.

**sort_family_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing `btree` operator family that describes the sort ordering associated with an ordering operator.

If neither `FOR SEARCH` nor `FOR ORDER BY` is specified, `FOR SEARCH` is the default.

**support_number**

The index method's support function number for a function associated with the operator family.

**function_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a function that is an index method support function for the operator family. If no argument list is specified, the name must be unique in its schema.

**argument_type**

The parameter data type(s) of the function.

**new_name**

The new name of the operator family.

**new_owner**

The new owner of the operator family.

**new_schema**

The new schema for the operator family.

The `OPERATOR` and `FUNCTION` clauses can appear in any order.

**Notes**

Notice that the `DROP` syntax only specifies the “slot” in the operator family, by strategy or support number and input data type(s). The name of the operator or function occupying the slot is not mentioned. Also, for `DROP FUNCTION` the type(s) to specify are the input data type(s) the function is intended to support;
for GiST, SP-GiST and GIN indexes this might have nothing to do with the actual input argument types of the function.

Because the index machinery does not check access permissions on functions before using them, including a function or operator in an operator family is tantamount to granting public execute permission on it. This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in an operator family.

The operators should not be defined by SQL functions. An SQL function is likely to be inlined into the calling query, which will prevent the optimizer from recognizing that the query matches an index.

Before PostgreSQL 8.4, the OPERATOR clause could include a RECHECK option. This is no longer supported because whether an index operator is “lossy” is now determined on-the-fly at run time. This allows efficient handling of cases where an operator might or might not be lossy.

Examples

The following example command adds cross-data-type operators and support functions to an operator family that already contains B-tree operator classes for data types \texttt{int4} and \texttt{int2}.

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree ADD

-- int4 vs int2
OPERATOR 1 < (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int4, int2) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint42cmp(int4, int2) ,

-- int2 vs int4
OPERATOR 1 < (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int2, int4) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint24cmp(int2, int4) ;
```

To remove these entries again:

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree DROP

-- int4 vs int2
OPERATOR 1 (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 2 (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 3 (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 4 (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 5 (int4, int2) ,
FUNCTION 1 (int4, int2) ,

-- int2 vs int4
OPERATOR 1 (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 2 (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 3 (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 4 (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 5 (int2, int4) ,
FUNCTION 1 (int2, int4) ;
```

Compatibility

There is no \texttt{ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY} statement in the SQL standard.
See Also
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY, DROP OPERATOR FAMILY, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS
ALTER POLICY

ALTER POLICY — change the definition of a row-level security policy

Synopsis

ALTER POLICY name ON table_name RENAME TO new_name

ALTER POLICY name ON table_name
  [ TO { role_name | PUBLIC | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER } [, ...] ]
  [ USING ( using_expression ) ]
  [ WITH CHECK ( check_expression ) ]

Description

ALTER POLICY changes the definition of an existing row-level security policy. Note that ALTER POLICY only allows the set of roles to which the policy applies and the USING and WITH CHECK expressions to be modified. To change other properties of a policy, such as the command to which it applies or whether it is permissive or restrictive, the policy must be dropped and recreated.

To use ALTER POLICY, you must own the table that the policy applies to.

In the second form of ALTER POLICY, the role list, using_expression, and check_expression are replaced independently if specified. When one of those clauses is omitted, the corresponding part of the policy is unchanged.

Parameters

name

The name of an existing policy to alter.

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table that the policy is on.

new_name

The new name for the policy.

role_name

The role(s) to which the policy applies. Multiple roles can be specified at one time. To apply the policy to all roles, use PUBLIC.

using_expression

The USING expression for the policy. See CREATE POLICY for details.

check_expression

The WITH CHECK expression for the policy. See CREATE POLICY for details.

Compatibility

ALTER POLICY is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE POLICY, DROP POLICY
ALTER PROCEDURE

ALTER PROCEDURE — change the definition of a procedure

Synopsis

```
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ] action [ ... ] [ RESTRICT ]
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
    RENAME TO new_name
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
    [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
```

where action is one of:

```
[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
RESET configuration_parameter
RESET ALL
```

Description

ALTER PROCEDURE changes the definition of a procedure.

You must own the procedure to use ALTER PROCEDURE. To change a procedure's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the procedure's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the procedure. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any procedure anyway.)

Parameters

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing procedure. If no argument list is specified, the name must be unique in its schema.

argmode

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN.

argname

The name of an argument. Note that ALTER PROCEDURE does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are used to determine the procedure's identity.

argtype

The data type(s) of the procedure's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. See DROP PROCEDURE for the details of how the procedure is looked up using the argument data type(s).

new_name

The new name of the procedure.
ALTER PROCEDURE

new_owner
The new owner of the procedure. Note that if the procedure is marked SECURITY DEFINER, it will subsequently execute as the new owner.

new_schema
The new schema for the procedure.

extension_name
The name of the extension that the procedure is to depend on.

[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER
[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER

Change whether the procedure is a security definer or not. The key word EXTERNAL is ignored for SQL conformance. See CREATE PROCEDURE for more information about this capability.

configuration_parameter
value
Add or change the assignment to be made to a configuration parameter when the procedure is called. If value is DEFAULT or, equivalently, RESET is used, the procedure-local setting is removed, so that the procedure executes with the value present in its environment. Use RESET ALL to clear all procedure-local settings. SET FROM CURRENT saves the value of the parameter that is current when ALTER PROCEDURE is executed as the value to be applied when the procedure is entered.

See SET and Chapter 18 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

RESTRICT
Ignored for conformance with the SQL standard.

Examples
To rename the procedure insert_data with two arguments of type integer to insert_record:
ALTER PROCEDURE insert_data(integer, integer) RENAME TO insert_record;

To change the owner of the procedure insert_data with two arguments of type integer to joe:
ALTER PROCEDURE insert_data(integer, integer) OWNER TO joe;

To change the schema of the procedure insert_data with two arguments of type integer to accounting:
ALTER PROCEDURE insert_data(integer, integer) SET SCHEMA accounting;

To mark the procedure insert_data(integer, integer) as being dependent on the extension myext:
ALTER PROCEDURE insert_data(integer, integer) DEPENDS ON EXTENSION myext;

To adjust the search path that is automatically set for a procedure:
ALTER PROCEDURE check_password(text) SET search_path = admin, pg_temp;

To disable automatic setting of search_path for a procedure:
ALTER PROCEDURE check_password(text) RESET search_path;

The procedure will now execute with whatever search path is used by its caller.

Compatibility
This statement is partially compatible with the ALTER PROCEDURE statement in the SQL standard. The standard allows more properties of a procedure to be modified, but does not provide the ability to rename
a procedure, make a procedure a security definer, attach configuration parameter values to a procedure, or change the owner, schema, or volatility of a procedure. The standard also requires the `RESTRICT` keyword, which is optional in Postgres Pro.

**See Also**

`CREATE PROCEDURE`, `DROP PROCEDURE`, `ALTER FUNCTION`, `ALTER ROUTINE`
**ALTER PROFILE**

**ALTER PROFILE** — change an authentication profile

**Synopsis**

```
ALTER PROFILE name [ LIMIT parameter value [ ... ] ]
```

where `parameter` can be:

- `FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS`
- `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME`
- `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX`
- `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME`
- `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME`
- `USER_INACTIVE_TIME`
- `FAILED_AUTH_KEEP_TIME`
- `PASSWORD_MIN_UNIQUE_CHARS`
- `PASSWORD_MIN_LEN`
- `PASSWORD_REQUIRE_COMPLEX`

```
ALTER PROFILE name RENAME TO new_name
```

**Description**

The **ALTER PROFILE** command changes parameters of a Postgres Pro profile. You must be a database superuser to use this command.

**Parameters**

- `name`

  The name of the profile for which to alter parameters.

  `FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS value`
  `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME value`
  `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX value`
  `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME value`
  `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME value`
  `USER_INACTIVE_TIME value`
  `FAILED_AUTH_KEEP_TIME value`
  `PASSWORD_MIN_UNIQUE_CHARS value`
  `PASSWORD_MIN_LEN value`
  `PASSWORD_REQUIRE_COMPLEX value`

  These clauses alter parameters originally set by **CREATE PROFILE**. For more information, see the **CREATE PROFILE** reference page.

- `new_name`

  The new name of the profile.

**Notes**

Use **CREATE PROFILE** to add new profiles, and **DROP PROFILE** to remove a profile.

**Examples**

Change `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` and `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` parameters of a profile:
ALTER PROFILE admin_profile
    LIMIT PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME 90
    PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME 3;

See Also
CREATE PROFILE, DROP PROFILE, CREATE ROLE
ALTER PUBLICATION

ALTER PUBLICATION — change the definition of a publication

Synopsis

ALTER PUBLICATION name ADD TABLE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [, ...]
ALTER PUBLICATION name SET TABLE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [, ...]
ALTER PUBLICATION name DROP TABLE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [, ...]
ALTER PUBLICATION name SET ( publication_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )
ALTER PUBLICATION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER PUBLICATION name RENAME TO new_name

Description

The command ALTER PUBLICATION can change the attributes of a publication.

The first three variants change which tables are part of the publication. The SET TABLE clause will replace the list of tables in the publication with the specified one. The ADD TABLE and DROP TABLE clauses will add and remove one or more tables from the publication. Note that adding tables to a publication that is already subscribed to will require a ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... REFRESH PUBLICATION action on the subscribing side in order to become effective.

The fourth variant of this command listed in the synopsis can change all of the publication properties specified in CREATE PUBLICATION. Properties not mentioned in the command retain their previous settings.

The remaining variants change the owner and the name of the publication.

You must own the publication to use ALTER PUBLICATION. Adding a table to a publication additionally requires owning that table. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role. The new owner must have CREATE privilege on the database. Also, the new owner of a FOR ALL TABLES publication must be a superuser. However, a superuser can change the ownership of a publication regardless of these restrictions.

Parameters

name

The name of an existing publication whose definition is to be altered.

table_name

Name of an existing table. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is affected. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are affected. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

SET ( publication_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )

This clause alters publication parameters originally set by CREATE PUBLICATION. See there for more information.

new_owner

The user name of the new owner of the publication.

new_name

The new name for the publication.
ALTER PUBLICATION

Examples

Change the publication to publish only deletes and updates:
ALTER PUBLICATION noinsert SET (publish = 'update, delete');

Add some tables to the publication:
ALTER PUBLICATION mypublication ADD TABLE users, departments;

Compatibility

ALTER PUBLICATION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE PUBLICATION, DROP PUBLICATION, CREATE SUBSCRIPTION, ALTER SUBSCRIPTION
**ALTER ROLE**

ALTER ROLE — change a database role

**Synopsis**

```
ALTER ROLE role_specification [ WITH ] option [ ... ]
```

where `option` can be:

- SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
- CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
- CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
- INHERIT | NOINHERIT
- LOGIN | NOLOGIN
- REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
- BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
- CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
- [ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
- VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
- PROFILE profile_name
- ACCOUNT UNLOCK | ACCOUNT LOCK

```
ALTER ROLE name RENAME TO new_name
```

```
ALTER ROLE { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name ]
SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
```

```
ALTER ROLE { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name ]
SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
```

```
ALTER ROLE { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name ]
RESET configuration_parameter
```

```
ALTER ROLE { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name ]
RESET ALL
```

where `role_specification` can be:

- role_name
- CURRENT_ROLE
- CURRENT_USER
- SESSION_USER

**Description**

`ALTER ROLE` changes the attributes of a Postgres Pro role.

The first variant of this command listed in the synopsis can change many of the role attributes that can be specified in `CREATE ROLE`. (All the possible attributes are covered, except that there are no options for adding or removing memberships; use `GRANT` and `REVOKE` for that.) Attributes not mentioned in the command retain their previous settings. Database superusers can change any of these settings for any role. Roles having `CREATEROLE` privilege can change any of these settings except `SUPERUSER`, `REPLICATION`, and `BYPASSRLS`; but only for non-superuser and non-replication roles. Ordinary roles can only change their own password.

The second variant changes the name of the role. Database superusers can rename any role. Roles having `CREATEROLE` privilege can rename non-superuser roles. The current session user cannot be renamed. (Connect as a different user if you need to do that.) Because MD5-encrypted passwords use the role name as cryptographic salt, renaming a role clears its password if the password is MD5-encrypted.
ALTER ROLE

The remaining variants change a role's session default for a configuration variable, either for all databases or, when the IN DATABASE clause is specified, only for sessions in the named database. If ALL is specified instead of a role name, this changes the setting for all roles. Using ALL with IN DATABASE is effectively the same as using the command ALTER DATABASE ... SET ....

Whenever the role subsequently starts a new session, the specified value becomes the session default, overriding whatever setting is present in postgresql.conf or has been received from the postgres command line. This only happens at login time; executing SET ROLE or SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION does not cause new configuration values to be set. Settings set for all databases are overridden by database-specific settings attached to a role. Settings for specific databases or specific roles override settings for all roles.

Superusers can change anyone's session defaults. Roles having CREATEROLE privilege can change defaults for non-superuser roles. Ordinary roles can only set defaults for themselves. Certain configuration variables cannot be set this way, or can only be set if a superuser issues the command. Only superusers can change a setting for all roles in all databases.

Parameters

\texttt{name}

The name of the role whose attributes are to be altered.

\texttt{CURRENT\_ROLE}  
\texttt{CURRENT\_USER}  

Alter the current user instead of an explicitly identified role.

\texttt{SESSION\_USER}  

Alter the current session user instead of an explicitly identified role.

\texttt{SUPERUSER}  
\texttt{NOSUPERUSER}  
\texttt{CREATEDB}  
\texttt{NOCREATEDB}  
\texttt{CREATEROLE}  
\texttt{NOCREATEROLE}  
\texttt{INHERIT}  
\texttt{NOINHERIT}  
\texttt{LOGIN}  
\texttt{NOLOGIN}  
\texttt{REPLICATION}  
\texttt{NOREPLICATION}  
\texttt{BYPASSRLS}  
\texttt{NOBYPASSRLS}  
\texttt{CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit}  
\texttt{[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password'}  
\texttt{PASSWORD NULL}  
\texttt{VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'}  
\texttt{PROFILE profile_name}  

These clauses alter attributes originally set by CREATE ROLE. For more information, see the CREATE ROLE reference page.

\texttt{ACCOUNT UNLOCK}  

Unlock the role. A role can be locked if the allowed number of failed login attempts has been exceeded (see CREATE PROFILE for details).

\texttt{ACCOUNT LOCK}  

Explicitly lock the role.
ALTER ROLE

new_name

The new name of the role.

database_name

The name of the database the configuration variable should be set in.

configuration_parameter

value

Set this role's session default for the specified configuration parameter to the given value. If value
is DEFAULT or, equivalently, RESET is used, the role-specific variable setting is removed, so the role
will inherit the system-wide default setting in new sessions. Use RESET ALL to clear all role-specific
settings. SET FROM CURRENT saves the session's current value of the parameter as the role-specific
value. If IN DATABASE is specified, the configuration parameter is set or removed for the given role
and database only.

Role-specific variable settings take effect only at login; SET ROLE and SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
do not process role-specific variable settings.

See SET and Chapter 18 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

Notes

Use CREATE ROLE to add new roles, and DROP ROLE to remove a role.

ALTER ROLE cannot change a role's memberships. Use GRANT and REVOKE to do that.

Caution must be exercised when specifying an unencrypted password with this command. The password
will be transmitted to the server in cleartext, and it might also be logged in the client's command history
or the server log. psql contains a command \password that can be used to change a role's password
without exposing the cleartext password.

It is also possible to tie a session default to a specific database rather than to a role; see ALTER
DATABASE. If there is a conflict, database-role-specific settings override role-specific ones, which in
turn override database-specific ones.

Examples

Change a role's password:

ALTER ROLE davide WITH PASSWORD 'hu8jmn3';

Remove a role's password:

ALTER ROLE davide WITH PASSWORD NULL;

Change a password expiration date, specifying that the password should expire at midday on 4th May
2015 using the time zone which is one hour ahead of UTC:

ALTER ROLE chris VALID UNTIL 'May 4 12:00:00 2015 +1';

Make a password valid forever:

ALTER ROLE fred VALID UNTIL 'infinity';

Give a role the ability to create other roles and new databases:

ALTER ROLE miriam CREATEROLE CREATEDB;

Give a role a non-default setting of the maintenance_work_mem parameter:

ALTER ROLE worker_bee SET maintenance_work_mem = 100000;
Give a role a non-default, database-specific setting of the `client_min_messages` parameter:

```
ALTER ROLE fred IN DATABASE devel SET client_min_messages = DEBUG;
```

**Compatibility**

The `ALTER ROLE` statement is a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

CREATE ROLE, DROP ROLE, ALTER DATABASE, SET, CREATE PROFILE
ALTER ROUTINE

ALTER ROUTINE — change the definition of a routine

Synopsis

```
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
action [ ... ] [ RESTRICT ]
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
RENAME TO new_name
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ]
[ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
```

where action is one of:

- IMMUTABLE | STABLE | VOLATILE
- [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
- [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
- PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
- COST execution_cost
- ROWS result_rows
- SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
- SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
- RESET configuration_parameter
- RESET ALL

Description

**ALTER ROUTINE** changes the definition of a routine, which can be an aggregate function, a normal function, or a procedure. See under **ALTER AGGREGATE**, **ALTER FUNCTION**, and **ALTER PROCEDURE** for the description of the parameters, more examples, and further details.

Examples

To rename the routine `foo` for type `integer` to `foobar`:

```
ALTER ROUTINE foo(integer) RENAME TO foobar;
```

This command will work independent of whether `foo` is an aggregate, function, or procedure.

Compatibility

This statement is partially compatible with the **ALTER ROUTINE** statement in the SQL standard. See under **ALTER FUNCTION** and **ALTER PROCEDURE** for more details. Allowing routine names to refer to aggregate functions is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

**ALTER AGGREGATE, ALTER FUNCTION, ALTER PROCEDURE, DROP ROUTINE**

Note that there is no **CREATE ROUTINE** command.
ALTER RULE

ALTER RULE — change the definition of a rule

Synopsis

ALTER RULE name ON table_name RENAME TO new_name

Description

ALTER RULE changes properties of an existing rule. Currently, the only available action is to change the rule's name.

To use ALTER RULE, you must own the table or view that the rule applies to.

Parameters

name

The name of an existing rule to alter.

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view that the rule applies to.

new_name

The new name for the rule.

Examples

To rename an existing rule:

ALTER RULE notify_all ON emp RENAME TO notify_me;

Compatibility

ALTER RULE is a Postgres Pro language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

See Also

CREATE RULE, DROP RULE
ALTER SCHEMA

ALTER SCHEMA — change the definition of a schema

Synopsis

ALTER SCHEMA name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER SCHEMA name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }

Description

ALTER SCHEMA changes the definition of a schema.

You must own the schema to use ALTER SCHEMA. To rename a schema you must also have the CREATE privilege for the database. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and you must have the CREATE privilege for the database. (Note that superusers have all these privileges automatically.)

Parameters

name

The name of an existing schema.

new_name

The new name of the schema. The new name cannot begin with pg_, as such names are reserved for system schemas.

new_owner

The new owner of the schema.

Compatibility

There is no ALTER SCHEMA statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE SCHEMA, DROP SCHEMA
ALTER SEQUENCE

ALTER SEQUENCE — change the definition of a sequence generator

Synopsis

```
ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] name
    [ AS data_type ]
    [ INCREMENT [ BY ] increment ]
    [ MINVALUE minvalue | NO MINVALUE ]
    [ MAXVALUE maxvalue | NO MAXVALUE ]
    [ START [ WITH ] start ]
    [ RESTART [ [ WITH ] restart ]]
    [ CACHE cache ]
    [ [ NO ] CYCLE ]
    [ OWNED BY { table_name.column_name | NONE }]
```

`ALTER SEQUENCE` [ IF EXISTS ] name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }

`ALTER SEQUENCE` [ IF EXISTS ] name RENAME TO new_name

`ALTER SEQUENCE` [ IF EXISTS ] name SET SCHEMA new_schema

Description

`ALTER SEQUENCE` changes the parameters of an existing sequence generator. Any parameters not specifically set in the `ALTER SEQUENCE` command retain their prior settings.

You must own the sequence to use `ALTER SEQUENCE`. To change a sequence's schema, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the sequence's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the sequence. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any sequence anyway.)

Parameters

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a sequence to be altered.

**IF EXISTS**

Do not throw an error if the sequence does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

**data_type**

The optional clause `AS data_type` changes the data type of the sequence. Valid types are `smallint`, `integer`, and `bigint`.

Changing the data type automatically changes the minimum and maximum values of the sequence if and only if the previous minimum and maximum values were the minimum or maximum value of the old data type (in other words, if the sequence had been created using `NO MINVALUE` or `NO MAXVALUE`, implicitly or explicitly). Otherwise, the minimum and maximum values are preserved, unless new values are given as part of the same command. If the minimum and maximum values do not fit into the new data type, an error will be generated.

**increment**

The clause `INCREMENT BY increment` is optional. A positive value will make an ascending sequence, a negative one a descending sequence. If unspecified, the old increment value will be maintained.

**minvalue**

`NO MINVALUE`

The optional clause `MINVALUE minvalue` determines the minimum value a sequence can generate. If `NO MINVALUE` is specified, the defaults of 1 and the minimum value of the data type for ascending and
descending sequences, respectively, will be used. If neither option is specified, the current minimum value will be maintained.

```
maxvalue
NO MAXVALUE
```

The optional clause MAXVALUE maxvalue determines the maximum value for the sequence. If NO MAXVALUE is specified, the defaults of the maximum value of the data type and -1 for ascending and descending sequences, respectively, will be used. If neither option is specified, the current maximum value will be maintained.

```
start
```

The optional clause START WITH start changes the recorded start value of the sequence. This has no effect on the current sequence value; it simply sets the value that future ALTER SEQUENCE RESTART commands will use.

```
restart
```

The optional clause RESTART [ WITH restart ] changes the current value of the sequence. This is similar to calling the setval function with is_called = false: the specified value will be returned by the next call of nextval. Writing RESTART with no restart value is equivalent to supplying the start value that was recorded by CREATE SEQUENCE or last set by ALTER SEQUENCE START WITH.

In contrast to a setval call, a RESTART operation on a sequence is transactional and blocks concurrent transactions from obtaining numbers from the same sequence. If that's not the desired mode of operation, setval should be used.

```
cache
```

The clause CACHE cache enables sequence numbers to be preallocated and stored in memory for faster access. The minimum value is 1 (only one value can be generated at a time, i.e., no cache). If unspecified, the old cache value will be maintained.

```
CYCLE
```

The optional CYCLE key word can be used to enable the sequence to wrap around when the maxvalue or minvalue has been reached by an ascending or descending sequence respectively. If the limit is reached, the next number generated will be the minvalue or maxvalue, respectively.

```
NO CYCLE
```

If the optional NO CYCLE key word is specified, any calls to nextval after the sequence has reached its maximum value will return an error. If neither CYCLE or NO CYCLE are specified, the old cycle behavior will be maintained.

```
OWNED BY table_name.column_name
OWNED BY NONE
```

The OWNED BY option causes the sequence to be associated with a specific table column, such that if that column (or its whole table) is dropped, the sequence will be automatically dropped as well. If specified, this association replaces any previously specified association for the sequence. The specified table must have the same owner and be in the same schema as the sequence. Specifying OWNED BY NONE removes any existing association, making the sequence “free-standing”.

```
new_owner
```

The user name of the new owner of the sequence.

```
new_name
```

The new name for the sequence.
new_schema

The new schema for the sequence.

Notes

ALTER SEQUENCE will not immediately affect nextval results in backends, other than the current one, that have preallocated (cached) sequence values. They will use up all cached values prior to noticing the changed sequence generation parameters. The current backend will be affected immediately.

ALTER SEQUENCE does not affect the currval status for the sequence. (Before PostgreSQL 8.3, it sometimes did.)

ALTER SEQUENCE blocks concurrent nextval, currval, lastval, and setval calls.

For historical reasons, ALTER TABLE can be used with sequences too; but the only variants of ALTER TABLE that are allowed with sequences are equivalent to the forms shown above.

Examples

Restart a sequence called serial, at 105:

```
ALTER SEQUENCE serial RESTART WITH 105;
```

Compatibility

ALTER SEQUENCE conforms to the SQL standard, except for the AS, START WITH, OWNED BY, OWNER TO, RENAME TO, and SET SCHEMA clauses, which are Postgres Pro extensions.

See Also

CREATE SEQUENCE, DROP SEQUENCE
ALTER SERVER

ALTER SERVER — change the definition of a foreign server

Synopsis

ALTER SERVER name [ VERSION 'new_version' ]
[ OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SERVER name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER SERVER name RENAME TO new_name

Description

ALTER SERVER changes the definition of a foreign server. The first form changes the server version string
or the generic options of the server (at least one clause is required). The second form changes the owner
of the server.

To alter the server you must be the owner of the server. Additionally to alter the owner, you must own the
server and also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and you must have USAGE privilege
on the server's foreign-data wrapper. (Note that superusers satisfy all these criteria automatically.)

Parameters

name

The name of an existing server.

new_version

New server version.

OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )

Change options for the server. ADD, SET, and DROP specify the action to be performed. ADD is assumed if
no operation is explicitly specified. Option names must be unique; names and values are also validated
using the server's foreign-data wrapper library.

new_owner

The user name of the new owner of the foreign server.

new_name

The new name for the foreign server.

Examples

Alter server foo, add connection options:
ALTER SERVER foo OPTIONS (host 'foo', dbname 'foodb');

Alter server foo, change version, change host option:
ALTER SERVER foo VERSION '8.4' OPTIONS (SET host 'baz');

Compatibility

ALTER SERVER conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The OWNER TO and RENAME forms are Postgres
Pro extensions.

See Also

CREATE SERVER, DROP SERVER
ALTER STATISTICS

ALTER STATISTICS — change the definition of an extended statistics object

Synopsis

```
ALTER STATISTICS  name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER STATISTICS  name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER STATISTICS  name SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER STATISTICS  name SET STATISTICS new_target
```

Description

ALTER STATISTICS changes the parameters of an existing extended statistics object. Any parameters not specifically set in the ALTER STATISTICS command retain their prior settings.

You must own the statistics object to use ALTER STATISTICS. To change a statistics object's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the statistics object's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the statistics object. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any statistics object anyway.)

Parameters

- **name**
  - The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the statistics object to be altered.
- **new_owner**
  - The user name of the new owner of the statistics object.
- **new_name**
  - The new name for the statistics object.
- **new_schema**
  - The new schema for the statistics object.
- **new_target**
  - The statistic-gathering target for this statistics object for subsequent ANALYZE operations. The target can be set in the range 0 to 10000; alternatively, set it to -1 to revert to using the maximum of the statistics target of the referenced columns, if set, or the system default statistics target (default_statistics_target). For more information on the use of statistics by the PostgreSQL query planner, refer to Section 14.2.

Compatibility

There is no ALTER STATISTICS command in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE STATISTICS, DROP STATISTICS
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION — change the definition of a subscription

Synopsis

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name CONNECTION 'conninfo'
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name SET PUBLICATION publication_name [, ...] [ WITH
  ( publication_option [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name ADD PUBLICATION publication_name [, ...] [ WITH
  ( publication_option [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name DROP PUBLICATION publication_name [, ...] [ WITH
  ( publication_option [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name REFRESH PUBLICATION [ WITH ( refresh_option [= value]
  [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name ENABLE
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name DISABLE
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name SET ( subscription_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name RENAME TO new_name

Description

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION can change most of the subscription properties that can be specified in CREATE SUBSCRIPTION.

You must own the subscription to use ALTER SUBSCRIPTION. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role. The new owner has to be a superuser. (Currently, all subscription owners must be superusers, so the owner checks will be bypassed in practice. But this might change in the future.)

When refreshing a publication we remove the relations that are no longer part of the publication and we also remove the table synchronization slots if there are any. It is necessary to remove these slots so that the resources allocated for the subscription on the remote host are released. If due to network breakdown or some other error, PostgreSQL is unable to remove the slots, an ERROR will be reported. To proceed in this situation, the user either needs to retry the operation or disassociate the slot from the subscription and drop the subscription as explained in DROP SUBSCRIPTION.

Commands ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... REFRESH PUBLICATION and ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... {SET|ADD| DROP} PUBLICATION ... with refresh option as true cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Parameters

name

The name of a subscription whose properties are to be altered.

CONNECTION 'conninfo'

This clause alters the connection property originally set by CREATE SUBSCRIPTION. See there for more information.

SET PUBLICATION publication_name
ADD PUBLICATION publication_name
DROP PUBLICATION publication_name

Changes the list of subscribed publications. SET replaces the entire list of publications with a new list, ADD adds additional publications to the list of publications, and DROP removes the publications
from the list of publications. See CREATE SUBSCRIPTION for more information. By default, this command will also act like REFRESH PUBLICATION.

publication_option specifies additional options for this operation. The supported options are:

refresh (boolean)

When false, the command will not try to refresh table information. REFRESH PUBLICATION should then be executed separately. The default is true.

Additionally, the options described under REFRESH PUBLICATION may be specified, to control the implicit refresh operation.

REFRESH PUBLICATION

Fetch missing table information from publisher. This will start replication of tables that were added to the subscribed-to publications since the last invocation of REFRESH PUBLICATION or since CREATE SUBSCRIPTION.

refresh_option specifies additional options for the refresh operation. The supported options are:

copy_data (boolean)

Specifies whether the existing data in the publications that are being subscribed to should be copied once the replication starts. The default is true. (Previously subscribed tables are not copied.)

ENABLE

Enables the previously disabled subscription, starting the logical replication worker at the end of transaction.

DISABLE

Disables the running subscription, stopping the logical replication worker at the end of transaction.

SET ( subscription_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )

This clause alters parameters originally set by CREATE SUBSCRIPTION. See there for more information. The parameters that can be altered are slot_name, synchronous_commit, binary, and streaming.

new_owner

The user name of the new owner of the subscription.

new_name

The new name for the subscription.

Examples

Change the publication subscribed by a subscription to insert_only:

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION mysub SET PUBLICATION insert_only;

Disable (stop) the subscription:

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION mysub DISABLE;

Compatibility

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION, DROP SUBSCRIPTION, CREATE PUBLICATION, ALTER PUBLICATION
ALTER SYSTEM

ALTER SYSTEM — change a server configuration parameter

Synopsis

ALTER SYSTEM SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | 'value' | DEFAULT }

ALTER SYSTEM RESET configuration_parameter
ALTER SYSTEM RESET ALL

Description

ALTER SYSTEM is used for changing server configuration parameters across the entire database cluster. It can be more convenient than the traditional method of manually editing the postgresql.conf file. ALTER SYSTEM writes the given parameter setting to the postgresql.auto.conf file, which is read in addition to postgresql.conf. Setting a parameter to DEFAULT, or using the RESET variant, removes that configuration entry from the postgresql.auto.conf file. Use RESET ALL to remove all such configuration entries.

Values set with ALTER SYSTEM will be effective after the next server configuration reload, or after the next server restart in the case of parameters that can only be changed at server start. A server configuration reload can be commanded by calling the SQL function pg_reload_conf(), running pg_ctl reload, or sending a SIGHUP signal to the main server process.

Only superusers can use ALTER SYSTEM. Also, since this command acts directly on the file system and cannot be rolled back, it is not allowed inside a transaction block or function.

Parameters

configuration_parameter

Name of a settable configuration parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 18.

value

New value of the parameter. Values can be specified as string constants, identifiers, numbers, or comma-separated lists of these, as appropriate for the particular parameter. DEFAULT can be written to specify removing the parameter and its value from postgresql.auto.conf.

Notes

This command can’t be used to set data_directory, nor parameters that are not allowed in postgresql.conf (e.g., preset options).

See Section 18.1 for other ways to set the parameters.

Examples

Set the wal_level:

ALTER SYSTEM SET wal_level = replica;

Undo that, restoring whatever setting was effective in postgresql.conf:

ALTER SYSTEM RESET wal_level;

Compatibility

The ALTER SYSTEM statement is a Postgres Pro extension.
ALTER SYSTEM

See Also
SET, SHOW
ALTER TABLE

ALTER TABLE — change the definition of a table

Synopsis

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]

   action [, ... ]

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]

   RENAME [ COLUMN ] column_name TO new_column_name

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]

   RENAME CONSTRAINT constraint_name TO new_constraint_name

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name

   RENAME TO new_name

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name

   SET SCHEMA new_schema

ALTER TABLE ALL IN TABLESPACE name [ OWNED BY role_name [, ... ] ]

   SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace [ NOWAIT ]

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name

   ATTACH PARTITION partition_name { FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec | DEFAULT }

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name

   DETACH PARTITION partition_name [ CONCURRENTLY | FINALIZE ]

where action is one of:

   ADD [ COLUMN ] [ IF NOT EXISTS ] column_name data_type [ COLLATE collation ]
   [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]

   DROP [ COLUMN ] [ IF EXISTS ] column_name [ RESTRICT | CASCADE ]

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name [ SET DATA ] TYPE data_type [ COLLATE collation ]
   [ USING expression ]

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET DEFAULT expression

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP DEFAULT

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name [ SET | DROP ] NOT NULL

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP EXPRESSION [ IF EXISTS ]

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name ADD GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT } AS IDENTITY
   [ ( sequence_options ) ]

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name { SET GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT } |
   SET sequence_option | RESTART [ [ WITH ] restart ] } [ ... ]

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP IDENTITY [ IF EXISTS ]

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STATISTICS integer

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET ( attribute_option = value [, ... ] )

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL | EXTENDED | MAIN }

   ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET COMPRESSION compression_method

   ADD table_constraint [ NOT VALID ]

   ADD table_constraint USING_INDEX

   ALTER CONSTRAINT constraint_name [ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]

   VALIDATE CONSTRAINT constraint_name

   DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ] constraint_name [ RESTRICT | CASCADE ]

   DISABLE TRIGGER [ trigger_name | ALL | USER ]

   ENABLE TRIGGER [ trigger_name | ALL | USER ]

   ENABLE REPLICA TRIGGER trigger_name

   ENABLE ALWAYS TRIGGER trigger_name

   DISABLE RULE rewrite_rule_name

   ENABLE RULE rewrite_rule_name

   ENABLE REPLICA RULE rewrite_rule_name

1325
### ALTER TABLE

- **ENABLE ALWAYS RULE** `rewrite_rule_name`
- **DISABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY**
- **ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY**
- **FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY**
- **NO FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY**
- **CLUSTER ON** `index_name`
- **SET WITHOUT CLUSTER**
- **SET WITHOUT OIDS**
- **SET TABLESPACE** `new_tablespace`
- **SET** { **LOGGED** | **UNLOGGED** }
- **SET** `{ storage_parameter [\= value] [, ... ] }
- **RESET** `{ storage_parameter [, ... ] }
- **INHERIT** `parent_table`
- **NO INHERIT** `parent_table`
- **OF** `type_name`
- **NOT** OF
- **OWNER TO** `{ new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
- **REPLICA IDENTITY** { **DEFAULT** | **USING INDEX** `index_name` | **FULL** | **NOTHING** }

**and partition_bound_spec is:**

- **IN** `{ partition_bound_expr [, ... ] }
- **FROM** `{ { partition_bound_expr \| MINVALUE \| MAXVALUE } [, ... ] }
- **TO** `{ { partition_bound_expr \| MINVALUE \| MAXVALUE } [, ... ] }
- **WITH** `{ MODULUS numeric_literal, REMAINDER numeric_literal }

**and column_constraint is:**

- **[ CONSTRAINT** `constraint_name` ]
- **{ NOT NULL \| NULL \|**
- **CHECK** `{ expression } [ **NO INHERIT** ]
- **DEFAULT** `default_expr`
- **GENERATED ALWAYS AS** `{ generation_expr } **STORED**
- **GENERATED** `{ ALWAYS \| BY DEFAULT } AS **IDENTITY** `{ sequence_options }
- **UNIQUE** `index_parameters`
- **PRIMARY KEY** `index_parameters`
- **REFERENCES** `reftable` `{ { refcolumn } \| **MATCH** **FULL** \| **MATCH PARTIAL** \| **MATCH SIMPLE**
- **[ ON DELETE** `referential_action` \| **ON UPDATE** `referential_action` ]
- **[ DEFERRABLE \| NOT DEFERRABLE ] \| **INITIALLY DEFERRED** \| **INITIALLY IMMEDIATE**

**and table_constraint is:**

- **[ CONSTRAINT** `constraint_name` ]
- **{ CHECK** `{ expression } [ **NO INHERIT** ]
- **UNIQUE** `{ column_name [, ... ] } `index_parameters`
- **PRIMARY KEY** `{ column_name [, ... ] } `index_parameters`
- **EXCLUDE** `{ USING index_method } `{ exclude_element \| operator
- **[ WHERE** `{ predicate } ]
- **FOREIGN KEY** `{ column_name [, ... ] } `REFERENCES` `reftable` `{ { refcolumn [, ... ] } \|** MATCH** **FULL** \| **MATCH PARTIAL** \| **MATCH SIMPLE**
- **[ ON DELETE** `referential_action` \| **ON UPDATE** `referential_action` ]
- **[ DEFERRABLE \| NOT DEFERRABLE ] \| **INITIALLY DEFERRED** \| **INITIALLY IMMEDIATE**

**and table_constraint_using_index is:**

- **[ CONSTRAINT** `constraint_name` ]
- **{ UNIQUE \| PRIMARY KEY } USING INDEX** `index_name`
ALTER TABLE

[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]

index_parameters in UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, and EXCLUDE constraints are:

[ INCLUDE ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING INDEX TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]

exclude_element in an EXCLUDE constraint is:

{ column_name | ( expression ) | [ opclass ] [ ASC | DESC ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] }

Description

ALTER TABLE changes the definition of an existing table. There are several subforms described below. Note that the lock level required may differ for each subform. An ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock is acquired unless explicitly noted. When multiple subcommands are given, the lock acquired will be the strictest one required by any subcommand.

ADD COLUMN [ IF NOT EXISTS ]

This form adds a new column to the table, using the same syntax as CREATE TABLE. If IF NOT EXISTS is specified and a column already exists with this name, no error is thrown.

DROP COLUMN [ IF EXISTS ]

This form drops a column from a table. Indexes and table constraints involving the column will be automatically dropped as well. Multivariate statistics referencing the dropped column will also be removed if the removal of the column would cause the statistics to contain data for only a single column. You will need to say CASCADE if anything outside the table depends on the column, for example, foreign key references or views. If IF EXISTS is specified and the column does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

SET DATA TYPE

This form changes the type of a column of a table. Indexes and simple table constraints involving the column will be automatically converted to use the new column type by reparsing the originally supplied expression. The optional COLLATE clause specifies a collation for the new column; if omitted, the collation is the default for the new column type. The optional USING clause specifies how to compute the new column value from the old; if omitted, the default conversion is the same as an assignment cast from old data type to new. A USING clause must be provided if there is no implicit or assignment cast from old to new type.

SET/DROP DEFAULT

These forms set or remove the default value for a column (where removal is equivalent to setting the default value to NULL). The new default value will only apply in subsequent INSERT or UPDATE commands; it does not cause rows already in the table to change.

SET/DROP NOT NULL

These forms change whether a column is marked to allow null values or to reject null values.

SET NOT NULL may only be applied to a column provided none of the records in the table contain a NULL value for the column. Ordinarily this is checked during the ALTER TABLE by scanning the entire table; however, if a valid CHECK constraint is found which proves no NULL can exist, then the table scan is skipped.

If this table is a partition, one cannot perform DROP NOT NULL on a column if it is marked NOT NULL in the parent table. To drop the NOT NULL constraint from all the partitions, perform DROP NOT NULL on the parent table. Even if there is no NOT NULL constraint on the parent, such a constraint can still
be added to individual partitions, if desired; that is, the children can disallow nulls even if the parent allows them, but not the other way around.

**DROP EXPRESSION** [ **IF EXISTS** ]

This form turns a stored generated column into a normal base column. Existing data in the columns is retained, but future changes will no longer apply the generation expression.

If **DROP EXPRESSION IF EXISTS** is specified and the column is not a stored generated column, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

**ADD GENERATED** { **ALWAYS** | **BY DEFAULT** } AS **IDENTITY**

**SET GENERATED** { **ALWAYS** | **BY DEFAULT** }

**DROP IDENTITY** [ **IF EXISTS** ]

These forms change whether a column is an identity column or change the generation attribute of an existing identity column. See **CREATE TABLE** for details. Like **SET DEFAULT**, these forms only affect the behavior of subsequent **INSERT** and **UPDATE** commands; they do not cause rows already in the table to change.

If **DROP IDENTITY IF EXISTS** is specified and the column is not an identity column, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

**SET** **sequence_option**
**RESTART**

These forms alter the sequence that underlies an existing identity column. **sequence_option** is an option supported by **ALTER SEQUENCE** such as **INCREMENT** BY.

**SET STATISTICS**

This form sets the per-column statistics-gathering target for subsequent **ANALYZE** operations. The target can be set in the range 0 to 10000; alternatively, set it to -1 to revert to using the system default statistics target (**default_statistics_target**). For more information on the use of statistics by the Postgres Pro query planner, refer to Section 14.2.

**SET STATISTICS** acquires a **SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE** lock.

**SET** { **attribute_option** = **value** [ , ... ] }
**RESET** { **attribute_option** [ , ... ] }

This form sets or resets per-attribute options. Currently, the only defined per-attribute options are **n_distinct** and **n_distinct_inherited**, which override the number-of-distinct-values estimates made by subsequent **ANALYZE** operations. **n_distinct** affects the statistics for the table itself, while **n_distinct_inherited** affects the statistics gathered for the table plus its inheritance children. When set to a positive value, **ANALYZE** will assume that the column contains exactly the specified number of distinct nonnull values. When set to a negative value, which must be greater than or equal to -1, **ANALYZE** will assume that the number of distinct nonnull values in the column is linear in the size of the table; the exact count is to be computed by multiplying the estimated table size by the absolute value of the given number. For example, a value of -1 implies that all values in the column are distinct, while a value of -0.5 implies that each value appears twice on the average. This can be useful when the size of the table changes over time, since the multiplication by the number of rows in the table is not performed until query planning time. Specify a value of 0 to revert to estimating the number of distinct values normally. For more information on the use of statistics by the Postgres Pro query planner, refer to Section 14.2.

Changing per-attribute options acquires a **SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE** lock.

**SET STORAGE**

This form sets the storage mode for a column. This controls whether this column is held inline or in a secondary TOAST table, and whether the data should be compressed or not. **PLAIN** must be used for fixed-length values such as **integer** and is inline, uncompressed. **MAIN** is for inline, compressible
ALTER TABLE

data. **EXTERNAL** is for external, uncompressed data, and **EXTENDED** is for external, compressed data. **EXTENDED** is the default for most data types that support non-PLAIN storage. Use of **EXTERNAL** will make substring operations on very large text and bytea values run faster, at the penalty of increased storage space. Note that **SET STORAGE** doesn’t itself change anything in the table, it just sets the strategy to be pursued during future table updates. See Section 66.2 for more information.

**SET COMPRESSION** compression_method

This form sets the compression method for a column, determining how values inserted in future will be compressed (if the storage mode permits compression at all). This does not cause the table to be rewritten, so existing data may still be compressed with other compression methods. If the table is restored with pg_restore, then all values are rewritten with the configured compression method. However, when data is inserted from another relation (for example, by **INSERT ... SELECT**), values from the source table are not necessarily detoasted, so any previously compressed data may retain its existing compression method, rather than being recompressed with the compression method of the target column. The supported compression methods are pglz and lz4. (lz4 is available only if --with-lz4 was used when building PostgreSQL.) In addition, **compression_method** can be **default**, which selects the default behavior of consulting the **default_toast_compression** setting at the time of data insertion to determine the method to use.

**ADD table_constraint [ NOT VALID ]**

This form adds a new constraint to a table using the same constraint syntax as **CREATE TABLE**, plus the option **NOT VALID**, which is currently only allowed for foreign key and CHECK constraints.

Normally, this form will cause a scan of the table to verify that all existing rows in the table satisfy the new constraint. But if the **NOT VALID** option is used, this potentially-lengthy scan is skipped. The constraint will still be enforced against subsequent inserts or updates (that is, they'll fail unless there is a matching row in the referenced table, in the case of foreign keys, or they'll fail unless the new row matches the specified check condition). But the database will not assume that the constraint holds for all rows in the table, until it is validated by using the **VALIDATE CONSTRAINT** option. See **Notes** below for more information about using the **NOT VALID** option.

Although most forms of **ADD table_constraint** require an **ACCESS EXCLUSIVE** lock, **ADD FOREIGN KEY** requires only a **SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE** lock. Note that **ADD FOREIGN KEY** also acquires a **SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE** lock on the referenced table, in addition to the lock on the table on which the constraint is declared.

Additional restrictions apply when unique or primary key constraints are added to partitioned tables; see **CREATE TABLE**. Also, foreign key constraints on partitioned tables may not be declared **NOT VALID** at present.

**ADD table_constraint_using_index**

This form adds a new **PRIMARY KEY** or **UNIQUE** constraint to a table based on an existing unique index. All the columns of the index will be included in the constraint.

The index cannot have expression columns nor be a partial index. Also, it must be a b-tree index with default sort ordering. These restrictions ensure that the index is equivalent to one that would be built by a regular **ADD PRIMARY KEY** or **ADD UNIQUE** command.

If **PRIMARY KEY** is specified, and the index's columns are not already marked **NOT NULL**, then this command will attempt to do **ALTER COLUMN SET NOT NULL** against each such column. That requires a full table scan to verify the column(s) contain no nulls. In all other cases, this is a fast operation.

If a constraint name is provided then the index will be renamed to match the constraint name. Otherwise the constraint will be named the same as the index.

After this command is executed, the index is “owned” by the constraint, in the same way as if the index had been built by a regular **ADD PRIMARY KEY** or **ADD UNIQUE** command. In particular, dropping the constraint will make the index disappear too.
This form is not currently supported on partitioned tables.

Note
Adding a constraint using an existing index can be helpful in situations where a new constraint needs to be added without blocking table updates for a long time. To do that, create the index using `CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY`, and then install it as an official constraint using this syntax. See the example below.

ALTER CONSTRAINT
This form alters the attributes of a constraint that was previously created. Currently only foreign key constraints may be altered.

VALIDATE CONSTRAINT
This form validates a foreign key or check constraint that was previously created as `NOT VALID`, by scanning the table to ensure there are no rows for which the constraint is not satisfied. Nothing happens if the constraint is already marked valid. (See Notes below for an explanation of the usefulness of this command.)

This command acquires a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock.

DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ]
This form drops the specified constraint on a table, along with any index underlying the constraint. If `IF EXISTS` is specified and the constraint does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICA | ALWAYS ] TRIGGER
These forms configure the firing of trigger(s) belonging to the table. A disabled trigger is still known to the system, but is not executed when its triggering event occurs. For a deferred trigger, the enable status is checked when the event occurs, not when the trigger function is actually executed. One can disable or enable a single trigger specified by name, or all triggers on the table, or only user triggers (this option excludes internally generated constraint triggers such as those that are used to implement foreign key constraints or deferrable uniqueness and exclusion constraints). Disabling or enabling internally generated constraint triggers requires superuser privileges; it should be done with caution since of course the integrity of the constraint cannot be guaranteed if the triggers are not executed.

The trigger firing mechanism is also affected by the configuration variable `session_replication_role`. Simply enabled triggers (the default) will fire when the replication role is “origin” (the default) or “local”. Triggers configured as `ENABLE REPLICA` will only fire if the session is in “replica” mode, and triggers configured as `ENABLE ALWAYS` will fire regardless of the current replication role.

The effect of this mechanism is that in the default configuration, triggers do not fire on replicas. This is useful because if a trigger is used on the origin to propagate data between tables, then the replication system will also replicate the propagated data, and the trigger should not fire a second time on the replica, because that would lead to duplication. However, if a trigger is used for another purpose such as creating external alerts, then it might be appropriate to set it to `ENABLE ALWAYS` so that it is also fired on replicas.

This command acquires a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock.

DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICA | ALWAYS ] RULE
These forms configure the firing of rewrite rules belonging to the table. A disabled rule is still known to the system, but is not applied during query rewriting. The semantics are as for disabled/enabled triggers. This configuration is ignored for `ON SELECT` rules, which are always applied in order to keep views working even if the current session is in a non-default replication role.
ALTER TABLE

The rule firing mechanism is also affected by the configuration variable `session_replication_role`, analogous to triggers as described above.

DISABLE/ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY

These forms control the application of row security policies belonging to the table. If enabled and no policies exist for the table, then a default-deny policy is applied. Note that policies can exist for a table even if row-level security is disabled. In this case, the policies will not be applied and the policies will be ignored. See also `CREATE POLICY`.

NO FORCE/FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY

These forms control the application of row security policies belonging to the table when the user is the table owner. If enabled, row-level security policies will be applied when the user is the table owner. If disabled (the default) then row-level security will not be applied when the user is the table owner. See also `CREATE POLICY`.

CLUSTER ON

This form selects the default index for future CLUSTER operations. It does not actually re-cluster the table.

Changing cluster options acquires a SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock.

SET WITHOUT CLUSTER

This form removes the most recently used CLUSTER index specification from the table. This affects future cluster operations that don’t specify an index.

Changing cluster options acquires a SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock.

SET WITHOUT OIDS

Backward-compatible syntax for removing the oid system column. As oid system columns cannot be added anymore, this never has an effect.

SET TABLESPACE

This form changes the table’s tablespace to the specified tablespace and moves the data file(s) associated with the table to the new tablespace. Indexes on the table, if any, are not moved; but they can be moved separately with additional SET TABLESPACE commands. When applied to a partitioned table, nothing is moved, but any partitions created afterwards with CREATE TABLE PARTITION OF will use that tablespace, unless overridden by a TABLESPACE clause.

All tables in the current database in a tablespace can be moved by using the ALL IN TABLESPACE form, which will lock all tables to be moved first and then move each one. This form also supports OWNED BY, which will only move tables owned by the roles specified. If the NOWAIT option is specified then the command will fail if it is unable to acquire all of the locks required immediately. Note that system catalogs are not moved by this command; use ALTER DATABASE or explicit ALTER TABLE invocations instead if desired. The information_schema relations are not considered part of the system catalogs and will be moved. See also `CREATE TABLESPACE`.

SET { LOGGED | UNLOGGED }

This form changes the table from unlogged to logged or vice-versa (see UNLOGGED). It cannot be applied to a temporary table.

SET { storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] }

This form changes one or more storage parameters for the table. See Storage Parameters in the CREATE TABLE documentation for details on the available parameters. Note that the table contents will not be modified immediately by this command; depending on the parameter you might need to rewrite the table to get the desired effects. That can be done with VACUUM FULL, CLUSTER or one of
the forms of ALTER TABLE that forces a table rewrite. For planner related parameters, changes will take effect from the next time the table is locked so currently executing queries will not be affected.

SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock will be taken for fillfactor, toast and autovacuum storage parameters, as well as the planner parameter parallel_workers.

RESET ( storage_parameter [, ... ] )

This form resets one or more storage parameters to their defaults. As with SET, a table rewrite might be needed to update the table entirely.

INHERIT parent_table

This form adds the target table as a new child of the specified parent table. Subsequently, queries against the parent will include records of the target table. To be added as a child, the target table must already contain all the same columns as the parent (it could have additional columns, too). The columns must have matching data types, and if they have NOT NULL constraints in the parent then they must also have NOT NULL constraints in the child.

There must also be matching child-table constraints for all CHECK constraints of the parent, except those marked non-inheritable (that is, created with ALTER TABLE ... ADD CONSTRAINT ... NO INHERIT) in the parent, which are ignored; all child-table constraints matched must not be marked non-inheritable. Currently UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, and FOREIGN KEY constraints are not considered, but this might change in the future.

NO INHERIT parent_table

This form removes the target table from the list of children of the specified parent table. Queries against the parent table will no longer include records drawn from the target table.

OF type_name

This form links the table to a composite type as though CREATE TABLE OF had formed it. The table’s list of column names and types must precisely match that of the composite type. The table must not inherit from any other table. These restrictions ensure that CREATE TABLE OF would permit an equivalent table definition.

NOT OF

This form dissociates a typed table from its type.

OWNER TO

This form changes the owner of the table, sequence, view, materialized view, or foreign table to the specified user.

REPLICA IDENTITY

This form changes the information which is written to the write-ahead log to identify rows which are updated or deleted. This option has no effect except when logical replication is in use. DEFAULT (the default for non-system tables) records the old values of the columns of the primary key, if any. USING INDEX records the old values of the columns covered by the named index, which must be unique, not partial, not deferrable, and include only columns marked NOT NULL. FULL records the old values of all columns in the row. NOTHING records no information about the old row. (This is the default for system tables.) In all cases, no old values are logged unless at least one of the columns that would be logged differs between the old and new versions of the row.

RENAME

The RENAME forms change the name of a table (or an index, sequence, view, materialized view, or foreign table), the name of an individual column in a table, or the name of a constraint of the table. When renaming a constraint that has an underlying index, the index is renamed as well. There is no effect on the stored data.
**ALTER TABLE**

**SET SCHEMA**

This form moves the table into another schema. Associated indexes, constraints, and sequences owned by table columns are moved as well.

**ATTACH PARTITION** partition_name { FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec | DEFAULT }

This form attaches an existing table (which might itself be partitioned) as a partition of the target table. The table can be attached as a partition for specific values using FOR VALUES or as a default partition by using DEFAULT. For each index in the target table, a corresponding one will be created in the attached table; or, if an equivalent index already exists, it will be attached to the target table’s index, as if ALTER INDEX ATTACH PARTITION had been executed. Note that if the existing table is a foreign table, it is currently not allowed to attach the table as a partition of the target table if there are UNIQUE indexes on the target table. (See also CREATE FOREIGN TABLE.) For each user-defined row-level trigger that exists in the target table, a corresponding one is created in the attached table.

A partition using FOR VALUES uses same syntax for partition_bound_spec as CREATE TABLE. The partition bound specification must correspond to the partitioning strategy and partition key of the target table. The table to be attached must have all the same columns as the target table and no more; moreover, the column types must also match. Also, it must have all the NOT NULL and CHECK constraints of the target table. Currently FOREIGN KEY constraints are not considered. UNIQUE and PRIMARY constraints from the parent table will be created in the partition, if they don't already exist. If any of the CHECK constraints of the table being attached are marked NO INHERIT, the command will fail; such constraints must be recreated without the NO INHERIT clause.

If the new partition is a regular table, a full table scan is performed to check that existing rows in the table do not violate the partition constraint. It is possible to avoid this scan by adding a valid CHECK constraint to the table that allows only rows satisfying the desired partition constraint before running this command. The CHECK constraint will be used to determine that the table need not be scanned to validate the partition constraint. This does not work, however, if any of the partition keys is an expression and the partition does not accept NULL values. If attaching a list partition that will not accept NULL values, also add NOT NULL constraint to the partition key column, unless it’s an expression.

If the new partition is a foreign table, nothing is done to verify that all the rows in the foreign table obey the partition constraint. (See the discussion in CREATE FOREIGN TABLE about constraints on the foreign table.)

When a table has a default partition, defining a new partition changes the partition constraint for the default partition. The default partition can't contain any rows that would need to be moved to the new partition, and will be scanned to verify that none are present. This scan, like the scan of the new partition, can be avoided if an appropriate CHECK constraint is present. Also like the scan of the new partition, it is always skipped when the default partition is a foreign table.

Attaching a partition acquires a SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock on the parent table, in addition to the ACCESS EXCLUSIVE locks on the table being attached and on the default partition (if any).

Further locks must also be held on all sub-partitions if the table being attached is itself a partitioned table. Likewise if the default partition is itself a partitioned table. The locking of the sub-partitions can be avoided by adding a CHECK constraint as described in Section 5.11.2.2.

**DETACH PARTITION** partition_name [ CONCURRENTLY | FINALIZE ]

This form detaches the specified partition of the target table. The detached partition continues to exist as a standalone table, but no longer has any ties to the table from which it was detached. Any indexes that were attached to the target table’s indexes are detached. Any triggers that were created as clones of those in the target table are removed. SHARE lock is obtained on any tables that reference this partitioned table in foreign key constraints.

If CONCURRENTLY is specified, it runs using a reduced lock level to avoid blocking other sessions that might be accessing the partitioned table. In this mode, two transactions are used internally. During
the first transaction, a SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock is taken on both parent table and partition, and the partition is marked as undergoing detach; at that point, the transaction is committed and all other transactions using the partitioned table are waited for. Once all those transactions have completed, the second transaction acquires SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE on the partitioned table and ACCESS EXCLUSIVE on the partition, and the detach process completes. A CHECK constraint that duplicates the partition constraint is added to the partition. CONCURRENTLY cannot be run in a transaction block and is not allowed if the partitioned table contains a default partition.

If FINALIZE is specified, a previous DETACH CONCURRENTLY invocation that was canceled or interrupted is completed. At most one partition in a partitioned table can be pending detach at a time.

All the forms of ALTER TABLE that act on a single table, except RENAME, SET SCHEMA, ATTACH PARTITION, and DETACH PARTITION can be combined into a list of multiple alterations to be applied together. For example, it is possible to add several columns and/or alter the type of several columns in a single command. This is particularly useful with large tables, since only one pass over the table need be made.

You must own the table to use ALTER TABLE. To change the schema or tablespace of a table, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema or tablespace. To add the table as a new child of a parent table, you must own the parent table as well. Also, to attach a table as a new partition of the table, you must own the table being attached. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the table’s schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn’t do anything you couldn’t do by dropping and recreating the table. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any table anyway.) To add a column or alter a column type or use the OF clause, you must also have USAGE privilege on the data type.

**Parameters**

**IF EXISTS**

Do not throw an error if the table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table to alter. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is altered. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are altered. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

**column_name**

Name of a new or existing column.

**new_column_name**

New name for an existing column.

**new_name**

New name for the table.

**data_type**

Data type of the new column, or new data type for an existing column.

**table_constraint**

New table constraint for the table.

**constraint_name**

Name of a new or existing constraint.

**CASCADE**

Automatically drop objects that depend on the dropped column or constraint (for example, views referencing the column), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).
ALTER TABLE

RESTRIC
   Refuse to drop the column or constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default
   behavior.

trigger_name
   Name of a single trigger to disable or enable.

ALL
   Disable or enable all triggers belonging to the table. (This requires superuser privilege if any of the
   triggers are internally generated constraint triggers such as those that are used to implement foreign
   key constraints or deferrable uniqueness and exclusion constraints.)

USER
   Disable or enable all triggers belonging to the table except for internally generated constraint
   triggers such as those that are used to implement foreign key constraints or deferrable uniqueness
   and exclusion constraints.

index_name
   The name of an existing index.

storage_parameter
   The name of a table storage parameter.

value
   The new value for a table storage parameter. This might be a number or a word depending on the
   parameter.

parent_table
   A parent table to associate or de-associate with this table.
	new_owner
      The user name of the new owner of the table.
	new_tablespace
      The name of the tablespace to which the table will be moved.
	new_schema
      The name of the schema to which the table will be moved.

partition_name
   The name of the table to attach as a new partition or to detach from this table.

partition_bound_spec
   The partition bound specification for a new partition. Refer to CREATE TABLE for more details on
   the syntax of the same.

Notes
The key word COLUMN is noise and can be omitted.

When a column is added with ADD COLUMN and a non-volatile DEFAULT is specified, the default is evaluated
at the time of the statement and the result stored in the table's metadata. That value will be used for
the column for all existing rows. If no DEFAULT is specified, NULL is used. In neither case is a rewrite
of the table required.
Adding a column with a volatile DEFAULT or changing the type of an existing column will require the entire table and its indexes to be rewritten. As an exception, when changing the type of an existing column, if the USING clause does not change the column contents and the old type is either binary coercible to the new type or an unconstrained domain over the new type, a table rewrite is not needed; but any indexes on the affected columns must still be rebuilt. Table and/or index rebuilds may take a significant amount of time for a large table; and will temporarily require as much as double the disk space.

Adding a CHECK or NOT NULL constraint requires scanning the table to verify that existing rows meet the constraint, but does not require a table rewrite.

Similarly, when attaching a new partition it may be scanned to verify that existing rows meet the partition constraint.

The main reason for providing the option to specify multiple changes in a single ALTER TABLE is that multiple table scans or rewrites can thereby be combined into a single pass over the table.

Scanning a large table to verify a new foreign key or check constraint can take a long time, and other updates to the table are locked out until the ALTER TABLE ADD CONSTRAINT command is committed. The main purpose of the NOT VALID constraint option is to reduce the impact of adding a constraint on concurrent updates. With NOT VALID, the ADD CONSTRAINT command does not scan the table and can be committed immediately. After that, a VALIDATE CONSTRAINT command can be issued to verify that existing rows satisfy the constraint. The validation step does not need to lock out concurrent updates, since it knows that other transactions will be enforcing the constraint for rows that they insert or update; only pre-existing rows need to be checked. Hence, validation acquires only a SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock on the table being altered. (If the constraint is a foreign key then a ROW SHARE lock is also required on the table referenced by the constraint.) In addition to improving concurrency, it can be useful to use NOT VALID and VALIDATE CONSTRAINT in cases where the table is known to contain pre-existing violations. Once the constraint is in place, no new violations can be inserted, and the existing problems can be corrected at leisure until VALIDATE CONSTRAINT finally succeeds.

The DROP COLUMN form does not physically remove the column, but simply makes it invisible to SQL operations. Subsequent insert and update operations in the table will store a null value for the column. Thus, dropping a column is quick but it will not immediately reduce the on-disk size of your table, as the space occupied by the dropped column is not reclaimed. The space will be reclaimed over time as existing rows are updated.

To force immediate reclamation of space occupied by a dropped column, you can execute one of the forms of ALTER TABLE that performs a rewrite of the whole table. This results in reconstructing each row with the dropped column replaced by a null value.

The rewriting forms of ALTER TABLE are not MVCC-safe. After a table rewrite, the table will appear empty to concurrent transactions, if they are using a snapshot taken before the rewrite occurred. See Section 13.5 for more details.

The USING option of SET DATA TYPE can actually specify any expression involving the old values of the row; that is, it can refer to other columns as well as the one being converted. This allows very general conversions to be done with the SET DATA TYPE syntax. Because of this flexibility, the USING expression is not applied to the column's default value (if any); the result might not be a constant expression as required for a default. This means that when there is no implicit or assignment cast from old to new type, SET DATA TYPE might fail to convert the default even though a USING clause is supplied. In such cases, drop the default with DROP DEFAULT, perform the ALTER TYPE, and then use SET DEFAULT to add a suitable new default. Similar considerations apply to indexes and constraints involving the column.

If a table has any descendant tables, it is not permitted to add, rename, or change the type of a column in the parent table without doing the same to the descendants. This ensures that the descendants always have columns matching the parent. Similarly, a CHECK constraint cannot be renamed in the parent without also renaming it in all descendants, so that CHECK constraints also match between the parent and its descendants. (That restriction does not apply to index-based constraints, however.) Also, because selecting from the parent also selects from its descendants, a constraint on the parent cannot be marked
valid unless it is also marked valid for those descendants. In all of these cases, `ALTER TABLE ONLY` will be rejected.

A recursive `DROP COLUMN` operation will remove a descendant table's column only if the descendant does not inherit that column from any other parents and never had an independent definition of the column. A nonrecursive `DROP COLUMN` (i.e., `ALTER TABLE ONLY ... DROP COLUMN`) never removes any descendant columns, but instead marks them as independently defined rather than inherited. A nonrecursive `DROP COLUMN` command will fail for a partitioned table, because all partitions of a table must have the same columns as the partitioning root.

The actions for identity columns (ADD GENERATED, SET etc., DROP IDENTITY), as well as the actions TRIGGER, CLUSTER, OWNER, and TABLESPACE never recurse to descendant tables; that is, they always act as though `ONLY` were specified. Adding a constraint recurses only for CHECK constraints that are not marked NO INHERIT.

Changing any part of a system catalog table is not permitted.

Refer to `CREATE TABLE` for a further description of valid parameters. Chapter 5 has further information on inheritance.

**Examples**

To add a column of type `varchar` to a table:

```sql
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD COLUMN address varchar(30);
```

That will cause all existing rows in the table to be filled with null values for the new column.

To add a column with a non-null default:

```sql
ALTER TABLE measurements
  ADD COLUMN mtime timestamp with time zone DEFAULT now();
```

Existing rows will be filled with the current time as the value of the new column, and then new rows will receive the time of their insertion.

To add a column and fill it with a value different from the default to be used later:

```sql
ALTER TABLE transactions
  ADD COLUMN status varchar(30) DEFAULT 'old',
  ALTER COLUMN status SET default 'current';
```

Existing rows will be filled with `old`, but then the default for subsequent commands will be `current`. The effects are the same as if the two sub-commands had been issued in separate `ALTER TABLE` commands.

To drop a column from a table:

```sql
ALTER TABLE distributors DROP COLUMN address RESTRICT;
```

To change the types of two existing columns in one operation:

```sql
ALTER TABLE distributors
  ALTER COLUMN address TYPE varchar(80),
  ALTER COLUMN name TYPE varchar(100);
```

To change an integer column containing Unix timestamps to `timestamp with time zone` via a `USING` clause:

```sql
ALTER TABLE foo
  ALTER COLUMN foo_timestamp SET DATA TYPE timestamp with time zone
  USING timestamp with time zone 'epoch' + foo_timestamp * interval '1 second';
```

The same, when the column has a default expression that won't automatically cast to the new data type:
ALTER TABLE foo
   ALTER COLUMN foo_timestamp DROP DEFAULT,
   ALTER COLUMN foo_timestamp TYPE timestamp with time zone
   USING
timestamp with time zone 'epoch' + foo_timestamp * interval '1 second',
   ALTER COLUMN foo_timestamp SET DEFAULT now();

To rename an existing column:
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME COLUMN address TO city;

To rename an existing table:
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME TO suppliers;

To rename an existing constraint:
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME CONSTRAINT zipchk TO zip_check;

To add a not-null constraint to a column:
ALTER TABLE distributors ALTER COLUMN street SET NOT NULL;

To remove a not-null constraint from a column:
ALTER TABLE distributors ALTER COLUMN street DROP NOT NULL;

To add a check constraint to a table and all its children:
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK (char_length(zipcode) = 5);

To add a check constraint only to a table and not to its children:
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK (char_length(zipcode) = 5) NO
   INHERIT;
(The check constraint will not be inherited by future children, either.)

To remove a check constraint from a table and all its children:
ALTER TABLE distributors DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;

To remove a check constraint from one table only:
ALTER TABLE ONLY distributors DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;
(The check constraint remains in place for any child tables.)

To add a foreign key constraint to a table:
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT distfk FOREIGN KEY (address) REFERENCES
   addresses (address);

To add a foreign key constraint to a table with the least impact on other work:
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT distfk FOREIGN KEY (address) REFERENCES
   addresses (address) NOT VALID;
ALTER TABLE distributors VALIDATE CONSTRAINT distfk;

To add a (multicolumn) unique constraint to a table:
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT dist_id_zipcode_key UNIQUE (dist_id, zipcode);

To add an automatically named primary key constraint to a table, noting that a table can only ever have
one primary key:
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD PRIMARY KEY (dist_id);

To move a table to a different tablespace:
ALTER TABLE distributors SET TABLESPACE fasttablespace;

To move a table to a different schema:
ALTER TABLE myschema.distributors SET SCHEMA yourschema;

To recreate a primary key constraint, without blocking updates while the index is rebuilt:
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX CONCURRENTLY dist_id_temp_idx ON distributors (dist_id);
ALTER TABLE distributors DROP CONSTRAINT distributors_pkey,
    ADD CONSTRAINT distributors_pkey PRIMARY KEY USING INDEX dist_id_temp_idx;

To attach a partition to a range-partitioned table:
ALTER TABLE measurement
    ATTACH PARTITION measurement_y2016m07 FOR VALUES FROM ('2016-07-01') TO ('2016-08-01');

To attach a partition to a list-partitioned table:
ALTER TABLE cities
    ATTACH PARTITION cities_ab FOR VALUES IN ('a', 'b');

To attach a partition to a hash-partitioned table:
ALTER TABLE orders
    ATTACH PARTITION orders_p4 FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 3);

To attach a default partition to a partitioned table:
ALTER TABLE cities
    ATTACH PARTITION cities_partdef DEFAULT;

To detach a partition from a partitioned table:
ALTER TABLE measurement
    DETACH PARTITION measurement_y2015m12;

Compatibility

The forms \texttt{ADD} (without \texttt{USING INDEX}), \texttt{DROP} \texttt{[COLUMN]}, \texttt{DROP IDENTITY}, \texttt{RESTART}, \texttt{SET DEFAULT}, \texttt{SET DATA TYPE} (without \texttt{USING}), \texttt{SET GENERATED}, and \texttt{SET sequence_option} conform with the SQL standard. The other forms are Postgres Pro extensions of the SQL standard. Also, the ability to specify more than one manipulation in a single \texttt{ALTER TABLE} command is an extension.

\texttt{ALTER TABLE DROP COLUMN} can be used to drop the only column of a table, leaving a zero-column table. This is an extension of SQL, which disallows zero-column tables.

See Also
CREATE TABLE
ALTER TABLESPACE

ALTER TABLESPACE — change the definition of a tablespace

Synopsis

ALTER TABLESPACE name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TABLESPACE name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER TABLESPACE name SET ( tablespace_option = value [, ... ] )
ALTER TABLESPACE name RESET ( tablespace_option [, ... ] )

Description

ALTER TABLESPACE can be used to change the definition of a tablespace.

You must own the tablespace to change the definition of a tablespace. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role. (Note that superusers have these privileges automatically.)

Parameters

name

The name of an existing tablespace.

new_name

The new name of the tablespace. The new name cannot begin with `pg_`, as such names are reserved for system tablespaces.

new_owner

The new owner of the tablespace.

tablespace_option

A tablespace parameter to be set or reset. Currently, the only available parameters are `seq_page_cost`, `random_page_cost`, `effective_io_concurrency` and `maintenance_io_concurrency`. Setting these values for a particular tablespace will override the planner's usual estimate of the cost of reading pages from tables in that tablespace, and the executor's prefetching behavior, as established by the configuration parameters of the same name (see `seq_page_cost`, `random_page_cost`, `effective_io_concurrency`, `maintenance_io_concurrency`). This may be useful if one tablespace is located on a disk which is faster or slower than the remainder of the I/O subsystem.

Examples

Rename tablespace `index_space` to `fast_raid`:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE index_space RENAME TO fast_raid;
```

Change the owner of tablespace `index_space`:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE index_space OWNER TO mary;
```

Compatibility

There is no ALTER TABLESPACE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE TABLESPACE, DROP TABLESPACE
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION — change the definition of a text search configuration

Synopsis

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
ADD MAPPING FOR token_type [, ... ] WITH dictionary_name [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
ALTER MAPPING FOR token_type [, ... ] WITH dictionary_name [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
ALTER MAPPING REPLACE old_dictionary WITH new_dictionary
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
ALTER MAPPING FOR token_type [, ... ] REPLACE old_dictionary WITH new_dictionary
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
SESSION_USER }
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name SET SCHEMA new_schema

Description

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION changes the definition of a text search configuration. You can modify its mappings from token types to dictionaries, or change the configuration’s name or owner.

You must be the owner of the configuration to use ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION.

Parameters

name
The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search configuration.

token_type
The name of a token type that is emitted by the configuration’s parser.
dictionary_name
The name of a text search dictionary to be consulted for the specified token type(s). If multiple dictionaries are listed, they are consulted in the specified order.

old_dictionary
The name of a text search dictionary to be replaced in the mapping.

new_dictionary
The name of a text search dictionary to be substituted for old_dictionary.

new_name
The new name of the text search configuration.

new_owner
The new owner of the text search configuration.

new_schema
The new schema for the text search configuration.
The **ADD MAPPING FOR** form installs a list of dictionaries to be consulted for the specified token type(s); it is an error if there is already a mapping for any of the token types. The **ALTER MAPPING FOR** form does the same, but first removing any existing mapping for those token types. The **ALTER MAPPING REPLACE** forms substitute *new_dictionary* for *old_dictionary* anywhere the latter appears. This is done for only the specified token types when **FOR** appears, or for all mappings of the configuration when it doesn't. The **DROP MAPPING** form removes all dictionaries for the specified token type(s), causing tokens of those types to be ignored by the text search configuration. It is an error if there is no mapping for the token types, unless **IF EXISTS** appears.

### Examples

The following example replaces the *english* dictionary with the *swedish* dictionary anywhere that *english* is used within *my_config*.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_config
    ALTER MAPPING REPLACE english WITH swedish;
```

### Compatibility

There is no **ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION** statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

[CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION](#), [DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION](#)
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY — change the definition of a text search dictionary

Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name {
    option [ = value ] [, ... ]
}

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name RENAME TO new_name

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

Description

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY changes the definition of a text search dictionary. You can change the dictionary's template-specific options, or change the dictionary's name or owner.

You must be the owner of the dictionary to use ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY.

Parameters

- **name**
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search dictionary.

- **option**
  The name of a template-specific option to be set for this dictionary.

- **value**
  The new value to use for a template-specific option. If the equal sign and value are omitted, then any previous setting for the option is removed from the dictionary, allowing the default to be used.

- **new_name**
  The new name of the text search dictionary.

- **new_owner**
  The new owner of the text search dictionary.

- **new_schema**
  The new schema for the text search dictionary.

Template-specific options can appear in any order.

Examples

The following example command changes the stopword list for a Snowball-based dictionary. Other parameters remain unchanged.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( StopWords = newrussian );
```

The following example command changes the language option to dutch, and removes the stopword option entirely.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( language = dutch, StopWords );
```
The following example command “updates” the dictionary's definition without actually changing anything.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( dummy );
```

(The reason this works is that the option removal code doesn't complain if there is no such option.)

This trick is useful when changing configuration files for the dictionary: the `ALTER` will force existing database sessions to re-read the configuration files, which otherwise they would never do if they had read them earlier.

**Compatibility**

There is no `ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` statement in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER — change the definition of a text search parser

Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

Description

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER changes the definition of a text search parser. Currently, the only supported functionality is to change the parser's name.

You must be a superuser to use ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER.

Parameters

- **name**
  - The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search parser.

- **new_name**
  - The new name of the text search parser.

- **new_schema**
  - The new schema for the text search parser.

Compatibility

There is no ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER, DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE — change the definition of a text search template

Synopsis

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE name SET SCHEMA new_schema

Description

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE changes the definition of a text search template. Currently, the only supported functionality is to change the template's name.

You must be a superuser to use ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE.

Parameters

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search template.

new_name

The new name of the text search template.

new_schema

The new schema for the text search template.

Compatibility

There is no ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
**ALTER TRIGGER**

ALTER TRIGGER — change the definition of a trigger

**Synopsis**

ALTER TRIGGER *name* ON *table_name* RENAME TO *new_name*
ALTER TRIGGER *name* ON *table_name* [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION *extension_name*

**Description**

ALTER TRIGGER changes properties of an existing trigger. The RENAME clause changes the name of the given trigger without otherwise changing the trigger definition. The DEPENDS ON EXTENSION clause marks the trigger as dependent on an extension, such that if the extension is dropped, the trigger will automatically be dropped as well.

You must own the table on which the trigger acts to be allowed to change its properties.

**Parameters**

- **name**
  - The name of an existing trigger to alter.

- **table_name**
  - The name of the table on which this trigger acts.

- **new_name**
  - The new name for the trigger.

- **extension_name**
  - The name of the extension that the trigger is to depend on (or no longer dependent on, if NO is specified). A trigger that’s marked as dependent on an extension is automatically dropped when the extension is dropped.

**Notes**

The ability to temporarily enable or disable a trigger is provided by ALTER TABLE, not by ALTER TRIGGER, because ALTER TRIGGER has no convenient way to express the option of enabling or disabling all of a table’s triggers at once.

**Examples**

To rename an existing trigger:

```
ALTER TRIGGER emp_stamp ON emp RENAME TO emp_track_chgs;
```

To mark a trigger as being dependent on an extension:

```
ALTER TRIGGER emp_stamp ON emp DEPENDS ON EXTENSION emplib;
```

**Compatibility**

ALTER TRIGGER is a Postgres Pro extension of the SQL standard.

**See Also**

ALTER TABLE
ALTER TYPE

ALTER TYPE — change the definition of a type

Synopsis

ALTER TYPE name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER TYPE name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TYPE name SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER TYPE name RENAME ATTRIBUTE attribute_name TO new_attribute_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
ALTER TYPE name action [, ... ]
ALTER TYPE name ADD VALUE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] new_enum_value [ { BEFORE | AFTER } neighbor_enum_value ]
ALTER TYPE name RENAME VALUE existing_enum_value TO new_enum_value
ALTER TYPE name SET ( property = value [, ... ] )

where action is one of:

ADD ATTRIBUTE attribute_name data_type [ COLLATE collation ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
DROP ATTRIBUTE [ IF EXISTS ] attribute_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
ALTER ATTRIBUTE attribute_name [ SET DATA ] TYPE data_type [ COLLATE collation ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

ALTER TYPE changes the definition of an existing type. There are several subforms:

OWNER

This form changes the owner of the type.

RENAME

This form changes the name of the type.

SET SCHEMA

This form moves the type into another schema.

RENAME ATTRIBUTE

This form is only usable with composite types. It changes the name of an individual attribute of the type.

ADD ATTRIBUTE

This form adds a new attribute to a composite type, using the same syntax as CREATE TYPE.

DROP ATTRIBUTE [ IF EXISTS ]

This form drops an attribute from a composite type. If IF EXISTS is specified and the attribute does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

ALTER ATTRIBUTE ... SET DATA TYPE

This form changes the type of an attribute of a composite type.

ADD VALUE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] [ BEFORE | AFTER ]

This form adds a new value to an enum type. The new value's place in the enum's ordering can be specified as being BEFORE or AFTER one of the existing values. Otherwise, the new item is added at the end of the list of values.
ALTER TYPE

If IF NOT EXISTS is specified, it is not an error if the type already contains the new value: a notice is issued but no other action is taken. Otherwise, an error will occur if the new value is already present.

RENAME VALUE

This form renames a value of an enum type. The value's place in the enum's ordering is not affected. An error will occur if the specified value is not present or the new name is already present.

SET ( property = value [, ... ] )

This form is only applicable to base types. It allows adjustment of a subset of the base-type properties that can be set in CREATE TYPE. Specifically, these properties can be changed:

- RECEIVE can be set to the name of a binary input function, or NONE to remove the type's binary input function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- SEND can be set to the name of a binary output function, or NONE to remove the type's binary output function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- TYPMOD_IN can be set to the name of a type modifier input function, or NONE to remove the type's type modifier input function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- TYPMOD_OUT can be set to the name of a type modifier output function, or NONE to remove the type's type modifier output function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- ANALYZE can be set to the name of a type-specific statistics collection function, or NONE to remove the type's statistics collection function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- SUBSCRIPT can be set to the name of a type-specific subscripting handler function, or NONE to remove the type's subscripting handler function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- STORAGE can be set to plain, extended, external, or main (see Section 66.2 for more information about what these mean). However, changing from plain to another setting requires superuser privilege (because it requires that the type's C functions all be TOAST-ready), and changing to plain from another setting is not allowed at all (since the type may already have TOASTed values present in the database). Note that changing this option doesn't by itself change any stored data, it just sets the default TOAST strategy to be used for table columns created in the future. See ALTER TABLE to change the TOAST strategy for existing table columns.

See CREATE TYPE for more details about these type properties. Note that where appropriate, a change in these properties for a base type will be propagated automatically to domains based on that type.

The ADD ATTRIBUTE, DROP ATTRIBUTE, and ALTER ATTRIBUTE actions can be combined into a list of multiple alterations to apply in parallel. For example, it is possible to add several attributes and/or alter the type of several attributes in a single command.

You must own the type to use ALTER TYPE. To change the schema of a type, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the type's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the type. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any type anyway.) To add an attribute or alter an attribute type, you must also have USAGE privilege on the attribute's data type.

**Parameters**

name

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing type to alter.

new_name

The new name for the type.
ALTER TYPE

new_owner
The user name of the new owner of the type.

new_schema
The new schema for the type.

attribute_name
The name of the attribute to add, alter, or drop.

new_attribute_name
The new name of the attribute to be renamed.

data_type
The data type of the attribute to add, or the new type of the attribute to alter.

new_enum_value
The new value to be added to an enum type's list of values, or the new name to be given to an existing value. Like all enum literals, it needs to be quoted.

neighbor_enum_value
The existing enum value that the new value should be added immediately before or after in the enum type's sort ordering. Like all enum literals, it needs to be quoted.

existing_enum_value
The existing enum value that should be renamed. Like all enum literals, it needs to be quoted.

property
The name of a base-type property to be modified; see above for possible values.

CASCADE
Automatically propagate the operation to typed tables of the type being altered, and their descendants.

RESTRICT
Refuse the operation if the type being altered is the type of a typed table. This is the default.

Notes
If ALTER TYPE ... ADD VALUE (the form that adds a new value to an enum type) is executed inside a transaction block, the new value cannot be used until after the transaction has been committed.

Comparisons involving an added enum value will sometimes be slower than comparisons involving only original members of the enum type. This will usually only occur if BEFORE or AFTER is used to set the new value's sort position somewhere other than at the end of the list. However, sometimes it will happen even though the new value is added at the end (this occurs if the OID counter “wrapped around” since the original creation of the enum type). The slowdown is usually insignificant; but if it matters, optimal performance can be regained by dropping and recreating the enum type, or by dumping and reloading the database.

Examples
To rename a data type:

ALTER TYPE electronic_mail RENAME TO email;

To change the owner of the type email to joe:
ALTER TYPE email OWNER TO joe;

To change the schema of the type email to customers:
ALTER TYPE email SET SCHEMA customers;

To add a new attribute to a composite type:
ALTER TYPE compfoo ADD ATTRIBUTE f3 int;

To add a new value to an enum type in a particular sort position:
ALTER TYPE colors ADD VALUE 'orange' AFTER 'red';

To rename an enum value:
ALTER TYPE colors RENAME VALUE 'purple' TO 'mauve';

To create binary I/O functions for an existing base type:
CREATE FUNCTION mytypesend(mytype) RETURNS bytea ...;
CREATE FUNCTION mytyperecv(internal, oid, integer) RETURNS mytype ...;
ALTER TYPE mytype SET (
    SEND = mytypesend,
    RECEIVE = mytyperecv
);

Compatibility
The variants to add and drop attributes are part of the SQL standard; the other variants are Postgres Pro extensions.

See Also
CREATE TYPE, DROP TYPE
**ALTER USER**

**ALTER USER — change a database role**

**Synopsis**

```sql
ALTER USER role_specification [ WITH ] option [ ... ]
```

where `option` can be:

- `SUPERUSER` | `NOSUPERUSER`
- `CREATEDB` | `NOCREATEDB`
- `CREATEROLE` | `NOCREATEROLE`
- `INHERIT` | `NOINHERIT`
- `LOGIN` | `NOLOGIN`
- `REPLICATION` | `NOREPLICATION`
- `BYPASSRLS` | `NOBYPASSRLS`
- `CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit`
- `[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL`
- `VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'`
- `PROFILE profile_name`
- `ACCOUNT UNLOCK | ACCOUNT LOCK`

```sql
ALTER USER name RENAME TO new_name
```

```sql
ALTER USER { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name ]
```

```sql
SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
```

```sql
ALTER USER { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name ]
```

```sql
RESET configuration_parameter
```

**Description**

`ALTER USER` is now an alias for `ALTER ROLE`.

**Compatibility**

The `ALTER USER` statement is a Postgres Pro extension. The SQL standard leaves the definition of users to the implementation.

**See Also**

- `ALTER ROLE`
ALTER USER MAPPING

ALTER USER MAPPING — change the definition of a user mapping

Synopsis

ALTER USER MAPPING FOR { user_name | USER | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER | PUBLIC } SERVER server_name OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )

Description

ALTER USER MAPPING changes the definition of a user mapping.

The owner of a foreign server can alter user mappings for that server for any user. Also, a user can alter a user mapping for their own user name if USAGE privilege on the server has been granted to the user.

Parameters

user_name

User name of the mapping. CURRENT_ROLE, CURRENT_USER, and USER match the name of the current user. PUBLIC is used to match all present and future user names in the system.

server_name

Server name of the user mapping.

OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )

Change options for the user mapping. The new options override any previously specified options. ADD, SET, and DROP specify the action to be performed. ADD is assumed if no operation is explicitly specified. Option names must be unique; options are also validated by the server’s foreign-data wrapper.

Examples

Change the password for user mapping bob, server foo:

ALTER USER MAPPING FOR bob SERVER foo OPTIONS (SET password 'public');

Compatibility

ALTER USER MAPPING conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). There is a subtle syntax issue: The standard omits the FOR key word. Since both CREATE USER MAPPING and DROP USER MAPPING use FOR in analogous positions, and IBM DB2 (being the other major SQL/MED implementation) also requires it for ALTER USER MAPPING, Postgres Pro diverges from the standard here in the interest of consistency and interoperability.

See Also

CREATE USER MAPPING, DROP USER MAPPING
ALTER VIEW

ALTER VIEW — change the definition of a view

Synopsis

```
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET DEFAULT expression
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP DEFAULT
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name RENAME [ COLUMN ] column_name TO new_column_name
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name SET ( view_option_name [= view_option_value] [, ... ] )
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name RESET ( view_option_name [, ... ] )
```

Description

ALTER VIEW changes various auxiliary properties of a view. (If you want to modify the view's defining query, use CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW.)

You must own the view to use ALTER VIEW. To change a view's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the view's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the view. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any view anyway.)

Parameters

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing view.

**column_name**

Name of an existing column.

**new_column_name**

New name for an existing column.

**IF EXISTS**

Do not throw an error if the view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

**SET/DROP DEFAULT**

These forms set or remove the default value for a column. A view column's default value is substituted into any INSERT or UPDATE command whose target is the view, before applying any rules or triggers for the view. The view's default will therefore take precedence over any default values from underlying relations.

**new_owner**

The user name of the new owner of the view.

**new_name**

The new name for the view.

**new_schema**

The new schema for the view.
ALTER VIEW

SET ( view_option_name [= view_option_value] [, ... ] )
RESET ( view_option_name [, ... ] )

Sets or resets a view option. Currently supported options are:

check_option (enum)

Changes the check option of the view. The value must be local or cascaded.

security_barrier (boolean)

Changes the security-barrier property of the view. The value must be Boolean value, such as true or false.

Notes

For historical reasons, ALTER TABLE can be used with views too; but the only variants of ALTER TABLE that are allowed with views are equivalent to the ones shown above.

Examples

To rename the view foo to bar:

ALTER VIEW foo RENAME TO bar;

To attach a default column value to an updatable view:

CREATE TABLE base_table (id int, ts timestamptz);
CREATE VIEW a_view AS SELECT * FROM base_table;
ALTER VIEW a_view ALTER COLUMN ts SET DEFAULT now();
INSERT INTO base_table(id) VALUES(1);  -- ts will receive a NULL
INSERT INTO a_view(id) VALUES(2);  -- ts will receive the current time

Compatibility

ALTER VIEW is a Postgres Pro extension of the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE VIEW, DROP VIEW
**ANALYZE**

ANALYZE — collect statistics about a database

**Synopsis**

```
ANALYZE [ ( option [, ...] ) ] [ table_and_columns [, ...] ]
ANALYZE [ VERBOSE ] [ table_and_columns [, ...] ]
```

where `option` can be one of:

```
VERBOSE [ boolean ]
SKIP_LOCKED [ boolean ]
```

and `table_and_columns` is:

```
table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
```

**Description**

ANALYZE collects statistics about the contents of tables in the database, and stores the results in the pg_statistic system catalog. Subsequently, the query planner uses these statistics to help determine the most efficient execution plans for queries.

Without a `table_and_columns` list, ANALYZE processes every table and materialized view in the current database that the current user has permission to analyze. With a list, ANALYZE processes only those table(s). It is further possible to give a list of column names for a table, in which case only the statistics for those columns are collected.

When the option list is surrounded by parentheses, the options can be written in any order. The parenthesized syntax was added in PostgreSQL 11; the unparenthesized syntax is deprecated.

**Parameters**

**VERBOSE**

Enables display of progress messages.

**SKIP_LOCKED**

Specifies that ANALYZE should not wait for any conflicting locks to be released when beginning work on a relation: if a relation cannot be locked immediately without waiting, the relation is skipped. Note that even with this option, ANALYZE may still block when opening the relation’s indexes or when acquiring sample rows from partitions, table inheritance children, and some types of foreign tables. Also, while ANALYZE ordinarily processes all partitions of specified partitioned tables, this option will cause ANALYZE to skip all partitions if there is a conflicting lock on the partitioned table.

**boolean**

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write `TRUE, ON, or 1` to enable the option, and `FALSE, OFF, or 0` to disable it. The `boolean` value can also be omitted, in which case `TRUE` is assumed.

**table_name**

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of a specific table to analyze. If omitted, all regular tables, partitioned tables, and materialized views in the current database are analyzed (but not foreign tables). If the specified table is a partitioned table, both the inheritance statistics of the partitioned table as a whole and statistics of the individual partitions are updated.
ANALYZE

\texttt{column\_name}

The name of a specific column to analyze. Defaults to all columns.

\textbf{Outputs}

When \texttt{VERBOSE} is specified, \texttt{ANALYZE} emits progress messages to indicate which table is currently being processed. Various statistics about the tables are printed as well.

\textbf{Notes}

To analyze a table, one must ordinarily be the table's owner or a superuser. However, database owners are allowed to analyze all tables in their databases, except shared catalogs. (The restriction for shared catalogs means that a true database-wide \texttt{ANALYZE} can only be performed by a superuser.) \texttt{ANALYZE} will skip over any tables that the calling user does not have permission to analyze.

Foreign tables are analyzed only when explicitly selected. Not all foreign data wrappers support \texttt{ANALYZE}. If the table's wrapper does not support \texttt{ANALYZE}, the command prints a warning and does nothing.

In the default Postgres Pro configuration, the autovacuum daemon (see Section 23.1.6) takes care of automatic analyzing of tables when they are first loaded with data, and as they change throughout regular operation. When autovacuum is disabled, it is a good idea to run \texttt{ANALYZE} periodically, or just after making major changes in the contents of a table. Accurate statistics will help the planner to choose the most appropriate query plan, and thereby improve the speed of query processing. A common strategy for read-mostly databases is to run \texttt{VACUUM} and \texttt{ANALYZE} once a day during a low-usage time of day. (This will not be sufficient if there is heavy update activity.)

\texttt{ANALYZE} requires only a read lock on the target table, so it can run in parallel with other activity on the table.

The statistics collected by \texttt{ANALYZE} usually include a list of some of the most common values in each column and a histogram showing the approximate data distribution in each column. One or both of these can be omitted if \texttt{ANALYZE} deems them uninteresting (for example, in a unique-key column, there are no common values) or if the column data type does not support the appropriate operators. There is more information about the statistics in Chapter 23.

For large tables, \texttt{ANALYZE} takes a random sample of the table contents, rather than examining every row. This allows even very large tables to be analyzed in a small amount of time. Note, however, that the statistics are only approximate, and will change slightly each time \texttt{ANALYZE} is run, even if the actual table contents did not change. This might result in small changes in the planner's estimated costs shown by \texttt{EXPLAIN}. In rare situations, this non-determinism will cause the planner's choices of query plans to change after \texttt{ANALYZE} is run. To avoid this, raise the amount of statistics collected by \texttt{ANALYZE}, as described below.

The extent of analysis can be controlled by adjusting the \texttt{default\_statistics\_target} configuration variable, or on a column-by-column basis by setting the per-column statistics target with \texttt{ALTER TABLE ... ALTER COLUMN ... SET STATISTICS}. The target value sets the maximum number of entries in the most-common-value list and the maximum number of bins in the histogram. The default target value is 100, but this can be adjusted up or down to trade off accuracy of planner estimates against the time taken for \texttt{ANALYZE} and the amount of space occupied in \texttt{pg\_statistic}. In particular, setting the statistics target to zero disables collection of statistics for that column. It might be useful to do that for columns that are never used as part of the \texttt{WHERE}, \texttt{GROUP BY}, or \texttt{ORDER BY} clauses of queries, since the planner will have no use for statistics on such columns.

The largest statistics target among the columns being analyzed determines the number of table rows sampled to prepare the statistics. Increasing the target causes a proportional increase in the time and space needed to do \texttt{ANALYZE}.

One of the values estimated by \texttt{ANALYZE} is the number of distinct values that appear in each column. Because only a subset of the rows are examined, this estimate can sometimes be quite inaccurate, even
with the largest possible statistics target. If this inaccuracy leads to bad query plans, a more accurate value can be determined manually and then installed with `ALTER TABLE ... ALTER COLUMN ... SET (n_distinct = ...)`.

If the table being analyzed has one or more children, `ANALYZE` will gather statistics twice: once on the rows of the parent table only, and a second time on the rows of the parent table with all of its children. This second set of statistics is needed when planning queries that traverse the entire inheritance tree. The autovacuum daemon, however, will only consider inserts or updates on the parent table itself when deciding whether to trigger an automatic analyze for that table. If that table is rarely inserted into or updated, the inheritance statistics will not be up to date unless you run `ANALYZE` manually.

If any of the child tables are foreign tables whose foreign data wrappers do not support `ANALYZE`, those child tables are ignored while gathering inheritance statistics.

If the table being analyzed is completely empty, `ANALYZE` will not record new statistics for that table. Any existing statistics will be retained.

Each backend running `ANALYZE` will report its progress in the `pg_stat_progress_analyze` view. See Section 26.4.1 for details.

**Compatibility**

There is no `ANALYZE` statement in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

`VACUUM`, `vacuumdb`, Section 18.4.4, Section 23.1.6, Section 26.4.1
BEGIN

BEGIN — start a transaction block

Synopsis

BEGIN [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ transaction_mode [, ...] ]

where transaction_mode is one of:

   ISOLATION LEVEL { SERIALIZABLE | REPEATABLE READ | READER COMMITTED | READ UNCOMMITTED }
   READ WRITE | READ ONLY
   [ NOT ] DEFERRABLE

Description

BEGIN initiates a transaction block, that is, all statements after a BEGIN command will be executed in a single transaction until an explicit COMMIT or ROLLBACK is given. By default (without BEGIN), Postgres Pro executes transactions in “autocommit” mode, that is, each statement is executed in its own transaction and a commit is implicitly performed at the end of the statement (if execution was successful, otherwise a rollback is done).

Statements are executed more quickly in a transaction block, because transaction start/commit requires significant CPU and disk activity. Execution of multiple statements inside a transaction is also useful to ensure consistency when making several related changes: other sessions will be unable to see the intermediate states wherein not all the related updates have been done.

If the isolation level, read/write mode, or deferrable mode is specified, the new transaction has those characteristics, as if SET TRANSACTION was executed.

Parameters

WORK
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

Refer to SET TRANSACTION for information on the meaning of the other parameters to this statement.

Notes

START TRANSACTION has the same functionality as BEGIN.

Use COMMIT or ROLLBACK to terminate a transaction block.

Issuing BEGIN when already inside a transaction block will provoke a warning message. The state of the transaction is not affected. To nest transactions within a transaction block, use savepoints (see SAVEPOINT).

For reasons of backwards compatibility, the commas between successive transaction_modes can be omitted.

Examples

To begin a transaction block:

BEGIN;
Compatibility

BEGIN is a Postgres Pro language extension. It is equivalent to the SQL-standard command \texttt{START TRANSACTION}, whose reference page contains additional compatibility information.

The \texttt{DEFERRABLE transaction_mode} is a Postgres Pro language extension.

Incidentally, the \texttt{BEGIN} key word is used for a different purpose in embedded SQL. You are advised to be careful about the transaction semantics when porting database applications.

See Also

\texttt{COMMIT, ROLLBACK, START TRANSACTION, SAVEPOINT}
CALL

CALL — invoke a procedure

Synopsis

CALL name ( [ argument ] [, ...] )

Description

CALL executes a procedure.

If the procedure has any output parameters, then a result row will be returned, containing the values of those parameters.

Parameters

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the procedure.

argument

An argument expression for the procedure call.

Arguments can include parameter names, using the syntax name => value. This works the same as in ordinary function calls; see Section 4.3 for details.

Arguments must be supplied for all procedure parameters that lack defaults, including OUT parameters. However, arguments matching OUT parameters are not evaluated, so it’s customary to just write NULL for them. (Writing something else for an OUT parameter might cause compatibility problems with future PostgreSQL versions.)

Notes

The user must have EXECUTE privilege on the procedure in order to be allowed to invoke it.

To call a function (not a procedure), use SELECT instead.

If CALL is executed in a transaction block, then the called procedure cannot execute transaction control statements. Transaction control statements are only allowed if CALL is executed in its own transaction.

PL/pgSQL handles output parameters in CALL commands differently; see Section 41.6.3.

Examples

CALL do_db_maintenance();

Compatibility

CALL conforms to the SQL standard, except for the handling of output parameters. The standard says that users should write variables to receive the values of output parameters.

See Also

CREATE PROCEDURE
CHECKPOINT

CHECKPOINT — force a write-ahead log checkpoint

Synopsis

CHECKPOINT

Description

A checkpoint is a point in the write-ahead log sequence at which all data files have been updated to reflect the information in the log. All data files will be flushed to disk. Refer to Section 28.5 for more details about what happens during a checkpoint.

The CHECKPOINT command forces an immediate checkpoint when the command is issued, without waiting for a regular checkpoint scheduled by the system (controlled by the settings in Section 18.5.2). CHECKPOINT is not intended for use during normal operation.

If executed during recovery, the CHECKPOINT command will force a restartpoint (see Section 28.5) rather than writing a new checkpoint.

Only superusers can call CHECKPOINT.

Compatibility

The CHECKPOINT command is a Postgres Pro language extension.
CLOSE

CLOSE — close a cursor

Synopsis

CLOSE { name | ALL }

Description

CLOSE frees the resources associated with an open cursor. After the cursor is closed, no subsequent operations are allowed on it. A cursor should be closed when it is no longer needed.

Every non-holdable open cursor is implicitly closed when a transaction is terminated by COMMIT or ROLLBACK. A holdable cursor is implicitly closed if the transaction that created it aborts via ROLLBACK. If the creating transaction successfully commits, the holdable cursor remains open until an explicit CLOSE is executed, or the client disconnects.

Parameters

name

The name of an open cursor to close.

ALL

Close all open cursors.

Notes

Postgres Pro does not have an explicit OPEN cursor statement; a cursor is considered open when it is declared. Use the DECLARE statement to declare a cursor.

You can see all available cursors by querying the pg_cursors system view.

If a cursor is closed after a savepoint which is later rolled back, the CLOSE is not rolled back; that is, the cursor remains closed.

Examples

Close the cursor liahona:

CLOSE liahona;

Compatibility

CLOSE is fully conforming with the SQL standard. CLOSE ALL is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

DECLARE, FETCH, MOVE
CLUSTER

CLUSTER — cluster a table according to an index

Synopsis

CLUSTER [VERBOSE] table_name [ USING index_name ]
CLUSTER ( option [, ... ] ) table_name [ USING index_name ]
CLUSTER [VERBOSE]

where option can be one of:

    VERBOSE [ boolean ]

Description

CLUSTER instructs Postgres Pro to cluster the table specified by table_name based on the index specified by index_name. The index must already have been defined on table_name.

When a table is clustered, it is physically reordered based on the index information. Clustering is a one-time operation: when the table is subsequently updated, the changes are not clustered. That is, no attempt is made to store new or updated rows according to their index order. (If one wishes, one can periodically recluster by issuing the command again. Also, setting the table's fillfactor storage parameter to less than 100% can aid in preserving cluster ordering during updates, since updated rows are kept on the same page if enough space is available there.)

When a table is clustered, Postgres Pro remembers which index it was clustered by. The form CLUSTER table_name reclusters the table using the same index as before. You can also use the CLUSTER or SET WITHOUT CLUSTER forms of ALTER TABLE to set the index to be used for future cluster operations, or to clear any previous setting.

CLUSTER without any parameter reclusters all the previously-clustered tables in the current database that the calling user owns, or all such tables if called by a superuser. This form of CLUSTER cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

When a table is being clustered, an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock is acquired on it. This prevents any other database operations (both reads and writes) from operating on the table until the CLUSTER is finished.

Parameters

    table_name
        The name (possibly schema-qualified) of a table.

    index_name
        The name of an index.

    VERBOSE
        Prints a progress report as each table is clustered.

    boolean
        Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write TRUE, ON, or 1 to enable the option, and FALSE, OFF, or 0 to disable it. The boolean value can also be omitted, in which case TRUE is assumed.

Notes

In cases where you are accessing single rows randomly within a table, the actual order of the data in the table is unimportant. However, if you tend to access some data more than others, and there is an index
that groups them together, you will benefit from using `CLUSTER`. If you are requesting a range of indexed values from a table, or a single indexed value that has multiple rows that match, `CLUSTER` will help because once the index identifies the table page for the first row that matches, all other rows that match are probably already on the same table page, and so you save disk accesses and speed up the query.

`CLUSTER` can re-sort the table using either an index scan on the specified index, or (if the index is a b-tree) a sequential scan followed by sorting. It will attempt to choose the method that will be faster, based on planner cost parameters and available statistical information.

When an index scan is used, a temporary copy of the table is created that contains the table data in the index order. Temporary copies of each index on the table are created as well. Therefore, you need free space on disk at least equal to the sum of the table size and the index sizes.

When a sequential scan and sort is used, a temporary sort file is also created, so that the peak temporary space requirement is as much as double the table size, plus the index sizes. This method is often faster than the index scan method, but if the disk space requirement is intolerable, you can disable this choice by temporarily setting `enable_sort` to `off`.

It is advisable to set `maintenance_work_mem` to a reasonably large value (but not more than the amount of RAM you can dedicate to the `CLUSTER` operation) before clustering.

Because the planner records statistics about the ordering of tables, it is advisable to run `ANALYZE` on the newly clustered table. Otherwise, the planner might make poor choices of query plans.

Because `CLUSTER` remembers which indexes are clustered, one can cluster the tables one wants clustered manually the first time, then set up a periodic maintenance script that executes `CLUSTER` without any parameters, so that the desired tables are periodically reclustered.

Each backend running `CLUSTER` will report its progress in the `pg_stat_progress_cluster` view. See Section 26.4.4 for details.

**Examples**

Cluster the table `employees` on the basis of its index `employees_ind`:

```sql
CLUSTER employees USING employees_ind;
```

Cluster the `employees` table using the same index that was used before:

```sql
CLUSTER employees;
```

Cluster all tables in the database that have previously been clustered:

```sql
CLUSTER;
```

**Compatibility**

There is no `CLUSTER` statement in the SQL standard.

The syntax

```sql
CLUSTER index_name ON table_name
```

is also supported for compatibility with pre-8.3 PostgreSQL versions.

**See Also**

`clusterdb`, Section 26.4.4
COMMENT — define or change the comment of an object

Synopsis

COMMENT ON
{
   ACCESS METHOD object_name |
   AGGREGATE aggregate_name ( aggregate_signature ) |
   CAST (source_type AS target_type) |
   COLLATION object_name |
   COLUMN relation_name.column_name |
   CONSTRAINT constraint_name ON table_name |
   CONSTRAINT constraint_name ON DOMAIN domain_name |
   CONVERSION object_name |
   DATABASE object_name |
   EXTENSION object_name |
   EVENT TRIGGER object_name |
   FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER object_name |
   FOREIGN TABLE object_name |
   FUNCTION function_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ] |
   INDEX object_name |
   LARGE OBJECT large_object_oid |
   MATERIALIZED VIEW object_name |
   OPERATOR operator_name (left_type, right_type) |
   OPERATOR CLASS object_name USING index_method |
   OPERATOR FAMILY object_name USING index_method |
   POLICY policy_name ON table_name |
   [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE object_name |
   PROCEDURE procedure_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ] |
   PROFILE object_name |
   PUBLICATION object_name |
   ROLE object_name |
   ROUTINE routine_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ] |
   RULE rule_name ON table_name |
   SCHEMA object_name |
   SEQUENCE object_name |
   SERVER object_name |
   STATISTICS object_name |
   SUBSCRIPTION object_name |
   TABLE object_name |
   TABLESPACE object_name |
   TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION object_name |
   TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY object_name |
   TEXT SEARCH PARSER object_name |
   TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE object_name |
   TRANSFORM FOR type_name LANGUAGE lang_name |
   TRIGGER trigger_name ON table_name |
   TYPE object_name |
   VIEW object_name
} IS 'text'

where aggregate_signature is:
*
|
Description

COMMENT stores a comment about a database object.

Only one comment string is stored for each object, so to modify a comment, issue a new COMMENT command for the same object. To remove a comment, write NULL in place of the text string. Comments are automatically dropped when their object is dropped.

For most kinds of object, only the object's owner can set the comment. Roles don't have owners, so the rule for COMMENT ON ROLE is that you must be superuser to comment on a superuser role, or have the CREATEROLE privilege to comment on non-superuser roles. Likewise, access methods don't have owners either; you must be superuser to comment on an access method. Of course, a superuser can comment on anything.

Comments can be viewed using psql's \d family of commands. Other user interfaces to retrieve comments can be built atop the same built-in functions that psql uses, namely obj_description, col_description, and shobj_description (see Table 9.75).

Parameters

- object_name
- relation_name
- column_name
- aggregate_name
- constraint_name
- function_name
- operator_name
- policy_name
- procedure_name
- routine_name
- rule_name
- trigger_name

The name of the object to be commented. Names of objects that reside in schemas (tables, functions, etc.) can be schema-qualified. When commenting on a column, relation_name must refer to a table, view, composite type, or foreign table.

- table_name
- domain_name

When creating a comment on a constraint, a trigger, a rule or a policy these parameters specify the name of the table or domain on which that object is defined.

- source_type

The name of the source data type of the cast.

- target_type

The name of the target data type of the cast.

- argmode

The mode of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that COMMENT does not actually pay any attention to OUT arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the IN, INOUT, and VARIADIC arguments.
argname

The name of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument. Note that COMMENT does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

argtype

The data type of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument.

large_object_oid

The OID of the large object.

left_type
right_type

The data type(s) of the operator's arguments (optionally schema-qualified). Write NONE for the missing argument of a prefix operator.

PROCEDURAL

This is a noise word.

type_name

The name of the data type of the transform.

lang_name

The name of the language of the transform.

text

The new comment, written as a string literal; or NULL to drop the comment.

Notes

There is presently no security mechanism for viewing comments: any user connected to a database can see all the comments for objects in that database. For shared objects such as databases, roles, and tablespaces, comments are stored globally so any user connected to any database in the cluster can see all the comments for shared objects. Therefore, don't put security-critical information in comments.

Examples

Attach a comment to the table mytable:

COMMENT ON TABLE mytable IS 'This is my table.';

Remove it again:

COMMENT ON TABLE mytable IS NULL;

Some more examples:

COMMENT ON ACCESS METHOD gin IS 'GIN index access method';
COMMENT ON AGGREGATE my_aggregate (double precision) IS 'Computes sample variance';
COMMENT ON CAST (text AS int4) IS 'Allow casts from text to int4';
COMMENT ON COLLATION "fr_CA" IS 'Canadian French';
COMMENT ON COLUMN my_table.my_column IS 'Employee ID number';
COMMENT ON CONVERSION my_conv IS 'Conversion to UTF8';
COMMENT ON CONSTRAINT bar_col_cons ON bar IS 'Constrains column col';
COMMENT ON CONSTRAINT dom_col_constr ON DOMAIN dom IS 'Constrains col of domain';
COMMENT ON DATABASE my_database IS 'Development Database';
COMMENT ON DOMAIN my_domain IS 'Email Address Domain';
COMMENT ON EVENT TRIGGER abort_ddl IS 'Aborts all DDL commands';
COMMENT ON EXTENSION hstore IS 'implements the hstore data type';
COMMENT ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER mywrapper IS 'my foreign data wrapper';
COMMENT ON FOREIGN TABLE my_foreign_table IS 'Employee Information in other database';
COMMENT ON FUNCTION my_function (timestamp) IS 'Returns Roman Numeral';
COMMENT ON INDEX my_index IS 'Enforces uniqueness on employee ID';
COMMENT ON LANGUAGE plpython IS 'Python support for stored procedures';
COMMENT ON LARGE OBJECT 346344 IS 'Planning document';
COMMENT ON MATERIALIZED VIEW my_matview IS 'Summary of order history';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR ^ (text, text) IS 'Performs intersection of two texts';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR - (NONE, integer) IS 'Unary minus';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR CLASS int4ops USING btree IS '4 byte integer operators for btrees';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree IS 'all integer operators for btrees';
COMMENT ON POLICY my_policy ON mytable IS 'Filter rows by users';
COMMENT ON PROCEDURE my_proc (integer, integer) IS 'Runs a report';
COMMENT ON PUBLICATION alltables IS 'Publishes all operations on all tables';
COMMENT ON RULE my_rule IS 'Administration group for finance tables';
COMMENT ON ROUTINE my_routine (integer, integer) IS 'Runs a routine (which is a function or procedure)';
COMMENT ON ROUTE my_rule ON my_table IS 'Logs updates of employee records';
COMMENT ON SCHEMA my_schema IS 'Departmental data';
COMMENT ON SERVER myserver IS 'my foreign server';
COMMENT ON STATISTICS my_statistics IS 'Improves planner row estimations';
COMMENT ON SUBSCRIPTION alltables IS 'Subscription for all operations on all tables';
COMMENT ON TABLE my_schema.my_table IS 'Employee Information';
COMMENT ON TABLESPACE my_tablespace IS 'Tablespace for indexes';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_config IS 'Special word filtering';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY swedish IS 'Snowball stemmer for Swedish language';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH PARSER my_parser IS 'Splits text into words';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE snowball IS 'Snowball stemmer';
COMMENT ON TRANSFORM FOR hstore LANGUAGE plpythonu IS 'Transform between hstore and Python dict';
COMMENT ON TRIGGER my_trigger ON my_table IS 'Used for RI';
COMMENT ON TYPE complex IS 'Complex number data type';
COMMENT ON VIEW my_view IS 'View of departmental costs';

Compatibility

There is no COMMENT command in the SQL standard.
COMMIT

COMMIT — commit the current transaction

Synopsis

COMMIT [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ AND [ NO ] CHAIN ]

Description

COMMIT commits the current transaction. All changes made by the transaction become visible to others and are guaranteed to be durable if a crash occurs.

Parameters

WORK
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

AND CHAIN

If AND CHAIN is specified, a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION) as the just finished one. Otherwise, no new transaction is started.

Notes

Use ROLLBACK to abort a transaction.

Issuing COMMIT when not inside a transaction does no harm, but it will provoke a warning message. COMMIT AND CHAIN when not inside a transaction is an error.

Examples

To commit the current transaction and make all changes permanent:

COMMIT;

Compatibility

The command COMMIT conforms to the SQL standard. The form COMMIT TRANSACTION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

BEGIN, ROLLBACK
COMMIT PREPARED
COMMIT PREPARED — commit a transaction that was earlier prepared for two-phase commit

Synopsis

COMMIT PREPARED transaction_id

Description

COMMIT PREPARED commits a transaction that is in prepared state.

Parameters

transaction_id

The transaction identifier of the transaction that is to be committed.

Notes

To commit a prepared transaction, you must be either the same user that executed the transaction originally, or a superuser. But you do not have to be in the same session that executed the transaction.

This command cannot be executed inside a transaction block. The prepared transaction is committed immediately.

All currently available prepared transactions are listed in the pg_prepared_xacts system view.

Examples

Commit the transaction identified by the transaction identifier foobar:

COMMIT PREPARED 'foobar';

Compatibility

COMMIT PREPARED is a Postgres Pro extension. It is intended for use by external transaction management systems, some of which are covered by standards (such as X/Open XA), but the SQL side of those systems is not standardized.

See Also

PREPARE TRANSACTION, ROLLBACK PREPARED
COPY

COPY — copy data between a file and a table

Synopsis

COPY table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
FROM { 'filename' | PROGRAM 'command' | STDIN }
[ [ WITH ] ( option [, ...] ) ]
[ WHERE condition ]

COPY { table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ] | ( query ) }
TO { 'filename' | PROGRAM 'command' | STDOUT }
[ [ WITH ] ( option [, ...] ) ]

where option can be one of:

- FORMAT format_name
- FREEZE [ boolean ]
- DELIMITER 'delimiter_character'
- NULL 'null_string'
- HEADER [ boolean ]
- QUOTE 'quote_character'
- ESCAPE 'escape_character'
- FORCE_QUOTE { ( column_name [, ...] ) | * }
- FORCE_NOT_NULL ( column_name [, ...] )
- FORCE_NULL ( column_name [, ...] )
- ENCODING 'encoding_name'

Description

COPY moves data between Postgres Pro tables and standard file-system files. COPY TO copies the contents of a table to a file, while COPY FROM copies data from a file to a table (appending the data to whatever is in the table already). COPY TO can also copy the results of a SELECT query.

If a column list is specified, COPY TO copies only the data in the specified columns to the file. For COPY FROM, each field in the file is inserted, in order, into the specified column. Table columns not specified in the COPY FROM column list will receive their default values.

COPY with a file name instructs the Postgres Pro server to directly read from or write to a file. The file must be accessible by the Postgres Pro user (the user ID the server runs as) and the name must be specified from the viewpoint of the server. When PROGRAM is specified, the server executes the given command and reads from the standard output of the program, or writes to the standard input of the program. The command must be specified from the viewpoint of the server, and be executable by the Postgres Pro user. When STDIN or STDOUT is specified, data is transmitted via the connection between the client and the server.

Each backend running COPY will report its progress in the pg_stat_progress_copy view. See Section 26.4.6 for details.

Parameters

- table_name
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

- column_name
  An optional list of columns to be copied. If no column list is specified, all columns of the table except generated columns will be copied.
**COPY**

**query**

A `SELECT`, `VALUES`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` command whose results are to be copied. Note that parentheses are required around the query.

For `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` queries a RETURNING clause must be provided, and the target relation must not have a conditional rule, nor an `ALSO` rule, nor an `INSTEAD` rule that expands to multiple statements.

**filename**

The path name of the input or output file. An input file name can be an absolute or relative path, but an output file name must be an absolute path. Windows users might need to use an `E''` string and double any backslashes used in the path name.

**PROGRAM**

A command to execute. In `COPY FROM`, the input is read from standard output of the command, and in `COPY TO`, the output is written to the standard input of the command.

Note that the command is invoked by the shell, so if you need to pass any arguments to shell command that come from an untrusted source, you must be careful to strip or escape any special characters that might have a special meaning for the shell. For security reasons, it is best to use a fixed command string, or at least avoid passing any user input in it.

**STDIN**

Specifies that input comes from the client application.

**STDOUT**

Specifies that output goes to the client application.

**boolean**

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write `TRUE`, `ON`, or `1` to enable the option, and `FALSE`, `OFF`, or `0` to disable it. The `boolean` value can also be omitted, in which case `TRUE` is assumed.

**FORMAT**

Selects the data format to be read or written: `text`, `csv` (Comma Separated Values), or `binary`. The default is `text`.

**FREEZE**

Requests copying the data with rows already frozen, just as they would be after running the `VACUUM FREEZE` command. This is intended as a performance option for initial data loading. Rows will be frozen only if the table being loaded has been created or truncated in the current subtransaction, there are no cursors open and there are no older snapshots held by this transaction. It is currently not possible to perform a `COPY FREEZE` on a partitioned table.

Note that all other sessions will immediately be able to see the data once it has been successfully loaded. This violates the normal rules of MVCC visibility and users specifying should be aware of the potential problems this might cause.

**DELIMITER**

Specifies the character that separates columns within each row (line) of the file. The default is a tab character in text format, a comma in `csv` format. This must be a single one-byte character. This option is not allowed when using `binary` format.

**NULL**

Specifies the string that represents a null value. The default is `\N` (backslash-N) in text format, and an unquoted empty string in `csv` format. You might prefer an empty string even in text format for...
cases where you don't want to distinguish nulls from empty strings. This option is not allowed when using binary format.

Note

When using COPY FROM, any data item that matches this string will be stored as a null value, so you should make sure that you use the same string as you used with COPY TO.

HEADER

Specifies that the file contains a header line with the names of each column in the file. On output, the first line contains the column names from the table, and on input, the first line is ignored. This option is allowed only when using CSV format.

QUOTE

Specifies the quoting character to be used when a data value is quoted. The default is double-quote. This must be a single one-byte character. This option is allowed only when using CSV format.

ESCAPE

Specifies the character that should appear before a data character that matches the QUOTE value. The default is the same as the QUOTE value (so that the quoting character is doubled if it appears in the data). This must be a single one-byte character. This option is allowed only when using CSV format.

FORCE_QUOTE

Forces quoting to be used for all non-NULL values in each specified column. NULL output is never quoted. If * is specified, non-NULL values will be quoted in all columns. This option is allowed only in COPY TO, and only when using CSV format.

FORCE_NOT_NULL

Do not match the specified columns' values against the null string. In the default case where the null string is empty, this means that empty values will be read as zero-length strings rather than nulls, even when they are not quoted. This option is allowed only in COPY FROM, and only when using CSV format.

FORCE_NULL

Match the specified columns' values against the null string, even if it has been quoted, and if a match is found set the value to NULL. In the default case where the null string is empty, this converts a quoted empty string into NULL. This option is allowed only in COPY FROM, and only when using CSV format.

ENCODING

Specifies that the file is encoded in the encoding_name. If this option is omitted, the current client encoding is used. See the Notes below for more details.

WHERE

The optional WHERE clause has the general form

WHERE condition

where condition is any expression that evaluates to a result of type boolean. Any row that does not satisfy this condition will not be inserted to the table. A row satisfies the condition if it returns true when the actual row values are substituted for any variable references.

Currently, subqueries are not allowed in WHERE expressions, and the evaluation does not see any changes made by the COPY itself (this matters when the expression contains calls to VOLATILE functions).
Outputs

On successful completion, a **COPY** command returns a command tag of the form

**COPY count**

The *count* is the number of rows copied.

---

**Note**

psql will print this command tag only if the command was not **COPY ... TO STDOUT**, or the equivalent psql meta-command `\copy ... to stdout`. This is to prevent confusing the command tag with the data that was just printed.

---

**Notes**

**COPY TO** can be used only with plain tables, not views, and does not copy rows from child tables or child partitions. For example, **COPY table TO** copies the same rows as **SELECT * FROM ONLY table**. The syntax **COPY (SELECT * FROM table) TO ...** can be used to dump all of the rows in an inheritance hierarchy, partitioned table, or view.

**COPY FROM** can be used with plain, foreign, or partitioned tables or with views that have **INSTEAD OF INSERT** triggers.

You must have select privilege on the table whose values are read by **COPY TO**, and insert privilege on the table into which values are inserted by **COPY FROM**. It is sufficient to have column privileges on the column(s) listed in the command.

If row-level security is enabled for the table, the relevant **SELECT** policies will apply to **COPY table TO** statements. Currently, **COPY FROM** is not supported for tables with row-level security. Use equivalent **INSERT** statements instead.

Files named in a **COPY** command are read or written directly by the server, not by the client application. Therefore, they must reside on or be accessible to the database server machine, not the client. They must be accessible to and readable or writable by the Postgres Pro user (the user ID the server runs as), not the client. Similarly, the command specified with **PROGRAM** is executed directly by the server, not by the client application, must be executable by the Postgres Pro user. **COPY** naming a file or command is only allowed to database superusers or users who are granted one of the roles **pg_read_server_files**, **pg_write_server_files**, or **pg_execute_server_program**, since it allows reading or writing any file or running a program that the server has privileges to access.

Do not confuse **COPY** with the psql instruction `\copy`. `\copy` invokes **COPY FROM STDIN** or **COPY TO STDOUT**, and then fetches/stores the data in a file accessible to the psql client. Thus, file accessibility and access rights depend on the client rather than the server when `\copy` is used.

It is recommended that the file name used in **COPY** always be specified as an absolute path. This is enforced by the server in the case of **COPY TO**, but for **COPY FROM** you do have the option of reading from a file specified by a relative path. The path will be interpreted relative to the working directory of the server process (normally the cluster's data directory), not the client's working directory.

Executing a command with **PROGRAM** might be restricted by the operating system's access control mechanisms, such as SELinux.

**COPY FROM** will invoke any triggers and check constraints on the destination table. However, it will not invoke rules.

For identity columns, the **COPY FROM** command will always write the column values provided in the input data, like the **INSERT** option **OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE**.
COPY input and output is affected by DateStyle. To ensure portability to other Postgres Pro installations that might use non-default DateStyle settings, DateStyle should be set to ISO before using COPY TO. It is also a good idea to avoid dumping data with IntervalStyle set to sql_standard, because negative interval values might be misinterpreted by a server that has a different setting for IntervalStyle.

Input data is interpreted according to ENCODING option or the current client encoding, and output data is encoded in ENCODING or the current client encoding, even if the data does not pass through the client but is read from or written to a file directly by the server.

COPY stops operation at the first error. This should not lead to problems in the event of a COPY TO, but the target table will already have received earlier rows in a COPY FROM. These rows will not be visible or accessible, but they still occupy disk space. This might amount to a considerable amount of wasted disk space if the failure happened well into a large copy operation. You might wish to invoke VACUUM to recover the wasted space.

FORCE_NULL and FORCE_NOT_NULL can be used simultaneously on the same column. This results in converting quoted null strings to null values and unquoted null strings to empty strings.

Postgres Pro does not allow NUL bytes in data. If you are going to import such data using the COPY FROM command, you can specify an ASCII character in the nul_byte_replacement_on_import configuration parameter to replace NUL bytes on the fly.

File Formats

Text Format

When the text format is used, the data read or written is a text file with one line per table row. Columns in a row are separated by the delimiter character. The column values themselves are strings generated by the output function, or acceptable to the input function, of each attribute's data type. The specified null string is used in place of columns that are null. COPY FROM will raise an error if any line of the input file contains more or fewer columns than are expected.

End of data can be represented by a single line containing just backslash-period (\.). An end-of-data marker is not necessary when reading from a file, since the end of file serves perfectly well; it is needed only when copying data to or from client applications using pre-3.0 client protocol.

Backslash characters (\) can be used in the COPY data to quote data characters that might otherwise be taken as row or column delimiters. In particular, the following characters must be preceded by a backslash if they appear as part of a column value: backslash itself, newline, carriage return, and the current delimiter character.

The specified null string is sent by COPY TO without adding any backslashes; conversely, COPY FROM matches the input against the null string before removing backslashes. Therefore, a null string such as \N cannot be confused with the actual data value \N (which would be represented as \\N).

The following special backslash sequences are recognized by COPY FROM:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Represents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\b</td>
<td>Backspace (ASCII 8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\f</td>
<td>Form feed (ASCII 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\n</td>
<td>Newline (ASCII 10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\r</td>
<td>Carriage return (ASCII 13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\t</td>
<td>Tab (ASCII 9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\v</td>
<td>Vertical tab (ASCII 11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\digits</td>
<td>Backslash followed by one to three octal digits specifies the byte with that numeric code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Presently, COPY TO will never emit an octal or hex-digits backslash sequence, but it does use the other sequences listed above for those control characters.

Any other backslashed character that is not mentioned in the above table will be taken to represent itself. However, beware of adding backslashes unnecessarily, since that might accidentally produce a string matching the end-of-data marker (\.) or the null string (\N by default). These strings will be recognized before any other backslash processing is done.

It is strongly recommended that applications generating COPY data convert data newlines and carriage returns to the \n and \r sequences respectively. At present it is possible to represent a data carriage return by a backslash and carriage return, and to represent a data newline by a backslash and newline. However, these representations might not be accepted in future releases. They are also highly vulnerable to corruption if the COPY file is transferred across different machines (for example, from Unix to Windows or vice versa).

All backslash sequences are interpreted after encoding conversion. The bytes specified with the octal and hex-digit backslash sequences must form valid characters in the database encoding.

COPY TO will terminate each row with a Unix-style newline ("\n"). Servers running on Microsoft Windows instead output carriage return/newline ("\r\n"), but only for COPY to a server file; for consistency across platforms, COPY TO STDOUT always sends "\n" regardless of server platform. COPY FROM can handle lines ending with newlines, carriage returns, or carriage return/newlines. To reduce the risk of error due to un-backslashed newlines or carriage returns that were meant as data, COPY FROM will complain if the line endings in the input are not all alike.

**CSV Format**

This format option is used for importing and exporting the Comma Separated Value (CSV) file format used by many other programs, such as spreadsheets. Instead of the escaping rules used by Postgres Pro's standard text format, it produces and recognizes the common CSV escaping mechanism.

The values in each record are separated by the DELIMITER character. If the value contains the delimiter character, the QUOTE character, the NULL string, a carriage return, or line feed character, then the whole value is prefixed and suffixed by the QUOTE character, and any occurrence within the value of a QUOTE character or the ESCAPE character is preceded by the escape character. You can also use FORCE_QUOTE to force quotes when outputting non-NULL values in specific columns.

The CSV format has no standard way to distinguish a NULL value from an empty string. Postgres Pro's COPY handles this by quoting. A NULL is output as the NULL parameter string and is not quoted, while a non-NULL value matching the NULL parameter string is quoted. For example, with the default settings, a NULL is written as an unquoted empty string, while an empty string data value is written with double quotes (""). Reading values follows similar rules. You can use FORCE_NOT_NULL to prevent NULL input comparisons for specific columns. You can also use FORCE_NULL to convert quoted null string data values to NULL.

Because backslash is not a special character in the CSV format, \., the end-of-data marker, could also appear as a data value. To avoid any misinterpretation, a \. data value appearing as a lone entry on a line is automatically quoted on output, and on input, if quoted, is not interpreted as the end-of-data marker. If you are loading a file created by another application that has a single unquoted column and might have a value of \., you might need to quote that value in the input file.

**Note**

In CSV format, all characters are significant. A quoted value surrounded by white space, or any characters other than DELIMITER, will include those characters. This can cause errors if you
import data from a system that pads CSV lines with white space out to some fixed width. If such a situation arises you might need to preprocess the CSV file to remove the trailing white space, before importing the data into Postgres Pro.

**Note**

CSV format will both recognize and produce CSV files with quoted values containing embedded carriage returns and line feeds. Thus the files are not strictly one line per table row like text-format files.

**Note**

Many programs produce strange and occasionally perverse CSV files, so the file format is more a convention than a standard. Thus you might encounter some files that cannot be imported using this mechanism, and COPY might produce files that other programs cannot process.

**Binary Format**

The binary format option causes all data to be stored/read as binary format rather than as text. It is somewhat faster than the text and CSV formats, but a binary-format file is less portable across machine architectures and Postgres Pro versions. Also, the binary format is very data type specific; for example it will not work to output binary data from a smallint column and read it into an integer column, even though that would work fine in text format.

The binary file format consists of a file header, zero or more tuples containing the row data, and a file trailer. Headers and data are in network byte order.

**Note**

PostgreSQL releases before 7.4 used a different binary file format.

**File Header**

The file header consists of 15 bytes of fixed fields, followed by a variable-length header extension area. The fixed fields are:

**Signature**

11-byte sequence PGCOPY\n\377\r\n\0 — note that the zero byte is a required part of the signature. (The signature is designed to allow easy identification of files that have been munged by a non-8-bit-clean transfer. This signature will be changed by end-of-line-translation filters, dropped zero bytes, dropped high bits, or parity changes.)

**Flags field**

32-bit integer bit mask to denote important aspects of the file format. Bits are numbered from 0 (LSB) to 31 (MSB). Note that this field is stored in network byte order (most significant byte first), as are all the integer fields used in the file format. Bits 16–31 are reserved to denote critical file format issues; a reader should abort if it finds an unexpected bit set in this range. Bits 0–15 are reserved to signal backwards-compatible format issues; a reader should simply ignore any unexpected bits set in this range. Currently only one flag bit is defined, and the rest must be zero:

**Bit 16**

If 1, OIDs are included in the data; if 0, not. Oid system columns are not supported in Postgres Pro anymore, but the format still contains the indicator.
Header extension area length

32-bit integer, length in bytes of remainder of header, not including self. Currently, this is zero, and the first tuple follows immediately. Future changes to the format might allow additional data to be present in the header. A reader should silently skip over any header extension data it does not know what to do with.

The header extension area is envisioned to contain a sequence of self-identifying chunks. The flags field is not intended to tell readers what is in the extension area. Specific design of header extension contents is left for a later release.

This design allows for both backwards-compatible header additions (add header extension chunks, or set low-order flag bits) and non-backwards-compatible changes (set high-order flag bits to signal such changes, and add supporting data to the extension area if needed).

Tuples

Each tuple begins with a 16-bit integer count of the number of fields in the tuple. (Presently, all tuples in a table will have the same count, but that might not always be true.) Then, repeated for each field in the tuple, there is a 32-bit length word followed by that many bytes of field data. (The length word does not include itself, and can be zero.) As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL field value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

There is no alignment padding or any other extra data between fields.

Presently, all data values in a binary-format file are assumed to be in binary format (format code one). It is anticipated that a future extension might add a header field that allows per-column format codes to be specified.

If OIDs are included in the file, the OID field immediately follows the field-count word. It is a normal field except that it's not included in the field-count. Note that oid system columns are not supported in current versions of Postgres Pro.

File Trailer

The file trailer consists of a 16-bit integer word containing -1. This is easily distinguished from a tuple's field-count word.

A reader should report an error if a field-count word is neither -1 nor the expected number of columns. This provides an extra check against somehow getting out of sync with the data.

Examples

The following example copies a table to the client using the vertical bar (|) as the field delimiter:

COPY country TO STDOUT (DELIMITER '|');

To copy data from a file into the country table:

COPY country FROM '/usr1/proj/bray/sql/country_data';

To copy into a file just the countries whose names start with 'A':

COPY (SELECT * FROM country WHERE country_name LIKE 'A%') TO '/usr1/proj/bray/sql/a_list_countries.copy';

To copy into a compressed file, you can pipe the output through an external compression program:

COPY country TO PROGRAM 'gzip > /usr1/proj/bray/sql/country_data.gz';

Here is a sample of data suitable for copying into a table from STDIN:

AF    AFGHANISTAN
AL    ALBANIA
COPY

DZ      ALGERIA
ZM      ZAMBIA
ZW      ZIMBABWE

Note that the white space on each line is actually a tab character.

The following is the same data, output in binary format. The data is shown after filtering through the Unix utility od -c. The table has three columns; the first has type char(2), the second has type text, and the third has type integer. All the rows have a null value in the third column.

00000000 P G C O P Y \n 377 \n \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0 \0
0000020 \0 \0 \0 \0 003 \0 \0 \0 002 A F \0 \0 \0 013 A
0000040 F G H A N I S T A N 377 377 377 377 \0 003
0000060 \0 \0 \0 002 A L \0 \0 \0 007 A L B A N I
0000100 A 377 377 377 377 \0 003 \0 \0 002 D Z \0 \0 \0
0000120 007 A L G E R I A 377 377 377 377 \0 003 \0 \0
0000140 \0 002 Z M \0 \0 \0 006 Z A M B I A 377 377
0000160 377 377 \0 003 \0 \0 002 Z W \0 \0 \0 \b Z I
0000200 M B A B W E 377 377 377 377 377

Compatibility

There is no COPY statement in the SQL standard.

The following syntax was used before PostgreSQL version 9.0 and is still supported:

COPY table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
FROM { 'filename' | STDIN }
[ [ WITH ]
 [ BINARY ]
 [ DELIMITER [ AS ] 'delimiter_character' ]
 [ NULL [ AS ] 'null_string' ]
 [ CSV [ HEADER ]
 [ QUOTE [ AS ] 'quote_character' ]
 [ ESCAPE [ AS ] 'escape_character' ]
 [ FORCE NOT NULL column_name [, ...] ] ]
]
COPY { table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ] | ( query ) } TO { 'filename' | STDOUT }
[ [ WITH ]
 [ BINARY ]
 [ DELIMITER [ AS ] 'delimiter_character' ]
 [ NULL [ AS ] 'null_string' ]
 [ CSV [ HEADER ]
 [ QUOTE [ AS ] 'quote_character' ]
 [ ESCAPE [ AS ] 'escape_character' ]
 [ FORCE QUOTE { column_name [, ...] | * } ] ] ]

Note that in this syntax, BINARY and CSV are treated as independent keywords, not as arguments of a FORMAT option.

The following syntax was used before PostgreSQL version 7.3 and is still supported:

COPY [ BINARY ] table_name
FROM { 'filename' | STDIN }
[ [USING] DELIMITERS 'delimiter_character' ]
[ WITH NULL AS 'null_string' ]

COPY [ BINARY ] table_name
TO { 'filename' | STDOUT }
[ [USING] DELIMITERS 'delimiter_character' ]
[ WITH NULL AS 'null_string' ]

See Also

Section 26.4.6
CREATE ACCESS METHOD

CREATE ACCESS METHOD — define a new access method

Synopsis

CREATE ACCESS METHOD name
    TYPE access_method_type
    HANDLER handler_function

Description

CREATE ACCESS METHOD creates a new access method.

The access method name must be unique within the database.

Only superusers can define new access methods.

Parameters

name

The name of the access method to be created.

access_method_type

This clause specifies the type of access method to define. Only TABLE and INDEX are supported at present.

handler_function

handler_function is the name (possibly schema-qualified) of a previously registered function that represents the access method. The handler function must be declared to take a single argument of type internal, and its return type depends on the type of access method; for TABLE access methods, it must be table_am_handler and for INDEX access methods, it must be index_am_handler. The C-level API that the handler function must implement varies depending on the type of access method. The table access method API is described in Chapter 57 and the index access method API is described in Chapter 58.

Examples

Create an index access method heptree with handler function heptree_handler:

CREATE ACCESS METHOD heptree TYPE INDEX HANDLER heptree_handler;

Compatibility

CREATE ACCESS METHOD is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

DROP ACCESS METHOD, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY
CREATE AGGREGATE

CREATE AGGREGATE — define a new aggregate function

Synopsis

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] AGGREGATE name ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] arg_data_type 
[ , ... ] ) 

SFUNC = sfunc,
STYPE = state_data_type
[ , SSPACE = state_data_size ]
[ , FINALFUNC = ffunc ]
[ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , FINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
[ , COMBINEFUNC = combinefunc ]
[ , SERIALFUNC = serialfunc ]
[ , INITCOND = initial_condition ]
[ , MSFUNC = mfunc ]
[ , MFINALFUNC = mffunc ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
[ , MSTYPE = mstate_data_type ]
[ , MSSPACE = mstate_data_size ]
[ , MFINALFUNC = mffunc ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
[ , COMBINEFUNC = combinefunc ]
[ , SERIALFUNC = serialfunc ]
[ , INITCOND = initial_condition ]
[ , MSFUNC = mfunc ]
[ , MFINALFUNC = mffunc ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
[ , PARALLEL = { SAFE | RESTRICTED | UNSAFE } ]
)

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] AGGREGATE name ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] arg_data_type 
[ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ] [ argname ] arg_data_type [ , ... ] ) 

SFUNC = sfunc,
STYPE = state_data_type
[ , SSPACE = state_data_size ]
[ , FINALFUNC = ffunc ]
[ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , FINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
[ , INITCOND = initial_condition ]
[ , SORTOP = sort_operator ]
[ , PARALLEL = { SAFE | RESTRICTED | UNSAFE } ]
[ , HYPOTHETICAL ]
)

or the old syntax

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] AGGREGATE name ( 
BASETYPE = base_type,
SFUNC = sfunc,
STYPE = state_data_type
[ , SSPACE = state_data_size ]
[ , FINALFUNC = ffunc ]
[ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , FINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
[ , MINVFUNC = minvfunc ]
[ , MSTYPE = mstate_data_type ]
[ , MSSPACE = mstate_data_size ]
[ , MFINALFUNC = mffunc ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
[ , PARALLEL = { SAFE | RESTRICTED | UNSAFE } ]
[ , HYPOTHETICAL ]
)
CREATE AGGREGATE

Description

CREATE AGGREGATE defines a new aggregate function. CREATE OR REPLACE AGGREGATE will either define a new aggregate function or replace an existing definition. Some basic and commonly-used aggregate functions are included with the distribution; they are documented in Section 9.21. If one defines new types or needs an aggregate function not already provided, then CREATE AGGREGATE can be used to provide the desired features.

When replacing an existing definition, the argument types, result type, and number of direct arguments may not be changed. Also, the new definition must be of the same kind (ordinary aggregate, ordered-set aggregate, or hypothetical-set aggregate) as the old one.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE AGGREGATE myschema.myagg ...) then the aggregate function is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

An aggregate function is identified by its name and input data type(s). Two aggregates in the same schema can have the same name if they operate on different input types. The name and input data type(s) of an aggregate must also be distinct from the name and input data type(s) of every ordinary function in the same schema. This behavior is identical to overloading of ordinary function names (see CREATE FUNCTION).

A simple aggregate function is made from one or two ordinary functions: a state transition function sfunc, and an optional final calculation function ffunc. These are used as follows:

sfunc( internal-state, next-data-values ) ---> next-internal-state
ffunc( internal-state ) ---> aggregate-value

Postgres Pro creates a temporary variable of data type stype to hold the current internal state of the aggregate. At each input row, the aggregate argument value(s) are calculated and the state transition function is invoked with the current state value and the new argument value(s) to calculate a new internal state value. After all the rows have been processed, the final function is invoked once to calculate the aggregate’s return value. If there is no final function then the ending state value is returned as-is.

An aggregate function can provide an initial condition, that is, an initial value for the internal state value. This is specified and stored in the database as a value of type text, but it must be a valid external representation of a constant of the state value data type. If it is not supplied then the state value starts out null.

If the state transition function is declared “strict”, then it cannot be called with null inputs. With such a transition function, aggregate execution behaves as follows. Rows with any null input values are ignored (the function is not called and the previous state value is retained). If the initial state value is null, then at the first row with all-nonnull input values, the first argument value replaces the state value, and the transition function is invoked at each subsequent row with all-nonnull input values. This is handy for implementing aggregates like max. Note that this behavior is only available when state_data_type is the same as the first arg_data_type. When these types are different, you must supply a nonnull initial condition or use a nonstrict transition function.

1384
CREATE AGGREGATE

If the state transition function is not strict, then it will be called unconditionally at each input row, and must deal with null inputs and null state values for itself. This allows the aggregate author to have full control over the aggregate's handling of null values.

If the final function is declared “strict” then it will not be called when the ending state value is null; instead a null result will be returned automatically. (Of course this is just the normal behavior of strict functions.) In any case the final function has the option of returning a null value. For example, the final function for \textit{avg} returns null when it sees there were zero input rows.

Sometimes it is useful to declare the final function as taking not just the state value, but extra parameters corresponding to the aggregate's input values. The main reason for doing this is if the final function is polymorphic and the state value's data type would be inadequate to pin down the result type. These extra parameters are always passed as NULL (and so the final function must not be strict when the \texttt{FINALFUNC_EXTRA} option is used), but nonetheless they are valid parameters. The final function could for example make use of \texttt{get_fn_expr_argtype} to identify the actual argument type in the current call.

An aggregate can optionally support \textit{moving-aggregate mode}, as described in Section 36.12.1. This requires specifying the \texttt{MSFUNC}, \texttt{MINVFUNC}, and \texttt{MSTYPE} parameters, and optionally the \texttt{MSSPACE}, \texttt{MFINALFUNC}, \texttt{MFINALFUNC_EXTRA}, \texttt{MFINALFUNC_MODIFY}, and \texttt{MINITCOND} parameters. Except for \texttt{MINVFUNC}, these parameters work like the corresponding simple-aggregate parameters without \texttt{M}; they define a separate implementation of the aggregate that includes an inverse transition function.

The syntax with \texttt{ORDER BY} in the parameter list creates a special type of aggregate called an \textit{ordered-set aggregate}; or if \texttt{HYPOTHETICAL} is specified, then a \textit{hypothetical-set aggregate} is created. These aggregates operate over groups of sorted values in order-dependent ways, so that specification of an input sort order is an essential part of a call. Also, they can have \textit{direct} arguments, which are arguments that are evaluated only once per aggregation rather than once per input row. Hypothetical-set aggregates are a subclass of ordered-set aggregates in which some of the direct arguments are required to match, in number and data types, the aggregated argument columns. This allows the values of those direct arguments to be added to the collection of aggregate-input rows as an additional “hypothetical” row.

An aggregate can optionally support \textit{partial aggregation}, as described in Section 36.12.4. This requires specifying the \texttt{COMBINEFUNC} parameter. If the \texttt{state_data_type} is \texttt{internal}, it's usually also appropriate to provide the \texttt{SERIALFUNC} and \texttt{DESERIALFUNC} parameters so that parallel aggregation is possible. Note that the aggregate must also be marked \texttt{PARALLEL SAFE} to enable parallel aggregation.

Aggregates that behave like \texttt{MIN} or \texttt{MAX} can sometimes be optimized by looking into an index instead of scanning every input row. If this aggregate can be so optimized, indicate it by specifying a \textit{sort operator}. The basic requirement is that the aggregate must yield the first element in the sort ordering induced by the operator; in other words:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT agg(col) FROM tab;
\end{verbatim}

must be equivalent to:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT col FROM tab ORDER BY col USING sortop LIMIT 1;
\end{verbatim}

Further assumptions are that the aggregate ignores null inputs, and that it delivers a null result if and only if there were no non-null inputs. Ordinarily, a data type's \texttt{<} operator is the proper sort operator for \texttt{MIN}, and \texttt{>} is the proper sort operator for \texttt{MAX}. Note that the optimization will never actually take effect unless the specified operator is the “less than” or “greater than” strategy member of a B-tree index operator class.

To be able to create an aggregate function, you must have \texttt{USAGE} privilege on the argument types, the state type(s), and the return type, as well as \texttt{EXECUTE} privilege on the supporting functions.

\textbf{Parameters}

\texttt{name}

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the aggregate function to create.
argmode

The mode of an argument: IN or VARIADIC. (Aggregate functions do not support OUT arguments.) If omitted, the default is IN. Only the last argument can be marked VARIADIC.

argname

The name of an argument. This is currently only useful for documentation purposes. If omitted, the argument has no name.

arg_data_type

An input data type on which this aggregate function operates. To create a zero-argument aggregate function, write * in place of the list of argument specifications. (An example of such an aggregate is count(*).)

base_type

In the old syntax for CREATE AGGREGATE, the input data type is specified by a basetype parameter rather than being written next to the aggregate name. Note that this syntax allows only one input parameter. To define a zero-argument aggregate function with this syntax, specify the basetype as "ANY" (not *). Ordered-set aggregates cannot be defined with the old syntax.

sfunc

The name of the state transition function to be called for each input row. For a normal N-argument aggregate function, the sfunc must take N+1 arguments, the first being of type state_data_type and the rest matching the declared input data type(s) of the aggregate. The function must return a value of type state_data_type. This function takes the current state value and the current input data value(s), and returns the next state value.

For ordered-set (including hypothetical-set) aggregates, the state transition function receives only the current state value and the aggregated arguments, not the direct arguments. Otherwise it is the same.

state_data_type

The data type for the aggregate's state value.

state_data_size

The approximate average size (in bytes) of the aggregate's state value. If this parameter is omitted or is zero, a default estimate is used based on the state_data_type. The planner uses this value to estimate the memory required for a grouped aggregate query.

ffunc

The name of the final function called to compute the aggregate's result after all input rows have been traversed. For a normal aggregate, this function must take a single argument of type state_data_type. The return data type of the aggregate is defined as the return type of this function. If ffunc is not specified, then the ending state value is used as the aggregate's result, and the return type is state_data_type.

For ordered-set (including hypothetical-set) aggregates, the final function receives not only the final state value, but also the values of all the direct arguments.

If FINALFUNC_EXTRA is specified, then in addition to the final state value and any direct arguments, the final function receives extra NULL values corresponding to the aggregate's regular (aggregated) arguments. This is mainly useful to allow correct resolution of the aggregate result type when a polymorphic aggregate is being defined.

FINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE }

This option specifies whether the final function is a pure function that does not modify its arguments. READ_ONLY indicates it does not; the other two values indicate that it may change the transition state
value. See Notes below for more detail. The default is READ_ONLY, except for ordered-set aggregates, for which the default is READ_WRITE.

combinefunc

The combinefunc function may optionally be specified to allow the aggregate function to support partial aggregation. If provided, the combinefunc must combine two state_data_type values, each containing the result of aggregation over some subset of the input values, to produce a new state_data_type that represents the result of aggregating over both sets of inputs. This function can be thought of as an sfunc, where instead of acting upon an individual input row and adding it to the running aggregate state, it adds another aggregate state to the running state.

The combinefunc must be declared as taking two arguments of the state_data_type and returning a value of the state_data_type. Optionally this function may be “strict”. In this case the function will not be called when either of the input states are null; the other state will be taken as the correct result.

For aggregate functions whose state_data_type is internal, the combinefunc must not be strict. In this case the combinefunc must ensure that null states are handled correctly and that the state being returned is properly stored in the aggregate memory context.

serialfunc

An aggregate function whose state_data_type is internal can participate in parallel aggregation only if it has a serialfunc function, which must serialize the aggregate state into a bytea value for transmission to another process. This function must take a single argument of type internal and return type bytea. A corresponding deserialfunc is also required.

deserialfunc

Deserialize a previously serialized aggregate state back into state_data_type. This function must take two arguments of types bytea and internal, and produce a result of type internal. (Note: the second, internal argument is unused, but is required for type safety reasons.)

initial_condition

The initial setting for the state value. This must be a string constant in the form accepted for the data type state_data_type. If not specified, the state value starts out null.

msfunc

The name of the forward state transition function to be called for each input row in moving-aggregate mode. This is exactly like the regular transition function, except that its first argument and result are of type mstate_data_type, which might be different from state_data_type.

minvfunc

The name of the inverse state transition function to be used in moving-aggregate mode. This function has the same argument and result types as msfunc, but it is used to remove a value from the current aggregate state, rather than add a value to it. The inverse transition function must have the same strictness attribute as the forward state transition function.

mstate_data_type

The data type for the aggregate's state value, when using moving-aggregate mode.

mstate_data_size

The approximate average size (in bytes) of the aggregate's state value, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as state_data_size.

mffunc

The name of the final function called to compute the aggregate's result after all input rows have been traversed, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as ffunc, except that
its first argument's type is \textit{mstate\_data\_type} and extra dummy arguments are specified by writing \texttt{MFINALFUNC\_EXTRA}. The aggregate result type determined by \texttt{mfunc} or \texttt{mstate\_data\_type} must match that determined by the aggregate's regular implementation.

\texttt{MFINALFUNC\_MODIFY} = \{ \texttt{READ\_ONLY} | \texttt{SHAREABLE} | \texttt{READ\_WRITE} \}

This option is like \texttt{FINALFUNC\_MODIFY}, but it describes the behavior of the moving-aggregate final function.

\texttt{minitial\_condition}

The initial setting for the state value, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as \texttt{initial\_condition}.

\texttt{sort\_operator}

The associated sort operator for a \texttt{MIN}- or \texttt{MAX}-like aggregate. This is just an operator name (possibly schema-qualified). The operator is assumed to have the same input data types as the aggregate (which must be a single-argument normal aggregate).

\texttt{PARALLEL} = \{ \texttt{SAFE} | \texttt{RESTRICTED} | \texttt{UNSAFE} \}

The meanings of \texttt{PARALLEL SAFE}, \texttt{PARALLEL RESTRICTED}, and \texttt{PARALLEL UNSAFE} are the same as in \texttt{CREATE FUNCTION}. An aggregate will not be considered for parallelization if it is marked \texttt{PARALLEL UNSAFE} (which is the default!) or \texttt{PARALLEL RESTRICTED}. Note that the parallel-safety markings of the aggregate's support functions are not consulted by the planner, only the marking of the aggregate itself.

\textbf{HYPOTHETICAL}

For ordered-set aggregates only, this flag specifies that the aggregate arguments are to be processed according to the requirements for hypothetical-set aggregates: that is, the last few direct arguments must match the data types of the aggregated (\texttt{WITHIN GROUP}) arguments. The \texttt{HYPOTHETICAL} flag has no effect on run-time behavior, only on parse-time resolution of the data types and collations of the aggregate's arguments.

The parameters of \texttt{CREATE AGGREGATE} can be written in any order, not just the order illustrated above.

\textbf{Notes}

In parameters that specify support function names, you can write a schema name if needed, for example \texttt{SFUNC = public.sum}. Do not write argument types there, however — the argument types of the support functions are determined from other parameters.

Ordinarly, Postgres Pro functions are expected to be true functions that do not modify their input values. However, an aggregate transition function, \texttt{when used in the context of an aggregate}, is allowed to cheat and modify its transition-state argument in place. This can provide substantial performance benefits compared to making a fresh copy of the transition state each time.

Likewise, while an aggregate final function is normally expected not to modify its input values, sometimes it is impractical to avoid modifying the transition-state argument. Such behavior must be declared using the \texttt{FINALFUNC\_MODIFY} parameter. The \texttt{READ\_WRITE} value indicates that the final function modifies the transition state in unspecified ways. This value prevents use of the aggregate as a window function, and it also prevents merging of transition states for aggregate calls that share the same input values and transition functions. The \texttt{SHAREABLE} value indicates that the transition function cannot be applied after the final function, but multiple final-function calls can be performed on the ending transition state value. This value prevents use of the aggregate as a window function, but it allows merging of transition states. (That is, the optimization of interest here is not applying the same final function repeatedly, but applying different final functions to the same ending transition state value. This is allowed as long as none of the final functions are marked \texttt{READ\_WRITE}.)

If an aggregate supports moving-aggregate mode, it will improve calculation efficiency when the aggregate is used as a window function for a window with moving frame start (that is, a frame start mode
other than \texttt{UNBOUNDED PRECEDING}). Conceptually, the forward transition function adds input values to the aggregate's state when they enter the window frame from the bottom, and the inverse transition function removes them again when they leave the frame at the top. So, when values are removed, they are always removed in the same order they were added. Whenever the inverse transition function is invoked, it will thus receive the earliest added but not yet removed argument value(s). The inverse transition function can assume that at least one row will remain in the current state after it removes the oldest row. (When this would not be the case, the window function mechanism simply starts a fresh aggregation, rather than using the inverse transition function.)

The forward transition function for moving-aggregate mode is not allowed to return NULL as the new state value. If the inverse transition function returns NULL, this is taken as an indication that the inverse function cannot reverse the state calculation for this particular input, and so the aggregate calculation will be redone from scratch for the current frame starting position. This convention allows moving-aggregate mode to be used in situations where there are some infrequent cases that are impractical to reverse out of the running state value.

If no moving-aggregate implementation is supplied, the aggregate can still be used with moving frames, but Postgres Pro will recompute the whole aggregation whenever the start of the frame moves. Note that whether or not the aggregate supports moving-aggregate mode, Postgres Pro can handle a moving frame end without recalculation; this is done by continuing to add new values to the aggregate's state. This is why use of an aggregate as a window function requires that the final function be read-only: it must not damage the aggregate's state value, so that the aggregation can be continued even after an aggregate result value has been obtained for one set of frame boundaries.

The syntax for ordered-set aggregates allows \texttt{VARIADIC} to be specified for both the last direct parameter and the last aggregated (\texttt{WITHIN GROUP}) parameter. However, the current implementation restricts use of \texttt{VARIADIC} in two ways. First, ordered-set aggregates can only use \texttt{VARIADIC "any"}, not other variadic array types. Second, if the last direct parameter is \texttt{VARIADIC "any"}, then there can be only one aggregated parameter and it must also be \texttt{VARIADIC "any"}. (In the representation used in the system catalogs, these two parameters are merged into a single \texttt{VARIADIC "any"} item, since \texttt{pg_proc} cannot represent functions with more than one \texttt{VARIADIC} parameter.) If the aggregate is a hypothetical-set aggregate, the direct arguments that match the \texttt{VARIADIC "any"} parameter are the hypothetical ones; any preceding parameters represent additional direct arguments that are not constrained to match the aggregated arguments.

Currently, ordered-set aggregates do not need to support moving-aggregate mode, since they cannot be used as window functions.

Partial (including parallel) aggregation is currently not supported for ordered-set aggregates. Also, it will never be used for aggregate calls that include \texttt{DISTINCT} or \texttt{ORDER BY} clauses, since those semantics cannot be supported during partial aggregation.

\section*{Examples}
See Section 36.12.

\section*{Compatibility}
\texttt{CREATE AGGREGATE} is a Postgres Pro language extension. The SQL standard does not provide for user-defined aggregate functions.

\section*{See Also}
\texttt{ALTER AGGREGATE, DROP AGGREGATE}
CREATE CAST

CREATE CAST — define a new cast

Synopsis

CREATE CAST (source_type AS target_type)
   WITH FUNCTION function_name [ (argument_type [, ...]) ]
      [ AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT ]

CREATE CAST (source_type AS target_type)
   WITHOUT FUNCTION
      [ AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT ]

CREATE CAST (source_type AS target_type)
   WITH INOUT
      [ AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT ]

Description

CREATE CAST defines a new cast. A cast specifies how to perform a conversion between two data types. For example,

SELECT CAST(42 AS float8);

converts the integer constant 42 to type float8 by invoking a previously specified function, in this case float8(int4). (If no suitable cast has been defined, the conversion fails.)

Two types can be binary coercible, which means that the conversion can be performed “for free” without invoking any function. This requires that corresponding values use the same internal representation. For instance, the types text and varchar are binary coercible both ways. Binary coercibility is not necessarily a symmetric relationship. For example, the cast from xml to text can be performed for free in the present implementation, but the reverse direction requires a function that performs at least a syntax check. (Two types that are binary coercible both ways are also referred to as binary compatible.)

You can define a cast as an I/O conversion cast by using the WITH INOUT syntax. An I/O conversion cast is performed by invoking the output function of the source data type, and passing the resulting string to the input function of the target data type. In many common cases, this feature avoids the need to write a separate cast function for conversion. An I/O conversion cast acts the same as a regular function-based cast; only the implementation is different.

By default, a cast can be invoked only by an explicit cast request, that is an explicit CAST(x AS typename) or x::typename construct.

If the cast is marked AS ASSIGNMENT then it can be invoked implicitly when assigning a value to a column of the target data type. For example, supposing that foo.f1 is a column of type text, then:

INSERT INTO foo (f1) VALUES (42);

will be allowed if the cast from type integer to type text is marked AS ASSIGNMENT, otherwise not. (We generally use the term assignment cast to describe this kind of cast.)

If the cast is marked AS IMPLICIT then it can be invoked implicitly in any context, whether assignment or internally in an expression. (We generally use the term implicit cast to describe this kind of cast.) For example, consider this query:

SELECT 2 + 4.0;

The parser initially marks the constants as being of type integer and numeric respectively. There is no integer + numeric operator in the system catalogs, but there is a numeric + numeric operator. The
query will therefore succeed if a cast from integer to numeric is available and is marked AS IMPLICIT — which in fact it is. The parser will apply the implicit cast and resolve the query as if it had been written

SELECT CAST ( 2 AS numeric ) + 4.0;

Now, the catalogs also provide a cast from numeric to integer. If that cast were marked AS IMPLICIT — which it is not — then the parser would be faced with choosing between the above interpretation and the alternative of casting the numeric constant to integer and applying the integer + integer operator. Lacking any knowledge of which choice to prefer, it would give up and declare the query ambiguous. The fact that only one of the two casts is implicit is the way in which we teach the parser to prefer resolution of a mixed numeric-and-integer expression as numeric; there is no built-in knowledge about that.

It is wise to be conservative about marking casts as implicit. An overabundance of implicit casting paths can cause Postgres Pro to choose surprising interpretations of commands, or to be unable to resolve commands at all because there are multiple possible interpretations. A good rule of thumb is to make a cast implicitly invokable only for information-preserving transformations between types in the same general type category. For example, the cast from int2 to int4 can reasonably be implicit, but the cast from float8 to int4 should probably be assignment-only. Cross-type-category casts, such as text to int4, are best made explicit-only.

Note

Sometimes it is necessary for usability or standards-compliance reasons to provide multiple implicit casts among a set of types, resulting in ambiguity that cannot be avoided as above. The parser has a fallback heuristic based on type categories and preferred types that can help to provide desired behavior in such cases. See CREATE TYPE for more information.

To be able to create a cast, you must own the source or the target data type and have USAGE privilege on the other type. To create a binary-coercible cast, you must be superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous binary-coercible cast conversion can easily crash the server.)

Parameters

source_type
The name of the source data type of the cast.

target_type
The name of the target data type of the cast.

function_name[(argument_type [, ...])]

The function used to perform the cast. The function name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the function will be looked up in the schema search path. The function's result data type must match the target type of the cast. Its arguments are discussed below. If no argument list is specified, the function name must be unique in its schema.

WITHOUT FUNCTION

Indicates that the source type is binary-coercible to the target type, so no function is required to perform the cast.

WITH INOUT

Indicates that the cast is an I/O conversion cast, performed by invoking the output function of the source data type, and passing the resulting string to the input function of the target data type.

AS ASSIGNMENT

Indicates that the cast can be invoked implicitly in assignment contexts.
CREATE CAST

AS IMPLICIT

Indicates that the cast can be invoked implicitly in any context.

Cast implementation functions can have one to three arguments. The first argument type must be identical to or binary-coercible from the cast's source type. The second argument, if present, must be type integer; it receives the type modifier associated with the destination type, or -1 if there is none. The third argument, if present, must be type boolean; it receives true if the cast is an explicit cast, false otherwise. (Bizarrely, the SQL standard demands different behaviors for explicit and implicit casts in some cases. This argument is supplied for functions that must implement such casts. It is not recommended that you design your own data types so that this matters.)

The return type of a cast function must be identical to or binary-coercible to the cast's target type.

Ordinarily a cast must have different source and target data types. However, it is allowed to declare a cast with identical source and target types if it has a cast implementation function with more than one argument. This is used to represent type-specific length coercion functions in the system catalogs. The named function is used to coerce a value of the type to the type modifier value given by its second argument.

When a cast has different source and target types and a function that takes more than one argument, it supports converting from one type to another and applying a length coercion in a single step. When no such entry is available, coercion to a type that uses a type modifier involves two cast steps, one to convert between data types and a second to apply the modifier.

A cast to or from a domain type currently has no effect. Casting to or from a domain uses the casts associated with its underlying type.

Notes

Use DROP CAST to remove user-defined casts.

Remember that if you want to be able to convert types both ways you need to declare casts both ways explicitly.

It is normally not necessary to create casts between user-defined types and the standard string types (text, varchar, and char(n), as well as user-defined types that are defined to be in the string category). Postgres Pro provides automatic I/O conversion casts for that. The automatic casts to string types are treated as assignment casts, while the automatic casts from string types are explicit-only. You can override this behavior by declaring your own cast to replace an automatic cast, but usually the only reason to do so is if you want the conversion to be more easily invokable than the standard assignment-only or explicit-only setting. Another possible reason is that you want the conversion to behave differently from the type's I/O function; but that is sufficiently surprising that you should think twice about whether it's a good idea. (A small number of the built-in types do indeed have different behaviors for conversions, mostly because of requirements of the SQL standard.)

While not required, it is recommended that you continue to follow this old convention of naming cast implementation functions after the target data type. Many users are used to being able to cast data types using a function-style notation, that is typename(x). This notation is in fact nothing more nor less than a call of the cast implementation function; it is not specially treated as a cast. If your conversion functions are not named to support this convention then you will have surprised users. Since Postgres Pro allows overloading of the same function name with different argument types, there is no difficulty in having multiple conversion functions from different types that all use the target type's name.

Note

Actually the preceding paragraph is an oversimplification: there are two cases in which a function-call construct will be treated as a cast request without having matched it to an actual function. If a function call name(x) does not exactly match any existing function, but name is the name of a data
type and `pg_cast` provides a binary-coercible cast to this type from the type of \( x \), then the call will be construed as a binary-coercible cast. This exception is made so that binary-coercible casts can be invoked using functional syntax, even though they lack any function. Likewise, if there is no `pg_cast` entry but the cast would be to or from a string type, the call will be construed as an I/O conversion cast. This exception allows I/O conversion casts to be invoked using functional syntax.

**Note**

There is also an exception to the exception: I/O conversion casts from composite types to string types cannot be invoked using functional syntax, but must be written in explicit cast syntax (either `CAST` or `::` notation). This exception was added because after the introduction of automatically-provided I/O conversion casts, it was found too easy to accidentally invoke such a cast when a function or column reference was intended.

**Examples**

To create an assignment cast from type `bigint` to type `int4` using the function `int4(bigint)`:

```sql
CREATE CAST (bigint AS int4) WITH FUNCTION int4(bigint) AS ASSIGNMENT;
```

(This cast is already predefined in the system.)

**Compatibility**

The `CREATE CAST` command conforms to the SQL standard, except that SQL does not make provisions for binary-coercible types or extra arguments to implementation functions. `AS IMPLICIT` is a Postgres Pro extension, too.

**See Also**

CREATE FUNCTION, CREATE TYPE, DROP CAST
CREATE COLLATION

CREATE COLLATION — define a new collation

Synopsis

CREATE COLLATION [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name {
[ LOCALE = locale, ]
[ LC_COLLATE = lc_collate, ]
[ LC_CTYPE = lc_ctype, ]
[ PROVIDER = provider, ]
[ DETERMINISTIC = boolean, ]
[ VERSION = version ]
}

CREATE COLLATION [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name FROM existing_collation

Description

CREATE COLLATION defines a new collation using the specified operating system locale settings, or by copying an existing collation.

To be able to create a collation, you must have CREATE privilege on the destination schema.

Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a collation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing collation is anything like the one that would have been created.

name

The name of the collation. The collation name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the collation is defined in the current schema. The collation name must be unique within that schema. (The system catalogs can contain collations with the same name for other encodings, but these are ignored if the database encoding does not match.)

locale

This is a shortcut for setting LC_COLLATE and LC_CTYPE at once. If you specify this, you cannot specify either of those parameters.

lc_collate

Use the specified operating system locale for the LC_COLLATE locale category.

lc_ctype

Use the specified operating system locale for the LC_CTYPE locale category.

provider

Specifies the provider to use for locale services associated with this collation. Possible values are: icu, libc. libc is the default. The available choices depend on the operating system and build options.

DETERMINISTIC

Specifies whether the collation should use deterministic comparisons. The default is true. A deterministic comparison considers strings that are not byte-wise equal to be unequal even if they are considered logically equal by the comparison. Postgres Pro breaks ties using a byte-wise comparison.
Comparison that is not deterministic can make the collation be, say, case- or accent-insensitive. For that, you need to choose an appropriate `LC_COLLATE` setting and set the collation to not deterministic here.

Nondeterministic collations are only supported with the ICU provider.

`version`

Specifies the version string to store with the collation. Normally, this should be omitted, which will cause the version to be computed from the actual version of the collation as provided by the operating system. This option is intended to be used by `pg_upgrade` for copying the version from an existing installation.

See also `ALTER COLLATION` for how to handle collation version mismatches.

`existing_collation`

The name of an existing collation to copy. The new collation will have the same properties as the existing one, but it will be an independent object.

**Notes**

`CREATE COLLATION` takes a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock, which is self-conflicting, on the `pg_collation` system catalog, so only one `CREATE COLLATION` command can run at a time.

Use `DROP COLLATION` to remove user-defined collations.

See Section 22.2.2.3 for more information on how to create collations.

When using the `libc` collation provider, the locale must be applicable to the current database encoding. See `CREATE DATABASE` for the precise rules.

**Examples**

To create a collation from the operating system locale `ru_RU.utf8` (assuming the current database encoding is `UTF8`):

```
CREATE COLLATION russian (locale = 'ru_RU.utf8');
```

To create a collation using the ICU provider where Latin characters precede Cyrillic ones:

```
CREATE COLLATION latn_cyrl (provider = icu, locale = 'ru-RU-u-kr-latn-cyrl');
```

To create a collation from an existing collation:

```
CREATE COLLATION german FROM "de_DE";
```

This can be convenient to be able to use operating-system-independent collation names in applications.

**Compatibility**

There is a `CREATE COLLATION` statement in the SQL standard, but it is limited to copying an existing collation. The syntax to create a new collation is a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

`ALTER COLLATION`, `DROP COLLATION`
CREATE CONVERSION

CREATE CONVERSION — define a new encoding conversion

Synopsis

CREATE [ DEFAULT ] CONVERSION name
FOR source_encoding TO dest_encoding FROM function_name

Description

CREATE CONVERSION defines a new conversion between two character set encodings.

Conversions that are marked DEFAULT can be used for automatic encoding conversion between client and server. To support that usage, two conversions, from encoding A to B and from encoding B to A, must be defined.

To be able to create a conversion, you must have EXECUTE privilege on the function and CREATE privilege on the destination schema.

Parameters

DEFAULT

The DEFAULT clause indicates that this conversion is the default for this particular source to destination encoding. There should be only one default encoding in a schema for the encoding pair.

name

The name of the conversion. The conversion name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the conversion is defined in the current schema. The conversion name must be unique within a schema.

source_encoding

The source encoding name.

dest_encoding

The destination encoding name.

function_name

The function used to perform the conversion. The function name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the function will be looked up in the path.

The function must have the following signature:

conv_proc(
    integer, -- source encoding ID
    integer, -- destination encoding ID
    cstring, -- source string (null terminated C string)
    internal, -- destination (fill with a null terminated C string)
    integer, -- source string length
    boolean  -- if true, don't throw an error if conversion fails
) RETURNS integer;

The return value is the number of source bytes that were successfully converted. If the last argument is false, the function must throw an error on invalid input, and the return value is always equal to the source string length.

Notes

Neither the source nor the destination encoding can be SQL_ASCII, as the server's behavior for cases involving the SQL_ASCII "encoding" is hard-wired.
Use `DROP CONVERSION` to remove user-defined conversions.

The privileges required to create a conversion might be changed in a future release.

**Examples**

To create a conversion from encoding `UTF8` to `LATIN1` using `myfunc`:

```
CREATE CONVERSION myconv FOR 'UTF8' TO 'LATIN1' FROM myfunc;
```

**Compatibility**

`CREATE CONVERSION` is a Postgres Pro extension. There is no `CREATE CONVERSION` statement in the SQL standard, but a `CREATE TRANSLATION` statement that is very similar in purpose and syntax.

**See Also**

`ALTER CONVERSION`, `CREATE FUNCTION`, `DROP CONVERSION`
CREATE DATABASE

CREATE DATABASE — create a new database

Synopsis

CREATE DATABASE  name
    [ [ WITH ] [ OWNER [ = ] user_name ]
    [ TEMPLATE [ = ] template ]
    [ ENCODING [ = ] encoding ]
    [ LOCALE [ = ] locale[@provider] ]
    [ LC_COLLATE [ = ] lc_collate[@provider] ]
    [ LC_CTYPE [ = ] lc_ctype ]
    [ TABLESPACE [ = ] tablespace_name ]
    [ ALLOW_CONNECTIONS [ = ] allowconn ]
    [ CONNECTION LIMIT [ = ] connlimit ]
    [ IS_TEMPLATE [ = ] istemplate ] ]

Description

CREATE DATABASE creates a new Postgres Pro database.

To create a database, you must be a superuser or have the special CREATEDB privilege. See CREATE ROLE.

By default, the new database will be created by cloning the standard system database template1. A different template can be specified by writing TEMPLATE name. In particular, by writing TEMPLATE template0, you can create a pristine database (one where no user-defined objects exist and where the system objects have not been altered) containing only the standard objects predefined by your version of Postgres Pro. This is useful if you wish to avoid copying any installation-local objects that might have been added to template1.

Parameters

name

The name of a database to create.

user_name

The role name of the user who will own the new database, or DEFAULT to use the default (namely, the user executing the command). To create a database owned by another role, you must be a direct or indirect member of that role, or be a superuser.

template

The name of the template from which to create the new database, or DEFAULT to use the default template (template1).

encoding

Character set encoding to use in the new database. Specify a string constant (e.g., 'SQL_ASCII'), or an integer encoding number, or DEFAULT to use the default encoding (namely, the encoding of the template database). The character sets supported by the Postgres Pro server are described in Section 22.3.1. See below for additional restrictions.

locale[@provider]

This is a shortcut for setting LC_COLLATE and LC_CTYPE at once. If you specify this, you cannot specify either of those parameters. Optionally, you can specify the provider of the default collation same way as in lc_collate.
CREATE DATABASE

Tip

The other locale settings lc_messages, lc_monetary, lc_numeric, and lc_time are not fixed per database and are not set by this command. If you want to make them the default for a specific database, you can use ALTER DATABASE ... SET.

lc_collate[@provider]

Collation order (LC_COLLATE) to use in the new database. This affects the sort order applied to strings, e.g., in queries with ORDER BY, as well as the order used in indexes on text columns. The default is to use the collation order of the template database. Optionally, you can specify the provider of the default collation after the @ symbol, as explained in Section 22.2.2. Supported values are icu and libc. See below for additional restrictions.

lc_ctype

Character classification (LC_CTYPE) to use in the new database. This affects the categorization of characters, e.g., lower, upper and digit. The default is to use the character classification of the template database. See below for additional restrictions.

tablespace_name

The name of the tablespace that will be associated with the new database, or DEFAULT to use the template database's tablespace. This tablespace will be the default tablespace used for objects created in this database. See CREATE TABLESPACE for more information.

allowconn

If false then no one can connect to this database. The default is true, allowing connections (except as restricted by other mechanisms, such as GRANT/REVOKE CONNECT).

conlimit

How many concurrent connections can be made to this database. -1 (the default) means no limit.

istemplate

If true, then this database can be cloned by any user with CREATEDB privileges; if false (the default), then only superusers or the owner of the database can clone it.

Optional parameters can be written in any order, not only the order illustrated above.

Notes

CREATE DATABASE cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Errors along the line of “could not initialize database directory” are most likely related to insufficient permissions on the data directory, a full disk, or other file system problems.

Use DROP DATABASE to remove a database.

The program createdb is a wrapper program around this command, provided for convenience.

Database-level configuration parameters (set via ALTER DATABASE) and database-level permissions (set via GRANT) are not copied from the template database.

Although it is possible to copy a database other than template1 by specifying its name as the template, this is not (yet) intended as a general-purpose “COPY DATABASE” facility. The principal limitation is that no other sessions can be connected to the template database while it is being copied. CREATE DATABASE will fail if any other connection exists when it starts; otherwise, new connections to the template database are locked out until CREATE DATABASE completes. See Section 21.3 for more information.
The character set encoding specified for the new database must be compatible with the chosen locale settings (`LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE`). If the locale is C (or equivalently `POSIX`), then all encodings are allowed, but for other locale settings there is only one encoding that will work properly. (On Windows, however, UTF-8 encoding can be used with any locale.) `CREATE DATABASE` will allow superusers to specify `SQL_ASCII` encoding regardless of the locale settings, but this choice is deprecated and may result in misbehavior of character-string functions if data that is not encoding-compatible with the locale is stored in the database.

The encoding and locale settings must match those of the template database, except when `template0` is used as template. This is because other databases might contain data that does not match the specified encoding, or might contain indexes whose sort ordering is affected by `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE`. Copying such data would result in a database that is corrupt according to the new settings. `template0`, however, is known to not contain any data or indexes that would be affected.

The `CONNECTION LIMIT` option is only enforced approximately; if two new sessions start at about the same time when just one connection “slot” remains for the database, it is possible that both will fail. Also, the limit is not enforced against superusers or background worker processes.

**Examples**

To create a new database:

```
CREATE DATABASE lusiadas;
```

To create a database `sales` owned by user `salesapp` with a default tablespace of `salesspace`:

```
CREATE DATABASE sales OWNER salesapp TABLESPACE salesspace;
```

To create a database `music` with a different locale:

```
CREATE DATABASE music
    LOCALE 'sv_SE.utf8'
    TEMPLATE template0;
```

In this example, the `TEMPLATE template0` clause is required if the specified locale is different from the one in `template1`. (If it is not, then specifying the locale explicitly is redundant.)

To create a database `music2` with a different locale and a different character set encoding:

```
CREATE DATABASE music2
    LOCALE 'sv_SE.iso885915'
    ENCODING LATIN9
    TEMPLATE template0;
```

The specified locale and encoding settings must match, or an error will be reported.

Note that locale names are specific to the operating system, so that the above commands might not work in the same way everywhere.

**Compatibility**

There is no `CREATE DATABASE` statement in the SQL standard. Databases are equivalent to catalogs, whose creation is implementation-defined.

**See Also**

`ALTER DATABASE`, `DROP DATABASE`
CREATE DOMAIN

CREATE DOMAIN — define a new domain

Synopsis

CREATE DOMAIN name [ AS ] data_type
[ COLLATE collation ]
[ DEFAULT expression ]
[ constraint [ ... ] ]

where constraint is:

[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ NOT NULL | NULL | CHECK (expression) }

Description

CREATE DOMAIN creates a new domain. A domain is essentially a data type with optional constraints (restrictions on the allowed set of values). The user who defines a domain becomes its owner.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE DOMAIN myschema.mydomain ...) then the domain is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The domain name must be unique among the types and domains existing in its schema.

Domains are useful for abstracting common constraints on fields into a single location for maintenance. For example, several tables might contain email address columns, all requiring the same CHECK constraint to verify the address syntax. Define a domain rather than setting up each table's constraint individually.

To be able to create a domain, you must have USAGE privilege on the underlying type.

Parameters

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a domain to be created.

data_type

The underlying data type of the domain. This can include array specifiers.

collation

An optional collation for the domain. If no collation is specified, the underlying data type's default collation is used. The underlying type must be collatable if COLLATE is specified.

DEFAULT expression

The DEFAULT clause specifies a default value for columns of the domain data type. The value is any variable-free expression (but subqueries are not allowed). The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the domain. If no default value is specified, then the default value is the null value.

The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If a default value is defined for a particular column, it overrides any default associated with the domain. In turn, the domain default overrides any default value associated with the underlying data type.

CONSTRAINT constraint_name

An optional name for a constraint. If not specified, the system generates a name.
CREATE DOMAIN

NOT NULL
Values of this domain are prevented from being null (but see notes below).

NULL
Values of this domain are allowed to be null. This is the default.

This clause is only intended for compatibility with nonstandard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

CHECK (expression)

CHECK clauses specify integrity constraints or tests which values of the domain must satisfy. Each constraint must be an expression producing a Boolean result. It should use the key word VALUE to refer to the value being tested. Expressions evaluating to TRUE or UNKNOWN succeed. If the expression produces a FALSE result, an error is reported and the value is not allowed to be converted to the domain type.

Currently, CHECK expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than VALUE.

When a domain has multiple CHECK constraints, they will be tested in alphabetical order by name. (PostgreSQL versions before 9.5 did not honor any particular firing order for CHECK constraints.)

Notes

Domain constraints, particularly NOT NULL, are checked when converting a value to the domain type. It is possible for a column that is nominally of the domain type to read as null despite there being such a constraint. For example, this can happen in an outer-join query, if the domain column is on the nullable side of the outer join. A more subtle example is

```
INSERT INTO tab (domcol) VALUES ((SELECT domcol FROM tab WHERE false));
```

The empty scalar sub-SELECT will produce a null value that is considered to be of the domain type, so no further constraint checking is applied to it, and the insertion will succeed.

It is very difficult to avoid such problems, because of SQL's general assumption that a null value is a valid value of every data type. Best practice therefore is to design a domain's constraints so that a null value is allowed, and then to apply column NOT NULL constraints to columns of the domain type as needed, rather than directly to the domain type.

Postgres Pro assumes that CHECK constraints' conditions are immutable, that is, they will always give the same result for the same input value. This assumption is what justifies examining CHECK constraints only when a value is first converted to be of a domain type, and not at other times. (This is essentially the same as the treatment of table CHECK constraints, as described in Section 5.4.1.)

An example of a common way to break this assumption is to reference a user-defined function in a CHECK expression, and then change the behavior of that function. Postgres Pro does not disallow that, but it will not notice if there are stored values of the domain type that now violate the CHECK constraint. That would cause a subsequent database dump and reload to fail. The recommended way to handle such a change is to drop the constraint (using ALTER DOMAIN), adjust the function definition, and re-add the constraint, thereby rechecking it against stored data.

Examples

This example creates the us_postal_code data type and then uses the type in a table definition. A regular expression test is used to verify that the value looks like a valid US postal code:

```
CREATE DOMAIN us_postal_code AS TEXT
CHECK(
  VALUE ~ '^\d{5}$'
  OR VALUE ~ '^\d{5}-\d{4}$'
)
```
CREATE TABLE us_snail_addy (
    address_id SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
    street1 TEXT NOT NULL,
    street2 TEXT,
    street3 TEXT,
    city TEXT NOT NULL,
    postal us_postal_code NOT NULL
);

Compatibility

The command CREATE DOMAIN conforms to the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER DOMAIN, DROP DOMAIN
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER — define a new event trigger

Synopsis

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER name
  ON event
    [ WHEN filter_variable IN (filter_value [, ... ]) [ AND ... ] ]
  EXECUTE { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE } function_name()

Description

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER creates a new event trigger. Whenever the designated event occurs and the
WHEN condition associated with the trigger, if any, is satisfied, the trigger function will be executed. For a
general introduction to event triggers, see Chapter 38. The user who creates an event trigger becomes
its owner.

Parameters

name
  The name to give the new trigger. This name must be unique within the database.

event
  The name of the event that triggers a call to the given function. See Section 38.1 for more information
  on event names.

filter_variable
  The name of a variable used to filter events. This makes it possible to restrict the firing of the trigger
to a subset of the cases in which it is supported. Currently the only supported filter_variable is
TAG.

filter_value
  A list of values for the associated filter_variable for which the trigger should fire. For TAG, this
  means a list of command tags (e.g., 'DROP FUNCTION').

function_name
  A user-supplied function that is declared as taking no argument and returning type event_trigger.

In the syntax of CREATE EVENT TRIGGER, the keywords FUNCTION and PROCEDURE are equivalent, but
the referenced function must in any case be a function, not a procedure. The use of the keyword
PROCEDURE here is historical and deprecated.

Notes

Only superusers can create event triggers.

Event triggers are disabled in single-user mode (see postgres). If an erroneous event trigger disables
the database so much that you can’t even drop the trigger, restart in single-user mode and you’ll be
able to do that.

Examples

  Forbid the execution of any DDL command:

  CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION abort_any_command()
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER

RETURNS event_trigger
LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
BEGIN
  RAISE EXCEPTION 'command % is disabled', tg_tag;
END;
$$;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER abort_ddl ON ddl_command_start
  EXECUTE FUNCTION abort_any_command();

Compatibility
There is no CREATE EVENT TRIGGER statement in the SQL standard.

See Also
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER, DROP EVENT TRIGGER, CREATE FUNCTION
CREATE EXTENSION

CREATE EXTENSION — install an extension

Synopsis

CREATE EXTENSION [ IF NOT EXISTS ] extension_name
[ WITH ] [ SCHEMA schema_name ]
[ VERSION version ]
[ CASCADE ]

Description

CREATE EXTENSION loads a new extension into the current database. There must not be an extension of
the same name already loaded.

Loading an extension essentially amounts to running the extension's script file. The script will typically
create new SQL objects such as functions, data types, operators and index support methods. CREATE
EXTENSION additionally records the identities of all the created objects, so that they can be dropped
again if DROP EXTENSION is issued.

The user who runs CREATE EXTENSION becomes the owner of the extension for purposes of later privilege
checks, and normally also becomes the owner of any objects created by the extension's script.

Loading an extension ordinarily requires the same privileges that would be required to create its
component objects. For many extensions this means superuser privileges are needed. However, if the
extension is marked trusted in its control file, then it can be installed by any user who has CREATE
privilege on the current database. In this case the extension object itself will be owned by the calling
user, but the contained objects will be owned by the bootstrap superuser (unless the extension's script
explicitly assigns them to the calling user). This configuration gives the calling user the right to drop
the extension, but not to modify individual objects within it.

Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if an extension with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this
case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing extension is anything like the one that would
have been created from the currently-available script file.

extension_name

The name of the extension to be installed. Postgres Pro will create the extension using details from
the file SHAREDIR/extension/extension_name.control.

schema_name

The name of the schema in which to install the extension's objects, given that the extension allows its
contents to be relocated. The named schema must already exist. If not specified, and the extension's
control file does not specify a schema either, the current default object creation schema is used.

If the extension specifies a schema parameter in its control file, then that schema cannot be
 overridden with a SCHEMA clause. Normally, an error will be raised if a SCHEMA clause is given and it
 conflicts with the extension's schema parameter. However, if the CASCADE clause is also given, then
 schema_name is ignored when it conflicts. The given schema_name will be used for installation of any
 needed extensions that do not specify schema in their control files.

Remember that the extension itself is not considered to be within any schema: extensions have
unqualified names that must be unique database-wide. But objects belonging to the extension can
be within schemas.
CREATE EXTENSION

version
The version of the extension to install. This can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. The default version is whatever is specified in the extension's control file.

CASCADE
Automatically install any extensions that this extension depends on that are not already installed. Their dependencies are likewise automatically installed, recursively. The schema clause, if given, applies to all extensions that get installed this way. Other options of the statement are not applied to automatically-installed extensions; in particular, their default versions are always selected.

Notes

Before you can use CREATE EXTENSION to load an extension into a database, the extension's supporting files must be installed. Information about installing the extensions supplied with Postgres Pro can be found in Additional Supplied Modules.

The extensions currently available for loading can be identified from the pg_available_extensions or pg_available_extension_versions system views.

Caution

Installing an extension as superuser requires trusting that the extension's author wrote the extension installation script in a secure fashion. It is not terribly difficult for a malicious user to create trojan-horse objects that will compromise later execution of a carelessly-written extension script, allowing that user to acquire superuser privileges. However, trojan-horse objects are only hazardous if they are in the search_path during script execution, meaning that they are in the extension's installation target schema or in the schema of some extension it depends on. Therefore, a good rule of thumb when dealing with extensions whose scripts have not been carefully vetted is to install them only into schemas for which CREATE privilege has not been and will not be granted to any untrusted users. Likewise for any extensions they depend on.

The extensions supplied with Postgres Pro are believed to be secure against installation-time attacks of this sort, except for a few that depend on other extensions. As stated in the documentation for those extensions, they should be installed into secure schemas, or installed into the same schemas as the extensions they depend on, or both.

For information about writing new extensions, see Section 36.17.

Examples

Install the hstore extension into the current database, placing its objects in schema addons:

CREATE EXTENSION hstore SCHEMA addons;

Another way to accomplish the same thing:

SET search_path = addons;
CREATE EXTENSION hstore;

Compatibility

CREATE EXTENSION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also
ALTER EXTENSION, DROP EXTENSION
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER — define a new foreign-data wrapper

Synopsis

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER name
    [ HANDLER handler_function | NO HANDLER ]
    [ VALIDATOR validator_function | NO VALIDATOR ]
    [ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]

Description

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER creates a new foreign-data wrapper. The user who defines a foreign-data wrapper becomes its owner.

The foreign-data wrapper name must be unique within the database.

Only superusers can create foreign-data wrappers.

Parameters

name
    The name of the foreign-data wrapper to be created.

HANDLER handler_function
    handler_function is the name of a previously registered function that will be called to retrieve the execution functions for foreign tables. The handler function must take no arguments, and its return type must be fdw_handler.

    It is possible to create a foreign-data wrapper with no handler function, but foreign tables using such a wrapper can only be declared, not accessed.

VALIDATOR validator_function
    validator_function is the name of a previously registered function that will be called to check the generic options given to the foreign-data wrapper, as well as options for foreign servers, user mappings and foreign tables using the foreign-data wrapper. If no validator function or NO VALIDATOR is specified, then options will not be checked at creation time. (Foreign-data wrappers will possibly ignore or reject invalid option specifications at run time, depending on the implementation.) The validator function must take two arguments: one of type text[], which will contain the array of options as stored in the system catalogs, and one of type oid, which will be the OID of the system catalog containing the options. The return type is ignored; the function should report invalid options using the ereport(ERROR) function.

OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] )
    This clause specifies options for the new foreign-data wrapper. The allowed option names and values are specific to each foreign data wrapper and are validated using the foreign-data wrapper's validator function. Option names must be unique.

Notes

Postgres Pro's foreign-data functionality is still under active development. Optimization of queries is primitive (and mostly left to the wrapper, too). Thus, there is considerable room for future performance improvements.

Examples

Create a useless foreign-data wrapper dummy:
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dummy;

Create a foreign-data wrapper file with handler function file_fdw_handler:
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file HANDLER file_fdw_handler;

Create a foreign-data wrapper mywrapper with some options:
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER mywrapper
  OPTIONS (debug 'true');

Compatibility
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), with the exception that the HANDLER and VALIDATOR clauses are extensions and the standard clauses LIBRARY and LANGUAGE are not implemented in Postgres Pro.

Note, however, that the SQL/MED functionality as a whole is not yet conforming.

See Also
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, CREATE SERVER, CREATE USER MAPPING, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE — define a new foreign table

Synopsis

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name ( [ 
  { column_name data_type [ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ] [ COLLATE collation ] 
  [ column_constraint [ ... ] ] 
  | table_constraint 
  [, ... ] 
  ] 
] [ INHERITS ( parent_table [, ... ] ) ] 
SERVER server_name 
[ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name 
PARTITION OF parent_table [ ( 
  { column_name [ WITH OPTIONS ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ] } 
  | table_constraint 
  [, ... ] ] 
) ] partition_bound_spec 
SERVER server_name 
[ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]

where column_constraint is:

[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ NOT NULL | 
NULL | 
CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ] | 
DEFAULT default_expr | 
GENERATED ALWAYS AS ( generation_expr ) STORED }

and table_constraint is:

[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ]

Description

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE creates a new foreign table in the current database. The table will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE myschema.mytable ...) then the table is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the foreign table must be distinct from the name of any other foreign table, table, sequence, index, view, or materialized view in the same schema.

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE also automatically creates a data type that represents the composite type corresponding to one row of the foreign table. Therefore, foreign tables cannot have the same name as any existing data type in the same schema.

If PARTITION OF clause is specified then the table is created as a partition of parent_table with specified bounds.

To be able to create a foreign table, you must have USAGE privilege on the foreign server, as well as USAGE privilege on all column types used in the table.
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE

Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing relation is anything like the one that would have been created.

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

column_name

The name of a column to be created in the new table.

data_type

The data type of the column. This can include array specifiers. For more information on the data types supported by Postgres Pro, refer to Chapter 8.

COLLATE collation

The COLLATE clause assigns a collation to the column (which must be of a collatable data type). If not specified, the column data type's default collation is used.

INHERITS ( parent_table [, ... ] )

The optional INHERITS clause specifies a list of tables from which the new foreign table automatically inherits all columns. Parent tables can be plain tables or foreign tables. See the similar form of CREATE TABLE for more details.

PARTITION OF parent_table FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec

This form can be used to create the foreign table as partition of the given parent table with specified partition bound values. See the similar form of CREATE TABLE for more details. Note that it is currently not allowed to create the foreign table as a partition of the parent table if there are UNIQUE indexes on the parent table. (See also ALTER TABLE ATTACH PARTITION.)

CONSTRAINT constraint_name

An optional name for a column or table constraint. If the constraint is violated, the constraint name is present in error messages, so constraint names like col must be positive can be used to communicate helpful constraint information to client applications. (Double-quotes are needed to specify constraint names that contain spaces.) If a constraint name is not specified, the system generates a name.

NOT NULL

The column is not allowed to contain null values.

NULL

The column is allowed to contain null values. This is the default.

This clause is only provided for compatibility with non-standard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ]

The CHECK clause specifies an expression producing a Boolean result which each row in the foreign table is expected to satisfy; that is, the expression should produce TRUE or UNKNOWN, never FALSE, for all rows in the foreign table. A check constraint specified as a column constraint should reference that column's value only, while an expression appearing in a table constraint can reference multiple columns.
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE

Currently, CHECK expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than columns of the current row. The system column `tableoid` may be referenced, but not any other system column.

A constraint marked with `NO INHERIT` will not propagate to child tables.

**DEFAULT** `default_expr`

The `DEFAULT` clause assigns a default data value for the column whose column definition it appears within. The value is any variable-free expression (subqueries and cross-references to other columns in the current table are not allowed). The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the column.

The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If there is no default for a column, then the default is null.

**GENERATED ALWAYS AS** ( `generation_expr` ) `STORED`

This clause creates the column as a generated column. The column cannot be written to, and when read the result of the specified expression will be returned.

The keyword `STORED` is required to signify that the column will be computed on write. (The computed value will be presented to the foreign-data wrapper for storage and must be returned on reading.)

The generation expression can refer to other columns in the table, but not other generated columns. Any functions and operators used must be immutable. References to other tables are not allowed.

**server_name**

The name of an existing foreign server to use for the foreign table. For details on defining a server, see `CREATE SERVER`.

**OPTIONS** ( `option 'value' [, ...]` )

Options to be associated with the new foreign table or one of its columns. The allowed option names and values are specific to each foreign data wrapper and are validated using the foreign-data wrapper's validator function. Duplicate option names are not allowed (although it's OK for a table option and a column option to have the same name).

**Notes**

Constraints on foreign tables (such as `CHECK` or `NOT NULL` clauses) are not enforced by the core Postgres Pro system, and most foreign data wrappers do not attempt to enforce them either; that is, the constraint is simply assumed to hold true. There would be little point in such enforcement since it would only apply to rows inserted or updated via the foreign table, and not to rows modified by other means, such as directly on the remote server. Instead, a constraint attached to a foreign table should represent a constraint that is being enforced by the remote server.

Some special-purpose foreign data wrappers might be the only access mechanism for the data they access, and in that case it might be appropriate for the foreign data wrapper itself to perform constraint enforcement. But you should not assume that a wrapper does that unless its documentation says so.

Although Postgres Pro does not attempt to enforce constraints on foreign tables, it does assume that they are correct for purposes of query optimization. If there are rows visible in the foreign table that do not satisfy a declared constraint, queries on the table might produce incorrect answers. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the constraint definition matches reality.

Similar considerations apply to generated columns. Stored generated columns are computed on insert or update on the local Postgres Pro server and handed to the foreign-data wrapper for writing out to the foreign data store, but it is not enforced that a query of the foreign table returns values for stored generated columns that are consistent with the generation expression. Again, this might result in incorrect query results.
While rows can be moved from local partitions to a foreign-table partition (provided the foreign data wrapper supports tuple routing), they cannot be moved from a foreign-table partition to another partition.

Examples

Create foreign table `films`, which will be accessed through the server `film_server`:

```sql
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE films (    code char(5) NOT NULL,
    title varchar(40) NOT NULL,
    did integer NOT NULL,
    date_prod date,
    kind varchar(10),
    len interval hour to minute )
SERVER film_server;
```

Create foreign table `measurement_y2016m07`, which will be accessed through the server `server_07`, as a partition of the range partitioned table `measurement`:

```sql
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE measurement_y2016m07
PARTITION OF measurement FOR VALUES FROM ('2016-07-01') TO ('2016-08-01')
SERVER server_07;
```

Compatibility

The `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` command largely conforms to the SQL standard; however, much as with `CREATE TABLE`, NULL constraints and zero-column foreign tables are permitted. The ability to specify column default values is also a Postgres Pro extension. Table inheritance, in the form defined by Postgres Pro, is nonstandard.

See Also

`ALTER FOREIGN TABLE`, `DROP FOREIGN TABLE`, `CREATE TABLE`, `CREATE SERVER`, `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA`
CREATE FUNCTION

CREATE FUNCTION — define a new function

Synopsis

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] FUNCTION
  
  name ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ { DEFAULT | = } default_expr ] 
  [, ...] ] ) 
  
  [ RETURNS rettype 
  | RETURNS TABLE ( column_name column_type [, ...] ) ] 
  
  { LANGUAGE lang_name 
  | TRANSFORM { FOR TYPE type_name } [, ...] 
  | WINDOW 
  | { IMMUTABLE | STABLE | VOLATILE } 
  | [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF 
  | { CALLED ON NULL INPUT | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT | STRICT } 
  | { [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER } 
  | PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE } 
  | COST execution_cost 
  | ROWS result_rows 
  | SUPPORT support_function 
  | SET configuration_parameter { TO value | = value | FROM CURRENT } 
  | AS 'definition' 
  | AS 'obj_file', 'link_symbol' 
  | sql_body 
  } ...

Description

CREATE FUNCTION defines a new function. CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION will either create a new function, or replace an existing definition. To be able to define a function, the user must have the USAGE privilege on the language.

If a schema name is included, then the function is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new function must not match any existing function or procedure with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, functions and procedures of different argument types can share a name (this is called overloading).

To replace the current definition of an existing function, use CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a function this way (if you tried, you would actually be creating a new, distinct function). Also, CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION will not let you change the return type of an existing function. To do that, you must drop and recreate the function. (When using OUT parameters, that means you cannot change the types of any OUT parameters except by dropping the function.)

When CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION is used to replace an existing function, the ownership and permissions of the function do not change. All other function properties are assigned the values specified or implied in the command. You must own the function to replace it (this includes being a member of the owning role).

If you drop and then recreate a function, the new function is not the same entity as the old; you will have to drop existing rules, views, triggers, etc. that refer to the old function. Use CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION to change a function definition without breaking objects that refer to the function. Also, ALTER FUNCTION can be used to change most of the auxiliary properties of an existing function.

The user that creates the function becomes the owner of the function.
CREATE FUNCTION

To be able to create a function, you must have USAGE privilege on the argument types and the return type.

Refer to Section 36.3 for further information on writing functions.

Parameters

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the function to create.

argmode

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Only OUT arguments can follow a VARIADIC one. Also, OUT and INOUT arguments cannot be used together with the RETURNS TABLE notation.

argname

The name of an argument. Some languages (including SQL and PL/pgSQL) let you use the name in the function body. For other languages the name of an input argument is just extra documentation, so far as the function itself is concerned; but you can use input argument names when calling a function to improve readability (see Section 4.3). In any case, the name of an output argument is significant, because it defines the column name in the result row type. (If you omit the name for an output argument, the system will choose a default column name.)

argtype

The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. The argument types can be base, composite, or domain types, or can reference the type of a table column.

Depending on the implementation language it might also be allowed to specify “pseudo-types” such as cstring. Pseudo-types indicate that the actual argument type is either incompletely specified, or outside the set of ordinary SQL data types.

The type of a column is referenced by writing `table_name.column_name%TYPE`. Using this feature can sometimes help make a function independent of changes to the definition of a table.

default_expr

An expression to be used as default value if the parameter is not specified. The expression has to be coercible to the argument type of the parameter. Only input (including INOUT) parameters can have a default value. All input parameters following a parameter with a default value must have default values as well.

rettype

The return data type (optionally schema-qualified). The return type can be a base, composite, or domain type, or can reference the type of a table column. Depending on the implementation language it might also be allowed to specify “pseudo-types” such as cstring. If the function is not supposed to return a value, specify void as the return type.

When there are OUT or INOUT parameters, the RETURNS clause can be omitted. If present, it must agree with the result type implied by the output parameters: RECORD if there are multiple output parameters, or the same type as the single output parameter.

The SETOF modifier indicates that the function will return a set of items, rather than a single item.

The type of a column is referenced by writing `table_name.column_name%TYPE`.

column_name

The name of an output column in the RETURNS TABLE syntax. This is effectively another way of declaring a named OUT parameter, except that RETURNS TABLE also implies SETOF.
CREATE FUNCTION

column_type

The data type of an output column in the `RETURNS TABLE` syntax.

lang_name

The name of the language that the function is implemented in. It can be `sql`, `c`, `internal`, or the name of a user-defined procedural language, e.g., `plpgsql`. The default is `sql` if `sql_body` is specified. Enclosing the name in single quotes is deprecated and requires matching case.

TRANSFORM { FOR TYPE type_name } [, ... ] }

Lists which transforms a call to the function should apply. Transforms convert between SQL types and language-specific data types; see `CREATE TRANSFORM`. Procedural language implementations usually have hardcoded knowledge of the built-in types, so those don't need to be listed here. If a procedural language implementation does not know how to handle a type and no transform is supplied, it will fall back to a default behavior for converting data types, but this depends on the implementation.

WINDOW

`WINDOW` indicates that the function is a `window function` rather than a plain function. This is currently only useful for functions written in C. The `WINDOW` attribute cannot be changed when replacing an existing function definition.

IMMUTABLE
STABLE
VOLATILE

These attributes inform the query optimizer about the behavior of the function. At most one choice can be specified. If none of these appear, `VOLATILE` is the default assumption.

IMMUTABLE indicates that the function cannot modify the database and always returns the same result when given the same argument values; that is, it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If this option is given, any call of the function with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the function value.

STABLE indicates that the function cannot modify the database, and that within a single table scan it will consistently return the same result for the same argument values, but that its result could change across SQL statements. This is the appropriate selection for functions whose results depend on database lookups, parameter variables (such as the current time zone), etc. (It is inappropriate for `AFTER` triggers that wish to query rows modified by the current command.) Also note that the `current_timestamp` family of functions qualify as stable, since their values do not change within a transaction.

VOLATILE indicates that the function value can change even within a single table scan, so no optimizations can be made. Relatively few database functions are volatile in this sense; some examples are `random()`, `currval()`, `timeofday()`. But note that any function that has side-effects must be classified volatile, even if its result is quite predictable, to prevent calls from being optimized away; an example is `setval()`.

For additional details see Section 36.7.

LEAKPROOF

LEAKPROOF indicates that the function has no side effects. It reveals no information about its arguments other than by its return value. For example, a function which throws an error message for some argument values but not others, or which includes the argument values in any error message, is not leakproof. This affects how the system executes queries against views created with the `security_barrier` option or tables with row level security enabled. The system will enforce conditions from security policies and security barrier views before any user-supplied conditions from the query itself that contain non-leakproof functions, in order to prevent the inadvertent exposure
of data. Functions and operators marked as leakproof are assumed to be trustworthy, and may be executed before conditions from security policies and security barrier views. In addition, functions which do not take arguments or which are not passed any arguments from the security barrier view or table do not have to be marked as leakproof to be executed before security conditions. See CREATE VIEW and Section 39.5. This option can only be set by the superuser.

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT**

**RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT**

**STRICT**

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT** (the default) indicates that the function will be called normally when some of its arguments are null. It is then the function author's responsibility to check for null values if necessary and respond appropriately.

**RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT** or **STRICT** indicates that the function always returns null whenever any of its arguments are null. If this parameter is specified, the function is not executed when there are null arguments; instead a null result is assumed automatically.

**[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER**

**[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER**

**SECURITY INVOKER** indicates that the function is to be executed with the privileges of the user that calls it. That is the default. **SECURITY DEFINER** specifies that the function is to be executed with the privileges of the user that owns it.

The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but it is optional since, unlike in SQL, this feature applies to all functions not only external ones.

**PARALLEL**

**PARALLEL UNSAFE** indicates that the function can't be executed in parallel mode and the presence of such a function in an SQL statement forces a serial execution plan. This is the default. **PARALLEL RESTRICTED** indicates that the function can be executed in parallel mode, but the execution is restricted to parallel group leader. **PARALLEL SAFE** indicates that the function is safe to run in parallel mode without restriction.

Functions should be labeled parallel unsafe if they modify any database state, or if they make changes to the transaction such as using sub-transactions, or if they access sequences or attempt to make persistent changes to settings (e.g., `setval`). They should be labeled as parallel restricted if they access temporary tables, client connection state, cursors, prepared statements, or miscellaneous backend-local state which the system cannot synchronize in parallel mode (e.g., `setseed` cannot be executed other than by the group leader because a change made by another process would not be reflected in the leader). In general, if a function is labeled as being safe when it is restricted or unsafe, or if it is labeled as being restricted when it is in fact unsafe, it may throw errors or produce wrong answers when used in a parallel query. C-language functions could in theory exhibit totally undefined behavior if mislabeled, since there is no way for the system to protect itself against arbitrary C code, but in most likely cases the result will be no worse than for any other function. If in doubt, functions should be labeled as **UNSAFE**, which is the default.

**COST** `execution_cost`

A positive number giving the estimated execution cost for the function, in units of `cpu_operator_cost`. If the function returns a set, this is the cost per returned row. If the cost is not specified, 1 unit is assumed for C-language and internal functions, and 100 units for functions in all other languages. Larger values cause the planner to try to avoid evaluating the function more often than necessary.

**ROWS** `result_rows`

A positive number giving the estimated number of rows that the planner should expect the function to return. This is only allowed when the function is declared to return a set. The default assumption is 1000 rows.
CREATE FUNCTION

SUPPORT support_function

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a planner support function to use for this function. See Section 36.11 for details. You must be superuser to use this option.

definition

A string constant defining the function; the meaning depends on the language. It can be an internal function name, the path to an object file, an SQL command, or text in a procedural language.

It is often helpful to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) to write the function definition string, rather than the normal single quote syntax. Without dollar quoting, any single quotes or backslashes in the function definition must be escaped by doubling them.

obj_file, link_symbol

This form of the AS clause is used for dynamically loadable C language functions when the function name in the C language source code is not the same as the name of the SQL function. The string obj_file is the name of the shared library file containing the compiled C function, and is interpreted as for the LOAD command. The string link_symbol is the function’s link symbol, that is, the name of the function in the C language source code. If the link symbol is omitted, it is assumed to be the same as the name of the SQL function being defined. The C names of all functions must be different, so you must give overloaded C functions different C names (for example, use the argument types as part of the C names).

When repeated CREATE FUNCTION calls refer to the same object file, the file is only loaded once per session. To unload and reload the file (perhaps during development), start a new session.

sql_body

The body of a LANGUAGE SQL function. This can either be a single statement

RETURN expression

or a block

BEGIN ATOMIC
  statement;
  statement;
  ...
  statement;
END

This is similar to writing the text of the function body as a string constant (see definition above), but there are some differences: This form only works for LANGUAGE SQL, the string constant form works for all languages. This form is parsed at function definition time, the string constant form is parsed at execution time; therefore this form cannot support polymorphic argument types and other
constructs that are not resolvable at function definition time. This form tracks dependencies between
the function and objects used in the function body, so DROP ... CASCADE will work correctly, whereas
the form using string literals may leave dangling functions. Finally, this form is more compatible with
the SQL standard and other SQL implementations.

Overloading

Postgres Pro allows function overloading; that is, the same name can be used for several different
functions so long as they have distinct input argument types. Whether or not you use it, this capability
entails security precautions when calling functions in databases where some users mistrust other users;
see Section 10.3.

Two functions are considered the same if they have the same names and input argument types, ignoring
any OUT parameters. Thus for example these declarations conflict:

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int) ...
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int, out text) ...
```

Functions that have different argument type lists will not be considered to conflict at creation time, but
if defaults are provided they might conflict in use. For example, consider

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int) ...
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int, int default 42) ...
```

A call `foo(10)` will fail due to the ambiguity about which function should be called.

Notes

The full SQL type syntax is allowed for declaring a function's arguments and return value. However,
parenthesized type modifiers (e.g., the precision field for type numeric) are discarded by CREATE
FUNCTION. Thus for example `CREATE FUNCTION foo (varchar(10)) ...` is exactly the same as
`CREATE FUNCTION foo (varchar) ...`.

When replacing an existing function with `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION`, there are restrictions on
changing parameter names. You cannot change the name already assigned to any input parameter
(although you can add names to parameters that had none before). If there is more than one output
parameter, you cannot change the names of the output parameters, because that would change the
column names of the anonymous composite type that describes the function's result. These restrictions
are made to ensure that existing calls of the function do not stop working when it is replaced.

If a function is declared `STRICT` with a `VARIADIC` argument, the strictness check tests that the variadic
array as a whole is non-null. The function will still be called if the array has null elements.

Examples

Add two integers using an SQL function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add(integer, integer) RETURNS integer
  AS 'select $1 + $2;'
  LANGUAGE SQL
  IMMUTABLE
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT;
```

The same function written in a more SQL-conforming style, using argument names and an unquoted
body:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add(a integer, b integer) RETURNS integer
  LANGUAGE SQL
  IMMUTABLE
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
  RETURN a + b;
```

Increment an integer, making use of an argument name, in PL/pgSQL:
CREATE FUNCTION increment (i integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN i + 1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

Return a record containing multiple output parameters:

CREATE FUNCTION dup (in int, out f1 int, out f2 text)
AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(42);

You can do the same thing more verbosely with an explicitly named composite type:

CREATE TYPE dup_result AS (f1 int, f2 text);

CREATE FUNCTION dup (int) RETURNS dup_result
AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(42);

Another way to return multiple columns is to use a TABLE function:

CREATE FUNCTION dup (int) RETURNS TABLE(f1 int, f2 text)
AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(42);

However, a TABLE function is different from the preceding examples, because it actually returns a set of records, not just one record.

Writing SECURITY DEFINER Functions Safely

Because a SECURITY DEFINER function is executed with the privileges of the user that owns it, care is needed to ensure that the function cannot be misused. For security, search_path should be set to exclude any schemas writable by untrusted users. This prevents malicious users from creating objects (e.g., tables, functions, and operators) that mask objects intended to be used by the function. Particularly important in this regard is the temporary-table schema, which is searched first by default, and is normally writable by anyone. A secure arrangement can be obtained by forcing the temporary schema to be searched last. To do this, write pg_temp as the last entry in search_path. This function illustrates safe usage:

CREATE FUNCTION check_password (uname TEXT, pass TEXT)
RETURNS BOOLEAN AS $$
DECLARE passed BOOLEAN;
BEGIN
    SELECT (pwd = $2) INTO passed
    FROM pwds
    WHERE username = $1;

    RETURN passed;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql SECURITY DEFINER

-- Set a secure search_path: trusted schema(s), then 'pg_temp'.
SET search_path = admin, pg_temp;

This function's intention is to access a table admin.pwds. But without the SET clause, or with a SET clause mentioning only admin, the function could be subverted by creating a temporary table named pwds.
Before PostgreSQL version 8.3, the `SET` clause was not available, and so older functions may contain rather complicated logic to save, set, and restore `search_path`. The `SET` clause is far easier to use for this purpose.

Another point to keep in mind is that by default, execute privilege is granted to `PUBLIC` for newly created functions (see Section 5.7 for more information). Frequently you will wish to restrict use of a security definer function to only some users. To do that, you must revoke the default `PUBLIC` privileges and then grant execute privilege selectively. To avoid having a window where the new function is accessible to all, create it and set the privileges within a single transaction. For example:

```sql
BEGIN;
CREATE FUNCTION check_password(uname TEXT, pass TEXT) ... SECURITY DEFINER;
REVOKE ALL ON FUNCTION check_password(uname TEXT, pass TEXT) FROM PUBLIC;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION check_password(uname TEXT, pass TEXT) TO admins;
COMMIT;
```

**Compatibility**

A `CREATE FUNCTION` command is defined in the SQL standard. The Postgres Pro implementation can be used in a compatible way but has many extensions. Conversely, the SQL standard specifies a number of optional features that are not implemented in Postgres Pro Standard.

The following are important compatibility issues:

- `OR REPLACE` is a PostgreSQL extension.
- For compatibility with some other database systems, `argmode` can be written either before or after `argname`. But only the first way is standard-compliant.
- For parameter defaults, the SQL standard specifies only the syntax with the `DEFAULT` key word. The syntax with `=` is used in T-SQL and Firebird.
- The `SETOF` modifier is a PostgreSQL extension.
- Only `SQL` is standardized as a language.
- All other attributes except `CALLED ON NULL INPUT` and `RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT` are not standardized.
- For the body of `LANGUAGE SQL` functions, the SQL standard only specifies the `sql_body` form.

Simple `LANGUAGE SQL` functions can be written in a way that is both standard-conforming and portable to other implementations. More complex functions using advanced features, optimization attributes, or other languages will necessarily be specific to PostgreSQL in a significant way.

**See Also**

`ALTER FUNCTION`, `DROP FUNCTION`, `GRANT`, `LOAD`, `REVOKE`
CREATE GROUP

CREATE GROUP — define a new database role

Synopsis

```
CREATE GROUP name [ [ WITH ] option [ ... ] ]
```

where option can be:

```
SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
| CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
| CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
| INHERIT | NOINHERIT
| LOGIN | NOLOGIN
| REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
| BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
| CONNECTION LIMIT conlimit
| [ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
| VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
| IN ROLE role_name [, ...]
| IN GROUP role_name [, ...]
| ROLE role_name [, ...]
| ADMIN role_name [, ...]
| USER role_name [, ...]
| SYSID uid
```

Description

CREATE GROUP is now an alias for CREATE ROLE.

Compatibility

There is no CREATE GROUP statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE ROLE
CREATE INDEX

CREATE INDEX — define a new index

Synopsis

CREATE [ UNIQUE ] INDEX [ CONCURRENTLY ] [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name ON
ONLY table_name [ USING method ]
  ( column_name | ( expression ) ) [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass
  ( opclass_parameter = value [, ... ] ) ] [ ASC | DESC ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ]
[, ...]
  [ INCLUDE ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
  [ WITH ( storage_parameter = value [ , ... ] ) ]
  [ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
  [ WHERE predicate ]

Description

CREATE INDEX constructs an index on the specified column(s) of the specified relation, which can be
a table or a materialized view. Indexes are primarily used to enhance database performance (though
inappropriate use can result in slower performance).

The key field(s) for the index are specified as column names, or alternatively as expressions written in
parentheses. Multiple fields can be specified if the index method supports multicolumn indexes.

An index field can be an expression computed from the values of one or more columns of the table row.
This feature can be used to obtain fast access to data based on some transformation of the basic data.
For example, an index computed on upper(col) would allow the clause WHERE upper(col) = 'JIM'
to use an index.

Postgres Pro provides the index methods B-tree, hash, GIST, SP-GIST, GIN, and BRIN. Users can also
define their own index methods, but that is fairly complicated.

When the WHERE clause is present, a partial index is created. A partial index is an index that contains
entries for only a portion of a table, usually a portion that is more useful for indexing than the rest of
the table. For example, if you have a table that contains both billed and unbilled orders where the unbilled
orders take up a small fraction of the total table and yet that is an often used section, you can improve
performance by creating an index on just that portion. Another possible application is to use WHERE with
UNIQUE to enforce uniqueness over a subset of a table. See Section 11.8 for more discussion.

The expression used in the WHERE clause can refer only to columns of the underlying table, but it can use
all columns, not just the ones being indexed. Presently, subqueries and aggregate expressions are also
forbidden in WHERE. The same restrictions apply to index fields that are expressions.

All functions and operators used in an index definition must be “immutable”, that is, their results must
depend only on their arguments and never on any outside influence (such as the contents of another
table or the current time). This restriction ensures that the behavior of the index is well-defined. To use a
user-defined function in an index expression or WHERE clause, remember to mark the function immutable
when you create it.

Parameters

UNIQUE

Causes the system to check for duplicate values in the table when the index is created (if data already
exist) and each time data is added. Attempts to insert or update data which would result in duplicate
entries will generate an error.
Additional restrictions apply when unique indexes are applied to partitioned tables; see CREATE TABLE.

**CONCURRENTLY**

When this option is used, Postgres Pro will build the index without taking any locks that prevent concurrent inserts, updates, or deletes on the table; whereas a standard index build locks out writes (but not reads) on the table until it’s done. There are several caveats to be aware of when using this option — see Building Indexes Concurrently below.

For temporary tables, CREATE INDEX is always non-concurrent, as no other session can access them, and non-concurrent index creation is cheaper.

**IF NOT EXISTS**

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing index is anything like the one that would have been created. Index name is required when IF NOT EXISTS is specified.

**INCLUDE**

The optional INCLUDE clause specifies a list of columns which will be included in the index as non-key columns. A non-key column cannot be used in an index scan search qualification, and it is disregarded for purposes of any uniqueness or exclusion constraint enforced by the index. However, an index-only scan can return the contents of non-key columns without having to visit the index's table, since they are available directly from the index entry. Thus, addition of non-key columns allows index-only scans to be used for queries that otherwise could not use them.

It's wise to be conservative about adding non-key columns to an index, especially wide columns. If an index tuple exceeds the maximum size allowed for the index type, data insertion will fail. In any case, non-key columns duplicate data from the index's table and bloat the size of the index, thus potentially slowing searches. Furthermore, B-tree deduplication is never used with indexes that have a non-key column.

Columns listed in the INCLUDE clause don't need appropriate operator classes; the clause can include columns whose data types don't have operator classes defined for a given access method.

Expressions are not supported as included columns since they cannot be used in index-only scans.

Currently, the B-tree, GiST and SP-GiST index access methods support this feature. In these indexes, the values of columns listed in the INCLUDE clause are included in leaf tuples which correspond to heap tuples, but are not included in upper-level index entries used for tree navigation.

**name**

The name of the index to be created. No schema name can be included here; the index is always created in the same schema as its parent table. If the name is omitted, Postgres Pro chooses a suitable name based on the parent table's name and the indexed column name(s).

**ONLY**

Indicates not to recurse creating indexes on partitions, if the table is partitioned. The default is to recurse.

**table_name**

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of the table to be indexed.

**method**

The name of the index method to be used. Choices are btree, hash, gist, spgist, gin, and brin. The default method is btree.
CREATE INDEX

column_name
   The name of a column of the table.

eexpression
   An expression based on one or more columns of the table. The expression usually must be written
   with surrounding parentheses, as shown in the syntax. However, the parentheses can be omitted if
   the expression has the form of a function call.

collation
   The name of the collation to use for the index. By default, the index uses the collation declared for
   the column to be indexed or the result collation of the expression to be indexed. Indexes with non-
   default collations can be useful for queries that involve expressions using non-default collations.

opclass
   The name of an operator class. See below for details.

opclass_parameter
   The name of an operator class parameter. See below for details.

ASC
   Specifies ascending sort order (which is the default).

DESC
   Specifies descending sort order.

NULLS FIRST
   Specifies that nulls sort before non-nulls. This is the default when DESC is specified.

NULLS LAST
   Specifies that nulls sort after non-nulls. This is the default when DESC is not specified.

storage_parameter
   The name of an index-method-specific storage parameter. See Index Storage Parameters below for
   details.

tablespace_name
   The tablespace in which to create the index. If not specified, default_tablespace is consulted, or
   temp_tablespaces for indexes on temporary tables.

predicate
   The constraint expression for a partial index.

Index Storage Parameters

The optional WITH clause specifies storage parameters for the index. Each index method has its own set of allowed storage parameters. The B-tree, hash, GiST and SP-GiST index methods all accept this parameter:

fillfactor (integer)
   The fillfactor for an index is a percentage that determines how full the index method will try to pack index pages. For B-trees, leaf pages are filled to this percentage during initial index builds, and also when extending the index at the right (adding new largest key values). If pages subsequently become completely full, they will be split, leading to fragmentation of the on-disk index structure. B-trees use a default fillfactor of 90, but any integer value from 10 to 100 can be selected.
B-tree indexes on tables where many inserts and/or updates are anticipated can benefit from lower fillfactor settings at `CREATE INDEX` time (following bulk loading into the table). Values in the range of 50 - 90 can usefully “smooth out” the rate of page splits during the early life of the B-tree index (lowering fillfactor like this may even lower the absolute number of page splits, though this effect is highly workload dependent). The B-tree bottom-up index deletion technique described in Section 60.4.2 is dependent on having some “extra” space on pages to store “extra” tuple versions, and so can be affected by fillfactor (though the effect is usually not significant).

In other specific cases it might be useful to increase fillfactor to 100 at `CREATE INDEX` time as a way of maximizing space utilization. You should only consider this when you are completely sure that the table is static (i.e. that it will never be affected by either inserts or updates). A fillfactor setting of 100 otherwise risks harming performance: even a few updates or inserts will cause a sudden flood of page splits.

The other index methods use fillfactor in different but roughly analogous ways; the default fillfactor varies between methods.

B-tree indexes additionally accept this parameter:

deduplicate_items (boolean)

Controls usage of the B-tree deduplication technique described in Section 60.4.3. Set to `ON` or `OFF` to enable or disable the optimization. (Alternative spellings of `ON` and `OFF` are allowed as described in Section 18.1.) The default is `ON`.

Note

Turning `deduplicate_items` off via `ALTER INDEX` prevents future insertions from triggering deduplication, but does not in itself make existing posting list tuples use the standard tuple representation.

GiST indexes additionally accept this parameter:

buffering (enum)

Determines whether the buffered build technique described in Section 61.4.1 is used to build the index. With `OFF` buffering is disabled, with `ON` it is enabled, and with `AUTO` it is initially disabled, but is turned on on-the-fly once the index size reaches `effective_cache_size`. The default is `AUTO`. Note that if sorted build is possible, it will be used instead of buffered build unless `buffering=ON` is specified.

GIN indexes accept different parameters:

fastupdate (boolean)

This setting controls usage of the fast update technique described in Section 63.4.1. It is a Boolean parameter: `ON` enables fast update, `OFF` disables it. The default is `ON`.

Note

Turning `fastupdate` off via `ALTER INDEX` prevents future insertions from going into the list of pending index entries, but does not in itself flush previous entries. You might want to `VACUUM` the table or call `gin_clean_pending_list` function afterward to ensure the pending list is emptied.

gin_pending_list_limit (integer)

Custom `gin_pending_list_limit` parameter. This value is specified in kilobytes.

BRIN indexes accept different parameters:
CREATE INDEX

pages_per_range (integer)

Defines the number of table blocks that make up one block range for each entry of a BRIN index (see Section 64.1 for more details). The default is 128.

autosummarize (boolean)

Defines whether a summarization run is invoked for the previous page range whenever an insertion is detected on the next one.

Building Indexes Concurrently

Creating an index can interfere with regular operation of a database. Normally Postgres Pro locks the table to be indexed against writes and performs the entire index build with a single scan of the table. Other transactions can still read the table, but if they try to insert, update, or delete rows in the table they will block until the index build is finished. This could have a severe effect if the system is a live production database. Very large tables can take many hours to be indexed, and even for smaller tables, an index build can lock out writers for periods that are unacceptably long for a production system.

Postgres Pro supports building indexes without locking out writes. This method is invoked by specifying the CONCURRENTLY option of CREATE INDEX. When this option is used, Postgres Pro must perform two scans of the table, and in addition it must wait for all existing transactions that could potentially modify or use the index to terminate. Thus this method requires more total work than a standard index build and takes significantly longer to complete. However, since it allows normal operations to continue while the index is built, this method is useful for adding new indexes in a production environment. Of course, the extra CPU and I/O load imposed by the index creation might slow other operations.

In a concurrent index build, the index is actually entered into the system catalogs in one transaction, then two table scans occur in two more transactions. Before each table scan, the index build must wait for existing transactions that have modified the table to terminate. After the second scan, the index build must wait for any transactions that have a snapshot (see Chapter 13) predating the second scan to terminate, including transactions used by any phase of concurrent index builds on other tables, if the indexes involved are partial or have columns that are not simple column references. Then finally the index can be marked ready for use, and the CREATE INDEX command terminates. Even then, however, the index may not be immediately usable for queries: in the worst case, it cannot be used as long as transactions exist that predate the start of the index build.

If a problem arises while scanning the table, such as a deadlock or a uniqueness violation in a unique index, the CREATE INDEX command will fail but leave behind an “invalid” index. This index will be ignored for querying purposes because it might be incomplete; however it will still consume update overhead. The psql \d command will report such an index as INVALID:

```
postgres=# \d tab
Table "public.tab"
  Column | Type   | Collation | Nullable | Default
-----------+---------+-----------+----------+---------
    col    | integer |           |          |
Indexes:
  "idx" btree (col) INVALID
```

The recommended recovery method in such cases is to drop the index and try again to perform CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY. (Another possibility is to rebuild the index with REINDEX INDEX CONCURRENTLY).

Another caveat when building a unique index concurrently is that the uniqueness constraint is already being enforced against other transactions when the second table scan begins. This means that constraint violations could be reported in other queries prior to the index becoming available for use, or even in cases where the index build eventually fails. Also, if a failure does occur in the second scan, the “invalid” index continues to enforce its uniqueness constraint afterwards.

Concurrent builds of expression indexes and partial indexes are supported. Errors occurring in the evaluation of these expressions could cause behavior similar to that described above for unique constraint violations.
Regular index builds permit other regular index builds on the same table to occur simultaneously, but only one concurrent index build can occur on a table at a time. In either case, schema modification of the table is not allowed while the index is being built. Another difference is that a regular `CREATE INDEX` command can be performed within a transaction block, but `CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY` cannot.

Concurrent builds for indexes on partitioned tables are currently not supported. However, you may concurrently build the index on each partition individually and then finally create the partitioned index non-concurrently in order to reduce the time where writes to the partitioned table will be locked out. In this case, building the partitioned index is a metadata only operation.

**Notes**

See Chapter 11 for information about when indexes can be used, when they are not used, and in which particular situations they can be useful.

Currently, only the B-tree, GiST, GIN, and BRIN index methods support multiple-key-column indexes. Whether there can be multiple key columns is independent of whether `INCLUDE` columns can be added to the index. Indexes can have up to 32 columns, including `INCLUDE` columns. (This limit can be altered when building Postgres Pro.) Only B-tree currently supports unique indexes.

An **operator class** with optional parameters can be specified for each column of an index. The operator class identifies the operators to be used by the index for that column. For example, a B-tree index on four-byte integers would use the `int4_ops` class; this operator class includes comparison functions for four-byte integers. In practice the default operator class for the column's data type is usually sufficient. The main point of having operator classes is that for some data types, there could be more than one meaningful ordering. For example, we might want to sort a complex-number data type either by absolute value or by real part. We could do this by defining two operator classes for the data type and then selecting the proper class when creating an index. More information about operator classes is in Section 11.10 and in Section 36.16.

When `CREATE INDEX` is invoked on a partitioned table, the default behavior is to recurse to all partitions to ensure they all have matching indexes. Each partition is first checked to determine whether an equivalent index already exists, and if so, that index will become attached as a partition index to the index being created, which will become its parent index. If no matching index exists, a new index will be created and automatically attached; the name of the new index in each partition will be determined as if no index name had been specified in the command. If the `ONLY` option is specified, no recursion is done, and the index is marked invalid. (`ALTER INDEX ... ATTACH PARTITION` marks the index valid, once all partitions acquire matching indexes.) Note, however, that any partition that is created in the future using `CREATE TABLE ... PARTITION OF` will automatically have a matching index, regardless of whether `ONLY` is specified.

For index methods that support ordered scans (currently, only B-tree), the optional clauses `ASC`, `DESC`, `NULLS FIRST`, and/or `NULLS LAST` can be specified to modify the sort ordering of the index. Since an ordered index can be scanned either forward or backward, it is not normally useful to create a single-column `DESC` index — that sort ordering is already available with a regular index. The value of these options is that multicolum indexes can be created that match the sort ordering requested by a mixed-ordering query, such as `SELECT ... ORDER BY x ASC, y DESC`. The `NULLS` options are useful if you need to support “nulls sort low” behavior, rather than the default “nulls sort high”, in queries that depend on indexes to avoid sorting steps.

The system regularly collects statistics on all of a table's columns. Newly-created non-expression indexes can immediately use these statistics to determine an index's usefulness. For new expression indexes, it is necessary to run `ANALYZE` or wait for the `autovacuum daemon` to analyze the table to generate statistics for these indexes.

For most index methods, the speed of creating an index is dependent on the setting of `maintenance_work_mem`. Larger values will reduce the time needed for index creation, so long as you don't make it larger than the amount of memory really available, which would drive the machine into swapping.
Postgres Pro can build indexes while leveraging multiple CPUs in order to process the table rows faster. This feature is known as *parallel index build*. For index methods that support building indexes in parallel (currently, only B-tree), `maintenance_work_mem` specifies the maximum amount of memory that can be used by each index build operation as a whole, regardless of how many worker processes were started. Generally, a cost model automatically determines how many worker processes should be requested, if any.

Parallel index builds may benefit from increasing `maintenance_work_mem` where an equivalent serial index build will see little or no benefit. Note that `maintenance_work_mem` may influence the number of worker processes requested, since parallel workers must have at least a 32MB share of the total `maintenance_work_mem` budget. There must also be a remaining 32MB share for the leader process. Increasing `max_parallel_maintenance_workers` may allow more workers to be used, which will reduce the time needed for index creation, so long as the index build is not already I/O bound. Of course, there should also be sufficient CPU capacity that would otherwise lie idle.

Setting a value for `parallel_workers` via `ALTER TABLE` directly controls how many parallel worker processes will be requested by a `CREATE INDEX` against the table. This bypasses the cost model completely, and prevents `maintenance_work_mem` from affecting how many parallel workers are requested. Setting `parallel_workers` to 0 via `ALTER TABLE` will disable parallel index builds on the table in all cases.

**Tip**

You might want to reset `parallel_workers` after setting it as part of tuning an index build. This avoids inadvertent changes to query plans, since `parallel_workers` affects all parallel table scans.

While `CREATE INDEX` with the `CONCURRENTLY` option supports parallel builds without special restrictions, only the first table scan is actually performed in parallel.

Use `DROP INDEX` to remove an index.

Like any long-running transaction, `CREATE INDEX` on a table can affect which tuples can be removed by concurrent `VACUUM` on any other table. Excepted from this are operations with the `CONCURRENTLY` option for indexes that are not partial and do not index any expressions.

Prior releases of Postgres Pro also had an R-tree index method. This method has been removed because it had no significant advantages over the GiST method. If `USING rtree` is specified, `CREATE INDEX` will interpret it as `USING gist`, to simplify conversion of old databases to GiST.

Each backend running `CREATE INDEX` will report its progress in the `pg_stat_progress_create_index` view. See [Section 26.4.2](#) for details.

**Examples**

To create a unique B-tree index on the column `title` in the table `films`:

```sql
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX title_idx ON films (title);
```

To create a unique B-tree index on the column `title` with included columns `director` and `rating` in the table `films`:

```sql
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX title_idx ON films (title) INCLUDE (director, rating);
```

To create a B-Tree index with deduplication disabled:

```sql
CREATE INDEX title_idx ON films (title) WITH (deduplicate_items = off);
```

To create an index on the expression `lower(title)`, allowing efficient case-insensitive searches:

```sql
CREATE INDEX ON films ((lower(title)));
```
(In this example we have chosen to omit the index name, so the system will choose a name, typically films_lower_idx.)

To create an index with non-default collation:

```
CREATE INDEX title_idx_german ON films (title COLLATE "de_DE");
```

To create an index with non-default sort ordering of nulls:

```
CREATE INDEX title_idx_nulls_low ON films (title NULLS FIRST);
```

To create an index with non-default fill factor:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX title_idx ON films (title) WITH (fillfactor = 70);
```

To create a GIN index with fast updates disabled:

```
CREATE INDEX gin_idx ON documents_table USING GIN (locations) WITH (fastupdate = off);
```

To create an index on the column code in the table films and have the index reside in the tablespace indexspace:

```
CREATE INDEX code_idx ON films (code) TABLESPACE indexspace;
```

To create a GiST index on a point attribute so that we can efficiently use box operators on the result of the conversion function:

```
CREATE INDEX pointloc
    ON points USING gist (box(location,location));
SELECT *
    FROM points
    WHERE box(location,location) && '(0,0),(1,1)':::box;
```

To create an index without locking out writes to the table:

```
CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY sales_quantity_index ON sales_table (quantity);
```

**Compatibility**

CREATE INDEX is a Postgres Pro language extension. There are no provisions for indexes in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

ALTER INDEX, DROP INDEX, REINDEX, Section 26.4.2
CREATE LANGUAGE

CREATE LANGUAGE — define a new procedural language

Synopsis

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ TRUSTED ] [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE name
HANDLER call_handler [ INLINE inline_handler ] [ VALIDATOR valfunction ]
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ TRUSTED ] [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE name

Description

CREATE LANGUAGE registers a new procedural language with a Postgres Pro database. Subsequently, functions and procedures can be defined in this new language.

CREATE LANGUAGE effectively associates the language name with handler function(s) that are responsible for executing functions written in the language. Refer to Chapter 52 for more information about language handlers.

CREATE OR REPLACE LANGUAGE will either create a new language, or replace an existing definition. If the language already exists, its parameters are updated according to the command, but the language’s ownership and permissions settings do not change, and any existing functions written in the language are assumed to still be valid.

One must have the Postgres Pro superuser privilege to register a new language or change an existing language's parameters. However, once the language is created it is valid to assign ownership of it to a non-superuser, who may then drop it, change its permissions, rename it, or assign it to a new owner. (Do not, however, assign ownership of the underlying C functions to a non-superuser; that would create a privilege escalation path for that user.)

The form of CREATE LANGUAGE that does not supply any handler function is obsolete. For backwards compatibility with old dump files, it is interpreted as CREATE EXTENSION. That will work if the language has been packaged into an extension of the same name, which is the conventional way to set up procedural languages.

Parameters

TRUSTED

TRUSTED specifies that the language does not grant access to data that the user would not otherwise have. If this key word is omitted when registering the language, only users with the Postgres Pro superuser privilege can use this language to create new functions.

PROCEDURAL

This is a noise word.

name

The name of the new procedural language. The name must be unique among the languages in the database.

HANDLER call_handler

call_handler is the name of a previously registered function that will be called to execute the procedural language's functions. The call handler for a procedural language must be written in a compiled language such as C with version 1 call convention and registered with Postgres Pro as a function taking no arguments and returning the language_handler type, a placeholder type that is simply used to identify the function as a call handler.
INLINE inline_handler

`inline_handler` is the name of a previously registered function that will be called to execute an anonymous code block (DO command) in this language. If no `inline_handler` function is specified, the language does not support anonymous code blocks. The handler function must take one argument of type `internal`, which will be the DO command's internal representation, and it will typically return `void`. The return value of the handler is ignored.

VALIDATOR valfunction

`valfunction` is the name of a previously registered function that will be called when a new function in the language is created, to validate the new function. If no validator function is specified, then a new function will not be checked when it is created. The validator function must take one argument of type `oid`, which will be the OID of the to-be-created function, and will typically return `void`.

A validator function would typically inspect the function body for syntactical correctness, but it can also look at other properties of the function, for example if the language cannot handle certain argument types. To signal an error, the validator function should use the `ereport()` function. The return value of the function is ignored.

Notes

Use `DROP LANGUAGE` to drop procedural languages.

The system catalog `pg_language` (see Section 50.29) records information about the currently installed languages. Also, the psql command `\dL` lists the installed languages.

To create functions in a procedural language, a user must have the `USAGE` privilege for the language. By default, `USAGE` is granted to `PUBLIC` (i.e., everyone) for trusted languages. This can be revoked if desired.

Procedural languages are local to individual databases. However, a language can be installed into the `template1` database, which will cause it to be available automatically in all subsequently-created databases.

Examples

A minimal sequence for creating a new procedural language is:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION plsample_call_handler() RETURNS language_handler AS '$libdir/plsample' LANGUAGE C;
CREATE LANGUAGE plsample HANDLER plsample_call_handler;
```

Typically that would be written in an extension's creation script, and users would do this to install the extension:

```sql
CREATE EXTENSION plsample;
```

Compatibility

`CREATE LANGUAGE` is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

`ALTER LANGUAGE`, `CREATE FUNCTION`, `DROP LANGUAGE`, `GRANT`, `REVOKE`
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW — define a new materialized view

Synopsis

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
[ ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING method ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
[ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
AS query
[ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]

Description

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW defines a materialized view of a query. The query is executed and used to populate the view at the time the command is issued (unless WITH NO DATA is used) and may be refreshed later using REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW.

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW is similar to CREATE TABLE AS, except that it also remembers the query used to initialize the view, so that it can be refreshed later upon demand. A materialized view has many of the same properties as a table, but there is no support for temporary materialized views.

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW requires CREATE privilege on the schema used for the materialized view.

Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a materialized view with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing materialized view is anything like the one that would have been created.

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the materialized view to be created.

column_name

The name of a column in the new materialized view. If column names are not provided, they are taken from the output column names of the query.

USING method

This optional clause specifies the table access method to use to store the contents for the new materialized view; the method needs be an access method of type TABLE. See Chapter 57 for more information. If this option is not specified, the default table access method is chosen for the new materialized view. See default_table_access_method for more information.

WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )

This clause specifies optional storage parameters for the new materialized view; see Storage Parameters in the CREATE TABLE documentation for more information. All parameters supported for CREATE TABLE are also supported for CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW. See CREATE TABLE for more information.

TABLESPACE tablespace_name

The tablespace_name is the name of the tablespace in which the new materialized view is to be created. If not specified, default_tablespace is consulted.
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW

query
A SELECT, TABLE, or VALUES command. This query will run within a security-restricted operation; in particular, calls to functions that themselves create temporary tables will fail.

WITH [ NO ] DATA
This clause specifies whether or not the materialized view should be populated at creation time. If not, the materialized view will be flagged as unscannable and cannot be queried until REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW is used.

Compatibility
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, CREATE TABLE AS, CREATE VIEW, DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW, REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW
CREATE OPERATOR

CREATE OPERATOR — define a new operator

Synopsis

CREATE OPERATOR name (  
  (FUNCTION|PROCEDURE) = function_name  
  [, LEFTARG = left_type ] [, RIGHTARG = right_type ]  
  [, COMMUTATOR = com_op ] [, NEGATOR = neg_op ]  
  [, RESTRICT = res_proc ] [, JOIN = join_proc ]  
  [, HASHES ] [, MERGES ]  
)

Description

CREATE OPERATOR defines a new operator, name. The user who defines an operator becomes its owner. If a schema name is given then the operator is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

The operator name is a sequence of up to NAMEDATALEN-1 (63 by default) characters from the following list:

+ - * / < > = ~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?

There are a few restrictions on your choice of name:

• -- and /* cannot appear anywhere in an operator name, since they will be taken as the start of a comment.

• A multicharacter operator name cannot end in + or -, unless the name also contains at least one of these characters:

  ~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?

  For example, @- is an allowed operator name, but *- is not. This restriction allows Postgres Pro to parse SQL-compliant commands without requiring spaces between tokens.

• The use of => as an operator name is deprecated. It may be disallowed altogether in a future release.

The operator != is mapped to <> on input, so these two names are always equivalent.

For binary operators, both LEFTARG and RIGHTARG must be defined. For prefix operators only RIGHTARG should be defined. The function_name function must have been previously defined using CREATE FUNCTION and must be defined to accept the correct number of arguments (either one or two) of the indicated types.

In the syntax of CREATE OPERATOR, the keywords FUNCTION and PROCEDURE are equivalent, but the referenced function must in any case be a function, not a procedure. The use of the keyword PROCEDURE here is historical and deprecated.

The other clauses specify optional operator optimization clauses. Their meaning is detailed in Section 36.15.

To be able to create an operator, you must have USAGE privilege on the argument types and the return type, as well as EXECUTE privilege on the underlying function. If a commutator or negator operator is specified, you must own these operators.
CREATE OPERATOR

Parameters

name
- The name of the operator to be defined. See above for allowable characters. The name can be schema-qualified, for example CREATE OPERATOR myschema.+ (...). If not, then the operator is created in the current schema. Two operators in the same schema can have the same name if they operate on different data types. This is called overloading.

function_name
- The function used to implement this operator.

left_type
- The data type of the operator's left operand, if any. This option would be omitted for a prefix operator.

right_type
- The data type of the operator's right operand.

com_op
- The commutator of this operator.

neg_op
- The negator of this operator.

res_proc
- The restriction selectivity estimator function for this operator.

join_proc
- The join selectivity estimator function for this operator.

HASHES
- Indicates this operator can support a hash join.

MERGES
- Indicates this operator can support a merge join.

To give a schema-qualified operator name in com_op or the other optional arguments, use the OPERATOR() syntax, for example:

```
COMPUTATOR = OPERATOR(myschema.===),
```

Notes

Refer to Section 36.14 for further information.

It is not possible to specify an operator's lexical precedence in CREATE OPERATOR, because the parser's precedence behavior is hard-wired. See Section 4.1.6 for precedence details.

The obsolete options SORT1, SORT2, LTCMP, and GTCMP were formerly used to specify the names of sort operators associated with a merge-joinable operator. This is no longer necessary, since information about associated operators is found by looking at B-tree operator families instead. If one of these options is given, it is ignored except for implicitly setting MERGES true.

Use DROP OPERATOR to delete user-defined operators from a database. Use ALTER OPERATOR to modify operators in a database.
CREATE OPERATOR

Examples

The following command defines a new operator, area-equality, for the data type box:

```
CREATE OPERATOR === (
    LEFTARG = box,
    RIGHTARG = box,
    FUNCTION = area_equal_function,
    COMMUTATOR = ===,
    NEGATOR = !==,
    RESTRICT = area_restriction_function,
    JOIN = area_join_function,
    HASHES, MERGES
);
```

Compatibility

CREATE OPERATOR is a Postgres Pro extension. There are no provisions for user-defined operators in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER OPERATOR, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS — define a new operator class

Synopsis

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS  name [ DEFAULT ] FOR TYPE  data_type
   USING index_method [ FAMILY family_name ] AS
   {  OPERATOR strategy_number operator_name [ ( op_type, op_type ) ] [ FOR SEARCH | FOR ORDER BY sort_family_name ]
      | FUNCTION support_number [ ( op_type [ , op_type ] ) ] function_name
      ( argument_type [, ...] )
      | STORAGE storage_type
   } [, ... ]

Description

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS  creates a new operator class. An operator class defines how a particular data type can be used with an index. The operator class specifies that certain operators will fill particular roles or "strategies" for this data type and this index method. The operator class also specifies the support functions to be used by the index method when the operator class is selected for an index column. All the operators and functions used by an operator class must be defined before the operator class can be created.

If a schema name is given then the operator class is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Two operator classes in the same schema can have the same name only if they are for different index methods.

The user who defines an operator class becomes its owner. Presently, the creating user must be a superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous operator class definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS  does not presently check whether the operator class definition includes all the operators and functions required by the index method, nor whether the operators and functions form a self-consistent set. It is the user's responsibility to define a valid operator class.

Related operator classes can be grouped into operator families. To add a new operator class to an existing family, specify the FAMILY option in CREATE OPERATOR CLASS. Without this option, the new class is placed into a family named the same as the new class (creating that family if it doesn't already exist).

Refer to Section 36.16 for further information.

Parameters

name

The name of the operator class to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

DEFAULT

If present, the operator class will become the default operator class for its data type. At most one operator class can be the default for a specific data type and index method.

data_type

The column data type that this operator class is for.

index_method

The name of the index method this operator class is for.
family_name

The name of the existing operator family to add this operator class to. If not specified, a family named the same as the operator class is used (creating it, if it doesn't already exist).

strategy_number

The index method's strategy number for an operator associated with the operator class.

operator_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an operator associated with the operator class.

op_type

In an OPERATOR clause, the operand data type(s) of the operator, or NONE to signify a prefix operator. The operand data types can be omitted in the normal case where they are the same as the operator class's data type.

In a FUNCTION clause, the operand data type(s) the function is intended to support, if different from the input data type(s) of the function (for B-tree comparison functions and hash functions) or the class's data type (for B-tree sort support functions, B-tree equal image functions, and all functions in GiST, SP-GiST, GIN and BRIN operator classes). These defaults are correct, and so op_type need not be specified in FUNCTION clauses, except for the case of a B-tree sort support function that is meant to support cross-data-type comparisons.

sort_family_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing btree operator family that describes the sort ordering associated with an ordering operator.

If neither FOR SEARCH nor FOR ORDER BY is specified, FOR SEARCH is the default.

support_number

The index method's support function number for a function associated with the operator class.

function_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a function that is an index method support function for the operator class.

argument_type

The parameter data type(s) of the function.

storage_type

The data type actually stored in the index. Normally this is the same as the column data type, but some index methods (currently GiST, GIN, SP-GiST and BRIN) allow it to be different. The STORAGE clause must be omitted unless the index method allows a different type to be used. If the column data_type is specified as anyarray, the storage_type can be declared as anyelement to indicate that the index entries are members of the element type belonging to the actual array type that each particular index is created for.

The OPERATOR, FUNCTION, and STORAGE clauses can appear in any order.

Notes

Because the index machinery does not check access permissions on functions before using them, including a function or operator in an operator class is tantamount to granting public execute permission on it. This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in an operator class.

The operators should not be defined by SQL functions. An SQL function is likely to be inlined into the calling query, which will prevent the optimizer from recognizing that the query matches an index.
Before PostgreSQL 8.4, the `OPERATOR` clause could include a `RECHECK` option. This is no longer supported because whether an index operator is “lossy” is now determined on-the-fly at run time. This allows efficient handling of cases where an operator might or might not be lossy.

**Examples**

The following example command defines a GiST index operator class for the data type \texttt{_int4} (array of \texttt{int4}). See the \texttt{intarray} module for the complete example.

```sql
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS gist__int_ops DEFAULT FOR TYPE _int4 USING gist AS
  OPERATOR          3       &&,
  OPERATOR          6       = (anyarray, anyarray),
  OPERATOR          7       @>,
  OPERATOR          8       <@,
  OPERATOR          20      @@ (_int4, query_int),
  FUNCTION         1       g_int_consistent (internal, _int4, smallint, oid, internal),
  FUNCTION         2       g_int_union (internal, internal),
  FUNCTION         3       g_int_compress (internal),
  FUNCTION         4       g_int_decompress (internal),
  FUNCTION         5       g_int_penalty (internal, _int4, _int4, smallint, oid, internal),
  FUNCTION         6       g_int_picksplit (internal, internal),
  FUNCTION         7       g_int_same (_int4, _int4, internal);
```

**Compatibility**

`CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` is a Postgres Pro extension. There is no `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` statement in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

`ALTER OPERATOR CLASS`, `DROP OPERATOR CLASS`, `CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY`, `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY`
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY

CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY — define a new operator family

Synopsis

CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method

Description

CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY creates a new operator family. An operator family defines a collection of related operator classes, and perhaps some additional operators and support functions that are compatible with these operator classes but not essential for the functioning of any individual index. (Operators and functions that are essential to indexes should be grouped within the relevant operator class, rather than being “loose” in the operator family. Typically, single-data-type operators are bound to operator classes, while cross-data-type operators can be loose in an operator family containing operator classes for both data types.)

The new operator family is initially empty. It should be populated by issuing subsequent CREATE OPERATOR CLASS commands to add contained operator classes, and optionally ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY commands to add “loose” operators and their corresponding support functions.

If a schema name is given then the operator family is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Two operator families in the same schema can have the same name only if they are for different index methods.

The user who defines an operator family becomes its owner. Presently, the creating user must be a superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous operator family definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

Refer to Section 36.16 for further information.

Parameters

name

The name of the operator family to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

index_method

The name of the index method this operator family is for.

Compatibility

CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY is a Postgres Pro extension. There is no CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, DROP OPERATOR FAMILY, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS
CREATE POLICY

CREATE POLICY — define a new row-level security policy for a table

Synopsis

CREATE POLICY name ON table_name
   [ AS { PERMISSED | RESTRICTIVE } ]
   [ FOR { ALL | SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE } ]
   [ TO { role_name | PUBLIC | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER } [, ...] ]
   [ USING ( using_expression ) ]
   [ WITH CHECK ( check_expression ) ]

Description

The CREATE POLICY command defines a new row-level security policy for a table. Note that row-level security must be enabled on the table (using ALTER TABLE ... ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY) in order for created policies to be applied.

A policy grants the permission to select, insert, update, or delete rows that match the relevant policy expression. Existing table rows are checked against the expression specified in USING, while new rows that would be created via INSERT or UPDATE are checked against the expression specified in WITH CHECK. When a USING expression returns true for a given row then that row is visible to the user, while if false or null is returned then the row is not visible. When a WITH CHECK expression returns true for a row then that row is inserted or updated, while if false or null is returned then an error occurs.

For INSERT and UPDATE statements, WITH CHECK expressions are enforced after BEFORE triggers are fired, and before any actual data modifications are made. Thus a BEFORE ROW trigger may modify the data to be inserted, affecting the result of the security policy check. WITH CHECK expressions are enforced before any other constraints.

Policy names are per-table. Therefore, one policy name can be used for many different tables and have a definition for each table which is appropriate to that table.

Policies can be applied for specific commands or for specific roles. The default for newly created policies is that they apply for all commands and roles, unless otherwise specified. Multiple policies may apply to a single command; see below for more details. Table 282 summarizes how the different types of policy apply to specific commands.

For policies that can have both USING and WITH CHECK expressions (ALL and UPDATE), if no WITH CHECK expression is defined, then the USING expression will be used both to determine which rows are visible (normal USING case) and which new rows will be allowed to be added (WITH CHECK case).

If row-level security is enabled for a table, but no applicable policies exist, a “default deny” policy is assumed, so that no rows will be visible or updatable.

Parameters

name

The name of the policy to be created. This must be distinct from the name of any other policy for the table.

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table the policy applies to.

PERMISSED

Specify that the policy is to be created as a permissive policy. All permissive policies which are applicable to a given query will be combined together using the Boolean “OR” operator. By creating
permissive policies, administrators can add to the set of records which can be accessed. Policies are permissive by default.

RESTRICTIVE

Specify that the policy is to be created as a restrictive policy. All restrictive policies which are applicable to a given query will be combined together using the Boolean "AND" operator. By creating restrictive policies, administrators can reduce the set of records which can be accessed as all restrictive policies must be passed for each record.

Note that there needs to be at least one permissive policy to grant access to records before restrictive policies can be usefully used to reduce that access. If only restrictive policies exist, then no records will be accessible. When a mix of permissive and restrictive policies are present, a record is only accessible if at least one of the permissive policies passes, in addition to all the restrictive policies.

command

The command to which the policy applies. Valid options are ALL, SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE. ALL is the default. See below for specifics regarding how these are applied.

role_name

The role(s) to which the policy is to be applied. The default is PUBLIC, which will apply the policy to all roles.

using_expression

Any SQL conditional expression (returning boolean). The conditional expression cannot contain any aggregate or window functions. This expression will be added to queries that refer to the table if row-level security is enabled. Rows for which the expression returns true will be visible. Any rows for which the expression returns false or null will not be visible to the user (in a SELECT), and will not be available for modification (in an UPDATE or DELETE). Such rows are silently suppressed; no error is reported.

check_expression

Any SQL conditional expression (returning boolean). The conditional expression cannot contain any aggregate or window functions. This expression will be used in INSERT and UPDATE queries against the table if row-level security is enabled. Only rows for which the expression evaluates to true will be allowed. An error will be thrown if the expression evaluates to false or null for any of the records inserted or any of the records that result from the update. Note that the check_expression is evaluated against the proposed new contents of the row, not the original contents.

Per-Command Policies

ALL

Using ALL for a policy means that it will apply to all commands, regardless of the type of command. If an ALL policy exists and more specific policies exist, then both the ALL policy and the more specific policy (or policies) will be applied. Additionally, ALL policies will be applied to both the selection side of a query and the modification side, using the USING expression for both cases if only a USING expression has been defined.

As an example, if an UPDATE is issued, then the ALL policy will be applicable both to what the UPDATE will be able to select as rows to be updated (applying the USING expression), and to the resulting updated rows, to check if they are permitted to be added to the table (applying the WITH CHECK expression, if defined, and the USING expression otherwise). If an INSERT or UPDATE command attempts to add rows to the table that do not pass the ALL policy's WITH CHECK expression, the entire command will be aborted.

SELECT

Using SELECT for a policy means that it will apply to SELECT queries and whenever SELECT permissions are required on the relation the policy is defined for. The result is that only those records from the
relation that pass the `SELECT` policy will be returned during a `SELECT` query, and that queries that require `SELECT` permissions, such as `UPDATE`, will also only see those records that are allowed by the `SELECT` policy. A `SELECT` policy cannot have a `WITH CHECK` expression, as it only applies in cases where records are being retrieved from the relation.

**INSERT**

Using `INSERT` for a policy means that it will apply to `INSERT` commands. Rows being inserted that do not pass this policy will result in a policy violation error, and the entire `INSERT` command will be aborted. An `INSERT` policy cannot have a `USING` expression, as it only applies in cases where records are being added to the relation.

Note that `INSERT` with `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` checks `INSERT` policies' `WITH CHECK` expressions only for rows appended to the relation by the `INSERT` path.

**UPDATE**

Using `UPDATE` for a policy means that it will apply to `UPDATE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands, as well as auxiliary `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clauses of `INSERT` commands. Since `UPDATE` involves pulling an existing record and replacing it with a new modified record, `UPDATE` policies accept both a `USING` expression and a `WITH CHECK` expression. The `USING` expression determines which records the `UPDATE` command will see to operate against, while the `WITH CHECK` expression defines which modified rows are allowed to be stored back into the relation.

Any rows whose updated values do not pass the `WITH CHECK` expression will cause an error, and the entire command will be aborted. If only a `USING` clause is specified, then that clause will be used for both `USING` and `WITH CHECK` cases.

Typically an `UPDATE` command also needs to read data from columns in the relation being updated (e.g., in a `WHERE` clause or a `RETURNING` clause, or in an expression on the right hand side of the `SET` clause). In this case, `SELECT` rights are also required on the relation being updated, and the appropriate `SELECT` or `ALL` policies will be applied in addition to the `UPDATE` policies. Thus the user must have access to the row(s) being updated through a `SELECT` or `ALL` policy in addition to being granted permission to update the row(s) via an `UPDATE` or `ALL` policy.

When an `INSERT` command has an auxiliary `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause, if the `UPDATE` path is taken, the row to be updated is first checked against the `USING` expressions of any `UPDATE` policies, and then the new updated row is checked against the `WITH CHECK` expressions. Note, however, that unlike a standalone `UPDATE` command, if the existing row does not pass the `USING` expressions, an error will be thrown (the `UPDATE` path will never be silently avoided).

**DELETE**

Using `DELETE` for a policy means that it will apply to `DELETE` commands. Only rows that pass this policy will be seen by a `DELETE` command. There can be rows that are visible through a `SELECT` that are not available for deletion, if they do not pass the `USING` expression for the `DELETE` policy.

In most cases a `DELETE` command also needs to read data from columns in the relation that it is deleting from (e.g., in a `WHERE` clause or a `RETURNING` clause). In this case, `SELECT` rights are also required on the relation, and the appropriate `SELECT` or `ALL` policies will be applied in addition to the `DELETE` policies. Thus the user must have access to the row(s) being deleted through a `SELECT` or `ALL` policy in addition to being granted permission to delete the row(s) via a `DELETE` or `ALL` policy.

A `DELETE` policy cannot have a `WITH CHECK` expression, as it only applies in cases where records are being deleted from the relation, so that there is no new row to check.
CREATE POLICY

Table 282. Policies Applied by Command Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>SELECT/ALL policy</th>
<th>INSERT/ALL policy</th>
<th>UPDATE/ALL policy</th>
<th>DELETE/ALL policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USING expression</td>
<td>WITH CHECK expression</td>
<td>USING expression</td>
<td>WITH CHECK expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT</td>
<td>Existing row</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT FOR UPDATE/SHARE</td>
<td>Existing row</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Existing row</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSERT</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>New row</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSERT ... RETURNING</td>
<td>New row&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>New row</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE</td>
<td>Existing &amp; new rows&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Existing row</td>
<td>New row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td>Existing row&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Existing row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE</td>
<td>Existing &amp; new rows</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Existing row</td>
<td>New row</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> If read access is required to the existing or new row (for example, a `WHERE` or `RETURNING` clause that refers to columns from the relation).

Application of Multiple Policies

When multiple policies of different command types apply to the same command (for example, `SELECT` and `UPDATE` policies applied to an `UPDATE` command), then the user must have both types of permissions (for example, permission to select rows from the relation as well as permission to update them). Thus the expressions for one type of policy are combined with the expressions for the other type of policy using the `AND` operator.

When multiple policies of the same command type apply to the same command, then there must be at least one `PERMISSIVE` policy granting access to the relation, and all of the `RESTRICTIVE` policies must pass. Thus all the `PERMISSIVE` policy expressions are combined using `OR`, all the `RESTRICTIVE` policy expressions are combined using `AND`, and the results are combined using `AND`. If there are no `PERMISSIVE` policies, then access is denied.

Note that, for the purposes of combining multiple policies, **ALL** policies are treated as having the same type as whichever other type of policy is being applied.

For example, in an `UPDATE` command requiring both `SELECT` and `UPDATE` permissions, if there are multiple applicable policies of each type, they will be combined as follows:

```
expression from RESTRICTIVE SELECT/ALL policy 1
AND
expression from RESTRICTIVE SELECT/ALL policy 2
AND
...
AND
{
  expression from PERMISSIVE SELECT/ALL policy 1
  OR
  expression from PERMISSIVE SELECT/ALL policy 2
  OR
  ...
}
AND
expression from RESTRICTIVE UPDATE/ALL policy 1
AND
expression from RESTRICTIVE UPDATE/ALL policy 2
```
CREATE POLICY

AND

... 
AND

(expression from PERMISSIVE UPDATE/ALL policy 1
OR
expression from PERMISSIVE UPDATE/ALL policy 2
OR
...
)

Notes

You must be the owner of a table to create or change policies for it.

While policies will be applied for explicit queries against tables in the database, they are not applied when the system is performing internal referential integrity checks or validating constraints. This means there are indirect ways to determine that a given value exists. An example of this is attempting to insert a duplicate value into a column that is a primary key or has a unique constraint. If the insert fails then the user can infer that the value already exists. (This example assumes that the user is permitted by policy to insert records which they are not allowed to see.) Another example is where a user is allowed to insert into a table which references another, otherwise hidden table. Existence can be determined by the user inserting values into the referencing table, where success would indicate that the value exists in the referenced table. These issues can be addressed by carefully crafting policies to prevent users from being able to insert, delete, or update records at all which might possibly indicate a value they are not otherwise able to see, or by using generated values (e.g., surrogate keys) instead of keys with external meanings.

Generally, the system will enforce filter conditions imposed using security policies prior to qualifications that appear in user queries, in order to prevent inadvertent exposure of the protected data to user-defined functions which might not be trustworthy. However, functions and operators marked by the system (or the system administrator) as LEAKPROOF may be evaluated before policy expressions, as they are assumed to be trustworthy.

Since policy expressions are added to the user’s query directly, they will be run with the rights of the user running the overall query. Therefore, users who are using a given policy must be able to access any tables or functions referenced in the expression or they will simply receive a permission denied error when attempting to query the table that has row-level security enabled. This does not change how views work, however. As with normal queries and views, permission checks and policies for the tables which are referenced by a view will use the view owner’s rights and any policies which apply to the view owner.

Additional discussion and practical examples can be found in Section 5.8.

Compatibility

CREATE POLICY is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

ALTER POLICY, DROP POLICY, ALTER TABLE
CREATE PROCEDURE

CREATE PROCEDURE — define a new procedure

Synopsis

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] PROCEDURE
  name ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ { DEFAULT | = } default_expr ]
  [, ...] ]
  { LANGUAGE lang_name
  | TRANSFORM { FOR TYPE type_name } [, ...]
  | SET configuration_parameter { TO value | = value | FROM CURRENT }
  | AS 'definition'
  | AS 'obj_file', 'link_symbol'
  | sql_body
  } ...)

Description

CREATE PROCEDURE defines a new procedure. CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE will either create a new procedure, or replace an existing definition. To be able to define a procedure, the user must have the USAGE privilege on the language.

If a schema name is included, then the procedure is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new procedure must not match any existing procedure or function with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, procedures and functions of different argument types can share a name (this is called overloading).

To replace the current definition of an existing procedure, use CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a procedure this way (if you tried, you would actually be creating a new, distinct procedure).

When CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE is used to replace an existing procedure, the ownership and permissions of the procedure do not change. All other procedure properties are assigned the values specified or implied in the command. You must own the procedure to replace it (this includes being a member of the owning role).

The user that creates the procedure becomes the owner of the procedure.

To be able to create a procedure, you must have USAGE privilege on the argument types.

Refer to Section 36.4 for further information on writing procedures.

Parameters

name
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the procedure to create.

argmode
  The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN.

argname
  The name of an argument.

argtype
  The data type(s) of the procedure's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. The argument types can be base, composite, or domain types, or can reference the type of a table column.
CREATE PROCEDURE

Depending on the implementation language it might also be allowed to specify “pseudo-types” such as cstring. Pseudo-types indicate that the actual argument type is either incompletely specified, or outside the set of ordinary SQL data types.

The type of a column is referenced by writing `table_name.column_name%TYPE`. Using this feature can sometimes help make a procedure independent of changes to the definition of a table.

`default_expr`

An expression to be used as default value if the parameter is not specified. The expression has to be coercible to the argument type of the parameter. All input parameters following a parameter with a default value must have default values as well.

`lang_name`

The name of the language that the procedure is implemented in. It can be `sql`, `c`, `internal`, or the name of a user-defined procedural language, e.g., `plpgsql`. The default is `sql` if `sql_body` is specified. Enclosing the name in single quotes is deprecated and requires matching case.

`TRANSFORM { FOR TYPE type_name } [, ... ] }

Lists which transforms a call to the procedure should apply. Transforms convert between SQL types and language-specific data types; see `CREATE TRANSFORM`. Procedural language implementations usually have hardcoded knowledge of the built-in types, so those don’t need to be listed here. If a procedural language implementation does not know how to handle a type and no transform is supplied, it will fall back to a default behavior for converting data types, but this depends on the implementation.

`[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER`

`[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER`

`SECURITY INVOKER` indicates that the procedure is to be executed with the privileges of the user that calls it. That is the default. `SECURITY DEFINER` specifies that the procedure is to be executed with the privileges of the user that owns it.

The key word `EXTERNAL` is allowed for SQL conformance, but it is optional since, unlike in SQL, this feature applies to all procedures not only external ones.

A `SECURITY DEFINER` procedure cannot execute transaction control statements (for example, `COMMIT` and `ROLLBACK`, depending on the language).

`configuration_parameter value`

The `SET` clause causes the specified configuration parameter to be set to the specified value when the procedure is entered, and then restored to its prior value when the procedure exits. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the value of the parameter that is current when `CREATE PROCEDURE` is executed as the value to be applied when the procedure is entered.

If a `SET` clause is attached to a procedure, then the effects of a `SET LOCAL` command executed inside the procedure for the same variable are restricted to the procedure: the configuration parameter's prior value is still restored at procedure exit. However, an ordinary `SET` command (without `LOCAL`) overrides the `SET` clause, much as it would do for a previous `SET LOCAL` command: the effects of such a command will persist after procedure exit, unless the current transaction is rolled back.

If a `SET` clause is attached to a procedure, then that procedure cannot execute transaction control statements (for example, `COMMIT` and `ROLLBACK`, depending on the language).

See `SET` and Chapter 18 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

`definition`

A string constant defining the procedure; the meaning depends on the language. It can be an internal procedure name, the path to an object file, an SQL command, or text in a procedural language.
It is often helpful to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) to write the procedure definition string, rather than the normal single quote syntax. Without dollar quoting, any single quotes or backslashes in the procedure definition must be escaped by doubling them.

**obj_file, link_symbol**

This form of the AS clause is used for dynamically loadable C language procedures when the procedure name in the C language source code is not the same as the name of the SQL procedure. The string obj_file is the name of the shared library file containing the compiled C procedure, and is interpreted as for the LOAD command. The string link_symbol is the procedure's link symbol, that is, the name of the procedure in the C language source code. If the link symbol is omitted, it is assumed to be the same as the name of the SQL procedure being defined.

When repeated CREATE PROCEDURE calls refer to the same object file, the file is only loaded once per session. To unload and reload the file (perhaps during development), start a new session.

**sql_body**

The body of a LANGUAGE SQL procedure. This should be a block

```sql
BEGIN ATOMIC
  statement;
  statement;
  ...
  statement;
END
```

This is similar to writing the text of the procedure body as a string constant (see definition above), but there are some differences: This form only works for LANGUAGE SQL, the string constant form works for all languages. This form is parsed at procedure definition time, the string constant form is parsed at execution time; therefore this form cannot support polymorphic argument types and other constructs that are not resolvable at procedure definition time. This form tracks dependencies between the procedure and objects used in the procedure body, so DROP ... CASCADE will work correctly, whereas the form using string literals may leave dangling procedures. Finally, this form is more compatible with the SQL standard and other SQL implementations.

**Notes**

See CREATE FUNCTION for more details on function creation that also apply to procedures.

Use CALL to execute a procedure.

**Examples**

```sql
CREATE PROCEDURE insert_data(a integer, b integer)
LANGUAGE SQL
AS $$
  INSERT INTO tbl VALUES (a);
  INSERT INTO tbl VALUES (b);
$$;
```

or

```sql
CREATE PROCEDURE insert_data(a integer, b integer)
LANGUAGE SQL
BEGIN ATOMIC
  INSERT INTO tbl VALUES (a);
  INSERT INTO tbl VALUES (b);
END;
```

and call like this:

```sql
CALL insert_data(1, 2);
```
CREATE PROCEDURE

Compatibility

A CREATE PROCEDURE command is defined in the SQL standard. The Postgres Pro implementation can be used in a compatible way but has many extensions. For details see also CREATE FUNCTION.

See Also

ALTER PROCEDURE, DROP PROCEDURE, CALL, CREATE FUNCTION
CREATE PROFILE

CREATE PROFILE — define a new profile

Synopsis

CREATE PROFILE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name [ LIMIT parameter value [ ... ] ]

where parameter can be:

   FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS
   | PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME
   | PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX
   | PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME
   | PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME
   | USER_INACTIVE_TIME
   | FAILED_AUTH_KEEP_TIME
   | PASSWORD_MIN_UNIQUE_CHARS
   | PASSWORD_MIN_LEN
   | PASSWORD_REQUIRE_COMPLEX

CREATE PROFILE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name FROM existing_profile

Description

The CREATE PROFILE command adds a new profile for the Postgres Pro database cluster. You must be a database superuser to use this command.

A profile defines a set of parameters that restrict database usage. In particular, Postgres Pro profiles enforce password management policy for the roles assigned to them. Profiles are defined at the database cluster level, so they apply to all databases in the cluster.

By default, all parameter values of a new profile are set to DEFAULT, which inherits the actual values from the built-in default profile. Initially, the default profile provides no usage restrictions, but it can be changed by the ALTER PROFILE command. The UNLIMITED value indicates that no restrictions apply to a particular parameter.

Once a profile is assigned to a role, all restrictions of this profile apply to this role. All newly created roles have the default profile, unless you explicitly assign a different profile to this role.

Parameters

name

The name of the new profile.

FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS value

Specifies the number of failed login attempts before the role is locked. A superuser can unlock the locked role by running the ALTER ROLE command with the ACCOUNT UNLOCK clause.

Possible values are integers greater than 0, DEFAULT, or UNLIMITED.

PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME value

Specifies for how long an old password cannot be reused. Measured in days. Possible values are real numbers greater than or equal to 0, DEFAULT, or UNLIMITED.
Set this parameter together with `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` as its effect depends on the combination. If both these parameters are set to `UNLIMITED`, there are no restrictions on password reuse. If only one of them is set to `UNLIMITED`, password reuse is always forbidden.

**PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX value**

Specifies the number of password changes required before the current password can be reused. Possible values are integers greater than or equal to 0, `DEFAULT`, or `UNLIMITED`.

Set this parameter together with `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` as its effect depends on the combination. If both these parameters are set to `UNLIMITED`, there are no restrictions on password reuse. If only one of them is set to `UNLIMITED`, password reuse is always forbidden.

**PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME value**

Specifies for how long the password can be used for authentication. Measured in days. Possible values are real numbers, `DEFAULT`, or `UNLIMITED`. The resulting value in seconds must be greater than 0. Once the password expires, all further connections of the corresponding role are rejected. The role can be unlocked with the `ALTER ROLE` command.

If `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` parameter is also set, the specified grace period is added to the password lifetime. During the grace period, the role is prompted to change the password while still allowed to log in.

**PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME value**

Specifies for how long a warning is raised that the password is going to expire while login is still allowed. Measured in days. Possible values are real numbers greater than or equal to 0, `DEFAULT`, or `UNLIMITED`. If `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` parameter is set to `UNLIMITED`, the password life time effectively becomes unlimited.

**USER_INACTIVE_TIME value**

Specifies for how long the user can be inactive since the last login before the role is locked. Measured in days. A superuser can unlock the locked role by running the `ALTER ROLE` command with the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clause. Possible values are real numbers, `DEFAULT`, or `UNLIMITED`. The resulting value in seconds must be greater than 0.

**FAILED_AUTH_KEEP_TIME value**

Specifies for how long the information on the user's first authentication failure is kept. Measured in days. Possible values are real numbers, `DEFAULT`, or `UNLIMITED`. The resulting value in seconds must be greater than 0. When the user attempts to log in after this time interval expires, the failed login attempts counter (see `FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` parameter) is reset and the user is unlocked if they were locked previously due to authentication failures.

**PASSWORD_MIN_UNIQUE_CHARS value**

Specifies minimum number of unique characters for a password. Possible values are integers greater than 0, `DEFAULT`, or `UNLIMITED`.

**PASSWORD_MIN_LEN value**

Specifies minimum number of characters for a password. Possible values are positive integers, `DEFAULT`, or `UNLIMITED`.

**PASSWORD_REQUIRE_COMPLEX [value]**

Specifies whether password complexity is checked. If this check is enabled, a password must meet the following requirements:

- Password contains both letters and non-letter characters
- Password doesn't contain the user name
CREATE PROFILE

Possible values are booleans or DEFAULT. If the parameter is used without a value, it is set as true.

IF NOT EXISTS
Do not throw an error if a profile with the same name already exists.

existing_profile
The name of an existing profile to copy. The new profile will have the same properties as the existing one, but it will be an independent object.

Notes
Use ALTER PROFILE to change the parameter values of a profile, and DROP PROFILE to remove a profile. All the parameters specified by CREATE PROFILE can be modified later by running the ALTER PROFILE command.

Warning
PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME and PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX parameters might not work if the password is passed in an encrypted form during the password change. The \password command of psql encrypts the password (see the section called "Meta-Commands" for details). If the password is MD5 encrypted, it can be checked for equivalence, and PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME or PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX parameters can be applied. But there is no way to check for equivalence for SCRAM-SHA-256 encrypted passwords.

Warning
PASSWORD_MIN_UNIQUE_CHARS, PASSWORD_MIN_LEN, and PASSWORD_REQUIRE_COMPLEX parameters don’t work if the password is passed in an encrypted form during the password change.

Examples
Create a profile admin_profile:
CREATE PROFILE admin_profile
    LIMIT PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX 10
    PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME 30;

Create a role having admin_profile:
CREATE ROLE admin WITH PROFILE admin_profile;

Create a profile from an existing profile:
CREATE PROFILE administrator FROM admin_profile;
This can be convenient to be able to use an existing profile as a template for a new one.

See Also
ALTER PROFILE, DROP PROFILE, CREATE ROLE
CREATE PUBLICATION

CREATE PUBLICATION — define a new publication

Synopsis

CREATE PUBLICATION name
  [ FOR TABLE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [, ...]
  | FOR ALL TABLES ]
  [ WITH ( publication_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]

Description

CREATE PUBLICATION adds a new publication into the current database. The publication name must be distinct from the name of any existing publication in the current database.

A publication is essentially a group of tables whose data changes are intended to be replicated through logical replication. See Section 29.1 for details about how publications fit into the logical replication setup.

Parameters

name
  The name of the new publication.

FOR TABLE
  Specifies a list of tables to add to the publication. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is added to the publication. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are added. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included. This does not apply to a partitioned table, however. The partitions of a partitioned table are always implicitly considered part of the publication, so they are never explicitly added to the publication.

  Only persistent base tables and partitioned tables can be part of a publication. Temporary tables, unlogged tables, foreign tables, materialized views, and regular views cannot be part of a publication.

  When a partitioned table is added to a publication, all of its existing and future partitions are implicitly considered to be part of the publication. So, even operations that are performed directly on a partition are also published via publications that its ancestors are part of.

FOR ALL TABLES
  Marks the publication as one that replicates changes for all tables in the database, including tables created in the future.

WITH ( publication_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )
  This clause specifies optional parameters for a publication. The following parameters are supported:

  publish (string)
    This parameter determines which DML operations will be published by the new publication to the subscribers. The value is comma-separated list of operations. The allowed operations are insert, update, delete, and truncate. The default is to publish all actions, and so the default value for this option is 'insert, update, delete, truncate'.

  publishViaPartitionRoot (boolean)
    This parameter determines whether changes in a partitioned table (or on its partitions) contained in the publication will be published using the identity and schema of the partitioned table rather
CREATE PUBLICATION

than that of the individual partitions that are actually changed; the latter is the default. Enabling
this allows the changes to be replicated into a non-partitioned table or a partitioned table
consisting of a different set of partitions.

If this is enabled, **TRUNCATE** operations performed directly on partitions are not replicated.

**Notes**

If neither **FOR TABLE** nor **FOR ALL TABLES** is specified, then the publication starts out with an empty set
of tables. That is useful if tables are to be added later.

The creation of a publication does not start replication. It only defines a grouping and filtering logic for
future subscribers.

To create a publication, the invoking user must have the **CREATE** privilege for the current database. (Of
course, superusers bypass this check.)

To add a table to a publication, the invoking user must have ownership rights on the table. The **FOR ALL
TABLES** clause requires the invoking user to be a superuser.

The tables added to a publication that publishes **UPDATE** and/or **DELETE** operations must have **REPLICA
IDENTITY** defined. Otherwise those operations will be disallowed on those tables.

For an **INSERT ... ON CONFLICT** command, the publication will publish the operation that actually
results from the command. So depending of the outcome, it may be published as either **INSERT** or **UPDATE**,
or it may not be published at all.

**COPY ... FROM** commands are published as **INSERT** operations.

**DDL** operations are not published.

**Examples**

Create a publication that publishes all changes in two tables:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION mypublication FOR TABLE users, departments;
```

Create a publication that publishes all changes in all tables:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION alltables FOR ALL TABLES;
```

Create a publication that only publishes **INSERT** operations in one table:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION insert_only FOR TABLE mydata
    WITH (publish = 'insert');
```

**Compatibility**

**CREATE PUBLICATION** is a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

**ALTER PUBLICATION, DROP PUBLICATION**
CREATE ROLE

CREATE ROLE — define a new database role

Synopsis

CREATE ROLE name [ [ WITH ] option [ ... ] ]

where option can be:

- SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
- CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
- CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
- INHERIT | NOINHERIT
- LOGIN | NOLOGIN
- REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
- BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
- CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
- [ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
- VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
- IN ROLE role_name [, ...]
- IN GROUP role_name [, ...]
- ROLE role_name [, ...]
- ADMIN role_name [, ...]
- USER role_name [, ...]
- SYSID uid
- PROFILE profile_name

Description

CREATE ROLE adds a new role to a Postgres Pro database cluster. A role is an entity that can own database objects and have database privileges; a role can be considered a “user”, a “group”, or both depending on how it is used. Refer to Chapter 20 and Chapter 19 for information about managing users and authentication. You must have CREATEROLE privilege or be a database superuser to use this command.

Note that roles are defined at the database cluster level, and so are valid in all databases in the cluster.

Parameters

name

The name of the new role.

SUPERUSER
NOSUPERUSER

These clauses determine whether the new role is a “superuser”, who can override all access restrictions within the database. Superuser status is dangerous and should be used only when really needed. You must yourself be a superuser to create a new superuser. If not specified, NOSUPERUSER is the default.

CREATEDB
NOCREATEDB

These clauses define a role’s ability to create databases. If CREATEDB is specified, the role being defined will be allowed to create new databases. Specifying NOCREATEDB will deny a role the ability to create databases. If not specified, NOCREATEDB is the default.
CREATE ROLE

CREATEROLE
NOCREATEROLE

These clauses determine whether a role will be permitted to create new roles (that is, execute CREATE ROLE). A role with CREATEROLE privilege can also alter and drop other roles. If not specified, NOCREATEROLE is the default.

INHERIT
NOINHERIT

These clauses determine whether a role “inherits” the privileges of roles it is a member of. A role with the INHERIT attribute can automatically use whatever database privileges have been granted to all roles it is directly or indirectly a member of. Without INHERIT, membership in another role only grants the ability to SET ROLE to that other role; the privileges of the other role are only available after having done so. If not specified, INHERIT is the default.

LOGIN
NOLOGIN

These clauses determine whether a role is allowed to log in; that is, whether the role can be given as the initial session authorization name during client connection. A role having the LOGIN attribute can be thought of as a user. Roles without this attribute are useful for managing database privileges, but are not users in the usual sense of the word. If not specified, NOLOGIN is the default, except when CREATE ROLE is invoked through its alternative spelling CREATE USER.

REPLICATION
NOREPLICATION

These clauses determine whether a role is a replication role. A role must have this attribute (or be a superuser) in order to be able to connect to the server in replication mode (physical or logical replication) and in order to be able to create or drop replication slots. A role having the REPLICATION attribute is a very highly privileged role, and should only be used on roles actually used for replication. If not specified, NOREPLICATION is the default. You must be a superuser to create a new role having the REPLICATION attribute.

BYPASSRLS
NOBYPASSRLS

These clauses determine whether a role bypasses every row-level security (RLS) policy. NOBYPASSRLS is the default. You must be a superuser to create a new role having the BYPASSRLS attribute.

Note that pg_dump will set row_security to OFF by default, to ensure all contents of a table are dumped out. If the user running pg_dump does not have appropriate permissions, an error will be returned. However, superusers and the owner of the table being dumped always bypass RLS.

CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit

If role can log in, this specifies how many concurrent connections the role can make. -1 (the default) means no limit. Note that only normal connections are counted towards this limit. Neither prepared transactions nor background worker connections are counted towards this limit.

[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password'
PASSWORD NULL

Sets the role’s password. (A password is only of use for roles having the LOGIN attribute, but you can nonetheless define one for roles without it.) If you do not plan to use password authentication you can omit this option. If no password is specified, the password will be set to null and password authentication will always fail for that user. A null password can optionally be written explicitly as PASSWORD NULL.

Note

Specifying an empty string will also set the password to null, but that was not the case before Postgres Pro version 10. In earlier versions, an empty string could be used, or not, depending
CREATE ROLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Context</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on the authentication method and the exact version, and libpq would refuse to use it in any case. To avoid the ambiguity, specifying an empty string should be avoided.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The password is always stored encrypted in the system catalogs. The <code>ENCRYPTED</code> keyword has no effect, but is accepted for backwards compatibility. The method of encryption is determined by the configuration parameter <code>password_encryption</code>. If the presented password string is already in MD5-encrypted or SCRAM-encrypted format, then it is stored as-is regardless of <code>password_encryption</code> (since the system cannot decrypt the specified encrypted password string, to encrypt it in a different format). This allows reloading of encrypted passwords during dump/restore.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <code>VALID UNTIL</code> clause sets a date and time after which the role's password is no longer valid. If this clause is omitted the password will be valid for all time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN ROLE role_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <code>IN ROLE</code> clause lists one or more existing roles to which the new role will be immediately added as a new member. (Note that there is no option to add the new role as an administrator; use a separate <code>GRANT</code> command to do that.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN GROUP role_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <code>IN GROUP</code> clause lists one or more existing roles which are automatically added as members of the new role. (This in effect makes the new role a “group”.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROLE role_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <code>ROLE</code> clause lists one or more existing roles which are automatically added as members of the new role. (This in effect makes the new role a “group”.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMIN role_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <code>ADMIN</code> clause is like <code>ROLE</code>, but the named roles are added to the new role with <code>ADMIN OPTION</code>, giving them the right to grant membership in this role to others.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER role_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <code>USER</code> clause is an obsolete spelling of the <code>ROLE</code> clause.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSID uid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <code>SYSID</code> clause is ignored, but is accepted for backwards compatibility.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROFILE profile_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sets the role's profile. If this clause is omitted, the default profile is assigned to a role (see <code>CREATE PROFILE</code> for details).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

- Use `ALTER ROLE` to change the attributes of a role, and `DROP ROLE` to remove a role. All the attributes specified by `CREATE ROLE` can be modified by later `ALTER ROLE` commands.
- The preferred way to add and remove members of roles that are being used as groups is to use `GRANT` and `REVOKE`.
- The `VALID UNTIL` clause defines an expiration time for a password only, not for the role per se. In particular, the expiration time is not enforced when logging in using a non-password-based authentication method.
- The `INHERIT` attribute governs inheritance of grantable privileges (that is, access privileges for database objects and role memberships). It does not apply to the special role attributes set by `CREATE ROLE` and
CREATE ROLE

ALTER ROLE. For example, being a member of a role with CREATEDB privilege does not immediately grant the ability to create databases, even if INHERIT is set; it would be necessary to become that role via SET ROLE before creating a database.

The INHERIT attribute is the default for reasons of backwards compatibility: in prior releases of Postgres Pro, users always had access to all privileges of groups they were members of. However, NOINHERIT provides a closer match to the semantics specified in the SQL standard.

Be careful with the CREATEROLE privilege. There is no concept of inheritance for the privileges of a CREATEROLE-role. That means that even if a role does not have a certain privilege but is allowed to create other roles, it can easily create another role with different privileges than its own (except for creating roles with superuser privileges). For example, if the role “user” has the CREATEROLE privilege but not the CREATEDB privilege, nonetheless it can create a new role with the CREATEDB privilege. Therefore, regard roles that have the CREATEROLE privilege as almost-superuser-roles.

Postgres Pro includes a program createuser that has the same functionality as CREATE ROLE (in fact, it calls this command) but can be run from the command shell.

The CONNECTION LIMIT option is only enforced approximately; if two new sessions start at about the same time when just one connection “slot” remains for the role, it is possible that both will fail. Also, the limit is never enforced for superusers.

Caution must be exercised when specifying an unencrypted password with this command. The password will be transmitted to the server in cleartext, and it might also be logged in the client’s command history or the server log. The command createuser, however, transmits the password encrypted. Also, psql contains a command \password that can be used to safely change the password later.

Examples

Create a role that can log in, but don't give it a password:

CREATE ROLE jonathan LOGIN;

Create a role with a password:

CREATE USER davide WITH PASSWORD 'jw8s0F4';

(CREATE USER is the same as CREATE ROLE except that it implies LOGIN.)

Create a role with a profile:

CREATE ROLE davide WITH PROFILE admin_profile;

Create a role with a password that is valid until the end of 2004. After one second has ticked in 2005, the password is no longer valid.

CREATE ROLE miriam WITH LOGIN PASSWORD 'jw8s0F4' VALID UNTIL '2005-01-01';

Create a role that can create databases and manage roles:

CREATE ROLE admin WITH CREATEDB CREATEROLE;

Compatibility

The CREATE ROLE statement is in the SQL standard, but the standard only requires the syntax

CREATE ROLE name [ WITH ADMIN role_name ]

Multiple initial administrators, and all the other options of CREATE ROLE, are Postgres Pro extensions.

The SQL standard defines the concepts of users and roles, but it regards them as distinct concepts and leaves all commands defining users to be specified by each database implementation. In Postgres Pro we have chosen to unify users and roles into a single kind of entity. Roles therefore have many more optional attributes than they do in the standard.
The behavior specified by the SQL standard is most closely approximated by giving users the `NOINHERIT` attribute, while roles are given the `INHERIT` attribute.

**See Also**

`SET ROLE`, `ALTER ROLE`, `DROP ROLE`, `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, `createuser`, `CREATE PROFILE`
CREATE RULE

CREATE RULE — define a new rewrite rule

Synopsis

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] RULE name AS ON event
to table_name [ WHERE condition ]
do [ ALSO | INSTEAD ] { NOTHING | command | ( command ; command ... ) }

where event can be one of:

SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE

Description

CREATE RULE defines a new rule applying to a specified table or view. CREATE OR REPLACE RULE will either create a new rule, or replace an existing rule of the same name for the same table.

The Postgres Pro rule system allows one to define an alternative action to be performed on insertions, updates, or deletions in database tables. Roughly speaking, a rule causes additional commands to be executed when a given command on a given table is executed. Alternatively, an INSTEAD rule can replace a given command by another, or cause a command not to be executed at all. Rules are used to implement SQL views as well. It is important to realize that a rule is really a command transformation mechanism, or command macro. The transformation happens before the execution of the command starts. If you actually want an operation that fires independently for each physical row, you probably want to use a trigger, not a rule. More information about the rules system is in Chapter 39.

Presently, ON SELECT rules must be unconditional INSTEAD rules and must have actions that consist of a single SELECT command. Thus, an ON SELECT rule effectively turns the table into a view, whose visible contents are the rows returned by the rule’s SELECT command rather than whatever had been stored in the table (if anything). It is considered better style to write a CREATE VIEW command than to create a real table and define an ON SELECT rule for it.

You can create the illusion of an updatable view by defining ON INSERT, ON UPDATE, and ON DELETE rules (or any subset of those that's sufficient for your purposes) to replace update actions on the view with appropriate updates on other tables. If you want to support INSERT RETURNING and so on, then be sure to put a suitable RETURNING clause into each of these rules.

There is a catch if you try to use conditional rules for complex view updates: there must be an unconditional INSTEAD rule for each action you wish to allow on the view. If the rule is conditional, or is not INSTEAD, then the system will still reject attempts to perform the update action, because it thinks it might end up trying to perform the action on the dummy table of the view in some cases. If you want to handle all the useful cases in conditional rules, add an unconditional DO INSTEAD NOTHING rule to ensure that the system understands it will never be called on to update the dummy table. Then make the conditional rules non-INSTEAD; in the cases where they are applied, they add to the default INSTEAD NOTHING action. (This method does not currently work to support RETURNING queries, however.)

Note

A view that is simple enough to be automatically updatable (see CREATE VIEW) does not require a user-created rule in order to be updatable. While you can create an explicit rule anyway, the automatic update transformation will generally outperform an explicit rule.

Another alternative worth considering is to use INSTEAD OF triggers (see CREATE TRIGGER) in place of rules.

1461
CREATE RULE

Parameters

name
The name of a rule to create. This must be distinct from the name of any other rule for the same table. Multiple rules on the same table and same event type are applied in alphabetical name order.

event
The event is one of SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. Note that an INSERT containing an ON CONFLICT clause cannot be used on tables that have either INSERT or UPDATE rules. Consider using an updatable view instead.
table_name
The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view the rule applies to.
condition
Any SQL conditional expression (returning boolean). The condition expression cannot refer to any tables except NEW and OLD, and cannot contain aggregate functions.

INSTEAD

INSTEAD indicates that the commands should be executed instead of the original command.

ALSO

ALSO indicates that the commands should be executed in addition to the original command.

If neither ALSO nor INSTEAD is specified, ALSO is the default.

command
The command or commands that make up the rule action. Valid commands are SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or NOTIFY.

Within condition and command, the special table names NEW and OLD can be used to refer to values in the referenced table. NEW is valid in ON INSERT and ON UPDATE rules to refer to the new row being inserted or updated. OLD is valid in ON UPDATE and ON DELETE rules to refer to the existing row being updated or deleted.

Notes

You must be the owner of a table to create or change rules for it.

In a rule for INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE on a view, you can add a RETURNING clause that emits the view's columns. This clause will be used to compute the outputs if the rule is triggered by an INSERT RETURNING, UPDATE RETURNING, or DELETE RETURNING command respectively. When the rule is triggered by a command without RETURNING, the rule's RETURNING clause will be ignored. The current implementation allows only unconditional INSTEAD rules to contain RETURNING; furthermore there can be at most one RETURNING clause among all the rules for the same event. (This ensures that there is only one candidate RETURNING clause to be used to compute the results.) RETURNING queries on the view will be rejected if there is no RETURNING clause in any available rule.

It is very important to take care to avoid circular rules. For example, though each of the following two rule definitions are accepted by Postgres Pro, the SELECT command would cause Postgres Pro to report an error because of recursive expansion of a rule:

```
CREATE RULE ".RETURN" AS
  ON SELECT TO t1
  DO INSTEAD
    SELECT * FROM t2;
```
CREATE RULE ".RETURN" AS
    ON SELECT TO t2
    DO INSTEAD
        SELECT * FROM t1;

SELECT * FROM t1;

Presently, if a rule action contains a NOTIFY command, the NOTIFY command will be executed unconditionally, that is, the NOTIFY will be issued even if there are not any rows that the rule should apply to. For example, in:

CREATE RULE notify_me AS ON UPDATE TO mytable DO ALSO NOTIFY mytable;

UPDATE mytable SET name = 'foo' WHERE id = 42;

one NOTIFY event will be sent during the UPDATE, whether or not there are any rows that match the condition id = 42. This is an implementation restriction that might be fixed in future releases.

Compatibility

CREATE RULE is a Postgres Pro language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

See Also

ALTER RULE, DROP RULE
CREATE SCHEMA

CREATE SCHEMA — define a new schema

Synopsis

CREATE SCHEMA schema_name [ AUTHORIZATION role_specification ] [ schema_element [ ... ] ]
CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION role_specification [ schema_element [ ... ] ]
CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS schema_name [ AUTHORIZATION role_specification ]
CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS AUTHORIZATION role_specification

where role_specification can be:

user_name
| CURRENT_ROLE
| CURRENT_USER
| SESSION_USER

Description

CREATE SCHEMA enters a new schema into the current database. The schema name must be distinct from
the name of any existing schema in the current database.

A schema is essentially a namespace: it contains named objects (tables, data types, functions, and
operators) whose names can duplicate those of other objects existing in other schemas. Named objects
are accessed either by “qualifying” their names with the schema name as a prefix, or by setting a search
path that includes the desired schema(s). A CREATE command specifying an unqualified object name
creates the object in the current schema (the one at the front of the search path, which can be determined
with the function current_schema).

Optionally, CREATE SCHEMA can include subcommands to create objects within the new schema. The
subcommands are treated essentially the same as separate commands issued after creating the schema,
except that if the AUTHORIZATION clause is used, all the created objects will be owned by that user.

Parameters

schema_name

The name of a schema to be created. If this is omitted, the user_name is used as the schema name.
The name cannot begin with pg_, as such names are reserved for system schemas.

user_name

The role name of the user who will own the new schema. If omitted, defaults to the user executing
the command. To create a schema owned by another role, you must be a direct or indirect member
of that role, or be a superuser.

schema_element

An SQL statement defining an object to be created within the schema. Currently, only CREATE TABLE,
CREATE VIEW, CREATE INDEX, CREATE SEQUENCE, CREATE TRIGGER and GRANT are accepted as clauses
within CREATE SCHEMA. Other kinds of objects may be created in separate commands after the schema
is created.

IF NOT EXISTS

Do nothing (except issuing a notice) if a schema with the same name already exists. schema_element
subcommands cannot be included when this option is used.
CREATE SCHEMA

Notes

To create a schema, the invoking user must have the CREATE privilege for the current database. (Of course, superusers bypass this check.)

Examples

Create a schema:
CREATE SCHEMA myschema;

Create a schema for user joe; the schema will also be named joe:
CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION joe;

Create a schema named test that will be owned by user joe, unless there already is a schema named test. (It does not matter whether joe owns the pre-existing schema.)
CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS test AUTHORIZATION joe;

Create a schema and create a table and view within it:
CREATE SCHEMA hollywood
CREATE TABLE films (title text, release date, awards text[])
CREATE VIEW winners AS
  SELECT title, release FROM films WHERE awards IS NOT NULL;

Notice that the individual subcommands do not end with semicolons.

The following is an equivalent way of accomplishing the same result:
CREATE SCHEMA hollywood;
CREATE TABLE hollywood.films (title text, release date, awards text[]);
CREATE VIEW hollywood.winners AS
  SELECT title, release FROM hollywood.films WHERE awards IS NOT NULL;

Compatibility

The SQL standard allows a DEFAULT CHARACTER SET clause in CREATE SCHEMA, as well as more subcommand types than are presently accepted by Postgres Pro.

The SQL standard specifies that the subcommands in CREATE SCHEMA can appear in any order. The present Postgres Pro implementation does not handle all cases of forward references in subcommands; it might sometimes be necessary to reorder the subcommands in order to avoid forward references.

According to the SQL standard, the owner of a schema always owns all objects within it. Postgres Pro allows schemas to contain objects owned by users other than the schema owner. This can happen only if the schema owner grants the CREATE privilege on their schema to someone else, or a superuser chooses to create objects in it.

The IF NOT EXISTS option is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

ALTER SCHEMA, DROP SCHEMA
CREATE SEQUENCE

CREATE SEQUENCE — define a new sequence generator

Synopsis

```
CREATE [ TEMPORARY | TEMP ] SEQUENCE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name

[ AS data_type ]
[ INCREMENT [ BY ] increment ]
[ MINVALUE minvalue | NO MINVALUE ] [ MAXVALUE maxvalue | NO MAXVALUE ]
[ START [ WITH ] start ] [ CACHE cache ] [ [ NO ] CYCLE ]
[ OWNED BY { table_name.column_name | NONE } ]
```

Description

CREATE SEQUENCE creates a new sequence number generator. This involves creating and initializing a new special single-row table with the name `name`. The generator will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given then the sequence is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary sequences exist in a special schema, so a schema name cannot be given when creating a temporary sequence. The sequence name must be distinct from the name of any other sequence, table, index, view, or foreign table in the same schema.

After a sequence is created, you use the functions `nextval`, `currval`, and `setval` to operate on the sequence. These functions are documented in Section 9.17.

Although you cannot update a sequence directly, you can use a query like:

```
SELECT * FROM name;
```

to examine the parameters and current state of a sequence. In particular, the `last_value` field of the sequence shows the last value allocated by any session. (Of course, this value might be obsolete by the time it’s printed, if other sessions are actively doing `nextval` calls.)

Parameters

TEMPORARY or TEMP

If specified, the sequence object is created only for this session, and is automatically dropped on session exit. Existing permanent sequences with the same name are not visible (in this session) while the temporary sequence exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names.

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing relation is anything like the sequence that would have been created — it might not even be a sequence.

`name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the sequence to be created.

`data_type`

The optional clause `AS data_type` specifies the data type of the sequence. Valid types are `smallint`, `integer`, and `bigint`. `bigint` is the default. The data type determines the default minimum and maximum values of the sequence.

`increment`

The optional clause `INCREMENT BY increment` specifies which value is added to the current sequence value to create a new value. A positive value will make an ascending sequence, a negative one a descending sequence. The default value is 1.
CREATE SEQUENCE

minvalue
NO MINVALUE

The optional clause MINVALUE minvalue determines the minimum value a sequence can generate. If this clause is not supplied or NO MINVALUE is specified, then defaults will be used. The default for an ascending sequence is 1. The default for a descending sequence is the minimum value of the data type.

maxvalue
NO MAXVALUE

The optional clause MAXVALUE maxvalue determines the maximum value for the sequence. If this clause is not supplied or NO MAXVALUE is specified, then default values will be used. The default for an ascending sequence is the maximum value of the data type. The default for a descending sequence is -1.

start

The optional clause START WITH start allows the sequence to begin anywhere. The default starting value is minvalue for ascending sequences and maxvalue for descending ones.

cache

The optional clause CACHE cache specifies how many sequence numbers are to be preallocated and stored in memory for faster access. The minimum value is 1 (only one value can be generated at a time, i.e., no cache), and this is also the default.

CYCLE
NO CYCLE

The CYCLE option allows the sequence to wrap around when the maxvalue or minvalue has been reached by an ascending or descending sequence respectively. If the limit is reached, the next number generated will be the minvalue or maxvalue, respectively.

If NO CYCLE is specified, any calls to nextval after the sequence has reached its maximum value will return an error. If neither CYCLE or NO CYCLE are specified, NO CYCLE is the default.

OWNED BY table_name.column_name
OWNED BY NONE

The OWNED BY option causes the sequence to be associated with a specific table column, such that if that column (or its whole table) is dropped, the sequence will be automatically dropped as well. The specified table must have the same owner and be in the same schema as the sequence. OWNED BY NONE, the default, specifies that there is no such association.

Notes

Use DROP SEQUENCE to remove a sequence.

Sequences are based on bigint arithmetic, so the range cannot exceed the range of an eight-byte integer (-9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807).

Because nextval and setval calls are never rolled back, sequence objects cannot be used if “gapless” assignment of sequence numbers is needed. It is possible to build gapless assignment by using exclusive locking of a table containing a counter; but this solution is much more expensive than sequence objects, especially if many transactions need sequence numbers concurrently.

Unexpected results might be obtained if a cache setting greater than one is used for a sequence object that will be used concurrently by multiple sessions. Each session will allocate and cache successive sequence values during one access to the sequence object and increase the sequence object’s last_value accordingly. Then, the next cache-1 uses of nextval within that session simply return the
preallocated values without touching the sequence object. So, any numbers allocated but not used within a session will be lost when that session ends, resulting in “holes” in the sequence.

Furthermore, although multiple sessions are guaranteed to allocate distinct sequence values, the values might be generated out of sequence when all the sessions are considered. For example, with a cache setting of 10, session A might reserve values 1..10 and return nextval=1, then session B might reserve values 11..20 and return nextval=11 before session A has generated nextval=2. Thus, with a cache setting of one it is safe to assume that nextval values are generated sequentially; with a cache setting greater than one you should only assume that the nextval values are all distinct, not that they are generated purely sequentially. Also, last_value will reflect the latest value reserved by any session, whether or not it has yet been returned by nextval.

Another consideration is that a setval executed on such a sequence will not be noticed by other sessions until they have used up any preallocated values they have cached.

**Examples**

Create an ascending sequence called serial, starting at 101:

```sql
CREATE SEQUENCE serial START 101;
```

Select the next number from this sequence:

```sql
SELECT nextval('serial');
```

nextval
--------
 101

Select the next number from this sequence:

```sql
SELECT nextval('serial');
```

nextval
--------
 102

Use this sequence in an INSERT command:

```sql
INSERT INTO distributors VALUES (nextval('serial'), 'nothing');
```

Update the sequence value after a COPY FROM:

```sql
BEGIN;
COPY distributors FROM 'input_file';
SELECT setval('serial', max(id)) FROM distributors;
END;
```

**Compatibility**

CREATE SEQUENCE conforms to the SQL standard, with the following exceptions:

- Obtaining the next value is done using the nextval() function instead of the standard’s NEXT VALUE FOR expression.

- The owned by clause is a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

ALTER SEQUENCE, DROP SEQUENCE
CREATE SERVER

CREATE SERVER — define a new foreign server

Synopsis

CREATE SERVER [ IF NOT EXISTS ] server_name [ TYPE 'server_type' ] [ VERSION 'server_version' ]
    FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER fdw_name
    [ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]

Description

CREATE SERVER defines a new foreign server. The user who defines the server becomes its owner.

A foreign server typically encapsulates connection information that a foreign-data wrapper uses to
access an external data resource. Additional user-specific connection information may be specified by
means of user mappings.

The server name must be unique within the database.

Creating a server requires USAGE privilege on the foreign-data wrapper being used.

Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a server with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case.
Note that there is no guarantee that the existing server is anything like the one that would have
been created.

server_name

The name of the foreign server to be created.

server_type

Optional server type, potentially useful to foreign-data wrappers.

server_version

Optional server version, potentially useful to foreign-data wrappers.

fdw_name

The name of the foreign-data wrapper that manages the server.

OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] )

This clause specifies the options for the server. The options typically define the connection details of
the server, but the actual names and values are dependent on the server's foreign-data wrapper.

Notes

When using the dblink module, a foreign server's name can be used as an argument of the dblink_connect
function to indicate the connection parameters. It is necessary to have the USAGE privilege on the foreign
server to be able to use it in this way.

Examples

Create a server myserver that uses the foreign-data wrapper postgres_fdw:
CREATE SERVER myserver FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER postgres_fdw OPTIONS (host 'foo', dbname 'foodb', port '5432');

See postgres_fdw for more details.

Compatibility

CREATE SERVER conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED).

See Also

ALTER SERVER, DROP SERVER, CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE, CREATE USER MAPPING
CREATE STATISTICS

CREATE STATISTICS — define extended statistics

Synopsis

```
CREATE STATISTICS [ IF NOT EXISTS ] statistics_name
    ON ( expression )
    FROM table_name

CREATE STATISTICS [ IF NOT EXISTS ] statistics_name
    [ { statistics_kind [, ... ] } ]
    ON { column_name | ( expression ) }, { column_name | ( expression ) } [, ...]
    FROM table_name
```

Description

CREATE STATISTICS will create a new extended statistics object tracking data about the specified table, foreign table or materialized view. The statistics object will be created in the current database and will be owned by the user issuing the command.

The `CREATE STATISTICS` command has two basic forms. The first form allows univariate statistics for a single expression to be collected, providing benefits similar to an expression index without the overhead of index maintenance. This form does not allow the statistics kind to be specified, since the various statistics kinds refer only to multivariate statistics. The second form of the command allows multivariate statistics on multiple columns and/or expressions to be collected, optionally specifying which statistics kinds to include. This form will also automatically cause univariate statistics to be collected on any expressions included in the list.

If a schema name is given (for example, `CREATE STATISTICS myschema.mystat ...`) then the statistics object is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the statistics object must be distinct from the name of any other statistics object in the same schema.

Parameters

**IF NOT EXISTS**

Do not throw an error if a statistics object with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that only the name of the statistics object is considered here, not the details of its definition.

**statistics_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the statistics object to be created.

**statistics_kind**

A multivariate statistics kind to be computed in this statistics object. Currently supported kinds are `ndistinct`, which enables n-distinct statistics, `dependencies`, which enables functional dependency statistics, and `mcv` which enables most-common values lists. If this clause is omitted, all supported statistics kinds are included in the statistics object. Univariate expression statistics are built automatically if the statistics definition includes any complex expressions rather than just simple column references. For more information, see Section 14.2.2 and Section 67.2.

**column_name**

The name of a table column to be covered by the computed statistics. This is only allowed when building multivariate statistics. At least two column names or expressions must be specified, and their order is not significant.
CREATE STATISTICS

**expression**

An expression to be covered by the computed statistics. This may be used to build univariate statistics on a single expression, or as part of a list of multiple column names and/or expressions to build multivariate statistics. In the latter case, separate univariate statistics are built automatically for each expression in the list.

**table_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table containing the column(s) the statistics are computed on.

**Notes**

You must be the owner of a table to create a statistics object reading it. Once created, however, the ownership of the statistics object is independent of the underlying table(s).

Expression statistics are per-expression and are similar to creating an index on the expression, except that they avoid the overhead of index maintenance. Expression statistics are built automatically for each expression in the statistics object definition.

**Examples**

Create table t1 with two functionally dependent columns, i.e., knowledge of a value in the first column is sufficient for determining the value in the other column. Then functional dependency statistics are built on those columns:

```sql
CREATE TABLE t1 (
    a int,
    b int
);

INSERT INTO t1 SELECT i/100, i/500
    FROM generate_series(1,1000000) s(i);

ANALYZE t1;

-- the number of matching rows will be drastically underestimated:
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE (a = 1) AND (b = 0);

CREATE STATISTICS s1 (dependencies) ON a, b FROM t1;

ANALYZE t1;

-- now the row count estimate is more accurate:
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE (a = 1) AND (b = 0);
```

Without functional-dependency statistics, the planner would assume that the two `WHERE` conditions are independent, and would multiply their selectivities together to arrive at a much-too-small row count estimate. With such statistics, the planner recognizes that the `WHERE` conditions are redundant and does not underestimate the row count.

Create table t2 with two perfectly correlated columns (containing identical data), and an MCV list on those columns:

```sql
CREATE TABLE t2 (
    a int,
    b int
);

INSERT INTO t2 SELECT mod(i,100), mod(i,100)
    FROM generate_series(1,1000000) s(i);
```
CREATE STATISTICS s2 (mcv) ON a, b FROM t2;

ANALYZE t2;

-- valid combination (found in MCV)
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t2 WHERE (a = 1) AND (b = 1);

-- invalid combination (not found in MCV)
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t2 WHERE (a = 1) AND (b = 2);

The MCV list gives the planner more detailed information about the specific values that commonly appear in the table, as well as an upper bound on the selectivities of combinations of values that do not appear in the table, allowing it to generate better estimates in both cases.

Create table t3 with a single timestamp column, and run queries using expressions on that column.

Without extended statistics, the planner has no information about the data distribution for the expressions, and uses default estimates. The planner also does not realize that the value of the date truncated to the month is fully determined by the value of the date truncated to the day. Then expression and ndistinct statistics are built on those two expressions:

CREATE TABLE t3 (a timestamp);

INSERT INTO t3 SELECT i FROM generate_series('2020-01-01'::timestamp,
                                         '2020-12-31'::timestamp,
                                         '1 minute'::interval) s(i);

ANALYZE t3;

-- the number of matching rows will be drastically underestimated:
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t3
   WHERE date_trunc('month', a) = '2020-01-01'::timestamp;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t3
   WHERE date_trunc('day', a) BETWEEN '2020-01-01'::timestamp
                     AND '2020-06-30'::timestamp;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT date_trunc('month', a), date_trunc('day', a)
   FROM t3 GROUP BY 1, 2;

-- build ndistinct statistics on the pair of expressions (per-expression
-- statistics are built automatically)
CREATE STATISTICS s3 (ndistinct) ON date_trunc('month', a), date_trunc('day', a) FROM t3;

ANALYZE t3;

-- now the row count estimates are more accurate:
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t3
   WHERE date_trunc('month', a) = '2020-01-01'::timestamp;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t3
   WHERE date_trunc('day', a) BETWEEN '2020-01-01'::timestamp
                     AND '2020-06-30'::timestamp;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT date_trunc('month', a), date_trunc('day', a)
   FROM t3 GROUP BY 1, 2;
Without expression and ndistinct statistics, the planner has no information about the number of distinct values for the expressions, and has to rely on default estimates. The equality and range conditions are assumed to have 0.5% selectivity, and the number of distinct values in the expression is assumed to be the same as for the column (i.e. unique). This results in a significant underestimate of the row count in the first two queries. Moreover, the planner has no information about the relationship between the expressions, so it assumes the two WHERE and GROUP BY conditions are independent, and multiplies their selectivities together to arrive at a severe overestimate of the group count in the aggregate query. This is further exacerbated by the lack of accurate statistics for the expressions, forcing the planner to use a default ndistinct estimate for the expression derived from ndistinct for the column. With such statistics, the planner recognizes that the conditions are correlated, and arrives at much more accurate estimates.

**Compatibility**

There is no `CREATE STATISTICS` command in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

`ALTER STATISTICS, DROP STATISTICS`
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION — define a new subscription

Synopsis

```
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION subscription_name
  CONNECTION 'conninfo'
  PUBLICATION publication_name [, ...]
  [ WITH ( subscription_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
```

Description

`CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` adds a new subscription for the current database. The subscription name must be distinct from the name of any existing subscription in the database.

The subscription represents a replication connection to the publisher. As such this command does not only add definitions in the local catalogs but also creates a replication slot on the publisher.

A logical replication worker will be started to replicate data for the new subscription at the commit of the transaction where this command is run.

Additional information about subscriptions and logical replication as a whole is available at Section 29.2 and Chapter 29.

Parameters

- `subscription_name`
  The name of the new subscription.

- `CONNECTION 'conninfo'`
  The connection string to the publisher. For details see Section 32.1.1.

- `PUBLICATION publication_name`
  Names of the publications on the publisher to subscribe to.

- `WITH ( subscription_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )`
  This clause specifies optional parameters for a subscription. The following parameters are supported:

  - `copy_data(boolean)`
    Specifies whether the existing data in the publications that are being subscribed to should be copied once the replication starts. The default is `true`.

  - `create_slot(boolean)`
    Specifies whether the command should create the replication slot on the publisher. The default is `true`.

  - `enabled(boolean)`
    Specifies whether the subscription should be actively replicating, or whether it should be just setup but not started yet. The default is `true`.

  - `slot_name(string)`
    Name of the replication slot to use. The default behavior is to use the name of the subscription for the slot name.
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION

When slot_name is set to NONE, there will be no replication slot associated with the subscription. This can be used if the replication slot will be created later manually. Such subscriptions must also have both enabled and create_slot set to false.

synchronous_commit (enum)

The value of this parameter overrides the synchronous_commit setting within this subscription's apply worker processes. The default value is off.

It is safe to use off for logical replication: If the subscriber loses transactions because of missing synchronization, the data will be sent again from the publisher.

A different setting might be appropriate when doing synchronous logical replication. The logical replication workers report the positions of writes and flushes to the publisher, and when using synchronous replication, the publisher will wait for the actual flush. This means that setting synchronous_commit for the subscriber to off when the subscription is used for synchronous replication might increase the latency for COMMIT on the publisher. In this scenario, it can be advantageous to set synchronous_commit to local or higher.

binary (boolean)

Specifies whether the subscription will request the publisher to send the data in binary format (as opposed to text). The default is false. Even when this option is enabled, only data types that have binary send and receive functions will be transferred in binary.

When doing cross-version replication, it could happen that the publisher has a binary send function for some data type, but the subscriber lacks a binary receive function for the type. In such a case, data transfer will fail, and the binary option cannot be used.

connect (boolean)

Specifies whether the CREATE SUBSCRIPTION should connect to the publisher at all. Setting this to false will change default values of enabled, create_slot and copy_data to false.

It is not allowed to combine connect set to false and enabled, create_slot, or copy_data set to true.

Since no connection is made when this option is set to false, the tables are not subscribed, and so after you enable the subscription nothing will be replicated. It is required to run ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... REFRESH PUBLICATION in order for tables to be subscribed.

streaming (boolean)

Specifies whether streaming of in-progress transactions should be enabled for this subscription. By default, all transactions are fully decoded on the publisher, and only then sent to the subscriber as a whole.

Notes

See Section 29.7 for details on how to configure access control between the subscription and the publication instance.

When creating a replication slot (the default behavior), CREATE SUBSCRIPTION cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Creating a subscription that connects to the same database cluster (for example, to replicate between databases in the same cluster or to replicate within the same database) will only succeed if the replication slot is not created as part of the same command. Otherwise, the CREATE SUBSCRIPTION call will hang. To make this work, create the replication slot separately (using the function pg_create_logical_replication_slot with the plugin name pgoutput) and create the subscription using the parameter create_slot = false. This is an implementation restriction that might be lifted in a future release.
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION

Examples

Create a subscription to a remote server that replicates tables in the publications `mypublication` and `insert_only` and starts replicating immediately on commit:

```sql
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION mysub
  CONNECTION 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo dbname=foodb'
  PUBLICATION mypublication, insert_only;
```

Create a subscription to a remote server that replicates tables in the `insert_only` publication and does not start replicating until enabled at a later time.

```sql
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION mysub
  CONNECTION 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo dbname=foodb'
  PUBLICATION insert_only
    WITH (enabled = false);
```

Compatibility

`CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

`ALTER SUBSCRIPTION`, `DROP SUBSCRIPTION`, `CREATE PUBLICATION`, `ALTER PUBLICATION`
CREATE TABLE

CREATE TABLE — define a new table

Synopsis

CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] [ TEMPORARY | TEMP ] | UNLOGGED ] TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name [ ( [ column_name data_type [ COMPRESSION compression_method ] [ COLLATE collation ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ] ]
   | table_constraint
   | LIKE source_table [ like_option ... ] ]
   [, ... ]
]
[ INHERITS ( parent_table [, ... ] ) ]
[ PARTITION BY { RANGE | LIST | HASH } ( { column_name | ( expression ) } [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass ] [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING method ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) | WITHOUT OIDS ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]

CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] [ TEMPORARY | TEMP ] | UNLOGGED ] TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
   OF type_name [ ( [ column_name [ WITH OPTIONS ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ] ]
   | table_constraint
   [, ... ]
)
] [ PARTITION BY { RANGE | LIST | HASH } ( { column_name | ( expression ) } [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass ] [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING method ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) | WITHOUT OIDS ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]

CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] [ TEMPORARY | TEMP ] | UNLOGGED ] TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
   PARTITION OF parent_table [ ( [ column_name [ WITH OPTIONS ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ] ]
   | table_constraint
   [, ... ]
) ] ( FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec | DEFAULT )
[ PARTITION BY { RANGE | LIST | HASH } ( { column_name | ( expression ) } [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass ] [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING method ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) | WITHOUT OIDS ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]

where column_constraint is:

[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
( NOT NULL | NULL | CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ] |
CREATE TABLE

DEFAULT default_expr |
GENERATED ALWAYS AS ( generation_expr ) STORED |
GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT } AS IDENTITY [ ( sequence_options ) ] |
UNIQUE index_parameters |
PRIMARY KEY index_parameters |
REFERENCES reftable [ ( refcolumn ) ] [ MATCH FULL | MATCH PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ]
[ ON DELETE referential_action ] [ ON UPDATE referential_action ]
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]

and table_constraint is:

[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
( CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ] |
UNIQUE ( column_name [, ... ] ) index_parameters |
PRIMARY KEY ( column_name [, ... ] ) index_parameters |
EXCLUDE [ USING index_method ] ( exclude_element WITH operator |
[, ... ] ) index_parameters [ WHERE ( predicate ) ] |
FOREIGN KEY ( column_name [, ... ] ) REFERENCES reftable [ ( refcolumn [, ... ] ) ]
[ MATCH FULL | MATCH PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ] [ ON DELETE referential_action ] [ ON UPDATE referential_action ]
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]

and like_option is:

{ INCLUDING | EXCLUDING } { COMMENTS | COMPRESSION | CONSTRAINTS | DEFAULTS | GENERATED |
IDENTITY | INDEXES | STATISTICS | STORAGE | ALL }

and partition_bound_spec is:

IN ( partition_bound_expr [, ... ] ) |
FROM ( { partition_bound_expr | MINVALUE | MAXVALUE } [, ... ] )
TO ( { partition_bound_expr | MINVALUE | MAXVALUE } [, ... ] ) |
WITH ( MODULUS numeric_literal, REMAINDER numeric_literal )

index_parameters in UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, and EXCLUDE constraints are:

[ INCLUDE ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [ = value ] [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING INDEX TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]

exclude_element in an EXCLUDE constraint is:

{ column_name | ( expression ) } [ opclass ] [ ASC | DESC ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ]

Description

CREATE TABLE will create a new, initially empty table in the current database. The table will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE TABLE myschema.mytable ...) then the table is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary tables exist in a special schema, so a schema name cannot be given when creating a temporary table. The name of the table must be distinct from the name of any other table, sequence, index, view, or foreign table in the same schema.

CREATE TABLE also automatically creates a data type that represents the composite type corresponding to one row of the table. Therefore, tables cannot have the same name as any existing data type in the same schema.
CREATE TABLE

The optional constraint clauses specify constraints (tests) that new or updated rows must satisfy for an insert or update operation to succeed. A constraint is an SQL object that helps define the set of valid values in the table in various ways.

There are two ways to define constraints: table constraints and column constraints. A column constraint is defined as part of a column definition. A table constraint definition is not tied to a particular column, and it can encompass more than one column. Every column constraint can also be written as a table constraint; a column constraint is only a notational convenience for use when the constraint only affects one column.

To be able to create a table, you must have USAGE privilege on all column types or the type in the OF clause, respectively.

**Parameters**

**TEMPORARY or TEMP**

If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Temporary tables are automatically dropped at the end of a session, or optionally at the end of the current transaction (see ON COMMIT below). The default search path includes the temporary schema first and so identically named existing permanent tables are not chosen for new plans while the temporary table exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names. Any indexes created on a temporary table are automatically temporary as well.

The autovacuum daemon cannot access and therefore cannot vacuum or analyze temporary tables. For this reason, appropriate vacuum and analyze operations should be performed via session SQL commands. For example, if a temporary table is going to be used in complex queries, it is wise to run ANALYZE on the temporary table after it is populated.

Optionally, GLOBAL or LOCAL can be written before TEMPORARY or TEMP. This presently makes no difference in Postgres Pro and is deprecated; see Compatibility below.

**UNLOGGED**

If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Data written to unlogged tables is not written to the write-ahead log (see Chapter 28), which makes them considerably faster than ordinary tables. However, they are not crash-safe: an unlogged table is automatically truncated after a crash or unclean shutdown. The contents of an unlogged table are also not replicated to standby servers. Any indexes created on an unlogged table are automatically unlogged as well.

**IF NOT EXISTS**

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing relation is anything like the one that would have been created.

**table_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

**OF type_name**

Creates a typed table, which takes its structure from the specified composite type (name optionally schema-qualified). A typed table is tied to its type; for example the table will be dropped if the type is dropped (with DROP TYPE ... CASCADE).

When a typed table is created, then the data types of the columns are determined by the underlying composite type and are not specified by the CREATE TABLE command. But the CREATE TABLE command can add defaults and constraints to the table and can specify storage parameters.

**column_name**

The name of a column to be created in the new table.
CREATE TABLE

data_type

The data type of the column. This can include array specifiers. For more information on the data types supported by Postgres Pro, refer to Chapter 8.

COLLATE collation

The COLLATE clause assigns a collation to the column (which must be of a collatable data type). If not specified, the column data type's default collation is used.

COMPRESSION compression_method

The COMPRESSION clause sets the compression method for the column. Compression is supported only for variable-width data types, and is used only when the column's storage mode is main or extended. (See ALTER TABLE for information on column storage modes.) Setting this property for a partitioned table has no direct effect, because such tables have no storage of their own, but the configured value will be inherited by newly-created partitions. The supported compression methods are pglz and lz4. (lz4 is available only if --with-lz4 was used when building PostgreSQL.) In addition, compression_method can be default to explicitly specify the default behavior, which is to consult the default_toast_compression setting at the time of data insertion to determine the method to use.

INHERITS ( parent_table [, ... ] )

The optional INHERITS clause specifies a list of tables from which the new table automatically inherits all columns. Parent tables can be plain tables or foreign tables.

Use of INHERITS creates a persistent relationship between the new child table and its parent table(s). Schema modifications to the parent(s) normally propagate to children as well, and by default the data of the child table is included in scans of the parent(s).

If the same column name exists in more than one parent table, an error is reported unless the data types of the columns match in each of the parent tables. If there is no conflict, then the duplicate columns are merged to form a single column in the new table. If the column name list of the new table contains a column name that is also inherited, the data type must likewise match the inherited column(s), and the column definitions are merged into one. If the new table explicitly specifies a default value for the column, this default overrides any defaults from inherited declarations of the column. Otherwise, any parents that specify default values for the column must all specify the same default, or an error will be reported.

CHECK constraints are merged in essentially the same way as columns: if multiple parent tables and/or the new table definition contain identically-named CHECK constraints, these constraints must all have the same check expression, or an error will be reported. Constraints having the same name and expression will be merged into one copy. A constraint marked NO INHERIT in a parent will not be considered. Notice that an unnamed CHECK constraint in the new table will never be merged, since a unique name will always be chosen for it.

Column STORAGE settings are also copied from parent tables.

If a column in the parent table is an identity column, that property is not inherited. A column in the child table can be declared identity column if desired.

PARTITION BY { RANGE | LIST | HASH } ( { column_name | ( expression ) } [ opclass ] [, ... ] )

The optional PARTITION BY clause specifies a strategy of partitioning the table. The table thus created is called a partitioned table. The parenthesized list of columns or expressions forms the partition key for the table. When using range or hash partitioning, the partition key can include multiple columns or expressions (up to 32, but this limit can be altered when building Postgres Pro), but for list partitioning, the partition key must consist of a single column or expression.

Range and list partitioning require a btree operator class, while hash partitioning requires a hash operator class. If no operator class is specified explicitly, the default operator class of the appropriate
type will be used; if no default operator class exists, an error will be raised. When hash partitioning is used, the operator class used must implement support function 2 (see Section 36.16.3 for details).

A partitioned table is divided into sub-tables (called partitions), which are created using separate CREATE TABLE commands. The partitioned table is itself empty. A data row inserted into the table is routed to a partition based on the value of columns or expressions in the partition key. If no existing partition matches the values in the new row, an error will be reported.

Partitioned tables do not support EXCLUDE constraints; however, you can define these constraints on individual partitions.

See Section 5.11 for more discussion on table partitioning.

```
PARTITION OF parent_table { FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec | DEFAULT }
```

Creates the table as a partition of the specified parent table. The table can be created either as a partition for specific values using FOR VALUES or as a default partition using DEFAULT. Any indexes, constraints and user-defined row-level triggers that exist in the parent table are cloned on the new partition.

The partition_bound_spec must correspond to the partitioning method and partition key of the parent table, and must not overlap with any existing partition of that parent. The form with IN is used for list partitioning, the form with FROM and TO is used for range partitioning, and the form with WITH is used for hash partitioning.

partition_bound_expr is any variable-free expression (subqueries, window functions, aggregate functions, and set-returning functions are not allowed). Its data type must match the data type of the corresponding partition key column. The expression is evaluated once at table creation time, so it can even contain volatile expressions such as CURRENT_TIMESTAMP.

When creating a list partition, NULL can be specified to signify that the partition allows the partition key column to be null. However, there cannot be more than one such list partition for a given parent table. NULL cannot be specified for range partitions.

When creating a range partition, the lower bound specified with FROM is an inclusive bound, whereas the upper bound specified with TO is an exclusive bound. That is, the values specified in the FROM list are valid values of the corresponding partition key columns for this partition, whereas those in the TO list are not. Note that this statement must be understood according to the rules of row-wise comparison (Section 9.24.5). For example, given PARTITION BY RANGE \((x, y)\), a partition bound \(\text{FROM (1, 2) TO (3, 4)}\) allows \(x=1\) with any \(y\geq 2\), \(x=2\) with any non-null \(y\), and \(x=3\) with any \(y<4\).

The special values MINVALUE and MAXVALUE may be used when creating a range partition to indicate that there is no lower or upper bound on the column's value. For example, a partition defined using \(\text{FROM (MINVALUE) TO (10)}\) allows any values less than 10, and a partition defined using \(\text{FROM (10) TO (MAXVALUE)}\) allows any values greater than or equal to 10.

When creating a range partition involving more than one column, it can also make sense to use MAXVALUE as part of the lower bound, and MINVALUE as part of the upper bound. For example, a partition defined using \(\text{FROM (0, MAXVALUE) TO (10, MAXVALUE)}\) allows any rows where the first partition key column is greater than 0 and less than or equal to 10. Similarly, a partition defined using \(\text{FROM ('a', MINVALUE) TO ('b', MINVALUE)}\) allows any rows where the first partition key column starts with "a".

Note that if MINVALUE or MAXVALUE is used for one column of a partitioning bound, the same value must be used for all subsequent columns. For example, \(\text{(10, MINVALUE, 0)}\) is not a valid bound; you should write \(\text{(10, MINVALUE, MINVALUE)}\).

Also note that some element types, such as timestamp, have a notion of "infinity", which is just another value that can be stored. This is different from MINVALUE and MAXVALUE, which are not real values that can be stored, but rather they are ways of saying that the value is unbounded.
CREATE TABLE

`MAXVALUE` can be thought of as being greater than any other value, including "infinity" and `MINVALUE` as being less than any other value, including "minus infinity". Thus the range from ('infinity') to (MAXVALUE) is not an empty range; it allows precisely one value to be stored — "infinity".

If `DEFAULT` is specified, the table will be created as the default partition of the parent table. This option is not available for hash-partitioned tables. A partition key value not fitting into any other partition of the given parent will be routed to the default partition.

When a table has an existing `DEFAULT` partition and a new partition is added to it, the default partition must be scanned to verify that it does not contain any rows which properly belong in the new partition. If the default partition contains a large number of rows, this may be slow. The scan will be skipped if the default partition is a foreign table or if it has a constraint which proves that it cannot contain rows which should be placed in the new partition.

When creating a hash partition, a modulus and remainder must be specified. The modulus must be a positive integer, and the remainder must be a non-negative integer less than the modulus. Typically, when initially setting up a hash-partitioned table, you should choose a modulus equal to the number of partitions and assign every table the same modulus and a different remainder (see examples, below). However, it is not required that every partition have the same modulus, only that every modulus which occurs among the partitions of a hash-partitioned table is a factor of the next larger modulus. This allows the number of partitions to be increased incrementally without needing to move all the data at once. For example, suppose you have a hash-partitioned table with 8 partitions, each of which has modulus 8, but find it necessary to increase the number of partitions to 16. You can detach one of the modulus-8 partitions, create two new modulus-16 partitions covering the same portion of the key space (one with a remainder equal to the remainder of the detached partition, and the other with a remainder equal to that value plus 8), and repopulate them with data. You can then repeat this -- perhaps at a later time -- for each modulus-8 partition until none remain. While this may still involve a large amount of data movement at each step, it is still better than having to create a whole new table and move all the data at once.

A partition must have the same column names and types as the partitioned table to which it belongs. Modifications to the column names or types of a partitioned table will automatically propagate to all partitions. `CHECK` constraints will be inherited automatically by every partition, but an individual partition may specify additional `CHECK` constraints; additional constraints with the same name and condition as in the parent will be merged with the parent constraint. Defaults may be specified separately for each partition. But note that a partition's default value is not applied when inserting a tuple through a partitioned table.

Rows inserted into a partitioned table will be automatically routed to the correct partition. If no suitable partition exists, an error will occur.

Operations such as TRUNCATE which normally affect a table and all of its inheritance children will cascade to all partitions, but may also be performed on an individual partition. Note that dropping a partition with `DROP TABLE` requires taking an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table.

LIKE source_table [ like_option ... ]

The `LIKE` clause specifies a table from which the new table automatically copies all column names, their data types, and their not-null constraints.

Unlike `INHERITS`, the new table and original table are completely decoupled after creation is complete. Changes to the original table will not be applied to the new table, and it is not possible to include data of the new table in scans of the original table.

Also unlike `INHERITS`, columns and constraints copied by `LIKE` are not merged with similarly named columns and constraints. If the same name is specified explicitly or in another `LIKE` clause, an error is signaled.

The optional `like_option` clauses specify which additional properties of the original table to copy. Specifying `INCLUDING` copies the property, specifying `EXCLUDING` omits the property. `EXCLUDING` is
the default. If multiple specifications are made for the same kind of object, the last one is used. The available options are:

**INCLUDING COMMENTS**

Comments for the copied columns, constraints, and indexes will be copied. The default behavior is to exclude comments, resulting in the copied columns and constraints in the new table having no comments.

**INCLUDING COMPRESSION**

Compression method of the columns will be copied. The default behavior is to exclude compression methods, resulting in columns having the default compression method.

**INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS**

*CHECK constraints* will be copied. No distinction is made between column constraints and table constraints. Not-null constraints are always copied to the new table.

**INCLUDING DEFAULTS**

Default expressions for the copied column definitions will be copied. Otherwise, default expressions are not copied, resulting in the copied columns in the new table having null defaults. Note that copying defaults that call database-modification functions, such as `nextval`, may create a functional linkage between the original and new tables.

**INCLUDING GENERATED**

Any generation expressions of copied column definitions will be copied. By default, new columns will be regular base columns.

**INCLUDING IDENTITY**

Any identity specifications of copied column definitions will be copied. A new sequence is created for each identity column of the new table, separate from the sequences associated with the old table.

**INCLUDING INDEXES**

Indexes, `PRIMARY KEY`, `UNIQUE`, and `EXCLUDE` constraints on the original table will be created on the new table. Names for the new indexes and constraints are chosen according to the default rules, regardless of how the originals were named. (This behavior avoids possible duplicate-name failures for the new indexes.)

**INCLUDING STATISTICS**

Extended statistics are copied to the new table.

**INCLUDING STORAGE**

*STORAGE settings* for the copied column definitions will be copied. The default behavior is to exclude *STORAGE settings*, resulting in the copied columns in the new table having type-specific default settings. For more on *STORAGE settings*, see Section 66.2.

**INCLUDING ALL**

*INCLUDING ALL* is an abbreviated form selecting all the available individual options. (It could be useful to write individual **EXCLUDING** clauses after **INCLUDING ALL** to select all but some specific options.)

The **LIKE** clause can also be used to copy column definitions from views, foreign tables, or composite types. Inapplicable options (e.g., **INCLUDING INDEXES** from a view) are ignored.

**CONSTRAINT** `constraint_name`

An optional name for a column or table constraint. If the constraint is violated, the constraint name is present in error messages, so constraint names like `col must be positive` can be used to
communicate helpful constraint information to client applications. (Double-quotes are needed to specify constraint names that contain spaces.) If a constraint name is not specified, the system generates a name.

**NOT NULL**

The column is not allowed to contain null values.

**NULL**

The column is allowed to contain null values. This is the default.

This clause is only provided for compatibility with non-standard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

**CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ]**

The **CHECK** clause specifies an expression producing a Boolean result which new or updated rows must satisfy for an insert or update operation to succeed. Expressions evaluating to TRUE or UNKNOWN succeed. Should any row of an insert or update operation produce a FALSE result, an error exception is raised and the insert or update does not alter the database. A check constraint specified as a column constraint should reference that column’s value only, while an expression appearing in a table constraint can reference multiple columns.

Currently, **CHECK** expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than columns of the current row (see Section 5.4.1). The system column `tableoid` may be referenced, but not any other system column.

A constraint marked with **NO INHERIT** will not propagate to child tables.

When a table has multiple **CHECK** constraints, they will be tested for each row in alphabetical order by name, after checking **NOT NULL** constraints. (PostgreSQL versions before 9.5 did not honor any particular firing order for **CHECK** constraints.)

**DEFAULT default_expr**

The **DEFAULT** clause assigns a default data value for the column whose column definition it appears within. The value is any variable-free expression (in particular, cross-references to other columns in the current table are not allowed). Subqueries are not allowed either. The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the column.

The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If there is no default for a column, then the default is null.

**GENERATED ALWAYS AS ( generation_expr ) STORED**

This clause creates the column as a *generated column*. The column cannot be written to, and when read the result of the specified expression will be returned.

The keyword **STORED** is required to signify that the column will be computed on write and will be stored on disk.

The generation expression can refer to other columns in the table, but not other generated columns. Any functions and operators used must be immutable. References to other tables are not allowed.

**GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT } AS IDENTITY [ ( sequence_options ) ]**

This clause creates the column as an *identity column*. It will have an implicit sequence attached to it and the column in new rows will automatically have values from the sequence assigned to it. Such a column is implicitly **NOT NULL**.

The clauses **ALWAYS** and **BY DEFAULT** determine how explicitly user-specified values are handled in **INSERT** and **UPDATE** commands.
CREATE TABLE

In an `INSERT` command, if `ALWAYS` is selected, a user-specified value is only accepted if the `INSERT` statement specifies `OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE`. If `BY DEFAULT` is selected, then the user-specified value takes precedence. See `INSERT` for details. (In the `COPY` command, user-specified values are always used regardless of this setting.)

In an `UPDATE` command, if `ALWAYS` is selected, any update of the column to any value other than `DEFAULT` will be rejected. If `BY DEFAULT` is selected, the column can be updated normally. (There is no `OVERRIDING` clause for the `UPDATE` command.)

The optional `sequence_options` clause can be used to override the options of the sequence. See `CREATE SEQUENCE` for details.

**UNIQUE (column constraint)**

`UNIQUE ( column_name [ , ... ] ) [ INCLUDE ( column_name [ , ... ] ) ] (table constraint)`

The `UNIQUE` constraint specifies that a group of one or more columns of a table can contain only unique values. The behavior of a unique table constraint is the same as that of a unique column constraint, with the additional capability to span multiple columns. The constraint therefore enforces that any two rows must differ in at least one of these columns.

For the purpose of a unique constraint, null values are not considered equal.

Each unique constraint should name a set of columns that is different from the set of columns named by any other unique or primary key constraint defined for the table. (Otherwise, redundant unique constraints will be discarded.)

When establishing a unique constraint for a multi-level partition hierarchy, all the columns in the partition key of the target partitioned table, as well as those of all its descendant partitioned tables, must be included in the constraint definition.

Adding a unique constraint will automatically create a unique btree index on the column or group of columns used in the constraint.

The optional `INCLUDE` clause adds to that index one or more columns that are simply “payload”: uniqueness is not enforced on them, and the index cannot be searched on the basis of those columns. However they can be retrieved by an index-only scan. Note that although the constraint is not enforced on included columns, it still depends on them. Consequently, some operations on such columns (e.g., DROP COLUMN) can cause cascaded constraint and index deletion.

**PRIMARY KEY (column constraint)**

`PRIMARY KEY ( column_name [ , ... ] ) [ INCLUDE ( column_name [ , ... ] ) ] (table constraint)`

The `PRIMARY KEY` constraint specifies that a column or columns of a table can contain only unique (non-duplicate), nonnull values. Only one primary key can be specified for a table, whether as a column constraint or a table constraint.

The primary key constraint should name a set of columns that is different from the set of columns named by any unique constraint defined for the same table. (Otherwise, the unique constraint is redundant and will be discarded.)

`PRIMARY KEY` enforces the same data constraints as a combination of `UNIQUE` and `NOT NULL`. However, identifying a set of columns as the primary key also provides metadata about the design of the schema, since a primary key implies that other tables can rely on this set of columns as a unique identifier for rows.

When placed on a partitioned table, `PRIMARY KEY` constraints share the restrictions previously described for `UNIQUE` constraints.

Adding a `PRIMARY KEY` constraint will automatically create a unique btree index on the column or group of columns used in the constraint.
The optional `INCLUDE` clause adds to that index one or more columns that are simply “payload”: uniqueness is not enforced on them, and the index cannot be searched on the basis of those columns. However they can be retrieved by an index-only scan. Note that although the constraint is not enforced on included columns, it still depends on them. Consequently, some operations on such columns (e.g., `DROP COLUMN`) can cause cascaded constraint and index deletion.

The `EXCLUDE` clause defines an exclusion constraint, which guarantees that if any two rows are compared on the specified column(s) or expression(s) using the specified operator(s), not all of these comparisons will return `TRUE`. If all of the specified operators test for equality, this is equivalent to a `UNIQUE` constraint, although an ordinary unique constraint will be faster. However, exclusion constraints can specify constraints that are more general than simple equality. For example, you can specify a constraint that no two rows in the table contain overlapping circles (see Section 8.8) by using the `&&` operator.

Exclusion constraints are implemented using an index, so each specified operator must be associated with an appropriate operator class (see Section 11.10) for the index access method `index_method`. The operators are required to be commutative. Each `exclude_element` can optionally specify an operator class and/or ordering options; these are described fully under `CREATE INDEX`.

The `predicate` allows you to specify an exclusion constraint on a subset of the table; internally this creates a partial index. Note that parentheses are required around the predicate.

These clauses specify a foreign key constraint, which requires that a group of one or more columns of the new table must only contain values that match values in the referenced column(s) of some row of the referenced table. If the `refcolumn` list is omitted, the primary key of the `reftable` is used. The referenced columns must be the columns of a non-deferrable unique or primary key constraint in the referenced table. The user must have `REFERENCES` permission on the referenced table (either the whole table, or the specific referenced columns). The addition of a foreign key constraint requires a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock on the referenced table. Note that foreign key constraints cannot be defined between temporary tables and permanent tables.

A value inserted into the referencing column(s) is matched against the values of the referenced table and referenced columns using the given match type. There are three match types: `MATCH FULL`, `MATCH PARTIAL`, and `MATCH SIMPLE` (which is the default). `MATCH FULL` will not allow one column of a multicolumn foreign key to be null unless all foreign key columns are null; if they are all null, the row is not required to have a match in the referenced table. `MATCH SIMPLE` allows any of the foreign key columns to be null; if any of them are null, the row is not required to have a match in the referenced table. `MATCH PARTIAL` is not yet implemented. (Of course, `NOT NULL` constraints can be applied to the referencing column(s) to prevent these cases from arising.)

In addition, when the data in the referenced columns is changed, certain actions are performed on the data in this table's columns. The `ON DELETE` clause specifies the action to perform when a referenced row in the referenced table is being deleted. Likewise, the `ON UPDATE` clause specifies the action to perform when a referenced column in the referenced table is being updated to a new value. If the row is updated, but the referenced column is not actually changed, no action is done.
Referential actions other than the NO ACTION check cannot be deferred, even if the constraint is declared deferrable. There are the following possible actions for each clause:

**NO ACTION**

Produce an error indicating that the deletion or update would create a foreign key constraint violation. If the constraint is deferred, this error will be produced at constraint check time if there still exist any referencing rows. This is the default action.

**RESTRICT**

Produce an error indicating that the deletion or update would create a foreign key constraint violation. This is the same as NO ACTION except that the check is not deferrable.

**CASCADE**

Delete any rows referencing the deleted row, or update the values of the referencing column(s) to the new values of the referenced columns, respectively.

**SET NULL**

Set the referencing column(s) to null.

**SET DEFAULT**

Set the referencing column(s) to their default values. (There must be a row in the referenced table matching the default values, if they are not null, or the operation will fail.)

If the referenced column(s) are changed frequently, it might be wise to add an index to the referencing column(s) so that referential actions associated with the foreign key constraint can be performed more efficiently.

**DEFERRABLE**

This controls whether the constraint can be deferred. A constraint that is not deferrable will be checked immediately after every command. Checking of constraints that are deferrable can be postponed until the end of the transaction (using the SET CONSTRAINTS command). NOT DEFERRABLE is the default. Currently, only UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, EXCLUDE, and REFERENCES (foreign key) constraints accept this clause. NOT NULL and CHECK constraints are not deferrable. Note that deferrable constraints cannot be used as conflict arbitrators in an INSERT statement that includes an ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE clause.

**INITIALLY IMMEDIATE**

If a constraint is deferrable, this clause specifies the default time to check the constraint. If the constraint is INITIALLY IMMEDIATE, it is checked after each statement. This is the default. If the constraint is INITIALLY DEFERRED, it is checked only at the end of the transaction. The constraint check time can be altered with the SET CONSTRAINTS command.

**USING method**

This optional clause specifies the table access method to use to store the contents for the new table; the method needs be an access method of type TABLE. See Chapter 57 for more information. If this option is not specified, the default table access method is chosen for the new table. See default_table_access_method for more information.

**WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )**

This clause specifies optional storage parameters for a table or index; see Storage Parameters below for more information. For backward-compatibility the WITH clause for a table can also include OIDS=FALSE to specify that rows of the new table should not contain OIDs (object identifiers), OIDS=TRUE is not supported anymore.
CREATE TABLE

WITHOUT OIDS

This is backward-compatible syntax for declaring a table WITHOUT OIDS, creating a table WITH OIDS is not supported anymore.

ON COMMIT

The behavior of temporary tables at the end of a transaction block can be controlled using ON COMMIT. The three options are:

PRESCRIBE ROWS

No special action is taken at the ends of transactions. This is the default behavior.

DELETE ROWS

All rows in the temporary table will be deleted at the end of each transaction block. Essentially, an automatic TRUNCATE is done at each commit. When used on a partitioned table, this is not cascaded to its partitions.

DROP

The temporary table will be dropped at the end of the current transaction block. When used on a partitioned table, this action drops its partitions and when used on tables with inheritance children, it drops the dependent children.

TABLESPACE tablespace_name

The tablespace_name is the name of the tablespace in which the new table is to be created. If not specified, default_tablespace is consulted, or temp_tablespaces if the table is temporary. For partitioned tables, since no storage is required for the table itself, the tablespace specified overrides default_tablespace as the default tablespace to use for any newly created partitions when no other tablespace is explicitly specified.

USING INDEX TABLESPACE tablespace_name

This clause allows selection of the tablespace in which the index associated with a UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, or EXCLUDE constraint will be created. If not specified, default_tablespace is consulted, or temp_tablespaces if the table is temporary.

Storage Parameters

The WITH clause can specify storage parameters for tables, and for indexes associated with a UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, or EXCLUDE constraint. Storage parameters for indexes are documented in CREATE INDEX. The storage parameters currently available for tables are listed below. For many of these parameters, as shown, there is an additional parameter with the same name prefixed with toast., which controls the behavior of the table's secondary TOAST table, if any (see Section 66.2 for more information about TOAST). If a table parameter value is set and the equivalent toast. parameter is not, the TOAST table will use the table's parameter value. Specifying these parameters for partitioned tables is not supported, but you may specify them for individual leaf partitions.

fillfactor (integer)

The fillfactor for a table is a percentage between 10 and 100. 100 (complete packing) is the default. When a smaller fillfactor is specified, INSERT operations pack table pages only to the indicated percentage; the remaining space on each page is reserved for updating rows on that page. This gives UPDATE a chance to place the updated copy of a row on the same page as the original, which is more efficient than placing it on a different page. For a table whose entries are never updated, complete packing is the best choice, but in heavily updated tables smaller fillfactors are appropriate. This parameter cannot be set for TOAST tables.

toast_tuple_target (integer)

The toast_tuple_target specifies the minimum tuple length required before we try to compress and/or move long column values into TOAST tables, and is also the target length we try to reduce the
CREATE TABLE

length below once toasting begins. This affects columns marked as External (for move), Main (for compression), or Extended (for both) and applies only to new tuples. There is no effect on existing rows. By default this parameter is set to allow at least 4 tuples per block, which with the default block size will be 2040 bytes. Valid values are between 128 bytes and the (block size - header), by default 8160 bytes. Changing this value may not be useful for very short or very long rows. Note that the default setting is often close to optimal, and it is possible that setting this parameter could have negative effects in some cases. This parameter cannot be set for TOAST tables.

parallel_workers (integer)

This sets the number of workers that should be used to assist a parallel scan of this table. If not set, the system will determine a value based on the relation size. The actual number of workers chosen by the planner or by utility statements that use parallel scans may be less, for example due to the setting of max_worker_processes.

autovacuum_enabled, toast.autovacuum_enabled (boolean)

Enables or disables the autovacuum daemon for a particular table. If true, the autovacuum daemon will perform automatic VACUUM and/or ANALYZE operations on this table following the rules discussed in Section 23.1.6. If false, this table will not be autovacuumed, except to prevent transaction ID wraparound. See Section 23.1.5 for more about wraparound prevention. Note that the autovacuum daemon does not run at all (except to prevent transaction ID wraparound) if the autovacuum parameter is false; setting individual tables’ storage parameters does not override that. Therefore there is seldom much point in explicitly setting this storage parameter to true, only to false.

vacuum_index_cleanup, toast.vacuum_index_cleanup (enum)

Forces or disables index cleanup when VACUUM is run on this table. The default value is AUTO. With OFF, index cleanup is disabled, with ON it is enabled, and with AUTO a decision is made dynamically, each time VACUUM runs. The dynamic behavior allows VACUUM to avoid needlessly scanning indexes to remove very few dead tuples. Forcibly disabling all index cleanup can speed up VACUUM very significantly, but may also lead to severely bloated indexes if table modifications are frequent. The INDEX_CLEANUP parameter of VACUUM, if specified, overrides the value of this option.

vacuum_truncate, toast.vacuum_truncate (boolean)

Enables or disables vacuum to try to truncate off any empty pages at the end of this table. The default value is true. If true, VACUUM and autovacuum do the truncation and the disk space for the truncated pages is returned to the operating system. Note that the truncation requires ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the table. The TRUNCATE parameter of VACUUM, if specified, overrides the value of this option.

autovacuum_vacuum_threshold, toast.autovacuum_vacuum_threshold (integer)

Per-table value for autovacuum_vacuum_threshold parameter.

autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor, toast.autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor (floating point)

Per-table value for autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor parameter.

autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold, toast.autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold (integer)

Per-table value for autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold parameter. The special value of -1 may be used to disable insert vacuums on the table.

autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor, toast.autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor (floating point)

Per-table value for autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor parameter.

autovacuum_analyze_threshold (integer)

Per-table value for autovacuum_analyze_threshold parameter.
CREATE TABLE

autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor (floating point)
    Per-table value for autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor parameter.

autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay, toast.autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay (floating point)
    Per-table value for autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay parameter.

autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit, toast.autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit (integer)
    Per-table value for autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit parameter.

autovacuum_freeze_min_age, toast.autovacuum_freeze_min_age (integer)
    Per-table value for vacuum_freeze_min_age parameter. Note that autovacuum will ignore per-table autovacuum_freeze_min_age parameters that are larger than half the system-wide autovacuum_freeze_max_age setting.

autovacuum_freeze_max_age, toast.autovacuum_freeze_max_age (integer)
    Per-table value for autovacuum_freeze_max_age parameter. Note that autovacuum will ignore per-table autovacuum_freeze_max_age parameters that are larger than the system-wide setting (it can only be set smaller).

autovacuum_freeze_table_age, toast.autovacuum_freeze_table_age (integer)
    Per-table value for vacuum_freeze_table_age parameter.

autovacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age, toast.autovacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age (integer)
    Per-table value for vacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age parameter. Note that autovacuum will ignore per-table autovacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age parameters that are larger than half the system-wide autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age setting.

autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age, toast.autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age (integer)
    Per-table value for autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age parameter. Note that autovacuum will ignore per-table autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age parameters that are larger than the system-wide setting (it can only be set smaller).

autovacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age, toast.autovacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age (integer)
    Per-table value for vacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age parameter.

log_autovacuum_min_duration, toast.log_autovacuum_min_duration (integer)
    Per-table value for log_autovacuum_min_duration parameter.

user_catalog_table (boolean)
    Declare the table as an additional catalog table for purposes of logical replication. See Section 47.6.2 for details. This parameter cannot be set for TOAST tables.

**Notes**

Postgres Pro automatically creates an index for each unique constraint and primary key constraint to enforce uniqueness. Thus, it is not necessary to create an index explicitly for primary key columns. (See CREATE INDEX for more information.)

Unique constraints and primary keys are not inherited in the current implementation. This makes the combination of inheritance and unique constraints rather dysfunctional.

A table cannot have more than 1600 columns. (In practice, the effective limit is usually lower because of tuple-length constraints.)
CREATE TABLE

Examples

Create table **films** and table **distributors**:

```sql
CREATE TABLE films (  
    code char(5) CONSTRAINT firstkey PRIMARY KEY,
    title varchar(40) NOT NULL,
    did integer NOT NULL,
    date_prod date,
    kind varchar(10),
    len interval hour to minute
);

CREATE TABLE distributors (  
    did integer PRIMARY KEY GENERATED BY DEFAULT AS IDENTITY,
    name varchar(40) NOT NULL CHECK (name <> '')
);

Create a table with a 2-dimensional array:

```sql
CREATE TABLE array_int (  
    vector int[][]
);
```

Define a unique table constraint for the table **films**. Unique table constraints can be defined on one or more columns of the table:

CREATE TABLE films (  
    code char(5),
    title varchar(40),
    did integer,
    date_prod date,
    kind varchar(10),
    len interval hour to minute,
    CONSTRAINT production UNIQUE(date_prod)
);

Define a check column constraint:

CREATE TABLE distributors (  
    did integer CHECK (did > 100),
    name varchar(40)
);

Define a check table constraint:

CREATE TABLE distributors (  
    did integer,
    name varchar(40),
    CONSTRAINT con1 CHECK (did > 100 AND name <> '')
);

Define a primary key table constraint for the table **films**:

CREATE TABLE films (  
    code char(5),
    title varchar(40),
    did integer,
    date_prod date,
    kind varchar(10),
    len interval hour to minute,
    CONSTRAINT code_title PRIMARY KEY(code,title)
)
Define a primary key constraint for table distributors. The following two examples are equivalent, the first using the table constraint syntax, the second the column constraint syntax:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (  
did integer,  
name varchar(40),  
PRIMARY KEY(did)
);
```

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (  
did integer PRIMARY KEY,  
name varchar(40)
);
```

Assign a literal constant default value for the column `name`, arrange for the default value of column `did` to be generated by selecting the next value of a sequence object, and make the default value of `modtime` be the time at which the row is inserted:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (  
name varchar(40) DEFAULT 'Luso Films',  
did integer DEFAULT nextval('distributors_serial'),  
modtime timestamp DEFAULT current_timestamp
);
```

Define two NOT NULL column constraints on the table `distributors`, one of which is explicitly given a name:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (  
did integer CONSTRAINT no_null NOT NULL,  
name varchar(40) NOT NULL
);
```

Define a unique constraint for the `name` column:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (  
did integer,  
name varchar(40) UNIQUE
);
```

The same, specified as a table constraint:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (  
did integer,  
name varchar(40),  
UNIQUE(name)
);
```

Create the same table, specifying 70% fill factor for both the table and its unique index:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (  
did integer,  
name varchar(40),  
UNIQUE(name) WITH (fillfactor=70)
) WITH (fillfactor=70);
```

Create table `circles` with an exclusion constraint that prevents any two circles from overlapping:

```
CREATE TABLE circles (  
c circle,  
EXCLUDE USING gist (c WITH &
)
CREATE TABLE cinemas in tablespace diskvol1:

CREATE TABLE cinemas (  
id serial,  
name text,  
location text  
) TABLESPACE diskvol1;

Create a composite type and a typed table:

CREATE TYPE employee_type AS (name text, salary numeric);

CREATE TABLE employees OF employee_type (  
PRIMARY KEY (name),  
salary WITH OPTIONS DEFAULT 1000  
);

Create a range partitioned table:

CREATE TABLE measurement (  
logdate date not null,  
peaktemp int,  
unitsales int  
) PARTITION BY RANGE (logdate);

Create a range partitioned table with multiple columns in the partition key:

CREATE TABLE measurement_year_month (  
logdate date not null,  
peaktemp int,  
unitsales int  
) PARTITION BY RANGE (EXTRACT(YEAR FROM logdate), EXTRACT(MONTH FROM logdate));

Create a list partitioned table:

CREATE TABLE cities (  
city_id bigserial not null,  
name text not null,  
population bigint  
) PARTITION BY LIST (left(lower(name), 1));

Create a hash partitioned table:

CREATE TABLE orders (  
order_id bigint not null,  
cust_id bigint not null,  
status text  
) PARTITION BY HASH (order_id);

Create partition of a range partitioned table:

CREATE TABLE measurement_y2016m07  
PARTITION OF measurement (  
unitsales DEFAULT 0  
) FOR VALUES FROM ('2016-07-01') TO ('2016-08-01');

Create a few partitions of a range partitioned table with multiple columns in the partition key:

CREATE TABLE measurement_ym_older  
PARTITION OF measurement_year_month  
FOR VALUES FROM (MINVALUE, MINVALUE) TO (2016, 11);
CREATE TABLE measurement_ym_y2016m11
   PARTITION OF measurement_year_month
   FOR VALUES FROM (2016, 11) TO (2016, 12);

CREATE TABLE measurement_ym_y2016m12
   PARTITION OF measurement_year_month
   FOR VALUES FROM (2016, 12) TO (2017, 01);

CREATE TABLE measurement_ym_y2017m01
   PARTITION OF measurement_year_month
   FOR VALUES FROM (2017, 01) TO (2017, 02);

Create partition of a list partitioned table:

CREATE TABLE cities_ab
   PARTITION OF cities (CONSTRAINT city_id_nonzero CHECK (city_id != 0))
   FOR VALUES IN ('a', 'b');

Create partition of a list partitioned table that is itself further partitioned and then add a partition to it:

CREATE TABLE cities_ab
   PARTITION OF cities (CONSTRAINT city_id_nonzero CHECK (city_id != 0))
   FOR VALUES IN ('a', 'b') PARTITION BY RANGE (population);

CREATE TABLE cities_ab_10000_to_100000
   PARTITION OF cities_ab FOR VALUES FROM (10000) TO (100000);

Create partitions of a hash partitioned table:

CREATE TABLE orders_p1 PARTITION OF orders
   FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 0);
CREATE TABLE orders_p2 PARTITION OF orders
   FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 1);
CREATE TABLE orders_p3 PARTITION OF orders
   FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 2);
CREATE TABLE orders_p4 PARTITION OF orders
   FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 3);

Create a default partition:

CREATE TABLE cities_partdef
   PARTITION OF cities DEFAULT;

Compatibility

The CREATE TABLE command conforms to the SQL standard, with exceptions listed below.

Temporary Tables

Although the syntax of CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE resembles that of the SQL standard, the effect is not the same. In the standard, temporary tables are defined just once and automatically exist (starting with empty contents) in every session that needs them. Postgres Pro instead requires each session to issue its own CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE command for each temporary table to be used. This allows different sessions to use the same temporary table name for different purposes, whereas the standard's approach constrains all instances of a given temporary table name to have the same table structure.

The standard's definition of the behavior of temporary tables is widely ignored. Postgres Pro's behavior on this point is similar to that of several other SQL databases.
The SQL standard also distinguishes between global and local temporary tables, where a local temporary table has a separate set of contents for each SQL module within each session, though its definition is still shared across sessions. Since Postgres Pro does not support SQL modules, this distinction is not relevant in Postgres Pro.

For compatibility's sake, Postgres Pro will accept the GLOBAL and LOCAL keywords in a temporary table declaration, but they currently have no effect. Use of these keywords is discouraged, since future versions of Postgres Pro might adopt a more standard-compliant interpretation of their meaning.

The ON COMMIT clause for temporary tables also resembles the SQL standard, but has some differences. If the ON COMMIT clause is omitted, SQL specifies that the default behavior is ON COMMIT DELETE ROWS. However, the default behavior in Postgres Pro is ON COMMIT PRESERVE ROWS. The ON COMMIT DROP option does not exist in SQL.

Non-Deferred Uniqueness Constraints

When a UNIQUE or PRIMARY KEY constraint is not deferrable, Postgres Pro checks for uniqueness immediately whenever a row is inserted or modified. The SQL standard says that uniqueness should be enforced only at the end of the statement; this makes a difference when, for example, a single command updates multiple key values. To obtain standard-compliant behavior, declare the constraint as DEFERRABLE but not deferred (i.e., INITIALLY IMMEDIATE). Be aware that this can be significantly slower than immediate uniqueness checking.

Column Check Constraints

The SQL standard says that CHECK column constraints can only refer to the column they apply to; only CHECK table constraints can refer to multiple columns. Postgres Pro does not enforce this restriction; it treats column and table check constraints alike.

EXCLUDE Constraint

The EXCLUDE constraint type is a Postgres Pro extension.

NULL “Constraint”

The NULL “constraint” (actually a non-constraint) is a Postgres Pro extension to the SQL standard that is included for compatibility with some other database systems (and for symmetry with the NOT NULL constraint). Since it is the default for any column, its presence is simply noise.

Constraint Naming

The SQL standard says that table and domain constraints must have names that are unique across the schema containing the table or domain. Postgres Pro is laxer: it only requires constraint names to be unique across the constraints attached to a particular table or domain. However, this extra freedom does not exist for index-based constraints (UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, and EXCLUDE constraints), because the associated index is named the same as the constraint, and index names must be unique across all relations within the same schema.

Currently, Postgres Pro does not record names for NOT NULL constraints at all, so they are not subject to the uniqueness restriction. This might change in a future release.

Inheritance

Multiple inheritance via the INHERITS clause is a Postgres Pro language extension. SQL:1999 and later define single inheritance using a different syntax and different semantics. SQL:1999-style inheritance is not yet supported by Postgres Pro.

Zero-Column Tables

Postgres Pro allows a table of no columns to be created (for example, CREATE TABLE foo();). This is an extension from the SQL standard, which does not allow zero-column tables. Zero-column tables are
not in themselves very useful, but disallowing them creates odd special cases for ALTER TABLE DROP COLUMN, so it seems cleaner to ignore this spec restriction.

**Multiple Identity Columns**

Postgres Pro allows a table to have more than one identity column. The standard specifies that a table can have at most one identity column. This is relaxed mainly to give more flexibility for doing schema changes or migrations. Note that the INSERT command supports only one override clause that applies to the entire statement, so having multiple identity columns with different behaviors is not well supported.

**Generated Columns**

The option STORED is not standard but is also used by other SQL implementations. The SQL standard does not specify the storage of generated columns.

**LIKE Clause**

While a LIKE clause exists in the SQL standard, many of the options that Postgres Pro accepts for it are not in the standard, and some of the standard's options are not implemented by Postgres Pro.

**WITH Clause**

The WITH clause is a Postgres Pro extension; storage parameters are not in the standard.

**Tablespaces**

The Postgres Pro concept of tablespaces is not part of the standard. Hence, the clauses TABLESPACE and USING INDEX TABLESPACE are extensions.

**Typed Tables**

Typed tables implement a subset of the SQL standard. According to the standard, a typed table has columns corresponding to the underlying composite type as well as one other column that is the “self-referencing column”. Postgres Pro does not support self-referencing columns explicitly.

**PARTITION BY Clause**

The PARTITION BY clause is a Postgres Pro extension.

**PARTITION OF Clause**

The PARTITION OF clause is a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

ALTER TABLE, DROP TABLE, CREATE TABLE AS, CREATE TABLESPACE, CREATE TYPE
CREATE TABLE AS

CREATE TABLE AS — define a new table from the results of a query

Synopsis

CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] { TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED ] TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
  [ (column_name [, ...] ) ]
  [ USING method ]
  [ WITH { storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] } | WITHOUT OIDS ]
  [ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
  [ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
AS query
  [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]

Description

CREATE TABLE AS creates a table and fills it with data computed by a SELECT command. The table columns have the names and data types associated with the output columns of the SELECT (except that you can override the column names by giving an explicit list of new column names).

CREATE TABLE AS bears some resemblance to creating a view, but it is really quite different: it creates a new table and evaluates the query just once to fill the new table initially. The new table will not track subsequent changes to the source tables of the query. In contrast, a view re-evaluates its defining SELECT statement whenever it is queried.

CREATE TABLE AS requires CREATE privilege on the schema used for the table.

Parameters

GLOBAL or LOCAL
    Ignored for compatibility. Use of these keywords is deprecated; refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

TEMPORARY or TEMP
    If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

UNLOGGED
    If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

IF NOT EXISTS
    Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

table_name
    The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

column_name
    The name of a column in the new table. If column names are not provided, they are taken from the output column names of the query.

USING method
    This optional clause specifies the table access method to use to store the contents for the new table; the method needs be an access method of type TABLE. See Chapter 57 for more information.
CREATE TABLE AS

If this option is not specified, the default table access method is chosen for the new table. See default_table_access_method for more information.

WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )

This clause specifies optional storage parameters for the new table; see Storage Parameters in the CREATE TABLE documentation for more information. For backward-compatibility the WITH clause for a table can also include OIDS=FALSE to specify that rows of the new table should contain no OIDs (object identifiers), OIDS=TRUE is not supported anymore.

WITHOUT OIDS

This is backward-compatible syntax for declaring a table WITHOUT OIDS, creating a table WITH OIDS is not supported anymore.

ON COMMIT

The behavior of temporary tables at the end of a transaction block can be controlled using ON COMMIT. The three options are:

PRESERVE ROWS

No special action is taken at the ends of transactions. This is the default behavior.

DELETE ROWS

All rows in the temporary table will be deleted at the end of each transaction block. Essentially, an automatic TRUNCATE is done at each commit.

DROP

The temporary table will be dropped at the end of the current transaction block.

TABLESPACE tablespace_name

The tablespace_name is the name of the tablespace in which the new table is to be created. If not specified, default_tablespace is consulted, or temp_tablespaces if the table is temporary.

query

A SELECT, TABLE, or VALUES command, or an EXECUTE command that runs a prepared SELECT, TABLE, or VALUES query.

WITH [ NO ] DATA

This clause specifies whether or not the data produced by the query should be copied into the new table. If not, only the table structure is copied. The default is to copy the data.

Notes

This command is functionally similar to SELECT INTO, but it is preferred since it is less likely to be confused with other uses of the SELECT INTO syntax. Furthermore, CREATE TABLE AS offers a superset of the functionality offered by SELECT INTO.

Examples

Create a new table films_recent consisting of only recent entries from the table films:

CREATE TABLE films_recent AS
    SELECT * FROM films WHERE date_prod >= '2002-01-01';

To copy a table completely, the short form using the TABLE command can also be used:

CREATE TABLE films2 AS
    TABLE films;
Create a new temporary table `films_recent`, consisting of only recent entries from the table `films`, using a prepared statement. The new table will be dropped at commit:

```sql
PREPARE recentfilms(date) AS
    SELECT * FROM films WHERE date_prod > $1;
CREATE TEMP TABLE films_recent ON COMMIT DROP AS
    EXECUTE recentfilms('2002-01-01');
```

**Compatibility**

`CREATE TABLE AS` conforms to the SQL standard. The following are nonstandard extensions:

- The standard requires parentheses around the subquery clause; in Postgres Pro, these parentheses are optional.
- In the standard, the `WITH [ NO ] DATA` clause is required; in Postgres Pro it is optional.
- Postgres Pro handles temporary tables in a way rather different from the standard; see `CREATE TABLE` for details.
- The `WITH` clause is a Postgres Pro extension; storage parameters are not in the standard.
- The Postgres Pro concept of tablespaces is not part of the standard. Hence, the clause `TABLESPACE` is an extension.

**See Also**

`CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, CREATE TABLE, EXECUTE, SELECT, SELECT INTO, VALUES`
CREATE TABLESPACE

CREATE TABLESPACE — define a new tablespace

Synopsis

CREATE TABLESPACE tablespace_name
   [ OWNER { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER } ]
   LOCATION 'directory'
   [ WITH ( tablespace_option = value [, ... ] ) ]

Description

CREATE TABLESPACE registers a new cluster-wide tablespace. The tablespace name must be distinct from
the name of any existing tablespace in the database cluster.

A tablespace allows superusers to define an alternative location on the file system where the data files
containing database objects (such as tables and indexes) can reside.

A user with appropriate privileges can pass tablespace_name to CREATE DATABASE, CREATE TABLE,
CREATE INDEX or ADD CONSTRAINT to have the data files for these objects stored within the specified
tablespace.

Warning

A tablespace cannot be used independently of the cluster in which it is defined; see Section 21.6.

Parameters

tablespace_name
   The name of a tablespace to be created. The name cannot begin with pg_, as such names are reserved
   for system tablespaces.

user_name
   The name of the user who will own the tablespace. If omitted, defaults to the user executing the
   command. Only superusers can create tablespaces, but they can assign ownership of tablespaces
   to non-superusers.

directory
   The directory that will be used for the tablespace. The directory must exist (CREATE TABLESPACE will
   not create it), should be empty, and must be owned by the Postgres Pro system user. The directory
   must be specified by an absolute path name.

tablespace_option
   A tablespace parameter to be set or reset. Currently, the only available parameters are seq_page_cost, random_page_cost, effective_io_concurrency and maintenance_io_concurrency. Setting these values for a particular tablespace will override the planner's usual estimate of the cost of reading pages from tables in that tablespace, and the executor's prefetching behavior, as established by the configuration parameters of the same name (see seq_page_cost, random_page_cost, effective_io_concurrency, maintenance_io_concurrency). This may be useful if one tablespace is located on a disk which is faster or slower than the remainder of the I/O subsystem.

Notes

Tablespaces are only supported on systems that support symbolic links.
CREATE TABLESPACE cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Examples

To create a tablespace `dbspace` at file system location `/data/dbs`, first create the directory using operating system facilities and set the correct ownership:

```bash
mkdir /data/dbs
chown postgres:postgres /data/dbs
```

Then issue the tablespace creation command inside Postgres Pro:

```sql
CREATE TABLESPACE dbspace LOCATION '/data/dbs';
```

To create a tablespace owned by a different database user, use a command like this:

```sql
CREATE TABLESPACE indexspace OWNER genevieve LOCATION '/data/indexes';
```

Compatibility

CREATE TABLESPACE is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE DATABASE, CREATE TABLE, CREATE INDEX, DROP TABLESPACE, ALTER TABLESPACE
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION — define a new text search configuration

Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name {
    PARSER = parser_name |
    COPY = source_config
}
```

Description

`CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` creates a new text search configuration. A text search configuration specifies a text search parser that can divide a string into tokens, plus dictionaries that can be used to determine which tokens are of interest for searching.

If only the parser is specified, then the new text search configuration initially has no mappings from token types to dictionaries, and therefore will ignore all words. Subsequent `ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` commands must be used to create mappings to make the configuration useful. Alternatively, an existing text search configuration can be copied.

If a schema name is given then the text search configuration is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

The user who defines a text search configuration becomes its owner.

Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

Parameters

- `name`
  The name of the text search configuration to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

- `parser_name`
  The name of the text search parser to use for this configuration.

- `source_config`
  The name of an existing text search configuration to copy.

Notes

The `PARSER` and `COPY` options are mutually exclusive, because when an existing configuration is copied, its parser selection is copied too.

Compatibility

There is no `CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

`ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION`, `DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION`
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY — define a new text search dictionary

Synopsis

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name (  
   TEMPLATE = template  
   [, option = value [, ... ]]
)

Description

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY creates a new text search dictionary. A text search dictionary specifies
a way of recognizing interesting or uninteresting words for searching. A dictionary depends on a text
search template, which specifies the functions that actually perform the work. Typically the dictionary
provides some options that control the detailed behavior of the template’s functions.

If a schema name is given then the text search dictionary is created in the specified schema. Otherwise
it is created in the current schema.

The user who defines a text search dictionary becomes its owner.

Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

Parameters

name
   The name of the text search dictionary to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

template
   The name of the text search template that will define the basic behavior of this dictionary.

option
   The name of a template-specific option to be set for this dictionary.

value
   The value to use for a template-specific option. If the value is not a simple identifier or number, it
   must be quoted (but you can always quote it, if you wish).

The options can appear in any order.

Examples

The following example command creates a Snowball-based dictionary with a nonstandard list of stop
words.

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_russian (  
   template = snowball,  
   language = russian,  
   stopwords = myrussian
);

Compatibility

There is no CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY statement in the SQL standard.
See Also
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
**CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER**

CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER — define a new text search parser

**Synopsis**

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER name (START = start_function,
                               GETTOKEN = gettoken_function,
                               END = end_function,
                               LEXTYPES = lextypes_function
                              [, HEADLINE = headline_function ]
 )
```

**Description**

CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER creates a new text search parser. A text search parser defines a method for splitting a text string into tokens and assigning types (categories) to the tokens. A parser is not particularly useful by itself, but must be bound into a text search configuration along with some text search dictionaries to be used for searching.

If a schema name is given then the text search parser is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

You must be a superuser to use CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER. (This restriction is made because an erroneous text search parser definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

**Parameters**

- **name**
  
  The name of the text search parser to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

- **start_function**
  
  The name of the start function for the parser.

- **gettoken_function**
  
  The name of the get-next-token function for the parser.

- **end_function**
  
  The name of the end function for the parser.

- **lextypes_function**
  
  The name of the lextypes function for the parser (a function that returns information about the set of token types it produces).

- **headline_function**
  
  The name of the headline function for the parser (a function that summarizes a set of tokens).

The function names can be schema-qualified if necessary. Argument types are not given, since the argument list for each type of function is predetermined. All except the headline function are required.

The arguments can appear in any order, not only the one shown above.
Compatibility

There is no CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER, DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE — define a new text search template

Synopsis

CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE name {
    [ INIT = init_function , ]
    LEXIZE = lexize_function
}

Description

CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE creates a new text search template. Text search templates define
the functions that implement text search dictionaries. A template is not useful by itself, but must be
instantiated as a dictionary to be used. The dictionary typically specifies parameters to be given to the
template functions.

If a schema name is given then the text search template is created in the specified schema. Otherwise
it is created in the current schema.

You must be a superuser to use CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE. This restriction is made because
an erroneous text search template definition could confuse or even crash the server. The reason for
separating templates from dictionaries is that a template encapsulates the “unsafe” aspects of defining
dictionaries. The parameters that can be set when defining a dictionary are safe for unprivileged users
to set, and so creating a dictionary need not be a privileged operation.

Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

Parameters

name
    The name of the text search template to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

init_function
    The name of the init function for the template.

lexize_function
    The name of the lexize function for the template.

The function names can be schema-qualified if necessary. Argument types are not given, since the
argument list for each type of function is predetermined. The lexize function is required, but the init
function is optional.

The arguments can appear in any order, not only the one shown above.

Compatibility

There is no CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
CREATE TRANSFORM

CREATE TRANSFORM — define a new transform

Synopsis

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TRANSFORM FOR type_name LANGUAGE lang_name ( 
    FROM SQL WITH FUNCTION from_sql_function_name [ (argument_type [, ...]) ],
    TO SQL WITH FUNCTION to_sql_function_name [ (argument_type [, ...]) ]
);

Description

CREATE TRANSFORM defines a new transform. CREATE OR REPLACE TRANSFORM will either create a new transform, or replace an existing definition.

A transform specifies how to adapt a data type to a procedural language. For example, when writing a function in PL/Python using the hstore type, PL/Python has no prior knowledge how to present hstore values in the Python environment. Language implementations usually default to using the text representation, but that is inconvenient when, for example, an associative array or a list would be more appropriate.

A transform specifies two functions:

• A “from SQL” function that converts the type from the SQL environment to the language. This function will be invoked on the arguments of a function written in the language.

• A “to SQL” function that converts the type from the language to the SQL environment. This function will be invoked on the return value of a function written in the language.

It is not necessary to provide both of these functions. If one is not specified, the language-specific default behavior will be used if necessary. (To prevent a transformation in a certain direction from happening at all, you could also write a transform function that always errors out.)

To be able to create a transform, you must own and have USAGE privilege on the type, have USAGE privilege on the language, and own and have EXECUTE privilege on the from-SQL and to-SQL functions, if specified.

Parameters

type_name

The name of the data type of the transform.

lang_name

The name of the language of the transform.

from_sql_function_name((argument_type [, ...]))

The name of the function for converting the type from the SQL environment to the language. It must take one argument of type internal and return type internal. The actual argument will be of the type for the transform, and the function should be coded as if it were. (But it is not allowed to declare an SQL-level function returning internal without at least one argument of type internal.) The actual return value will be something specific to the language implementation. If no argument list is specified, the function name must be unique in its schema.

to_sql_function_name((argument_type [, ...]))

The name of the function for converting the type from the language to the SQL environment. It must take one argument of type internal and return the type that is the type for the transform. The actual argument value will be something specific to the language implementation. If no argument list is specified, the function name must be unique in its schema.
Notes
Use **DROP TRANSFORM** to remove transforms.

Examples
To create a transform for type `hstore` and language `plpythonu`, first set up the type and the language:

```sql
CREATE TYPE hstore ...;
CREATE EXTENSION plpythonu;
```

Then create the necessary functions:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION hstore_to_plpython(val internal) RETURNS internal
  LANGUAGE C STRICT IMMUTABLE
  AS ...;

CREATE FUNCTION plpython_to_hstore(val internal) RETURNS hstore
  LANGUAGE C STRICT IMMUTABLE
  AS ...;
```

And finally create the transform to connect them all together:

```sql
CREATE TRANSFORM FOR hstore LANGUAGE plpythonu (
    FROM SQL WITH FUNCTION hstore_to_plpython(internal),
    TO SQL WITH FUNCTION plpython_to_hstore(internal)
);
```

In practice, these commands would be wrapped up in an extension.

The **contrib** section contains a number of extensions that provide transforms, which can serve as real-world examples.

Compatibility
This form of **CREATE TRANSFORM** is a Postgres Pro extension. There is a **CREATE TRANSFORM** command in the SQL standard, but it is for adapting data types to client languages. That usage is not supported by Postgres Pro.

See Also
**CREATE FUNCTION, CREATE LANGUAGE, CREATE TYPE, DROP TRANSFORM**
CREATE TRIGGER

CREATE TRIGGER — define a new trigger

Synopsis

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ CONSTRUCT ] TRIGGER name { BEFORE | AFTER | INSTEAD OF }
{ event [ OR ... ] }
ON table_name
[ FROM referenced_table_name ]
[ NOT DEFERRABLE | [ DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY IMMEDIATE | INITIALLY DEFERRED ] ]
[ REFERENCING { { OLD | NEW } TABLE [ AS ] transition_relation_name } [ ... ] ]
[ FOR [ EACH ] { ROW | STATEMENT } ]
[ WHEN { condition } ]
EXECUTE { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE } function_name { arguments }

where event can be one of:

INSERT
UPDATE [ OF column_name [, ... ] ]
DELETE
TRUNCATE

Description

CREATE TRIGGER creates a new trigger. CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER will either create a new trigger,
or replace an existing trigger. The trigger will be associated with the specified table, view, or foreign
table and will execute the specified function function_name when certain operations are performed on
that table.

To replace the current definition of an existing trigger, use CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER, specifying the
existing trigger's name and parent table. All other properties are replaced.

The trigger can be specified to fire before the operation is attempted on a row (before constraints are
checked and the INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE is attempted); or after the operation has completed (after
constraints are checked and the INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE has completed); or instead of the operation
(in the case of inserts, updates or deletes on a view). If the trigger fires before or instead of the event,
the trigger can skip the operation for the current row, or change the row being inserted (for INSERT and
UPDATE operations only). If the trigger fires after the event, all changes, including the effects of other
triggers, are “visible” to the trigger.

A trigger that is marked FOR EACH ROW is called once for every row that the operation modifies. For
example, a DELETE that affects 10 rows will cause any ON DELETE triggers on the target relation to be
called 10 separate times, once for each deleted row. In contrast, a trigger that is marked FOR EACH
STATEMENT only executes once for any given operation, regardless of how many rows it modifies (in
particular, an operation that modifies zero rows will still result in the execution of any applicable FOR
EACH STATEMENT triggers).

Triggers that are specified to fire INSTEAD OF the trigger event must be marked FOR EACH ROW, and can
only be defined on views. BEFORE and AFTER triggers on a view must be marked as FOR EACH STATEMENT.

In addition, triggers may be defined to fire for TRUNCATE, though only FOR EACH STATEMENT.

The following table summarizes which types of triggers may be used on tables, views, and foreign tables:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Row-level</th>
<th>Statement-level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BEFORE</td>
<td>INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE</td>
<td>Tables and foreign tables</td>
<td>Tables, views, and foreign tables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CREATE TRIGGER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Row-level</th>
<th>Statement-level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TRUNCATE</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFTER</td>
<td>INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE</td>
<td>Tables and foreign tables</td>
<td>Tables, views, and foreign tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTEAD OF</td>
<td>INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Views</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TRUNCATE</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Also, a trigger definition can specify a Boolean *WHEN* condition, which will be tested to see whether the trigger should be fired. In row-level triggers the *WHEN* condition can examine the old and/or new values of columns of the row. Statement-level triggers can also have *WHEN* conditions, although the feature is not so useful for them since the condition cannot refer to any values in the table.

If multiple triggers of the same kind are defined for the same event, they will be fired in alphabetical order by name.

When the *CONSTRAINT* option is specified, this command creates a *constraint trigger*. This is the same as a regular trigger except that the timing of the trigger firing can be adjusted using *SET CONSTRAINTS*. Constraint triggers must be *AFTER ROW* triggers on plain tables (not foreign tables). They can be fired either at the end of the statement causing the triggering event, or at the end of the containing transaction; in the latter case they are said to be *deferred*. A pending deferred-trigger firing can also be forced to happen immediately by using *SET CONSTRAINTS*. Constraint triggers are expected to raise an exception when the constraints they implement are violated.

The *REFERENCING* option enables collection of *transition relations*, which are row sets that include all of the rows inserted, deleted, or modified by the current SQL statement. This feature lets the trigger see a global view of what the statement did, not just one row at a time. This option is only allowed for an *AFTER* trigger that is not a constraint trigger; also, if the trigger is an *UPDATE* trigger, it must not specify a *column_name* list. *OLD TABLE* may only be specified once, and only for a trigger that can fire on *UPDATE* or *DELETE*; it creates a transition relation containing the *before-images* of all rows updated or deleted by the statement. Similarly, *NEW TABLE* may only be specified once, and only for a trigger that can fire on *UPDATE* or *INSERT*; it creates a transition relation containing the *after-images* of all rows updated or inserted by the statement.

*SELECT* does not modify any rows so you cannot create *SELECT* triggers. Rules and views may provide workable solutions to problems that seem to need *SELECT* triggers.

Refer to Chapter 37 for more information about triggers.

**Parameters**

*name*

The name to give the new trigger. This must be distinct from the name of any other trigger for the same table. The name cannot be schema-qualified — the trigger inherits the schema of its table. For a constraint trigger, this is also the name to use when modifying the trigger's behavior using *SET CONSTRAINTS*.

*BEFORE*

*AFTER*

*INSTEAD OF*

Determines whether the function is called before, after, or instead of the event. A constraint trigger can only be specified as *AFTER*.

*event*

One of *INSERT*, *UPDATE*, *DELETE*, or *TRUNCATE*; this specifies the event that will fire the trigger. Multiple events can be specified using *OR*, except when transition relations are requested.
CREATE TRIGGER

For UPDATE events, it is possible to specify a list of columns using this syntax:

```sql
UPDATE OF column_name1 [, column_name2 ... ]
```

The trigger will only fire if at least one of the listed columns is mentioned as a target of the UPDATE command or if one of the listed columns is a generated column that depends on a column that is the target of the UPDATE.

INSTEAD OF UPDATE events do not allow a list of columns. A column list cannot be specified when requesting transition relations, either.

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table, view, or foreign table the trigger is for.

referenced_table_name

The (possibly schema-qualified) name of another table referenced by the constraint. This option is used for foreign-key constraints and is not recommended for general use. This can only be specified for constraint triggers.

DEFERRABLE
NOT DEFERRABLE
INITIALLY IMMEDIATE
INITIALLY DEFERRED

The default timing of the trigger. See the CREATE TABLE documentation for details of these constraint options. This can only be specified for constraint triggers.

REFERENCING

This keyword immediately precedes the declaration of one or two relation names that provide access to the transition relations of the triggering statement.

OLD TABLE
NEW TABLE

This clause indicates whether the following relation name is for the before-image transition relation or the after-image transition relation.

transition_relation_name

The (unqualified) name to be used within the trigger for this transition relation.

FOR EACH ROW
FOR EACH STATEMENT

This specifies whether the trigger function should be fired once for every row affected by the trigger event, or just once per SQL statement. If neither is specified, FOR EACH STATEMENT is the default. Constraint triggers can only be specified FOR EACH ROW.

c-condition

A Boolean expression that determines whether the trigger function will actually be executed. If WHEN is specified, the function will only be called if the condition returns true. In FOR EACH ROW triggers, the WHEN condition can refer to columns of the old and/or new row values by writing OLD.column_name or NEW.column_name respectively. Of course, INSERT triggers cannot refer to OLD and DELETE triggers cannot refer to NEW.

INSTEAD OF triggers do not support WHEN conditions.

Currently, WHEN expressions cannot contain subqueries.

Note that for constraint triggers, evaluation of the WHEN condition is not deferred, but occurs immediately after the row update operation is performed. If the condition does not evaluate to true then the trigger is not queued for deferred execution.
CREATE TRIGGER

*function_name*

A user-supplied function that is declared as taking no arguments and returning type `trigger`, which is executed when the trigger fires.

In the syntax of `CREATE TRIGGER`, the keywords `FUNCTION` and `PROCEDURE` are equivalent, but the referenced function must in any case be a function, not a procedure. The use of the keyword `PROCEDURE` here is historical and deprecated.

*arguments*

An optional comma-separated list of arguments to be provided to the function when the trigger is executed. The arguments are literal string constants. Simple names and numeric constants can be written here, too, but they will all be converted to strings. Please check the description of the implementation language of the trigger function to find out how these arguments can be accessed within the function; it might be different from normal function arguments.

**Notes**

To create or replace a trigger on a table, the user must have the `TRIGGER` privilege on the table. The user must also have `EXECUTE` privilege on the trigger function.

Use `DROP TRIGGER` to remove a trigger.

Creating a row-level trigger on a partitioned table will cause an identical “clone” trigger to be created on each of its existing partitions; and any partitions created or attached later will have an identical trigger, too. If there is a conflictingly-named trigger on a child partition already, an error occurs unless `CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER` is used, in which case that trigger is replaced with a clone trigger. When a partition is detached from its parent, its clone triggers are removed.

A column-specific trigger (one defined using the `UPDATE OF column_name` syntax) will fire when any of its columns are listed as targets in the `UPDATE` command's `SET` list. It is possible for a column's value to change even when the trigger is not fired, because changes made to the row's contents by `BEFORE UPDATE` triggers are not considered. Conversely, a command such as `UPDATE ... SET x = x ...` will fire a trigger on column `x`, even though the column's value did not change.

In a `BEFORE` trigger, the `WHEN` condition is evaluated just before the function is or would be executed, so using `WHEN` is not materially different from testing the same condition at the beginning of the trigger function. Note in particular that the `NEW` row seen by the condition is the current value, as possibly modified by earlier triggers. Also, a `BEFORE` trigger's `WHEN` condition is not allowed to examine the system columns of the `NEW` row (such as `ctid`), because those won't have been set yet.

In an `AFTER` trigger, the `WHEN` condition is evaluated just after the row update occurs, and it determines whether an event is queued to fire the trigger at the end of statement. So when an `AFTER` trigger's `WHEN` condition does not return true, it is not necessary to queue an event nor to re-fetch the row at end of statement. This can result in significant speedups in statements that modify many rows, if the trigger only needs to be fired for a few of the rows.

In some cases it is possible for a single SQL command to fire more than one kind of trigger. For instance an `INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause may cause both insert and update operations, so it will fire both kinds of triggers as needed. The transition relations supplied to triggers are specific to their event type; thus an `INSERT` trigger will see only the inserted rows, while an `UPDATE` trigger will see only the updated rows.

Row updates or deletions caused by foreign-key enforcement actions, such as `ON UPDATE CASCADE` or `ON DELETE SET NULL`, are treated as part of the SQL command that caused them (note that such actions are never deferred). Relevant triggers on the affected table will be fired, so that this provides another way in which an SQL command might fire triggers not directly matching its type. In simple cases, triggers that request transition relations will see all changes caused in their table by a single original SQL command as a single transition relation. However, there are cases in which the presence of an `AFTER ROW` trigger
that requests transition relations will cause the foreign-key enforcement actions triggered by a single SQL command to be split into multiple steps, each with its own transition relation(s). In such cases, any statement-level triggers that are present will be fired once per creation of a transition relation set, ensuring that the triggers see each affected row in a transition relation once and only once.

Statement-level triggers on a view are fired only if the action on the view is handled by a row-level INSTEAD OF trigger. If the action is handled by an INSTEAD rule, then whatever statements are emitted by the rule are executed in place of the original statement naming the view, so that the triggers that will be fired are those on tables named in the replacement statements. Similarly, if the view is automatically updatable, then the action is handled by automatically rewriting the statement into an action on the view's base table, so that the base table's statement-level triggers are the ones that are fired.

Modifying a partitioned table or a table with inheritance children fires statement-level triggers attached to the explicitly named table, but not statement-level triggers for its partitions or child tables. In contrast, row-level triggers are fired on the rows in affected partitions or child tables, even if they are not explicitly named in the query. If a statement-level trigger has been defined with transition relations named by a REFERRENCING clause, then before and after images of rows are visible from all affected partitions or child tables. In the case of inheritance children, the row images include only columns that are present in the table that the trigger is attached to.

Currently, row-level triggers with transition relations cannot be defined on partitions or inheritance child tables. Also, triggers on partitioned tables may not be INSTEAD OF.

Currently, the OR REPLACE option is not supported for constraint triggers.

Replacing an existing trigger within a transaction that has already performed updating actions on the trigger's table is not recommended. Trigger firing decisions, or portions of firing decisions, that have already been made will not be reconsidered, so the effects could be surprising.

There are a few built-in trigger functions that can be used to solve common problems without having to write your own trigger code; see Section 9.28.

Examples

Execute the function check_account_update whenever a row of the table accounts is about to be updated:

```
CREATE TRIGGER check_update
    BEFORE UPDATE ON accounts
    FOR EACH ROW
    EXECUTE FUNCTION check_account_update();
```

Modify that trigger definition to only execute the function if column balance is specified as a target in the UPDATE command:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER check_update
    BEFORE UPDATE OF balance ON accounts
    FOR EACH ROW
    EXECUTE FUNCTION check_account_update();
```

This form only executes the function if column balance has in fact changed value:

```
CREATE TRIGGER check_update
    BEFORE UPDATE ON accounts
    FOR EACH ROW
    WHEN (OLD.balance IS DISTINCT FROM NEW.balance)
    EXECUTE FUNCTION check_account_update();
```

Call a function to log updates of accounts, but only if something changed:

```
CREATE TRIGGER log_update
    AFTER UPDATE ON accounts
    FOR EACH ROW
```
CREATE TRIGGER

WHEN (OLD.* IS DISTINCT FROM NEW.*)
EXECUTE FUNCTION log_account_update();

Execute the function view_insert_row for each row to insert rows into the tables underlying a view:
CREATE TRIGGER view_insert
INSTEAD OF INSERT ON my_view
FOR EACH ROW
EXECUTE FUNCTION view_insert_row();

Execute the function check_transfer_balances_to_zero for each statement to confirm that the transfer rows offset to a net of zero:
CREATE TRIGGER transfer_insert
AFTER INSERT ON transfer
REFERENCING NEW TABLE AS inserted
FOR EACH STATEMENT
EXECUTE FUNCTION check_transfer_balances_to_zero();

Execute the function check_matching_pairs for each row to confirm that changes are made to matching pairs at the same time (by the same statement):
CREATE TRIGGER paired_items_update
AFTER UPDATE ON paired_items
REFERENCING NEW TABLE AS newtab OLD TABLE AS oldtab
FOR EACH ROW
EXECUTE FUNCTION check_matching_pairs();

Section 37.4 contains a complete example of a trigger function written in C.

Compatibility

The CREATE TRIGGER statement in Postgres Pro implements a subset of the SQL standard. The following functionalities are currently missing:

- While transition table names for AFTER triggers are specified using the REFERENCING clause in the standard way, the row variables used in FOR EACH ROW triggers may not be specified in a REFERENCING clause. They are available in a manner that is dependent on the language in which the trigger function is written, but is fixed for any one language. Some languages effectively behave as though there is a REFERENCING clause containing OLD ROW AS OLD NEW ROW AS NEW.
- The standard allows transition tables to be used with column-specific UPDATE triggers, but then the set of rows that should be visible in the transition tables depends on the trigger's column list. This is not currently implemented by Postgres Pro.
- Postgres Pro only allows the execution of a user-defined function for the triggered action. The standard allows the execution of a number of other SQL commands, such as CREATE TABLE, as the triggered action. This limitation is not hard to work around by creating a user-defined function that executes the desired commands.

SQL specifies that multiple triggers should be fired in time-of-creation order. Postgres Pro uses name order, which was judged to be more convenient.

SQL specifies that BEFORE DELETE triggers on cascaded deletes fire after the cascaded DELETE completes. The Postgres Pro behavior is for BEFORE DELETE to always fire before the delete action, even a cascading one. This is considered more consistent. There is also nonstandard behavior if BEFORE triggers modify rows or prevent updates during an update that is caused by a referential action. This can lead to constraint violations or stored data that does not honor the referential constraint.

The ability to specify multiple actions for a single trigger using OR is a Postgres Pro extension of the SQL standard.

The ability to fire triggers for TRUNCATE is a Postgres Pro extension of the SQL standard, as is the ability to define statement-level triggers on views.
CREATE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER is a Postgres Pro extension of the SQL standard. So is the OR REPLACE option.

See Also
ALTER TRIGGER, DROP TRIGGER, CREATE FUNCTION, SET CONSTRAINTS
CREATE TYPE

CREATE TYPE — define a new data type

Synopsis

CREATE TYPE name AS
    ( [ attribute_name data_type [ COLLATE collation ] [, ... ] ] )

CREATE TYPE name AS ENUM
    ( [ 'label' [, ... ] ] )

CREATE TYPE name AS RANGE (  
    SUBTYPE = subtype  
    [ , SUBTYPE_OPCLASS = subtype_operator_class ]  
    [ , COLLATION = collation ]  
    [ , CANONICAL = canonical_function ]  
    [ , SUBTYPE_DIFF = subtype_diff_function ]  
    [ , MULTIRANGE_TYPE_NAME = multirange_type_name ]
    )

CREATE TYPE name (  
    INPUT = input_function,  
    OUTPUT = output_function  
    [ , RECEIVE = receive_function ]  
    [ , SEND = send_function ]  
    [ , TYPMOD_IN = type_modifier_input_function ]  
    [ , TYPMOD_OUT = type_modifier_output_function ]  
    [ , ANALYZE = analyze_function ]  
    [ , SUBSCRIPT = subscript_function ]  
    [ , INTERNALLENGTH = { internallength | VARIABLE } ]  
    [ , PASSEDBYVALUE ]  
    [ , ALIGNMENT = alignment ]  
    [ , STORAGE = storage ]  
    [ , LIKE = like_type ]  
    [ , CATEGORY = category ]  
    [ , PREFERRED = preferred ]  
    [ , DEFAULT = default ]  
    [ , ELEMENT = element ]  
    [ , DELIMITER = delimiter ]  
    [ , COLLATABLE = collatable ]
    )

CREATE TYPE name

Description

CREATE TYPE registers a new data type for use in the current database. The user who defines a type becomes its owner.

If a schema name is given then the type is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The type name must be distinct from the name of any existing type or domain in the same schema. (Because tables have associated data types, the type name must also be distinct from the name of any existing table in the same schema.)

There are five forms of CREATE TYPE, as shown in the syntax synopsis above. They respectively create a composite type, an enum type, a range type, a base type, or a shell type. The first four of these are
discussed in turn below. A shell type is simply a placeholder for a type to be defined later; it is created by issuing `CREATE TYPE` with no parameters except for the type name. Shell types are needed as forward references when creating range types and base types, as discussed in those sections.

Composite Types

The first form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a composite type. The composite type is specified by a list of attribute names and data types. An attribute's collation can be specified too, if its data type is collatable. A composite type is essentially the same as the row type of a table, but using `CREATE TYPE` avoids the need to create an actual table when all that is wanted is to define a type. A stand-alone composite type is useful, for example, as the argument or return type of a function.

To be able to create a composite type, you must have `USAGE` privilege on all attribute types.

Enumerated Types

The second form of `CREATE TYPE` creates an enumerated (enum) type, as described in Section 8.7. Enum types take a list of quoted labels, each of which must be less than `NAMEDATALEN` bytes long (64 bytes in a standard Postgres Pro build). (It is possible to create an enumerated type with zero labels, but such a type cannot be used to hold values before at least one label is added using `ALTER TYPE`.)

Range Types

The third form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a new range type, as described in Section 8.17.

The range type's `subtype` can be any type with an associated b-tree operator class (to determine the ordering of values for the range type). Normally the subtype's default b-tree operator class is used to determine ordering; to use a non-default operator class, specify its name with `subtype_opclass`. If the subtype is collatable, and you want to use a non-default collation in the range's ordering, specify the desired collation with the `collation` option.

The optional `canonical` function must take one argument of the range type being defined, and return a value of the same type. This is used to convert range values to a canonical form, when applicable. See Section 8.17.8 for more information. Creating a `canonical` function is a bit tricky, since it must be defined before the range type can be declared. To do this, you must first create a shell type, which is a placeholder type that has no properties except a name and an owner. This is done by issuing the command `CREATE TYPE` name, with no additional parameters. Then the function can be declared using the shell type as argument and result, and finally the range type can be declared using the same name. This automatically replaces the shell type entry with a valid range type.

The optional `subtype_diff` function must take two values of the `subtype` type as argument, and return a double precision value representing the difference between the two given values. While this is optional, providing it allows much greater efficiency of GiST indexes on columns of the range type. See Section 8.17.8 for more information.

The optional `multirange_type_name` parameter specifies the name of the corresponding multirange type. If not specified, this name is chosen automatically as follows. If the range type name contains the substring `range`, then the multirange type name is formed by replacement of the `range` substring with `multirange` in the range type name. Otherwise, the multirange type name is formed by appending a `_multirange` suffix to the range type name.

Base Types

The fourth form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a new base type (scalar type). To create a new base type, you must be a superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous type definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

The parameters can appear in any order, not only that illustrated above, and most are optional. You must register two or more functions (using `CREATE FUNCTION`) before defining the type. The support functions `input_function` and `output_function` are required, while the functions `receive_function`, `send_function`, `type_modifier_input_function`, `type_modifier_send_function`, and `type_modifier_output_function` are optional.
CREATE TYPE

type_modifier_output_function, analyze_function, and subscript_function are optional. Generally these functions have to be coded in C or another low-level language.

The input_function converts the type's external textual representation to the internal representation used by the operators and functions defined for the type. output_function performs the reverse transformation. The input function can be declared as taking one argument of type cstring, or as taking three arguments of types cstring, oid, integer. The first argument is the input text as a C string, the second argument is the type's own OID (except for array types, which instead receive their element type's OID), and the third is the typmod of the destination column, if known (-1 will be passed if not). The input function must return a value of the data type itself. Usually, an input function should be declared STRICT; if it is not, it will be called with a NULL first parameter when reading a NULL input value. The function must still return NULL in this case, unless it raises an error. (This case is mainly meant to support domain input functions, which might need to reject NULL inputs.) The output function must be declared as taking one argument of the new data type. The output function must return type cstring. Output functions are not invoked for NULL values.

The optional receive_function converts the type's external binary representation to the internal representation. If this function is not supplied, the type cannot participate in binary input. The binary representation should be chosen to be cheap to convert to internal form, while being reasonably portable. (For example, the standard integer data types use network byte order as the external binary representation, while the internal representation is in the machine's native byte order.) The receive function should perform adequate checking to ensure that the value is valid. The receive function can be declared as taking one argument of type internal, or as taking three arguments of types internal, oid, integer. The first argument is a pointer to a StringInfo buffer holding the received byte string; the optional arguments are the same as for the text input function. The receive function must return a value of the data type itself. Usually, a receive function should be declared STRICT; if it is not, it will be called with a NULL first parameter when reading a NULL input value. The function must still return NULL in this case, unless it raises an error. (This case is mainly meant to support domain receive functions, which might need to reject NULL inputs.) Similarly, the optional send_function converts from the internal representation to the external binary representation. If this function is not supplied, the type cannot participate in binary output. The send function must be declared as taking one argument of the new data type. The send function must return type bytea. Send functions are not invoked for NULL values.

You should at this point be wondering how the input and output functions can be declared to have results or arguments of the new type, when they have to be created before the new type can be created. The answer is that the type should first be defined as a shell type, which is a placeholder type that has no properties except a name and an owner. This is done by issuing the command CREATE TYPE name, with no additional parameters. Then the C I/O functions can be defined referencing the shell type. Finally, CREATE TYPE with a full definition replaces the shell entry with a complete, valid type definition, after which the new type can be used normally.

The optional type_modifier_input_function and type_modifier_output_function are needed if the type supports modifiers, that is optional constraints attached to a type declaration, such as char(5) or numeric(30,2). Postgres Pro allows user-defined types to take one or more simple constants or identifiers as modifiers. However, this information must be capable of being packed into a single non-negative integer value for storage in the system catalogs. The type_modifier_input_function is passed the declared modifier(s) in the form of a cstring array. It must check the values for validity (throwing an error if they are wrong), and if they are correct, return a single non-negative integer value that will be stored as the column “typmod”. Type modifiers will be rejected if the type does not have a type_modifier_input_function. The type Modifier output_function converts the internal integer typmod value back to the correct form for user display. It must return a cstring value that is the exact string to append to the type name; for example numeric's function might return (30,2). It is also allowed to omit the type_modifier_output_function, in which case the default display format is just the stored typmod integer value enclosed in parentheses.

The optional analyze_function performs type-specific statistics collection for columns of the data type. By default, ANALYZE will attempt to gather statistics using the type's “equals” and “less-than” operators, if there is a default b-tree operator class for the type. For non-scalar types this behavior is likely to be
unsuitable, so it can be overridden by specifying a custom analysis function. The analysis function must be declared to take a single argument of type internal, and return a boolean result.

The optional subscript function allows the data type to be subscripted in SQL commands. Specifying this function does not cause the type to be considered a “true” array type; for example, it will not be a candidate for the result type of ARRAY[] constructs. But if subscripting a value of the type is a natural notation for extracting data from it, then a subscript function can be written to define what that means. The subscript function must be declared to take a single argument of type internal, and return an internal result, which is a pointer to a struct of methods (functions) that implement subscripting. The detailed API for subscript functions appears in src/include/nodes/subscripting.h. It may also be useful to read the array implementation in src/backend/utils/adt/arraysubs.c, or the simpler code in contrib/hstore/hstore_subs.c. Additional information appears in Array Types below.

While the details of the new type’s internal representation are only known to the I/O functions and other functions you create to work with the type, there are several properties of the internal representation that must be declared to Postgres Pro. Foremost of these is internallength. Base data types can be fixed-length, in which case internallength is a positive integer, or variable-length, indicated by setting internallength to VARIABLE. (Internally, this is represented by setting typlen to -1.) The internal representation of all variable-length types must start with a 4-byte integer giving the total length of this value of the type. (Note that the length field is often encoded, as described in Section 66.2; it's unwise to access it directly.)

The optional flag PASSEDBYVALUE indicates that values of this data type are passed by value, rather than by reference. Types passed by value must be fixed-length, and their internal representation cannot be larger than the size of the Datum type (4 bytes on some machines, 8 bytes on others).

The alignment parameter specifies the storage alignment required for the data type. The allowed values equate to alignment on 1, 2, 4, or 8 byte boundaries. Note that variable-length types must have an alignment of at least 4, since they necessarily contain an int4 as their first component.

The storage parameter allows selection of storage strategies for variable-length data types. (Only plain is allowed for fixed-length types.) plain specifies that data of the type will always be stored in-line and not compressed. extended specifies that the system will first try to compress a long data value, and will move the value out of the main table row if it’s still too long. external allows the value to be moved out of the main table, but the system will not try to compress it. main allows compression, but discourages moving the value out of the main table. (Data items with this storage strategy might still be moved out of the main table if there is no other way to make a row fit, but they will be kept in the main table preferentially over extended and external items.)

All storage values other than plain imply that the functions of the data type can handle values that have been toasted, as described in Section 66.2 and Section 36.13.1. The specific other value given merely determines the default TOAST storage strategy for columns of a toastable data type; users can pick other strategies for individual columns using ALTER TABLE SET STORAGE.

The like_type parameter provides an alternative method for specifying the basic representation properties of a data type: copy them from some existing type. The values of internallength, passedbyvalue, alignment, and storage are copied from the named type. (It is possible, though usually undesirable, to override some of these values by specifying them along with the LIKE clause.) Specifying representation this way is especially useful when the low-level implementation of the new type “piggybacks” on an existing type in some fashion.

The category and preferred parameters can be used to help control which implicit cast will be applied in ambiguous situations. Each data type belongs to a category named by a single ASCII character, and each type is either “preferred” or not within its category. The parser will prefer casting to preferred types (but only from other types within the same category) when this rule is helpful in resolving overloaded functions or operators. For more details see Chapter 10. For types that have no implicit casts to or from any other types, it is sufficient to leave these settings at the defaults. However, for a group of related types that have implicit casts, it is often helpful to mark them all as belonging to a category and select one or two of the “most general” types as being preferred within the category. The category parameter
CREATE TYPE

is especially useful when adding a user-defined type to an existing built-in category, such as the numeric or string types. However, it is also possible to create new entirely-user-defined type categories. Select any ASCII character other than an upper-case letter to name such a category.

A default value can be specified, in case a user wants columns of the data type to default to something other than the null value. Specify the default with the DEFAULT key word. (Such a default can be overridden by an explicit DEFAULT clause attached to a particular column.)

To indicate that a type is a fixed-length array type, specify the type of the array elements using the ELEMENT key word. For example, to define an array of 4-byte integers (int4), specify ELEMENT = int4. For more details, see Array Types below.

To indicate the delimiter to be used between values in the external representation of arrays of this type, delimiter can be set to a specific character. The default delimiter is the comma (,). Note that the delimiter is associated with the array element type, not the array type itself.

If the optional Boolean parameter collatable is true, column definitions and expressions of the type may carry collation information through use of the COLLATE clause. It is up to the implementations of the functions operating on the type to actually make use of the collation information; this does not happen automatically merely by marking the type collatable.

Array Types

Whenever a user-defined type is created, Postgres Pro automatically creates an associated array type, whose name consists of the element type's name prepended with an underscore, and truncated if necessary to keep it less than NAMEDATALEN bytes long. (If the name so generated collides with an existing type name, the process is repeated until a non-colliding name is found.) This implicitly-created array type is variable length and uses the built-in input and output functions array_in and array_out. Furthermore, this type is what the system uses for constructs such as ARRAY[] over the user-defined type. The array type tracks any changes in its element type's owner or schema, and is dropped if the element type is.

You might reasonably ask why there is an ELEMENT option, if the system makes the correct array type automatically. The main case where it's useful to use ELEMENT is when you are making a fixed-length type that happens to be internally an array of a number of identical things, and you want to allow these things to be accessed directly by subscripting, in addition to whatever operations you plan to provide for the type as a whole. For example, type point is represented as just two floating-point numbers, which can be accessed using point[0] and point[1]. Note that this facility only works for fixed-length types whose internal form is exactly a sequence of identical fixed-length fields. For historical reasons (i.e., this is clearly wrong but it's far too late to change it), subscripting of fixed-length array types starts from zero, rather than from one as for variable-length arrays.

Specifying the SUBSCRIPT option allows a data type to be subscripted, even though the system does not otherwise regard it as an array type. The behavior just described for fixed-length arrays is actually implemented by the SUBSCRIPT handler function raw_array_subscript_handler, which is used automatically if you specify ELEMENT for a fixed-length type without also writing SUBSCRIPT.

When specifying a custom SUBSCRIPT function, it is not necessary to specify ELEMENT unless the SUBSCRIPT handler function needs to consult typelem to find out what to return. Be aware that specifying ELEMENT causes the system to assume that the new type contains, or is somehow physically dependent on, the element type; thus for example changing properties of the element type won't be allowed if there are any columns of the dependent type.

Parameters

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a type to be created.

attribute_name

The name of an attribute (column) for the composite type.
CREATE TYPE

data_type
    The name of an existing data type to become a column of the composite type.

collation
    The name of an existing collation to be associated with a column of a composite type, or with a range type.

label
    A string literal representing the textual label associated with one value of an enum type.

subtype
    The name of the element type that the range type will represent ranges of.

subtype_operator_class
    The name of a b-tree operator class for the subtype.

canonical_function
    The name of the canonicalization function for the range type.

subtype_diff_function
    The name of a difference function for the subtype.

multirange_type_name
    The name of the corresponding multirange type.

input_function
    The name of a function that converts data from the type's external textual form to its internal form.

output_function
    The name of a function that converts data from the type's internal form to its external textual form.

receive_function
    The name of a function that converts data from the type's external binary form to its internal form.

send_function
    The name of a function that converts data from the type's internal form to its external binary form.

type_modifier_input_function
    The name of a function that converts an array of modifier(s) for the type into internal form.

type_modifier_output_function
    The name of a function that converts the internal form of the type's modifier(s) to external textual form.

analyze_function
    The name of a function that performs statistical analysis for the data type.

subscript_function
    The name of a function that defines what subscripting a value of the data type does.

internal_length
    A numeric constant that specifies the length in bytes of the new type's internal representation. The default assumption is that it is variable-length.
CREATE TYPE

alignment

The storage alignment requirement of the data type. If specified, it must be char, int2, int4, or double; the default is int4.

storage

The storage strategy for the data type. If specified, must be plain, external, extended, or main; the default is plain.

like_type

The name of an existing data type that the new type will have the same representation as. The values of internallength, passedbyvalue, alignment, and storage are copied from that type, unless overridden by explicit specification elsewhere in this CREATE TYPE command.

category

The category code (a single ASCII character) for this type. The default is 'U' for “user-defined type”. Other standard category codes can be found in Table 50.65. You may also choose other ASCII characters in order to create custom categories.

preferred

True if this type is a preferred type within its type category, else false. The default is false. Be very careful about creating a new preferred type within an existing type category, as this could cause surprising changes in behavior.

default

The default value for the data type. If this is omitted, the default is null.

element

The type being created is an array; this specifies the type of the array elements.

delimiter

The delimiter character to be used between values in arrays made of this type.

collatable

True if this type’s operations can use collation information. The default is false.

Notes

Because there are no restrictions on use of a data type once it’s been created, creating a base type or range type is tantamount to granting public execute permission on the functions mentioned in the type definition. This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in a type definition. But you might want to think twice before designing a type in a way that would require “secret” information to be used while converting it to or from external form.

Before PostgreSQL version 8.3, the name of a generated array type was always exactly the element type’s name with one underscore character (_) prepended. (Type names were therefore restricted in length to one fewer character than other names.) While this is still usually the case, the array type name may vary from this in case of maximum-length names or collisions with user type names that begin with underscore. Writing code that depends on this convention is therefore deprecated. Instead, use pg_type.typarray to locate the array type associated with a given type.

It may be advisable to avoid using type and table names that begin with underscore. While the server will change generated array type names to avoid collisions with user-given names, there is still risk of confusion, particularly with old client software that may assume that type names beginning with underscores always represent arrays.
Before PostgreSQL version 8.2, the shell-type creation syntax `CREATE TYPE name` did not exist. The way to create a new base type was to create its input function first. In this approach, Postgres Pro will first see the name of the new data type as the return type of the input function. The shell type is implicitly created in this situation, and then it can be referenced in the definitions of the remaining I/O functions. This approach still works, but is deprecated and might be disallowed in some future release. Also, to avoid accidentally cluttering the catalogs with shell types as a result of simple typos in function definitions, a shell type will only be made this way when the input function is written in C.

**Examples**

This example creates a composite type and uses it in a function definition:

```
CREATE TYPE compfoo AS (f1 int, f2 text);

CREATE FUNCTION getfoo() RETURNS SETOF compfoo AS $$
    SELECT fooid, fooname FROM foo
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

This example creates an enumerated type and uses it in a table definition:

```
CREATE TYPE bug_status AS ENUM ('new', 'open', 'closed');

CREATE TABLE bug (id serial,
    description text,
    status bug_status);
```

This example creates a range type:

```
CREATE TYPE float8_range AS RANGE (subtype = float8, subtype_diff = float8mi);
```

This example creates the base data type `box` and then uses the type in a table definition:

```
CREATE TYPE box;

CREATE FUNCTION my_box_in_function(cstring) RETURNS box AS ... ;
CREATE FUNCTION my_box_out_function(box) RETURNS cstring AS ... ;

CREATE TYPE box (INTERNALLENGTH = 16,
    INPUT = my_box_in_function,
    OUTPUT = my_box_out_function);

CREATE TABLE myboxes (id integer,
    description box);
```

If the internal structure of `box` were an array of four `float4` elements, we might instead use:

```
CREATE TYPE box (INTERNALLENGTH = 16,
    INPUT = my_box_in_function,
    OUTPUT = my_box_out_function,
    ELEMENT = float4);
```

which would allow a box value's component numbers to be accessed by subscripting. Otherwise the type behaves the same as before.

This example creates a large object type and uses it in a table definition:
CREATE TYPE bigobj {
    INPUT = lo_filein, OUTPUT = lo_fileout,
    INTERNALLENGTH = VARIABLE
};
CREATE TABLE big_objs {
    id integer,
    obj bigobj
};

More examples, including suitable input and output functions, are in Section 36.13.

Compatibility

The first form of the CREATE TYPE command, which creates a composite type, conforms to the SQL standard. The other forms are Postgres Pro extensions. The CREATE TYPE statement in the SQL standard also defines other forms that are not implemented in Postgres Pro.

The ability to create a composite type with zero attributes is a Postgres Pro-specific deviation from the standard (analogous to the same case in CREATE TABLE).

See Also
ALTER TYPE, CREATE DOMAIN, CREATE FUNCTION, DROP TYPE
CREATE USER

CREATE USER — define a new database role

Synopsis

CREATE USER name [ [ WITH ] option [ ... ] ]

where option can be:

- SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
- CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
- CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
- INHERIT | NOINHERIT
- LOGIN | NOLOGIN
- REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
- BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
- CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
- [ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
- VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
- IN ROLE role_name [ , ... ]
- IN GROUP role_name [ , ... ]
- ROLE role_name [ , ... ]
- ADMIN role_name [ , ... ]
- USER role_name [ , ... ]
- SYSID uid
- PROFILE profile_name

Description

CREATE USER is now an alias for CREATE ROLE. The only difference is that when the command is spelled CREATE USER, LOGIN is assumed by default, whereas NOLOGIN is assumed when the command is spelled CREATE ROLE.

Compatibility

The CREATE USER statement is a Postgres Pro extension. The SQL standard leaves the definition of users to the implementation.

See Also

CREATE ROLE
CREATE USER MAPPING

CREATE USER MAPPING — define a new mapping of a user to a foreign server

Synopsis

CREATE USER MAPPING [ IF NOT EXISTS ] FOR { user_name | USER | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC }
   SERVER server_name
   [ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [ , ... ] ) ]

Description

CREATE USER MAPPING defines a mapping of a user to a foreign server. A user mapping typically encapsulates connection information that a foreign-data wrapper uses together with the information encapsulated by a foreign server to access an external data resource.

The owner of a foreign server can create user mappings for that server for any user. Also, a user can create a user mapping for their own user name if USAGE privilege on the server has been granted to the user.

Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a mapping of the given user to the given foreign server already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing user mapping is anything like the one that would have been created.

user_name

The name of an existing user that is mapped to foreign server. CURRENT_ROLE, CURRENT_USER, and USER match the name of the current user. When PUBLIC is specified, a so-called public mapping is created that is used when no user-specific mapping is applicable.

server_name

The name of an existing server for which the user mapping is to be created.

OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] )

This clause specifies the options of the user mapping. The options typically define the actual user name and password of the mapping. Option names must be unique. The allowed option names and values are specific to the server's foreign-data wrapper.

Examples

Create a user mapping for user bob, server foo:

CREATE USER MAPPING FOR bob SERVER foo OPTIONS (user 'bob', password 'secret');

Compatibility

CREATE USER MAPPING conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED).

See Also

ALTER USER MAPPING, DROP USER MAPPING, CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, CREATE SERVER
CREATE VIEW

CREATE VIEW — define a new view

Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ TEMP | TEMPORARY ] [ RECURSIVE ] VIEW name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
[ WITH ( view_option_name [= view_option_value] [, ... ] ) ]
AS query
[ WITH [ CASCADED | LOCAL ] CHECK OPTION ]
```

Description

CREATE VIEW defines a view of a query. The view is not physically materialized. Instead, the query is run every time the view is referenced in a query.

CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW is similar, but if a view of the same name already exists, it is replaced. The new query must generate the same columns that were generated by the existing view query (that is, the same column names in the same order and with the same data types), but it may add additional columns to the end of the list. The calculations giving rise to the output columns may be completely different.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE VIEW myschema.myview ...) then the view is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary views exist in a special schema, so a schema name cannot be given when creating a temporary view. The name of the view must be distinct from the name of any other view, table, sequence, index or foreign table in the same schema.

Parameters

TEMPORARY or TEMP

If specified, the view is created as a temporary view. Temporary views are automatically dropped at the end of the current session. Existing permanent relations with the same name are not visible to the current session while the temporary view exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names.

If any of the tables referenced by the view are temporary, the view is created as a temporary view (whether TEMPORARY is specified or not).

RECURSIVE

Creates a recursive view. The syntax

```
CREATE RECURSIVE VIEW [ schema . ] view_name (column_names) AS SELECT ...;
```

is equivalent to

```
CREATE VIEW [ schema . ] view_name AS WITH RECURSIVE view_name (column_names) AS
(SELECT ...) SELECT column_names FROM view_name;
```

A view column name list must be specified for a recursive view.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a view to be created.

column_name

An optional list of names to be used for columns of the view. If not given, the column names are deduced from the query.

WITH ( view_option_name [= view_option_value] [, ... ] )

This clause specifies optional parameters for a view; the following parameters are supported:
CREATE VIEW

check_option (enum)

   This parameter may be either local or cascaded, and is equivalent to specifying WITH [ CASCADED | LOCAL ] CHECK OPTION (see below). This option can be changed on existing views using ALTER VIEW.

security_barrier (boolean)

   This should be used if the view is intended to provide row-level security. See Section 39.5 for full details.

query

   A SELECT or VALUES command which will provide the columns and rows of the view.

WITH [ CASCADED | LOCAL ] CHECK OPTION

   This option controls the behavior of automatically updatable views. When this option is specified, INSERT and UPDATE commands on the view will be checked to ensure that new rows satisfy the view-defining condition (that is, the new rows are checked to ensure that they are visible through the view). If they are not, the update will be rejected. If the CHECK OPTION is not specified, INSERT and UPDATE commands on the view are allowed to create rows that are not visible through the view. The following check options are supported:

LOCAL

   New rows are only checked against the conditions defined directly in the view itself. Any conditions defined on underlying base views are not checked (unless they also specify the CHECK OPTION).

CASCADED

   New rows are checked against the conditions of the view and all underlying base views. If the CHECK OPTION is specified, and neither LOCAL nor CASCADED is specified, then CASCADED is assumed.

   The CHECK OPTION may not be used with RECURSIVE views.

   Note that the CHECK OPTION is only supported on views that are automatically updatable, and do not have INSTEAD OF triggers or INSTEAD rules. If an automatically updatable view is defined on top of a base view that has INSTEAD OF triggers, then the LOCAL CHECK OPTION may be used to check the conditions on the automatically updatable view, but the conditions on the base view with INSTEAD OF triggers will not be checked (a cascaded check option will not cascade down to a trigger-updatable view, and any check options defined directly on a trigger-updatable view will be ignored). If the view or any of its base relations has an INSTEAD rule that causes the INSERT or UPDATE command to be rewritten, then all check options will be ignored in the rewritten query, including any checks from automatically updatable views defined on top of the relation with the INSTEAD rule.

Notes

   Use the DROP VIEW statement to drop views.

   Be careful that the names and types of the view's columns will be assigned the way you want. For example:

   CREATE VIEW vista AS SELECT 'Hello World';

   is bad form because the column name defaults to ?column?; also, the column data type defaults to text, which might not be what you wanted. Better style for a string literal in a view's result is something like:

   CREATE VIEW vista AS SELECT text 'Hello World' AS hello;

   Access to tables referenced in the view is determined by permissions of the view owner. In some cases, this can be used to provide secure but restricted access to the underlying tables. However, not all views
are secure against tampering; see Section 39.5 for details. Functions called in the view are treated the
same as if they had been called directly from the query using the view. Therefore the user of a view must
have permissions to call all functions used by the view.

When CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW is used on an existing view, only the view's defining SELECT rule
is changed. Other view properties, including ownership, permissions, and non-SELECT rules, remain
unchanged. You must own the view to replace it (this includes being a member of the owning role).

### Updatable Views

Simple views are automatically updatable: the system will allow INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE statements
to be used on the view in the same way as on a regular table. A view is automatically updatable if it
satisfies all of the following conditions:

- The view must have exactly one entry in its FROM list, which must be a table or another updatable
  view.

- The view definition must not contain WITH, DISTINCT, GROUP BY, HAVING, LIMIT, or OFFSET clauses
  at the top level.

- The view definition must not contain set operations (UNION, INTERSECT or EXCEPT) at the top level.

- The view's select list must not contain any aggregates, window functions or set-returning functions.

An automatically updatable view may contain a mix of updatable and non-updatable columns. A column
is updatable if it is a simple reference to an updatable column of the underlying base relation; otherwise
the column is read-only, and an error will be raised if an INSERT or UPDATE statement attempts to assign
a value to it.

If the view is automatically updatable the system will convert any INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE statement
on the view into the corresponding statement on the underlying base relation. INSERT statements that
have an ON CONFLICT UPDATE clause are fully supported.

If an automatically updatable view contains a WHERE condition, the condition restricts which rows of the
base relation are available to be modified by UPDATE and DELETE statements on the view. However, an
UPDATE is allowed to change a row so that it no longer satisfies the WHERE condition, and thus is no longer
visible through the view. Similarly, an INSERT command can potentially insert base-relation rows that
do not satisfy the WHERE condition and thus are not visible through the view (ON CONFLICT UPDATE may
similarly affect an existing row not visible through the view). The CHECK OPTION may be used to prevent
INSERT and UPDATE commands from creating such rows that are not visible through the view.

If an automatically updatable view is marked with the security_barrier property then all the view's
WHERE conditions (and any conditions using operators which are marked as LEAKPROOF) will always be
evaluated before any conditions that a user of the view has added. See Section 39.5 for full details. Note
that, due to this, rows which are not ultimately returned (because they do not pass the user's WHERE
conditions) may still end up being locked. EXPLAIN can be used to see which conditions are applied at
the relation level (and therefore do not lock rows) and which are not.

A more complex view that does not satisfy all these conditions is read-only by default: the system will
not allow an insert, update, or delete on the view. You can get the effect of an updatable view by creating
INSTEAD OF triggers on the view, which must convert attempted inserts, etc. on the view into appropriate
actions on other tables. For more information see CREATE TRIGGER. Another possibility is to create
rules (see CREATE RULE), but in practice triggers are easier to understand and use correctly.

Note that the user performing the insert, update or delete on the view must have the corresponding
insert, update or delete privilege on the view. In addition the view's owner must have the relevant
privileges on the underlying base relations, but the user performing the update does not need any
permissions on the underlying base relations (see Section 39.5).

### Examples

Create a view consisting of all comedy films:
CREATE VIEW comedies AS
    SELECT *
    FROM films
    WHERE kind = 'Comedy';

This will create a view containing the columns that are in the film table at the time of view creation. Though * was used to create the view, columns added later to the table will not be part of the view.

Create a view with LOCAL CHECK OPTION:

CREATE VIEW universal_comedies AS
    SELECT *
    FROM comedies
    WHERE classification = 'U'
    WITH LOCAL CHECK OPTION;

This will create a view based on the comedies view, showing only films with kind = 'Comedy' and classification = 'U'. Any attempt to INSERT or UPDATE a row in the view will be rejected if the new row doesn't have classification = 'U', but the film kind will not be checked.

Create a view with CASCADED CHECK OPTION:

CREATE VIEW pg_comedies AS
    SELECT *
    FROM comedies
    WHERE classification = 'PG'
    WITH CASCADED CHECK OPTION;

This will create a view that checks both the kind and classification of new rows.

Create a view with a mix of updatable and non-updatable columns:

CREATE VIEW comedies AS
    SELECT f.*,
        country_code_to_name(f.country_code) AS country,
        (SELECT avg(r.rating)
            FROM user_ratings r
            WHERE r.film_id = f.id) AS avg_rating
    FROM films f
    WHERE f.kind = 'Comedy';

This view will support INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE. All the columns from the films table will be updatable, whereas the computed columns country and avg_rating will be read-only.

Create a recursive view consisting of the numbers from 1 to 100:

CREATE RECURSIVE VIEW public.nums_1_100 (n) AS
    VALUES (1)
    UNION ALL
    SELECT n+1 FROM nums_1_100 WHERE n < 100;

Notice that although the recursive view's name is schema-qualified in this CREATE, its internal self-reference is not schema-qualified. This is because the implicitly-created CTE's name cannot be schema-qualified.

Compatibility

CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW is a Postgres Pro language extension. So is the concept of a temporary view. The WITH ( ... ) clause is an extension as well.

See Also

ALTER VIEW, DROP VIEW, CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW
DEALLOCATE

DEALLOCATE — deallocate a prepared statement

Synopsis

DEALLOCATE [ PREPARE ] { name | ALL }

Description

DEALLOCATE is used to deallocate a previously prepared SQL statement. If you do not explicitly deallocate a prepared statement, it is deallocated when the session ends.

For more information on prepared statements, see PREPARE.

Parameters

PREPARE

This key word is ignored.

name

The name of the prepared statement to deallocate.

ALL

Deallocate all prepared statements.

Compatibility

The SQL standard includes a DEALLOCATE statement, but it is only for use in embedded SQL.

See Also

EXECUTE, PREPARE
DECLARE

DECLARE — define a cursor

Synopsis

DECLARE name [ BINARY ] [ ASENSITIVE | INSENSITIVE ] [ [ NO ] SCROLL ]
CURSOR [ { WITH | WITHOUT } HOLD ] FOR query

Description

DECLARE allows a user to create cursors, which can be used to retrieve a small number of rows at a time out of a larger query. After the cursor is created, rows are fetched from it using FETCH.

Note

This page describes usage of cursors at the SQL command level. If you are trying to use cursors inside a PL/pgSQL function, the rules are different — see Section 41.7.

Parameters

name

The name of the cursor to be created.

BINARY

Causes the cursor to return data in binary rather than in text format.

ASENSITIVE

INSENSITIVE

Cursor sensitivity determines whether changes to the data underlying the cursor, done in the same transaction, after the cursor has been declared, are visible in the cursor. INSENSITIVE means they are not visible, ASENSITIVE means the behavior is implementation-dependent. A third behavior, SENSITIVE, meaning that such changes are visible in the cursor, is not available in PostgreSQL. In PostgreSQL, all cursors are insensitive; so these key words have no effect and are only accepted for compatibility with the SQL standard.

Specifying INSENSITIVE together with FOR UPDATE or FOR SHARE is an error.

SCROLL

NO SCROLL

SCROLL specifies that the cursor can be used to retrieve rows in a nonsequential fashion (e.g., backward). Depending upon the complexity of the query's execution plan, specifying SCROLL might impose a performance penalty on the query's execution time. NO SCROLL specifies that the cursor cannot be used to retrieve rows in a nonsequential fashion. The default is to allow scrolling in some cases; this is not the same as specifying SCROLL. See Notes below for details.

WITH HOLD

WITHOUT HOLD

WITH HOLD specifies that the cursor can continue to be used after the transaction that created it successfully commits. WITHOUT HOLD specifies that the cursor cannot be used outside of the transaction that created it. If neither WITHOUT HOLD nor WITH HOLD is specified, WITHOUT HOLD is the default.
DECLARE

query

A SELECT or VALUES command which will provide the rows to be returned by the cursor.

The key words ASENSITIVE, BINARY, INSENSITIVE, and SCROLL can appear in any order.

Notes

Normal cursors return data in text format, the same as a SELECT would produce. The BINARY option specifies that the cursor should return data in binary format. This reduces conversion effort for both the server and client, at the cost of more programmer effort to deal with platform-dependent binary data formats. As an example, if a query returns a value of one from an integer column, you would get a string of 1 with a default cursor, whereas with a binary cursor you would get a 4-byte field containing the internal representation of the value (in big-endian byte order).

Binary cursors should be used carefully. Many applications, including psql, are not prepared to handle binary cursors and expect data to come back in the text format.

Note

When the client application uses the “extended query” protocol to issue a FETCH command, the Bind protocol message specifies whether data is to be retrieved in text or binary format. This choice overrides the way that the cursor is defined. The concept of a binary cursor as such is thus obsolete when using extended query protocol — any cursor can be treated as either text or binary.

Unless WITH HOLD is specified, the cursor created by this command can only be used within the current transaction. Thus, DECLARE without WITH HOLD is useless outside a transaction block: the cursor would survive only to the completion of the statement. Therefore Postgres Pro reports an error if such a command is used outside a transaction block. Use BEGIN and COMMIT (or ROLLBACK) to define a transaction block.

Note

If WITH HOLD is specified and the transaction that created the cursor successfully commits, the cursor can continue to be accessed by subsequent transactions in the same session. (But if the creating transaction is aborted, the cursor is removed.) A cursor created with WITH HOLD is closed when an explicit CLOSE command is issued on it, or the session ends. In the current implementation, the rows represented by a held cursor are copied into a temporary file or memory area so that they remain available for subsequent transactions.

WITH HOLD may not be specified when the query includes FOR UPDATE or FOR SHARE.

The SCROLL option should be specified when defining a cursor that will be used to fetch backwards. This is required by the SQL standard. However, for compatibility with earlier versions, Postgres Pro will allow backward fetches without SCROLL, if the cursor's query plan is simple enough that no extra overhead is needed to support it. However, application developers are advised not to rely on using backward fetches from a cursor that has not been created with SCROLL. If NO SCROLL is specified, then backward fetches are disallowed in any case.

Backward fetches are also disallowed when the query includes FOR UPDATE or FOR SHARE; therefore SCROLL may not be specified in this case.

Caution

Scrollable cursors may give unexpected results if they invoke any volatile functions (see Section 36.7). When a previously fetched row is re-fetched, the functions might be re-executed, perhaps leading to results different from the first time. It's best to specify NO SCROLL for a query involving volatile functions. If that is not practical, one workaround is to declare the cursor SCROLL WITH HOLD and commit the transaction before reading any rows from it. This will force the entire
output of the cursor to be materialized in temporary storage, so that volatile functions are executed exactly once for each row.

If the cursor's query includes FOR UPDATE or FOR SHARE, then returned rows are locked at the time they are first fetched, in the same way as for a regular SELECT command with these options. In addition, the returned rows will be the most up-to-date versions.

**Caution**

It is generally recommended to use FOR UPDATE if the cursor is intended to be used with UPDATE ... WHERE CURRENT OF or DELETE ... WHERE CURRENT OF. Using FOR UPDATE prevents other sessions from changing the rows between the time they are fetched and the time they are updated. Without FOR UPDATE, a subsequent WHERE CURRENT OF command will have no effect if the row was changed since the cursor was created.

Another reason to use FOR UPDATE is that without it, a subsequent WHERE CURRENT OF might fail if the cursor query does not meet the SQL standard's rules for being “simply updatable” (in particular, the cursor must reference just one table and not use grouping or ORDER BY). Cursors that are not simply updatable might work, or might not, depending on plan choice details; so in the worst case, an application might work in testing and then fail in production. If FOR UPDATE is specified, the cursor is guaranteed to be updatable.

The main reason not to use FOR UPDATE with WHERE CURRENT OF is if you need the cursor to be scrollable, or to be isolated from concurrent updates (that is, continue to show the old data). If this is a requirement, pay close heed to the caveats shown above.

The SQL standard only makes provisions for cursors in embedded SQL. The Postgres Pro server does not implement an OPEN statement for cursors; a cursor is considered to be open when it is declared. However, ECPG, the embedded SQL preprocessor for Postgres Pro, supports the standard SQL cursor conventions, including those involving DECLARE and OPEN statements.

You can see all available cursors by querying the pg_cursors system view.

**Examples**

To declare a cursor:

```
DECLARE liahona CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;
```

See FETCH for more examples of cursor usage.

**Compatibility**

The SQL standard allows cursors only in embedded SQL and in modules. Postgres Pro permits cursors to be used interactively.

According to the SQL standard, changes made to insensitive cursors by UPDATE ... WHERE CURRENT OF and DELETE ... WHERE CURRENT OF statements are visible in that same cursor. PostgreSQL treats these statements like all other data changing statements in that they are not visible in insensitive cursors.

Binary cursors are a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

CLOSE, FETCH, MOVE
DELETE

DELETE — delete rows of a table

Synopsis

\[
\text{WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [ , ... ]} \\
\text{DELETE FROM [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [ [ AS ] alias ]} \\
[ [ USING from_item [ , ... ] ]} \\
[ [ WHERE condition | WHERE CURRENT OF cursor_name ]} \\
[ RETURNING * | output_expression [ [ AS ] output_name ] [ , ... ] ]
\]

Description

DELETE deletes rows that satisfy the \text{WHERE} clause from the specified table. If the \text{WHERE} clause is absent, the effect is to delete all rows in the table. The result is a valid, but empty table.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Tip}
\end{center}

TRUNCATE provides a faster mechanism to remove all rows from a table.

There are two ways to delete rows in a table using information contained in other tables in the database: using sub-selects, or specifying additional tables in the \text{USING} clause. Which technique is more appropriate depends on the specific circumstances.

The optional \text{RETURNING} clause causes \text{DELETE} to compute and return value(s) based on each row actually deleted. Any expression using the table’s columns, and/or columns of other tables mentioned in \text{USING}, can be computed. The syntax of the \text{RETURNING} list is identical to that of the output list of \text{SELECT}.

You must have the \text{DELETE} privilege on the table to delete from it, as well as the \text{SELECT} privilege for any table in the \text{USING} clause or whose values are read in the \text{condition}.

Parameters

\textit{with_query}

The \textit{WITH} clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the \textit{DELETE} query. See Section 7.8 and \textit{SELECT} for details.

\textit{table_name}

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to delete rows from. If \textit{ONLY} is specified before the table name, matching rows are deleted from the named table only. If \textit{ONLY} is not specified, matching rows are also deleted from any tables inheriting from the named table. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

\textit{alias}

A substitute name for the target table. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. For example, given \textit{DELETE FROM foo AS f}, the remainder of the \textit{DELETE} statement must refer to this table as \textit{f} not \textit{foo}.

\textit{from_item}

A table expression allowing columns from other tables to appear in the \textit{WHERE} condition. This uses the same syntax as the \textit{FROM} clause of a \textit{SELECT} statement; for example, an alias for the table name can be specified. Do not repeat the target table as a \textit{from_item} unless you wish to set up a self-join (in which case it must appear with an alias in the \textit{from_item}).
**DELETE**

*condition*

An expression that returns a value of type `boolean`. Only rows for which this expression returns `true` will be deleted.

*cursor_name*

The name of the cursor to use in a `WHERE CURRENT OF` condition. The row to be deleted is the one most recently fetched from this cursor. The cursor must be a non-grouping query on the `DELETE`’s target table. Note that `WHERE CURRENT OF` cannot be specified together with a Boolean condition. See `DECLARE` for more information about using cursors with `WHERE CURRENT OF`.

*output_expression*

An expression to be computed and returned by the `DELETE` command after each row is deleted. The expression can use any column names of the table named by `table_name` or table(s) listed in `USING`. Write `*` to return all columns.

*output_name*

A name to use for a returned column.

**Outputs**

On successful completion, a `DELETE` command returns a command tag of the form

```
DELETE count
```

The `count` is the number of rows deleted. Note that the number may be less than the number of rows that matched the `condition` when deletes were suppressed by a `BEFORE DELETE` trigger. If `count` is 0, no rows were deleted by the query (this is not considered an error).

If the `DELETE` command contains a `RETURNING` clause, the result will be similar to that of a `SELECT` statement containing the columns and values defined in the `RETURNING` list, computed over the row(s) deleted by the command.

**Notes**

Postgres Pro lets you reference columns of other tables in the `WHERE` condition by specifying the other tables in the `USING` clause. For example, to delete all films produced by a given producer, one can do:

```
DELETE FROM films USING producers
WHERE producer_id = producers.id AND producers.name = 'foo';
```

What is essentially happening here is a join between `films` and `producers`, with all successfully joined `films` rows being marked for deletion. This syntax is not standard. A more standard way to do it is:

```
DELETE FROM films
WHERE producer_id IN (SELECT id FROM producers WHERE name = 'foo');
```

In some cases the join style is easier to write or faster to execute than the sub-select style.

**Examples**

Delete all films but musicals:

```
DELETE FROM films WHERE kind <> 'Musical';
```

Clear the table `films`:

```
DELETE FROM films;
```

Delete completed tasks, returning full details of the deleted rows:

```
DELETE FROM tasks WHERE status = 'DONE' RETURNING *;
```
Delete the row of tasks on which the cursor c_tasks is currently positioned:

DELETE FROM tasks WHERE CURRENT OF c_tasks;

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the USING and RETURNING clauses are Postgres Pro extensions, as is the ability to use WITH with DELETE.

See Also

TRUNCATE
DISCARD

DISCARD — discard session state

Synopsis

DISCARD { ALL | PLANS | SEQUENCES | TEMPORARY | TEMP }

Description

DISCARD releases internal resources associated with a database session. This command is useful for partially or fully resetting the session's state. There are several subcommands to release different types of resources; the DISCARD ALL variant subsumes all the others, and also resets additional state.

Parameters

PLANS

Releases all cached query plans, forcing re-planning to occur the next time the associated prepared statement is used.

SEQUENCES

Discards all cached sequence-related state, including currval()/lastval() information and any preallocated sequence values that have not yet been returned by nextval(). (See CREATE SEQUENCE for a description of preallocated sequence values.)

TEMPORARY or TEMP

Drops all temporary tables created in the current session.

ALL

Releases all temporary resources associated with the current session and resets the session to its initial state. Currently, this has the same effect as executing the following sequence of statements:

CLOSE ALL;
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT;
RESET ALL;
DEALLOCATE ALL;
UNLISTEN *;
SELECT pg_advisory_unlock_all();
DISCARD PLANS;
DISCARD TEMP;
DISCARD SEQUENCES;

Notes

DISCARD ALL cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Compatibility

DISCARD is a Postgres Pro extension.
**DO**

DO — execute an anonymous code block

**Synopsis**

DO [ LANGUAGE lang_name ] code

**Description**

DO executes an anonymous code block, or in other words a transient anonymous function in a procedural language.

The code block is treated as though it were the body of a function with no parameters, returning void. It is parsed and executed a single time.

The optional LANGUAGE clause can be written either before or after the code block.

**Parameters**

- **code**
  The procedural language code to be executed. This must be specified as a string literal, just as in CREATE FUNCTION. Use of a dollar-quoted literal is recommended.

- **lang_name**
  The name of the procedural language the code is written in. If omitted, the default is plpgsql.

**Notes**

The procedural language to be used must already have been installed into the current database by means of CREATE EXTENSION. plpgsql is installed by default, but other languages are not.

The user must have USAGE privilege for the procedural language, or must be a superuser if the language is untrusted. This is the same privilege requirement as for creating a function in the language.

If DO is executed in a transaction block, then the procedure code cannot execute transaction control statements. Transaction control statements are only allowed if DO is executed in its own transaction.

**Examples**

Grant all privileges on all views in schema public to role webuser:

```sql
DO $$DECLARE r record;
BEGIN
  FOR r IN SELECT table_schema, table_name FROM information_schema.tables
    WHERE table_type = 'VIEW' AND table_schema = 'public'
  LOOP
    EXECUTE 'GRANT ALL ON ' || quote_ident(r.table_schema) || '.' || quote_ident(r.table_name) || ' TO webuser';
  END LOOP;
END$$;
```

**Compatibility**

There is no DO statement in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

CREATE LANGUAGE
**DROP ACCESS METHOD**

DROP ACCESS METHOD — remove an access method

**Synopsis**

```sql
DROP ACCESS METHOD [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

**Description**

`DROP ACCESS METHOD` removes an existing access method. Only superusers can drop access methods.

**Parameters**

- **IF EXISTS**
  
  Do not throw an error if the access method does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- **name**
  
  The name of an existing access method.

- **CASCADE**
  
  Automatically drop objects that depend on the access method (such as operator classes, operator families, and indexes), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

- **RESTRICT**
  
  Refuse to drop the access method if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

**Examples**

Drop the access method `heptree`:

```sql
DROP ACCESS METHOD heptree;
```

**Compatibility**

`DROP ACCESS METHOD` is a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

CREATE ACCESS METHOD
DROP AGGREGATE

DROP AGGREGATE — remove an aggregate function

Synopsis

```
DROP AGGREGATE [ IF EXISTS ] name ( aggregate_signature ) [, ...] [ CASCADE |
RESTRICT ]
```

where aggregate_signature is:

```
* |
[ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] |
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[, ... ]
```

Description

DROP AGGREGATE removes an existing aggregate function. To execute this command the current user must be the owner of the aggregate function.

Parameters

**IF EXISTS**

Do not throw an error if the aggregate does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing aggregate function.

**argmode**

The mode of an argument: IN or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN.

**argname**

The name of an argument. Note that DROP AGGREGATE does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the aggregate function’s identity.

**argtype**

An input data type on which the aggregate function operates. To reference a zero-argument aggregate function, write * in place of the list of argument specifications. To reference an ordered-set aggregate function, write ORDER BY between the direct and aggregated argument specifications.

**CASCADE**

Automatically drop objects that depend on the aggregate function (such as views using it), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

**RESTRICT**

Refuse to drop the aggregate function if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Notes

Alternative syntaxes for referencing ordered-set aggregates are described under ALTER AGGREGATE.

Examples

To remove the aggregate function myavg for type integer:
DROP AGGREGATE myavg(integer);

To remove the hypothetical-set aggregate function myrank, which takes an arbitrary list of ordering columns and a matching list of direct arguments:

DROP AGGREGATE myrank(VARIADIC "any" ORDER BY VARIADIC "any");

To remove multiple aggregate functions in one command:

DROP AGGREGATE myavg(integer), myavg(bigint);

Compatibility

There is no DROP AGGREGATE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER AGGREGATE, CREATE AGGREGATE
DROP CAST

DROP CAST — remove a cast

Synopsis

DROP CAST [ IF EXISTS ] (source_type AS target_type) [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP CAST removes a previously defined cast.

To be able to drop a cast, you must own the source or the target data type. These are the same privileges that are required to create a cast.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the cast does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

source_type

The name of the source data type of the cast.

target_type

The name of the target data type of the cast.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on casts.

Examples

To drop the cast from type text to type int:

DROP CAST (text AS int);

Compatibility

The DROP CAST command conforms to the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE CAST
DROP COLLATION

DROP COLLATION — remove a collation

Synopsis

```
DROP COLLATION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

Description

DROP COLLATION removes a previously defined collation. To be able to drop a collation, you must own
the collation.

Parameters

IF EXISTS
Do not throw an error if the collation does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name
The name of the collation. The collation name can be schema-qualified.

CASCADE
Automatically drop objects that depend on the collation, and in turn all objects that depend on those
objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT
Refuse to drop the collation if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

To drop the collation named german:
```
DROP COLLATION german;
```

Compatibility

The DROP COLLATION command conforms to the SQL standard, apart from the IF EXISTS option, which
is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

ALTER COLLATION, CREATE COLLATION
DROP CONVERSION

DROP CONVERSION — remove a conversion

Synopsis

DROP CONVERSION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP CONVERSION removes a previously defined conversion. To be able to drop a conversion, you must own the conversion.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the conversion does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of the conversion. The conversion name can be schema-qualified.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on conversions.

Examples

To drop the conversion named myname:

DROP CONVERSION myname;

Compatibility

There is no DROP CONVERSION statement in the SQL standard, but a DROP TRANSLATION statement that goes along with the CREATE TRANSLATION statement that is similar to the CREATE CONVERSION statement in Postgres Pro.

See Also

ALTER CONVERSION, CREATE CONVERSION
DROP DATABASE

DROP DATABASE — remove a database

Synopsis

DROP DATABASE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ [ WITH ] ( option [, ...] ) ]

where option can be:

  FORCE

Description

DROP DATABASE drops a database. It removes the catalog entries for the database and deletes the directory containing the data. It can only be executed by the database owner. It cannot be executed while you are connected to the target database. (Connect to postgres or any other database to issue this command.) Also, if anyone else is connected to the target database, this command will fail unless you use the FORCE option described below.

DROP DATABASE cannot be undone. Use it with care!

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the database does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of the database to remove.

FORCE

Attempt to terminate all existing connections to the target database. It doesn't terminate if prepared transactions, active logical replication slots or subscriptions are present in the target database.

This will fail if the current user has no permissions to terminate other connections. Required permissions are the same as with pg_terminate_backend, described in Section 9.27.2. This will also fail if we are not able to terminate connections.

Notes

DROP DATABASE cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

This command cannot be executed while connected to the target database. Thus, it might be more convenient to use the program dropdb instead, which is a wrapper around this command.

Compatibility

There is no DROP DATABASE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE DATABASE
DROP DOMAIN

DROP DOMAIN — remove a domain

Synopsis

```
DROP DOMAIN [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

Description

DROP DOMAIN removes a domain. Only the owner of a domain can remove it.

Parameters

- **IF EXISTS**
  
  Do not throw an error if the domain does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- **name**
  
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing domain.

- **CASCADE**
  
  Automatically drop objects that depend on the domain (such as table columns), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

- **RESTRICT**
  
  Refuse to drop the domain if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

To remove the domain box:

```
DROP DOMAIN box;
```

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except for the `IF EXISTS` option, which is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE DOMAIN, ALTER DOMAIN
DROP EVENT TRIGGER

DROP EVENT TRIGGER — remove an event trigger

Synopsis

DROP EVENT TRIGGER [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP EVENT TRIGGER removes an existing event trigger. To execute this command, the current user must be the owner of the event trigger.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the event trigger does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of the event trigger to remove.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the trigger, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the trigger if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

Destroy the trigger snitch:

DROP EVENT TRIGGER snitch;

Compatibility

There is no DROP EVENT TRIGGER statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER, ALTER EVENT TRIGGER
DROP EXTENSION

DROP EXTENSION — remove an extension

Synopsis

DROP EXTENSION [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP EXTENSION removes extensions from the database. Dropping an extension causes its component objects to be dropped as well.

You must own the extension to use DROP EXTENSION.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the extension does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of an installed extension.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the extension, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the extension if any objects depend on it (other than its own member objects and other extensions listed in the same DROP command). This is the default.

Examples

To remove the extension hstore from the current database:

```
DROP EXTENSION hstore;
```

This command will fail if any of hstore's objects are in use in the database, for example if any tables have columns of the hstore type. Add the CASCADE option to forcibly remove those dependent objects as well.

Compatibility

DROP EXTENSION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE EXTENSION, ALTER EXTENSION
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER — remove a foreign-data wrapper

Synopsis

DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER removes an existing foreign-data wrapper. To execute this command, the current user must be the owner of the foreign-data wrapper.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the foreign-data wrapper does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of an existing foreign-data wrapper.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the foreign-data wrapper (such as foreign tables and servers), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the foreign-data wrapper if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

Drop the foreign-data wrapper dbi:

DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi;

Compatibility

DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The IF EXISTS clause is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
DROP FOREIGN TABLE

DROP FOREIGN TABLE — remove a foreign table

Synopsis

DROP FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP FOREIGN TABLE removes a foreign table. Only the owner of a foreign table can remove it.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the foreign table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the foreign table to drop.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the foreign table (such as views), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the foreign table if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

To destroy two foreign tables, films and distributors:

DROP FOREIGN TABLE films, distributors;

Compatibility

This command conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), except that the standard only allows one foreign table to be dropped per command, and apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE
DROP FUNCTION

DROP FUNCTION — remove a function

Synopsis

DROP FUNCTION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ] ) ] [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP FUNCTION removes the definition of an existing function. To execute this command the user must be the owner of the function. The argument types to the function must be specified, since several different functions can exist with the same name and different argument lists.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the function does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing function. If no argument list is specified, the name must be unique in its schema.

argmode

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that DROP FUNCTION does not actually pay any attention to OUT arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the IN, INOUT, and VARIADIC arguments.

argname

The name of an argument. Note that DROP FUNCTION does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

argtype

The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the function (such as operators or triggers), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the function if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

This command removes the square root function:

DROP FUNCTION sqrt(integer);

Drop multiple functions in one command:

DROP FUNCTION sqrt(integer), sqrt(bigint);

If the function name is unique in its schema, it can be referred to without an argument list:
DROP FUNCTION update_employee_salaries;

Note that this is different from

DROP FUNCTION update_employee_salaries();

which refers to a function with zero arguments, whereas the first variant can refer to a function with any number of arguments, including zero, as long as the name is unique.

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, with these Postgres Pro extensions:

- The standard only allows one function to be dropped per command.
- The IF EXISTS option
- The ability to specify argument modes and names

See Also

CREATE FUNCTION, ALTER FUNCTION, DROP PROCEDURE, DROP ROUTINE
DROP GROUP

DROP GROUP — remove a database role

Synopsis

DROP GROUP [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...]

Description

DROP GROUP is now an alias for DROP ROLE.

Compatibility

There is no DROP GROUP statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

DROP ROLE
DROP INDEX

DROP INDEX — remove an index

Synopsis

```sql
DROP INDEX [ CONCURRENTLY ] [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

Description

`DROP INDEX` drops an existing index from the database system. To execute this command you must be the owner of the index.

Parameters

**CONCURRENTLY**

Drop the index without locking out concurrent selects, inserts, updates, and deletes on the index's table. A normal `DROP INDEX` acquires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the table, blocking other accesses until the index drop can be completed. With this option, the command instead waits until conflicting transactions have completed.

There are several caveats to be aware of when using this option. Only one index name can be specified, and the `CASCADE` option is not supported. (Thus, an index that supports a `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraint cannot be dropped this way.) Also, regular `DROP INDEX` commands can be performed within a transaction block, but `DROP INDEX CONCURRENTLY` cannot. Lastly, indexes on partitioned tables cannot be dropped using this option.

For temporary tables, `DROP INDEX` is always non-concurrent, as no other session can access them, and non-concurrent index drop is cheaper.

**IF EXISTS**

Do not throw an error if the index does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an index to remove.

**CASCADE**

Automatically drop objects that depend on the index, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

**RESTRICT**

Refuse to drop the index if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

This command will remove the index `title_idx`:

```
DROP INDEX title_idx;
```

Compatibility

`DROP INDEX` is a Postgres Pro language extension. There are no provisions for indexes in the SQL standard.

See Also

`CREATE INDEX`
DROP LANGUAGE

DROP LANGUAGE — remove a procedural language

Synopsis

DROP [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP LANGUAGE removes the definition of a previously registered procedural language. You must be a superuser or the owner of the language to use DROP LANGUAGE.

Note

As of PostgreSQL 9.1, most procedural languages have been made into “extensions”, and should therefore be removed with DROP EXTENSION not DROP LANGUAGE.

Parameters

IF EXISTS
Do not throw an error if the language does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name
The name of an existing procedural language.

CASCADE
Automatically drop objects that depend on the language (such as functions in the language), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT
Refuse to drop the language if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

This command removes the procedural language plsample:

DROP LANGUAGE plsample;

Compatibility

There is no DROP LANGUAGE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER LANGUAGE, CREATE LANGUAGE
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW

DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW — remove a materialized view

Synopsis

\texttt{DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]}

Description

\texttt{DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW} drops an existing materialized view. To execute this command you must be the owner of the materialized view.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the materialized view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the materialized view to remove.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the materialized view (such as other materialized views, or regular views), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the materialized view if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

This command will remove the materialized view called \texttt{order_summary}:

\texttt{DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW order_summary;}

Compatibility

\texttt{DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW} is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

\texttt{CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW}
DROP OPERATOR

DROP OPERATOR — remove an operator

Synopsis

```
DROP OPERATOR [ IF EXISTS ] name ( { left_type | NONE } , right_type ) [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

Description

DROP OPERATOR drops an existing operator from the database system. To execute this command you must be the owner of the operator.

Parameters

- **IF EXISTS**
  Do not throw an error if the operator does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- **name**
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator.

- **left_type**
  The data type of the operator's left operand; write NONE if the operator has no left operand.

- **right_type**
  The data type of the operator's right operand.

- **CASCADE**
  Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator (such as views using it), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

- **RESTRICT**
  Refuse to drop the operator if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

- Remove the power operator $a^b$ for type integer:
  ```sql
  DROP OPERATOR ^ (integer, integer);
  ```

- Remove the bitwise-complement prefix operator $\neg b$ for type bit:
  ```sql
  DROP OPERATOR ~ (none, bit);
  ```

- Remove multiple operators in one command:
  ```sql
  DROP OPERATOR ~ (none, bit), ^ (integer, integer);
  ```

Compatibility

There is no DROP OPERATOR statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE OPERATOR, ALTER OPERATOR
DROP OPERATOR CLASS

DROP OPERATOR CLASS — remove an operator class

Synopsis

DROP OPERATOR CLASS [ IF EXISTS ] name USING index_method [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP OPERATOR CLASS drops an existing operator class. To execute this command you must be the owner of the operator class.

DROP OPERATOR CLASS does not drop any of the operators or functions referenced by the class. If there are any indexes depending on the operator class, you will need to specify CASCADE for the drop to complete.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the operator class does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator class.

index_method

The name of the index access method the operator class is for.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator class (such as indexes), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the operator class if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Notes

DROP OPERATOR CLASS will not drop the operator family containing the class, even if there is nothing else left in the family (in particular, in the case where the family was implicitly created by CREATE OPERATOR CLASS). An empty operator family is harmless, but for the sake of tidiness you might wish to remove the family with DROP OPERATOR FAMILY; or perhaps better, use DROP OPERATOR FAMILY in the first place.

Examples

Remove the B-tree operator class widget_ops:

DROP OPERATOR CLASS widget_ops USING btree;

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that use the operator class. Add CASCADE to drop such indexes along with the operator class.

Compatibility

There is no DROP OPERATOR CLASS statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR FAMILY
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY

DROP OPERATOR FAMILY — remove an operator family

Synopsis

```
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY [ IF EXISTS ] name USING index_method [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

Description

DROP OPERATOR FAMILY drops an existing operator family. To execute this command you must be the owner of the operator family.

DROP OPERATOR FAMILY includes dropping any operator classes contained in the family, but it does not drop any of the operators or functions referenced by the family. If there are any indexes depending on operator classes within the family, you will need to specify CASCADE for the drop to complete.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the operator family does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator family.

index_method

The name of the index access method the operator family is for.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator family, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the operator family if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

Remove the B-tree operator family float_ops:

```
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY float_ops USING btree;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that use operator classes within the family. Add CASCADE to drop such indexes along with the operator family.

Compatibility

There is no DROP OPERATOR FAMILY statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY, ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS
DROP OWNED

DROP OWNED — remove database objects owned by a database role

Synopsis

DROP OWNED BY { name | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER } [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP OWNED drops all the objects within the current database that are owned by one of the specified roles. Any privileges granted to the given roles on objects in the current database or on shared objects (databases, tablespaces) will also be revoked.

Parameters

name

The name of a role whose objects will be dropped, and whose privileges will be revoked.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the affected objects, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the objects owned by a role if any other database objects depend on one of the affected objects. This is the default.

Notes

DROP OWNED is often used to prepare for the removal of one or more roles. Because DROP OWNED only affects the objects in the current database, it is usually necessary to execute this command in each database that contains objects owned by a role that is to be removed.

Using the CASCADE option might make the command recurse to objects owned by other users.

The REASSIGN OWNED command is an alternative that reassigns the ownership of all the database objects owned by one or more roles. However, REASSIGN OWNED does not deal with privileges for other objects.

Databases and tablespaces owned by the role(s) will not be removed.

See Section 20.4 for more discussion.

Compatibility

The DROP OWNED command is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

REASSIGN OWNED, DROP ROLE
DROP POLICY

DROP POLICY — remove a row-level security policy from a table

Synopsis

DROP POLICY [ IF EXISTS ] name ON table_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP POLICY removes the specified policy from the table. Note that if the last policy is removed for a table and the table still has row-level security enabled via ALTER TABLE, then the default-deny policy will be used. ALTER TABLE ... DISABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY can be used to disable row-level security for a table, whether policies for the table exist or not.

Parameters

IF EXISTS
   Do not throw an error if the policy does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name
   The name of the policy to drop.

table_name
   The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table that the policy is on.

CASCADE
RESTRICT
   These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on policies.

Examples

To drop the policy called p1 on the table named my_table:

DROP POLICY p1 ON my_table;

Compatibility

DROP POLICY is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE POLICY, ALTER POLICY
DROP PROCEDURE

DROP PROCEDURE — remove a procedure

Synopsis


Description

DROP PROCEDURE removes the definition of one or more existing procedures. To execute this command the user must be the owner of the procedure(s). The argument types to the procedure(s) usually must be specified, since several different procedures can exist with the same name and different argument lists.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the procedure does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing procedure.

argmode

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN (but see below).

argname

The name of an argument. Note that DROP PROCEDURE does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are used to determine the procedure's identity.

argtype

The data type(s) of the procedure's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. See below for details.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the procedure, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the procedure if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Notes

If there is only one procedure of the given name, the argument list can be omitted. Omit the parentheses too in this case.

In PostgreSQL, it's sufficient to list the input (including INOUT) arguments, because no two routines of the same name are allowed to share the same input-argument list. Moreover, the DROP command will not actually check that you wrote the types of OUT arguments correctly; so any arguments that are explicitly marked OUT are just noise. But writing them is recommendable for consistency with the corresponding CREATE command.

For compatibility with the SQL standard, it is also allowed to write all the argument data types (including those of OUT arguments) without any argmode markers. When this is done, the types of the procedure's
OUT argument(s) will be verified against the command. This provision creates an ambiguity, in that when the argument list contains no argmode markers, it's unclear which rule is intended. The DROP command will attempt the lookup both ways, and will throw an error if two different procedures are found. To avoid the risk of such ambiguity, it's recommendable to write IN markers explicitly rather than letting them be defaulted, thus forcing the traditional PostgreSQL interpretation to be used.

The lookup rules just explained are also used by other commands that act on existing procedures, such as ALTER PROCEDURE and COMMENT ON PROCEDURE.

Examples

If there is only one procedure do_db_maintenance, this command is sufficient to drop it:

DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance;

Given this procedure definition:

```sql
CREATE PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN target_schema text, OUT results text) ...
```

any one of these commands would work to drop it:

```sql
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN target_schema text, OUT results text);
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN text, OUT text);
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN text);
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(text);
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(text, text);  -- potentially ambiguous
```

However, the last example would be ambiguous if there is also, say,

```sql
CREATE PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN target_schema text, IN options text) ...
```

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, with these Postgres Pro extensions:

- The standard only allows one procedure to be dropped per command.
- The IF EXISTS option is an extension.
- The ability to specify argument modes and names is an extension, and the lookup rules differ when modes are given.

See Also

CREATE PROCEDURE, ALTER PROCEDURE, DROP FUNCTION, DROP ROUTINE
DROP PROFILE

DROP PROFILE — remove an authentication profile

Synopsis

DROP PROFILE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...]

Description

The DROP PROFILE command removes the specified profile(s). You must be a database superuser to use this command.

A profile cannot be removed if it is still referenced in any database of the cluster; if this is the case, an error is raised. Before dropping the profile, you must drop all the roles to which it is assigned, or assign another profile to them. Use the ALTER ROLE command if you need to reassign the profile.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the profile does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of the profile to remove.

Examples

Drop the specified profile:

DROP PROFILE admin_profile;

See Also

CREATE PROFILE, ALTER PROFILE, ALTER ROLE
DROP PUBLICATION

DROP PUBLICATION — remove a publication

Synopsis

DROP PUBLICATION [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP PUBLICATION removes an existing publication from the database.

A publication can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the publication does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of an existing publication.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on publications.

Examples

Drop a publication:

DROP PUBLICATION mypublication;

Compatibility

DROP PUBLICATION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE PUBLICATION, ALTER PUBLICATION
DROP ROLE

DROP ROLE — remove a database role

Synopsis

DROP ROLE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...]

Description

DROP ROLE removes the specified role(s). To drop a superuser role, you must be a superuser yourself; to drop non-superuser roles, you must have CREATEROLE privilege.

A role cannot be removed if it is still referenced in any database of the cluster; an error will be raised if so. Before dropping the role, you must drop all the objects it owns (or reassign their ownership) and revoke any privileges the role has been granted on other objects. The REASSIGN OWNED and DROP OWNED commands can be useful for this purpose; see Section 20.4 for more discussion.

However, it is not necessary to remove role memberships involving the role; DROP ROLE automatically revokes any memberships of the target role in other roles, and of other roles in the target role. The other roles are not dropped nor otherwise affected.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the role does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of the role to remove.

Notes

Postgres Pro includes a program dropuser that has the same functionality as this command (in fact, it calls this command) but can be run from the command shell.

Examples

To drop a role:

DROP ROLE jonathan;

Compatibility

The SQL standard defines DROP ROLE, but it allows only one role to be dropped at a time, and it specifies different privilege requirements than Postgres Pro uses.

See Also

CREATE ROLE, ALTER ROLE, SET ROLE
DROP ROUTINE

DROP ROUTINE — remove a routine

Synopsis

```
DROP ROUTINE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ...] ) ] [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

Description

DROP ROUTINE removes the definition of one or more existing routines. The term “routine” includes aggregate functions, normal functions, and procedures. See under DROP AGGREGATE, DROP FUNCTION, and DROP PROCEDURE for the description of the parameters, more examples, and further details.

Notes

The lookup rules used by DROP ROUTINE are fundamentally the same as for DROP PROCEDURE; in particular, DROP ROUTINE shares that command’s behavior of considering an argument list that has no argmode markers to be possibly using the SQL standard’s definition that OUT arguments are included in the list. (DROP AGGREGATE and DROP FUNCTION do not do that.)

In some cases where the same name is shared by routines of different kinds, it is possible for DROP ROUTINE to fail with an ambiguity error when a more specific command (DROP FUNCTION, etc.) would work. Specifying the argument type list more carefully will also resolve such problems.

These lookup rules are also used by other commands that act on existing routines, such as ALTER ROUTINE and COMMENT ON ROUTINE.

Examples

To drop the routine foo for type integer:

```
DROP ROUTINE foo(integer);
```

This command will work independent of whether foo is an aggregate, function, or procedure.

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, with these Postgres Pro extensions:

- The standard only allows one routine to be dropped per command.
- The IF EXISTS option is an extension.
- The ability to specify argument modes and names is an extension, and the lookup rules differ when modes are given.
- User-definable aggregate functions are an extension.

See Also

DROP AGGREGATE, DROP FUNCTION, DROP PROCEDURE, ALTER ROUTINE

Note that there is no CREATE ROUTINE command.
DROP RULE

DROP RULE — remove a rewrite rule

Synopsis

DROP RULE [ IF EXISTS ] name ON table_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP RULE drops a rewrite rule.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the rule does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of the rule to drop.

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view that the rule applies to.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the rule, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the rule if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

To drop the rewrite rule newrule:

DROP RULE newrule ON mytable;

Compatibility

DROP RULE is a Postgres Pro language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

See Also

CREATE RULE, ALTER RULE
DROP SCHEMA

DROP SCHEMA — remove a schema

Synopsis

DROP SCHEMA [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP SCHEMA removes schemas from the database.

A schema can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser. Note that the owner can drop the schema (and thereby all contained objects) even if they do not own some of the objects within the schema.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the schema does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of a schema.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects (tables, functions, etc.) that are contained in the schema, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the schema if it contains any objects. This is the default.

Notes

Using the CASCADE option might make the command remove objects in other schemas besides the one(s) named.

Examples

To remove schema mystuff from the database, along with everything it contains:

DROP SCHEMA mystuff CASCADE;

Compatibility

DROP SCHEMA is fully conforming with the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one schema to be dropped per command, and apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

ALTER SCHEMA, CREATE SCHEMA
DROP SEQUENCE

DROP SEQUENCE — remove a sequence

Synopsis

DROP SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP SEQUENCE removes sequence number generators. A sequence can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the sequence does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a sequence.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the sequence, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the sequence if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

To remove the sequence serial:

DROP SEQUENCE serial;

Compatibility

DROP SEQUENCE conforms to the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one sequence to be dropped per command, and apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE SEQUENCE, ALTER SEQUENCE
DROP SERVER

DROP SERVER — remove a foreign server descriptor

Synopsis

DROP SERVER [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP SERVER removes an existing foreign server descriptor. To execute this command, the current user must be the owner of the server.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the server does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of an existing server.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the server (such as user mappings), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the server if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

Drop a server foo if it exists:

DROP SERVER IF EXISTS foo;

Compatibility

DROP SERVER conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The IF EXISTS clause is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE SERVER, ALTER SERVER
DROP STATISTICS

DROP STATISTICS — remove extended statistics

Synopsis

DROP STATISTICS [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP STATISTICS removes statistics object(s) from the database. Only the statistics object's owner, the schema owner, or a superuser can drop a statistics object.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the statistics object does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the statistics object to drop.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on statistics.

Examples

To destroy two statistics objects in different schemas, without failing if they don't exist:

DROP STATISTICS IF EXISTS
    accounting.users_uid_creation,
    public.grants_user_role;

Compatibility

There is no DROP STATISTICS command in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER STATISTICS, CREATE STATISTICS
DROP SUBSCRIPTION

DROP SUBSCRIPTION — remove a subscription

Synopsis

DROP SUBSCRIPTION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP SUBSCRIPTION removes a subscription from the database cluster.

A subscription can only be dropped by a superuser.

DROP SUBSCRIPTION cannot be executed inside a transaction block if the subscription is associated with a replication slot. (You can use ALTER SUBSCRIPTION to unset the slot.)

Parameters

name

The name of a subscription to be dropped.

CASCADE
RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on subscriptions.

Notes

When dropping a subscription that is associated with a replication slot on the remote host (the normal state), DROP SUBSCRIPTION will connect to the remote host and try to drop the replication slot (and any remaining table synchronization slots) as part of its operation. This is necessary so that the resources allocated for the subscription on the remote host are released. If this fails, either because the remote host is not reachable or because the remote replication slot cannot be dropped or does not exist or never existed, the DROP SUBSCRIPTION command will fail. To proceed in this situation, disassociate the subscription from the replication slot by executing ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... SET (slot_name = NONE). After that, DROP SUBSCRIPTION will no longer attempt any actions on a remote host. Note that if the remote replication slot still exists, it (and any related table synchronization slots) should then be dropped manually; otherwise it/they will continue to reserve WAL and might eventually cause the disk to fill up. See also Section 29.2.1.

If a subscription is associated with a replication slot, then DROP SUBSCRIPTION cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Examples

Drop a subscription:

DROP SUBSCRIPTION mysub;

Compatibility

DROP SUBSCRIPTION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION, ALTER SUBSCRIPTION
DROP TABLE

DROP TABLE — remove a table

Synopsis

DROP TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP TABLE removes tables from the database. Only the table owner, the schema owner, and superuser can drop a table. To empty a table of rows without destroying the table, use DELETE or TRUNCATE.

DROP TABLE always removes any indexes, rules, triggers, and constraints that exist for the target table. However, to drop a table that is referenced by a view or a foreign-key constraint of another table, CASCADE must be specified. (CASCADE will remove a dependent view entirely, but in the foreign-key case it will only remove the foreign-key constraint, not the other table entirely.)

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to drop.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the table (such as views), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the table if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

To destroy two tables, films and distributors:

DROP TABLE films, distributors;

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one table to be dropped per command, and apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

ALTER TABLE, CREATE TABLE
DROP TABLESPACE

DROP TABLESPACE — remove a tablespace

Synopsis

DROP TABLESPACE [ IF EXISTS ] name

Description

DROP TABLESPACE removes a tablespace from the system.

A tablespace can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser. The tablespace must be empty of all database objects before it can be dropped. It is possible that objects in other databases might still reside in the tablespace even if no objects in the current database are using the tablespace. Also, if the tablespace is listed in the temp_tablespaces setting of any active session, the DROP might fail due to temporary files residing in the tablespace.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the tablespace does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name of a tablespace.

Notes

DROP TABLESPACE cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Examples

To remove tablespace mystuff from the system:

DROP TABLESPACE mystuff;

Compatibility

DROP TABLESPACE is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE TABLESPACE, ALTER TABLESPACE
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION — remove a text search configuration

Synopsis

DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION drops an existing text search configuration. To execute this command you must be the owner of the configuration.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the text search configuration does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search configuration.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search configuration, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the text search configuration if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

Remove the text search configuration my_english:

DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_english;

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that reference the configuration in to_tsvector calls. Add CASCADE to drop such indexes along with the text search configuration.

Compatibility

There is no DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

Synopsis

DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY drops an existing text search dictionary. To execute this command you must be the owner of the dictionary.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the text search dictionary does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search dictionary.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search dictionary, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the text search dictionary if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

Remove the text search dictionary english:

DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english;

This command will not succeed if there are any existing text search configurations that use the dictionary. Add CASCADE to drop such configurations along with the dictionary.

Compatibility

There is no DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER

DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER — remove a text search parser

Synopsis

DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER drops an existing text search parser. You must be a superuser to use this command.

Parameters

IF EXISTS
Do not throw an error if the text search parser does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name
The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search parser.

CASCADE
Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search parser, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT
Refuse to drop the text search parser if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

Remove the text search parser my_parser:

DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER my_parser;

This command will not succeed if there are any existing text search configurations that use the parser. Add CASCADE to drop such configurations along with the parser.

Compatibility

There is no DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER, CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE — remove a text search template

Synopsis

DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE drops an existing text search template. You must be a superuser to use this command.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the text search template does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search template.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search template, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the text search template if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

Remove the text search template thesaurus:

DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE thesaurus;

This command will not succeed if there are any existing text search dictionaries that use the template. Add CASCADE to drop such dictionaries along with the template.

Compatibility

There is no DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
DROP TRANSFORM

DROP TRANSFORM — remove a transform

Synopsis

DROP TRANSFORM [ IF EXISTS ] FOR type_name LANGUAGE lang_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

DROP TRANSFORM removes a previously defined transform.

To be able to drop a transform, you must own the type and the language. These are the same privileges that are required to create a transform.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the transform does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

type_name

The name of the data type of the transform.

lang_name

The name of the language of the transform.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the transform, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the transform if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

To drop the transform for type hstore and language plpythonu:

DROP TRANSFORM FOR hstore LANGUAGE plpythonu;

Compatibility

This form of DROP TRANSFORM is a Postgres Pro extension. See CREATE TRANSFORM for details.

See Also

CREATE TRANSFORM
**DROP TRIGGER**

DROP TRIGGER — remove a trigger

**Synopsis**

```
DROP TRIGGER [ IF EXISTS ] name ON table_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

**Description**

DROP TRIGGER removes an existing trigger definition. To execute this command, the current user must be the owner of the table for which the trigger is defined.

**Parameters**

- **IF EXISTS**
  Do not throw an error if the trigger does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- **name**
  The name of the trigger to remove.

- **table_name**
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table for which the trigger is defined.

- **CASCADE**
  Automatically drop objects that depend on the trigger, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

- **RESTRICT**
  Refuse to drop the trigger if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

**Examples**

Destroy the trigger `if_dist_exists` on the table `films`:

```
DROP TRIGGER if_dist_exists ON films;
```

**Compatibility**

The **DROP TRIGGER** statement in Postgres Pro is incompatible with the SQL standard. In the SQL standard, trigger names are not local to tables, so the command is simply **DROP TRIGGER name**.

**See Also**

- **CREATE TRIGGER**
**DROP TYPE**

DROP TYPE — remove a data type

**Synopsis**

```sql
DROP TYPE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

**Description**

`DROP TYPE` removes a user-defined data type. Only the owner of a type can remove it.

**Parameters**

- **IF EXISTS**
  Do not throw an error if the type does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- **name**
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the data type to remove.

- **CASCADE**
  Automatically drop objects that depend on the type (such as table columns, functions, and operators), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

- **RESTRICT**
  Refuse to drop the type if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

**Examples**

To remove the data type `box`:

```sql
DROP TYPE box;
```

**Compatibility**

This command is similar to the corresponding command in the SQL standard, apart from the `IF EXISTS` option, which is a Postgres Pro extension. But note that much of the `CREATE TYPE` command and the data type extension mechanisms in Postgres Pro differ from the SQL standard.

**See Also**

`ALTER TYPE`, `CREATE TYPE`
DROP USER

DROP USER — remove a database role

Synopsis

DROP USER [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...]

Description

DROP USER is simply an alternate spelling of DROP ROLE.

Compatibility

The DROP USER statement is a Postgres Pro extension. The SQL standard leaves the definition of users to the implementation.

See Also

DROP ROLE
DROP USER MAPPING

DROP USER MAPPING — remove a user mapping for a foreign server

Synopsis

DROP USER MAPPING [ IF EXISTS ] FOR { user_name | USER | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC } SERVER server_name

Description

DROP USER MAPPING removes an existing user mapping from foreign server.

The owner of a foreign server can drop user mappings for that server for any user. Also, a user can drop a user mapping for their own user name if USAGE privilege on the server has been granted to the user.

Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the user mapping does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

user_name

User name of the mapping. CURRENT_ROLE, CURRENT_USER, and USER match the name of the current user. PUBLIC is used to match all present and future user names in the system.

server_name

Server name of the user mapping.

Examples

Drop a user mapping bob, server foo if it exists:

DROP USER MAPPING IF EXISTS FOR bob SERVER foo;

Compatibility

DROP USER MAPPING conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The IF EXISTS clause is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE USER MAPPING, ALTER USER MAPPING
DROP VIEW

DROP VIEW — remove a view

Synopsis

```
DROP VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

Description

`DROP VIEW` drops an existing view. To execute this command you must be the owner of the view.

Parameters

- **IF EXISTS**
  Do not throw an error if the view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- **name**
  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the view to remove.

- **CASCADE**
  Automatically drop objects that depend on the view (such as other views), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

- **RESTRICT**
  Refuse to drop the view if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Examples

This command will remove the view called `kinds`:

```
DROP VIEW kinds;
```

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one view to be dropped per command, and apart from the `IF EXISTS` option, which is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

`ALTER VIEW`, `CREATE VIEW`
**END**

END — commit the current transaction

**Synopsis**

```
END [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ AND [ NO ] CHAIN ]
```

**Description**

The `END` command commits the current transaction. All changes made by the transaction become visible to others and are guaranteed to be durable if a crash occurs. This command is a Postgres Pro extension that is equivalent to `COMMIT`.

**Parameters**

- `WORK`
- `TRANSACTION`

  Optional key words. They have no effect.

- `AND CHAIN`

  If `AND CHAIN` is specified, a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics (see `SET TRANSACTION`) as the just finished one. Otherwise, no new transaction is started.

**Notes**

Use `ROLLBACK` to abort a transaction.

Issuing `END` when not inside a transaction does no harm, but it will provoke a warning message.

**Examples**

To commit the current transaction and make all changes permanent:

```
END;
```

**Compatibility**

`END` is a Postgres Pro extension that provides functionality equivalent to `COMMIT`, which is specified in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

- `BEGIN`
- `COMMIT`
- `ROLLBACK`
EXECUTE

EXECUTE — execute a prepared statement

Synopsis

EXECUTE name [ ( parameter [, ...] ) ]

Description

EXECUTE is used to execute a previously prepared statement. Since prepared statements only exist for the duration of a session, the prepared statement must have been created by a PREPARE statement executed earlier in the current session.

If the PREPARE statement that created the statement specified some parameters, a compatible set of parameters must be passed to the EXECUTE statement, or else an error is raised. Note that (unlike functions) prepared statements are not overloaded based on the type or number of their parameters; the name of a prepared statement must be unique within a database session.

For more information on the creation and usage of prepared statements, see PREPARE.

Parameters

name

The name of the prepared statement to execute.

parameter

The actual value of a parameter to the prepared statement. This must be an expression yielding a value that is compatible with the data type of this parameter, as was determined when the prepared statement was created.

Outputs

The command tag returned by EXECUTE is that of the prepared statement, and not EXECUTE.

Examples

Examples are given in Examples in the PREPARE documentation.

Compatibility

The SQL standard includes an EXECUTE statement, but it is only for use in embedded SQL. This version of the EXECUTE statement also uses a somewhat different syntax.

See Also

DEALLOCATE, PREPARE
EXPLAIN

EXPLAIN — show the execution plan of a statement

Synopsis

EXPLAIN [ ( option [, ...] ) ] statement
EXPLAIN [ ANALYZE ] [ VERBOSE ] statement

where option can be one of:

   ANALYZE [ boolean ]
   VERBOSE [ boolean ]
   COSTS [ boolean ]
   SETTINGS [ boolean ]
   BUFFERS [ boolean ]
   WAL [ boolean ]
   TIMING [ boolean ]
   SUMMARY [ boolean ]
   FORMAT { TEXT | XML | JSON | YAML }

Description

This command displays the execution plan that the Postgres Pro planner generates for the supplied statement. The execution plan shows how the table(s) referenced by the statement will be scanned — by plain sequential scan, index scan, etc. — and if multiple tables are referenced, what join algorithms will be used to bring together the required rows from each input table.

The most critical part of the display is the estimated statement execution cost, which is the planner’s guess at how long it will take to run the statement (measured in cost units that are arbitrary, but conventionally mean disk page fetches). Actually two numbers are shown: the start-up cost before the first row can be returned, and the total cost to return all the rows. For most queries the total cost is what matters, but in contexts such as a subquery in EXISTS, the planner will choose the smallest start-up cost instead of the smallest total cost (since the executor will stop after getting one row, anyway). Also, if you limit the number of rows to return with a LIMIT clause, the planner makes an appropriate interpolation between the endpoint costs to estimate which plan is really the cheapest.

The ANALYZE option causes the statement to be actually executed, not only planned. Then actual run time statistics are added to the display, including the total elapsed time expended within each plan node (in milliseconds) and the total number of rows it actually returned. This is useful for seeing whether the planner’s estimates are close to reality.

Important

Keep in mind that the statement is actually executed when the ANALYZE option is used. Although EXPLAIN will discard any output that a SELECT would return, other side effects of the statement will happen as usual. If you wish to use EXPLAIN ANALYZE on an INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, CREATE TABLE AS, or EXECUTE statement without letting the command affect your data, use this approach:

BEGIN;
EXPLAIN ANALYZE ...;
ROLLBACK;

Only the ANALYZE and VERBOSE options can be specified, and only in that order, without surrounding the option list in parentheses. Prior to PostgreSQL 9.0, the unparenthesized syntax was the only one supported. It is expected that all new options will be supported only in the parenthesized syntax.
**Parameters**

**ANALYZE**

Carry out the command and show actual run times and other statistics. This parameter defaults to FALSE.

**VERBOSE**

Display additional information regarding the plan. Specifically, include the output column list for each node in the plan tree, schema-qualify table and function names, always label variables in expressions with their range table alias, and always print the name of each trigger for which statistics are displayed. The query identifier will also be displayed if one has been computed, see compute_query_id for more details. This parameter defaults to FALSE.

**COSTS**

Include information on the estimated startup and total cost of each plan node, as well as the estimated number of rows and the estimated width of each row. This parameter defaults to TRUE.

**SETTINGS**

Include information on configuration parameters. Specifically, include options affecting query planning with value different from the built-in default value. This parameter defaults to FALSE.

**BUFFERS**

Include information on buffer usage. Specifically, include the number of shared blocks hit, read, dirtied, and written, the number of local blocks hit, read, dirtied, and written, the number of temp blocks read and written, and the time spent reading and writing data file blocks (in milliseconds) if track_io_timing is enabled. A hit means that a read was avoided because the block was found already in cache when needed. Shared blocks contain data from regular tables and indexes; local blocks contain data from temporary tables and indexes; while temp blocks contain short-term working data used in sorts, hashes, Materialize plan nodes, and similar cases. The number of blocks dirtied indicates the number of previously unmodified blocks that were changed by this query; while the number of blocks written indicates the number of previously-dirtied blocks evicted from cache by this backend during query processing. The number of blocks shown for an upper-level node includes those used by all its child nodes. In text format, only non-zero values are printed. It defaults to FALSE.

**WAL**

Include information on WAL record generation. Specifically, include the number of records, number of full page images (fpi) and the amount of WAL generated in bytes. In text format, only non-zero values are printed. This parameter may only be used when ANALYZE is also enabled. It defaults to FALSE.

**TIMING**

Include actual startup time and time spent in each node in the output. The overhead of repeatedly reading the system clock can slow down the query significantly on some systems, so it may be useful to set this parameter to FALSE when only actual row counts, and not exact times, are needed. Run time of the entire statement is always measured, even when node-level timing is turned off with this option. This parameter may only be used when ANALYZE is also enabled. It defaults to TRUE.

**SUMMARY**

Include summary information (e.g., totaled timing information) after the query plan. Summary information is included by default when ANALYZE is used but otherwise is not included by default, but can be enabled using this option. Planning time in EXPLAIN EXECUTE includes the time required to fetch the plan from the cache and the time required for re-planning, if necessary.

**FORMAT**

Specify the output format, which can be TEXT, XML, JSON, or YAML. Non-text output contains the same information as the text output format, but is easier for programs to parse. This parameter defaults to TEXT.
**boolean**

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write TRUE, ON, or 1 to enable the option, and FALSE, OFF, or 0 to disable it. The boolean value can also be omitted, in which case TRUE is assumed.

**statement**

Any SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, VALUES, EXECUTE, DECLARE, CREATE TABLE AS, or CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW AS statement, whose execution plan you wish to see.

**Outputs**

The command’s result is a textual description of the plan selected for the statement, optionally annotated with execution statistics. Section 14.1 describes the information provided.

**Notes**

In order to allow the Postgres Pro query planner to make reasonably informed decisions when optimizing queries, the pg_statistic data should be up-to-date for all tables used in the query. Normally the autovacuum daemon will take care of that automatically. But if a table has recently had substantial changes in its contents, you might need to do a manual ANALYZE rather than wait for autovacuum to catch up with the changes.

In order to measure the run-time cost of each node in the execution plan, the current implementation of EXPLAIN ANALYZE adds profiling overhead to query execution. As a result, running EXPLAIN ANALYZE on a query can sometimes take significantly longer than executing the query normally. The amount of overhead depends on the nature of the query, as well as the platform being used. The worst case occurs for plan nodes that in themselves require very little time per execution, and on machines that have relatively slow operating system calls for obtaining the time of day.

**Examples**

To show the plan for a simple query on a table with a single integer column and 10000 rows:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM foo;
```

```
QUERY PLAN
---------------------------------------------------------
  Seq Scan on foo  (cost=0.00..155.00 rows=10000 width=4)
(1 row)
```

Here is the same query, with JSON output formatting:

```
EXPLAIN (FORMAT JSON) SELECT * FROM foo;
```

```
[ 
  { 
    "Plan": { 
      "Node Type": "Seq Scan", 
      "Relation Name": "foo", 
      "Alias": "foo", 
      "Startup Cost": 0.00, 
      "Total Cost": 155.00, 
      "Plan Rows": 10000, 
      "Plan Width": 4 
    } 
  } 
]
(1 row)
```

1593
If there is an index and we use a query with an indexable WHERE condition, EXPLAIN might show a different plan:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM foo WHERE i = 4;
```

**QUERY PLAN**

```
Index Scan using fi on foo  (cost=0.00..5.98 rows=1 width=4)
  Index Cond: (i = 4)
(2 rows)
```

Here is the same query, but in YAML format:

```
EXPLAIN (FORMAT YAML) SELECT * FROM foo WHERE i='4';
```

**QUERY PLAN**

```
- Plan:                      +
  Node Type: "Index Scan"  +
  Scan Direction: "Forward"+
  Index Name: "fi"         +
  Relation Name: "foo"     +
  Alias: "foo"             +
  Startup Cost: 0.00       +
  Total Cost: 5.98         +
  Plan Rows: 1             +
  Plan Width: 4            +
  Index Cond: "(i = 4)"
(1 row)
```

XML format is left as an exercise for the reader.

Here is the same plan with cost estimates suppressed:

```
EXPLAIN (COSTS FALSE) SELECT * FROM foo WHERE i = 4;
```

**QUERY PLAN**

```
Index Scan using fi on foo
  Index Cond: (i = 4)
(2 rows)
```

Here is an example of a query plan for a query using an aggregate function:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT sum(i) FROM foo WHERE i < 10;
```

**QUERY PLAN**

```
Aggregate  (cost=23.93..23.93 rows=1 width=4)
  ->  Index Scan using fi on foo  (cost=0.00..23.92 rows=6 width=4)
      Index Cond: (i < 10)
(3 rows)
```

Here is an example of using EXPLAIN EXECUTE to display the execution plan for a prepared query:

```
PREPARE query(int, int) AS SELECT sum(bar) FROM test
  WHERE id > $1 AND id < $2
  GROUP BY foo;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE EXECUTE query(100, 200);
```

**QUERY PLAN**

1594
Of course, the specific numbers shown here depend on the actual contents of the tables involved. Also note that the numbers, and even the selected query strategy, might vary between Postgres Pro releases due to planner improvements. In addition, the ANALYZE command uses random sampling to estimate data statistics; therefore, it is possible for cost estimates to change after a fresh run of ANALYZE, even if the actual distribution of data in the table has not changed.

**Compatibility**

There is no EXPLAIN statement defined in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

ANALYZE
FETCH

FETCH — retrieve rows from a query using a cursor

Synopsis

FETCH [ direction [ FROM | IN ] ] cursor_name

where direction can be empty or one of:

NEXT
PRIOR
FIRST
LAST
ABSOLUTE count
RELATIVE count
count
ALL
FORWARD
FORWARD count
FORWARD ALL
BACKWARD
BACKWARD count
BACKWARD ALL

Description

FETCH retrieves rows using a previously-created cursor.

A cursor has an associated position, which is used by FETCH. The cursor position can be before the first row of the query result, on any particular row of the result, or after the last row of the result. When created, a cursor is positioned before the first row. After fetching some rows, the cursor is positioned on the row most recently retrieved. If FETCH runs off the end of the available rows then the cursor is left positioned after the last row, or before the first row if fetching backward. FETCH ALL or FETCH BACKWARD ALL will always leave the cursor positioned after the last row or before the first row.

The forms NEXT, PRIOR, FIRST, LAST, ABSOLUTE, RELATIVE fetch a single row after moving the cursor appropriately. If there is no such row, an empty result is returned, and the cursor is left positioned before the first row or after the last row as appropriate.

The forms using FORWARD and BACKWARD retrieve the indicated number of rows moving in the forward or backward direction, leaving the cursor positioned on the last-returned row (or after/before all rows, if the count exceeds the number of rows available).

RELATIVE 0, FORWARD 0, and BACKWARD 0 all request fetching the current row without moving the cursor, that is, re-fetching the most recently fetched row. This will succeed unless the cursor is positioned before the first row or after the last row; in which case, no row is returned.

Note

This page describes usage of cursors at the SQL command level. If you are trying to use cursors inside a PL/pgSQL function, the rules are different — see Section 41.7.3.

Parameters

direction

direction defines the fetch direction and number of rows to fetch. It can be one of the following:
NEXT
Fetch the next row. This is the default if direction is omitted.

PRIOR
Fetch the prior row.

FIRST
Fetch the first row of the query (same as ABSOLUTE 1).

LAST
Fetch the last row of the query (same as ABSOLUTE -1).

ABSOLUTE count
Fetch the count'th row of the query, or the abs(count) 'th row from the end if count is negative. Position before first row or after last row if count is out of range; in particular, ABSOLUTE 0 positions before the first row.

RELATIVE count
Fetch the count'th succeeding row, or the abs(count) 'th prior row if count is negative. RELATIVE 0 re-fetches the current row, if any.

count
Fetch the next count rows (same as FORWARD count).

ALL
Fetch all remaining rows (same as FORWARD ALL).

FORWARD
Fetch the next row (same as NEXT).

FORWARD count
Fetch the next count rows. FORWARD 0 re-fetches the current row.

FORWARD ALL
Fetch all remaining rows.

BACKWARD
Fetch the prior row (same as PRIOR).

BACKWARD count
Fetch the prior count rows (scanning backwards). BACKWARD 0 re-fetches the current row.

BACKWARD ALL
Fetch all prior rows (scanning backwards).

count
count is a possibly-signed integer constant, determining the location or number of rows to fetch. For FORWARD and BACKWARD cases, specifying a negative count is equivalent to changing the sense of FORWARD and BACKWARD.

cursor_name
An open cursor's name.
Outputs

On successful completion, a `FETCH` command returns a command tag of the form

```
FETCH count
```

The `count` is the number of rows fetched (possibly zero). Note that in psql, the command tag will not actually be displayed, since psql displays the fetched rows instead.

Notes

The cursor should be declared with the `SCROLL` option if one intends to use any variants of `FETCH` other than `FETCH NEXT` or `FETCH FORWARD` with a positive count. For simple queries Postgres Pro will allow backwards fetch from cursors not declared with `SCROLL`, but this behavior is best not relied on. If the cursor is declared with `NO SCROLL`, no backward fetches are allowed.

`ABSOLUTE` fetches are not any faster than navigating to the desired row with a relative move: the underlying implementation must traverse all the intermediate rows anyway. Negative absolute fetches are even worse: the query must be read to the end to find the last row, and then traversed backward from there. However, rewinding to the start of the query (as with `FETCH ABSOLUTE 0`) is fast.

`DECLARE` is used to define a cursor. Use `MOVE` to change cursor position without retrieving data.

Examples

The following example traverses a table using a cursor:

```
BEGIN WORK;

-- Set up a cursor:
DECLARE liahona SCROLL CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;

-- Fetch the first 5 rows in the cursor liahona:
FETCH FORWARD 5 FROM liahona;

| code  |          title          | did | date_prod |   kind   |  len  |
|-------|-------------------------+-----+------------+----------+-------|
| BL101 | The Third Man           | 101 | 1949-12-23 | Drama    | 01:44 |
| BL102 | The African Queen       | 101 | 1951-08-11 | Romantic | 01:43 |
| JL201 | Une Femme est une Femme | 102 | 1961-03-12 | Romantic | 01:25 |
| P_301 | Vertigo                 | 103 | 1958-11-14 | Action   | 02:08 |
| P_302 | Becket                  | 103 | 1964-02-03 | Drama    | 02:28 |

-- Fetch the previous row:
FETCH PRIOR FROM liahona;

| code  |  title  | did | date_prod |   kind  |  len  |
|-------|---------+-----+------------+----------+-------|
| P_301 | Vertigo | 103 | 1958-11-14 | Action   | 02:08 |

-- Close the cursor and end the transaction:
CLOSE liahona;
COMMIT WORK;
```

Compatibility

The SQL standard defines `FETCH` for use in embedded SQL only. The variant of `FETCH` described here returns the data as if it were a `SELECT` result rather than placing it in host variables. Other than this point, `FETCH` is fully upward-compatible with the SQL standard.

The `FETCH` forms involving `FORWARD` and `BACKWARD`, as well as the forms `FETCH count` and `FETCH ALL`, in which `FORWARD` is implicit, are Postgres Pro extensions.
The SQL standard allows only `FROM` preceding the cursor name; the option to use `IN`, or to leave them out altogether, is an extension.

**See Also**

CLOSE, DECLARE, MOVE
GRANT

GRANT — define access privileges

Synopsis

GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES | TRIGGER } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } ON { [ TABLE ] table_name [, ...] | ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] } TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | REFERENCES } ( column_name [, ...] ) [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] ( column_name [, ...] ) } ON { TABLE } table_name [, ...] TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } ON { SEQUENCE sequence_name [, ...] | ALL SEQUENCES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] } TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { CREATE | CONNECT | TEMPORARY | TEMP } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } ON DATABASE database_name [, ...] TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } ON DOMAIN domain_name [, ...] TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER fdw_name [, ...] TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } ON FOREIGN SERVER server_name [, ...] TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } ON { { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE | ROUTINE } routine_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ arg_type ] arg_name [, ...] ) ] [, ...] | ALL { FUNCTIONS | PROCEDURES | ROUTINES } IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] } TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } ON LANGUAGE lang_name [, ...] TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
GRANT 
{ { SELECT | UPDATE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } 
ON LARGE OBJECT loid [, ...] 
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] 
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT 
{ { CREATE | USAGE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } 
ON SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] 
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] 
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT 
{ CREATE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } 
ON TABLESPACE tablespace_name [, ...] 
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] 
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT 
{ USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] } 
ON TYPE type_name [, ...] 
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ] 
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT role_name [, ...] TO role_specification [, ...] 
[ WITH ADMIN OPTION ] 
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

where role_specification can be:

[ GROUP ] role_name
| PUBLIC
| CURRENT_ROLE
| CURRENT_USER
| SESSION_USER

Description

The GRANT command has two basic variants: one that grants privileges on a database object (table, column, view, foreign table, sequence, database, foreign-data wrapper, foreign server, function, procedure, procedural language, schema, or tablespace), and one that grants membership in a role. These variants are similar in many ways, but they are different enough to be described separately.

GRANT on Database Objects

This variant of the GRANT command gives specific privileges on a database object to one or more roles. These privileges are added to those already granted, if any.

The key word PUBLIC indicates that the privileges are to be granted to all roles, including those that might be created later. PUBLIC can be thought of as an implicitly defined group that always includes all roles. Any particular role will have the sum of privileges granted directly to it, privileges granted to any role it is presently a member of, and privileges granted to PUBLIC.

If WITH GRANT OPTION is specified, the recipient of the privilege can in turn grant it to others. Without a grant option, the recipient cannot do that. Grant options cannot be granted to PUBLIC.

If GRANTED BY is specified, the specified grantor must be the current user. This clause is currently present in this form only for SQL compatibility.

There is no need to grant privileges to the owner of an object (usually the user that created it), as the owner has all privileges by default. (The owner could, however, choose to revoke some of their own privileges for safety.)
The right to drop an object, or to alter its definition in any way, is not treated as a grantable privilege; it is inherent in the owner, and cannot be granted or revoked. (However, a similar effect can be obtained by granting or revoking membership in the role that owns the object; see below.) The owner implicitly has all grant options for the object, too.

The possible privileges are:

- SELECT
- INSERT
- UPDATE
- DELETE
- TRUNCATE
- REFERENCES
- TRIGGER
- CREATE
- CONNECT
- TEMPORARY
- EXECUTE
- USAGE

Specific types of privileges, as defined in Section 5.7.

**TEMP**

Alternative spelling for TEMPORARY.

**ALL PRIVILEGES**

Grant all of the privileges available for the object's type. The PRIVILEGES key word is optional in Postgres Pro, though it is required by strict SQL.

The FUNCTION syntax works for plain functions, aggregate functions, and window functions, but not for procedures; use PROCEDURE for those. Alternatively, use ROUTINE to refer to a function, aggregate function, window function, or procedure regardless of its precise type.

There is also an option to grant privileges on all objects of the same type within one or more schemas. This functionality is currently supported only for tables, sequences, functions, and procedures. ALL TABLES also affects views and foreign tables, just like the specific-object GRANT command. ALL FUNCTIONS also affects aggregate and window functions, but not procedures, again just like the specific-object GRANT command. Use ALL ROUTINES to include procedures.

**GRANT on Roles**

This variant of the GRANT command grants membership in a role to one or more other roles. Membership in a role is significant because it conveys the privileges granted to a role to each of its members.

If WITH ADMIN OPTION is specified, the member can in turn grant membership in the role to others, and revoke membership in the role as well. Without the admin option, ordinary users cannot do that. A role is not considered to hold WITH ADMIN OPTION on itself, but it may grant or revoke membership in itself from a database session where the session user matches the role. Database superusers can grant or revoke membership in any role to anyone. Roles having CREATEROLE privilege can grant or revoke membership in any role that is not a superuser.

If GRANTED BY is specified, the grant is recorded as having been done by the specified role. Only database superusers may use this option, except when it names the same role executing the command.

Unlike the case with privileges, membership in a role cannot be granted to PUBLIC. Note also that this form of the command does not allow the noise word GROUP in role_specification.

**Notes**

The REVOKE command is used to revoke access privileges.
Since PostgreSQL 8.1, the concepts of users and groups have been unified into a single kind of entity called a role. It is therefore no longer necessary to use the keyword `GROUP` to identify whether a grantee is a user or a group. `GROUP` is still allowed in the command, but it is a noise word.

A user may perform `SELECT`, `INSERT`, etc. on a column if they hold that privilege for either the specific column or its whole table. Granting the privilege at the table level and then revoking it for one column will not do what one might wish: the table-level grant is unaffected by a column-level operation.

When a non-owner of an object attempts to `GRANT` privileges on the object, the command will fail outright if the user has no privileges whatsoever on the object. As long as some privilege is available, the command will proceed, but it will grant only those privileges for which the user has grant options. The `GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES` forms will issue a warning message if no grant options are held, while the other forms will issue a warning if grant options for any of the privileges specifically named in the command are not held. (In principle these statements apply to the object owner as well, but since the owner is always treated as holding all grant options, the cases can never occur.)

It should be noted that database superusers can access all objects regardless of object privilege settings. This is comparable to the rights of `root` in a Unix system. As with `root`, it's unwise to operate as a superuser except when absolutely necessary.

If a superuser chooses to issue a `GRANT` or `REVOKE` command, the command is performed as though it were issued by the owner of the affected object. In particular, privileges granted via such a command will appear to have been granted by the object owner. (For role membership, the membership appears to have been granted by the containing role itself.)

`GRANT` and `REVOKE` can also be done by a role that is not the owner of the affected object, but is a member of the role that owns the object, or is a member of a role that holds privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION` on the object. In this case the privileges will be recorded as having been granted by the role that actually owns the object or holds the privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION`. For example, if table `t1` is owned by role `g1`, of which role `u1` is a member, then `u1` can grant privileges on `t1` to `u2`, but those privileges will appear to have been granted directly by `g1`. Any other member of role `g1` could revoke them later.

If the role executing `GRANT` holds the required privileges indirectly via more than one role membership path, it is unspecified which containing role will be recorded as having done the grant. In such cases it is best practice to use `SET ROLE` to become the specific role you want to do the `GRANT` as.

Granting permission on a table does not automatically extend permissions to any sequences used by the table, including sequences tied to `SERIAL` columns. Permissions on sequences must be set separately.

See Section 5.7 for more information about specific privilege types, as well as how to inspect objects' privileges.

**Examples**

Grant insert privilege to all users on table `films`:

```
GRANT INSERT ON films TO PUBLIC;
```

Grant all available privileges to user `manuel` on view `kinds`:

```
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON kinds TO manuel;
```

Note that while the above will indeed grant all privileges if executed by a superuser or the owner of `kinds`, when executed by someone else it will only grant those permissions for which the someone else has grant options.

```
Grant membership in role `admins` to user `joe`:

GRANT admins TO joe;
```

**Compatibility**

According to the SQL standard, the `PRIVILEGES` key word in `ALL PRIVILEGES` is required. The SQL standard does not support setting the privileges on more than one object per command.
Postgres Pro allows an object owner to revoke their own ordinary privileges: for example, a table owner can make the table read-only to themselves by revoking their own \texttt{INSERT}, \texttt{UPDATE}, \texttt{DELETE}, and \texttt{TRUNCATE} privileges. This is not possible according to the SQL standard. The reason is that Postgres Pro treats the owner's privileges as having been granted by the owner to themselves; therefore they can revoke them too. In the SQL standard, the owner's privileges are granted by an assumed entity \texttt{"_SYSTEM"}. Not being \texttt{"_SYSTEM"}, the owner cannot revoke these rights.

According to the SQL standard, grant options can be granted to \texttt{PUBLIC}; Postgres Pro only supports granting grant options to roles.

The SQL standard allows the \texttt{GRANTED BY} option to specify only \texttt{CURRENT_USER} or \texttt{CURRENT_ROLE}. The other variants are PostgreSQL extensions.

The SQL standard provides for a \texttt{USAGE} privilege on other kinds of objects: character sets, collations, translations.

In the SQL standard, sequences only have a \texttt{USAGE} privilege, which controls the use of the \texttt{NEXT VALUE FOR} expression, which is equivalent to the function \texttt{nextval} in Postgres Pro. The sequence privileges \texttt{SELECT} and \texttt{UPDATE} are Postgres Pro extensions. The application of the sequence \texttt{USAGE} privilege to the \texttt{currval} function is also a Postgres Pro extension (as is the function itself).

Privileges on databases, tablespaces, schemas, and languages are Postgres Pro extensions.

See Also

\texttt{REVOKE}, \texttt{ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES}
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA — import table definitions from a foreign server

Synopsis

IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA remote_schema
   [ { LIMIT TO | EXCEPT } ( table_name [, ...] ) ]
FROM SERVER server_name
INTO local_schema
   [ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]

Description

IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA creates foreign tables that represent tables existing on a foreign server. The
new foreign tables will be owned by the user issuing the command and are created with the correct
column definitions and options to match the remote tables.

By default, all tables and views existing in a particular schema on the foreign server are imported. Optionallly, the list of tables can be limited to a specified subset, or specific tables can be excluded. The
new foreign tables are all created in the target schema, which must already exist.

To use IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA, the user must have USAGE privilege on the foreign server, as well as
CREATE privilege on the target schema.

Parameters

remote_schema
   The remote schema to import from. The specific meaning of a remote schema depends on the foreign
data wrapper in use.

LIMIT TO ( table_name [, ...] )
   Import only foreign tables matching one of the given table names. Other tables existing in the foreign
schema will be ignored.

EXCEPT ( table_name [, ...] )
   Exclude specified foreign tables from the import. All tables existing in the foreign schema will be
imported except the ones listed here.

server_name
   The foreign server to import from.

local_schema
   The schema in which the imported foreign tables will be created.

OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] )
   Options to be used during the import. The allowed option names and values are specific to each
foreign data wrapper.

Examples

Import table definitions from a remote schema foreign_films on server film_server, creating the
foreign tables in local schema films:

IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA foreign_films
   FROM SERVER film_server INTO films;
As above, but import only the two tables actors and directors (if they exist):

```
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA foreign_films LIMIT TO (actors, directors)
   FROM SERVER film_server INTO films;
```

**Compatibility**

The `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA` command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the `OPTIONS` clause is a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE, CREATE SERVER
## INSERT

**INSERT** — create new rows in a table

### Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [, ...] ]
INSERT INTO table_name [ AS alias ] [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
[ OVERRIDING { SYSTEM | USER } VALUE ]
( DEFAULT VALUES | VALUES ( { expression | DEFAULT } [, ...] ) [, ...] | query )
[ ON CONFLICT [ conflict_target ] conflict_action ]
[ RETURNING * | output_expression [ [ AS ] output_name ] [, ...] ]
```

where `conflict_target` can be one of:

```
( { index_column_name | ( index_expression ) } [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass ]
[, ...] ) [ WHERE index_predicate ]
ON CONSTRAINT constraint_name
```

and `conflict_action` is one of:

```
DO NOTHING
DO UPDATE SET { column_name = { expression | DEFAULT } |
( column_name [, ...] ) = [ ROW ] ( { expression | DEFAULT }
[, ...] ) |
( column_name [, ...] ) = ( sub-SELECT )
} [, ...]
[ WHERE condition ]
```

### Description

**INSERT** inserts new rows into a table. One can insert one or more rows specified by value expressions, or zero or more rows resulting from a query.

The target column names can be listed in any order. If no list of column names is given at all, the default is all the columns of the table in their declared order; or the first \( N \) column names, if there are only \( N \) columns supplied by the `VALUES` clause or `query`. The values supplied by the `VALUES` clause or `query` are associated with the explicit or implicit column list left-to-right.

Each column not present in the explicit or implicit column list will be filled with a default value, either its declared default value or null if there is none.

If the expression for any column is not of the correct data type, automatic type conversion will be attempted.

**ON CONFLICT** can be used to specify an alternative action to raising a unique constraint or exclusion constraint violation error. (See **ON CONFLICT Clause** below.)

The optional **RETURNING** clause causes **INSERT** to compute and return value(s) based on each row actually inserted (or updated, if an **ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE** clause was used). This is primarily useful for obtaining values that were supplied by defaults, such as a serial sequence number. However, any expression using the table’s columns is allowed. The syntax of the **RETURNING** list is identical to that of the output list of **SELECT**. Only rows that were successfully inserted or updated will be returned. For example, if a row was locked but not updated because an **ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE ... WHERE clause condition** was not satisfied, the row will not be returned.

You must have **INSERT** privilege on a table in order to insert into it. If **ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE** is present, **UPDATE** privilege on the table is also required.
If a column list is specified, you only need `INSERT` privilege on the listed columns. Similarly, when `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` is specified, you only need `UPDATE` privilege on the column(s) that are listed to be updated. However, `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` also requires `SELECT` privilege on any column whose values are read in the `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` expressions or condition.

Use of the `RETURNING` clause requires `SELECT` privilege on all columns mentioned in `RETURNING`. If you use the `query` clause to insert rows from a query, you of course need to have `SELECT` privilege on any table or column used in the query.

**Parameters**

**Inserting**

This section covers parameters that may be used when only inserting new rows. Parameters exclusively used with the `ON CONFLICT` clause are described separately.

**with_query**

The `WITH` clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the `INSERT` query. See Section 7.8 and `SELECT` for details.

It is possible for the `query` (`SELECT` statement) to also contain a `WITH` clause. In such a case both sets of `with_query` can be referenced within the `query`, but the second one takes precedence since it is more closely nested.

**table_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

**alias**

A substitute name for `table_name`. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. This is particularly useful when `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` targets a table named `excluded`, since that will otherwise be taken as the name of the special table representing rows proposed for insertion.

**column_name**

The name of a column in the table named by `table_name`. The column name can be qualified with a subfield name or array subscript, if needed. (Inserting into only some fields of a composite column leaves the other fields null.) When referencing a column with `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE`, do not include the table's name in the specification of a target column. For example, `INSERT INTO table_name ... ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE SET table_name.col = 1` is invalid (this follows the general behavior for `UPDATE`).

**OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE**

If this clause is specified, then any values supplied for identity columns will override the default sequence-generated values.

For an identity column defined as `GENERATED ALWAYS`, it is an error to insert an explicit value (other than `DEFAULT`) without specifying either `OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE` or `OVERRIDING USER VALUE`. (For an identity column defined as `GENERATED BY DEFAULT`, `OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE` is the normal behavior and specifying it does nothing, but PostgreSQL allows it as an extension.)

**OVERRIDING USER VALUE**

If this clause is specified, then any values supplied for identity columns are ignored and the default sequence-generated values are applied.

This clause is useful for example when copying values between tables. Writing `INSERT INTO tbl2 OVERRIDING USER VALUE SELECT * FROM tbl1` will copy from `tbl1` all columns that are not identity
columns in tbl2 while values for the identity columns in tbl2 will be generated by the sequences associated with tbl2.

DEFAULT VALUES

All columns will be filled with their default values, as if DEFAULT were explicitly specified for each column. (An OVERRIDING clause is not permitted in this form.)

expression

An expression or value to assign to the corresponding column.

DEFAULT

The corresponding column will be filled with its default value. An identity column will be filled with a new value generated by the associated sequence. For a generated column, specifying this is permitted but merely specifies the normal behavior of computing the column from its generation expression.

query

A query (SELECT statement) that supplies the rows to be inserted. Refer to the SELECT statement for a description of the syntax.

output_expression

An expression to be computed and returned by the INSERT command after each row is inserted or updated. The expression can use any column names of the table named by table_name. Write * to return all columns of the inserted or updated row(s).

output_name

A name to use for a returned column.

ON CONFLICT Clause

The optional ON CONFLICT clause specifies an alternative action to raising a unique violation or exclusion constraint violation error. For each individual row proposed for insertion, either the insertion proceeds, or, if an arbiter constraint or index specified by conflict_target is violated, the alternative conflict_action is taken. ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING simply avoids inserting a row as its alternative action. ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE updates the existing row that conflicts with the row proposed for insertion as its alternative action.

conflict_target can perform unique index inference. When performing inference, it consists of one or more index_column_name columns and/or index_expression expressions, and an optional index_predicate. All table_name unique indexes that, without regard to order, contain exactly the conflict_target-specified columns/expressions are inferred (chosen) as arbiter indexes. If an index_predicate is specified, it must, as a further requirement for inference, satisfy arbiter indexes. Note that this means a non-partial unique index (a unique index without a predicate) will be inferred (and thus used by ON CONFLICT) if such an index satisfying every other criteria is available. If an attempt at inference is unsuccessful, an error is raised.

ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE guarantees an atomic INSERT or UPDATE outcome; provided there is no independent error, one of those two outcomes is guaranteed, even under high concurrency. This is also known as UPSERT — “UPDATE or INSERT”.

conflict_target

Specifies which conflicts ON CONFLICT takes the alternative action on by choosing arbiter indexes. Either performs unique index inference, or names a constraint explicitly. For ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING, it is optional to specify a conflict_target; when omitted, conflicts with all usable constraints (and unique indexes) are handled. For ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE, a conflict_target must be provided.
conflict_action

conflict_action specifies an alternative ON CONFLICT action. It can be either DO NOTHING, or a DO UPDATE clause specifying the exact details of the UPDATE action to be performed in case of a conflict. The SET and WHERE clauses in ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE have access to the existing row using the table's name (or an alias), and to rows proposed for insertion using the special excluded table. SELECT privilege is required on any column in the target table where corresponding excluded columns are read.

Note that the effects of all per-row BEFORE INSERT triggers are reflected in excluded values, since those effects may have contributed to the row being excluded from insertion.

index_column_name

The name of a table_name column. Used to infer arbiter indexes. Follows CREATE INDEX format. SELECT privilege on index_column_name is required.

index_expression

Similar to index_column_name, but used to infer expressions on table_name columns appearing within index definitions (not simple columns). Follows CREATE INDEX format. SELECT privilege on any column appearing within index_expression is required.

collation

When specified, mandates that corresponding index_column_name or index_expression use a particular collation in order to be matched during inference. Typically this is omitted, as collations usually do not affect whether or not a constraint violation occurs. Follows CREATE INDEX format.

opclass

When specified, mandates that corresponding index_column_name or index_expression use particular operator class in order to be matched during inference. Typically this is omitted, as the equality semantics are often equivalent across a type's operator classes anyway, or because it's sufficient to trust that the defined unique indexes have the pertinent definition of equality. Follows CREATE INDEX format.

index_predicate

Used to allow inference of partial unique indexes. Any indexes that satisfy the predicate (which need not actually be partial indexes) can be inferred. Follows CREATE INDEX format. SELECT privilege on any column appearing within index_predicate is required.

constraint_name

Explicitly specifies an arbiter constraint by name, rather than inferring a constraint or index.

collection

An expression that returns a value of type boolean. Only rows for which this expression returns true will be updated, although all rows will be locked when the ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE action is taken. Note that condition is evaluated last, after a conflict has been identified as a candidate to update.

Note that exclusion constraints are not supported as arbiters with ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE. In all cases, only NOT DEFERRABLE constraints and unique indexes are supported as arbiters.

INSERT with an ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE clause is a "deterministic" statement. This means that the command will not be allowed to affect any single existing row more than once; a cardinality violation error will be raised when this situation arises. Rows proposed for insertion should not duplicate each other in terms of attributes constrained by an arbiter index or constraint.

Note that it is currently not supported for the ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE clause of an INSERT applied to a partitioned table to update the partition key of a conflicting row such that it requires the row be moved to a new partition.
Tip
It is often preferable to use unique index inference rather than naming a constraint directly using ON CONFLICT ON CONSTRAINT constraint_name. Inference will continue to work correctly when the underlying index is replaced by another more or less equivalent index in an overlapping way, for example when using CREATE UNIQUE INDEX ... CONCURRENTLY before dropping the index being replaced.

Outputs
On successful completion, an INSERT command returns a command tag of the form

```
INSERT oid count
```

The count is the number of rows inserted or updated. oid is always 0 (it used to be the OID assigned to the inserted row if count was exactly one and the target table was declared WITH OIDS and 0 otherwise, but creating a table WITH OIDS is not supported anymore).

If the INSERT command contains a RETURNING clause, the result will be similar to that of a SELECT statement containing the columns and values defined in the RETURNING list, computed over the row(s) inserted or updated by the command.

Notes
If the specified table is a partitioned table, each row is routed to the appropriate partition and inserted into it. If the specified table is a partition, an error will occur if one of the input rows violates the partition constraint.

Examples
Insert a single row into table films:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES
('UA502', 'Bananas', 105, '1971-07-13', 'Comedy', '82 minutes');
```

In this example, the len column is omitted and therefore it will have the default value:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind)
VALUES ('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, '1961-06-16', 'Drama');
```

This example uses the DEFAULT clause for the date columns rather than specifying a value:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES
('UA502', 'Bananas', 105, DEFAULT, 'Comedy', '82 minutes');
```

To insert a row consisting entirely of default values:

```
INSERT INTO films DEFAULT VALUES;
```

To insert multiple rows using the multirow VALUES syntax:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind) VALUES
('B6717', 'Tampopo', 110, '1985-02-10', 'Comedy'),
('HG120', 'The Dinner Game', 140, DEFAULT, 'Comedy');
```

This example inserts some rows into table films from a table tmp_films with the same column layout as films:

```
INSERT INTO films SELECT * FROM tmp_films WHERE date_prod < '2004-05-07';
```
This example inserts into array columns:

```
-- Create an empty 3x3 gameboard for noughts-and-crosses
INSERT INTO tictactoe (game, board[1:3][1:3])
VALUES (1, '{"",","",""},{"","",""},{"","",""}');
-- The subscripts in the above example aren't really needed
INSERT INTO tictactoe (game, board)
VALUES (2, '{X","",""},{","O",""},{","X",""}');
```

Insert a single row into table distributors, returning the sequence number generated by the DEFAULT clause:

```
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (DEFAULT, 'XYZ Widgets')
RETURNING did;
```

Increment the sales count of the salesperson who manages the account for Acme Corporation, and record the whole updated row along with current time in a log table:

```
WITH upd AS (  
  UPDATE employees SET sales_count = sales_count + 1 WHERE id =  
  (SELECT sales_person FROM accounts WHERE name = 'Acme Corporation')  
  RETURNING *  
)
INSERT INTO employees_log SELECT *, current_timestamp FROM upd;
```

Insert or update new distributors as appropriate. Assumes a unique index has been defined that constrains values appearing in the did column. Note that the special excluded table is used to reference values originally proposed for insertion:

```
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname)
VALUES (5, 'Gizmo Transglobal'), (6, 'Associated Computing, Inc')
ON CONFLICT (did) DO UPDATE set dname = EXCLUDED.dname;
```

Insert a distributor, or do nothing for rows proposed for insertion when an existing, excluded row (a row with a matching constrained column or columns after before row insert triggers fire) exists. Example assumes a unique index has been defined that constrains values appearing in the did column:

```
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (7, 'Redline GmbH')
ON CONFLICT (did) DO NOTHING;
```

Insert or update new distributors as appropriate. Example assumes a unique index has been defined that constrains values appearing in the did column. WHERE clause is used to limit the rows actually updated (any existing row not updated will still be locked, though):

```
-- Don't update existing distributors based in a certain ZIP code
INSERT INTO distributors AS d (did, dname) VALUES (8, 'Anvil Distribution')
ON CONFLICT (did) DO UPDATE
  SET dname = EXCLUDED.dname || ' (formerly ' || d.dname || ')
WHERE d.zipcode <> '21201';
```

```
-- Name a constraint directly in the statement (uses associated
-- index to arbitrate taking the DO NOTHING action)
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (9, 'Antwerp Design')
ON CONFLICT ON CONSTRAINT distributors_pkey DO NOTHING;
```

Insert new distributor if possible; otherwise DO NOTHING. Example assumes a unique index has been defined that constrains values appearing in the did column on a subset of rows where the is_active Boolean column evaluates to true:

```
-- This statement could infer a partial unique index on "did"
-- with a predicate of "WHERE is_active", but it could also
-- just use a regular unique constraint on "did"
```
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (10, 'Conrad International')
  ON CONFLICT (did) WHERE is_active DO NOTHING;

Compatibility

INSERT conforms to the SQL standard, except that the RETURNING clause is a Postgres Pro extension, as is the ability to use WITH with INSERT, and the ability to specify an alternative action with ON CONFLICT. Also, the case in which a column name list is omitted, but not all the columns are filled from the VALUES clause or query, is disallowed by the standard.

The SQL standard specifies that OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE can only be specified if an identity column that is generated always exists. Postgres Pro allows the clause in any case and ignores it if it is not applicable.

Possible limitations of the query clause are documented under SELECT.
LISTEN

LISTEN — listen for a notification

Synopsis

LISTEN channel

Description

LISTEN registers the current session as a listener on the notification channel named channel. If the current session is already registered as a listener for this notification channel, nothing is done.

Whenever the command NOTIFY channel is invoked, either by this session or another one connected to the same database, all the sessions currently listening on that notification channel are notified, and each will in turn notify its connected client application.

A session can be unregistered for a given notification channel with the UNLISTEN command. A session's listen registrations are automatically cleared when the session ends.

The method a client application must use to detect notification events depends on which Postgres Pro application programming interface it uses. With the libpq library, the application issues LISTEN as an ordinary SQL command, and then must periodically call the function PQnotifies to find out whether any notification events have been received. Other interfaces such as libpgtcl provide higher-level methods for handling notify events; indeed, with libpgtcl the application programmer should not even issue LISTEN or UNLISTEN directly. See the documentation for the interface you are using for more details.

Parameters

channel

Name of a notification channel (any identifier).

Notes

LISTEN takes effect at transaction commit. If LISTEN or UNLISTEN is executed within a transaction that later rolls back, the set of notification channels being listened to is unchanged.

A transaction that has executed LISTEN cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

There is a race condition when first setting up a listening session: if concurrently-committing transactions are sending notify events, exactly which of those will the newly listening session receive? The answer is that the session will receive all events committed after an instant during the transaction's commit step. But that is slightly later than any database state that the transaction could have observed in queries. This leads to the following rule for using LISTEN: first execute (and commit!) that command, then in a new transaction inspect the database state as needed by the application logic, then rely on notifications to find out about subsequent changes to the database state. The first few received notifications might refer to updates already observed in the initial database inspection, but this is usually harmless.

NOTIFY contains a more extensive discussion of the use of LISTEN and NOTIFY.

Examples

Configure and execute a listen/notify sequence from psql:

LISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process with PID 8448.
LISTEN

Compatibility

There is no LISTEN statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

NOTIFY, UNLISTEN
LOAD

LOAD — load a shared library file

Synopsis

LOAD 'filename'

Description

This command loads a shared library file into the Postgres Pro server's address space. If the file has been loaded already, the command does nothing. Shared library files that contain C functions are automatically loaded whenever one of their functions is called. Therefore, an explicit LOAD is usually only needed to load a library that modifies the server's behavior through "hooks" rather than providing a set of functions.

The library file name is typically given as just a bare file name, which is sought in the server's library search path (set by dynamic_library_path). Alternatively it can be given as a full path name. In either case the platform's standard shared library file name extension may be omitted. See Section 36.10.1 for more information on this topic.

Non-superusers can only apply LOAD to library files located in $libdir/plugins/ — the specified filename must begin with exactly that string. (It is the database administrator's responsibility to ensure that only "safe" libraries are installed there.)

Compatibility

LOAD is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

CREATE FUNCTION
LOCK

LOCK — lock a table

Synopsis

```
LOCK [ TABLE ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ] [, ... ] [ IN lockmode MODE ] [ NOWAIT ]
```

where `lockmode` is one of:

```
ACCESS SHARE | ROW SHARE | ROW EXCLUSIVE | SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE
| SHARE | SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE | ACCESS EXCLUSIVE
```

Description

`LOCK TABLE` obtains a table-level lock, waiting if necessary for any conflicting locks to be released. If `NOWAIT` is specified, `LOCK TABLE` does not wait to acquire the desired lock: if it cannot be acquired immediately, the command is aborted and an error is emitted. Once obtained, the lock is held for the remainder of the current transaction. (There is no `UNLOCK TABLE` command; locks are always released at transaction end.)

When a view is locked, all relations appearing in the view definition query are also locked recursively with the same lock mode.

When acquiring locks automatically for commands that reference tables, Postgres Pro always uses the least restrictive lock mode possible. `LOCK TABLE` provides for cases when you might need more restrictive locking. For example, suppose an application runs a transaction at the `READ COMMITTED` isolation level and needs to ensure that data in a table remains stable for the duration of the transaction. To achieve this you could obtain `SHARE` lock mode over the table before querying. This will prevent concurrent data changes and ensure subsequent reads of the table see a stable view of committed data, because `SHARE` lock mode conflicts with the `ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock acquired by writers, and your `LOCK TABLE name IN SHARE MODE` statement will wait until any concurrent holders of `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode locks commit or roll back. Thus, once you obtain the lock, there are no uncommitted writes outstanding; furthermore none can begin until you release the lock.

To achieve a similar effect when running a transaction at the `REPEATABLE READ` or `SERIALIZABLE` isolation level, you have to execute the `LOCK TABLE` statement before executing any `SELECT` or data modification statement. A `REPEATABLE READ` or `SERIALIZABLE` transaction's view of data will be frozen when its first `SELECT` or data modification statement begins. A `LOCK TABLE` later in the transaction will still prevent concurrent writes — but it won't ensure that what the transaction reads corresponds to the latest committed values.

If a transaction of this sort is going to change the data in the table, then it should use `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock mode instead of `SHARE` mode. This ensures that only one transaction of this type runs at a time. Without this, a deadlock is possible: two transactions might both acquire `SHARE` mode, and then be unable to also acquire `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode to actually perform their updates. (Note that a transaction's own locks never conflict, so a transaction can acquire `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode when it holds `SHARE` mode — but not if anyone else holds `SHARE` mode.) To avoid deadlocks, make sure all transactions acquire locks on the same objects in the same order, and if multiple lock modes are involved for a single object, then transactions should always acquire the most restrictive mode first.

More information about the lock modes and locking strategies can be found in Section 13.3.

Parameters

`name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table to lock. If `ONLY` is specified before the table name, only that table is locked. If `ONLY` is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables
(if any) are locked. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

The command `LOCK TABLE a, b;` is equivalent to `LOCK TABLE a; LOCK TABLE b;`. The tables are locked one-by-one in the order specified in the `LOCK TABLE` command.

**lockmode**

The lock mode specifies which locks this lock conflicts with. Lock modes are described in Section 13.3.

If no lock mode is specified, then **ACCESS EXCLUSIVE**, the most restrictive mode, is used.

**NOWAIT**

Specifies that `LOCK TABLE` should not wait for any conflicting locks to be released: if the specified lock(s) cannot be acquired immediately without waiting, the transaction is aborted.

**Notes**

`LOCK TABLE ... IN ACCESS SHARE MODE` requires **SELECT** privileges on the target table. **LOCK TABLE ... IN ROW EXCLUSIVE MODE** requires **INSERT**, **UPDATE**, **DELETE**, or **TRUNCATE** privileges on the target table. All other forms of **LOCK** require table-level **UPDATE**, **DELETE**, or **TRUNCATE** privileges.

The user performing the lock on the view must have the corresponding privilege on the view. In addition the view's owner must have the relevant privileges on the underlying base relations, but the user performing the lock does not need any permissions on the underlying base relations.

`LOCK TABLE` is useless outside a transaction block: the lock would remain held only to the completion of the statement. Therefore Postgres Pro reports an error if **LOCK** is used outside a transaction block. Use `BEGIN` and `COMMIT` (or `ROLLBACK`) to define a transaction block.

**LOCK TABLE** only deals with table-level locks, and so the mode names involving **ROW** are all misnomers. These mode names should generally be read as indicating the intention of the user to acquire row-level locks within the locked table. Also, **ROW EXCLUSIVE** mode is a shareable table lock. Keep in mind that all the lock modes have identical semantics so far as **LOCK TABLE** is concerned, differing only in the rules about which modes conflict with which. For information on how to acquire an actual row-level lock, see Section 13.3.2 and The Locking Clause in the **SELECT** documentation.

**Examples**

Obtain a **SHARE** lock on a primary key table when going to perform inserts into a foreign key table:

```
BEGIN WORK;
LOCK TABLE films IN SHARE MODE;
SELECT id FROM films
  WHERE name = 'Star Wars: Episode I - The Phantom Menace';
-- Do ROLLBACK if record was not returned
INSERT INTO films_user_comments VALUES
  (_id_, 'GREAT! I was waiting for it for so long!');
COMMIT WORK;
```

Take a **SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE** lock on a primary key table when going to perform a delete operation:

```
BEGIN WORK;
LOCK TABLE films IN SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE MODE;
DELETE FROM films_user_comments WHERE id IN
  (SELECT id FROM films WHERE rating < 5);
DELETE FROM films WHERE rating < 5;
COMMIT WORK;
```
Compatibility

There is no `LOCK TABLE` in the SQL standard, which instead uses `SET TRANSACTION` to specify concurrency levels on transactions. Postgres Pro supports that too; see `SET TRANSACTION` for details.

Except for `ACCESS SHARE`, `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE`, and `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock modes, the Postgres Pro lock modes and the `LOCK TABLE` syntax are compatible with those present in Oracle.
MOVE

MOVE — position a cursor

Synopsis

MOVE [ direction [ FROM | IN ] ] cursor_name

where direction can be empty or one of:

NEXT
PRIOR
FIRST
LAST
ABSOLUTE count
RELATIVE count
count
ALL
FORWARD
FORWARD count
FORWARD ALL
BACKWARD
BACKWARD count
BACKWARD ALL

Description

MOVE repositions a cursor without retrieving any data. MOVE works exactly like the FETCH command, except it only positions the cursor and does not return rows.

The parameters for the MOVE command are identical to those of the FETCH command; refer to FETCH for details on syntax and usage.

Outputs

On successful completion, a MOVE command returns a command tag of the form

MOVE count

The count is the number of rows that a FETCH command with the same parameters would have returned (possibly zero).

Examples

BEGIN WORK;
DECLARE liahona CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;

-- Skip the first 5 rows:
MOVE FORWARD 5 IN liahona;
MOVE 5

-- Fetch the 6th row from the cursor liahona:
FETCH 1 FROM liahona;

| code  | title  | did | date_prod | kind  | len |
|-------|--------+-----+-----------+--------+-----|
| P_303 | 48 Hrs | 103 | 1982-10-22 | Action | 01:37 |

(1 row)
-- Close the cursor liahona and end the transaction:
CLOSE liahona;
COMMIT WORK;

Compatibility

There is no MOVE statement in the SQL standard.

See Also
CLOSE, DECLARE, FETCH
**NOTIFY**

NOTIFY — generate a notification

**Synopsis**

```
NOTIFY channel [ , payload ]
```

**Description**

The `NOTIFY` command sends a notification event together with an optional “payload” string to each client application that has previously executed `LISTEN channel` for the specified channel name in the current database. Notifications are visible to all users.

`NOTIFY` provides a simple interprocess communication mechanism for a collection of processes accessing the same Postgres Pro database. A payload string can be sent along with the notification, and higher-level mechanisms for passing structured data can be built by using tables in the database to pass additional data from notifier to listener(s).

The information passed to the client for a notification event includes the notification channel name, the notifying session's server process PID, and the payload string, which is an empty string if it has not been specified.

It is up to the database designer to define the channel names that will be used in a given database and what each one means. Commonly, the channel name is the same as the name of some table in the database, and the notify event essentially means, “I changed this table, take a look at it to see what’s new”. But no such association is enforced by the `NOTIFY` and `LISTEN` commands. For example, a database designer could use several different channel names to signal different sorts of changes to a single table. Alternatively, the payload string could be used to differentiate various cases.

When `NOTIFY` is used to signal the occurrence of changes to a particular table, a useful programming technique is to put the `NOTIFY` in a statement trigger that is triggered by table updates. In this way, notification happens automatically when the table is changed, and the application programmer cannot accidentally forget to do it.

`NOTIFY` interacts with SQL transactions in some important ways. Firstly, if a `NOTIFY` is executed inside a transaction, the notify events are not delivered until and unless the transaction is committed. This is appropriate, since if the transaction is aborted, all the commands within it have had no effect, including `NOTIFY`. But it can be disconcerting if one is expecting the notification events to be delivered immediately. Secondly, if a listening session receives a notification signal while it is within a transaction, the notification event will not be delivered to its connected client until just after the transaction is completed (either committed or aborted). Again, the reasoning is that if a notification were delivered within a transaction that was later aborted, one would want the notification to be undone somehow — but the server cannot “take back” a notification once it has sent it to the client. So notification events are only delivered between transactions. The upshot of this is that applications using `NOTIFY` for real-time signaling should try to keep their transactions short.

If the same channel name is signaled multiple times with identical payload strings within the same transaction, only one instance of the notification event is delivered to listeners. On the other hand, notifications with distinct payload strings will always be delivered as distinct notifications. Similarly, notifications from different transactions will never get folded into one notification. Except for dropping later instances of duplicate notifications, `NOTIFY` guarantees that notifications from the same transaction get delivered in the order they were sent. It is also guaranteed that messages from different transactions are delivered in the order in which the transactions committed.

It is common for a client that executes `NOTIFY` to be listening on the same notification channel itself. In that case it will get back a notification event, just like all the other listening sessions. Depending on the application logic, this could result in useless work, for example, reading a database table to find the
same updates that that session just wrote out. It is possible to avoid such extra work by noticing whether
the notifying session's server process PID (supplied in the notification event message) is the same as
one's own session's PID (available from libpq). When they are the same, the notification event is one's
own work bouncing back, and can be ignored.

Parameters

channel

Name of the notification channel to be signaled (any identifier).

payload

The “payload” string to be communicated along with the notification. This must be specified as a
simple string literal. In the default configuration it must be shorter than 8000 bytes. (If binary data
or large amounts of information need to be communicated, it's best to put it in a database table and
send the key of the record.)

Notes

There is a queue that holds notifications that have been sent but not yet processed by all listening
sessions. If this queue becomes full, transactions calling NOTIFY will fail at commit. The queue is quite
large (8GB in a standard installation) and should be sufficiently sized for almost every use case. However,
no cleanup can take place if a session executes LISTEN and then enters a transaction for a very long
time. Once the queue is half full you will see warnings in the log file pointing you to the session that
is preventing cleanup. In this case you should make sure that this session ends its current transaction
so that cleanup can proceed.

The function pg_notification_queue_usage returns the fraction of the queue that is currently occupied
by pending notifications. See Section 9.26 for more information.

A transaction that has executed NOTIFY cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

pg_notify

To send a notification you can also use the function pg_notify(text, text). The function takes the
channel name as the first argument and the payload as the second. The function is much easier to use
than the NOTIFY command if you need to work with non-constant channel names and payloads.

Examples

Configure and execute a listen/notify sequence from psql:

LISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process with PID 8448.
NOTIFY virtual, 'This is the payload';
Asynchronous notification "virtual" with payload "This is the payload" received from
server process with PID 8448.

LISTEN foo;
SELECT pg_notify('fo' || 'o', 'pay' || 'load');
Asynchronous notification "foo" with payload "payload" received from server process
with PID 14728.

Compatibility

There is no NOTIFY statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

LISTEN, UNLISTEN
PREPARE

PREPARE — prepare a statement for execution

Synopsis

PREPARE name [ ( data_type [, ...] ) ] AS statement

Description

PREPARE creates a prepared statement. A prepared statement is a server-side object that can be used to optimize performance. When the PREPARE statement is executed, the specified statement is parsed, analyzed, and rewritten. When an EXECUTE command is subsequently issued, the prepared statement is planned and executed. This division of labor avoids repetitive parse analysis work, while allowing the execution plan to depend on the specific parameter values supplied.

Prepared statements can take parameters: values that are substituted into the statement when it is executed. When creating the prepared statement, refer to parameters by position, using $1, $2, etc. A corresponding list of parameter data types can optionally be specified. When a parameter's data type is not specified or is declared as unknown, the type is inferred from the context in which the parameter is first referenced (if possible). When executing the statement, specify the actual values for these parameters in the EXECUTE statement. Refer to EXECUTE for more information about that.

Prepared statements only last for the duration of the current database session. When the session ends, the prepared statement is forgotten, so it must be recreated before being used again. This also means that a single prepared statement cannot be used by multiple simultaneous database clients; however, each client can create their own prepared statement to use. Prepared statements can be manually cleaned up using the DEALLOCATE command.

Prepared statements potentially have the largest performance advantage when a single session is being used to execute a large number of similar statements. The performance difference will be particularly significant if the statements are complex to plan or rewrite, e.g., if the query involves a join of many tables or requires the application of several rules. If the statement is relatively simple to plan and rewrite but relatively expensive to execute, the performance advantage of prepared statements will be less noticeable.

Parameters

name

An arbitrary name given to this particular prepared statement. It must be unique within a single session and is subsequently used to execute or deallocate a previously prepared statement.

data_type

The data type of a parameter to the prepared statement. If the data type of a particular parameter is unspecified or is specified as unknown, it will be inferred from the context in which the parameter is first referenced. To refer to the parameters in the prepared statement itself, use $1, $2, etc.

statement

Any SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or VALUES statement.

Notes

A prepared statement can be executed with either a generic plan or a custom plan. A generic plan is the same across all executions, while a custom plan is generated for a specific execution using the parameter values given in that call. Use of a generic plan avoids planning overhead, but in some situations a custom plan will be much more efficient to execute because the planner can make use of knowledge of the parameter values. (Of course, if the prepared statement has no parameters, then this is moot and a generic plan is always used.)
By default (that is, when `plan_cache_mode` is set to `auto`), the server will automatically choose whether to use a generic or custom plan for a prepared statement that has parameters. The current rule for this is that the first five executions are done with custom plans and the average estimated cost of those plans is calculated. Then a generic plan is created and its estimated cost is compared to the average custom-plan cost. Subsequent executions use the generic plan if its cost is not so much higher than the average custom-plan cost as to make repeated replanning seem preferable.

This heuristic can be overridden, forcing the server to use either generic or custom plans, by setting `plan_cache_mode` to `force_generic_plan` or `force_custom_plan` respectively. This setting is primarily useful if the generic plan's cost estimate is badly off for some reason, allowing it to be chosen even though its actual cost is much more than that of a custom plan.

To examine the query plan Postgres Pro is using for a prepared statement, use `EXPLAIN`, for example

```
EXPLAIN EXECUTE name(parameter_values);
```

If a generic plan is in use, it will contain parameter symbols $n$, while a custom plan will have the supplied parameter values substituted into it.

For more information on query planning and the statistics collected by Postgres Pro for that purpose, see the `ANALYZE` documentation.

Although the main point of a prepared statement is to avoid repeated parse analysis and planning of the statement, Postgres Pro will force re-analysis and re-planning of the statement before using it whenever database objects used in the statement have undergone definitional (DDL) changes or their planner statistics have been updated since the previous use of the prepared statement. Also, if the value of `search_path` changes from one use to the next, the statement will be re-parsed using the new `search_path`. (This latter behavior is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3.) These rules make use of a prepared statement semantically almost equivalent to re-submitting the same query text over and over, but with a performance benefit if no object definitions are changed, especially if the best plan remains the same across uses. An example of a case where the semantic equivalence is not perfect is that if the statement refers to a table by an unqualified name, and then a new table of the same name is created in a schema appearing earlier in the `search_path`, no automatic re-parse will occur since no object used in the statement changed. However, if some other change forces a re-parse, the new table will be referenced in subsequent uses.

You can see all prepared statements available in the session by querying the `pg_prepared_statements` system view.

### Examples

Create a prepared statement for an `INSERT` statement, and then execute it:

```
PREPARE fooplan (int, text, bool, numeric) AS
    INSERT INTO foo VALUES($1, $2, $3, $4);
EXECUTE fooplan(1, 'Hunter Valley', 't', 200.00);
```

Create a prepared statement for a `SELECT` statement, and then execute it:

```
PREPARE usrrptplan (int) AS
    SELECT * FROM users u, logs l WHERE u.usrid=$1 AND u.usrid=l.usrid
    AND l.date = $2;
EXECUTE usrrptplan(1, current_date);
```

In this example, the data type of the second parameter is not specified, so it is inferred from the context in which $2 is used.

### Compatibility

The SQL standard includes a `PREPARE` statement, but it is only for use in embedded SQL. This version of the `PREPARE` statement also uses a somewhat different syntax.
See Also

DEALLOCATE, EXECUTE
PREPARE TRANSACTION

PREPARE TRANSACTION — prepare the current transaction for two-phase commit

Synopsis

PREPARE TRANSACTION transaction_id

Description

PREPARE TRANSACTION prepares the current transaction for two-phase commit. After this command, the transaction is no longer associated with the current session; instead, its state is fully stored on disk, and there is a very high probability that it can be committed successfully, even if a database crash occurs before the commit is requested.

Once prepared, a transaction can later be committed or rolled back with COMMIT PREPARED or ROLLBACK PREPARED, respectively. Those commands can be issued from any session, not only the one that executed the original transaction.

From the point of view of the issuing session, PREPARE TRANSACTION is not unlike a ROLLBACK command: after executing it, there is no active current transaction, and the effects of the prepared transaction are no longer visible. (The effects will become visible again if the transaction is committed.)

If the PREPARE TRANSACTION command fails for any reason, it becomes a ROLLBACK: the current transaction is canceled.

Parameters

transaction_id

An arbitrary identifier that later identifies this transaction for COMMIT PREPARED or ROLLBACK PREPARED. The identifier must be written as a string literal, and must be less than 200 bytes long. It must not be the same as the identifier used for any currently prepared transaction.

Notes

PREPARE TRANSACTION is not intended for use in applications or interactive sessions. Its purpose is to allow an external transaction manager to perform atomic global transactions across multiple databases or other transactional resources. Unless you’re writing a transaction manager, you probably shouldn’t be using PREPARE TRANSACTION.

This command must be used inside a transaction block. Use BEGIN to start one.

It is not currently allowed to PREPARE a transaction that has executed any operations involving temporary tables or the session's temporary namespace, created any cursors WITH HOLD, or executed LISTEN, UNLISTEN, or NOTIFY. Those features are too tightly tied to the current session to be useful in a transaction to be prepared.

If the transaction modified any run-time parameters with SET (without the LOCAL option), those effects persist after PREPARE TRANSACTION, and will not be affected by any later COMMIT PREPARED or ROLLBACK PREPARED. Thus, in this one respect PREPARE TRANSACTION acts more like COMMIT than ROLLBACK.

All currently available prepared transactions are listed in the pg_prepared_xacts system view.

Caution

It is unwise to leave transactions in the prepared state for a long time. This will interfere with the ability of VACUUM to reclaim storage, and in extreme cases could cause the database to shut down.
to prevent transaction ID wraparound (see Section 23.1.5). Keep in mind also that the transaction
continues to hold whatever locks it held. The intended usage of the feature is that a prepared
transaction will normally be committed or rolled back as soon as an external transaction manager
has verified that other databases are also prepared to commit.

If you have not set up an external transaction manager to track prepared transactions and ensure
they get closed out promptly, it is best to keep the prepared-transaction feature disabled by setting
max_prepared_transactions to zero. This will prevent accidental creation of prepared transactions
that might then be forgotten and eventually cause problems.

Examples

Prepare the current transaction for two-phase commit, using foobar as the transaction identifier:

```
PREPARE TRANSACTION 'foobar';
```

Compatibility

PREPARE TRANSACTION is a Postgres Pro extension. It is intended for use by external transaction
management systems, some of which are covered by standards (such as X/Open XA), but the SQL side
of those systems is not standardized.

See Also

COMMIT PREPARED, ROLLBACK PREPARED
REASSIGN OWNED

REASSIGN OWNED — change the ownership of database objects owned by a database role

Synopsis

```
REASSIGN OWNED BY { old_role | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER } [, ...]
    TO { new_role | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
```

Description

REASSIGN OWNED instructs the system to change the ownership of database objects owned by any of the `old_roles` to `new_role`.

Parameters

- **old_role**
  
  The name of a role. The ownership of all the objects within the current database, and of all shared objects (databases, tablespaces), owned by this role will be reassigned to `new_role`.

- **new_role**
  
  The name of the role that will be made the new owner of the affected objects.

Notes

REASSIGN OWNED is often used to prepare for the removal of one or more roles. Because REASSIGN OWNED does not affect objects within other databases, it is usually necessary to execute this command in each database that contains objects owned by a role that is to be removed.

REASSIGN OWNED requires membership on both the source role(s) and the target role.

The DROP OWNED command is an alternative that simply drops all the database objects owned by one or more roles.

The REASSIGN OWNED command does not affect any privileges granted to the `old_roles` on objects that are not owned by them. Likewise, it does not affect default privileges created with ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES. Use DROP OWNED to revoke such privileges.

See Section 20.4 for more discussion.

Compatibility

The REASSIGN OWNED command is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

DROP OWNED, DROP ROLE, ALTER DATABASE
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW — replace the contents of a materialized view

Synopsis

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW [ CONCURRENTLY ] name
 [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
```

Description

`REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` completely replaces the contents of a materialized view. To execute this command you must be the owner of the materialized view. The old contents are discarded. If `WITH DATA` is specified (or defaults) the backing query is executed to provide the new data, and the materialized view is left in a scannable state. If `WITH NO DATA` is specified no new data is generated and the materialized view is left in an unscannable state.

`CONCURRENTLY` and `WITH NO DATA` may not be specified together.

Parameters

**CONCURRENTLY**

Refresh the materialized view without locking out concurrent selects on the materialized view. Without this option a refresh which affects a lot of rows will tend to use fewer resources and complete more quickly, but could block other connections which are trying to read from the materialized view. This option may be faster in cases where a small number of rows are affected.

This option is only allowed if there is at least one `UNIQUE` index on the materialized view which uses only column names and includes all rows; that is, it must not be an expression index or include a `WHERE` clause.

This option may not be used when the materialized view is not already populated.

Even with this option only one `REFRESH` at a time may run against any one materialized view.

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the materialized view to refresh.

Notes

While the default index for future `CLUSTER` operations is retained, `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` does not order the generated rows based on this property. If you want the data to be ordered upon generation, you must use an `ORDER BY` clause in the backing query.

Examples

This command will replace the contents of the materialized view called `order_summary` using the query from the materialized view's definition, and leave it in a scannable state:

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW order_summary;
```

This command will free storage associated with the materialized view `annual_statistics_basis` and leave it in an unscannable state:

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW annual_statistics_basis WITH NO DATA;
```

Compatibility

`REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` is a Postgres Pro extension.
See Also
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW
REINDEX

REINDEX — rebuild indexes

Synopsis

REINDEX [ ( option [, ...] ) ] { INDEX | TABLE | SCHEMA | DATABASE | SYSTEM }
[ CONCURRENTLY ] name

where option can be one of:

    CONCURRENTLY [ boolean ]
    TABLESPACE new_tablespace
    VERBOSE [ boolean ]

Description

REINDEX rebuilds an index using the data stored in the index's table, replacing the old copy of the index. There are several scenarios in which to use REINDEX:

- An index has become corrupted, and no longer contains valid data. Although in theory this should never happen, in practice indexes can become corrupted due to software bugs or hardware failures. REINDEX provides a recovery method.

- An index has become “bloated”, that is it contains many empty or nearly-empty pages. This can occur with B-tree indexes in Postgres Pro under certain uncommon access patterns. REINDEX provides a way to reduce the space consumption of the index by writing a new version of the index without the dead pages. See Section 23.2 for more information.

- You have altered a storage parameter (such as fillfactor) for an index, and wish to ensure that the change has taken full effect.

- If an index build fails with the CONCURRENTLY option, this index is left as “invalid”. Such indexes are useless but it can be convenient to use REINDEX to rebuild them. Note that only REINDEX INDEX is able to perform a concurrent build on an invalid index.

Parameters

INDEX

Recreate the specified index. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block when used with a partitioned index.

TABLE

Recreate all indexes of the specified table. If the table has a secondary “TOAST” table, that is reindexed as well. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block when used with a partitioned table.

SCHEMA

Recreate all indexes of the specified schema. If a table of this schema has a secondary “TOAST” table, that is reindexed as well. Indexes on shared system catalogs are also processed. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

DATABASE

Recreate all indexes within the current database. Indexes on shared system catalogs are also processed. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block.
REINDEX

SYSTEM

Recreate all indexes on system catalogs within the current database. Indexes on shared system catalogs are included. Indexes on user tables are not processed. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

name

The name of the specific index, table, or database to be reindexed. Index and table names can be schema-qualified. Presently, REINDEX DATABASE and REINDEX SYSTEM can only reindex the current database, so their parameter must match the current database's name.

CONCURRENTLY

When this option is used, Postgres Pro will rebuild the index without taking any locks that prevent concurrent inserts, updates, or deletes on the table; whereas a standard index rebuild locks out writes (but not reads) on the table until it's done. There are several caveats to be aware of when using this option — see Rebuilding Indexes Concurrently below.

For temporary tables, REINDEX is always non-concurrent, as no other session can access them, and non-concurrent reindex is cheaper.

TABLESPACE

Specifies that indexes will be rebuilt on a new tablespace.

VERBOSE

Prints a progress report as each index is reindexed.

boolean

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write TRUE, ON, or 1 to enable the option, and FALSE, OFF, or 0 to disable it. The boolean value can also be omitted, in which case TRUE is assumed.

new_tablespace

The tablespace where indexes will be rebuilt.

Notes

If you suspect corruption of an index on a user table, you can simply rebuild that index, or all indexes on the table, using REINDEX INDEX or REINDEX TABLE.

Things are more difficult if you need to recover from corruption of an index on a system table. In this case it's important for the system to not have used any of the suspect indexes itself. (Indeed, in this sort of scenario you might find that server processes are crashing immediately at start-up, due to reliance on the corrupted indexes.) To recover safely, the server must be started with the -P option, which prevents it from using indexes for system catalog lookups.

One way to do this is to shut down the server and start a single-user Postgres Pro server with the -P option included on its command line. Then, REINDEX DATABASE, REINDEX SYSTEM, REINDEX TABLE, or REINDEX INDEX can be issued, depending on how much you want to reconstruct. If in doubt, use REINDEX SYSTEM to select reconstruction of all system indexes in the database. Then quit the single-user server session and restart the regular server. See the postgres reference page for more information about how to interact with the single-user server interface.

Alternatively, a regular server session can be started with -P included in its command line options. The method for doing this varies across clients, but in all libpq-based clients, it is possible to set the PGOPTIONS environment variable to -P before starting the client. Note that while this method does not require locking out other clients, it might still be wise to prevent other users from connecting to the damaged database until repairs have been completed.
**REINDEX**

**REINDEX** is similar to a drop and recreate of the index in that the index contents are rebuilt from scratch. However, the locking considerations are rather different. **REINDEX** locks out writes but not reads of the index's parent table. It also takes an **ACCESS EXCLUSIVE** lock on the specific index being processed, which will block reads that attempt to use that index. In contrast, **DROP INDEX** momentarily takes an **ACCESS EXCLUSIVE** lock on the parent table, blocking both writes and reads. The subsequent **CREATE INDEX** locks out writes but not reads; since the index is not there, no read will attempt to use it, meaning that there will be no blocking but reads might be forced into expensive sequential scans.

Reindexing a single index or table requires being the owner of that index or table. Reindexing a schema or database requires being the owner of that schema or database. Note specifically that it's thus possible for non-superusers to rebuild indexes of tables owned by other users. However, as a special exception, when **REINDEX DATABASE**, **REINDEX SCHEMA** or **REINDEX SYSTEM** is issued by a non-superuser, indexes on shared catalogs will be skipped unless the user owns the catalog (which typically won't be the case). Of course, superusers can always reindex anything.

Reindexing partitioned indexes or partitioned tables is supported with **REINDEX INDEX** or **REINDEX TABLE**, respectively. Each partition of the specified partitioned relation is reindexed in a separate transaction. Those commands cannot be used inside a transaction block when working on a partitioned table or index.

When using the **TABLESPACE** clause with **REINDEX** on a partitioned index or table, only the tablespace references of the leaf partitions are updated. As partitioned indexes are not updated, it is recommended to separately use **ALTER TABLE ONLY** on them so as any new partitions attached inherit the new tablespace. On failure, it may not have moved all the indexes to the new tablespace. Re-running the command will rebuild all the leaf partitions and move previously-unprocessed indexes to the new tablespace.

If **SCHEMA**, **DATABASE** or **SYSTEM** is used with **TABLESPACE**, system relations are skipped and a single **WARNING** will be generated. Indexes on TOAST tables are rebuilt, but not moved to the new tablespace.

### Rebuilding Indexes Concurrently

Rebuilding an index can interfere with regular operation of a database. Normally Postgres Pro locks the table whose index is rebuilt against writes and performs the entire index build with a single scan of the table. Other transactions can still read the table, but if they try to insert, update, or delete rows in the table they will block until the index rebuild is finished. This could have a severe effect if the system is a live production database. Very large tables can take many hours to be indexed, and even for smaller tables, an index rebuild can lock out writers for periods that are unacceptably long for a production system.

Postgres Pro supports rebuilding indexes with minimum locking of writes. This method is invoked by specifying the **CONCURRENTLY** option of **REINDEX**. When this option is used, Postgres Pro must perform two scans of the table for each index that needs to be rebuilt and wait for termination of all existing transactions that could potentially use the index. This method requires more total work than a standard index rebuild and takes significantly longer to complete as it needs to wait for unfinished transactions that might modify the index. However, since it allows normal operations to continue while the index is being rebuilt, this method is useful for rebuilding indexes in a production environment. Of course, the extra CPU, memory and I/O load imposed by the index rebuild may slow down other operations.

The following steps occur in a concurrent reindex. Each step is run in a separate transaction. If there are multiple indexes to be rebuilt, then each step loops through all the indexes before moving to the next step.

1. A new transient index definition is added to the catalog **pg_index**. This definition will be used to replace the old index. A **SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE** lock at session level is taken on the indexes being reindexed as well as their associated tables to prevent any schema modification while processing.

2. A first pass to build the index is done for each new index. Once the index is built, its flag **pg_index.indisready** is switched to “true” to make it ready for inserts, making it visible to other sessions once the transaction that performed the build is finished. This step is done in a separate transaction for each index.

1634
3. Then a second pass is performed to add tuples that were added while the first pass was running. This step is also done in a separate transaction for each index.

4. All the constraints that refer to the index are changed to refer to the new index definition, and the names of the indexes are changed. At this point, \texttt{pg\_index.indisvalid} is switched to “true” for the new index and to “false” for the old, and a cache invalidation is done causing all sessions that referenced the old index to be invalidated.

5. The old indexes have \texttt{pg\_index.indisready} switched to “false” to prevent any new tuple insertions, after waiting for running queries that might reference the old index to complete.

6. The old indexes are dropped. The \texttt{SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE} session locks for the indexes and the table are released.

If a problem arises while rebuilding the indexes, such as a uniqueness violation in a unique index, the \texttt{REINDEX} command will fail but leave behind an “invalid” new index in addition to the pre-existing one. This index will be ignored for querying purposes because it might be incomplete; however it will still consume update overhead. The \texttt{psql \d} command will report such an index as \texttt{INVALID}:

```
postgres=# \d tab
  Table "public.tab"
  Column | Type   | Modifiers
----------+--------+-----------
col    | integer |           
Indexes:
   "idx" btree (col)
   "idx_ccnew" btree (col) INVALID
```

If the index marked \texttt{INVALID} is suffixed \texttt{ccnew}, then it corresponds to the transient index created during the concurrent operation, and the recommended recovery method is to drop it using \texttt{DROP INDEX}, then attempt \texttt{REINDEX CONCURRENTLY} again. If the invalid index is instead suffixed \texttt{ccold}, it corresponds to the original index which could not be dropped; the recommended recovery method is to just drop said index, since the rebuild proper has been successful.

Regular index builds permit other regular index builds on the same table to occur simultaneously, but only one concurrent index build can occur on a table at a time. In both cases, no other types of schema modification on the table are allowed meanwhile. Another difference is that a regular \texttt{REINDEX TABLE} or \texttt{REINDEX INDEX} command can be performed within a transaction block, but \texttt{REINDEX CONCURRENTLY} cannot.

Like any long-running transaction, \texttt{REINDEX} on a table can affect which tuples can be removed by concurrent \texttt{VACUUM} on any other table. Excepted from this are operations with the \texttt{CONCURRENTLY} option for indexes that are not partial and do not index any expressions.

\texttt{REINDEX SYSTEM} does not support \texttt{CONCURRENTLY} since system catalogs cannot be reindexed concurrently.

Furthermore, indexes for exclusion constraints cannot be reindexed concurrently. If such an index is named directly in this command, an error is raised. If a table or database with exclusion constraint indexes is reindexed concurrently, those indexes will be skipped. (It is possible to reindex such indexes without the \texttt{CONCURRENTLY} option.)

Each backend running \texttt{REINDEX} will report its progress in the \texttt{pg\_stat\_progress\_create\_index} view. See \texttt{Section 26.4.2} for details.

### Examples

**Rebuild a single index:**

```
REINDEX INDEX my_index;
```

**Rebuild all the indexes on the table** \texttt{my\_table}:
REINDEX TABLE my_table;

Rebuild all indexes in a particular database, without trusting the system indexes to be valid already:

$ export PGOPTIONS="-P"
$ psql broken_db
...
broken_db=> REINDEX DATABASE broken_db;
broken_db=> \q

Rebuild indexes for a table, without blocking read and write operations on involved relations while reindexing is in progress:

REINDEX TABLE CONCURRENTLY my_broken_table;

Compatibility

There is no REINDEX command in the SQL standard.

See Also

CREATE INDEX, DROP INDEX, reindexdb, Section 26.4.2
RELEASE SAVEPOINT

RELEASE SAVEPOINT — destroy a previously defined savepoint

Synopsis

RELEASE [ SAVEPOINT ] savepoint_name

Description

RELEASE SAVEPOINT destroys a savepoint previously defined in the current transaction.

Destroying a savepoint makes it unavailable as a rollback point, but it has no other user visible behavior. It does not undo the effects of commands executed after the savepoint was established. (To do that, see ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT.) Destroying a savepoint when it is no longer needed allows the system to reclaim some resources earlier than transaction end.

RELEASE SAVEPOINT also destroys all savepoints that were established after the named savepoint was established.

Parameters

savepoint_name

The name of the savepoint to destroy.

Notes

Specifying a savepoint name that was not previously defined is an error.

It is not possible to release a savepoint when the transaction is in an aborted state.

If multiple savepoints have the same name, only the one that was most recently defined is released.

Examples

To establish and later destroy a savepoint:

BEGIN;
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);
  SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (4);
  RELEASE SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
COMMIT;

The above transaction will insert both 3 and 4.

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard. The standard specifies that the key word SAVEPOINT is mandatory, but Postgres Pro allows it to be omitted.

See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK, ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT, SAVEPOINT
RESET

RESET is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

SET, SHOW
REVOKE

REVOKE — remove access privileges

Synopsis

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES | TRIGGER }
[ , ... ] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON { [ TABLE ] table_name [ , ... ]
   | ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA schema_name [ , ... ] } FROM role_specification [ , ... ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | REFERENCES } ( column_name [ , ... ] )
[ , ... ] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] ( column_name [ , ... ] ) )
ON [ TABLE ] table_name [ , ... ] FROM role_specification [ , ... ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE } [ , ... ] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON { SEQUENCE sequence_name [ , ... ]
   | ALL SEQUENCES IN SCHEMA schema_name [ , ... ] } FROM role_specification [ , ... ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( { CREATE | CONNECT | TEMPORARY | TEMP } [ , ... ] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON DATABASE database_name [ , ... ] FROM role_specification [ , ... ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON DOMAIN domain_name [ , ... ] FROM role_specification [ , ... ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER fdw_name [ , ... ] FROM role_specification [ , ... ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON FOREIGN SERVER server_name [ , ... ] FROM role_specification [ , ... ]
REVOKE

[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON { { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE | ROUTINE } function_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ arg_name ] arg_type [, ...] ) ] [, ...] | ALL { FUNCTIONS | PROCEDURES | ROUTINES } IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] } FROM role_specification [, ...]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON LANGUAGE lang_name [, ...]
FROM role_specification [, ...]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( { SELECT | UPDATE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON LARGE OBJECT loid [, ...]
FROM role_specification [, ...]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( { CREATE | USAGE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON SCHEMA schema_name [, ...]
FROM role_specification [, ...]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( CREATE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON TABLESPACE tablespace_name [, ...]
FROM role_specification [, ...]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
( USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] )
ON TYPE type_name [, ...]
FROM role_specification [, ...]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ ADMIN OPTION FOR ]
role_name [, ...] FROM role_specification [, ...]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

where role_specification can be:

[ GROUP ] role_name
| PUBLIC
| CURRENT_ROLE
| CURRENT_USER
**Description**

The `REVOKE` command revokes previously granted privileges from one or more roles. The key word `PUBLIC` refers to the implicitly defined group of all roles.

See the description of the `GRANT` command for the meaning of the privilege types.

Note that any particular role will have the sum of privileges granted directly to it, privileges granted to any role it is presently a member of, and privileges granted to `PUBLIC`. Thus, for example, revoking `SELECT` privilege from `PUBLIC` does not necessarily mean that all roles have lost `SELECT` privilege on the object: those who have it granted directly or via another role will still have it. Similarly, revoking `SELECT` from a user might not prevent that user from using `SELECT` if `PUBLIC` or another membership role still has `SELECT` rights.

If `GRANT OPTION FOR` is specified, only the grant option for the privilege is revoked, not the privilege itself. Otherwise, both the privilege and the grant option are revoked.

If a user holds a privilege with grant option and has granted it to other users then the privileges held by those other users are called dependent privileges. If the privilege or the grant option held by the first user is being revoked and dependent privileges exist, those dependent privileges are also revoked if `CASCADE` is specified; if it is not, the revoke action will fail. This recursive revocation only affects privileges that were granted through a chain of users that is traceable to the user that is the subject of this `REVOKE` command. Thus, the affected users might effectively keep the privilege if it was also granted through other users.

When revoking privileges on a table, the corresponding column privileges (if any) are automatically revoked on each column of the table, as well. On the other hand, if a role has been granted privileges on a table, then revoking the same privileges from individual columns will have no effect.

When revoking membership in a role, `GRANT OPTION` is instead called `ADMIN OPTION`, but the behavior is similar. This form of the command also allows a `GRANTED BY` option, but that option is currently ignored (except for checking the existence of the named role). Note also that this form of the command does not allow the noise word `GROUP` in `role_specification`.

**Notes**

A user can only revoke privileges that were granted directly by that user. If, for example, user A has granted a privilege with grant option to user B, and user B has in turn granted it to user C, then user A cannot revoke the privilege directly from C. Instead, user A could revoke the grant option from user B and use the `CASCADE` option so that the privilege is in turn revoked from user C. For another example, if both A and B have granted the same privilege to C, A can revoke their own grant but not B's grant, so C will still effectively have the privilege.

When a non-owner of an object attempts to `REVOKE` privileges on the object, the command will fail outright if the user has no privileges whatsoever on the object. As long as some privilege is available, the command will proceed, but it will revoke only those privileges for which the user has grant options. The `REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES` forms will issue a warning message if no grant options are held, while the other forms will issue a warning if grant options for any of the privileges specifically named in the command are not held. (In principle these statements apply to the object owner as well, but since the owner is always treated as holding all grant options, the cases can never occur.)

If a superuser chooses to issue a `GRANT` or `REVOKE` command, the command is performed as though it were issued by the owner of the affected object. Since all privileges ultimately come from the object owner (possibly indirectly via chains of grant options), it is possible for a superuser to revoke all privileges, but this might require use of `CASCADE` as stated above.

`REVOKE` can also be done by a role that is not the owner of the affected object, but is a member of the role that owns the object, or is a member of a role that holds privileges with `GRANT OPTION` on the object.
this case the command is performed as though it were issued by the containing role that actually owns the object or holds the privileges WITH GRANT OPTION. For example, if table t1 is owned by role g1, of which role u1 is a member, then u1 can revoke privileges on t1 that are recorded as being granted by g1. This would include grants made by u1 as well as by other members of role g1.

If the role executing REVOKE holds privileges indirectly via more than one role membership path, it is unspecified which containing role will be used to perform the command. In such cases it is best practice to use SET ROLE to become the specific role you want to do the REVOKE as. Failure to do so might lead to revoking privileges other than the ones you intended, or not revoking anything at all.

See Section 5.7 for more information about specific privilege types, as well as how to inspect objects' privileges.

Examples

Revoke insert privilege for the public on table films:

    REVOKE INSERT ON films FROM PUBLIC;

Revoke all privileges from user manuel on view kinds:

    REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES ON kinds FROM manuel;

Note that this actually means “revoke all privileges that I granted”.

Revoke membership in role admins from user joe:

    REVOKE admins FROM joe;

Compatibility

The compatibility notes of the GRANT command apply analogously to REVOKE. The keyword RESTRICT or CASCADE is required according to the standard, but Postgres Pro assumes RESTRICT by default.

See Also

GRANT, ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES
ROLLBACK

ROLLBACK — abort the current transaction

Synopsis

ROLLBACK [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ AND [ NO ] CHAIN ]

Description

ROLLBACK rolls back the current transaction and causes all the updates made by the transaction to be discarded.

Parameters

WORK
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

AND CHAIN

If AND CHAIN is specified, a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION) as the just finished one. Otherwise, no new transaction is started.

Notes

Use COMMIT to successfully terminate a transaction.

Issuing ROLLBACK outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect. ROLLBACK AND CHAIN outside of a transaction block is an error.

Examples

To abort all changes:

ROLLBACK;

Compatibility

The command ROLLBACK conforms to the SQL standard. The form ROLLBACK TRANSACTION is a Postgres Pro extension.

See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT
ROLLBACK PREPARED

ROLLBACK PREPARED — cancel a transaction that was earlier prepared for two-phase commit

Synopsis

ROLLBACK PREPARED transaction_id

Description

ROLLBACK PREPARED rolls back a transaction that is in prepared state.

Parameters

transaction_id

The transaction identifier of the transaction that is to be rolled back.

Notes

To roll back a prepared transaction, you must be either the same user that executed the transaction originally, or a superuser. But you do not have to be in the same session that executed the transaction.

This command cannot be executed inside a transaction block. The prepared transaction is rolled back immediately.

All currently available prepared transactions are listed in the pg_prepared_xacts system view.

Examples

Roll back the transaction identified by the transaction identifier foobar:

ROLLBACK PREPARED 'foobar';

Compatibility

ROLLBACK PREPARED is a Postgres Pro extension. It is intended for use by external transaction management systems, some of which are covered by standards (such as X/Open XA), but the SQL side of those systems is not standardized.

See Also

PREPARE TRANSACTION, COMMIT PREPARED
**ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT**

**Synopsis**

ROLLBACK [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] TO [ SAVEPOINT ] savepoint_name

**Description**

Roll back all commands that were executed after the savepoint was established. The savepoint remains valid and can be rolled back to again later, if needed.

ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT implicitly destroys all savepoints that were established after the named savepoint.

**Parameters**

*savepoint_name*

The savepoint to roll back to.

**Notes**

Use `RELEASE SAVEPOINT` to destroy a savepoint without discarding the effects of commands executed after it was established.

Specifying a savepoint name that has not been established is an error.

Cursors have somewhat non-transactional behavior with respect to savepoints. Any cursor that is opened inside a savepoint will be closed when the savepoint is rolled back. If a previously opened cursor is affected by a `FETCH` or `MOVE` command inside a savepoint that is later rolled back, the cursor remains at the position that `FETCH` left it pointing to (that is, the cursor motion caused by `FETCH` is not rolled back). Closing a cursor is not undone by rolling back, either. However, other side-effects caused by the cursor's query (such as side-effects of volatile functions called by the query) *are* rolled back if they occur during a savepoint that is later rolled back. A cursor whose execution causes a transaction to abort is put in a cannot-execute state, so while the transaction can be restored using `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT`, the cursor can no longer be used.

**Examples**

To undo the effects of the commands executed after `my_savepoint` was established:

ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT `my_savepoint`;

Cursor positions are not affected by savepoint rollback:

BEGIN;

DECLARE foo CURSOR FOR SELECT 1 UNION SELECT 2;

SAVEPOINT foo;

FETCH 1 FROM foo;

?column?

---------

1

ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT `foo`;
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT

FETCH 1 FROM foo;
?column?
----------
2

COMMIT;

Compatibility

The SQL standard specifies that the key word SAVEPOINT is mandatory, but Postgres Pro and Oracle allow it to be omitted. SQL allows only WORK, not TRANSACTION, as a noise word after ROLLBACK. Also, SQL has an optional clause AND [ NO ] CHAIN which is not currently supported by Postgres Pro. Otherwise, this command conforms to the SQL standard.

See Also
BEGIN, COMMIT, RELEASE SAVEPOINT, ROLLBACK, SAVEPOINT
SAVEPOINT

SAVEPOINT — define a new savepoint within the current transaction

Synopsis

SAVEPOINT savepoint_name

Description

SAVEPOINT establishes a new savepoint within the current transaction.

A savepoint is a special mark inside a transaction that allows all commands that are executed after it was established to be rolled back, restoring the transaction state to what it was at the time of the savepoint.

Parameters

savepoint_name

The name to give to the new savepoint.

Notes

Use ROLLBACK TO to rollback to a savepoint. Use RELEASE SAVEPOINT to destroy a savepoint, keeping the effects of commands executed after it was established.

Savepoints can only be established when inside a transaction block. There can be multiple savepoints defined within a transaction.

Examples

To establish a savepoint and later undo the effects of all commands executed after it was established:

```
BEGIN;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (1);
    SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (2);
    ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction will insert the values 1 and 3, but not 2.

To establish and later destroy a savepoint:

```
BEGIN;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);
    SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (4);
    RELEASE SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction will insert both 3 and 4.

Compatibility

SQL requires a savepoint to be destroyed automatically when another savepoint with the same name is established. In Postgres Pro, the old savepoint is kept, though only the more recent one will be used when rolling back or releasing. (Releasing the newer savepoint with RELEASE SAVEPOINT will cause the older one to again become accessible to ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT and RELEASE SAVEPOINT.) Otherwise, SAVEPOINT is fully SQL conforming.
See Also
BEGIN, COMMIT, RELEASE SAVEPOINT, ROLLBACK, ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT
SECURITY LABEL

SECURITY LABEL — define or change a security label applied to an object

Synopsis

SECURITY LABEL [ FOR provider ] ON
{ TABLE object_name | COLUMN table_name.column_name | AGGREGATE aggregate_name ( aggregate_signature ) | DATABASE object_name | DOMAIN object_name | EVENT TRIGGER object_name | FOREIGN TABLE object_name | FUNCTION function_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] ] ) ] | LARGE OBJECT large_object_oid | MATERIALIZED VIEW object_name | [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE object_name | PROCEDURE procedure_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] ] ) ] | PUBLICATION object_name | PROFILE object_name | ROLE object_name | ROUTINE routine_name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] ] ) ] | SCHEMA object_name | SEQUENCE object_name | SUBSCRIPTION object_name | TABLESPACE object_name | TYPE object_name | VIEW object_name } IS 'label'

where aggregate_signature is:

* | [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] | 
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [, ... ]

Description

SECURITY LABEL applies a security label to a database object. An arbitrary number of security labels, one per label provider, can be associated with a given database object. Label providers are loadable modules which register themselves by using the function `register_label_provider`.

Note

`register_label_provider` is not an SQL function; it can only be called from C code loaded into the backend.

The label provider determines whether a given label is valid and whether it is permissible to assign that label to a given object. The meaning of a given label is likewise at the discretion of the label provider. Postgres Pro places no restrictions on whether or how a label provider must interpret security labels; it merely provides a mechanism for storing them. In practice, this facility is intended to allow integration with label-based mandatory access control (MAC) systems such as SELinux. Such systems make all
access control decisions based on object labels, rather than traditional discretionary access control (DAC) concepts such as users and groups.

**Parameters**

object_name  
*table_name.column_name*  
aggregate_name  
function_name  
procedure_name  
routine_name  

The name of the object to be labeled. Names of objects that reside in schemas (tables, functions, etc.) can be schema-qualified.

provider  

The name of the provider with which this label is to be associated. The named provider must be loaded and must consent to the proposed labeling operation. If exactly one provider is loaded, the provider name may be omitted for brevity.

argmode  

The mode of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that SECURITY LABEL does not actually pay any attention to OUT arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the IN, INOUT, and VARIADIC arguments.

argname  

The name of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument. Note that SECURITY LABEL does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

argtype  

The data type of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument.

large_object_oid  

The OID of the large object.

PROCEDURAL  

This is a noise word.

label  

The new security label, written as a string literal; or NULL to drop the security label.

**Examples**

The following example shows how the security label of a table might be changed.

```
SECURITY LABEL FOR selinux ON TABLE mytable IS 'system_u:object_r:sepgsql_table_t:s0';
```

**Compatibility**

There is no SECURITY LABEL command in the SQL standard.

**See Also**

sepgsql
SELECT

SELECT, TABLE, WITH — retrieve rows from a table or view

Synopsis

SELECT [ ALL | DISTINCT [ ON ( expression [, ...] ) ] ]
[ * | expression [ [ AS ] output_name ] [, ...] ]
[ FROM from_item [, ...] ]
[ WHERE condition ]
[ GROUP BY [ ALL | DISTINCT ] grouping_element [, ...] ]
[ HAVING condition ]
[ WINDOW window_name AS ( window_definition ) [, ...] ]
[ { UNION | INTERSECT | EXCEPT } [ ALL | DISTINCT ] select ]
[ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ]
[, ... ] ]
[ LIMIT { count | ALL } ]
[ OFFSET start [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
[ FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } { count } [ ROW | ROWS } { ONLY | WITH TIES } ]
[ FOR { UPDATE | NO KEY UPDATE | SHARE | KEY SHARE } [ OF table_name [, ...] ]
[ NOWAIT | SKIP LOCKED ] [ ... ] ]

where from_item can be one of:

[ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias [, ...] ) ] ]
[ TABLESAMPLE sampling_method ( argument [, ...] ) ] [ REPEATABLE ( seed ]
| ]
[ LATERAL ] ( select ) [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias [, ...] ) ]
with_query_name [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias [, ...] ) ] ]
[ LATERAL ] function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] )
[ WITH ORDINALITY ] [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias [, ...] ) ] ]
[ LATERAL ] function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] ) [ AS ] alias ( column_definition
[, ...] )
[ LATERAL ] function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] ) AS ( column_definition [, ...] )
[ LATERAL ] ROWS FROM( function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] ) ) [ AS
( column_definition [, ...] ) ] [, ... ]
[ WITH ORDINALITY ] [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias [, ...] ) ] ]
from_item [ NATURAL ] join_type from_item [ ON join_condition | USING ( join_column
[, ...] ) [ AS join_using_alias ] ]

and grouping_element can be one of:

( )
expression
( expression [, ...] )
ROLLUP ( { expression | ( expression [, ...] ) } [, ...] )
CUBE ( { expression | ( expression [, ...] ) } [, ...] )
GROUPING SETS ( grouping_element [, ...] )

and with_query is:

with_query_name ( [ column_name [, ...] ] ) AS [ [ NOT ] MATERIALIZED ] ( select
| values | insert | update | delete )
[ SEARCH { BREADTH | DEPTH } FIRST BY column_name [, ...]
SET search_seg_col_name ]

1651
SELECT

[ CYCLE column_name [, ...] SET cycle_mark_col_name [ TO cycle_mark_value
DEFAULT cycle_mark_default ] USING cycle_path_col_name ]

TABLE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ]

**Description**

**SELECT** retrieves rows from zero or more tables. The general processing of **SELECT** is as follows:

1. All queries in the **WITH** list are computed. These effectively serve as temporary tables that can be referenced in the **FROM** list. A **WITH** query that is referenced more than once in **FROM** is computed only once, unless specified otherwise with **NOT MATERIALIZED**. (See **WITH Clause** below.)

2. All elements in the **FROM** list are computed. (Each element in the **FROM** list is a real or virtual table.) If more than one element is specified in the **FROM** list, they are cross-joined together. (See **FROM Clause** below.)

3. If the **WHERE** clause is specified, all rows that do not satisfy the condition are eliminated from the output. (See **WHERE Clause** below.)

4. If the **GROUP BY** clause is specified, or if there are aggregate function calls, the output is combined into groups of rows that match on one or more values, and the results of aggregate functions are computed. If the **HAVING** clause is present, it eliminates groups that do not satisfy the given condition. (See **GROUP BY Clause** and **HAVING Clause** below.)

5. The actual output rows are computed using the **SELECT** output expressions for each selected row or row group. (See **SELECT List** below.)

6. **SELECT DISTINCT** eliminates duplicate rows from the result. **SELECT DISTINCT ON** eliminates rows that match on all the specified expressions. **SELECT ALL** (the default) will return all candidate rows, including duplicates. (See **DISTINCT Clause** below.)

7. Using the operators **UNION**, **INTERSECT**, and **EXCEPT**, the output of more than one **SELECT** statement can be combined to form a single result set. The **UNION** operator returns all rows that are in one or both of the result sets. The **INTERSECT** operator returns all rows that are strictly in both result sets. The **EXCEPT** operator returns the rows that are in the first result set but not in the second. In all three cases, duplicate rows are eliminated unless **ALL** is specified. The noise word **DISTINCT** can be added to explicitly specify eliminating duplicate rows. Notice that **DISTINCT** is the default behavior here, even though **ALL** is the default for **SELECT** itself. (See **UNION Clause**, **INTERSECT Clause**, and **EXCEPT Clause** below.)

8. If the **ORDER BY** clause is specified, the returned rows are sorted in the specified order. If **ORDER BY** is not given, the rows are returned in whatever order the system finds fastest to produce. (See **ORDER BY Clause** below.)

9. If the **LIMIT** (or **FETCH FIRST**) or **OFFSET** clause is specified, the **SELECT** statement only returns a subset of the result rows. (See **LIMIT Clause** below.)

10. If **FOR UPDATE**, **FOR NO KEY UPDATE**, **FOR SHARE** or **FOR KEY SHARE** is specified, the **SELECT** statement locks the selected rows against concurrent updates. (See **The Locking Clause** below.)

You must have **SELECT** privilege on each column used in a **SELECT** command. The use of **FOR NO KEY UPDATE**, **FOR UPDATE**, **FOR SHARE** or **FOR KEY SHARE** requires **UPDATE** privilege as well (for at least one column of each table so selected).

**Parameters**

**WITH Clause**

The **WITH** clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the primary query. The subqueries effectively act as temporary tables or views for the duration of the primary query. Each subquery can be a **SELECT**, **TABLE**, **VALUES**, **INSERT**, **UPDATE** or **DELETE** statement. When
writing a data-modifying statement (INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE) in WITH, it is usual to include a RETURNING clause. It is the output of RETURNING, not the underlying table that the statement modifies, that forms the temporary table that is read by the primary query. If RETURNING is omitted, the statement is still executed, but it produces no output so it cannot be referenced as a table by the primary query.

A name (without schema qualification) must be specified for each WITH query. Optionally, a list of column names can be specified; if this is omitted, the column names are inferred from the subquery.

If RECURSIVE is specified, it allows a SELECT subquery to reference itself by name. Such a subquery must have the form

```
non_recursive_term UNION [ ALL | DISTINCT ] recursive_term
```

where the recursive self-reference must appear on the right-hand side of the UNION. Only one recursive self-reference is permitted per query. Recursive data-modifying statements are not supported, but you can use the results of a recursive SELECT query in a data-modifying statement. See Section 7.8 for an example.

Another effect of RECURSIVE is that WITH queries need not be ordered: a query can reference another one that is later in the list. (However, circular references, or mutual recursion, are not implemented.) Without RECURSIVE, WITH queries can only reference sibling WITH queries that are earlier in the WITH list.

When there are multiple queries in the WITH clause, RECURSIVE should be written only once, immediately after WITH. It applies to all queries in the WITH clause, though it has no effect on queries that do not use recursion or forward references.

The optional SEARCH clause computes a search sequence column that can be used for ordering the results of a recursive query in either breadth-first or depth-first order. The supplied column name list specifies the row key that is to be used for keeping track of visited rows. A column named search_seq_col_name will be added to the result column list of the WITH query. This column can be ordered by in the outer query to achieve the respective ordering. See Section 7.8.2.1 for examples.

The optional CYCLE clause is used to detect cycles in recursive queries. The supplied column name list specifies the row key that is to be used for keeping track of visited rows. A column named cycle_mark_col_name will be added to the result column list of the WITH query. This column will be set to cycle_mark_value when a cycle has been detected, else to cycle_mark_default. Furthermore, processing of the recursive union will stop when a cycle has been detected. cycle_mark_value and cycle_mark_default must be constants and they must be coercible to a common data type, and the data type must have an inequality operator. (The SQL standard requires that they be Boolean constants or character strings, but PostgreSQL does not require that.) By default, TRUE and FALSE (of type boolean) are used. Furthermore, a column named cycle_path_col_name will be added to the result column list of the WITH query. This column is used internally for tracking visited rows. See Section 7.8.2.2 for examples.

Both the SEARCH and the CYCLE clause are only valid for recursive WITH queries. The WITH query must be a UNION (or UNION ALL) of two SELECT (or equivalent) commands (no nested UNIONS). If both clauses are used, the column added by the SEARCH clause appears before the columns added by the CYCLE clause.

The primary query and the WITH queries are all (notionally) executed at the same time. This implies that the effects of a data-modifying statement in WITH cannot be seen from other parts of the query, other than by reading its RETURNING output. If two such data-modifying statements attempt to modify the same row, the results are unspecified.

A key property of WITH queries is that they are normally evaluated only once per execution of the primary query, even if the primary query refers to them more than once. In particular, data-modifying statements are guaranteed to be executed once and only once, regardless of whether the primary query reads all or any of their output.

However, a WITH query can be marked NOT MATERIALIZED to remove this guarantee. In that case, the WITH query can be folded into the primary query much as though it were a simple sub-SELECT in the
primary query's FROM clause. This results in duplicate computations if the primary query refers to that WITH query more than once; but if each such use requires only a few rows of the WITH query's total output, NOT MATERIALIZED can provide a net savings by allowing the queries to be optimized jointly. NOT MATERIALIZED is ignored if it is attached to a WITH query that is recursive or is not side-effect-free (i.e., is not a plain SELECT containing no volatile functions).

By default, a side-effect-free WITH query is folded into the primary query if it is used exactly once in the primary query’s FROM clause. This allows joint optimization of the two query levels in situations where that should be semantically invisible. However, such folding can be prevented by marking the WITH query as MATERIALIZED. That might be useful, for example, if the WITH query is being used as an optimization fence to prevent the planner from choosing a bad plan. Postgres Pro versions before v12 never did such folding, so queries written for older versions might rely on WITH to act as an optimization fence.

See Section 7.8 for additional information.

FROM Clause

The FROM clause specifies one or more source tables for the SELECT. If multiple sources are specified, the result is the Cartesian product (cross join) of all the sources. But usually qualification conditions are added (via WHERE) to restrict the returned rows to a small subset of the Cartesian product.

The FROM clause can contain the following elements:

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table or view. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is scanned. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are scanned. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

alias

A substitute name for the FROM item containing the alias. An alias is used for brevity or to eliminate ambiguity for self-joins (where the same table is scanned multiple times). When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table or function; for example given FROM foo AS f, the remainder of the SELECT must refer to this FROM item as f not foo. If an alias is written, a column alias list can also be written to provide substitute names for one or more columns of the table.

TABLESAMPLE  sampling_method (  argument [ , ... ] ) [ REPEATABLE (  seed ) ]

A TABLESAMPLE clause after a table_name indicates that the specified sampling_method should be used to retrieve a subset of the rows in that table. This sampling precedes the application of any other filters such as WHERE clauses. The standard Postgres Pro distribution includes two sampling methods, BERNOULLI and SYSTEM, and other sampling methods can be installed in the database via extensions.

The BERNOULLI and SYSTEM sampling methods each accept a single argument which is the fraction of the table to sample, expressed as a percentage between 0 and 100. This argument can be any real-valued expression. (Other sampling methods might accept more or different arguments.) These two methods each return a randomly-chosen sample of the table that will contain approximately the specified percentage of the table's rows. The BERNOULLI method scans the whole table and selects or ignores individual rows independently with the specified probability. The SYSTEM method does block-level sampling with each block having the specified chance of being selected; all rows in each selected block are returned. The SYSTEM method is significantly faster than the BERNOULLI method when small sampling percentages are specified, but it may return a less-random sample of the table as a result of clustering effects.

The optional REPEATABLE clause specifies a seed number or expression to use for generating random numbers within the sampling method. The seed value can be any non-null floating-point value. Two queries that specify the same seed and argument values will select the same sample of the table, if the table has not been changed meanwhile. But different seed values will usually produce different
samples. If `REPEATABLE` is not given then a new random sample is selected for each query, based upon a system-generated seed. Note that some add-on sampling methods do not accept `REPEATABLE`, and will always produce new samples on each use.

`select`

A sub-`SELECT` can appear in the `FROM` clause. This acts as though its output were created as a temporary table for the duration of this single `SELECT` command. Note that the sub-`SELECT` must be surrounded by parentheses, and an alias must be provided for it. A `VALUES` command can also be used here.

`with_query_name`

A `WITH` query is referenced by writing its name, just as though the query's name were a table name. (In fact, the `WITH` query hides any real table of the same name for the purposes of the primary query. If necessary, you can refer to a real table of the same name by schema-qualifying the table's name.) An alias can be provided in the same way as for a table.

`function_name`

Function calls can appear in the `FROM` clause. (This is especially useful for functions that return result sets, but any function can be used.) This acts as though the function's output were created as a temporary table for the duration of this single `SELECT` command. If the function's result type is composite (including the case of a function with multiple `OUT` parameters), each attribute becomes a separate column in the implicit table.

When the optional `WITH ORDINALITY` clause is added to the function call, an additional column of type `bigint` will be appended to the function's result column(s). This column numbers the rows of the function's result set, starting from 1. By default, this column is named `ordinality`.

An alias can be provided in the same way as for a table. If an alias is written, a column alias list can also be written to provide substitute names for one or more attributes of the function's composite return type, including the ordinality column if present.

Multiple function calls can be combined into a single `FROM`-clause item by surrounding them with `ROWS FROM( ... )`. The output of such an item is the concatenation of the first row from each function, then the second row from each function, etc. If some of the functions produce fewer rows than others, null values are substituted for the missing data, so that the total number of rows returned is always the same as for the function that produced the most rows.

If the function has been defined as returning the `record` data type, then an alias or the key word `AS` must be present, followed by a column definition list in the form `( column_name data_type [, ... ] )`. The column definition list must match the actual number and types of columns returned by the function.

When using the `ROWS FROM( ... )` syntax, if one of the functions requires a column definition list, it's preferred to put the column definition list after the function call inside `ROWS FROM( ... )`. A column definition list can be placed after the `ROWS FROM( ... )` construct only if there's just a single function and no `WITH ORDINALITY` clause.

To use `ORDINALITY` together with a column definition list, you must use the `ROWS FROM( ... )` syntax and put the column definition list inside `ROWS FROM( ... )`.

`join_type`

One of

- [ INNER ] JOIN
- LEFT [ OUTER ] JOIN
- RIGHT [ OUTER ] JOIN
• FULL [ OUTER ] JOIN
• CROSS JOIN

For the INNER and OUTER join types, a join condition must be specified, namely exactly one of NATURAL, ON join_condition, or USING (join_column [, ...]). See below for the meaning. For CROSS JOIN, none of these clauses can appear.

A JOIN clause combines two FROM items, which for convenience we will refer to as “tables”, though in reality they can be any type of FROM item. Use parentheses if necessary to determine the order of nesting. In the absence of parentheses, JOINS nest left-to-right. In any case JOIN binds more tightly than the commas separating FROM-list items.

CROSS JOIN and INNER JOIN produce a simple Cartesian product, the same result as you get from listing the two tables at the top level of FROM, but restricted by the join condition (if any). CROSS JOIN is equivalent to INNER JOIN ON (TRUE), that is, no rows are removed by qualification. These join types are just a notational convenience, since they do nothing you couldn’t do with plain FROM and WHERE.

LEFT OUTER JOIN returns all rows in the qualified Cartesian product (i.e., all combined rows that pass its join condition), plus one copy of each row in the left-hand table for which there was no right-hand row that passed the join condition. This left-hand row is extended to the full width of the joined table by inserting null values for the right-hand columns. Note that only the JOIN clause’s own condition is considered while deciding which rows have matches. Outer conditions are applied afterwards.

Conversely, RIGHT OUTER JOIN returns all the joined rows, plus one row for each unmatched right-hand row (extended with nulls on the left). This is just a notational convenience, since you could convert it to a LEFT OUTER JOIN by switching the left and right tables.

FULL OUTER JOIN returns all the joined rows, plus one row for each unmatched left-hand row (extended with nulls on the right), plus one row for each unmatched right-hand row (extended with nulls on the left).

ON join_condition

join_condition is an expression resulting in a value of type boolean (similar to a WHERE clause) that specifies which rows in a join are considered to match.

USING ( join_column [, ...] ) [ AS join_using_alias ]

A clause of the form USING ( a, b, ... ) is shorthand for ON left_table.a = right_table.a AND left_table.b = right_table.b .... Also, USING implies that only one of each pair of equivalent columns will be included in the join output, not both.

If a join_using_alias name is specified, it provides a table alias for the join columns. Only the join columns listed in the USING clause are addressable by this name. Unlike a regular alias, this does not hide the names of the joined tables from the rest of the query. Also unlike a regular alias, you cannot write a column alias list — the output names of the join columns are the same as they appear in the USING list.

NATURAL

NATURAL is shorthand for a USING list that mentions all columns in the two tables that have matching names. If there are no common column names, NATURAL is equivalent to ON TRUE.

LATERAL

The LATERAL key word can precede a sub-SELECT FROM item. This allows the sub-SELECT to refer to columns of FROM items that appear before it in the FROM list. (Without LATERAL, each sub-SELECT is evaluated independently and so cannot cross-reference any other FROM item.)

LATERAL can also precede a function-call FROM item, but in this case it is a noise word, because the function expression can refer to earlier FROM items in any case.
A LATERAL item can appear at top level in the FROM list, or within a JOIN tree. In the latter case it can also refer to any items that are on the left-hand side of a JOIN that it is on the right-hand side of.

When a FROM item contains LATERAL cross-references, evaluation proceeds as follows: for each row of the FROM item providing the cross-referenced column(s), or set of rows of multiple FROM items providing the columns, the LATERAL item is evaluated using that row or row set's values of the columns. The resulting row(s) are joined as usual with the rows they were computed from. This is repeated for each row or set of rows from the column source table(s).

The column source table(s) must be INNER or LEFT joined to the LATERAL item, else there would not be a well-defined set of rows from which to compute each set of rows for the LATERAL item. Thus, although a construct such as X RIGHT JOIN LATERAL Y is syntactically valid, it is not actually allowed for Y to reference X.

**WHERE Clause**

The optional WHERE clause has the general form

```
WHERE condition
```

where condition is any expression that evaluates to a result of type boolean. Any row that does not satisfy this condition will be eliminated from the output. A row satisfies the condition if it returns true when the actual row values are substituted for any variable references.

**GROUP BY Clause**

The optional GROUP BY clause has the general form

```
GROUP BY [ ALL | DISTINCT ] grouping_element [, ...]
```

GROUP BY will condense into a single row all selected rows that share the same values for the grouped expressions. An expression used inside a grouping_element can be an input column name, or the name or ordinal number of an output column (SELECT list item), or an arbitrary expression formed from input-column values. In case of ambiguity, a GROUP BY name will be interpreted as an input-column name rather than an output column name.

If any of GROUPING SETS, ROLLUP or CUBE are present as grouping elements, then the GROUP BY clause as a whole defines some number of independent grouping sets. The effect of this is equivalent to constructing a UNION ALL between subqueries with the individual grouping sets as their GROUP BY clauses. The optional DISTINCT clause removes duplicate sets before processing; it does not transform the UNION ALL into a UNION DISTINCT. For further details on the handling of grouping sets see Section 7.2.4.

Aggregate functions, if any are used, are computed across all rows making up each group, producing a separate value for each group. (If there are aggregate functions but no GROUP BY clause, the query is treated as having a single group comprising all the selected rows.) The set of rows fed to each aggregate function can be further filtered by attaching a FILTER clause to the aggregate function call; see Section 4.2.7 for more information. When a FILTER clause is present, only those rows matching it are included in the input to that aggregate function.

When GROUP BY is present, or any aggregate functions are present, it is not valid for the SELECT list expressions to refer to ungrouped columns except within aggregate functions or when the ungrouped column is functionally dependent on the grouped columns, since there would otherwise be more than one possible value to return for an ungrouped column. A functional dependency exists if the grouped columns (or a subset thereof) are the primary key of the table containing the ungrouped column.

Keep in mind that all aggregate functions are evaluated before evaluating any “scalar” expressions in the HAVING clause or SELECT list. This means that, for example, a CASE expression cannot be used to skip evaluation of an aggregate function; see Section 4.2.14.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified with GROUP BY.
HAVING Clause

The optional HAVING clause has the general form

```
HAVING condition
```

where **condition** is the same as specified for the WHERE clause.

HAVING eliminates group rows that do not satisfy the condition. HAVING is different from WHERE: WHERE filters individual rows before the application of GROUP BY, while HAVING filters group rows created by GROUP BY. Each column referenced in **condition** must unambiguously reference a grouping column, unless the reference appears within an aggregate function or the ungrouped column is functionally dependent on the grouping columns.

The presence of HAVING turns a query into a grouped query even if there is no GROUP BY clause. This is the same as what happens when the query contains aggregate functions but no GROUP BY clause. All the selected rows are considered to form a single group, and the SELECT list and HAVING clause can only reference table columns from within aggregate functions. Such a query will emit a single row if the HAVING condition is true, zero rows if it is not true.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified with HAVING.

WINDOW Clause

The optional WINDOW clause has the general form

```
WINDOW window_name AS ( window_definition ) [, ...]
```

where **window_name** is a name that can be referenced from OVER clauses or subsequent window definitions, and **window_definition** is

```
[ existing_window_name ]
[ PARTITION BY expression [, ...] ]
[ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] [, ...] ]
[ frame_clause ]
```

If an *existing_window_name* is specified it must refer to an earlier entry in the WINDOW list; the new window copies its partitioning clause from that entry, as well as its ordering clause if any. In this case the new window cannot specify its own PARTITION BY clause, and it can specify ORDER BY only if the copied window does not have one. The new window always uses its own frame clause; the copied window must not specify a frame clause.

The elements of the PARTITION BY list are interpreted in much the same fashion as elements of a GROUP BY clause, except that they are always simple expressions and never the name or number of an output column. Another difference is that these expressions can contain aggregate function calls, which are not allowed in a regular GROUP BY clause. They are allowed here because windowing occurs after grouping and aggregation.

Similarly, the elements of the ORDER BY list are interpreted in much the same fashion as elements of a statement-level ORDER BY clause, except that the expressions are always taken as simple expressions and never the name or number of an output column.

The optional frame_clause defines the window frame for window functions that depend on the frame (not all do). The window frame is a set of related rows for each row of the query (called the current row). The frame_clause can be one of

```
{ RANGE | ROWS | GROUPS } frame_start [ frame_exclusion ]
{ RANGE | ROWS | GROUPS } BETWEEN frame_start AND frame_end [ frame_exclusion ]
```

where **frame_start** and **frame_end** can be one of

UNBOUNDED PRECEDING
offset PRECEDING

1658
CURRENT ROW
offset FOLLOWING
UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING

and frame_exclusion can be one of
EXCLUDE CURRENT ROW
EXCLUDE GROUP
EXCLUDE TIES
EXCLUDE NO OTHERS

If frame_end is omitted it defaults to CURRENT ROW. Restrictions are that frame_start cannot be UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING, frame_end cannot be UNBOUNDED PRECEDING, and the frame_end choice cannot appear earlier in the above list of frame_start and frame_end options than the frame_start choice does — for example RANGE BETWEEN CURRENT ROW AND offset PRECEDING is not allowed.

The default framing option is RANGE UNBOUNDED PRECEDING, which is the same as RANGE BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND CURRENT ROW; it sets the frame to be all rows from the partition start up through the current row's last peer (a row that the window's ORDER BY clause considers equivalent to the current row; all rows are peers if there is no ORDER BY). In general, UNBOUNDED PRECEDING means that the frame starts with the first row of the partition, and similarly UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING means that the frame ends with the last row of the partition, regardless of RANGE, ROWS or GROUPS mode. In ROWS mode, CURRENT ROW means that the frame starts or ends with the current row; but in RANGE or GROUPS mode it means that the frame starts or ends with the current row's first or last peer in the ORDER BY ordering.

The offset PRECEDING and offset FOLLOWING options vary in meaning depending on the frame mode. In ROWS mode, the offset is an integer indicating that the frame starts or ends that many rows before or after the current row. In GROUPS mode, the offset is an integer indicating that the frame starts or ends that many peer groups before or after the current row's peer group, where a peer group is a group of rows that are equivalent according to the window's ORDER BY clause. In RANGE mode, use of an offset option requires that there be exactly one ORDER BY column in the window definition. Then the frame contains those rows whose ordering column value is no more than offset less than (for PRECEDING) or more than (for FOLLOWING) the current row's ordering column value. In these cases the data type of the offset expression depends on the data type of the ordering column. For numeric ordering columns it is typically of the same type as the ordering column, but for datetime ordering columns it is an interval. In all these cases, the value of the offset must be non-null and non-negative. Also, while the offset does not have to be a simple constant, it cannot contain variables, aggregate functions, or window functions.

The frame_exclusion option allows rows around the current row to be excluded from the frame, even if they would be included according to the frame start and frame end options. EXCLUDE CURRENT ROW excludes the current row from the frame. EXCLUDE GROUP excludes the current row and its ordering peers from the frame. EXCLUDE TIES excludes any peers of the current row from the frame, but not the current row itself. EXCLUDE NO OTHERS simply specifies explicitly the default behavior of not excluding the current row or its peers.

Beware that the ROWS mode can produce unpredictable results if the ORDER BY ordering does not order the rows uniquely. The RANGE and GROUPS modes are designed to ensure that rows that are peers in the ORDER BY ordering are treated alike: all rows of a given peer group will be in the frame or excluded from it.

The purpose of a WINDOW clause is to specify the behavior of window functions appearing in the query's SELECT list or ORDER BY clause. These functions can reference the WINDOW clause entries by name in their OVER clauses. A WINDOW clause entry does not have to be referenced anywhere, however; if it is not used in the query it is simply ignored. It is possible to use window functions without any WINDOW clause at all, since a window function call can specify its window definition directly in its OVER clause. However, the WINDOW clause saves typing when the same window definition is needed for more than one window function.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified with WINDOW.
Window functions are described in detail in Section 3.5, Section 4.2.8, and Section 7.2.5.

**SELECT List**

The SELECT list (between the key words SELECT and FROM) specifies expressions that form the output rows of the SELECT statement. The expressions can (and usually do) refer to columns computed in the FROM clause.

Just as in a table, every output column of a SELECT has a name. In a simple SELECT this name is just used to label the column for display, but when the SELECT is a sub-query of a larger query, the name is seen by the larger query as the column name of the virtual table produced by the sub-query. To specify the name to use for an output column, write AS output_name after the column's expression. (You can omit AS, but only if the desired output name does not match any Postgres Pro keyword (see Appendix C). For protection against possible future keyword additions, it is recommended that you always either write AS or double-quote the output name.) If you do not specify a column name, a name is chosen automatically by Postgres Pro. If the column's expression is a simple column reference then the chosen name is the same as that column's name. In more complex cases a function or type name may be used, or the system may fall back on a generated name such as ?column?.

An output column’s name can be used to refer to the column’s value in ORDER BY and GROUP BY clauses, but not in the WHERE or HAVING clauses; there you must write out the expression instead.

Instead of an expression, * can be written in the output list as a shorthand for all the columns of the selected rows. Also, you can write table_name.* as a shorthand for the columns coming from just that table. In these cases it is not possible to specify new names with AS; the output column names will be the same as the table columns' names.

According to the SQL standard, the expressions in the output list should be computed before applying DISTINCT, ORDER BY, or LIMIT. This is obviously necessary when using DISTINCT, since otherwise it’s not clear what values are being made distinct. However, in many cases it is convenient if output expressions are computed after ORDER BY and LIMIT; particularly if the output list contains any volatile or expensive functions. With that behavior, the order of function evaluations is more intuitive and there will not be evaluations corresponding to rows that never appear in the output. Postgres Pro will effectively evaluate output expressions after sorting and limiting, so long as those expressions are not referenced in DISTINCT, ORDER BY or GROUP BY. (As a counterexample, SELECT f(x) FROM tab ORDER BY 1 clearly must evaluate f(x) before sorting.) Output expressions that contain set-returning functions are effectively evaluated after sorting and before limiting, so that LIMIT will act to cut off the output from a set-returning function.

**Note**

Postgres Pro versions before 9.6 did not provide any guarantees about the timing of evaluation of output expressions versus sorting and limiting; it depended on the form of the chosen query plan.

**DISTINCT Clause**

If SELECT DISTINCT is specified, all duplicate rows are removed from the result set (one row is kept from each group of duplicates). SELECT ALL specifies the opposite: all rows are kept; that is the default.

SELECT DISTINCT ON ( expression [, ...] ) keeps only the first row of each set of rows where the given expressions evaluate to equal. The DISTINCT ON expressions are interpreted using the same rules as for ORDER BY (see above). Note that the “first row” of each set is unpredictable unless ORDER BY is used to ensure that the desired row appears first. For example:

```
SELECT DISTINCT ON (location) location, time, report
    FROM weather_reports
    ORDER BY location, time DESC;
```
retrieves the most recent weather report for each location. But if we had not used ORDER BY to force descending order of time values for each location, we'd have gotten a report from an unpredictable time for each location.

The DISTINCT ON expression(s) must match the leftmost ORDER BY expression(s). The ORDER BY clause will normally contain additional expression(s) that determine the desired precedence of rows within each DISTINCT ON group.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified with DISTINCT.

**UNION Clause**

The UNION clause has this general form:

```
select_statement UNION [ ALL | DISTINCT ] select_statement
```

`select_statement` is any SELECT statement without an ORDER BY, LIMIT, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE, or FOR KEY SHARE clause. (ORDER BY and LIMIT can be attached to a subexpression if it is enclosed in parentheses. Without parentheses, these clauses will be taken to apply to the result of the UNION, not to its right-hand input expression.)

The UNION operator computes the set union of the rows returned by the involved SELECT statements. A row is in the set union of two result sets if it appears in at least one of the result sets. The two SELECT statements that represent the direct operands of the UNION must produce the same number of columns, and corresponding columns must be of compatible data types.

The result of UNION does not contain any duplicate rows unless the ALL option is specified. ALL prevents elimination of duplicates. (Therefore, UNION ALL is usually significantly quicker than UNION; use ALL when you can.) DISTINCT can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple UNION operators in the same SELECT statement are evaluated left to right, unless otherwise indicated by parentheses.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified either for a UNION result or for any input of a UNION.

**INTERSECT Clause**

The INTERSECT clause has this general form:

```
select_statement INTERSECT [ ALL | DISTINCT ] select_statement
```

`select_statement` is any SELECT statement without an ORDER BY, LIMIT, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE, or FOR KEY SHARE clause.

The INTERSECT operator computes the set intersection of the rows returned by the involved SELECT statements. A row is in the intersection of two result sets if it appears in at least one of the result sets. The two SELECT statements that represent the direct operands of the INTERSECT must produce the same number of columns, and corresponding columns must be of compatible data types.

The result of INTERSECT does not contain any duplicate rows unless the ALL option is specified. With ALL, a row that has `m` duplicates in the left table and `n` duplicates in the right table will appear `\min(m,n)` times in the result set. DISTINCT can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple INTERSECT operators in the same SELECT statement are evaluated left to right, unless parentheses dictate otherwise. INTERSECT binds more tightly than UNION. That is, `A UNION B INTERSECT C` will be read as `A UNION (B INTERSECT C).

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified either for an INTERSECT result or for any input of an INTERSECT.

**EXCEPT Clause**

The EXCEPT clause has this general form:
The `EXCEPT` operator computes the set of rows that are in the result of the left `SELECT` statement but not in the result of the right one.

The result of `EXCEPT` does not contain any duplicate rows unless the `ALL` option is specified. With `ALL`, a row that has $m$ duplicates in the left table and $n$ duplicates in the right table will appear $\max(m-n,0)$ times in the result set. `DISTINCT` can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple `EXCEPT` operators in the same `SELECT` statement are evaluated left to right, unless parentheses dictate otherwise. `EXCEPT` binds at the same level as `UNION`.

Currently, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, and `FOR KEY SHARE` cannot be specified either for an `EXCEPT` result or for any input of an `EXCEPT`.

**ORDER BY Clause**

The optional `ORDER BY` clause has this general form:

```sql
ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] [, ...]
```

The `ORDER BY` clause causes the result rows to be sorted according to the specified expression(s). If two rows are equal according to the leftmost expression, they are compared according to the next expression and so on. If they are equal according to all specified expressions, they are returned in an implementation-dependent order.

Each expression can be the name or ordinal number of an output column (`SELECT` list item), or it can be an arbitrary expression formed from input-column values.

The ordinal number refers to the ordinal (left-to-right) position of the output column. This feature makes it possible to define an ordering on the basis of a column that does not have a unique name. This is never absolutely necessary because it is always possible to assign a name to an output column using the `AS` clause.

It is also possible to use arbitrary expressions in the `ORDER BY` clause, including columns that do not appear in the `SELECT` output list. Thus the following statement is valid:

```sql
SELECT name FROM distributors ORDER BY code;
```

A limitation of this feature is that an `ORDER BY` clause applying to the result of a `UNION`, `INTERSECT`, or `EXCEPT` clause can only specify an output column name or number, not an expression.

If an `ORDER BY` expression is a simple name that matches both an output column name and an input column name, `ORDER BY` will interpret it as the output column name. This is the opposite of the choice that `GROUP BY` will make in the same situation. This inconsistency is made to be compatible with the SQL standard.

Optionally one can add the key word `ASC` (ascending) or `DESC` (descending) after any expression in the `ORDER BY` clause. If not specified, `ASC` is assumed by default. Alternatively, a specific ordering operator name can be specified in the `USING` clause. An ordering operator must be a less-than or greater-than member of some B-tree operator family. `ASC` is usually equivalent to `USING <` and `DESC` is usually equivalent to `USING >`. (But the creator of a user-defined data type can define exactly what the default sort ordering is, and it might correspond to operators with other names.)

If `NULLS LAST` is specified, null values sort after all non-null values; if `NULLS FIRST` is specified, null values sort before all non-null values. If neither is specified, the default behavior is `NULLS LAST` when `ASC` is specified or implied, and `NULLS FIRST` when `DESC` is specified (thus, the default is to act as though
nulls are larger than non-nulls). When USING is specified, the default nulls ordering depends on whether the operator is a less-than or greater-than operator.

Note that ordering options apply only to the expression they follow; for example ORDER BY x, y DESC does not mean the same thing as ORDER BY x DESC, y DESC.

Character-string data is sorted according to the collation that applies to the column being sorted. That can be overridden at need by including a COLLATE clause in the expression, for example ORDER BY mycolumn COLLATE "en_US". For more information see Section 4.2.10 and Section 22.2.

**LIMIT Clause**

The **LIMIT** clause consists of two independent sub-clauses:

```
LIMIT { count | ALL }
OFFSET start
```

The parameter `count` specifies the maximum number of rows to return, while `start` specifies the number of rows to skip before starting to return rows. When both are specified, `start` rows are skipped before starting to count the `count` rows to be returned.

If the `count` expression evaluates to NULL, it is treated as **LIMIT** **ALL**, i.e., no limit. If `start` evaluates to NULL, it is treated the same as **OFFSET** **0**.

SQL:2008 introduced a different syntax to achieve the same result, which Postgres Pro also supports. It is:

```
OFFSET start { ROW | ROWS }
FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } { count } { ROW | ROWS } { ONLY | WITH TIES }
```

In this syntax, the `start` or `count` value is required by the standard to be a literal constant, a parameter, or a variable name; as a Postgres Pro extension, other expressions are allowed, but will generally need to be enclosed in parentheses to avoid ambiguity. If `count` is omitted in a FETCH clause, it defaults to 1. The WITH TIES option is used to return any additional rows that tie for the last place in the result set according to the ORDER BY clause; ORDER BY is mandatory in this case, and SKIP LOCKED is not allowed. ROW and ROWS as well as FIRST and NEXT are noise words that don't influence the effects of these clauses. According to the standard, the OFFSET clause must come before the FETCH clause if both are present; but Postgres Pro is laxer and allows either order.

When using **LIMIT**, it is a good idea to use an ORDER BY clause that constrains the result rows into a unique order. Otherwise you will get an unpredictable subset of the query's rows — you might be asking for the tenth through twentieth rows, but tenth through twentieth in what ordering? You don't know what ordering unless you specify ORDER BY.

The query planner takes LIMIT into account when generating a query plan, so you are very likely to get different plans (yielding different row orders) depending on what you use for LIMIT and OFFSET. Thus, using different LIMIT/OFFSET values to select different subsets of a query result will give inconsistent results unless you enforce a predictable result ordering with ORDER BY. This is not a bug; it is an inherent consequence of the fact that SQL does not promise to deliver the results of a query in any particular order unless ORDER BY is used to constrain the order.

It is even possible for repeated executions of the same LIMIT query to return different subsets of the rows of a table, if there is not an ORDER BY to enforce selection of a deterministic subset. Again, this is not a bug; determinism of the results is simply not guaranteed in such a case.

**The Locking Clause**

**FOR UPDATE**, **FOR NO KEY UPDATE**, **FOR SHARE** and **FOR KEY SHARE** are locking clauses; they affect how SELECT locks rows as they are obtained from the table.

The locking clause has the general form
SELECT

FOR lock_strength [ OF table_name [, ... ] ] [ NOWAIT | SKIP LOCKED ]

where lock_strength can be one of

UPDATE
NO KEY UPDATE
SHARE
KEY SHARE

For more information on each row-level lock mode, refer to Section 13.3.2.

To prevent the operation from waiting for other transactions to commit, use either the NOWAIT or SKIP LOCKED option. With NOWAIT, the statement reports an error, rather than waiting, if a selected row cannot be locked immediately. With SKIP LOCKED, any selected rows that cannot be immediately locked are skipped. Skipping locked rows provides an inconsistent view of the data, so this is not suitable for general purpose work, but can be used to avoid lock contention with multiple consumers accessing a queue-like table. Note that NOWAIT and SKIP LOCKED apply only to the row-level lock(s) — the required ROW SHARE table-level lock is still taken in the ordinary way (see Chapter 13). You can use LOCK with the NOWAIT option first, if you need to acquire the table-level lock without waiting.

If specific tables are named in a locking clause, then only rows coming from those tables are locked; any other tables used in the SELECT are simply read as usual. A locking clause without a table list affects all tables used in the statement. If a locking clause is applied to a view or sub-query, it affects all tables used in the view or sub-query. However, these clauses do not apply to WITH queries referenced by the primary query. If you want row locking to occur within a WITH query, specify a locking clause within the WITH query.

Multiple locking clauses can be written if it is necessary to specify different locking behavior for different tables. If the same table is mentioned (or implicitly affected) by more than one locking clause, then it is processed as if it was only specified by the strongest one. Similarly, a table is processed as NOWAIT if that is specified in any of the clauses affecting it. Otherwise, it is processed as SKIP LOCKED if that is specified in any of the clauses affecting it.

The locking clauses cannot be used in contexts where returned rows cannot be clearly identified with individual table rows; for example they cannot be used with aggregation.

When a locking clause appears at the top level of a SELECT query, the rows that are locked are exactly those that are returned by the query; in the case of a join query, the rows locked are those that contribute to returned join rows. In addition, rows that satisfied the query conditions as of the query snapshot will be locked, although they will not be returned if they were updated after the snapshot and no longer satisfy the query conditions. If a LIMIT is used, locking stops once enough rows have been returned to satisfy the limit (but note that rows skipped over by OFFSET will get locked). Similarly, if a locking clause is used in a cursor's query, only rows actually fetched or stepped past by the cursor will be locked.

When a locking clause appears in a sub-SELECT, the rows locked are those returned to the outer query by the sub-query. This might involve fewer rows than inspection of the sub-query alone would suggest, since conditions from the outer query might be used to optimize execution of the sub-query. For example,

```
SELECT * FROM (SELECT * FROM mytable FOR UPDATE) ss WHERE col1 = 5;
```

will lock only rows having col1 = 5, even though that condition is not textually within the sub-query.

Previous releases failed to preserve a lock which is upgraded by a later savepoint. For example, this code:

```
BEGIN;
SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE key = 1 FOR UPDATE;
SAVEPOINT s;
UPDATE mytable SET ... WHERE key = 1;
ROLLBACK TO s;
```

would fail to preserve the FOR UPDATE lock after the ROLLBACK TO. This has been fixed in release 9.3.
Caution

It is possible for a SELECT command running at the READ COMMITTED transaction isolation level and using ORDER BY and a locking clause to return rows out of order. This is because ORDER BY is applied first. The command sorts the result, but might then block trying to obtain a lock on one or more of the rows. Once the SELECT unblocks, some of the ordering column values might have been modified, leading to those rows appearing to be out of order (though they are in order in terms of the original column values). This can be worked around at need by placing the FOR UPDATE/SHARE clause in a sub-query, for example

```
SELECT * FROM (SELECT * FROM mytable FOR UPDATE) ss ORDER BY column1;
```

Note that this will result in locking all rows of mytable, whereas FOR UPDATE at the top level would lock only the actually returned rows. This can make for a significant performance difference, particularly if the ORDER BY is combined with LIMIT or other restrictions. So this technique is recommended only if concurrent updates of the ordering columns are expected and a strictly sorted result is required.

At the REPEATABLE READ or SERIALIZABLE transaction isolation level this would cause a serialization failure (with a SQLSTATE of '40001'), so there is no possibility of receiving rows out of order under these isolation levels.

### TABLE Command

The command

```
TABLE name
```

is equivalent to

```
SELECT * FROM name
```

It can be used as a top-level command or as a space-saving syntax variant in parts of complex queries. Only the WITH, UNION, INTERSECT, EXCEPT, ORDER BY, LIMIT, OFFSET, FETCH and FOR locking clauses can be used with TABLE; the WHERE clause and any form of aggregation cannot be used.

### Examples

To join the table films with the table distributors:

```
SELECT f.title, f.did, d.name, f.date_prod, f.kind
FROM distributors d, films f
WHERE f.did = d.did
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>title</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>date_prod</th>
<th>kind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Third Man</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>British Lion</td>
<td>1949-12-23</td>
<td>Drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The African Queen</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>British Lion</td>
<td>1951-08-11</td>
<td>Romantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To sum the column len of all films and group the results by kind:

```
SELECT kind, sum(len) AS total FROM films GROUP BY kind;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kind</th>
<th>total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>07:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comedy</td>
<td>02:58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drama</td>
<td>14:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musical</td>
<td>06:42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romantic</td>
<td>04:38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To sum the column `len` of all films, group the results by `kind` and show those group totals that are less than 5 hours:

```sql
SELECT kind, sum(len) AS total
FROM films
GROUP BY kind
HAVING sum(len) < interval '5 hours';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kind</th>
<th>total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comedy</td>
<td>02:58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romantic</td>
<td>04:38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following two examples are identical ways of sorting the individual results according to the contents of the second column (`name`):

```sql
SELECT * FROM distributors ORDER BY name;
SELECT * FROM distributors ORDER BY 2;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>did</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>20th Century Fox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Bavaria Atelier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>British Lion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Jean Luc Godard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Luso films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Mosfilm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Paramount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Toho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>United Artists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Walt Disney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Warner Bros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Westward</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The next example shows how to obtain the union of the tables `distributors` and `actors`, restricting the results to those that begin with the letter W in each table. Only distinct rows are wanted, so the key word `ALL` is omitted.

```sql
SELECT distributors.name
FROM distributors
WHERE distributors.name LIKE 'W%'
UNION
SELECT actors.name
FROM actors
WHERE actors.name LIKE 'W%';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Walt Disney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walter Matthau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warner Bros.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1666
This example shows how to use a function in the FROM clause, both with and without a column definition list:

```
CREATE FUNCTION distributors(int) RETURNS SETOF distributors AS $$
    SELECT * FROM distributors WHERE did = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT * FROM distributors(111);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>did</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Walt Disney</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
CREATE FUNCTION distributors_2(int) RETURNS SETOF record AS $$
    SELECT * FROM distributors WHERE did = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT * FROM distributors_2(111) AS (f1 int, f2 text);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>f1</th>
<th>f2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Walt Disney</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here is an example of a function with an ordinality column added:

```
SELECT * FROM unnest(ARRAY['a','b','c','d','e','f']) WITH ORDINALITY;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>unnest</th>
<th>ordinality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6 rows)

This example shows how to use a simple WITH clause:

```
WITH t AS (  
    SELECT random() as x FROM generate_series(1, 3)  
  )  
SELECT * FROM t  
UNION ALL  
SELECT * FROM t
```

```
 x
-------------------
 0.534150459803641
 0.520092216785997
 0.0735620250925422
 0.534150459803641
 0.520092216785997
 0.0735620250925422
```

Notice that the WITH query was evaluated only once, so that we got two sets of the same three random values.

This example uses WITH RECURSIVE to find all subordinates (direct or indirect) of the employee Mary, and their level of indirectness, from a table that shows only direct subordinates:
WITH RECURSIVE employee_recursive(distance, employee_name, manager_name) AS (  
    SELECT 1, employee_name, manager_name  
    FROM employee  
    WHERE manager_name = 'Mary'  
    UNION ALL  
    SELECT er.distance + 1, e.employee_name, e.manager_name  
    FROM employee_recursive er, employee e  
    WHERE er.employee_name = e.manager_name  
)  
SELECT distance, employee_name FROM employee_recursive;

Notice the typical form of recursive queries: an initial condition, followed by UNION, followed by the recursive part of the query. Be sure that the recursive part of the query will eventually return no tuples, or else the query will loop indefinitely. (See Section 7.8 for more examples.)

This example uses LATERAL to apply a set-returning function get_product_names() for each row of the manufacturers table:

SELECT m.name AS mname, pname  
FROM manufacturers m, LATERAL get_product_names(m.id) pname;

Manufacturers not currently having any products would not appear in the result, since it is an inner join. If we wished to include the names of such manufacturers in the result, we could do:

SELECT m.name AS mname, pname  
FROM manufacturers m LEFT JOIN LATERAL get_product_names(m.id) pname ON true;

Compatibility

Of course, the SELECT statement is compatible with the SQL standard. But there are some extensions and some missing features.

Omitted FROM Clauses

Postgres Pro allows one to omit the FROM clause. It has a straightforward use to compute the results of simple expressions:

SELECT 2+2;

?column?  
----------  
4

Some other SQL databases cannot do this except by introducing a dummy one-row table from which to do the SELECT.

Empty SELECT Lists

The list of output expressions after SELECT can be empty, producing a zero-column result table. This is not valid syntax according to the SQL standard. Postgres Pro allows it to be consistent with allowing zero-column tables. However, an empty list is not allowed when DISTINCT is used.

Omitting the AS Key Word

In the SQL standard, the optional key word AS can be omitted before an output column name whenever the new column name is a valid column name (that is, not the same as any reserved keyword). Postgres Pro is slightly more restrictive: AS is required if the new column name matches any keyword at all, reserved or not. Recommended practice is to use AS or double-quote output column names, to prevent any possible conflict against future keyword additions.

In FROM items, both the standard and Postgres Pro allow AS to be omitted before an alias that is an unreserved keyword. But this is impractical for output column names, because of syntactic ambiguities.
SELECT

ONLY and Inheritance

The SQL standard requires parentheses around the table name when writing ONLY, for example SELECT * FROM ONLY (tab1), ONLY (tab2) WHERE .... Postgres Pro considers these parentheses to be optional.

Postgres Pro allows a trailing * to be written to explicitly specify the non-ONLY behavior of including child tables. The standard does not allow this.

(These points apply equally to all SQL commands supporting the ONLY option.)

TABLESAMPLE Clause Restrictions

The TABLESAMPLE clause is currently accepted only on regular tables and materialized views. According to the SQL standard it should be possible to apply it to any FROM item.

Function Calls in FROM

Postgres Pro allows a function call to be written directly as a member of the FROM list. In the SQL standard it would be necessary to wrap such a function call in a sub-SELECT; that is, the syntax FROM func(...) alias is approximately equivalent to FROM LATERAL (SELECT func(...)) alias. Note that LATERAL is considered to be implicit; this is because the standard requires LATERAL semantics for an UNNEST() item in FROM. Postgres Pro treats UNNEST() the same as other set-returning functions.

Namespace Available to GROUP BY and ORDER BY

In the SQL-92 standard, an ORDER BY clause can only use output column names or numbers, while a GROUP BY clause can only use expressions based on input column names. Postgres Pro extends each of these clauses to allow the other choice as well (but it uses the standard’s interpretation if there is ambiguity). Postgres Pro also allows both clauses to specify arbitrary expressions. Note that names appearing in an expression will always be taken as input-column names, not as output-column names.

SQL:1999 and later use a slightly different definition which is not entirely upward compatible with SQL-92. In most cases, however, Postgres Pro will interpret an ORDER BY or GROUP BY expression the same way SQL:1999 does.

Functional Dependencies

Postgres Pro recognizes functional dependency (allowing columns to be omitted from GROUP BY) only when a table’s primary key is included in the GROUP BY list. The SQL standard specifies additional conditions that should be recognized.

LIMIT and OFFSET

The clauses LIMIT and OFFSET are Postgres Pro-specific syntax, also used by MySQL. The SQL:2008 standard has introduced the clauses OFFSET ... FETCH {FIRST|NEXT} ... for the same functionality, as shown above in LIMIT Clause. This syntax is also used by IBM DB2. (Applications written for Oracle frequently use a workaround involving the automatically generated rownum column, which is not available in Postgres Pro, to implement the effects of these clauses.)

FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE, FOR KEY SHARE

Although FOR UPDATE appears in the SQL standard, the standard allows it only as an option of DECLARE CURSOR. Postgres Pro allows it in any SELECT query as well as in sub-SELECTs, but this is an extension. The FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE variants, as well as the NOWAIT and SKIP LOCKED options, do not appear in the standard.

Data-Modifying Statements in WITH

Postgres Pro allows INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE to be used as WITH queries. This is not found in the SQL standard.
Nonstandard Clauses

DISTINCT ON ( ... ) is an extension of the SQL standard.

ROWS FROM( ... ) is an extension of the SQL standard.

The MATERIALIZED and NOT MATERIALIZED options of WITH are extensions of the SQL standard.
SELECT INTO

SELECT INTO — define a new table from the results of a query

Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [ , ... ] ]
SELECT [ ALL | DISTINCT [ ON ( expression [ , ... ] ) ] ]
  * | expression [ AS output_name ] [ , ... ]
  INTO [ TEMPORARY | TEMP | UNLOGGED ] [ TABLE ] new_table
  [ FROM from_item [ , ... ] ]
  [ WHERE condition ]
  [ GROUP BY expression [ , ... ] ]
  [ HAVING condition ]
  [ WINDOW window_name AS ( window_definition ) [ , ... ] ]
  [ { UNION | INTERSECT | EXCEPT } [ ALL | DISTINCT ] select ]
  [ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] ]
  [ , ... ]
  [ LIMIT { count | ALL } ]
  [ OFFSET start [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
  [ FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ count ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]
  [ FOR { UPDATE | SHARE } OF table_name [ , ... ] [ NOWAIT ] [ ... ] ]
```

Description

SELECT INTO creates a new table and fills it with data computed by a query. The data is not returned to the client, as it is with a normal SELECT. The new table's columns have the names and data types associated with the output columns of the SELECT.

Parameters

**TEMPORARY** or **TEMP**

If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

**UNLOGGED**

If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

**new_table**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

All other parameters are described in detail under SELECT.

Notes

CREATE TABLE AS is functionally similar to SELECT INTO. CREATE TABLE AS is the recommended syntax, since this form of SELECT INTO is not available in ECPG or PL/pgSQL, because they interpret the INTO clause differently. Furthermore, CREATE TABLE AS offers a superset of the functionality provided by SELECT INTO.

In contrast to CREATE TABLE AS, SELECT INTO does not allow to specify properties like a table's access method with USING method or the table's tablespace with TABLESPACE tablespace_name. Use CREATE TABLE AS if necessary. Therefore, the default table access method is chosen for the new table. See default_table_access_method for more information.

Examples

Create a new table films_recent consisting of only recent entries from the table films:
SELECT * INTO films_recent FROM films WHERE date_prod >= '2002-01-01';

**Compatibility**

The SQL standard uses `SELECT INTO` to represent selecting values into scalar variables of a host program, rather than creating a new table. This indeed is the usage found in ECPG (see Chapter 34) and PL/pgSQL (see Chapter 41). The Postgres Pro usage of `SELECT INTO` to represent table creation is historical. Some other SQL implementations also use `SELECT INTO` in this way (but most SQL implementations support `CREATE TABLE AS` instead). Apart from such compatibility considerations, it is best to use `CREATE TABLE AS` for this purpose in new code.

**See Also**

CREATE TABLE AS
SET

SET — change a run-time parameter

Synopsis

SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | 'value' | DEFAULT }
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] TIME ZONE { timezone | LOCAL | DEFAULT }

Description

The `SET` command changes run-time configuration parameters. Many of the run-time parameters listed in Chapter 18 can be changed on-the-fly with `SET`. (But some require superuser privileges to change, and others cannot be changed after server or session start.) `SET` only affects the value used by the current session.

If `SET` (or equivalently `SET SESSION`) is issued within a transaction that is later aborted, the effects of the `SET` command disappear when the transaction is rolled back. Once the surrounding transaction is committed, the effects will persist until the end of the session, unless overridden by another `SET`.

The effects of `SET LOCAL` last only till the end of the current transaction, whether committed or not. A special case is `SET` followed by `SET LOCAL` within a single transaction: the `SET LOCAL` value will be seen until the end of the transaction, but afterwards (if the transaction is committed) the `SET` value will take effect.

The effects of `SET` or `SET LOCAL` are also canceled by rolling back to a savepoint that is earlier than the command.

If `SET LOCAL` is used within a function that has a `SET` option for the same variable (see `CREATE FUNCTION`), the effects of the `SET LOCAL` command disappear at function exit; that is, the value in effect when the function was called is restored anyway. This allows `SET LOCAL` to be used for dynamic or repeated changes of a parameter within a function, while still having the convenience of using the `SET` option to save and restore the caller's value. However, a regular `SET` command overrides any surrounding function's `SET` option; its effects will persist unless rolled back.

Note

In PostgreSQL versions 8.0 through 8.2, the effects of a `SET LOCAL` would be canceled by releasing an earlier savepoint, or by successful exit from a PL/pgSQL exception block. This behavior has been changed because it was deemed unintuitive.

Parameters

SESSION

Specifies that the command takes effect for the current session. (This is the default if neither SESSION nor LOCAL appears.)

LOCAL

Specifies that the command takes effect for only the current transaction. After COMMIT or ROLLBACK, the session-level setting takes effect again. Issuing this outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

configuration_parameter

Name of a settable run-time parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 18 and below.
SET

value

New value of parameter. Values can be specified as string constants, identifiers, numbers, or comma-separated lists of these, as appropriate for the particular parameter. DEFAULT can be written to specify resetting the parameter to its default value (that is, whatever value it would have had if no SET had been executed in the current session).

Besides the configuration parameters documented in Chapter 18, there are a few that can only be adjusted using the SET command or that have a special syntax:

SCHEMA

SET SCHEMA 'value' is an alias for SET search_path TO value. Only one schema can be specified using this syntax.

NAMES

SET NAMES value is an alias for SET client_encoding TO value.

SEED

Sets the internal seed for the random number generator (the function random). Allowed values are floating-point numbers between -1 and 1, which are then multiplied by $2^{31} - 1$.

The seed can also be set by invoking the function setseed:

SELECT setseed(value);

TIME ZONE

SET TIME ZONE value is an alias for SET timezone TO value. The syntax SET TIME ZONE allows special syntax for the time zone specification. Here are examples of valid values:

'PST8PDT'

The time zone for Berkeley, California.

'Europe/Rome'

The time zone for Italy.

-7

The time zone 7 hours west from UTC (equivalent to PDT). Positive values are east from UTC.

INTERVAL '-08:00' HOUR TO MINUTE

The time zone 8 hours west from UTC (equivalent to PST).

LOCAL

DEFAULT

Set the time zone to your local time zone (that is, the server's default value of timezone).

Timezone settings given as numbers or intervals are internally translated to POSIX timezone syntax. For example, after SET TIME ZONE -7, SHOW TIME ZONE would report <-07>+07.

See Section 8.5.3 for more information about time zones.

Notes

The function set_config provides equivalent functionality; see Section 9.27.1. Also, it is possible to UPDATE the pg_settings system view to perform the equivalent of SET.

Examples

Set the schema search path:
SET search_path TO my_schema, public;

Set the style of date to traditional POSTGRES with “day before month” input convention:
SET datestyle TO postgres, dmy;

Set the time zone for Berkeley, California:
SET TIME ZONE 'PST8PDT';

Set the time zone for Italy:
SET TIME ZONE 'Europe/Rome';

Compatibility

SET TIME ZONE extends syntax defined in the SQL standard. The standard allows only numeric time zone offsets while Postgres Pro allows more flexible time-zone specifications. All other SET features are Postgres Pro extensions.

See Also
RESET, SHOW
SET CONSTRAINTS

SET CONSTRAINTS — set constraint check timing for the current transaction

Synopsis

SET CONSTRAINTS { ALL | name [, ...] } { DEFERRED | IMMEDIATE }

Description

SET CONSTRAINTS sets the behavior of constraint checking within the current transaction. IMMEDIATE constraints are checked at the end of each statement. DEFERRED constraints are not checked until transaction commit. Each constraint has its own IMMEDIATE or DEFERRED mode.

Upon creation, a constraint is given one of three characteristics: DEFERRABLE INITIALLY DEFERRED, DEFERRABLE INITIALLY IMMEDIATE, or NOT DEFERRABLE. The third class is always IMMEDIATE and is not affected by the SET CONSTRAINTS command. The first two classes start every transaction in the indicated mode, but their behavior can be changed within a transaction by SET CONSTRAINTS.

SET CONSTRAINTS with a list of constraint names changes the mode of just those constraints (which must all be deferrable). Each constraint name can be schema-qualified. The current schema search path is used to find the first matching name if no schema name is specified. SET CONSTRAINTS ALL changes the mode of all deferrable constraints.

When SET CONSTRAINTS changes the mode of a constraint from DEFERRED to IMMEDIATE, the new mode takes effect retroactively: any outstanding data modifications that would have been checked at the end of the transaction are instead checked during the execution of the SET CONSTRAINTS command. If any such constraint is violated, the SET CONSTRAINTS fails (and does not change the constraint mode). Thus, SET CONSTRAINTS can be used to force checking of constraints to occur at a specific point in a transaction.

Currently, only UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, REFERENCES (foreign key), and EXCLUDE constraints are affected by this setting. NOT NULL and CHECK constraints are always checked immediately when a row is inserted or modified (not at the end of the statement). Uniqueness and exclusion constraints that have not been declared DEFERRABLE are also checked immediately.

The firing of triggers that are declared as “constraint triggers” is also controlled by this setting — they fire at the same time that the associated constraint should be checked.

Notes

Because Postgres Pro does not require constraint names to be unique within a schema (but only per-table), it is possible that there is more than one match for a specified constraint name. In this case SET CONSTRAINTS will act on all matches. For a non-schema-qualified name, once a match or matches have been found in some schema in the search path, schemas appearing later in the path are not searched.

This command only alters the behavior of constraints within the current transaction. Issuing this outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

Compatibility

This command complies with the behavior defined in the SQL standard, except for the limitation that, in Postgres Pro, it does not apply to NOT NULL and CHECK constraints. Also, Postgres Pro checks non-deferrable uniqueness constraints immediately, not at end of statement as the standard would suggest.
**SET ROLE**

**SET ROLE** — set the current user identifier of the current session

**Synopsis**

```
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] ROLE role_name
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] ROLE NONE
RESET ROLE
```

**Description**

This command sets the current user identifier of the current SQL session to be `role_name`. The role name can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. After `SET ROLE`, permissions checking for SQL commands is carried out as though the named role were the one that had logged in originally.

The specified `role_name` must be a role that the current session user is a member of. (If the session user is a superuser, any role can be selected.)

The `SESSION` and `LOCAL` modifiers act the same as for the regular `SET` command.

`SET ROLE NONE` sets the current user identifier to the current session user identifier, as returned by `session_user`. `RESET ROLE` sets the current user identifier to the connection-time setting specified by the `command-line options`, `ALTER ROLE`, or `ALTER DATABASE`, if any such settings exist. Otherwise, `RESET ROLE` sets the current user identifier to the current session user identifier. These forms can be executed by any user.

**Notes**

Using this command, it is possible to either add privileges or restrict one's privileges. If the session user role has the `INHERIT` attribute, then it automatically has all the privileges of every role that it could `SET ROLE` to; in this case `SET ROLE` effectively drops all the privileges assigned directly to the session user and to the other roles it is a member of, leaving only the privileges available to the named role. On the other hand, if the session user role has the `NOINHERIT` attribute, `SET ROLE` drops the privileges assigned directly to the session user and instead acquires the privileges available to the named role.

In particular, when a superuser chooses to `SET ROLE` to a non-superuser role, they lose their superuser privileges.

`SET ROLE` has effects comparable to `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION`, but the privilege checks involved are quite different. Also, `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` determines which roles are allowable for later `SET ROLE` commands, whereas changing roles with `SET ROLE` does not change the set of roles allowed to a later `SET ROLE`.

`SET ROLE` does not process session variables as specified by the role's `ALTER ROLE` settings; this only happens during login.

`SET ROLE` cannot be used within a `SECURITY DEFINER` function.

**Examples**

```
SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;

session_user | current_user
-------------+-------------
peter        | peter

SET ROLE 'paul';
```
SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>session_user</th>
<th>current_user</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>peter</td>
<td>paul</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compatibility**

Postgres Pro allows identifier syntax ("rolename"), while the SQL standard requires the role name to be written as a string literal. SQL does not allow this command during a transaction; Postgres Pro does not make this restriction because there is no reason to. The `SESSION` and `LOCAL` modifiers are a Postgres Pro extension, as is the `RESET` syntax.

**See Also**

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION — set the session user identifier and the current user identifier of the current session

Synopsis

SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] SESSION AUTHORIZATION user_name
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT
RESET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

Description

This command sets the session user identifier and the current user identifier of the current SQL session to be user_name. The user name can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. Using this command, it is possible, for example, to temporarily become an unprivileged user and later switch back to being a superuser.

The session user identifier is initially set to be the (possibly authenticated) user name provided by the client. The current user identifier is normally equal to the session user identifier, but might change temporarily in the context of SECURITY DEFINER functions and similar mechanisms; it can also be changed by SET ROLE. The current user identifier is relevant for permission checking.

The session user identifier can be changed only if the initial session user (the authenticated user) had the superuser privilege. Otherwise, the command is accepted only if it specifies the authenticated user name.

The SESSION and LOCAL modifiers act the same as for the regular SET command.

The DEFAULT and RESET forms reset the session and current user identifiers to be the originally authenticated user name. These forms can be executed by any user.

Notes

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION cannot be used within a SECURITY DEFINER function.

Examples

SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>session_user</th>
<th>current_user</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>peter</td>
<td>peter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION 'paul';

SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>session_user</th>
<th>current_user</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paul</td>
<td>paul</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compatibility

The SQL standard allows some other expressions to appear in place of the literal user_name, but these options are not important in practice. Postgres Pro allows identifier syntax ("username"), which SQL does not. SQL does not allow this command during a transaction; Postgres Pro does not make this restriction because there is no reason to. The SESSION and LOCAL modifiers are a Postgres Pro extension, as is the RESET syntax.
The privileges necessary to execute this command are left implementation-defined by the standard.

**See Also**

SET ROLE
SET TRANSACTION

SET TRANSACTION — set the characteristics of the current transaction

Synopsis

```
SET TRANSACTION transaction_mode [, ...]  
SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT snapshot_id  
SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS AS TRANSACTION transaction_mode [, ...]  
```

where `transaction_mode` is one of:

```
ISOLATION LEVEL { SERIALizable | REPEATable READ | READ COMMITTED | READ UNCOMMITTED }  
READ WRITE | READ ONLY  
[ NOT ] DEFERRABLE
```

Description

The `SET TRANSACTION` command sets the characteristics of the current transaction. It has no effect on any subsequent transactions. `SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS` sets the default transaction characteristics for subsequent transactions of a session. These defaults can be overridden by `SET TRANSACTION` for an individual transaction.

The available transaction characteristics are the transaction isolation level, the transaction access mode (read/write or read-only), and the deferrable mode. In addition, a snapshot can be selected, though only for the current transaction, not as a session default.

The isolation level of a transaction determines what data the transaction can see when other transactions are running concurrently:

**READ COMMITTED**

A statement can only see rows committed before it began. This is the default.

**REPEATABLE READ**

All statements of the current transaction can only see rows committed before the first query or data-modification statement was executed in this transaction.

**SERIALIZABLE**

All statements of the current transaction can only see rows committed before the first query or data-modification statement was executed in this transaction. If a pattern of reads and writes among concurrent serializable transactions would create a situation which could not have occurred for any serial (one-at-a-time) execution of those transactions, one of them will be rolled back with a serialization_failure error.

The SQL standard defines one additional level, **READ UNCOMMITTED**. In Postgres Pro `READ UNCOMMITTED` is treated as **READ COMMITTED**.

The transaction isolation level cannot be changed after the first query or data-modification statement (SELECT, INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, FETCH, or COPY) of a transaction has been executed. See Chapter 13 for more information about transaction isolation and concurrency control.

The transaction access mode determines whether the transaction is read/write or read-only. Read/write is the default. When a transaction is read-only, the following SQL commands are disallowed: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and COPY FROM if the table they would write to is not a temporary table; all CREATE, ALTER, and DROP commands; COMMENT, GRANT, REVOKE, TRUNCATE; and EXPLAIN ANALYZE and EXECUTE if the command they would execute is among those listed. This is a high-level notion of read-only that does not prevent all writes to disk.
The **DEFERRABLE** transaction property has no effect unless the transaction is also **SERIALIZABLE** and **READ ONLY**. When all three of these properties are selected for a transaction, the transaction may block when first acquiring its snapshot, after which it is able to run without the normal overhead of a **SERIALIZABLE** transaction and without any risk of contributing to or being canceled by a serialization failure. This mode is well suited for long-running reports or backups.

The **SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT** command allows a new transaction to run with the same snapshot as an existing transaction. The pre-existing transaction must have exported its snapshot with the **pg_export_snapshot** function (see Section 9.27.5). That function returns a snapshot identifier, which must be given to **SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT** to specify which snapshot is to be imported. The identifier must be written as a string literal in this command, for example '000003A1-1'. **SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT** can only be executed at the start of a transaction, before the first query or data-modification statement (**SELECT**, **INSERT**, **DELETE**, **UPDATE**, **FETCH**, or **COPY**) of the transaction. Furthermore, the transaction must already be set to **SERIALIZABLE** or **REPEATABLE READ** isolation level (otherwise, the snapshot would be discarded immediately, since **READ COMMITTED** mode takes a new snapshot for each command). If the importing transaction uses **SERIALIZABLE** isolation level, then the transaction that exported the snapshot must also use that isolation level. Also, a non-read-only serializable transaction cannot import a snapshot from a read-only transaction.

**Notes**

If **SET TRANSACTION** is executed without a prior **START TRANSACTION** or **BEGIN**, it emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

It is possible to dispense with **SET TRANSACTION** by instead specifying the desired **transaction_modes** in **BEGIN** or **START TRANSACTION**. But that option is not available for **SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT**.

The session default transaction modes can also be set or examined via the configuration parameters **default_transaction_isolation**, **default_transaction_read_only**, and **default_transaction_deferrable**. (In fact **SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS** is just a verbose equivalent for setting these variables with **SET**.) This means the defaults can be set in the configuration file, via **ALTER DATABASE**, etc. Consult Chapter 18 for more information.

The current transaction's modes can similarly be set or examined via the configuration parameters **transaction_isolation**, **transaction_read_only**, and **transaction_deferrable**. Setting one of these parameters acts the same as the corresponding **SET TRANSACTION** option, with the same restrictions on when it can be done. However, these parameters cannot be set in the configuration file, or from any source other than live SQL.

**Examples**

To begin a new transaction with the same snapshot as an already existing transaction, first export the snapshot from the existing transaction. That will return the snapshot identifier, for example:

```sql
BEGIN TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ;
SELECT pg_export_snapshot();
pg_export_snapshot
---------------------
00000003-0000001B-1
(1 row)
```

Then give the snapshot identifier in a **SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT** command at the beginning of the newly opened transaction:

```sql
BEGIN TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ;
SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT '00000003-0000001B-1';
```

**Compatibility**

These commands are defined in the SQL standard, except for the **DEFERRABLE** transaction mode and the **SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT** form, which are Postgres Pro extensions.
SERIALIZABLE is the default transaction isolation level in the standard. In Postgres Pro the default is ordinarily READ COMMITTED, but you can change it as mentioned above.

In the SQL standard, there is one other transaction characteristic that can be set with these commands: the size of the diagnostics area. This concept is specific to embedded SQL, and therefore is not implemented in the Postgres Pro server.

The SQL standard requires commas between successive transaction_modes, but for historical reasons Postgres Pro allows the commas to be omitted.
**SHOW**

SHOW — show the value of a run-time parameter

**Synopsis**

```
SHOW name
SHOW ALL
```

**Description**

`SHOW` will display the current setting of run-time parameters. These variables can be set using the `SET` statement, by editing the `postgresql.conf` configuration file, through the `PGOPTIONS` environmental variable (when using libpq or a libpq-based application), or through command-line flags when starting the `postgres` server. See Chapter 18 for details.

**Parameters**

- **name**
  The name of a run-time parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 18 and on the `SET` reference page. In addition, there are a few parameters that can be shown but not set:

  - `SERVER_VERSION`
    Shows the server's version number.

  - `SERVER_ENCODING`
    Shows the server-side character set encoding. At present, this parameter can be shown but not set, because the encoding is determined at database creation time.

  - `LC_COLLATE`
    Shows the database's locale setting for collation (text ordering). At present, this parameter can be shown but not set, because the setting is determined at database creation time.

  - `LC_CTYPE`
    Shows the database's locale setting for character classification. At present, this parameter can be shown but not set, because the setting is determined at database creation time.

  - `IS_SUPERUSER`
    True if the current role has superuser privileges.

- **ALL**
  Show the values of all configuration parameters, with descriptions.

**Notes**

The function `current_setting` produces equivalent output; see Section 9.27.1. Also, the `pg_settings` system view produces the same information.

**Examples**

Show the current setting of the parameter `DateStyle`:

```
SHOW DateStyle;
DateStyle
-----------
ISO, MDY
```
Show the current setting of the parameter `geqo`:

```
SHOW geqo;
geqo
------
on
(1 row)
```

Show all settings:

```
SHOW ALL;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>setting</th>
<th>description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allow_system_table_mods</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>Allows modifications of the structure of ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmloption</td>
<td>content</td>
<td>Sets whether XML data in implicit parsing ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zero_damaged_pages</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>Continues processing past damaged page headers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(196 rows)

**Compatibility**

The `SHOW` command is a Postgres Pro extension.

**See Also**

`SET`, `RESET`
START TRANSACTION

START TRANSACTION — start a transaction block

Synopsis

START TRANSACTION [ transaction_mode [, ... ] ]

where transaction_mode is one of:

- ISOLATION LEVEL { SERIALIZABLE | REPEATABLE READ | READ COMMITTED | READ UNCOMMITTED }
- READ WRITE | READ ONLY
- [ NOT ] DEFERRABLE

Description

This command begins a new transaction block. If the isolation level, read/write mode, or deferrable mode is specified, the new transaction has those characteristics, as if SET TRANSACTION was executed. This is the same as the BEGIN command.

Parameters

Refer to SET TRANSACTION for information on the meaning of the parameters to this statement.

Compatibility

In the standard, it is not necessary to issue START TRANSACTION to start a transaction block: any SQL command implicitly begins a block. Postgres Pro’s behavior can be seen as implicitly issuing a COMMIT after each command that does not follow START TRANSACTION (or BEGIN), and it is therefore often called “autocommit”. Other relational database systems might offer an autocommit feature as a convenience.

The DEFERRABLE transaction_mode is a Postgres Pro language extension.

The SQL standard requires commas between successive transaction_modes, but for historical reasons Postgres Pro allows the commas to be omitted.

See also the compatibility section of SET TRANSACTION.

See Also
BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK, SAVEPOINT, SET TRANSACTION
TRUNCATE

TRUNCATE — empty a table or set of tables

Synopsis

TRUNCATE [ TABLE ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ] [, ... ]
[ RESTART IDENTITY | CONTINUE IDENTITY ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

Description

TRUNCATE quickly removes all rows from a set of tables. It has the same effect as an unqualified DELETE on each table, but since it does not actually scan the tables it is faster. Furthermore, it reclaims disk space immediately, rather than requiring a subsequent VACUUM operation. This is most useful on large tables.

Parameters

name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a table to truncate. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is truncated. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are truncated. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

RESTART IDENTITY

Automatically restart sequences owned by columns of the truncated table(s).

CONTINUE IDENTITY

Do not change the values of sequences. This is the default.

CASCADE

Automatically truncate all tables that have foreign-key references to any of the named tables, or to any tables added to the group due to CASCADE.

RESTRICT

Refuse to truncate if any of the tables have foreign-key references from tables that are not listed in the command. This is the default.

Notes

You must have the TRUNCATE privilege on a table to truncate it.

TRUNCATE acquires an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on each table it operates on, which blocks all other concurrent operations on the table. When RESTART IDENTITY is specified, any sequences that are to be restarted are likewise locked exclusively. If concurrent access to a table is required, then the DELETE command should be used instead.

TRUNCATE cannot be used on a table that has foreign-key references from other tables, unless all such tables are also truncated in the same command. Checking validity in such cases would require table scans, and the whole point is not to do one. The CASCADE option can be used to automatically include all dependent tables — but be very careful when using this option, or else you might lose data you did not intend to! Note in particular that when the table to be truncated is a partition, siblings partitions are left untouched, but cascading occurs to all referencing tables and all their partitions with no distinction.

TRUNCATE will not fire any ON DELETE triggers that might exist for the tables. But it will fire ON TRUNCATE triggers. If ON TRUNCATE triggers are defined for any of the tables, then all BEFORE TRUNCATE triggers are
fired before any truncation happens, and all \texttt{AFTER TRUNCATE} triggers are fired after the last truncation is performed and any sequences are reset. The triggers will fire in the order that the tables are to be processed (first those listed in the command, and then any that were added due to cascading).

\texttt{TRUNCATE} is not MVCC-safe. After truncation, the table will appear empty to concurrent transactions, if they are using a snapshot taken before the truncation occurred. See Section 13.5 for more details.

\texttt{TRUNCATE} is transaction-safe with respect to the data in the tables: the truncation will be safely rolled back if the surrounding transaction does not commit.

When \texttt{RESTART IDENTITY} is specified, the implied \texttt{ALTER SEQUENCE RESTART} operations are also done transactionally; that is, they will be rolled back if the surrounding transaction does not commit. Be aware that if any additional sequence operations are done on the restarted sequences before the transaction rolls back, the effects of these operations on the sequences will be rolled back, but not their effects on \texttt{currval()}; that is, after the transaction \texttt{currval()} will continue to reflect the last sequence value obtained inside the failed transaction, even though the sequence itself may no longer be consistent with that. This is similar to the usual behavior of \texttt{currval()} after a failed transaction.

\texttt{TRUNCATE} can be used for foreign tables if supported by the foreign data wrapper, for instance, see \texttt{postgres_fdw}.

\textbf{Examples}

Truncate the tables \texttt{bigtable} and \texttt{fattable}:

\texttt{TRUNCATE bigtable, fattable;}

The same, and also reset any associated sequence generators:

\texttt{TRUNCATE bigtable, fattable RESTART IDENTITY;}

Truncate the table \texttt{othertable}, and cascade to any tables that reference \texttt{othertable} via foreign-key constraints:

\texttt{TRUNCATE othertable CASCADE;}

\textbf{Compatibility}

The SQL:2008 standard includes a \texttt{TRUNCATE} command with the syntax \texttt{TRUNCATE TABLE tablename}. The clauses \texttt{CONTINUE IDENTITY/RESTART IDENTITY} also appear in that standard, but have slightly different though related meanings. Some of the concurrency behavior of this command is left implementation-defined by the standard, so the above notes should be considered and compared with other implementations if necessary.

\textbf{See Also}

\texttt{DELETE}
UNLISTEN

UNLISTEN — stop listening for a notification

Synopsis

UNLISTEN { channel | * }

Description

UNLISTEN is used to remove an existing registration for NOTIFY events. UNLISTEN cancels any existing registration of the current Postgres Pro session as a listener on the notification channel named channel. The special wildcard * cancels all listener registrations for the current session.

NOTIFY contains a more extensive discussion of the use of LISTEN and NOTIFY.

Parameters

channel

Name of a notification channel (any identifier).

*  

All current listen registrations for this session are cleared.

Notes

You can unlisten something you were not listening for; no warning or error will appear.

At the end of each session, UNLISTEN * is automatically executed.

A transaction that has executed UNLISTEN cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

Examples

To make a registration:

LISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
 Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process with PID 8448.

Once UNLISTEN has been executed, further NOTIFY messages will be ignored:

UNLISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
-- no NOTIFY event is received

Compatibility

There is no UNLISTEN command in the SQL standard.

See Also

LISTEN, NOTIFY
**UPDATE**

UPDATE — update rows of a table

**Synopsis**

```sql
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [, ... ] ]
UPDATE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [ [ AS ] alias ]
SET { column_name = { expression | DEFAULT } |
( column_name [, ...] ) = [ ROW ] ( { expression | DEFAULT } [, ...] ) |
( column_name [, ...] ) = ( sub-SELECT )
} [, ...]
[ FROM from_item [, ...] ]
[ WHERE condition | WHERE CURRENT OF cursor_name ]
[ RETURNING * | output_expression [ [ AS ] output_name ] [, ... ] ]
```

**Description**

UPDATE changes the values of the specified columns in all rows that satisfy the condition. Only the columns to be modified need be mentioned in the SET clause; columns not explicitly modified retain their previous values.

There are two ways to modify a table using information contained in other tables in the database: using sub-selects, or specifying additional tables in the FROM clause. Which technique is more appropriate depends on the specific circumstances.

The optional RETURNING clause causes UPDATE to compute and return value(s) based on each row actually updated. Any expression using the table's columns, and/or columns of other tables mentioned in FROM, can be computed. The new (post-update) values of the table's columns are used. The syntax of the RETURNING list is identical to that of the output list of SELECT.

You must have the UPDATE privilege on the table, or at least on the column(s) that are listed to be updated. You must also have the SELECT privilege on any column whose values are read in the expressions or condition.

**Parameters**

**with_query**

The WITH clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the UPDATE query. See Section 7.8 and SELECT for details.

**table_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to update. If ONLY is specified before the table name, matching rows are updated in the named table only. If ONLY is not specified, matching rows are also updated in any tables inheriting from the named table. Optionally, * can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

**alias**

A substitute name for the target table. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. For example, given UPDATE foo AS f, the remainder of the UPDATE statement must refer to this table as f not foo.

**column_name**

The name of a column in the table named by table_name. The column name can be qualified with a subfield name or array subscript, if needed. Do not include the table's name in the specification of a target column — for example, UPDATE table_name SET table_name.col = 1 is invalid.
**UPDATE**

**expression**

An expression to assign to the column. The expression can use the old values of this and other columns in the table.

**DEFAULT**

Set the column to its default value (which will be NULL if no specific default expression has been assigned to it). An identity column will be set to a new value generated by the associated sequence. For a generated column, specifying this is permitted but merely specifies the normal behavior of computing the column from its generation expression.

**sub-SELECT**

A SELECT sub-query that produces as many output columns as are listed in the parenthesized column list preceding it. The sub-query must yield no more than one row when executed. If it yields one row, its column values are assigned to the target columns; if it yields no rows, NULL values are assigned to the target columns. The sub-query can refer to old values of the current row of the table being updated.

**from_item**

A table expression allowing columns from other tables to appear in the WHERE condition and update expressions. This uses the same syntax as the FROM clause of a SELECT statement; for example, an alias for the table name can be specified. Do not repeat the target table as a from_item unless you intend a self-join (in which case it must appear with an alias in the from_item).

**condition**

An expression that returns a value of type boolean. Only rows for which this expression returns true will be updated.

**cursor_name**

The name of the cursor to use in a WHERE CURRENT OF condition. The row to be updated is the one most recently fetched from this cursor. The cursor must be a non-grouping query on the UPDATE's target table. Note that WHERE CURRENT OF cannot be specified together with a Boolean condition. See DECLARE for more information about using cursors with WHERE CURRENT OF.

**output_expression**

An expression to be computed and returned by the UPDATE command after each row is updated. The expression can use any column names of the table named by table_name or table(s) listed in FROM. Write * to return all columns.

**output_name**

A name to use for a returned column.

**Outputs**

On successful completion, an UPDATE command returns a command tag of the form

**UPDATE count**

The count is the number of rows updated, including matched rows whose values did not change. Note that the number may be less than the number of rows that matched the condition when updates were suppressed by a BEFORE UPDATE trigger. If count is 0, no rows were updated by the query (this is not considered an error).

If the UPDATE command contains a RETURNING clause, the result will be similar to that of a SELECT statement containing the columns and values defined in the RETURNING list, computed over the row(s) updated by the command.

1691
**Notes**

When a `FROM` clause is present, what essentially happens is that the target table is joined to the tables mentioned in the `from_item` list, and each output row of the join represents an update operation for the target table. When using `FROM` you should ensure that the join produces at most one output row for each row to be modified. In other words, a target row shouldn't join to more than one row from the other table(s). If it does, then only one of the join rows will be used to update the target row, but which one will be used is not readily predictable.

Because of this indeterminacy, referencing other tables only within sub-selects is safer, though often harder to read and slower than using a join.

In the case of a partitioned table, updating a row might cause it to no longer satisfy the partition constraint of the containing partition. In that case, if there is some other partition in the partition tree for which this row satisfies its partition constraint, then the row is moved to that partition. If there is no such partition, an error will occur. Behind the scenes, the row movement is actually a `DELETE` and `INSERT` operation.

There is a possibility that a concurrent `UPDATE` or `DELETE` on the row being moved will get a serialization failure error. Suppose session 1 is performing an `UPDATE` on a partition key, and meanwhile a concurrent session 2 for which this row is visible performs an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` operation on this row. In such case, session 2's `UPDATE` or `DELETE` will detect the row movement and raise a serialization failure error (which always returns with an SQLSTATE code '40001'). Applications may wish to retry the transaction if this occurs. In the usual case where the table is not partitioned, or where there is no row movement, session 2 would have identified the newly updated row and carried out the `UPDATE/DELETE` on this new row version.

Note that while rows can be moved from local partitions to a foreign-table partition (provided the foreign data wrapper supports tuple routing), they cannot be moved from a foreign-table partition to another partition.

**Examples**

Change the word *Drama* to *Dramatic* in the column *kind* of the table *films*:

```
UPDATE films SET kind = 'Dramatic' WHERE kind = 'Drama';
```

Adjust temperature entries and reset precipitation to its default value in one row of the table *weather*:

```
UPDATE weather SET temp_lo = temp_lo+1, temp_hi = temp_lo+15, prcp = DEFAULT
  WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND date = '2003-07-03';
```

Perform the same operation and return the updated entries:

```
UPDATE weather SET temp_lo = temp_lo+1, temp_hi = temp_lo+15, prcp = DEFAULT
  WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND date = '2003-07-03'
  RETURNING temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp;
```

Use the alternative column-list syntax to do the same update:

```
UPDATE weather SET (temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp) = (temp_lo+1, temp_lo+15, DEFAULT)
  WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND date = '2003-07-03';
```

Increment the sales count of the salesperson who manages the account for Acme Corporation, using the `FROM` clause syntax:

```
UPDATE employees SET sales_count = sales_count + 1 FROM accounts
  WHERE accounts.name = 'Acme Corporation'
  AND employees.id = accounts.sales_person;
```

Perform the same operation, using a sub-select in the `WHERE` clause:

```
UPDATE employees SET sales_count = sales_count + 1 WHERE id =
  (SELECT sales_person FROM accounts WHERE name = 'Acme Corporation');
```
Update contact names in an accounts table to match the currently assigned salesmen:

```
UPDATE accounts SET (contact_first_name, contact_last_name) =
    (SELECT first_name, last_name FROM salesmen
     WHERE salesmen.id = accounts.sales_id);
```

A similar result could be accomplished with a join:

```
UPDATE accounts SET contact_first_name = first_name,
        contact_last_name = last_name
    FROM salesmen WHERE salesmen.id = accounts.sales_id;
```

However, the second query may give unexpected results if `salesmen.id` is not a unique key, whereas the first query is guaranteed to raise an error if there are multiple `id` matches. Also, if there is no match for a particular `accounts.sales_id` entry, the first query will set the corresponding name fields to NULL, whereas the second query will not update that row at all.

Update statistics in a summary table to match the current data:

```
UPDATE summary s SET (sum_x, sum_y, avg_x, avg_y) =
    (SELECT sum(x), sum(y), avg(x), avg(y) FROM data d
     WHERE d.group_id = s.group_id);
```

Attempt to insert a new stock item along with the quantity of stock. If the item already exists, instead update the stock count of the existing item. To do this without failing the entire transaction, use savepoints:

```
BEGIN;
    -- other operations
    SAVEPOINT sp1;
    INSERT INTO wines VALUES('Chateau Lafite 2003', '24');
    -- Assume the above fails because of a unique key violation,
    -- so now we issue these commands:
    ROLLBACK TO sp1;
    UPDATE wines SET stock = stock + 24 WHERE winename = 'Chateau Lafite 2003';
    -- continue with other operations, and eventually
    COMMIT;
```

Change the `kind` column of the table `films` in the row on which the cursor `c_films` is currently positioned:

```
UPDATE films SET kind = 'Dramatic' WHERE CURRENT OF c_films;
```

Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the `FROM` and `RETURNING` clauses are Postgres Pro extensions, as is the ability to use `WITH` with `UPDATE`.

Some other database systems offer a `FROM` option in which the target table is supposed to be listed again within `FROM`. That is not how Postgres Pro interprets `FROM`. Be careful when porting applications that use this extension.

According to the standard, the source value for a parenthesized sub-list of target column names can be any row-valued expression yielding the correct number of columns. Postgres Pro only allows the source value to be a row constructor or a sub-`SELECT`. An individual column's updated value can be specified as `DEFAULT` in the row-constructor case, but not inside a sub-`SELECT`.
VACUUM

VACUUM — garbage-collect and optionally analyze a database

Synopsis

VACUUM [ ( option [, ...] ) ] [ table_and_columns [, ...] ]
VACUUM [ FULL ] [ FREEZE ] [ VERBOSE ] [ ANALYZE ] [ table_and_columns [, ...] ]

where option can be one of:

  FULL [ boolean ]
  FREEZE [ boolean ]
  VERBOSE [ boolean ]
  ANALYZE [ boolean ]
  DISABLE_PAGE_SKIPPING [ boolean ]
  SKIP_LOCKED [ boolean ]
  INDEX_CLEANUP { AUTO | ON | OFF }
  PROCESS_TOAST [ boolean ]
  TRUNCATE [ boolean ]
  PARALLEL integer

and table_and_columns is:

table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]

Description

VACUUM reclaims storage occupied by dead tuples. In normal Postgres Pro operation, tuples that are deleted or obsoleted by an update are not physically removed from their table; they remain present until a VACUUM is done. Therefore it's necessary to do VACUUM periodically, especially on frequently-updated tables.

Without a table_and_columns list, VACUUM processes every table and materialized view in the current database that the current user has permission to vacuum. With a list, VACUUM processes only those table(s).

VACUUM ANALYZE performs a VACUUM and then an ANALYZE for each selected table. This is a handy combination form for routine maintenance scripts. See ANALYZE for more details about its processing.

Plain VACUUM (without FULL) simply reclaims space and makes it available for re-use. This form of the command can operate in parallel with normal reading and writing of the table, as an exclusive lock is not obtained. However, extra space is not returned to the operating system (in most cases); it's just kept available for re-use within the same table. It also allows us to leverage multiple CPUs in order to process indexes. This feature is known as parallel vacuum. To disable this feature, one can use PARALLEL option and specify parallel workers as zero. VACUUM FULL rewrites the entire contents of the table into a new disk file with no extra space, allowing unused space to be returned to the operating system. This form is much slower and requires an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on each table while it is being processed.

When the option list is surrounded by parentheses, the options can be written in any order. Without parentheses, options must be specified in exactly the order shown above. The parenthesized syntax was added in PostgreSQL 9.0; the unparenthesized syntax is deprecated.

Parameters

FULL

Selects “full” vacuum, which can reclaim more space, but takes much longer and exclusively locks the table. This method also requires extra disk space, since it writes a new copy of the table and
VACUUM

doesn't release the old copy until the operation is complete. Usually this should only be used when a significant amount of space needs to be reclaimed from within the table.

FREEZE

Selects aggressive “freezing” of tuples. Specifying FREEZE is equivalent to performing VACUUM with the vacuum_freeze_min_age and vacuum_freeze_table_age parameters set to zero. Aggressive freezing is always performed when the table is rewritten, so this option is redundant when FULL is specified.

VERBOSE

Prints a detailed vacuum activity report for each table.

ANALYZE

Updates statistics used by the planner to determine the most efficient way to execute a query.

DISABLE_PAGE_SKIPPING

Normally, VACUUM will skip pages based on the visibility map. Pages where all tuples are known to be frozen can always be skipped, and those where all tuples are known to be visible to all transactions may be skipped except when performing an aggressive vacuum. Furthermore, except when performing an aggressive vacuum, some pages may be skipped in order to avoid waiting for other sessions to finish using them. This option disables all page-skipping behavior, and is intended to be used only when the contents of the visibility map are suspect, which should happen only if there is a hardware or software issue causing database corruption.

SKIP_LOCKED

Specifies that VACUUM should not wait for any conflicting locks to be released when beginning work on a relation: if a relation cannot be locked immediately without waiting, the relation is skipped. Note that even with this option, VACUUM may still block when opening the relation's indexes. Additionally, VACUUM ANALYZE may still block when acquiring sample rows from partitions, table inheritance children, and some types of foreign tables. Also, while VACUUM ordinarily processes all partitions of specified partitioned tables, this option will cause VACUUM to skip all partitions if there is a conflicting lock on the partitioned table.

INDEX_CLEANUP

Normally, VACUUM will skip index vacuuming when there are very few dead tuples in the table. The cost of processing all of the table’s indexes is expected to greatly exceed the benefit of removing dead index tuples when this happens. This option can be used to force VACUUM to process indexes when there are more than zero dead tuples. The default is AUTO, which allows VACUUM to skip index vacuuming when appropriate. If INDEX_CLEANUP is set to ON, VACUUM will conservatively remove all dead tuples from indexes. This may be useful for backwards compatibility with earlier releases of PostgreSQL where this was the standard behavior.

INDEX_CLEANUP can also be set to OFF to force VACUUM to always skip index vacuuming, even when there are many dead tuples in the table. This may be useful when it is necessary to make VACUUM run as quickly as possible to avoid imminent transaction ID wraparound (see Section 23.1.5). However, the wraparound failsafe mechanism controlled by vacuum_failsafe_age will generally trigger automatically to avoid transaction ID wraparound failure, and should be preferred. If index cleanup is not performed regularly, performance may suffer, because as the table is modified indexes will accumulate dead tuples and the table itself will accumulate dead line pointers that cannot be removed until index cleanup is completed.

This option has no effect for tables that have no index and is ignored if the FULL option is used. It also has no effect on the transaction ID wraparound failsafe mechanism. When triggered it will skip index vacuuming, even when INDEX_CLEANUP is set to ON.
VACUUM

PROCESS_TOAST

Specifies that VACUUM should attempt to process the corresponding TOAST table for each relation, if one exists. This is usually the desired behavior and is the default. Setting this option to false may be useful when it is only necessary to vacuum the main relation. This option is required when the FULL option is used.

TRUNCATE

Specifies that VACUUM should attempt to truncate off any empty pages at the end of the table and allow the disk space for the truncated pages to be returned to the operating system. This is normally the desired behavior and is the default unless the vacuum_truncate option has been set to false for the table to be vacuumed. Setting this option to false may be useful to avoid ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the table that the truncation requires. This option is ignored if the FULL option is used.

PARALLEL

Perform index vacuum and index cleanup phases of VACUUM in parallel using integer background workers (for the details of each vacuum phase, please refer to Table 26.39). The number of workers used to perform the operation is equal to the number of indexes on the relation that support parallel vacuum which is limited by the number of workers specified with PARALLEL option if any which is further limited by max_parallel_maintenance_workers. An index can participate in parallel vacuum if and only if the size of the index is more than min_parallel_index_scan_size. Please note that it is not guaranteed that the number of parallel workers specified in integer will be used during execution. It is possible for a vacuum to run with fewer workers than specified, or even with no workers at all. Only one worker can be used per index. So parallel workers are launched only when there are at least 2 indexes in the table. Workers for vacuum are launched before the start of each phase and exit at the end of the phase. These behaviors might change in a future release. This option can't be used with the FULL option.

boolean

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write TRUE, ON, or 1 to enable the option, and FALSE, OFF, or 0 to disable it. The boolean value can also be omitted, in which case TRUE is assumed.

integer

Specifies a non-negative integer value passed to the selected option.

table_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a specific table or materialized view to vacuum. If the specified table is a partitioned table, all of its leaf partitions are vacuumed.

column_name

The name of a specific column to analyze. Defaults to all columns. If a column list is specified, ANALYZE must also be specified.

Outputs

When VERBOSE is specified, VACUUM emits progress messages to indicate which table is currently being processed. Various statistics about the tables are printed as well.

Notes

To vacuum a table, one must ordinarily be the table's owner or a superuser. However, database owners are allowed to vacuum all tables in their databases, except shared catalogs. (The restriction for shared catalogs means that a true database-wide VACUUM can only be performed by a superuser.) VACUUM will skip over any tables that the calling user does not have permission to vacuum.

VACUUM cannot be executed inside a transaction block.
For tables with GIN indexes, VACUUM (in any form) also completes any pending index insertions, by moving pending index entries to the appropriate places in the main GIN index structure. See Section 63.4.1 for details.

We recommend that active production databases be vacuumed frequently (at least nightly), in order to remove dead rows. After adding or deleting a large number of rows, it might be a good idea to issue a VACUUM ANALYZE command for the affected table. This will update the system catalogs with the results of all recent changes, and allow the Postgres Pro query planner to make better choices in planning queries.

The FULL option is not recommended for routine use, but might be useful in special cases. An example is when you have deleted or updated most of the rows in a table and would like the table to physically shrink to occupy less disk space and allow faster table scans. VACUUM FULL will usually shrink the table more than a plain VACUUM would.

The PARALLEL option is used only for vacuum purposes. If this option is specified with the ANALYZE option, it does not affect ANALYZE.

VACUUM causes a substantial increase in I/O traffic, which might cause poor performance for other active sessions. Therefore, it is sometimes advisable to use the cost-based vacuum delay feature. For parallel vacuum, each worker sleeps in proportion to the work done by that worker. See Section 18.4.4 for details.

Postgres Pro includes an “autovacuum” facility which can automate routine vacuum maintenance. For more information about automatic and manual vacuuming, see Section 23.1.

Each backend running VACUUM without the FULL option will report its progress in the pg_stat_progress_vacuum view. Backends running VACUUM FULL will instead report their progress in the pg_stat_progress_cluster view. See Section 26.4.3 and Section 26.4.4 for details.

Examples

To clean a single table onek, analyze it for the optimizer and print a detailed vacuum activity report:

VACUUM (VERBOSE, ANALYZE) onek;

Compatibility

There is no VACUUM statement in the SQL standard.

See Also

vacuumdb, Section 18.4.4, Section 23.1.6, Section 26.4.3, Section 26.4.4
VALUES

VALUES — compute a set of rows

Synopsis

VALUES ( expression [, ...] ) [, ...]
[ ORDER BY sort_expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [, ...] ]
[ LIMIT { count | ALL } ]
[ OFFSET start [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
[ FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ count ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]

Description

VALUES computes a row value or set of row values specified by value expressions. It is most commonly used to generate a “constant table” within a larger command, but it can be used on its own.

When more than one row is specified, all the rows must have the same number of elements. The data types of the resulting table's columns are determined by combining the explicit or inferred types of the expressions appearing in that column, using the same rules as for UNION (see Section 10.5).

Within larger commands, VALUES is syntactically allowed anywhere that SELECT is. Because it is treated like a SELECT by the grammar, it is possible to use the ORDER BY, LIMIT (or equivalently FETCH FIRST), and OFFSET clauses with a VALUES command.

Parameters

text

expression

A constant or expression to compute and insert at the indicated place in the resulting table (set of rows). In a VALUES list appearing at the top level of an INSERT, an expression can be replaced by DEFAULT to indicate that the destination column's default value should be inserted. DEFAULT cannot be used when VALUES appears in other contexts.

sort_expression

An expression or integer constant indicating how to sort the result rows. This expression can refer to the columns of the VALUES result as column1, column2, etc. For more details see ORDER BY Clause in the SELECT documentation.

operator

A sorting operator. For details see ORDER BY Clause in the SELECT documentation.

count

The maximum number of rows to return. For details see LIMIT Clause in the SELECT documentation.

start

The number of rows to skip before starting to return rows. For details see LIMIT Clause in the SELECT documentation.

Notes

VALUES lists with very large numbers of rows should be avoided, as you might encounter out-of-memory failures or poor performance. VALUES appearing within INSERT is a special case (because the desired column types are known from the INSERT's target table, and need not be inferred by scanning the VALUES list), so it can handle larger lists than are practical in other contexts.
VALUES

Examples

A bare VALUES command:

VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three');

This will return a table of two columns and three rows. It's effectively equivalent to:

```
SELECT 1 AS column1, 'one' AS column2
UNION ALL
SELECT 2, 'two'
UNION ALL
SELECT 3, 'three';
```

More usually, VALUES is used within a larger SQL command. The most common use is in INSERT:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind)
VALUES ('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, '1961-06-16', 'Drama');
```

In the context of INSERT, entries of a VALUES list can be DEFAULT to indicate that the column default should be used here instead of specifying a value:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES
('UA502', 'Bananas', 105, DEFAULT, 'Comedy', '82 minutes'),
('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, DEFAULT, 'Drama', DEFAULT);
```

VALUES can also be used where a sub-SELECT might be written, for example in a FROM clause:

```
SELECT f.*
FROM films f, (VALUES('MGM', 'Horror'), ('UA', 'Sci-Fi')) AS t (studio, kind)
WHERE f.studio = t.studio AND f.kind = t.kind;
```

```
UPDATE employees SET salary = salary * v.increase
FROM (VALUES(1, 200000, 1.2), (2, 400000, 1.4)) AS v (depno, target, increase)
WHERE employees.depno = v.depno AND employees.sales >= v.target;
```

Note that an AS clause is required when VALUES is used in a FROM clause, just as is true for SELECT. It is not required that the AS clause specify names for all the columns, but it's good practice to do so. (The default column names for VALUES are column1, column2, etc in Postgres Pro, but these names might be different in other database systems.)

When VALUES is used in INSERT, the values are all automatically coerced to the data type of the corresponding destination column. When it's used in other contexts, it might be necessary to specify the correct data type. If the entries are all quoted literal constants, coercing the first is sufficient to determine the assumed type for all:

```
SELECT * FROM machines
WHERE ip_address IN (VALUES('192.168.0.1'::inet), ('192.168.0.10'), ('192.168.1.43'));
```

Tip

For simple IN tests, it's better to rely on the list-of-scalars form of IN than to write a VALUES query as shown above. The list of scalars method requires less writing and is often more efficient.

Compatibility

VALUES conforms to the SQL standard. LIMIT and OFFSET are Postgres Pro extensions; see also under SELECT.

See Also

INSERT, SELECT
Postgres Pro Client Applications

This part contains reference information for Postgres Pro client applications and utilities. Not all of these commands are of general utility; some might require special privileges. The common feature of these applications is that they can be run on any host, independent of where the database server resides.

When specified on the command line, user and database names have their case preserved — the presence of spaces or special characters might require quoting. Table names and other identifiers do not have their case preserved, except where documented, and might require quoting.
clusterdb

clusterdb — cluster a Postgres Pro database

Synopsis

clusterdb [connection-option...][ --verbose | -v ][ --table | -t table ] ...[dbname]

clusterdb [connection-option...][ --verbose | -v ]--all | -a

Description

clusterdb is a utility for reclustering tables in a Postgres Pro database. It finds tables that have previously been clustered, and clusters them again on the same index that was last used. Tables that have never been clustered are not affected.

clusterdb is a wrapper around the SQL command CLUSTER. There is no effective difference between clustering databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

Options

clusterdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

-a
--all

Cluster all databases.

[-d] dbname
[--dbname=] dbname

Specifies the name of the database to be clustered, when -a|--all is not used. If this is not specified, the database name is read from the environment variable PGDATABASE. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used. The dbname can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

-e
--echo

Echo the commands that clusterdb generates and sends to the server.

-q
--quiet

Do not display progress messages.

-t table
--table=table

Cluster table only. Multiple tables can be clustered by writing multiple -t switches.

-v
--verbose

Print detailed information during processing.

-V
--version

Print the clusterdb version and exit.
clusterdb

-?
--help

Show help about clusterdb command line arguments, and exit.

clusterdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

- h host
--host=host

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

-p port
--port=port

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

-U username
--username=USERNAME

User name to connect as.

-w
--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W
--password

Force clusterdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since clusterdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, clusterdb will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

--maintenance-db=dbname

Specifies the name of the database to connect to to discover which databases should be clustered, when -a/-all is used. If not specified, the postgres database will be used, or if that does not exist, template1 will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options. Also, connection string parameters other than the database name itself will be re-used when connecting to other databases.

Environment

PGDATABASE
PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER

Default connection parameters

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).
Diagnostics
In case of difficulty, see CLUSTER and psql for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

Examples
To cluster the database test:

$ clusterdb test

To cluster a single table foo in a database named xyzzy:

$ clusterdb --table=foo xyzzy

See Also
CLUSTER
createdb

createdb — create a new Postgres Pro database

Synopsis

createdb [connection-option...] [option...] [dbname [description]]

Description

createdb creates a new Postgres Pro database.

Normally, the database user who executes this command becomes the owner of the new database. However, a different owner can be specified via the -O option, if the executing user has appropriate privileges.

createdb is a wrapper around the SQL command CREATE DATABASE. There is no effective difference between creating databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

Options

createdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

dbname

Specifies the name of the database to be created. The name must be unique among all Postgres Pro databases in this cluster. The default is to create a database with the same name as the current system user.

description

Specifies a comment to be associated with the newly created database.

-D tablespace

--tablespace=tablespace

Specifies the default tablespace for the database. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

-e

--echo

Echo the commands that createdb generates and sends to the server.

-E encoding

--encoding=encoding

Specifies the character encoding scheme to be used in this database. The character sets supported by the Postgres Pro server are described in Section 22.3.1.

-l locale[@provider]

--locale=locale[@provider]

Specifies the locale to be used in this database. This is equivalent to specifying both --lc-collate and --lc-ctype.

Optionally, you can specify the provider of the default collation after the @ symbol. Supported values are icu and libc. For details, see Section 22.2.2.

--lc-collate=locale[@provider]

Specifies the LC_COLLATE setting to be used in this database.
Optionally, you can specify the provider of the default collation after the @ symbol. Supported values are icu and libc. For details, see Section 22.2.2.

`--lc-ctype=locale`

Specifies the LC_CTYPE setting to be used in this database.

`-O owner`
`--owner=owner`

Specifies the database user who will own the new database. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

`-T template`
`--template=template`

Specifies the template database from which to build this database. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

`-V`
`--version`

Print the createdb version and exit.

`-?`
`--help`

Show help about createdb command line arguments, and exit.

The options -D, -l, -E, -O, and -T correspond to options of the underlying SQL command CREATE DATABASE; see there for more information about them.

createdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`
`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

`-p port`
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or the local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

`-U username`
`--username=username`

User name to connect as.

`-w`
`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`
`--password`

Force createdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since createdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, createdb will waste a connection attempt finding out
that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing \(-\mathbf{w}\) to avoid the extra connection attempt.

---maintenance-db=dbname

Specifies the name of the database to connect to when creating the new database. If not specified, the postgres database will be used; if that does not exist (or if it is the name of the new database being created), template1 will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

**Environment**

**PGDATABASE**

If set, the name of the database to create, unless overridden on the command line.

**PGHOST**

**PGPORT**

**PGUSER**

Default connection parameters. PGUSER also determines the name of the database to create, if it is not specified on the command line or by PGDATABASE.

**PG_COLOR**

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

**Diagnostics**

In case of difficulty, see CREATE DATABASE and psql for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

**Examples**

To create the database demo using the default database server:

$ `createdb demo`

To create the database demo using the server on host eden, port 5000, using the template0 template database, here is the command-line command and the underlying SQL command:

$ `createdb -p 5000 -h eden -T template0 -e demo`

CREATE DATABASE demo TEMPLATE template0;

**See Also**

dropdb, CREATE DATABASE
createuser

createuser — define a new Postgres Pro user account

Synopsis

createuser [connection-option...] [option...] [username]

Description

createuser creates a new Postgres Pro user (or more precisely, a role). Only superusers and users with
CREATEROLE privilege can create new users, so createuser must be invoked by someone who can connect
as a superuser or a user with CREATEROLE privilege.

If you wish to create a new superuser, you must connect as a superuser, not merely with CREATEROLE
privilege. Being a superuser implies the ability to bypass all access permission checks within the
database, so superuser access should not be granted lightly.

createuser is a wrapper around the SQL command CREATE ROLE. There is no effective difference between
creating users via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

Options

createuser accepts the following command-line arguments:

username

  Specifies the name of the Postgres Pro user to be created. This name must be different from all
  existing roles in this Postgres Pro installation.

-c number
  --connection-limit=number

  Set a maximum number of connections for the new user. The default is to set no limit.

-d
  --createdb

  The new user will be allowed to create databases.

-D
  --no-createdb

  The new user will not be allowed to create databases. This is the default.

-e
  --echo

  Echo the commands that createuser generates and sends to the server.

-E
  --encrypted

  This option is obsolete but still accepted for backward compatibility.

-g role
  --role=role

  Indicates role to which this role will be added immediately as a new member. Multiple roles to which
  this role will be added as a member can be specified by writing multiple -g switches.

-i
  --inherit

  The new role will automatically inherit privileges of roles it is a member of. This is the default.
-I
--no-inherit

   The new role will not automatically inherit privileges of roles it is a member of.

--interactive

   Prompt for the user name if none is specified on the command line, and also prompt for whichever of the options -d/-D, -r/-R, -s/-S is not specified on the command line. (This was the default behavior up to PostgreSQL 9.1.)

-l
--login

   The new user will be allowed to log in (that is, the user name can be used as the initial session user identifier). This is the default.

-L
--no-login

   The new user will not be allowed to log in. (A role without login privilege is still useful as a means of managing database permissions.)

-P
--pwprompt

   If given, createuser will issue a prompt for the password of the new user. This is not necessary if you do not plan on using password authentication.

--profile

   The name of the profile that should be used for the role.

-r
--createrole

   The new user will be allowed to create new roles (that is, this user will have CREATEROLE privilege).

-R
--no-createrole

   The new user will not be allowed to create new roles. This is the default.

-s
--superuser

   The new user will be a superuser.

-S
--no-superuser

   The new user will not be a superuser. This is the default.

-V
--version

   Print the createuser version and exit.

--replication

   The new user will have the REPLICATION privilege, which is described more fully in the documentation for CREATE ROLE.

--no-replication

   The new user will not have the REPLICATION privilege, which is described more fully in the documentation for CREATE ROLE.
createuser

-?  
--help
  Show help about createuser command line arguments, and exit.

createuser also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

-\h host
--host=host
  Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a
  slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

-\p port
--port=port
  Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening
  for connections.

-U username
--username=username
  User name to connect as (not the user name to create).

-W
--no-password
  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is
  not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can
  be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-w
--password
  Force createuser to prompt for a password (for connecting to the server, not for the password of
  the new user).

  This option is never essential, since createuser will automatically prompt for a password if the server
  demands password authentication. However, createuser will waste a connection attempt finding out
  that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection
  attempt.

Environment

PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER
  Default connection parameters

PG_COLOR
  Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq
(see Section 32.15).

Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see CREATE ROLE and psql for discussions of potential problems and error
messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection
settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

Examples

To create a user Joe on the default database server:
createuser

$ createuser joe

To create a user joe on the default database server with prompting for some additional attributes:

$ createuser --interactive joe
Shall the new role be a superuser? (y/n) n
Shall the new role be allowed to create databases? (y/n) n
Shall the new role be allowed to create more new roles? (y/n) n

To create the same user joe using the server on host eden, port 5000, with attributes explicitly specified, taking a look at the underlying command:

$ createuser -h eden -p 5000 -S -D -R -e joe
CREATE ROLE joe NOSUPERUSER NOCREATEDB NOCREATEROLE INHERIT LOGIN;

To create the user joe as a superuser, and assign a password immediately:

$ createuser -P -s -e joe
Enter password for new role: xyzzy
Enter it again: xyzzy
CREATE ROLE joe PASSWORD 'md5b5f5ba1a423792b526f799ae4eb3d59e' SUPERUSER CREATEDB
CREATEROLE INHERIT LOGIN;

In the above example, the new password isn't actually echoed when typed, but we show what was typed for clarity. As you see, the password is encrypted before it is sent to the client.

See Also
dropuser, CREATE ROLE
**dropdb**

dropdb — remove a Postgres Pro database

**Synopsis**

dropdb [connection-option...] [option...] dbname

**Description**

dropdb destroys an existing Postgres Pro database. The user who executes this command must be a
database superuser or the owner of the database.

dropdb is a wrapper around the SQL command DROP DATABASE. There is no effective difference between
dropping databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

**Options**

dropdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

`dbname`

Specifies the name of the database to be removed.

`-e`

`--echo`

Echo the commands that dropdb generates and sends to the server.

`-f`

`--force`

Attempt to terminate all existing connections to the target database before dropping it. See DROP
DATABASE for more information on this option.

`-i`

`--interactive`

Issues a verification prompt before doing anything destructive.

`-V`

`--version`

Print the dropdb version and exit.

`--if-exists`

Do not throw an error if the database does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about dropdb command line arguments, and exit.

dropdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`

`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a
slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.
-p port
--port=port
   Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

-U username
--username=username
   User name to connect as.

-w
--no-password
   Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W
--password
   Force dropdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.
   This option is never essential, since dropdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, dropdb will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

--maintenance-db=dbname
   Specifies the name of the database to connect to in order to drop the target database. If not specified, the postgres database will be used; if that does not exist (or is the database being dropped), template1 will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

Environment

PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER
   Default connection parameters

PG_COLOR
   Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see DROP DATABASE and psql for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

Examples

To destroy the database demo on the default database server:

$ dropdb demo

To destroy the database demo using the server on host eden, port 5000, with verification and a peek at the underlying command:
$ dropdb -p 5000 -h eden -i -e demo
Database "demo" will be permanently deleted.
Are you sure? (y/n) y
DROP DATABASE demo;

See Also
createdb, DROP DATABASE
dropuser

dropuser — remove a Postgres Pro user account

Synopsis

dropuser [connection-option...] [option...] [username]

Description

dropuser removes an existing Postgres Pro user. Only superusers and users with the CREATEROLE
privilege can remove Postgres Pro users. (To remove a superuser, you must yourself be a superuser.)
dropuser is a wrapper around the SQL command DROP ROLE. There is no effective difference between
dropping users via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

Options

dropuser accepts the following command-line arguments:

username
    Specifies the name of the Postgres Pro user to be removed. You will be prompted for a name if none
    is specified on the command line and the -i/--interactive option is used.

-e
   --echo
    Echo the commands that dropuser generates and sends to the server.

-i
   --interactive
    Prompt for confirmation before actually removing the user, and prompt for the user name if none
    is specified on the command line.

-V
   --version
    Print the dropuser version and exit.

--if-exists
    Do not throw an error if the user does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

-?
   --help
    Show help about dropuser command line arguments, and exit.

dropuser also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

-h host
   --host=host
    Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a
    slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

-p port
   --port=port
    Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening
    for connections.
dropuser

--username

User name to connect as (not the user name to drop).

--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

--password

Force dropuser to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since dropuser will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, dropuser will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing --no-password to avoid the extra connection attempt.

Environment

PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER

Default connection parameters

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see DROP ROLE and psql for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

Examples

To remove user joe from the default database server:

$ dropuser joe

To remove user joe using the server on host eden, port 5000, with verification and a peek at the underlying command:

$ dropuser -p 5000 -h eden -i -e joe
Role "joe" will be permanently removed.
Are you sure? (y/n) y
DROP ROLE joe;

See Also

createuser, DROP ROLE
Synopsis

ecpg [option...] file...

Description

ecpg is the embedded SQL preprocessor for C programs. It converts C programs with embedded SQL statements to normal C code by replacing the SQL invocations with special function calls. The output files can then be processed with any C compiler tool chain.

ecpg will convert each input file given on the command line to the corresponding C output file. If an input file name does not have any extension, .pgc is assumed. The file's extension will be replaced by .c to construct the output file name. But the output file name can be overridden using the -o option.

If an input file name is just -, ecpg reads the program from standard input (and writes to standard output, unless that is overridden with -o).

This reference page does not describe the embedded SQL language. See Chapter 34 for more information on that topic.

Options

ecpg accepts the following command-line arguments:

-\c
   Automatically generate certain C code from SQL code. Currently, this works for \texttt{EXEC SQL TYPE}.

-\C mode
   Set a compatibility mode. mode can be \texttt{INFORMIX}, \texttt{INFORMIX\_SE}, or \texttt{ORACLE}.

-\D symbol
   Define a C preprocessor symbol.

-\h
   Process header files. When this option is specified, the output file extension becomes .h not .c, and the default input file extension is .pgh not .pgc. Also, the -c option is forced on.

-\i
   Parse system include files as well.

-\I directory
   Specify an additional include path, used to find files included via \texttt{EXEC SQL INCLUDE}. Defaults are . (current directory), /usr/local/include, the Postgres Pro include directory which is defined at compile time (default: /usr/local/pgsql/include), and /usr/include, in that order.

-\o filename
   Specifies that ecpg should write all its output to the given filename. Write -o - to send all output to standard output.

-\r option
   Selects run-time behavior. Option can be one of the following:
no_indicator

Do not use indicators but instead use special values to represent null values. Historically there have been databases using this approach.

prepare

Prepare all statements before using them. Libecpg will keep a cache of prepared statements and reuse a statement if it gets executed again. If the cache runs full, libecpg will free the least used statement.

questionmarks

Allow question mark as placeholder for compatibility reasons. This used to be the default long ago.

-t

Turn on autocommit of transactions. In this mode, each SQL command is automatically committed unless it is inside an explicit transaction block. In the default mode, commands are committed only when EXEC SQL COMMIT is issued.

-v

Print additional information including the version and the "include" path.

--version

Print the ecpg version and exit.

-?

--help

Show help about ecpg command line arguments, and exit.

Notes

When compiling the preprocessed C code files, the compiler needs to be able to find the ECPG header files in the Postgres Pro include directory. Therefore, you might have to use the -I option when invoking the compiler (e.g., -I/usr/local/pgsql/include).

Programs using C code with embedded SQL have to be linked against the libecpg library, for example using the linker options -L/usr/local/pgsql/lib -lecpg.

The value of either of these directories that is appropriate for the installation can be found out using pg_config.

Examples

If you have an embedded SQL C source file named prog1.pgc, you can create an executable program using the following sequence of commands:

ecpg prog1.pgc
cc -I/usr/local/pgsql/include -c prog1.c
cc -o prog1 prog1.o -L/usr/local/pgsql/lib -lecpg
pg_amcheck

pg_amcheck — checks for corruption in one or more PostgreSQL databases

Synopsis

pg_amcheck [option...] [dbname]

Description

pg_amcheck supports running amcheck's corruption checking functions against one or more databases, with options to select which schemas, tables and indexes to check, which kinds of checking to perform, and whether to perform the checks in parallel, and if so, the number of parallel connections to establish and use.

Only table relations and btree indexes are currently supported. Other relation types are silently skipped.

If dbname is specified, it should be the name of a single database to check, and no other database selection options should be present. Otherwise, if any database selection options are present, all matching databases will be checked. If no such options are present, the default database will be checked. Database selection options include --all, --database and --exclude-database. They also include --relation, --exclude-relation, --table, --exclude-table, --index, and --exclude-index, but only when such options are used with a three-part pattern (e.g. mydb*.myschema*.myrel*). Finally, they include --schema and --exclude-schema when such options are used with a two-part pattern (e.g. mydb*.myschema*).

dbname can also be a connection string.

Options

The following command-line options control what is checked:

- a
  --all
    Check all databases, except for any excluded via --exclude-database.

- d pattern
  --database=pattern
    Check databases matching the specified pattern, except for any excluded by --exclude-database.
    This option can be specified more than once.

- D pattern
  --exclude-database=pattern
    Exclude databases matching the given pattern. This option can be specified more than once.

- i pattern
  --index=pattern
    Check indexes matching the specified pattern, unless they are otherwise excluded. This option can be specified more than once.
    This is similar to the --relation option, except that it applies only to indexes, not tables.

- I pattern
  --exclude-index=pattern
    Exclude indexes matching the specified pattern. This option can be specified more than once.
    This is similar to the --exclude-relation option, except that it applies only to indexes, not tables.
--r pattern
--relation=pattern

Check relations matching the specified pattern, unless they are otherwise excluded. This option can be specified more than once.

Patterns may be unqualified, e.g. myrel*, or they may be schema-qualified, e.g. myschema*.myrel* or database-qualified and schema-qualified, e.g. mydb*.myscheam*.myrel*. A database-qualified pattern will add matching databases to the list of databases to be checked.

-R pattern
--exclude-relation=pattern

Exclude relations matching the specified pattern. This option can be specified more than once.

As with --relation, the pattern may be unqualified, schema-qualified, or database- and schema-qualified.

-s pattern
--schema=pattern

Check tables and indexes in schemas matching the specified pattern, unless they are otherwise excluded. This option can be specified more than once.

To select only tables in schemas matching a particular pattern, consider using something like --table=SCHEMAPAT.* --no-dependent-indexes. To select only indexes, consider using something like --index=SCHEMAPAT.*.

A schema pattern may be database-qualified. For example, you may write --schema=mydb*.myschema* to select schemas matching myschema* in databases matching mydb*.

-S pattern
--exclude-schema=pattern

Exclude tables and indexes in schemas matching the specified pattern. This option can be specified more than once.

As with --schema, the pattern may be database-qualified.

-t pattern
--table=pattern

Check tables matching the specified pattern, unless they are otherwise excluded. This option can be specified more than once.

This is similar to the --relation option, except that it applies only to tables, not indexes.

-T pattern
--exclude-table=pattern

Exclude tables matching the specified pattern. This option can be specified more than once.

This is similar to the --exclude-relation option, except that it applies only to tables, not indexes.

--no-dependent-indexes

By default, if a table is checked, any btree indexes of that table will also be checked, even if they are not explicitly selected by an option such as --index or --relation. This option suppresses that behavior.

--no-dependent-toast

By default, if a table is checked, its toast table, if any, will also be checked, even if it is not explicitly selected by an option such as --table or --relation. This option suppresses that behavior.

1719
pg_amcheck

--no-strict-names

By default, if an argument to --database, --table, --index, or --relation matches no objects, it
is a fatal error. This option downgrades that error to a warning.

The following command-line options control checking of tables:

--exclude-toast-pointers

By default, whenever a toast pointer is encountered in a table, a lookup is performed to ensure that
it references apparently-valid entries in the toast table. These checks can be quite slow, and this
option can be used to skip them.

--on-error-stop

After reporting all corruptions on the first page of a table where corruption is found, stop processing
that table relation and move on to the next table or index.

Note that index checking always stops after the first corrupt page. This option only has meaning
relative to table relations.

--skip=option

If all-frozen is given, table corruption checks will skip over pages in all tables that are marked
as all frozen.

If all-visible is given, table corruption checks will skip over pages in all tables that are marked
as all visible.

By default, no pages are skipped. This can be specified as none, but since this is the default, it need
not be mentioned.

--startblock=block

Start checking at the specified block number. An error will occur if the table relation being checked
has fewer than this number of blocks. This option does not apply to indexes, and is probably only
useful when checking a single table relation. See --endblock for further caveats.

--endblock=block

End checking at the specified block number. An error will occur if the table relation being checked
has fewer than this number of blocks. This option does not apply to indexes, and is probably only
useful when checking a single table relation. If both a regular table and a toast table are checked, this
option will apply to both, but higher-numbered toast blocks may still be accessed while validating
toast pointers, unless that is suppressed using --exclude-toast-pointers.

The following command-line options control checking of B-tree indexes:

--heapallindexed

For each index checked, verify the presence of all heap tuples as index tuples in the index using
amcheck's heapallindexed option.

--parent-check

For each btree index checked, use amcheck's bt_index_parent_check function, which performs
additional checks of parent/child relationships during index checking.

The default is to use amcheck's bt_index_check function, but note that use of the --rootdescend
option implicitly selects bt_index_parent_check.

--rootdescend

For each index checked, re-find tuples on the leaf level by performing a new search from the root
page for each tuple using amcheck's rootdescend option.

Use of this option implicitly also selects the --parent-check option.
This form of verification was originally written to help in the development of btree index features. It may be of limited use or even of no use in helping detect the kinds of corruption that occur in practice. It may also cause corruption checking to take considerably longer and consume considerably more resources on the server.

**Warning**

The extra checks performed against B-tree indexes when the `--parent-check` option or the `--rootdescend` option is specified require relatively strong relation-level locks. These checks are the only checks that will block concurrent data modification from `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands.

The following command-line options control the connection to the server:

- `-h hostname`
  `-host=hostname`
  Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

- `-p port`
  `-port=port`
  Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

- `-U`
  `-username=username`
  User name to connect as.

- `-w`
  `-no-password`
  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- `-W`
  `-password`
  Force `pg_amcheck` to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

  This option is never essential, since `pg_amcheck` will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, `pg_amcheck` will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

- `--maintenance-db=dbname`
  Specifies a database or connection string to be used to discover the list of databases to be checked. If neither `--all` nor any option including a database pattern is used, no such connection is required and this option does nothing. Otherwise, any connection string parameters other than the database name which are included in the value for this option will also be used when connecting to the databases being checked. If this option is omitted, the default is `postgres` or, if that fails, `template1`.

Other options are also available:

- `-e`
  `-echo`
  Echo to stdout all SQL sent to the server.
-j num
--jobs=num

Use num concurrent connections to the server, or one per object to be checked, whichever is less.
The default is to use a single connection.

-P
--progress

Show progress information. Progress information includes the number of relations for which checking has been completed, and the total size of those relations. It also includes the total number of relations that will eventually be checked, and the estimated size of those relations.

-v
--verbose

Print more messages. In particular, this will print a message for each relation being checked, and will increase the level of detail shown for server errors.

-V
--version

Print the pg_amcheck version and exit.

--install-missing
--install-missing=schema

Install any missing extensions that are required to check the database(s). If not yet installed, each extension’s objects will be installed into the given schema, or if not specified into schema pg_catalog.

At present, the only required extension is amcheck.

-?
--help

Show help about pg_amcheck command line arguments, and exit.

Notes

pg_amcheck is designed to work with PostgreSQL 14.0 and later.

See Also

amcheck
pg_basebackup

pg_basebackup — take a base backup of a Postgres Pro cluster

Synopsis

pg_basebackup [option...]

Description

pg_basebackup is used to take a base backup of a running Postgres Pro database cluster. The backup is taken without affecting other clients of the database, and can be used both for point-in-time recovery (see Section 24.3) and as the starting point for a log-shipping or streaming-replication standby server (see Section 25.2).

pg_basebackup makes an exact copy of the database cluster's files, while making sure the server is put into and out of backup mode automatically. Backups are always taken of the entire database cluster; it is not possible to back up individual databases or database objects. For selective backups, another tool such as pg_dump must be used.

The backup is made over a regular Postgres Pro connection that uses the replication protocol. The connection must be made with a user ID that has REPLICATION permissions (see Section 20.2) or is a superuser, and pg_hba.conf must permit the replication connection. The server must also be configured with max_wal_senders set high enough to provide at least one walsender for the backup plus one for WAL streaming (if used).

There can be multiple pg_basebackups running at the same time, but it is usually better from a performance point of view to take only one backup, and copy the result.

pg_basebackup can make a base backup from not only a primary server but also a standby. To take a backup from a standby, set up the standby so that it can accept replication connections (that is, set max_wal_senders and hot_standby, and configure its pg_hba.conf appropriately). You will also need to enable full_page_writes on the primary.

Note that there are some limitations in taking a backup from a standby:

• The backup history file is not created in the database cluster backed up.
• pg_basebackup cannot force the standby to switch to a new WAL file at the end of backup. When you are using -X none, if write activity on the primary is low, pg_basebackup may need to wait a long time for the last WAL file required for the backup to be switched and archived. In this case, it may be useful to run pg_switch_wal on the primary in order to trigger an immediate WAL file switch.
• If the standby is promoted to be primary during backup, the backup fails.
• All WAL records required for the backup must contain sufficient full-page writes, which requires you to enable full_page_writes on the primary and not to use a tool like pg_compresslog as archive_command to remove full-page writes from WAL files.

Whenever pg_basebackup is taking a base backup, the server's pg_stat_progress_basebackup view will report the progress of the backup. See Section 26.4.5 for details.

Options

The following command-line options control the location and format of the output:

-D directory
--pgdata=directory

Sets the target directory to write the output to. pg_basebackup will create this directory (and any missing parent directories) if it does not exist. If it already exists, it must be empty.
When the backup is in tar format, the target directory may be specified as - (dash), causing the tar file to be written to stdout.

This option is required.

-F format
--format=format

Selects the format for the output. format can be one of the following:

P
plain
Write the output as plain files, with the same layout as the source server's data directory and tablespaces. When the cluster has no additional tablespaces, the whole database will be placed in the target directory. If the cluster contains additional tablespaces, the main data directory will be placed in the target directory, but all other tablespaces will be placed in the same absolute path as they have on the source server: (See --tablespace-mapping to change that.)

This is the default format.

t
tar
Write the output as tar files in the target directory. The main data directory's contents will be written to a file named base.tar, and each other tablespace will be written to a separate tar file named after that tablespace's OID.

If the target directory is specified as - (dash), the tar contents will be written to standard output, suitable for piping to (for example) gzip. This is only allowed if the cluster has no additional tablespaces and WAL streaming is not used.

-R
--write-recovery-conf

Creates a standby.signal file and appends connection settings to the postgresql.auto.conf file in the target directory (or within the base archive file when using tar format). This eases setting up a standby server using the results of the backup.

The postgresql.auto.conf file will record the connection settings and, if specified, the replication slot that pg_basebackup is using, so that streaming replication will use the same settings later on.

-T olddir=newdir
--tablespace-mapping=olddir=newdir

Relocates the tablespace in directory olddir to newdir during the backup. To be effective, olddir must exactly match the path specification of the tablespace as it is defined on the source server. (But it is not an error if there is no tablespace in olddir on the source server.) Meanwhile newdir is a directory in the receiving host's filesystem. As with the main target directory, newdir need not exist already, but if it does exist it must be empty. Both olddir and newdir must be absolute paths.

If either path needs to contain an equal sign (=), precede that with a backslash. This option can be specified multiple times for multiple tablespaces.

If a tablespace is relocated in this way, the symbolic links inside the main data directory are updated to point to the new location. So the new data directory is ready to be used for a new server instance with all tablespaces in the updated locations.

Currently, this option only works with plain output format; it is ignored if tar format is selected.

--waldir=waldir

Sets the directory to write WAL (write-ahead log) files to. By default WAL files will be placed in the pg_wal subdirectory of the target directory, but this option can be used to place them elsewhere.
waldir must be an absolute path. As with the main target directory, waldir need not exist already, but if it does exist it must be empty. This option can only be specified when the backup is in plain format.

-X method
--wal-method=method

Includes the required WAL (write-ahead log) files in the backup. This will include all write-ahead logs generated during the backup. Unless the method none is specified, it is possible to start a postmaster in the target directory without the need to consult the log archive, thus making the output a completely standalone backup.

The following methods for collecting the write-ahead logs are supported:

n
none

Don't include write-ahead logs in the backup.

f
fetch

The write-ahead log files are collected at the end of the backup. Therefore, it is necessary for the source server's wal_keep_size parameter to be set high enough that the required log data is not removed before the end of the backup. If the required log data has been recycled before it's time to transfer it, the backup will fail and be unusable.

When tar format is used, the write-ahead log files will be included in the base.tar file.

s
stream

Stream write-ahead log data while the backup is being taken. This method will open a second connection to the server and start streaming the write-ahead log in parallel while running the backup. Therefore, it will require two replication connections not just one. As long as the client can keep up with the write-ahead log data, using this method requires no extra write-ahead logs to be saved on the source server.

When tar format is used, the write-ahead log files will be written to a separate file named pg_wal.tar (if the server is a version earlier than 10, the file will be named pg_xlog.tar).

This value is the default.

-z
--gzip

Enables gzip compression of tar file output, with the default compression level. Compression is only available when using the tar format, and the suffix .gz will automatically be added to all tar filenames.

-Z level
--compress=level

Enables gzip compression of tar file output, and specifies the compression level (0 through 9, 0 being no compression and 9 being best compression). Compression is only available when using the tar format, and the suffix .gz will automatically be added to all tar filenames.

The following command-line options control the generation of the backup and the invocation of the program:

-c fast|spread
--checkpoint=fast|spread

Sets checkpoint mode to fast (immediate) or spread (the default) (see Section 24.3.3).
--create-slot

Specifies that the replication slot named by the --slot option should be created before starting the backup. An error is raised if the slot already exists.

--label=label

Sets the label for the backup. If none is specified, a default value of "pg_basebackup base backup" will be used.

--no-clean

By default, when pg_basebackup aborts with an error, it removes any directories it might have created before discovering that it cannot finish the job (for example, the target directory and write-ahead log directory). This option inhibits tidying-up and is thus useful for debugging.

Note that tablespace directories are not cleaned up either way.

--no-sync

By default, pg_basebackup will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes pg_basebackup to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the base backup corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used when creating a production installation.

--progress

Enables progress reporting. Turning this on will deliver an approximate progress report during the backup. Since the database may change during the backup, this is only an approximation and may not end at exactly 100%. In particular, when WAL log is included in the backup, the total amount of data cannot be estimated in advance, and in this case the estimated target size will increase once it passes the total estimate without WAL.

--max-rate=rate

Sets the maximum transfer rate at which data is collected from the source server. This can be useful to limit the impact of pg_basebackup on the server. Values are in kilobytes per second. Use a suffix of M to indicate megabytes per second. A suffix of k is also accepted, and has no effect. Valid values are between 32 kilobytes per second and 1024 megabytes per second.

This option always affects transfer of the data directory. Transfer of WAL files is only affected if the collection method is fetch.

--slot=slotname

This option can only be used together with -X stream. It causes WAL streaming to use the specified replication slot. If the base backup is intended to be used as a streaming-replication standby using a replication slot, the standby should then use the same replication slot name as primary_slot_name. This ensures that the primary server does not remove any necessary WAL data in the time between the end of the base backup and the start of streaming replication on the new standby.

The specified replication slot has to exist unless the option -C is also used.

If this option is not specified and the server supports temporary replication slots (version 10 and later), then a temporary replication slot is automatically used for WAL streaming.
--v
--verbose

Enables verbose mode. Will output some extra steps during startup and shutdown, as well as show the exact file name that is currently being processed if progress reporting is also enabled.

--manifest-checksums=algorithm

Specifies the checksum algorithm that should be applied to each file included in the backup manifest. Currently, the available algorithms are NONE, CRC32C, SHA224, SHA256, SHA384, and SHA512. The default is CRC32C.

If NONE is selected, the backup manifest will not contain any checksums. Otherwise, it will contain a checksum of each file in the backup using the specified algorithm. In addition, the manifest will always contain a SHA256 checksum of its own contents. The SHA algorithms are significantly more CPU-intensive than CRC32C, so selecting one of them may increase the time required to complete the backup.

Using a SHA hash function provides a cryptographically secure digest of each file for users who wish to verify that the backup has not been tampered with, while the CRC32C algorithm provides a checksum that is much faster to calculate; it is good at catching errors due to accidental changes but is not resistant to malicious modifications. Note that, to be useful against an adversary who has access to the backup, the backup manifest would need to be stored securely elsewhere or otherwise verified not to have been modified since the backup was taken.

pg_verifybackup can be used to check the integrity of a backup against the backup manifest.

--manifest-force-encode

Forces all filenames in the backup manifest to be hex-encoded. If this option is not specified, only non-UTF8 filenames are hex-encoded. This option is mostly intended to test that tools which read a backup manifest file properly handle this case.

--no-estimate-size

Prevents the server from estimating the total amount of backup data that will be streamed, resulting in the backup_total column in the pg_stat_progress_basebackup view always being NULL.

Without this option, the backup will start by enumerating the size of the entire database, and then go back and send the actual contents. This may make the backup take slightly longer, and in particular it will take longer before the first data is sent. This option is useful to avoid such estimation time if it's too long.

This option is not allowed when using --progress.

--no-manifest

Disables generation of a backup manifest. If this option is not specified, the server will generate and send a backup manifest which can be verified using pg_verifybackup. The manifest is a list of every file present in the backup with the exception of any WAL files that may be included. It also stores the size, last modification time, and an optional checksum for each file.

--no-slot

Prevents the creation of a temporary replication slot for the backup.

By default, if log streaming is selected but no slot name is given with the -S option, then a temporary replication slot is created (if supported by the source server).

The main purpose of this option is to allow taking a base backup when the server has no free replication slots. Using a replication slot is almost always preferred, because it prevents needed WAL from being removed by the server during the backup.
---no-verify-checksums

Disables verification of checksums, if they are enabled on the server the base backup is taken from.

By default, checksums are verified and checksum failures will result in a non-zero exit status. However, the base backup will not be removed in such a case, as if the --no-clean option had been used. Checksum verification failures will also be reported in the pg_stat_database view.

The following command-line options control the connection to the source server:

- **-d** connstr
  --dbname=connstr

  Specifies parameters used to connect to the server, as a connection string; these will override any conflicting command line options.

  The option is called --dbname for consistency with other client applications, but because pg_basebackup doesn't connect to any particular database in the cluster, any database name in the connection string will be ignored.

- **-h** host
  --host=host

  Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for a Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the PGHOST environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

- **-p** port
  --port=port

  Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the PGPORT environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

- **-s** interval
  --status-interval=interval

  Specifies the number of seconds between status packets sent back to the source server. Smaller values allow more accurate monitoring of backup progress from the server. A value of zero disables periodic status updates completely, although an update will still be sent when requested by the server, to avoid timeout-based disconnects. The default value is 10 seconds.

- **-U** username
  --username=username

  Specifies the user name to connect as.

- **-w**
  --no-password

  Prevents issuing a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- **-W**
  --password

  Forces pg_basebackup to prompt for a password before connecting to the source server.

  This option is never essential, since pg_basebackup will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg_basebackup will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

Other options are also available:
pg_basebackup

-\v
--version
Prints the pg_basebackup version and exits.

-?  
--help
Shows help about pg_basebackup command line arguments, and exits.

Environment
This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, uses the environment variables supported by libpq
(see Section 32.15).

The environment variable PG_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible
values are always, auto and never.

Notes
At the beginning of the backup, a checkpoint needs to be performed on the source server. This can take
some time (especially if the option --checkpoint=fast is not used), during which pg_basebackup will
appear to be idle.

The backup will include all files in the data directory and tablespaces, including the configuration files
and any additional files placed in the directory by third parties, except certain temporary files managed
by Postgres Pro. But only regular files and directories are copied, except that symbolic links used for
tablespaces are preserved. Symbolic links pointing to certain directories known to Postgres Pro are
copied as empty directories. Other symbolic links and special device files are skipped. See Section 51.4
for the precise details.

In plain format, tablespaces will be backed up to the same path they have on the source server, unless
the option --tablespace-mapping is used. Without this option, running a plain format base backup on
the same host as the server will not work if tablespaces are in use, because the backup would have to
be written to the same directory locations as the original tablespaces.

When tar format is used, it is the user’s responsibility to unpack each tar file before starting a Postgres
Pro server that uses the data. If there are additional tablespaces, the tar files for them need to be
unpacked in the correct locations. In this case the symbolic links for those tablespaces will be created
by the server according to the contents of the tablespace_map file that is included in the base.tar file.

pg_basebackup works with servers of the same or an older major version, down to 9.1. However, WAL
streaming mode (\-X stream) only works with server version 9.3 and later, and tar format (\-format=tar)
only works with server version 9.5 and later.

pg_basebackup will preserve group permissions for data files if group permissions are enabled on the
source cluster.

Examples
To create a base backup of the server at mydbserver and store it in the local directory /usr/local/
pgsql/data:

\$ pg_basebackup \-h mydbserver \-D /usr/local/pgsql/data

To create a backup of the local server with one compressed tar file for each tablespace, and store it in
the directory backup, showing a progress report while running:

\$ pg_basebackup \-D backup \-Ft \-z \-P

To create a backup of a single-tablespace local database and compress this with bzip2:

\$ pg_basebackup \-D \-Ft \-X fetch | bzip2 > backup.tar.bz2
pg_basebackup

(This command will fail if there are multiple tablespaces in the database.)

To create a backup of a local database where the tablespace in /opt/ts is relocated to ./backup/ts:

$ pg_basebackup -D backup/data -T /opt/ts=$(pwd)/backup/ts

See Also

pg_dump, Section 26.4.5
**pgbench**

pgbench — run a benchmark test on Postgres Pro

**Synopsis**

```bash
pgbench -i [option...] [dbname]
pgbench [option...] [dbname]
```

**Description**

pgbench is a simple program for running benchmark tests on Postgres Pro. It runs the same sequence of SQL commands over and over, possibly in multiple concurrent database sessions, and then calculates the average transaction rate (transactions per second). By default, pgbench tests a scenario that is loosely based on TPC-B, involving five `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, and `INSERT` commands per transaction. However, it is easy to test other cases by writing your own transaction script files.

Typical output from pgbench looks like:

```
transaction type: <builtin: TPC-B (sort of)>
scaling factor: 10
query mode: simple
number of clients: 10
number of threads: 1
number of transactions per client: 1000
number of transactions actually processed: 10000/10000
latency average = 11.013 ms
latency stddev = 7.351 ms
initial connection time = 45.758 ms
tps = 896.967014 (without initial connection time)
```

The first six lines report some of the most important parameter settings. The next line reports the number of transactions completed and intended (the latter being just the product of number of clients and number of transactions per client); these will be equal unless the run failed before completion. (In `-T` mode, only the actual number of transactions is printed.) The last line reports the number of transactions per second.

The default TPC-B-like transaction test requires specific tables to be set up beforehand. pgbench should be invoked with the `-i` (initialize) option to create and populate these tables. (When you are testing a custom script, you don't need this step, but will instead need to do whatever setup your test needs.) Initialization looks like:

```
pgbench -i [ other-options ] dbname
```

where `dbname` is the name of the already-created database to test in. (You may also need `-h`, `-p`, and/or `-U` options to specify how to connect to the database server.)

---

**Caution**

pgbench -i creates four tables `pgbench_accounts`, `pgbench_branches`, `pgbench_history`, and `pgbench_tellers`, destroying any existing tables of these names. Be very careful to use another database if you have tables having these names!

---

At the default “scale factor” of 1, the tables initially contain this many rows:

```
table                   # of rows
---------------------------------
```

---

1731
You can (and, for most purposes, probably should) increase the number of rows by using the \(-s\) (scale factor) option. The \(-F\) (fillfactor) option might also be used at this point.

Once you have done the necessary setup, you can run your benchmark with a command that doesn't include \(-i\), that is

```
pgebenchn [ options ] dbname
```

In nearly all cases, you'll need some options to make a useful test. The most important options are \(-c\) (number of clients), \(-t\) (number of transactions), \(-T\) (time limit), and \(-f\) (specify a custom script file). See below for a full list.

**Options**

The following is divided into three subsections. Different options are used during database initialization and while running benchmarks, but some options are useful in both cases.

**Initialization Options**

pgbench accepts the following command-line initialization arguments:

```
dbname
```

Specifies the name of the database to test in. If this is not specified, the environment variable `PGDATABASE` is used. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

```
-i
--initialize
```

Required to invoke initialization mode.

```
-I init_steps
--init-steps=init_steps
```

Perform just a selected set of the normal initialization steps. `init_steps` specifies the initialization steps to be performed, using one character per step. Each step is invoked in the specified order. The default is `dtgvp`. The available steps are:

```
d (Drop)
   Drop any existing pgbench tables.

t (create Tables)
   Create the tables used by the standard pgbench scenario, namely `pgbench_accounts`, `pgbench_branches`, `pgbench_history`, and `pgbench_tellers`.

g or G (Generate data, client-side or server-side)
   Generate data and load it into the standard tables, replacing any data already present.
   With `g` (client-side data generation), data is generated in `pgbench` client and then sent to the server. This uses the client/server bandwidth extensively through a `COPY`. Using `g` causes logging to print one message every 100,000 rows while generating data for the `pgbench_accounts` table.
   With `G` (server-side data generation), only small queries are sent from the `pgbench` client and then data is actually generated in the server. No significant bandwidth is required for this variant, but the server will do more work. Using `G` causes logging not to print any progress message while generating data.
The default initialization behavior uses client-side data generation (equivalent to \texttt{g}).

\textbf{v} (Vacuum)

Invoke \texttt{VACUUM} on the standard tables.

\textbf{p} (create Primary keys)

Create primary key indexes on the standard tables.

\textbf{f} (create Foreign keys)

Create foreign key constraints between the standard tables. (Note that this step is not performed by default.)

\texttt{-F fillfactor}

\texttt{--fillfactor=fillfactor}

Create the \texttt{pgbench_accounts}, \texttt{pgbench_tellers} and \texttt{pgbench_branches} tables with the given fillfactor. Default is 100.

\texttt{-n}

\texttt{--no-vacuum}

Perform no vacuuming during initialization. (This option suppresses the \texttt{v} initialization step, even if it was specified in \texttt{-I}.)

\texttt{-q}

\texttt{--quiet}

Switch logging to quiet mode, producing only one progress message per 5 seconds. The default logging prints one message each 100,000 rows, which often outputs many lines per second (especially on good hardware).

This setting has no effect if \texttt{G} is specified in \texttt{-I}.

\texttt{-s scale_factor}

\texttt{--scale=scale_factor}

Multiply the number of rows generated by the scale factor. For example, \texttt{-s 100} will create 10,000,000 rows in the \texttt{pgbench_accounts} table. Default is 1. When the scale is 20,000 or larger, the columns used to hold account identifiers (\texttt{aid} columns) will switch to using larger integers (\texttt{bigint}), in order to be big enough to hold the range of account identifiers.

\texttt{--foreign-keys}

Create foreign key constraints between the standard tables. (This option adds the \texttt{f} step to the initialization step sequence, if it is not already present.)

\texttt{--index-tablespace=index_tablespace}

Create indexes in the specified tablespace, rather than the default tablespace.

\texttt{--partition-method=NAME}

Create a partitioned \texttt{pgbench_accounts} table with \texttt{NAME} method. Expected values are range or hash. This option requires that \texttt{--partitions} is set to non-zero. If unspecified, default is range.

\texttt{--partitions=NUM}

Create a partitioned \texttt{pgbench_accounts} table with \texttt{NUM} partitions of nearly equal size for the scaled number of accounts. Default is 0, meaning no partitioning.

\texttt{--tablespace=tablespace}

Create tables in the specified tablespace, rather than the default tablespace.
--unlogged-tables

Create all tables as unlogged tables, rather than permanent tables.

Benchmarking Options

`pgbench` accepts the following command-line benchmarking arguments:

- `-b scriptname[@weight]`  
  --builtin=scriptname[@weight]
  
  Add the specified built-in script to the list of scripts to be executed. Available built-in scripts are: `tpcb-like`, `simple-update` and `select-only`. Unambiguous prefixes of built-in names are accepted. With the special name `list`, show the list of built-in scripts and exit immediately.
  
  Optionally, write an integer weight after @ to adjust the probability of selecting this script versus other ones. The default weight is 1. See below for details.

- `-c clients`  
  --client=clients
  
  Number of clients simulated, that is, number of concurrent database sessions. Default is 1.

- `-C`  
  --connect
  
  Establish a new connection for each transaction, rather than doing it just once per client session. This is useful to measure the connection overhead.

- `-d`  
  --debug
  
  Print debugging output.

- `-D varname=value`  
  --define=varname=value
  
  Define a variable for use by a custom script (see below). Multiple `-D` options are allowed.

- `-f filename[@weight]`  
  --file=filename[@weight]
  
  Add a transaction script read from `filename` to the list of scripts to be executed. Optionally, write an integer weight after @ to adjust the probability of selecting this script versus other ones. The default weight is 1. (To use a script file name that includes a @ character, append a weight so that there is no ambiguity, for example `filen@me@1`.) See below for details.

- `-j threads`  
  --jobs=threads
  
  Number of worker threads within `pgbench`. Using more than one thread can be helpful on multi-CPU machines. Clients are distributed as evenly as possible among available threads. Default is 1.

- `-l`  
  --log
  
  Write information about each transaction to a log file. See below for details.

- `-L limit`  
  --latency-limit=limit
  
  Transactions that last more than `limit` milliseconds are counted and reported separately, as `late`.

  When throttling is used (`--rate=...`), transactions that lag behind schedule by more than `limit` ms, and thus have no hope of meeting the latency limit, are not sent to the server at all. They are counted and reported separately as `skipped`.


Protocol to use for submitting queries to the server:

- **simple**: use simple query protocol.
- **extended**: use extended query protocol.
- **prepared**: use extended query protocol with prepared statements.

In the prepared mode, pgbench reuses the parse analysis result starting from the second query iteration, so pgbench runs faster than in other modes.

The default is simple query protocol. (See Chapter 51 for more information.)

Perform no vacuuming before running the test. This option is necessary if you are running a custom test scenario that does not include the standard tables `pgbench_accounts`, `pgbench_branches`, `pgbench_history`, and `pgbench_tellers`.


Show progress report every `sec` seconds. The report includes the time since the beginning of the run, the TPS since the last report, and the transaction latency average and standard deviation since the last report. Under throttling (`-R`), the latency is computed with respect to the transaction scheduled start time, not the actual transaction beginning time, thus it also includes the average schedule lag time.

Report the average per-statement latency (execution time from the perspective of the client) of each command after the benchmark finishes. See below for details.

Execute transactions targeting the specified rate instead of running as fast as possible (the default). The rate is given in transactions per second. If the targeted rate is above the maximum possible rate, the rate limit won't impact the results.

The rate is targeted by starting transactions along a Poisson-distributed schedule time line. The expected start time schedule moves forward based on when the client first started, not when the previous transaction ended. That approach means that when transactions go past their original scheduled end time, it is possible for later ones to catch up again.

When throttling is active, the transaction latency reported at the end of the run is calculated from the scheduled start times, so it includes the time each transaction had to wait for the previous transaction to finish. The wait time is called the schedule lag time, and its average and maximum are also reported separately. The transaction latency with respect to the actual transaction start time, i.e., the time spent executing the transaction in the database, can be computed by subtracting the schedule lag time from the reported latency.

If `--latency-limit` is used together with `--rate`, a transaction can lag behind so much that it is already over the latency limit when the previous transaction ends, because the latency is calculated...
from the scheduled start time. Such transactions are not sent to the server, but are skipped altogether and counted separately.

A high schedule lag time is an indication that the system cannot process transactions at the specified rate, with the chosen number of clients and threads. When the average transaction execution time is longer than the scheduled interval between each transaction, each successive transaction will fall further behind, and the schedule lag time will keep increasing the longer the test run is. When that happens, you will have to reduce the specified transaction rate.

-s scale_factor
--scale=scale_factor

Report the specified scale factor in pgbench's output. With the built-in tests, this is not necessary; the correct scale factor will be detected by counting the number of rows in the pgbench_branches table. However, when testing only custom benchmarks (-f option), the scale factor will be reported as 1 unless this option is used.

-S
--select-only

Run built-in select-only script. Shorthand for -b select-only.

-t transactions
--transactions=transactions

Number of transactions each client runs. Default is 10.

-T seconds
--time=seconds

Run the test for this many seconds, rather than a fixed number of transactions per client. -t and -T are mutually exclusive.

-v
--vacuum-all

Vacuum all four standard tables before running the test. With neither -n nor -v, pgbench will vacuum the pgbench_tellers and pgbench_branches tables, and will truncate pgbench_history.

--aggregate-interval=seconds

Length of aggregation interval (in seconds). May be used only with -l option. With this option, the log contains per-interval summary data, as described below.

--log-prefix=prefix

Set the filename prefix for the log files created by --log. The default is pgbench_log.

--progress-timestamp

When showing progress (option -P), use a timestamp (Unix epoch) instead of the number of seconds since the beginning of the run. The unit is in seconds, with millisecond precision after the dot. This helps compare logs generated by various tools.

--random-seed=seed

Set random generator seed. Seeds the system random number generator, which then produces a sequence of initial generator states, one for each thread. Values for seed may be: time (the default, the seed is based on the current time), rand (use a strong random source, failing if none is available), or an unsigned decimal integer value. The random generator is invoked explicitly from a pgbench script (random... functions) or implicitly (for instance option --rate uses it to schedule transactions). When explicitly set, the value used for seeding is shown on the terminal. Any value allowed for seed may also be provided through the environment variable PGBENCH_RANDOM_SEED. To ensure that the provided seed impacts all possible uses, put this option first or use the environment variable.
Setting the seed explicitly allows to reproduce a pgbench run exactly, as far as random numbers are concerned. As the random state is managed per thread, this means the exact same pgbench run for an identical invocation if there is one client per thread and there are no external or data dependencies. From a statistical viewpoint reproducing runs exactly is a bad idea because it can hide the performance variability or improve performance unduly, e.g., by hitting the same pages as a previous run. However, it may also be of great help for debugging, for instance re-running a tricky case which leads to an error. Use wisely.

```bash
--sampling-rate=rate
```

Sampling rate, used when writing data into the log, to reduce the amount of log generated. If this option is given, only the specified fraction of transactions are logged. 1.0 means all transactions will be logged, 0.05 means only 5% of the transactions will be logged.

Remember to take the sampling rate into account when processing the log file. For example, when computing TPS values, you need to multiply the numbers accordingly (e.g., with 0.01 sample rate, you'll only get 1/100 of the actual TPS).

```bash
--show-script=scriptname
```

Show the actual code of built-in script `scriptname` on stderr, and exit immediately.

### Common Options

pgbench also accepts the following common command-line arguments for connection parameters:

```bash
-h hostname
--host=hostname
```

The database server's host name

```bash
-p port
--port=port
```

The database server's port number

```bash
-U login
--username=login
```

The user name to connect as

```bash
-V
--version
```

Print the pgbench version and exit.

```bash
-?
--help
```

Show help about pgbench command line arguments, and exit.

### Exit Status

A successful run will exit with status 0. Exit status 1 indicates static problems such as invalid command-line options. Errors during the run such as database errors or problems in the script will result in exit status 2. In the latter case, pgbench will print partial results.

### Environment

- `PGDATABASE`
- `PGHOST`
- `PGPORT`
- `PGUSER`

Default connection parameters.
This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

Notes

What Is the “Transaction” Actually Performed in pgbench?

pgbench executes test scripts chosen randomly from a specified list. The scripts may include built-in scripts specified with `-b` and user-provided scripts specified with `-f`. Each script may be given a relative weight specified after an `@` so as to change its selection probability. The default weight is 1. Scripts with a weight of 0 are ignored.

The default built-in transaction script (also invoked with `-b tpcb-like`) issues seven commands per transaction over randomly chosen `aid`, `tid`, `bid` and `delta`. The scenario is inspired by the TPC-B benchmark, but is not actually TPC-B, hence the name.

1. BEGIN;
2. UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance + :delta WHERE aid = :aid;
3. SELECT abalance FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = :aid;
4. UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance + :delta WHERE tid = :tid;
5. UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance + :delta WHERE bid = :bid;
6. INSERT INTO pgbench_history (tid, bid, aid, delta, mtime) VALUES (:tid, :bid, :aid, :delta, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP);
7. END;

If you select the `simple-update` built-in (also `-n`), steps 4 and 5 aren't included in the transaction. This will avoid update contention on these tables, but it makes the test case even less like TPC-B.

If you select the `select-only` built-in (also `-S`), only the `SELECT` is issued.

Custom Scripts

pgbench has support for running custom benchmark scenarios by replacing the default transaction script (described above) with a transaction script read from a file (`-f` option). In this case a “transaction” counts as one execution of a script file.

A script file contains one or more SQL commands terminated by semicolons. Empty lines and lines beginning with `--` are ignored. Script files can also contain “meta commands”, which are interpreted by pgbench itself, as described below.

Note

Before Postgres Pro 9.6, SQL commands in script files were terminated by newlines, and so they could not be continued across lines. Now a semicolon is required to separate consecutive SQL commands (though an SQL command does not need one if it is followed by a meta command). If you need to create a script file that works with both old and new versions of pgbench, be sure to write each SQL command on a single line ending with a semicolon.

There is a simple variable-substitution facility for script files. Variable names must consist of letters (including non-Latin letters), digits, and underscores, with the first character not being a digit. Variables can be set by the command-line `-D` option, explained above, or by the meta commands explained below. In addition to any variables preset by `-D` command-line options, there are a few variables that are preset
automatically, listed in Table 283. A value specified for these variables using \(-D\) takes precedence over
the automatic presets. Once set, a variable's value can be inserted into an SQL command by writing
\(\text{:variable name}\). When running more than one client session, each session has its own set of variables.
pgbench supports up to 255 variable uses in one statement.

### Table 283. pgbench Automatic Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>client_id</td>
<td>unique number identifying the client session (starts from zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default_seed</td>
<td>seed used in hash and pseudorandom permutation functions by default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>random_seed</td>
<td>random generator seed (unless overwritten with (-D))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scale</td>
<td>current scale factor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Script file meta commands begin with a backslash (\) and normally extend to the end of the line, although
they can be continued to additional lines by writing backslash-return. Arguments to a meta command
are separated by white space. These meta commands are supported:

\(\gset \) [prefix]  \(\aset \) [prefix]

These commands may be used to end SQL queries, taking the place of the terminating semicolon (;).

When the \(\gset\) command is used, the preceding SQL query is expected to return one row, the
columns of which are stored into variables named after column names, and prefixed with \(\text{prefix}\)
if provided.

When the \(\aset\) command is used, all combined SQL queries (separated by \(\);\) have their columns
stored into variables named after column names, and prefixed with \(\text{prefix}\) if provided. If a query
returns no row, no assignment is made and the variable can be tested for existence to detect this. If
a query returns more than one row, the last value is kept.

\(\gset\) and \(\aset\) cannot be used in pipeline mode, since the query results are not yet available by
the time the commands would need them.

The following example puts the final account balance from the first query into variable \(\text{abalance}\), and
fills variables \(p\_two\) and \(p\_three\) with integers from the third query. The result of the second query
is discarded. The result of the two last combined queries are stored in variables \(\text{four}\) and \(\text{five}\).

```
UPDATE pgbench_accounts
   SET abalance = abalance + :delta
 WHERE aid = :aid
RETURNING abalance \gset
-- compound of two queries
SELECT 1 \;
SELECT 2 AS two, 3 AS three \gset p_
SELECT 4 AS four \; SELECT 5 AS five \aset
```

\(\if\) expression
\(\elif\) expression
\(\else\)
\(\endif\)

This group of commands implements nestable conditional blocks, similarly to \(\text{psql}'s \text{\if}\) expression.
Conditional expressions are identical to those with \(\text{\set}\), with non-zero values interpreted as true.

\(\set\) varname expression

Sets variable \(\text{varname}\) to a value calculated from \(\text{expression}\). The expression may contain the \text{NULL}
constant, Boolean constants \text{TRUE} and \text{FALSE}, integer constants such as \text{5432}, double constants such
as 3.14159, references to variables :variable, operators with their usual SQL precedence and associativity, function calls, SQL CASE generic conditional expressions and parentheses.

Functions and most operators return NULL on NULL input.

For conditional purposes, non-zero numerical values are TRUE, zero numerical values and NULL are FALSE.

Too large or small integer and double constants, as well as integer arithmetic operators (+, -, *, and /) raise errors on overflows.

When no final ELSE clause is provided to a CASE, the default value is NULL.

Examples:

\set ntellers 10 \* :scale
\set aid (1021 \* random(1, 100000 \* :scale)) \% \( (100000 \* :scale) + 1 \)
\set divx CASE WHEN :x <> 0 THEN :y/:x ELSE NULL END

\sleep number [ us | ms | s ]

Causes script execution to sleep for the specified duration in microseconds (us), milliseconds (ms) or seconds (s). If the unit is omitted then seconds are the default. number can be either an integer constant or a :variable reference to a variable having an integer value.

Example:

\sleep 10 ms

\setshell varname command [ argument ... ]

Sets variable varname to the result of the shell command command with the given argument(s). The command must return an integer value through its standard output.

command and each argument can be either a text constant or a :variable reference to a variable. If you want to use an argument starting with a colon, write an additional colon at the beginning of argument.

Example:

\setshell variable_to_be_assigned command
  literal_argument :variable ::literal_starting_with_colon

\shell command [ argument ... ]

Same as \setshell, but the result of the command is discarded.

Example:

\shell command literal_argument :variable ::literal_starting_with_colon

\startpipeline
\endpipeline

These commands delimit the start and end of a pipeline of SQL statements. In pipeline mode, statements are sent to the server without waiting for the results of previous statements. See Section 32.5 for more details. Pipeline mode requires the use of extended query protocol.

**Built-in Operators**

The arithmetic, bitwise, comparison and logical operators listed in Table 284 are built into pgbench and may be used in expressions appearing in \set. The operators are listed in increasing precedence
order. Except as noted, operators taking two numeric inputs will produce a double value if either input is double, otherwise they produce an integer result.

Table 284. pgbench Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boolean OR boolean → boolean</td>
<td>Logical OR</td>
<td>5 or 0 → TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean AND boolean → boolean</td>
<td>Logical AND</td>
<td>3 and 0 → FALSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT boolean → boolean</td>
<td>Logical NOT</td>
<td>not false → TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean IS [NOT] (NULL</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>FALSE) → boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value ISNULL</td>
<td>NOTNULL → boolean</td>
<td>Nullness tests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number = number → boolean</td>
<td>Equal</td>
<td>5 = 4 → FALSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number &lt;&gt; number → boolean</td>
<td>Not equal</td>
<td>5 &lt;&gt; 4 → TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number != number → boolean</td>
<td>Not equal</td>
<td>5 != 5 → FALSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number &lt; number → boolean</td>
<td>Less than</td>
<td>5 &lt; 4 → FALSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number &lt;= number → boolean</td>
<td>Less than or equal to</td>
<td>5 &lt;= 4 → FALSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number &gt; number → boolean</td>
<td>Greater than</td>
<td>5 &gt; 4 → TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number &gt;= number → boolean</td>
<td>Greater than or equal to</td>
<td>5 &gt;= 4 → TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>integer → integer</td>
<td>Bitwise OR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Operator
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise XOR</td>
<td>1 # 3 → 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise AND</td>
<td>1 &amp; 3 → 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise NOT</td>
<td>~ 1 → -2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise shift left</td>
<td>1 &lt;&lt; 2 → 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitwise shift right</td>
<td>8 &gt;&gt; 2 → 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Built-In Functions
The functions listed in Table 285 are built into pgbench and may be used in expressions appearing in `\set`.

#### Table 285. pgbench Functions
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abs()</td>
<td>same type as input</td>
<td>Absolute value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs(-17)</td>
<td>→ 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debug(number)</td>
<td>same type as input</td>
<td>Prints the argument to stderr, and returns the argument.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>debug(5432.1) → 5432.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double(number)</td>
<td>→ double</td>
<td>Casts to double.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double(5432) → 5432.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp(number)</td>
<td>→ double</td>
<td>Exponential (e raised to the given power)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>exp(1.0) → 2.718281828459045</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greatest(number[...])</td>
<td>→ double if any argument is double, else integer</td>
<td>Selects the largest value among the arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>greatest(5, 4, 3, 2) → 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hash(value[, seed])</td>
<td>→ integer</td>
<td>This is an alias for hash_murmur2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hash(10, 5432) → -5817877081768721676</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hash_fnv1a(value[, seed])</td>
<td>→ integer</td>
<td>Computes FNV-1a hash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hash_fnv1a(10, 5432) → -779382935365542153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hash_murmur2(value[, seed])</td>
<td>→ integer</td>
<td>Computes MurmurHash2 hash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hash_murmur2(10, 5432) → -5817877081768721676</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int(number)</td>
<td>→ integer</td>
<td>Casts to integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int(5.4 + 3.8) → 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>least(number[...])</td>
<td>→ double if any argument is double, else integer</td>
<td>Selects the smallest value among the arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>least(5, 4, 3, 2.1) → 2.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ln(number)</td>
<td>→ double</td>
<td>Natural logarithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ln(2.718281828459045) → 1.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod(integer, integer)</td>
<td>→ integer</td>
<td>Modulo (remainder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mod(54, 32) → 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permute(i, size[, seed])</td>
<td>→ integer</td>
<td>Permuted value of (i) in the range ([0, \text{size})). This is the new position of (i) (modulo \text{size}) in a pseudorandom permutation of the integers (0\ldots\text{size}-1), parameterized by \text{seed}, see below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>permute(0, 4) → an integer between 0 and 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pi()</td>
<td>→ double</td>
<td>Approximate value of (\pi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pi() → 3.14159265358979323846</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pow(x, y)</td>
<td>→ double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1743
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>power ((x, y) \rightarrow \text{double})</td>
<td>(x) raised to the power of (y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pow(2.0, 10) \rightarrow 1024.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| random \((lb, ub) \rightarrow \text{integer}\) | Computes a uniformly-distributed random integer in \([lb, ub]\).               |
| random_exponential \((lb, ub, parameter) \rightarrow \text{integer}\) | Computes an exponentially-distributed random integer in \([lb, ub]\), see below. |
| random_gaussian \((lb, ub, parameter) \rightarrow \text{integer}\) | Computes a Gaussian-distributed random integer in \([lb, ub]\), see below.       |
| random_zipfian \((lb, ub, parameter) \rightarrow \text{integer}\) | Computes a Zipfian-distributed random integer in \([lb, ub]\), see below.        |
| sqrt \((\text{number}) \rightarrow \text{double}\) | Square root                                                                  |
| sqrt(2.0) \rightarrow 1.414213562 |                                                                              |

The `random` function generates values using a uniform distribution, that is all the values are drawn within the specified range with equal probability. The `random_exponential`, `random_gaussian` and `random_zipfian` functions require an additional double parameter which determines the precise shape of the distribution.

- For an exponential distribution, `parameter` controls the distribution by truncating a quickly-decreasing exponential distribution at `parameter`, and then projecting onto integers between the bounds. To be precise, with
  \[
  f(x) = \exp(-\text{parameter} \times (x - \text{min}) / (\text{max} - \text{min} + 1)) / (1 - \exp(-\text{parameter}))
  \]
  Then value \(i\) between \(\text{min}\) and \(\text{max}\) inclusive is drawn with probability: \(f(i) - f(i + 1)\).

  Intuitively, the larger the `parameter`, the more frequently values close to `min` are accessed, and the less frequently values close to `max` are accessed. The closer to 0 `parameter` is, the flatter (more uniform) the access distribution. A crude approximation of the distribution is that the most frequent 1% values in the range, close to `min`, are drawn `parameter`% of the time. The `parameter` value must be strictly positive.

- For a Gaussian distribution, the interval is mapped onto a standard normal distribution (the classical bell-shaped Gaussian curve) truncated at \(-\text{parameter}\) on the left and \(+\text{parameter}\) on the right. Values in the middle of the interval are more likely to be drawn. To be precise, if \(\text{PHI}(x)\) is the cumulative distribution function of the standard normal distribution, with mean \(\mu\) defined as \((\text{max} + \text{min}) / 2.0\), with
  \[
  f(x) = \text{PHI}(2.0 \times \text{parameter} \times (x - \mu) / (\text{max} - \text{min} + 1)) / (2.0 \times \text{PHI}(\text{parameter}) - 1)
  \]
  then value \(i\) between \(\text{min}\) and \(\text{max}\) inclusive is drawn with probability: \(f(i + 0.5) - f(i - 0.5)\).

  Intuitively, the larger the `parameter`, the more frequently values close to the middle of the interval are drawn, and the less frequently values close to the `min` and `max` bounds. About 67% of values are drawn from the middle \(1.0 / \text{parameter}\), that is a relative \(0.5 / \text{parameter}\) around the mean, and 95% in the middle \(2.0 / \text{parameter}\), that is a relative \(1.0 / \text{parameter}\) around the mean;
for instance, if parameter is 4.0, 67% of values are drawn from the middle quarter (1.0 / 4.0) of the interval (i.e., from 3.0 / 8.0 to 5.0 / 8.0) and 95% from the middle half (2.0 / 4.0) of the interval (second and third quartiles). The minimum allowed parameter value is 2.0.

• random_zipfian generates a bounded Zipfian distribution. parameter defines how skewed the distribution is. The larger the parameter, the more frequently values closer to the beginning of the interval are drawn. The distribution is such that, assuming the range starts from 1, the ratio of the probability of drawing k versus drawing k+1 is \((k+1)/k\) ** parameter. For example, random_zipfian(1, ..., 2.5) produces the value 1 about \((2/1)**2.5 = 5.66\) times more frequently than 2, which itself is produced \((3/2)**2.5 = 2.76\) times more frequently than 3, and so on.

pgbench's implementation is based on "Non-Uniform Random Variate Generation", Luc Devroye, p. 550-551, Springer 1986. Due to limitations of that algorithm, the parameter value is restricted to the range [1.001, 1000].

```plaintext
Note
When designing a benchmark which selects rows non-uniformly, be aware that the rows chosen may be correlated with other data such as IDs from a sequence or the physical row ordering, which may skew performance measurements.

To avoid this, you may wish to use the permute function, or some other additional step with similar effect, to shuffle the selected rows and remove such correlations.
```

Hash functions hash, hash_murmur2 and hash_fnv1a accept an input value and an optional seed parameter. In case the seed isn’t provided the value of :default_seed is used, which is initialized randomly unless set by the command-line -D option.

permute accepts an input value, a size, and an optional seed parameter. It generates a pseudorandom permutation of integers in the range [0, size), and returns the index of the input value in the permuted values. The permutation chosen is parameterized by the seed, which defaults to :default_seed, if not specified. Unlike the hash functions, permute ensures that there are no collisions or holes in the output values. Input values outside the interval are interpreted modulo the size. The function raises an error if the size is not positive. permute can be used to scatter the distribution of non-uniform random functions such as random_zipfian or random_exponential so that values drawn more often are not trivially correlated. For instance, the following pgbench script simulates a possible real world workload typical for social media and blogging platforms where a few accounts generate excessive load:

```plaintext
\set size 1000000
\set r random_zipfian(1, :size, 1.07)
\set k 1 + permute(:r, :size)
```

In some cases several distinct distributions are needed which don't correlate with each other and this is when the optional seed parameter comes in handy:

```plaintext
\set k1 1 + permute(:r, :size, :default_seed + 123)
\set k2 1 + permute(:r, :size, :default_seed + 321)
```

A similar behavior can also be approximated with hash:

```plaintext
\set size 1000000
\set r random_zipfian(1, 100 * :size, 1.07)
\set k 1 + abs(hash(:r)) % :size
```

However, since hash generates collisions, some values will not be reachable and others will be more frequent than expected from the original distribution.

As an example, the full definition of the built-in TPC-B-like transaction is:

```plaintext
\set aid random(1, 100000 * :scale)
\set bid random(1, 1 * :scale)
```
\set tid random(1, 10 * :scale)
\set delta random(-5000, 5000)
BEGIN;
UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance + :delta WHERE aid = :aid;
SELECT abalance FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = :aid;
UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance + :delta WHERE tid = :tid;
UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance + :delta WHERE bid = :bid;
INSERT INTO pgbench_history (tid, bid, aid, delta, mtime) VALUES
  (:tid, :bid, :aid, :delta, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP);
END;

This script allows each iteration of the transaction to reference different, randomly-chosen rows. (This example also shows why it's important for each client session to have its own variables — otherwise they'd not be independently touching different rows.)

**Per-Transaction Logging**

With the `-l` option (but without the `--aggregate-interval` option), pgbench writes information about each transaction to a log file. The log file will be named `prefix.nnn`, where `prefix` defaults to `pgbench_log`, and `nnn` is the PID of the pgbench process. The prefix can be changed by using the `--log-prefix` option. If the `-j` option is 2 or higher, so that there are multiple worker threads, each will have its own log file. The first worker will use the same name for its log file as in the standard single worker case. The additional log files for the other workers will be named `prefix.nnn.mmm`, where `mmm` is a sequential number for each worker starting with 1.

The format of the log is:

```
client_id transaction_no time script_no time_epoch time_us [ schedule_lag ]
```

where `client_id` indicates which client session ran the transaction, `transaction_no` counts how many transactions have been run by that session, `time` is the total elapsed transaction time in microseconds, `script_no` identifies which script file was used (useful when multiple scripts were specified with `-f` or `-b`), and `time_epoch/time_us` are a Unix-epoch time stamp and an offset in microseconds (suitable for creating an ISO 8601 time stamp with fractional seconds) showing when the transaction completed. The `schedule_lag` field is the difference between the transaction's scheduled start time, and the time it actually started, in microseconds. It is only present when the `--rate` option is used. When both `--rate` and `--latency-limit` are used, the `time` for a skipped transaction will be reported as `skipped`.

Here is a snippet of a log file generated in a single-client run:

```
0 199 2241 0 1175850568 995598
0 200 2465 0 1175850568 998079
0 201 2513 0 1175850569 608
0 202 2038 0 1175850569 2663
```

Another example with `--rate=100` and `--latency-limit=5` (note the additional `schedule_lag` column):

```
0 81 4621 0 1412881037 912698 3005
0 82 6173 0 1412881037 914578 4304
0 83 skipped 0 1412881037 914578 5217
0 83 skipped 0 1412881037 914578 5099
0 83 4722 0 1412881037 916203 3108
0 84 4142 0 1412881037 918023 2333
0 85 2465 0 1412881037 919759 740
```

In this example, transaction 82 was late, because its latency (6.173 ms) was over the 5 ms limit. The next two transactions were skipped, because they were already late before they were even started.

When running a long test on hardware that can handle a lot of transactions, the log files can become very large. The `--sampling-rate` option can be used to log only a random sample of transactions.

**Aggregated Logging**

With the `--aggregate-interval` option, a different format is used for the log files:
interval_start  num_transactions  sum_latency  sum_latency_2  min_latency  max_latency
                  [  sum_lag  sum_lag_2  min_lag  max_lag  [  skipped  ]  ]

where interval_start is the start of the interval (as a Unix epoch time stamp), num_transactions
is the number of transactions within the interval, sum_latency is the sum of the transaction latencies
within the interval, sum_latency_2 is the sum of squares of the transaction latencies within the interval,
min_latency is the minimum latency within the interval, and max_latency is the maximum latency within
the interval. The next fields, sum_lag, sum_lag_2, min_lag, and max_lag, are only present if the --rate
option is used. They provide statistics about the time each transaction had to wait for the previous one to
finish, i.e., the difference between each transaction's scheduled start time and the time it actually started.
The very last field, skipped, is only present if the --latency-limit option is used, too. It counts the
number of transactions skipped because they would have started too late. Each transaction is counted
in the interval when it was committed.

Here is some example output:
1345828501 5601 1542744 483552416 61 2573
1345828503 7884 1979812 565806736 60 1479
1345828505 7208 1979422 567277552 59 1391
1345828507 7685 1980268 569784714 60 1398
1345828509 7073 1979779 573489941 236 1411

Notice that while the plain (unaggregated) log file shows which script was used for each transaction,
the aggregated log does not. Therefore if you need per-script data, you need to aggregate the data on
your own.

Per-Statement Latencies

With the -r option, pgbench collects the elapsed transaction time of each statement executed by every
client. It then reports an average of those values, referred to as the latency for each statement, after
the benchmark has finished.

For the default script, the output will look similar to this:

starting vacuum...end.
transaction type: <builtin: TPC-B (sort of)>
scaling factor: 1
query mode: simple
number of clients: 10
number of threads: 1
number of transactions per client: 1000
number of transactions actually processed: 10000/10000
latency average = 10.870 ms
latency stddev = 7.341 ms
initial connection time = 30.954 ms
tps = 907.949122 (without initial connection time)
statement latencies in milliseconds:
  0.001  \set aid random(1, 100000 * :scale)
  0.001  \set bid random(1, 1 * :scale)
  0.001  \set tid random(1, 10 * :scale)
  0.000  \set delta random(-5000, 5000)
  0.046  BEGIN;
  0.151 UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance + :delta WHERE aid = :aid;
  0.107 SELECT abalance FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = :aid;
  4.241 UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance + :delta WHERE tid = :tid;
  5.245 UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance + :delta WHERE bid = :bid;
  0.102 INSERT INTO pgbench_history (tid, bid, aid, delta, mtime) VALUES
                  (:tid, :bid, :aid, :delta, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP);
  0.974  END;

If multiple script files are specified, the averages are reported separately for each script file.
Note that collecting the additional timing information needed for per-statement latency computation
adds some overhead. This will slow average execution speed and lower the computed TPS. The amount
of slowdown varies significantly depending on platform and hardware. Comparing average TPS values
with and without latency reporting enabled is a good way to measure if the timing overhead is significant.

Good Practices

It is very easy to use pgbench to produce completely meaningless numbers. Here are some guidelines
to help you get useful results.

In the first place, never believe any test that runs for only a few seconds. Use the \(-t\) or \(-T\) option to
make the run last at least a few minutes, so as to average out noise. In some cases you could need hours
to get numbers that are reproducible. It’s a good idea to try the test run a few times, to find out if your
numbers are reproducible or not.

For the default TPC-B-like test scenario, the initialization scale factor \((-s)\) should be at least as large as
the largest number of clients you intend to test \((-c)\); else you’ll mostly be measuring update contention.
There are only \(-s\) rows in the \texttt{pgbench\_branches} table, and every transaction wants to update one of
them, so \(-c\) values in excess of \(-s\) will undoubtedly result in lots of transactions blocked waiting for
other transactions.

The default test scenario is also quite sensitive to how long it’s been since the tables were initialized:
accumulation of dead rows and dead space in the tables changes the results. To understand the results
you must keep track of the total number of updates and when vacuuming happens. If autovacuum is
enabled it can result in unpredictable changes in measured performance.

A limitation of pgbench is that it can itself become the bottleneck when trying to test a large number
of client sessions. This can be alleviated by running pgbench on a different machine from the database
server, although low network latency will be essential. It might even be useful to run several pgbench
instances concurrently, on several client machines, against the same database server.

Security

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, do not
run pgbench in that database. pgbench uses unqualified names and does not manipulate the search path.
pg_config

pg_config — retrieve information about the installed version of Postgres Pro

Synopsis

pg_config [option...]

Description

The pg_config utility prints configuration parameters of the currently installed version of Postgres Pro. It is intended, for example, to be used by software packages that want to interface to Postgres Pro to facilitate finding the required header files and libraries.

Options

To use pg_config, supply one or more of the following options:

--bindir
   Print the location of user executables. Use this, for example, to find the psql program. This is normally also the location where the pg_config program resides.

--docdir
   Print the location of documentation files.

--htmldir
   Print the location of HTML documentation files.

--includedir
   Print the location of C header files of the client interfaces.

--pkgincludedir
   Print the location of other C header files.

--includedir-server
   Print the location of C header files for server programming.

--libdir
   Print the location of object code libraries.

--pkglibdir
   Print the location of dynamically loadable modules, or where the server would search for them. (Other architecture-dependent data files might also be installed in this directory.)

--localedir
   Print the location of locale support files. (This will be an empty string if locale support was not configured when Postgres Pro was built.)

--mandir
   Print the location of manual pages.

--sharedir
   Print the location of architecture-independent support files.
pg_config

--sysconfdir
   Print the location of system-wide configuration files.

--pgxs
   Print the location of extension makefiles.

--configure
   Print the options that were given to the configure script when Postgres Pro was configured for building. This can be used to reproduce the identical configuration, or to find out with what options a binary package was built. (Note however that binary packages often contain vendor-specific custom patches.) See also the examples below.

--cc
   Print the value of the CC variable that was used for building Postgres Pro. This shows the C compiler used.

--cppflags
   Print the value of the CPPFLAGS variable that was used for building Postgres Pro. This shows C compiler switches needed at preprocessing time (typically, -I switches).

--cflags
   Print the value of the CFLAGS variable that was used for building Postgres Pro. This shows C compiler switches.

--cflags_sl
   Print the value of the CFLAGS_SL variable that was used for building Postgres Pro. This shows extra C compiler switches used for building shared libraries.

--ldflags
   Print the value of the LDFLAGS variable that was used for building Postgres Pro. This shows linker switches.

--ldflags_ex
   Print the value of the LDFLAGS_EX variable that was used for building Postgres Pro. This shows linker switches used for building executables only.

--ldflags_sl
   Print the value of the LDFLAGS_SL variable that was used for building Postgres Pro. This shows linker switches used for building shared libraries only.

--libs
   Print the value of the LIBS variable that was used for building Postgres Pro. This normally contains -l switches for external libraries linked into Postgres Pro.

--version
   Print the PostgreSQL version on which Postgres Pro is based.

--pgpro-version
   Print the version of Postgres Pro.

--pgpro-edition
   Print the edition of Postgres Pro.
-?
--help
  Show help about pg_config command line arguments, and exit.

If more than one option is given, the information is printed in that order, one item per line. If no options are given, all available information is printed, with labels.

Notes

The options --docdir, --pkgincludedir, --localedir, --mandir, --sharedir, --sysconfdir, --cc, --cppflags, --cflags, --cflags_sl, --ldflags, --ldflags_sl, and --libs were added in PostgreSQL 8.1. The option --htmldir was added in PostgreSQL 8.4. The option --ldflags_ex was added in PostgreSQL 9.0.

Example

To reproduce the build configuration of the current Postgres Pro installation, run the following command:

```bash
eval ./configure `pg_config --configure`
```

The output of `pg_config --configure` contains shell quotation marks so arguments with spaces are represented correctly. Therefore, using `eval` is required for proper results.
pg_dump

pg_dump — extract a Postgres Pro database into a script file or other archive file

Synopsis

```
pg_dump [connection-option...] [option...] [dbname]
```

Description

pg_dump is a utility for backing up a Postgres Pro database. It makes consistent backups even if
the database is being used concurrently. pg_dump does not block other users accessing the database
(readers or writers).

pg_dump only dumps a single database. To back up an entire cluster, or to back up global objects that
are common to all databases in a cluster (such as roles and tablespaces), use `pg_dumpall`.

Dumps can be output in script or archive file formats. Script dumps are plain-text files containing the
SQL commands required to reconstruct the database to the state it was in at the time it was saved. To
restore from such a script, feed it to `psql`. Script files can be used to reconstruct the database even on
other machines and other architectures; with some modifications, even on other SQL database products.

The alternative archive file formats must be used with `pg_restore` to rebuild the database. They allow
`pg_restore` to be selective about what is restored, or even to reorder the items prior to being restored.
The archive file formats are designed to be portable across architectures.

When used with one of the archive file formats and combined with `pg_restore`, `pg_dump` provides a
flexible archival and transfer mechanism. `pg_dump` can be used to backup an entire database, then
`pg_restore` can be used to examine the archive and/or select which parts of the database are to be
restored. The most flexible output file formats are the “custom” format (`-Fc`) and the “directory” format
(`-Fd`). They allow for selection and reordering of all archived items, support parallel restoration, and are
compressed by default. The “directory” format is the only format that supports parallel dumps.

While running `pg_dump`, one should examine the output for any warnings (printed on standard error),
especially in light of the limitations listed below.

Options

The following command-line options control the content and format of the output.

```
dbname
```

Specifies the name of the database to be dumped. If this is not specified, the environment variable
PGDATABASE is used. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

```
-a
--data-only
```

Dump only the data, not the schema (data definitions). Table data, large objects, and sequence values
are dumped.

This option is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=data`.

```
-b
--blobs
```

Include large objects in the dump. This is the default behavior except when `--schema`, `--table`, or
`--schema-only` is specified. The `--blobs` switch is therefore only useful to add large objects to dumps where
a specific schema or table has been requested. Note that blobs are considered data and therefore
will be included when `--data-only` is used, but not when `--schema-only` is.
--B
--no-blobs

Exclude large objects in the dump.
When both -b and -B are given, the behavior is to output large objects, when data is being dumped, see the -b documentation.

--c
--clean

Output commands to clean (drop) database objects prior to outputting the commands for creating them. (Unless --if-exists is also specified, restore might generate some harmless error messages, if any objects were not present in the destination database.)

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call pg_restore.

--C
--create

Begin the output with a command to create the database itself and reconnect to the created database. (With a script of this form, it doesn't matter which database in the destination installation you connect to before running the script.) If --clean is also specified, the script drops and recreates the target database before reconnecting to it.

With --create, the output also includes the database's comment if any, and any configuration variable settings that are specific to this database, that is, any ALTER DATABASE ... SET ... and ALTER ROLE ... IN DATABASE ... SET ... commands that mention this database. Access privileges for the database itself are also dumped, unless --no-acl is specified.

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call pg_restore.

-e pattern
--extension=pattern

Dump only extensions matching pattern. When this option is not specified, all non-system extensions in the target database will be dumped. Multiple extensions can be selected by writing multiple -e switches. The pattern parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by psql's \d commands (see Patterns), so multiple extensions can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards.

Any configuration relation registered by pg_extension_config_dump is included in the dump if its extension is specified by --extension.

Note

When -e is specified, pg_dump makes no attempt to dump any other database objects that the selected extension(s) might depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a specific-extension dump can be successfully restored by themselves into a clean database.

-E encoding
--encoding=encoding

Create the dump in the specified character set encoding. By default, the dump is created in the database encoding. (Another way to get the same result is to set the PGCLIENTENCODING environment variable to the desired dump encoding.) The supported encodings are described in Section 22.3.1.
Send output to the specified file. This parameter can be omitted for file based output formats, in which case the standard output is used. It must be given for the directory output format however, where it specifies the target directory instead of a file. In this case the directory is created by pg_dump and must not exist before.

Selects the format of the output. format can be one of the following:

p
plain
Output a plain-text SQL script file (the default).

c
custom
Output a custom-format archive suitable for input into pg_restore. Together with the directory output format, this is the most flexible output format in that it allows manual selection and reordering of archived items during restore. This format is also compressed by default.

d
directory
Output a directory-format archive suitable for input into pg_restore. This will create a directory with one file for each table and blob being dumped, plus a so-called Table of Contents file describing the dumped objects in a machine-readable format that pg_restore can read. A directory format archive can be manipulated with standard Unix tools; for example, files in an uncompressed archive can be compressed with the gzip tool. This format is compressed by default and also supports parallel dumps.

t
tar
Output a tar-format archive suitable for input into pg_restore. The tar format is compatible with the directory format: extracting a tar-format archive produces a valid directory-format archive. However, the tar format does not support compression. Also, when using tar format the relative order of table data items cannot be changed during restore.

Run the dump in parallel by dumping njobs tables simultaneously. This option may reduce the time needed to perform the dump but it also increases the load on the database server. You can only use this option with the directory output format because this is the only output format where multiple processes can write their data at the same time.

pg_dump will open njobs + 1 connections to the database, so make sure your max_connections setting is high enough to accommodate all connections.

Requesting exclusive locks on database objects while running a parallel dump could cause the dump to fail. The reason is that the pg_dump leader process requests shared locks on the objects that the worker processes are going to dump later in order to make sure that nobody deletes them and makes them go away while the dump is running. If another client then requests an exclusive lock on a table, that lock will not be granted but will be queued waiting for the shared lock of the leader process to be released. Consequently any other access to the table will not be granted either and will queue after the exclusive lock request. This includes the worker process trying to dump the table. Without any precautions this would be a classic deadlock situation. To detect this conflict, the pg_dump worker process requests another shared lock using the NOWAIT option. If the worker process is not granted
this shared lock, somebody else must have requested an exclusive lock in the meantime and there is no way to continue with the dump, so pg_dump has no choice but to abort the dump.

For a consistent backup, the database server needs to support synchronized snapshots, a feature that was introduced in PostgreSQL 9.2 for primary servers and 10 for standbys. With this feature, database clients can ensure they see the same data set even though they use different connections. pg_dump -j uses multiple database connections; it connects to the database once with the leader process and once again for each worker job. Without the synchronized snapshot feature, the different worker jobs wouldn’t be guaranteed to see the same data in each connection, which could lead to an inconsistent backup.

If you want to run a parallel dump of a pre-9.2 server, you need to make sure that the database content doesn’t change from between the time the leader connects to the database until the last worker job has connected to the database. The easiest way to do this is to halt any data modifying processes (DDL and DML) accessing the database before starting the backup. You also need to specify the --no-synchronized-snapshots parameter when running pg_dump -j against a pre-9.2 PostgreSQL server.

-n pattern
--schema=pattern

Dump only schemas matching pattern; this selects both the schema itself, and all its contained objects. When this option is not specified, all non-system schemas in the target database will be dumped. Multiple schemas can be selected by writing multiple -n switches. The pattern parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by psql's \d commands (see Patterns below), so multiple schemas can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards; see Examples below.

Note
When -n is specified, pg_dump makes no attempt to dump any other database objects that the selected schema(s) might depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a specific-schema dump can be successfully restored by themselves into a clean database.

Note
Non-schema objects such as blobs are not dumped when -n is specified. You can add blobs back to the dump with the --blobs switch.

-N pattern
--exclude-schema=pattern

Do not dump any schemas matching pattern. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for -n. -N can be given more than once to exclude schemas matching any of several patterns.

When both -n and -N are given, the behavior is to dump just the schemas that match at least one -n switch but no -N switches. If -N appears without -n, then schemas matching -N are excluded from what is otherwise a normal dump.

-O
--no-owner

Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, pg_dump issues ALTER OWNER or SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statements to set ownership of created database objects. These statements will fail when the script is run unless it is started by a superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). To make a script that can be restored by any user, but will give that user ownership of all the objects, specify -O.
This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

```
-R
--no-reconnect
```

This option is obsolete but still accepted for backwards compatibility.

```
-s
--schema-only
```

Dump only the object definitions (schema), not data.

This option is the inverse of `--data-only`. It is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=pre-data --section=post-data`.

(Do not confuse this with the `--schema` option, which uses the word "schema" in a different meaning.)

To exclude table data for only a subset of tables in the database, see `--exclude-table-data`.

```
-S username
--superuser=username
```

Specify the superuser user name to use when disabling triggers. This is relevant only if `--disable-triggers` is used. (Usually, it's better to leave this out, and instead start the resulting script as superuser.)

```
-t pattern
--table=pattern
```

Dump only tables with names matching `pattern`. Multiple tables can be selected by writing multiple `-t` switches. The `pattern` parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by `psql`'s `\d` commands (see Patterns below), so multiple tables can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards; see Examples below.

As well as tables, this option can be used to dump the definition of matching views, materialized views, foreign tables, and sequences. It will not dump the contents of views or materialized views, and the contents of foreign tables will only be dumped if the corresponding foreign server is specified with `--include-foreign-data`.

The `-n` and `-N` switches have no effect when `-t` is used, because tables selected by `-t` will be dumped regardless of those switches, and non-table objects will not be dumped.

```
-T pattern
--exclude-table=pattern
```

Do not dump any tables matching `pattern`. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for `-t`. `-T` can be given more than once to exclude tables matching any of several patterns.

When both `-t` and `-T` are given, the behavior is to dump just the tables that match at least one `-t` switch but no `-T` switches. If `-T` appears without `-t`, then tables matching `-T` are excluded from what is otherwise a normal dump.
-v
--verbose

Specifies verbose mode. This will cause pg_dump to output detailed object comments and start/stop times to the dump file, and progress messages to standard error. Repeating the option causes additional debug-level messages to appear on standard error.

-v
--version

Print the pg_dump version and exit.

-x
--no-privileges
--no-acl

Prevent dumping of access privileges (grant/revoke commands).

-Z 0..9
--compress=0..9

Specify the compression level to use. Zero means no compression. For the custom and directory archive formats, this specifies compression of individual table-data segments, and the default is to compress at a moderate level. For plain text output, setting a nonzero compression level causes the entire output file to be compressed, as though it had been fed through gzip; but the default is not to compress. The tar archive format currently does not support compression at all.

--add-collprovider

If the provider for the default collation of the database to be dumped is implicit, explicitly specifies this provider in the dump. This option is recommended if you are using pg_dump and pg_restore to upgrade from previous versions of Postgres Pro or any version of PostgreSQL. It allows to preserve the original provider of the default collation if the template0 database in the new cluster uses different collation settings. Otherwise, check constraints that use the default collation may change and the COPY command may end with a failure. For binary upgrades, this option is used automatically.

--binary-upgrade

This option is for use by in-place upgrade utilities. Its use for other purposes is not recommended or supported. The behavior of the option may change in future releases without notice.

--column-inserts
--attribute-inserts

Dump data as INSERT commands with explicit column names (INSERT INTO table (column, ...) VALUES ...). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-Postgres Pro databases. Any error during reloading will cause only rows that are part of the problematic INSERT to be lost, rather than the entire table contents.

--disable-dollar-quoting

This option disables the use of dollar quoting for function bodies, and forces them to be quoted using SQL standard string syntax.

--disable-triggers

This option is relevant only when creating a data-only dump. It instructs pg_dump to include commands to temporarily disable triggers on the target tables while the data is reloaded. Use this if you have referential integrity checks or other triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data reload.

Presently, the commands emitted for --disable-triggers must be done as superuser. So, you should also specify a superuser name with -S, or preferably be careful to start the resulting script as a superuser.
This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

`--enable-row-security`

This option is relevant only when dumping the contents of a table which has row security. By default, `pg_dump` will set `row_security` to off, to ensure that all data is dumped from the table. If the user does not have sufficient privileges to bypass row security, then an error is thrown. This parameter instructs `pg_dump` to set `row_security` to on instead, allowing the user to dump the parts of the contents of the table that they have access to.

Note that if you use this option currently, you probably also want the dump be in `INSERT` format, as the `COPY FROM` during restore does not support row security.

`--exclude-table-data=pattern`

Do not dump data for any tables matching `pattern`. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for `-t` `--exclude-table-data` can be given more than once to exclude tables matching any of several patterns. This option is useful when you need the definition of a particular table even though you do not need the data in it.

To exclude data for all tables in the database, see `--schema-only`.

`--extra-float-digits=ndigits`

Use the specified value of `extra_float_digits` when dumping floating-point data, instead of the maximum available precision. Routine dumps made for backup purposes should not use this option.

`--if-exists`

Use conditional commands (i.e., add an IF EXISTS clause) when cleaning database objects. This option is not valid unless `--clean` is also specified.

`--include-foreign-data=foreignserver`

Dump the data for any foreign table with a foreign server matching `foreignserver` pattern. Multiple foreign servers can be selected by writing multiple `--include-foreign-data` switches. Also, the `foreignserver` parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by `psql`'s `\d` commands (see Patterns below), so multiple foreign servers can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards; see Examples below. The only exception is that an empty pattern is disallowed.

Note

When `--include-foreign-data` is specified, `pg_dump` does not check that the foreign table is writable. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a foreign table dump can be successfully restored.

`--inserts`

Dump data as `INSERT` commands (rather than `COPY`). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-Postgres Pro databases. Any error during reloading will cause only rows that are part of the problematic `INSERT` to be lost, rather than the entire table contents. Note that the restore might fail altogether if you have rearranged column order. The `--column-inserts` option is safe against column order changes, though even slower.

`--load-via-partition-root`

When dumping data for a table partition, make the `COPY` or `INSERT` statements target the root of the partitioning hierarchy that contains it, rather than the partition itself. This causes the appropriate
partition to be re-determined for each row when the data is loaded. This may be useful when reloading
data on a server where rows do not always fall into the same partitions as they did on the original
server. That could happen, for example, if the partitioning column is of type text and the two systems
have different definitions of the collation used to sort the partitioning column.

It is best not to use parallelism when restoring from an archive made with this option, because
pg_restore will not know exactly which partition(s) a given archive data item will load data into. This
could result in inefficiency due to lock conflicts between parallel jobs, or perhaps even reload failures
due to foreign key constraints being set up before all the relevant data is loaded.

--lock-wait-timeout=timeout

Do not wait forever to acquire shared table locks at the beginning of the dump. Instead fail if unable
to lock a table within the specified timeout. The timeout may be specified in any of the formats
accepted by SET statement_timeout. (Allowed formats vary depending on the server version you
are dumping from, but an integer number of milliseconds is accepted by all versions.)

--no-comments

Do not dump comments.

--no-publications

Do not dump publications.

--no-security-labels

Do not dump security labels.

--no-subscriptions

Do not dump subscriptions.

--no-sync

By default, pg_dump will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes pg_dump to
return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can
leave the dump corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used when
dumping data from production installation.

--no-synchronized-snapshots

This option allows running pg_dump -j against a pre-9.2 server, see the documentation of the -j
parameter for more details.

--no-tablespaces

Do not output commands to select tablespaces. With this option, all objects will be created in
whichever tablespace is the default during restore.

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you
can specify the option when you call pg_restore.

--no-toast-compression

Do not output commands to set TOAST compression methods. With this option, all columns will be
restored with the default compression setting.

--no-unlogged-table-data

Do not dump the contents of unlogged tables. This option has no effect on whether or not the table
definitions (schema) are dumped; it only suppresses dumping the table data. Data in unlogged tables
is always excluded when dumping from a standby server.
--on-conflict-do-nothing

Add ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING to INSERT commands. This option is not valid unless --inserts, --
column-inserts or --rows-per-insert is also specified.

--quote-all-identifiers

Force quoting of all identifiers. This option is recommended when dumping a database from a server
whose PostgreSQL major version is different from pg_dump's, or when the output is intended to be
loaded into a server of a different major version. By default, pg_dump quotes only identifiers that
are reserved words in its own major version. This sometimes results in compatibility issues when
dealing with servers of other versions that may have slightly different sets of reserved words. Using
--quote-all-identifiers prevents such issues, at the price of a harder-to-read dump script.

--rows-per-insert=nrows

Dump data as INSERT commands (rather than COPY). Controls the maximum number of rows per
INSERT command. The value specified must be a number greater than zero. Any error during
reloading will cause only rows that are part of the problematic INSERT to be lost, rather than the
entire table contents.

--section=sectionname

Only dump the named section. The section name can be pre-data, data, or post-data. This option
can be specified more than once to select multiple sections. The default is to dump all sections.

The data section contains actual table data, large-object contents, and sequence values. Post-data
items include definitions of indexes, triggers, rules, and constraints other than validated check
constraints. Pre-data items include all other data definition items.

--serializable-deferrable

Use a serializable transaction for the dump, to ensure that the snapshot used is consistent with
later database states; but do this by waiting for a point in the transaction stream at which no
anomalies can be present, so that there isn’t a risk of the dump failing or causing other transactions
to roll back with a serialization_failure. See Chapter 13 for more information about transaction
isolation and concurrency control.

This option is not beneficial for a dump which is intended only for disaster recovery. It could be useful
for a dump used to load a copy of the database for reporting or other read-only load sharing while
the original database continues to be updated. Without it the dump may reflect a state which is not
consistent with any serial execution of the transactions eventually committed. For example, if batch
processing techniques are used, a batch may show as closed in the dump without all of the items
which are in the batch appearing.

This option will make no difference if there are no read-write transactions active when pg_dump
is started. If read-write transactions are active, the start of the dump may be delayed for an
indeterminate length of time. Once running, performance with or without the switch is the same.

--snapshot=snapshotname

Use the specified synchronized snapshot when making a dump of the database (see Table 9.90 for
more details).

This option is useful when needing to synchronize the dump with a logical replication slot (see
Chapter 47) or with a concurrent session.

In the case of a parallel dump, the snapshot name defined by this option is used rather than taking
a new snapshot.

--strict-names

Require that each extension (-e/--extension), schema (-n/--schema) and table (-t/--table)
qualifier match at least one extension/schema/table in the database to be dumped. Note that if none
of the extension/schema/table qualifiers find matches, pg_dump will generate an error even without --strict-names.

This option has no effect on -N/--exclude-schema, -T/--exclude-table, or --exclude-table-data. An exclude pattern failing to match any objects is not considered an error.

--use-set-session-authorization

Output SQL-standard SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION commands instead of ALTER OWNER commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards-compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, might not restore properly. Also, a dump using SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION will certainly require superuser privileges to restore correctly, whereas ALTER OWNER requires lesser privileges.

-?
--help

Show help about pg_dump command line arguments, and exit.

The following command-line options control the database connection parameters.

-d dbname
--dbname=dbname

Specifies the name of the database to connect to. This is equivalent to specifying dbname as the first non-option argument on the command line. The dbname can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

-h host
--host=host

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the PGHOST environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

-p port
--port=port

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the PGPORT environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

-U username
--username=username

User name to connect as.

-w
--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W
--password

Force pg_dump to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg_dump will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg_dump will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.
pg_dump

--role=rolename

Specifies a role name to be used to create the dump. This option causes pg_dump to issue a \texttt{SET ROLE rolename} command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated user (specified by \texttt{-u}) lacks privileges needed by pg_dump, but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows dumps to be made without violating the policy.

\section*{Environment}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{PGDATABASE}
  \item \texttt{PGHOST}
  \item \texttt{PGOPTIONS}
  \item \texttt{PGPORT}
  \item \texttt{PGUSER}
\end{itemize}

Default connection parameters.

\texttt{PG\_COLOR}

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are \texttt{always}, \texttt{auto} and \texttt{never}. This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

\section*{Diagnostics}

pg_dump internally executes \texttt{SELECT} statements. If you have problems running pg_dump, make sure you are able to select information from the database using, for example, \texttt{psql}. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

The database activity of pg_dump is normally collected by the statistics collector. If this is undesirable, you can set parameter \texttt{track_counts} to \texttt{false} via \texttt{PGOPTIONS} or the \texttt{ALTER USER} command.

\section*{Notes}

If your database cluster has any local additions to the \texttt{template1} database, be careful to restore the output of pg_dump into a truly empty database; otherwise you are likely to get errors due to duplicate definitions of the added objects. To make an empty database without any local additions, copy from \texttt{template0} not \texttt{template1}, for example:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE DATABASE foo WITH TEMPLATE template0;
\end{verbatim}

When a data-only dump is chosen and the option \texttt{--disable-triggers} is used, pg_dump emits commands to disable triggers on user tables before inserting the data, and then commands to re-enable them after the data has been inserted. If the restore is stopped in the middle, the system catalogs might be left in the wrong state.

The dump file produced by pg_dump does not contain the statistics used by the optimizer to make query planning decisions. Therefore, it is wise to run \texttt{ANALYZE} after restoring from a dump file to ensure optimal performance; see Section 23.1.3 and Section 23.1.6 for more information.

Because pg_dump is used to transfer data to newer versions of Postgres Pro, the output of pg_dump can be expected to load into Postgres Pro server versions newer than pg_dump's version. pg_dump can also dump from Postgres Pro servers older than its own version. (Currently, servers back to version 8.0 are supported.) However, pg_dump cannot dump from Postgres Pro servers newer than its own major version; it will refuse to even try, rather than risk making an invalid dump. Also, it is not guaranteed that pg_dump's output can be loaded into a server of an older major version — not even if the dump was taken from a server of that version. Loading a dump file into an older server may require manual editing of the dump file to remove syntax not understood by the older server. Use of the \texttt{--quote-all-identifiers} option is recommended in cross-version cases, as it can prevent problems arising from varying reserved-word lists in different PostgreSQL versions.
When dumping logical replication subscriptions, pg_dump will generate `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` commands that use the `connect = false` option, so that restoring the subscription does not make remote connections for creating a replication slot or for initial table copy. That way, the dump can be restored without requiring network access to the remote servers. It is then up to the user to reactivate the subscriptions in a suitable way. If the involved hosts have changed, the connection information might have to be changed. It might also be appropriate to truncate the target tables before initiating a new full table copy.

**Examples**

To dump a database called `mydb` into an SQL-script file:

```
$ pg_dump mydb > db.sql
```

To reload such a script into a (freshly created) database named `newdb`:

```
$ psql -d newdb -f db.sql
```

To dump a database into a custom-format archive file:

```
$ pg_dump -Fc mydb > db.dump
```

To dump a database into a directory-format archive:

```
$ pg_dump -Fd mydb -f dumpdir
```

To dump a database into a directory-format archive in parallel with 5 worker jobs:

```
$ pg_dump -Fd mydb -j 5 -f dumpdir
```

To reload an archive file into a (freshly created) database named `newdb`:

```
$ pg_restore -d newdb db.dump
```

To reload an archive file into the same database it was dumped from, discarding the current contents of that database:

```
$ pg_restore -d postgres --clean --create db.dump
```

To dump a single table named `mytab`:

```
$ pg_dump -t mytab mydb > db.sql
```

To dump all tables whose names start with `emp` in the `detroit` schema, except for the table named `employee_log`:

```
$ pg_dump -t 'detroit.emp*' -T detroit.employee_log mydb > db.sql
```

To dump all schemas whose names start with `east` or `west` and end in `gsm`, excluding any schemas whose names contain the word `test`:

```
$ pg_dump -n 'east*gsm' -n 'west*gsm' -N '*test*' mydb > db.sql
```

The same, using regular expression notation to consolidate the switches:

```
$ pg_dump -n '(east|west)*gsm' -N '*test*' mydb > db.sql
```

To dump all database objects except for tables whose names begin with `ts_`:

```
$ pg_dump -T 'ts_*' mydb > db.sql
```

To specify an upper-case or mixed-case name in `-t` and related switches, you need to double-quote the name; else it will be folded to lower case (see Patterns below). But double quotes are special to the shell, so in turn they must be quoted. Thus, to dump a single table with a mixed-case name, you need something like

```
$ pg_dump -t "\"MixedCaseName\"" mydb > mytab.sql
```
See Also

pg_dumpall, pg_restore, psql
**pg_dumpall**

pg_dumpall — extract a Postgres Pro database cluster into a script file

**Synopsis**

```
pg_dumpall [connection-option...] [option...]
```

**Description**

pg_dumpall is a utility for writing out (“dumping”) all Postgres Pro databases of a cluster into one script file. The script file contains SQL commands that can be used as input to `psql` to restore the databases. It does this by calling `pg_dump` for each database in the cluster. pg_dumpall also dumps global objects that are common to all databases, that is, database roles and tablespaces. (pg_dump does not save these objects.)

Since pg_dumpall reads tables from all databases you will most likely have to connect as a database superuser in order to produce a complete dump. Also you will need superuser privileges to execute the saved script in order to be allowed to add roles and create databases.

The SQL script will be written to the standard output. Use the `-f/--file` option or shell operators to redirect it into a file.

pg_dumpall needs to connect several times to the Postgres Pro server (once per database). If you use password authentication it will ask for a password each time. It is convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file in such cases. See Section 32.16 for more information.

**Options**

The following command-line options control the content and format of the output.

```
-a
--data-only
  Dump only the data, not the schema (data definitions).

-c
--clean
  Include SQL commands to clean (drop) databases before recreating them. DROP commands for roles and tablespaces are added as well.

-E encoding
--encoding=encoding
  Create the dump in the specified character set encoding. By default, the dump is created in the database encoding. (Another way to get the same result is to set the `PGCLIENTENCODING` environment variable to the desired dump encoding.)

-f filename
--file=filename
  Send output to the specified file. If this is omitted, the standard output is used.

-g
--globals-only
  Dump only global objects (roles and tablespaces), no databases.

-o
--no-owner
  Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, pg_dumpall issues `ALTER OWNER` or `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statements to set ownership of
created schema elements. These statements will fail when the script is run unless it is started by a
superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). To make a script that can be
restored by any user, but will give that user ownership of all the objects, specify −O.

-r
--roles-only
Dump only roles, no databases or tablespaces.

-s
--schema-only
Dump only the object definitions (schema), not data.

-S username
--superuser=username
Specify the superuser user name to use when disabling triggers. This is relevant only if --disable-
triggers is used. (Usually, it’s better to leave this out, and instead start the resulting script as
superuser.)

-t
--tablespaces-only
Dump only tablespaces, no databases or roles.

-v
--verbose
Specifies verbose mode. This will cause pg_dumpall to output start/stop times to the dump file, and
progress messages to standard error. Repeating the option causes additional debug-level messages
to appear on standard error. The option is also passed down to pg_dump.

-V
--version
Print the pg_dumpall version and exit.

-x
--no-privileges
--no-acl
Prevent dumping of access privileges (grant/revoke commands).

--add-collprovider
If the provider for the default collation of the database to be dumped is implicit, explicitly specifies
this provider in the dump. This option is recommended if you are using pg_dumpall and pg_restore to
upgrade from previous versions of Postgres Pro or any version of PostgreSQL. It allows to preserve
the original provider of the default collation if the template0 database in the new cluster uses
different collation settings. Otherwise, check constraints that use the default collation may change
and the COPY command may end with a failure. For binary upgrades, this option is used automatically.

--binary-upgrade
This option is for use by in-place upgrade utilities. Its use for other purposes is not recommended or
supported. The behavior of the option may change in future releases without notice.

--column-inserts
--attribute-inserts
Dump data as INSERT commands with explicit column names (INSERT INTO table (column, ...) VALUES ...). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be
loaded into non-Postgres Pro databases.
--disable-dollar-quoting

This option disables the use of dollar quoting for function bodies, and forces them to be quoted using SQL standard string syntax.

--disable-triggers

This option is relevant only when creating a data-only dump. It instructs pg_dumpall to include commands to temporarily disable triggers on the target tables while the data is reloaded. Use this if you have referential integrity checks or other triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data reload.

Presently, the commands emitted for --disable-triggers must be done as superuser. So, you should also specify a superuser name with -S, or preferably be careful to start the resulting script as a superuser.

--exclude-database=pattern

Do not dump databases whose name matches pattern. Multiple patterns can be excluded by writing multiple --exclude-database switches. The pattern parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by psql's \d commands (see Patterns below), so multiple databases can also be excluded by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent shell wildcard expansion.

--extra-float-digits=ndigits

Use the specified value of extra_float_digits when dumping floating-point data, instead of the maximum available precision. Routine dumps made for backup purposes should not use this option.

--if-exists

Use conditional commands (i.e., add an IF EXISTS clause) to drop databases and other objects. This option is not valid unless --clean is also specified.

--inserts

Dump data as INSERT commands (rather than COPY). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-Postgres Pro databases. Note that the restore might fail altogether if you have rearranged column order. The --column-inserts option is safer, though even slower.

--load-via-partition-root

When dumping data for a table partition, make the COPY or INSERT statements target the root of the partitioning hierarchy that contains it, rather than the partition itself. This causes the appropriate partition to be re-determined for each row when the data is loaded. This may be useful when reloading data on a server where rows do not always fall into the same partitions as they did on the original server. That could happen, for example, if the partitioning column is of type text and the two systems have different definitions of the collation used to sort the partitioning column.

--lock-wait-timeout=timeout

Do not wait forever to acquire shared table locks at the beginning of the dump. Instead, fail if unable to lock a table within the specified timeout. The timeout may be specified in any of the formats accepted by SET statement_timeout.

--no-comments

Do not dump comments.

--no-publications

Do not dump publications.
--no-role-passwords
Do not dump passwords for roles. When restored, roles will have a null password, and password authentication will always fail until the password is set. Since password values aren't needed when this option is specified, the role information is read from the catalog view pg_roles instead of pg_authid. Therefore, this option also helps if access to pg_authid is restricted by some security policy.

--no-security-labels
Do not dump security labels.

--no-subscriptions
Do not dump subscriptions.

--no-sync
By default, pg_dumpall will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes pg_dumpall to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the dump corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used when dumping data from production installation.

--no-tablespaces
Do not output commands to create tablespaces nor select tablespaces for objects. With this option, all objects will be created in whichever tablespace is the default during restore.

--no-toast-compression
Do not output commands to set TOAST compression methods. With this option, all columns will be restored with the default compression setting.

--no-unlogged-table-data
Do not dump the contents of unlogged tables. This option has no effect on whether or not the table definitions (schema) are dumped; it only suppresses dumping the table data.

--on-conflict-do-nothing
Add ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING to INSERT commands. This option is not valid unless --inserts or --column-inserts is also specified.

--quote-all-identifiers
Force quoting of all identifiers. This option is recommended when dumping a database from a server whose PostgreSQL major version is different from pg_dumpall's, or when the output is intended to be loaded into a server of a different major version. By default, pg_dumpall quotes only identifiers that are reserved words in its own major version. This sometimes results in compatibility issues when dealing with servers of other versions that may have slightly different sets of reserved words. Using --quote-all-identifiers prevents such issues, at the price of a harder-to-read dump script.

--rows-per-insert=nrows
Dump data as INSERT commands (rather than COPY). Controls the maximum number of rows per INSERT command. The value specified must be a number greater than zero. Any error during reloading will cause only rows that are part of the problematic INSERT to be lost, rather than the entire table contents.

--use-set-session-authorization
Output SQL-standard SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION commands instead of ALTER OWNER commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, might not restore properly.
pg_dumpall

-?
--help

Show help about pg_dumpall command line arguments, and exit.

The following command-line options control the database connection parameters.

-d connstr
--dbname=connstr

Specifies parameters used to connect to the server, as a connection string; these will override any conflicting command line options.

The option is called --dbname for consistency with other client applications, but because pg_dumpall needs to connect to many databases, the database name in the connection string will be ignored. Use the -l option to specify the name of the database used for the initial connection, which will dump global objects and discover what other databases should be dumped.

-h host
--host=host

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the database server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the PGHOST environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

-l dbname
--database=dbname

Specifies the name of the database to connect to for dumping global objects and discovering what other databases should be dumped. If not specified, the postgres database will be used, and if that does not exist, template1 will be used.

-p port
--port=port

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the PGPORT environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

-U username
--username=username

User name to connect as.

-w
--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W
--password

Force pg_dumpall to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg_dumpall will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg_dumpall will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

Note that the password prompt will occur again for each database to be dumped. Usually, it's better to set up a ~/.pgpass file than to rely on manual password entry.
--role=rolename

Specifies a role name to be used to create the dump. This option causes pg_dumpall to issue a SET ROLE rolename command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated user (specified by -U) lacks privileges needed by pg_dumpall, but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows dumps to be made without violating the policy.

Environment

PGHOST
PGOPTIONS
PGPORT
PGUSER

Default connection parameters

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

Notes

Since pg_dumpall calls pg_dump internally, some diagnostic messages will refer to pg_dump.

The --clean option can be useful even when your intention is to restore the dump script into a fresh cluster. Use of --clean authorizes the script to drop and re-create the built-in postgres and template1 databases, ensuring that those databases will retain the same properties (for instance, locale and encoding) that they had in the source cluster. Without the option, those databases will retain their existing database-level properties, as well as any pre-existing contents.

Once restored, it is wise to run ANALYZE on each database so the optimizer has useful statistics. You can also run vacuumdb -a -z to analyze all databases.

The dump script should not be expected to run completely without errors. In particular, because the script will issue CREATE ROLE for every role existing in the source cluster, it is certain to get a “role already exists” error for the bootstrap superuser, unless the destination cluster was initialized with a different bootstrap superuser name. This error is harmless and should be ignored. Use of the --clean option is likely to produce additional harmless error messages about non-existent objects, although you can minimize those by adding --if-exists.

pg_dumpall requires all needed tablespace directories to exist before the restore; otherwise, database creation will fail for databases in non-default locations.

Examples

To dump all databases:

$ pg_dumpall > db.out

To reload database(s) from this file, you can use:

$ psql -f db.out postgres

It is not important to which database you connect here since the script file created by pg_dumpall will contain the appropriate commands to create and connect to the saved databases. An exception is that if you specified --clean, you must connect to the postgres database initially; the script will attempt to drop other databases immediately, and that will fail for the database you are connected to.
See Also

Check pg_dump for details on possible error conditions.
pg_isready

pg_isready — check the connection status of a Postgres Pro server

Synopsis

pg_isready [connection-option...] [option...]

Description

pg_isready is a utility for checking the connection status of a Postgres Pro database server. The exit status specifies the result of the connection check.

Options

- **-d dbname**
  --dbname=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to connect to. The dbname can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

- **-h hostname**
  --host=hostname

  Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix-domain socket.

- **-p port**
  --port=port

  Specifies the TCP port or the local Unix-domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the value of the PGPORT environment variable or, if not set, to the port specified at compile time, usually 5432.

- **-q**
  --quiet

  Do not display status message. This is useful when scripting.

- **-t seconds**
  --timeout=seconds

  The maximum number of seconds to wait when attempting connection before returning that the server is not responding. Setting to 0 disables. The default is 3 seconds.

- **-U username**
  --username=username

  Connect to the database as the user username instead of the default.

- **-V**
  --version

  Print the pg_isready version and exit.

- **-?**
  --help

  Show help about pg_isready command line arguments, and exit.
**Exit Status**

`pg_isready` returns 0 to the shell if the server is accepting connections normally, 1 if the server is rejecting connections (for example during startup), 2 if there was no response to the connection attempt, and 3 if no attempt was made (for example due to invalid parameters).

**Environment**

`pg_isready`, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 32.15).

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto`, and `never`.

**Notes**

It is not necessary to supply correct user name, password, or database name values to obtain the server status; however, if incorrect values are provided, the server will log a failed connection attempt.

**Examples**

Standard Usage:

```bash
$ pg_isready
/tmp:5432 - accepting connections
$ echo $?
0
```

Running with connection parameters to a Postgres Pro cluster in startup:

```bash
$ pg_isready -h localhost -p 5433
localhost:5433 - rejecting connections
$ echo $?
1
```

Running with connection parameters to a non-responsive Postgres Pro cluster:

```bash
$ pg_isready -h someremotehost
someremotehost:5432 - no response
$ echo $?
2
```
pg_receivewal

pg_receivewal — stream write-ahead logs from a Postgres Pro server

Synopsis

pg_receivewal [option...]

Description

pg_receivewal is used to stream the write-ahead log from a running Postgres Pro cluster. The write-ahead log is streamed using the streaming replication protocol, and is written to a local directory of files. This directory can be used as the archive location for doing a restore using point-in-time recovery (see Section 24.3).

pg_receivewal streams the write-ahead log in real time as it's being generated on the server, and does not wait for segments to complete like archive_command does. For this reason, it is not necessary to set archive_timeout when using pg_receivewal.

Unlike the WAL receiver of a Postgres Pro standby server, pg_receivewal by default flushes WAL data only when a WAL file is closed. The option --synchronous must be specified to flush WAL data in real time. Since pg_receivewal does not apply WAL, you should not allow it to become a synchronous standby when synchronous_commit equals remote_apply. If it does, it will appear to be a standby that never catches up, and will cause transaction commits to block. To avoid this, you should either configure an appropriate value for synchronous_standby_names, or specify application_name for pg_receivewal that does not match it, or change the value of synchronous_commit to something other than remote_apply.

The write-ahead log is streamed over a regular Postgres Pro connection and uses the replication protocol. The connection must be made with a user having REPLICATION permissions (see Section 20.2) or a superuser, and pg_hba.conf must permit the replication connection. The server must also be configured with max_wal_senders set high enough to leave at least one session available for the stream.

The starting point of the write-ahead log streaming is calculated when pg_receivewal starts:

1. First, scan the directory where the WAL segment files are written and find the newest completed segment file, using as starting point the beginning of the next WAL segment file. This is calculated independently on the compression method used to compress each segment.

2. If a starting point cannot be calculated with the previous method, the latest WAL flush location is used as reported by the server from a IDENTIFY_SYSTEM command.

If the connection is lost, or if it cannot be initially established, with a non-fatal error, pg_receivewal will retry the connection indefinitely, and reestablish streaming as soon as possible. To avoid this behavior, use the -n parameter.

In the absence of fatal errors, pg_receivewal will run until terminated by the SIGINT signal (Control+C).

Options

-D directory
--directory=directory

Directory to write the output to.

This parameter is required.

-E lsn
--endtime=lsn

Automatically stop replication and exit with normal exit status 0 when receiving reaches the specified LSN.
If there is a record with LSN exactly equal to \textit{lsn}, the record will be processed.

---if-not-exists

Do not error out when \textit{--create-slot} is specified and a slot with the specified name already exists.

-n

---no-loop

Don't loop on connection errors. Instead, exit right away with an error.

---no-sync

This option causes \texttt{pg_receivewal} to not force WAL data to be flushed to disk. This is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the WAL segments corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used when doing WAL archiving on a production deployment.

This option is incompatible with \textit{--synchronous}.

-s \texttt{interval}

---status-interval=\texttt{interval}

Specifies the number of seconds between status packets sent back to the server. This allows for easier monitoring of the progress from server. A value of zero disables the periodic status updates completely, although an update will still be sent when requested by the server, to avoid timeout disconnect. The default value is 10 seconds.

-S \texttt{slotname}

---slot=\texttt{slotname}

Require \texttt{pg_receivewal} to use an existing replication slot (see Section 25.2.6). When this option is used, \texttt{pg_receivewal} will report a flush position to the server, indicating when each segment has been synchronized to disk so that the server can remove that segment if it is not otherwise needed.

When the replication client of \texttt{pg_receivewal} is configured on the server as a synchronous standby, then using a replication slot will report the flush position to the server, but only when a WAL file is closed. Therefore, that configuration will cause transactions on the primary to wait for a long time and effectively not work satisfactorily. The option \textit{--synchronous} (see below) must be specified in addition to make this work correctly.

---synchronous

Flush the WAL data to disk immediately after it has been received. Also send a status packet back to the server immediately after flushing, regardless of \textit{--status-interval}.

This option should be specified if the replication client of \texttt{pg_receivewal} is configured on the server as a synchronous standby, to ensure that timely feedback is sent to the server.

-v

---verbose

Enables verbose mode.

-Z \texttt{level}

---compress=\texttt{level}

Enables gzip compression of write-ahead logs, and specifies the compression level (0 through 9, 0 being no compression and 9 being best compression). The suffix .\texttt{gz} will automatically be added to all filenames.

The following command-line options control the database connection parameters.
-d connstr
--dbname=connstr

Specifies parameters used to connect to the server, as a connection string; these will override any conflicting command line options.

The option is called --dbname for consistency with other client applications, but because pg_receivewal doesn't connect to any particular database in the cluster, database name in the connection string will be ignored.

-h host
--host=host

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the PGHOST environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

-p port
--port=port

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the PGPORT environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

-U username
--username=uname

User name to connect as.

-w
--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W
--password

Force pg_receivewal to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg_receivewal will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg_receivewal will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

pg_receivewal can perform one of the two following actions in order to control physical replication slots:

--create-slot

Create a new physical replication slot with the name specified in --slot, then exit.

--drop-slot

Drop the replication slot with the name specified in --slot, then exit.

Other options are also available:

-V
--version

Print the pg_receivewal version and exit.

-?
--help

Show help about pg_receivewal command line arguments, and exit.
Exit Status

pg_receivewal will exit with status 0 when terminated by the SIGINT signal. (That is the normal way to end it. Hence it is not an error.) For fatal errors or other signals, the exit status will be nonzero.

Environment

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

The environment variable PG_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

Notes

When using pg_receivewal instead of archive_command as the main WAL backup method, it is strongly recommended to use replication slots. Otherwise, the server is free to recycle or remove write-ahead log files before they are backed up, because it does not have any information, either from archive_command or the replication slots, about how far the WAL stream has been archived. Note, however, that a replication slot will fill up the server's disk space if the receiver does not keep up with fetching the WAL data.

pg_receivewal will preserve group permissions on the received WAL files if group permissions are enabled on the source cluster.

Examples

To stream the write-ahead log from the server at mydbserver and store it in the local directory /usr/local/pgsql/archive:

$ pg_receivewal -h mydbserver -D /usr/local/pgsql/archive

See Also

gp_basebackup
**pg_recvlogical**

pg_recvlogical — control Postgres Pro logical decoding streams

**Synopsis**

pg_recvlogical [option...]

**Description**

pg_recvlogical controls logical decoding replication slots and streams data from such replication slots. It creates a replication-mode connection, so it is subject to the same constraints as pg_receivewal, plus those for logical replication (see Chapter 47).

pg_recvlogical has no equivalent to the logical decoding SQL interface’s peek and get modes. It sends replay confirmations for data lazily as it receives it and on clean exit. To examine pending data on a slot without consuming it, use pg_logical_slot_peek_changes.

**Options**

At least one of the following options must be specified to select an action:

---create-slot
Create a new logical replication slot with the name specified by --slot, using the output plugin specified by --plugin, for the database specified by --dbname.

---drop-slot
Drop the replication slot with the name specified by --slot, then exit.

---start
Begin streaming changes from the logical replication slot specified by --slot, continuing until terminated by a signal. If the server side change stream ends with a server shutdown or disconnect, retry in a loop unless --no-loop is specified.

The stream format is determined by the output plugin specified when the slot was created.

The connection must be to the same database used to create the slot.

---create-slot and ---start can be specified together. ---drop-slot cannot be combined with another action.

The following command-line options control the location and format of the output and other replication behavior:

-E lsn
--endpos=lsn
In ---start mode, automatically stop replication and exit with normal exit status 0 when receiving reaches the specified LSN. If specified when not in ---start mode, an error is raised.

If there’s a record with LSN exactly equal to lsn, the record will be output.

The --endpos option is not aware of transaction boundaries and may truncate output partway through a transaction. Any partially output transaction will not be consumed and will be replayed again when the slot is next read from. Individual messages are never truncated.

-f filename
--file=filename
Write received and decoded transaction data into this file. Use – for stdout.
-F interval_seconds  
--fsync-interval=interval_seconds

Specifies how often pg_recvlogical should issue fsync() calls to ensure the output file is safely flushed to disk.

The server will occasionally request the client to perform a flush and report the flush position to the server. This setting is in addition to that, to perform flushes more frequently.

Specifying an interval of 0 disables issuing fsync() calls altogether, while still reporting progress to the server. In this case, data could be lost in the event of a crash.

-I lsn  
--startpos=lsn

In --start mode, start replication from the given LSN. For details on the effect of this, see the documentation in Chapter 47 and Section 51.4. Ignored in other modes.

--if-not-exists

Do not error out when --create-slot is specified and a slot with the specified name already exists.

-n  
--no-loop

When the connection to the server is lost, do not retry in a loop, just exit.

-o name[=value]  
--option=name[=value]

Pass the option name to the output plugin with, if specified, the option value value. Which options exist and their effects depends on the used output plugin.

-P plugin  
--plugin=plugin

When creating a slot, use the specified logical decoding output plugin. See Chapter 47. This option has no effect if the slot already exists.

-s interval_seconds  
--status-interval=interval_seconds

This option has the same effect as the option of the same name in pg_receivewal. See the description there.

-S slot_name  
--slot=slot_name

In --start mode, use the existing logical replication slot named slot_name. In --create-slot mode, create the slot with this name. In --drop-slot mode, delete the slot with this name.

-v  
--verbose

Enables verbose mode.

The following command-line options control the database connection parameters.

-d dbname  
--dbname=dbname

The database to connect to. See the description of the actions for what this means in detail. The dbname can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options. Defaults to the user name.
Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the PGHOST environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the PGPORT environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

User name to connect as. Defaults to current operating system user name.

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

Force pg_recvlogical to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg_recvlogical will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg_recvlogical will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -w to avoid the extra connection attempt.

The following additional options are available:

Print the pg_recvlogical version and exit.

Show help about pg_recvlogical command line arguments, and exit.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

The environment variable PG_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

pg_recvlogical will preserve group permissions on the received WAL files if group permissions are enabled on the source cluster.

See Section 47.1 for an example.
See Also

pg_receivewal
pg_restore

pg_restore — restore a Postgres Pro database from an archive file created by pg_dump

Synopsis

pg_restore [connection-option...] [option...] [filename]

Description

pg_restore is a utility for restoring a Postgres Pro database from an archive created by pg_dump in one of the non-plain-text formats. It will issue the commands necessary to reconstruct the database to the state it was in at the time it was saved. The archive files also allow pg_restore to be selective about what is restored, or even to reorder the items prior to being restored. The archive files are designed to be portable across architectures.

pg_restore can operate in two modes. If a database name is specified, pg_restore connects to that database and restores archive contents directly into the database. Otherwise, a script containing the SQL commands necessary to rebuild the database is created and written to a file or standard output. This script output is equivalent to the plain text output format of pg_dump. Some of the options controlling the output are therefore analogous to pg_dump options.

Obviously, pg_restore cannot restore information that is not present in the archive file. For instance, if the archive was made using the “dump data as INSERT commands” option, pg_restore will not be able to load the data using COPY statements.

Options

pg_restore accepts the following command line arguments.

filename

Specifies the location of the archive file (or directory, for a directory-format archive) to be restored. If not specified, the standard input is used.

-a
--data-only

Restore only the data, not the schema (data definitions). Table data, large objects, and sequence values are restored, if present in the archive.

This option is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying --section=data.

-c
--clean

Clean (drop) database objects before recreating them. (Unless --if-exists is used, this might generate some harmless error messages, if any objects were not present in the destination database.)

With --create, pg_restore also restores the database's comment if any, and any configuration variable settings that are specific to this database, that is, any ALTER DATABASE ... SET ... and ALTER ROLE ... IN DATABASE ... SET ... commands that mention this database. Access privileges for the database itself are also restored, unless --no-acl is specified.
When this option is used, the database named with \(-d\) is used only to issue the initial `DROP DATABASE` and `CREATE DATABASE` commands. All data is restored into the database name that appears in the archive.

\(-d\) `dbname`

`--dbname=dbname`

Connect to database `dbname` and restore directly into the database. The `dbname` can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

\(-e\)

`--exit-on-error`

Exit if an error is encountered while sending SQL commands to the database. The default is to continue and to display a count of errors at the end of the restoration.

\(-f\) `filename`

`--file=filename`

Specify output file for generated script, or for the listing when used with \(-l\). Use \(-\) for stdout.

\(-F\) `format`

`--format=format`

Specify format of the archive. It is not necessary to specify the format, since `pg_restore` will determine the format automatically. If specified, it can be one of the following:

\(-\) `c`

`custom`

The archive is in the custom format of `pg_dump`.

\(-\) `d`

`directory`

The archive is a directory archive.

\(-\) `t`

`tar`

The archive is a `tar` archive.

\(-I\) `index`

`--index=index`

Restore definition of named index only. Multiple indexes may be specified with multiple \(-I\) switches.

\(-j\) `number-of-jobs`

`--jobs=number-of-jobs`

Run the most time-consuming steps of `pg_restore` — those that load data, create indexes, or create constraints — concurrently, using up to `number-of-jobs` concurrent sessions. This option can dramatically reduce the time to restore a large database to a server running on a multiprocessor machine. This option is ignored when emitting a script rather than connecting directly to a database server.

Each job is one process or one thread, depending on the operating system, and uses a separate connection to the server.

The optimal value for this option depends on the hardware setup of the server, of the client, and of the network. Factors include the number of CPU cores and the disk setup. A good place to start is the number of CPU cores on the server, but values larger than that can also lead to faster restore times in many cases. Of course, values that are too high will lead to decreased performance because of thrashing.
Only the custom and directory archive formats are supported with this option. The input must be a regular file or directory (not, for example, a pipe or standard input). Also, multiple jobs cannot be used together with the option `--single-transaction`.

- `l`  
  `--list`  
  List the table of contents of the archive. The output of this operation can be used as input to the `-L` option. Note that if filtering switches such as `-n` or `-t` are used with `-l`, they will restrict the items listed.

- `-L list-file`  
  `--use-list=list-file`  
  Restore only those archive elements that are listed in `list-file`, and restore them in the order they appear in the file. Note that if filtering switches such as `-n` or `-t` are used with `-L`, they will further restrict the items restored.

  `list-file` is normally created by editing the output of a previous `-l` operation. Lines can be moved or removed, and can also be commented out by placing a semicolon (`;`) at the start of the line. See below for examples.

- `-n schema`  
  `--schema=schema`  
  Restore only objects that are in the named schema. Multiple schemas may be specified with multiple `-n` switches. This can be combined with the `-t` option to restore just a specific table.

- `-N schema`  
  `--exclude-schema=schema`  
  Do not restore objects that are in the named schema. Multiple schemas to be excluded may be specified with multiple `-N` switches.

  When both `-n` and `-N` are given for the same schema name, the `-N` switch wins and the schema is excluded.

- `-O`  
  `--no-owner`  
  Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, `pg_restore` issues `ALTER OWNER` or `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statements to set ownership of created schema elements. These statements will fail unless the initial connection to the database is made by a superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). With `-O`, any user name can be used for the initial connection, and this user will own all the created objects.

- `-P function-name(argtype [, ...])`  
  `--function=function-name(argtype [, ...])`  
  Restore the named function only. Be careful to spell the function name and arguments exactly as they appear in the dump file's table of contents. Multiple functions may be specified with multiple `-P` switches.

- `-R`  
  `--no-reconnect`  
  This option is obsolete but still accepted for backwards compatibility.

- `-s`  
  `--schema-only`  
  Restore only the schema (data definitions), not data, to the extent that schema entries are present in the archive.
This option is the inverse of --data-only. It is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying --section=pre-data --section=post-data.

(Do not confuse this with the --schema option, which uses the word “schema” in a different meaning.)

-S username
--superuser=username

Specify the superuser user name to use when disabling triggers. This is relevant only if --disable-triggers is used.

-t table
--table=table

Restore definition and/or data of only the named table. For this purpose, “table” includes views, materialized views, sequences, and foreign tables. Multiple tables can be selected by writing multiple -t switches. This option can be combined with the -n option to specify table(s) in a particular schema.

Note
When -t is specified, pg_restore makes no attempt to restore any other database objects that the selected table(s) might depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that a specific-table restore into a clean database will succeed.

Note
This flag does not behave identically to the -t flag of pg_dump. There is not currently any provision for wild-card matching in pg_restore, nor can you include a schema name within its -t. And, while pg_dump's -t flag will also dump subsidiary objects (such as indexes) of the selected table(s), pg_restore's -t flag does not include such subsidiary objects.

Note
In versions prior to Postgres Pro 9.6, this flag matched only tables, not any other type of relation.

-T trigger
--trigger=trigger

Restore named trigger only. Multiple triggers may be specified with multiple -T switches.

-v
--verbose

Specifies verbose mode. This will cause pg_restore to output detailed object comments and start/stop times to the output file, and progress messages to standard error. Repeating the option causes additional debug-level messages to appear on standard error.

-V
--version

Print the pg_restore version and exit.

-x
--no-privileges
--no-acl

Prevent restoration of access privileges (grant/revoke commands).
-I
--single-transaction

Execute the restore as a single transaction (that is, wrap the emitted commands in `BEGIN/COMMIT`). This ensures that either all the commands complete successfully, or no changes are applied. This option implies --exit-on-error.

--disable-triggers

This option is relevant only when performing a data-only restore. It instructs `pg_restore` to execute commands to temporarily disable triggers on the target tables while the data is reloaded. Use this if you have referential integrity checks or other triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data reload.

Presently, the commands emitted for --disable-triggers must be done as superuser. So you should also specify a superuser name with -S or, preferably, run `pg_restore` as a Postgres Pro superuser.

--enable-row-security

This option is relevant only when restoring the contents of a table which has row security. By default, `pg_restore` will set `row_security` to off, to ensure that all data is restored in to the table. If the user does not have sufficient privileges to bypass row security, then an error is thrown. This parameter instructs `pg_restore` to set `row_security` to on instead, allowing the user to attempt to restore the contents of the table with row security enabled. This might still fail if the user does not have the right to insert the rows from the dump into the table.

Note that this option currently also requires the dump be in INSERT format, as COPY FROM does not support row security.

--if-exists

Use conditional commands (i.e., add an IF EXISTS clause) to drop database objects. This option is not valid unless --clean is also specified.

--no-comments

Do not output commands to restore comments, even if the archive contains them.

--no-data-for-failed-tables

By default, table data is restored even if the creation command for the table failed (e.g., because it already exists). With this option, data for such a table is skipped. This behavior is useful if the target database already contains the desired table contents. For example, auxiliary tables for Postgres Pro extensions such as PostGIS might already be loaded in the target database; specifying this option prevents duplicate or obsolete data from being loaded into them.

This option is effective only when restoring directly into a database, not when producing SQL script output.

--no-publications

Do not output commands to restore publications, even if the archive contains them.

--no-security-labels

Do not output commands to restore security labels, even if the archive contains them.

--no-subscriptions

Do not output commands to restore subscriptions, even if the archive contains them.

--no-tablespaces

Do not output commands to select tablespaces. With this option, all objects will be created in whichever tablespace is the default during restore.
pg_restore

--section=sectionname

Only restore the named section. The section name can be pre-data, data, or post-data. This option can be specified more than once to select multiple sections. The default is to restore all sections.

The data section contains actual table data as well as large-object definitions. Post-data items consist of definitions of indexes, triggers, rules and constraints other than validated check constraints. Pre-data items consist of all other data definition items.

--strict-names

Require that each schema (-n/--schema) and table (-t/--table) qualifier match at least one schema/table in the backup file.

--use-set-session-authorization

Output SQL-standard SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION commands instead of ALTER OWNER commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards-compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, might not restore properly.

-?
--help

Show help about pg_restore command line arguments, and exit.

pg_restore also accepts the following command line arguments for connection parameters:

-h host
--host=host

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the PGHOST environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

-p port
--port=port

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the PGPORT environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

-U username
--username=username

User name to connect as.

-w
--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W
--password

Force pg_restore to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg_restore will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg_restore will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

--role=rolename

Specifies a role name to be used to perform the restore. This option causes pg_restore to issue a SET ROLE rolename command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated user
(specified by \(-u\)) lacks privileges needed by pg_restore, but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows restores to be performed without violating the policy.

Environment

```
PGHOST
PGOPTIONS
PGPORT
PGUSER
```

Default connection parameters

```
PG_COLOR
```

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are \texttt{always}, \texttt{auto} and \texttt{never}.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15). However, it does not read \texttt{PGDATABASE} when a database name is not supplied.

Diagnostics

When a direct database connection is specified using the \(-d\) option, pg_restore internally executes SQL statements. If you have problems running pg_restore, make sure you are able to select information from the database using, for example, \texttt{psql}. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

Notes

If your installation has any local additions to the \texttt{template1} database, be careful to load the output of pg_restore into a truly empty database; otherwise you are likely to get errors due to duplicate definitions of the added objects. To make an empty database without any local additions, copy from \texttt{template0} not \texttt{template1}, for example:

```
CREATE DATABASE foo WITH TEMPLATE template0;
```

The limitations of pg_restore are detailed below.

- When restoring data to a pre-existing table and the option \--disable-triggers\ is used, pg_restore emits commands to disable triggers on user tables before inserting the data, then emits commands to re-enable them after the data has been inserted. If the restore is stopped in the middle, the system catalogs might be left in the wrong state.

- pg_restore cannot restore large objects selectively; for instance, only those for a specific table. If an archive contains large objects, then all large objects will be restored, or none of them if they are excluded via \(-L\), \(-t\), or other options.

See also the pg_dump documentation for details on limitations of pg_dump.

Once restored, it is wise to run \texttt{ANALYZE} on each restored table so the optimizer has useful statistics; see Section 23.1.3 and Section 23.1.6 for more information.

Examples

Assume we have dumped a database called \texttt{mydb} into a custom-format dump file:

```
$ pg_dump -Fc mydb > db.dump
```

To drop the database and recreate it from the dump:

```
$ dropdb mydb
$ pg_restore -C -d postgres db.dump
```
The database named in the `-d` switch can be any database existing in the cluster; `pg_restore` only uses it to issue the `CREATE DATABASE` command for `mydb`. With `-C`, data is always restored into the database name that appears in the dump file.

To reload the dump into a new database called `newdb`:

```sh
$ createdb -T template0 newdb
$ pg_restore -d newdb db.dump
```

Notice we don't use `-C`, and instead connect directly to the database to be restored into. Also note that we clone the new database from `template0` not `template1`, to ensure it is initially empty.

To reorder database items, it is first necessary to dump the table of contents of the archive:

```sh
$ pg_restore -l db.dump > db.list
```

The listing file consists of a header and one line for each item, e.g.:

```
;
; Archive created at Mon Sep 14 13:55:39 2009
;   dbname: DBDEMOS
;   TOC Entries: 81
;   Compression: 9
;   Dump Version: 1.10-0
;   Format: CUSTOM
;   Integer: 4 bytes
;   Offset: 8 bytes
;   Dumped from database version: 8.3.5
;   Dumped by pg_dump version: 8.3.8
;
;
; Selected TOC Entries:
;
3; 2615 2200 SCHEMA - public pasha
1861; 0 0 COMMENT - SCHEMA public pasha
1862; 0 0 ACL - public pasha
317; 1247 17715 TYPE public composite pasha
319; 1247 25899 DOMAIN public domain0 pasha
```

Semicolons start a comment, and the numbers at the start of lines refer to the internal archive ID assigned to each item.

Lines in the file can be commented out, deleted, and reordered. For example:

```sh
10; 145433 TABLE map_resolutions postgres
2; 145344 TABLE species postgres
4; 145359 TABLE nt_header postgres
6; 145402 TABLE species_records postgres
8; 145416 TABLE ss_old postgres
```

could be used as input to `pg_restore` and would only restore items 10 and 6, in that order:

```sh
$ pg_restore -L db.list db.dump
```

See Also

`pg_dump`, `pg_dumpall`, `psql`
pg-wrapper

pg-wrapper — manage Postgres Pro symbolic links

Synopsis

pg-wrapper links { update | remove }

Description

pg-wrapper is a shell script provided in the Postgres Pro distribution to manage Postgres Pro symbolic links for the provided programs and adjust the handling of SQL man pages on Linux systems. Since Postgres Pro is installed into /opt/pgpro/std-14, this is required to make client and server programs available in the standard system PATH and find the new SQL man pages. This setup is not performed automatically at installation time to avoid possible conflicts with other PostgreSQL-based products you may have installed, unless you have opted for using the postgrespro-std-14 quick-install package.

pg-wrapper is provided as part of the postgrespro-std-14-client package. Once this package is installed, you can find pg-wrapper in the install-dir/bin directory, where install-dir is /opt/pgpro/std-14.

pg-wrapper must be run as root.

Options

pg-wrapper accepts the following command-line arguments:

links {update | remove}

Manage Postgres Pro symbolic links and SQL man pages:

- update — create or replace symbolic links for server and client programs provided with Postgres Pro, as well as add SQL man pages to the man page configuration file.
- remove — remove symbolic links and SQL man page support for the current Postgres Pro version.

Notes

If you are installing Postgres Pro from the postgrespro-std-14 package, pg-wrapper is invoked automatically.

If you are installing individual Postgres Pro packages, you can run this script manually to create symbolic links to the provided client and server programs, as well as add SQL man pages to the man page configuration file.

For parallel installations with other PostgreSQL-based products, pg-wrapper behavior depends on whether the update-alternatives utility is supported by your system and the already installed PostgreSQL-based product:

- If update-alternatives is supported, pg-wrapper adds symbolic links to Postgres Pro programs into the alternative system, in accordance with their priority, as well as adds SQL man pages to the man page configuration file. For details on how to change the alternatives system priorities, see the man page for update-alternatives on your system.

- If SQL man pages are already installed from a different product, the pages unique for the new installation will be displayed, while the previous installation will keep its priority for all the coinciding man pages. For the new SQL documentation to be displayed for all pages, you have to modify the system configuration, for example, change the MANPATH value.

- If update-alternatives is not supported, pg-wrapper updates the system configuration only if there are no conflicts with any programs or man pages already installed. Otherwise, pg-wrapper does
not create or update any program links and skips SQL man page integration. In this case, you can either continue using the already available program versions and SQL man pages, or modify the PATH and MANPATH settings manually.

For details on binary installation specifics on Linux, see Section 16.1.
**pg_verifybackup**

`pg_verifybackup` — verify the integrity of a base backup of a PostgreSQL cluster

### Synopsis

```
pg_verifybackup [option...]  
```

### Description

`pg_verifybackup` is used to check the integrity of a database cluster backup taken using `pg_basebackup` against a `backup_manifest` generated by the server at the time of the backup. The backup must be stored in the "plain" format; a "tar" format backup can be checked after extracting it.

It is important to note that the validation which is performed by `pg_verifybackup` does not and cannot include every check which will be performed by a running server when attempting to make use of the backup. Even if you use this tool, you should still perform test restores and verify that the resulting databases work as expected and that they appear to contain the correct data. However, `pg_verifybackup` can detect many problems that commonly occur due to storage problems or user error.

Backup verification proceeds in four stages. First, `pg_verifybackup` reads the `backup_manifest` file. If that file does not exist, cannot be read, is malformed, or fails verification against its own internal checksum, `pg_verifybackup` will terminate with a fatal error.

Second, `pg_verifybackup` will attempt to verify that the data files currently stored on disk are exactly the same as the data files which the server intended to send, with some exceptions that are described below. Extra and missing files will be detected, with a few exceptions. This step will ignore the presence or absence of, or any modifications to, `postgresql.auto.conf`, `standby.signal`, and `recovery.signal`, because it is expected that these files may have been created or modified as part of the process of taking the backup. It also won’t complain about a `backup_manifest` file in the target directory or about anything inside `pg_wal`, even though these files won't be listed in the backup manifest. Only files are checked; the presence or absence of directories is not verified, except indirectly: if a directory is missing, any files it should have contained will necessarily also be missing.

Next, `pg_verifybackup` will checksum all the files, compare the checksums against the values in the manifest, and emit errors for any files for which the computed checksum does not match the checksum stored in the manifest. This step is not performed for any files which produced errors in the previous step, since they are already known to have problems. Files which were ignored in the previous step are also ignored in this step.

Finally, `pg_verifybackup` will use the manifest to verify that the write-ahead log records which will be needed to recover the backup are present and that they can be read and parsed. The `backup_manifest` contains information about which write-ahead log records will be needed, and `pg_verifybackup` will use that information to invoke `pg_waldump` to parse those write-ahead log records. The `--quiet` flag will be used, so that `pg_waldump` will only report errors, without producing any other output. While this level of verification is sufficient to detect obvious problems such as a missing file or one whose internal checksums do not match, they aren’t extensive enough to detect every possible problem that might occur when attempting to recover. For instance, a server bug that produces write-ahead log records that have the correct checksums but specify nonsensical actions can’t be detected by this method.

Note that if extra WAL files which are not required to recover the backup are present, they will not be checked by this tool, although a separate invocation of `pg_waldump` could be used for that purpose. Also note that WAL verification is version-specific: you must use the version of `pg_verifybackup`, and thus of `pg_waldump`, which pertains to the backup being checked. In contrast, the data file integrity checks should work with any version of the server that generates a `backup_manifest` file.

### Options

`pg_verifybackup` accepts the following command-line arguments:
pg_verifybackup

-e
--exit-on-error

Exit as soon as a problem with the backup is detected. If this option is not specified, pg_verifybackup will continue checking the backup even after a problem has been detected, and will report all problems detected as errors.

-i path
--ignore=path

Ignore the specified file or directory, which should be expressed as a relative path name, when comparing the list of data files actually present in the backup to those listed in the backup_manifest file. If a directory is specified, this option affects the entire subtree rooted at that location. Complaints about extra files, missing files, file size differences, or checksum mismatches will be suppressed if the relative path name matches the specified path name. This option can be specified multiple times.

-m path
--manifest-path=path

Use the manifest file at the specified path, rather than one located in the root of the backup directory.

-n
--no-parse-wal

Don't attempt to parse write-ahead log data that will be needed to recover from this backup.

-q
--quiet

Don't print anything when a backup is successfully verified.

-s
--skip-checksums

Do not verify data file checksums. The presence or absence of files and the sizes of those files will still be checked. This is much faster, because the files themselves do not need to be read.

-w path
--wal-directory=path

Try to parse WAL files stored in the specified directory, rather than in pg_wal. This may be useful if the backup is stored in a separate location from the WAL archive.

Other options are also available:

-\v
--version

Print the pg_verifybackup version and exit.

-?  
--help

Show help about pg_verifybackup command line arguments, and exit.

Examples

To create a base backup of the server at mydbserver and verify the integrity of the backup:

$ pg_basebackup -h mydbserver -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
$ pg_verifybackup /usr/local/pgsql/data

To create a base backup of the server at mydbserver, move the manifest somewhere outside the backup directory, and verify the backup:
To verify a backup while ignoring a file that was added manually to the backup directory, and also skipping checksum verification:

```
$ pg_basebackup -h mydbserver -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
$ edit /usr/local/pgsql/data/note.to.self
$ pg_verifybackup --ignore=note.to.self --skip-checksums /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

See Also

pg_basebackup
psql

psql — Postgres Pro interactive terminal

Synopsis

psql [option...] [dbname [username]]

Description

psql is a terminal-based front-end to Postgres Pro. It enables you to type in queries interactively, issue them to Postgres Pro, and see the query results. Alternatively, input can be from a file or from command line arguments. In addition, psql provides a number of meta-commands and various shell-like features to facilitate writing scripts and automating a wide variety of tasks.

Options

-a
--echo-all

Print all nonempty input lines to standard output as they are read. (This does not apply to lines read interactively.) This is equivalent to setting the variable ECHO to all.

-A
--no-align

Switches to unaligned output mode. (The default output mode is aligned.) This is equivalent to \pset format unaligned.

-b
--echo-errors

Print failed SQL commands to standard error output. This is equivalent to setting the variable ECHO to errors.

-c command
--command=command

Specifies that psql is to execute the given command string, command. This option can be repeated and combined in any order with the -f option. When either -c or -f is specified, psql does not read commands from standard input; instead it terminates after processing all the -c and -f options in sequence.

command must be either a command string that is completely parsable by the server (i.e., it contains no psql-specific features), or a single backslash command. Thus you cannot mix SQL and psql meta-commands within a -c option. To achieve that, you could use repeated -c options or pipe the string into psql, for example:

psql -c '\x' -c 'SELECT * FROM foo,'

or
echo '\x \ SELECT * FROM foo;' | psql

(\ is the separator meta-command.)

Each SQL command string passed to -c is sent to the server as a single request. Because of this, the server executes it as a single transaction even if the string contains multiple SQL commands, unless there are explicit BEGIN/COMMIT commands included in the string to divide it into multiple transactions. (See Section 51.2.2.1 for more details about how the server handles multi-query strings.) Also, psql only prints the result of the last SQL command in the string. This is different from
the behavior when the same string is read from a file or fed to psql's standard input, because then
psql sends each SQL command separately.

Because of this behavior, putting more than one SQL command in a single -c string often has
unexpected results. It's better to use repeated -c commands or feed multiple commands to psql's
standard input, either using echo as illustrated above, or via a shell here-document, for example:

```bash
psql <<EOF
  \x
  SELECT * FROM foo;
EOF
```

--csv

Switches to CSV (Comma-Separated Values) output mode. This is equivalent to `\pset format csv`.

-d dbname
--dbname=

Specifies the name of the database to connect to. This is equivalent to specifying `dbname` as the first
non-option argument on the command line. The `dbname` can be a connection string. If so, connection
string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

-e
--echo-queries

Copy all SQL commands sent to the server to standard output as well. This is equivalent to setting
the variable ECHO to queries.

-E
--echo-hidden

Echo the actual queries generated by `\d` and other backslash commands. You can use this to study
psql's internal operations. This is equivalent to setting the variable ECHO_HIDDEN to on.

-f filename
--file=filename

Read commands from the file `filename`, rather than standard input. This option can be repeated
and combined in any order with the -c option. When either -c or -f is specified, psql does not read
commands from standard input; instead it terminates after processing all the -c and -f options in
sequence. Except for that, this option is largely equivalent to the meta-command `\i`.

If `filename` is - (hyphen), then standard input is read until an EOF indication or `\q` meta-command.
This can be used to intersperse interactive input with input from files. Note however that Readline
is not used in this case (much as if `\n` had been specified).

Using this option is subtly different from writing `psql < filename`. In general, both will do what you
expect, but using -f enables some nice features such as error messages with line numbers. There is
also a slight chance that using this option will reduce the start-up overhead. On the other hand, the
variant using the shell's input redirection is (in theory) guaranteed to yield exactly the same output
you would have received had you entered everything by hand.

-F separator
--field-separator=separator

Use `separator` as the field separator for unaligned output. This is equivalent to `\pset fieldsep
or` `\f`.

-h hostname
--host=hostname

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a
slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix-domain socket.
-H
--html

Switches to HTML output mode. This is equivalent to \pset format html or the \H command.

-l
--list

List all available databases, then exit. Other non-connection options are ignored. This is similar to the meta-command \list.

When this option is used, psql will connect to the database postgres, unless a different database is named on the command line (option --d or non-option argument, possibly via a service entry, but not via an environment variable).

-L filename
--log-file=filename

Write all query output into file filename, in addition to the normal output destination.

-n
--no-readline

Do not use Readline for line editing and do not use the command history. This can be useful to turn off tab expansion when cutting and pasting.

-o filename
--output=filename

Put all query output into file filename. This is equivalent to the command \o.

-p port
--port=port

Specifies the TCP port or the local Unix-domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the value of the PGPORT environment variable or, if not set, to the port specified at compile time, usually 5432.

-P assignment
--pset=assignment

Specifies printing options, in the style of \pset. Note that here you have to separate name and value with an equal sign instead of a space. For example, to set the output format to LaTeX, you could write \P format=latex.

-q
--quiet

Specifies that psql should do its work quietly. By default, it prints welcome messages and various informational output. If this option is used, none of this happens. This is useful with the \c option. This is equivalent to setting the variable QUIET to on.

-R separator
--record-separator=separator

Use separator as the record separator for unaligned output. This is equivalent to \pset recordsep.

-s
--single-step

Run in single-step mode. That means the user is prompted before each command is sent to the server, with the option to cancel execution as well. Use this to debug scripts.
-S
--single-line

Runs in single-line mode where a newline terminates an SQL command, as a semicolon does.

Note
This mode is provided for those who insist on it, but you are not necessarily encouraged to use it. In particular, if you mix SQL and meta-commands on a line the order of execution might not always be clear to the inexperienced user.

-t
--tuples-only

Turn off printing of column names and result row count footers, etc. This is equivalent to \t or \pset tuples_only.

-T table_options
--table-attr=table_options

Specifies options to be placed within the HTML table tag. See \pset tableattr for details.

-U username
--username=username

Connect to the database as the user username instead of the default. (You must have permission to do so, of course.)

-v assignment
--set=assignment
--variable=assignment

Perform a variable assignment, like the \set meta-command. Note that you must separate name and value, if any, by an equal sign on the command line. To unset a variable, leave off the equal sign. To set a variable with an empty value, use the equal sign but leave off the value. These assignments are done during command line processing, so variables that reflect connection state will get overwritten later.

-V
--version

Print the psql version and exit.

-w
--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available from other sources such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

Note that this option will remain set for the entire session, and so it affects uses of the meta-command \connect as well as the initial connection attempt.

-W
--password

Force psql to prompt for a password before connecting to a database, even if the password will not be used.

If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available from other sources such as a .pgpass file, psql will prompt for a password in any case. However, psql will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.
Note that this option will remain set for the entire session, and so it affects uses of the meta-command \connect as well as the initial connection attempt.

-x
--expanded

Turn on the expanded table formatting mode. This is equivalent to \x or \pset expanded.

-X,
--no-psqlrc

Do not read the start-up file (neither the system-wide psqlrc file nor the user's ~/.psqlrc file).

-z
--field-separator-zero

Set the field separator for unaligned output to a zero byte. This is equivalent to \pset fieldsep_zero.

-0
--record-separator-zero

Set the record separator for unaligned output to a zero byte. This is useful for interfacing, for example, with xargs -0. This is equivalent to \pset recordsep_zero.

-1
--single-transaction

This option can only be used in combination with one or more -c and/or -f options. It causes psql to issue a BEGIN command before the first such option and a COMMIT command after the last one, thereby wrapping all the commands into a single transaction. This ensures that either all the commands complete successfully, or no changes are applied.

If the commands themselves contain BEGIN, COMMIT, or ROLLBACK, this option will not have the desired effects. Also, if an individual command cannot be executed inside a transaction block, specifying this option will cause the whole transaction to fail.

-?
--help[=topic]

Show help about psql and exit. The optional topic parameter (defaulting to options) selects which part of psql is explained: commands describes psql's backslash commands; options describes the command-line options that can be passed to psql; and variables shows help about psql configuration variables.

Exit Status

psql returns 0 to the shell if it finished normally, 1 if a fatal error of its own occurs (e.g., out of memory, file not found), 2 if the connection to the server went bad and the session was not interactive, and 3 if an error occurred in a script and the variable ON_ERROR_STOP was set.

Usage

Connecting to a Database

psql is a regular Postgres Pro client application. In order to connect to a database you need to know the name of your target database, the host name and port number of the server, and what user name you want to connect as. psql can be told about those parameters via command line options, namely -d, -h, -p, and -U respectively. If an argument is found that does not belong to any option it will be interpreted as the database name (or the user name, if the database name is already given). Not all of these options are required; there are useful defaults. If you omit the host name, psql will connect via a Unix-domain socket to a server on the local host, or via TCP/IP to localhost on machines that don’t have Unix-domain sockets. The default port number is determined at compile time. Since the database server uses the same default, you will not have to specify the port in most cases. The default user name is your operating-
system user name, as is the default database name. Note that you cannot just connect to any database under any user name. Your database administrator should have informed you about your access rights.

When the defaults aren't quite right, you can save yourself some typing by setting the environment variables `PGDATABASE`, `PGHOST`, `PGPORT` and/or `PGUSER` to appropriate values. (For additional environment variables, see Section 32.15.) It is also convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file to avoid regularly having to type in passwords. See Section 32.16 for more information.

An alternative way to specify connection parameters is in a `conninfo` string or a URL, which is used instead of a database name. This mechanism give you very wide control over the connection. For example:

```
$ psql "service=mybservice sslmode=require"
$ psql postgresql://dbmaster:5433/mydb?sslmode=require
```

This way you can also use LDAP for connection parameter lookup as described in Section 32.18. See Section 32.1.2 for more information on all the available connection options.

If the connection could not be made for any reason (e.g., insufficient privileges, server is not running on the targeted host, etc.), `psql` will return an error and terminate.

If both standard input and standard output are a terminal, then `psql` sets the client encoding to “auto”, which will detect the appropriate client encoding from the locale settings (LC_CTYPE environment variable on Unix systems). If this doesn’t work out as expected, the client encoding can be overridden using the environment variable `PGCLIENTENCODING`.

### Entering SQL Commands

In normal operation, `psql` provides a prompt with the name of the database to which `psql` is currently connected, followed by the string `=>`. For example:

```
$ psql testdb
psql (14.1.1)
Type "help" for help.

testdb=>
```

At the prompt, the user can type in SQL commands. Ordinarily, input lines are sent to the server when a command-terminating semicolon is reached. An end of line does not terminate a command. Thus commands can be spread over several lines for clarity. If the command was sent and executed without error, the results of the command are displayed on the screen.

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin your session by removing publicly-writable schemas from `search_path`. One can add `options=-csearch_path=` to the connection string or issue `SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false)` before other SQL commands. This consideration is not specific to `psql`; it applies to every interface for executing arbitrary SQL commands.

Whenever a command is executed, `psql` also polls for asynchronous notification events generated by `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY`.

While C-style block comments are passed to the server for processing and removal, SQL-standard comments are removed by `psql`.

### Meta-Commands

Anything you enter in `psql` that begins with an unquoted backslash is a `psql` meta-command that is processed by `psql` itself. These commands make `psql` more useful for administration or scripting. Meta-commands are often called slash or backslash commands.

The format of a `psql` command is the backslash, followed immediately by a command verb, then any arguments. The arguments are separated from the command verb and each other by any number of whitespace characters.
To include whitespace in an argument you can quote it with single quotes. To include a single quote in an argument, write two single quotes within single-quoted text. Anything contained in single quotes is furthermore subject to C-like substitutions for \n (new line), \t (tab), \b (backspace), \r (carriage return), \f (form feed), \digits (octal), and \xdigits (hexadecimal). A backslash preceding any other character within single-quoted text quotes that single character, whatever it is.

If an unquoted colon (:) followed by a psql variable name appears within an argument, it is replaced by the variable's value, as described in SQL Interpolation below. The forms :'variable_name' and :"variable_name" described there work as well. The :{?variable_name} syntax allows testing whether a variable is defined. It is substituted by TRUE or FALSE. Escaping the colon with a backslash protects it from substitution.

Within an argument, text that is enclosed in backquotes ('') is taken as a command line that is passed to the shell. The output of the command (with any trailing newline removed) replaces the backquoted text. Within the text enclosed in backquotes, no special quoting or other processing occurs, except that appearances of :variable_name where variable_name is a psql variable name are replaced by the variable's value. Also, appearances of :'variable_name' are replaced by the variable's value suitably quoted to become a single shell command argument. (The latter form is almost always preferable, unless you are very sure of what is in the variable.) Because carriage return and line feed characters cannot be safely quoted on all platforms, the :'variable_name' form prints an error message and does not substitute the variable value when such characters appear in the value.

Some commands take an SQL identifier (such as a table name) as argument. These arguments follow the syntax rules of SQL: Unquoted letters are forced to lowercase, while double quotes ("") protect letters from case conversion and allow incorporation of whitespace into the identifier. Within double quotes, paired double quotes reduce to a single double quote in the resulting name. For example, FOO"BAR"BAZ is interpreted as fooBARbaz, and "A weird"" name" becomes A weird" name.

Parsing for arguments stops at the end of the line, or when another unquoted backslash is found. An unquoted backslash is taken as the beginning of a new meta-command. The special sequence \ (two backslashes) marks the end of arguments and continues parsing SQL commands, if any. That way SQL and psql commands can be freely mixed on a line. But in any case, the arguments of a meta-command cannot continue beyond the end of the line.

Many of the meta-commands act on the current query buffer. This is simply a buffer holding whatever SQL command text has been typed but not yet sent to the server for execution. This will include previous input lines as well as any text appearing before the meta-command on the same line.

The following meta-commands are defined:

```
\a
```

If the current table output format is unaligned, it is switched to aligned. If it is not unaligned, it is set to unaligned. This command is kept for backwards compatibility. See \pset for a more general solution.

```
\c or \connect [ -reuse-previous=on|off ] [ dbname [ username ] [ host ] [ port ] ]
```

Establishes a new connection to a Postgres Pro server. The connection parameters to use can be specified either using a positional syntax (one or more of database name, user, host, and port), or using a conninfo Connection string as detailed in Section 32.1.1. If no arguments are given, a new connection is made using the same parameters as before. Specifying any of dbname, username, host or port as – is equivalent to omitting that parameter.

The new connection can re-use connection parameters from the previous connection; not only database name, user, host, and port, but other settings such as sslmode. By default, parameters are re-used in the positional syntax, but not when a conninfo string is given. Passing a first argument of –reuse-previous=on or –reuse-previous=off overrides that default. If parameters are re-used, then any parameter not explicitly specified as a positional parameter or in the conninfo string is taken
from the existing connection’s parameters. An exception is that if the host setting is changed from its
previous value using the positional syntax, any hostaddr setting present in the existing connection’s
parameters is dropped. Also, any password used for the existing connection will be re-used only if
the user, host, and port settings are not changed. When the command neither specifies nor reuses
a particular parameter, the libpq default is used.

If the new connection is successfully made, the previous connection is closed. If the connection
attempt fails (wrong user name, access denied, etc.), the previous connection will be kept if psql is
in interactive mode. But when executing a non-interactive script, the old connection is closed and
an error is reported. That may or may not terminate the script; if it does not, all database-accessing
commands will fail until another \connect command is successfully executed. This distinction
was chosen as a user convenience against typos on the one hand, and a safety mechanism that
scripts are not accidentally acting on the wrong database on the other hand. Note that whenever a
\connect command attempts to re-use parameters, the values re-used are those of the last successful
connection, not of any failed attempts made subsequently. However, in the case of a non-interactive
\connect failure, no parameters are allowed to be re-used later, since the script would likely be
expecting the values from the failed \connect to be re-used.

Examples:

=> \c mydb myuser host.dom 6432
=> \c service=foo
=> \c "host=localhost port=5432 dbname=mydb connect_timeout=10 sslmode=disable"
=> \c -reuse-previous=on sslmode=require -- changes only sslmode
=> \c postgresql://tom@localhost/mydb?application_name=myapp

\C [ title ]
Sets the title of any tables being printed as the result of a query or unset any such title. This command
is equivalent to \pset title title. (The name of this command derives from “caption”, as it was
previously only used to set the caption in an HTML table.)

\cd [ directory ]
Changes the current working directory to directory. Without argument, changes to the current
user’s home directory.

Tip
To print your current working directory, use \! pwd.

\conninfo
Outputs information about the current database connection.

\copy { table [ ( column_list ) ] } from { 'filename' | program 'command' | stdin | stdin } [ [ with ] ( option [, ...] ) ] [ where condition ]
\copy { table [ ( column_list ) ] } ( query ) to { 'filename' | program 'command' | stdout | pstdout } [ [ with ] ( option [, ...] ) ]

Performs a frontend (client) copy. This is an operation that runs an SQL COPY command, but instead
of the server reading or writing the specified file, psql reads or writes the file and routes the data
between the server and the local file system. This means that file accessibility and privileges are
those of the local user, not the server, and no SQL superuser privileges are required.

When program is specified, command is executed by psql and the data passed from or to command is
routed between the server and the client. Again, the execution privileges are those of the local user,
not the server, and no SQL superuser privileges are required.

For \copy ... from stdin, data rows are read from the same source that issued the command, continuing until \ is read or the stream reaches EOF. This option is useful for populating tables in-
line within an SQL script file. For \copy ... to stdout, output is sent to the same place as psql command output, and the COPY count command status is not printed (since it might be confused with a data row). To read/write psql's standard input or output regardless of the current command source or \o option, write from pstdin or to pstdout.

The syntax of this command is similar to that of the SQL COPY command. All options other than the data source/destination are as specified for COPY. Because of this, special parsing rules apply to the \copy meta-command. Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the arguments of \copy, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

### Tip

Another way to obtain the same result as \copy ... to is to use the SQL COPY ... TO STDOUT command and terminate it with \g filename or \g |program. Unlike \copy, this method allows the command to span multiple lines; also, variable interpolation and backquote expansion can be used.

### Tip

These operations are not as efficient as the SQL COPY command with a file or program data source or destination, because all data must pass through the client/server connection. For large amounts of data the SQL command might be preferable.

\copyright

Shows the copyright and distribution terms of Postgres Pro.


Executes the current query buffer (like \g) and shows the results in a crosstab grid. The query must return at least three columns. The output column identified by colV becomes a vertical header and the output column identified by colH becomes a horizontal header. colD identifies the output column to display within the grid. sortcolH identifies an optional sort column for the horizontal header.

Each column specification can be a column number (starting at 1) or a column name. The usual SQL case folding and quoting rules apply to column names. If omitted, colV is taken as column 1 and colH as column 2. colH must differ from colV. If colD is not specified, then there must be exactly three columns in the query result, and the column that is neither colV nor colH is taken to be colD.

The vertical header, displayed as the leftmost column, contains the values found in column colV, in the same order as in the query results, but with duplicates removed.

The horizontal header, displayed as the first row, contains the values found in column colH, with duplicates removed. By default, these appear in the same order as in the query results. But if the optional sortcolH argument is given, it identifies a column whose values must be integer numbers, and the values from colH will appear in the horizontal header sorted according to the corresponding sortcolH values.

Inside the crosstab grid, for each distinct value \(x\) of colH and each distinct value \(y\) of colV, the cell located at the intersection \((x, y)\) contains the value of the colD column in the query result row for which the value of colH is \(x\) and the value of colV is \(y\). If there is no such row, the cell is empty. If there are multiple such rows, an error is reported.

\d[S+] [ pattern ]

For each relation (table, view, materialized view, index, sequence, or foreign table) or composite type matching the pattern, show all columns, their types, the tablespace (if not the default) and any
special attributes such as `NOT NULL` or defaults. Associated indexes, constraints, rules, and triggers are also shown. For foreign tables, the associated foreign server is shown as well. (“Matching the pattern” is defined in Patterns below.)

For some types of relation, `\d` shows additional information for each column: column values for sequences, indexed expressions for indexes, and foreign data wrapper options for foreign tables.

The command form `\d+` is identical, except that more information is displayed: any comments associated with the columns of the table are shown, as is the presence of OIDs in the table, the view definition if the relation is a view, a non-default replica identity setting and the access method name if the relation has an access method.

By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

### Note

If `\d` is used without a pattern argument, it is equivalent to `\dtvmsE` which will show a list of all visible tables, views, materialized views, sequences and foreign tables. This is purely a convenience measure.

`\d[aS] [pattern]`

Lists aggregate functions, together with their return type and the data types they operate on. If `pattern` is specified, only aggregates whose names match the pattern are shown. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

`\dA[p+] [pattern]`

Lists access methods. If `pattern` is specified, only access methods whose names match the pattern are shown. If `-` is appended to the command name, each access method is listed with its associated handler function and description.

`\dAc[p+] [access-method-pattern [input-type-pattern]]`

Lists operator classes (see Section 36.16.1). If `access-method-pattern` is specified, only operator classes associated with access methods whose names match that pattern are listed. If `input-type-pattern` is specified, only operator classes associated with input types whose names match that pattern are listed. If `-` is appended to the command name, each operator class is listed with its associated operator family and owner.

`\dAf[p+] [access-method-pattern [input-type-pattern]]`

Lists operator families (see Section 36.16.5). If `access-method-pattern` is specified, only operator families associated with access methods whose names match that pattern are listed. If `input-type-pattern` is specified, only operator families associated with input types whose names match that pattern are listed. If `-` is appended to the command name, each operator family is listed with its owner.

`\dAo[p+] [access-method-pattern [operator-family-pattern]]`

Lists operators associated with operator families (see Section 36.16.2). If `access-method-pattern` is specified, only members of operator families associated with access methods whose names match that pattern are listed. If `operator-family-pattern` is specified, only members of operator families whose names match that pattern are listed. If `-` is appended to the command name, each operator is listed with its sort operator family (if it is an ordering operator).

`\dAp[p+] [access-method-pattern [operator-family-pattern]]`

Lists support functions associated with operator families (see Section 36.16.3). If `access-method-pattern` is specified, only functions of operator families associated with access methods whose names
match that pattern are listed. If \texttt{operator-family-pattern} is specified, only functions of operator families whose names match that pattern are listed. If \texttt{+} is appended to the command name, functions are displayed verbosely, with their actual parameter lists.

\texttt{\textbackslash db}\texttt{[\texttt{+}] \ [ pattern ]}

Lists tablespaces. If \texttt{pattern} is specified, only tablespaces whose names match the pattern are shown. If \texttt{+} is appended to the command name, each tablespace is listed with its associated options, on-disk size, permissions and description.

\texttt{\textbackslash dc}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]+} \ [ pattern ]

Lists conversions between character-set encodings. If \texttt{pattern} is specified, only conversions whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the \texttt{S} modifier to include system objects. If \texttt{+} is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

\texttt{\textbackslash dc}\texttt{[\texttt{+}] \ [ pattern ]}

Lists type casts. If \texttt{pattern} is specified, only casts whose source or target types match the pattern are listed. If \texttt{+} is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

\texttt{\textbackslash dd}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]} \ [ pattern ]

Shows the descriptions of objects of type \texttt{constraint}, \texttt{operator class}, \texttt{operator family}, \texttt{rule}, and \texttt{trigger}. All other comments may be viewed by the respective backslash commands for those object types.

\texttt{\textbackslash dd} displays descriptions for objects matching the \texttt{pattern}, or of visible objects of the appropriate type if no argument is given. But in either case, only objects that have a description are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the \texttt{S} modifier to include system objects.

Descriptions for objects can be created with the \texttt{COMMENT} SQL command.

\texttt{\textbackslash dD}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]+} \ [ pattern ]

Lists domains. If \texttt{pattern} is specified, only domains whose names match the pattern are shown. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the \texttt{S} modifier to include system objects. If \texttt{+} is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated permissions and description.

\texttt{\textbackslash ddp} \ [ pattern ]

Lists default access privilege settings. An entry is shown for each role (and schema, if applicable) for which the default privilege settings have been changed from the built-in defaults. If \texttt{pattern} is specified, only entries whose role name or schema name matches the pattern are listed.

The \texttt{ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES} command is used to set default access privileges. The meaning of the privilege display is explained in \texttt{Section 5.7}.

\texttt{\textbackslash dE}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]+} \ [ pattern ]
\texttt{\textbackslash di}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]+} \ [ pattern ]
\texttt{\textbackslash dm}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]+} \ [ pattern ]
\texttt{\textbackslash ds}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]+} \ [ pattern ]
\texttt{\textbackslash dt}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]+} \ [ pattern ]
\texttt{\textbackslash dv}\texttt{[\texttt{S}]+} \ [ pattern ]

In this group of commands, the letters \texttt{E}, \texttt{i}, \texttt{m}, \texttt{s}, \texttt{t}, and \texttt{v} stand for foreign table, index, materialized view, sequence, table, and view, respectively. You can specify any or all of these letters, in any order, to obtain a listing of objects of these types. For example, \texttt{\textbackslash dti} lists tables and indexes. If \texttt{+} is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its persistence status (permanent, temporary, or unlogged), physical size on disk, and associated description if any. If \texttt{pattern} is specified, only objects
whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the $S$ modifier to include system objects.

\des[+][pattern]

Lists foreign servers (mnemonic: “external servers”). If pattern is specified, only those servers whose name matches the pattern are listed. If the form \des+ is used, a full description of each server is shown, including the server’s access privileges, type, version, options, and description.

\det[+][pattern]

Lists foreign tables (mnemonic: “external tables”). If pattern is specified, only entries whose table name or schema name matches the pattern are listed. If the form \det+ is used, generic options and the foreign table description are also displayed.

\deu[+][pattern]

Lists user mappings (mnemonic: “external users”). If pattern is specified, only those mappings whose user names match the pattern are listed. If the form \deu+ is used, additional information about each mapping is shown.

Caution
\deu+ might also display the user name and password of the remote user, so care should be taken not to disclose them.

\dew[+][pattern]

Lists foreign-data wrappers (mnemonic: “external wrappers”). If pattern is specified, only those foreign-data wrappers whose name matches the pattern are listed. If the form \dew+ is used, the access privileges, options, and description of the foreign-data wrapper are also shown.

\df[anptwS+][pattern][arg_pattern ...]

Lists functions, together with their result data types, argument data types, and function types, which are classified as “agg” (aggregate), “normal”, “procedure”, “trigger”, or “window”. To display only functions of specific type(s), add the corresponding letters $a$, $n$, $p$, $t$, or $w$ to the command. If pattern is specified, only functions whose names match the pattern are shown. Any additional arguments are type-name patterns, which are matched to the type names of the first, second, and so on arguments of the function. (Matching functions can have more arguments than what you specify. To prevent that, write a dash – as the last arg_pattern.) By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the $S$ modifier to include system objects. If the form \df+ is used, additional information about each function is shown, including volatility, parallel safety, owner, security classification, access privileges, language, source code and description.

\dF[+][pattern]

Lists text search configurations. If pattern is specified, only configurations whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form \dF+ is used, a full description of each configuration is shown, including the underlying text search parser and the dictionary list for each parser token type.

\dFd[+][pattern]

Lists text search dictionaries. If pattern is specified, only dictionaries whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form \dFd+ is used, additional information is shown about each selected dictionary, including the underlying text search template and the option values.

\dFp[+][pattern]

Lists text search parsers. If pattern is specified, only parsers whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form \dFp+ is used, a full description of each parser is shown, including the underlying functions and the list of recognized token types.
\dFt[+][ pattern ]

Lists text search templates. If pattern is specified, only templates whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form \dFt+ is used, additional information is shown about each template, including the underlying function names.

\dg[S+][ pattern ]

Lists database roles. (Since the concepts of “users” and “groups” have been unified into “roles”, this command is now equivalent to \du.) By default, only user-created roles are shown; supply the S modifier to include system roles. If pattern is specified, only those roles whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form \dg+ is used, additional information is shown about each role; currently this adds the comment for each role.

This is an alias for \lo_list, which shows a list of large objects.

\dl

This is an alias for \lo_list, which shows a list of large objects.

\dl[S+][ pattern ]

Lists procedural languages. If pattern is specified, only languages whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created languages are shown; supply the S modifier to include system objects. If + is appended to the command name, each language is listed with its call handler, validator, access privileges, and whether it is a system object.

\dn[S+][ pattern ]

Lists schemas (namespaces). If pattern is specified, only schemas whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the S modifier to include system objects. If + is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated permissions and description, if any.

\do[S+][ pattern [ arg_pattern [ arg_pattern ] ] ]

Lists operators with their operand and result types. If pattern is specified, only operators whose names match the pattern are listed. If one arg_pattern is specified, only prefix operators whose right argument’s type name matches that pattern are listed. If two arg_patterns are specified, only binary operators whose argument type names match those patterns are listed. (Alternatively, write - for the unused argument of a unary operator.) By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the S modifier to include system objects. If + is appended to the command name, additional information about each operator is shown, currently just the name of the underlying function.

\dO[S+][ pattern ]

Lists collations. If pattern is specified, only collations whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the S modifier to include system objects. If + is appended to the command name, each collation is listed with its associated description, if any. Note that only collations usable with the current database’s encoding are shown, so the results may vary in different databases of the same installation.

\dp[ pattern ]

Lists tables, views and sequences with their associated access privileges. If pattern is specified, only tables, views and sequences whose names match the pattern are listed.

The GRANT and REVOKE commands are used to set access privileges. The meaning of the privilege display is explained in Section 5.7.

\dP[itn+][ pattern ]

Lists partitioned relations. If pattern is specified, only entries whose name matches the pattern are listed. The modifiers t (tables) and i (indexes) can be appended to the command, filtering the kind of relations to list. By default, partitioned tables and indexes are listed.
If the modifier \( n \) ("nested") is used, or a pattern is specified, then non-root partitioned relations are included, and a column is shown displaying the parent of each partitioned relation.

If \( + \) is appended to the command name, the sum of the sizes of each relation's partitions is also displayed, along with the relation's description. If \( n \) is combined with \( + \), two sizes are shown: one including the total size of directly-attached leaf partitions, and another showing the total size of all partitions, including indirectly attached sub-partitions.

\( \texttt{\textasciicircum d\texttt{rds} [ \ role-pattern [ \ database-pattern ] \ ]} \)

Lists defined configuration settings. These settings can be role-specific, database-specific, or both. \( \texttt{role-pattern} \) and \( \texttt{database-pattern} \) are used to select specific roles and databases to list, respectively. If omitted, or if \( * \) is specified, all settings are listed, including those not role-specific or database-specific, respectively.

The \texttt{ALTER ROLE} and \texttt{ALTER DATABASE} commands are used to define per-role and per-database configuration settings.

\( \texttt{\textasciicircum d\texttt{R}p[+] [ \ pattern ]} \)

Lists replication publications. If \( \texttt{pattern} \) is specified, only those publications whose names match the pattern are listed. If \( + \) is appended to the command name, the tables associated with each publication are shown as well.

\( \texttt{\textasciicircum d\texttt{Rs}[+] [ \ pattern ]} \)

Lists replication subscriptions. If \( \texttt{pattern} \) is specified, only those subscriptions whose names match the pattern are listed. If \( + \) is appended to the command name, additional properties of the subscriptions are shown.

\( \texttt{\textasciicircum d\texttt{T}[S+] [ \ pattern ]} \)

Lists data types. If \( \texttt{pattern} \) is specified, only types whose names match the pattern are listed. If \( + \) is appended to the command name, each type is listed with its internal name and size, its allowed values if it is an \texttt{enum} type, and its associated permissions. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the \texttt{S} modifier to include system objects.

\( \texttt{\textasciicircum d\texttt{u}[S+] [ \ pattern ]} \)

Lists database roles. (Since the concepts of “users” and “groups” have been unified into “roles”, this command is now equivalent to \texttt{\textasciicircum dg}.) By default, only user-created roles are shown; supply the \texttt{S} modifier to include system roles. If \( \texttt{pattern} \) is specified, only those roles whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form \texttt{\textasciicircum du+} is used, additional information is shown about each role; currently this adds the comment for each role.

\( \texttt{\textasciicircum d\texttt{uP} [ \ pattern ]} \)

Lists profiles. If \( \texttt{pattern} \) is specified, only those profiles whose names match the pattern are listed. This command is only available for superusers.

\( \texttt{\textasciicircum dx[+] [ \ pattern ]} \)

Lists installed extensions. If \( \texttt{pattern} \) is specified, only those extensions whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form \texttt{\textasciicircum dx+} is used, all the objects belonging to each matching extension are listed.

\( \texttt{\textasciicircum dx [ \ pattern ]} \)

Lists extended statistics. If \( \texttt{pattern} \) is specified, only those extended statistics whose names match the pattern are listed.

The status of each kind of extended statistics is shown in a column named after its statistic kind (e.g. \texttt{Ndistinct}). \texttt{defined} means that it was requested when creating the statistics, and \texttt{NULL} means
it wasn't requested. You can use `pg_stats_ext` if you'd like to know whether `ANALYZE` was run and statistics are available to the planner:

```
dy[+] [ pattern ]
```

Lists event triggers. If `pattern` is specified, only those event triggers whose names match the pattern are listed. If `+` is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

```
e or \edit [ filename ] [ line_number ]
```

If `filename` is specified, the file is edited; after the editor exits, the file's content is copied into the current query buffer. If no `filename` is given, the current query buffer is copied to a temporary file which is then edited in the same fashion. Or, if the current query buffer is empty, the most recently executed query is copied to a temporary file and edited in the same fashion.

If you edit a file or the previous query, and you quit the editor without modifying the file, the query buffer is cleared. Otherwise, the new contents of the query buffer are re-parsed according to the normal rules of psql, treating the whole buffer as a single line. Any complete queries are immediately executed; that is, if the query buffer contains or ends with a semicolon, everything up to that point is executed and removed from the query buffer. Whatever remains in the query buffer is redisplayed. Type `semicolon` or `\g` to send it, or `\r` to cancel it by clearing the query buffer.

Treating the buffer as a single line primarily affects meta-commands: whatever is in the buffer after a meta-command will be taken as argument(s) to the meta-command, even if it spans multiple lines. (Thus you cannot make meta-command-using scripts this way. Use `\i` for that.)

If a line number is specified, psql will position the cursor on the specified line of the file or query buffer. Note that if a single all-digits argument is given, psql assumes it is a line number, not a file name.

```
\echo text [ ... ]
```

Prints the evaluated arguments to standard output, separated by spaces and followed by a newline. This can be useful to intersperse information in the output of scripts. For example:

```
=> \echo `date`
Tue Oct 26 21:40:57 CEST 1999
```

If the first argument is an unquoted `-n` the trailing newline is not written (nor is the first argument).

```
\ef [ function_description [ line_number ] ]
```

This command fetches and edits the definition of the named function or procedure, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` or `CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE` command. Editing is done in the same way as for `\edit`. If you quit the editor without saving, the statement is discarded. If you save and exit the editor, the updated command is executed immediately if you added a semicolon to it. Otherwise it is redisplayed; type `semicolon` or `\g` to send it, or `\r` to cancel.

The target function can be specified by name alone, or by name and arguments, for example `foo(integer, text)`. The argument types must be given if there is more than one function of the same name.
If no function is specified, a blank `CREATE FUNCTION` template is presented for editing.

If a line number is specified, `psql` will position the cursor on the specified line of the function body. (Note that the function body typically does not begin on the first line of the file.)

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\ef`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

**Tip**
See Environment, below, for how to configure and customize your editor.

`\encoding [ encoding ]`
Sets the client character set encoding. Without an argument, this command shows the current encoding.

`\errverbose`
Repeats the most recent server error message at maximum verbosity, as though `VERBOSITY` were set to `verbose` and `SHOW_CONTEXT` were set to `always`.

`\ev [ view_name [ line_number ] ]`
This command fetches and edits the definition of the named view, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` command. Editing is done in the same way as for `\edit`. If you quit the editor without saving, the statement is discarded. If you save and exit the editor, the updated command is executed immediately if you added a semicolon to it. Otherwise it is redisplayed; type semicolon or `\g` to send it, or `\r` to cancel.

If no view is specified, a blank `CREATE VIEW` template is presented for editing.

If a line number is specified, `psql` will position the cursor on the specified line of the view definition.

Unlike most other meta-commands, `psql` will position the cursor on the specified line of the view definition.

If no view is specified, a blank `CREATE VIEW` template is presented for editing.

If a line number is specified, `psql` will position the cursor on the specified line of the view definition.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\ev`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

`\f [ string ]`
Sets the field separator for unaligned query output. The default is the vertical bar (|). It is equivalent to `\pset fieldsep`.

`\g [ (option=value [ ... ]) ] [ filename ]`  
`\g [ (option=value [ ... ]) ] [ |command ]`
Sends the current query buffer to the server for execution.

If parentheses appear after `\g`, they surround a space-separated list of `option=value` formatting-option clauses, which are interpreted in the same way as `\pset option value` commands, but take effect only for the duration of this query. In this list, spaces are not allowed around `=` signs, but are required between option clauses. If `=value` is omitted, the named `option` is changed in the same way as for `\pset option` with no explicit `value`.

If a `filename` or `|command` argument is given, the query's output is written to the named file or piped to the given shell command, instead of displaying it as usual. The file or command is written to only if the query successfully returns zero or more tuples, not if the query fails or is a non-data-returning SQL command.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is re-executed instead. Except for that behavior, `\g` without any arguments is essentially equivalent to a semicolon. With arguments, `\g`
provides a “one-shot” alternative to the $\text{o}$ command, and additionally allows one-shot adjustments of the output formatting options normally set by $\text{pset}$.

When the last argument begins with $|$, the entire remainder of the line is taken to be the $\text{command}$ to execute, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in it. The rest of the line is simply passed literally to the shell.

$\text{gdesc}$

Shows the description (that is, the column names and data types) of the result of the current query buffer. The query is not actually executed; however, if it contains some type of syntax error, that error will be reported in the normal way.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is described instead.

$\text{gexec}$

Sends the current query buffer to the server, then treats each column of each row of the query's output (if any) as an SQL statement to be executed. For example, to create an index on each column of $\text{my_table}$:

```sql
=> SELECT format('create index on my_table(%I)', attname)
-> FROM pg_attribute
-> WHERE attrelid = 'my_table'::regclass AND attnum > 0
-> ORDER BY attnum
-> \gexec
CREATE INDEX
CREATE INDEX
CREATE INDEX
CREATE INDEX
```

The generated queries are executed in the order in which the rows are returned, and left-to-right within each row if there is more than one column. NULL fields are ignored. The generated queries are sent literally to the server for processing, so they cannot be psql meta-commands nor contain psql variable references. If any individual query fails, execution of the remaining queries continues unless $\text{ON_ERROR_STOP}$ is set. Execution of each query is subject to $\text{ECHO}$ processing. (Setting $\text{ECHO}$ to all or queries is often advisable when using $\text{gexec}$.) Query logging, single-step mode, timing, and other query execution features apply to each generated query as well.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is re-executed instead.

$\text{gset} \ [ \text{prefix} \ ]$

Sends the current query buffer to the server and stores the query's output into psql variables (see $\text{Variables}$ below). The query to be executed must return exactly one row. Each column of the row is stored into a separate variable, named the same as the column. For example:

```sql
=> SELECT 'hello' AS var1, 10 AS var2
-> \gset
=> \echo :var1 :var2
hello 10
```

If you specify a $\text{prefix}$, that string is prepended to the query's column names to create the variable names to use:

```sql
=> SELECT 'hello' AS var1, 10 AS var2
-> \gset result_
=> \echo :result_var1 :result_var2
hello 10
```

If a column result is NULL, the corresponding variable is unset rather than being set.

If the query fails or does not return one row, no variables are changed.
If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is re-executed instead.

```
gx [ (option=value [...] ) ] [ filename ]
gx [ (option=value [...] ) ] [ | command ]
```

`gx` is equivalent to `g`, except that it forces expanded output mode for this query, as if `expanded=on` were included in the list of `pset` options. See also `x`.

```
h or \help [ command ]
```

Gives syntax help on the specified SQL command. If `command` is not specified, then `psql` will list all the commands for which syntax help is available. If `command` is an asterisk (`*`), then syntax help on all SQL commands is shown.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\help`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

**Note**

To simplify typing, commands that consists of several words do not have to be quoted. Thus it is fine to type `\help alter table`.

```
\H or \html
```

Turns on HTML query output format. If the HTML format is already on, it is switched back to the default aligned text format. This command is for compatibility and convenience, but see `\pset` about setting other output options.

```
\i or \include filename
```

Reads input from the file `filename` and executes it as though it had been typed on the keyboard.

If `filename` is `-` (hyphen), then standard input is read until an EOF indication or `\q` meta-command. This can be used to intersperse interactive input with input from files. Note that Readline behavior will be used only if it is active at the outermost level.

**Note**

If you want to see the lines on the screen as they are read you must set the variable `ECHO` to `all`.

```
\if expression
\elif expression
\else
\endif
```

This group of commands implements nestable conditional blocks. A conditional block must begin with an `\if` and end with an `\endif`. In between there may be any number of `\elif` clauses, which may optionally be followed by a single `\else` clause. Ordinary queries and other types of backslash commands may (and usually do) appear between the commands forming a conditional block.

The `\if` and `\elif` commands read their argument(s) and evaluate them as a Boolean expression. If the expression yields `true` then processing continues normally; otherwise, lines are skipped until a matching `\elif`, `\else`, or `\endif` is reached. Once an `\if` or `\elif` test has succeeded, the arguments of later `\elif` commands in the same block are not evaluated but are treated as false. Lines following an `\else` are processed only if no earlier matching `\if` or `\elif` succeeded.

The `expression` argument of an `\if` or `\elif` command is subject to variable interpolation and backquote expansion, just like any other backslash command argument. After that it is evaluated like
the value of an on/off option variable. So a valid value is any unambiguous case-insensitive match for one of: true, false, 1, 0, on, off, yes, no. For example, t, T, and tR will all be considered to be true.

Expressions that do not properly evaluate to true or false will generate a warning and be treated as false.

Lines being skipped are parsed normally to identify queries and backslash commands, but queries are not sent to the server, and backslash commands other than conditionals (\if, \elif, \else, \ENDIF) are ignored. Conditional commands are checked only for valid nesting. Variable references in skipped lines are not expanded, and backquote expansion is not performed either.

All the backslash commands of a given conditional block must appear in the same source file. If EOF is reached on the main input file or an \include-ed file before all local \if-blocks have been closed, then psql will raise an error.

Here is an example:

```
-- check for the existence of two separate records in the database and store
-- the results in separate psql variables
SELECT
    EXISTS(SELECT 1 FROM customer WHERE customer_id = 123) as is_customer,
    EXISTS(SELECT 1 FROM employee WHERE employee_id = 456) as is_employee
\gset
\if :is_customer
    SELECT * FROM customer WHERE customer_id = 123;
\elif :is_employee
    \echo 'is not a customer but is an employee'
    SELECT * FROM employee WHERE employee_id = 456;
\else
    \if yes
        \echo 'not a customer or employee'
    \else
        \echo 'this will never print'
    \endif
\endif
\ir or \include_relative filename
```

The \ir command is similar to \i, but resolves relative file names differently. When executing in interactive mode, the two commands behave identically. However, when invoked from a script, \ir interprets file names relative to the directory in which the script is located, rather than the current working directory.

```
\l[+] or \list[+] [ pattern ]
```

List the databases in the server and show their names, owners, character set encodings, and access privileges. If pattern is specified, only databases whose names match the pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, database sizes, default tablespaces, and descriptions are also displayed. (Size information is only available for databases that the current user can connect to.)

```
\lo_export loid filename
```

Reads the large object with OID loid from the database and writes it to filename. Note that this is subtly different from the server function lo_export, which acts with the permissions of the user that the database server runs as and on the server’s file system.

```
Tip
Use \lo_list to find out the large object’s OID.
```
\lo_import filename [ comment ]

Stores the file into a Postgres Pro large object. Optionally, it associates the given comment with the object. Example:

```
foo=> \lo_import '/home/peter/pictures/photo.xcf' 'a picture of me'
lo_import 152801
```

The response indicates that the large object received object ID 152801, which can be used to access the newly-created large object in the future. For the sake of readability, it is recommended to always associate a human-readable comment with every object. Both OIDs and comments can be viewed with the \lo_list command.

Note that this command is subtly different from the server-side lo_import because it acts as the local user on the local file system, rather than the server’s user and file system.

\lo_list

Shows a list of all Postgres Pro large objects currently stored in the database, along with any comments provided for them.

\lo_unlink loid

Deletes the large object with OID loid from the database.

---

**Tip**

Use \lo_list to find out the large object’s OID.

---

\o or \out [ filename ]
\o or \out [ \| command ]

Arranges to save future query results to the file filename or pipe future results to the shell command command. If no argument is specified, the query output is reset to the standard output.

If the argument begins with |, then the entire remainder of the line is taken to be the command to execute, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in it. The rest of the line is simply passed literally to the shell.

“Query results” includes all tables, command responses, and notices obtained from the database server, as well as output of various backslash commands that query the database (such as \d); but not error messages.

---

**Tip**

To intersperse text output in between query results, use \qecho.

---

\p or \print

Print the current query buffer to the standard output. If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently executed query is printed instead.

\password [ username ]

Changes the password of the specified user (by default, the current user). This command prompts for the new password, encrypts it, and sends it to the server as an ALTER ROLE command. This makes sure that the new password does not appear in cleartext in the command history, the server log, or elsewhere.

\prompt [ text ] name

Prompts the user to supply text, which is assigned to the variable name. An optional prompt string, text, can be specified. (For multiword prompts, surround the text with single quotes.)
By default, `\prompt` uses the terminal for input and output. However, if the `-f` command line switch was used, `\prompt` uses standard input and standard output.

`\pset [ option [ value ] ]`

This command sets options affecting the output of query result tables. `option` indicates which option is to be set. The semantics of `value` vary depending on the selected option. For some options, omitting `value` causes the option to be toggled or unset, as described under the particular option. If no such behavior is mentioned, then omitting `value` just results in the current setting being displayed.

`\pset` without any arguments displays the current status of all printing options.

Adjustable printing options are:

**border**

The `value` must be a number. In general, the higher the number the more borders and lines the tables will have, but details depend on the particular format. In HTML format, this will translate directly into the `border=...` attribute. In most other formats only values 0 (no border), 1 (internal dividing lines), and 2 (table frame) make sense, and values above 2 will be treated the same as `border = 2`. The `latex` and `latex-longtable` formats additionally allow a value of 3 to add dividing lines between data rows.

**columns**

Sets the target width for the `wrapped` format, and also the width limit for determining whether output is wide enough to require the pager or switch to the vertical display in expanded auto mode. Zero (the default) causes the target width to be controlled by the environment variable `COLUMNS`, or the detected screen width if `COLUMNS` is not set. In addition, if `columns` is zero then the `wrapped` format only affects screen output. If `columns` is nonzero then file and pipe output is wrapped to that width as well.

**csv_fieldsep**

Specifies the field separator to be used in CSV output format. If the separator character appears in a field's value, that field is output within double quotes, following standard CSV rules. The default is a comma.

**expanded (or x)**

If `value` is specified it must be either `on` or `off`, which will enable or disable expanded mode, or `auto`. If `value` is omitted the command toggles between the on and off settings. When expanded mode is enabled, query results are displayed in two columns, with the column name on the left and the data on the right. This mode is useful if the data wouldn't fit on the screen in the normal “horizontal” mode. In the auto setting, the expanded mode is used whenever the query output has more than one column and is wider than the screen; otherwise, the regular mode is used. The auto setting is only effective in the aligned and wrapped formats. In other formats, it always behaves as if the expanded mode is off.

**fieldsep**

Specifies the field separator to be used in unaligned output format. That way one can create, for example, tab-separated output, which other programs might prefer. To set a tab as field separator, type `\pset fieldsep '\t'`. The default field separator is ' | ' (a vertical bar).

**fieldsep_zero**

Sets the field separator to use in unaligned output format to a zero byte.

**footer**

If `value` is specified it must be either `on` or `off`, which will enable or disable display of the table footer (the `(n rows)` count). If `value` is omitted the command toggles footer display on or off.
format

Sets the output format to one of aligned, asciidoc, csv, html, latex, latex-longtable, troff-ms, unaligned, or wrapped. Unique abbreviations are allowed.

aligned format is the standard, human-readable, nicely formatted text output; this is the default.

unaligned format writes all columns of a row on one line, separated by the currently active field separator. This is useful for creating output that might be intended to be read in by other programs, for example, tab-separated or comma-separated format. However, the field separator character is not treated specially if it appears in a column's value; so CSV format may be better suited for such purposes.

csv format writes column values separated by commas, applying the quoting rules described in RFC 4180. This output is compatible with the CSV format of the server's COPY command. A header line with column names is generated unless the tuples_only parameter is on. Titles and footers are not printed. Each row is terminated by the system-dependent end-of-line character, which is typically a single newline (\n) for Unix-like systems or a carriage return and newline sequence (\r\n) for Microsoft Windows. Field separator characters other than comma can be selected with \pset csv_fieldsep.

wrapped format is like aligned but wraps wide data values across lines to make the output fit in the target column width. The target width is determined as described under the columns option. Note that psql will not attempt to wrap column header titles; therefore, wrapped format behaves the same as aligned if the total width needed for column headers exceeds the target.

The asciidoc, html, latex, latex-longtable, and troff-ms formats put out tables that are intended to be included in documents using the respective mark-up language. They are not complete documents! This might not be necessary in HTML, but in LaTeX you must have a complete document wrapper. The latex format uses LaTeX's tabular environment. The latex-longtable format requires the LaTeX longtable and booktabs packages.

linestyle

Sets the border line drawing style to one of ascii, old-ascii, or unicode. Unique abbreviations are allowed. (That would mean one letter is enough.) The default setting is ascii. This option only affects the aligned and wrapped output formats.

ascii style uses plain ASCII characters. Newlines in data are shown using a + symbol in the right-hand margin. When the wrapped format wraps data from one line to the next without a newline character, a dot (.) is shown in the right-hand margin of the first line, and again in the left-hand margin of the following line.

old-ascii style uses plain ASCII characters, using the formatting style used in PostgreSQL 8.4 and earlier. Newlines in data are shown using a : symbol in place of the left-hand column separator. When the data is wrapped from one line to the next without a newline character, a ; symbol is used in place of the left-hand column separator.

unicode style uses Unicode box-drawing characters. Newlines in data are shown using a carriage return symbol in the right-hand margin. When the data is wrapped from one line to the next without a newline character, an ellipsis symbol is shown in the right-hand margin of the first line, and again in the left-hand margin of the following line.

When the border setting is greater than zero, the linestyle option also determines the characters with which the border lines are drawn. Plain ASCII characters work everywhere, but Unicode characters look nicer on displays that recognize them.

null

Sets the string to be printed in place of a null value. The default is to print nothing, which can easily be mistaken for an empty string. For example, one might prefer \pset null '(null)'.
numericlocale

If value is specified it must be either on or off which will enable or disable display of a locale-specific character to separate groups of digits to the left of the decimal marker. If value is omitted the command toggles between regular and locale-specific numeric output.

pager

Controls use of a pager program for query and psql help output. If the environment variable PSQL_PAGER or PAGER is set, the output is piped to the specified program. Otherwise a platform-dependent default program (such as more) is used.

When the pager option is off, the pager program is not used. When the pager option is on, the pager is used when appropriate, i.e., when the output is to a terminal and will not fit on the screen. The pager option can also be set to always, which causes the pager to be used for all terminal output regardless of whether it fits on the screen. \pset pager without a value toggles pager use on and off.

pager_min_lines

If pager_min_lines is set to a number greater than the page height, the pager program will not be called unless there are at least this many lines of output to show. The default setting is 0.

recordsep

Specifies the record (line) separator to use in unaligned output format. The default is a newline character.

recordsep_zero

Sets the record separator to use in unaligned output format to a zero byte.

tableattr (or T)

In HTML format, this specifies attributes to be placed inside the table tag. This could for example be cellpadding or bgcolor. Note that you probably don’t want to specify border here, as that is already taken care of by \pset border. If no value is given, the table attributes are unset.

In latex-longtable format, this controls the proportional width of each column containing a left-aligned data type. It is specified as a whitespace-separated list of values, e.g., '0.2 0.2 0.6'. Unspecified output columns use the last specified value.

title (or C)

Sets the table title for any subsequently printed tables. This can be used to give your output descriptive tags. If no value is given, the title is unset.

tuples_only (or t)

If value is specified it must be either on or off which will enable or disable tuples-only mode. If value is omitted the command toggles between regular and tuples-only output. Regular output includes extra information such as column headers, titles, and various footers. In tuples-only mode, only actual table data is shown.

unicode_border_linestyle

Sets the border drawing style for the unicode line style to one of single or double.

unicode_column_linestyle

Sets the column drawing style for the unicode line style to one of single or double.

unicode_header_linestyle

Sets the header drawing style for the unicode line style to one of single or double.
Illustrations of how these different formats look can be seen in Examples, below.

**Tip**

There are various shortcut commands for `\pset`. See `\a`, `\c`, `\f`, `\H`, `\t`, `\T`, and `\x`.

\q or \quit

Quits the psql program. In a script file, only execution of that script is terminated.

\qecho text [ ... ]

This command is identical to `\echo` except that the output will be written to the query output channel, as set by `\o`.

\r or \reset

Resets (clears) the query buffer.

\s [ filename ]

Print psql's command line history to `filename`. If `filename` is omitted, the history is written to the standard output (using the pager if appropriate). This command is not available if psql was built without Readline support.

\set [ name [ value [ ... ] ] ]

Sets the psql variable `name` to `value`, or if more than one value is given, to the concatenation of all of them. If only one argument is given, the variable is set to an empty-string value. To unset a variable, use the `\unset` command.

\set without any arguments displays the names and values of all currently-set psql variables.

Valid variable names can contain letters, digits, and underscores. See Variables below for details. Variable names are case-sensitive.

Certain variables are special, in that they control psql's behavior or are automatically set to reflect connection state. These variables are documented in Variables, below.

**Note**

This command is unrelated to the SQL command `SET`.

\setenv name [ value ]

Sets the environment variable `name` to `value`, or if the `value` is not supplied, unsets the environment variable. Example:

```
testdb=> \setenv PAGER less
testdb=> \setenv LESS -imx4F
```

\sf[+] function_description

This command fetches and shows the definition of the named function or procedure, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` or `CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE` command. The definition is printed to the current query output channel, as set by `\o`.

The target function can be specified by name alone, or by name and arguments, for example `foo(integer, text)`. The argument types must be given if there is more than one function of the same name.

If `+` is appended to the command name, then the output lines are numbered, with the first line of the function body being line 1.
Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\sv`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

`\sv[+] view_name`

This command fetches and shows the definition of the named view, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` command. The definition is printed to the current query output channel, as set by `\o`.

If `+` is appended to the command name, then the output lines are numbered from 1.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\sv`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

`\t`

Toggles the display of output column name headings and row count footer. This command is equivalent to `\pset tuples_only` and is provided for convenience.

`\T table_options`

Specifies attributes to be placed within the `table` tag in HTML output format. This command is equivalent to `\pset tableattr table_options`.

`\timing [ on | off ]`

With a parameter, turns displaying of how long each SQL statement takes on or off. Without a parameter, toggles the display between on and off. The display is in milliseconds; intervals longer than 1 second are also shown in minutes:seconds format, with hours and days fields added if needed.

`\unset name`

Unsets (deletes) the psql variable `name`.

Most variables that control psql’s behavior cannot be unset; instead, an `\unset` command is interpreted as setting them to their default values. See Variables below.

`\w` or `\write filename`

`\w` or `\write |command`

Writes the current query buffer to the file `filename` or pipes it to the shell command `command`. If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently executed query is written instead.

If the argument begins with `|`, then the entire remainder of the line is taken to be the `command` to execute, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in it. The rest of the line is simply passed literally to the shell.

`\warn text [ ... ]`

This command is identical to `\echo` except that the output will be written to psql’s standard error channel, rather than standard output.

`\watch [ seconds ]`

Repeatedly execute the current query buffer (as `\g` does) until interrupted or the query fails. Wait the specified number of seconds (default 2) between executions. Each query result is displayed with a header that includes the `\pset title` string (if any), the time as of query start, and the delay interval.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is re-executed instead.

`\x [ on | off | auto ]`

Sets or toggles expanded table formatting mode. As such it is equivalent to `\pset expanded`.
\z [ pattern ]

Lists tables, views and sequences with their associated access privileges. If a pattern is specified, only tables, views and sequences whose names match the pattern are listed.

This is an alias for \dp (“display privileges”).

\! [ command ]

With no argument, escapes to a sub-shell; psql resumes when the sub-shell exits. With an argument, executes the shell command command.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of \!, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments. The rest of the line is simply passed literally to the shell.

\? [ topic ]

Shows help information. The optional topic parameter (defaulting to commands) selects which part of psql is explained: commands describes psql’s backslash commands; options describes the command-line options that can be passed to psql; and variables shows help about psql configuration variables.

\;

Backslash-semicolon is not a meta-command in the same way as the preceding commands; rather, it simply causes a semicolon to be added to the query buffer without any further processing.

Normally, psql will dispatch an SQL command to the server as soon as it reaches the command-ending semicolon, even if more input remains on the current line. Thus for example entering

select 1; select 2; select 3;

will result in the three SQL commands being individually sent to the server, with each one’s results being displayed before continuing to the next command. However, a semicolon entered as \; will not trigger command processing, so that the command before it and the one after are effectively combined and sent to the server in one request. So for example

select 1\; select 2\; select 3;

results in sending the three SQL commands to the server in a single request, when the non-backslashed semicolon is reached. The server executes such a request as a single transaction, unless there are explicit BEGIN/COMMIT commands included in the string to divide it into multiple transactions. (See Section 51.2.2.1 for more details about how the server handles multi-query strings.) psql prints only the last query result it receives for each request; in this example, although all three SELECTs are indeed executed, psql only prints the 3.

Patterns

The various \d commands accept a pattern parameter to specify the object name(s) to be displayed. In the simplest case, a pattern is just the exact name of the object. The characters within a pattern are normally folded to lower case, just as in SQL names; for example, \dt FOO will display the table named foo. As in SQL names, placing double quotes around a pattern stops folding to lower case. Should you need to include an actual double quote character in a pattern, write it as a pair of double quotes within a double-quote sequence; again this is in accord with the rules for SQL quoted identifiers. For example, \dt "FOO""BAR" will display the table named FOO"BAR (not foo"bar).

Whenever the pattern parameter is omitted completely, the \d commands display all objects that are visible in the current schema search path — this is equivalent to using * as the pattern. (An object is said to be visible if its containing schema is in the search path and no object of the same kind and name appears earlier in the search path. This is equivalent to the statement that the object can be referenced by name without explicit schema qualification.) To see all objects in the database regardless of visibility, use *.* as the pattern.
Within a pattern, * matches any sequence of characters (including no characters) and ? matches any single character. (This notation is comparable to Unix shell file name patterns.) For example, `\dt int*` displays tables whose names begin with `int`. But within double quotes, * and ? lose these special meanings and are just matched literally.

A pattern that contains a dot (.) is interpreted as a schema name pattern followed by an object name pattern. For example, `\dt foo*.*bar*` displays all tables whose table name includes `bar` that are in schemas whose schema name starts with `foo`. When no dot appears, then the pattern matches only objects that are visible in the current schema search path. Again, a dot within double quotes loses its special meaning and is matched literally.

Advanced users can use regular-expression notations such as character classes, for example `[0-9]` to match any digit. All regular expression special characters work as specified in Section 9.7.3, except for . which is taken as a separator as mentioned above, * which is translated to the regular-expression notation .*, ? which is translated to ., and $ which is matched literally. You can emulate these pattern characters at need by writing ? for ., (R+) for R*, or (R|) for R?. $ is not needed as a regular-expression character since the pattern must match the whole name, unlike the usual interpretation of regular expressions (in other words, $ is automatically appended to your pattern). Write * at the beginning and/or end if you don't wish the pattern to be anchored. Note that within double quotes, all regular expression special characters lose their special meanings and are matched literally. Also, the regular expression special characters are matched literally in operator name patterns (i.e., the argument of `\do`).

### Advanced Features

#### Variables

`psql` provides variable substitution features similar to common Unix command shells. Variables are simply name/value pairs, where the value can be any string of any length. The name must consist of letters (including non-Latin letters), digits, and underscores.

To set a variable, use the `psql` meta-command `\set`. For example,

```sql
testdb=> \set foo bar
```

sets the variable `foo` to the value `bar`. To retrieve the content of the variable, precede the name with a colon, for example:

```sql
testdb=> \echo :foo
```

This works in both regular SQL commands and meta-commands; there is more detail in SQL Interpolation, below.

If you call `\set` without a second argument, the variable is set to an empty-string value. To unset (i.e., delete) a variable, use the command `\unset`. To show the values of all variables, call `\set` without any argument.

A number of these variables are treated specially by `psql`. They represent certain option settings that can be changed at run time by altering the value of the variable, or in some cases represent changeable state of `psql`. By convention, all specially treated variables' names consist of all upper-case ASCII letters (and possibly digits and underscores). To ensure maximum compatibility in the future, avoid using such variable names for your own purposes.
Variables that control psql's behavior generally cannot be unset or set to invalid values. An `\unset` command is allowed but is interpreted as setting the variable to its default value. A `\set` command without a second argument is interpreted as setting the variable to `on`, for control variables that accept that value, and is rejected for others. Also, control variables that accept the values `on` and `off` will also accept other common spellings of Boolean values, such as `true` and `false`.

The specially treated variables are:

**AUTOCOMMIT**

When `on` (the default), each SQL command is automatically committed upon successful completion. To postpone commit in this mode, you must enter a `BEGIN` or `START TRANSACTION` SQL command. When `off` or unset, SQL commands are not committed until you explicitly issue `COMMIT` or `END`. The autocommit-off mode works by issuing an implicit `BEGIN` for you, just before any command that is not already in a transaction block and is not itself a `BEGIN` or other transaction-control command, nor a command that cannot be executed inside a transaction block (such as `VACUUM`).

**Note**

In autocommit-off mode, you must explicitly abandon any failed transaction by entering `ABORT` or `ROLLBACK`. Also keep in mind that if you exit the session without committing, your work will be lost.

**Note**

The autocommit-on mode is Postgres Pro's traditional behavior, but autocommit-off is closer to the SQL spec. If you prefer autocommit-off, you might wish to set it in the system-wide `psqlrc` file or your `~/.psqlrc` file.

**COMP_KEYWORD_CASE**

Determines which letter case to use when completing an SQL key word. If set to `lower` or `upper`, the completed word will be in lower or upper case, respectively. If set to `preserve-lower` or `preserve-upper` (the default), the completed word will be in the case of the word already entered, but words being completed without anything entered will be in lower or upper case, respectively.

**DBNAME**

The name of the database you are currently connected to. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

**ECHO**

If set to `all`, all nonempty input lines are printed to standard output as they are read. (This does not apply to lines read interactively.) To select this behavior on program start-up, use the switch `-a`. If set to `queries`, psql prints each query to standard output as it is sent to the server. The switch to select this behavior is `-e`. If set to `errors`, then only failed queries are displayed on standard error output. The switch for this behavior is `-b`. If set to `none` (the default), then no queries are displayed.

**ECHO_HIDDEN**

When this variable is set to `on` and a backslash command queries the database, the query is first shown. This feature helps you to study Postgres Pro internals and provide similar functionality in your own programs. (To select this behavior on program start-up, use the switch `-E`.) If you set this variable to the value `noexec`, the queries are just shown but are not actually sent to the server and executed. The default value is `off`. 

1822
ENCODING

The current client character set encoding. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), and when you change the encoding with `\encoding`, but it can be changed or unset.

ERROR

true if the last SQL query failed, false if it succeeded. See also SQLSTATE.

FETCH_COUNT

If this variable is set to an integer value greater than zero, the results of SELECT queries are fetched and displayed in groups of that many rows, rather than the default behavior of collecting the entire result set before display. Therefore only a limited amount of memory is used, regardless of the size of the result set. Settings of 100 to 1000 are commonly used when enabling this feature. Keep in mind that when using this feature, a query might fail after having already displayed some rows.

Tip

Although you can use any output format with this feature, the default aligned format tends to look bad because each group of FETCH_COUNT rows will be formatted separately, leading to varying column widths across the row groups. The other output formats work better.

HIDE_TABLEAM

If this variable is set to true, a table's access method details are not displayed. This is mainly useful for regression tests.

HIDE_TOAST_COMPRESSION

If this variable is set to true, column compression method details are not displayed. This is mainly useful for regression tests.

HISTCONTROL

If this variable is set to ignorespace, lines which begin with a space are not entered into the history list. If set to a value of ignoredups, lines matching the previous history line are not entered. A value of ignoreboth combines the two options. If set to none (the default), all lines read in interactive mode are saved on the history list.

Note

This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from Bash.

HISTFILE

The file name that will be used to store the history list. If unset, the file name is taken from the PSQL_HISTORY environment variable. If that is not set either, the default is `~/.psql_history`, or %APPDATA%\postgresql\psql_history on Windows. For example, putting:

\set HISTFILE ~/.psql_history--:DBNAME

in ~/.psqlrc will cause psql to maintain a separate history for each database.

Note

This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from Bash.
HISTSIZE

The maximum number of commands to store in the command history (default 500). If set to a negative value, no limit is applied.

Note
This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from Bash.

HOST

The database server host you are currently connected to. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

IGNOREEOF

If set to 1 or less, sending an EOF character (usually Control+D) to an interactive session of psql will terminate the application. If set to a larger numeric value, that many consecutive EOF characters must be typed to make an interactive session terminate. If the variable is set to a non-numeric value, it is interpreted as 10. The default is 0.

Note
This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from Bash.

LASTOID

The value of the last affected OID, as returned from an INSERT or \lo_import command. This variable is only guaranteed to be valid until after the result of the next SQL command has been displayed. Postgres Pro servers since version 12 do not support OID system columns anymore, thus LASTOID will always be 0 following INSERT when targeting such servers.

LAST_ERROR_MESSAGE
LAST_ERROR_SQLSTATE

The primary error message and associated SQLSTATE code for the most recent failed query in the current psql session, or an empty string and 00000 if no error has occurred in the current session.

ON_ERROR_ROLLBACK

When set to on, if a statement in a transaction block generates an error, the error is ignored and the transaction continues. When set to interactive, such errors are only ignored in interactive sessions, and not when reading script files. When set to off (the default), a statement in a transaction block that generates an error aborts the entire transaction. The error rollback mode works by issuing an implicit SAVEPOINT for you, just before each command that is in a transaction block, and then rolling back to the savepoint if the command fails.

ON_ERROR_STOP

By default, command processing continues after an error. When this variable is set to on, processing will instead stop immediately. In interactive mode, psql will return to the command prompt; otherwise, psql will exit, returning error code 3 to distinguish this case from fatal error conditions, which are reported using error code 1. In either case, any currently running scripts (the top-level script, if any, and any other scripts which it may have in invoked) will be terminated immediately. If the top-level command string contained multiple SQL commands, processing will stop with the current command.

PORT

The database server port to which you are currently connected. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.
These specify what the prompts psql issues should look like. See Prompting below.

QUIET
Setting this variable to on is equivalent to the command line option -q. It is probably not too useful in interactive mode.

ROW_COUNT
The number of rows returned or affected by the last SQL query, or 0 if the query failed or did not report a row count.

SERVER_VERSION_NAME
SERVER_VERSION_NUM
The server's version number as a string, for example 9.6.2, 10.1 or 11beta1, and in numeric form, for example 90602 or 100001. These are set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

SHOW_CONTEXT
This variable can be set to the values never, errors, or always to control whether CONTEXT fields are displayed in messages from the server. The default is errors (meaning that context will be shown in error messages, but not in notice or warning messages). This setting has no effect when VERBOSITY is set to terse or sqlstate. (See also \errverbose, for use when you want a verbose version of the error you just got.)

SINGLELINE
Setting this variable to on is equivalent to the command line option -S.

SINGLESTEP
Setting this variable to on is equivalent to the command line option -s.

SQLSTATE
The error code (see Appendix A) associated with the last SQL query's failure, or 00000 if it succeeded.

USER
The database user you are currently connected as. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

VERBOSITY
This variable can be set to the values default, verbose, terse, or sqlstate to control the verbosity of error reports. (See also \errverbose, for use when you want a verbose version of the error you just got.)

VERSION
VERSION_NAME
VERSION_NUM
These variables are set at program start-up to reflect psql's version, respectively as a verbose string, a short string (e.g., 9.6.2, 10.1, or 11beta1), and a number (e.g., 90602 or 100001). They can be changed or unset.

SQL Interpolation
A key feature of psql variables is that you can substitute ("interpolate") them into regular SQL statements, as well as the arguments of meta-commands. Furthermore, psql provides facilities for
ensuring that variable values used as SQL literals and identifiers are properly quoted. The syntax for interpolating a value without any quoting is to prepend the variable name with a colon (:) . For example,

testdb=> \set foo 'my_table'
testdb=> SELECT * FROM :foo;

would query the table my_table. Note that this may be unsafe: the value of the variable is copied literally, so it can contain unbalanced quotes, or even backslash commands. You must make sure that it makes sense where you put it.

When a value is to be used as an SQL literal or identifier, it is safest to arrange for it to be quoted. To quote the value of a variable as an SQL literal, write a colon followed by the variable name in single quotes. To quote the value as an SQL identifier, write a colon followed by the variable name in double quotes. These constructs deal correctly with quotes and other special characters embedded within the variable value. The previous example would be more safely written this way:

```sql
\set foo 'my_table'
testdb=> SELECT * FROM "foo";
```

Variable interpolation will not be performed within quoted SQL literals and identifiers. Therefore, a construction such as ':foo' doesn't work to produce a quoted literal from a variable's value (and it would be unsafe if it did work, since it wouldn't correctly handle quotes embedded in the value).

One example use of this mechanism is to copy the contents of a file into a table column. First load the file into a variable and then interpolate the variable's value as a quoted string:

```sql
\set content `cat my_file.txt`
testdb=> INSERT INTO my_table VALUES (:'content');
```

(Note that this still won't work if my_file.txt contains NUL bytes. psql does not support embedded NUL bytes in variable values.)

Since colons can legally appear in SQL commands, an apparent attempt at interpolation (that is, :name, :'name', or :"name") is not replaced unless the named variable is currently set. In any case, you can escape a colon with a backslash to protect it from substitution.

The :{?name} special syntax returns TRUE or FALSE depending on whether the variable exists or not, and is thus always substituted, unless the colon is backslash-escaped.

The colon syntax for variables is standard SQL for embedded query languages, such as ECPG. The colon syntaxes for array slices and type casts are Postgres Pro extensions, which can sometimes conflict with the standard usage. The colon-quote syntax for escaping a variable's value as an SQL literal or identifier is a psql extension.

**Prompting**

The prompts psql issues can be customized to your preference. The three variables PROMPT1, PROMPT2, and PROMPT3 contain strings and special escape sequences that describe the appearance of the prompt. Prompt 1 is the normal prompt that is issued when psql requests a new command. Prompt 2 is issued when more input is expected during command entry, for example because the command was not terminated with a semicolon or a quote was not closed. Prompt 3 is issued when you are running an SQL COPY FROM STDIN command and you need to type in a row value on the terminal.

The value of the selected prompt variable is printed literally, except where a percent sign (%) is encountered. Depending on the next character, certain other text is substituted instead. Defined substitutions are:

- %M

  The full host name (with domain name) of the database server, or [local] if the connection is over a Unix domain socket, or [local:/dir/name], if the Unix domain socket is not at the compiled in default location.
The host name of the database server, truncated at the first dot, or [local] if the connection is over a Unix domain socket.

The port number at which the database server is listening.

The database session user name. (The expansion of this value might change during a database session as the result of the command \texttt{SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION}.)

The name of the current database.

Like \%, but the output is ~ (tilde) if the database is your default database.

If the session user is a database superuser, then a \#, otherwise a >. (The expansion of this value might change during a database session as the result of the command \texttt{SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION}.)

The process ID of the backend currently connected to.

In prompt 1 normally =, but @ if the session is in an inactive branch of a conditional block, or ^ if in single-line mode, or ! if the session is disconnected from the database (which can happen if `\connect` fails). In prompt 2 \%R is replaced by a character that depends on why psql expects more input: − if the command simply wasn't terminated yet, but * if there is an unfinished /* ... */ comment, a single quote if there is an unfinished quoted string, a double quote if there is an unfinished quoted identifier, a dollar sign if there is an unfinished dollar-quoted string, or ( if there is an unmatched left parenthesis. In prompt 3 \%R doesn't produce anything.

Transaction status: an empty string when not in a transaction block, or * when in a transaction block, or ! when in a failed transaction block, or ? when the transaction state is indeterminate (for example, because there is no connection).

The line number inside the current statement, starting from 1.

The character with the indicated octal code is substituted.

The value of the psql variable \texttt{name}. See Variables, above, for details.

The output of \texttt{command}, similar to ordinary “back-tick” substitution.

Prompts can contain terminal control characters which, for example, change the color, background, or style of the prompt text, or change the title of the terminal window. In order for the line editing
features of Readline to work properly, these non-printing control characters must be designated as invisible by surrounding them with %[ and %]. Multiple pairs of these can occur within the prompt. For example:

testdb=> \set PROMPT1 '%[033[1;33;40m%]n@%/%R%[0m%]%' 
results in a boldfaced (1;) yellow-on-black (33;40) prompt on VT100-compatible, color-capable terminals.

%w

Whitespace of the same width as the most recent output of PROMPT1. This can be used as a PROMPT2 setting, so that multi-line statements are aligned with the first line, but there is no visible secondary prompt.

To insert a percent sign into your prompt, write %%. The default prompts are '%/%R%x%#' for prompts 1 and 2, and '>> ' for prompt 3.

Note

This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from tcsh.

Command-Line Editing

psql supports the Readline library for convenient line editing and retrieval. The command history is automatically saved when psql exits and is reloaded when psql starts up. Tab-completion is also supported, although the completion logic makes no claim to be an SQL parser. The queries generated by tab-completion can also interfere with other SQL commands, e.g., SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL. If for some reason you do not like the tab completion, you can turn it off by putting this in a file named .inputrc in your home directory:

$if psql
set disable-completion on
$endif

(This is not a psql but a Readline feature. Read its documentation for further details.)

Environment

COLUMNS

If \psel\ columns is zero, controls the width for the wrapped format and width for determining if wide output requires the pager or should be switched to the vertical format in expanded auto mode.

PGDATABASE
PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER

Default connection parameters (see Section 32.15).

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

PSQL_EDITOR
EDITOR
VISUAL

Editor used by the \e, \ef, and \ev commands. These variables are examined in the order listed; the first that is set is used. If none of them is set, the default is to use vi on Unix systems or notepad.exe on Windows systems.
When \e, \ef, or \ev is used with a line number argument, this variable specifies the command-line argument used to pass the starting line number to the user's editor. For editors such as Emacs or vi, this is a plus sign. Include a trailing space in the value of the variable if there needs to be space between the option name and the line number. Examples:

```
PSQL_EDITOR_LINENUMBER_ARG='+'
PSQL_EDITOR_LINENUMBER_ARG='--line '
```

The default is + on Unix systems (corresponding to the default editor vi, and useful for many other common editors); but there is no default on Windows systems.

**PSQL_HISTORY**

Alternative location for the command history file. Tilde (~) expansion is performed.

**PSQL_PAGER**

If a query's results do not fit on the screen, they are piped through this command. Typical values are more or less. Use of the pager can be disabled by setting PSQL_PAGER or PAGER to an empty string, or by adjusting the pager-related options of the \pset command. These variables are examined in the order listed; the first that is set is used. If none of them is set, the default is to use more on most platforms, but less on Cygwin.

**PSQLRC**

Alternative location of the user's .psqlrc file. Tilde (~) expansion is performed.

**SHELL**

Command executed by the \! command.

**TMPDIR**

Directory for storing temporary files. The default is /tmp.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

**Files**

psqlrc and ~/.psqlrc

Unless it is passed an -x option, psql attempts to read and execute commands from the system-wide startup file (psqlrc) and then the user's personal startup file (~/.psqlrc), after connecting to the database but before accepting normal commands. These files can be used to set up the client and/or the server to taste, typically with \set and SET commands.

The system-wide startup file is named psqlrc and is sought in the installation's "system configuration" directory, which is most reliably identified by running pg_config --sysconfdir. By default this directory will be ../etc/ relative to the directory containing the Postgres Pro executables. The name of this directory can be set explicitly via the PGSYSCONFDIR environment variable.

The user's personal startup file is named .psqlrc and is sought in the invoking user's home directory. On Windows, which lacks such a concept, the personal startup file is named %APPDATA%\postgresql\psqlrc.conf. The location of the user's startup file can be set explicitly via the PSQLRC environment variable.

Both the system-wide startup file and the user's personal startup file can be made psql-version-specific by appending a dash and the Postgres Pro major or minor release number to the file name, for
example ~/.psqlrc-9.2 or ~/.psqlrc-9.2.5. The most specific version-matching file will be read in preference to a non-version-specific file.

```
.example ~/.psqlrc-9.2 or ~/.psqlrc-9.2.5. The most specific version-matching file will be read in preference to a non-version-specific file.
```

**.psql_history**

The command-line history is stored in the file `~/.psql_history`, or `%APPDATA%\postgresql\psql_history` on Windows.

The location of the history file can be set explicitly via the `HISTFILE` psql variable or the `PSQL_HISTORY` environment variable.

**Notes**

- psql works best with servers of the same or an older major version. Backslash commands are particularly likely to fail if the server is of a newer version than psql itself. However, backslash commands of the `\d` family should work with servers of versions back to 7.4, though not necessarily with servers newer than psql itself. The general functionality of running SQL commands and displaying query results should also work with servers of a newer major version, but this cannot be guaranteed in all cases.

If you want to use psql to connect to several servers of different major versions, it is recommended that you use the newest version of psql. Alternatively, you can keep around a copy of psql from each major version and be sure to use the version that matches the respective server. But in practice, this additional complication should not be necessary.

- Before Postgres Pro 9.6, the `-c` option implied `-X (--no-psqlrc); this is no longer the case.
- Before PostgreSQL 8.4, psql allowed the first argument of a single-letter backslash command to start directly after the command, without intervening whitespace. Now, some whitespace is required.

**Notes for Windows Users**

psql is built as a “console application”. Since the Windows console windows use a different encoding than the rest of the system, you must take special care when using 8-bit characters within psql. If psql detects a problematic console code page, it will warn you at startup. To change the console code page, two things are necessary:

- Set the code page by entering `cmd.exe /c chcp 1252`. (1252 is a code page that is appropriate for German; replace it with your value.) If you are using Cygwin, you can put this command in `/etc/profile`.
- Set the console font to Lucida Console, because the raster font does not work with the ANSI code page.

By default, psql works in the UTF-8 encoding and uses Windows Unicode API for console output. The console code page must be set to 65001 to ensure the correct display of all characters supported by your Windows console font.

Postgres Pro Windows installer ships the `less.exe` pager with UTF-8 support and provides a shortcut that opens the console window with Lucida Console font and codepage 65001 settings. If you use a different pager, make sure it also supports UTF-8.

You can override the default psql encoding by setting the `PGCLIENTENCODING` environment variable.

**Examples**

The first example shows how to spread a command over several lines of input. Notice the changing prompt:

```sql
testdb=> CREATE TABLE my_table (  
    first integer not null default 0,  
    second text)  
```
testdb-> ;
CREATE TABLE

Now look at the table definition again:

testdb=> \d my_table
Table "public.my_table"
Column | Type    | Collation | Nullable | Default
--------+---------+-----------+----------+---------
first   | integer |           | not null | 0       
second  | text    |           |          |

Now we change the prompt to something more interesting:

testdb=> \set PROMPT1 '%n@%m %~%R%# '
peter@localhost testdb=>

Let's assume you have filled the table with data and want to take a look at it:

peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT * FROM my_table;
+-------+--------+
| first | second |
+-------+--------+
|     1 | one    |
|     2 | two    |
|     3 | three  |
|     4 | four   |
+-------+--------+
(4 rows)

You can display tables in different ways by using the \pset command:

peter@localhost testdb=> \pset border 2
Border style is 2.
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT * FROM my_table;
+-------+--------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>first</th>
<th>second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-------+--------+
(4 rows)

peter@localhost testdb=> \pset border 0
Border style is 0.
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT * FROM my_table;
----- ------
1 one
2 two
3 three
4 four
(4 rows)

peter@localhost testdb=> \pset border 1
Border style is 1.
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset format csv
Output format is csv.
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset tuples_only
Tuples only is on.
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT second, first FROM my_table;
one,1
two, 2
three, 3
four, 4

\pset format unaligned
Output format is unaligned.
\pset fieldsep ' \t '
Field separator is "    ".
\pset format unaligned

SELECT second, first FROM my_table;

one
first   | 1
second  | one

two
first   | 2
second  | two

three
first   | 3
second  | three

four
first   | 4
second  | four

Alternatively, use the short commands:
\a \t \x
Output format is aligned.
Tuples only is off.
Expanded display is on.

SELECT * FROM my_table;

first | 1
second | one

first | 2
second | two

first | 3
second | three

first | 4
second | four

Also, these output format options can be set for just one query by using \g:

\g (format=aligned tuples_only=off expanded=on)

first | 1
second | one

first | 2
second | two

first | 3
second | three

first | 4
second | four

Here is an example of using the \df command to find only functions with names matching int*pl and whose second argument is of type bigint:

\df int*pl * bigint

List of functions
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schema</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Result data type</th>
<th>Argument data types</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>int28pl</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>smallint, bigint</td>
<td>func</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>int48pl</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>integer, bigint</td>
<td>func</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog</td>
<td>int8pl</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>bigint, bigint</td>
<td>func</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When suitable, query results can be shown in a crosstab representation with the \crosstabview command:

```
$testdb=>
\crosstabview first second
first | one | two | three | four
-------+-----+-----+-------+------
1 | f   |     |       |      
2 |     | f   |       |
3 |     |     | t     |      
4 |     |     |       | t    
```

This second example shows a multiplication table with rows sorted in reverse numerical order and columns with an independent, ascending numerical order:

```
$testdb=> SELECT t1.first as "A", t2.first+100 AS "B", t1.first*(t2.first+100) as "AxB", row_number() over(order by t2.first) AS ord FROM my_table t1 CROSS JOIN my_table t2 ORDER BY 1 DESC
\crosstabview "A" "B" "AxB" ord
A | 101 | 102 | 103 | 104
---+-----+-----+-----+-----
4 | 404 | 408 | 412 | 416 
3 | 303 | 306 | 309 | 312 
2 | 202 | 204 | 206 | 208 
1 | 101 | 102 | 103 | 104 
```

(4 rows)
**reindexdb**

reindexdb — reindex a Postgres Pro database

**Synopsis**

```bash
reindexdb [connection-option...] [option...] [-S|--schema schema] ... [-t|--table table] ... [-i|--index index] ... [dbname]
reindexdb [connection-option...] [option...] -a|--all
reindexdb [connection-option...] [option...] -s|--system [dbname]
```

**Description**

reindexdb is a utility for rebuilding indexes in a Postgres Pro database.

reindexdb is a wrapper around the SQL command `REINDEX`. There is no effective difference between reindexing databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

**Options**

reindexdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

- `-a|--all`

  Reindex all databases.

- `--concurrently`

  Use the `CONCURRENTLY` option. See `REINDEX`, where all the caveats of this option are explained in detail.

- `[d] dbname
[--dbname=] dbname`

  Specifies the name of the database to be reindexed, when `-a|--all` is not used. If this is not specified, the database name is read from the environment variable `PGDATABASE`. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used. The `dbname` can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

- `-e|--echo`

  Echo the commands that reindexdb generates and sends to the server.

- `-i|--index`

  Recreate `index` only. Multiple indexes can be recreated by writing multiple `-i` switches.

- `-j|--jobs njobs`

  Execute the reindex commands in parallel by running `njobs` commands simultaneously. This option may reduce the processing time but it also increases the load on the database server.

  reindexdb will open `njobs` connections to the database, so make sure your `max_connections` setting is high enough to accommodate all connections.

  Note that this option is incompatible with the `--index` and `--system` options.
reindexdb

-q
--quiet
   Do not display progress messages.

-s
--system
   Reindex database's system catalogs only.

-S schema
--schema=schema
   Reindex schema only. Multiple schemas can be reindexed by writing multiple -S switches.

-t table
--table=table
   Reindex table only. Multiple tables can be reindexed by writing multiple -t switches.

--tablespace=tablespace
   Specifies the tablespace where indexes are rebuilt. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

-v
--verbose
   Print detailed information during processing.

-V
--version
   Print the reindexdb version and exit.

-?
--help
   Show help about reindexdb command line arguments, and exit.

reindexdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

-h host
--host=host
   Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

-p port
--port=port
   Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

-U username
--username=username
   User name to connect as.

-w
--no-password
   Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.
-W
--password

Force reindexdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since reindexdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server
requests password authentication. However, reindexdb will waste a connection attempt finding out
that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection
attempt.

--maintenance-db=dbname

Specifies the name of the database to connect to to discover which databases should be reindexed,
when -a/--all is used. If not specified, the postgres database will be used, or if that does not exist,
template1 will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will
override any conflicting command line options. Also, connection string parameters other than the
database name itself will be re-used when connecting to other databases.

Environment

PGDATABASE
PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER

Default connection parameters

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq
(see Section 32.15).

Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see REINDEX and psql for discussions of potential problems and error messages.
The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and
environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

Notes

reindexdb might need to connect several times to the Postgres Pro server, asking for a password each
time. It is convenient to have a ~/.pgpass file in such cases. See Section 32.16 for more information.

Examples

To reindex the database test:

$ reindexdb test

To reindex the table foo and the index bar in a database named abcd:

$ reindexdb --table=foo --index=bar abcd

See Also

REINDEX
**vacuumdb**

vacuumdb — garbage-collect and analyze a Postgres Pro database

**Synopsis**

```
vacuumdb [connection-option...] [option...] [-t|--table table ([ column [...] ])] ... [dbname]
vacuumdb [connection-option...] [option...] -a|--all
```

**Description**

vacuumdb is a utility for cleaning a Postgres Pro database. vacuumdb will also generate internal statistics used by the Postgres Pro query optimizer.

vacuumdb is a wrapper around the SQL command `VACUUM`. There is no effective difference between vacuuming and analyzing databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

**Options**

vacuumdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

- `-a`
  - `--all`
  Vacuum all databases.

- `[-d] dbname`
  - `[--dbname=] dbname`
  Specifies the name of the database to be cleaned or analyzed, when `-a|--all` is not used. If this is not specified, the database name is read from the environment variable `PGDATABASE`. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used. The `dbname` can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

- `--disable-page-skipping`
  Disable skipping pages based on the contents of the visibility map.

  **Note**
  This option is only available for servers running Postgres Pro 9.6 and later.

- `-e`
  - `--echo`
  Echo the commands that vacuumdb generates and sends to the server.

- `-f`
  - `--full`
  Perform “full” vacuuming.

- `-F`
  - `--freeze`
  Aggressively “freeze” tuples.

- `--force-index-cleanup`
  Always remove index entries pointing to dead tuples.
**Note**
This option is only available for servers running PostgreSQL 12 and later.

```bash
-j njobs
--jobs=njobs
```
Execute the vacuum or analyze commands in parallel by running `njobs` commands simultaneously. This option may reduce the processing time but it also increases the load on the database server.

vacuumdb will open `njobs` connections to the database, so make sure your `max_connections` setting is high enough to accommodate all connections.

Note that using this mode together with the `-f (FULL)` option might cause deadlock failures if certain system catalogs are processed in parallel.

```bash
--min-mxid-age mxid_age
```
Only execute the vacuum or analyze commands on tables with a multixact ID age of at least `mxid_age`. This setting is useful for prioritizing tables to process to prevent multixact ID wraparound (see Section 23.1.5.1).

For the purposes of this option, the multixact ID age of a relation is the greatest of the ages of the main relation and its associated TOAST table, if one exists. Since the commands issued by vacuumdb will also process the TOAST table for the relation if necessary, it does not need to be considered separately.

**Note**
This option is only available for servers running Postgres Pro 9.6 and later.

```bash
--min-xid-age xid_age
```
Only execute the vacuum or analyze commands on tables with a transaction ID age of at least `xid_age`. This setting is useful for prioritizing tables to process to prevent transaction ID wraparound (see Section 23.1.5).

For the purposes of this option, the transaction ID age of a relation is the greatest of the ages of the main relation and its associated TOAST table, if one exists. Since the commands issued by vacuumdb will also process the TOAST table for the relation if necessary, it does not need to be considered separately.

**Note**
This option is only available for servers running Postgres Pro 9.6 and later.

```bash
--no-index-cleanup
```
Do not remove index entries pointing to dead tuples.

**Note**
This option is only available for servers running Postgres Pro 12 and later.

```bash
--no-process-toast
```
Skip the TOAST table associated with the table to vacuum, if any.
Note
This option is only available for servers running PostgreSQL 14 and later.

--no-truncate
Do not truncate empty pages at the end of the table.

Note
This option is only available for servers running PostgreSQL 12 and later.

-P parallel_workers
--parallel=parallel_workers
Specify the number of parallel workers for parallel vacuum. This allows the vacuum to leverage multiple CPUs to process indexes. See VACUUM.

Note
This option is only available for servers running PostgreSQL 13 and later.

-q
--quiet
Do not display progress messages.

--skip-locked
Skip relations that cannot be immediately locked for processing.

Note
This option is only available for servers running PostgreSQL 12 and later.

-t table [ (column [, ...]) ]
--table=table [ (column [, ...]) ]
Clean or analyze table only. Column names can be specified only in conjunction with the --analyze or --analyze-only options. Multiple tables can be vacuumed by writing multiple -t switches.

Tip
If you specify columns, you probably have to escape the parentheses from the shell. (See examples below.)

-v
--verbose
Print detailed information during processing.

-V
--version
Print the vacuumdb version and exit.
--analyze

Also calculate statistics for use by the optimizer.

--analyze-only

Only calculate statistics for use by the optimizer (no vacuum).

--analyze-in-stages

Only calculate statistics for use by the optimizer (no vacuum), like --analyze-only. Run several (currently three) stages of analyze with different configuration settings, to produce usable statistics faster.

This option is useful to analyze a database that was newly populated from a restored dump or by pg_upgrade. This option will try to create some statistics as fast as possible, to make the database usable, and then produce full statistics in the subsequent stages.

--help

Show help about vacuumdb command line arguments, and exit.

vacuumdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

--host=host

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

--port=port

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

--username=username

User name to connect as.

--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

--password

Force vacuumdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since vacuumdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, vacuumdb will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing --password to avoid the extra connection attempt.

--maintenance-db=dbname

Specifies the name of the database to connect to to discover which databases should be vacuumed, when -a/--all is used. If not specified, the postgres database will be used, or if that does not exist,
template1 will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options. Also, connection string parameters other than the database name itself will be re-used when connecting to other databases.

Environment

PGDATABASE
PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER

Default connection parameters

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see VACUUM and psql for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

Notes

vacuumdb might need to connect several times to the Postgres Pro server, asking for a password each time. It is convenient to have a ~/.pgpass file in such cases. See Section 32.16 for more information.

Examples

To clean the database test:

$ vacuumdb test

To clean and analyze for the optimizer a database named bigdb:

$ vacuumdb --analyze bigdb

To clean a single table foo in a database named xyzzy, and analyze a single column bar of the table for the optimizer:

$ vacuumdb --analyze --verbose --table='foo(bar)' xyzzy

See Also

VACUUM
Postgres Pro Server Applications

This part contains reference information for Postgres Pro server applications and support utilities. These commands can only be run usefully on the host where the database server resides. Other utility programs are listed in Postgres Pro Client Applications.
initdb — create a new Postgres Pro database cluster

Synopsis

initdb [option...] [ --pgdata | -D ] directory

Description

initdb creates a new Postgres Pro database cluster. A database cluster is a collection of databases that are managed by a single server instance.

Creating a database cluster consists of creating the directories in which the database data will live, generating the shared catalog tables (tables that belong to the whole cluster rather than to any particular database), and creating the template1 and postgres databases. When you later create a new database, everything in the template1 database is copied. (Therefore, anything installed in template1 is automatically copied into each database created later.) The postgres database is a default database meant for use by users, utilities and third party applications.

Although initdb will attempt to create the specified data directory, it might not have permission if the parent directory of the desired data directory is root-owned. To initialize in such a setup, create an empty data directory as root, then use chown to assign ownership of that directory to the database user account, then su to become the database user to run initdb.

initdb must be run as the user that will own the server process, because the server needs to have access to the files and directories that initdb creates. Since the server cannot be run as root, you must not run initdb as root either. (It will in fact refuse to do so.)

For security reasons the new cluster created by initdb will only be accessible by the cluster owner by default. The --allow-group-access option allows any user in the same group as the cluster owner to read files in the cluster. This is useful for performing backups as a non-privileged user.

initdb initializes the database cluster's default locale and character set encoding. The character set encoding, collation order (LC_COLLATE) and character set classes (LC_CTYPE, e.g., upper, lower, digit) can be set separately for a database when it is created. initdb determines those settings for the template1 database, which will serve as the default for all other databases.

To alter the default collation order or character set classes, use the --lc-collate and --lc-ctype options. Collation orders other than C or POSIX also have a performance penalty. For these reasons it is important to choose the right locale when running initdb.

The remaining locale categories can be changed later when the server is started. You can also use --locale to set the default for all locale categories, including collation order and character set classes. All server locale values (lc_*') can be displayed via SHOW ALL. More details can be found in Section 22.1.

To alter the default encoding, use the --encoding. More details can be found in Section 22.3.

Options

-A authmethod
--auth=authmethod

This option specifies the default authentication method for local users used in pg_hba.conf (host and local lines). initdb will prepopulate pg_hba.conf entries using the specified authentication method for non-replication as well as replication connections.

Do not use trust unless you trust all local users on your system. trust is the default for ease of installation.
--auth-host=authmethod

This option specifies the authentication method for local users via TCP/IP connections used in
pg_hba.conf (host lines).

--auth-local=authmethod

This option specifies the authentication method for local users via Unix-domain socket connections
used in pg_hba.conf (local lines).

-D directory
--pgdata=directory

This option specifies the directory where the database cluster should be stored. This is the only
information required by initdb, but you can avoid writing it by setting the PGDATA environment
variable, which can be convenient since the database server (postgres) can find the database
directory later by the same variable.

-E encoding
--encoding=encoding

Selects the encoding of the template database. This will also be the default encoding of any database
you create later, unless you override it there. The default is derived from the locale, or SQL_ASCII
if that does not work. The character sets supported by the Postgres Pro server are described in
Section 22.3.1.

-g
--allow-group-access

Allows users in the same group as the cluster owner to read all cluster files created by initdb. This
option is ignored on Windows as it does not support POSIX-style group permissions.

-k
--data-checksums

Use checksums on data pages to help detect corruption by the I/O system that would otherwise
be silent. Enabling checksums may incur a noticeable performance penalty. If set, checksums
are calculated for all objects, in all databases. All checksum failures will be reported in the
pg_stat_database view. See Section 28.2 for details.

By default, Postgres Pro clusters are initialized with checksums enabled. To change this behavior,
provide the --no-data-checksums option.

--no-data-checksums

Disable checksums on data pages.

By default, Postgres Pro clusters are initialized with checksums enabled.

--locale=locale[@provider]

Sets the default locale for the database cluster. If this option is not specified, the locale is inherited
from the environment that initdb runs in. Locale support is described in Section 22.1.

Optionally, you can specify the provider of the default collation after the @ symbol. Supported values
are icu and libc. For details, see Section 22.2.2.

--lc-collate=locale[@provider]
--lc-ctype=locale
--lc-messages=locale
--lc-monetary=locale
--lc-numeric=locale
--lc-time=locale

Like --locale, but only sets the locale in the specified category.
initdb

--no-locale

Equivalent to --locale=C.

-N
--no-sync

By default, initdb will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes initdb to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the data directory corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing, but should not be used when creating a production installation.

--no-instructions

By default, initdb will write instructions for how to start the cluster at the end of its output. This option causes those instructions to be left out. This is primarily intended for use by tools that wrap initdb in platform-specific behavior, where those instructions are likely to be incorrect.

--pwfile=filename

Makes initdb read the database superuser's password from a file. The first line of the file is taken as the password.

-S
--sync-only

Safely write all database files to disk and exit. This does not perform any of the normal initdb operations.

-T config
--text-search-config=config

Sets the default text search configuration. See default_text_search_config for further information.

-U username
--username=filename

Selects the user name of the database superuser. This defaults to the name of the effective user running initdb. It is really not important what the superuser's name is, but one might choose to keep the customary name postgres, even if the operating system user's name is different.

-W
--pwprompt

Makes initdb prompt for a password to give the database superuser. If you don't plan on using password authentication, this is not important. Otherwise you won't be able to use password authentication until you have a password set up.

-X directory
--waldir=directory

This option specifies the directory where the write-ahead log should be stored.

--wal-segsize=size

Set the WAL segment size, in megabytes. This is the size of each individual file in the WAL log. The default size is 16 megabytes. The value must be a power of 2 between 1 and 1024 (megabytes). This option can only be set during initialization, and cannot be changed later.

It may be useful to adjust this size to control the granularity of WAL log shipping or archiving. Also, in databases with a high volume of WAL, the sheer number of WAL files per directory can become a performance and management problem. Increasing the WAL file size will reduce the number of WAL files.

Other, less commonly used, options are also available:
-d
--debug

Print debugging output from the bootstrap backend and a few other messages of lesser interest for the general public. The bootstrap backend is the program initdb uses to create the catalog tables. This option generates a tremendous amount of extremely boring output.

--discard-caches

Run the bootstrap backend with the debug_discard_caches=1 option. This takes a very long time and is only of use for deep debugging.

-L directory

Specifies where initdb should find its input files to initialize the database cluster. This is normally not necessary. You will be told if you need to specify their location explicitly.

-n
--no-clean

By default, when initdb determines that an error prevented it from completely creating the database cluster, it removes any files it might have created before discovering that it cannot finish the job. This option inhibits tidying-up and is thus useful for debugging.

Other options:

-v
--version

Print the initdb version and exit.

-?
--help

Show help about initdb command line arguments, and exit.

Environment

PGDATA

Specifies the directory where the database cluster is to be stored; can be overridden using the -D option.

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

TZ

Specifies the default time zone of the created database cluster. The value should be a full time zone name (see Section 8.5.3).

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

Notes

initdb can also be invoked via pg_ctl initdb.

See Also

pg_ctl, postgres
pg_archivecleanup

pg_archivecleanup — clean up Postgres Pro WAL archive files

Synopsis

pg_archivecleanup [option...] archivelocation oldestkeptwalfile

Description

pg_archivecleanup is designed to be used as an archive_cleanup_command to clean up WAL file archives when running as a standby server (see Section 25.2). pg_archivecleanup can also be used as a standalone program to clean WAL file archives.

To configure a standby server to use pg_archivecleanup, put this into its postgresql.conf configuration file:

archive_cleanup_command = 'pg_archivecleanup archivelocation %r'

where archivelocation is the directory from which WAL segment files should be removed.

When used within archive_cleanup_command, all WAL files logically preceding the value of the %r argument will be removed from archivelocation. This minimizes the number of files that need to be retained, while preserving crash-restart capability. Use of this parameter is appropriate if the archivelocation is a transient staging area for this particular standby server, but not when the archivelocation is intended as a long-term WAL archive area, or when multiple standby servers are recovering from the same archive location.

When used as a standalone program all WAL files logically preceding the oldestkeptwalfile will be removed from archivelocation. In this mode, if you specify a .partial or .backup file name, then only the file prefix will be used as the oldestkeptwalfile. This treatment of .backup file name allows you to remove all WAL files archived prior to a specific base backup without error. For example, the following example will remove all files older than WAL file name 000000100000003700000010:

pg_archivecleanup -d archive 000000100000003700000010.000000020.backup

pg_archivecleanup: keep WAL file "archive/00000001000000037000000010" and later
pg_archivecleanup: removing file "archive/0000000100000003700000000F"
pg_archivecleanup: removing file "archive/0000000100000003700000000E"

pg_archivecleanup assumes that archivelocation is a directory readable and writable by the server-owning user.

Options

pg_archivecleanup accepts the following command-line arguments:

-d

Print lots of debug logging output on stderr.

-n

Print the names of the files that would have been removed on stdout (performs a dry run).

-v
--version

Print the pg_archivecleanup version and exit.
--x extension

Provide an extension that will be stripped from all file names before deciding if they should be deleted. This is typically useful for cleaning up archives that have been compressed during storage, and therefore have had an extension added by the compression program. For example: --x .gz.

--help

Show help about pg_archivecleanup command line arguments, and exit.

Environment

The environment variable PG_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

Notes

pg_archivecleanup is designed to work with PostgreSQL 8.0 and later when used as a standalone utility, or with PostgreSQL 9.0 and later when used as an archive cleanup command.

pg_archivecleanup is written in C and has an easy-to-modify source code, with specifically designated sections to modify for your own needs.

Examples

On Linux or Unix systems, you might use:

archive_cleanup_command = 'pg_archivecleanup -d /mnt/standby/archive %r 2>>cleanup.log'

where the archive directory is physically located on the standby server, so that the archive_command is accessing it across NFS, but the files are local to the standby. This will:

• produce debugging output in cleanup.log
• remove no-longer-needed files from the archive directory
pg_checksums

pg_checksums — enable, disable or check data checksums in a Postgres Pro database cluster

Synopsis

pg_checksums [option...][ -D | --pgdata ]datadir]

Description

pg_checksums checks, enables or disables data checksums in a Postgres Pro cluster. The server must be shut down cleanly before running pg_checksums. When verifying checksums, the exit status is zero if there are no checksum errors, and nonzero if at least one checksum failure is detected. When enabling or disabling checksums, the exit status is nonzero if the operation failed.

When verifying checksums, every file in the cluster is scanned. When enabling checksums, every file in the cluster is rewritten in-place. Disabling checksums only updates the file pg_control.

Options

The following command-line options are available:

- D directory
  --pgdata=directory

  Specifies the directory where the database cluster is stored.

- c
  --check

  Checks checksums. This is the default mode if nothing else is specified.

- d
  --disable

  Disables checksums.

- e
  --enable

  Enables checksums.

- f filenode
  --filenode=filenode

  Only validate checksums in the relation with filenode filenode.

- N
  --no-sync

  By default, pg_checksums will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes pg_checksums to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the updated data directory corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used on a production installation. This option has no effect when using --check.

- P
  --progress

  Enable progress reporting. Turning this on will deliver a progress report while checking or enabling checksums.
pg_checksums

-v
--verbose
   Enable verbose output. Lists all checked files.

-V
--version
   Print the pg_checksums version and exit.

-?
--help
   Show help about pg_checksums command line arguments, and exit.

Environment

PGDATA
   Specifies the directory where the database cluster is stored; can be overridden using the -D option.

PG_COLOR
   Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

Notes

Enabling checksums in a large cluster can potentially take a long time. During this operation, the cluster or other programs that write to the data directory must not be started or else data loss may occur.

When using a replication setup with tools which perform direct copies of relation file blocks (for example pg_rewind), enabling or disabling checksums can lead to page corruptions in the shape of incorrect checksums if the operation is not done consistently across all nodes. When enabling or disabling checksums in a replication setup, it is thus recommended to stop all the clusters before switching them all consistently. Destroying all standbys, performing the operation on the primary and finally recreating the standbys from scratch is also safe.

If pg_checksums is aborted or killed while enabling or disabling checksums, the cluster's data checksum configuration remains unchanged, and pg_checksums can be re-run to perform the same operation.
pg_controldata

pg_controldata — display control information of a Postgres Pro database cluster

Synopsis

pg_controldata [option] [[ -D | --pgdata ]datadir]

Description

pg_controldata prints information initialized during initdb, such as the catalog version. It also shows information about write-ahead logging and checkpoint processing. This information is cluster-wide, and not specific to any one database.

This utility can only be run by the user who initialized the cluster because it requires read access to the data directory. You can specify the data directory on the command line, or use the environment variable PGDATA. This utility supports the options -V and --version, which print the pg_controldata version and exit. It also supports options -? and --help, which output the supported arguments.

Note

It is recommended that you use pgpro_controldata instead since it can read control information of different versions of PostgreSQL or Postgres Pro database clusters, including newer versions.

Environment

PGDATA

Default data directory location

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

See Also

pgpro_controldata
**pg_ctl**

`pg_ctl` — initialize, start, stop, or control a Postgres Pro server

**Synopsis**

```
pg_ctl init[db] [-D datadir] [-s] [-o initdb-options]
pg_ctl stop [-D datadir] [-m {smart} | {fast} | {immediate}] [-W] [-t seconds] [-s]
pg_ctl restart [-D datadir] [-m {smart} | {fast} | {immediate}] [-W] [-t seconds] [-s] [-o options] [-c]
pg_ctl reload [-D datadir] [-s]
pg_ctl status [-D datadir]
pg_ctl promote [-D datadir] [-W] [-t seconds] [-s]
pg_ctl logrotate [-D datadir] [-s]
pg_ctl kill signal_name process_id
```

On Microsoft Windows, also:

```
pg_ctl register [-D datadir] [-N servicename] [-U username] [-P password] [-S {auto} | {demand}]
[-e source] [-W] [-t seconds] [-s] [-o options]
pg_ctl unregister [-N servicename]
```

**Description**

`pg_ctl` is a utility for initializing a Postgres Pro database cluster, starting, stopping, or restarting the Postgres Pro database server (`postgres`), or displaying the status of a running server. Although the server can be started manually, `pg_ctl` encapsulates tasks such as redirecting log output and properly detaching from the terminal and process group. It also provides convenient options for controlled shutdown.

The `init` or `initdb` mode creates a new Postgres Pro database cluster, that is, a collection of databases that will be managed by a single server instance. This mode invokes the `initdb` command. See `initdb` for details.

`start` mode launches a new server. The server is started in the background, and its standard input is attached to `/dev/null` (or `nul` on Windows). On Unix-like systems, by default, the server's standard output and standard error are sent to `pg_ctl`'s standard output (not standard error). The standard output of `pg_ctl` should then be redirected to a file or piped to another process such as a log rotating program like `rotatelogs`; otherwise `postgres` will write its output to the controlling terminal (from the background) and will not leave the shell’s process group. On Windows, by default the server's standard output and standard error are sent to the terminal. These default behaviors can be changed by using `-l` to append the server's output to a log file. Use of either `-l` or output redirection is recommended.

`stop` mode shuts down the server that is running in the specified data directory. Three different shutdown methods can be selected with the `-m` option. “Smart” mode disallows new connections, then waits for all existing clients to disconnect and any online backup to finish. If the server is in hot standby, recovery and streaming replication will be terminated once all clients have disconnected. “Fast” mode (the default) does not wait for clients to disconnect and will terminate an online backup in progress. All active transactions are rolled back and clients are forcibly disconnected, then the server is shut down. “Immediate” mode will abort all server processes immediately, without a clean shutdown. This choice will lead to a crash-recovery cycle during the next server start.
restart mode effectively executes a stop followed by a start. This allows changing the postgres command-line options, or changing configuration-file options that cannot be changed without restarting the server. If relative paths were used on the command line during server start, restart might fail unless pg_ctl is executed in the same current directory as it was during server start.

reload mode simply sends the postgres server process a SIGHUP signal, causing it to reread its configuration files (postgresql.conf, pg_hba.conf, etc.). This allows changing configuration-file options that do not require a full server restart to take effect.

status mode checks whether a server is running in the specified data directory. If it is, the server's PID and the command line options that were used to invoke it are displayed. If the server is not running, pg_ctl returns an exit status of 3. If an accessible data directory is not specified, pg_ctl returns an exit status of 4.

promote mode commands the standby server that is running in the specified data directory to end standby mode and begin read-write operations.

logrotate mode rotates the server log file. For details on how to use this mode with external log rotation tools, see Section 23.3.

kill mode sends a signal to a specified process. This is primarily valuable on Microsoft Windows which does not have a built-in kill command. Use --help to see a list of supported signal names.

register mode registers the Postgres Pro server as a system service on Microsoft Windows. The -S option allows selection of service start type, either "auto" (start service automatically on system startup) or "demand" (start service on demand).

unregister mode unregisters a system service on Microsoft Windows. This undoes the effects of the register command.

Options

-c
--core-files

Attempt to allow server crashes to produce core files, on platforms where this is possible, by lifting any soft resource limit placed on core files. This is useful in debugging or diagnosing problems by allowing a stack trace to be obtained from a failed server process.

-D datadir
--pgdata=datadir

Specifies the file system location of the database configuration files. If this option is omitted, the environment variable PGDATA is used.

-l filename
--log=filename

Append the server log output to filename. If the file does not exist, it is created. The umask is set to 077, so access to the log file is disallowed to other users by default.

-m mode
--mode=mode

Specifies the shutdown mode. mode can be smart, fast, or immediate, or the first letter of one of these three. If this option is omitted, fast is the default.

-o options
--options=options

Specifies options to be passed directly to the postgres command. -o can be specified multiple times, with all the given options being passed through.
The `options` should usually be surrounded by single or double quotes to ensure that they are passed through as a group.

```
-o initdb-options
--options=initdb-options
```

Specifies options to be passed directly to the `initdb` command. `-o` can be specified multiple times, with all the given options being passed through.

The `initdb-options` should usually be surrounded by single or double quotes to ensure that they are passed through as a group.

```
-p path
```

Specifies the location of the `postgres` executable. By default the `postgres` executable is taken from the same directory as `pg_ctl`, or failing that, the hard-wired installation directory. It is not necessary to use this option unless you are doing something unusual and get errors that the `postgres` executable was not found.

In `init` mode, this option analogously specifies the location of the `initdb` executable.

```
-s
--silent
```

Print only errors, no informational messages.

```
-t seconds
--timeout=seconds
```

Specifies the maximum number of seconds to wait when waiting for an operation to complete (see option `-w`). Defaults to the value of the `PGCTLTIMEOUT` environment variable or, if not set, to 60 seconds.

```
-V
--version
```

Print the `pg_ctl` version and exit.

```
-w
--wait
```

Wait for the operation to complete. This is supported for the modes `start, stop, restart, promote, and register`, and is the default for those modes.

When waiting, `pg_ctl` repeatedly checks the server's PID file, sleeping for a short amount of time between checks. Startup is considered complete when the PID file indicates that the server is ready to accept connections. Shutdown is considered complete when the server removes the PID file. `pg_ctl` returns an exit code based on the success of the startup or shutdown.

If the operation does not complete within the timeout (see option `-t`), then `pg_ctl` exits with a nonzero exit status. But note that the operation might continue in the background and eventually succeed.

```
-W
--no-wait
```

Do not wait for the operation to complete. This is the opposite of the option `-w`.

If waiting is disabled, the requested action is triggered, but there is no feedback about its success. In that case, the server log file or an external monitoring system would have to be used to check the progress and success of the operation.

In prior releases of Postgres Pro, this was the default except for the `stop` mode.
-?
--help
    Show help about pg_ctl command line arguments, and exit.

If an option is specified that is valid, but not relevant to the selected operating mode, pg_ctl ignores it.

**Options for Windows**

-e source
    Name of the event source for pg_ctl to use for logging to the event log when running as a Windows service. The default is Postgres Pro. Note that this only controls messages sent from pg_ctl itself; once started, the server will use the event source specified by its event_source parameter. Should the server fail very early in startup, before that parameter has been set, it might also log using the default event source name Postgres Pro.

-N servicename
    Name of the system service to register. This name will be used as both the service name and the display name. The default is Postgres Pro.

-P password
    Password for the user to run the service as.

-S start-type
    Start type of the system service. start-type can be auto, or demand, or the first letter of one of these two. If this option is omitted, auto is the default.

-U username
    User name for the user to run the service as. For domain users, use the format DOMAIN\username.

**Environment**

PGCTLTIMEOUT
    Default limit on the number of seconds to wait when waiting for startup or shutdown to complete. If not set, the default is 60 seconds.

PGDATA
    Default data directory location.

Most pg_ctl modes require knowing the data directory location; therefore, the -D option is required unless PGDATA is set.

pg_ctl, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

For additional variables that affect the server, see postgres.

**Files**

postmaster.pid
    pg_ctl examines this file in the data directory to determine whether the server is currently running.

postmaster.opts
    If this file exists in the data directory, pg_ctl (in restart mode) will pass the contents of the file as options to postgres, unless overridden by the -o option. The contents of this file are also displayed in status mode.
Examples

Starting the Server
To start the server, waiting until the server is accepting connections:

$ pg_ctl start

To start the server using port 5433, and running without fsync, use:

$ pg_ctl -o "-F -p 5433" start

Stopping the Server
To stop the server, use:

$ pg_ctl stop

The -m option allows control over how the server shuts down:

$ pg_ctl stop -m smart

Restarting the Server
Restarting the server is almost equivalent to stopping the server and starting it again, except that by default, pg_ctl saves and reuses the command line options that were passed to the previously-running instance. To restart the server using the same options as before, use:

$ pg_ctl restart

But if -o is specified, that replaces any previous options. To restart using port 5433, disabling fsync upon restart:

$ pg_ctl -o "-F -p 5433" restart

Showing the Server Status
Here is sample status output from pg_ctl:

$ pg_ctl status

pg_ctl: server is running (PID: 13718)
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/postgres "-D" "/usr/local/pgsql/data" "-p" "5433" "-B" "128"

The second line is the command that would be invoked in restart mode.

See Also
initdb, postgres
pg_resetwal

pg_resetwal — reset the write-ahead log and other control information of a Postgres Pro database cluster

Synopsis

pg_resetwal [-f | --force] [-n | --dry-run] [option...] [-D | --pgdata] datadir

Description

pg_resetwal clears the write-ahead log (WAL) and optionally resets some other control information stored in the pg_control file. This function is sometimes needed if these files have become corrupted. It should be used only as a last resort, when the server will not start due to such corruption.

After running this command, it should be possible to start the server, but bear in mind that the database might contain inconsistent data due to partially-committed transactions. You should immediately dump your data, run initdb, and reload. After reload, check for inconsistencies and repair as needed.

This utility can only be run by the user who installed the server, because it requires read/write access to the data directory. For safety reasons, you must specify the data directory on the command line. pg_resetwal does not use the environment variable PGDATA.

If pg_resetwal complains that it cannot determine valid data for pg_control, you can force it to proceed anyway by specifying the -f (force) option. In this case plausible values will be substituted for the missing data. Most of the fields can be expected to match, but manual assistance might be needed for the next OID, next transaction ID and epoch, next multitransaction ID and offset, and WAL starting location fields. These fields can be set using the options discussed below. If you are not able to determine correct values for all these fields, -f can still be used, but the recovered database must be treated with even more suspicion than usual: an immediate dump and reload is imperative. Do not execute any data-modifying operations in the database before you dump, as any such action is likely to make the corruption worse.

Options

- f
  --force

  Force pg_resetwal to proceed even if it cannot determine valid data for pg_control, as explained above.

- n
  --dry-run

  The -n|--dry-run option instructs pg_resetwal to print the values reconstructed from pg_control and values about to be changed, and then exit without modifying anything. This is mainly a debugging tool, but can be useful as a sanity check before allowing pg_resetwal to proceed for real.

- V
  --version

  Display version information, then exit.

- ?
  --help

  Show help, then exit.

The following options are only needed when pg_resetwal is unable to determine appropriate values by reading pg_control. Safe values can be determined as described below. For values that take numeric arguments, hexadecimal values can be specified by using the prefix 0x.
-c xid, xid
--commit-timestamp-ids=xid, xid

Manually set the oldest and newest transaction IDs for which the commit time can be retrieved.

A safe value for the oldest transaction ID for which the commit time can be retrieved (first part) can be determined by looking for the numerically smallest file name in the directory `pg_commit_ts` under the data directory. Conversely, a safe value for the newest transaction ID for which the commit time can be retrieved (second part) can be determined by looking for the numerically greatest file name in the same directory. The file names are in hexadecimal.

-e xid_epoch
--epoch=xid_epoch

Manually set the next transaction ID's epoch.

The transaction ID epoch is not actually stored anywhere in the database except in the field that is set by `pg_resetwal`, so any value will work so far as the database itself is concerned. You might need to adjust this value to ensure that replication systems such as Slony-I and Skytools work correctly — if so, an appropriate value should be obtainable from the state of the downstream replicated database.

-l walfile
--next-wal-file=walfile

Manually set the WAL starting location by specifying the name of the next WAL segment file.

The name of next WAL segment file should be larger than any WAL segment file name currently existing in the directory `pg_wal` under the data directory. These names are also in hexadecimal and have three parts. The first part is the “timeline ID” and should usually be kept the same. For example, if `00000001000000320000004A` is the largest entry in `pg_wal`, use `-l 00000001000000320000004B` or higher.

Note that when using nondefault WAL segment sizes, the numbers in the WAL file names are different from the LSNs that are reported by system functions and system views. This option takes a WAL file name, not an LSN.

```
Note

pg_resetwal itself looks at the files in `pg_wal` and chooses a default -l setting beyond the last existing file name. Therefore, manual adjustment of -l should only be needed if you are aware of WAL segment files that are not currently present in `pg_wal`, such as entries in an offline archive; or if the contents of `pg_wal` have been lost entirely.
```

-m mxid, mxid
--multixact-ids=mxid, mxid

Manually set the next and oldest multitransaction ID.

A safe value for the next multitransaction ID (first part) can be determined by looking for the numerically largest file name in the directory `pg_multixact/offsets` under the data directory, adding one, and then multiplying by 65536 (0x10000). Conversely, a safe value for the oldest multitransaction ID (second part of -m) can be determined by looking for the numerically smallest file name in the same directory and multiplying by 65536. The file names are in hexadecimal, so the easiest way to do this is to specify the option value in hexadecimal and append four zeroes.

-o oid
--next-oid=oid

Manually set the next OID.
pg_resetwal

There is no comparably easy way to determine a next OID that’s beyond the largest one in the database, but fortunately it is not critical to get the next-OID setting right.

-o mxoff
--multixact-offset=mxoff

Manually set the next multitransaction offset.

A safe value can be determined by looking for the numerically largest file name in the directory pg_multixact/members under the data directory, adding one, and then multiplying by 52352 (0xCC80). The file names are in hexadecimal. There is no simple recipe such as the ones for other options of appending zeroes.

--wal-segsizewal_segment_size

Set the new WAL segment size, in megabytes. The value must be set to a power of 2 between 1 and 1024 (megabytes). See the same option of initdb for more information.

Note
While pg_resetwal will set the WAL starting address beyond the latest existing WAL segment file, some segment size changes can cause previous WAL file names to be reused. It is recommended to use -l together with this option to manually set the WAL starting address if WAL file name overlap will cause problems with your archiving strategy.

-u xid
--oldest-transaction-id=xid

Manually set the oldest unfrozen transaction ID.

A safe value can be determined by looking for the numerically smallest file name in the directory pg_xact under the data directory and then multiplying by 1048576 (0x100000). Note that the file names are in hexadecimal. It is usually easiest to specify the option value in hexadecimal too. For example, if 0007 is the smallest entry in pg_xact, -u 0x700000 will work (five trailing zeroes provide the proper multiplier).

-x xid
--next-transaction-id=xid

Manually set the next transaction ID.

A safe value can be determined by looking for the numerically largest file name in the directory pg_xact under the data directory, adding one, and then multiplying by 1048576 (0x100000). Note that the file names are in hexadecimal. It is usually easiest to specify the option value in hexadecimal too. For example, if 0011 is the largest entry in pg_xact, -x 0x1200000 will work (five trailing zeroes provide the proper multiplier).

Environment
PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

Notes
This command must not be used when the server is running. pg_resetwal will refuse to start up if it finds a server lock file in the data directory. If the server crashed then a lock file might have been left behind; in that case you can remove the lock file to allow pg_resetwal to run. But before you do so, make doubly certain that there is no server process still alive.

pg_resetwal works only with servers of the same major version.
See Also

pg_controldata
**pg_rewind**

pg_rewind — synchronize a Postgres Pro data directory with another data directory that was forked from it

**Synopsis**

```bash
pg_rewind [option...] {-D | --target-pgdata} directory { --source-pgdata=directory | --source-server=connstr }
```

**Description**

pg_rewind is a tool for synchronizing a Postgres Pro cluster with another copy of the same cluster, after the clusters' timelines have diverged. A typical scenario is to bring an old primary server back online after failover as a standby that follows the new primary.

After a successful rewind, the state of the target data directory is analogous to a base backup of the source data directory. Unlike taking a new base backup or using a tool like rsync, pg_rewind does not require comparing or copying unchanged relation blocks in the cluster. Only changed blocks from existing relation files are copied; all other files, including new relation files, configuration files, and WAL segments, are copied in full. As such the rewind operation is significantly faster than other approaches when the database is large and only a small fraction of blocks differ between the clusters.

pg_rewind examines the timeline histories of the source and target clusters to determine the point where they diverged, and expects to find WAL in the target cluster's `pg_wal` directory reaching all the way back to the point of divergence. The point of divergence can be found either on the target timeline, the source timeline, or their common ancestor. In the typical failover scenario where the target cluster was shut down soon after the divergence, this is not a problem, but if the target cluster ran for a long time after the divergence, its old WAL files might no longer be present. In this case, you can manually copy them from the WAL archive to the `pg_wal` directory, or run pg_rewind with the `-c` option to automatically retrieve them from the WAL archive. The use of pg_rewind is not limited to failover, e.g., a standby server can be promoted, run some write transactions, and then rewound to become a standby again.

After running pg_rewind, WAL replay needs to complete for the data directory to be in a consistent state. When the target server is started again it will enter archive recovery and replay all WAL generated in the source server from the last checkpoint before the point of divergence. If some of the WAL was no longer available in the source server when pg_rewind was run, and therefore could not be copied by the pg_rewind session, it must be made available when the target server is started. This can be done by creating a `recovery.signal` file in the target data directory and by configuring a suitable `restore_command` in `postgresql.conf`.

pg_rewind requires that the target server either has the `wal_log_hints` option enabled in `postgresql.conf` or data checksums enabled when the cluster was initialized with `initdb`. Neither of these are currently on by default. `full_page_writes` must also be set to `on`, but is enabled by default.

**Warning**

If pg_rewind fails while processing, then the data folder of the target is likely not in a state that can be recovered. In such a case, taking a new fresh backup is recommended.

As pg_rewind copies configuration files entirely from the source, it may be required to correct the configuration used for recovery before restarting the target server, especially if the target is reintroduced as a standby of the source. If you restart the server after the rewind operation has finished but without configuring recovery, the target may again diverge from the primary.

pg_rewind will fail immediately if it finds files it cannot write directly to. This can happen for example when the source and the target server use the same file mapping for read-only SSL keys.
and certificates. If such files are present on the target server it is recommended to remove them before running pg_rewind. After doing the rewind, some of those files may have been copied from the source, in which case it may be necessary to remove the data copied and restore back the set of links used before the rewind.

**Options**

pg_rewind accepts the following command-line arguments:

```
-D directory
--target-pgdata=directory

This option specifies the target data directory that is synchronized with the source. The target server must be shut down cleanly before running pg_rewind.

--source-pgdata=directory

Specifies the file system path to the data directory of the source server to synchronize the target with. This option requires the source server to be cleanly shut down.

--source-server=connstr

Specifies a libpq connection string to connect to the source Postgres Pro server to synchronize the target with. The connection must be a normal (non-replication) connection with a role having sufficient permissions to execute the functions used by pg_rewind on the source server (see Notes section for details) or a superuser role. This option requires the source server to be running and accepting connections.

-R
--write-recovery-conf

Create standby.signal and append connection settings to postgresql.auto.conf in the output directory. --source-server is mandatory with this option.

-n
--dry-run

Do everything except actually modifying the target directory.

-N
--no-sync

By default, pg_rewind will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes pg_rewind to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the synchronized data directory corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used on a production installation.

-P
--progress

Enables progress reporting. Turning this on will deliver an approximate progress report while copying data from the source cluster.

-c
--restore-target-wal

Use restore_command defined in the target cluster configuration to retrieve WAL files from the WAL archive if these files are no longer available in the pg_wal directory.

--debug

Print verbose debugging output that is mostly useful for developers debugging pg_rewind.
pg_rewind

--no-ensure-shutdown

pg_rewind requires that the target server is cleanly shut down before rewinding. By default, if the target server is not shut down cleanly, pg_rewind starts the target server in single-user mode to complete crash recovery first, and stops it. By passing this option, pg_rewind skips this and errors out immediately if the server is not cleanly shut down. Users are expected to handle the situation themselves in that case.

-V
--version

Display version information, then exit.

-?
--help

Show help, then exit.

Environment

When --source-server option is used, pg_rewind also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

The environment variable PG_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

Notes

When executing pg_rewind using an online cluster as source, a role having sufficient permissions to execute the functions used by pg_rewind on the source cluster can be used instead of a superuser. Here is how to create such a role, named rewind_user here:

CREATE USER rewind_user LOGIN;
GRANT EXECUTE ON function pg_catalog.pg_ls_dir(text, boolean, boolean) TO rewind_user;
GRANT EXECUTE ON function pg_catalog.pg_stat_file(text, boolean) TO rewind_user;
GRANT EXECUTE ON function pg_catalog.pg_read_binary_file(text) TO rewind_user;
GRANT EXECUTE ON function pg_catalog.pg_read_binary_file(text, bigint, bigint, boolean) TO rewind_user;

When executing pg_rewind using an online cluster as source which has been recently promoted, it is necessary to execute a CHECKPOINT after promotion such that its control file reflects up-to-date timeline information, which is used by pg_rewind to check if the target cluster can be rewound using the designated source cluster.

How It Works

The basic idea is to copy all file system-level changes from the source cluster to the target cluster:

1. Scan the WAL log of the target cluster, starting from the last checkpoint before the point where the source cluster’s timeline history forked off from the target cluster. For each WAL record, record each data block that was touched. This yields a list of all the data blocks that were changed in the target cluster, after the source cluster forked off. If some of the WAL files are no longer available, try re-running pg_rewind with the --c option to search for the missing files in the WAL archive.

2. Copy all those changed blocks from the source cluster to the target cluster, either using direct file system access (--source-pgdata) or SQL (--source-server). Relation files are now in a state equivalent to the moment of the last completed checkpoint prior to the point at which the WAL timelines of the source and target diverged plus the current state on the source of any blocks changed on the target after that divergence.

3. Copy all other files, including new relation files, WAL segments, pg_xact, and configuration files from the source cluster to the target cluster. Similarly to base backups, the contents of the directories pg_dynshmem/, pg_notify/, pg_replslot/, pg_serial/, pg_snapshots/, pg_stat_tmp/,
and pg_subtrans/ are omitted from the data copied from the source cluster. The files backup_label, tablespace_map, pg_internal.init, postmaster.opts, and postmaster.pid, as well as any file or directory beginning with pgsql_tmp, are omitted.

4. Create a backup_label file to begin WAL replay at the checkpoint created at failover and configure the pg_control file with a minimum consistency LSN defined as the result of pg_current_wal_insert_lsn() when rewinding from a live source or the last checkpoint LSN when rewinding from a stopped source.

5. When starting the target, Postgres Pro Standard replays all the required WAL, resulting in a data directory in a consistent state.
pg-setup

pg-setup — set up a new Postgres Pro database cluster and manage the corresponding service

Synopsis

pg-setup initdb [\--tune=conf] [initdb_options]
pg-setup find-free-port
pg-setup set-server-port port
pg-setup set parameter value
pg-setup service service_option

Description

pg-setup is a shell script provided in the Postgres Pro distribution to automate database cluster setup on Linux systems. This script is provided as part of the postgrespro-std-14-server package. Once Postgres Pro is installed, you can find pg-setup in the install-dir/bin directory, where install-dir is /opt/pgpro/std-14.

pg-setup must be run as root, but performs database administration operations as user postgres. You can run this script with different options to:

• initialize the database cluster
• check for available ports and change the port used by Postgres Pro server
• configure the database cluster for a specific Postgres Pro product
• change server configuration parameters
• enable/disable automatic startup of Postgres Pro service
• start, stop, or restart Postgres Pro service

Options

pg-setup accepts the following command-line arguments:

initdb [initdb_options]

Initialize the database cluster on behalf of the postgres user.

By default, the database cluster, configured for your Postgres Pro distribution, is initialized in the /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data directory, with checksums enabled, auth-local parameter set to peer, and auth-host parameter set to md5. Localization settings are inherited from the LANG environment variable for the current session. All the LC_* environment variables are ignored. Optionally, you can provide initdb options to customize the installation.

If the default database is created using pg-setup, the path to its data directory is stored in the /etc/default/postgrespro-standard-14 file, so all the subsequent pg-setup commands, as well as any commands that manage Postgres Pro service, affect this database only. You cannot manage several databases using pg-setup.

find-free-port

Search for a free port on your system. This option is useful if you are going to install more than one server instance, or the default 5432 port is used by another program.

set-server-port port

Specify the port number on which the server will listen for connections. Use this option to avoid conflicts if you are installing more than one server instance on the same system.
Default: 5432

```
set name value
```

Set the specified configuration parameter to the provided `value` in the `postgresql.conf` file. If this parameter has been already defined by the `ALTER SYSTEM` command, its previous value is removed from the `postgresql.auto.conf` file.

```
service service_option
```

Manage Postgres Pro service using one of the following options:
- `enable` — enable automatic service startup upon system restart.
- `disable` — disable automatic service startup upon system restart.
- `start` — start the service.
- `stop` — stop the service.
- `condrestart` — restart the service if it is running when `pg-setup` is invoked.
- `status` — return the Postgres Pro service status.

```
tune conf
```

Set the specified configuration for the database cluster. Predefined values of `conf` depend on the Postgres Pro edition and can be `lc`, `std` or `ent`. The value of `lc` can be specified for any product. By default, the database cluster is configured for your Postgres Pro Standard edition. If you provide a value different from any predefined, the cluster will get non-customized configuration settings.

For systems where more than one database server and/or application will run, you may need to adjust the configuration since `pg_setup` chooses the configuration settings depending on hardware characteristics, assuming that the system will use only one database server.

**Notes**

If you are installing Postgres Pro from the `postgrespro-std-14` package, `pg-setup` is invoked automatically with the default settings. As a result, the database cluster is initialized and the default database is created in the `/var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data` directory, Postgres Pro service autostart is enabled, and the service is started.

If you are installing Postgres Pro server directly from the `postgrespro-std-14-server` package, you can run this script manually to initialize the database cluster or manage the Postgres Pro service.

For details on binary installation specifics on Linux, see Section 16.1.
**Synopsis**

`pg_test_fsync [option...]`

**Description**

`pg_test_fsync` is intended to give you a reasonable idea of what the fastest `wal_sync_method` is on your specific system, as well as supplying diagnostic information in the event of an identified I/O problem. However, differences shown by `pg_test_fsync` might not make any significant difference in real database throughput, especially since many database servers are not speed-limited by their write-ahead logs. `pg_test_fsync` reports average file sync operation time in microseconds for each `wal_sync_method`, which can also be used to inform efforts to optimize the value of `commit_delay`.

**Options**

`pg_test_fsync` accepts the following command-line options:

- `-f`  
  `--filename`
  Specifies the file name to write test data in. This file should be in the same file system that the `pg_wal` directory is or will be placed in. (`pg_wal` contains the WAL files.) The default is `pg_test_fsync.out` in the current directory.

- `-s`  
  `--secs-per-test`
  Specifies the number of seconds for each test. The more time per test, the greater the test's accuracy, but the longer it takes to run. The default is 5 seconds, which allows the program to complete in under 2 minutes.

- `-V`  
  `--version`
  Print the `pg_test_fsync` version and exit.

- `--help`
  Show help about `pg_test_fsync` command line arguments, and exit.

**Environment**

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

**See Also**

`postgres`
pg_test_timing

pg_test_timing — measure timing overhead

Synopsis

pg_test_timing [option...]

Description

pg_test_timing is a tool to measure the timing overhead on your system and confirm that the system time never moves backwards. Systems that are slow to collect timing data can give less accurate EXPLAIN ANALYZE results.

Options

pg_test_timing accepts the following command-line options:

-d duration
--duration=duration

Specifies the test duration, in seconds. Longer durations give slightly better accuracy, and are more likely to discover problems with the system clock moving backwards. The default test duration is 3 seconds.

-V
--version

Print the pg_test_timing version and exit.

-?
--help

Show help about pg_test_timing command line arguments, and exit.

Usage

Interpreting Results

Good results will show most (>90%) individual timing calls take less than one microsecond. Average per loop overhead will be even lower, below 100 nanoseconds. This example from an Intel i7-860 system using a TSC clock source shows excellent performance:

Testing timing overhead for 3 seconds.
Per loop time including overhead: 35.96 ns
Histogram of timing durations:

< us  % of total  count
 1  96.40465  80435604
 2  3.59518   2999652
 4  0.00015     126
 8  0.00002       13
16  0.00000       2

Note that different units are used for the per loop time than the histogram. The loop can have resolution within a few nanoseconds (ns), while the individual timing calls can only resolve down to one microsecond (us).

Measuring Executor Timing Overhead

When the query executor is running a statement using EXPLAIN ANALYZE, individual operations are timed as well as showing a summary. The overhead of your system can be checked by counting rows with the psql program:
CREATE TABLE t AS SELECT * FROM generate_series(1,100000);
\timing
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t;
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t;

The i7-860 system measured runs the count query in 9.8 ms while the EXPLAIN ANALYZE version takes 16.6 ms, each processing just over 100,000 rows. That 6.8 ms difference means the timing overhead per row is 68 ns, about twice what pg_test_timing estimated it would be. Even that relatively small amount of overhead is making the fully timed count statement take almost 70% longer. On more substantial queries, the timing overhead would be less problematic.

**Changing Time Sources**

On some newer Linux systems, it's possible to change the clock source used to collect timing data at any time. A second example shows the slowdown possible from switching to the slower acpi_pm time source, on the same system used for the fast results above:

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/clocksource/clocksource0/available_clocksource
  tsc  hpet  acpi_pm
# echo acpi_pm > /sys/devices/system/clocksource/clocksource0/current_clocksource
# pg_test_timing
Per loop time including overhead: 722.92 ns
Histogram of timing durations:
< us  % of total  count
 1  27.84870   1155682
 2  72.05956   2990371
 4  0.07810       3241
 8  0.01357        563
16  0.00007          3
```

In this configuration, the sample EXPLAIN ANALYZE above takes 115.9 ms. That's 1061 ns of timing overhead, again a small multiple of what's measured directly by this utility. That much timing overhead means the actual query itself is only taking a tiny fraction of the accounted for time, most of it is being consumed in overhead instead. In this configuration, any EXPLAIN ANALYZE totals involving many timed operations would be inflated significantly by timing overhead.

FreeBSD also allows changing the time source on the fly, and it logs information about the timer selected during boot:

```
# dmesg | grep "Timecounter"
Timecounter "ACPI-fast" frequency 3579545 Hz quality 900
Timecounter "i8254" frequency 1193182 Hz quality 0
Timecounters tick every 10.000 msec
Timecounter "TSC" frequency 2531787134 Hz quality 800
# sysctl kern.timecounter.hardware=TSC
kern.timecounter.hardware: ACPI-fast -> TSC
```

Other systems may only allow setting the time source on boot. On older Linux systems the "clock" kernel setting is the only way to make this sort of change. And even on some more recent ones, the only option you'll see for a clock source is "jiffies". Jiffies are the older Linux software clock implementation, which can have good resolution when it's backed by fast enough timing hardware, as in this example:

```
$ cat /sys/devices/system/clocksource/clocksource0/available_clocksource
  jiffies
$ dmesg | grep time.c
time.c: Using 3.579545 MHz WALL PM GTOD PIT/TSC timer.
time.c: Detected 2400.153 MHz processor.
$ pg_test_timing
Testing timing overhead for 3 seconds.
Per timing duration including loop overhead: 97.75 ns
Histogram of timing durations:
```
Clock Hardware and Timing Accuracy

Collecting accurate timing information is normally done on computers using hardware clocks with various levels of accuracy. With some hardware the operating systems can pass the system clock time almost directly to programs. A system clock can also be derived from a chip that simply provides timing interrupts, periodic ticks at some known time interval. In either case, operating system kernels provide a clock source that hides these details. But the accuracy of that clock source and how quickly it can return results varies based on the underlying hardware.

Inaccurate time keeping can result in system instability. Test any change to the clock source very carefully. Operating system defaults are sometimes made to favor reliability over best accuracy. And if you are using a virtual machine, look into the recommended time sources compatible with it. Virtual hardware faces additional difficulties when emulating timers, and there are often per operating system settings suggested by vendors.

The Time Stamp Counter (TSC) clock source is the most accurate one available on current generation CPUs. It's the preferred way to track the system time when it's supported by the operating system and the TSC clock is reliable. There are several ways that TSC can fail to provide an accurate timing source, making it unreliable. Older systems can have a TSC clock that varies based on the CPU temperature, making it unusable for timing. Trying to use TSC on some older multicore CPUs can give a reported time that's inconsistent among multiple cores. This can result in the time going backwards, a problem this program checks for. And even the newest systems can fail to provide accurate TSC timing with very aggressive power saving configurations.

Newer operating systems may check for the known TSC problems and switch to a slower, more stable clock source when they are seen. If your system supports TSC time but doesn't default to that, it may be disabled for a good reason. And some operating systems may not detect all the possible problems correctly, or will allow using TSC even in situations where it's known to be inaccurate.

The High Precision Event Timer (HPET) is the preferred timer on systems where it's available and TSC is not accurate. The timer chip itself is programmable to allow up to 100 nanosecond resolution, but you may not see that much accuracy in your system clock.

Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) provides a Power Management (PM) Timer, which Linux refers to as the acpi_pm. The clock derived from acpi_pm will at best provide 300 nanosecond resolution.

Timers used on older PC hardware include the 8254 Programmable Interval Timer (PIT), the real-time clock (RTC), the Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC) timer, and the Cyclone timer. These timers aim for millisecond resolution.

See Also

EXPLAIN
pg_upgrade

pg_upgrade — upgrade a Postgres Pro server instance

Synopsis

pg_upgrade -b oldbindir -B newbindir -d oldconfigdir -D newconfigdir [option...]

Description

pg_upgrade (formerly called pg_migrator) allows data stored in PostgreSQL or Postgres Pro data files to be upgraded to a later Postgres Pro major version without the data dump/reload typically required for major version upgrades, e.g., from 9.5.8 to 9.6.4 or from 10.7 to 11.2. It is not required for minor version upgrades, e.g., from 9.6.2 to 9.6.3 or from 10.1 to 10.2.

Major Postgres Pro releases regularly add new features that often change the layout of the system tables, but the internal data storage format rarely changes. pg_upgrade uses this fact to perform rapid upgrades by creating new system tables and simply reusing the old user data files. If a future major release ever changes the data storage format in a way that makes the old data format unreadable, pg_upgrade will not be usable for such upgrades. (The community will attempt to avoid such situations.)

pg_upgrade does its best to make sure the old and new clusters are binary-compatible, e.g., by checking for compatible compile-time settings, including 32/64-bit binaries. It is important that any external modules are also binary compatible, though this cannot be checked by pg_upgrade.

pg_upgrade supports upgrades from 8.4.X and later to the current major release of Postgres Pro, including snapshot and beta releases.

Options

pg_upgrade accepts the following command-line arguments:

-b bindir
--old-bindir=bindir

the old Postgres Pro executable directory; environment variable PGBINOLD

-B bindir
--new-bindir=bindir

the new Postgres Pro executable directory; default is the directory where pg_upgrade resides; environment variable PGINNEW

-c
--check

check clusters only, don't change any data

-d configdir
--old-datadir=configdir

the old database cluster configuration directory; environment variable PGDATAOLD

-D configdir
--new-datadir=configdir

the new database cluster configuration directory; environment variable PGDATANEW

-j njobs
--jobs=njobs

number of simultaneous processes or threads to use
-k
--link
use hard links instead of copying files to the new cluster

-o options
--old-options options
options to be passed directly to the old postgres command; multiple option invocations are appended

-O options
--new-options options
options to be passed directly to the new postgres command; multiple option invocations are appended

-p port
--old-port=port
the old cluster port number; environment variable PGPORTOLD

-P port
--new-port=port
the new cluster port number; environment variable PGPORTNEW

-r
--retain
retain SQL and log files even after successful completion

-s dir
--socketdir=dir
directory to use for postmaster sockets during upgrade; default is current working directory; environment variable PGSOCKETDIR

-U username
--username=username
cluster's install user name; environment variable PGUSER

-v
--verbose
enable verbose internal logging

-V
--version
display version information, then exit

--clone
Use efficient file cloning (also known as “reflinks” on some systems) instead of copying files to the new cluster. This can result in near-instantaneous copying of the data files, giving the speed advantages of -k/--link while leaving the old cluster untouched.

File cloning is only supported on some operating systems and file systems. If it is selected but not supported, the pg_upgrade run will error. At present, it is supported on Linux (kernel 4.5 or later) with Btrfs and XFS (on file systems created with reflink support), and on macOS with APFS.

-?
--help
show help, then exit
Usage

These are the steps to perform an upgrade with pg_upgrade:

1. **Optionally move the old cluster**
   If you are using a version-specific installation directory, e.g., /opt/PostgreSQL/14, you do not need to move the old cluster. The graphical installers all use version-specific installation directories.

   If your installation directory is not version-specific, e.g., /usr/local/pgsql, it is necessary to move the current Postgres Pro install directory so it does not interfere with the new Postgres Pro installation. Once the current Postgres Pro server is shut down, it is safe to rename the Postgres Pro installation directory; assuming the old directory is /usr/local/pgsql, you can do:

   mv /usr/local/pgsql /usr/local/pgsql.old

   to rename the directory.

2. **Install the new Postgres Pro binaries**
   Install the new server's binaries and support files. pg_upgrade is included in a default installation.

3. **Initialize the new Postgres Pro cluster**
   Initialize the new cluster using initdb. Use compatible initdb flags that match the old cluster. Many prebuilt installers do this step automatically. There is no need to start the new cluster.

4. **Install extension shared object files**
   Many extensions and custom modules, whether from contrib or another source, use shared object files (or DLLs), e.g., pgcrypto.so. If the old cluster used these, shared object files matching the new server binary must be installed in the new cluster, usually via operating system commands. Do not load the schema definitions, e.g., CREATE EXTENSION pgcrypto, because these will be duplicated from the old cluster. If extension updates are available, pg_upgrade will report this and create a script that can be run later to update them.

5. **Copy custom full-text search files**
   Copy any custom full text search files (dictionary, synonym, thesaurus, stop words) from the old to the new cluster.

6. **Adjust authentication**
   pg_upgrade will connect to the old and new servers several times, so you might want to set authentication to peer in pg_hba.conf or use a ~/.pgpass file (see Section 32.16).

7. **Stop both servers**
   Make sure both database servers are stopped using, on Unix, e.g.:

   ```
   pg_ctl -D /opt/PostgreSQL/9.6 stop
   pg_ctl -D /opt/PostgreSQL/14 stop
   ```

   or on Windows, using the proper service names:

   ```
   NET STOP postgresql-9.6
   NET STOP postgresql-14
   ```

   Streaming replication and log-shipping standby servers can remain running until a later step.

8. **Prepare for standby server upgrades**
   If you are upgrading standby servers using methods outlined in section Step 10, verify that the old standby servers are caught up by running pg_controldata against the old primary and standby clusters. Verify that the “Latest checkpoint location” values match in all clusters. (There will be a mismatch if old standby servers were shut down before the old primary or if the old standby servers are still running.) Also, make sure wal_level is not set to minimal in the postgresql.conf file on the new primary cluster.
9. **Run pg_upgrade**

Always run the pg_upgrade binary of the new server, not the old one. pg_upgrade requires the specification of the old and new cluster's data and executable (bin) directories. You can also specify user and port values, and whether you want the data files linked or cloned instead of the default copy behavior.

If you use link mode, the upgrade will be much faster (no file copying) and use less disk space, but you will not be able to access your old cluster once you start the new cluster after the upgrade. Link mode also requires that the old and new cluster data directories be in the same file system. (Tablespaces and pg_wal can be on different file systems.) Clone mode provides the same speed and disk space advantages but does not cause the old cluster to be unusable once the new cluster is started. Clone mode also requires that the old and new data directories be in the same file system. This mode is only available on certain operating systems and file systems.

The --jobs option allows multiple CPU cores to be used for copying/linking of files and to dump and reload database schemas in parallel; a good place to start is the maximum of the number of CPU cores and tablespaces. This option can dramatically reduce the time to upgrade a multi-database server running on a multiprocessor machine.

For Windows users, you must be logged into an administrative account, and then start a shell as the postgres user and set the proper path:

```plaintext
RUNAS /USER:postgres "CMD.EXE"
SET PATH=%PATH%;C:\Program Files\PostgreSQL\14\bin;
```

and then run pg_upgrade with quoted directories, e.g.:

```plaintext
pg_upgrade.exe
   --old-datadir "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/9.6/data"
   --new-datadir "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/14/data"
   --old-bindir "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/9.6/bin"
   --new-bindir "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/14/bin"
```

Once started, pg_upgrade will verify the two clusters are compatible and then do the upgrade. You can use pg_upgrade --check to perform only the checks, even if the old server is still running. pg_upgrade --check will also outline any manual adjustments you will need to make after the upgrade. If you are going to be using link or clone mode, you should use the option --link or --clone with --check to enable mode-specific checks. pg_upgrade requires write permission in the current directory.

Obviously, no one should be accessing the clusters during the upgrade. pg_upgrade defaults to running servers on port 50432 to avoid unintended client connections. You can use the same port number for both clusters when doing an upgrade because the old and new clusters will not be running at the same time. However, when checking an old running server, the old and new port numbers must be different.

If an error occurs while restoring the database schema, pg_upgrade will exit and you will have to revert to the old cluster as outlined in Step 16 below. To try pg_upgrade again, you will need to modify the old cluster so the pg_upgrade schema restore succeeds. If the problem is a contrib module, you might need to uninstall the contrib module from the old cluster and install it in the new cluster after the upgrade, assuming the module is not being used to store user data.

10. **Upgrade streaming replication and log-shipping standby servers**

If you used link mode and have Streaming Replication (see Section 25.2.5) or Log-Shipping (see Section 25.2) standby servers, you can follow these steps to quickly upgrade them. You will not be running pg_upgrade on the standby servers, but rather rsync on the primary. Do not start any servers yet.
If you did not use link mode, do not have or do not want to use rsync, or want an easier solution, skip the instructions in this section and simply recreate the standby servers once pg_upgrade completes and the new primary is running.

a. **Install the new Postgres Pro binaries on standby servers**  
   Make sure the new binaries and support files are installed on all standby servers.

b. **Make sure the new standby data directories do not exist**  
   Make sure the new standby data directories do not exist or are empty. If initdb was run, delete the standby servers' new data directories.

c. **Install extension shared object files**  
   Install the same extension shared object files on the new standbys that you installed in the new primary cluster.

d. **Stop standby servers**  
   If the standby servers are still running, stop them now using the above instructions.

e. **Save configuration files**  
   Save any configuration files from the old standbys' configuration directories you need to keep, e.g., `postgresql.conf` (and any files included by it), `postgresql.auto.conf`, `pg_hba.conf`, because these will be overwritten or removed in the next step.

f. **Run rsync**  
   When using link mode, standby servers can be quickly upgraded using rsync. To accomplish this, from a directory on the primary server that is above the old and new database cluster directories, run this on the primary for each standby server:

   ```
   rsync --archive --delete --hard-links --size-only --no-inc-recursive old_cluster new_cluster remote_dir
   ```

   *where* `old_cluster` and `new_cluster` are relative to the current directory on the primary, and `remote_dir` is *above* the old and new cluster directories on the standby. The directory structure under the specified directories on the primary and standbys must match. Consult the rsync manual page for details on specifying the remote directory, e.g.,

   ```
   rsync --archive --delete --hard-links --size-only --no-inc-recursive /opt/PostgreSQL/9.5 \ 
   /opt/PostgreSQL/9.6 standby.example.com:/opt/PostgreSQL
   ```

   You can verify what the command will do using rsync's `--dry-run` option. While rsync must be run on the primary for at least one standby, it is possible to run rsync on an upgraded standby to upgrade other standbys, as long as the upgraded standby has not been started.

   What this does is to record the links created by pg_upgrade's link mode that connect files in the old and new clusters on the primary server. It then finds matching files in the standby's old cluster and creates links for them in the standby's new cluster. Files that were not linked on the primary are copied from the primary to the standby. (They are usually small.) This provides rapid standby upgrades. Unfortunately, rsync needlessly copies files associated with temporary and unlogged tables because these files don’t normally exist on standby servers.

   If you have tablespaces, you will need to run a similar rsync command for each tablespace directory, e.g.:

   ```
   rsync --archive --delete --hard-links --size-only --no-inc-recursive /vol1/pg_tblsp/PG_9.5_201510051 \
   ```
If you have relocated pg_wal outside the data directories, rsync must be run on those directories too.

g. **Configure streaming replication and log-shipping standby servers**

Configure the servers for log shipping. (You do not need to run `pg_start_backup()` and `pg_stop_backup()` or take a file system backup as the standbys are still synchronized with the primary.)

11. **Restore pg_hba.conf**

If you modified `pg_hba.conf`, restore its original settings. It might also be necessary to adjust other configuration files in the new cluster to match the old cluster, e.g., `postgresql.conf` (and any files included by it), `postgresql.auto.conf`.

12. **Start the new server**

The new server can now be safely started, and then any rsync’ed standby servers.

13. **Post-upgrade processing**

If any post-upgrade processing is required, `pg_upgrade` will issue warnings as it completes. It will also generate script files that must be run by the administrator. The script files will connect to each database that needs post-upgrade processing. Each script should be run using:

```bash
curl -L --location --no-buffering -o script.sql https://puppetlabs.com/pgupgrade/pgupgrade/upgrade/post-upgrade.sql
```

The scripts can be run in any order and can be deleted once they have been run.

---

**Caution**

In general it is unsafe to access tables referenced in rebuild scripts until the rebuild scripts have run to completion; doing so could yield incorrect results or poor performance. Tables not referenced in rebuild scripts can be accessed immediately.

14. **Statistics**

Because optimizer statistics are not transferred by `pg_upgrade`, you will be instructed to run a command to regenerate that information at the end of the upgrade. You might need to set connection parameters to match your new cluster.

15. **Delete old cluster**

Once you are satisfied with the upgrade, you can delete the old cluster's data directories by running the script mentioned when `pg_upgrade` completes. (Automatic deletion is not possible if you have user-defined tablespaces inside the old data directory.) You can also delete the old installation directories (e.g., `bin`, `share`).

16. **Reverting to old cluster**

If, after running `pg_upgrade`, you wish to revert to the old cluster, there are several options:

- If the `--check` option was used, the old cluster was unmodified; it can be restarted.
- If the `--link` option was used, the old cluster was unmodified; it can be restarted.
- If the `--link` option was used, the data files might be shared between the old and new cluster:
  - If `pg_upgrade` aborted before linking started, the old cluster was unmodified; it can be restarted.
  - If you did not start the new cluster, the old cluster was unmodified except that, when linking started, a .old suffix was appended to `$PGDATA/global/pg_control`. To reuse the old cluster, remove the .old suffix from `$PGDATA/global/pg_control`; you can then restart the old cluster.
- If you did start the new cluster, it has written to shared files and it is unsafe to use the old cluster. The old cluster will need to be restored from backup in this case.

Notes

pg_upgrade creates various working files, such as schema dumps, in the current working directory. For security, be sure that that directory is not readable or writable by any other users.

pg_upgrade launches short-lived postmasters in the old and new data directories. Temporary Unix socket files for communication with these postmasters are, by default, made in the current working directory. In some situations the path name for the current directory might be too long to be a valid socket name. In that case you can use the --s option to put the socket files in some directory with a shorter path name. For security, be sure that that directory is not readable or writable by any other users. (This is not supported on Windows.)

All failure, rebuild, and reindex cases will be reported by pg_upgrade if they affect your installation; post-upgrade scripts to rebuild tables and indexes will be generated automatically. If you are trying to automate the upgrade of many clusters, you should find that clusters with identical database schemas require the same post-upgrade steps for all cluster upgrades; this is because the post-upgrade steps are based on the database schemas, and not user data.

For deployment testing, create a schema-only copy of the old cluster, insert dummy data, and upgrade that.

pg_upgrade does not support upgrading of databases containing table columns using these reg* OID-referencing system data types:

regcollation
regconfig
regdictionary
regnamespace
regoper
regoperator
regproc
regprocedure

(regclass, regrole, and regtype can be upgraded.)

If you are upgrading a pre-PostgreSQL 9.2 cluster that uses a configuration-file-only directory, you must pass the real data directory location to pg_upgrade, and pass the configuration directory location to the server, e.g., -d /real-data-directory -o '-'D /configuration-directory'.

If using a pre-9.1 old server that is using a non-default Unix-domain socket directory or a default that differs from the default of the new cluster, set PGHOST to point to the old server's socket location. (This is not relevant on Windows.)

When performing an upgrade from Postgres Pro 9.6 or lower, for databases with a multibyte encoding, pg_upgrade may generate SQL files with REINDEX/VALIDATE commands. You must run these files to rebuild indexes and re-validate constraints. This can happen in the following cases:

- The old cluster uses indexes or constraints depending on collations other than the default collation of the database, C, or POSIX.
- On Windows, the old cluster uses indexes or constraints depending on the default collation with a verbose name, such as "Russian_Russia[.encoding]" or "English_United States[.encoding]".

If you want to use link mode and you do not want your old cluster to be modified when the new cluster is started, consider using the clone mode. If that is not available, make a copy of the old cluster and upgrade that in link mode. To make a valid copy of the old cluster, use rsync to create a dirty copy of the old cluster while the server is running, then shut down the old server and run rsync --checksum again to update the copy with any changes to make it consistent. (--checksum is necessary because rsync
only has file modification-time granularity of one second.) You might want to exclude some files, e.g., `postmaster.pid`, as documented in Section 24.3.3. If your file system supports file system snapshots or copy-on-write file copies, you can use that to make a backup of the old cluster and tablespaces, though the snapshot and copies must be created simultaneously or while the database server is down.

See Also
initdb, pg_ctl, pg_dump, postgres
**pg_waldump**

pg_waldump — display a human-readable rendering of the write-ahead log of a Postgres Pro database cluster

**Synopsis**

```
pg_waldump [option...] [startseg [endseg]]
```

**Description**

pg_waldump displays the write-ahead log (WAL) and is mainly useful for debugging or educational purposes.

This utility can only be run by the user who installed the server, because it requires read-only access to the data directory.

**Options**

The following command-line options control the location and format of the output:

- `startseg`
  Start reading at the specified log segment file. This implicitly determines the path in which files will be searched for, and the timeline to use.

- `endseg`
  Stop after reading the specified log segment file.

- `-b`
  `--bkp-details`
  Output detailed information about backup blocks.

- `-e end`
  `--end= end`
  Stop reading at the specified WAL location, instead of reading to the end of the log stream.

- `-f`
  `--follow`
  After reaching the end of valid WAL, keep polling once per second for new WAL to appear.

- `-n limit`
  `--limit= limit`
  Display the specified number of records, then stop.

- `-p path`
  `--path= path`
  Specifies a directory to search for log segment files or a directory with a pg_wal subdirectory that contains such files. The default is to search in the current directory, the pg_wal subdirectory of the current directory, and the pg_wal subdirectory of PGDATA.

- `-q`
  `--quiet`
  Do not print any output, except for errors. This option can be useful when you want to know whether a range of WAL records can be successfully parsed but don't care about the record contents.
--rmgr
--rmgr=rmgr

Only display records generated by the specified resource manager. If list is passed as name, print
a list of valid resource manager names, and exit.

-s start
--start=start

WAL location at which to start reading. The default is to start reading the first valid log record found
in the earliest file found.

-t timeline
--timeline=timeline

Timeline from which to read log records. The default is to use the value in startseg, if that is
specified; otherwise, the default is 1.

-V
--version

Print the pg_waldump version and exit.

-x xid
--xid=xid

Only display records marked with the given transaction ID.

-z
--stats[=record]

Display summary statistics (number and size of records and full-page images) instead of individual
records. Optionally generate statistics per-record instead of per-rmgr.

-?
--help

Show help about pg_waldump command line arguments, and exit.

Environment

PGDATA

Data directory; see also the -p option.

PG_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

Notes

Can give wrong results when the server is running.

Only the specified timeline is displayed (or the default, if none is specified). Records in other timelines
are ignored.

pg_waldump cannot read WAL files with suffix .partial. If those files need to be read, .partial suffix
needs to be removed from the file name.

See Also

Section 28.6
**postres**

postres — Postgres Pro database server

**Synopsis**

`postres [option...]`

**Description**

`postres` is the Postgres Pro database server. In order for a client application to access a database it connects (over a network or locally) to a running `postres` instance. The `postres` instance then starts a separate server process to handle the connection.

One `postres` instance always manages the data of exactly one database cluster. A database cluster is a collection of databases that is stored at a common file system location (the “data area”). More than one `postres` instance can run on a system at one time, so long as they use different data areas and different communication ports (see below). When `postres` starts it needs to know the location of the data area. The location must be specified by the `-D` option or the `PGDATA` environment variable; there is no default. Typically, `-D` or `PGDATA` points directly to the data area directory created by `initdb`. Other possible file layouts are discussed in Section 18.2.

By default `postres` starts in the foreground and prints log messages to the standard error stream. In practical applications `postres` should be started as a background process, perhaps at boot time.

The `postres` command can also be called in single-user mode. The primary use for this mode is during bootstrapping by `initdb`. Sometimes it is used for debugging or disaster recovery; note that running a single-user server is not truly suitable for debugging the server, since no realistic interprocess communication and locking will happen. When invoked in single-user mode from the shell, the user can enter queries and the results will be printed to the screen, but in a form that is more useful for developers than end users. In the single-user mode, the session user will be set to the user with ID 1, and implicit superuser powers are granted to this user. This user does not actually have to exist, so the single-user mode can be used to manually recover from certain kinds of accidental damage to the system catalogs.

**Options**

`postres` accepts the following command-line arguments. For a detailed discussion of the options consult Chapter 18. You can save typing most of these options by setting up a configuration file. Some (safe) options can also be set from the connecting client in an application-dependent way to apply only for that session. For example, if the environment variable `PGOPTIONS` is set, then libpq-based clients will pass that string to the server, which will interpret it as `postres` command-line options.

**General Purpose**

- `-B nbuffers`
  
  Sets the number of shared buffers for use by the server processes. The default value of this parameter is chosen automatically by `initdb`. Specifying this option is equivalent to setting the `shared_buffers` configuration parameter.

- `-c name=value`
  
  Sets a named run-time parameter. The configuration parameters supported by Postgres Pro are described in Chapter 18. Most of the other command line options are in fact short forms of such a parameter assignment. `-c` can appear multiple times to set multiple parameters.

- `-C name`
  
  Prints the value of the named run-time parameter, and exits. (See the `-c` option above for details.) This can be used on a running server, and returns values from `postgresql.conf`, modified by any
parameters supplied in this invocation. It does not reflect parameters supplied when the cluster was started.

This option is meant for other programs that interact with a server instance, such as pg_ctl, to query configuration parameter values. User-facing applications should instead use SHOW or the pg_settings view.

\[\text{-d debug-level}\]
Sets the debug level. The higher this value is set, the more debugging output is written to the server log. Values are from 1 to 5. It is also possible to pass \(-d 0\) for a specific session, which will prevent the server log level of the parent \textit{postgres} process from being propagated to this session.

\[\text{-D datadir}\]
Specifies the file system location of the database configuration files. See Section 18.2 for details.

\[\text{-e}\]
Sets the default date style to “European”, that is DMY ordering of input date fields. This also causes the day to be printed before the month in certain date output formats. See Section 8.5 for more information.

\[\text{-F}\]
Disables fsync calls for improved performance, at the risk of data corruption in the event of a system crash. Specifying this option is equivalent to disabling the fsync configuration parameter. Read the detailed documentation before using this!

\[\text{-h hostname}\]
Specifies the IP host name or address on which \textit{postgres} is to listen for TCP/IP connections from client applications. The value can also be a comma-separated list of addresses, or * to specify listening on all available interfaces. An empty value specifies not listening on any IP addresses, in which case only Unix-domain sockets can be used to connect to the server. Defaults to listening only on localhost. Specifying this option is equivalent to setting the \textit{listen_addresses} configuration parameter.

\[\text{-i}\]
Allows remote clients to connect via TCP/IP (Internet domain) connections. Without this option, only local connections are accepted. This option is equivalent to setting \textit{listen_addresses} to * in postgresql.conf or via \textit{-h}.

This option is deprecated since it does not allow access to the full functionality of \textit{listen_addresses}. It's usually better to set \textit{listen_addresses} directly.

\[\text{-k directory}\]
Specifies the directory of the Unix-domain socket on which \textit{postgres} is to listen for connections from client applications. The value can also be a comma-separated list of directories. An empty value specifies not listening on any Unix-domain sockets, in which case only TCP/IP sockets can be used to connect to the server. The default value is normally \texttt{/tmp}, but that can be changed at build time. Specifying this option is equivalent to setting the \textit{unix_socket_directories} configuration parameter.

\[\text{-l}\]
Enables secure connections using SSL. Postgres Pro must have been compiled with support for SSL for this option to be available. For more information on using SSL, refer to Section 17.9.

\[\text{-N max-connections}\]
Sets the maximum number of client connections that this server will accept. The default value of this parameter is chosen automatically by initdb. Specifying this option is equivalent to setting the \textit{max_connections} configuration parameter.
-p port

Specifies the TCP/IP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which postgres is to listen for connections from client applications. Defaults to the value of the PGPORT environment variable, or if PGPORT is not set, then defaults to the value established during compilation (normally 5432). If you specify a port other than the default port, then all client applications must specify the same port using either command-line options or PGPORT.

-s

Print time information and other statistics at the end of each command. This is useful for benchmarking or for use in tuning the number of buffers.

-S work-mem

Specifies the base amount of memory to be used by sorts and hash tables before resorting to temporary disk files. See the description of the work_mem configuration parameter in Section 18.4.1.

-V

--version

Print the postgres version and exit.

--name=value

Sets a named run-time parameter; a shorter form of -c.

--describe-config

This option dumps out the server's internal configuration variables, descriptions, and defaults in tab-delimited COPY format. It is designed primarily for use by administration tools.

-?

--help

Show help about postgres command line arguments, and exit.

Semi-Internal Options

The options described here are used mainly for debugging purposes, and in some cases to assist with recovery of severely damaged databases. There should be no reason to use them in a production database setup. They are listed here only for use by Postgres Pro system developers. Furthermore, these options might change or be removed in a future release without notice.

-f { s | i | o | b | t | n | m | h }

Forbids the use of particular scan and join methods: s and i disable sequential and index scans respectively, o, b and t disable index-only scans, bitmap index scans, and TID scans respectively, while n, m, and h disable nested-loop, merge and hash joins respectively.

Neither sequential scans nor nested-loop joins can be disabled completely; the -fs and -fn options simply discourage the optimizer from using those plan types if it has any other alternative.

-n

This option is for debugging problems that cause a server process to die abnormally. The ordinary strategy in this situation is to notify all other server processes that they must terminate and then reinitialize the shared memory and semaphores. This is because an errant server process could have corrupted some shared state before terminating. This option specifies that postgres will not reinitialize shared data structures. A knowledgeable system programmer can then use a debugger to examine shared memory and semaphore state.

-O

Allows the structure of system tables to be modified. This is used by initdb.
-P
Ignore system indexes when reading system tables, but still update the indexes when modifying the tables. This is useful when recovering from damaged system indexes.

-t parser | planner | executor
Print timing statistics for each query relating to each of the major system modules. This option cannot be used together with the -s option.

-T
This option is for debugging problems that cause a server process to die abnormally. The ordinary strategy in this situation is to notify all other server processes that they must terminate and then reinitialize the shared memory and semaphores. This is because an errant server process could have corrupted some shared state before terminating. This option specifies that postgres will stop all other server processes by sending the signal SIGSTOP, but will not cause them to terminate. This permits system programmers to collect core dumps from all server processes by hand.

-v protocol
Specifies the version number of the frontend/backend protocol to be used for a particular session. This option is for internal use only.

-W seconds
A delay of this many seconds occurs when a new server process is started, after it conducts the authentication procedure. This is intended to give an opportunity to attach to the server process with a debugger.

-Z
Verifies that the current postgres binary is compatible with the specified cluster. If the architecture type or any compilation options that affect cluster compatibility do not match, returns an exit status of 1 and provides an error message specifying the first detected incompatibility. Otherwise, reports success and exits without starting the cluster.

You must provide the path to the data directory of the cluster to check.

The cluster and the binary must have the same byte order and architecture type for this option to work correctly.

Tip
If the binary appears to be incompatible with the specified cluster, run pgpro controldata with the -P or -C command-line argument to view all parameters of the cluster that affect the compatibility.

Options for Single-User Mode
The following options only apply to the single-user mode (see Single-User Mode below).

--single
Selects the single-user mode. This must be the first argument on the command line.

database
Specifies the name of the database to be accessed. This must be the last argument on the command line. If it is omitted it defaults to the user name.

-E
Echo all commands to standard output before executing them.
-j
Use semicolon followed by two newlines, rather than just newline, as the command entry terminator.

-r filename
Send all server log output to filename. This option is only honored when supplied as a command-line option.

Environment

PGCLIENTENCODING
Default character encoding used by clients. (The clients can override this individually.) This value can also be set in the configuration file.

PGDATA
Default data directory location

PGDATESTYLE
Default value of the DateStyle run-time parameter. (The use of this environment variable is deprecated.)

PGPORT
Default port number (preferably set in the configuration file)

Diagnostics

A failure message mentioning semget or shmget probably indicates you need to configure your kernel to provide adequate shared memory and semaphores. For more discussion see Section 17.4. You might be able to postpone reconfiguring your kernel by decreasing shared_buffers to reduce the shared memory consumption of Postgres Pro, and/or by reducing max_connections to reduce the semaphore consumption.

A failure message suggesting that another server is already running should be checked carefully, for example by using the command

$ ps ax | grep postgres
or
$ ps -ef | grep postgres
depending on your system. If you are certain that no conflicting server is running, you can remove the lock file mentioned in the message and try again.

A failure message indicating inability to bind to a port might indicate that that port is already in use by some non-Postgres Pro process. You might also get this error if you terminate postgres and immediately restart it using the same port; in this case, you must simply wait a few seconds until the operating system closes the port before trying again. Finally, you might get this error if you specify a port number that your operating system considers to be reserved. For example, many versions of Unix consider port numbers under 1024 to be “trusted” and only permit the Unix superuser to access them.

Notes

The utility command pg_ctl can be used to start and shut down the postgres server safely and comfortably.

If at all possible, do not use SIGKILL to kill the main postgres server. Doing so will prevent postgres from freeing the system resources (e.g., shared memory and semaphores) that it holds before terminating. This might cause problems for starting a fresh postgres run.
To terminate the `postgres` server normally, the signals `SIGTERM`, `SIGINT`, or `SIGQUIT` can be used. The first will wait for all clients to terminate before quitting, the second will forcefully disconnect all clients, and the third will quit immediately without proper shutdown, resulting in a recovery run during restart.

The `SIGHUP` signal will reload the server configuration files. It is also possible to send `SIGHUP` to an individual server process, but that is usually not sensible.

To cancel a running query, send the `SIGINT` signal to the process running that command. To terminate a backend process cleanly, send `SIGTERM` to that process. See also `pg_cancel_backend` and `pg_terminate_backend` in Section 9.27.2 for the SQL-callable equivalents of these two actions.

The `postgres` server uses `SIGQUIT` to tell subordinate server processes to terminate without normal cleanup. This signal should not be used by users. It is also unwise to send `SIGKILL` to a server process — the main `postgres` process will interpret this as a crash and will force all the sibling processes to quit as part of its standard crash-recovery procedure.

**Bugs**

The -- options will not work on FreeBSD or OpenBSD. Use `-c` instead. This is a bug in the affected operating systems; a future release of Postgres Pro will provide a workaround if this is not fixed.

**Single-User Mode**

To start a single-user mode server, use a command like

```
postgres --single -D /usr/local/pgsql/data other-options my_database
```

Provide the correct path to the database directory with `-D`, or make sure that the environment variable `PGDATA` is set. Also specify the name of the particular database you want to work in.

Normally, the single-user mode server treats newline as the command entry terminator; there is no intelligence about semicolons, as there is in `psql`. To continue a command across multiple lines, you must type backslash just before each newline except the last one. The backslash and adjacent newline are both dropped from the input command. Note that this will happen even when within a string literal or comment.

But if you use the `-j` command line switch, a single newline does not terminate command entry; instead, the sequence semicolon-newline-newline does. That is, type a semicolon immediately followed by a completely empty line. Backslash-newline is not treated specially in this mode. Again, there is no intelligence about such a sequence appearing within a string literal or comment.

In either input mode, if you type a semicolon that is not just before or part of a command entry terminator, it is considered a command separator. When you do type a command entry terminator, the multiple statements you've entered will be executed as a single transaction.

To quit the session, type EOF (Control+D, usually). If you've entered any text since the last command entry terminator, then EOF will be taken as a command entry terminator, and another EOF will be needed to exit.

Note that the single-user mode server does not provide sophisticated line-editing features (no command history, for example). Single-user mode also does not do any background processing, such as automatic checkpoints or replication.

**Examples**

To start `postgres` in the background using default values, type:

```
$ nohup postgres >logfile 2>&1 </dev/null &
```

To start `postgres` with a specific port, e.g., 1234:

```
$ postgres -p 1234
```
To connect to this server using psql, specify this port with the -p option:

$ psql -p 1234

or set the environment variable PGPORT:

$ export PGPORT=1234
$ psql

Named run-time parameters can be set in either of these styles:

$ postgres -c work_mem=1234
$ postgres --work-mem=1234

Either form overrides whatever setting might exist for work_mem in postgresql.conf. Notice that underscores in parameter names can be written as either underscore or dash on the command line. Except for short-term experiments, it's probably better practice to edit the setting in postgresql.conf than to rely on a command-line switch to set a parameter.

See Also

initdb, pg_ctl
postmaster
	postmaster — Postgres Pro database server

Synopsis
	postmaster [option...]

Description
	postmaster is a deprecated alias of postgres.

See Also
	postgres
Part VII. Internals

This part contains assorted information that might be of use to Postgres Pro developers.
Chapter 49. Overview of Postgres Pro Internals

This chapter gives an overview of the internal structure of the backend of Postgres Pro. After having read the following sections you should have an idea of how a query is processed. This chapter is intended to help the reader understand the general sequence of operations that occur within the backend from the point at which a query is received, to the point at which the results are returned to the client.

49.1. The Path of a Query

Here we give a short overview of the stages a query has to pass to obtain a result.

1. A connection from an application program to the Postgres Pro server has to be established. The application program transmits a query to the server and waits to receive the results sent back by the server.
2. The parser stage checks the query transmitted by the application program for correct syntax and creates a query tree.
3. The rewrite system takes the query tree created by the parser stage and looks for any rules (stored in the system catalogs) to apply to the query tree. It performs the transformations given in the rule bodies.

One application of the rewrite system is in the realization of views. Whenever a query against a view (i.e., a virtual table) is made, the rewrite system rewrites the user's query to a query that accesses the base tables given in the view definition instead.
4. The planner/optimizer takes the (rewritten) query tree and creates a query plan that will be the input to the executor.

It does so by first creating all possible paths leading to the same result. For example if there is an index on a relation to be scanned, there are two paths for the scan. One possibility is a simple sequential scan and the other possibility is to use the index. Next the cost for the execution of each path is estimated and the cheapest path is chosen. The cheapest path is expanded into a complete plan that the executor can use.
5. The executor recursively steps through the plan tree and retrieves rows in the way represented by the plan. The executor makes use of the storage system while scanning relations, performs sorts and joins, evaluates qualifications and finally hands back the rows derived.

In the following sections we will cover each of the above listed items in more detail to give a better understanding of Postgres Pro's internal control and data structures.

49.2. How Connections Are Established

Postgres Pro implements a “process per user” client/server model. In this model, every client process connects to exactly one backend process. As we do not know ahead of time how many connections will be made, we have to use a “supervisor process” that spawns a new backend process every time a connection is requested. This supervisor process is called postmaster and listens at a specified TCP/IP port for incoming connections. Whenever it detects a request for a connection, it spawns a new backend process. Those backend processes communicate with each other and with other processes of the instance using semaphores and shared memory to ensure data integrity throughout concurrent data access.
The client process can be any program that understands the Postgres Pro protocol described in Chapter 51. Many clients are based on the C-language library libpq, but several independent implementations of the protocol exist, such as the Java JDBC driver.

Once a connection is established, the client process can send a query to the backend process it’s connected to. The query is transmitted using plain text, i.e., there is no parsing done in the client. The backend process parses the query, creates an execution plan, executes the plan, and returns the retrieved rows to the client by transmitting them over the established connection.

### 49.3. The Parser Stage

The parser stage consists of two parts:

- The parser defined in `gram.y` and `scan.l` is built using the Unix tools bison and flex.
- The transformation process does modifications and augmentations to the data structures returned by the parser.

#### 49.3.1. Parser

The parser has to check the query string (which arrives as plain text) for valid syntax. If the syntax is correct a parse tree is built up and handed back; otherwise an error is returned. The parser and lexer are implemented using the well-known Unix tools bison and flex.

The lexer is defined in the file `scan.l` and is responsible for recognizing identifiers, the SQL key words etc. For every key word or identifier that is found, a token is generated and handed to the parser.

The parser is defined in the file `gram.y` and consists of a set of grammar rules and actions that are executed whenever a rule is fired. The code of the actions (which is actually C code) is used to build up the parse tree.

The file `scan.l` is transformed to the C source file `scan.c` using the program flex and `gram.y` is transformed to `gram.c` using bison. After these transformations have taken place a normal C compiler can be used to create the parser. Never make any changes to the generated C files as they will be overwritten the next time flex or bison is called.

---

**Note**

The mentioned transformations and compilations are normally done automatically using the *makefiles* shipped with the Postgres Pro source distribution.

A detailed description of bison or the grammar rules given in `gram.y` would be beyond the scope of this manual. There are many books and documents dealing with flex and bison. You should be familiar with bison before you start to study the grammar given in `gram.y` otherwise you won't understand what happens there.

#### 49.3.2. Transformation Process

The parser stage creates a parse tree using only fixed rules about the syntactic structure of SQL. It does not make any lookups in the system catalogs, so there is no possibility to understand the detailed semantics of the requested operations. After the parser completes, the transformation process takes the tree handed back by the parser as input and does the semantic interpretation needed to understand which tables, functions, and operators are referenced by the query. The data structure that is built to represent this information is called the query tree.

The reason for separating raw parsing from semantic analysis is that system catalog lookups can only be done within a transaction, and we do not wish to start a transaction immediately upon receiving a query string. The raw parsing stage is sufficient to identify the transaction control commands (BEGIN,
Overview of Postgres Pro Internals

ROLLBACK, etc), and these can then be correctly executed without any further analysis. Once we know that we are dealing with an actual query (such as SELECT or UPDATE), it is okay to start a transaction if we’re not already in one. Only then can the transformation process be invoked.

The query tree created by the transformation process is structurally similar to the raw parse tree in most places, but it has many differences in detail. For example, a FuncCall node in the parse tree represents something that looks syntactically like a function call. This might be transformed to either a FuncExpr or Aggref node depending on whether the referenced name turns out to be an ordinary function or an aggregate function. Also, information about the actual data types of columns and expression results is added to the query tree.

49.4. The Postgres Pro Rule System

Postgres Pro supports a powerful rule system for the specification of views and ambiguous view updates. Originally the Postgres Pro rule system consisted of two implementations:

• The first one worked using row level processing and was implemented deep in the executor. The rule system was called whenever an individual row had been accessed. This implementation was removed in 1995 when the last official release of the Berkeley Postgres project was transformed into Postgres95.

• The second implementation of the rule system is a technique called query rewriting. The rewrite system is a module that exists between the parser stage and the planner/optimizer. This technique is still implemented.

The query rewriter is discussed in some detail in Chapter 39, so there is no need to cover it here. We will only point out that both the input and the output of the rewriter are query trees, that is, there is no change in the representation or level of semantic detail in the trees. Rewriting can be thought of as a form of macro expansion.

49.5. Planner/Optimizer

The task of the planner/optimizer is to create an optimal execution plan. A given SQL query (and hence, a query tree) can be actually executed in a wide variety of different ways, each of which will produce the same set of results. If it is computationally feasible, the query optimizer will examine each of these possible execution plans, ultimately selecting the execution plan that is expected to run the fastest.

In some situations, examining each possible way in which a query can be executed would take an excessive amount of time and memory. In particular, this occurs when executing queries involving large numbers of join operations. In order to determine a reasonable (not necessarily optimal) query plan in a reasonable amount of time, Postgres Pro uses a Genetic Query Optimizer (see Chapter 56) when the number of joins exceeds a threshold (see geqo_threshold).

The planner’s search procedure actually works with data structures called paths, which are simply cut-down representations of plans containing only as much information as the planner needs to make its decisions. After the cheapest path is determined, a full-fledged plan tree is built to pass to the executor. This represents the desired execution plan in sufficient detail for the executor to run it. In the rest of this section we’ll ignore the distinction between paths and plans.

49.5.1. Generating Possible Plans

The planner/optimizer starts by generating plans for scanning each individual relation (table) used in the query. The possible plans are determined by the available indexes on each relation. There is always the possibility of performing a sequential scan on a relation, so a sequential scan plan is always created. Assume an index is defined on a relation (for example a B-tree index) and a query contains the restriction relation.attribute OPR constant. If relation.attribute happens to match the key of the B-tree
index and **OPR** is one of the operators listed in the index's operator class, another plan is created using the B-tree index to scan the relation. If there are further indexes present and the restrictions in the query happen to match a key of an index, further plans will be considered. Index scan plans are also generated for indexes that have a sort ordering that can match the query's ORDER BY clause (if any), or a sort ordering that might be useful for merge joining (see below).

If the query requires joining two or more relations, plans for joining relations are considered after all feasible plans have been found for scanning single relations. The three available join strategies are:

- **nested loop join**: The right relation is scanned once for every row found in the left relation. This strategy is easy to implement but can be very time consuming. (However, if the right relation can be scanned with an index scan, this can be a good strategy. It is possible to use values from the current row of the left relation as keys for the index scan of the right.)

- **merge join**: Each relation is sorted on the join attributes before the join starts. Then the two relations are scanned in parallel, and matching rows are combined to form join rows. This kind of join is attractive because each relation has to be scanned only once. The required sorting might be achieved either by an explicit sort step, or by scanning the relation in the proper order using an index on the join key.

- **hash join**: the right relation is first scanned and loaded into a hash table, using its join attributes as hash keys. Next the left relation is scanned and the appropriate values of every row found are used as hash keys to locate the matching rows in the table.

When the query involves more than two relations, the final result must be built up by a tree of join steps, each with two inputs. The planner examines different possible join sequences to find the cheapest one.

If the query uses fewer than **geqo_threshold** relations, a near-exhaustive search is conducted to find the best join sequence. The planner preferentially considers joins between any two relations for which there exists a corresponding join clause in the WHERE qualification (i.e., for which a restriction like `WHERE rel1.attr1=rel2.attr2` exists). Join pairs with no join clause are considered only when there is no other choice, that is, a particular relation has no available join clauses to any other relation. All possible plans are generated for every join pair considered by the planner, and the one that is (estimated to be) the cheapest is chosen.

When **geqo_threshold** is exceeded, the join sequences considered are determined by heuristics, as described in Chapter 56. Otherwise the process is the same.

The finished plan tree consists of sequential or index scans of the base relations, plus nested-loop, merge, or hash join nodes as needed, plus any auxiliary steps needed, such as sort nodes or aggregate-function calculation nodes. Most of these plan node types have the additional ability to do selection (discarding rows that do not meet a specified Boolean condition) and projection (computation of a derived column set based on given column values, that is, evaluation of scalar expressions where needed). One of the responsibilities of the planner is to attach selection conditions from the WHERE clause and computation of required output expressions to the most appropriate nodes of the plan tree.

### 49.6. Executor

The executor takes the plan created by the planner/optimizer and recursively processes it to extract the required set of rows. This is essentially a demand-pull pipeline mechanism. Each time a plan node is called, it must deliver one more row, or report that it is done delivering rows.

To provide a concrete example, assume that the top node is a MergeJoin node. Before any merge can be done two rows have to be fetched (one from each subplan). So the executor recursively calls itself to process the subplans (it starts with the subplan attached to `lefttree`). The new top node (the top node of the left subplan) is, let's say, a Sort node and again recursion is needed to obtain an input row. The child node of the Sort might be a SeqScan node, representing actual reading of a table. Execution of this node causes the executor to fetch a row from the table and return it up to the calling node. The Sort node will repeatedly call its child to obtain all the rows to be sorted. When the input is exhausted (as indicated by the child node returning a NULL instead of a row), the Sort code performs the sort, and
finally is able to return its first output row, namely the first one in sorted order. It keeps the remaining
rows stored so that it can deliver them in sorted order in response to later demands.

The MergeJoin node similarly demands the first row from its right subplan. Then it compares the two
rows to see if they can be joined; if so, it returns a join row to its caller. On the next call, or immediately if
it cannot join the current pair of inputs, it advances to the next row of one table or the other (depending
on how the comparison came out), and again checks for a match. Eventually, one subplan or the other
is exhausted, and the MergeJoin node returns NULL to indicate that no more join rows can be formed.

Complex queries can involve many levels of plan nodes, but the general approach is the same: each
node computes and returns its next output row each time it is called. Each node is also responsible for
applying any selection or projection expressions that were assigned to it by the planner.

The executor mechanism is used to evaluate all four basic SQL query types: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and
DELETE. For SELECT, the top-level executor code only needs to send each row returned by the query plan
tree off to the client. INSERT ... SELECT, UPDATE, and DELETE are effectively SELECTs under a special
top-level plan node called ModifyTable.

INSERT ... SELECT feeds the rows up to ModifyTable for insertion. For UPDATE, the planner arranges
that each computed row includes all the updated column values, plus the TID (tuple ID, or row ID) of the
original target row; this data is fed up to the ModifyTable node, which uses the information to create a
new updated row and mark the old row deleted. For DELETE, the only column that is actually returned
by the plan is the TID, and the ModifyTable node simply uses the TID to visit each target row and mark
it deleted.

A simple INSERT ... VALUES command creates a trivial plan tree consisting of a single Result node,
which computes just one result row, feeding that up to ModifyTable to perform the insertion.
Chapter 50. System Catalogs

The system catalogs are the place where a relational database management system stores schema metadata, such as information about tables and columns, and internal bookkeeping information. PostgreSQL's system catalogs are regular tables. You can drop and recreate the tables, add columns, insert and update values, and severely mess up your system that way. Normally, one should not change the system catalogs by hand, there are normally SQL commands to do that. (For example, CREATE DATABASE inserts a row into the pg_database catalog — and actually creates the database on disk.) There are some exceptions for particularly esoteric operations, but many of those have been made available as SQL commands over time, and so the need for direct manipulation of the system catalogs is ever decreasing.

50.1. Overview

Table 50.1 lists the system catalogs. More detailed documentation of each catalog follows below.

Most system catalogs are copied from the template database during database creation and are thereafter database-specific. A few catalogs are physically shared across all databases in a cluster; these are noted in the descriptions of the individual catalogs.

Table 50.1. System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalog Name</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_aggregate</td>
<td>aggregate functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_am</td>
<td>relation access methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_amop</td>
<td>access method operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_amproc</td>
<td>access method support functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_attrdef</td>
<td>column default values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_attribute</td>
<td>table columns (“attributes”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_authid</td>
<td>authorization identifiers (roles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_auth_members</td>
<td>authorization identifier membership relationships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_cast</td>
<td>casts (data type conversions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_class</td>
<td>tables, indexes, sequences, views (“relations”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_collation</td>
<td>collations (locale information)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_constraint</td>
<td>check constraints, unique constraints, primary key constraints, foreign key constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_conversion</td>
<td>encoding conversion information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_database</td>
<td>databases within this database cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_db_role_setting</td>
<td>per-role and per-database settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_default_acl</td>
<td>default privileges for object types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_depend</td>
<td>dependencies between database objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_description</td>
<td>descriptions or comments on database objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_enum</td>
<td>enum label and value definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_event_trigger</td>
<td>event triggers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_extension</td>
<td>installed extensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_foreign_data_wrapper</td>
<td>foreign-data wrapper definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_foreign_server</td>
<td>foreign server definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_foreign_table</td>
<td>additional foreign table information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_index</td>
<td>additional index information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalog Name</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_inherits</td>
<td>table inheritance hierarchy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_init_privs</td>
<td>object initial privileges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_language</td>
<td>languages for writing functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_largeobject</td>
<td>data pages for large objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_largeobject_metadata</td>
<td>metadata for large objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_namespace</td>
<td>schemas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_opclass</td>
<td>access method operator classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_operator</td>
<td>operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_opfamily</td>
<td>access method operator families</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_partitioned_table</td>
<td>information about partition key of tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_policy</td>
<td>row-security policies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_proc</td>
<td>functions and procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_profile</td>
<td>profiles, a set of authentication restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_publication</td>
<td>publications for logical replication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_publication_rel</td>
<td>relation to publication mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_range</td>
<td>information about range types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_replication_origin</td>
<td>registered replication origins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_rewrite</td>
<td>query rewrite rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_role_password</td>
<td>roles password history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_seclabel</td>
<td>security labels on database objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_sequence</td>
<td>information about sequences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_shdepend</td>
<td>dependencies on shared objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_shdescription</td>
<td>comments on shared objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_shseclabel</td>
<td>security labels on shared database objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_statistic</td>
<td>planner statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_statistic_ext</td>
<td>extended planner statistics (definition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_statistic_ext_data</td>
<td>extended planner statistics (built statistics)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_subscription</td>
<td>logical replication subscriptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_subscription_rel</td>
<td>relation state for subscriptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_tablespace</td>
<td>tablespaces within this database cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_transform</td>
<td>transforms (data type to procedural language conversions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_trigger</td>
<td>triggers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_config</td>
<td>text search configurations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_config_map</td>
<td>text search configurations' token mappings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_dict</td>
<td>text search dictionaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_parser</td>
<td>text search parsers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_ts_template</td>
<td>text search templates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_type</td>
<td>data types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_user_mapping</td>
<td>mappings of users to foreign servers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
50.2. pg_aggregate

The catalog `pg_aggregate` stores information about aggregate functions. An aggregate function is a function that operates on a set of values (typically one column from each row that matches a query condition) and returns a single value computed from all these values. Typical aggregate functions are `sum`, `count`, and `max`. Each entry in `pg_aggregate` is an extension of an entry in `pg_proc`. The `pg_proc` entry carries the aggregate's name, input and output data types, and other information that is similar to ordinary functions.

### Table 50.2. `pg_aggregate` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aggfnoid regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>OID of the aggregate function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggkind char</td>
<td>Aggregate kind: n for “normal” aggregates, o for “ordered-set” aggregates, or h for “hypothetical-set” aggregates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggnumdirectargs int2</td>
<td>Number of direct (non-aggregated) arguments of an ordered-set or hypothetical-set aggregate, counting a variadic array as one argument. If equal to <code>pronargs</code>, the aggregate must be variadic and the variadic array describes the aggregated arguments as well as the final direct arguments. Always zero for normal aggregates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggtransfn regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Transition function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggfinalfn regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Final function (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggcombinefn regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Combine function (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggserialfn regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Serialization function (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggsdeserialfn regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Deserialization function (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggmtransfn regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Forward transition function for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggminvtransfn regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Inverse transition function for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggmfinalfn regproc (references <code>pg_proc</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Final function for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggsortop oid (references <code>pg_operator</code> .oid)</td>
<td>Associated sort operator (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggtranstype oid (references <code>pg_type</code> .oid)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggtransspace</td>
<td>Data type of the aggregate function's internal transition (state) data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int4</td>
<td>Approximate average size (in bytes) of the transition state data, or zero to use a default estimate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggmtranstype oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>Data type of the aggregate function's internal transition (state) data for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int4</td>
<td>Approximate average size (in bytes) of the transition state data for moving-aggregate mode, or zero to use a default estimate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agginitval text</td>
<td>The initial value of the transition state. This is a text field containing the initial value in its external string representation. If this field is null, the transition state value starts out null.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggminitval text</td>
<td>The initial value of the transition state for moving-aggregate mode. This is a text field containing the initial value in its external string representation. If this field is null, the transition state value starts out null.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New aggregate functions are registered with the `CREATE AGGREGATE` command. See Section 36.12 for more information about writing aggregate functions and the meaning of the transition functions, etc.

### 50.3. pg_am

The catalog `pg_am` stores information about relation access methods. There is one row for each access method supported by the system. Currently, only tables and indexes have access methods. The requirements for table and index access methods are discussed in detail in Chapter 57 and Chapter 58 respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 50.3. pg_am Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amname name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amhandler regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amtype char</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Before Postgres Pro 9.6, `pg_am` contained many additional columns representing properties of index access methods. That data is now only directly visible at the C code level. However, `pg_index_column_has_property()` and related functions have been added to allow SQL queries to inspect index access method properties; see Table 9.70.

### 50.4. pg_amop
The catalog pg_amop stores information about operators associated with access method operator families. There is one row for each operator that is a member of an operator family. A family member can be either a search operator or an ordering operator. An operator can appear in more than one family, but cannot appear in more than one search position nor more than one ordering position within a family. (It is allowed, though unlikely, for an operator to be used for both search and ordering purposes.)

Table 50.4. pg_amop Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amopfamily oid</td>
<td>(references pg_opfamily .oid) The operator family this entry is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amoplefttype oid</td>
<td>(references pg_type .oid) Left-hand input data type of operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amoprighttype oid</td>
<td>(references pg_type .oid) Right-hand input data type of operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amopstrategy int2</td>
<td>Operator strategy number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amoppurpose char</td>
<td>Operator purpose, either s for search or o for ordering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amopopr oid</td>
<td>(references pg_operator .oid) OID of the operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amopmethod oid</td>
<td>(references pg_am .oid) Index access method operator family is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amopsortfamily oid</td>
<td>(references pg_opfamily .oid) The B-tree operator family this entry sorts according to, if an ordering operator; zero if a search operator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A “search” operator entry indicates that an index of this operator family can be searched to find all rows satisfying WHERE indexed_column operator constant. Obviously, such an operator must return boolean, and its left-hand input type must match the index's column data type.

An “ordering” operator entry indicates that an index of this operator family can be scanned to return rows in the order represented by ORDER BY indexed_column operator constant. Such an operator could return any sortable data type, though again its left-hand input type must match the index's column data type. The exact semantics of the ORDER BY are specified by the amopsortfamily column, which must reference a B-tree operator family for the operator's result type.

Note

At present, it's assumed that the sort order for an ordering operator is the default for the referenced operator family, i.e., ASC NULLS LAST. This might someday be relaxed by adding additional columns to specify sort options explicitly.

An entry's amopmethod must match the opfmethod of its containing operator family (including amopmethod here is an intentional denormalization of the catalog structure for performance reasons). Also, amoplefttype and amoprighttype must match the oprleft and oprright fields of the referenced pg_operator entry.

50.5. pg_amproc

The catalog pg_amproc stores information about support functions associated with access method operator families. There is one row for each support function belonging to an operator family.
System Catalogs

### Table 50.5. `pg_amproc` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>oid</code></td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>amprocfamily</code></td>
<td>The operator family this entry is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>amproclefttype</code></td>
<td>Left-hand input data type of associated operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>amprocrighttype</code></td>
<td>Right-hand input data type of associated operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>amprocnum</code></td>
<td>Support function number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>amproc</code></td>
<td>OID of the function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The usual interpretation of the `amproclefttype` and `amprocrighttype` fields is that they identify the left and right input types of the operator(s) that a particular support function supports. For some access methods these match the input data type(s) of the support function itself, for others not. There is a notion of “default” support functions for an index, which are those with `amproclefttype` and `amprocrighttype` both equal to the index operator class’s `opcintype`.

### 50.6. `pg_attrdef`

The catalog `pg_attrdef` stores column default values. The main information about columns is stored in `pg_attribute`. Only columns for which a default value has been explicitly set will have an entry here.

### Table 50.6. `pg_attrdef` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>oid</code></td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>adrelid</code></td>
<td>The table this column belongs to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>adnum</code></td>
<td>The number of the column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>adbin</code></td>
<td>The column default value, in <code>nodeToString()</code> representation. Use <code>pg_get_expr(adbin, adrelid)</code> to convert it to an SQL expression.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.7. `pg_attribute`

The catalog `pg_attribute` stores information about table columns. There will be exactly one `pg_attribute` row for every column in every table in the database. (There will also be attribute entries for indexes, and indeed all objects that have `pg_class` entries.)

The term attribute is equivalent to column and is used for historical reasons.

### Table 50.7. `pg_attribute` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>attrelid</code></td>
<td>The table this column belongs to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>attname name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atttypid oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attstattarget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attlen int2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attnum int2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attndims int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attcacheoff int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atttypmod int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attbyval bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attalign char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attstorage char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attcompression char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attnotnull bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atthasdef bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atthasmissing bool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>attidentity</td>
<td>char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If a zero byte (''), then not an identity column. Otherwise, a = generated always, d = generated by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attgenerated</td>
<td>char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If a zero byte (''), then not a generated column. Otherwise, s = stored. (Other values might be added in the future.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attisdropped</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This column has been dropped and is no longer valid. A dropped column is still physically present in the table, but is ignored by the parser and so cannot be accessed via SQL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attislocal</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This column is defined locally in the relation. Note that a column can be locally defined and inherited simultaneously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attinhcount</td>
<td>int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The number of direct ancestors this column has. A column with a nonzero number of ancestors cannot be dropped nor renamed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attcollation</td>
<td>oid (references pg_collation.oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The defined collation of the column, or zero if the column is not of a collatable data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attacl</td>
<td>aclitem[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Column-level access privileges, if any have been granted specifically on this column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attoptions</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Attribute-level options, as “keyword=value” strings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attfdwoptions</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Attribute-level foreign data wrapper options, as “keyword=value” strings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attmissingval</td>
<td>anyarray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This column has a one element array containing the value used when the column is entirely missing from the row, as happens when the column is added with a non-volatile DEFAULT value after the row is created. The value is only used when atthasmissing is true. If there is no value the column is null.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a dropped column’s pg_attribute entry, atttypid is reset to zero, but attlen and the other fields copied from pg_type are still valid. This arrangement is needed to cope with the situation where the dropped column’s data type was later dropped, and so there is no pg_type row anymore. attlen and the other fields can be used to interpret the contents of a row of the table.

## 50.8. pg_authid

The catalog pg_authid contains information about database authorization identifiers (roles). A role subsumes the concepts of “users” and “groups”. A user is essentially just a role with the rolcanlogin flag set. Any role (with or without rolcanlogin) can have other roles as members; see pg_auth_members.

Since this catalog contains passwords, it must not be publicly readable. pg_roles is a publicly readable view on pg_authid that blanks out the password field.

Chapter 20 contains detailed information about user and privilege management.

Because user identities are cluster-wide, pg_authid is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of pg_authid per cluster, not one per database.

### Table 50.8. pg_authid Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolsuper</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolinherit</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolcreaterole</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolcreatedb</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolcanlogin</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolreplication</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolbypassrls</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolconnlimit</td>
<td>int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolprofile</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolloginattempts</td>
<td>int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolstatus</td>
<td>int2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rollastlogin</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolfirstfailedauth</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolpassword</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolvaliduntil</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolpasssetat</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For an MD5 encrypted password, rolpassword column will begin with the string `md5` followed by a 32-character hexadecimal MD5 hash. The MD5 hash will be of the user's password concatenated to
their user name. For example, if user joe has password xyzzy, Postgres Pro will store the md5 hash of xyzzyjoe.

If the password is encrypted with SCRAM-SHA-256, it has the format:

SCRAM-SHA-256$<iteration count>:<salt>$<StoredKey>:<ServerKey>

where salt, StoredKey and ServerKey are in Base64 encoded format. This format is the same as that specified by RFC 5803.

A password that does not follow either of those formats is assumed to be unencrypted.

50.9. pg_auth_members

The catalog pg_auth_members shows the membership relations between roles. Any non-circular set of relationships is allowed.

Because user identities are cluster-wide, pg_auth_members is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of pg_auth_members per cluster, not one per database.

Table 50.9. pg_auth_members Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>roleid oid</td>
<td>(references pg_authid .oid) ID of a role that has a member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>member oid</td>
<td>(references pg_authid .oid) ID of a role that is a member of roleid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grantor oid</td>
<td>(references pg_authid .oid) ID of the role that granted this membership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin_option</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>True if member can grant membership in roleid to others</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.10. pg_cast

The catalog pg_cast stores data type conversion paths, both built-in and user-defined.

It should be noted that pg_cast does not represent every type conversion that the system knows how to perform; only those that cannot be deduced from some generic rule. For example, casting between a domain and its base type is not explicitly represented in pg_cast. Another important exception is that “automatic I/O conversion casts”, those performed using a data type's own I/O functions to convert to or from text or other string types, are not explicitly represented in pg_cast.

Table 50.10. pg_cast Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castsourcem od</td>
<td>(references pg_type .oid) OID of the source data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casttarget oid</td>
<td>(references pg_type .oid) OID of the target data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castfunc oid</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid) The OID of the function to use to perform this cast. Zero is stored if the cast method doesn't require a function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castcontext</td>
<td>char</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relname name</td>
<td>Name of the table, index, view, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relnamespace oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reltype oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the data type that corresponds to this table's row type, if any; zero for indexes, sequences, and toast tables, which have no pg_type entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reloftype oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>For typed tables, the OID of the underlying composite type; zero for all other relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relowner oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>Owner of the relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relam oid (references pg_am .oid)</td>
<td>If this is a table or an index, the access method used (heap, B-tree, hash, etc.); otherwise zero (zero occurs for sequences, as well as relations without storage, such as views)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relfilenode oid</td>
<td>Name of the on-disk file of this relation; zero means this is a “mapped” relation whose disk file name is determined by low-level state</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The cast functions listed in `pg_cast` must always take the cast source type as their first argument type, and return the cast destination type as their result type. A cast function can have up to three arguments. The second argument, if present, must be type `integer`; it receives the type modifier associated with the destination type, or -1 if there is none. The third argument, if present, must be type `boolean`; it receives `true` if the cast is an explicit cast, `false` otherwise.

It is legitimate to create a `pg_cast` entry in which the source and target types are the same, if the associated function takes more than one argument. Such entries represent “length coercion functions” that coerce values of the type to be legal for a particular type modifier value.

When a `pg_cast` entry has different source and target types and a function that takes more than one argument, it represents converting from one type to another and applying a length coercion in a single step. When no such entry is available, coercion to a type that uses a type modifier involves two steps, one to convert between data types and a second to apply the modifier.

### 50.11. pg_class

The catalog `pg_class` catalogs tables and most everything else that has columns or is otherwise similar to a table. This includes indexes (but see also `pg_index`), sequences (but see also `pg_sequence`), views, materialized views, composite types, and TOAST tables; see `relkind`. Below, when we mean all of these kinds of objects we speak of “relations”. Not all columns are meaningful for all relation types.

#### Table 50.11. pg_class Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relname name</td>
<td>Name of the table, index, view, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relnamespace oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reltype oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the data type that corresponds to this table's row type, if any; zero for indexes, sequences, and toast tables, which have no pg_type entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reloftype oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>For typed tables, the OID of the underlying composite type; zero for all other relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relowner oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>Owner of the relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relam oid (references pg_am .oid)</td>
<td>If this is a table or an index, the access method used (heap, B-tree, hash, etc.); otherwise zero (zero occurs for sequences, as well as relations without storage, such as views)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relfilenode oid</td>
<td>Name of the on-disk file of this relation; zero means this is a “mapped” relation whose disk file name is determined by low-level state</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **reltablespace** oid (references pg_tablespace .oid)  
The tablespace in which this relation is stored. If zero, the database's default tablespace is implied. (Not meaningful if the relation has no on-disk file.) |
| **replpages** int4  
Size of the on-disk representation of this table in pages (of size BLCKSZ). This is only an estimate used by the planner. It is updated by VACUUM, ANALYZE, and a few DDL commands such as CREATE INDEX. |
| **reltuples** float4  
Number of live rows in the table. This is only an estimate used by the planner. It is updated by VACUUM, ANALYZE, and a few DDL commands such as CREATE INDEX. If the table has never yet been vacuumed or analyzed, reltuples contains -1 indicating that the row count is unknown. |
| **relallvisible** int4  
Number of pages that are marked all-visible in the table's visibility map. This is only an estimate used by the planner. It is updated by VACUUM, ANALYZE, and a few DDL commands such as CREATE INDEX. |
| **reltoastrelid** oid (references pg_class .oid)  
OID of the TOAST table associated with this table, zero if none. The TOAST table stores large attributes “out of line” in a secondary table. |
| **relhasindex** bool  
True if this is a table and it has (or recently had) any indexes |
| **relisshared** bool  
True if this table is shared across all databases in the cluster. Only certain system catalogs (such as pg_database) are shared. |
| **relpersistence** char  
\ p = permanent table, \ u = unlogged table, \ t = temporary table |
| **relkind** char  
\ r = ordinary table, \ i = index, \ S = sequence, \ t = TOAST table, \ v = view, \ m = materialized view, \ c = composite type, \ f = foreign table, \ p = partitioned table, \ I = partitioned index |
| **relnatts** int2  
Number of user columns in the relation (system columns not counted). There must be this many corresponding entries in pg_attribute. See also pg_attribute .attnum. |
| **relchecks** int2  
Number of CHECK constraints on the table; see pg_constraint catalog |
| **relhasrules** bool  
True if table has (or once had) rules; see pg_rewrite catalog |
| **relhastriggers** bool  
True if table has (or once had) triggers; see pg_trigger catalog |
| **relhassubclass** bool  
True if table or index has (or once had) any inheritance children |
| **relrowsecurity** bool  
True if table has row-level security enabled; see pg_policy catalog |
| **relforcerowsecurity** bool  
True if row-level security (when enabled) will also apply to table owner; see pg_policy catalog |
| **relispopulated** bool  
True if relation is populated (this is true for all relations other than some materialized views) |
| **releplident** char |

1906
Several of the Boolean flags in \textit{pg\_class} are maintained lazily: they are guaranteed to be true if that's the correct state, but may not be reset to false immediately when the condition is no longer true. For example, \textit{relhasindex} is set by \texttt{CREATE INDEX}, but it is never cleared by \texttt{DROP INDEX}. Instead, \texttt{VACUUM} clears \textit{relhasindex} if it finds the table has no indexes. This arrangement avoids race conditions and improves concurrency.

### 50.12. \textit{pg\_collation}

The catalog \textit{pg\_collation} describes the available collations, which are essentially mappings from an SQL name to operating system locale categories. See Section 22.2 for more information.

#### Table 50.12. \textit{pg\_collation} Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{oid}</td>
<td>\textit{oid} Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{collname}</td>
<td>Collation name (unique per namespace and encoding)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{collnamespace \texttt{oid}}</td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this collation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{collowner \texttt{oid}}</td>
<td>Owner of the collation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{collprovider \texttt{char}}</td>
<td>Provider of the collation: \texttt{d} = database default, \texttt{c} = libc, \texttt{i} = icu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is the collation deterministic?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Encoding in which the collation is applicable, or -1 if it works for any encoding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>for this collation object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>for this collation object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provider-specific version of the collation. This is recorded when the collation is created and then checked when it is used, to detect changes in the collation definition that could lead to data corruption.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the unique key on this catalog is (collname, collencoding, collnamespace) not just (collname, collnamespace). Postgres Pro generally ignores all collations that do not have collencoding equal to either the current database’s encoding or -1, and creation of new entries with the same name as an entry with collencoding = -1 is forbidden. Therefore it is sufficient to use a qualified SQL name (schema.name) to identify a collation, even though this is not unique according to the catalog definition. The reason for defining the catalog this way is that initdb fills it in at cluster initialization time with entries for all locales available on the system, so it must be able to hold entries for all encodings that might ever be used in the cluster.

In the template0 database, it could be useful to create collations whose encoding does not match the database encoding, since they could match the encodings of databases later cloned from template0. This would currently have to be done manually.

### 50.13. pg_constraint

The catalog pg_constraint stores check, primary key, unique, foreign key, and exclusion constraints on tables. (Column constraints are not treated specially. Every column constraint is equivalent to some table constraint.) Not-null constraints are represented in the pg_attribute catalog, not here.

User-defined constraint triggers (created with `CREATE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER`) also give rise to an entry in this table.

Check constraints on domains are stored here, too.

### Table 50.13. pg_constraint Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conname name</td>
<td>Constraint name (not necessarily unique!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connamespace oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contype char</td>
<td>c = check constraint, f = foreign key constraint, p = primary key constraint, u = unique constraint, t = constraint trigger, x = exclusion constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condeferrable bool</td>
<td>Is the constraint deferrable?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condeferred bool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1908
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>convalidated</td>
<td>bool, Has the constraint been validated? Currently, can be false only for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conrelid</td>
<td>The table this constraint is on; zero if not a table constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contypid</td>
<td>The domain this constraint is on; zero if not a domain constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conindid</td>
<td>The index supporting this constraint, if it's a unique, primary key, foreign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conparentid</td>
<td>The corresponding constraint of the parent partitioned table, if this is a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conrelid</td>
<td>If a foreign key, the referenced table; else zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confupdtype</td>
<td>Foreign key update action code: a = no action, r = restrict, c = cascade, n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confdeltype</td>
<td>Foreign key deletion action code: a = no action, r = restrict, c = cascade,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confmatchtype</td>
<td>Foreign key match type: f = full, p = partial, s = simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conislocal</td>
<td>This constraint is defined locally for the relation. Note that a constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coninhcount</td>
<td>The number of direct inheritance ancestors this constraint has. A constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connoinherit</td>
<td>This constraint is defined locally for the relation. It is a non-inheritable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conkey</td>
<td>If a table constraint (including foreign keys, but not constraint triggers),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confkey</td>
<td>If a foreign key, list of the referenced columns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conpeqop</td>
<td>If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for PK = FK comparisons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conppeqop</td>
<td>If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for PK = PK comparisons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conffeqop</td>
<td>If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for FK = FK comparisons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conexclop</td>
<td>If an exclusion constraint, list of the per-column exclusion operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conbin</td>
<td>pg_node_tree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If a check constraint, an internal representation of the expression. (It's recommended to use pg_get_constraintdef() to extract the definition of a check constraint.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the case of an exclusion constraint, conkey is only useful for constraint elements that are simple column references. For other cases, a zero appears in conkey and the associated index must be consulted to discover the expression that is constrained. (conkey thus has the same contents as pg_index.indkey for the index.)

**Note**

pg_class.relchecks needs to agree with the number of check-constraint entries found in this table for each relation.

### 50.14. pg_conversion

The catalog pg_conversion describes encoding conversion functions. See CREATE CONVERSION for more information.

#### Table 50.14. pg_conversion Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conname</td>
<td>Conversion name (unique within a namespace)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connamespace oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conowner oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>Owner of the conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conforencoding int4</td>
<td>Source encoding ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contoencoding int4</td>
<td>Destination encoding ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conproc regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>Conversion function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condefault bool</td>
<td>True if this is the default conversion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.15. pg_database

The catalog pg_database stores information about the available databases. Databases are created with the CREATE DATABASE command. Consult Chapter 21 for details about the meaning of some of the parameters.

Unlike most system catalogs, pg_database is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of pg_database per cluster, not one per database.

#### Table 50.15. pg_database Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Row identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>datname</td>
<td>Database name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datdba oid</td>
<td>(references pg_authid .oid) Owner of the database, usually the user who created it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encoding int4</td>
<td>Character encoding for this database (pg_encoding_to_char() can translate this number to the encoding name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datcollate name</td>
<td>LC_COLLATE for this database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datctype name</td>
<td>LC_CTYPE for this database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datistemplate bool</td>
<td>If true, then this database can be cloned by any user with CREATEDB privileges; if false, then only superusers or the owner of the database can clone it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datallowconn bool</td>
<td>If false then no one can connect to this database. This is used to protect the template0 database from being altered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datconnlimit int4</td>
<td>Sets maximum number of concurrent connections that can be made to this database. -1 means no limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datlastsysoid oid</td>
<td>Last system OID in the database; useful particularly to pg_dump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datfrozenxid xid</td>
<td>All transaction IDs before this one have been replaced with a permanent (“frozen”) transaction ID in this database. This is used to track whether the database needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent transaction ID wraparound or to allow pg_xact to be shrunk. It is the minimum of the per-table pg_class.rel frozenxid values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datminmxid xid</td>
<td>All multixact IDs before this one have been replaced with a transaction ID in this database. This is used to track whether the database needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent multixact ID wraparound or to allow pg_multixact to be shrunk. It is the minimum of the per-table pg_class.rel minmxid values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dattablespace oid (references pg_tablespace .oid)</td>
<td>The default tablespace for the database. Within this database, all tables for which pg_class.rel tablespace is zero will be stored in this tablespace; in particular, all the non-shared system catalogs will be there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datacl aclitem[]</td>
<td>Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.16. pg_db_role_setting

The catalog pg_db_role_setting records the default values that have been set for run-time configuration variables, for each role and database combination.

Unlike most system catalogs, pg_db_role_setting is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of pg_db_role_setting per cluster, not one per database.
Table 50.16. pg_db_role_setting Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>setdatabase oid</td>
<td>(references pg_database .oid) The OID of the database the setting is applicable to, or zero if not database-specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setrole oid</td>
<td>(references pg_authid .oid) The OID of the role the setting is applicable to, or zero if not role-specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setconfig text[]</td>
<td>Defaults for run-time configuration variables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.17. pg_default_acl

The catalog pg_default_acl stores initial privileges to be assigned to newly created objects.

Table 50.17. pg_default_acl Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defaclrole oid</td>
<td>(references pg_authid .oid) The OID of the role associated with this entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defaclnamespace oid</td>
<td>(references pg_namespace .oid) The OID of the namespace associated with this entry, or zero if none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defaclobjtype char</td>
<td>Type of object this entry is for: ( r = ) relation (table, view), ( s = ) sequence, ( f = ) function, ( T = ) type, ( n = ) schema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defaclacl aclitem[]</td>
<td>Access privileges that this type of object should have on creation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A pg_default_acl entry shows the initial privileges to be assigned to an object belonging to the indicated user. There are currently two types of entry: “global” entries with defaclnamespace = zero, and “per-schema” entries that reference a particular schema. If a global entry is present then it overrides the normal hard-wired default privileges for the object type. A per-schema entry, if present, represents privileges to be added to the global or hard-wired default privileges.

Note that when an ACL entry in another catalog is null, it is taken to represent the hard-wired default privileges for its object, not whatever might be in pg_default_acl at the moment. pg_default_acl is only consulted during object creation.

50.18. pg_depend

The catalog pg_depend records the dependency relationships between database objects. This information allows DROP commands to find which other objects must be dropped by DROP CASCADE or prevent dropping in the DROP RESTRICT case.

See also pg_shdepend, which performs a similar function for dependencies involving objects that are shared across a database cluster.

Table 50.18. pg_depend Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>classid oid</td>
<td>(references pg_class .oid) The OID of the system catalog the dependent object is in, or zero for a DEPENDENCY_PIN entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objid oid</td>
<td>(references any OID column) The OID of the specific dependent object, or zero for a DEPENDENCY_PIN entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objsubid int4</td>
<td>For a table column, this is the column number (the objid and classid refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refclassid oid</td>
<td>(references pg_class .oid) The OID of the system catalog the referenced object is in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refobjcrid oid</td>
<td>(references any OID column) The OID of the specific referenced object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refobjsubid int4</td>
<td>For a table column, this is the column number (the refobjcrid and refclassid refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deptype char</td>
<td>A code defining the specific semantics of this dependency relationship; see text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In all cases, a pg_depend entry indicates that the referenced object cannot be dropped without also dropping the dependent object. However, there are several subflavors identified by deptype:

**DEPENDENCY_NORMAL (n)**

A normal relationship between separately-created objects. The dependent object can be dropped without affecting the referenced object. The referenced object can only be dropped by specifying CASCADE, in which case the dependent object is dropped, too. Example: a table column has a normal dependency on its data type.

**DEPENDENCY_AUTO (a)**

The dependent object can be dropped separately from the referenced object, and should be automatically dropped (regardless of RESTRICT or CASCADE mode) if the referenced object is dropped. Example: a named constraint on a table is made auto-dependent on the table, so that it will go away if the table is dropped.

**DEPENDENCY_INTERNAL (i)**

The dependent object was created as part of creation of the referenced object, and is really just a part of its internal implementation. A direct DROP of the dependent object will be disallowed outright (we'll tell the user to issue a DROP against the referenced object, instead). A DROP of the referenced object will result in automatically dropping the dependent object whether CASCADE is specified or not. If the dependent object has to be dropped due to a dependency on some other object being removed, its drop is converted to a drop of the referenced object, so that NORMAL and AUTO dependencies of the dependent object behave much like they were dependencies of the referenced object. Example: a view's ON SELECT rule is made internally dependent on the view, preventing it from being dropped while the view remains. Dependencies of the rule (such as tables it refers to) act as if they were dependencies of the view.

**DEPENDENCY_PARTITION_PRI (P)**
**DEPENDENCY_PARTITION_SEC (S)**

The dependent object was created as part of creation of the referenced object, and is really just a part of its internal implementation; however, unlike INTERNAL, there is more than one such referenced object. The dependent object must not be dropped unless at least one of these referenced objects is dropped; if any one is, the dependent object should be dropped whether or not CASCADE is specified. Also unlike INTERNAL, a drop of some other object that the dependent object depends on does not result in automatic deletion of any partition-referenced object. Hence, if the drop does not cascade to at least one of these objects via some other path, it will be refused. (In most cases, the dependent object shares all its non-partition dependencies with at least one partition-referenced object, so that this restriction does not result in blocking any cascaded delete.) Primary and secondary partition
dependencies behave identically except that the primary dependency is preferred for use in error
messages; hence, a partition-dependent object should have one primary partition dependency and
one or more secondary partition dependencies. Note that partition dependencies are made in
addition to, not instead of, any dependencies the object would normally have. This simplifies ATTACH/
DETACH PARTITION operations: the partition dependencies need only be added or removed. Example:
a child partitioned index is made partition-dependent on both the partition table it is on and the
parent partitioned index, so that it goes away if either of those is dropped, but not otherwise. The
dependency on the parent index is primary, so that if the user tries to drop the child partitioned
index, the error message will suggest dropping the parent index instead (not the table).

**DEPENDENCY_EXTENSION (e)**

The dependent object is a member of the extension that is the referenced object (see pg_extension). The
dependent object can be dropped only via DROP EXTENSION on the referenced object. Functionally
this dependency type acts the same as an INTERNAL dependency, but it's kept separate for clarity
and to simplify pg_dump.

**DEPENDENCY_AUTO_EXTENSION (x)**

The dependent object is not a member of the extension that is the referenced object (and so it
should not be ignored by pg_dump), but it cannot function without the extension and should be auto-
dropped if the extension is. The dependent object may be dropped on its own as well. Functionally
this dependency type acts the same as an AUTO dependency, but it's kept separate for clarity and
to simplify pg_dump.

**DEPENDENCY_PIN (p)**

There is no dependent object; this type of entry is a signal that the system itself depends on the
referenced object, and so that object must never be deleted. Entries of this type are created only by
initdb. The columns for the dependent object contain zeroes.

Other dependency flavors might be needed in future.

Note that it's quite possible for two objects to be linked by more than one pg_depend entry. For example,
a child partitioned index would have both a partition-type dependency on its associated partition table,
and an auto dependency on each column of that table that it indexes. This sort of situation expresses
the union of multiple dependency semantics. A dependent object can be dropped without CASCADE if
any of its dependencies satisfies its condition for automatic dropping. Conversely, all the dependencies' restrictions about which objects must be dropped together must be satisfied.

### 50.19. pg_description

The catalog pg_description stores optional descriptions (comments) for each database object. Descriptions can be manipulated with the COMMENT command and viewed with psql's \d commands. Descriptions of many built-in system objects are provided in the initial contents of pg_description.

See also pg_shdescription, which performs a similar function for descriptions involving objects that are shared across a database cluster.

**Table 50.19. pg_description Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>objoid oid</td>
<td>(references any OID column) The OID of the object this description pertains to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classoid oid</td>
<td>(references pg_class .oid) The OID of the system catalog this object appears in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objsubid int4</td>
<td>For a comment on a table column, this is the column number (the objoid and classoid refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
50.20. pg_enum

The pg_enum catalog contains entries showing the values and labels for each enum type. The internal representation of a given enum value is actually the OID of its associated row in pg_enum.

Table 50.20. pg_enum Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enumtypid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enumsortorder</td>
<td>float4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enumlabel</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The OIDs for pg_enum rows follow a special rule: even-numbered OIDs are guaranteed to be ordered in the same way as the sort ordering of their enum type. That is, if two even OIDs belong to the same enum type, the smaller OID must have the smaller enumsortorder value. Odd-numbered OID values need bear no relationship to the sort order. This rule allows the enum comparison routines to avoid catalog lookups in many common cases. The routines that create and alter enum types attempt to assign even OIDs to enum values whenever possible.

When an enum type is created, its members are assigned sort-order positions 1..n. But members added later might be given negative or fractional values of enumsortorder. The only requirement on these values is that they be correctly ordered and unique within each enum type.

50.21. pg_event_trigger

The catalog pg_event_trigger stores event triggers. See Chapter 38 for more information.

Table 50.21. pg_event_trigger Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evtname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evtevent</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evtowner</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evtfoid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evtenabled</td>
<td>char</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

#### evttags
- **Description:** Command tags for which this trigger will fire. If NULL, the firing of this trigger is not restricted on the basis of the command tag.

---

#### 50.22. `pg_extension`

The catalog `pg_extension` stores information about the installed extensions. See Section 36.17 for details about extensions.

**Table 50.22. `pg_extension` Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extowner</td>
<td>oid (references <code>pg_authid</code> .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extnamespace</td>
<td>oid (references <code>pg_namespace</code> .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extrelocatable</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extversion</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extconfig</td>
<td>oid[] (references <code>pg_class</code> .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extcondition</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that unlike most catalogs with a “namespace” column, `extnamespace` is not meant to imply that the extension belongs to that schema. Extension names are never schema-qualified. Rather, `extnamespace` indicates the schema that contains most or all of the extension's objects. If `extrelocatable` is true, then this schema must in fact contain all schema-qualifiable objects belonging to the extension.

---

#### 50.23. `pg_foreign_data_wrapper`

The catalog `pg_foreign_data_wrapper` stores foreign-data wrapper definitions. A foreign-data wrapper is the mechanism by which external data, residing on foreign servers, is accessed.

**Table 50.23. `pg_foreign_data_wrapper` Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fdwname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fdwowner</td>
<td>oid (references <code>pg_authid</code> .oid)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fdwhandler oid</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid) References a handler function that is responsible for supplying execution routines for the foreign-data wrapper. Zero if no handler is provided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fdwvalidator oid</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid) References a validator function that is responsible for checking the validity of the options given to the foreign-data wrapper, as well as options for foreign servers and user mappings using the foreign-data wrapper. Zero if no validator is provided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fdwacl aclitem[]</td>
<td>Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fdwoptions text[]</td>
<td>Foreign-data wrapper specific options, as “keyword=value” strings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.24. pg_foreign_server

The catalog pg_foreign_server stores foreign server definitions. A foreign server describes a source of external data, such as a remote server. Foreign servers are accessed via foreign-data wrappers.

**Table 50.24. pg_foreign_server Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvname name</td>
<td>Name of the foreign server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvowner oid</td>
<td>(references pg_authid .oid) Owner of the foreign server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvfdw oid</td>
<td>(references pg_foreign_data_wrapper .oid) OID of the foreign-data wrapper of this foreign server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvtype text</td>
<td>Type of the server (optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvversion text</td>
<td>Version of the server (optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvacl aclitem[]</td>
<td>Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvoptions text[]</td>
<td>Foreign server specific options, as “keyword=value” strings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.25. pg_foreign_table

The catalog pg_foreign_table contains auxiliary information about foreign tables. A foreign table is primarily represented by a pg_class entry, just like a regular table. Its pg_foreign_table entry contains the information that is pertinent only to foreign tables and not any other kind of relation.

**Table 50.25. pg_foreign_table Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ftrelid oid</td>
<td>(references pg_class .oid) The OID of the pg_class entry for this foreign table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ftsrver oid</td>
<td>(references pg_foreign_server .oid)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OID of the foreign server for this foreign table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ftoptions text[]</td>
<td>Foreign table options, as “keyword=value” strings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 50.26. pg_index

The catalog `pg_index` contains part of the information about indexes. The rest is mostly in `pg_class`.

### Table 50.26. pg_index Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>indexrelid oid (references pg_class .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the pg_class entry for this index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indrelid oid (references pg_class .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the pg_class entry for the table this index is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indnatts int2</td>
<td>The total number of columns in the index (duplicates pg_class.relnatts); this number includes both key and included attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indnkeyatts int2</td>
<td>The number of key columns in the index, not counting any included columns, which are merely stored and do not participate in the index semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indisunique bool</td>
<td>If true, this is a unique index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indisprimary bool</td>
<td>If true, this index represents the primary key of the table (indisunique should always be true when this is true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indisexclusion bool</td>
<td>If true, this index supports an exclusion constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indisimmediate bool</td>
<td>If true, the uniqueness check is enforced immediately on insertion (irrelevant if indisunique is not true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indisclustered bool</td>
<td>If true, the table was last clustered on this index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indisvalid bool</td>
<td>If true, the index is currently valid for queries. False means the index is possibly incomplete: it must still be modified by INSERT/UPDATE operations, but it cannot safely be used for queries. If it is unique, the uniqueness property is not guaranteed true either.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indcheckxmin bool</td>
<td>If true, queries must not use the index until the xmin of this pg_index row is below their TransactionXmin event horizon, because the table may contain broken HOT chains with incompatible rows that they can see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indisready bool</td>
<td>If true, the index is currently ready for inserts. False means the index must be ignored by INSERT/UPDATE operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indislive bool</td>
<td>If false, the index is in process of being dropped, and should be ignored for all purposes (including HOT-safety decisions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indisreplident bool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type Description

If true this index has been chosen as “replica identity” using `ALTER TABLE ... REPLICA IDENTITY USING INDEX ...`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>indkey int2vector</td>
<td>This is an array of <code>indnatts</code> values that indicate which table columns this index indexes. For example a value of <code>1 3</code> would mean that the first and the third table columns make up the index entries. Key columns come before non-key (included) columns. A zero in this array indicates that the corresponding index attribute is an expression over the table columns, rather than a simple column reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indcollation oidvector</td>
<td>For each column in the index key (indnkeyatts values), this contains the OID of the collation to use for the index, or zero if the column is not of a collatable data type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indclass oidvector</td>
<td>For each column in the index key (indnkeyatts values), this contains the OID of the operator class to use. See <code>pg_opclass</code> for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indoption int2vector</td>
<td>This is an array of <code>indnkeyatts</code> values that store per-column flag bits. The meaning of the bits is defined by the index's access method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indexprs pg_node_tree</td>
<td>Expression trees (in <code>nodeToString()</code> representation) for index attributes that are not simple column references. This is a list with one element for each zero entry in <code>indkey</code>. Null if all index attributes are simple references.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indpred pg_node_tree</td>
<td>Expression tree (in <code>nodeToString()</code> representation) for partial index predicate. Null if not a partial index.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.27. pg_inherits

The catalog `pg_inherits` records information about table and index inheritance hierarchies. There is one entry for each direct parent-child table or index relationship in the database. (Indirect inheritance can be determined by following chains of entries.)

#### Table 50.27. pg_inherits Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inhrelid oid</td>
<td>The OID of the child table or index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inhhparent oid</td>
<td>The OID of the parent table or index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inhseqno int4</td>
<td>If there is more than one direct parent for a child table (multiple inheritance), this number tells the order in which the inherited columns are to be arranged. The count starts at 1. Indexes cannot have multiple inheritance, since they can only inherit when using declarative partitioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inhdetachpending bool</td>
<td>true for a partition that is in the process of being detached; false otherwise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.28. pg_init_privs

The catalog `pg_init_privs` records information about the initial privileges of objects in the system. There is one entry for each object in the database which has a non-default (non-NULL) initial set of privileges.
Objects can have initial privileges either by having those privileges set when the system is initialized (by initdb) or when the object is created during a CREATE EXTENSION and the extension script sets initial privileges using the GRANT system. Note that the system will automatically handle recording of the privileges during the extension script and that extension authors need only use the GRANT and REVOKE statements in their script to have the privileges recorded. The **privtype** column indicates if the initial privilege was set by initdb or during a CREATE EXTENSION command.

Objects which have initial privileges set by initdb will have entries where **privtype** is 'i', while objects which have initial privileges set by CREATE EXTENSION will have entries where **privtype** is 'e'.

**Table 50.28. pg_init_privs Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>objoid oid (references any OID column)</td>
<td>The OID of the specific object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classoid oid (references pg_class .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the system catalog the object is in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objsubid int4</td>
<td>For a table column, this is the column number (the objoid and classoid refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privtype char</td>
<td>A code defining the type of initial privilege of this object; see text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initprivils aclitem[]</td>
<td>The initial access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**50.29. pg_language**

The catalog **pg_language** registers languages in which you can write functions or stored procedures. See CREATE LANGUAGE and Chapter 40 for more information about language handlers.

**Table 50.29. pg_language Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lanname name</td>
<td>Name of the language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lanowner oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>Owner of the language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lanispl bool</td>
<td>This is false for internal languages (such as SQL) and true for user-defined languages. Currently, pg_dump still uses this to determine which languages need to be dumped, but this might be replaced by a different mechanism in the future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lanpltrusted bool</td>
<td>True if this is a trusted language, which means that it is believed not to grant access to anything outside the normal SQL execution environment. Only superusers can create functions in untrusted languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lanplcallfoid oid (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>For noninternal languages this references the language handler, which is a special function that is responsible for executing all functions that are written in the particular language. Zero for internal languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laninline oid (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
50.30. pg_largeobject

The catalog pg_largeobject holds the data making up “large objects”. A large object is identified by an OID assigned when it is created. Each large object is broken into segments or “pages” small enough to be conveniently stored as rows in pg_largeobject. The amount of data per page is defined to be LOBLKSIZE (which is currently BLCKSZ/4, or typically 2 kB).

Prior to PostgreSQL 9.0, there was no permission structure associated with large objects. As a result, pg_largeobject was publicly readable and could be used to obtain the OIDs (and contents) of all large objects in the system. This is no longer the case; use pg_largeobject_metadata to obtain a list of large object OIDs.

Table 50.30. pg_largeobject Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loid oid</td>
<td>Identifier of the large object that includes this page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pageno int4</td>
<td>Page number of this page within its large object (counting from zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data bytea</td>
<td>Actual data stored in the large object. This will never be more than LOBLKSIZE bytes and might be less.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each row of pg_largeobject holds data for one page of a large object, beginning at byte offset (pageno * LOBLKSIZE) within the object. The implementation allows sparse storage: pages might be missing, and might be shorter than LOBLKSIZE bytes even if they are not the last page of the object. Missing regions within a large object read as zeroes.

50.31. pg_largeobject_metadata

The catalog pg_largeobject_metadata holds metadata associated with large objects. The actual large object data is stored in pg_largeobject.

Table 50.31. pg_largeobject_metadata Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lomowner oid</td>
<td>Owner of the large object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lomacl aclitem[]</td>
<td>Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.32. pg_namespace

The catalog `pg_namespace` stores namespaces. A namespace is the structure underlying SQL schemas: each namespace can have a separate collection of relations, types, etc. without name conflicts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 50.32. pg_namespace Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nspname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nspowner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nspacl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.33. pg_opclass

The catalog `pg_opclass` defines index access method operator classes. Each operator class defines semantics for index columns of a particular data type and a particular index access method. An operator class essentially specifies that a particular operator family is applicable to a particular indexable column data type. The set of operators from the family that are actually usable with the indexed column are whichever ones accept the column's data type as their left-hand input.

Operator classes are described at length in Section 36.16.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 50.33. pg_opclass Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opcmethod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opcname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opcnamespace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opcowner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opcfamily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opcintype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opcdefault</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opckeytype</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An operator class's \texttt{opmethod} must match the \texttt{opfmethod} of its containing operator family. Also, there must be no more than one \texttt{pg_opclass} row having \texttt{opcdefault} true for any given combination of \texttt{opmethod} and \texttt{opcintype}.

### 50.34. \texttt{pg_operator}

The catalog \texttt{pg_operator} stores information about operators. See \texttt{CREATE OPERATOR} and \texttt{Section 36.14} for more information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oid}</td>
<td>\texttt{oid}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprname}</td>
<td>\texttt{name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprnamespace} \texttt{oid}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_namespace .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprowner} \texttt{oid}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_authid .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprkind}</td>
<td>\texttt{char}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprcanmerge}</td>
<td>\texttt{bool}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprcanhash}</td>
<td>\texttt{bool}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprleft} \texttt{oid}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_type .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprright} \texttt{oid}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_type .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprresult} \texttt{oid}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_type .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprcom} \texttt{oid}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_operator .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprnegate} \texttt{oid}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_operator .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprcode} \texttt{regproc}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_proc .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprrest} \texttt{regproc}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_proc .oid)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oprjoin} \texttt{regproc}</td>
<td>\texttt{(references pg_proc .oid)}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.35. \texttt{pg_opfamily}

The catalog \texttt{pg_opfamily} defines operator families. Each operator family is a collection of operators and associated support routines that implement the semantics specified for a particular index access
method. Furthermore, the operators in a family are all “compatible”, in a way that is specified by the access method. The operator family concept allows cross-data-type operators to be used with indexes and to be reasoned about using knowledge of access method semantics.

Operator families are described at length in Section 36.16.

Table 50.35. pg_opfamily Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opfmethod oid (references pg_am .oid)</td>
<td>Index access method operator family is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opfname</td>
<td>Name of this operator family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opfnamespace oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
<td>Namespace of this operator family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opfowner oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>Owner of the operator family</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The majority of the information defining an operator family is not in its pg_opfamily row, but in the associated rows in pg_amop, pg_amproc, and pg_opclass.

50.36. pg_partitioned_table

The catalog pg_partitioned_table stores information about how tables are partitioned.

Table 50.36. pg_partitioned_table Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>partrelid oid (references pg_class .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the pg_class entry for this partitioned table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partstrat</td>
<td>Partitioning strategy; h = hash partitioned table, l = list partitioned table, r = range partitioned table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partnatts</td>
<td>The number of columns in the partition key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partdefid oid (references pg_class .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the pg_class entry for the default partition of this partitioned table, or zero if this partitioned table does not have a default partition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partattrs int2vector (references pg_attribute .attnum)</td>
<td>This is an array of partnatts values that indicate which table columns are part of the partition key. For example, a value of 1 3 would mean that the first and the third table columns make up the partition key. A zero in this array indicates that the corresponding partition key column is an expression, rather than a simple column reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partclass oidvector (references pg_opclass .oid)</td>
<td>For each column in the partition key, this contains the OID of the operator class to use. See pg_opclass for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partcollation oidvector (references pg_collation .oid)</td>
<td>For each column in the partition key, this contains the OID of the collation to use for partitioning, or zero if the column is not of a collatable data type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
50.37. pg_policy

The catalog `pg_policy` stores row-level security policies for tables. A policy includes the kind of command that it applies to (possibly all commands), the roles that it applies to, the expression to be added as a security-barrier qualification to queries that include the table, and the expression to be added as a `WITH CHECK` option for queries that attempt to add new records to the table.

**Table 50.37. pg_policy Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polname name</td>
<td>The name of the policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polrelid oid (references pg_class .oid)</td>
<td>The table to which the policy applies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polcmd char</td>
<td>The command type to which the policy is applied: r for SELECT, a for INSERT, w for UPDATE, d for DELETE, or * for all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polpermissive bool</td>
<td>Is the policy permissive or restrictive?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polroles oid[] (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>The roles to which the policy applies; zero means PUBLIC (and normally appears alone in the array)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polqual pg_node_tree</td>
<td>The expression tree to be added to the security barrier qualifications for queries that use the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polwithcheck pg_node_tree</td>
<td>The expression tree to be added to the WITH CHECK qualifications for queries that attempt to add rows to the table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Policies stored in `pg_policy` are applied only when `pg_class.relrowsecurity` is set for their table.

50.38. pg_proc

The catalog `pg_proc` stores information about functions, procedures, aggregate functions, and window functions (collectively also known as routines). See `CREATE FUNCTION`, `CREATE PROCEDURE`, and `Section 36.3` for more information.

If `prokind` indicates that the entry is for an aggregate function, there should be a matching row in `pg_aggregate`.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praname name</td>
<td>Name of the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronamespace oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proowner oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>Owner of the function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prolang oid (references pg_language .oid)</td>
<td>Implementation language or call interface of this function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procost float4</td>
<td>Estimated execution cost (in units of cpu_operator_cost); if proretset, this is cost per row returned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prorows float4</td>
<td>Estimated number of result rows (zero if not proretset)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provariadic oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>Data type of the variadic array parameter's elements, or zero if the function does not have a variadic parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosupport regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>Planner support function for this function (see Section 36.11), or zero if none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prokind char</td>
<td>f for a normal function, p for a procedure, a for an aggregate function, or w for a window function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosecdef bool</td>
<td>Function is a security definer (i.e., a “setuid” function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proleakproof bool</td>
<td>The function has no side effects. No information about the arguments is conveyed except via the return value. Any function that might throw an error depending on the values of its arguments is not leak-proof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proisstrict bool</td>
<td>Function returns null if any call argument is null. In that case the function won't actually be called at all. Functions that are not “strict” must be prepared to handle null inputs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proretset bool</td>
<td>Function returns a set (i.e., multiple values of the specified data type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provolatile char</td>
<td>provolatile tells whether the function's result depends only on its input arguments, or is affected by outside factors. It is i for “immutable” functions, which always deliver the same result for the same inputs. It is s for “stable” functions, whose results (for fixed inputs) do not change within a scan. It is v for “volatile” functions, whose results might change at any time. (Use v also for functions with side-effects, so that calls to them cannot get optimized away.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proparallel char</td>
<td>proparallel tells whether the function can be safely run in parallel mode. It is s for functions which are safe to run in parallel mode without restriction. It is r for functions which can be run in parallel mode, but their execution is restricted to the parallel group leader; parallel worker processes cannot invoke these functions. It is u for functions which are unsafe in parallel mode; the presence of such a function forces a serial execution plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronargs int2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronargdefaults</td>
<td>int2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of arguments that have defaults</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prorettype</td>
<td>oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data type of the return value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proargtypes</td>
<td>oidvector (references pg_type .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An array of the data types of the function arguments. This includes only input arguments (including INOUT and VARIADIC arguments), and thus represents the call signature of the function.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proallargtypes</td>
<td>oid[] (references pg_type .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An array of the data types of the function arguments. This includes all arguments (including OUT and INOUT arguments); however, if all the arguments are IN arguments, this field will be null. Note that subscripting is 1-based, whereas for historical reasons proargtypes is subscripted from 0.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proargmodes</td>
<td>char[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An array of the modes of the function arguments, encoded as i for IN arguments, o for OUT arguments, b for INOUT arguments, v for VARIADIC arguments, t for TABLE arguments. If all the arguments are IN arguments, this field will be null. Note that subscripts correspond to positions of proallargtypes not proargtypes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proargnames</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An array of the names of the function arguments. Arguments without a name are set to empty strings in the array. If none of the arguments have a name, this field will be null. Note that subscripts correspond to positions of proallargtypes not proargtypes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proargdefaults</td>
<td>pg_node_tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression trees (in nodeToString() representation) for default values. This is a list with pronargdefaults elements, corresponding to the last N input arguments (i.e., the last N proargtypes positions). If none of the arguments have defaults, this field will be null.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protrftypes</td>
<td>oid[] (references pg_type .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An array of the argument/result data type(s) for which to apply transforms (from the function's TRANSFORM clause). Null if none.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosrctext</td>
<td>This tells the function handler how to invoke the function. It might be the actual source code of the function for interpreted languages, a link symbol, a file name, or just about anything else, depending on the implementation language/call convention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probin</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional information about how to invoke the function. Again, the interpretation is language-specific.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosqlbody</td>
<td>pg_node_tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-parsed SQL function body. This is used for SQL-language functions when the body is given in SQL-standard notation rather than as a string literal. It's null in other cases.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proconfig</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function's local settings for run-time configuration variables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proacl</td>
<td>aclitem[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For compiled functions, both built-in and dynamically loaded, prosrctext contains the function's C-language name (link symbol). For SQL-language functions, prosrctext contains the function's source text if that is specified as a string literal; but if the function body is specified in SQL-standard style, prosrctext is unused (typically it's an empty string) and prosqlbody contains the pre-parsed definition. For all other currently-
known language types, prosrc contains the function’s source text. probin is null except for dynamically-loaded C functions, for which it gives the name of the shared library file containing the function.

50.39. pg_profile

The catalog pg_profile lists all profiles available for your cluster. For details on profiles, see CREATE PROFILE.

Profiles are cluster-wide, so pg_profile is shared across all databases of a cluster. This catalog is not publicly readable.

Table 50.39. pg_profile Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflname name</td>
<td>Profile name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflfailedloginattempts int4</td>
<td>FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS parameter value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflfailedauthkeeptime int4</td>
<td>FAILED_AUTH_KEEP_TIME parameter value (in seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pfluserinactivetime int4</td>
<td>USER_INACTIVE_TIME parameter value (in seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflpasswordreusetime int4</td>
<td>PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME parameter value (in seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflpasswordreusemax int4</td>
<td>PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX parameter value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflpasswordlifetime int4</td>
<td>PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME parameter value (in seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflpasswordgracetime int4</td>
<td>PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME parameter value (in seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflpasswordminuniqchars int4</td>
<td>PASSWORD_MIN_UNIQUE_CHARS parameter value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflpasswordminlen int4</td>
<td>PASSWORD_MIN_LEN parameter value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pflpasswordrequirecomplex int4</td>
<td>PASSWORD_REQUIRE_COMPLEX parameter value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The UNLIMITED and DEFAULT parameter values are stored in pg_profile as -1 and -2, respectively.

50.40. pg_publication

The catalog pg_publication contains all publications created in the database. For more on publications see Section 29.1.

Table 50.40. pg_publication Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pubname name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

**Table 50.41. pg_publication_rel Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prpubid</td>
<td>Reference to publication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prreloid</td>
<td>Reference to relation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**50.41. pg_publication_rel**

The catalog `pg_publication_rel` contains the mapping between relations and publications in the database. This is a many-to-many mapping. See also Section 50.81 for a more user-friendly view of this information.

**Table 50.42. pg_range Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rngtypid</td>
<td>OID of the range type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rngsubtype</td>
<td>OID of the element type (subtype) of this range type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rngmultitypid</td>
<td>OID of the multirange type for this range type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rngcollation</td>
<td>OID of the collation type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**50.42. pg_range**

The catalog `pg_range` stores information about range types. This is in addition to the types' entries in `pg_type`.

---

1929
### System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>OID of the collation used for range comparisons, or zero if none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rngsubopc oid</td>
<td>OID of the subtype's operator class used for range comparisons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rngcanonical regproc</td>
<td>OID of the function to convert a range value into canonical form, or zero if none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rngsubdiff regproc</td>
<td>OID of the function to return the difference between two element values as double precision, or zero if none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

rngsubopc (plus rngcollation, if the element type is collatable) determines the sort ordering used by the range type. rngcanonical is used when the element type is discrete. rngsubdiff is optional but should be supplied to improve performance of GiST indexes on the range type.

#### 50.43. pg_replication_origin

The pg_replication_origin catalog contains all replication origins created. For more on replication origins see Chapter 48.

Unlike most system catalogs, pg_replication_origin is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of pg_replication_origin per cluster, not one per database.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 50.43. pg_replication_origin Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roident oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roname text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.44. pg_rewrite

The catalog pg_rewrite stores rewrite rules for tables and views.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 50.44. pg_rewrite Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rulename name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ev_class oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ev_type char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ev_enabled char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_instead bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ev_qual pg_node_tree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ev_action</td>
<td>pg_node_tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Query tree (in the form of a nodeToString() representation) for the rule’s action</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

`pg_class.relhasrules` must be true if a table has any rules in this catalog.

### 50.45. pg_role_password

The catalog `pg_role_password` records role’s passwords history used to enforce authentication restrictions.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_role_password` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_role_password` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 50.45. pg_role_password Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>passrole oid</td>
<td>The OID of the role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passpassword text</td>
<td>Password of the role (possibly encrypted)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passsetat timestamptz</td>
<td>Password set time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.46. pg_seclabel

The catalog `pg_seclabel` stores security labels on database objects. Security labels can be manipulated with the `SECURITY LABEL` command. For an easier way to view security labels, see Section 50.86.

See also `pg_shseclabel`, which performs a similar function for security labels of database objects that are shared across a database cluster.

**Table 50.46. pg_seclabel Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>objoid oid (references any OID column)</td>
<td>The OID of the object this security label pertains to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classoid oid (references <code>pg_class</code>.oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the system catalog this object appears in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objsubid int4</td>
<td>For a security label on a table column, this is the column number (the <code>objoid</code> and <code>classoid</code> refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provider text</td>
<td>The label provider associated with this label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>label text</td>
<td>The security label applied to this object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
50.47. pg_sequence

The catalog `pg_sequence` contains information about sequences. Some of the information about sequences, such as the name and the schema, is in `pg_class`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>seqrelid oid (ref)</td>
<td>The OID of the <code>pg_class</code> entry for this sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqtypid oid (ref)</td>
<td>Data type of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqstart int8</td>
<td>Start value of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqincrement int8</td>
<td>Increment value of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqmax int8</td>
<td>Maximum value of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqmin int8</td>
<td>Minimum value of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqcache int8</td>
<td>Cache size of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqcycle bool</td>
<td>Whether the sequence cycles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.48. pg_shdepend

The catalog `pg_shdepend` records the dependency relationships between database objects and shared objects, such as roles. This information allows Postgres Pro to ensure that those objects are unreferenced before attempting to delete them.

See also `pg_depend`, which performs a similar function for dependencies involving objects within a single database.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_shdepend` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_shdepend` per cluster, not one per database.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dbid oid (ref)</td>
<td>The OID of the database the dependent object is in, or zero for a shared object or a SHARED_DEPENDENCY_PIN entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classid oid (ref)</td>
<td>The OID of the system catalog the dependent object is in, or zero for a SHARED_DEPENDENCY_PIN entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objid oid (ref)</td>
<td>The OID of the specific dependent object, or zero for a SHARED_DEPENDENCY_PIN entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objsubid int4</td>
<td>For a table column, this is the column number (the <code>objid</code> and <code>classid</code> refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refclassid oid (ref)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
System Catalogs

**Column Type**

**Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>refobjid oid</th>
<th>The OID of the system catalog the referenced object is in (must be a shared catalog)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deptype char</td>
<td>A code defining the specific semantics of this dependency relationship; see text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In all cases, a `pg_shdepend` entry indicates that the referenced object cannot be dropped without also dropping the dependent object. However, there are several subflavors identified by `deptype`:

**SHARED_DEPENDENCY_OWNER (o)**

The referenced object (which must be a role) is the owner of the dependent object.

**SHARED_DEPENDENCY_ACL (a)**

The referenced object (which must be a role) is mentioned in the ACL (access control list, i.e., privileges list) of the dependent object. (A `SHARED_DEPENDENCY_ACL` entry is not made for the owner of the object, since the owner will have a `SHARED_DEPENDENCY_OWNER` entry anyway.)

**SHARED_DEPENDENCY_POLICY (r)**

The referenced object (which must be a role) is mentioned as the target of a dependent policy object.

**SHARED_DEPENDENCY_PIN (p)**

There is no dependent object; this type of entry is a signal that the system itself depends on the referenced object, and so that object must never be deleted. Entries of this type are created only by `initdb`. The columns for the dependent object contain zeroes.

**SHARED_DEPENDENCY_TABLESPACE (t)**

The referenced object (which must be a tablespace) is mentioned as the tablespace for a relation that doesn’t have storage.

Other dependency flavors might be needed in future. Note in particular that the current definition only supports roles and tablespaces as referenced objects.

### 50.49. pg_shdescription

The catalog `pg_shdescription` stores optional descriptions (comments) for shared database objects. Descriptions can be manipulated with the `COMMENT` command and viewed with `psql`'s `\d` commands.

See also `pg_description`, which performs a similar function for descriptions involving objects within a single database.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_shdescription` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_shdescription` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 50.49. pg_shdescription Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>objoid oid</td>
<td>The OID of the object this description pertains to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classoid oid</td>
<td>The OID of the system catalog this object appears in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description text</td>
<td>Arbitrary text that serves as the description of this object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
50.50. **pg_shseclabel**

The catalog `pg_shseclabel` stores security labels on shared database objects. Security labels can be manipulated with the `SECURITY LABEL` command. For an easier way to view security labels, see Section 50.86.

See also `pg_seclabel`, which performs a similar function for security labels involving objects within a single database.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_shseclabel` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_shseclabel` per cluster, not one per database.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 50.50. pg_shseclabel Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>objoid oid</strong> (references any OID column)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>classoid oid</strong> (references <code>pg_class .oid</code>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>provider text</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>label text</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.51. **pg_statistic**

The catalog `pg_statistic` stores statistical data about the contents of the database. Entries are created by `ANALYZE` and subsequently used by the query planner. Note that all the statistical data is inherently approximate, even assuming that it is up-to-date.

Normally there is one entry, with `stainherit = false`, for each table column that has been analyzed. If the table has inheritance children, a second entry with `stainherit = true` is also created. This row represents the column's statistics over the inheritance tree, i.e., statistics for the data you'd see with `SELECT column FROM table*`, whereas the `stainherit = false` row represents the results of `SELECT column FROM ONLY table`.

`pg_statistic` also stores statistical data about the values of index expressions. These are described as if they were actual data columns; in particular, `starelid` references the index. No entry is made for an ordinary non-expression index column, however, since it would be redundant with the entry for the underlying table column. Currently, entries for index expressions always have `stainherit = false`.

Since different kinds of statistics might be appropriate for different kinds of data, `pg_statistic` is designed not to assume very much about what sort of statistics it stores. Only extremely general statistics (such as nullness) are given dedicated columns in `pg_statistic`. Everything else is stored in “slots”, which are groups of associated columns whose content is identified by a code number in one of the slot's columns.

`pg_statistic` should not be readable by the public, since even statistical information about a table's contents might be considered sensitive. (Example: minimum and maximum values of a salary column might be quite interesting.) `pg_stats` is a publicly readable view on `pg_statistic` that only exposes information about those tables that are readable by the current user.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 50.51. pg_statistic Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>starelid oid</strong> (references <code>pg_class .oid</code>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The table or index that the described column belongs to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>staattnum int2 (references pg_attribute .attnum)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The number of the described column</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stainherit bool</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If true, the stats include inheritance child columns, not just the values in the specified relation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stanullfrac float4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The fraction of the column's entries that are null</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stawidth int4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The average stored width, in bytes, of nonnull entries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stadistinct float4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The number of distinct nonnull data values in the column. A value greater than zero is the actual number of distinct values. A value less than zero is the negative of a multiplier for the number of rows in the table; for example, a column in which about 80% of the values are nonnull and each nonnull value appears about twice on average could be represented by stadistinct = -0.4. A zero value means the number of distinct values is unknown.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stakindN int2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A code number indicating the kind of statistics stored in the ( N )th “slot” of the ( \text{pg_statistic} ) row.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>staopN oid (references pg_operator .oid)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An operator used to derive the statistics stored in the ( N )th “slot”. For example, a histogram slot would show the &lt; operator that defines the sort order of the data. Zero if the statistics kind does not require an operator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stacollN oid (references pg_collation .oid)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The collation used to derive the statistics stored in the ( N )th “slot”. For example, a histogram slot for a collatable column would show the collation that defines the sort order of the data. Zero for noncollatable data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stanumbersN float4[]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Numerical statistics of the appropriate kind for the ( N )th “slot”, or null if the slot kind does not involve numerical values</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stavaluesN anyarray</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column data values of the appropriate kind for the ( N )th “slot”, or null if the slot kind does not store any data values. Each array's element values are actually of the specific column's data type, or a related type such as an array's element type, so there is no way to define these columns' type more specifically than anyarray.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 50.52. pg_statistic_ext Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The catalog ( \text{pg_statistic_ext} ) holds definitions of extended planner statistics. Each row in this catalog corresponds to a ( \text{statistics object} ) created with \texttt{CREATE STATISTICS}.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.52. pg_statistic_ext

The catalog \( \text{pg\_statistic\_ext} \) holds definitions of extended planner statistics. Each row in this catalog corresponds to a \( \text{statistics object} \) created with \texttt{CREATE STATISTICS}.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The catalog ( \text{pg_statistic_ext} ) holds definitions of extended planner statistics. Each row in this catalog corresponds to a ( \text{statistics object} ) created with \texttt{CREATE STATISTICS}.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>oid oid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stxrelid oid (references pg_class .oid)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table containing the columns described by this object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stxname name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

#### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name of the statistics object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stxnamespace oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxowner oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>Owner of the statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxstattarget int4</td>
<td>Controls the level of detail of statistics accumulated for this statistics object by <strong>ANALYZE</strong>. A zero value indicates that no statistics should be collected. A negative value says to use the maximum of the statistics targets of the referenced columns, if set, or the system default statistics target. Positive values of stxstattarget determine the target number of “most common values” to collect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxkeys int2vector (references pg_attribute .attnum)</td>
<td>An array of attribute numbers, indicating which table columns are covered by this statistics object; for example a value of 1 3 would mean that the first and the third table columns are covered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxkind char[]</td>
<td>An array containing codes for the enabled statistics kinds; valid values are: d for n-distinct statistics, f for functional dependency statistics, m for most common values (MCV) list statistics, and e for expression statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxexprs pg_node_tree</td>
<td>Expression trees (in nodeToString() representation) for statistics object attributes that are not simple column references. This is a list with one element per expression. Null if all statistics object attributes are simple references.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **pg_statistic_ext** entry is filled in completely during **CREATE STATISTICS**, but the actual statistical values are not computed then. Subsequent **ANALYZE** commands compute the desired values and populate an entry in the **pg_statistic_ext_data** catalog.

### 50.53. pg_statistic_ext_data

The catalog **pg_statistic_ext_data** holds data for extended planner statistics defined in **pg_statistic_ext**. Each row in this catalog corresponds to a **statistics object** created with **CREATE STATISTICS**.

Like **pg_statistic**, **pg_statistic_ext_data** should not be readable by the public, since the contents might be considered sensitive. (Example: most common combinations of values in columns might be quite interesting.) **pg_stats_ext** is a publicly readable view on **pg_statistic_ext_data** (after joining with **pg_statistic_ext** that only exposes information about those tables and columns that are readable by the current user.

#### Table 50.53. pg_statistic_ext_data Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stxoid oid (references pg_statistic_ext .oid)</td>
<td>Extended statistics object containing the definition for this data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxdndistinct pg_ndistinct</td>
<td>N-distinct counts, serialized as <strong>pg_ndistinct</strong> type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxddependencies pg_dependencies</td>
<td>Functional dependency statistics, serialized as <strong>pg_dependencies</strong> type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxdmcv pg_mcv_list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1936
System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MCV</td>
<td>(most-common values) list statistics, serialized as pg_mcv_list type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stxdexpr</td>
<td>pg_statistic[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Per-expression statistics, serialized as an array of pg_statistic type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.54. pg_subscription

The catalog `pg_subscription` contains all existing logical replication subscriptions. For more information about logical replication see Chapter 29.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_subscription` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_subscription` per cluster, not one per database.

Access to the column `subconninfo` is revoked from normal users, because it could contain plain-text passwords.

#### Table 50.54. pg_subscription Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subdbid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(refe...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pg_database .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the subscription</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subowner</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(refe...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pg_authid .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subenabled</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If true, the subscription is enabled and should be replicating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subbinary</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If true, the subscription will request that the publisher send data in binary format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substream</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If true, the subscription will allow streaming of in-progress transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subconninfo</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Connection string to the upstream database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subslotname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the replication slot in the upstream database (also used for the local replication origin name); null represents NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsynccommit</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The synchronous_commit setting for the subscription's workers to use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subpublications</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Array of subscribed publication names. These reference publications defined in the upstream database. For more on publications see Section 29.1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.55. pg_subscription_rel

The catalog `pg_subscription_rel` contains the state for each replicated relation in each subscription. This is a many-to-many mapping.

This catalog only contains tables known to the subscription after running either `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` or `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... REFRESH PUBLICATION`.

1937
### System Catalogs

#### Table 50.55. pg_subscription_rel Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>srsubid oid</td>
<td>Reference to subscription</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srrelid oid</td>
<td>Reference to relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srsubstate char</td>
<td>State code: i = initialize, d = data is being copied, f = finished table copy, s = synchronized, r = ready (normal replication)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srsublsn pg_lsn</td>
<td>Remote LSN of the state change used for synchronization coordination when in s or r states, otherwise null</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.56. pg_tablespace

The catalog `pg_tablespace` stores information about the available tablespaces. Tables can be placed in particular tablespaces to aid administration of disk layout.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_tablespace` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_tablespace` per cluster, not one per database.

#### Table 50.56. pg_tablespace Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spcname</td>
<td>Tablespace name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spcowner oid</td>
<td>Owner of the tablespace, usually the user who created it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spcacl</td>
<td>Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spcoptions</td>
<td>Tablespace-level options, as “keyword=value” strings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.57. pg_transform

The catalog `pg_transform` stores information about transforms, which are a mechanism to adapt data types to procedural languages. See `CREATE TRANSFORM` for more information.

#### Table 50.57. pg_transform Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trftype oid</td>
<td>OID of the data type this transform is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trflang oid</td>
<td>OID of the language this transform is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trffromsql regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trftosql regproc</td>
<td>The OID of the function to use when converting output from the procedural language (e.g., return values) to the data type. Zero is stored if the default behavior should be used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 50.58. pg_trigger   |

The catalog `pg_trigger` stores triggers on tables and views. See CREATE TRIGGER for more information.

### Table 50.58. pg_trigger Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgrelid oid</td>
<td>The table this trigger is on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgpparentid oid</td>
<td>Parent trigger that this trigger is cloned from (this happens when partitions are created or attached to a partitioned table); zero if not a clone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgname</td>
<td>Trigger name (must be unique among triggers of same table)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgfoid oid</td>
<td>The function to be called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgtype int2</td>
<td>Bit mask identifying trigger firing conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgenabled char</td>
<td>Controls in which session replication role modes the trigger fires. 0 = trigger fires in “origin” and “local” modes, D = trigger is disabled, R = trigger fires in “replica” mode, A = trigger fires always.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgisinternal bool</td>
<td>True if trigger is internally generated (usually, to enforce the constraint identified by tgconstraint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgconstrrelid oid</td>
<td>The table referenced by a referential integrity constraint (zero if trigger is not for a referential integrity constraint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgconstrindid oid</td>
<td>The index supporting a unique, primary key, referential integrity, or exclusion constraint (zero if trigger is not for one of these types of constraint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgconstraint oid</td>
<td>The pg_constraint entry associated with the trigger (zero if trigger is not for a constraint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgdeferrable bool</td>
<td>True if constraint trigger is deferrable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tginitdeferred bool</td>
<td>True if constraint trigger is initially deferred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tgnargs int2</td>
<td>Number of argument strings passed to trigger function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1939
Currently, column-specific triggering is supported only for UPDATE events, and so \texttt{tgattr} is relevant only for that event type. \texttt{tgtype} might contain bits for other event types as well, but those are presumed to be table-wide regardless of what is in \texttt{tgattr}.

\begin{note}
When \texttt{tgconstraint} is nonzero, \texttt{tgconstrrelid}, \texttt{tgconstrindid}, \texttt{tgdeferrable}, and \texttt{tginitdeferred} are largely redundant with the referenced \texttt{pg_constraint} entry. However, it is possible for a non-deferrable trigger to be associated with a deferrable constraint: foreign key constraints can have some deferrable and some non-deferrable triggers.
\end{note}

\begin{note}
\texttt{pg_class.relhastriggers} must be true if a relation has any triggers in this catalog.
\end{note}

\section{pg\_ts\_config}

The \texttt{pg\_ts\_config} catalog contains entries representing text search configurations. A configuration specifies a particular text search parser and a list of dictionaries to use for each of the parser's output token types. The parser is shown in the \texttt{pg\_ts\_config} entry, but the token-to-dictionary mapping is defined by subsidiary entries in \texttt{pg\_ts\_config\_map}.

Postgres Pro's text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Column Type} & \textbf{Description} \\
\hline
\texttt{oid} & \texttt{oid} \\
& Row identifier \\
\hline
\texttt{cfgname} & Text search configuration name \\
\hline
\texttt{cfgnamespace} \texttt{oid} (references \texttt{pg\_namespace} \texttt{.oid}) & The OID of the namespace that contains this configuration \\
\hline
\texttt{cfgowner} \texttt{oid} (references \texttt{pg\_authid} \texttt{.oid}) & Owner of the configuration \\
\hline
\texttt{cfgparser} \texttt{oid} (references \texttt{pg\_ts\_parser} \texttt{.oid}) & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{\texttt{pg\_ts\_config} Columns}
\end{table}

1940
### System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.60. pg_ts_config_map

The `pg_ts_config_map` catalog contains entries showing which text search dictionaries should be consulted, and in what order, for each output token type of each text search configuration's parser.

Postgres Pro's text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

**Table 50.60. pg_ts_config_map Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.61. pg_ts_dict

The `pg_ts_dict` catalog contains entries defining text search dictionaries. A dictionary depends on a text search template, which specifies all the implementation functions needed; the dictionary itself provides values for the user-settable parameters supported by the template. This division of labor allows dictionaries to be created by unprivileged users. The parameters are specified by a text string `dictinitoption`, whose format and meaning vary depending on the template.

Postgres Pro's text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

**Table 50.61. pg_ts_dict Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.62. pg_ts_parser

The `pg_ts_parser` catalog contains entries defining text search parsers. A parser is responsible for splitting input text into lexemes and assigning a token type to each lexeme. Since a parser must be implemented by C-language-level functions, creation of new parsers is restricted to database superusers.
Postgres Pro’s text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

### Table 50.62. pg_ts_parser Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid (Row identifier)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prsname</td>
<td>name (Text search parser name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prsnamespace</td>
<td>oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this parser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prsstart</td>
<td>regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OID of the parser's startup function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prstoken</td>
<td>regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OID of the parser's next-token function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prsend</td>
<td>regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OID of the parser's shutdown function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prsheadline</td>
<td>regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OID of the parser's headline function (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prslextype</td>
<td>regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OID of the parser's lextype function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.63. pg_ts_template

The pg_ts_template catalog contains entries defining text search templates. A template is the implementation skeleton for a class of text search dictionaries. Since a template must be implemented by C-language-level functions, creation of new templates is restricted to database superusers.

Postgres Pro’s text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

### Table 50.63. pg_ts_template Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid (Row identifier)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tmplname</td>
<td>name (Text search template name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tmplnamespace</td>
<td>oid (references pg_namespace .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tmplinit</td>
<td>regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OID of the template's initialization function (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tmpllexize</td>
<td>regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OID of the template's lexize function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.64. pg_type

The catalog pg_type stores information about data types. Base types and enum types (scalar types) are created with CREATE TYPE, and domains with CREATE DOMAIN. A composite type is automatically created for each table in the database, to represent the row structure of the table. It is also possible to create composite types with CREATE TYPE AS.
### Table 50.64. \texttt{pg\_type} Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{oid} oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typname} name</td>
<td>Data type name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typnamespace} oid (references \texttt{pg_namespace} .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the namespace that contains this type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typowner} oid (references \texttt{pg_authid} .oid)</td>
<td>Owner of the type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typlen} int2</td>
<td>For a fixed-size type, \texttt{typlen} is the number of bytes in the internal representation of the type. But for a variable-length type, \texttt{typlen} is negative. -1 indicates a “varlena” type (one that has a length word), -2 indicates a null-terminated C string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typbyval} bool</td>
<td>\texttt{typbyval} determines whether internal routines pass a value of this type by value or by reference. \texttt{typbyval} had better be false if \texttt{typlen} is not 1, 2, or 4 (or 8 on machines where Datum is 8 bytes). Variable-length types are always passed by reference. Note that \texttt{typbyval} can be false even if the length would allow pass-by-value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typtype} char</td>
<td>\texttt{typtype} is \texttt{b} for a base type, \texttt{c} for a composite type (e.g., a table's row type), \texttt{d} for a domain, \texttt{e} for an enum type, \texttt{p} for a pseudo-type, \texttt{r} for a range type, or \texttt{m} for a multirange type. See also \texttt{typrelid} and \texttt{typbasetype}.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typcategory} char</td>
<td>\texttt{typcategory} is an arbitrary classification of data types that is used by the parser to determine which implicit casts should be “preferred”. See Table 50.65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typispreferred} bool</td>
<td>True if the type is a preferred cast target within its \texttt{typcategory}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typisdefined} bool</td>
<td>True if the type is defined, false if this is a placeholder entry for a not-yet-defined type. When \texttt{typisdefined} is false, nothing except the type name, namespace, and OID can be relied on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typdelim} char</td>
<td>Character that separates two values of this type when parsing array input. Note that the delimiter is associated with the array element data type, not the array data type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typrelid} oid (references \texttt{pg_class} .oid)</td>
<td>If this is a composite type (see \texttt{typtype}), then this column points to the \texttt{pg_class} entry that defines the corresponding table. (For a free-standing composite type, the \texttt{pg_class} entry doesn't really represent a table, but it is needed anyway for the type's \texttt{pg_attribute} entries to link to.) Zero for non-composite types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typsubscript} regproc (references \texttt{pg_proc} .oid)</td>
<td>Subscripting handler function's OID, or zero if this type doesn't support subscripting. Types that are “true” array types have \texttt{typsubscript} = \texttt{array_subscript_handler}, but other types may have other handler functions to implement specialized subscripting behavior.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{typelem} oid (references \texttt{pg_type} .oid)</td>
<td>If \texttt{typelem} is not zero then it identifies another row in \texttt{pg_type}, defining the type yielded by subscripting. This should be zero if \texttt{typsubscript} is zero. However, it can be zero when \texttt{typsubscript} isn't zero, if the handler doesn't need \texttt{typelem} to determine the subscripting result type. Note that a \texttt{typelem} dependency is considered to imply physical containment of the element type in this type; so DDL changes on the element type might be restricted by the presence of this type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>typarray oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>(references pg_type .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If typarray is not zero then it identifies another row in pg_type, which is the “true” array type having this type as element</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>(references pg_type .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typinput regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input conversion function (text format)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typoutput regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output conversion function (text format)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typreceive regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input conversion function (binary format), or zero if none</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typsend regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output conversion function (binary format), or zero if none</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typmodin regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type modifier input function, or zero if type does not support modifiers</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typmodout regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type modifier output function, or zero to use the standard format</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typanalyze regproc (references pg_proc .oid)</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom ANALYZE function, or zero to use the standard function</td>
<td>regproc</td>
<td>(references pg_proc .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typalign char</td>
<td>typalign is the alignment required when storing a value of this type. It applies to storage on disk as well as most representations of the value inside PostgreSQL. When multiple values are stored consecutively, such as in the representation of a complete row on disk, padding is inserted before a datum of this type so that it begins on the specified boundary. The alignment reference is the beginning of the first datum in the sequence. Possible values are:</td>
<td>typalign is the alignment required when storing a value of this type. It applies to storage on disk as well as most representations of the value inside PostgreSQL. When multiple values are stored consecutively, such as in the representation of a complete row on disk, padding is inserted before a datum of this type so that it begins on the specified boundary. The alignment reference is the beginning of the first datum in the sequence. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• c = char alignment, i.e., no alignment needed.</td>
<td>• c = char alignment, i.e., no alignment needed.</td>
<td>• c = char alignment, i.e., no alignment needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• s = short alignment (2 bytes on most machines).</td>
<td>• s = short alignment (2 bytes on most machines).</td>
<td>• s = short alignment (2 bytes on most machines).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• i = int alignment (4 bytes on most machines).</td>
<td>• i = int alignment (4 bytes on most machines).</td>
<td>• i = int alignment (4 bytes on most machines).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• d = double alignment (8 bytes on many machines, but by no means all).</td>
<td>• d = double alignment (8 bytes on many machines, but by no means all).</td>
<td>• d = double alignment (8 bytes on many machines, but by no means all).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typstorage char</td>
<td>typstorage tells for varlena types (those with typlen = -1) if the type is prepared for toasting and what the default strategy for attributes of this type should be. Possible values are:</td>
<td>typstorage tells for varlena types (those with typlen = -1) if the type is prepared for toasting and what the default strategy for attributes of this type should be. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• p (plain): Values must always be stored plain (non-varlena types always use this value).</td>
<td>• p (plain): Values must always be stored plain (non-varlena types always use this value).</td>
<td>• p (plain): Values must always be stored plain (non-varlena types always use this value).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• e (external): Values can be stored in a secondary “TOAST” relation (if relation has one, see pg_class.reltoastrelid ).</td>
<td>• e (external): Values can be stored in a secondary “TOAST” relation (if relation has one, see pg_class.reltoastrelid ).</td>
<td>• e (external): Values can be stored in a secondary “TOAST” relation (if relation has one, see pg_class.reltoastrelid ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• m (main): Values can be compressed and stored inline.</td>
<td>• m (main): Values can be compressed and stored inline.</td>
<td>• m (main): Values can be compressed and stored inline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• x (extended): Values can be compressed and/or moved to a secondary relation.</td>
<td>• x (extended): Values can be compressed and/or moved to a secondary relation.</td>
<td>• x (extended): Values can be compressed and/or moved to a secondary relation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x is the usual choice for toast-able types. Note that m values can also be moved out to secondary storage, but only as a last resort (e and x values are moved first).</td>
<td>x is the usual choice for toast-able types. Note that m values can also be moved out to secondary storage, but only as a last resort (e and x values are moved first).</td>
<td>x is the usual choice for toast-able types. Note that m values can also be moved out to secondary storage, but only as a last resort (e and x values are moved first).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typnotnull bool</td>
<td>typnotnull represents a not-null constraint on a type. Used for domains only.</td>
<td>typnotnull represents a not-null constraint on a type. Used for domains only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typbasetype oid (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>(references pg_type .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If this is a domain (see typtype), then typbasetype identifies the type that this one is based on. Zero if this type is not a domain.</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td>(references pg_type .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typtypmod int4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## System Catalogs

### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domains use <code>typmod</code> to record the <code>typmod</code> to be applied to their base type (-1 if base type does not use a <code>typmod</code>). -1 if this type is not a domain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>typndims</code> int4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>typndims</code> is the number of array dimensions for a domain over an array (that is, <code>typbasetype</code> is an array type). Zero for types other than domains over array types.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>typcollation oid (references pg_collation .oid)</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>typcollation</code> specifies the collation of the type. If the type does not support collations, this will be zero. A base type that supports collations will have a nonzero value here, typically <code>DEFAULT_COLLATION_OID</code>. A domain over a collatable type can have a collation OID different from its base type's, if one was specified for the domain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>typdefaultbin pg_node_tree</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If <code>typdefaultbin</code> is not null, it is the <code>nodeToString()</code> representation of a default expression for the type. This is only used for domains.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>typdefault text</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>typdefault</code> is null if the type has no associated default value. If <code>typdefaultbin</code> is not null, <code>typdefault</code> must contain a human-readable version of the default expression represented by <code>typdefaultbin</code>. If <code>typdefaultbin</code> is null and <code>typdefault</code> is not, then <code>typdefault</code> is the external representation of the type's default value, which can be fed to the type's input converter to produce a constant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>typacl aclitem[]</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Note

For fixed-width types used in system tables, it is critical that the size and alignment defined in `pg_type` agree with the way that the compiler will lay out the column in a structure representing a table row.

Table 50.65 lists the system-defined values of `typcategory`. Any future additions to this list will also be upper-case ASCII letters. All other ASCII characters are reserved for user-defined categories.

#### Table 50.65. `typcategory` Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Array types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Boolean types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Composite types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Date/time types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Enum types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Geometric types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Network address types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Numeric types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Pseudo-types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Range types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>String types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Timespan types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>User-defined types</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Bit-string types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>unknown type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.65. pg_user_mapping

The catalog `pg_user_mapping` stores the mappings from local user to remote. Access to this catalog is restricted from normal users, use the view `pg_user_mappings` instead.

#### Table 50.66. pg_user_mapping Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>Row identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umuser oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
<td>OID of the local role being mapped, or zero if the user mapping is public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umserver oid (references pg_foreign_server .oid)</td>
<td>The OID of the foreign server that contains this mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umoptions text[]</td>
<td>User mapping specific options, as “keyword=value” strings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.66. System Views

In addition to the system catalogs, Postgres Pro provides a number of built-in views. Some system views provide convenient access to some commonly used queries on the system catalogs. Other views provide access to internal server state.

The information schema (Chapter 35) provides an alternative set of views which overlap the functionality of the system views. Since the information schema is SQL-standard whereas the views described here are Postgres Pro-specific, it’s usually better to use the information schema if it provides all the information you need.

**Table 50.67** lists the system views described here. More detailed documentation of each view follows below. There are some additional views that provide access to the results of the statistics collector; they are described in Table 26.2.

Except where noted, all the views described here are read-only.

#### Table 50.67. System Views

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>View Name</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_available_extensions</td>
<td>available extensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_available_extension_versions</td>
<td>available versions of extensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_backend_memory_contexts</td>
<td>backend memory contexts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_config</td>
<td>compile-time configuration parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg.Cursors</td>
<td>open cursors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_file_settings</td>
<td>summary of configuration file contents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_group</td>
<td>groups of database users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_hba_file_rules</td>
<td>summary of client authentication configuration file contents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_indexes</td>
<td>indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_locks</td>
<td>locks currently held or awaited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>View Name</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_matviews</td>
<td>materialized views</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_policies</td>
<td>policies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_prepared_statements</td>
<td>prepared statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_prepared_xacts</td>
<td>prepared transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_publication_tables</td>
<td>publications and their associated tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_replication_origin_status</td>
<td>information about replication origins, including replication progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_replication_slots</td>
<td>replication slot information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_roles</td>
<td>database roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_rules</td>
<td>rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_seclabels</td>
<td>security labels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_sequences</td>
<td>sequences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_settings</td>
<td>parameter settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_shadow</td>
<td>database users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_shmem_allocations</td>
<td>shared memory allocations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stats</td>
<td>planner statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stats_ext</td>
<td>extended planner statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stats_ext_exprs</td>
<td>extended planner statistics for expressions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_tables</td>
<td>tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_timezone_abbrevs</td>
<td>time zone abbreviations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_timezone_names</td>
<td>time zone names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_user</td>
<td>database users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_user_mappings</td>
<td>user mappings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_views</td>
<td>views</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.67. `pg_available_extensions`

The `pg_available_extensions` view lists the extensions that are available for installation. See also the `pg_extension` catalog, which shows the extensions currently installed.

#### Table 50.68. `pg_available_extensions` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Extension name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default_version</td>
<td>Name of default version, or NULL if none is specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installed_version</td>
<td>Currently installed version of the extension, or NULL if not installed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comment</td>
<td>Comment string from the extension's control file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `pg_available_extensions` view is read-only.

### 50.68. `pg_available_extension_versions`

1947
The \texttt{pg_available_extension_versions} view lists the specific extension versions that are available for installation. See also the \texttt{pg_extension} catalog, which shows the extensions currently installed.

**Table 50.69. \texttt{pg_available_extension_versions} Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{name}</td>
<td>Extension name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{version}</td>
<td>Version name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{installed}</td>
<td>True if this version of this extension is currently installed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{superuser}</td>
<td>True if only superusers are allowed to install this extension (but see \texttt{trusted})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{trusted}</td>
<td>True if the extension can be installed by non-superusers with appropriate privileges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{relocatable}</td>
<td>True if extension can be relocated to another schema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{schema}</td>
<td>Name of the schema that the extension must be installed into, or \texttt{NULL} if partially or fully relocatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{requires}</td>
<td>Names of prerequisite extensions, or \texttt{NULL} if none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{comment}</td>
<td>Comment string from the extension’s control file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The \texttt{pg_available_extension_versions} view is read-only.

**50.69. \texttt{pg_backend_memory_contexts}**

The view \texttt{pg_backend_memory_contexts} displays all the memory contexts of the server process attached to the current session.

\texttt{pg_backend_memory_contexts} contains one row for each memory context.

**Table 50.70. \texttt{pg_backend_memory_contexts} Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{name}</td>
<td>Name of the memory context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{ident}</td>
<td>Identification information of the memory context. This field is truncated at 1024 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{parent}</td>
<td>Name of the parent of this memory context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{level}</td>
<td>Distance from TopMemoryContext in context tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{total_bytes}</td>
<td>Total bytes allocated for this memory context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{total_nblocks}</td>
<td>Total number of blocks allocated for this memory context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{free_bytes}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1948
By default, the `pg_backend_memory_contexts` view can be read only by superusers.

### 50.70. pg_config

The view `pg_config` describes the compile-time configuration parameters of the currently installed version of Postgres Pro. It is intended, for example, to be used by software packages that want to interface to Postgres Pro to facilitate finding the required header files and libraries. It provides the same basic information as the `pg_config` Postgres Pro client application.

By default, the `pg_config` view can be read only by superusers.

#### Table 50.71. pg_config Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setting</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 50.71. pg_cursors

The `pg_cursors` view lists the cursors that are currently available. Cursors can be defined in several ways:

- via the `DECLARE` statement in SQL
- via the Bind message in the frontend/backend protocol, as described in Section 51.2.3
- via the Server Programming Interface (SPI), as described in Section 45.1

The `pg_cursors` view displays cursors created by any of these means. Cursors only exist for the duration of the transaction that defines them, unless they have been declared `WITH HOLD`. Therefore non-holdable cursors are only present in the view until the end of their creating transaction.

#### Note

Cursors are used internally to implement some of the components of Postgres Pro, such as procedural languages. Therefore, the `pg_cursors` view might include cursors that have not been explicitly created by the user.

#### Table 50.72. pg_cursors Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_holdable</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>if the cursor is holdable (that is, it can be accessed after the transaction that declared the cursor has committed); false otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_binary bool</td>
<td>true if the cursor was declared BINARY; false otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_scrollable bool</td>
<td>true if the cursor is scrollable (that is, it allows rows to be retrieved in a nonsequential manner); false otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creation_time timestamptz</td>
<td>The time at which the cursor was declared</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `pg_cursors` view is read-only.

### 50.72. pg_file_settings

The view `pg_file_settings` provides a summary of the contents of the server's configuration file(s). A row appears in this view for each “name = value” entry appearing in the files, with annotations indicating whether the value could be applied successfully. Additional row(s) may appear for problems not linked to a “name = value” entry, such as syntax errors in the files.

This view is helpful for checking whether planned changes in the configuration files will work, or for diagnosing a previous failure. Note that this view reports on the current contents of the files, not on what was last applied by the server. (The `pg_settings` view is usually sufficient to determine that.)

By default, the `pg_file_settings` view can be read only by superusers.

**Table 50.73. pg_file_settings Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sourcefile text</td>
<td>Full path name of the configuration file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourceline int4</td>
<td>Line number within the configuration file where the entry appears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqno int4</td>
<td>Order in which the entries are processed (1..n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name text</td>
<td>Configuration parameter name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setting text</td>
<td>Value to be assigned to the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>applied bool</td>
<td>True if the value can be applied successfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error text</td>
<td>If not null, an error message indicating why this entry could not be applied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the configuration file contains syntax errors or invalid parameter names, the server will not attempt to apply any settings from it, and therefore all the `applied` fields will read as false. In such a case there will be one or more rows with non-null `error` fields indicating the problem(s). Otherwise, individual settings will be applied if possible. If an individual setting cannot be applied (e.g., invalid value, or the setting cannot be changed after server start) it will have an appropriate message in the `error` field. Another way that an entry might have `applied` = false is that it is overridden by a later entry for the same parameter name; this case is not considered an error so nothing appears in the `error` field.

See Section 18.1 for more information about the various ways to change run-time parameters.
50.73. pg_group

The view pg_group exists for backwards compatibility: it emulates a catalog that existed in PostgreSQL before version 8.1. It shows the names and members of all roles that are marked as not rolcanlogin, which is an approximation to the set of roles that are being used as groups.

Table 50.74. pg_group Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>groname</td>
<td>name (references pg_authid .rolname) Name of the group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grosysid</td>
<td>oid (references pg_authid .oid) ID of this group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grolist</td>
<td>oid[] (references pg_authid .oid) An array containing the IDs of the roles in this group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.74. pg_hba_file_rules

The view pg_hba_file_rules provides a summary of the contents of the client authentication configuration file, pg_hba.conf. A row appears in this view for each non-empty, non-comment line in the file, with annotations indicating whether the rule could be applied successfully.

This view can be helpful for checking whether planned changes in the authentication configuration file will work, or for diagnosing a previous failure. Note that this view reports on the current contents of the file, not on what was last loaded by the server.

By default, the pg_hba_file_rules view can be read only by superusers.

Table 50.75. pg_hba_file_rules Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>line_number</td>
<td>int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_name</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netmask</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auth_method</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>options</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usually, a row reflecting an incorrect entry will have values for only the line_number and error fields.

See Chapter 19 for more information about client authentication configuration.
50.75. pg_indexes

The view pg_indexes provides access to useful information about each index in the database.

Table 50.76. pg_indexes Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of schema containing table and index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablename name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of table the index is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indexname name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablespace name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Name of tablespace containing index (null if default for database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indexdef</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Index definition (a reconstructed CREATE INDEX command)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.76. pg_locks

The view pg_locks provides access to information about the locks held by active processes within the database server. See Chapter 13 for more discussion of locking.

pg_locks contains one row per active lockable object, requested lock mode, and relevant process. Thus, the same lockable object might appear many times, if multiple processes are holding or waiting for locks on it. However, an object that currently has no locks on it will not appear at all.

There are several distinct types of lockable objects: whole relations (e.g., tables), individual pages of relations, individual tuples of relations, transaction IDs (both virtual and permanent IDs), and general database objects (identified by class OID and object OID, in the same way as in pg_description or pg_depend). Also, the right to extend a relation is represented as a separate lockable object, as is the right to update pg_database.datfrozenxid. Also, “advisory” locks can be taken on numbers that have user-defined meanings.

Table 50.77. pg_locks Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>locktype</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Type of the lockable object: relation, extend, frozenid, page, tuple, transactionid, virtualxid, spectoken, object, userlock, or advisory. (See also Table 26.11.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database oid</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>OID of the database in which the lock target exists, or zero if the target is a shared object, or null if the target is a transaction ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation oid</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>OID of the relation targeted by the lock, or null if the target is not a relation or part of a relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page</td>
<td>int4</td>
<td>Page number targeted by the lock within the relation, or null if the target is not a relation page or tuple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuple</td>
<td>int2</td>
<td>Tuple number targeted by the lock within the page, or null if the target is not a tuple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtualxid text</td>
<td>text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transactionid</td>
<td>Virtual ID of the transaction targeted by the lock, or null if the target is not a virtual transaction ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classid oid</td>
<td>ID of the transaction targeted by the lock, or null if the target is not a transaction ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objid oid</td>
<td>OID of the system catalog containing the lock target, or null if the target is not a general database object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objsubid int2</td>
<td>OID of the lock target within its system catalog, or null if the target is not a general database object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtualtransaction text</td>
<td>Virtual ID of the transaction that is holding or awaiting this lock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pid int4</td>
<td>Process ID of the server process holding or awaiting this lock, or null if the lock is held by a prepared transaction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode text</td>
<td>Name of the lock mode held or desired by this process (see Section 13.3.1 and Section 13.2.3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>granted bool</td>
<td>True if lock is held, false if lock is awaited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fastpath bool</td>
<td>True if lock was taken via fast path, false if taken via main lock table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waitstart timestamptz</td>
<td>Time when the server process started waiting for this lock, or null if the lock is held. Note that this can be null for a very short period of time after the wait started even though granted is false.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `granted` is true in a row representing a lock held by the indicated process. False indicates that this process is currently waiting to acquire this lock, which implies that at least one other process is holding or waiting for a conflicting lock mode on the same lockable object. The waiting process will sleep until the other lock is released (or a deadlock situation is detected). A single process can be waiting to acquire at most one lock at a time.

Throughout running a transaction, a server process holds an exclusive lock on the transaction's virtual transaction ID. If a permanent ID is assigned to the transaction (which normally happens only if the transaction changes the state of the database), it also holds an exclusive lock on the transaction's permanent transaction ID until it ends. When a process finds it necessary to wait specifically for another transaction to end, it does so by attempting to acquire share lock on the other transaction's ID (either virtual or permanent ID depending on the situation). That will succeed only when the other transaction terminates and releases its locks.

Although tuples are a lockable type of object, information about row-level locks is stored on disk, not in memory, and therefore row-level locks normally do not appear in this view. If a process is waiting for a row-level lock, it will usually appear in the view as waiting for the permanent transaction ID of the current holder of that row lock.

Advisory locks can be acquired on keys consisting of either a single bigint value or two integer values. A bigint key is displayed with its high-order half in the classid column, its low-order half in the objid column, and objsubid equal to 1. The original bigint value can be reassembled with the expression 1953.
Integer keys are displayed with the first key in the classid column, the second key in the objid column, and objsubid equal to 2. The actual meaning of the keys is up to the user. Advisory locks are local to each database, so the database column is meaningful for an advisory lock.

pg_locks provides a global view of all locks in the database cluster, not only those relevant to the current database. Although its relation column can be joined against pg_class.oid to identify locked relations, this will only work correctly for relations in the current database (those for which the database column is either the current database's OID or zero).

The pid column can be joined to the pid column of the pg_stat_activity view to get more information on the session holding or awaiting each lock, for example

SELECT * FROM pg_locks pl LEFT JOIN pg_stat_activity psa
  ON pl.pid = psa.pid;

Also, if you are using prepared transactions, the virtualtransaction column can be joined to the transaction column of the pg_prepared_xacts view to get more information on prepared transactions that hold locks. (A prepared transaction can never be waiting for a lock, but it continues to hold the locks it acquired while running.) For example:

SELECT * FROM pg_locks pl LEFT JOIN pg_prepared_xacts ppx
  ON pl.virtualtransaction = '-1/' || ppx.transaction;

While it is possible to obtain information about which processes block which other processes by joining pg_locks against itself, this is very difficult to get right in detail. Such a query would have to encode knowledge about which lock modes conflict with which others. Worse, the pg_locks view does not expose information about which processes are ahead of which others in lock wait queues, nor information about which processes are parallel workers running on behalf of which other client sessions. It is better to use the pg_blocking_pids() function (see Table 9.65) to identify which process(es) a waiting process is blocked behind.

The pg_locks view displays data from both the regular lock manager and the predicate lock manager, which are separate systems; in addition, the regular lock manager subdivides its locks into regular and fast-path locks. This data is not guaranteed to be entirely consistent. When the view is queried, data on fast-path locks (with fastpath = true) is gathered from each backend one at a time, without freezing the state of the entire lock manager, so it is possible for locks to be taken or released while information is gathered. Note, however, that these locks are known not to conflict with any other lock currently in place. After all backends have been queried for fast-path locks, the remainder of the regular lock manager is locked as a unit, and a consistent snapshot of all remaining locks is collected as an atomic action. After unlocking the regular lock manager, the predicate lock manager is similarly locked and all predicate locks are collected as an atomic action. Thus, with the exception of fast-path locks, each lock manager will deliver a consistent set of results, but as we do not lock both lock managers simultaneously, it is possible for locks to be taken or released after we interrogate the regular lock manager and before we interrogate the predicate lock manager.

Locking the regular and/or predicate lock manager could have some impact on database performance if this view is very frequently accessed. The locks are held only for the minimum amount of time necessary to obtain data from the lock managers, but this does not completely eliminate the possibility of a performance impact.

50.77. pg_matviews

The view pg_matviews provides access to useful information about each materialized view in the database.

Table 50.78. pg_matviews Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname name (references pg_namespace .nspname)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>matviewname name (references pg_class .relname)</td>
<td>Name of schema containing materialized view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matviewowner name (references pg_authid .rolname)</td>
<td>Name of materialized view's owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablespace name (references pg_tablespace .spcname)</td>
<td>Name of tablespace containing materialized view (null if default for database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasindexes bool</td>
<td>True if materialized view has (or recently had) any indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ispopulated bool</td>
<td>True if materialized view is currently populated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definition text</td>
<td>Materialized view definition (a reconstructed SELECT query)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.78. pg_policies

The view `pg_policies` provides access to useful information about each row-level security policy in the database.

#### Table 50.79. pg_policies Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname name (references pg_namespace .nspname)</td>
<td>Name of schema containing table policy is on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablename name (references pg_class .relname)</td>
<td>Name of table policy is on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policyname name (references pg_policy .polname)</td>
<td>Name of policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permissive text</td>
<td>Is the policy permissive or restrictive?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roles name[]</td>
<td>The roles to which this policy applies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmd text</td>
<td>The command type to which the policy is applied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qual text</td>
<td>The expression added to the security barrier qualifications for queries that this policy applies to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with_check text</td>
<td>The expression added to the WITH CHECK qualifications for queries that attempt to add rows to this table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.79. pg_prepared_statements

The `pg_prepared_statements` view displays all the prepared statements that are available in the current session. See `PREPARE` for more information about prepared statements.

`pg_prepared_statements` contains one row for each prepared statement. Rows are added to the view when a new prepared statement is created and removed when a prepared statement is released (for example, via the `DEALLOCATE` command).
### Table 50.80. pg_prepared_statements Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The identifier of the prepared statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement</td>
<td>The query string submitted by the client to create this prepared statement. For prepared statements created via SQL, this is the <code>PREPARE</code> statement submitted by the client. For prepared statements created via the frontend/backend protocol, this is the text of the prepared statement itself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prepare_time</td>
<td>The time at which the prepared statement was created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parameter_types</td>
<td>The expected parameter types for the prepared statement in the form of an array of <code>regtype</code>. The OID corresponding to an element of this array can be obtained by casting the <code>regtype</code> value to <code>oid</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from_sql</td>
<td><code>true</code> if the prepared statement was created via the <code>PREPARE</code> SQL command; <code>false</code> if the statement was prepared via the frontend/backend protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generic_plans</td>
<td>Number of times generic plan was chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custom_plans</td>
<td>Number of times custom plan was chosen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `pg_prepared_statements` view is read-only.

### 50.80. pg_prepared_xacts

The view `pg_prepared_xacts` displays information about transactions that are currently prepared for two-phase commit (see `PREPARE TRANSACTION` for details).

`pg_prepared_xacts` contains one row per prepared transaction. An entry is removed when the transaction is committed or rolled back.

### Table 50.81. pg_prepared_xacts Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>transaction</td>
<td>Numeric transaction identifier of the prepared transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gid</td>
<td>Global transaction identifier that was assigned to the transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prepared</td>
<td>Time at which the transaction was prepared for commit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>owner</td>
<td>Name of the user that executed the transaction (references <code>pg_authid</code>.<code>rolname</code>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database</td>
<td>Name of the database in which the transaction was executed (references <code>pg_database</code>.<code>datname</code>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the `pg_prepared_xacts` view is accessed, the internal transaction manager data structures are momentarily locked, and a copy is made for the view to display. This ensures that the view produces a consistent set of results, while not blocking normal operations longer than necessary. Nonetheless there could be some impact on database performance if this view is frequently accessed.
50.81. pg_publication_tables

The view pg_publication_tables provides information about the mapping between publications and the tables they contain. Unlike the underlying catalog pg_publication_rel, this view expands publications defined as FOR ALL TABLES, so for such publications there will be a row for each eligible table.

Table 50.82. pg_publication_tables Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pubname</td>
<td>Name of publication (references pg_publication .pubname)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schemaname</td>
<td>Name of schema containing table (references pg_namespace .nspname)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablename</td>
<td>Name of table (references pg_class .relname)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.82. pg_replication_origin_status

The pg_replication_origin_status view contains information about how far replay for a certain origin has progressed. For more on replication origins see Chapter 48.

Table 50.83. pg_replication_origin_status Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>local_id</td>
<td>internal node identifier (references pg_replication_origin .roident)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external_id</td>
<td>external node identifier (references pg_replication_origin .roname)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remote_lsn</td>
<td>The origin node’s LSN up to which data has been replicated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_lsn</td>
<td>This node’s LSN at which remote_lsn has been replicated. Used to flush commit records before persisting data to disk when using asynchronous commits.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50.83. pg_replication_slots

The pg_replication_slots view provides a listing of all replication slots that currently exist on the database cluster, along with their current state.

For more on replication slots, see Section 25.2.6 and Chapter 47.

Table 50.84. pg_replication_slots Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>slot_name</td>
<td>A unique, cluster-wide identifier for the replication slot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plugin</td>
<td>The base name of the shared object containing the output plugin this logical slot is using, or null for physical slots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slot_type</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datoid oid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database name</td>
<td>datname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temporary boolean</td>
<td>boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>active boolean</td>
<td>boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>active_pid</td>
<td>int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmin xid</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catalog_xmin xid</td>
<td>xid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restart_lsn pg_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confirmed_flush_lsn pg_lsn</td>
<td>pg_lsn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_status text</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe_wal_size int8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two_phase boolean</td>
<td>boolean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**50.84. pg_roles**
The view `pg_roles` provides access to information about database roles. This is simply a publicly readable view of `pg_authid` that blanks out the password field.

### Table 50.85. `pg_roles` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rolname</td>
<td>Role name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolsuper</td>
<td>Role has superuser privileges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolinherit</td>
<td>Role automatically inherits privileges of roles it is a member of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolcreaterole</td>
<td>Role can create more roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolcreatedb</td>
<td>Role can create databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolcatalog</td>
<td>Role can log in. That is, this role can be given as the initial session authorization identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolreplication</td>
<td>Role is a replication role. A replication role can initiate replication connections and create and drop replication slots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolconnlimit</td>
<td>For roles that can log in, this sets maximum number of concurrent connections this role can make. -1 means no limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolprofile</td>
<td>The OID of the role's profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolloginattempts</td>
<td>Number of consecutive failed login attempts of a user. It is always 0 if FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS value of the corresponding role profile is UNLIMITED. After a successful login, rolloginattempts is reset to 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolstatus</td>
<td>Status of the role: 0 for the active role, 1 the role is manually locked (see ACCOUNT LOCK in ALTER ROLE), 2 the role is locked because of inactivity (see parameter USER_INACTIVE_TIME in CREATE PROFILE), 4 the role is locked because the number of consecutive authentication failures has reached the limit (see parameter FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS in CREATE PROFILE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rollastlogin</td>
<td>The timestamp the role logged in last time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolfirstfailedauth</td>
<td>The timestamp of the role's first authentication failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolpassword</td>
<td>Not the password (always reads as *********)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolvaliduntil</td>
<td>Password expiry time (only used for password authentication); null if no expiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolpasssetat</td>
<td>Password set time (only used for password authentication); null if password is not set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolbypassrls</td>
<td>Role bypasses every row-level security policy, see Section 5.8 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolconfig</td>
<td>Role-specific defaults for run-time configuration variables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**System Catalogs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oid</td>
<td>oid (references pg_authid .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ID of role</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.85. pg_rules

The view `pg_rules` provides access to useful information about query rewrite rules.

**Table 50.86. pg_rules Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname</td>
<td>name (references pg_namespace .nspname) Name of schema containing table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablname</td>
<td>name (references pg_class .relname) Name of table the rule is for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rulename</td>
<td>name (references pg_rewrite .rulename) Name of rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definition</td>
<td>text Rule definition (a reconstructed creation command)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `pg_rules` view excludes the ON SELECT rules of views and materialized views; those can be seen in `pg_views` and `pg_matviews`.

### 50.86. pg_seclabels

The view `pg_seclabels` provides information about security labels. It is an easier-to-query version of the `pg_seclabel` catalog.

**Table 50.87. pg_seclabels Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>objoid</td>
<td>oid (references any OID column) The OID of the object this security label pertains to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classoid</td>
<td>oid (references pg_class .oid) The OID of the system catalog this object appears in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objsubid</td>
<td>int4 For a security label on a table column, this is the column number (the objoid and classoid refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objtype</td>
<td>text The type of object to which this label applies, as text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objnamespace</td>
<td>oid (references pg_namespace .oid) The OID of the namespace for this object, if applicable; otherwise NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objname</td>
<td>text The name of the object to which this label applies, as text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provider</td>
<td>text (references pg_seclabel .provider) The label provider associated with this label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>label</td>
<td>text (references pg_seclabel .label) The security label applied to this object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 50.87. pg_sequences

The view `pg_sequences` provides access to useful information about each sequence in the database.

**Table 50.88. pg_sequences Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname name (references pg_namespace .nspname)</td>
<td>Name of schema containing sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequencename name (references pg_class .relname)</td>
<td>Name of sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequenceowner name (references pg_authid .rolname)</td>
<td>Name of sequence's owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data_type regtype (references pg_type .oid)</td>
<td>Data type of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start_value int8</td>
<td>Start value of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min_value int8</td>
<td>Minimum value of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_value int8</td>
<td>Maximum value of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increment_by int8</td>
<td>Increment value of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cycle bool</td>
<td>Whether the sequence cycles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cache_size int8</td>
<td>Cache size of the sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last_value int8</td>
<td>The last sequence value written to disk. If caching is used, this value can be greater than the last value handed out from the sequence. Null if the sequence has not been read from yet. Also, if the current user does not have USAGE or SELECT privilege on the sequence, the value is null.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.88. pg_settings

The view `pg_settings` provides access to run-time parameters of the server. It is essentially an alternative interface to the `SHOW` and `SET` commands. It also provides access to some facts about each parameter that are not directly available from `SHOW`, such as minimum and maximum values.

**Table 50.89. pg_settings Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name text</td>
<td>Run-time configuration parameter name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setting text</td>
<td>Current value of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unit text</td>
<td>Implicit unit of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>category text</td>
<td>Logical group of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short_desc</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extra_desc</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vartype</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>source</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min_val</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_val</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enumvals</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boot_val</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reset_val</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourcefile</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourceline</td>
<td>int4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pending_restart</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short_desc</td>
<td>A brief description of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extra_desc</td>
<td>Additional, more detailed, description of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context</td>
<td>Context required to set the parameter's value (see below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vartype</td>
<td>Parameter type (bool, enum, integer, real, or string)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>source</td>
<td>Source of the current parameter value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min_val</td>
<td>Minimum allowed value of the parameter (null for non-numeric values)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_val</td>
<td>Maximum allowed value of the parameter (null for non-numeric values)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enumvals</td>
<td>Allowed values of an enum parameter (null for non-enum values)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boot_val</td>
<td>Parameter value assumed at server startup if the parameter is not otherwise set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reset_val</td>
<td>Value that \texttt{RESET} would reset the parameter to in the current session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourcefile</td>
<td>Configuration file the current value was set in (null for values set from sources other than configuration files, or when examined by a user who is neither a superuser or a member of pg_read_all_settings); helpful when using include directives in configuration files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourceline</td>
<td>Line number within the configuration file the current value was set at (null for values set from sources other than configuration files, or when examined by a user who is neither a superuser or a member of pg_read_all_settings).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pending_restart</td>
<td>true if the value has been changed in the configuration file but needs a restart; or false otherwise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are several possible values of context. In order of decreasing difficulty of changing the setting, they are:

\textbf{internal}

These settings cannot be changed directly; they reflect internally determined values. Some of them may be adjustable by rebuilding the server with different configuration options, or by changing options supplied to initdb.

\textbf{postmaster}

These settings can only be applied when the server starts, so any change requires restarting the server. Values for these settings are typically stored in the \texttt{postgresql.conf} file, or passed on the command line when starting the server. Of course, settings with any of the lower context types can also be set at server start time.

\textbf{sighup}

Changes to these settings can be made in \texttt{postgresql.conf} without restarting the server. Send a SIGHUP signal to the postmaster to cause it to re-read \texttt{postgresql.conf} and apply the changes.
The postmaster will also forward the SIGHUP signal to its child processes so that they all pick up the new value.

**superuser-backend**

Changes to these settings can be made in `postgresql.conf` without restarting the server. They can also be set for a particular session in the connection request packet (for example, via libpq’s `PGOPTIONS` environment variable), but only if the connecting user is a superuser. However, these settings never change in a session after it is started. If you change them in `postgresql.conf`, send a SIGHUP signal to the postmaster to cause it to re-read `postgresql.conf`. The new values will only affect subsequently-launched sessions.

**backend**

Changes to these settings can be made in `postgresql.conf` without restarting the server. They can also be set for a particular session in the connection request packet (for example, via libpq’s `PGOPTIONS` environment variable); any user can make such a change for their session. However, these settings never change in a session after it is started. If you change them in `postgresql.conf`, send a SIGHUP signal to the postmaster to cause it to re-read `postgresql.conf`. The new values will only affect subsequently-launched sessions.

**superuser**

These settings can be set from `postgresql.conf`, or within a session via the `SET` command; but only superusers can change them via `SET`. Changes in `postgresql.conf` will affect existing sessions only if no session-local value has been established with `SET`.

**user**

These settings can be set from `postgresql.conf`, or within a session via the `SET` command. Any user is allowed to change their session-local value. Changes in `postgresql.conf` will affect existing sessions only if no session-local value has been established with `SET`.

See Section 18.1 for more information about the various ways to change these parameters.

This view does not display customized options until the extension module that defines them has been loaded.

This view cannot be inserted into or deleted from, but it can be updated. An `UPDATE` applied to a row of `pg_settings` is equivalent to executing the `SET` command on that named parameter. The change only affects the value used by the current session. If an `UPDATE` is issued within a transaction that is later aborted, the effects of the `UPDATE` command disappear when the transaction is rolled back. Once the surrounding transaction is committed, the effects will persist until the end of the session, unless overridden by another `UPDATE` or `SET`.

### 50.89. pg_shadow

The view `pg_shadow` exists for backwards compatibility: it emulates a catalog that existed in PostgreSQL before version 8.1. It shows properties of all roles that are marked as `rolcanlogin` in `pg_authid`.

The name stems from the fact that this table should not be readable by the public since it contains passwords. `pg_user` is a publicly readable view on `pg_shadow` that blanks out the password field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 50.90. pg_shadow Columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>username</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User name</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1963
### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ID of this user</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User can create databases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User is a superuser</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User can initiate streaming replication and put the system in and out of backup mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User bypasses every row-level security policy, see Section 5.8 for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Password (possibly encrypted); null if none. See pg_authid for details of how encrypted passwords are stored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Password expiry time (only used for password authentication)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Session defaults for run-time configuration variables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.90. pg_shmem_allocations

The pg_shmem_allocations view shows allocations made from the server’s main shared memory segment. This includes both memory allocated by postgres itself and memory allocated by extensions using the mechanisms detailed in Section 36.10.10.

Note that this view does not include memory allocated using the dynamic shared memory infrastructure.

#### Table 50.91. pg_shmem_allocations Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The name of the shared memory allocation. NULL for unused memory and &lt;anonymous&gt; for anonymous allocations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The offset at which the allocation starts. NULL for anonymous allocations, since details related to them are not known.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size of the allocation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size of the allocation including padding. For anonymous allocations, no information about padding is available, so the size and allocated_size columns will always be equal. Padding is not meaningful for free memory, so the columns will be equal in that case also.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Anonymous allocations are allocations that have been made with ShmemAlloc() directly, rather than via ShmemInitStruct() or ShmemInitHash().

By default, the pg_shmem_allocations view can be read only by superusers.

### 50.91. pg_stats
The view `pg_stats` provides access to the information stored in the `pg_statistic` catalog. This view allows access only to rows of `pg_statistic` that correspond to tables the user has permission to read, and therefore it is safe to allow public read access to this view.

`pg_stats` is also designed to present the information in a more readable format than the underlying catalog — at the cost that its schema must be extended whenever new slot types are defined for `pg_statistic`.

### Table 50.92. `pg_stats` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname name</td>
<td>Name of schema containing table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablename name</td>
<td>Name of table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attname name</td>
<td>Name of column described by this row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherited bool</td>
<td>If true, this row includes inheritance child columns, not just the values in the specified table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>null_frac float4</td>
<td>Fraction of column entries that are null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avg_width int4</td>
<td>Average width in bytes of column's entries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n_distinct float4</td>
<td>If greater than zero, the estimated number of distinct values in the column. If less than zero, the negative of the number of distinct values divided by the number of rows. (The negated form is used when <code>ANALYZE</code> believes that the number of distinct values is likely to increase as the table grows; the positive form is used when the column seems to have a fixed number of possible values.) For example, -1 indicates a unique column in which the number of distinct values is the same as the number of rows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most_common_vals anyarray</td>
<td>A list of the most common values in the column. (Null if no values seem to be more common than any others.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most_common_freqs float4[]</td>
<td>A list of the frequencies of the most common values, i.e., number of occurrences of each divided by total number of rows. (Null when <code>most_common_vals</code> is.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>histogram_bounds anyarray</td>
<td>A list of values that divide the column's values into groups of approximately equal population. The values in <code>most_common_vals</code>, if present, are omitted from this histogram calculation. (This column is null if the column data type does not have a <code>&lt;</code> operator or if the <code>most_common_vals</code> list accounts for the entire population.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correlation float4</td>
<td>Statistical correlation between physical row ordering and logical ordering of the column values. This ranges from -1 to +1. When the value is near -1 or +1, an index scan on the column will be estimated to be cheaper than when it is near zero, due to reduction of random access to the disk. (This column is null if the column data type does not have a <code>&lt;</code> operator.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most_commonelems anyarray</td>
<td>A list of non-null element values most often appearing within values of the column. (Null for scalar types.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most_commonelem_freqs float4[]</td>
<td>A list of the frequencies of the most common element values, i.e., the fraction of rows containing at least one instance of the given value. Two or three additional values follow the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**System Catalogs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>per-element frequencies; these are the minimum</td>
<td>The minimum and maximum of the preceding per-element frequencies, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and maximum of the preceding per-element</td>
<td>optionally the frequency of null elements. (Null when most_common_elems is.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frequencies, and optionally the frequency of null</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elements is.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>elem_count_histogram</strong></td>
<td>A histogram of the counts of distinct non-null element values within the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float4[]</td>
<td>values of the column, followed by the average number of distinct non-null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elements. (Null for scalar types.)</td>
<td>elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The maximum number of entries in the array fields can be controlled on a column-by-column basis using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` command, or globally by setting the `default_statistics_target` run-time parameter.

### 50.92. pg_stats_ext

The view `pg_stats_ext` provides access to information about each extended statistics object in the database, combining information stored in the `pg_statistic_ext` and `pg_statistic_ext_data` catalogs. This view allows access only to rows of `pg_statistic_ext` and `pg_statistic_ext_data` that correspond to tables the user has permission to read, and therefore it is safe to allow public read access to this view.

`pg_stats_ext` is also designed to present the information in a more readable format than the underlying catalogs — at the cost that its schema must be extended whenever new types of extended statistics are added to `pg_statistic_ext`.

#### Table 50.93. pg_stats_ext Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>schemaname</strong> name (references pg_namespace .nspname)</td>
<td>Name of schema containing table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tablename</strong> name (references pg_class .relname)</td>
<td>Name of table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>statistics_schemaname</strong> name (references pg_namespace .nspname)</td>
<td>Name of schema containing extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>statistics_name</strong> name (references pg_statistic_ext .stxname)</td>
<td>Name of extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>statistics_owner</strong> name (references pg_authid .rolname)</td>
<td>Owner of the extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>attnames</strong> name[] (references pg_attribute .attname)</td>
<td>Names of the columns included in the extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>exprs</strong> text[]</td>
<td>Expressions included in the extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>kinds</strong> char[]</td>
<td>Types of extended statistics object enabled for this record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>n_distinct</strong> pg_ndistinct</td>
<td>N-distinct counts for combinations of column values. If greater than zero,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the estimated number of distinct values in the combination. If less than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zero, the negative of the number of distinct values divided by the number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of rows. (The negated form is used when <code>ANALYZE</code> believes that the number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of distinct values is likely to increase as the table grows; the positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>form is used when the column seems to have a fixed number of possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>values.) For example, -1 indicates a unique combination of columns in which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the number of distinct combinations is the same as the number of rows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dependencies</strong> pg_dependencies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1966
### Column Type Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most_common_vals text[]</td>
<td>A list of the most common combinations of values in the columns. (Null if no combinations seem to be more common than any others.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most_common_val_nulls bool[]</td>
<td>A list of NULL flags for the most common combinations of values. (Null when most_common_vals is.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most_common_freqs float8[]</td>
<td>A list of the frequencies of the most common combinations, i.e., number of occurrences of each divided by total number of rows. (Null when most_common_vals is.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most_common_base_freqs float8[]</td>
<td>A list of the base frequencies of the most common combinations, i.e., product of per-value frequencies. (Null when most_common_vals is.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The maximum number of entries in the array fields can be controlled on a column-by-column basis using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` command, or globally by setting the `default_statistics_target` run-time parameter.

#### 50.93. pg_stats_ext_exprs

The view `pg_stats_ext_exprs` provides access to information about all expressions included in extended statistics objects, combining information stored in the `pg_statistic_ext` and `pg_statistic_ext_data` catalogs. This view allows access only to rows of `pg_statistic_ext` and `pg_statistic_ext_data` that correspond to tables the user has permission to read, and therefore it is safe to allow public read access to this view.

`pg_stats_ext_exprs` is also designed to present the information in a more readable format than the underlying catalogs — at the cost that its schema must be extended whenever the structure of statistics in `pg_statistic_ext` changes.

### Table 50.94. pg_stats_ext_exprs Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname name (references pg_namespace .nspname)</td>
<td>Name of schema containing table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablename name (references pg_class .relname)</td>
<td>Name of table the statistics object is defined on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statistics_schemaname name (references pg_namespace .nspname)</td>
<td>Name of schema containing extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statistics_name name (references pg_statistic_ext .stxname)</td>
<td>Name of extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statistics_owner name (references pg_authid .rolname)</td>
<td>Owner of the extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expr text</td>
<td>Expression included in the extended statistics object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>null_frac float4</td>
<td>Fraction of expression entries that are null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avg_width int4</td>
<td>Average width in bytes of expression’s entries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| n_distinct float4 | }
**System Catalogs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>column_type</td>
<td>If greater than zero, the estimated number of distinct values in the expression. If less than zero, the negative of the number of distinct values divided by the number of rows. (The negated form is used when <code>ANALYZE</code> believes that the number of distinct values is likely to increase as the table grows; the positive form is used when the expression seems to have a fixed number of possible values.) For example, -1 indicates a unique expression in which the number of distinct values is the same as the number of rows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| most_common_vals | anyarray  
A list of the most common values in the expression. (Null if no values seem to be more common than any others.)                                                                                           |
| most_common_freqs | float4[]  
A list of the frequencies of the most common values, i.e., number of occurrences of each divided by total number of rows. (Null when `most_common_vals` is.)                                               |
| histogram_bounds | anyarray  
A list of values that divide the expression's values into groups of approximately equal population. The values in `most_common_vals`, if present, are omitted from this histogram calculation. (This expression is null if the expression data type does not have a `<` operator or if the `most_common_vals` list accounts for the entire population.) |
| correlation | float4  
Statistical correlation between physical row ordering and logical ordering of the expression values. This ranges from -1 to +1. When the value is near -1 or +1, an index scan on the expression will be estimated to be cheaper than when it is near zero, due to reduction of random access to the disk. (This expression is null if the expression's data type does not have a `<` operator.) |
| most_common elems | anyarray  
A list of non-null element values most often appearing within values of the expression. (Null for scalar types.)                                                                                         |
| most_common_elem_freqs | float4[]  
A list of the frequencies of the most common element values, i.e., the fraction of rows containing at least one instance of the given value. Two or three additional values follow the per-element frequencies; these are the minimum and maximum of the preceding per-element frequencies, and optionally the frequency of null elements. (Null when `most_common_elems` is.) |
| elem_count_histogram | float4[]  
A histogram of the counts of distinct non-null element values within the values of the expression, followed by the average number of distinct non-null elements. (Null for scalar types.) |

The maximum number of entries in the array fields can be controlled on a column-by-column basis using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` command, or globally by setting the `default_statistics_target` runtime parameter.

**50.94. pg_tables**

The view `pg_tables` provides access to useful information about each table in the database.

**Table 50.95. pg_tables Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schema name</td>
<td>Name of schema containing table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table name</td>
<td>Name of table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tableowner name (references pg_authid .rolname)</td>
<td>Name of table's owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablespace name (references pg_tablespace .spcname)</td>
<td>Name of tablespace containing table (null if default for database)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasindexes bool (references pg_class .relhasindex)</td>
<td>True if table has (or recently had) any indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasrules bool (references pg_class .relhasrules)</td>
<td>True if table has (or once had) rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hastriggers bool (references pg_class .relhastriggers)</td>
<td>True if table has (or once had) triggers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rowsecurity bool (references pg_class .relrowsecurity)</td>
<td>True if row security is enabled on the table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 50.95. pg_timezone_abbrevs

The view `pg_timezone_abbrevs` provides a list of time zone abbreviations that are currently recognized by the datetime input routines. The contents of this view change when the `timezone_abbreviations` runtime parameter is modified.

**Table 50.96. pg_timezone_abbrevs Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abbrev text</td>
<td>Time zone abbreviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utc_offset interval</td>
<td>Offset from UTC (positive means east of Greenwich)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_dst bool</td>
<td>True if this is a daylight-savings abbreviation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While most timezone abbreviations represent fixed offsets from UTC, there are some that have historically varied in value (see Section B.4 for more information). In such cases this view presents their current meaning.

### 50.96. pg_timezone_names

The view `pg_timezone_names` provides a list of time zone names that are recognized by `SET TIMEZONE`, along with their associated abbreviations, UTC offsets, and daylight-savings status. (Technically, Postgres Pro does not use UTC because leap seconds are not handled.) Unlike the abbreviations shown in `pg_timezone_abbrevs`, many of these names imply a set of daylight-savings transition date rules. Therefore, the associated information changes across local DST boundaries. The displayed information is computed based on the current value of `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`.

**Table 50.97. pg_timezone_names Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name text</td>
<td>Time zone name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abbrev text</td>
<td>Time zone abbreviation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
System Catalogs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utc_offset</td>
<td>interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offset from UTC (positive means east of Greenwich)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_dst</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>True if currently observing daylight savings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**50.97. pg_user**

The view `pg_user` provides access to information about database users. This is simply a publicly readable view of `pg_shadow` that blanks out the password field.

**Table 50.98. pg_user Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usename</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usesysid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ID of this user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usecreatedb</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User can create databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usesuper</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User is a superuser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userrepl</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User can initiate streaming replication and put the system in and out of backup mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usebypassrls</td>
<td>bool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User bypasses every row-level security policy, see Section 5.8 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passwd</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not the password (always reads as *********)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valuntil</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Password expiry time (only used for password authentication)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>useconfig</td>
<td>text[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Session defaults for run-time configuration variables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**50.98. pg_user_mappings**

The view `pg_user_mappings` provides access to information about user mappings. This is essentially a publicly readable view of `pg_user_mapping` that leaves out the options field if the user has no rights to use it.

**Table 50.99. pg_user_mappings Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>umid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(references pg_user_mapping .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OID of the user mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvid</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(references pg_foreign_server .oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The OID of the foreign server that contains this mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srvname</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(references pg_foreign_server .srvname)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the foreign server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umuser</td>
<td>oid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(references pg_authid .oid)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Catalogs

#### Column Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OID of the local role being mapped, or zero if the user mapping is public</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usename</td>
<td>Name of the local user to be mapped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umoptions</td>
<td>User mapping specific options, as “keyword=value” strings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To protect password information stored as a user mapping option, the `umoptions` column will read as null unless one of the following applies:

- current user is the user being mapped, and owns the server or holds `USAGE` privilege on it
- current user is the server owner and mapping is for `PUBLIC`
- current user is a superuser

#### 50.99. pg_views

The view `pg_views` provides access to useful information about each view in the database.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>schemaname</td>
<td>Name of schema containing view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viewname</td>
<td>Name of view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viewowner</td>
<td>Name of view's owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definition</td>
<td>View definition (a reconstructed <code>SELECT</code> query)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 51. Frontend/Backend Protocol

Postgres Pro uses a message-based protocol for communication between frontends and backends (clients and servers). The protocol is supported over TCP/IP and also over Unix-domain sockets. Port number 5432 has been registered with IANA as the customary TCP port number for servers supporting this protocol, but in practice any non-privileged port number can be used.

This document describes version 3.0 of the protocol, implemented in PostgreSQL 7.4 and later. For descriptions of the earlier protocol versions, see previous releases of the PostgreSQL documentation. A single server can support multiple protocol versions. The initial startup-request message tells the server which protocol version the client is attempting to use. If the major version requested by the client is not supported by the server, the connection will be rejected (for example, this would occur if the client requested protocol version 4.0, which does not exist as of this writing). If the minor version requested by the client is not supported by the server (e.g., the client requests version 3.1, but the server supports only 3.0), the server may either reject the connection or may respond with a NegotiateProtocolVersion message containing the highest minor protocol version which it supports. The client may then choose either to continue with the connection using the specified protocol version or to abort the connection.

In order to serve multiple clients efficiently, the server launches a new “backend” process for each client. In the current implementation, a new child process is created immediately after an incoming connection is detected. This is transparent to the protocol, however. For purposes of the protocol, the terms “backend” and “server” are interchangeable; likewise “frontend” and “client” are interchangeable.

51.1. Overview

The protocol has separate phases for startup and normal operation. In the startup phase, the frontend opens a connection to the server and authenticates itself to the satisfaction of the server. (This might involve a single message, or multiple messages depending on the authentication method being used.) If all goes well, the server then sends status information to the frontend, and finally enters normal operation. Except for the initial startup-request message, this part of the protocol is driven by the server.

During normal operation, the frontend sends queries and other commands to the backend, and the backend sends back query results and other responses. There are a few cases (such as NOTIFY) wherein the backend will send unsolicited messages, but for the most part this portion of a session is driven by frontend requests.

Termination of the session is normally by frontend choice, but can be forced by the backend in certain cases. In any case, when the backend closes the connection, it will roll back any open (incomplete) transaction before exiting.

Within normal operation, SQL commands can be executed through either of two sub-protocols. In the “simple query” protocol, the frontend just sends a textual query string, which is parsed and immediately executed by the backend. In the “extended query” protocol, processing of queries is separated into multiple steps: parsing, binding of parameter values, and execution. This offers flexibility and performance benefits, at the cost of extra complexity.

Normal operation has additional sub-protocols for special operations such as COPY.

51.1.1. Messaging Overview

All communication is through a stream of messages. The first byte of a message identifies the message type, and the next four bytes specify the length of the rest of the message (this length count includes itself, but not the message-type byte). The remaining contents of the message are determined by the message type. For historical reasons, the very first message sent by the client (the startup message) has no initial message-type byte.

To avoid losing synchronization with the message stream, both servers and clients typically read an entire message into a buffer (using the byte count) before attempting to process its contents. This allows
easy recovery if an error is detected while processing the contents. In extreme situations (such as not having enough memory to buffer the message), the receiver can use the byte count to determine how much input to skip before it resumes reading messages.

Conversely, both servers and clients must take care never to send an incomplete message. This is commonly done by marshaling the entire message in a buffer before beginning to send it. If a communications failure occurs partway through sending or receiving a message, the only sensible response is to abandon the connection, since there is little hope of recovering message-boundary synchronization.

51.1.2. Extended Query Overview

In the extended-query protocol, execution of SQL commands is divided into multiple steps. The state retained between steps is represented by two types of objects: prepared statements and portals. A prepared statement represents the result of parsing and semantic analysis of a textual query string. A prepared statement is not in itself ready to execute, because it might lack specific values for parameters. A portal represents a ready-to-execute or already-partially-executed statement, with any missing parameter values filled in. (For SELECT statements, a portal is equivalent to an open cursor, but we choose to use a different term since cursors don’t handle non-SELECT statements.)

The overall execution cycle consists of a parse step, which creates a prepared statement from a textual query string; a bind step, which creates a portal given a prepared statement and values for any needed parameters; and an execute step that runs a portal’s query. In the case of a query that returns rows (SELECT, SHOW, etc), the execute step can be told to fetch only a limited number of rows, so that multiple execute steps might be needed to complete the operation.

The backend can keep track of multiple prepared statements and portals (but note that these exist only within a session, and are never shared across sessions). Existing prepared statements and portals are referenced by names assigned when they were created. In addition, an “unnamed” prepared statement and portal exist. Although these behave largely the same as named objects, operations on them are optimized for the case of executing a query only once and then discarding it, whereas operations on named objects are optimized on the expectation of multiple uses.

51.1.3. Formats and Format Codes

Data of a particular data type might be transmitted in any of several different formats. As of PostgreSQL 7.4 the only supported formats are “text” and “binary”, but the protocol makes provision for future extensions. The desired format for any value is specified by a format code. Clients can specify a format code for each transmitted parameter value and for each column of a query result. Text has format code zero, binary has format code one, and all other format codes are reserved for future definition.

The text representation of values is whatever strings are produced and accepted by the input/output conversion functions for the particular data type. In the transmitted representation, there is no trailing null character; the frontend must add one to received values if it wants to process them as C strings. (The text format does not allow embedded nulls, by the way.)

Binary representations for integers use network byte order (most significant byte first). For other data types consult the documentation or source code to learn about the binary representation. Keep in mind that binary representations for complex data types might change across server versions; the text format is usually the more portable choice.

51.2. Message Flow

This section describes the message flow and the semantics of each message type. (Details of the exact representation of each message appear in Section 51.7.) There are several different sub-protocols depending on the state of the connection: start-up, query, function call, COPY, and termination. There are also special provisions for asynchronous operations (including notification responses and command cancellation), which can occur at any time after the start-up phase.
51.2.1. Start-up

To begin a session, a frontend opens a connection to the server and sends a startup message. This message includes the names of the user and of the database the user wants to connect to; it also identifies the particular protocol version to be used. (Optionally, the startup message can include additional settings for run-time parameters.) The server then uses this information and the contents of its configuration files (such as `pg_hba.conf`) to determine whether the connection is provisionally acceptable, and what additional authentication is required (if any).

The server then sends an appropriate authentication request message, to which the frontend must reply with an appropriate authentication response message (such as a password). For all authentication methods except GSSAPI, SSPI and SASL, there is at most one request and one response. In some methods, no response at all is needed from the frontend, and so no authentication request occurs. For GSSAPI, SSPI and SASL, multiple exchanges of packets may be needed to complete the authentication.

The authentication cycle ends with the server either rejecting the connection attempt (ErrorResponse), or sending AuthenticationOk.

The possible messages from the server in this phase are:

- **ErrorResponse**
  - The connection attempt has been rejected. The server then immediately closes the connection.

- **AuthenticationOk**
  - The authentication exchange is successfully completed.

- **AuthenticationKerberosV5**
  - The frontend must now take part in a Kerberos V5 authentication dialog (not described here, part of the Kerberos specification) with the server. If this is successful, the server responds with an AuthenticationOk, otherwise it responds with an ErrorResponse. This is no longer supported.

- **AuthenticationCleartextPassword**
  - The frontend must now send a PasswordMessage containing the password in clear-text form. If this is the correct password, the server responds with an AuthenticationOk, otherwise it responds with an ErrorResponse.

- **AuthenticationMD5Password**
  - The frontend must now send a PasswordMessage containing the password (with user name) encrypted via MD5, then encrypted again using the 4-byte random salt specified in the AuthenticationMD5Password message. If this is the correct password, the server responds with an AuthenticationOk, otherwise it responds with an ErrorResponse. The actual PasswordMessage can be computed in SQL as `concat('md5', md5(concat(md5(concat(password, username)), random-salt)))`. (Keep in mind the `md5()` function returns its result as a hex string.)

- **AuthenticationSCMCredential**
  - This response is only possible for local Unix-domain connections on platforms that support SCM credential messages. The frontend must issue an SCM credential message and then send a single data byte. (The contents of the data byte are uninteresting; it's only used to ensure that the server waits long enough to receive the credential message.) If the credential is acceptable, the server responds with an AuthenticationOk, otherwise it responds with an ErrorResponse. (This message type is only issued by pre-9.1 servers. It may eventually be removed from the protocol specification.)

- **AuthenticationGSS**
  - The frontend must now initiate a GSSAPI negotiation. The frontend will send a GSSResponse message with the first part of the GSSAPI data stream in response to this. If further messages are needed, the server will respond with AuthenticationGSSContinue.
AuthenticationSSPI

The frontend must now initiate an SSPI negotiation. The frontend will send a GSSResponse with the first part of the SSPI data stream in response to this. If further messages are needed, the server will respond with AuthenticationGSSContinue.

AuthenticationGSSContinue

This message contains the response data from the previous step of GSSAPI or SSPI negotiation (AuthenticationGSS, AuthenticationSSPI or a previous AuthenticationGSSContinue). If the GSSAPI or SSPI data in this message indicates more data is needed to complete the authentication, the frontend must send that data as another GSSResponse message. If GSSAPI or SSPI authentication is completed by this message, the server will next send AuthenticationOk to indicate successful authentication or ErrorResponse to indicate failure.

AuthenticationSASL

The frontend must now initiate a SASL negotiation, using one of the SASL mechanisms listed in the message. The frontend will send a SASLInitialResponse with the name of the selected mechanism, and the first part of the SASL data stream in response to this. If further messages are needed, the server will respond with AuthenticationSASLContinue. See Section 51.3 for details.

AuthenticationSASLContinue

This message contains challenge data from the previous step of SASL negotiation (AuthenticationSASL, or a previous AuthenticationSASLContinue). The frontend must respond with a SASLResponse message.

AuthenticationSASLFinal

SASL authentication has completed with additional mechanism-specific data for the client. The server will next send AuthenticationOk to indicate successful authentication, or an ErrorResponse to indicate failure. This message is sent only if the SASL mechanism specifies additional data to be sent from server to client at completion.

NegotiateProtocolVersion

The server does not support the minor protocol version requested by the client, but does support an earlier version of the protocol; this message indicates the highest supported minor version. This message will also be sent if the client requested unsupported protocol options (i.e., beginning with _pq_.) in the startup packet. This message will be followed by an ErrorResponse or a message indicating the success or failure of authentication.

If the frontend does not support the authentication method requested by the server, then it should immediately close the connection.

After having received AuthenticationOk, the frontend must wait for further messages from the server. In this phase a backend process is being started, and the frontend is just an interested bystander. It is still possible for the startup attempt to fail (ErrorResponse) or the server to decline support for the requested minor protocol version (NegotiateProtocolVersion), but in the normal case the backend will send some ParameterStatus messages, BackendKeyData, and finally ReadyForQuery.

During this phase the backend will attempt to apply any additional run-time parameter settings that were given in the startup message. If successful, these values become session defaults. An error causes ErrorResponse and exit.

The possible messages from the backend in this phase are:

BackendKeyData

This message provides secret-key data that the frontend must save if it wants to be able to issue cancel requests later. The frontend should not respond to this message, but should continue listening for a ReadyForQuery message.
ParameterStatus

This message informs the frontend about the current (initial) setting of backend parameters, such as client_encoding or DateStyle. The frontend can ignore this message, or record the settings for its future use; see Section 51.2.6 for more details. The frontend should not respond to this message, but should continue listening for a ReadyForQuery message.

ReadyForQuery

Start-up is completed. The frontend can now issue commands.

ErrorResponse

Start-up failed. The connection is closed after sending this message.

NoticeResponse

A warning message has been issued. The frontend should display the message but continue listening for ReadyForQuery or ErrorResponse.

The ReadyForQuery message is the same one that the backend will issue after each command cycle. Depending on the coding needs of the frontend, it is reasonable to consider ReadyForQuery as starting a command cycle, or to consider ReadyForQuery as ending the start-up phase and each subsequent command cycle.

51.2.2. Simple Query

A simple query cycle is initiated by the frontend sending a Query message to the backend. The message includes an SQL command (or commands) expressed as a text string. The backend then sends one or more response messages depending on the contents of the query command string, and finally a ReadyForQuery response message. ReadyForQuery informs the frontend that it can safely send a new command. (It is not actually necessary for the frontend to wait for ReadyForQuery before issuing another command, but the frontend must then take responsibility for figuring out what happens if the earlier command fails and already-issued later commands succeed.)

The possible response messages from the backend are:

CommandComplete

An SQL command completed normally.

CopyInResponse

The backend is ready to copy data from the frontend to a table; see Section 51.2.5.

CopyOutResponse

The backend is ready to copy data from a table to the frontend; see Section 51.2.5.

RowDescription

Indicates that rows are about to be returned in response to a SELECT, FETCH, etc query. The contents of this message describe the column layout of the rows. This will be followed by a DataRow message for each row being returned to the frontend.

DataRow

One of the set of rows returned by a SELECT, FETCH, etc query.

EmptyQueryResponse

An empty query string was recognized.

ErrorResponse

An error has occurred.
ReadyForQuery

Processing of the query string is complete. A separate message is sent to indicate this because the query string might contain multiple SQL commands. (CommandComplete marks the end of processing one SQL command, not the whole string.) ReadyForQuery will always be sent, whether processing terminates successfully or with an error.

NoticeResponse

A warning message has been issued in relation to the query. Notices are in addition to other responses, i.e., the backend will continue processing the command.

The response to a SELECT query (or other queries that return row sets, such as EXPLAIN or SHOW) normally consists of RowDescription, zero or more DataRow messages, and then CommandComplete. COPY to or from the frontend invokes special protocol as described in Section 51.2.5. All other query types normally produce only a CommandComplete message.

Since a query string could contain several queries (separated by semicolons), there might be several such response sequences before the backend finishes processing the query string. ReadyForQuery is issued when the entire string has been processed and the backend is ready to accept a new query string.

If a completely empty (no contents other than whitespace) query string is received, the response is EmptyQueryResponse followed by ReadyForQuery.

In the event of an error, ErrorResponse is issued followed by ReadyForQuery. All further processing of the query string is aborted by ErrorResponse (even if more queries remained in it). Note that this might occur partway through the sequence of messages generated by an individual query.

In simple Query mode, the format of retrieved values is always text, except when the given command is a FETCH from a cursor declared with the BINARY option. In that case, the retrieved values are in binary format. The format codes given in the RowDescription message tell which format is being used.

A frontend must be prepared to accept ErrorResponse and NoticeResponse messages whenever it is expecting any other type of message. See also Section 51.2.6 concerning messages that the backend might generate due to outside events.

Recommended practice is to code frontends in a state-machine style that will accept any message type at any time that it could make sense, rather than wiring in assumptions about the exact sequence of messages.

51.2.2.1. Multiple Statements in a Simple Query

When a simple Query message contains more than one SQL statement (separated by semicolons), those statements are executed as a single transaction, unless explicit transaction control commands are included to force a different behavior. For example, if the message contains

```
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(1);
SELECT 1/0;
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(2);
```

then the divide-by-zero failure in the SELECT will force rollback of the first INSERT. Furthermore, because execution of the message is abandoned at the first error, the second INSERT is never attempted at all.

If instead the message contains

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(1);
COMMIT;
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(2);
SELECT 1/0;
```

then the first INSERT is committed by the explicit COMMIT command. The second INSERT and the SELECT are still treated as a single transaction, so that the divide-by-zero failure will roll back the second INSERT, but not the first one.
This behavior is implemented by running the statements in a multi-statement Query message in an 
*implicit transaction block* unless there is some explicit transaction block for them to run in. The main 
difference between an implicit transaction block and a regular one is that an implicit block is closed 
automatically at the end of the Query message, either by an implicit commit if there was no error, or an 
implicit rollback if there was an error. This is similar to the implicit commit or rollback that happens for 
a statement executed by itself (when not in a transaction block).

If the session is already in a transaction block, as a result of a `BEGIN` in some previous message, then the 
Query message simply continues that transaction block, whether the message contains one statement or 
several. However, if the Query message contains a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` closing the existing transaction 
block, then any following statements are executed in an implicit transaction block. Conversely, if a `BEGIN` 
appears in a multi-statement Query message, then it starts a regular transaction block that will only be 
terminated by an explicit `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`, whether that appears in this Query message or a later 
one. If the `BEGIN` follows some statements that were executed as an implicit transaction block, those 
statements are not immediately committed; in effect, they are retroactively included into the new regular 
transaction block.

A `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` appearing in an implicit transaction block is executed as normal, closing the 
imPLICIT block; however, a warning will be issued since a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` without a previous `BEGIN` 
might represent a mistake. If more statements follow, a new implicit transaction block will be started 
for them.

Savepoints are not allowed in an implicit transaction block, since they would conflict with the behavior 
of automatically closing the block upon any error.

Remember that, regardless of any transaction control commands that may be present, execution of the 
Query message stops at the first error. Thus for example given:

```
BEGIN;
SELECT 1/0;
ROLLBACK;
```

in a single Query message, the session will be left inside a failed regular transaction block, since the 
`ROLLBACK` is not reached after the divide-by-zero error. Another `ROLLBACK` will be needed to restore the 
session to a usable state.

Another behavior of note is that initial lexical and syntactic analysis is done on the entire query string 
before any of it is executed. Thus simple errors (such as a misspelled keyword) in later statements 
can prevent execution of any of the statements. This is normally invisible to users since the statements 
would all roll back anyway when done as an implicit transaction block. However, it can be visible when 
attempting to do multiple transactions within a multi-statement Query. For instance, if a typo turned 
our previous example into:

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(1);
COMMIT;
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(2);
SELECT 1/0;
```

then none of the statements would get run, resulting in the visible difference that the first `INSERT` is not 
committed. Errors detected at semantic analysis or later, such as a misspelled table or column name, 
do not have this effect.

### 51.2.3. Extended Query

The extended query protocol breaks down the above-described simple query protocol into multiple steps. 
The results of preparatory steps can be re-used multiple times for improved efficiency. Furthermore, 
additional features are available, such as the possibility of supplying data values as separate parameters 
instead of having to insert them directly into a query string.

In the extended protocol, the frontend first sends a Parse message, which contains a textual query string, 
optionally some information about data types of parameter placeholders, and the name of a destination
prepared-statement object (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement). The response is either ParseComplete or ErrorResponse. Parameter data types can be specified by OID; if not given, the parser attempts to infer the data types in the same way as it would do for untyped literal string constants.

Note
A parameter data type can be left unspecified by setting it to zero, or by making the array of parameter type OIDs shorter than the number of parameter symbols ($n$) used in the query string. Another special case is that a parameter's type can be specified as void (that is, the OID of the void pseudo-type). This is meant to allow parameter symbols to be used for function parameters that are actually OUT parameters. Ordinarily there is no context in which a void parameter could be used, but if such a parameter symbol appears in a function's parameter list, it is effectively ignored. For example, a function call such as $\text{foo}($$1,$$2,$$3,$$4)$ could match a function with two IN and two OUT arguments, if $$3$ and $$4$ are specified as having type void.

Note
The query string contained in a Parse message cannot include more than one SQL statement; else a syntax error is reported. This restriction does not exist in the simple-query protocol, but it does exist in the extended protocol, because allowing prepared statements or portals to contain multiple commands would complicate the protocol unduly.

If successfully created, a named prepared-statement object lasts till the end of the current session, unless explicitly destroyed. An unnamed prepared statement lasts only until the next Parse statement specifying the unnamed statement as destination is issued. (Note that a simple Query message also destroys the unnamed statement.) Named prepared statements must be explicitly closed before they can be redefined by another Parse message, but this is not required for the unnamed statement. Named prepared statements can also be created and accessed at the SQL command level, using PREPARE and EXECUTE.

Once a prepared statement exists, it can be readied for execution using a Bind message. The Bind message gives the name of the source prepared statement (empty string denotes the unnamed prepared statement), the name of the destination portal (empty string denotes the unnamed portal), and the values to use for any parameter placeholders present in the prepared statement. The supplied parameter set must match those needed by the prepared statement. (If you declared any void parameters in the Parse message, pass NULL values for them in the Bind message.) Bind also specifies the format to use for any data returned by the query; the format can be specified overall, or per-column. The response is either BindComplete or ErrorResponse.

Note
The choice between text and binary output is determined by the format codes given in Bind, regardless of the SQL command involved. The BINARY attribute in cursor declarations is irrelevant when using extended query protocol.

Query planning typically occurs when the Bind message is processed. If the prepared statement has no parameters, or is executed repeatedly, the server might save the created plan and re-use it during subsequent Bind messages for the same prepared statement. However, it will do so only if it finds that a generic plan can be created that is not much less efficient than a plan that depends on the specific parameter values supplied. This happens transparently so far as the protocol is concerned.

If successfully created, a named portal object lasts till the end of the current transaction, unless explicitly destroyed. An unnamed portal is destroyed at the end of the transaction, or as soon as the next Bind statement specifying the unnamed portal as destination is issued. (Note that a simple Query message also destroys the unnamed portal.) Named portals must be explicitly closed before they can be redefined.
by another Bind message, but this is not required for the unnamed portal. Named portals can also be
created and accessed at the SQL command level, using DECLARE CURSOR and FETCH.

Once a portal exists, it can be executed using an Execute message. The Execute message specifies the
portal name (empty string denotes the unnamed portal) and a maximum result-row count (zero meaning
“fetch all rows”). The result-row count is only meaningful for portals containing commands that return
row sets; in other cases the command is always executed to completion, and the row count is ignored.
The possible responses to Execute are the same as those described above for queries issued via simple
query protocol, except that Execute doesn’t cause ReadyForQuery or RowDescription to be issued.

If Execute terminates before completing the execution of a portal (due to reaching a nonzero result-
row count), it will send a PortalSuspended message; the appearance of this message tells the frontend
that another Execute should be issued against the same portal to complete the operation. The
CommandComplete message indicating completion of the source SQL command is not sent until the
portal’s execution is completed. Therefore, an Execute phase is always terminated by the appearance
of exactly one of these messages: CommandComplete, EmptyQueryResponse (if the portal was created
from an empty query string), ErrorResponse, or PortalSuspended.

At completion of each series of extended-query messages, the frontend should issue a Sync message.
This parameterless message causes the backend to close the current transaction if it’s not inside a
BEGIN/COMMIT transaction block (“close” meaning to commit if no error, or roll back if error). Then a
ReadyForQuery response is issued. The purpose of Sync is to provide a resynchronization point for error
recovery. When an error is detected while processing any extended-query message, the backend issues
ErrorResponse, then reads and discards messages until a Sync is reached, then issues ReadyForQuery
and returns to normal message processing. (But note that no skipping occurs if an error is detected
while processing Sync — this ensures that there is one and only one ReadyForQuery sent for each Sync.)

Note
Sync does not cause a transaction block opened with BEGIN to be closed. It is possible to detect
this situation since the ReadyForQuery message includes transaction status information.

In addition to these fundamental, required operations, there are several optional operations that can be
used with extended-query protocol.

The Describe message (portal variant) specifies the name of an existing portal (or an empty string for the
unnamed portal). The response is a RowDescription message describing the rows that will be returned
by executing the portal; or a NoData message if the portal does not contain a query that will return
rows; or ErrorResponse if there is no such portal.

The Describe message (statement variant) specifies the name of an existing prepared statement (or an
empty string for the unnamed prepared statement). The response is a ParameterDescription message
describing the parameters needed by the statement, followed by a RowDescription message describing
the rows that will be returned when the statement is eventually executed (or a NoData message if the
statement will not return rows). ErrorResponse is issued if there is no such prepared statement. Note
that since Bind has not yet been issued, the formats to be used for returned columns are not yet known
to the backend; the format code fields in the RowDescription message will be zeroes in this case.

Tip
In most scenarios the frontend should issue one or the other variant of Describe before issuing
Execute, to ensure that it knows how to interpret the results it will get back.

The Close message closes an existing prepared statement or portal and releases resources. It is not
an error to issue Close against a nonexistent statement or portal name. The response is normally
CloseComplete, but could be ErrorResponse if some difficulty is encountered while releasing resources.
Note that closing a prepared statement implicitly closes any open portals that were constructed from
that statement.
The Flush message does not cause any specific output to be generated, but forces the backend to deliver any data pending in its output buffers. A Flush must be sent after any extended-query command except Sync, if the frontend wishes to examine the results of that command before issuing more commands. Without Flush, messages returned by the backend will be combined into the minimum possible number of packets to minimize network overhead.

**Note**

The simple Query message is approximately equivalent to the series Parse, Bind, portal Describe, Execute, Close, Sync, using the unnamed prepared statement and portal objects and no parameters. One difference is that it will accept multiple SQL statements in the query string, automatically performing the bind/describe/execute sequence for each one in succession. Another difference is that it will not return ParseComplete, BindComplete, CloseComplete, or NoData messages.

### 51.2.4. Function Call

The Function Call sub-protocol allows the client to request a direct call of any function that exists in the database’s `pg_proc` system catalog. The client must have execute permission for the function.

**Note**

The Function Call sub-protocol is a legacy feature that is probably best avoided in new code. Similar results can be accomplished by setting up a prepared statement that does `SELECT function($1, ...)`. The Function Call cycle can then be replaced with Bind/Execute.

A Function Call cycle is initiated by the frontend sending a FunctionCall message to the backend. The backend then sends one or more response messages depending on the results of the function call, and finally a ReadyForQuery response message. ReadyForQuery informs the frontend that it can safely send a new query or function call.

The possible response messages from the backend are:

- **ErrorResponse**
  - An error has occurred.

- **FunctionCallResponse**
  - The function call was completed and returned the result given in the message. (Note that the Function Call protocol can only handle a single scalar result, not a row type or set of results.)

- **ReadyForQuery**
  - Processing of the function call is complete. ReadyForQuery will always be sent, whether processing terminates successfully or with an error.

- **NoticeResponse**
  - A warning message has been issued in relation to the function call. Notices are in addition to other responses, i.e., the backend will continue processing the command.

### 51.2.5. COPY Operations

The `COPY` command allows high-speed bulk data transfer to or from the server. Copy-in and copy-out operations each switch the connection into a distinct sub-protocol, which lasts until the operation is completed.

Copy-in mode (data transfer to the server) is initiated when the backend executes a `COPY FROM STDIN` SQL statement. The backend sends a CopyInResponse message to the frontend. The frontend should then
send zero or more CopyData messages, forming a stream of input data. (The message boundaries are not required to have anything to do with row boundaries, although that is often a reasonable choice.) The frontend can terminate the copy-in mode by sending either a CopyDone message (allowing successful termination) or a CopyFail message (which will cause the \texttt{COPY} SQL statement to fail with an error). The backend then reverts to the command-processing mode it was in before the \texttt{COPY} started, which will be either simple or extended query protocol. It will next send either CommandComplete (if successful) or ErrorResponse (if not).

In the event of a backend-detected error during copy-in mode (including receipt of a CopyFail message), the backend will issue an ErrorResponse message. If the \texttt{COPY} command was issued via an extended-query message, the backend will now discard frontend messages until a Sync message is received, then it will issue ReadyForQuery and return to normal processing. If the \texttt{COPY} command was issued in a simple Query message, the rest of that message is discarded and ReadyForQuery is issued. In either case, any subsequent CopyData, CopyDone, or CopyFail messages issued by the frontend will simply be dropped.

The backend will ignore Flush and Sync messages received during copy-in mode. Receipt of any other non-copy message type constitutes an error that will abort the copy-in state as described above. (The exception for Flush and Sync is for the convenience of client libraries that always send Flush or Sync after an Execute message, without checking whether the command to be executed is a \texttt{COPY FROM STDIN}.)

Copy-out mode (data transfer from the server) is initiated when the backend executes a \texttt{COPY TO STDOUT} SQL statement. The backend sends a CopyOutResponse message to the frontend, followed by zero or more CopyData messages (always one per row), followed by CopyDone. The backend then reverts to the command-processing mode it was in before the \texttt{COPY} started, and sends CommandComplete. The frontend cannot abort the transfer (except by closing the connection or issuing a Cancel request), but it can discard unwanted CopyData and CopyDone messages.

In the event of a backend-detected error during copy-out mode, the backend will issue an ErrorResponse message and revert to normal processing. The frontend should treat receipt of ErrorResponse as terminating the copy-out mode.

It is possible for NoticeResponse and ParameterStatus messages to be interspersed between CopyData messages; frontends must handle these cases, and should be prepared for other asynchronous message types as well (see Section 51.2.6). Otherwise, any message type other than CopyData or CopyDone may be treated as terminating copy-out mode.

There is another Copy-related mode called copy-both, which allows high-speed bulk data transfer to and from the server. Copy-both mode is initiated when a backend in walsender mode executes a \texttt{START_REPLICATION} statement. The backend sends a CopyBothResponse message to the frontend. Both the backend and the frontend may then send CopyData messages until either end sends a CopyDone message. After the client sends a CopyDone message, the connection goes into copy-both mode to copy-out mode, and the client may not send any more CopyData messages. Similarly, when the server sends a CopyDone message, the connection goes into copy-in mode, and the server may not send any more CopyData messages. After both sides have sent a CopyDone message, the copy mode is terminated, and the backend reverts to the command-processing mode. In the event of a backend-detected error during copy-both mode, the backend will issue an ErrorResponse message, discard frontend messages until a Sync message is received, and then issue ReadyForQuery and return to normal processing. The frontend should treat receipt of ErrorResponse as terminating the copy in both directions; no CopyDone should be sent in this case. See Section 51.4 for more information on the subprotocol transmitted over copy-both mode.

The CopyInResponse, CopyOutResponse and CopyBothResponse messages include fields that inform the frontend of the number of columns per row and the format codes being used for each column. (As of the present implementation, all columns in a given \texttt{COPY} operation will use the same format, but the message design does not assume this.)

### 51.2.6. Asynchronous Operations

There are several cases in which the backend will send messages that are not specifically prompted by the frontend’s command stream. Frontends must be prepared to deal with these messages at any time,
even when not engaged in a query. At minimum, one should check for these cases before beginning to read a query response.

It is possible for NoticeResponse messages to be generated due to outside activity; for example, if the database administrator commands a “fast” database shutdown, the backend will send a NoticeResponse indicating this fact before closing the connection. Accordingly, frontends should always be prepared to accept and display NoticeResponse messages, even when the connection is nominally idle.

ParameterStatus messages will be generated whenever the active value changes for any of the parameters the backend believes the frontend should know about. Most commonly this occurs in response to a `SET` SQL command executed by the frontend, and this case is effectively synchronous — but it is also possible for parameter status changes to occur because the administrator changed a configuration file and then sent the SIGHUP signal to the server. Also, if a `SET` command is rolled back, an appropriate ParameterStatus message will be generated to report the current effective value.

At present there is a hard-wired set of parameters for which ParameterStatus will be generated: they are `server_version`, `server_encoding`, `client_encoding`, `application_name`, `default_transaction_read_only`, `in_hot_standby`, `is_superuser`, `session_authorization`, `DateStyle`, `IntervalStyle`, `TimeZone`, `integer_datetimes`, and `standard_conforming_strings`. (`server_encoding`, `TimeZone`, and `integer_datetimes` were not reported by releases before 8.0; `standard_conforming_strings` was not reported by releases before 8.1; `IntervalStyle` was not reported by releases before 8.4; `application_name` was not reported by releases before 9.0; `default_transaction_read_only` and `in_hot_standby` were not reported by releases before 14.) Note that `server_version`, `server_encoding` and `integer_datetimes` are pseudo-parameters that cannot change after startup. This set might change in the future, or even become configurable. Accordingly, a frontend should simply ignore ParameterStatus for parameters that it does not understand or care about.

If a frontend issues a `LISTEN` command, then the backend will send a NotificationResponse message (not to be confused with NoticeResponse!) whenever a `NOTIFY` command is executed for the same channel name.

### Note

At present, NotificationResponse can only be sent outside a transaction, and thus it will not occur in the middle of a command-response series, though it might occur just before ReadyForQuery. It is unwise to design frontend logic that assumes that, however. Good practice is to be able to accept NotificationResponse at any point in the protocol.

### 51.2.7. Canceling Requests in Progress

During the processing of a query, the frontend might request cancellation of the query. The cancel request is not sent directly on the open connection to the backend for reasons of implementation efficiency: we don’t want to have the backend constantly checking for new input from the frontend during query processing. Cancel requests should be relatively infrequent, so we make them slightly cumbersome in order to avoid a penalty in the normal case.

To issue a cancel request, the frontend opens a new connection to the server and sends a CancelRequest message, rather than the StartupMessage message that would ordinarily be sent across a new connection. The server will process this request and then close the connection. For security reasons, no direct reply is made to the cancel request message.

A CancelRequest message will be ignored unless it contains the same key data (PID and secret key) passed to the frontend during connection start-up. If the request matches the PID and secret key for a currently executing backend, the processing of the current query is aborted. (In the existing implementation, this is done by sending a special signal to the backend process that is processing the query.)
The cancellation signal might or might not have any effect — for example, if it arrives after the backend has finished processing the query, then it will have no effect. If the cancellation is effective, it results in the current command being terminated early with an error message.

The upshot of all this is that for reasons of both security and efficiency, the frontend has no direct way to tell whether a cancel request has succeeded. It must continue to wait for the backend to respond to the query. Issuing a cancel simply improves the odds that the current query will finish soon, and improves the odds that it will fail with an error message instead of succeeding.

Since the cancel request is sent across a new connection to the server and not across the regular frontend/backend communication link, it is possible for the cancel request to be issued by any process, not just the frontend whose query is to be canceled. This might provide additional flexibility when building multiple-process applications. It also introduces a security risk, in that unauthorized persons might try to cancel queries. The security risk is addressed by requiring a dynamically generated secret key to be supplied in cancel requests.

### 51.2.8. Termination

The normal, graceful termination procedure is that the frontend sends a Terminate message and immediately closes the connection. On receipt of this message, the backend closes the connection and terminates.

In rare cases (such as an administrator-commanded database shutdown) the backend might disconnect without any frontend request to do so. In such cases the backend will attempt to send an error or notice message giving the reason for the disconnection before it closes the connection.

Other termination scenarios arise from various failure cases, such as core dump at one end or the other, loss of the communications link, loss of message-boundary synchronization, etc. If either frontend or backend sees an unexpected closure of the connection, it should clean up and terminate. The frontend has the option of launching a new backend by recontacting the server if it doesn’t want to terminate itself. Closing the connection is also advisable if an unrecognizable message type is received, since this probably indicates loss of message-boundary sync.

For either normal or abnormal termination, any open transaction is rolled back, not committed. One should note however that if a frontend disconnects while a non-SELECT query is being processed, the backend will probably finish the query before noticing the disconnection. If the query is outside any transaction block (BEGIN ... COMMIT sequence) then its results might be committed before the disconnection is recognized.

### 51.2.9. SSL Session Encryption

If Postgres Pro was built with SSL support, frontend/backend communications can be encrypted using SSL. This provides communication security in environments where attackers might be able to capture the session traffic. For more information on encrypting Postgres Pro sessions with SSL, see Section 17.9.

To initiate an SSL-encrypted connection, the frontend initially sends an SSLRequest message rather than a StartupMessage. The server then responds with a single byte containing \( S \) or \( N \), indicating that it is willing or unwilling to perform SSL, respectively. The frontend might close the connection at this point if it is dissatisfied with the response. To continue after \( S \), perform an SSL startup handshake (not described here, part of the SSL specification) with the server. If this is successful, continue with sending the usual StartupMessage. In this case the StartupMessage and all subsequent data will be SSL-encrypted. To continue after \( N \), send the usual StartupMessage and proceed without encryption. (Alternatively, it is permissible to issue a GSSENCRequest message after an \( N \) response to try to use GSSAPI encryption instead of SSL.)

The frontend should also be prepared to handle an ErrorMessage response to SSLRequest from the server. This would only occur if the server predates the addition of SSL support to Postgres Pro. (Such servers are now very ancient, and likely do not exist in the wild anymore.) In this case the connection must be closed, but the frontend might choose to open a fresh connection and proceed without requesting SSL.
When SSL encryption can be performed, the server is expected to send only the single \(s\) byte and then wait for the frontend to initiate an SSL handshake. If additional bytes are available to read at this point, it likely means that a man-in-the-middle is attempting to perform a buffer-stuffing attack (CVE-2021-23222). Frontends should be coded either to read exactly one byte from the socket before turning the socket over to their SSL library, or to treat it as a protocol violation if they find they have read additional bytes.

An initial SSLRequest can also be used in a connection that is being opened to send a CancelRequest message.

While the protocol itself does not provide a way for the server to force SSL encryption, the administrator can configure the server to reject unencrypted sessions as a byproduct of authentication checking.

### 51.2.10. GSSAPI Session Encryption

If Postgres Pro was built with GSSAPI support, frontend/backend communications can be encrypted using GSSAPI. This provides communication security in environments where attackers might be able to capture the session traffic. For more information on encrypting Postgres Pro sessions with GSSAPI, see Section 17.10.

To initiate a GSSAPI-encrypted connection, the frontend initially sends a GSSENCRequest message rather than a StartupMessage. The server then responds with a single byte containing \(G\) or \(N\), indicating that it is willing or unwilling to perform GSSAPI encryption, respectively. The frontend might close the connection at this point if it is dissatisfied with the response. To continue after \(G\), using the GSSAPI C bindings as discussed in RFC 2744 or equivalent, perform a GSSAPI initialization by calling `gss_init_sec_context()` in a loop and sending the result to the server, starting with an empty input and then with each result from the server, until it returns no output. When sending the results of `gss_init_sec_context()` to the server, prepend the length of the message as a four byte integer in network byte order. To continue after \(N\), send the usual StartupMessage and proceed without encryption. (Alternatively, it is permissible to issue an SSLRequest message after an \(N\) response to try to use SSL encryption instead of GSSAPI.)

The frontend should also be prepared to handle an ErrorMessage response to GSSENCRequest from the server. This would only occur if the server predates the addition of GSSAPI encryption support to Postgres Pro. In this case the connection must be closed, but the frontend might choose to open a fresh connection and proceed without requesting GSSAPI encryption.

When GSSAPI encryption can be performed, the server is expected to send only the single \(G\) byte and then wait for the frontend to initiate a GSSAPI handshake. If additional bytes are available to read at this point, it likely means that a man-in-the-middle is attempting to perform a buffer-stuffing attack (CVE-2021-23222). Frontends should be coded either to read exactly one byte from the socket before turning the socket over to their GSSAPI library, or to treat it as a protocol violation if they find they have read additional bytes.

An initial GSSENCRequest can also be used in a connection that is being opened to send a CancelRequest message.

Once GSSAPI encryption has been successfully established, use `gss_wrap()` to encrypt the usual StartupMessage and all subsequent data, prepending the length of the result from `gss_wrap()` as a four byte integer in network byte order to the actual encrypted payload. Note that the server will only accept encrypted packets from the client which are less than 16kB; `gss_wrap_size_limit()` should be used by the client to determine the size of the unencrypted message which will fit within this limit and larger messages should be broken up into multiple `gss_wrap()` calls. Typical segments are 8kB of unencrypted data, resulting in encrypted packets of slightly larger than 8kB but well within the 16kB maximum. The server can be expected to not send encrypted packets of larger than 16kB to the client.

While the protocol itself does not provide a way for the server to force GSSAPI encryption, the administrator can configure the server to reject unencrypted sessions as a byproduct of authentication checking.
51.3. SASL Authentication

SASL is a framework for authentication in connection-oriented protocols. At the moment, Postgres Pro implements two SASL authentication mechanisms, SCRAM-SHA-256 and SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS. More might be added in the future. The below steps illustrate how SASL authentication is performed in general, while the next subsection gives more details on SCRAM-SHA-256 and SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS.

**SASL Authentication Message Flow**

1. To begin a SASL authentication exchange, the server sends an AuthenticationSASL message. It includes a list of SASL authentication mechanisms that the server can accept, in the server's preferred order.

2. The client selects one of the supported mechanisms from the list, and sends a SASLInitialResponse message to the server. The message includes the name of the selected mechanism, and an optional Initial Client Response, if the selected mechanism uses that.

3. One or more server-challenge and client-response message will follow. Each server-challenge is sent in an AuthenticationSASLContinue message, followed by a response from client in a SASLResponse message. The particulars of the messages are mechanism specific.

4. Finally, when the authentication exchange is completed successfully, the server sends an AuthenticationSASLFinal message, followed immediately by an AuthenticationOk message. The AuthenticationSASLFinal contains additional server-to-client data, whose content is particular to the selected authentication mechanism. If the authentication mechanism doesn't use additional data that's sent at completion, the AuthenticationSASLFinal message is not sent.

On error, the server can abort the authentication at any stage, and send an ErrorMessage.

51.3.1. SCRAM-SHA-256 Authentication

The implemented SASL mechanisms at the moment are SCRAM-SHA-256 and its variant with channel binding SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS. They are described in detail in RFC 7677 and RFC 5802.

When SCRAM-SHA-256 is used in Postgres Pro, the server will ignore the user name that the client sends in the client-first-message. The user name that was already sent in the startup message is used instead. Postgres Pro supports multiple character encodings, while SCRAM dictates UTF-8 to be used for the user name, so it might be impossible to represent the Postgres Pro user name in UTF-8.

The SCRAM specification dictates that the password is also in UTF-8, and is processed with the SASLprep algorithm. Postgres Pro, however, does not require UTF-8 to be used for the password. When a user's password is set, it is processed with SASLprep as if it was in UTF-8, regardless of the actual encoding used. However, if it is not a legal UTF-8 byte sequence, or it contains UTF-8 byte sequences that are prohibited by the SASLprep algorithm, the raw password will be used without SASLprep processing, instead of throwing an error. This allows the password to be normalized when it is in UTF-8, but still allows a non-UTF-8 password to be used, and doesn't require the system to know which encoding the password is in.

Channel binding is supported in Postgres Pro builds with SSL support. The SASL mechanism name for SCRAM with channel binding is SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS. The channel binding type used by Postgres Pro is tls-server-end-point.

In SCRAM without channel binding, the server chooses a random number that is transmitted to the client to be mixed with the user-supplied password in the transmitted password hash. While this prevents the password hash from being successfully retransmitted in a later session, it does not prevent a fake server between the real server and client from passing through the server's random value and successfully authenticating.

SCRAM with channel binding prevents such man-in-the-middle attacks by mixing the signature of the server's certificate into the transmitted password hash. While a fake server can retransmit the real server's certificate, it doesn't have access to the private key matching that certificate, and therefore cannot prove it is the owner, causing SSL connection failure.
### Example

1. The server sends an AuthenticationSASL message. It includes a list of SASL authentication mechanisms that the server can accept. This will be **SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS** and **SCRAM-SHA-256** if the server is built with SSL support, or else just the latter.

2. The client responds by sending a SASLInitialResponse message, which indicates the chosen mechanism, **SCRAM-SHA-256** or **SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS**. (A client is free to choose either mechanism, but for better security it should choose the channel-binding variant if it can support it.) In the Initial Client response field, the message contains the SCRAM client-first-message. The client-first-message also contains the channel binding type chosen by the client.

3. Server sends an AuthenticationSASLContinue message, with a SCRAM server-first-message as the content.

4. Client sends a SASLResponse message, with SCRAM client-final-message as the content.

5. Server sends an AuthenticationSASLFinal message, with the SCRAM server-final-message, followed immediately by an AuthenticationOk message.

### 51.4. Streaming Replication Protocol

To initiate streaming replication, the frontend sends the `replication` parameter in the startup message. A Boolean value of `true` (or `on`, `yes`, `1`) tells the backend to go into physical replication walsender mode, wherein a small set of replication commands, shown below, can be issued instead of SQL statements.

Passing `database` as the value for the `replication` parameter instructs the backend to go into logical replication walsender mode, connecting to the database specified in the `dbname` parameter. In logical replication walsender mode, the replication commands shown below as well as normal SQL commands can be issued.

In either physical replication or logical replication walsender mode, only the simple query protocol can be used.

For the purpose of testing replication commands, you can make a replication connection via psql or any other libpq-using tool with a connection string including the `replication` option, e.g.:

```
psql "dbname=postgres replication=database" -c "IDENTIFY_SYSTEM;"
```

However, it is often more useful to use `pg_receivewal` (for physical replication) or `pg_recvlogical` (for logical replication).

Replication commands are logged in the server log when `log_replication_commands` is enabled.

The commands accepted in replication mode are:

**IDENTIFY_SYSTEM**

Requests the server to identify itself. Server replies with a result set of a single row, containing four fields:

- `systemid (text)`
  The unique system identifier identifying the cluster. This can be used to check that the base backup used to initialize the standby came from the same cluster.

- `timeline (int4)`
  Current timeline ID. Also useful to check that the standby is consistent with the primary.

- `xlogpos (text)`
  Current WAL flush location. Useful to get a known location in the write-ahead log where streaming can start.

- `dbname (text)`
  Database connected to or null.
SHOW name

Requests the server to send the current setting of a run-time parameter. This is similar to the SQL command SHOW.

name

The name of a run-time parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 18.

TIMELINE_HISTORY tli

Requests the server to send over the timeline history file for timeline tli. Server replies with a result set of a single row, containing two fields. While the fields are labeled as text, they effectively return raw bytes, with no encoding conversion:

filename (text)

File name of the timeline history file, e.g., 00000002.history.

content (text)

Contents of the timeline history file.

CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name [ TEMORARY ] { PHYSICAL [ RESERVE_WAL ] | LOGICAL output_plugin [ EXPORT_SNAPSHOT | NOEXPORT_SNAPSHOT | USE_SNAPSHOT ] }

Create a physical or logical replication slot. See Section 25.2.6 for more about replication slots.

slot_name

The name of the slot to create. Must be a valid replication slot name (see Section 25.2.6.1).

output_plugin

The name of the output plugin used for logical decoding (see Section 47.6).

TEMPORARY

Specify that this replication slot is a temporary one. Temporary slots are not saved to disk and are automatically dropped on error or when the session has finished.

RESERVE_WAL

Specify that this physical replication slot reserves WAL immediately. Otherwise, WAL is only reserved upon connection from a streaming replication client.

EXPORT_SNAPSHOT
NOEXPORT_SNAPSHOT
USE_SNAPSHOT

Decides what to do with the snapshot created during logical slot initialization. EXPORT_SNAPSHOT, which is the default, will export the snapshot for use in other sessions. This option can't be used inside a transaction. USE_SNAPSHOT will use the snapshot for the current transaction executing the command. This option must be used in a transaction, and CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT must be the first command run in that transaction. Finally, NOEXPORT_SNAPSHOT will just use the snapshot for logical decoding as normal but won't do anything else with it.

In response to this command, the server will send a one-row result set containing the following fields:

slot_name (text)

The name of the newly-created replication slot.

consistent_point (text)

The WAL location at which the slot became consistent. This is the earliest location from which streaming can start on this replication slot.
snapshot_name (text)

The identifier of the snapshot exported by the command. The snapshot is valid until a new command is executed on this connection or the replication connection is closed. Null if the created slot is physical.

output_plugin (text)

The name of the output plugin used by the newly-created replication slot. Null if the created slot is physical.

START_REPLICATION [ SLOT slot_name ] [ PHYSICAL ] XXX/XXX [ TIMELINE tli ]

Instructs server to start streaming WAL, starting at WAL location XXX/XXX. If TIMELINE option is specified, streaming starts on timeline tli; otherwise, the server's current timeline is selected. The server can reply with an error, for example if the requested section of WAL has already been recycled. On success, server responds with a CopyBothResponse message, and then starts to stream WAL to the frontend.

If a slot's name is provided via slot_name, it will be updated as replication progresses so that the server knows which WAL segments, and if hot_standby_feedback is on which transactions, are still needed by the standby.

If the client requests a timeline that's not the latest but is part of the history of the server, the server will stream all the WAL on that timeline starting from the requested start point up to the point where the server switched to another timeline. If the client requests streaming at exactly the end of an old timeline, the server skips COPY mode entirely.

After streaming all the WAL on a timeline that is not the latest one, the server will end streaming by exiting the COPY mode. When the client acknowledges this by also exiting COPY mode, the server sends a result set with one row and two columns, indicating the next timeline in this server's history. The first column is the next timeline's ID (type int8), and the second column is the WAL location where the switch happened (type text). Usually, the switch position is the end of the WAL that was streamed, but there are corner cases where the server can send some WAL from the old timeline that it has not itself replayed before promoting. Finally, the server sends two CommandComplete messages (one that ends the CopyData and the other ends the START_REPLICATION itself), and is ready to accept a new command.

WAL data is sent as a series of CopyData messages. (This allows other information to be intermixed; in particular the server can send an ErrorResponse message if it encounters a failure after beginning to stream.) The payload of each CopyData message from server to the client contains a message of one of the following formats:

XLogData (B)

Byte1('w')

Identifies the message as WAL data.

Int64

The starting point of the WAL data in this message.

Int64

The current end of WAL on the server.

Int64

The server's system clock at the time of transmission, as microseconds since midnight on 2000-01-01.

Byte[n]

A section of the WAL data stream.
A single WAL record is never split across two XLogData messages. When a WAL record crosses a WAL page boundary, and is therefore already split using continuation records, it can be split at the page boundary. In other words, the first main WAL record and its continuation records can be sent in different XLogData messages.

Primary keepalive message (B)
- Byte1('k')
  Identifies the message as a sender keepalive.
- Int64
  The current end of WAL on the server.
- Int64
  The server's system clock at the time of transmission, as microseconds since midnight on 2000-01-01.
- Byte1
  1 means that the client should reply to this message as soon as possible, to avoid a timeout disconnect. 0 otherwise.

The receiving process can send replies back to the sender at any time, using one of the following message formats (also in the payload of a CopyData message):

Standby status update (F)
- Byte1('r')
  Identifies the message as a receiver status update.
- Int64
  The location of the last WAL byte + 1 received and written to disk in the standby.
- Int64
  The location of the last WAL byte + 1 flushed to disk in the standby.
- Int64
  The location of the last WAL byte + 1 applied in the standby.
- Int64
  The client's system clock at the time of transmission, as microseconds since midnight on 2000-01-01.
- Byte1
  1 means that the client requests the server to reply to this message immediately. This can be used to ping the server, to test if the connection is still healthy.

Hot Standby feedback message (F)
- Byte1('h')
  Identifies the message as a Hot Standby feedback message.
- Int64
  The client's system clock at the time of transmission, as microseconds since midnight on 2000-01-01.
- Int32
  The standby's current global xmin, excluding the catalog_xmin from any replication slots. If both this value and the following catalog_xmin are 0 this is treated as a notification that Hot
Standby feedback will no longer be sent on this connection. Later non-zero messages may reinitiate the feedback mechanism.

Int32

The epoch of the global xmin xid on the standby.

Int32

The lowest catalog_xmin of any replication slots on the standby. Set to 0 if no catalog_xmin exists on the standby or if hot standby feedback is being disabled.

Int32

The epoch of the catalog_xmin xid on the standby.

START_REPLICATION SLOT slot_name LOGICAL XXX/XXX [ (option_name [ option_value [, ... ] ] ) ]

Instructs server to start streaming WAL for logical replication, starting at WAL location XXX/XXX. The server can reply with an error, for example if the requested section of WAL has already been recycled. On success, server responds with a CopyBothResponse message, and then starts to stream WAL to the frontend.

The messages inside the CopyBothResponse messages are of the same format documented for START_REPLICATION ... PHYSICAL, including two CommandComplete messages.

The output plugin associated with the selected slot is used to process the output for streaming.

SLOT slot_name

The name of the slot to stream changes from. This parameter is required, and must correspond to an existing logical replication slot created with CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT in LOGICAL mode.

XXX/XXX

The WAL location to begin streaming at.

option_name

The name of an option passed to the slot’s logical decoding plugin.

option_value

Optional value, in the form of a string constant, associated with the specified option.

DROP_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name [ WAIT ]

Drops a replication slot, freeing any reserved server-side resources. If the slot is a logical slot that was created in a database other than the database the walsender is connected to, this command fails.

slot_name

The name of the slot to drop.

WAIT

This option causes the command to wait if the slot is active until it becomes inactive, instead of the default behavior of raising an error.

BASE_BACKUP [ LABEL 'label' ] [ PROGRESS ] [ FAST ] [ WAL ] [ NOWAIT ] [ MAX_RATE rate ] [ TABLESPACE_MAP ] [ NOVERIFY_CHECKSUMS ] [ MANIFEST manifest_option ] [ MANIFEST_CHECKSUMS checksum_algorithm ]

Instructs the server to start streaming a base backup. The system will automatically be put in backup mode before the backup is started, and taken out of it when the backup is complete. The following options are accepted:
LABEL 'label'
Sets the label of the backup. If none is specified, a backup label of base backup will be used. The quoting rules for the label are the same as a standard SQL string with standard_conforming_strings turned on.

PROGRESS
Request information required to generate a progress report. This will send back an approximate size in the header of each tablespace, which can be used to calculate how far along the stream is done. This is calculated by enumerating all the file sizes once before the transfer is even started, and might as such have a negative impact on the performance. In particular, it might take longer before the first data is streamed. Since the database files can change during the backup, the size is only approximate and might both grow and shrink between the time of approximation and the sending of the actual files.

FAST
Request a fast checkpoint.

WAL
Include the necessary WAL segments in the backup. This will include all the files between start and stop backup in the pg_wal directory of the base directory tar file.

NOWAIT
By default, the backup will wait until the last required WAL segment has been archived, or emit a warning if log archiving is not enabled. Specifying NOWAIT disables both the waiting and the warning, leaving the client responsible for ensuring the required log is available.

MAX_RATE rate
Limit (throttle) the maximum amount of data transferred from server to client per unit of time. The expected unit is kilobytes per second. If this option is specified, the value must either be equal to zero or it must fall within the range from 32 kB through 1 GB (inclusive). If zero is passed or the option is not specified, no restriction is imposed on the transfer.

TABLESPACE_MAP
Include information about symbolic links present in the directory pg_tblspc in a file named tablespace_map. The tablespace map file includes each symbolic link name as it exists in the directory pg_tblspc/ and the full path of that symbolic link.

NOVERIFY_CHECKSUMS
By default, checksums are verified during a base backup if they are enabled. Specifying NOVERIFY_CHECKSUMS disables this verification.

MANIFEST manifest_option
When this option is specified with a value of yes or force-encode, a backup manifest is created and sent along with the backup. The manifest is a list of every file present in the backup with the exception of any WAL files that may be included. It also stores the size, last modification time, and optionally a checksum for each file. A value of force-encode forces all filenames to be hex-encoded; otherwise, this type of encoding is performed only for files whose names are non-UTF8 octet sequences. force-encode is intended primarily for testing purposes, to be sure that clients which read the backup manifest can handle this case. For compatibility with previous releases, the default is MANIFEST 'no'.

MANIFEST_CHECKSUMS checksum_algorithm
Specifies the checksum algorithm that should be applied to each file included in the backup manifest. Currently, the available algorithms are NONE, CRC32C, SHA224, SHA256, SHA384, and SHA512. The default is CRC32C.
When the backup is started, the server will first send two ordinary result sets, followed by one or more CopyOutResponse results.

The first ordinary result set contains the starting position of the backup, in a single row with two columns. The first column contains the start position given in XLogRecPtr format, and the second column contains the corresponding timeline ID.

The second ordinary result set has one row for each tablespace. The fields in this row are:

- `spcoid (oid)`
  The OID of the tablespace, or null if it's the base directory.

- `spclocation (text)`
  The full path of the tablespace directory, or null if it's the base directory.

- `size (int8)`
  The approximate size of the tablespace, in kilobytes (1024 bytes), if progress report has been requested; otherwise it's null.

After the second regular result set, one or more CopyOutResponse results will be sent, one for the main data directory and one for each additional tablespace other than `pg_default` and `pg_global`. The data in the CopyOutResponse results will be a tar format (following the “ustar interchange format” specified in the POSIX 1003.1-2008 standard) dump of the tablespace contents, except that the two trailing blocks of zeroes specified in the standard are omitted. After the tar data is complete, and if a backup manifest was requested, another CopyOutResponse result is sent, containing the manifest data for the current base backup. In any case, a final ordinary result set will be sent, containing the WAL end position of the backup, in the same format as the start position.

The tar archive for the data directory and each tablespace will contain all files in the directories, regardless of whether they are Postgres Pro files or other files added to the same directory. The only excluded files are:

- `postmaster.pid`
- `postmaster.opts`
- `pg_internal.init` (found in multiple directories)
- Various temporary files and directories created during the operation of the Postgres Pro server, such as any file or directory beginning with `pgsql_tmp` and temporary relations.
- Unlogged relations, except for the init fork which is required to recreate the (empty) unlogged relation on recovery.
- `pg_wal`, including subdirectories. If the backup is run with WAL files included, a synthesized version of `pg_wal` will be included, but it will only contain the files necessary for the backup to work, not the rest of the contents.
- `pg_dynamshmem, pg_notify, pg_replslot, pg_serial, pg_snapshots, pg_stat_tmp, and pg_subtrans` are copied as empty directories (even if they are symbolic links).
- Files other than regular files and directories, such as symbolic links (other than for the directories listed above) and special device files, are skipped. (Symbolic links in `pg_tblspc` are maintained.)

Owner, group, and file mode are set if the underlying file system on the server supports it.

51.5. Logical Streaming Replication Protocol

This section describes the logical replication protocol, which is the message flow started by the `START_REPLICATION SLOT slot_name LOGICAL` replication command.

The logical streaming replication protocol builds on the primitives of the physical streaming replication protocol.
51.5.1. Logical Streaming Replication Parameters

The logical replication START_REPLICATION command accepts following parameters:

proto_version

Protocol version. Currently versions 1 and 2 are supported. The version 2 is supported only for server version 14 and above, and it allows streaming of large in-progress transactions.

publication_names

Comma separated list of publication names for which to subscribe (receive changes). The individual publication names are treated as standard objects names and can be quoted the same as needed.

51.5.2. Logical Replication Protocol Messages

The individual protocol messages are discussed in the following subsections. Individual messages are described in Section 51.9.

All top-level protocol messages begin with a message type byte. While represented in code as a character, this is a signed byte with no associated encoding.

Since the streaming replication protocol supplies a message length there is no need for top-level protocol messages to embed a length in their header.

51.5.3. Logical Replication Protocol Message Flow

With the exception of the START_REPLICATION command and the replay progress messages, all information flows only from the backend to the frontend.

The logical replication protocol sends individual transactions one by one. This means that all messages between a pair of Begin and Commit messages belong to the same transaction. It also sends changes of large in-progress transactions between a pair of Stream Start and Stream Stop messages. The last stream of such a transaction contains Stream Commit or Stream Abort message.

Every sent transaction contains zero or more DML messages (Insert, Update, Delete). In case of a cascaded setup it can also contain Origin messages. The origin message indicates that the transaction originated on different replication node. Since a replication node in the scope of logical replication protocol can be pretty much anything, the only identifier is the origin name. It's downstream's responsibility to handle this as needed (if needed). The Origin message is always sent before any DML messages in the transaction.

Every DML message contains an arbitrary relation ID, which can be mapped to an ID in the Relation messages. The Relation messages describe the schema of the given relation. The Relation message is sent for a given relation either because it is the first time we send a DML message for given relation in the current session or because the relation definition has changed since the last Relation message was sent for it. The protocol assumes that the client is capable of caching the metadata for as many relations as needed.

51.6. Message Data Types

This section describes the base data types used in messages.

Int_n(i)

An n-bit integer in network byte order (most significant byte first). If i is specified it is the exact value that will appear, otherwise the value is variable. Eg. Int16, Int32(42).

Int_n[k]

An array of k n-bit integers, each in network byte order. The array length k is always determined by an earlier field in the message. Eg. Int16[M].
String(s)

A null-terminated string (C-style string). There is no specific length limitation on strings. If \( s \) is specified it is the exact value that will appear, otherwise the value is variable. Eg. String, String("user").

**Note**

There is no predefined limit on the length of a string that can be returned by the backend. Good coding strategy for a frontend is to use an expandable buffer so that anything that fits in memory can be accepted. If that's not feasible, read the full string and discard trailing characters that don't fit into your fixed-size buffer.

Byte\(n(c)\)

Exactly \( n \) bytes. If the field width \( n \) is not a constant, it is always determinable from an earlier field in the message. If \( c \) is specified it is the exact value. Eg. Byte2, Byte1(\'\n\').

### 51.7. Message Formats

This section describes the detailed format of each message. Each is marked to indicate that it can be sent by a frontend (F), a backend (B), or both (F & B). Notice that although each message includes a byte count at the beginning, the message format is defined so that the message end can be found without reference to the byte count. This aids validity checking. (The CopyData message is an exception, because it forms part of a data stream; the contents of any individual CopyData message cannot be interpretable on their own.)

**AuthenticationOk (B)**

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(0)

Specifies that the authentication was successful.

**AuthenticationKerberosV5 (B)**

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(2)

Specifies that Kerberos V5 authentication is required.

**AuthenticationCleartextPassword (B)**

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.
Int32(3)
   Specifies that a clear-text password is required.

AuthenticationMD5Password (B)
   Byte1('R')
      Identifies the message as an authentication request.
   Int32(12)
      Length of message contents in bytes, including self.
   Int32(5)
      Specifies that an MD5-encrypted password is required.
   Byte4
      The salt to use when encrypting the password.

AuthenticationSCMCredential (B)
   Byte1('R')
      Identifies the message as an authentication request.
   Int32(8)
      Length of message contents in bytes, including self.
   Int32(6)
      Specifies that an SCM credentials message is required.

AuthenticationGSS (B)
   Byte1('R')
      Identifies the message as an authentication request.
   Int32(8)
      Length of message contents in bytes, including self.
   Int32(7)
      Specifies that GSSAPI authentication is required.

AuthenticationGSSContinue (B)
   Byte1('R')
      Identifies the message as an authentication request.
   Int32
      Length of message contents in bytes, including self.
   Int32(8)
      Specifies that this message contains GSSAPI or SSPI data.
   Byte
      GSSAPI or SSPI authentication data.

AuthenticationSSPI (B)
   Byte1('R')
      Identifies the message as an authentication request.
Int32(8)
    Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(9)
    Specifies that SSPI authentication is required.

AuthenticationSASL (B)
    Byte1('R')
        Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32
    Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(10)
    Specifies that SASL authentication is required.

The message body is a list of SASL authentication mechanisms, in the server's order of preference.
A zero byte is required as terminator after the last authentication mechanism name. For each
mechanism, there is the following:

String
    Name of a SASL authentication mechanism.

AuthenticationSASLContinue (B)
    Byte1('R')
        Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32
    Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(11)
    Specifies that this message contains a SASL challenge.

Byte
    SASL data, specific to the SASL mechanism being used.

AuthenticationSASLFinal (B)
    Byte1('R')
        Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32
    Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(12)
    Specifies that SASL authentication has completed.

Byte
    SASL outcome "additional data", specific to the SASL mechanism being used.

BackendKeyData (B)
    Byte1('K')
        Identifies the message as cancellation key data. The frontend must save these values if it wishes
to be able to issue CancelRequest messages later.
Int32(12)
  Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32
  The process ID of this backend.

Int32
  The secret key of this backend.

Bind (F)
  Byte1('B')
  Identifies the message as a Bind command.

Int32
  Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String
  The name of the destination portal (an empty string selects the unnamed portal).

String
  The name of the source prepared statement (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement).

Int16
  The number of parameter format codes that follow (denoted \( c \) below). This can be zero to indicate that there are no parameters or that the parameters all use the default format (text); or one, in which case the specified format code is applied to all parameters; or it can equal the actual number of parameters.

Int16[\( c \)]
  The parameter format codes. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary).

Int16
  The number of parameter values that follow (possibly zero). This must match the number of parameters needed by the query.

Next, the following pair of fields appear for each parameter:

Int32
  The length of the parameter value, in bytes (this count does not include itself). Can be zero. As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL parameter value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

Byte\( n \)
  The value of the parameter, in the format indicated by the associated format code. \( n \) is the above length.

After the last parameter, the following fields appear:

Int16
  The number of result-column format codes that follow (denoted \( r \) below). This can be zero to indicate that there are no result columns or that the result columns should all use the default format (text); or one, in which case the specified format code is applied to all result columns (if any); or it can equal the actual number of result columns of the query.
Int16

The result-column format codes. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary).

BindComplete (B)

Byte1('2')

Identifies the message as a Bind-complete indicator.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

CancelRequest (F)

Int32(16)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(80877102)

The cancel request code. The value is chosen to contain 1234 in the most significant 16 bits, and 5678 in the least significant 16 bits. (To avoid confusion, this code must not be the same as any protocol version number.)

Int32

The process ID of the target backend.

Int32

The secret key for the target backend.

Close (F)

Byte1('C')

Identifies the message as a Close command.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byte1

's' to close a prepared statement; or 'F' to close a portal.

String

The name of the prepared statement or portal to close (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement or portal).

CloseComplete (B)

Byte1('3')

Identifies the message as a Close-complete indicator.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

CommandComplete (B)

Byte1('C')

Identifies the message as a command-completed response.
Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

The command tag. This is usually a single word that identifies which SQL command was completed.

For an INSERT command, the tag is INSERT oid rows, where rows is the number of rows inserted. oid used to be the object ID of the inserted row if rows was 1 and the target table had OIDs, but OIDs system columns are not supported anymore; therefore oid is always 0.

For a DELETE command, the tag is DELETE rows where rows is the number of rows deleted.

For an UPDATE command, the tag is UPDATE rows where rows is the number of rows updated.

For a SELECT or CREATE TABLE AS command, the tag is SELECT rows where rows is the number of rows retrieved.

For a MOVE command, the tag is MOVE rows where rows is the number of rows the cursor’s position has been changed by.

For a FETCH command, the tag is FETCH rows where rows is the number of rows that have been retrieved from the cursor.

For a COPY command, the tag is COPY rows where rows is the number of rows copied. (Note: the row count appears only in PostgreSQL 8.2 and later.)

CopyData (F & B)

Byte1('d')

Identifies the message as COPY data.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byte

Data that forms part of a COPY data stream. Messages sent from the backend will always correspond to single data rows, but messages sent by frontends might divide the data stream arbitrarily.

CopyDone (F & B)

Byte1('c')

Identifies the message as a COPY-complete indicator.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

CopyFail (F)

Byte1('f')

Identifies the message as a COPY-failure indicator.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

An error message to report as the cause of failure.
CopyInResponse (B)

Byte1('G')

Identifies the message as a Start Copy In response. The frontend must now send copy-in data (if not prepared to do so, send a CopyFail message).

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int8
0 indicates the overall COPY format is textual (rows separated by newlines, columns separated by separator characters, etc). 1 indicates the overall copy format is binary (similar to DataRow format). See COPY for more information.

Int16
The number of columns in the data to be copied (denoted $N$ below).

Int16[$N$]
The format codes to be used for each column. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary). All must be zero if the overall copy format is textual.

CopyOutResponse (B)

Byte1('H')

Identifies the message as a Start Copy Out response. This message will be followed by copy-out data.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int8
0 indicates the overall COPY format is textual (rows separated by newlines, columns separated by separator characters, etc). 1 indicates the overall copy format is binary (similar to DataRow format). See COPY for more information.

Int16
The number of columns in the data to be copied (denoted $N$ below).

Int16[$N$]
The format codes to be used for each column. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary). All must be zero if the overall copy format is textual.

CopyBothResponse (B)

Byte1('W')

Identifies the message as a Start Copy Both response. This message is used only for Streaming Replication.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int8
0 indicates the overall COPY format is textual (rows separated by newlines, columns separated by separator characters, etc). 1 indicates the overall copy format is binary (similar to DataRow format). See COPY for more information.
Int16
The number of columns in the data to be copied (denoted \( n \) below).

Int16[\( n \)]
The format codes to be used for each column. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary). All must be zero if the overall copy format is textual.

DataRow (B)
Byte1('D')
Identifies the message as a data row.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int16
The number of column values that follow (possibly zero).

Next, the following pair of fields appear for each column:

Int32
The length of the column value, in bytes (this count does not include itself). Can be zero. As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL column value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

Byte\( n \)
The value of the column, in the format indicated by the associated format code. \( n \) is the above length.

Describe (F)
Byte1('D')
Identifies the message as a Describe command.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byte1
's' to describe a prepared statement; or 'p' to describe a portal.

String
The name of the prepared statement or portal to describe (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement or portal).

EmptyQueryResponse (B)
Byte1('I')
Identifies the message as a response to an empty query string. (This substitutes for CommandComplete.)

Int32(4)
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

ErrorResponse (B)
Byte1('E')
Identifies the message as an error.
Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

The message body consists of one or more identified fields, followed by a zero byte as a terminator. Fields can appear in any order. For each field there is the following:

Byte1
A code identifying the field type; if zero, this is the message terminator and no string follows. The presently defined field types are listed in Section 51.8. Since more field types might be added in future, frontends should silently ignore fields of unrecognized type.

String
The field value.

Execute (F)
Byte1('E')
Identifies the message as an Execute command.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String
The name of the portal to execute (an empty string selects the unnamed portal).

Int32
Maximum number of rows to return, if portal contains a query that returns rows (ignored otherwise). Zero denotes “no limit”.

Flush (F)
Byte1('H')
Identifies the message as a Flush command.

Int32(4)
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

FunctionCall (F)
Byte1('F')
Identifies the message as a function call.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32
Specifies the object ID of the function to call.

Int16
The number of argument format codes that follow (denoted \texttt{c} below). This can be zero to indicate that there are no arguments or that the arguments all use the default format (text); or one, in which case the specified format code is applied to all arguments; or it can equal the actual number of arguments.

Int16[\texttt{c}]
The argument format codes. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary).
Int16
  Specifies the number of arguments being supplied to the function.

Next, the following pair of fields appear for each argument:

Int32
  The length of the argument value, in bytes (this count does not include itself). Can be zero. As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL argument value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

Byte
  The value of the argument, in the format indicated by the associated format code. \( n \) is the above length.

After the last argument, the following field appears:

Int16
  The format code for the function result. Must presently be zero (text) or one (binary).

FunctionCallResponse (B)

Byte1('V')
  Identifies the message as a function call result.

Int32
  Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32
  The length of the function result value, in bytes (this count does not include itself). Can be zero. As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL function result. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

Byte
  The value of the function result, in the format indicated by the associated format code. \( n \) is the above length.

GSSENCRequest (F)

Int32(8)
  Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(80877104)
  The GSSAPI Encryption request code. The value is chosen to contain 1234 in the most significant 16 bits, and 5680 in the least significant 16 bits. (To avoid confusion, this code must not be the same as any protocol version number.)

GSSResponse (F)

Byte1('p')
  Identifies the message as a GSSAPI or SSPI response. Note that this is also used for SASL and password response messages. The exact message type can be deduced from the context.

Int32
  Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byte
  GSSAPI/SSPI specific message data.
NegotiateProtocolVersion (B)

Byte1('v')
Identifies the message as a protocol version negotiation message.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32
Newest minor protocol version supported by the server for the major protocol version requested by the client.

Int32
Number of protocol options not recognized by the server.

Then, for protocol option not recognized by the server, there is the following:

String
The option name.

NoData (B)

Byte1('n')
Identifies the message as a no-data indicator.

Int32(4)
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

NoticeResponse (B)

Byte1('N')
Identifies the message as a notice.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

The message body consists of one or more identified fields, followed by a zero byte as a terminator. Fields can appear in any order. For each field there is the following:

Byte1
A code identifying the field type; if zero, this is the message terminator and no string follows. The presently defined field types are listed in Section 51.8. Since more field types might be added in future, frontends should silently ignore fields of unrecognized type.

String
The field value.

NotificationResponse (B)

Byte1('A')
Identifies the message as a notification response.

Int32
Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32
The process ID of the notifying backend process.
String
   The name of the channel that the notify has been raised on.

String
   The “payload” string passed from the notifying process.

ParameterDescription (B)
   Byte1('t')
      Identifies the message as a parameter description.

   Int32
      Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

   Int16
      The number of parameters used by the statement (can be zero).

Then, for each parameter, there is the following:
   Int32
      Specifies the object ID of the parameter data type.

ParameterStatus (B)
   Byte1('S')
      Identifies the message as a run-time parameter status report.

   Int32
      Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

   String
      The name of the run-time parameter being reported.

   String
      The current value of the parameter.

Parse (F)
   Byte1('P')
      Identifies the message as a Parse command.

   Int32
      Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

   String
      The name of the destination prepared statement (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement).

   String
      The query string to be parsed.

   Int16
      The number of parameter data types specified (can be zero). Note that this is not an indication of the number of parameters that might appear in the query string, only the number that the frontend wants to prespecify types for.

Then, for each parameter, there is the following:
Int32
   Specifies the object ID of the parameter data type. Placing a zero here is equivalent to leaving
   the type unspecified.

ParseComplete (B)
   Byte1('1')
   Identifies the message as a Parse-complete indicator.

   Int32(4)
   Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

PasswordMessage (F)
   Byte1('p')
   Identifies the message as a password response. Note that this is also used for GSSAPI, SSPI and
   SASL response messages. The exact message type can be deduced from the context.

   Int32
   Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

   String
   The password (encrypted, if requested).

PortalSuspended (B)
   Byte1('s')
   Identifies the message as a portal-suspended indicator. Note this only appears if an Execute
   message's row-count limit was reached.

   Int32(4)
   Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Query (F)
   Byte1('O')
   Identifies the message as a simple query.

   Int32
   Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

   String
   The query string itself.

ReadyForQuery (B)
   Byte1('Z')
   Identifies the message type. ReadyForQuery is sent whenever the backend is ready for a new
   query cycle.

   Int32(5)
   Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

   Byte1
   Current backend transaction status indicator. Possible values are 'i' if idle (not in a transaction
   block); 't' if in a transaction block; or 'e' if in a failed transaction block (queries will be rejected
   until block is ended).
RowDescription (B)
  Byte1('T')
    Identifies the message as a row description.
  Int32
    Length of message contents in bytes, including self.
  Int16
    Specifies the number of fields in a row (can be zero).
Then, for each field, there is the following:
  String
    The field name.
  Int32
    If the field can be identified as a column of a specific table, the object ID of the table; otherwise zero.
  Int16
    If the field can be identified as a column of a specific table, the attribute number of the column; otherwise zero.
  Int32
    The object ID of the field's data type.
  Int16
    The data type size (see pg_type.typlen). Note that negative values denote variable-width types.
  Int32
    The type modifier (see pg_attribute.atttypmod). The meaning of the modifier is type-specific.
  Int16
    The format code being used for the field. Currently will be zero (text) or one (binary). In a RowDescription returned from the statement variant of Describe, the format code is not yet known and will always be zero.

SASLInitialResponse (F)
  Byte1('p')
    Identifies the message as an initial SASL response. Note that this is also used for GSSAPI, SSPI and password response messages. The exact message type is deduced from the context.
  Int32
    Length of message contents in bytes, including self.
  String
    Name of the SASL authentication mechanism that the client selected.
  Int32
    Length of SASL mechanism specific "Initial Client Response" that follows, or -1 if there is no Initial Response.
  Byte
    SASL mechanism specific "Initial Response".
SASLResponse (F)

Byte1('p')

Identifies the message as a SASL response. Note that this is also used for GSSAPI, SSPI and password response messages. The exact message type can be deduced from the context.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byte

SASL mechanism specific message data.

SSLRequest (F)

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(80877103)

The SSL request code. The value is chosen to contain 1234 in the most significant 16 bits, and 5679 in the least significant 16 bits. (To avoid confusion, this code must not be the same as any protocol version number.)

StartupMessage (F)

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(196608)

The protocol version number. The most significant 16 bits are the major version number (3 for the protocol described here). The least significant 16 bits are the minor version number (0 for the protocol described here).

The protocol version number is followed by one or more pairs of parameter name and value strings. A zero byte is required as a terminator after the last name/value pair. Parameters can appear in any order. `user` is required, others are optional. Each parameter is specified as:

String

The parameter name. Currently recognized names are:

user

The database user name to connect as. Required; there is no default.

database

The database to connect to. Defaults to the user name.

options

Command-line arguments for the backend. (This is deprecated in favor of setting individual run-time parameters.) Spaces within this string are considered to separate arguments, unless escaped with a backslash (\); write ```\``` to represent a literal backslash.

replication

Used to connect in streaming replication mode, where a small set of replication commands can be issued instead of SQL statements. Value can be `true`, `false`, or `database`, and the default is `false`. See Section 51.4 for details.

In addition to the above, other parameters may be listed. Parameter names beginning with `pq_` are reserved for use as protocol extensions, while others are treated as run-time parameters to
be set at backend start time. Such settings will be applied during backend start (after parsing the command-line arguments if any) and will act as session defaults.

String
  The parameter value.

Sync (F)
  Byte1('S')
  Identifies the message as a Sync command.

Int32(4)
  Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Terminate (F)
  Byte1('X')
  Identifies the message as a termination.

Int32(4)
  Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

51.8. Error and Notice Message Fields

This section describes the fields that can appear in ErrorResponse and NoticeResponse messages. Each field type has a single-byte identification token. Note that any given field type should appear at most once per message.

S
  Severity: the field contents are ERROR, FATAL, or PANIC (in an error message), or WARNING, NOTICE, DEBUG, INFO, or LOG (in a notice message), or a localized translation of one of these. Always present.

V
  Severity: the field contents are ERROR, FATAL, or PANIC (in an error message), or WARNING, NOTICE, DEBUG, INFO, or LOG (in a notice message). This is identical to the S field except that the contents are never localized. This is present only in messages generated by Postgres Pro versions 9.6 and later.

C
  Code: the SQLSTATE code for the error (see Appendix A). Not localizable. Always present.

M
  Message: the primary human-readable error message. This should be accurate but terse (typically one line). Always present.

D
  Detail: an optional secondary error message carrying more detail about the problem. Might run to multiple lines.

H
  Hint: an optional suggestion what to do about the problem. This is intended to differ from Detail in that it offers advice (potentially inappropriate) rather than hard facts. Might run to multiple lines.

P
  Position: the field value is a decimal ASCII integer, indicating an error cursor position as an index into the original query string. The first character has index 1, and positions are measured in characters not bytes.
Internal position: this is defined the same as the \( P \) field, but it is used when the cursor position refers to an internally generated command rather than the one submitted by the client. The \( q \) field will always appear when this field appears.

Internal query: the text of a failed internally-generated command. This could be, for example, an SQL query issued by a PL/pgSQL function.

Where: an indication of the context in which the error occurred. Presently this includes a call stack traceback of active procedural language functions and internally-generated queries. The trace is one entry per line, most recent first.

Schema name: if the error was associated with a specific database object, the name of the schema containing that object, if any.

Table name: if the error was associated with a specific table, the name of the table. (Refer to the schema name field for the name of the table's schema.)

Column name: if the error was associated with a specific table column, the name of the column. (Refer to the schema and table name fields to identify the table.)

Data type name: if the error was associated with a specific data type, the name of the data type. (Refer to the schema name field for the name of the data type's schema.)

Constraint name: if the error was associated with a specific constraint, the name of the constraint. Refer to fields listed above for the associated table or domain. (For this purpose, indexes are treated as constraints, even if they weren't created with constraint syntax.)

File: the file name of the source-code location where the error was reported.

Line: the line number of the source-code location where the error was reported.

Routine: the name of the source-code routine reporting the error.

---

**Note**

The fields for schema name, table name, column name, data type name, and constraint name are supplied only for a limited number of error types; see Appendix A. Frontends should not assume that the presence of any of these fields guarantees the presence of another field. Core error sources observe the interrelationships noted above, but user-defined functions may use these fields in other ways. In the same vein, clients should not assume that these fields denote contemporary objects in the current database.
The client is responsible for formatting displayed information to meet its needs; in particular it should break long lines as needed. Newline characters appearing in the error message fields should be treated as paragraph breaks, not line breaks.

51.9. Logical Replication Message Formats

This section describes the detailed format of each logical replication message. These messages are returned either by the replication slot SQL interface or are sent by a walsender. In case of a walsender they are encapsulated inside the replication protocol WAL messages as described in Section 51.4 and generally obey same message flow as physical replication.

Begin
  Byte1('B')
  Identifies the message as a begin message.
  Int64
  The final LSN of the transaction.
  Int64
  Commit timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since Postgres Pro epoch (2000-01-01).
  Int32
  Xid of the transaction.

Message
  Byte1('M')
  Identifies the message as a logical decoding message.
  Int32
  Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.
  Int8
  Flags; Either 0 for no flags or 1 if the logical decoding message is transactional.
  Int64
  The LSN of the logical decoding message.
  String
  The prefix of the logical decoding message.
  Int32
  Length of the content.
  Byte
  The content of the logical decoding message.

Commit
  Byte1('C')
  Identifies the message as a commit message.
  Int8
  Flags; currently unused (must be 0).
Int64
The LSN of the commit.

Int64
The end LSN of the transaction.

Int64
Commit timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since Postgres Pro epoch (2000-01-01).

Origin
 Byte1('O')
 Identifies the message as an origin message.

Int64
The LSN of the commit on the origin server.

String
Name of the origin.

Note that there can be multiple Origin messages inside a single transaction.

Relation
 Byte1('R')
 Identifies the message as a relation message.

Int32
Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32
ID of the relation.

String
Namespace (empty string for pg_catalog).

String
Relation name.

Int8
Replica identity setting for the relation (same as relreplident in pg_class).

Int16
Number of columns.

Next, the following message part appears for each column (except generated columns):

Int8
Flags for the column. Currently can be either 0 for no flags or 1 which marks the column as part of the key.

String
Name of the column.
Int32
ID of the column's data type.

Int32
Type modifier of the column (atttypmod).

Type
Byte1('Y')
Identifies the message as a type message.

Int32
Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32
ID of the data type.

String
Namespace (empty string for pg_catalog).

String
Name of the data type.

Insert
Byte1('I')
Identifies the message as an insert message.

Int32
Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32
ID of the relation corresponding to the ID in the relation message.

Byte1('N')
Identifies the following TupleData message as a new tuple.

TupleData
TupleData message part representing the contents of new tuple.

Update
Byte1('U')
Identifies the message as an update message.

Int32
Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32
ID of the relation corresponding to the ID in the relation message.
Byte1('K')
Identifies the following TupleData submessage as a key. This field is optional and is only present if the update changed data in any of the column(s) that are part of the REPLICA IDENTITY index.

Byte1('O')
Identifies the following TupleData submessage as an old tuple. This field is optional and is only present if table in which the update happened has REPLICA IDENTITY set to FULL.

TupleData
TupleData message part representing the contents of the old tuple or primary key. Only present if the previous 'O' or 'K' part is present.

Byte1('N')
Identifies the following TupleData message as a new tuple.

TupleData
TupleData message part representing the contents of a new tuple.

The Update message may contain either a 'K' message part or an 'O' message part or neither of them, but never both of them.

Delete
Byte1('D')
Identifies the message as a delete message.

Int32
Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32
ID of the relation corresponding to the ID in the relation message.

Byte1('K')
Identifies the following TupleData submessage as a key. This field is present if the table in which the delete has happened uses an index as REPLICA IDENTITY.

Byte1('O')
Identifies the following TupleData message as an old tuple. This field is present if the table in which the delete happened has REPLICA IDENTITY set to FULL.

TupleData
TupleData message part representing the contents of the old tuple or primary key, depending on the previous field.

The Delete message may contain either a 'K' message part or an 'O' message part, but never both of them.

Truncate
Byte1('T')
Identifies the message as a truncate message.

Int32
Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.
Int32  
Number of relations

Int8  
**Option bits for TRUNCATE:** 1 for CASCADE, 2 for RESTART IDENTITY

Int32  
ID of the relation corresponding to the ID in the relation message. This field is repeated for each relation.

The following messages (Stream Start, Stream Stop, Stream Commit, and Stream Abort) are available since protocol version 2.

**Stream Start**

Byte1('S')  
Identifies the message as a stream start message.

Int32  
Xid of the transaction.

Int8  
A value of 1 indicates this is the first stream segment for this XID, 0 for any other stream segment.

**Stream Stop**

Byte1('E')  
Identifies the message as a stream stop message.

**Stream Commit**

Byte1('c')  
Identifies the message as a stream commit message.

Int32  
Xid of the transaction.

Int8  
Flags; currently unused (must be 0).

Int64  
The LSN of the commit.

Int64  
The end LSN of the transaction.

Int64  
Commit timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

**Stream Abort**

Byte1('A')  
Identifies the message as a stream abort message.
Frontend/Backend Protocol

Int32
Xid of the transaction.

Int32
Xid of the subtransaction (will be same as xid of the transaction for top-level transactions).

The following message parts are shared by the above messages.

TupleData

Int16
Number of columns.

Next, one of the following submessages appears for each column (except generated columns):

Byte1('n')
Identifies the data as NULL value.

Or

Byte1('u')
Identifies unchanged TOASTed value (the actual value is not sent).

Or

Byte1('t')
Identifies the data as text formatted value.

Or

Byte1('b')
Identifies the data as binary formatted value.

Int32
Length of the column value.

Byteₙ
The value of the column, either in binary or in text format. (As specified in the preceding format byte). ₙ is the above length.

51.10. Summary of Changes since Protocol 2.0

This section provides a quick checklist of changes, for the benefit of developers trying to update existing client libraries to protocol 3.0.

The initial startup packet uses a flexible list-of-strings format instead of a fixed format. Notice that session default values for run-time parameters can now be specified directly in the startup packet. (Actually, you could do that before using the options field, but given the limited width of options and the lack of any way to quote whitespace in the values, it wasn't a very safe technique.)

All messages now have a length count immediately following the message type byte (except for startup packets, which have no type byte). Also note that PasswordMessage now has a type byte.

ErrorResponse and NoticeResponse (‘E’ and ‘N’) messages now contain multiple fields, from which the client code can assemble an error message of the desired level of verbosity. Note that individual fields will typically not end with a newline, whereas the single string sent in the older protocol always did.

The ReadyForQuery (‘Z’) message includes a transaction status indicator.
The distinction between BinaryRow and DataRow message types is gone; the single DataRow message
type serves for returning data in all formats. Note that the layout of DataRow has changed to make it
easier to parse. Also, the representation of binary values has changed: it is no longer directly tied to
the server’s internal representation.

There is a new “extended query” sub-protocol, which adds the frontend message types Parse,
Bind, Execute, Describe, Close, Flush, and Sync, and the backend message types ParseComplete,
BindComplete, PortalSuspended, ParameterDescription, NoData, and CloseComplete. Existing clients
do not have to concern themselves with this sub-protocol, but making use of it might allow improvements
in performance or functionality.

COPY data is now encapsulated into CopyData and CopyDone messages. There is a well-defined way
to recover from errors during COPY. The special “\.” last line is not needed anymore, and is not sent
during COPY OUT. (It is still recognized as a terminator during COPY IN, but its use is deprecated and will
eventually be removed.) Binary COPY is supported. The CopyInResponse and CopyOutResponse messages
include fields indicating the number of columns and the format of each column.

The layout of FunctionCall and FunctionCallResponse messages has changed. FunctionCall can now
support passing NULL arguments to functions. It also can handle passing parameters and retrieving
results in either text or binary format. There is no longer any reason to consider FunctionCall a potential
security hole, since it does not offer direct access to internal server data representations.

The backend sends ParameterStatus (’S’) messages during connection startup for all parameters it
considers interesting to the client library. Subsequently, a ParameterStatus message is sent whenever
the active value changes for any of these parameters.

The RowDescription (’R’) message carries new table OID and column number fields for each column of
the described row. It also shows the format code for each column.

The CursorResponse (’P’) message is no longer generated by the backend.

The NotificationResponse (’A’) message has an additional string field, which can carry a “payload” string
passed from the NOTIFY event sender.

The EmptyQueryResponse (’I’) message used to include an empty string parameter; this has been
removed.
All calls to functions that are written in a language other than the current “version 1” interface for compiled languages (this includes functions in user-defined procedural languages and functions written in SQL) go through a call handler function for the specific language. It is the responsibility of the call handler to execute the function in a meaningful way, such as by interpreting the supplied source text. This chapter outlines how a new procedural language's call handler can be written.

The call handler for a procedural language is a “normal” function that must be written in a compiled language such as C, using the version-1 interface, and registered with PostgreSQL as taking no arguments and returning the type `language_handler`. This special pseudo-type identifies the function as a call handler and prevents it from being called directly in SQL commands. For more details on C language calling conventions and dynamic loading, see Section 36.10.

The call handler is called in the same way as any other function: It receives a pointer to a `FunctionCallInfoBaseData` struct containing argument values and information about the called function, and it is expected to return a `Datum` result (and possibly set the `isnull` field of the `FunctionCallInfoBaseData` structure, if it wishes to return an SQL null result). The difference between a call handler and an ordinary callee function is that the `flinfo->fn_oid` field of the `FunctionCallInfoBaseData` structure will contain the OID of the actual function to be called, not of the call handler itself. The call handler must use this field to determine which function to execute. Also, the passed argument list has been set up according to the declaration of the target function, not of the call handler.

It's up to the call handler to fetch the entry of the function from the `pg_proc` system catalog and to analyze the argument and return types of the called function. The `AS` clause from the `CREATE FUNCTION` command for the function will be found in the `prosrc` column of the `pg_proc` row. This is commonly source text in the procedural language, but in theory it could be something else, such as a path name to a file, or anything else that tells the call handler what to do in detail.

Often, the same function is called many times per SQL statement. A call handler can avoid repeated lookups of information about the called function by using the `flinfo->fn_extra` field. This will initially be `NULL`, but can be set by the call handler to point at information about the called function. On subsequent calls, if `flinfo->fn_extra` is already non-`NULL` then it can be used and the information lookup step skipped. The call handler must make sure that `flinfo->fn_extra` is made to point at memory that will live at least until the end of the current query, since an `FmgrInfo` data structure could be kept that long. One way to do this is to allocate the extra data in the memory context specified by `flinfo->fn_mcxt`; Such data will normally have the same lifespan as the `FmgrInfo` itself. But the handler could also choose to use a longer-lived memory context so that it can cache function definition information across queries.

When a procedural-language function is invoked as a trigger, no arguments are passed in the usual way, but the `FunctionCallInfoBaseData`'s `context` field points at a `TriggerData` structure, rather than being `NULL` as it is in a plain function call. A language handler should provide mechanisms for procedural-language functions to get at the trigger information.

Although providing a call handler is sufficient to create a minimal procedural language, there are two other functions that can optionally be provided to make the language more convenient to use. These are a validator and an inline handler. A validator can be provided to allow language-specific checking to be done during `CREATE FUNCTION`. An inline handler can be provided to allow the language to support anonymous code blocks executed via the `DO` command.

If a validator is provided by a procedural language, it must be declared as a function taking a single parameter of type `oid`. The validator's result is ignored, so it is customarily declared to return `void`. The validator will be called at the end of a `CREATE FUNCTION` command that has created or updated a function written in the procedural language. The passed-in OID is the OID of the function's `pg_proc`
Writing a Procedural Language Handler

row. The validator must fetch this row in the usual way, and do whatever checking is appropriate. First, call `CheckFunctionValidatorAccess()` to diagnose explicit calls to the validator that the user could not achieve through `CREATE FUNCTION`. Typical checks then include verifying that the function's argument and result types are supported by the language, and that the function's body is syntactically correct in the language. If the validator finds the function to be okay, it should just return. If it finds an error, it should report that via the normal `ereport()` error reporting mechanism. Throwing an error will force a transaction rollback and thus prevent the incorrect function definition from being committed.

Validator functions should typically honor the `check_function_bodies` parameter: if it is turned off then any expensive or context-sensitive checking should be skipped. If the language provides for code execution at compilation time, the validator must suppress checks that would induce such execution. In particular, this parameter is turned off by `pg_dump` so that it can load procedural language functions without worrying about side effects or dependencies of the function bodies on other database objects. (Because of this requirement, the call handler should avoid assuming that the validator has fully checked the function. The point of having a validator is not to let the call handler omit checks, but to notify the user immediately if there are obvious errors in a `CREATE FUNCTION` command.) While the choice of exactly what to check is mostly left to the discretion of the validator function, note that the core `CREATE FUNCTION` code only executes `SET` clauses attached to a function when `check_function_bodies` is on. Therefore, checks whose results might be affected by GUC parameters definitely should be skipped when `check_function_bodies` is off, to avoid false failures when reloading a dump.

If an inline handler is provided by a procedural language, it must be declared as a function taking a single parameter of type `internal`. The inline handler's result is ignored, so it is customarily declared to return `void`. The inline handler will be called when a `DO` statement is executed specifying the procedural language. The parameter actually passed is a pointer to an `InlineCodeBlock` struct, which contains information about the `DO` statement's parameters, in particular the text of the anonymous code block to be executed. The inline handler should execute this code and return.

It's recommended that you wrap all these function declarations, as well as the `CREATE LANGUAGE` command itself, into an `extension` so that a simple `CREATE EXTENSION` command is sufficient to install the language. See Section 36.17 for information about writing extensions.

The procedural languages included in the standard distribution are good references when trying to write your own language handler. The `CREATE LANGUAGE` reference page has some useful details.
Chapter 53. Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper

All operations on a foreign table are handled through its foreign data wrapper, which consists of a set of functions that the core server calls. The foreign data wrapper is responsible for fetching data from the remote data source and returning it to the Postgres Pro executor. If updating foreign tables is to be supported, the wrapper must handle that, too. This chapter outlines how to write a new foreign data wrapper.

The foreign data wrappers included in the standard distribution are good references when trying to write your own. Look into the contrib subdirectory of the source tree. The CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER reference page also has some useful details.

**Note**
The SQL standard specifies an interface for writing foreign data wrappers. However, Postgres Pro does not implement that API, because the effort to accommodate it into Postgres Pro would be large, and the standard API hasn't gained wide adoption anyway.

### 53.1. Foreign Data Wrapper Functions

The FDW author needs to implement a handler function, and optionally a validator function. Both functions must be written in a compiled language such as C, using the version-1 interface. For details on C language calling conventions and dynamic loading, see Section 36.10.

The handler function simply returns a struct of function pointers to callback functions that will be called by the planner, executor, and various maintenance commands. Most of the effort in writing an FDW is in implementing these callback functions. The handler function must be registered with Postgres Pro as taking no arguments and returning the special pseudo-type `fdw_handler`. The callback functions are plain C functions and are not visible or callable at the SQL level. The callback functions are described in Section 53.2.

The validator function is responsible for validating options given in CREATE and ALTER commands for its foreign data wrapper, as well as foreign servers, user mappings, and foreign tables using the wrapper. The validator function must be registered as taking two arguments, a text array containing the options to be validated, and an OID representing the type of object the options are associated with (in the form of the OID of the system catalog the object would be stored in, either `ForeignDataWrapperRelationId`, `ForeignServerRelationId`, `UserMappingRelationId`, or `ForeignTableRelationId`). If no validator function is supplied, options are not checked at object creation time or object alteration time.

### 53.2. Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Routines

The FDW handler function returns a malloc'd `FdwRoutine` struct containing pointers to the callback functions described below. The scan-related functions are required, the rest are optional.

The `FdwRoutine` struct type is declared in `src/include/foreign/fdwapi.h`, which see for additional details.

#### 53.2.1. FDW Routines for Scanning Foreign Tables

```c
void GetForeignRelSize(PlannerInfo *root,
                      RelOptInfo *baserel,
                      Oid foreigntableid);
```

Obtain relation size estimates for a foreign table. This is called at the beginning of planning for a query that scans a foreign table. `root` is the planner's global information about the query; `baserel` is the planner's information about this table; and `foreigntableid` is the `pg_class` OID of the foreign table.
(foreigntableid could be obtained from the planner data structures, but it’s passed explicitly to save effort.)

This function should update baserel->rows to be the expected number of rows returned by the table scan, after accounting for the filtering done by the restriction quals. The initial value of baserel->rows is just a constant default estimate, which should be replaced if at all possible. The function may also choose to update baserel->width if it can compute a better estimate of the average result row width. (The initial value is based on column data types and on column average-width values measured by the last ANALYZE.) Also, this function may update baserel->tuples if it can compute a better estimate of the foreign table’s total row count. (The initial value is from pg_class.rel tuples which represents the total row count seen by the last ANALYZE; it will be -1 if no ANALYZE has been done on this foreign table.)

See Section 53.4 for additional information.

void GetForeignPaths(PlannerInfo *root, RelOptInfo *baserel, Oid foreigntableid);

Create possible access paths for a scan on a foreign table. This is called during query planning. The parameters are the same as for GetForeignRelSize, which has already been called.

This function must generate at least one access path (ForeignPath node) for a scan on the foreign table and must call add_path to add each such path to baserel->pathlist. It’s recommended to use create_foreignscan_path to build the ForeignPath nodes. The function can generate multiple access paths, e.g., a path which has valid pathkeys to represent a pre-sorted result. Each access path must contain cost estimates, and can contain any FDW-private information that is needed to identify the specific scan method intended.

See Section 53.4 for additional information.

ForeignScan * GetForeignPlan(PlannerInfo *root, RelOptInfo *baserel, Oid foreigntableid, ForeignPath *best_path, List *tlist, List *scan_clauses, Plan *outer_plan);

Create a ForeignScan plan node from the selected foreign access path. This is called at the end of query planning. The parameters are as for GetForeignRelSize, plus the selected ForeignPath (previously produced by GetForeignPaths, GetForeignJoinPaths, or GetForeignUpperPaths), the target list to be emitted by the plan node, the restriction clauses to be enforced by the plan node, and the outer subplan of the ForeignScan, which is used for rechecks performed by RecheckForeignScan. (If the path is for a join rather than a base relation, foreigntableid is InvalidOid.)

This function must create and return a ForeignScan plan node; it’s recommended to use make_foreignscan to build the ForeignScan node.

See Section 53.4 for additional information.

void BeginForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, int eflags);

Begin executing a foreign scan. This is called during executor startup. It should perform any initialization needed before the scan can start, but not start executing the actual scan (that should be done upon the first call to IterateForeignScan). The ForeignScanState node has already been created, but its fdw_state field is still NULL. Information about the table to scan is accessible through the ForeignScanState node (in particular, from the underlying ForeignScan plan node, which contains
any FDW-private information provided by GetForeignPlan. eflags contains flag bits describing the executor's operating mode for this plan node.

Note that when (eflags & EXEC_FLAG_EXPLAIN_ONLY) is true, this function should not perform any externally-visible actions; it should only do the minimum required to make the node state valid for ExplainForeignScan and EndForeignScan.

TupleTableSlot *
IterateForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node);

Fetch one row from the foreign source, returning it in a tuple table slot (the node's ScanTupleSlot should be used for this purpose). Return NULL if no more rows are available. The tuple table slot infrastructure allows either a physical or virtual tuple to be returned; in most cases the latter choice is preferable from a performance standpoint. Note that this is called in a short-lived memory context that will be reset between invocations. Create a memory context in BeginForeignScan if you need longer-lived storage, or use the es_query_cxt of the node's EState.

The rows returned must match the fdw_scan_tlist target list if one was supplied, otherwise they must match the row type of the foreign table being scanned. If you choose to optimize away fetching columns that are not needed, you should insert nulls in those column positions, or else generate a fdw_scan_tlist list with those columns omitted.

Note that PostgreSQL's executor doesn't care whether the rows returned violate any constraints that were defined on the foreign table — but the planner does care, and may optimize queries incorrectly if there are rows visible in the foreign table that do not satisfy a declared constraint. If a constraint is violated when the user has declared that the constraint should hold true, it may be appropriate to raise an error (just as you would need to do in the case of a data type mismatch).

void
ReScanForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node);

Restart the scan from the beginning. Note that any parameters the scan depends on may have changed value, so the new scan does not necessarily return exactly the same rows.

void
EndForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node);

End the scan and release resources. It is normally not important to release palloc'd memory, but for example open files and connections to remote servers should be cleaned up.

53.2.2. FDW Routines for Scanning Foreign Joins

If an FDW supports performing foreign joins remotely (rather than by fetching both tables' data and doing the join locally), it should provide this callback function:

void
GetForeignJoinPaths(PlannerInfo *root,
                  RelOptInfo *joinrel,
                  RelOptInfo *outerrel,
                  RelOptInfo *innerrel,
                  JoinType jointype,
                  JoinPathExtraData *extra);

Create possible access paths for a join of two (or more) foreign tables that all belong to the same foreign server. This optional function is called during query planning. As with GetForeignPaths, this function should generate ForeignPath path(s) for the supplied joinrel (use create_foreign_join_path to build them), and call add_path to add these paths to the set of paths considered for the join. But unlike GetForeignPaths, it is not necessary that this function succeed in creating at least one path, since paths involving local joining are always possible.

Note that this function will be invoked repeatedly for the same join relation, with different combinations of inner and outer relations; it is the responsibility of the FDW to minimize duplicated work.
If a `ForeignPath` path is chosen for the join, it will represent the entire join process; paths generated for the component tables and subsidiary joins will not be used. Subsequent processing of the join path proceeds much as it does for a path scanning a single foreign table. One difference is that the `scanrelid` of the resulting `ForeignScan` plan node should be set to zero, since there is no single relation that it represents; instead, the `fs_relids` field of the `ForeignScan` node represents the set of relations that were joined. (The latter field is set up automatically by the core planner code, and need not be filled by the FDW.) Another difference is that, because the column list for a remote join cannot be found from the system catalogs, the FDW must fill `fdw_scan_tlist` with an appropriate list of `TargetEntry` nodes, representing the set of columns it will supply at run time in the tuples it returns.

See Section 53.4 for additional information.

### 53.2.3. FDW Routines for Planning Post-Scan/Join Processing

If an FDW supports performing remote post-scan/join processing, such as remote aggregation, it should provide this callback function:

```c
void GetForeignUpperPaths(PlannerInfo *root,
                          UpperRelationKind stage,
                          RelOptInfo *input_rel,
                          RelOptInfo *output_rel,
                          void *extra);
```

Create possible access paths for upper relation processing, which is the planner's term for all post-scan/join query processing, such as aggregation, window functions, sorting, and table updates. This optional function is called during query planning. Currently, it is called only if all base relation(s) involved in the query belong to the same FDW. This function should generate `ForeignPath` path(s) for any post-scan/join processing that the FDW knows how to perform remotely (use `create_foreign_upper_path` to build them), and call `add_path` to add these paths to the indicated upper relation. As with `GetForeignJoinPaths`, it is not necessary that this function succeed in creating any paths, since paths involving local processing are always possible.

The `stage` parameter identifies which post-scan/join step is currently being considered. `output_rel` is the upper relation that should receive paths representing computation of this step, and `input_rel` is the relation representing the input to this step. The `extra` parameter provides additional details, currently, it is set only for `UPPERREL_PARTIAL_GROUP_AGG` or `UPPERREL_GROUP_AGG`, in which case it points to a `GroupPathExtraData` structure; or for `UPPERREL_FINAL`, in which case it points to a `FinalPathExtraData` structure. (Note that `ForeignPath` paths added to `output_rel` would typically not have any direct dependency on paths of the `input_rel`, since their processing is expected to be done externally. However, examining paths previously generated for the previous processing step can be useful to avoid redundant planning work.)

See Section 53.4 for additional information.

### 53.2.4. FDW Routines for Updating Foreign Tables

If an FDW supports writable foreign tables, it should provide some or all of the following callback functions depending on the needs and capabilities of the FDW:

```c
void AddForeignUpdateTargets(PlannerInfo *root,
                             Index rtindex,
                             RangeTblEntry *target_rte,
                             Relation target_relation);
```

`UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations are performed against rows previously fetched by the table-scanning functions. The FDW may need extra information, such as a row ID or the values of primary-key columns, to ensure that it can identify the exact row to update or delete. To support that, this function can add
extra hidden, or “junk”, target columns to the list of columns that are to be retrieved from the foreign table during an UPDATE or DELETE.

To do that, construct a Var representing an extra value you need, and pass it to add_row_identity_var, along with a name for the junk column. (You can do this more than once if several columns are needed.) You must choose a distinct junk column name for each different Var you need, except that Vars that are identical except for the varno field can and should share a column name. The core system uses the junk column names tableoid for a table’s tableoid column, ctid or ctidN for ctid, wholerow for a whole-row Var marked with vartype = RECORD, and wholerowN for a whole-row Var with vartype equal to the table’s declared row type. Re-use these names when you can (the planner will combine duplicate requests for identical junk columns). If you need another kind of junk column besides these, it might be wise to choose a name prefixed with your extension name, to avoid conflicts against other FDWs.

If the AddForeignUpdateTargets pointer is set to NULL, no extra target expressions are added. (This will make it impossible to implement DELETE operations, though UPDATE may still be feasible if the FDW relies on an unchanging primary key to identify rows.)

List *
PlanForeignModify(PlannerInfo *root,
    ModifyTable *plan,
    Index resultRelation,
    int subplan_index);

Perform any additional planning actions needed for an insert, update, or delete on a foreign table. This function generates the FDW-private information that will be attached to the ModifyTable plan node that performs the update action. This private information must have the form of a List, and will be delivered to BeginForeignModify during the execution stage.

root is the planner's global information about the query, plan is the ModifyTable plan node, which is complete except for the fdwPrivLists field. resultRelation identifies the target foreign table by its range table index. subplan_index identifies which target of the ModifyTable plan node this is, counting from zero; use this if you want to index into per-target-relation substructures of the plan node.

See Section 53.4 for additional information.

If the PlanForeignModify pointer is set to NULL, no additional plan-time actions are taken, and the fdw_private list delivered to BeginForeignModify will be NIL.

void
BeginForeignModify(ModifyTableState *mtstate,
    ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
    List *fdw_private,
    int subplan_index,
    int eflags);

Begin executing a foreign table modification operation. This routine is called during executor startup. It should perform any initialization needed prior to the actual table modifications. Subsequently, ExecForeignInsert/ExecForeignBatchInsert, ExecForeignUpdate or ExecForeignDelete will be called for tuple(s) to be inserted, updated, or deleted.

mtstate is the overall state of the ModifyTable plan node being executed; global data about the plan and execution state is available via this structure. rinfo is the ResultRelInfo struct describing the target foreign table. (The ri_FdwState field of ResultRelInfo is available for the FDW to store any private state it needs for this operation.) fdw_private contains the private data generated by PlanForeignModify, if any. subplan_index identifies which target of the ModifyTable plan node this is. eflags contains flag bits describing the executor’s operating mode for this plan node.

Note that when (eflags & EXEC_FLAG_EXPLAIN_ONLY) is true, this function should not perform any externally-visible actions; it should only do the minimum required to make the node state valid for ExplainForeignModify and EndForeignModify.
If the BeginForeignModify pointer is set to NULL, no action is taken during executor startup.

TupleTableSlot *
ExecForeignInsert(EState *estate,
    ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
    TupleTableSlot *slot,
    TupleTableSlot *planSlot);

Insert one tuple into the foreign table. estate is global execution state for the query. rinfo is the ResultRelInfo struct describing the target foreign table. slot contains the tuple to be inserted; it will match the row-type definition of the foreign table. planSlot contains the tuple that was generated by the ModifyTable plan node's subplan; it differs from slot in possibly containing additional “junk” columns. (The planSlot is typically of little interest for INSERT cases, but is provided for completeness.)

The return value is either a slot containing the data that was actually inserted (this might differ from the data supplied, for example as a result of trigger actions), or NULL if no row was actually inserted (again, typically as a result of triggers). The passed-in slot can be re-used for this purpose.

The data in the returned slot is used only if the INSERT statement has a RETURNING clause or involves a view WITH CHECK OPTION; or if the foreign table has an AFTER ROW trigger. Triggers require all columns, but the FDW could choose to optimize away returning some or all columns depending on the contents of the RETURNING clause or WITH CHECK OPTION constraints. Regardless, some slot must be returned to indicate success, or the query's reported row count will be wrong.

If the ExecForeignInsert pointer is set to NULL, attempts to insert into the foreign table will fail with an error message.

Note that this function is also called when inserting routed tuples into a foreign-table partition or executing COPY FROM on a foreign table, in which case it is called in a different way than it is in the INSERT case. See the callback functions described below that allow the FDW to support that.

TupleTableSlot **
ExecForeignBatchInsert(EState *estate,
    ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
    TupleTableSlot **slots,
    TupleTableSlot **planSlots,
    int *numSlots);

Insert multiple tuples in bulk into the foreign table. The parameters are the same for ExecForeignInsert except slots and planSlots contain multiple tuples and *numSlots specifies the number of tuples in those arrays.

The return value is an array of slots containing the data that was actually inserted (this might differ from the data supplied, for example as a result of trigger actions.) The passed-in slots can be re-used for this purpose. The number of successfully inserted tuples is returned in *numSlots.

The data in the returned slot is used only if the INSERT statement involves a view WITH CHECK OPTION; or if the foreign table has an AFTER ROW trigger. Triggers require all columns, but the FDW could choose to optimize away returning some or all columns depending on the contents of the WITH CHECK OPTION constraints.

If the ExecForeignBatchInsert or GetForeignModifyBatchSize pointer is set to NULL, attempts to insert into the foreign table will use ExecForeignInsert. This function is not used if the INSERT has the RETURNING clause.

Note that this function is also called when inserting routed tuples into a foreign-table partition. See the callback functions described below that allow the FDW to support that.

int
GetForeignModifyBatchSize(ResultRelInfo *rinfo);
Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper

Report the maximum number of tuples that a single `ExecForeignBatchInsert` call can handle for the specified foreign table. The executor passes at most the given number of tuples to `ExecForeignBatchInsert`. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. The FDW is expected to provide a foreign server and/or foreign table option for the user to set this value, or some hard-coded value.

If the `ExecForeignBatchInsert` or `GetForeignModifyBatchSize` pointer is set to NULL, attempts to insert into the foreign table will use `ExecForeignInsert`.

```c
TupleTableSlot *
ExecForeignUpdate(EState *estate,
    ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
    TupleTableSlot *slot,
    TupleTableSlot *planSlot);
```

Update one tuple in the foreign table. `estate` is global execution state for the query. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. `slot` contains the new data for the tuple; it will match the row-type definition of the foreign table. `planSlot` contains the tuple that was generated by the `ModifyTable` plan node's subplan. Unlike `slot`, this tuple contains only the new values for columns changed by the query, so do not rely on attribute numbers of the foreign table to index into `planSlot`. Also, `planSlot` typically contains additional “junk” columns. In particular, any junk columns that were requested by `AddForeignUpdateTargets` will be available from this slot.

The return value is either a slot containing the row as it was actually updated (this might differ from the data supplied, for example as a result of trigger actions), or NULL if no row was actually updated (again, typically as a result of triggers). The passed-in `slot` can be re-used for this purpose.

The data in the returned slot is used only if the UPDATE statement has a RETURNING clause or involves a view WITH CHECK OPTION; or if the foreign table has an AFTER ROW trigger. Triggers require all columns, but the FDW could choose to optimize away returning some or all columns depending on the contents of the RETURNING clause or WITH CHECK OPTION constraints. Regardless, some slot must be returned to indicate success, or the query's reported row count will be wrong.

If the `ExecForeignUpdate` pointer is set to NULL, attempts to update the foreign table will fail with an error message.

```c
TupleTableSlot *
ExecForeignDelete(EState *estate,
    ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
    TupleTableSlot *slot,
    TupleTableSlot *planSlot);
```

Delete one tuple from the foreign table. `estate` is global execution state for the query. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. `slot` contains nothing useful upon call, but can be used to hold the returned tuple. `planSlot` contains the tuple that was generated by the `ModifyTable` plan node's subplan; in particular, it will carry any junk columns that were requested by `AddForeignUpdateTargets`. The junk column(s) must be used to identify the tuple to be deleted.

The return value is either a slot containing the row that was deleted, or NULL if no row was deleted (typically as a result of triggers). The passed-in `slot` can be used to hold the tuple to be returned.

The data in the returned slot is used only if the DELETE query has a RETURNING clause or the foreign table has an AFTER ROW trigger. Triggers require all columns, but the FDW could choose to optimize away returning some or all columns depending on the contents of the RETURNING clause. Regardless, some slot must be returned to indicate success, or the query's reported row count will be wrong.

If the `ExecForeignDelete` pointer is set to NULL, attempts to delete from the foreign table will fail with an error message.

```c
void
EndForeignModify(EState *estate,
```
Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper

ResultRelInfo *rinfo);
End the table update and release resources. It is normally not important to release palloc’d memory, but for example open files and connections to remote servers should be cleaned up.

If the EndForeignModify pointer is set to NULL, no action is taken during executor shutdown.

Tuples inserted into a partitioned table by INSERT or COPY FROM are routed to partitions. If an FDW supports routable foreign-table partitions, it should also provide the following callback functions. These functions are also called when COPY FROM is executed on a foreign table.

void
BeginForeignInsert(ModifyTableState *mtstate,
                    ResultRelInfo *rinfo);
Begin executing an insert operation on a foreign table. This routine is called right before the first tuple is inserted into the foreign table in both cases when it is the partition chosen for tuple routing and the target specified in a COPY FROM command. It should perform any initialization needed prior to the actual insertion. Subsequently, ExecForeignInsert or ExecForeignBatchInsert will be called for tuple(s) to be inserted into the foreign table.

mtstate is the overall state of the ModifyTable plan node being executed; global data about the plan and execution state is available via this structure. rinfo is the ResultRelInfo struct describing the target foreign table. (The ri_FdwState field of ResultRelInfo is available for the FDW to store any private state it needs for this operation.)

When this is called by a COPY FROM command, the plan-related global data in mtstate is not provided and the planSlot parameter of ExecForeignInsert subsequently called for each inserted tuple is NULL, whether the foreign table is the partition chosen for tuple routing or the target specified in the command.

If the BeginForeignInsert pointer is set to NULL, no action is taken for the initialization.

Note that if the FDW does not support routable foreign-table partitions and/or executing COPY FROM on foreign tables, this function or ExecForeignInsert/ExecForeignBatchInsert subsequently called must throw error as needed.

void
EndForeignInsert(EState *estate,
                   ResultRelInfo *rinfo);
End the insert operation and release resources. It is normally not important to release palloc’d memory, but for example open files and connections to remote servers should be cleaned up.

If the EndForeignInsert pointer is set to NULL, no action is taken for the termination.

int
IsForeignRelUpdatable(Relation rel);
Report which update operations the specified foreign table supports. The return value should be a bit mask of rule event numbers indicating which operations are supported by the foreign table, using the CmdType enumeration; that is, (1 << CMD_UPDATE) = 4 for UPDATE, (1 << CMD_INSERT) = 8 for INSERT, and (1 << CMD_DELETE) = 16 for DELETE.

If the IsForeignRelUpdatable pointer is set to NULL, foreign tables are assumed to be insertable, updatable, or deletable if the FDW provides ExecForeignInsert, ExecForeignUpdate, or ExecForeignDelete respectively. This function is only needed if the FDW supports some tables that are updatable and some that are not. (Even then, it’s permissible to throw an error in the execution routine instead of checking in this function. However, this function is used to determine updatability for display in the information_schema views.)

Some inserts, updates, and deletes to foreign tables can be optimized by implementing an alternative set of interfaces. The ordinary interfaces for inserts, updates, and deletes fetch rows from the remote server
and then modify those rows one at a time. In some cases, this row-by-row approach is necessary, but it can be inefficient. If it is possible for the foreign server to determine which rows should be modified without actually retrieving them, and if there are no local structures which would affect the operation (row-level local triggers, stored generated columns, or WITH CHECK OPTION constraints from parent views), then it is possible to arrange things so that the entire operation is performed on the remote server. The interfaces described below make this possible.

```c
bool PlanDirectModify(PlannerInfo *root,
                     ModifyTable *plan,
                     Index resultRelation,
                     int subplan_index);
```

Decide whether it is safe to execute a direct modification on the remote server. If so, return `true` after performing planning actions needed for that. Otherwise, return `false`. This optional function is called during query planning. If this function succeeds, `BeginDirectModify`, `IterateDirectModify` and `EndDirectModify` will be called at the execution stage, instead. Otherwise, the table modification will be executed using the table-updating functions described above. The parameters are the same as for `PlanForeignModify`.

To execute the direct modification on the remote server, this function must rewrite the target subplan with a `ForeignScan` plan node that executes the direct modification on the remote server. The `operation` and `resultRelation` fields of the `ForeignScan` must be set appropriately. `operation` must be set to the `CmdType` enumeration corresponding to the statement kind (that is, `CMD_UPDATE` for `UPDATE`, `CMD_INSERT` for `INSERT`, and `CMD_DELETE` for `DELETE`), and the `resultRelation` argument must be copied to the `resultRelation` field.

See Section 53.4 for additional information.

If the `PlanDirectModify` pointer is set to `NULL`, no attempts to execute a direct modification on the remote server are taken.

```c
void BeginDirectModify(ForeignScanState *node,
                      int eflags);
```

Prepare to execute a direct modification on the remote server. This is called during executor startup. It should perform any initialization needed prior to the direct modification (that should be done upon the first call to `IterateDirectModify`). The `ForeignScanState` node has already been created, but its `fdw_state` field is still `NULL`. Information about the table to modify is accessible through the `ForeignScanState` node (in particular, from the underlying `ForeignScan` plan node, which contains any FDW-private information provided by `PlanDirectModify`). `eflags` contains flag bits describing the executor's operating mode for this plan node.

Note that when `(eflags & EXEC_FLAG_EXPLAIN_ONLY)` is true, this function should not perform any externally-visible actions; it should only do the minimum required to make the node state valid for `ExplainDirectModify` and `EndDirectModify`.

If the `BeginDirectModify` pointer is set to `NULL`, no attempts to execute a direct modification on the remote server are taken.

```c
TupleTableSlot * IterateDirectModify(ForeignScanState *node);
```

When the `INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `DELETE` query doesn't have a `RETURNING` clause, just return `NULL` after a direct modification on the remote server. When the query has the clause, fetch one result containing the data needed for the `RETURNING` calculation, returning it in a tuple table slot (the node's `ScanTupleSlot` should be used for this purpose). The data that was actually inserted, updated or deleted must be stored in `node->resultRelInfo->ri_projectReturning->pi_exprContext->ecxt_scantuple`. Return `NULL` if no more rows are available. Note that this is called in a short-lived memory context that will be reset.
between invocations. Create a memory context in \texttt{BeginDirectModify} if you need longer-lived storage, or use the \texttt{es_query_cxt} of the node's EState.

The rows returned must match the \texttt{fdw\_scan\_tlist} target list if one was supplied, otherwise they must match the row type of the foreign table being updated. If you choose to optimize away fetching columns that are not needed for the \texttt{RETURNING} calculation, you should insert nulls in those column positions, or else generate a \texttt{fdw\_scan\_tlist} list with those columns omitted.

Whether the query has the clause or not, the query's reported row count must be incremented by the FDW itself. When the query doesn't have the clause, the FDW must also increment the row count for the \texttt{ForeignScanState} node in the \texttt{EXPLAIN ANALYZE} case.

If the \texttt{IterateDirectModify} pointer is set to \texttt{NULL}, no attempts to execute a direct modification on the remote server are taken.

```c
void
EndDirectModify(ForeignScanState *node);
```

Clean up following a direct modification on the remote server. It is normally not important to release palloc'd memory, but for example open files and connections to the remote server should be cleaned up.

If the \texttt{EndDirectModify} pointer is set to \texttt{NULL}, no attempts to execute a direct modification on the remote server are taken.

### 53.2.5. FDW Routines for TRUNCATE

```c
void
ExecForeignTruncate(List *rels,
                    DropBehavior behavior,
                    bool restart_seqs);
```

Truncate foreign tables. This function is called when \texttt{TRUNCATE} is executed on a foreign table. \texttt{rels} is a list of \texttt{Relation} data structures of foreign tables to truncate.

- \texttt{behavior} is either \texttt{DROP\_RESTRICT} or \texttt{DROP\_CASCADE} indicating that the \texttt{RESTRICT} or \texttt{CASCADE} option was requested in the original \texttt{TRUNCATE} command, respectively.
- If \texttt{restart\_seqs} is true, the original \texttt{TRUNCATE} command requested the \texttt{RESTART IDENTITY} behavior, otherwise the \texttt{CONTINUE IDENTITY} behavior was requested.

Note that the \texttt{ONLY} options specified in the original \texttt{TRUNCATE} command are not passed to \texttt{ExecForeignTruncate}. This behavior is similar to the callback functions of \texttt{SELECT}, \texttt{UPDATE} and \texttt{DELETE} on a foreign table.

\texttt{ExecForeignTruncate} is invoked once per foreign server for which foreign tables are to be truncated. This means that all foreign tables included in \texttt{rels} must belong to the same server.

If the \texttt{ExecForeignTruncate} pointer is set to \texttt{NULL}, attempts to truncate foreign tables will fail with an error message.

### 53.2.6. FDW Routines for Row Locking

If an FDW wishes to support \textit{late row locking} (as described in Section 53.5), it must provide the following callback functions:

```c
RowMarkType
GetForeignRowMarkType(RangeTblEntry *rte,
                         LockClauseStrength strength);
```

Report which row-marking option to use for a foreign table. \texttt{rte} is the \texttt{RangeTblEntry} node for the table and \texttt{strength} describes the lock strength requested by the relevant \texttt{FOR UPDATE/SHARE} clause, if any. The result must be a member of the \texttt{RowMarkType} enum type.
This function is called during query planning for each foreign table that appears in an `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `SELECT FOR UPDATE/SHARE` query and is not the target of `UPDATE` or `DELETE`.

If the `GetForeignRowMarkType` pointer is set to `NULL`, the `ROW_MARK_COPY` option is always used. (This implies that `RefetchForeignRow` will never be called, so it need not be provided either.)

See Section 53.5 for more information.

```c
void RefetchForeignRow(EState *estate, ExecRowMark *erm, Datum rowid, TupleTableSlot *slot, bool *updated);
```

Re-fetch one tuple slot from the foreign table, after locking it if required. `estate` is global execution state for the query. `erm` is the `ExecRowMark` struct describing the target foreign table and the row lock type (if any) to acquire. `rowid` identifies the tuple to be fetched. `slot` contains nothing useful upon call, but can be used to hold the returned tuple. `updated` is an output parameter.

This function should store the tuple into the provided slot, or clear it if the row lock couldn't be obtained. The row lock type to acquire is defined by `erm->markType`, which is the value previously returned by `GetForeignRowMarkType`. (`ROW_MARK_REFERENCE` means to just re-fetch the tuple without acquiring any lock, and `ROW_MARK_COPY` will never be seen by this routine.)

In addition, `*updated` should be set to `true` if what was fetched was an updated version of the tuple rather than the same version previously obtained. (If the FDW cannot be sure about this, always returning `true` is recommended.)

Note that by default, failure to acquire a row lock should result in raising an error; returning with an empty slot is only appropriate if the `SKIP LOCKED` option is specified by `erm->waitPolicy`.

The `rowid` is the `ctid` value previously read for the row to be re-fetched. Although the `rowid` value is passed as a `Datum`, it can currently only be a `tid`. The function API is chosen in hopes that it may be possible to allow other data types for row IDs in future.

If the `RefetchForeignRow` pointer is set to `NULL`, attempts to re-fetch rows will fail with an error message.

See Section 53.5 for more information.

```c
bool RecheckForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, TupleTableSlot *slot);
```

Recheck that a previously-returned tuple still matches the relevant scan and join qualifiers, and possibly provide a modified version of the tuple. For foreign data wrappers which do not perform join pushdown, it will typically be more convenient to set this to `NULL` and instead set `fdw_recheck_quals` appropriately.

When outer joins are pushed down, however, it isn't sufficient to reapply the checks relevant to all the base tables to the result tuple, even if all needed attributes are present, because failure to match some qualifier might result in some attributes going to `NULL`, rather than in no tuple being returned. `RecheckForeignScan` can recheck qualifiers and return `true` if they are still satisfied and `false` otherwise, but it can also store a replacement tuple into the supplied slot.

To implement join pushdown, a foreign data wrapper will typically construct an alternative local join plan which is used only for rechecks; this will become the outer subplan of the `ForeignScan`. When a recheck is required, this subplan can be executed and the resulting tuple can be stored in the slot. This plan need not be efficient since no base table will return more than one row; for example, it may implement all joins as nested loops. The function `GetExistingLocalJoinPath` may be used to search existing paths for a suitable local join path, which can be used as the alternative local join plan. `GetExistingLocalJoinPath` searches for an unparameterized path in the path list of the specified join relation. (If it does not find
such a path, it returns NULL, in which case a foreign data wrapper may build the local path by itself or
may choose not to create access paths for that join.)

53.2.7. FDW Routines for EXPLAIN

    void
    ExplainForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node,
                        ExplainState *es);

    Print additional EXPLAIN output for a foreign table scan. This function can call ExplainPropertyText
    and related functions to add fields to the EXPLAIN output. The flag fields in es can be used to determine
    what to print, and the state of the ForeignScanState node can be inspected to provide run-time statistics
    in the EXPLAIN ANALYZE case.

    If the ExplainForeignScan pointer is set to NULL, no additional information is printed during EXPLAIN.

    void
    ExplainForeignModify(ModifyTableState *mtstate,
                          ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
                          List *fdw_private,
                          int subplan_index,
                          struct ExplainState *es);

    Print additional EXPLAIN output for a foreign table update. This function can call ExplainPropertyText
    and related functions to add fields to the EXPLAIN output. The flag fields in es can be used to determine
    what to print, and the state of the ModifyTableState node can be inspected to provide run-time statistics
    in the EXPLAIN ANALYZE case. The first four arguments are the same as for BeginForeignModify.

    If the ExplainForeignModify pointer is set to NULL, no additional information is printed during EXPLAIN.

    void
    ExplainDirectModify(ForeignScanState *node,
                         ExplainState *es);

    Print additional EXPLAIN output for a direct modification on the remote server. This function can call
    ExplainPropertyText and related functions to add fields to the EXPLAIN output. The flag fields in es
    can be used to determine what to print, and the state of the ForeignScanState node can be inspected
    to provide run-time statistics in the EXPLAIN ANALYZE case.

    If the ExplainDirectModify pointer is set to NULL, no additional information is printed during EXPLAIN.

53.2.8. FDW Routines for ANALYZE

    bool
    AnalyzeForeignTable(Relation relation,
                         AcquireSampleRowsFunc *func,
                         BlockNumber *totalpages);

    This function is called when ANALYZE is executed on a foreign table. If the FDW can collect statistics
    for this foreign table, it should return true, and provide a pointer to a function that will collect sample
    rows from the table in func, plus the estimated size of the table in pages in totalpages. Otherwise, return false.

    If the FDW does not support collecting statistics for any tables, the AnalyzeForeignTable pointer can
    be set to NULL.

    If provided, the sample collection function must have the signature

        int
        AcquireSampleRowsFunc(Relation relation,
                               int elevel,
HeapTuple *rows,
int targrows,
double *totalrows,
double *totaldeadrows);

A random sample of up to \texttt{targrows} rows should be collected from the table and stored into the caller-provided \texttt{rows} array. The actual number of rows collected must be returned. In addition, store estimates of the total numbers of live and dead rows in the table into the output parameters \texttt{totalrows} and \texttt{totaldeadrows}. (Set \texttt{totaldeadrows} to zero if the FDW does not have any concept of dead rows.)

\subsection*{53.2.9. FDW Routines for \texttt{IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA}}

\begin{verbatim}
List *
ImportForeignSchema(ImportForeignSchemaStmt *stmt, Oid serverOid);
\end{verbatim}

Obtain a list of foreign table creation commands. This function is called when executing \texttt{IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA}, and is passed the parse tree for that statement, as well as the OID of the foreign server to use. It should return a list of C strings, each of which must contain a \texttt{CREATE FOREIGN TABLE} command. These strings will be parsed and executed by the core server.

Within the \texttt{ImportForeignSchemaStmt} struct, \texttt{remote_schema} is the name of the remote schema from which tables are to be imported. \texttt{list_type} identifies how to filter table names: \texttt{FDW\_IMPORT\_SCHEMA\_ALL} means that all tables in the remote schema should be imported (in this case \texttt{table_list} is empty), \texttt{FDW\_IMPORT\_SCHEMA\_LIMIT\_TO} means to include only tables listed in \texttt{table_list}, and \texttt{FDW\_IMPORT\_SCHEMA\_EXCEPT} means to exclude the tables listed in \texttt{table_list}. \texttt{options} is a list of options used for the import process. The meanings of the options are up to the FDW. For example, an FDW could use an option to define whether the \texttt{NOT NULL} attributes of columns should be imported. These options need not have anything to do with those supported by the FDW as database object options.

The FDW may ignore the \texttt{local_schema} field of the \texttt{ImportForeignSchemaStmt}, because the core server will automatically insert that name into the parsed \texttt{CREATE FOREIGN TABLE} commands.

The FDW does not have to concern itself with implementing the filtering specified by \texttt{list_type} and \texttt{table_list}, either, as the core server will automatically skip any returned commands for tables excluded according to those options. However, it's often useful to avoid the work of creating commands for excluded tables in the first place. The function \texttt{IsImportableForeignTable()} may be useful to test whether a given foreign-table name will pass the filter.

If the FDW does not support importing table definitions, the \texttt{ImportForeignSchema} pointer can be set to \texttt{NULL}.

\subsection*{53.2.10. FDW Routines for Parallel Execution}

A \texttt{ForeignScan} node can, optionally, support parallel execution. A parallel \texttt{ForeignScan} will be executed in multiple processes and must return each row exactly once across all cooperating processes. To do this, processes can coordinate through fixed-size chunks of dynamic shared memory. This shared memory is not guaranteed to be mapped at the same address in every process, so it must not contain pointers. The following functions are all optional, but most are required if parallel execution is to be supported.

\begin{verbatim}
bool
IsForeignScanParallelSafe(PlannerInfo *root, RelOptInfo *rel,
                         RangeTblEntry *rte);
\end{verbatim}

Test whether a scan can be performed within a parallel worker. This function will only be called when the planner believes that a parallel plan might be possible, and should return true if it is safe for that scan to run within a parallel worker. This will generally not be the case if the remote data source has transaction semantics, unless the worker's connection to the data can somehow be made to share the same transaction context as the leader.

If this function is not defined, it is assumed that the scan must take place within the parallel leader. Note that returning true does not mean that the scan itself can be done in parallel, only that the scan
can be performed within a parallel worker. Therefore, it can be useful to define this method even when parallel execution is not supported.

```c
Size
EstimateDSMForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, ParallelContext *pcxt);
```

Estimate the amount of dynamic shared memory that will be required for parallel operation. This may be higher than the amount that will actually be used, but it must not be lower. The return value is in bytes. This function is optional, and can be omitted if not needed; but if it is omitted, the next three functions must be omitted as well, because no shared memory will be allocated for the FDW's use.

```c
void
InitializeDSMForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, ParallelContext *pcxt,
    void *coordinate);
```

Initialize the dynamic shared memory that will be required for parallel operation. `coordinate` points to a shared memory area of size equal to the return value of `EstimateDSMForeignScan`. This function is optional, and can be omitted if not needed.

```c
void
ReInitializeDSMForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, ParallelContext *pcxt,
    void *coordinate);
```

Re-initialize the dynamic shared memory required for parallel operation when the foreign-scan plan node is about to be re-scanned. This function is optional, and can be omitted if not needed. Recommended practice is that this function reset only shared state, while the `ReScanForeignScan` function resets only local state. Currently, this function will be called before `ReScanForeignScan`, but it's best not to rely on that ordering.

```c
void
InitializeWorkerForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, shm_toc *toc,
    void *coordinate);
```

Initialize a parallel worker's local state based on the shared state set up by the leader during `InitializeDSMForeignScan`. This function is optional, and can be omitted if not needed.

```c
void
ShutdownForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node);
```

Release resources when it is anticipated the node will not be executed to completion. This is not called in all cases; sometimes, `EndForeignScan` may be called without this function having been called first. Since the DSM segment used by parallel query is destroyed just after this callback is invoked, foreign data wrappers that wish to take some action before the DSM segment goes away should implement this method.

### 53.2.11. FDW Routines for Asynchronous Execution

A `ForeignScan` node can, optionally, support asynchronous execution as described in `src/backend/executor/README`. The following functions are all optional, but are all required if asynchronous execution is to be supported.

```c
bool
IsForeignPathAsyncCapable(ForeignPath *path);
```

Test whether a given `ForeignPath` path can scan the underlying foreign relation asynchronously. This function will only be called at the end of query planning when the given path is a direct child of an `AppendPath` path and when the planner believes that asynchronous execution improves performance, and should return true if the given path is able to scan the foreign relation asynchronously.

If this function is not defined, it is assumed that the given path scans the foreign relation using `IterateForeignScan`. (This implies that the callback functions described below will never be called, so they need not be provided either.)
void ForeignAsyncRequest(AsyncRequest *areq);

Produce one tuple asynchronously from the ForeignScan node. areq is the AsyncRequest struct
describing the ForeignScan node and the parent Append node that requested the tuple from it. This
function should store the tuple into the slot specified by areq->result, and set areq->request_complete
to true; or if it needs to wait on an event external to the core server such as network I/O, and cannot
produce any tuple immediately, set the flag to false, and set areq->callback_pending to true for the
ForeignScan node to get a callback from the callback functions described below. If no more tuples are
available, set the slot to NULL or an empty slot, and the areq->request_complete flag to true. It’s
recommended to use ExecAsyncRequestDone or ExecAsyncRequestPending to set the output parameters
in the areq.

void ForeignAsyncConfigureWait(AsyncRequest *areq);

Configure a file descriptor event for which the ForeignScan node wishes to wait. This function will only
be called when the ForeignScan node has the areq->callback_pending flag set, and should add the
event to the as_eventset of the parent Append node described by the areq. When the file descriptor
event occurs, ForeignAsyncNotify will be called.

void ForeignAsyncNotify(AsyncRequest *areq);

Process a relevant event that has occurred, then produce one tuple asynchronously from the
ForeignScan node. This function should set the output parameters in the areq in the same way as
ForeignAsyncRequest.

53.2.12. FDW Routines for Reparameterization of Paths

List * ReparameterizeForeignPathByChild(PlannerInfo *root, List *fdw_private,
RelOptInfo *child_rel);

This function is called while converting a path parameterized by the top-most parent of the
given child relation child_rel to be parameterized by the child relation. The function is used to
reparameterize any paths or translate any expression nodes saved in the given fdw_private member
of a ForeignPath. The callback may use reparameterize_path_by_child, adjust_appendrel_attrs
or adjust_appendrel_attrs_multilevel as required.

53.3. Foreign Data Wrapper Helper Functions

Several helper functions are exported from the core server so that authors of foreign data wrappers can
get easy access to attributes of FDW-related objects, such as FDW options. To use any of these functions,
you need to include the header file foreign/finalr.h in your source file. That header also defines the
struct types that are returned by these functions.

ForeignDataWrapper * GetForeignDataWrapperExtended(Oid fdwid, bits16 flags);

This function returns a ForeignDataWrapper object for the foreign-data wrapper with the given OID. A
ForeignDataWrapper object contains properties of the FDW (see foreign/foreign.h for details). flags
is a bitwise-or’d bit mask indicating an extra set of options. It can take the value FDW_MISSING_OK, in
which case a NULL result is returned to the caller instead of an error for an undefined object.

ForeignDataWrapper * GetForeignDataWrapper(Oid fdwid);

This function returns a ForeignDataWrapper object for the foreign-data wrapper with the given OID. A
ForeignDataWrapper object contains properties of the FDW (see foreign/foreign.h for details).
GetForeignServerExtended(Oid serverid, bits16 flags);

This function returns a ForeignServer object for the foreign server with the given OID. A ForeignServer object contains properties of the server (see foreign/foreign.h for details). flags is a bitwise-or'd bit mask indicating an extra set of options. It can take the value FSV_MISSING_OK, in which case a NULL result is returned to the caller instead of an error for an undefined object.

ForeignServer *
GetForeignServer(Oid serverid);

This function returns a ForeignServer object for the foreign server with the given OID. A ForeignServer object contains properties of the server (see foreign/foreign.h for details).

UserMapping *
GetUserMapping(Oid userid, Oid serverid);

This function returns a UserMapping object for the user mapping of the given role on the given server. (If there is no mapping for the specific user, it will return the mapping for PUBLIC, or throw error if there is none.) A UserMapping object contains properties of the user mapping (see foreign/foreign.h for details).

ForeignTable *
GetForeignTable(Oid relid);

This function returns a ForeignTable object for the foreign table with the given OID. A ForeignTable object contains properties of the foreign table (see foreign/foreign.h for details).

List *
GetForeignColumnOptions(Oid relid, AttrNumber atnum);

This function returns the per-column FDW options for the column with the given foreign table OID and attribute number, in the form of a list of DefElem. NIL is returned if the column has no options.

Some object types have name-based lookup functions in addition to the OID-based ones:

ForeignDataWrapper *
GetForeignDataWrapperByName(const char *name, bool missing_ok);

This function returns a ForeignDataWrapper object for the foreign-data wrapper with the given name. If the wrapper is not found, return NULL if missing_ok is true, otherwise raise an error.

ForeignServer *
GetForeignServerByName(const char *name, bool missing_ok);

This function returns a ForeignServer object for the foreign server with the given name. If the server is not found, return NULL if missing_ok is true, otherwise raise an error.

53.4. Foreign Data Wrapper Query Planning

The FDW callback functions GetForeignRelSize, GetForeignPaths, GetForeignPlan, PlanForeignModify, GetForeignJoinPaths, GetForeignUpperPaths, and PlanDirectModify must fit into the workings of the Postgres Pro planner. Here are some notes about what they must do.

The information in root and baserel can be used to reduce the amount of information that has to be fetched from the foreign table (and therefore reduce the cost). baserel->baserestrictinfo is particularly interesting, as it contains restriction quals (WHERE clauses) that should be used to filter the rows to be fetched. (The FDW itself is not required to enforce these quals, as the core executor can check them instead.) baserel->reltarget->exprs can be used to determine which columns need to be fetched; but note that it only lists columns that have to be emitted by the ForeignScan plan node, not columns that are used in qual evaluation but not output by the query.

Various private fields are available for the FDW planning functions to keep information in. Generally, whatever you store in FDW private fields should be palloc’d, so that it will be reclaimed at the end of planning.
baserel->fdw_private is a void pointer that is available for FDW planning functions to store information relevant to the particular foreign table. The core planner does not touch it except to initialize it to NULL when the RelOptInfo node is created. It is useful for passing information forward from GetForeignRelSize to GetForeignPaths and/or GetForeignPaths to GetForeignPlan, thereby avoiding recalculation.

GetForeignPaths can identify the meaning of different access paths by storing private information in the fdw_private field of ForeignPath nodes. fdw_private is declared as a List pointer, but could actually contain anything since the core planner does not touch it. However, best practice is to use a representation that’s dumpable by nodeToString, for use with debugging support available in the backend.

GetForeignPlan can examine the fdw_private field of the selected ForeignPath node, and can generate fdw_exprs and fdw_private lists to be placed in the ForeignScan plan node, where they will be available at execution time. Both of these lists must be represented in a form that copyObject knows how to copy. The fdw_private list has no other restrictions and is not interpreted by the core backend in any way. The fdw_exprs list, if not NIL, is expected to contain expression trees that are intended to be executed at run time. These trees will undergo post-processing by the planner to make them fully executable.

In GetForeignPlan, generally the passed-in target list can be copied into the plan node as-is. The passed scan_clauses list contains the same clauses as baserel->baserestrictinfo, but may be re-ordered for better execution efficiency. In simple cases the FDW can just strip RestrictInfo nodes from the scan_clauses list (using extract_actual_clauses) and put all the clauses into the plan node’s qual list, which means that all the clauses will be checked by the executor at run time. More complex FDWs may be able to check some of the clauses internally, in which case those clauses can be removed from the plan node’s qual list so that the executor doesn’t waste time rechecking them.

As an example, the FDW might identify some restriction clauses of the form foreign_variable = sub_expression, which it determines can be executed on the remote server given the locally-evaluated value of the sub_expression. The actual identification of such a clause should happen during GetForeignPaths, since it would affect the cost estimate for the path. The path’s fdw_private field would probably include a pointer to the identified clause’s RestrictInfo node. Then GetForeignPlan would remove that clause from scan_clauses, but add the sub_expression to fdw_exprs to ensure that it gets massaged into executable form. It would probably also put control information into the plan node’s fdw_private field to tell the execution functions what to do at run time. The query transmitted to the remote server would involve something like WHERE foreign_variable = $1, with the parameter value obtained at run time from evaluation of the fdw_exprs expression tree.

Any clauses removed from the plan node’s qual list must instead be added to fdw_recheck_quals or rechecked by RecheckForeignScan in order to ensure correct behavior at the READ COMMITTED isolation level. When a concurrent update occurs for some other table involved in the query, the executor may need to verify that all of the original quals are still satisfied for the tuple, possibly against a different set of parameter values. Using fdw_recheck_quals is typically easier than implementing checks inside RecheckForeignScan, but this method will be insufficient when outer joins have been pushed down, since the join tuples in that case might have some fields go to NULL without rejecting the tuple entirely.

Another ForeignScan field that can be filled by FDWs is fdw_scan_tlist, which describes the tuples returned by the FDW for this plan node. For simple foreign table scans this can be set to NIL, implying that the returned tuples have the row type declared for the foreign table. A non-NIL value must be a target list (list of TargetEntries) containing Vars and/or expressions representing the returned columns. This might be used, for example, to show that the FDW has omitted some columns that it noticed won’t be needed for the query. Also, if the FDW can compute expressions used by the query more cheaply than can be done locally, it could add those expressions to fdw_scan_tlist. Note that join plans (created from paths made by GetForeignJoinPaths) must always supply fdw_scan_tlist to describe the set of columns they will return.

The FDW should always construct at least one path that depends only on the table’s restriction clauses. In join queries, it might also choose to construct path(s) that depend on join clauses, for example
Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper

foreign_variable = local_variable. Such clauses will not be found in baserel->baserestrictinfo but must be sought in the relation's join lists. A path using such a clause is called a “parameterized path”. It must identify the other relations used in the selected join clause(s) with a suitable value of param_info; use get_baserel_parampathinfo to compute that value. In GetForeignPlan, the local_variable portion of the join clause would be added to fdw_exprs, and then at run time the case works the same as for an ordinary restriction clause.

If an FDW supports remote joins, GetForeignJoinPaths should produce ForeignPaths for potential remote joins in much the same way as GetForeignPaths works for base tables. Information about the intended join can be passed forward to GetForeignPlan in the same ways described above. However, baserestrictinfo is not relevant for join relations; instead, the relevant join clauses for a particular join are passed to GetForeignJoinPaths as a separate parameter (extra->restrictlist).

An FDW might additionally support direct execution of some plan actions that are above the level of scans and joins, such as grouping or aggregation. To offer such options, the FDW should generate paths and insert them into the appropriate upper relation. For example, a path representing remote aggregation should be inserted into the UPPERREL_GROUP_AGG relation, using add_path. This path will be compared on a cost basis with local aggregation performed by reading a simple scan path for the foreign relation (note that such a path must also be supplied, else there will be an error at plan time). If the remote-aggregation path wins, which it usually would, it will be converted into a plan in the usual way, by calling GetForeignPlan. The recommended place to generate such paths is in the GetForeignUpperPaths callback function, which is called for each upper relation (i.e., each post-scan/join processing step), if all the base relations of the query come from the same FDW.

PlanForeignModify and the other callbacks described in Section 53.2.4 are designed around the assumption that the foreign relation will be scanned in the usual way and then individual row updates will be driven by a local ModifyTable plan node. This approach is necessary for the general case where an update requires reading local tables as well as foreign tables. However, if the operation could be executed entirely by the foreign server, the FDW could generate a path representing that and insert it into the UPPERREL_FINAL upper relation, where it would compete against the ModifyTable approach. This approach could also be used to implement remote SELECT FOR UPDATE, rather than using the row locking callbacks described in Section 53.2.6. Keep in mind that a path inserted into UPPERREL_FINAL is responsible for implementing all behavior of the query.

When planning an UPDATE or DELETE, PlanForeignModify and PlanDirectModify can look up the RelOptInfo struct for the foreign table and make use of the baserel->fdw_private data previously created by the scan-planning functions. However, in INSERT the target table is not scanned so there is no RelOptInfo for it. The List returned by PlanForeignModify has the same restrictions as the fdw_private list of a ForeignScan plan node, that is it must contain only structures that copyObject knows how to copy.

INSERT with an ON CONFLICT clause does not support specifying the conflict target, as unique constraints or exclusion constraints on remote tables are not locally known. This in turn implies that ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE is not supported, since the specification is mandatory there.

53.5. Row Locking in Foreign Data Wrappers

If an FDW's underlying storage mechanism has a concept of locking individual rows to prevent concurrent updates of those rows, it is usually worthwhile for the FDW to perform row-level locking with as close an approximation as practical to the semantics used in ordinary Postgres Pro tables. There are multiple considerations involved in this.

One key decision to be made is whether to perform early locking or late locking. In early locking, a row is locked when it is first retrieved from the underlying store, while in late locking, the row is locked only when it is known that it needs to be locked. (The difference arises because some rows may be discarded by locally-checked restriction or join conditions.) Early locking is much simpler and avoids extra round trips to a remote store, but it can cause locking of rows that need not have been locked, resulting in reduced concurrency or even unexpected deadlocks. Also, late locking is only possible if the row to be
locked can be uniquely re-identified later. Preferably the row identifier should identify a specific version of the row, as Postgres Pro TIDs do.

By default, Postgres Pro ignores locking considerations when interfacing to FDWs, but an FDW can perform early locking without any explicit support from the core code. The API functions described in Section 53.2.6, which were added in Postgres Pro 9.5, allow an FDW to use late locking if it wishes.

An additional consideration is that in READ COMMITTED isolation mode, Postgres Pro may need to re-check restriction and join conditions against an updated version of some target tuple. Rechecking join conditions requires re-obtaining copies of the non-target rows that were previously joined to the target tuple. When working with standard Postgres Pro tables, this is done by including the TIDs of the non-target tables in the column list projected through the join, and then re-fetching non-target rows when required. This approach keeps the join data set compact, but it requires inexpensive re-fetch capability, as well as a TID that can uniquely identify the row version to be re-fetched. By default, therefore, the approach used with foreign tables is to include a copy of the entire row fetched from a foreign table in the column list projected through the join. This puts no special demands on the FDW but can result in reduced performance of merge and hash joins. An FDW that is capable of meeting the re-fetch requirements can choose to do it the first way.

For an UPDATE or DELETE on a foreign table, it is recommended that the ForeignScan operation on the target table perform early locking on the rows that it fetches, perhaps via the equivalent of SELECT FOR UPDATE. An FDW can detect whether a table is an UPDATE/DELETE target at plan time by comparing its relid to root->parse->resultRelation, or at execution time by using ExecRelationIsTargetRelation(). An alternative possibility is to perform late locking within the ExecForeignUpdate or ExecForeignDelete callback, but no special support is provided for this.

For foreign tables that are specified to be locked by a SELECT FOR UPDATE/SHARE command, the ForeignScan operation can again perform early locking by fetching tuples with the equivalent of SELECT FOR UPDATE/SHARE. To perform late locking instead, provide the callback functions defined in Section 53.2.6. In GetForeignRowMarkType, select rowmark option ROW_MARK_EXCLUSIVE, ROW_MARK_NOKEYEXCLUSIVE, ROW_MARK_SHARE, or ROW_MARK_KEYSHARE depending on the requested lock strength. (The core code will act the same regardless of which of these four options you choose.) Elsewhere, you can detect whether a foreign table was specified to be locked by this type of command by using get_plan_rowmark at plan time, or ExecFindRowMark at execution time; you must check not only whether a non-null rowmark struct is returned, but that its strength field is not LCS_NONE.

Lastly, for foreign tables that are used in an UPDATE, DELETE or SELECT FOR UPDATE/SHARE command but are not specified to be row-locked, you can override the default choice to copy entire rows by having GetForeignRowMarkType select option ROW_MARK_REFERENCE when it sees lock strength LCS_NONE. This will cause RefetchForeignRow to be called with that value for markType; it should then re-fetch the row without acquiring any new lock. (If you have a GetForeignRowMarkType function but don't wish to re-fetch unlocked rows, select option ROW_MARK_COPY for LCS_NONE.)
Chapter 54. Writing a Table Sampling Method

Postgres Pro's implementation of the TABLESAMPLE clause supports custom table sampling methods, in addition to the BERNOULLI and SYSTEM methods that are required by the SQL standard. The sampling method determines which rows of the table will be selected when the TABLESAMPLE clause is used.

At the SQL level, a table sampling method is represented by a single SQL function, typically implemented in C, having the signature

```
method_name(internal) RETURNS tsm_handler
```

The name of the function is the same method name appearing in the TABLESAMPLE clause. The internal argument is a dummy (always having value zero) that simply serves to prevent this function from being called directly from an SQL command. The result of the function must be a palloc'd struct of type TsmRoutine, which contains pointers to support functions for the sampling method. These support functions are plain C functions and are not visible or callable at the SQL level. The support functions are described in Section 54.1.

In addition to function pointers, the TsmRoutine struct must provide these additional fields:

- **List *parameterTypes**
  This is an OID list containing the data type OIDs of the parameter(s) that will be accepted by the TABLESAMPLE clause when this sampling method is used. For example, for the built-in methods, this list contains a single item with value FLOAT4OID, which represents the sampling percentage. Custom sampling methods can have more or different parameters.

- **bool repeatable_across_queries**
  If true, the sampling method can deliver identical samples across successive queries, if the same parameters and REPEATABLE seed value are supplied each time and the table contents have not changed. When this is false, the REPEATABLE clause is not accepted for use with the sampling method.

- **bool repeatable_across_scans**
  If true, the sampling method can deliver identical samples across successive scans in the same query (assuming unchanging parameters, seed value, and snapshot). When this is false, the planner will not select plans that would require scanning the sampled table more than once, since that might result in inconsistent query output.

The table sampling methods included in the standard distribution are good references when trying to write your own. Look into the contrib subdirectory for add-on methods.

### 54.1. Sampling Method Support Functions

The TSM handler function returns a palloc'd TsmRoutine struct containing pointers to the support functions described below. Most of the functions are required, but some are optional, and those pointers can be NULL.

```
void SampleScanGetSampleSize (PlannerInfo *root,
   RelOptInfo *baserel,
   List *paramexprs,
   BlockNumber *pages,
   double *tuples);
```

This function is called during planning. It must estimate the number of relation pages that will be read during a sample scan, and the number of tuples that will be selected by the scan. (For example, these
might be determined by estimating the sampling fraction, and then multiplying the baserel->pages and
baserel->tuples numbers by that, being sure to round the results to integral values.) The paramexprs
list holds the expression(s) that are parameters to the TABLESAMPLE clause. It is recommended to use
estimate_expression_value() to try to reduce these expressions to constants, if their values are
needed for estimation purposes; but the function must provide size estimates even if they cannot be
reduced, and it should not fail even if the values appear invalid (remember that they're only estimates
of what the run-time values will be). The pages and tuples parameters are outputs.

```c
void
InitSampleScan (SampleScanState *node,
                int eflags);
```

Initialize for execution of a SampleScan plan node. This is called during executor startup. It should
perform any initialization needed before processing can start. The SampleScanState node has already
been created, but its tsm_state field is NULL. The InitSampleScan function can palloc whatever internal
state data is needed by the sampling method, and store a pointer to it in node->tsm_state. Information
about the table to scan is accessible through other fields of the SampleScanState node (but note that the
node->ss.ss_currentScanDesc scan descriptor is not set up yet). eflags contains flag bits describing
the executor's operating mode for this plan node.

When (eflags & EXEC_FLAG_EXPLAIN_ONLY) is true, the scan will not actually be performed, so
this function should only do the minimum required to make the node state valid for EXPLAIN and
EndSampleScan.

This function can be omitted (set the pointer to NULL), in which case BeginSampleScan must perform
all initialization needed by the sampling method.

```c
void
BeginSampleScan (SampleScanState *node,
                 Datum *params,
                 int nparams,
                 uint32 seed);
```

Begin execution of a sampling scan. This is called just before the first attempt to fetch a tuple, and may be
called again if the scan needs to be restarted. Information about the table to scan is accessible through
fields of the SampleScanState node (but note that the node->ss.ss_currentScanDesc scan descriptor
is not set up yet). The params array, of length nparams, contains the values of the parameters supplied
in the TABLESAMPLE clause. These will have the number and types specified in the sampling method's
parameterTypes list, and have been checked to not be null. seed contains a seed to use for any random
numbers generated within the sampling method; it is either a hash derived from the REPEATABLE value
if one was given, or the result of random() if not.

This function may adjust the fields node->use_bulkread and node->use_pagemode. If node->
use_bulkread is true, which it is by default, the scan will use a buffer access strategy that encourages
recycling buffers after use. It might be reasonable to set this to false if the scan will visit only a small
fraction of the table's pages. If node->use_pagemode is true, which it is by default, the scan will perform
visibility checking in a single pass for all tuples on each visited page. It might be reasonable to set this
to false if the scan will select only a small fraction of the tuples on each visited page. That will result
in fewer tuple visibility checks being performed, though each one will be more expensive because it will
require more locking.

If the sampling method is marked repeatable_across_scans, it must be able to select the same set of
tuples during a rescan as it did originally, that is a fresh call of BeginSampleScan must lead to selecting
the same tuples as before (if the TABLESAMPLE parameters and seed don't change).

```c
BlockNumber
NextSampleBlock (SampleScanState *node, BlockNumber nblocks);
```

Returns the block number of the next page to be scanned, or InvalidBlockNumber if no pages remain
to be scanned.
This function can be omitted (set the pointer to NULL), in which case the core code will perform a sequential scan of the entire relation. Such a scan can use synchronized scanning, so that the sampling method cannot assume that the relation pages are visited in the same order on each scan.

```c
NumberOf
NextSampleTuple (SampleScanState *node,
    BlockNumber blockno,
    OffsetNumber maxoffset);
```

Returns the offset number of the next tuple to be sampled on the specified page, or `InvalidOffsetNumber` if no tuples remain to be sampled. `maxoffset` is the largest offset number in use on the page.

**Note**

`NextSampleTuple` is not explicitly told which of the offset numbers in the range `1 .. maxoffset` actually contain valid tuples. This is not normally a problem since the core code ignores requests to sample missing or invisible tuples; that should not result in any bias in the sample. However, if necessary, the function can use `node->donetuples` to examine how many of the tuples it returned were valid and visible.

```c
void
EndSampleScan (SampleScanState *node);
```

End the scan and release resources. It is normally not important to release `palloc`ed memory, but any externally-visible resources should be cleaned up. This function can be omitted (set the pointer to NULL) in the common case where no such resources exist.
Chapter 55. Writing a Custom Scan Provider

Postgres Pro supports a set of experimental facilities which are intended to allow extension modules to add new scan types to the system. Unlike a foreign data wrapper, which is only responsible for knowing how to scan its own foreign tables, a custom scan provider can provide an alternative method of scanning any relation in the system. Typically, the motivation for writing a custom scan provider will be to allow the use of some optimization not supported by the core system, such as caching or some form of hardware acceleration. This chapter outlines how to write a new custom scan provider.

Implementing a new type of custom scan is a three-step process. First, during planning, it is necessary to generate access paths representing a scan using the proposed strategy. Second, if one of those access paths is selected by the planner as the optimal strategy for scanning a particular relation, the access path must be converted to a plan. Finally, it must be possible to execute the plan and generate the same results that would have been generated for any other access path targeting the same relation.

55.1. Creating Custom Scan Paths

A custom scan provider will typically add paths for a base relation by setting the following hook, which is called after the core code has generated all the access paths it can for the relation (except for Gather paths, which are made after this call so that they can use partial paths added by the hook):

typedef void (*set_rel_pathlist_hook_type) (PlannerInfo *root,
   RelOptInfo *rel,
   Index rti,
   RangeTblEntry *rte);
extern PGDLLIMPORT set_rel_pathlist_hook_type set_rel_pathlist_hook;

Although this hook function can be used to examine, modify, or remove paths generated by the core system, a custom scan provider will typically confine itself to generating CustomPath objects and adding them to rel using add_path. The custom scan provider is responsible for initializing the CustomPath object, which is declared like this:

```c
typedef struct CustomPath
{
    Path path;
    uint32 flags;
    List *custom_paths;
    List *custom_private;
    const CustomPathMethods *methods;
} CustomPath;
```

Path must be initialized as for any other path, including the row-count estimate, start and total cost, and sort ordering provided by this path. flags is a bit mask, which should include CUSTOMPATH_SUPPORT_BACKWARD_SCAN if the custom path can support a backward scan and CUSTOMPATH_SUPPORT_MARK_RESTORE if it can support mark and restore. Both capabilities are optional. An optional custom_paths is a list of Path nodes used by this custom-path node; these will be transformed into Plan nodes by planner. custom_private can be used to store the custom path's private data. Private data should be stored in a form that can be handled by nodeToString, so that debugging routines that attempt to print the custom path will work as designed. methods must point to a (usually statically allocated) object implementing the required custom path methods, of which there is currently only one.

A custom scan provider can also provide join paths. Just as for base relations, such a path must produce the same output as would normally be produced by the join it replaces. To do this, the join provider should set the following hook, and then within the hook function, create CustomPath path(s) for the join relation.

```c
typedef void (*set_join_pathlist_hook_type) (PlannerInfo *root,
   RelOptInfo *joinrel,
   RelOptInfo *outerrel,
   RelOptInfo *innerrel,
   JoinType jointype,
```

2043
JoinPathExtraData *extra);

extern PGDLLIMPORT set_join_pathlist_hook_type set_join_pathlist_hook;

This hook will be invoked repeatedly for the same join relation, with different combinations of inner and outer relations; it is the responsibility of the hook to minimize duplicated work.

### 55.1.1. Custom Scan Path Callbacks

Plan *(*PlanCustomPath) (PlannerInfo *root,
RelOptInfo *rel,
CustomPath *best_path,
List *tlist,
List *clauses,
List *custom_plans);

Convert a custom path to a finished plan. The return value will generally be a `CustomScan` object, which the callback must allocate and initialize. See Section 55.2 for more details.

### 55.2. Creating Custom Scan Plans

A custom scan is represented in a finished plan tree using the following structure:

```c
typedef struct CustomScan
{
    Scan      scan;
    uint32    flags;
    List     *custom_plans;
    List     *custom_exprs;
    List     *custom_private;
    List     *custom_scan_tlist;
    Bitmapset *custom_relids;
    const CustomScanMethods *methods;
} CustomScan;
```

- `scan` must be initialized as for any other scan, including estimated costs, target lists, qualifications, and so on.
- `flags` is a bit mask with the same meaning as in `CustomPath`.
- `custom_plans` can be used to store child Plan nodes.
- `custom_exprs` should be used to store expression trees that will need to be fixed up by `setrefs.c` and `subselect.c`, while `custom_private` should be used to store other private data that is only used by the custom scan provider itself.
- `custom_scan_tlist` can be NIL when scanning a base relation, indicating that the custom scan returns scan tuples that match the base relation's row type. Otherwise it is a target list describing the actual scan tuples.
- `custom_relids` is set by the core code to the set of relations (range table indexes) that this scan node handles; except when this scan is replacing a join, it will have only one member.
- `methods` must point to a (usually statically allocated) object implementing the required custom scan methods, which are further detailed below.

When a `CustomScan` scans a single relation, `scan.scanrelid` must be the range table index of the table to be scanned. When it replaces a join, `scan.scanrelid` should be zero.

Plan trees must be able to be duplicated using `copyObject`, so all the data stored within the “custom” fields must consist of nodes that that function can handle. Furthermore, custom scan providers cannot substitute a larger structure that embeds a `CustomScan` for the structure itself, as would be possible for a `CustomPath` or `CustomScanState`.

### 55.2.1. Custom Scan Plan Callbacks

Node *(*CreateCustomScanState) (CustomScan *cscan);

Allocate a `CustomScanState` for this `CustomScan`. The actual allocation will often be larger than required for an ordinary `CustomScanState`, because many providers will wish to embed that as the first field of
a larger structure. The value returned must have the node tag and methods set appropriately, but other fields should be left as zeroes at this stage; after ExecInitCustomScan performs basic initialization, the BeginCustomScan callback will be invoked to give the custom scan provider a chance to do whatever else is needed.

### 55.3. Executing Custom Scans

When a CustomScan is executed, its execution state is represented by a CustomScanState, which is declared as follows:

```c
typedef struct CustomScanState
{
    ScanState ss;
    uint32 flags;
    const CustomExecMethods *methods;
} CustomScanState;
```

ss is initialized as for any other scan state, except that if the scan is for a join rather than a base relation, ss.ss_currentRelation is left NULL. flags is a bit mask with the same meaning as in CustomPath and CustomScan.methods must point to a (usually statically allocated) object implementing the required custom scan state methods, which are further detailed below. Typically, a CustomScanState, which need not support copyObject, will actually be a larger structure embedding the above as its first member.

#### 55.3.1. Custom Scan Execution Callbacks

- **void (*BeginCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node, EState *estate, int eflags);**
  
  Complete initialization of the supplied CustomScanState. Standard fields have been initialized by ExecInitCustomScan, but any private fields should be initialized here.

- **TupleTableSlot *(*ExecCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);**
  
  Fetch the next scan tuple. If any tuples remain, it should fill ps_ResultTupleSlot with the next tuple in the current scan direction, and then return the tuple slot. If not, NULL or an empty slot should be returned.

- **void (*EndCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);**
  
  Clean up any private data associated with the CustomScanState. This method is required, but it does not need to do anything if there is no associated data or it will be cleaned up automatically.

- **void (*ReScanCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);**
  
  Rewind the current scan to the beginning and prepare to rescan the relation.

- **void (*MarkPosCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);**
  
  Save the current scan position so that it can subsequently be restored by the RestrPosCustomScan callback. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if the CUSTOMPATH_SUPPORT_MARK_RESTORE flag is set.

- **void (*RestrPosCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);**
  
  Restore the previous scan position as saved by the MarkPosCustomScan callback. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if the CUSTOMPATH_SUPPORT_MARK_RESTORE flag is set.

- **Size (*EstimateDSMCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node, ParallelContext *pcxt);**
  
  Estimate the amount of dynamic shared memory that will be required for parallel operation. This may be higher than the amount that will actually be used, but it must not be lower. The return value is in bytes. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if this custom scan provider supports parallel execution.
Writing a Custom Scan Provider

```c
void (*InitializeDSMCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,
                                  ParallelContext *pcxt,
                                  void *coordinate);
```

Initialize the dynamic shared memory that will be required for parallel operation. `coordinate` points to a shared memory area of size equal to the return value of `EstimateDSMCustomScan`. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if this custom scan provider supports parallel execution.

```c
void (*ReInitializeDSMCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,
                                     ParallelContext *pcxt,
                                     void *coordinate);
```

Re-initialize the dynamic shared memory required for parallel operation when the custom-scan plan node is about to be re-scanned. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if this custom scan provider supports parallel execution. Recommended practice is that this callback reset only shared state, while the `ReScanCustomScan` callback resets only local state. Currently, this callback will be called before `ReScanCustomScan`, but it's best not to rely on that ordering.

```c
void (*InitializeWorkerCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,
                               shm_toc *toc,
                               void *coordinate);
```

Initialize a parallel worker's local state based on the shared state set up by the leader during `InitializeDSMCustomScan`. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if this custom scan provider supports parallel execution.

```c
void (*ShutdownCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);
```

Release resources when it is anticipated the node will not be executed to completion. This is not called in all cases; sometimes, `EndCustomScan` may be called without this function having been called first. Since the DSM segment used by parallel query is destroyed just after this callback is invoked, custom scan providers that wish to take some action before the DSM segment goes away should implement this method.

```c
void (*ExplainCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,
                           List *ancestors,
                           ExplainState *es);
```

Output additional information for `EXPLAIN` of a custom-scan plan node. This callback is optional. Common data stored in the `ScanState`, such as the target list and scan relation, will be shown even without this callback, but the callback allows the display of additional, private state.
56.1. Query Handling as a Complex Optimization Problem

Among all relational operators the most difficult one to process and optimize is the join. The number of possible query plans grows exponentially with the number of joins in the query. Further optimization effort is caused by the support of a variety of join methods (e.g., nested loop, hash join, merge join in Postgres Pro) to process individual joins and a diversity of indexes (e.g., B-tree, hash, GiST and GIN in Postgres Pro) as access paths for relations.

The normal Postgres Pro query optimizer performs a near-exhaustive search over the space of alternative strategies. This algorithm, first introduced in IBM’s System R database, produces a near-optimal join order, but can take an enormous amount of time and memory space when the number of joins in the query grows large. This makes the ordinary Postgres Pro query optimizer inappropriate for queries that join a large number of tables.

The Institute of Automatic Control at the University of Mining and Technology, in Freiberg, Germany, encountered some problems when it wanted to use PostgreSQL as the backend for a decision support knowledge based system for the maintenance of an electrical power grid. The DBMS needed to handle large join queries for the inference machine of the knowledge based system. The number of joins in these queries made using the normal query optimizer infeasible.

In the following we describe the implementation of a genetic algorithm to solve the join ordering problem in a manner that is efficient for queries involving large numbers of joins.

56.2. Genetic Algorithms

The genetic algorithm (GA) is a heuristic optimization method which operates through randomized search. The set of possible solutions for the optimization problem is considered as a population of individuals. The degree of adaptation of an individual to its environment is specified by its fitness.

The coordinates of an individual in the search space are represented by chromosomes, in essence a set of character strings. A gene is a subsection of a chromosome which encodes the value of a single parameter being optimized. Typical encodings for a gene could be binary or integer.

Through simulation of the evolutionary operations recombination, mutation, and selection new generations of search points are found that show a higher average fitness than their ancestors. Figure 56.1 illustrates these steps.
According to the comp.ai.genetic FAQ it cannot be stressed too strongly that a GA is not a pure random search for a solution to a problem. A GA uses stochastic processes, but the result is distinctly non-random (better than random).

### 56.3. Genetic Query Optimization (GEQO) in Postgres Pro

The GEQO module approaches the query optimization problem as though it were the well-known traveling salesman problem (TSP). Possible query plans are encoded as integer strings. Each string represents the join order from one relation of the query to the next. For example, the join tree

```
/\ 2
/  3
```
is encoded by the integer string '4-1-3-2', which means, first join relation '4' and '1', then '3', and then '2', where 1, 2, 3, 4 are relation IDs within the Postgres Pro optimizer.

Specific characteristics of the GEQO implementation in Postgres Pro are:
• Usage of a steady state GA (replacement of the least fit individuals in a population, not whole-generational replacement) allows fast convergence towards improved query plans. This is essential for query handling with reasonable time;
• Usage of edge recombination crossover which is especially suited to keep edge losses low for the solution of the TSP by means of a GA;
• Mutation as genetic operator is deprecated so that no repair mechanisms are needed to generate legal TSP tours.

Parts of the GEQO module are adapted from D. Whitley's Genitor algorithm.

The GEQO module allows the Postgres Pro query optimizer to support large join queries effectively through non-exhaustive search.

56.3.1. Generating Possible Plans with GEQO

The GEQO planning process uses the standard planner code to generate plans for scans of individual relations. Then join plans are developed using the genetic approach. As shown above, each candidate join plan is represented by a sequence in which to join the base relations. In the initial stage, the GEQO code simply generates some possible join sequences at random. For each join sequence considered, the standard planner code is invoked to estimate the cost of performing the query using that join sequence. (For each step of the join sequence, all three possible join strategies are considered; and all the initially-determined relation scan plans are available. The estimated cost is the cheapest of these possibilities.) Join sequences with lower estimated cost are considered “more fit” than those with higher cost. The genetic algorithm discards the least fit candidates. Then new candidates are generated by combining genes of more-fit candidates — that is, by using randomly-chosen portions of known low-cost join sequences to create new sequences for consideration. This process is repeated until a preset number of join sequences have been considered; then the best one found at any time during the search is used to generate the finished plan.

This process is inherently nondeterministic, because of the randomized choices made during both the initial population selection and subsequent “mutation” of the best candidates. To avoid surprising changes of the selected plan, each run of the GEQO algorithm restarts its random number generator with the current geqo_seed parameter setting. As long as geqo_seed and the other GEQO parameters are kept fixed, the same plan will be generated for a given query (and other planner inputs such as statistics). To experiment with different search paths, try changing geqo_seed.

56.3.2. Future Implementation Tasks for PostgreSQL GEQO

Work is still needed to improve the genetic algorithm parameter settings. We have to find a compromise for the parameter settings to satisfy two competing demands:
• Optimality of the query plan
• Computing time

In the current implementation, the fitness of each candidate join sequence is estimated by running the standard planner’s join selection and cost estimation code from scratch. To the extent that different candidates use similar sub-sequences of joins, a great deal of work will be repeated. This could be made significantly faster by retaining cost estimates for sub-joins. The problem is to avoid expending unreasonable amounts of memory on retaining that state.

At a more basic level, it is not clear that solving query optimization with a GA algorithm designed for TSP is appropriate. In the TSP case, the cost associated with any substring (partial tour) is independent of the rest of the tour, but this is certainly not true for query optimization. Thus it is questionable whether edge recombination crossover is the most effective mutation procedure.
56.4. Further Reading

The following resources contain additional information about genetic algorithms:

- *Evolutionary Computation and its application to art and design*, by Craig Reynolds
- elma04
- fong
Chapter 57. Table Access Method Interface

Definition

This chapter explains the interface between the core PostgreSQL system and table access methods, which manage the storage for tables. The core system knows little about these access methods beyond what is specified here, so it is possible to develop entirely new access method types by writing add-on code.

Each table access method is described by a row in the pg_am system catalog. The pg_am entry specifies a name and a handler function for the table access method. These entries can be created and deleted using the CREATE ACCESS METHOD and DROP ACCESS METHOD SQL commands.

A table access method handler function must be declared to accept a single argument of type internal and to return the pseudo-type table_am_handler. The argument is a dummy value that simply serves to prevent handler functions from being called directly from SQL commands. The result of the function must be a pointer to a struct of type TableAmRoutine, which contains everything that the core code needs to know to make use of the table access method. The return value needs to be of server lifetime, which is typically achieved by defining it as a static const variable in global scope. The TableAmRoutine struct, also called the access method's API struct, defines the behavior of the access method using callbacks. These callbacks are pointers to plain C functions and are not visible or callable at the SQL level. All the callbacks and their behavior is defined in the TableAmRoutine structure (with comments inside the struct defining the requirements for callbacks). Most callbacks have wrapper functions, which are documented from the point of view of a user (rather than an implementor) of the table access method. For details, please refer to the src/include/access/tableam.h file.

To implement an access method, an implementor will typically need to implement an AM-specific type of tuple table slot (see src/include/executor/tuptable.h), which allows code outside the access method to hold references to tuples of the AM, and to access the columns of the tuple.

Currently, the way an AM actually stores data is fairly unconstrained. For example, it's possible, but not required, to use postgres' shared buffer cache. In case it is used, it likely makes sense to use PostgreSQL's standard page layout as described in Section 66.6.

One fairly large constraint of the table access method API is that, currently, if the AM wants to support modifications and/or indexes, it is necessary for each tuple to have a tuple identifier (TID) consisting of a block number and an item number (see also Section 66.6). It is not strictly necessary that the subparts of TIDs have the same meaning they e.g., have for heap, but if bitmap scan support is desired (it is optional), the block number needs to provide locality.

For crash safety, an AM can use postgres' WAL, or a custom implementation. If WAL is chosen, either Generic WAL Records can be used, or a new type of WAL records can be implemented. Generic WAL Records are easy, but imply higher WAL volume. Implementation of a new type of WAL record currently requires modifications to core code (specifically, src/include/access/rmgrlist.h).

To implement transactional support in a manner that allows different table access methods be accessed within a single transaction, it likely is necessary to closely integrate with the machinery in src/backend/access/transam/xlog.c.

Any developer of a new table access method can refer to the existing heap implementation present in src/backend/access/heap/heapam_handler.c for details of its implementation.
Chapter 58. Index Access Method Interface Definition

This chapter defines the interface between the core Postgres Pro system and index access methods, which manage individual index types. The core system knows nothing about indexes beyond what is specified here, so it is possible to develop entirely new index types by writing add-on code.

All indexes in Postgres Pro are what are known technically as secondary indexes; that is, the index is physically separate from the table file that it describes. Each index is stored as its own physical relation and so is described by an entry in the pg_class catalog. The contents of an index are entirely under the control of its index access method. In practice, all index access methods divide indexes into standard-size pages so that they can use the regular storage manager and buffer manager to access the index contents. (All the existing index access methods furthermore use the standard page layout described in Section 66.6, and most use the same format for index tuple headers; but these decisions are not forced on an access method.)

An index is effectively a mapping from some data key values to tuple identifiers, or TIDs, of row versions (tuples) in the index's parent table. A TID consists of a block number and an item number within that block (see Section 66.6). This is sufficient information to fetch a particular row version from the table. Indexes are not directly aware that under MVCC, there might be multiple extant versions of the same logical row; to an index, each tuple is an independent object that needs its own index entry. Thus, an update of a row always creates all-new index entries for the row, even if the key values did not change. (HOT tuples are an exception to this statement; but indexes do not deal with those, either.) Index entries for dead tuples are reclaimed (by vacuuming) when the dead tuples themselves are reclaimed.

58.1. Basic API Structure for Indexes

Each index access method is described by a row in the pg_am system catalog. The pg_am entry specifies a name and a handler function for the index access method. These entries can be created and deleted using the CREATE ACCESS METHOD and DROP ACCESS METHOD SQL commands.

An index access method handler function must be declared to accept a single argument of type internal and to return the pseudo-type index_am_handler. The argument is a dummy value that simply serves to prevent handler functions from being called directly from SQL commands. The result of the function must be a palloc’d struct of type IndexAmRoutine, which contains everything that the core code needs to know to make use of the index access method. The IndexAmRoutine struct, also called the access method's API struct, includes fields specifying assorted fixed properties of the access method, such as whether it can support multicolumn indexes. More importantly, it contains pointers to support functions for the access method, which do all of the real work to access indexes. These support functions are plain C functions and are not visible or callable at the SQL level. The support functions are described in Section 58.2.

The structure IndexAmRoutine is defined thus:

typedef struct IndexAmRoutine
{
    NodeTag type;

    /*
    * Total number of strategies (operators) by which we can traverse/search
    * this AM.  Zero if AM does not have a fixed set of strategy assignments.
    */
    uint16 amstrategies;

    /* total number of support functions that this AM uses */
    uint16 amsupport;

    /* opclass options support function number or 0 */
    uint16 amoptsprocnun;

    /* does AM support ORDER BY indexed column's value? */
}
bool amcanorder;
/* does AM support ORDER BY result of an operator on indexed column? */
bool amcanorderbyop;
/* does AM support backward scanning? */
bool amcanbackward;
/* does AM support UNIQUE indexes? */
bool amcanunique;
/* does AM support multi-column indexes? */
bool amcanmulticol;
/* does AM require scans to have a constraint on the first index column? */
bool amoptionalgo;
/* does AM handle ScalarArrayOpExpr quals? */
bool amsearcharray;
/* does AM handle IS NULL/IS NOT NULL quals? */
bool amsearchnulls;
/* can index storage data type differ from column data type? */
bool amstorage;
/* can an index of this type be clustered on? */
bool amclusterable;
/* does AM handle predicate locks? */
bool ampredlocks;
/* does AM support parallel scan? */
bool amcanparallel;
/* does AM support columns included with clause INCLUDE? */
bool amcaninclude;
/* does AM use maintenance_work_mem? */
bool amusemaintenanceworkmem;
/* OR of parallel vacuum flags */
uint8 amparallelvacuumoptions;
/* type of data stored in index, or InvalidOid if variable */
Oid amkeytype;

/* interface functions */
ambuild_function ambuild;
ambuildempty_function ambuildempty;
aminsert_function aminsert;
ambulkdelete_function ambulkdelete;
amvacuumcleanup_function amvacuumcleanup;
amcanreturn_function amcanreturn; /* can be NULL */
amcostestimate_function amcostestimate;
amoptions_function amoptions;
amproperty_function amproperty; /* can be NULL */
ambuildphasename_function ambuildphasename; /* can be NULL */
amvalidate_function amvalidate;
amadjustmembers_function amadjustmembers; /* can be NULL */
ambeginscan_function ambeginscan;
amrescan_function amrescan;
amgettuple_function amgettuple; /* can be NULL */
amgetbitmap_function amgetbitmap; /* can be NULL */
amendscan_function amendscan;
ammarkpos_function ammarkpos; /* can be NULL */
amrestrpos_function amrestrpos; /* can be NULL */
amrescan_function amrescan;

/* interface functions to support parallel index scans */
amestimateparallelscan_function amestimateparallelscan; /* can be NULL */
aminitparallelscan_function aminitparallelscan; /* can be NULL */
amparallelrescan_function amparallelrescan; /* can be NULL */

} IndexAmRoutine;
To be useful, an index access method must also have one or more operator families and operator classes defined in `pg_opfamily`, `pg_opclass`, `pg_amop`, and `pg_amproc`. These entries allow the planner to determine what kinds of query qualifications can be used with indexes of this access method. Operator families and classes are described in Section 36.16, which is prerequisite material for reading this chapter.

An individual index is defined by a `pg_class` entry that describes it as a physical relation, plus a `pg_index` entry that shows the logical content of the index — that is, the set of index columns it has and the semantics of those columns, as captured by the associated operator classes. The index columns (key values) can be either simple columns of the underlying table or expressions over the table rows. The index access method normally has no interest in where the index key values come from (it is always handed precomputed key values) but it will be very interested in the operator class information in `pg_index`. Both of these catalog entries can be accessed as part of the `Relation` data structure that is passed to all operations on the index.

Some of the flag fields of `IndexAmRoutine` have nonobvious implications. The requirements of `amcanunique` are discussed in Section 58.5. The `amcanmulticol` flag asserts that the access method supports multi-key-column indexes, while `amoptionalkey` asserts that it allows scans where no indexable restriction clause is given for the first index column. When `amcanmulticol` is false, `amoptionalkey` essentially says whether the access method supports full-index scans without any restriction clause. Access methods that support multiple index columns must support scans that omit restrictions on any or all of the columns after the first; however they are permitted to require some restriction to appear for the first index column, and this is signaled by setting `amoptionalkey` false. One reason that an index AM might set `amoptionalkey` false is if it doesn’t index null values. Since most indexable operators are strict and hence cannot return true for null inputs, it is at first sight attractive to not store index entries for null values: they could never be returned by an index scan anyway. However, this argument fails when an index scan has no restriction clause for a given index column. In practice this means that indexes that have `amoptionalkey` true must index nulls, since the planner might decide to use such an index with no scan keys at all. A related restriction is that an index access method that supports multiple index columns must support indexing null values in columns after the first, because the planner will assume the index can be used for queries that do not restrict these columns. For example, consider an index on `(a,b)` and a query with `WHERE a = 4`. The system will assume the index can be used to scan for rows with `a = 4`, which is wrong if the index omits rows where `b` is null. It is, however, OK to omit rows where the first indexed column is null. An index access method that does index nulls may also set `amsearchnulls`, indicating that it supports `IS NULL` and `IS NOT NULL` clauses as search conditions.

The `amcaninclude` flag indicates whether the access method supports “included” columns, that is, it can store (without processing) additional columns beyond the key column(s). The requirements of the preceding paragraph apply only to the key columns. In particular, the combination of `amcanmulticol=\text{false}` and `amcaninclude=\text{true}` is sensible: it means that there can only be one key column, but there can also be included column(s). Also, included columns must be allowed to be null, independently of `amoptionalkey`.

### 58.2. Index Access Method Functions

The index construction and maintenance functions that an index access method must provide in `IndexAmRoutine` are:

```c
IndexBuildResult * ambuild (Relation heapRelation,
                                 Relation indexRelation,
                                 IndexInfo *indexInfo);
```

Build a new index. The index relation has been physically created, but is empty. It must be filled in with whatever fixed data the access method requires, plus entries for all tuples already existing in the table. Ordinarily the `ambuild` function will call `table_index_build_scan()` to scan the table for existing tuples and compute the keys that need to be inserted into the index. The function must return a `palloc`d struct containing statistics about the new index.
Index Access Method
Interface Definition

void
ambuildempty (Relation indexRelation);

Build an empty index, and write it to the initialization fork (INIT_FORKNUM) of the given relation. This method is called only for unlogged indexes; the empty index written to the initialization fork will be copied over the main relation fork on each server restart.

bool
aminsert (Relation indexRelation, Datum *values, bool *isnull, ItemPointer heap_tid, Relation heapRelation, IndexUniqueCheck checkUnique, bool indexUnchanged, IndexInfo *indexInfo);

Insert a new tuple into an existing index. The values and isnull arrays give the key values to be indexed, and heap_tid is the TID to be indexed. If the access method supports unique indexes (its amcanunique flag is true) then checkUnique indicates the type of uniqueness check to perform. This varies depending on whether the unique constraint is deferrable; see Section 58.5 for details. Normally the access method only needs the heapRelation parameter when performing uniqueness checking (since then it will have to look into the heap to verify tuple liveness).

The indexUnchanged Boolean value gives a hint about the nature of the tuple to be indexed. When it is true, the tuple is a duplicate of some existing tuple in the index. The new tuple is a logically unchanged successor MVCC tuple version. This happens when an UPDATE takes place that does not modify any columns covered by the index, but nevertheless requires a new version in the index. The index AM may use this hint to decide to apply bottom-up index deletion in parts of the index where many versions of the same logical row accumulate. Note that updating a non-key column does not affect the value of indexUnchanged.

The function's Boolean result value is significant only when checkUnique is UNIQUE_CHECK_PARTIAL. In this case a true result means the new entry is known unique, whereas false means it might be non-unique (and a deferred uniqueness check must be scheduled). For other cases a constant false result is recommended.

Some indexes might not index all tuples. If the tuple is not to be indexed, aminsert should just return without doing anything.

If the index AM wishes to cache data across successive index insertions within an SQL statement, it can allocate space in indexInfo->ii_Context and store a pointer to the data in indexInfo->ii_AmCache (which will be NULL initially).

IndexBulkDeleteResult *
ambulkdelete (IndexVacuumInfo *info, IndexBulkDeleteResult *stats, IndexBulkDeleteCallback callback, void *callback_state);

Delete tuple(s) from the index. This is a “bulk delete” operation that is intended to be implemented by scanning the whole index and checking each entry to see if it should be deleted. The passed-in callback function must be called, in the style callback(TID, callback_state) returns bool, to determine whether any particular index entry, as identified by its referenced TID, is to be deleted. Must return either NULL or a palloc’d struct containing statistics about the effects of the deletion operation. It is OK to return NULL if no information needs to be passed on to amvacuumcleanup.

Because of limited maintenance_work_mem, ambulkdelete might need to be called more than once when many tuples are to be deleted. The stats argument is the result of the previous call for this index (it is NULL for the first call within a VACUUM operation). This allows the AM to accumulate statistics across
the whole operation. Typically, \texttt{ambulkdelete} will modify and return the same struct if the passed \texttt{stats} is not null.

\begin{verbatim}
IndexBulkDeleteResult *
amvacuumcleanup (IndexVacuumInfo *info,
                  IndexBulkDeleteResult *stats);
\end{verbatim}

Clean up after a \texttt{VACUUM} operation (zero or more \texttt{ambulkdelete} calls). This does not have to do anything beyond returning index statistics, but it might perform bulk cleanup such as reclaiming empty index pages. \texttt{stats} is whatever the last \texttt{ambulkdelete} call returned, or NULL if \texttt{ambulkdelete} was not called because no tuples needed to be deleted. If the result is not NULL it must be a palloc'd struct. The statistics it contains will be used to update \texttt{pg_class}, and will be reported by \texttt{VACUUM} if \texttt{VERBOSE} is given. It is OK to return NULL if the index was not changed at all during the \texttt{VACUUM} operation, but otherwise correct stats should be returned.

\begin{verbatim}
amvacuumcleanup will also be called at completion of an \texttt{ANALYZE} operation. In this case \texttt{stats} is always NULL and any return value will be ignored. This case can be distinguished by checking \texttt{info->analyze_only}. It is recommended that the access method do nothing except post-insert cleanup in such a call, and that only in an autovacuum worker process.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
bool
amcanreturn (Relation indexRelation, int attno);
\end{verbatim}

Check whether the index can support \textit{index-only scans} on the given column, by returning the column's original indexed value. The attribute number is 1-based, i.e., the first column's attno is 1. Returns true if supported, else false. This function should always return true for included columns (if those are supported), since there's little point in an included column that can't be retrieved. If the access method does not support index-only scans at all, the \texttt{amcanreturn} field in its \texttt{IndexAmRoutine} struct can be set to NULL.

\begin{verbatim}
void
amcostestimate (PlannerInfo *root,
                 IndexPath *path,
                 double loop_count,
                 Cost *indexStartupCost,
                 Cost *indexTotalCost,
                 Selectivity *indexSelectivity,
                 double *indexCorrelation,
                 double *indexPages);
\end{verbatim}

Estimate the costs of an index scan. This function is described fully in Section 58.6, below.

\begin{verbatim}
bytea *
amoptions (ArrayType *reloptions,
            bool validate);
\end{verbatim}

Parse and validate the \texttt{reloptions} array for an index. This is called only when a non-null \texttt{reloptions} array exists for the index. \texttt{reloptions} is a \texttt{text} array containing entries of the form \texttt{name=value}. The function should construct a \texttt{bytea} value, which will be copied into the \texttt{rd_options} field of the index's relcache entry. The data contents of the \texttt{bytea} value are open for the access method to define; most of the standard access methods use struct \texttt{StdRdOptions}. When \texttt{validate} is true, the function should report a suitable error message if any of the options are unrecognized or have invalid values; when \texttt{validate} is false, invalid entries should be silently ignored. (\texttt{validate} is false when loading options already stored in \texttt{pg_catalog}; an invalid entry could only be found if the access method has changed its rules for options, and in that case ignoring obsolete entries is appropriate.) It is OK to return NULL if default behavior is wanted.

\begin{verbatim}
bool
amproperty (Oid index_oid, int attno,
            IndexAMProperty prop, const char *propname,
            bool *res, bool *isnull);
\end{verbatim}
The amproperty method allows index access methods to override the default behavior of pg_index_column_has_property and related functions. If the access method does not have any special behavior for index property inquiries, the amproperty field in its IndexAmRoutine struct can be set to NULL. Otherwise, the amproperty method will be called with index_oid and attno both zero for pg_indexam_has_property calls, or with index_oid valid and attno zero for pg_index_has_property calls, or with index_oid valid and attno greater than zero for pg_index_column_has_property calls.

prop is an enum value identifying the property being tested, while propname is the original property name string. If the core code does not recognize the property name then prop is AMPROP_UNKNOWN. Access methods can define custom property names by checking propname for a match (use pg_strcasecmp to match, for consistency with the core code); for names known to the core code, it's better to inspect prop. If the amproperty method returns true then it has determined the property test result: it must set *res to the Boolean value to return, or set *isnull to true to return a NULL. (Both of the referenced variables are initialized to false before the call.) If the amproperty method returns false then the core code will proceed with its normal logic for determining the property test result.

Access methods that support ordering operators should implement AMPROP_DISTANCE_ORDERABLE property testing, as the core code does not know how to do that and will return NULL. It may also be advantageous to implement AMPROP_RETURNABLE testing, if that can be done more cheaply than by opening the index and calling amcanreturn, which is the core code's default behavior. The default behavior should be satisfactory for all other standard properties.

char *
ambuildphasename (int64 phasenum);

Return the textual name of the given build phase number. The phase numbers are those reported during an index build via the pgstat_progress_update_param interface. The phase names are then exposed in the pg_stat_progress_create_index view.

bool
amvalidate (Oid opclassoid);

Validate the catalog entries for the specified operator class, so far as the access method can reasonably do that. For example, this might include testing that all required support functions are provided. The amvalidate function must return false if the opclass is invalid. Problems should be reported with ereport messages, typically at INFO level.

void
amadjustmembers (Oid opfamilyoid,
  Oid opclassoid,
  List *operators,
  List *functions);

Validate proposed new operator and function members of an operator family, so far as the access method can reasonably do that, and set their dependency types if the default is not satisfactory. This is called during CREATE OPERATOR CLASS and during ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY ADD; in the latter case opclassoid is InvalidOid. The List arguments are lists of OpFamilyMember structs. Tests done by this function will typically be a subset of those performed by amvalidate, since amadjustmembers cannot assume that it is seeing a complete set of members. For example, it would be reasonable to check the signature of a support function, but not to check whether all required support functions are provided. Any problems can be reported by throwing an error. The dependency-related fields of the OpFamilyMember structs are initialized by the core code to create hard dependencies on the opclass if this is CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, or soft dependencies on the opfamily if this is ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY ADD; amadjustmembers can adjust these fields if some other behavior is more appropriate. For example, GIN, GiST, and SP-GiST always set operator members to have soft dependencies on the opfamily, since the connection between an operator and an opclass is relatively weak in these index types; so it is reasonable to allow operator members to be added and removed freely. Optional support functions are typically also given soft dependencies, so that they can be removed if necessary.

The purpose of an index, of course, is to support scans for tuples matching an indexable WHERE condition, often called a qualifier or scan key. The semantics of index scanning are described more fully in
An index access method can support “plain” index scans, “bitmap” index scans, or both. The scan-related functions that an index access method must or may provide are:

```c
IndexScanDesc
ambeginScan (Relation indexRelation,
              int nkeys,
              int norderbys);
```

Prepare for an index scan. The `nkeys` and `norderbys` parameters indicate the number of quals and ordering operators that will be used in the scan; these may be useful for space allocation purposes. Note that the actual values of the scan keys aren't provided yet. The result must be a `palloc'd` struct. For implementation reasons the index access method must create this struct by calling `RelationGetIndexScan()`. In most cases `ambeginScan` does little beyond making that call and perhaps acquiring locks; the interesting parts of index-scan startup are in `amrescan`.

```c
void
amrescan (IndexScanDesc scan,
          ScanKey keys,
          int nkeys,
          ScanKey orderbys,
          int norderbys);
```

Start or restart an index scan, possibly with new scan keys. (To restart using previously-passed keys, NULL is passed for `keys` and/or `orderbys`.) Note that it is not allowed for the number of keys or order-by operators to be larger than what was passed to `ambeginScan`. In practice the restart feature is used when a new outer tuple is selected by a nested-loop join and so a new key comparison value is needed, but the scan key structure remains the same.

```c
bool
amgettuple (IndexScanDesc scan,
            ScanDirection direction);
```

Fetch the next tuple in the given scan, moving in the given direction (forward or backward in the index). Returns true if a tuple was obtained, false if no matching tuples remain. In the true case the tuple TID is stored into the `scan` structure. Note that “success” means only that the index contains an entry that matches the scan keys, not that the tuple necessarily still exists in the heap or will pass the caller's snapshot test. On success, `amgettuple` must also set `scan->xs_recheck` to true or false. False means it is certain that the index entry matches the scan keys. True means this is not certain, and the conditions represented by the scan keys must be rechecked against the heap tuple after fetching it. This provision supports “lossy” index operators. Note that rechecking will extend only to the scan conditions; a partial index predicate (if any) is never rechecked by `amgettuple` callers.

If the index supports index-only scans (i.e., `amcanreturn` returns true for any of its columns), then on success the AM must also check `scan->xs_want_itup`, and if that is true it must return the originally indexed data for the index entry. Columns for which `amcanreturn` returns false can be returned as nulls. The data can be returned in the form of an `IndexTuple` pointer stored at `scan->xs_itup`, with tuple descriptor `scan->xs_itupdesc`; or in the form of a `HeapTuple` pointer stored at `scan->xs_hitup`, with tuple descriptor `scan->xs_hitupdesc`. (The latter format should be used when reconstructing data that might possibly not fit into an `IndexTuple`.) In either case, management of the data referenced by the pointer is the access method's responsibility. The data must remain good at least until the next `amgettuple`, `amrescan`, or `amendscan` call for the scan.

The `amgettuple` function need only be provided if the access method supports “plain” index scans. If it doesn't, the `amgettuple` field in its `IndexAmRoutine` struct must be set to NULL.

```c
int64
amgetbitmap (IndexScanDesc scan,
              TIDBitmap *tbm);
```

Fetch all tuples in the given scan and add them to the caller-supplied `TIDBitmap` (that is, OR the set of tuple IDs into whatever set is already in the bitmap). The number of tuples fetched is returned (this
might be just an approximate count, for instance some AMs do not detect duplicates). While inserting tuple IDs into the bitmap, amgetbitmap can indicate that rechecking of the scan conditions is required for specific tuple IDs. This is analogous to the xs_recheck output parameter of amgettuple. Note: in the current implementation, support for this feature is conflated with support for lossy storage of the bitmap itself, and therefore callers recheck both the scan conditions and the partial index predicate (if any) for recheckable tuples. That might not always be true, however; amgetbitmap and amgettuple cannot be used in the same index scan; there are other restrictions too when using amgetbitmap, as explained in Section 58.3.

The amgetbitmap function need only be provided if the access method supports "bitmap" index scans. If it doesn't, the amgetbitmap field in its IndexAmRoutine struct must be set to NULL.

```c
void  amendscan (IndexScanDesc scan);
```
End a scan and release resources. The scan struct itself should not be freed, but any locks or pins taken internally by the access method must be released, as well as any other memory allocated by ambeginscan and other scan-related functions.

```c
void  ammarkpos (IndexScanDesc scan);
```
Mark current scan position. The access method need only support one remembered scan position per scan.

The ammarkpos function need only be provided if the access method supports ordered scans. If it doesn't, the ammarkpos field in its IndexAmRoutine struct may be set to NULL.

```c
void  amrestrpos (IndexScanDesc scan);
```
Restore the scan to the most recently marked position.

The amrestrpos function need only be provided if the access method supports ordered scans. If it doesn't, the amrestrpos field in its IndexAmRoutine struct may be set to NULL.

In addition to supporting ordinary index scans, some types of index may wish to support parallel index scans, which allow multiple backends to cooperate in performing an index scan. The index access method should arrange things so that each cooperating process returns a subset of the tuples that would be performed by an ordinary, non-parallel index scan, but in such a way that the union of those subsets is equal to the set of tuples that would be returned by an ordinary, non-parallel index scan. Furthermore, while there need not be any global ordering of tuples returned by a parallel scan, the ordering of that subset of tuples returned within each cooperating backend must match the requested ordering. The following functions may be implemented to support parallel index scans:

```c
Size  amestimateparallelscan (void);
```
Estimate and return the number of bytes of dynamic shared memory which the access method will be needed to perform a parallel scan. (This number is in addition to, not in lieu of, the amount of space needed for AM-independent data in ParallelIndexScanDescData.)

It is not necessary to implement this function for access methods which do not support parallel scans or for which the number of additional bytes of storage required is zero.

```c
void  aminitparallelscan (void *target);
```
This function will be called to initialize dynamic shared memory at the beginning of a parallel scan. target will point to at least the number of bytes previously returned by amestimateparallelscan, and this function may use that amount of space to store whatever data it wishes.
It is not necessary to implement this function for access methods which do not support parallel scans or in cases where the shared memory space required needs no initialization.

```c
void amparallelrescan (IndexScanDesc scan);
```

This function, if implemented, will be called when a parallel index scan must be restarted. It should reset any shared state set up by `aminitparallelsan` such that the scan will be restarted from the beginning.

## 58.3. Index Scanning

In an index scan, the index access method is responsible for regurgitating the TIDs of all the tuples it has been told about that match the `scan keys`. The access method is not involved in actually fetching those tuples from the index's parent table, nor in determining whether they pass the scan's visibility test or other conditions.

A scan key is the internal representation of a `WHERE` clause of the form `index_key operator constant`, where the index key is one of the columns of the index and the operator is one of the members of the operator family associated with that index column. An index scan has zero or more scan keys, which are implicitly ANDed — the returned tuples are expected to satisfy all the indicated conditions.

The access method can report that the index is *lossy*, or requires rechecks, for a particular query. This implies that the index scan will return all the entries that pass the scan key, plus possibly additional entries that do not. The core system's index-scan machinery will then apply the index conditions again to the heap tuple to verify whether or not it really should be selected. If the recheck option is not specified, the index scan must return exactly the set of matching entries.

Note that it is entirely up to the access method to ensure that it correctly finds all and only the entries passing all the given scan keys. Also, the core system will simply hand off all the `WHERE` clauses that match the index keys and operator families, without any semantic analysis to determine whether they are redundant or contradictory. As an example, given `WHERE x > 4 AND x > 14` where `x` is a b-tree indexed column, it is left to the b-tree `amrescan` function to realize that the first scan key is redundant and can be discarded. The extent of preprocessing needed during `amrescan` will depend on the extent to which the index access method needs to reduce the scan keys to a “normalized” form.

Some access methods return index entries in a well-defined order, others do not. There are actually two different ways that an access method can support sorted output:

- **Access methods that always return entries in the natural ordering of their data (such as btree)** should set `amcanorder` to true. Currently, such access methods must use btree-compatible strategy numbers for their equality and ordering operators.

- **Access methods that support ordering operators** should set `amcanorderbyop` to true. This indicates that the index is capable of returning entries in an order satisfying `ORDER BY index_key operator constant`. Scan modifiers of that form can be passed to `amrescan` as described previously.

The `amgettuple` function has a direction argument, which can be either `ForwardScanDirection` (the normal case) or `BackwardScanDirection`. If the first call after `amrescan` specifies `BackwardScanDirection`, then the set of matching index entries is to be scanned back-to-front rather than in the normal front-to-back direction, so `amgettuple` must return the last matching tuple in the index, rather than the first one as it normally would. (This will only occur for access methods that set `amcanorder` to true.) After the first call, `amgettuple` must be prepared to advance the scan in either direction from the most recently returned entry. (But if `amcanbackward` is false, all subsequent calls will have the same direction as the first one.)

Access methods that support ordered scans must support “marking” a position in a scan and later returning to the marked position. The same position might be restored multiple times. However, only one position need be remembered per scan; a new `ammarkpos` call overrides the previously marked position. An access method that does not support ordered scans need not provide `ammarkpos` and `amrestrnpos` functions in `IndexAmRoutine`; set those pointers to NULL instead.
Both the scan position and the mark position (if any) must be maintained consistently in the face of concurrent insertions or deletions in the index. It is OK if a freshly-inserted entry is not returned by a scan that would have found the entry if it had existed when the scan started, or for the scan to return such an entry upon rescanning or backing up even though it had not been returned the first time through. Similarly, a concurrent delete might or might not be reflected in the results of a scan. What is important is that insertions or deletions not cause the scan to miss or multiply return entries that were not themselves being inserted or deleted.

If the index stores the original indexed data values (and not some lossy representation of them), it is useful to support index-only scans, in which the index returns the actual data not just the TID of the heap tuple. This will only avoid I/O if the visibility map shows that the TID is on an all-visible page; else the heap tuple must be visited anyway to check MVCC visibility. But that is no concern of the access method’s.

Instead of using amgettuple, an index scan can be done with amgetbitmap to fetch all tuples in one call. This can be noticeably more efficient than amgettuple because it allows avoiding lock/unlock cycles within the access method. In principle amgetbitmap should have the same effects as repeated amgettuple calls, but we impose several restrictions to simplify matters. First of all, amgetbitmap returns all tuples at once and marking or restoring scan positions isn't supported. Secondly, the tuples are returned in a bitmap which doesn't have any specific ordering, which is why amgetbitmap doesn't take a direction argument. (Ordering operators will never be supplied for such a scan, either.) Also, there is no provision for index-only scans with amgetbitmap, since there is no way to return the contents of index tuples. Finally, amgetbitmap does not guarantee any locking of the returned tuples, with implications spelled out in Section 58.4.

Note that it is permitted for an access method to implement only amgetbitmap and not amgettuple, or vice versa, if its internal implementation is unsuited to one API or the other.

### 58.4. Index Locking Considerations

Index access methods must handle concurrent updates of the index by multiple processes. The core Postgres Pro system obtains AccessShareLock on the index during an index scan, and RowExclusiveLock when updating the index (including plain VACUUM). Since these lock types do not conflict, the access method is responsible for handling any fine-grained locking it might need. An ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the index as a whole will be taken only during index creation, destruction, or REINDEX (SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE is taken instead with CONCURRENTLY).

Building an index type that supports concurrent updates usually requires extensive and subtle analysis of the required behavior.

Aside from the index’s own internal consistency requirements, concurrent updates create issues about consistency between the parent table (the heap) and the index. Because Postgres Pro separates accesses and updates of the heap from those of the index, there are windows in which the index might be inconsistent with the heap. We handle this problem with the following rules:

- A new heap entry is made before making its index entries. (Therefore a concurrent index scan is likely to fail to see the heap entry. This is okay because the index reader would be uninterested in an uncommitted row anyway. But see Section 58.5.)
- When a heap entry is to be deleted (by VACUUM), all its index entries must be removed first.
- An index scan must maintain a pin on the index page holding the item last returned by amgettuple, and ambulkdelete cannot delete entries from pages that are pinned by other backends. The need for this rule is explained below.

Without the third rule, it is possible for an index reader to see an index entry just before it is removed by VACUUM, and then to arrive at the corresponding heap entry after that was removed by VACUUM. This creates no serious problems if that item number is still unused when the reader reaches it, since an empty item slot will be ignored by heap_fetch(). But what if a third backend has already re-used the item slot for something else? When using an MVCC-compliant snapshot, there is no problem because
the new occupant of the slot is certain to be too new to pass the snapshot test. However, with a non-MVCC-compliant snapshot (such as SnapshotAny), it would be possible to accept and return a row that does not in fact match the scan keys. We could defend against this scenario by requiring the scan keys to be rechecked against the heap row in all cases, but that is too expensive. Instead, we use a pin on an index page as a proxy to indicate that the reader might still be “in flight” from the index entry to the matching heap entry. Making ambulkdelete block on such a pin ensures that VACUUM cannot delete the heap entry before the reader is done with it. This solution costs little in run time, and adds blocking overhead only in the rare cases where there actually is a conflict.

This solution requires that index scans be “synchronous”: we have to fetch each heap tuple immediately after scanning the corresponding index entry. This is expensive for a number of reasons. An “asynchronous” scan in which we collect many TIDs from the index, and only visit the heap tuples sometime later, requires much less index locking overhead and can allow a more efficient heap access pattern. Per the above analysis, we must use the synchronous approach for non-MVCC-compliant snapshots, but an asynchronous scan is workable for a query using an MVCC snapshot.

In an amgetbitmap index scan, the access method does not keep an index pin on any of the returned tuples. Therefore it is only safe to use such scans with MVCC-compliant snapshots.

When the ampredlocks flag is not set, any scan using that index access method within a serializable transaction will acquire a nonblocking predicate lock on the full index. This will generate a read-write conflict with the insert of any tuple into that index by a concurrent serializable transaction. If certain patterns of read-write conflicts are detected among a set of concurrent serializable transactions, one of those transactions may be canceled to protect data integrity. When the flag is set, it indicates that the index access method implements finer-grained predicate locking, which will tend to reduce the frequency of such transaction cancellations.

58.5. Index Uniqueness Checks

Postgres Pro enforces SQL uniqueness constraints using unique indexes, which are indexes that disallow multiple entries with identical keys. An access method that supports this feature sets amcanunique true. (At present, only b-tree supports it.) Columns listed in the INCLUDE clause are not considered when enforcing uniqueness.

Because of MVCC, it is always necessary to allow duplicate entries to exist physically in an index: the entries might refer to successive versions of a single logical row. The behavior we actually want to enforce is that no MVCC snapshot could include two rows with equal index keys. This breaks down into the following cases that must be checked when inserting a new row into a unique index:

- If a conflicting valid row has been deleted by the current transaction, it's okay. (In particular, since an UPDATE always deletes the old row version before inserting the new version, this will allow an UPDATE on a row without changing the key.)

- If a conflicting row has been inserted by an as-yet-uncommitted transaction, the would-be inserter must wait to see if that transaction commits. If it rolls back then there is no conflict. If it commits without deleting the conflicting row again, there is a uniqueness violation. (In practice we just wait for the other transaction to end and then redo the visibility check in toto.)

- Similarly, if a conflicting valid row has been deleted by an as-yet-uncommitted transaction, the would-be inserter must wait for that transaction to commit or abort, and then repeat the test.

Furthermore, immediately before reporting a uniqueness violation according to the above rules, the access method must recheck the liveness of the row being inserted. If it is committed dead then no violation should be reported. (This case cannot occur during the ordinary scenario of inserting a row that's just been created by the current transaction. It can happen during CREATE UNIQUE INDEX CONCURRENTLY, however.)

We require the index access method to apply these tests itself, which means that it must reach into the heap to check the commit status of any row that is shown to have a duplicate key according to the index contents. This is without a doubt ugly and non-modular, but it saves redundant work: if we did a separate
If the unique constraint is deferrable, there is additional complexity: we need to be able to insert an index entry for a new row, but defer any uniqueness-violation error until end of statement or even later. To avoid unnecessary repeat searches of the index, the index access method should do a preliminary uniqueness check during the initial insertion. If this shows that there is definitely no conflicting live tuple, we are done. Otherwise, we schedule a recheck to occur when it is time to enforce the constraint. If, at the time of the recheck, both the inserted tuple and some other tuple with the same key are live, then the error must be reported. (Note that for this purpose, “live” actually means “any tuple in the index entry’s HOT chain is live”.) To implement this, the aminsert function is passed a checkUnique parameter having one of the following values:

- UNIQUE_CHECK_NO indicates that no uniqueness checking should be done (this is not a unique index).
- UNIQUE_CHECK_YES indicates that this is a non-deferrable unique index, and the uniqueness check must be done immediately, as described above.
- UNIQUE_CHECK_PARTIAL indicates that the unique constraint is deferrable. Postgres Pro will use this mode to insert each row’s index entry. The access method must allow duplicate entries into the index, and report any potential duplicates by returning false from aminsert. For each row for which false is returned, a deferred recheck will be scheduled.

The access method must identify any rows which might violate the unique constraint, but it is not an error for it to report false positives. This allows the check to be done without waiting for other transactions to finish; conflicts reported here are not treated as errors and will be rechecked later, by which time they may no longer be conflicts.

- UNIQUE_CHECK_EXISTING indicates that this is a deferred recheck of a row that was reported as a potential uniqueness violation. Although this is implemented by calling aminsert, the access method must not insert a new index entry in this case. The index entry is already present. Rather, the access method must check to see if there is another live index entry. If so, and if the target row is also still live, report error.

It is recommended that in a UNIQUE_CHECK_EXISTING call, the access method further verify that the target row actually does have an existing entry in the index, and report error if not. This is a good idea because the index tuple values passed to aminsert will have been recomputed. If the index definition involves functions that are not really immutable, we might be checking the wrong area of the index. Checking that the target row is found in the recheck verifies that we are scanning for the same tuple values as were used in the original insertion.

58.6. Index Cost Estimation Functions

The amcostestimate function is given information describing a possible index scan, including lists of WHERE and ORDER BY clauses that have been determined to be usable with the index. It must return estimates of the cost of accessing the index and the selectivity of the WHERE clauses (that is, the fraction of parent-table rows that will be retrieved during the index scan). For simple cases, nearly all the work of the cost estimator can be done by calling standard routines in the optimizer; the point of having an amcostestimate function is to allow index access methods to provide index-type-specific knowledge, in case it is possible to improve on the standard estimates.

Each amcostestimate function must have the signature:

```c
void amcostestimate (PlannerInfo *root,
                    IndexPath *path,
                    double loop_count,
                    Cost *indexStartupCost,
                    Cost *indexTotalCost,
```

2063
Index Access Method
Interface Definition

Selectivity *indexSelectivity,
double *indexCorrelation,
double *indexPages);

The first three parameters are inputs:

root
The planner's information about the query being processed.

path
The index access path being considered. All fields except cost and selectivity values are valid.

loop_count
The number of repetitions of the index scan that should be factored into the cost estimates. This will typically be greater than one when considering a parameterized scan for use in the inside of a nestloop join. Note that the cost estimates should still be for just one scan; a larger loop_count means that it may be appropriate to allow for some caching effects across multiple scans.

The last five parameters are pass-by-reference outputs:

*indexStartupCost
Set to cost of index start-up processing

*indexTotalCost
Set to total cost of index processing

*indexSelectivity
Set to index selectivity

*indexCorrelation
Set to correlation coefficient between index scan order and underlying table's order

*indexPages
Set to number of index leaf pages

Note that cost estimate functions must be written in C, not in SQL or any available procedural language, because they must access internal data structures of the planner/optimizer.

The index access costs should be computed using the parameters: a sequential disk block fetch has cost seq_page_cost, a nonsequential fetch has cost random_page_cost, and the cost of processing one index row should usually be taken as cpu_index_tuple_cost. In addition, an appropriate multiple of cpu_operator_cost should be charged for any comparison operators invoked during index processing (especially evaluation of the indexquals themselves).

The "start-up cost" is the part of the total scan cost that must be expended before we can begin to fetch the first row. For most indexes this can be taken as zero, but an index type with a high start-up cost might want to set it nonzero.

The indexSelectivity should be set to the estimated fraction of the parent table rows that will be retrieved during the index scan. In the case of a lossy query, this will typically be higher than the fraction of rows that actually pass the given qual conditions.

The indexCorrelation should be set to the correlation (ranging between -1.0 and 1.0) between the index order and the table order. This is used to adjust the estimate for the cost of fetching rows from the parent table.

The indexPages should be set to the number of leaf pages. This is used to estimate the number of workers for parallel index scan.
When \texttt{loop\_count} is greater than one, the returned numbers should be averages expected for any one scan of the index.

**Cost Estimation**

A typical cost estimator will proceed as follows:

1. Estimate and return the fraction of parent-table rows that will be visited based on the given qualifications. In the absence of any index-type-specific knowledge, use the standard optimizer function \texttt{clauselist\_selectivity}:

   ```c
   *\textsl{indexSelectivity} = \texttt{clauselist\_selectivity}(\texttt{root}, \texttt{path->indexquals},
                             \texttt{path->indexinfo->rel->relid},
                             \texttt{JOIN\_INNER}, \texttt{NULL});
   ```

2. Estimate the number of index rows that will be visited during the scan. For many index types this is the same as \textsl{indexSelectivity} times the number of rows in the index, but it might be more. (Note that the index's size in pages and rows is available from the \texttt{path->indexinfo} struct.)

3. Estimate the number of index pages that will be retrieved during the scan. This might be just \textsl{indexSelectivity} times the index's size in pages.

4. Compute the index access cost. A generic estimator might do this:

   ```c
   /*
   * Our generic assumption is that the index pages will be read
   * sequentially, so they cost seq\_page\_cost each, not random\_page\_cost.
   * Also, we charge for evaluation of the indexquals at each index row.
   * All the costs are assumed to be paid incrementally during the scan.
   */
   cost\_qual\_eval(&\textsl{index\_qual\_cost}, \texttt{path->indexquals}, \texttt{root});
   *\textsl{index\_Startup\_Cost} = \textsl{index\_qual\_cost}.\texttt{startup};
   *\textsl{index\_Total\_Cost} = seq\_page\_cost * \textsl{num\_Index\_Pages} +
   (cpu\_index\_tuple\_cost + \textsl{index\_qual\_cost}.\texttt{per\_tuple}) * \textsl{num\_Index\_Tuples};
   
   However, the above does not account for amortization of index reads across repeated index scans.

5. Estimate the index correlation. For a simple ordered index on a single field, this can be retrieved from pg\_statistic. If the correlation is not known, the conservative estimate is zero (no correlation).
Chapter 59. Generic WAL Records

Although all built-in WAL-logged modules have their own types of WAL records, there is also a generic WAL record type, which describes changes to pages in a generic way. This is useful for extensions that provide custom access methods, because they cannot register their own WAL redo routines.

The API for constructing generic WAL records is defined in access/generic_xlog.h and implemented in access/transam/generic_xlog.c.

To perform a WAL-logged data update using the generic WAL record facility, follow these steps:

1. `state = GenericXLogStart(relation)` — start construction of a generic WAL record for the given relation.

2. `page = GenericXLogRegisterBuffer(state, buffer, flags)` — register a buffer to be modified within the current generic WAL record. This function returns a pointer to a temporary copy of the buffer's page, where modifications should be made. (Do not modify the buffer's contents directly.) The third argument is a bit mask of flags applicable to the operation. Currently the only such flag is GENERIC_XLOG_FULL_IMAGE, which indicates that a full-page image rather than a delta update should be included in the WAL record. Typically this flag would be set if the page is new or has been rewritten completely. `GenericXLogRegisterBuffer` can be repeated if the WAL-logged action needs to modify multiple pages.

3. Apply modifications to the page images obtained in the previous step.

4. `GenericXLogFinish(state)` — apply the changes to the buffers and emit the generic WAL record.

WAL record construction can be canceled between any of the above steps by calling `GenericXLogAbort(state)`. This will discard all changes to the page image copies.

Please note the following points when using the generic WAL record facility:

- No direct modifications of buffers are allowed! All modifications must be done in copies acquired from `GenericXLogRegisterBuffer()`. In other words, code that makes generic WAL records should never call `BufferGetPage()` for itself. However, it remains the caller's responsibility to pin/unpin and lock/unlock the buffers at appropriate times. Exclusive lock must be held on each target buffer from before `GenericXLogRegisterBuffer()` until after `GenericXLogFinish()`.

- Registrations of buffers (step 2) and modifications of page images (step 3) can be mixed freely, i.e., both steps may be repeated in any sequence. Keep in mind that buffers should be registered in the same order in which locks are to be acquired on them during replay.

- The maximum number of buffers that can be registered for a generic WAL record is `MAX_GENERIC_XLOG_PAGES`. An error will be thrown if this limit is exceeded.

- Generic WAL assumes that the pages to be modified have standard layout, and in particular that there is no useful data between `pd_lower` and `pd_upper`.

- Since you are modifying copies of buffer pages, `GenericXLogStart()` does not start a critical section. Thus, you can safely do memory allocation, error throwing, etc. between `GenericXLogStart()` and `GenericXLogFinish()`. The only actual critical section is present inside `GenericXLogFinish()`. There is no need to worry about calling `GenericXLogAbort()` during an error exit, either.

- `GenericXLogFinish()` takes care of marking buffers dirty and setting their LSNs. You do not need to do this explicitly.

- For unlogged relations, everything works the same except that no actual WAL record is emitted. Thus, you typically do not need to do any explicit checks for unlogged relations.

- The generic WAL redo function will acquire exclusive locks to buffers in the same order as they were registered. After redoing all changes, the locks will be released in the same order.

- If GENERIC_XLOG_FULL_IMAGE is not specified for a registered buffer, the generic WAL record contains a delta between the old and the new page images. This delta is based on byte-by-byte differences.
comparison. This is not very compact for the case of moving data within a page, and might be improved in the future.
Chapter 60. B-Tree Indexes

60.1. Introduction

Postgres Pro includes an implementation of the standard btree (multi-way balanced tree) index data structure. Any data type that can be sorted into a well-defined linear order can be indexed by a btree index. The only limitation is that an index entry cannot exceed approximately one-third of a page (after TOAST compression, if applicable).

Because each btree operator class imposes a sort order on its data type, btree operator classes (or, really, operator families) have come to be used as Postgres Pro's general representation and understanding of sorting semantics. Therefore, they've acquired some features that go beyond what would be needed just to support btree indexes, and parts of the system that are quite distant from the btree AM make use of them.

60.2. Behavior of B-Tree Operator Classes

As shown in Table 36.3, a btree operator class must provide five comparison operators, <, <=, =, >= and >. One might expect that <> should also be part of the operator class, but it is not, because it would almost never be useful to use a <> WHERE clause in an index search. (For some purposes, the planner treats <> as associated with a btree operator class; but it finds that operator via the = operator's negator link, rather than from pg_amop.)

When several data types share near-identical sorting semantics, their operator classes can be grouped into an operator family. Doing so is advantageous because it allows the planner to make deductions about cross-type comparisons. Each operator class within the family should contain the single-type operators (and associated support functions) for its input data type, while cross-type comparison operators and support functions are “loose” in the family. It is recommendable that a complete set of cross-type operators be included in the family, thus ensuring that the planner can represent any comparison conditions that it deduces from transitivity.

There are some basic assumptions that a btree operator family must satisfy:

- An = operator must be an equivalence relation; that is, for all non-null values A, B, C of the data type:
  - A = A is true (reflexive law)
  - if A = B, then B = A (symmetric law)
  - if A = B and B = C, then A = C (transitive law)
- A < operator must be a strong ordering relation; that is, for all non-null values A, B, C:
  - A < A is false (irreflexive law)
  - if A < B and B < C, then A < C (transitive law)
- Furthermore, the ordering is total; that is, for all non-null values A, B:
  - exactly one of A < B, A = B, and B < A is true (trichotomy law)
  (The trichotomy law justifies the definition of the comparison support function, of course.)

The other three operators are defined in terms of = and < in the obvious way, and must act consistently with them.

For an operator family supporting multiple data types, the above laws must hold when A, B, C are taken from any data types in the family. The transitive laws are the trickiest to ensure, as in cross-type situations they represent statements that the behaviors of two or three different operators are consistent. As an example, it would not work to put float8 and numeric into the same operator family, at least not with the current semantics that numeric values are converted to float8 for comparison to a float8.
of the limited accuracy of \textit{float8}, this means there are distinct numeric values that will compare equal to the same \textit{float8} value, and thus the transitive law would fail.

Another requirement for a multiple-data-type family is that any implicit or binary-coercion casts that are defined between data types included in the operator family must not change the associated sort ordering.

It should be fairly clear why a btree index requires these laws to hold within a single data type: without them there is no ordering to arrange the keys with. Also, index searches using a comparison key of a different data type require comparisons to behave sanely across two data types. The extensions to three or more data types within a family are not strictly required by the btree index mechanism itself, but the planner relies on them for optimization purposes.

### 60.3. B-Tree Support Functions

As shown in Table 36.9, btree defines one required and four optional support functions. The five user-defined methods are:

- **order**

  For each combination of data types that a btree operator family provides comparison operators for, it must provide a comparison support function, registered in `pg_amproc` with support function number 1 and `amproclefttype/amprocrighttype` equal to the left and right data types for the comparison (i.e., the same data types that the matching operators are registered with in `pg_amop`). The comparison function must take two non-null values \textit{A} and \textit{B} and return an \texttt{int32} value that is \(< 0, 0, \text{ or } > 0\) when \(A < B\), \(A = B\), or \(A > B\), respectively. A null result is disallowed: all values of the data type must be comparable.

  If the compared values are of a collatable data type, the appropriate collation OID will be passed to the comparison support function, using the standard \texttt{PG_GET_COLLATION()} mechanism.

- **sortsupport**

  Optionally, a btree operator family may provide sort support function(s), registered under support function number 2. These functions allow implementing comparisons for sorting purposes in a more efficient way than naively calling the comparison support function. The APIs involved in this are defined in `src/include/utils/sortsupport.h`.

- **in_range**

  Optionally, a btree operator family may provide in range support function(s), registered under support function number 3. These are not used during btree index operations; rather, they extend the semantics of the operator family so that it can support window clauses containing the \texttt{RANGE offset PRECEDING} and \texttt{RANGE offset FOLLOWING} frame bound types (see Section 4.2.8). Fundamentally, the extra information provided is how to add or subtract an offset value in a way that is compatible with the family’s data ordering.

  An \texttt{in_range} function must have the signature

  \begin{verbatim}
  in_range(val type1, base type1, offset type2, sub bool, less bool)
  returns bool
  \end{verbatim}

  \texttt{val} and \texttt{base} must be of the same type, which is one of the types supported by the operator family (i.e., a type for which it provides an ordering). However, \texttt{offset} could be of a different type, which might be one otherwise unsupported by the family. An example is that the built-in \texttt{time_ops} family provides an \texttt{in_range} function that has \texttt{offset} of type \texttt{interval}. A family can provide \texttt{in_range} functions for any of its supported types and one or more \texttt{offset} types. Each \texttt{in_range} function should be entered in `pg_amproc` with `amproclefttype` equal to \texttt{type1} and `amprocrighttype` equal to \texttt{type2}.

  The essential semantics of an \texttt{in_range} function depend on the two Boolean flag parameters. It should add or subtract \texttt{base} and \texttt{offset}, then compare \texttt{val} to the result, as follows:

  \begin{itemize}
  \item if !\texttt{sub} and !\texttt{less}, return \texttt{val} \(\geq (\texttt{base} + \texttt{offset})\)
  \end{itemize}
B-Tree Indexes

- if `sub` and `less`, return \( \text{val} \leq (\text{base} + \text{offset}) \)
- if `sub` and `!less`, return \( \text{val} \geq (\text{base} - \text{offset}) \)
- if `sub` and `less`, return \( \text{val} \leq (\text{base} - \text{offset}) \)

Before doing so, the function should check the sign of `offset`: if it is less than zero, raise error ERRCODE_INVALID_PRECEDING_OR_FOLLOWING_SIZE (22013) with error text like “invalid preceding or following size in window function”. (This is required by the SQL standard, although nonstandard operator families might perhaps choose to ignore this restriction, since there seems to be little semantic necessity for it.) This requirement is delegated to the `in_range` function so that the core code needn’t understand what “less than zero” means for a particular data type.

An additional expectation is that `in_range` functions should, if practical, avoid throwing an error if `base + offset` or `base - offset` would overflow. The correct comparison result can be determined even if that value would be out of the data type’s range. Note that if the data type includes concepts such as “infinity” or “NaN”, extra care may be needed to ensure that `in_range`’s results agree with the normal sort order of the operator family.

The results of the `in_range` function must be consistent with the sort ordering imposed by the operator family. To be precise, given any fixed values of `offset` and `sub`, then:

- If `in_range` with `less` = true is true for some `val1` and `base`, it must be true for every `val2` \( \leq \) `val1` with the same `base`.
- If `in_range` with `less` = true is false for some `val1` and `base`, it must be false for every `val2` \( \geq \) `val1` with the same `base`.
- If `in_range` with `less` = true is true for some `val` and `base1`, it must be true for every `base2` \( \geq \) `base1` with the same `val`.
- If `in_range` with `less` = true is false for some `val` and `base1`, it must be false for every `base2` \( \leq \) `base1` with the same `val`.

Analogous statements with inverted conditions hold when `less` = false.

If the type being ordered (type1) is collatable, the appropriate collation OID will be passed to the `in_range` function, using the standard PG_GET_COLLATION() mechanism.

`in_range` functions need not handle NULL inputs, and typically will be marked strict.

`equalimage`

Optionally, a btree operator family may provide `equalimage` (“equality implies image equality”) support functions, registered under support function number 4. These functions allow the core code to determine when it is safe to apply the btree deduplication optimization. Currently, `equalimage` functions are only called when building or rebuilding an index.

An `equalimage` function must have the signature

\[ \text{equalimage}(\text{opcintype oid}) \text{ returns bool} \]

The return value is static information about an operator class and collation. Returning true indicates that the order function for the operator class is guaranteed to only return 0 (“arguments are equal”) when its A and B arguments are also interchangeable without any loss of semantic information. Not registering an `equalimage` function or returning false indicates that this condition cannot be assumed to hold.

The `opcintype` argument is the `pg_type.oid` of the data type that the operator class indexes. This is a convenience that allows reuse of the same underlying `equalimage` function across operator classes. If `opcintype` is a collatable data type, the appropriate collation OID will be passed to the `equalimage` function, using the standard PG_GET_COLLATION() mechanism.

As far as the operator class is concerned, returning true indicates that deduplication is safe (or safe for the collation whose OID was passed to its `equalimage` function). However, the core code will
only deem deduplication safe for an index when every indexed column uses an operator class that registers an `equalimage` function, and each function actually returns `true` when called.

Image equality is *almost* the same condition as simple bitwise equality. There is one subtle difference: When indexing a varlena data type, the on-disk representation of two image equal datums may not be bitwise equal due to inconsistent application of TOAST compression on input. Formally, when an operator class's `equalimage` function returns `true`, it is safe to assume that the `datum_image_eq()` function will always agree with the operator class's `order` function (provided that the same collation OID is passed to both the `equalimage` and `order` functions).

The core code is fundamentally unable to deduce anything about the “equality implies image equality” status of an operator class within a multiple-data-type family based on details from other operator classes in the same family. Also, it is not sensible for an operator family to register a cross-type `equalimage` function, and attempting to do so will result in an error. This is because “equality implies image equality” status does not just depend on sorting/equality semantics, which are more or less defined at the operator family level. In general, the semantics that one particular data type implements must be considered separately.

The convention followed by the operator classes included with the core PostgreSQL distribution is to register a stock, generic `equalimage` function. Most operator classes register `btequalimage()`, which indicates that deduplication is safe unconditionally. Operator classes for collatable data types such as `text` register `btvarstrequalimage()`, which indicates that deduplication is safe with deterministic collations. Best practice for third-party extensions is to register their own custom function to retain control.

**options**

Optionally, a B-tree operator family may provide options (“operator class specific options”) support functions, registered under support function number 5. These functions define a set of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

An options support function must have the signature

```
options(relopts local_relopts *) returns void
```

The function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

Currently, no B-Tree operator class has an options support function. B-tree doesn't allow flexible representation of keys like GiST, SP-GiST, GIN and BRIN do. So, options probably doesn't have much application in the current B-tree index access method. Nevertheless, this support function was added to B-tree for uniformity, and will probably find uses during further evolution of B-tree in PostgreSQL.

### 60.4. Implementation

This section covers B-Tree index implementation details that may be of use to advanced users.

#### 60.4.1. B-Tree Structure

PostgreSQL B-Tree indexes are multi-level tree structures, where each level of the tree can be used as a doubly-linked list of pages. A single metapage is stored in a fixed position at the start of the first segment file of the index. All other pages are either leaf pages or internal pages. Leaf pages are the pages on the lowest level of the tree. All other levels consist of internal pages. Each leaf page contains tuples that point to table rows. Each internal page contains tuples that point to the next level down in the tree. Typically, over 99% of all pages are leaf pages. Both internal pages and leaf pages use the standard page format described in Section 66.6.

New leaf pages are added to a B-Tree index when an existing leaf page cannot fit an incoming tuple. A page split operation makes room for items that originally belonged on the overflowing page by moving a portion of the items to a new page. Page splits must also insert a new *downlink* to the new page in the
parent page, which may cause the parent to split in turn. Page splits “cascade upwards” in a recursive fashion. When the root page finally cannot fit a new downlink, a root page split operation takes place. This adds a new level to the tree structure by creating a new root page that is one level above the original root page.

60.4.2. Bottom-up Index Deletion

B-Tree indexes are not directly aware that under MVCC, there might be multiple extant versions of the same logical table row; to an index, each tuple is an independent object that needs its own index entry. “Version churn” tuples may sometimes accumulate and adversely affect query latency and throughput. This typically occurs with UPDATE-heavy workloads where most individual updates cannot apply the HOT optimization. Changing the value of only one column covered by one index during an UPDATE always necessitates a new set of index tuples — one for each and every index on the table. Note in particular that this includes indexes that were not “logically modified” by the UPDATE. All indexes will need a successor physical index tuple that points to the latest version in the table. Each new tuple within each index will generally need to coexist with the original “updated” tuple for a short period of time (typically until shortly after the UPDATE transaction commits).

B-Tree indexes incrementally delete version churn index tuples by performing bottom-up index deletion passes. Each deletion pass is triggered in reaction to an anticipated “version churn page split”. This only happens with indexes that are not logically modified by UPDATE statements, where concentrated build up of obsolete versions in particular pages would occur otherwise. A page split will usually be avoided, though it’s possible that certain implementation-level heuristics will fail to identify and delete even one garbage index tuple (in which case a page split or deduplication pass resolves the issue of an incoming new tuple not fitting on a leaf page). The worst-case number of versions that any index scan must traverse (for any single logical row) is an important contributor to overall system responsiveness and throughput. A bottom-up index deletion pass targets suspected garbage tuples in a single leaf page based on qualitative distinctions involving logical rows and versions. This contrasts with the “top-down” index cleanup performed by autovacuum workers, which is triggered when certain quantitative table-level thresholds are exceeded (see Section 23.1.6).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not all deletion operations that are performed within B-Tree indexes are bottom-up deletion operations. There is a distinct category of index tuple deletion: simple index tuple deletion. This is a deferred maintenance operation that deletes index tuples that are known to be safe to delete (those whose item identifier's LP_DEAD bit is already set). Like bottom-up index deletion, simple index deletion takes place at the point that a page split is anticipated as a way of avoiding the split. Simple deletion is opportunistic in the sense that it can only take place when recent index scans set the LP_DEAD bits of affected items in passing. Prior to PostgreSQL 14, the only category of B-Tree deletion was simple deletion. The main differences between it and bottom-up deletion are that only the former is opportunistically driven by the activity of passing index scans, while only the latter specifically targets version churn from UPDATES that do not logically modify indexed columns.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bottom-up index deletion performs the vast majority of all garbage index tuple cleanup for particular indexes with certain workloads. This is expected with any B-Tree index that is subject to significant version churn from UPDATES that rarely or never logically modify the columns that the index covers. The average and worst-case number of versions per logical row can be kept low purely through targeted incremental deletion passes. It’s quite possible that the on-disk size of certain indexes will never increase by even one single page/block despite constant version churn from UPDATES. Even then, an exhaustive “clean sweep” by a VACUUM operation (typically run in an autovacuum worker process) will eventually be required as a part of collective cleanup of the table and each of its indexes.

Unlike VACUUM, bottom-up index deletion does not provide any strong guarantees about how old the oldest garbage index tuple may be. No index can be permitted to retain “floating garbage” index tuples that became dead prior to a conservative cutoff point shared by the table and all of its indexes collectively.
B-Tree Indexes

This fundamental table-level invariant makes it safe to recycle table TIDs. This is how it is possible for
distinct logical rows to reuse the same table TID over time (though this can never happen with two
logical rows whose lifetimes span the same VACUUM cycle).

60.4.3. Deduplication

A duplicate is a leaf page tuple (a tuple that points to a table row) where all indexed key columns have
values that match corresponding column values from at least one other leaf page tuple in the same
index. Duplicate tuples are quite common in practice. B-Tree indexes can use a special, space-efficient
representation for duplicates when an optional technique is enabled: deduplication.

Deduplication works by periodically merging groups of duplicate tuples together, forming a single
posting list tuple for each group. The column key value(s) only appear once in this representation. This
is followed by a sorted array of TIDs that point to rows in the table. This significantly reduces the storage
size of indexes where each value (or each distinct combination of column values) appears several times
on average. The latency of queries can be reduced significantly. Overall query throughput may increase
significantly. The overhead of routine index vacuuming may also be reduced significantly.

**Note**

B-Tree deduplication is just as effective with “duplicates” that contain a NULL value, even though
NULL values are never equal to each other according to the = member of any B-Tree operator
class. As far as any part of the implementation that understands the on-disk B-Tree structure is
concerned, NULL is just another value from the domain of indexed values.

The deduplication process occurs lazily, when a new item is inserted that cannot fit on an existing leaf
page, though only when index tuple deletion could not free sufficient space for the new item (typically
deletion is briefly considered and then skipped over). Unlike GIN posting list tuples, B-Tree posting list
tuples do not need to expand every time a new duplicate is inserted; they are merely an alternative
physical representation of the original logical contents of the leaf page. This design prioritizes consistent
performance with mixed read-write workloads. Most client applications will at least see a moderate
performance benefit from using deduplication. Deduplication is enabled by default.

CREATE INDEX and REINDEX apply deduplication to create posting list tuples, though the strategy they
use is slightly different. Each group of duplicate ordinary tuples encountered in the sorted input taken
from the table is merged into a posting list tuple before being added to the current pending leaf page.
Individual posting list tuples are packed with as many TIDs as possible. Leaf pages are written out in
the usual way, without any separate deduplication pass. This strategy is well-suited to CREATE INDEX
and REINDEX because they are once-off batch operations.

Write-heavy workloads that don’t benefit from deduplication due to having few or no duplicate values in
indexes will incur a small, fixed performance penalty (unless deduplication is explicitly disabled). The
deduplicate_items storage parameter can be used to disable deduplication within individual indexes.
There is never any performance penalty with read-only workloads, since reading posting list tuples is
at least as efficient as reading the standard tuple representation. Disabling deduplication isn’t usually
helpful.

It is sometimes possible for unique indexes (as well as unique constraints) to use deduplication. This
allows leaf pages to temporarily “absorb” extra version churn duplicates. Deduplication in unique
indexes augments bottom-up index deletion, especially in cases where a long-running transaction holds a
snapshot that blocks garbage collection. The goal is to buy time for the bottom-up index deletion strategy
to become effective again. Delaying page splits until a single long-running transaction naturally goes
away can allow a bottom-up deletion pass to succeed where an earlier deletion pass failed.

**Tip**

A special heuristic is applied to determine whether a deduplication pass in a unique index should
take place. It can often skip straight to splitting a leaf page, avoiding a performance penalty
from wasting cycles on unhelpful deduplication passes. If you're concerned about the overhead of deduplication, consider setting `deduplicate_items = off` selectively. Leaving deduplication enabled in unique indexes has little downside.

Deduplication cannot be used in all cases due to implementation-level restrictions. Deduplication safety is determined when `CREATE INDEX` or `REINDEX` is run.

Note that deduplication is deemed unsafe and cannot be used in the following cases involving semantically significant differences among equal datums:

- `text`, `varchar`, and `char` cannot use deduplication when a `nondeterministic` collation is used. Case and accent differences must be preserved among equal datums.
- `numeric` cannot use deduplication. Numeric display scale must be preserved among equal datums.
- `jsonb` cannot use deduplication, since the `jsonb` B-Tree operator class uses `numeric` internally.
- `float4` and `float8` cannot use deduplication. These types have distinct representations for `-0` and `0`, which are nevertheless considered equal. This difference must be preserved.

There is one further implementation-level restriction that may be lifted in a future version of PostgreSQL:

- Container types (such as composite types, arrays, or range types) cannot use deduplication.

There is one further implementation-level restriction that applies regardless of the operator class or collation used:

- `INCLUDE` indexes can never use deduplication.
Chapter 61. GiST Indexes

61.1. Introduction

GiST stands for Generalized Search Tree. It is a balanced, tree-structured access method, that acts as a base template in which to implement arbitrary indexing schemes. B-trees, R-trees and many other indexing schemes can be implemented in GiST.

One advantage of GiST is that it allows the development of custom data types with the appropriate access methods, by an expert in the domain of the data type, rather than a database expert.

Some of the information here is derived from the University of California at Berkeley's GiST Indexing Project web site and Marcel Kornacker's thesis, Access Methods for Next-Generation Database Systems. The GiST implementation in Postgres Pro is primarily maintained by Teodor Sigaev and Oleg Bartunov, and there is more information on their web site.

61.2. Built-in Operator Classes

The core Postgres Pro distribution includes the GiST operator classes shown in Table 61.1. (Some of the optional modules described in Appendix F provide additional GiST operator classes.)

Table 61.1. Built-in GiST Operator Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
<th>Ordering Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>box_ops</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~= (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt;</td>
<td>(box, box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt;</td>
<td>(box, box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (box, box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (box, box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| circle_ops  | << (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | &< (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | && (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | &> (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | >> (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | <@ (circle, circle)          | <> (circle, point)           |
|             | @> (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | ~= (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | && (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | |>> (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | |&> (circle, circle)          |                              |
|             | ~ (circle, circle)           |                              |
## GiST Indexes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
<th>Ordering Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt;</td>
<td>(circle, circle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (circle, circle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@ (circle, circle)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ (circle, circle)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_ops</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt;= (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt;= (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>=&gt; (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (anymultirange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anymultirange, anyelement)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anymultirange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (anymultirange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (anymultirange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (anymultirange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (anymultirange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (anymultirange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-= (anymultirange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-= (anymultirange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point_ops</td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (point, point)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (point, point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (point, point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt;= (point, point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@ (point, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@ (point, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-= (point, point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2076
### GiST Indexes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
<th>Ordering Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poly_ops</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td>&lt;-&gt; (polygon, point)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~= (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt;</td>
<td>(polygon, polygon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt;</td>
<td>(polygon, polygon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (polygon, polygon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (polygon, polygon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@ (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ (polygon, polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range_ops</td>
<td>= (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (anyrange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anyrange, anyelement)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anyrange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (anyrange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (anyrange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (anyrange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (anyrange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (anyrange, anymultirange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>- (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>- (anyrange, anymultirange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsquery_ops</td>
<td>&lt;@ (tsquery, tsquery)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsvector_ops</td>
<td>@ (tsvector, tsquery)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For historical reasons, the `inet_ops` operator class is not the default class for types `inet` and `cidr`. To use it, mention the class name in `CREATE INDEX`, for example:

```
CREATE INDEX ON my_table USING GIST (my_inet_column inet_ops);
```
GiST Indexes

61.3. Extensibility

Traditionally, implementing a new index access method meant a lot of difficult work. It was necessary to understand the inner workings of the database, such as the lock manager and Write-Ahead Log. The GiST interface has a high level of abstraction, requiring the access method implementer only to implement the semantics of the data type being accessed. The GiST layer itself takes care of concurrency, logging and searching the tree structure.

This extensibility should not be confused with the extensibility of the other standard search trees in terms of the data they can handle. For example, Postgres Pro supports extensible B-trees and hash indexes. That means that you can use Postgres Pro to build a B-tree or hash over any data type you want. But B-trees only support range predicates (<, =, >), and hash indexes only support equality queries.

So if you index, say, an image collection with a Postgres Pro B-tree, you can only issue queries such as “is imagex equal to imagey”, “is imagex less than imagey” and “is imagex greater than imagey”. Depending on how you define “equals”, “less than” and “greater than” in this context, this could be useful. However, by using a GiST based index, you could create ways to ask domain-specific questions, perhaps “find all images of horses” or “find all over-exposed images”.

All it takes to get a GiST access method up and running is to implement several user-defined methods, which define the behavior of keys in the tree. Of course these methods have to be pretty fancy to support fancy queries, but for all the standard queries (B-trees, R-trees, etc.) they're relatively straightforward. In short, GiST combines extensibility along with generality, code reuse, and a clean interface.

There are five methods that an index operator class for GiST must provide, and six that are optional. Correctness of the index is ensured by proper implementation of the same, consistent and union methods, while efficiency (size and speed) of the index will depend on the penalty and picksplit methods. Two optional methods are compress and decompress, which allow an index to have internal tree data of a different type than the data it indexes. The leaves are to be of the indexed data type, while the other tree nodes can be of any C struct (but you still have to follow Postgres Pro data type rules here, see about varlena for variable sized data). If the tree's internal data type exists at the SQL level, the STORAGE option of the CREATE OPERATOR CLASS command can be used. The optional eighth method is distance, which is needed if the operator class wishes to support ordered scans (nearest-neighbor searches). The optional ninth method fetch is needed if the operator class wishes to support index-only scans, except when the compress method is omitted. The optional tenth method options is needed if the operator class has user-specified parameters. The optional eleventh method sortsupport is used to speed up building a GiST index.

Given an index entry p and a query value q, this function determines whether the index entry is “consistent” with the query; that is, could the predicate “indexed_column indexable_operator q” be true for any row represented by the index entry? For a leaf index entry this is equivalent to testing the indexable condition, while for an internal tree node this determines whether it is necessary to scan the subtree of the index represented by the tree node. When the result is true, a recheck flag must also be returned. This indicates whether the predicate is certainly true or only possibly true. If recheck = false then the index has tested the predicate condition exactly, whereas if recheck = true the row is only a candidate match. In that case the system will automatically evaluate the indexable_operator against the actual row value to see if it is really a match. This convention allows GiST to support both lossless and lossy index structures.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_consistent(internal, data_type, smallint, oid, internal) RETURNS bool AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME' LANGUAGE C STRICT;

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:
GiST Indexes

```c
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_consistent);

Datum
my_consistent(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GISTENTRY *entry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    data_type *query = PG_GETARG_DATA_TYPE_P(1);
    StrategyNumber strategy = (StrategyNumber) PG_GETARG_UINT16(2);
    /* Oid subtype = PG_GETARG_OID(3); */
    bool *recheck = (bool *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(4);
    data_type *key = DatumGetDataType(entry->key);
    bool retval;

    /*
    * determine return value as a function of strategy, key and query.
    *
    * Use GIST_LEAF(entry) to know where you're called in the index tree,
    * which comes handy when supporting the = operator for example (you could
    * check for non empty union() in non-leaf nodes and equality in leaf
    * nodes).
    */

    *recheck = true;        /* or false if check is exact */

    PG_RETURN_BOOL(retval);
}
```

Here, `key` is an element in the index and `query` the value being looked up in the index. The `StrategyNumber` parameter indicates which operator of your operator class is being applied — it matches one of the operator numbers in the `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` command.

Depending on which operators you have included in the class, the data type of `query` could vary with the operator, since it will be whatever type is on the right-hand side of the operator, which might be different from the indexed data type appearing on the left-hand side. (The above code skeleton assumes that only one type is possible; if not, fetching the `query` argument value would have to depend on the operator.) It is recommended that the SQL declaration of the `consistent` function use the opclass’s indexed data type for the `query` argument, even though the actual type might be something else depending on the operator.

union

This method consolidates information in the tree. Given a set of entries, this function generates a new index entry that represents all the given entries.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_union(internal, internal)
RETURNS storage_type
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```c
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_union);

Datum
my_union(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GistEntryVector *entryvec = (GistEntryVector *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    GISTENTRY *ent = entryvec->vector;
    data_type *out,
        *tmp,
```
GiST Indexes

*old;

int numranges,
    i = 0;

numranges = entryvec->n;
tmp = DatumGetDataType(ent[0].key);
out = tmp;

if (numranges == 1)
{
    out = data_type_deep_copy(tmp);
    PG_RETURN_DATA_TYPE_P(out);
}

for (i = 1; i < numranges; i++)
{
    old = out;
tmp = DatumGetDataType(ent[i].key);
    out = my_union_implementation(out, tmp);
}

PG_RETURN_DATA_TYPE_P(out);

As you can see, in this skeleton we're dealing with a data type where \( \text{union}(X, Y, Z) = \text{union}(\text{union}(X, Y), Z) \). It's easy enough to support data types where this is not the case, by implementing the proper union algorithm in this GiST support method.

The result of the \text{union} function must be a value of the index's storage type, whatever that is (it might or might not be different from the indexed column's type). The \text{union} function should return a pointer to newly \text{palloc}()ed memory. You can't just return the input value as-is, even if there is no type change.

As shown above, the \text{union} function's first \text{internal} argument is actually a \text{GistEntryVector} pointer. The second argument is a pointer to an integer variable, which can be ignored. (It used to be required that the \text{union} function store the size of its result value into that variable, but this is no longer necessary.)

\text{compress}

Converts a data item into a format suitable for physical storage in an index page. If the \text{compress} method is omitted, data items are stored in the index without modification.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

\text{CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION} my_compress(\text{internal})
\text{RETURNS} internal
\text{AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'}
\text{LANGUAGE} C \text{STRICT};

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

\text{PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1}(my_compress);

\text{Datum}
my_compress(\text{PG_FUNCTION_ARGS})
{
    GISTENTRY *entry = (GISTENTRY*) \text{PG_GETARG_POINTER}(0);
    GISTENTRY *retval;
if (entry->leafkey)
{
    /* replace entry->key with a compressed version */
    compressed_data_type *compressed_data = palloc(sizeof(compressed_data_type));

    /* fill *compressed_data from entry->key ... */
    retval = palloc(sizeof(GISTENTRY));
    gistentryinit(*retval, PointerGetDatum(compressed_data),
                   entry->rel, entry->page, entry->offset, FALSE);
}
else
{
    /* typically we needn't do anything with non-leaf entries */
    retval = entry;
}

PG_RETURN_POINTER(retval);

You have to adapt compressed_data_type to the specific type you're converting to in order to compress your leaf nodes, of course.

decompress

Converts the stored representation of a data item into a format that can be manipulated by the other GiST methods in the operator class. If the decompress method is omitted, it is assumed that the other GiST methods can work directly on the stored data format. (decompress is not necessarily the reverse of the compress method; in particular, if compress is lossy then it's impossible for decompress to exactly reconstruct the original data. decompress is not necessarily equivalent to fetch, either, since the other GiST methods might not require full reconstruction of the data.)

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_decompress(internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_decompress);

Datum
my_decompress(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(PG_GETARG_POINTER(0));
}

The above skeleton is suitable for the case where no decompression is needed. (But, of course, omitting the method altogether is even easier, and is recommended in such cases.)

penalty

Returns a value indicating the “cost” of inserting the new entry into a particular branch of the tree. Items will be inserted down the path of least penalty in the tree. Values returned by penalty should be non-negative. If a negative value is returned, it will be treated as zero.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_penalty(internal, internal, internal)
RETURNS internal
GiST Indexes

AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT; -- in some cases penalty functions need not be strict

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_penalty);

Datum
my_penalty(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GISTENTRY  *origentry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    GISTENTRY  *newentry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(1);
    float      *penalty = (float *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(2);
    data_type  *orig = DatumGetDataType(origentry->key);
    data_type  *new = DatumGetDataType(newentry->key);

    *penalty = my_penalty_implementation(orig, new);
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(penalty);
}

For historical reasons, the penalty function doesn't just return a float result; instead it has to store the value at the location indicated by the third argument. The return value per se is ignored, though it's conventional to pass back the address of that argument.

The penalty function is crucial to good performance of the index. It'll get used at insertion time to determine which branch to follow when choosing where to add the new entry in the tree. At query time, the more balanced the index, the quicker the lookup.

picksplit

When an index page split is necessary, this function decides which entries on the page are to stay on the old page, and which are to move to the new page.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_picksplit(internal, internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_picksplit);

Datum
my_picksplit(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GistEntryVector *entryvec = (GistEntryVector *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    GIST_SPLITVEC *v = (GIST_SPLITVEC *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(1);
    OffsetNumber maxoff = entryvec->n - 1;
    GISTENTRY  *ent = entryvec->vector;
    int         i,
                nbytes;
    OffsetNumber *left,     *right;
    data_type   *tmp_union;
    data_type   *unionL;
    data_type   *unionR;
    GISTENTRY **raw_entryvec;

    maxoff = entryvec->n - 1;
    nbytes = (maxoff + 1) * sizeof(OffsetNumber);
GiST Indexes

```c
def v->spl_left = (OffsetNumber *) palloc(nbytes);
def left = v->spl_left;
v->spl_nleft = 0;

v->spl_right = (OffsetNumber *) palloc(nbytes);
def right = v->spl_right;
v->spl_nright = 0;

def unionL = NULL;
def unionR = NULL;

// Initialize the raw entry vector. */
def raw_entryvec = (GISTENTRY **) malloc(entryvec->n * sizeof(void *));
for (i = FirstOffsetNumber; i <= maxoff; i = OffsetNumberNext(i))
    raw_entryvec[i] = &(entryvec->vector[i]);

for (i = FirstOffsetNumber; i <= maxoff; i = OffsetNumberNext(i))
{
    int real_index = raw_entryvec[i] - entryvec->vector;

tmp_union = DatumGetDataType(entryvec->vector[real_index].key);
Assert(tmp_union != NULL);

/* Choose where to put the index entries and update unionL and unionR
* accordingly. Append the entries to either v->spl_left or
* v->spl_right, and care about the counters. */

if (my_choice_is_left(unionL, curl, unionR, curr))
{
    if (unionL == NULL)
        unionL = tmp_union;
    else
        unionL = my_union_implementation(unionL, tmp_union);

    *left = real_index;
    ++left;
    ++(v->spl_nleft);
}
else
{
    /*
     * Same on the right
     */
}
}

v->spl_ldatum = DataTypeGetDatum(unionL);
v->spl_rdatum = DataTypeGetDatum(unionR);
PG_RETURN_POINTER(v);
}
```

Notice that the `picksplit` function's result is delivered by modifying the passed-in `v` structure. The return value per se is ignored, though it's conventional to pass back the address of `v`.

Like `penalty`, the `picksplit` function is crucial to good performance of the index. Designing suitable `penalty` and `picksplit` implementations is where the challenge of implementing well-performing GiST indexes lies.
GiST Indexes

same

    Returns true if two index entries are identical, false otherwise. (An “index entry” is a value of the
    index's storage type, not necessarily the original indexed column’s type.)

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

    CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_same(storage_type, storage_type, internal)
    RETURNS internal
    AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

    PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_same);

    Datum
    my_same(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
    {
        prefix_range *v1 = PG_GETARG_PREFIX_RANGE_P(0);
        prefix_range *v2 = PG_GETARG_PREFIX_RANGE_P(1);
        bool       *result = (bool *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(2);

        *result = my_eq(v1, v2);
        PG_RETURN_POINTER(result);
    }

For historical reasons, the same function doesn't just return a Boolean result; instead it has to store
the flag at the location indicated by the third argument. The return value per se is ignored, though
it’s conventional to pass back the address of that argument.

distance

    Given an index entry p and a query value q, this function determines the index entry's “distance”
    from the query value. This function must be supplied if the operator class contains any ordering
    operators. A query using the ordering operator will be implemented by returning index entries with
    the smallest “distance” values first, so the results must be consistent with the operator's semantics.
    For a leaf index entry the result just represents the distance to the index entry; for an internal tree
    node, the result must be the smallest distance that any child entry could have.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

    CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_distance(internal, data_type, smallint, oid, internal)
    RETURNS float8
    AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

    PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_distance);

    Datum
    my_distance(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
    {
        GISTENTRY  *entry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
        data_type  *query = PG_GETARG_DATA_TYPE_P(1);
        StrategyNumber strategy = (StrategyNumber) PG_GETARG_UINT16(2);
        /* Oid subtype = PG_GETARG_OID(3); */
        /* bool *recheck = (bool *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(4); */
        data_type  *key = DatumGetData(entry->key);
        double      retval;

        /*
         * determine return value as a function of strategy, key and query.
         */
    }
The arguments to the \texttt{distance} function are identical to the arguments of the \texttt{consistent} function. Some approximation is allowed when determining the distance, so long as the result is never greater than the entry's actual distance. Thus, for example, distance to a bounding box is usually sufficient in geometric applications. For an internal tree node, the distance returned must not be greater than the distance to any of the child nodes. If the returned distance is not exact, the function must set \texttt{*recheck} to true. (This is not necessary for internal tree nodes; for them, the calculation is always assumed to be inexact.) In this case the executor will calculate the accurate distance after fetching the tuple from the heap, and reorder the tuples if necessary.

If the distance function returns \texttt{*recheck = true} for any leaf node, the original ordering operator's return type must be \texttt{float8} or \texttt{float4}, and the distance function's result values must be comparable to those of the original ordering operator, since the executor will sort using both distance function results and recalculated ordering-operator results. Otherwise, the distance function's result values can be any finite \texttt{float8} values, so long as the relative order of the result values matches the order returned by the ordering operator. (Infinity and minus infinity are used internally to handle cases such as nulls, so it is not recommended that \texttt{distance} functions return these values.)

\textbf{fetch}

Converts the compressed index representation of a data item into the original data type, for index-only scans. The returned data must be an exact, non-lossy copy of the originally indexed value.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_fetch(internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
\end{verbatim}

The argument is a pointer to a \texttt{GISTENTRY} struct. On entry, its \texttt{key} field contains a non-NULL leaf datum in compressed form. The return value is another \texttt{GISTENTRY} struct, whose \texttt{key} field contains the same datum in its original, uncompressed form. If the opclass's compress function does nothing for leaf entries, the \texttt{fetch} method can return the argument as-is. Or, if the opclass does not have a compress function, the \texttt{fetch} method can be omitted as well, since it would necessarily be a no-op.

The matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

\begin{verbatim}
Datum
my_fetch(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GISTENTRY  *entry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    input_data_type *in = DatumGetPointer(entry->key);
    fetched_data_type *fetched_data;
    GISTENTRY  *retval;

    retval = palloc(sizeof(GISTENTRY));
    fetched_data = palloc(sizeof(fetched_data_type));

    /*
     * Convert 'fetched_data' into the a Datum of the original datatype.
     */
    gistentryinit(*retval, PointerGetDatum(converted_datum),
                  entry->rel, entry->page, entry->offset, FALSE);

    /* fill *retval from fetched_data. */

\end{verbatim}
PG_RETURN_POINTER(retval);
}

If the compress method is lossy for leaf entries, the operator class cannot support index-only scans, and must not define a fetch function.

**options**

Allows definition of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_options(internal)
RETURNS void
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

An example implementation of `my_options()` and parameters use from other support functions are given below:

typedef enum MyEnumType
{
    MY_ENUM_ON,
    MY_ENUM_OFF,
    MY_ENUM_AUTO
} MyEnumType;

typedef struct
{
    int32   vl_len_;    /* varlena header (do not touch directly!) */
    int     int_param;  /* integer parameter */
    double  real_param; /* real parameter */
    MyEnumType enum_param; /* enum parameter */
    int     str_param;  /* string parameter */
} MyOptionsStruct;

static relopt_enum_elt_def myEnumValues[] =
{
    "on", MY_ENUM_ON,
    "off", MY_ENUM_OFF,
    "auto", MY_ENUM_AUTO,
    {(const char *) NULL}   /* list terminator */
};

static char *str_param_default = "default";

/* Sample validator: checks that string is not longer than 8 bytes. */
static void
validate_my_string_relopt(const char *value)
{
    if (strlen(value) > 8)
        ereport(ERROR,
            {errcode(ERRCODE_INVALID_PARAMETER_VALUE),
            ...}
errmsg("str_param must be at most 8 bytes");

/*
 * Sample filler: switches characters to lower case.
 */
static Size fill_my_string_relopt(const char *value, void *ptr)
{
    char   *tmp = str_tolower(value, strlen(value), DEFAULT_COLLATION_OID);
    int     len = strlen(tmp);

    if (ptr)
        strcpy((char *) ptr, tmp);

    pfree(tmp);
    return len + 1;
}

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_options);

Datum my_options(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    local_relopts *relopts = (local_relopts *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);

    init_local_reloptions(relopts, sizeof(MyOptionsStruct));
    add_local_int_reloption(relopts, "int_param", "integer parameter",
                            100, 0, 1000000,
                            offsetof(MyOptionsStruct, int_param));
    add_local_real_reloption(relopts, "real_param", "real parameter",
                             1.0, 0.0, 1000000.0,
                             offsetof(MyOptionsStruct, real_param));
    add_local_enum_reloption(relopts, "enum_param", "enum parameter",
                              myEnumValues, MY_ENUM_ON,
                              "Valid values are: "on", "off" and "auto".",
                              offsetof(MyOptionsStruct, enum_param));
    add_local_string_reloption(relopts, "str_param", "string parameter",
                               str_param_default,
                               &validate_my_string_relopt,
                               &fill_my_string_relopt,
                               offsetof(MyOptionsStruct, str_param));

    PG_RETURN_VOID();
}

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_compress);

Datum my_compress(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    int     int_param = 100;
    double  real_param = 1.0;
    MyEnumType enum_param = MY_ENUM_ON;
    char   *str_param = str_param_default;

    /*
     * Normally, when opclass contains 'options' method, then options are always
     */
GiST Indexes

* passed to support functions. However, if you add 'options' method to
* existing opclass, previously defined indexes have no options, so the
* check is required.
*/
if (PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS())
{
    MyOptionsStruct *options = (MyOptionsStruct *) PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS();
    int_param = options->int_param;
    real_param = options->real_param;
    enum_param = options->enum_param;
    str_param = GET_STRING_RELOPTION(options, str_param);
}
/* the rest implementation of support function */

Since the representation of the key in GiST is flexible, it may depend on user-specified parameters.
For instance, the length of key signature may be specified. See gtsvector_options() for example.

sortsupport

Returns a comparator function to sort data in a way that preserves locality. It is used by CREATE
INDEX and REINDEX commands. The quality of the created index depends on how well the sort order
determined by the comparator function preserves locality of the inputs.

The sortsupport method is optional. If it is not provided, CREATE INDEX builds the index by inserting
each tuple to the tree using the penalty and picksplit functions, which is much slower.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_sortsupport(internal)
RETURNS void
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;

The argument is a pointer to a SortSupport struct. At a minimum, the function must fill in its
comparator field. The comparator takes three arguments: two Datums to compare, and a pointer to
the SortSupport struct. The Datums are the two indexed values in the format that they are stored
in the index; that is, in the format returned by the compress method. The full API is defined in src/
include/utils/sortsupport.h.

The matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_sortsupport);

static int
my_fastcmp(Datum x, Datum y, SortSupport ssup)
{
    /* establish order between x and y by computing some sorting value z */
    int z1 = ComputeSpatialCode(x);
    int z2 = ComputeSpatialCode(y);
    return z1 == z2 ? 0 : z1 > z2 ? 1 : -1;
}

Datum
my_sortsupport(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
GiST Indexes

```c
SortSupport ssup = (SortSupport) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);

ssup->comparator = my_fastcmp;
PG_RETURN VOID();
}
```

All the GiST support methods are normally called in short-lived memory contexts; that is, `CurrentMemoryContext` will get reset after each tuple is processed. It is therefore not very important to worry about `pfree`ing everything you `palloc`. However, in some cases it's useful for a support method to cache data across repeated calls. To do that, allocate the longer-lived data in `fcinfo->flinfo->fn_mcxt`, and keep a pointer to it in `fcinfo->flinfo->fn_extra`. Such data will survive for the life of the index operation (e.g., a single GiST index scan, index build, or index tuple insertion). Be careful to `pfree` the previous value when replacing a `fn_extra` value, or the leak will accumulate for the duration of the operation.

### 61.4. Implementation

#### 61.4.1. GiST Index Build Methods

The simplest way to build a GiST index is just to insert all the entries, one by one. This tends to be slow for large indexes, because if the index tuples are scattered across the index and the index is large enough to not fit in cache, a lot of random I/O will be needed. PostgreSQL supports two alternative methods for initial build of a GiST index: **sorted** and **buffered** modes.

The sorted method is only available if each of the opclasses used by the index provides a `sortsupport` function, as described in Section 61.3. If they do, this method is usually the best, so it is used by default.

The buffered method works by not inserting tuples directly into the index right away. It can dramatically reduce the amount of random I/O needed for non-ordered data sets. For well-ordered data sets the benefit is smaller or non-existent, because only a small number of pages receive new tuples at a time, and those pages fit in cache even if the index as a whole does not.

The buffered method needs to call the `penalty` function more often than the simple method does, which consumes some extra CPU resources. Also, the buffers need temporary disk space, up to the size of the resulting index. Buffering can also influence the quality of the resulting index, in both positive and negative directions. That influence depends on various factors, like the distribution of the input data and the operator class implementation.

If sorting is not possible, then by default a GiST index build switches to the buffering method when the index size reaches `effective_cache_size`. Buffering can be manually forced or prevented by the `buffering` parameter to the `CREATE INDEX` command. The default behavior is good for most cases, but turning buffering off might speed up the build somewhat if the input data is ordered.

### 61.5. Examples

The Postgres Pro core system currently provides text search support (indexing for `tsvector` and `tsquery`) as well as R-Tree equivalent functionality for some of the built-in geometric data types. The following `contrib` modules also contain GiST operator classes:

- **btree_gist**
  - B-tree equivalent functionality for several data types

- **cube**
  - Indexing for multidimensional cubes

- **hstore**
  - Module for storing (key, value) pairs
GiST Indexes

intarray
   RD-Tree for one-dimensional array of int4 values

ltree
   Indexing for tree-like structures

pg_trgm
   Text similarity using trigram matching

seg
   Indexing for “float ranges”
Chapter 62. SP-GiST Indexes

62.1. Introduction

SP-GiST is an abbreviation for space-partitioned GiST. SP-GiST supports partitioned search trees, which facilitate development of a wide range of different non-balanced data structures, such as quad-trees, k-d trees, and radix trees (tries). The common feature of these structures is that they repeatedly divide the search space into partitions that need not be of equal size. Searches that are well matched to the partitioning rule can be very fast.

These popular data structures were originally developed for in-memory usage. In main memory, they are usually designed as a set of dynamically allocated nodes linked by pointers. This is not suitable for direct storing on disk, since these chains of pointers can be rather long which would require too many disk accesses. In contrast, disk-based data structures should have a high fanout to minimize I/O. The challenge addressed by SP-GiST is to map search tree nodes to disk pages in such a way that a search need access only a few disk pages, even if it traverses many nodes.

Like GiST, SP-GiST is meant to allow the development of custom data types with the appropriate access methods, by an expert in the domain of the data type, rather than a database expert.

Some of the information here is derived from Purdue University's SP-GiST Indexing Project web site. The SP-GiST implementation in Postgres Pro is primarily maintained by Teodor Sigaev and Oleg Bartunov, and there is more information on their web site.

62.2. Built-in Operator Classes

The core Postgres Pro distribution includes the SP-GiST operator classes shown in Table 62.1.

Table 62.1. Built-in SP-GiST Operator Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
<th>Ordering Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>box_ops</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (box, box)</td>
<td>&lt;=- (box, point)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~= (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (box, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (box, box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (box, box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (box, box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&lt; (box, box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>=((box,box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kd_point_ops</td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (point, point)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (point, point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (point, point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt;</td>
<td>(point, point)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>=~ (point, point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (point, box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>network_ops</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt;= (inet, inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Indexable Operators</td>
<td>Ordering Operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt;= (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&gt; (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (inet,inet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poly_ops</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (polygon,polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (polygon,polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (polygon,polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (polygon,polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (polygon,polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (polygon,polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~= (polygon,polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (polygon,polygon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (polygon,polygon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (polygon,polygon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (polygon,polygon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;-&gt; (polygon,point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quad_point_ops</td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (point,point)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (point,point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (point,point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt;</td>
<td>(point,point)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~= (point,point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (point,box)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;-&gt; (point,point)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range_ops</td>
<td>= (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anyrange,anyelement)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text_ops</td>
<td>= (text,text)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (text,text)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (text,text)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Of the two operator classes for type `point`, `quad_point_ops` is the default. `kd_point_ops` supports the same operators but uses a different index data structure that may offer better performance in some applications.

The `quad_point_ops`, `kd_point_ops` and `poly_ops` operator classes support the `<>` ordering operator, which enables the k-nearest neighbor (k-NN) search over indexed point or polygon data sets.

### 62.3. Extensibility

SP-GiST offers an interface with a high level of abstraction, requiring the access method developer to implement only methods specific to a given data type. The SP-GiST core is responsible for efficient disk mapping and searching the tree structure. It also takes care of concurrency and logging considerations.

Leaf tuples of an SP-GiST tree usually contain values of the same data type as the indexed column, although it is also possible for them to contain lossy representations of the indexed column. Leaf tuples stored at the root level will directly represent the original indexed data value, but leaf tuples at lower levels might contain only a partial value, such as a suffix. In that case the operator class support functions must be able to reconstruct the original value using information accumulated from the inner tuples that are passed through to reach the leaf level.

When an SP-GiST index is created with `INCLUDE` columns, the values of those columns are also stored in leaf tuples. The `INCLUDE` columns are of no concern to the SP-GiST operator class, so they are not discussed further here.

Inner tuples are more complex, since they are branching points in the search tree. Each inner tuple contains a set of one or more `nodes`, which represent groups of similar leaf values. A node contains a downlink that leads either to another, lower-level inner tuple, or to a short list of leaf tuples that all lie on the same index page. Each node normally has a `label` that describes it; for example, in a radix tree the node label could be the next character of the string value. (Alternatively, an operator class can omit the node labels, if it works with a fixed set of nodes for all inner tuples; see Section 62.4.2.) Optionally, an inner tuple can have a `prefix` value that describes all its members. In a radix tree this could be the common prefix of the represented strings. The prefix value is not necessarily really a prefix, but can be any data needed by the operator class; for example, in a quad-tree it can store the central point that the four quadrants are measured with respect to. A quad-tree inner tuple would then also contain four nodes corresponding to the quadrants around this central point.

Some tree algorithms require knowledge of level (or depth) of the current tuple, so the SP-GiST core provides the possibility for operator classes to manage level counting while descending the tree. There is also support for incrementally reconstructing the represented value when that is needed, and for passing down additional data (called `traverse values`) during a tree descent.

#### Note

The SP-GiST core code takes care of null entries. Although SP-GiST indexes do store entries for nulls in indexed columns, this is hidden from the index operator class code: no null index entries...
or search conditions will ever be passed to the operator class methods. (It is assumed that SPGiST operators are strict and so cannot succeed for null values.) Null values are therefore not discussed further here.

There are five user-defined methods that an index operator class for SP-GiST must provide, and two are optional. All five mandatory methods follow the convention of accepting two internal arguments, the first of which is a pointer to a C struct containing input values for the support method, while the second argument is a pointer to a C struct where output values must be placed. Four of the mandatory methods just return void, since all their results appear in the output struct; but leaf_consistent returns a boolean result. The methods must not modify any fields of their input structs. In all cases, the output struct is initialized to zeroes before calling the user-defined method. The optional sixth method compress accepts a datum to be indexed as the only argument and returns a value suitable for physical storage in a leaf tuple. The optional seventh method options accepts an internal pointer to a C struct, where opclass-specific parameters should be placed, and returns void.

The five mandatory user-defined methods are:

config

Returns static information about the index implementation, including the data type OIDs of the prefix and node label data types.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION my_config(internal, internal) RETURNS void ...
```

The first argument is a pointer to a spgConfigIn C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a spgConfigOut C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

```c
typedef struct spgConfigIn
{
    Oid attType;        /* Data type to be indexed */
} spgConfigIn;

typedef struct spgConfigOut
{
    Oid prefixType;     /* Data type of inner-tuple prefixes */
    Oid labelType;      /* Data type of inner-tuple node labels */
    Oid leafType;       /* Data type of leaf-tuple values */
    bool canReturnData;  /* Opclass can reconstruct original data */
    bool longValuesOK;   /* Opclass can cope with values > 1 page */
} spgConfigOut;
```

attType is passed in order to support polymorphic index operator classes; for ordinary fixed-data-type operator classes, it will always have the same value and so can be ignored.

For operator classes that do not use prefixes, prefixType can be set to VOIDOID. Likewise, for operator classes that do not use node labels, labelType can be set to VOIDOID. canReturnData should be set true if the operator class is capable of reconstructing the originally-supplied index value. longValuesOK should be set true only when the attType is of variable length and the operator class is capable of segmenting long values by repeated suffixing (see Section 62.4.1).

leafType should match the index storage type defined by the operator class's opckeytype catalog entry. (Note that opckeytype can be zero, implying the storage type is the same as the operator class's input type, which is the most common situation.) For reasons of backward compatibility, the config method can set leafType to some other value, and that value will be used; but this is deprecated since the index contents are then incorrectly identified in the catalogs. Also, it's permissible to leave leafType uninitialized (zero); that is interpreted as meaning the index storage type derived from opckeytype.

2094
When \texttt{attType} and \texttt{leafType} are different, the optional method \texttt{compress} must be provided. Method \texttt{compress} is responsible for transformation of datums to be indexed from \texttt{attType} to \texttt{leafType}.

\textbf{choose}

Chooses a method for inserting a new value into an inner tuple.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE FUNCTION my_choose(internal, internal) RETURNS void ...
\end{verbatim}

The first argument is a pointer to a \texttt{spgChooseIn} C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a \texttt{spgChooseOut} C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

\begin{verbatim}
typedef struct spgChooseIn
{
    Datum datum;          /* original datum to be indexed */
    Datum leafDatum;      /* current datum to be stored at leaf */
    int level;          /* current level (counting from zero) */

    /* Data from current inner tuple */
    bool allTheSame;     /* tuple is marked all-the-same? */
    bool hasPrefix;      /* tuple has a prefix? */
    Datum prefixDatum;  /* if so, the prefix value */
    int nNodes;         /* number of nodes in the inner tuple */
    Datum *nodeLabels;  /* node label values (NULL if none) */
} spgChooseIn;

typedef enum spgChooseResultType
{
    spgMatchNode = 1,    /* descend into existing node */
    spgAddNode,         /* add a node to the inner tuple */
    spgSplitTuple       /* split inner tuple (change its prefix) */
} spgChooseResultType;

typedef struct spgChooseOut
{
    spgChooseResultType resultType;     /* action code, see above */

    union
    {
        struct                 /* results for spgMatchNode */
        {
            int nodeN;      /* descend to this node (index from 0) */
            int levelAdd;   /* increment level by this much */
            Datum restDatum; /* new leaf datum */
        } matchNode;

        struct                 /* results for spgAddNode */
        {
            Datum nodeLabel; /* new node's label */
            int nodeN;       /* where to insert it (index from 0) */
        } addNode;

        struct                 /* results for spgSplitTuple */
        {
            /* Info to form new upper-level inner tuple with one child tuple */
            bool prefixHasPrefix;   /* tuple should have a prefix? */
            Datum prefixPrefixDatum; /* if so, its value */
            int prefixNNNodes;      /* number of nodes */
            Datum *prefixNodeLabels; /* their labels (or NULL for * no labels) */
            int childNodeN;         /* which node gets child tuple */
        } splitNode;
    }
} spgChooseOut;
\end{verbatim}
/* Info to form new lower-level inner tuple with all old nodes */
bool postfixHasPrefix; /* tuple should have a prefix? */
Datum postfixPrefixDatum; /* if so, its value */
}

result;

datum is the original datum of spgConfigIn.attType type that was to be inserted into the index. leafDatum is a value of spgConfigOut.leafType type, which is initially a result of method compress applied to datum when method compress is provided, or the same value as datum otherwise. leafDatum can change at lower levels of the tree if the choose or picksplit methods change it. When the insertion search reaches a leaf page, the current value of leafDatum is what will be stored in the newly created leaf tuple. level is the current inner tuple's level, starting at zero for the root level. allTheSame is true if the current inner tuple is marked as containing multiple equivalent nodes (see Section 62.4.3). hasPrefix is true if the current inner tuple contains a prefix; if so, prefixDatum is its value. nNodes is the number of child nodes contained in the inner tuple, and nodeLabels is an array of their label values, or NULL if there are no labels.

The choose function can determine either that the new value matches one of the existing child nodes, or that a new child node must be added, or that the new value is inconsistent with the tuple prefix and so the inner tuple must be split to create a less restrictive prefix.

If the new value matches one of the existing child nodes, set resultType to spgMatchNode. Set nodeN to the index (from zero) of that node in the node array. Set levelAdd to the increment in level caused by descending through that node, or leave it as zero if the operator class does not use levels. Set restDatum to equal leafDatum if the operator class does not modify datums from one level to the next, or otherwise set it to the modified value to be used as leafDatum at the next level.

If a new child node must be added, set resultType to spgAddNode. Set nodeLabel to the label to be used for the new node, and set nodeN to the index (from zero) at which to insert the node in the node array. After the node has been added, the choose function will be called again with the modified inner tuple; that call should result in an spgMatchNode result.

If the new value is inconsistent with the tuple prefix, set resultType to spgSplitTuple. This action moves all the existing nodes into a new lower-level inner tuple, and replaces the existing inner tuple with a tuple having a single downlink pointing to the new lower-level inner tuple. Set prefixHasPrefix to indicate whether the new upper tuple should have a prefix, and if so set prefixPrefixDatum to the prefix value. This new prefix value must be sufficiently less restrictive than the original to accept the new value to be indexed. Set prefixNNodes to the number of nodes needed in the new tuple, and set prefixNodeLabels to a palloc'd array holding their labels, or to NULL if node labels are not required. Note that the total size of the new upper tuple must be no more than the total size of the tuple it is replacing; this constrains the lengths of the new prefix and new labels. Set childNodeN to the index (from zero) of the node that will downlink to the new lower-level inner tuple. Set postfixHasPrefix to indicate whether the new lower-level inner tuple should have a prefix, and if so set postfixPrefixDatum to the prefix value. The combination of these two prefixes and the downlink node's label (if any) must have the same meaning as the original prefix, because there is no opportunity to alter the node labels that are moved to the new lower-level tuple, nor to change any child index entries. After the node has been split, the choose function will be called again with the replacement inner tuple. That call may return an spgAddNode result, if no suitable node was created by the spgSplitTuple action. Eventually choose must return spgMatchNode to allow the insertion to descend to the next level.

Decides how to create a new inner tuple over a set of leaf tuples.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

CREATE FUNCTION my_picksplit(internal, internal) RETURNS void ...
The first argument is a pointer to a `spgPickSplitIn` C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a `spgPickSplitOut` C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

```c
typedef struct spgPickSplitIn
{
    int nTuples;        /* number of leaf tuples */
    Datum *datums;         /* their datums (array of length nTuples) */
    int level;          /* current level (counting from zero) */
} spgPickSplitIn;

typedef struct spgPickSplitOut
{
    bool hasPrefix;      /* new inner tuple should have a prefix? */
    Datum prefixDatum;    /* if so, its value */
    int nNodes;         /* number of nodes for new inner tuple */
    Datum *nodeLabels;     /* their labels (or NULL for no labels) */
    int *mapTuplesToNodes;   /* node index for each leaf tuple */
    Datum *leafTupleDatums;    /* datum to store in each new leaf tuple */
} spgPickSplitOut;
```

- `nTuples` is the number of leaf tuples provided.
- `datums` is an array of their datum values of `spgConfigOut.leafType` type. `level` is the current level that all the leaf tuples share, which will become the level of the new inner tuple.

Set `hasPrefix` to indicate whether the new inner tuple should have a prefix, and if so set `prefixDatum` to the prefix value. Set `nNodes` to indicate the number of nodes that the new inner tuple will contain, and set `nodeLabels` to an array of their label values, or to NULL if node labels are not required. Set `mapTuplesToNodes` to an array that gives the index (from zero) of the node that each leaf tuple should be assigned to. Set `leafTupleDatums` to an array of the values to be stored in the new leaf tuples (these will be the same as the input `datums` if the operator class does not modify datums from one level to the next). Note that the `picksplit` function is responsible for `palloc'ing` the `nodeLabels`, `mapTuplesToNodes` and `leafTupleDatums` arrays.

If more than one leaf tuple is supplied, it is expected that the `picksplit` function will classify them into more than one node; otherwise it is not possible to split the leaf tuples across multiple pages, which is the ultimate purpose of this operation. Therefore, if the `picksplit` function ends up placing all the leaf tuples in the same node, the core SP-GiST code will override that decision and generate an inner tuple in which the leaf tuples are assigned at random to several identically-labeled nodes. Such a tuple is marked `allTheSame` to signify that this has happened. The `choose` and `inner_consistent` functions must take suitable care with such inner tuples. See Section 62.4.3 for more information.

The `inner_consistent` function returns a set of nodes (branches) to follow during tree search.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_inner_consistent(internal, internal) RETURNS void ...
```

The first argument is a pointer to a `spgInnerConsistentIn` C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a `spgInnerConsistentOut` C struct, which the function must fill with result data.
typedef struct spgInnerConsistentIn
{
  ScanKey     scankeys;       /* array of operators and comparison values */
  ScanKey     orderbys;       /* array of ordering operators and comparison values */
  int         nkeys;          /* length of scankeys array */
  int         norderbys;      /* length of orderbys array */
  Datum       reconstructedValue;     /* value reconstructed at parent */
  void       *traversalValue; /* opclass-specific traverse value */
  MemoryContext traversalMemoryContext;   /* put new traverse values here */
  int         level;          /* current level (counting from zero) */
  bool        returnData;     /* original data must be returned? */
  /* Data from current inner tuple */
  bool        allTheSame;     /* tuple is marked all-the-same? */
  bool        hasPrefix;      /* tuple has a prefix? */
  Datum       prefixDatum;    /* if so, the prefix value */
  int         nNodes;         /* number of nodes in the inner tuple */
  Datum      *nodeLabels;     /* node label values (NULL if none) */
} spgInnerConsistentIn;

typedef struct spgInnerConsistentOut
{
  int         nNodes;         /* number of child nodes to be visited */
  int         *nodeNumbers;   /* their indexes in the node array */
  int         *levelAdds;     /* increment level by this much for each */
  Datum      *reconstructedValues;    /* associated reconstructed values */
  void      **traversalValues;        /* opclass-specific traverse values */
  double    **distances;              /* associated distances */
} spgInnerConsistentOut;

The array scankeys, of length nkeys, describes the index search condition(s). These conditions are combined with AND — only index entries that satisfy all of them are interesting. (Note that nkeys = 0 implies that all index entries satisfy the query.) Usually the consistent function only cares about the sk_strategy and sk_argument fields of each array entry, which respectively give the indexable operator and comparison value. In particular it is not necessary to check sk_flags to see if the comparison value is NULL, because the SP-GiST core code will filter out such conditions. The array orderbys, of length norderbys, describes ordering operators (if any) in the same manner. reconstructedValue is the value reconstructed for the parent tuple; it is (Datum) 0 at the root level or if the inner_consistent function did not provide a value at the parent level. traversalValue is a pointer to any traverse data passed down from the previous call of inner_consistent on the parent index tuple, or NULL at the root level. traversalMemoryContext is the memory context in which to store output traverse values (see below). level is the current inner tuple’s level, starting at zero for the root level. returnData is true if reconstructed data is required for this query; this will only be so if the config function asserted canReturnData. allTheSame is true if the current inner tuple is marked “all-the-same”; in this case all the nodes have the same label (if any) and so either all or none of them match the query (see Section 62.4.3). hasPrefix is true if the current inner tuple contains a prefix; if so, prefixDatum is its value. nNodes is the number of child nodes contained in the inner tuple, and nodeLabels is an array of their label values, or NULL if the nodes do not have labels.

nNodes must be set to the number of child nodes that need to be visited by the search, and nodeNumbers must be set to an array of their indexes. If the operator class keeps track of levels, set levelAdds to an array of the level increments required when descending to each node to be visited. (Often these increments will be the same for all the nodes, but that’s not necessarily so, so an array is used.) If value reconstruction is needed, set reconstructedValues to an array of the values reconstructed for each child node to be visited; otherwise, leave reconstructedValues as NULL. The reconstructed values are assumed to be of type spgConfigOut.leafType. (However, since
leaf_consistent

Returns true if a leaf tuple satisfies a query.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_leaf_consistent(internal, internal) RETURNS bool ... 
```

The first argument is a pointer to a `spgLeafConsistentIn` C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a `spgLeafConsistentOut` C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

```c
typedef struct spgLeafConsistentIn
{
    ScanKey scankeys;       /* array of operators and comparison values */
    ScanKey orderbys;       /* array of ordering operators and comparison * values */
    int nkeys;          /* length of scankeys array */
    int norderbys;      /* length of orderbys array */
    Datum reconstructedValue;     /* value reconstructed at parent */
    void *traversalValue; /* opclass-specific traverse value */
    int level;          /* current level (counting from zero) */
    bool returnData;     /* original data must be returned? */
    Datum leafDatum;      /* datum in leaf tuple */
} spgLeafConsistentIn;
```

```c
typedef struct spgLeafConsistentOut
{
    Datum leafValue;        /* reconstructed original data, if any */
    bool recheck;            /* set true if operator must be rechecked */
    bool recheckDistances;   /* set true if distances must be rechecked */
    double *distances;       /* associated distances */
} spgLeafConsistentOut;
```

The array `scankeys`, of length `nkeys`, describes the index search condition(s). These conditions are combined with AND — only index entries that satisfy all of them satisfy the query. (Note that `nkeys = 0` implies that all index entries satisfy the query.) Usually the consistent function only cares about the `sk_strategy` and `sk_argument` fields of each array entry, which respectively give the indexable operator and comparison value. In particular it is not necessary to check `sk_flags` to see if the comparison value is NULL, because the SP-GiST core code will filter out such conditions. The array `orderbys`, of length `norderbys`, describes the ordering operators in the same manner. `reconstructedValue` is the value reconstructed for the parent tuple; it is `(Datum) 0` at the root level. `returnData` is true if the inner_consistent function did not provide a value at the parent level. `traversalValue` is a pointer to any traverse data passed down from the previous call of inner_consistent on the parent index tuple, or NULL at the root level. `level` is the current leaf tuple’s level, starting at zero for the root level. `recheck` is true if reconstructed data is required for this query; this will only be so if
the `config` function asserted `canReturnData.leafDatum` is the key value of `spgConfigOut.leafType` stored in the current leaf tuple.

The function must return `true` if the leaf tuple matches the query, or `false` if not. In the `true` case, if `returnData` is `true` then `leafValue` must be set to the value (of type `spgConfigIn.attType`) originally supplied to be indexed for this leaf tuple. Also, `recheck` may be set to `true` if the match is uncertain and so the operator(s) must be re-applied to the actual heap tuple to verify the match. If ordered search is performed, set `distances` to an array of distance values according to `orderbys` array. Leave it NULL otherwise. If at least one of returned distances is not exact, set `recheckDistances` to `true`. In this case, the executor will calculate the exact distances after fetching the tuple from the heap, and will reorder the tuples if needed.

The optional user-defined methods are:

```sql
Datum compress(Datum in)
```

Converts a data item into a format suitable for physical storage in a leaf tuple of the index. It accepts a value of type `spgConfigIn.attType` and returns a value of type `spgConfigOut.leafType`. The output value must not contain an out-of-line TOAST pointer.

Note: the `compress` method is only applied to values to be stored. The consistent methods receive `query scankeys` unchanged, without transformation using `compress`.

```sql
options
```

Defines a set of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_options(internal) RETURNS void
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

Since the representation of the key in SP-GiST is flexible, it may depend on user-specified parameters.

All the SP-GiST support methods are normally called in a short-lived memory context; that is, `CurrentMemoryContext` will be reset after processing of each tuple. It is therefore not very important to worry about `pfree'ing everything you `palloc`. (The `config` method is an exception: it should try to avoid leaking memory. But usually the `config` method need do nothing but assign constants into the passed parameter struct.)

If the indexed column is of a collatable data type, the index collation will be passed to all the support methods, using the standard `PG_GET_COLLATION()` mechanism.

### 62.4. Implementation

This section covers implementation details and other tricks that are useful for implementers of SP-GiST operator classes to know.

#### 62.4.1. SP-GiST Limits

Individual leaf tuples and inner tuples must fit on a single index page (8kB by default). Therefore, when indexing values of variable-length data types, long values can only be supported by methods such as radix trees, in which each level of the tree includes a prefix that is short enough to fit on a page, and the final leaf level includes a suffix also short enough to fit on a page. The operator class should set `longValuesOK` to `true` only if it is prepared to arrange for this to happen. Otherwise, the SP-GiST core will reject any request to index a value that is too large to fit on an index page.
SP-GiST Indexes

Likewise, it is the operator class's responsibility that inner tuples do not grow too large to fit on an index page; this limits the number of child nodes that can be used in one inner tuple, as well as the maximum size of a prefix value.

Another limitation is that when an inner tuple's node points to a set of leaf tuples, those tuples must all be in the same index page. (This is a design decision to reduce seeking and save space in the links that chain such tuples together.) If the set of leaf tuples grows too large for a page, a split is performed and an intermediate inner tuple is inserted. For this to fix the problem, the new inner tuple must divide the set of leaf values into more than one node group. If the operator class's `picksplit` function fails to do that, the SP-GiST core resorts to extraordinary measures described in Section 62.4.3.

When `longValuesOK` is true, it is expected that successive levels of the SP-GiST tree will absorb more and more information into the prefixes and node labels of the inner tuples, making the required leaf datum smaller and smaller, so that eventually it will fit on a page. To prevent bugs in operator classes from causing infinite insertion loops, the SP-GiST core will raise an error if the leaf datum does not become any smaller within ten cycles of `choose` method calls.

62.4.2. SP-GiST Without Node Labels

Some tree algorithms use a fixed set of nodes for each inner tuple; for example, in a quad-tree there are always exactly four nodes corresponding to the four quadrants around the inner tuple's centroid point. In such a case the code typically works with the nodes by number, and there is no need for explicit node labels. To suppress node labels (and thereby save some space), the `picksplit` function can return `NULL` for the `nodeLabels` array, and likewise the `choose` function can return `NULL` for the `prefixNodeLabels` array during a `spgSplitTuple` action. This will in turn result in `nodeLabels` being `NULL` during subsequent calls to `choose` and `inner_consistent`. In principle, node labels could be used for some inner tuples and omitted for others in the same index.

When working with an inner tuple having unlabeled nodes, it is an error for `choose` to return `spgAddNode`, since the set of nodes is supposed to be fixed in such cases.

62.4.3. “All-the-Same” Inner Tuples

The SP-GiST core can override the results of the operator class's `picksplit` function when `picksplit` fails to divide the supplied leaf values into at least two node categories. When this happens, the new inner tuple is created with multiple nodes that each have the same label (if any) that `picksplit` gave to the one node it did use, and the leaf values are divided at random among these equivalent nodes. The `allTheSame` flag is set on the inner tuple to warn the `choose` and `inner_consistent` functions that the tuple does not have the node set that they might otherwise expect.

When dealing with an `allTheSame` tuple, a `choose` result of `spgMatchNode` is interpreted to mean that the new value can be assigned to any of the equivalent nodes; the core code will ignore the supplied `nodeN` value and descend into one of the nodes at random (so as to keep the tree balanced). It is an error for `choose` to return `spgAddNode`, since that would make the nodes not all equivalent; the `spgSplitTuple` action must be used if the value to be inserted doesn't match the existing nodes.

When dealing with an `allTheSame` tuple, the `inner_consistent` function should return either all or none of the nodes as targets for continuing the index search, since they are all equivalent. This may or may not require any special-case code, depending on how much the `inner_consistent` function normally assumes about the meaning of the nodes.
Chapter 63. GIN Indexes

63.1. Introduction

GIN stands for Generalized Inverted Index. GIN is designed for handling cases where the items to be indexed are composite values, and the queries to be handled by the index need to search for element values that appear within the composite items. For example, the items could be documents, and the queries could be searches for documents containing specific words.

We use the word *item* to refer to a composite value that is to be indexed, and the word *key* to refer to an element value. GIN always stores and searches for keys, not item values per se.

A GIN index stores a set of (key, posting list) pairs, where a *posting list* is a set of row IDs in which the key occurs. The same row ID can appear in multiple posting lists, since an item can contain more than one key. Each key value is stored only once, so a GIN index is very compact for cases where the same key appears many times.

GIN is generalized in the sense that the GIN access method code does not need to know the specific operations that it accelerates. Instead, it uses custom strategies defined for particular data types. The strategy defines how keys are extracted from indexed items and query conditions, and how to determine whether a row that contains some of the key values in a query actually satisfies the query.

One advantage of GIN is that it allows the development of custom data types with the appropriate access methods, by an expert in the domain of the data type, rather than a database expert. This is much the same advantage as using GiST.

The GIN implementation in Postgres Pro is primarily maintained by Teodor Sigaev and Oleg Bartunov. There is more information about GIN on their [website](#).

63.2. Built-in Operator Classes

The core Postgres Pro distribution includes the GIN operator classes shown in Table 63.1. (Some of the optional modules described in Appendix F provide additional GIN operator classes.)

Table 63.1. Built-in GIN Operator Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>array_ops</td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (anyarray,anyarray)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anyarray,anyarray)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (anyarray,anyarray)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (anyarray,anyarray)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_ops</td>
<td>@&gt; (jsonb,jsonb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@? (jsonb,jsonpah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@@ (jsonb,jsonpah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>? (jsonb,text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>?! (jsonb,text[])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>?&amp; (jsonb,text[])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsonb_path_ops</td>
<td>@&gt; (jsonb,jsonb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@? (jsonb,jsonpah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@@ (jsonb,jsonpah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsvector_ops</td>
<td>@@ (tsvector,tsquery)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GIN Indexes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@@ (tsvector, tsquery)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Of the two operator classes for type `jsonb`, `jsonb_ops` is the default. `jsonb_path_ops` supports fewer operators but offers better performance for those operators. See Section 8.14.4 for details.

63.3. Extensibility

The GIN interface has a high level of abstraction, requiring the access method implementer only to implement the semantics of the data type being accessed. The GIN layer itself takes care of concurrency, logging and searching the tree structure.

All it takes to get a GIN access method working is to implement a few user-defined methods, which define the behavior of keys in the tree and the relationships between keys, indexed items, and indexable queries. In short, GIN combines extensibility with generality, code reuse, and a clean interface.

There are two methods that an operator class for GIN must provide:

```c
Datum *extractValue(Datum itemValue, int32 *nkeys, bool **nullFlags)
```

Returns a palloc'd array of keys given an item to be indexed. The number of returned keys must be stored into *nkeys. If any of the keys can be null, also palloc an array of *nkeys bool fields, store its address at *nullFlags, and set these null flags as needed. *nullFlags can be left NULL (its initial value) if all keys are non-null. The return value can be NULL if the item contains no keys.

```c
Datum *extractQuery(Datum query, int32 *nkeys, StrategyNumber n, bool **pmatch, Pointer **extra_data, bool **nullFlags, int32 *searchMode)
```

Returns a palloc'd array of keys given a value to be queried; that is, query is the value on the right-hand side of an indexable operator whose left-hand side is the indexed column. n is the strategy number of the operator within the operator class (see Section 36.16.2). Often, extractQuery will need to consult n to determine the data type of query and the method it should use to extract key values. The number of returned keys must be stored into *nkeys. If any of the keys can be null, also palloc an array of *nkeys bool fields, store its address at *nullFlags, and set these null flags as needed. *nullFlags can be left NULL (its initial value) if all keys are non-null. The return value can be NULL if the query contains no keys.

**pmatch** is an output argument that allows extractQuery to specify details about how the search will be done. If **pmatch** is set to GIN_SEARCH_MODE_DEFAULT (which is the value it is initialized to before call), only items that match at least one of the returned keys are considered candidate matches. If **pmatch** is set to GIN_SEARCH_MODE_INCLUDE_EMPTY, then in addition to items containing at least one matching key, items that contain no keys at all are considered candidate matches. (This mode is useful for implementing is-subset-of operators, for example.) If **pmatch** is set to GIN_SEARCH_MODE_ALL, then all non-null items in the index are considered candidate matches, whether they match any of the returned keys or not. (This mode is much slower than the other two choices, since it requires scanning essentially the entire index, but it may be necessary to implement corner cases correctly. An operator that needs this mode in most cases is probably not a good candidate for a GIN operator class.) The symbols to use for setting this mode are defined in access/gin.h.

**extra_data** is an output argument that allows extractQuery to pass additional data to the consistent and comparePartial methods. To use it, extractQuery must allocate an array of *nkeys pointers and store its address at **extra_data, then store whatever it wants to into the individual
GIN Indexes

pointers. The variable is initialized to NULL before call, so this argument can simply be ignored by operator classes that do not require extra data. If *extra_data is set, the whole array is passed to the consistent method, and the appropriate element to the comparePartial method.

An operator class must also provide a function to check if an indexed item matches the query. It comes in two flavors, a Boolean consistent function, and a ternary triConsistent function. triConsistent covers the functionality of both, so providing triConsistent alone is sufficient. However, if the Boolean variant is significantly cheaper to calculate, it can be advantageous to provide both. If only the Boolean variant is provided, some optimizations that depend on refuting index items before fetching all the keys are disabled.

```c
bool consistent(bool check[], StrategyNumber n, Datum query, int32 nkeys, Pointer extra_data[], bool *recheck, Datum queryKeys[], bool nullFlags[])
```

Returns true if an indexed item satisfies the query operator with strategy number n (or might satisfy it, if the recheck indication is returned). This function does not have direct access to the indexed item's value, since GIN does not store items explicitly. Rather, what is available is knowledge about which key values extracted from the query appear in a given indexed item. The check array has length nkeys, which is the same as the number of keys previously returned by extractQuery for this query datum. Each element of the check array is true if the indexed item contains the corresponding query key, i.e., if (check[i] == true) the i-th key of the extractQuery result array is present in the indexed item. The original query datum is passed in case the consistent method needs to consult it, and so are the queryKeys[] and nullFlags[] arrays previously returned by extractQuery. extra_data is the extra-data array returned by extractQuery, or NULL if none.

When extractQuery returns a null key in queryKeys[], the corresponding check[] element is true if the indexed item contains a null key; that is, the semantics of check[] are like IS NOT DISTINCT FROM. The consistent function can examine the corresponding nullFlags[] element if it needs to tell the difference between a regular value match and a null match.

On success, *recheck should be set to true if the heap tuple needs to be rechecked against the query operator, or false if the index test is exact. That is, a false return value guarantees that the heap tuple does not match the query; a true return value with *recheck set to false guarantees that the heap tuple does match the query; and a true return value with *recheck set to true means that the heap tuple might match the query, so it needs to be fetched and rechecked by evaluating the query operator directly against the originally indexed item.

```c
GinTernaryValue triConsistent(GinTernaryValue check[], StrategyNumber n, Datum query, int32 nkeys, Pointer extra_data[], Datum queryKeys[], bool nullFlags[])
```

triConsistent is similar to consistent, but instead of Booleans in the check vector, there are three possible values for each key: GIN_TRUE, GIN_FALSE and GIN_MAYBE. GIN_FALSE and GIN_TRUE have the same meaning as regular Boolean values, while GIN_MAYBE means that the presence of that key is not known. When GIN_MAYBE values are present, the function should only return GIN_TRUE if the item certainly matches whether or not the index item contains the corresponding query keys. Likewise, the function must return GIN_FALSE only if the item certainly does not match, whether or not it contains the GIN_MAYBE keys. If the result depends on the GIN_MAYBE entries, i.e., the match cannot be confirmed or refuted based on the known query keys, the function must return GIN_MAYBE.

When there are no GIN_MAYBE values in the check vector, a GIN_MAYBE return value is the equivalent of setting the recheck flag in the Boolean consistent function.

In addition, GIN must have a way to sort the key values stored in the index. The operator class can define the sort ordering by specifying a comparison method:

```c
int compare(Datum a, Datum b)
```

Compares two keys (not indexed items!) and returns an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether the first key is less than, equal to, or greater than the second. Null keys are never passed to this function.
Alternatively, if the operator class does not provide a `compare` method, GIN will look up the default btree operator class for the index key data type, and use its comparison function. It is recommended to specify the comparison function in a GIN operator class that is meant for just one data type, as looking up the btree operator class costs a few cycles. However, polymorphic GIN operator classes (such as `array_ops`) typically cannot specify a single comparison function.

An operator class for GIN can optionally supply the following methods:

```c
int comparePartial(Datum partial_key, Datum key, StrategyNumber n, Pointer extra_data)
```

Compare a partial-match query key to an index key. Returns an integer whose sign indicates the result: less than zero means the index key does not match the query, but the index scan should continue; zero means that the index key does match the query; greater than zero indicates that the index scan should stop because no more matches are possible. The strategy number `n` of the operator that generated the partial match query is provided, in case its semantics are needed to determine when to end the scan. Also, `extra_data` is the corresponding element of the extra-data array made by `extractQuery`, or `NULL` if none. Null keys are never passed to this function.

```c
void options(local_relopts *relopts)
```

Defines a set of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

The `options` function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

Since both key extraction of indexed values and representation of the key in GIN are flexible, they may depend on user-specified parameters.

To support “partial match” queries, an operator class must provide the `comparePartial` method, and its `extractQuery` method must set the `pmatch` parameter when a partial-match query is encountered. See Section 63.4.2 for details.

The actual data types of the various `Datum` values mentioned above vary depending on the operator class. The item values passed to `extractValue` are always of the operator class’s input type, and all key values must be of the class’s `STORAGE` type. The type of the `query` argument passed to `extractQuery`, `consistent` and `triConsistent` is whatever is the right-hand input type of the class member operator identified by the strategy number. This need not be the same as the indexed type, so long as key values of the correct type can be extracted from it. However, it is recommended that the SQL declarations of these three support functions use the opclass’s indexed data type for the `query` argument, even though the actual type might be something else depending on the operator.

### 63.4. Implementation

Internally, a GIN index contains a B-tree index constructed over keys, where each key is an element of one or more indexed items (a member of an array, for example) and where each tuple in a leaf page contains either a pointer to a B-tree of heap pointers (a “posting tree”), or a simple list of heap pointers (a “posting list”) when the list is small enough to fit into a single index tuple along with the key value. Figure 63.1 illustrates these components of a GIN index.

As of PostgreSQL 9.1, null key values can be included in the index. Also, placeholder nulls are included in the index for indexed items that are null or contain no keys according to `extractValue`. This allows searches that should find empty items to do so.

Multicolumn GIN indexes are implemented by building a single B-tree over composite values (column number, key value). The key values for different columns can be of different types.
63.4.1. GIN Fast Update Technique

Updating a GIN index tends to be slow because of the intrinsic nature of inverted indexes: inserting or updating one heap row can cause many inserts into the index (one for each key extracted from the indexed item). GIN is capable of postponing much of this work by inserting new tuples into a temporary, unsorted list of pending entries. When the table is vacuumed or autoanalyzed, or when `gin_clean_pending_list` function is called, or if the pending list becomes larger than `gin_pending_list_limit`, the entries are moved to the main GIN data structure using the same bulk insert techniques used during initial index creation. This greatly improves GIN index update speed, even counting the additional vacuum overhead. Moreover the overhead work can be done by a background process instead of in foreground query processing.

The main disadvantage of this approach is that searches must scan the list of pending entries in addition to searching the regular index, and so a large list of pending entries will slow searches significantly. Another disadvantage is that, while most updates are fast, an update that causes the pending list to become “too large” will incur an immediate cleanup cycle and thus be much slower than other updates. Proper use of autovacuum can minimize both of these problems.

If consistent response time is more important than update speed, use of pending entries can be disabled by turning off the `fastupdate` storage parameter for a GIN index. See `CREATE INDEX` for details.

63.4.2. Partial Match Algorithm

GIN can support “partial match” queries, in which the query does not determine an exact match for one or more keys, but the possible matches fall within a reasonably narrow range of key values (within the key sorting order determined by the `compare` support method). The `extractQuery` method, instead of returning a key value to be matched exactly, returns a key value that is the lower bound of the range to be searched, and sets the `pmatch` flag true. The key range is then scanned using the `comparePartial` method. `comparePartial` must return zero for a matching index key, less than zero for a non-match that is still within the range to be searched, or greater than zero if the index key is past the range that could match.
63.5. GIN Tips and Tricks

Create vs. insert

Insertion into a GIN index can be slow due to the likelihood of many keys being inserted for each item. So, for bulk insertions into a table it is advisable to drop the GIN index and recreate it after finishing bulk insertion.

When fastupdate is enabled for GIN (see Section 63.4.1 for details), the penalty is less than when it is not. But for very large updates it may still be best to drop and recreate the index.

maintenance_work_mem

Build time for a GIN index is very sensitive to the maintenance_work_mem setting; it doesn’t pay to skimp on work memory during index creation.

gin_pending_list_limit

During a series of insertions into an existing GIN index that has fastupdate enabled, the system will clean up the pending-entry list whenever the list grows larger than gin_pending_list_limit. To avoid fluctuations in observed response time, it’s desirable to have pending-list cleanup occur in the background (i.e., via autovacuum). Foreground cleanup operations can be avoided by increasing gin_pending_list_limit or making autovacuum more aggressive. However, enlarging the threshold of the cleanup operation means that if a foreground cleanup does occur, it will take even longer.

gin_pending_list_limit can be overridden for individual GIN indexes by changing storage parameters, which allows each GIN index to have its own cleanup threshold. For example, it’s possible to increase the threshold only for the GIN index which can be updated heavily, and decrease it otherwise.

gin_fuzzy_search_limit

The primary goal of developing GIN indexes was to create support for highly scalable full-text search in Postgres Pro, and there are often situations when a full-text search returns a very large set of results. Moreover, this often happens when the query contains very frequent words, so that the large result set is not even useful. Since reading many tuples from the disk and sorting them could take a lot of time, this is unacceptable for production. (Note that the index search itself is very fast.)

To facilitate controlled execution of such queries, GIN has a configurable soft upper limit on the number of rows returned: the gin_fuzzy_search_limit configuration parameter. It is set to 0 (meaning no limit) by default. If a non-zero limit is set, then the returned set is a subset of the whole result set, chosen at random.

“Soft” means that the actual number of returned results could differ somewhat from the specified limit, depending on the query and the quality of the system’s random number generator.

From experience, values in the thousands (e.g., 5000 — 20000) work well.

63.6. Limitations

GIN assumes that indexable operators are strict. This means that extractValue will not be called at all on a null item value (instead, a placeholder index entry is created automatically), and extractQuery will not be called on a null query value either (instead, the query is presumed to be unsatisfiable). Note however that null key values contained within a non-null composite item or query value are supported.

63.7. Examples

The core Postgres Pro distribution includes the GIN operator classes previously shown in Table 63.1. The following contrib modules also contain GIN operator classes:
btree_gin
   B-tree equivalent functionality for several data types

hstore
   Module for storing (key, value) pairs

intarray
   Enhanced support for int[]

pg_trgm
   Text similarity using trigram matching
Chapter 64. BRIN Indexes

64.1. Introduction

BRIN stands for Block Range Index. BRIN is designed for handling very large tables in which certain columns have some natural correlation with their physical location within the table. A block range is a group of pages that are physically adjacent in the table; for each block range, some summary info is stored by the index. For example, a table storing a store's sale orders might have a date column on which each order was placed, and most of the time the entries for earlier orders will appear earlier in the table as well; a table storing a ZIP code column might have all codes for a city grouped together naturally.

BRIN indexes can satisfy queries via regular bitmap index scans, and will return all tuples in all pages within each range if the summary info stored by the index is consistent with the query conditions. The query executor is in charge of rechecking these tuples and discarding those that do not match the query conditions — in other words, these indexes are lossy. Because a BRIN index is very small, scanning the index adds little overhead compared to a sequential scan, but may avoid scanning large parts of the table that are known not to contain matching tuples.

The specific data that a BRIN index will store, as well as the specific queries that the index will be able to satisfy, depend on the operator class selected for each column of the index. Data types having a linear sort order can have operator classes that store the minimum and maximum value within each block range, for instance; geometrical types might store the bounding box for all the objects in the block range.

The size of the block range is determined at index creation time by the `pages_per_range` storage parameter. The number of index entries will be equal to the size of the relation in pages divided by the selected value for `pages_per_range`. Therefore, the smaller the number, the larger the index becomes (because of the need to store more index entries), but at the same time the summary data stored can be more precise and more data blocks can be skipped during an index scan.

64.1.1. Index Maintenance

At the time of creation, all existing heap pages are scanned and a summary index tuple is created for each range, including the possibly-incomplete range at the end. As new pages are filled with data, page ranges that are already summarized will cause the summary information to be updated with data from the new tuples. When a new page is created that does not fall within the last summarized range, that range does not automatically acquire a summary tuple; those tuples remain unsummarized until a summarization run is invoked later, creating initial summaries. This process can be invoked manually using the `brin_summarize_range(regclass, bigint)` or `brin_summarize_new_values(regclass)` functions; automatically when VACUUM processes the table; or by automatic summarization executed by autovacuum, as insertions occur. (This last trigger is disabled by default and can be enabled with the `autosummarize` parameter.) Conversely, a range can be de-summarized using the `brin_desummarize_range(regclass, bigint)` function, which is useful when the index tuple is no longer a very good representation because the existing values have changed.

When autosummarization is enabled, each time a page range is filled a request is sent to autovacuum for it to execute a targeted summarization for that range, to be fulfilled at the end of the next worker run on the same database. If the request queue is full, the request is not recorded and a message is sent to the server log:

```
LOG:  request for BRIN range summarization for index "brin_wi_idx" page 128 was not recorded
```

When this happens, the range will be summarized normally during the next regular vacuum of the table.

64.2. Built-in Operator Classes

The core Postgres Pro distribution includes the BRIN operator classes shown in Table 64.1.
The **minmax** operator classes store the minimum and the maximum values appearing in the indexed column within the range. The **inclusion** operator classes store a value which includes the values in the indexed column within the range. The **bloom** operator classes build a Bloom filter for all values in the range. The **minmax-multi** operator classes store multiple minimum and maximum values, representing values appearing in the indexed column within the range.

### Table 64.1. Built-in BRIN Operator Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bit_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (bit,bit) &lt; (bit,bit) &gt; (bit,bit) &lt;= (bit,bit) &gt;= (bit,bit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box_inclusion_ops</td>
<td>@&gt; (box,point) &lt;&lt; (box,box) &amp;&lt; (box,box) &amp;&gt; (box,box) &gt;&gt; (box,box) @&gt; (box,box)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bpchar_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (character,character)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bpchar_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (character,character) &lt;= (character,character) &gt; (character,character) &gt;= (character,character)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytea_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (bytea,bytea)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bytea_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (bytea,bytea) &lt; (bytea,bytea) &lt;= (bytea,bytea) &gt; (bytea,bytea) &gt;= (bytea,bytea)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (&quot;char&quot;,&quot;char&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (&quot;char&quot;,&quot;char&quot;) &lt;= (&quot;char&quot;,&quot;char&quot;) &gt;= (&quot;char&quot;,&quot;char&quot;) &gt; (&quot;char&quot;,&quot;char&quot;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2110
### BRIN Indexes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (&quot;char&quot;,&quot;char&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date_bloom_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (date,date)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float4_bloom_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float4_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float4_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (float4,float4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float8_bloom_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float8_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float8_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (float8,float8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_inclusion_ops</td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt;= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt;= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Indexable Operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&lt;= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inet_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int2_bloom_ops</td>
<td>&lt;= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (inet,inet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int2_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (int2,int2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (int2,int2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int2_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (int2,int2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (int2,int2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (int2,int2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int4_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int4_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int4_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int8_bloom_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (int4,int4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int8_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int8_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## BRIN Indexes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (bigint,bigint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (interval,interval)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (macaddr,macaddr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr8_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr8_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macaddr8_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (macaddr8,macaddr8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (name,name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (name,name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (name,name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Indexable Operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&lt;= (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeric_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (numeric, numeric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oid_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (oid, oid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_lsn_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_lsn_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_lsn_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (pg_lsn, pg_lsn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range_inclusion_ops</td>
<td>= (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (anyrange, anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Indexable Operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&amp; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anyrange,anyelement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@&gt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;@ (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;&lt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;&gt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&lt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp;&gt; (anyrange,anyrange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (text,text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (text,text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&lt; (text,text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (text,text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (text,text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (text,text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tid_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tid_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&lt; (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tid_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (tid,tid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&lt; (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (timestamp,timestamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp_tz_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (timestamp_tz,timestamp_tz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamp_tz_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (timestamp_tz,timestamp_tz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Indexable Operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (timestamptz,timestamptz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timestamptz_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>= (time,time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time_bloom_ops</td>
<td>= (time,time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&lt;= (time,time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (time,time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timetz_bloom_ops</td>
<td>&gt;= (time,time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timetz_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (timetz,timetz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timetz_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&lt; (timetz,timetz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timetz_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&lt;= (timetz,timetz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uuid_bloom_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (uuid,uuid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uuid_minmax_ops</td>
<td>= (uuid,uuid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uuid_minmax_ops</td>
<td>&lt; (uuid,uuid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uuid_minmax_multi_ops</td>
<td>&gt; (uuid,uuid)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
64.2.1. Operator Class Parameters

Some of the built-in operator classes allow specifying parameters affecting behavior of the operator class. Each operator class has its own set of allowed parameters. Only the bloom and minmax-multi operator classes allow specifying parameters:

bloom operator classes accept these parameters:

n_distinct_per_range

Defines the estimated number of distinct non-null values in the block range, used by BRIN bloom indexes for sizing of the Bloom filter. It behaves similarly to n_distinct option for ALTER TABLE. When set to a positive value, each block range is assumed to contain this number of distinct non-null values. When set to a negative value, which must be greater than or equal to -1, the number of distinct non-null values is assumed to grow linearly with the maximum possible number of tuples in the block range (about 290 rows per block). The default value is -0.1, and the minimum number of distinct non-null values is 16.

false_positive_rate

Defines the desired false positive rate used by BRIN bloom indexes for sizing of the Bloom filter. The values must be between 0.0001 and 0.25. The default value is 0.01, which is 1% false positive rate.

minmax-multi operator classes accept these parameters:

values_per_range

Defines the maximum number of values stored by BRIN minmax indexes to summarize a block range. Each value may represent either a point, or a boundary of an interval. Values must be between 8 and 256, and the default value is 32.

64.3. Extensibility

The BRIN interface has a high level of abstraction, requiring the access method implementer only to implement the semantics of the data type being accessed. The BRIN layer itself takes care of concurrency, logging and searching the index structure.

All it takes to get a BRIN access method working is to implement a few user-defined methods, which define the behavior of summary values stored in the index and the way they interact with scan keys. In short, BRIN combines extensibility with generality, code reuse, and a clean interface.

There are four methods that an operator class for BRIN must provide:

BrinOpcInfo *opcInfo(Oid type_oid)

Returns internal information about the indexed columns' summary data. The return value must point to a palloc'd BrinOpcInfo, which has this definition:

typedef struct BrinOpcInfo
{

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Indexable Operators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;= (uuid,uuid)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;= (uuid,uuid)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>= (varbit,varbit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; (varbit,varbit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; (varbit,varbit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;= (varbit,varbit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;= (varbit,varbit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BRIN Indexes

/* Number of columns stored in an index column of this opclass */
uint16  oi_nstored;

/* Opaque pointer for the opclass' private use */
void       *oi_opaque;

/* Type cache entries of the stored columns */
TypeCacheEntry *oi_typcache[FLEXIBLE_ARRAY_MEMBER];
}

BrinOpcInfo.oi_opaque can be used by the operator class routines to pass information between support functions during an index scan.

bool consistent(BrinDesc *bdesc, BrinValues *column, ScanKey *keys, int nkeys)

Returns whether all the ScanKey entries are consistent with the given indexed values for a range. The attribute number to use is passed as part of the scan key. Multiple scan keys for the same attribute may be passed at once; the number of entries is determined by the nkeys parameter.

bool consistent(BrinDesc *bdesc, BrinValues *column, ScanKey key)

Returns whether the ScanKey is consistent with the given indexed values for a range. The attribute number to use is passed as part of the scan key. This is an older backward-compatible variant of the consistent function.

bool addValue(BrinDesc *bdesc, BrinValues *column, Datum newval, bool isnull)

Given an index tuple and an indexed value, modifies the indicated attribute of the tuple so that it additionally represents the new value. If any modification was done to the tuple, true is returned.

bool unionTuples(BrinDesc *bdesc, BrinValues *a, BrinValues *b)

Consolidates two index tuples. Given two index tuples, modifies the indicated attribute of the first of them so that it represents both tuples. The second tuple is not modified.

An operator class for BRIN can optionally specify the following method:

void options(local_relopts *relopts)

Defines a set of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

The options function is passed a pointer to a local_relopts struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS() and PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS() macros.

Since both key extraction of indexed values and representation of the key in BRIN are flexible, they may depend on user-specified parameters.

The core distribution includes support for four types of operator classes: minmax, minmax-multi, inclusion and bloom. Operator class definitions using them are shipped for in-core data types as appropriate. Additional operator classes can be defined by the user for other data types using equivalent definitions, without having to write any source code; appropriate catalog entries being declared is enough. Note that assumptions about the semantics of operator strategies are embedded in the support functions' source code.

Operator classes that implement completely different semantics are also possible, provided implementations of the four main support functions described above are written. Note that backwards compatibility across major releases is not guaranteed: for example, additional support functions might be required in later releases.

To write an operator class for a data type that implements a totally ordered set, it is possible to use the minmax support functions alongside the corresponding operators, as shown in Table 64.2. All operator class members (functions and operators) are mandatory.
Table 64.2. Function and Support Numbers for Minmax Operator Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator class member</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 1</td>
<td>internal function brin_minmax_opcinfo()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 2</td>
<td>internal function brin_minmax_add_value()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 3</td>
<td>internal function brin_minmax_consistent()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 4</td>
<td>internal function brin_minmax_union()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 1</td>
<td>operator less-than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 2</td>
<td>operator less-than-or-equal-to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 3</td>
<td>operator equal-to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 4</td>
<td>operator greater-than-or-equal-to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 5</td>
<td>operator greater-than</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To write an operator class for a complex data type which has values included within another type, it's possible to use the inclusion support functions alongside the corresponding operators, as shown in Table 64.3. It requires only a single additional function, which can be written in any language. More functions can be defined for additional functionality. All operators are optional. Some operators require other operators, as shown as dependencies on the table.

Table 64.3. Function and Support Numbers for Inclusion Operator Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator class member</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Dependency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 1</td>
<td>internal function brin_inclusion_opcinfo()</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 2</td>
<td>internal function brin_inclusion_add_value()</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 3</td>
<td>internal function brin_inclusion_consistent()</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 4</td>
<td>internal function brin_inclusion_union()</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 11</td>
<td>function to merge two elements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 12</td>
<td>optional function to check whether two elements are mergeable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 13</td>
<td>optional function to check if an element is contained within another</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Function 14</td>
<td>optional function to check whether an element is empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 1</td>
<td>operator left-of</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 3</td>
<td>operator overlaps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 4</td>
<td>operator does-not-extend-to-the-left-of</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 5</td>
<td>operator right-of</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 6, 18</td>
<td>operator same-as-or-equal-to</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 7, 16, 24, 25</td>
<td>operator contains-or-equal-to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 8, 26, 27</td>
<td>operator is-contained-by-or-equal-to</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 9</td>
<td>operator does-not-extend-above</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 10</td>
<td>operator is-below</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Support function numbers 1 through 10 are reserved for the BRIN internal functions, so the SQL level functions start with number 11. Support function number 11 is the main function required to build the index. It should accept two arguments with the same data type as the operator class, and return the union of them. The inclusion operator class can store union values with different data types if it is defined with the `STORAGE` parameter. The return value of the union function should match the `STORAGE` data type.

Support function numbers 12 and 14 are provided to support irregularities of built-in data types. Function number 12 is used to support network addresses from different families which are not mergeable. Function number 14 is used to support empty ranges. Function number 13 is an optional but recommended one, which allows the new value to be checked before it is passed to the union function. As the BRIN framework can shortcut some operations when the union is not changed, using this function can improve index performance.

To write an operator class for a data type that implements only an equality operator and supports hashing, it is possible to use the bloom support procedures alongside the corresponding operators, as shown in Table 64.4. All operator class members (procedures and operators) are mandatory.

### Table 64.4. Procedure and Support Numbers for Bloom Operator Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator class member</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Dependency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 11</td>
<td>operator is-above</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 12</td>
<td>operator does-not-extend-below</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 20</td>
<td>operator less-than</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 21</td>
<td>operator less-than-or-equal-to</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 22</td>
<td>operator greater-than</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 23</td>
<td>operator greater-than-or-equal-to</td>
<td>Operator Strategy 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Support procedure numbers 1-10 are reserved for the BRIN internal functions, so the SQL level functions start with number 11. Support function number 11 is the main function required to build the index. It should accept one argument with the same data type as the operator class, and return a hash of the value.

The minmax-multi operator class is also intended for data types implementing a totally ordered set, and may be seen as a simple extension of the minmax operator class. While minmax operator class summarizes values from each block range into a single contiguous interval, minmax-multi allows summarization into multiple smaller intervals to improve handling of outlier values. It is possible to use the minmax-multi support procedures alongside the corresponding operators, as shown in Table 64.5. All operator class members (procedures and operators) are mandatory.

### Table 64.5. Procedure and Support Numbers for minmax-multi Operator Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator class member</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support Procedure 1</td>
<td>internal function <code>brin_minmax_multi_opcinfo()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Procedure 2</td>
<td>internal function <code>brin_minmax_multi_add_value()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator class member</td>
<td>Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Procedure 3</td>
<td>internal function `brin_minmax_multi_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>consistent()`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Procedure 4</td>
<td>internal function <code>brin_minmax_multi_union()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Procedure 11</td>
<td>function to compute distance between two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>values (length of a range)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 1</td>
<td>operator less-than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 2</td>
<td>operator less-than-or-equal-to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 3</td>
<td>operator equal-to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 4</td>
<td>operator greater-than-or-equal-to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Strategy 5</td>
<td>operator greater-than</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both minmax and inclusion operator classes support cross-data-type operators, though with these the dependencies become more complicated. The minmax operator class requires a full set of operators to be defined with both arguments having the same data type. It allows additional data types to be supported by defining extra sets of operators. Inclusion operator class operator strategies are dependent on another operator strategy as shown in Table 64.3, or the same operator strategy as themselves. They require the dependency operator to be defined with the `STORAGE` data type as the left-hand-side argument and the other supported data type to be the right-hand-side argument of the supported operator. See `float4_minmax_ops` as an example of minmax, and `box_inclusion_ops` as an example of inclusion.
Chapter 65. Hash Indexes

65.1. Overview

Postgres Pro includes an implementation of persistent on-disk hash indexes, which are fully crash recoverable. Any data type can be indexed by a hash index, including data types that do not have a well-defined linear ordering. Hash indexes store only the hash value of the data being indexed, thus there are no restrictions on the size of the data column being indexed.

Hash indexes support only single-column indexes and do not allow uniqueness checking.

Hash indexes support only the = operator, so WHERE clauses that specify range operations will not be able to take advantage of hash indexes.

Each hash index tuple stores just the 4-byte hash value, not the actual column value. As a result, hash indexes may be much smaller than B-trees when indexing longer data items such as UUIDs, URLs, etc. The absence of the column value also makes all hash index scans lossy. Hash indexes may take part in bitmap index scans and backward scans.

Hash indexes are best optimized for SELECT and UPDATE-heavy workloads that use equality scans on larger tables. In a B-tree index, searches must descend through the tree until the leaf page is found. In tables with millions of rows, this descent can increase access time to data. The equivalent of a leaf page in a hash index is referred to as a bucket page. In contrast, a hash index allows accessing the bucket pages directly, thereby potentially reducing index access time in larger tables. This reduction in "logical I/O" becomes even more pronounced on indexes/data larger than shared_buffers/RAM.

Hash indexes have been designed to cope with uneven distributions of hash values. Direct access to the bucket pages works well if the hash values are evenly distributed. When inserts mean that the bucket page becomes full, additional overflow pages are chained to that specific bucket page, locally expanding the storage for index tuples that match that hash value. When scanning a hash bucket during queries, we need to scan through all of the overflow pages. Thus an unbalanced hash index might actually be worse than a B-tree in terms of number of block accesses required, for some data.

As a result of the overflow cases, we can say that hash indexes are most suitable for unique, nearly unique data or data with a low number of rows per hash bucket. One possible way to avoid problems is to exclude highly non-unique values from the index using a partial index condition, but this may not be suitable in many cases.

Like B-Trees, hash indexes perform simple index tuple deletion. This is a deferred maintenance operation that deletes index tuples that are known to be safe to delete (those whose item identifier's LP_DEAD bit is already set). If an insert finds no space is available on a page we try to avoid creating a new overflow page by attempting to remove dead index tuples. Removal cannot occur if the page is pinned at that time. Deletion of dead index pointers also occurs during VACUUM.

If it can, VACUUM will also try to squeeze the index tuples onto as few overflow pages as possible, minimizing the overflow chain. If an overflow page becomes empty, overflow pages can be recycled for reuse in other buckets, though we never return them to the operating system. There is currently no provision to shrink a hash index, other than by rebuilding it with REINDEX. There is no provision for reducing the number of buckets, either.

Hash indexes may expand the number of bucket pages as the number of rows indexed grows. The hash key-to-bucket-number mapping is chosen so that the index can be incrementally expanded. When a new bucket is to be added to the index, exactly one existing bucket will need to be "split", with some of its tuples being transferred to the new bucket according to the updated key-to-bucket-number mapping.

The expansion occurs in the foreground, which could increase execution time for user inserts. Thus, hash indexes may not be suitable for tables with rapidly increasing number of rows.
65.2. Implementation

There are four kinds of pages in a hash index: the meta page (page zero), which contains statically allocated control information; primary bucket pages; overflow pages; and bitmap pages, which keep track of overflow pages that have been freed and are available for re-use. For addressing purposes, bitmap pages are regarded as a subset of the overflow pages.

Both scanning the index and inserting tuples require locating the bucket where a given tuple ought to be located. To do this, we need the bucket count, highmask, and lowmask from the metapage; however, it's undesirable for performance reasons to have to lock and pin the metapage for every such operation. Instead, we retain a cached copy of the metapage in each backend's relcache entry. This will produce the correct bucket mapping as long as the target bucket hasn't been split since the last cache refresh.

Primary bucket pages and overflow pages are allocated independently since any given index might need more or fewer overflow pages relative to its number of buckets. The hash code uses an interesting set of addressing rules to support a variable number of overflow pages while not having to move primary bucket pages around after they are created.

Each row in the table indexed is represented by a single index tuple in the hash index. Hash index tuples are stored in bucket pages, and if they exist, overflow pages. We speed up searches by keeping the index entries in any one index page sorted by hash code, thus allowing binary search to be used within an index page. Note however that there is *no* assumption about the relative ordering of hash codes across different index pages of a bucket.

The bucket splitting algorithms to expand the hash index are too complex to be worthy of mention here. The split algorithm is crash safe and can be restarted if not completed successfully.
Chapter 66. Database Physical Storage

This chapter provides an overview of the physical storage format used by Postgres Pro databases.

66.1. Database File Layout

This section describes the storage format at the level of files and directories.

Traditionally, the configuration and data files used by a database cluster are stored together within the cluster's data directory, commonly referred to as `PGDATA` (after the name of the environment variable that can be used to define it). A common location for `PGDATA` is `/var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data`. Multiple clusters, managed by different server instances, can exist on the same machine.

The `PGDATA` directory contains several subdirectories and control files, as shown in Table 66.1. In addition to these required items, the cluster configuration files `postgresql.conf`, `pg_hba.conf`, and `pg_ident.conf` are traditionally stored in `PGDATA`, although it is possible to place them elsewhere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PG_VERSION</td>
<td>A file containing the major version number of Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing per-database subdirectories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current_logfiles</td>
<td>File recording the log file(s) currently written to by the logging collector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>global</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing cluster-wide tables, such as <code>pg_database</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_commit_ts</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing transaction commit timestamp data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_dynshmem</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing files used by the dynamic shared memory subsystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_logical</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing status data for logical decoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_multixact</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing multitransaction status data (used for shared row locks)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_notify</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing LISTEN/NOTIFY status data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_replslot</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing replication slot data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_serial</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing information about committed serializable transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_snapshots</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing exported snapshots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing permanent files for the statistics subsystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_stat_tmp</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing temporary files for the statistics subsystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_subtrans</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing subtransaction status data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_tblspc</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing symbolic links to tablespaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_twophase</td>
<td>Subdirectory containing state files for prepared transactions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For each database in the cluster there is a subdirectory within PGDATA/base, named after the database's OID in pg_database. This subdirectory is the default location for the database's files; in particular, its system catalogs are stored there.

Note that the following sections describe the behavior of the built-in heap table access method, and the built-in index access methods. Due to the extensible nature of Postgres Pro, other access methods might work differently.

Each table and index is stored in a separate file. For ordinary relations, these files are named after the table or index's filenode number, which can be found in pg_class.relfilenode. But for temporary relations, the file name is of the form tBBB_FFF, where BBB is the backend ID of the backend which created the file, and FFF is the filenode number. In either case, in addition to the main file (a/k/a main fork), each table and index has a free space map (see Section 66.3), which stores information about free space available in the relation. The free space map is stored in a file named with the filenode number plus the suffix _fsm. Tables also have a visibility map, stored in a fork with the suffix _vm, to track which pages are known to have no dead tuples. The visibility map is described further in Section 66.4. Unlogged tables and indexes have a third fork, known as the initialization fork, which is stored in a fork with the suffix _init (see Section 66.5).

Caution

Note that while a table's filenode often matches its OID, this is not necessarily the case; some operations, like TRUNCATE, REINDEX, CLUSTER and some forms of ALTER TABLE, can change the filenode while preserving the OID. Avoid assuming that filenode and table OID are the same. Also, for certain system catalogs including pg_class itself, pg_class.relfilenode contains zero. The actual filenode number of these catalogs is stored in a lower-level data structure, and can be obtained using the pg_relation_filenode() function.

When a table or index exceeds 1 GB, it is divided into gigabyte-sized segments. The first segment's file name is the same as the filenode; subsequent segments are named filenode.1, filenode.2, etc. This arrangement avoids problems on platforms that have file size limitations. (Actually, 1 GB is just the default segment size. The segment size can be adjusted using the configuration option --with-segsize when building Postgres Pro.) In principle, free space map and visibility map forks could require multiple segments as well, though this is unlikely to happen in practice.

A table that has columns with potentially large entries will have an associated TOAST table, which is used for out-of-line storage of field values that are too large to keep in the table rows proper.
Database Physical Storage

pg_class.reltoastrelid links from a table to its TOAST table, if any. See Section 66.2 for more information.

The contents of tables and indexes are discussed further in Section 66.6.

Tablespaces make the scenario more complicated. Each user-defined tablespace has a symbolic link inside the PGDATA/pg_tblspc directory, which points to the physical tablespace directory (i.e., the location specified in the tablespace's CREATE TABLESPACE command). This symbolic link is named after the tablespace's OID. Inside the physical tablespace directory there is a subdirectory with a name that depends on the Postgres Pro server version, such as PG_9.0_201008051. (The reason for using this subdirectory is so that successive versions of the database can use the same CREATE TABLESPACE location value without conflicts.) Within the version-specific subdirectory, there is a subdirectory for each database that has elements in the tablespace, named after the database's OID. Tables and indexes are stored within that directory, using the filenode naming scheme. The pg_default tablespace is not accessed through pg_tblspc, but corresponds to PGDATA/base. Similarly, the pg_global tablespace is not accessed through pg_tblspc, but corresponds to PGDATA/global.

The pg_relation_filepath() function shows the entire path (relative to PGDATA) of any relation. It is often useful as a substitute for remembering many of the above rules. But keep in mind that this function just gives the name of the first segment of the main fork of the relation — you may need to append a segment number and/or _fsm, _vm, or _init to find all the files associated with the relation.

Temporary files (for operations such as sorting more data than can fit in memory) are created within PGDATA/base/pgsql_tmp, or within a pgsql_tmp subdirectory of a tablespace directory if a tablespace other than pg_default is specified for them. The name of a temporary file has the form pgsql_tmpPPP.NNN, where PPP is the PID of the owning backend and NNN distinguishes different temporary files of that backend.

66.2. TOAST

This section provides an overview of TOAST (The Oversized-Attribute Storage Technique).

Postgres Pro uses a fixed page size (commonly 8 kB), and does not allow tuples to span multiple pages. Therefore, it is not possible to store very large field values directly. To overcome this limitation, large field values are compressed and/or broken up into multiple physical rows. This happens transparently to the user, with only small impact on most of the backend code. The technique is affectionately known as TOAST (or “the best thing since sliced bread”). The TOAST infrastructure is also used to improve handling of large data values in-memory.

Only certain data types support TOAST — there is no need to impose the overhead on data types that cannot produce large field values. To support TOAST, a data type must have a variable-length (varlena) representation, in which, ordinarily, the first four-byte word of any stored value contains the total length of the value in bytes (including itself). TOAST does not constrain the rest of the data type’s representation. The special representations collectively called TOASTed values work by modifying or reinterpreting this initial length word. Therefore, the C-level functions supporting a TOAST-able data type must be careful about how they handle potentially TOASTed input values: an input might not actually consist of a four-byte length word and contents until after it’s been detoasted. (This is normally done by invoking PG_DETOAST_DATUM before doing anything with an input value, but in some cases more efficient approaches are possible. See Section 36.13.1 for more detail.)

TOAST usurps two bits of the varlena length word (the high-order bits on big-endian machines, the low-order bits on little-endian machines), thereby limiting the logical size of any value of a TOAST-able data type to 1 GB \(2^{30} - 1\) bytes. When both bits are zero, the value is an ordinary un-TOASTed value of the data type, and the remaining bits of the length word give the total datum size (including length word) in bytes. When the highest-order or lowest-order bit is set, the value has only a single-byte header instead of the normal four-byte header; and the remaining bits of that byte give the total datum size (including length byte) in bytes. This alternative supports space-efficient storage of values shorter than 127 bytes, while still allowing the data type to grow to 1 GB at need. Values with single-byte headers aren’t aligned on any
particular boundary, whereas values with four-byte headers are aligned on at least a four-byte boundary; this omission of alignment padding provides additional space savings that is significant compared to short values. As a special case, if the remaining bits of a single-byte header are all zero (which would be impossible for a self-inclusive length), the value is a pointer to out-of-line data, with several possible alternatives as described below. The type and size of such a TOAST pointer are determined by a code stored in the second byte of the datum. Lastly, when the highest-order or lowest-order bit is clear but the adjacent bit is set, the content of the datum has been compressed and must be decompressed before use. In this case the remaining bits of the four-byte length word give the total size of the compressed datum, not the original data. Note that compression is also possible for out-of-line data but the varlena header does not tell whether it has occurred — the content of the TOAST pointer tells that, instead.

The compression technique used for either in-line or out-of-line compressed data can be selected for each column by setting the COMPRESSION column option in CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE. The default for columns with no explicit setting is to consult the default_toast_compression parameter at the time data is inserted.

As mentioned, there are multiple types of TOAST pointer datums. The oldest and most common type is a pointer to out-of-line data stored in a TOAST table that is separate from, but associated with, the table containing the TOAST pointer datum itself. These on-disk pointer datums are created by the TOAST management code (in access/common/toast_internals.c) when a tuple to be stored on disk is too large to be stored as-is. Further details appear in Section 66.2.1. Alternatively, a TOAST pointer datum can contain a pointer to out-of-line data that appears elsewhere in memory. Such datums are necessarily short-lived, and will never appear on-disk, but they are very useful for avoiding copying and redundant processing of large data values. Further details appear in Section 66.2.2.

### 66.2.1. Out-of-Line, On-Disk TOAST Storage

If any of the columns of a table are TOAST-able, the table will have an associated TOAST table, whose OID is stored in the table's pg_class.reltoastrelid entry. On-disk TOASTed values are kept in the TOAST table, as described in more detail below.

Out-of-line values are divided (after compression if used) into chunks of at most TOAST_MAX_CHUNK_SIZE bytes (by default this value is chosen so that four chunk rows will fit on a page, making it about 2000 bytes). Each chunk is stored as a separate row in the TOAST table belonging to the owning table. Every TOAST table has the columns chunk_id (an OID identifying the particular TOASTed value), chunk_seq (a sequence number for the chunk within its value), and chunk_data (the actual data of the chunk). A unique index on chunk_id and chunk_seq provides fast retrieval of the values. A pointer datum representing an out-of-line on-disk TOASTed value therefore needs to store the OID of the TOAST table in which to look and the OID of the specific value (its chunk_id). For convenience, pointer datums also store the logical datum size (original uncompressed data length), physical stored size (different if compression was applied), and the compression method used, if any. Allowing for the varlena header bytes, the total size of an on-disk TOAST pointer datum is therefore 18 bytes regardless of the actual size of the represented value.

The TOAST management code is triggered only when a row value to be stored in a table is wider than TOAST_TUPLE_THRESHOLD bytes (normally 2 kB). The TOAST code will compress and/or move field values out-of-line until the row value is shorter than TOAST_TUPLE_TARGET bytes (also normally 2 kB, adjustable) or no more gains can be had. During an UPDATE operation, values of unchanged fields are normally preserved as-is; so an UPDATE of a row with out-of-line values incurs no TOAST costs if none of the out-of-line values change.

The TOAST management code recognizes four different strategies for storing TOAST-able columns on disk:

- **PLAIN** prevents either compression or out-of-line storage; furthermore it disables use of single-byte headers for varlena types. This is the only possible strategy for columns of non-TOAST-able data types.
- **EXTENDED** allows both compression and out-of-line storage. This is the default for most TOAST-able data types. Compression will be attempted first, then out-of-line storage if the row is still too big.
• **EXTERNAL** allows out-of-line storage but not compression. Use of **EXTERNAL** will make substring operations on wide text and bytea columns faster (at the penalty of increased storage space) because these operations are optimized to fetch only the required parts of the out-of-line value when it is not compressed.

• **MAIN** allows compression but not out-of-line storage. (Actually, out-of-line storage will still be performed for such columns, but only as a last resort when there is no other way to make the row small enough to fit on a page.)

Each TOAST-able data type specifies a default strategy for columns of that data type, but the strategy for a given table column can be altered with `ALTER TABLE ... SET STORAGE`.

TOAST_TUPLE_TARGET can be adjusted for each table using `ALTER TABLE ... SET (toast_tuple_target = N)`.

This scheme has a number of advantages compared to a more straightforward approach such as allowing row values to span pages. Assuming that queries are usually qualified by comparisons against relatively small key values, most of the work of the executor will be done using the main row entry. The big values of TOASTed attributes will only be pulled out (if selected at all) at the time the result set is sent to the client. Thus, the main table is much smaller and more of its rows fit in the shared buffer cache than would be the case without any out-of-line storage. Sort sets shrink also, and sorts will more often be done entirely in memory. A little test showed that a table containing typical HTML pages and their URLs was stored in about half of the raw data size including the TOAST table, and that the main table contained only about 10% of the entire data (the URLs and some small HTML pages). There was no run time difference compared to an un-TOASTed comparison table, in which all the HTML pages were cut down to 7 kB to fit.

### 66.2.2. Out-of-Line, In-Memory TOAST Storage

TOAST pointers can point to data that is not on disk, but is elsewhere in the memory of the current server process. Such pointers obviously cannot be long-lived, but they are nonetheless useful. There are currently two sub-cases: pointers to **indirect** data and pointers to **expanded** data.

Indirect TOAST pointers simply point at a non-indirect varlena value stored somewhere in memory. This case was originally created merely as a proof of concept, but it is currently used during logical decoding to avoid possibly having to create physical tuples exceeding 1 GB (as pulling all out-of-line field values into the tuple might do). The case is of limited use since the creator of the pointer datum is entirely responsible that the referenced data survives for as long as the pointer could exist, and there is no infrastructure to help with this.

Expanded TOAST pointers are useful for complex data types whose on-disk representation is not especially suited for computational purposes. As an example, the standard varlena representation of a Postgres Pro array includes dimensionality information, a nulls bitmap if there are any null elements, then the values of all the elements in order. When the element type itself is variable-length, the only way to find the Nth element is to scan through all the preceding elements. This representation is appropriate for on-disk storage because of its compactness, but for computations with the array it’s much nicer to have an “expanded” or “deconstructed” representation in which all the element starting locations have been identified. The TOAST pointer mechanism supports this need by allowing a pass-by-reference Datum to point to either a standard varlena value (the on-disk representation) or a TOAST pointer that points to an expanded representation somewhere in memory. The details of this expanded representation are up to the data type, though it must have a standard header and meet the other API requirements given in `src/include/utils/expandeddatum.h`. C-level functions working with the data type can choose to handle either representation. Functions that do not know about the expanded representation, but simply apply `PG_DETOAST_DATUM` to their inputs, will automatically receive the traditional varlena representation; so support for an expanded representation can be introduced incrementally, one function at a time.

TOAST pointers to expanded values are further broken down into **read-write** and **read-only** pointers. The pointed-to representation is the same either way, but a function that receives a read-write pointer is allowed to modify the referenced value in-place, whereas one that receives a read-only pointer must not; it must first create a copy if it wants to make a modified version of the value. This distinction and
some associated conventions make it possible to avoid unnecessary copying of expanded values during query execution.

For all types of in-memory TOAST pointer, the TOAST management code ensures that no such pointer datum can accidentally get stored on disk. In-memory TOAST pointers are automatically expanded to normal in-line varlena values before storage — and then possibly converted to on-disk TOAST pointers, if the containing tuple would otherwise be too big.

### 66.3. Free Space Map

Each heap and index relation, except for hash indexes, has a Free Space Map (FSM) to keep track of available space in the relation. It's stored alongside the main relation data in a separate relation fork, named after the filenode number of the relation, plus a \_fsm suffix. For example, if the filenode of a relation is 12345, the FSM is stored in a file called 12345\_fsm, in the same directory as the main relation file.

The Free Space Map is organized as a tree of FSM pages. The bottom level FSM pages store the free space available on each heap (or index) page, using one byte to represent each such page. The upper levels aggregate information from the lower levels.

Within each FSM page is a binary tree, stored in an array with one byte per node. Each leaf node represents a heap page, or a lower level FSM page. In each non-leaf node, the higher of its children's values is stored. The maximum value in the leaf nodes is therefore stored at the root.

The pg_freespacemap module can be used to examine the information stored in free space maps.

### 66.4. Visibility Map

Each heap relation has a Visibility Map (VM) to keep track of which pages contain only tuples that are known to be visible to all active transactions; it also keeps track of which pages contain only frozen tuples. It's stored alongside the main relation data in a separate relation fork, named after the filenode number of the relation, plus a \_vm suffix. For example, if the filenode of a relation is 12345, the VM is stored in a file called 12345\_vm, in the same directory as the main relation file. Note that indexes do not have VMs.

The visibility map stores two bits per heap page. The first bit, if set, indicates that the page is all-visible, or in other words that the page does not contain any tuples that need to be vacuumed. This information can also be used by index-only scans to answer queries using only the index tuple. The second bit, if set, means that all tuples on the page have been frozen. That means that even an anti-wraparound vacuum need not revisit the page.

The map is conservative in the sense that we make sure that whenever a bit is set, we know the condition is true, but if a bit is not set, it might or might not be true. Visibility map bits are only set by vacuum, but are cleared by any data-modifying operations on a page.

The pg_visibility module can be used to examine the information stored in the visibility map.

### 66.5. The Initialization Fork

Each unlogged table, and each index on an unlogged table, has an initialization fork. The initialization fork is an empty table or index of the appropriate type. When an unlogged table must be reset to empty due to a crash, the initialization fork is copied over the main fork, and any other forks are erased (they will be recreated automatically as needed).

### 66.6. Database Page Layout

This section provides an overview of the page format used within Postgres Pro tables and indexes. Sequences and TOAST tables are formatted just like a regular table.

---

1 Actually, use of this page format is not required for either table or index access methods. The heap table access method always uses this format. All the existing index methods also use the basic format, but the data kept on index metapages usually doesn't follow the item layout rules.
In the following explanation, a byte is assumed to contain 8 bits. In addition, the term item refers to an individual data value that is stored on a page. In a table, an item is a row; in an index, an item is an index entry.

Every table and index is stored as an array of pages of a fixed size (usually 8 kB, although a different page size can be selected when compiling the server). In a table, all the pages are logically equivalent, so a particular item (row) can be stored in any page. In indexes, the first page is generally reserved as a metapage holding control information, and there can be different types of pages within the index, depending on the index access method.

Table 66.2 shows the overall layout of a page. There are five parts to each page.

**Table 66.2. Overall Page Layout**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PageHeaderData</td>
<td>24 bytes long. Contains general information about the page, including free space pointers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ItemIdData</td>
<td>Array of item identifiers pointing to the actual items. Each entry is an (offset,length) pair. 4 bytes per item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free space</td>
<td>The unallocated space. New item identifiers are allocated from the start of this area, new items from the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
<td>The actual items themselves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special space</td>
<td>Index access method specific data. Different methods store different data. Empty in ordinary tables.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first 24 bytes of each page consists of a page header (PageHeaderData). Its format is detailed in Table 66.3. The first field tracks the most recent WAL entry related to this page. The second field contains the page checksum if data checksums are enabled. Next is a 2-byte field containing flag bits. This is followed by three 2-byte integer fields (pd_lower, pd_upper, and pd_special). These contain byte offsets from the page start to the start of unallocated space, to the end of unallocated space, and to the start of the special space. The next 2 bytes of the page header, pd_pagesize_version, store both the page size and a version indicator. Beginning with PostgreSQL 8.3 the version number is 4; PostgreSQL 8.1 and 8.2 used version number 3; PostgreSQL 8.0 used version number 2; PostgreSQL 7.3 and 7.4 used version number 1; prior releases used version number 0. (The basic page layout and header format has not changed in most of these versions, but the layout of heap row headers has.) The page size is basically only present as a cross-check; there is no support for having more than one page size in an installation. The last field is a hint that shows whether pruning the page is likely to be profitable: it tracks the oldest un-pruned XMAX on the page.

**Table 66.3. PageHeaderData Layout**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pd_lsn</td>
<td>PageXLogRecPtr</td>
<td>8 bytes</td>
<td>LSN: next byte after last byte of WAL record for last change to this page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pd_checksum</td>
<td>uint16</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>Page checksum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pd_flags</td>
<td>uint16</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>Flag bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pd_lower</td>
<td>LocationIndex</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>Offset to start of free space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pd_upper</td>
<td>LocationIndex</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>Offset to end of free space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pd_special</td>
<td>LocationIndex</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>Offset to start of special space</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Following the page header are item identifiers (ItemIdData), each requiring four bytes. An item identifier contains a byte-offset to the start of an item, its length in bytes, and a few attribute bits which affect its interpretation. New item identifiers are allocated as needed from the beginning of the unallocated space. The number of item identifiers present can be determined by looking at pd_lower, which is increased to allocate a new identifier. Because an item identifier is never moved until it is freed, its index can be used on a long-term basis to reference an item, even when the item itself is moved around on the page to compact free space. In fact, every pointer to an item (ItemPointer, also known as CTID) created by Postgres Pro consists of a page number and the index of an item identifier.

The items themselves are stored in space allocated backwards from the end of unallocated space. The exact structure varies depending on what the table is to contain. Tables and sequences both use a structure named HeapTupleHeaderData, described below.

The final section is the “special section” which can contain anything the access method wishes to store. For example, b-tree indexes store links to the page’s left and right siblings, as well as some other data relevant to the index structure. Ordinary tables do not use a special section at all (indicated by setting pd_special to equal the page size).

Figure 66.1 illustrates how these parts are laid out in a page.

**Figure 66.1. Page Layout**

---

### 66.6.1. Table Row Layout

All table rows are structured in the same way. There is a fixed-size header (occupying 23 bytes on most machines), followed by an optional null bitmap, an optional object ID field, and the user data. The header is detailed in Table 66.4. The actual user data (columns of the row) begins at the offset indicated by t_hoff, which must always be a multiple of the MAXALIGN distance for the platform. The null bitmap is only present if the HEAP_HASNULL bit is set in t_infomask. If it is present it begins just after the fixed header and occupies enough bytes to have one bit per data column (that is, the number of bits that equals the attribute count in t_infomask2). In this list of bits, a 1 bit indicates not-null, a 0 bit is a null. The bitmap is not present, all columns are assumed not-null. The object ID is only present if the HEAP_HASOID_OLD bit is set in t_infomask. If present, it appears just before the t_hoff boundary. Any padding needed to make t_hoff a MAXALIGN multiple will appear between the null bitmap and the object ID. (This in turn ensures that the object ID is suitably aligned.)
Table 66.4. HeapTupleHeaderData Layout

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t_xmin</td>
<td>TransactionId</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
<td>insert XID stamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t_xmax</td>
<td>TransactionId</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
<td>delete XID stamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t_cid</td>
<td>CommandId</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
<td>insert and/or delete CID stamp (overlays with t_xvac)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t_xvac</td>
<td>TransactionId</td>
<td>4 bytes</td>
<td>XID for VACUUM operation moving a row version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t_ctid</td>
<td>ItemPointerData</td>
<td>6 bytes</td>
<td>current TID of this or newer row version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t_inomask2</td>
<td>uint16</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>number of attributes, plus various flag bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t_inomask</td>
<td>uint16</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>various flag bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t_hoff</td>
<td>uint8</td>
<td>1 byte</td>
<td>offset to user data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interpreting the actual data can only be done with information obtained from other tables, mostly \texttt{pg\_attribute}. The key values needed to identify field locations are \texttt{attlen} and \texttt{attalign}. There is no way to directly get a particular attribute, except when there are only fixed width fields and no null values. All this trickery is wrapped up in the functions \texttt{heap\_getattr}, \texttt{fastgetattr} and \texttt{heap\_getsysattr}.

To read the data you need to examine each attribute in turn. First check whether the field is NULL according to the null bitmap. If it is, go to the next. Then make sure you have the right alignment. If the field is a fixed width field, then all the bytes are simply placed. If it's a variable length field (\texttt{attlen} = -1) then it's a bit more complicated. All variable-length data types share the common header structure \texttt{struct varlena}, which includes the total length of the stored value and some flag bits. Depending on the flags, the data can be either inline or in a TOAST table; it might be compressed, too (see Section 66.2).
Chapter 67. How the Planner Uses Statistics

This chapter builds on the material covered in Section 14.1 and Section 14.2 to show some additional details about how the planner uses the system statistics to estimate the number of rows each part of a query might return. This is a significant part of the planning process, providing much of the raw material for cost calculation.

The intent of this chapter is not to document the code in detail, but to present an overview of how it works. This will perhaps ease the learning curve for someone who subsequently wishes to read the code.

67.1. Row Estimation Examples

The examples shown below use tables in the Postgres Pro regression test database. The outputs shown are taken from version 8.3. The behavior of earlier (or later) versions might vary. Note also that since ANALYZE uses random sampling while producing statistics, the results will change slightly after any new ANALYZE.

Let's start with a very simple query:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1;
```

```
QUERY PLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..458.00 rows=10000 width=244)
```

How the planner determines the cardinality of tenk1 is covered in Section 14.2, but is repeated here for completeness. The number of pages and rows is looked up in pg_class:

```
SELECT relpages, reltuples FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'tenk1';
```

```
relpages | reltuples
----------+-----------
358 |     10000
```

These numbers are current as of the last VACUUM or ANALYZE on the table. The planner then fetches the actual current number of pages in the table (this is a cheap operation, not requiring a table scan). If that is different from relpages then reltuples is scaled accordingly to arrive at a current number-of-rows estimate. In the example above, the value of relpages is up-to-date so the rows estimate is the same as reltuples.

Let's move on to an example with a range condition in its WHERE clause:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 1000;
```

```
QUERY PLAN
---------------------------------------------------------------------
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=24.06..394.64 rows=1007 width=244)
  Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 1000)
  ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..23.80 rows=1007 width=0)
      Index Cond: (unique1 < 1000)
```

The planner examines the WHERE clause condition and looks up the selectivity function for the operator < in pg_operator. This is held in the column oprrest, and the entry in this case is scalarltsel. The scalarltsel function retrieves the histogram for unique1 from pg_statistic. For manual queries it is more convenient to look in the simpler pg_stats view:

```
SELECT histogram_bounds FROM pg_stats
WHERE tablename='tenk1' AND attname='unique1';
```

```
histogram_bounds
------------------------
{0,993,1997,3050,4040,5036,5957,7057,8029,9016,9995}
```
How the Planner Uses Statistics

Next the fraction of the histogram occupied by “< 1000” is worked out. This is the selectivity. The histogram divides the range into equal frequency buckets, so all we have to do is locate the bucket that our value is in and count part of it and all of the ones before. The value 1000 is clearly in the second bucket (993-1997). Assuming a linear distribution of values inside each bucket, we can calculate the selectivity as:

```
selectivity = (1 + (1000 - bucket[2].min)/(bucket[2].max - bucket[2].min))/num_buckets
= (1 + (1000 - 993)/(1997 - 993))/10
= 0.100697
```

that is, one whole bucket plus a linear fraction of the second, divided by the number of buckets. The estimated number of rows can now be calculated as the product of the selectivity and the cardinality of tenk1:

```
rows = rel_cardinality * selectivity
= 10000 * 0.100697
= 1007  (rounding off)
```

Next let’s consider an example with an equality condition in its WHERE clause:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE stringu1 = 'CRAAAA';
```

| null_frac         | 0        |
| n_distinct        | 676      |
| most_common_vals  | {EJAAAA,BBAAAA,CRAAAA,FCAAAA,FEAAAA,GSAAAA,JOAAAA,MCAAAA,NAAAAA,WGAAAA} |
| most_common_freqs | {0.00333333,0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003} |

Since CRAAAA appears in the list of MCVs, the selectivity is merely the corresponding entry in the list of most common frequencies (MCFs):

```
selectivity = mcf[3]
= 0.003
```

As before, the estimated number of rows is just the product of this with the cardinality of tenk1:

```
rows = 10000 * 0.003
= 30
```

Now consider the same query, but with a constant that is not in the MCV list:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE stringu1 = 'xxx';
```

This is quite a different problem: how to estimate the selectivity when the value is not in the MCV list. The approach is to use the fact that the value is not in the list, combined with the knowledge of the frequencies for all of the MCVs:
How the Planner Uses Statistics

\[
selectivity = \frac{1 - \text{sum(mvf)}}{\text{num\_distinct} - \text{num\_mcv}} \\
= \frac{1 - (0.00333333 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003)}{(676 - 10)} \\
= 0.0014559
\]

That is, add up all the frequencies for the MCVs and subtract them from one, then divide by the number of other distinct values. This amounts to assuming that the fraction of the column that is not any of the MCVs is evenly distributed among all the other distinct values. Notice that there are no null values so we don't have to worry about those (otherwise we'd subtract the null fraction from the numerator as well). The estimated number of rows is then calculated as usual:

\[
\text{rows} = 10000 \times 0.0014559 \\
= 15 \text{ (rounding off)}
\]

The previous example with \texttt{unique1 < 1000} was an oversimplification of what \texttt{scalarltsel} really does; now that we have seen an example of the use of MCVs, we can fill in some more detail. The example was correct as far as it went, because since \texttt{unique1} is a unique column it has no MCVs (obviously, no value is any more common than any other value). For a non-unique column, there will normally be both a histogram and an MCV list, and the histogram does not include the portion of the column population represented by the MCVs. We do things this way because it allows more precise estimation. In this situation \texttt{scalarltsel} directly applies the condition (e.g., "< 1000") to each value of the MCV list, and adds up the frequencies of the MCVs for which the condition is true. This gives an exact estimate of the selectivity within the portion of the table that is MCVs. The histogram is then used in the same way as above to estimate the selectivity in the portion of the table that is not MCVs, and then the two numbers are combined to estimate the overall selectivity. For example, consider

\[
\text{EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE stringu1 < 'IAAAAA';}
\]

```
 QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------
 Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..483.00 rows=3077 width=244)  
   Filter: (stringu1 < 'IAAAAA'::name)
```

We already saw the MCV information for \texttt{stringu1}, and here is its histogram:

```
SELECT histogram_bounds FROM pg_stats
WHERE tablename='tenk1' AND attname='stringu1';
```

```
histogram_bounds
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
{AAAAAA, CQAAAA, FRAAAA, IBAAAA, KRAAAA, NFAAAA, PSAAAA, SGAAAA, VAAAAA, XLAAAA, ZZAAAA}
```

Checking the MCV list, we find that the condition \texttt{stringu1 < 'IAAAAA'} is satisfied by the first six entries and not the last four, so the selectivity within the MCV part of the population is

\[
selectivity = \text{sum(relevant mvfs)} \\
= 0.00333333 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 \\
= 0.01833333
\]

Summing all the MCFs also tells us that the total fraction of the population represented by MCVs is 0.03033333, and therefore the fraction represented by the histogram is 0.96966667 (again, there are no nulls, else we'd have to exclude them here). We can see that the value \texttt{IAAAAA} falls nearly at the end of the third histogram bucket. Using some rather cheesy assumptions about the frequency of different characters, the planner arrivers at the estimate 0.298387 for the portion of the histogram population that is less than \texttt{IAAAAA}. We then combine the estimates for the MCV and non-MCV populations:

\[
selectivity = \text{mcv\_selectivity + histogram\_selectivity \times histogram\_fraction} \\
= 0.01833333 + 0.298387 \times 0.96966667 \\
= 0.307669
\]

\[
\text{rows} = 10000 \times 0.307669 \\
= 3077 \text{ (rounding off)}
\]
How the Planner Uses Statistics

In this particular example, the correction from the MCV list is fairly small, because the column distribution is actually quite flat (the statistics showing these particular values as being more common than others are mostly due to sampling error). In a more typical case where some values are significantly more common than others, this complicated process gives a useful improvement in accuracy because the selectivity for the most common values is found exactly.

Now let’s consider a case with more than one condition in the WHERE clause:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 1000 AND stringu1 = 'xxx';
```

```
QUERY PLAN

Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 (cost=23.80..396.91 rows=1 width=244)
  Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 1000)
  Filter: (stringu1 = 'xxx':name)
     -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1 (cost=0.00..23.80 rows=1007 width=0)
       Index Cond: (unique1 < 1000)
```

The planner assumes that the two conditions are independent, so that the individual selectivities of the clauses can be multiplied together:

```
selectivity = selectivity(unique1 < 1000) * selectivity(stringu1 = 'xxx')
  = 0.100697 * 0.0014559
  = 0.0001466
```

```
rows = 10000 * 0.0001466
      = 1 (rounding off)
```

Notice that the number of rows estimated to be returned from the bitmap index scan reflects only the condition used with the index; this is important since it affects the cost estimate for the subsequent heap fetches.

Finally we will examine a query that involves a join:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 50 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;
```

```
QUERY PLAN

Nested Loop (cost=4.64..456.23 rows=50 width=488)
  -> Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1 (cost=4.64..142.17 rows=50 width=244)
      Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 50)
      -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1 (cost=0.00..4.63 rows=50 width=0)
          Index Cond: (unique1 < 50)
          -> Index Scan using tenk2_unique2 on tenk2 t2 (cost=0.00..6.27 rows=1 width=244)
              Index Cond: (unique2 = t1.unique2)
```

The restriction on `tenk1, unique1 < 50`, is evaluated before the nested-loop join. This is handled analogously to the previous range example. This time the value 50 falls into the first bucket of the `unique1` histogram:

```
selectivity = (0 + (50 - bucket[1].min)/(bucket[1].max - bucket[1].min))/num_buckets
  = (0 + (50 - 0)/(993 - 0))/10
  = 0.005035
```

```
rows = 10000 * 0.005035
      = 50 (rounding off)
```

The restriction for the join is `t2.unique2 = t1.unique2`. The operator is just our familiar =, however the selectivity function is obtained from the oprjoin column of `pg_operator`, and is `eqjoinsel`. `eqjoinsel` looks up the statistical information for both `tenk2` and `tenk1`:

```
SELECT tablename, null_frac,n_distinct, most_common_vals FROM pg_stats
```
How the Planner Uses Statistics

WHERE tablename IN ('tenk1', 'tenk2') AND attname='unique2';

tablename | null_frac | n_distinct | most_common_vals
-----------+-----------+------------+------------------
tenk1     |         0 |         -1 |                  |
tenk2     |         0 |         -1 |                  |

In this case there is no MCV information for `unique2` because all the values appear to be unique, so we use an algorithm that relies only on the number of distinct values for both relations together with their null fractions:

\[
\text{selectivity} = (1 - \text{null_frac1}) \times (1 - \text{null_frac2}) \times \min(1/\text{num_distinct1}, 1/\text{num_distinct2})
\]

\[
= (1 - 0) \times (1 - 0) / \max(10000, 10000)
\]

\[
= 0.0001
\]

This is, subtract the null fraction from one for each of the relations, and divide by the maximum of the numbers of distinct values. The number of rows that the join is likely to emit is calculated as the cardinality of the Cartesian product of the two inputs, multiplied by the selectivity:

\[
\text{rows} = (\text{outer_cardinality} \times \text{inner_cardinality}) \times \text{selectivity}
\]

\[
= (50 \times 10000) \times 0.0001
\]

\[
= 50
\]

Had there been MCV lists for the two columns, `egjoinsel` would have used direct comparison of the MCV lists to determine the join selectivity within the part of the column populations represented by the MCVs. The estimate for the remainder of the populations follows the same approach shown here.

Notice that we showed `inner_cardinality` as 10000, that is, the unmodified size of `tenk2`. It might appear from inspection of the EXPLAIN output that the estimate of join rows comes from 50 * 1, that is, the number of outer rows times the estimated number of rows obtained by each inner index scan on `tenk2`. But this is not the case; the join relation size is estimated before any particular join plan has been considered. If everything is working well then the two ways of estimating the join size will produce about the same answer, but due to round-off error and other factors they sometimes diverge significantly.

67.2. Multivariate Statistics Examples

67.2.1. Functional Dependencies

Multivariate correlation can be demonstrated with a very simple data set — a table with two columns, both containing the same values:

```sql
CREATE TABLE t (a INT, b INT);
INSERT INTO t SELECT i % 100, i % 100 FROM generate_series(1, 10000) s(i);
ANALYZE t;
```

As explained in Section 14.2, the planner can determine cardinality of `t` using the number of pages and rows obtained from `pg_class`:

```sql
SELECT relpages, reltuples FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 't';
```

```
relpages | reltuples
----------+-----------
 45 |     10000
```

The data distribution is very simple; there are only 100 distinct values in each column, uniformly distributed.

The following example shows the result of estimating a `WHERE` condition on the `a` column:

```sql
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1;
```

```sql
QUERY PLAN
```
How the Planner Uses Statistics

Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..170.00 rows=100 width=8) (actual rows=100 loops=1)
  Filter: (a = 1)
  Rows Removed by Filter: 9900

The planner examines the condition and determines the selectivity of this clause to be 1%. By comparing this estimate and the actual number of rows, we see that the estimate is very accurate (in fact exact, as the table is very small). Changing the WHERE condition to use the b column, an identical plan is generated. But observe what happens if we apply the same condition on both columns, combining them with AND:

EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1 AND b = 1;
QUERY PLAN

Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=1 width=8) (actual rows=100 loops=1)
  Filter: ((a = 1) AND (b = 1))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 9900

The planner estimates the selectivity for each condition individually, arriving at the same 1% estimates as above. Then it assumes that the conditions are independent, and so it multiplies their selectivities, producing a final selectivity estimate of just 0.01%. This is a significant underestimate, as the actual number of rows matching the conditions (100) is two orders of magnitude higher.

This problem can be fixed by creating a statistics object that directs ANALYZE to calculate functional-dependency multivariate statistics on the two columns:

CREATE STATISTICS stts (dependencies) ON a, b FROM t;
ANALYZE t;
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1 AND b = 1;
QUERY PLAN

Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=1 width=8) (actual rows=100 loops=1)
  Filter: ((a = 1) AND (b = 1))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 9900

67.2.2. Multivariate N-Distinct Counts

A similar problem occurs with estimation of the cardinality of sets of multiple columns, such as the number of groups that would be generated by a GROUP BY clause. When GROUP BY lists a single column, the n-distinct estimate (which is visible as the estimated number of rows returned by the HashAggregate node) is very accurate:

EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t GROUP BY a;
QUERY PLAN

HashAggregate  (cost=195.00..196.00 rows=100 width=12) (actual rows=100 loops=1)
  Group Key: a
    ->  Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..145.00 rows=10000 width=4) (actual rows=10000 loops=1)

But without multivariate statistics, the estimate for the number of groups in a query with two columns in GROUP BY, as in the following example, is off by an order of magnitude:

EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t GROUP BY a, b;
QUERY PLAN

HashAggregate  (cost=220.00..230.00 rows=1000 width=16) (actual rows=100 loops=1)
  Group Key: a, b
    ->  Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..145.00 rows=10000 width=8) (actual rows=10000 loops=1)
By redefining the statistics object to include n-distinct counts for the two columns, the estimate is much improved:

DROP STATISTICS stts;
CREATE STATISTICS stts (dependencies, ndistinct) ON a, b FROM t;
ANALYZE t;
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t GROUP BY a, b;

---

67.2.3. MCV Lists

As explained in Section 67.2.1, functional dependencies are very cheap and efficient type of statistics, but their main limitation is their global nature (only tracking dependencies at the column level, not between individual column values).

This section introduces multivariate variant of MCV (most-common values) lists, a straightforward extension of the per-column statistics described in Section 67.1. These statistics address the limitation by storing individual values, but it is naturally more expensive, both in terms of building the statistics in `ANALYZE`, storage and planning time.

Let's look at the query from Section 67.2.1 again, but this time with a MCV list created on the same set of columns (be sure to drop the functional dependencies, to make sure the planner uses the newly created statistics).

DROP STATISTICS stts;
CREATE STATISTICS stts2 (mcv) ON a, b FROM t;
ANALYZE t;
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1 AND b = 1;

---

The estimate is as accurate as with the functional dependencies, mostly thanks to the table being fairly small and having a simple distribution with a low number of distinct values. Before looking at the second query, which was not handled by functional dependencies particularly well, let's inspect the MCV list a bit.

Inspecting the MCV list is possible using `pg_mcv_list_items` set-returning function.

```sql
SELECT m.* FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid = stxoid),
pg_mcv_list_items(stxdmcv) m WHERE stxname = 'stts2';
```

```plaintext
| index | values  | nulls | frequency | base_frequency |
|-------+---------+-------+-----------+----------------|
| 0     | {0, 0}  | {f,f} | 0.01      | 0.0001         |
| 1     | {1, 1}  | {f,f} | 0.01      | 0.0001         |
| ...   |         |       |           |                |
| 49    | {49, 49}| {f,f} | 0.01      | 0.0001         |
| 50    | {50, 50}| {f,f} | 0.01      | 0.0001         |
| ...   |         |       |           |                |
| 97    | {97, 97}| {f,f} | 0.01      | 0.0001         |
| 98    | {98, 98}| {f,f} | 0.01      | 0.0001         |
| 99    | {99, 99}| {f,f} | 0.01      | 0.0001         |
```

---

2139
How the Planner Uses Statistics

This confirms there are 100 distinct combinations in the two columns, and all of them are about equally likely (1% frequency for each one). The base frequency is the frequency computed from per-column statistics, as if there were no multi-column statistics. Had there been any null values in either of the columns, this would be identified in the `nulls` column.

When estimating the selectivity, the planner applies all the conditions on items in the MCV list, and then sums the frequencies of the matching ones.

Compared to functional dependencies, MCV lists have two major advantages. Firstly, the list stores actual values, making it possible to decide which combinations are compatible.

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1 AND b = 10;
```

```
QUERY PLAN

Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=1 width=8) (actual rows=0 loops=1)
  Filter: ((a = 1) AND (b = 10))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 10000
```

Secondly, MCV lists handle a wider range of clause types, not just equality clauses like functional dependencies. For example, consider the following range query for the same table:

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a <= 49 AND b > 49;
```

```
QUERY PLAN

Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=1 width=8) (actual rows=0 loops=1)
  Filter: ((a <= 49) AND (b > 49))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 10000
```

67.3. Planner Statistics and Security

Access to the table `pg_statistic` is restricted to superusers, so that ordinary users cannot learn about the contents of the tables of other users from it. Some selectivity estimation functions will use a user-provided operator (either the operator appearing in the query or a related operator) to analyze the stored statistics. For example, in order to determine whether a stored most common value is applicable, the selectivity estimator will have to run the appropriate `=` operator to compare the constant in the query to the stored value. Thus the data in `pg_statistic` is potentially passed to user-defined operators. An appropriately crafted operator can intentionally leak the passed operands (for example, by logging them or writing them to a different table), or accidentally leak them by showing their values in error messages, in either case possibly exposing data from `pg_statistic` to a user who should not be able to see it.

In order to prevent this, the following applies to all built-in selectivity estimation functions. When planning a query, in order to be able to use stored statistics, the current user must either have `SELECT` privilege on the table or the involved columns, or the operator used must be `LEAKPROOF` (more accurately, the function that the operator is based on). If not, then the selectivity estimator will behave as if no statistics are available, and the planner will proceed with default or fall-back assumptions.

If a user does not have the required privilege on the table or columns, then in many cases the query will ultimately receive a permission-denied error, in which case this mechanism is invisible in practice. But if the user is reading from a security-barrier view, then the planner might wish to check the statistics of an underlying table that is otherwise inaccessible to the user. In that case, the operator should be leak-proof or the statistics will not be used. There is no direct feedback about that, except that the plan might be suboptimal. If one suspects that this is the case, one could try running the query as a more privileged user, to see if a different plan results.

This restriction applies only to cases where the planner would need to execute a user-defined operator on one or more values from `pg_statistic`. Thus the planner is permitted to use generic statistical information, such as the fraction of null values or the number of distinct values in a column, regardless of access privileges.
Selectivity estimation functions contained in third-party extensions that potentially operate on statistics with user-defined operators should follow the same security rules.
Chapter 68. Backup Manifest Format

The backup manifest generated by pg_basebackup is primarily intended to permit the backup to be verified using pg_verifybackup. However, it is also possible for other tools to read the backup manifest file and use the information contained therein for their own purposes. To that end, this chapter describes the format of the backup manifest file.

A backup manifest is a JSON document encoded as UTF-8. (Although in general JSON documents are required to be Unicode, PostgreSQL permits the json and jsonb data types to be used with any supported server encoding. There is no similar exception for backup manifests.) The JSON document is always an object; the keys that are present in this object are described in the next section.

68.1. Backup Manifest Top-level Object

The backup manifest JSON document contains the following keys.

PostgreSQL-Backup-Manifest-Version

The associated value is always the integer 1.

Files

The associated value is always a list of objects, each describing one file that is present in the backup. No entries are present in this list for the WAL files that are needed in order to use the backup, or for the backup manifest itself. The structure of each object in the list is described in Section 68.2.

WAL-Ranges

The associated value is always a list of objects, each describing a range of WAL records that must be readable from a particular timeline in order to make use of the backup. The structure of these objects is further described in Section 68.3.

Manifest-Checksum

This key is always present on the last line of the backup manifest file. The associated value is a SHA256 checksum of all the preceding lines. We use a fixed checksum method here to make it possible for clients to do incremental parsing of the manifest. While a SHA256 checksum is significantly more expensive than a CRC32C checksum, the manifest should normally be small enough that the extra computation won’t matter very much.

68.2. Backup Manifest File Object

The object which describes a single file contains either a Path key or an Encoded-Path key. Normally, the Path key will be present. The associated string value is the path of the file relative to the root of the backup directory. Files located in a user-defined tablespace will have paths whose first two components are pg_tblspc and the OID of the tablespace. If the path is not a string that is legal in UTF-8, or if the user requests that encoded paths be used for all files, then the Encoded-Path key will be present instead. This stores the same data, but it is encoded as a string of hexadecimal digits. Each pair of hexadecimal digits in the string represents a single octet.

The following two keys are always present:

Size

The expected size of this file, as an integer.

Last-Modified

The last modification time of the file as reported by the server at the time of the backup. Unlike the other fields stored in the backup, this field is not used by pg_verifybackup. It is included only for informational purposes.
If the backup was taken with file checksums enabled, the following keys will be present:

Checksum-Algorithm

The checksum algorithm used to compute a checksum for this file. Currently, this will be the same for every file in the backup manifest, but this may change in future releases. At present, the supported checksum algorithms are CRC32C, SHA224, SHA256, SHA384, and SHA512.

Checksum

The checksum computed for this file, stored as a series of hexadecimal characters, two for each byte of the checksum.

68.3. Backup Manifest WAL Range Object

The object which describes a WAL range always has three keys:

Timeline

The timeline for this range of WAL records, as an integer.

Start-LSN

The LSN at which replay must begin on the indicated timeline in order to make use of this backup. The LSN is stored in the format normally used by PostgreSQL; that is, it is a string consisting of two strings of hexadecimal characters, each with a length of between 1 and 8, separated by a slash.

End-LSN

The earliest LSN at which replay on the indicated timeline may end when making use of this backup. This is stored in the same format as Start-LSN.

Ordinarily, there will be only a single WAL range. However, if a backup is taken from a standby which switches timelines during the backup due to an upstream promotion, it is possible for multiple ranges to be present, each with a different timeline. There will never be multiple WAL ranges present for the same timeline.
Part VIII. Appendixes
Appendix A. Postgres Pro Error Codes

All messages emitted by the Postgres Pro server are assigned five-character error codes that follow the SQL standard's conventions for "SQLSTATE" codes. Applications that need to know which error condition has occurred should usually test the error code, rather than looking at the textual error message. The error codes are less likely to change across Postgres Pro releases, and also are not subject to change due to localization of error messages. Note that some, but not all, of the error codes produced by Postgres Pro are defined by the SQL standard; some additional error codes for conditions not defined by the standard have been invented or borrowed from other databases.

According to the standard, the first two characters of an error code denote a class of errors, while the last three characters indicate a specific condition within that class. Thus, an application that does not recognize the specific error code might still be able to infer what to do from the error class.

Table A.1 lists all the error codes defined in Postgres Pro Standard 14.1.1. (Some are not actually used at present, but are defined by the SQL standard.) The error classes are also shown. For each error class there is a "standard" error code having the last three characters 000. This code is used only for error conditions that fall within the class but do not have any more-specific code assigned.

The symbol shown in the column "Condition Name" is the condition name to use in PL/pgSQL. Condition names can be written in either upper or lower case. (Note that PL/pgSQL does not recognize warning, as opposed to error, condition names; those are classes 00, 01, and 02.)

For some types of errors, the server reports the name of a database object (a table, table column, data type, or constraint) associated with the error; for example, the name of the unique constraint that caused a unique_violation error. Such names are supplied in separate fields of the error report message so that applications need not try to extract them from the possibly-localized human-readable text of the message. As of PostgreSQL 9.3, complete coverage for this feature exists only for errors in SQLSTATE class 23 (integrity constraint violation), but this is likely to be expanded in future.

Table A.1. Postgres Pro Error Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 00 — Successful Completion</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00000</td>
<td>successful_completion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 01 — Warning</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01000</td>
<td>warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0100C</td>
<td>dynamic_result_sets_returned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01008</td>
<td>implicit_zero_bit_padding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01003</td>
<td>null_value_eliminated_in_set_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01007</td>
<td>privilege_not_granted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01006</td>
<td>privilege_not_revoked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01004</td>
<td>string_data_right_truncation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01P01</td>
<td>deprecated_feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 02 — No Data (this is also a warning class per the SQL standard)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02000</td>
<td>no_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02001</td>
<td>no_additional_dynamic_result_sets_returned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 03 — SQL Statement Not Yet Complete</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03000</td>
<td>sql_statement_not_yet_complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 08 — Connection Exception</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08000</td>
<td>connection_exception</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Postgres Pro Error Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>08003</td>
<td>connection_does_not_exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08006</td>
<td>connection_failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08001</td>
<td>sqlclient_unable_to_establish_sqlconnection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08004</td>
<td>sqlserver_rejected_establishment_of_sqlconnection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08007</td>
<td>transaction_resolution_unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08P01</td>
<td>protocolViolation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 09 — Triggered Action Exception

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>09000</td>
<td>triggered_action_exception</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 0A — Feature Not Supported

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0A000</td>
<td>feature_not_supported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 0B — Invalid Transaction Initiation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0B000</td>
<td>invalid_transaction_initiation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 0F — Locator Exception

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0F000</td>
<td>locator_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0F001</td>
<td>invalid_locator_specification</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 0L — Invalid Grantor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0L000</td>
<td>invalid_grantor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0LP01</td>
<td>invalid_grant_operation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 0P — Invalid Role Specification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0P000</td>
<td>invalid_role_specification</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 0Z — Diagnostics Exception

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0Z000</td>
<td>diagnostics_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0Z002</td>
<td>stacked_diagnostics_accessed_without_active_handler</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 20 — Case Not Found

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20000</td>
<td>case_not_found</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 21 — Cardinality Violation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21000</td>
<td>cardinality_violation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Class 22 — Data Exception

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22000</td>
<td>data_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2202E</td>
<td>array_subscript_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22021</td>
<td>character_not_in_repertoire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22008</td>
<td>datetime_field_overflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22012</td>
<td>division_by_zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22005</td>
<td>error_in_assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200B</td>
<td>escape_character_conflict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22022</td>
<td>indicator_overflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22015</td>
<td>interval_field_overflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2201E</td>
<td>invalid_argument_for_logarithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22014</td>
<td>invalid_argument_for_ntile_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Code</td>
<td>Condition Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22016</td>
<td>invalid_argument_for_nth_value_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2201F</td>
<td>invalid_argument_for_power_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2201G</td>
<td>invalid_argument_for_width_bucket_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22018</td>
<td>invalid_character_value_for_cast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22007</td>
<td>invalid_datetime_format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22019</td>
<td>invalid_escape_character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200D</td>
<td>invalid_escape_octet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22025</td>
<td>invalid_escape_sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22P06</td>
<td>nonstandard_use_of_escape_character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22010</td>
<td>invalid_indicator_parameter_value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22023</td>
<td>invalid_parameter_value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22013</td>
<td>invalid_preceding_or_following_size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2201B</td>
<td>invalid_regular_expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2201W</td>
<td>invalid_row_count_in_limit_clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2201X</td>
<td>invalid_row_count_in_result_offset_clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2202H</td>
<td>invalid_tablesample_argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2202G</td>
<td>invalid_tablesample_repeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22009</td>
<td>invalid_time_zone_displacement_value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200C</td>
<td>invalid_use_of_escape_character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200G</td>
<td>most_specific_type_mismatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22004</td>
<td>null_value_not_allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22002</td>
<td>null_value_no_indicator_parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22003</td>
<td>numeric_value_out_of_range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200H</td>
<td>sequence_generator_limit_exceeded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22026</td>
<td>string_data_length_mismatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22001</td>
<td>string_data_right_truncation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22011</td>
<td>substring_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22027</td>
<td>trim_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22024</td>
<td>unterminated_c_string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200F</td>
<td>zero_length_character_string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22P01</td>
<td>floating_point_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22P02</td>
<td>invalid_text_representation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22P03</td>
<td>invalid_binary_representation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22P04</td>
<td>bad_copy_file_format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22P05</td>
<td>untranslatable_character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200L</td>
<td>not_an_xml_document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200M</td>
<td>invalid_xml_document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200N</td>
<td>invalid_xml_content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200S</td>
<td>invalid_xml_comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Code</td>
<td>Condition Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200T</td>
<td>invalid_xml_processing_instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22030</td>
<td>duplicate_json_object_key_value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22031</td>
<td>invalid_argument_for_sql_json_datetime_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22032</td>
<td>invalid_json_text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22033</td>
<td>invalid_sql_json_subscript</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22034</td>
<td>more_than_one_sql_json_item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22035</td>
<td>no_sql_json_item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22036</td>
<td>non_unique_sql_json_item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22037</td>
<td>non_unique_keys_in_a_json_object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22038</td>
<td>singleton_sql_json_item_required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22039</td>
<td>sql_json_array_not_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2203A</td>
<td>sql_json_member_not_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2203B</td>
<td>sql_json_number_not_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2203C</td>
<td>sql_json_object_not_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2203D</td>
<td>too_many_json_array_elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2203E</td>
<td>too_many_json_object_members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2203F</td>
<td>sql_json_scalar_required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class 23 — Integrity Constraint Violation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23000</td>
<td>integrity_constraint_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23001</td>
<td>restrict_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23502</td>
<td>not_null_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23503</td>
<td>foreign_key_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23505</td>
<td>unique_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23514</td>
<td>check_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23P01</td>
<td>exclusion_violation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class 24 — Invalid Cursor State**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24000</td>
<td>invalid_cursor_state</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class 25 — Invalid Transaction State**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25000</td>
<td>invalid_transaction_state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25001</td>
<td>active_sql_transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25002</td>
<td>branch_transaction_already_active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25008</td>
<td>held_cursor_requires_same_isolation_level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25003</td>
<td>inappropriate_access_mode_for_branch_transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25004</td>
<td>inappropriate_isolation_level_for_branch_transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25005</td>
<td>no_active_sql_transaction_for_branch_transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25006</td>
<td>read_only_sql_transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25007</td>
<td>schema_and_data_statement_mixing_not_supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25P01</td>
<td>no_active_sql_transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25P02</td>
<td>in_failed_sql_transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Code</td>
<td>Condition Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25P03</td>
<td>idle_in_transaction_session_timeout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 26</td>
<td>Invalid SQL Statement Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26000</td>
<td>invalid_sql_statement_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 27</td>
<td>Triggered Data Change Violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27000</td>
<td>triggered_data_change_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 28</td>
<td>Invalid Authorization Specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28000</td>
<td>invalid_authorization_specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28P01</td>
<td>invalid_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 2B</td>
<td>Dependent Privilege Descriptors Still Exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B000</td>
<td>dependent_privilege_descriptors_still_exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2BP01</td>
<td>dependent_objects_still_exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 2D</td>
<td>Invalid Transaction Termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2D000</td>
<td>invalid_transaction_termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 2F</td>
<td>SQL Routine Exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2F000</td>
<td>sql_routine_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2F005</td>
<td>function_executed_no_return_statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2F002</td>
<td>modifying_sql_data_not_permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2F003</td>
<td>prohibited_sql_statement_attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2F004</td>
<td>reading_sql_data_not_permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 34</td>
<td>Invalid Cursor Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34000</td>
<td>invalid_cursor_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 38</td>
<td>External Routine Exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38000</td>
<td>external_routine_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3801</td>
<td>containing_sql_not_permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3802</td>
<td>modifying_sql_data_not_permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3803</td>
<td>prohibited_sql_statement_attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3804</td>
<td>reading_sql_data_not_permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 39</td>
<td>External Routine Invocation Exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39000</td>
<td>external_routine_invocation_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39001</td>
<td>invalid_sqlstate Returned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39004</td>
<td>null_value_not_allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39P01</td>
<td>trigger_protocol_violated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39P02</td>
<td>srf_protocol_violated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39P03</td>
<td>event_trigger_protocol_violated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 3B</td>
<td>Savepoint Exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B000</td>
<td>savepoint_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B001</td>
<td>invalid_savepointSpecification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 3D</td>
<td>Invalid Catalog Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D000</td>
<td>invalid_catalog_name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2149
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 3F — Invalid Schema Name</td>
<td>3F000 invalid_schema_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 40 — Transaction Rollback</td>
<td>40000 transaction_rollback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40002 transaction_integrity_constraint_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40001 serialization_failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40003 statement_completion_unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40P01 deadlock_detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 42 — Syntax Error or Access Rule Violation</td>
<td>42000 syntax_error_or_access_rule_violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42601 syntax_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42501 insufficient_privilege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42846 cannot_coerce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42803 grouping_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P20 windowing_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P19 invalid_recursion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42830 invalid_foreign_key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42602 invalid_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42622 name_too_long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42939 reserved_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42804 datatype_mismatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P18 indeterminate_datatype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P21 collation_mismatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P22 indeterminate_collation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42809 wrong_object_type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>428C9 generated_always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42703 undefined_column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42883 undefined_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P01 undefined_table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P02 undefined_parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42704 undefined_object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42701 duplicate_column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P03 duplicate_cursor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P04 duplicate_database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P23 duplicate_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P05 duplicate_prepared_statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P06 duplicate_schema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42P07 duplicate_table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42712 duplicate_alias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Code</td>
<td>Condition Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42710</td>
<td>duplicate_object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42702</td>
<td>ambiguous_column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42725</td>
<td>ambiguous_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P08</td>
<td>ambiguous_parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P09</td>
<td>ambiguous_alias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P10</td>
<td>invalid_column_reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42611</td>
<td>invalid_column_definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P11</td>
<td>invalid_cursor_definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P12</td>
<td>invalid_database_definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P13</td>
<td>invalid_function_definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P14</td>
<td>invalid_prepared_statement_definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P15</td>
<td>invalid_schema_definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P16</td>
<td>invalid_table_definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42P17</td>
<td>invalid_object_definition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class 44 — WITH CHECK OPTION Violation**

| 44000      | with_check_option_violation     |

**Class 53 — Insufficient Resources**

| 53000      | insufficient_resources          |
| 53100      | disk_full                       |
| 53200      | out_of_memory                   |
| 53300      | too_many_connections            |
| 53400      | configuration_limit_exceeded    |

**Class 54 — Program Limit Exceeded**

| 54000      | program_limit_exceeded          |
| 54001      | statement_too_complex           |
| 54011      | too_many_columns                |
| 54023      | too_many_arguments              |

**Class 55 — Object Not In Prerequisite State**

| 55000      | object_not_in_prerequisite_state|
| 55006      | object_in_use                   |
| 55P02      | cant_change_runtime_param       |
| 55P03      | lock_not_available              |
| 55P04      | unsafe_new_enum_value_usage     |

**Class 57 — Operator Intervention**

| 57000      | operator_intervention           |
| 57014      | query_canceled                  |
| 57P01      | admin_shutdown                  |
| 57P02      | crash_shutdown                  |
| 57P03      | cannot_connect_now              |

2151
Postgres Pro Error Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>57P04</td>
<td>database_dropped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57P05</td>
<td>idle_session_timeout</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class 58 — System Error (errors external to PostgreSQL itself)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>58000</td>
<td>system_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58030</td>
<td>io_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58P01</td>
<td>undefined_file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58P02</td>
<td>duplicate_file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class 72 — Snapshot Failure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>72000</td>
<td>snapshot_too_old</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class F0 — Configuration File Error**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F0000</td>
<td>config_file_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0001</td>
<td>lock_file_exists</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class HV — Foreign Data Wrapper Error (SQL/MED)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HV000</td>
<td>fdw_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV005</td>
<td>fdw_column_name_not_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV002</td>
<td>fdw_dynamic_parameter_value_needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV010</td>
<td>fdw_function_sequence_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV021</td>
<td>fdw_inconsistent_descriptor_information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV024</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_attribute_value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV007</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_column_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV008</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_column_number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV004</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_data_type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV006</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_data_type_descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV091</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_descriptor_field_identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00B</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00C</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_option_index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00D</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_option_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV090</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_string_length_or_buffer_length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00A</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_string_format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV009</td>
<td>fdw_invalid_use_of_null_pointer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV014</td>
<td>fdw_too_many_handles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV001</td>
<td>fdw_out_of_memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00P</td>
<td>fdw_no_schemas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00J</td>
<td>fdw_option_name_not_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00K</td>
<td>fdw_reply_handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00Q</td>
<td>fdw_schema_not_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00R</td>
<td>fdw_table_not_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00L</td>
<td>fdw_unable_to_create_execution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV00M</td>
<td>fdw_unable_to_create_reply</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2152
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HV00N</td>
<td>fdw_unable_to_establish_connection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class P0 — PL/pgSQL Error**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P0000</td>
<td>plpgsql_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0001</td>
<td>raise_exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0002</td>
<td>no_data_found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0003</td>
<td>too_many_rows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0004</td>
<td>assert_failure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Class XX — Internal Error**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Condition Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XX000</td>
<td>internal_error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX001</td>
<td>data_corrupted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX002</td>
<td>index_corrupted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix B. Date/Time Support

Postgres Pro uses an internal heuristic parser for all date/time input support. Dates and times are input as strings, and are broken up into distinct fields with a preliminary determination of what kind of information can be in the field. Each field is interpreted and either assigned a numeric value, ignored, or rejected. The parser contains internal lookup tables for all textual fields, including months, days of the week, and time zones.

This appendix includes information on the content of these lookup tables and describes the steps used by the parser to decode dates and times.

B.1. Date/Time Input Interpretation

Date/time input strings are decoded using the following procedure.

1. Break the input string into tokens and categorize each token as a string, time, time zone, or number:
   a. If the numeric token contains a colon (:), this is a time string. Include all subsequent digits and colons.
   b. If the numeric token contains a dash (-), slash (/), or two or more dots (.), this is a date string which might have a text month. If a date token has already been seen, it is instead interpreted as a time zone name (e.g., America/New_York).
   c. If the token is numeric only, then it is either a single field or an ISO 8601 concatenated date (e.g., 19990113 for January 13, 1999) or time (e.g., 141516 for 14:15:16).
   d. If the token starts with a plus (+) or minus (-), then it is either a numeric time zone or a special field.
2. If the token is an alphabetic string, match up with possible strings:
   a. See if the token matches any known time zone abbreviation. These abbreviations are supplied by the configuration file described in Section B.4.
   b. If not found, search an internal table to match the token as either a special string (e.g., today), day (e.g., Thursday), month (e.g., January), or noise word (e.g., at, on).
   c. If still not found, throw an error.
3. When the token is a number or number field:
   a. If there are eight or six digits, and if no other date fields have been previously read, then interpret as a “concatenated date” (e.g., 19990118 or 990118). The interpretation is YYYYMMDD or YYMMDD.
   b. If the token is three digits and a year has already been read, then interpret as day of year.
   c. If four or six digits and a year has already been read, then interpret as a time (HHMM or HHMMSS).
   d. If three or more digits and no date fields have yet been found, interpret as a year (this forces yy-mm-dd ordering of the remaining date fields).
   e. Otherwise the date field ordering is assumed to follow the DateStyle setting: mm-dd-yy, dd-mm-yy, or yy-mm-dd. Throw an error if a month or day field is found to be out of range.
4. If BC has been specified, negate the year and add one for internal storage. (There is no year zero in the Gregorian calendar, so numerically 1 BC becomes year zero.)
5. If BC was not specified, and if the year field was two digits in length, then adjust the year to four digits. If the field is less than 70, then add 2000, otherwise add 1900.
**B.2. Handling of Invalid or Ambiguous Timestamps**

Ordinarily, if a date/time string is syntactically valid but contains out-of-range field values, an error will be thrown. For example, input specifying the 31st of February will be rejected.

During a daylight-savings-time transition, it is possible for a seemingly valid timestamp string to represent a nonexistent or ambiguous timestamp. Such cases are not rejected; the ambiguity is resolved by determining which UTC offset to apply. For example, supposing that the `TimeZone` parameter is set to `America/New_York`, consider:

```sql
=> SELECT '2018-03-11 02:30'::timestamptz;
```

```
timestamptz
------------------------
2018-03-11 03:30:00-04 (1 row)
```

Because that day was a spring-forward transition date in that time zone, there was no civil time instant 2:30AM; clocks jumped forward from 2AM EST to 3AM EDT. Postgres Pro interprets the given time as if it were standard time (UTC-5), which then renders as 3:30AM EDT (UTC-4).

Conversely, consider the behavior during a fall-back transition:

```sql
=> SELECT '2018-11-04 02:30'::timestamptz;
```

```
timestamptz
------------------------
2018-11-04 02:30:00-05 (1 row)
```

On that date, there were two possible interpretations of 2:30AM; there was 2:30AM EDT, and then an hour later after the reversion to standard time, there was 2:30AM EST. Again, Postgres Pro interprets the given time as if it were standard time (UTC-5). We can force the matter by specifying daylight-savings time:

```sql
=> SELECT '2018-11-04 02:30 EDT'::timestamptz;
```

```
timestamptz
------------------------
2018-11-04 01:30:00-05 (1 row)
```

This timestamp could validly be rendered as either 2:30 UTC-4 or 1:30 UTC-5; the timestamp output code chooses the latter.

The precise rule that is applied in such cases is that an invalid timestamp that appears to fall within a jump-forward daylight savings transition is assigned the UTC offset that prevailed in the time zone just before the transition, while an ambiguous timestamp that could fall on either side of a jump-back transition is assigned the UTC offset that prevailed just after the transition. In most time zones this is equivalent to saying that “the standard-time interpretation is preferred when in doubt”.

In all cases, the UTC offset associated with a timestamp can be specified explicitly, using either a numeric UTC offset or a time zone abbreviation that corresponds to a fixed UTC offset. The rule just given applies only when it is necessary to infer a UTC offset for a time zone in which the offset varies.

**B.3. Date/Time Key Words**

Table B.1 shows the tokens that are recognized as names of months.
Table B.1. Month Names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Abbreviations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>Jan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>Feb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>Mar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>Apr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>Jun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>Jul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>Aug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>Sep, Sept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>Oct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>Nov</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>Dec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table B.2 shows the tokens that are recognized as names of days of the week.

Table B.2. Day of the Week Names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Day</th>
<th>Abbreviations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>Sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>Mon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>Tue, Tues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>Wed, Weds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>Thu, Thur, Thurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>Fri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>Sat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table B.3 shows the tokens that serve various modifier purposes.

Table B.3. Date/Time Field Modifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identifier</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AM</td>
<td>Time is before 12:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>Ignored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JULIAN, JD, J</td>
<td>Next field is Julian Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Ignored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM</td>
<td>Time is on or after 12:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Next field is time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B.4. Date/Time Configuration Files

Since timezone abbreviations are not well standardized, Postgres Pro provides a means to customize the set of abbreviations accepted by the server. The timezone_abbreviations run-time parameter determines the active set of abbreviations. While this parameter can be altered by any database user, the possible values for it are under the control of the database administrator — they are in fact names of configuration files stored in .../share/timezonesets/ of the installation directory. By adding or altering files in that directory, the administrator can set local policy for timezone abbreviations.
timezone_abbreviations can be set to any file name found in .../share/timezonesets/, if
the file's name is entirely alphabetic. (The prohibition against non-alphabetic characters in
timezone_abbreviations prevents reading files outside the intended directory, as well as reading editor
backup files and other extraneous files.)

A timezone abbreviation file can contain blank lines and comments beginning with #. Non-comment lines
must have one of these formats:

```
zone_abbreviation offset
zone_abbreviation offset D
zone_abbreviation time_zone_name
@INCLUDE file_name
@OVERRIDE
```

A zone_abbreviation is just the abbreviation being defined. An offset is an integer giving the
equivalent offset in seconds from UTC, positive being east from Greenwich and negative being west. For
example, -18000 would be five hours west of Greenwich, or North American east coast standard time. D
indicates that the zone name represents local daylight-savings time rather than standard time.

Alternatively, a time_zone_name can be given, referencing a zone name defined in the IANA timezone
database. The zone's definition is consulted to see whether the abbreviation is or has been in use in
that zone, and if so, the appropriate meaning is used — that is, the meaning that was currently in use
at the timestamp whose value is being determined, or the meaning in use immediately before that if
it wasn't current at that time, or the oldest meaning if it was used only after that time. This behavior
is essential for dealing with abbreviations whose meaning has historically varied. It is also allowed to
define an abbreviation in terms of a zone name in which that abbreviation does not appear; then using
the abbreviation is just equivalent to writing out the zone name.

**Tip**

Using a simple integer offset is preferred when defining an abbreviation whose offset from UTC
has never changed, as such abbreviations are much cheaper to process than those that require
consulting a time zone definition.

The @INCLUDE syntax allows inclusion of another file in the .../share/timezonesets/ directory.
Inclusion can be nested, to a limited depth.

The @OVERRIDE syntax indicates that subsequent entries in the file can override previous entries
(typically, entries obtained from included files). Without this, conflicting definitions of the same timezone
abbreviation are considered an error.

In an unmodified installation, the file Default contains all the non-conflicting time zone abbreviations
for most of the world. Additional files Australia and India are provided for those regions: these files
first include the Default file and then add or modify abbreviations as needed.

For reference purposes, a standard installation also contains files Africa.txt, America.txt, etc,
containing information about every time zone abbreviation known to be in use according to the
IANA timezone database. The zone name definitions found in these files can be copied and pasted
into a custom configuration file as needed. Note that these files cannot be directly referenced as
timezone_abbreviations settings, because of the dot embedded in their names.

**Note**

If an error occurs while reading the time zone abbreviation set, no new value is applied and the
old set is kept. If the error occurs while starting the database, startup fails.
Date/Time Support

Caution
Time zone abbreviations defined in the configuration file override non-timezone meanings built into Postgres Pro. For example, the Australia configuration file defines SAT (for South Australian Standard Time). When this file is active, SAT will not be recognized as an abbreviation for Saturday.

Caution
If you modify files in .../share/timezonesets/, it is up to you to make backups — a normal database dump will not include this directory.

B.5. POSIX Time Zone Specifications

Postgres Pro can accept time zone specifications that are written according to the POSIX standard’s rules for the TZ environment variable. POSIX time zone specifications are inadequate to deal with the complexity of real-world time zone history, but there are sometimes reasons to use them.

A POSIX time zone specification has the form

```
STD offset [ DST [ dstoffset ] [ , rule ] ]
```

(For readability, we show spaces between the fields, but spaces should not be used in practice.) The fields are:

- **STD** is the zone abbreviation to be used for standard time.
- **offset** is the zone's standard-time offset from UTC.
- **DST** is the zone abbreviation to be used for daylight-savings time. If this field and the following ones are omitted, the zone uses a fixed UTC offset with no daylight-savings rule.
- **dstoffset** is the daylight-savings offset from UTC. This field is typically omitted, since it defaults to one hour less than the standard-time offset, which is usually the right thing.
- **rule** defines the rule for when daylight savings is in effect, as described below.

In this syntax, a zone abbreviation can be a string of letters, such as EST, or an arbitrary string surrounded by angle brackets, such as <UTC-05>. Note that the zone abbreviations given here are only used for output, and even then only in some timestamp output formats. The zone abbreviations recognized in timestamp input are determined as explained in Section B.4.

The offset fields specify the hours, and optionally minutes and seconds, difference from UTC. They have the format `hh[:mm[:ss]]` optionally with a leading sign (+ or -). The positive sign is used for zones west of Greenwich. (Note that this is the opposite of the ISO-8601 sign convention used elsewhere in Postgres Pro.) `hh` can have one or two digits; `mm` and `ss` (if used) must have two.

The daylight-savings transition **rule** has the format

```
dstdate [ / dsttime ] , stddate [ / stdtime ]
```

(As before, spaces should not be included in practice.) The `dstdate` and `dsttime` fields define when daylight-savings time starts, while `stddate` and `stdtime` define when standard time starts. (In some cases, notably in zones south of the equator, the former might be later in the year than the latter.) The date fields have one of these formats:

- **n**

A plain integer denotes a day of the year, counting from zero to 364, or to 365 in leap years.

- **Jn**

In this form, `n` counts from 1 to 365, and February 29 is not counted even if it is present. (Thus, a transition occurring on February 29 could not be specified this way. However, days after February
have the same numbers whether it's a leap year or not, so that this form is usually more useful than
the plain-integer form for transitions on fixed dates.)

\[ M.m.n.d \]

This form specifies a transition that always happens during the same month and on the same
day of the week. \( m \) identifies the month, from 1 to 12. \( n \) specifies the \( n \)’th occurrence of the weekday
identified by \( d \). \( n \) is a number between 1 and 4, or 5 meaning the last occurrence of that weekday in
the month (which could be the fourth or the fifth). \( d \) is a number between 0 and 6, with 0 indicating
Sunday. For example, \( M3.2.0 \) means “the second Sunday in March”.

**Note**

The \( M \) format is sufficient to describe many common daylight-savings transition laws. But note that
none of these variants can deal with daylight-savings law changes, so in practice the historical
data stored for named time zones (in the IANA time zone database) is necessary to interpret past
time stamps correctly.

The time fields in a transition rule have the same format as the offset fields described previously, except
that they cannot contain signs. They define the current local time at which the change to the other time
occurs. If omitted, they default to 02:00:00.

If a daylight-savings abbreviation is given but the transition rule field is omitted, the fallback behavior
is to use the rule \( M3.2.0,M11.1.0 \), which corresponds to USA practice as of 2020 (that is, spring forward
on the second Sunday of March, fall back on the first Sunday of November, both transitions occurring
at 2AM prevailing time). Note that this rule does not give correct USA transition dates for years before
2007.

As an example, \( CET-1CEST,M3.5.0,M10.5.0/3 \) describes current (as of 2020) timekeeping practice in
Paris. This specification says that standard time has the abbreviation CET and is one hour ahead (east) of
UTC; daylight savings time has the abbreviation CEST and is implicitly two hours ahead of UTC; daylight
savings time begins on the last Sunday in March at 2AM CET and ends on the last Sunday in October
at 3AM CEST.

The four timezone names \( EST5EDT, CST6CDT, MST7MDT, \) and \( PST8PDT \) look like they are POSIX zone
specifications. However, they actually are treated as named time zones because (for historical reasons)
there are files by those names in the IANA time zone database. The practical implication of this is that
these zone names will produce valid historical USA daylight-savings transitions, even when a plain POSIX
specification would not.

One should be wary that it is easy to misspell a POSIX-style time zone specification, since there is no
check on the reasonableness of the zone abbreviation(s). For example, \( SET TIMEZONE TO FOOBAR0 \) will
work, leaving the system effectively using a rather peculiar abbreviation for UTC.

**B.6. History of Units**

The SQL standard states that “Within the definition of a ‘datetime literal’, the ‘datetime values’ are
constrained by the natural rules for dates and times according to the Gregorian calendar”. Postgres Pro
follows the SQL standard's lead by counting dates exclusively in the Gregorian calendar, even for years
before that calendar was in use. This rule is known as the *proleptic Gregorian calendar*.

The Julian calendar was introduced by Julius Caesar in 45 BC. It was in common use in the Western
world until the year 1582, when countries started changing to the Gregorian calendar. In the Julian
calendar, the tropical year is approximated as 365 1/4 days = 365.25 days. This gives an error of about
1 day in 128 years.

The accumulating calendar error prompted Pope Gregory XIII to reform the calendar in accordance with
instructions from the Council of Trent. In the Gregorian calendar, the tropical year is approximated as
365 + 97 / 400 days = 365.2425 days. Thus it takes approximately 3300 years for the tropical year to shift one day with respect to the Gregorian calendar.

The approximation 365+97/400 is achieved by having 97 leap years every 400 years, using the following rules:

Every year divisible by 4 is a leap year.
However, every year divisible by 100 is not a leap year.
However, every year divisible by 400 is a leap year after all.

So, 1700, 1800, 1900, 2100, and 2200 are not leap years. But 1600, 2000, and 2400 are leap years. By contrast, in the older Julian calendar all years divisible by 4 are leap years.

The papal bull of February 1582 decreed that 10 days should be dropped from October 1582 so that 15 October should follow immediately after 4 October. This was observed in Italy, Poland, Portugal, and Spain. Other Catholic countries followed shortly after; but Protestant countries were reluctant to change, and the Greek Orthodox countries didn't change until the start of the 20th century. The reform was observed by Great Britain and its dominions (including what is now the USA) in 1752. Thus 2 September 1752 was followed by 14 September 1752. This is why Unix systems that have the `cal` program produce the following:

```
$ cal 9 1752
  September  1752
   Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat
        1  2  3  4  5  6
    7  8  9 10 11 12 13
   14 15 16 17 18 19 20
   21 22 23 24 25 26 27
   28 29 30
```

But, of course, this calendar is only valid for Great Britain and dominions, not other places. Since it would be difficult and confusing to try to track the actual calendars that were in use in various places at various times, Postgres Pro does not try, but rather follows the Gregorian calendar rules for all dates, even though this method is not historically accurate.

Different calendars have been developed in various parts of the world, many predating the Gregorian system. For example, the beginnings of the Chinese calendar can be traced back to the 14th century BC. Legend has it that the Emperor Huangdi invented that calendar in 2637 BC. The People's Republic of China uses the Gregorian calendar for civil purposes. The Chinese calendar is used for determining festivals.

**B.7. Julian Dates**

The *Julian Date* system is a method for numbering days. It is unrelated to the Julian calendar, though it is confusingly named similarly to that calendar. The Julian Date system was invented by the French scholar Joseph Justus Scaliger (1540–1609) and probably takes its name from Scaliger's father, the Italian scholar Julius Caesar Scaliger (1484–1558).

In the Julian Date system, each day has a sequential number, starting from JD 0 (which is sometimes called the Julian Date). JD 0 corresponds to 1 January 4713 BC in the Julian calendar, or 24 November 4714 BC in the Gregorian calendar. Julian Date counting is most often used by astronomers for labeling their nightly observations, and therefore a date runs from noon UTC to the next noon UTC, rather than from midnight to midnight: JD 0 designates the 24 hours from noon UTC on 24 November 4714 BC to noon UTC on 25 November 4714 BC.

Although Postgres Pro supports Julian Date notation for input and output of dates (and also uses Julian dates for some internal datetime calculations), it does not observe the nicety of having dates run from noon to noon. Postgres Pro treats a Julian Date as running from local midnight to local midnight, the same as a normal date.

This definition does, however, provide a way to obtain the astronomical definition when you need it: do the arithmetic in time zone UTC+12. For example,
Date/Time Support

=> SELECT extract(julian from '2021-06-23 7:00:00-04':timestamptz at time zone 'UTC +12');
  extract
-----------------------------
  2459388.95833333333333333333
(1 row)
=> SELECT extract(julian from '2021-06-23 8:00:00-04':timestamptz at time zone 'UTC +12');
  extract
--------------------------------------
  2459389.00000000000000000000000000
(1 row)
=> SELECT extract(julian from date '2021-06-23');
  extract
---------
  2459389
(1 row)
Appendix C. SQL Key Words

Table C.1 lists all tokens that are key words in the SQL standard and in Postgres Pro Standard 14.1.1. Background information can be found in Section 4.1.1. (For space reasons, only the latest two versions of the SQL standard, and SQL-92 for historical comparison, are included. The differences between those and the other intermediate standard versions are small.)

SQL distinguishes between reserved and non-reserved key words. According to the standard, reserved key words are the only real key words; they are never allowed as identifiers. Non-reserved key words only have a special meaning in particular contexts and can be used as identifiers in other contexts. Most non-reserved key words are actually the names of built-in tables and functions specified by SQL. The concept of non-reserved key words essentially only exists to declare that some predefined meaning is attached to a word in some contexts.

In the Postgres Pro parser, life is a bit more complicated. There are several different classes of tokens ranging from those that can never be used as an identifier to those that have absolutely no special status in the parser, but are considered ordinary identifiers. (The latter is usually the case for functions specified by SQL.) Even reserved key words are not completely reserved in Postgres Pro, but can be used as column labels (for example, SELECT 55 AS CHECK, even though CHECK is a reserved key word).

In Table C.1 in the column for Postgres Pro we classify as “non-reserved” those key words that are explicitly known to the parser but are allowed as column or table names. Some key words that are otherwise non-reserved cannot be used as function or data type names and are marked accordingly. (Most of these words represent built-in functions or data types with special syntax. The function or type is still available but it cannot be redefined by the user.) Labeled “reserved” are those tokens that are not allowed as column or table names. Some reserved key words are allowable as names for functions or data types; this is also shown in the table. If not so marked, a reserved key word is only allowed as a column label. A blank entry in this column means that the word is treated as an ordinary identifier by PostgreSQL.

Furthermore, while most key words can be used as “bare” column labels without writing AS before them (as described in Section 7.3.2), there are a few that require a leading AS to avoid ambiguity. These are marked in the table as “requires AS”.

As a general rule, if you get spurious parser errors for commands that use any of the listed key words as an identifier, you should try quoting the identifier to see if the problem goes away.

It is important to understand before studying Table C.1 that the fact that a key word is not reserved in Postgres Pro does not mean that the feature related to the word is not implemented. Conversely, the presence of a key word does not indicate the existence of a feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Word</th>
<th>PostgreSQL</th>
<th>SQL:2016</th>
<th>SQL:2011</th>
<th>SQL-92</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABORT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABSENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABSOLUTE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCORDING</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCOUNT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACOS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2162
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Word</th>
<th>PostgreSQL</th>
<th>SQL:2016</th>
<th>SQL:2011</th>
<th>SQL-92</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMIN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFTER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGGREGATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALLOCATE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALSO</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALWAYS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANALYSE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANALYZE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPLICATION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARE</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRAY</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRAY_AGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_CARDINALITY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASENSITIVE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASIN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSERTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSIGNMENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASYMMETRIC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATAN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATOMIC</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTACH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTRIBUTE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATOM</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTHORIZATION</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVG</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACKWARD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASE64</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEFORE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEGIN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEGIN_FRAME</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2163
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Word</th>
<th>PostgreSQL</th>
<th>SQL:2016</th>
<th>SQL:2011</th>
<th>SQL-92</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BEGIN_PARTITION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BERNOULLI</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BETWEEN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIGINT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BINARY</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIT_LENGTH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOB</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCKED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOTH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BREADTH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CACHE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALLED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARDINALITY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASCADE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASCADED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAST</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATALOG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATALOG_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEIL</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEILING</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAIN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAINING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAR</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type), requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHARACTER</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type), requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SQL Key Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Word</th>
<th>PostgreSQL</th>
<th>SQL:2016</th>
<th>SQL:2011</th>
<th>SQL-92</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHARACTERISTICS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHARACTERS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHARACTER_LENGTH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHARACTER_SET_CATALOG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHARACTER_SET_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHARACTER_SET_SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAR_LENGTH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHECK</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHECKPOINT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLASSIFIER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLASS_ORIGIN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLOB</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLOSE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLUSTER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COALESCE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COBOL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLATE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLATION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLATION_CATALOG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLATION_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLATION_SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLECT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMNS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND_FUNCTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMAND_FUNCTION_CODE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMENTS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMIT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMITTED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPRESSION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSEQUENTIAL</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONDITION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONDITIONAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONDITION_NUMBER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONFIGURATION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONFLICT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONNECT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONNECTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONNECTION_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSTRAINT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSTRAINTS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSTRAINT_CATALOG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSTRAINT_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSTRAINT_SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSTRUCTOR</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTINUE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTROL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONVERSION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONVERT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORR</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORRESPONDING</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COSH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COST</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COUNT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COVAR_POP</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COVAR_SAMP</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE</td>
<td>reserved, requires as</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CROSS</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSV</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUBE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUME_DIST</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_CATALOG</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_DATE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_DEFAULT_</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSFORM_GROUP</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_PATH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_ROLE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_ROW</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_SCHEMA</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_TIME</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_TIMESTAMP</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_TRANSFORM_GROUP_FOR_TYPE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURRENT_USER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURSOR</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURSOR_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATABASE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATALINK</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATETIME_INTERVAL_CODE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATETIME_INTERVAL_PRECISION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAY</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEALLOCATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECFLOAT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECIMAL</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULTS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFERRABLE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFERRED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFINE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFINED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFINER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEGREE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELIMITER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELIMITERS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DENSE_RANK</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPENDS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPTH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEREF</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DERIVED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESCRIBE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETACH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETERMINISTIC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIAGNOSTICS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DICTIONARY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISCARD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISCONNECT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISPATCH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISTINCT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLNEWCOPY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLPREVIOUSCOPY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLURLCOMPLETE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLURLCOMPLETEONLY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLURLCOMPLETEWRITE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLURLPATH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLURLPATHONLY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLURLPATHWRITE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLURLScheme</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLURLSERVER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLVALUE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOCUMENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOUBLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYNAMIC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYNAMIC_FUNCTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYNAMIC_FUNCTION_CODE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EACH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELEMENT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELSE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMPTY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENCODING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENCRYPTED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END-EXEC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END_FRAME</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END_PARTITION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENFORCED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENUM</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EQUALS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERROR</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESCAPE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVERY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCEPT</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCEPTION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCLUDE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCLUDING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCLUSIVE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXEC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXISTS</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXPLAIN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXPRESSION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTENSION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTERNAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTRACT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAILED_AUTH_KEEP_TIME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAMILY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FETCH</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILTER</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FINAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FINALIZE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FINISH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIRST</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIRST_VALUE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLAG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOAT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOOR</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOLLOWING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOR</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORCE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOREIGN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORMAT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORTRAN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORWARD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOUND</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRAME_ROW</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREEZE</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FROM</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FULFILL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FULL</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTIONS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUSION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENERAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENERATED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GET</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLOBAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GO</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOTO</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRANT</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRANTED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREATEST</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2170
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Word</th>
<th>PostgreSQL</th>
<th>SQL:2016</th>
<th>SQL:2011</th>
<th>SQL-92</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GROUP</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROUPING</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROUPS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HANDLER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAVING</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEADER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEX</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIERARCHY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOLD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOUR</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDENTITY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGNORE</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ILIKE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMMEDIATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMMEDIATELY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMMUTABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPLEMENTATION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPLICIT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPORT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCLUDE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCLUDING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCREMENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEXES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDICATOR</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INHERIT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INHERITS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INITIAL</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INITIALLY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INLINE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INNER</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INOUT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INPUT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSENSITIVE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSERT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTANCE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTANTIABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTEAD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGER</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGRITY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERSECT</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERSECTION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERVAL</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTO</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INVOKE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISNULL</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type), requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISOLATION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOIN</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_ARRAY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_ARRAYAGG</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_EXISTS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_OBJECT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_OBJECTAGG</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_QUERY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_TABLE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_TABLE PRIMITIVE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON_VALUE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEEP</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYS</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEY_MEMBER</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEY_TYPE</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LABEL</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAG</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LANGUAGE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LARGE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST_VALUE</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATERAL</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEAD</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEADING</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEAKPROOF</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEAST</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>(cannot be function or type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEFT</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LENGTH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIBRARY</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIKE</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIKE_REGEX</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIMIT</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINK</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LISTAGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LISTEN</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LN</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOAD</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCALTIME</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCALTIMESTAMP</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCATION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCATOR</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCK</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCKED</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOG</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOG10</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGGED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOWER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAPPING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATCH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATCHED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATCHES</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATCH_NUMBER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATCH_RECOGNIZE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATERIALIZED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAXVALUE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEASURES</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMBER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MERGE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESSAGE_LENGTH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESSAGE_OCTET_LENGTH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESSAGE_TEXT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>METHOD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINUTE</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINVALUE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODIFIES</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODULE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONTH</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MORE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULTISET</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUMPS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAMES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAMESPACE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NATIONAL</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NATURAL</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCHAR</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCLOB</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NESTED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NESTING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEW</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFC</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFKC</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFKD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMALIZE</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMALIZED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTHING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTIFY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTNULL</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type), requires AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOWAIT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTH_VALUE</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTILE</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULLABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULLIF</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULLS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMBER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMERIC</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCCURRENCES_REGEX</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCTETS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCTET_LENGTH</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OF</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFFSET</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OIDS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIT</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONLY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPEN</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATOR</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTIONS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORDER</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORDERING</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORDINALITY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHERS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT</td>
<td>non-reserved ( cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUTER</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUTPUT</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVER</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVERFLOW</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVERLAPS</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type), requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVERLAY</td>
<td>non-reserved ( cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVERRIDING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OWNED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OWNER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAD</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARALLEL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER_MODE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER_ORDINAL_POSITION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER_SPECIFIC_CATALOG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER_SPECIFIC_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAMETER_SPECIFIC_SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARSER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARTIAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARTITION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASCAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSTHROUGH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWORD</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWORD_MIN_LEN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWORD_MIN_UNIQUE_CHARS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWORD_REQUIRE_COMPLEX</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATTERN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERCENT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERCENTILE_CONT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERCENTILE_DISC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERCENT_RANK</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERIOD</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERMISSION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERMUTE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLACING</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLAN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLANS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLI</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POLICY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PORTION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSITION</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSITION_REGEX</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POWER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRECEDES</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRECEDING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRECISION</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type), requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREPARE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESERVED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRIMARY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRIOR</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRIVATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRIVILEGES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROCEDURAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROCEDURE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROCEDURES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROFILE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRAM</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRUNE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTF</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUBLIC</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUBLICATION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUOTE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUOTES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RANGE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RANK</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>READ</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>READS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAL</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REASSIGN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECHECK</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECOVERY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECURSIVE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFERENCES</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# SQL Key Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Word</th>
<th>PostgreSQL</th>
<th>SQL:2016</th>
<th>SQL:2011</th>
<th>SQL-92</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REFERENCING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFRESH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGR_AVGX</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGR_AVGY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGR_COUNT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGR_INTERCEPT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGR_R2</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGR_SLOPE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGR_SXX</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGR_SXY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REINDEX</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RELATIVE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RELEASE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RENAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPEATABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPLACE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPLICA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REQUIRING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESET</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESPECT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTART</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTORE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTRICT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESULT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURNED_CARDINALITY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURNED_LENGTH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURNED_SQLSTATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURNING</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURNS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVOKE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIGHT</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROLLBACK</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROLLUP</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROUTINE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROUTINES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROUTINE_CATALOG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROUTINE_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROUTINE_SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROW</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROWS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROW_COUNT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROW_NUMBER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RULE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUNNING</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAVEPOINT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCALAR</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCALE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHEMAS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHEMA_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCOPE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCOPE_CATALOG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCOPE_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCOPE_SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCROLL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECOND</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECURITY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEEK</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECTIVE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELF</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SENSITIVE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEQUENCE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEQUENCES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERIALIZABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVER_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SESSION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SESSION_USER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SQL Key Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Word</th>
<th>PostgreSQL</th>
<th>SQL:2016</th>
<th>SQL:2011</th>
<th>SQL-92</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SETOF</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(cannot be function or type)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHARE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHOW</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMILAR</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIZE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKIP</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMALLINT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNAPSHOT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOME</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOURCE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPACE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPECIFIC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPECIFICTYPE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPECIFIC_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLCODE</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLERROR</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLEXCEPTION</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLSTATE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLWARNING</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQRT</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STANDALONE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATEMENT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATIC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATISTICS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STDDEV_POP</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STDDEV_SAMP</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STDIN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STDOUT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STORAGE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STORED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRICT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRING</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRIP</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRUCTURE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STYLE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBCLASS_ORIGIN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBMULTISET</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSCRIPTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSET</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSTRING</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSTRING_REGEX</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUCCEEDS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUM</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPPORT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYMMETRIC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSID</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSTEM</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSTEM_TIME</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSTEM_USER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLESAMPLE</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLESPACE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLE_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANH</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEMP</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEMPLATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEMPORARY</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEXT</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THEN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THROUGH</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMESTAMP</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMEZONE_HOUR</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMEZONE_MINUTE</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOKEN</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOP_LEVEL_COUNT</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAILING</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSACTION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSACTIONS_COMMITTED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSACTIONS_ROLLED_BACK</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSACTION_ACTIVE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSFORM</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSFORMS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSLATE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSLATE_REGEX</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSLATION</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TREAT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIGGER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIGGER_CATALOG</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIGGER_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIGGER_SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIM</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIM_ARRAY</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUNCATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUSTED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TYPE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TYPES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UESCAPE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNBOUNDED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNCOMMITTED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNCONDITIONAL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNDER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNENCrypted</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNION</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIQUE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNKNOWN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNLIMITED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNLINK</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNLISTEN</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNLOCK</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNLOGGED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNMATCHED</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNNAMED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNNEST</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNTIL</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNTYPED</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPPER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URI</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USAGE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_DEFINED_TYPE_</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATALOG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_DEFINED_TYPE_CODE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_DEFINED_TYPE_NAME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_DEFINED_TYPE_SCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_INACTIVE_TIME</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USING</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTF16</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTF32</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTF8</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VACUUM</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALID</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALIDATE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALIDATOR</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALUE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALUES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALUE_OF</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VARBINARY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VARCHAR</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VARIADIC</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VARYING</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR_POP</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR_SAMP</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERBOSE</td>
<td>reserved (can be function or type)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERSION</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERSIONING</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIEW</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIEWS</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOLATILE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHEN</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHENEVER</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHERE</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITESPACE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIDTH_BUCKET</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WINDOW</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WITH</td>
<td>reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WITHIN</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WITHOUT</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WORK</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WRAPPER</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WRITE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XML</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLAGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLATTRIBUTES</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLBINARY</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLCAST</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLCOMMENT</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLCOMMENT</td>
<td></td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLCONCAT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLDECLARATION</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Word</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>SQL:2016</td>
<td>SQL:2011</td>
<td>SQL-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLDOCUMENT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLELEMENT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLEXISTST</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLFOREST</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLITERATE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLNAMESPACE</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLPARSE</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLPI</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLQUERY</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLROOT</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLSCHEMA</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLSERIALIZE</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLTABLE</td>
<td>non-reserved (cannot be function or type)</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLTEXT</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMLVALIDATE</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YEAR</td>
<td>non-reserved, requires AS</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YES</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZONE</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved</td>
<td>non-reserved, reserved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix D. SQL Conformance

This section attempts to outline to what extent Postgres Pro conforms to the current SQL standard. The following information is not a full statement of conformance, but it presents the main topics in as much detail as is both reasonable and useful for users.

The formal name of the SQL standard is ISO/IEC 9075 “Database Language SQL”. A revised version of the standard is released from time to time; the most recent update appearing in 2016. The 2016 version is referred to as ISO/IEC 9075:2016, or simply as SQL-2016. The versions prior to that were SQL-2011, SQL-2008, SQL-2006, SQL-2003, SQL-1999, and SQL-92. Each version replaces the previous one, so claims of conformance to earlier versions have no official merit. Postgres Pro development aims for conformance with the latest official version of the standard where such conformance does not contradict traditional features or common sense. Many of the features required by the SQL standard are supported, though sometimes with slightly differing syntax or function. Further moves towards conformance can be expected over time.

SQL-92 defined three feature sets for conformance: Entry, Intermediate, and Full. Most database management systems claiming SQL standard conformance were conforming at only the Entry level, since the entire set of features in the Intermediate and Full levels was either too voluminous or in conflict with legacy behaviors.

Starting with SQL-1999, the SQL standard defines a large set of individual features rather than the ineffectively broad three levels found in SQL-92. A large subset of these features represents the “Core” features, which every conforming SQL implementation must supply. The rest of the features are purely optional.

The standard versions beginning with SQL-2003 are also split into a number of parts. Each is known by a shorthand name. Note that these parts are not consecutively numbered.

- ISO/IEC 9075-1 Framework (SQL/Framework)
- ISO/IEC 9075-2 Foundation (SQL/Foundation)
- ISO/IEC 9075-3 Call Level Interface (SQL/CLI)
- ISO/IEC 9075-4 Persistent Stored Modules (SQL/PSM)
- ISO/IEC 9075-9 Management of External Data (SQL/MED)
- ISO/IEC 9075-10 Object Language Bindings (SQL/OLB)
- ISO/IEC 9075-11 Information and Definition Schemas (SQL/Schemata)
- ISO/IEC 9075-13 Routines and Types using the Java Language (SQL/JRT)
- ISO/IEC 9075-14 XML-related specifications (SQL/XML)
- ISO/IEC 9075-15 Multi-dimensional arrays (SQL/MDA)

The Postgres Pro core covers parts 1, 2, 9, 11, and 14. Part 3 is covered by the ODBC driver, and part 13 is covered by the PL/Java plug-in, but exact conformance is currently not being verified for these components. There are currently no implementations of parts 4, 10, and 15 for Postgres Pro.

Postgres Pro supports most of the major features of SQL-2016. Out of 177 mandatory features required for full Core conformance, Postgres Pro conforms to at least 170. In addition, there is a long list of supported optional features. It might be worth noting that at the time of writing, no current version of any database management system claims full conformance to Core SQL-2016.
In the following two sections, we provide a list of those features that Postgres Pro supports, followed by a list of the features defined in SQL:2016 which are not yet supported in Postgres Pro. Both of these lists are approximate: There might be minor details that are nonconforming for a feature that is listed as supported, and large parts of an unsupported feature might in fact be implemented. The main body of the documentation always contains the most accurate information about what does and does not work.

**Note**

Feature codes containing a hyphen are subfeatures. Therefore, if a particular subfeature is not supported, the main feature is listed as unsupported even if some other subfeatures are supported.

### D.1. Supported Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identifier</th>
<th>Core?</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B012</td>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B021</td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct SQL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E011</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Numeric data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E011-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>INTEGER and SMALLINT data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E011-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, and FLOAT data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E011-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>DECIMAL and NUMERIC data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E011-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Arithmetic operators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E011-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Numeric comparison</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E011-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Implicit casting among the numeric data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Character data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CHARACTER data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CHARACTER VARYING data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Character literals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CHARACTER_LENGTH function</td>
<td>trims trailing spaces from CHARACTER values before counting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>OCTET_LENGTH function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SUBSTRING function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Character concatenation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-08</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>UPPER and LOWER functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-09</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>TRIM function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-10</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Implicit casting among the character string types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-11</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>POSITION function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E021-12</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Character comparison</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E031</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Identifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E031-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Delimited identifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E031-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Lower case identifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E031-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Trailing underscore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic query specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SELECT DISTINCT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>GROUP BY clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>GROUP BY can contain columns not in <code>&lt;select list&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Select list items can be renamed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>HAVING clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Qualified <code>*</code> in select list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051-08</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Correlation names in the FROM clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E051-09</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Rename columns in the FROM clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic predicates and search conditions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Comparison predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>BETWEEN predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>IN predicate with list of values</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>LIKE predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>LIKE predicate ESCAPE clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>NULL predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Quantified comparison predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-08</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>EXISTS predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-09</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Subqueries in comparison predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-11</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Subqueries in IN predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-12</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Subqueries in quantified comparison predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-13</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Correlated subqueries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E061-14</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Search condition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E071</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic query expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E071-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>UNION DISTINCT table operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E071-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>UNION ALL table operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E071-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>EXCEPT DISTINCT table operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E071-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Columns combined via table operators need not have exactly the same data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E071-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Table operators in subqueries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic Privileges</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SELECT privilege</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>DELETE privilege</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>INSERT privilege at the table level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>UPDATE privilege at the table level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>UPDATE privilege at the column level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>REFERENCES privilege at the table level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>REFERENCES privilege at the column level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-08</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>WITH GRANT OPTION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-09</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>USAGE privilege</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E081-10</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>EXECUTE privilege</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E091</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Set functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E091-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>AVG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E091-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>COUNT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E091-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>MAX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E091-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>MIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E091-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SUM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E091-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>ALL quantifier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E091-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>DISTINCT quantifier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E101</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic data manipulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E101-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>INSERT statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E101-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Searched UPDATE statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E101-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Searched DELETE statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E111</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Single row SELECT statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic cursor support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>DECLARE CURSOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>ORDER BY columns need not be in select list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Value expressions in ORDER BY clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>OPEN statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Positioned UPDATE statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Positioned DELETE statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-08</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CLOSE statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-10</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>FETCH statement implicit NEXT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E121-17</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>WITH HOLD cursors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E131</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Null value support (nulls in lieu of values)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic integrity constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>NOT NULL constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>UNIQUE constraints of NOT NULL columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>PRIMARY KEY constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic FOREIGN KEY constraint with the NO ACTION default for both referential delete action and referential update action</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CHECK constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Column defaults</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141-08</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>NOT NULL inferred on PRIMARY KEY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E141-10</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Names in a foreign key can be specified in any order</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E151</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Transaction support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E151-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>COMMIT statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E151-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>ROLLBACK statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E152</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic SET TRANSACTION statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E152-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SET TRANSACTION statement: ISOLATION LEVEL SERIALIZABLE clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E152-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SET TRANSACTION statement: READ ONLY and READ WRITE clauses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E153</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Updatable queries with subqueries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E161</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SQL comments using leading double minus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2190
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identifier</th>
<th>Core?</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E171</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SQLSTATE support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E182</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Host language binding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F021</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic information schema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F021-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>COLUMNS view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F021-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>TABLES view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F021-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>VIEWS view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F021-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>TABLE_CONSTRAINTS view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F021-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>REFERENTIAL_CONSTRAINTS view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F021-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CHECK_CONSTRAINTS view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F031</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic schema manipulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F031-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CREATE TABLE statement to create persistent base tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F031-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CREATE VIEW statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F031-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>GRANT statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F031-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>ALTER TABLE statement: ADD COLUMN clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F031-13</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>DROP TABLE statement: RESTRICT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F031-16</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>DROP VIEW statement: RESTRICT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F031-19</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>REVOKE statement: RESTRICT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F032</td>
<td></td>
<td>CASCADE drop behavior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F033</td>
<td></td>
<td>ALTER TABLE statement: DROP COLUMN clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F034</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended REVOKE statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F034-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>REVOKE statement performed by other than the owner of a schema object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F034-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>REVOKE statement: GRANT OPTION FOR clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F034-03</td>
<td></td>
<td>REVOKE statement to revoke a privilege that the grantee has WITH GRANT OPTION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F041</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic joined table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F041-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Inner join (but not necessarily the INNER keyword)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F041-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>INNER keyword</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F041-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>LEFT OUTER JOIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F041-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>RIGHT OUTER JOIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F041-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Outer joins can be nested</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F041-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>The inner table in a left or right outer join can also be used in an inner join</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F041-08</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>All comparison operators are supported (rather than just =)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic date and time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>DATE data type (including support of DATE literal)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>TIME data type (including support of TIME literal) with fractional seconds precision of at least 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>TIMESTAMP data type (including support of TIMESTAMP literal) with fractional seconds precision of at least 0 and 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Comparison predicate on DATE, TIME, and TIMESTAMP data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Explicit CAST between datetime types and character string types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CURRENT_DATE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>LOCALTIME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F051-08</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>LOCALTIMESTAMP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F052</td>
<td></td>
<td>Intervals and datetime arithmetic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F053</td>
<td></td>
<td>OVERLAPS predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F081</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>UNION and EXCEPT in views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F111</td>
<td></td>
<td>Isolation levels other than SERIALIZABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F111-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>READ UNCOMMITTED isolation level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F111-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>READ COMMITTED isolation level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F111-03</td>
<td></td>
<td>REPEATABLE READ isolation level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F131</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Grouped operations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F131-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>WHERE, GROUP BY, and HAVING clauses supported in queries with grouped views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F131-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Multiple tables supported in queries with grouped views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F131-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Set functions supported in queries with grouped views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F131-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Subqueries with GROUP BY and HAVING clauses and grouped views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F131-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Single row SELECT with GROUP BY and HAVING clauses and grouped views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F171</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple schemas per user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F181</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Multiple module support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F191</td>
<td></td>
<td>Referential delete actions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F200</td>
<td></td>
<td>TRUNCATE TABLE statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F201</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CAST function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F202</td>
<td></td>
<td>TRUNCATE TABLE: identity column restart option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F221</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Explicit defaults</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F222</td>
<td></td>
<td>INSERT statement: DEFAULT VALUES clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F231</td>
<td></td>
<td>Privilege tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F231-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>TABLE_PRIVILEGES view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F231-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>COLUMN_PRIVILEGES view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F231-03</td>
<td></td>
<td>USAGE_PRIVILEGES view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F251</td>
<td></td>
<td>Domain support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F261</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CASE expression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F261-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Simple CASE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F261-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Searched CASE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F261-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>NULLIF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F261-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>COALESCE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F262</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended CASE expression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F271</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compound character literals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F281</td>
<td></td>
<td>LIKE enhancements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F302</td>
<td></td>
<td>INTERSECT table operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F302-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>INTERSECT DISTINCT table operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F302-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>INTERSECT ALL table operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F304</td>
<td></td>
<td>EXCEPT ALL table operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F311</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Schema definition statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F311-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CREATE SCHEMA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F311-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CREATE TABLE for persistent base tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F311-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CREATE VIEW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F311-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CREATE VIEW: WITH CHECK OPTION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F311-05</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>GRANT statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F321</td>
<td></td>
<td>User authorization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F341</td>
<td></td>
<td>Usage tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F361</td>
<td></td>
<td>Subprogram support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F381</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended schema manipulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F381-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>ALTER TABLE statement: ALTER COLUMN clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F381-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>ALTER TABLE statement: ADD CONSTRAINT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F381-03</td>
<td></td>
<td>ALTER TABLE statement: DROP CONSTRAINT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F382</td>
<td></td>
<td>Alter column data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F383</td>
<td></td>
<td>Set column not null clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F384</td>
<td></td>
<td>Drop identity property clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F385</td>
<td></td>
<td>Drop column generation expression clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F386</td>
<td></td>
<td>Set identity column generation clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F391</td>
<td></td>
<td>Long identifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F392</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unicode escapes in identifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F393</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unicode escapes in literals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F394</td>
<td></td>
<td>Optional normal form specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F401</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended joined table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F401-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>NATURAL JOIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F401-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>FULL OUTER JOIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F401-04</td>
<td></td>
<td>CROSS JOIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F402</td>
<td></td>
<td>Named column joins for LOBs, arrays, and multisets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F404</td>
<td></td>
<td>Range variable for common column names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F411</td>
<td></td>
<td>Time zone specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F421</td>
<td></td>
<td>National character</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F431</td>
<td></td>
<td>Read-only scrollable cursors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F431-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>FETCH with explicit NEXT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F431-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>FETCH FIRST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F431-03</td>
<td></td>
<td>FETCH LAST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F431-04</td>
<td></td>
<td>FETCH PRIOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F431-05</td>
<td></td>
<td>FETCH ABSOLUTE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F431-06</td>
<td></td>
<td>FETCH RELATIVE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F441</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended set function support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F442</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mixed column references in set functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F471</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Scalar subquery values</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F481</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Expanded NULL predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F491</td>
<td></td>
<td>Constraint management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F501</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Features and conformance views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F501-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SQL_FEATURES view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F501-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>SQL_SIZING view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F502</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced documentation tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F531</td>
<td></td>
<td>Temporary tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F555</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced seconds precision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F561</td>
<td></td>
<td>Full value expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F571</td>
<td></td>
<td>Truth value tests</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F591</td>
<td></td>
<td>Derived tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F611</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicator data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F641</td>
<td></td>
<td>Row and table constructors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F651</td>
<td></td>
<td>Catalog name qualifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F661</td>
<td></td>
<td>Simple tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F672</td>
<td></td>
<td>Retrospective check constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F690</td>
<td></td>
<td>Collation support</td>
<td>but no character set support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F692</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended collation support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F701</td>
<td></td>
<td>Referential update actions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F711</td>
<td></td>
<td>ALTER domain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F731</td>
<td></td>
<td>INSERT column privileges</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F751</td>
<td></td>
<td>View CHECK enhancements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F761</td>
<td></td>
<td>Session management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F762</td>
<td></td>
<td>CURRENT_CATALOG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F763</td>
<td></td>
<td>CURRENT_SCHEMA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F771</td>
<td></td>
<td>Connection management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F781</td>
<td></td>
<td>Self-referencing operations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F791</td>
<td></td>
<td>Insensitive cursors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F801</td>
<td></td>
<td>Full set function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F850</td>
<td></td>
<td>Top-level <code>&lt;order by clause&gt; in &lt;query expression&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F851</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;order by clause&gt; in subqueries</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F852</td>
<td></td>
<td>Top-level <code>&lt;order by clause&gt; in views</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F855</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nested <code>&lt;order by clause&gt; in &lt;query expression&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F856</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nested <code>&lt;fetch first clause&gt; in &lt;query expression&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F857</td>
<td></td>
<td>Top-level <code>&lt;fetch first clause&gt;</code> in <code>&lt;query expression&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F858</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;fetch first clause&gt;</code> in subqueries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F859</td>
<td></td>
<td>Top-level <code>&lt;fetch first clause&gt;</code> in views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F860</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;fetch first row count&gt;</code> in <code>&lt;fetch first clause&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F861</td>
<td></td>
<td>Top-level <code>&lt;result offset clause&gt;</code> in <code>&lt;query expression&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F862</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;result offset clause&gt;</code> in subqueries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F863</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nested <code>&lt;result offset clause&gt;</code> in <code>&lt;query expression&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F864</td>
<td></td>
<td>Top-level <code>&lt;result offset clause&gt;</code> in views</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F865</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;offset row count&gt;</code> in <code>&lt;result offset clause&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F867</td>
<td></td>
<td>FETCH FIRST clause: WITH TIES option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S071</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL paths in function and type name resolution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S092</td>
<td></td>
<td>Arrays of user-defined types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S095</td>
<td></td>
<td>Array constructors by query</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S096</td>
<td></td>
<td>Optional array bounds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S098</td>
<td></td>
<td>ARRAY_AGG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S111</td>
<td></td>
<td>ONLY in query expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S201</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL-invoked routines on arrays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S201-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>Array parameters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S201-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>Array as result type of functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S211</td>
<td></td>
<td>User-defined cast functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S301</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced UNNEST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S404</td>
<td></td>
<td>TRIM_ARRAY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T031</td>
<td></td>
<td>BOOLEAN data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T071</td>
<td></td>
<td>BIGINT data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T121</td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH (excluding RECURSIVE) in query expression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T122</td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH (excluding RECURSIVE) in subquery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T131</td>
<td></td>
<td>Recursive query</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T132</td>
<td></td>
<td>Recursive query in subquery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T133</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced cycle mark values</td>
<td>SQL:202x draft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T141</td>
<td></td>
<td>SIMILAR predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T151</td>
<td></td>
<td>DISTINCT predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T152</td>
<td></td>
<td>DISTINCT predicate with negation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T171</td>
<td></td>
<td>LIKE clause in table definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T172</td>
<td></td>
<td>AS subquery clause in table definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T173</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended LIKE clause in table definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T174</td>
<td></td>
<td>Identity columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T177</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sequence generator support: simple restart option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T178</td>
<td></td>
<td>Identity columns: simple restart option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T191</td>
<td></td>
<td>Referential action RESTRICT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T201</td>
<td></td>
<td>Comparable data types for referential constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triggers activated on UPDATE, INSERT, or DELETE of one base table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>BEFORE triggers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211-03</td>
<td></td>
<td>AFTER triggers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211-04</td>
<td></td>
<td>FOR EACH ROW triggers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211-05</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ability to specify a search condition that must be true before the trigger is invoked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211-07</td>
<td></td>
<td>TRIGGER privilege</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T212</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced trigger capability</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T213</td>
<td></td>
<td>INSTEAD OF triggers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T241</td>
<td></td>
<td>START TRANSACTION statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T261</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chained transactions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T271</td>
<td></td>
<td>Savepoints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T281</td>
<td></td>
<td>SELECT privilege with column granularity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T285</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced derived column names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T312</td>
<td></td>
<td>OVERLAY function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T321-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>User-defined functions with no overloading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T321-02</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>User-defined stored procedures with no overloading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T321-03</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Function invocation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T321-04</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>CALL statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T321-06</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>ROUTINES view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T321-07</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>PARAMETERS view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T323</td>
<td></td>
<td>Explicit security for external routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T325</td>
<td></td>
<td>Qualified SQL parameter references</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T331</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic roles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T332</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended roles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T341</td>
<td></td>
<td>Overloading of SQL-invoked functions and procedures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T351</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bracketed SQL comments /<em>...</em>/ comments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T431</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended grouping capabilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T432</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nested and concatenated GROUPING SETS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T433</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiargument GROUPING function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T434</td>
<td></td>
<td>GROUP BY DISTINCT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T441</td>
<td></td>
<td>ABS and MOD functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T461</td>
<td></td>
<td>Symmetric BETWEEN predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T491</td>
<td></td>
<td>LATERAL derived table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T501</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced EXISTS predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T521</td>
<td></td>
<td>Named arguments in CALL statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T523</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default values for INOUT parameters of SQL-invoked procedures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T524</td>
<td></td>
<td>Named arguments in routine invocations other than a CALL statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T525</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default values for parameters of SQL-invoked functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T551</td>
<td></td>
<td>Optional key words for default syntax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T581</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regular expression substring function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T591</td>
<td></td>
<td>UNIQUE constraints of possibly null columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T611</td>
<td></td>
<td>Elementary OLAP operations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T612</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced OLAP operations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T613</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sampling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T614</td>
<td></td>
<td>NTILE function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T615</td>
<td></td>
<td>LEAD and LAG functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T617</td>
<td></td>
<td>FIRST_VALUE and LAST_VALUE function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T620</td>
<td></td>
<td>WINDOW clause: GROUPS option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T621</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced numeric functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T622</td>
<td></td>
<td>Trigonometric functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T623</td>
<td></td>
<td>General logarithm functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T624</td>
<td></td>
<td>Common logarithm functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T631</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>IN predicate with one list element</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T651</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL-schema statements in SQL routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T653</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL-schema statements in external routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T655</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclically dependent routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T831</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON path language: strict mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T832</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON path language: item method</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T833</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON path language: multiple subscripts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T834</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON path language: wildcard member accessor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T835</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON path language: filter expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T836</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON path language: starts with predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T837</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON path language: regex_like predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X010</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X011</td>
<td></td>
<td>Arrays of XML type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X014</td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributes of XML type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X016</td>
<td></td>
<td>Persistent XML values</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X020</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLConcat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X031</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLElement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X032</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLForest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X034</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLAgg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X035</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLAgg: ORDER BY option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X036</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLComment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X037</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLPI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X040</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X041</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: nulls absent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X042</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: null as nil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X043</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: table as forest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X044</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: table as element</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SQL Conformance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identifier</th>
<th>Core?</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X045</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: with target namespace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X046</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: data mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X047</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: metadata mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X048</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: base64 encoding of binary strings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X049</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic table mapping: hex encoding of binary strings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X050</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X051</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: nulls absent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X052</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: null as nil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X053</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: table as forest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X054</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: table as element</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X055</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: with target namespace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X056</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: data mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X057</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: metadata mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X058</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: base64 encoding of binary strings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X059</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced table mapping: hex encoding of binary strings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X060</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLParse: character string input and CONTENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X061</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLParse: character string input and DOCUMENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X070</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: character string serialization and CONTENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X071</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: character string serialization and DOCUMENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X072</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: character string serialization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X090</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML document predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X120</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML parameters in SQL routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X121</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML parameters in external routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X221</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML passing mechanism BY VALUE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X301</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLTable: derived column list option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X302</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLTable: ordinality column option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X303</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLTable: column default option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X304</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLTable: passing a context item</td>
<td>must be XML DOCUMENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X400</td>
<td></td>
<td>Name and identifier mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X410</td>
<td></td>
<td>Alter column data type: XML type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D.2. Unsupported Features

The following features defined in SQL:2016 are not implemented in this release of Postgres Pro. In a few cases, equivalent functionality is available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identifier</th>
<th>Core?</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B011</td>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded Ada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B013</td>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded COBOL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B014</td>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded Fortran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B015</td>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded MUMPS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B016</td>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded Pascal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B017</td>
<td></td>
<td>Embedded PL/I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B031</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic dynamic SQL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B032</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended dynamic SQL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B032-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;describe input statement&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B033</td>
<td></td>
<td>Untyped SQL-invoked function arguments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B034</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic specification of cursor attributes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B035</td>
<td></td>
<td>Non-extended descriptor names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B041</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extensions to embedded SQL exception declarations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B051</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced execution rights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B111</td>
<td></td>
<td>Module language Ada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B112</td>
<td></td>
<td>Module language C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B113</td>
<td></td>
<td>Module language COBOL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B114</td>
<td></td>
<td>Module language Fortran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B115</td>
<td></td>
<td>Module language MUMPS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B116</td>
<td></td>
<td>Module language Pascal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B117</td>
<td></td>
<td>Module language PL/I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B121</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language Ada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B122</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B123</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language COBOL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B124</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language Fortran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B125</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language MUMPS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B126</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language Pascal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B127</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language PL/I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B128</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language SQL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B200</td>
<td></td>
<td>Polymorphic table functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B201</td>
<td></td>
<td>More than one PTF generic table parameter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B202</td>
<td></td>
<td>PTF Copartitioning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B203</td>
<td></td>
<td>More than one copartition specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B204</td>
<td></td>
<td>PRUNE WHEN EMPTY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B205</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pass-through columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B206</td>
<td></td>
<td>PTF descriptor parameters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B207</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cross products of partitionings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B208</td>
<td></td>
<td>PTF component procedure interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B209</td>
<td></td>
<td>PTF extended names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B211</td>
<td></td>
<td>Module language Ada: VARCHAR and NUMERIC support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B221</td>
<td></td>
<td>Routine language Ada: VARCHAR and NUMERIC support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F054</td>
<td></td>
<td>TIMESTAMP in DATE type precedence list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F121</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic diagnostics management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F121-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>GET DIAGNOSTICS statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F121-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>SET TRANSACTION statement: DIAGNOSTICS SIZE clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F122</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced diagnostics management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F123</td>
<td></td>
<td>All diagnostics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F263</td>
<td></td>
<td>Comma-separated predicates in simple CASE expression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F291</td>
<td></td>
<td>UNIQUE predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F301</td>
<td></td>
<td>CORRESPONDING in query expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F312</td>
<td></td>
<td>MERGE statement</td>
<td>consider INSERT ... ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F313</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced MERGE statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F314</td>
<td></td>
<td>MERGE statement with DELETE branch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F403</td>
<td></td>
<td>Partitioned joined tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F451</td>
<td></td>
<td>Character set definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F461</td>
<td></td>
<td>Named character sets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F492</td>
<td></td>
<td>Optional table constraint enforcement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F521</td>
<td></td>
<td>Assertions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F671</td>
<td></td>
<td>Subqueries in CHECK</td>
<td>intentionally omitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F673</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reads SQL-data routine invocations in CHECK constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F693</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL-session and client module collations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F695</td>
<td></td>
<td>Translation support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F696</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additional translation documentation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F721</td>
<td></td>
<td>Deferrable constraints</td>
<td>foreign and unique keys only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F741</td>
<td></td>
<td>Referential MATCH types</td>
<td>no partial match yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F812</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic flagging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F813</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended flagging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F821</td>
<td></td>
<td>Local table references</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F831</td>
<td></td>
<td>Full cursor update</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F831-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>Updatable scrollable cursors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F831-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>Updatable ordered cursors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F841</td>
<td></td>
<td>LIKE_REGEX predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F842</td>
<td></td>
<td>OCCURRENCES_REGEX function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F843</td>
<td></td>
<td>POSITION_REGEX function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F844</td>
<td></td>
<td>SUBSTRING_REGEX function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F845</td>
<td></td>
<td>TRANSLATE_REGEX function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F846</td>
<td></td>
<td>Octet support in regular expression operators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F847</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nonconstant regular expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F866</td>
<td></td>
<td>FETCH FIRST clause: PERCENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R010</td>
<td></td>
<td>Row pattern recognition: FROM clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R020</td>
<td></td>
<td>Row pattern recognition: WINDOW clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R030</td>
<td></td>
<td>Row pattern recognition: full aggregate support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S011</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Distinct data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S011-01</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>USER_DEFINED_TYPES view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S023</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic structured types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S024</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced structured types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S025</td>
<td></td>
<td>Final structured types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S026</td>
<td></td>
<td>Self-referencing structured types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S027</td>
<td></td>
<td>Create method by specific method name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S028</td>
<td></td>
<td>Permutable UDT options list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S041</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic reference types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S043</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced reference types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S051</td>
<td></td>
<td>Create table of type</td>
<td>partially supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S081</td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S091</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic array support</td>
<td>partially supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S091-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>Arrays of built-in data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S091-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>Arrays of distinct types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S091-03</td>
<td></td>
<td>Array expressions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S094</td>
<td></td>
<td>Arrays of reference types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S097</td>
<td></td>
<td>Array element assignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S151</td>
<td></td>
<td>Type predicate</td>
<td>see pg_typeof()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S161</td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtype treatment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S162</td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtype treatment for references</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S202</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL-invoked routines on multisets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S231</td>
<td></td>
<td>Structured type locators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S232</td>
<td></td>
<td>Array locators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S233</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiset locators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S241</td>
<td></td>
<td>Transform functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S242</td>
<td></td>
<td>Alter transform statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S251</td>
<td></td>
<td>User-defined orderings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S261</td>
<td></td>
<td>Specific type method</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S271</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic multiset support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S272</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multisets of user-defined types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S274</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multisets of reference types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S275</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced multiset support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S281</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nested collection types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S291</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unique constraint on entire row</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S401</td>
<td></td>
<td>Distinct types based on array types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S402</td>
<td></td>
<td>Distinct types based on distinct types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S403</td>
<td></td>
<td>ARRAY_MAX_CARDINALITY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T011</td>
<td></td>
<td>Timestamp in Information Schema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T021</td>
<td></td>
<td>BINARY and VARBINARY data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T022</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced support for BINARY and VARBINARY data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T023</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compound binary literal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T024</td>
<td></td>
<td>Spaces in binary literals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T041</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic LOB data type support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T041-01</td>
<td></td>
<td>BLOB data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T041-02</td>
<td></td>
<td>CLOB data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T041-03</td>
<td></td>
<td>POSITION, LENGTH, LOWER, TRIM, UPPER, and SUBSTRING functions for LOB data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T041-04</td>
<td></td>
<td>Concatenation of LOB data types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T041-05</td>
<td></td>
<td>LOB locator: non-holdable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T042</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extended LOB data type support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T043</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiplier T</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T044</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiplier P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T051</td>
<td></td>
<td>Row types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T053</td>
<td></td>
<td>Explicit aliases for all-fields reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T061</td>
<td></td>
<td>UCS support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T076</td>
<td></td>
<td>DECFLOAT data type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T101</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced nullability determination</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T111</td>
<td></td>
<td>Updatable joins, unions, and columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T175</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generated columns</td>
<td>mostly supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T176</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sequence generator support</td>
<td>supported except for NEXT VALUE FOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T180</td>
<td></td>
<td>System-versioned tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T181</td>
<td></td>
<td>Application-time period tables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic trigger capability</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211-06</td>
<td></td>
<td>Support for run-time rules for the interaction of triggers and constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T211-08</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple triggers for the same event are executed in the order in which they were created in the catalog</td>
<td>intentionally omitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T231</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sensitive cursors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T251</td>
<td></td>
<td>SET TRANSACTION statement: LOCAL option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T272</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhanced savepoint management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T301</td>
<td></td>
<td>Functional dependencies</td>
<td>partially supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T321</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Basic SQL-invoked routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T321-05</td>
<td></td>
<td>RETURN statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T322</td>
<td></td>
<td>Declared data type attributes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T324</td>
<td></td>
<td>Explicit security for SQL routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T326</td>
<td></td>
<td>Table functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T471</td>
<td></td>
<td>Result sets return value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T472</td>
<td></td>
<td>DESCRIBE CURSOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T495</td>
<td></td>
<td>Combined data change and retrieval</td>
<td>different syntax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T502</td>
<td></td>
<td>Period predicates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T511</td>
<td></td>
<td>Transaction counts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T522</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default values for IN parameters of SQL-invoked procedures</td>
<td>supported except DEFAULT key word in invocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T561</td>
<td></td>
<td>Holdable locators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T571</td>
<td></td>
<td>Array-returning external SQL-invoked functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T572</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiset-returning external SQL-invoked functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T601</td>
<td></td>
<td>Local cursor references</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T616</td>
<td></td>
<td>Null treatment option for LEAD and LAG functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T618</td>
<td></td>
<td>NTH_VALUE function</td>
<td>function exists, but some options missing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T619</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nested window functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T625</td>
<td></td>
<td>LISTAGG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T641</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple column assignment</td>
<td>only some syntax variants supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T652</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL-dynamic statements in SQL routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T654</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL-dynamic statements in external routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T811</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic SQL/JSON constructor functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T812</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON: JSON_OBJECTAGG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T813</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON: JSON_ARRAYAGG with ORDER BY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T814</td>
<td></td>
<td>Colon in JSON_OBJECT or JSON_OBJECTAGG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T821</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic SQL/JSON query operators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T822</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON: IS JSON WITH UNIQUE KEYS predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T823</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON: PASSING clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T824</td>
<td></td>
<td>JSON_TABLE: specific PLAN clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T825</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL/JSON: ON EMPTY and ON ERROR clauses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T826</td>
<td></td>
<td>General value expression in ON ERROR or ON EMPTY clauses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T827</td>
<td></td>
<td>JSON_TABLE: sibling NESTED COLUMNS clauses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T828</td>
<td></td>
<td>JSON_QUERY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T829</td>
<td></td>
<td>JSON_QUERY: array wrapper options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T830</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enforcing unique keys in SQL/JSON constructor functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T838</td>
<td></td>
<td>JSON_TABLE: PLAN DEFAULT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T839</td>
<td></td>
<td>Formatted cast of datetimes to/from character strings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via SQL/CLI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via Embedded SQL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data support</td>
<td>partially supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign schema support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M006</td>
<td></td>
<td>GetSQLString routine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M007</td>
<td></td>
<td>TransmitRequest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M009</td>
<td></td>
<td>GetOpts and GetStatistics routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M010</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper support</td>
<td>different API</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M011</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via Ada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M012</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M013</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via COBOL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M014</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via Fortran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M015</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M016</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via Pascal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M017</td>
<td></td>
<td>Datalinks via PL/I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M018</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper interface routines in Ada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M019</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper interface routines in C</td>
<td>different API</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M020</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper interface routines in COBOL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M021</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper interface routines in Fortran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M022</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper interface routines in MUMPS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M023</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper interface routines in Pascal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M024</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper interface routines in PL/I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M030</td>
<td></td>
<td>SQL-server foreign data support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M031</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foreign data wrapper general routines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X012</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multisets of XML type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X013</td>
<td></td>
<td>Distinct types of XML type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X015</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fields of XML type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X025</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLCast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X030</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLDocument</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X038</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLText</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X065</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLParse: BLOB input and CONTENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X066</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLParse: BLOB input and DOCUMENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X068</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: BOM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X069</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: INDENT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X073</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: BLOB serialization and CONTENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X074</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: BLOB serialization and DOCUMENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X075</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: BLOB serialization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X076</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: VERSION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X077</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: explicit ENCODING option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X078</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLSerialize: explicit XML declaration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X080</td>
<td></td>
<td>Namespaces in XML publishing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X081</td>
<td></td>
<td>Query-level XML namespace declarations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X082</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML namespace declarations in DML</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X083</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML namespace declarations in DDL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X084</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML namespace declarations in compound statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X085</td>
<td></td>
<td>Predefined namespace prefixes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X086</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML namespace declarations in XMLTable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X091</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML content predicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X096</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLExists</td>
<td>XPath 1.0 only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X100</td>
<td></td>
<td>Host language support for XML: CONTENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X101</td>
<td></td>
<td>Host language support for XML: DOCUMENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X110</td>
<td></td>
<td>Host language support for XML: VARCHAR mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X111</td>
<td></td>
<td>Host language support for XML: CLOB mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X112</td>
<td></td>
<td>Host language support for XML: BLOB mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X113</td>
<td></td>
<td>Host language support for XML: STRIP WHITESPACE option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X114</td>
<td></td>
<td>Host language support for XML: PRESERVE WHITESPACE option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X131</td>
<td></td>
<td>Query-level XMLBINARY clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X132</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLBINARY clause in DML</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X133</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLBINARY clause in DDL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X134</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLBINARY clause in compound statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X135</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLBINARY clause in subqueries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X141</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate: data-driven case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X142</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate: ACCORDING TO clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X143</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate: ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X144</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate: schema location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X145</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate outside check constraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X151</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate with DOCUMENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X152</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate with CONTENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X153</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate with SEQUENCE option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X155</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate: NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X157</td>
<td></td>
<td>IS VALID predicate: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X160</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic Information Schema for registered XML Schemas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X161</td>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced Information Schema for registered XML Schemas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X170</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML null handling options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X171</td>
<td></td>
<td>NIL ON NO CONTENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X181</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML(DOCUMENT(UNTIPTED)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X182</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML(DOCUMENT(ANY)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X190</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML(SEQUENCE) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X191</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML(DOCUMENT(XMLESChema)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier</td>
<td>Core?</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X192</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML(CONTENT(XMLSCHEMA)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X200</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLQuery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X201</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLQuery: RETURNING CONTENT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X202</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLQuery: RETURNING SEQUENCE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X203</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLQuery: passing a context item</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X204</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLQuery: initializing an XQuery variable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X205</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLQuery: EMPTY ON EMPTY option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X206</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLQuery: NULL ON EMPTY option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X211</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML 1.1 support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X222</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML passing mechanism BY REF</td>
<td>parser accepts BY REF but ignores it; passing is always BY VALUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X231</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML(CONTENT(UNTYPED)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X232</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML(CONTENT(ANY)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X241</td>
<td></td>
<td>RETURNING CONTENT in XML publishing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X242</td>
<td></td>
<td>RETURNING SEQUENCE in XML publishing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X251</td>
<td></td>
<td>Persistent XML values of XML(DOCUMENT(UNTYPED)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X252</td>
<td></td>
<td>Persistent XML values of XML(DOCUMENT(ANY)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X253</td>
<td></td>
<td>Persistent XML values of XML(CONTENT(UNTYPED)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X254</td>
<td></td>
<td>Persistent XML values of XML(CONTENT(ANY)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X255</td>
<td></td>
<td>Persistent XML values of XML(SEQUENCE) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X256</td>
<td></td>
<td>Persistent XML values of XML(DOCUMENT(XMLSCHEMA)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X257</td>
<td></td>
<td>Persistent XML values of XML(CONTENT(XMLSCHEMA)) type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X260</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML type: ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X261</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML type: NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X263</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML type: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X264</td>
<td></td>
<td>XML type: schema location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X271</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate: data-driven case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X272</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate: ACCORDING TO clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X273</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate: ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X274</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate: schema location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X281</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate with DOCUMENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X282</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate with CONTENT option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X283</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate with SEQUENCE option</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X284</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate: NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X286</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLValidate: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X300</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLTable</td>
<td>XPath 1.0 only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X305</td>
<td></td>
<td>XMLTable: initializing an XQuery variable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D.3. XML Limits and Conformance to SQL/XML

Significant revisions to the XML-related specifications in ISO/IEC 9075-14 (SQL/XML) were introduced with SQL:2006. Postgres Pro’s implementation of the XML data type and related functions largely follows the earlier 2003 edition, with some borrowing from later editions. In particular:

- Where the current standard provides a family of XML data types to hold “document” or “content” in untyped or XML Schema-typed variants, and a type XML(SEQUENCE) to hold arbitrary pieces of XML content, Postgres Pro provides the single xml type, which can hold “document” or “content”. There is no equivalent of the standard’s “sequence” type.
- Postgres Pro provides two functions introduced in SQL:2006, but in variants that use the XPath 1.0 language, rather than XML Query as specified for them in the standard.

This section presents some of the resulting differences you may encounter.

D.3.1. Queries Are Restricted to XPath 1.0

The Postgres Pro-specific functions xpath() and xpath_exists() query XML documents using the XPath language. Postgres Pro also provides XPath-only variants of the standard functions XMLEXISTS and XMLTABLE, which officially use the XQuery language. For all of these functions, Postgres Pro relies on the libxml2 library, which provides only XPath 1.0.

There is a strong connection between the XQuery language and XPath versions 2.0 and later: any expression that is syntactically valid and executes successfully in both produces the same result (with a minor exception for expressions containing numeric character references or predefined entity references, which XQuery replaces with the corresponding character while XPath leaves them alone). But there is no such connection between these languages and XPath 1.0; it was an earlier language and differs in many respects.

There are two categories of limitation to keep in mind: the restriction from XQuery to XPath for the functions specified in the SQL standard, and the restriction of XPath to version 1.0 for both the standard and the Postgres Pro-specific functions.

D.3.1.1. Restriction of XQuery to XPath

Features of XQuery beyond those of XPath include:

- XQuery expressions can construct and return new XML nodes, in addition to all possible XPath values. XPath can create and return values of the atomic types (numbers, strings, and so on) but can only return XML nodes that were already present in documents supplied as input to the expression.
- XQuery has control constructs for iteration, sorting, and grouping.
- XQuery allows declaration and use of local functions.

Recent XPath versions begin to offer capabilities overlapping with these (such as functional-style for-each and sort, anonymous functions, and parse-xml to create a node from a string), but such features were not available before XPath 3.0.

D.3.1.2. Restriction of XPath to 1.0

For developers familiar with XQuery and XPath 2.0 or later, XPath 1.0 presents a number of differences to contend with:

- The fundamental type of an XQuery/XPath expression, the sequence, which can contain XML nodes, atomic values, or both, does not exist in XPath 1.0. A 1.0 expression can only produce a node-set (containing zero or more XML nodes), or a single atomic value.
- Unlike an XQuery/XPath sequence, which can contain any desired items in any desired order, an XPath 1.0 node-set has no guaranteed order and, like any set, does not allow multiple appearances of the same item.
SQL Conformance

Note
The libxml2 library does seem to always return node-sets to Postgres Pro with their members in the same relative order they had in the input document. Its documentation does not commit to this behavior, and an XPath 1.0 expression cannot control it.

- While XQuery/XPath provides all of the types defined in XML Schema and many operators and functions over those types, XPath 1.0 has only node-sets and the three atomic types `boolean`, `double`, and `string`.

- XPath 1.0 has no conditional operator. An XQuery/XPath expression such as `if ( hat ) then hat/@size else "no hat"` has no XPath 1.0 equivalent.

- XPath 1.0 has no ordering comparison operator for strings. Both "cat" < "dog" and "cat" > "dog" are false, because each is a numeric comparison of two NaNs. In contrast, = and != do compare the strings as strings.

- XPath 1.0 blurs the distinction between value comparisons and general comparisons as XQuery/XPath define them. Both `sale/@hatsize = 7` and `sale/@customer = "alice"` are existentially quantified comparisons, true if there is any `sale` with the given value for the attribute, but `sale/@taxable = false()` is a value comparison to the effective boolean value of a whole node-set. It is true only if no `sale` has a taxable attribute at all.

- In the XQuery/XPath data model, a document node can have either document form (i.e., exactly one top-level element, with only comments and processing instructions outside of it) or content form (with those constraints relaxed). Its equivalent in XPath 1.0, the root node, can only be in document form. This is part of the reason an xml value passed as the context item to any Postgres Pro XPath-based function must be in document form.

The differences highlighted here are not all of them. In XQuery and the 2.0 and later versions of XPath, there is an XPath 1.0 compatibility mode, and the W3C lists of function library changes and language changes applied in that mode offer a more complete (but still not exhaustive) account of the differences. The compatibility mode cannot make the later languages exactly equivalent to XPath 1.0.

D.3.1.3. Mappings between SQL and XML Data Types and Values

In SQL:2006 and later, both directions of conversion between standard SQL data types and the XML Schema types are specified precisely. However, the rules are expressed using the types and semantics of XQuery/XPath, and have no direct application to the different data model of XPath 1.0.

When Postgres Pro maps SQL data values to XML (as in `xmlelement`), or XML to SQL (as in the output columns of `xmltable`), except for a few cases treated specially, Postgres Pro simply assumes that the XML data type’s XPath 1.0 string form will be valid as the text-input form of the SQL datatype, and conversely. This rule has the virtue of simplicity while producing, for many data types, results similar to the mappings specified in the standard.

Where interoperability with other systems is a concern, for some data types, it may be necessary to use data type formatting functions (such as those in Section 9.8) explicitly to produce the standard mappings.

D.3.2. Incidental Limits of the Implementation

This section concerns limits that are not inherent in the libxml2 library, but apply to the current implementation in Postgres Pro.

D.3.2.1. Only BY VALUE Passing Mechanism Is Supported

The SQL standard defines two passing mechanisms that apply when passing an XML argument from SQL to an XML function or receiving a result: `BY REF`, in which a particular XML value retains its node identity, and `BY VALUE`, in which the content of the XML is passed but node identity is not preserved.
A mechanism can be specified before a list of parameters, as the default mechanism for all of them, or after any parameter, to override the default.

To illustrate the difference, if \( x \) is an XML value, these two queries in an SQL:2006 environment would produce true and false, respectively:

```sql
SELECT XMLQUERY('a is b' PASSING BY REF x AS a, x AS b NULL ON EMPTY);
SELECT XMLQUERY('a is b' PASSING BY VALUE x AS a, x AS b NULL ON EMPTY);
```

Postgres Pro will accept \texttt{BY VALUE} or \texttt{BY REF} in an \texttt{XMLEXISTS} or \texttt{XMLTABLE} construct, but it ignores them. The \texttt{xml} data type holds a character-string serialized representation, so there is no node identity to preserve, and passing is always effectively \texttt{BY VALUE}.

### D.3.2.2. Cannot Pass Named Parameters to Queries

The XPath-based functions support passing one parameter to serve as the XPath expression's context item, but do not support passing additional values to be available to the expression as named parameters.

### D.3.2.3. No XML (SEQUENCE) Type

The Postgres Pro \texttt{xml} data type can only hold a value in \texttt{DOCUMENT} or \texttt{CONTENT} form. An XQuery/XPath expression context item must be a single XML node or atomic value, but XPath 1.0 further restricts it to be only an XML node, and has no node type allowing \texttt{CONTENT}. The upshot is that a well-formed \texttt{DOCUMENT} is the only form of XML value that Postgres Pro can supply as an XPath context item.
Appendix E. Release Notes

The release notes contain the significant changes in each Postgres Pro Standard release, with major features and migration issues listed at the top. The release notes do not contain changes that affect only a few users or changes that are internal and therefore not user-visible. For example, the optimizer is improved in almost every release, but the improvements are usually observed by users as simply faster queries.

E.1. Postgres Pro Standard 14.1.1

Release Date: 2021-12-01

E.1.1. Overview

This release is based on PostgreSQL 14.1 and includes all the new features introduced in PostgreSQL 14, as well as bug fixes implemented in PostgreSQL 14.1. For their detailed description, see PostgreSQL 14 Release Notes and PostgreSQL 14.1 Release Notes, respectively. Other major changes and enhancements are as follows:

- Removed the sr_plan extension.
- Added several enhanced security mechanisms to Postgres Pro Standard:
  - pg_proaudit extension that enables detailed logging of various security events.
  - Advanced authentication policies that provide effective password management and access control. (See CREATE PROFILE and ALTER ROLE).
  - Built-in integrity checks for executable files, configuration files, and system tables. (Certified edition only.)
  - Built-in data security mechanisms that enable sanitizing an object by filling it with zeroes before deletion. Zeroing can be done before purging files in external memory and removing outdated row versions (page vacuum), freeing RAM, and deleting or overwriting WAL files. (Certified edition only.)
- Upgraded mamonsu to version 3.1.0, which supports Postgres Pro 14 and adds a new option for bootstrap. With this option, if dbname is not explicitly specified, its value will be automatically set to the database name defined in the [postgres] section of the mamonsu configuration file.
- Upgraded pgpro_pwr. Major enhancements are as follows:
  - Added the “Load distribution” section to the report, which shows load distribution of different resources (for example, total time or shared blocks written) for heavily loaded objects, such as databases, applications, hosts, or users, in graphics, as stacked bar charts.
  - Added the “Session statistics by database” and “WAL statistics” report tables, based on new views and fields made available in Postgres Pro 14.
  - Removed the WAITLSN command.

For the list of extension modules and utilities specific to Postgres Pro Standard, as well as the main user-visible core changes as compared to vanilla PostgreSQL, see Section 2.

E.1.2. Migration to Version 14

To migrate from PostgreSQL or a Postgres Pro Standard release based on a previous PostgreSQL major version, make sure to install its latest available minor version and then perform a dump/restore using pg_dumpall or use the pg_upgrade utility:

- If you choose to run pg_upgrade, make sure to initialize the new database cluster with compatible parameters. In particular, pay attention to the provider of the default collation and the checksum settings in the cluster you are migrating from. If pg_upgrade creates any SQL files in its current directory, run these files to complete the upgrade.
• If you are opting for a dump/restore, do not forget to use the `--add-collprovider` option to correctly choose the provider for the default collation of the migrated database.

To find out the default collation and its provider in the original cluster, see the `datcollate` value for the `template0` database in the `pg_database` catalog. If you are upgrading from a version where provider of the default collation is not specified, use `libc` provider if upgrading from vanilla PostgreSQL, and omit the provider if upgrading from earlier versions of Postgres Pro.

Besides, note the following collation-related upgrade specifics described below.

On Windows, Postgres Pro Standard installations could contain databases with default collations provided by ICU, where the name of the database default collation used a syntactically correct BCP 47 language tag format, but had a wrong language code or other parameters, which invalidated the database default collation name for ICU.

If this issue affects the `template0` database, you will get the following error message when trying to initialize the cluster with the same collation: failed to get the canonical name for collation locale. In this case, you can only use dump/restore for upgrade, specifying a valid locale for the selected collation provider.

If this issue affects other databases, you will get the same error message when Postgres Pro tries to create these databases with invalid collation in the new cluster. In this case, you can try the following:

1. Make a dump of the database using `pg_dump`; it is required to use `--create` and `--format=plain` options.
2. Change the provider for the default collation of the database in the dump file from `@icu` to `@libc`.
3. In `psql`, restore the modified dump to complete the upgrade. This operation may fail if any constraints depending on the database collations are violated. In this case, you can try resolving the issues manually.

In some corner cases, using dump/restore could lead to invalid constraints in the restored databases, so you should use `pg_upgrade`. For example:

• If the installation of Postgres Pro Standard 9.6 or lower contained any indexes or constraints depending on collations other than the default collation of the database, C, or POSIX in databases with multibyte encodings, indexes and constraints in such databases could become inconsistent when these databases are migrated to Postgres Pro 10 or higher. On Windows, this situation can also happen if the database with a multibyte encoding contained any indexes or constraints depending on the default collation with a verbose name, such as "Russian_Russia [.encoding]" or "English_United States [.encoding]".

• For upgrades from Postgres Pro Standard 10, if the cluster has no information about the ICU library version, the ICU collation versions are checked to ensure that indexes and constraints remain valid after the upgrade. However, for clusters that contain databases with default ICU collations but have no information about the ICU library version and/or its collation versions, it is impossible to check that the current version of Postgres Pro uses the same version of the ICU library.

• On Windows, in Postgres Pro Standard 10 clusters with default collations provided by ICU, the ICU collation locale may not match the corresponding `libc` collation locale.

If you use `pg_upgrade`, it declares such indexes and constraints invalid and creates `reindex_text_indexes.sql` and `validate_text_constraints.sql`, respectively. You have to run these files to complete the upgrade.

**Note**

To avoid conflicts on Linux systems, do not use the `postgrespro-std-14` package to install the new Postgres Pro binaries. Use the individual packages instead. In this case, server autostart needs to be enabled manually, if required. For details on the available packages, see Chapter 16.
If you used `mchar`, to ensure acceleration of the `LIKE` operator after upgrading from previous versions of Postgres Pro, run:

```
ALTER EXTENSION mchar UPDATE;
```

For upgrade requirements imposed by vanilla PostgreSQL, see Section E.3.

E.2. Release 14.1

**Release date:** 2021-11-11

This release contains a variety of fixes from 14.0. For information about new features in major release 14, see Section E.3.

E.2.1. Migration to Version 14.1

A dump/restore is not required for those running 14.X.

However, note that installations using physical replication should update standby servers before the primary server, as explained in the third changelog entry below.

Also, several bugs have been found that may have resulted in corrupted indexes, as explained in the next several changelog entries. If any of those cases apply to you, it's recommended to reindex possibly-affected indexes after updating.

E.2.2. Changes

- Make the server reject extraneous data after an SSL or GSS encryption handshake (Tom Lane)

  A man-in-the-middle with the ability to inject data into the TCP connection could stuff some cleartext data into the start of a supposedly encryption-protected database session. This could be abused to send faked SQL commands to the server, although that would only work if the server did not demand any authentication data. (However, a server relying on SSL certificate authentication might well not do so.)

  The PostgreSQL Project thanks Jacob Champion for reporting this problem. (CVE-2021-23214)

- Make `libpq` reject extraneous data after an SSL or GSS encryption handshake (Tom Lane)

  A man-in-the-middle with the ability to inject data into the TCP connection could stuff some cleartext data into the start of a supposedly encryption-protected database session. This could probably be abused to inject faked responses to the client's first few queries, although other details of `libpq`'s behavior make that harder than it sounds. A different line of attack is to exfiltrate the client's password, or other sensitive data that might be sent early in the session. That has been shown to be possible with a server vulnerable to CVE-2021-23214.

  The PostgreSQL Project thanks Jacob Champion for reporting this problem. (CVE-2021-23222)

- Fix physical replication for cases where the primary crashes after shipping a WAL segment that ends with a partial WAL record (Álvaro Herrera)

  If the primary did not survive long enough to finish writing the rest of the incomplete WAL record, then the previous crash-recovery logic had it back up and overwrite WAL starting from the beginning of the incomplete WAL record. This is problematic since standby servers may already have copies of that WAL segment. They will then see an inconsistent next segment, and will not be able to recover without manual intervention. To fix, do not back up over a WAL segment boundary when restarting after a crash. Instead write a new type of WAL record at the start of the next WAL segment, informing readers that the incomplete WAL record will never be finished and must be disregarded.

  When applying this update, it's best to update standby servers before the primary, so that they will be ready to handle this new WAL record type if the primary happens to crash.
• Ensure that parallel VACUUM doesn't miss any indexes (Peter Geoghegan, Masahiko Sawada)

A parallel VACUUM would fail to process indexes that are below the min_parallel_index_scan_size cutoff, if the table also has at least two indexes that are above that size. This could result in those indexes becoming corrupt, since they'd still contain references to any heap entries removed by the VACUUM; subsequent queries using such indexes would be likely to return rows they shouldn't. This problem does not affect autovacuum, since it doesn't use parallel vacuuming. However, it is advisable to reindex any manually-vacuumed tables that have the right mix of index sizes.

• Fix CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY to wait for the latest prepared transactions (Andrey Borodin)

Rows inserted by just-prepared transactions might be omitted from the new index, causing queries relying on the index to miss such rows. The previous fix for this type of problem failed to account for PREPARE TRANSACTION commands that were still in progress when CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY checked for them. As before, in installations that have enabled prepared transactions (max_prepared_transactions > 0), it's recommended to reindex any concurrently-built indexes in case this problem occurred when they were built.

• Avoid race condition that can cause backends to fail to add entries for new rows to an index being built concurrently (Noah Misch, Andrey Borodin)

While it's apparently rare in the field, this case could potentially affect any index built or reindexed with the CONCURRENTLY option. It is recommended to reindex any such indexes to make sure they are correct.

• Fix REINDEX CONCURRENTLY to preserve operator class parameters that were attached to the target index (Michael Paquier)

• Fix incorrect creation of shared dependencies when cloning a database that contains non-builtin objects (Aleksander Alekseev)

The effects of this error are probably limited in practice. In principle, it could allow a role to be dropped while it still owns objects; but most installations would never want to drop a role that had been used for objects they'd added to template1.

• Ensure that the relation cache is invalidated for a table being attached to or detached from a partitioned table (Amit Langote, Alvaro Herrera)

This oversight could allow misbehavior of subsequent inserts/updates addressed directly to the partition, but only in currently-existing sessions.

• Fix corruption of parse tree while creating a range type (Alex Kozhemyakin, Sergey Shinderuk)

CREATE TYPE incorrectly freed an element of the parse tree, which could cause problems for a later event trigger, or if the CREATE TYPE command was stored in the plan cache and used again later.

• Fix updates of element fields in arrays of domain over composite (Tom Lane)

A command such as UPDATE tab SET fld[1].subfld = val failed if the array's elements were domains rather than plain composites.

• Disallow the combination of FETCH FIRST WITH TIES and FOR UPDATE SKIP LOCKED (David Christensen)

FETCH FIRST WITH TIES necessarily fetches one more row than requested, since it cannot stop until it finds a row that is not a tie. In our current implementation, if FOR UPDATE is used then that row will also get locked even though it is not returned. That results in undesirable behavior if the SKIP LOCKED option is specified. It's difficult to change this without introducing a different set of undesirable behaviors, so for now, forbid the combination.

• Disallow ALTER INDEX index ALTER COLUMN col SET (options) (Nathan Bossart, Michael Paquier)

While the parser accepted this, it's undocumented and doesn't actually work.
- Fix corner-case loss of precision in numeric `power()` (Dean Rasheed)

  The result could be inaccurate when the first argument is very close to 1.

- Avoid choosing the wrong hash equality operator for Memoize plans (David Rowley)

  This error could result in crashes or incorrect query results.

- Fix planner error with pulling up subquery expressions into function rangetable entries (Tom Lane)

  If a function in `FROM` laterally references the output of some `sub-SELECT` earlier in the `FROM` clause, and we are able to flatten that `sub-SELECT` into the outer query, the expression(s) copied into the function expression were not fully processed. This could lead to crashes at execution.

- Avoid using MCV-only statistics to estimate the range of a column (Tom Lane)

  There are corner cases in which `ANALYZE` will build a most-common-values (MCV) list but not a histogram, even though the MCV list does not account for all the observed values. In such cases, keep the planner from using the MCV list alone to estimate the range of column values.

- Fix restoration of a Portal's snapshot inside a subtransaction (Bertrand Drouvot)

  If a procedure commits or rolls back a transaction, and then its next significant action is inside a new subtransaction, snapshot management went wrong, leading to a dangling pointer and probable crash. A typical example in PL/pgSQL is a `COMMIT` immediately followed by a `BEGIN ... EXCEPTION` block that performs a query.

- Clean up correctly if a transaction fails after exporting its snapshot (Dilip Kumar)

  This oversight would only cause a problem if the same session attempted to export a snapshot again. The most likely scenario for that is creation of a replication slot (followed by rollback) and then creation of another replication slot.

- Prevent wraparound of overflowed-subtransaction tracking on standby servers (Kyotaro Horiguchi, Alexander Korotkov)

  This oversight could cause significant performance degradation (manifesting as excessive SubtransSLRU traffic) on standby servers.

- Ensure that prepared transactions are properly accounted for during promotion of a standby server (Michael Paquier, Andres Freund)

  There was a narrow window where a prepared transaction could be omitted from a snapshot taken by a concurrently-running session. If that session then used the snapshot to perform data updates, erroneous results or data corruption could occur.

- Fix “could not find RecursiveUnion” error when `EXPLAIN` tries to print a filter condition attached to a `WorkTableScan` node (Tom Lane)

- Ensure that the correct lock level is used when renaming a table (Nathan Bossart, Álvaro Herrera)

  For historical reasons, `ALTER INDEX ... RENAME` can be applied to any sort of relation. The lock level required to rename an index is lower than that required to rename a table or other kind of relation, but the code got this wrong and would use the weaker lock level whenever the command is spelled `ALTER INDEX`.

- Avoid null-pointer-dereference crash when dropping a role that owns objects being dropped concurrently (Álvaro Herrera)

- Prevent “snapshot reference leak” warning when `lo_export()` or a related function fails (Heikki Linnakangas)

- Fix inefficient code generation for CoerceToDomain expression nodes (Ranier Vilela)

- Avoid O(N^2) behavior in some list-manipulation operations (Nathan Bossart, Tom Lane)
These changes fix slow processing in several scenarios, including: when a standby replays a transaction that held many exclusive locks on the primary; when many files are due to be unlinked after a checkpoint; when hash aggregation involves many batches; and when \texttt{pg\_trgm} extracts indexable conditions from a complex regular expression. Only the first of these scenarios has actually been reported from the field, but they all seem like plausible consequences of inefficient list deletions.

- Add more defensive checks around B-tree posting list splits (Peter Geoghegan)

  This change should help detect index corruption involving duplicate table TIDs.

- Avoid assertion failure when inserting NaN into a BRIN float8 or float4 minmax\_multi\_ops index (Tomas Vondra)

  In production builds, such cases would result in a somewhat inefficient, but not actually incorrect, index.

- Allow the autovacuum launcher process to respond to \texttt{pg\_log\_backend\_memory\_contexts()} requests more quickly (Koyu Tanigawa)

- Fix memory leak in HMAC hash calculations (Sergey Shinderuk)

- Disallow setting \texttt{huge\_pages} to \texttt{on} when \texttt{shared\_memory\_type} is \texttt{sysv} (Thomas Munro)

  Previously, this setting was accepted, but it did nothing for lack of any implementation.

- Fix checking of query type in PL/pgSQL's \texttt{RETURN QUERY} statement (Tom Lane)

  \texttt{RETURN QUERY} should accept any query that can return tuples, e.g. \texttt{UPDATE returning. v14 accidentally disallowed anything but SELECT; moreover, the \texttt{RETURN QUERY EXECUTE} variant failed to apply any query-type check at all.}

- Fix pg\_dump to dump non-global default privileges correctly (Neil Chen, Masahiko Sawada)

  If a global (unrestricted) \texttt{ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES} command revoked some present-by-default privilege, for example \texttt{EXECUTE} for functions, and then a restricted \texttt{ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES} command granted that privilege again for a selected role or schema, pg\_dump failed to dump the restricted privilege grant correctly.

- Make pg\_dump acquire shared lock on partitioned tables that are to be dumped (Tom Lane)

  This oversight was usually pretty harmless, since once pg\_dump has locked any of the leaf partitions, that would suffice to prevent significant DDL on the partitioned table itself. However problems could ensue when dumping a childless partitioned table, since no relevant lock would be held.

- Fix crash in pg\_dump when attempting to dump trigger definitions from a pre-8.3 server (Tom Lane)

- Fix incorrect filename in pg\_restore's error message about an invalid large object TOC file (Daniel Gustafsson)

- Ensure that pgbench exits with non-zero status after a socket-level failure (Yugo Nagata, Fabien Coelho)

  The desired behavior is to finish out the run but then exit with status 2. Also, fix the reporting of such errors.

- Prevent pg\_amcheck from checking temporary relations, as well as indexes that are invalid or not ready (Mark Dilger)

  This avoids unhelpful checks of relations that will almost certainly appear inconsistent.

- Make contrib/amcheck skip unlogged tables when running on a standby server (Mark Dilger)
It's appropriate to do this since such tables will be empty, and unlogged indexes were already handled similarly.

- **Change** contrib/pg_stat_statements to read its “query texts” file in units of at most 1GB (Tom Lane)

  Such large query text files are very unusual, but if they do occur, the previous coding would fail on Windows 64 (which rejects individual read requests of more than 2GB).

- **Fix null-pointer crash when** contrib/postgres_fdw tries to report a data conversion error (Tom Lane)

- **Ensure that** GetSharedSecurityLabel() can be used in a newly-started session that has not yet built its critical relation cache entries (Jeff Davis)

- **When running a TAP test, include the module's own directory in** PATH (Andrew Dunstan)

  This allows tests to find built programs that are not installed, such as custom test drivers.

- **Use the CLDR project's data to map Windows time zone names to IANA time zones** (Tom Lane)

  When running on Windows, initdb attempts to set the new cluster's timezone parameter to the IANA time zone matching the system's prevailing time zone. We were using a mapping table that we'd generated years ago and updated only fitfully; unsurprisingly, it contained a number of errors as well as omissions of recently-added zones. It turns out that CLDR has been tracking the most appropriate mappings, so start using their data. This change will not affect any existing installation, only newly-initialized clusters.

- **Update time zone data files to tzdata release 2021e for DST law changes in Fiji, Jordan, Palestine, and Samoa, plus historical corrections for Barbados, Cook Islands, Guyana, Niue, Portugal, and Tonga.**

  Also, the Pacific/Enderbury zone has been renamed to Pacific/Kanton. Also, the following zones have been merged into nearby, more-populous zones whose clocks have agreed with them since 1970: Africa/Accra, America/Atikokan, America/Blanc-Sablon, America/Creston, America/Curacao, America/Nassau, America/Port_of_Spain, Antarctica/DumontD'Urville, and Antarctica/Syowa. In all these cases, the previous zone name remains as an alias.

### E.3. Release 14

**Release date:** 2021-09-30

### E.3.1. Overview

PostgreSQL 14 contains many new features and enhancements, including:

- Stored procedures can now return data via OUT parameters.
- The SQL-standard **SEARCH** and **CYCLE** options for common table expressions have been implemented.
- Subscripting can now be applied to any data type for which it is a useful notation, not only arrays. In this release, the **jsonb** and **hstore** types have gained subscripting operators.
- Range types have been extended by adding multiranges, allowing representation of noncontiguous data ranges.
- Numerous performance improvements have been made for parallel queries, heavily-concurrent workloads, partitioned tables, logical replication, and vacuuming.
- B-tree index updates are managed more efficiently, reducing index bloat.
- **VACUUM** automatically becomes more aggressive, and skips inessential cleanup, if the database starts to approach a transaction ID wraparound condition.
• Extended statistics can now be collected on expressions, allowing better planning results for complex queries.

• libpq now has the ability to pipeline multiple queries, which can boost throughput over high-latency connections.

The above items and other new features of PostgreSQL 14 are explained in more detail in the sections below.

### E.3.2. Migration to Version 14

A dump/restore using pg_dumpall or use of pg_upgrade or logical replication is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release. See Section 17.6 for general information on migrating to new major releases.

Version 14 contains a number of changes that may affect compatibility with previous releases. Observe the following incompatibilities:

• User-defined objects that reference certain built-in array functions along with their argument types must be recreated (Tom Lane)

  Specifically, `array_append()`, `array_prepend()`, `array_cat()`, `array_position()`, `array_positions()`, `array_remove()`, `array_replace()`, and `width_bucket()` used to take anyarray arguments but now take anycompatiblearray. Therefore, user-defined objects like aggregates and operators that reference those array function signatures must be dropped before upgrading, and recreated once the upgrade completes.

• Remove deprecated containment operators @ and ~ for built-in geometric data types and contrib modules `cube`, `hstore`, `intarray`, and `seg` (Justin Pryzby)

  The more consistently named `<@` and `@>` have been recommended for many years.

• Fix `to_tsquery()` and `websearch_to_tsquery()` to properly parse query text containing discarded tokens (Alexander Korotkov)

  Certain discarded tokens, like underscore, caused the output of these functions to produce incorrect tsquery output, e.g., both `websearch_to_tsquery("pg_class pg")` and `to_tsquery('pg_class <-> pg')` used to output ( 'pg' & 'class' ) <-> 'pg', but now both output 'pg' <-> 'class' <-> 'pg'.

• Fix `websearch_to_tsquery()` to properly parse multiple adjacent discarded tokens in quotes (Alexander Korotkov)

  Previously, quoted text that contained multiple adjacent discarded tokens was treated as multiple tokens, causing incorrect tsquery output, e.g., `websearch_to_tsquery("aaa: bbb")` used to output 'aaa' <2> 'bbb', but now outputs 'aaa' <-> 'bbb'.

• Change `EXTRACT()` to return type numeric instead of float8 (Peter Eisentraut)

  This avoids loss-of-precision issues in some usages. The old behavior can still be obtained by using the old underlying function `date_part()`.

  Also, `EXTRACT(date)` now throws an error for units that are not part of the date data type.

• Change `var_samp()` and `stddev_samp()` with numeric parameters to return NULL when the input is a single NaN value (Tom Lane)

  Previously NaN was returned.

• Return false for `has_column_privilege()` checks on non-existent or dropped columns when using attribute numbers (Joe Conway)

  Previously such attribute numbers returned an invalid-column error.

• Fix handling of infinite window function ranges (Tom Lane)
Previously window frame clauses like 'inf' PRECEDING AND 'inf' FOLLOWING returned incorrect results.

- Remove factorial operators ! and !!, as well as function numeric_fac() (Mark Dilger)
  
  The factorial() function is still supported.

- Disallow factorial() of negative numbers (Peter Eisentraut)
  
  Previously such cases returned 1.

- Remove support for postfix (right-unary) operators (Mark Dilger)
  
  pg_dump and pg_upgrade will warn if postfix operators are being dumped.

- Allow \D and \W shorthands to match newlines in regular expression newline-sensitive mode (Tom Lane)
  
  Previously they did not match newlines in this mode, but that disagrees with the behavior of other common regular expression engines. \([^[:digit:]]\) or \([^[:word:]]\) can be used to get the old behavior.

- Disregard constraints when matching regular expression back-references (Tom Lane)
  
  For example, in \(^\"d\"\)./^1, the ^ constraint should be applied at the start of the string, but not when matching \1.

- Disallow \w as a range start or end in regular expression character classes (Tom Lane)
  
  This previously was allowed but produced unexpected results.

- Require custom server parameter names to use only characters that are valid in unquoted SQL identifiers (Tom Lane)

- Change the default of the password_encryption server parameter to scram-sha-256 (Peter Eisentraut)
  
  Previously it was md5. All new passwords will be stored as SHA256 unless this server setting is changed or the password is specified in MD5 format. Also, the legacy (and undocumented) Boolean-like values which were previously synonyms for md5 are no longer accepted.

- Remove server parameter vacuum_cleanup_index_scale_factor (Peter Geoghegan)
  
  This setting was ignored starting in PostgreSQL version 13.3.

- Remove server parameter operator_precedence_warning (Tom Lane)
  
  This setting was used for warning applications about PostgreSQL 9.5 changes.

- Overhaul the specification of clientcert in pg_hba.conf (Kyotaro Horiguchi)
  
  Values 1/0/no-verify are no longer supported; only the strings verify-ca and verify-full can be used. Also, disallow verify-ca if cert authentication is enabled since cert requires verify-full checking.

- Remove support for SSL compression (Daniel Gustafsson, Michael Paquier)
  
  This was already disabled by default in previous PostgreSQL releases, and most modern OpenSSL and TLS versions no longer support it.

- Remove server and libpq support for the version 2 wire protocol (Heikki Linnakangas)
  
  This was last used as the default in PostgreSQL 7.3 (released in 2002).

- Disallow single-quoting of the language name in the CREATE/DROP LANGUAGE command (Peter Eisentraut)
• Remove the composite types that were formerly created for sequences and toast tables (Tom Lane)

• Process doubled quote marks in ecpg SQL command strings correctly (Tom Lane)

  Previously 'abc'"def' was passed to the server as 'abc'def', and "abc""def" was passed as "abc"def", causing syntax errors.

• Prevent the containment operators (<@ and @>) for intarray from using GiST indexes (Tom Lane)

  Previously a full GiST index scan was required, so just avoid that and scan the heap, which is faster. Indexes created for this purpose should be removed.

• Remove contrib program pg_standby (Justin Pryzby)

• Prevent tablefunc's function normal_rand() from accepting negative values (Ashutosh Bapat)

  Negative values produced undesirable results.

E.3.3. Changes

Below you will find a detailed account of the changes between PostgreSQL 14 and the previous major release.

E.3.3.1. Server

• Add predefined roles pg_read_all_data and pg_write_all_data (Stephen Frost)

  These non-login roles can be used to give read or write permission to all tables, views, and sequences.

• Add predefined role pg_database_owner that contains only the current database's owner (Noah Misch)

  This is especially useful in template databases.

• Remove temporary files after backend crashes (Euler Taveira)

  Previously, such files were retained for debugging purposes. If necessary, deletion can be disabled with the new server parameter remove_temp_files_after_crash.

• Allow long-running queries to be canceled if the client disconnects (Sergey Cherkashin, Thomas Munro)

  The server parameter client_connection_check_interval allows control over whether loss of connection is checked for intra-query. (This is supported on Linux and a few other operating systems.)

• Add an optional timeout parameter to pg_terminate_backend() (Magnus Hagander)

• Allow wide tuples to be always added to almost-empty heap pages (John Naylor, Floris van Nee)

  Previously tuples whose insertion would have exceeded the page's fill factor were instead added to new pages.

• Add Server Name Indication (SNI) in SSL connection packets (Peter Eisentraut)

  This can be disabled by turning off client connection option sslsni.

E.3.3.1.1. Vacuuming

• Allow vacuum to skip index vacuuming when the number of removable index entries is insignificant (Masahiko Sawada, Peter Geoghegan)

  The vacuum parameter INDEX_CLEANUP has a new default of auto that enables this optimization.

• Allow vacuum to more eagerly add deleted btree pages to the free space map (Peter Geoghegan)
Previously vacuum could only add pages to the free space map that were marked as deleted by previous vacuums.

- Allow vacuum to reclaim space used by unused trailing heap line pointers (Matthias van de Meent, Peter Geoghegan)
- Allow vacuum to be more aggressive in removing dead rows during minimal-locking index operations (Álvaro Herrera)
  
  Specifically, `CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY` and `REINDEX CONCURRENTLY` no longer limit the dead row removal of other relations.
- Speed up vacuuming of databases with many relations (Tatsuhito Kasahara)
- Reduce the default value of `vacuum_cost_page_miss` to better reflect current hardware capabilities (Peter Geoghegan)
- Add ability to skip vacuuming of TOAST tables (Nathan Bossart)
  
  `VACUUM` now has a `PROCESS_TOAST` option which can be set to false to disable TOAST processing, and `vacuumdb` has a `--no-process-toast` option.
- Have `COPY FREEZE` appropriately update page visibility bits (Anastasia Lubennikova, Pavan Deolasee, Jeff Janes)
- Cause vacuum operations to be more aggressive if the table is near xid or multixact wraparound (Masahiko Sawada, Peter Geoghegan)
  
  This is controlled by `vacuum_failsafe_age` and `vacuum_multixact_failsafe_age`.
- Increase warning time and hard limit before transaction id and multi-transaction wraparound (Noah Misch)
  
  This should reduce the possibility of failures that occur without having issued warnings about wraparound.
- Add per-index information to `autovacuum logging output` (Masahiko Sawada)

E.3.3.1.2. Partitioning

- Improve the performance of updates and deletes on partitioned tables with many partitions (Amit Langote, Tom Lane)
  
  This change greatly reduces the planner's overhead for such cases, and also allows updates/deletes on partitioned tables to use execution-time partition pruning.
- Allow partitions to be detached in a non-blocking manner (Álvaro Herrera)
  
  The syntax is `ALTER TABLE ... DETACH PARTITION ... CONCURRENTLY, and FINALIZE`
- Ignore `COLLATE` clauses in partition boundary values (Tom Lane)
  
  Previously any such clause had to match the collation of the partition key; but it's more consistent to consider that it's automatically coerced to the collation of the partition key.

E.3.3.1.3. Indexes

- Allow btree index additions to `remove expired index entries` to prevent page splits (Peter Geoghegan)
  
  This is particularly helpful for reducing index bloat on tables whose indexed columns are frequently updated.
- Allow `BRIN` indexes to record multiple min/max values per range (Tomas Vondra)
  
  This is useful if there are groups of values in each page range.
• Allow BRIN indexes to use bloom filters (Tomas Vondra)
  This allows BRIN indexes to be used effectively with data that is not well-localized in the heap.
• Allow some GiST indexes to be built by presorting the data (Andrey Borodin)
  Presorting happens automatically and allows for faster index creation and smaller indexes.
• Allow SP-GiST indexes to contain INCLUDE'd columns (Pavel Borisov)

E.3.3.1.4. Optimizer
• Allow hash lookup for IN clauses with many constants (James Coleman, David Rowley)
  Previously the code always sequentially scanned the list of values.
• Increase the number of places extended statistics can be used for OR clause estimation (Tomas Vondra, Dean Rasheed)
• Allow extended statistics on expressions (Tomas Vondra)
  This allows statistics on a group of expressions and columns, rather than only columns like previously. System view pg_stats_ext_exprs reports such statistics.
• Allow efficient heap scanning of a range of TIDs (Edmund Horner, David Rowley)
  Previously a sequential scan was required for non-equality TID specifications.
• Fix EXPLAIN CREATE TABLE AS and EXPLAIN CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW to honor IF NOT EXISTS (Bharath Rupireddy)
  Previously, if the object already existed, EXPLAIN would fail.

E.3.3.1.5. General Performance
• Improve the speed of computing MVCC visibility snapshots on systems with many CPUs and high session counts (Andres Freund)
  This also improves performance when there are many idle sessions.
• Add executor method to memoize results from the inner side of a nested-loop join (David Rowley)
  This is useful if only a small percentage of rows is checked on the inner side. It can be disabled via server parameter enable_memoize.
• Allow window functions to perform incremental sorts (David Rowley)
• Improve the I/O performance of parallel sequential scans (Thomas Munro, David Rowley)
  This was done by allocating blocks in groups to parallel workers.
• Allow a query referencing multiple foreign tables to perform foreign table scans in parallel (Robert Haas, Kyotaro Horiguchi, Thomas Munro, Etsuro Fujita)
  postgres_fdw supports this type of scan if async_capable is set.
• Allow analyze to do page prefetching (Stephen Frost)
  This is controlled by maintenance_io_concurrency.
• Improve performance of regular expression searches (Tom Lane)
• Dramatically improve Unicode normalization performance (John Naylor)
  This speeds normalize() and IS NORMALIZED.
• Add ability to use LZ4 compression on TOAST data (Dilip Kumar)
This can be set at the column level, or set as a default via server parameter `default_toast_compression`. The server must be compiled with `--with-lz4` to support this feature. The default setting is still `pglz`.

### E.3.3.1.6. Monitoring

- If server parameter `compute_query_id` is enabled, display the query id in `pg_stat_activity`, `EXPLAIN VERBOSE`, `csvlog`, and optionally in `log_line_prefix` (Julien Rouhaud)

A query id computed by an extension will also be displayed.

- Improve logging of `auto-vacuum` and `auto-analyze` (Stephen Frost, Jakub Wartak)

  This reports I/O timings for auto-vacuum and auto-analyze if `track_io_timing` is enabled. Also, report buffer read and dirty rates for auto-analyze.

- Add information about the original user name supplied by the client to the output of `log_connections` (Jacob Champion)

### E.3.3.1.7. System Views

- Add system view `pg_stat_progress_copy` to report `COPY` progress (Josef Šimánek, Matthias van de Meent)

- Add system view `pg_stat_wal` to report WAL activity (Masahiro Ikeda)

- Add system view `pg_stat_replication_slots` to report replication slot activity (Masahiko Sawada, Amit Kapila, Vignesh C)

  The function `pg_stat_reset_replication_slot()` resets slot statistics.

- Add system view `pg_backend_memory_contexts` to report session memory usage (Atsushi Torikoshi, Fujii Masao)

- Add function `pg_log_backend_memory_contexts()` to output the memory contexts of arbitrary backends (Atsushi Torikoshi)

- Add session statistics to the `pg_stat_database` system view (Laurenz Albe)

- Add columns to `pg_prepared_statements` to report generic and custom plan counts (Atsushi Torikoshi, Kyotaro Horiguchi)

- Add lock wait start time to `pg_locks` (Atsushi Torikoshi)

- Make the archiver process visible in `pg_stat_activity` (Kyotaro Horiguchi)

- Add wait event `WalReceiverExit` to report WAL receiver exit wait time (Fujii Masao)

- Implement information schema view `routine_column_usage` to track columns referenced by function and procedure default expressions (Peter Eisentraut)

### E.3.3.1.8. Authentication

- Allow an SSL certificate's distinguished name (DN) to be matched for client certificate authentication (Andrew Dunstan)

  The new `pg_hba.conf` option `clientname=DN` allows comparison with certificate attributes beyond the `CN` and can be combined with `ident` maps.

- Allow `pg_hba.conf` and `pg_ident.conf` records to span multiple lines (Fabien Coelho)

  A backslash at the end of a line allows record contents to be continued on the next line.

- Allow the specification of a certificate revocation list (CRL) directory (Kyotaro Horiguchi)

  This is controlled by server parameter `ssl_crl_dir` and `libpq` connection option `sslcrldir`. Previously only single CRL files could be specified.
• Allow passwords of an arbitrary length (Tom Lane, Nathan Bossart)

**E.3.3.1.9. Server Configuration**

• Add server parameter `idle_session_timeout` to close idle sessions (Li Japin)

  This is similar to `idle_in_transaction_session_timeout`.

• Change `checkpoint_completion_target` default to 0.9 (Stephen Frost)

  The previous default was 0.5.

• Allow `%P` in `log_line_prefix` to report the parallel group leader's PID for a parallel worker (Justin Pryzby)

• Allow `unix_socket_directories` to specify paths as individual, comma-separated quoted strings (Ian Lawrence Barwick)

  Previously all the paths had to be in a single quoted string.

• Allow startup allocation of dynamic shared memory (Thomas Munro)

  This is controlled by `min_dynamic_shared_memory`. This allows more use of huge pages.

• Add server parameter `huge_page_size` to control the size of huge pages used on Linux (Odin Ugedal)

**E.3.3.2. Streaming Replication and Recovery**

• Allow standby servers to be rewound via `pg_rewind` (Heikki Linnakangas)

• Allow the `restore_command` setting to be changed during a server reload (Sergei Kornilov)

  You can also set `restore_command` to an empty string and reload to force recovery to only read from the `pg_wal` directory.

• Add server parameter `log_recovery_conflict_waits` to report long recovery conflict wait times (Bertrand Drouvot, Masahiko Sawada)

• Pause recovery on a hot standby server if the primary changes its parameters in a way that prevents replay on the standby (Peter Eisentraut)

  Previously the standby would shut down immediately.

• Add function `pg_get_wal_replay_pause_state()` to report the recovery state (Dilip Kumar)

  It gives more detailed information than `pg_is_wal_replay_paused()`, which still exists.

• Add new read-only server parameter `in_hot_standby` (Haribabu Kommi, Greg Nancarrow, Tom Lane)

  This allows clients to easily detect whether they are connected to a hot standby server.

• Speed truncation of small tables during recovery on clusters with a large number of shared buffers (Kirk Jamison)

• Allow file system sync at the start of crash recovery on Linux (Thomas Munro)

  By default, PostgreSQL opens and fsyncs each data file in the database cluster at the start of crash recovery. A new setting, `recovery_init_sync_method=syncfs`, instead syncs each filesystem used by the cluster. This allows for faster recovery on systems with many database files.

• Add function `pg_xact_commit_timestamp_origin()` to return the commit timestamp and replication origin of the specified transaction (Movead Li)

• Add the replication origin to the record returned by `pg_last_committed_xact()` (Movead Li)

• Allow replication `origin functions` to be controlled using standard function permission controls (Martín Marqués)
Previously these functions could only be executed by superusers, and this is still the default.

**E.3.3.2.1. Logical Replication**

- Allow logical replication to stream long in-progress transactions to subscribers (Dilip Kumar, Amit Kapila, Ajin Cherian, Tomas Vondra, Nikhil Sontakke, Stas Kelvich)

  Previously transactions that exceeded `logical_decoding_work_mem` were written to disk until the transaction completed.

- Enhance the logical replication API to allow streaming large in-progress transactions (Tomas Vondra, Dilip Kumar, Amit Kapila)

  The output functions begin with `stream`. `test_decoding` also supports these.

- Allow multiple transactions during table sync in logical replication (Peter Smith, Amit Kapila, Takamichi Osumi)

- Immediately WAL-log subtransaction and top-level XID association (Tomas Vondra, Dilip Kumar, Amit Kapila)

  This is useful for logical decoding.

- Enhance logical decoding APIs to handle two-phase commits (Ajin Cherian, Amit Kapila, Nikhil Sontakke, Stas Kelvich)

  This is controlled via `pg_create_logical_replication_slot()`.

- Add cache invalidation messages to the WAL during command completion when using logical replication (Dilip Kumar, Tomas Vondra, Amit Kapila)

  This allows logical streaming of in-progress transactions. When logical replication is disabled, invalidation messages are generated only at transaction completion.

- Allow logical decoding to more efficiently process cache invalidation messages (Dilip Kumar)

  This allows logical decoding to work efficiently in presence of a large amount of DDL.

- Allow control over whether logical decoding messages are sent to the replication stream (David Pirotte, Euler Taveira)

- Allow logical replication subscriptions to use binary transfer mode (Dave Cramer)

  This is faster than text mode, but slightly less robust.

- Allow logical decoding to be filtered by xid (Markus Wanner)

**E.3.3.3. SELECT, INSERT**

- Reduce the number of keywords that can't be used as column labels without `AS` (Mark Dilger)

  There are now 90% fewer restricted keywords.

- Allow an alias to be specified for JOIN's USING clause (Peter Eisentraut)

  The alias is created by writing `AS` after the `USING` clause. It can be used as a table qualification for the merged `USING` columns.

- Allow `DISTINCT` to be added to `GROUP BY` to remove duplicate `GROUPING` `SET` combinations (Vik Fearing)

  For example, `GROUP BY CUBE (a, b), CUBE (b, c)` will generate duplicate grouping combinations without `DISTINCT`.

- Properly handle `DEFAULT` entries in multi-row `VALUES` lists in `INSERT` (Dean Rasheed)
Such cases used to throw an error.

- Add SQL-standard `SEARCH` and `CYCLE` clauses for `common table expressions` (Peter Eisentraut)
  The same results could be accomplished using existing syntax, but much less conveniently.

- Allow column names in the `WHERE` clause of `ON CONFLICT` to be table-qualified (Tom Lane)
  Only the target table can be referenced, however.

**E.3.3.4. Utility Commands**

- Allow `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` to use parallelism (Bharath Rupireddy)
- Allow `REINDEX` to change the tablespace of the new index (Alexey Kondratov, Michael Paquier, Justin Pryzby)
  This is done by specifying a `TABLESPACE` clause. A `--tablespace` option was also added to `reindexdb` to control this.
- Allow `REINDEX` to process all child tables or indexes of a partitioned relation (Justin Pryzby, Michael Paquier)
- Allow index commands using `CONCURRENTLY` to avoid waiting for the completion of other operations using `CONCURRENTLY` (Álvaro Herrera)
- Improve the performance of `COPY FROM` in binary mode (Bharath Rupireddy, Amit Langote)
- Preserve SQL standard syntax for SQL-defined functions in view definitions (Tom Lane)
  Previously, calls to SQL-standard functions such as `EXTRACT()` were shown in plain function-call syntax. The original syntax is now preserved when displaying a view or rule.
- Add the SQL-standard clause `GRANTED BY` to `GRANT` and `REVOKE` (Peter Eisentraut)
- Add `OR REPLACE` option for `CREATE TRIGGER` (Takamichi Osumi)
  This allows pre-existing triggers to be conditionally replaced.
- Allow `TRUNCATE` to operate on foreign tables (Kazutaka Onishi, Kohei KaiGai)
  The `postgres_fdw` module also now supports this.
- Allow publications to be more easily added to and removed from a subscription (Japin Li)
  The new syntax is `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... ADD/DROP PUBLICATION`. This avoids having to specify all publications to add/remove entries.
- Add primary keys, unique constraints, and foreign keys to `system catalogs` (Peter Eisentraut)
  These changes help GUI tools analyze the system catalogs. The existing unique indexes of catalogs now have associated `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraints. Foreign key relationships are not actually stored or implemented as constraints, but can be obtained for display from the function `pg_get_catalog_foreign_keys()`.
- Allow `CURRENT_ROLE` every place `CURRENT_USER` is accepted (Peter Eisentraut)

**E.3.3.5. Data Types**

- Allow extensions and built-in data types to implement `subscripting` (Dmitry Dolgov)
  Previously subscript handling was hard-coded into the server, so that subscripting could only be applied to array types. This change allows subscript notation to be used to extract or assign portions of a value of any type for which the concept makes sense.
- Allow subscripting of `JSONB` (Dmitry Dolgov)
**JSONB** subscripting can be used to extract and assign to portions of **JSONB** documents.

- **Add support for multirange data types** (Paul Jungwirth, Alexander Korotkov)
  
  These are like range data types, but they allow the specification of multiple, ordered, non-overlapping ranges. An associated multirange type is automatically created for every range type.

- **Add support for the stemming** of languages Armenian, Basque, Catalan, Hindi, Serbian, and Yiddish (Peter Eisentraut)

- **Allow tsearch data files** to have unlimited line lengths (Tom Lane)
  
  The previous limit was 4K bytes. Also remove function `t_readline()`.

- **Add support for Infinity and -Infinity values in the numeric data type** (Tom Lane)

  Floating-point data types already supported these.

- **Add point operators** `<<` and `>>` representing strictly above/below tests (Emre Hasegeli)

  Previously these were called `>` and `<`, but that naming is inconsistent with other geometric data types. The old names remain available, but may someday be removed.

- **Add operators to add and subtract LSN and numeric (byte) values** (Fujii Masao)

- **Add binary data transfer** to be more forgiving of array and record OID mismatches (Tom Lane)

  User-defined relations have long had composite types associated with them, and also array types over those composite types. System catalogs now do as well. This change also fixes an inconsistency that creating a user-defined table in single-user mode would fail to create a composite array type.

**E.3.3.6. Functions**

- **Allow SQL-language functions and procedures** to use SQL-standard function bodies (Peter Eisentraut)

  Previously only string-literal function bodies were supported. When writing a function or procedure in SQL-standard syntax, the body is parsed immediately and stored as a parse tree. This allows better tracking of function dependencies, and can have security benefits.

- **Allow procedures** to have **OUT** parameters (Peter Eisentraut)

- **Allow some function arguments to operate on a mix of compatible data types** (Tom Lane)

  The functions `array_append()`, `array_prepend()`, `array_cat()`, `array_position()`, `array_positions()`, `array_remove()`, `array_replace()`, and `width_bucket()` now take any compatible array instead of any array arguments. This makes them less fussy about exact matches of argument types.

- **Add SQL-standard trim_array() function** (Vik Fearing)

  This could already be done with array slices, but less easily.

- **Add bytea equivalents of ltrim() and rtrim()** (Joel Jacobson)

- **Support negative indexes in split_part()** (Nikhil Benesch)

  Negative values start from the last field and count backward.

- **Add string_to_table() function** to split a string on delimiters (Pavel Stehule)

  This is similar to the `regexp_split_to_table()` function.
• Add `unistr()` function to allow Unicode characters to be specified as backslash-hex escapes in strings (Pavel Stehule)

This is similar to how Unicode can be specified in literal strings.

• Add `bit_xor()` XOR aggregate function (Alexey Bashtanov)

• Add function `bit_count()` to return the number of bits set in a bit or byte string (David Fetter)

• Add `date_bin()` function (John Naylor)

This function “bins” input timestamps, grouping them into intervals of a uniform length aligned with a specified origin.

• Allow `make_timestamp()/make_timestamptz()` to accept negative years (Peter Eisentraut)

Negative values are interpreted as BC years.

• Add newer regular expression `substring()` syntax (Peter Eisentraut)

The new SQL-standard syntax is `SUBSTRING(text SIMILAR pattern ESCAPE escapechar)`. The previous standard syntax was `SUBSTRING(text FROM pattern FOR escapechar)`, which is still accepted by PostgreSQL.

• Allow complemented character class escapes `\D`, `\S`, and `\W` within regular expression brackets (Tom Lane)

• Add `[:word:]` as a regular expression character class, equivalent to `\w` (Tom Lane)

• Allow more flexible data types for default values of `lead()` and `lag()` window functions (Vik Fearing)

• Make non-zero floating-point values divided by infinity return zero (Kyotaro Horiguchi)

Previously such operations produced underflow errors.

• Make floating-point division of NaN by zero return NaN (Tom Lane)

Previously this returned an error.

• Cause `exp()` and `power()` for negative-infinity exponents to return zero (Tom Lane)

Previously they often returned underflow errors.

• Improve the accuracy of geometric computations involving infinity (Tom Lane)

• Mark built-in type coercion functions as leakproof where possible (Tom Lane)

This allows more use of functions that require type conversion in security-sensitive situations.

• Change `pg_describe_object()`, `pg_identify_object()`, and `pg_identify_object_as_address()` to always report helpful error messages for non-existent objects (Michael Paquier)

**E.3.3.7. PL/pgSQL**

• Improve PL/pgSQL’s `expression` and `assignment` parsing (Tom Lane)

This change allows assignment to array slices and nested record fields.

• Allow plpgsql’s `RETURN QUERY` to execute its query using parallelism (Tom Lane)

• Improve performance of repeated `CALLs` within plpgsql procedures (Pavel Stehule, Tom Lane)

**E.3.3.8. Client Interfaces**

• Add `pipeline` mode to `libpq` (Craig Ringer, Matthieu Garrigues, Álvaro Herrera)

This allows multiple queries to be sent, only waiting for completion when a specific synchronization message is sent.
• Enhance libpq’s `target_session_attrs` parameter options (Haribabu Kommi, Greg Nancarrow, Vignesh C, Tom Lane)

  **The new options are** `read-only`, `primary`, `standby`, and `prefer-standby`.

• Improve the output format of libpq’s `PQtrace()` (Aya Iwata, Álvaro Herrera)

• Allow an ECPG SQL identifier to be linked to a specific connection (Hayato Kuroda)

  This is done via `DECLARE ... STATEMENT`.

### E.3.3.9. Client Applications

• Allow `vacuumdb` to skip index cleanup and truncation (Nathan Bossart)

  **The options are** `--no-index-cleanup` and `--no-truncate`.

• Allow `pg_dump` to dump only certain extensions (Guillaume Lelarge)

  This is controlled by option `--extension`.

• Add `pgbench` `permute()` function to randomly shuffle values (Fabien Coelho, Hironobu Suzuki, Dean Rasheed)

• Include disconnection times in the reconnection overhead measured by `pgbench` with `--C` (Yugo Nagata)

• Allow multiple verbose option specifications (`-v`) to increase the logging verbosity (Tom Lane)

  This behavior is supported by `pg_dump`, `pg_dumpall`, and `pg_restore`.

• Allow psql’s `\df` and `\do` commands to specify function and operator argument types (Greg Sabino Mullane, Tom Lane)

  This helps reduce the number of matches printed for overloaded names.

• Add an access method column to psql’s `\d[i|m|t]+` output (Georgios Kokolatos)

• Allow psql’s `\dt` and `\di` to show TOAST tables and their indexes (Justin Pryzby)

• Add psql command `\dx` to list extended statistics objects (Tatsuro Yamada)

• Fix psql’s `\dt` to understand array syntax and backend grammar aliases, like `int` for `integer` (Greg Sabino Mullane, Tom Lane)

• When editing the previous query or a file with psql’s `\e`, or using `\ef` and `\ev`, ignore the results if the editor exits without saving (Laurenz Albe)

  Previously, such edits would load the previous query into the query buffer, and typically execute it immediately. This was deemed to be probably not what the user wants.

• Improve tab completion (Vignesh C, Michael Paquier, Justin Pryzby, Georgios Kokolatos, Julien Rouhaud)

### E.3.3.10. Server Applications

• Add command-line utility `pg_amcheck` to simplify running `contrib/amcheck` tests on many relations (Mark Dilger)

• Add `--no-instructions` option to `initdb` (Magnus Hagander)

  This suppresses the server startup instructions that are normally printed.

• Stop `pg_upgrade` from creating `analyze_new_cluster` script (Magnus Hagander)

  Instead, give comparable `vacuumdb` instructions.
• Remove support for the `postmaster -o` option (Magnus Hagander)

  This option was unnecessary since all passed options could already be specified directly.

E.3.3.11. Documentation

• Rename "Default Roles" to "Predefined Roles" (Bruce Momjian, Stephen Frost)

• Add documentation for the `factorial()` function (Peter Eisentraut)

  With the removal of the `!` operator in this release, `factorial()` is the only built-in way to compute a factorial.

E.3.3.12. Source Code

• Add configure option `--with-ssl={openssl}` to allow future choice of the SSL library to use (Daniel Gustafsson, Michael Paquier)

  The spelling `--with-openssl` is kept for compatibility.

• Add support for abstract Unix-domain sockets (Peter Eisentraut)

  This is currently supported on Linux and Windows.

• Allow Windows to properly handle files larger than four gigabytes (Juan José Santamaría Flecha)

  For example this allows `COPY`, WAL files, and relation segment files to be larger than four gigabytes.

• Add server parameter `debug_discard_caches` to control cache flushing for test purposes (Craig Ringer)

  Previously this behavior could only be set at compile time. To invoke it during initdb, use the new option `--discard-caches`.

• Various improvements in valgrind error detection ability (Álvaro Herrera, Peter Geoghegan)

• Add a test module for the regular expression package (Tom Lane)

• Add support for LLVM version 12 (Andres Freund)

• Change SHA1, SHA2, and MD5 hash computations to use the OpenSSL EVP API (Michael Paquier)

  This is more modern and supports FIPS mode.

• Remove separate build-time control over the choice of random number generator (Daniel Gustafsson)

  This is now always determined by the choice of SSL library.

• Add direct conversion routines between EUC_TW and Big5 encodings (Heikki Linnakangas)

• Add collation version support for FreeBSD (Thomas Munro)

• Add `amadjustmembers` to the index access method API (Tom Lane)

  This allows an index access method to provide validity checking during creation of a new operator class or family.

• Provide feature-test macros in `libpq-fe.h` for recently-added libpq features (Tom Lane, Álvaro Herrera)

  Historically, applications have usually used compile-time checks of `PG_VERSION_NUM` to test whether a feature is available. But that's normally the server version, which might not be a good guide to libpq's version. `libpq-fe.h` now offers `#define` symbols denoting application-visible features added in v14; the intent is to keep adding symbols for such features in future versions.
E.3.3.13. Additional Modules

- Allow subscripting of `hstore` values (Tom Lane, Dmitry Dolgov)
- Allow GiST/GIN `pg_trgm` indexes to do equality lookups (Julien Rouhaud)
  
  This is similar to `LIKE` except no wildcards are honored.
- Allow the `cube` data type to be transferred in binary mode (KaiGai Kohei)
- Allow `pgstattuple_approx()` to report on TOAST tables (Peter Eisentraut)
- Add contrib module `pg_surgery` which allows changes to row visibility (Ashutosh Sharma)
  
  This is useful for correcting database corruption.
- Add contrib module `old_snapshot` to report the `XID/time` mapping used by an active `old_snapshot_threshold` (Robert Haas)
- Allow `amcheck` to also check heap pages (Mark Dilger)
  
  Previously it only checked B-Tree index pages.
- Allow `pageinspect` to inspect GiST indexes (Andrey Borodin, Heikki Linnakangas)
- Change `pageinspect` block numbers to be `bigints` (Peter Eisentraut)
- Mark `btree_gist` functions as parallel safe (Steven Winfield)

E.3.3.13.1. `pg_stat_statements`

- Move query hash computation from `pg_stat_statements` to the core server (Julien Rouhaud)

  The new server parameter `compute_query_id`'s default of `auto` will automatically enable query id computation when this extension is loaded.
- Cause `pg_stat_statements` to track top and nested statements separately (Julien Rohaud)

  Previously, when tracking all statements, identical top and nested statements were tracked as a single entry; but it seems more useful to separate such usages.
- Add row counts for utility commands to `pg_stat_statements` (Fujii Masao, Katsuragi Yuta, Seino Yuki)
- Add `pg_stat_statements_info` system view to show `pg_stat_statements` activity (Katsuragi Yuta, Yuhi Seino, Naoki Nakamichi)

E.3.3.13.2. `postgres_fdw`

- Allow `postgres_fdw` to `INSERT` rows in bulk (Takayuki Tsunakawa, Tomas Vondra, Amit Langote)
- Allow `postgres_fdw` to import table partitions if specified by `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA ... LIMIT TO` (Matthias van de Meent)

  By default, only the root of a partitioned table is imported.
- Add `postgres_fdw` function `postgres_fdw_get_connections()` to report open foreign server connections (Bharath Rupiredddy)
- Allow control over whether foreign servers keep connections open after transaction completion (Bharath Rupiredddy)

    This is controlled by `keep_connections` and defaults to `on`.
- Allow `postgres_fdw` to reestablish foreign server connections if necessary (Bharath Rupiredddy)

    Previously foreign server restarts could cause foreign table access errors.
- Add `postgres_fdw` functions to discard cached connections (Bharath Rupiredddy)
E.3.4. Acknowledgments

The following individuals (in alphabetical order) have contributed to this release as patch authors, committers, reviewers, testers, or reporters of issues.

Abhijit Menon-Sen
Ádám Balogh
Adrian Ho
Ahsan Hadi
Ajin Cherian
Aleksander Alekseev
Alessandro Gherardi
Alex Kozhemyakin
Alexander Korotkov
Alexander Lakhin
Alexander Nawratil
Alexander Pyhalov
Alexandra Wang
Alexey Bashtanov
Alexey Bulgakov
Alexey Kondratov
Álvaro Herrera
Amit Kapila
Amit Khandekar
Amit Langote
Amul Sul
Anastasia Lubennikova
Andreas Grob
Andreas Kretschmer
Andreas Seltenreich
Andreas Wicht
Andres Freund
Andrew Bille
Andrew Dunstan
Andrew Gierth
Andrey Borodin
Andrey Lepikhov
Andy Fan
Anton Voloshin
Antonin Houska
Arne Roland
Arseny Sher
Arthur Nascimento
Arthur Zakirov
Ashutosh Bapat
Ashutosh Sharma
Ashwin Agrawal
Asif Rehman
Asim Praveen
Atsushi Torikoshi
Aya Iwata
Barry Pederson
Bas Poot
Bauyrzhan Sakhariyev
Beena Emerson
Benoît Lobréau
Bernd Helmle
Bernhard M. Wiedemann
Release Notes

Bertrand Drouvot
Bharath Rupireddy
Boris Kolpackov
Brar Piening
Brian Ye
Bruce Momjian
Bryn Llewellyn
Cameron Daniel
Chapman Flack
Charles Samborski
Charlie Hornsby
Chen Jiaoqian
Chris Wilson
Christian Quest
Christoph Berg
Christophe Courtois
Corey Huinker
Craig Ringer
Dagfinn Ilmari Mannsåker
Dana Burd
Daniel Cherniy
Daniel Gustafsson
Daniel Vérité
Daniel Westermann
Daniele Varrazzo
Dar Alathar-Yemen
Darafei Praliaskouski
Dave Cramer
David Christensen
David Fetter
David G. Johnston
David Geier
David Gilman
David Pirotte
David Rowley
David Steele
David Turon
David Zhang
Dean Rasheed
Denis Patron
Dian Fay
Dilip Kumar
Dimitri Nüscheler
Dmitriy Kuzmin
Dmitry Dolgov
Dmitry Marakasov
Domagoj Smoljanovic
Dong Wook
Douglas Doole
Duncan Sands
Edmund Horner
Edson Richter
Egor Rogov
Ekaterina Kiryanova
Elena Indrupskaya
Emil Iggland
Emre Hasegeli
Eric Thinnes
Release Notes

Jasen Betts
Jason Harvey
Jason Kim
Jeevan Ladhe
Jeff Davis
Jeff Janes
Jelte Fennema
Jeremy Evans
Jeremy Finzel
Jeremy Smith
Jesse Kinkead
Jesse Zhang
Jie Zhang
Jim Doty
Jim Nasby
Jimmy Angelakos
Jimmy Yih
Jiri Fejfar
Joe Conway
Joel Jacobson
John Naylor
John Thompson
Jonathan Katz
Josef Simánek
Joseph Nahmias
Josh Berkus
Juan José Santamaría Flecha
Julien Rouhaud
Junfeng Yang
Jürgen Purtz
Justin Pryzby
Kazutaka Onishi
Keisuke Kuroda
Kelly Min
Kensuke Okamura
Kevin Sweet
Kevin Yeap
Kirk Jamison
Kohei KaiGai
Konstantin Knizhnik
Kota Miyake
Krzysztof Gradek
Kuntal Ghosh
Kyle Kingsbury
Kyotaro Horiguchi
Laurent Hasson
Laurenz Albe
Lee Dong Wook
Li Japin
Liu Huailing
Luc Vlaming
Ludovic Kuty
Luis Roberto
Lukas Eder
Ma Liangzhu
Maciek Sakrejda
Madan Kumar
Magnus Hagander
Release Notes

Mahendra Singh Thalor
Maksim Milyutin
Marc Boeren
Marcin Krupowicz
Marco Atzeri
Marek Szuba
Marina Polyakova
Mario Emmenlauer
Mark Dilger
Mark Wong
Mark Zhao
Markus Wanner
Martin Marqués
Martin Visser
Masahiko Sawada
Masahiro Ikeda
Masao Fuji
Mathis Rudolf
Matthias van de Meent
Matthieu Garrigues
Matthijs van der Vleuten
Maxim Orlov
Melanie Plageman
Merlin Moncure
Michael Banck
Michael Brown
Michael Meskes
Michael Paquier
Michael Paul Killian
Michael Powers
Michael Vastola
Michail Nikolaev
Michal Albrecht
Mikael Gustavsson
Movead Li
Muhammad Usama
Nagaraj Raj
Naoki Nakamichi
Nathan Bossart
Nathan Long
Nazli Ugur Koyluoglu
Neha Sharma
Neil Chen
Nick Cleaton
Nico Williams
Nikhil Benesch
Nikhil Sontakke
Nikita Glukhov
Nikita Konev
Nikolai Berkoff
Nikolay Samokhvalov
Nikolay Shaplov
Nitin Jadhav
Noah Misch
Noriyoshi Shinoda
Odin Ugedal
Oleg Bartunov
Oleg Samoilov
Release Notes

Sergey Zubkovsky
Shawn Wang
Shay Rojansky
Shi Yu
Shinya Kato
Shinya Okano
Sigrid Ehrenreich
Simon Norris
Simon Riggs
Sofoklis Papasofokli
Soumyadeep Chakraborty
Stas Kelvich
Stephan Springl
Stéphane Lorek
Stephen Frost
Steven Winfield
Surafel Temesgen
Suraj Kharage
Sven Klemm
Takamichi Osumi
Takashi Menjo
Takayuki Tsunakawa
Tang Haiying
Tatsuhito Kasahara
Tatsuo Ishii
Tatsuro Yamada
Theodor Arsenij Larionov-Trichkin
Thomas Kellerer
Thomas Munro
Thomas Trenz
Tijs van Dam
Tom Ellis
Tom Gottfried
Tom Lane
Tom Vijlbrief
Tomas Barton
Tomas Vondra
Tomohiro Hiramitsu
Tony Reix
Vaishnavi Prabakaran
Valentin Gatien-Baron
Victor Wagner
Victor Yegorov
Vignesh Č
Vik Fearing
Vitaly Ustinov
Vladimir Sitnikov
Vyacheslav Shablistyy
Wang Shenhao
Wei Wang
Wells Oliver
Wenjing Zeng
Wolfgang Walther
Yang Lin
Yanliang Lei
Yaoguang Chen
Yaroslav Pashinsky
Yaroslav Schekin

2237
E.4. Prior Releases

Release notes for prior versions can be found online. At the time of Postgres Pro Standard 14 release, these prior versions were supported:

- Postgres Pro Standard 12: https://postgrespro.com/docs/postgrespro/12/release.html
- Postgres Pro Standard 10: https://postgrespro.com/docs/postgrespro/10/release.html
Appendix F. Additional Supplied Modules

This appendix and the next one contain information regarding additional modules available in the Postgres Pro Standard distribution. These include porting tools, analysis utilities, and plug-in features that are not part of the core Postgres Pro system, mainly because they address a limited audience or are too experimental to be part of the main source tree. This does not preclude their usefulness.

This appendix covers the extensions and other server plug-in modules. Appendix G covers the utility programs.

In Postgres Pro Standard, these modules are made available as a separate subpackage postgrespro-std-14-contrib.

Many modules supply new user-defined functions, operators, or types. To make use of one of these modules, after you have installed the code you need to register the new SQL objects in the database system. This is done by executing a CREATE EXTENSION command. In a fresh database, you can simply do

```
CREATE EXTENSION module_name;
```

This command registers the new SQL objects in the current database only, so you need to run it in each database that you want the module's facilities to be available in. Alternatively, run it in database template1 so that the extension will be copied into subsequently-created databases by default.

For all these modules, CREATE EXTENSION must be run by a database superuser, unless the module is considered “trusted”, in which case it can be run by any user who has CREATE privilege on the current database. Modules that are trusted are identified as such in the sections that follow. Generally, trusted modules are ones that cannot provide access to outside-the-database functionality.

Many modules allow you to install their objects in a schema of your choice. To do that, add SCHEMA schema_name to the CREATE EXTENSION command. By default, the objects will be placed in your current creation target schema, which in turn defaults to public.

Note, however, that some of these modules are not “extensions” in this sense, but are loaded into the server in some other way, for instance by way of shared_preload_libraries. See the documentation of each module for details.

F.1. adminpack

adminpack provides a number of support functions which pgAdmin and other administration and management tools can use to provide additional functionality, such as remote management of server log files. Use of all these functions is only allowed to the superuser by default but may be allowed to other users by using the GRANT command.

The functions shown in Table F.1 provide write access to files on the machine hosting the server. (See also the functions in Table 9.97, which provide read-only access.) Only files within the database cluster directory can be accessed, unless the user is a superuser or given one of the pg_read_server_files, or pg_write_server_files roles, as appropriate for the function, but either a relative or absolute path is allowable.

Table F.1. adminpack Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_catalog.pg_file_write</td>
<td>(filename text, data text, append boolean) → bigint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Writes, or appends to, a text file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_catalog.pg_file_sync (filename text) → void</code></td>
<td>Flushes a file or directory to disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_catalog.pg_file_rename (oldname text, newname text [, archivename text ]) → boolean</code></td>
<td>Renames a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_catalog.pg_file_unlink (filename text) → boolean</code></td>
<td>Removes a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pg_catalog.pg_logdir_LS () → setof record</code></td>
<td>Lists the log files in the log_directory directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`pg_file_write` writes the specified data into the file named by filename. If append is false, the file must not already exist. If append is true, the file can already exist, and will be appended to if so. Returns the number of bytes written.

`pg_file_sync` fsyncs the specified file or directory named by filename. An error is thrown on failure (e.g., the specified file is not present). Note that data_sync_retry has no effect on this function, and therefore a PANIC-level error will not be raised even on failure to flush database files.

`pg_file_rename` renames a file. If archivename is omitted or NULL, it simply renames oldname to newname (which must not already exist). If archivename is provided, it first renames newname to archivename (which must not already exist), and then renames oldname to newname. In event of failure of the second rename step, it will try to rename archivename back to newname before reporting the error. Returns true on success, false if the source file(s) are not present or not writable; other cases throw errors.

`pg_file_unlink` removes the specified file. Returns true on success, false if the specified file is not present or the unlink() call fails; other cases throw errors.

`pg_logdir_LS` returns the start timestamps and path names of all the log files in the log_directory directory. The log_filename parameter must have its default setting (postgresql-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log) to use this function.

**F.2. amcheck**

The amcheck module provides functions that allow you to verify the logical consistency of the structure of relations.

The B-Tree checking functions verify various invariants in the structure of the representation of particular relations. The correctness of the access method functions behind index scans and other important operations relies on these invariants always holding. For example, certain functions verify, among other things, that all B-Tree pages have items in “logical” order (e.g., for B-Tree indexes on text, index tuples should be in collated lexical order). If that particular invariant somehow fails to hold, we can expect binary searches on the affected page to incorrectly guide index scans, resulting in wrong answers to SQL queries. If the structure appears to be valid, no error is raised.

Verification is performed using the same procedures as those used by index scans themselves, which may be user-defined operator class code. For example, B-Tree index verification relies on comparisons made with one or more B-Tree support function 1 routines. See Section 36.16.3 for details of operator class support functions.

Unlike the B-Tree checking functions which report corruption by raising errors, the heap checking function `verify_heapam` checks a table and attempts to return a set of rows, one row per corruption detected. Despite this, if facilities that `verify_heapam` relies upon are themselves corrupted, the function may be unable to continue and may instead raise an error.
Permission to execute `amcheck` functions may be granted to non-superusers, but before granting such permissions careful consideration should be given to data security and privacy concerns. Although the corruption reports generated by these functions do not focus on the contents of the corrupted data so much as on the structure of that data and the nature of the corruptions found, an attacker who gains permission to execute these functions, particularly if the attacker can also induce corruption, might be able to infer something of the data itself from such messages.

### F.2.1. Functions

**bt_index_check(index regclass, heapallindexed boolean) returns void**

`bt_index_check` tests that its target, a B-Tree index, respects a variety of invariants. Example usage:

```sql
test=# SELECT bt_index_check(index => c.oid, heapallindexed => i.indisunique),
       c.relname,
       c.relpages
FROM pg_index i
JOIN pg_opclass op ON i.indclass[0] = op.oid
JOIN pg_am am ON op.opcmethod = am.oid
JOIN pg_class c ON i.indexrelid = c.oid
JOIN pg_namespace n ON c.relnamespace = n.oid
WHERE am.amname = 'btree' AND n.nspname = 'pg_catalog'
-- Don't check temp tables, which may be from another session:
AND c.relpersistence != 't'
-- Function may throw an error when this is omitted:
AND c.relkind = 'i' AND i.indisready AND i.indisvalid
ORDER BY c.relpages DESC LIMIT 10;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bt_index_check</th>
<th>relname</th>
<th>relpages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pg_depend_reference_index</td>
<td></td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_depend_depender_index</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_proc_proname_args_nsp_index</td>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_description_o_c_o_index</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_attribute_relid_attnam_index</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_proc_oid_index</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_attribute_relid_attnum_index</td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_amproc_fam_proc_index</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_amop_opr_fam_index</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pg_amop_fam_strat_index</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(10 rows)

This example shows a session that performs verification of the 10 largest catalog indexes in the database "test". Verification of the presence of heap tuples as index tuples is requested for the subset that are unique indexes. Since no error is raised, all indexes tested appear to be logically consistent. Naturally, this query could easily be changed to call `bt_index_check` for every index in the database where verification is supported.

`bt_index_check` acquires an AccessShareLock on the target index and the heap relation it belongs to. This lock mode is the same lock mode acquired on relations by simple `SELECT` statements. `bt_index_check` does not verify invariants that span child/parent relationships, but will verify the presence of all heap tuples as index tuples within the index when `heapallindexed` is `true`. When a routine, lightweight test for corruption is required in a live production environment, using `bt_index_check` often provides the best trade-off between thoroughness of verification and limiting the impact on application performance and availability.

**bt_index_parent_check(index regclass, heapallindexed boolean, rootdescend boolean) returns void**

`bt_index_parent_check` tests that its target, a B-Tree index, respects a variety of invariants. Optionally, when the `heapallindexed` argument is `true`, the function verifies the presence of all heap tuples that should be found within the index. When the optional `rootdescend` argument is
true, verification re-finds tuples on the leaf level by performing a new search from the root page for each tuple. The checks that can be performed by `bt_index_parent_check` are a superset of the checks that can be performed by `bt_index_check`. `bt_index_parent_check` can be thought of as a more thorough variant of `bt_index_check`: unlike `bt_index_check`, `bt_index_parent_check` also checks invariants that span parent/child relationships, including checking that there are no missing downlinks in the index structure. `bt_index_parent_check` follows the general convention of raising an error if it finds a logical inconsistency or other problem.

A `ShareLock` is required on the target index by `bt_index_parent_check` (a `ShareLock` is also acquired on the heap relation). These locks prevent concurrent data modification from `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands. The locks also prevent the underlying relation from being concurrently processed by `VACUUM`, as well as all other utility commands. Note that the function holds locks only while running, not for the entire transaction.

`bt_index_parent_check`'s additional verification is more likely to detect various pathological cases. These cases may involve an incorrectly implemented B-Tree operator class used by the index that is checked, or, hypothetically, undiscovered bugs in the underlying B-Tree index access method code. Note that `bt_index_parent_check` cannot be used when Hot Standby mode is enabled (i.e., on read-only physical replicas), unlike `bt_index_check`.

**Tip**

`bt_index_check` and `bt_index_parent_check` both output log messages about the verification process at `DEBUG1` and `DEBUG2` severity levels. These messages provide detailed information about the verification process that may be of interest to PostgreSQL developers. Advanced users may also find this information helpful, since it provides additional context should verification actually detect an inconsistency. Running:

```
SET client_min_messages = DEBUG1;
```

in an interactive psql session before running a verification query will display messages about the progress of verification with a manageable level of detail.

```
verify_heapam(relation regclass, on_error_stop boolean, check_toast boolean, skip text, startblock bigint, endblock bigint, blkno OUT bigint, offnum OUT integer, attnum OUT integer, msg OUT text) returns setof record
```

Checks a table for structural corruption, where pages in the relation contain data that is invalidly formatted, and for logical corruption, where pages are structurally valid but inconsistent with the rest of the database cluster.

The following optional arguments are recognized:

**on_error_stop**

If true, corruption checking stops at the end of the first block in which any corruptions are found. Defaults to false.

**check_toast**

If true, toasted values are checked against the target relation's TOAST table.

This option is known to be slow. Also, if the toast table or its index is corrupt, checking it against toast values could conceivably crash the server, although in many cases this would just produce an error.

Defaults to false.

**skip**

If not none, corruption checking skips blocks that are marked as all-visible or all-frozen, as specified. Valid options are all-visible, all-frozen and none.
Additional Supplied Modules

Defaults to none.

**startblock**

If specified, corruption checking begins at the specified block, skipping all previous blocks. It is an error to specify a *startblock* outside the range of blocks in the target table.

By default, checking begins at the first block.

**endblock**

If specified, corruption checking ends at the specified block, skipping all remaining blocks. It is an error to specify an *endblock* outside the range of blocks in the target table.

By default, all blocks are checked.

For each corruption detected, *verify_heapam* returns a row with the following columns:

- **blkno**
  The number of the block containing the corrupt page.

- **offnum**
  The OffsetNumber of the corrupt tuple.

- **attnum**
  The attribute number of the corrupt column in the tuple, if the corruption is specific to a column and not the tuple as a whole.

- **msg**
  A message describing the problem detected.

**F.2.2. Optional heapallindexed Verification**

When the *heapallindexed* argument to B-Tree verification functions is true, an additional phase of verification is performed against the table associated with the target index relation. This consists of a "dummy" CREATE INDEX operation, which checks for the presence of all hypothetical new index tuples against a temporary, in-memory summarizing structure (this is built when needed during the basic first phase of verification). The summarizing structure “fingerprints” every tuple found within the target index. The high level principle behind *heapallindexed* verification is that a new index that is equivalent to the existing, target index must only have entries that can be found in the existing structure.

The additional *heapallindexed* phase adds significant overhead: verification will typically take several times longer. However, there is no change to the relation-level locks acquired when *heapallindexed* verification is performed.

The summarizing structure is bound in size by *maintenance_work_mem*. In order to ensure that there is no more than a 2% probability of failure to detect an inconsistency for each heap tuple that should be represented in the index, approximately 2 bytes of memory are needed per tuple. As less memory is made available per tuple, the probability of missing an inconsistency slowly increases. This approach limits the overhead of verification significantly, while only slightly reducing the probability of detecting a problem, especially for installations where verification is treated as a routine maintenance task. Any single absent or malformed tuple has a new opportunity to be detected with each new verification attempt.

**F.2.3. Using amcheck Effectively**

*amcheck* can be effective at detecting various types of failure modes that *data checksums* will fail to catch. These include:

- Structural inconsistencies caused by incorrect operator class implementations.

This includes issues caused by the comparison rules of operating system collations changing. Comparisons of datums of a collatable type like *text* must be immutable (just as all comparisons used for B-Tree index scans must be immutable), which implies that operating system collation
rules must never change. Though rare, updates to operating system collation rules can cause these issues. More commonly, an inconsistency in the collation order between a primary server and a standby server is implicated, possibly because the major operating system version in use is inconsistent. Such inconsistencies will generally only arise on standby servers, and so can generally only be detected on standby servers.

If a problem like this arises, it may not affect each individual index that is ordered using an affected collation, simply because indexed values might happen to have the same absolute ordering regardless of the behavioral inconsistency. See Section 22.1 and Section 22.2 for further details about how Postgres Pro uses operating system locales and collations.

- Structural inconsistencies between indexes and the heap relations that are indexed (when heapallindexed verification is performed).

There is no cross-checking of indexes against their heap relation during normal operation. Symptoms of heap corruption can be subtle.

- Corruption caused by hypothetical undiscovered bugs in the underlying Postgres Pro access method code, sort code, or transaction management code.

Automatic verification of the structural integrity of indexes plays a role in the general testing of new or proposed Postgres Pro features that could plausibly allow a logical inconsistency to be introduced. Verification of table structure and associated visibility and transaction status information plays a similar role. One obvious testing strategy is to call amcheck functions continuously when running the standard regression tests.

- File system or storage subsystem faults where checksums happen to simply not be enabled.

Note that amcheck examines a page as represented in some shared memory buffer at the time of verification if there is only a shared buffer hit when accessing the block. Consequently, amcheck does not necessarily examine data read from the file system at the time of verification. Note that when checksums are enabled, amcheck may raise an error due to a checksum failure when a corrupt block is read into a buffer.

- Corruption caused by faulty RAM, or the broader memory subsystem.

Postgres Pro does not protect against correctable memory errors and it is assumed you will operate using RAM that uses industry standard Error Correcting Codes (ECC) or better protection. However, ECC memory is typically only immune to single-bit errors, and should not be assumed to provide absolute protection against failures that result in memory corruption.

When heapallindexed verification is performed, there is generally a greatly increased chance of detecting single-bit errors, since strict binary equality is tested, and the indexed attributes within the heap are tested.

Structural corruption can happen due to faulty storage hardware, or relation files being overwritten or modified by unrelated software. This kind of corruption can also be detected with data page checksums.

Relation pages which are correctly formatted, internally consistent, and correct relative to their own internal checksums may still contain logical corruption. As such, this kind of corruption cannot be detected with checksums. Examples include toasted values in the main table which lack a corresponding entry in the toast table, and tuples in the main table with a Transaction ID that is older than the oldest valid Transaction ID in the database or cluster.

Multiple causes of logical corruption have been observed in production systems, including bugs in the PostgreSQL server software, faulty and ill-conceived backup and restore tools, and user error.

Corrupt relations are most concerning in live production environments, precisely the same environments where high risk activities are least welcome. For this reason, verify_heapam has been designed to diagnose corruption without undue risk. It cannot guard against all causes of backend crashes, as even executing the calling query could be unsafe on a badly corrupted system. Access to catalog tables is performed and could be problematic if the catalogs themselves are corrupted.
In general, amcheck can only prove the presence of corruption; it cannot prove its absence.

**F.2.4. Repairing Corruption**

No error concerning corruption raised by amcheck should ever be a false positive. amcheck raises errors in the event of conditions that, by definition, should never happen, and so careful analysis of amcheck errors is often required.

There is no general method of repairing problems that amcheck detects. An explanation for the root cause of an invariant violation should be sought. pageinspect may play a useful role in diagnosing corruption that amcheck detects. A REINDEX may not be effective in repairing corruption.

**F.3. auth_delay**

auth_delay causes the server to pause briefly before reporting authentication failure, to make brute-force attacks on database passwords more difficult. Note that it does nothing to prevent denial-of-service attacks, and may even exacerbate them, since processes that are waiting before reporting authentication failure will still consume connection slots.

In order to function, this module must be loaded via shared_preload_libraries in postgresql.conf.

**F.3.1. Configuration Parameters**

auth_delay.milliseconds (int)

The number of milliseconds to wait before reporting an authentication failure. The default is 0.

These parameters must be set in postgresql.conf. Typical usage might be:

```plaintext
# postgresql.conf
shared_preload_libraries = 'auth_delay'
auth_delay.milliseconds = '500'
```

**F.3.2. Author**

KaiGai Kohei <kaigai@ak.jp.nec.com>

**F.4. auto_explain**

The auto_explain module provides a means for logging execution plans of slow statements automatically, without having to run EXPLAIN by hand. This is especially helpful for tracking down un-optimized queries in large applications.

The module provides no SQL-accessible functions. To use it, simply load it into the server. You can load it into an individual session:

```plaintext
LOAD 'auto_explain';
```

(You must be superuser to do that.) More typical usage is to preload it into some or all sessions by including auto_explain in session_preload_libraries or shared_preload_libraries in postgresql.conf. Then you can track unexpectedly slow queries no matter when they happen. Of course there is a price in overhead for that.

**F.4.1. Configuration Parameters**

There are several configuration parameters that control the behavior of auto_explain. Note that the default behavior is to do nothing, so you must set at least auto_explain.log_min_duration if you want any results.

auto_explain.log_min_duration (integer)

auto_explain.log_min_duration is the minimum statement execution time, in milliseconds, that will cause the statement's plan to be logged. Setting this to 0 logs all plans. -1 (the default) disables
logging of plans. For example, if you set it to 250ms then all statements that run 250ms or longer will be logged. Only superusers can change this setting.

**auto_explain.log_analyze (boolean)**

`auto_explain.log_analyze` causes `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` output, rather than just `EXPLAIN` output, to be printed when an execution plan is logged. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

**Note**

When this parameter is on, per-plan-node timing occurs for all statements executed, whether or not they run long enough to actually get logged. This can have an extremely negative impact on performance. Turning off `auto_explain.log_timing` ameliorates the performance cost, at the price of obtaining less information.

**auto_explain.log_buffers (boolean)**

`auto_explain.log_buffers` controls whether buffer usage statistics are printed when an execution plan is logged; it’s equivalent to the `BUFFERS` option of `EXPLAIN`. This parameter has no effect unless `auto_explain.log_analyze` is enabled. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

**auto_explain.log_wal (boolean)**

`auto_explain.log_wal` controls whether WAL usage statistics are printed when an execution plan is logged; it’s equivalent to the `WAL` option of `EXPLAIN`. This parameter has no effect unless `auto_explain.log_analyze` is enabled. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

**auto_explain.log_timing (boolean)**

`auto_explain.log_timing` controls whether per-node timing information is printed when an execution plan is logged; it’s equivalent to the `TIMING` option of `EXPLAIN`. The overhead of repeatedly reading the system clock can slow down queries significantly on some systems, so it may be useful to set this parameter to off when only actual row counts, and not exact times, are needed. This parameter has no effect unless `auto_explain.log_analyze` is enabled. This parameter is on by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

**auto_explain.log_triggers (boolean)**

`auto_explain.log_triggers` causes trigger execution statistics to be included when an execution plan is logged. This parameter has no effect unless `auto_explain.log_analyze` is enabled. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

**auto_explain.log.verbose (boolean)**

`auto_explain.log.verbose` controls whether verbose details are printed when an execution plan is logged; it’s equivalent to the `VERBOSE` option of `EXPLAIN`. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

**auto_explain.log.settings (boolean)**

`auto_explain.log.settings` controls whether information about modified configuration options is printed when an execution plan is logged. Only options affecting query planning with value different from the built-in default value are included in the output. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

**auto_explain.log.format (enum)**

`auto_explain.log.format` selects the `EXPLAIN` output format to be used. The allowed values are `text`, `xml`, `json`, and `yaml`. The default is text. Only superusers can change this setting.
Additional Supplied Modules

auto_explain.log_level (enum)
   auto_explain.log_level selects the log level at which auto_explain will log the query plan. Valid values are DEBUG5, DEBUG4, DEBUG3, DEBUG2, DEBUG1, INFO, NOTICE, WARNING, and LOG. The default is LOG. Only superusers can change this setting.

auto_explain.log_nested_statements (boolean)
   auto_explain.log_nested_statements causes nested statements (statements executed inside a function) to be considered for logging. When it is off, only top-level query plans are logged. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

auto_explain.sample_rate (real)
   auto_explain.sample_rate causes auto_explain to only explain a fraction of the statements in each session. The default is 1, meaning explain all the queries. In case of nested statements, either all will be explained or none. Only superusers can change this setting.

In ordinary usage, these parameters are set in postgresql.conf, although superusers can alter them on-the-fly within their own sessions. Typical usage might be:

```
# postgresql.conf
session_preload_libraries = 'auto_explain'
auto_explain.log_min_duration = '3s'
```

F.4.2. Example

```
postgres=# LOAD 'auto_explain';
postgres=# SET auto_explain.log_min_duration = 0;
postgres=# SET auto_explain.log_analyze = true;
postgres=# SELECT count(*)
    FROM pg_class, pg_index
    WHERE oid = indrelid AND indisunique;
```

This might produce log output such as:

```
LOG: duration: 0.196 ms planning: 0.548 ms plan:
   Query Text: SELECT count(*)
   FROM pg_class, pg_index
   WHERE oid = indrelid AND indisunique;
   Aggregate (cost=16.79..16.80 rows=1 width=0) (actual time=3.626..3.627 rows=1 loops=1)
      ->  Hash Join (cost=4.17..16.55 rows=92 width=0) (actual time=3.349..3.594 rows=92 loops=1)
         Hash Cond: (pg_class.oid = pg_index.indrelid)
         ->  Seq Scan on pg_class (cost=0.00..9.55 rows=255 width=4) (actual time=0.016..0.140 rows=255 loops=1)
         ->  Hash (cost=3.02..3.02 rows=92 width=4) (actual time=3.238..3.238 rows=92 loops=1)
            Buckets: 1024 Batches: 1 Memory Usage: 4kB
               ->  Seq Scan on pg_index (cost=0.00..3.02 rows=92 width=4) (actual time=0.008..3.187 rows=92 loops=1)
                  Filter: indisunique
```

Note that Postgres Pro added a new field to the output to show planning time.

F.4.3. Authors

Takahiro Itagaki <itagaki.takahiro@oss.ntt.co.jp>

Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia
**F.5. bloom**

*bloom* provides an index access method based on *Bloom filters*.

A Bloom filter is a space-efficient data structure that is used to test whether an element is a member of a set. In the case of an index access method, it allows fast exclusion of non-matching tuples via signatures whose size is determined at index creation.

A signature is a lossy representation of the indexed attribute(s), and as such is prone to reporting false positives; that is, it may be reported that an element is in the set, when it is not. So index search results must always be rechecked using the actual attribute values from the heap entry. Larger signatures reduce the odds of a false positive and thus reduce the number of useless heap visits, but of course also make the index larger and hence slower to scan.

This type of index is most useful when a table has many attributes and queries test arbitrary combinations of them. A traditional btree index is faster than a bloom index, but it can require many btree indexes to support all possible queries where one needs only a single bloom index. Note however that bloom indexes only support equality queries, whereas btree indexes can also perform inequality and range searches.

**F.5.1. Parameters**

A *bloom* index accepts the following parameters in its *WITH* clause:

- **length**
  
  Length of each signature (index entry) in bits. It is rounded up to the nearest multiple of 16. The default is 80 bits and the maximum is 4096.

- **col1 — col32**
  
  Number of bits generated for each index column. Each parameter’s name refers to the number of the index column that it controls. The default is 2 bits and the maximum is 4095. Parameters for index columns not actually used are ignored.

**F.5.2. Examples**

This is an example of creating a bloom index:

```
CREATE INDEX bloomidx ON tbloom USING bloom (i1,i2,i3)
  WITH (length=80, col1=2, col2=2, col3=4);
```

The index is created with a signature length of 80 bits, with attributes i1 and i2 mapped to 2 bits, and attribute i3 mapped to 4 bits. We could have omitted the *length*, *col1*, and *col2* specifications since those have the default values.

Here is a more complete example of bloom index definition and usage, as well as a comparison with equivalent btree indexes. The bloom index is considerably smaller than the btree index, and can perform better.

```
=# CREATE TABLE tbloom AS
    SELECT
      (random() * 1000000)::int as i1,
      (random() * 1000000)::int as i2,
      (random() * 1000000)::int as i3,
      (random() * 1000000)::int as i4,
      (random() * 1000000)::int as i5,
      (random() * 1000000)::int as i6
    FROM
      generate_series(1,10000000);
    SELECT 10000000
```

A sequential scan over this large table takes a long time:

```sql
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tbloom WHERE i2 = 898732 AND i5 = 123451;
```

---

```
 Seq Scan on tbloom  (cost=0.00..2137.14 rows=3 width=24) (actual time=16.971..16.971 rows=0 loops=1)
   Filter: ((i2 = 898732) AND (i5 = 123451))
 Rows Removed by Filter: 100000
Planning Time: 0.346 ms
Execution Time: 16.988 ms
(5 rows)
```

Even with the btree index defined the result will still be a sequential scan:

```sql
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx ON tbloom (i1, i2, i3, i4, i5, i6);
CREATE INDEX
=# SELECT pg_size_pretty(pg_relation_size('btreeidx'));
pg_size_pretty
----------------
3976 kB
(1 row)
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tbloom WHERE i2 = 898732 AND i5 = 123451;
```

---

```
 Seq Scan on tbloom  (cost=0.00..2137.00 rows=2 width=24) (actual time=12.805..12.805 rows=0 loops=1)
   Filter: ((i2 = 898732) AND (i5 = 123451))
 Rows Removed by Filter: 100000
Planning Time: 0.138 ms
Execution Time: 12.817 ms
(5 rows)
```

Having the bloom index defined on the table is better than btree in handling this type of search:

```sql
=# CREATE INDEX bloomidx ON tbloom USING bloom (i1, i2, i3, i4, i5, i6);
CREATE INDEX
=# SELECT pg_size_pretty(pg_relation_size('bloomidx'));
pg_size_pretty
----------------
1584 kB
(1 row)
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tbloom WHERE i2 = 898732 AND i5 = 123451;
```

---

```
 Bitmap Heap Scan on tbloom  (cost=1792.00..1799.69 rows=2 width=24) (actual time=0.388..0.388 rows=0 loops=1)
   Recheck Cond: ((i2 = 898732) AND (i5 = 123451))
 Rows Removed by Index Recheck: 29
 Heap Blocks: exact=28
 -> Bitmap Index Scan on bloomidx  (cost=0.00..1792.00 rows=2 width=0) (actual time=0.356..0.356 rows=29 loops=1)
    Index Cond: ((i2 = 898732) AND (i5 = 123451))
Planning Time: 0.099 ms
```

2249
Now, the main problem with the btree search is that btree is inefficient when the search conditions do not constrain the leading index column(s). A better strategy for btree is to create a separate index on each column. Then the planner will choose something like this:

```sql
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx1 ON tbloom (i1);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx2 ON tbloom (i2);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx3 ON tbloom (i3);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx4 ON tbloom (i4);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx5 ON tbloom (i5);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx6 ON tbloom (i6);
CREATE INDEX
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tbloom WHERE i2 = 898732 AND i5 = 123451;
```

Although this query runs much faster than with either of the single indexes, we pay a penalty in index size. Each of the single-column btree indexes occupies 2 MB, so the total space needed is 12 MB, eight times the space used by the bloom index.

### F.5.3. Operator Class Interface

An operator class for bloom indexes requires only a hash function for the indexed data type and an equality operator for searching. This example shows the operator class definition for the `text` data type:

```sql
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS text_ops
DEFAULT FOR TYPE text USING bloom AS
    OPERATOR 1 ==(text, text),
    FUNCTION 1 hashtext(text);
```

### F.5.4. Limitations

- Only operator classes for `int4` and `text` are included with the module.
- Only the `=` operator is supported for search. But it is possible to add support for arrays with union and intersection operations in the future.
- `bloom` access method doesn't support `UNIQUE` indexes.
bloom access method doesn't support searching for NULL values.

F.5.5. Authors

Teodor Sigaev <teodor@postgrespro.ru>, Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia
Alexander Korotkov <a.korotkov@postgrespro.ru>, Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia
Oleg Bartunov <obartunov@postgrespro.ru>, Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia

F.6. btree_gin

btree_gin provides sample GIN operator classes that implement B-tree equivalent behavior for the data types int2, int4, int8, float4, float8, timestamp with time zone, timestamp without time zone, time with time zone, time without time zone, date, interval, oid, money, "char", varchar, text, bytea, bit, varbit, macaddr, macaddr8, inet, cidr, uuid, name, bool, bpchar, and all enum types.

In general, these operator classes will not outperform the equivalent standard B-tree index methods, and they lack one major feature of the standard B-tree code: the ability to enforce uniqueness. However, they are useful for GIN testing and as a base for developing other GIN operator classes. Also, for queries that test both a GIN-indexable column and a B-tree-indexable column, it might be more efficient to create a multicolumn GIN index that uses one of these operator classes than to create two separate indexes that would have to be combined via bitmap ANDing.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

F.6.1. Example Usage

```sql
CREATE TABLE test (a int4);
-- create index
CREATE INDEX testidx ON test USING GIN (a);
-- query
SELECT * FROM test WHERE a < 10;
```

F.6.2. Authors

Teodor Sigaev (<teodor@stack.net>) and Oleg Bartunov (<oleg@sai.msu.su>). See http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/oddmuse/index.cgi/Gin for additional information.

F.7. btree_gist

btree_gist provides GiST index operator classes that implement B-tree equivalent behavior for the data types int2, int4, int8, float4, float8, numeric, timestamp with time zone, timestamp without time zone, time with time zone, time without time zone, date, interval, oid, money, char, varchar, text, bytea, bit, varbit, macaddr, macaddr8, inet, cidr, uuid, and all enum types.

In general, these operator classes will not outperform the equivalent standard B-tree index methods, and they lack one major feature of the standard B-tree code: the ability to enforce uniqueness. However, they provide other features that are not available with a B-tree index, as described below. Also, these operator classes are useful when a multicolumn GiST index is needed, wherein some of the columns are of data types that are only indexable with GiST but other columns are just simple data types. Lastly, these operator classes are useful for GiST testing and as a base for developing other GiST operator classes.

In addition to the typical B-tree search operators, btree_gist also provides index support for <> ("not equals"). This may be useful in combination with an exclusion constraint, as described below.

Also, for data types for which there is a natural distance metric, btree_gist defines a distance operator <->, and provides GiST index support for nearest-neighbor searches using this operator. Distance operators are provided for int2, int4, int8, float4, float8, timestamp with time zone, timestamp without time zone, time without time zone, date, interval, oid, and money.
Additional Supplied Modules

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

**F.7.1. Example Usage**

Simple example using `btree_gist` instead of `btree`:

```sql
CREATE TABLE test (a int4);
-- create index
CREATE INDEX testidx ON test USING GIST (a);
-- query
SELECT * FROM test WHERE a < 10;
-- nearest-neighbor search: find the ten entries closest to "42"
SELECT *, a <-> 42 AS dist FROM test ORDER BY a <-> 42 LIMIT 10;
```

Use an exclusion constraint to enforce the rule that a cage at a zoo can contain only one kind of animal:

```sql
=> CREATE TABLE zoo (cage INTEGER, animal TEXT,
    EXCLUDE USING GIST (cage WITH =, animal WITH <>);
)
=> INSERT INTO zoo VALUES(123, 'zebra');
INSERT 0 1
=> INSERT INTO zoo VALUES(123, 'zebra');
INSERT 0 1
=> INSERT INTO zoo VALUES(123, 'lion');
ERROR: conflicting key value violates exclusion constraint "zoo_cage_animal_excl"
DETAIL: Key (cage, animal)=(123, lion) conflicts with existing key (cage,
    animal)=(123, zebra).
=> INSERT INTO zoo VALUES(124, 'lion');
INSERT 0 1
```

**F.7.2. Authors**

Teodor Sigaev (<teodor@stack.net>), Oleg Bartunov (<oleg@sai.msu.su>), Janko Richter (<jankorichter@yahoo.de>), and Paul Jungwirth (<pj@illuminatedcomputing.com>). See [http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/](http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/) for additional information.

**F.8. citext**

The `citext` module provides a case-insensitive character string type, `citext`. Essentially, it internally calls `lower` when comparing values. Otherwise, it behaves almost exactly like `text`.

**Tip**

Consider using nondeterministic collations (see Section 22.2.2.4) instead of this module. They can be used for case-insensitive comparisons, accent-insensitive comparisons, and other combinations, and they handle more Unicode special cases correctly.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

**F.8.1. Rationale**

The standard approach to doing case-insensitive matches in Postgres Pro has been to use the `lower` function when comparing values, for example

```sql
SELECT * FROM tab WHERE lower(col) = LOWER(?);
```
Additional Supplied Modules

This works reasonably well, but has a number of drawbacks:

- It makes your SQL statements verbose, and you always have to remember to use `lower` on both the column and the query value.
- It won’t use an index, unless you create a functional index using `lower`.
- If you declare a column as `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY`, the implicitly generated index is case-sensitive. So it’s useless for case-insensitive searches, and it won’t enforce uniqueness case-insensitively.

The `citext` data type allows you to eliminate calls to `lower` in SQL queries, and allows a primary key to be case-insensitive. `citext` is locale-aware, just like `text`, which means that the matching of upper case and lower case characters is dependent on the rules of the database's `LC_CTYPE` setting. Again, this behavior is identical to the use of `lower` in queries. But because it’s done transparently by the data type, you don't have to remember to do anything special in your queries.

**F.8.2. How to Use It**

Here's a simple example of usage:

```sql
CREATE TABLE users (  
nick CITEXT PRIMARY KEY,  
pass TEXT   NOT NULL
);

INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'larry', sha256(random()::text::bytea) );
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'Tom',    sha256(random()::text::bytea) );
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'Damian', sha256(random()::text::bytea) );
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'NEAL',   sha256(random()::text::bytea) );
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'Bjørn',  sha256(random()::text::bytea) );

SELECT * FROM users WHERE nick = 'Larry';
```

The `SELECT` statement will return one tuple, even though the `nick` column was set to `larry` and the query was for `Larry`.

**F.8.3. String Comparison Behavior**

`citext` performs comparisons by converting each string to lower case (as though `lower` were called) and then comparing the results normally. Thus, for example, two strings are considered equal if `lower` would produce identical results for them.

In order to emulate a case-insensitive collation as closely as possible, there are `citext`-specific versions of a number of string-processing operators and functions. So, for example, the regular expression operators `~` and `~*` exhibit the same behavior when applied to `citext`; they both match case-insensitively. The same is true for `!~` and `!~*`, as well as for the `LIKE` operators `~~` and `~~*`, and `!~~` and `!~~*`. If you'd like to match case-sensitively, you can cast the operator's arguments to `text`.

Similarly, all of the following functions perform matching case-insensitively if their arguments are `citext`:

- `regexp_match()`
- `regexp_matches()`
- `regexp_replace()`
- `regexp_split_to_array()`
- `regexp_split_to_table()`
- `replace()`
- `split_part()`
- `strpos()`
- `translate()`
For the regexp functions, if you want to match case-sensitively, you can specify the “c” flag to force a case-sensitive match. Otherwise, you must cast to text before using one of these functions if you want case-sensitive behavior.

F.8.4. Limitations

- citext’s case-folding behavior depends on the LC_CTYPE setting of your database. How it compares values is therefore determined when the database is created. It is not truly case-insensitive in the terms defined by the Unicode standard. Effectively, what this means is that, as long as you’re happy with your collation, you should be happy with citext's comparisons. But if you have data in different languages stored in your database, users of one language may find their query results are not as expected if the collation is for another language.

- As of PostgreSQL 9.1, you can attach a COLLATE specification to citext columns or data values. Currently, citext operators will honor a non-default COLLATE specification while comparing case-folded strings, but the initial folding to lower case is always done according to the database's LC_CTYPE setting (that is, as though COLLATE "default" were given). This may be changed in a future release so that both steps follow the input COLLATE specification.

- citext is not as efficient as text because the operator functions and the B-tree comparison functions must make copies of the data and convert it to lower case for comparisons. Also, only text can support B-Tree deduplication. However, citext is slightly more efficient than using lower to get case-insensitive matching.

- citext doesn't help much if you need data to compare case-sensitively in some contexts and case-insensitively in other contexts. The standard answer is to use the text type and manually use the lower function when you need to compare case-insensitively; this works all right if case-insensitive comparison is needed only infrequently. If you need case-insensitive behavior most of the time and case-sensitive infrequently, consider storing the data as citext and explicitly casting the column to text when you want case-sensitive comparison. In either situation, you will need two indexes if you want both types of searches to be fast.

- The schema containing the citext operators must be in the current search_path (typically public); if it is not, the normal case-sensitive text operators will be invoked instead.

- The approach of lower-casing strings for comparison does not handle some Unicode special cases correctly, for example when one upper-case letter has two lower-case letter equivalents. Unicode distinguishes between case mapping and case folding for this reason. Use nondeterministic collations instead of citext to handle that correctly.

F.8.5. Author

David E. Wheeler <david@kineticode.com>

Inspired by the original citext module by Donald Fraser.

F.9. cube

This module implements a data type cube for representing multidimensional cubes.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

F.9.1. Syntax

Table F.2 shows the valid external representations for the cube type. x, y, etc. denote floating-point numbers.

Table F.2. Cube External Representations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External Syntax</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>A one-dimensional point (or, zero-length one-dimensional interval)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### External Syntax

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(x)</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x1, x2, ..., xn</td>
<td>A point in n-dimensional space, represented internally as a zero-volume cube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x1, x2, ..., xn)</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x), (y)</td>
<td>A one-dimensional interval starting at x and ending at y or vice versa; the order does not matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[(x), (y)]</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x1, ..., xn), (y1, ..., yn)</td>
<td>An n-dimensional cube represented by a pair of its diagonally opposite corners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[(x1, ..., xn), (y1, ..., yn)]</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It does not matter which order the opposite corners of a cube are entered in. The `cube` functions automatically swap values if needed to create a uniform “lower left — upper right” internal representation. When the corners coincide, `cube` stores only one corner along with an “is point” flag to avoid wasting space.

White space is ignored on input, so [(x), (y)] is the same as [(x), (y)].

### F.9.2. Precision

Values are stored internally as 64-bit floating point numbers. This means that numbers with more than about 16 significant digits will be truncated.

### F.9.3. Usage

Table F.3 shows the specialized operators provided for type `cube`.

#### Table F.3. Cube Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cube &amp;&amp; cube → boolean</td>
<td>Do the cubes overlap?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube @&gt; cube → boolean</td>
<td>Does the first cube contain the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube &lt;@ cube → boolean</td>
<td>Is the first cube contained in the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube -&gt; integer → float8</td>
<td>Extracts the n-th coordinate of the cube (counting from 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube -&gt; integer → float8</td>
<td>Extracts the n-th coordinate of the cube, counting in the following way: n = 2 * k - 1 means lower bound of k-th dimension, n = 2 * k means upper bound of k-th dimension. Negative n denotes the inverse value of the corresponding positive coordinate. This operator is designed for KNN-GiST support.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube &lt;-&gt; cube → float8</td>
<td>Computes the Euclidean distance between the two cubes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube &lt;-&gt; cube → float8</td>
<td>Computes the taxicab (L-1 metric) distance between the two cubes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube &lt;-&gt; cube → float8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2255
In addition to the above operators, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for type cube. These operators first compare the first coordinates, and if those are equal, compare the second coordinates, etc. They exist mainly to support the b-tree index operator class for cube, which can be useful for example if you would like a UNIQUE constraint on a cube column. Otherwise, this ordering is not of much practical use.

The cube module also provides a GiST index operator class for cube values. A cube GiST index can be used to search for values using the =, &&, @>, and @@ operators in WHERE clauses.

In addition, a cube GiST index can be used to find nearest neighbors using the metric operators <->, <#, and <=> in ORDER BY clauses. For example, the nearest neighbor of the 3-D point (0.5, 0.5, 0.5) could be found efficiently with:

```sql
SELECT c FROM test ORDER BY c <-> cube(array[0.5,0.5,0.5]) LIMIT 1;
```

The ~> operator can also be used in this way to efficiently retrieve the first few values sorted by a selected coordinate. For example, to get the first few cubes ordered by the first coordinate (lower left corner) ascending one could use the following query:

```sql
SELECT c FROM test ORDER BY c ~> 1 LIMIT 5;
```

And to get 2-D cubes ordered by the first coordinate of the upper right corner descending:

```sql
SELECT c FROM test ORDER BY c ~> 3 DESC LIMIT 5;
```

Table F.4 shows the available functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cube(float8) → cube</code></td>
<td>Makes a one dimensional cube with both coordinates the same.</td>
<td><code>cube(1) → (1)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cube(float8, float8) → cube</code></td>
<td>Makes a one dimensional cube.</td>
<td><code>cube(1, 2) → (1, 2)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cube(float8[]) → cube</code></td>
<td>Makes a zero-volume cube using the coordinates defined by the array.</td>
<td><code>cube(ARRAY[1,2,3]) → (1, 2, 3)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cube(float8[], float8[]) → cube</code></td>
<td>Makes a cube with upper right and lower left coordinates as defined by the two arrays, which must be of the same length.</td>
<td><code>cube(ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY[3,4]) → (1, 2), (3, 4)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cube(cube, float8) → cube</code></td>
<td>Makes a new cube by adding a dimension on to an existing cube, with the same values for both endpoints of the new coordinate. This is useful for building cubes piece by piece from calculated values.</td>
<td><code>cube('(1,2),(3,4)':::cube, 5) → (1, 2, 5), (3, 4, 5)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cube(cube, float8, float8) → cube</code></td>
<td>Makes a new cube by adding a dimension on to an existing cube. This is useful for building cubes piece by piece from calculated values.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube('1,2), (3,4)' :: cube, 5, 6</td>
<td>→ (1, 2, 5), (3, 4, 6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_dim (cube) → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of dimensions of the cube.</td>
<td>cube_dim('(1,2), (3,4)') → 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_ll_coord (cube, integer) → float8</td>
<td>Returns the n-th coordinate value for the lower left corner of the cube.</td>
<td>cube_ll_coord('(1,2), (3,4)', 2) → 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_ur_coord (cube, integer) → float8</td>
<td>Returns the n-th coordinate value for the upper right corner of the cube.</td>
<td>cube_ur_coord('(1,2), (3,4)', 2) → 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_is_point (cube) → boolean</td>
<td>Returns true if the cube is a point, that is, the two defining corners are the same.</td>
<td>cube_is_point(cube(1,1)) → t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_distance (cube, cube) → float8</td>
<td>Returns the distance between two cubes. If both cubes are points, this is the normal distance function.</td>
<td>cube_distance('(1,2)', '(3,4)') → 2.8284271247461903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_subset (cube, integer[]) → cube</td>
<td>Makes a new cube from an existing cube, using a list of dimension indexes from an array. Can be used to extract the endpoints of a single dimension, or to drop dimensions, or to reorder them as desired.</td>
<td>cube_subset(cube('(1,3,5), (6,7,8)'), ARRAY[2]) → (3), (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_union (cube, cube) → cube</td>
<td>Produces the union of two cubes.</td>
<td>cube_union('(1,2)', '(3,4)') → (1, 2), (3, 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_inter (cube, cube) → cube</td>
<td>Produces the intersection of two cubes.</td>
<td>cube_inter('(1,2)', '(3,4)') → (3, 4), (1, 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube_enlarge (c cube, r double, n integer) → cube</td>
<td>Increases the size of the cube by the specified radius r in at least n dimensions. If the radius is negative the cube is shrunk instead. All defined dimensions are changed by the radius r. Lower-left coordinates are decreased by r and upper-right coordinates are increased by r. If a lower-left coordinate is increased to more than the corresponding upper-right coordinate (this can only happen when r &lt; 0) than both coordinates are set to their average. If n is greater than the number of defined dimensions and the cube is being enlarged (r &gt; 0), then extra dimensions are added to make n altogether; 0 is used as the initial value for the extra coordinates. This function is useful for creating bounding boxes around a point for searching for nearby points.</td>
<td>cube_enlarge('(1,2), (3,4)', 0.5, 3) → (0.5, 1.5, -0.5), (3.5, 4.5, 0.5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.9.4. Defaults

I believe this union:
select cube_union('(0,5,2),(2,3,1)', '0');
cube_union
-------------------
(0, 0, 0),(2, 5, 2)
(1 row)

does not contradict common sense, neither does the intersection

select cube_inter('(0,-1),(1,1)', '(-2),(2)');
cube_inter
-------------
(0, 0),(1, 0)
(1 row)

In all binary operations on differently-dimensioned cubes, I assume the lower-dimensional one to be a Cartesian projection, i.e., having zeroes in place of coordinates omitted in the string representation. The above examples are equivalent to:

cube_union('(0,5,2),(2,3,1)','(0,0,0),(0,0,0)');
cube_inter('(0,-1),(1,1)','(-2,0),(2,0)');

The following containment predicate uses the point syntax, while in fact the second argument is internally represented by a box. This syntax makes it unnecessary to define a separate point type and functions for (box,point) predicates.

select cube_contains('(0,0),(1,1)', '0.5,0.5');
cube_contains
--------------
t
(1 row)

F.9.5. Notes

For examples of usage, see the regression test sql/cube.sql.

To make it harder for people to break things, there is a limit of 100 on the number of dimensions of cubes. This is set in cubedata.h if you need something bigger.

F.9.6. Credits

Original author: Gene Selkov, Jr. <selkovjr@mcs.anl.gov>, Mathematics and Computer Science Division, Argonne National Laboratory.

My thanks are primarily to Prof. Joe Hellerstein (https://dsf.berkeley.edu/jmh/) for elucidating the gist of the GiST (http://gist.cs.berkeley.edu/), and to his former student Andy Dong for his example written for Illustra. I am also grateful to all Postgres developers, present and past, for enabling myself to create my own world and live undisturbed in it. And I would like to acknowledge my gratitude to Argonne Lab and to the U.S. Department of Energy for the years of faithful support of my database research.

Minor updates to this package were made by Bruno Wolff III <bruno@wolff.to> in August/September of 2002. These include changing the precision from single precision to double precision and adding some new functions.

Additional updates were made by Joshua Reich <josh@root.net> in July 2006. These include cube(float8[], float8[]) and cleaning up the code to use the V1 call protocol instead of the deprecated V0 protocol.

F.10. dblink

dblink is a module that supports connections to other Postgres Pro databases from within a database session.
See also `postgres_fdw`, which provides roughly the same functionality using a more modern and standards-compliant infrastructure.
**dblink_connect**

dblink_connect — opens a persistent connection to a remote database

**Synopsis**

dblink_connect(text connstr) returns text  
dblink_connect(text connname, text connstr) returns text

**Description**

dblink_connect() establishes a connection to a remote Postgres Pro database. The server and database to be contacted are identified through a standard libpq connection string. Optionally, a name can be assigned to the connection. Multiple named connections can be open at once, but only one unnamed connection is permitted at a time. The connection will persist until closed or until the database session is ended.

The connection string may also be the name of an existing foreign server. It is recommended to use the foreign-data wrapper dblink_fdw when defining the foreign server. See the example below, as well as CREATE SERVER and CREATE USER MAPPING.

**Arguments**

*conname*

The name to use for this connection; if omitted, an unnamed connection is opened, replacing any existing unnamed connection.

*connstr*

libpq-style connection info string, for example hostaddr=127.0.0.1 port=5432 dbname=mydb user=postgres password=mypasswd options=-csearch_path=. For details see Section 32.1.1. Alternatively, the name of a foreign server.

**Return Value**

Returns status, which is always OK (since any error causes the function to throw an error instead of returning).

**Notes**

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin each session by removing publicly-writable schemas from search_path. One could, for example, add options=-csearch_path= to connstr. This consideration is not specific to dblink; it applies to every interface for executing arbitrary SQL commands.

Only superusers may use dblink_connect to create non-password-authenticated connections. If non-superusers need this capability, use dblink_connect_u instead.

It is unwise to choose connection names that contain equal signs, as this opens a risk of confusion with connection info strings in other dblink functions.

**Examples**

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');
   dblink_connect
----------------
       OK
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_connect('myconn', 'dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');
```

2260
Additional Supplied Modules

```
dblink_connect
-------------
OK
(1 row)

-- FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER functionality
-- Note: local connection must require password authentication for this to work properly
-- Otherwise, you will receive the following error from dblink_connect():
-- ERROR: password is required
-- DETAIL: Non-superuser cannot connect if the server does not request a password.
-- HINT: Target server's authentication method must be changed.

CREATE SERVER fdtest FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dblink_fdw OPTIONS (hostaddr '127.0.0.1', dbname 'contrib_regression');
CREATE USER regress_dblink_user WITH PASSWORD 'secret';
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR regress_dblink_user SERVER fdtest OPTIONS (user 'regress_dblink_user', password 'secret');
GRANT USAGE ON FOREIGN SERVER fdtest TO regress_dblink_user;
GRANT SELECT ON TABLE foo TO regress_dblink_user;

\set ORIGINAL_USER :USER
\c - regress_dblink_user
SELECT dblink_connect('myconn', 'fdtest');
dblink_connect
-------------
OK
(1 row)

SELECT * FROM dblink('myconn', 'SELECT * FROM foo') AS t(a int, b text, c text[]);
a  | b  |       c
----+----+---------------
 0 | a  | {a0,b0,c0}
 1 | b  | {a1,b1,c1}
 2 | c  | {a2,b2,c2}
 3 | d  | {a3,b3,c3}
 4 | e  | {a4,b4,c4}
 5 | f  | {a5,b5,c5}
 6 | g  | {a6,b6,c6}
 7 | h  | {a7,b7,c7}
 8 | i  | {a8,b8,c8}
 9 | j  | {a9,b9,c9}
10 | k  | {a10,b10,c10}
(11 rows)
\c - :ORIGINAL_USER
REVOKE USAGE ON FOREIGN SERVER fdtest FROM regress_dblink_user;
REVOKE SELECT ON TABLE foo FROM regress_dblink_user;
DROP USER MAPPING FOR regress_dblink_user SERVER fdtest;
DROP USER regress_dblink_user;
DROP SERVER fdtest;
```
**dblink_connect_u**

*dblink_connect_u* — opens a persistent connection to a remote database, insecurely

**Synopsis**

```
dblink_connect_u(text connstr) returns text
```
```
dblink_connect_u(text connname, text connstr) returns text
```

**Description**

*dblink_connect_u()* is identical to *dblink_connect()*, except that it will allow non-superusers to connect using any authentication method.

If the remote server selects an authentication method that does not involve a password, then impersonation and subsequent escalation of privileges can occur, because the session will appear to have originated from the user as which the local Postgres Pro server runs. Also, even if the remote server does demand a password, it is possible for the password to be supplied from the server environment, such as a `~/.pgpass` file belonging to the server's user. This opens not only a risk of impersonation, but the possibility of exposing a password to an untrustworthy remote server. Therefore, *dblink_connect_u()* is initially installed with all privileges revoked from `PUBLIC`, making it un-callable except by superusers. In some situations it may be appropriate to grant `EXECUTE` permission for *dblink_connect_u()* to specific users who are considered trustworthy, but this should be done with care. It is also recommended that any `~/.pgpass` file belonging to the server’s user not contain any records specifying a wildcard host name.

For further details see *dblink_connect()*.
**dblink_disconnect**

`dblink_disconnect` — closes a persistent connection to a remote database

**Synopsis**

`dblink_disconnect()` returns text

`dblink_disconnect(text conname) returns text`

**Description**

`dblink_disconnect()` closes a connection previously opened by `dblink_connect()`. The form with no arguments closes an unnamed connection.

**Arguments**

`conname`

The name of a named connection to be closed.

**Return Value**

Returns status, which is always `OK` (since any error causes the function to throw an error instead of returning).

**Examples**

```
SELECT dblink_disconnect();
  dblink_disconnect
--------------
   OK
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_disconnect('myconn');
  dblink_disconnect
--------------
   OK
(1 row)
```
**dblink**

```
dblink — executes a query in a remote database
```

**Synopsis**

```
dblink(text connname, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns setof record
dblink(text connstr, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns setof record
dblink(text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns setof record
```

**Description**

`dblink` executes a query (usually a `SELECT`, but it can be any SQL statement that returns rows) in a remote database.

When two `text` arguments are given, the first one is first looked up as a persistent connection’s name; if found, the command is executed on that connection. If not found, the first argument is treated as a connection info string as for `dblink_connect`, and the indicated connection is made just for the duration of this command.

**Arguments**

- **connname**
  Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

- **connstr**
  A connection info string, as previously described for `dblink_connect`.

- **sql**
  The SQL query that you wish to execute in the remote database, for example `select * from foo`.

- **fail_on_error**
  If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function returns no rows.

**Return Value**

The function returns the row(s) produced by the query. Since `dblink` can be used with any query, it is declared to return `record`, rather than specifying any particular set of columns. This means that you must specify the expected set of columns in the calling query — otherwise Postgres Pro would not know what to expect. Here is an example:

```
SELECT *
FROM dblink('dbname=mydb options=-csearch_path=',
    'select proname, prosrc from pg_proc')
AS t1(proname name, prosrc text)
WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';
```

The “alias” part of the `FROM` clause must specify the column names and types that the function will return. (Specifying column names in an alias is actually standard SQL syntax, but specifying column types is a Postgres Pro extension.) This allows the system to understand what `*` should expand to, and what `proname` in the `WHERE` clause refers to, in advance of trying to execute the function. At run time, an error will be thrown if the actual query result from the remote database does not have the same number of columns shown in the `FROM` clause. The column names need not match, however, and `dblink` does not insist on exact type matches either. It will succeed so long as the returned data strings are valid input for the column type declared in the `FROM` clause.

2264
Notes

A convenient way to use `dblink` with predetermined queries is to create a view. This allows the column type information to be buried in the view, instead of having to spell it out in every query. For example,

```sql
CREATE VIEW myremote_pg_proc AS
    SELECT *
    FROM dblink('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=','select proname, prosrc from pg_proc')
    AS t1(proname name, prosrc text);

SELECT * FROM myremote_pg_proc WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';
```

Examples

```
SELECT * FROM dblink('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=','select proname, prosrc from pg_proc')
    AS t1(proname name, prosrc text) WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';
```

```
proname   |   prosrc
------------+------------
byteacat   | byteacat
byteaeq    | byteaeq
bytealt    | bytealt
byteale    | byteale
byteagt    | byteagt
byteage    | byteage
byteane    | byteane
byteacmp   | byteacmp
bytealike  | bytealike
byteanlike | byteanlike
byteain    | byteain
byteaout   | byteaout
(12 rows)
```

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');
```

```
dblink_connect
----------------
OK
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT * FROM dblink('select proname, prosrc from pg_proc')
    AS t1(proname name, prosrc text) WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';
```

```
proname   |   prosrc
------------+------------
byteacat   | byteacat
byteaeq    | byteaeq
bytealt    | bytealt
byteale    | byteale
byteagt    | byteagt
byteage    | byteage
byteane    | byteane
byteacmp   | byteacmp
bytealike  | bytealike
byteanlike | byteanlike
byteain    | byteain
byteaout   | byteaout
(12 rows)
```

```
SELECT dblink_connect('myconn', 'dbname=regression options=-csearch_path=');
```

2265
Additional Supplied Modules

dblink_connect
----------------
OK
(1 row)

SELECT * FROM dblink('myconn', 'select proname, prosrc from pg_proc')
  AS t1(proname name, prosrc text) WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';
  proname  |  prosrc
-----------+-----------
 bytearecv | bytearecv
 byteasend | byteasend
  byteale  |  byteale
  byteagt  |  byteagt
  byteage  |  byteage
  byteane  |  byteane
  byteacmp |  byteacmp
  bytealike |  bytealike
 byteanlike |  byteanlike
  byteacat |  byteacat
  byteaeq  |  byteaeq
  bytealt  |  bytealt
  byteain  |  byteain
  byteaout |  byteaout
  (14 rows)
**dblink_exec**

*dblink_exec* — executes a command in a remote database

**Synopsis**

dblink_exec(text connname, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns text
dblink_exec(text connstr, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns text
dblink_exec(text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns text

**Description**

dblink_exec executes a command (that is, any SQL statement that doesn't return rows) in a remote database.

When two text arguments are given, the first one is first looked up as a persistent connection's name; if found, the command is executed on that connection. If not found, the first argument is treated as a connection info string as for dblink_connect, and the indicated connection is made just for the duration of this command.

**Arguments**

*connname*

Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

*connstr*

A connection info string, as previously described for dblink_connect.

*sql*

The SQL command that you wish to execute in the remote database, for example *insert into foo values(0, 'a', '{"a0","b0","c0"}')*.

*fail_on_error*

If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function's return value is set to ERROR.

**Return Value**

Returns status, either the command's status string or ERROR.

**Examples**

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=dblink_test_standby');
  dblink_connect
-------------------
  OK
  (1 row)

SELECT dblink_exec('insert into foo values(21, ''z'', ''{"a0","b0","c0"}'''));
  dblink_exec
-----------------------
  INSERT 943366 1
  (1 row)

SELECT dblink_connect('myconn', 'dbname=regression');
  dblink_connect
```

2267
SELECT dblink_exec('myconn', 'insert into foo values(21, ''z'',
''{"a0","b0","c0"}'''););
  
SELECT dblink_exec('myconn', 'insert into pg_class values (''foo'')',false);
NOTICE: sql error
DETAIL:  ERROR:  null value in column "relnamespace" violates not-null constraint

SELECT dblink_exec('myconn', 'insert into pg_class values (''foo'')',false);
NOTICE: sql error
DETAIL:  ERROR:  null value in column "relnamespace" violates not-null constraint
Additional Supplied Modules

**dblink_open**

*dblink_open* — opens a cursor in a remote database

**Synopsis**

```c
dblink_open(text cursorname, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns text
dblink_open(text connname, text cursorname, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns text
```

**Description**

*dblink_open()* opens a cursor in a remote database. The cursor can subsequently be manipulated with *dblink_fetch()* and *dblink_close()*.

**Arguments**

- **connname**
  Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

- **cursorname**
  The name to assign to this cursor.

- **sql**
  The *SELECT* statement that you wish to execute in the remote database, for example *select * from pg_class*.

- **fail_on_error**
  If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function's return value is set to *ERROR*.

**Return Value**

Returns status, either *OK* or *ERROR*.

**Notes**

Since a cursor can only persist within a transaction, *dblink_open* starts an explicit transaction block (*BEGIN*) on the remote side, if the remote side was not already within a transaction. This transaction will be closed again when the matching *dblink_close* is executed. Note that if you use *dblink_exec* to change data between *dblink_open* and *dblink_close*, and then an error occurs or you use *dblink_disconnect* before *dblink_close*, your change *will be lost* because the transaction will be aborted.

**Examples**

```sql
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');
  dblink_connect
----------------
  OK
  (1 row)

SELECT dblink_open('foo', 'select proname, prosrc from pg_proc');
  dblink_open
-------------
  OK
```
| (1 row) |
**dblink_fetch**

`dblink_fetch` — returns rows from an open cursor in a remote database

**Synopsis**

```sql
dblink_fetch(text cursorname, int howmany [, bool fail_on_error]) returns setof record
dblink_fetch(text connname, text cursorname, int howmany [, bool fail_on_error])
returns setof record
```

**Description**

`dblink_fetch` fetches rows from a cursor previously established by `dblink_open`.

**Arguments**

- **connname**
  Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

- **cursorname**
  The name of the cursor to fetch from.

- **howmany**
  The maximum number of rows to retrieve. The next `howmany` rows are fetched, starting at the current cursor position, moving forward. Once the cursor has reached its end, no more rows are produced.

- **fail_on_error**
  If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function returns no rows.

**Return Value**

The function returns the row(s) fetched from the cursor. To use this function, you will need to specify the expected set of columns, as previously discussed for `dblink`.

**Notes**

On a mismatch between the number of return columns specified in the `FROM` clause, and the actual number of columns returned by the remote cursor, an error will be thrown. In this event, the remote cursor is still advanced by as many rows as it would have been if the error had not occurred. The same is true for any other error occurring in the local query after the remote `FETCH` has been done.

**Examples**

```sql
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');
  dblink_connect
----------------
  OK
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_open('foo', 'select proname, prosrc from pg_proc where proname like ''bytea%''');
  dblink_open
-------------
  OK
(1 row)
```
### Additional Supplied Modules

```sql
SELECT * FROM dblink_fetch('foo', 5) AS (funcname name, source text);
  funcname | source
-------------
 byteacat | byteacat
 byteacmp | byteacmp
 byteaeq  | byteaeq
 byteage  | byteage
 byteagt  | byteagt
 (5 rows)
```

```sql
SELECT * FROM dblink_fetch('foo', 5) AS (funcname name, source text);
  funcname | source
-------------
 byteain  | byteain
 byteale  | byteale
 bytealike| bytealike
 bytealt  | bytealt
 byteane  | byteane
 (5 rows)
```

```sql
SELECT * FROM dblink_fetch('foo', 5) AS (funcname name, source text);
  funcname | source
-------------
 byteanlike| byteanlike
 byteaout  | byteaout
 (2 rows)
```

```sql
SELECT * FROM dblink_fetch('foo', 5) AS (funcname name, source text);
  funcname | source
-------------
 (0 rows)
```
Additional Supplied Modules

\textbf{dblink\_close}

dblink\_close — closes a cursor in a remote database

\textbf{Synopsis}

dblink\_close(text cursorname [, bool fail\_on\_error]) returns text
dblink\_close(text connname, text cursorname [, bool fail\_on\_error]) returns text

\textbf{Description}

dblink\_close closes a cursor previously opened with dblink\_open.

\textbf{Arguments}

\textit{connname}

Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

\textit{cursorname}

The name of the cursor to close.

\textit{fail\_on\_error}

If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function's return value is set to ERROR.

\textbf{Return Value}

Returns status, either \texttt{OK} or \texttt{ERROR}.

\textbf{Notes}

If dblink\_open started an explicit transaction block, and this is the last remaining open cursor in this connection, dblink\_close will issue the matching COMMIT.

\textbf{Examples}

```
SELECT dblink\_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch\_path=');
   dblink\_connect
--------------
  OK
   (1 row)

SELECT dblink\_open('foo', 'select proname, prosrc from pg\_proc');
   dblink\_open
--------------
  OK
   (1 row)

SELECT dblink\_close('foo');
   dblink\_close
--------------
  OK
   (1 row)
```
**dblink_get_connections**

`dblink_get_connections()` returns the names of all open named dblink connections

**Synopsis**

`dblink_get_connections()` returns text[]

**Description**

`dblink_get_connections` returns an array of the names of all open named dblink connections.

**Return Value**

Returns a text array of connection names, or NULL if none.

**Examples**

```
SELECT dblink_get_connections();
```
**dblink_error_message**

`dblink_error_message` — gets last error message on the named connection

**Synopsis**

`dblink_error_message(text connname) returns text`

**Description**

`dblink_error_message` fetches the most recent remote error message for a given connection.

**Arguments**

`connname`  
Name of the connection to use.

**Return Value**

Returns last error message, or `OK` if there has been no error in this connection.

**Notes**

When asynchronous queries are initiated by `dblink_send_query`, the error message associated with the connection might not get updated until the server's response message is consumed. This typically means that `dblink_is_busy` or `dblink_get_result` should be called prior to `dblink_error_message`, so that any error generated by the asynchronous query will be visible.

**Examples**

```sql
SELECT dblink_error_message('dtest1');
```
Additional Supplied Modules

**dblink_send_query**

dblink_send_query — sends an async query to a remote database

**Synopsis**

dblink_send_query(text connname, text sql) returns int

**Description**

dblink_send_query sends a query to be executed asynchronously, that is, without immediately waiting for the result. There must not be an async query already in progress on the connection.

After successfully dispatching an async query, completion status can be checked with dblink_is_busy, and the results are ultimately collected with dblink_get_result. It is also possible to attempt to cancel an active async query using dblink_cancel_query.

**Arguments**

- **connname**
  
  Name of the connection to use.

- **sql**
  
  The SQL statement that you wish to execute in the remote database, for example select * from pg_class.

**Return Value**

Returns 1 if the query was successfully dispatched, 0 otherwise.

**Examples**

SELECT dblink_send_query('dtest1', 'SELECT * FROM foo WHERE f1 < 3');
**dblink_is_busy**

dblink_is_busy — checks if connection is busy with an async query

**Synopsis**

dblink_is_busy(text conname) returns int

**Description**

dblink_is_busy tests whether an async query is in progress.

**Arguments**

`conname`

Name of the connection to check.

**Return Value**

Returns 1 if connection is busy, 0 if it is not busy. If this function returns 0, it is guaranteed that dblink_get_result will not block.

**Examples**

SELECT dblink_is_busy('dtest1');
**dblink_get_notify**

*dblink_get_notify* — retrieve async notifications on a connection

**Synopsis**

```plaintext
dblink_get_notify() returns setof (notify_name text, be_pid int, extra text)
dblink_get_notify(text connname) returns setof (notify_name text, be_pid int, extra text)
```

**Description**

*dblink_get_notify* retrieves notifications on either the unnamed connection, or on a named connection if specified. To receive notifications via dblink, LISTEN must first be issued, using dblink_exec. For details see LISTEN and NOTIFY.

**Arguments**

*connname*

The name of a named connection to get notifications on.

**Return Value**

Returns setof (notify_name text, be_pid int, extra text), or an empty set if none.

**Examples**

```plaintext
SELECT dblink_exec('LISTEN virtual');
  dblink_exec
    ---------------------
    LISTEN
(1 row)

SELECT * FROM dblink_get_notify();
  notify_name | be_pid | extra
  -----------+--------+-------
(0 rows)

NOTIFY virtual;
NOTIFY

SELECT * FROM dblink_get_notify();
  notify_name | be_pid | extra
  -----------+--------+-------
  virtual    | 1229    |
(1 row)
```
**dblink_get_result**

*dblink_get_result* — gets an async query result

**Synopsis**

`dblink_get_result(text connname [, bool fail_on_error]) returns setof record`

**Description**

`dblink_get_result` collects the results of an asynchronous query previously sent with `dblink_send_query`. If the query is not already completed, `dblink_get_result` will wait until it is.

**Arguments**

- **connname**
  
  Name of the connection to use.

- **fail_on_error**

  If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function returns no rows.

**Return Value**

For an async query (that is, an SQL statement returning rows), the function returns the row(s) produced by the query. To use this function, you will need to specify the expected set of columns, as previously discussed for `dblink`.

For an async command (that is, an SQL statement not returning rows), the function returns a single row with a single text column containing the command's status string. It is still necessary to specify that the result will have a single text column in the calling `FROM` clause.

**Notes**

This function *must* be called if `dblink_send_query` returned 1. It must be called once for each query sent, and one additional time to obtain an empty set result, before the connection can be used again.

When using `dblink_send_query` and `dblink_get_result`, `dblink` fetches the entire remote query result before returning any of it to the local query processor. If the query returns a large number of rows, this can result in transient memory bloat in the local session. It may be better to open such a query as a cursor with `dblink_open` and then fetch a manageable number of rows at a time. Alternatively, use plain `dblink()`, which avoids memory bloat by spooling large result sets to disk.

**Examples**

```sql
contrib_regression=# SELECT dblink_connect('dtest1', 'dbname=contrib_regression');
     dblink_connect
----------------
        OK
(1 row)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM contrib_regression-
contrib_regression-# dblink_send_query('dtest1', 'select * from foo where f1 < 3') AS t1;

   t1
----
1
(1 row)
```
contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_get_result('dtest1') AS t1(f1 int, f2 text, f3 text[]);
  f1 | f2 |     f3
-----+----+------------
  0 | a  | {a0,b0,c0}
  1 | b  | {a1,b1,c1}
  2 | c  | {a2,b2,c2}
(3 rows)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_get_result('dtest1') AS t1(f1 int, f2 text, f3 text[]);
  f1 | f2 |     f3
-----+----+------------
  7 | h  | {a7,b7,c7}
  8 | i  | {a8,b8,c8}
  9 | j  | {a9,b9,c9}
 10 | k  | {a10,b10,c10}
(4 rows)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_send_query('dtest1', 'select * from foo where f1 < 3; select * from foo where f1 > 6') AS t1;
  t1
----
  1
(1 row)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_get_result('dtest1') AS t1(f1 int, f2 text, f3 text[]);
  f1 | f2 |     f3
-----+----+------------
  7 | h  | {a7,b7,c7}
  8 | i  | {a8,b8,c8}
  9 | j  | {a9,b9,c9}
 10 | k  | {a10,b10,c10}
(4 rows)
**dblink_cancel_query**

`dblink_cancel_query` — cancels any active query on the named connection

**Synopsis**

```
    dblink_cancel_query(text connname) returns text
```

**Description**

`dblink_cancel_query` attempts to cancel any query that is in progress on the named connection. Note that this is not certain to succeed (since, for example, the remote query might already have finished). A cancel request simply improves the odds that the query will fail soon. You must still complete the normal query protocol, for example by calling `dblink_get_result`.

**Arguments**

`connname`

Name of the connection to use.

**Return Value**

Returns `OK` if the cancel request has been sent, or the text of an error message on failure.

**Examples**

```
SELECT dblink_cancel_query('dtest1');
```
Additional Supplied Modules

**dblink_get_pkey**

*dblink_get_pkey* — returns the positions and field names of a relation's primary key fields

**Synopsis**

```
dblink_get_pkey(text relname) returns setof dblink_pkey_results
```

**Description**

*dblink_get_pkey* provides information about the primary key of a relation in the local database. This is sometimes useful in generating queries to be sent to remote databases.

**Arguments**

relname

Name of a local relation, for example `foo` or `myschema.mytab`. Include double quotes if the name is mixed-case or contains special characters, for example "FooBar"; without quotes, the string will be folded to lower case.

**Return Value**

Returns one row for each primary key field, or no rows if the relation has no primary key. The result row type is defined as

```
CREATE TYPE dblink_pkey_results AS (position int, colname text);
```

The `position` column simply runs from 1 to `N`; it is the number of the field within the primary key, not the number within the table's columns.

**Examples**

```
CREATE TABLE foobar (    f1 int,    f2 int,    f3 int,        PRIMARY KEY (f1, f2, f3) );
CREATE TABLE

SELECT * FROM dblink_get_pkey('foobar');

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>position</th>
<th>colname</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>f1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>f2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>f3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3 rows)
```
**dblink_build_sql_insert**

dblink_build_sql_insert — builds an INSERT statement using a local tuple, replacing the primary key field values with alternative supplied values

**Synopsis**

dblink_build_sql_insert(text relname,
                        int2vector primary_key_attnums,
                        integer num_primary_key_atts,
                        text[] src_pk_att_vals_array,
                        text[] tgt_pk_att_vals_array) returns text

**Description**

dblink_build_sql_insert can be useful in doing selective replication of a local table to a remote database. It selects a row from the local table based on primary key, and then builds an SQL INSERT command that will duplicate that row, but with the primary key values replaced by the values in the last argument. (To make an exact copy of the row, just specify the same values for the last two arguments.)

**Arguments**

* relname
  
  Name of a local relation, for example foo or myschema.mytab. Include double quotes if the name is mixed-case or contains special characters, for example "FooBar"; without quotes, the string will be folded to lower case.

* primary_key_attnums
  
  Attribute numbers (1-based) of the primary key fields, for example 1 2.

* num_primary_key_atts
  
  The number of primary key fields.

* src_pk_att_vals_array
  
  Values of the primary key fields to be used to look up the local tuple. Each field is represented in text form. An error is thrown if there is no local row with these primary key values.

* tgt_pk_att_vals_array
  
  Values of the primary key fields to be placed in the resulting INSERT command. Each field is represented in text form.

**Return Value**

Returns the requested SQL statement as text.

**Notes**

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, the attribute numbers in primary_key_attnums are interpreted as logical column numbers, corresponding to the column's position in SELECT * FROM relname. Previous versions interpreted the numbers as physical column positions. There is a difference if any column(s) to the left of the indicated column have been dropped during the lifetime of the table.

**Examples**

SELECT dblink_build_sql_insert('foo', '1 2', 2, '{"1", "a"}', '{"1", "b''a"}');

```sql
  dblink_build_sql_insert
--------------------------------------------------
2283
```
INSERT INTO foo(f1,f2,f3) VALUES('1', 'b''a', '1')
(1 row)
**dblink_build_sql_delete**

**dblink_build_sql_delete** — builds a DELETE statement using supplied values for primary key field values

### Synopsis

```sql
dblink_build_sql_delete(text relname,
                       int2vector primary_key_attnums,
                       integer num_primary_key_atts,
                       text[] tgt_pk_att_vals_array) returns text
```

### Description

`dblink_build_sql_delete` can be useful in doing selective replication of a local table to a remote database. It builds an SQL `DELETE` command that will delete the row with the given primary key values.

### Arguments

- **relname**
  Name of a local relation, for example `foo` or `myschema.mytab`. Include double quotes if the name is mixed-case or contains special characters, for example "FooBar"; without quotes, the string will be folded to lower case.

- **primary_key_attnums**
  Attribute numbers (1-based) of the primary key fields, for example 1 2.

- **num_primary_key_atts**
  The number of primary key fields.

- **tgt_pk_att_vals_array**
  Values of the primary key fields to be used in the resulting `DELETE` command. Each field is represented in text form.

### Return Value

Returns the requested SQL statement as text.

### Notes

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, the attribute numbers in `primary_key_attnums` are interpreted as logical column numbers, corresponding to the column's position in `SELECT * FROM relname`. Previous versions interpreted the numbers as physical column positions. There is a difference if any column(s) to the left of the indicated column have been dropped during the lifetime of the table.

### Examples

```sql
SELECT dblink_build_sql_delete('"MyFoo"', '1 2', 2, {'"i"', 'b'});
```

```
DELETE FROM "MyFoo" WHERE f1='1' AND f2='b'
(1 row)
```
**dblink_build_sql_update**

dblink_build_sql_update — builds an UPDATE statement using a local tuple, replacing the primary key field values with alternative supplied values

**Synopsis**

dblink_build_sql_update(text relname,
int2vector primary_key_attnums,
integer num_primary_key_atts,
text[] src_pk_att_vals_array,
text[] tgt_pk_att_vals_array) returns text

**Description**
dblink_build_sql_update can be useful in doing selective replication of a local table to a remote database. It selects a row from the local table based on primary key, and then builds an SQL UPDATE command that will duplicate that row, but with the primary key values replaced by the values in the last argument. (To make an exact copy of the row, just specify the same values for the last two arguments.) The UPDATE command always assigns all fields of the row — the main difference between this and dblink_build_sql_insert is that it's assumed that the target row already exists in the remote table.

**Arguments**

* relname
  Name of a local relation, for example `foo` or `myschema.mytab`. Include double quotes if the name is mixed-case or contains special characters, for example "FooBar"; without quotes, the string will be folded to lower case.

* primary_key_attnums
  Attribute numbers (1-based) of the primary key fields, for example `1 2`.

* num_primary_key_atts
  The number of primary key fields.

* src_pk_att_vals_array
  Values of the primary key fields to be used to look up the local tuple. Each field is represented in text form. An error is thrown if there is no local row with these primary key values.

* tgt_pk_att_vals_array
  Values of the primary key fields to be placed in the resulting UPDATE command. Each field is represented in text form.

**Return Value**

Returns the requested SQL statement as text.

**Notes**

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, the attribute numbers in primary_key_attnums are interpreted as logical column numbers, corresponding to the column's position in SELECT * FROM relname. Previous versions interpreted the numbers as physical column positions. There is a difference if any column(s) to the left of the indicated column have been dropped during the lifetime of the table.

**Examples**

```sql
SELECT dblink_build_sql_update('foo', '1 2', 2, '{"1", "a"}', '{"1", "b"}');
```
F.11. dict_int

dict_int is an example of an add-on dictionary template for full-text search. The motivation for this example dictionary is to control the indexing of integers (signed and unsigned), allowing such numbers to be indexed while preventing excessive growth in the number of unique words, which greatly affects the performance of searching.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

F.11.1. Configuration

The dictionary accepts three options:

- The `maxlen` parameter specifies the maximum number of digits allowed in an integer word. The default value is 6.
- The `rejectlong` parameter specifies whether an overlength integer should be truncated or ignored. If `rejectlong` is false (the default), the dictionary returns the first `maxlen` digits of the integer. If `rejectlong` is true, the dictionary treats an overlength integer as a stop word, so that it will not be indexed. Note that this also means that such an integer cannot be searched for.
- The `absval` parameter specifies whether leading "+" or "-" signs should be removed from integer words. The default is false. When true, the sign is removed before `maxlen` is applied.

F.11.2. Usage

Installing the dict_int extension creates a text search template `intdict_template` and a dictionary `intdict` based on it, with the default parameters. You can alter the parameters, for example:

```sql
mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY intdict (MAXLEN = 4, REJECTLONG = true);
```

or create new dictionaries based on the template.

To test the dictionary, you can try:

```sql
mydb# select ts_lexize('intdict', '12345678');
```

but real-world usage will involve including it in a text search configuration as described in Chapter 12. That might look like this:

```sql
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english
  ALTER MAPPING FOR int, uint WITH intdict;
```

F.12. dict_xsyn

dict_xsyn (Extended Synonym Dictionary) is an example of an add-on dictionary template for full-text search. This dictionary type replaces words with groups of their synonyms, and so makes it possible to search for a word using any of its synonyms.

F.12.1. Configuration

A dict_xsyn dictionary accepts the following options:

- `matchorig` controls whether the original word is accepted by the dictionary. Default is true.
- `matchsynonyms` controls whether the synonyms are accepted by the dictionary. Default is false.
- `keeporig` controls whether the original word is included in the dictionary's output. Default is true.
• **keepsynonyms** controls whether the synonyms are included in the dictionary's output. Default is true.

• **rules** is the base name of the file containing the list of synonyms. This file must be stored in
  `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/` (where `$SHAREDIR` means the Postgres Pro installation's shared-data directory). Its name must end in `.rules` (which is not to be included in the `rules` parameter).

The rules file has the following format:

• Each line represents a group of synonyms for a single word, which is given first on the line. Synonyms are separated by whitespace, thus:
  
  word syn1 syn2 syn3

• The sharp (`#`) sign is a comment delimiter. It may appear at any position in a line. The rest of the line will be skipped.

Look at `xsyn_sample.rules`, which is installed in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/`, for an example.

### F.12.2. Usage

Installing the `dict_xsyn` extension creates a text search template `xsyn_template` and a dictionary `xsyn` based on it, with default parameters. You can alter the parameters, for example

```sql
mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY xsyn (RULES='my_rules', KEEPORIG=false);
```

or create new dictionaries based on the template.

To test the dictionary, you can try

```sql
mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('xsyn', 'word');
  
  ts_lexize
  -----------------------
  {syn1,syn2,syn3}

mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY xsyn (RULES='my_rules', KEEPORIG=true);

mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('xsyn', 'word');
  
  ts_lexize
  -----------------------
  {word,syn1,syn2,syn3}

mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY xsyn (RULES='my_rules', KEEPORIG=false, MATCHSYNONYMS=true);

mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('xsyn', 'syn1');
  
  ts_lexize
  -----------------------
  {syn1,syn2,syn3}

mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY xsyn (RULES='my_rules', KEEPORIG=true, MATCHORIG=false, KEEPSYNONYMS=false);

mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('xsyn', 'syn1');
  
  ts_lexize
  -----------------------
  {word}
```

Real-world usage will involve including it in a text search configuration as described in Chapter 12. That might look like this:
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english
ALTER MAPPING FOR word, asciword WITH xsyn, english_stem;

F.13. dump_stat
The dump_stat module provides functions that allow you to backup and recover the contents of the pg_statistic table. When performing a dump/restore, you can use dump_stat to migrate the original statistics to the new server instead of running the ANALYZE command for the whole database cluster, which can significantly reduce downtime for large databases. The dump_statistic function generates INSERT statements which can later be applied to a compatible database. To successfully restore statistical data, you must install the extension on both the original and the recipient servers since these statements rely on the provided dump_stat functions.

Note that the definition of the pg_statistic table might change occasionally, which means that generated dump might be incompatible with future releases of Postgres Pro.

F.13.1. Installation
The dump_stat extension is included into Postgres Pro. Once you have Postgres Pro installed, you must execute the CREATE EXTENSION command to enable dump_stat, as follows:
CREATE EXTENSION dump_stat;

F.13.2. Functions

anyarray_to_text(array anyarray) returns text

Returns the given array as text.

dump_statistic() returns setof text
dump_statistic() dumps the contents of the pg_statistic system catalog. It produces an INSERT statement per each tuple of the pg_statistic, excluding the ones that contain statistical data for tables in the information_schema and pg_catalog schemas.

The INSERT statement takes form of

WITH upsert as (    UPDATE pg_catalog.pg_statistic SET column_name = expression [, ...] WHERE starelid = t_relnam::regclass AND to_attnam(t_relnam, staattnum) = t_attname AND to_atttype(t_relnam, staattnum) = t_atttype AND stainherit = t_stainherit RETURNING *)
    ins as ( SELECT expression [, ...] WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT * FROM upsert) AND to_attnam(t_relnam, t_attname) IS NOT NULL AND to_atttype(t_relnam, t_attname) = t_atttype
    INSERT INTO pg_catalog.pg_statistic SELECT * FROM ins;

where expression can be one of:

array_in(array_text, type_name::regtype::oid, -1)
value::type_name

To save the produced statements, redirect the psql output into a file using standard psql options. For details on the available psql options, see psql. Meta-commands starting with a backslash are not supported.

For example, to save statistics for the dbname database into a dump_stat.sql file, run:

$ psql -XAtq -c "SELECT dump_statistic()" dbname > dump_stat.sql

2289
dump_statistic(schema_name text) returns setof text

dump_statistic dumps the contents of the pg_statistic system catalog. It produces an INSERT statement per each tuple of the pg_statistic that relates to some table in the schema_name schema.

dump_statistic(schema_name text, table_name text) returns setof text

dump_statistic dumps the contents of the pg_statistic system catalog. It produces an INSERT statement per each tuple of the pg_statistic that relates to the specified schema_name.table_name table.

dump_statistic(relation regclass) returns setof text

dump_statistic dumps the contents of the pg_statistic system catalog. It produces an INSERT statement per each tuple of the pg_statistic that contains statistical data for the specified relation.

to_schema_qualified_operator(opid oid) returns text

Fetches the schema-qualified operator name by operator id opid. For example:

test=# SELECT to_schema_qualified_operator('+(int,int)'::regoperator);
to_schema_qualified_operator
------------------------------------------------
pg_catalog.+(pg_catalog.int4, pg_catalog.int4)
(1 row)
to_schema_qualified_type(typid oid) returns text

Fetches the schema-qualified type name by type id typid.

to_schema_qualified_relation(relid oid) returns text

Fetches the schema-qualified relation name by relation id relid.

anyarrayElemtype(arr anyarray) returns oid

Returns the element type of the given array as oid. For example:

test=# SELECT anyarrayElemtype(array_in('{1,2,3}', 'int'::regtype, -1));
anyarrayElemtype
-------------------
23
(1 row)
to_attname(relation regclass, colnum int2) returns text

Given a relation name relation and a column number colnum, returns the column name as text.

to_attnum(relation regclass, col text) returns int2

Given a relation name relation and a column name col, returns the column number as int2.

to_atttype(relation regclass, col text) returns text

Given a relation name relation and a column name col, returns the schema-qualified column type as text.

to_atttype(relation regclass, colnum int2) returns text

Given a relation name relation and a column number colnum, returns the schema-qualified column type as text.

to_namespace(nsp text) returns oid

to_namespace duplicates the behavior of the cast to the regnamespace type, which is not present in the PostgreSQL 9.4 release (and prior releases). This function returns the oid of the given schema.
get_namespace(relation oid) returns oid

get_namespace returns the schema of the given relation as oid.

F.14. earthdistance

The earthdistance module provides two different approaches to calculating great circle distances on the surface of the Earth. The one described first depends on the cube module. The second one is based on the built-in point data type, using longitude and latitude for the coordinates.

In this module, the Earth is assumed to be perfectly spherical. (If that’s too inaccurate for you, you might want to look at the PostGIS project.)

The cube module must be installed before earthdistance can be installed (although you can use the CASCADE option of CREATE EXTENSION to install both in one command).

Caution

It is strongly recommended that earthdistance and cube be installed in the same schema, and that that schema be one for which CREATE privilege has not been and will not be granted to any untrusted users. Otherwise there are installation-time security hazards if earthdistance's schema contains objects defined by a hostile user. Furthermore, when using earthdistance's functions after installation, the entire search path should contain only trusted schemas.

F.14.1. Cube-Based Earth Distances

Data is stored in cubes that are points (both corners are the same) using 3 coordinates representing the x, y, and z distance from the center of the Earth. A domain earth over cube is provided, which includes constraint checks that the value meets these restrictions and is reasonably close to the actual surface of the Earth.

The radius of the Earth is obtained from the earth() function. It is given in meters. But by changing this one function you can change the module to use some other units, or to use a different value of the radius that you feel is more appropriate.

This package has applications to astronomical databases as well. Astronomers will probably want to change earth() to return a radius of 180/pi() so that distances are in degrees.

Functions are provided to support input in latitude and longitude (in degrees), to support output of latitude and longitude, to calculate the great circle distance between two points and to easily specify a bounding box usable for index searches.

The provided functions are shown in Table F.5.

Table F.5. Cube-Based Earthdistance Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>earth() → float8</td>
<td>Returns the assumed radius of the Earth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sec_to_gc (float8) → float8</td>
<td>Converts the normal straight line (secant) distance between two points on the surface of the Earth to the great circle distance between them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gc_to_sec (float8) → float8</td>
<td>Converts the great circle distance between two points on the surface of the Earth to the normal straight line (secant) distance between them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ll_to_earth (float8, float8) → earth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Returns the location of a point on the surface of the Earth given its latitude (argument 1) and longitude (argument 2) in degrees.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**latitude** \(\texttt{\text{earth}}\rightarrow\texttt{float8}\)

- Returns the latitude in degrees of a point on the surface of the Earth.

**longitude** \(\texttt{\text{earth}}\rightarrow\texttt{float8}\)

- Returns the longitude in degrees of a point on the surface of the Earth.

**earth_distance** \(\texttt{\text{earth,earth}}\rightarrow\texttt{float8}\)

- Returns the great circle distance between two points on the surface of the Earth.

**earth_box** \(\texttt{\text{earth,\text{float8}}}\rightarrow\texttt{cube}\)

- Returns a box suitable for an indexed search using the **cube** \(\texttt{@>}\) operator for points within a given great circle distance of a location. Some points in this box are further than the specified great circle distance from the location, so a second check using **earth_distance** should be included in the query.

### F.14.2. Point-Based Earth Distances

The second part of the module relies on representing Earth locations as values of type **point**, in which the first component is taken to represent longitude in degrees, and the second component is taken to represent latitude in degrees. Points are taken as (longitude, latitude) and not vice versa because longitude is closer to the intuitive idea of x-axis and latitude to y-axis.

A single operator is provided, shown in Table F.6.

#### Table F.6. Point-Based Earthdistance Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>point</strong> (\texttt{@&gt;}) <strong>point</strong> (\rightarrow\texttt{float8})</td>
<td>Computes the distance in statute miles between two points on the Earth's surface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that unlike the **cube**-based part of the module, units are hardwired here: changing the **earth()** function will not affect the results of this operator.

One disadvantage of the longitude/latitude representation is that you need to be careful about the edge conditions near the poles and near +/- 180 degrees of longitude. The **cube**-based representation avoids these discontinuities.

### F.15. fasttrun

The **fasttrun** module provides transaction unsafe function to truncate temporary tables without growing **pg_class** size.

This module is required for 1C Enterprise support.

Fast truncate operation is not transactional, so its results cannot be rolled back and become immediately visible in all sessions regardless of isolation level.

#### F.15.1. Function

There is a function call example:

```
select fasttruncate('TABLE_NAME');
```

#### F.15.2. Test example

For tests you can use this example:
create or replace function f() returns void as $$
begin
  for i in 1..1000
    loop
      PERFORM fasttruncate('tt1');
    end loop;
  end;
$$ language plpgsql;

F.15.3. Authors

Teodor Sigaev <teodor@sigaev.ru>

F.16. file_fdw

The file_fdw module provides the foreign-data wrapper file_fdw, which can be used to access data files in the server's file system, or to execute programs on the server and read their output. The data file or program output must be in a format that can be read by `COPY FROM`; see COPY for details. Access to data files is currently read-only.

A foreign table created using this wrapper can have the following options:

filename
  Specifies the file to be read. Relative paths are relative to the data directory. Either filename or program must be specified, but not both.

program
  Specifies the command to be executed. The standard output of this command will be read as though COPY FROM PROGRAM were used. Either program or filename must be specified, but not both.

format
  Specifies the data format, the same as COPY's FORMAT option.

header
  Specifies whether the data has a header line, the same as COPY's HEADER option.

delimiter
  Specifies the data delimiter character, the same as COPY's DELIMITER option.

quote
  Specifies the data quote character, the same as COPY's QUOTE option.

escape
  Specifies the data escape character, the same as COPY's ESCAPE option.

null
  Specifies the data null string, the same as COPY's NULL option.

encoding
  Specifies the data encoding, the same as COPY's ENCODING option.

Note that while COPY allows options such as HEADER to be specified without a corresponding value, the foreign table option syntax requires a value to be present in all cases. To activate COPY options typically written without a value, you can pass the value TRUE, since all such options are Booleans.

A column of a foreign table created using this wrapper can have the following options:
Additional Supplied Modules

force_not_null

This is a Boolean option. If true, it specifies that values of the column should not be matched against the null string (that is, the table-level null option). This has the same effect as listing the column in COPY’s FORCE_NOT_NULL option.

force_null

This is a Boolean option. If true, it specifies that values of the column which match the null string are returned as NULL even if the value is quoted. Without this option, only unquoted values matching the null string are returned as NULL. This has the same effect as listing the column in COPY’s FORCE_NULL option.

COPY’s FORCE_QUOTE option is currently not supported by file_fdw.

These options can only be specified for a foreign table or its columns, not in the options of the file_fdw foreign-data wrapper, nor in the options of a server or user mapping using the wrapper.

Changing table-level options requires being a superuser or having the privileges of the role pg_read_server_files (to use a filename) or the role pg_execute_server_program (to use a program), for security reasons: only certain users should be able to control which file is read or which program is run. In principle regular users could be allowed to change the other options, but that’s not supported at present.

When specifying the program option, keep in mind that the option string is executed by the shell. If you need to pass any arguments to the command that come from an untrusted source, you must be careful to strip or escape any characters that might have special meaning to the shell. For security reasons, it is best to use a fixed command string, or at least avoid passing any user input in it.

For a foreign table using file_fdw, EXPLAIN shows the name of the file to be read or program to be run. For a file, unless COSTS OFF is specified, the file size (in bytes) is shown as well.

Example F.1. Create a Foreign Table for Postgres Pro CSV Logs

One of the obvious uses for file_fdw is to make the Postgres Pro activity log available as a table for querying. To do this, first you must be logging to a CSV file, which here we will call pglog.csv. First, install file_fdw as an extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION file_fdw;
```

Then create a foreign server:

```
CREATE SERVER pglog FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file_fdw;
```

Now you are ready to create the foreign data table. Using the CREATE FOREIGN TABLE command, you will need to define the columns for the table, the CSV file name, and its format:

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pglog (  
  log_time timestamp(3) with time zone,  
  user_name text,  
  database_name text,  
  process_id integer,  
  connection_from text,  
  session_id text,  
  session_line_num bigint,  
  command_tag text,  
  session_start_time timestamp with time zone,  
  virtual_transaction_id text,  
  transaction_id bigint,  
  error_severity text,  
  sql_state_code text,  
  message text,  
  detail text,  
  hint text,
```

2294
Additional Supplied Modules

```
internal_query text,
internal_query_pos integer,
context text,
query text,
query_pos integer,
location text,
application_name text,
backend_type text,
leader_pid integer,
query_id bigint
) SERVER pglog
OPTIONS ( filename 'log/pglog.csv', format 'csv' );
```

That's it — now you can query your log directly. In production, of course, you would need to define some way to deal with log rotation.

**F.17. fulleq**

The `fulleq` module provides additional equivalence operator for compatibility with Microsoft SQL Server.

This module is required for 1C Enterprise support.

**F.17.1. Overview**

The Postgres Pro equivalence operator is defined to return NULL when both operands are NULLs. However, the Microsoft SQL Servers family traditionally defines other semantic for equivalence operator, where operator returns TRUE in the case of both nulled operands. This module provides such operator with MS SQL semantic.

**F.17.2. Operator fulleq**

The `==` operator is defined for the following data types:

- `bool`
- `bytea`
- `char`
- `name`
- `int2`
- `int4`
- `int8`
- `int2vector`
- `text`
- `oid`
- `xid`
- `cid`
- `oidvector`
- `float4`
- `float8`
- `abstime`
- `reltime`
- `macaddr`
- `inet`
Additional Supplied Modules

- cidr
- varchar
- date
- time
- timestamp
- timestamptz
- interval
- timetz

F.17.3. Authors

Teodor Sigaev <teodor@sigaev.ru>

F.18. fuzzystrmatch

The fuzzystrmatch module provides several functions to determine similarities and distance between strings.

Caution

At present, the soundex, metaphone, dmetaphone, and dmetaphone_alt functions do not work well with multibyte encodings (such as UTF-8).

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

F.18.1. Soundex

The Soundex system is a method of matching similar-sounding names by converting them to the same code. It was initially used by the United States Census in 1880, 1900, and 1910. Note that Soundex is not very useful for non-English names.

The fuzzystrmatch module provides two functions for working with Soundex codes:

soundex(text) returns text

difference(text, text) returns int

The soundex function converts a string to its Soundex code. The difference function converts two strings to their Soundex codes and then reports the number of matching code positions. Since Soundex codes have four characters, the result ranges from zero to four, with zero being no match and four being an exact match. (Thus, the function is misnamed — similarity would have been a better name.)

Here are some usage examples:

```
SELECT soundex('hello world!');

SELECT soundex('Anne'), soundex('Ann'), difference('Anne', 'Ann');
SELECT soundex('Anne'), soundex('Andrew'), difference('Anne', 'Andrew');
SELECT soundex('Anne'), soundex('Margaret'), difference('Anne', 'Margaret');

CREATE TABLE s (nm text);

INSERT INTO s VALUES ('john');
INSERT INTO s VALUES ('joan');
INSERT INTO s VALUES ('wobbly');
INSERT INTO s VALUES ('jack');
```
SELECT * FROM s WHERE soundex(nm) = soundex('john');
SELECT * FROM s WHERE difference(s.nm, 'john') > 2;

F.18.2. Levenshtein

This function calculates the Levenshtein distance between two strings:

```sql
levenshtein(text source, text target, int ins_cost, int del_cost, int sub_cost) returns int
levenshtein(text source, text target) returns int
levenshtein_less_equal(text source, text target, int ins_cost, int del_cost, int sub_cost, int max_d) returns int
levenshtein_less_equal(text source, text target, int max_d) returns int
```

Both `source` and `target` can be any non-null string, with a maximum of 255 characters. The cost parameters specify how much to charge for a character insertion, deletion, or substitution, respectively. You can omit the cost parameters, as in the second version of the function; in that case they all default to 1.

`levenshtein_less_equal` is an accelerated version of the Levenshtein function for use when only small distances are of interest. If the actual distance is less than or equal to `max_d`, then `levenshtein_less_equal` returns the correct distance; otherwise it returns some value greater than `max_d`. If `max_d` is negative then the behavior is the same as `levenshtein`.

Examples:

```sql
test=# SELECT levenshtein('GUMBO', 'GAMBOL');
levenshtein
---------
2
(1 row)
test=# SELECT levenshtein('GUMBO', 'GAMBOL', 2, 1, 1);
levenshtein
---------
3
(1 row)
test=# SELECT levenshtein_less_equal('extensive', 'exhaustive', 2);
levenshtein_less_equal
----------------------
3
(1 row)
test=# SELECT levenshtein_less_equal('extensive', 'exhaustive', 4);
levenshtein_less_equal
----------------------
4
(1 row)
```

F.18.3. Metaphone

Metaphone, like Soundex, is based on the idea of constructing a representative code for an input string. Two strings are then deemed similar if they have the same codes.

This function calculates the metaphone code of an input string:

```sql
metaphone(text source, int max_output_length) returns text
```
source has to be a non-null string with a maximum of 255 characters. max_output_length sets the maximum length of the output metaphone code; if longer, the output is truncated to this length.

Example:

test=# SELECT metaphone('GUMBO', 4);
metaphone
-------
KM
(1 row)

F.18.4. Double Metaphone

The Double Metaphone system computes two “sounds like” strings for a given input string — a “primary” and an “alternate”. In most cases they are the same, but for non-English names especially they can be a bit different, depending on pronunciation. These functions compute the primary and alternate codes:

dmetaphone(text source) returns text
dmetaphone_alt(text source) returns text

There is no length limit on the input strings.

Example:

test=# SELECT dmetaphone('gumbo');
dmetaphone
-------
KMP
(1 row)

F.19. hstore

This module implements the hstore data type for storing sets of key/value pairs within a single Postgres Pro value. This can be useful in various scenarios, such as rows with many attributes that are rarely examined, or semi-structured data. Keys and values are simply text strings.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

F.19.1. hstore External Representation

The text representation of an hstore, used for input and output, includes zero or more key=>value pairs separated by commas. Some examples:

k => v
foo => bar, baz => whatever
"1-a" => "anything at all"

The order of the pairs is not significant (and may not be reproduced on output). Whitespace between pairs or around the => sign is ignored. Double-quote keys and values that include whitespace, commas, =s or >s. To include a double quote or a backslash in a key or value, escape it with a backslash.

Each key in an hstore is unique. If you declare an hstore with duplicate keys, only one will be stored in the hstore and there is no guarantee as to which will be kept:

SELECT 'a=>1,a=>2':hstore;
  hstore
-------
"a"=>"1"

A value (but not a key) can be an SQL NULL. For example:

key => NULL

The NULL keyword is case-insensitive. Double-quote the NULL to treat it as the ordinary string “NULL”.

2298
Additional Supplied Modules

Note
Keep in mind that the hstore text format, when used for input, applies before any required quoting
or escaping. If you are passing an hstore literal via a parameter, then no additional processing
is needed. But if you're passing it as a quoted literal constant, then any single-quote characters
and (depending on the setting of the standard_conforming_strings conﬁguration parameter)
backslash characters need to be escaped correctly. See Section 4.1.2.1 for more on the handling
of string constants.
On output, double quotes always surround keys and values, even when it's not strictly necessary.

F.19.2. hstore Operators and Functions
The operators provided by the hstore module are shown in Table F.7, the functions in Table F.8.
Table F.7. hstore Operators

Operator
Description
Example(s)
hstore -> text → text
Returns value associated with given key, or NULL if not present.
'a=>x, b=>y'::hstore -> 'a' → x
hstore -> text[] → text[]
Returns values associated with given keys, or NULL if not present.
'a=>x, b=>y, c=>z'::hstore -> ARRAY['c','a']
→ {"z","x"}
hstore || hstore → hstore
Concatenates two hstores.
'a=>b, c=>d'::hstore || 'c=>x, d=>q'::hstore

→ "a"=>"b", "c"=>"x", "d"=>"q"

hstore ? text → boolean
Does hstore contain key?
'a=>1'::hstore ? 'a' → t
hstore ?& text[] → boolean
Does hstore contain all the speciﬁed keys?
'a=>1,b=>2'::hstore ?& ARRAY['a','b']

→t

hstore ?| text[] → boolean
Does hstore contain any of the speciﬁed keys?
'a=>1,b=>2'::hstore ?| ARRAY['b','c']
→t
hstore @> hstore → boolean
Does left operand contain right?
'a=>b, b=>1, c=>NULL'::hstore @> 'b=>1'

→t

hstore <@ hstore → boolean
Is left operand contained in right?
'a=>c'::hstore <@ 'a=>b, b=>1, c=>NULL'

→f

hstore - text → hstore
Deletes key from left operand.
'a=>1, b=>2, c=>3'::hstore - 'b'::text
hstore - text[] → hstore
Deletes keys from left operand.
2299

→ "a"=>"1", "c"=>"3"


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hstore - hstore (\rightarrow) hstore</td>
<td>Deletes pairs from left operand that match pairs in the right operand.</td>
<td>('a=&gt;1, b=&gt;2, c=&gt;3'::hstore - 'a=&gt;4, b=&gt;2'::hstore) (\rightarrow) (&quot;a&quot;=&gt;&quot;1&quot;, &quot;c&quot;=&gt;&quot;3&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyelement (#=) hstore (\rightarrow) anyelement</td>
<td>Replaces fields in the left operand (which must be a composite type) with matching values from hstore.</td>
<td>ROW(1,3) (#=) 'f1=&gt;11'::hstore (\rightarrow) (11,3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(%%) hstore (\rightarrow) text[]</td>
<td>Converts hstore to an array of alternating keys and values.</td>
<td>% 'a=&gt;foo, b=&gt;bar'::hstore (\rightarrow) {a,foo,b,bar}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(%#) hstore (\rightarrow) text[]</td>
<td>Converts hstore to a two-dimensional key/value array.</td>
<td>% 'a=&gt;foo, b=&gt;bar'::hstore (\rightarrow) {{a,foo},{b,bar}}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table F.8. hstore Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hstore( record ) (\rightarrow) hstore</td>
<td>Constructs an hstore from a record or row.</td>
<td>hstore(ROW(1,2)) (\rightarrow) &quot;f1&quot;=&gt;&quot;1&quot;, &quot;f2&quot;=&gt;&quot;2&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hstore( text[] ) (\rightarrow) hstore</td>
<td>Constructs an hstore from an array, which may be either a key/value array, or a two-dimensional array.</td>
<td>hstore(ARRAY['a','1','b','2']) (\rightarrow) &quot;a&quot;=&gt;&quot;1&quot;, &quot;b&quot;=&gt;&quot;2&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hstore( text[], text[] ) (\rightarrow) hstore</td>
<td>Constructs an hstore from separate key and value arrays.</td>
<td>hstore(ARRAY['a','b'], ARRAY['1','2']) (\rightarrow) &quot;a&quot;=&gt;&quot;1&quot;, &quot;b&quot;=&gt;&quot;2&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>akeys( hstore ) (\rightarrow) text[]</td>
<td>Extracts an hstore's keys as an array.</td>
<td>akeys('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') (\rightarrow) {a,b}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skeys( hstore ) (\rightarrow) setof text</td>
<td>Extracts an hstore's keys as a set.</td>
<td>skeys('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') (\rightarrow) {a,b}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avals( hstore ) (\rightarrow) text[]</td>
<td>Extracts an hstore's values as an array.</td>
<td>avals('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') (\rightarrow) {1,2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avals('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2')</td>
<td>→ {1,2}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svals(hstore) → setof text</td>
<td>Extracts an hstore’s values as a set.</td>
<td>svals('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') → 1 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hstore_to_array(hstore) → text[]</td>
<td>Extracts an hstore’s keys and values as an array of alternating keys and values.</td>
<td>hstore_to_array('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') → {a,1,b,2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hstore_to_matrix(hstore) → text[]</td>
<td>Extracts an hstore’s keys and values as a two-dimensional array.</td>
<td>hstore_to_matrix('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') → {{a,1},{b,2}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hstore_to_json(hstore) → json</td>
<td>Converts an hstore to a json value, converting all non-null values to JSON strings. This function is used implicitly when an hstore value is cast to json.</td>
<td>hstore_to_json('&quot;a key&quot;=&gt;1, b=&gt;t, c=&gt;null, d=&gt;12345, e=&gt;012345, f=&gt;1.234, g=&gt;2.345e+4') →{&quot;a key&quot;: &quot;1&quot;, &quot;b&quot;: &quot;t&quot;, &quot;c&quot;: null, &quot;d&quot;: &quot;12345&quot;, &quot;e&quot;: &quot;012345&quot;, &quot;f&quot;: &quot;1.234&quot;, &quot;g&quot;: &quot;2.345e+4&quot;}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hstore_to_jsonb(hstore) → jsonb</td>
<td>Converts an hstore to a jsonb value, converting all non-null values to JSON strings. This function is used implicitly when an hstore value is cast to jsonb.</td>
<td>hstore_to_jsonb('&quot;a key&quot;=&gt;1, b=&gt;t, c=&gt;null, d=&gt;12345, e=&gt;012345, f=&gt;1.234, g=&gt;2.345e+4') →{&quot;a key&quot;: &quot;1&quot;, &quot;b&quot;: &quot;t&quot;, &quot;c&quot;: null, &quot;d&quot;: &quot;12345&quot;, &quot;e&quot;: &quot;012345&quot;, &quot;f&quot;: &quot;1.234&quot;, &quot;g&quot;: &quot;2.345e+4&quot;}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hstore_to_json_loose(hstore) → json</td>
<td>Converts an hstore to a json value, but attempts to distinguish numerical and Boolean values so they are unquoted in the JSON.</td>
<td>hstore_to_json_loose('&quot;a key&quot;=&gt;1, b=&gt;t, c=&gt;null, d=&gt;12345, e=&gt;012345, f=&gt;1.234, g=&gt;2.345e+4') →{&quot;a key&quot;: 1, &quot;b&quot;: true, &quot;c&quot;: null, &quot;d&quot;: 12345, &quot;e&quot;: &quot;012345&quot;, &quot;f&quot;: 1.234, &quot;g&quot;: 2.345e+4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hstore_to_jsonb_loose(hstore) → jsonb</td>
<td>Converts an hstore to a jsonb value, but attempts to distinguish numerical and Boolean values so they are unquoted in the JSON.</td>
<td>hstore_to_jsonb_loose('&quot;a key&quot;=&gt;1, b=&gt;t, c=&gt;null, d=&gt;12345, e=&gt;012345, f=&gt;1.234, g=&gt;2.345e+4') →{&quot;a key&quot;: 1, &quot;b&quot;: true, &quot;c&quot;: null, &quot;d&quot;: 12345, &quot;e&quot;: &quot;012345&quot;, &quot;f&quot;: 1.234, &quot;g&quot;: 2.345e+4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slice(hstore, text[]) → hstore</td>
<td>Extracts a subset of an hstore containing only the specified keys.</td>
<td>slice('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2,c=&gt;3'::hstore, ARRAY['b','c','x']) → &quot;b&quot;=&gt;&quot;2&quot;, &quot;c&quot;=&gt;&quot;3&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>each(hstore) → setof record(key text, value text)</td>
<td>Extracts an hstore’s keys and values as a set of records.</td>
<td>select * from each('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') → key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2301
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>exist(hstore, text) → boolean</code></td>
<td>Does hstore contain key?</td>
<td><code>exist('a=&gt;1', 'a') → t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>defined(hstore, text) → boolean</code></td>
<td>Does hstore contain a non-NULL value for key?</td>
<td><code>defined('a=&gt;NULL', 'a') → f</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>delete(hstore, text) → hstore</code></td>
<td>Deletes pair with matching key.</td>
<td><code>delete('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2', 'b') → &quot;a&quot;&gt;=&quot;1&quot;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>delete(hstore, text[]) → hstore</code></td>
<td>Deletes pairs with matching keys.</td>
<td><code>delete('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2,c=&gt;3', ARRAY['a','b']) → &quot;c&quot;&gt;=&quot;3&quot;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>delete(hstore, hstore) → hstore</code></td>
<td>Deletes pairs matching those in the second argument.</td>
<td><code>delete('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2', 'a=&gt;4,b=&gt;2':hstore) → &quot;a&quot;&gt;=&quot;1&quot;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>populate_record(anyelement, hstore) → anyelement</code></td>
<td>Replaces fields in the left operand (which must be a composite type) with matching values from hstore.</td>
<td><code>populate_record(ROW(1,2), 'f1=&gt;42':hstore) → (42,2)</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to these operators and functions, values of the hstore type can be subscripted, allowing them to act like associative arrays. Only a single subscript of type text can be specified; it is interpreted as a key and the corresponding value is fetched or stored. For example,

```sql
CREATE TABLE mytable (h hstore);
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES ('a=>b, c=>d');
SELECT h[\'a\'] FROM mytable;
  h
 b
(1 row)
UPDATE mytable SET h[\'c\'] = 'new';
SELECT h FROM mytable;
  h
  "a">="b", "c">="new"
(1 row)
```

A subscripted fetch returns NULL if the subscript is NULL or that key does not exist in the hstore. (Thus, a subscripted fetch is not greatly different from the -> operator.) A subscripted update fails if the subscript is NULL; otherwise, it replaces the value for that key, adding an entry to the hstore if the key does not already exist.

### F.19.3. Indexes

hstore has GiST and GIN index support for the @>, ?, ?& and ?| operators. For example:

```sql
CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING GIST (h);
```
CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING GIN (h);

gist_hstore_ops GiST opclass approximates a set of key/value pairs as a bitmap signature. Its optional integer parameter siglen determines the signature length in bytes. The default length is 16 bytes. Valid values of signature length are between 1 and 2048 bytes. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

Example of creating such an index with a signature length of 32 bytes:

CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING GIST (h gist_hstore_ops(siglen=32));

hstore also supports btree or hash indexes for the = operator. This allows hstore columns to be declared UNIQUE, or to be used in GROUP BY, ORDER BY or DISTINCT expressions. The sort ordering for hstore values is not particularly useful, but these indexes may be useful for equivalence lookups. Create indexes for = comparisons as follows:

CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING BTREE (h);
CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING HASH (h);

F.19.4. Examples

Add a key, or update an existing key with a new value:

UPDATE tab SET h['c'] = '3';

Another way to do the same thing is:

UPDATE tab SET h = h || hstore('c', '3');

If multiple keys are to be added or changed in one operation, the concatenation approach is more efficient than subscribing:

UPDATE tab SET h = h || hstore(array['q', 'w'], array['11', '12']);

Delete a key:

UPDATE tab SET h = delete(h, 'k1');

Convert a record to an hstore:

CREATE TABLE test (col1 integer, col2 text, col3 text);
INSERT INTO test VALUES (123, 'foo', 'bar');

SELECT hstore(t) FROM test AS t;
   hstore
---------------
  "col1"=>"123", "col2"=>"foo", "col3"=>"bar"
(1 row)

Convert an hstore to a predefined record type:

CREATE TABLE test (col1 integer, col2 text, col3 text);

SELECT * FROM populate_record(null::test, 
   "col1"=>"456", "col2"=>"zzz");
col1 | col2 | col3
-------+------+
 456   | zzz   |
(1 row)

Modify an existing record using the values from an hstore:
CREATE TABLE test (col1 integer, col2 text, col3 text);
INSERT INTO test VALUES (123, 'foo', 'bar');

SELECT (r).* FROM (SELECT t #= 'col3'="baz" AS r FROM test t) s;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>col1</th>
<th>col2</th>
<th>col3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>foo</td>
<td>baz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

F.19.5. Statistics

The hstore type, because of its intrinsic liberality, could contain a lot of different keys. Checking for valid keys is the task of the application. The following examples demonstrate several techniques for checking keys and obtaining statistics.

Simple example:

SELECT * FROM each('aaa=>bq, b=>NULL, ""=>1');

Using a table:

CREATE TABLE stat AS SELECT (each(h)).key, (each(h)).value FROM testhstore;

Online statistics:

SELECT key, count(*) FROM (SELECT (each(h)).key FROM testhstore) AS stat GROUP BY key ORDER BY count DESC, key;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>key</th>
<th>count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td>883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>space</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>title</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>org</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.19.6. Compatibility

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, hstore uses a different internal representation than previous versions. This presents no obstacle for dump/restore upgrades since the text representation (used in the dump) is unchanged.

In the event of a binary upgrade, upward compatibility is maintained by having the new code recognize old-format data. This will entail a slight performance penalty when processing data that has not yet been modified by the new code. It is possible to force an upgrade of all values in a table column by doing an UPDATE statement as follows:

UPDATE tablename SET hstorecol = hstorecol || '';

Another way to do it is:

ALTER TABLE tablename ALTER hstorecol TYPE hstore USING hstorecol || '';

The ALTER TABLE method requires an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the table, but does not result in bloating the table with old row versions.
F.19.7. Transforms

Additional extensions are available that implement transforms for the hstore type for the languages PL/Perl and PL/Python. The extensions for PL/Perl are called hstore_plperl and hstore_plperlu, for trusted and untrusted PL/Perl. If you install these transforms and specify them when creating a function, hstore values are mapped to Perl hashes. The extensions for PL/Python are called hstore_plpythonu, hstore_plpython2u, and hstore_plpython3u (see Section 44.1 for the PL/Python naming convention). If you use them, hstore values are mapped to Python dictionaries.

Caution

It is strongly recommended that the transform extensions be installed in the same schema as hstore. Otherwise there are installation-time security hazards if a transform extension’s schema contains objects defined by a hostile user.

F.19.8. Authors

Oleg Bartunov <oleg@sai.msu.su>, Moscow, Moscow University, Russia

Teodor Sigaev <teodor@sigaev.ru>, Moscow, Delta-Soft Ltd., Russia

Additional enhancements by Andrew Gierth <andrew@tao11.riddles.org.uk>, United Kingdom

F.20. Hunspell Dictionaries Modules

These modules provide Hunspell dictionaries for various languages. Upon installation of the module into database using CREATE EXTENSION command, text search dictionary and configuration objects in the public schema appear.

Table F.9. Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Extension name</th>
<th>Dictionary name</th>
<th>Configuration name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American English</td>
<td>hunspell_en_us</td>
<td>english_hunspell</td>
<td>english_hunspell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>hunspell_nl_nl</td>
<td>dutch_hunspell</td>
<td>dutch_hunspell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>hunspell_fr</td>
<td>french_hunspell</td>
<td>french_hunspell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>hunspell_ru_ru</td>
<td>russian_hunspell</td>
<td>russian_hunspell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.20.1. Examples

Text search objects will be created after installation of a dictionary module. We can test created configuration:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english_hunspell', 'abilities');
alias   |   description   |   token   |          dictionaries           |
dictionary    |  lexemes
-------------+-----------------+-----------+---------------------------------
+------------------+-----------
asciiword | Word, all ASCII | abilities | {english_hunspell,english_stem} |
english_hunspell | {ability}   (1 row)
```

Or you can create your own text search configuration. For example, with the created dictionaries and with the Snowball dictionary you can create mixed russian-english configuration:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian_en (}
```
COPY = simple

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian_en
ALTER MAPPING FOR asciword, asciihword, hword_asciipart
  WITH english_hunspell, english_stem;

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian_en
ALTER MAPPING FOR word, hword, hword_part
  WITH russian_hunspell, russian_stem;

You can create mixed dictionaries only for languages with different alphabets. If languages have similar alphabets then Postgres Pro can not decide which dictionary should be used.

A text search configuration which is created with a dictionary module is ready to use. For example, in this text you can search some words:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('english_hunspell', 'The blue whale is the largest animal');
```

```
to_tsvector
    'animal':7 'blue':2 'large':6 'whale':3
(1 row)
```

Search query might looks like this:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('english_hunspell', 'The blue whale is the largest animal')
  @@ to_tsquery('english_hunspell', 'large & whale');
?column?
----------
t
(1 row)
```

With this configurations you can search a text using GIN or GIST indexes. For example, there is a table with GIN index:

```
CREATE TABLE table1 (t varchar);
INSERT INTO table1 VALUES ('The blue whale is the largest animal');
CREATE INDEX t_idx ON table1 USING GIN (to_tsvector('english_hunspell', "t"));
```

For this table you can execute the following query:

```
SELECT * FROM table1 where to_tsvector('english_hunspell', t)
  @@ to_tsquery('english_hunspell', 'blue & animal');
```

```
t
-----------------------
The blue whale is the largest animal
(1 row)
```

F.21. intagg

The intagg module provides an integer aggregator and an enumerator. intagg is now obsolete, because there are built-in functions that provide a superset of its capabilities. However, the module is still provided as a compatibility wrapper around the built-in functions.

F.21.1. Functions

The aggregator is an aggregate function int_array_aggregate(integer) that produces an integer array containing exactly the integers it is fed. This is a wrapper around array_agg, which does the same thing for any array type.
The enumerator is a function `int_array_enum(integer[])` that returns `setof integer`. It is essentially the reverse operation of the aggregator: given an array of integers, expand it into a set of rows. This is a wrapper around `unnest`, which does the same thing for any array type.

**F.21.2. Sample Uses**

Many database systems have the notion of a one to many table. Such a table usually sits between two indexed tables, for example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE left (id INT PRIMARY KEY, ...);
CREATE TABLE right (id INT PRIMARY KEY, ...);
CREATE TABLE one_to_many(left INT REFERENCES left, right INT REFERENCES right);
```

It is typically used like this:

```sql
SELECT right.* from right JOIN one_to_many ON (right.id = one_to_many.right)
WHERE one_to_many.left = item;
```

This will return all the items in the right hand table for an entry in the left hand table. This is a very common construct in SQL.

Now, this methodology can be cumbersome with a very large number of entries in the `one_to_many` table. Often, a join like this would result in an index scan and a fetch for each right hand entry in the table for a particular left hand entry. If you have a very dynamic system, there is not much you can do. However, if you have some data which is fairly static, you can create a summary table with the aggregator:

```sql
CREATE TABLE summary AS
SELECT left, int_array_aggregate(right) AS right
FROM one_to_many
GROUP BY left;
```

This will create a table with one row per left item, and an array of right items. Now this is pretty useless without some way of using the array; that's why there is an array enumerator. You can do:

```sql
SELECT left, int_array_enum(right) FROM summary WHERE left = item;
```

The above query using `int_array_enum` produces the same results as

```sql
SELECT left, right FROM one_to_many WHERE left = item;
```

The difference is that the query against the summary table has to get only one row from the table, whereas the direct query against `one_to_many` must index scan and fetch a row for each entry.

On one system, an `EXPLAIN` showed a query with a cost of 8488 was reduced to a cost of 329. The original query was a join involving the `one_to_many` table, which was replaced by:

```sql
SELECT right, count(right) FROM
(SELECT left, int_array_enum(right) AS right
FROM summary
JOIN (SELECT left FROM left_table WHERE left = item) AS lefts
ON (summary.left = lefts.left)
) AS list
GROUP BY right
ORDER BY count DESC;
```

**F.22. intarray**

The `intarray` module provides a number of useful functions and operators for manipulating null-free arrays of integers. There is also support for indexed searches using some of the operators.

All of these operations will throw an error if a supplied array contains any NULL elements.

Many of these operations are only sensible for one-dimensional arrays. Although they will accept input arrays of more dimensions, the data is treated as though it were a linear array in storage order.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.
**F.22.1. intarray Functions and Operators**

The functions provided by the intarray module are shown in Table F.10, the operators in Table F.11.

### Table F.10. intarray Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>icount (integer[]) → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of elements in the array.</td>
<td>icount('1,2,3'::integer[]) → 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sort (integer[], dir text) → integer[]</td>
<td>Sorts the array in either ascending or descending order. dir must be asc or desc.</td>
<td>sort('1,3,2'::integer[], 'desc') → {3,2,1}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sort_asc (integer[]) → integer[]</td>
<td>Sorts in ascending order.</td>
<td>sort_asc(array[11,77,44]) → {11,44,77}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sort_desc (integer[]) → integer[]</td>
<td>Sorts in descending order.</td>
<td>sort_desc(array[11,77,44]) → {77,44,11}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniq (integer[]) → integer[]</td>
<td>Removes adjacent duplicates.</td>
<td>uniq(sort('1,2,3,2,1'::integer[])) → {1,2,3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idx (integer[], item integer) → integer</td>
<td>Returns index of the first array element matching item, or 0 if no match.</td>
<td>idx(array[11,22,33,22,11], 22) → 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subarray (integer[], start integer, len integer) → integer[]</td>
<td>Extracts the portion of the array starting at position start, with len elements.</td>
<td>subarray('1,2,3,2,1'::integer[], 2, 3) → {2,3,2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subarray (integer[], start integer) → integer[]</td>
<td>Extracts the portion of the array starting at position start.</td>
<td>subarray('1,2,3,2,1'::integer[], 2) → {2,3,2,1}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intset (integer) → integer[]</td>
<td>Makes a single-element array.</td>
<td>intset(42) → {42}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table F.11. intarray Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integer[] &amp;&amp; integer[] → boolean</td>
<td>Do arrays overlap (have at least one element in common)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] @&gt; integer[] → boolean</td>
<td>Does left array contain right array?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] @@ integer[] → boolean</td>
<td>Is left array contained in right array?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td># integer[] → integer</td>
<td>Returns the number of elements in the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] # integer → integer</td>
<td>Returns index of the first array element matching the right argument, or 0 if no match. (Same as <code>idx</code> function.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] + integer → integer[]</td>
<td>Adds element to end of array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] + integer[] → integer[]</td>
<td>Concatenates the arrays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] − integer → integer[]</td>
<td>Removes entries matching the right argument from the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] − integer[] → integer[]</td>
<td>Removes elements of the right array from the left array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[]</td>
<td>integer → integer[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[]</td>
<td>integer[] → integer[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] &amp; integer[] → integer[]</td>
<td>Computes the intersection of the arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer[] @@ query_int → boolean</td>
<td>Does array satisfy query? (see below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query_int ~ integer[] → boolean</td>
<td>Does array satisfy query? (commutator of @@)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The operators `&&`, `@>`, and `<@` are equivalent to Postgres Pro’s built-in operators of the same names, except that they work only on integer arrays that do not contain nulls, while the built-in operators work for any array type. This restriction makes them faster than the built-in operators in many cases.

The @@ and ~ operators test whether an array satisfies a query, which is expressed as a value of a specialized data type `query_int`. A query consists of integer values that are checked against the elements of the array, possibly combined using the operators `&` (AND), `|` (OR), and `!` (NOT). Parentheses can be used as needed. For example, the query `1 & (2 | 3)` matches arrays that contain 1 and also contain either 2 or 3.

#### F.22.2. Index Support

`intarray` provides index support for the `&&`, `@>`, and @@ operators, as well as regular array equality.

Two parameterized GIST index operator classes are provided: `gist__int_ops` (used by default) is suitable for small- to medium-size data sets, while `gist__intbig_ops` uses a larger signature and is more suitable for indexing large data sets (i.e., columns containing a large number of distinct array values). The implementation uses an RD-tree data structure with built-in lossy compression.

`gist__int_ops` approximates an integer set as an array of integer ranges. Its optional integer parameter `numranges` determines the maximum number of ranges in one index key. The default value of `numranges` is 100. Valid values are between 1 and 253. Using larger arrays as GIST index keys leads to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

`gist__intbig_ops` approximates an integer set as a bitmap signature. Its optional integer parameter `siglen` determines the signature length in bytes. The default signature length is 16 bytes. Valid values
of signature length are between 1 and 2024 bytes. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

There is also a non-default GIN operator class `gin__int_ops`, which supports these operators as well as `<@`.

The choice between GiST and GIN indexing depends on the relative performance characteristics of GiST and GIN, which are discussed elsewhere.

### F.22.3. Example

-- a message can be in one or more “sections”
```sql
CREATE TABLE message (mid INT PRIMARY KEY, sections INT[], ...);
```

-- create specialized index with signature length of 32 bytes
```sql
CREATE INDEX message_rdtree_idx ON message USING GIST (sections gist__intbig_ops (siglen = 32));
```

-- select messages in section 1 OR 2 - OVERLAP operator
```sql
SELECT message.mid FROM message WHERE message.sections && '{1,2}';
```

-- select messages in sections 1 AND 2 - CONTAINS operator
```sql
SELECT message.mid FROM message WHERE message.sections @> '{1,2}';
```

-- the same, using QUERY operator
```sql
SELECT message.mid FROM message WHERE message.sections @@ '1&2':query_int;
```

### F.22.4. Authors

All work was done by Teodor Sigaev (<teodor@sigaev.ru>) and Oleg Bartunov (<oleg@sai.msu.su>). See [http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/](http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/) for additional information. Andrey Oktyabrski did a great work on adding new functions and operations.

### F.23. isn

The `isn` module provides data types for the following international product numbering standards: EAN13, UPC, ISBN (books), ISMN (music), and ISSN (serials). Numbers are validated on input according to a hard-coded list of prefixes; this list of prefixes is also used to hyphenate numbers on output. Since new prefixes are assigned from time to time, the list of prefixes may be out of date. It is hoped that a future version of this module will obtain the prefix list from one or more tables that can be easily updated by users as needed; however, at present, the list can only be updated by modifying the source code and recompiling. Alternatively, prefix validation and hyphenation support may be dropped from a future version of this module.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.23.1. Data Types

Table F.12 shows the data types provided by the `isn` module.

#### Table F.12. `isn` Data Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EAN13</td>
<td>European Article Numbers, always displayed in the EAN13 display format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN13</td>
<td>International Standard Book Numbers to be displayed in the new EAN13 display format</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISMN13</td>
<td>International Standard Music Numbers to be displayed in the new EAN13 display format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISSN13</td>
<td>International Standard Serial Numbers to be displayed in the new EAN13 display format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN</td>
<td>International Standard Book Numbers to be displayed in the old short display format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISMN</td>
<td>International Standard Music Numbers to be displayed in the old short display format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td>International Standard Serial Numbers to be displayed in the old short display format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPC</td>
<td>Universal Product Codes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some notes:

1. ISBN13, ISMN13, ISSN13 numbers are all EAN13 numbers.
2. EAN13 numbers aren't always ISBN13, ISMN13 or ISSN13 (some are).
3. Some ISBN13 numbers can be displayed as ISBN.
4. Some ISMN13 numbers can be displayed as ISMN.
5. Some ISSN13 numbers can be displayed as ISSN.
6. UPC numbers are a subset of the EAN13 numbers (they are basically EAN13 without the first 0 digit).
7. All UPC, ISBN, ISMN and ISSN numbers can be represented as EAN13 numbers.

Internally, all these types use the same representation (a 64-bit integer), and all are interchangeable. Multiple types are provided to control display formatting and to permit tighter validity checking of input that is supposed to denote one particular type of number.

The **ISBN, ISMN, and ISSN** types will display the short version of the number (ISxN 10) whenever it’s possible, and will show ISxN 13 format for numbers that do not fit in the short version. The **EAN13, ISBN13, ISMN13 and ISSN13** types will always display the long version of the ISxN (EAN13).

### F.23.2. Casts

The **isn** module provides the following pairs of type casts:

- ISBN13 <=> EAN13
- ISMN13 <=> EAN13
- ISSN13 <=> EAN13
- ISBN <=> EAN13
- ISMN <=> EAN13
- ISSN <=> EAN13
- UPC <=> EAN13
- ISMN <=> ISMN13
- ISSN <=> ISSN13

When casting from EAN13 to another type, there is a run-time check that the value is within the domain of the other type, and an error is thrown if not. The other casts are simply relabelings that will always succeed.
F.23.3. Functions and Operators  

The isn module provides the standard comparison operators, plus B-tree and hash indexing support for all these data types. In addition there are several specialized functions; shown in Table F.13. In this table, isn means any one of the module's data types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isn_weak (boolean) → boolean</td>
<td>Sets the weak input mode, and returns new setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isn_weak () → boolean</td>
<td>Returns the current status of the weak mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make_valid (isn) → isn</td>
<td>Validates an invalid number (clears the invalid flag).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is_valid (isn) → boolean</td>
<td>Checks for the presence of the invalid flag.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Weak mode is used to be able to insert invalid data into a table. Invalid means the check digit is wrong, not that there are missing numbers.

Why would you want to use the weak mode? Well, it could be that you have a huge collection of ISBN numbers, and that there are so many of them that for weird reasons some have the wrong check digit (perhaps the numbers were scanned from a printed list and the OCR got the numbers wrong, perhaps the numbers were manually captured... who knows). Anyway, the point is you might want to clean the mess up, but you still want to be able to have all the numbers in your database and maybe use an external tool to locate the invalid numbers in the database so you can verify the information and validate it more easily; so for example you'd want to select all the invalid numbers in the table.

When you insert invalid numbers in a table using the weak mode, the number will be inserted with the corrected check digit, but it will be displayed with an exclamation mark (!) at the end, for example 0-11-000322-5!. This invalid marker can be checked with the is_valid function and cleared with the make_valid function.

You can also force the insertion of invalid numbers even when not in the weak mode, by appending the ! character at the end of the number.

Another special feature is that during input, you can write ? in place of the check digit, and the correct check digit will be inserted automatically.

F.23.4. Examples

-- Using the types directly:
SELECT isbn('978-0-393-04002-9');
SELECT isbn13('0901690546');
SELECT issn('1436-4522');

-- Casting types:
-- note that you can only cast from ean13 to another type when the
-- number would be valid in the realm of the target type;
-- thus, the following will NOT work: select isbn(ean13('0220356483481'));
-- but these will:
SELECT upc(ean13('0220356483481'));
SELECT ean13(upc('220356483481'));

-- Create a table with a single column to hold ISBN numbers:
CREATE TABLE test (id isbn);
INSERT INTO test VALUES('9780393040029');

--Automatically calculate check digits (observe the '?'):
INSERT INTO test VALUES('220500896?');
INSERT INTO test VALUES('978055215372?');
SELECT issn('3251231?');
SELECT ismn('979047213542?');

--Using the weak mode:
SELECT isn_weak(true);
INSERT INTO test VALUES('978-0-11-000533-4');
INSERT INTO test VALUES('9780141219307');
INSERT INTO test VALUES('2-205-00876-X');
SELECT isn_weak(false);

SELECT id FROM test WHERE NOT is_valid(id);
UPDATE test SET id = make_valid(id) WHERE id = '2-205-00876-X!';
SELECT * FROM test;
SELECT isbn13(id) FROM test;

F.23.5. Bibliography

The information to implement this module was collected from several sites, including:
- https://www.isbn-international.org/
- https://www.issn.org/
- https://www.ismn-international.org/
- https://www.wikipedia.org/

The prefixes used for hyphenation were also compiled from:
- https://www.gs1.org/standards/id-keys
- https://www.isbn-international.org/content/isbn-users-manual
- https://www.ismn-international.org/ranges.html

Care was taken during the creation of the algorithms and they were meticulously verified against the suggested algorithms in the official ISBN, ISMN, ISSN User Manuals.

F.23.6. Author

Germán Méndez Bravo (Kronuz), 2004–2006

This module was inspired by Garrett A. Wollman's isbn_issn code.

F.24. jsquery

JsQuery is a language to query jsonb data type. Its primary goal is to provide an additional functionality for jsonb, such as a simple and effective way for search in nested objects and arrays, as well as additional comparison operators with index support.

JsQuery is implemented by means of a jsquery data type (similar to tsquery) and the @@ match operator for jsonb.
F.24.1. Installation
Postgres Pro distribution includes jsquery as a contrib module. Once you complete Postgres Pro Standard installation, create the jsquery extension, as follows:

```
CREATE EXTENSION jsquery;
```

F.24.2. JSON query language
JsQuery extension contains jsquery datatype which represents whole JSON query as a single value (like tsquery does for fulltext search). The query is an expression on JSON-document values.

Simple expression is specified as path binary_operator value or path unary_operator. See the following examples.

- `x = "abc"` - value of key "x" is equal to "abc";
- `@> [4, 5, "zzz"]` - the JSON document is an array containing values 4, 5 and "zzz";
- `"abc xyz" >= 10` - value of key "abc xyz" is greater than or equal to 10;
- `volume IS NUMERIC` - type of key "volume" is numeric.
- `$ = true` - the whole JSON document is just a true.
- `similar_ids.# > 5` - `similar_ids` is an array or object of length greater than 5;
- `similar_product_ids.# = "0684824396"` - array `similar_product_ids` contains string "0684824396".
- `*.color = "red"` - there is object somewhere which key "color" has value "red".
- `foo = *` - key "foo" exists in object.

Path selects set of JSON values to be checked using given operators. In the simplest case, path is just a key name. In general, path is key names and placeholders combined by dot signs. Path can use the following placeholders:

- `#` - any index of array;
- `#N` - Nth index of array;
- `%` - any key of object;
- `*` - any sequence of array indexes and object keys;
- `@#` - length of array or object, could be only used as last component of path;
- `$` - the whole JSON document as single value, could be only the whole path.

Expression is true when operator is true against at least one value selected by path.

Key names could be given either with or without double quotes. Key names without double quotes shouldn't contain spaces, start with number, or concur with jsquery keyword.

The supported binary operators are:

- Equality operator: `=`;
- Numeric comparison operators: `>`, `>=`, `<`, `<=`;
- Search in the list of scalar values using `IN` operator;
- Array comparison operators: `&&` (overlap), `@>` (contains), `<@` (contained in).
- Filtering operator: `~~`. Taking `jsonb` data as the left operand and a `jsquery` expression as the right operand, this operator checks that `jsonb` data contains any entries that satisfy the condition provided in a `jsquery` expression and returns an array of such entries, if any.

The supported unary operators are:

- Check for existence operator: `=`;
- Check for type operators: `IS ARRAY`, `IS NUMERIC`, `IS OBJECT`, `IS STRING` and `IS BOOLEAN`.

Expressions could be complex. Complex expression is a set of expressions combined by logical operators (AND, OR, NOT) and grouped using parentheses.

Examples of complex expressions are given below.
Prefix expressions are expressions given in the form path (subexpression). In this case path selects JSON values to be checked using given subexpression. Check results are aggregated in the same way as in simple expressions.

• #(a = 1 AND b = 2)  - an array contains an element where the a key is 2 and the b key is 2
• %(x >= 10 AND x <= 20)  - an object contains a key with a value between 10 and 20

Path also could contain the following special placeholders with "every" semantics:

• #: - every index of array;
• %: - every key of object;
• *: - every sequence of array indexes and object keys.

Consider the following example.

%(#:($ >= 0 AND $ <= 1))
This example could be read as follows: there is at least one key for which the value is an array of numerics between 0 and 1.

We can rewrite this example in the following form with extra parentheses.

%(#:($ >= 0 AND $ <= 1))
The first placeholder % checks that expression in parentheses is true for at least one value in object. The second placeholder #: checks that the value is an array and all its elements satisfy expressions in parentheses.

We can rewrite this example without #: placeholder as follows.

%(NOT #(NOT ($ >= 0 AND $ <= 1)) AND $ IS ARRAY)
In this example we transform assertion that every element of array satisfies some condition to assertion that there is no one element which doesn't satisfy the same condition.

Some examples of using paths are given below.

• numbers.#: IS NUMERIC - every element of "numbers" array is numeric.
• *:($ IS OBJECT OR $ IS BOOLEAN) - JSON is a structure of nested objects with booleans as leaf values.
• #:.(%:($ >= 0 AND $ <= 1)) - each element of array is object containing only numeric values between 0 and 1.
• documents.#:.%: = *: "documents" is an array of objects containing at least one key.
• %:.#:($ IS STRING) - JSON object contains at least one array of strings.
• #.% = true - at least one array element is an object that contains at least one "true" value.

Usage of path operators and parentheses needs some explanation. When same path operators are used multiple times they may refer to different values while you can refer to the same value multiple times by using parentheses and $ operator. See the following examples.

• # < 10 AND # > 20 - there is an element less than 10 and another element greater than 20.
• #($ < 10 AND $ > 20) - there is an element that is both less than 10 and greater than 20 (impossible).
• #($ >= 10 AND $ <= 20) - there is an element between 10 and 20.
• # >= 10 AND # <= 20 - there is an element greater than or equal to 10 and another element less than or equal to 20. The query can be satisfied by an array with no elements between 10 and 20, for instance [0,30].

Same rules apply when you search inside objects and branchy structures.

Type checking operators and "every" placeholders are useful for document schema validation. JsQuery matching operator @@ is immutable and can be used in CHECK constraint. See the following example.
CREATE TABLE js (  id serial,  data jsonb,  CHECK (data @@  
   name IS STRING AND  
similar_ids.#: IS NUMERIC AND  
points.#:(x IS NUMERIC AND y IS NUMERIC)::jsquery));

In this example check constraint validates that in "data" jsonb column: value of "name" key is string, value of "similar_ids" key is array of numerics, value of "points" key is array of objects which contain numeric values in "x" and "y" keys.

See our pgconf.eu presentation for more examples.

F.24.3. GIN indexes

JsQuery extension contains two operator classes (opclasses) for GIN which provide different kinds of query optimization.

• jsonb_path_value_ops  
• jsonb_value_path_ops

In each of two GIN opclasses jsonb documents are decomposed into entries. Each entry is associated with a particular value and its path. Difference between opclasses is in the entry representation, comparison, and usage for search optimization.

For example, jsonb document {"a": [{"b": "xyz", "c": true}, 10], "d": {"e": [7, false]}} would be decomposed into the following entries:

• "a".#.b."xyz"  
• "a".#.c.true  
• "a".#.10  
• "d".e.#.7  
• "d"."e".#.false

Since JsQuery doesn’t support search in a particular array index, we consider all array elements to be equivalent. Thus, each array element is marked with the same # sign in the path.

Major problem in the entries representation is its size. In the given example key "a" is presented three times. In the large branchy documents with long keys size of naive entries representation becomes unreasonable. Both opclasses address this issue but in a slightly different way.

F.24.3.1. jsonb_path_value_ops

jsonb_path_value_ops represents entry as pair of path hash and value. The following pseudocode illustrates it.

(hash(path_item_1.path_item_2. ... .path_item_n); value)

In comparison of entries path hash is the higher part of entry and value is its lower part. This determines the features of this opclass. Since path is hashed and it is higher part of entry we need to know the full path to the value in order to use it for search. However, once path is specified we can use both exact and range searches very efficiently.

F.24.3.2. jsonb_value_path_ops

jsonb_value_path_ops represents entry as pair of value and bloom filter of path.

(value; bloom(path_item_1) | bloom(path_item_2) | ... | bloom(path_item_n))

In comparison of entries value is the higher part of entry and bloom filter of path is its lower part. This determines the features of this opclass. Since value is the higher part of entry we can perform only exact value search efficiently. Range value search is possible as well but we would have to filter all
the different paths where matching values occur. Bloom filter over path items allows index usage for conditions containing % and * in their paths.

F.24.3.3. Query optimization

JsQuery opclasses perform complex query optimization. Thus it's valuable for developer or administrator to see the result of such optimization. Unfortunately, opclasses aren't allowed to do any custom output to the EXPLAIN. That's why JsQuery provides the following functions which allows to see how particular opclass optimizes given query.

- gin_debug_query_path_value(jsquery) - for jsonb_path_value_ops
- gin_debug_query_value_path(jsquery) - for jsonb_value_path_ops

Result of these functions is a textual representation of query tree which leaves are GIN search entries. The following examples show different results of query optimization by different opclasses.

```sql
# SELECT gin_debug_query_path_value('x = 1 AND (*.y = 1 OR y = 2)');
gin_debug_query_path_value
----------------------------
x = 1 , entry 0           +

# SELECT gin_debug_query_value_path('x = 1 AND (*.y = 1 OR y = 2)');
gin_debug_query_value_path
----------------------------
AND                       +
x = 1 , entry 0         +
OR                      +
  *.y = 1 , entry 1     +
y = 2 , entry 2       +
```

Unfortunately, jsonb has no statistics yet. That's why JsQuery optimizer has to do imperative decision while selecting conditions to be evaluated using index. This decision is made by assumption that some condition types are less selective than others. Optimizer divides conditions into the following selectivity class (listed by descending of selectivity).

1. Equality (x = c)
2. Range (c1 < x < c2)
3. Inequality (x > c)
4. Is (x is type)
5. Any (x = *)

Optimizer evades index evaluation of less selective conditions when possible. For example, in the x = 1 AND y > 0 query x = 1 is assumed to be more selective than y > 0. That's why index isn't used for evaluation of y > 0.

```sql
# SELECT gin_debug_query_path_value('x = 1 AND y > 0');
gin_debug_query_path_value
----------------------------
x = 1 , entry 0           +

With lack of statistics decisions made by optimizer can be inaccurate. That's why JsQuery supports hints.

Comments /*-- index */ and /*-- noindex */ placed in the conditions force optimizer to use and not to use index correspondingly.

```sql
SELECT gin_debug_query_path_value('x = 1 AND y /*-- index */ > 0');
gin_debug_query_path_value
----------------------------
AND                       +
x = 1 , entry 0         +
y > 0 , entry 1        +

SELECT gin_debug_query_path_value('x /*-- noindex */ = 1 AND y > 0');
```
F.25. lo

The lo module provides support for managing Large Objects (also called LOs or BLOBs). This includes a data type lo and a trigger lo_manage.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

F.25.1. Rationale

One of the problems with the JDBC driver (and this affects the ODBC driver also), is that the specification assumes that references to BLOBs (Binary Large OBjects) are stored within a table, and if that entry is changed, the associated BLOB is deleted from the database.

As Postgres Pro stands, this doesn't occur. Large objects are treated as objects in their own right; a table entry can reference a large object by OID, but there can be multiple table entries referencing the same large object OID, so the system doesn't delete the large object just because you change or remove one such entry.

Now this is fine for Postgres Pro-specific applications, but standard code using JDBC or ODBC won't delete the objects, resulting in orphan objects — objects that are not referenced by anything, and simply occupy disk space.

The lo module allows fixing this by attaching a trigger to tables that contain LO reference columns. The trigger essentially just does a lo_unlink whenever you delete or modify a value referencing a large object. When you use this trigger, you are assuming that there is only one database reference to any large object that is referenced in a trigger-controlled column!

The module also provides a data type lo, which is really just a domain of the oid type. This is useful for differentiating database columns that hold large object references from those that are OIDs of other things. You don’t have to use the lo type to use the trigger, but it may be convenient to use it to keep track of which columns in your database represent large objects that you are managing with the trigger. It is also rumored that the ODBC driver gets confused if you don't use lo for BLOB columns.

F.25.2. How to Use It

Here's a simple example of usage:

```sql
CREATE TABLE image (title text, raster lo);

CREATE TRIGGER t_raster BEFORE UPDATE OR DELETE ON image
  FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION lo_manage(raster);
```

For each column that will contain unique references to large objects, create a BEFORE UPDATE OR DELETE trigger, and give the column name as the sole trigger argument. You can also restrict the trigger to only execute on updates to the column by using BEFORE UPDATE OF column_name. If you need multiple lo columns in the same table, create a separate trigger for each one, remembering to give a different name to each trigger on the same table.
**F.25.3. Limitations**

- Dropping a table will still orphan any objects it contains, as the trigger is not executed. You can avoid this by preceding the `DROP TABLE` with `DELETE FROM table`.

  `TRUNCATE` has the same hazard.

  If you already have, or suspect you have, orphaned large objects, see the `vacuumlo` module to help you clean them up. It's a good idea to run `vacuumlo` occasionally as a back-stop to the `lo_manage` trigger.

- Some frontends may create their own tables, and will not create the associated trigger(s). Also, users may not remember (or know) to create the triggers.

**F.25.4. Author**

Peter Mount <peter@retep.org.uk>

**F.26. ltree**

This module implements a data type `ltree` for representing labels of data stored in a hierarchical tree-like structure. Extensive facilities for searching through label trees are provided.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

**F.26.1. Definitions**

A `label` is a sequence of alphanumeric characters and underscores (for example, in C locale the characters A-Za-z0-9_ are allowed). Labels must be less than 256 characters long.

**Examples:** 42, `Personal_Services`

A `label path` is a sequence of zero or more labels separated by dots, for example `L1.L2.L3`, representing a path from the root of a hierarchical tree to a particular node. The length of a label path cannot exceed 65535 labels.

**Example:** `Top.Countries.Europe.Russia`

The `ltree` module provides several data types:

- `ltree` stores a label path.
- `lquery` represents a regular-expression-like pattern for matching `ltree` values. A simple word matches that label within a path. A star symbol (`*`) matches zero or more labels. These can be joined with dots to form a pattern that must match the whole label path. For example:

  ```
  foo       Match the exact label path foo
  *.foo.*   Match any label path containing the label foo
  *.foo     Match any label path whose last label is foo
  ```

  Both star symbols and simple words can be quantified to restrict how many labels they can match:

  ```
  *{n}       Match exactly n labels
  *{n,}      Match at least n labels
  *{n,m}     Match at least n but not more than m labels
  *{,m}      Match at most m labels — same as *{0,m}
  foo{n,m}   Match at least n but not more than m occurrences of foo
  foo{,}     Match any number of occurrences of foo, including zero
  ```

  In the absence of any explicit quantifier, the default for a star symbol is to match any number of labels (that is, `{,}`) while the default for a non-star item is to match exactly once (that is, `{1}`).
There are several modifiers that can be put at the end of a non-star \texttt{lquery} item to make it match more than just the exact match:

\begin{itemize}
  \item @ \hspace{1cm} Match case-insensitively, for example \texttt{a@} matches \texttt{A}
  \item * \hspace{1cm} Match any label with this prefix, for example \texttt{foo*} matches \texttt{foobar}
  \item % \hspace{1cm} Match initial underscore-separated words
\end{itemize}

The behavior of \% is a bit complicated. It tries to match words rather than the entire label. For example \texttt{foo_bar\%} matches \texttt{foo_bar_baz} but not \texttt{foo_barbaz}. If combined with *, prefix matching applies to each word separately, for example \texttt{foo_bar\%*} matches \texttt{foo1_bar2_baz} but not \texttt{foo1_br2_baz}.

Also, you can write several possibly-modified non-star items separated with \texttt{|} (OR) to match any of those items, and you can put \texttt{!} (NOT) at the start of a non-star group to match any label that doesn’t match any of the alternatives. A quantifier, if any, goes at the end of the group; it means some number of matches for the group as a whole (that is, some number of labels matching or not matching any of the alternatives).

Here’s an annotated example of \texttt{lquery}:

\texttt{Top.*\{0,2\}.sport@*.football|tennis\{1,\}.Russ*|Spain}

\begin{itemize}
  \item a. \hspace{1cm} begins with the label \texttt{Top}
  \item b. \hspace{1cm} and next has zero to two labels before
  \item c. \hspace{1cm} a label beginning with the case-insensitive prefix \texttt{sport}
  \item d. \hspace{1cm} then has one or more labels, none of which match \texttt{football} nor \texttt{tennis}
  \item e. \hspace{1cm} and then ends with a label beginning with \texttt{Russ} or exactly matching \texttt{Spain}.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{ltxtquery} represents a full-text-search-like pattern for matching \texttt{ltree} values. An \texttt{ltxtquery} value contains words, possibly with the modifiers @, *, % at the end; the modifiers have the same meanings as in \texttt{lquery}. Words can be combined with \& (AND), | (OR), ! (NOT), and parentheses. The key difference from \texttt{lquery} is that \texttt{ltxtquery} matches words without regard to their position in the label path.

Here’s an example \texttt{ltxtquery}:

\texttt{Europe \& Russia@\& !Transportation}

This will match paths that contain the label \texttt{Europe} and any label beginning with \texttt{Russia} (case-insensitive), but not paths containing the label \texttt{Transportation}. The location of these words within the path is not important. Also, when \% is used, the word can be matched to any underscore-separated word within a label, regardless of position.

\textbf{Note:} \texttt{ltxtquery} allows whitespace between symbols, but \texttt{ltree} and \texttt{lquery} do not.

\section*{F.26.2. Operators and Functions}

Type \texttt{ltree} has the usual comparison operators =, =, <, >, <=, >=. Comparison sorts in the order of a tree traversal, with the children of a node sorted by label text. In addition, the specialized operators shown in Table \ref{table-f.14} are available.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\caption{\texttt{ltree} Operators}
\label{table-f.14}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Operator} & \textbf{Description} \\
\hline
\texttt{ltree @> ltree} & \texttt{boolean} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

2320
### Operator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is left argument an ancestor of right (or equal)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree &lt;@ ltree (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is left argument a descendant of right (or equal)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree ~ lquery (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lquery ~ ltree (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does ltree match lquery?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree ? lquery[] (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lquery[] ? ltree (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does ltree match any lquery in array?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree @ ltxtquery (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltxtquery @ ltree (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does ltree match ltxtquery?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concatenates ltree paths.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converts text to ltree and concatenates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] @&gt; ltree (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree &lt;@ ltree[] (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does array contain an ancestor of ltree?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] &lt;@ ltree (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree @&gt; ltree[] (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does array contain a descendant of ltree?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] ~ lquery (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lquery ~ ltree[] (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does array contain any path matching lquery?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] ? lquery[] (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lquery[] ? ltree[] (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does ltree array contain any path matching any lquery?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] @ ltxtquery (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltxtquery @ ltree[] (\rightarrow) boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does array contain any path matching ltxtquery?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] ?@&gt; ltree (\rightarrow) ltree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns first array entry that is an ancestor of ltree, or NULL if none.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] ?&lt;@ ltree (\rightarrow) ltree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns first array entry that is a descendant of ltree, or NULL if none.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] ?~ lquery (\rightarrow) ltree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns first array entry that matches lquery, or NULL if none.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltree[] ?@ ltxtquery (\rightarrow) ltree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns first array entry that matches ltxtquery, or NULL if none.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The operators `<@, @>, @` and `~` have analogues `^<@, ^@>, ^@, ^~`, which are the same except they do not use indexes. These are useful only for testing purposes.
The available functions are shown in Table F.15.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>subltree</td>
<td>Returns subpath of ltree from position start to position end-1 (counting from 0).</td>
<td>subltree('Top.Child1.Child2', 1, 2) → Child1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subpath</td>
<td>Returns subpath of ltree starting at position offset, with length len. If offset is negative, subpath starts that far from the end of the path. If len is negative, leaves that many labels off the end of the path.</td>
<td>subpath('Top.Child1.Child2', 1, 2) → Top.Child1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nlevel</td>
<td>Returns number of labels in path.</td>
<td>nlevel('Top.Child1.Child2') → 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>index</td>
<td>Returns position of first occurrence of b in a, or -1 if not found.</td>
<td>index('0.1.2.3.5.4.5.6.8.5.6.8', '5.6') → 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text2ltree</td>
<td>Casts text to ltree.</td>
<td>ttree2text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lca</td>
<td>Computes longest common ancestor of paths (up to 8 arguments are supported).</td>
<td>lca('1.2.3', '1.2.3.4.5.6') → 1.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.26.3. Indexes

ltree supports several types of indexes that can speed up the indicated operators:

- B-tree index over ltree: <, <=, =, >, >=
- GiST index over ltree (gist_ltree_ops opclass): <, <=, =, >, @>, <@, @, ~, ?

gist_ltree_ops GiST opclass approximates a set of path labels as a bitmap signature. Its optional integer parameter siglen determines the signature length in bytes. The default signature length is 8 bytes. Valid values of signature length are between 1 and 2024 bytes. Longer signatures lead to a
more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

Example of creating such an index with the default signature length of 8 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (path);
```

Example of creating such an index with a signature length of 100 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (path gist_ltree_ops(siglen=100));
```

- GiST index over \[\text{ltree[]} (\text{gist__ltree_ops\_opclass})\]: \text{ltree[]} <@ ltree, ltree @> ltree[], @, ~, ?

\text{gist__ltree_ops\_opclass} GiST opclass works similarly to \text{gist_ltree_ops} and also takes signature length as a parameter. The default value of \text{siglen in gist__ltree_ops is 28 bytes.}

Example of creating such an index with the default signature length of 28 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (array_path);
```

Example of creating such an index with a signature length of 100 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (array_path gist__ltree_ops(siglen=100));
```

Note: This index type is lossy.

### F.26.4. Example

This example uses the following data (also available in file \text{contrib/ltree/ltreetest.sql} in the source distribution):

```
CREATE TABLE test (path ltree);
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Science');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Science.Astronomy');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Science.Astronomy.Astrophysics');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Science.Astronomy.Cosmology');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Hobbies');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Hobbies.Amateurs_Astronomy');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Collections');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Collections.Pictures');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy.Astronauts');
CREATE index path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (path);
CREATE index path_idx ON test USING BTREE (path);
```

Now, we have a table \text{test} populated with data describing the hierarchy shown below:

```
Top
 /   |   \
Science Hobbies Collections
 /    |   \
Astronomy Amateurs_Astronomy Pictures
 / |   \
Astrophysics Cosmology Astronomy
 / |   \
Galaxies Stars Astronauts
```

We can do inheritance:
Here are some examples of path matching:

Here are some examples of full text search:

Path construction using functions:
We could simplify this by creating an SQL function that inserts a label at a specified position in a path:

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION ins_label(ltree, int, text) RETURNS ltree
AS 'select subpath($1,0,$2) || $3 || subpath($1,$2);'
LANGUAGE SQL IMMUTABLE;
```

```
ltree
test=> SELECT ins_label(path,2,'Space') FROM test WHERE path <@
'Top.Science.Astronomy';
            ins_label
--------------------------
Top.Science.Space.Astronomy
(3 rows)
```

**F.26.5. Transforms**

Additional extensions are available that implement transforms for the `ltree` type for PL/Python. The extensions are called `ltree_plpythonu`, `ltree_plpython2u`, and `ltree_plpython3u` (see Section 44.1 for the PL/Python naming convention). If you install these transforms and specify them when creating a function, `ltree` values are mapped to Python lists. (The reverse is currently not supported, however.)

**Caution**

It is strongly recommended that the transform extensions be installed in the same schema as `ltree`. Otherwise there are installation-time security hazards if a transform extension's schema contains objects defined by a hostile user.

**F.26.6. Authors**

All work was done by Teodor Sigaev (<teodor@stack.net>) and Oleg Bartunov (<oleg@sai.msu.su>). See [http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/](http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/) for additional information. Authors would like to thank Eugeny Rodichev for helpful discussions. Comments and bug reports are welcome.

**F.27. mchar**

The `mchar` module provides additional data types for compatibility with Microsoft SQL Server (MS SQL).

**F.27.1. Overview**

This module has been designed to improve 1C Enterprise support, most popular Russian CRM and ERP system.

It implements types MCHAR and MVARCHAR, which are bug-to-bug compatible with MS SQL CHAR and VARCHAR respectively. Additionally, these types use libicu for comparison and case conversion, so their behavior is identical across different operating systems.

Postgres Pro also includes `citext` extension which provides types similar to MCHAR. But this extension doesn't emulate MS-SQL behavior concerning end-of-value whitespace.

Differences from Postgres Pro standard CHAR and VARCHAR are:

- Case insensitive comparison
- Handling of the whitespace at the end of string
- These types are always stored as two-byte unicode value regardless of database encoding.

**F.27.2. Additional types**

- `mchar` — analog of the MS SQL char type
Additional Supplied Modules

- mvarchar — analog of the MS SQL varchar type

**F.27.3. MCHAR and MVARCHAR features**

- Defines length(str) function
- Defines substr(str, pos[, length]) function
- Defines || operator, which would be applied to concatenate any (mchar and mvarchar) arguments
- Defines set of operators: <, <=, =, >=, > for case-insensitive comparison (LibICU)
- Defines set of operators: &&, &&<, &&<=, &&=, &&>=, &&> to case-sensitive comparison (LibICU)
- Implicit cast between mchar and mvarchar types
- B-tree and Hash-index support
- The LIKE [ESCAPE] operator support
- The SIMILAR TO [ESCAPE] operator support
- The ~ operator (POSIX regexp) support
- Index support for the LIKE operator

**F.27.4. Authors**

Oleg Bartunov <oleg@sai.msu.ru>
Teodor Sigaev <teodor@sigaev.ru>

**F.28. online_analyze**

The online_analyze module provides a set of features that immediately update statistics after INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or SELECT INTO operations for the affected tables.

**F.28.1. Module Loading**

To use online_analyze module, load the shared library:

```
LOAD 'online_analyze';
```

**F.28.2. Module Configuration**

You can configure online_analyze using the following custom variables (default values are shown):

- online_analyze.enable = on
  Enables online_analyze.
- online_analyze.verbose = on
  Executes ANALYZE VERBOSE.

**Note**

Since verbose is a reserved SQL key word, this parameter has to be double-quoted when used in SQL queries. For example:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET "online_analyze.verbose" = 'off';
```

- online_analyze.scale_factor = 0.1
  Fraction of table size to start online analysis (similar to autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor).
Additional Supplied Modules

- online_analyze.threshold = 50

  Minimum number of row updates before starting online analysis (similar to `autovacuum_analyze_threshold`).

- online_analyze.min_interval = 10000

  Minimum time interval between `ANALYZE` calls per table, in milliseconds.

- online_analyze.table_type = "all"

  Type(s) of tables for online analysis. Possible values are: all, persistent, temporary, none.

- online_analyze.exclude_tables = ""

  List of tables to exclude from online analysis.

- online_analyze.include_tables = ""

  List of tables to include in online analysis (online_analyze.include_tables overrides online_analyze.exclude_tables).

- online_analyze.local_tracking = off

  Enables per-backend tracking for temporary tables by online_analyze. When this variable is set to off, online_analyze uses the default system statistics for temporary tables.

- online_analyze.lower_limit = 0

  Minimum number of rows in a table required to trigger online_analyze.

- online_analyze.capacity_threshold = 100000

  Maximum number of temporary tables to store in local cache.

F.28.3. Authors

Teodor Sigaev <teodor@sigaev.ru>

F.29. old_snapshot

The `old_snapshot` module allows inspection of the server state that is used to implement `old_snapshot_threshold`.

F.29.1. Functions

`pg_old_snapshot_time_mapping(array_offset OUT int4, end_timestamp OUT timestamptz, newest_xmin OUT xid) returns setof record`

Returns all of the entries in the server's timestamp to XID mapping. Each entry represents the newest xmin of any snapshot taken in the corresponding minute.

F.30. pageinspect

The `pageinspect` module provides functions that allow you to inspect the contents of database pages at a low level, which is useful for debugging purposes. All of these functions may be used only by superusers.

F.30.1. General Functions

`get_raw_page(relname text, fork text, blkno bigint) returns bytea`

`get_raw_page` reads the specified block of the named relation and returns a copy as a `bytea` value. This allows a single time-consistent copy of the block to be obtained. `fork` should be 'main' for
the main data fork, 'fsm' for the free space map, 'vm' for the visibility map, or 'init' for the initiali
zation fork.

get_raw_page(relname text, blkno bigint) returns bytea

A shorthand version of get_raw_page, for reading from the main fork. Equivalent to
get_raw_page(relname, 'main', blkno)

page_header(page bytea) returns record

page_header shows fields that are common to all Postgres Pro heap and index pages.

A page image obtained with get_raw_page should be passed as argument. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM page_header(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0));

lsn | checksum | flags | lower | upper | special | pagesize | version | prune_xid
-------+----------+--------+-------+-------+---------+----------+---------+---------
0/24A1B50 | 0 | 1 | 232 | 368 | 8192 | 8192 | 4 | 0

The returned columns correspond to the fields in the PageHeaderData struct.

The checksum field is the checksum stored in the page, which might be incorrect if the page is
somehow corrupted. If data checksums are not enabled for this instance, then the value stored is
meaningless.

page_checksum(page bytea, blkno bigint) returns smallint

page_checksum computes the checksum for the page, as if it was located at the given block.

A page image obtained with get_raw_page should be passed as argument. For example:

test=# SELECT page_checksum(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0), 0);

page_checksum
---------------
13443

Note that the checksum depends on the block number, so matching block numbers should be passed
(except when doing esoteric debugging).

The checksum computed with this function can be compared with the checksum result field of the
function page_header. If data checksums are enabled for this instance, then the two values should
be equal.

fsm_page_contents(page bytea) returns text

fsm_page_contents shows the internal node structure of an FSM page. For example:

test=# SELECT fsm_page_contents(get_raw_page('pg_class', 'fsm', 0));

The output is a multiline string, with one line per node in the binary tree within the page. Only those
nodes that are not zero are printed. The so-called "next" pointer, which points to the next slot to be
returned from the page, is also printed.

F.30.2. Heap Functions

heap_page_items(page bytea) returns setof record

heap_page_items shows all line pointers on a heap page. For those line pointers that are in use, tuple
headers as well as tuple raw data are also shown. All tuples are shown, whether or not the tuples
were visible to an MVCC snapshot at the time the raw page was copied.
A heap page image obtained with `get_raw_page` should be passed as argument. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM heap_page_items(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0));

The `heap_tuple_infomask_flags` function can be used to unpack the flag bits of `t_infomask` and `t_infomask2` for heap tuples.

tuple_data_split(rel_oid oid, t_data bytea, t_infomask integer, t_infomask2 integer, t_bits text [, do_detoast bool]) returns bytea[]

tuple_data_split splits tuple data into attributes in the same way as backend internals.

test=# SELECT tuple_data_split('pg_class'::regclass, t_data, t_infomask, t_infomask2, t_bits) FROM heap_page_items(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0));

This function should be called with the same arguments as the return attributes of `heap_page_items`.

If `do_detoast` is true, attributes will be detoasted as needed. Default value is false.

heap_page_item_attrs(page bytea, rel_oid regclass [, do_detoast bool]) returns setof record

heap_page_item_attrs is equivalent to `heap_page_items` except that it returns tuple raw data as an array of attributes that can optionally be detoasted by `do_detoast` which is false by default.

A heap page image obtained with `get_raw_page` should be passed as argument. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM heap_page_item_attrs(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0), 'pg_class'::regclass);

heap_tuple_infomask_flags(t_infomask integer, t_infomask2 integer) returns record

heap_tuple_infomask_flags decodes the `t_infomask` and `t_infomask2` returned by `heap_page_items` into a human-readable set of arrays made of flag names, with one column for all the flags and one column for combined flags. For example:

test=# SELECT t_ctid, raw_flags, combined_flags FROM heap_page_items(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0)),
   LATERAL heap_tuple_infomask_flags(t_infomask, t_infomask2) WHERE t_infomask IS NOT NULL OR t_infomask2 IS NOT NULL;

This function should be called with the same arguments as the return attributes of `heap_page_items`.

Combined flags are displayed for source-level macros that take into account the value of more than one raw bit, such as `HEAP_XMIN_FROZEN`.

F.30.3. B-Tree Functions

bt_metap(relname text) returns record

bt_metap returns information about a B-tree index's metapage. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM bt_metap('pg_cast_oid_index');

- [ RECORD 1 ]-------------------
  magic | 340322
  version | 4
  root | 1
  level | 0
  fastroot | 1
  fastlevel | 0
  last_cleanup_num_delpages | 0
  last_cleanup_num_tuples | 230
  allequalimage | f
Additional Supplied Modules

`bt_page_stats`(relname text, blkno bigint) returns record

`bt_page_stats` returns summary information about single pages of B-tree indexes. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM bt_page_stats('pg_cast_oid_index', 1);
- [ RECORD 1 ]--
| blkno | 1   |
| type  | l   |
| live_items | 224 |
| dead_items | 0   |
| avg_item_size | 16  |
| page_size | 8192 |
| free_size | 3668 |
| btpo_prev | 0   |
| btpo_next | 0   |
| btpo_level | 0  |
| btpo_flags | 3  |
```

`bt_page_items`(relname text, blkno bigint) returns setof record

`bt_page_items` returns detailed information about all of the items on a B-tree index page. For example:

```
test=# SELECT itemoffset, ctid, itemlen, nulls, vars, data, dead, htid, tids[0:2] AS some_tids
FROM bt_page_items('tenk2_hundred', 5);

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>itemoffset</th>
<th>ctid</th>
<th>itemlen</th>
<th>nulls</th>
<th>vars</th>
<th>data</th>
<th>dead</th>
<th>htid</th>
<th>some_tids</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>(16,1)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>30 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1,6)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>24 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>25 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1,18)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>26 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4,18)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>27 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1,2)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>28 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2,24)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>29 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2,17)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>2a 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(0,25)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>2b 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(0,10)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>2c 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1,3)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>2d 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6,28)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>2e 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(0,27)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>2f 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4,17)</td>
<td>(16,8292)</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>2f 00 00 00 00 00 00 00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(13 rows)
```

This is a B-tree leaf page. All tuples that point to the table happen to be posting list tuples (all of which store a total of 100 6 byte TIDs). There is also a “high key” tuple at `itemoffset number 1. ctid`
is used to store encoded information about each tuple in this example, though leaf page tuples often store a heap TID directly in the \textit{ctid} field instead. \textit{tids} is the list of TIDs stored as a posting list.

In an internal page (not shown), the block number part of \textit{ctid} is a “downlink”, which is a block number of another page in the index itself. The offset part (the second number) of \textit{ctid} stores encoded information about the tuple, such as the number of columns present (suffix truncation may have removed unneeded suffix columns). Truncated columns are treated as having the value “minus infinity”.

\textit{htid} shows a heap TID for the tuple, regardless of the underlying tuple representation. This value may match \textit{ctid}, or may be decoded from the alternative representations used by posting list tuples and tuples from internal pages. Tuples in internal pages usually have the implementation level heap TID column truncated away, which is represented as a NULL \textit{htid} value.

Note that the first item on any non-rightmost page (any page with a non-zero value in the \textit{btpo\_next} field) is the page’s “high key”, meaning its data serves as an upper bound on all items appearing on the page, while its \textit{ctid} field does not point to another block. Also, on internal pages, the first real data item (the first item that is not a high key) reliably has every column truncated away, leaving no actual value in its data field. Such an item does have a valid downlink in its \textit{ctid} field, however.

For more details about the structure of B-tree indexes, see Section 60.4.1. For more details about deduplication and posting lists, see Section 60.4.3.

\texttt{bt\_page\_items(page bytea) returns setof record}

It is also possible to pass a page to \texttt{bt\_page\_items} as a \texttt{bytea} value. A page image obtained with \texttt{get\_raw\_page} should be passed as argument. So the last example could also be rewritten like this:

\begin{verbatim}
 test=# SELECT itemoffset, ctid, itemlen, nulls, vars, data, dead, htid, tids[0:2] AS some_tids
      FROM bt_page_items(get_raw_page('tenk2\_hundred', 5));

 itemoffset |   ctid    | itemlen | nulls | vars |          data           | dead |
-------------+-----------+---------+-------+------+-------------------------+------
 1           | (16,1)    |      16 | f     | f    | 30 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 |      |
 2           | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 24 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (1,6)       |{"(1,6)","(10,22)"} | | |
 3           | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 25 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (1,18)      |{"(1,18)","(4,22)"} | | |
 4           | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 26 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (4,18)      |{"(4,18)","(6,17)"} | | |
 5           | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 27 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (1,2)       |{"(1,2)","(1,19)"} | | |
 6           | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 28 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (2,24)      |{"(2,24)","(4,11)"} | | |
 7           | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 29 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (2,17)      |{"(2,17)","(11,2)"} | | |
 8           | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 2a 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (0,25)      |{"(0,25)","(3,20)"} | | |
 9           | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 2b 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (0,10)      |{"(0,10)","(0,14)"} | | |
 10          | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 2c 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (1,3)       |{"(1,3)","(3,9)"} | | |
 11          | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 2d 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (6,28)      |{"(6,28)","(11,1)"} | | |
 12          | (16,8292) | 616    | f     | f    | 2e 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 | f   |
 (0,27)      |{"(0,27)","(1,13)"} | | |

2331
Additional Supplied Modules

All the other details are the same as explained in the previous item.

F.30.4. BRIN Functions

\texttt{brin\_page\_type(page \text{ bytea }) \text{ returns text}}

\texttt{brin\_page\_type} returns the page type of the given BRIN index page, or throws an error if the page is not a valid BRIN page. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
  test=# SELECT brin_page_type(get_raw_page('brinidx', 0));
  brin_page_type
  ----------------
  meta
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{brin\_metapage\_info(page \text{ bytea }) \text{ returns record}}

\texttt{brin\_metapage\_info} returns assorted information about a BRIN index metapage. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
  test=# SELECT * FROM brin_metapage_info(get_raw_page('brinidx', 0));
    magic    | version | pagesperrange | lastrevmappage
  -----------------------------------------------
       0xA8109CFA |       1 |             4 |              2
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{brin\_revmap\_data(page \text{ bytea }) \text{ returns setof tid}}

\texttt{brin\_revmap\_data} returns the list of tuple identifiers in a BRIN index range map page. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
  test=# SELECT * FROM brin_revmap_data(get_raw_page('brinidx', 2)) LIMIT 5;
    pages
  ---------
    (6,137)
    (6,138)
    (6,139)
    (6,140)
    (6,141)
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{brin\_page\_items(page \text{ bytea }, index \text{ oid }) \text{ returns setof record}}

\texttt{brin\_page\_items} returns the data stored in the BRIN data page. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
  test=# SELECT * FROM brin_page_items(get_raw_page('brinidx', 5),
    'brinidx')
    ORDER BY blknum, attnum LIMIT 6;
  itemoffset | blknum | attnum | allnulls | hasnulls | placeholder |    value
  -----------------------------------------------
        137 |      0 |      1 | t        | f        | f           | {1 .. 88}
        137 |      0 |      2 | f        | f        | f           | {89 .. 176}
        138 |      4 |      1 | t        | f        | f           | {177 .. 264}
        138 |      4 |      2 | f        | f        | f           | {177 .. 264}
        139 |      8 |      1 | t        | f        | f           | {177 .. 264}
        139 |      8 |      2 | f        | f        | f           | {177 .. 264}
\end{verbatim}

The returned columns correspond to the fields in the \texttt{BrinMemTuple} and \texttt{BrinValues} structs.

F.30.5. GIN Functions

\texttt{gin\_metapage\_info(page \text{ bytea }) \text{ returns record}}

\texttt{gin\_metapage\_info} returns information about a GIN index metapage. For example:
test=# SELECT * FROM gin_metapage_info(get_raw_page('gin_index', 0));

- [ RECORD 1 ]-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-
  pending_head | 4294967295
  pending_tail | 4294967295
  tail_free_size | 0
  n_pending_pages | 0
  n_pending_tuples | 0
  n_total_pages | 7
  n_entry_pages | 6
  n_data_pages | 0
  n_entries | 693
  version | 2

gin_page_opaque_info(page bytea) returns record

gin_page_opaque_info returns information about a GIN index opaque area, like the page type. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM gin_page_opaque_info(get_raw_page('gin_index', 2));

  rightlink | maxoff | flags
  ----------+--------+------------------------
   5 | 0 | {data,leaf,compressed}

(1 row)

gin_leafpage_items(page bytea) returns setof record

gin_leafpage_items returns information about the data stored in a GIN leaf page. For example:

test=# SELECT first_tid, nbytes, tids[0:5] AS some_tids
  FROM gin_leafpage_items(get_raw_page('gin_test_idx', 2));

  first_tid | nbytes | some_tids
  ------------+--------+----------------------------------------
   (8,41)    | 244    | {"(8,41)","(8,43)","(8,44)","(8,45)","(8,46)"} 
   (10,45)   | 248    | {"(10,45)","(10,46)","(10,47)","(10,48)","(10,49)"} 
   (12,52)   | 248    | {"(12,52)","(12,53)","(12,54)","(12,55)","(12,56)"} 
   (14,59)   | 320    | {"(14,59)","(14,60)","(14,61)","(14,62)","(14,63)"} 
   (167,16)  | 376    | {"(167,16)","(167,17)","(167,18)","(167,19)","(167,20)"} 
   (170,30)  | 376    | {"(170,30)","(170,31)","(170,32)","(170,33)","(170,34)"} 
   (173,44)  | 197    | {"(173,44)","(173,45)","(173,46)","(173,47)","(173,48)"} 

(7 rows)

F.30.6. GiST Functions

gist_page_opaque_info(page bytea) returns record

gist_page_opaque_info returns information from a GiST index page's opaque area, such as the NSN, rightlink and page type. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM gist_page_opaque_info(get_raw_page('test_gist_idx', 2));

  lsn | nsn | rightlink | flags
  -----+-----+-----------+--------
   0/1 | 0/0 |         1 | {leaf}

(1 row)

gist_page_items(page bytea, index_oid regclass) returns setof record

gist_page_items returns information about the data stored in a page of a GiST index. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM gist_page_items(get_raw_page('test_gist_idx', 0),
  'test_gist_idx');

  itemoffset | ctid | itemlen | dead | keys
  ---------------+-------+---------+-------+-------------------
F.30.7. Hash Functions

hash_page_type(page bytea) returns text

hash_page_type returns page type of the given HASH index page. For example:

test=# SELECT hash_page_type(get_raw_page('con_hash_index', 0));

---

hash_page_stats(page bytea) returns setof record

hash_page_stats returns information about a bucket or overflow page of a HASH index. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM hash_page_stats(get_raw_page('con_hash_index', 1));

---

```sql
1 | (1,65535) | 40 | f |
2 | (2,65535) | 40 | f |
3 | (3,65535) | 40 | f |
4 | (4,65535) | 40 | f |
5 | (5,65535) | 40 | f |
6 | (6,65535) | 40 | f |
7 | (7,65535) | 40 | f |
```

(7 rows)
hash_page_items(page bytea) returns setof record

hash_page_items returns information about the data stored in a bucket or overflow page of a HASH index page. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM hash_page_items(get_raw_page('con_hash_index', 1)) LIMIT 5;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>itemoffset</th>
<th>ctid</th>
<th>data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>(899,77)</td>
<td>1053474816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(897,29)</td>
<td>1053474816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(894,207)</td>
<td>1053474816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(892,159)</td>
<td>1053474816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(890,111)</td>
<td>1053474816</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

hash_bitmap_info(index oid, blkno bigint) returns record

hash_bitmap_info shows the status of a bit in the bitmap page for a particular overflow page of HASH index. For example:

test=# SELECT * FROM hash_bitmap_info('con_hash_index', 2052);

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bitmapblkno</th>
<th>bitmapbit</th>
<th>bitstatus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

hash_metapage_info(page bytea) returns record

hash_metapage_info returns information stored in the meta page of a HASH index. For example:

test=# SELECT magic, version, ntuples, ffactor, bsize, bmsize, bmshift,
| test-# maxbucket, highmask, lowmask, ovflpoint, firstfree, nmaps, procid,
| test-# regexp_replace(spares::text, '(,0)*', ',') as spares,
| test-# regexp_replace(mapp::text, '(,0)*', ',') as mapp
| test-# FROM hash_metapage_info(get_raw_page('con_hash_index', 0));

- [ RECORD 1 ]---------------------------------------------

| magic     | 105121344 |
| version   | 4         |
| ntuples   | 500500    |
| ffactor   | 40        |
| bsize     | 8152      |
| bmsize    | 4096      |
| bmshift   | 15        |
| maxbucket | 12512     |
| highmask  | 16383     |
| lowmask   | 8191      |
| ovflpoint | 28        |
| firstfree | 1204      |
| nmaps     | 1         |
| procid    | 450       |
| spares    | {0,0,0,0,0,0,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,3,4,4,4,45,55,58,59,508,567,628,704,1193,1202,1204} |
| mapp      | {65}      |

F.31. passwordcheck

The passwordcheck module checks users' passwords whenever they are set with CREATE ROLE or ALTER ROLE (it doesn't work, if a non-default profile is assigned to the user). If a password is considered too weak, it will be rejected and the command will terminate with an error.

To enable this module, add '$libdir/passwordcheck' to shared_preload_libraries in postgresql.conf, then restart the server.
Caution

To prevent unencrypted passwords from being sent across the network, written to the server log or otherwise stolen by a database administrator, Postgres Pro allows the user to supply pre-encrypted passwords. Many client programs make use of this functionality and encrypt the password before sending it to the server.

This limits the usefulness of the `passwordcheck` module, because in that case it can only try to guess the password. For this reason, `passwordcheck` is not recommended if your security requirements are high. It is more secure to use an external authentication method such as GSSAPI (see Chapter 19) than to rely on passwords within the database.

F.32. pg_buffercache

The `pg_buffercache` module provides a means for examining what’s happening in the shared buffer cache in real time.

The module provides a C function `pg_buffercache_pages` that returns a set of records, plus a view `pg_buffercache` that wraps the function for convenient use.

By default, use is restricted to superusers and members of the `pg_monitor` role. Access may be granted to others using `GRANT`.

F.32.1. The pg_buffercache View

The definitions of the columns exposed by the view are shown in Table F.16.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bufferid integer</td>
<td>ID, in the range 1..shared_buffers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relfilenode oid (references pg_class .relfilenode)</td>
<td>Filenode number of the relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reltablespace oid (references pg_tablespace .oid)</td>
<td>Tablespace OID of the relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reldatabase oid (references pg_database .oid)</td>
<td>Database OID of the relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relforknumber smallint</td>
<td>Fork number within the relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relblocknumber bigint</td>
<td>Page number within the relation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isdirty boolean</td>
<td>Is the page dirty?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usagecount smallint</td>
<td>Clock-sweep access count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinning_backends integer</td>
<td>Number of backends pinning this buffer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is one row for each buffer in the shared cache. Unused buffers are shown with all fields null except `bufferid`. Shared system catalogs are shown as belonging to database zero.
Because the cache is shared by all the databases, there will normally be pages from relations not belonging to the current database. This means that there may not be matching join rows in \texttt{pg\_class} for some rows, or that there could even be incorrect joins. If you are trying to join against \texttt{pg\_class}, it's a good idea to restrict the join to rows having \texttt{reldatabase} equal to the current database's OID or zero.

Since buffer manager locks are not taken to copy the buffer state data that the view will display, accessing \texttt{pg\_buffercache} view has less impact on normal buffer activity but it doesn't provide a consistent set of results across all buffers. However, we ensure that the information of each buffer is self-consistent.

\textbf{F.32.2. Sample Output}

```
regression=# SELECT n.nspname, c.relname, count(*) AS buffers
    FROM pg_buffercache b JOIN pg_class c
    ON b.relfilenode = pg_relation_filenode(c.oid) AND
       b.reldatabase IN (0, (SELECT oid FROM pg_database
                         WHERE datname = current_database()))
    JOIN pg_namespace n ON n.oid = c.relnamespace
    GROUP BY n.nspname, c.relname
    ORDER BY 3 DESC
    LIMIT 10;
```

| nspname   |        relname         | buffers |
|-----------+------------------------+---------|
| public    | delete_test_table      |     593 |
| public    | delete_test_table_pkey |     494 |
| pg_catalog| pg_attribute           |     472 |
| public    | quad_poly_tbl          |     353 |
| public    | tenk2                  |     349 |
| public    | tenk1                  |     349 |
| public    | gin_test_idx           |     306 |
| pg_catalog| pg_largeobject         |     206 |
| public    | gin_test_tbl           |     188 |
| public    | spgist_text_tbl        |     182 |

(10 rows)

\textbf{F.32.3. Authors}

Mark Kirkwood \texttt{<markir@paradise.net.nz>}

Design suggestions: Neil Conway \texttt{<neilc@samurai.com>}

Debugging advice: Tom Lane \texttt{<tgl@sss.pgh.pa.us>}

\textbf{F.33. \texttt{pgcrypto}}

The \texttt{pgcrypto} module provides cryptographic functions for Postgres Pro.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have \texttt{CREATE} privilege on the current database.

\textbf{F.33.1. General Hashing Functions}

\textbf{F.33.1.1. \texttt{digest()}}

\begin{verbatim}
digest(data text, type text) returns bytea

digest(data bytea, type text) returns bytea
```

Computes a binary hash of the given \texttt{data}. \texttt{type} is the algorithm to use. Standard algorithms are \texttt{md5}, \texttt{sha1}, \texttt{sha224}, \texttt{sha256}, \texttt{sha384} and \texttt{sha512}. If \texttt{pgcrypto} was built with OpenSSL, more algorithms are available, as detailed in Table F.20.
If you want the digest as a hexadecimal string, use `encode()` on the result. For example:

```sql
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION sha1(bytea) returns text AS $$
    SELECT encode(digest($1, 'sha1'), 'hex')
$$ LANGUAGE SQL STRICT IMMUTABLE;
```

F.33.1.2. `hmac()`

`hmac(data text, key text, type text) returns bytea`
`hmac(data bytea, key bytea, type text) returns bytea`

Calculates hashed MAC for `data` with `key`. `type` is the same as in `digest()`.

This is similar to `digest()` but the hash can only be recalculated knowing the key. This prevents the scenario of someone altering data and also changing the hash to match.

If the key is larger than the hash block size it will first be hashed and the result will be used as key.

F.33.2. Password Hashing Functions

The functions `crypt()` and `gen_salt()` are specifically designed for hashing passwords. `crypt()` does the hashing and `gen_salt()` prepares algorithm parameters for it.

The algorithms in `crypt()` differ from the usual MD5 or SHA1 hashing algorithms in the following respects:

1. They are slow. As the amount of data is so small, this is the only way to make brute-forcing passwords hard.
2. They use a random value, called the `salt`, so that users having the same password will have different encrypted passwords. This is also an additional defense against reversing the algorithm.
3. They include the algorithm type in the result, so passwords hashed with different algorithms can co-exist.
4. Some of them are adaptive — that means when computers get faster, you can tune the algorithm to be slower, without introducing incompatibility with existing passwords.

Table F.17 lists the algorithms supported by the `crypt()` function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Algorithm</th>
<th>Max Password Length</th>
<th>Adaptive?</th>
<th>Salt Bits</th>
<th>Output Length</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bf</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Blowfish-based, variant 2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>md5</td>
<td>unlimited</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>MD5-based crypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xdes</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Extended DES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Original UNIX crypt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.33.2.1. `crypt()`

`crypt(password text, salt text) returns text`

Calculates a crypt(3)-style hash of `password`. When storing a new password, you need to use `gen_salt()` to generate a new `salt` value. To check a password, pass the stored hash value as `salt`, and test whether the result matches the stored value.

Example of setting a new password:
UPDATE ... SET pshash = crypt('new password', gen_salt('md5'));

Example of authentication:

SELECT (pshash = crypt('entered password', pshash)) AS psismatch FROM ... ;

This returns true if the entered password is correct.

F.33.2.2. gen_salt()

gensalt(type text [, iter_count integer ]) returns text

Generates a new random salt string for use in crypt(). The salt string also tells crypt() which algorithm to use.

The type parameter specifies the hashing algorithm. The accepted types are: des, xdes, md5 and bf.

The iter_count parameter lets the user specify the iteration count, for algorithms that have one. The higher the count, the more time it takes to hash the password and therefore the more time to break it. Although with too high a count the time to calculate a hash may be several years — which is somewhat impractical. If the iter_count parameter is omitted, the default iteration count is used. Allowed values for iter_count depend on the algorithm and are shown in Table F.18.

Table F.18. Iteration Counts for crypt()

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Algorithm</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Min</th>
<th>Max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xdes</td>
<td>725</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16777215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bf</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For xdes there is an additional limitation that the iteration count must be an odd number.

To pick an appropriate iteration count, consider that the original DES crypt was designed to have the speed of 4 hashes per second on the hardware of that time. Slower than 4 hashes per second would probably dampen usability. Faster than 100 hashes per second is probably too fast.

Table F.19 gives an overview of the relative slowness of different hashing algorithms. The table shows how much time it would take to try all combinations of characters in an 8-character password, assuming that the password contains either only lower case letters, or upper- and lower-case letters and numbers. In the crypt-bf entries, the number after a slash is the iter_count parameter of gen_salt.

Table F.19. Hash Algorithm Speeds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Algorithm</th>
<th>Hashes/sec</th>
<th>For [a-z]</th>
<th>For [A-Za-z0-9]</th>
<th>Duration relative to md5 hash</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypt-bf/8</td>
<td>1792</td>
<td>4 years</td>
<td>3927 years</td>
<td>100k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypt-bf/7</td>
<td>3648</td>
<td>2 years</td>
<td>1929 years</td>
<td>50k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypt-bf/6</td>
<td>7168</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>982 years</td>
<td>25k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypt-bf/5</td>
<td>13504</td>
<td>188 days</td>
<td>521 years</td>
<td>12.5k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypt-md5</td>
<td>171584</td>
<td>15 days</td>
<td>41 years</td>
<td>1k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypt-des</td>
<td>23221568</td>
<td>157.5 minutes</td>
<td>108 days</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha1</td>
<td>37774272</td>
<td>90 minutes</td>
<td>68 days</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>md5 (hash)</td>
<td>150085504</td>
<td>22.5 minutes</td>
<td>17 days</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

• The machine used is an Intel Mobile Core i3.
**Additional Supplied Modules**

- crypt-des and crypt-md5 algorithm numbers are taken from John the Ripper v1.6.38 -test output.
- md5 hash numbers are from mdcrack 1.2.
- sha1 numbers are from lcrack-20031130-beta.
- crypt-bf numbers are taken using a simple program that loops over 1000 8-character passwords. That way I can show the speed with different numbers of iterations. For reference: john -test shows 13506 loops/sec for crypt-bf/5. (The very small difference in results is in accordance with the fact that the crypt-bf implementation in pgcrypto is the same one used in John the Ripper.)

Note that “try all combinations” is not a realistic exercise. Usually password cracking is done with the help of dictionaries, which contain both regular words and various mutations of them. So, even somewhat word-like passwords could be cracked much faster than the above numbers suggest, while a 6-character non-word-like password may escape cracking. Or not.

**F.33.3. PGP Encryption Functions**

The functions here implement the encryption part of the OpenPGP ([RFC 4880](https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4880)) standard. Supported are both symmetric-key and public-key encryption.

An encrypted PGP message consists of 2 parts, or *packets*:

- Packet containing a session key — either symmetric-key or public-key encrypted.
- Packet containing data encrypted with the session key.

When encrypting with a symmetric key (i.e., a password):

1. The given password is hashed using a String2Key (S2K) algorithm. This is rather similar to crypt() algorithms — purposefully slow and with random salt — but it produces a full-length binary key.
2. If a separate session key is requested, a new random key will be generated. Otherwise the S2K key will be used directly as the session key.
3. If the S2K key is to be used directly, then only S2K settings will be put into the session key packet. Otherwise the session key will be encrypted with the S2K key and put into the session key packet.

When encrypting with a public key:

1. A new random session key is generated.
2. It is encrypted using the public key and put into the session key packet.

In either case the data to be encrypted is processed as follows:

1. Optional data-manipulation: compression, conversion to UTF-8, and/or conversion of line-endings.
2. The data is prefixed with a block of random bytes. This is equivalent to using a random IV.
3. A SHA1 hash of the random prefix and data is appended.
4. All this is encrypted with the session key and placed in the data packet.

**F.33.3.1. pgp_sym_encrypt ()**

```sql
pgp_sym_encrypt(data text, psw text [, options text ]) returns bytea
pgp_sym_encrypt_bytea(data bytea, psw text [, options text ]) returns bytea
```

Encrypt *data* with a symmetric PGP key *psw*. The *options* parameter can contain option settings, as described below.

**F.33.3.2. pgp_sym_decrypt ()**

```sql
pgp_sym_decrypt(msg bytea, psw text [, options text ]) returns text
pgp_sym_decrypt_bytea(msg bytea, psw text [, options text ]) returns bytea
```
Decrypt a symmetric-key-encrypted PGP message.

Decrypting bytea data with pgp_sym_decrypt is disallowed. This is to avoid outputting invalid character data. Decrypting originally textual data with pgp_sym_decrypt_bytea is fine.

The options parameter can contain option settings, as described below.

F.33.3.3. pgp_pub_encrypt()

pgp_pub_encrypt(data text, key bytea [, options text ]) returns bytea
pgp_pub_encrypt_bytea(data bytea, key bytea [, options text ]) returns bytea

Encrypt data with a public PGP key key. Giving this function a secret key will produce an error.

The options parameter can contain option settings, as described below.

F.33.3.4. pgp_pub_decrypt()

pgp_pub_decrypt(msg bytea, key bytea [, psw text [, options text ]]) returns text
pgp_pub_decrypt_bytea(msg bytea, key bytea [, psw text [, options text ]]) returns bytea

Decrypt a public-key-encrypted message. key must be the secret key corresponding to the public key that was used to encrypt. If the secret key is password-protected, you must give the password in psw. If there is no password, but you want to specify options, you need to give an empty password.

Decrypting bytea data with pgp_pub_decrypt is disallowed. This is to avoid outputting invalid character data. Decrypting originally textual data with pgp_pub_decrypt_bytea is fine.

The options parameter can contain option settings, as described below.

F.33.3.5. pgp_key_id()

pgp_key_id(bytea) returns text

pgp_key_id extracts the key ID of a PGP public or secret key. Or it gives the key ID that was used for encrypting the data, if given an encrypted message.

It can return 2 special key IDs:

- **SYMKEY**
  
  The message is encrypted with a symmetric key.

- **ANYKEY**
  
  The message is public-key encrypted, but the key ID has been removed. That means you will need to try all your secret keys on it to see which one decrypts it. pgcrypto itself does not produce such messages.

Note that different keys may have the same ID. This is rare but a normal event. The client application should then try to decrypt with each one, to see which fits — like handling ANYKEY.

F.33.3.6. armor(), dearmor()

armor(data bytea [ , keys text[], values text[] ]) returns text
dearmor(data text) returns bytea

These functions wrap/unwrap binary data into PGP ASCII-armor format, which is basically Base64 with CRC and additional formatting.

If the keys and values arrays are specified, an armor header is added to the armored format for each key/value pair. Both arrays must be single-dimensional, and they must be of the same length. The keys and values cannot contain any non-ASCII characters.
F.33.3.7. `pgp_armor_headers`

`pgp_armor_headers(data text, key out text, value out text) returns setof record`

`pgp_armor_headers()` extracts the armor headers from `data`. The return value is a set of rows with two columns, key and value. If the keys or values contain any non-ASCII characters, they are treated as UTF-8.

F.33.3.8. Options for PGP Functions

Options are named to be similar to GnuPG. An option’s value should be given after an equal sign; separate options from each other with commas. For example:

`pgp_sym_encrypt(data, psw, 'compress-algo=1, cipher-algo=aes256')`

All of the options except `convert-crlf` apply only to encrypt functions. Decrypt functions get the parameters from the PGP data.

The most interesting options are probably `compress-algo` and `unicode-mode`. The rest should have reasonable defaults.

F.33.3.8.1. `cipher-algo`

Which cipher algorithm to use.

Values: `bf`, `aes128`, `aes192`, `aes256` (OpenSSL-only: `3des`, `cast5`)
Default: `aes128`
Applies to: `pgp_sym_encrypt`, `pgp_pub_encrypt`

F.33.3.8.2. `compress-algo`

Which compression algorithm to use. Only available if Postgres Pro was built with `zlib`.

Values:
- 0 - no compression
- 1 - ZIP compression
- 2 - ZLIB compression (= ZIP plus meta-data and block CRCs)
Default: 0
Applies to: `pgp_sym_encrypt`, `pgp_pub_encrypt`

F.33.3.8.3. `compress-level`

How much to compress. Higher levels compress smaller but are slower. 0 disables compression.

Values: 0, 1-9
Default: 6
Applies to: `pgp_sym_encrypt`, `pgp_pub_encrypt`

F.33.3.8.4. `convert-crlf`

Whether to convert \n into \r\n when encrypting and \r\n to \n when decrypting. RFC 4880 specifies that text data should be stored using \r\n line-feeds. Use this to get fully RFC-compliant behavior.

Values: 0, 1
Default: 0
Applies to: `pgp_sym_encrypt`, `pgp_pub_encrypt`, `pgp_sym_decrypt`, `pgp_pub_decrypt`

F.33.3.8.5. `disable-mdc`

Do not protect data with SHA-1. The only good reason to use this option is to achieve compatibility with ancient PGP products, predating the addition of SHA-1 protected packets to RFC 4880. Recent gnupg.org and pgp.com software supports it fine.

Values: 0, 1
Additional Supplied Modules

Default: 0
Applies to: pgp_sym_encrypt, pgp_pub_encrypt

F.33.3.8.6. **sess-key**
Use separate session key. Public-key encryption always uses a separate session key; this option is for symmetric-key encryption, which by default uses the S2K key directly.

Values: 0, 1
Default: 0
Applies to: pgp_sym_encrypt

F.33.3.8.7. **s2k-mode**
Which S2K algorithm to use.

Values:
- 0 - Without salt. Dangerous!
- 1 - With salt but with fixed iteration count.
- 3 - Variable iteration count.
Default: 3
Applies to: pgp_sym_encrypt

F.33.3.8.8. **s2k-count**
The number of iterations of the S2K algorithm to use. It must be a value between 1024 and 65011712, inclusive.

Default: A random value between 65536 and 253952
Applies to: pgp_sym_encrypt, only with s2k-mode=3

F.33.3.8.9. **s2k-digest-algo**
Which digest algorithm to use in S2K calculation.

Values: md5, sha1
Default: sha1
Applies to: pgp_sym_encrypt

F.33.3.8.10. **s2k-cipher-algo**
Which cipher to use for encrypting separate session key.

Values: bf, aes, aes128, aes192, aes256
Default: use cipher-algo
Applies to: pgp_sym_encrypt

F.33.3.8.11. **unicode-mode**
Whether to convert textual data from database internal encoding to UTF-8 and back. If your database already is UTF-8, no conversion will be done, but the message will be tagged as UTF-8. Without this option it will not be.

Values: 0, 1
Default: 0
Applies to: pgp_sym_encrypt, pgp_pub_encrypt

F.33.3.9. Generating PGP Keys with GnuPG
To generate a new key:

```
gpg --gen-key
```

The preferred key type is “DSA and Elgamal”.
For RSA encryption you must create either DSA or RSA sign-only key as master and then add an RSA encryption subkey with `gpg --edit-key`.

To list keys:
`gpg --list-secret-keys`

To export a public key in ASCII-armor format:
`gpg -a --export KEYID > public.key`

To export a secret key in ASCII-armor format:
`gpg -a --export-secret-keys KEYID > secret.key`

You need to use `dearmor()` on these keys before giving them to the PGP functions. Or if you can handle binary data, you can drop `-a` from the command.

For more details see `man gpg`, *The GNU Privacy Handbook* and other documentation on https://www.gnupg.org/.

**F.33.3.10. Limitations of PGP Code**

- No support for signing. That also means that it is not checked whether the encryption subkey belongs to the master key.
- No support for encryption key as master key. As such practice is generally discouraged, this should not be a problem.
- No support for several subkeys. This may seem like a problem, as this is common practice. On the other hand, you should not use your regular GPG/PGP keys with *pgcrypto*, but create new ones, as the usage scenario is rather different.

**F.33.4. Raw Encryption Functions**

These functions only run a cipher over data; they don't have any advanced features of PGP encryption. Therefore they have some major problems:

1. They use user key directly as cipher key.
2. They don't provide any integrity checking, to see if the encrypted data was modified.
3. They expect that users manage all encryption parameters themselves, even IV.
4. They don't handle text.

So, with the introduction of PGP encryption, usage of raw encryption functions is discouraged.

```
encrypt(data bytea, key bytea, type text) returns bytea
decrypt(data bytea, key bytea, type text) returns bytea
encrypt_iv(data bytea, key bytea, iv bytea, type text) returns bytea
decrypt_iv(data bytea, key bytea, iv bytea, type text) returns bytea
```

Encrypt/decrypt data using the cipher method specified by `type`. The syntax of the `type` string is:

```
algorithm [ - mode ] [ /pad: padding ]
```

where `algorithm` is one of:

- `bf` — Blowfish
- `aes` — AES (Rijndael-128, -192 or -256)

and `mode` is one of:
• cbc — next block depends on previous (default)
• ecb — each block is encrypted separately (for testing only)

and padding is one of:
• pkcs — data may be any length (default)
• none — data must be multiple of cipher block size

So, for example, these are equivalent:

```plaintext
eencrypt(data, 'fooz', 'bf')
encrypt(data, 'fooz', 'bf-cbc/pad:pkcs')
```

In encrypt_iv and decrypt_iv, the iv parameter is the initial value for the CBC mode; it is ignored for ECB. It is clipped or padded with zeroes if not exactly block size. It defaults to all zeroes in the functions without this parameter.

**F.33.5. Random-Data Functions**

```plaintext
gen_random_bytes(count integer) returns bytea
```

Returns count cryptographically strong random bytes. At most 1024 bytes can be extracted at a time. This is to avoid draining the randomness generator pool.

```plaintext
gen_random_uuid() returns uuid
```

Returns a version 4 (random) UUID. (Obsolete, this function is now also included in core PostgreSQL.)

**F.33.6. Notes**

**F.33.6.1. Configuration**

pgcrypto configures itself according to the findings of the main Postgres Pro configure script. The options that affect it are --with-zlib and --with-ssl=openssl.

When compiled with zlib, PGP encryption functions are able to compress data before encrypting.

When compiled with OpenSSL, there will be more algorithms available. Also public-key encryption functions will be faster as OpenSSL has more optimized BIGNUM functions.

**Table F.20. Summary of Functionality with and without OpenSSL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functionality</th>
<th>Built-in</th>
<th>With OpenSSL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MD5</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA224/256/384/512</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other digest algorithms</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes (Note 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blowfish</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES/3DES/CAST5</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raw encryption</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGP Symmetric encryption</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGP Public-Key encryption</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When compiled against OpenSSL 3.0.0 and later versions, the legacy provider must be activated in the openssl.cnf configuration file in order to use older ciphers like DES or Blowfish.
Additional Supplied Modules

Notes:

1. Any digest algorithm OpenSSL supports is automatically picked up. This is not possible with ciphers, which need to be supported explicitly.

F.33.6.2. NULL Handling

As is standard in SQL, all functions return NULL, if any of the arguments are NULL. This may create security risks on careless usage.

F.33.6.3. Security Limitations

All pgcrypto functions run inside the database server. That means that all the data and passwords move between pgcrypto and client applications in clear text. Thus you must:

1. Connect locally or use SSL connections.
2. Trust both system and database administrator.

If you cannot, then better do crypto inside client application.

The implementation does not resist side-channel attacks. For example, the time required for a pgcrypto decryption function to complete varies among ciphertexts of a given size.

F.33.6.4. Useful Reading

  The GNU Privacy Handbook.

• https://www.openwall.com/crypt/
  Describes the crypt-blowfish algorithm.

• https://www.iusmentis.com/security/passphrasefaq/
  How to choose a good password.

• http://world.std.com/~reinhold/diceware.html
  Interesting idea for picking passwords.

• http://www.interhack.net/people/cmcurtin/snake-oil-faq.html
  Describes good and bad cryptography.

F.33.6.5. Technical References

• https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4880
  OpenPGP message format.

• https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1321
  The MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm.

• https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2104
  HMAC: Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication.

• https://www.usenix.org/legacy/events/usenix99/provos.html
  Comparison of crypt-des, crypt-md5 and bcrypt algorithms.

• https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fortuna_(PRNG)
  Description of Fortuna CSPRNG.
Additional Supplied Modules

- https://jlcooke.ca/random/

Jean-Luc Cooke Fortuna-based /dev/random driver for Linux.

F.33.7. Author

Marko Kreen <markokr@gmail.com>

pgcrypto uses code from the following sources:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Algorithm</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Source origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DES crypt</td>
<td>David Burren and others</td>
<td>FreeBSD libcrypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD5 crypt</td>
<td>Poul-Henning Kamp</td>
<td>FreeBSD libcrypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blowfish crypt</td>
<td>Solar Designer</td>
<td><a href="http://www.openwall.com">www.openwall.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blowfish cipher</td>
<td>Simon Tatham</td>
<td>PuTTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rijndael cipher</td>
<td>Brian Gladman</td>
<td>OpenBSD sys/crypto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD5 hash and SHA1</td>
<td>WIDE Project</td>
<td>KAME kame/sys/crypto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHA256/384/512</td>
<td>Aaron D. Gifford</td>
<td>OpenBSD sys/crypto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIGNUM math</td>
<td>Michael J. Fromberger</td>
<td>dartmouth.edu/~sting/sw/imath</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.34. pg_freespacemap

The pg_freespacemap module provides a means for examining the free space map (FSM). It provides a function called pg_freespace, or two overloaded functions, to be precise. The functions show the value recorded in the free space map for a given page, or for all pages in the relation.

By default use is restricted to superusers and members of the pg_stat_scan_tables role. Access may be granted to others using GRANT.

F.34.1. Functions

pg_freespace(rel regclass IN, blkno bigint IN) returns int2

Returns the amount of free space on the page of the relation, specified by blkno, according to the FSM.

pg_freespace(rel regclass IN, blkno OUT bigint, avail OUT int2)

Displays the amount of free space on each page of the relation, according to the FSM. A set of (blkno bigint, avail int2) tuples is returned, one tuple for each page in the relation.

The values stored in the free space map are not exact. They're rounded to precision of 1/256th of BLCKSZ (32 bytes with default BLCKSZ), and they're not kept fully up-to-date as tuples are inserted and updated.

For indexes, what is tracked is entirely-unused pages, rather than free space within pages. Therefore, the values are not meaningful, just whether a page is full or empty.

F.34.2. Sample Output

postres=# SELECT * FROM pg_freespace('foo');
blkno | avail
-------+-------
 0 |    0
 1 |    0
 2 |    0
 3 |  32

2347
F.34.3. Author

Original version by Mark Kirkwood <markir@paradise.net.nz>. Rewritten in version 8.4 to suit new FSM implementation by Heikki Linnakangas <heikki@enterprisedb.com>

F.35. pg_pathman

The **pg_pathman** is a Postgres Pro extension that provides an optimized partitioning solution for large and distributed databases. Using **pg_pathman**, you can:

- Partition large databases without downtime.
- Speed up query execution for partitioned tables.
- Manage existing partitions and add new partitions on the fly.
- Add foreign tables as partitions.
- Join partitioned tables for read and write operations.

The extension is compatible with Postgres Pro 9.5 or higher.

F.35.1. Installation and Setup

The **pg_pathman** extension is included into the Postgres Pro. Once you have Postgres Pro installed, complete the following steps to enable **pg_pathman**:

1. Add **pg_pathman** to the `shared_preload_libraries` variable in the `postgresql.conf` file:

   ```
   shared_preload_libraries = 'pg_pathman'
   ```
pg_pathman may have conflicts with other extensions that use the same hook functions. For example, pg_pathman may interfere with the pg_stat_statements extension as they both use ProcessUtility_hook. To avoid such issues, pg_pathman must always be the last in the list of libraries: shared_preload_libraries = 'pg_stat_statements, pg_pathman'.

2. Restart the Postgres Pro instance for the settings to take effect.

3. Create the pg_pathman extension as follows:

   ```
   CREATE SCHEMA pathman;
   GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA pathman TO PUBLIC;
   CREATE EXTENSION pg_pathman WITH SCHEMA pathman;
   ```

Important
To ensure that your calls to pg_pathman's functions are always secure against search_path-based attacks (see CREATE EXTENSION for details), install it only into a clean schema where nobody except superusers has the CREATE privilege for database objects.

Once pg_pathman is enabled, you can start partitioning tables.

Note
During installation, pg_pathman creates a few RLS policies to restrict access to its own tables. Postgres Pro core, however, does not support dump/restore of databases where extensions issuing CREATE POLICY statements are installed. Therefore, when restoring a dump of a database where pg_pathman is installed, you will get error messages such as:

```
ERROR: policy "allow_select" for table "pathman_config" already exists
```

Ignore them since they do not affect whether the data being restored is complete.

Tip
You can also build pg_pathman from source code by executing the following command in the pg_pathman directory:

```
make install USE_PGXS=1
```

When this operation is complete, follow the steps described above to complete the setup.

In addition, do not forget to set the PG_CONFIG variable if you want to test pg_pathman on a custom build of Postgres Pro. For details, see Building and Installing PostgreSQL Extension Modules.

You can toggle pg_pathman or its specific custom nodes on and off using GUC variables. For details, see Section F.35.5.1.

If you want to permanently disable pg_pathman for a previously partitioned table, use the disable_pathman_for() function:

```
SELECT disable_pathman_for('range_rel');
```
All sections and data will remain unchanged and will be handled by the standard Postgres Pro inheritance mechanism.

**F.35.1.1. Updating pg_pathman**

If you already have a previous version of pg_pathman installed, complete the following steps to upgrade to a newer version:

1. Install Postgres Pro.
2. Restart your Postgres Pro cluster.
3. If you are running a previous major version of pg_pathman (the second digit in the version number is different), complete the update as follows:

   ```sql
   ALTER EXTENSION pg_pathman UPDATE TO version;
   SET pg_pathman.enable = t;
   ```

   where `version` is the pg_pathman major version number, such as 1.5.

   You can check the current pg_pathman version by running the `pathman_version()` function.

**F.35.2. Usage**

Choosing Partitioning Strategies

Running Non-Blocking Data Migration

Partitioning by a Single Expression

Partitioning by Composite Key

Running Multilevel Partitioning

Managing Partitions

As your database grows, indexing mechanisms may become inefficient and cause high latency as you run queries. To improve performance, ensure scalability, and optimize database administration processes you can use partitioning — splitting a large table into smaller pieces, with each row moved to a single partition according to the partitioning key.

Traditionally, Postgres Pro has supported partitioning via table inheritance, with each partition created as a child table with a CHECK constraint. In Postgres Pro 10, support for declarative partitioning was added, which also relies on inheritance. With these approaches, the query planner has to perform an exhaustive search and check constraints on each partition to build a query plan, which may slow down queries for tables with a large number of partitions. The pg_pathman extension uses an optimized planning algorithms and partitioning functions based on the internal structure of the partitioned tables, which allows to achieve better performance results. For details on pg_pathman implementation specifics, see Section F.35.4.

**F.35.2.1. Choosing Partitioning Strategies**

The pg_pathman extension supports the following partitioning strategies:

- Hash — maps rows to partitions using a generic hash function. Choose this strategy if most of your queries will be of the exact-match type.
- Range — maps rows to partitions based on partitioning key ranges assigned to each partition. Choose this strategy if your database contains numeric data that you are likely to query or manage by ranges. For example, you may want to query historical data by years, or review experiment results by specific numeric ranges. To achieve performance gains, pg_pathman uses the binary search algorithm.
By default, pg_pathman migrates all data from the parent table to the newly created partitions at once (blocking partitioning). This approach enables you to restructure the table in a single transaction, but may cause downtime if you have a lot of data. If it is critical to avoid downtime, you can use concurrent partitioning. In this case, pg_pathman writes all the updates to the newly created partitions, but keeps the original data in the parent table until you explicitly migrate it. This enables you to partition large databases without downtime, as you can choose convenient time for migration and copy data in small batches without blocking other transactions. For details on concurrent partitioning, see Section F.35.2.2.

F.35.2.1.1. Setting up Hash Partitioning

To perform hash partitioning with pg_pathman, run the create_hash_partitions() function:

create_hash_partitions(parent_relid REGCLASS, 
expression TEXT, 
partitions_count INTEGER, 
partition_data BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE, 
partition_names TEXT[], 
tablespaces TEXT[])

The pg_pathman module creates the specified number of partitions based on the hash function. Optionally, you can specify partition names and tablespaces by setting partition_names and tablespaces options, respectively.

You cannot add or remove partitions after the parent table is split. If required, you can replace the specified partition with another table:

replace_hash_partition(old_partition REGCLASS, 
new_partition REGCLASS, 
lock_parent BOOL DEFAULT TRUE)

When set to true, lock_parent parameter will prevent any INSERT/UPDATE/ALTER TABLE queries to parent table.

If you omit the optional partition_data parameter or set it to true, all the data from the parent table gets migrated to partitions. The pg_pathman module blocks the table for other transactions until data migration completes. To avoid downtime, you can set the partition_data parameter to false and later use the partition_table_concurrently() function to migrate your data to partitions without blocking other queries. For details, see the Section F.35.2.2.

F.35.2.1.2. Setting up Range Partitioning

The pg_pathman module provides the create_range_partitions() for range partitioning. This function creates partitions based on the specified interval and the initial partitioning key value. New partitions are created automatically when you insert data outside of the already covered range.

create_range_partitions(parent_relid REGCLASS, 
expression TEXT, 
start_value ANYELEMENT, 
p_interval ANYELEMENT | INTERVAL, 
p_count INTEGER DEFAULT NULL, 
partition_data BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)

The pg_pathman module creates partitions based on the specified parameters. If you omit the optional p_count parameter, pg_pathman calculates the required number of partitions based on the specified start value and interval. If you insert new data outside of the existing partition range, pg_pathman creates new partitions automatically, keeping the specified interval. This approach ensures that all partitions are of the same size, which can improve query performance and facilitate database management.

Alternatively, you can specify an array defining the bounds of partitions to be created using the bounds parameter:

create_range_partitions(parent_relid REGCLASS, 
expression TEXT, 
start_value ANYELEMENT, 
p_interval ANYELEMENT | INTERVAL, 
p_count INTEGER DEFAULT NULL, 
partition_data BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE, 
bounds ANYELEMENT[])

2351
expression TEXT,
bounds ANYARRAY,
partition_names TEXT[] DEFAULT NULL,
tablespace TEXT[] DEFAULT NULL,
partition_data BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)

If required, you can also use partition management functions to add partitions manually. For example, if there is a gap between the created partitions, pg_pathman cannot fill it with a new partition in an automated mode.

By default, all the data from the parent table gets migrated to the specified number of partitions. The pg_pathman module blocks the table for other transactions until data migration completes. To avoid downtime, you can set the partition_data parameter to false and later use the partition_table_concurrently() function to migrate your data to partitions without blocking other queries. For details, see the Section F.35.2.2.

### F.35.2.2. Running Non-Blocking Data Migration

If it is critical to avoid downtime, you can perform concurrent partitioning by setting the partition_data parameter of the partitioning function to false. In this case, pg_pathman creates empty partitions, keeping all the original data in the parent table. At the same time, all the database updates are written to the newly created partitions. You can later migrate the original data to partitions without blocking other queries using the partition_table_concurrently() function:

```sql
partition_table_concurrently(relation REGCLASS,
batch_size INTEGER DEFAULT 1000,
sleep_time FLOAT8 DEFAULT 1.0)
```

where:

- relation is the parent table.
- batch_size is the number of rows to copy from the parent table to partitions at a time. You can set this parameter to any integer value from 1 to 10000.
- sleep_time is the time interval between migration attempts, in seconds.

The pg_pathman module starts a background worker to move the data from the parent table to partitions in small batches of the specified batch_size. If one or more rows in the batch are locked by other queries, pg_pathman waits for the specified sleep_time and tries again, up to 60 times. You can monitor the migration process in the pathman_concurrent_part_tasks view that shows the number of rows migrated so far:

```
[user]postgres: select * from pathman_concurrent_part_tasks ;
 userid | pid  | dbid | relid | processed | status
--------+-------+-------+-------+-----------+---------
 user   | 20012 | 12413 | test  |    334000 | working
(1 row)
```

If you need to stop data migration, run the stop_concurrent_part_task() function at any time:

```sql
SELECT stop_concurrent_part_task(relation REGCLASS);
```

pg_pathman completes the migration of the current batch and terminates the migration process.

**Tip**

When pg_pathman migrates all the data from the parent table, you can exclude the parent table from the query plan. See the set_enable_parent() function description for details.
Additional Supplied Modules

F.35.2.3. Partitioning by a Single Expression
For both range and hash partitioning strategies, pg_pathman supports partitioning by expression that
returns a single scalar value. The partitioning expression can reference a table column, as well as
calculate the partitioning key based on one or more column values.

Tip
If you would like to partition a table by a tuple, see Section F.35.2.4.
To partition a table by expression, use pg_pathman partitioning functions. The partitioning expression
must satisfy the following conditions:
•
•
•
•
•

Expression must reference at least one column of the partitioned table.
All referenced columns must be marked as NOT NULL.
Expression cannot reference system attributes, such as oid, xmin, xmax, etc.
Expression cannot include subqueries.
All functions used by expression must be marked as IMMUTABLE.

As the expression can return a value of virtually any type, make sure to convert it to the type you need
for partitioning.
To access a partition, you must use the exact expression used for partitioning. Otherwise, pg_pathman
cannot optimize the query. You can view the partitioning expression for each partitioned table in the
pathman_config table.
F.35.2.3.1. Examples

Suppose you have the test table that stores some jsonb data:
CREATE TABLE test(col jsonb NOT NULL);
INSERT INTO test
SELECT format('{"key": %s, "date": "%s", "value": "%s"}',
i, current_date, md5(i::text))::jsonb
FROM generate_series(1, 10000 * 10) as g(i);
To partition this data by range of the key value, you need to extract this value from the jsonb object and
convert it to a numeric type, such as bigint:
SELECT create_range_partitions('test', '(col->>''key'')::bigint', 1, 10000, 10);
pg_pathman splits the parent table into ten partitions, with each partition storing 10000 rows:
SELECT * FROM pathman_partition_list;
parent | partition | parttype |
expr
| range_min |
range_max
--------+-----------+----------+---------------------------------+----------+----------test
| test_1
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 1
|
test
| test_2
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 10001
|
test
| test_3
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 20001
|
test
| test_4
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 30001
|
test
| test_5
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 40001
|
test
| test_6
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 50001
|
test
| test_7
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 60001
|
test
| test_8
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 70001
|
test
| test_9
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 80001
|
test
| test_10
|
2 | ((col ->> 'key'::text))::bigint | 90001
|
(10 rows)
2353

10001
20001
30001
40001
50001
60001
70001
80001
90001
100001


F.35.2.4. Partitioning by Composite Key

Using pg_pathman, you can also perform range partitioning by composite key. A composite key consists of two or more comma-separated values, which can be columns or expressions extracting the values from the table. The expressions defining the composite key must satisfy the conditions described in Section F.35.2.3.

Although pg_pathman does not support automatic partition creation by composite key, you can add partitions using the `add_range_partition()` function. A typical workflow is as follows:

1. Enable automatic partition naming for your table by running the `create_naming_sequence()` function.
2. Create a composite partitioning key.
3. Register a table you are going to partition with pg_pathman using the `add_to_pathman_config()` function.
4. Add a partition based on the defined composite partitioning key using the `add_range_partition()` function.

F.35.2.4.1. Examples

Suppose you have the `test` table that stores some temporal data:

```
CREATE TABLE test (logdate date NOT NULL, comment text);
```

To partition this data by month and year, you have to create a composite key:

```
CREATE TYPE test_key AS (year float8, month float8);
```

To enable automatic partition naming, run the `create_naming_sequence()` function passing the table name as an argument:

```
SELECT create_naming_sequence('test');
```

Register the `test` table with pg_pathman, specifying the partitioning key you are going to use:

```
SELECT add_to_pathman_config('test',
    '{ extract(year from logdate),
      extract(month from logdate) }::test_key',
    NULL);
```

Create a partition that includes all the data in the range of ten years, starting from January of the current year:

```
SELECT add_range_partition('test',
    (extract(year from current_date), 1)::test_key,
    (extract(year from current_date + '10 years'::interval),
     1)::test_key);
```

F.35.2.5. Running Multilevel Partitioning

pg_pathman supports multilevel partitioning for both hash and range partitioning strategies. You can use partitioning strategies in any combination: a hash- or range-partitioned table can be further partitioned by both hash or range.

To split an existing partition into several child ones, use the regular pg_pathman partitioning functions as explained in Section F.35.2.1, passing the name of the partition to be split as the `parent_relid` parameter. You can check the exact partition names in the `pathman_partition_list` view.

When opting for the range-range partitioning combination, you can either choose a different partitioning expression, or use the same expression as for the parent table. In the latter case, if the selected range is larger than that of the parent partition, only those child partitions that intersect with the parent range
Additional Supplied Modules

will be in use. Other child partitions will remain empty unless their parent is merged with an adjacent partition that covers at least a part of their range.

F.35.2.5.1. Examples

Suppose you have the journal table with some logs, which is partitioned by month:

```sql
-- create an empty table
CREATE TABLE journal (
  id SERIAL,
  dt TIMESTAMP NOT NULL,
  level INTEGER,
  msg TEXT);

-- generate some log data into the table
INSERT INTO journal (dt, level, msg)
SELECT g, random() * 6, md5(g::text)
FROM generate_series('2015-01-01'::date, '2015-12-31'::date, '1 minute') as g;

-- partition the table by range
SELECT create_range_partitions('journal', 'dt', '2015-01-01'::date, '1 month'::interval);

If having smaller partitions makes more sense at some point, you can further split the partitions by hash or range. For example, to split the journal_1 partition into subpartitions by day, run:

```sql
SELECT create_range_partitions('journal_1', 'dt', '2015-01-01'::date, '1 day'::interval);
```

Similarly, you can use hash partitioning to create child partitions. For example, split the journal_2 partition into five partitions by hash using the id column as the partitioning key:

```sql
SELECT create_hash_partitions('journal_2', 'id', '5');
```

F.35.2.6. Managing Partitions

pg_pathman provides multiple functions for easy partition management. For details, see Section F.35.5.3.4.

F.35.3. Examples

F.35.3.1. Common Tips

- You can add partition column containing the names of the underlying partitions using the system attribute called tableoid:

  ```sql
  SELECT tableoid::regclass AS partition, * FROM partitioned_table;
  ```

- Though indices on a parent table are not particularly useful (since the parent table is supposed to be empty), they act as prototypes for indices on partitions. For each index on the parent table, pg_pathman creates a similar index on each partition.

- All running concurrent partitioning tasks can be listed using the pathman_concurrent_part_tasks view:

  ```sql
  SELECT * FROM pathman_concurrent_part_tasks;
  ```

- The pathman_partition_list in conjunction with drop_range_partition() can be used to drop range partitions in a more flexible way compared to DROP TABLE:

  ```sql
  ```
Additional Supplied Modules

```
SELECT drop_range_partition(partition, false) /* move data to parent */
FROM pathman_partition_list
WHERE parent = 'part_test'::regclass AND range_min::int < 500;
```

```
NOTICE: 1 rows copied from part_test_11
NOTICE: 100 rows copied from part_test_1
NOTICE: 100 rows copied from part_test_2
```

```
drop_range_partition
----------------------
dummy_test_11
dummy_test_1
dummy_test_2
(3 rows)
```

- You can turn foreign tables into partitions using the `attach_range_partition()` function. Rows that were meant to be inserted into the parent will be redirected to foreign partitions using `PartitionFilter`. By default, it is only allowed to insert rows into partitions provided by `postgres_fdw`. This setting is controlled by the `pg_pathman.insert_into_fdw` variable. You must have superuser rights to change this setting.

F.35.3.2. Hash Partitioning

Consider an example of hash partitioning. First create a table with an integer column:

```
CREATE TABLE items (
    id SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
    name TEXT,
    code BIGINT);
```

```
INSERT INTO items (id, name, code)
SELECT g, md5(g::text), random() * 100000
FROM generate_series(1, 100000) as g;
```

Now run the `create_hash_partitions()` function with appropriate arguments:

```
SELECT create_hash_partitions('items', 'id', 100);
```

This will create new partitions and move the data from the parent table to partitions.

Here is an example of the query performing filtering by partitioning key:

```
SELECT * FROM items WHERE id = 1234;
```

```
id  |               name               | code
------+----------------------------------+------
1234 | 81dc9bdb52d04dc20036dbd8313ed055 | 1855
```

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM items WHERE id = 1234;
QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Append (cost=0.28..8.29 rows=0 width=0)  ->  Index Scan using items_34_pkey on items_34  (cost=0.28..8.29 rows=0 width=0)
Index Cond: (id = 1234)
```

Notice that the `Append` node contains only one child scan, which corresponds to the `WHERE` clause.

**Important**

Pay attention to the fact that `pg_pathman` excludes the parent table from the query plan.

To access the parent table, use the `ONLY` modifier:
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM ONLY items;
QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------
Seq Scan on items  (cost=0.00..0.00 rows=1 width=45)

F.35.3.3. Range Partitioning

Consider an example of range partitioning. Let's create a table containing some dummy logs:

```sql
CREATE TABLE journal (id SERIAL, dt TIMESTAMP NOT NULL, level INTEGER, msg TEXT);
```

-- similar index will also be created for each partition
CREATE INDEX ON journal(dt);

-- generate some data
INSERT INTO journal (dt, level, msg) SELECT g, random() * 6, md5(g::text) FROM generate_series('2015-01-01'::date, '2015-12-31'::date, '1 minute') as g;

Run the create_range_partitions() function to create partitions so that each partition would contain the data for one day:

```sql
SELECT create_range_partitions('journal', 'dt', '2015-01-01'::date, '1 day'::interval);
```

It will create 364 partitions and move the data from the parent table to partitions.

New partitions are appended automatically by insert trigger, but it can be done manually with the following functions:

-- add new partition with specified range
SELECT add_range_partition('journal', '2016-01-01'::date, '2016-01-07'::date);

-- append new partition with default range
SELECT append_range_partition('journal');

The first one creates a partition with specified range. The second one creates a partition with default interval and appends it to the partition list. It is also possible to attach an existing table as partition. For example, we may want to attach an archive table (or even foreign table from another server) for some outdated data:

```sql
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE journal_archive (id INTEGER NOT NULL, dt TIMESTAMP NOT NULL, level INTEGER, msg TEXT)
SERVER archive_server;
```

SELECT attach_range_partition('journal', 'journal_archive', '2014-01-01'::date, '2015-01-01'::date);

**Important**

The attached table must have the same columns as the partitioned table, except for the dropped columns. The attached columns must have the same type, collation, and NOT NULL settings as the original columns.
Additional Supplied Modules

To merge two adjacent partitions, use the `merge_range_partitions()` function:

```
SELECT merge_range_partitions('journal_archive', 'journal_1');
```

To split partition by value, use the `split_range_partition()` function:

```
SELECT split_range_partition('journal_366', '2016-01-03'::date);
```

To detach partition, use the `detach_range_partition()` function:

```
SELECT detach_range_partition('journal_archive');
```

Here is an example of the query performing filtering by partitioning key:

```
SELECT * FROM journal WHERE dt >= '2015-06-01' AND dt < '2015-06-03';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
<th>dt</th>
<th>level</th>
<th>msg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>217441</td>
<td>2015-06-01 00:00:00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>15053892d993ce19f580a128f87e3dbf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217442</td>
<td>2015-06-01 00:01:00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3a7c46f18a952d62ce5418ac2056010c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217443</td>
<td>2015-06-01 00:02:00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>92c8de8f82f4af0b139a3d99f2792311d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
...
(2880 rows)

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM journal WHERE dt >= '2015-06-01' AND dt < '2015-06-03';
```

```
QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------
| Append (cost=0.00..58.80 rows=0 width=0)                        |
| -> Seq Scan on journal_152 (cost=0.00..29.40 rows=0 width=0)   |
| -> Seq Scan on journal_153 (cost=0.00..29.40 rows=0 width=0)   |
(3 rows)
```

F.35.4. Internals

`pg_pathman` stores partitioning configuration in the `pathman_config` table; each row contains a single entry for a partitioned table (relation name, partitioning column and its type). During the initialization stage the `pg_pathman` module caches some information about child partitions in the shared memory, which is used later for plan construction. Before a SELECT query is executed, `pg_pathman` traverses the condition tree in search of expressions like:

```
VARIABLE OP CONST
```

where `VARIABLE` is a partitioning key, `OP` is a comparison operator (supported operators are `=`, `<`, `<=`, `>`, `>=`), `CONST` is a scalar value. For example:

```
WHERE id = 150
```

Based on the partitioning type and condition's operator, `pg_pathman` searches for the corresponding partitions and builds the plan.

F.35.4.1. Custom Plan Nodes

`pg_pathman` provides a couple of custom plan nodes which aim to reduce execution time, namely:

- `RuntimeAppend` (overrides `Append` plan node)
- `RuntimeMergeAppend` (overrides `MergeAppend` plan node)
- `PartitionFilter` (drop-in replacement for INSERT triggers)
- `PartitionRouter` for cross-partition UPDATE queries instead of triggers

`PartitionFilter` acts as a proxy node for INSERT’s child scan, which means it can redirect output tuples to the corresponding partition:

```
EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF)
INSERT INTO partitioned_table
```
Additional Supplied Modules

```sql
SELECT generate_series(1, 10), random();
```

**QUERY PLAN**

```
Insert on partitioned_table
  -> Custom Scan (PartitionFilter)
     -> Subquery Scan on "*SELECT*
        -> Result
```

(4 rows)

**PartitionRouter** is another proxy node used in conjunction with **PartitionFilter** to enable cross-partition **UPDATE** operations, for example, when you update any column of a partitioning key.

**Important**

The **PartitionRouter** node transforms cross-partition **UPDATE** commands into **DELETE** + **INSERT**. On Postgres Pro versions prior to 11, this operation is unsafe as **pg_pathman** cannot determine whether the updated row has been deleted or moved to another partition.

By default, **PartitionRouter** is disabled to avoid undesirable side effects. To enable this node, set the `pg_pathman.enable_partitionrouter` to on.

```sql
EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF)
UPDATE partitioned_table
SET value = value + 1 WHERE value = 2;
```

**QUERY PLAN**

```
Update on partitioned_table_0
  -> Custom Scan (PartitionRouter)
     -> Custom Scan (PartitionFilter)
        -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_0
            Filter: (value = 2)
```

(5 rows)

**RuntimeAppend** and **RuntimeMergeAppend** have much in common: they come in handy in a case when **WHERE** condition takes form of:

```
VARIABLE OP PARAM
```

This kind of expressions can no longer be optimized at planning time since the parameter's value is not known until the execution stage takes place. The problem can be solved by embedding the **WHERE condition analysis routine** into the original **Append**'s code, thus making it pick only required scans out of a whole bunch of planned partition scans. This effectively boils down to creation of a custom node capable of performing such a check.

There are at least several cases that demonstrate usefulness of these nodes:

```sql
/* create table we're going to partition */
CREATE TABLE partitioned_table(id INT NOT NULL, payload REAL);

/* insert some data */
INSERT INTO partitioned_table
SELECT generate_series(1, 1000), random();

/* perform partitioning */
SELECT create_hash_partitions('partitioned_table', 'id', 100);

/* create ordinary table */
CREATE TABLE some_table AS SELECT generate_series(1, 100) AS VAL;
```
• id = (select ... limit 1)

EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF, ANALYZE) SELECT * FROM partitioned_table
WHERE id = (SELECT * FROM some_table LIMIT 1);

QUERY PLAN

Custom Scan (RuntimeAppend) (actual time=0.030..0.033 rows=1 loops=1)
  InitPlan 1 (returns $0)
    -> Limit (actual time=0.011..0.011 rows=1 loops=1)
      -> Seq Scan on some_table (actual time=0.010..0.010 rows=1 loops=1)
      -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_70 partitioned_table (actual time=0.004..0.006 rows=1 loops=1)
        Filter: (id = $0)
        Rows Removed by Filter: 9

Planning time: 1.131 ms
Execution time: 0.075 ms
(9 rows)

/* disable RuntimeAppend node */
SET pg_pathman.enable_runtimeappend = f;

EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF, ANALYZE) SELECT * FROM partitioned_table
WHERE id = (SELECT * FROM some_table LIMIT 1);

QUERY PLAN

Append (actual time=0.196..0.274 rows=1 loops=1)
  InitPlan 1 (returns $0)
    -> Limit (actual time=0.005..0.005 rows=1 loops=1)
      -> Seq Scan on some_table (actual time=0.003..0.003 rows=1 loops=1)
      -> Custom Scan (RuntimeAppend) (actual time=0.002..0.004 rows=1 loops=1)
        -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_70 partitioned_table (actual time=0.001..0.001 rows=10 loops=1)
        -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_26 partitioned_table (actual time=0.002..0.003 rows=9 loops=1)
        -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_27 partitioned_table (actual time=0.001..0.002 rows=20 loops=1)
        -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_63 partitioned_table (actual time=0.001..0.002 rows=9 loops=1)

Planning time: 1.140 ms
Execution time: 0.855 ms
(306 rows)

• id = ANY (select ...)

EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF, ANALYZE) SELECT * FROM partitioned_table
WHERE id = any (SELECT * FROM some_table limit 4);

QUERY PLAN

Nested Loop (actual time=0.025..0.060 rows=4 loops=1)
  -> Limit (actual time=0.009..0.011 rows=4 loops=1)
    -> Seq Scan on some_table (actual time=0.008..0.010 rows=4 loops=1)
    -> Custom Scan (RuntimeAppend) (actual time=0.002..0.004 rows=1 loops=4)
      -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_70 partitioned_table (actual time=0.001..0.001 rows=10 loops=1)
      -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_26 partitioned_table (actual time=0.002..0.003 rows=9 loops=1)
      -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_27 partitioned_table (actual time=0.001..0.002 rows=20 loops=1)
      -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_63 partitioned_table (actual time=0.001..0.002 rows=9 loops=1)

Planning time: 0.771 ms
Additional Supplied Modules

Execution time: 0.101 ms
(10 rows)

/* disable RuntimeAppend node */
SET pg_pathman.enable_runtimeappend = f;

EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF, ANALYZE) SELECT * FROM partitioned_table
WHERE id = any (SELECT * FROM some_table limit 4);

QUERY PLAN

```
Nested Loop Semi Join (actual time=0.531..1.526 rows=4 loops=1)
  Join Filter: (partitioned_table.id = some_table.val)
  Rows Removed by Join Filter: 3990
  -> Append (actual time=0.190..0.470 rows=1000 loops=1)
    -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table (actual time=0.187..0.187 rows=0 loops=1)
    -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_0 (actual time=0.002..0.004 rows=6 loops=1)
    -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_1 (actual time=0.001..0.001 rows=5 loops=1)
    -> Seq Scan on partitioned_table_2 (actual time=0.002..0.004 rows=14 loops=1)
  ... /* 96 scans follow */
  -> Materialize (actual time=0.000..0.000 rows=4 loops=1000)
    -> Limit (actual time=0.005..0.006 rows=4 loops=1)
      -> Seq Scan on some_table (actual time=0.003..0.004 rows=4 loops=1)
```

Planning time: 2.169 ms
Execution time: 2.059 ms
(110 rows)

- NestLoop involving a partitioned table, which is omitted since it's occasionally shown above.
To learn more about custom nodes, see Alexander Korotkov's blog.

**F.35.5. Reference**

**F.35.5.1. GUC Variables**

There are several user-accessible GUC variables designed to toggle pg_pathman or its specific custom nodes on and off.

- pg_pathman.enable — enable/disable the pg_pathman module.
  
  Default: on

- pg_pathman.enable_runtimeappend — toggle the RuntimeAppend custom node on/off.

  Default: on

- pg_pathman.enable_runtimemergeappend — toggle the RuntimeMergeAppend custom node on/off.

  Default: on

- pg_pathman.enable_partitionfilter — toggle the PartitionFilter custom node on/off to enable/disable cross-partition INSERT operations.

  Default: on

- pg_pathman.enable_partitionrouter — toggle the PartitionRouter custom node on/off to enable/disable cross-partition UPDATE operations.

  Default: off

- pg_pathman.enable_auto_partition — toggle automatic partition creation on/off (per session).

  Default: on
• `pg_pathman.enable_bounds_cache` — toggle bounds cache on/off.
  Default: on

• `pg_pathman.insert_into_fdw` — allow `INSERT` operations into various foreign-data wrappers.
  Possible values: disabled, postgres, and any_fdw.
  Default: postgres

• `pg_pathman.override_copy` — toggle `COPY` statement hooking on/off.
  Default: on

F.35.5.2. Views and Tables

F.35.5.2.1. pathman_config

This table stores the list of partitioned tables. This is the main configuration storage.

```sql
CREATE TABLE IF NOT EXISTS pathman_config (  
  partrel REGCLASS NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,  
  attname TEXT NOT NULL,  
  parttype INTEGER NOT NULL,  
  range_interval TEXT);
```

F.35.5.2.2. pathman_config_params

This table stores optional parameters that override standard `pg_pathman` behavior.

```sql
CREATE TABLE IF NOT EXISTS pathman_config_params (  
  partrel REGCLASS NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,  
  enable_parent BOOLEAN NOT NULL DEFAULT TRUE,  
  auto BOOLEAN NOT NULL DEFAULT TRUE,  
  init_callback REGPROCEDURE NOT NULL DEFAULT 0,  
  spawn_using_bgw BOOLEAN NOT NULL DEFAULT FALSE);
```

F.35.5.2.3. pathman_concurrent_part_tasks

This view lists all currently running concurrent partitioning tasks.

```sql
-- helper SRF function  
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION show_concurrent_part_tasks()  
RETURNS TABLE (  
  userid REGROLE,  
  pid INT,  
  dbid OID,  
  relid REGCLASS,  
  processed INT,  
  status TEXT)  
AS 'pg_pathman', 'show_concurrent_part_tasks_internal'  
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW pathman_concurrent_part_tasks  
AS SELECT * FROM show_concurrent_part_tasks();

F.35.5.2.4. pathman_partition_list

This view lists all existing partitions, as well as their parents and range boundaries (NULL for hash partitions).

```sql
-- helper SRF function  
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION show_partition_list()  
RETURNS TABLE (  
  parent REGCLASS,  
  partition REGCLASS,
```

2362
Additional Supplied Modules

```
partype   INT4,
expr       TEXT,
range_min  TEXT,
range_max  TEXT)
AS 'pg_pathman', 'show_partition_list_internal'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW pathman_partition_list
AS SELECT * FROM show_partition_list();

F.35.5.3. Functions

F.35.5.3.1. Partitioning Functions

```
create_hash_partitions(parent_relid REGCLASS,
expression TEXT,
partitions_count INTEGER,
partition_data BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
partition_names TEXT[] DEFAULT NULL,
tablespaces TEXT[] DEFAULT NULL)
```

Performs hash partitioning for relation by integer key expression. The partitions_count parameter specifies the number of partitions to create; it cannot be changed afterwards. If partition_data is true, all the data will be automatically migrated from the parent table to partitions. Note that data migration may take a while to finish and the table will be locked until transaction commits. See partition_table_concurrently() for a lock-free way to migrate data. Partition creation callback is invoked for each partition if set beforehand (see set_init_callback()).

```
create_range_partitions(relation REGCLASS,
expression TEXT,
start_value ANYELEMENT,
p_interval ANYELEMENT,
p_count INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
partition_data BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
```

Perform range partitioning for relation by partitioning key defined by expression. The start_value argument specifies the initial value, p_interval sets the default range for automatically created partitions or partitions created with append_range_partition() or prepend_range_partition(). If p_interval is set to NULL, automatic partition creation is disabled. p_count is the number of premade partitions. If p_count is not set, then pg_pathman tries to determine the number of partitions based on the expression value. The bounds array defines the bounds for partitions to be created. You can build this array using the generate_range_bounds() function. Partition creation callback is invoked for each partition if set beforehand.

F.35.5.3.2. Data Migration Functions

```
partition_table_concurrently(relation REGCLASS,
2363
```
Additional Supplied Modules

batch_size INTEGER DEFAULT 1000,
sleep_time FLOAT8 DEFAULT 1.0)

Starts a background worker to move data from parent table to partitions. The worker utilizes short
transactions to copy small batches of data (up to 10K rows per transaction) and thus doesn't significantly
interfere with user's activity.

stop_concurrent_part_task(relation REGCLASS)

Stops a background worker performing a concurrent partitioning task. Note: worker will exit after it
finishes relocating a current batch.

F.35.5.3.3. Triggers

Triggers are no longer required for INSERT and cross-partition UPDATE operations. However, user-
supplied triggers are supported:

• Each inserted row results in execution of BEFORE/AFTER INSERT trigger functions of a
corresponding partition.
• Each updated row results in execution of BEFORE/AFTER UPDATE trigger functions of a
corresponding partition.
• Each moved row (cross-partition update) results in execution of BEFORE UPDATE + BEFORE/
AFTER DELETE + BEFORE/AFTER INSERT trigger functions of corresponding partitions.

F.35.5.3.4. Partition Management Functions

replace_hash_partition(old_partition      REGCLASS,
new_partition       REGCLASS,
lock_parent         BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)

Replaces the specified partition of hash-partitioned table with another table. When set to true, the
lock_parent parameter prevents any INSERT/UPDATE/ALTER TABLE queries to the parent table.

split_range_partition(partition_relid  REGCLASS,
split_value      ANYELEMENT,
partition_name   TEXT DEFAULT NULL,
tablespace       TEXT DEFAULT NULL)

Split range partition in two by value, with the specified value included into the second partition.
Partition creation callback is invoked for a new partition if available.

merge_range_partitions(variadic partitions REGCLASS[])

Merge several adjacent range partitions. Partitions are automatically ordered by increasing bounds. All
the data will be accumulated in the first partition, while other merged partitions are removed. If the
remaining partition has any child partitions, new child partitions for the merged data will be created as
required using the same partitioning expression.

append_range_partition(parent_relid   REGCLASS,
partition_name TEXT DEFAULT NULL,
tablespace     TEXT DEFAULT NULL)

Append new range partition with pathman_config.range_interval as interval.

prepend_range_partition(parent_relid   REGCLASS,
partition_name TEXT DEFAULT NULL,
tablespace     TEXT DEFAULT NULL)

Prepend new range partition with pathman_config.range_interval as interval.

add_range_partition(parent_relid   REGCLASS,
start_value    ANYELEMENT,
Create a new range partition for relation with the specified range bounds. If the start_value or the end_value is NULL, the corresponding range bound will be infinite.

```
drop_range_partition(partition_relid TEXT, delete_data BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
```

Drop range partition and all of its data if delete_data is true.

```
attach_range_partition(parent_relid REGCLASS, partition_relid REGCLASS, start_value ANYELEMENT, end_value ANYELEMENT)
```

Attach partition to the existing range-partitioned relation. The attached table must have exactly the same structure as the parent table, including the dropped columns. Partition creation callback is invoked if set (see Section F.35.5.2.2).

```
detach_range_partition(partition_relid REGCLASS)
```

Detach partition from the existing range-partitioned relation.

```
disable_pathman_for(parent_relid REGCLASS)
```

Permanently disable pg_pathman partitioning mechanism for the specified parent table and remove the insert trigger if it exists. All partitions and data remain unchanged.

```
drop_partitions(parent_relid REGCLASS, delete_data BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
```

Drop partitions of the parent table (both foreign and local relations). If delete_data is false, the data is copied to the parent table first. Default is false.

### F.35.5.3.5. Additional Functions

```
pathman_version()
```

Returns the pg_pathman version number.

```
set_interval(relation REGCLASS, value ANYELEMENT)
```

Update range-partitioned table interval. Note that interval must not be negative and it must not be trivial, i.e. its value should be greater than zero for numeric types, at least 1 microsecond for timestamp and at least 1 day for date.

```
set_enable_parent(relation REGCLASS, value BOOLEAN)
```

Include/exclude parent table into/from query plan. In original Postgres Pro planner parent table is always included into query plan even if it’s empty, which can lead to additional overhead. You can use disable_parent() if you are never going to use parent table as a storage. Default value depends on the partition_data parameter specified during initial partitioning with the create_range_partitions() function. If the partition_data parameter was true, then all data have already been migrated to partitions and the parent table is disabled. Otherwise, it is enabled.

```
set_auto(relation REGCLASS, value BOOLEAN)
```

Enable/disable auto partition propagation (only for range partitioning). It is enabled by default.

```
set_init_callback(relation REGCLASS, callback REGPROCEDURE DEFAULT 0)
```

Set partition creation callback to be invoked for each attached or created partition (both hash and range). If callback is marked with SECURITY INVOKER, it is executed with the privileges of the user who produced a statement that has led to creation of a new partition. For example:
INSERT INTO partitioned_table VALUES (-5)

The callback must have the following signature: part_init_callback(args JSONB) RETURNS VOID. Parameter arg consists of several fields whose presence depends on partitioning type:

/* Range-partitioned table abc (child abc_4) */
{
  "parent": "abc",
  "parttype": "2",
  "partition": "abc_4",
  "range_max": "401",
  "range_min": "301"
}

/* Hash-partitioned table abc (child abc_0) */
{
  "parent": "abc",
  "parttype": "1",
  "partition": "abc_0"
}

set_spawn_using_bgw(relation REGCLASS, value BOOLEAN)

When inserting new data beyond the partitioning range, use SpawnPartitionsWorker to create new partitions in a separate transaction.

create_naming_sequence(parent_relid REGCLASS)

Enable automatic partition naming for the specified relation table. You must run this function when partitioning this table by composite key.

add_to_pathman_config(parent_relid REGCLASS, expression TEXT, range_interval TEXT)
add_to_pathman_config(parent_relid REGCLASS, expression TEXT)

Register the specified relation table with pg_pathman to enable partitioning by the provided expression. For range partitioning, the range_interval argument is mandatory. You can set it to NULL if you are going to add partition manually.

generate_range_bounds(p_start ANYELEMENT, p_interval INTERVAL, p_count INTEGER)
generate_range_bounds(p_start ANYELEMENT, p_interval ANYELEMENT, p_count INTEGER)

Build the bounds array that defines the bounds for partitions to be created. You can pass this array as an argument to the create_range_partitions() function.

F.35.6. Authors

- Ildar Musin
- Alexander Korotkov
- Dmitry Ivanov
F.36. pg_proaudit

The pg_proaudit extension enables detailed logging of various security events.

pg_proaudit works in parallel with the standard PostgreSQL logging solutions (logging collector) and does not depend on them. Security event log of the pg_proaudit extension is stored separately from the server log. At the Postgres Pro Standard startup, pg_proaudit launches a special background process to log security events.

Logging settings are stored in the pg_proaudit.conf configuration file located in the cluster data directory (PGDATA). It is a text file that can be edited directly using operating system facilities. To modify the file using SQL, you can use several pg_proaudit functions. The pg_proaudit_settings view displays the current pg_proaudit settings, even if they have not been saved into the pg_proaudit.conf file yet.

All the logged events belong to the following classes:

- DDL commands for creating, changing, and deleting DBMS objects (databases, tables, views, sequences, languages, functions)
- access control commands for database objects (GRANT, REVOKE)
- DML commands for access to database objects (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, SELECT, TRUNCATE for tables and/or views, EXECUTE for functions)
- database connection/disconnection events
- all commands executed by a particular user

Security events can be logged both in the centralized logging solution of the operating system (syslog) and in the standard file-system files. Event logs can be written both into the syslog and into the files simultaneously. Event log files are written in the CSV format. Each event is logged on a separate line that contains the following fields:

- date and time of the event
- username
- database name
- server process ID (PID)
- severity level: INFO or ERROR
- serial number of the command in a session
- subcommand number in complex commands (CREATE TABLE ... AS SELECT ...)
- operator name
- object type
- object name
- operator execution results: SUCCESS or FAILURE
- error message in case of FAILURE
- text of the SQL command
- parameters of the command (for example, for PREPARE)

You can define a directory to store security log files and set up log file rotation. pg_proaudit can switch to a new log file either after the specified time interval, or when the specified size of the log file is exceeded. This enables you to define a workflow for cleaning up security event logs.

Postgres Pro user with the SUPERUSER attribute should grant access to the pg_proaudit extension and security event log files only to the user with the information security administrator role.

F.36.1. Installation and Setup

The pg_proaudit extension is a built-in extension included into Postgres Pro Standard. To enable pg_proaudit, complete the following steps:

1. Add pg_proaudit to the shared_preload_libraries variable in the postgresql.conf file:

   shared_preload_libraries = 'pg_proaudit'
2. Reload the database server for the changes to take effect.

**Note**

To verify that the `pg_proaudit` library was installed correctly, you can run the following command:

```sql
SHOW shared_preload_libraries;
```

3. Create the `pg_proaudit` extension using the following query:

```sql
CREATE EXTENSION pg_proaudit;
```

The `pg_proaudit` extension adds several functions for managing the `pg_proaudit.conf` file, the `pg_proaudit_settings` view that displays the current `pg_proaudit` settings and event triggers. For convenience, the `pg_proaudit` extension should be created in each database for which you are going to log security events.

### F.36.2. Configuring Security Events to Log

To configure security event logging, `pg_proaudit` provides an SQL interface that consists of several functions and the `pg_proaudit_settings` view.

```sql
pg_proaudit_set_object(event_type  text, 
    object_type text)
pg_proaudit_set_object(event_type text, 
    object_oid  oid)
```

Enables logging for events with the specified parameters. When the `pg_proaudit_set_object()` function completes, security event logging starts immediately, but the `pg_proaudit.conf` file is not updated. To save the changes in the `pg_proaudit.conf` file, call the `pg_proaudit_save()` function.

**Arguments:**

- `event_type` — type of the event that needs to be logged, including SQL operator names, as well as `CONNECT` and `DISCONNECT` events. When set to `ALL`, enables logging for all events available for the specified object type. For example, for the `TABLE` object type, the `ALL` keyword enables logging for commands `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `TRUNCATE`, as well as `CREATE`, `ALTER`, `DROP`. For the full list of possible `event_type` values, see Section F.36.3.1.
- `object_type` — type of the object for which security events need to be logged. For example, specify `FOREIGN TABLE` object type for the `SELECT` event to log all attempts to access foreign tables. Use the `NULL` value if `event_type` is set to `CONNECT`, `DISCONNECT`, `SET`, or `RESET`, and the `ROLE` value for all events that reference user actions, such as `CREATE USER` or `DROP USER`.
- `object_oid` — identifier of the object (OID) for which security events need to be logged.

```sql
pg_proaudit_set_role(event_type text, 
    role_oid oid)
```

Enables logging of events caused by the specified DBMS user. When the `pg_proaudit_set_role()` function completes, security event logging starts immediately, but the `pg_proaudit.conf` file is not updated. To save the changes in the `pg_proaudit.conf` file, call the `pg_proaudit_save()` function.

**Arguments:**

- `event_type` — type of the event that needs to be logged. When set to `ALL`, enables logging for all commands executed by the `role_oid` user. For the list of possible values, see Section F.36.3.1.
- `role_oid` — identifier of the user (OID) for which actions need to be logged.
Additional Supplied Modules

object_type text)
pg_proaudit_reset_object(event_type text,
                         object_oid oid)

Disables logging of events with specified parameters. To save the changes in the pg_proaudit.conf file, call the pg_proaudit_save() function.

Arguments:

• *event_type* — type of the event that needs to be logged, including SQL operator names, as well as CONNECT and DISCONNECT events. When set to ALL, enables logging for all events available for the specified object type. For example, for the table object type, the ALL keyword enables logging for commands SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, as well as CREATE, ALTER, DROP. For the full list of possible *event_type* values, see Section F.36.3.1.

• *object_type* — type of the object for which security events need to be logged. For example, specify FOREIGN TABLE object type for the SELECT event to log all attempts to access foreign tables. Use the NULL value if *event_type* is set to CONNECT, DISCONNECT, SET, or RESET, and the ROLE value for all events that reference user actions, such as CREATE USER or DROP USER.

• *object_oid* — identifier of the object (OID) for which security events need to be logged.

pg_proaudit_reset_role(event_type text,
                       role_oid   oid)

Disables logging of events caused by the specified DBMS user. To save information about the canceled events in the pg_proaudit.conf file, call the pg_proaudit_save() function.

Arguments:

• *event_type* — type of the event that needs to be logged. When set to ALL, enables logging for all commands executed by the *role_oid* user. For the list of possible values, see Section F.36.3.1.

• *role_oid* — identifier of the user (OID) for which actions need to be logged.

pg_proaudit_show()  
Returns logged events in a table view. This function is used by the pg_proaudit_settings view.

pg_proaudit_reload()  
Reads logging configuration from the pg_proaudit.conf file. You must call this function if the pg_proaudit.conf file was modified manually using the operating system facilities.

pg_proaudit_reset()  
Disables logging of all events. To save information about the canceled events in the pg_proaudit.conf file, call the pg_proaudit_save() function.

pg_proaudit_save()  
Saves logging settings from memory into the pg_proaudit.conf file. The pg_proaudit.conf file is located in the cluster data directory (PGDATA). You cannot change the pg_proaudit.conf file location.

F.36.3. pg_proaudit_settings View  
This view displays the current pg_proaudit settings, even if they have not been saved into the pg_proaudit.conf file yet. The pg_proaudit_settings view consists of the following columns:

• *db_name* (text) — name of the database for which to log security events.

• *event_type* (text) — event type to log.

• *object_type* — type of the object for which security events are to be logged.

• *object_name* (text) — name of the object for which security events are to be logged.

• *role_name* (text) — the role on behalf of which logged actions are performed.
F.36.3.1. Security Events

The `pg_proaudit` extension can log the following security events:

- CONNECT
- DISCONNECT
- ALTER AGGREGATE
- ALTER COLLATION
- ALTER CONVERSION
- ALTER DATABASE
- ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES
- ALTER DOMAIN
- ALTER EVENT TRIGGER
- ALTER EXTENSION
- ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
- ALTER FOREIGN TABLE
- ALTER FUNCTION
- ALTER INDEX
- ALTER LANGUAGE
- ALTER LARGE OBJECT
- ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW
- ALTER OPERATOR
- ALTER OPERATOR CLASS
- ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY
- ALTER POLICY
- ALTER ROLE, ALTER USER, ALTER GROUP
- ALTER RULE
- ALTER SCHEMA
- ALTER SEQUENCE
- ALTER SERVER
- ALTER SYSTEM
- ALTER TABLE
- ALTER TABLESPACE
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
- ALTER TRIGGER
- ALTER TYPE
- ALTER USER MAPPING
- ALTER VIEW
- CLUSTER
- COMMENT
- COPY
- CREATE ACCESS METHOD
- CREATE AGGREGATE
- CREATE CAST
- CREATE COLLATION
- CREATE CONVERSION
- CREATE DATABASE
- CREATE DOMAIN
- CREATE EVENT TRIGGER
- CREATE EXTENSION
- CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
- CREATE FOREIGN TABLE
- CREATE FUNCTION
- CREATE INDEX
- CREATE LANGUAGE
- CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW
- CREATE OPERATOR
- CREATE OPERATOR CLASS
- CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY
- CREATE POLICY
- CREATE ROLE, CREATE USER, CREATE GROUP
- CREATE RULE
- CREATE SCHEMA
- CREATE SEQUENCE
- CREATE SERVER
- CREATE TABLE, CREATE TABLE AS, SELECT INTO
- CREATE TABLESPACE
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
- CREATE TRANSFORM
- CREATE TRIGGER
- CREATE TYPE
- CREATE USER MAPPING
- CREATE VIEW
- DELETE
- DO
- DROP ACCESS METHOD
- DROP AGGREGATE
- DROP CAST
- DROP COLLATION
- DROP CONVERSION
- DROP DATABASE
- DROP DOMAIN
- DROP EVENT TRIGGER
- DROP EXTENSION
- DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
- DROP FOREIGN TABLE
- DROP FUNCTION
- DROP INDEX
- DROP LANGUAGE
- DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW
- DROP OPERATOR
- DROP OPERATOR CLASS
- DROP OPERATOR FAMILY
- DROP OWNED
- DROP POLICY
- DROP ROLE, DROP USER, DROP GROUP
- DROP RULE
- DROP SCHEMA
- DROP SEQUENCE
- DROP SERVER
- DROP TABLE
- DROP TABLESPACE
- DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
- DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
F.36.4. Security Event Log Configuration Parameters

The `pg_proaudit` extension provides several configuration parameters for managing security event log files. These parameters can be set in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file, or with the help of the `ALTER SYSTEM` command. For the changes to take effect, call the `pg_reload_conf()` function or reload the database server.

- `pg_proaudit.log_destination (string)`
  Defines the method for logging security events. Possible values are:
  - `csvlog` — log security events in a CSV file.
  - `syslog` — log security events in syslog.
  You can specify one or more values separated by commas.

  Default: `csvlog`

- `pg_proaudit.log_catalog_access (boolean)`
  Specifies whether to log access to system catalog objects in the `pg_catalog` schema.

  Default: `off`

- `pg_proaudit.log_command_text (boolean)`
  Specifies whether to log the SQL command text for security events.

  Default: `on`

- `pg_proaudit.log_directory (string)`
  Specifies the path to the directory that stores CSV log files. This can be an absolute path, or a relative path to the cluster data directory (`PGDATA`). This parameter is used if `pg_proaudit.log_destination` contains the `csvlog` value.

  Default: `pg_proaudit`

- `pg_proaudit.log_filename (string)`
  Defines the filenames of the created security event log files. The filename template can contain %-escapes, similar to the ones listed in the `strftime` specification of the Open Group.
Additional Supplied Modules

(http://pubs.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/009695399/functions/strftime.html). This parameter is used if pg_proaudit.log_destination contains the csvlog value.

Default: postgresql-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log

pg_proaudit.log_rotation_size (integer)

Sets the maximum size of the CSV log file, in kilobytes. When this size is achieved, pg_proaudit creates a new file for logging security events. This parameter is used if pg_proaudit.log_destination contains the csvlog. If set to 0, disables size-based creation of new log files.

Default: 10MB

pg_proaudit.log_rotation_age (integer)

Sets the maximum lifetime of a log file, in minutes. After this timeframe has elapsed, pg_proaudit creates a new file for logging security events. This parameter is used if pg_proaudit.log_destination contains the csvlog. If set to 0, disables time-based creation of new log files.

Default: 1day

pg_proaudit.log_truncate_on_rotation (boolean)

Specifies whether to truncate log files when logging is switched to an existing log file. If set to off, pg_proaudit appends new log entries to the end of the file. This parameter is used if pg_proaudit.log_destination contains the csvlog value.

Default: off

pg_proaudit.syslog_facility (enum)

Specifies the logging category in syslog. This parameter is used if pg_proaudit.log_destination contains the syslog value. Possible values are: LOCAL0, LOCAL1, LOCAL2, LOCAL3, LOCAL4, LOCAL5, LOCAL6, LOCAL7.

Default: LOCAL0

pg_proaudit.syslog_ident (string)

Specifies the program name used to identify pg_proaudit messages in syslog logs.

Default: pg_proaudit

F.36.5. Viewing Security Event Log

Security event log files are text files that can be viewed by the operating system facilities. To access log files using SQL, you can use the file_fdw extension — a foreign data wrapper for accessing files on the database server. To use this method, complete the following steps:

1. Install the file_fdw and create an external server:

   CREATE EXTENSION file_fdw;
   CREATE SERVER pg_proauditlog FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file_fdw;

2. Create a foreign table, specifying the columns and the absolute path to the log file. The actual log file location is determined by the pg_proaudit.log_directory and pg_proaudit.log_filename parameters.

   CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log
   ( log_time timestamp(3) with time zone, role_name text,
Additional Supplied Modules

database_name text,
session_pid text,
error_severity text,
session_line_num bigint,
session_line_subcommand_num bigint,
event_type text,
object_type text,
object_name text,
status text,
error_message text,
query_text text,
query_args text )

SERVER pg_proauditlog
OPTIONS (filename 'absolute_file_path_to_log_file.csv', FORMAT 'csv');

Make sure that the `pg_proaudit.log_destination` parameter contains the `csvlog` value, which enables writing security event logs to CSV files.

F.36.6. Examples

As an example, let's set up logging for the following security events:

- connections/disconnections to the `postgres` database
- all actions of the `postgres` user
- creating, updating, and deleting any tables
- all operations on the `app_table` table that belongs to the `public` schema

All events must be logged in the CSV format and stored for a week. It is required to set up SQL access to the security event log. To complete the scenario, do the following:

In psql, check that the preliminary setup of the `pg_proaudit` extension is complete in the `postgres` database:

SHOW shared_preload_libraries;

shared_preload_libraries
--------------------------
pg_proaudit

\dx pg_proaudit

List of installed extensions
Name    | Version | Schema | Description
------------------------+---------+--------+---------------------------------
pg_proaudit | 1.0     | public | provides auditing functionality

Add the following lines to the `postgresql.conf` configuration file:

```
pg_proaudit.log_destination = 'csvlog'
pg_proaudit.log_directory = 'audit'
pg_proaudit.log_filename = 'audit-%u.csv'
pg_proaudit.log_rotation_age = 1440
pg_proaudit.log_rotation_size = 0
pg_proaudit.log_truncate_on_rotation = on
pg_proaudit.log_command_text = on
```

For the changes to take effect, run the following query:

```
SELECT pg_reload_conf();
```

Check that the following parameters are set as expected:

```
SHOW pg_proaudit.log_destination;
SHOW pg_proaudit.log_directory;
```
SHOW pg_proaudit.log_filename;
SHOW pg_proaudit.log_rotation_age;
SHOW pg_proaudit.log_rotation_size;
SHOW pg_proaudit.log_truncate_on_rotation;
SHOW pg_proaudit.log_command_text;

Suppose your PGDATA environment variable points to the cluster data directory. Since the pg_proaudit.log_directory defines a relative path to the log files, they will be located in the $PGDATA/audit directory. Let's create an empty file for each day of the week and make them available to their owner only:

touch $PGDATA/audit/audit-1.csv
touch $PGDATA/audit/audit-2.csv
touch $PGDATA/audit/audit-3.csv
touch $PGDATA/audit/audit-4.csv
touch $PGDATA/audit/audit-5.csv
touch $PGDATA/audit/audit-6.csv
touch $PGDATA/audit/audit-7.csv
chmod 600 $PGDATA/audit/audit-*.csv

Create a table for reading log entries:

CREATE TABLE pg_proaudit_log (  
  log_time timestamp(3) with time zone,  
  role_name text,  
  database_name text,  
  session_pid text,  
  error_severity text,  
  session_line_num bigint,  
  session_line_subcommand_num bigint,  
  event_type text,  
  object_type text,  
  object_name text,  
  status text,  
  error_message text,  
  query_text text,  
  query_args text  
);

Install the file_fdw extension and create an external server:

CREATE EXTENSION file_fdw;
CREATE SERVER pg_proauditlog FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file_fdw;

Now let's create seven child foreign tables for the pg_proaudit_log table, for each day of the week:

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_1 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog  
  OPTIONS (filename 'path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-1.csv', FORMAT 'csv');
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_2 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog  
  OPTIONS (filename 'path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-2.csv', FORMAT 'csv');
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_3 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog  
  OPTIONS (filename 'path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-3.csv', FORMAT 'csv');
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_4 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog  
  OPTIONS (filename 'path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-4.csv', FORMAT 'csv');
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_5 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog  
  OPTIONS (filename 'path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-5.csv', FORMAT 'csv');
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_6 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog  
  OPTIONS (filename 'path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-6.csv', FORMAT 'csv');
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_7 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog  
  OPTIONS (filename 'path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-7.csv', FORMAT 'csv');
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_6 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog OPTIONS (filename '/path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-6.csv', FORMAT 'csv');
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pg_proaudit_log_7 () INHERITS (pg_proaudit_log) SERVER pg_proauditlog OPTIONS (filename '/path_to_PGDATA/audit/audit-7.csv', FORMAT 'csv');

To set up logging for the required security events, connect to the postgres database and execute the following commands:

```
SELECT pg_proaudit_set_object ('CONNECT', null);
SELECT pg_proaudit_set_object ('DISCONNECT', null);
SELECT pg_proaudit_set_object ('ALL', 'table');
SELECT pg_proaudit_set_role ('ALL', 'postgres'::regrole);
```

Create the app_table table and enable logging for all operations on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE app_table (id int, name text);
SELECT pg_proaudit_set_object ('ALL', 'public.app_table'::regclass);
```

Check that event logging is configured as expected:

```
pinggres=# SELECT * FROM pg_proaudit_settings;
          db_name       | event_type | object_type | object_name    | role_name
-----------------+------------+-------------+----------------+-----------
              postgres | DISCONNECT |             | 0              | 0         
              postgres | CONNECT    |             | 0              | 0         
              postgres | ALL        | TABLE       | 0              | 0         
              postgres | ALL        |             | public.app_table| 0         
              postgres | ALL        |             | 0              | postgres  
(5 rows)
```

Save these configuration settings into the pg_proaudit.conf file, so that they are not lost after the server restart:

```
SELECT pg_proaudit_save();
```

Let's run several queries on the app_table table:

```
INSERT INTO app_table VALUES (1, 'first');
SELECT * FROM app_table;
```

Check the log entries for the app_table table:

```
SELECT to_char(log_time, 'DD.MM.YY HH24:MI:SS') AS when, role_name, session_pid, event_type, query_text
FROM pg_proaudit_log
where object_name = 'public.app_table';
```

```
- [ RECORD 1 ]--------------------------------------------------
  when | 24.11.16 16:31:16
  role_name | postgres
  session_pid | 26513
  event_type | CREATE TABLE
  query_text | CREATE TABLE app_table (id int, name text);
- [ RECORD 2 ]--------------------------------------------------
  when | 24.11.16 16:31:53
  role_name | postgres
  session_pid | 26513
  event_type | INSERT
  query_text | INSERT INTO app_table VALUES (1, 'first');
- [ RECORD 3 ]--------------------------------------------------
  when | 24.11.16 16:31:54
```
We have set up a weekly rotation of log files, with the log file switched once a day. It means that queries to the `pg_proaudit_log` table will return only those security events that have happened in the latest week. Older events will be automatically removed at log file rotation. To define additional access constraints for specific log entries, you can create separate views based on queries to the `pg_proaudit_log` table and grant read rights to such views using built-in Postgres Pro access control methods.

**F.37. pgpro_pwr**

The pgpro_pwr module is designed to discover most resource-intensive activities in your database. (PWR, pronounced like "power", is an abbreviation of Postgres Pro Workload Reporting.) This extension is based on Postgres Pro's Statistics Collector views and the `pgpro_stats` or `pg_stat_statements` extension.

**Note**

Although pgpro_pwr can work with the `pg_stat_statements` extension, it is recommended that you use the `pgpro_stats` extension since it provides statement plans, wait events sampling and load distribution statistics for databases, roles, client hosts and applications.

Below, use of `pgpro_stats` is assumed unless otherwise noted.

If you cannot use `pgpro_stats` for an observed database, but the `pg_stat_kcache` extension is available, `pgpro_pwr` can process `pg_stat_kcache` data, which also provides information about CPU resource usage of statements and filesystem load (`rusage`).

`pgpro_pwr` is based on cumulative statistics sampling. Each sample contains statistic increments for most active objects and queries since the time when the previous sample was taken, or more concisely, since the previous sample. This data is later used to generate reports.

`pgpro_pwr` provides functions to collect samples. Regular sampling allows building a report on the database workload in the past.

`pgpro_pwr` allows you to take explicit samples during batch processing, load testing, etc.

Any time a sample is taken, `pgpro_stats_statements_reset()` (see `pgpro_stats` for the function description) is called to ensure that statement statistics will not be lost when the statements count exceed `pgpro_stats.max` (see Section F.39.7.1). The report will also contain a section informing you of whether the count of captured statements in any sample reaches 90% of `pgpro_stats.max`.

`pgpro_pwr` installed on one Postgres Pro server can also collect statistics from other servers. This feature is useful for gathering workload statistics from hot standbys on the master server. To benefit from it, make sure that all server names and connection strings are specified and that the `pgpro_pwr` server can connect to all databases on all servers.

**F.37.1. pgpro_pwr Architecture**

The extension consists of the following parts:

- **Historical repository** is a storage for sampling data. The repository is a set of extension tables.

**Note**

Among the rest, `pgpro_pwr` tables store query texts, which can contain sensitive information. So, for security reasons, restrict access to the repository as appropriate.
Additional Supplied Modules

- **Sample management engine** comprises functions used to take samples and maintain the repository by removing obsolete sample data.

- **Report engine** comprises functions for generating reports based on data from the historical repository.

- **Administrative functions** allow you to create and manage servers and baselines.

### F.37.2. Prerequisites

The prerequisites assume that pgpro_pwr, which is usually installed in a target cluster, i.e., the cluster that you will mainly track the workload for, the extension can also collect performance data from other clusters.

#### F.37.2.1. For the pgpro_pwr Database

The pgpro_pwr extension depends on PL/pgSQL and the dblink extension.

#### F.37.2.2. For the Target Server

The target server must allow connections to all databases from the server where pgpro_pwr is running. To connect to the target server, provide a connection string where a particular database on this server is specified. This database is of high importance for pgpro_pwr since the functionality of the pgpro_stats or pg_stat_statements extensions will be provided through this database. Note, however, that pgpro_pwr will also connect to all the other databases on this server.

Optionally, for completeness of gathered statistics:

- If statement statistics are needed in reports, pgpro_stats must be installed and configured in the aforementioned database. The following settings may affect the completeness and accuracy of gathered statistics:
  - **pgpro_stats.max**
    
    Low setting of this parameter may cause some statement statistics to be wiped out before the sample is taken. A report will warn you if the value of pgpro_stats.max seems undersized.
  - **pgpro_stats.track**
    
    Avoid changing the default value of 'top' (note that the value of 'all' will affect the accuracy of %Total fields for statements-related sections of a report).
  - Set the parameters of the Postgres Pro's Statistics Collector as follows:
    ```
    track_activities = on
    track_counts = on
    track_io_timing = on
    track_wal_io_timing = on   # Since PostgreSQL 14
    track_functions = all/pl
    ```

### F.37.3. Installation and Setup

#### Note

pgpro_pwr creates a bunch of database objects, so installation in a dedicated schema is recommended.

Although the use of pgpro_pwr with superuser privileges does not have any issues, superuser privileges are not necessary. So you can choose one of the following setup procedures depending on your configuration and security requirements or customize them to meet your needs:
**F.37.3.1. Simple Setup**

Use this setup procedure when pgpro_pwr is to be installed on the target cluster to only track its workload as superuser.

Create a schema for the pgpro_pwr installation and create the extension:

```
CREATE SCHEMA profile;
CREATE EXTENSION pgpro_pwr SCHEMA profile;
```

**F.37.3.2. Complex Setup**

Use this setup procedure when you intend to use pgpro_pwr for tracking workload on one or more servers and need to follow the principle of least privilege.

**F.37.3.2.1. In the Target Server Database**

Create a user for pgpro_pwr on the target server:

```
CREATE USER stat_user PASSWORD 'stat_user_pwd';
```

Make sure this user has permissions to connect to any database in the target cluster (by default, it is true) and that pg_hba.conf permits such a connection from the pgpro_pwr database host. Also, grant stat_user with membership in the pg_read_all_stats role and the EXECUTE privilege on the pgpro_stats_statements_reset() function:

```
GRANT pg_read_all_stats TO stat_user;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pgpro_stats_statements_reset TO stat_user;
```

**F.37.3.2.2. In the pgpro_pwr Database**

Create an unprivileged user:

```
CREATE USER pwr_user;
```

This user will be the owner of the extension schema and will collect samples.

Create a schema for the pgpro_pwr installation:

```
CREATE SCHEMA profile AUTHORIZATION pwr_user;
```

Grant the USAGE privilege on the schema where the dblink extension resides:

```
GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA public TO pwr_user;
```

Create the extension using pwr_user account:

```
\c - pwr_user
CREATE EXTENSION pgpro_pwr SCHEMA profile;
```

Define the connection parameters of the target server for pgpro_pwr. For example:

```
SELECT profile.create_server('target_server_name','host=192.168.1.100 dbname=postgres port=5432');
```

The connection string provided will be used in the dblink_connect() call while executing the take_sample() function.

**Note**

Connection strings are stored in a pgpro_pwr table in clear-text form. Make sure no other database users can access tables of the pgpro_pwr extension.
F.37.3.3. Setting Extension Parameters

In `postgresql.conf`, you can define the following `pgpro_pwr` parameters:

- **`pgpro_pwr.max` (integer)**
  
  Number of top objects (statements, relations, etc.) to be reported in each sorted report table. This parameter affects the size of a sample.
  
  The default value is 20.

- **`pgpro_pwr.max_sample_age` (integer)**
  
  Retention time of the sample, in days. Samples aged `pgpro_pwr.max_sample_age` days and older are automatically deleted on the next `take_sample()` call.
  
  The default value is 7 days.

- **`pgpro_pwr.track_sample_timings` (boolean)**
  
  Enables collecting detailed timing statistics of `pgpro_pwr`'s own sampling procedures. Set this parameter to diagnose why sampling functions run slowly. Collected timing statistics will be available in the `v_sample_timings` view.
  
  The default value is off.

F.37.4. Managing Servers

Once installed, `pgpro_pwr` creates one enabled local server for the current cluster. If a server is enabled, `pgpro_pwr` includes it in sampling when no server is explicitly specified (see `take_sample()` for details). A server that is not enabled is referred to as disabled.

The default connection string for a local node contains only `dbname` and `port` parameters. The values of these parameters are taken from the connection used to create the extension. You can change the server connection string using the `set_server_connstr()` function when needed.

F.37.4.1. Server Management Functions

Use the following `pgpro_pwr` functions for server management:

```sql
create_server(server name, connstr text, enabled boolean DEFAULT TRUE, max_sample_age integer DEFAULT NULL, description text DEFAULT NULL)
```

Creates a server definition.

Arguments:

- `server` — server name. Must be unique.
- `connstr` — connection string. Must contain all the necessary settings to connect from `pgpro_pwr` server to the target server database.
- `enabled` — set to include the server in sampling by the `take_sample()` function without arguments.
- `max_sample_age` — retention time of the sample. Overrides the global `pgpro_pwr.max_sample_age` setting for this server.
- `description` — server description text, to be included in reports.

Here is an example of how to create a server definition:

```sql
SELECT profile.create_server('omega','host=192.168.1.100 dbname=postgres port=5432');
```

```sql
drop_server(server name)
```

Drops a server and all its samples.
**F.37.5. Managing Samples**

A sample contains the database workload statistics since the previous sample.

**F.37.5.1. Sampling Functions**

The following pgpro_pwr functions relate to sampling:

```plaintext
take_sample()
take_sample(server name [, skip_sizes boolean])
```

Takes samples.

If the parameter is omitted, the function takes a sample on each enabled server. Servers are accessed for sampling sequentially, one by one. The function returns a table with the following columns:

- **server** — server name.
- **result** — result of taking the sample. Can be OK if the sample was taken successfully or contain the error trace text in case of exception.
- **elapsed** — time elapsed while the sample was taken.

If called with the parameter, the function takes a sample on the specified server even if this server is disabled. Use when you need different sampling frequencies on specific servers. Returns 0 on success.

Arguments:

- **server** — server name.
- **skip_sizes** — if omitted or set to null, the size-collection policy applies; if false, relation sizes are collected; if true, the collection of relation sizes is skipped.
take_sample_subset([sets_cnt integer, current_set integer])

Takes a sample on each server in a subset of servers. Use to take samples on servers in parallel if you have many enabled servers. Although PL/pgSQL does not support parallel execution, you can call this function in parallel sessions. This function returns the same type as take_sample(). If both parameters are omitted, the function behaves like the take_sample() function, i.e., it takes a sample on all enabled servers one by one.

Arguments:

- sets_cnt — number of subsets to divide all enabled servers into.
- current_set — number of the subset to collect samples for. Takes values from 0 through sets_cnt - 1. For the specified subset, samples are collected as usual, server by server.

If a reset of statistics since the previous sample was detected, pgpro_pwr treats corresponding absolute values as differentials; however, the accuracy will be affected anyway.

show_samples([server name], [days integer])

Returns a table with information on server samples (local server is assumed if server is omitted) for the last days days (all existing samples are assumed if omitted). This table has the following columns:

- sample — sample identifier.
- sample_time — time when this sample was taken.
- dbstats_reset — NULL or the statistics reset timestamp of the pg_stat_database view if the statistics were reset since the previous sample.
- clustats_reset — NULL or the statistics reset timestamp of the pg_stat_bgwriter view if the statistics were reset since the previous sample.
- archstats_reset — NULL or the statistics reset timestamp of the pg_stat_archiver view if the statistics were reset since the previous sample.

Sampling functions also maintain the server repository by deleting obsolete samples and baselines according to the retention policy.

F.37.5.2. Taking Samples

To take samples for all enabled servers, call the take_sample() function. Usually, one or two samples per hour is sufficient. You can use a cron-like tool to schedule sampling. Here is an example for a 30-minute sampling period:

*/30 * * * *   psql -c 'SELECT profile.take_sample()' &> /dev/null

However, the results of such a call are not checked for errors. In a production environment, function results can be used for monitoring. This function returns OK for all servers with successfully taken samples and shows error text for failed servers:

```
SELECT * FROM take_sample();
server | result
----- | ---------------
ok_node | OK
| 00:00:00.48
fail_node | could not establish connection
| 00:00:00
   | SQL statement "SELECT dblink_connect('server_connection',server_connstr)"
   | PL/pgSQL function take_sample(integer) line 69 at PERFORM
```

2382
F.37.5.3. Sample Retention Policy

You can define sample retention at the following levels:

1. **Global**

   The value of the `pgpro_pwr.max_sample_age` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file defines a common retention setting, which is effective if none of other related settings are defined.

2. **Server**

   Specifying the `max_sample_age` parameter while creating a server or calling the `set_server_max_sample_age(server, max_sample_age)` function for an existing server defines the retention for the server. A server retention setting overrides `pgpro_pwr.max_sample_age` for a specific server.

3. **Baseline**

   A baseline created overrides all the other retention periods for included samples.

F.37.6. Managing the Collection of Relation Sizes

It may take considerable time to collect sizes of all relations in a database by Postgres Pro relation-size functions. Besides, those functions require `ACCESSEXCLUSIVELOCK` on a relation. However, it may be sufficient for you to collect relation sizes on a daily basis. `pgpro_pwr` allows you to skip collecting relation sizes by defining the `size-collection policy` for servers. The policy defines:

- A daily window when the collection of relation sizes is permitted.
- A minimum gap between two samples with relation sizes collected.

When the size-collection policy is defined, sampling functions collect relation sizes only when the sample is taken in the defined window and the previous sample with sizes is older than the gap. The following function defines this policy:

```
set_server_size_sampling(server name, window_start time with time zone DEFAULT NULL, window_duration interval hour to second DEFAULT NULL, sample_interval interval day to minute DEFAULT NULL)
```

Defines the size-collection policy for a server.

Arguments:

- `server` — server name.
- `window_start` — start time of the size-collection window.
- `window_duration` — duration of the size-collection window.
- `sample_interval` — minimum time gap between two samples with relation sizes collected.

**Note**

When you build a report between samples either of which lacks relation-size data, relation-growth sections will be based on `pg_class.relpages` data. However, you can expand the report interval
bounds to the nearest samples with relation sizes collected using the \texttt{with\_growth} parameter of report generation functions; this makes the growth data more accurate.

Relation sizes are needed to calculate sequentially scanned volume for tables and explicit vacuum load for indexes.

Example:

```sql
SELECT set_server_size_sampling('local','23:00+03',interval '2 hour',interval '8 hour');
```

The \texttt{show\_servers\_size\_sampling} function shows size collection policies for all servers:

```sql
postgres=# SELECT * FROM show_servers_size_sampling();
server_name | window_start | window_end  | window_duration | sample_interval |
limited_collection
-------------+--------------+-------------+-----------------+-----------------
+-------------------+
local       | 23:00:00+03  | 01:00:00+03 | 02:00:00        | 08:00:00        | t
```

### F.37.7. Managing Baselines

A \textit{baseline} is a named sequence of samples that has its own retention setting. A baseline can be used as a sample interval in report generation functions. An undefined baseline retention means infinite retention. Use baselines to save information about the database workload for a certain time interval.

#### F.37.7.1. Baseline Management Functions

Use the following \texttt{pgpro\_pwr} functions for baseline management:

- \texttt{create\_baseline([server name,] baseline varchar(25), start_id integer, end_id integer [, days integer])}
- \texttt{create\_baseline([server name,] baseline varchar(25), time\_range tstzrange [, days integer])}

Creates a baseline.

Arguments:

- \textit{server} — server name. \texttt{local} server is assumed if omitted.
- \textit{baseline} — baseline name. Must be unique for a server.
- \textit{start\_id} — identifier of the first sample in the baseline.
- \textit{end\_id} — identifier of the last sample in the baseline.
- \textit{time\_range} — time interval for the baseline. The baseline will include all samples for the minimal interval that covers \texttt{time\_range}.
- \textit{days} — baseline retention time, defined in integer days since \texttt{now()}. Omit or set to null for infinite retention.

- \texttt{drop\_baseline([server name,] baseline varchar(25))}

Drops a baseline. For the meaning and usage details of function arguments, see \texttt{create\_baseline}. Dropping a baseline does not mean dropping all its samples immediately. The baseline retention just no longer applies to them.

- \texttt{keep\_baseline([server name,] baseline varchar(25) [, days integer])}

Changes the retention of a baseline. For the meaning and usage details of function arguments, see \texttt{create\_baseline}. Omit the \texttt{baseline} parameter or pass null to it to change the retention of all existing baselines.
show_baselines([server name])

Displays existing baselines. Call show_baselines to get information about the baselines, such as names, sampling intervals and retention periods. local sever is assumed if the server parameter is omitted.

F.37.8. Data Export and Import

Collected samples can be exported from one instance of the pgpro_pwr extension and then loaded into another one. This feature helps you to move server data from one instance to another or to send collected data to your support team.

F.37.8.1. Data Export

The export_data function exports data to a regular table. You can use any method available to export this table from your database. For example, you can use the \copy meta-command of psql to obtain a single csv file:

```sql
postgres=# \copy (select * from export_data()) to 'export.csv'
```

F.37.8.2. Data Import

Since data can only be imported from a local table, first, load the data you exported. Using the \copy meta-command again:

```sql
postgres=# CREATE TABLE import (section_id bigint, row_data json);
CREATE TABLE
postgres=# \copy import from 'export.csv'
COPY 6437
```

Now you can import the data by providing the import table to the import_data function:

```sql
postgres=# SELECT * FROM import_data('import');
```

After successful import, you can drop the import table.

Note

If server data is imported for the first time, your local pgpro_pwr servers with matching names will cause a conflict during import. To avoid this, you can temporarily rename such servers. However, during import of new data for already imported servers, they are matched by system identifiers, so feel free to rename imported servers. Also keep in mind that pgpro_pwr sets servers being imported to the disabled state for take_sample() to bypass them.

F.37.8.3. Export and Import Functions

Use these functions to export or import data:

```sql
export_data([server name, [min_sample_id integer,] [max_sample_id integer]], [, obfuscate_queries boolean]])
```

Exports collected data.

Arguments:

- server — server name. All configured servers are assumed if omitted.
- min_sample_id, max_sample_id — sample identifiers to bound the export (inclusive). If min_sample_id is omitted or set to null, all samples until max_sample_id sample are exported; if max_sample_id is omitted or set to null, all samples since min_sample_id sample are exported.
- obfuscate_queries — if true, query texts are exported as MD5 hash.

```sql
import_data(data regclass)
```

Imports previously exported data. Returns the number of actually loaded rows in pgpro_pwr tables.
pgpro_pwr reports are generated in HTML format by reporting functions. The following types of reports are available:

- **Regular reports** provide statistics on the workload for an interval.
- **Differential reports** provide statistics on the same objects for two intervals. Corresponding values are located next to each other, which makes it easy to compare the workloads.

Reporting functions take sample identifiers, baselines or time ranges to determine the intervals. For time ranges, these are the minimal intervals that cover the ranges.

### F.37.9.1. Regular Reports

Use this function to generate regular reports:

```sql
get_report([server name,] start_id integer, end_id integer [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_report([server name,] time_range tstzrange [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_report([server name,] baseline varchar(25) [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
```

Generates a regular report.

**Arguments:**

- **server** — server name. `local server` is assumed if omitted.
- **start_id** — identifier of the interval starting sample.
- **end_id** — identifier of the interval ending sample.
- **baseline** — baseline name.
- **time_range** — time range.
- **description** — short text to be included in the report as its description.
- **with_growth** — flag requesting interval expansion to the nearest bounds with data on relation growth available. The default value is `false`.

### F.37.9.2. Differential Reports

Use this function to generate differential reports:

```sql
get_diffreport([server name,] start1_id integer, end1_id integer, start2_id integer, end2_id integer [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_diffreport([server name,] time_range1 tstzrange, time_range2 tstzrange [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_diffreport([server name,] baseline1 varchar(25), baseline2 varchar(25) [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_diffreport([server name,] baseline1 varchar(25), time_range2 tstzrange [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_diffreport([server name,] baseline1 varchar(25), baseline2 varchar(25) [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_diffreport([server name,] time_range1 tstzrange, baseline2 varchar(25) [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_diffreport([server name,] start1_id integer, end1_id integer, baseline2 varchar(25) [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
generate_diffreport([server name,] baseline1 varchar(25), start2_id integer, end2_id integer [,, description text [, with_growth boolean]])
```

Generates a differential report for two intervals. The combinations of arguments provide possible ways to specify the two intervals.
Arguments:

- `server` — server name. `local` server is assumed if omitted.
- `start1_id, end1_id` — identifiers of the starting and ending samples for the first interval.
- `start2_id, end2_id` — identifiers of the starting and ending samples for the second interval.
- `baseline1` — baseline name for the first interval.
- `baseline2` — baseline name for the second interval.
- `time_range1` — time range for the first interval.
- `time_range2` — time range for the second interval.
- `description` — short text to be included in the report as its description.
- `with_growth` — flag requesting interval expansion to the nearest bounds with data on relation growth available. The default value is `false`.

F.37.9.3. Report Generation Example

Generate a report for the `local` server and interval defined by samples:

```
psql -Aqtc "SELECT profile.get_report(480,482)" -o report_480_482.html
```

For any other server, provide its name:

```
psql -Aqtc "SELECT profile.get_report('omega',12,14)" -o report_omega_12_14.html
```

Generate a report using time ranges:

```
```

Generate a relative time-range report:

```
psql -Aqtc "SELECT profile.get_report(tstzrange(now() - interval '1 day',now()))" -o report_last_day.html
```

F.37.10. pgpro_pwr Report Sections

Each `pgpro_pwr` report is divided into sections, described below. The number of top objects reported in each sorted report table is specified by the `pgpro_pwr.max` parameter.

F.37.10.1. Server statistics

Tables in this section of a `pgpro_pwr` report are described below.

The report table “Database statistics” provides per-database statistics for the report interval. The statistics are based on the `pg_stat_database` view. Table F.21 lists columns of this report table.

Table F.21. Database statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name</td>
<td>datname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commits</td>
<td>Number of committed transactions</td>
<td>xact_commit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rollbacks</td>
<td>Number of rolled back transactions</td>
<td>xact_rollback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deadlocks</td>
<td>Number of deadlocks detected</td>
<td>deadlocks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hit%</td>
<td>Buffer cache hit ratio, i.e., percentage of pages fetched from buffers in all pages fetched</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read</td>
<td>Number of disk blocks read in this database</td>
<td>blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hit</td>
<td>Number of times disk blocks were found already in the buffer cache</td>
<td>blks_hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ret</td>
<td>Number of returned tuples</td>
<td>tup_returned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fet</td>
<td>Number of fetched tuples</td>
<td>tup_fetched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>Number of inserted tuples</td>
<td>tup_inserted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd</td>
<td>Number of updated tuples</td>
<td>tup_updated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del</td>
<td>Number of deleted tuples</td>
<td>tup_deleted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temp Size</td>
<td>Total amount of data written to temporary files by queries in this database</td>
<td>temp_bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temp Files</td>
<td>Number of temporary files created by queries in this database</td>
<td>temp_files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Database size at the time of the last sample in the report interval</td>
<td>pg_database_size()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth</td>
<td>Database growth during the report interval</td>
<td>pg_database_size()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table “Session statistics by database” is available in the report for Postgres Pro databases starting with version 14. This table is based on the `pg_stat_database` view of the Statistics Collector. Table F.22 lists columns of this report table. Times are provided in seconds.

### Table F.22. Session statistics by database

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing Total</td>
<td>Time spent by database sessions in this database during the report interval (note that statistics are only updated when the state of a session changes, so if sessions have been idle for a long time, this idle time won’t be included)</td>
<td>session_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing Active</td>
<td>Time spent executing SQL statements in this database during the report interval (this corresponds to the states active and fastpath function call in <code>pg_stat_activity</code>)</td>
<td>active_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing Idle(T)</td>
<td>Time spent idling while in a transaction in this database during the report interval (this corresponds to the states idle</td>
<td>idle_in_transaction_time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2388
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sessions Established</td>
<td>Total number of sessions established to this database during the report interval</td>
<td>sessions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sessions Abandoned</td>
<td>Number of database sessions to this database that were terminated because connection to the client was lost during the report interval</td>
<td>sessions_abandoned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sessions Fatal</td>
<td>Number of database sessions to this database that were terminated by fatal errors during the report interval</td>
<td>sessions_fatal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sessions Killed</td>
<td>Number of database sessions to this database that were terminated by operator intervention during the report interval</td>
<td>sessions_killed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the `pgpro_stats` extension was available during the report interval, the "Statement statistics by database" table of the report provides per-database aggregated total statistics for the `pgpro_stats_statements` view data. Table F.23 lists columns of this report table. Times are provided in seconds.

### Table F.23. Statement statistics by database

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name</td>
<td>calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calls</td>
<td>Number of times all statements in the database were executed</td>
<td>sum of total_plan_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan Time</td>
<td>Time spent planning all statements in the database</td>
<td>sum of total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exec Time</td>
<td>Time spent executing all statements in the database</td>
<td>sum of blk_read_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Time</td>
<td>Time spent reading blocks by all statements in the database</td>
<td>sum of blk_write_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Time</td>
<td>Time spent writing blocks by all statements in the database</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trg Time</td>
<td>Time spent executing trigger functions by all statements in the database</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared Fetched</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks fetched by all statements in the database</td>
<td>sum of (shared_blks_read + shared_blks_hit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Fetched</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks fetched by all statements in the database</td>
<td>sum of (local_blks_read + local_blks_hit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared Dirtied</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks dirtied by all statements in the database</td>
<td>sum of shared_blks_dirtied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Dirtied</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks dirtied by all statements in the database</td>
<td>Sum of local_blks_dirtied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Temp</td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks read by all statements in the database</td>
<td>Sum of temp_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Temp</td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks written by all statements in the database</td>
<td>Sum of temp_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Local</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks read by all statements in the database</td>
<td>Sum of local_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Local</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks written by all statements in the database</td>
<td>Sum of local_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statements</td>
<td>Total number of captured statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL Size</td>
<td>Total amount of WAL generated by all statements in the database</td>
<td>Sum of wal_bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Cluster statistics” provides data from the `pg_statbgwriter` view. Table F.24 lists rows of this report table. Times are provided in seconds.

### Table F.24. Cluster statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Row</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled checkpoints</td>
<td>Number of scheduled checkpoints that have been performed</td>
<td>checkpoints_timed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requested checkpoints</td>
<td>Number of requested checkpoints that have been performed</td>
<td>checkpoints_req</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checkpoint write time (s)</td>
<td>Total amount of time that has been spent in the portion of checkpoint processing where files are written to disk</td>
<td>checkpoint_write_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checkpoint sync time (s)</td>
<td>Total amount of time that has been spent in the portion of checkpoint processing where files are synchronized to disk</td>
<td>checkpoint_sync_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checkpoint buffers written</td>
<td>Number of buffers written during checkpoints</td>
<td>buffers_checkpoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background buffers written</td>
<td>Number of buffers written by the background writer</td>
<td>buffers_clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backend buffers written</td>
<td>Number of buffers written directly by a backend</td>
<td>buffers_backend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backend fsync count</td>
<td>Number of times a backend had to execute its own fsync call (normally the background writer handles those even when the backend does its own write)</td>
<td>buffers_backend_fsync</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bgwriter interrupts (too many buffers)</td>
<td>Number of times the background writer stopped a cleaning scan</td>
<td>maxwritten_clean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table “WAL statistics” is available in the report for Postgres Pro databases starting with version 14. This table is based on the pg_stat_wal view of the Statistics Collector. Table F.25 lists columns of this report table. Times are provided in seconds.

Table F.25. WAL statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Row</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of buffers allocated</td>
<td>Total number of buffers allocated</td>
<td>buffers_alloc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL generated</td>
<td>Total amount of WAL generated</td>
<td>pg_current_wal_lsn() value increment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL segments archived</td>
<td>Total number of archived WAL segments</td>
<td>Based on pg_stat_archiver.archived_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL segments archive failed</td>
<td>Total number of WAL segment archiver failures</td>
<td>Based on pg_stat_archiver.failed_count</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Supplied Modules
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Row</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WAL syncs per second</td>
<td>Average number of times WAL files were synced to disk via issue_xlog_fsync</td>
<td>wal_sync / report_duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>request per second during the report interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL write time</td>
<td>Total amount of time spent writing WAL buffers to disk via XLogWrite request</td>
<td>wal_write_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>during the report interval (if track_wal_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero; for more details, see Section 18.9). This includes the sync time when wal_sync_method is either open_datsasync or open_sync.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL write duty</td>
<td>WAL write time as the percentage of the report interval duration</td>
<td>wal_write_time * 100 / report_duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL sync time</td>
<td>Total amount of time spent syncing WAL files to disk via issue_xlog_fsync</td>
<td>wal_sync_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>request during the report interval (if track_wal_io_timing is enabled, fsync is on, and wal_sync_method is either fdatasync, fsync or fsync_writethrough, otherwise zero).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL sync duty</td>
<td>WAL sync time as the percentage of the report interval duration</td>
<td>wal_sync_time * 100 / report_duration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Tablespace statistics” provides information on the sizes and growth of tablespaces. Table F.26 lists columns of this report table.

Table F.26. Tablespace statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Tablespace name</td>
<td>pg_tablespace .spcname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path</td>
<td>Tablespace path</td>
<td>pg_tablespace_location()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Tablespace size at the time of the</td>
<td>pg_tablespace_size()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>last sample in the report interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth</td>
<td>Tablespace growth during the report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the pgpro_stats extension was available during the report interval, the report table “Wait statistics by database” shows the total wait time by wait event type and database. Table F.27 lists columns of this report table.

Table F.27. Wait statistics by database

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wait event type</td>
<td>Type of event for which the backends were waiting. Asterisk means aggregation of all wait event types in the database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waited (s)</td>
<td>Time spent waiting in events of Wait event type, in seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of wait time spent in the database events of Wait event type in all wait time for the cluster</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the pgpro_stats extension was available during the report interval, the report table “Top wait events” shows top wait events in the cluster by wait time. Table F.28 lists columns of this report table.

#### Table F.28. Top wait events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wait event type</td>
<td>The type of event for which the backends were waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wait event</td>
<td>Wait event name for which the backends were waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waited</td>
<td>Total wait time spent in Wait event of the database, in seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of wait time spent in Wait event of the database in all wait time in the cluster</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### F.37.10.2. Load distribution

This section of a pgpro_pwr report is based on the pgpro_stats_totals view of the pgpro_stats extension if it was available during the report interval. Each table in this section provides data for the report interval on load distribution for a certain kind of objects for which aggregated statistics are collected, such as databases, applications, hosts, or users. Each table contains one row for each resource (for example, total time or shared blocks written), where load distribution is shown in graphics, as a stacked bar chart for top objects by load of this resource. If the bar chart area that corresponds to an object is too narrow to include captions, point that area to get a hint with the caption, value and percentage. The report tables “Load distribution among heavily loaded databases”, “Load distribution among heavily loaded applications”, “Load distribution among heavily loaded hosts” and “Load distribution among heavily loaded users” show load distribution for respective objects. Table F.29 lists rows of these report tables.

#### Table F.29. Load distribution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Row</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total time (sec.)</td>
<td>Total time spent in the planning and execution of statements</td>
<td>total_plan_time + total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executed count</td>
<td>Number of queries executed</td>
<td>queries_executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O time (sec.)</td>
<td>Total time the statements spent reading or writing blocks ( if track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
<td>blk_read_time + blk_write_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blocks fetched</td>
<td>Total number of shared block cache hits and shared blocks read by the statements</td>
<td>shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Additional Supplied Modules**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Row</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shared blocks read</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks read by the</td>
<td>shared_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared blocks dirtied</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks dirtied by the</td>
<td>shared_blks_dirtied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared blocks written</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks written by the</td>
<td>shared_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temp and Local blocks</td>
<td>Total number of temporary and local blocks</td>
<td>temp_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>written</td>
<td>written by the statements</td>
<td>+ local_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temp and Local blocks</td>
<td>Total number of temp and local blocks read by</td>
<td>temp_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>the statements</td>
<td>+ local_blks_read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F.37.10.3. SQL query statistics**

This section of a pgpro_pwr report provides data for the report interval on top statements by several important statistics. The data is mainly captured from views of the one of pgpro_stats and pg_stat_statements extensions that was available during the report interval, with the precedence of pgpro_stats. Tables of this section of the report are described below.

The report table “Top SQL by elapsed time” shows top statements by the sum of total_plan_time and total_exec_time fields of the pgpro_stats_statements or pg_stat_statements view. Table F.30 lists columns of this report table. Times are provided in seconds.

**Table F.30. Top SQL by elapsed time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>representation of queryid is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of elapsed time of this statement plan in the total elapsed time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed Time (s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in planning and execution of the statement plan</td>
<td>total_plan_time + total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan Time (s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in planning of the statement</td>
<td>total_plan_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exec Time (s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in execution of the statement</td>
<td>total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read I/O time (s)</td>
<td>Total time the statement spent reading blocks</td>
<td>blk_read_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write I/O time (s)</td>
<td>Total time the statement spent writing blocks</td>
<td>blk_write_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usr CPU time (s)</td>
<td>Time spent on CPU in the user space, in seconds</td>
<td>rusage.user_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sys CPU time (s)</td>
<td>Time spent on CPU in the system space, in seconds</td>
<td>rusage.system_time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

The report table “Top SQL by planning time” shows top statements by the value of the `total_plan_time` field of the `pgpro_stats_statements` or `pg_stat_statements` view. Table F.31 lists columns of this report table.

**Table F.31. Top SQL by planning time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of <code>queryid</code> is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement plan</td>
<td>Derived from <code>dbid</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan elapsed(s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in planning of the statement, in seconds</td>
<td><code>total_plan_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Elapsed</td>
<td>Percentage of <code>total_plan_time</code> (in the sum of <code>total_plan_time</code> and <code>total_exec_time</code>) of this statement plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean plan time</td>
<td>Mean time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds</td>
<td><code>mean_plan_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min plan time</td>
<td>Minimum time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds</td>
<td><code>min_plan_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max plan time</td>
<td>Maximum time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds</td>
<td><code>max_plan_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StdErr plan time</td>
<td>Population standard deviation of time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds</td>
<td><code>stddev_plan_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plans</td>
<td>Number of times the statement was planned</td>
<td>plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executions</td>
<td>Number of executions of the statement plan</td>
<td>calls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top SQL by execution time” shows top statements by the value of the `total_time` field of the `pgpro_stats_statements` or `pg_stat_statements` view. Table F.32 lists columns of this report table.

**Table F.32. Top SQL by execution time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of <code>queryid</code> is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2395
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement plan</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exec (s)</td>
<td>Total time spent executing the statement plan, in seconds</td>
<td>total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Elapsed</td>
<td>Percentage of total_exec_time of this statement plan in this statement elapsed time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of total_exec_time of this statement plan in the total elapsed time of all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read I/O time (s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in reading pages while executing the statement plan, in seconds</td>
<td>blk_read_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write I/O time (s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in writing pages while executing the statement plan, in seconds</td>
<td>blk_write_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usr CPU time (s)</td>
<td>Time spent on CPU in the user space, in seconds</td>
<td>rusage.user_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sys CPU time (s)</td>
<td>Time spent on CPU in the system space, in seconds</td>
<td>rusage.system_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rows</td>
<td>Number of rows retrieved or affected by execution of the statement plan</td>
<td>rows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean execution time</td>
<td>Mean time spent executing the statement plan, in milliseconds</td>
<td>mean_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min execution time</td>
<td>Minimum time spent executing the statement plan, in milliseconds</td>
<td>min_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max execution time</td>
<td>Maximum time spent executing the statement plan, in milliseconds</td>
<td>max_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StdErr execution time</td>
<td>Population standard deviation of time spent executing the statement plan, in milliseconds</td>
<td>stddev_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executions</td>
<td>Number of executions of this statement plan</td>
<td>calls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top SQL by executions” shows top statements by the value of the calls field of the pgpro_stats_statements or pg_stat_statements view. Table F.33 lists columns of this report table.

### Table F.33. Top SQL by executions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of queryid is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Description Field/Calculation

| **Plan ID** | Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan | planid |
| **Database** | Database name for the statement | Derived from dbid |
| **Executions** | Number of executions of the statement plan | calls |
| **%Total** | Percentage of calls of this statement plan in the total calls of all statements in the cluster | |
| **Rows** | Number of rows retrieved or affected by execution of the statement plan | rows |
| **Mean (ms)** | Mean time spent executing the statement plan, in milliseconds | mean_exec_time |
| **Min (ms)** | Minimum time spent executing the statement plan, in milliseconds | min_exec_time |
| **Max (ms)** | Maximum time spent executing the statement plan, in milliseconds | max_exec_time |
| **StdErr (ms)** | Population standard deviation of time spent executing the statement plan, in milliseconds | stddev_time |
| **Elapsed(s)** | Total time spent executing the statement plan, in seconds | total_exec_time |

The report table "Top SQL by I/O wait time" shows top statements by read and write time, i.e., sum of values of `blk_read_time` and `blk_write_time` fields of the `pgpro_stats_statements` or `pg_stat_statements` view. Table F.34 lists columns of this report table. Times are provided in seconds.

**Table F.34. Top SQL by I/O wait time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Column</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
<th><strong>Field/Calculation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Query ID</strong></td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of <code>queryid</code> is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plan ID</strong></td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Database</strong></td>
<td>Database name for the statement</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IO(s)</strong></td>
<td>Total time spent in reading and writing while executing this statement plan, i.e., I/O time</td>
<td><code>blk_read_time + blk_write_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R(s)</strong></td>
<td>Total time spent in reading while executing this statement plan</td>
<td><code>blk_read_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>W(s)</strong></td>
<td>Total time spent in writing while executing this statement plan</td>
<td><code>blk_write_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>%Total</strong></td>
<td>Percentage of I/O time of this statement plan in the total I/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O time</td>
<td>Time of all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shr Reads</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks read while executing the statement plan</td>
<td>shared_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc Reads</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks read while executing the statement plan</td>
<td>local_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tmp Reads</td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks read while executing the statement plan</td>
<td>temp_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shr Writes</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks written while executing the statement plan</td>
<td>shared_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc Writes</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks written while executing the statement plan</td>
<td>local_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tmp Writes</td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks written while executing the statement plan</td>
<td>temp_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed(s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in execution of the statement plan</td>
<td>total_plan_time + total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executions</td>
<td>Number of executions of the statement plan</td>
<td>calls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top SQL by shared blocks fetched” shows top statements by the number of read and hit blocks, which helps to detect the most data-intensive statements. **Table F.35** lists columns of this report table.

### Table F.35. Top SQL by shared blocks fetched

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of queryid is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blks fetched</td>
<td>Number of blocks retrieved while executing the statement plan</td>
<td>shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks fetched while executing the statement plan in all blocks fetched for all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits(%)</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks got from buffers in all blocks got</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed(s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in execution of the statement plan, in seconds</td>
<td>total_plan_time + total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table F.36. Top SQL by shared blocks read

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of queryid in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reads</td>
<td>Number of shared blocks read while executing this statement plan</td>
<td>shared_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of shared reads for this statement plan in all shared reads of all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits(%)</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks got from buffers in all blocks got while executing this statement plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed(s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in execution of the statement plan, in seconds</td>
<td>total_plan_time + total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rows</td>
<td>Number of rows retrieved or affected by execution of the statement plan</td>
<td>rows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executions</td>
<td>Number of executions of the statement plan</td>
<td>calls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table F.37. Top SQL by shared blocks dirtied

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of queryid in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top SQL by shared blocks dirtied” shows top statements by the number of shared dirtied buffers, which helps to detect statements that do most data changes in the cluster. Table F.37 lists columns of this report table.
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement plan</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dirtied</td>
<td>Number of shared buffers dirtied while executing this statement plan</td>
<td>shared_blks_dirtied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of dirtied shared buffers for this statement plan in all dirtied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shared buffers of all statements in the cluster</td>
<td>%Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits(%)</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks got from buffers in all blocks got while</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>executing this statement plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL</td>
<td>Total amount of WAL bytes generated by the statement plan</td>
<td>wal_bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of WAL bytes generated by the statement plan in total WAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>generated in the cluster</td>
<td>%Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed(s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in execution of the statement plan, in seconds</td>
<td>total_plan_time + total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rows</td>
<td>Number of rows retrieved or affected by execution of the statement plan</td>
<td>rows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executions</td>
<td>Number of executions of the statement plan</td>
<td>calls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top SQL by shared blocks written” shows top statements by the number of blocks written. Table F.38 lists columns of this report table.

### Table F.38. Top SQL by shared blocks written

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>representation of queryid is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>Number of blocks written while executing this statement plan</td>
<td>shared_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks written by this statement plan in all written blocks in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Percentage of shared_blks_written in (pg_stat_bkwriter .buffers_checkpoint +</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pg_stat_bkwriter .buffers_clean + pg_stat_bkwriter .buffers_backend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%BackendW</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks written by this statement plan in all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Percentage of shared_blks_written in pg_stat_bkwriter .buffers_backend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The report table “Top SQL by WAL size” shows top statements by the amount of WAL generated. Table F.39 lists columns of this report table.

Table F.39. Top SQL by WAL size

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of queryid is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement plan</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL</td>
<td>Total amount of WAL bytes generated by the statement plan</td>
<td>wal_bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of WAL bytes generated by the statement plan in total WAL generated in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dirtied</td>
<td>Number of shared buffers dirtied while executing this statement plan</td>
<td>shared_blks_dirtied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL FPI</td>
<td>Total number of WAL full page images generated by the statement plan</td>
<td>wal_fpi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAL records</td>
<td>Total number of WAL records generated by the statement plan</td>
<td>wal_records</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top SQL by temp usage” shows top statements by temporary I/O, which is calculated as the sum of temp_blks_read, temp_blks_written, local_blks_read and local_blks_written fields. Table F.40 lists columns of this report table.

Table F.40. Top SQL by temp usage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Field/Calculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text. Hex representation of queryid is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement plan</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local fetched</td>
<td>Number of local blocks retrieved</td>
<td>local_blks_hit + local_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits(%)</td>
<td>Percentage of local blocks got from buffers in all local blocks got</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Local (blk)</td>
<td>Number of blocks written by this statement plan that are used in temporary tables</td>
<td>local_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Local %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of local_blks_written of this statement plan in the total of local_blks_read for all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Local (blk)</td>
<td>Number of blocks read by this statement plan that are used in temporary tables</td>
<td>local_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Local %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of local_blks_read of this statement plan in the total of local_blks_read for all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Temp (blk)</td>
<td>Number of temp blocks written by this statement plan</td>
<td>temp_blks_written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Temp %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of temp_blks_written of this statement plan in the total of temp_blks_written for all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Temp (blk)</td>
<td>Number of temp blocks read by this statement plan</td>
<td>temp_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Temp %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of temp_blks_read of this statement plan in the total of temp_blks_read for all statements in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed(s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in execution of the statement plan, in seconds</td>
<td>total_plan_time + total_exec_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rows</td>
<td>Number of rows retrieved or affected by execution of the statement plan</td>
<td>rows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executions</td>
<td>Number of executions of the statement plan</td>
<td>calls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F.37.10.3.1. rusage statistics**

This section is included in the report only if the pg_stat_kcache extension was available during the report interval.
The report table “Top SQL by system and user time” shows top statements by the sum of `user_time` and `system_time` fields of `pg_stat_kcache`. Table F.41 lists columns of this report table.

**Table F.41. Top SQL by system and user time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of <code>queryid</code> is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td><code>planid</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement</td>
<td>Derived from <code>dbid</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan User (s)</td>
<td>User CPU time elapsed during planning, in seconds</td>
<td><code>plan_user_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exec User (s)</td>
<td>User CPU time elapsed during execution, in seconds</td>
<td><code>exec_user_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of <code>plan_user_time</code> + <code>exec_user_time</code> in the total user CPU time for all statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan System (s)</td>
<td>System CPU time elapsed during planning, in seconds</td>
<td><code>plan_system_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exec System (s)</td>
<td>System CPU time elapsed during execution, in seconds</td>
<td><code>exec_system_time</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of <code>plan_system_time</code> + <code>exec_system_time</code> in the total system CPU time for all statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top SQL by reads/writes done by filesystem layer” shows top statements by the sum of `reads` and `writes` fields of `pg_stat_kcache`. Table F.42 lists columns of this report table.

**Table F.42. Top SQL by reads/writes done by filesystem layer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of <code>queryid</code> is in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the tree of the statement plan</td>
<td><code>planid</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement</td>
<td>Derived from <code>dbid</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan Read Bytes</td>
<td>Bytes read during planning</td>
<td><code>plan_reads</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exec Read Bytes</td>
<td>Bytes read during execution</td>
<td><code>exec_reads</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Bytes %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of <code>plan_reads</code> + <code>exec_reads</code> in the total number of bytes read by the filesystem layer for all statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan Writes</td>
<td>Bytes written during planning</td>
<td><code>planWrites</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2403
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exec Writes</td>
<td>Bytes written during execution</td>
<td>exec_writes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of <code>plan_writes + exec_writes</code> in the total number of bytes written by the filesystem layer for all statements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.37.10.4. SQL query wait statistics

If the `pgpro_stats` extension was available during the report interval, this section of the report will contain a table that is split into sections, each showing top statements by overall wait time or by wait time for a certain wait event type. Table sections related to specific wait events follow in the descending order of the total wait time in wait events of this type. Table F.43 lists columns of this report table. Times are provided in seconds.

**Table F.43. SQL query wait statistics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Query ID</td>
<td>Query identifier, as a hash of database ID, user ID and query text. Hex representation of <code>queryid</code> in square brackets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan ID</td>
<td>Hash of the statement plan</td>
<td>planid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
<td>Database name for the statement</td>
<td>Derived from dbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waited</td>
<td>Total wait time for all wait events of this statement plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of the total wait time of this statement plan in all the wait time in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Waits of this statement plan by wait types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.37.10.5. Complete list of SQL texts

The "Complete list of SQL texts" section of the report contains a table that provides query and plan texts for all statements mentioned in the report. Use an appropriate Query ID/Plan ID link in any statistics table to see the corresponding query/plan text. Table F.44 lists columns of this report table.

**Table F.44. Complete list of SQL texts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Query or plan identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Query/Plan Text</td>
<td>Text of the query or statement plan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.37.10.6. Schema object statistics

Tables in this section of the report show top database objects by statistics from the Postgres Pro's Statistics Collector views.

The report table “Top tables by estimated sequentially scanned volume” shows top tables by estimated volume read by sequential scans. This can help you find database tables that possibly lack some index. When there are no relation sizes collected with `pg_relation_size()`, relation-size estimates are based on the `pg_class.relpages` field. Since such values are less accurate, they are shown in square brackets. The data is based on the `pg_stat_all_tables` view. Table F.45 lists columns of this report table.
### Additional Supplied Modules

#### Table F.45. Top tables by estimated sequentially scanned volume

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the table is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~SeqBytes</td>
<td>Estimated volume read by sequential scans</td>
<td>Sum of (pg_relation_size() * seq_scan )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SeqScan</td>
<td>Number of sequential scans performed on the table</td>
<td>seq_scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IxScan</td>
<td>Number of index scans initiated on the table</td>
<td>idx_scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IxFet</td>
<td>Number of live rows fetched by index scans</td>
<td>idx_tup_fetch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>Number of rows inserted</td>
<td>n_tup_ins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd</td>
<td>Number of rows updated</td>
<td>n_tup_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted</td>
<td>n_tup_del</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd(HOT)</td>
<td>Number of rows HOT updated</td>
<td>n_tup_hot_upd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the report table “Top tables by blocks fetched”, blocks fetched include blocks being processed from disk (read) and from shared buffers (hit). This report table shows top database tables by the sum of blocks fetched for the table’s heap, indexes, TOAST table (if any) and TOAST table index (if any). This can help you focus on tables with excessive processing of blocks. The data is based on the `pg_statio_all_tables` view. **Table F.46** lists columns of this report table.

#### Table F.46. Top tables by blocks fetched

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the table is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heap Blks</td>
<td>Number of blocks fetched for the table's heap</td>
<td>heap_blks_read + heap_blks_hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heap Blks %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks fetched for the table's heap in all blocks fetched in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ix Blks</td>
<td>Number of blocks fetched for table's indexes</td>
<td>idx_blks_read + idx_blks_hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ix Blks %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks fetched for table's indexes in all blocks fetched in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOAST Blks</td>
<td>Number of blocks fetched for the table's TOAST table</td>
<td>toast_blks_read + toast_blks_hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOAST Blks %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks fetched for the table's TOAST table in all blocks fetched in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The report table “Top tables by blocks read” shows top database tables by the number of blocks read for the table’s heap, indexes, TOAST table (if any) and TOAST table index (if any). This can help you focus on tables with excessive block readings. The data is based on the `pg_statio_all_tables` view. Table F.47 lists columns of this report table.

### Table F.47. Top tables by blocks read

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TOAST-Ix Blks</td>
<td>Number of blocks fetched for the table's TOAST index</td>
<td>tidx_blks_read + tidx_blks_hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOAST-Ix Blks %Total</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks fetched for the table's TOAST index in all blocks fetched in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top DML tables” shows top tables by the number of DML-affected rows, i.e., by the sum of `n_tup_ins`, `n_tup_upd` and `n_tup_del` (including TOAST tables). The data is based on the `pg_stat_all_tables` view. Table F.48 lists columns of this report table.
### Table F.48. Top DML tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the table is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>Number of rows inserted</td>
<td>n_tup_ins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd</td>
<td>Number of rows updated, including HOT</td>
<td>n_tup_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted</td>
<td>n_tup_del</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd (HOT)</td>
<td>Number of rows HOT updated</td>
<td>n_tup_hot_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SeqScan</td>
<td>Number of sequential scans performed on the table</td>
<td>seq_scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SeqFet</td>
<td>Number of live rows fetched by sequential scans</td>
<td>seq_tup_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IxScan</td>
<td>Number of index scans initiated on this table</td>
<td>idx_scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IxFet</td>
<td>Number of live rows fetched by index scans</td>
<td>idx_tup_fetch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top tables by updated/deleted tuples” shows top tables by tuples modified by UPDATE/DELETE operations, i.e., by the sum of `n_tup_upd` and `n_tup_del` (including TOAST tables). The data is based on the `pg_stat_all_tables` view. Table F.49 lists columns of this report table.

### Table F.49. Top tables by updated/deleted tuples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the table is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd</td>
<td>Number of rows updated, including HOT</td>
<td>n_tup_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd (HOT)</td>
<td>Number of rows HOT updated</td>
<td>n_tup_hot_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted</td>
<td>n_tup_del</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacuum</td>
<td>Number of times this table has been manually vacuumed (not counting VACUUM FULL)</td>
<td>vacuum_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoVacuum</td>
<td>Number of times this table has been vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
<td>autovacuum_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analyze</td>
<td>Number of times this table was manually analyzed</td>
<td>analyze_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoAnalyze</td>
<td>Number of times this table was analyzed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
<td>autoanalyze_count</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The report table “Top growing tables” shows top tables by growth. The data is based on the `pg_stat_all_tables` view. When there are no relation sizes collected with `pg_relation_size()`, relation-size estimates are based on the `pg_class.relpages` field. Since such values are less accurate, they are shown in square brackets. Table F.50 lists columns of this report table.

**Table F.50. Top growing tables**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the table is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Table size at the time of the last sample in the report interval</td>
<td><code>pg_table_size() - pg_relation_size(toast)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth</td>
<td>Table growth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>Number of rows inserted</td>
<td><code>n_tup_ins</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd</td>
<td>Number of rows updated, including HOT</td>
<td><code>n_tup_upd</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted</td>
<td><code>n_tup_del</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd(HOT)</td>
<td>Number of rows HOT updated</td>
<td><code>n_tup_hot_upd</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the report table “Top indexes by blocks fetched”, blocks fetched include index blocks processed from disk (read) and from shared buffers (hit). The data is based on the `pg_statio_all_indexes` view. Table F.51 lists columns of this report table.

**Table F.51. Top indexes by blocks fetched**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the index is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the underlying table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Underlying table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Index name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scans</td>
<td>Number of index scans initiated on this index</td>
<td><code>idx_scan</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blks</td>
<td>Number of blocks fetched for this index</td>
<td><code>idx_blks_read + idx_blks_hit</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of blocks fetched for this index in all blocks fetched in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top indexes by blocks read” is also based on the `pg_statio_all_indexes` and `pg_stat_all_indexes` views. Table F.52 lists columns of this report table.

**Table F.52. Top indexes by blocks read**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the index is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the underlying table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Underlying table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Index name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scans</td>
<td>Number of index scans initiated on this index</td>
<td>idx_scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blk Reads</td>
<td>Number of disk blocks read from this index</td>
<td>idx_blks_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Total</td>
<td>Percentage of disk blocks read from this index in all disk blocks read in the cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits(%)</td>
<td>Percentage of index blocks got from buffers in all index blocks got for this index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top growing indexes” shows top indexes by growth. The table uses data from the `pg_stat_all_tables` and `pg_stat_all_indexes` views. When there are no relation sizes collected with `pg_relation_size()`, relation-size estimates are based on the `pg_class.relpages` field. Since such values are less accurate, they are shown in square brackets. Table F.53 lists columns of this report table.

### Table F.53. Top growing indexes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the index is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the underlying table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Underlying table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Index name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index Size</td>
<td>Index size at the time of the last sample in the report interval</td>
<td>pg_relation_size()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index Growth</td>
<td>Index growth during the report interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Ins</td>
<td>Number of rows inserted into the underlying table</td>
<td>n_tup_ins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Upd</td>
<td>Number of rows updated in the underlying table, without HOT</td>
<td>n_tup_upd - n_tup_hot_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Del</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted from the underlying table</td>
<td>n_tup_del</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Unused indexes” shows top non-scanned indexes (during the report interval) by DML operations on underlying tables that caused index support. Constraint indexes are not counted. The table uses data from the `pg_stat_all_tables` view. Table F.54 lists columns of this report table.

### Table F.54. Unused indexes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Field/Calculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the index is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the underlying table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Underlying table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Index name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index Size</td>
<td>Index size at the time of the last sample in the report interval</td>
<td>pg_relation_size()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index Growth</td>
<td>Index growth during the report interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Ins</td>
<td>Number of rows inserted into the underlying table</td>
<td>n_tup_ins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Upd</td>
<td>Number of rows updated in the underlying table, without HOT</td>
<td>n_tup_upd - n_tup_hot_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Del</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted from the underlying table</td>
<td>n_tup_del</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F.37.10.7. User function statistics**

Tables in this section of the report show top functions in the cluster by statistics from the `pg_stat_user_functions` view. Times in the tables are provided in seconds.

The report table “Top functions by total time” shows top functions by the total time elapsed. The report table “Top functions by executions” shows top functions by the number of executions. The report table “Top trigger functions by total time” shows top trigger functions by the total time elapsed. Table F.55 lists columns of these report tables.

**Table F.55. User function statistics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Function name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executions</td>
<td>Number of times this function has been called</td>
<td>calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Time (s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in this function and all other functions called by it</td>
<td>total_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self Time (s)</td>
<td>Total time spent in this function itself, not including other functions called by it</td>
<td>self_time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean Time (s)</td>
<td>Mean time of a single function execution</td>
<td>total_time / calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean self Time (s)</td>
<td>Mean self time of a single function execution</td>
<td>self_time / calls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F.37.10.8. Vacuum-related statistics**

The report table “Top tables by vacuum operations” shows top tables by the number of vacuum operations performed (`vacuum_count + autovacuum_count`). The data is based on the `pg_stat_all_tables` view. Table F.56 lists columns of this report table.
Additional Supplied Modules

Table F.56. Top tables by vacuum operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the table is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacuum count</td>
<td>Number of times this table has been manually vacuumed (not counting VACUUM FULL)</td>
<td>vacuum_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autovacuum count</td>
<td>Number of times this table has been vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
<td>autovacuum_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>Number of rows inserted</td>
<td>n_tup_ins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd</td>
<td>Number of rows updated, including HOT</td>
<td>n_tup_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted</td>
<td>n_tup_del</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd(HOT)</td>
<td>Number of rows HOT updated</td>
<td>n_tup_hot_upd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top tables by analyze operations” shows top tables by the number of analyze operations performed (analyze_count + autoanalyze_count). The data is based on the pg_stat_all_tables view. Table F.57 lists columns of this report table.

Table F.57. Top tables by analyze operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the table is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analyze count</td>
<td>Number of times this table has been manually analyzed</td>
<td>analyze_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoanalyze count</td>
<td>Number of times this table has been analyzed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
<td>autoanalyze_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>Number of rows inserted</td>
<td>n_tup_ins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd</td>
<td>Number of rows updated, including HOT</td>
<td>n_tup_upd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del</td>
<td>Number of rows deleted</td>
<td>n_tup_del</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upd(HOT)</td>
<td>Number of rows HOT updated</td>
<td>n_tup_hot_upd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top indexes by estimated vacuum load” shows top indexes by estimated implicit vacuum load. This load is calculated as the number of vacuum operations performed on the underlying table multiplied by the index size. The data is based on the pg_stat_all_indexes view. When there are no relation sizes collected with pg_relation_size(), relation-size estimates are based on the pg_class.relpages field. Since such values are less accurate, they are shown in square brackets. Table F.58 lists columns of this report table.
Table F.58. Top indexes by estimated vacuum load

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablespace</td>
<td>Name of the tablespace where the index is located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the underlying table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Underlying table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Index name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~Vacuum bytes</td>
<td>Vacuum load estimation</td>
<td>(vacuum_count + autovacuum_count) * index_size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacuum count</td>
<td>Number of times this table has been manually vacuumed (not counting VACUUM FULL)</td>
<td>vacuum_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autovacuum count</td>
<td>Number of times this table has been vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
<td>autovacuum_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX size</td>
<td>Average index size during the report interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relsize</td>
<td>Average relation size during the report interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top tables by dead tuples ratio” shows top tables larger than 5 MB by the ratio of dead tuples. Statistics are valid for the last sample in the report interval. The data is based on the pg_stat_all_tables view. When there are no relation sizes collected with pg_relation_size(), relation-size estimates are based on the pg_class.relpages field. Since such values are less accurate, they are shown in square brackets. Table F.59 lists columns of this report table.

Table F.59. Top tables by dead tuples ratio

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live</td>
<td>Estimated number of live rows</td>
<td>n_live_tup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead</td>
<td>Estimated number of dead rows</td>
<td>n_dead_tup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Dead</td>
<td>Percentage of dead rows in all table rows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last AV</td>
<td>Last time at which this table was vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
<td>last_autovacuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Table size</td>
<td>pg_table_size() - pg_relation_size(toast)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report table “Top tables by modified tuples ratio” shows top tables larger than 5 MB by the ratio of modified tuples. Statistics are valid for the last sample in the report interval. The data is based on the pg_stat_all_tables view. When there are no relation sizes collected with pg_relation_size(), relation-size estimates are based on the pg_class.relpages field. Since such values are less accurate, they are shown in square brackets. Table F.60 lists columns of this report table.
Table F.60. Top tables by modified tuples ratio

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field/Calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Database name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schema</td>
<td>Schema name for the table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live</td>
<td>Estimated number of live rows</td>
<td>n_live_tup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead</td>
<td>Estimated number of dead rows</td>
<td>n_dead_tup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mod</td>
<td>Estimated number of rows modified since this table was last analyzed</td>
<td>n_mod_since_analyze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%Mod</td>
<td>Percentage of modified rows in all table rows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last AA</td>
<td>Last time at which this table was analyzed by the autovacuum daemon</td>
<td>last_autoanalyze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Table size</td>
<td>pg_table_size() - pg_relation_size(toast)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.37.10.9. Cluster settings during the report interval

This section of the report contains a table with Postgres Pro GUC parameters, values of functions version(), pg_postmaster_start_time(), pg_conf_load_time() and the system_identifier field of the pg_control_system() function during the report interval. The data in the table is grouped under Defined settings and Default settings. Table F.61 lists columns of this report table.

Table F.61. Cluster settings during the report interval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Name of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reset_val</td>
<td>reset_val field of the pg_settings view. Settings changed during the report interval are shown in bold font.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Unit of the setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Configuration file where this setting is defined, semicolon, line number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>Timestamp of the sample where this value was first observed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.37.11. pgpro_pwr Diagnostic Tools

pgpro_pwr provides self-diagnostic tools.

F.37.11.1. Collecting Detailed Timing Statistics for Sampling Procedures

pgpro_pwr collects detailed timing statistics of taking samples when the pgpro_pwr.track_sample_timings parameter is on. You can get the results from the v_sample_timings view. Table F.62 lists columns of this view.

Table F.62. v_sample_timings View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>server_name</td>
<td>Name of the server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sample_id</td>
<td>Sample identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sample_time</td>
<td>Time when the sample was taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sampling_event</td>
<td>Sampling stage. See Table F.63 for descriptions of sampling stages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time_spent</td>
<td>Time spent in the event</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table F.63. sampling_event Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>total</td>
<td>Taking the sample (all stages)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connect</td>
<td>Making dblink connection to the server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get server environment</td>
<td>Getting server GUC parameters, available extensions, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect database stats</td>
<td>Querying the <code>pg_stat_database</code> view for statistics on databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate database stats</td>
<td>Calculating differential statistics on databases since the previous sample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect tablespace stats</td>
<td>Querying the <code>pg_tablespace</code> view for statistics on tablespaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect statement stats</td>
<td>Collecting statistics on statements using the <code>pgpro_stats</code> and <code>pg_stat_kcache</code> extensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query pg_stat_bgwriter</td>
<td>Collecting cluster statistics using the <code>pg_stat_bgwriter</code> view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query pg_stat_archiver</td>
<td>Collecting cluster statistics using the <code>pg_stat_archiver</code> view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect object stats</td>
<td>Collecting statistics on database objects. Includes events from Table F.64.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maintain repository</td>
<td>Executing support routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate tablespace stats</td>
<td>Calculating differential statistics on tablespaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate object stats</td>
<td>Calculating differential statistics on database objects. Includes events from Table F.65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate cluster stats</td>
<td>Calculating cluster differential statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate archiver stats</td>
<td>Calculating archiver differential statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delete obsolete samples</td>
<td>Deleting obsolete baselines and samples</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table F.64. Events of Collecting Statistics on Database Objects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>db:dbname</code> collect tables stats</td>
<td>Collecting statistics on tables for the <code>dbname</code> database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db:dbname</code> collect indexes stats</td>
<td>Collecting statistics on indexes for the <code>dbname</code> database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db:dbname</code> collect functions stats</td>
<td>Collecting statistics on functions for the <code>dbname</code> database</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table F.65. Events of Calculating Differences of Statistics on Database Objects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calculate tables stats</td>
<td>Calculating differential statistics on tables of all databases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calculate indexes stats</td>
<td>Calculating differential statistics on indexes of all databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate functions stats</td>
<td>Calculating differential statistics on functions of all databases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### F.37.12. Important Notes

When using the pgpro_pwr extension, be aware of the following:

- Postgres Pro collects execution statistics after the execution is complete. If a single execution of a statement lasts for several samples, it will only affect statistics of the last sample (in which the execution completed). Besides, statistics on statements that are still running are unavailable. Maintenance processes, such as vacuum and checkpoint, will update the statistics only on completion.
- Resetting any Postgres Pro statistics may affect the accuracy of the next sample.
- Exclusive locks on relations conflict with calculation of the relation size. If the \( \text{take\_sample()} \) function is unable to acquire a lock for a short period of time (3 seconds), it will fail and no sample will be generated.

### F.38. pg_prewarm

The pg_prewarm module provides a convenient way to load relation data into either the operating system buffer cache or the Postgres Pro buffer cache. Prewarming can be performed manually using the pg_prewarm function, or can be performed automatically by including pg_prewarm in shared preload libraries. In the latter case, the system will run a background worker which periodically records the contents of shared buffers in a file called autoprewarm.blocks and will, using 2 background workers, reload those same blocks after a restart.

#### F.38.1. Functions

```sql
pg_prewarm(regclass, mode text default 'buffer', fork text default 'main',
            first_block int8 default null,
            last_block int8 default null) RETURNS int8
```

The first argument is the relation to be prewarmed. The second argument is the prewarming method to be used, as further discussed below; the third is the relation fork to be prewarmed, usually main. The fourth argument is the first block number to prewarm (NULL is accepted as a synonym for zero). The fifth argument is the last block number to prewarm (NULL means prewarm through the last block in the relation). The return value is the number of blocks prewarmed.

There are three available prewarming methods. \( \text{prefetch} \) issues asynchronous prefetch requests to the operating system, if this is supported, or throws an error otherwise. \( \text{read} \) reads the requested range of blocks; unlike \( \text{prefetch} \), this is synchronous and supported on all platforms and builds, but may be slower. \( \text{buffer} \) reads the requested range of blocks into the database buffer cache.

Note that with any of these methods, attempting to prewarm more blocks than can be cached — by the OS when using \( \text{prefetch} \) or \( \text{read} \), or by Postgres Pro when using \( \text{buffer} \) — will likely result in lower-numbered blocks being evicted as higher numbered blocks are read in. Prewarmed data also enjoys no special protection from cache evictions, so it is possible that other system activity may evict the newly prewarmed blocks shortly after they are read; conversely, prewarming may also evict other data from cache. For these reasons, prewarming is typically most useful at startup, when caches are largely empty.

```sql
autoprewarm_start_worker() RETURNS void
autoprewarm_dump_now() RETURNS int8
```

Launch the main autoprewarm worker. This will normally happen automatically, but is useful if automatic prewarm was not configured at server startup time and you wish to start up the worker at a later time.
Additional Supplied Modules

Update autoprewarm.blocks immediately. This may be useful if the autoprewarm worker is not running but you anticipate running it after the next restart. The return value is the number of records written to autoprewarm.blocks.

F.38.2. Configuration Parameters

**pg_prewarm.autoprewarm (boolean)**
Controls whether the server should run the autoprewarm worker. This is on by default. This parameter can only be set at server start.

**pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval (int)**
This is the interval between updates to autoprewarm.blocks. The default is 300 seconds. If set to 0, the file will not be dumped at regular intervals, but only when the server is shut down.

F.38.3. Author

Robert Haas <rhaas@postgresql.org>

F.39. pgpro_stats

The pgpro_stats extension provides a means for tracking planning and execution statistics of all SQL statements executed by a server. It is based on the pg_stat_statements module and provides the following additional functionality:

- Storing query plans in addition to query statements.
- Configuring sample rate for statistics collection to reduce overhead.
- Calculating wait event statistics for executed queries.
- Calculating resource usage statistics of statement planning and execution.
- Calculating cache invalidation statistics.

F.39.1. Limitations

- pgpro_stats can sometimes fail to match identical parameters in the query statement and the corresponding query plan.
- Some SPI queries are not included into statistics.
- pgpro_stats may not work correctly with third-party extensions that use parser, planner, or executor hooks to modify parse and plan trees and execution of the queries. In order to dump the final versions of the queries and plans, pgpro_stats should be the last on the list of shared_preload_libraries, but some existing extensions, such as pg_pathman, will not work at all unless they are the last on this list.
- pgpro_stats may not work correctly with third-party extensions that produce CustomScan and ForeignScan nodes.

F.39.2. Installation and Setup

The pgpro_stats extension is included into Postgres Pro Standard, but has to be installed separately. Once you have pgpro_stats installed, complete the following steps to enable pgpro_stats:

1. Add pgpro_stats to the shared_preload_libraries parameter in the postgresql.conf file:

   ```
   shared_preload_libraries = 'pgpro_stats'
   ```

2. Restart the Postgres Pro Standard instance for the changes to take effect.

   Once the server is reloaded, pgpro_stats starts tracking statistics across all databases of the cluster. If required, you can change the scope of statistics collection or disable it altogether using pgpro_stats configuration parameters.

3. To access the collected statistics, you have to create pgpro_stats extension:
CREATE EXTENSION pgpro_stats;

F.39.3. Usage

- Collecting Statistics on Query Statements and Plans
- Monitoring Custom Metrics

F.39.3.1. Collecting Statistics on Query Statements and Plans

Once installed, the `pgpro_stats` extension starts collecting statistics on the executed statements. The collected data is similar to the one provided by `pg_stat_statements`, but also includes information on query plans and wait events for each query type. The statistics is saved into an in-memory ring buffer and is accessible through the `pgpro_stats_statements` view.

By default, `pgpro_stats` collects statistics on all the executed statements that satisfy the `pgpro_stats.track` and `pgpro_stats.track_utility` settings. If performance is a concern, you can set a sample rate for queries using the `pgpro_stats.query_sample_rate` parameter, and `pgpro_stats` will randomly select queries for statistics calculation at the specified rate.

To collect statistics on wait events, `pgpro_stats` uses time-based sampling. Wait events are sampled at the time interval specified by the `pgpro_stats.profile_period` parameter, which is set to 10ms by default. If the sampling shows that the process is waiting, the `pgpro_stats.profile_period` value is added to the wait event duration. Thus, time estimation for each wait event remains valid even if the `pgpro_stats.profile_period` parameter value has changed. If you are not interested in wait event statistics, you can disable wait event sampling by setting the `pgpro_stats.enable_profile` parameter to `false`.

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```

As an example, let's create a table with some random data and build an index on this table:

```
CREATE TABLE test AS (SELECT i, random() x FROM generate_series(1,1000000) i);
CREATE INDEX test_x_idx ON test (x);
```

Now run the following query several times using different values for `:x_min` and `:x_max`:

```
SELECT * from test where x >= :x_min and x <= :x_max;
```

The collected statistics should appear in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view:

```
SELECT queryid, query, planid, plan, wait_stats FROM pgpro_stats_statements WHERE query LIKE 'select * from test where%';
```
Additional Supplied Modules

F.39.3.2. Monitoring Custom Metrics

With pgpro_stats, you can define custom metrics to be monitored. The collected data will be saved into an in-memory ring buffer and then sent to a monitoring system. Unlike direct polling of a database by a monitoring system that can lose some data if the connection is interrupted, this approach allows to get all the collected data regardless of connection issues, as long as this data is still available in the ring buffer.

To set up a custom metric to collect, do the following:

1. For each metric, define all configuration parameters listed in Section F.39.7.2. You must specify a unique numeric identifier of each metric in the parameter names.

   For example, to monitor index bloating each 60 seconds, you can define a new metric by setting metrics-related parameters as follows:

   ```
   pgpro_stats.metric_1_name = index_bloat
   pgpro_stats.metric_1_query = 'select iname, ibloat, ipages from bloat'
   pgpro_stats.metric_1_db = 'postgres'
   pgpro_stats.metric_1_user = postgres
   pgpro_stats.metric_1_period = '60s'
   ```

2. Restart the server.

   pgpro_stats starts collecting statistics on executed statements and saves it into the ring buffer, and the collected data appears in the pgpro_stats_metrics view:

   ```
   SELECT * FROM pgpro_stats_metrics;
   ```

   Once the new metric is added, its parameters can be changed without a server restart by simply reloading the postgresql.conf configuration file.

3. If required, set up data export to a monitoring system of your choice.
F.39.4. Views

F.39.4.1. The `pgpro_stats_statements` View

The statistics gathered by the module are made available via a view named `pgpro_stats_statements`. This view contains one row for each distinct database ID, user ID and query ID (up to the maximum number of distinct statements that the module can track). The columns of the view are shown in Table F.66.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>References</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>userid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td><code>pg_authid .oid</code></td>
<td>OID of user who executed the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dbid</td>
<td>oid</td>
<td><code>pg_database .oid</code></td>
<td>OID of database in which the statement was executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queryid</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td></td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the statement’s parse tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>planid</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td></td>
<td>Internal hash code, computed from the statement’s plan tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>text</td>
<td></td>
<td>Text of a representative statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>text</td>
<td></td>
<td>The text of the query plan, in the format defined by the <code>pgpro_stats.plan_format</code> configuration parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plans</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Number of times the statement was planned (if <code>pgpro_stats.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_plan_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if <code>pgpro_stats.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min_plan_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if <code>pgpro_stats.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_plan_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if <code>pgpro_stats.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>References</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean_plan_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mean time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if pgpro_stats.track_planning is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stddev_plan_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Population standard deviation of time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if pgpro_stats.track_planning is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan_rusage</td>
<td>pgpro_stats_rusage</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resource usage statistics of the statement planning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calls</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Number of times the statement was executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_exec_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min_exec_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_exec_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean_exec_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mean time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stddev_exec_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Population standard deviation of time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exec_rusage</td>
<td>pgpro_stats_rusage</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resource usage statistics of the statement execution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rows</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of rows retrieved or affected by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_hit</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of shared block cache hits by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_read</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks read by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_dirtied</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks dirtied by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>References</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_written</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks written by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_hit</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of local block cache hits by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_read</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of local blocks read by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_dirtied</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of local blocks dirtied by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_written</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of local blocks written by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temp_blks_read</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks read by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temp_blks_written</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks written by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blk_read_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total time the statement spent reading blocks, in milliseconds (if track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blk_write_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total time the statement spent writing blocks, in milliseconds (if track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_records</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of WAL records generated by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_fpi</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of WAL full page images generated by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_bytes</td>
<td>numeric</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total amount of WAL bytes generated by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait_stats</td>
<td>jsonb</td>
<td></td>
<td>A jsonb object containing statistics on wait events, for each execution of the query that uses the corresponding plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inval_msgs</td>
<td>pgpro_stats_inval_msgs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Number of cache invalidation messages by type generated by the statement (if this is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
F.39.4.2. The `pgpro_stats_totals` View

The aggregate statistics gathered by the module are made available via a view named `pgpro_stats_totals`. This view contains one row for each distinct object (up to the maximum number of distinct objects that the module can track). The columns of the view are shown in Table F.67.

Table F.67. `pgpro_stats_totals` Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object_type</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Type of the object for which aggregated statistics are collected: &quot;cluster&quot;, &quot;database&quot;, &quot;user&quot;, &quot;client_addr&quot;, &quot;application&quot;, &quot;backend&quot;, &quot;session&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_id</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>ID of the object: oid for databases and users, pid for backends, sid for sessions, NULL for others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Textual name of the object or NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queries_planned</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Number of queries planned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_plan_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Total time spent in the planning of statements, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_plan_rusage</td>
<td><code>pgpro_stats_rusage</code></td>
<td>Aggregate resource usage statistics of the statement planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queries_executed</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Number of queries executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_exec_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Total time spent in the execution of statements, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_exec_rusage</td>
<td><code>pgpro_stats_rusage</code></td>
<td>Aggregate resource usage statistics of the statement execution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rows</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of rows retrieved or affected by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_hit</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of shared block cache hits by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_read</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks read by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_dirtied</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks dirtied by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_written</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks written by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_hit</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of local block cache hits by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_read</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks read by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_dirtied</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks dirtied by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_written</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks written by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temp_blks_read</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks read by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temp_blks_written</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks written by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blk_read_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Total time the statements spent reading blocks, in milliseconds (if track io timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blk_write_time</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Total time the statements spent writing blocks, in milliseconds (if track io timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_records</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of WAL records generated by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_fpi</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Total number of WAL full page images generated by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_bytes</td>
<td>numeric</td>
<td>Total amount of WAL bytes generated by the statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait_stats</td>
<td>jsonb</td>
<td>A jsonb object containing statistics on wait events for each execution of the queries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inval_msgs</td>
<td>pgpro_stats_inval_msgs</td>
<td>Number of cache invalidation messages by type generated by the statements (if this is supported by the server, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cache_resets</td>
<td>int4</td>
<td>Number of shared cache resets (only for cluster, databases and backends)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### F.39.4.3. The pgpro_stats_inval_status View

The `pgpro_stats_inval_status` view shows one row with the current status of the global cache invalidation queue. The columns of the view are shown in Table F.68.

#### Table F.68. pgpro_stats_inval_status Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>num_inval_messages</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Number of invalidation messages in the queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num_inval_queue_cleanups</td>
<td>int8</td>
<td>Number of invalidation queue cleanups done to prevent its overflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num_inval_queue_resets</td>
<td>int4</td>
<td>Number of cache resets for backends that delay the queue cleanup</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In a working system, `num_inval_messages` usually approximately equals 4000, which means that the queue is pretty full. Growing `num_inval_queue_cleanups` indicates an active generation of messages. Growth of `num_inval_queue_resets` is normally zero, and a non-zero growth indicates either a too fast generation of messages or delays in processing messages by backends. You can see reset counters for each backend in the `cache_resets` column of the `pgpro_stats_totals` view.

**F.39.4.4. The `pgpro_stats_metrics` View**

The metrics gathered by `pgpro_stats` are displayed in the `pgpro_stats_metrics` view. The table below describes the columns of the view.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>metric_number</td>
<td>int4</td>
<td>A unique ID of the collected metric assigned by user. This ID is included into parameter names that define the metric.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metric_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>The name of the metric defined by the <code>pgpro_stats.metric_name</code> parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>The name of the database for which a particular metric was collected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
<td>The time when the metric value got calculated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>jsonb</td>
<td>The result of the query used for metric measurement. It is serialized in <code>jsonb</code> as an array of objects received via <code>to_jsonb(resulting_row)</code>. If an error occurs, a single object is returned that contains <code>code</code>, <code>message</code>, <code>detail</code>, and <code>hint</code> fields.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F.39.5. Data Types**

**F.39.5.1. The `pgpro_stats_rusage` Type**

`pgpro_stats_rusage` is a record type that contains resource usage statistics of statement planning/execution. The fields of this type are shown in Table F.70.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reads</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of bytes read by the filesystem layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writes</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of bytes written by the filesystem layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_time</td>
<td>double precision</td>
<td>User CPU time used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>system_time</td>
<td>double precision</td>
<td>System CPU time used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minflts</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of page reclaims (soft page faults)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>majflts</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of page faults (hard page faults)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nswaps</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of swaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>msgsnds</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of IPC messages sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>msgrcvs</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of IPC messages received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nsignals</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of signals received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvcsws</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of voluntary context switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nivcsws</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of involuntary context switches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.39.5.2. The `pgpro_stats_inval_msgs` Type

`pgpro_stats_inval_msgs` is a record type containing counters for cache invalidation messages. The fields of the type are shown in Table F.71.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>total</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total number of invalidation messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catcache</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of catcache invalidation messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catalog</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of catalog invalidation messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relcache</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of selective relcache invalidation messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relcache_all</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of whole relcache invalidation messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smgr</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of storage manager invalidation messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relmap</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of relation map invalidation messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snapshot</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of snapshot invalidation messages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.39.6. Functions

`pgpro_stats_statements_reset` (userid Oid, dbid Oid, queryid bigint, planid bigint) returns void

`pgpro_stats_statements_reset` discards statistics gathered so far by `pgpro_stats` corresponding to the specified userid, dbid, queryid, and planid. If any of the parameters are not specified, the default value 0(invalid) is used for each of them and the statistics that match with other parameters will be reset. If no parameter is specified or all the specified parameters are 0(invalid), it will discard all statistics. By default, this function can only be executed by superusers. Access may be granted to others using `GRANT`.

`pgpro_stats_statements` (showtext boolean) returns setof record

The `pgpro_stats_statements` view is defined in terms of a function also named `pgpro_stats_statements`. Users can also call the `pgpro_stats_statements` function directly, and by specifying `showtext := false` make query text be omitted (that is, the `OUT` argument that corresponds to the view's `query` column will return nulls). This feature is intended to support external
tools that might wish to avoid the overhead of repeatedly retrieving query texts of indeterminate length. Such tools can instead cache the first query text observed for each entry themselves, since that is all `pgpro_stats` itself does, and then retrieve query texts only as needed. Since the server stores query texts in a file, this approach may reduce physical I/O for repeated examination of the `pgpro_stats_statements` data.

```sql
pgpro_stats_totals_reset(type text, id bigint) returns void
```

`pgpro_stats_totals_reset` discards statistics gathered so far by `pgpro_stats` corresponding to the specified object `type` and `id`. If no parameter is specified or the `type` parameter is set to 0, all statistics will be discarded. If `type` is set to a valid object type, then if `id` is specified, then statistics will be discarded only for the specified object, else, statistics will be discarded for all objects of the specified type. Otherwise, no statistics will be discarded. By default, this function can only be executed by superusers. Access may be granted to others using `GRANT`.

```sql
pgpro_stats_totals() returns setof record
```

The `pgpro_stats_totals` view is defined in terms of a function also named `pgpro_stats_totals`. Users can also call the `pgpro_stats_totals` function directly.

```sql
pgpro_stats_metrics(showtext boolean) returns setof record
```

Defines the `pgpro_stats_metrics` view, which is described in detail in Table F.69.

### F.39.7. Configuration Parameters

#### F.39.7.1. General Settings

```sql
pgpro_stats.max(integer)
```

`pgpro_stats.max` is the maximum number of statements tracked by the module (i.e., the maximum number of rows in the `pgpro_stats_statements` view). If more distinct statements than that are observed, information about the least-executed statements is discarded. The default value is 5000. This parameter can only be set at server start.

```sql
pgpro_stats.max_totals(integer)
```

`pgpro_stats.max_totals` is the maximum number of objects tracked by the module (i.e., the maximum number of rows in the `pgpro_stats_totals` view). If more distinct objects than that are observed, information about least-used objects is discarded. The default value is 1000. This parameter can only be set at server start.

```sql
pgpro_stats.track(enum)
```

`pgpro_stats.track` controls which statements are counted by the module. Specify `top` to track top-level statements (those issued directly by clients), `all` to also track nested statements (such as statements invoked within functions), or `none` to disable statement statistics collection. The default value is `top`. Only superusers can change this setting.

```sql
pgpro_stats.track_utility(boolean)
```

`pgpro_stats.track_utility` controls whether utility commands are tracked by the module. Utility commands are all those other than `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE`. The default value is `on`. Only superusers can change this setting.

```sql
pgpro_stats.track_planning(boolean)
```

`pgpro_stats.track_planning` controls whether planning operations and duration are tracked by the module. Enabling this parameter may incur a noticeable performance penalty, especially when statements with identical query structure are executed by many concurrent connections which compete to update a small number of `pg_stat_statements` entries. The default value is `off`. Only superusers can change this setting.
pgpro_stats.track_totals (boolean)

pgpro_stats.track_totals controls whether aggregate statistics for objects (cluster, users, databases etc.) are tracked by the module. The default value is on. Only superusers can change this setting.

pgpro_stats.track_cluster (boolean)

pgpro_stats.track_cluster controls whether aggregate statistics for the cluster are tracked by the module. The default value is on. Only superusers can change this setting.

pgpro_stats.track_databases (boolean)

pgpro_stats.track_databases controls whether aggregate statistics for the databases are tracked by the module. The default value is on. Only superusers can change this setting.

pgpro_stats.track_users (boolean)

pgpro_stats.track_users controls whether aggregate statistics for the users are tracked by the module. The default value is on. Only superusers can change this setting.

pgpro_stats.track_applications (boolean)

pgpro_stats.track_applications controls whether aggregate statistics for the applications (whose names are set by application_name) are tracked by the module. The default value is on. Only superusers can change this setting.

pgpro_stats.track_client_addr (boolean)

pgpro_stats.track_client_addr controls whether aggregate statistics for the client IP addresses are tracked by the module. The default value is on. Only superusers can change this setting.

pgpro_stats.track_backends (boolean)

pgpro_stats.track_backends controls whether aggregate statistics for the backends are tracked by the module. The default value is on. Only superusers can change this setting.

pgpro_stats.track_sessions (boolean)

pgpro_stats.track_sessions controls whether aggregate statistics for the sessions are tracked by the module. The default value is on. Only superusers can change this setting.

pgpro_stats.save (boolean)

pgpro_stats.save specifies whether to save statement statistics across server shutdowns. If it is off then statistics are neither saved at shutdown nor reloaded at server start. The default value is on. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

pgpro_stats.plan_format (text)

pgpro_stats.plan_format selects the EXPLAIN format for the query plan. Possible values are text, xml, json, and yaml. The default value is text. Changing this parameter requires a server restart.

pgpro_stats.enable_profile (boolean)

pgpro_stats.enable_profile enables sampling of wait events for separate statements. The default value is true. Changing this parameter requires a server restart.

pgpro_stats.query_sample_rate (float)

pgpro_stats.query_sample_rate specifies the fraction of queries that are randomly selected for statistics calculation. Possible values lie between 0.0 (no queries) and 1.0 (all queries). The default value is 1.0. Changing this parameter requires a server restart.

pgpro_stats.profile_period (integer)

pgpro_stats.profile_period specifies the period, in milliseconds, during which to sample wait events. The default value is 10. Only superusers can change this setting.
Additional Supplied Modules

pgpro_stats.metrics_buffer_size (integer)

pgpro_stats.metrics_buffer_size specifies the size of the ring buffer used for collecting statistical metrics. The default value is 16kB. Changing this parameter requires a server restart.

pgpro_stats.metrics_workers (integer)

pgpro_stats.metrics_workers specifies the number of workers used to collect statistical metrics. If this parameter is set to 2 or higher, one of the workers serves as the master worker distributing queries to other workers. If only one worker is available, it gets reloaded to connect to different databases. Setting this parameter to 0 disables metrics collection. The default value is 2. Changing this parameter requires a server restart.

F.39.7.2. Metrics Settings

The following parameters can be used to define a custom metric to collect. The \( N \) placeholder in the parameter name serves as a unique identifier of the metric to which this setting should apply; it must be set to a non-negative integer for each metric.

When you add these parameters for a new metric, you have to restart the server for the changes to take effect. Once the new metric is added, its parameters can be changed without a server restart by simply reloading the `postgresql.conf` configuration file.

pgpro_stats.metric_\( N \)_name (text)

The name of metric \( N \). This name will be displayed in the `metric_name` column of the `pgpro_stats_metrics` view.

pgpro_stats.metric_\( N \)_query (text)

The query statement that defines the metric to collect.

pgpro_stats.metric_\( N \)_period (integer)

The time interval at which to collect metric \( N \), in milliseconds. Default: 60000 ms

pgpro_stats.metric_\( N \)_db (text)

The list of databases for which to collect metric \( N \). Database names must be separated by commas. You can specify the \(*\) character to select all databases in the cluster except the template databases. If you need to analyze the template databases as well, you have to specify them explicitly.

pgpro_stats.metric_\( N \)_user (text)

The name of the user on behalf of which to collect metric \( N \). This user must have access to the database for which the metric is collected.

F.39.8. Authors

Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia

F.40. pg_query_state

The `pg_query_state` module provides facility to know the current state of query execution on working backend.

F.40.1. Overview

Each non-utility query statement (SELECT/INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE) after optimization/planning stage is translated into plan tree, which is kind of imperative representation of declarative SQL query. EXPLAIN ANALYZE request allows to demonstrate execution statistics gathered from each node of plan tree (full time of execution, number of rows emitted to upper nodes, etc). But this statistics is collected after execution of query. This module allows to show actual statistics of query running on external backend. At that, format of resulting output is almost identical to ordinal EXPLAIN ANALYZE. Thus users are able to track of query execution in progress. In fact, this module is able to explore external backend and determine its actual state. Particularly it's helpful when backend executes a heavy query or gets stuck.
F.40.2. Use cases

Using this module there can help in the following things:

- detect a long query (along with other monitoring tools);
- supervise query execution.

F.40.3. Installation

To install `pg_query_state` run in `psql`:

```
CREATE EXTENSION pg_query_state;
```

Then modify `shared_preload_libraries` parameter in `postgres.conf` as following:

```
shared_preload_libraries = 'pg_query_state'
```

It will require to restart the Postgres Pro instance.

F.40.4. Function `pg_query_state`

```
pg_query_state(integer  pid,
    verbose  boolean DEFAULT FALSE,
    costs    boolean DEFAULT FALSE,
    timing   boolean DEFAULT FALSE,
    buffers  boolean DEFAULT FALSE,
    triggers boolean DEFAULT FALSE,
    format   text    DEFAULT 'text')
returns TABLE (pid integer,
    frame_number integer,
    query_text text,
    plan text,
    leader_pid integer)
```

Extract current query state from backend with specified `pid`. Since parallel query can spawn multiple workers and function call causes nested subqueries so that state of execution may be viewed as stack of running queries, return value of `pg_query_state` has type `TABLE (pid integer, frame_number integer, query_text text, plan text, leader_pid integer)`. It represents tree structure consisting of leader process and its spawned workers identified by `pid`. Each worker refers to leader through `leader_pid` column. For leader process the value of this column is `null`. The state of each process is represented as stack of function calls. Each frame of that stack is specified as correspondence between `frame_number` starting from zero, `query_text` and `plan` with online statistics columns.

Thus, user can see the states of main query and queries generated from function calls for leader process and all workers spawned from it.

In process of execution some nodes of plan tree can take loops of full execution. Therefore statistics for each node consists of two parts: average statistics for previous loops just like in `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` output and statistics for current loop if node have not finished.

Optional arguments:

- `verbose` - use `EXPLAIN VERBOSE` for plan printing;
- `costs` - costs for each node;
- `timing` - print timing data for each node, if collecting of timing statistics is turned off on called side resulting output will contain WARNING message `timing statistics disabled`;
- `buffers` - print buffers usage, if collecting of buffers statistics is turned off on called side resulting output will contain WARNING message `buffers statistics disabled`;
- `triggers` - include triggers statistics in result plan trees;
- `format` - `EXPLAIN` format to be used for plans printing, possible values: `text`, `xml`, `json`, `yaml`. 
If callable backend is not executing any query the function prints INFO message about backend’s state taken from `pg_stat_activity` view if it exists there.

Calling role have to be superuser or member of the role whose backend is being called. Otherwise function prints ERROR message permission denied.

### F.40.5. Configuration settings

There are several user-accessible GUC variables designed to toggle the whole module and the collecting of specific statistic parameters while query is running:

- `pg_query_state.enable` - disable (or enable) `pg_query_state` completely, default value is `true`
- `pg_query_state.enable_timing` - collect timing data for each node, default value is `false`
- `pg_query_state.enable_buffers` - collect buffers usage, default value is `false`

These parameters are set on called side before running any queries whose states are attempted to extract. **WARNING:** if `pg_query_state.enable_timing` is turned off the calling side cannot get time statistics, similarly for `pg_query_state.enable_buffers` parameter.

### F.40.6. Examples

Set maximum number of parallel workers on `gather` node equals 2:

```sql
postgres=\# set max_parallel_workers_per_gather = 2;
```

Assume one backend with `pid = 49265` performs a simple query:

```sql
postgres=# select pg_backend_pid();
pg_backend_pid
------------------
    49265
(1 row)
```

```sql
postgres=# select count(*) from foo join bar on foo.c1=bar.c1;
```

Other backend can extract intermediate state of execution that query:

```sql
postgres=# \x
postgres=# select * from pg_query_state(49265);
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pid</th>
<th>49265</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>frame_number</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query_text</td>
<td>select count(*) from foo join bar on foo.c1=bar.c1;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>Finalize Aggregate (Current loop: actual rows=0, loop number=1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-&gt; Gather (Current loop: actual rows=0, loop number=1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Workers Planned: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Workers Launched: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-&gt; Partial Aggregate (Current loop: actual rows=0, loop number=1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number=1</td>
<td>-&gt; Nested Loop (Current loop: actual rows=12, loop number=1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Join Filter: (foo.c1 = bar.c1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rows Removed by Join Filter: 5673232</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
In example above working backend spawns two parallel workers with pids 49324 and 49323. Their `leader_pid` column’s values clarify that these workers belong to the main backend. Seq Scan node has statistics on passed loops (average number of rows delivered to Nested Loop and number of passed loops are shown) and statistics on current loop. Other nodes has statistics only for current loop as this loop is first (loop number = 1).

Assume first backend executes some function:

```sql
postgres=# select n_join_foo_bar();
```

Other backend can get the follow output:

```sql
postgres=# select * from pg_query_state(49265);
```
### Additional Supplied Modules

| frame_number | 0 |
| query_text   | select n_join_foo_bar(); |
| plan         | Result (Current loop: actual rows=0, loop number=1) |
| leader_pid   | (null) |

- \[ RECORD 2 \]+

| pid          | 49265 |
| frame_number | 1 |
| query_text   | SELECT (select count(*) from foo join bar on foo.c1=bar.c1) |
| plan         | Result (Current loop: actual rows=0, loop number=1) |

  + InitPlan 1 (returns $0) |

  + -> Aggregate (Current loop: actual rows=0, loop number=1) |

  + -> Nested Loop (Current loop: actual rows=51, loop number=1) |

  + Join Filter: (foo.c1 = bar.c1) |

  + Rows Removed by Join Filter: 51636304 |

  + -> Seq Scan on bar (Current loop: actual rows=52, loop number=1) |

  + -> Materialize (actual rows=1000000 loops=51) (Current loop: actual rows=636355, loop number=52) |

  + -> Seq Scan on foo (Current loop: actual rows=1000000, loop number=1) |

| leader_pid   | (null) |

First row corresponds to function call, second - to query which is in the body of that function.

We can get result plans in different format (e.g. json):

```
postgres=# select * from pg_query_state(pid := 49265, format := 'json');
-\[ RECORD 1 \]+

| pid          | 49265 |
| frame_number | 0 |
| query_text   | select * from n_join_foo_bar(); |
| plan         | { |
|             |   "Plan": { |
|             |     "Node Type": "Function Scan", |
|             |     "Parallel Aware": false, |
|             |     "Function Name": "n_join_foo_bar", |
|             |     "Alias": "n_join_foo_bar", |
|             |     "Current loop": { |
|             |       "Actual Loop Number": 1, |
|             |       "Actual Rows": 0 |
|             |   } |
|             | } |

leader_pid | (null) |

-\[ RECORD 2 \]+

| pid          | 49265 |
| frame_number | 1 |
| query_text   | SELECT (select count(*) from foo join bar on foo.c1=bar.c1) |
| plan         | { |
|             |   "Plan": { |
|             |     "Node Type": "Result", |
|             | } |
```
"Parallel Aware": false,
"Current loop": {
  "Actual Loop Number": 1,
  "Actual Rows": 0
},
"Plans": [
  {
    "Node Type": "Aggregate",
    "Strategy": "Plain",
    "Partial Mode": "Simple",
    "Parent Relationship": "InitPlan",
    "Subplan Name": "InitPlan 1 (returns $0)",
    "Parallel Aware": false,
    "Current loop": {
      "Actual Loop Number": 1,
      "Actual Rows": 0
    },
    "Plans": [
      {
        "Node Type": "Nested Loop",
        "Parent Relationship": "Outer",
        "Parallel Aware": false,
        "Join Type": "Inner",
        "Current loop": {
          "Actual Loop Number": 1,
          "Actual Rows": 610
        },
        "Join Filter": "(foo.c1 = bar.c1)",
        "Rows Removed by Join Filter": 610072944,
        "Plans": [
          {
            "Node Type": "Seq Scan",
            "Parent Relationship": "Outer",
            "Parallel Aware": false,
            "Relation Name": "bar",
            "Alias": "bar",
            "Current loop": {
              "Actual Loop Number": 1,
              "Actual Rows": 611
            }
          },
          {
            "Node Type": "Materialize",
            "Parent Relationship": "Inner",
            "Parallel Aware": false,
            "Actual Rows": 1000000,
            "Actual Loops": 610,
            "Current loop": {
              "Actual Loop Number": 611,
              "Actual Rows": 73554
            }
          },
          {
            "Node Type": "Seq Scan",
            "Parent Relationship": "Outer",
            "Parallel Aware": false,
            "Relation Name": "foo",
            "Alias": "foo",
            "Plans": []
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]
F.41. pgrowlocks

The pgrowlocks module provides a function to show row locking information for a specified table.

By default use is restricted to superusers, members of the pg_stat_scan_tables role, and users with SELECT permissions on the table.

F.41.1. Overview

pgrowlocks(text) returns setof record

The parameter is the name of a table. The result is a set of records, with one row for each locked row within the table. The output columns are shown in Table F.72.

Table F.72. pgrowlocks Output Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>locked_row</td>
<td>tid</td>
<td>Tuple ID (TID) of locked row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locker</td>
<td>xid</td>
<td>Transaction ID of locker, or multixact ID if multitransaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>True if locker is a multitransaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xids</td>
<td>xid[]</td>
<td>Transaction IDs of lockers (more than one if multitransaction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modes</td>
<td>text[]</td>
<td>Lock mode of lockers (more than one if multitransaction), an array of Key Share, Share, For No Key Update, No Key Update, For Update, Update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pids</td>
<td>integer[]</td>
<td>Process IDs of locking backends (more than one if multitransaction)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pgrowlocks takes AccessShareLock for the target table and reads each row one by one to collect the row locking information. This is not very speedy for a large table. Note that:

1. If an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock is taken on the table, pgrowlocks will be blocked.
2. pgrowlocks is not guaranteed to produce a self-consistent snapshot. It is possible that a new row lock is taken, or an old lock is freed, during its execution.

pgrowlocks does not show the contents of locked rows. If you want to take a look at the row contents at the same time, you could do something like this:
Additional Supplied Modules
SELECT * FROM accounts AS a, pgrowlocks('accounts') AS p
WHERE p.locked_row = a.ctid;
Be aware however that such a query will be very ineﬀicient.

F.41.2. Sample Output
=# SELECT * FROM pgrowlocks('t1');
locked_row | locker | multi | xids |
modes
| pids
------------+--------+-------+-------+----------------+-------(0,1)
|
609 | f
| {609} | {"For Share"} | {3161}
(0,2)
|
609 | f
| {609} | {"For Share"} | {3161}
(0,3)
|
607 | f
| {607} | {"For Update"} | {3107}
(0,4)
|
607 | f
| {607} | {"For Update"} | {3107}
(4 rows)

F.41.3. Author
Tatsuo Ishii

F.42. pg_stat_statements
The pg_stat_statements module provides a means for tracking planning and execution statistics of all
SQL statements executed by a server.
The module must be loaded by adding pg_stat_statements to shared_preload_libraries in
postgresql.conf, because it requires additional shared memory. This means that a server restart is
needed to add or remove the module. In addition, query identiﬁer calculation must be enabled in order
for the module to be active, which is done automatically if compute_query_id is set to auto or on, or any
third-party module that calculates query identiﬁers is loaded.
When pg_stat_statements is active, it tracks statistics across all databases of the server.
To access and manipulate these statistics, the module provides views pg_stat_statements
and pg_stat_statements_info, and the utility functions pg_stat_statements_reset and
pg_stat_statements. These are not available globally but can be enabled for a speciﬁc database with
CREATE EXTENSION pg_stat_statements.

F.42.1. The pg_stat_statements View
The statistics gathered by the module are made available via a view named pg_stat_statements. This
view contains one row for each distinct combination of database ID, user ID, query ID and whether it's a
top-level statement or not (up to the maximum number of distinct statements that the module can track).
The columns of the view are shown in Table F.73.
Table F.73. pg_stat_statements Columns

Column Type
Description
userid oid (references pg_authid .oid)
OID of user who executed the statement
dbid oid (references pg_database .oid)
OID of database in which the statement was executed
toplevel bool
True if the query was executed as a top-level statement (always true if pg_stat_
statements.track is set to top)
queryid bigint
Hash code to identify identical normalized queries.
query text
Text of a representative statement
2435


### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plans bigint</td>
<td>Number of times the statement was planned (if pg_stat_statements.track_planning is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_plan_time</td>
<td>Total time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if pg_stat_statements.track_planning is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min_plan_time</td>
<td>Minimum time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if pg_stat_statements.track_planning is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_plan_time</td>
<td>Maximum time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if pg_stat_statements.track_planning is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean_plan_time</td>
<td>Mean time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if pg_stat_statements.track_planning is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stddev_plan_time</td>
<td>Population standard deviation of time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if pg_stat_statements.track_planning is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calls bigint</td>
<td>Number of times the statement was executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_exec_time</td>
<td>Total time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min_exec_time</td>
<td>Minimum time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_exec_time</td>
<td>Maximum time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean_exec_time</td>
<td>Mean time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stddev_exec_time</td>
<td>Population standard deviation of time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rows bigint</td>
<td>Total number of rows retrieved or affected by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_hit</td>
<td>Total number of shared block cache hits by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_read</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks read by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_dirtied</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks dirtied by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_blks_written</td>
<td>Total number of shared blocks written by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_hit</td>
<td>Total number of local block cache hits by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_read</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks read by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_dirtied</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks dirtied by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_blks_written</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks written by the statement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>temp_blks_read</td>
<td>Total number of local blocks written by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temp_blks_written</td>
<td>Total number of temp blocks read by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blk_read_time</td>
<td>Total time the statement spent reading blocks, in milliseconds (if track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blk_write_time</td>
<td>Total time the statement spent writing blocks, in milliseconds (if track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_records</td>
<td>Total number of WAL records generated by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_fpi</td>
<td>Total number of WAL full page images generated by the statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wal_bytes</td>
<td>Total amount of WAL generated by the statement in bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For security reasons, only superusers and members of the `pg_read_all_stats` role are allowed to see the SQL text and `query_id` of queries executed by other users. Other users can see the statistics, however, if the view has been installed in their database.

Plannable queries (that is, `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`) are combined into a single `pg_stat_statements` entry whenever they have identical query structures according to an internal hash calculation. Typically, two queries will be considered the same for this purpose if they are semantically equivalent except for the values of literal constants appearing in the query. Utility commands (that is, all other commands) are compared strictly on the basis of their textual query strings, however.

**Note**

The following details about constant replacement and `query_id` only apply when `compute_query_id` is enabled. If you use an external module instead to compute `query_id`, you should refer to its documentation for details.

When a constant’s value has been ignored for purposes of matching the query to other queries, the constant is replaced by a parameter symbol, such as `$1`, in the `pg_stat_statements` display. The rest of the query text is that of the first query that had the particular `query_id` hash value associated with the `pg_stat_statements` entry.

In some cases, queries with visibly different texts might get merged into a single `pg_stat_statements` entry. Normally this will happen only for semantically equivalent queries, but there is a small chance of hash collisions causing unrelated queries to be merged into one entry. (This cannot happen for queries belonging to different users or databases, however.)

Since the `query_id` hash value is computed on the post-parse-analysis representation of the queries, the opposite is also possible: queries with identical texts might appear as separate entries, if they have different meanings as a result of factors such as different `search_path` settings.

Consumers of `pg_stat_statements` may wish to use `query_id` (perhaps in combination with `dbid` and `userid`) as a more stable and reliable identifier for each entry than its query text. However, it is important to understand that there are only limited guarantees around the stability of the `query_id` hash value.
Since the identifier is derived from the post-parse-analysis tree, its value is a function of, among other things, the internal object identifiers appearing in this representation. This has some counterintuitive implications. For example, `pg_stat_statements` will consider two apparently-identical queries to be distinct, if they reference a table that was dropped and recreated between the executions of the two queries. The hashing process is also sensitive to differences in machine architecture and other facets of the platform. Furthermore, it is not safe to assume that `queryid` will be stable across major versions of Postgres Pro.

As a rule of thumb, `queryid` values can be assumed to be stable and comparable only so long as the underlying server version and catalog metadata details stay exactly the same. Two servers participating in replication based on physical WAL replay can be expected to have identical `queryid` values for the same query. However, logical replication schemes do not promise to keep replicas identical in all relevant details, so `queryid` will not be a useful identifier for accumulating costs across a set of logical replicas. If in doubt, direct testing is recommended.

The parameter symbols used to replace constants in representative query texts start from the next number after the highest $n$ parameter in the original query text, or $1$ if there was none. It’s worth noting that in some cases there may be hidden parameter symbols that affect this numbering. For example, PL/pgSQL uses hidden parameter symbols to insert values of function local variables into queries, so that a PL/pgSQL statement like `SELECT i + 1 INTO j` would have representative text like `SELECT i + $2`.

The representative query texts are kept in an external disk file, and do not consume shared memory. Therefore, even very lengthy query texts can be stored successfully. However, if many long query texts are accumulated, the external file might grow unmanageably large. As a recovery method if that happens, `pg_stat_statements` may choose to discard the query texts, whereupon all existing entries in the `pg_stat_statements` view will show null `query` fields, though the statistics associated with each `queryid` are preserved. If this happens, consider reducing `pg_stat_statements.max` to prevent recurrences.

`plans` and `calls` aren’t always expected to match because planning and execution statistics are updated at their respective end phase, and only for successful operations. For example, if a statement is successfully planned but fails during the execution phase, only its planning statistics will be updated. If planning is skipped because a cached plan is used, only its execution statistics will be updated.

### F.42.2. The `pg_stat_statements_info` View

The statistics of the `pg_stat_statements` module itself are tracked and made available via a view named `pg_stat_statements_info`. This view contains only a single row. The columns of the view are shown in Table F.74.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>dealloc</code> bigint</td>
<td>Total number of times <code>pg_stat_statements</code> entries about the least-executed statements were deallocated because more distinct statements than <code>pg_stat_statements.max</code> were observed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>stats_reset</code> timestamp with time zone</td>
<td>Time at which all statistics in the <code>pg_stat_statements</code> view were last reset.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### F.42.3. Functions

```sql
pg_stat_statements_reset(userid Oid, dbid Oid, queryid bigint) returns void
```

`pg_stat_statements_reset` discards statistics gathered so far by `pg_stat_statements` corresponding to the specified `userid`, `dbid` and `queryid`. If any of the parameters are not specified, the default value 0 (invalid) is used for each of them and the statistics that match with other parameters will be reset. If no parameter is specified or all the specified parameters are 0 (invalid),
it will discard all statistics. If all statistics in the \texttt{pg_stat_statements} view are discarded, it will also reset the statistics in the \texttt{pg_stat_statements_info} view. By default, this function can only be executed by superusers. Access may be granted to others using \texttt{GRANT}.

\begin{verbatim}
pg_stat_statements(showtext boolean) returns setof record
The \texttt{pg_stat_statements} view is defined in terms of a function also named \texttt{pg_stat_statements}. It is possible for clients to call the \texttt{pg_stat_statements} function directly, and by specifying \texttt{showtext := false} have query text be omitted (that is, the OUT argument that corresponds to the view's query column will return nulls). This feature is intended to support external tools that might wish to avoid the overhead of repeatedly retrieving query texts of indeterminate length. Such tools can instead cache the first query text observed for each entry themselves, since that is all \texttt{pg_stat_statements} itself does, and then retrieve query texts only as needed. Since the server stores query texts in a file, this approach may reduce physical I/O for repeated examination of the \texttt{pg_stat_statements} data.
\end{verbatim}

\section*{F.42.4. Configuration Parameters}

\begin{verbatim}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.max (integer)}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.max} is the maximum number of statements tracked by the module (i.e., the maximum number of rows in the \texttt{pg_stat_statements} view). If more distinct statements than that are observed, information about the least-executed statements is discarded. The number of times such information was discarded can be seen in the \texttt{pg_stat_statements_info} view. The default value is 5000. This parameter can only be set at server start.

\begin{verbatim}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.track (enum)}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.track} controls which statements are counted by the module. Specify \texttt{top} to track top-level statements (those issued directly by clients), \texttt{all} to also track nested statements (such as statements invoked within functions), or \texttt{none} to disable statement statistics collection. The default value is \texttt{top}. Only superusers can change this setting.

\begin{verbatim}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.track_utility (boolean)}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.track_utility} controls whether utility commands are tracked by the module. Utility commands are all those other than SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE. The default value is \texttt{on}. Only superusers can change this setting.

\begin{verbatim}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.track_planning (boolean)}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.track_planning} controls whether planning operations and duration are tracked by the module. Enabling this parameter may incur a noticeable performance penalty, especially when statements with identical query structure are executed by many concurrent connections which compete to update a small number of \texttt{pg_stat_statements} entries. The default value is \texttt{off}. Only superusers can change this setting.

\begin{verbatim}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.save (boolean)}
pagetic{pg_stat_statements.save} specifies whether to save statement statistics across server shutdowns. If it is \texttt{off} then statistics are not saved at shutdown nor reloaded at server start. The default value is \texttt{on}. This parameter can only be set in the \texttt{postgresql.conf} file or on the server command line.

The module requires additional shared memory proportional to \texttt{pg_stat_statements.max}. Note that this memory is consumed whenever the module is loaded, even if \texttt{pg_stat_statements.track} is set to \texttt{none}.

These parameters must be set in \texttt{postgresql.conf}. Typical usage might be:
\begin{verbatim}
# postgresql.conf
shared_preload_libraries = 'pg_stat_statements'

compute_query_id = on
pg_stat_statements.max = 10000
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
F.42.5. Sample Output

bench=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset();

$ pgbench -i bench
$ pgbench -c10 -t300 bench

bench=# \x

bench=# SELECT query, calls, total_exec_time, rows, 100.0 * shared_blks_hit / nullif(shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read, 0) AS hit_percent FROM pg_stat_statements ORDER BY total_exec_time DESC LIMIT 5;

- [ RECORD 1 ] ---+--------------------------------------------------------------------
query | UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance + $1 WHERE bid = $2
calls | 3000
total_exec_time | 25565.855387
rows | 3000
hit_percent | 100.0000000000000000

- [ RECORD 2 ] ---+--------------------------------------------------------------------
query | UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance + $1 WHERE tid = $2
calls | 3000
total_exec_time | 20756.669379
rows | 3000
hit_percent | 100.0000000000000000

- [ RECORD 3 ] ---+--------------------------------------------------------------------
query | copy pgbench_accounts from stdin
calls | 1
total_exec_time | 291.865911
rows | 100000
hit_percent | 100.0000000000000000

- [ RECORD 4 ] ---+--------------------------------------------------------------------
query | UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance + $1 WHERE aid = $2
calls | 3000
total_exec_time | 271.232977
rows | 3000
hit_percent | 98.8454011741682975

- [ RECORD 5 ] ---+--------------------------------------------------------------------
query | alter table pgbench_accounts add primary key (aid)
calls | 1
total_exec_time | 160.588563
rows | 0
hit_percent | 100.0000000000000000

bench=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset(0,0,s.queryid) FROM pg_stat_statements AS s WHERE s.query = 'UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance + $1 WHERE bid = $2';

bench=# SELECT query, calls, total_exec_time, rows, 100.0 * shared_blks_hit / nullif(shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read, 0) AS hit_percent FROM pg_stat_statements ORDER BY total_exec_time DESC LIMIT 5;

- [ RECORD 1 ] ---+--------------------------------------------------------------------
query | UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance + $1 WHERE tid = $2
calls | 3000
total_exec_time | 20756.669379
rows | 3000
hit_percent | 100.0000000000000000

2440
Additional Supplied Modules

```
- [ RECORD 2 ]-----------------------------------------------
query | copy pgbench_accounts from stdin
calls | 1
total_exec_time | 291.865911
rows | 100000
hit_percent | 100.0000000000000000

- [ RECORD 3 ]-----------------------------------------------
query | UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance + $1 WHERE aid = $2
calls | 3000
total_exec_time | 271.232977
rows | 3000
hit_percent | 98.8454011741682975

- [ RECORD 4 ]-----------------------------------------------
query | alter table pgbench_accounts add primary key (aid)
calls | 1
total_exec_time | 160.588563
rows | 0
hit_percent | 100.0000000000000000

- [ RECORD 5 ]-----------------------------------------------
query | vacuum analyze pgbench_accounts
calls | 1
total_exec_time | 136.448116
rows | 0
hit_percent | 99.9201915403032721

bench=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset(0,0,0);

bench=# SELECT query, calls, total_exec_time, rows, 100.0 * shared_blks_hit /
        nullif(shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read, 0) AS hit_percent
        FROM pg_stat_statements ORDER BY total_exec_time DESC LIMIT 5;

- [ RECORD 1 ]-----------------------------------------------
  query | SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset(0,0,0)
calls | 1
total_exec_time | 0.189497
rows | 1
hit_percent |

- [ RECORD 2 ]-----------------------------------------------
  query | SELECT query, calls, total_exec_time, rows, $1 * shared_blks_hit /
        +
        nullif(shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read, $2) AS hit_percent+
        FROM pg_stat_statements ORDER BY total_exec_time DESC LIMIT
        $3
calls | 0
total_exec_time | 0
rows | 0
hit_percent |
```

F.42.6. Authors

Takahiro Itagaki <itagaki.takahiro@oss.ntt.co.jp>. Query normalization added by Peter Geoghegan <peter@2ndquadrant.com>.

F.43. pgstattuple

The pgstattuple module provides various functions to obtain tuple-level statistics.
Because these functions return detailed page-level information, access is restricted by default. By default, only the role `pg_stat_scan_tables` has EXECUTE privilege. Superusers of course bypass this restriction. After the extension has been installed, users may issue `GRANT` commands to change the privileges on the functions to allow others to execute them. However, it might be preferable to add those users to the `pg_stat_scan_tables` role instead.

### F.43.1. Functions

`pgstattuple(regclass) returns record`

`pgstattuple` returns a relation's physical length, percentage of "dead" tuples, and other info. This may help users to determine whether vacuum is necessary or not. The argument is the target relation's name (optionally schema-qualified) or OID. For example:

```sql
test=> SELECT * FROM pgstattuple('pg_catalog.pg_proc');
- [ RECORD 1 ]---------
table_len          | 458752
tuple_count        | 1470
tuple_len          | 438896
tuple_percent      | 95.67
dead_tuple_count   | 11
dead_tuple_len     | 3157
dead_tuple_percent | 0.69
free_space         | 8932
free_percent       | 1.95
```

The output columns are described in Table F.75.

**Table F.75. pgstattuple Output Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_len</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Physical relation length in bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuple_count</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of live tuples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuple_len</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total length of live tuples in bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuple_percent</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Percentage of live tuples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead_tuple_count</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of dead tuples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead_tuple_len</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total length of dead tuples in bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead_tuple_percent</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Percentage of dead tuples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_space</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total free space in bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_percent</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Percentage of free space</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The `table_len` will always be greater than the sum of the `tuple_len`, `dead_tuple_len` and `free_space`. The difference is accounted for by fixed page overhead, the per-page table of pointers to tuples, and padding to ensure that tuples are correctly aligned.

`pgstattuple` acquires only a read lock on the relation. So the results do not reflect an instantaneous snapshot; concurrent updates will affect them.

`pgstattuple` judges a tuple is "dead" if `HeapTupleSatisfiesDirty` returns false.
pgstattuple(text) returns record

This is the same as pgstattuple(regclass), except that the target relation is specified as TEXT. This function is kept because of backward-compatibility so far, and will be deprecated in some future release.

pgstatindex(regclass) returns record

pgstatindex returns a record showing information about a B-tree index. For example:

    test=> SELECT * FROM pgstatindex('pg_cast_oid_index');
    -[ RECORD 1 ]----------
        version   | 2
        tree_level | 0
        index_size | 16384
        root_block_no | 1
        internal_pages | 0
        leaf_pages | 1
        empty_pages | 0
        deleted_pages | 0
        avg_leaf_density | 54.27
        leaf_fragmentation | 0

The output columns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>B-tree version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree_level</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Tree level of the root page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>index_size</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total index size in bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root_block_no</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Location of root page (zero if none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal_pages</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of “internal” (upper-level) pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leaf_pages</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of leaf pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty_pages</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of empty pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deleted_pages</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of deleted pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avg_leaf_density</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Average density of leaf pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leaf_fragmentation</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Leaf page fragmentation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The reported index_size will normally correspond to one more page than is accounted for by internal_pages + leaf_pages + empty_pages + deleted_pages, because it also includes the index's metapage.

As with pgstattuple, the results are accumulated page-by-page, and should not be expected to represent an instantaneous snapshot of the whole index.

pgstatindex(text) returns record

This is the same as pgstatindex(regclass), except that the target index is specified as TEXT. This function is kept because of backward-compatibility so far, and will be deprecated in some future release.

pgstatginindex(regclass) returns record

pgstatginindex returns a record showing information about a GIN index. For example:

    test=> SELECT * FROM pgstatginindex('test_gin_index');
    -[ RECORD 1 ]--------
version | 1
pending_pages | 0
pending_tuples | 0

The output columns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>GIN version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pending_pages</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Number of pages in the pending list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pending_tuples</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of tuples in the pending list</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pgstathashindex(regclass) returns record

pgstathashindex returns a record showing information about a HASH index. For example:

test=> select * from pgstathashindex('con_hash_index');
- [ RECORD 1 ]--
version        | 4
bucket_pages   | 33081
overflow_pages | 0
bitmap_pages   | 1
unused_pages   | 32455
live_items     | 10204006
dead_items     | 0
free_percent   | 61.8005949100872

The output columns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>HASH version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bucket_pages</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of bucket pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overflow_pages</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of overflow pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitmap_pages</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of bitmap pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unused_pages</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of unused pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live_items</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of live tuples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead_tuples</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of dead tuples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_percent</td>
<td>float</td>
<td>Percentage of free space</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pg_relpages(regclass) returns bigint

pg_relpages returns the number of pages in the relation.

pg_relpages(text) returns bigint

This is the same as pg_relpages(regclass), except that the target relation is specified as TEXT. This function is kept because of backward-compatibility so far, and will be deprecated in some future release.

pgstattuple_approx(regclass) returns record

pgstattuple_approx is a faster alternative to pgstattuple that returns approximate results. The argument is the target relation's name or OID. For example:

test=> SELECT * FROM pgstattuple_approx('pg_catalog.pg_proc'::regclass);
- [ RECORD 1 ]--------
Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>table_len</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Physical relation length in bytes (exact)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scanned_percent</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Percentage of table scanned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approx_tuple_count</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of live tuples (estimated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approx_tuple_len</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total length of live tuples in bytes (estimated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approx_tuple_percent</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Percentage of live tuples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead_tuple_count</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Number of dead tuples (exact)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead_tuple_len</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total length of dead tuples in bytes (exact)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead_tuple_percent</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Percentage of dead tuples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approx_free_space</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>Total free space in bytes (estimated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approx_free_percent</td>
<td>float8</td>
<td>Percentage of free space</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The output columns are described in Table F.76.

Whereas `pgstattuple` always performs a full-table scan and returns an exact count of live and dead tuples (and their sizes) and free space, `pgstattuple_approx` tries to avoid the full-table scan and returns exact dead tuple statistics along with an approximation of the number and size of live tuples and free space.

It does this by skipping pages that have only visible tuples according to the visibility map (if a page has the corresponding VM bit set, then it is assumed to contain no dead tuples). For such pages, it derives the free space value from the free space map, and assumes that the rest of the space on the page is taken up by live tuples.

For pages that cannot be skipped, it scans each tuple, recording its presence and size in the appropriate counters, and adding up the free space on the page. At the end, it estimates the total number of live tuples based on the number of pages and tuples scanned (in the same way that VACUUM estimates `pg_class.reltuples`).

Table F.76. pgstattuple_approx Output Columns

F.43.2. Authors

Tatsuo Ishii, Satoshi Nagayasu and Abhijit Menon-Sen

F.44. pg_surgery
The `pg_surgery` module provides various functions to perform surgery on a damaged relation. These functions are unsafe by design and using them may corrupt (or further corrupt) your database. For example, these functions can easily be used to make a table inconsistent with its own indexes, to cause `UNIQUE` or `FOREIGN KEY` constraint violations, or even to make tuples visible which, when read, will cause a database server crash. They should be used with great caution and only as a last resort.

**F.44.1. Functions**

`heap_force_kill(regclass, tid[])` returns void

`heap_force_kill` marks "used" line pointers as "dead" without examining the tuples. The intended use of this function is to forcibly remove tuples that are not otherwise accessible. For example:

```sql
test=> select * from t1 where ctid = '(0, 1)';
ERROR:  could not access status of transaction 4007513275
DETAIL:  Could not open file "pg_xact/0EED": No such file or directory.
```

```sql
test=# select heap_force_kill('t1'::regclass, ARRAY['(0, 1)']::tid[]);
  heap_force_kill
-----------------
   (1 row)

test=# select * from t1 where ctid = '(0, 1)';
   (0 rows)
```

`heap_force_freeze(regclass, tid[])` returns void

`heap_force_freeze` marks tuples as frozen without examining the tuple data. The intended use of this function is to make accessible tuples which are inaccessible due to corrupted visibility information, or which prevent the table from being successfully vacuumed due to corrupted visibility information. For example:

```sql
test=> vacuum t1;
ERROR:  found xmin 507 from before relfrozenxid 515
CONTEXT:  while scanning block 0 of relation "public.t1"
```

```sql
test=# select ctid from t1 where xmin = 507;
  ctid
-------
   (0,3)
   (1 row)

test=# select heap_force_freeze('t1'::regclass, ARRAY['(0, 3)']::tid[]);
  heap_force_freeze
-------------------
   (1 row)

test=# select ctid from t1 where xmin = 2;
  ctid
-------
   (0,3)
   (1 row)
```

**F.44.2. Authors**

Ashutosh Sharma <ashu.coek88@gmail.com>
Additional Supplied Modules

F.45. pg_trgm

The pg_trgm module provides functions and operators for determining the similarity of alphanumeric text based on trigram matching, as well as index operator classes that support fast searching for similar strings.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

F.45.1. Trigram (or Trigraph) Concepts

A trigram is a group of three consecutive characters taken from a string. We can measure the similarity of two strings by counting the number of trigrams they share. This simple idea turns out to be very effective for measuring the similarity of words in many natural languages.

Note

.pg_trgm ignores non-word characters (non-alphanumerics) when extracting trigrams from a string. Each word is considered to have two spaces prefixed and one space suffixed when determining the set of trigrams contained in the string. For example, the set of trigrams in the string “cat” is “c”, “ca”, “cat”, and “at “. The set of trigrams in the string “foo|bar” is “f”, “fo”, “foo”, “oo “, “b”, “ba”, “bar”, and “ar “.

F.45.2. Functions and Operators

The functions provided by the pg_trgm module are shown in Table F.77, the operators in Table F.78.

Table F.77. pg_trgm Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>similarity (text, text) → real</td>
<td>Returns a number that indicates how similar the two arguments are. The range of the result is zero (indicating that the two strings are completely dissimilar) to one (indicating that the two strings are identical).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show_trgm (text) → text[]</td>
<td>Returns an array of all the trigrams in the given string. (In practice this is seldom useful except for debugging.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word_similarity (text, text) → real</td>
<td>Returns a number that indicates the greatest similarity between the set of trigrams in the first string and any continuous extent of an ordered set of trigrams in the second string. For details, see the explanation below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strict_word_similarity (text, text) → real</td>
<td>Same as word_similarity, but forces extent boundaries to match word boundaries. Since we don’t have cross-word trigrams, this function actually returns greatest similarity between first string and any continuous extent of words of the second string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show_limit () → real</td>
<td>Returns the current similarity threshold used by the % operator. This sets the minimum similarity between two words for them to be considered similar enough to be misspellings of each other, for example. (Deprecated; instead use SHOW pg_trgm.similarity_threshold .)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_limit (real) → real</td>
<td>Sets the current similarity threshold that is used by the % operator. The threshold must be between 0 and 1 (default is 0.3). Returns the same value passed in. (Deprecated; instead use SET pg_trgm.similarity_threshold .)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Consider the following example:

```sql
# SELECT word_similarity('word', 'two words');
word_similarity
-----------------
0.8
(1 row)
```

In the first string, the set of trigrams is `{ "w", "wo", "wor", "ord", "rd " }`. In the second string, the ordered set of trigrams is `{ "t", "tw", "two", "wo ", " w", " wo", "wor", "ord", "rds", "ds "}`. The most similar extent of an ordered set of trigrams in the second string is `{ "w", "wo", "wor", "ord" }`, and the similarity is 0.8.

This function returns a value that can be approximately understood as the greatest similarity between the first string and any substring of the second string. However, this function does not add padding to the boundaries of the extent. Thus, the number of additional characters present in the second string is not considered, except for the mismatched word boundaries.

At the same time, `strict_word_similarity` selects an extent of words in the second string. In the example above, `strict_word_similarity` would select the extent of a single word 'words', whose set of trigrams is `{ "w", "wo", "wor", "ord", "rds", "ds " }.

```sql
# SELECT strict_word_similarity('word', 'two words'), similarity('word', 'words');
strict_word_similarity | similarity
------------------------+------------
0.571429 |   0.571429
(1 row)
```

Thus, the `strict_word_similarity` function is useful for finding the similarity to whole words, while `word_similarity` is more suitable for finding the similarity for parts of words.

### Table F.78. `pg_trgm` Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>text % text</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Returns <code>true</code> if its arguments have a similarity that is greater than the current similarity threshold set by <code>pg_trgm.similarity_threshold</code> .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text &lt;\% text</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Returns <code>true</code> if the similarity between the trigram set in the first argument and a continuous extent of an ordered trigram set in the second argument is greater than the current word similarity threshold set by <code>pg_trgm.word_similarity_threshold</code> parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text %&gt;</code> <code>text</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Commutator of the <code>&lt;\%</code> operator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text &lt;\&lt; text</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Returns <code>true</code> if its second argument has a continuous extent of an ordered trigram set that matches word boundaries, and its similarity to the trigram set of the first argument is greater than the current strict word similarity threshold set by the <code>pg_trgm.strict_word_similarity_threshold</code> parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text %&gt;&gt; text</code> → <code>boolean</code></td>
<td>Commutator of the <code>&lt;\&lt;</code> operator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text &lt;-&gt; text</code> → <code>real</code></td>
<td>Returns the “distance” between the arguments, that is one minus the <code>similarity()</code> value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text &lt;\&lt;&lt; text</code> → <code>real</code></td>
<td>Returns the “distance” between the arguments, that is one minus the <code>word_similarity()</code> value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text &lt;-&gt; text → real</td>
<td>Commutator of the &lt;-&gt; operator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text &lt;&lt;&lt; text → real</td>
<td>Returns the “distance” between the arguments, that is one minus the strict_word_similarity() value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text &lt;-&gt;&gt;&gt; text → real</td>
<td>Commutator of the &lt;&lt;&lt; operator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.45.3. GUC Parameters

- **pg_trgm.similarity_threshold(real)**
  
  Sets the current similarity threshold that is used by the % operator. The threshold must be between 0 and 1 (default is 0.3).

- **pg_trgm.word_similarity_threshold(real)**
  
  Sets the current word similarity threshold that is used by the < and > operators. The threshold must be between 0 and 1 (default is 0.6).

- **pg_trgm.strict_word_similarity_threshold(real)**
  
  Sets the current strict word similarity threshold that is used by the << and >>> operators. The threshold must be between 0 and 1 (default is 0.5).

#### F.45.4. Index Support

The pg_trgm module provides GiST and GIN index operator classes that allow you to create an index over a text column for the purpose of very fast similarity searches. These index types support the above-described similarity operators, and additionally support trigram-based index searches for LIKE, ILIKE, ~, ~* and = queries. Inequality operators are not supported. Note that those indexes may not be as efficient as regular B-tree indexes for equality operator.

Example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE test_trgm (t text);
CREATE INDEX trgm_idx ON test_trgm USING GIST (t gist_trgm_ops);
```

or

```sql
CREATE INDEX trgm_idx ON test_trgm USING GIN (t gin_trgm_ops);
```

gist_trgm_ops GiST opclass approximates a set of trigrams as a bitmap signature. Its optional integer parameter siglen determines the signature length in bytes. The default length is 12 bytes. Valid values of signature length are between 1 and 2024 bytes. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

Example of creating such an index with a signature length of 32 bytes:

```sql
CREATE INDEX trgm_idx ON test_trgm USING GIST (t gist_trgm_ops(siglen=32));
```

At this point, you will have an index on the t column that you can use for similarity searching. A typical query is

```sql
SELECT t, similarity(t, 'word') AS sml
FROM test_trgm
WHERE t % 'word'
ORDER BY sml DESC, t;
```
This will return all values in the text column that are sufficiently similar to \textit{word}, sorted from best match to worst. The index will be used to make this a fast operation even over very large data sets.

A variant of the above query is

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT t, t <-> 'word' AS dist
   FROM test_trgm
ORDER BY dist LIMIT 10;
\end{verbatim}

This can be implemented quite efficiently by GiST indexes, but not by GIN indexes. It will usually beat the first formulation when only a small number of the closest matches is wanted.

Also you can use an index on the \textit{t} column for word similarity or strict word similarity. Typical queries are:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT t, word_similarity('word', t) AS sml
   FROM test_trgm
WHERE 'word' <% t
ORDER BY sml DESC, t;
\end{verbatim}

and

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT t, strict_word_similarity('word', t) AS sml
   FROM test_trgm
WHERE 'word' <<% t
ORDER BY sml DESC, t;
\end{verbatim}

This will return all values in the text column for which there is a continuous extent in the corresponding ordered trigram set that is sufficiently similar to the trigram set of \textit{word}, sorted from best match to worst. The index will be used to make this a fast operation even over very large data sets.

Possible variants of the above queries are:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT t, 'word' <<<-> t AS dist
   FROM test_trgm
ORDER BY dist LIMIT 10;
\end{verbatim}

and

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT t, 'word' <<<-> t AS dist
   FROM test_trgm
ORDER BY dist LIMIT 10;
\end{verbatim}

This can be implemented quite efficiently by GiST indexes, but not by GIN indexes.

Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.1, these index types also support index searches for \texttt{LIKE} and \texttt{ILIKE}, for example

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT * FROM test_trgm WHERE t LIKE '%foo%bar';
\end{verbatim}

The index search works by extracting trigrams from the search string and then looking these up in the index. The more trigrams in the search string, the more effective the index search is. Unlike B-tree based searches, the search string need not be left-anchored.

Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.3, these index types also support index searches for regular-expression matches (~ and ~* operators), for example

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT * FROM test_trgm WHERE t ~ '(foo|bar)';
\end{verbatim}

The index search works by extracting trigrams from the regular expression and then looking these up in the index. The more trigrams that can be extracted from the regular expression, the more effective the index search is. Unlike B-tree based searches, the search string need not be left-anchored.

For both \texttt{LIKE} and regular-expression searches, keep in mind that a pattern with no extractable trigrams will degenerate to a full-index scan.
The choice between GiST and GIN indexing depends on the relative performance characteristics of GiST and GIN, which are discussed elsewhere.

F.45.5. Text Search Integration

Trigram matching is a very useful tool when used in conjunction with a full text index. In particular it can help to recognize misspelled input words that will not be matched directly by the full text search mechanism.

The first step is to generate an auxiliary table containing all the unique words in the documents:

```
CREATE TABLE words AS SELECT word FROM ts_stat('SELECT to_tsvector(''simple'', bodytext) FROM documents');
```

where documents is a table that has a text field bodytext that we wish to search. The reason for using the simple configuration with the to_tsvector function, instead of using a language-specific configuration, is that we want a list of the original (unstemmed) words.

Next, create a trigram index on the word column:

```
CREATE INDEX words_idx ON words USING GIN (word gin_trgm_ops);
```

Now, a SELECT query similar to the previous example can be used to suggest spellings for misspelled words in user search terms. A useful extra test is to require that the selected words are also of similar length to the misspelled word.

**Note**

Since the words table has been generated as a separate, static table, it will need to be periodically regenerated so that it remains reasonably up-to-date with the document collection. Keeping it exactly current is usually unnecessary.

F.45.6. References


F.45.7. Authors

Oleg Bartunov <oleg@sai.msu.su>, Moscow, Moscow University, Russia

Teodor Sigaev <teodor@sigaev.ru>, Moscow, Delta-Soft Ltd., Russia

Alexander Korotkov <a.korotkov@postgrespro.ru>, Moscow, Postgres Professional, Russia

Documentation: Christopher Kings-Lynne

This module is sponsored by Delta-Soft Ltd., Moscow, Russia.

F.46. pg_tsparser

`pg_tsparser` is a Postgres Pro extension for text search. This extension modifies the default text parsing strategy for words that include:

- underscores
- numbers and letters separated by the hyphen character

In addition to separate word parts returned by default, `pg_tsparser` also returns the whole word.
F.46.1. Installation and Setup

pg_tsparser is included into the Postgres Pro distribution. To enable pg_tsparser, once Postgres Pro is installed, create the pg_tsparser extension for each database you are planning to use:

CREATE EXTENSION pg_tsparser;

Once pg_tsparser is enabled, you can create your own text search configuration. In addition to pg_tsparser, you can use any available dictionary.

For example, you can create english_ts configuration for the English language, as follows:

CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english_ts (PARSER = tsparser);

COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english_ts IS 'text search configuration for english language';

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english_ts
  ADD MAPPING FOR email, file, float, host, hword_numpart, int, numhword, numword, sfloat, uint, url, url_path, version
  WITH simple;

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english_ts
  ADD MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart, word, hword, hword_part
  WITH english_stem;

F.46.2. Examples

The following examples illustrate the difference in search results returned by pg_tsparser and the default parser:

```sql
SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'pg_trgm') as def_parser,
       to_tsvector('english_ts', 'pg_trgm') as new_parser;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>def_parser</th>
<th>new_parser</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'pg':1 'trgm':2</td>
<td>'pg':2 'pg_trgm':1 'trgm':3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

SELECT to_tsvector('english', '123-abc') as def_parser,
       to_tsvector('english_ts', '123-abc') as new_parser;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>def_parser</th>
<th>new_parser</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'123':1 'abc':2</td>
<td>'123':2 '123-abc':1 'abc':3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'rel-3.2-A') as def_parser,
       to_tsvector('english_ts', 'rel-3.2-A') as new_parser;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>def_parser</th>
<th>new_parser</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'-3.2':2 'rel':1</td>
<td>'3.2':3 'rel':2 'rel-3.2-a':1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)
```

See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
F.46.3. Authors
Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia

F.47. pg_variables

The pg_variables module provides functions for working with variables of various types. The created variables are only available in the current user session.

F.47.1. Installation

The pg_variables extension is included into Postgres Pro. Once you have Postgres Pro installed, you must execute the CREATE EXTENSION command to enable pg_variables, as follows:

CREATE EXTENSION pg_variables;

F.47.2. Usage

The pg_variables module provides several functions for creating, reading, and managing variables of scalar, record, and array types. See the following sections for function descriptions and syntax:

- Section F.47.3.1 describes functions for scalar variables.
- Section F.47.3.2 describes functions for record variables.
- Section F.47.3.3 describes functions for array variables.
- Section F.47.3.4 lists functions you can use to manage all variables in your current session.

For detailed usage examples, see Section F.47.4.

F.47.2.1. Using Transactional Variables

By default, the created variables are non-transactional. Once successfully set, a variable exists for the whole session, regardless of rollbacks, if any. For example:

```
SELECT pgv_set('vars', 'int1', 101);
BEGIN;
SELECT pgv_set('vars', 'int2', 102);
ROLLBACK;
```

```
SELECT * FROM pgv_list() order by package, name;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>package</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>is_transactional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vars</td>
<td>int1</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vars</td>
<td>int2</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you would like to use variables that support transactions and savepoints, pass the optional is_transactional flag as the last parameter when creating this variable:

```
BEGIN;
SELECT pgv_set('vars', 'trans_int', 101, true);
SAVEPOINT sp1;
SELECT pgv_set('vars', 'trans_int', 102, true);
ROLLBACK TO sp1;
COMMIT;
SELECT pgv_get('vars', 'trans_int', NULL::int);
```

```
pgv_get
--------
101
```

You must use the is_transactional flag every time you change the value of a transactional variable using pgv_set() or pgv_insert() functions. Otherwise, an error occurs. Other functions do not require this flag.
Additional Supplied Modules

SELECT pgv_insert('pack', 'var_record', row(123::int, 'text'::text), true);

SELECT pgv_insert('pack', 'var_record', row(456::int, 'another text'::text));
ERROR: variable "var_record" already created as TRANSACTIONAL

SELECT pgv_delete('pack', 'var_record', 123::int);

If the pgv_free() or pgv_remove() function calls are rolled back, the affected transactional variables will be restored, unlike non-transactional variables, which are removed permanently. For example:

SELECT pgv_set('pack', 'var_reg', 123);
SELECT pgv_set('pack', 'var_trans', 456, true);
BEGIN;
SELECT pgv_free();
ROLLBACK;
SELECT * FROM pgv_list();
 package |   name    | is_transactional
---------+-----------+------------------
 pack    | var_trans | t

F.47.3. Functions

F.47.3.1. Scalar Variables

The following functions support scalar variables:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pgv_set(package text, name text, value anynonarray, is_transactional bool default false)</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgv_get(package text, name text, var_ type anynonarray, strict bool default true)</td>
<td>anynonarray</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To use the pgv_get() function, you must first create a package and a variable using the pgv_set() function. If the specified package or variable does not exist, an error occurs:

SELECT pgv_get('vars', 'int1', NULL::int);
ERROR: unrecognized package "vars"

SELECT pgv_get('vars', 'int1', NULL::int);
ERROR: unrecognized variable "int1"

pgv_get() function checks the variable type. If the specified type does not match the type of the variable, an error is raised:

SELECT pgv_get('vars', 'int1', NULL::text);
ERROR: variable "int1" requires "integer" value

F.47.3.2. Records

The following functions support collections of record variables:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pgv_insert(package text, name text, r record, is_transactional bool default false)</td>
<td>void</td>
<td>Inserts a record into a variable collection for the specified package. If the package or variable does not exist, it is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pgv_update(package text, name text, r record)</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>Updates a record with the corresponding primary key (the first column of r is the primary key). Returns true if the record was found. If this variable collection has another structure, an error is raised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgv_delete(package text, name text, value anyonarray)</td>
<td>boolean</td>
<td>Deletes a record with the corresponding primary key (the first column of r is the primary key). Returns true if the record was found.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgv_select(package text, name text)</td>
<td>set of records</td>
<td>Returns the variable collection records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgv_select(package text, name text, value anyonarray)</td>
<td>record</td>
<td>Returns the record with the corresponding primary key (the first column of r is a primary key).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgv_select(package text, name text, value anyarray)</td>
<td>set of records</td>
<td>Returns the variable collection records with the corresponding primary keys (the first column of r is a primary key).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To use `pgv_update()`, `pgv_delete()` and `pgv_select()` functions, you must first create a package and a variable using the `pgv_insert()` function. The variable type and the record type must be the same; otherwise, an error occurs.

### F.47.3.3. Arrays

The following functions support array variables:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pgv_set(package text, name text, value anyarray, is_transactional bool default false)</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgv_get(package text, name text, var_type anyarray, strict bool default true)</td>
<td>anyarray</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage instructions for these functions are the same as those provided in Section F.47.3.1 for scalar variables.

### F.47.3.4. Miscellaneous Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pgv_exists(package text, name text)</td>
<td>bool</td>
<td>Returns true if the specified package and variable exist.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_exists(package text)</code></td>
<td>bool</td>
<td>Returns true if the specified package exists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_remove(package text, name text)</code></td>
<td>void</td>
<td>Removes the variable with the specified name. The specified package and variable must exist; otherwise, an error is raised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_remove(package text)</code></td>
<td>void</td>
<td>Removes the specified package and all the corresponding variables. The specified package must exist; otherwise, an error is raised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_free()</code></td>
<td>void</td>
<td>Removes all packages and variables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_list()</code></td>
<td>table</td>
<td>Displays all the available variables and the corresponding packages, as well as whether each variable is transactional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_stats()</code></td>
<td>table</td>
<td>Returns the list of assigned packages and the amount of memory used by variables, in bytes. If you are using transactional variables, this list also includes all deleted packages that still may be restored by a ROLLBACK. This function only supports Postgres Pro 9.6 or higher.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.47.3.5. Deprecated Functions

F.47.3.5.1. Integer Variables

The following functions are deprecated. Use generic functions for *scalar variables* instead.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_int(package text, name text, value int, is_transactional bool default false)</code></td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_int(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.47.3.5.2. Text Variables

The following functions are deprecated. Use generic functions for *scalar variables* instead.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_text(package text, name text, value text, is_transactional bool default false)</code></td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_text(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.47.3.5.3. Numeric Variables

The following functions are deprecated. Use generic functions for *scalar variables* instead.
### Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_numeric</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_numeric(package text, name text, value numeric, is_transactional bool default false)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_numeric(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>numeric</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_numeric</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_numeric(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>numeric</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.47.3.5.4. Timestamp Variables

The following functions are deprecated. Use generic functions for scalar variables instead.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_timestamp</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_timestamp(package text, name text, value timestamp, is_transactional bool default false)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_timestamp(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>timestamp</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_timestamp</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_timestamp(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>timestamp</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.47.3.5.5. Timestamp with timezone Variables

The following functions are deprecated. Use generic functions for scalar variables instead.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_timestamptz</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_timestamptz(package text, name text, value timestamptz, is_transactional bool default false)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_timestamptz(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>timestamptz</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_timestamptz</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_timestamptz(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>timestamptz</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.47.3.5.6. Date Variables

The following functions are deprecated. Use generic functions for scalar variables instead.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_date</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_date(package text, name text, value date, is_transactional bool default false)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_date(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>date</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_date</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_date(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>date</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.47.3.5.7. Jsonb Variables

The following functions are deprecated. Use generic functions for scalar variables instead.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_jsonb</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_jsonb(package text, name text, value jsonb, is_transactional bool default false)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_set_jsonb(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>jsonb</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_jsonb</code></td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pgv_get_jsonb(package text, name text, strict bool default true)</code></td>
<td><code>jsonb</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### F.47.4. Examples

Define scalar variables using the `pgv_set()` function, and then return their values using the `pgv_get()` function:
SELECT pgv_set('vars', 'int1', 101);
SELECT pgv_set('vars', 'int2', 102);
SELECT pgv_set('vars', 'text1', 'text variable'::text);

SELECT pgv_get('vars', 'int1', NULL::int);
pgv_get
--------------
 101

SELECT pgv_get('vars', 'int2', NULL::int);
pgv_get
--------------
 102

SELECT pgv_get('vars', 'text1', NULL::text);
pgv_get
---------------
text variable

Let's assume we have the tab table and examine several examples of using record variables:

CREATE TABLE tab (id int, t varchar);
INSERT INTO tab VALUES (0, 'str00'), (1, 'str11');

You can use the following functions to work with record variables:

SELECT pgv_insert('vars', 'r1', tab) FROM tab;

SELECT pgv_select('vars', 'r1');
pgv_select
------------
(1,str11)
(0,str00)

SELECT pgv_select('vars', 'r1', 1);
pgv_select
------------
(1,str11)

SELECT pgv_select('vars', 'r1', 0);
pgv_select
------------
(0,str00)

SELECT pgv_select('vars', 'r1', ARRAY[1, 0]);
pgv_select
------------
(1,str11)
(0,str00)

SELECT pgv_delete('vars', 'r1', 1);

Consider the behavior of a transactional variable var_text when changed before and after savepoints:

SELECT pgv_set('pack', 'var_text', 'before transaction block'::text, true);
BEGIN;
SELECT pgv_set('pack', 'var_text', 'before savepoint'::text, true);
SAVEPOINT sp1;
SELECT pgv_set('pack', 'var_text', 'savepoint sp1'::text, true);
SAVEPOINT sp2;
SELECT pgv_set('pack', 'var_text', 'savepoint sp2'::text, true);
RELEASE sp2;
SELECT pgv_get('pack', 'var_text', NULL::text);
  pgv_get
--------------
  savepoint sp2
ROLLBACK TO sp1;
SELECT pgv_get('pack', 'var_text', NULL::text);
  pgv_get
--------------
  before savepoint
ROLLBACK;
SELECT pgv_get('pack', 'var_text', NULL::text);
  pgv_get
-------------------
  before transaction block

If you create a variable after BEGIN or SAVEPOINT statements and than rollback to the previous state, the transactional variable is removed:

BEGIN;
SAVEPOINT sp1;
SAVEPOINT sp2;
SELECT pgv_set('pack', 'var_int', 122, true);
RELEASE SAVEPOINT sp2;
SELECT pgv_get('pack', 'var_int', NULL::int);
  pgv_get
-------
  122
ROLLBACK TO sp1;
SELECT pgv_get('pack', 'var_int', NULL::int);
ERROR: unrecognized variable "var_int"
COMMIT;

List the available packages and variables:

```
SELECT * FROM pgv_list() ORDER BY package, name;
  package |   name   | is_transactional
-----------+----------+------------------
   pack    | var_text | t
   vars    | int1     | f
   vars    | int2     | f
   vars    | r1       | f
   vars    | text1    | f
```

Get the amount of memory used by variables, in bytes:

```
SELECT * FROM pgv_stats() ORDER BY package;
  package | allocated_memory
-----------+------------------
   pack    |            16384
   vars    |            32768
```

2459
Delete the specified variables or packages:

SELECT pgv_remove('vars', 'int1');
SELECT pgv_remove('vars');

Delete all packages and variables:

SELECT pgv_free();

F.47.5. Authors
Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia

F.48. pg_visibility

The pg_visibility module provides a means for examining the visibility map (VM) and page-level visibility information of a table. It also provides functions to check the integrity of a visibility map and to force it to be rebuilt.

Three different bits are used to store information about page-level visibility. The all-visible bit in the visibility map indicates that every tuple in the corresponding page of the relation is visible to every current and future transaction. The all-frozen bit in the visibility map indicates that every tuple in the page is frozen; that is, no future vacuum will need to modify the page until such time as a tuple is inserted, updated, deleted, or locked on that page. The page header's PD_ALL_VISIBLE bit has the same meaning as the all-visible bit in the visibility map, but is stored within the data page itself rather than in a separate data structure. These two bits will normally agree, but the page's all-visible bit can sometimes be set while the visibility map bit is clear after a crash recovery. The reported values can also disagree because of a change that occurs after pg_visibility examines the visibility map and before it examines the data page. Any event that causes data corruption can also cause these bits to disagree.

Functions that display information about PD_ALL_VISIBLE bits are much more costly than those that only consult the visibility map, because they must read the relation's data blocks rather than only the (much smaller) visibility map. Functions that check the relation's data blocks are similarly expensive.

F.48.1. Functions

pg_visibility_map(relation regclass, blkno bigint, all_visible OUT boolean, all_frozen OUT boolean) returns record

Returns the all-visible and all-frozen bits in the visibility map for the given block of the given relation.

pg_visibility(relation regclass, blkno bigint, all_visible OUT boolean, all_frozen OUT boolean, pd_all_visible OUT boolean) returns record

Returns the all-visible and all-frozen bits in the visibility map for the given block of the given relation, plus the PD_ALL_VISIBLE bit of that block.

pg_visibility_map(relation regclass, blkno OUT bigint, all_visible OUT boolean, all_frozen OUT boolean) returns setof record

Returns the all-visible and all-frozen bits in the visibility map for each block of the given relation.

pg_visibility(relation regclass, blkno OUT bigint, all_visible OUT boolean, all_frozen OUT boolean, pd_all_visible OUT boolean) returns setof record

Returns the all-visible and all-frozen bits in the visibility map for each block of the given relation, plus the PD_ALL_VISIBLE bit of each block.

pg_visibility_map_summary(relation regclass, all_visible OUT bigint, all_frozen OUT bigint) returns record

Returns the number of all-visible pages and the number of all-frozen pages in the relation according to the visibility map.
pg_check_frozen(relation regclass, t_ctid OUT tid) returns setof tid

Returns the TIDs of non-frozen tuples stored in pages marked all-frozen in the visibility map. If this function returns a non-empty set of TIDs, the visibility map is corrupt.

pg_check_visible(relation regclass, t_ctid OUT tid) returns setof tid

Returns the TIDs of non-all-visible tuples stored in pages marked all-visible in the visibility map. If this function returns a non-empty set of TIDs, the visibility map is corrupt.

pg_truncate_visibility_map(relation regclass) returns void

Truncates the visibility map for the given relation. This function is useful if you believe that the visibility map for the relation is corrupt and wish to force rebuilding it. The first VACUUM executed on the given relation after this function is executed will scan every page in the relation and rebuild the visibility map. (Until that is done, queries will treat the visibility map as containing all zeroes.)

By default, these functions are executable only by superusers and members of the pg_stat_scan_tables role, with the exception of pg_truncate_visibility_map(relation regclass) which can only be executed by superusers.

F.48.2. Author

Robert Haas <rhaas@postgresql.org>

F.49. plantuner

The plantuner module provides hints for the planner that can disable or enable indexes for query execution.

F.49.1. Motivation

In some cases, it may be required to control the planner by providing hints that make the optimizer ignore some parts of its algorithm. There are many situations when a developer may want to temporarily disable specific index(es), without dropping them, or to instruct the planner to use a specific index.

This version of plantuner provides a possibility to hide the specified indexes from Postgres Pro planner, so it will not use them. For some workloads, Postgres Pro could be too pessimistic about newly created tables and assume that there are much more rows in a table than it actually has. If the plantuner.fix_empty_table GUC variable is set to true, plantuner sets to zero the number of pages/tuples of the table that has no blocks in a file.

F.49.2. GUC Variables

plantuner.disable_index — list of indexes invisible to planner.

plantuner.enable_index — list of indexes visible to planner even if they are hidden by plantuner.disable_index.

F.49.3. Example

To enable the module, you can either load plantuner shared library in a psql session or specify shared_preload_libraries option in postgresql.conf.

=## LOAD 'plantuner';
=## create table test(id int);
=## create index id_idx on test(id);
=## create index id_idx2 on test(id);
=## \d test
    Table "public.test"
    Column | Type | Modifiers
### Additional Supplied Modules

| id     | integer |
|--------+---------+-----------|
| "id_idx" btree (id) |
| "id_idx2" btree (id) |

```sql
=# explain select id from test where id=1;

QUERY PLAN

Bitmap Heap Scan on test  (cost=4.34..15.03 rows=12 width=4)
  Recheck Cond: (id = 1)
  ->  Bitmap Index Scan on id_idx2  (cost=0.00..4.34 rows=12 width=0)
       Index Cond: (id = 1)
(4 rows)
```

```sql
=# set enable_seqscan=off;
=# set plantuner.disable_index='id_idx2';
=# explain select id from test where id=1;

QUERY PLAN

Bitmap Heap Scan on test  (cost=4.34..15.03 rows=12 width=4)
  Recheck Cond: (id = 1)
  ->  Bitmap Index Scan on id_idx  (cost=0.00..4.34 rows=12 width=0)
       Index Cond: (id = 1)
(4 rows)
```

```sql
=# set plantuner.disable_index='id_idx2,id_idx';
=# explain select id from test where id=1;

QUERY PLAN

Seq Scan on test  (cost=10000000000.00..10000000040.00 rows=12 width=4)
  Filter: (id = 1)
(2 rows)
```

```sql
=# set plantuner.enable_index='id_idx';
=# explain select id from test where id=1;

QUERY PLAN

Bitmap Heap Scan on test  (cost=4.34..15.03 rows=12 width=4)
  Recheck Cond: (id = 1)
  ->  Bitmap Index Scan on id_idx  (cost=0.00..4.34 rows=12 width=0)
       Index Cond: (id = 1)
(4 rows)
```

### F.49.4. Authors

All work was done by Teodor Sigaev (teodor@sigaev.ru) and Oleg Bartunov (oleg@sai.msu.su).

The work sponsored by Nomao project (http://www.nomao.com).

### F.50. postgres_fdw

The `postgres_fdw` module provides the foreign-data wrapper `postgres_fdw`, which can be used to access data stored in external Postgres Pro servers.

The functionality provided by this module overlaps substantially with the functionality of the older `dblink` module. But `postgres_fdw` provides more transparent and standards-compliant syntax for accessing remote tables, and can give better performance in many cases.

To prepare for remote access using `postgres_fdw`:

1. Install the `postgres_fdw` extension using `CREATE EXTENSION`.
2. Create a foreign server object, using CREATE SERVER, to represent each remote database you want to connect to. Specify connection information, except user and password, as options of the server object.

3. Create a user mapping, using CREATE USER MAPPING, for each database user you want to allow to access each foreign server. Specify the remote user name and password to use as user and password options of the user mapping.

4. Create a foreign table, using CREATE FOREIGN TABLE or IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA, for each remote table you want to access. The columns of the foreign table must match the referenced remote table. You can, however, use table and/or column names different from the remote table’s, if you specify the correct remote names as options of the foreign table object.

Now you need only SELECT from a foreign table to access the data stored in its underlying remote table. You can also modify the remote table using INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or TRUNCATE. (Of course, the remote user you have specified in your user mapping must have privileges to do these things.)

Note that the ONLY option specified in SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE or TRUNCATE has no effect when accessing or modifying the remote table.

Note that postgres_fdw currently lacks support for INSERT statements with an ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE clause. However, the ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING clause is supported, provided a unique index inference specification is omitted. Note also that postgres_fdw supports row movement invoked by UPDATE statements executed on partitioned tables, but it currently does not handle the case where a remote partition chosen to insert a moved row into is also an UPDATE target partition that will be updated elsewhere in the same command.

It is generally recommended that the columns of a foreign table be declared with exactly the same data types, and collations if applicable, as the referenced columns of the remote table. Although postgres_fdw is currently rather forgiving about performing data type conversions at need, surprising semantic anomalies may arise when types or collations do not match, due to the remote server interpreting query conditions differently from the local server.

Note that a foreign table can be declared with fewer columns, or with a different column order, than its underlying remote table has. Matching of columns to the remote table is by name, not position.

**F.50.1. FDW Options of postgres_fdw**

**F.50.1.1. Connection Options**

A foreign server using the postgres_fdw foreign data wrapper can have the same options that libpq accepts in connection strings, as described in Section 32.1.2, except that these options are not allowed or have special handling:

- user, password and sslpassword (specify these in a user mapping, instead, or use a service file)
- client_encoding (this is automatically set from the local server encoding)
- fallback_application_name (always set to postgres_fdw)
- sslkey and sslcert - these may appear in either or both a connection and a user mapping. If both are present, the user mapping setting overrides the connection setting.

Only superusers may create or modify user mappings with the sslcert or sslkey settings.

Only superusers may connect to foreign servers without password authentication, so always specify the password option for user mappings belonging to non-superusers.

A superuser may override this check on a per-user-mapping basis by setting the user mapping option password_required 'false', e.g.,

```
ALTER USER MAPPING FOR some_non_superuser SERVER loopback_nopw
OPTIONS (ADD password_required 'false');
```

To prevent unprivileged users from exploiting the authentication rights of the unix user the postgres server is running as to escalate to superuser rights, only the superuser may set this option on a user mapping.
Care is required to ensure that this does not allow the mapped user the ability to connect as superuser to the mapped database per CVE-2007-3278 and CVE-2007-6601. Don't set `password_required=false` on the public role. Keep in mind that the mapped user can potentially use any client certificates, `.pgpass`, `.pg_service.conf` etc in the unix home directory of the system user the postgres server runs as. They can also use any trust relationship granted by authentication modes like peer or ident authentication.

F.50.1.2. Object Name Options

These options can be used to control the names used in SQL statements sent to the remote Postgres Pro server. These options are needed when a foreign table is created with names different from the underlying remote table's names.

`schema_name`

This option, which can be specified for a foreign table, gives the schema name to use for the foreign table on the remote server. If this option is omitted, the name of the foreign table's schema is used.

`table_name`

This option, which can be specified for a foreign table, gives the table name to use for the foreign table on the remote server. If this option is omitted, the foreign table's name is used.

`column_name`

This option, which can be specified for a column of a foreign table, gives the column name to use for the column on the remote server. If this option is omitted, the column's name is used.

F.50.1.3. Cost Estimation Options

`postgres_fdw` retrieves remote data by executing queries against remote servers, so ideally the estimated cost of scanning a foreign table should be whatever it costs to be done on the remote server, plus some overhead for communication. The most reliable way to get such an estimate is to ask the remote server and then add something for overhead — but for simple queries, it may not be worth the cost of an additional remote query to get a cost estimate. So `postgres_fdw` provides the following options to control how cost estimation is done:

`use_remote_estimate`

This option, which can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server, controls whether `postgres_fdw` issues remote `EXPLAIN` commands to obtain cost estimates. A setting for a foreign table overrides any setting for its server, but only for that table. The default is `false`.

`fdw_startup_cost`

This option, which can be specified for a foreign server, is a floating point value that is added to the estimated startup cost of any foreign-table scan on that server. This represents the additional overhead of establishing a connection, parsing and planning the query on the remote side, etc. The default value is `100`.

`fdw_tuple_cost`

This option, which can be specified for a foreign server, is a floating point value that is used as extra cost per-tuple for foreign-table scans on that server. This represents the additional overhead of data transfer between servers. You might increase or decrease this number to reflect higher or lower network delay to the remote server. The default value is `0.01`.

When `use_remote_estimate` is `true`, `postgres_fdw` obtains row count and cost estimates from the remote server and then adds `fdw_startup_cost` and `fdw_tuple_cost` to the cost estimates. When `use_remote_estimate` is `false`, `postgres_fdw` performs local row count and cost estimation and then adds `fdw_startup_cost` and `fdw_tuple_cost` to the cost estimates. This local estimation is unlikely to be very accurate unless local copies of the remote table's statistics are available. Running `ANALYZE` on the foreign table is the way to update the local statistics; this will perform a scan of the remote table and then calculate and store statistics just as though the table were local. Keeping local statistics can
be a useful way to reduce per-query planning overhead for a remote table — but if the remote table is frequently updated, the local statistics will soon be obsolete.

F.50.1.4. Remote Execution Options

By default, only WHERE clauses using built-in operators and functions will be considered for execution on the remote server. Clauses involving non-built-in functions are checked locally after rows are fetched. If such functions are available on the remote server and can be relied on to produce the same results as they do locally, performance can be improved by sending such WHERE clauses for remote execution. This behavior can be controlled using the following option:

extensions

This option is a comma-separated list of names of Postgres Pro extensions that are installed, in compatible versions, on both the local and remote servers. Functions and operators that are immutable and belong to a listed extension will be considered shippable to the remote server. This option can only be specified for foreign servers, not per-table.

When using the extensions option, it is the user's responsibility that the listed extensions exist and behave identically on both the local and remote servers. Otherwise, remote queries may fail or behave unexpectedly.

fetch_size

This option specifies the number of rows postgres_fdw should get in each fetch operation. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. The option specified on a table overrides an option specified for the server. The default is 100.

batch_size

This option specifies the number of rows postgres_fdw should insert in each insert operation. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. The option specified on a table overrides an option specified for the server. The default is 1.

Note the actual number of rows postgres_fdw inserts at once depends on the number of columns and the provided batch_size value. The batch is executed as a single query, and the libpq protocol (which postgres_fdw uses to connect to a remote server) limits the number of parameters in a single query to 65535. When the number of columns * batch_size exceeds the limit, the batch_size will be adjusted to avoid an error.

F.50.1.5. Asynchronous Execution Options

postgres_fdw supports asynchronous execution, which runs multiple parts of an Append node concurrently rather than serially to improve performance. This execution can be controlled using the following option:

async_capable

This option controls whether postgres_fdw allows foreign tables to be scanned concurrently for asynchronous execution. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. A table-level option overrides a server-level option. The default is false.

In order to ensure that the data being returned from a foreign server is consistent, postgres_fdw will only open one connection for a given foreign server and will run all queries against that server sequentially even if there are multiple foreign tables involved, unless those tables are subject to different user mappings. In such a case, it may be more performant to disable this option to eliminate the overhead associated with running queries asynchronously.

Asynchronous execution is applied even when an Append node contains subplan(s) executed synchronously as well as subplan(s) executed asynchronously. In such a case, if the asynchronous subplans are ones processed using postgres_fdw, tuples from the asynchronous subplans are not returned until after at least one synchronous subplan returns all tuples, as that subplan is executed
while the asynchronous subplans are waiting for the results of asynchronous queries sent to foreign servers. This behavior might change in a future release.

F.50.1.6. **Updatability Options**

By default all foreign tables using `postgres_fdw` are assumed to be updatable. This may be overridden using the following option:

```plaintext
updatable
```

This option controls whether `postgres_fdw` allows foreign tables to be modified using `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. A table-level option overrides a server-level option. The default is `true`.

Of course, if the remote table is not in fact updatable, an error would occur anyway. Use of this option primarily allows the error to be thrown locally without querying the remote server. Note however that the `information_schema` views will report a `postgres_fdw` foreign table to be updatable (or not) according to the setting of this option, without any check of the remote server.

F.50.1.7. **Truncatability Options**

By default all foreign tables using `postgres_fdw` are assumed to be truncatable. This may be overridden using the following option:

```plaintext
truncatable
```

This option controls whether `postgres_fdw` allows foreign tables to be truncated using the `TRUNCATE` command. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. A table-level option overrides a server-level option. The default is `true`.

Of course, if the remote table is not in fact truncatable, an error would occur anyway. Use of this option primarily allows the error to be thrown locally without querying the remote server.

F.50.1.8. **Importing Options**

`postgres_fdw` is able to import foreign table definitions using `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA`. This command creates foreign table definitions on the local server that match tables or views present on the remote server. If the remote tables to be imported have columns of user-defined data types, the local server must have compatible types of the same names.

Importing behavior can be customized with the following options (given in the `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA` command):

```plaintext
import_collate
```

This option controls whether column `COLLATE` options are included in the definitions of foreign tables imported from a foreign server. The default is `true`. You might need to turn this off if the remote server has a different set of collation names than the local server does, which is likely to be the case if it's running on a different operating system. If you do so, however, there is a very severe risk that the imported table columns' collations will not match the underlying data, resulting in anomalous query behavior.

Even when this parameter is set to `true`, importing columns whose collation is the remote server's default can be risky. They will be imported with `COLLATE "default"`, which will select the local server's default collation, which could be different.

```plaintext
import_default
```

This option controls whether column `DEFAULT` expressions are included in the definitions of foreign tables imported from a foreign server. The default is `false`. If you enable this option, be wary of defaults that might get computed differently on the local server than they would be on the remote server; `nextval()` is a common source of problems. The `IMPORT` will fail altogether if an imported default expression uses a function or operator that does not exist locally.
import_generated

This option controls whether column \texttt{GENERATED} expressions are included in the definitions of foreign tables imported from a foreign server. The default is \texttt{true}. The \texttt{IMPORT} will fail altogether if an imported generated expression uses a function or operator that does not exist locally.

import_not_null

This option controls whether column \texttt{NOT NULL} constraints are included in the definitions of foreign tables imported from a foreign server. The default is \texttt{true}.

Note that constraints other than \texttt{NOT NULL} will never be imported from the remote tables. Although Postgres Pro does support check constraints on foreign tables, there is no provision for importing them automatically, because of the risk that a constraint expression could evaluate differently on the local and remote servers. Any such inconsistency in the behavior of a check constraint could lead to hard-to-detect errors in query optimization. So if you wish to import check constraints, you must do so manually, and you should verify the semantics of each one carefully. For more detail about the treatment of check constraints on foreign tables, see \texttt{CREATE FOREIGN TABLE}.

Tables or foreign tables which are partitions of some other table are imported only when they are explicitly specified in \texttt{LIMIT TO} clause. Otherwise they are automatically excluded from \texttt{IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA}. Since all data can be accessed through the partitioned table which is the root of the partitioning hierarchy, importing only partitioned tables should allow access to all the data without creating extra objects.

F.50.1.9. Connection Management Options

By default, all connections that \texttt{postgres_fdw} establishes to foreign servers are kept open in the local session for re-use.

keep_connections

This option controls whether \texttt{postgres_fdw} keeps the connections to the foreign server open so that subsequent queries can re-use them. It can only be specified for a foreign server. The default is \texttt{on}. If set to \texttt{off}, all connections to this foreign server will be discarded at the end of each transaction.

F.50.2. Functions

\texttt{postgres_fdw_get_connections(OUT server_name text, OUT valid boolean) returns setof record}

This function returns the foreign server names of all the open connections that \texttt{postgres_fdw} established from the local session to the foreign servers. It also returns whether each connection is valid or not. \texttt{false} is returned if the foreign server connection is used in the current local transaction but its foreign server or user mapping is changed or dropped (Note that server name of an invalid connection will be \texttt{NULL} if the server is dropped), and then such invalid connection will be closed at the end of that transaction. \texttt{true} is returned otherwise. If there are no open connections, no record is returned. Example usage of the function:

\begin{verbatim}
postgres=# SELECT * FROM postgres_fdw_get_connections() ORDER BY 1;
 server_name | valid
-------------+-------
 loopback1   | t
 loopback2   | f
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{postgres_fdw_disconnect(server_name text) returns boolean}

This function discards the open connections that are established by \texttt{postgres_fdw} from the local session to the foreign server with the given name. Note that there can be multiple connections to the given server using different user mappings. If the connections are used in the current local transaction, they are not disconnected and warning messages are reported. This function returns \texttt{true} if it disconnects at least one connection, otherwise \texttt{false}. If no foreign server with the given name is found, an error is reported. Example usage of the function:
Additional Supplied Modules

postgres=# SELECT postgres_fdw_disconnect('loopback1');
postgres_fdw_disconnect
-------------------------
t

postgres_fdw_disconnect_all() returns boolean

This function discards all the open connections that are established by postgres_fdw from the local session to foreign servers. If the connections are used in the current local transaction, they are not disconnected and warning messages are reported. This function returns true if it disconnects at least one connection, otherwise false. Example usage of the function:

postgres=# SELECT postgres_fdw_disconnect_all();
postgres_fdw_disconnect_all
----------------------------
t

F.50.3. Connection Management

postgres_fdw establishes a connection to a foreign server during the first query that uses a foreign table associated with the foreign server. By default this connection is kept and re-used for subsequent queries in the same session. This behavior can be controlled using keep_connections option for a foreign server. If multiple user identities (user mappings) are used to access the foreign server, a connection is established for each user mapping.

When changing the definition of or removing a foreign server or a user mapping, the associated connections are closed. But note that if any connections are in use in the current local transaction, they are kept until the end of the transaction. Closed connections will be re-established when they are necessary by future queries using a foreign table.

Once a connection to a foreign server has been established, it's by default kept until the local or corresponding remote session exits. To disconnect a connection explicitly, keep_connections option for a foreign server may be disabled, or postgres_fdw_disconnect and postgres_fdw_disconnect_all functions may be used. For example, these are useful to close connections that are no longer necessary, thereby releasing connections on the foreign server.

F.50.4. Transaction Management

During a query that references any remote tables on a foreign server, postgres_fdw opens a transaction on the remote server if one is not already open corresponding to the current local transaction. The remote transaction is committed or aborted when the local transaction commits or aborts. Savepoints are similarly managed by creating corresponding remote savepoints.

The remote transaction uses SERIALIZABLE isolation level when the local transaction has SERIALIZABLE isolation level; otherwise it uses REPEATABLE READ isolation level. This choice ensures that if a query performs multiple table scans on the remote server, it will get snapshot-consistent results for all the scans. A consequence is that successive queries within a single transaction will see the same data from the remote server, even if concurrent updates are occurring on the remote server due to other activities. That behavior would be expected anyway if the local transaction uses SERIALIZABLE or REPEATABLE READ isolation level, but it might be surprising for a READ COMMITTED local transaction. A future Postgres Pro release might modify these rules.

Note that it is currently not supported by postgres_fdw to prepare the remote transaction for two-phase commit.

F.50.5. Remote Query Optimization

postgres_fdw attempts to optimize remote queries to reduce the amount of data transferred from foreign servers. This is done by sending query WHERE clauses to the remote server for execution, and by not retrieving table columns that are not needed for the current query. To reduce the risk of misexecution
of queries, WHERE clauses are not sent to the remote server unless they use only data types, operators, and functions that are built-in or belong to an extension that's listed in the foreign server's extensions option. Operators and functions in such clauses must be IMMUTABLE as well. For an UPDATE or DELETE query, postgres_fdw attempts to optimize the query execution by sending the whole query to the remote server if there are no query WHERE clauses that cannot be sent to the remote server, no local joins for the query, no row-level local BEFORE or AFTER triggers or stored generated columns on the target table, and no CHECK OPTION constraints from parent views. In UPDATE, expressions to assign to target columns must use only built-in data types, IMMUTABLE operators, or IMMUTABLE functions, to reduce the risk of misexecution of the query.

When postgres_fdw encounters a join between foreign tables on the same foreign server, it sends the entire join to the foreign server, unless for some reason it believes that it will be more efficient to fetch rows from each table individually, or unless the table references involved are subject to different user mappings. While sending the JOIN clauses, it takes the same precautions as mentioned above for the WHERE clauses.

The query that is actually sent to the remote server for execution can be examined using EXPLAIN VERBOSE.

F.50.6. Remote Query Execution Environment

In the remote sessions opened by postgres_fdw, the search_path parameter is set to just pg_catalog, so that only built-in objects are visible without schema qualification. This is not an issue for queries generated by postgres_fdw itself, because it always supplies such qualification. However, this can pose a hazard for functions that are executed on the remote server via triggers or rules on remote tables. For example, if a remote table is actually a view, any functions used in that view will be executed with the restricted search path. It is recommended to schema-qualify all names in such functions, or else attach SET search_path options (see CREATE FUNCTION) to such functions to establish their expected search path environment.

postgres_fdw likewise establishes remote session settings for various parameters:

- **TimeZone** is set to UTC
- **DateStyle** is set to ISO
- **IntervalStyle** is set to postgres
- **extra_float_digits** is set to 3 for remote servers 9.0 and newer and is set to 2 for older versions

These are less likely to be problematic than search_path, but can be handled with function SET options if the need arises.

It is not recommended that you override this behavior by changing the session-level settings of these parameters; that is likely to cause postgres_fdw to malfunction.

F.50.7. Cross-Version Compatibility

postgres_fdw can be used with remote servers dating back to PostgreSQL 8.3. Read-only capability is available back to 8.1. A limitation however is that postgres_fdw generally assumes that immutable built-in functions and operators are safe to send to the remote server for execution, if they appear in a WHERE clause for a foreign table. Thus, a built-in function that was added since the remote server's release might be sent to it for execution, resulting in “function does not exist” or a similar error. This type of failure can be worked around by rewriting the query, for example by embedding the foreign table reference in a sub-SELECT with OFFSET 0 as an optimization fence, and placing the problematic function or operator outside the sub-SELECT.

F.50.8. Examples

Here is an example of creating a foreign table with postgres_fdw. First install the extension:

CREATE EXTENSION postgres_fdw;
Then create a foreign server using `CREATE SERVER`. In this example we wish to connect to a Postgres Pro server on host 192.83.123.89 listening on port 5432. The database to which the connection is made is named `foreign_db` on the remote server:

```sql
CREATE SERVER foreign_server
FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER postgres_fdw
OPTIONS (host '192.83.123.89', port '5432', dbname 'foreign_db');
```

A user mapping, defined with `CREATE USER MAPPING`, is needed as well to identify the role that will be used on the remote server:

```sql
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR local_user
SERVER foreign_server
OPTIONS (user 'foreign_user', password 'password');
```

Now it is possible to create a foreign table with `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`. In this example we wish to access the table named `some_schema.some_table` on the remote server. The local name for it will be `foreign_table`:

```sql
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE foreign_table (id integer NOT NULL, data text)
SERVER foreign_server
OPTIONS (schema_name 'some_schema', table_name 'some_table');
```

It's essential that the data types and other properties of the columns declared in `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` match the actual remote table. Column names must match as well, unless you attach `column_name` options to the individual columns to show how they are named in the remote table. In many cases, use of `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA` is preferable to constructing foreign table definitions manually.

F.50.9. Author

Shigeru Hanada <shigeru.hanada@gmail.com>

F.51. ptrack

PTRACK is a block-level incremental backup engine for Postgres Pro. If PTRACK is enabled, backup tools like `pg_probackup` can use its API to get information on the changed blocks on the fly when taking incremental backups. Copying only those blocks that have changed since the previous backup can significantly speed up the creation and minimize the size of backups.

PTRACK is designed to allow false positives, but to never allow false negatives: it means that all changes within the data directory except hint bits are guaranteed to be marked in the PTRACK map file, although some unchanged blocks might be included as well.

F.51.1. Setting up PTRACK

Once you complete Postgres Pro Standard installation, do the following:

1. Add `ptrack` to the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file:
   ```
   shared_preload_libraries = 'ptrack'
   ```

2. Set `ptrack.map_size` parameter to a positive integer.

   For optimal performance, it is recommended to set `ptrack.map_size` to $N / 1024$, where $N$ is the size of the Postgres Pro cluster, in MB. If you set this parameter to a lower value, PTRACK is more likely to map several blocks together, which leads to false-positive results when tracking changed blocks and increases the incremental backup size as unchanged blocks can also be copied into the incremental backup.
Setting ptrack.map_size to a higher value does not affect PTRACK operation, but keep in mind that you need up to ptrack.map_size * 3 MB of additional disk space since PTRACK uses two additional temporary files to ensure durability. It is not recommended to set this parameter to a value higher than 1024. Even for Postgres Pro clusters with \( N > 1 \) TB, it makes sense to use a higher value only if the efficiency and sizes of backups are more critical than the potential overhead of maintaining a large PTRACK map.

3. Check the wal_level setting. When using PTRACK, it is required to set the wal_level parameter to replica or higher. Otherwise, you can lose some tracked changes if crash-recovery occurs: some commands do not write WAL at all if wal_level is minimal, and PTRACK map files are flushed to disk only at checkpoint time.

4. Restart the Postgres Pro Standard instance for the changes to take effect, and then create the PTRACK extension:

```sql
CREATE EXTENSION ptrack;
```

As a result, several PTRACK functions are created, which are required for accessing PTRACK data. Once this setup is complete, PTRACK starts tracking all the page changes in the Postgres Pro cluster and creates a `ptrack.map` file that stores the latest LSN values for these pages.

---

**Note**

The ptrack.map_size parameter can only be set at server start. If you change this parameter, the previously created PTRACK map file is cleared, and tracking newly changed blocks starts from scratch. To avoid losing recent changes, it is recommended to retake a full backup after modifying this setting.

---

**F.51.2. PTRACK Configuration Parameters**

`ptrack.map_size` (integer)

Specifies the size of a PTRACK map file and the amount of shared memory allocated for this file, in MB. The PTRACK map file stores the latest LSN values for all pages of the Postgres Pro cluster that have changed since PTRACK was enabled. It is not recommended to set this parameter to a value higher than 1GB. The -1 value disables PTRACK, while the 0 value both disables PTRACK and cleans up all the related service files.

The ptrack.map_size parameter can only be set at server start. If you change this parameter, the previously created PTRACK map file is cleared, and tracking newly changed blocks starts from scratch. To avoid losing recent changes, it is recommended to retake a full backup after modifying this setting.

Default: -1

**F.51.3. PTRACK Functions**

`ptrack_init_lsn()` returns `pg_lsn`

Returns the LSN of the last PTRACK map initialization.

`ptrack_get_pagemapset(lsn pg_lsn)` returns setof `record`

Returns a list of changed data files with bitmaps of changed blocks since the specified LSN.

For example:

```sql
SELECT * FROM ptrack_get_pagemapset('0/2000028');
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>path</th>
<th>pagemap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2471</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional Supplied Modules

ptrack_version() returns text

Returns PTRACK version.

F.52. seg

This module implements a data type seg for representing line segments, or floating point intervals. seg can represent uncertainty in the interval endpoints, making it especially useful for representing laboratory measurements.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

F.52.1. Rationale

The geometry of measurements is usually more complex than that of a point in a numeric continuum. A measurement is usually a segment of that continuum with somewhat fuzzy limits. The measurements come out as intervals because of uncertainty and randomness, as well as because the value being measured may naturally be an interval indicating some condition, such as the temperature range of stability of a protein.

Using just common sense, it appears more convenient to store such data as intervals, rather than pairs of numbers. In practice, it even turns out more efficient in most applications.

Further along the line of common sense, the fuzziness of the limits suggests that the use of traditional numeric data types leads to a certain loss of information. Consider this: your instrument reads 6.50, and you input this reading into the database. What do you get when you fetch it? Watch:

```
test=> select 6.50 :: float8 as "pH";
     pH
   -----+
      6.5
(1 row)
```

In the world of measurements, 6.50 is not the same as 6.5. It may sometimes be critically different. The experimenters usually write down (and publish) the digits they trust. 6.50 is actually a fuzzy interval contained within a bigger and even fuzzier interval, 6.5, with their center points being (probably) the only common feature they share. We definitely do not want such different data items to appear the same.

Conclusion? It is nice to have a special data type that can record the limits of an interval with arbitrarily variable precision. Variable in the sense that each data element records its own precision.

Check this out:

```
test=> select '6.25 .. 6.50'::seg as "pH";
    pH
  ---------+
     6.25 .. 6.50
(1 row)
```
F.52.2. Syntax

The external representation of an interval is formed using one or two floating-point numbers joined by the range operator (.. or ...). Alternatively, it can be specified as a center point plus or minus a deviation. Optional certainty indicators (<, > or ~) can be stored as well. (Certainty indicators are ignored by all the built-in operators, however.) Table F.79 gives an overview of allowed representations; Table F.80 shows some examples.

In Table F.79, x, y, and delta denote floating-point numbers. x and y, but not delta, can be preceded by a certainty indicator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table F.79. seg External Representations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x .. y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x (+-) delta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x ..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.. x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table F.80. Examples of Valid seg Input

| 5.0 | Creates a zero-length segment (a point, if you will) |
| ~5.0 | Creates a zero-length segment and records ~ in the data. ~ is ignored by seg operations, but is preserved as a comment. |
| <5.0 | Creates a point at 5.0. < is ignored but is preserved as a comment. |
| >5.0 | Creates a point at 5.0. > is ignored but is preserved as a comment. |
| 5(+-)0.3 | Creates an interval 4.7 .. 5.3. Note that the (+-) notation isn’t preserved. |
| 50 .. | Everything that is greater than or equal to 50 |
| .. 0 | Everything that is less than or equal to 0 |
| 1.5e-2 .. 2E-2 | Creates an interval 0.015 .. 0.02 |
| 1 ... 2 | The same as 1...2, or 1 .. 2, or 1..2 (spaces around the range operator are ignored) |

Because the ... operator is widely used in data sources, it is allowed as an alternative spelling of the .. operator. Unfortunately, this creates a parsing ambiguity: it is not clear whether the upper bound in 0...23 is meant to be 23 or 0.23. This is resolved by requiring at least one digit before the decimal point in all numbers in seg input.

As a sanity check, seg rejects intervals with the lower bound greater than the upper, for example 5 .. 2.

F.52.3. Precision

seg values are stored internally as pairs of 32-bit floating point numbers. This means that numbers with more than 7 significant digits will be truncated.

Numbers with 7 or fewer significant digits retain their original precision. That is, if your query returns 0.00, you will be sure that the trailing zeroes are not the artifacts of formatting: they reflect the precision of the original data. The number of leading zeroes does not affect precision: the value 0.0067 is considered to have just 2 significant digits.

F.52.4. Usage

The seg module includes a GiST index operator class for seg values. The operators supported by the GiST operator class are shown in Table F.81.
### Table F.81. Seg GiST Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>seg &lt;&lt; seg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Is the first <code>seg</code> entirely to the left of the second? <code>[a, b] &lt;&lt; [c, d]</code> is true if <code>b &lt; c</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>seg &gt;&gt; seg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Is the first <code>seg</code> entirely to the right of the second? <code>[a, b] &gt;&gt; [c, d]</code> is true if <code>a &gt; d</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>seg &amp;&lt; seg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Does the first <code>seg</code> not extend to the right of the second? <code>[a, b] &amp;&lt; [c, d]</code> is true if <code>b &lt;= d</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>seg &amp;&gt; seg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Does the first <code>seg</code> not extend to the left of the second? <code>[a, b] &amp;&gt; [c, d]</code> is true if <code>a &gt;= c</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>seg = seg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Are the two <code>seg</code>s equal?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>seg &amp;&amp; seg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Do the two <code>seg</code>s overlap?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>seg @&gt; seg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Does the first <code>seg</code> contain the second?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>seg &lt;@ seg</code> → boolean</td>
<td>Is the first <code>seg</code> contained in the second?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to the above operators, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for type `seg`. These operators first compare `(a)` to `(c)`, and if these are equal, compare `(b)` to `(d)`. That results in reasonably good sorting in most cases, which is useful if you want to use ORDER BY with this type.

### F.52.5. Notes

For examples of usage, see the regression test `sql/seg.sql`.

The mechanism that converts `(+-)` to regular ranges isn't completely accurate in determining the number of significant digits for the boundaries. For example, it adds an extra digit to the lower boundary if the resulting interval includes a power of ten:

```sql
postgres=> select '10(+-)1'::seg as seg;
         seg
---------
   9.0 .. 11             -- should be: 9 .. 11
```

The performance of an R-tree index can largely depend on the initial order of input values. It may be very helpful to sort the input table on the `seg` column; see the script `sort-segments.pl` for an example.

### F.52.6. Credits

Original author: Gene Selkov, Jr. `<selkovjr@mcs.anl.gov>`, Mathematics and Computer Science Division, Argonne National Laboratory.

My thanks are primarily to Prof. Joe Hellerstein ([https://dsf.berkeley.edu/jmh/](https://dsf.berkeley.edu/jmh/)) for elucidating the gist of the GiST ([http://gist.cs.berkeley.edu/](http://gist.cs.berkeley.edu/)). I am also grateful to all Postgres developers, present and past, for enabling myself to create my own world and live undisturbed in it. And I would like to acknowledge my gratitude to Argonne Lab and to the U.S. Department of Energy for the years of faithful support of my database research.

### F.53. sepgsql

2474
sepgsql is a loadable module that supports label-based mandatory access control (MAC) based on SELinux security policy.

**Warning**

The current implementation has significant limitations, and does not enforce mandatory access control for all actions. See Section F.53.7.

### F.53.1. Overview

This module integrates with SELinux to provide an additional layer of security checking above and beyond what is normally provided by Postgres Pro. From the perspective of SELinux, this module allows Postgres Pro to function as a user-space object manager. Each table or function access initiated by a DML query will be checked against the system security policy. This check is in addition to the usual SQL permissions checking performed by Postgres Pro.

SELinux access control decisions are made using security labels, which are represented by strings such as `system_u:object_r:sepgsql_table_t:s0`. Each access control decision involves two labels: the label of the subject attempting to perform the action, and the label of the object on which the operation is to be performed. Since these labels can be applied to any sort of object, access control decisions for objects stored within the database can be (and, with this module, are) subjected to the same general criteria used for objects of any other type, such as files. This design is intended to allow a centralized security policy to protect information assets independent of the particulars of how those assets are stored.

The **SECURITY LABEL** statement allows assignment of a security label to a database object.

### F.53.2. Installation

sepgsql can only be used on Linux 2.6.28 or higher with SELinux enabled. It is not available on any other platform. You will also need libselinux 2.1.10 or higher and selinux-policy 3.9.13 or higher (although some distributions may backport the necessary rules into older policy versions).

The `sestatus` command allows you to check the status of SELinux. A typical display is:

```
$ sestatus
SELinux status: enabled
SELinuxfs mount: /selinux
Current mode: enforcing
Mode from config file: enforcing
Policy version: 24
Policy from config file: targeted
```

If SELinux is disabled or not installed, you must set that product up first before installing this module.

To build this module, include the option `--with-selinux` in your Postgres Pro `configure` command. Be sure that the `libselinux-devel` RPM is installed at build time.

To use this module, you must include `sepgsql` in the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter in `postgresql.conf`. The module will not function correctly if loaded in any other manner. Once the module is loaded, you should execute `sepgsql.sql` in each database. This will install functions needed for security label management, and assign initial security labels.

Here is an example showing how to initialize a fresh database cluster with `sepgsql` functions and security labels installed. Adjust the paths shown as appropriate for your installation:

```
$ export PGDATA=/path/to/data/directory
$ initdb
$ vi $PGDATA/postgresql.conf
   change
   #shared_preload_libraries = '' # (change requires restart)
```
to
  shared_preload_libraries = 'sepgsql'           # (change requires restart)
$ for DBNAME in template0 template1 postgres; do
  postgres --single -F -c exit_on_error=true $DBNAME \ 
    </usr/local/pgsql/share/contrib/sepgsql.sql >/dev/null
done

Please note that you may see some or all of the following notifications depending on the particular
versions you have of libselinux and selinux-policy:

/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts:  line 33 has invalid object type db_blobs
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts:  line 36 has invalid object type db_language
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts:  line 37 has invalid object type db_language
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts:  line 38 has invalid object type db_language
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts:  line 39 has invalid object type db_language
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts:  line 40 has invalid object type db_language

These messages are harmless and should be ignored.

If the installation process completes without error, you can now start the server normally.

F.53.3. Regression Tests

Due to the nature of SELinux, running the regression tests for sepgsql requires several extra
configuration steps, some of which must be done as root. The regression tests will not be run by an
ordinary make check or make installcheck command; you must set up the configuration and then
invoke the test script manually. The tests must be run in the contrib/sepgsql directory of a configured
Postgres Pro build tree. Although they require a build tree, the tests are designed to be executed against
an installed server, that is they are comparable to make installcheck not make check.

First, set up sepgsql in a working database according to the instructions in Section F.53.2. Note that the
current operating system user must be able to connect to the database as superuser without password
authentication.

Second, build and install the policy package for the regression test. The sepgsql-regtest policy is a
special purpose policy package which provides a set of rules to be allowed during the regression tests. It
should be built from the policy source file sepgsql-regtest.te, which is done using make with a Makefile
supplied by SELinux. You will need to locate the appropriate Makefile on your system; the path shown
below is only an example. (This Makefile is usually supplied by the selinux-policy-devel or selinux-
policy RPM.) Once built, install this policy package using the semodule command, which loads supplied
policy packages into the kernel. If the package is correctly installed, semodule -l should list sepgsql-
regtest as an available policy package:

$ cd .../contrib/sepgsql
$ make -f /usr/share/selinux/devel/Makefile
$ sudo semodule -u sepgsql-regtest.pp
$ sudo semodule -l | grep sepgsql
sepgsql-regtest 1.07

Third, turn on sepgsql_regression_test_mode. For security reasons, the rules in sepgsql-regtest
are not enabled by default; the sepgsql_regression_test_mode parameter enables the rules needed to
launch the regression tests. It can be turned on using the setsebool command:

$ sudo setsebool sepgsql_regression_test_mode on
$ getsebool sepgsql_regression_test_mode

2476
Additional Supplied Modules

sepgsql_regression_test_mode --> on

Fourth, verify your shell is operating in the unconfined_t domain:

$ id -Z
unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023

See Section F.53.8 for details on adjusting your working domain, if necessary.

Finally, run the regression test script:

$ ./test_sepgsql

This script will attempt to verify that you have done all the configuration steps correctly, and then it will run the regression tests for the sepgsql module.

After completing the tests, it's recommended you disable the sepgsql_regression_test_mode parameter:

$ sudo setsebool sepgsql_regression_test_mode off

You might prefer to remove the sepgsql-regtest policy entirely:

$ sudo semodule -r sepgsql-regtest

F.53.4. GUC Parameters

sepgsql.permissive (boolean)

This parameter enables sepgsql to function in permissive mode, regardless of the system setting. The default is off. This parameter can only be set in the postgresql.conf file or on the server command line.

When this parameter is on, sepgsql functions in permissive mode, even if SELinux in general is working in enforcing mode. This parameter is primarily useful for testing purposes.

sepgsql.debug_audit (boolean)

This parameter enables the printing of audit messages regardless of the system policy settings. The default is off, which means that messages will be printed according to the system settings.

The security policy of SELinux also has rules to control whether or not particular accesses are logged. By default, access violations are logged, but allowed accesses are not.

This parameter forces all possible logging to be turned on, regardless of the system policy.

F.53.5. Features

F.53.5.1. Controlled Object Classes

The security model of SELinux describes all the access control rules as relationships between a subject entity (typically, a client of the database) and an object entity (such as a database object), each of which is identified by a security label. If access to an unlabeled object is attempted, the object is treated as if it were assigned the label unlabeled_t.

Currently, sepgsql allows security labels to be assigned to schemas, tables, columns, sequences, views, and functions. When sepgsql is in use, security labels are automatically assigned to supported database objects at creation time. This label is called a default security label, and is decided according to the system security policy, which takes as input the creator's label, the label assigned to the new object's parent object and optionally name of the constructed object.

A new database object basically inherits the security label of the parent object, except when the security policy has special rules known as type-transition rules, in which case a different label may be applied. For schemas, the parent object is the current database; for tables, sequences, views, and functions, it is the containing schema; for columns, it is the containing table.
F.53.5.2. DML Permissions

For tables, `db_table:select`, `db_table:insert`, `db_table:update` or `db_table:delete` are checked for all the referenced target tables depending on the kind of statement; in addition, `db_table:select` is also checked for all the tables that contain columns referenced in the `WHERE` or `RETURNING` clause, as a data source for `UPDATE`, and so on.

Column-level permissions will also be checked for each referenced column. `db_column:select` is checked on not only the columns being read using `SELECT`, but those being referenced in other DML statements; `db_column:update` or `db_column:insert` will also be checked for columns being modified by `UPDATE` or `INSERT`.

For example, consider:

```
UPDATE t1 SET x = 2, y = func1(y) WHERE z = 100;
```

Here, `db_column:update` will be checked for `t1.x`, since it is being updated, `db_column:{select update}` will be checked for `t1.y`, since it is both updated and referenced, and `db_column:select` will be checked for `t1.z`, since it is only referenced. `db_table:{select update}` will also be checked at the table level.

For sequences, `db_sequence:get_value` is checked when we reference a sequence object using `SELECT`; however, note that we do not currently check permissions on execution of corresponding functions such as `lastval()`.

For views, `db_view:expand` will be checked, then any other required permissions will be checked on the objects being expanded from the view, individually.

For functions, `db_procedure:{execute}` will be checked when user tries to execute a function as a part of query, or using fast-path invocation. If this function is a trusted procedure, it also checks `db_procedure:{entrypoint}` permission to check whether it can perform as entry point of trusted procedure.

In order to access any schema object, `db_schema:search` permission is required on the containing schema. When an object is referenced without schema qualification, schemas on which this permission is not present will not be searched (just as if the user did not have `USAGE` privilege on the schema). If an explicit schema qualification is present, an error will occur if the user does not have the requisite permission on the named schema.

The client must be allowed to access all referenced tables and columns, even if they originated from views which were then expanded, so that we apply consistent access control rules independent of the manner in which the table contents are referenced.

The default database privilege system allows database superusers to modify system catalogs using DML commands, and reference or modify toast tables. These operations are prohibited when `sepgsql` is enabled.

F.53.5.3. DDL Permissions

SELinux defines several permissions to control common operations for each object type; such as creation, alter, drop and relabel of security label. In addition, several object types have special permissions to control their characteristic operations; such as addition or deletion of name entries within a particular schema.

Creating a new database object requires `create` permission. SELinux will grant or deny this permission based on the client's security label and the proposed security label for the new object. In some cases, additional privileges are required:

- `CREATE DATABASE` additionally requires `getattr` permission for the source or template database.
- Creating a schema object additionally requires `add_name` permission on the parent schema.
- Creating a table additionally requires permission to create each individual table column, just as if each table column were a separate top-level object.
• Creating a function marked as LEAKPROOF additionally requires install permission. (This permission is also checked when LEAKPROOF is set for an existing function.)

When DROP command is executed, drop will be checked on the object being removed. Permissions will be also checked for objects dropped indirectly via CASCADE. Deletion of objects contained within a particular schema (tables, views, sequences and procedures) additionally requires remove_name on the schema.

When ALTER command is executed, setattr will be checked on the object being modified for each object types, except for subsidiary objects such as the indexes or triggers of a table, where permissions are instead checked on the parent object. In some cases, additional permissions are required:

• Moving an object to a new schema additionally requires remove_name permission on the old schema and add_name permission on the new one.
• Setting the LEAKPROOF attribute on a function requires install permission.
• Using SECURITY LABEL on an object additionally requires relabelfrom permission for the object in conjunction with its old security label and relabelto permission for the object in conjunction with its new security label. (In cases where multiple label providers are installed and the user tries to set a security label, but it is not managed by SELinux, only setattr should be checked here. This is currently not done due to implementation restrictions.)

F.53.5.4. Trusted Procedures

Trusted procedures are similar to security definer functions or setuid commands. SELinux provides a feature to allow trusted code to run using a security label different from that of the client, generally for the purpose of providing highly controlled access to sensitive data (e.g., rows might be omitted, or the precision of stored values might be reduced). Whether or not a function acts as a trusted procedure is controlled by its security label and the operating system security policy. For example:

```
postgres=# CREATE TABLE customer (cid int primary key, cname text, credit text);
CREATE TABLE
postgres=# SECURITY LABEL ON COLUMN customer.credit IS 'system_u:object_r:sepgsql_secret_table_t:s0';
SECURITY LABEL
postgres=# CREATE FUNCTION show_credit(int) RETURNS text AS 'SELECT regexp_replace(credit, '-[0-9]+$'', '-xxxx''', 'g') FROM customer WHERE cid = $1' LANGUAGE sql;
CREATE FUNCTION
postgres=# SECURITY LABEL ON FUNCTION show_credit(int) IS 'system_u:object_r:sepgsql_trusted_proc_exec_t:s0';
SECURITY LABEL
```

The above operations should be performed by an administrative user.

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM customer;
ERROR:  SELinux: security policy violation
postgres=# SELECT cid, cname, show_credit(cid) FROM customer;
    cid |        cname         | show_credit
----------+---------------------+---------------------
     1 | taro               | 1111-2222-3333-xxxx
     2 | hanako             | 5555-6666-7777-xxxx
(2 rows)
```

In this case, a regular user cannot reference customer.credit directly, but a trusted procedure show_credit allows the user to print the credit card numbers of customers with some of the digits masked out.
F.53.5.5. Dynamic Domain Transitions

It is possible to use SELinux's dynamic domain transition feature to switch the security label of the client process, the client domain, to a new context, if that is allowed by the security policy. The client domain needs the `setcurrent` permission and also `dyntransition` from the old to the new domain.

Dynamic domain transitions should be considered carefully, because they allow users to switch their label, and therefore their privileges, at their option, rather than (as in the case of a trusted procedure) as mandated by the system. Thus, the `dyntransition` permission is only considered safe when used to switch to a domain with a smaller set of privileges than the original one. For example:

```sql
regression=# select sepgsql_getcon();
sepgsql_getcon
-----------------
unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023
(1 row)
regression=# SELECT sepgsql_setcon('unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c1.c4');
sepgsql_setcon
-------------
t
(1 row)
regression=# SELECT sepgsql_setcon('unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c1.c1023');
ERROR:  SELinux: security policy violation
```

In this example above we were allowed to switch from the larger MCS range `c1.c1023` to the smaller range `c1.c4`, but switching back was denied.

A combination of dynamic domain transition and trusted procedure enables an interesting use case that fits the typical process life-cycle of connection pooling software. Even if your connection pooling software is not allowed to run most of SQL commands, you can allow it to switch the security label of the client using the `sepgsql_setcon()` function from within a trusted procedure; that should take some credential to authorize the request to switch the client label. After that, this session will have the privileges of the target user, rather than the connection pooler. The connection pooler can later revert the security label change by again using `sepgsql_setcon()` with NULL argument, again invoked from within a trusted procedure with appropriate permissions checks. The point here is that only the trusted procedure actually has permission to change the effective security label, and only does so when given proper credentials. Of course, for secure operation, the credential store (table, procedure definition, or whatever) must be protected from unauthorized access.

F.53.5.6. Miscellaneous

We reject the `LOAD` command across the board, because any module loaded could easily circumvent security policy enforcement.

F.53.6. Sepgsql Functions

Table F.82 shows the available functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sepgsql_getcon  ()→text</td>
<td>Returns the client domain, the current security label of the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepgsql_setcon  (text)→boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional Supplied Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sepgsql_mcstrans_in</td>
<td>Translates the given qualified MLS/MCS range into raw format if the mcstrans daemon is running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepgsql_mcstrans_out</td>
<td>Translates the given raw MLS/MCS range into qualified format if the mcstrans daemon is running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepgsql_restorecon</td>
<td>Sets up initial security labels for all objects within the current database. The argument may be NULL, or the name of a specfile to be used as alternative of the system default.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### F.53.7. Limitations

**Data Definition Language (DDL) Permissions**

Due to implementation restrictions, some DDL operations do not check permissions.

**Data Control Language (DCL) Permissions**

Due to implementation restrictions, DCL operations do not check permissions.

**Row-level access control**

Postgres Pro supports row-level access, but sepgsql does not.

**Covert channels**

sepgsql does not try to hide the existence of a certain object, even if the user is not allowed to reference it. For example, we can infer the existence of an invisible object as a result of primary key conflicts, foreign key violations, and so on, even if we cannot obtain the contents of the object. The existence of a top secret table cannot be hidden; we only hope to conceal its contents.

### F.53.8. External Resources

**SE-PostgreSQL Introduction**

This wiki page provides a brief overview, security design, architecture, administration and upcoming features.

**SELinux User's and Administrator's Guide**

This document provides a wide spectrum of knowledge to administer SELinux on your systems. It focuses primarily on Red Hat operating systems, but is not limited to them.

**Fedora SELinux FAQ**

This document answers frequently asked questions about SELinux. It focuses primarily on Fedora, but is not limited to Fedora.

### F.53.9. Author

KaiGai Kohei <kaigai@ak.jp.nec.com>

### F.54. shared_ispell

The shared_ispell module provides a shared ispell dictionary, i.e. a dictionary that's stored in shared segment. The traditional ispell implementation means that each session initializes and stores the dictionary on it's own, which means a lot of CPU/RAM is wasted.
This extension allocates an area in shared segment (you have to choose the size in advance) and then loads the dictionary into it when it's used for the first time.

**F.54.1. Functions**

The functions provided by the `shared_ispell` module are shown in Table F.83.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Returns</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shared_ispell_reset()</td>
<td>void</td>
<td>Resets the dictionaries (e.g. so that you can reload the updated files from disk). The sessions that already use the dictionaries will be forced to reinitialize them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_ispell_mem_used()</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>Returns a value of used memory of the shared segment by loaded shared dictionaries in bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_ispell_mem_available()</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>Returns a value of available memory of the shared segment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_ispell_dicts()</td>
<td>setof</td>
<td>Returns a list of dictionaries loaded in the shared segment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_ispell_stoplists()</td>
<td>setof</td>
<td>Returns a list of stopwords loaded in the shared segment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F.54.2. GUC Parameters**

`shared_ispell.max_size(int)`

Defines the maximum size of the shared segment. This is a hard limit, the shared segment is not extensible and you need to set it so that all the dictionaries fit into it and not much memory is wasted.

**F.54.3. Using the dictionary**

The module needs to allocate space in the shared memory segment. So add this to the config file (or update the current values):

```
# libraries to load
shared_preload_libraries = 'shared_ispell'

# config of the shared memory
shared_ispell.max_size = 32MB
```

To find out how much memory you actually need, use a large value (e.g. 200MB) and load all the dictionaries you want to use. Then use the `shared_ispell_mem_used()` function to find out how much memory was actually used (and set the `shared_ispell.max_size` GUC variable accordingly).

Don’t set it exactly to that value, leave there some free space, so that you can reload the dictionaries without changing the GUC max_size limit (which requires a restart of the DB). Something like 512kB should be just fine.

The extension defines a `shared_ispell` template that you may use to define custom dictionaries. E.g. you may do this:

```sql
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_shared (  
    TEMPLATE = shared_ispell,  
    DictFile = en_us,  
    AffFile = en_us,
```

2482
Additional Supplied Modules

StopWords = english
);

CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.english_shared
  ( COPY = pg_catalog.simple );

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english_shared
  ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart,
    word, hword, hword_part
  WITH english_shared, english_stem;

We can test created configuration:

SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english_shared', 'abilities');

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alias</th>
<th>description</th>
<th>token</th>
<th>dictionaries</th>
<th>dictionary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asciiword</td>
<td>Word, all ASCII</td>
<td>abilities</td>
<td>{english_shared,english_stem}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| english_shared | {ability} | (1 row)

Or you can update your own text search configuration. For example, you have the public.english dictionary. You can update it to use the shared_ispell template:

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.english
  ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart,
    word, hword, hword_part
  WITH english_shared, english_stem;

F.54.4. Author
Tomas Vondra <tomas.vondra@2ndquadrant.com>, Prague, Czech Republic

F.55. spi

The spi module provides several workable examples of using the Server Programming Interface (SPI) and triggers. While these functions are of some value in their own right, they are even more useful as examples to modify for your own purposes. The functions are general enough to be used with any table, but you have to specify table and field names (as described below) while creating a trigger.

Each of the groups of functions described below is provided as a separately-installable extension.

F.55.1. refint — Functions for Implementing Referential Integrity

check_primary_key() and check_foreign_key() are used to check foreign key constraints. (This functionality is long since superseded by the built-in foreign key mechanism, of course, but the module is still useful as an example.)

check_primary_key() checks the referencing table. To use, create a BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE trigger using this function on a table referencing another table. Specify as the trigger arguments: the referencing table's column name(s) which form the foreign key, the referenced table name, and the column names in the referenced table which form the primary/unique key. To handle multiple foreign keys, create a trigger for each reference.

check_foreign_key() checks the referenced table. To use, create a BEFORE DELETE OR UPDATE trigger using this function on a table referenced by other table(s). Specify as the trigger arguments: the number of referencing tables for which the function has to perform checking, the action if a referencing key is found (cascade — to delete the referencing row, restrict — to abort transaction if referencing keys exist, setnull — to set referencing key fields to null), the triggered table's column names which form the primary/unique key, then the referencing table name and column names (repeated for as many
Additional Supplied Modules

referencing tables as were specified by first argument). Note that the primary/unique key columns should be marked NOT NULL and should have a unique index.

There are examples in refint.example.

**F.55.2. autoinc — Functions for Autoincrementing Fields**

autoinc() is a trigger that stores the next value of a sequence into an integer field. This has some overlap with the built-in “serial column” feature, but it is not the same: autoinc() will override attempts to substitute a different field value during inserts, and optionally it can be used to increment the field during updates, too.

To use, create a BEFORE INSERT (or optionally BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE) trigger using this function. Specify two trigger arguments: the name of the integer column to be modified, and the name of the sequence object that will supply values. (Actually, you can specify any number of pairs of such names, if you’d like to update more than one autoincrementing column.)

There is an example in autoinc.example.

**F.55.3. insert_username — Functions for Tracking Who Changed a Table**

insert_username() is a trigger that stores the current user's name into a text field. This can be useful for tracking who last modified a particular row within a table.

To use, create a BEFORE INSERT and/or UPDATE trigger using this function. Specify a single trigger argument: the name of the text column to be modified.

There is an example in insert_username.example.

**F.55.4. moddatetime — Functions for Tracking Last Modification Time**

moddatetime() is a trigger that stores the current time into a timestamp field. This can be useful for tracking the last modification time of a particular row within a table.

To use, create a BEFORE UPDATE trigger using this function. Specify a single trigger argument: the name of the column to be modified. The column must be of type timestamp or timestamp with time zone.

There is an example in moddatetime.example.

**F.56. sslinfo**

The sslinfo module provides information about the SSL certificate that the current client provided when connecting to Postgres Pro. The module is useless (most functions will return NULL) if the current connection does not use SSL.

Some of the information available through this module can also be obtained using the built-in system view pg_stat_ssl.

This extension won’t build at all unless the installation was configured with --with-ssl=openssl.

**F.56.1. Functions Provided**

ssl_is_used() returns boolean

Returns true if current connection to server uses SSL, and false otherwise.

ssl_version() returns text

Returns the name of the protocol used for the SSL connection (e.g., TLSv1.0, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2 or TLSv1.3).
ssl_cipher() returns text

Returns the name of the cipher used for the SSL connection (e.g., DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA).

ssl_client_cert_present() returns boolean

Returns true if current client has presented a valid SSL client certificate to the server, and false otherwise. (The server might or might not be configured to require a client certificate.)

ssl_client_serial() returns numeric

Returns serial number of current client certificate. The combination of certificate serial number and certificate issuer is guaranteed to uniquely identify a certificate (but not its owner — the owner ought to regularly change their keys, and get new certificates from the issuer).

So, if you run your own CA and allow only certificates from this CA to be accepted by the server, the serial number is the most reliable (albeit not very mnemonic) means to identify a user.

ssl_client_dn() returns text

Returns the full subject of the current client certificate, converting character data into the current database encoding. It is assumed that if you use non-ASCII characters in the certificate names, your database is able to represent these characters, too. If your database uses the SQL_ASCII encoding, non-ASCII characters in the name will be represented as UTF-8 sequences.

The result looks like /CN=Somebody /C=Some country/O=Some organization.

ssl_issuer_dn() returns text

Returns the full issuer name of the current client certificate, converting character data into the current database encoding. Encoding conversions are handled the same as for ssl_client_dn.

The combination of the return value of this function with the certificate serial number uniquely identifies the certificate.

This function is really useful only if you have more than one trusted CA certificate in your server’s certificate authority file, or if this CA has issued some intermediate certificate authority certificates.

ssl_client_dn_field(fieldname text) returns text

This function returns the value of the specified field in the certificate subject, or NULL if the field is not present. Field names are string constants that are converted into ASN1 object identifiers using the OpenSSL object database. The following values are acceptable:

- commonName (alias CN)
- surname (alias SN)
- name
- givenName (alias GN)
- countryName (alias C)
- localityName (alias L)
- stateOrProvinceName (alias ST)
- organizationName (alias O)
- organizationalUnitName (alias OU)
- title
- description
- initials
- postalCode
- streetAddress
- generationQualifier
- description
dnQualifier
- x500UniqueIdentifier
- pseudonym
role
emailAddress

All of these fields are optional, except commonName. It depends entirely on your CA’s policy which of
them would be included and which wouldn’t. The meaning of these fields, however, is strictly defined
by the X.500 and X.509 standards, so you cannot just assign arbitrary meaning to them.

ssl_issuer_field(fieldname text) returns text

Same as ssl_client_dn_field, but for the certificate issuer rather than the certificate subject.

ssl_extension_info() returns setof record

Provide information about extensions of client certificate: extension name, extension value, and if
it is a critical extension.

F.56.2. Author

Victor Wagner <vitus@cryptocom.ru>, Cryptocom LTD

Dmitry Voronin <carriingfate92@yandex.ru>

E-Mail of Cryptocom OpenSSL development group: <openssl@cryptocom.ru>

F.57. tablefunc

The tablefunc module includes various functions that return tables (that is, multiple rows). These
functions are useful both in their own right and as examples of how to write C functions that return
multiple rows.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE
privilege on the current database.

F.57.1. Functions Provided

Table F.84 summarizes the functions provided by the tablefunc module.

Table F.84. tablefunc Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>normal_rand(numvals integer, mean float8, stddev float8)→setof float8</td>
<td>Produces a set of normally distributed random values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crosstab(sql text )→setof record</td>
<td>Produces a “pivot table” containing row names plus N value columns, where N is determined by the row type specified in the calling query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crosstabN(sql text )→setof table_crosstab_ N</td>
<td>Produces a “pivot table” containing row names plus N value columns. crosstab2, crosstab3, and crosstab4 are predefined, but you can create additional crosstabN functions as described below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crosstab(source_sql text, category_sql text )→setof record</td>
<td>Produces a “pivot table” with the value columns specified by a second query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crosstab(sql text, N integer )→setof record</td>
<td>Obsolete version of crosstab(text) . The parameter N is now ignored, since the number of value columns is always determined by the calling query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectby (relname text, keyid_fld text, parent_keyid_fld text [, orderby_fld text ], start_with text, max_depth integer [, branch_delim text ] )→setof record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2486
### F.57.1.1. normal_rand

normal_rand(int numvals, float8 mean, float8 stddev) returns setof float8

normal_rand produces a set of normally distributed random values (Gaussian distribution).

*numvals* is the number of values to be returned from the function. *mean* is the mean of the normal distribution of values and *stddev* is the standard deviation of the normal distribution of values.

For example, this call requests 1000 values with a mean of 5 and a standard deviation of 3:

```sql
test=# SELECT * FROM normal_rand(1000, 5, 3);
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>normal_rand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.56556322244898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.10040991424657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.36957140345079</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-0.369151492880995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.283600703686639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.82992125404908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.71308014517282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.49639286969028</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1000 rows)
```

### F.57.1.2. crosstab(text)

crosstab(text sql)
crosstab(text sql, int N)

The *crosstab* function is used to produce “pivot” displays, wherein data is listed across the page rather than down. For example, we might have data like

```
row1    val11
row1    val12
row1    val13
...
row2    val21
row2    val22
row2    val23
...
```

which we wish to display like

```
row1    val11    val12    val13    ...
row2    val21    val22    val23    ...
...
```

The *crosstab* function takes a text parameter that is an SQL query producing raw data formatted in the first way, and produces a table formatted in the second way.

The *sql* parameter is an SQL statement that produces the source set of data. This statement must return one *row_name* column, one *category* column, and one *value* column. *N* is an obsolete parameter, ignored if supplied (formerly this had to match the number of output value columns, but now that is determined by the calling query).

For example, the provided query might produce a set something like:
The `crosstab` function is declared to return `setof record`, so the actual names and types of the output columns must be defined in the `FROM` clause of the calling `SELECT` statement, for example:

```sql
SELECT * FROM crosstab('...') AS ct(row_name text, category_1 text, category_2 text);
```

This example produces a set something like:

```
<== value  columns  ==>
 row_name   category_1   category_2
----------+------------+------------
 row1        val1         val2
 row2        val5         val6
```

The `FROM` clause must define the output as one `row_name` column (of the same data type as the first result column of the SQL query) followed by N `value` columns (all of the same data type as the third result column of the SQL query). You can set up as many output value columns as you wish. The names of the output columns are up to you.

The `crosstab` function produces one output row for each consecutive group of input rows with the same `row_name` value. It fills the output `value` columns, left to right, with the `value` fields from these rows. If there are fewer rows in a group than there are output `value` columns, the extra output columns are filled with nulls; if there are more rows, the extra input rows are skipped.

In practice the SQL query should always specify `ORDER BY 1,2` to ensure that the input rows are properly ordered, that is, values with the same `row_name` are brought together and correctly ordered within the row. Notice that `crosstab` itself does not pay any attention to the second column of the query result; it's just there to be ordered by, to control the order in which the third-column values appear across the page.

Here is a complete example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE ct(id SERIAL, rowid TEXT, attribute TEXT, value TEXT);
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value) VALUES('test1','att1','val1');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value) VALUES('test1','att2','val2');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value) VALUES('test1','att3','val3');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value) VALUES('test1','att4','val4');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value) VALUES('test2','att1','val5');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value) VALUES('test2','att2','val6');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value) VALUES('test2','att3','val7');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value) VALUES('test2','att4','val8');

SELECT *
FROM crosstab('select rowid, attribute, value
               from ct
               where attribute = ''att2'' or attribute = ''att3''
               order by 1,2')
       AS ct(row_name text, category_1 text, category_2 text, category_3 text);
```

```
 row_name | category_1 | category_2 | category_3
----------|------------|------------|------------
```
You can avoid always having to write out a `FROM` clause to define the output columns, by setting up a custom crosstab function that has the desired output row type wired into its definition. This is described in the next section. Another possibility is to embed the required `FROM` clause in a view definition.

**Note**

See also the `\crosstabview` command in psql, which provides functionality similar to `crosstab()`.

---

### F.57.1.3. crosstabN(text)

`crosstabN(text sql)`

The `crosstabN` functions are examples of how to set up custom wrappers for the general crosstab function, so that you need not write out column names and types in the calling `SELECT` query. The `tablefunc` module includes `crosstab2`, `crosstab3`, and `crosstab4`, whose output row types are defined as

```sql
CREATE TYPE tablefunc_crosstab_N AS (
    row_name TEXT,
    category_1 TEXT,
    category_2 TEXT,
    ...
    category_N TEXT
);
```

Thus, these functions can be used directly when the input query produces `row_name` and `value` columns of type `text`, and you want 2, 3, or 4 output values columns. In all other ways they behave exactly as described above for the general `crosstab` function.

For instance, the example given in the previous section would also work as

```sql
SELECT *
FROM crosstab3(
    'select rowid, attribute, value
    from ct
    where attribute = ''att2'' or attribute = ''att3''
    order by 1,2');
```

These functions are provided mostly for illustration purposes. You can create your own return types and functions based on the underlying `crosstab()` function. There are two ways to do it:

- Create a composite type describing the desired output columns, similar to the examples in `contrib/tablefunc/tablefunc--1.0.sql`. Then define a unique function name accepting one `text` parameter and returning `setof your_type_name`, but linking to the same underlying `crosstab()` function. For example, if your source data produces `row_names` that are `text`, and values that are `float8`, and you want 5 value columns:

```sql
CREATE TYPE my_crosstab_float8_5_cols AS (
    my_row_name text,
    my_category_1 float8,
    my_category_2 float8,
    my_category_3 float8,
    my_category_4 float8,
    my_category_5 float8
);```
Additional Supplied Modules

my_category_5 float8
;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION crosstab_float8_5_cols(text)
RETURNS setof my_crosstab_float8_5_cols
AS '$libdir/tablefunc','crosstab' LANGUAGE C STABLE STRICT;

• Use OUT parameters to define the return type implicitly. The same example could also be done this way:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION crosstab_float8_5_cols(
  IN text,
  OUT my_row_name text,
  OUT my_category_1 float8,
  OUT my_category_2 float8,
  OUT my_category_3 float8,
  OUT my_category_4 float8,
  OUT my_category_5 float8)
RETURNS setof record
AS '$libdir/tablefunc','crosstab' LANGUAGE C STABLE STRICT;

F.57.1.4. crosstab(text, text)

crosstab(text source_sql, text category_sql)

The main limitation of the single-parameter form of crosstab is that it treats all values in a group alike, inserting each value into the first available column. If you want the value columns to correspond to specific categories of data, and some groups might not have data for some of the categories, that doesn't work well. The two-parameter form of crosstab handles this case by providing an explicit list of the categories corresponding to the output columns.

source_sql is an SQL statement that produces the source set of data. This statement must return one row_name column, one category column, and one value column. It may also have one or more “extra” columns. The row_name column must be first. The category and value columns must be the last two columns, in that order. Any columns between row_name and category are treated as “extra”. The “extra” columns are expected to be the same for all rows with the same row_name value.

For example, source_sql might produce a set something like:

```
SELECT row_name, extra_col, cat, value FROM foo ORDER BY 1;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>row_name</th>
<th>extra_col</th>
<th>cat</th>
<th>value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>row1</td>
<td>extra1</td>
<td>cat1</td>
<td>val1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row1</td>
<td>extra1</td>
<td>cat2</td>
<td>val2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row1</td>
<td>extra1</td>
<td>cat4</td>
<td>val4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row2</td>
<td>extra2</td>
<td>cat1</td>
<td>val5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row2</td>
<td>extra2</td>
<td>cat2</td>
<td>val6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row2</td>
<td>extra2</td>
<td>cat3</td>
<td>val7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row2</td>
<td>extra2</td>
<td>cat4</td>
<td>val8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

category_sql is an SQL statement that produces the set of categories. This statement must return only one column. It must produce at least one row, or an error will be generated. Also, it must not produce duplicate values, or an error will be generated. category_sql might be something like:

```
SELECT DISTINCT cat FROM foo ORDER BY 1;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cat1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **crosstab** function is declared to return `setof record`, so the actual names and types of the output columns must be defined in the **FROM clause** of the calling **SELECT** statement, for example:

```sql
SELECT * FROM crosstab('...', '...')
AS ct(row_name text, extra text, cat1 text, cat2 text, cat3 text, cat4 text);
```

This will produce a result something like:

```
<== value columns ==>   
row_name extra  cat1  cat2  cat3  cat4
---------+-------+------+------+------+------
row1     extra1  val1  val2          val4
row2     extra2  val5  val6   val7   val8
```

The **FROM clause** must define the proper number of output columns of the proper data types. If there are \(N\) columns in the **source_sql** query's result, the first \(N-2\) of them must match up with the first \(N-2\) output columns. The remaining output columns must have the type of the last column of the **source_sql** query's result, and there must be exactly as many of them as there are rows in the **category_sql** query's result.

The **crosstab** function produces one output row for each consecutive group of input rows with the same **row_name** value. The output **row_name** column, plus any “extra” columns, are copied from the first row of the group. The output **value** columns are filled with the **value** fields from rows having matching **category** values. If a row's **category** does not match any output of the **category_sql** query, its **value** is ignored. Output columns whose matching category is not present in any input row of the group are filled with nulls.

In practice the **source_sql** query should always specify `ORDER BY 1` to ensure that values with the same **row_name** are brought together. However, ordering of the categories within a group is not important. Also, it is essential to be sure that the order of the **category_sql** query’s output matches the specified output column order.

Here are two complete examples:

```sql
create table sales(year int, month int, qty int);
insert into sales values(2007, 1, 1000);
insert into sales values(2007, 2, 1500);
insert into sales values(2007, 7, 500);
insert into sales values(2007, 11, 1500);
insert into sales values(2007, 12, 2000);
insert into sales values(2008, 1, 1000);

select * from crosstab(  
  'select year, month, qty from sales order by 1',  
  'select m from generate_series(1,12) m'  
) as (  
  year int,  
  "Jan" int,  
  "Feb" int,  
  "Mar" int,  
  "Apr" int,  
  "May" int,  
  "Jun" int,  
  "Jul" int,  
  "Aug" int,  
  "Sep" int,  
  "Oct" int,  
  "Nov" int,  
  "Dec" int
```

2491
CREATE TABLE cth(rowid text, rowdt timestamp, attribute text, val text);
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test1','01 March 2003','temperature','42');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test1','01 March 2003','test_result','PASS');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test1','01 March 2003','volts','2.6987');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test2','02 March 2003','temperature','53');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test2','02 March 2003','test_result','FAIL');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test2','02 March 2003','test_startdate','01 March 2003');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test2','02 March 2003','volts','3.1234');

SELECT * FROM crosstab
{
  'SELECT rowid, rowdt, attribute, val FROM cth ORDER BY 1',
  'SELECT DISTINCT attribute FROM cth ORDER BY 1'
}
AS
{
  rowid text,
  rowdt timestamp,
  temperature int4,
  test_result text,
  test_startdate timestamp,
  volts float8
};

| rowid |          rowdt           | temperature | test_result |      test_startdate |
|-------|--------------------------|-------------+-------------|---------------------|
|       |                         | 42          | PASS        |                    |
|       |                         | 2.6987      |             |                    |
| test2 | Sun Mar 02 00:00:00 2003 | 53          | FAIL        | Sat Mar 01 00:00:00 |
|       | 3.1234                  |             |             |                    |

You can create predefined functions to avoid having to write out the result column names and types in each query. See the examples in the previous section. The underlying C function for this form of crosstab is named crosstab_hash.

**F.57.1.5. connectby**

connectby(text relname, text keyid_fld, text parent_keyid_fld [, text orderby_fld ], text start_with, int max_depth [, text branch_delim ])

The connectby function produces a display of hierarchical data that is stored in a table. The table must have a key field that uniquely identifies rows, and a parent-key field that references the parent (if any) of each row. connectby can display the sub-tree descending from any row.

Table F.85 explains the parameters.

**Table F.85. connectby Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relname</td>
<td>Name of the source relation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keyidFld</td>
<td>Name of the key field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent_keyidFld</td>
<td>Name of the parent-key field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orderbyFld</td>
<td>Name of the field to order siblings by (optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>startWith</td>
<td>Key value of the row to start at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDepth</td>
<td>Maximum depth to descend to, or zero for unlimited depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branchDelim</td>
<td>String to separate keys with in branch output (optional)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The key and parent-key fields can be any data type, but they must be the same type. Note that the `startWith` value must be entered as a text string, regardless of the type of the key field.

The `connectby` function is declared to return `setof record`, so the actual names and types of the output columns must be defined in the `FROM` clause of the calling `SELECT` statement, for example:

```sql
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid', 'pos', 'row2', 0, '')
AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int, branch text, pos int);
```

The first two output columns are used for the current row's key and its parent row's key; they must match the type of the table's key field. The third output column is the depth in the tree and must be of type `integer`. If a `branchDelim` parameter was given, the next output column is the branch display and must be of type `text`. Finally, if an `orderbyFld` parameter was given, the last output column is a serial number, and must be of type `integer`.

The “branch” output column shows the path of keys taken to reach the current row. The keys are separated by the specified `branchDelim` string. If no branch display is wanted, omit both the `branchDelim` parameter and the branch column in the output column list.

If the ordering of siblings of the same parent is important, include the `orderbyFld` parameter to specify which field to order siblings by. This field can be of any sortable data type. The output column list must include a final integer serial-number column, if and only if `orderbyFld` is specified.

The parameters representing table and field names are copied as-is into the SQL queries that `connectby` generates internally. Therefore, include double quotes if the names are mixed-case or contain special characters. You may also need to schema-qualify the table name.

In large tables, performance will be poor unless there is an index on the parent-key field.

It is important that the `branchDelim` string not appear in any key values, else `connectby` may incorrectly report an infinite-recursion error. Note that if `branchDelim` is not provided, a default value of `-` is used for recursion detection purposes.

Here is an example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE connectby_tree(keyid text, parent_keyid text, pos int);

INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row1',NULL, 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row2','row1', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row3','row1', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row4','row2', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row5','row2', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row6','row4', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row7','row3', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row8','row6', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row9','row5', 0);
```

2493
### Additional Supplied Modules

-- with branch, without orderby_fld (order of results is not guaranteed)

```sql
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid', 'row2', 0, '~')
AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int, branch text);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keyid</th>
<th>parent_keyid</th>
<th>level</th>
<th>branch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>row2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>row2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row4</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>row2~row4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row6</td>
<td>row4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>row2<del>row4</del>row6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row8</td>
<td>row6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>row2<del>row4</del>row6~row8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row5</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>row2~row5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row9</td>
<td>row5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>row2<del>row5</del>row9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6 rows)

-- without branch, without orderby_fld (order of results is not guaranteed)

```sql
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid', 'row2', 0)
AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keyid</th>
<th>parent_keyid</th>
<th>level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>row2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row4</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row6</td>
<td>row4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row8</td>
<td>row6</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row5</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row9</td>
<td>row5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6 rows)

-- with branch, with orderby_fld (notice that row5 comes before row4)

```sql
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid', 'pos', 'row2', 0, '
AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int, branch text, pos int);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keyid</th>
<th>parent_keyid</th>
<th>level</th>
<th>branch</th>
<th>pos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>row2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row5</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>row2~row5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row9</td>
<td>row5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>row2<del>row5</del>row9</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row4</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>row2~row4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row6</td>
<td>row4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>row2<del>row4</del>row6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row8</td>
<td>row6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>row2<del>row4</del>row6~row8</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6 rows)

-- without branch, with orderby_fld (notice that row5 comes before row4)

```sql
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid', 'pos', 'row2', 0)
AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int, pos int);
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keyid</th>
<th>parent_keyid</th>
<th>level</th>
<th>pos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>row2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row5</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row9</td>
<td>row5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row4</td>
<td>row2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row6</td>
<td>row4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row8</td>
<td>row6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6 rows)

### F.57.2. Author

Joe Conway

### F.58. tcn

2494
The `tcn` module provides a trigger function that notifies listeners of changes to any table on which it is attached. It must be used as an **AFTER trigger** **FOR EACH ROW**.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have **CREATE** privilege on the current database.

Only one parameter may be supplied to the function in a **CREATE TRIGGER** statement, and that is optional. If supplied it will be used for the channel name for the notifications. If omitted `tcn` will be used for the channel name.

The payload of the notifications consists of the table name, a letter to indicate which type of operation was performed, and column name/value pairs for primary key columns. Each part is separated from the next by a comma. For ease of parsing using regular expressions, table and column names are always wrapped in double quotes, and data values are always wrapped in single quotes. Embedded quotes are doubled.

A brief example of using the extension follows.

```sql
test=# create table tcndata
    (a int not null,
     b date not null,
     c text,
     primary key (a, b))
CREATE TABLE

CREATE TRIGGER tcndata_tcn_trigger
    after insert or update or delete on tcndata
    for each row execute function triggered_change_notification();

CREATE TRIGGER

LISTEN

Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload ""tcndata",I,"a"='1","b"='2012-12-22'" received from server process with PID 22770.
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload ""tcndata",I,"a"='1","b"='2012-12-23'" received from server process with PID 22770.
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload ""tcndata",I,"a"='2","b"='2012-12-23'" received from server process with PID 22770.

Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload ""tcndata",U,"a"='1","b"='2012-12-22'" received from server process with PID 22770.
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload ""tcndata",U,"a"='1","b"='2012-12-23'" received from server process with PID 22770.

Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload ""tcndata",D,"a"='1","b"='2012-12-22'" received from server process with PID 22770.
```

F.59. **test_decoding**

`test_decoding` is an example of a logical decoding output plugin. It doesn't do anything especially useful, but can serve as a starting point for developing your own output plugin.

`test_decoding` receives WAL through the logical decoding mechanism and decodes it into text representations of the operations performed.
Typical output from this plugin, used over the SQL logical decoding interface, might be:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_get_changes('test_slot', NULL, NULL, 'include-xids', '0');
   lsn     | xid |                       data
-----------------+-----+--------------------------------------------------
0/16D30F8 | 691 | BEGIN
0/16D32A0 | 691 | table public.data: INSERT: id[int4]:2 data[text]:'arg'
0/16D32A0 | 691 | table public.data: INSERT: id[int4]:3 data[text]:'demo'
0/16D32A0 | 691 | COMMIT
0/16D32D8 | 692 | BEGIN
0/16D3398 | 692 | table public.data: DELETE: id[int4]:2
0/16D3398 | 692 | table public.data: DELETE: id[int4]:3
0/16D3398 | 692 | COMMIT
(8 rows)
```

We can also get the changes of the in-progress transaction, and the typical output might be:

```
postgres[33712]=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_get_changes('test_slot', NULL, NULL, 'stream-changes', '1');
   lsn     | xid |                       data
-----------------+-----+--------------------------------------------------
0/16B21F8 | 503 | opening a streamed block for transaction TXN 503
0/16B21F8 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16B2300 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16B2408 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16BEBA0 | 503 | closing a streamed block for transaction TXN 503
0/16B21F8 | 503 | opening a streamed block for transaction TXN 503
0/16BECA8 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16BEDB0 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16BEEB8 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16BEBA0 | 503 | closing a streamed block for transaction TXN 503
```

F.60. tsm_system_rows

The `tsm_system_rows` module provides the table sampling method `SYSTEM_ROWS`, which can be used in the `TABLESAMPLE` clause of a `SELECT` command.

This table sampling method accepts a single integer argument that is the maximum number of rows to read. The resulting sample will always contain exactly that many rows, unless the table does not contain enough rows, in which case the whole table is selected.

Like the built-in `SYSTEM` sampling method, `SYSTEM_ROWS` performs block-level sampling, so that the sample is not completely random but may be subject to clustering effects, especially if only a small number of rows are requested.

`SYSTEM_ROWS` does not support the `REPEATABLE` clause.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

F.60.1. Examples

Here is an example of selecting a sample of a table with `SYSTEM_ROWS`. First install the extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION tsm_system_rows;
```

Then you can use it in a `SELECT` command, for instance:

```
SELECT * FROM my_table TABLESAMPLE SYSTEM_ROWS(100);
```
This command will return a sample of 100 rows from the table my_table (unless the table does not have 100 visible rows, in which case all its rows are returned).

**F.61. tsm_system_time**

The tsm_system_time module provides the table sampling method SYSTEM_TIME, which can be used in the TABLESAMPLE clause of a SELECT command.

This table sampling method accepts a single floating-point argument that is the maximum number of milliseconds to spend reading the table. This gives you direct control over how long the query takes, at the price that the size of the sample becomes hard to predict. The resulting sample will contain as many rows as could be read in the specified time, unless the whole table has been read first.

Like the built-in SYSTEM sampling method, SYSTEM_TIME performs block-level sampling, so that the sample is not completely random but may be subject to clustering effects, especially if only a small number of rows are selected.

SYSTEM_TIME does not support the REPEATABLE clause.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

**F.61.1. Examples**

Here is an example of selecting a sample of a table with SYSTEM_TIME. First install the extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION tsm_system_time;
```

Then you can use it in a SELECT command, for instance:

```
SELECT * FROM my_table TABLESAMPLE SYSTEM_TIME(1000);
```

This command will return as large a sample of my_table as it can read in 1 second (1000 milliseconds). Of course, if the whole table can be read in under 1 second, all its rows will be returned.

**F.62. unaccent**

unaccent is a text search dictionary that removes accents (diacritic signs) from lexemes. It’s a filtering dictionary, which means its output is always passed to the next dictionary (if any), unlike the normal behavior of dictionaries. This allows accent-insensitive processing for full text search.

The current implementation of unaccent cannot be used as a normalizing dictionary for the thesaurus dictionary.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

**F.62.1. Configuration**

An unaccent dictionary accepts the following options:

- **RULES** is the base name of the file containing the list of translation rules. This file must be stored in $$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/$$ (where $$SHAREDIR$$ means the Postgres Pro installation’s shared-data directory). Its name must end in .rules (which is not to be included in the RULES parameter).

The rules file has the following format:

- Each line represents one translation rule, consisting of a character with accent followed by a character without accent. The first is translated into the second. For example,

  À      A
The two characters must be separated by whitespace, and any leading or trailing whitespace on a line is ignored.

- Alternatively, if only one character is given on a line, instances of that character are deleted; this is useful in languages where accents are represented by separate characters.

- Actually, each “character” can be any string not containing whitespace, so `unaccent` dictionaries could be used for other sorts of substring substitutions besides diacritic removal.

- As with other Postgres Pro text search configuration files, the rules file must be stored in UTF-8 encoding. The data is automatically translated into the current database’s encoding when loaded. Any lines containing untranslatable characters are silently ignored, so that rules files can contain rules that are not applicable in the current encoding.

A more complete example, which is directly useful for most European languages, can be found in `unaccent.rules`, which is installed in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/` when the `unaccent` module is installed. This rules file translates characters with accents to the same characters without accents, and it also expands ligatures into the equivalent series of simple characters (for example, ÅE to AE).

### F.62.2. Usage

Installing the `unaccent` extension creates a text search template `unaccent` and a dictionary `unaccent` based on it. The `unaccent` dictionary has the default parameter setting `RULES='unaccent'`, which makes it immediately usable with the standard `unaccent.rules` file. If you wish, you can alter the parameter, for example:

```sql
mydb=# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY unaccent (RULES='my_rules');
```

or create new dictionaries based on the template.

To test the dictionary, you can try:

```sql
mydb=# select ts_lexize('unaccent','Hôtel');
```

```text
{Hotel}
(1 row)
```

Here is an example showing how to insert the `unaccent` dictionary into a text search configuration:

```sql
mydb=# CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION fr ( COPY = french );
mydb=# ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION fr
ALTER MAPPING FOR hword, hword_part, word
    WITH unaccent, french_stem;
mydb=# select to_tsvector('fr','Hôtels de la Mer');
```

```text
to_tsvector
-------------------
'hotel':1 'mer':4
(1 row)
```

```sql
mydb=# select to_tsvector('fr','Hôtel de la Mer') @@ to_tsquery('fr','Hotels');
```

```text
?column?
----------
t
(1 row)
```
mydb=# select ts_headline('fr','Hôtel de la Mer',to_tsquery('fr','Hotels'));

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ts_headline</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;b&gt;Hôtel&lt;/b&gt; de la Mer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 row)

F.62.3. Functions

The `unaccent()` function removes accents (diacritic signs) from a given string. Basically, it's a wrapper around `unaccent`-type dictionaries, but it can be used outside normal text search contexts.

```
unaccent([dictionary regdictionary, ] string text) returns text
```

If the `dictionary` argument is omitted, the text search dictionary named `unaccent` and appearing in the same schema as the `unaccent()` function itself is used.

For example:

```
SELECT unaccent('unaccent', 'Hôtel');
SELECT unaccent('Hôtel');
```

F.63. uuid-ossp

The `uuid-ossp` module provides functions to generate universally unique identifiers (UUIDs) using one of several standard algorithms. There are also functions to produce certain special UUID constants. This module is only necessary for special requirements beyond what is available in core PostgreSQL. See Section 9.14 for built-in ways to generate UUIDs.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

F.63.1. uuid-ossp Functions

Table F.86 shows the functions available to generate UUIDs. The relevant standards ITU-T Rec. X.667, ISO/IEC 9834-8:2005, and RFC 4122 specify four algorithms for generating UUIDs, identified by the version numbers 1, 3, 4, and 5. (There is no version 2 algorithm.) Each of these algorithms could be suitable for a different set of applications.

Table F.86. Functions for UUID Generation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>uuid_generate_v1</code></td>
<td>() → uuid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generates a version 1 UUID. This involves the MAC address of the computer and a time stamp. Note that UUIDs of this kind reveal the identity of the computer that created the identifier and the time at which it did so, which might make it unsuitable for certain security-sensitive applications.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>uuid_generate_v1mc</code></td>
<td>() → uuid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generates a version 1 UUID, but uses a random multicast MAC address instead of the real MAC address of the computer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>uuid_generate_v3</code></td>
<td>(namespace uuid, name text) → uuid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generates a version 3 UUID in the given namespace using the specified input name. The namespace should be one of the special constants produced by the <code>uuid_ns_*()</code> functions shown in Table F.87. (It could be any UUID in theory.) The name is an identifier in the selected namespace.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SELECT uuid_generate_v3(uuid_ns_url(), 'http://www.postgresql.org');</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### F.63.2. Building `uuid-ossp`

Historically this module depended on the OSSP UUID library, which accounts for the module's name. While the OSSP UUID library can still be found at [http://www.ossp.org/pkg/lib/uuid/](http://www.ossp.org/pkg/lib/uuid/), it is not well maintained, and is becoming increasingly difficult to port to newer platforms. `uuid-ossp` can now be built without the OSSP library on some platforms. On FreeBSD, NetBSD, and some other BSD-derived platforms, suitable UUID creation functions are included in the core `libc` library. On Linux, macOS, and some other platforms, suitable functions are provided in the `libuuid` library, which originally came from the e2fsprogs project (though on modern Linux it is considered part of `util-linux-ng`). When invoking `configure`, specify `--with-uuid=bsd` to use the BSD functions, or `--with-uuid=e2fs` to use e2fsprogs' `libuuid`, or `--with-uuid=ossp` to use the OSSP UUID library. More than one of these libraries might be available on a particular machine, so `configure` does not automatically choose one.

### F.63.3. Author

Peter Eisentraut <peter_e@gmx.net>

### F.64. xml2

The `xml2` module provides XPath querying and XSLT functionality.

### F.64.1. Deprecation Notice

From PostgreSQL 8.3 on, there is XML-related functionality based on the SQL/XML standard in the core server. That functionality covers XML syntax checking and XPath queries, which is what this module does, and more, but the API is not at all compatible. It is planned that this module will be removed in a
future version of Postgres Pro in favor of the newer standard API, so you are encouraged to try converting
your applications. If you find that some of the functionality of this module is not available in an adequate
form with the newer API, please explain your issue to <pgsql-hackers@lists.postgresql.org> so that
the deficiency can be addressed.

F.64.2. Description of Functions

Table F.88 shows the functions provided by this module. These functions provide straightforward XML
parsing and XPath queries.

Table F.88. xml2 Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xml_valid (document text) → boolean</td>
<td>Parses the given document and returns true if the document is well-formed XML. (Note: this is an alias for the standard Postgres Pro function xml_is_well_formed(). The name xml_valid() is technically incorrect since validity and well-formedness have different meanings in XML.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xpath_string (document text, query text) → text</td>
<td>Evaluates the XPath query on the supplied document, and casts the result to text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xpath_number (document text, query text) → real</td>
<td>Evaluates the XPath query on the supplied document, and casts the result to real.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xpath_bool (document text, query text) → boolean</td>
<td>Evaluates the XPath query on the supplied document, and casts the result to boolean.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| xpath_nodeset (document text, query text, toptag text, itemtag text) → text | Evaluates the query on the document and wraps the result in XML tags. If the result is multivalued, the output will look like:

  <toptag>
  <itemtag>Value 1 which could be an XML fragment</itemtag>
  <itemtag>Value 2....</itemtag>
  </toptag>

  If either toptag or itemtag is an empty string, the relevant tag is omitted. |
| xpath_nodeset (document text, query text, itemtag text) → text | Like xpath_nodeset(document, query, toptag, itemtag) but result omits toptag. |
| xpath_nodeset (document text, query text) → text | Like xpath_nodeset(document, query, toptag, itemtag) but result omits both tags. |
| xpath_list (document text, query text, separator text) → text | Evaluates the query on the document and returns multiple values separated by the specified separator, for example Value 1,Value 2,Value 3 if separator is , . |
| xpath_list (document text, query text) → text | This is a wrapper for the above function that uses , as the separator. |

F.64.3. xpath_table

xpath_table(text key, text document, text relation, text xpaths, text criteria) returns setof record

xpath_table is a table function that evaluates a set of XPath queries on each of a set of documents and
returns the results as a table. The primary key field from the original document table is returned as the first column of the result so that the result set can readily be used in joins. The parameters are described in Table F.89.
Table F.89. xpath_table Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>the name of the “key” field — this is just a field to be used as the first column of the output table, i.e., it identifies the record from which each output row came (see note below about multiple values)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>document</td>
<td>the name of the field containing the XML document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation</td>
<td>the name of the table or view containing the documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xpaths</td>
<td>one or more XPath expressions, separated by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criteria</td>
<td>the contents of the WHERE clause. This cannot be omitted, so use true or 1=1 if you want to process all the rows in the relation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These parameters (except the XPath strings) are just substituted into a plain SQL SELECT statement, so you have some flexibility — the statement is

```sql
SELECT <key>, <document> FROM <relation> WHERE <criteria>
```

so those parameters can be anything valid in those particular locations. The result from this SELECT needs to return exactly two columns (which it will unless you try to list multiple fields for key or document). Beware that this simplistic approach requires that you validate any user-supplied values to avoid SQL injection attacks.

The function has to be used in a FROM expression, with an AS clause to specify the output columns; for example

```sql
SELECT * FROM
xpath_table('article_id',
  'article_xml',
  'articles',
  '/article/author|/article/pages|/article/title',
  'date_entered > ''2003-01-01'' ')
AS t(article_id integer, author text, page_count integer, title text);
```

The AS clause defines the names and types of the columns in the output table. The first is the “key” field and the rest correspond to the XPath queries. If there are more XPath queries than result columns, the extra queries will be ignored. If there are more result columns than XPath queries, the extra columns will be NULL.

Notice that this example defines the page_count result column as an integer. The function deals internally with string representations, so when you say you want an integer in the output, it will take the string representation of the XPath result and use Postgres Pro input functions to transform it into an integer (or whatever type the AS clause requests). An error will result if it can't do this — for example if the result is empty — so you may wish to just stick to text as the column type if you think your data has any problems.

The calling SELECT statement doesn't necessarily have to be just SELECT * — it can reference the output columns by name or join them to other tables. The function produces a virtual table with which you can perform any operation you wish (e.g., aggregation, joining, sorting etc). So we could also have:

```sql
SELECT t.title, p.fullname, p.email
FROM xpath_table('article_id', 'article_xml', 'articles',
  '/article/title|/article/author/@id',
  'xpath_string(article_xml,"'/article/@date'") > ''2003-03-20'' ')
AS t(article_id integer, title text, author_id integer),
  tblPeopleInfo AS p
WHERE t.author_id = p.person_id;
```

as a more complicated example. Of course, you could wrap all of this in a view for convenience.
F.64.3.1. Multivalued Results

The xpath_table function assumes that the results of each XPath query might be multivalued, so the number of rows returned by the function may not be the same as the number of input documents. The first row returned contains the first result from each query, the second row the second result from each query. If one of the queries has fewer values than the others, null values will be returned instead.

In some cases, a user will know that a given XPath query will return only a single result (perhaps a unique document identifier) — if used alongside an XPath query returning multiple results, the single-valued result will appear only on the first row of the result. The solution to this is to use the key field as part of a join against a simpler XPath query. As an example:

```sql
CREATE TABLE test (id int PRIMARY KEY, xml text);
INSERT INTO test VALUES (1, '<doc num="C1"> <line num="L1"> <a>1</a> <b>2</b> <c>3</c> </line> <line num="L2"> <a>11</a> <b>22</b> <c>33</c> </line> </doc>');
INSERT INTO test VALUES (2, '<doc num="C2"> <line num="L1"> <a>111</a> <b>222</b> <c>333</c> </line> <line num="L2"> <a>111</a> <b>222</b> <c>333</c> </line> </doc>');
SELECT * FROM xpath_table('id','xml','test', '/doc/@num|/doc/line/@num|/doc/line/a|/doc/line/b|/doc/line/c', 'true') AS t(id int, doc_num varchar(10), line_num varchar(10), val1 int, val2 int, val3 int) WHERE id = 1 ORDER BY doc_num, line_num
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
<th>doc_num</th>
<th>line_num</th>
<th>val1</th>
<th>val2</th>
<th>val3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>C1</td>
<td>L1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>L2</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

To get `doc_num` on every line, the solution is to use two invocations of `xpath_table` and join the results:

```sql
SELECT t.*, i.doc_num FROM xpath_table('id', 'xml', 'test', '/doc/line/@num|/doc/line/a|/doc/line/b|/doc/line/c', 'true') AS t(id int, line_num varchar(10), val1 int, val2 int, val3 int), xpath_table('id', 'xml', 'test', '/doc/@num', 'true') AS i(id int, doc_num varchar(10)) WHERE i.id=t.id AND i.id=1 ORDER BY doc_num, line_num;
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
<th>line_num</th>
<th>val1</th>
<th>val2</th>
<th>val3</th>
<th>doc_num</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>L1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>L2</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>C1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

F.64.4. XSLT Functions

The following functions are available if libxslt is installed:
**F.64.4.1. xslt_process**

\texttt{xslt_process(text document, text stylesheet, text paramlist) returns text}

This function applies the XSL stylesheet to the document and returns the transformed result. The \texttt{paramlist} is a list of parameter assignments to be used in the transformation, specified in the form \texttt{a=1,b=2}. Note that the parameter parsing is very simple-minded: parameter values cannot contain commas!

There is also a two-parameter version of \texttt{xslt_process} which does not pass any parameters to the transformation.

**F.64.5. Author**

\textbf{John Gray} <jgray@azuli.co.uk>

Development of this module was sponsored by Torchbox Ltd. (www.torchbox.com). It has the same BSD license as Postgres Pro.
Appendix G. Additional Supplied Programs

This appendix and the previous one contain information regarding additional modules available in the Postgres Pro Standard distribution. See Appendix F for more information about the server extensions and plug-ins.

This appendix covers the utility programs. Once installed, they are found in the `bin` directory of the Postgres Pro Standard installation and can be used like any other program.

G.1. Client Applications

This section covers Postgres Pro Standard client applications. They can be run from anywhere, independent of where the database server resides. See also Postgres Pro Client Applications for information about client applications that are part of the core Postgres Pro Standard distribution.
oid2name

oid2name — resolve OIDs and file nodes in a Postgres Pro data directory

Synopsis

oid2name [option...]

Description

oid2name is a utility program that helps administrators to examine the file structure used by Postgres Pro. To make use of it, you need to be familiar with the database file structure, which is described in Chapter 66.

Note

The name “oid2name” is historical, and is actually rather misleading, since most of the time when you use it, you will really be concerned with tables' filenode numbers (which are the file names visible in the database directories). Be sure you understand the difference between table OIDs and table filenodes!

oid2name connects to a target database and extracts OID, filenode, and/or table name information. You can also have it show database OIDs or tablespace OIDs.

Options

oid2name accepts the following command-line arguments:

- `-f filenode`
  `--filenode=filenode`
  show info for table with filenode filenode.

- `-i`
  `--indexes`
  include indexes and sequences in the listing.

- `-o oid`
  `--oid=oid`
  show info for table with OID oid.

- `-q`
  `--quiet`
  omit headers (useful for scripting).

- `-s`
  `--tablespaces`
  show tablespace OIDs.

- `-S`
  `--system-objects`
  include system objects (those in information_schema, pg_toast and pg_catalog schemas).

- `-t tablename_pattern`
  `--table=tablename_pattern`
  show info for table(s) matching tablename_pattern.
Additional Supplied Programs

-V
--version

Print the oid2name version and exit.

-x
--extended

display more information about each object shown: tablespace name, schema name, and OID.

-?
--help

Show help about oid2name command line arguments, and exit.

oid2name also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

-d database
--dbname=database

database to connect to.

-h host
--host=host

database server's host.

-H host

database server's host. Use of this parameter is deprecated as of Postgres Pro 12.

-p port
--port=port

database server's port.

-U username
--username=username

user name to connect as.

To display specific tables, select which tables to show by using -o, -f and/or -t. -o takes an OID, -f takes a filenode, and -t takes a table name (actually, it's a LIKE pattern, so you can use things like foo %). You can use as many of these options as you like, and the listing will include all objects matched by any of the options. But note that these options can only show objects in the database given by -d.

If you don't give any of -o, -f or -t, but do give -d, it will list all tables in the database named by -d. In this mode, the -S and -i options control what gets listed.

If you don't give -d either, it will show a listing of database OIDs. Alternatively you can give -s to get a tablespace listing.

Environment

PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER

Default connection parameters.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

The environment variable PG_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.
Notes

oid2name requires a running database server with non-corrupt system catalogs. It is therefore of only limited use for recovering from catastrophic database corruption situations.

Examples

$ # what's in this database server, anyway?
$ oid2name
All databases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oid</th>
<th>Database Name</th>
<th>Tablespace</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17228</td>
<td>alvherre</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17255</td>
<td>regression</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17227</td>
<td>template0</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>template1</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$ oid2name -s
All tablespaces:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oid</th>
<th>Tablespace Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1663</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1664</td>
<td>pg_global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155151</td>
<td>fastdisk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155152</td>
<td>bigdisk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$ # OK, let's look into database alvherre
$ cd $PGDATA/base/17228

$ # get top 10 db objects in the default tablespace, ordered by size
$ ls -ls * | head -10
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 136536064 sep 14 09:51 155173
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 17965056 sep 14 09:51 1155291
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 1204224 sep 14 09:51 16717
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 581632 sep  6 17:51 1255
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 237568 sep 14 09:50 16674
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 212992 sep 14 09:51 1249
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 204800 sep 14 09:51 16684
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 196608 sep 14 09:50 16700
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 163840 sep 14 09:50 16699
-rw------ 1 alvherre alvherre 122880 sep  6 17:51 16751

$ # I wonder what file 155173 is ...
$ oid2name -d alvherre -f 155173
From database "alvherre":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filenode</th>
<th>Table Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>155173</td>
<td>accounts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$ # you can ask for more than one object
$ oid2name -d alvherre -f 155173 -f 1155291
From database "alvherre":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filenode</th>
<th>Table Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>155173</td>
<td>accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1155291</td>
<td>accounts_pkey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$ # you can mix the options, and get more details with -x
$ oid2name -d alvherre -t accounts -f 1155291 -x
From database "alvherre":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filenode</th>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>Oid</th>
<th>Schema</th>
<th>Tablespace</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>155173</td>
<td>accounts</td>
<td>155173</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1155291</td>
<td>accounts_pkey</td>
<td>1155291</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$ # show disk space for every db object
$ du [0-9]* |
> while read SIZE FILENODE
cs-# do
>   echo "$SIZE  `oid2name -q -d alvherre -i -f $FILENODE`"
done

16 1155287 branches_pkey
16 1155289 tellers_pkey
17561 1155291 accounts_pkey
...

$ # same, but sort by size
$ du [0-9]* | sort -rn | while read SIZE FN
> do
>   echo "$SIZE  `oid2name -q -d alvherre -f $FN`"
done

133466 155173 accounts
17561 1155291 accounts_pkey
1177 16717 pg_proc_proname_args_nsp_index
...

$ # If you want to see what's in tablespaces, use the pg_tblspc directory
$ cd $PGDATA/pg_tblspc
$ oid2name -s

All tablespaces:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oid</th>
<th>Tablespace Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1663</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1664</td>
<td>pg_global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155151</td>
<td>fastdisk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155152</td>
<td>bigdisk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$ # what databases have objects in tablespace "fastdisk"?
$ ls -d 155151/*
155151/17228/  155151/PG_VERSION

$ # Oh, what was database 17228 again?
$ oid2name

All databases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oid</th>
<th>Database Name</th>
<th>Tablespace</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17228</td>
<td>alvherre</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17255</td>
<td>regression</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17227</td>
<td>template0</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>template1</td>
<td>pg_default</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$ # Let's see what objects does this database have in the tablespace.
$ cd 155151/17228
$ ls -l
0 total
-rw------- 1 postgres postgres 0 sep 13 23:20 155156
From database "alvherre":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filenode</th>
<th>Table Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>155156</td>
<td>foo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Author

B. Palmer <bpalmer@crimelabs.net>
Additional Supplied Programs

pg_probackup

pg_probackup — manage backup and recovery of Postgres Pro database clusters

Synopsis

pg_probackup version
pg_probackup help [command]
pg_probackup init -B backup_dir
pg_probackup add-instance -B backup_dir -D data_dir --instance instance_name
pg_probackup del-instance -B backup_dir --instance instance_name
pg_probackup set-config -B backup_dir --instance instance_name [option...]
pg_probackup set-backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name [option...]
pg_probackup show-config -B backup_dir --instance instance_name [--format=format]
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir [option...]
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b backup_mode [option...]
pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name [option...]
pg_probackup checkdb -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -D data_dir [option...]
pg_probackup validate -B backup_dir [option...]
pg_probackup merge -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id [option...]
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name { -i backup_id | --delete-wal | --delete-expired | --merge-expired } [option...]
pg_probackup archive-push -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --wal-file-path wal_file_path --wal-file-name wal_file_name [option...]
pg_probackup archive-get -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --wal-file-path wal_file_path --wal-file-name wal_file_name [option...]
pg_probackup catchup -b catchup_mode --source-pgdata=path_to_pgdata_on_remote_server --destination-pgdata=path_to_local_dir [option...]

Description

pg_probackup is a utility to manage backup and recovery of Postgres Pro database clusters. It is designed to perform periodic backups of the Postgres Pro instance that enable you to restore the server in case of a failure. pg_probackup supports PostgreSQL 9.5 or higher.

- Overview
- Installation and Setup
- Command-Line Reference
- Usage

Overview

As compared to other backup solutions, pg_probackup offers the following benefits that can help you implement different backup strategies and deal with large amounts of data:
Additional Supplied Programs

- Incremental backup: with three different incremental modes, you can plan the backup strategy in accordance with your data flow. Incremental backups allow you to save disk space and speed up backup as compared to taking full backups. It is also faster to restore the cluster by applying incremental backups than by replaying WAL files.
- Incremental restore: speed up restore from backup by reusing valid unchanged pages available in PGDATA.
- Validation: automatic data consistency checks and on-demand backup validation without actual data recovery.
- Verification: on-demand verification of Postgres Pro instance with the checkdb command.
- Retention: managing WAL archive and backups in accordance with retention policy. You can configure retention policy based on recovery time or the number of backups to keep, as well as specify time to live (TTL) for a particular backup. Expired backups can be merged or deleted.
- Parallelization: running backup, restore, merge, delete, validate, and checkdb processes on multiple parallel threads.
- Compression: storing backup data in a compressed state to save disk space.
- Deduplication: saving disk space by excluding non-data files (such as _vm or _fsm) from incremental backups if these files have not changed since they were copied into one of the previous backups in this incremental chain.
- Remote operations: backing up Postgres Pro instance located on a remote system or restoring a backup remotely.
- Backup from standby: avoiding extra load on master by taking backups from a standby server.
- External directories: backing up files and directories located outside of the Postgres Pro data directory (PGDATA), such as scripts, configuration files, logs, or SQL dump files.
- Backup catalog: getting the list of backups and the corresponding meta information in plain text or JSON formats.
- Archive catalog: getting the list of all WAL timelines and the corresponding meta information in plain text or JSON formats.
- Partial restore: restoring only the specified databases.
- Catchup: cloning a Postgres Pro instance for a fallen-behind standby server to “catch up” with master.

To manage backup data, pg_probackup creates a backup catalog. This is a directory that stores all backup files with additional meta information, as well as WAL archives required for point-in-time recovery. You can store backups for different instances in separate subdirectories of a single backup catalog.

Using pg_probackup, you can take full or incremental backups:

- FULL backups contain all the data files required to restore the database cluster.
- Incremental backups operate at the page level, only storing the data that has changed since the previous backup. It allows you to save disk space and speed up the backup process as compared to taking full backups. It is also faster to restore the cluster by applying incremental backups than by replaying WAL files. pg_probackup supports the following modes of incremental backups:
  - DELTA backup. In this mode, pg_probackup reads all data files in the data directory and copies only those pages that have changed since the previous backup. This mode can impose read-only I/O pressure equal to a full backup.
  - PAGE backup. In this mode, pg_probackup scans all WAL files in the archive from the moment the previous full or incremental backup was taken. Newly created backups contain only the pages that were mentioned in WAL records. This requires all the WAL files since the previous backup to be present in the WAL archive. If the size of these files is comparable to the total size of the database cluster files, speedup is smaller, but the backup still takes less space. You have to configure WAL archiving as explained in Setting up continuous WAL archiving to make PAGE backups.
  - PTRACK backup. In this mode, Postgres Pro tracks page changes on the fly. Continuous archiving is not necessary for it to operate. Each time a relation page is updated, this page is marked in a special PTRACK bitmap. Tracking implies some minor overhead on the database server operation, but speeds up incremental backups significantly.
pg_probackup can take only physical online backups, and online backups require WAL for consistent recovery. So regardless of the chosen backup mode (FULL, PAGE or DELTA), any backup taken with pg_probackup must use one of the following WAL delivery modes:

- **ARCHIVE.** Such backups rely on continuous archiving to ensure consistent recovery. This is the default WAL delivery mode.
- **STREAM.** Such backups include all the files required to restore the cluster to a consistent state at the time the backup was taken. Regardless of continuous archiving having been set up or not, the WAL segments required for consistent recovery are streamed via replication protocol during backup and included into the backup files. That's why such backups are called autonomous, or standalone.

**Limitations**

pg_probackup currently has the following limitations:

- pg_probackup only supports PostgreSQL 9.5 and higher.
- The remote mode is not supported on Windows systems.
- On Unix systems, for Postgres Pro 10 or lower, a backup can be made only by the same OS user that has started the Postgres Pro server. For example, if Postgres Pro server is started by user postgres, the backup command must also be run by user postgres. To satisfy this requirement when taking backups in the remote mode using SSH, you must set --remote-user option to postgres.
- For Postgres Pro 9.5, functions pg_create_restore_point(text) and pg_switch_xlog() can be executed only if the backup role is a superuser, so backup of a cluster with low amount of WAL traffic by a non-superuser role can take longer than the backup of the same cluster by a superuser role.
- The Postgres Pro server from which the backup was taken and the restored server must be compatible by the block_size and wal_block_size parameters and have the same major release number. Depending on cluster configuration, Postgres Pro itself may apply additional restrictions, such as CPU architecture or libc/libicu versions.

**Installation and Setup**

Once you have pg_probackup installed, complete the following setup:

- Initialize the backup catalog.
- Add a new backup instance to the backup catalog.
- Configure the database cluster to enable pg_probackup backups.
- Optionally, configure SSH for running pg_probackup operations in the remote mode.

**Initializing the Backup Catalog**

pg_probackup stores all WAL and backup files in the corresponding subdirectories of the backup catalog. To initialize the backup catalog, run the following command:

```
pg_probackup init -B backup_dir
```

where `backup_dir` is the path to the backup catalog. If the `backup_dir` already exists, it must be empty. Otherwise, pg_probackup returns an error.

The user launching pg_probackup must have full access to the `backup_dir` directory.

pg_probackup creates the `backup_dir` backup catalog, with the following subdirectories:

- `wal/` — directory for WAL files.
- `backups/` — directory for backup files.

Once the backup catalog is initialized, you can add a new backup instance.
Adding a New Backup Instance

pg_probackup can store backups for multiple database clusters in a single backup catalog. To set up the required subdirectories, you must add a backup instance to the backup catalog for each database cluster you are going to back up.

To add a new backup instance, run the following command:

```bash
pg_probackup add-instance -B backup_dir -D data_dir --instance instance_name
[remote_options]
```

where:

- `data_dir` is the data directory of the cluster you are going to back up. To set up and use pg_probackup, write access to this directory is required.
- `instance_name` is the name of the subdirectories that will store WAL and backup files for this cluster.
- `remote_options` are optional parameters that need to be specified only if `data_dir` is located on a remote system.

pg_probackup creates the `instance_name` subdirectories under the `backups/` and `wal/` directories of the backup catalog. The `backups/instance_name` directory contains the `pg_probackup.conf` configuration file that controls pg_probackup settings for this backup instance. If you run this command with the `remote_options`, the specified parameters will be added to `pg_probackup.conf`.

For details on how to fine-tune pg_probackup configuration, see the section called “Configuring pg_probackup”.

The user launching pg_probackup must have full access to `backup_dir` directory and at least read-only access to `data_dir` directory. If you specify the path to the backup catalog in the `BACKUP_PATH` environment variable, you can omit the corresponding option when running pg_probackup commands.

**Note**

For Postgres Pro 11 or higher, it is recommended to use the `group access` feature, so that backup can be done by any OS user in the same group as the cluster owner. In this case, the user should have read permissions for the cluster directory.

Configuring the Database Cluster

Although pg_probackup can be used by a superuser, it is recommended to create a separate role with the minimum permissions required for the chosen backup strategy. In these configuration instructions, the `backup` role is used as an example.

To perform a backup, the following permissions for role `backup` are required only in the database **used for connection** to the Postgres Pro server:

For Postgres Pro 9.5:

```sql
BEGIN;
CREATE ROLE backup WITH LOGIN;
GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA pg_catalog TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.current_setting(text) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.set_config(text, text, boolean) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_is_in_recovery() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_start_backup(text, boolean) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_stop_backup() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_create_restore_point(text) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.txid_current() TO backup;
```
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.txid_current_snapshot() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.txid_snapshot_xmax(txid_snapshot) TO backup;
COMMIT;

For Postgres Pro 9.6:

BEGIN;
CREATE ROLE backup WITH LOGIN;
GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA pg_catalog TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.current_setting(text) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.set_config(text, text, boolean) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_is_in_recovery() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_start_backup(text, boolean, boolean) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_stop_backup(boolean) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_create_restore_point(text) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_switch_xlog() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_last_xlog_replay_location() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.txid_current() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.txid_current_snapshot() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.txid_snapshot_xmax(txid_snapshot) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_control_checkpoint() TO backup;
COMMIT;

For Postgres Pro 10 or higher:

BEGIN;
CREATE ROLE backup WITH LOGIN;
GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA pg_catalog TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.current_setting(text) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.set_config(text, text, boolean) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_is_in_recovery() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_start_backup(text, boolean, boolean) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_stop_backup(boolean, boolean) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_create_restore_point(text) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_switch_wal() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_last_wal_replay_lsn() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.txid_current() TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.txid_snapshot_xmax(txid_snapshot) TO backup;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_control_checkpoint() TO backup;
COMMIT;

In the pg_hba.conf file, allow connection to the database cluster on behalf of the backup role.

Since pg_probackup needs to read cluster files directly, pg_probackup must be started by (or connected to, if used in the remote mode) the OS user that has read access to all files and directories inside the data directory (PGDATA) you are going to back up.

Depending on whether you plan to take standalone or archive backups, Postgres Pro cluster configuration will differ, as specified in the sections below. To back up the database cluster from a standby server, run pg_probackup in the remote mode, or create PTRACK backups, additional setup is required.

For details, see the sections Setting up STREAM Backups, Setting up continuous WAL archiving, Setting up Backup from Standby, Configuring the Remote Mode, Setting up Partial Restore, and Setting up PTRACK Backups.

**Setting up STREAM Backups**

To set up the cluster for STREAM backups, complete the following steps:

- Grant the REPLICATION privilege to the backup role:
ALTER ROLE backup WITH REPLICATION;

• In the pg_hba.conf file, allow replication on behalf of the backup role.
• Make sure the parameter max_wal_senders is set high enough to leave at least one session available for the backup process.
• Set the parameter wal_level to be higher than minimal.

If you are planning to take PAGE backups in the STREAM mode or perform PITR with STREAM backups, you still have to configure WAL archiving, as explained in the section Setting up continuous WAL archiving.

Once these steps are complete, you can start taking FULL, PAGE, DELTA, and PTRACK backups in the STREAM WAL mode.

Note

If you are planning to rely on .pgpass for authentication when running backup in STREAM mode, then .pgpass must contain credentials for replication database, used to establish connection via replication protocol. Example: pghost:5432:replication:backup_user:my_strong_password

Setting up Continuous WAL Archiving

Making backups in PAGE backup mode, performing PITR and making backups with ARCHIVE WAL delivery mode require continuous WAL archiving to be enabled. To set up continuous archiving in the cluster, complete the following steps:

• Make sure the wal_level parameter is higher than minimal.
• If you are configuring archiving on master, archive_mode must be set to on or always. To perform archiving on standby, set this parameter to always.
• Set the archive_command parameter, as follows:

  archive_command = '"install_dir/pg_probackup" archive-push -B "backup_dir" --instance instance_name --wal-file-name=%f [remote_options]"

where install_dir is the installation directory of the pg_probackup version you are going to use, backup_dir and instance_name refer to the already initialized backup catalog instance for this database cluster, and remote_options only need to be specified to archive WAL on a remote host. For details about all possible archive-push parameters, see the section archive-push.

Once these steps are complete, you can start making backups in the ARCHIVE WAL mode, backups in the PAGE backup mode, as well as perform PITR.

You can view the current state of the WAL archive using the show command. For details, see the section called "Viewing WAL Archive Information".

If you are planning to make PAGE backups and/or backups with ARCHIVE WAL mode from a standby server that generates a small amount of WAL traffic, without long waiting for WAL segment to fill up, consider setting the archive_timeout Postgres Pro parameter on master. The value of this parameter should be slightly lower than the --archive-timeout setting (5 minutes by default), so that there is enough time for the rotated segment to be streamed to standby and sent to WAL archive before the backup is aborted because of --archive-timeout.

Note

Instead of using the archive-push command provided by pg_probackup, you can use any other tool to set up continuous archiving as long as it delivers WAL segments into backup_dir/wal/
instance_name directory. If compression is used, it should be gzip, and .gz suffix in filename is mandatory.

Note

Instead of configuring continuous archiving by setting the archive_mode and archive_command parameters, you can opt for using the pg_receivewal utility. In this case, pg_receivewal - D directory option should point to backup_dir/wal/instance_name directory. pg_probackup supports WAL compression that can be done by pg_receivewal. “Zero Data Loss” archive strategy can be achieved only by using pg_receivewal.

Setting up Backup from Standby

For Postgres Pro 9.6 or higher, pg_probackup can take backups from a standby server. This requires the following additional setup:

- On the standby server, set the hot_standby parameter to on.
- On the master server, set the full_page_writes parameter to on.
- To perform standalone backups on standby, complete all steps in section Setting up STREAM Backups.
- To perform archive backups on standby, complete all steps in section Setting up continuous WAL archiving.

Once these steps are complete, you can start taking FULL, PAGE, DELTA, or PTRACK backups with appropriate WAL delivery mode: ARCHIVE or STREAM, from the standby server.

Backup from the standby server has the following limitations:

- If the standby is promoted to the master during backup, the backup fails.
- All WAL records required for the backup must contain sufficient full-page writes. This requires you to enable full_page_writes on the master, and not to use tools like pg_compresslog as archive_command to remove full-page writes from WAL files.

Setting up Cluster Verification

Logical verification of a database cluster requires the following additional setup. Role backup is used as an example:

- Install the amcheck or amcheck_next extension in every database of the cluster:

  CREATE EXTENSION amcheck;

- Grant the following permissions to the backup role in every database of the cluster:

  GRANT SELECT ON TABLE pg_catalog.pg_am TO backup;
  GRANT SELECT ON TABLE pg_catalog.pg_class TO backup;
  GRANT SELECT ON TABLE pg_catalog.pg_database TO backup;
  GRANT SELECT ON TABLE pg_catalog.pg_namespace TO backup;
  GRANT SELECT ON TABLE pg_catalog.pg_extension TO backup;
  GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION bt_index_check(regclass) TO backup;
  GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION bt_index_check(regclass, bool) TO backup;

Setting up Partial Restore

If you are planning to use partial restore, complete the following additional step:

- Grant the read-only access to pg_catalog.pg_database to the backup role only in the database used for connection to Postgres Pro server:
Configuring the Remote Mode

pg_probackup supports the remote mode that allows to perform backup, restore and WAL archiving operations remotely. In this mode, the backup catalog is stored on a local system, while Postgres Pro instance to backup and/or to restore is located on a remote system. Currently the only supported remote protocol is SSH.

Set up SSH

If you are going to use pg_probackup in remote mode via SSH, complete the following steps:

- Install pg_probackup on both systems: backup_host and db_host.
- For communication between the hosts set up the passwordless SSH connection between backup user on backup_host and postgres user on db_host:
  ```
  [backup@backup_host] ssh-copy-id postgres@db_host
  ```
- If you are going to rely on continuous WAL archiving, set up passwordless SSH connection between postgres user on db_host and backup user on backup_host:
  ```
  [postgres@db_host] ssh-copy-id backup@backup_host
  ```

where:

- backup_host is the system with backup catalog.
- db_host is the system with Postgres Pro cluster.
- backup is the OS user on backup_host used to run pg_probackup.
- postgres is the OS user on db_host used to start the Postgres Pro cluster. For Postgres Pro 11 or higher a more secure approach can be used thanks to group access feature.

pg_probackup in the remote mode via SSH works as follows:

- Only the following commands can be launched in the remote mode: add-instance, backup, restore, catchup, archive-push, and archive-get.
- Operating in remote mode requires pg_probackup binary to be installed on both local and remote systems. The versions of local and remote binary must be the same.
- When started in the remote mode, the main pg_probackup process on the local system connects to the remote system via SSH and launches one or more agent processes on the remote system, which are called remote agents. The number of remote agents is equal to the -j/--threads setting.
- The main process uses remote agents to access remote files and transfer data between local and remote systems.
- Remote agents try to minimize the network traffic and the number of round-trips between hosts.
- The main process is usually started on backup_host and connects to db_host, but in case of archive-push and archive-get commands the main process is started on db_host and connects to backup_host.
- Once data transfer is complete, remote agents are terminated and SSH connections are closed.
- If an error condition is encountered by a remote agent, then all agents are terminated and error details are reported by the main pg_probackup process, which exits with an error.
- Compression is always done on db_host, while decompression is always done on backup_host.

Note

You can impose additional restrictions on SSH settings to protect the system in the event of account compromise.
Setting up PTRACK Backups

Note
PTRACK versions lower than 2.0 are deprecated and not supported. Postgres Pro Standard and Postgres Pro Enterprise versions starting with 11.9.1 contain PTRACK 2.0. Upgrade your server to avoid issues in backups that you will take in future and be sure to take fresh backups of your clusters with the upgraded PTRACK since the backups taken with PTRACK 1.x might be corrupt.

If you are going to use PTRACK backups, complete the following additional steps. The role that will perform PTRACK backups (the backup role in the examples below) must have access to all the databases of the cluster.

For Postgres Pro 11 or higher:
1. Create PTRACK extension:
   ```
   CREATE EXTENSION ptrack;
   ```
2. To enable tracking page updates, set `ptrack.map_size` parameter to a positive integer and restart the server.

   For optimal performance, it is recommended to set `ptrack.map_size` to \( N / 1024 \), where \( N \) is the size of the Postgres Pro cluster, in MB. If you set this parameter to a lower value, PTRACK is more likely to map several blocks together, which leads to false-positive results when tracking changed blocks and increases the incremental backup size as unchanged blocks can also be copied into the incremental backup. Setting `ptrack.map_size` to a higher value does not affect PTRACK operation, but it is not recommended to set this parameter to a value higher than 1024.

Note
If you change the `ptrack.map_size` parameter value, the previously created PTRACK map file is cleared, and tracking newly changed blocks starts from scratch. Thus, you have to retake a full backup before taking incremental PTRACK backups after changing `ptrack.map_size`.

Usage

Creating a Backup
To create a backup, run the following command:

```bash
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b backup_mode
```

Where `backup_mode` can take one of the following values:

- **FULL** — creates a full backup that contains all the data files of the cluster to be restored.
- **DELTA** — reads all data files in the data directory and creates an incremental backup for pages that have changed since the previous backup.
- **PAGE** — creates an incremental backup based on the WAL files that have been generated since the previous full or incremental backup was taken. Only changed blocks are read from data files.
- **PTRACK** — creates an incremental backup tracking page changes on the fly.

When restoring a cluster from an incremental backup, pg_probackup relies on the parent full backup and all the incremental backups between them, which is called “the backup chain”. You must create at least one full backup before taking incremental ones.

ARCHIVE Mode
ARCHIVE is the default WAL delivery mode.
For example, to make a FULL backup in ARCHIVE mode, run:

```
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b FULL
```

ARCHIVE backups rely on continuous archiving to get WAL segments required to restore the cluster to a consistent state at the time the backup was taken.

When a backup is taken, `pg_probackup` ensures that WAL files containing WAL records between `Start LSN` and `Stop LSN` actually exist in `backup_dir/wal/instance_name` directory. `pg_probackup` also ensures that WAL records between `Start LSN` and `Stop LSN` can be parsed. This precaution eliminates the risk of silent WAL corruption.

**STREAM Mode**

STREAM is the optional WAL delivery mode.

For example, to make a FULL backup in the STREAM mode, add the `--stream` flag to the command from the previous example:

```
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b FULL --stream --temp-slot
```

The optional `--temp-slot` flag ensures that the required segments remain available if the WAL is rotated before the backup is complete.

Unlike backups in ARCHIVE mode, STREAM backups include all the WAL segments required to restore the cluster to a consistent state at the time the backup was taken.

During backup `pg_probackup` streams WAL files containing WAL records between `Start LSN` and `Stop LSN` to `backup_dir/backups/instance_name/backup_id/database/pg_wal` directory. To eliminate the risk of silent WAL corruption, `pg_probackup` also checks that WAL records between `Start LSN` and `Stop LSN` can be parsed.

Even if you are using continuous archiving, STREAM backups can still be useful in the following cases:

- STREAM backups can be restored on the server that has no file access to WAL archive.
- STREAM backups enable you to restore the cluster state at the point in time for which WAL files in archive are no longer available.
- Backup in STREAM mode can be taken from a standby of a server that generates small amount of WAL traffic, without long waiting for WAL segment to fill up.

**Page Validation**

If data checksums are enabled in the database cluster, `pg_probackup` uses this information to check correctness of data files during backup. While reading each page, `pg_probackup` checks whether the calculated checksum coincides with the checksum stored in the page header. This guarantees that the Postgres Pro instance and the backup itself have no corrupt pages. Note that `pg_probackup` reads database files directly from the filesystem, so under heavy write load during backup it can show false-positive checksum mismatches because of partial writes. If a page checksum mismatch occurs, the page is re-read and checksum comparison is repeated.

A page is considered corrupt if checksum comparison has failed more than 100 times. In this case, the backup is aborted.

Even if data checksums are not enabled, `pg_probackup` always performs sanity checks for page headers.

**External Directories**

To back up a directory located outside of the data directory, use the optional `--external-dirs` parameter that specifies the path to this directory. If you would like to add more than one external directory, you can provide several paths separated by colons on Linux systems or semicolons on Windows systems.

For example, to include `/etc/dir1` and `/etc/dir2` directories into the full backup of your `instance_name` instance that will be stored under the `backup_dir` directory on Linux, run:  

```
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --external-dirs /etc/dir1:/etc/dir2
```
Additional Supplied Programs

pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b FULL --external-dirs=/etc/dir1:/etc/dir2

Similarly, to include C:\dir1 and C:\dir2 directories into the full backup on Windows, run:

pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b FULL --external-dirs=C:\dir1;C:\dir2

pg_probackup recursively copies the contents of each external directory into a separate subdirectory in the backup catalog. Since external directories included into different backups do not have to be the same, when you are restoring the cluster from an incremental backup, only those directories that belong to this particular backup will be restored. Any external directories stored in the previous backups will be ignored.

To include the same directories into each backup of your instance, you can specify them in the pg_probackup.conf configuration file using the set-config command with the --external-dirs option.

Performing Cluster Verification

To verify that Postgres Pro database cluster is not corrupt, run the following command:

pg_probackup checkdb [-B backup_dir [--instance instance_name]] [-D data_dir] [connection_options]

This command performs physical verification of all data files located in the specified data directory by running page header sanity checks, as well as block-level checksum verification if checksums are enabled. If a corrupt page is detected, checkdb continues cluster verification until all pages in the cluster are validated.

By default, similar page validation is performed automatically while a backup is taken by pg_probackup. The checkdb command enables you to perform such page validation on demand, without taking any backup copies, even if the cluster is not backed up using pg_probackup at all.

To perform cluster verification, pg_probackup needs to connect to the cluster to be verified. In general, it is enough to specify the backup instance of this cluster for pg_probackup to determine the required connection options. However, if -B and --instance options are omitted, you have to provide connection options and data_dir via environment variables or command-line options.

Physical verification cannot detect logical inconsistencies, missing or nullified blocks and entire files, or similar anomalies. Extensions amcheck and amcheck_next provide a partial solution to these problems.

If you would like, in addition to physical verification, to verify all indexes in all databases using these extensions, you can specify the --amcheck flag when running the checkdb command:

pg_probackup checkdb -D data_dir --amcheck [connection_options]

You can skip physical verification by specifying the --skip-block-validation flag. In this case, you can omit backup_dir and data_dir options, only connection options are mandatory:

pg_probackup checkdb --amcheck --skip-block-validation [connection_options]

Logical verification can be done more thoroughly with the --heapallindexed flag by checking that all heap tuples that should be indexed are actually indexed, but at the higher cost of CPU, memory, and I/O consumption.

Validating a Backup

pg_probackup calculates checksums for each file in a backup during the backup process. The process of checking checksums of backup data files is called the backup validation. By default, validation is run immediately after the backup is taken and right before the restore, to detect possible backup corruption.

If you would like to skip backup validation, you can specify the --no-validate flag when running backup and restore commands.
To ensure that all the required backup files are present and can be used to restore the database cluster, you can run the `validate` command with the exact `recovery target options` you are going to use for recovery.

For example, to check that you can restore the database cluster from a backup copy up to transaction ID 4242, run this command:

```
pg_probackup validate -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --recovery-target-xid=4242
```

If validation completes successfully, `pg_probackup` displays the corresponding message. If validation fails, you will receive an error message with the exact time, transaction ID, and LSN up to which the recovery is possible.

If you specify `backup_id` via `-i/--backup-id` option, then only the backup copy with specified backup ID will be validated. If `backup_id` is specified with `recovery target options`, the `validate` command will check whether it is possible to restore the specified backup to the specified recovery target.

For example, to check that you can restore the database cluster from a backup copy with the PT8XFX backup ID up to the specified timestamp, run this command:

```
pg_probackup validate -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i PT8XFX --recovery-target-time="2017-05-18 14:18:11+03"
```

If you specify the `backup_id` of an incremental backup, all its parents starting from FULL backup will be validated.

If you omit all the parameters, all backups are validated.

**Restoring a Cluster**

To restore the database cluster from a backup, run the `restore` command with at least the following options:

```
pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id
```

where:

- `backup_dir` is the backup catalog that stores all backup files and meta information.
- `instance_name` is the backup instance for the cluster to be restored.
- `backup_id` specifies the backup to restore the cluster from. If you omit this option, `pg_probackup` uses the latest valid backup available for the specified instance. If you specify an incremental backup to restore, `pg_probackup` automatically restores the underlying full backup and then sequentially applies all the necessary increments.

Once the `restore` command is complete, start the database service.

If you restore `ARCHIVE` backups, perform `PITR`, or specify the `--restore-as-replica` flag with the `restore` command to set up a standby server, `pg_probackup` creates a recovery configuration file once all data files are copied into the target directory. This file includes the minimal settings required for recovery, except for the password in the `primary_conninfo` parameter; you have to add the password manually or use the `--primary-conninfo` option, if required. For Postgres Pro 11 or lower, recovery settings are written into the `recovery.conf` file. Starting from Postgres Pro 12, `pg_probackup` writes these settings into the `probackup_recovery.conf` file and then includes it into `postgresql.auto.conf`.

If you are restoring a `STREAM` backup, the restore is complete at once, with the cluster returned to a self-consistent state at the point when the backup was taken. For `ARCHIVE` backups, Postgres Pro replays all available archived WAL segments, so the cluster is restored to the latest state possible within the current timeline. You can change this behavior by using the `recovery target options` with the `restore` command, as explained in the section called "Performing Point-in-Time (PITR) Recovery".

If the cluster to restore contains tablespaces, `pg_probackup` restores them to their original location by default. To restore tablespaces to a different location, use the `--tablespace-mapping/-T` option.
Otherwise, restoring the cluster on the same host will fail if tablespaces are in use, because the backup would have to be written to the same directories.

When using the `--tablespace-mapping/-T` option, you must provide absolute paths to the old and new tablespace directories. If a path happens to contain an equals sign (=), escape it with a backslash. This option can be specified multiple times for multiple tablespaces. For example:

```
pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -D data_dir -j 4 -i backup_id -T tablespace1_dir=tablespace1_newdir -T tablespace2_dir=tablespace2_newdir
```

To restore the cluster on a remote host, follow the instructions in the section called “Using pg_probackup in the Remote Mode”.

### Note

By default, the `restore` command validates the specified backup before restoring the cluster. If you run regular backup validations and would like to save time when restoring the cluster, you can specify the `--no-validate` flag to skip validation and speed up the recovery.

### Incremental Restore

The speed of restore from backup can be significantly improved by replacing only invalid and changed pages in already existing Postgres Pro data directory using incremental restore options with the `restore` command.

To restore the database cluster from a backup in incremental mode, run the `restore` command with the following options:

```
pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -D data_dir -I incremental_mode
```

Where `incremental_mode` can take one of the following values:

- **CHECKSUM** — read all data files in the data directory, validate header and checksum in every page and replace only invalid pages and those with checksum and LSN not matching with corresponding page in backup. This is the simplest, the most fool-proof incremental mode. Recommended to use by default.
- **LSN** — read the `pg_control` in the data directory to obtain redo LSN and redo TLI, which allows to determine a point in history(shiftpoint), where data directory state shifted from target backup chain history. If shiftpoint is not within reach of backup chain history, then restore is aborted. If shiftpoint is within reach of backup chain history, then read all data files in the data directory, validate header and checksum in every page and replace only invalid pages and those with LSN greater than shiftpoint. This mode offers a greater speed up compared to CHECKSUM, but rely on two conditions to be met. First, data checksums parameter must be enabled in data directory (to avoid corruption due to hint bits). This condition will be checked at the start of incremental restore and the operation will be aborted if checksums are disabled. Second, the `pg_control` file must be synched with state of data directory. This condition cannot checked at the start of restore, so it is a user responsibility to ensure that `pg_control` contain valid information. Therefore it is not recommended to use LSN mode in any situation, where `pg_control` cannot be trusted or has been tampered with: after `pg_resetxlog` execution, after restore from backup without recovery been run, etc.
- **NONE** — regular restore without any incremental optimizations.

Regardless of chosen incremental mode, `pg_probackup` will check, that postmaster in given destination directory is not running and system-identifier is the same as in the backup.

Suppose you want to return an old master as replica after switchover using incremental restore in LSN mode:
pg_probackup restore -B /backup --instance node -R -I lsn
INFO: Running incremental restore into nonempty directory: "/var/lib/pgsql/12/data"
INFO: Destination directory redo point 15/2E000028 on tli 16 is within reach of backup QBRIDX with Stop LSN 14/DD0000B8 on tli 15
INFO: shift LSN: 14/DD0000B8
INFO: Restoring the database from backup at 2020-06-11 17:40:58+03
INFO: Extracting the content of destination directory for incremental restore
INFO: Destination directory content extracted, time elapsed: 1s
INFO: Removing redundant files in destination directory
INFO: Redundant files are removed, time elapsed: 1s
INFO: Start restoring backup files. PGDATA size: 15GB
INFO: Backup files are restored. Transfered bytes: 1693MB, time elapsed: 43s
INFO: Restore incremental ratio (less is better): 11% (1693MB/15GB)
INFO: Restore of backup QBRNBP completed.
Partial restore relies on lax behavior of Postgres Pro recovery process toward truncated files. For recovery to work properly, files of excluded databases are restored as files of zero size. After the Postgres Pro cluster is successfully started, you must drop the excluded databases using `DROP DATABASE` command.

To decouple a single cluster containing multiple databases into separate clusters with minimal downtime, you can do partial restore of the cluster as a standby using the `--restore-as-replica` option for specific databases.

```
Note
The template0 and template1 databases are always restored.
```

```
Note
Due to recovery specifics of Postgres Pro versions earlier than 12, it is advisable that you set the hot_standby parameter to `off` when running partial restore of a Postgres Pro cluster of version earlier than 12. Otherwise the recovery may fail.
```

**Performing Point-in-Time (PITR) Recovery**

If you have enabled continuous WAL archiving before taking backups, you can restore the cluster to its state at an arbitrary point in time (recovery target) using recovery target options with the `restore` command.

You can use both STREAM and ARCHIVE backups for point in time recovery as long as the WAL archive is available at least starting from the time the backup was taken. If `--backup-id` option is omitted, `pg_probackup` automatically chooses the backup that is the closest to the specified recovery target and starts the restore process, otherwise `pg_probackup` will try to restore the specified backup to the specified recovery target.

- To restore the cluster state at the exact time, specify the `--recovery-target-time` option, in the timestamp format. For example:

  ```
  pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --recovery-target-time="2017-05-18 14:18:11+03"
  ```

- To restore the cluster state up to a specific transaction ID, use the `--recovery-target-xid` option:

  ```
  pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --recovery-target-xid=687
  ```

- To restore the cluster state up to the specific LSN, use `--recovery-target-lsn` option:

  ```
  pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --recovery-target-lsn=16/B374D848
  ```

- To restore the cluster state up to the specific named restore point, use `--recovery-target-name` option:

  ```
  pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --recovery-target-name="before_app_upgrade"
  ```

- To restore the backup to the latest state available in the WAL archive, use `--recovery-target` option with `latest` value:

  ```
  pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --recovery-target="latest"
  ```

2525
Additional Supplied Programs

- To restore the cluster to the earliest point of consistency, use the `--recovery-target` option with the `immediate` value:

  ```
  pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --recovery-target='immediate'
  ```

**Using pg_probackup in the Remote Mode**

`pg_probackup` supports the remote mode that allows to perform `backup` and `restore` operations remotely via SSH. In this mode, the backup catalog is stored on a local system, while Postgres Pro instance to be backed up is located on a remote system. You must have `pg_probackup` installed on both systems.

**Note**

`pg_probackup` relies on passwordless SSH connection for communication between the hosts.

The typical workflow is as follows:

- On your backup host, configure `pg_probackup` as explained in the section *Installation and Setup*. For the `add-instance` and `set-config` commands, make sure to specify `remote options` that point to the database host with the Postgres Pro instance.

- If you would like to take remote backups in PAGE mode, or rely on ARCHIVE WAL delivery mode, or use PITR, configure continuous WAL archiving from the database host to the backup host as explained in the section *Setting up continuous WAL archiving*. For the `archive-push` and `archive-get` commands, you must specify the `remote options` that point to the backup host with the backup catalog.

- Run `backup` or `restore` commands with `remote options` on the backup host. `pg_probackup` connects to the remote system via SSH and creates a backup locally or restores the previously taken backup on the remote system, respectively.

For example, to create an archive full backup of a Postgres Pro cluster located on a remote system with host address 192.168.0.2 on behalf of the `postgres` user via SSH connection through port 2302, run:

```
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b FULL --remote-user=postgres --remote-host=192.168.0.2 --remote-port=2302
```

To restore the latest available backup on a remote system with host address 192.168.0.2 on behalf of the `postgres` user via SSH connection through port 2302, run:

```
pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --remote-host=192.168.0.2 --remote-port=2302
```

Restoring an ARCHIVE backup or performing PITR in the remote mode require additional information: destination address, port and username for establishing an SSH connection from the host with database to the host with the backup catalog. This information will be used by the `restore_command` to copy WAL segments from the archive to the Postgres Pro `pg_wal` directory.

To solve this problem, you can use **Remote WAL Archive Options**.

For example, to restore latest backup on remote system using remote mode through SSH connection to user `postgres` on host with address 192.168.0.2 via port 2302 and user `backup` on backup catalog host with address 192.168.0.3 via port 2303, run:

```
pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --remote-user=postgres --remote-host=192.168.0.2 --remote-port=2302 --archive-host=192.168.0.3 --archive-port=2303 --archive-user=backup
```

Provided arguments will be used to construct the `restore_command`:
Additional Supplied Programs

```
restore_command = "install_dir/pg_probackup" archive-get -B "backup_dir" --
instance instance_name --wal-file-path=%p --wal-file-name=%f --remote-host=192.168.0.3
--remote-port=2303 --remote-user=backup'
```

Alternatively, you can use the `--restore-command` option to provide the entire `restore_command`:

```
pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --remote-user=postgres
--remote-host=192.168.0.2 --remote-port=2302 --restore-command="install_dir/
pg_probackup" archive-get -B "backup_dir" --instance instance_name --wal-file-path=%p
--wal-file-name=%f --remote-host=192.168.0.3 --remote-port=2303 --remote-user=backup'
```

**Note**
The remote mode is currently unavailable for Windows systems.

**Running pg_probackup on Parallel Threads**

Backup, restore, merge, delete, catchup, checkdb, and validate processes can be executed on several parallel threads. This can significantly speed up pg_probackup operation given enough resources (CPU cores, disk, and network bandwidth).

Parallel execution is controlled by the `-j/--threads` command-line option. For example, to create a backup using four parallel threads, run:

```
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b FULL -j 4
```

**Note**
Parallel restore applies only to copying data from the backup catalog to the data directory of the cluster. When Postgres Pro server is started, WAL records need to be replayed, and this cannot be done in parallel.

**Configuring pg_probackup**

Once the backup catalog is initialized and a new backup instance is added, you can use the `pg_probackup.conf` configuration file located in the `backup_dir/backups/instance_name` directory to fine-tune pg_probackup configuration.

For example, backup and checkdb commands use a regular Postgres Pro connection. To avoid specifying connection options each time on the command line, you can set them in the `pg_probackup.conf` configuration file using the `set-config` command.

**Note**
It is not recommended to edit `pg_probackup.conf` manually.

Initially, `pg_probackup.conf` contains the following settings:

- `PGDATA` — the path to the data directory of the cluster to back up.
- `system-identifier` — the unique identifier of the Postgres Pro instance.

Additionally, you can define remote, retention, logging, and compression settings using the `set-config` command:

```
pg_probackup set-config -B backup_dir --instance instance_name
[--external-dirs=external_directory_path] [remote_options] [connection_options]
[retention_options] [logging_options]
```
To view the current settings, run the following command:

```
pg_probackup show-config -B backup_dir --instance instance_name
```

You can override the settings defined in `pg_probackup.conf` when running `pg_probackup` commands via the corresponding environment variables and/or command line options.

**Specifying Connection Settings**

If you define connection settings in the `pg_probackup.conf` configuration file, you can omit connection options in all the subsequent `pg_probackup` commands. However, if the corresponding environment variables are set, they get higher priority. The options provided on the command line overwrite both environment variables and configuration file settings.

If nothing is given, the default values are taken. By default `pg_probackup` tries to use local connection via Unix domain socket (`localhost` on Windows) and tries to get the database name and the user name from the `PGUSER` environment variable or the current OS user name.

**Managing the Backup Catalog**

With `pg_probackup`, you can manage backups from the command line:

- View backup information
- View WAL Archive Information
- Validate backups
- Merge backups
- Delete backups

**Viewing Backup Information**

To view the list of existing backups for every instance, run the command:

```
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir
```

`pg_probackup` displays the list of all the available backups. For example:

```
BACKUP INSTANCE 'node'
======================================================================================================================================
Instance  Version  ID      Recovery time           Mode    WAL Mode  TLI  Time    Data          WAL  Zratio  Start LSN   Stop LSN    Status
======================================================================================================================================
node      10       PYSUE8  2019-10-03 15:51:48+03  FULL    ARCHIVE   1/0   16s  9047kB   16MB    4.31  0/12000028  0/12000160  OK
node      10       P7XDQV  2018-04-29 05:32:59+03  DELTA   STREAM    1/1   11s    19MB   16MB    1.00  0/15000060  0/15000198  OK
node      10       P7XDJA  2018-04-29 05:28:36+03  PTRACK  STREAM    1/1   21s    32MB   32MB    1.00  0/13000028  0/13000198  OK
node      10       P7XDHU  2018-04-29 05:27:59+03  PAGE    STREAM    1/1   15s    33MB   16MB    1.00  0/11000028  0/11000198  OK
node      10       P7XDHB  2018-04-29 05:27:15+03  FULL    STREAM    1/0   11s    39MB   16MB    1.00  0/F000028   0/F000198   OK
```

For each backup, the following information is provided:

- **Instance** — the instance name.
- **Version** — Postgres Pro major version.
- **ID** — the backup identifier.
- **Recovery time** — the earliest moment for which you can restore the state of the database cluster.
- **Mode** — the method used to take this backup. Possible values: FULL, PAGE, DELTA, PTRACK.
- **WAL Mode** — WAL delivery mode. Possible values: STREAM and ARCHIVE.
- **TLI** — timeline identifiers of the current backup and its parent.
• **Time** — the time it took to perform the backup.

• **Data** — the size of the data files in this backup. This value does not include the size of WAL files. For STREAM backups, the total size of the backup can be calculated as **Data + WAL**.

• **WAL** — the uncompressed size of WAL files that need to be applied during recovery for the backup to reach a consistent state.

• **Zratio** — compression ratio calculated as “uncompressed-bytes” / “data-bytes”.

• **Start LSN** — WAL log sequence number corresponding to the start of the backup process. REDO point for Postgres Pro recovery process to start from.

• **Stop LSN** — WAL log sequence number corresponding to the end of the backup process. Consistency point for Postgres Pro recovery process.

• **Status** — backup status. Possible values:
  - **OK** — the backup is complete and valid.
  - **DONE** — the backup is complete, but was not validated.
  - **RUNNING** — the backup is in progress.
  - **MERGING** — the backup is being merged.
  - **MERGED** — the backup data files were successfully merged, but its metadata is in the process of being updated. Only full backups can have this status.
  - **DELETING** — the backup files are being deleted.
  - **CORRUPT** — some of the backup files are corrupt.
  - **ERROR** — the backup was aborted because of an unexpected error.
  - **ORPHAN** — the backup is invalid because one of its parent backups is corrupt or missing.

You can restore the cluster from the backup only if the backup status is **OK** or **DONE**.

To get more detailed information about the backup, run the `show` command with the backup ID:

```
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id
```

The sample output is as follows:

```
#Configuration
backup-mode = FULL
stream = false
compress-alg = zlib
compress-level = 1
from-replica = false

#Compatibility
block-size = 8192
wal-block-size = 8192
checksum-version = 1
program-version = 2.1.3
server-version = 10

#Result backup info
timelineid = 1
start-lsn = 0/04000028
stop-lsn = 0/040000f8
start-time = '2017-05-16 12:57:29'
end-time = '2017-05-16 12:57:31'
recovery-xid = 597
recovery-time = '2017-05-16 12:57:31'
expire-time = '2020-05-16 12:57:31'
data-bytes = 22288792
wal-bytes = 16777216
```
uncompressed-bytes = 39961833
pgdata-bytes = 39859393
status = OK
parent-backup-id = 'PT8XFX'
primary_conninfo = 'user=backup passfile=/var/lib/pgsql/.pgpass port=5432
sslmode=disable sslcompression=1 target_session_attrs=any'

Detailed output has additional attributes:

• compress-alg — compression algorithm used during backup. Possible values: zlib, pglz, none.
• compress-level — compression level used during backup.
• from-replica — was this backup taken on standby? Possible values: 1, 0.
• block-size — the block_size setting of Postgres Pro cluster at the backup start.
• checksum-version — are data_checkums enabled in the backed up Postgres Pro cluster? Possible values: 1, 0.
• program-version — full version of pg_probackup binary used to create the backup.
• start-time — the backup start time.
• end-time — the backup end time.
• expire-time — the point in time when a pinned backup can be removed in accordance with retention policy. This attribute is only available for pinned backups.
• uncompressed-bytes — the size of data files before adding page headers and applying compression. You can evaluate the effectiveness of compression by comparing uncompressed-bytes to pgdata-bytes if compression if used.
• pgdata-bytes — the size of Postgres Pro cluster data files at the time of backup. You can evaluate the effectiveness of an incremental backup by comparing pgdata-bytes to uncompressed-bytes.
• recovery-xid — transaction ID at the backup end time.
• parent-backup-id — ID of the parent backup. Available only for incremental backups.
• primary_conninfo — libpq connection parameters used to connect to the Postgres Pro cluster to take this backup. The password is not included.
• note — text note attached to backup.
• content-crc — CRC32 checksum of backup_content.control file. It is used to detect corruption of backup metainformation.

You can also get the detailed information about the backup in the JSON format:

pg_probackup show -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --format=json -i backup_id

The sample output is as follows:

```json
[
  {
    "instance": "node",
    "backups": [
      {
        "id": "PT91HZ",
        "parent-backup-id": "PT8XFX",
        "backup-mode": "DELTA",
        "wal": "ARCHIVE",
        "compress-alg": "zlib",
        "compress-level": 1,
        "from-replica": false,
        "block-size": 8192,
        "xlog-block-size": 8192,
        "checksum-version": 1,
        "program-version": "2.1.3",
        "server-version": "10",
        "current-tli": 16,
        "parent-tli": 2,
        "start-lsn": "0/8000028",
```
"stop-lsn": "0/8000160",
"start-time": "2019-06-17 18:25:11+03",
"end-time": "2019-06-17 18:25:16+03",
"recovery-xid": 0,
"recovery-time": "2019-06-17 18:25:15+03",
"data-bytes": 106733,
"wal-bytes": 16777216,
"primary_conninfo": "user=backup passfile=/var/lib/pgsql/.pgpass
port=5432 sslmode=disable sslcompression=1 target_session_attrs=any",
"status": "OK"
]
]
]

Viewing WAL Archive Information

To view the information about WAL archive for every instance, run the command:

```
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir [--instance instance_name] --archive
```

pg_probackup displays the list of all the available WAL files grouped by timelines. For example:

```
ARCHIVE INSTANCE 'node'
===================================================================================================================================
TLI  Parent TLI  Switchpoint  Min Segno                 Max Segno                 N segments  Size    Zratio  N backups  Status
===================================================================================================================================
5    1           0/B000000    00000005000000000000000B  00000005000000000000000C  2 685kB   48.00   0          OK
4    3           0/18000000   00000004000000000000001A  000000040000000000000018  3 648kB   77.00   0          OK
3    2           0/15000000   000000030000000000000015  000000030000000000000017  3 648kB   77.00   0          OK
2    1           0/B000108    00000002000000000000000B  000000020000000000000015  5 892kB   94.00   1          DEGRADED
1    0           0/0          000000010000000000000001  00000001000000000000000A  10 8774kB  19.00   1          OK
```

For each timeline, the following information is provided:

- **TLI** — timeline identifier.
- **Parent TLI** — identifier of the timeline from which this timeline branched off.
- **Switchpoint** — LSN of the moment when the timeline branched off from its parent timeline.
- **Min Segno** — the first WAL segment belonging to the timeline.
- **Max Segno** — the last WAL segment belonging to the timeline.
- **N segments** — number of WAL segments belonging to the timeline.
- **Size** — the size that files take on disk.
- **Zratio** — compression ratio calculated as \( \frac{N \text{ segments} \times \text{wal_segment_size} \times \text{wal_block_size}}{\text{Size}} \).
- **N backups** — number of backups belonging to the timeline. To get the details about backups, use the JSON format.
- **Status** — status of the WAL archive for this timeline. Possible values:
  - **OK** — all WAL segments between **Min Segno** and **Max Segno** are present.
  - **DEGRADED** — some WAL segments between **Min Segno** and **Max Segno** are missing. To find out which files are lost, view this report in the JSON format.

To get more detailed information about the WAL archive in the JSON format, run the command:

```
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir [--instance instance_name] --archive --format=json
```
The sample output is as follows:

```json
[
  {
    "instance": "replica",
    "timelines": [
      {
        "tli": 5,
        "parent-tli": 1,
        "switchpoint": "0/B000000",
        "min-segno": "00000005000000000000000B",
        "max-segno": "00000005000000000000000C",
        "n-segments": 2,
        "size": 685320,
        "zratio": 48.00,
        "closest-backup-id": "PXS92O",
        "status": "OK",
        "lost-segments": [],
        "backups": []
      },
      {
        "tli": 4,
        "parent-tli": 3,
        "switchpoint": "0/18000000",
        "min-segno": "000000040000000000000018",
        "max-segno": "00000004000000000000001A",
        "n-segments": 3,
        "size": 648625,
        "zratio": 77.00,
        "closest-backup-id": "PXS9CE",
        "status": "OK",
        "lost-segments": [],
        "backups": []
      },
      {
        "tli": 3,
        "parent-tli": 2,
        "switchpoint": "0/15000000",
        "min-segno": "000000030000000000000015",
        "max-segno": "000000030000000000000017",
        "n-segments": 3,
        "size": 648911,
        "zratio": 77.00,
        "closest-backup-id": "PXS9CE",
        "status": "OK",
        "lost-segments": [],
        "backups": []
      },
      {
        "tli": 2,
        "parent-tli": 1,
        "switchpoint": "0/B000108",
        "min-segno": "00000002000000000000000B",
        "max-segno": "00000002000000000000000B",
        "n-segments": 5,
        "size": 892173,
        "zratio": 94.00,
        "closest-backup-id": "PXS92O",
        "lost-segments": [],
        "backups": []
      }
    ]
  }
]
```
Json representation:

```json
"status": "DEGRADED",
"lost-segments": [
    {
        "begin-segno": "00000002000000000000000D",
        "end-segno": "00000002000000000000000E"
    },
    {
        "begin-segno": "000000020000000000000010",
        "end-segno": "000000020000000000000012"
    }
],
"backups": [
    {
        "id": "FXS9CE",
        "backup-mode": "FULL",
        "wal": "ARCHIVE",
        "compress-alg": "none",
        "compress-level": 1,
        "from-replica": "false",
        "block-size": 8192,
        "xlog-block-size": 8192,
        "checksum-version": 1,
        "program-version": "2.1.5",
        "server-version": "10",
        "current-tli": 2,
        "parent-tli": 0,
        "start-lsn": "0/C000028",
        "stop-lsn": "0/C000160",
        "start-time": "2019-09-13 21:43:26+03",
        "end-time": "2019-09-13 21:43:30+03",
        "recovery-xid": 0,
        "recovery-time": "2019-09-13 21:43:29+03",
        "data-bytes": 104674852,
        "wal-bytes": 16777216,
        "primary_conninfo": "user=backup passfile=/var/lib/pgsql/.pgpass port=5432 sslmode=disable sslcompression=1 target_session_attrs=any",
        "status": "OK"
    }
],
"tli": 1,
"parent-tli": 0,
"switchpoint": "0/0",
"min-segno": "000000010000000000000001",
"max-segno": "00000001000000000000000A",
"n-segments": 10,
"size": 8774805,
"zratio": 19.00,
"closest-backup-id": "",
"status": "OK",
"lost-segments": [],
"backups": [
    {
        "id": "FXS92O",
        "backup-mode": "FULL",
        "wal": "ARCHIVE",
        "compress-alg": "none",
```
"compress-level": 1,
"from-replica": "true",
"block-size": 8192,
"xlog-block-size": 8192,
"checksum-version": 1,
"program-version": "2.1.5",
"server-version": "10",
"current-tli": 1,
"parent-tli": 0,
"start-lsn": "0/4000028",
"stop-lsn": "0/6000028",
"start-time": "2019-09-13 21:37:36+03",
"end-time": "2019-09-13 21:38:45+03",
"recovery-xid": 0,
"recovery-time": "2019-09-13 21:37:30+03",
"data-bytes": 25987319,
"wal-bytes": 50331648,
"primary_conninfo": "user=backup passfile=/var/lib/pgsql/.pgpass
port=5432 sslmode=disable sslcompression=1 target_session_attrs=any",
"status": "OK"}
Most fields are consistent with the plain format, with some exceptions:

- The size is in bytes.
- The `closest-backup-id` attribute contains the ID of the most recent valid backup that belongs to one of the previous timelines. You can use this backup to perform point-in-time recovery to this timeline. If such a backup does not exist, this string is empty.
- The `lost-segments` array provides information about intervals of missing segments in DEGRADED timelines. In OK timelines, the `lost-segments` array is empty.
- The `backups` array lists all backups belonging to the timeline. If the timeline has no backups, this array is empty.

Configuring Retention Policy

With pg_probackup, you can configure retention policy to remove redundant backups, clean up unneeded WAL files, as well as pin specific backups to ensure they are kept for the specified time, as explained in the sections below. All these actions can be combined together in any way.
Removing Redundant Backups

By default, all backup copies created with pg_probackup are stored in the specified backup catalog. To save disk space, you can configure retention policy to remove redundant backup copies.

To configure retention policy, set one or more of the following variables in the `pg_probackup.conf` file via `set-config`:

```
--retention-redundancy=redun
dancy
```

Specifies the number of full backup copies to keep in the backup catalog.

```
--retention-window=window
```

Defines the earliest point in time for which pg_probackup can complete the recovery. This option is set in the number of days from the current moment. For example, if `retention-window=7`, pg_probackup must keep at least one backup copy that is older than seven days, with all the corresponding WAL files, and all the backups that follow.

If both `--retention-redundancy` and `--retention-window` options are set, both these conditions have to be taken into account when purging the backup catalog. For example, if you set `--retention-redundancy=2` and `--retention-window=7`, pg_probackup has to keep two full backup copies, as well as all the backups required to ensure recoverability for the last seven days:

```
pg_probackup set-config -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --retention-redundancy=2 --retention-window=7
```

To clean up the backup catalog in accordance with retention policy, you have to run the delete command with retention flags, as shown below, or use the backup command with these flags to process the outdated backup copies right when the new backup is created.

For example, to remove all backup copies that no longer satisfy the defined retention policy, run the following command with the `--delete-expired` flag:

```
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --delete-expired
```

If you would like to also remove the WAL files that are no longer required for any of the backups, you should also specify the `--delete-wal` flag:

```
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --delete-expired --delete-wal
```

You can also set or override the current retention policy by specifying `--retention-redundancy` and `--retention-window` options directly when running delete or backup commands:

```
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --delete-expired --retention-redundancy=2 --retention-window=7
```

Since incremental backups require that their parent full backup and all the preceding incremental backups are available, if any of such backups expire, they still cannot be removed while at least one incremental backup in this chain satisfies the retention policy. To avoid keeping expired backups that are still required to restore an active incremental one, you can merge them with this backup using the `--merge-expired` flag when running backup or delete commands.

Suppose you have backed up the `node` instance in the `backup_dir` directory, with the `--retention-window` option set to 7, and you have the following backups available on April 10, 2019:

```
BACKUP INSTANCE 'node'
===================================================================================================================================
Instance  Version  ID      Recovery time           Mode   WAL     TLI  Time    Data
WAL  Zratio  Start LSN   Stop LSN    Status
===================================================================================================================================
node      10       P7XDHR  2019-04-10 05:27:15+03  FULL   STREAM  1/0   11s   200MB
          16MB     1.0  0/18000059  0/18000197  OK
```

```
2536
Even though P7XDHB and P7XDHU backups are outside the retention window, they cannot be removed as it invalidates the succeeding incremental backups P7XDJA and P7XDQV that are still required, so, if you run the delete command with the --delete-expired flag, only the P7XDFT full backup will be removed.

With the --merge-expired option, the P7XDJA backup is merged with the underlying P7XDHU and P7XDBH backups and becomes a full one, so there is no need to keep these expired backups anymore:

```
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance node --delete-expired --merge-expired
```

```
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir
```

```
BACKUP INSTANCE 'node'
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instance</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Recovery time</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>WAL</th>
<th>TLI</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>P7XDHU</td>
<td>2019-04-02 05:27:59+03 PAGE STREAM 1/0 31s 33MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>P7XDHV</td>
<td>2019-04-03 05:28:36+03 PAGE STREAM 1/0 21s 32MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>P7XDHU</td>
<td>2019-04-02 05:27:59+03 PAGE STREAM 1/0 31s 33MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>P7XDHV</td>
<td>2019-04-03 05:28:36+03 PAGE STREAM 1/0 21s 32MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Time field for the merged backup displays the time required for the merge.

**Pinning Backups**

If you need to keep certain backups longer than the established retention policy allows, you can pin them for arbitrary time. For example:

```
pg_probackup set-backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id --ttl=30d
```

This command sets the expiration time of the specified backup to 30 days starting from the time indicated in its recovery-time attribute.

You can also explicitly set the expiration time for a backup using the --expire-time option. For example:

```
pg_probackup set-backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id --expire-time="2020-01-01 00:00:00+03"
```

Alternatively, you can use the --ttl and --expire-time options with the backup command to pin the newly created backup:

```
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b FULL --ttl=30d
```

```
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -b FULL --expire-time="2020-01-01 00:00:00+03"
```

To check if the backup is pinned, run the show command:

```
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id
```

If the backup is pinned, it has the expire-time attribute that displays its expiration time:
recovery-time = '2017-05-16 12:57:31'
expire-time = '2020-01-01 00:00:00+03'
data-bytes = 22288792
...

You can unpin the backup by setting the --ttl option to zero:

```
pg_probackup set-backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id --ttl=0
```

**Note**

A pinned incremental backup implicitly pins all its parent backups. If you unpin such a backup later, its implicitly pinned parents will also be automatically unpinned.

### Configuring WAL Archive Retention Policy

When **continuous WAL archiving** is enabled, archived WAL segments can take a lot of disk space. Even if you delete old backup copies from time to time, the **--delete-wal** flag can purge only those WAL segments that do not apply to any of the remaining backups in the backup catalog. However, if point-in-time recovery is critical only for the most recent backups, you can configure WAL archive retention policy to keep WAL archive of limited depth and win back some more disk space.

To configure WAL archive retention policy, you have to run the `set-config` command with the **--wal-depth** option that specifies the number of backups that can be used for PITR. This setting applies to all the timelines, so you should be able to perform PITR for the same number of backups on each timeline, if available. **Pinned backups** are not included into this count: if one of the latest backups is pinned, `pg_probackup` ensures that PITR is possible for one extra backup.

To remove WAL segments that do not satisfy the defined WAL archive retention policy, you simply have to run the **delete** or **backup** command with the **--delete-wal** flag. For archive backups, WAL segments between Start LSN and Stop LSN are always kept intact, so such backups remain valid regardless of the **--wal-depth setting** and can still be restored, if required.

You can also use the **--wal-depth** option with the delete and backup commands to override the previously defined WAL archive retention policy and purge old WAL segments on the fly.

**Suppose you have backed up** the node **instance** in the **backup_dir** directory and configured **continuous WAL archiving**:

```
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir --instance node
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instance</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Recovery Time</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>WAL Mode</th>
<th>TLI</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>PZ9442</td>
<td>2019-10-12 10:43:21+03</td>
<td>DELTA</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>10s</td>
<td>121kB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>PZ943L</td>
<td>2019-10-12 10:43:04+03</td>
<td>FULL</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>10s</td>
<td>180MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>PZ7YR5</td>
<td>2019-10-11 19:49:56+03</td>
<td>DELTA</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>10s</td>
<td>112kB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>PZ7YM5</td>
<td>2019-10-11 19:47:16+03</td>
<td>DELTA</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>10s</td>
<td>376kB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>PZ7YK2</td>
<td>2019-10-11 19:45:45+03</td>
<td>FULL</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>11s</td>
<td>180MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>PZ7YFO</td>
<td>2019-10-11 19:43:04+03</td>
<td>FULL</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>10s</td>
<td>30MB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You can check the state of the WAL archive by running the `show` command with the `--archive` flag:

```sql
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir --instance node --archive
```

```
ARCHIVE INSTANCE 'node'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TLI</th>
<th>Parent TLI</th>
<th>Switchpoint</th>
<th>Min Segno</th>
<th>Max Segno</th>
<th>N backups</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>00000001000000000000000000000001</td>
<td>00000001000000000000000000000047</td>
<td>71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>36MB</td>
<td>31.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

WAL purge without `--wal-depth` cannot achieve much, only one segment is removed:

```sql
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance node --delete-wal
```

```
ARCHIVE INSTANCE 'node'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TLI</th>
<th>Parent TLI</th>
<th>Switchpoint</th>
<th>Min Segno</th>
<th>Max Segno</th>
<th>N backups</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>00000001000000000000000000000002</td>
<td>00000001000000000000000000000047</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>34MB</td>
<td>32.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

If you would like, for example, to keep only those WAL segments that can be applied to the latest valid backup, set the `--wal-depth` option to 1:

```sql
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance node --delete-wal --wal-depth=1
```

```
ARCHIVE INSTANCE 'node'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TLI</th>
<th>Parent TLI</th>
<th>Switchpoint</th>
<th>Min Segno</th>
<th>Max Segno</th>
<th>N backups</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>00000001000000000000000000000046</td>
<td>00000001000000000000000000000047</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>143kB</td>
<td>228.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Alternatively, you can use the `--wal-depth` option with the `backup` command:

```sql
pg_probackup backup -B backup_dir --instance node -b DELTA --wal-depth=1 --delete-wal
```

```
ARCHIVE INSTANCE 'node'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TLI</th>
<th>Parent TLI</th>
<th>Switchpoint</th>
<th>Min Segno</th>
<th>Max Segno</th>
<th>N backups</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>00000001000000000000000000000048</td>
<td>00000001000000000000000000000049</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>72kB</td>
<td>228.00</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

### Merging Backups

As you take more and more incremental backups, the total size of the backup catalog can substantially grow. To save disk space, you can merge incremental backups to their parent full backup by running the `merge` command, specifying the backup ID of the most recent incremental backup you would like to merge:

```sql
pg_probackup merge -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id
```

This command merges backups that belong to a common incremental backup chain. If you specify a full backup, it will be merged with its first incremental backup. If you specify an incremental backup, it will be merged to its parent full backup, together with all incremental backups between them. Once the merge is complete, the full backup takes in all the merged data, and the incremental backups are removed as redundant. Thus, the merge operation is virtually equivalent to retaking a full backup and...
removing all the outdated backups, but it allows to save much time, especially for large data volumes, as well as I/O and network traffic if you are using pg_probackup in the remote mode.

Before the merge, pg_probackup validates all the affected backups to ensure that they are valid. You can check the current backup status by running the show command with the backup ID:

```bash
pg_probackup show -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id
```

If the merge is still in progress, the backup status is displayed as MERGING. For full backups, it can also be shown as MERGED while the metadata is being updated at the final stage of the merge. The merge is idempotent, so you can restart the merge if it was interrupted.

### Deleting Backups

To delete a backup that is no longer required, run the following command:

```bash
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id
```

This command will delete the backup with the specified backup_id, together with all the incremental backups that descend from backup_id, if any. This way you can delete some recent incremental backups, retaining the underlying full backup and some of the incremental backups that follow it.

To delete obsolete WAL files that are not necessary to restore any of the remaining backups, use the --delete-wal flag:

```bash
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --delete-wal
```

To delete backups that are expired according to the current retention policy, use the --delete-expired flag:

```bash
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --delete-expired
```

Expired backups cannot be removed while at least one incremental backup that satisfies the retention policy is based on them. If you would like to minimize the number of backups still required to keep incremental backups valid, specify the --merge-expired flag when running this command:

```bash
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --delete-expired --merge-expired
```

In this case, pg_probackup searches for the oldest incremental backup that satisfies the retention policy and merges this backup with the underlying full and incremental backups that have already expired, thus making it a full backup. Once the merge is complete, the remaining expired backups are deleted.

Before merging or deleting backups, you can run the delete command with the --dry-run flag, which displays the status of all the available backups according to the current retention policy, without performing any irreversible actions.

To delete all backups with specific status, use the --status:

```bash
pg_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --status=ERROR
```

Deleting backups by status ignores established retention policies.

### Cloning and Synchronizing Postgres Pro Instance

pg_probackup can create a copy of a Postgres Pro instance directly, without using the backup catalog. To do this, you can run the catchup command. It can be useful in the following cases:

- To add a new standby server:

  Usually, pg_basebackup is used to create a copy of a Postgres Pro instance. If the data directory of the destination instance is empty, the catchup command works similarly, but it can be faster if run in parallel mode.
To have a fallen-behind standby server “catch up” with master.

Under write-intensive load, replicas may fail to replay WAL fast enough to keep up with master and hence may lag behind. A usual solution to create a new replica and switch to it requires a lot of extra space and data transfer. The `catchup` command allows you to update an existing replica much faster by bringing differences from master.

`catchup` is different from other `pg_probackup` operations:

- The backup catalog is not required.
- STREAM WAL delivery mode is only supported.
- Copying external directories is not supported.
- DDL commands `CREATE TABLESPACE/DROP TABLESPACE` cannot be run simultaneously with `catchup`.

`catchup` takes configuration files, such as `postgresql.conf`, `postgresql.auto.conf`, or `pg_hba.conf`, from the source server and overwrites them on the target server. The `--exclude-path` option allows you to keep the configuration files intact.

To prepare for cloning/synchronizing a Postgres Pro instance, set up the source instance server as follows:

- Configure the database cluster for the instance to copy.
- To copy from a remote server, configure the remote mode.
- To use the PTRACK catchup mode, set up PTRACK backups.

Before cloning/synchronizing a Postgres Pro instance, ensure that the source instance server is running and accepting connections. To clone/sync a Postgres Pro instance, on the server with the destination instance, you can run the `catchup` command as follows:

```
pg_probackup catchup -b catchup_mode --source-pgdata=path_to_pgdata_on_remote_server --destination-pgdata=path_to_local_dir --stream [connection_options] [remote_options]
```

Where `catchup_mode` can take one of the following values: FULL, DELTA, or PTRACK.

- FULL — creates a full copy of the Postgres Pro instance. The data directory of the destination instance must be empty for this mode.
- DELTA — reads all data files in the data directory and creates an incremental copy for pages that have changed since the destination instance was shut down.
- PTRACK — tracking page changes on the fly, only reads and copies pages that have changed since the point of divergence of the source and destination instances.

**Warning**

PTRACK catchup mode requires PTRACK not earlier than 2.0 and hence, Postgres Pro not earlier than 11.

By specifying the `--stream` option, you can set STREAM WAL delivery mode of copying, which will include all the necessary WAL files by streaming them from the instance server via replication protocol.

You can use `connection_options` to specify the connection to the source database cluster. If it is located on a different server, also specify `remote_options`.

If the source database cluster contains tablespaces that must be located in a different directory, additionally specify the `--tablespace-mapping` option:

```
pg_probackup catchup -b catchup_mode --source-pgdata=path_to_pgdata_on_remote_server --destination-pgdata=path_to_local_dir --stream --tablespace-mapping=OLDDIR=NEWDIR
```
To run the `catchup` command on parallel threads, specify the number of threads with the `--threads` option:

```
pg_probackup catchup -b catchup_mode --source-pgdata=path_to_pgdatal_on_remote_server --destination-pgdata=path_to_local_dir --stream --threads=num_threads
```

For example, assume that a remote standby server with the Postgres Pro instance having `/replica-pgdata` data directory has fallen behind. To sync this instance with the one in `/master-pgdata` data directory, you can run the `catchup` command in the PTRACK mode on four parallel threads as follows:

```
```

Note that in this example, the configuration files will not be overwritten during synchronization.

Another example shows how you can add a new remote standby server with the Postgres Pro data directory `/replica-pgdata` by running the `catchup` command in the FULL mode on four parallel threads:

```
pg_probackup catchup --source-pgdata=/master-pgdata --destination-pgdata=/replica-pgdata -p 5432 -d postgres -U remote-postgres-user --stream --backup-mode=FULL --remote-host=remote-hostname --remote-user=remote-username -j 4
```

**Command-Line Reference**

**Commands**

This section describes `pg_probackup` commands. Optional parameters are enclosed in square brackets. For detailed parameter descriptions, see the section [Options](#options).

### version

```
pg_probackup version
```

Prints `pg_probackup` version.

### help

```
pg_probackup help [command]
```

Displays the synopsis of `pg_probackup` commands. If one of the `pg_probackup` commands is specified, shows detailed information about the options that can be used with this command.

### init

```
pg_probackup init -B backup_dir [--help]
```

Initializes the backup catalog in `backup_dir` that will store backup copies, WAL archive, and meta information for the backed up database clusters. If the specified `backup_dir` already exists, it must be empty. Otherwise, `pg_probackup` displays a corresponding error message.

For details, see the section [Initializing the Backup Catalog](#initializing-the-backup-catalog).

### add-instance

```
pg_probackup add-instance -B backup_dir -D data_dir --instance instance_name [--help]
```

Initializes a new backup instance inside the backup catalog `backup_dir` and generates the `pg_probackup.conf` configuration file that controls `pg_probackup` settings for the cluster with the specified `data_dir` data directory.

For details, see the section [Adding a New Backup Instance](#adding-a-new-backup-instance).

### del-instance

```
pg_probackup del-instance -B backup_dir --instance instance_name [--help]
```

---

2542
Deletes all backups and WAL files associated with the specified instance.

**set-config**

```bash
gp_probackup set-config -B backup_dir --instance instance_name
[--help] [--pgdata=pgdata-path]
[--retention-redundancy=redundancy] [--retention-window=window] [--wal-depth=wal_depth]
[--compress-algorithm=compression_algorithm] [--compress-level=compression_level]
[--dbname] [--host] [--port] [--username]
[--archive-timeout=timeout] [--external-dirs=external_directory_path]
[--restore-command=cmdline]
```

Adds the specified connection, compression, retention, logging, and external directory settings into the `pg_probackup.conf` configuration file, or modifies the previously defined values.

For all available settings, see the Options section.

It is **not recommended** to edit `pg_probackup.conf` manually.

**set-backup**

```bash
gp_probackup set-backup -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id
[--ttl=ttl | --expire-time=time]
[--note=backup_note] [--help]
```

Sets the provided backup-specific settings into the `backup.control` configuration file, or modifies the previously defined values.

**--note=backup_note**

Sets the text note for backup copy. If `backup_note` contain newline characters, then only substring before first newline character will be saved. Max size of text note is 1 KB. The 'none' value removes current note.

For all available pinning settings, see the section Pinning Options.

**show-config**

```bash
gp_probackup show-config -B backup_dir --instance instance_name
```

Displays the contents of the `pg_probackup.conf` configuration file located in the `backup_dir/backups/instance_name` directory. You can specify the `--format=json` option to get the result in the JSON format.

By default, configuration settings are shown as plain text.

To edit `pg_probackup.conf`, use the `set-config` command.

**show**

```bash
gp_probackup show -B backup_dir
```

Shows the contents of the backup catalog. If `instance_name` and `backup_id` are specified, shows detailed information about this backup. If the `--archive` option is specified, shows the contents of WAL archive of the backup catalog.

By default, the contents of the backup catalog is shown as plain text. You can specify the `--format=json` option to get the result in the JSON format. If `--no-color` flag is used, then the output is not colored.

For details on usage, see the sections Managing the Backup Catalog and Viewing WAL Archive Information.

**backup**

```bash
gp_probackup backup -B backup_dir -b backup_mode --instance instance_name
```

2543
Additional Supplied Programs

Creates a backup copy of the Postgres Pro instance.

`-b mode`  
`--backup-mode=mode`

Specifies the backup mode to use. Possible values are:

- **FULL** — creates a full backup that contains all the data files of the cluster to be restored.
- **DELTA** — reads all data files in the data directory and creates an incremental backup for pages that have changed since the previous backup.
- **PAGE** — creates an incremental PAGE backup based on the WAL files that have changed since the previous full or incremental backup was taken.
- **PTRACK** — creates an incremental PTRACK backup tracking page changes on the fly.

`-C`  
`--smooth-checkpoint`

Spreads out the checkpoint over a period of time. By default, pg_probackup tries to complete the checkpoint as soon as possible.

`--stream`

Makes a **STREAM** backup, which includes all the necessary WAL files by streaming them from the database server via replication protocol.

`--temp-slot`

Creates a temporary physical replication slot for streaming WAL from the backed up Postgres Pro instance. It ensures that all the required WAL segments remain available if WAL is rotated while the backup is in progress. This flag can only be used together with the `--stream` flag. The default slot name is `pg_probackup_slot`, which can be changed using the `--slot/-S` option.

`-S slot_name`  
`--slot=slot_name`

Specifies the replication slot for WAL streaming. This option can only be used together with the `--stream` flag.

`--backup-pg-log`

Includes the log directory into the backup. This directory usually contains log messages. By default, log directory is excluded.

`-E external_directory_path`  
`--external-dirs=external_directory_path`

Includes the specified directory into the backup by recursively copying its contents into a separate subdirectory in the backup catalog. This option is useful to back up scripts, SQL dump files, and configuration files located outside of the data directory. If you would like to back up several external directories, separate their paths by a colon on Unix and a semicolon on Windows.

`--archive-timeout=wait_time`

Sets the timeout for WAL segment archiving and streaming, in seconds. By default, pg_probackup waits 300 seconds.
--skip-block-validation

Disables block-level checksum verification to speed up the backup process.

--no-validate

Skips automatic validation after the backup is taken. You can use this flag if you validate backups regularly and would like to save time when running backup operations.

--no-sync

Do not sync backed up files to disk. You can use this flag to speed up the backup process. Using this flag can result in data corruption in case of operating system or hardware crash. If you use this option, it is recommended to run the validate command once the backup is complete to detect possible issues.

--note=backup_note

Sets the text note for backup copy. If backup_note contain newline characters, then only substring before first newline character will be saved. Max size of text note is 1 KB. The 'none' value removes current note.

Additionally, connection options, retention options, pinning options, remote mode options, compression options, logging options, and common options can be used.

For details on usage, see the section Creating a Backup.

restore

pg_probackup restore -B backup_dir --instance instance_name
[--help] [-D data_dir] [-i backup_id]
[-j num_threads] [--progress]
[-T OLDDIR=NEWDIR] [--external-mapping=OLDDIR=NEWDIR] [--skip-external-dirs]
[--force] [--no-sync]
[--restore-command=cmdline]
[--primary-conninfo=primary_conninfo]
[-S | --primary-slot-name=slot_name]
[recovery_target_options] [logging_options] [remote_options]
[partial_restore_options] [remote_wal_archive_options]

Restores the Postgres Pro instance from a backup copy located in the backup_dir backup catalog. If you specify a recovery target option, pg_probackup finds the closest backup and restores it to the specified recovery target. If neither the backup ID nor recovery target options are provided, pg_probackup uses the most recent backup to perform the recovery.

-R

--restore-as-replica

Creates a minimal recovery configuration file to facilitate setting up a standby server. If the replication connection requires a password, you must specify the password manually in the primary_conninfo parameter as it is not included. For Postgres Pro 11 or lower, recovery settings are written into the recovery.conf file. Starting from Postgres Pro 12, pg_probackup writes these settings into the probackup_recovery.conf file in the data directory, and then includes them into the postgresql.auto.conf when the cluster is started.

--primary-conninfo=primary_conninfo

Sets the primary_conninfo parameter to the specified value. This option will be ignored unless the -R flag is specified.

Example: --primary-conninfo="host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo password=foopass"
Additional Supplied Programs

-S
--primary-slot-name=slot_name

Sets the primary_slot_name parameter to the specified value. This option will be ignored unless the -R flag is specified.

-T OLDDIR=NEWDIR
--tablespace-mapping=OLDDIR=NEWDIR

Relocates the tablespace from the OLDDIR to the NEWDIR directory at the time of recovery. Both OLDDIR and NEWDIR must be absolute paths. If the path contains the equals sign (=), escape it with a backslash. This option can be specified multiple times for multiple tablespacess.

--external-mapping=OLDDIR=NEWDIR

Relocates an external directory included into the backup from the OLDDIR to the NEWDIR directory at the time of recovery. Both OLDDIR and NEWDIR must be absolute paths. If the path contains the equals sign (=), escape it with a backslash. This option can be specified multiple times for multiple directories.

--skip-external-dirs

Skip external directories included into the backup with the --external-dirs option. The contents of these directories will not be restored.

--skip-block-validation

Disables block-level checksum verification to speed up validation. During automatic validation before the restore only file-level checksums will be verified.

--no-validate

Skips backup validation. You can use this flag if you validate backups regularly and would like to save time when running restore operations.

--restore-command=cmdline

Sets the restore_command parameter to the specified command. For example: --restore-command='cp /mnt/server/archivedir/%f "$p"'

--force

Allows to ignore an invalid status of the backup. You can use this flag if you need to restore the Postgres Pro cluster from a corrupt or an invalid backup. Use with caution. If PGDATA contains a non-empty directory with system ID different from that of the backup being restored, incremental restore with this flag overwrites the directory contents (while an error occurs without the flag). If tablespaces are remapped through the --tablespace-mapping option into non-empty directories, the contents of such directories will be deleted.

--no-sync

Do not sync restored files to disk. You can use this flag to speed up restore process. Using this flag can result in data corruption in case of operating system or hardware crash. If it happens, you have to run the restore command again.

Additionally, recovery target options, remote mode options, remote WAL archive options, logging options, partial restore options, and common options can be used.

For details on usage, see the section Restoring a Cluster.

ccheckdb

g_probackup checkdb
[-B backup_dir] [--instance instance_name] [-D data_dir]
Additional Supplied Programs

[--help] [-j num_threads] [--progress]
[--skip-block-validation] [--amcheck] [--heapallindexed]
[connection_options] [logging_options]

Verifies the Postgres Pro database cluster correctness by detecting physical and logical corruption.

--amcheck
Performs logical verification of indexes for the specified Postgres Pro instance if no corruption was found while checking data files. You must have the amcheck extension or the amcheck_next extension installed in the database to check its indexes. For databases without amcheck, index verification will be skipped.

--skip-block-validation
Skip validation of data files. You can use this flag only together with the --amcheck flag, so that only logical verification of indexes is performed.

--heapallindexed
Checks that all heap tuples that should be indexed are actually indexed. You can use this flag only together with the --amcheck flag.

This check is only possible if you are using the amcheck extension of version 2.0 or higher, or the amcheck_next extension of any version.

Additionally, connection options and logging options can be used.

For details on usage, see the section Verifying a Cluster.

validate

pg_probackup validate -B backup_dir
[--help] [--instance instance_name] [-i backup_id]
[-j num_threads] [--progress]
[--skip-block-validation]
[recovery_target_options] [logging_options]

Verifies that all the files required to restore the cluster are present and are not corrupt. If instance_name is not specified, pg_probackup validates all backups available in the backup catalog. If you specify the instance_name without any additional options, pg_probackup validates all the backups available for this backup instance. If you specify the instance_name with a recovery target option and/or a backup_id, pg_probackup checks whether it is possible to restore the cluster using these options.

For details, see the section Validating a Backup.

merge

pg_probackup merge -B backup_dir --instance instance_name -i backup_id
[logging_options]

Merges backups that belong to a common incremental backup chain. If you specify a full backup, it will be merged with its first incremental backup. If you specify an incremental backup, it will be merged to its parent full backup, together with all incremental backups between them. Once the merge is complete, the full backup takes in all the merged data, and the incremental backups are removed as redundant.

--no-validate
Skips automatic validation before and after merge.

--no-sync
Do not sync merged files to disk. You can use this flag to speed up the merge process. Using this flag can result in data corruption in case of operating system or hardware crash.
Additional Supplied Programs

For details, see the section Merging Backups.

**delete**

```bash
go_probackup delete -B backup_dir --instance instance_name
[--help] [-j num_threads] [--progress]
[--retention-redundancy=redundancy][--retention-window=window][--wal-depth=wal_depth]
[--delete-wal]
(-i backup_id | --delete-expired --merge-expired) | --merge-expired | --
status=backup_status)
[--dry-run] [--no-validate] [--no-sync] [logging_options]
```

Deletes backup with specified `backup_id` or launches the retention purge of backups and archived WAL that do not satisfy the current retention policies.

--no-validate

Skips automatic validation before and after retention merge.

--no-sync

Do not sync merged files to disk. You can use this flag to speed up the retention merge process. Using this flag can result in data corruption in case of operating system or hardware crash.

For details, see the sections Deleting Backups, Retention Options, and Configuring Retention Policy.

**archive-push**

```bash
go_probackup archive-push -B backup_dir --instance instance_name
--wal-file-name=wal_file_name [--wal-file-path=wal_file_path]
[-j num_threads] [--batch-size=batch_size]
[--archive-timeout=timeout]
[--compress-algorithm=compression_algorithm]
[--compress-level=compression_level]
[remote_options] [logging_options]
```

Copies WAL files into the corresponding subdirectory of the backup catalog and validates the backup instance by `instance_name` and `system-identifier`. If parameters of the backup instance and the cluster do not match, this command fails with the following error message: Refuse to push WAL segment `segment_name` into archive. Instance parameters mismatch.

If the files to be copied already exists in the backup catalog, `go_probackup` computes and compares their checksums. If the checksums match, `archive-push` skips the corresponding file and returns a successful execution code. Otherwise, `archive-push` fails with an error. If you would like to replace WAL files in the case of checksum mismatch, run the `archive-push` command with the `--overwrite` flag.

Each file is copied to a temporary file with the `.part` suffix. If the temporary file already exists, `go_probackup` will wait `archive_timeout` seconds before discarding it. After the copy is done, atomic rename is performed. This algorithm ensures that a failed `archive-push` will not stall continuous archiving and that concurrent archiving from multiple sources into a single WAL archive has no risk of archive corruption.

To speed up archiving, you can specify the `--batch-size` option to copy WAL segments in batches of the specified size. If `--batch-size` option is used, then you can also specify the `-j` option to copy the batch of WAL segments on multiple threads.

WAL segments copied to the archive are synced to disk unless the `--no-sync` flag is used.

You can use `archive-push` in the `archive_command` Postgres Pro parameter to set up continuous WAL archiving.

For details, see sections Archiving Options and Compression Options.
Additional Supplied Programs

archive-get

```
pg_probackup archive-get -B backup_dir --instance instance_name --wal-file-path=wal_file_path --wal-file-name=wal_file_name
[-j num_threads] [--batch-size=batch_size]
[--prefetch-dir=prefetch_dir_path] [--no-validate-wal]
[--help] [remote_options] [logging_options]
```

Copies WAL files from the corresponding subdirectory of the backup catalog to the cluster's write-ahead log location. This command is automatically set by pg_probackup as part of the `restore_command` when restoring backups using a WAL archive. You do not need to set it manually.

To speed up recovery, you can specify the `--batch-size` option to copy WAL segments in batches of the specified size. If `--batch-size` option is used, then you can also specify the `-j` option to copy the batch of WAL segments on multiple threads.

For details, see section Archiving Options.

catchup

```
pg_probackup catchup -b catchup_mode
--source-pgdata=path_to_pgdata_on_remote_server
--destination-pgdata=path_to_local_dir
[--help] [-j | --threads=num_threads] [--stream]
[--temp-slot] [-P | --perm-slot] [-S | --slot=slot_name]
[--exclude-path=PATHNAME]
[-T OLDDIR=NEWDIR]
[connection_options] [remote_options]
```

Creates a copy of a Postgres Pro instance without using the backup catalog.

```
-b catchup_mode
--backup-mode=catchup_mode
```

Specifies the catchup mode to use. Possible values are:

- **FULL** — creates a full copy of the Postgres Pro instance.
- **DELTA** — reads all data files in the data directory and creates an incremental copy for pages that have changed since the destination instance was shut down.
- **PTRACK** — tracking page changes on the fly, only reads and copies pages that have changed since the point of divergence of the source and destination instances.

**Warning**

PTRACK catchup mode requires PTRACK not earlier than 2.0 and hence, Postgres Pro not earlier than 11.

```
--source-pgdata=path_to_pgdata_on_remote_server
```

Specifies the path to the data directory of the instance to be copied. The path can be local or remote.

```
--destination-pgdata=path_to_local_dir
```

Specifies the path to the local data directory to copy to.

```
-j num_threads
--threads=num_threads
```

Sets the number of parallel threads for catchup process.

```
--stream
```

Copies the instance in STREAM WAL delivery mode, including all the necessary WAL files by streaming them from the instance server via replication protocol.
-x=path_prefix
--exclude-path=path_prefix

Specifies a prefix for files to exclude from the synchronization of Postgres Pro instances during copying. The prefix must contain a path relative to the data directory of an instance. If the prefix specifies a directory, all files in this directory will not be synchronized.

**Warning**

This option is dangerous since excluding files from synchronization can result in incomplete synchronization; use with care.

--stream

Copies the instance in STREAM WAL delivery mode, including all the necessary WAL files by streaming them from the instance server via replication protocol.

--temp-slot

Creates a temporary physical replication slot for streaming WAL from the Postgres Pro instance being copied. It ensures that all the required WAL segments remain available if WAL is rotated while the backup is in progress. This flag can only be used together with the --stream flag and cannot be used together with the --perm-slot flag. The default slot name is pg_probackup_slot, which can be changed using the --slot/-S option.

-P
--perm-slot

Creates a permanent physical replication slot for streaming WAL from the Postgres Pro instance being copied. This flag can only be used together with the --stream flag and cannot be used together with the --temp-slot flag. The default slot name is pg_probackup_perm_slot, which can be changed using the --slot/-S option.

-S slot_name
--slot=slot_name

Specifies the replication slot for WAL streaming. This option can only be used together with the --stream flag.

-T OLDDIR=NEWDIR
--tablespace-mapping=OLDDIR=NEWDIR

Relocates the tablespace from the OLDDIR to the NEWDIR directory at the time of recovery. Both OLDDIR and NEWDIR must be absolute paths. If the path contains the equals sign (=), escape it with a backslash. This option can be specified multiple times for multiple tablespaces.

Additionally, connection options, remote mode options can be used.

For details on usage, see the section Cloning and Synchronizing Postgres Pro Instance.

**Options**

This section describes command-line options for pg_probackup commands. If the option value can be derived from an environment variable, this variable is specified below the command-line option, in the uppercase. Some values can be taken from the pg_probackup.conf configuration file located in the backup catalog.

For details, see the section called “Configuring pg_probackup”.

If an option is specified using more than one method, command-line input has the highest priority, while the pg_probackup.conf settings have the lowest priority.
Additional Supplied Programs

Common Options

The list of general options.

-B directory
--backup-path=directory
BACKUP_PATH

Specifies the absolute path to the backup catalog. Backup catalog is a directory where all backup files and meta information are stored. Since this option is required for most of the pg_probackup commands, you are recommended to specify it once in the BACKUP_PATH environment variable. In this case, you do not need to use this option each time on the command line.

-D directory
--pgdata=directory
PGDATA

Specifies the absolute path to the data directory of the database cluster. This option is mandatory only for the add-instance command. Other commands can take its value from the PGDATA environment variable, or from the pg_probackup.conf configuration file.

-i backup_id
--backup-id=backup_id

Specifies the unique identifier of the backup.

-j num_threads
--threads=num_threads
Sets the number of parallel threads for backup, restore, merge, validate, checkdb, and archive-push processes.

--progress
Shows the progress of operations.

--help
Shows detailed information about the options that can be used with this command.

Recovery Target Options

If continuous WAL archiving is configured, you can use one of these options together with restore or validate commands to specify the moment up to which the database cluster must be restored or validated.

--recovery-target=immediate|latest

Defines when to stop the recovery:

• The immediate value stops the recovery after reaching the consistent state of the specified backup, or the latest available backup if the -i/--backup-id option is omitted. This is the default behavior for STREAM backups.
• The latest value continues the recovery until all WAL segments available in the archive are applied. This is the default behavior for ARCHIVE backups.

--recovery-target-timeline=timeline

Specifies a particular timeline to be used for recovery. By default, the timeline of the specified backup is used.

--recovery-target-lsn=lsn

Specifies the LSN of the write-ahead log location up to which recovery will proceed. Can be used only when restoring a database cluster of major version 10 or higher.

--recovery-target-name=recovery_target_name

Specifies a named savepoint up to which to restore the cluster.
Additional Supplied Programs

--recovery-target-time=time
    Specifies the timestamp up to which recovery will proceed. If the time zone offset is not specified,
    the local time zone is used.

    Example: --recovery-target-time="2020-01-01 00:00:00+03"

--recovery-target-xid=xid
    Specifies the transaction ID up to which recovery will proceed.

--recovery-target-inclusive=boolean
    Specifies whether to stop just after the specified recovery target (true), or just before the recovery
    target (false). This option can only be used together with --recovery-target-name, --recovery-
    target-time, --recovery-target-lsn or --recovery-target-xid options. The default depends on
    the recovery_target_inclusive parameter.

    --recovery-target-action=pause|promote|shutdown
    Specifies recovery_target_action the server should take when the recovery target is reached.
    Default: pause

Retention Options

You can use these options together with backup and delete commands.

For details on configuring retention policy, see the section Configuring Retention Policy.

--retention-redundancy=redundancy
    Specifies the number of full backup copies to keep in the data directory. Must be a non-negative
    integer. The zero value disables this setting.

    Default: 0

--retention-window=window
    Number of days of recoverability. Must be a non-negative integer. The zero value disables this setting.

    Default: 0

--wal-depth=wal_depth
    Number of latest valid backups on every timeline that must retain the ability to perform PITR. Must
    be a non-negative integer. The zero value disables this setting.

    Default: 0

--delete-wal
    Deletes WAL files that are no longer required to restore the cluster from any of the existing backups.

--delete-expired
    Deletes backups that do not conform to the retention policy defined in the pg_probackup.conf
    configuration file.

--merge-expired
    Merges the oldest incremental backup that satisfies the requirements of retention policy with its
    parent backups that have already expired.

--dry-run
    Displays the current status of all the available backups, without deleting or merging expired backups,
    if any.
Pinning Options

You can use these options together with `backup` and `set-backup` commands.

For details on backup pinning, see the section **Backup Pinning**.

---

---*ttl=ttl*

Specifies the amount of time the backup should be pinned. Must be a non-negative integer. The zero value unpins the already pinned backup. Supported units: ms, s, min, h, d (s by default).

**Example:** `--ttl=30d`

---

---*expire-time=time*

Specifies the timestamp up to which the backup will stay pinned. Must be an ISO-8601 complaint timestamp. If the time zone offset is not specified, the local time zone is used.

**Example:** `--expire-time="2020-01-01 00:00:00+03"`

Logging Options

You can use these options with any command.

---

---*no-color*

Disable coloring for console log messages of **warning** and **error** levels.

---

---*log-level-console=log_level*

Controls which message levels are sent to the console log. Valid values are **verbose**, **log**, **info**, **warning**, **error**, and **off**. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent. The **off** level disables console logging.

Default: **info**

**Note**

All console log messages are going to stderr; so the output of **show** and **show-config** commands does not mingle with log messages.

---

---*log-level-file=log_level*

Controls which message levels are sent to a log file. Valid values are **verbose**, **log**, **info**, **warning**, **error**, and **off**. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent. The **off** level disables file logging.

Default: **off**

---

---*log-filename=log_filename*

Defines the filenames of the created log files. The filenames are treated as a **strftime** pattern, so you can use %-escapes to specify time-varying filenames.

Default: **pg_probackup.log**

For example, if you specify the `pg_probackup-%u.log` pattern, `pg_probackup` generates a separate log file for each day of the week, with %u replaced by the corresponding decimal number: `pg_probackup-1.log` for Monday, `pg_probackup-2.log` for Tuesday, and so on.

This option takes effect if file logging is enabled by the **--log-level-file** option.

---

---*error-log-filename=error_log_filename*

Defines the filenames of log files for error messages only. The filenames are treated as a **strftime** pattern, so you can use %-escapes to specify time-varying filenames.
Default: none

For example, if you specify the `error-pg_probackup-%u.log` pattern, `pg_probackup` generates a separate log file for each day of the week, with `%u` replaced by the corresponding decimal number: `error-pg_probackup-1.log` for Monday, `error-pg_probackup-2.log` for Tuesday, and so on.

This option is useful for troubleshooting and monitoring.

```bash
--log-directory=log_directory
```

Defines the directory in which log files will be created. You must specify the absolute path. This directory is created lazily, when the first log message is written.

Default: $BACKUP_PATH/log/

```bash
--log-rotation-size=log_rotation_size
```

Maximum size of an individual log file. If this value is reached, the log file is rotated once a `pg_probackup` command is launched, except `help` and `version` commands. The zero value disables size-based rotation. Supported units: kB, MB, GB, TB (kB by default).

Default: 0

```bash
--log-rotation-age=log_rotation_age
```

Maximum lifetime of an individual log file. If this value is reached, the log file is rotated once a `pg_probackup` command is launched, except `help` and `version` commands. The time of the last log file creation is stored in `$BACKUP_PATH/log/log_rotation`. The zero value disables time-based rotation. Supported units: ms, s, min, h, d (min by default).

Default: 0

### Connection Options

You can use these options together with `backup`, `catchup`, and `checkdb` commands.

All `libpq` environment variables are supported.

```bash
-d dbname
```

Specifies the name of the database to connect to. The connection is used only for managing backup process, so you can connect to any existing database. If this option is not provided on the command line, `PGDATABASE` environment variable, or the `pg_probackup.conf` configuration file, `pg_probackup` tries to take this value from the `PGUSER` environment variable, or from the current user name if `PGUSER` variable is not set.

```bash
-h host
```

Specifies the host name of the system on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as a directory for the Unix domain socket.

Default: localhost

```bash
-p port
```

Specifies the TCP port or the local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.
Additional Supplied Programs

Default: 5432

-\texttt{U \ username}
-\texttt{pguser=\ username}
\texttt{PGUSER}

User name to connect as.

-\texttt{w}
-\texttt{no-password}

Disables a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a \texttt{.pgpass} file or \texttt{PGPASSWORD} environment variable, the connection attempt will fail. This flag can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-\texttt{W}
-\texttt{password}

Forces a password prompt. (Deprecated)

Compression Options

You can use these options together with \texttt{backup} and \texttt{archive-push} commands.

-\texttt{compress-algorithm=\ compression\_algorithm}

Defines the algorithm to use for compressing data files. Possible values are zlib, pglz, and none. If set to zlib or pglz, this option enables compression. By default, compression is disabled. For the \texttt{archive-push} command, the pglz compression algorithm is not supported.

Default: none

-\texttt{compress-level=\ compression\_level}

Defines compression level (0 through 9, 0 being no compression and 9 being best compression). This option can be used together with the \texttt{compress-algorithm} option.

Default: 1

-\texttt{compress}

Alias for \texttt{compress-algorithm=zlib} and \texttt{compress-level=1}.

Archiving Options

These options can be used with the \texttt{archive-push} command in the \texttt{archive\_command} setting and the \texttt{archive-get} command in the \texttt{restore\_command} setting.

Additionally, remote mode options and logging options can be used.

-\texttt{wal-file-path=\ wal\_file\_path}

Provides the path to the WAL file in \texttt{archive\_command} and \texttt{restore\_command}. Use the \texttt{%p} variable as the value for this option or explicitly specify the path to a file outside of the data directory. If you skip this option, the path specified in \texttt{pg\_probackup\_conf} will be used.

-\texttt{wal-file-name=\ wal\_file\_name}

Provides the name of the WAL file in \texttt{archive\_command} and \texttt{restore\_command}. Use the \texttt{%f} variable as the value for this option for correct processing. If the value of \texttt{wal-file-path} is a path outside of the data directory, explicitly specify the filename.

-\texttt{overwrite}

Overwrites archived WAL file. Use this flag together with the \texttt{archive-push} command if the specified subdirectory of the backup catalog already contains this WAL file and it needs to be replaced with
its newer copy. Otherwise, `archive-push` reports that a WAL segment already exists, and aborts the operation. If the file to replace has not changed, `archive-push` skips this file regardless of the `--overwrite` flag.

```
--batch-size=batch_size
```

Sets the maximum number of files that can be copied into the archive by a single `archive-push` process, or from the archive by a single `archive-get` process.

```
--archive-timeout=wait_time
```

Sets the timeout for considering existing `.part` files to be stale. By default, `pg_probackup` waits 300 seconds. This option can be used only with `archive-push` command.

```
--no-ready-rename
```

Do not rename status files in the `archive_status` directory. This option should be used only if `archive_command` contains multiple commands. This option can be used only with `archive-push` command.

```
--no-sync
```

Do not sync copied WAL files to disk. You can use this flag to speed up archiving process. Using this flag can result in WAL archive corruption in case of operating system or hardware crash. This option can be used only with `archive-push` command.

```
--prefetch-dir=path
```

Directory used to store prefetched WAL segments if `--batch-size` option is used. Directory must be located on the same filesystem and on the same mountpoint the `PGDATA/pg_wal` is located. By default files are stored in `PGDATA/pg_wal/pbk_prefetch` directory. This option can be used only with `archive-get` command.

```
--no-validate-wal
```

Do not validate prefetched WAL file before using it. Use this option if you want to increase the speed of recovery. This option can be used only with `archive-get` command.

**Remote Mode Options**

This section describes the options related to running `pg_probackup` operations remotely via SSH. These options can be used with `add-instance`, `set-config`, `backup`, `catchup`, `restore`, `archive-push`, and `archive-get` commands.

For details on configuring and using the remote mode, see the section called “Configuring the Remote Mode” and the section called “Using `pg_probackup` in the Remote Mode”.

```
--remote-proto=proto
```

Specifies the protocol to use for remote operations. Currently only the SSH protocol is supported. Possible values are:

- `ssh` enables the remote mode via SSH. This is the default value.
- `none` explicitly disables the remote mode.

You can omit this option if the `--remote-host` option is specified.

```
--remote-host=destination
```

Specifies the remote host IP address or hostname to connect to.

```
--remote-port=port
```

Specifies the remote host port to connect to.

Default: 22
**Additional Supplied Programs**

```plaintext
--remote-user=username
   Specifies remote host user for SSH connection. If you omit this option, the current user initiating
   the SSH connection is used.

--remote-path=path
   Specifies pg_probackup installation directory on the remote system.

--ssh-options=ssh_options
   Provides a string of SSH command-line options. For example, the following options can be
   used to set keep-alive for SSH connections opened by pg_probackup: --ssh-options="-o ServerAliveCountMax=5 -o ServerAliveInterval=60". For the full list of possible options, see

### Remote WAL Archive Options

This section describes the options used to provide the arguments for [remote mode options](#) in `archive-get` used in the `restore_command` command when restoring ARCHIVE backups or performing PITR.

```plaintext
--archive-host=destination
   Provides the argument for the `--remote-host` option in the `archive-get` command.

--archive-port=port
   Provides the argument for the `--remote-port` option in the `archive-get` command.
   **Default:** 22

--archive-user=username
   Provides the argument for the `--remote-user` option in the `archive-get` command. If you omit this
   option, the user that has started the Postgres Pro cluster is used.
   **Default:** Postgres Pro user
```

### Incremental Restore Options

This section describes the options for incremental cluster restore. These options can be used with the `restore` command.

```plaintext
-I incremental_mode
   --incremental-mode=incremental_mode
   Specifies the incremental mode to be used. Possible values are:
   - CHECKSUM — replace only pages with mismatched checksum and LSN.
   - LSN — replace only pages with LSN greater than point of divergence.
   - NONE — regular restore.
```

### Partial Restore Options

This section describes the options for partial cluster restore. These options can be used with the `restore` command.

```plaintext
--db-exclude=dbname
   Specifies the name of the database to exclude from restore. All other databases in the cluster will be
   restored as usual, including template0 and template1. This option can be specified multiple times
   for multiple databases.

--db-include=dbname
   Specifies the name of the database to restore from a backup. All other databases in the cluster will not
   be restored, with the exception of template0 and template1. This option can be specified multiple
   times for multiple databases.
```
Replica Options

This section describes the options related to taking a backup from standby.

Note

Starting from pg_probackup 2.0.24, backups can be taken from standby without connecting to the master server, so these options are no longer required. In lower versions, pg_probackup had to connect to the master to determine recovery time — the earliest moment for which you can restore a consistent state of the database cluster.

--master-db=dbname

Deprecated. Specifies the name of the database on the master server to connect to. The connection is used only for managing the backup process, so you can connect to any existing database. Can be set in the pg_probackup.conf using the set-config command.

Default: postgres, the default Postgres Pro database

--master-host=host

Deprecated. Specifies the host name of the system on which the master server is running.

--master-port=port

Deprecated. Specifies the TCP port or the local Unix domain socket file extension on which the master server is listening for connections.

Default: 5432, the Postgres Pro default port

--master-user=username

Deprecated. User name to connect as.

Default: postgres, the Postgres Pro default user name

--replica-timeout=timeout

Deprecated. Wait time for WAL segment streaming via replication, in seconds. By default, pg_probackup waits 300 seconds. You can also define this parameter in the pg_probackup.conf configuration file using the set-config command.

Default: 300 sec

How-To

All examples below assume the remote mode of operations via SSH. If you are planning to run backup and restore operation locally, skip the “Setup passwordless SSH connection” step and omit all --remote-* options.

Examples are based on Ubuntu 18.04, Postgres Pro 11, and pg_probackup 2.2.0.

• backup — Postgres Pro role used for connection to Postgres Pro cluster.
• backupdb — database used for connection to Postgres Pro cluster.
• backup_host — host with backup catalog.
• backupman — user on backup_host running all pg_probackup operations.
• /mnt/backups — directory on backup_host where backup catalog is stored.
• postgres_host — host with Postgres Pro cluster.
• postgres — user on postgres_host that has started the Postgres Pro cluster.
• /var/lib/postgresql/11/main — Postgres Pro data directory on postgres_host.
Minimal Setup

This scenario illustrates setting up standalone FULL and DELTA backups.

1. **Set up passwordless SSH connection from** `backup_host` **to** `postgres_host`:
   ```
   [backupman@backup_host] ssh-copy-id postgres@postgres_host
   ```

2. **Configure your Postgres Pro cluster.**
   For security purposes, it is recommended to use a separate database for backup operations.
   ```
   postgres=#
   CREATE DATABASE backupdb;
   ```
   Connect to the `backupdb` database, create the `probackup` role, and grant the following permissions to this role:
   ```
   backupdb=#
   BEGIN;
   CREATE ROLE backup WITH LOGIN REPLICATION;
   GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA pg_catalog TO backup;
   GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.current_setting(text) TO backup;
   GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.set_config(text, text, boolean) TO backup;
   GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_is_in_recovery() TO backup;
   GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_start_backup(text, boolean, boolean) TO backup;
   GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pg_catalog.pg_stop_backup(boolean, boolean) TO backup;
   COMMIT;
   ```

3. **Initialize the backup catalog:**
   ```
   [backupman@backup_host]$ pg_probackup-11 init -B /mnt/backups
   INFO: Backup catalog '/mnt/backups' successfully inited
   ```

4. **Add instance `pg-11` to the backup catalog:**
   ```
   [backupman@backup_host]$ pg_probackup-11 add-instance -B /mnt/backups --
   instance pg-11 --remote-host=postgres_host --remote-user=postgres -D /var/lib/
   postgresql/11/main
   INFO: Instance 'node' successfully inited
   ```

5. **Take a FULL backup:**
   ```
   [backupman@backup_host] pg_probackup-11 backup -B /mnt/backups --instance pg-11
   --stream --remote-host=postgres_host --remote-user=postgres -U backup -d
   ```
   ```
   INFO: Backup start, pg_probackup version: 2.2.0, instance: node, backup ID: PZ7YK2, 
   backup mode: FULL, wal mode: STREAM, remote: true, compress-algorithm: none, 
   compress-level: 1
   INFO: Start transferring data files
   INFO: Data files are transferred
   INFO: wait for pg_stop_backup()
   INFO: pg_stop backup() successfully executed
   INFO: Validating backup PZ7YK2
   INFO: Backup PZ7YK2 data files are valid
   INFO: Backup PZ7YK2 resident size: 196MB
   ```
INFO: Backup PZ7YK2 completed

6. **Let's take a look at the backup catalog:**

```bash
[backupman@backup_host] pg_probackup-11 show -B /mnt/backups --instance pg-11
```

```
BACKUP INSTANCE 'pg-11'
==================================================================================================================================
Instance Version ID      Recovery Time           Mode   WAL Mode  TLI  Time
Data   WAL  Zratio  Start LSN  Stop LSN   Status
==================================================================================================================================
node      11       PZ7YK2  2019-10-11 19:45:45+03  FULL  STREAM    1/0   11s
180MB  16MB    1.00  0/3C000028  0/3C000198  OK
```

7. **Take an incremental backup in the DELTA mode:**

```bash
[backupman@backup_host] pg_probackup-11 backup -B /mnt/backups --instance pg-11 -b delta --stream --remote-host=postgres_host --remote-user=postgres -U backup -d backupdb
```

INFO: Backup start, pg_probackup version: 2.2.0, instance: node, backup ID: PZ7YMP, backup mode: DELTA, wal mode: STREAM, remote: true, compress-algorithm: none, compress-level: 1
INFO: Parent backup: PZ7YK2
INFO: Start transferring data files
INFO: Data files are transferred
INFO: wait for pg_stop_backup()
INFO: pg_stop backup() successfully executed
INFO: Validating backup PZ7YMP
INFO: Backup PZ7YMP data files are valid
INFO: Backup PZ7YMP resident size: 32MB
INFO: Backup PZ7YMP completed

8. **Let's add some parameters to pg_probackup configuration file, so that you can omit them from the command line:**

```bash
[backupman@backup_host] pg_probackup-11 set-config -B /mnt/backups --instance pg-11 --remote-host=postgres_host --remote-user=postgres -U backup -d backupdb
```

9. **Take another incremental backup in the DELTA mode, omitting some of the previous parameters:**

```bash
[backupman@backup_host] pg_probackup-11 backup -B /mnt/backups --instance pg-11 -b delta --stream
```

INFO: Backup start, pg_probackup version: 2.2.0, instance: node, backup ID: PZ7YR5, backup mode: DELTA, wal mode: STREAM, remote: true, compress-algorithm: none, compress-level: 1
INFO: Parent backup: PZ7YMP
INFO: Start transferring data files
INFO: Data files are transferred
INFO: wait for pg_stop_backup()
INFO: pg_stop backup() successfully executed
INFO: Validating backup PZ7YR5
INFO: Backup PZ7YR5 data files are valid
INFO: Backup PZ7YR5 resident size: 32MB
INFO: Backup PZ7YR5 completed

10. **Let's take a look at the instance configuration:**

```bash
[backupman@backup_host] pg_probackup-11 show-config -B /mnt/backups --instance pg-11
```

```
# Backup instance information
pgdata = /var/lib/postgresql/11/main
```
system-identifier = 6746586934060931492
xlog-seg-size = 16777216
# Connection parameters
pgdatabase = backupdb
pghost = postgres_host
pguser = backup
# Replica parameters
replica-timeout = 5min
# Archive parameters
archive-timeout = 5min
# Logging parameters
log-level-console = INFO
log-level-file = OFF
log-filename = pg_probackup.log
log-rotation-size = 0
log-rotation-age = 0
# Retention parameters
retention-redundancy = 0
retention-window = 0
wal-depth = 0
# Compression parameters
compress-algorithm = none
compress-level = 1
# Remote access parameters
remote-proto = ssh
remote-host = postgres_host

Note that we are getting the default values for other options that were not overwritten by the set-config command.

11. Let's take a look at the backup catalog:

[backupman@backup_host] pg_probackup-11 show -B /mnt/backups --instance pg-11

====================================================================================================================================
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instance</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Recovery Time</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>WAL Mode</th>
<th>TLI</th>
<th>Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data</td>
<td>WAL</td>
<td>Zratio</td>
<td>Start LSN</td>
<td>Stop LSN</td>
<td>Status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P27YR5</td>
<td>2019-10-11 19:49:56+03</td>
<td>DELTA</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>10s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112kB</td>
<td>32MB</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0/41000028</td>
<td>0/41000160</td>
<td>OK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P27YMP</td>
<td>2019-10-11 19:47:16+03</td>
<td>DELTA</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>10s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>376kB</td>
<td>32MB</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0/3E000028</td>
<td>0/3F0000B8</td>
<td>OK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P27YK2</td>
<td>2019-10-11 19:45:45+03</td>
<td>FULL</td>
<td>STREAM</td>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>11s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180MB</td>
<td>16MB</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0/3C000028</td>
<td>0/3C000198</td>
<td>OK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Versioning

pg_probackup follows semantic versioning.

Authors

Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia.

Credits

pg_probackup utility is based on pg_arman, which was originally written by NTT and then developed and maintained by Michael Paquier.
pg_repack

pg_repack — utility and Postgres Pro Standard extension to reorganize tables

Synopsis

pg_repack [option...] [dbname]

Description

pg_repack is a Postgres Pro Standard extension which lets you remove bloat from tables and indexes, and optionally restore the physical order of clustered indexes. Unlike CLUSTER and VACUUM FULL it works online, without holding an exclusive lock on the processed tables during processing. pg_repack is efficient to boot, with performance comparable to using CLUSTER directly.

pg_repack is a fork of the previous http://reorg.projects.pgfoundry.org/ project. Please check the https://github.com/reorg/pg_repack for bug report and development information.

You can choose one of the following methods to reorganize data:

• Online CLUSTER (ordered by cluster index)
• Ordering by specified columns
• Online VACUUM FULL (packing rows only)
• Rebuild or relocate only the indexes of a table

Note

Only superusers can use the utility.

Note

Target table must have a PRIMARY KEY, or at least a UNIQUE total index on a NOT NULL column.

Installation

On Linux systems, pg_repack is provided together with Postgres Pro as a separate pre-built package and requires the postgrespro-std-14-server package to be installed with all the dependencies. For the list of available packages and detailed installation instructions, see Chapter 16. On Windows systems, pg_repack is automatically installed as part of Postgres Pro.

Once you have pg_repack installed, load the pg_repack extension in the database you want to process, as follows:

$ psql -c "CREATE EXTENSION pg_repack" -d your_database

You can later remove pg_repack from a Postgres Pro installation using DROP EXTENSION pg_repack.

If you are upgrading from a previous version of pg_repack, just drop the old version from the database as explained above and install the new version.

Options

Reorganization Options

- a
  --all

Attempt to repack all the databases of the cluster. Databases where the pg_repack extension is not installed will be skipped.
Additional Supplied Programs

-t table
--table=table

Reorganize the specified table(s) only. Multiple tables may be reorganized by writing multiple -t switches. By default, all eligible tables in the target databases are reorganized.

-c schema
--schema=schema

Repack the tables in the specified schema(s) only. Multiple schemas may be repacked by writing multiple -c switches. Can be used in conjunction with --tablespace to move tables to a different tablespace.

-o column[, ...]
--order-by=column[, ...]

Perform an online CLUSTER ordered by the specified columns.

-n
--no-order

Perform an online VACUUM FULL. Since version 1.2 this is the default for non-clustered tables.

-N
--dry-run

Show what would be repacked and exit.

-j num_jobs
--jobs=num_jobs

Create the specified number of extra connections to Postgres Pro Standard, and use these extra connections to parallelize the rebuild of indexes on each table. Parallel index builds are only supported for full-table repacks, not with --index or --only-indexes options. If your server has extra cores and disk I/O available, this can be a useful way to speed up pg_repack.

-s tablespace
--tablespace=tablespace

Move the repacked tables to the specified tablespace: essentially an online version of ALTER TABLE ... SET TABLESPACE. The tables' indexes are left in the original tablespace unless --moveidx is specified too.

-S
--moveidx

Also move the indexes of the repacked tables to the tablespace specified by the --tablespace option.

-i index
--index=index

Repack the specified index(es) only. Multiple indexes may be repacked by writing multiple -i switches. May be used in conjunction with --tablespace to move the index(es) to a different tablespace.

-x
--only-indexes

Repack only the indexes of the specified table(s), which must be specified with the --table option.

-T secs
--wait-timeout=secs

pg_repack needs to take an exclusive lock at the end of the reorganization. This setting controls how many seconds pg_repack will wait to acquire this lock. If the lock cannot be taken after this duration,
pg_repack will forcibly cancel the conflicting queries. If you are using Postgres Pro or PostgreSQL version 8.4 or newer, pg_repack will fall back to using `pg_terminate_backend()` to disconnect any remaining backends after this timeout has passed twice. The default is 60 seconds.

-\z
--no-analyze

Disable `ANALYZE` after a full-table reorganization. If not specified, `ANALYZE` is executed after the reorganization.

**Connection Options**

-\[d\] `dbname`
-\(--dbname=\) `dbname`

Specifies the name of the database to be reorganized. If this is not specified and -a (or --all) is not used, the database name is read from the environment variable `PGDATABASE`. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

-\h `host`
-\(--host=\) `host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

-\p `port`
-\(--port=\) `port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

-\U `username`
-\(--username=\) `username`

User name to connect as.

-\w
-\(--no-password\)

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-\W
-\(--password\)

Force pg_repack to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg_repack will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg_repack will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -w to avoid the extra connection attempt.

**Generic Options**

-\e
-\(--echo\)

Echo the commands that pg_repack generates and sends to the server.

-\E level
-\(--elevel=\) `level`

Choose the output message level from `DEBUG`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `LOG`, `FATAL`, and `PANIC`. The default is `INFO`.

2564
Additional Supplied Programs

--help
   Show help about pg_repack command line arguments, and exit.

-V
--version
   Print the pg_repack version and exit.

Environment

PGDATABASE
PGHOST
PGPORT
PGUSER

Default connection parameters

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

Examples

Perform an online CLUSTER of all the clustered tables in the database test, and perform an online VACUUM FULL of all the non-clustered tables:

$ pg_repack test

Perform an online VACUUM FULL on the tables foo and bar in the database test (an eventual cluster index is ignored):

$ pg_repack --no-order --table foo --table bar test

Move all indexes of table foo to tablespace tbs:

$ pg_repack -d test --table foo --only-indexes --tablespace tbs

Move the specified index to tablespace tbs:

$ pg_repack -d test --index idx --tablespace tbs

Diagnostics

Error messages are reported when pg_repack fails. The following list shows the cause of errors.

You need to cleanup by hand after fatal errors. To cleanup, just remove pg_repack from the database and install it again.

For Postgres Pro or PostgreSQL 9.1 and newer execute:

DROP EXTENSION pg_repack CASCADE
in the database where the error occurred, followed by

CREATE EXTENSION pg_repack

For previous versions load the script $SHAREDIR/contrib/uninstall_pg_repack.sql into the database where the error occurred and then load $SHAREDIR/contrib/pg_repack.sql again.

INFO: database "db" skipped:
pg_repack VER is not installed in the database:
pg_repack is not installed in the database when the --all option is specified.

Create the pg_repack extension in the database.
Additional Supplied Programs

ERROR: pg_repack VER is not installed in the database:
pg_repack is not installed in the database specified by --dbname

Create the pg_repack extension in the database.

ERROR: program 'pg_repack V1' does not match database library 'pg_repack V2':
There is a mismatch between the pg_repack binary and the database library (.so or .dll).

The mismatch could be due to the wrong binary in the PATH or the wrong database being addressed. Check the program directory and the database; if they are what expected you may need to repeat pg_repack installation.

ERROR: extension 'pg_repack V1' required, found extension 'pg_repack V2':
The SQL extension found in the database does not match the version required by the pg_repack program.

You should drop the extension from the database and reload it as described in the section called "Installation".

ERROR: relation "table" must have a primary key or not-null unique keys:
The target table doesn't have a PRIMARY KEY or any UNIQUE constraints defined.

Define a PRIMARY KEY or a UNIQUE constraint on the table.

ERROR: query failed: ERROR: column "col" does not exist:
The target table doesn't have columns specified by --order-by option.

Specify existing columns.

WARNING: the table "tbl" already has a trigger called z_repack_trigger:
The trigger was probably installed during a previous attempt
to run pg_repack on the table which was interrupted
and for some reason failed to clean up the temporary objects.

You can remove all the temporary objects by dropping and re-creating the extension: see the section called "Installation" for the details.

WARNING: trigger "trg" conflicting on table "tbl":
The target table has a trigger whose name follows z_repack_trigger
in alphabetical order.

The z_repack_trigger should be the last BEFORE trigger to fire. Please rename your trigger so that it sorts alphabetically before pg_repack one; you can use:

ALTER TRIGGER zzz_my_trigger
  ON sometable RENAME TO yyy_my_trigger;
ERROR: Another pg_repack command may be running on the table. Please try again later.

There is a chance of deadlock when two concurrent pg_repack commands are run on the same table. So, try to run the command after some time.

WARNING: Cannot create index "schema"."index_xxxxx", already exists
DETAIL: An invalid index may have been left behind by a previous pg_repack on the table which was interrupted. Please use DROP INDEX "schema"."index_xxxxx" to remove this index and try again.

A temporary index apparently created by pg_repack has been left behind, and we do not want to risk dropping this index ourselves. If the index was in fact created by an old pg_repack job which didn't get cleaned up, you should just use DROP INDEX and try the repack command again.

Restrictions

pg_repack comes with the following restrictions.

Temporary tables

pg_repack cannot reorganize temporary tables.

GiST indexes

pg_repack cannot reorganize tables using GiST indexes.

DDL commands

You will not be able to perform DDL commands of the target table(s) except VACUUM or ANALYZE while pg_repack is working. pg_repack will hold an ACCESS SHARE lock on the target table during a full-table repack, to enforce this restriction.

If you are using version 1.1.8 or earlier, you must not attempt to perform any DDL commands on the target table(s) while pg_repack is running. In many cases pg_repack would fail and rollback correctly, but there were some cases in these earlier versions which could result in data corruption.

See also

clusterdb, vacuumdb
vacuumlo

vacuumlo — remove orphaned large objects from a Postgres Pro database

Synopsis

vacuumlo [option...] dbname...

Description

vacuumlo is a simple utility program that will remove any “orphaned” large objects from a Postgres Pro database. An orphaned large object (LO) is considered to be any LO whose OID does not appear in any oid or lo data column of the database.

If you use this, you may also be interested in the lo_manage trigger in the lo module. lo_manage is useful to try to avoid creating orphaned LOs in the first place.

All databases named on the command line are processed.

Options

vacuumlo accepts the following command-line arguments:

- -l limit
--limit=limit

Remove no more than limit large objects per transaction (default 1000). Since the server acquires a lock per LO removed, removing too many LOs in one transaction risks exceeding max_locks_per_transaction. Set the limit to zero if you want all removals done in a single transaction.

- -n
--dry-run

Don't remove anything, just show what would be done.

- -v
--verbose

Write a lot of progress messages.

- -V
--version

Print the vacuumlo version and exit.

- -?
--help

Show help about vacuumlo command line arguments, and exit.

vacuumlo also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

- -h host
--host=host

Database server's host.

- -p port
--port=port

Database server's port.
Additional Supplied Programs

-\( U \) \texttt{username}  
  \texttt{--username=username}

  User name to connect as.

-\( w \)  
  \texttt{--no-password}

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .\texttt{pgpass} file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-\( W \)  
  \texttt{--password}

  Force vacuumlo to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

  This option is never essential, since vacuumlo will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, vacuumlo will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing \texttt{--no-password} to avoid the extra connection attempt.

Environment

\texttt{PGHOST}  
\texttt{PGPORT}  
\texttt{PGUSER}

  Default connection parameters.

This utility, like most other Postgres Pro utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 32.15).

The environment variable \texttt{PG\_COLOR} specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are \texttt{always}, \texttt{auto} and \texttt{never}.

Notes

vacuumlo works by the following method: First, vacuumlo builds a temporary table which contains all of the OIDs of the large objects in the selected database. It then scans through all columns in the database that are of type \texttt{oid} or \texttt{lo}, and removes matching entries from the temporary table. (Note: Only types with these names are considered; in particular, domains over them are not considered.) The remaining entries in the temporary table identify orphaned LOs. These are removed.

Author

Peter Mount \texttt{<peter@retep.org.uk>}

G.2. Server Applications

This section covers Postgres Pro Standard server-related applications. They are typically run on the host where the database server resides. See also Postgres Pro Server Applications for information about server applications that are part of the core Postgres Pro Standard distribution.
mamonsu — a monitoring agent for collecting Postgres Pro and system metrics.

Synopsis

mamonsu agent [agent_action]
mamonsu bootstrap -M mamonsu_user [-c | --config] [-x | --create-extensions] [connection_options]
mamonsu export {template | config} filename [export_options]
mamonsu report [report_options] [connection_options]
mamonsu tune [tuning_options] [connection_options]
mamonsu upload [upload_options]
mamonsu zabbix {template | host | hostgroup} server_action
mamonsu zabbix item {error | lastvalue | lastclock} host_id
mamonsu zabbix version
mamonsu --version
mamonsu --help

Description

mamonsu is a monitoring agent for collecting Postgres Pro and system metrics that can be visualized on the Zabbix server. Unlike the native Zabbix Agent configured to collect Postgres Pro metrics, mamonsu uses a single database connection, which allows to minimize performance impact on the monitored system.

The mamonsu agent includes the following components:

• A supervisor process that monitors database and system activity.
• Plugins that specify which Postgres Pro and system metrics to collect.
• Customizable configuration and template files that define which plugins to use and how to visualize the collected data.

mamonsu is an active agent, which means that it sends the data to the Zabbix server once it is collected. Pre-configured to monitor multiple Postgres Pro and system metrics out of the box, mamonsu can be extended with your own custom plugins to track other metrics critical for your system.

mamonsu also provides the command-line interface for updating some Zabbix server settings, as well as getting an overview of the monitored system configuration and tuning Postgres Pro and system settings on the fly. You can find the list of all mamonsu commands in the section called “Command-Line Reference”.

Installation and Setup

Important

Before you start installation, attentively read Compatibility Considerations.
To use mamonsu, you must create a Zabbix account and set up a Zabbix server as explained in Zabbix documentation. Naturally, you must also have a Postgres Pro instance up and running if you are going to monitor Postgres Pro metrics. If you are configuring your Postgres Pro cluster from scratch, see Chapter 16 and Section 17.2 for Postgres Pro installation and setup instructions, respectively.

**Note**

While mamonsu can collect Postgres Pro metrics from a remote cluster, system metrics are only collected locally. If you choose to collect Postgres Pro metrics remotely, make sure to disable collection of system metrics to avoid confusion, as they will be displayed under the same host in Zabbix.

A pre-built mamonsu package is provided together with Postgres Pro Standard, but has a separate installer. Once you have installed mamonsu, complete the following steps to set up metrics collection:

1. **Optionally, bootstrap mamonsu**
   
   If you omit this step, metrics can only be collected on behalf of a superuser, which is not recommended.

   In this step, the bootstrap command sets the mamonsu user, creates mamonsu schema in the specified or implied database, as well as extensions and objects needed for monitoring.

   bootstrap has no mandatory options. When run without options, it takes the values needed from the configuration file (/etc/mamonsu/agent.conf by default). Below is a simple example of bootstrap:

   1. In the [postgres] section of agent.conf, specify connection parameters for the Postgres Pro cluster you are going to monitor. For more details, see Connection Parameters.
   2. Run the following command to bootstrap mamonsu:
      
      ```bash
      mamonsu bootstrap
      ```

      This command will create the user mamonsu with the password mamonsu, create monitoring functions in the database specified in agent.conf and grant the right to execute them to the mamonsu user.

   In the following example, bootstrap options are passed explicitly.

   1. Create a non-privileged database user for mamonsu. For example:
      
      ```sql
      CREATE USER mamonsu_user WITH PASSWORD 'mamonsu_password';
      ```
   2. Create a database that will be used for connection to Postgres Pro. For example:
      
      ```sql
      CREATE DATABASE mamonsu_database OWNER mamonsu_user;
      ```
   3. Run the following command to bootstrap mamonsu:
      
      ```bash
      mamonsu bootstrap -M mamonsu_user -x -c /etc/mamonsu/mamonsu.conf -d mamonsu_database -U postgres --host myhost --port 5432
      ```

      For details of the options -M, -x and -c, see bootstrap. For details of other options, see Connection Options. This command will create monitoring functions in the mamonsu_database and grant the right to execute them to mamonsu_user. The pg_buffercache extension will also be created to ensure collection of metrics on the shared buffer cache, and the path to the configuration file will be changed.

   As a result, a superuser connection is no longer required. Note that mamonsu also creates several tables in the mamonsu schema in the specified database. Do not delete these tables as they are required for mamonsu to work.

2. **Configure mamonsu**

   Edit the agent.conf configuration file, which is located in the /etc/mamonsu/ directory by default.
• Configure Zabbix-related settings. The address field must point to the running Zabbix server, while the client field must provide the name of the Zabbix host. You can find the list of hosts available for your account in the Zabbix web interface under Configuration > Hosts.

```ini
[zabbix]
; enabled by default
enabled = True
client = zabbix_host_name
address = zabbix_server
```

• By default, mamonsu will collect both Postgres Pro and system metrics. If required, you can disable metrics collection of either type by setting the enabled parameter to False in the [postgres] or [system] section of the agent.conf file, respectively.

```ini
[system]
; enabled by default
enabled = True
```

**Note**

While mamonsu can collect Postgres Pro metrics from a remote cluster, system metrics are only collected locally. If you choose to collect Postgres Pro metrics remotely, make sure to disable collection of system metrics to avoid confusion, as they will be displayed under the same host in Zabbix.

• If you are going to collect Postgres Pro metrics, specify connection parameters for the Postgres Pro cluster you are going to monitor. In the user, password, and database fields, you must specify the mamonsu_user, mamonsu_password, and the mamonsu_database used for bootstrap, respectively. If you skipped the bootstrap, specify superuser credentials and the database to connect to.

```ini
[postgres]
; enabled by default
enabled = True
user = mamonsu_user
database = mamonsu_database
password = mamonsu_password
port = 5432
```

These are the main mamonsu settings to get started. You can also fine-tune other mamonsu settings as explained in the section called “Configuration Parameters”.

3. **Configure how to display metrics on the Zabbix server**

1. Generate a template that defines how to visualize the collected metrics on the Zabbix server:

   mamonsu export template template.xml

   mamonsu generates the template.xml file in your current directory. By default, the name of the template that will be displayed in the Zabbix account is PostgresPro-OS, where OS is the name of your operating system. To get a template with a different display name, you can run the above command with the --template-name option.

2. Optionally, specify your Zabbix account settings in the following environment variables on your monitoring system:

   • Set the ZABBIX_USER and ZABBIX_PASSWD variables to the login and password of your Zabbix account, respectively.

   • Set the ZABBIX_URL to http://zabbix/
If you skip this step, you will have to add the following options to all `mamonsu zabbix` commands that you run:

```
--url=http://zabbix/ --user=zabbix_login --password=zabbix_password
```

3. Upload `template.xml` to the Zabbix server.

```
mamonsu zabbix template export template.xml
```

Alternatively, you can upload the template through the Zabbix web interface: log in to your Zabbix account and select **Templates > Import**.

4. Link the generated template to the host to be monitored.

In the Zabbix web interface, select your host, go to **Templates > Add**, select your template, and click **Update**.

---

**Tip**

If you would like to link a template with a new Zabbix host, you can do it from the command line using `mamonsu zabbix` commands. See the section called “Managing Zabbix Server Settings from the Command Line” for details.

---

When the setup is complete, start `mamonsu`. For example, on Linux systems, you can start `mamonsu` as a service with the following command:

```
service mamonsu start
```

`mamonsu` picks up all the parameters from the `mamonsu` configuration file and starts monitoring your system.

**Command-Line Reference**

**agent**

Syntax:

```
mamonsu agent { metric-list | metric-get metric_name | version }
```

Provides information on the collected metrics from the command line. You can specify one of the following parameters:

- **metric-list**
  
  Show the list of metrics that `mamonsu` is collecting. The output of this command provides the item key of each metric, its latest value, and the time when this value was received.

- **metric-get metric_name**
  
  Check the latest value for the specified metric. You can get the list of available metrics using the `metric-list` option.

- **version**
  
  Display `mamonsu` version.

**bootstrap**

Syntax:

```
mamonsu bootstrap -M mamonsu_user
  [-c config_file | --config config_file]
  [-x | --create-extensions] [connection_options]
```
Bootstrap mamonsu. This command can take the following options:

-M
    Specify a non-privileged user that will own all mamonsu processes.

-c config_file
    config=config_file

Specify the agent.conf file where the [postgres] section contains the database name to be used if --dbname is not specified through connection_options.

Default: /etc/mamonsu/agent.conf

-x
    --create-extensions

Create auxiliary extensions. Only pg_buffercache will be currently created, which is no longer created by default.

collection_connection

Provide optional command-line connection parameters.

export

Syntax:

mamonsu export config filename.conf [--add-plugins=plugin_directory]
mamonsu export template filename.xml [--add-plugins=plugin_directory]
    [--template-name=template_name]
    [--application=application_name]
    [--old-zabbix]

Generate a template or configuration file for metrics collection. The optional parameters to customize metrics collection are as follows:

--add-plugins=plugin_directory
    Collect metrics that are defined in custom plugins located in the specified plugin_directory. If you are going to use custom plugins, you must provide this option when generating both the configuration file and the template.

--template-name=template_name
    Specify the name of the template that will be displayed on the Zabbix server.

Default: PostgresPro-OS, where OS is the name of your operating system

--application=application_name
    Specify an identifier under which the collected metrics will be displayed on the Zabbix server.

Default: App-PostgresPro-OS, where OS is the name of your operating system

--old-zabbix
    Export a template for Zabbix server version 4.2 or lower. By default, the template is generated in a format compatible with Zabbix 4.4 or higher.

export zabbix-parameters

Syntax:

mamonsu export zabbix-parameters filename.conf [--add-plugins=plugin_directory]
Export metrics configuration for use with the native Zabbix agent. The optional parameters to customize metrics collection are as follows:

--add-plugins=plugin_directory

Collect metrics that are defined in custom plugins located in the specified plugin_directory. If you are going to use custom plugins, you must provide this option when generating both the configuration file and the template.

--plugin-type={pg | sys | all}

Specify the type of metrics to collect:
• pg for Postgres Pro metrics.
• sys for system metrics.
• all for both Postgres Pro and system metrics.

Default: all

--pg-version=version

Specify the major version of the server for which to configure metrics collection. mamonsu can collect metrics for all supported Postgres Pro versions, as well as PostgreSQL versions starting from 9.5.

Default: 10

--config=config_file

Specify the agent.conf file to be used as the source for metrics definitions.

Default: /etc/mamonsu/agent.conf

export zabbix-template

Syntax:

mamonsu export zabbix-template filename.conf [--add-plugins=plugin_directory]

[--plugin-type={pg | sys | all}]
[--template-name=template_name]
[--application=application_name]
[--config=config_file]
[--old-zabbix]

Export a template for use with the native Zabbix agent. The optional parameters to customize metrics collection are as follows:

--add-plugins=plugin_directory

Collect metrics that are defined in custom plugins located in the specified plugin_directory. If you are going to use custom plugins, you must provide this option when generating both the configuration file and the template.

--plugin-type={pg | sys | all}

Specify the type of metrics to collect:
• pg configures Postgres Pro metrics.
• sys configures system metrics.
• all configures both Postgres Pro and system metrics.
Additional Supplied Programs

Default: all

--template-name=template_name

Specify the name of the template that will be displayed on the Zabbix server.

Default: PostgresPro-OS, where OS is the name of your operating system

--application=application_name

Specify an identifier under which the collected metrics will be displayed on the Zabbix server.

Default: App-PostgresPro-OS, where OS is the name of your operating system

--config=config_file

Specify the agent.conf file to be used as the source for metrics definitions.

Default: /etc/mamonsu/agent.conf

--old-zabbix

Export a template for Zabbix server version 4.2 or lower. By default, the template is generated in a format compatible with Zabbix 4.4 or higher.

report

Syntax:

mamonsu report [--run-system=Boolean] [--run-postgres=Boolean]
               [--print-report=Boolean] [--report-path=report_file]
               [--disable-sudo] [connection_options]

Generate a detailed report on the hardware, operating system, memory usage and other parameters of the monitored system, as well as Postgres Pro configuration.

The following optional parameters customize the report:

--run-system=Boolean

Include system information into the generated report.

Default: True

--run-postgres=Boolean

Include information on Postgres Pro into the generated report.

Default: True

--print-report=Boolean

Print the report to stdout.

Default: True

--report-path=report_file

Save the report into the specified file.

Default: /tmp/report.txt

--disable-sudo

Do not report data that can only be received with superuser rights. This option is only available for Linux systems.
connection_options

Provide optional command-line connection parameters.

tune
Syntax:
mamonsu tune [--dry-run] [--disable-sudo] [--log-level {INFO|DEBUG|WARN}]
               [--dont-tune-pgbadger] [--dont-reload-postgresql]
               [connection_options]

Optimize Postgres Pro and system configuration based on the collected statistics. You can use the following options:

--dry-run
Display the settings to be tuned without changing the actual system and Postgres Pro configuration.

--disable-sudo
Do not tune the settings that can only be changed by a superuser. This option is only available for Linux systems.

--dont-tune-pgbadger
Do not tune pgbadger parameters.

--log-level { INFO | DEBUG | WARN}
Change the logging level.

Default: INFO

--dont-reload-postgresql
Forbid mamonsu to run the pg_reload_conf() function. If you specify this option, the modified settings that require reloading Postgres Pro configuration do not take effect immediately.

connection_options

Provide optional command-line connection parameters.

upload
Syntax:
mamonsu upload [--zabbix-file=metrics_file]
               [--zabbix-address=zabbix_address] [--zabbix-port=port_number]
               [--zabbix-client=zabbix_host_name] [--zabbix-log-level={INFO|DEBUG|WARN}]

Upload metrics data previously saved into a file onto a Zabbix server for visualization. For details on how to save metrics into a file, see the section called “Logging Parameters”.

This command can take the following options:

--zabbix-address=zabbix_address
The address of the Zabbix server.

Default: localhost

--zabbix-port=port_number
The port of the Zabbix server.
Additional Supplied Programs

Default: 10051

--zabbix-file=metrics_file

A text file that stores the collected metrics data to be visualized, such as localhost.log.

--zabbix-client=zabbix_host_name

The name of the Zabbix host.

Default: localhost

--zabbix-log-level={INFO|DEBUG|WARN}

Change the logging level.

Default: INFO

zabbix item

Syntax:

mamonsu zabbix item {error | lastvalue | lastclock} host_name

View the specified property of the latest metrics data received by Zabbix for the specified host.

zabbix version

Syntax:

mamonsu zabbix version

Get the version of the Zabbix server that mamonsu is connected to.

zabbix host

Syntax:

mamonsu zabbix host list
mamonsu zabbix host show host_name
mamonsu zabbix host id host_name
mamonsu zabbix host delete host_id
mamonsu zabbix host create host_name hostgroup_id template_id mamonsu_address
mamonsu zabbix host info {templates | hostgroups | graphs | items} host_id

Manage Zabbix hosts using one of the actions described in the section called “Zabbix Server Actions”.

zabbix hostgroup

Syntax:

mamonsu zabbix hostgroup list
mamonsu zabbix hostgroup show hostgroup_name
mamonsu zabbix hostgroup id hostgroup_name
mamonsu zabbix hostgroup delete hostgroup_id
mamonsu zabbix hostgroup create hostgroup_name

Manage Zabbix host groups using one of the actions described in the section called “Zabbix Server Actions”.

zabbix template

Syntax:

mamonsu zabbix template list
mamonsu zabbix template show template_name
mamonsu zabbix template id template_name
mamonsu zabbix template delete template_id
mamonsu zabbix template export file

Manage Zabbix templates using one of the actions described in the section called “Zabbix Server Actions”.

--version
Syntax:
    mamonsu --version
Display mamonsu version.

--help
Syntax:
    mamonsu --help
Display mamonsu command-line help.

Connection Options

connection_options provide command-line connection parameters for the target Postgres Pro cluster. connection_options can be --host, --port, --dbname (-d), --username (-U), and --password (-W). The --dbname option should specify the mamonsu_database created for monitoring purposes. Note that the --username (-U) option must specify a superuser that can access the cluster.

If you omit connection_options, mamonsu checks the configuration file for the needed settings. Make sure to provide the actual connection parameters if your Postgres Pro cluster is located elsewhere.

Zabbix Server Actions

Using mamonsu, you can control some of the Zabbix server functionality from the command line. Specifically, you can create or delete Zabbix hosts and host groups, as well as generate, import, and delete Zabbix templates using one of the following commands. The object_name to use must correspond to the type of the Zabbix object specified in the command: template, host, or hostgroup.

list
    Display the list of available templates, hosts, or host groups.

show object_name
    Display the details about the specified template, host, or host group.

id object_name
    Show the ID of the specified object, which is assigned automatically by the Zabbix server.

delete object_id
    Delete the object with the specified ID.

create hostgroup_name
create host_name hostgroup_id template_id mamonsu_address
    Create a new host or a host group.

export template_name
    Generate a Zabbix template.

info {templates | hostgroups | graphs | items} host_id
    Display detailed information about the templates, host groups, graphs, and metrics available on the host with the specified ID.
Configuration Parameters

The `agent.conf` configuration file is located in the `/etc/mamonsu` directory by default. It provides several groups of parameters that control which metrics to collect and how to log the collected data:

- connection parameters
- logging parameters
- plugin parameters

All parameters must be specified in the `parameter = value` format.

Connection Parameters

`[postgres]`

The `[postgres]` section controls Postgres Pro metrics collection and can contain the following parameters:

enabled

Enables/disables Postgres Pro metrics collection if set to `True` or `False`, respectively.

**Default:** `True`

user

The user on behalf of which the cluster will be monitored. It must be the mamonsu user set in bootstrap, or a superuser if bootstrap was not run.

**Default:** `postgres`

password

The password for the specified user.

database

The database to connect to for metrics collection.

**Default:** `postgres`

host

The server address to connect to.

**Default:** `localhost`

port

The port to connect to.

**Default:** `5432`

application_name

Application name that identifies mamonsu connected to the Postgres Pro cluster.

**Default:** `mamonsu`

query_timeout

`statement_timeout` for the mamonsu session, in seconds. If a Postgres Pro metric query does not complete within this time interval, it gets terminated.

**Default:** `10`
Additional Supplied Programs

[system]
The [system] section controls system metrics collection and can contain the following parameters:

enabled
   Enables/disables system metrics collection if set to True or False, respectively.
   Default: True

[zabbix]
The [zabbix] section provides connection settings for the Zabbix server and can contain the following parameters:

enabled
   Enables/disables sending the collected metrics data to the Zabbix server if set to True or False, respectively.
   Default: True

client
   The name of the Zabbix host.

address
   The address of the Zabbix server.
   Default: 127.0.0.1

port
   The port of the Zabbix server.
   Default: 10051

[agent]
The [agent] section specifies the location of mamonsu and whether it is allowed to access metrics from the command line:

enabled
   Enables/disables metrics collection from the command line using the agent command.
   Default: True

host
   The address of the system on which mamonsu is running.
   Default: 127.0.0.1

port
   The port on which mamonsu is running.
   Default: 10052

[sender]
The [sender] section controls the queue size of the data to be sent to the Zabbix server:

queue
   The maximum number of collected metric values that can be accumulated locally before mamonsu sends them to the Zabbix server. Once the accumulated data is sent, the queue is cleared.

2581
**Logging Parameters**

**[metric_log]**

The [metric_log] section enables storing the collected metrics data in text files locally. This section can contain the following parameters:

**enabled**

Enables/disables storing the collected metrics data in a text file. If this option is set to True, mamonsu creates the `localhost.log` file for storing metric values.

Default: False

**directory**

Specifies the directory where log files with metrics data will be stored.

Default: /var/log/mamonsu

**max_size_mb**

The maximum size of a log file, in MB. When the specified size is reached, it is renamed to `localhost.log.archive`, and an empty `localhost.log` file is created.

Default: 1024

**[log]**

The [log] section specifies logging settings for mamonsu and can contain the following parameters:

**file**

Specifies the log filename, which can be preceded by the full path.

**level**

Specifies the debug level. This option can take DEBUG, ERROR, or INFO values.

Default: INFO

**format**

The format of the logged data.

Default: [%(levelname)s] %(asctime)s - %(name)s - %(message)s

where `levelname` is the debug level, `asctime` returns the current time, `name` specifies the plugin that emitted this log entry or root otherwise, and `message` provides the actual log message.

**Plugin Parameters**

**[plugins]**

The [plugins] section specifies custom plugins to be added for metrics collection and can contain the following parameters:

**enabled**

Enables/disables using custom plugins for metrics collection if set to True or False, respectively.

Default: False

**directory**

Specifies the directory that contains custom plugins for metrics collection. Setting this parameter to None forbids using custom plugins.
Additional Supplied Programs

Default: /etc/mamonsu/plugins

If you need to configure any of the plugins you add to mamonsu after installation, you have to add this plugin section to the agent.conf file.

The syntax of this section should follow the syntax used with the examples shown below in the section called “Individual Plugin Sections”.

Individual Plugin Sections

All built-in plugins are installed along with mamonsu. To configure a built-in plugin you should find a corresponding section below the Individual Plugin Sections heading and edit its parameter values.

To disable any plugin you should set the enabled parameter to False and to enable it — set it to True. These values are case sensitive.

The example below shows individual plugin sections corresponding to the preparedtransaction and the pgprobackup built-in plugins:

```
[preparedtransaction]
max_prepared_transaction_time = 60
interval = 60

[pgprobackup]
enabled = false
interval = 300
backup_dirs = /backup_dir1,/backup_dir2
pg_probackup_path = /usr/bin/pg_probackup-11
```

[preparedtransaction]

This plugin gets age in seconds of the oldest prepared transaction and number of all transactions prepared for a two-phase commit. For additional information refer to PREPARE TRANSACTION and Section 50.80.

The max_prepared_transaction_time parameter specifies the threshold in seconds for the age of the prepared transaction.

The interval parameter allows you to change the metrics collection interval.

The plugin collects two metrics: pgsql.prepared.count (number of prepared transactions) and pgsql.prepared.oldest (oldest prepared transaction age in seconds).

If pgsql.prepared.oldest value exceeds the threshold specified by the max_prepared_transaction_time parameter, a trigger with the following message is fired: "PostgreSQL prepared transaction is too old on {host}".

[pgprobackup]

This plugin uses pg_probackup to track its backups’ state and gets size of backup directories which store all backup files.

Please note that this plugin counts the total size of all files in the target directory. Make sure that extraneous files are not stored in this directory.

The backup_dirs parameter specifies a comma-separated list of paths to directories for which metrics should be collected.

The pg_probackup_path parameter specifies the path to pg_probackup.

The interval parameter allows you to change the metrics collection interval.

By default this plugin is disabled. To enable it set the enabled parameter to True.
Additional Supplied Programs

This plugin collects two metrics: 
pg_probackup.dir.size[#backup_directory] (the size of the target directory) and 
pg_probackup.dir.error[#backup_directory] (backup errors) for each specified backup_directory.

If any generated backup has bad status, like ERROR, CORRUPT, ORPHAN, a trigger is fired.

Usage

Collecting and Viewing Metrics Data

Once started, mamonsu begins collecting system and Postgres Pro metrics. The agent command enables you to get an overview of the collected metrics from the command line in real time.

To view the list of available metrics, use the agent metric-list command:

mamonsu agent metric-list

The output of this command provides the item key of each metric, its latest value, and the time when this value was received. For example:

system.memory[active] 7921004544 1564570818
system.memory[swap_cache] 868352 1564570818
pgsql.connections[idle] 6.0 1564570818
pgsql.archive_command[failed_trying_to_archive] 0 1564570818

To view the current value for a specific metric, you can use the agent metric-get command:

mamonsu agent metric-get metric_name

where metric_name is the item key of the metric to monitor, as returned by the metric-list command. For example, pgsq1.connections[idle].

You can view graphs for the collected metrics in the Zabbix web interface under the Graphs menu. For details on working with Zabbix, see its official documentation at https://www.zabbix.com/documentation/current/.

If you have chosen to save all the collected metrics data into a file, as explained in the section called “Logging Parameters”, you can later upload these metrics onto a Zabbix server for visualization using the upload command.

Adding Custom Plugins

You can extend mamonsu with your own custom plugins, as follows:

1. Save all custom plugins in a single directory, such as /etc/mamonsu/plugins.
2. Make sure this directory is specified in your configuration file under the [plugins] section:

   [plugins]
directory = /etc/mamonsu/plugins

3. Generate a new Zabbix template to include custom plugins:

   mamonsu export template template.xml --add-plugins=/etc/mamonsu/plugins

4. Upload the generated template.xml to the Zabbix server as explained in the section called “Installation and Setup”.

Tuning Postgres Pro and System Configuration

Based on the collected metrics data, mamonsu can tune your Postgres Pro and system configuration for optimal performance.

You can get detailed information about the hardware, operating system, memory usage and other parameters of the monitored system, as well as Postgres Pro configuration, as follows:

mamonsu report
To view the suggested optimizations without applying them, run the `tune` command with the `--dry-run` option:

```
mamonsu tune --dry-run
```

To apply all the suggested changes, run the `tune` command without any parameters:

```
mamonsu tune
```

You can exclude some settings from the report or disable some of the optimizations by passing optional parameters. See the section called “Command-Line Reference” for the full list of parameters available for `report` and `tune` commands.

**Managing Zabbix Server Settings from the Command Line**

Mamonsu enables you to work with the Zabbix server from the command line. You can upload template files to Zabbix, create and delete Zabbix hosts and host groups, link templates with hosts and check the latest metric values.

To set up your Zabbix host from scratch, you can follow these steps:

1. Optionally, specify your Zabbix account settings in the following environment variables on your monitoring system:

   • Set the `ZABBIX_USER` and `ZABBIX_PASSWD` variables to the login and password of your Zabbix account, respectively.

   • Set the `ZABBIX_URL` to `http://zabbix/`

   If you skip this step, you will have to add the following options to all `mamonsu` `zabbix` commands that you run:

   ```
   --url=http://zabbix/ --user=zabbix_login --password=zabbix_password
   ```

2. Generate a new template file and upload it to the Zabbix server:

   ```
mamonsu export template template.xml
mamonsu zabbix template export template.xml
```

3. Create a new host group:

   ```
mamonsu zabbix hostgroup create hostgroup_name
```

4. Check the IDs for this host group and the uploaded template, which are assigned automatically by the Zabbix server:

   ```
mamonsu zabbix hostgroup id hostgroup_name
mamonsu zabbix template id template_name
```

5. Create a host associated with this group and link it with the uploaded template using a single command:

   ```
mamonsu zabbix host create host_name hostgroup_id template_id mamonsu_address
```

   where `host_name` is the name of the host, `hostgroup_id` and `template_id` are the unique IDs returned in the previous step, and `mamonsu_address` is the IP address of the system on which mamonsu runs.

Once your Zabbix host is configured, complete the setup of your monitoring system as explained in the section called “Installation and Setup”.

**Exporting Metrics for Native Zabbix Agent**

Using mamonsu, you can convert system and Postgres Pro metrics definitions to the format supported by the native Zabbix agent.

This feature currently has the following limitations:
You cannot export metrics if you run `mamonsu` on Windows systems.

Metrics definitions for `pg_wait_sampling` and CFS features available in Postgres Pro Enterprise are not converted.

To collect metrics provided by mamonsu using the native Zabbix agent, do the following:

1. Generate a configuration file that is compatible with the native Zabbix agent and place it under `/etc/zabbix/zabbix_agent.d/`. You can prepend the filename with the required path:
   ```bash
   mamonsu export zabbix-parameters /etc/zabbix/zabbix_agent.d/zabbix_agent.conf
   ```
   For all possible options of the `export zabbix-parameters` command, see the section called “Command-Line Reference”.

2. Generate a template for the native Zabbix agent:
   ```bash
   mamonsu export zabbix-template template.xml
   ```
   For all possible options of the `export zabbix-template` command, see the section called “Command-Line Reference”.

3. Upload the generated template to the Zabbix server, as explained in the section called “Installation and Setup”.

4. If you are going to collect Postgres Pro metrics, change the following macros in the template after the upload:
   - For `{PG_CONNINFO}`, provide connection parameters for the Postgres Pro server to be monitored.
   - For `{PG_PATH}`, specify psql installation directory.

**Compatibility Considerations**

If you want to upgrade mamonsu to a version that is not compatible with the previous one, what you must do to continue using the application depends on whether you need to retain the metrics data collected.

1. If you need to retain the collected data, do the following:
   1. Install the new version of mamonsu.
   2. Generate a new template for the Zabbix server.
   3. If you performed a bootstrap using the previous version of mamonsu, run the `bootstrap` command again.
   4. Upload the new template to the Zabbix server.
   5. Rename the host for which you want to retain the collected data and leave the old template linked to that host.
   6. Create a new host for the same system and link the new template to it.
   7. Restart mamonsu. It will collect data for the new host. The old host will no longer be used, but the data collected will be available.

2. If you do not need to retain the collected data, do the following:
   1. Install the new version of mamonsu.
   2. Generate a new template for the Zabbix server.
   3. If you performed a bootstrap using the previous version of mamonsu, run the `bootstrap` command again.
   4. Upload the new template to the Zabbix server.
   5. In the settings of the Zabbix host, link the new template to the host instead of the old one.
   6. Restart mamonsu. It will start collecting data. All the data collected earlier will be lost.
**pgbouncer**

pgbouncer — a Postgres Pro connection pooler

**Synopsis**

On Linux systems:

```
pgbouncer [-d] [-R] [-v] [-u user] pgbouncer.ini
pgbouncer -V | -h
```

On Windows systems:

```
pgbouncer [-v] [-u user] pgbouncer.ini
pgbouncer -V | -h
```

To use pgbouncer as a Windows service:

```
pgbouncer.exe --regservice pgbouncer.ini
pgbouncer.exe --unregservice pgbouncer.ini
```

**Description**

pgbouncer is a Postgres Pro connection pooler. Any target application can be connected to pgbouncer as if it were a Postgres Pro server, and pgbouncer will create a connection to the actual server, or it will reuse one of its existing connections.

The aim of pgbouncer is to lower the performance impact of opening new connections to Postgres Pro.

In order not to compromise transaction semantics for connection pooling, pgbouncer supports several types of pooling when rotating connections:

**Session pooling**

Most polite method. When a client connects, a server connection will be assigned to it for the whole duration the client stays connected. When the client disconnects, the server connection will be put back into the pool. This is the default method.

**Transaction pooling**

A server connection is assigned to a client only during a transaction. When pgbouncer notices that transaction is over, the server connection will be put back into the pool.

**Statement pooling**

Most aggressive method. The server connection will be put back into the pool immediately after a query completes. Multi-statement transactions are disallowed in this mode as they would break.

The administration interface of pgbouncer consists of some new `SHOW` commands available when connected to a special “virtual” database `pgbouncer`.

**Quick Start**

Basic setup and usage is as follows.

1. Create a `pgbouncer.ini` file. Details in the `pgbouncer(5)` man page. Simple example:

   ```ini
   [databases]
template1 = host=127.0.0.1 port=5432 dbname=template1
   ```
[pgbouncer]
listen_port = 6543
listen_addr = 127.0.0.1
auth_type = md5
auth_file = userlist.txt
logfile = pgbouncer.log
pidfile = pgbouncer.pid
admin_users = someuser

2. Create a userlist.txt file that contains the users allowed in:

"someuser" "same_password_as_in_server"

3. Launch pgbouncer:

$ pgbouncer -d pgbouncer.ini

Note

The above command does not work on Windows systems. Instead, pgbouncer must be launched as a service that first needs to be registered, as follows:

pgbouncer --regservice

4. Have your application (or the psql client) connect to pgbouncer instead of directly to the Postgres Pro server:

$ psql -p 6543 -U someuser template1

5. Manage pgbouncer by connecting to the special administration database pgbouncer and issuing SHOW HELP; to begin:

$ psql -p 6543 -U someuser pgbouncer
pgbouncer=# SHOW HELP;
NOTICE:  Console usage
DETAIL:
SHOW [HELP|CONFIG|DATABASES|FDS|POOLS|CLIENTS|SERVERS|SOCKETS|LISTS|VERSION|...]
SET key = arg
RELOAD
PAUSE
SUSPEND
RESUME
SHUTDOWN
[...]

6. If you made changes to the pgbouncer.ini file, you can reload it with:

pgbouncer=# RELOAD;

Options

-d
Run in the background. Without it, the process will run in the foreground.

Note

Does not work on Windows, pgbouncer needs to run as service there.
Additional Supplied Programs

- \texttt{R}
  Do an online restart. That means connecting to the running process, loading the open sockets from it, and then using them. If there is no active process, boot normally.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Note}
Works only if OS supports Unix sockets and the \texttt{unix_socket_dir} is not disabled in configuration. Does not work on Windows. Does not work with TLS connections, they are dropped.
\end{center}

- \texttt{u user}
  Switch to the given user on startup.

- \texttt{v}
  Increase verbosity. Can be used multiple times.

- \texttt{q}
  Be quiet: do not log to \texttt{stdout}. This does not affect logging verbosity, only that \texttt{stdout} is not to be used. For use in \texttt{init.d} scripts.

- \texttt{V}
  Show version.

- \texttt{h}
  Show short help.

--regservice
  Win32: Register to run as Windows service. The \texttt{service_name} configuration parameter value is used as the name to register under.

--unregservice
  Win32: Unregister Windows service.

\textbf{Admin Console}

The console is available by connecting as normal to the database pgbouncer:

\$ psql -p 6543 pgbouncer

Only users listed in the configuration parameters \texttt{admin_users} or \texttt{stats_users} are allowed to log in to the console. (Except when \texttt{auth_mode=any}, then any user is allowed in as a \texttt{stats_user}.)

Additionally, the user name \texttt{pgbouncer} is allowed to log in without password, if the login comes via the Unix socket and the client has same Unix user uid as the running process.

\textbf{Show Commands}

The \texttt{SHOW} commands output information. Each command is described below.

\textbf{SHOW STATS}

Shows statistics. In this and related commands, the total figures are since process start, the averages are updated every \texttt{stats_period}.

\begin{verbatim}
database
  Statistics are presented per database.
\end{verbatim}
Additional Supplied Programs

- **total_xact_count**: Total number of SQL transactions pooled by pgbouncer.
- **total_query_count**: Total number of SQL queries pooled by pgbouncer.
- **total_received**: Total volume in bytes of network traffic received by pgbouncer.
- **total_sent**: Total volume in bytes of network traffic sent by pgbouncer.
- **total_xact_time**: Total number of microseconds spent by pgbouncer when connected to Postgres Pro in a transaction, either idle in transaction or executing queries.
- **total_query_time**: Total number of microseconds spent by pgbouncer when actively connected to Postgres Pro, executing queries.
- **total_wait_time**: Time spent by clients waiting for a server, in microseconds.
- **avg_xact_count**: Average transactions per second in last stat period.
- **avg_query_count**: Average queries per second in last stat period.
- **avg_recv**: Average received (from clients) bytes per second.
- **avg_sent**: Average sent (to clients) bytes per second.
- **avg_xact_time**: Average transaction duration, in microseconds.
- **avg_query_time**: Average query duration, in microseconds.
- **avg_wait_time**: Time spent by clients waiting for a server, in microseconds (average per second).

**SHOW STATS TOTALS**
Subset of **SHOW STATS** showing the total values (**total_**).

**SHOW STATS AVERAGES**
Subset of **SHOW STATS** showing the average values (**avg_**).

**SHOW TOTALS**
Like **SHOW STATS** but aggregated across all databases.
SHOW SERVERS

type
   S, for server.

user
   User name pgbouncer uses to connect to server.

database
   Database name.

state
   State of the pgbouncer server connection, one of active, used or idle.

addr
   IP address of Postgres Pro server.

port
   Port of Postgres Pro server.

local_addr
   Connection start address on local machine.

local_port
   Connection start port on local machine.

connect_time
   When the connection was made.

request_time
   When last request was issued.

wait
   Current waiting time in seconds.

wait_us
   Microsecond part of the current waiting time.

close_needed
   1 if the connection will be closed as soon as possible, because a configuration file reload or DNS update changed the connection information or RECONNECT was issued.

ptr
   Address of internal object for this connection. Used as unique ID.

link
   Address of client connection the server is paired with.

remote_pid
   PID of backend server process. In case connection is made over Unix socket and OS supports getting process ID info, its OS PID. Otherwise it's extracted from cancel packet the server sent, which should
be the PID in case the server is Postgres Pro, but it’s a random number in case the server is another pgbouncer.

tls
A string with TLS connection information, or empty if not using TLS.

SHOW CLIENTS

type
C, for client.

user
Client connected user.

database
Database name.

state
State of the client connection, one of active, used, waiting or idle.

addr
IP address of client.

port
Port client is connected to.

local_addr
Connection end address on local machine.

local_port
Connection end port on local machine.

connect_time
Timestamp of connect time.

request_time
Timestamp of latest client request.

wait
Current waiting time in seconds.

wait_us
Microsecond part of the current waiting time.

close_needed
Not used for clients.

ptr
Address of internal object for this connection. Used as unique ID.

link
Address of server connection the client is paired with.
remote_pid
   Process ID, in case client connects over Unix socket and OS supports getting it.

tls
   A string with TLS connection information, or empty if not using TLS.

SHOW POOLS
   A new pool entry is made for each couple of (database, user).

database
   Database name.

user
   User name.

cl_active
   Client connections that are linked to server connection and can process queries.

cl_waiting
   Client connections have sent queries but have not yet got a server connection.

sv_active
   Server connections that linked to a client.

sv_idle
   Server connections that are unused and immediately usable for client queries.

sv_used
   Server connections that have been idle for more than server_check_delay, so they need server_check_query to run on them before they can be used again.

sv_tested
   Server connections that are currently running either server_reset_query or server_check_query.

sv_login
   Server connections currently in the process of logging in.

maxwait
   How long the first (oldest) client in the queue has waited, in seconds. If this starts increasing, then the current pool of servers does not handle requests quickly enough. The reason may be either an overloaded server or just too small of a pool_size setting.

maxwait_us
   Microsecond part of the maximum waiting time.

pool_mode
   The pooling mode in use.

SHOW LISTS
   Show following internal information, in columns (not rows):

databases
   Count of databases.
Additional Supplied Programs

users
  Count of users.

pools
  Count of pools.

free_clients
  Count of free clients.

used_clients
  Count of used clients.

login_clients
  Count of clients in login state.

free_servers
  Count of free servers.

used_servers
  Count of used servers.

dns_names
  Count of DNS names in the cache.

dns_zones
  Count of DNS zones in the cache.

dns_queries
  Count of in-flight DNS queries.

dns_pending
  Not used.

SHOW USERS

name
  The user name.

pool_mode
  The user's override pool_mode, or NULL if the default will be used instead.

SHOW DATABASES

name
  Name of configured database entry.

host
  Host pgbouncer connects to.

port
  Port pgbouncer connects to.

database
  Actual database name pgbouncer connects to.
force_user
When the user is part of the connection string, the connection between pgbouncer and Postgres Pro is forced to the given user, whatever the client user.

pool_size
Maximum number of server connections.

reserve_pool
Maximum number of additional connections for this database.

pool_mode
The database’s override pool_mode, or NULL if the default will be used instead.

max_connections
Maximum number of allowed connections for this database, as set by max_db_connections, either globally or per database.

current_connections
Current number of connections for this database.

paused
1 if this database is currently paused, else 0.

disabled
1 if this database is currently disabled, else 0.

SHOW FDS
Internal command — shows list of file descriptors (FDs) in use with internal state attached to them.

When the connected user has the user name pgbouncer, connects through the Unix socket and has the same UID as the running process, the actual FDs are passed over the connection. This mechanism is used to do an online restart.

Note
This does not work on Windows systems.

This command also blocks the internal event loop, so it should not be used while pgbouncer is in use.

fd
File descriptor numeric value.

task
One of pooler, client or server.

user
User of the connection using the FD.

database
Database of the connection using the FD.

addr
IP address of the connection using the FD, unix if a Unix socket is used.
**Show Sockets, Show Active Sockets**

Shows low-level information about sockets or only active sockets. This includes the information shown under **Show Clients** and **Show Servers** as well as other more low-level information.

**Show Config**

Shows the current configuration settings, one per row, with the following columns:

- **Key**
  Configuration variable name.
- **Value**
  Configuration value.
- **Changeable**
  Either yes or no, shows if the variable can be changed while running. If no, the variable can be changed only at boot-time. Use **set** to change a variable at run time.

**Show Mem**

Shows low-level information about the current sizes of various internal memory allocations. The information presented is subject to change.

**Show DNS Hosts**

Show host names in DNS cache.

- **Hostname**
  Host name.
- **TTL**
  How many seconds until next lookup.
- **Addrs**
  Comma separated list of addresses.

**Show DNS Zones**

Show DNS zones in cache.

- **Zonename**
  Zone name.
- **Serial**
  Current serial.
- **Count**
  Host names belonging to this zone.
Additional Supplied Programs

**Process Controlling Commands**

**PAUSE [db]**

pgbouncer tries to disconnect from all servers, first waiting for all queries to complete. The command will not return before all queries are finished. To be used at the time of database restart.

If database name is given, only that database will be paused.

New client connections to a paused database will wait until RESUME is called.

**DISABLE db**

Reject all new client connections on the given database.

**ENABLE db**

Allow new client connections after a previous **DISABLE command**.

**RECONNECT db**

Close each open server connection for the given database, or all databases, after it is released (according to the pooling mode), even if its lifetime is not up yet. New server connections can be made immediately and will connect as necessary according to the pool size settings.

This command is useful when the server connection setup has changed, for example to perform a gradual switchover to a new server. It is not necessary to run this command when the connection string in pgbouncer.ini has been changed and reloaded (see **RELOAD**) or when DNS resolution has changed, because then the equivalent of this command will be run automatically. This command is only necessary if something downstream of pgbouncer routes the connections.

After this command is run, there could be an extended period where some server connections go to an old destination and some server connections go to a new destination. This is likely only sensible when switching read-only traffic between read-only replicas, or when switching between nodes of a multimaster replication setup. If all connections need to be switched at the same time, **PAUSE** is recommended instead. To close server connections without waiting (for example, in emergency failover rather than gradual switchover scenarios), also consider **KILL**.

**KILL db**

Immediately drop all client and server connections on given database.

New client connections to a killed database will wait until RESUME is called.

**SUSPEND**

All socket buffers are flushed and pgbouncer stops listening for data on them. The command will not return before all buffers are empty. To be used at the time of pgbouncer online reboot.

New client connections to a suspended database will wait until RESUME is called.

**RESUME [db]**

Resume work from previous **KILL, PAUSE, or SUSPEND command**.

**SHUTDOWN**

The pgbouncer process will exit.

**RELOAD**

The pgbouncer process will reload its configuration file and update changeable settings.

PgBouncer notices when a configuration file reload changes the connection parameters of a database definition. An existing server connection to the old destination will be closed when the server connection is next released (according to the pooling mode), and new server connections will immediately use the updated connection parameters.
**WAIT_CLOSE [db]**

Wait until all server connections, either of the specified database or of all databases, have cleared the close_needed state (see the section called “SHOW SERVERS”). This can be called after a RECONNECT or RELOAD to wait until the respective configuration change has been fully activated, for example in switchover scripts.

**Other Commands**

**SET key = arg**

Changes a configuration setting (see also the section called “SHOW CONFIG”). For example:

```
SET log_connections = 1;
SET server_check_query = 'select 2';
```

(Note that this command is run on the pgbouncer admin console and sets pgbouncer settings. A SET command run on another database will be passed to the Postgres Pro backend like any other SQL command.)

**Signals**

**SIGHUP**

Reload config. Same as issuing the command RELOAD on the console.

**SIGINT**

Safe shutdown. Same as issuing PAUSE and SHUTDOWN on the console.

**SIGTERM**

Immediate shutdown. Same as issuing SHUTDOWN on the console.

**SIGUSR1**

Same as issuing PAUSE on the console.

**SIGUSR2**

Same as issuing RESUME on the console.

**Libevent Settings**

From the libevent documentation:

It is possible to disable support for epoll, kqueue, devpoll, poll, or select by setting the environment variable EVENT_NOEPOLL, EVENT_NOKQUEUE, EVENTNODEVPOLL, EVENT_NOPOLL or EVENT_NODESELECT, respectively.

By setting the environment variable EVENT SHOW METHOD, libevent displays the kernel notification method that it uses.

**pgbouncer.ini Configuration File**

The configuration file is in the .ini format. Section names are between "[" and "]". Lines starting with ";" or "#" are taken as comments and ignored. The characters ";" and ";#" are not recognized when they appear later in the line.

**Generic Settings**

**logfile**

Specifies log file. Log file is kept open so after rotation kill -HUP or on console RELOAD; should be done. Note: On Windows systems, the service must be stopped and started.

Default: not set
Additional Supplied Programs

pidfile
    Specifies the PID file. Without a pidfile, daemonization is not allowed.
    Default: not set

listen_addr
    Specifies list of addresses, where to listen for TCP connections. You may also use * meaning "listen on all addresses". When not set, only Unix socket connections are allowed.
    Addresses can be specified numerically (IPv4/IPv6) or by name.
    Default: not set

listen_port
    Which port to listen on. Applies to both TCP and Unix sockets.
    Default: 6432

unix_socket_dir
    Specifies location for Unix sockets. Applies to both listening socket and server connections. If set to an empty string, Unix sockets are disabled. Required for online reboot (-R) to work. Note: Not supported on Windows systems.
    Default: /tmp

unix_socket_mode
    File system mode for Unix socket.
    Default: 0777

unix_socket_group
    Group name to use for Unix socket.
    Default: not set

user
    If set, specifies the Unix user to change to after startup. Works only if pgbouncer is started as root or if it's already running as given user.
    Note: Not supported on Windows systems.
    Default: not set

auth_file
    The name of the file to load user names and passwords from. See the section called “Authentication File Format” for details.
    Default: not set

auth_hba_file
    HBA configuration file to use when auth_type is hba. Supported from version 1.7 onwards.
    Default: not set

auth_type
    How to authenticate users.
Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) method is used to authenticate users, `auth_file` is ignored. This method is not compatible with databases using `auth_user` option. Service name reported to PAM is `pgbouncer`. Also, PAM is still not supported in HBA configuration file.

Actual authentication type is loaded from `auth_hba_file`. This allows different authentication methods different access paths. Example: connection over Unix socket uses peer authentication method, connection over TCP must use TLS. Supported from version 1.7 onwards.

Client must connect over TLS connection with valid client certificate. Username is then taken from CommonName field from certificate.

Use MD5-based password check. This is the default authentication method. `auth_file` may contain both MD5-encrypted or plain-text passwords. If `md5` is configured and a user has a SCRAM secret, then SCRAM authentication is used automatically instead.

Use password check with SCRAM-SHA-256. `auth_file` has to contain SCRAM secrets or plain-text passwords. Note that SCRAM secrets can only be used for verifying the password of a client but not for logging into a server. To be able to use SCRAM on server connections, use plain-text passwords.

Clear-text password is sent over wire. Deprecated.

No authentication is done. Username must still exist in `auth_file`.

Like the `trust` method, but the username given is ignored. Requires that all databases are configured to log in as specific user. Additionally, the console database allows any user to log in as admin.

Query to load user's password from database.

Direct access to `pg_shadow` requires admin rights. It's preferable to use non-admin user that calls SECURITY DEFINER function instead.

Note that the query is run inside target database, so if a function is used it needs to be installed into each database.

**Default:** `SELECT usename, passwd FROM pg_shadow WHERE usename=$1`

If `auth_user` is set, any user not specified in `auth_file` will be queried through the `auth_query` query from `pg_shadow` in the database using `auth_user`. `auth_user`'s password will be taken from `auth_file`.

Direct access to `pg_shadow` requires admin rights. It's preferable to use non-admin user that calls SECURITY DEFINER function instead.
Default: not set

**pool_mode**

Specifies when a server connection can be reused by other clients.

**session**

Server is released back to pool after client disconnects. Default.

**transaction**

Server is released back to pool after transaction finishes.

**statement**

Server is released back to pool after query finishes. Long transactions spanning multiple statements are disallowed in this mode.

**max_client_conn**

Maximum number of client connections allowed. When increased, the file descriptor limits should also be increased. Note that actual number of file descriptors used is more than max_client_conn.

If each user connects under its own username to server, theoretical maximum used is:

max_client_conn + (max pool_size * total databases * total users)

If a database user is specified in connect string (all users connect under same username), the theoretical maximum is:

max_client_conn + (max pool_size * total databases)

The theoretical maximum should be never reached, unless somebody deliberately crafts special load for it. Still, it means you should set the number of file descriptors to a safely high number.

Search for *ulimit* in your favorite shell man page. Note: *ulimit* does not apply in a Windows environment.

Default: 100

**default_pool_size**

How many server connections to allow per user/database pair. Can be overridden in the per-database configuration.

Default: 20

**min_pool_size**

Add more server connections to pool if below this number. Improves behavior when usual load suddenly comes back after a period of total inactivity.

Default: 0 (disabled)

**reserve_pool_size**

How many additional connections to allow to a pool. The 0 value disables this parameter.

Default: 0 (disabled)

**reserve_pool_timeout**

If a client has not been serviced in this many seconds, pgbouncer enables use of additional connections from reserve pool. The 0 value disables this parameter.

Default: 5.0
max_db_connections

Do not allow more than this many connections per-database (regardless of pool — i.e. user). It should be noted that when you hit the limit, closing a client connection to one pool will not immediately allow a server connection to be established for another pool, because the server connection for the first pool is still open. Once the server connection closes (due to idle timeout), a new server connection will immediately be opened for the waiting pool.

Default: unlimited

max_user_connections

Do not allow more than this many connections per-user (regardless of pool — i.e. user). It should be noted that when you hit the limit, closing a client connection to one pool will not immediately allow a server connection to be established for another pool, because the server connection for the first pool is still open. Once the server connection closes (due to idle timeout), a new server connection will immediately be opened for the waiting pool.

server_round_robin

By default, pgbouncer reuses server connections in LIFO (last-in, first-out) manner, so that few connections get the most load. This gives best performance if you have a single server serving a database. But if there is TCP round-robin behind a database IP, then it is better if pgbouncer also uses connections in that manner, thus achieving uniform load.

Default: 0

ignore_startup_parameters

By default, pgbouncer allows only parameters it can keep track of in startup packets — client_encoding, datestyle, timezone and standard_conforming_strings.

All other parameters will raise an error. To allow other parameters, they can be specified here, so that pgbouncer knows that they are handled by admin and it can ignore them.

Default: empty

disable_pqexec

Disable Simple Query protocol (PQexec). Unlike Extended Query protocol, Simple Query allows multiple queries in one packet, which allows some classes of SQL-injection attacks. Disabling it can improve security. Obviously this means only clients that exclusively use Extended Query protocol will stay working.

Default: 0

application_name_add_host

Add the client host address and port to the application name setting set on connection start. This helps in identifying the source of bad queries, etc. This logic applies only on start of connection, if application_name is later changed with SET, pgbouncer does not change it again.

Default: 0

conffile

Show location of current configuration file. Changing it will make pgbouncer use another configuration file for next RELOAD / SIGHUP.

Default: file from command line.

service_name

Used on win32 service registration.
Additional Supplied Programs

Default: pgbouncer

job_name

Alias for service_name.

stats_period

Sets how often the averages shown in various SHOW commands are updated and how often aggregated statistics are written to the log (but see log_stats). [seconds]

Default: 60

Log Settings

syslog

Toggles syslog on/off. On Windows systems, eventlog is used instead.

Default: 0

syslog_ident

Under what name to send logs to syslog.

Default: pgbouncer (program name)

syslog_facility

Under what facility to send logs to syslog. Possibilities: auth, authpriv, daemon, user, local0-7.

Default: daemon

log_connections

Log successful logins.

Default: 1

log_disconnections

Log disconnections with reasons.

Default: 1

log_pooler_errors

Log error messages pooler sends to clients.

Default: 1

stats_period

Period for writing aggregated stats into log.

Default: 60

log_stats

Write aggregated statistics into the log, every stats_period. This can be disabled if external monitoring tools are used to grab the same data from SHOW commands.

Default: 1

verbose

Increase verbosity. Mirrors "-v" switch on command line. Using "-v -v" on command line is same as verbose=2 in configuration file.
Additional Supplied Programs

**Console Access Control**

**admin_users**

Comma-separated list of database users that are allowed to connect and run all commands on console. Ignored when `auth_type` is any, in which case any username is allowed in as admin.

Default: empty

**stats_users**

Comma-separated list of database users that are allowed to connect and run read-only queries on console. That means all SHOW commands except SHOW FDS.

Default: empty.

**Connection Sanity Checks, Timeouts**

**server_reset_query**

Query sent to server on connection release, before making it available to other clients. At that moment no transaction is in progress so it should not include `ABORT` or `ROLLBACK`.

The query is supposed to clean any changes made to database session so that next client gets connection in well-defined state. Default is `DISCARD ALL` which cleans everything, but that leaves next client no pre-cached state. It can be made lighter, e.g. `DEALLOCATE ALL` to just drop prepared statements, if application does not break when some state is kept around.

When transaction pooling is used, the `server_reset_query` is not used, as clients must not use any session-based features as each transaction ends up in different connection and thus gets different session state.

Default: `DISCARD ALL`

**server_reset_query_always**

Whether `server_reset_query` should be run in all pooling modes. When this setting is off (default), the `server_reset_query` will be run only in pools that are in sessions-pooling mode. Connections in transaction-pooling mode should not have any need for reset query.

It is workaround for broken setups that run apps that use session features over transaction-pooled pgbouncer. It changes non-deterministic breakage to deterministic breakage — client always lose their state after each transaction.

Default: 0

**server_check_delay**

How long to keep released connections available for immediate re-use, without running sanity-check queries on it. If 0 then the query is always run.

Default: 30.0

**server_check_query**

Simple do-nothing query to check if the server connection is alive.

If an empty string, then sanity checking is disabled.

Default: `SELECT 1;`

**server_fast_close**

Disconnect a server in session pooling mode immediately or after the end of the current transaction if it is in close_needed mode (set by `RECONNECT, RELOAD` that changes connection settings, or DNS
change), rather than waiting for the session end. In statement or transaction pooling mode, this has no effect since that is the default behavior there.

If because of this setting a server connection is closed before the end of the client session, the client connection is also closed. This ensures that the client notices that the session has been interrupted.

This setting makes connection configuration changes take effect sooner if session pooling and long-running sessions are used. The downside is that client sessions are liable to be interrupted by a configuration change, so client applications will need logic to reconnect and reestablish session state. But note that no transactions will be lost, because running transactions are not interrupted, only idle sessions.

Default: 0

**server_lifetime**

The pooler will close an unused server connection that has been connected longer than this. Setting it to 0 means the connection is to be used only once, then closed. [seconds]

Default: 3600.0

**server_idle_timeout**

If a server connection has been idle more than this many seconds it will be dropped. If 0 then timeout is disabled. [seconds]

Default: 600.0

**server_connect_timeout**

If connection and login won't finish in this amount of time, the connection will be closed. [seconds]

Default: 15.0

**server_login_retry**

If login failed, because of failure from connect() or authentication that pooler waits this much before retrying to connect. [seconds]

Default: 15.0

**client_login_timeout**

If a client connects but does not manage to login in this amount of time, it will be disconnected. Mainly needed to avoid dead connections stalling SUSPEND and thus online restart. [seconds]

Default: 60.0

**autodb_idle_timeout**

If the automatically created (via "+") database pools have been unused this many seconds, they are freed. The negative aspect of that is that their statistics are also forgotten. [seconds]

Default: 3600.0

**dns_max_ttl**

How long the DNS lookups can be cached. If a DNS lookup returns several answers, pgbouncer will robin-between them in the meantime. Actual DNS TTL is ignored. [seconds]

Default: 15.0

**dns_nxdomain_ttl**

How long error and NXDOMAIN DNS lookups can be cached. [seconds]
Additional Supplied Programs

**Default: 15.0**

dns_zone_check_period

Period to check if zone serial has changed.

pgbouncer can collect DNS zones from host names (everything after first dot) and then periodically check if zone serial changes. If it notices changes, all host names under that zone are looked up again. If any host IP changes, it's connections are invalidated.

Works only with UDNS and c-ares backends (**--with-udns** or **--with-cares** to configure).

Default: 0.0 (disabled)

**TLS Settings**

client_tls_sslmode

TLS mode to use for connections from clients. TLS connections are disabled by default. When enabled, **client_tls_key_file** and **client_tls_cert_file** must be also configured to set up key and cert pgbouncer uses to accept client connections.

**disable**

Plain TCP. If client requests TLS, it's ignored. Default.

**allow**

If client requests TLS, it is used. If not, plain TCP is used. If client uses client-certificate, it is not validated.

**prefer**

Same as allow.

**require**

Client must use TLS. If not, client connection is rejected. If client uses client-certificate, it is not validated.

**verify-ca**

Client must use TLS with valid client certificate.

**verify-full**

Same as verify-ca.

client_tls_key_file

Private key for pgbouncer to accept client connections.

Default: not set.

client_tls_cert_file

Certificate for private key. Clients can validate it.

Default: not set.

client_tls_ca_file

Root certificate file to validate client certificates.

Default: unset.
client_tls_protocols

Which TLS protocol versions are allowed. Allowed values: tlsv1.0, tlsv1.1, tlsv1.2, tlsv1.3. Shortcuts: all (tlsv1.0,tlsv1.1,tlsv1.2,tlsv1.3), secure (tlsv1.2,tlsv1.3), legacy (all).

Default: all

client_tls_ciphers

Default: fast

client_tls_ecdhcurve

Elliptic Curve name to use for ECDH key exchanges.

Allowed values: none (DH is disabled), auto (256-bit ECDH), curve name.

Default: auto

client_tls_dheparams

DHE key exchange type.

Allowed values: none (DH is disabled), auto (2048-bit DH), legacy (1024-bit DH).

Default: auto

server_tls_sslmode

TLS mode to use for connections to Postgres Pro servers. TLS connections are disabled by default.

disable

Plain TCP. TLS is not even requested from server. Default.

prefer

TLS connection is always requested first from Postgres Pro, when refused connection will be established over plain TCP. Server certificate is not validated.

require

Connection must go over TLS. If server rejects it, plain TCP is not attempted. Server certificate is not validated.

verify-ca

Connection must go over TLS and server certificate must be valid according to server_tls_ca_file. Server host name is not checked against certificate.

verify-full

Connection must go over TLS and server certificate must be valid according to server_tls_ca_file. Server host name must match certificate info.

server_tls_ca_file

Root certificate file to validate Postgres Pro server certificates.

Default: unset.

server_tls_key_file

Private key for pgbouncer to authenticate against Postgres Pro server.

Default: not set.
server_tls_cert_file
Certificate for private key. Postgres Pro server can validate it.
Default: not set.

server_tls_protocols
Which TLS protocol versions are allowed. Allowed values: tlsv1.0, tlsv1.1, tlsv1.2, tlsv1.3. Shortcuts: all (tlsv1.0,tlsv1.1,tlsv1.2,tlsv1.3), secure (tlsv1.2,tlsv1.3), legacy (all).
Default: all

server_tls_ciphers
Default: fast

Dangerous Timeouts
Setting the following timeouts causes unexpected errors.

query_timeout
Queries running longer than that are canceled. This should be used only with slightly smaller server-side statement_timeout, to apply only for network problems. [seconds]
Default: 0.0 (disabled)

query_wait_timeout
Maximum time queries are allowed to spend waiting for execution. If the query is not assigned to a server during that time, the client is disconnected. This is used to prevent unresponsive servers from grabbing up connections. [seconds]
It also helps when server is down or database rejects connections for any reason. If this is disabled, clients will be queued infinitely.
Default: 120

client_idle_timeout
Client connections idling longer than this many seconds are closed. This should be larger than the client-side connection lifetime settings, and only used for network problems. [seconds]
Default: 0.0 (disabled)

idle_transaction_timeout
If client has been in "idle in transaction" state longer, it will be disconnected. [seconds]
Default: 0.0 (disabled)

Low-Level Network Settings

pkt_buf
Internal buffer size for packets. Affects size of TCP packets sent and general memory usage. Actual libpq packets can be larger than this, so, no need to set it large.
Default: 4096

max_packet_size
Maximum size for Postgres Pro packets that pgbouncer allows through. One packet is either one query or one result set row. Full result set can be larger.
Default: 2147483647
**Additional Supplied Programs**

**listen_backlog**

Backlog argument for listen(2). Determines how many new unanswered connection attempts are kept in queue. When queue is full, further new connections are dropped.

Default: 128

**sbuf_loopcnt**

How many times to process data on one connection, before proceeding. Without this limit, one connection with a big result set can stall pgbouncer for a long time. One loop processes one `pkt_buf` amount of data. 0 means no limit.

Default: 5

**suspend_timeout**

How many seconds to wait for buffer flush during SUSPEND or reboot (-R). Connection is dropped if flush does not succeed.

Default: 10

**tcp_defer_accept**

For details on this and other TCP options, please see `man 7 tcp`.

Default: 45 on Linux, otherwise 0

**tcp_socket_buffer**

Default: not set

**tcp_keepalive**

Turns on basic keepalive with OS defaults.

On Linux, the system defaults are `tcp_keepidle=7200, tcp_keepintvl=75, tcp_keepcnt=9`. They are probably similar on other operating systems.

Default: 1

**tcp_keepcnt**

Default: not set

**tcp_keepidle**

Default: not set

**tcp_keepintvl**

Default: not set

**Section [databases]**

This contains key=value pairs where key will be taken as a database name and value as a libpq connect-string style list of key=value pairs. As actual libpq is not used, not all features from libpq can be used (service=, .pgpass).

Database name can contain characters `_0-9A-Za-z` without quoting. Names that contain other chars need to be quoted with standard SQL ident quoting: double quotes where "" is taken as single quote.

"*" acts as fallback database: if the exact name does not exist, its value is taken as connect string for requested database. Such automatically created database entries are cleaned up if they stay idle longer than the time specified in `autodb_idle_timeout` parameter.
dbname
   Destination database name.
   Default: same as client-side database name.

host
   Host name or IP address to connect to. Host names are resolved at connect time, the result is cached
   per dns_max_ttl parameter. When a host name's resolution changes, existing server connections
   are automatically closed when they are released (according to the pooling mode), and new server
   connections immediately use the new resolution. If DNS returns several results, they are used in
   round-robin manner.
   Default: not set, meaning to use a Unix socket.

port
   Default: 5432

user
   If user= is set, all connections to the destination database will be done with the specified user,
   meaning that there will be only one pool for this database.
   Otherwise pgbouncer tries to log into the destination database with client username, meaning that
   there will be one pool per user.

password
   The length for password is limited to 160 characters maximum.
   If no password is specified here, the password from the auth_file or auth_query will be used.

auth_user
   Override of the global auth_user setting, if specified.

pool_size
   Set maximum size of pools for this database. If not set, the default_pool_size is used.

reserve_pool
   Set additional connections for this database. If not set, reserve_pool_size is used.

connect_query
   Query to be executed after a connection is established, but before allowing the connection to be used
   by any clients. If the query raises errors, they are logged but ignored otherwise.

pool_mode
   Set the pool mode specific to this database. If not set, the default pool_mode is used.

max_db_connections
   Configure a database-wide maximum (i.e. all pools within the database will not have more than this
   many server connections).

client_encoding
   Ask specific client_encoding from server.

datestyle
   Ask specific datestyle from server.
Additional Supplied Programs

timezone

Ask specific timezone from server.

Section [users]

This contains key=value pairs where the key will be taken as a user name and the value as a libpq
connect-string style list of key=value pairs of configuration settings specific for this user. Only a few
settings are available here.

pool_mode

Set the pool mode to be used for all connections from this user. If not set, the database or default
pool_mode is used.

max_user_connections

Configure a maximum for the user (i.e. all pools with the user will not have more than this many
server connections).

Include Directive

The pgbouncer config file can contain include directives, which specify another configuration file to read
and process. This allows for splitting the configuration file into physically separate parts. The include
directives look like this:

%include filename

If the file name is not absolute path it is taken as relative to current working directory.

Authentication File Format

pgbouncer needs its own user database. The users are loaded from a text file in following format:

"username1" "password" ...
"username2" "md5abcdef012342345" ...
"username2" "SCRAM-SHA-256$iterations:salt$storedkey:serverkey"

There should be at least two fields, surrounded by double quotes. The first field is the username and
the second is either a plain-text, a MD5-hidden password, or a SCRAM secret. pgbouncer ignores the
rest of the line.

Postgres Pro MD5-hidden password format:

"md5" + md5(password + username)

So user admin with password 1234 will have MD5-hidden password
md545f2603610af569b6155c45067268c6b.

Postgres Pro SCRAM secret format:

SCRAM-SHA-256$iterations:salt$storedkey:serverkey

The authentication file can be written by hand, but it’s also useful to generate it from some other list
of users and passwords. See ./etc/mkauth.py for a sample script to generate the authentication file
from the pg_shadow system table.

HBA File Format

It follows the format of Postgres Pro pg_hba.conf file described in Section 19.1.

- Supported record types: local, host, hostssl, hostnossl.
- Database field: Supports all, sameuser, @file, multiple names. Not supported: replication, sameuser, samegroup.
- Username field: Supports all, @file, multiple names. Not supported: +groupname.
• Auth-method field: Only methods supported by pgbouncer's auth_type are supported, except any and pam, which only work globally. Username map (map=) parameter is not supported.

Example

Minimal config:

```
[databases]
template1 = host=127.0.0.1 dbname=template1 auth_user=someuser

[pgbouncer]
pool_mode = session
listen_port = 6543
listen_addr = 127.0.0.1
auth_type = md5
auth_file = users.txt
logfile = pgbouncer.log
pidfile = pgbouncer.pid
admin_users = someuser
stats_users = stat_collector
```

Database defaults:

```
[databases]

; foodb over Unix socket
foodb =

; redirect bardb to bazdb on localhost
bardb = host=127.0.0.1 dbname=bazdb

; access to destination database will go with single user
forcedb = host=127.0.0.1 port=300 user=baz password=foo client_encoding=UNICODE datestyle=ISO
```

Example of a secure function for auth_query:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION pgbouncer.user_lookup(in i_username text, out uname text, out phash text)
RETURNS record AS $$
BEGIN
SELECT usename, passwd FROM pg_catalog.pg_shadow
WHERE usename = i_username INTO uname, phash;
RETURN;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql SECURITY DEFINER;
REVOKE ALL ON FUNCTION pgbouncer.user_lookup(text) FROM public, pgbouncer;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pgbouncer.user_lookup(text) TO pgbouncer;
```
pgpro_controldata

pgpro_controldata — display control information of a PostgreSQL/Postgres Pro database cluster and compatibility information for a cluster and/or server

Synopsis

pgpro_controldata [option...]

Description

pgpro_controldata prints control information, such as the catalog version, initialized by initdb command of any PostgreSQL/Postgres Pro server. It also shows information about write-ahead logging and checkpoint processing. This information is cluster-wide and not specific to any database.

pgpro_controldata also helps to check compatibility between PostgreSQL/Postgres Pro database servers and clusters. It can print server or cluster parameters that can affect the compatibility and check whether a cluster and server are compatible by comparing those parameters.

Options

pgpro_controldata accepts the following command-line arguments. If no arguments are specified, pgpro_controldata just prints the control information like pg_controldata does. Note that compatibility-related command-line arguments -P and -S specified together work the same way as -C.

General-Purpose

-B
--bindir
   Specifies the PostgreSQL/Postgres Pro executable directory, needed to get server compatibility parameters.

-D datadir
--pgdata=datadir
   Specifies the file system location of the database configuration files. If this option is omitted, the environment variable PGDATA is used.

-V
--version
   Print the pgpro_controldata version, then exit.

-?
--help
   Show help about pgpro_controldata command-line arguments, then exit.

Compatibility-Related

-C
--compatibility-check
   Display all parameters that can affect compatibility between the specified server and cluster and check whether they are compatible.

   Use the -D option or the environment variable PGDATA to provide the path to the data directory, where read access is required.

   If the -B option is omitted, the current server is assumed.
The cluster data and the server must have the same byte order and architecture type for this option to work correctly.

-P
--cluster-compatibility-params
Display all parameters of the specified cluster that can affect the compatibility.

Use the -D option or the environment variable PGDATA to provide the path to the data directory, where read access is required.

The cluster data and the server must have the same byte order and architecture type for this option to work correctly.

-S
--server-compatibility-params
Display all parameters of the specified or current server that can affect the compatibility.

If the -B option is omitted, the current server is assumed.

Environment

PGDATA
Default data directory location

PG_COLOR
Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

See Also

pg_controldata
pg_integrity_check

pg_integrity_check — calculate and validate checksums for controlled files (certified edition only)

Synopsis


Description

`pg_integrity_check` is a utility provided with Postgres Pro Standard that can calculate and validate checksums for the objects you would like to control. When running `pg_integrity_check`, you must specify at least one of the options that define the type of the controlled objects: `--system`, `--user`, or `--catalog` for read-only files, additional files, or system catalog tables, respectively.

If you use the `--output` option, `pg_integrity_check` calculates checksums and writes them into configuration files under the `share/security/` directory. You must have write access to the corresponding files to perform this command. You cannot use the `--output` option together with the `--system` option, since a checksum for read-only files cannot be overwritten.

If you omit the `--output` option, `pg_integrity_check` compares the calculated checksums with the corresponding checksums in the configuration files. If the checksums differ for any of the controlled objects, `pg_integrity_check` displays a message indicating the difference.

For details on using `pg_integrity_check`, see Section 31.2.

Options

connection-options

Standard options for connecting to a database: `-d`, `-h`, `-p`, `-U`. You must specify `-d` and `-U` options when validating checksums for catalog tables with the `--catalog` option. For detailed description of connection options, see `psql`.

-s

`--system`

Validate checksums for read-only files. Checksums for read-only files control both file contents and file attributes.

-u

`--user`

Validate checksums for additional files. Checksums for additional files control both file contents and file attributes.

-c

`--catalog`

Validate checksums for system catalog tables. For the `--catalog` option to work correctly, you must also specify connection parameters for the database. The database server must be started and accept connections.

-o

`--output`

Recalculate checksums and write it into a file.

-D datadir

Data directory of the database cluster. This option is required to define the filenames for the generated configuration files when using `--user` option.
-v
--verbose
Print debugging information.

-?
--help
Print command-line help.

Return Values
0 — checksums are calculated or validated successfully.
1 — an error occurred during the initial checksum calculation for read-only files.
2 — checksum validation revealed changes in one or more of the controlled objects.
3 — an unexpected error occurred during checksum validation.

Examples
Compute checksums for additional files and write them into the share/security/_var_lib_pgpro_std-14_data.user.conf configuration file:

```
pg_integrity_check -u -o -D /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data
```

Check integrity of all controlled objects in the postgres database on behalf of the postgres user:

```
pg_integrity_check -s -u -c -D /var/lib/pgpro/std-14/data -d postgres -h localhost -p 5432 -U postgres
```
Appendix H. External Projects

Postgres Pro is a complex software project, and managing the project is difficult. We have found that many enhancements to Postgres Pro can be more efficiently developed separately from the core project.

H.1. Client Interfaces

There are only two client interfaces included in the base Postgres Pro Standard distribution:

- **libpq** is included because it is the primary C language interface, and because many other client interfaces are built on top of it.
- **ECPG** is included because it depends on the server-side SQL grammar, and is therefore sensitive to changes in Postgres Pro itself.

All other language interfaces are external projects and are distributed separately. Table H.1 includes a list of some of these projects. Note that some of these packages might not be released under the same license as Postgres Pro. For more information on each language interface, including licensing terms, refer to its website and documentation.

Table H.1. Externally Maintained Client Interfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DBD::Pg</td>
<td>Perl</td>
<td>Perl DBI driver</td>
<td><a href="https://metacpan.org/release/DBD-Pg">https://metacpan.org/release/DBD-Pg</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JDBC</td>
<td>Java</td>
<td>Type 4 JDBC driver</td>
<td><a href="https://jdbc.postgresql.org/">https://jdbc.postgresql.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libpqxx</td>
<td>C++</td>
<td>C++ interface</td>
<td><a href="https://pqxx.org/">https://pqxx.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node-postgres</td>
<td>JavaScript</td>
<td>Node.js driver</td>
<td><a href="https://node-postgres.com/">https://node-postgres.com/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Npgsql</td>
<td>.NET</td>
<td>.NET data provider</td>
<td><a href="https://www.npgsql.org/">https://www.npgsql.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgtcl</td>
<td>Tcl</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/flightaware/Pgtcl">https://github.com/flightaware/Pgtcl</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pgtclng</td>
<td>Tcl</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="https://sourceforge.net/projects/pgtclng/">https://sourceforge.net/projects/pgtclng/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pq</td>
<td>Go</td>
<td>Pure Go driver for Go's database/sql</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/lib/pq">https://github.com/lib/pq</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psqlODBC</td>
<td>ODBC</td>
<td>ODBC driver</td>
<td><a href="https://odbc.postgresql.org/">https://odbc.postgresql.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psycopg</td>
<td>Python</td>
<td>DB API 2.0-compliant</td>
<td><a href="https://www.psycopg.org/">https://www.psycopg.org/</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H.2. Administration Tools

There are several administration tools available for Postgres Pro. The most popular is **pgAdmin**, and there are several commercially available ones as well.

H.3. Procedural Languages

Postgres Pro includes several procedural languages with the base distribution: **PL/pgSQL**, **PL/Tcl**, **PL/Perl**, and **PL/Python**.

In addition, there are a number of procedural languages that are developed and maintained outside the core Postgres Pro distribution. Table H.2 lists some of these packages. Note that some of these projects might not be released under the same license as Postgres Pro. For more information on each procedural language, including licensing information, refer to its website and documentation.
## External Projects

### Table H.2. Externally Maintained Procedural Languages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PL/Java</td>
<td>Java</td>
<td><a href="https://tada.github.io/pljava/">https://tada.github.io/pljava/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL/Lua</td>
<td>Lua</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/pllua/pllua-ng">https://github.com/pllua/pllua-ng</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL/R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/postgres-plr/plr">https://github.com/postgres-plr/plr</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL/sh</td>
<td>Unix shell</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/petere/plsh">https://github.com/petere/plsh</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL/v8</td>
<td>JavaScript</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/plv8/plv8">https://github.com/plv8/plv8</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### H.4. Extensions

Postgres Pro is designed to be easily extensible. For this reason, extensions loaded into the database can function just like features that are built in. The `contrib/` directory shipped with the source code contains several extensions, which are described in Appendix F. Other extensions are developed independently, like PostGIS. Even Postgres Pro replication solutions can be developed externally. For example, Slony-I is a popular primary/standby replication solution that is developed independently from the core project.
Appendix I. Configuring Postgres Pro for 1C Solutions

You can install and use Postgres Pro with 1C solutions in a client/server model. For optimal performance and stability, modify the following settings in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file of Postgres Pro server:

1. Increase the maximum number of allowed concurrent connections to the database server, up to 1000 connections. 1C solutions can open a large number of connections, even if not all of them are used, so it is recommended to allow not less than 500 connections.

   ```
   max_connections = 1000
   ```

2. To ensure that temporary tables are handled correctly, modify the following parameters:
   - Increase the buffer size for temporary tables:
     ```
     temp_buffers = 32MB
     ```
   - Increase the number of allowed locks of tables or indexes per transaction to 256:
     ```
     max_locks_per_transaction = 256
     ```

3. Enable backslash escapes in all strings, and switch off the warning about using the backslash escape symbol:
   ```
   standard_conforming_strings = off
   escape_string_warning = off
   ```

4. Set the `effective_cache_size` parameter to at least half of RAM available on the system. Postgres Pro query optimizer performance depends on the amount of allocated RAM.

5. Optimize query planning using `online_analyze` and `plantuner` extensions, as follows:
   - Add `online_analyze` and `plantuner` to the `shared_preload_libraries` variable.
     ```
     shared_preload_libraries = 'online_analyze, plantuner'
     ```
   - Enable automatic analysis of temporary tables when they are modified:
     ```
     online_analyze.table_type = 'temporary'
     ```
   - Tune Postgres Pro optimizer to improve planning for recently created empty tables:
     ```
     plantuner.fix_empty_table = 'on'
     ```
   - Suppress detailed messages from the `online_analyze` extension:
     ```
     online_analyze.verbose = 'off'
     ```
Appendix J. Postgres Pro Limits

Table J.1 describes various hard limits of Postgres Pro. However, practical limits, such as performance limitations or available disk space may apply before absolute hard limits are reached.

Table J.1. Postgres Pro Limitations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Upper Limit</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>database size</td>
<td>unlimited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of databases</td>
<td>4,294,950,911</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relations per database</td>
<td>1,431,650,303</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation size</td>
<td>32 TB</td>
<td>with the default BLCKSZ of 8192 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rows per table</td>
<td>limited by the number of tuples that can fit onto 4,294,967,295 pages</td>
<td>further limited by tuple size fitting on a single page; see note below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columns per table</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field size</td>
<td>1 GB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identifier length</td>
<td>63 bytes</td>
<td>can be increased by recompiling Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indexes per table</td>
<td>unlimited</td>
<td>constrained by maximum relations per database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columns per index</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>can be increased by recompiling Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partition keys</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>can be increased by recompiling Postgres Pro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The maximum number of columns for a table is further reduced as the tuple being stored must fit in a single 8192-byte heap page. For example, excluding the tuple header, a tuple made up of 1600 int columns would consume 6400 bytes and could be stored in a heap page, but a tuple of 1600 bigint columns would consume 12800 bytes and would therefore not fit inside a heap page. Variable-length fields of types such as text, varchar, and char can have their values stored out of line in the table's TOAST table when the values are large enough to require it. Only an 18-byte pointer must remain inside the tuple in the table's heap. For shorter length variable-length fields, either a 4-byte or 1-byte field header is used and the value is stored inside the heap tuple.

Columns that have been dropped from the table also contribute to the maximum column limit. Moreover, although the dropped column values for newly created tuples are internally marked as null in the tuple's null bitmap, the null bitmap also occupies space.
Appendix K. Demo Database
“Airlines”

This is an overview of a demo database for Postgres Pro. This appendix describes the database schema, which consists of eight tables and several views. The subject field of this database is airline flights in Russia. You can download the database from our website. See Section K.1 for details.

Figure K.1. Airlines in Russia

You can use this database for various purposes, such as:
• learning SQL language on your own
• preparing books, manuals, and courses on SQL
• showing Postgres Pro features in stories and articles

When developing this demo database, we pursued several goals:
• Database schema must be simple enough to be understood without extra explanations.
• At the same time, database schema must be complex enough to allow writing meaningful queries.
• The database must contain true-to-life data that will be interesting to work with.

This demo database is distributed under the PostgreSQL license.

You can send us your feedback to edu@postgrespro.ru.

K.1. Installation

The demo database is available at edu.postgrespro.com in three flavors, which differ only in the data size:
• demo-small-en.zip (21 MB) — flight data for one month (DB size is about 300 MB)
• demo-medium-en.zip (62 MB) — flight data for three months (DB size is about 700 MB)
• demo-big-en.zip (232 MB) — flight data for one year (DB size is about 2.5 GB)

The small database is good for writing queries, and it will not take up much disk space. The large database can help you understand the query behavior on large data volumes and consider query optimization.
The files include an SQL script that creates the demo database and fills it with data (virtually, it is a backup copy created with the pg_dump utility). Note that if the demo database already exists, it will be deleted and recreated! The owner of the demo database will be the DBMS user who runs the script.

**K.2. Schema Diagram**

Figure K.2. Bookings Schema Diagram

**K.3. Schema Description**

The main entity is a booking (bookings).

One booking can include several passengers, with a separate ticket (tickets) issued to each passenger. A ticket has a unique number and includes information about the passenger. As such, the passenger is not a separate entity. Both the passenger’s name and identity document number can change over time, so it is impossible to uniquely identify all the tickets of a particular person; for simplicity, we can assume that all passengers are unique.

The ticket includes one or more flight segments (ticket_flights). Several flight segments can be included into a single ticket if there are no non-stop flights between the points of departure and destination (connecting flights), or if it is a round-trip ticket. Although there is no constraint in the schema, it is assumed that all tickets in the booking have the same flight segments.

Each flight (flights) goes from one airport (airports) to another. Flights with the same flight number have the same points of departure and destination, but differ in departure date.

At flight check-in, the passenger is issued a boarding pass (boarding_passes), where the seat number is specified. The passenger can check in for the flight only if this flight is included into the ticket. The flight-seat combination must be unique to avoid issuing two boarding passes for the same seat.

The number of seats (seats) in the aircraft and their distribution between different travel classes depends on the model of the aircraft (aircrafts) performing the flight. It is assumed that every aircraft model has only one cabin configuration. Database schema does not check that seat numbers in boarding
passes have the corresponding seats in the aircraft (such verification can be done using table triggers, or at the application level).

**K.4. Schema Objects**

**K.4.1. List of Relations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Small</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Big</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aircrafts</td>
<td>view</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Aircraft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aircrafts_data</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>16 kB</td>
<td>16 kB</td>
<td>16 kB</td>
<td>Aircraft (translations)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airports</td>
<td>view</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Airports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airports_data</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>56 kB</td>
<td>56 kB</td>
<td>56 kB</td>
<td>Airports (translations)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boarding_passes</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>31 MB</td>
<td>102 MB</td>
<td>427 MB</td>
<td>Boarding passes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bookings</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>13 MB</td>
<td>30 MB</td>
<td>105 MB</td>
<td>Bookings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flights</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>3 MB</td>
<td>6 MB</td>
<td>19 MB</td>
<td>Flights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flights_v</td>
<td>view</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Flights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routes</td>
<td>view</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Routes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seats</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>88 kB</td>
<td>88 kB</td>
<td>88 kB</td>
<td>Seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket_flights</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>64 MB</td>
<td>145 MB</td>
<td>516 MB</td>
<td>Flight segments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tickets</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>47 MB</td>
<td>107 MB</td>
<td>381 MB</td>
<td>Tickets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**K.4.2. View bookings.aircrafts**

Each aircraft model is identified by its three-digit code (aircraft_code). The view also includes the name of the aircraft model (model) and the maximal flying distance, in kilometers (range).

The value of the model field is selected according to the chosen language. See Section K.4.15 for details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aircraft_code</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Aircraft code, IATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Aircraft model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Maximal flying distance, km</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

View definition:

```sql
SELECT ml.aircraft_code,
       ml.model ->> lang() AS model,
       ml.range
FROM aircrafts_data ml;
```

**K.4.3. Table bookings.aircrafts_data**

This is the base table for the aircrafts view. The model field of this table contains translations of aircraft models to different languages, in the JSONB format. In most cases, this table is not supposed to be used directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aircraft_code</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Aircraft code, IATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model</td>
<td>jsonb</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Aircraft model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Maximal flying distance, km</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indexes:

- PRIMARY KEY, btree (aircraft_code)

Check constraints:

- CHECK (range > 0)

Referenced by:
K.4.4. View bookings.airports

An airport is identified by a three-letter code (airport_code) and has a name (airport_name).

There is no separate entity for the city, but there is a city name (city) to identify the airports of the same city. The view also includes coordinates (coordinates) and the time zone (timezone).

The values of the airport_name and city fields are selected according to the chosen language. See Section K.4.15 for details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airport_code</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airport_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinates</td>
<td>point</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport coordinates (longitude and latitude)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timezone</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport time zone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

View definition:
```
SELECT ml.airport_code,
    ml.airport_name ->> lang() AS airport_name,
    ml.city ->> lang() AS city,
    ml.coordinates,
    ml.timezone
FROM airports_data ml;
```

K.4.5. Table bookings.airports_data

This is the base table for the airports view. This table contains translations of airport_name and city values to different languages, in the JSONB format. In most cases, this table is not supposed to be used directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airport_code</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airport_name</td>
<td>jsonb</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>jsonb</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinates</td>
<td>point</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport coordinates (longitude and latitude)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timezone</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport time zone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indexes:
```
PRIMARY KEY, btree (airport_code)
```

Referenced by:
```
TABLE "flights" FOREIGN KEY (arrival_airport)
    REFERENCES airports_data(airport_code)
TABLE "flights" FOREIGN KEY (departure_airport)
    REFERENCES airports_data(airport_code)
```

K.4.6. Table bookings.boarding_passes

At the time of check-in, which opens twenty-four hours before the scheduled departure, the passenger is issued a boarding pass. Like the flight segment, the boarding pass is identified by the ticket number and the flight number.
Boarding passes are assigned sequential numbers (boarding_no), in the order of check-ins for the flight (this number is unique only within the context of a particular flight). The boarding pass specifies the seat number (seat_no).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ticket_no</td>
<td>char(13)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Ticket number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight_id</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Flight ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boarding_no</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Boarding pass number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seat_no</td>
<td>varchar(4)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Seat number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indexes:
- PRIMARY KEY, btree (ticket_no, flight_id)
- UNIQUE CONSTRAINT, btree (flight_id, boarding_no)
- UNIQUE CONSTRAINT, btree (flight_id, seat_no)

Foreign-key constraints:
- FOREIGN KEY (ticket_no, flight_id)
  REFERENCES ticket_flights(ticket_no, flight_id)

K.4.7. Table bookings.bookings

Passengers book tickets for themselves, and, possibly, for several other passengers, in advance (book_date, not earlier than one month before the flight). The booking is identified by its number (book_ref, a six-position combination of letters and digits).

The total_amount field stores the total cost of all tickets included into the booking, for all passengers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>book_ref</td>
<td>char(6)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Booking number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book_date</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Booking date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total_amount</td>
<td>numeric(10,2)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Total booking cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indexes:
- PRIMARY KEY, btree (book_ref)

Referenced by:
- TABLE "tickets" FOREIGN KEY (book_ref) REFERENCES bookings(book_ref)

K.4.8. Table bookings.flights

The natural key of the bookings.flights table consists of two fields — flight_no and scheduled_departure. To make foreign keys for this table more compact, a surrogate key is used as the primary key (flight_id).

A flight always connects two points — the airport of departure (departure_airport) and arrival (arrival_airport). There is no such entity as a “connecting flight”: if there are no non-stop flights from one airport to another, the ticket simply includes several required flight segments.

Each flight has a scheduled date and time of departure (scheduled_departure) and arrival (scheduled_arrival). The actual departure time (actual_departure) and arrival time (actual_arrival) can differ: the difference is usually not very big, but sometimes can be up to several hours if the flight is delayed.

Flight status (status) can take one of the following values:

Scheduled

The flight is available for booking. It happens one month before the planned departure date; before that time, there is no entry for this flight in the database.
On Time

The flight is open for check-in (in twenty-four hours before the scheduled departure) and is not delayed.

Delayed

The flight is open for check-in (in twenty-four hours before the scheduled departure) but is delayed.

Departed

The aircraft has already departed and is airborne.

Arrived

The aircraft has reached the point of destination.

Cancelled

The flight is canceled.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flight_id</td>
<td>serial</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Flight ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight_no</td>
<td>char(6)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Flight number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_departure</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Scheduled departure time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_arrival</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Scheduled arrival time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure_airport</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport of departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival_airport</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Airport of arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>varchar(20)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Flight status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aircraft_code</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Aircraft code, IATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actual_departure</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td></td>
<td>Actual departure time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actual_arrival</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td></td>
<td>Actual arrival time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indexes:

- PRIMARY KEY, btree (flight_id)
- UNIQUE CONSTRAINT, btree (flight_no, scheduled_departure)

Check constraints:

- CHECK (scheduled_arrival > scheduled_departure)
- CHECK ((actual_arrival IS NULL)
  OR ((actual_departure IS NOT NULL AND actual_arrival IS NOT NULL)
  AND (actual_arrival > actual_departure)))
- CHECK (status IN ('On Time', 'Delayed', 'Departed',
  'Arrived', 'Scheduled', 'Cancelled'))

Foreign-key constraints:

- FOREIGN KEY (aircraft_code)
  REFERENCES aircrafts(aircraft_code)
- FOREIGN KEY (arrival_airport)
  REFERENCES airports(airport_code)
- FOREIGN KEY (departure_airport)
  REFERENCES airports(airport_code)

Referenced by:

- TABLE "ticket_flights" FOREIGN KEY (flight_id)
  REFERENCES flights(flight_id)

K.4.9. Table bookings.seats

Seats define the cabin configuration of each aircraft model. Each seat is defined by its number (seat_no)
and has an assigned travel class (fare_conditions): Economy, Comfort or Business.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
aircraft_code | char(3) | not null | Aircraft code, IATA
seat_no       | varchar(4) | not null | Seat number
fare_conditions | varchar(10) | not null | Travel class

Indexes:
    PRIMARY KEY, btree (aircraft_code, seat_no)

Check constraints:
    CHECK (fare_conditions IN ('Economy', 'Comfort', 'Business'))

Foreign-key constraints:
    FOREIGN KEY (aircraft_code)
        REFERENCES aircrafts(aircraft_code) ON DELETE CASCADE

K.4.10. Table bookings.ticket_flights

A flight segment connects a ticket with a flight and is identified by their numbers.

Each flight has its cost (amount) and travel class (fare_conditions).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ticket_no</td>
<td>char(13)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Ticket number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight_id</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Flight ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare_conditions</td>
<td>varchar(10)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Travel class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amount</td>
<td>numeric(10,2)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Travel cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indexes:
    PRIMARY KEY, btree (ticket_no, flight_id)

Check constraints:
    CHECK (amount >= 0)
    CHECK (fare_conditions IN ('Economy', 'Comfort', 'Business'))

Foreign-key constraints:
    FOREIGN KEY (flight_id)
        REFERENCES flights(flight_id)
    FOREIGN KEY (ticket_no)
        REFERENCES tickets(ticket_no)

Referenced by:
    TABLE "boarding_passes" FOREIGN KEY (ticket_no, flight_id)
        REFERENCES ticket_flights(ticket_no, flight_id)

K.4.11. Table bookings.tickets

A ticket has a unique number (ticket_no) that consists of 13 digits.

The ticket includes a passenger ID (passenger_id) — the identity document number, — their first and last names (passenger_name), and contact information (contact_data).

Neither the passenger ID, nor the name is permanent (for example, one can change the last name or passport), so it is impossible to uniquely identify all tickets of a particular passenger.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Modifiers</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ticket_no</td>
<td>char(13)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Ticket number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book_ref</td>
<td>char(6)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Booking number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passenger_id</td>
<td>varchar(20)</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Passenger ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passenger_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>not null</td>
<td>Passenger name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact_data</td>
<td>jsonb</td>
<td></td>
<td>Passenger contact information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indexes:
    PRIMARY KEY, btree (ticket_no)

Foreign-key constraints:
    FOREIGN KEY (book_ref)
        REFERENCES bookings(book_ref)

Referenced by:
K.4.12. View bookings.flights_v

There is a flights_v view over the flights table that provides additional information:

- Details about the airport of departure — departure_airport, departure_airport_name, departure_city
- Details about the airport of arrival — arrival_airport, arrival_airport_name, arrival_city
- Local departure time — scheduled_departure_local, actual_departure_local
- Local arrival time — scheduled_arrival_local, actual_arrival_local
- Flight duration — scheduled_duration, actual_duration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flight_id</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Flight ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight_no</td>
<td>char(6)</td>
<td>Flight number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_departure</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
<td>Scheduled departure time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_departure_local</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>Scheduled departure time,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>local time at the point of departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_arrival</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
<td>Scheduled arrival time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_arrival_local</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>Scheduled arrival time,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>local time at the point of destination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_duration</td>
<td>interval</td>
<td>Scheduled flight duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure_airport</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>Departure airport code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure_airport_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Departure airport name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure_city</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>City of departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival_airport</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>Arrival airport code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival_airport_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Arrival airport name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival_city</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>City of arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>varchar(20)</td>
<td>Flight status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aircraft_code</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>Aircraft code, IATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actual_departure</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
<td>Actual departure time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actual_departure_local</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>Actual departure time,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>local time at the point of departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actual_arrival</td>
<td>timestamptz</td>
<td>Actual arrival time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actual_arrival_local</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>Actual arrival time,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>local time at the point of destination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actual_duration</td>
<td>interval</td>
<td>Actual flight duration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

K.4.13. View bookings.routes

The bookings.flights table contains some redundancies, which you can use to single out route information (flight number, airports of departure and destination) that does not depend on the exact flight dates.

Such information is shown in the routes view.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flight_no</td>
<td>char(6)</td>
<td>Flight number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure_airport</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>Departure airport code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure_airport_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Departure airport name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure_city</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>City of departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival_airport</td>
<td>char(3)</td>
<td>Arrival airport code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival_airport_name</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>Arrival airport code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
K.4.14. Function bookings.now

The demo database contains “snapshots” of data — similar to a backup copy of a real system captured at some point in time. For example, if a flight has the Departed status, it means that the aircraft had already departed and was airborne at the time of the backup copy.

The “snapshot” time is saved in the bookings.now() function. You can use this function in demo queries for cases where you would use the now() function in a real database.

In addition, the return value of this function determines the version of the demo database. The latest version available is of August 15, 2017.

K.4.15. Function bookings.lang

Some fields in the demo database are available in English and Russian. Translations to other languages are not provided, but are easy to add. The bookings.lang returns the value of the bookings.lang parameter, that is, the language in which these fields will be displayed.

This function is used in the aircrafts and airports views and is not intended to be used directly in queries.

K.5. Usage

K.5.1. Schema bookings

The bookings schema contains all objects of the demo database. When you connect to the database, search_path configuration parameter is automatically set to bookings, public, so you do not need to specify the schema name explicitly.

However, for the bookings.now function, you always have to specify the schema to distinguish this function from the standard now function.

K.5.2. Translations

By default, values of several translatable fields are shown in Russian. These are airport_name and city of the airports view, as well as model of the aircrafts view.

You can choose to display these fields in another language (although only the English translation is provided in the demo database). To switch to English, set the bookings.lang parameter to en. It may be convenient to choose the language at the database level:

```
ALTER DATABASE demo SET bookings.lang = en;
```

You have to reconnect to the database for this command to take effect. For other methods of settings configuration parameters, see Section 18.1.

In the examples below, the English language is selected for translatable fields.

K.5.3. Sample Queries

To better understand the contents of the demo database, let’s take a look at the results of several simple queries.
All flights are operated by several types of aircraft:

```
SELECT * FROM aircrafts;
```

| aircraft_code | model                  | range |
|---------------|------------------------+-------|
| 773           | Boeing 777-300         | 11100 |
| 763           | Boeing 767-300         | 7900  |
| SU9           | Sukhoi SuperJet-100    | 3000  |
| 320           | Airbus A320-200        | 5700  |
| 321           | Airbus A321-200        | 5600  |
| 319           | Airbus A319-100        | 6700  |
| 733           | Boeing 737-300         | 4200  |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 1200  |
| CR2           | Bombardier CRJ-200     | 2700  |

(9 rows)

For each aircraft type, a separate list of seats is supported. For example, in a small Cessna 208 Caravan, one can select the following seats:

```
SELECT   a.aircraft_code, 
         a.model, 
         s.seat_no, 
         s.fare_conditions
FROM     aircrafts a 
JOIN seats s ON a.aircraft_code = s.aircraft_code 
WHERE    a.model = 'Cessna 208 Caravan' 
ORDER BY s.seat_no;
```

| aircraft_code | model                  | seat_no | fare_conditions |
|---------------|------------------------+---------|-----------------|
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 1A      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 1B      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 2A      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 2B      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 3A      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 3B      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 4A      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 4B      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 5A      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 5B      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 6A      | Economy        |
| CN1           | Cessna 208 Caravan     | 6B      | Economy        |

(12 rows)

Bigger aircraft have more seats of various travel classes:

```
SELECT s2.aircraft_code, 
       string_agg (s2.fare_conditions || ' (' || s2.num::text || ' )', 
                    ',', '') as fare_conditions 
FROM   ( 
        SELECT s.aircraft_code, s.fare_conditions, count(*) as num
FROM seats s
GROUP BY s.aircraft_code, s.fare_conditions
ORDER BY s.aircraft_code, s.fare_conditions
) s2
GROUP BY s2.aircraft_code
ORDER BY s2.aircraft_code;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aircraft_code</th>
<th>fare_conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>319</td>
<td>Business(20), Economy(96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Business(20), Economy(120)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321</td>
<td>Business(28), Economy(142)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733</td>
<td>Business(12), Economy(118)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>763</td>
<td>Business(30), Economy(192)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>773</td>
<td>Business(30), Comfort(48), Economy(324)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN1</td>
<td>Economy(12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CR2</td>
<td>Economy(50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SU9</td>
<td>Business(12), Economy(85)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(9 rows)

The demo database contains the list of airports of almost all major Russian cities. Most cities have only one airport. The exceptions are:

```sql
SELECT a.airport_code as code,
       a.airport_name,
       a.city,
       a.coordinates
FROM airports a
WHERE a.city IN (
    SELECT aa.city
    FROM airports aa
    GROUP BY aa.city
    HAVING COUNT(*) > 1
)
ORDER BY a.city, a.airport_code;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>code</th>
<th>airport_name</th>
<th>city</th>
<th>coordinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DME</td>
<td>Domodedovo</td>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>(37.9062995910645,55.4087982177734)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>International Airport</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVO</td>
<td>Sheremetyevo</td>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>(37.4146,55.972599)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>International Airport</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VKO</td>
<td>Vnukovo</td>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>(37.2615013123,55.5914993286)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>International Airport</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ULV</td>
<td>Ulyanovsk</td>
<td>Ulyanovsk</td>
<td>(48.2266998291,54.2682991028)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Baratayevka Airport</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ULY</td>
<td>Ulyanovsk East Airport</td>
<td>Ulyanovsk</td>
<td>(48.8027000427246,54.4010009765625)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(5 rows)

To learn about your flying options from one point to another, it is convenient to use the routes materialized view that aggregates information on all flights. For example, here are the destinations where you can get from Volgograd on specific days of the week, with flight duration:

```sql
SELECT r.arrival_city as city,
       r.arrival_airport as code,
       r.arrival_airport_name as airport_name,
FROM routes r
WHERE r.departure_city = 'Volgograd'
ORDER BY r.arrival_city, r.arrival_airport;
select r.days_of_week, r.duration
from routes r
where r.departure_city = 'Volgograd';

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>city</th>
<th>code</th>
<th>airport_name</th>
<th>days_of_week</th>
<th>duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>SVO</td>
<td>Sheremetyevo International Airport</td>
<td>{1,2,3,4,5,6,7}</td>
<td>01:15:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chelyabinsk</td>
<td>CEK</td>
<td>Chelyabinsk Balandino Airport</td>
<td>{1,2,3,4,5,6,7}</td>
<td>01:50:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rostov</td>
<td>ROV</td>
<td>Rostov-on-Don Airport</td>
<td>{1,2,3,4,5,6,7}</td>
<td>00:30:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>VKO</td>
<td>Vnukovo International Airport</td>
<td>{1,2,3,4,5,6,7}</td>
<td>01:10:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheboksary</td>
<td>CSY</td>
<td>Cheboksary Airport</td>
<td>{1,2,3,4,5,6,7}</td>
<td>02:45:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomsk</td>
<td>TOF</td>
<td>Bogashevo Airport</td>
<td>{1}</td>
<td>03:50:00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(6 rows)

The database was formed at the moment returned by the `bookings.now()` function:

```sql
SELECT bookings.now() as now;
```

```
now
------------------------
2017-08-15 18:00:00+03
```

In relation to this moment, all flights are classified as past and future flights:

```sql
SELECT status, count(*) as count, min(scheduled_departure) as min_scheduled_departure, max(scheduled_departure) as max_scheduled_departure
FROM flights
GROUP BY status
ORDER BY min_scheduled_departure;
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>status</th>
<th>count</th>
<th>min_scheduled_departure</th>
<th>max_scheduled_departure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrived</td>
<td>16707</td>
<td>2017-07-16 01:50:00+03</td>
<td>2017-08-15 17:25:00+03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancelled</td>
<td>414</td>
<td>2017-07-19 11:35:00+03</td>
<td>2017-09-14 20:55:00+03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departed</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>2017-08-15 09:55:00+03</td>
<td>2017-08-15 17:50:00+03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delayed</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>2017-08-15 15:15:00+03</td>
<td>2017-08-16 17:25:00+03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On Time</td>
<td>518</td>
<td>2017-08-15 17:55:00+03</td>
<td>2017-08-16 18:00:00+03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>15383</td>
<td>2017-08-16 18:05:00+03</td>
<td>2017-09-14 20:40:00+03</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(6 rows)

Let's find the next flight from Yekaterinburg to Moscow. The `flight` table is not very convenient for such queries, as it does not include information on the cities of departure and arrival. That is why we will use the `flights_v` view:

```sql
\x
SELECT f.*
FROM flights_v f
WHERE f.departure_city = 'Yekaterinburg'
AND f.arrival_city = 'Moscow'
AND f.scheduled_departure > bookings.now()
ORDER BY f.scheduled_departure
LIMIT 1;
```

2632
Demo Database “Airlines”

- [ RECORD 1 ]----------------------------------------------------------
  flight_id | 10927
  flight_no | PG0226
  scheduled_departure | 2017-08-16 08:10:00+03
  scheduled_departure_local | 2017-08-16 10:10:00
  scheduled_arrival | 2017-08-16 09:55:00+03
  scheduled_arrival_local | 2017-08-16 09:55:00
  scheduled_duration | 01:45:00
  departure_airport | SVX
  departure_airport_name | Koltsovo Airport
  departure_city | Yekaterinburg
  arrival_airport | SVO
  arrival_airport_name | Sheremetyevo International Airport
  arrival_city | Moscow
  status | On Time
  aircraft_code | 773
  actual_departure |
  actual_departure_local |
  actual_arrival |
  actual_arrival_local |
  actual_duration |

Note that the flights_v view shows both Moscow time and local time at the airports of departure and arrival.

K.5.4. Bookings

Each booking can include several tickets, one for each passenger. The ticket, in its turn, can include several flight segments. The complete information about the booking is stored in three tables: bookings, tickets, and ticket_flights.

Let’s find several most expensive bookings:

```
SELECT *
FROM bookings
ORDER BY total_amount desc
LIMIT 10;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>book_ref</th>
<th>book_date</th>
<th>total_amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3B54BB</td>
<td>2017-07-05 17:08:00+03</td>
<td>1204500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3AC131</td>
<td>2017-07-31 01:06:00+03</td>
<td>1087100.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65A6EA</td>
<td>2017-07-03 06:28:00+03</td>
<td>1065600.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D7E9AA</td>
<td>2017-08-08 05:29:00+03</td>
<td>1062800.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF479E</td>
<td>2017-08-02 15:58:00+03</td>
<td>1035100.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>521C53</td>
<td>2017-07-08 09:25:00+03</td>
<td>985500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>514CA6</td>
<td>2017-07-27 05:07:00+03</td>
<td>955000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D70BD9</td>
<td>2017-07-05 12:47:00+03</td>
<td>947500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC7EDA</td>
<td>2017-07-02 16:13:00+03</td>
<td>946800.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8E4370</td>
<td>2017-07-28 02:04:00+03</td>
<td>945700.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(10 rows)

Let’s take a look at the tickets included into the booking with code 521C53:

```
SELECT ticket_no,
       passenger_id,
       passenger_name
FROM tickets
```
WHERE book_ref = '521C53';

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ticket_no</th>
<th>passenger_id</th>
<th>passenger_name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0005432661914</td>
<td>8234 547529</td>
<td>IVAN IVANOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0005432661915</td>
<td>2034 201228</td>
<td>ANTONINA KUZNECOVA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2 rows)

If we would like to know, which flight segments are included into Antonina Kuznecova's ticket, we can use the following query:

```sql
SELECT to_char(f.scheduled_departure, 'DD.MM.YYYY') AS when,
       f.departure_city || ' (' || f.departure_airport || ')' AS departure,
       f.arrival_city || ' (' || f.arrival_airport || ')' AS arrival,
       tf.fare_conditions AS class,
       tf.amount
FROM ticket_flights tf
     JOIN flights_v f ON tf.flight_id = f.flight_id
WHERE tf.ticket_no = '0005432661915'
ORDER BY f.scheduled_departure;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>when</th>
<th>departure</th>
<th>arrival</th>
<th>class</th>
<th>amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29.07.2017</td>
<td>Moscow (SVO)</td>
<td>Anadyr (DYR)</td>
<td>Business</td>
<td>185300.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02.08.2017</td>
<td>Anadyr (DYR)</td>
<td>Khabarovsk (KHV)</td>
<td>Business</td>
<td>92200.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03.08.2017</td>
<td>Khabarovsk (KHV)</td>
<td>Blagoveschensk (BQS)</td>
<td>Business</td>
<td>18000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08.08.2017</td>
<td>Blagoveschensk (BQS)</td>
<td>Khabarovsk (KHV)</td>
<td>Business</td>
<td>18000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.08.2017</td>
<td>Khabarovsk (KHV)</td>
<td>Anadyr (DYR)</td>
<td>Economy</td>
<td>30700.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.08.2017</td>
<td>Anadyr (DYR)</td>
<td>Moscow (SVO)</td>
<td>Business</td>
<td>185300.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6 rows)

As we can see, high booking cost is explained by multiple long-haul flights in business class.

Some of the flight segments in this ticket have earlier dates than the `bookings.now()` return value: it means that these flights had already happened. The last flight had not happened yet at the time of the database creation. After the check-in, a boarding pass with the allocated seat number is issued. We can check the exact seats occupied by Antonina (note the outer left join with table `boarding_passes`):

```sql
SELECT to_char(f.scheduled_departure, 'DD.MM.YYYY') AS when,
       f.departure_city || ' (' || f.departure_airport || ')' AS departure,
       f.arrival_city || ' (' || f.arrival_airport || ')' AS arrival,
       f.status,
       bp.seat_no
FROM ticket_flights tf
     JOIN flights_v f ON tf.flight_id = f.flight_id
     LEFT JOIN boarding_passes bp ON tf.flight_id = bp.flight_id
     AND tf.ticket_no = bp.ticket_no
WHERE tf.ticket_no = '0005432661915'
ORDER BY f.scheduled_departure;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>when</th>
<th>departure</th>
<th>arrival</th>
<th>status</th>
<th>seat_no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29.07.2017</td>
<td>Moscow (SVO)</td>
<td>Anadyr (DYR)</td>
<td>Arrived</td>
<td>5C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02.08.2017</td>
<td>Anadyr (DYR)</td>
<td>Khabarovsk (KHV)</td>
<td>Arrived</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03.08.2017</td>
<td>Khabarovsk (KHV)</td>
<td>Blagoveschensk (BQS)</td>
<td>Arrived</td>
<td>2C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08.08.2017</td>
<td>Blagoveschensk (BQS)</td>
<td>Khabarovsk (KHV)</td>
<td>Arrived</td>
<td>2D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6 rows)
K.5.5. New Booking

Let's try to send Aleksandr Radishchev from Saint Petersburg to Moscow — the route that made him famous. Naturally, he will travel for free and in business class. We have already found a flight for tomorrow, and a return flight a week later.

BEGIN;

INSERT INTO bookings (book_ref, book_date, total_amount)
VALUES      ('_QWE12', bookings.now(), 0);

INSERT INTO tickets (ticket_no, book_ref, passenger_id, passenger_name)
VALUES      ('_000000000001', '_QWE12', '1749 051790', 'ALEKSANDR RADISHCHEV');

INSERT INTO ticket_flights (ticket_no, flight_id, fare_conditions, amount)
VALUES      ('_000000000001', 8525, 'Business', 0),
            ('_000000000001', 4967, 'Business', 0);

COMMIT;

To avoid conflicts with the range of values present in the database, identifiers are started with an underscore.

We will check in Aleksandr for tomorrow's flight right away:

INSERT INTO boarding_passes (ticket_no, flight_id, boarding_no, seat_no)
VALUES      ('_000000000001', 8525, 1, '1A');

Now let's check the booking information:

SELECT   b.book_ref,
         t.ticket_no,
         t.passenger_id,
         t.passenger_name,
         tf.fare_conditions,
         tf.amount,
         f.scheduled_departure_local,
         f.scheduled_arrival_local,
         f.departure_city || ' (' || f.departure_airport || ')' AS departure,
         f.arrival_city || ' (' || f.arrival_airport || ')' AS arrival,
         f.status,
         bp.seat_no
FROM     bookings b
JOIN tickets t ON b.book_ref = t.book_ref
JOIN ticket_flights tf ON tf.ticket_no = t.ticket_no
JOIN flights_v f ON tf.flight_id = f.flight_id
LEFT JOIN boarding_passes bp ON tf.flight_id = bp.flight_id
AND tf.ticket_no = bp.ticket_no
WHERE    b.book_ref = '_QWE12'
ORDER BY t.ticket_no, f.scheduled_departure;

- [ RECORD 1 ]-----------------------------
  book_ref | _QWE12

2635
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ticket_no</th>
<th>_000000000001</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>passenger_id</td>
<td>1749 051790</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passenger_name</td>
<td>ALEKSANDR RADISHCHEV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare_conditions</td>
<td>Business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amount</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_departure_local</td>
<td>2017-08-16 09:45:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheduled_arrival_local</td>
<td>2017-08-16 10:35:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure</td>
<td>St. Petersburg (LED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival</td>
<td>Moscow (SVO)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>On Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seat_no</td>
<td>1A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- [ RECORD 2 ]------------------------------------------
  | book_ref | _QWE12 |
  | ticket_no | _000000000001 |
  | passenger_id | 1749 051790 |
  | passenger_name | ALEKSANDR RADISHCHEV |
  | fare_conditions | Business |
  | amount | 0.00 |
  | scheduled_departure_local | 2017-08-23 10:20:00 |
  | scheduled_arrival_local | 2017-08-23 11:10:00 |
  | departure | Moscow (SVO) |
  | arrival | St. Petersburg (LED) |
  | status | Scheduled |
  | seat_no | |
Appendix L. Acronyms

This is a list of acronyms commonly used in the Postgres Pro documentation and in discussions about Postgres Pro.

ANSI
   *American National Standards Institute*

API
   *Application Programming Interface*

ASCII
   *American Standard Code for Information Interchange*

BKI
   Backend Interface

CA
   *Certificate Authority*

CIDR
   *Classless Inter-Domain Routing*

CPAN
   *Comprehensive Perl Archive Network*

CRL
   *Certificate Revocation List*

CSV
   *Comma Separated Values*

CTE
   *Common Table Expression*

CVE
   *Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures*

DBA
   *Database Administrator*

DBI
   *Database Interface (Perl)*

DBMS
   *Database Management System*

DDL
   *Data Definition Language*, SQL commands such as `CREATE TABLE`, `ALTER USER`

DML
   *Data Manipulation Language*, SQL commands such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`
Acronyms

DST
  *Daylight Saving Time*

ECPG
  Embedded C for Postgres Pro

ESQL
  *Embedded SQL*

FAQ
  *Frequently Asked Questions*

FSM
  Free Space Map

GEQO
  Genetic Query Optimizer

GIN
  Generalized Inverted Index

GiST
  Generalized Search Tree

Git
  *Git*

GMT
  *Greenwich Mean Time*

GSSAPI
  *Generic Security Services Application Programming Interface*

GUC
  Grand Unified Configuration, the Postgres Pro subsystem that handles server configuration

HBA
  Host-Based Authentication

HOT
  *Heap-Only Tuples*

IEC
  *International Electrotechnical Commission*

IEEE
  Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers

IPC
  *Inter-Process Communication*

ISO
  *International Organization for Standardization*
Acronyms

ISSN
   *International Standard Serial Number*

JDBC
   *Java Database Connectivity*

JIT
   *Just-in-Time compilation*

JSON
   *JavaScript Object Notation*

LDAP
   *Lightweight Directory Access Protocol*

LSN
   Log Sequence Number, see *pg_lsn* and *WAL Internals*.

MITM
   *Man-in-the-middle attack*

MSVC
   *Microsoft Visual C*

MVCC
   *Multi-Version Concurrency Control*

NLS
   *National Language Support*

ODBC
   *Open Database Connectivity*

OID
   *Object Identifier*

OLAP
   *Online Analytical Processing*

OLTP
   *Online Transaction Processing*

ORDBMS
   *Object-Relational Database Management System*

PAM
   *Pluggable Authentication Modules*

PGSQL
   Postgres Pro

PGXS
   Postgres Pro Extension System
Acronyms

PID
  Process Identifier

PITR
  Point-In-Time Recovery (Continuous Archiving)

PL
  Procedural Languages (server-side)

POSIX
  Portable Operating System Interface

RDBMS
  Relational Database Management System

RFC
  Request For Comments

SGML
  Standard Generalized Markup Language

SNI
  Server Name Indication, RFC 6066

SPI
  Server Programming Interface

SP-GiST
  Space-Partitioned Generalized Search Tree

SQL
  Structured Query Language

SRF
  Set-Returning Function

SSH
  Secure Shell

SSL
  Secure Sockets Layer

SSPI
  Security Support Provider Interface

SYSV
  Unix System V

TCP/IP
  Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) / Internet Protocol (IP)

TID
  Tuple Identifier
Acronyms

TLS
   Transport Layer Security

TOAST
   The Oversized-Attribute Storage Technique

TPC
   Transaction Processing Performance Council

URL
   Uniform Resource Locator

UTC
   Coordinated Universal Time

UTF
   Unicode Transformation Format

UTF8
   Eight-Bit Unicode Transformation Format

UUID
   Universally Unique Identifier

WAL
   Write-Ahead Log

XID
   Transaction Identifier

XML
   Extensible Markup Language
Appendix M. Glossary

This is a list of terms and their meaning in the context of PostgreSQL and relational database systems in general.

**ACID**

*Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, and Durability*. This set of properties of database transactions is intended to guarantee validity in concurrent operation and even in event of errors, power failures, etc.

**Aggregate function (routine)**

A *function* that combines (*aggregates*) multiple input values, for example by counting, averaging or adding, yielding a single output value.

For more information, see Section 9.21.

See Also Window function (routine).

**Analytic function**

See Window function (routine).

**Analyze (operation)**

The process of collecting statistics from data in *tables* and other *relations* to help the *query planner* to make decisions about how to execute *queries*.

(Don't confuse this term with the *ANALYZE* option to the *EXPLAIN* command.)

For more information, see *ANALYZE*.

**Atomic**

In reference to a *datum*: the fact that its value cannot be broken down into smaller components.

In reference to a *database transaction*: see *atomicity*.

**Atomicity**

The property of a *transaction* that either all its operations complete as a single unit or none do. In addition, if a system failure occurs during the execution of a transaction, no partial results are visible after recovery. This is one of the ACID properties.

**Attribute**

An element with a certain name and data type found within a *tuple*.

**Autovacuum (process)**

A set of background processes that routinely perform *vacuum* and *analyze* operations.

For more information, see Section 23.1.6.

**Backend (process)**

Process of an *instance* which acts on behalf of a *client session* and handles its requests.

(Don't confuse this term with the similar terms *Background Worker* or *Background Writer*).

**Background (process) worker**

Process within an *instance*, which runs system- or user-supplied code. Serves as infrastructure for several features in PostgreSQL, such as *logical replication* and *parallel queries*. In addition, *Extensions* can add custom background worker processes.

For more information, see Chapter 46.

**Background (process) writer**

A process that writes dirty *data pages* from *shared memory* to the file system. It wakes up periodically, but works only for a short period in order to distribute its expensive I/O activity over time to avoid generating larger I/O peaks which could block other processes.

For more information, see Section 18.4.5.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Glossary</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Base Backup</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bloat</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cast</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Catalog</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Check constraint</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Checkpoint</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Checkpointer (process)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class (archaic)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Client (process)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Column</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Commit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concurrency</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Connection</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consistency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epoch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File segment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Foreign data wrapper**  
A means of representing data that is not contained in the local *database* so that it appears as if were in local *table(s)*. With a foreign data wrapper it is possible to define a *foreign server* and *foreign tables*.

For more information, see [CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER](#).

**Foreign key**  
A type of *constraint* defined on one or more *columns* in a *table* which requires the value(s) in those *columns* to identify zero or one *row* in another (or, infrequently, the same) *table*.

**Foreign server**  
A named collection of *foreign tables* which all use the same *foreign data wrapper* and have other configuration values in common.

For more information, see [CREATE SERVER](#).

**Foreign table (relation)**  
A *relation* which appears to have *rows* and *columns* similar to a regular *table*, but will forward requests for data through its *foreign data wrapper*, which will return *result sets* structured according to the definition of the *foreign table*.

For more information, see [CREATE FOREIGN TABLE](#).

**Fork**  
Each of the separate segmented file sets in which a relation is stored. The *main fork* is where the actual data resides. There also exist two secondary forks for metadata: the *free space map* and the *visibility map*. *Unlogged relations* also have an *init fork*.

**Free space map (fork)**  
A storage structure that keeps metadata about each data page of a table’s main fork. The free space map entry for each page stores the amount of free space that’s available for future tuples, and is structured to be efficiently searched for available space for a new tuple of a given size.

For more information, see [Section 66.3](#).

**Function (routine)**  
A type of routine that receives zero or more arguments, returns zero or more output values, and is constrained to run within one transaction. Functions are invoked as part of a query, for example via *SELECT*. Certain functions can return *sets*; those are called *set-returning functions*.

Functions can also be used for *triggers* to invoke.

For more information, see [CREATE FUNCTION](#).

**Grant**  
An SQL command that is used to allow a *user* or *role* to access specific objects within the *database*.

For more information, see [GRANT](#).

**Heap**  
Contains the values of *row* attributes (i.e., the data) for a *relation*. The heap is realized within one or more *file segments* in the relation’s *main fork*.

**Host**  
A computer that communicates with other computers over a network. This is sometimes used as a synonym for *server*. It is also used to refer to a computer where *client processes* run.

**Index (relation)**  
A *relation* that contains data derived from a *table* or *materialized view*. Its internal structure supports fast retrieval of and access to the original data.

For more information, see [CREATE INDEX](#).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Insert</td>
<td>An SQL command used to add new data into a table. For more information, see INSERT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instance</td>
<td>A group of backend and auxiliary processes that communicate using a common shared memory area. One postmaster process manages the instance; one instance manages exactly one database cluster with all its databases. Many instances can run on the same server as long as their TCP ports do not conflict.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolation</td>
<td>The property that the effects of a transaction are not visible to concurrent transactions before it commits. This is one of the ACID properties. For more information, see Section 13.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Join</td>
<td>An operation and SQL keyword used in queries for combining data from multiple relations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key</td>
<td>A means of identifying a row within a table or other relation by values contained within one or more attributes in that relation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock</td>
<td>A mechanism that allows a process to limit or prevent simultaneous access to a resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log file</td>
<td>Log files contain human-readable text lines about events. Examples include login failures, long-running queries, etc. For more information, see Section 23.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logged</td>
<td>A table is considered logged if changes to it are sent to the WAL. By default, all regular tables are logged. A table can be specified as unlogged either at creation time or via the ALTER TABLE command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logger (process)</td>
<td>If activated, the process writes information about database events into the current log file. When reaching certain time- or volume-dependent criteria, a new log file is created. Also called syslogger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Materialized</td>
<td>The property that some information has been pre-computed and stored for later use, rather than computing it on-the-fly. This term is used in materialized view, to mean that the data derived from the view's query is stored on disk separately from the sources of that data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Materialized (relation)</td>
<td>A relation that is defined by a SELECT statement (just like a view), but stores data in the same way that a table does. It cannot be modified via INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE operations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For more information, see CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW.

**Multi-version concurrency control**
A mechanism designed to allow several transactions to be reading and writing the same rows without one process causing other processes to stall. In PostgreSQL, MVCC is implemented by creating copies (versions) of tuples as they are modified; after transactions that can see the old versions terminate, those old versions need to be removed.

**Null**
A concept of non-existence that is a central tenet of relational database theory. It represents the absence of a definite value.

**Optimizer**
See Query planner.

**Parallel query**
The ability to handle parts of executing a query to take advantage of parallel processes on servers with multiple CPUs.

**Partition**
One of several disjoint (not overlapping) subsets of a larger set.

In reference to a partitioned table: One of the tables that each contain part of the data of the partitioned table, which is said to be the parent. The partition is itself a table, so it can also be queried directly; at the same time, a partition can sometimes be a partitioned table, allowing hierarchies to be created.

In reference to a window function in a query, a partition is a user-defined criterion that identifies which neighboring rows of the query's result set can be considered by the function.

**Partitioned table** (relation)
A relation that is in semantic terms the same as a table, but whose storage is distributed across several partitions.

**Postmaster (process)**
The very first process of an instance. It starts and manages the other auxiliary processes and creates backend processes on demand.

For more information, see Section 17.3.

**Primary key**
A special case of a unique constraint defined on a table or other relation that also guarantees that all of the attributes within the primary key do not have null values. As the name implies, there can be only one primary key per table, though it is possible to have multiple unique constraints that also have no null-capable attributes.

**Primary (server)**
When two or more databases are linked via replication, the server that is considered the authoritative source of information is called the primary, also known as a master.

**Procedure (routine)**
A type of routine. Their distinctive qualities are that they do not return values, and that they are allowed to make transactional statements such as COMMIT and ROLLBACK. They are invoked via the CALL command.

For more information, see CREATE PROCEDURE.

**Query**
A request sent by a client to a backend, usually to return results or to modify data on the database.

**Query planner**
The part of PostgreSQL that is devoted to determining (planning) the most efficient way to execute queries. Also known as query optimizer, optimizer, or simply planner.

**Record**
See Tuple.
Recycling
See WAL file.

Referential integrity
A means of restricting data in one relation by a foreign key so that it must have matching data in another relation.

Relation
The generic term for all objects in a database that have a name and a list of attributes defined in a specific order. Tables, sequences, views, foreign tables, materialized views, composite types, and indexes are all relations.

More generically, a relation is a set of tuples; for example, the result of a query is also a relation.

In PostgreSQL, Class is an archaic synonym for relation.

Replica (server)
A database that is paired with a primary database and is maintaining a copy of some or all of the primary database's data. The foremost reasons for doing this are to allow for greater access to that data, and to maintain availability of the data in the event that the primary becomes unavailable.

Replication
The act of reproducing data on one server onto another server called a replica. This can take the form of physical replication, where all file changes from one server are copied verbatim, or logical replication where a defined subset of data changes are conveyed using a higher-level representation.

Result set
A relation transmitted from a backend process to a client upon the completion of an SQL command, usually a SELECT but it can be an INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE command if the RETURNING clause is specified.

The fact that a result set is a relation means that a query can be used in the definition of another query, becoming a subquery.

Revoke
A command to prevent access to a named set of database objects for a named list of roles.

For more information, see REVOKE.

Role
A collection of access privileges to the instance. Roles are themselves a privilege that can be granted to other roles. This is often done for convenience or to ensure completeness when multiple users need the same privileges.

For more information, see CREATE ROLE.

Rollback
A command to undo all of the operations performed since the beginning of a transaction.

For more information, see ROLLBACK.

Routine
A defined set of instructions stored in the database system that can be invoked for execution. A routine can be written in a variety of programming languages. Routines can be functions (including set-returning functions and trigger functions), aggregate functions, and procedures.

Many routines are already defined within PostgreSQL itself, but user-defined ones can also be added.

Row
See Tuple.

Savepoint
A special mark in the sequence of steps in a transaction. Data modifications after this point in time may be reverted to the time of the savepoint.
Glossary

For more information, see SAVEPOINT.

**Schema**
A schema is a namespace for *SQL objects*, which all reside in the same *database*. Each SQL object must reside in exactly one schema.

All system-defined SQL objects reside in schema `pg_catalog`.

More generically, the term *schema* is used to mean all data descriptions (*table* definitions, *constraints*, comments, etc) for a given *database* or subset thereof.

For more information, see Section 5.9.

**Segment**
See File segment.

**Select**
The SQL command used to request data from a *database*. Normally, `SELECT` commands are not expected to modify the *database* in any way, but it is possible that `functions` invoked within the query could have side effects that do modify data.

For more information, see SELECT.

**Sequence (relation)**
A type of relation that is used to generate values. Typically the generated values are sequential non-repeating numbers. They are commonly used to generate surrogate *primary key* values.

**Server**
A computer on which PostgreSQL *instances* run. The term *server* denotes real hardware, a container, or a *virtual machine*.

This term is sometimes used to refer to an instance or to a host.

**Session**
A state that allows a client and a backend to interact, communicating over a *connection*.

**Shared memory**
RAM which is used by the processes common to an *instance*. It mirrors parts of *database* files, provides a transient area for *WAL records*, and stores additional common information. Note that shared memory belongs to the complete instance, not to a single database.

The largest part of shared memory is known as *shared buffers* and is used to mirror part of data files, organized into pages. When a page is modified, it is called a dirty page until it is written back to the file system.

For more information, see Section 18.4.1.

**SQL object**
Any object that can be created with a `CREATE` command. Most objects are specific to one database, and are commonly known as *local objects*.

Most local objects reside in a specific *schema* in their containing database, such as *relations* (all types), *routines* (all types), data types, etc. The names of such objects of the same type in the same schema are enforced to be unique.

There also exist local objects that do not reside in schemas; some examples are *extensions*, *data type casts*, and *foreign data wrappers*. The names of such objects of the same type are enforced to be unique within the database.

Other object types, such as *roles*, *tablespaces*, replication origins, subscriptions for logical replication, and databases themselves are not local SQL objects since they exist entirely outside of any specific database; they
are called global objects. The names of such objects are enforced to be unique within the whole database cluster.

For more information, see Section 21.1.

SQL standard
A series of documents that define the SQL language.

Standby (server)
See Replica (server).

Stats collector (process)
This process collects statistical information about the instance's activities.

For more information, see Section 26.2.

System catalog
A collection of tables which describe the structure of all SQL objects of the instance. The system catalog resides in the schema pg_catalog. These tables contain data in internal representation and are not typically considered useful for user examination; a number of user-friendlier views, also in schema pg_catalog, offer more convenient access to some of that information, while additional tables and views exist in schema information_schema (see Chapter 35) that expose some of the same and additional information as mandated by the SQL standard.

For more information, see Section 5.9.

Table
A collection of tuples having a common data structure (the same number of attributes, in the same order, having the same name and type per position). A table is the most common form of relation in PostgreSQL.

For more information, see CREATE TABLE.

Tablespace
A named location on the server file system. All SQL objects which require storage beyond their definition in the system catalog must belong to a single tablespace. Initially, a database cluster contains a single usable tablespace which is used as the default for all SQL objects, called pg_default.

For more information, see Section 21.6.

Temporary table
Tables that exist either for the lifetime of a session or a transaction, as specified at the time of creation. The data in them is not visible to other sessions, and is not logged. Temporary tables are often used to store intermediate data for a multi-step operation.

For more information, see CREATE TABLE.

TOAST
A mechanism by which large attributes of table rows are split and stored in a secondary table, called the TOAST table. Each relation with large attributes has its own TOAST table.

For more information, see Section 66.2.

Transaction
A combination of commands that must act as a single atomic command: they all succeed or all fail as a single unit, and their effects are not visible to other sessions until the transaction is complete, and possibly even later, depending on the isolation level.

For more information, see Section 13.2.

Transaction ID
The numerical, unique, sequentially-assigned identifier that each transaction receives when it first causes a database modification. Frequently abbreviated as xid. When stored on disk, xids are only 32-bits wide, so only approximately four billion write transaction IDs can be generated; to permit the system to run for longer than that, epochs are
Transactions per second (TPS)  
Average number of transactions that are executed per second, totaled across all sessions active for a measured run. This is used as a measure of the performance characteristics of an instance.

Trigger  
A function which can be defined to execute whenever a certain operation (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE) is applied to a relation. A trigger executes within the same transaction as the statement which invoked it, and if the function fails, then the invoking statement also fails.

For more information, see CREATE TRIGGER.

Tuple  
A collection of attributes in a fixed order. That order may be defined by the table (or other relation) where the tuple is contained, in which case the tuple is often called a row. It may also be defined by the structure of a result set, in which case it is sometimes called a record.

Unique constraint  
A type of constraint defined on a relation which restricts the values allowed in one or a combination of columns so that each value or combination of values can only appear once in the relation — that is, no other row in the relation contains values that are equal to those.

Because null values are not considered equal to each other, multiple rows with null values are allowed to exist without violating the unique constraint.

Unlogged  
The property of certain relations that the changes to them are not reflected in the WAL. This disables replication and crash recovery for these relations.

The primary use of unlogged tables is for storing transient work data that must be shared across processes.

Temporary tables are always unlogged.

Update  
An SQL command used to modify rows that may already exist in a specified table. It cannot create or remove rows.

For more information, see UPDATE.

User  
A role that has the LOGIN privilege.

User mapping  
The translation of login credentials in the local database to credentials in a remote data system defined by a foreign data wrapper.

For more information, see CREATE USER MAPPING.

Vacuum  
The process of removing outdated tuple versions from tables or materialized views, and other closely related processing required by PostgreSQL’s implementation of MVCC. This can be initiated through the use of the VACUUM command, but can also be handled automatically via autovacuum processes.

For more information, see Section 23.1.

View  
A relation that is defined by a SELECT statement, but has no storage of its own. Any time a query references a view, the definition of the view is
substituted into the query as if the user had typed it as a subquery instead of the name of the view.

For more information, see **CREATE VIEW**.

**Visibility map (fork)**

A storage structure that keeps metadata about each data page of a table’s main fork. The visibility map entry for each page stores two bits: the first one (**all-visible**) indicates that all tuples in the page are visible to all transactions. The second one (**all-frozen**) indicates that all tuples in the page are marked frozen.

**WAL**

See **Write-ahead log**.

**WAL archiver (process)**

A process that saves copies of **WAL files** for the purpose of creating backups or keeping replicas current.

For more information, see **Section 24.3**.

**WAL file**

Also known as **WAL segment** or **WAL segment file**. Each of the sequentially-numbered files that provide storage space for **WAL**. The files are all of the same predefined size and are written in sequential order, interspersing changes as they occur in multiple simultaneous sessions. If the system crashes, the files are read in order, and each of the changes is replayed to restore the system to the state it was in before the crash.

Each WAL file can be released after a **checkpoint** writes all the changes in it to the corresponding data files. Releasing the file can be done either by deleting it, or by changing its name so that it will be used in the future, which is called **recycling**.

For more information, see **Section 28.6**.

**WAL record**

A low-level description of an individual data change. It contains sufficient information for the data change to be re-executed (**replayed**) in case a system failure causes the change to be lost. WAL records use a non-printable binary format.

For more information, see **Section 28.6**.

**WAL segment**

See **WAL file**.

**WAL writer (process)**

A process that writes **WAL records** from **shared memory** to **WAL files**.

For more information, see **Section 18.5**.

**Window function**

A type of **function** used in a **query** that applies to a **partition** of the query's **result set**; the function's result is based on values found in **rows** of the same partition or frame.

All **aggregate functions** can be used as window functions, but window functions can also be used to, for example, give ranks to each of the rows in the partition. Also known as **analytic functions**.

For more information, see **Section 3.5**.

**Write-ahead log**

The journal that keeps track of the changes in the **database cluster** as user- and system-invoked operations take place. It comprises many individual **WAL records** written sequentially to **WAL files**.
Appendix N. Color Support

Most programs in the PostgreSQL package can produce colorized console output. This appendix describes how that is configured.

N.1. When Color is Used

To use colorized output, set the environment variable `PG_COLOR` as follows:

1. If the value is `always`, then color is used.
2. If the value is `auto` and the standard error stream is associated with a terminal device, then color is used.
3. Otherwise, color is not used.

N.2. Configuring the Colors

The actual colors to be used are configured using the environment variable `PG_COLORS` (note plural). The value is a colon-separated list of `key=value` pairs. The keys specify what the color is to be used for. The values are SGR (Select Graphic Rendition) specifications, which are interpreted by the terminal.

The following keys are currently in use:

- `error`
  used to highlight the text “error” in error messages

- `warning`
  used to highlight the text “warning” in warning messages

- `locus`
  used to highlight location information (e.g., program name and file name) in messages

The default value is `error=01;31:warning=01;35:locus=01` (01;31 = bold red, 01;35 = bold magenta, 01 = bold default color).

Tip

This color specification format is also used by other software packages such as GCC, GNU coreutils, and GNU grep.
Appendix O. Obsolete or Renamed Features

Functionality is sometimes removed from PostgreSQL, feature, setting and file names sometimes change, or documentation moves to different places. This section directs users coming from old versions of the documentation or from external links to the appropriate new location for the information they need.

O.1. recovery.conf file merged into postgresql.conf

Postgres Pro 11 and below used a configuration file named recovery.conf to manage replicas and standbys. Support for this file was removed in Postgres Pro 12. See the release notes for PostgreSQL 12 for details on this change.

On Postgres Pro 12 and above, archive recovery, streaming replication, and PITR are configured using normal server configuration parameters. These are set in postgresql.conf or via ALTER SYSTEM like any other parameter.

The server will not start if a recovery.conf exists.

The trigger_file setting has been renamed to promote_trigger_file.

The standby_mode setting has been removed. A standby.signal file in the data directory is used instead. See Standby Server Operation for details.

O.2. Default Roles Renamed to Predefined Roles

PostgreSQL 13 and below used the term “Default Roles”. However, as these roles are not able to actually be changed and are installed as part of the system at initialization time, the more appropriate term to use is “Predefined Roles”. See Section 20.5 for current documentation regarding Predefined Roles, and the release notes for PostgreSQL 14 for details on this change.

O.3. pg_xlogdump renamed to pg_waldump

Postgres Pro 9.6 and below provided a command named pg_xlogdump to read write-ahead-log (WAL) files. This command was renamed to pg_waldump, see pg_waldump for documentation of pg_waldump and see the release notes for PostgreSQL 10 for details on this change.

O.4. pg_resetxlog renamed to pg_resetwal

Postgres Pro 9.6 and below provided a command named pg_resetxlog to reset the write-ahead-log (WAL) files. This command was renamed to pg_resetwal, see pg_resetwal for documentation of pg_resetwal and see the release notes for PostgreSQL 10 for details on this change.

O.5. pg_receivexlog renamed to pg_receivewal

Postgres Pro 9.6 and below provided a command named pg_receivexlog to fetch write-ahead-log (WAL) files. This command was renamed to pg_receivewal, see pg_receivewal for documentation of pg_receivewal and see the release notes for PostgreSQL 10 for details on this change.
Bibliography

Selected references and readings for SQL and PostgreSQL.

Some white papers and technical reports from the original POSTGRES development team are available at the University of California, Berkeley, Computer Science Department web site.

SQL Reference Books


PostgreSQL-specific Documentation


[fong] The design and implementation of the POSTGRES query optimizer. Zelaine Fong. University of California, Berkeley, Computer Science Department.

Proceedings and Articles


Bibliography


Index

Symbols

$, 29
$libdir, 971
$libdir/plugins, 548, 1616
*, 104
.pgpass, 778
.pg_service.conf, 779
::, 35
_PG_fini, 971
_PG_init, 971
_PG_output_plugin_init, 1244

A
abbrev, 251
ABORT, 1257
abs, 187
ACL, 56
aclcontains, 319
dacldefault, 319
daclexplode, 320
daclitem, 59
daclitemeq, 319
dacos, 190
dacosd, 190
dacosh, 192
administration tools
    externally maintained, 2617
adminpack, 2239
advisory lock, 421
age, 231
aggregate function, 10
    built-in, 300
    invocation, 31
    moving aggregate, 991
    ordered set, 994
    partial aggregation, 995
    polymorphic, 993
    support functions for, 996
    user-defined, 990
    variadic, 993
AIX
    IPC configuration, 470
akkeys, 2300
alias
    for table name in query, 10
    in the FROM clause, 94
    in the select list, 104
ALL, 307, 309
    GROUP BY ALL, 101
    SELECT ALL, 105
allow_system_table_mods configuration parameter, 556
ALTER AGGREGATE, 1258
ALTER COLLATION, 1260
ALTER CONVERSION, 1262
ALTER DATABASE, 1263
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES, 1265
ALTER DOMAIN, 1268
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER, 1271
ALTER EXTENSION, 1272
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, 1275
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE, 1277
ALTER FUNCTION, 1282
ALTER GROUP, 1285
ALTER INDEX, 1287
ALTER LANGUAGE, 1290
ALTER LARGE OBJECT, 1291
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, 1292
ALTER OPERATOR, 1294
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, 1296
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, 1297
ALTER POLICY, 1301
ALTER PROCEDURE, 1302
ALTER PROFILE, 1305
ALTER PUBLICATION, 1307
ALTER ROLE, 581, 1309
ALTER ROUTINE, 1313
ALTER RULE, 1314
ALTER SCHEMA, 1315
ALTER SEQUENCE, 1316
ALTER SERVER, 1319
ALTER STATISTICS, 1320
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION, 1321
ALTER SYSTEM, 1323
ALTER TABLE, 1325
ALTER TABLESPACE, 1340
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, 1341
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, 1343
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER, 1345
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, 1346
ALTER TRIGGER, 1347
ALTER TYPE, 1348
ALTER USER, 1352
ALTER USER MAPPING, 1353
ALTER VIEW, 1354
amcheck, 2240
ANALYZE, 610, 1356
AND (operator), 181
anonymous code blocks, 1541
any, 179
ANY, 302, 307, 309
anyarray, 179
anyarray_elemtype, 2290
anyarray_to_text, 2289
anycompatible, 179
anycompatiblearray, 179
anycompatiblenonarray, 179
anycompatiblerange, 179
anyenumerable, 179
anymultirange, 179
anynonarray, 179
anyrange, 179
applicable role, 902
application_name configuration parameter, 531
arbitrary precision numbers, 119
archive_cleanup_command configuration parameter, 511
archive_command configuration parameter, 510
archive_mode configuration parameter, 510
archive_timeout configuration parameter, 510
area, 247
armor, 2341
array, 157
accessing, 159
constant, 158
constructor, 37
declaration, 157
I/O, 164
modifying, 161
of user-defined type, 999
searching, 163
ARRAY, 37
determination of result type, 359
array_agg, 300, 2306
array_append, 292
array_cat, 292
array_dims, 292
array_fill, 292
array_length, 292
array_lower, 292
array_ndims, 293
array_nulls configuration parameter, 551
array_position, 293
array_positions, 293
array_prepend, 293
array_remove, 293
array_replace, 293
array_to_json, 274
array_to_string, 293
array_to_tsvector, 254
array_upper, 293
ascii, 194
asin, 190
asind, 190
asinh, 192
ASSERT
in PL/pgSQL, 1110
assertions
in PL/pgSQL, 1110
asynchronous commit, 698
AT TIME ZONE, 240
atan, 190
atan2, 191
atan2d, 191
atanh, 190
authentication_timeout configuration parameter, 493
auth_delay, 2245
auth_delay.milliseconds configuration parameter, 2245
auto-increment (see serial)
autocommit
bulk-loading data, 441
psql, 1822
autosummarize storage parameter, 1427
autovacuum
configuration parameters, 538
general information, 614
autovacuum configuration parameter, 539
autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor
configuration parameter, 539
storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_analyze_threshold
configuration parameter, 539
storage parameter, 1490
autovacuum_enabled storage parameter, 1490
autovacuum_freeze_max_age
configuration parameter, 540
storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_freeze_min_age storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_freeze_table_age storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_max_workers configuration parameter, 539
autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age
configuration parameter, 540
storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_naptime configuration parameter, 539
autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay
configuration parameter, 540
storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit
configuration parameter, 539
storage parameter, 1491
autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor
configuration parameter, 539
storage parameter, 1490
autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold
configuration parameter, 539
storage parameter, 1490
autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor
configuration parameter, 539
storage parameter, 1490
autovacuum_vacuum_threshold
configuration parameter, 539
storage parameter, 1490
autovacuum_work_mem configuration parameter, 499
auto_explain, 2245
auto_explain.log_analyze configuration parameter, 2246
auto_explain.log_buffers configuration parameter, 2246
auto_explain.log_format configuration parameter, 2246
auto_explain.log_level configuration parameter, 2247
auto_explain.log_min_duration configuration parameter, 2245
auto_explain.log_nested_statements configuration parameter, 2247
auto_explain.log_settings configuration parameter, 2246
auto_explain.log_triggers configuration parameter, 2246
auto_explain.log_wal configuration parameter, 2246
auto_explain.sample_rate configuration parameter, 2247
avals, 2300
average, 300
avg, 300

B
B-Tree (see index)
backend_flush_after configuration parameter, 502
Background workers, 1237
backslash escapes, 23
backslash_quote configuration parameter, 551
backtrace_functions configuration parameter, 556
backup, 333, 618
Backup Manifest, 2142
base type, 950
base64 format, 204
BASE_BACKUP, 1991
batch mode
in libpq, 755
BEGIN, 1359
BETWEEN, 184
BETWEEN SYMMETRIC, 184
BGWORKER_BACKEND
DATABASE_CONNECTION, 1238
BGWORKER_SHMEM_ACCESS, 1237
bgwriter_delay configuration parameter, 502
bgwriter_flush_after configuration parameter, 502
bgwriter_lru_maxpages configuration parameter, 502
bgwriter_lru_multiplier configuration parameter, 502
bigint, 26, 119
bigserial, 122
binary data, 125
functions, 200

binary string
concatenation, 201
converting to character string, 203
length, 202
bit string
constant, 25
data type, 143
length, 205
bit strings
functions, 204
bitmap scan, 366, 520
bit_and, 300
bit_count, 201, 205
bit_length, 193, 201, 205
bit_or, 300
bit_xor, 300
BLOB (see large object)
block_size configuration parameter, 554
bloom, 2248
Bonjour configuration parameter, 492
Bonjour_name configuration parameter, 492
Boolean
data type, 136
operators (see operators, logical)
bool_and, 300
bool_or, 301
booting
starting the server during, 466
bound_box, 248
box, 248
box (data type), 139
BRIN (see index)
brin_desummarize_range, 343
brin_metapage_info, 2332
brin_page_items, 2332
brin_page_type, 2332
brin_revmap_data, 2332
brin_summarize_new_values, 342
brin_summarize_range, 342
broadcast, 251
BSD Authentication, 578
btree_gin, 2251
btree_gist, 2251
btrim, 194, 201
bt_index_check, 2241
bt_index_parent_check, 2241
bt_metap, 2329
bt_page_items, 2330, 2331
bt_page_stats, 2330
buffering storage parameter, 1426
bytea, 125
bytea_output configuration parameter, 545

C
C, 718, 807
C++, 989
CALL, 1361
canceling
Index

SQL command, 759
 cardinality, 293
 CASCADE
   with DROP, 85
     foreign key action, 52
 Cascading Replication, 633
 CASE, 289
     determination of result type, 359
 case sensitivity
 of SQL commands, 21
 cast
   I/O conversion, 1390
 cb rt, 187
 ceil, 187
 ceiling, 187
 center, 247
 Certificate, 577
 chained transactions, 1370, 1643
   in PL/pgSQL, 1108
 char, 123
 character, 123
 character set, 547, 555, 599
 character string
   concatenation, 192
     constant, 23
     converting to binary string, 203
   data types, 123
     length, 193
 character varying, 123
 character_length, 193
 char_length, 193
 check constraint, 46
 CHECK OPTION, 1529
 checkpoint, 700
 CHECKPOINT, 1362
 checkpoint_completion_target configuration parameter, 509
 checkpoint_flush_after configuration parameter, 509
 checkpoint_timeout configuration parameter, 509
 check_function_bodies configuration parameter, 542
 chr, 194
 cid, 176
 cidr, 141
 circle, 140, 248
 citext, 2252
 client authentication, 561
   timeout during, 493
 client_connection_check_interval configuration parameter, 493
 client_encoding configuration parameter, 547
 client_min_messages configuration parameter, 540
 clock_timestamp, 231
 CLOSE, 1363
 cluster
     of databases (see database cluster)
 CLUSTER, 1364
 clusterdb, 1701
 clustering, 633
 cluster_name configuration parameter, 537
 cmax, 53
 cmin, 53
 COALESCE, 290
 COLLATE, 36
 collation, 593
   in PL/pgSQL, 1080
   in SQL functions, 968
 COLLATION FOR, 324
 color, 2653
 column, 6, 43
   adding, 54
   removing, 55
   renaming, 56
   system column, 53
 column data type
   changing, 56
 column reference, 29
 col_description, 327
 comment
   about database objects, 327
   in SQL, 27
 COMMIT, 1366
 COMMIT, 1370
 COMMIT PREPARED, 1371
 commit_delay configuration parameter, 509
 commit_siblings configuration parameter, 509
 common table expression (see WITH)
 comparison
   composite type, 309
   operators, 181
   row constructor, 309
   subquery result row, 307
 compiling
   libpq applications, 784
 composite type, 165, 950
   comparison, 309
   constant, 166
   constructor, 38
 computed field, 169
 compute_query_id configuration parameter, 538
 concat, 194
 concat_ws, 195
 concurrency, 411
 conditional expression, 289
 configuration
   of recovery
     of a standby server, 511
     of the server, 486
     of the server functions, 331
 config_file configuration parameter, 489
 conjunction, 181
 connectby, 2486, 2492
Index

connection service file, 779
conninfo, 724
constant, 22
constraint, 46
  adding, 55
  check, 46
  exclusion, 53
  foreign key, 50
  name, 46
  NOT NULL, 48
  primary key, 50
  removing, 55
  unique, 49
constraint exclusion, 83, 525
constraint exclusion configuration parameter, 525
container type, 950
CONTINUE
  in PL/pgSQL, 1095
continuous archiving, 618
  in standby, 644
control file, 1018
convert, 203
convert_from, 203
convert_to, 203
COPY, 7, 1372
  with libpq, 762
corr, 302
correlation, 302
  in the query planner, 437
cos, 191
cosd, 191
cosh, 192
cot, 191
cotd, 191
count, 301
covariance
  population, 302
  sample, 302
covar_pop, 302
covar_samp, 302
covering index, 370
cpu_index_tuple_cost configuration parameter, 523
cpu_operator_cost configuration parameter, 523
cpu_tuple_cost configuration parameter, 522
CREATE ACCESS METHOD, 1382
CREATE AGGREGATE, 1383
CREATE CAST, 1390
CREATE COLLATION, 1394
CREATE CONVERSION, 1396
CREATE DATABASE, 586, 1398
CREATE TABLESPACE, 589, 1501
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, 1503
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, 1504
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER, 1506
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, 1508
CREATE TRANSFORM, 1509
CREATE TRIGGER, 1511
CREATE TYPE, 1518
CREATE USER, 1527
CREATE USER MAPPING, 1528
CREATE VIEW, 1529
createdb, 2, 587, 1704
createuser, 580, 1707
create_baseline, 2384
CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT, 1988
create_server, 2380
cross join, 91
crosstab, 2487, 2489, 2490
crypt, 2338
cstring, 179
CSV (Comma-Separated Values) format
  in psql, 1816
cgid, 54
CTID, 1053
CUBE, 101
cube (extension), 2254
cume_dist, 306
  hypothetical, 305
current_catalog, 315
current_database, 315
current_logfiles
  and the log_destination configuration parameter, 526
  and the pg_current_logfile function, 316
current_query, 315
current_role, 315
current_schema, 315
current_schemas, 315
current_setting, 331
Index

current_time, 231
current_timestamp, 231
current_user, 315
currval, 288
cursor
  CLOSE, 1363
  DECLARE, 1534
  FETCH, 1596
  in PL/pgSQL, 1102
  MOVE, 1620
  showing the query plan, 1591
cursor_tuple_fraction configuration parameter, 525
custom scan provider
  handler for, 2043

data area (see database cluster)
data partitioning, 633
data type, 117
  base, 950
  category, 352
  composite, 950
  constant, 26
  container, 950
  conversion, 351
  domain, 176
  enumerated (enum), 137
  internal organization, 972
  numeric, 118
  polymorphic, 951
  type cast, 35
  user-defined, 997
database, 586
  creating, 2
  privilege to create, 581
database activity
  monitoring, 652
database cluster, 6, 463
data_checksums configuration parameter, 554
data_directory configuration parameter, 489
data_directory_mode configuration parameter, 554
data_sync_retry configuration parameter, 553
date, 127, 129
  constants, 131
  current, 241
  output format, 132
  (see also formatting)
DateStyle configuration parameter, 546
date_bin, 240
date_part, 232, 235
date_trunc, 232, 239
dblink, 2258, 2264
dblink_build_sql_delete, 2285
dblink_build_sql_insert, 2283
dblink_build_sql_update, 2286
dblink_cancel_query, 2281
dblink_close, 2273
dblink_connect, 2260
dblink_connect_u, 2262
dblink_disconnect, 2263
dblink_error_message, 2275
dblink_exec, 2267
dblink_fetch, 2271
dblink_get_connections, 2274
dblink_get_notify, 2278
dblink_get_pkey, 2282
dblink_get_result, 2279
dblink_is_busy, 2277
dblink_open, 2269
dblink_send_query, 2276
db_user_namespace configuration parameter, 494
deadlock, 420
  timeout during, 550
deadlock_timeout configuration parameter, 550
DEALLOCATE, 1533
dearmor, 2341
debug_assertions configuration parameter, 554
debug_deadlocks configuration parameter, 558
debug_discard_caches configuration parameter, 556
debug_pretty_print configuration parameter, 531
debug_print_parse configuration parameter, 531
debug_print_plan configuration parameter, 531
debug_print_rewritten configuration parameter, 531
decimal (see numeric)
DECLARE, 1534
decode, 203
decode_bytea
  in PL/Perl, 1151
decrypt, 2344
decrypt_iv, 2344
deduplicate_items storage parameter, 1426
default value, 44
  changing, 55
default-roles, 2654
default_statistics_target configuration parameter, 524
default_tablespace configuration parameter, 541
default_table_access_method configuration parameter, 541
default_text_search_config configuration parameter, 547
default_toast_compression configuration parameter, 542
default_transaction_deferrable configuration parameter, 542
default_transaction_isolation configuration parameter, 542
default_transaction_read_only configuration parameter, 542
deferrable transaction, 543
  setting, 1681
  setting default, 542
defined, 2302
degrees, 187

2662
delay, 242
DELETE, 12, 88, 1537
RETURNING, 89
delete, 2302
deleting, 88
dense_rank, 306
hypothetical, 305
diagonal, 247
diameter, 247
dict_int, 2287
dict_xsyn, 2287
difference, 2296
digest, 2337
dirty read, 411
disable_server, 2381
DISCARD, 1540
disjunction, 181
disk drive, 703
disk space, 609
disk usage, 694
DISTINCT, 8
GROUP BY DISTINCT, 101
SELECT DISTINCT, 105
div, 187
dmetaphone, 2298
dmetaphone_alt, 2298
DO, 1541
document
text search, 377
dollar quoting, 24
domain, 176
double precision, 121
DROP ACCESS METHOD, 1542
DROP AGGREGATE, 1543
DROP CAST, 1545
DROP COLLATION, 1546
DROP CONVERSION, 1547
DROP DATABASE, 588, 1548
DROP DOMAIN, 1549
DROP EVENT TRIGGER, 1550
DROP EXTENSION, 1551
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, 1552
DROP FOREIGN TABLE, 1553
DROP FUNCTION, 1554
DROP GROUP, 1556
DROP INDEX, 1557
DROP LANGUAGE, 1558
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW, 1559
DROP OPERATOR, 1560
DROP OPERATOR CLASS, 1561
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY, 1562
DROP OWNED, 1563
DROP POLICY, 1564
DROP PROCEDURE, 1565
DROP PROFILE, 1567
DROP PUBLICATION, 1568
DROP ROLE, 580, 1569
DROP ROUTINE, 1570
DROP RULE, 1571
DROP SCHEMA, 1572
DROP SEQUENCE, 1573
DROP SERVER, 1574
DROP STATISTICS, 1575
DROP SUBSCRIPTION, 1576
DROP TABLE, 7, 1577
DROP TABLESPACE, 1578
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, 1579
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, 1580
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER, 1581
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, 1582
DROP TRANSFORM, 1583
DROP TRIGGER, 1584
DROP TYPE, 1585
DROP USER, 1586
DROP USER MAPPING, 1587
DROP VIEW, 1588
dropdb, 589, 1711
dropuser, 580, 1714
drop_baseline, 2384
DROP_REPLICATION_SLOT, 1991
drop_server, 2380
DTD, 147
dump_stat, 2289
dump_statistic, 2289
duplicate, 8
duplicates, 105
dynamic loading, 549, 971
dynamic_library_path, 971
dynamic_library_path configuration parameter, 549
dynamic_shared_memory_type configuration parameter, 500
each, 2301
earth, 2291
earthdistance, 2291
earth_box, 2292
earth_distance, 2292
ECPG, 807
ecpq, 1716
effective_cache_size configuration parameter, 523
effective_io_concurrency configuration parameter, 503
eelog
in PL/Perl, 1151
in PL/Python, 1170
in PL/Tcl, 1137
embedded SQL
in C, 807
enabled role, 919
enable_async_append configuration parameter, 520
enable_bitmapscan configuration parameter, 520
enable_compound_index_stats configuration parameter, 521
enable_gathermerge configuration parameter, 522
enable_hashagg configuration parameter, 520
enable_hashjoin configuration parameter, 520
enable_incremental_sort configuration parameter, 520
enable_indexonlyscan configuration parameter, 520
enable_indexscan configuration parameter, 520
enable_material configuration parameter, 520
enable_memoize configuration parameter, 520
enable_mergejoin configuration parameter, 521
enable_nestloop configuration parameter, 521
enable_parallel_append configuration parameter, 521
enable_parallel_hash configuration parameter, 521
enable_partitionwise_aggregate configuration parameter, 521
enable_partitionwise_join configuration parameter, 521
enable_partitionwise_pruning configuration parameter, 521
enable_self_join_removal configuration parameter, 521
enable_seqscan configuration parameter, 521
enable_server, 2381
enable_sort configuration parameter, 521
enable_tidscan configuration parameter, 522
encode, 203
encode_array_constructor
  in PL/Perl, 1151
encode_array_literal
  in PL/Perl, 1151
encode_bytea
  in PL/Perl, 1151
encode Typed_literal
  in PL/Perl, 1151
encrypt, 2344
encryption, 479
  for specific columns, 2337
encrypt_iv, 2344
END, 1589
enumerated types, 137
enum_first, 243
enum_last, 243
enum_range, 243
environment variable, 777
ephemeral named relation
  registering with SPI, 1209, 1211
  unregistering from SPI, 1210
error codes
  libpq, 743
  list of, 2145
test message, 736
escape format, 204
escape string syntax, 23
escape_string_warning configuration parameter, 551
escaping strings
  in libpq, 749
event log
  event log, 484
  event trigger, 1039
    in C, 1043
    in PL/Tcl, 1139
event_source configuration parameter, 529
event_trigger, 179
every, 301
EXCEPT, 105
exceptions
  in PL/pgSQL, 1099
  in PL/Tcl, 1140
exclusion constraint, 53
EXECUTE, 1590
exist, 2302
EXISTS, 307
EXIT
  in PL/pgSQL, 1094
exit_on_error configuration parameter, 553
exp, 187
EXPLAIN, 425, 1591
export_data, 2385
expression
  order of evaluation, 39
  syntax, 28
extending SQL, 950
extension, 1017
  externally maintained, 2618
external_pid_file configuration parameter, 490
extract, 232, 235
extra_float_digits configuration parameter, 546

**F**
factorial, 187
failover, 633
false, 136
family, 252
fast path, 760
fastupdate storage parameter, 1426
fdw_handler, 179
FETCH, 1596
field
  computed, 169
  field selection, 30
file system mount points, 464
file_fdw, 2293
fillfactor storage parameter, 1425, 1489
FILTER, 31
first_value, 306
field
  computed, 169
  field selection, 30
file system mount points, 464
file_fdw, 2293
fillfactor storage parameter, 1425, 1489
FILTER, 31
first_value, 306
float4 (see real)
float8 (see double precision)
floating point, 121
floating-point
  display, 546
floor, 187
force_parallel_mode configuration parameter, 556
foreign data, 85
foreign data wrapper
  handler for, 2021
foreign key, 13, 50
self-referential, 51
foreign table, 85
format, 195, 199
use in PL/pgSQL, 1086
formatting, 222
format_type, 321
Free Space Map, 2129
FreeBSD
   IPC configuration, 470
   shared library, 978
   start script, 466
from collapse limit configuration parameter, 525
FSM (see Free Space Map)
fsm_page_contents, 2328
fsync configuration parameter, 505
full text search, 376
data types, 144
   functions and operators, 144
full page writes configuration parameter, 507
function, 181
   default values for arguments, 961
   in the FROM clause, 95
   internal, 970
   invocation, 31
   mixed notation, 42
   named argument, 955
   named notation, 41
   output parameter, 959
   polymorphic, 951
   positional notation, 41
   RETURNS TABLE, 966
   statistics, 350
   type resolution in an invocation, 355
   user-defined, 953
      in C, 971
      in SQL, 954
   variadic, 960
   with SETOF, 963
functional dependency, 100
fuzzystrmatch, 2296

G

gcd, 188
gc_to_sec, 2291
generated column, 45, 1412, 1485
   in triggers, 1030
   generate_series, 312
   generate_subscripts, 313
   genetic query optimization, 524
gen_random_bytes, 2345
gen_random_uuid, 258, 2345
gen_salt, 2339
GEQO (see genetic query optimization)
geqo configuration parameter, 524
geqo_effort configuration parameter, 524
geqo_generations configuration parameter, 524
geqo_pool_size configuration parameter, 524
geqo_seed configuration parameter, 524
geqo_selection_bias configuration parameter, 524
geqo_threshold configuration parameter, 524
get_bit, 202, 205
get_byte, 202
get_current_ts_config, 254
get_diffreport, 2386
get_namespace, 2291
get_raw_page, 2327
get_report, 2386
GIN (see index)
gin_clean_pending_list, 343
gin_fuzzy_search_limit configuration parameter, 550
gin_leafpage_items, 2333
gin_metapage_info, 2332
gin_page_opaque_info, 2333
gin_pending_list_limit
   configuration parameter, 546
   storage parameter, 1426
GiST (see index)
gist_page_items, 2333
gist_page_items_bytea, 2334
gist_page_opaque_info, 2333
global data
   in PL/Python, 1164
   in PL/Tcl, 1135
GRANT, 56, 1600
GREATEST, 291
determination of result type, 359
Gregorian calendar, 2159
GROUP BY, 11, 99
grouping, 99
GROUPING, 305
GROUPING SETS, 101
gssapi, 483
GSSAPI, 571
   with libpq, 729
GUID, 146

H

hash (see index)
hash_bitmap_info, 2335
hash_mem_multiplier configuration parameter, 498
hash_metapage_info, 2335
hash_page_items, 2335
hash_page_stats, 2334
hash_page_type, 2334
has_any_column_privilege, 318
has_column_privilege, 318
has_database_privilege, 318
has_foreign_data_wrapper_privilege, 318
has_function_privilege, 318
has_language_privilege, 318
has_schema_privilege, 318
has_sequence_privilege, 318
has_server_privilege, 318
has_tablespace_privilege, 319
has_table_privilege, 318
Index

has_type_privilege, 319
HAVING, 11, 100
hba_file configuration parameter, 490
heap_page_items, 2328
heap_page_item_attrs, 2329
heap_tuple_infomask_flags, 2329
height, 247
hex format, 204
hierarchical database, 6
high availability, 633
history
  of PostgreSQL, xxiv
host, 2338
host name, 726
hostmask, 252
Hot Standby, 633
hot_standby configuration parameter, 517
hot_standby_feedback configuration parameter, 518
HP-UX
  IPC configuration, 471
  shared library, 979
hstore, 2298, 2300
hstore_to_array, 2301
hstore_to_json, 2301
hstore_to_jsonb, 2301
hstore_to_jsonb_loose, 2301
hstore_to_json_loose, 2301
hstore_to_matrix, 2301
huge_pages configuration parameter, 497
huge_page_size configuration parameter, 497
Hunspell Dictionaries, 2305
hypothetical-set aggregate
  built-in, 304
I
icount, 2308
ICU, 594, 1394
ident, 573
identifier
  length, 21
  syntax of, 21
IDENTIFY_SYSTEM, 1987
ident_file configuration parameter, 490
idle_in_transaction_session_timeout configuration parameter, 544
idle_session_timeout configuration parameter, 544
idx, 2308
IFNULL, 290
ignore_checksum_failure configuration parameter, 559
ignore_invalid_pages configuration parameter, 559
ignore_system_indexes configuration parameter, 557
IMMUTABLE, 969
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA, 1605
import_data, 2385
IN, 307, 309
INCLUDE
  in index definitions, 371
  include
    in configuration file, 488
    include_dir
      in configuration file, 488
    include_if_exists
      in configuration file, 488
index, 362, 2322
  and ORDER BY, 365
B-Tree, 363, 2068
BRIN, 364, 2109
building concurrently, 1427
combining multiple indexes, 366
covering, 370
examining usage, 374
on expressions, 367
for user-defined data type, 1005
GIN, 364, 2102
text search, 407
GiST, 363, 2075
text search, 407
hash, 363
Hash, 2122
index-only scans, 370
locks, 423
multicolumn, 364
partial, 368
rebuilding concurrently, 1634
SP-GiST, 364, 2091
unique, 367
Index Access Method, 2052
index scan, 520
index-only scan, 370
indexexam
  Index Access Method, 2052
insertion, 87
inserting, 87
instr function, 1131
Index

int2 (see smallint)
int4 (see integer)
int8 (see bigint)
intagg, 2306
intarray, 2307
integer, 26, 119
integer_datetimes configuration parameter, 554
interfaces
  externally maintained, 2617
internal, 179
INTERSECT, 105
interval, 127, 134
  output format, 135
(see also formatting)
IntervalStyle configuration parameter, 546
intset, 2308
int_array_aggregate, 2306
int_array_enum, 2306
inverse distribution, 304
in_hot_standby configuration parameter, 554
in_range support functions, 2069
IS DISTINCT FROM, 184, 309
IS DOCUMENT, 263
IS FALSE, 185
IS NOT DISTINCT FROM, 184, 309
IS NOT DOCUMENT, 263
IS NOT FALSE, 185
IS NOT NULL, 184
IS NOT TRUE, 185
IS NOT UNKNOWN, 185
IS NULL, 184, 552
IS TRUE, 185
IS UNKNOWN, 185
isclosed, 247
isempty, 298, 299
isfinite, 232
isn, 2310
ISNULL, 184
isn_weak, 2312
isopen, 247
is_array_ref
  in PL/Perl, 1152
is_valid, 2312

J
JIT, 710
  configuration parameter, 525
jit_above_cost configuration parameter, 523
jit_debugging_support configuration parameter, 559
jit_dump_bitcode configuration parameter, 559
jit_expressions configuration parameter, 559
jit_optimize_above_cost configuration parameter, 523
jit_profiling_support configuration parameter, 559
jit_provider configuration parameter, 549
jit_tuple_deforming configuration parameter, 560
join, 9, 91
  controlling the order, 440
cross, 91
left, 92
natural, 92
outer, 10, 91
right, 92
self, 10
join Collapse_limit configuration parameter, 525
JSON, 148
  functions and operators, 271
JSONB, 148
jsonb
  containment, 151
  existence, 151
  indexes on, 152
jsonb_agg, 301
jsonb_array_elements, 275
jsonb_array_elements_text, 276
jsonb_array_length, 276
jsonb_build_array, 275
jsonb_build_object, 275
jsonb_each, 276
jsonb_each_text, 276
jsonb_extract_path, 276
jsonb_extract_path_text, 276
jsonb_insert, 279
jsonb_object, 275
jsonb_object_agg, 301
jsonb_object_keys, 276
jsonb_path_exists, 279
jsonb_path_exists_tz, 280
jsonb_path_match, 279
jsonb_path_match_tz, 280
jsonb_path_query, 279
jsonb_path_query_array, 280
jsonb_path_query_array_tz, 280
jsonb_path_query_first, 280
jsonb_path_query_first_tz, 280
jsonb_path_query_tz, 280
jsonb_populate_record, 277
jsonb_populate_recordset, 277
jsonb_pretty, 280
jsonb_set, 278
jsonb_set_lax, 278
jsonb_strip_nulls, 279
jsonb_to_record, 278
jsonb_to_recordset, 278
jsonb_to_tsvector, 256
jsonb_typeof, 280
jsonp, 155
json_agd, 301
json_array_elements, 275
json_array_elements_text, 276
json_array_length, 276
json_build_array, 275
json_build_object, 275
json_each, 276
Index

json_each_text, 276
json_extract_path, 276
json_extract_path_text, 276
json_object, 275
json_object_agg, 301
json_object_keys, 276
json_populate_record, 277
json_populate_recordset, 277
json_strip_nulls, 279
json_to_record, 278
json_to_recordset, 278
json_to_tsvector, 256
json_typeof, 280
Julian date, 2160
Just-In-Time compilation (see JIT)
justify_days, 232
justify_hours, 232
justifiy_interval, 232

K
keep_baseline, 2384
key word
  list of, 2162
  syntax of, 21
krb_caseins_users configuration parameter, 493
krb_server_keyfile configuration parameter, 493

L
label (see alias)
lag, 306
language_handler, 179
large object, 796
lastval, 288
last_value, 306
LATERAL
  in the FROM clause, 97
latitude, 2292
lca, 2322
lcm, 188
lc_collate configuration parameter, 554
lc_collate_canonical configuration parameter, 554
lc_ctype configuration parameter, 554
lc_messages configuration parameter, 547
lc_monetary configuration parameter, 547
lc_numeric configuration parameter, 547
lc_time configuration parameter, 547
LDAP, 754
LDAP connection parameter lookup, 779
lead, 306
LEAST, 291
determination of result type, 359
left, 195
left join, 92
length, 195, 202, 205, 247, 254
  of a binary string (see binary strings, length)
  of a character string (see character string, length)
length(tsvector), 388
levenshtein, 2297
levenshtein_less_equal, 2297
libpq, 718
  pipeline mode, 755
  single-row mode, 759
libpq-fe.h, 718, 733
libpq-int.h, 733
library finalization function, 971
library initialization function, 971
LIKE, 206
  and locales, 592
LIKE_REGEX, 221
  in SQL/JSON, 287
LIMIT, 107
line, 139, 249
line segment, 139
linear regression, 302
Linux
  IPC configuration, 471
  shared library, 979
  start script, 466
LISTEN, 1614
listen_addresses configuration parameter, 490
ll_to_earth, 2291
ln, 188
lo, 2318
LOAD, 1616
load balancing, 633
locale, 464, 591
localtime, 233
localtimestamp, 233
local_preload_libraries configuration parameter, 548
lock, 416
  advisory, 421
  monitoring, 685
LOCK, 417, 1617
lock_timeout configuration parameter, 544
log, 188
log shipping, 633
log10, 188
Logging
  current_logfiles file and the pg_current_logfile function, 316
  pg_current_logfile function, 316
logging_collector configuration parameter, 526
Logical Decoding, 1240, 1243
logical_decoding_work_mem configuration parameter, 499
login privilege, 581
log_autovacuum_min_duration configuration parameter, 531
storage parameter, 1491
log_btree_build_stats configuration parameter, 558
log_checkpoints configuration parameter, 531
log_connections configuration parameter, 531
log_destination configuration parameter, 526
log_directory configuration parameter, 527
Index

log_disconnections configuration parameter, 532
log_duration configuration parameter, 532
log_error_verbosity configuration parameter, 532
log_executor_stats configuration parameter, 538
log_filename configuration parameter, 527
log_file_mode configuration parameter, 527
log_hostname configuration parameter, 532
log_line_prefix configuration parameter, 532
log_lock_waits configuration parameter, 534
log_min_duration_sample configuration parameter, 530
log_min_duration_statement configuration parameter, 529
log_min_error_statement configuration parameter, 529
log_min_messages configuration parameter, 529
log_parameter_max_length configuration parameter, 534
log_parameter_max_length_on_error configuration parameter, 535
log_parser_stats configuration parameter, 538
log_planner_stats configuration parameter, 538
log_recovery_conflict_waits configuration parameter, 534
log_replication_commands configuration parameter, 535
log_rotation_age configuration parameter, 528
log_rotation_size configuration parameter, 528
log_statement configuration parameter, 535
log_statement_sample_rate configuration parameter, 530
log_statement_stats configuration parameter, 538
log_temp_files configuration parameter, 535
log_timezone configuration parameter, 535
log_transaction_sample_rate configuration parameter, 530
log_truncate_on_rotation configuration parameter, 528
longitude, 2292
looks_like_number
   in PL/Perl, 1152
loop
   in PL/pgSQL, 1094
lower, 193, 298, 299
   and locales, 592
lower_inf, 298, 299
lower_inc, 298, 299
lo_close, 799
lo_compat_privileges configuration parameter, 551
lo_creat, 797, 800
lo_create, 797
lo_export, 797, 800
lo_from_bytea, 800
lo_get, 800
lo_import, 797, 800
lo_import_with_oid, 797
lo_tell, 798
lo_loseek64, 798
lo_loseek, 798
lo_open, 797
lo_put, 800
lo_read, 798
lo_tell, 799
lo_tell64, 799
lo_truncate, 799
lo_truncate64, 799
lo_unlink, 799, 800
lo_write, 798
lpad, 195
lseg, 139, 249
LSN, 703
ltree, 2319
ltree2text, 2322
ltrim, 195, 202
M
MAC address (see macaddr)
MAC address (EUI-64 format) (see macaddr)
macaddr (data type), 142
macaddr8 (data type), 142
macaddr8_set7bit, 253
macOS
   IPC configuration, 471
      shared library, 979
magic block, 971
maintenance, 608
maintenance_io_concurrency configuration parameter, 503
maintenance_work_mem configuration parameter, 499
makeaclitem, 320
make_date, 233
make_interval, 233
make_time, 233
make_timestamp, 233
make_timestamptz, 233
make_valid, 2312
mamonsu, 2570
masklen, 252
materialized view
   implementation through rules, 1055
materialized views, 1954
max, 301
max_connections configuration parameter, 490
max_files_per_process configuration parameter, 500
max_function_args configuration parameter, 555
max_identifier_length configuration parameter, 555
max_index_keys configuration parameter, 555
max_locks_per_transaction configuration parameter, 550
max_logical_replication_workers configuration parameter, 519
max_parallel_maintenance_workers configuration parameter, 504
max_parallel_workers configuration parameter, 504

2669
max_parallel_workers_per_gather configuration parameter, 503
max_pred_locks_per_page configuration parameter, 550
max_pred_locks_per_relation configuration parameter, 550
max_pred_locks_per_transaction configuration parameter, 550
max_prepared_transactions configuration parameter, 498
max_replication_slots configuration parameter, 514
max_slot_wal_keep_size configuration parameter, 514
max_stack_depth configuration parameter, 499
max_standby_archive_delay configuration parameter, 517
max_standby_streaming_delay configuration parameter, 517
max_sync_workers_per_subscription configuration parameter, 519
max_wal_senders configuration parameter, 514
max_wal_size configuration parameter, 510
max_worker_processes configuration parameter, 503
md5, 195, 202
MD5, 570
median, 32
(see also percentile)
memory context
in SPI, 1220
memory overcommit, 473
metaphone, 2297
min, 301
min_dynamic_shared_memory configuration parameter, 500
min_parallel_index_scan_size configuration parameter, 523
min_parallel_table_scan_size configuration parameter, 523
min_scale, 188
min_wal_size configuration parameter, 510
mod, 188
mode
  statistical, 304
monitoring
  database activity, 652
MOVE, 1620
moving-aggregate mode, 991
multirange (function), 299
multirange type, 170
Multiversion Concurrency Control, 411
MultiXactId, 613
MVCC, 411

N
name
  qualified, 66
  syntax of, 21
NaN (see not a number)
natural join, 92
negation, 181
NetBSD
  IPC configuration, 470
  shared library, 979
  start script, 467
  netmask, 252
  network, 252
  data types, 140
  nextval, 288
NFS, 465
nlevel, 2322
non-durable, 444
nonblocking connection, 720, 751
nonrepeatable read, 411
normalize, 193
normalized, 193
normal_rand, 2487
NOT (operator), 181
not a number
  floating point, 122
  numeric (data type), 120
NOT IN, 307, 309
not-null constraint, 48
notation
  functions, 40
  notice processing
    in libpq, 770
  notice processor, 771
  notice receiver, 771
NOTIFY, 1622
  in libpq, 761
NOTNULL, 184
now, 233
npoints, 248
nth_value, 306
ntile, 306
null value
  with check constraints, 47
  comparing, 184
  default value, 44
  in DISTINCT, 105
  in libpq, 747
  in PL/Perl, 1144
  in PL/Python, 1160
  with unique constraints, 49
NULLIF, 291
nul_byte_replacement_on_import configuration parameter, 551
number
  constant, 25
  numeric, 26
  numeric (data type), 119
  numnode, 254, 389
  num_nonnulls, 185
  num_nulls, 185
NVL, 290

O

object identifier
  data type, 176
object-oriented database, 6
obj_description, 327
octet_length, 193, 193, 201, 205
OFFSET, 107
oid, 176
OID
  in libpq, 749
oid2name, 2506
old_snapshot, 2327
old_snapshot_threshold configuration parameter, 504
ON CONFLICT, 1607
ONLY, 91
OOM, 473
OpenBSD
  IPC configuration, 471
  shared library, 979
  start script, 466
operator, 181
  invocation, 30
  logical, 181
  precedence, 27
  syntax, 26
  type resolution in an invocation, 352
  user-defined, 1000
operator class, 372, 1005
operator family, 372, 1012
optimization information
  for functions, 989
  for operators, 1001
OR (operator), 181
Oracle
  porting from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL, 1124
ORDER BY, 8, 106
  and locales, 592
ordered-set aggregate, 31
  built-in, 304
ordering operator, 1015
ordinality, 314
outer join, 91
output function, 997
OVER clause, 33
overcommit, 473
OVERLAPS, 234
overlay, 193, 201, 205
overloading
  functions, 968
  operators, 1001
owner, 56

P

pageinspect, 2327
pages_per_range storage parameter, 1427
page_checksum, 2328
page_header, 2328
palloc, 978
PAM, 577
parallel query, 445
parallel_leader_participation configuration parameter, 504
parallel_setup_cost configuration parameter, 523
parallel_tuple_cost configuration parameter, 523
parallel_workers storage parameter, 1490
parameter
  syntax, 29
parenthesis, 29
parse_ident, 195
partition pruning, 82
partitioned table, 73
partitioning, 73
password, 581
  authentication, 570
  of the superuser, 464
password file, 778
passwordcheck, 2335
password_encryption configuration parameter, 493
path, 249
  for schemas, 540
  path (data type), 140
pattern matching, 206
patterns
  in psql and pg_dump, 1820
pclose, 248
peer, 573
percentile
  continuous, 304
  discrete, 304
percent_rank, 306
  hypothetical, 305
performance, 425
Perl, 1143
permission (see privilege)
pfree, 978
pg-setup, 1865
pg-wrapper, 1790
PGAPPNAME, 778
pgbench, 1731
pgbouncer, 2587
PGcancel, 760
PGCHANNELBINDING, 777
PGCLIENTENCODING, 778
PGconn, 718
PGCONNECT_TIMEOUT, 778
PGDATABASE, 777
PGDATESTYLE, 778
PGEventProc, 773
PGGSSENCMODE, 778
PGGSSSLIB, 778
Index

PGHOST, 777
PGHOSTADDR, 777
PGKRBSRVNAME, 778
PGLOCALDIR, 778
PGOPTIONS, 778
PGPASSFILE, 777
PGPASSWORD, 777
PGPORT, 777
pgpro_build, 317
pgpro_controldata, 2613
pgpro_edition, 317
pgpro_pwr, 2377
pgpro_pwr.max configuration parameter, 2380
pgpro_pwr.max_sample_age configuration parameter, 2380
pgpro_pwr.track_sample_timings configuration parameter, 2380
pgpro_stats, 2416
pgpro_stats_metrics_function, 2426
pgpro_stats_statements_function, 2425
pgpro_stats_statements_reset, 2425
pgpro_stats_totals_function, 2426
pgpro_stats_totals_reset, 2426
pgpro_version, 317
pgp_armor_headers, 2342
pgp_key_id, 2341
pgp_pub_decrypt, 2341
pgp_pub_decrypt_bytea, 2341
pgp_pub_encrypt, 2341
pgp_pub_encrypt_bytea, 2341
pgp_sym_decrypt, 2340
pgp_sym_decrypt_bytea, 2340
pgp_sym_encrypt, 2340
pgp_sym_encrypt_bytea, 2340
PGREQUIREPEER, 778
PGREQUIRESSL, 778
PGresult, 741
pgrowlocks, 2434, 2434
PGSERVICE, 777
PGSERVICEFILE, 777
PGSSLCERT, 778
PGSSLCOMPRESS, 778
PGSSLCA, 778
PGSSLCRLDIR, 778
PGSSLKEY, 778
PGSSLMAXPROTOCOLVERSION, 778
PGSSLMINPROTOCOLVERSION, 778
PGSSLMODE, 778
PGSSLROOTCERT, 778
PGSSLSN, 778
pgstatgindex, 2443
pgstathashindex, 2444
pgstatindex, 2443
pgstattuple, 2441, 2442
pgstattuple_approx, 2444
PGSYSCONFDIR, 778
PGTARGETSESSIONATTRS, 778
PGTZ, 778
PGUSER, 777
pgxs, 1025
pg_advisory_lock, 345
pg_advisory_lock_shared, 345
pg_advisory_unlock, 345
pg_advisory_unlock_all, 345
pg_advisory_unlock_shared, 345
pg_advisory_xact_lock, 345
pg_advisory_xact_lock_shared, 345
pg_aggregate, 1897
pg_am, 1898
pg_amcheck, 1718
pg_amop, 1898
pg_amproc, 1899
pg_archivecleanup, 1847
pg_attrdef, 1900
pg_attribute, 1900
pg_authid, 1902
pg_auth_members, 1904
pg_available_extensions, 1947
pg_available_extension_versions, 1947
pg_backend_memory_contexts, 1948
pg_backend_pid, 315
pg_backup_start_time, 334
pg_basebackup, 1723
pg_blocking_pids, 316
pg_buffercache, 2336
pg_buffercache_pages, 2336
pg_cancel_backend, 332
pg_cast, 1904
pg_checksums, 1849
pg_class, 1905
pg_client_encoding, 195
pg_collation, 1907
pg_collation_actual_version, 341
pg_collation_is_visible, 320
PG_COLOR, 2653
PG_COLORS, 2653
pg_column_compression, 340
pg_column_size, 340
pg_config, 1749, 1949
  with ecpg, 858
  with libpq, 785
  with user-defined C functions, 978
pg_conf_load_time, 316
pg_constraint, 1908
pg_controldata, 1851
pg_control_checkpoint, 329
pg_control_init, 329
pg_control_recovery, 330
pg_control_system, 329
pg_convert, 1910
pg_conversion_is_visible, 320
pg_copy_logical_replication_slot, 338
pg_copy_physical_replication_slot, 338
2672
Index

pg_create_logical_replication_slot, 338
pg_create_physical_replication_slot, 337
pg_create_restore_point, 333
pg_ctl, 464, 466, 1852
pg_current_logfile, 316
pg_current_snapshot, 328
pg_current_wal_flush_lsn, 333
pg_current_wal_insert_lsn, 333
pg_current_wal_lsn, 333
pg_current_xact_id, 327
pg_current_xact_id_if_assigned, 327
pg_cursors, 1949
pg_database, 588, 1910
pg_database_size, 340
pg_db_role_setting, 1911
pg_ddl_command, 179
pg_default_acl, 1912
pg_depend, 1912
pg_describe_object, 326
pg_description, 1914
pg_drop_replication_slot, 338
pg_dump, 1752
pg_dumpall, 1765
use during upgrade, 477
pg_enum, 1915
pg_event_trigger, 1915
pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands, 347
pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects, 348
pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid, 349
pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_reason, 349
pg_export_snapshot, 337
pg_extension, 1916
pg_extension_config_dump, 1021
pg_extension_config_dump, 1021
pg_file_rename, 2240
pg_file_settings, 1950
pg_file_rename, 2240
pg_file_rename, 2240
pg_file_write, 2240
pg_foreign_data_wrapper, 1916
pg_foreign_server, 1917
pg_foreign_table, 1917
pg_freespace, 2347
pg_freespacemap, 2347
pg_function_is_visible, 320
pg_get_catalog_foreign_keys, 321
pg_get_constraintdef, 321
pg_get_expr, 321
pg_get_functiondef, 321
pg_get_function_arguments, 321
pg_get_function_identity_arguments, 321
pg_get_function_result, 322
pg_get_indexdef, 322
pg_get_keywords, 322
pg_get_object_address, 326
pg_get_ruledef, 322
pg_get_serial_sequence, 322
pg_get_statisticsobjdef, 322
pg_get_triggerdef, 322
pg_get_userbyid, 322
pg_get_viewdef, 322
pg_get_wal_replay_pause_state, 336
pg_group, 1951
pg_has_role, 319
pg_hba.conf, 561
pg_hba_file_rules, 1951
pg_ident.conf, 568
pg_identify_object, 326
pg_identify_object_as_address, 326
pg_import_system_collations, 341
pg_index, 1918
pg_indexam_has_property, 323
pg_indexes, 1952
pg_indexes_size, 340
pg_index_column_has_property, 323
pg_index_has_property, 323
pg_inherits, 1919
pg_init_privs, 1919
pg_integrity_check, 2615
pg_isready, 1772
pg_is_in_backup, 334
pg_is_in_recovery, 335
pg_is_other_temp_schema, 316
pg_is_wal_replay_paused, 336
pg_jit_available, 316
pg_language, 1920
pg_largeobject, 1921
pg_largeobject_metadata, 1921
pg_last_committed_xact, 329
pg_last_wal_receive_lsn, 335
pg_last_wal_replay_lsn, 335
pg_last_xact_replay_timestamp, 336
pg_listening_channels, 316
pg_locks, 1952
pg_logdir_ls, 2240
pg_logical_emit_message, 339
pg_logical_slot_get_binary_changes, 338
pg_logical_slot_get_changes, 338
pg_logical_slot_get_binary_changes, 338
pg_logical_slot_get_changes, 338
pg_log_backend_memory_contexts, 332
pg_lsn, 178
pg_ls_archive_statusdir, 344
pg_ls_dir, 343
pg_ls_logdir, 343
pg_ls_temptables, 344
pg_ls_waldir, 343
pg_matviews, 1954
pg_mcv_list_items, 350
pg_my_temp_schema, 316
pg_namespace, 1922
pg_notification_queue_usage, 316
pg_notify, 1623
pg_opclass, 1922
pg_opclass_is_visible, 320
pg_operator, 1923

2673
Index

pg_operator_is_visible, 320
pg_opfamily, 1923
pg_opfamily_is_visible, 320
pg_options_to_table, 323
pg_partitioned_table, 1924
pg_partition_ancestors, 342
pg_partition_root, 342
pg_partition_tree, 342
pg_policies, 1955
pg_policy, 1925
pg_postmaster_start_time, 316
pg_prepared_statements, 1955
pg_prepared_xacts, 1956
pg_prewarm, 2415
pg_prewarm.autoprewarm configuration parameter, 2416
pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval configuration parameter, 2416
pg_probackup, 2511
pg_profile, 1928
pg_promote, 336
pg_publication, 1928
pg_publication_rel, 1929
pg_publication_tables, 1957
pg_range, 1929
pg_read_binary_file, 344
pg_read_file, 344
pg_receivewal, 1774
pg_receivexlog, 2654 (see pg_receivewal)
pg_reccvlogical, 1778
pg_relation_filenode, 341
pg_relation_filepath, 341
pg_relation_size, 340
pg_reload_conf, 332
pg_relpages, 2444
pg_repack, 2562
pg_replication_origin, 1930
pg_replication_origin_advance, 339
pg_replication_origin_create, 339
pg_replication_origin_drop, 339
pg_replication_origin_oid, 339
pg_replication_origin_progress, 339
pg_replication_origin_session_is_setup, 339
pg_replication_origin_session_progress, 339
pg_replication_origin_session_reset, 339
pg_replication_origin_session_setup, 339
pg_replication_origin_status, 1957
pg_replication_origin_xact_reset, 339
pg_replication_origin_xact_setup, 339
pg_replication_slots, 1957
pg_replication_slot_advance, 339
pg_resetwal, 1857
pg_resetxlog, 2654 (see pg_resetwal)
pg_restore, 1782
pg_rewind, 1861
pg_rewrite, 1930
pg_roles, 1958
pg_role_password, 1931
pg_rotate_logfile, 332
pg_rules, 1960
pg_safe_snapshot_blocking_pids, 316
pg_seclabel, 1931
pg_seclabels, 1960
pg_sequence, 1932
pg_sequences, 1961
pg_service.conf, 779
pg_settings, 1961
pg_shadow, 1963
pg_shdepend, 1932
pg_shdescription, 1933
pg_shmem_allocations, 1964
pg_shseclabel, 1934
pg_size_bytes, 340
pg_size_pretty, 340
pg_sleep, 242
pg_sleep_for, 242
pg_sleep_until, 242
pg_snapshot_any, 346
pg_snapshot_xip, 328
pg_snapshot_xmax, 328
pg_snapshot_xmin, 328
pg_start_backup, 333
pg_statio_all_indexes, 656, 681
pg_statio_all_sequences, 656, 681
pg_statio_all_tables, 656, 680
pg_statio_sys_indexes, 656
pg_statio_sys_sequences, 656
pg_statio_sys_tables, 656
pg_stat_activity, 654, 657
pg_stat_all_indexes, 656, 679
pg_stat_all_sequences, 656, 678
pg_stat_all_tables, 655, 678
pg_stat_archiver, 655, 674
pg_stat_bgwriter, 655, 675
pg_stat_clear_snapshot, 683
pg_stat_database, 655, 676
pg_stat_database_conflicts, 655, 678
pg_stat_file, 344
pg_stat_get_activity, 683
pg_stat_get_all_activity, 684
pg_stat_get_activity_start, 684
pg_stat_get_backend_activity, 684
pg_stat_get_backend_activity_start, 684
pg_stat_get_backend_address, 684
pg_stat_get_backend_activity, 684
pg_stat_get_backend_activity_start, 684
pg_stat_get_backend_id, 684
pg_stat_get_backend_id, 684
pg_stat_get_backend_pid, 685

2674
Index

pg_total_relation_size, 341
pg_transform, 1938
pg_trgm, 2447
pg_trgm.similarity_threshold configuration parameter, 2449
pg_trgm.strict_word_similarity_threshold configuration parameter, 2449
pg_trgm.word_similarity_threshold configuration parameter, 2449
pg_trigger, 1939
pg_trigger_depth, 317
pg_try_advisory_lock, 345
pg_try_advisory_lock_shared, 345
pg_try_advisory_xact_lock, 345
pg_try_advisory_xact_lock_shared, 346
pg_ts_config, 1940
pg_ts_config_is_visible, 320
pg_ts_config_map, 1941
pg_ts_dict, 1941
pg_ts_dict_is_visible, 320
pg_ts_parser, 1941
pg_ts_parser_is_visible, 321
pg_ts_template, 1942
pg_ts_template_is_visible, 321
pg_type, 1942
pg_typeof, 323
pg_type_is_visible, 321
pg_upgrade, 1871
pg_user, 1970
pg_user_mapping, 1946
pg_user_mappings, 1970
pg_verifybackup, 1792
pg_views, 1971
pg_visibility, 2460
pg_visible_in_snapshot, 328
pg_waldump, 1879
pg_walfile_name, 335
pg_walfile_name_offset, 335
pg_wal_lsn_diff, 335
pg_wal_replay_pause, 336
pg_wal_replay_resume, 336
pg_xact_commit_timestamp, 329
pg_xact_commit_timestamp_origin, 329
pg_xact_status, 327
pg_xlogdump, 2654 (see pg_waldump)
phantom read, 411
phraseto_tsquery, 255, 383
pi, 188
PIC, 978
PID
determining PID of server process in libpq, 736
pipelining in libpq, 755
PITR, 618
PITR standby, 633
pkg-config with ecpg, 858

2675
with libpq, 785
PL/Perl, 1143
PL/PerlU, 1153
PL/pgSQL, 1073
PL/Python, 1157
PL/SQL (Oracle)
  porting to PL/pgSQL, 1124
PL/Tcl, 1133
plainto_tsquery, 254, 383
plan_cache_mode configuration parameter, 526
plperl.on_init configuration parameter, 1155
plperl.on_plperl_init configuration parameter, 1156
plperl.on_plperlu_init configuration parameter, 1156
plpgsql.check asserts configuration parameter, 1110
plpgsql.variable_conflict configuration parameter, 1119
pltcl.start_proc configuration parameter, 1142
pltclu.start_proc configuration parameter, 1142
point, 139, 249
point-in-time recovery, 618
policy, 60
polygon, 140, 249
polymorphic function, 951
polymorphic type, 951
popcount (see bit_count)
popen, 248
populate_record, 2302
port, 727
port configuration parameter, 490
position, 193, 201, 205
POSTGRES, xxiv
postgres, 2, 465, 587, 1881
postgres user, 463
Postgres95, xxv
postgresql.auto.conf, 487
postgresql.conf, 486
postgres_fdw, 2462
postmaster, 1888
post_auth_delay configuration parameter, 557
power, 188
PQbackendPID, 736
PQbinaryTuples, 747
  with COPY, 762
PQconnectStartParams, 720
PQconnect, 760
PQclear, 745
PQclientEncoding, 766
PQcmdStatus, 748
PQcmdTuples, 748
PQconndefaults, 722
PQconnectdb, 719
PQconnectdbParams, 718
PQconnectionNeedsPassword, 736
PQconnectionUsedPassword, 736
PQconnectPoll, 720
PQconnectStart, 720
PQcopyResult, 769
PQdb, 733
PQdescribePortal, 741
PQdescribePrepared, 740
PQencryptPassword, 768
PQencryptPasswordConn, 768
PQendcopy, 765
PQenterPipelineMode, 757
PQerrorMessage, 736
PQescapeBytea, 751
PQescapeByteaConn, 750
PQescapeIdentifier, 749
PQescapeLiteral, 749
PQescapeString, 750
PQescapeStringConn, 750
PQexec, 738
PQexecParams, 738
PQexecPrepared, 740
PQexitPipelineMode, 758
PQfformat, 746
  with COPY, 763
PQfinish, 723
PQfireResultCreateEvents, 769
PQflush, 755
PQfmod, 746
PQfn, 760
PQfname, 745
PQnumber, 745
PQfreeCancel, 760
PQfreemem, 768
PQfsizes, 746
PQftable, 746
PQftablecol, 746
PQftype, 746
PQgetCancel, 759
PQgetCopyData, 763
PQgetisnull, 747
PQgetlength, 747
PQgetline, 764
PQgetlineAsync, 764
PQgetLine, 764
PQgetLineAsync, 764
PQgetResult, 753
PQgetssl, 737
PQgetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL, 724
PQgetValue, 747
PQhost, 733
PQhostaddr, 734
PQinitOpenSSL, 783
PQinitSSL, 784
PQinstanceData, 774
PQisBusy, 754
PQisNonblocking, 754
PQiss_threadsafe, 784
PQlibVersion, 770
Index

(see also PQserverVersion)
PQmakeEmptyPQresult, 768
PQnfields, 745  
with COPY, 762
PQnotifies, 761
PQnparams, 747
PQntuples, 745
PQoidStatus, 749
PQoidValue, 749
PQoptions, 734
PQparameterStatus, 735
PQparamtype, 748
PQpass, 733
PQping, 724
PQpingParams, 723
PQpipelineStatus, 757
PQpipelineSync, 758
PQport, 734
PQprepare, 739
PQprint, 748
PQprotocolVersion, 735
PQputCopyData, 763
PQputCopyEnd, 763
PQputline, 765
PQputnbytes, 765
PQregisterEventProc, 774
PQrequestCancel, 760
PQreset, 723
PQresetPoll, 723
PQresetStart, 723
PQresetStatus, 742
PQresultAlloc, 770
PQresultErrorField, 743
PQresultErrorMessage, 742
PQresultInstanceData, 774
PQresultMemorySize, 770
PQresultSetInstanceData, 774
PQresultStatus, 741
PQresultVerboseErrorMessage, 742
PQsendDescribePortal, 753
PQsendDescribePrepared, 753
PQsendFlushRequest, 758
PQsendPrepare, 752
PQsendQuery, 752
PQsendQueryParams, 752
PQsendQueryPrepared, 752
PQserverVersion, 735
PQsetClientEncoding, 766
PQsetdb, 719
PQsetdbLogin, 719
PQsetErrorContextVisibility, 766
PQsetErrorVerbosity, 766
PQsetInstanceData, 774
PQsetnonblocking, 754
PQsetNoticeProcessor, 771
PQsetNoticeReceiver, 771
PQsetResultAttrs, 769
PQsetSingleRowMode, 759
PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL, 724
PQsetTraceFlags, 767
PQsetvalue, 769
PQsocket, 736
PQsslAttribute, 736
PQsslAttributeNames, 737
PQsslInUse, 736
PQsslStruct, 737
PQstatus, 734
PQtrace, 767
PQtransactionStatus, 734
PQtty, 734
PQunescapeBytea, 751
PQuntrace, 767
PQuser, 733
predicate locking, 414
PREPARE, 1624
PREPARE TRANSACTION, 1627
prepared statements
creating, 1624
executing, 1590
removing, 1533
showing the query plan, 1591
preparing a query
in PL/pgSQL, 1120
in PL/Python, 1166
in PL/Tcl, 1136
pre_auth_delay configuration parameter, 557
primary key, 50
primary_conninfo configuration parameter, 516
primary_slot_name configuration parameter, 517
privilege, 56
querying, 317
with rules, 1066
for schemas, 68
with views, 1066
procedural language, 1071
externally maintained, 2617
handler for, 2019
procedure
user-defined, 954
procedures
output parameter, 960
promote_trigger_file configuration parameter, 517
protocol
frontend-backend, 1972
ps
to monitor activity, 652
psql, 4, 1795
ptrack.map_size configuration parameter, 2471
ptrack_get_pagemapset, 2471
ptrack version, 2472
Python, 1157
Q
qualified name, 66
query, 7, 90
query plan, 425

2677
query tree, 1047
querytree, 255, 389

quotation marks
  and identifiers, 22
  escaping, 23
quote_all_identifiers configuration parameter, 551
quote_ident, 195
  in PL/Perl, 1151
  use in PL/pgSQL, 1086
quote_literal, 196
  in PL/Perl, 1151
  use in PL/pgSQL, 1086
quote_nullable, 196
  in PL/Perl, 1151
  use in PL/pgSQL, 1086

R
  radians, 188
  radius, 248
  RADIUS, 576
  RAISE
    in PL/pgSQL, 1108
  random, 190
  random_page_cost configuration parameter, 522
  range table, 1047
    range type, 170
      exclude, 175
      indexes on, 174
    range_agg, 301
    range_intersect_agg, 301
    range_merge, 299, 299
  rank, 306
    hypothetical, 304
  read committed, 412
  read-only transaction, 543
    setting, 1681
    setting default, 542
  real, 121
  REASSIGN OWNED, 1629
  record, 179
  recovery.conf, 2654, 2654
  recovery.signal, 511
  recovery_end_command configuration parameter, 512
  recovery_init_sync_method configuration parameter, 553
  recovery_min_apply_delay configuration parameter, 519
  recovery_target configuration parameter, 512
  recovery_target_action configuration parameter, 513
  recovery_target_inclusive configuration parameter, 513
  recovery_target_lsn configuration parameter, 513
  recovery_target_name configuration parameter, 512
  recovery_target_timeline configuration parameter, 513
  recovery_target_xid configuration parameter, 513
  rectangle, 139
  RECURSIVE
    in common table expressions, 109
    in views, 1529
  referential integrity, 13, 50
  REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW, 1630
  regclass, 176
  regcollation, 176
  regconfig, 176
  regdictionary, 176
  regexp_match, 196, 208
  regexp_matches, 196, 208
  regexp_replace, 196, 208
  regexp_split_to_array, 196, 208
  regexp_split_to_table, 196, 208
  regnamespace, 176
  regop, 176
  regoperator, 176
  regproc, 176
  regprocedure, 176
  regression intercept, 303
  regression slope, 303
  regrole, 176
  regr_avgx, 302
  regr_avgy, 303
  regr_count, 303
  regr_intercept, 303
  regr_r2, 303
  regr_slope, 303
  regr_sxx, 303
  regr_sxy, 303
  regr_syy, 303
  regtype, 176
  regular expression, 207, 208
    (see also pattern matching)
  regular expressions
    and locales, 592
  reindex, 615
  REINDEX, 1632
  reindexdb, 1834
  relation, 6
  relational database, 6
  RELEASE SAVEPOINT, 1637
  remove_temp_files_after_crash configuration parameter, 560
  rename_server, 2381
  repeat, 197
  repeatable read, 413
  replace, 197
  replication, 633
  Replication Origins, 1254
  Replication Progress Tracking, 1254
  replication slot
    logical replication, 1243
    streaming replication, 639
  REINDEX
Index

reporting errors
  in PL/pgSQL, 1108
RESET, 1638
restartpoint, 701
restart_after_crash configuration parameter, 553
restore_command configuration parameter, 511

RESTRIC
  with DROP, 85
  foreign key action, 52
RETURN NEXT
  in PL/pgSQL, 1089
RETURN QUERY
  in PL/pgSQL, 1089
RETURNING, 89
RETURNING INTO
  in PL/pgSQL, 1083
reverse, 197
REVOKE, 56, 1639
right, 197
right join, 92
role, 580, 584
  applicable, 902
  enabled, 919
  membership in, 582
  privilege to create, 581
  privilege to initiate replication, 581
ROLLBACK, 1643
rollback
  psql, 1824
ROLLBACK PREPARED, 1644
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT, 1645
ROLLUP, 101
round, 189
routine, 954
routine maintenance, 608
row, 6, 43
ROW, 38
row estimation
  multivariate, 2137
  planner, 2133
row type, 165
  constructor, 38
row-level security, 60
row-wise comparison, 309
row_number, 306
row_security configuration parameter, 541
row_security_active, 319
row_to_json, 274
rpad, 197
rtrim, 197, 202
rule, 1047
  and materialized views, 1055
  and views, 1048
  for DELETE, 1057
  for INSERT, 1057
  for SELECT, 1049
  compared with triggers, 1069
  for UPDATE, 1057

S
SAVEPOINT, 1647
savepoints
  defining, 1647
  releasing, 1637
  rolling back, 1645
scalar (see expression)
scale, 189
schema, 65, 586
  creating, 66
  current, 67, 315
  public, 67
  removing, 66
SCRAM, 570
search path, 67
  current, 315
  object visibility, 320
search_path configuration parameter, 67, 540
  use in securing functions, 1420
SECURITY LABEL, 1649
sec_to_gc, 2291
seg, 2472
segment_size configuration parameter, 555
SELECT, 7, 90, 1651
  determination of result type, 361
  select list, 104
SELECT INTO, 1671
  in PL/pgSQL, 1083
semaphores, 468
sepgsql, 2474
sepgsql.debug_audit configuration parameter, 2477
sepgsql.permissive configuration parameter, 2477
sequence, 287
  and serial type, 122
sequential scan, 521
seq_page_cost configuration parameter, 522
serial, 122
serial2, 122
serial4, 122
serial8, 122
serializable, 414
Serializable Snapshot Isolation, 411
serialization anomaly, 411, 414
server log, 526
  log file maintenance, 616
Server Name Indication, 731
server spoofing, 478
server_encoding configuration parameter, 555
server_version configuration parameter, 555
server_version_num configuration parameter, 555
session_preload_libraries configuration parameter, 548
session replication_role configuration parameter, 543
session_user, 317
SET, 331, 1673
SET CONSTRAINTS, 1676

2679
set difference, 105
set intersection, 105
set operation, 105
set returning functions
  functions, 312
SET ROLE, 1677
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION, 1679
SET TRANSACTION, 1681
set union, 105
SET XML OPTION, 546
setseed, 190
setval, 288
setweight, 255, 388
  setweight for specific lexeme(s), 255
set_bit, 202, 205
set_byte, 202
set_config, 331
set_limit, 2447
set_masklen, 252
set_server_constr, 2381
set_server_db_exclue, 2381
set_server_description, 2381
set_server_max_sample_age, 2381
set_server_size_sampling, 2383
sha224, 202
sha256, 202
sha384, 202
sha512, 202
shared library, 978
shared memory, 468
shared_buffers configuration parameter, 497
shared_ispell, 2481
shared_ispell.max_size configuration parameter, 2482
shared_ispell dicts, 2482
shared_ispell_mem_available, 2482
shared_ispell_mem_used, 2482
shared_ispell_reset, 2482
shared_ispell_stoplists, 2482
shared_memory_type configuration parameter, 499
shared_preload_libraries, 988
shared_preload_libraries configuration parameter, 549
shobj_description, 327
SHOW, 331, 1684, 1988
show_baselines, 2385
show_limit, 2447
show_samples, 2382
show_servers, 2381
show_trgm, 2447
shutdown, 475
SIGHUP, 487, 566, 568
SIGINT, 475
sign, 189
signal
  backend processes, 331
significant digits, 546
SIGQUIT, 475
SIGTERM, 475
SIMILAR TO, 207
similarity, 2447
sin, 191
sind, 191
single-user mode, 1884
sinh, 191
skeys, 2300
sleep, 242
slice, 2301
sliced bread (see TOAST)
slope, 248
SLRU, 682
smallint, 119
smallserial, 122
Solaris
  shared library, 979
  start script, 467
SOME, 302, 307, 309
sort, 2308
sorting, 106
sort_asc, 2308
sort_desc, 2308
soundex, 2296
SPI-GiST (see index)
SPI, 1172
  examples, 2483
spi_commit
    in PL/Perl, 1150
SPI_commit, 1231
SPI_commit_and_chain, 1231
SPI_connect, 1173
SPI_connect_ext, 1173
SPI_cursor_close, 1206
SPI_cursor_fetch, 1202
SPI_cursor_find, 1201
SPI_cursor_move, 1203
SPI_cursor_open, 1196
SPI_cursor_open_with_args, 1197
SPI_cursor_open_with_paramlist, 1199
SPI_cursor_parse_open, 1200
SPI_exec, 1178
SPI_execp, 1195
SPI_execute, 1175
SPI_execute_extended, 1179
SPI_execute_plan, 1191
SPI_execute_plan_extended, 1192
SPI_execute_plan_with_paramlist, 1194
SPI_execute_with_args, 1181
spi_exec_prepared
    in PL/Perl, 1149
spi_exec_query
    in PL/Perl, 1147
spi_fetchrow
    in PL/Perl, 1148
Index

SPI_finish, 1174
SPI_fname, 1212
SPI_fnumber, 1213
spi_freeplan
  in PL/Perl, 1149
SPI_freeplan, 1230
SPI_freetuple, 1228
SPI_freetuptable, 1229
SPI_getargcount, 1188
SPI_getargtypeid, 1189
SPI_getbinval, 1215
SPI_getnspname, 1219
SPI_getrelname, 1218
SPI_gettype, 1216
SPI_gettypeid, 1217
SPI_getvalue, 1214
SPI_is_cursor_plan, 1190
SPI_keepplan, 1207
SPI_modifytuple, 1226
SPI_palloc, 1221
SPI_pfree, 1223
spi_prepare
  in PL/Perl, 1149
SPI_prepare, 1183
SPI_prepare_cursor, 1185
SPI_prepare_extended, 1186
SPI_prepare_params, 1187
spi_query
  in PL/Perl, 1148
spi_query_prepared
  in PL/Perl, 1149
SPI_register_relation, 1209
SPI_register_trigger_data, 1211
SPI_realloc, 1222
SPI_result_code_string, 1220
SPI_returntuple, 1225
spi_rollback
  in PL/Perl, 1150
SPI_rollback, 1232
SPI_rollback_and_chain, 1232
SPI_saveplan, 1208
SPI_scroll_cursor_fetch, 1204
SPI_scroll_cursor_move, 1205
SPI_start_transaction, 1233
SPI_unregister_relation, 1210
split_part, 197
SQL/CLI, 2187
SQL/Foundation, 2187
SQL/Framework, 2187
SQL/JRT, 2187
SQL/JSON path language, 281
SQL/MDA, 2187
SQL/MED, 2187
SQL/OLB, 2187
SQL/PSM, 2187
SQL/Schemata, 2187
SQL/XML, 2187
  limits and conformance, 2207
sqrt, 189
ssh, 484
SSI, 411
SSL, 480, 780
  in libpq, 737
  with libpq, 730
ssl configuration parameter, 494
sslinfo, 2484
ssl_ca_file configuration parameter, 494
ssl_cert_file configuration parameter, 494
ssl_cipher, 2485
ssl_ciphers configuration parameter, 495
ssl_client_cert_present, 2485
ssl_client_dn, 2485
ssl_client_dn_field, 2485
ssl_client_serial, 2485
ssl_crl dir configuration parameter, 494
ssl_crl_file configuration parameter, 494
ssl_dh_params_file configuration parameter, 496
ssl_ecdh_curve configuration parameter, 495
ssl_extension_info, 2486
ssl_issuer_dn, 2485
ssl_issuer_field, 2486
ssl_is_used, 2484
ssl_key_file configuration parameter, 495
ssl_library configuration parameter, 555
ssl_max_protocol_version configuration parameter, 496
ssl_min_protocol_version configuration parameter, 496
ssl_passphrase_command configuration parameter, 496
ssl_passphrase_command_supports_reload configuration parameter, 496
ssl_prefer_server_ciphers configuration parameter, 495
ssl_version, 2484
SSPI, 572
STABLE, 969
standard deviation, 303
  population, 303
  sample, 303
standard_conforming_strings configuration parameter, 552
standby server, 633
standby.signal, 511, 637, 637
  for hot standby, 648
pg_basebackup --write-recovery-conf, 1724
standby_mode (see standby.signal)
START TRANSACTION, 1686
starts_with, 197
START_REPLICATION, 1989
statement_timeout configuration parameter, 543
statement_timestamp, 233
statistics, 302, 653
  of the planner, 435, 437, 610
stats_temp_directory configuration parameter, 538
stddev, 303

2681
Index

stddev_pop, 303
stddev_samp, 303
STONITH, 633
storage parameters, 1489
Streaming Replication, 633
strict_word_similarity, 2447
string (see character string)
strings
   backslash quotes, 551
   escape warning, 551
   standard conforming, 552
string_agg, 301
string_to_array, 197
string_to_table, 198
strip, 255, 388
strpos, 197
subarray, 2308
subltree, 2322
subpath, 2322
subquery, 11, 36, 95, 307
subscript, 30
substr, 197, 203
substring, 193, 201, 205, 207, 208
subtransactions
   in PL/Tcl, 1140
sum, 301
superuser, 4, 581
superuser_reserved_connections configuration parameter, 491
support functions
   in_range, 2069
suppress_redundant_updates_trigger, 346
svals, 2301
synchronize_seqscans configuration parameter, 552
synchronous commit, 698
Synchronous Replication, 633
synchronous_commit configuration parameter, 506
synchronous_standby_names configuration parameter, 515
syntax
   SQL, 21
syslog_facility configuration parameter, 528
syslog_ident configuration parameter, 528
syslog_sequence_numbers configuration parameter, 528
syslog_split_messages configuration parameter, 529
system catalog
   schema, 68
systemd, 466
   RemoveIPC, 472

T

   table, 6, 43
      creating, 43
      inheritance, 69
      modifying, 54
   partitioning, 73
   removing, 44
   renaming, 56
   Table Access Method, 2051
   TABLE command, 1651
   table expression, 90
   table function, 95
   XMLTABLE, 265
table sampling method, 2040
tableam
   Table Access Method, 2051
tablefunc, 2486
tableoid, 53
TABLESAMPLE method, 2040
tablespace, 589
t   default, 541
      temporary, 542
t   table_am_handler, 179
t   take_sample, 2381
t   take_sample_subset, 2382
tan, 191
tand, 191
tanh, 192
target list, 1048
Tcl, 1133
tcn, 2494
tcp_keepalives_count configuration parameter, 492
tcp_keepalives_idle configuration parameter, 492
tcp_keepalives_interval configuration parameter, 492
tcp_user_timeout configuration parameter, 493
template0, 587
template1, 587, 587
temp_buffers configuration parameter, 500
temp_file_limit configuration parameter, 542
temp_tablespaces configuration parameter, 542
test_decoding, 2495
text, 123, 252
text search, 376
t   data types, 144
      functions and operators, 144
      indexes, 407
t   text2ltree, 2322
   threads
      with libpq, 784
t   tid, 176
t   time, 127, 129
      constants, 131
      current, 241
      output format, 132
      (see also formatting)
t   time span, 127
t   time with time zone, 127, 129
t   time without time zone, 127, 129
t   time zone, 132, 546
   conversion, 240
t   input abbreviations, 2156
   POSIX-style specification, 2158

2682
Index

time zone names, 546
timelines, 618
TIMELINE_HISTORY, 1988
timeofday, 233
timeout
client authentication, 493
deadlock, 550
timestamp, 127, 130
timestamp with time zone, 127, 130
timestamp without time zone, 127, 130
timestamptz, 127
TimeZone configuration parameter, 546
timezone_abbreviations configuration parameter, 546
TOAST, 2126
and user-defined types, 999
per-column storage settings, 1328
per-type storage settings, 1349
versus large objects, 796
toast_tuple_target storage parameter, 1489
token, 21
to_ascii, 198
to_attname, 2290
to_attnum, 2290
to_atttype, 2290
to_char, 222
and locales, 592
to_date, 222
to_hex, 198
to_namespace, 2290
to_number, 222
to_regclass, 324
to_regcollation, 324
to_regnamespace, 324
to_regoper, 324
to_regoperator, 324
to_regproc, 324
to_regprocedure, 324
to_regrole, 325
to_regtype, 325
to_schema_qualified_operator, 2290
to_schema_qualified_relation, 2290
to_schema_qualified_type, 2290
to_timestamp, 222, 234
to_tsquery, 255, 382
to_tsvector, 255, 381
trace_locks configuration parameter, 557
trace_lock_oidmin configuration parameter, 558
trace_lock_table configuration parameter, 558
trace_lwlocks configuration parameter, 558
trace_notify configuration parameter, 557
trace_recovery_messages configuration parameter, 557
trace_sort configuration parameter, 557
trace_userlocks configuration parameter, 558
track_activities configuration parameter, 537
track_activity_query_size configuration parameter, 537
track_commit_timestamp configuration parameter, 515
track_counts configuration parameter, 537
track_functions configuration parameter, 538
track_io_timing configuration parameter, 537
track_wal_io_timing configuration parameter, 538
transaction, 14
transaction ID
wraparound, 611
transaction isolation, 411
transaction isolation level, 412, 543
read committed, 412
repeatable read, 413
serializable, 414
setting, 1681
setting default, 542
transaction log (see WAL)
transaction_deferrable configuration parameter, 543
transaction_isolation configuration parameter, 543
transaction_read_only configuration parameter, 543
transaction_timestamp, 234
transform_null_equals configuration parameter, 552
transition tables, 1511
(see also ephemeral named relation)
implementation in PLs, 1211
referencing from C trigger, 1032
translate, 198
transparent huge pages, 497
trigger, 179, 1029
arguments for trigger functions, 1031
constraint trigger, 1512
for updating a derived tsvector column, 390
in C, 1032
in PL/pgSQL, 1110
in PL/Python, 1164
in PL/Tcl, 1137
compared with rules, 1069
triggered_change_notification, 2494
trigger_file (see promote_trigger_file)
trim, 194, 201
trim_array, 293
trim_scale, 189
true, 136
trunc, 189, 253
TRUNCATE, 1687
trusted
PL/Perl, 1153
tsm_handler, 179
tsm_system_rows, 2496
tsm_system_time, 2497
tsquery (data type), 145
tsvector (data type), 144

tsvector_phrase, 257, 389
Index

tsvector concatenation, 388
tsvector_to_array, 257
tsvector_update_trigger, 346
tsvector_update_trigger_column, 347
  ts_debug, 258, 403
ts_delete, 256
ts_filter, 256
ts_headline, 256, 386
ts_lexize, 258, 406
ts_parse, 258, 405
ts_rank, 257, 385
ts_rank_cd, 257, 385
ts_rewrite, 257, 389
ts_stat, 258, 392
ts_token_type, 258, 405
tuple_data_split, 2329
txid_current, 328
txid_current_if_assigned, 329
txid_current_snapshot, 329
txid_snapshot_xip, 329
txid_snapshot_xmax, 329
txid_snapshot_xmin, 329
txid_status, 329
txid_visible_in_snapshot, 329
type (see data type)
type cast, 26, 35

U
UESCAPE, 22, 24
unaccent, 2497, 2499
Unicode escape
  in identifiers, 22
  in string constants, 24
Unicode normalization, 193, 193
UNION, 105
type determination of result type, 359
uniq, 2308
unique constraint, 49
unistr, 198
Unix domain socket, 726
unix_socket_directories configuration parameter, 491
unix_socket_group configuration parameter, 491
unix_socket_permissions configuration parameter, 491
unknown, 179
UNLISTEN, 1689
unnest, 294
  for multirange, 299
  for tsvector, 257
unqualified name, 67
updatable views, 1531
UPDATE, 12, 88, 1690
RETURNING, 89
update_process_title configuration parameter, 537
upgrading, 476
upper, 194, 298, 299
and locales, 592
upper_inc, 298, 299
upper_inf, 298, 299
UPSERT, 1607
URI, 724
user, 317, 580
  current, 315
user mapping, 85
User name maps, 568
user_catalog_table storage parameter, 1491
UUID, 146
generating, 146
uuid-osspp, 2499
uuid_generate_v1, 2499
uuid_generate_v1mc, 2499
uuid_generate_v3, 2499

V
vacuum, 608
VACUUM, 1694
vacuumdb, 1837
vacuumlo, 2568
vacuum_cost_delay configuration parameter, 501
vacuum_cost_limit configuration parameter, 501
vacuum_cost_page_dirty configuration parameter, 501
vacuum_cost_page_hit configuration parameter, 501
vacuum_cost_page_miss configuration parameter, 501
vacuum_defer_cleanup_age configuration parameter, 516
vacuum_failsafe_age configuration parameter, 544
vacuum_freeze_min_age configuration parameter, 544
vacuum_freeze_table_age configuration parameter, 544
vacuum_index_cleanup storage parameter, 1490
vacuum_multixact_failsafe_age configuration parameter, 545
vacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age configuration parameter, 545
vacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age configuration parameter, 545
vacuum_truncate storage parameter, 1490
value expression, 28
VALUES, 107, 1698
type determination of result type, 359
varchar, 123
variadic function, 960
variance, 303
  population, 303
  sample, 303
var_pop, 303
var_samp, 303
version, 4, 317
  compatibility, 476
view, 13

2684
implementation through rules, 1048
materialized, 1055
updating, 1061
Visibility Map, 2129
VM (see Visibility Map)
void, 179
VOLATILE, 969
volatility
  functions, 969
VPATH, 1028

W
WAL, 696
wal block size configuration parameter, 555
wal_buffers configuration parameter, 508
wal_compression configuration parameter, 508
wal_consistency_checking configuration parameter, 558
wal_debug configuration parameter, 559
wal_init_zero configuration parameter, 508
wal_keep_size configuration parameter, 514
wal_level configuration parameter, 505
wal_log_hints configuration parameter, 507
wal_receiver_create_temp_slot configuration parameter, 518
wal_receiver_status_interval configuration parameter, 518
wal_receiver_timeout configuration parameter, 508
wal_recycle configuration parameter, 508
wal_retrieve_retry_interval configuration parameter, 518
wal_segment_size configuration parameter, 555
wal_sender_timeout configuration parameter, 515
wal_skip_threshold configuration parameter, 509
wal_sync_method configuration parameter, 507
wal_writer_delay configuration parameter, 508
wal_writer_flush_after configuration parameter, 508
warm standby, 633
websearch_to_tsquery, 255
WHERE, 98
where to log, 526
WHILE
  in PL/pgSQL, 1096
width, 248
width_bucket, 189
window function, 15
  built-in, 305
  invocation, 33
  order of execution, 103
wipe_file_on_delete configuration parameter, 552
wipe_heaptuple_on_delete configuration parameter, 552
wipe_memctx_on_free configuration parameter, 552
wipe_mem_on_free configuration parameter, 553
wipe_xlog_on_free configuration parameter, 553
WITH
  in SELECT, 108, 1651
WITH CHECK OPTION, 1529
WITHIN GROUP, 31
witness server, 633
word_similarity, 2447
work_mem configuration parameter, 498
wraparound
  of multixact IDs, 613
  of transaction IDs, 611
X
xid, 176
xid8, 176
xmax, 53
xmin, 53
XML, 146
XML export, 268
XML Functions, 259
XML option, 147, 546
xml2, 2500
xmlagg, 262, 301
xmlbinary configuration parameter, 545
xmlcomment, 259
xmlconcat, 259
xmlelement, 260
XMLLEXISTS, 263
xmlforest, 261
xmloption configuration parameter, 546
xmlparse, 147
xmlpi, 261
xmlroot, 262
xmlserialize, 147
xmltable, 265
XPath, 264
xpath_exists, 265
xpath_table, 2501
XQuery regular expressions, 221
xslt_process, 2504
Z
zero_damaged_pages configuration parameter, 559